

Ai. 2. 22.

Ex Libris  
Bibliothecae Facultatis  
Juridicae Edinburgi.

2256

Handwritten signature: *John D. [illegible]*



THE  
MODERN PART  
OF THE  
UNIVERSAL HISTORY.

Compiled from

*ORIGINAL WRITERS;*

BY THE

AUTHORS of the ANTIENT.

Which will perfect the WORK, and render it

A Complete Body of HISTORY,

FROM THE

EARLIEST ACCOUNT of Time, to the PRESENT.

Ἱστορίας ἀρχαίας ἐξέργεσθαι μὴ κατανόει, ἐν αὐταῖς γὰρ εὐρήσεις ἀκόπως, ἅπερ ἑτέροι συνέβησαν  
ἐγκόπων. Basil. Imp. ad Leon. fil.

V O L. XVI.



L O N D O N:

Printed for T. OSBORNE, C. HITCH and L. HAWES, A. MILLAR,  
J. RIVINGTON, S. CROWDER, B. LAW and Co.  
T. LONGMAN, C. WARE, and S. BLADON.

M.DCCCLXV





---

# P R E F A C E.

**A**FTER a long delay, occasioned by a variety of accidents which could not be foreseen, the Modern Universal History now makes its appearance ; and the Editors hope it will be found entitled to some degree of public approbation.

They are perhaps more sensible than the readers can be of its defects, but they plead in alleviation, that the greater part of those defects are such as could not be remedied ; nor was it even practicable to finish the work according to the letter of the plan on which it was undertaken. We will venture however to affirm, that this Modern Universal History, with all its imperfections on its head, is by far the compleatest work of the kind that ever was offered to the public in any nation or language.

An author who sits down with a plenitude of materials for relating past events, is apt to applaud himself upon his arrangements, and the lights which he is enabled to throw upon particular periods. He is encouraged to hope that he shall find the same magazines, and the same variety of provisions at every stage of his historical progress.—How miserably he is deceived, our experience can testify. Nothing is more accidental than the materials of history. A great genius often arises in a barbarous age and country, that elucidates facts ; and perhaps for three ages after, the Modern Historian has but the uncertain glimmerings of uncertain events to direct him. A reader is dissatisfied with his narrative falling off, and dwindling into conjectures. or entirely ceasing, perhaps, for years. The author foresees this ; he lays aside his pen that he may employ his industry in exploring new sources, in discovering hoards of unnoticed materials, some of them possibly lurking in the refuses of printed literature, others concealed amidst loads of monkish lumber in corners that the human eye never surveyed ; and more than probably, after the discovery is made, the author can make nothing of it till it is transcribed by a hand that is acquainted with the writing and the language.

Such are the difficulties of writing history ; happy if we can get over them ; but in some periods they are unfurmountable. The writers of a Modern Universal History feel them more than those of a particular state, because they occur in the annals of every kingdom and people ; and consequently their labour to supply them must be increased according to the different heads of their undertaking.

That this complaint is well founded, must be admitted by every reader who peruses this work ; but the reasons of the defects are, perhaps, not so obvious. The ignorance of the times treated of is the most striking, and yet even that is not always irreparable. How lame was the history of Italy between the fifth and fourteenth centuries ! Writers were not agreed about the parentage and connections even of the famous countess Matilda ; and the wickedness of the Roman pontiffs was so incredible, that their votaries pleaded that the whole of their history was a romance. But dark as those ages were, some



unnoticed men of letters existed in cells and convents; the only utility of such retirements. Sometimes ambition, intrigue, or the pleasure of their superiors, brought them into the world; and after acting their parts on the stage of life, they were comfortably provided for, and had leisure to reduce what they had seen into writing. Their precious remains have saved the histories of several periods in various nations from oblivion; but unfortunately for the republic of letters, they often lay dormant for ages, till happy industry brought them to light, and at once dispelled the clouds and glare of fiction that usurped their room. To enumerate instances of this kind would be the same as to compile an historical library; but the truth of our observation (to give one instance out of a thousand) is established by Muratori's collections of the history of Italy. How long did those valuable remains lie buried from all knowledge of the world! and what lights have they thrown upon history since they were discovered! The editors of this work think they can justly boast that they are the first who applied them to the purposes of general history; and their authority is the more unquestionable, as the authors published by Muratori generally lived at the time of the transactions they described. The French and the Germans can boast the like publications rescued from the jaws of oblivion. An historian's footing is firm while he rests upon such authorities; but it requires no little critical discernment to separate the real from the fictitious. This was one of the most painful of our labours.

Our first duty in selecting our authorities, was to examine the authenticity of the materials. In this we were greatly assisted by the editors of the several pieces they published, who generally prefixed some account of the author, or if that could not be obtained, some evidences of the credibility of their publication, and a narrative where and how it was discovered. We next examined how far it corresponded, first, with other relations; and, secondly, with probability.

The former was a difficult, and indeed a delicate task. When great writers, such as a Mariana in Spain; a Mezeray, or a De Thou in France; an Aretine, or a Guicchiardini in Italy, get once possession of the public credit in general, the evidence must be very strong that can shake it in particular instances. When we attempt any thing of that kind in the following work, we have always submitted to our readers our reasons for differing from former authorities; and we have had the pleasure of finding all our endeavours of that kind well received. We can attribute our success in this only to our attention to facts, which no authority, be it ever so well established, can destroy. No historian ever possessed more abilities and better intentions than De Thou did; and no writer is more candid than he is in relating matters that fell within his own knowledge; but De Thou, and every general historian, must trust a great deal to information, which he admits or adopts according to the opinion he has of his author's veracity. De Thou, for instance, in the affairs of Great-Britain, consulted Camden and Buchanan, the former an honest, and the latter an elegant writer; but the authority of records and state papers must preponderate against both. To multiply instances of this kind, that occur in the following work, would be improper for a preface.

We must now add a word concerning the probability of those auxiliaries to general history. To say the truth, this is far from being an encouraging consideration, without making great allowances for education, prepossession, and prejudices. We seldom meet with a Monkish writer free from a dash of the marvellous; but were we to reject the whole for a few improbabilities, where is that history of antiquity that can stand the test of examination? We do not venture too much in saying, that many of those good fathers thought themselves obliged to lie, when it could be of service to their foundations, their patrons, or their religion. This is an observation not confined to history; even Cicero,



Cicero, though no historian, in his invectives against Cataline, advanced in the face of all the Roman people, some as, swingeing improbabilities as are to be met with in the most credulous times of monkery. Cicero, no doubt, thought that he was thereby serving his country, because he heightened the public detestation of the parricide. Upon the whole, we dare not reject a narrative that has a general face of authenticity on account of one or two improbabilities, unless they should affect essentials.

Besides the labours of individuals, general history has met with a powerful resource in the public records of religious houses; yet even those, though their authenticity is unquestionable, are not without the miraculous and marvellous. But though such passages are far from destroying their credibility, they are to be examined by particular criterions. If the records or annals of two religious houses in the same or different kingdoms, at a good distance from each other, correspond as to dates and facts, they bear the highest degree of credibility, and they are the firmest vouchers of history; but an editor must be extremely careful in collations of this kind. It was no uncommon thing for the good fathers of one convent to transcribe the records of another, and to christen them by the name of their own house; but this practice was less frequent on the continent than in Great-Britain. It is greatly to be wished, that the munificence of European princes would enable men of industry and learning to bring to light more of those historical monuments than have hitherto appeared.

Coins and medals, inscriptions, engravings, seals, armorial bearings, paintings, and even tapestry, are often of service to general history. How accurately did the learned Chiflet, from such evidences, destroy the boasted sanctity of the French ampulla, which a dove brought in her beak with the oil that anointed the first Christian king of France; and how irrefragably has he demolished from the like authorities the romantic original of the lilies in the arms of France! But instances of that kind, even in less remote times, are endless. What improvements might we expect if every nation in Europe were as attentive to the study of their antiquities, as the French have been to those of their country! how many dates might be fixed, and what a variety of doubtful facts might be ascertained! How greatly has history been obliged even to the lowest of all passions, superstition and curiosity, which sometimes, at the expence of decency, have investigated and examined even the repositories of the dead.

This history has the very singular merit, that those parts of it which formerly were thought to be the most doubtful, are here the best authenticated. The amazing empire of the califs, till Mr. Ockley's History of the Saracens appeared, was thought to have little other foundation than in fiction, and a few facts animated and exaggerated by the Eastern spirit of romance. But even Mr. Ockley's publication did little more than give an idea how a great state might be founded by enthusiasm, but guarded by personal virtue, inflexible integrity, resolution, constancy, courage, and industry. Our Universal History has pursued and completed the plan which Mr. Ockley chalked out, by bringing the reader acquainted with a series of princes, some of them the greatest that ever dignified, and others the worst that ever disgraced, human nature. In this history, he will see by what gradations, industry, learning, and all the fine arts, flourished under the califate, when they were extinguished in Europe. What is still more amazing, the Christians of Spain were barbarians, when the Saracens in the same country were a polished people. He will see the causes why the califate, the greatest and perhaps the best polished empire that ever existed, came to ruin; how the califs degenerated from the original principles of their government into crimes that rendered it necessary for them to be protected by foreign mercenaries in the possession of their power; and how those mercenaries, becoming a standing army, gave law to their masters, till their empire was overthrown by barbarians.



In selecting materials, the compilers have not confined themselves to printed books. Great part of the Arabian history has been extracted from Oriental records and unpublished manuscripts. As the Latin version of *Al Makin* by *Erpenius*, ends with the five hundred and twelfth year of the Moslem æra, and the epitome of *Abul Faraj* is very concise and jejune, the author of this part of the modern Universal History, in order to supply these defects, has, with the assistance of the learned Dr. Hunt, professor of Hebrew and Arabic in the university of Oxford, inserted a translation of *Ebn Shobnah's* Annals, extracted from a manuscript in the possession of that gentleman, the obscure passages of which Annals are illustrated by quotations from the unpublished part of the *Tarikh al Mosle'mim* of *Al Makin*. He has interwoven into this history the Cambridge *Chronicon Siculum*, containing a variety of particulars relating to the Arab affairs in Sicily; and transferred into his performance the substance of some curious manuscript notes upon *Abul Faraj*, together with extracts from *Mejiro'ddin al Hanbali*, author of the Persian Chronicle. To these are added explications of all those earlier Arabic coins found lately near Stegen, on the coast of the Baltic, and published at Leipzig in Saxony.

The history of *Jenghiz Khan*, the greatest conqueror (so far as we know) that the world ever beheld, is naturally connected with that of the califs, whose empire was overthrown by the Seljukian monarchs. Though this great man was born in what may be called the native country of barbarism, yet he had a passion for fame; and his memory has had the good fortune to be recorded with more precision and certainty than is to be found in many histories of much later date, and in countries where the inhabitants now value themselves upon their politeness. Hence it is that the editors have been enabled to give a clear and well vouched history of the civil policy as well as warlike achievements of this wonderful man.

The same may be said of the famous Timur Bec, or Tamerlane. A branch of his succession was settled in Indostan. Here we cannot help lamenting the want of records and authentic materials, from which an entire history of these countries might be compiled. All we know of them is gleaned from voyages and travels written by individuals of different nations, who had but a partial and imperfect information, obtained from transitory views, or short visits to some particular parts of the coast. It is true, that since the publication of this work, several papers and histories have appeared, which throw very considerable lights upon many late transactions of great importance there, particularly between our East-India company and the natives; but we are to consider, that the writers and transmitters of those accounts drew them up chiefly as apologies for their own conduct; and therefore they must be made use of with great care and diffidence: nor do the most ample accounts we have met with, reach more than thirty years backwards. It is to be hoped, however, that the reader will be particularly pleased with the labour and attention which have been bestowed upon a complete history of the commerce to, and the settlements in the East-Indies by the several European nations; an history which has been carefully compiled from such materials as occur to very few individuals, and is indeed the fruit of the most elaborate and successful researches.

Although the origin and progress of the Ottoman empire is explained with great fidelity, from the authorities of *Saadi Effendi*, and *Sacdo'ddin Ebn Hassan*, the most celebrated of all the Turkish writers; yet the difficulty of procuring materials for compiling the later transactions of that empire, has obliged the authors to conclude with the peace of Carlowitz. Their intent was to continue the history of the Turks to the present time, in a supplementary volume, in which also they promised a fuller detail of the Egyptian dynasties, and the more interior parts of Ethiopia and Nubia, with the mountains of the Moon. But the work, notwithstanding all their endeavours to retrench superfluities, swelled under their hands to such a bulk, that out of tenderness to the purchaser, they have



have omitted this promised supplement, as less useful and interesting. The same motives have partly induced them to leave out the history of Great Britain and Ireland, which would have added considerably to the bulk and expence of the work. This they have spared with the less reluctance, as there are at present so many excellent modern histories of our own country in the hands of the British subjects, for whose use and information this great work was chiefly compiled.

The reader is not to expect to find the same accuracy, either of language or composition, in every part of this history. A plan so very extensive, required a great variety of hands as well as length of time to carry it into execution. Sometimes death interposed, and an original author left his work unfinished in such a manner, that the plan upon which he went was often unintelligible to his successor. Sometimes materials proved defective, which left most lamentable chasms in the work, that could be replaced only by painful investigation and elaborate researches. We have not, perhaps, one state in Europe, as we have already hinted, that furnishes materials and evidences for history, equally through all its periods; but the editors of the Universal History have reason to complain, that the later times are more destitute of such evidence than the more early. We know not, for instance, an authentic history of the European transactions for forty years past. This laid the editors under inexpressible disadvantages. They were obliged to have recourse to diurnal or periodical publications, and oftentimes they found their information to be the most imperfect where the greatest store of materials might have been expected. The reason for this is easily accounted for. In France or Spain, for example, a native dares not to be so explicit to the public as an Englishman, and even accounts printed by authority are often very questionable. Posterity will probably be informed much better than the present age is of the motives of the expulsion of the Jesuits out of France, and of the assassination of his most Faithful Majesty in Portugal. In treating of those and similar transactions, an historian can only collect the facts, and by comparing different narratives, form the best judgment he can upon the whole, so as to render it the most consonant to probability.

In the course of this work it has often happened, that the editors durst not trust to modern authorities, and were obliged to have recourse to the evidences nearest the time when they occurred. The necessity of this must be obvious to any reader who reflects upon the prodigious alteration that almost every constitution in Europe has undergone.

The feudal law under which the French government subsisted, varied after the time of Hugh Capet from what it was before; and whoever reads the French history with an unprejudiced eye must perceive, that the people then lived not under a monarchy but an aristocracy; that, in fact, their nobles were their sovereigns, and their kings the only patrons of public liberty, not from principle but interest. A shadow of the prerogative assumed by the Carlovingian race, served to give them a pre-eminence that was still of use in casting the balance in disputes that happened among the great land-holders and hereditary officers of state. Some spirited princes endeavoured to revive the Carlovingian claims, but this served only to unite those great men among themselves; so that the king in reality possessed little more of the office than the name. Even that had a wonderful magic annexed to it. The people, perceiving that their miseries under their nobles were infinitely greater than they could be under any kingly government, were always disposed to take part with the crown; and by a constant opposition to their tyrants, they obtained territorial and commercial franchises, that were, in fact, independent of the feudal laws, and were therefore a perpetual bone of contention between the king who granted them, and the nobles who wanted to destroy them. Thus, for some centuries, the kingdom was in a state of warfare, till about the time of the crusades, when their kings found means, through the epidemical distemper of crusading, which weakened the nobles, to gain



some ascendancy ; and the reader in this history will see how that was improved, though by slow degrees.

The estates of France, a term now almost obsolete, still contained the great constitutional power of the kingdom ; and the more moderately, the more equitably it was exercised, it became the stronger ; but it seldom was appealed to, except when the crown stood in need of its assistance ; nor did their kings, till the reign of Lewis XI. attempt to alter the feudal modes of possession and inheritance among their great subjects. What is now called the parliament of France, had originally no idea of dignity annexed to it ; though, excepting the regal, it is almost the only power now to be heard of in that kingdom, and in some cases pretends to controul sovereignty itself. The continuators of the following history probably will have an opportunity to describe the decisive struggle between the two powers.

The constitution of those kingdoms that form the present monarchy of Spain, was originally more free than that of France itself, and it preserved itself longer, because the detestable court of inquisition was not introduced into that country till the year 1478 ; nor were the various titles of the princes who governed separate dominions concentrated in one crown till about the year 1492, when Ferdinand found means to strip his grandees of their high offices, particularly those of the grand masterhips of the several orders of knighthood, which were in fact independent upon the crown itself. This diminution of the power of the nobles was owing to the same causes that produced the same effects in France. Ferdinand, the most artful, politic, prince of his age, and at the same time the most despotic, rendered himself the patron of his people against the intolerable oppressions of the great, and they flocked to his standards. He had, however, a disadvantage to struggle with, unknown to the kings of France. The Moors in Spain were numerous and powerful, and their protection had been always open to the rebel grandees of the Christian princes. Ferdinand subdued those Moors, and by driving the chief of them out of Spain, he secured his own authority at the expence of his country's depopulation. This, however it has been misconstrued into the effects of bigotry and zeal, was the true motive of that seemingly impolitic depopulation.

The Cortes of Spain, even after this, when assembled, formed a respectable body ; but they never recovered the blows they received under Charles V. The treasures of Spain proved a bait to their leaders ; so that they gave the posterity of Charles little or no trouble, either as individuals, or a body politic. The accession of the House of Bourbon to the crown of Spain is a memorable period in that history ; but it never could have taken place, had it not been for the weakness of the last three princes of the House of Austria, the insolence of their ministers, and the intolerable pride, poverty, and ambition of the Imperialists, who took pains to lose the affections of the Spanish nation, by trusting to their interest at the court of Madrid. In short, the establishment of Philip V. upon the throne of Spain, is one of the most amazing events in history ; when we consider the powerful confederacy formed against him, the severe checks he received, and the inability of his grandfather to support him : but in fact his rival the archduke was sacrificed to the selfish views of his brother, and the treachery and cowardice of the Portuguese, even before the treaty of Utrecht was concluded. With regard to the behaviour of Great Britain at that very critical juncture, it was censured with great severity at a time when parties ran high in this island ; and perhaps the English ministry are indefensible in some part of their conduct as to the Catalans. But when we consider and compare circumstances together, we cannot at this time form an idea of a better plan of conduct than what they followed. To have given the Spanish monarchy in the Indies to a prince possessed of the empire, would have been absurd beyond all comprehension :



comprehension ; and though the family compact between the two chief branches of the House of Bourbon is alarming at present, yet a compact or a confederacy of a like kind naturally offered itself to the heads of those two monarchies, whether of the same families or not, at the time that measure took place.

The reader of the following pages has an advantage above the readers of the histories of particular states, because he has an opportunity at one view to compare their several interests and situations, and to trace those movements in the political system that are either hid or disguised in more confined accounts. It is general history alone that can instruct us in the prodigious alterations that have happened in the views and maxims of the several princes of Europe, since the commencement of this century. The editors of the latter volumes, sensible that the histories of France, Spain, Germany, Portugal, and other countries, had not been carried down near enough to the present time, spared no pains to make them as complete as possible. Their history of the Italian states is a work that never was attempted before in English, and is selected from materials, which, though unquestionably authentic, are little known to the public, as will be plain to the inspection of the enquiring reader. In their history of the popes they have been enabled to shew, that the Holy See owed its temporal greatness chiefly to the ambition and tyranny of the German emperors and their governors. The popes took the part of the oppressed, whom misery had made credulous, and despair furnished with arms. The little Italian states and families, who for centuries had not heard of an emperor of Rome, were astonished when the successes of Charles the Great erected and claimed a paramount power over all Italy, and treated as rebels all who resisted him. The popes and their party, who were called Guelphs, stood at first up for general liberty ; and though they never could abolish the Imperial claims, yet they divided and weakened their influence, by obliging the emperors to parcel out their Italian territories into great fiefs, the proprietors of which soon found it convenient to maintain their possession of them by joining with the popes.

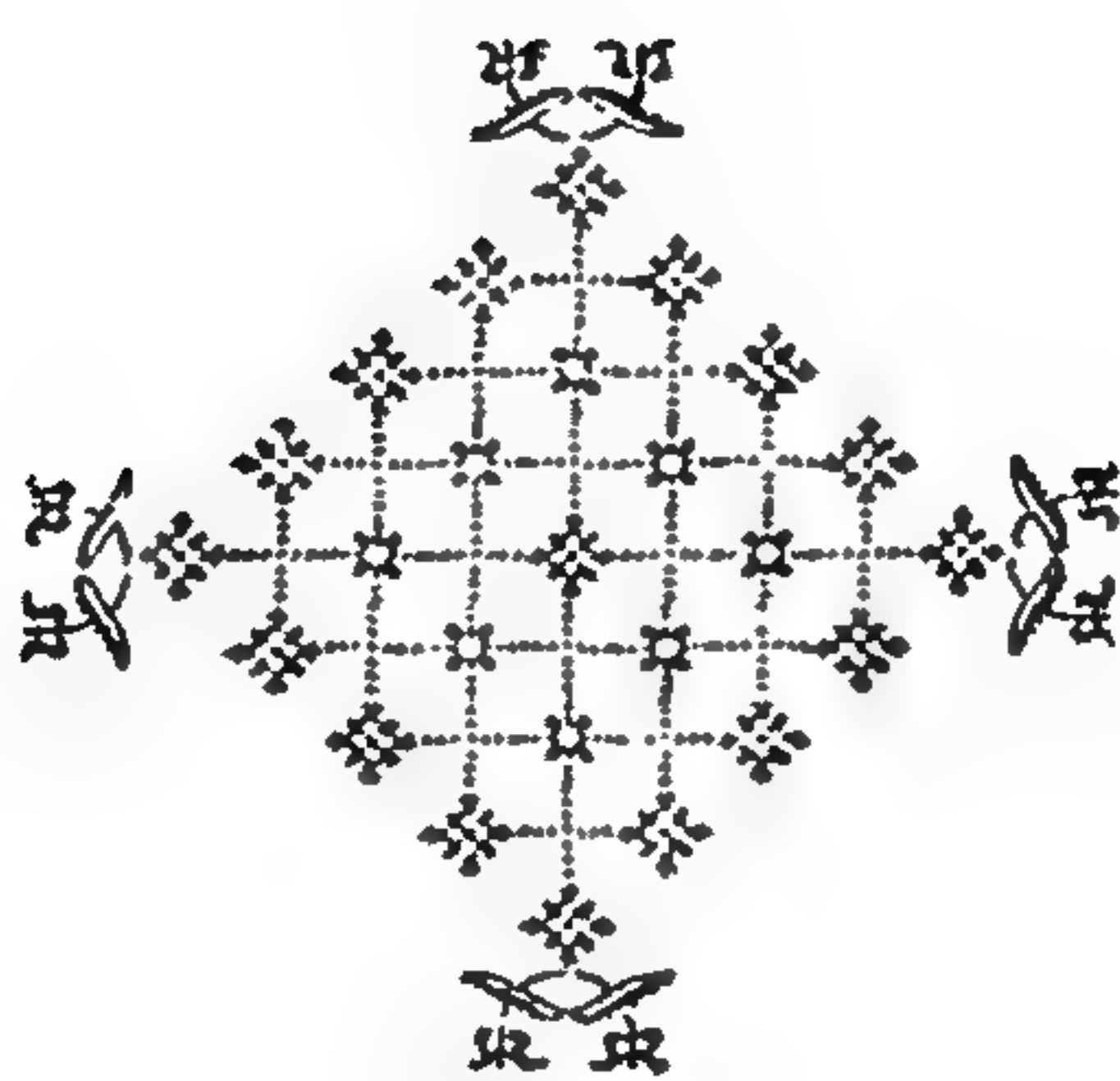
The conquest of Sicily by the Guiscards, who introduced into Italy the feudal law and constitutions in their most improved perfection, was another event that contributed to the greatness of the Roman see. Those princes and the popes found it for their mutual advantage to support each other ; and the latter, by making it the invariable rule of their conduct to oppose the Imperial claims, rendered themselves the heads of that opposition in Italy, though the Holy See was generally filled by men who were the disgraces of human nature, and who had no talents for government, but what arose from pride, arrogance, and obstinacy. Their success was the more wonderful as they were hated, despised, and sometimes expelled by the Romans, who equally detested them and the emperors. But those holy fathers were venerated by distant people, who had fewer opportunities of being the witnesses of their crimes and enormities ; and every faction, either civil or ecclesiastical, which rebelled against the lawful sovereign, whatever the pretext might be, still found it their interest to have a pope for its patron and protector.

The histories of the Northern countries, during the early ages, are confessedly built on tradition, but the editors have been careful in distinguishing between true and fictitious events. We think proper in this place, to observe in general, that though traditionary histories are always to be distrusted, yet they are not always to be disbelieved. It is certain, that before the introduction of letters, or rather characters of writing, into Northern countries, an order of men, under the names of Bards, Schenachies, and other denominations, were set apart for preserving the memory of persons and actions, and who repeated their rude compositions on solemn occasions before their princes, prelates, nobility, and people. Their collections formed the ba-



sis of the histories of the early ages; and indeed it is greatly to be suspected, that the high antiquities of Greece and Rome, which have long passed unquestioned among the learned, have no better (if so good) a foundation. It is true, the fictitious is blended with real history; but the characters of the former are so easily distinguished, that they can be separated from the latter by the most ignorant reader. The editors think they have a claim to the patronage of the public, on account of the history of America contained in the following work. It is the first general history of that extensive country, which now forms so considerable a part of the British empire, that has ever appeared in the English language. The histories of the vast regions of Canada, Louisiana, and Florida, that have been ceded to Great Britain, are new to an English reader, and were compiled from the best authorities, those of writers who were under no temptation of imposing on the public, and whose labours came abroad entirely for the information of their own countrymen and government, who then had no notion of the countries they described being ceded to Great-Britain.

We shall here finish this address to the public, by observing, that the authorities upon which the Modern Universal History is founded, are the best the republic of literature can furnish; for the truth of which we venture to appeal to the candour of the reader. The work is illustrated by the most complete set of Maps that modern geography furnishes: and nothing now remains for the Editors but to return their thanks to the Public for the very great patience with which they waited for the completion of a work, which, however irreprehensible it has hitherto been among men of genius and letters, has become far more bulky and extensive than either the authors or proprietors could foresee when it was first undertaken.



THE



---

---

THE  
CONCLUSION  
OF THE  
MODERN HISTORY.

---

INTRODUCTION.

*Wherein the Geography of the Globe of the Earth is considered in a new Light, with a View to future Discoveries.*

**T**HE surface of our earth is not like that of the planet *Jupiter*, divided alternately by belts and parallels to the equator, but from pole to pole by two tracts of land, and two of sea. The principal tract is the old continent, whose greatest length is found by measuring in diagonal from the easternmost point of *North Tartary*, along the borders of the *Linchidolen Gulph*, where the *Russians* have a whale fishery, to *Tobolski*; from thence across the *Caspian* and *Red Seas* to *Monoemugi* and the empire of *Monomotopa*, and from thence to the *Cape of Good Hope*. This line, the longest that can be measured on the old continent, is about 10,800 miles, and is no where interrupted, except by the *Caspian* and *Red Seas*, whose extent are very inconsiderable in an enquiry which includes the whole surface of the globe, as divided into four parts.

THIS extraordinary length could neither be obtained by measuring in meridians, nor by lines parallel, or nearly so, to the equator. The longest on the former plan, from *Cape North*, in *Lapland*, to the *Cape of Good Hope*, in *Africa*, is only about 7,500 miles; and on the latter plan, from *Brest*, in *Brittany*, to the easternmost coast of *Cochin-China*, about 6,900 miles: whence it is evident to demonstration, that the greatest length of the old continent, from the easternmost cape of *North Tartary* to the *Cape of Good Hope*, is about 10,800 *English* miles.

THIS line must, therefore, be regarded as the middle, or center line of that tract of land distinguished by the name of the *Old Continent*, because, in measuring the surface of the earth on both sides of this line, the part on the left is found to contain 7,413,278 square miles, and that on the right 7,409,061 square miles, a surprising equality, which is next to a demonstration that this line is not only the longest, but the true middle line of the old continent, which, according to this admeasurement, contains about 14,822,339 square miles, somewhat less, indeed, than a fifth of the surface of the whole globe; but yet a vast tract of land inclined to the equator in an angle of 30 degrees.

THE new continent must also be regarded as an immense tract. Its greatest length should be taken from the mouth of the river *Plata*, to that swampy country, which lies beyond the lake of *Affinoboils*. The line of admeasurement strikes from *la Plata* to the *Lake Caracares*, from thence through the country of the *Mataguais* and *Chiriguanis*, to *Pocco*, *Zongo*, and *Zamas*; from thence to *St. Fé* and *Carthagena*, through the *Gulph of Mexico*, crossing



## The Conclusion of

crossing *Jamaica*, *Cuba*, and the peninsula of *Florida*, to the *Apalachian* mountains; from a  
thence to *Fort Louis*, in *Louisiana*, and lastly to the people that dwell beyond the lake of  
*Assiniboils*, where it terminates in land not yet discovered.

THIS line, which is interrupted only by the *Gulph of Mexico*, a kind of *Mediterranean*  
*Sea*, is in length about 7,500 *English* miles, dividing the new continent into two equal  
parts, of which that on the left contains about 3,207,858 square miles; and that on the  
right 3,212,778 square miles. This continent also, like the other, is inclined to the equator  
an angle of 30 degrees, but in an opposite direction; the old continent stretching from  
north-east to south-west, and the new from the north-west to the south-east. The sum of  
these two continents, taken together, amounts to no more than 21,242,979 square miles,  
not a third of the surface of the whole globe, which is computed at seventy-five millions of b  
square miles nearly.

It is besides observable, that these two lines which traverse the old and new continents,  
dividing each into equal parts, both determinate in the same degrees of latitude, as well  
to the north as to the south; and it is no less remarkable, that the two continents lie op-  
posed to each other in contrary directions.

It is likewise very remarkable, that the countries bordering upon these lines, that is,  
within a moderate distance of six or seven hundred miles on each side of them, are more  
antient, generally speaking, than those at a greater distance. Whoever will take the pains  
to pursue this idea, may be convinced that *Europe*, and perhaps *China* and the eastern parts  
of *Tartary*, are new countries compared with *Arabia the Happy* and *the Desert*, *Persia* and c  
*Georgia*, *Turcomania*, *Circassia*, and the innermost parts of *Tartary*. Thus, in the new con-  
tinent, the *Terra Magellanica*, the eastern coast of *Brasil*, the country of the *Amazons*,  
*Guiana*, and *Canada*, are new to *Tucuman*, *Peru*, the *Terra Firma*, *Mexico*, and *Mississippi*.  
To these observations may be added two very singular facts; the first, that as the two  
continents are opposed to each other, the old is more extended to the north of the equator  
than the new; and on the contrary, the new stretches farther to the south than the old:  
thus, by each having its center, the one in 16 or 18 degrees of north latitude, and  
the other in 16 or 18 degrees of south latitude, they seem both designed by Providence  
as a counterpoize to each other. The second fact is, the remarkable conformity be- d  
tween the two continents, in that both are nearly divided into two parts, each of which  
parts would be encompassed by the sea, were it not for the two little isthmus's of *Suez* and  
*Panama*.

THESE are the principal remarks which an attentive inspection into the general division  
of the earth has produced. It may, however, appear too precipitate to form a new hypo-  
thesis upon these premises; but as none hitherto have considered the division of the earth  
in the same point of view, it will not be improper to add a few reflections.

It is certainly very singular, that the line which gives the greatest length to the terres-  
trial continents should likewise divide them into two equal parts; and it is no less remark-  
able, that these two lines should begin and end in the same degrees of latitude, and have  
both the same degrees of inclination to the equator. These conformities may lead in e  
general to something which may hereafter be discovered, and of which we are now igno-  
rant; but we shall proceed to illustrate what has already been observed, that the most an-  
cient countries are those which are the highest, and approach nearest to these lines, and  
that the last inhabited are the lowest and farthest removed from them. Thus, for ex-  
ample, in *America*, the country of the *Amazons*, *Guiana*, and *Canada*, appear to be the last  
peopled. By casting an eye over a map of those countries, any one may see, that the waters  
every where overspread them; that they abound in lakes and wide rivers, certain indica-  
tions of new inhabited lands. On the contrary, *Tucuman*, *Peru*, and *Mexico*, are high lands,  
extremely mountainous, and border on the line which divides the continent. In like man-  
ner, the interior parts of *Africa*, on the old continent, appear to be high and mountainous, f  
and are without doubt very ancient, in comparison of which even *Egypt*, *Barbary*, and the  
western coasts, as far as *Senegal*, may be regarded as new lands. *Asia* is likewise an ancient  
country, and perhaps the most ancient of any yet mentioned, especially *Arabia*, *Persia*,  
and *Tartary*; but the irregularities of that vast tract of land, as well as those of *Europe*,  
would require a separate treatise to explain. Let it suffice in general to observe here, that  
*Europe* is a new country; the tradition concerning the migration of its people, and of the  
first introduction of arts and sciences into it, is an almost incontestable proof of the truth of  
this assertion. Besides, it is not many centuries ago, since it abounded with marshes and lakes,  
and was covered with forests; whereas in the oldest inhabited countries, there are but few forests,  
fewer stagnations of water, no swamps, but on the contrary, much heath and furz, and vast g  
ridges of mountains, whose summits are dry and barren, but whose sides abound in pastures,  
and are fertile to this day to a degree of luxuriance scarce known to new countries. Nothing is  
more certain, than that men cut down forests, drain off waste waters, deepen the shallow  
currents



- a currents of great rivers, and, in process of time, give the earth a quite different face to that of other countries uninhabited, or but lately peopled.

THE ancients were acquainted with a very inconsiderable part of the globe: the whole continent of *America*, the arctic countries, the *Terra Australis*, and *Magellanica*, a great part of the inland countries of *Africa*, were entirely unknown to them; neither were they certain that the torrid zone was habitable, notwithstanding they had in their navigations surrounded all *Africa*, as appears from what *Herodotus* reports, that *Necho*, king of *Egypt*, about 2200 years ago, built ships for the *Phenicians*, with which they sailed from the *Red Sea*, coasted along the eastern shores of *Africa*, doubled the *Cape of Good Hope*, and having spent two years in this navigation, entered the third year into the straits of *Gibraltar*, and finished their voyage by the *Mediterranean Sea*. This is the more wonderful, as the ancients were wholly ignorant of that amazing property of the loadstone in pointing to the poles, although they knew that of its attracting iron. They were equally ignorant of the general cause of the flux and reflux of the sea, and were doubtful whether the earth was encompassed by the ocean, or was connected by necks of land, like that of the isthmus of *Isthmus*. Some, indeed, supposed the terrestrial globe to be one vast island; but upon such slender proofs, that none of them ventured to assert, or even to suggest, that it was possible to sail round it. *Magellan* was the first, who, in the year 1519, attempted this grand tour, and performed it in 1124 days; *Sir Francis Drake*, in 1577, made the same voyage in 1056 days; and after him *Sir Thomas Cavendish*, in 1586, sailed round the globe in 777 days. These renowned voyagers were the first who demonstrated physically the sphericity and true measure of the circumference of the earth, which the ancients could never ascertain, notwithstanding all their endeavours to determine it. The monsoons, or what is commonly called the periodical or trade winds, with the means to be made use of in the prosecution of long voyages, in seas remote from land, were points of which the ancient navigators had no adequate idea. It is not, therefore, to be wondered, that so little progress was made by them in geography, when at this day, notwithstanding all the helps that have been added by the improvements in mathematics, and the discoveries of navigators, there still remain many things to find out, and vast countries yet to be discovered. Almost all the lands about the south poles are at this hour unknown to us; what we know concerning them is, that they exist, and that they are separated from all other lands by the ocean. There are likewise many other countries yet undiscovered about the north pole, and it must be acknowledged, though with regret, that, for more than a century past, the humour for discovering new lands has been declining, and men have preferred, perhaps with reason, the utility of improving those already known, to the glory of discovering others, and making new conquests.

NEVERTHELESS, the discovery of the *Terra Australis* (A) would be a grand object of

(A) *M. de Maupertuis*, in a letter to the king of *Prussia*, on the advancement of the sciences, says, in regard to the *Terra Australis*, "It is universally known, that there is, in the southern hemisphere, a large unknown tract, where it is possible there may be a new part of the world, more extensive than any of the other parts. No potentate has yet had the curiosity to search into it, or to discover whether it consists in land or seas, even in an age when navigation has been carried to so high a degree of perfection. In the first place, as there is not in any known part of the globe so large a space as this entirely covered with water, it is highly probable that part of it must be land: add to this, the relations of those, who, in their voyages in the southern hemisphere, have discovered points, capes, and other signs of the adjoining continent. The number of those who agree in these particulars, is too great to be here inserted; some of the capes are already marked in several of our charts."

"The *French India* company sent a few ships some years ago, in search of lands, to the south, between *Africa* and *America*. Captain *Lozier Bouvet*, who had the command of this expedition, sailing towards the east, between these two parts of the world, observed frequent signs of adjacent land, during a course of 48 degrees; and in latitude 52 discovered a cape, where he could not land on account of the ice. We have an account of the voyage of one *Gonneville*, of *Honfleur*, who, in 1503, having been driven by a tempest towards the *Cape of Good Hope*, was cast away on a continent, where he spent half a year in a most fertile soil, amongst a civilized people, subject to a king, whose son, named *Esomerie*, he brought with him to *France*. This rela-

tion, whether true or false, encouraged *Lozier* to make his voyage.

"If these southern lands were only looked for with a view of discovering a port for the navigation to the *East Indies*, as seems to have been the design of that company, it were easy to shew that proper measures were not taken for this purpose; that the enterprize was too soon abandoned; and it were, perhaps, as easy to point out by what means it might have succeeded better. But, as we ought by no means to confine the discovery to the utility of such a port, and as this, indeed, should be one of our least incitements to it, those lands, which lie to the east of the *Cape of Good Hope*, should seem much more worthy of our search, than those between *Africa* and *America*. One sees, indeed, by the capes already discovered, that the southern lands to the east of *Africa* approach much nigher to the equator, and extend as far as those climates, where we meet with the richest and most valuable productions of nature."

"It would be difficult to form any probable conjectures concerning the produce and inhabitants of these countries; but there is one observation sufficient to excite our curiosity, and to give us room to imagine that we should meet with some things here entirely different from what we find in the other four parts of the globe. We know that three of these parts, *viz.* *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, form but one continent. *America*, is perhaps, united to them; or, if divided, it is only by a very narrow passage. There must, therefore, always have been a communication between them all. The same plants, animals, and men, must, from time to time, have approached nigher to each other, as



curiosity as well as use ; we have a very superficial knowledge of the polar parts of the globe, and it is very unfortunate that all the navigators, who have attempted the discovery of the southern countries, though they descried the coasts, have generally been prevented by the ice from making land. The fogs, which prevail to an astonishing degree, near unfrequented lands, have been another great obstacle ; but, notwithstanding both these inconveniences, there is still reason to believe, that, by sailing from the *Cape of Good Hope*, at different seasons of the year, some part of those lands may at length be approached, which at this time make a separate world.

ANOTHER method there is to be pursued that perhaps might prove still more successful. As the ice and fogs appear to be the impediments that have prevented all the navigators, who have hitherto attempted the discovery of the southern countries, by the *Atlantic* ocean, from making land ; and as the ice has been found to exist in the summer, as well as in other seasons, why might not an attempt by the *Pacific Sea* be attended with the wished-for success ? By sailing from *Baldivia*, or any convenient port on the coast of *Chili*, and crossing the *Pacific Sea*, under the 50th degree of south latitude, there is not the least reason to apprehend that the voyage, though it has never been made, would be dangerous ; but, on the contrary, the highest probability, that, in this course, new lands will be found, since the tract that remains to be discovered on the side of the south pole, is so considerable, that, moderately speaking, it may be estimated at a fourth part of the superficies of the whole globe ; inasmuch, that there may exist in those climates, a terrestrial continent as large as *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*, taken all three together.

As we know nothing of that part of the globe, it is impossible to ascertain the proportion there may be between the surface of the land and that of the sea ; only, if we may be

the difference of climates permitted them to multiply, and they could receive no alteration but what this difference must have occasioned. But the case ought to be very different with the inhabitants and productions of this part of the world : they must have been confined to their own continent. Many persons have gone round the globe, and every one of them has left the southern lands on the same side. It is certain, therefore, that they must be detached from all other lands, and form, as it were, a world by themselves, wherein we cannot possibly foresee what may be found. The discovery of this country may therefore be of the utmost service to trade and commerce, and at the same time afford the most wonderful phenomena for the instruction and entertainment of the natural philosopher.

“ Besides, the *Terra Australis* is not confined to the large continent situated in the southern hemisphere. There is, probably, between *Japan* and *America* a number of islands, the discovery of which might be of great importance to us.

“ Can we imagine that those valuable spices, now become so necessary to all *Europe*, grow only in a few of those islands, which one nation is now in possession of ? This very people are most probably acquainted with many others that produce the same commodity ; but this is a knowledge which it is their interest to conceal.

“ In the islands on this sea, navigators assure us, that there are wild men, all over hair, with long tails ; a kind of middle species of animals between us and monkeys. I had rather have an hour’s conversation with one of these, than with the greatest wit in *Europe*.

“ But if the *India* company wanted to find a harbour in the south, between *Africa* and *America*, they ought not to have been discouraged by the small success of the first attempt. On the other hand, I cannot but think that the account of captain *Lozier*’s voyage is of itself sufficient to excite them to a more vigorous pursuit of it. He was satisfied that there was land there ; he saw it, though prevented from coming close to it, by obstacles which might, perhaps, now be avoided, or intirely removed. He could not land on account of the ice, which he was surprised to meet with in the 50th degree of latitude, and during the summer solstice. He might have known that, *cæteris paribus*, the cold in the southern is more intense than in the northern hemisphere ; because, though under the same degree of latitude with regard to both, the position of the sphere is the same, yet the distances of the earth from the sun, are different in the corresponding seasons. In our hemi-

sphere, the winter comes on when the earth is at its least distance from the sun : a circumstance which diminishes the intenseness of the cold ; whilst, on the other hand, in the southern hemisphere, they have their winter when the earth is at its greatest distance from the sun, which naturally increases the cold. Add to this, that in the southern hemisphere the winter is longer by eight days than in our own. But it would have been still more necessary to remark, that in all those places, where the sphere is oblique, the hot season does not come on till after the summer solstice, and always so much the later, in proportion to the coldness of the climate. This is well known to naturalists, and all those who have sailed towards the poles. In the northern hemisphere one often sees ice spread, even in the midst of the solstice, over those seas where, a month afterwards, there are not the least marks of it ; nay, where one may feel intense heat ; and this is the time, that is, at the coldest season of the opposite hemisphere, when we should endeavour to come to those lands which are near the poles. In these climates, as soon as the ice begins to melt, it melts very quickly, and in a few days the sea is intirely freed from it. If, therefore, Mr. *Lozier*, instead of arriving during the solstice, at the latitude where he went in search of land, had got there a month later, he would, most probably, have met with no ice at all.

“ But further, with regard to landing, ice is by no means to be considered as an obstacle that is invincible. If it floats the whale fishers, and all those who have made voyages northward, know that it is no impediment to sailing ; and as to the ice that adheres to the coast, the inhabitants on the borders of the gulphs of *Finland* and *Buthnia* have paths over it all the winter, which they even prefer to those by land. The people who live thereabouts have withal a method equally safe and simple, to preserve themselves on the ice when it begins to thaw, by carrying along with them small light boats wherever they go, in which they can easily transport themselves from one piece of ice to another. All these things are well known in the northern countries ; and if those whom the *India* company sent in search of lands to the south, had been better acquainted with the nature of cold climates, and the methods there made use of to prevent or lessen every inconvenience, it is to be supposed that by going later they would not have hindered their approach to that land, which, according to their own account, was not above a league or two from them.”

allowed



a allowed to reason from what we know of other lands, we may conclude there is more sea than land.

To form an idea of the enormous quantity of water which the seas contain, let us suppose them all of one common depth of 200 fathoms only, or the fourth part of a mile; and then, by nice calculation, it may be maintained, that there will be water enough to cover the whole globe, to the height of 600 feet; and if we reduce this body of water into one entire mass, it will be found to make a globe of more than 180 miles in diameter.

b NAVIGATORS pretend, that the southern climates are much colder than those of the same latitude about the north pole: but there is not the least appearance that this opinion is just; and it is probable that it has been adopted by voyagers, because they found ice in a latitude, in which it is seldom or never found in the north sea, which might be owing to many particular causes. We find no ice after the month of *April* on this side the 67th or 68th degrees of north latitude; and the *Indians* of *Canada* and *Hudson's Straits* affirm, that when the ice is not wholly sunk in that month, it is a presage that the rest of the year will be cold and rainy. In 1725, they had, if one may be allowed the expression, no summer, the rain pouring down from the clouds almost incessantly; and it was remarkable in that year, that the ice of the north sea not only remained unsunk in the month of *April*, at the 67th degree of latitude, but that it was buoyant till the 15th of *June*, in the latitude of 41 and 42.

c A VAST quantity of this floating ice is found in the north sea, especially near land. Whole islands of it come from the sea of *Tartary* into that of *Nova Zembla*, and into other places from the icy sea; so that it is not peculiar to the seas in which it is generated. To avoid, therefore, the inconveniencies arising from the frequent obstructions occasioned by it, captain *Monson*, in king *James's* time, instead of seeking a passage into *China* between the north lands, directed his course to the pole, and approached within two degrees of it, and there found a high sea without ice; but being opposed by the ship's company, was obliged to return. This proves, however, that ice is found at or near land, and never in the high sea; for could we suppose, contrary to all experience, that the cold could be so excessive near the poles, as to freeze the surface of the sea, we should still be at a loss to conceive, how such enormous islands of ice as are found floating, should be accumulated without some resting place at land, from whence they might afterwards be separated by the heat of the sun.

d THE two \* vessels, which the *French East India* company sent out in 1733, for the discovery of the *Terra Australis*, found ice indeed in the latitude of 47 and 48; but this ice was at no great distance from the shore, because they could plainly discern land from the mast head, though they were unable to reach it. The ice-hills might come from the inland bays, nearest the south pole; and it is no improbable conjecture, that they are brought down by the currents of the many huge rivers, with which these unknown countries may be watered, in like manner as the *Oby*, the *Janetsa*, and other vast rivers that fall into the north seas, bear down the ice-hills that choak up the *Straits of Wyegats*, and render, e by that means, the *Tartarian* sea unapproachable by that course, during the greatest part of the year; at the same time, that beyond *Nova Zembla*, and much nearer to the poles, where there are scarce any rivers, and but little land, the ice-hills are less common, and the sea more navigable; insomuch, that were navigators again to attempt a north passage to *China*, or *Japan*, they would do well to direct their course to the poles, and keep the highest seas, where certainly they would meet with little or no ice to obstruct their passage; for it is well known that salt-water, without freezing, is capable of becoming much colder than fresh-water congealed; and, consequently, that the excessive cold of the pole may render the water of the sea under it much colder than ice, and yet not freeze the surface. Add to all this, that at 80 and 82 degrees the surface of the sea, though mingled f with vast quantities of snow and fresh water, is never frozen except near the shores. From all that can be gathered from the testimony of voyagers, concerning the passage from *Europe* to *China* by the north sea, it appears that there is such a passage (B), and that the rea-

\* Mentioned in the note.

(B) Agreeable to these notions is the opinion of the above-cited author M. de *Maupertuis*: "After finding out the *Terra Australis*, another discovery, says he, directly opposite, would remain to be made in the northern seas, viz. that of a shorter passage to the *Indies* than by doubling the southern points of *Africa* or *America*. The *English*, the *Dutch*, and the *Danes*, have made many attempts to discover this passage, the utility of which has never been doubted, though the possibility of finding it is still undetermined. It has been sought by the north-east and the north-west, but without success; those attempts, however, though fruitless with regard to the adventurers, may be serviceable to those who come after

them. They have at least taught us, that if there is a passage, either the one way or the other, it must be extremely difficult; and that it must be through some of those straits, which, in the northern seas, are almost always blocked up with ice. Most of those who have gone in search of it, seem to be of opinion that it must be attempted by the north. Through fear of intense cold, by approaching too near the pole, they have not sufficiently kept off from land, and generally found the seas shut up with ice, whether it was that the places through which they wanted to pass were nothing in effect but gulphs, or whether they were really straits. It may be esteemed a kind of paradox to assert, that nigher the



son it has so often been attempted in vain, is because navigators have dreaded to leave the land, and have regarded the polar course as the broad way to certain destruction. a

*WILLIAM BARNET*, who miscarried, as well as many others, in his voyage, makes no manner of doubt but that there is a passage; and that, if he had steered from land, he might have found an open sea without ice. The *Russian* navigators sent by *Peter the Great* to reconnoitre the north seas, report, that *Nova Zembla* is not an island, but part of the main land of *Tartary*; and that to the north of *Nova Zembla* there is a free and open sea. A *Dutch* voyager assures us, that the sea frequently throws up whales on the coast of *Corea* and *Japan*, on whose backs are found sticking sometimes *English*, and sometimes *Dutch*, harpoons.

ANOTHER *Dutchman* pretends to have sailed directly under the pole, and assures us that he found it there as warm as at *Amsterdam* in summer. One of our *English* captains, by name *Goulden*, who had made three voyages to *Greenland*, informed king *Charles II.* that the masters of two *Dutch* vessels, in whose company he sailed, having been disappointed in their fishery off the *Isle of Edges*, resolved to try what discoveries they could make farther north; that on their return in about fifteen days, they told him they had been as far as the 89th degree of latitude, within one degree of the pole; and that they found there no ice, but a sea free and open, very deep, and much like that of the *Bay of Biscay*; in proof of which they produced him four journals of the two ships, which all agreed, as near as could be, in the same particulars. It is, moreover, reported in the *Philosophical Transactions*, that two navigators, who had undertaken to discover this passage, steered a course of 300 leagues to the eastward of *Nova Zembla*; but that being about to return home, the *East India* company, who had an interest that this passage should not be discovered, detained them in *India*, and secreted their journals. The *Dutch East India* company, however, were of another mind; and having fruitlessly attempted a passage from *Europe*, endeavoured to find it from *Japan*; and, in all probability, would have succeeded, had not the emperor of *Japan* prohibited to strangers all navigation with the lands of *Jesso*. c

FROM all that has been said, it may be concluded, that this passage may be found by steering a direct course from *Spitzberg* to the pole, or rather by keeping the middle of the high-sea between *Nova Zembla* and *Spitzberg*, under the 79th degree of latitude. If this sea is of any considerable breadth, there is no fear of interruption from the ice in that latitude, much less under the pole, for the reasons already alledged. In short, there is no example of a wide sea being frozen at any considerable distance from shore; the only instances of a sea being wholly frozen over, is that of the *Black Sea*, which, being narrow and scarce salt, and receiving an infinite number of rivers, from the high lands of the north, that bring down with them innumerable islands of ice, is sometimes intirely frozen to a considerable depth; and if historians may be credited, in the reign of the emperor *Copronyma*, the ice was thirty cubits thick upon it, without including twenty cubits of snow, which covered its surface after it was frozen. Though this relation seems exaggerated beyond belief, yet it is certain, that this sea is frozen over, almost every winter, at the same time that the high seas, situated some thousands of miles nearer the pole, are not frozen at all. This can only be owing to their greater saltness, and to the few ice islands they receive by the floods, in comparision to the enormous masses carried into the *Black Sea*. d

THESE ice-hills, which may be considered as the great barriers that oppose the navigation towards the poles, and have hitherto prevented the discovery of the *Terra Australis*, e

the pole they would have met with less ice, and a milder climate; but besides several accounts that we have, assuring us that the *Dutch*, by advancing near the pole, found open and calm seas, and a temperate air, natural philosophy and astronomy serve to confirm it. If the regions near the pole are all covered with large and wide seas, we shall certainly meet there with less ice than in places less northward, where the seas are shut up by lands; and the continuance of the sun in the horizon for six months, must cause a greater degree of heat, than can be lost by the smallness of his meridian altitude.

"I should therefore imagine that the best way of discovering this passage, must be close to the pole itself. At the same time that a discovery of this nature would be of infinite service to commerce, it must afford an agreeable insight into the knowledge of the globe, to learn from hence whether the point round which it turns is on land or sea, to observe the several phenomena of the load-stone, on the very spot whence it is supposed to draw its original influence, and to determine whether the *Aurora Borealis* is caused by a lumi-

nous matter from the pole, or, at least, whether the pole is perpetually overflowed with that matter from which the aurora is supposed to proceed.

"Nothing need be said concerning the dangers and difficulties attending the navigation of these seas. The nigher we approach the pole, the pilot's skill is less serviceable; at the pole itself it can be of very little consequence. We should, therefore, avoid this dangerous point; but if we once got there, we should begin our course, and leave it, as it were, to fortune, till we had got at such a distance from it, as would permit us once more to follow the established rules of navigation.

"If a great prince would appoint two or three ships every year for enterprizes of this kind, the expence would not be very considerable. Independently of their success, they would be useful in forming captains and pilots, and preparing them against all the events of long voyages; and it is hardly possible to imagine, that, amongst so many things that are still unknown on this globe, we should not, by this means, light upon some important discovery."



a prove not only, that there are immense rivers in the vicinity of those climates, where they are most frequent; but also that there are vast continents, at no very great distance, from whence those rivers derive their origin; and therefore navigators, so far from being discouraged by their appearance, should be animated to surmount every difficulty, and endeavour to accomplish the end by perseverance, or, by attempting the discovery in some other part, it being next to impossible that in the immense circle which terminates the *Terra Australis*, on the side of the equator, every part can be alike defended by such vast congelations.

b THE description which *Dampier* and other voyagers have given of *New Holland*, agrees very well with the observations already made, that this part of the globe, which lies contiguous to the *Terra Australis*, is a new country in comparison with that: *New Holland*, according to them, is a low country, without mountains, and full of swamps; whose natives are savages, without laws and without industry; a kind of proof, that, in the bordering continent, there are some such beings as the *Amazons* of *Paraguay*, and the savages of *Canada*: while at the same time, there may be found in the elevated parts of it, a people formed into society, civilized by laws, and improved by science; in like manner, as in *Peru* and *Mexico*, there were found kingdoms and empires, magnificent buildings, and curious decorations, while the few inhabitants of the low and remote countries were rude and uncivilized, with little more reason than the beasts that perish.

c THE innermost parts of *Africa* are as much unknown to us as they were to the ancients. They, as well as the moderns, had made the tour of the coast, though they have neither left us chart or description of it. *Pliny*, indeed, informs us, that the *Greeks*, in the time of *Alexander*, made the tour of *Africa*, and found in the *Arabian* sea the wreck of a *Spanish* ship; he likewise reports, that *Hanno* the *Carthaginian* general, made a voyage from *Gades* [*Cádiz*] to the *Arabian* sea, a relation of which voyage he had left in writing, though it has never been transmitted to us. *Cornelius Nepos* too takes notice, that, in his time, a person named *Eudæxus*, being persecuted by king *Lotharus*, was obliged to fly his country; and that having sailed from the *Arabian* gulph, he at length arrived at *Gades*. But, notwithstanding all these concurrent testimonies, it is yet a question, whether any of the ancients ever doubled the *Cape of Good Hope*, that course having always been considered as a new discovery made by the *Portuguese*, in their way to the *East Indies*; but to wave this inquiry, let us hear what *Abuziel*, an historian of the ninth century, relates of a fact that happened in his time.

d “THERE has, says he, been discovered in this our time, a thing quite new, and altogether unknown to those who lived before us. No-body ever believed that the sea which stretcheth from the *Indies* towards *China* had any communication with the sea of *Syria*, neither could it have entered into any-one’s mind. But see what has happened in this our time: according to the best information I can get, there has been found in the sea of *Roum* [*Mediterranean*] the wreck of an *Arabian* vessel, which a tempest had cast away, and every soul on board perished. The billows having dashed the ship to pieces, the fragments were carried by the winds and waves quite into the sea of the *Cezars*, and from thence to the strait of the *Mediterranean* sea; from whence they were at length cast on shore on the coast of *Syria*. This shews that the sea encompasseth all the coast of *China* and *Cila*, the extreme parts of *Turquestan*, and the country of the *Cezars*; that at last it runs through the straits as far as where it washes the coasts of *Syria*. The proof is drawn from the construction of the vessel, which was plainly a ship of *Siraf*, whose fabric is such that the seams were not caulked, but closed in a particular manner, as if they had been sewed; whereas all the vessels of the *Mediterranean* and the coast of *Syria* are caulked, and are not closed in that manner.”

e THE translator of this ancient relation adds these observations upon it: “*Abuziel*, says he, remarks as a thing new and strange, that a vessel could be driven from the *Indian* sea upon the coasts of *Syria*. To find a passage into the *Mediterranean*, he supposes a large extent of sea below *China*, which has a communication with the sea of the *Cezars*, or *Muscovites*. The sea beyond *Cape Coriantes* was utterly unknown to the *Arabs*, by reason of the extreme danger of the navigation, and the rudeness of the inhabitants on the coasts, whom they could neither subdue, nor civilize by commerce. The *Portuguese*, from the *Cape of Good Hope* to *Sofala*, found no *Moors* settled on the coasts, as they afterwards did in all the maritime towns from thence to *China*. *Sofala* was the last town the ancient geographers knew, but whether there was a communication from thence to *Barbary* by sea they knew not; and therefore contented themselves with describing the coast as far as *Zingo*, now called *Cafferie*. Hence it is evident, that the discovery of the passage from that sea by the *Cape of Good Hope*, is to be attributed to the *Europeans*, under the conduct of *Vasco Gama*, or at least to some who made the same voyage a few years before him. To strengthen this latter opinion, there are, it is affirmed, sea charts to be produced more early than this navigation, where this cape is marked by the name of *Fronteira da Africa*. *Anthony*



*Ibony Galvan* affirms, upon the credit of *Francisco de Sousa Tavares*, that, in 1528, the infant *Don Ferdinand* shewed him such a chart, which that prince found in the monastery of *Acobaca*, and which had been drawn 120 years before, perhaps from one said to be at *Venice* in the treasury of *St. Mark*, and which is believed to have been copied from that of *Marco Paolo*, which likewise marks this point of *Africa*, according to the testimony of *Ramusius*." The ignorance of the age in which this ancient relation is said to be written, with respect to the navigation round *Africa*, is perhaps, less to be wondered at, than the silence of the editor with respect to the passages from *Herodotus* and *Pliny*, already cited, and which seem to prove, that the ancients had made the tour of *Africa*.

Be this as it may, the coasts of *Africa* are now well known; but the attempts that have been made to penetrate into the heart of that country, have not yet so far succeeded as to furnish any satisfactory account of its inhabitants, productions, or commerce. It were, however, greatly to be wished, that by means of the river *Senegal*, or some other great river, a settlement could be established far up in the country, from whence surveys might be made, from time to time, till a thorough knowledge is acquired of its contents, the richest perhaps in the world; for it is well known, that the rivers of *Africa* bring down much gold, and as it abounds with stupendous mountains, many of them rising directly under the equator, there is not the least reason to doubt, but that they afford mines as valuable as those of *Peru* and *Brazil*; and gems and precious stones equal to, if not surpassing, all that have been yet discovered. This immense continent of *Africa* is situated in the finest climate of the world, and was formerly inhabited by mighty and populous nations, and filled with magnificent cities. Upon the whole, if we consider the immense riches of the old world, formerly drawn from those parts, we shall be inclined to think that the discoveries which might be here made, would be of great use to our trade; and if we attend to what is recorded in ancient history, concerning the arts and sciences of the inhabitants; or if we reflect on the monuments of them still remaining, all along the coast of *Egypt*, we shall no longer doubt that this part of the world is an object fully deserving of all our toil and assiduity in the search of it.

THE vast country of *North* and *East Tartary* has but very lately been perfectly known. But, if the *Russian* charts may be depended upon, we know at present the coasts of all this part of *Asia*; and it appears, that from the easternmost point of *Tartary* to the westernmost in *North America*, the distance cannot be more than 500 leagues; nay, by the latest discoveries, it should seem to be much less; for in the *Amsterdam Gazette* of *January* 24, 1747, it is said, in an article from *Petersburg*, that *M. Sieller* had discovered beyond *Kamischatka*, one of the isles of *North America*; and that he had made it appear, that one might go from thence to a port in *Russia*, by a very short passage. The jesuits and other missionaries have also pretended, that they have found in *Tartary* savages whom they had catechized in *America*, a circumstance that seems to prove, in effect, that there is a passage still shorter. *Charlevoix* goes still farther, and even pretends that the two continents are joined by the north. He says, the latest *Japonese* navigators give room to think that the passage in question is no other than a bay, above which one may pass by land from *Asia* to *America*. But this merits confirmation; because it is presumed, and with great appearance of truth, that the continent of the north pole is intirely distinct from every other continent, as well as that of the south; and from the very structure of the earth, so far as it is known, there is the highest presumptive evidence, that all the four great continents are, for wise purposes, disconnected from each other by tracts of sea.

ASTRONOMY and navigation are now brought to so great perfection, that we may reasonably hope to have one day an exact knowledge of the intire surface of the globe. The ancients, as has already been observed, knew but a very small part of it: for want of the mariners compass, they could never venture upon long voyages in the high-seas. It is, indeed, pretended, that the *Arabs* were long acquainted with the use of this instrument, before it was known in *Europe*; and that they used it in trading from the *Indian* sea to the coasts of *China*; but that opinion needs no farther refutation than this, that there is no word in the *Arabic*, *Turkish*, or *Persian* languages, to express a compass, and therefore they made use of the *Italian* word *bussole*; nay, they do not at this day know how to make a compass or arm a loadstone, and purchase all they use of the *Europeans*. Father *Martini* pretends, upon no better grounds, that the *Chinese* have known the use of the compass for more than 3000 years; if that be true, how happens it, that they have reaped such slender advantages from it? Why do they, in their voyage to *Cochin-China*, go twice as far as they need? Why do they, in making their voyages, the longest of which is to *Java*, or *Sumatra*, always coast it, without venturing out to sea? And, why have not they, as well as the *Europeans*, made discoveries of new countries and new islands, so many of which lie within their reach, and court them by a luxuriancy of the richest productions of nature, to come and take possession? It was but a few years after the discovery of this wonderful property



a property of the loadstone, that the *Europeans* undertook the longest and most hazardous voyages; they doubled the *Cape of Good Hope*, traversed the *African* and *Indian* seas; and while the generality of navigators were directing their views to the east and to the south, *Christopher Columbus* was meditating his grand enterprize to the west.

In ruminating upon this vast project, the conclusion was just and natural, that there must be immense tracts of land towards the west; for, revolving in one's mind a known part of the globe, and comparing the distance, supposing from *Spain* to *China*, with the periodical revolutions of the earth or heavens, one could not help seeing that there remained a far greater space to be discovered towards the west, than what was known eastward. It could not therefore be for want of astronomical knowledge, that the ancients did not discover the new world, but solely for want of the mariners compass. The passages of *Plato* and *Aristotle* that speak of lands far beyond the *Pillars of Hercules*, intimate that some navigators had been driven by tempest as far as *America*, from whence they had returned with infinite labour and difficulty; and we may even venture to assert, that had the ancients been fully convinced of the existence of a new continent, by the relation of these navigators, they would have deemed it wholly impracticable to shape any direct course towards it, without some better guides than the stars, or, indeed, without the knowledge of the mariners compass.

Without the assistance of this instrument, the most skilful navigators of the present times would be as much at a loss as the ancients were, to navigate the high seas; and were c any of them now hardy enough to attempt to make a known part of the new continent without it, they would, in all probability, be disappointed.

The astrolabe was an instrument well known to the ancients, by the help of which they could steer from one point of the old continent to another. It was, doubtless, owing to this, and always keeping the polar star to the left, and often taking observations, to keep them nearly in the same parallel, that the *Carthaginians*, mentioned by *Aristotle*, found means to return from those distant regions, to which they had been driven by a tempest; nevertheless, we should now look upon such an enterprize as extremely hazardous, and none would attempt it but by necessity.

It must not be forgotten, that after the discovery of the *Azores*, the *Canaries*, and the d islands of *Madeira*, by *Christopher Columbus*, the winds having long set in from the west, the sea threw upon the coasts pieces of wood of a foreign growth, the like of which had not been seen in *Europe*, and even dead bodies that were known, by many essential discriminations, to be neither *Europeans* nor *Africans*. *Columbus* remarked too, while he remained upon these islands, certain winds that blew from the west, and continued only a few days, which he therefore concluded were land-winds. Nevertheless, with the advantage of these and many more observations, and with the help of the compass besides, the difficulties he had to struggle with were so great, that nothing but the success could justify the enterprize: for, supposing the continent of the new world to have been only 500 leagues farther to the west than in effect it is, a thing which *Columbus* could neither e know nor prevent, he could never have reached it; and it is more than probable, that if he had then miscarried, this vast country had still been undiscovered. This remark will appear of more weight, when it is known that *Columbus*, though the ablest navigator of his time, was seized with fear and astonishment in his second voyage to this new world; for, having at first only found islands, he shaped his course in his next attempt more to the south, in order to discover, if he could, the main land; but was suddenly stopt in his career by currents, whose extent was so considerable, their direction so full, and their opposition so great against him, that he was constrained to change his course, and pursue his discoveries to the west. He fancied that the obstacle which prevented his progress to the south, was not so much the currents as the rising of the sea towards the canopy of heaven, which, for aught he knew, it might touch towards the south; so true it is, that in the f greatest enterprizes, the least unfavourable circumstance may turn the wisest head, and enfeeble the stoutest heart.

We shall now proceed to the divisions of this volume, beginning with *Asia*.



S E C T. I.  
Of A S I A.

## C H A P. I.

## Of A S I A in general.

*Asia in general described.*

*Its preference to the other three parts.*

A S I A is allowed to be, in all respects, by far the most considerable part of the world, <sup>a</sup> and though our innate fondness for our own country makes us give the preference to *Europe*, yet *Asia* has many singular advantages, which may justly intitle it to the first rank. It was in *Asia* that the great Author of nature planted the delicious garden of *Eden*, in which he placed the first man and woman, from whom the rest of mankind were to spring. *Asia* became again the nursery of the world after it had been destroyed by the flood, from which the descendants of *Noah* dispersed their various colonies into all other parts of the globe. It was in *Asia*, that God made choice of the delicious *Canaan*, to place his favourite nation the *Hebrews* in. It was here that the great and merciful work of our redemption was accomplished by his divine Son; and it was from hence that the light of his glorious gospel was carried into all nations, by his disciples and followers. Here it was <sup>b</sup> that the first Christian churches were founded, the first councils held, the first bishoprics erected, and the Christian faith miraculously founded, promulgated, and watered with the blood of innumerable martyrs. Lastly, it was in *Asia* that not only the first edifices were reared, and the first cities built, but likewise where the first kingdoms and monarchies were founded, whilst the other parts of the world were, if at all, inhabited only by wild beasts.

*Fertility and richness.*

NOR are these the only advantages this part of the world has over the other three; but it exceeds them in the largeness of its territories, the richness and fertility of its soil, the serenity of its air, the deliciousness of its fruits, the salubrity of its drugs, the fragrancy and balsamic quality of its plants, spices, and gums; the quantity, variety, beauty, and <sup>c</sup> value of its gems; the fineness of its silks and cottons; the richness of its metals, and many more of the like nature: upon all which accounts it was always esteemed so charming and delightful an abode, that it was the constant seat of the greatest monarchies in the world. It must be owned, indeed, that since the *Turks*, enemies to science, politeness, and liberty, have been masters of so considerable a part of it, it has quite therein lost its ancient splendor, and from the most polite and fruitful spot in all *Asia*, is become a wild uncultivated desert, and only considerable since that time for the rich commodities it affords; on which account it is still visited and resorted to by merchants of other nations. But those who have escaped the *Turkish* tyranny are still in a flourishing condition, which is rather to be attributed to the richness of the soil, than the industry of the inhabitants, who <sup>d</sup> are justly censured for their natural indolence, effeminacy, and luxury.

*Asiatics, why effeminate.*

THIS effeminacy is chiefly owing to the warmth of the climate, though perhaps heightened by custom and education, and the symptoms of it are more or less apparent, as they are seated nearer or farther from the north. It is plain that the southern climates are not productive of such robust natures as the northern; whence it may be inferred, that those *Asiatics* who live near the same latitude with us, cannot be much inferior to us in this respect; at least, it appears that several of them, particularly the *Turks* and *Tartars*, are men of as much strength and courage as any we know of. As to those who live in the more southern regions of *Asia*, what is wanting in the robust frame of their bodies, seems, in a great measure, made up to them by the vivacity of their minds, and ingenuity in various <sup>e</sup> kinds of workmanship, which our most skilful mechanics have in vain tried to imitate. Whether the reflection commonly cast on all *Asiatic* nations be altogether just, that they are naturally excessive admirers of monarchy, we will not pretend to determine, their princes having always kept them in such abject slavery, that they never had an opportunity of displaying their love of liberty, which, otherwise, we must suppose to be as natural to them as the rest of mankind. Thus much, however, is certain, that many of those nations, upon the coming of the *Dutch* among them, could not conceive how it was possible for any nation to live under a republican government, or, indeed, under any other form of it than a despotic monarchy, which is the only that obtains in all the parts of this extensive division of the globe. We shall have occasion hereafter to make some reflections on the consequences <sup>f</sup> of this despotism.



a In religion they still shew stronger marks of stupidity, a great part of *Asia* being over-run with *Mohammedanism*, as *Turkey*, *Arabia*, part of *Tartary*, and *India*. In *Persia* and the Mogul territories, they profess the same, but are of the sect of *Hali*, which differs in some particulars from the *Turks*, though both own *Mohammed* for their lawgiver, and the *Alcoran* for their divine rule of faith and life. In other parts of *Tartary*, in *China*, *Japan*, *Siam*, &c. they are generally heathens and idolaters, entertaining strange notions of the Deity, or rather of their deities, and using the most extravagant rites in their worship of them. It may be said, however, that their multiplicity of idols and superstitious ceremonies to them, are only regarded by the populace, for whom they are chiefly calculated by their priests, in order to serve the purposes of gain; but there are many excellent men, of too philosophical a turn of mind not to despise them in their hearts, whatever countenance they may seem to give them in outward appearance.

Various religions.

b BESIDES these, there are several sects of the ancient *Persians*, or followers of the great *Zoroaster*, dispersed all over *India*, and other parts of *Asia*, who acknowledge but one supreme Deity, and are distinguished by the title of fire-worshippers, because they worship it under the symbol of that element: these are enemies to all kinds of idolatry, imagery, temples, and the like, which they look upon as derogatory to the Supreme Being, who neither can nor ought to be represented by images, nor confined in temples. The *Brachmans*, reckoned the most considerable amongst those sects, are of a very humane disposition, lead a contemplative life, feed only upon vegetables, and are so far from killing any living animals for their use, or even noxious ones in their own defence, that they build even hospitals for the maintenance of such, especially the domestic, as are decayed through age, accident, or other infirmities.

Sects of the followers of Zoroaster.

c *ASIA*, as above observed, was the theatre of the first promulgation of Christianity, which spread itself with such surprising celerity and success, that even in the apostolic age, it had reached as far as *India*, if not beyond, and was almost every where received and professed. But, as the unworthiness of those converts produced that denunciation revealed to *St. John*<sup>a</sup>, the churches of *Asia Minor* were abandoned to persecution, and, in the end, utterly destroyed by the inundation of the northern barbarians, *Saracens*, *Tartars*, and *Turks*. And, though the pure light of the Gospel could never be totally extinguished by any of them, great numbers of Christians having continued faithful to it, in most parts of *Asia*, yet the tyranny of the *Mohammedan* governments has always so endeavoured to obscure it, and to keep its professors under such servile subjection, that their condition, even at this day, is rather a state of oppression and misery, than of pity and toleration.

Christianity early planted in Asia.

d *ASIA* is situated between 25 and 148 degrees of eastern longitude, and between the equator and 72 degrees of north latitude; and is divided from *Europe* by the *Archipelago*, the *Black Sea*, and the *Palus Meotis*; and thence by a line from the river *Tanais*, or *Don*, almost to the river *Oby* in *Muscovy*: from *Africa* it is separated by the *Red Sea*; and from *America* by the great *South Sea*, or *Pacific Ocean*. It is bounded on the west by the *Black Sea* and the *Mediterranean*; on the south and east by the *Arabic*, *Persian*, *Indian*, and *Chinese* oceans; but how far it reaches that way is not known; and on the north by the *Frozen Ocean*: so that almost on every side it is surrounded by the sea; only it must be observed, that its limits northwards were not discovered till the reign of the late czar *Peter the Great*, from whose survey a map of all *Russia* was afterwards printed at *Amsterdam*. According to which this northern sea begins at a little beyond the 70th degree of latitude, and extends eastward from *Greenland* along the coasts of *Muscovy*, *Siberia*, &c. till it joins the oriental, or *Japanese* sea; yet how far it may reach northward is not yet known with any certainty.

Situation and limits of Asia.

e *ASIA* comprehends to the amount of about 39 monarchies or sovereignties, four of which are stiled entire empires, as *Persia*, the territories of the Great Mogul, *China*, and *Japan*; the most considerable share of two other empires, as *Turky* and *Russia*, is in *Europe*. It has next to these 33 kingdoms, 24 of which are on *Terra Firma*, and the other seven in islands.

Asiatic empires and kingdoms.

f Of the inland kingdoms are those of, 1. *Yemen*, and 2. *Sartach*, in *Arabia*. 3. *Vizapor*. 4. *Golconda*. 5. *Bisnagar*. 6. *Calicut*, and 7. *Cochin*, in the peninsula on the other side the *Ganges*. 8. *Siam*. 9. *Cambaya*. 10. *Ava*, or *Pegu*. 11. *Acbam*. 12. *Aracham*. 13. *Tunquin*. 14. *Cochin China*, and 15. *Jaos*, in the peninsula on the other side the *Ganges*. 16. *Barantola*, or *Lassa*. 17. *Neckbat*. 18. *Cogua*, or *Great Thibet*. 19. *Nanyu*. 20. *Little Thibet*. 21. *Kalghar*. 22. *Corea*. 23. *Samarcand*, and 24. *Becha*, in *Great Tartary*. 25. *Mingrelia*, and 26. *Imeretia*, in *Georgia*.

g THE insular kingdoms are, 1. the *Maldivia Isles*. 2. *Candi*, in the isle of *Ceylon*. 3. *Achem*. 4. *Materan*. 5. *Borneo*, in the islands of those names in the Sound. 6. *Macassar*, and 7. *Ternate*, in the *Molucca Islands*.

<sup>a</sup> Apocal. ii. 5.



Besides these, we may reckon three dominions established here by the *Europeans*, as 1. Of the *Spaniards* in the *Philippine Islands*. 2. Of the *Portuguese* in *Goa*, and other coasts of *India*; and, 3. Of the *Dutch* in *Batavia*, *Java*, *Ceylon*, and other isles and coasts. To these we may add the *English*, *French*, and *Danish* settlements, particularly on the coasts of *Malabar* and *Ceromandel*, with some independent ones, or, as they are called, vagrant nations, because they have no settled abode, but move their tents from place to place, as occasion offers, or fancy leads them: the most considerable of them are the tribes called *Bengelres*, *Bedwins*, and some others in *Arabia*, and the *Kalmucks* in *Tartary*, who live in hords independent of each other.

Asiatic  
languages.

It might seem an endless task to enumerate the different tongues and dialects which are spoken in this vast extent and variety of nations; and yet it may be said in general, that *Asia* has by far the fewest of any other part of the world. This is chiefly owing to its vast over-grown empires, which commonly strive to introduce an uniformity of language amongst their respective subjects. The principal are the *Arabic*, *Persian*, *Tartaric*, *Chinese*, *Japanese*, *Malayan*, and *Malabaric*. As for the *European* languages, as well as some of the learned, they are known to few of the natives, and are only used by those foreigners who have introduced them for their own convenience.

Climates.

THERE must be a great variety of climates in *Asia*, as it extends quite from the equator to the polar circle, and beyond, or, for aught we know, even to the pole itself; for it comprehends all the temperate, the greater half of the torrid, and good part of the frigid, zones; so that it enjoys no less than 24 climates: yet, upon the whole, if we except some parts of *Arabia* and *Tartary*, and some of the more northern tracts, the whole country is rich and fruitful, and some parts of it exceedingly so. Next to *America*, it is the largest quarter of the four; its length from east to west may be computed at 4800 miles, some say 6000; and its breadth, as far as it is known, from north to south, 4300.

How divided  
in general.

IN the division of this part of the world, we shall consider it with respect only to the different dominions it is at present subject to; as, 1. *Turky*; 2. *Persia*; 3. *India*; 4. *China*; 5. *Russian Tartary*; and, 6. the *Islands*. It may, indeed, be here objected, that *Tartary* is not under one government; that *India* beyond the *Ganges* is independent of the Great *Mogul*, as *Arabia* is also of the *Turks*; and that *Georgia*, *Mingrelia*, &c. are subject partly to the last, and partly to the *Persians*, and consequently, that each should be divided into their respective parts. But we think it more eligible to avoid clogging the reader's memory with too many distinctions, for which reason we shall follow the same easy method in the following general view of the whole.

On the con-  
tinent.

1. *TURKY* in *Asia* is divided into *Western* and *Eastern*.

The western comprehends *Anatolia*, or *Asia-Minor*, *Syria*, *Palestine*, and the *Turkish Arabia*.

The eastern contains *Diarbeck*, *Turkomania*, and *Georgia*.—They all lie from south to north.

2. *PERSIA* is divided into *Northern*, *Southern*, and *Middle*.

The northern contains the provinces of *Schiwan*, *Giland*, *Cherussen*, &c.

The southern, *Cusistan*, *Fars*, *Kirman*, *Macran*, &c.

The middle, *Erack*, *Sabbestan*, *Sigistan*, &c.—All lie from west to east.

3. *ASIATIC Russia* comprehends part of *Great Tartary*, *Siberia*, and *Samoieda*.

4. *CHINA* is divided into *North* and *South*, the former of which contains the six following large provinces, including *Leaotung* without the great wall; as, *Leaotung*, *Xantung*, *Pekin*, *Xanfi*, *Honan*, and *Xenfi*.

The southern contains the ten following; as, *Nanking*, *Chikiang*, *Kiangsi*, *Tekien*, *Huquang*, *Quantung*, *Sucheen*, *Quicheu*, *Quansi*, and *Junan*.—All these extend from east to west.

5. *JAPAN*, and the land of *Yesso*.

6. The *Mogul Empire*, in which are many petty kingdoms, but chiefly those of *Delli*, *Agra*, *Cambaya*, and *Bengal*, so called from their several capitals.—The two first are inland, the others on the coasts.

7. *INDIA* comprehends, 1. the peninsula within the *Ganges*, containing the kingdoms of *Decan*, *Golconda*, *Bisnagar*, and *Malabar*, which are situated mostly northward. 2. The peninsula beyond the *Ganges*, containing those of *Pegu*, *Tunquin*, *Cochinchina*, and *Siam*, which last is subdivided into *Martaban*, *Siam*, and *Melacca*.—They lie from north to south.

Asiatic  
islands.

THE *Asiatic* islands are divided into two classes, viz.

1. THOSE in the *Indian* oceans, which are, *Ceylon*, the *Maldives*, the *Sunda Islands*, as *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Borneo*, &c. the *Spice Islands*, as *Banda*, &c. the *Moluccas*, as *Ternate*, *Tider*, &c. those of *Amboyna*, *Ceram*, *Gilola*, &c.

2. Those on the *Eastern* ocean; as the *Ladrones*, *Formosa*, and the *Philippine Islands*.



C H A P. II.

Of Anatolia, or Asia-Minor.

- a** **A**NATOLIA had formerly the name of *Asia* simply, and by way of excellency, as being the best spot in all this part of the world, and being adorned with very many noble and opulent cities, and considerable states. At present it is distinguished from the whole *Asiatic* region, by the epithet of *Minor*, or *Lesser Asia*: the name of *Anatolia* was given to it on account of its eastern situation from *Europe*, and is still called the *Levant*. It is a large peninsula, of a considerable breadth and length, which juts out between the *Mediterranean* on the south, and the *Euxine* or *Black Sea* on the north, quite to the *Archipelago* on the west, and the sea of *Marmora* on the north-west: so that it is bounded on the north by the *Euxine Sea*, or, as the *Turks* call it, *Kara Dengbi*; on the north-west by the sea of *Marmora*; on the west by the *Thracian Bosphorus*, the *Propontis*, and *Archipelago*; on the east, by the eastern part of the *Mediterranean*; and on the south by the river *Euphrates*, which divides it from *Turcomania* and *Diarbeck*, or *Diyarbeckr*. It extends from the 27th to almost the 40th degree of east longitude, and between the 37th and 41. 30. of latitude. Its utmost length from east to west, is computed to be about 600 miles, and its breadth from south to north, about 320.
- Anatolia described.*
- b** *ANATOLIA*, in its largest sense, comprehends the ancient provinces of *Galatia*, *Paphlagonia*, *Bithynia*, *Pontus*, *Mysia*, *Phrygia*, *Lydia* and *Meonia*, *Æolis*, *Ionia*, *Caria*, *Doris*, *Pamphilia*, *Pisidia*, *Cappadocia*, *Lycia*, *Lycaonia* and *Cilicia*. At present geographers commonly divide it into four parts, according to their situation. 1. *Anatolia*, properly so called, on the western part. 2. *Caramania*, on the southern. 3. *Aladulia*, on the eastern; and, 4. *Amasia*, on the northern. The *Turks*, who call this country *Anadolu*, *Nadolu*, and *Anatol Vilaiete*, divide it into five districts, which are under the government of five beglerbeks, whose residence is in the capital of each district, which are *Cotyæum*, *Tocat*, *Trabezond*, *Marosch*, and *Iconium*. These five governments are again subdivided, each into a number of sangiacates, which take their denomination from the places where each sangiac resides.
- Its limits.*
- Provinces.*
- c** This whole country is naturally rich, fertile, and healthy, though the *Turkish* tyranny has almost reduced it into a desert. Our *English* merchants travelling thither on account of trade, have often the curiosity to visit the antiquities of this once noble and famous country, and scarce finding any thing but ruins, can only lament so dreadful a change. The very fields, tho' naturally rich and well watered, lie yet uncultivated; and those grounds, which, if rightly cultivated, would produce the greatest plenty of corn, and variety of fruits, herbs, and other commodities, are over-run with weeds and brambles. Those few plains and dales that are cultivated, though after the careless and slovenly *Turkish* method, yield, notwithstanding, excellent corn of several sorts, fruits of all kinds, exquisite grapes and wines, the fairest olives, citrons, lemons, oranges, figs, dates, &c. besides abundance of coffee, rhubarb, balsam, opium, galls, and other valuable drugs and gums. To which we may add their twisted cotton, silk, grogram, yarn, goats hair, carpets, and tapestries, calicuts and cordavans of several colours, quilted coverlids, all which are from thence imported into *Europe*.
- Soil fertile, yet almost quite neglected.*
- d** The only natural rarity worth mentioning in this country is a certain kind of earth, which boils up out of the ground, and is always gathered before sun-rise, and in such quantities, that many camels are employed in carrying loads of it to soap-houses at some distance, where being mixed and boiled with oil for several days, it becomes an excellent soap. The *Franks* call it soap-earth, and it is found in the neighbouring plains above *Smyrna*. The soap that is manufactured of it is in great request, for which reason it is a considerable article in the trade of the inhabitants.
- Trade and manufacture.*
- e** ARTIFICIAL curiosities are here in great number, if we may call by that name the remains and ruins of ancient public and private buildings, cities, and palaces. Such as, 1. The vestiges of an ancient *Roman* circus and theatre near *Smyrna*, in the environs of which are often found variety of *Roman* medals. 2. About two small days journey from that city are some remains of the ancient *Tkyatira*, as appears from twelve remarkable inscriptions still extant. 3. At *Mylæssa* (formerly *Mylæssa* in *Caria*), among other noble remains, are a magnificent marble temple, dedicated to the goddess of *Rome*, and built in honour of *Augustus*, as appears from an inscription, still entire, on the front, and a stately column called *The Pillar of Menander*, with a curious temple, but by whom, or on what account erected, is not known. 4. At *Ephesus* are still to be seen several ancient churches, particularly that of *St. John*, the most entire of them all, now a *Turkish* mosque. 5. At *Laodicea*,
- Scap-earth.*
- Ancient structures and ruins.*
- now



now only inhabited by wild beasts and fowls, are still extant three noble theatres of white marble, and a stately circus, all so entire, that they might be taken for structures of modern date. 6. At *Sarâis*, now a poor mean village, though once the seat of the great and rich *Croesus*, are the remains of some ancient stately edifices, with several imperfect inscriptions. 7. At *Pergamos*, famed for being the first inventress of parchment, are the ruins of a palace of the ancient *Atalic* kings, with the ancient Christian church of *St. Sophia*, now converted into a mosque.

State of the  
Greek church.

CHRISTIANITY being barely tolerated among the *Turks*, and the patriarchs, archbishops, and bishops, whether *Greeks* or *Armenians*, as well as their sees, churches, and flocks, being not only kept under a state of deplorable poverty and servitude, but the prelates deposed, changed, promoted, or oppressed, according to the arbitrary will of the sultan and his ministers; it would be in vain to expect an exact account of these ecclesiastical dignities, whether nominal or real; so that we shall content ourselves with the bare mention of the most considerable of them through all the parts of *Asiatic Turkey*.

Patriarchates.

THE chief *Greek* patriarchates, besides that of *Constantinople*, are those of *Jerusalem*, *Alexandria*, and *Antioch*. The *Armenians* have two patriarchs, the first of which resides at *Ecmesan*, a monastery in *Georgia*, and the other at *Sis*, in *Aladulia*. The *Nestorians* are allowed one, whose residence is commonly at *Messul*, in the province of *Diarbekr*.

Archbishops.

THE archbishoprics belonging to the *Greeks*, are those of *Heraclea*, *Saloniki*, *Athens*, *Malvasia*, *Amphipolis*, *Neapoli di Romania*, *Larissa*, *Adrianople*, *Corinth*, *Nicosia*, *Janna*, *Monembasia*, *Metbymna*, *Phanarion*, *Patras*, *Proconesus*, *Amasia*, *Scutari*, *Tyre*, *Tyana*, and *Berytus*.

Bishoprics.

THE chief bishoprics of the same *Greek* church, are *Ancyra*, *Cyzicus*, *Ephesus*, *Chalcedon*, *Nice*, *Nicomedia*, *Smyrna*, *Trebizond*, *Drama*, *Mitylene*, *Serra*, *Christianopolis*, *Iconium*, now *Cogni*, *Nova Casarea*, *Chios*, *Rhodes*, and *St. John d'Acre*. As for those of the *Armenians*, *Nestorians*, and titular Roman Catholic, they are of little or no note.

No universities.

UNIVERSITIES, or any seats of learning, can hardly be expected under a government whose religion inspires men with a contempt for all kind of literature: so that if we except some few academies which the jesuits and some other orders of the church of *Rome* have, with great difficulty, been allowed to erect here, and some few *Greek* and *Armenian* schools, where their children are sent to learn to read, or perhaps to write, there are no other seminaries for learning in all this vast country: and in general, the clergy of all denominations are very ignorant, except those who have travelled, or come thither from foreign countries.

Languages.

THE chief languages spoken in this country are the *Turkish*, *Greek*, and *Armenian*, the *Latin* among the Catholics, and the *Lingua Franca*, a kind of mixt medley of language, common to the inhabitants.

First division  
of Anatolia.

ANATOLIA, properly so called, considered by modern geographers as the first part of this country, is divided into the following districts: 1. *Bitthynia*. 2. *Mysia*. 3. *Æolis*. 4. *Ionia*. 5. *Caria*. 6. *Doris*. 7. *Lydia*. 8. *Phrygia*. 9. *Galatia*. 10. *Pamphlagonia*.

1. *BITHYNIA*, the nearest province to *Turkey* in *Europe*, is parted from it only by the small strait called the *Tbracian Bosphorus*. *Prusa*, called by the *Turks* *Bursa*, still preserves a great share of its ancient opulence, though some say that its commercial concerns are much decayed, and the great concourse of merchants so much lessened, that the place is going to ruin; but this seems to be a mistake; for a caravan goes every two months from thence into *Persia*, and it is also a stage for several others that go from *Aleppo*, *Constantinople*, &c. to *Ispahan*. The *Bereftine* is a large edifice, well built, and filled with ware-houses and shops, where are exposed to sale all kinds of merchandizes, which are brought hither from the *Levant*, besides those which are manufactured in the city itself. It is well known that the *Bitthynian* silk, by far the finest in all *Turkey*, is for the most part manufactured here, besides considerable quantities brought from *Persia*, which, though much inferior in fineness, is yet wrought by the *Prusan* workmen, who are allowed to be the best in *Turkey* for weaving of hangings, tapestry, carpets, and the like, which are in great request, and therefore carried into all parts of *Europe*.

*NICE*, called by the *Turks* *Isnich*, and *Nichar*, though much fallen from its ancient grandeur, has a convenient haven on the sea of *Marmora*, opposite *Mesampola*. The country about it affords very good fruits, and excellent wines. It contains about 10,000 inhabitants, including *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and *Jews*, as well as *Turks*, who all drive a considerable commerce in corn, fruit, fine cloth, tapestry, and other *Levantine* manufactures.

*NICOMEDIA*, by the *Turks* named *Ismia*, and *Ismigimid*, is a large and populous city, with rich and beautiful bazars, or ware-houses, markets, halls, and other public edifices. It is situated on a fruitful and delicious hill, the corn, wines, and fruits, that grow thereon being reckoned inferior to none in *Turkey*. It is computed to contain about 30,000 inhabitants, *Turks*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, and *Armenians*, all carrying on a considerable trade in manufactures of silks, cottons, woollen and linen cloths, earthen ware, and glass of all sorts, which

make



a make it one of the most opulent cities in these parts. The greatest part of the saics, barques, and other trading vessels, belonging not only to this city, but even to the merchants of *Constantinople*, are built here.

*CHALCEDON* was once a city of great note, but is now dwindled almost to nothing.

2. *MYRIA* and *Lesser Phrygia* have the *Propontis* for their northern boundary; the *Hellespont* on the west; *Phrygia Major* on the east; and *Lydia* and the *Archipelago* on the south.

THE *Marmora Islands* abound with corn, wine, fruits, cotton, and pasture grounds, whereon are bred great quantities of cattle. *Præconessus*, the largest of them, is famed for its marble quarries.

b *LAMPISACUS*, now *Lampasco*, was formerly celebrated for the excellent wines it produced; and the territory about it is still covered with fine vines and pomegranates, which the *Turks* cultivate under pretence of preserving the raisins, but in fact make good wine and brandy of them.

3. *ÆOLIS* has *Phrygia Minor* on the north; the *Ægean* or *Æolian Sea* on the west; *Ionian* on the south, and *Lydia* on the east. It is scarce now remarkable in any respect; neither does it seem to enjoy any branch or article of trade.

4. *IONIA* is the next province to *Æolis*, about the boundaries of which geographers differ. Its only considerable city is,

c *SMYRNA*, by the *Turks* called *Ismyr*, one of the finest ports in the *Levant*, being situated at the bottom of a bay capable of containing the largest navy in the world; and, by its general and flourishing trade, being one of the greatest and richest cities in the *Asiatic Turkey*. The commodiousness of its harbour has rendered it the common rendezvous of the greatest merchants in all the four parts of the world, and the staple of their merchandize.

It was very considerable in the time of the *Romans*, and has all along been famed for its great commerce with all nations, especially the *English*, many of our considerable merchants residing in it, and having a consul to protect them.

d THIS city is reckoned to contain 15,000 *Turks*, 10,000 *Greeks*, and near 2,000 *Jews*, besides *Armenians*, *Franks*, and others. The whole trade here, as well as in all *Turkey*, is managed by the brokerage of the *Jews*, the *Turks* never transacting any bargain with Christians in any case, but leaving it to those subtle brokers, who are all wealthy, and live very handsomely, and some of them splendidly, by it. The whole town is a continued bazar, or fair, where nothing that can be wished for is wanting, either for cloathing, sustenance, or pleasure; because all the best commodities of *Asia* and *Europe* are brought hither, and sold at cheap rates.

e THE territory about *Smyrna* is very fertile, with fine olive trees and vines; and the wine that is made is excellent. The *European* consuls live here in great state and magnificence.

f THIS city suffered by a very extensive and devouring fire, on the 6th of *August*, 1763, which, by some fatal accident, broke out at midnight, and lasted 26 hours, involving in its progress the whole *Frank* quarter, inhabited intirely by the different factories of the foreign nations, particularly the *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, *Venetians*, *Imperial*, *Swedish*, *Danish*, and *Ragusean*. Not one merchant's nor consul's house was left standing, except the *English* consul's, and that not entire, nor without suffering great damage. Even the magazines, and the repositories of all the various merchandize, which before had been looked upon as fire proof, burst, thro' the intense violence of the flames. The scene of desolation was on all sides terrible; and the loss sustained reckoned at a million and a half of *Turkish* dollars, or near two hundred thousand pounds sterling.

5. *CARIA* is bounded on the north by *Ionian*, and the river *Mæander*; on the east by *Great Phrygia* and *Lydia*; and on the south and west by the *Icarian Sea*.

6. *DORIS* projects into the sea, and by being surrounded by it on three sides, is only joined to *Caria* on the north. It has the island of *Scio*, or *Cos*, and that of *Rhodes*, on the south and south-west.

7. *LYDIA*, or *Mæonia*, bordered to *Phrygia* on the east, to *Mysia* on the north, and to *Caria* on the south; but its limits, strictly speaking, lie between *Æolis* on the south-west, *Mysia* on the north-west, *Caria* on the south, and *Phrygia Major* on the east. In this province is the river *Pactolus*, famed for its golden sands, and the mountain *Tmolus*, celebrated for its saffron and excellent wines.

g THE country round *Tbyatira*, called by the *Turks* *Akissar*, is covered with cotton-trees and corn-fields, and a part of it, though uncultivated, with tamarisks.

*MAGNESIA*, and *Sipyllum*, called by the *Turks* *Surleteffor*, is reduced from a once large and populous city, to an ordinary town, subsisting chiefly on the manufacture of cotton yarn.



*LAODICEA*, once one of the most considerable towns in *Asia*, especially for the exchange of money, is now nothing but a vast heap of ruins. a

*DINGLISHI* is large and well provided, and has a considerable trade.

8. *PERGIA MAJOR* has *Pamphylia* on the south; *Asyia* on the west; *Bithynia* on the north; and *Galatia* on the east. This country would be vastly fruitful if well cultivated.

*COTTAUM*, now *Chintala*, is a large, populous, and flourishing town.

*SYNADA* was antiently much famed for its fine marble, which was of a beautiful white, spotted with red and purple, and of great value.

9. *GALATIA*, by the *Turks* now called *Chagre*, has *Phrygia Major* on the west; *Paphlagonia* on the north; *Pamphylia* on the south; and *Cappadocia* on the east. This country was antiently esteemed a rich fertile one, and was famed for producing the amethyst stone in great quantities. *Ancyra*, called by the *Turks* *Angouri*, formerly the capital of *Galatia*, and a noble city, is still populous. The city of *Aphion*, has its name from the quantities of opium which are made in and about it, the whole territory producing great crops of poppy, from which that excellent drug is extracted. b

10. *PAMPHLAGONIA*, by some made a part of *Galatia*, together with *Pontus*, lies on the north of *Galatia*, and is divided on the east from *Cappadocia* by the river *Halys*, and on the west by that of *Parthenius*. At present is called by the *Turks* the country of *Pender*, or *Beli*.

*HERACLEA PONTI*, now *Penderachi*, or *Eregri*, is quite sunk from its ancient splendor. c

*AMASTRIS*, now *Anastro*, from being a famed sea-port under the *Roman* and *Greek* empires, is now dwindled to nothing, by reason of the loss of its commerce.

*TEUTHRANIA*, now *Tripoly*, is still a good port town.

*SINOPE*, now *Sinape*, maintains a very profitable fishery. The country about it is fertile, if it was well cultivated; witness the many olive-trees of considerable bigness that grow in it. *Strabo* long since observed, that, in all the coasts from this city quite to *Bithynia*, there grew great numbers of trees, such as olive, maple, and walnut, with some of which the inhabitants used to build ships; and of others, such as the maple and walnut, they made fine tables, cupboards, and other utensils. The same is done at present, except that instead of tables, which the *Turks* do not use, they make sofas, and other sorts of flooring, wainscoting, and other household ornaments. d

Second division of Anatolia.

*AMASIA*, the second part of *Asia Minor*, is bounded on the north by the *Euxine Sea*; on the east by *Armenia*; on the west by *Anatolia Proper*; and on the south by *Caramania* and *Anadolia*. The town of *Amasia*, called *Amnasan* by the *Turks*, has a river which falls about sixty miles below it into the *Euxine Sea*, and is navigable and large enough to carry ships of great burden. Yet nothing of any moment is here transacted, notwithstanding its proximity to so fine a river and the sea. This province is divided into the following districts.

1. *PONTUS Polemoniacus* lies along the same *Euxine* coast, having the *Galaticus* on the west, and the *Cappadocicus* on the east.

*NEOCÆSAREA*, or *Tocat*, is the capital of this district, and is looked on as the center of the *Asiatic* commerce. The caravans of *Diarbeck* come hither in eighteen days; men on horseback perform the journey in twelve; and those that go hence to *Smyrna*, without turning to *Prusa* or *Angora*, take up about twenty-seven days on mules, and forty on camels. These caravans are often exposed to the freebooters that infest these roads; for which reason they not only go well armed, but are also escorted by *Turkish* troops. e

THE country about *Tocat* produces a great variety of excellent plants, and particularly some fossils, or subterraneous vegetations, of surprising beauty. They are something like our flints, inclosed in matrices, which, when broken, display some of the finest crystallizations that can be imagined. The greater part of the people about *Tocat*, even as far as thirty or forty miles round, are employed in iron or copper manufactures. They have their copper from the mines of *Trebizond* and *Castamboul*; the former about three, and the latter about ten days journey from their city. About a mile out of *Tocat* is a large village, chiefly inhabited by Christians, who are mostly employed in tanning of leather. f

2. *PONTUS Cappadociæ* extends from the *Polemoniacus* eastward, quite to *Colchis* and the frontiers of *Georgia*, having the *Lesser Armenia* and the river *Euphrates* for the southern, and the same *Euxine Sea* for the northern boundaries.

Third division of Anatolia.

*ALADULIA*, the third division of *Asia Minor*, in its largest sense, comprehends *Cappadocia* and the *Lesser Armenia*. It joins to the country, or beglebergate of *Trebizond* on the south, and is by the *Turks* called the beglebergate of *Munit*, or *Marasch*, and sometimes *Dulgadir*. The territory of this province is unfit for tillage, but has abundance of fine pasture grounds, on which the inhabitants breed a vast number of cattle, especially horses and camels, besides vast herds of sheep and goats. g

1. *CAPPADOCIA*, besides the great pasture grounds, produces wines and fruits in great quantities. -



a quantities, and the mountains with which it abounds, especially that long and high chain of them called *Anti-taurus*, have mines of silver, copper, iron and alium.

*MARASCH* and *Cajara* are well built and populous cities. The latter is the stage of all the caravans of the east, which here disperse themselves, each to their respective cities. The bazars are handsome and well stored, and the inhabitants quite polite.

2 *ARMENIA the Lesser*, the other district of *Aladulia*, so called to distinguish it from the *Greater Armenia*, which belongs to *Persia*, has *Greater Armenia* on the east, *Syria* on the south, the *Euxine* on the west, and *Cappadocia* on the north.

b *CARAMANIA*, the fourth division of *Asia Minor*, situate on the southernmost part, extends from north to south along the *Mediterranean* coast, which is its southern boundary, and comprehends the ancient countries of *Lycia*, *Pamphylia*, *Pisidia*, and *Cilicia*. The *Turks* call the whole province *Caraman Li*. Fourth district of Asia Minor.

1. *LYCIA*, now *Mentesiti*, is bounded on the south by the *Mediterranean*; on the north by *Phrygia Major*, and part of *Pamphylia*; on the west by *Caria*; and on the east by *Cilicia*. The mountain named *Olympus*, situate near the city of its name, was anciently famed for the excellent saffron that grew wild upon it.

c 2 *PAMPHYLIA*, another maritime part of *Caramania*, has *Lycia* on the west, *Cilicia* on the east, *Pisidia* on the north, and the *Mediterranean* on the south. The maritime parts and the low lands are naturally rich, if well cultivated. Nor are the inland up-lands, nor even mountains, unprofitable, since they serve to breed numerous herds of goats, whose hair makes excellent camblots. The territory about *Satalia*, called by the *Turks* *Satalyati*, is delightful to a high degree, being covered with citron and orange trees, which grow spontaneously, without any care, and are large, beautiful, and of exquisite fragrancy. Here is likewise the storax produced in large quantities; and it may be said of the ground in general, that a little labour would make it capable of bearing every fruit and herb that could be desired, either for use or delight. The haven is now only fit, whatever it might have been formerly, to receive small vessels.

d 3 *PISIDIA*, which lies on the north of *Pamphylia*, is small and mountainous, being situate on the west side of *Mount Taurus*, but has a good many fertile plains, and its hills afford some minerals. *Seleucia* here was anciently stiled *Ferrea*, perhaps from some iron mines or manufacture.

4 *LYCAONIA* and *Isauria* lie on the north-east of *Pisidia*, having *Cilicia* on the south, *Greater Phrygia* on the west, and *Galatia Propria* on the east. The country is flat, and naturally fertile.

e 5 *CILICIA* is bounded on the north-west by the long ridge of mountains which separate it from *Isauria* and *Lycaonia*; on the north by *Cappadocia* and *Lower Armenia*; on the east by *Comagene*; and on the south by *Syria* and the *Mediterranean*. The eastern part of it is a fine flat fertile country, the other very hilly, rocky, and barren. The *Cilicians* were the inventors of a kind of manufactory of hair-cloth, chiefly of goats-hair, called sack-cloth, and much used in the penitential humiliations of the *Jews* and primitive Christians. *Adana* is much resorted to from other towns of *Cilicia*, especially from the mountain-side, for its wines, corn, and other fruits, which are hence dispersed into the most barren parts.

### C H A P. III.

#### Of S Y R I A.

f *SYRIA*, the second considerable province of *Turkey* in *Asia*, and lying next to *Anatolia*, *Syria* is on the south-east side of it, was originally so called from the capital *Tzor*, or *Tzur*, which the *Greeks* and other nations have since softened into *Sur* and *Tyre*. It was one of the four first grand monarchies, and was promiscuously called by prophane writers, *Syria* and *Affyria*. Sacred writers always mention it as distinct from *Affyria* and *Canaan*. The *Turks* at present call it *Sourie*, or *Souristan*.

g *SYRIA*, in general, is blessed with a serene, temperate, and healthful air; a soil deep, rich, and fertile; level, delightful, and productive of every thing desirable for the uses and pleasures of life. It would at least be so, if the *Turks*, too much addicted to voluptuousness and sloth, did not so shamefully neglect it, as they commonly have all their rich conquests, and let the greatest part lie waste and uncultivated. It is notwithstanding so rich naturally in many places, that still with the least care it produces plenty of corn, wine, oil, grapes, figs, lemons, oranges, melons, honey, canes, dates, cotton, and even when left to lie at rest, abundance of aromatic and medicinal herbs. It has also abundance of rich pasture grounds, which feed vast herds of cattle, especially a fine breed of sheep, whose Air, soil, products, &c. of Syria, &c.



whose tails, wool, and fat, weigh together between twenty-five and thirty pounds, and a would be spoiled by trailing on the ground, were they not laid on a light kind of sled, which the sheep draw after them. There is likewise a beautiful kind of Syrian goat, whose ears are wide and long, and hair long and of a beautiful colour. Besides these, there is a great number of buffaloes and other oxen, camels, dromedaries, wild boars, deer of several sorts; to say nothing of hares, rabbits, and other game, and a great variety of wild fowl, such as partridges, quails, pigeons, pheasants, turtles, &c. The ground is watered by a good number of rivers, the most celebrated of which are the *Euphrates*, *Jordan*, *Casimeer*, *Orontes*, *Adonis*, *Cherfeus*, and some others of less note. The maritime parts have good convenient harbours, and the whole country is under a temperate, that is, under part of the fifth and sixth climate, and between the thirty-third and thirty-seventh degrees of north latitude; so that even in the months of *June*, *July*, and *August*, which are generally very hot and sultry, when no wind stirs, they are, as by a constant miracle of Providence, relieved by cool westerly breezes from the *Mediterranean*. Here are indeed several barren and rocky mountains, such as few countries of that extent are free from; but they are so inconsiderable in comparison of the vast spacious plains, that they may be considered as of no account; and so fat and tender are these plains, that many of them are tilled up with wooden coulter, and the plough drawn only by a single horse, or a couple of bullocks; so that, upon the whole, it may be affirmed, that were it not for the continual incursions of the *Arabs*, the tyranny of the *Turkish* government, and the frequent revolts occasioned thereby, *Syria* would be one of the richest and most delightful spots in all *Asia*. It must, however, be owned, that all these beauties and excellencies are terribly eclipsed by the many and various melancholy objects which present themselves to the eyes of travellers, such as the great number of once opulent and stately cities, to say nothing of a much greater number of goodly towns and villages, formerly in a most flourishing condition, well built and inhabited, and carrying on a considerable commerce, but now quite depopulated and laid in ruins; many ancient and magnificent christian churches, once adorned with every thing that was elegant and costly, and now either converted into mosques, with all their noble architecture and statues defaced, or reduced into ruinous heaps, and become the ordinary residence of beasts and birds of prey.

Remarkable  
mountains.

THE most remarkable mountains in this country are, the *Libanus* and *Antilibanus* in *Celo Syria*; the former on the north, and the other on the south, both of a prodigious height and extent, though it is still a matter of controversy, whether the vallies between those ridges run directly from east to west, as the <sup>b</sup> ancients affirmed, or from north to south, as some <sup>c</sup> moderns imagine. The misfortune is, that to be fully assured would require some time to examine their course, at different points, and better instruments and more exact maps, to take and regulate observations from; all which is rendered next to impossible, by the frequent incursions of the wild *Arabs*, who infest these parts, and make them in some measure inaccessible.

Cedars de-  
scribed

*LIBANUS* was always famed for its lofty cedars, with which it furnished all the neighbouring nations, particularly *Judea*, ever since the time of king *Solomon*, who built the temple of *Jerusalem*, and several of its palaces and other edifices with them; to say nothing of the vast quantities which the kings of *Syria* have since drawn from it for the same uses. At present they are reduced to a small number, and the higher parts of the mountain appear so hard and rocky, that they seem to have never borne any; and on the lower are seen only twenty of a monstrous bigness, some groupes of a lesser, and many more of a small size or bulk, intermixed with each other. These trees bear leaves much resembling our juniper, and are green all the year. In the large ones the top spreads into a perfect round, but the smaller ascend in form of a pyramid, like the cypress. Both small and great have a fragrant smell, but the latter only bear the usual fruit, which is a kind of large apple, like that of the pine, only smoother, and of a deeper brown; and which, besides exhaling a very grateful odour, contains a kind of transparent and inspissated balm, which at proper seasons oozes out at some crevices of the fruit, and falls by drops. These apples always appear in clusters at the end of the branches, and with the point upwards. *La Rocque*, a late traveller into those parts, who took some pains in examining the cedars, tells us, that the largest he met with was about seven feet in circumference; but the branches, which extended in a circular form, made a circumference of about 120. As to the height of the tree, it does not rise above six or seven feet from the ground to the first branches, but from thence forms, by the spreading of such a number of branches upwards, a prodigious, yet beautiful round, seemingly cut by art. The bark, except below about the trunk, is very smooth and sleek, and of a fine brown. The wood towards the outside is white and soft, but harder and browner towards the middle, and of a reddish colour,

<sup>b</sup> STRABO.    <sup>c</sup> MAUNDREL, RELAND, &c.



a and so very bitter, that no worm will breed or harbour in it, which is the cause of its being incorruptible.

b As to the chain of mountains which bears the name of *Libanus*, though represented by travellers as continually covered with snow, and extremely cold, *La Rocque* assures us he saw no snows the year; and so far from feeling any cold, he with his company spent the night under those cedars, without any other shelter or covering. The *Maronites* say, that those snows do not begin to fall till *December*, and continue thawing from *April* to *July*; so that the permanency of snow may be only found in some deep cavities of those mountains, where perhaps the sun hardly, if ever, shines; and it is from thence it is conveyed into most parts of *Syria*, for cooling their wines and other liquors. There is one singularity which the inhabitants recount to strangers concerning the cedars, that though the tops of them appear of that perfect round figure above described all the summer long, yet so soon as the snow begins to fall, they gradually contract and erect their branches in form of a pyramid, without which it would be impossible for them to bear the weight of the snow during so many months without breaking; but in proportion as the snow melts off of them, they resume their former and exact roundness.

c THE cedars and fine sheep mentioned a little higher, may be regarded as two great natural rarities in this country. A great many more of the same sort might be added, particularly that spot which is still shewn at the place where stood the garden of *Eden*, or Terrestrial Paradise. And indeed it is in all respects so beautiful and rich, and yields so delightful a prospect from the adjacent hills, that there is hardly another place in the world that has a fairer title to the name it bears. Its proximity to *Damascus*, the capital of *Syria*, near the fountain head of the *Jordan*; its situation between the *Tigris* or *Hiddekel*, the *Euphrates*, the *Phasis* or *Phison*, the *Araxes*, or *Gihon*, (which last has those names from its vast rapidity above all other known rivers) its bordering upon the land of *Chus*, famed for its fine gold; all these and many other marks specified by *Moses*, together with its charming and surprising fruitfulness and constant verdure, have induced a great number of commentators to settle that celebrated and so much sought after spot here, and to deem it the most valuable of all the natural rarities of this country. We shall only add one more to them, which are the several reservoirs or cavities among the inland mountains, wherein d are found great quantities of rain water perfectly petrified by the heat of the sun.

The terrestrial paradise placed here.

e THE artificial rarities of this country consist chiefly in noble ruins of cities, temples, palaces, towers, churches, and in some other fine works done in ancient times by some of the great princes that reigned in those parts. Of the first sort are the ruins of the city, castle, temple, and palace, of the once famed *Palmyra* or *Tadmor*, which, though now intirely in ruins, has still such remains of the finest marble and porphyry pillars excellently wrought, and stones of so prodigious a length, breadth, and height, as fully demonstrate the ancient magnificence of the place. 2. Several noble Christian churches lying in dismal heaps, with variety of stone coffins above ground, a great number of repositories for the dead, hewn out of the firm rock, but without any remaining inscriptions, all which may be f seen in the road between *Aleppo* and *Alexandria* or *Scanderoon*. 3. The ruins of the city of *Tyre*, once so famed for its trade, strength, and opulence. It seems still at a distance to retain something of its ancient glory; but upon a nearer inspection, exhibits nothing but a dismal confusion of broken walls, pillars, vaults, and other ruined edifices: not so much as one intire house is left standing, its present inhabitants being only a parcel of poor wretched fishermen, who harbour among those ruins, as if preserved there by a particular providence, to verify the sentence of God denounced against that proud city, "that it should become as the top of a rock, a place for fishermen to dry their nets upon." However, the east end of the once stately cathedral of *Tyre* is still standing and tolerably intire. 4. The ancient cisterns near *Roselayn*, said to have been built by king *Solomon* to supply f *Tyre*, *Hiram's* capital, with water. They still bear this name, though they seem to be of later date, and probably since the time of *Alexander the Great*; for the aqueduct which conveys water from one to the other, crosses that neck of land by which that great conqueror joined the city to the land. One of these cisterns is of an octogonal figure, twenty-two yards in diameter, and raised nine yards above ground. The natives pretend that it is bottomless, though a ten yards line shews the contrary. It contains, however, a large quantity of excellent water, and is so well supplied by its spring, that though it throws out a sufficiency to keep four mills going below it, yet it is always full. On the east side of this cistern is the aqueduct that conveyed it to *Tyre*, but has been since stopped up by the *Turks*, who have made an outlet on the opposite side, to gain a stream for grinding corn. g 5. In the spacious plain of *Antioch*, computed forty-five miles long, and nine broad, is a stately causeway crossing almost the whole breadth of it, and passing over several arches,

Artificial rarities.

<sup>a</sup> See it described in the first Vol. of this history.

<sup>e</sup> *EZEKIEL*, xxvi. 14.



under which some pleasant rivulets glide. This causeway is said to have been begun and finished in six months by Sultan *Achmet's* Grand Vizier, for the easier passage of his forces to suppress the frequent revolts in the eastern parts of this empire. 6. Two noble manuscripts of the Gospels, in the custody of the Jacobite patriarch at *Aleppo*, written on large parchments in *Syriac* characters, and these in gold and silver, adorned with great variety of curious miniature. These manuscripts are the more remarkable, as the *Greek* clergy in general throughout *Turkey* laboured under an excessive want of those sacred books, till supplied with a considerable number of them in queen *Ann's* reign, by the *English* Society for the propagation of christian knowledge, which they received with uncommon tokens of joy and gratitude.

THE language spoken by the present *Syrians* is a kind of corrupt *Arabic* or *Moresco*; besides which, most of the inhabitants of the trading cities speak a kind of mixed and corrupt *Italian*, without either connection or grammatical construction; and yet they understand each other with ease, which is more than any *European* can do without long practice, neither could he be understood if he used a greater regularity in speaking.

General divisions of Syria.

MODERN Geographers divide *Syria* into three provinces, 1. *Syria*, properly so called. 2. *Phanicia*. 3. *Judea*, or *Palestine*; according to which, the limits of *Syria* in general will be, on the west the *Mediterranean*; on the north *Mount Ananus*, and a branch of that of *Taurus*, which parts it from *Armenia Minor* and *Cilicia*; on the east, the river *Euphrates*, which parts it from *Mesopotamia*, or *Diarbeck*, or *Arabia* the Desert; and on the south *Arabia Petrea*: so that, according to those limits, the whole extent of *Syria* may be computed to stretch 400 miles, and from east to west somewhat above 200.

Turkish government of Syria.

THE present government of *Syria* is divided into three beglebergates, according to its three distinct provinces, the three chief residences of which are those of *Aleppo* for *Syria Proper*, *Tripoli* for *Phanicia*, and *Damascus* for *Palestine*. Subordinate to each of the beglebergs, are a number of *cadi's* or judges, who determine private causes, both civil and criminal; but so mercenary are they and extortioning, that not the justice of the cause, but the liberality of the party carries the point.

First division of Syria.

*SYRIA PROPER* is bounded on the west by the *Mediterranean*, on the north by the *Lesser Armenia*, on the east by *Mesopotamia*, and on the south by *Arabia Deserta* and *Phanicia*. The chief places of note in this district are, 1. *Aleppo*, its capital, which stands about sixty miles, or twenty-two leagues east from *Scanderoon*, in lat. 36. 30. east longitude 37. 50. It is the greatest and most opulent city in all *Syria*, and justly esteemed the most considerable in all the *Turkish* dominions, next to *Constantinople* and *Grand Cairo*. Some geographers take it to be the *Sepharvaim* mentioned in Scripture<sup>f</sup>; others the ancient *Hierapolis*, formerly an archiepiscopal see; but most of the Christians here are of opinion that it is the ancient *Berea*. *Latin* authors call it *Aleppum* and *Chalybon*, and the *Arabic*, *Aleb*, and *Halub*. It is built upon four hills, on the highest of which stands the castle, to the center of the town, surrounded with strong walls, built of large square stones, and flanked with large towers. This situation both of the city and castle is so healthy, and the air and sky so thin, serene, and delightful, that though the thermometer rises in *June* to the thirtieth degree, yet the people lie all night on their terraces and tops of their houses from *May* to *September* without danger, or rather with peculiar pleasure; scarce a cloud being to be seen all that time but a clear and bright sky over their heads. It has still a much greater advantage from this excellent situation, by being encompassed with a spacious, fertile, and delightful plain; but the greatest advantage it reaps, and that in an eminent degree, is from its convenient situation for commerce. Formerly, by means of its sea-port *Alexandretta* on the *Mediterranean*, as well as the gulph of *Ormus* on the *Persic Gulph*, and the river *Euphrates*, which there falls into it, the *Persians*, *Armenians*, *Arabs*, and *Indians* from that side, used to bring to it all their rich merchandizes, consisting of jewels, silks, drugs, spices, and other commodities, which before the discovery of the navigation to the *East Indies*, rendered that kind of commerce vastly richer than it has been since. It still, however, continues to be the mart for the richest commodities of *Europe*, which are brought hither chiefly by the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Venetians*, and *Genoese*, by the *Mediterranean*, and hence conveyed to *Persia* and other countries. And here also are found the best merchandizes from those parts, as raw silk, cotton, grograms, yarn, galls, and a great variety of drugs.

THE *English* merchants have a consul at *Aleppo*, as well as at *Smyrna*, and are civilly treated by the *Turks*, *English* cloths being in great esteem amongst them. The *French*, *Dutch*, *Italians*, *Arabs*, *Persians*, and *Indians*, have also their consuls, and all of them have free access to the government to complain of any injuries or grievances, which seldom fail of being redressed, especially if the application is attended with some considerable present;

<sup>f</sup> 2 KINGS, xvii. 24.



a for the place of a *Turkish* governor or commandant is his harvest, and he never fails of making the best use of the sun shine.

b This city is about three miles in circumference, has twelve gates and three large suburbs, and is divided into forty-five wards. The walls, which form an oval figure, are neither high nor strong, but are founded on the rock and flanked with towers, at the distance of sixty paces from each other. The castle, besides its garrison, is mounted with thirty cannon, is about five or six hundred paces in compass, and has but one gate, which is on the south side, and without a draw-bridge. The gates of the city are likewise without any. The suburbs are large and well built, and chiefly inhabited by Christians of different denominations. The whole amount of the inhabitants, *Jews, Turks, and Christians*, in the city and suburbs, is computed at about 250,000 souls.

c The *Turks* have about 120 mosques within and without the walls, and of these seven or eight are very magnificent. The principal of them, supposed to have been built by the empress *Melba*, mother of *Constantine the Great*, is a sumptuous edifice, and has a large court before it paved with black and white marble, and a great basin with a dome in the middle, supported by six marble pillars; and on the south a fountain covered with another dome of the like structure. Round this court runs a noble gallery of seventeen arches on one side, and eleven at each end, under which the *Turks* say their prayers after they have washed themselves. On the north side, against the middle of the front, is the stone pulpit of *John Damascene*, who formerly preached in this church. Some *Turkish* monasteries here are also very handsome, and one of them is a most stately building, ornamented with a noble fountain, a large hall paved with grey marble, and covered with a large dome, as is likewise the fine mosque belonging to it. In one of its courts is a spacious fish-pond and canal faced with white marble, and well stored with fish of several sorts; but the *Turks* suffer none of them to be caught, on pretence that those who may eat of them will fall sick. This place is shut in with a thick stone gate, and the hinges are said to be of a piece with it. There are besides three colleges in this city for teaching grammar, some branches of the liberal sciences, and a sort of philosophy and divinity, all suitable to the *Turkish* taste, and agreeable to their religion and genius: the professors have a settled salary, but the number of students is inconsiderable, the people here being more addicted to the culture of their commercial concerns than that of the muses.

d THE kans or inns, the bazars, divans, and other public edifices of *Aleppo*, are in like manner very fair and elegant, and generally make a much better figure within than on the outside, being not only very richly furnished, but adorned with variety of marble work of different fashions and colours, with fret-work ceilings, golden inscriptions, and many other embellishments. The streets are well paved, except the bazars, where the merchants and mechanics have their shops, which indeed are narrow, and have only a foot causeway on each side, with a horse-road in the middle.

e THE rest of the houses are in general better built than they commonly are in most parts of *Asiatic Turkey*, being chiefly of white stone, one story high, with terraces and small domes on the top. The inhabitants are industrious, and carry on several considerable manufactures, particularly one of fine *Turkey* leather, which they suffer no stranger to see them prepare. Gall-nuts, especially that shell of them which they call *valanede*, is one of the principal ingredients in their leather-dressing. Their manufactures of silk, camblet, and soap, are also very considerable.

f THOUGH the country in the environs of *Aleppo* is very mountainous and rocky, yet it produces great plenty of corn of all sorts, particularly in the chalky vallies; but little grass or oats are met with, the ground being too dry, and for the better part sandy. The harvest begins about the end of *April* or beginning of *May*. The lower grounds are covered with olive and other fruit trees, culinary plants, and pulse, and in short with the finest variety of every thing desirable in these respects, either for exquisite taste or beauty.

g 2. *ALEXANDRETTA*, now called *Scanderoon*, the port of *Aleppo*, is situate on the gulph of *Ajazzo*, near the sea coast, in latitude 36. 34. east longitude 36. 40. It stands on such a marshy and unhealthy ground, that at present it is but a confused heap of wretched wooden houses, inhabited mostly by *Greeks*, who entertain all the seamen and ordinary travellers that come hither: as for merchants and persons of higher rank, they are generally lodged by the consuls of their nation, who have built themselves handsome houses about a mile or two from the town, which are now increased so as to appear like a little city. During the hot months, few, who have the misfortune to come here, escape being seized with some acute disease, if they do with their lives. The very inhabitants are forced to retire to the village of *Beylan*, situate on a high hill, about four leagues off, and abounding with fresh water and excellent fruits. This hill has an opening which yields a free passage to the north-east wind, and when it blows hard, all the vessels in the harbour commonly weigh anchor, and make to the open sea, to prevent being dashed in pieces.

THIS



THIS port has a governor and some few soldiers, and is defended by an old castle, but of small use were it to be attacked by any force ; inasmuch that it is a matter of wonder that the pirates, who swarm on this coast, never attempt it. Pidgeons taught to fly with letters about their necks, keep up an expeditious correspondence between *Aleppo* and this place ; so that the rise and fall of merchandizes are soon known in both. The country round *Alexandretta* is flat and very fertile, and beyond it is a spacious plain, called the plain of *Antioch*, watered with a number of little rivers, brooks, and canals, and abounding with most necessities of life, particularly with cattle, which are turned in there to fatten.

3. *ANTIOCH*, formerly the metropolis of *Syria*, situate about thirty miles south from *Scanderoon*, and fifty-four south-west of *Aleppo*, in latitude 36. 6. and east longitude 35. 50. The *Turks* now call it *Atackia*, and have reduced it to a poor condition to what it formerly was, when the seat of the kings of *Syria*. It stands on the *Ilasi*, anciently *Orontes*, which river widens its waves gradually as it flows nearer the city, so as to appear of a considerable breadth before it. Nothing can be a more surprising, and at the same time, delightful sight, than to come to it on that river, and to view at some distance a city, as it were in a forest, or a forest in a city, from the prodigious number of plantanes, poplars, sycamores, and other trees that grow in and about it, as well as those fruit ones that grow in the gardens and other uninhabited parts of the town. The ancient *Greek* and *Roman* authors styled *Antioch* the third city in the world, the pearl, the eye, the head of the east. It was the first place where Christians had that sacred name given them, and chiefly on this account, the emperor *Justinian* who repaired it after it had been destroyed by fire, called it *Theopolis*, or the City of God. It was the residence of several emperors, the seat of learning and politeness, and remarkable for many magnificent buildings, and every thing that could raise the lustre and glory of it ; all which serve only now to render the present dismal prospect it yields to those that visit it more surprising and melancholy, as it retains very little of its ancient splendor, but the ruins of its walls, temples, a spacious canal, and some few other broken remains. As the walls still retain their ancient circuit, it is known that the city was 10,000 paces in compass, and situate partly on flat and partly on high grounds, and on these last were built the greatest part of its stately edifices. Within the thickness of the walls at a certain place there is a space left open, with a gradual and imperceptible ascent, by which loaded waggons, or any kind of carriage, may easily be drawn from the bottom of the wall quite up to the castle. Hence a competent judgment may easily be made of the strength and thickness of these walls, formerly flanked with 400 square towers, of which a good number still remain, each with a cistern in the middle, quite intire to this day.

4. *APAMEA*, situated about sixty miles almost south of *Antioch*, and about ninety from *Aleppo*, in latitude 35. 6. east longitude 37. 18. It is almost surrounded with a deep lake formed by the river *Orontes*, and has therefore no communication with the land but by a small neck or isthmus. The *Greeks* at present call it *Hama*, and though above one half of it lies in ruins, there are still several noble edifices public and private. Near the river is a superb mosque, partly encompassed with a spacious garden, and before the front stands a stately marble column adorned with bas reliefs of exquisite workmanship, and representing human figures, beasts, birds, flowers, and other curiosities. The city, which now extends less towards the hills, and more upon the plain than formerly, is every where watered with the same river, which runs quite across it. The water, by means of a machine of eighteen large wheels, is conveyed through ducts into every part of it, and into the gardens that lie without its precinct opposite the castle, a place which, though much decayed, is large and strongly built on an eminence, with large square stones, black and white intermixed. *Apamea*, formerly only a commandery, with a few soldiers, is now under a *basha*, whose government is pretty extensive.

5. *EMESA*, now *Chems* and *Aman* or *Haman*, is the last considerable town in *Syria Proper*. It is at present under the begleberg of *Damascus*, who keeps a deputy governor and a garrison in it ; and it is surrounded with good strong walls, with six handsome gates and stately towers at proper distances, and a good large ditch. Its castle, which appears to be a *Roman* work, stands on an eminence commanding the town and adjacent parts. Its ancient cathedral, now a *Turkish* mosque, is a spacious structure, supported by thirty-four marble columns, adorned with bas-reliefs and *Greek* inscriptions, but for the most part quite defaced. It is supposed to have been built by the empress *Helena*. The other public buildings, as the kans, bazars, bezeftans, caravanferas, are also very elegant and well built. The chief commerce of this place consists in silk, and some fine sorts of needle-work of silk mixed with gold and silver thread. The gardens about it, as well as the neighbouring country, are exceedingly fertile and delightful, abounding with fruits of all sorts, especially with mulberry-trees for feeding their silk-worms, which are planted in rows of considerable length, and in great regularity.



- a *PHOENICE*, or *Phœnicia*, the second province or division of *Syria*, lies along the *Mediterranean* coast, being bounded by it on the west, by *Syria Proper* on the north, by part of the same, which some geographers call *Celestria*, and by *Batanea* on the east, and by *Palestine* on the south. It is but a narrow slip of land from east to west, but has made a considerable figure in history, as well by the number of its maritime cities and commodious ports, as by the industry and ingenuity of its inhabitants, to whom are generally attributed the invention of letters, art of navigation, astronomy, merchandizing, making of glass, and many other useful discoveries. In navigation particularly they proved such expert masters, that they carried on a very extensive commerce, became exceeding wealthy, and established colonies in several parts of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*; among which, that of the *Carthaginians* was one of the most considerable. There are good grounds also for believing that they have left visible traces of the *Phœnician* tongue in almost all the islands and coasts of the *Mediterranean*.
- b

THE name of *Phœnicia* is unknown in the *Hebrew* text, and only found in the *Greek* version. The sacred books always call it *Canaan*, and the inhabitants *Canaanites*. Some derive the name of *Phœnicia* from the quantity of palm-trees with which it abounded, the *Greek* word *Phoenix* having that signification; others from the *Red Sea*, from the coasts of which they originally came to those of the *Mediterranean*; whence the *Puniceus Color*. They were dispossessed in a great measure of their country by the *Israelites* under *Joshua*, and it is thought many of them fled from him into *Africa* and other parts; at least we are told by *Procopius*, that two marble columns were found in *Tingitania*, erected near a famed fountain, with an inscription to this purpose, "We are some of those who fled from that great robber *Joshua* the son of *Nun*."

c

THE places of chief note in the modern *Phœnicia* are, 1. *Tripoli*, *Tarabolos*, or *Tripolis* of *Syria*, to distinguish it from that of *Barbary* on the coast of *Africa*, and some others of the same name in other parts, was so called from its forming three cities, each at the distance of a stade from the other; one of which belonged to the *Aradians*, or ancient kingdom of *Arad*, the second to the *Sidonians*, and the third to the *Tyrians*; but at present they are so well incorporated, that it is very probable those interstices were filled up long ago with new buildings, though the town is still divided into the upper and lower. It is pleasantly and commodiously situated in latitude 34. 30. and east longitude 36. 15. at the foot of *Mount Libanus*, whence flows a small river with a fine stream, which supplies all parts of it with fresh water. Its distance from the sea is about a mile and a half, and it has a commodious haven, which comes up within less than half a mile of the west part of it. On each side of this haven are a good number of warehouses, in which the merchants goods are deposited. The major part of the town is built between two hills, one on the east, on which stands the castle, a strong fortress, and the residence of the begleberg; the other on the west, between it and the sea; and this last is said to have been first raised, and still increasing by the constant accession of the sand blown to it from the shore. The whole town is surrounded with stout walls, and fortified with seven high and strong towers, besides the castle, which commands it on all sides. The port is rather an open sea than inclosed harbour, except that it is partly defended by two small islands, which lie about two leagues from it: but for a further security against pirates, six square castles or towers are built along the shore at proper distances, armed with some cannon. These, at the approach of any ships which they suspect to be of the corsair kind, immediately light up fires, to give notice to the trading vessels to secure themselves within the port. On all these accounts *Tripoli* is reckoned the metropolis of *Phœnicia*. It is computed to contain about 8000 houses, and between 50 and 60,000 inhabitants, *Turks*, *Jews*, and *Christians* included; but the streets are mostly narrow and the houses low. The river, which runs through it, has a good stone bridge, and turns a great number of mills with its stream; and there is scarce a garden but has some fine fountain or cascade, and even the very chambers have water conveyed into them. The people spend most of the summer-time in their gardens, where they busy themselves with their silk-worms, which is the greatest manufacture they have. The air is extremely clear and healthy, and the country round about very rich and fruitful, so that the town is supplied with every thing it wants or can wish for.

d

e

f

*TRIPOLI* was very famous in the time of the holy war, being one of the capital cities the *Christians* held in these parts. It has still some handsome buildings, among which the great mosque, formerly a *Christian* church, is a large and stately edifice. The *Jesuits* have an elegant college in it, and other *Christians* some monasteries and chapels, especially the *Capuchins*, who are the chaplains or curates of the *French* nation.

g

2. *BERYTUS*, now *Baruti*, or *Beroot*, situate in latitude 33. 58. and east longitude 36. 13. forty miles south of *Tripoli*. It was anciently so much a favourite place of *Augustus*, that he beautified and bestowed some considerable privileges on it, and called it *Julia Felix*.



*lix.* *Herod* and *Agrippa* did the same, so that it was then in a most flourishing condition, a being conveniently situated on the same coast with *Tripoli*, in a most delightful and fertile territory, and just high enough above the sea to be out of all danger of its impetuous waves. It is also supplied with plenty of fresh water from a number of neighbouring springs and small rivers that run through it. The streets are narrow, dirty, and dark, and the houses mostly mean and ill built; yet it was once an episcopal see, and the residence of the emirs who governed this country. These emirs are princes of the old *Drusians*, who fled to the mountainous parts to avoid the *Turkish* yoke, and were suffered to live in peace because they could not be easily subdued. Here *Faccardine*, the fourth emir, had his residence and palace in the reign of sultan *Morat*, having enlarged his dominions beyond those mountains where his three predecessors had lain bleaching so long, and extended them as b far along the sea-coast as from *Beroot* to *Acra* or *Ptolemais*. At length the sultan grew so jealous of his success and increasing power, that he drove him back to his ancient abode, where his posterity have continued ever since. However, the ruins of that prince's palace, which are still to be seen on the north-east part of the city, consisting of several stately courts, the curious and noble marble fountain at the entrance, the stables, dens for lions, and other wild beasts; the gardens and orangery, and many other beautiful remains, shew him to have been a person of exquisite taste, both in gardening and architecture, and to have been worthy of a better fate.

THERE is another garden with several ruins of statues and other architecture, and a tower sixty feet high, with walls twelve feet thick; from the top of which there is a full view of the whole city, though it now presents little to the sight but old ruins, among which are those of a noble amphitheatre, supposed to have been built by king *Agrippa*. c

*BERYTUS* is still a place of good trade, and a stage of the caravans that go to and from *Grand Cairo*. Its chief articles of merchandize consist in fine tapestry, silks, camblets, cinnamon, nutmegs, ginger, pepper, cassia, rhubarb, and cochineal. The sea-banks abound with mulberry, pine, lime, and other trees, and with gourds, and prodigious quantities of colocynth.

3. *SIDON*, now *Sayd*, the most ancient city and metropolis of *Phœnicia*, famed both in sacred and prophane history, and dignified by the title of great, is seated in a fertile and delightful soil, between the sea on the west, and *Mount Libanus* on the east, about thirty d miles south of *Berytus*, in latitude 33. 40. and east longitude 36. 7. It is said to have extended formerly about three miles along the coasts, but at present does not take up above one quarter of that room. The square market for cotton, all built of free stone, with great arches on every side, warehouses under, and a large gallery over them, is now one of its finest edifices, having a great number of handsome chambers round in form of a cloyster, for the use of the merchants, and a noble terrace on the top eighty feet long, from which there is a prospect of the city, country, and sea. The other buildings of any note are two large inns, the public bagnio, and the great mosque, a handsome and large structure, and in good repair. The number of the inhabitants, consisting of *Turks* and *Christians*, is computed at about 6000. One of the chief commodities of the place is that of raisins, which the basha lets to proper farmers, but obliges them to be moderate in their prices: the other merchandizes are oil, ashes, *Egyptian* soap, rice, blue silks, *Turkey* leather, cotton, fenna, pistaches, and buffaloes skins. Provisions of all sorts are in great plenty and cheap, their bread white and good, and the air so clear and pleasant, that it attracts wild beasts and birds in great numbers into the adjacent country. The suburbs abound with gardens planted with olive, mulberry, tamarinds, sycamore, and other trees. The silk-worms are kept in little huts under the mulberries, and thrive very well, unless disturbed by violent claps of thunder. The *French* consul of this place has also the title of consul of *Jerusalem*, and is obliged by the *French* king to visit that city every *Easter-tide*, under pretence of preserving the sanctuary from violation, and the friars who have the care of it, from the exactions of the *Turks*. The fortifications of *Sidon* are for the better part in a ruinous condition. The haven is unsafe, though large; and it is reported that the emir *Faccardine* abovementioned, who had made this place his chief residence, caused the entrance into it to be stopped on the side of the town, to prevent being surprised by the grand signior's gallies: this now obliges ships to ride under a small ridge of rocks about a mile from the shore, on the north part of the city. e

4. *ACRE*, or *Acco*, the last and most southern city on the *Phœnician* coast, in latitude 32. 55. east longitude 35. 47. By its excellent situation it seems to enjoy all possible advantages both by sea and land, being encompassed on the north and east sides with a spacious and fertile plain, on the west by the *Mediterranean*, and on the south by a large bay, extending from the city to *Mount Carmel*; notwithstanding which, it was never able to recover from the dreadful overthrow it received from the *Turks*, when they took it from the knights g



<sup>a</sup> knights of *Jerusalem*. If we except a large inn for the *French* factors, a mosque, and a few cottages, nothing now is to be seen but vast spacious ruins, yet such as sufficiently demonstrate its strength and opulence in former times.

<sup>b</sup> 5. *DAMASCUS*, called by the *Turks* *Scam*, stands about forty-three miles from the sea, being parted from it by a long chain of mountains, and about forty-five almost east from *Sidon*, sixty-five south-east from *Tripoli*, and about eighty-two north-east of *Acre*, in latitude 33. 37. east longitude 37. 4. Its situation is in a fertile plain, encompassed with hills, and upon the celebrated river called by the ancients *Chrysorrheus* or *Golden River*, by the *Syrians* *Parphar*, and now *Barady*, which contributes to enrich the city and country with all kinds of plenty and pleasure; insomuch that *Julian* the apostate <sup>c</sup> used to call it the city of *Jupiter*, the eye of the east; adding, that it excelled all others in the magnificence of its temples, temperate seasons, excellent fountains, number of its springs, and fruitfulness of its soil. All which is so far true, that the country produces the best corn, wines, and fruit-trees of all sorts, most of which bear all the year, and render the place so exceedingly delightful and rich, that *Mahommed* beholding it from a neighbouring mountain, dared not venture to proceed farther, lest he should be too much taken with a place which gave him such delight even at that distance; alledging that, as there could be but one paradise designed for man, he would not enjoy his in this world: but one of his successors, less scrupulous, made no difficulty of chusing it for his royal seat not many years after.

<sup>c</sup> *DAMASCUS* is famed in scripture for having been the residence of the *Syrian* kings during 300 years. The *Turks* have been in possession of it since the beginning of the sixteenth century, and it is in a much better condition than most of their other conquests. It is governed by a begleberg or basha, who has ten sangiacs under him, besides agas, cadis, and other officers, with 15,000 Janissaries, of whom 500 were appointed to guard the city, 500 to escort the caravan to *Merca*, and 500 to attend the grand signior when he goes to *Bagdad*.

<sup>d</sup> ALMOST in the heart of the city is a high castle of an oval form, mostly built of square stone, and flanked with fourteen large square towers, in which are some cannon. There is but one entrance to it, which is on the east side with a draw-bridge, kept up by stone chains of admirable contrivance, each chain consisting of sixteen links, each link about two fathoms long, and one and a half wide, all cut out of one stone; and the walls of this castle and its towers are fourteen feet thick. The city was formerly surrounded with three walls, two of which are now in ruins, and one only left standing. It has eight gates, adorned with marble portals curiously carved and inlaid; and on the inside there is generally a large square court, embellished with trees and fountains. The streets about the town are arched to keep off sun and rain, and so are most of the suburbs, in both which appear many stately houses, mosques, and delightful gardens. However, the city is far from answering within to its outward appearance, the streets being narrow and the houses low, and built of no better materials than either sun-burnt brick, or downright mud, as coarsely laid on as in our meanest cottages; hence the great inconvenience, among many others, that upon any violent rain the whole city becomes a mere quagmire. This is not done through any scarcity of stone, which is very plenty in all the neighbouring mountains, insomuch that these mud houses are ornamented with handsome portals, and some of them even of marble; and though this may seem an oddity to *Europeans*, there is nothing more common here than this uncouth mixture of mud and marble, of elegance and slovenliness. But the greatest contrast is between the external appearance and internal disposition: the latter is commonly diversified with the beauties of a large square court, which consist of a pleasing variety of fragrant trees and flowers, and marble fountains, environed with stately apartments called duans, all elegantly and richly furnished. These duans are finely floored, and embellished on the sides with variety of marble mingled in mosaic work and mazes: the ceilings and traves richly painted and gilt, and the floors decked out to the height of luxury, with cushions and carpets; to which we may add the artificial fountains playing into a marble basin before these duans, which are so disposed that at one end or other of them sunshine or shade may be enjoyed, as is best liked.

<sup>e</sup> THE public buildings bear a much better outside than the private. The chief of them all is the great mosque, formerly a Christian church, built by the emperor *Heraclius*, in honour of *Zachariah*, the father of *John the Baptist*, who is said to be buried in it. It is 300 paces long, and 60 broad, and has a stately court before it, at which the *Turks* pull off their sandals when they go through it. The pavement is with transparent stones resembling a looking-glass, and round about are pillars of marble, porphyry, and jasper of ex-



quisite beauty and workmanship, which support an arch curiously painted in mosaic. The porch has twelve large copper doors embossed with figures, and supported by porphyry pillars with gilt capitals. The walls are painted with curious figures in gold and azure, and against one of them is a hole grated with gilt iron bars, before which are a great number of lamps continually burning in honour of *Zachariah*, whose head is said to be preserved in it. This mosque is reckoned one of the stateliest in all *Turky*, and it is death for any but a musfulman to enter it. The several bazars and exchanges, kans, and public bagnios, are also very fine. The largest of the bazars consists of eighteen arches, and two rows of shops on each side. b

THE city has separate wards for every trade and calling, which are shut up every night by gates, and by day with an iron chain to keep off beasts of burthen. Upwards of 20,000 of the inhabitants are employed in making scimetars, sword blades, knives, and other cutlery work, which are in great request throughout *Turky*, on account of the fine temper their water gives the metals. Their other commodities are wines, raisins, prunes, raw and wrought silk, and all other merchandizes of *Turky*, *Arabia*, and *India*, most of which are brought by the caravans, which go and come from *Constantinople*, *Egypt*, *India*, *Aleppo*, *Bagdad*, and *Mecca*.

ON one side of the city lies a spacious grass field, called *Meidan*, or *the Green*, encompassed with gardens, through which runs a branch of the river *Barady*. About the middle is a pillar four feet high, where they pretend *Adam* was created. On one side of the green is a noble spacious hospital for pilgrims of all religions, where they are entertained for some time at the grand signior's charge. On another side is a large house where they bake biscuit for the pilgrims that travel to *Mecca*: the sultan allows them two hundred camels load of this biscuit, and the same quantity of water. There is an odd custom here of not suffering any one to ride with both legs on the same side of the horse, and for this wise reason, that *Gog* and *Magog*, who rebelled against God, rode in that manner. c

6 *BALBEC*, or *Balbeit*, situate about thirty miles north of *Damascus*, and much about the same distance east from the sea coast, in latitude 34. 5. east longitude 36. 45. This is the same place that was formerly known by the name of *Heliopolis* of *Phœnicia*, and sometimes, to distinguish it from other ancient cities, *Helicopolis* by *Lebanon*. The names *Heliopolis* and *Balbec* are words of different languages, which have nearly the same signification. The sun was worshipped by the ancient inhabitants of this country under the name of *Baal*. *Balbec* signifies the vale of *Baal*, *Balbeit* the house of *Baal*, and *Hieopolis* the city of the sun. d

THE buildings at *Balbec* appear by their ruins to have been formed on the boldest plan of architecture yet extant; but neither the age nor the founder are now certainly known. The inhabitants of the country confidently believe, that the buildings both at *Palmyra* and *Balbec* were erected by *Solomon*; an opinion which may probably have been produced, or at least confirmed by his character for wisdom and love of pleasure, with both which the magnificence, beauty, and disposition of these buildings perfectly agree; and by the mention of "*Tadmor* in the wilderness, and the tower of *Lebanon*, looking towards *Damascus*," which are said in the Old Testament to have been built by his direction. e

SOME have supposed that these ruins were a temple of the sun, built by the *Phœnicians*, because it is certain that the sun was worshipped at this place when the *Phœnicians* were in their most flourishing state. Others have thought that these buildings were erected by the *Greeks*, who succeeded the *Phœnicians* in the possession of this country, because they are of the *Corinthian* and *Ionian* order. But as they are not mentioned from the time of *Alexander's* conquest till that of *Pompey*, there is great reason to suppose that they are of later date. And this opinion is confirmed by the testimony of *John of Antioch*, surnamed *Malala*, who says that *Ælius Antoninus Pius* built a great temple to *Jupiter* at *Heliopolis*, near *Libanus* in *Phœnicia*, which was one of the wonders of the world. This indeed is the only historical authority that has yet been discovered with respect to the buildings at *Balbec*. It is probable, however, that they did not exist when *Pompey* went through *Heliopolis* to *Damascus*, because the writers of that time, who mention less remarkable structures with admiration, take no notice of any such building; and it is certain that they did exist in the time of *Caracalla*, because *Heliopolis* is to be seen on many of his coins; and vows in favour of him and his empress are recorded in two inscriptions, the remains of which are still to be seen on the pedestals of the columns of the great portico of the temple. f

IF the buildings at *Balbec* were erected between the time of *Pompey* and *Caracalla*, it is probable in the highest degree that they were the work of *Antoninus Pius*, as the taste of the architecture is like that of his time, and there is the positive evidence of *Malala* in his favour. It may perhaps be objected, that this temple is not mentioned by *Julius Capitolinus*, who wrote the life of *Antoninus*, and enumerates his buildings; but it must be considered that the work of *Julius Capitolinus* is known to be so extremely defective, that though g

*Antoninus*



- a *Antoninus* reigned one and twenty years, and transmitted to posterity the character of one of the best of princes that ever ruled, yet the particulars that merited such extraordinary praise are utterly unknown.

*ABULFARAGIUS* says that a temple was built here by *Constantine*, and adds, that he abolished a custom permitting the promiscuous use of women.

It is in vain to search for any information on this subject among writers of later date, for church history affords little more than the names of bishops and martyrs of *Heliopolis*; and as soon as Christianity was driven out by *Mahomedanism*, this part of the country fell under the government of the caliphs, called the *Omniades*, an incurious and therefore ignorant race, during whose time nothing is recorded of *Balbec*, but that it was then

- b a considerable city. The ancient name *Balbec* during this time was restored, instead of *Heliopolis*, which was probably a translation of *Balbec*, or at least substituted for it when it passed out of the possession of its own native oriental inhabitants.

THE remains of this temple were by the caliphs converted into a fortress. It must, however, be remembered, that at *Balbec* there are two great ruins, and that nothing certain can be determined to which of the two the information which may be collected from the preceding citations and reflections should be referred, except that the great temple appears never to have been completely finished; that the two buildings are so similar, as to render it highly probable, that one was an imitation of the other, and that there is no appearance of great difference in their antiquity.

- c HERE it may be not amiss to observe, that something is discoverable in the climate, soil, and situation of these ancient seats of idolatry, which would naturally influence peculiar deviations from the true worship of one, eternal, self-existent Being, the father of nature, most merciful, and almighty.

THUS, in countries where the violent heat of the sun is destructive of vegetation, it was natural to suppose that the worship of that planet would be the effect of fear, an act of homage paid rather to power than beneficence, and attended with propitiatory sacrifices, as we find it was at *Heliopolis*, even of the human kind.

- d IT is natural also to suppose, that the gentle and lambent light of the stars would produce an act of adoration, in which love was rather predominant than fear. The manner of life, which in these countries has been, during many ages, exactly the same, naturally drew the attention of the people to these objects, which, in the bold figure of eastern eloquence, are called the host of heaven. They have always been used to sleep upon the house-top, with no covering but the sky, which unavoidably presents itself, with all its stars, upon every interruption of rest, when silence and solitude strongly dispose the mind to contemplation. If the night happens to be devoted not to sleep but to travel, as the heat of the climate frequently makes necessary, those who traverse the desert, dreary and boundless, without tree or water, mountain or valley, must necessarily be agreeably relieved from such a prospect, by looking upward to that cheerful brightness, which measures their time, directs their course, and illumines their way.

- e THE *Jews*, in their passage through the wilderness, seem to have caught the infection of idolatry from the same cause; and *Job*, as the strongest test of his integrity to God, declares, "That his heart had not been secretly inticed, nor had his mouth kissed his hand, when he beheld the sun as he shined, or the moon walking in her brightness."

UPON the whole, however unconnected the natural history of a country and its mythology may seem, even *Egypt* had some objects of divine worship, which were so peculiarly the growth of its soil, that they could never be transplanted, notwithstanding the fondness of antiquity for all the absurdities of that country.

- f As superstition travelled northward, she changed her garb with her country, and the delightful mixture of hills and vales, groves and water in *Greece*, gave birth to *Oreades*, *Dryades*, and *Naiades*, with all the varieties of that fanciful mythology, which only such a poet as *Homer*, in such a country, could have wrought into that system, which the poets of every other nation have thought fit to adopt.

BUT to return to *Balbec*: though its ruins strike the mind with an air of grandeur beyond any thing extant, and are an eminent proof of the magnificence of the ancient architecture, yet its present state is inconsiderable, being but meanly built and poorly inhabited. It lies on the east side of a well watered and fruitful valley, and is surrounded with a wall of square stone, to the extent of about a mile and a half in circumference.

- g *PALESTINE* is the third province or division of *Syria*. It is indifferently called *Palestine*, *Judea*, the *Holy Land*, and the *Land of Canaan*. The first name was given it on account of the *Philistines*, who possessed a great part of it; but the word *Palestine*, commonly taken in a larger sense, signified the whole *Land of Canaan*, otherwise called the *Land of Promise*, because God had promised it to *Abraham* and his posterity; and in this sense it comprehended all the land of *Judea* on both sides of the river *Jordan*; having the *Mediterranean*



*rancau* on the west, *Syria* and *Phœnicia* on the north, *Arabia Deserta* on the east, and *Petrea* a on the south. The name of *Judea* was given to it from *Judah*, whose tribe was the chief of the twelve, and possessed the most fertile part of the whole land. The Christians stile it by way of excellence, the *Holy Land*, partly on account of the signal favours it had received from the Divine Providence, who made choice of it for the habitation of his holiness (in which sense the *Jews* did also dignify it with that title) but much more for its being the scene of *Christ's* birth and preaching, and in which he finished the great work of our redemption.

*Its extent, &c.* Its extent is from  $31\frac{1}{2}$  to 33. 20. of latitude, and 34. 50. to 37. 15. of east longitude; so that it lies under the fourth and fifth climates, and its longest day is about fourteen hours and fifteen minutes. b

*Ancient fertility.* So rich and fruitful was this once happy spot, that it is emphatically styled in holy writ, "a land that floweth with milk and honey; a land of brooks and waters; of fountains and depths that spring out of the vallies and hills; a land of wheat and barley; of vines, figs, pomegranates; of oil, olives, and honey; a land where was no scarcity of any thing; whose stones were iron, and out of whose mountains they digged up brass;" all which the *Israelites* found to be literally true. To these we may add the excellent temperature of its air, which was never disturbed with excessive heats or colds; the natural fatness and fertility of its soil, which neither required dunging nor manuring, could be plowed with a single yoke of oxen, and spontaneously produced a great variety of fine flowers, herbs, plants, and fruits. The excellency of its corn was so sweet to the taste, that the bread of *Jerusalem* was preferred to all others; and the great plenty of it was such, that it not only nourished all its numerous inhabitants, but could furnish other neighbouring kingdoms with great quantities of it, besides oil and other of its commodities. It likewise abounded with pulse of all sorts, and with fruits of all kinds, of exquisite taste: the latter might in some sense be called perpetual, because the new buds appeared on the same boughs, even before the old fruit was ripe. Of those buds they made very delightful pickles, and noble sweetmeats of their citrons and apples of paradise, which last commonly hung by hundreds in a cluster as large as eggs, and of an excellent taste and flavour. Their vines yielded grapes three times a year, and their best wines were those that were made about *Beth'ebem*. They had also great plenty of dates, melons, sugar-canes, cotton, cedar, cypress, and d other trees that produced excellent turpentine and balsams, besides their so much celebrated balsam of *Gilead*.

*Present barrenness whence occasioned.* At present, the greatest part of this country lies so barren and neglected, that except a few figs, pomegranates, palm-trees, oranges, and some vines, there remain no traces of its ancient fertility and plenty. If any part is better cultivated, it is that which is governed by *Arabian* princes, tributary to the grand signior; but even the best of these come so vastly short of what we read of it when in its flourishing state, that many of our modern travellers have found their faith much staggered at the sight of so many naked rocks, mountains, precipices, wildernesses, barren and parched up plains; and have thought it difficult to conceive, how such a country, considering its small extent, should have been able to maintain such a prodigious number of people as we read were in it; much less how it could supply other countries with such quantities of provisions. But it must be considered that it was then inhabited by an industrious nation, who improved every inch of their land; that those naked rocks and barren places were formerly covered with fruitful earth; that the kings of it were not above encouraging all kind of agriculture, even by their own example, and that they had the blessing of God annexed to their endeavours; whereas now it is inhabited by a poor negligent set of people groaning under intolerable slavery and oppression, and every way discouraged from making the best of their ground, had they a less natural aversion to agriculture than they have: to which we may add, that there is no forming any idea of its ancient state, when under a blessing, from its present one when under a visible curse; and if we had no other, nor better authorities, that alone of the emperor *Julian* the apostate, a sworn enemy to the *Jews* and Christians, as well as to all the sacred books, would be more than sufficient to remove all those difficulties, who speaks often in his Epistles of the perpetuity as well as quantity and excellence of the fruits of *Judea*, and highly commends the country for its richness and fecundity. f

MODERN *Palestine* is governed by a beglerbeg, whose seat, as before mentioned, is at *Damascus*, and has under him seven sangiaks, the first for *Damascus*, the rest for *Jerusalem*, *Aglum*, *Barbura*, *Scifat*, *Gaza*, and *Nabolas*.

*Modern Jerusalem described.* JERUSALEM, in its modern state, called by the *Turks* *Cudsembaric*, and *Cudscherif*, is reduced by their oppressive tyranny into the condition of a poor thinly inhabited town of about three miles at most in circumference. It is situate on a rocky mountain, with very steep ascents on all sides, except to the north; the vallies at the bottom are deep, and at some distance environed with hills. The soil is for the most part stony, yet affords corn, wine, g



a wine, and olives, where cultivated; but scarce any thing except grass, heath, and other spontaneous herbs and shrubs, which are left to run up to seed, grow at a distance from the city.

THE emperor *Adrian*, after its destruction by *Titus*, built a new city upon part of the old one, and called it *Ælia Capitolina*; and the Christians, in opposition to the *Jews*, being permitted to live in it, were accordingly in possession of it about 500 years. Towards the middle of that epocha it was rebuilt, enlarged, and adorned with many magnificent structures by the empress *Helena*, mother of *Constantine the Great*, and by birth a *British* lady. Her piety having induced her to visit the theatre of that grand transaction, the redemption of the world, and having found the city running to decay in many places, she  
b caused all the rubbish which had been heaped on the sacred spots where our Lord suffered and was buried, to be cleared away; and, as the historians of those times relate, found the cross on which he died, with those of the two thieves that were crucified with him, and a miracle shewed her that of the saviour of mankind. The rubbish being thus removed from *Mount Calvary* and other sacred places, she caused a magnificent church to be built upon it, spacious enough to enclose them all.

THIS church is still standing and in good repair. Its walls are of stone, the roof of cedar; the east end includes *Mount Calvary*, and the west the holy sepulchre, which is covered with a stately cupola, supported by sixteen massive columns encrusted with marble. The center of this dome is open at the top just over the sepulchre; and over the  
c high altar at the east end is another cupola: the nave of the church constitutes the choir, and in the inside isles are shewn the places where the most remarkable passages of our Lord's passion were transacted, together with the tombs of *Godfrey* and *Baldwin*, the two first Christian kings of *Jerusalem*. In a chapel, after an ascent of twenty-two steps, is shewn that part of *Mount Calvary* where *Christ* was crucified, and the very hole where his cross was fixed. Here is a sumptuous altar with three crosses, and before it hang forty-six lamps of great value, which are kept continually burning. Adjoining to this is another small chapel, fronting also the body of the church: at the west end is that of the sepulchre, which is hewn in that form in the solid rock, and has a small dome or lanthorn on the top, supported by pillars of porphyry. The cloister round the sepulchre is divided into  
d fundry chapels appropriated to the several sects of Christians that reside there, such as *Greeks*, *Armenians*, *Maronites*, *Jacobites*, *Copts*, *Abyssines*, *Georgians*, and some others; and on the north-west are the apartments of the *Latins*: those who have the care of the church are obliged to reside there constantly, the *Turks* keeping the keys of it, and not suffering them to go out, so that they are even under a necessity of receiving their provisions in at a wicket. At *Easter* the pilgrims paying fee, are admitted to see the ceremony of that festival performed. Great numbers of them go in on the eve of *Good Friday*, and continue there till *Easter Monday*. That time they employ in visiting all the sacred places, and assisting at all the religious ceremonies performed in them.

THIS church is the chief support of the town, the whole trade of the place consisting in  
e accommodating the pilgrims with conveniencies, and the fees which they pay to the government for the liberty of going into it, yield a very considerable revenue; upon which account the sangiac resides here with his officers and soldiers, who, besides the usual dues, frequently extort money from the *Franciscans*, whose convent is the common receptacle of all pilgrims, and for which they have considerable allowances from the pope and other princes, besides the presents those strangers usually make them at their departure.

BESIDES this great church, some others and a number of chapels were built by the same empress over those places, where any remarkable transactions had been performed, either in or about the city; as one where *Christ* eat the last supper, having been since destroyed, a  
f *Turkish* mosque was erected ever it: another, where the palace of *Caiaphas* stood, and where our Saviour was buffeted and mocked; and another at the sepulchre of his blessed mother at *Bethlehem*. These are the principal; but on the south-east part of the city, upon *Mount Moriah*, there is an edifice commonly called *Solomon's Temple*, standing indeed in the place where it anciently stood; but as we are well assured that it was so totally destroyed by the *Romans*, according to our Saviour's prediction, that one stone was not left upon another, it is not easy to guess by whom this mock fabric was raised. The entrance to it is at the east end under an octagonal building, adorned with a cupola roof and lanthorn, and forwards towards the west is a fair direct isle, like that of a church, the whole surrounded with a large square court walled on every side. The extent of this place is 570 common paces long, and 370 broad. In the midst, where stood the *Jewish Sanctum Sanctorum*,  
g there is now a *Turkish* mosque, neither considerable for its largeness nor structure, though making a stately figure by the advantage of its situation. This spacious inclosure is held in such veneration by the *Turks*, that a stranger cannot approach the borders of it without being in danger of forfeiting his life, or, which is worse, his religion. It lies on

Great church described.

Other edifices.

the



the top of the mount, opposite that of *Olives*, having the valley of *Jebosaphat* between them; and one may still discern marks of the immense labour it must have cost to level such a spacious area upon so strong and rocky a mountain.

Pilate's house.

NEAR this temple is the sangiac's house, said to have been formerly that of *Pontius Pilate*, and before the castle *Antonio*, built by *Herod the Great*. Here are shewn the stairs which our Saviour ascended, (at least new ones instead of them; for the old, called *Scala Sancta*, are pretended to be at *Rome*); the window or gallery where he was shewn by *Pilate* to his implacable enemies, with the contemptuous words, *Behold the man!* the way he passed through to the place of his crucifixion, called the *Dolorous way*; the spot where he was assisted by *Simon the Cyrenean* in bearing his cross; that where his blessed mother fainted away at the sight of so tragical a spectacle, and where a church was formerly built, but is now gone to decay; and that where *St. Veronica* wiped the sweat off his face with her handkerchief, which received the impression of it. Besides these, a great many other antiquities are shewn to strangers in the city and its environs, particularly the valley of *Jebosaphat* and *Gebinnon*, the field of blood, that part of the garden of *Mount Olivet* where *Christ* prayed in his extreme agony, the place where *St. Peter* denied him, and where he wept for his apostacy.

Mount Olivet.

*MOUNT OLIVET* stands near the city on the east side, and is reckoned near a mile in height. On the summit is a chapel built over the place of our Saviour's ascension, on the floor of which, in the solid rock, is shewn the print of one of his feet. The building is but twelve feet in diameter, being of a round form, with a cupola supported by pillars of white marble, and still kept in good repair. It was built by the empress *Helena*, together with a stately temple over, and a monastery contiguous to it, both which are now gone to total decay. The city of *Jerusalem* is still walled round, and has an old castle on the west side; but neither are of any great strength at present, whatever they might have been formerly.

Bethlehem.

*BETHLEHEM*, a famed city in its ancient state, but now reduced to a sorry village, is seated on a hill, in a pleasant and fertile plain, about seven miles south from *Jerusalem*. It is still justly celebrated for having been the place of our Saviour's birth, and for the great concourse of Christians who resort to it for visiting the humble grot and manger where he was laid. *St. Helena* erected a noble temple over it, the roof of which is cedar, supported by four stately rows of white marble pillars, ten in a row, and the wall is faced with the same stone. *Hebron*, now called *Elkabil*, the ancient seat of *David* before he took *Jerusalem*, stands on a ridge of mountains, which overlook a most delicious valley twenty miles south from *Jerusalem*. The old city is now in ruins, but near it is a village with a handsome church, built by *St. Helena*, over the cave where the old patriarchs were buried. It is now converted into a mosque, and held in great veneration both by *Turks* and *Christians*. *Hebron*, inconsiderable as it is in all other respects, is still the capital of a district called, "The territory of the friends of God," and consisting of about twenty-five other villages.

Hebron.

BESIDES the places just mentioned, there are scarce any other of note in *Palestine*, except *Joppa*, now *Jaffa*, and *Gaza*; the first, once a famed city and *Mediterranean* port, now retaining nothing of its ancient beauty but its charming situation and prospect; and the second, still remarkable for many noble monuments of its former grandeur, such as marble colonades and other fragments; and burying places, with all the tombs of the same stone curiously wrought.

Late earthquakes in Syria.

BEFORE we conclude this article, it is necessary to observe in regard to *Syria* in general, that it suffered greatly by earthquakes in the year 1759. The spring of this year was unusually dry, the summer temperate, and the autumn, though the rains came on towards the end of *September*, might be esteemed much drier than in other years. On the morning of *June* 10, a slight shock of an earthquake was felt at *Aleppo*; *October* 30th, about four in the morning there was a pretty severe shock, which lasted somewhat more than a minute, but did no damage. In about ten minutes after there was a second shock, but the tremulous motion was less violent, and did not last above fifteen seconds. It had rained a little in the preceding evening, and when the earthquake happened, the west-wind blew fresh, the sky was cloudy, and it lightened.

THE same shock was felt at *Damascus*, *Tripoli*, *Seidon*, *Acra*, and along the coast of *Syria*; and *Damascus*, *Acra*, and *Seidon*, had suffered some injury from it. But this was only an alarm to what happened on the 25th of *November*. The morning had been serene, some clouds arose after noon, and the evening was remarkably hazy, with little or no wind. About half an hour after seven at night, the earthquake came on: the motion at first was gently tremulous, increasing by degrees, till the vibrations became more distinct, and, at

Philosoph. Transact. vol. 51. part 2. for the year 1760.



- a the same time, so strong as to shake the walls of the houses with considerable violence; they again became more gentle, and thus changed alternately several times during the shock, which lasted in all about two minutes. In about eight minutes after this was over, a slight shock of a few seconds duration succeeded. The thermometer at *Aleppo* was at 50, and the barometer stood at 28.9, the mercury suffering no alteration. Excepting a few old walls, *Aleppo* received no fresh marks of ruin; none of the oldest minarets, or spires of the *Turkish* mosques having suffered. Its effects at *Antioch* were more formidable, many houses having been thrown down and some few people killed. It proved fatal to *Damascus*; one third of the city was thrown down, and some accounts made the loss of the inhabitants to amount to 30,000; but in circumstances of such general horror and confusion, little accuracy can be expected, and more especially from the eastern disposition to exaggeration. *Tripoli* suffered rather more than *Aleppo*; three minarets, and two or three houses were thrown down, while the walls of numbers of the houses were rent. At *Seidon*, great part of the *Franks'* kane, or inn, was overthrown, and some of the *Europeans* narrowly escaped with their lives. *Acra* and *Latakia* suffered little, besides rents in some of the walls; but *Saphat*, not far from *Acra*, was totally destroyed, together with the greater part of the inhabitants.

THESE earthquakes occasioned a universal panic all over *Syria*; several other shocks were felt in *December*, and a few very slight ones in *January*; since which time all has been quiet.

## C H A P IV.

## Of A R A B I A.

- c CONTIGUOUS to the provinces we have just now described, lies *Arabia*, the third and last division of the western *Asiatic Turkey*. This country is of very considerable extent, reaching from 13 degrees to 31  $\frac{1}{2}$  of latitude, and from 43. to 60. of east longitude; that is, 22  $\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, or 1350 miles from north to south, and 27 degrees, or 1620 miles from east to west. Some modern geographers give it a much greater extent, and others a less; and considering how little we are acquainted with that country, it is no wonder if we find some difference amongst those who have written of it. Whatever its true breadth is, which is computed from *Jodda* on the west, to *Cape Rosella* on the east; it is much contracted in the middle and both ends, especially on the north side, where it runs into a narrow point between *Syria* and *Palestine*, and *Diarbeck*. *Arabia* lies between the second, third, fourth, and fifth climates; so that their longest day in the south is about fourteen hours and a half, and in the north eighteen hours and a half. This vast difference of climates, joined to the nature of the soil in many parts of it, makes the country to be mostly barren, hot, and dry; to afford but little sustenance to man or beast, and consequently to be but thinly inhabited. Such as it is, it is bounded on the east by the *Arabian* or *Persian* gulph, and part of the *Arabian* sea; on the west by the *Red Sea*; on the north by *Palestine* and *Syria Proper*; and on the south by part of the main ocean.

Extent of  
Arabia.

Climates.

- c THIS country has all along preserved its ancient name among most nations; but when it had it is not agreed. Some derive it from the *Hebrew* ערבי *Harabi*, which signifies a robber or free-booter, as that nation is known to have always been; others from another signification of that *Hebrew* word implying mixture, or a mixt multitude, which sense is no less agreeable to their character; for there is no room to doubt but that they have been much intermingled with other nations, and are accordingly styled by the prophet <sup>h</sup> *Jeremiah*, "the mixed people that dwell in the wilderness." They were again mingled with the *Saracens*, whose name imports both a thief and inhabitant of the desert; to say nothing of those *Canaanites*, who likewise incorporated with them on being driven out of their country by the *Israelites*.

Whence the  
name of Ara-  
bia.

- f THIS country, though so very large and remote, is perhaps the best described by ancient geographers of any in *Asia*, which is the more remarkable, as its inhabitants are not known to have made any figure in the world, till the decline of the *Roman* empire, when *Heraclius*, then emperor of the east, made use of them against the *Persians*, and formed them to military discipline, of which they appear to have been quite ignorant till then. The whole country is by both ancients and moderns divided into, 1. *Arabia Deserta*, or *Desert*. 2. *Arabia Petraea*, or *Stony*. 3. *Arabia Felix*, or *Happy*. Joined together,

Division of  
Arabia.

<sup>h</sup> Chap. xxv. 24.



Air and soil.

they make the largest peninsula in the known world, and under some of the hottest climates of it, part being under the Torrid zone, and the Tropic of Cancer passing over *Arabia Felix*. The air on the northern parts is vastly hot during the six summer months, the sky being seldom or ever overcast with clouds; but on the southern it is much more temperate, being qualified with refreshing dews, which fall almost every night in great abundance. The very names of the three *Arabias*, as lying between the second and fifth climates, sufficiently declare the nature of their soil; the northern being extremely barren, and incumbered with huge formidable rocks, the other overspread with vast mountains of sand: but the southern, deservedly stiled the *Happy*, is blessed with an excellent soil, and is extraordinary fertile in many places. Yet, upon the whole, the country is but poorly watered, having very few mountains, springs, or rivers, and these small and shallow, and very little rain, or any other moistening to the land, than the dews just mentioned: and tho' a little is sufficient to satisfy nature, yet the far greater part of the country does not yield enough for its support; the best of it is found about the sea coasts, and along the banks of rivers, which are consequently better inhabited; but here even they are obliged to hold most of their markets in the night, by reason of the excessive heat of the day.

Produce.

THE product of *Arabia* is aloes, cassia, spikenard, frankincense, myrrh, manna, and other valuable gums; cinnamon, pepper, cardamum, dates, oranges, lemons, pomegranates, figs, and other fruits; honey and wax in plenty; and in their seas they have great quantities of the best coral and pearls. Among other domestic animals in this country, the camels, (C) which it breeds in great numbers, are of singular use for carriage, especially for the caravans, and seem purposely created by Divine Providence for this dry and sultry soil, which affords no water in many days travelling. This creature is so formed and supplied by nature, that it can throw up the liquids of its stomach into its throat, so that during three days it requires no water, and can even subsist a whole fortnight without any. The camels usually carry 600 weight upon their backs, which need never be taken off during the whole journey; for they naturally kneel down to rest, and in due time rise with their load. Here are also horses and very fleet, but small and ill shaped, used mostly by those *Arabs* who live upon spoil and robbery.

Complexion and character of the Arabs.

THE *Arabs* in general are of a swarthy complexion, mean stature, raw-boned, and very swift of foot; their voices are effeminate as well as their temper; they have no settled habitations, except those that live on the sea-coasts, but rove from place to place, sleeping under tents, which they pitch at night, wherever their conveniency or fancy leads them. *Ammianus Marcellinus*, a judicious *Roman* author, gives us the following character of them. "They are a people whom we are neither to wish for our friends nor our enemies; a martial people half naked, clad as far as the groin with painted cassocks, ranging up and down on camels, and swift horses, as well in peace as in troublesome times. They are neither used to plow, plant, nor till the ground, but wander from place to place without either house or home, or any constant habitation. They neither are governed by any laws, nor can brook any restraint. They cannot even endure to be long confined to the same soil and climate; their manner of living being always fleeting like ravenous kites, who snatch up their prey in their flight, but never tarry if it requires any time to carry it off. Their food is commonly such venison and fowls as they catch, or milk, or such herbs as fall in their way, knowing nothing either of corn or wine. Their wives they only hire for a time; who, though for a shew of matrimony, they present their husbands with a spear and tent, yet can easily part with them whenever they please. Both sexes are excessively addicted to lust; the women, as roving as the men, married in one place, and brought to bed in another, leave their children where they fall, without any farther care of them." This character exactly tallies with their present, as may appear from the relations of those

(C) There are four sorts of camels, which are thus distinguished: the *Turkman* camel, the *Arab* camel, the dromedary, and the camel with two bunches on his back.

The *Turkman* camel is much stronger, larger, more hairy, and of a darker colour than the others. Its common load is 800 weight, but it sometimes carries much more. This animal cannot bear heat, and is therefore never worked in *June*, *July*, or *August*.

The *Arab* camel seldom carries above 500 weight, but can endure heat, and will subsist on the dry thistles and other plants which it picks up in the deserts as it goes along with its burden. Some have been known to travel fifteen days without water; but if they are suffered to drink as much as they will after such an abstinence, it is great odds that the

quantity will kill them.

The dromedary is only a high breed of the *Arab* camel, from which it differs only in being of a lighter colour and more elegant make, except that instead of the solemn walk to which the others are accustomed, it paces and will go as far in one day as they will go in three.

The camel of two bunches is of the *Persian* breed, and differs only in this single particular from the *Arab* camel. The great strength of these creatures, and their usefulness as beasts of burden, has probably concurred with other causes to prevent the use of wheel carriages in most parts of *Asia*, for few are found, except a clumsy machine used to bring large stones from the quarries.



a travellers who have had an occasion to visit this country, or the misfortune to fall into their hands. All are unanimous in representing them as a rude and rapacious crew, strolling about in droves, constantly watching after their prey, catching at all that comes within their reach, sly and silent, falling upon you before you are aware, and fleeing before you can think of pursuing; sparing neither life nor any thing that falls in their way, but plundering whole countries and caravans, and murdering all that make head to resist.

b THE *Turks*, however, who have subdued the greater part of them, exert frequently their utmost to keep them in awe. But though *Arabia* is reckoned under their government, it may notwithstanding be more properly said to be rather under their protection than dependence. The cherif of *Mecca*, reputed a descendant of *Mohammed*, is still possessed of very large dominions; and a number of other *Arabian* princes hold themselves independent. Those in *Arabia Felix* are indeed kept under some restraint by the *Turkish* gallies on the *Red Sea*, but the rest are left to range on the mountainous parts; some in the deserts of *Lybia* and *Thebais*, others in the frontiers of *Idumea*, *Syria*, and *Palestine*. These the *Turkish* bashas do what they can to suppress, and often cut off such as fall into their hands. But multitudes still subsist there, by retiring into the mountains and deserts, where no army can come at them. Some nearer *Syria* are a little more orderly, and seek a livelihood by the making of pot-ash; they are *Mohammedans*, of the sect of *Abulmazar*. The rest, more out of reach, being supplied by *Persia* with powder and fire arms, are the most formidable and mischievous to the *Turks*. Those on the borders of *Egypt* are c the poorest and most miserable, except some few to whom the *Turks* give lands, to defend the frontiers against the rest. The grand signior keeps generally 30,000 men in pay to defend the pilgrims that go to *Mecca* and *Medina*, and the caravans against the *Arabs*; and for the same purpose, makes very considerable presents to the cherif of *Mecca*, the greatest of all the *Arabian* independent princes: but notwithstanding all these precautions, they often boldly assail the caravans, and it is not long since they cut off one of no less than 7000 pilgrims, who were on their return from performing their devotions at the tombs of their prophets.

d THOUGH the far greater number of the *Arabs* are in effect guilty of the immoral practices attributed to them; yet many of them shew the reverse in their conduct of life, especially such as live in towns, and apply themselves to trade and commerce, to arts and sciences, in which they generally excel. This is more particularly true with respect to the ancient *Arabs*, whose extraordinary performances in physic, astronomy, and mathematics, shew them to have been men of great genius and application. They are even to this day allowed to be very ingenious, subtle, witty, generous, and great admirers of poetry and eloquence; though, on the other hand, reckoned very superstitious and vindictive. And as to their living upon plunder, those that reckon themselves the immediate descendants of *Ishmael*, are so far from disowning or being ashamed of it, that they repute themselves the only nation entitled to that way of living; because *Abraham*, the father of their progenitor, is recorded to have sent him away without any portion, from which they infer c that he left him the whole world to range in at pleasure. We must not, however, forget that the (D) figures we use in arithmetic are not only allowed to have been invented by

A better sort of Arabs.

(D) The following letters on the *Arabic* numerals, may not be unacceptable to the curious reader.

Letter from Mr. *Ames*, secretary to the society of antiquarians in *London*, to Dr. *Bervis*; in which were inclosed some ancient dates found in the pulling down part of *London bridge* in 1758.

S I R,

"I had about two years ago, in some remarks on a date found among the rubbish in taking down the *Black-Swan-inn* in *Helborn*, given my opinion, that our numerical characters were first brought into *England* at the return of *Richard I.* from the holy wars, (1) and that probably our people had learned them among the *Saracens*; but that it was some time after this that they were received among us, or our people were convinced of their utility.

Now having looked further into this matter, I continue still of the same mind, and would willingly be informed from you how early the characters were introduced into astronomical manuscripts in *England*, as I know you must have sought after such in the libraries: for how astronomers could carry on their calcu-

lations in the *Roman* way of notation, I am not able to conceive.

The *Arabians* and *Persians* are said to have had these characters many ages ago; and it is certain they are to be met with in *Arabic* books of great antiquity; but then it is held, that they had them from the more eastern nations: perhaps some of your foreign correspondents may be able to clear up this point.

I shewed you and Sir *Hans Sloane* a little manuscript of recipe's in physic, wherein there are abundance of numeral characters for expressing the subdivisions of weights, used about the time of *Henry III.* The marks are so odd and many, that I cannot represent them without a copper-plate, as we have no type or letter to exhibit them withal. One thing is very singular, that when their number went beyond ten, they were obliged to put the *Roman* numerals over them, to shew their power and value, as

xi xix xx c cccc M vi. M. &c.  
10.1, 10.9, 20, 100, 800, 1000. 6000.

Soon after, or about this time, they changed the *Arabic* five, o, to u or q, or drew a stroke through it

(1) He came back to England in 1124.

thus,



them, but do actually retain their ancient form; and, if we may believe the *Portuguese*, who a  
traded with them, several of their princes have fine libraries, with many *Greek* and *Latin* au-  
thors compleat, of which we have only fragments.

Language.

THE vulgar language used in the three *Arabias* is the *Arabesque*, or corrupt *Arabic*, which is also spoken with some variation of dialect over a great part of the eastern countries. The true ancient *Arabic* is a dialect of the *Hebrew*, and esteemed as very necessary for understanding the Old Testament: it is not commonly spoke, but taught in schools, as *Greek* and *Latin* among us, and this is the language only of the learned, and that which the *Mohammedans* in general have adopted for their worship.

Religion.

CHRISTIANITY was first preached in *Arabia* by St. Paul and some others of his eminent disciples, so that it received the light of the gospel from the earliest time; but this light b  
in many parts was much clouded, if not totally eclipsed, long before the grand impostor *Mohammed* appeared, whose religion the *Arabs* soon embraced, as most suitable to their wicked inclinations.

thus,  $\Theta$ , or  $\Phi$ . The invention of printing finally settled their form, as they have remained ever since.

The earliest date in *Arabic* characters that I have met with here, was published in quarto, in the year 1734, by my late worthy friend Mr. David Casley, among 150 specimens of various manners of writing (some few of which are still to be disposed of by his widow) is 1292, (2) which some read 'one thousand two hundred ninety-seven,' from the similitude of the last figure, to our present 7, though I think it like enough to the second figure to stand for 'one thousand two hundred ninety-two.'

Some will have it that the *Moors* brought the *Arabic* figures into *Spain* and *Portugal*, in the beginning of the eighth century, when they over-run those countries, from whence we learned them; this I think too far back, as we had then but little commerce; besides, had it been so, we should have met with them frequently in manuscripts of ancients times than we do; however, this I chuse to submit to your judgment, and am,

Sir, yours, &c.'

Dr. Bevis's answer to the foregoing.

Dear Sir,

"I am so little versed in matters of antiquity, that I do not know to whom you could have applied less qualified to give you satisfaction than myself. All I can say is, that it seems to me probable enough that king *Richard's* return from the East might bring us the first notice of the *Indian* or *Arabic* numerals; I always thought the proofs Dr. Wallis alledges for their much greater antiquity among us, too precarious to be relied upon; and I find that far better judges are of the same opinion. The oldest manuscript I can remember to have seen, penned in *England*, where these characters are used, was in the library of the late *William Jones*, Esq; F. R. S. and, I suppose, passed after his death, with his whole most valuable collection of mathematical books, into the hands of the Earl of *Macclesfield*: it is a large folio, written by *Richard Wallingford*, monk, and afterwards abbot of *St. Albans*, finished in 1326, and intituled *Albion*,

consisting of astronomical canons or rules, and tables; the figures of *four* and *five* being very like those you have specified in your letter,

After all, perhaps the *Arabians* themselves were not perfectly acquainted with the use of the characters in question, above a century or two before *Richard's* return; in support of which conjecture of mine, I will offer one plain fact to your consideration. We have in the *Boaleian* library an *Arabic* manuscript of *Ibn Younis*, a famous astronomer, who flourished at the latter end of the tenth century, as we know from his observations of some eclipses near *Cairo*, recorded in another manuscript of his, brought into *Europe* by *Goliush*, and deposited in the public library at *Leyden*. All the numerals employed in the *Oxford* book, as our learned friend the Rev. Mr. Costard assures me, who collated it at my request, are the *Arabic* figures; and, what is very remarkable, wherever any number is expressed by them, it is immediately after explained in words at length; thus, if 123 is set down, "one hundred twenty and three" immediately follows.

Yours, &c.

Account and representation of the ancient inscriptions before mentioned.

These old dates, as has been said, were found in pulling down part of *London-bridge*, in order to its repair, in the year 1758.

N<sup>o</sup>. I. is *Anno Domini* 1447, the stone 9 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches deep, and 16 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide, the letters raised.

N<sup>o</sup> II. is *Anno Domini* 1509, the stone 10 inches deep, and 13 $\frac{3}{4}$  inches wide. The final character supposed to be the old mark for *Southwark*.

N<sup>o</sup> III. is *Anno Domini* 1514, the stone 9 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches deep, and 11 $\frac{1}{2}$  inches wide. The marks between which the date is inclosed, are supposed to be Sir *Roger Achiley's*, lord mayor of *London* in 1511, and, in 1514, senior alderman, perhaps of *Bridgeward*.

It is like they were laid in at three several repairs, in the years specified by their respective dates. They are all as fresh as if new cut, and then in the possession of Mr. *Hudson*, the bridge master.

(2) See the original in the Cottonian library Vespasian A. 111. on a strict copy in plate xv. of Mr. Casley's book.



THE



- a THE barrenness of the adjoining parts of *Arabia* to the neighbouring countries, may be a natural reason why it was never conquered; otherwise the spices, balm, gums, and other valuable products of *Arabia Felix*, which they were all sufficiently acquainted with, must undoubtedly have tempted some of them to have made a conquest of it. *Mohammed*, by broaching his new religion, laid the foundation for a new monarchy among the *Arabs*, who before had stood under their own government, divided into many kingdoms, states, and tribes; and since this memorable epoch, his religion found so many admirers, that it spread itself over the greatest part of *Asia* and *Africa*, and even over some considerable provinces of *Europe*: for they were his disciples who conquered and founded the four great monarchies or empires of *Turky*, *Persia*, *Morocco*, and *Fez*, and the Great *Mogul*, to say nothing of the several countries they hold in *India*, in all which *Mohammedanism* is universally professed.

*Arabia never  
conquered.*

*Progress of the  
Mohammedan  
religion.*

- b *MOHAMMED* was a person of obscure birth and mean fortune, but having had the good luck to get into the service of a wealthy merchant of *Mecca*, and after his death, into the favour of his widow, so far as to be accepted of for her second husband, he saw himself at once secured in the possession of a plentiful estate, which for some years he improved by the advantages of a considerable traffick. Having had little or no education, he was consequently very illiterate, but so far compensated that defect by his subtle and aspiring genius, or rather immoderate ambition, that he quickly grew into the reputation of a prophet and law-giver. It is said, that the falling sickness he was subject to, did, in a great measure, facilitate his design, by pretending it to be super natural, or rather fits of divine transports, wherein his soul was wafted up to heaven, and conversed with the Deity.
- c A monk named *Sergius*, banished his country for *Nestorianism*, and a person of more learning than honesty, became intimately acquainted with him, and by the help of a renegado *Jew*, assisted him in forming his new religion, which became thus a motley mixture of *Arianism*, *Judaism*, and *Gentilism*; yet so artfully contrived, that it had the appearance of a new religion, not so much founded upon, as levelled against the other three.

*Account of  
Mohammed  
and his pro-  
ceedings.*

- d THE ground-work of this pretended revelation was, that the *Pagans* were miserably corrupted by their polytheism and idolatries; that the *Jews*, instead of keeping, having perverted the law of *Moses*, God sent them his next great prophet *Jesus* to enforce the true observance of the *Mosaic* law, and to instruct them in a more sublime doctrine; and that the *Christians* having corrupted the doctrine of *Jesus Christ*, which had also been rejected by the *Jews*, God had now sent his last and greatest prophet *Mohammed* with a new and more excellent law, which he was to enforce the acceptance and observation of, not by miracles, as *Jesus* and *Moses* had done, but by the power of the sword. Thus, by acknowledging *Moses* to be a prophet and lawgiver, he endeavoured to gain the *Jews*; by granting *Jesus Christ* to be a greater prophet, which was almost all that the *Arians* allowed him to be, he was likely to make proselytes of many of them; and by declaring peremptorily against *Pagan* idolatry and the use of images in Christian churches, he obliged the *Iconoclasts*, who with the *Arians* had been expelled the *Roman* empire, and were become very numerous and turbulent in *Arabia*.
- e In another point of view and of singular consequence, by allowing polygamy, with other carnal irregularities and gratifications, and by promising a profusion of the same pleasures in his paradise, he captivated the libertines and effeminate, insomuch that he found the number of his disciples and adherents to increase much beyond his expectation, though his principal dependance was upon his last and most cogent motive, the sword, as it must force into his religion effectually those whom the other means could be only a kind invitation to. And indeed, he not only made use of this last expedient himself whenever the others failed, but also strictly enjoined it to all his votaries and followers, promising to all those who should lose their lives in that service, a most special kind of beatitude in the other world, and such as could not but inspire their hearts with a more than ordinary zeal for the propagation of his doctrine.
- f

- g THE magistrates of *Mecca* were, however, so surprized and alarmed at the more than ordinary success of this bold pretender, that they issued out an order for having him apprehended; but he having timely notice of it, fled to *Medina*, before it took effect, and there propagated his doctrine with such surprising ease and celerity, that it soon spread itself on all sides. It happened about that time that the *Saracens*, who had served the Christian emperors in some of their wars against the *Persians*, and did not think themselves sufficiently rewarded, grew to such a height of discontent, that having surprized *Damascus*, they made it the seat of their government for several centuries. These afterwards readily fell in with *Mohammed's* doctrine; as most suitable to their licentious way of living, and made him emperor of *Aravia*.

*MOHAMMED*, thus raised and supported, took upon him the title of cherif or caliph, which signifies both a prince and high-priest. Others say, this title was not assumed by



him, but by his successor. Be that as it may, this new monarch began his reign in 622, and had not only strongly established his throne, but greatly enlarged his dominions before his death, which happened ten years after, in 632. a

Mohammed's  
successors.

THE short reign of two years of his successor *Ubabezer*, did not permit him to make any great conquests; but the next, called *Omar*, subdued *Persia*, *Egypt*, *Palestine*, and part of *Syria* and *Mesopotamia*. *Omar* was succeeded by *Osman*, who added *Barbary* to his other dominions, and raised that empire to the greatest height it ever arrived to in that succession; for about this time they began to fall into parties and dissensions. *Hali*, *Mohammed's* kinsman, claimed the government, and after some hard struggles obtained it, but was shortly after murdered by *Osman*, who ascending the throne again, made some further additions to the old conquests, particularly *Asia Minor*, *Armenia*, and *Mesopotamia*, all which became subject to the *Mohammedan Saracens*, with the countries abovementioned, within the space of 100 years. This was a swift and wonderful progress, but it was such as it pleased the divine Providence to permit, as a just punishment for the sins and enormities that had long crept into the eastern empire. *Mohammed* the second of that name, and the twentieth caliph, removed about the year 760, the imperial seat to *Bagdad*, anciently *Babylon*. About 100 years after, *Egypt* revolted and set up a caliph of its own, to whom the *Arabs* on that side submitted; but that race was, after a series of 300 years, quite routed by the *Turks*; and these again by the *Mamelucs*, who held the government about 250 years, 'till at length, both *Egypt* and all the other dominions of that caliphate were subjected to the *Turkish* empire in 1517, by sultan *Selim I.* Having thus far premised all that seemed necessary concerning *Arabia* in general, we shall now speak of it more distinctly in respect to its threefold division. b

First division  
of Arabia.

*ARABIA DESERTA*, now called *Berii Arbistan*, and *Beriara*, is bounded, according to modern geographers, on the east by *Diarbec* and the *Persian* territory of *Hierack*; on the west by *Palestine* and *Arabia Petraea*; on the north by the river *Euphrates* and part of *Syria*; and on the south by *Arabia Felix*, from which it is divided by a long chain of mountains. This country was anciently the abode of the *Israelites*, after their passage of the *Red Sea*, during 40 years; and was properly enough called by *Moses* the *Wilderness* or *Desert*; for such it is in reality for the greater part, being intersected almost every where by high barren mountains, and many of its plains being nothing but great sands and heaths, through which travellers must not only carry provisions, but steer by the stars and mariners compass. *Guiland Melchior*, who had gone through some of them, tells us, that there are neither men, beasts, birds, nor trees, grass or pasture to be seen, nor any thing but vast rolling sands and craggy mountains. The lands, however, that lie to the east along the river *Euphrates*, afford both plants and food for the inhabitants of some cities and towns seated on that part; and there are some plains and vallies that feed great numbers of sheep, goats, and other small cattle, which love to brouze upon such dry lands; but larger cattle, except camels, can find here no subsistence. c

Manner of  
living of the  
Arabs of the  
Desert.

THE method of the inhabitants of the Desert is to seek after fresh pastures near rivers, lakes, or other places where they can find water for themselves and cattle; and when they have cleared that ground, to look out for another. They are often forced to shift their places sooner than they otherwise would, because their living upon plunder makes them afraid of being surpris'd in their abode, if they should tarry too long in it. They entertain so high an opinion of their descent, that they think it beneath them to follow any mechanic employment, or even to cultivate the land; so that their whole exercise is getting on horseback, and feeding of flocks. They acknowledge no other government than that of their own emirs or princes; and seldom, if ever, have any commerce, much less alliance, with the *Turks* and *Moors*, whom they look upon as bastards and the usurpers of their inheritance. Their emirs have each of them a certain number of cheikhs under them, according to the extent of their dominions. The word cheikh signifies an elder, and is equally applied to governors and men of learning: but the former are lords over a certain number of families, out of which they chuse the soldiery they require, both for their plundering expeditions and to guard their respective camps. In other cases they value themselves much for their fidelity and hospitality to strangers, and especially to those who put themselves under their protection. d

Their arms.

THE *Arabs* in general use no other weapons but the spear, sword, an iron club, and sometimes a hatchet. As for muskets, pistols, much less cannon, they never use them in their warlike, or rather pilfering expeditions, except those on the frontiers of *Persia*, who are sometimes supplied with small fire arms to annoy the *Turks*. The *Turks* themselves never let them have any, it being death for any of the sultan's subjects to furnish them with any kind of arms or ammunition. The *Arabs* of the Desert are so little used to gunpowder, that the very noise and smoke of it throw them into a panic; but they are very expert marksmen with their darts and spear, and are generally well mounted, and their horses are e



a are very swift. It is commonly with the best of these horses that their emirs present the Porte, which is all the tribute they pay to it.

SOME of these *Arabs*, by the name of *Bedoui*, have spread themselves as far as *Egypt*, roving from place to place with their wives, children, and cattle. Their children go quite naked; the women wear only a blue kind of long shift, and the men a coarse linnen jacket reaching down to their knees. They all profess the *Mohammedan* religion, but give themselves little trouble about the disputed meanings of the *Alcoran*. They keep the feasts and fasts of the *Turkish* law with great exactness, and use the same washings and hours of prayer. On the circumcision of a child, which is not performed till old enough to remember what is done to him, they make great rejoicings, and commonly sacrifice an ox or

Bedoui Arab.

b a few sheep. the flesh of which they distribute to the poorer sort. They are reported to be very civil and humane to Christians, whom they suffer to live amongst them with all freedom, insomuch, that to see their hospitable manner of living in these communities, and to meet them on the high way in their excursions, one would not believe them to be the same people.

THEY have neither laws, lawyers, nor judges amongst them; the cheikhs reconcile all their differences, and the emir is the only person to whom they appeal from their sentence. They affect an extraordinary gravity in their discourse and behaviour, and look upon the beard to be such a distinguishing gift of Providence, that no greater punishment can be inflicted upon them than cutting it off. Wives shew their respect to their

Have no laws.

Respect for their beards.

c husbands, children to their parents, and friends to each other, by often kissing their beards. They commonly are more careful for the genealogies of their horses than for their own, especially those of an extraordinary breed. The dropping of every colt, extraction, colour, marks, are all attested by a witness, and registered by a cheikh, or man of letters, of which a faithful copy is produced and authenticated when the creature comes to be sold. Some of them bear a price from 1000 to 2000 crowns.

Exact genealogy of their horses.

ARABIA DESERTA is divided into three principalities.

Division of Arabia Deserta.

1 ANNA, whose chief cities are, *Anna*, on the *Euphrates*, the capital; *Mescheid-Ursin*, *Sumiscabac*, *Thema*, *Anna* on the *Astan*, *Balsora*, and *Tangia*.

d 2 ARGIA, whose chief towns are, *Argia*, the capital; *Taraa*, *Maaden*, *Thaalabah*, *Aladi Dhatb Aliantin*.

3 CHAVABEDA, whose chief towns are, *Chavabeda*, *Tangia*, *Merab*, *Megiarab*.

THE principalities of *Argia* and *Chavabeda* are almost unknown to us; and of the first principality, only *Anna* and *Balsora* are of any note.

ANNA was formerly a famed mart-town, but now not much frequented. It stands in latitude 33. 57. east longitude 42. 10. on the river *Euphrates*, in a fruitful and pleasant soil, and has but two streets, which are divided by the river. That on the *Mesopotamian* side is about two miles long, but thinly peopled, and by none but tradesmen; that on the opposite side is about six miles in length, and it is there that the principal inhabitants of the city dwell. Every house has some ground belonging to it, and these grounds are loaded with noble fruit-trees, as lemons, oranges, citrons, quinces, figs, dates, pomegranates, olives, all very large and in great plenty. Some of the flat grounds are sown with corn and other grain, which yield likewise a considerable crop. This city is the common rendezvous of all the robbers that infest the country, and from which they disperse themselves into all parts of the desert. Here they meet to consult; here they hold their grand council, and deliberate where to rob next with success. It is with great difficulty that the *Turkish* aga, and the janisseries, who are kept here, can levy the tribute imposed by the *Turks* on all the commodities carried through this city, which is one of the great thorough-fares for the passing of the caravans (E) that go to and from *Aleppo*, *Tripoli*, *Damascus*, *Bagdad*, and some other parts of the *Turkish* empire.

(E) Having often mentioned these caravans, it will not be foreign to our purpose to lay here before the reader a sketch of what is intended by them.

A caravan signifies a company or assembly of travellers and pilgrims, and more particularly of merchants, who for their greater security, and in order to assist each other, travel together through the deserts, and other dangerous places, which are infested with *Arabs* or robbers. This is the true origin of these associations.

In order to form a caravan, it is necessary to have the permission in writing of a sovereign prince, approved, and as it were authenticated at least by two sovereign princes of the neighbourhood. That permission must comprehend the number of men, carriages,

and quantity of merchandizes, of which the caravan is to be composed. These merchants to whom the caravan belongs, appoint its officers, and regulate every thing relating to its police or government during the march.

There are commonly four principal officers, namely the caravanbachi, or head of the caravan, the captain of the march, the captain of stay or rest, and the captain of the distribution. The first has the uncontrollable command and authority over all others, and gives them his orders; the second is absolute during the march; the third exerts his authority only when the caravan stops, and encamps in some place; the fourth orders the disposition of every part of the caravan, in case of an attack or battle. This mili-



*BALSORA*, or *Bassora*, is situate in latitude 30. 17. east longitude 49. 10. on the confluence of the *Euphrates* and *Tigris* into the *Persian* gulph. It was once famed for a mar-

tary officer has also during the march, the inspection over the distribution of the provisions, which is conducted under his management, by several inferior officers, who are obliged to give security to the master of the caravan, each of them having the care of a certain number of men, elephants, dromedaries, camels, &c. which they undertake to conduct, and furnish with provisions at their own risque, according to the agreement stipulated.

A fifth officer of the caravan is the paymaster, or treasurer, who has under him a great many clerks and interpreters, appointed to keep accurate journals of whatever happens; and it is by those journals, signed by the superior officers, that the owners of the caravan judge whether they have been well or ill served, or conducted.

Another kind of officers are the *Arabian* mathematicians, without whom no caravan will presume to set out: there are commonly three of them in the large caravans. These officers perform the functions both of quarter-master and of aids de camp, leading the troops when the caravan is attacked, and assigning the quarters where the caravan is appointed to encamp.

Five sorts of caravans are generally distinguished; the heavy caravans, composed of elephants, dromedaries, camels, and horses; the light caravans, which have but few elephants; the common caravans, where there are none of those animals; the horse-caravans, in which they use neither dromedaries nor camels; and, lastly, the sea-caravans, consisting of a number of merchant ships, under the convoy of some men of war: whence it may be observed, that the idea of a caravan is not so entirely restrained to the land, but that there may also be marine caravans.

The proportion observed in the heavy caravan is as follows: when there are 500 elephants, they add 1000 dromedaries and 2000 horses at least; and then the escort is composed of 4000 men on horseback. Two men are required for leading one elephant, five for three dromedaries, and seven for eleven camels. This multitude of servants, together with the officers, and the passengers, whose number is not fixed, serve to support the escort, in case of a fight, and render the caravan more formidable, and consequently more secure. The passengers indeed are not, according to the laws and usages of this mercantile cavalcade, obliged to fight; but in case of refusing so to do, they are not intitled to any provisions whatever from the caravan, even though they should offer to pay an extra price for them.

The officers and servants are paid every *Monday*, unless it be a new or full moon, in which case the payment is put off till the next day: they begin with paying the meanest of the servants.

Every elephant is mounted by what they call a nick, that is, a lad nine or ten years old, brought up to that exercise, who drives the elephant, and pricks it now and then, in order to fire it, in a fight. The same lad loads also the fire-arms of two soldiers, who mount the elephant with him. The day appointed for setting out is never altered.

In order to be better able to bear the great heat, the traders use drawers and stockings, made of a sort of cotton, extracted as some travellers tell us, from that kind of stone which the ancients called amianthus, which being duly beaten and prepared, is proper to be spun, and is said to be incombustible.

As most of the *Arabian* princes have no other

means to subsist by but their robberies, they keep spies who give them notice when the caravans set out, which they sometimes attack with superior force, assaulting chiefly the center, in order to separate the company, and carry off if possible, the vanguard, wherein they pretty often meet with good success. When they are repulsed, they generally come to some agreement, the conditions of which are pretty well performed, especially if the assailants prove to be natives of *Arabia*; but in case the caravan be beat, it is absolutely plundered of all its treasure, and the whole convoy made slaves; but they shew a little more mercy to foreigners. Sometimes the taking of one caravan only is enough to enrich those princes.

As the plague rages very often in the East, they are obliged to use great precautions, to prevent the caravans from carrying that dreadful distemper into the places through which they pass, or from being themselves infected with it. When therefore they arrive near a town, the inhabitants and people of the caravan have a solemn conference, concerning the state of their health, and very sincerely communicate to each other the state of the case, if there be really any danger to fear on either side. When there is just reason to suspect any contagious distemper, they amicably agree that no communication whatever shall be suffered between them; and, if the caravan stands in need of provisions, they are conveyed to them with the utmost precaution over the walls of the town.

The profits made by the commerce of these caravans, whilst upon the march, are very extraordinary; and this is what engages a great number of persons to join with the caravans, and render the toil and inconveniencies of the journey less insupportable: and indeed those fatigues are not small. These travelling merchants must resolve to accept every where such provisions and other conveniencies as they find, and not permit delicacy and ease to get the better of their desire of honest gain by such traffic. A trader must, like an heroic general, not mind the frightful confusion of languages and nations, the fatigues of long marches, and the exorbitant duties and imposts paid at certain places: neither must he regard the audacious robberies and subtle tricks to which he cannot help being exposed among that multitude of vagabonds, who frequent the caravans, with no other view but to live at the expence of the weak and incautious. These last inconveniencies indeed may be prevented, at least with regard to the most precious merchandizes, by putting them into the strong and curious trunk of the caravan, which, like many in *Europe*, have variety of curious locks, that cannot be opened but by those who know the knack of them.

A great many caravans, some more, some less numerous, set out from *Erzerum*, the capital of that part of *Armenia* which is under the dominion of the grand signior. Some of them consist of *Armenians* only, as those which carry silks to *Tocat* and to *Constantinople*: they commonly set out in *September*.

The caravans of *Siberia*, at present, enter into the territories of *China*, by *Selinginskoy*, situated in the 52d degree of north latitude, on the eastern bank of the river *Selinga*, by virtue of a late treaty of commerce between *Russia* and the emperor of *China*; whereas formerly they used to pass through *Nerzinskoy* and *Argun*.

There are sea-caravans from *Constantinople* to *Alexandria*.

The caravan of *Nubia* goes twice a year into *Egypt*.

It



a ket-place, still standing, to which all the *Arabian* merchants for a good way about used to resort, as to an exchange, which made trade to flourish. The prince of *Balfora* gives full

It passes through *Gary*, a place on the left bank of the *Nile*, three or four days journey on this side of *Dongola*. There the merchants of *Sannar*, the capital of *Fungi*, those of *Gondar*, the capital of *Ethiopia*, and many others from divers parts of *Africa*, meet at a certain time, when they know the caravan is to arrive. Then, setting out from *Gary*, the caravan leaves the banks of the *Nile*, and crossing the deserts of *Lybia*, arrives, after a march of thirteen days, into a valley, which is thirty leagues long. This valley, which extends almost from north to south, is planted with palm-trees, and very well cultivated, because good water may be found by digging only one foot deep in the ground.

After some days rest in this agreeable place, the caravan marches a whole day between steep mountains, in an even but narrow road; after which it arrives in a narrow pass, through which it crosses that chain of mountains running along the *Nile* on the side of *Lybia*, and comes at last to *Manfelout*, a town in *Upper Egypt*, where the duties to the prince are paid in black slaves, and where the caravan meets the *Nile* again, for the first time from its setting out from *Gary*.

The first danger in so difficult a march is, that the caravan being to cross immense plains of sand, where it is impossible to observe or discover the least track of a road, if the guides should happen to lose their way in those unknown countries, the provision of water necessary to conduct them directly to the place where they are to find more, must infallibly fail them by such a delay, which is frequently of several days journey. In such a case the mules and horses die with fatigue and thirst in those burning deserts; and even the camels, notwithstanding their extraordinary power to subsist without water, soon meet with the same fate; and the people of the caravan, wandering in those frightful deserts, generally perish also.

The danger is infinitely still greater, when a south wind happens to rise in those sandy places. The least damage it occasions, is to dry up the leathern bags wherein is kept the provision of water for the journey. This wind, which the *Arabs* stile poisoned, often stifles in a moment those who have the misfortune to be then travelling: to prevent which they are obliged to throw themselves immediately on the ground, putting their faces close to the burning sand, which surrounds them on all sides, and covering their heads with some linnen for that purpose, lest, by breathing, they should swallow infallible death, which this wind disseminates every where within its power of circulation. Notwithstanding those dangers, trade, and the desire of gain, induce a multitude of people to run those hazards.

There arrives likewise at *Cairo*, every year, a numerous caravan from *Tripoli*, to which the merchants of *Algiers*, *Tunis*, and *Morocco* join themselves, as well as those who would go in pilgrimage to *Mecca*, tho' devotion is not the only motive of their journey. This caravan is much less numerous on its return, because the greatest part of those merchants who went by land, with only money, or very fine merchandizes for sale, having employed their effects at *Mecca* in buying *Indian* commodities, which are bulky, embark at *Alexandria*, and return by sea to *Algiers*.

Every year also several caravans come into *Egypt* from *Syria*, but the time of their arrival and setting out is not fixed. The journey of those caravans is

not so difficult nor dangerous as of some others, because the deserts which separate these two countries, are crossed in three days, and there is no scarcity of water. They meet even on the road with several caravanferas, in which the travellers and their cattle are furnished gratis with all necessaries; so that these caravans enjoy all possible conveniencies, especially the rich people among them, who, nevertheless, live very soberly during their journey.

The caravanferas just mentioned, are places appointed for receiving and loading the caravans: They are commonly large square buildings, in the middle of which there is a very spacious court. Under the arches or piazza's that surround them, there runs a bank or elevation, raised some feet above the ground, where the merchants, and those who travel with them in any capacity, take up their lodgings as well as they can, the beasts of burden being tied to the foot of the bank: over the gates that lead into the court, there are sometimes little rooms, which the caravanferaskeepers, or stewards or keepers of the caravanferas, let out at a very high price, to such as have a mind to be private.

The caravanferas in the east are something in the nature of our capital inns in *Europe*, with this difference, however, that in the caravanferas little accommodations or provisions are met with either for man or beast, all persons being obliged to carry almost every thing with them.

Most of these buildings are owing to the charity of the *Mahometans*; and the greatest lords, either out of devotion or vanity, spend prodigious sums in founding them, especially if they happen to be in a dry, sandy, and desert place, whither the water is to be conveyed from a great distance, at a vast expence; for there is never a caravanfera without a well or spring of water.

There are few large towns in the East, especially in the dominions of the Grand Signior, the king of *Persia*, and the Grand Mogul, but have some of those buildings. The caravanferas of *Constantinople*, *Isfahan*, and *Agra*; the capitals of the empires of *Turky*, *Persia*, and *Mogul*, are the most famous, with regard both to their number and magnificence. In these the foreign merchants have most of their warehouses; for in these three cities there are several caravanferas, which, besides the common construction, have several safe and convenient apartments, both for the merchants and their merchandizes.

The emperor *Mahomet IV.* caused such caravanferas to be built at some distance from one another between *Constantinople* and *Damascus*, and appointed considerable revenues for their maintenance. There all travellers, whether Christians, *Jews*, or *Mahometans*, are equally well received.

There are also at *Cairo* in *Egypt* very fine caravanferas, which are always full of merchandizes and people; and as they afford no inconsiderable revenue, this is a sufficient motive for the great lords of the country to build them. The *Nubians*, *Abyssinians*, and other nations of *Africa*, who resort to *Cairo*, have there each a particular caravanfera, where they always lodge. The same must be observed of the merchants of *Aleppo*, *Damascus*, *Constantinople*, and other trading towns. These caravanferas are esteemed sacred dwellings, where it is not permitted to insult any person, or to pillage any of the effects which are deposited there. They even carry their precautions so far, as not to suffer any man who is not married to lodge there, because they are of opinion, that a



liberty to all nations to come and trade to his capital, where they are so civilly used, and such good order kept, that one may go safe through the streets at all hours of the night. He is tributary to the *Turk*, and has his chief revenue from the exchange of money, for the horses and camels sold there; but chiefly from his palm-trees, of which he has a plantation reaching almost ninety miles in length, and none dare touch a date till they have paid him a certain custom. The horses which are bred here are in great request, and sell at a vast price. The income of the prince from these articles of money, horses, camels, and dates, is so great, that he is able to lay up a very considerable sum every year, all the other charges of his tribute and government defrayed.

*BALSORA* has been under the *Turks* ever since the year 1668, and like all other cities tributary to that dominion, is governed by a *cadi*, appointed by the prince. Ships from all the maritime parts of *Asia* and *Europe* resort to it. The *English* and *Dutch* have their factories here, which are very considerable, and maintained by their *East-India* company to carry on their commerce with *China*, *Japan*, and other parts of *India*, and for dispatch of their letters from all parts into *England* and *Holland*, by way of *Damascus* and *Aleppo*, which are carried by *Arabs* hired for the purpose, who are very swift of foot. What still increases the opulence of *Balsora* is, that the *Persians* in their caravans or pilgrimages to *Mecca*, take this city in their way, and not only pay considerable duties to the government, but exchange many rich commodities. The balenets of the coin, having a greater alloy than that of other nations, and being exchanged by the merchants at a great disadvantage, is one great abuse here, which is yet winked at both by the *Porte* and prince, because it brings in a considerable profit.

THIS city, though pretty large, has nothing extraordinary in its buildings, either public or private, being built after the *Turkish* manner. The whole country about it lies so low, that if it was not for a stout dyke or bank, which extends all along the coast, it would be in danger of being laid under water. This bank is between three and four miles long, and built of large square stones, so well cemented together, that the water cannot affect it, though the sea runs strong, it being the very end of the *Persic* gulph.

Second division of Arabia.

*ARABIA PETRÆA* is the most western of all the three *Arabias*, and is now called *Dar-lik Arabistan* by the *Turks*, and *Barraab Arabistan* by the natives, and by others *Bathalabab*, but most commonly the beglebergate of *Bosra*, so named from that capital. It is bounded on the north by *Syria* and *Palestine*; on the east by *Arabia Deserta*, and part of *Arabia Felix*, which likewise bounds it on the south; and on the west by the *Red Sea* and the isthmus of *Suez* or *Egypt*. Its extent from north to south is computed to be 180 miles, and from east to west 150. It includes part of ancient *Idumea* on the north, and some extend it a good way into the territory of *Mecca* on the south. The northern part abounding with barren mountains, is thinly inhabited, and is under the *Turks* in the beglebergate of *Cairo*; but the southern is both fertile and well peopled, and governed by its own princes, except some places along the coast. It was called *Petræa* or *Stony*, from its rocks, though some rather derive it from *Petra*, its ancient capital, now commonly supposed to be *Harach* or *Horac*, lying on the isthmus near the frontiers of *Egypt*. Though in most respects it much resembles *Arabia Deserta* for its stony, sandy, and barren grounds, yet it yields in some parts sufficient nourishment for cattle, whose milk and camels flesh is the chief food of its inhabitants. There are some other parts which are quite uninhabited and impassable.

Chief places.

THE chief places of *Arabia Petræa* are *Bosra*, *Tabuc*, *Acra*, *Horac*, *Sur*, *Madian*, *Repbaim*, *Cadesb Barneab*, the mounts *Horeb* and *Sinai*, the wilderness of *Piba-biroth*, *Elim*, and some others mentioned in scripture.

*BOSRA*, the capital, seated in the midland, on the back of *Palestine*, on the other side *Jordan*, and about 150 miles from the lake, or sea of *Galilee*, has neither buildings nor any thing worth mentioning in it. *Horac*, built near or upon the ruins of the ancient *Petra*, is now but a small place, but formerly was a very strong fortress, situate on a rock. It made a long and stout resistance against the *Romans*, and was for its impregnable strength, used by the soldans of *Egypt* for the repository of all their riches. All the other just men-

man who has no wife is more dangerous than another. It is to the interest of the proprietors of this sort of caravanferas, that travellers are indebted for the good order and security they meet with.

The caravanferas of *Schiras* and *Casbin*, two considerable towns in *Persia*, have also a very great reputation, and are little inferior to those of the capital.

Besides the caravanferas, which in the East serve instead of great inns, and furnish accommodations for the merchants, there are some also at *Ispahan*, which may be stiled bazars, or arched halls, where there are shops and warehouses, wherein several sorts of mer-

chandizes and delicate pieces of workmanship are exposed to sale in the day-time, and locked up at night; and for which the keeper of the caravanfera answers, in consideration of a certain fee or perquisite. He also keeps an account of all the merchandizes that are sold upon trust; for he is obliged to book them regularly in his register, with the names of the buyers and sellers. He also is to demand the payment of the sums due to the merchants, for what have been sold in the caravanfera, on the seller's paying two per cent.



- a tioned places are of no consideration, except *Sur*, now called *El Torre* and *Tor*, which has a good harbour with some trade, and about 400 houses inhabited by some Christian merchants, *Jews*, and *Moors*. Goods are here unladen to be carried by land to *Suez*, on the isthmus, 120 miles north-west at the end of the west gulph, which is not navigable for large vessels any farther than this town, by reason of the rocks. Near *Tor* is the garden which *Moses* is said to call *Elim*. It is planted with palm trees, and some *Greek* monks who have a monastery here, make some tolerable profit of the dates, which are the best in the country. Near the castle of *Tor*, the *Israelites* are generally supposed to have crossed the *Red Sea*. In the way from *Tor* to *Mount Sinai*, the vallies abound with cassia-trees, which produce the frankincense; and among other trees that grow on these mountains, there is a
- b fort which bears a kind of wool like cotton, though neither so fine nor white.

THE desert of *Sinai* exceeds all the rest of the country in height, and is encompassed with hills and high rocks for ten or twelve miles. However, the road or ascent to it is easy, having been cut into the solid rock, like stairs quite to the top, by order of the emperors *Mulna*; but most passengers chuse to go it on foot, being uneasy to the camels. It is called by the *Arabs*, *Gibel Mousa*, or *Moses's Mountain*; and at the foot of the ascent is a well built convent. The monks pretend to shew the very place where *Moses* fasted forty days, and received the two tables of stone. Towards the north side of the plain lie the mounts *Horeb* and *Sinai*; the latter is the higher, and is called *St. Catherine*. Both are very steep and high, but not proportionably broad, and though a road is all the way cut up to them, yet the ascent is very difficult. Desert of Sinai described.

- c AT the foot of *Mount Horeb* is a *Greek* monastery, called *St. Saviour's*, where pilgrims lodge. It stands at the end of a large green plain, where it is said *Moses* kept *Jethro's* flocks, and saw the burning bush. The building is large but irregular, and consists of several courts; but the church is a noble edifice of fine workmanship both within and without. The pavement is of marble curiously laid in form of roses, and the ornaments, plate, altars, and other utensils are very rich and exquisitely fine. The monastery is well supplied with water from a spring that descends from *Mount Horeb*. On the top of the mountain, and all about, there is a considerable number of cells and chapels, the former abode of many monks and hermits; but they are now mostly empty, the religious people having been driven away by the *Arabs*; and the steps, of which there were 14,000, that now lead to the mount, are in many places broken and shattered, though in others still very good and easy of ascent. On *Mount Horeb* is likewise shewn the place where the *Israelites* worshipped the golden calf. Mount Horeb.
- d

- AT a considerable distance on the same plain, and near another monastery, called the convent of the forty martyrs, stands the rock which *Moses* smote with his rod, and brought forth from it a miraculous supply of water. It has a great many holes at which the water flowed out on both sides. There are no other rocks nor stones near it. The tops of those mountains command a noble prospect to the *Red Sea* and all the adjacent country. Several other places are here shewn, which are not so easily credited by those who are acquainted with the scriptures; as the place where *Corah*, *Dathan*, &c. were swallowed up; the stone on which the brazen serpent was erected; the hillocks where the idolaters were buried by *Moses's* order; the two hollow stones in which *Aaron* cast the golden calf, &c. for *Corah* and his rebellious crew perished near *Mount Hormah*, and not in *Horeb*; the brazen serpent was set up at *Mount Hor*,<sup>i</sup> and the rock out of which *Moses* fetched the water,<sup>k</sup> is said to have been in the wilderness of *Zin*, all of them far enough from *Sinai* and *Horeb*. To these might be added the city of *Midian* or *Madian*, where *Jethro*, *Moses's* father-in-law, dwelt, and where he staid with him forty years; *Rephidim*, the place where the *Amalekites* fell foul upon the rear of *Israel* at their first coming out of *Egypt*; *Kadesh Barneah*, the station of the *Israelites*, whence *Moses* sent the spies to examine the promised land, and several others, all in this province; but whose true situation it is impossible to know with any tolerable certainty. As for the mounts of *Sinai* and *Horeb*, they stand in latitude 28. and 29. and east longitude 34. on the southern verge of this province, near the northern coasts of the *Red Sea*. Other places uncertain.
- e
- f

- ARABIA FELIX, by far the largest and most considerable of the three *Arabias*, is called by the inhabitants *Yeman*, *Yaman*, and *Hyaman*, from one of the largest districts in it, which has given name to all the rest. It has had the title of *Felix*, or *Happy*, from its extraordinary fertility, and constant verdure, but was anciently called *Saba*, *Sabea*, and *Seba*, by the sacred writers, by *Josephus*, and *St. Jerom*, from *Seba*, the son of *Cush*, the grandson of *Ham*, who was properly the founder of a city of the same name, anciently celebrated for its opulence, and more particularly its plenty of gold and silver. This *Arabia* Third division of Arabia.
- g

<sup>i</sup> NUMB. xxi. 3. & seq.    <sup>k</sup> Ib. xx.



is situate on the south of *Petræa* and *Deserta*, and surrounded on all the other three sides by the sea, as by the *Red Sea* on the west, the gulph of *Persia* and *Ormus* on the east, and the ocean or *Arabian sea* on the south. The ancients were not content to give it the title of *Happy*, but added that of *Sacred* to it, on account of its fine aromatic gums and fragrant woods, which were used in sacrifices, such as frankincense, myrrh, aloes, nard, cinnamon, cassia, cedar, and other odoriferous woods, which are in such plenty that the natives use them for common fuel. And, indeed, if we were to judge of this *Arabia* by what the ancients have launched out in its praise, we should imagine it the richest and most delightful land in the whole world. It was reckoned the most populous province in all *Asia*, and was in such esteem among the *Romans*, even so late as *Ammianus Marcellinus*'s time, that he gives us this delicious character of, or rather panegyric upon it. "The *Happy Arabians* are so called, because abounding in corn, cattle, vines, and odoriferous spices of all kinds. They are well furnished with roads and quiet harbours for fishing, with trading towns standing very thick. Besides most wholesome springs of medicinal waters, they enjoy the benefit of many brooks and rivers very pure and clear, and a temperature of air exceeding healthful." If we were to judge of this character by the last part of it, what this author lays must go for nothing; for the air and climate cannot be different from what they were in his time; and how he can extol the temperature of a country which lies two parts in three within the tropics, cannot be well conceived. What he says of trading towns and commodious havens might indeed be true then, but is since quite altered. The *Red Sea* was very much frequented by merchant-ships, before the *Cape of Good Hope*, and the passage by it to the *Indies*, was found out; and *Arabia* was the market where all the commodities brought from *India*, *China*, and all the eastern islands, were sold to the merchants of *Egypt* and *Barbary*, and brought by them over land to *Cairo* and other ports in the *Mediterranean*, whither the *English*, *Italians*, and other *European* nations, came to take them off their hands: but now the goods from *India* and *Persia* are brought to us directly by sea, the commodities of *Arabia* are become less useful, and our commerce with it consequently is considerably decreased. However, if the accounts of the ancients concerning this *Arabia* were really true, and not taken upon trust, they sufficiently shew how surprizingly it must have been altered since they wrote; for at this time nothing like that so much exaggerated fecundity, much less that great number of cities and inhabitants appears, except in some few spots here and there, which bear but a very small proportion with the rest; the midland being either sandy or mountainous, and consequently all dry and barren: so that the sea-coasts and the lands along the banks of rivers, are the only places that deserve the name of fertile or happy. But it may well enough deserve those titles by its fine spices and odoriferous plants, more especially for its frankincense, which is peculiar to it. To this we may add the coffee-trees, but which are found only in three or four districts of the province of *Yemen*, properly so called, and grow in the mountainous parts of it. It likewise produces abundance of other exquisite fruits, is watered with fine springs, refreshed with agreeable breezes, and enjoys a constant verdure all the year round; but even in this noble province, some parts of it are almost as barren as the *Petræa* or *Deserta*, and produce nothing for thirty or forty miles together, especially where it runs contiguous to the *Red Sea*.

*ARABIA FELIX* is commodiously divided into the following maritime and inland districts.

Maritime districts.

ON the sea-coasts are, 1. The kingdom or principality of *Mecca*, whose chief towns are *Mecca*, *Medina*, *Egra*, or *Hagiar*, *Giedda*, *Yambo*, and *Zebith*. 2. The maritime *Tehamah al Dhafar*, in which are the cities *Dhafar*, *Tazu*, *Adiud*, and *Traza*. 3. The principality of *Zebith*, *Zebeih*, *Zaba* or *Saba*, with the towns of *Zibeth*, *Gilan*, and *Chalafea*. 4. The kingdom of *Mocha*, or *Aden*, with the towns of *Mocha*, *Aden*, and *Lagbi*. 5. The kingdom of *Xael*, or *Hadramut*, in which are the towns of *Xael*, and *Dolfar*. 6. The kingdom of *Seger*, or *Alibanli*, with the cities of *Alibanli* and *Guebelhamen*. 7. The principality of *Yemen*, with the towns of *Calbat al Quelbat*, and *Mascate*. 8. *Vodane*, with the towns of *Sohar* and *Borscan*. 9. *Mascalat*, with the city of its name, *Nuban*, and *Suckula*. 10. *Barbaim*, with the towns of *Elcatif*, *Labsah*, or *Lassach*, *Abfa*, and *Bisca*.

Inland districts.

IN the inland are the principalities or kingdoms of 1. *Jemaman*, with the capital of its name, *Chadoia*, and *Tima*. 2. *Higiaz*, *Hagiaz*, *Haggiaz*, with the towns of *Casailo*, *Bain*, *Nabel*, *Carn*, and *Almansel*. 3. *Thebama*, with the towns of *Zaana*, and *Zaada*. 4. *Fartach*, with the capital of its name, *Marbi*, and *Negram*. 5. *Oman*, with the towns of *Ziriffdin*, and *Marair*. To these we may add *Ormus*, formerly a considerable *Arabian* kingdom, which though denominated so only from a small rocky island of a few miles extent, yet had some large territories on the terra firma; but the *Persians* having conquered them in 1622, the kingdom was wholly destroyed, and the island is now become quite inconsiderable. The

*English*



- a *English* assisted the *Persians* in the reduction of *Ormuz*, and dispossessing the *Portuguese*, who held it for near one hundred years, and grew so wealthy in it, that they had built them most magnificent houses, inasmuch that the city of *Ormuz* was esteemed in their time one of the finest in *Asia*.

THE most celebrated places of *Arabia Felix*, are *Mecca* and *Medina*, and particularly on account of the pilgrimages of the *Mohammedans* to them. A caravan goes every year from *Damascus*, or *Aleppo*, to the tomb of *Mohammed*, and generally sets forward in *July*, about which time shoals of pilgrims arrive from *Persia*, the *Mogul's* territories, *Tartary*, and from all other countries where *Mohammedanism* is professed.

*Pilgrimages  
to Mecca and  
Medina.*

- SOME days before the caravan sets out, the pilgrims make a general procession, called
- b the procession of *Mohammed*; in order, as they say, to obtain a happy journey, through the prophet's intercession. Those most distinguished by birth or riches appear in the finest habits, mounted on horses sumptuously caparisoned, and followed by slaves, with led horses, and camels covered with costly ornaments. The pilgrims, called the issue of the race of *Mohammed*, begin the march cloathed in long robes, with green bonnets on their heads: they walk four in a rank, and are followed by several musicians, after whom come the camels, with two kettle-drums in their front, and many trumpets, the noise of which inspires these creatures with a kind of fierce air. Next to these come on horseback the other pilgrims, six in rank, followed by carriages full of children, whom their parents intend to present to the prophet. These are surrounded with crowds of singers, who at the same
- c time use a thousand extravagant gestures. Then succeed 200 cavaliers cloathed in bear skins. They have the management of small pieces of cannon mounted on their carriages, which they discharge every hour. These cannon are escorted by another company who wear tygers skins, in the form of cuirasses. Their long moustaches, *Tartar* bonnets, and huge scymitars give them a very warlike appearance. Before the mufti walk 400 men cloathed in green, with yellow mitres on their heads. He himself is accompanied by the doctors of the law, and a number of singers. *Mohammed's* standard is carried immediately behind him, made of green satin embroidered with gold. It is guarded by twelve horsemen in coats of mail, with silver maces in their hands, accompanied with trumpets, and men who strike continually in concert on plates of silver. Next follows the pavillion to
- d be presented before the tomb of *Mohammed*, borne by three camels adorned with green feathers and plates of silver. It is of crimson velvet embroidered with gold, and set with jewels of all colours. Lastly, the basha of *Jerusalem* preceded by drums, trumpets, and others instruments, brings up the rear.

THE procession being ended, every pilgrim thinks of nothing but his departure for *Mecca*, to which indeed all *Mohammedans* are under a strict obligation to make a pilgrimage, either in person or by proxy, once at least in their life. In their progress they pray frequently every day, always with their face turned to that city, on which they bestow the epithets of magnificent, the mother of cities, and the house of God.

- MECCA* is situate in latitude 21. 58. east longitude 40. 30. about forty-two miles east
- a from the *Red Sea*, on the river *Eda*, but in such a barren territory, that it affords no kind of sustenance, either to man or beast. The greatest supply the inhabitants have of necessities, is from the pilgrims and caravans they come with. No Christian is allowed to come nearer it than five miles, and the punishment for so doing is to be burnt alive. They are also extremely careful concerning those they let into it, for fear of having the place surprised or prophaned, or the treasure rifled, which is said to amount to an immense value. The grand mosque is in the middle of the city, and is the largest, finest built, and best frequented of any in the world. Its roof, high and bold, rises in a stately cupola, with two lofty towers at the end, all which are seen a great way off, and yield a noble prospect, being also finely carved and the cupola covered with gold. It is said to have 100 gates,
- f with as many windows, one over each gate; but the ground of the building being low, there is a descent to it by ten or twelve steps. They pretend it is situated on the very spot on which *Abraham* built his first dwelling-house, and where *Mohammed* was born. This house of *Abraham*, which they call *Kiaba*, or small square house, is fifteen feet long, twelve broad, and about thirty high. It is girt round with two belts of gold, one near the bottom and the other near the top; the door is of silver, and a golden spout carries off the water which lies on the roof; and the walls are constantly covered with hangings of fine silk and rich workmanship, and the court that incloses it, is surrounded with stately walls, beautified with columns and arches. The house itself is reckoned a place of the greatest devotion, and is never opened but on their feast called *Ramadan*, and some other solemn festivals. Near the door is a black stone of the bigness of a man's head, which is pretended to have been brought from heaven by an angel to *Abraham*, and to have turned black for the sins of mankind: the first man that can kiss it on a certain day is esteemed a saint, but commonly pays dear for his saintship, the people crowding so fast about him to
- g

*Mosque, &c.  
of Mecca de-  
scribed.*



kiss his feet, that he is often filled by the throng. In the same inclosure is a kind of chapel, built about a well much celebrated throughout the East. They say that the water of that well flows from a spring which God discovered to *Agar* and *Ishmael*, when being expelled by *Abraham* his house, they were forced to retire into *Arabia*. *Mohammed* availed himself of this well to render the city of his nativity respected by all his followers. He declared, that the water had the virtue, not only of curing all bodily diseases, but also of purifying souls stained with the blackest crimes.

Ceremonies,  
&c. observed  
by the pil-  
grims.

THE pilgrims that come hither are obliged to perform many ridiculous ceremonies; the chief of which are, to strip themselves naked at a place called *Rabbak*, two days before they enter the city, having only a napkin tied about their necks, and another about their middle: in this state of nudity they continue eight days, during which, they neither shave, buy, sell, or kill any thing, nor are allowed to speak harshly to their servants or slaves, on pain of giving some money to the poor, or sheep for sacrifice. When they are admitted into the city, they go seven times round the temple: the three first times with a very quick pace, to shew their readiness to fight for the true worship, as they fancy, of God. They accompany their prayers with antic postures, in imitation of a priest that goes before them, and is their chief posture-master. They next sacrifice some sheep, the greatest part of whose flesh is given to the poor, and then go to the valley of *Mina*, where they shave and pare their nails. From thence they go to mount *Arafat*, a short day's journey from *Mina*, every man carrying forty-two stones to throw at the devil's head, who, they say, tempted *Abraham* there, when he was going to sacrifice his son, not *Isaac*, but *Ishmael*. On the 10th day, the most solemn of all, the priests preach to them from this mount, after which they go down into the valley, where they sacrifice a prodigious number of sheep, mostly given to the poor. On the 12th day, the sherif having sent them his blessing, they are at liberty to depart.

THE concourse of pilgrims on these festivals to this city is such, some making their number amount commonly to 200,000, that the wealth of it encreases daily. The temple being entered only four times a year, the people from all parts have sufficient notice of it, and time to join the caravans. They commonly offer some considerable presents, and buy up some of the reliques of the place at a dear rate. Those reliques are for the most part the old coverings of the *Kiaba*, which are yearly presented to it by the grand signior on the feast of *Beyram*, or *Turkish Easter*; at which time the old ones are taken off, and being cut into small pieces, are either made presents of, or sold to the pilgrims. People of quality may, for the sum of an hundred shequins, have the doors of the holy place opened to them at any time, which they chuse to do, to avoid the vast crowds that flock thither on the four seasons. Besides this religious traffic, a great fair is kept during the solemnity, in which the richest merchandizes are exposed to sale. The vaults of the mosques, and the shops round them, are filled with prodigious quantities of most sorts of commodities, particularly with precious stones, and scented and other aromatic powders; even the caves in the adjacent mountains are turned into shops.

THIS is but a sketch of the transactions of this superstitious pilgrimage, in which *Thevenot* assures us, upwards of 6000 of one single caravan have died by hot winds, and other accidents, between *Cairo* and *Mecca*, when he was there. He adds, that the effects of all that die fall to the hamirag, who is the person they chuse for their leader; so that these poor people are cheated out of their lives and substance to enrich the priests and officers who conduct them.

IT is a vulgar error, that *Mohammed* was the original author of those pilgrimages to this city. The *Arabs*, from time immemorial, used to frequent it in the same manner; and, out of veneration for this place, which they held to have been the house of their progenitor, made it the center of their religion. According to the doctrine of the *Mohammedans*, *Adam* being yet in Paradise, which they place in one of the heavens above us, worshipped God in a temple raised by the angels; but, upon his expulsion, having prayed to God to grant him such another upon earth, he obtained a model of it drawn upon some curtains of light, and the building was placed just where the *Kiaba*, or holy house, now stands, that is, perpendicularly under that which the angels resort to in heaven. Here the faithful paid their worship till the flood; but it being then destroyed by the waters, *Abraham* was at length directed by God to build another, which became the place of worship for *Ishmael* and his descendants, till having quite polluted it by their idolatry, *Mohammed* was ordered to purify it by consecrating it anew to the worship of the true God. All which fables, together with its being given out to be the very house in which himself was born, being once swallowed down by the *Mussulmen*, that impostor concluded rightly, it would not fail of bringing as great, if not a greater concourse of devotees to *Mecca*, than it had lost by the abolition of its idols.



a BETWEEN the cities of *Mecca* and *Medina*, there is an extensive sandy desert, where the dry sands blown up and down by the winds, often overwhelm whole caravans. To prevent this as much as possible, they are not only obliged to observe how the wind blows, to encamp on the opposite side, but likewise to steer by the mariner's compass, as at sea. The length of the caravan's journey from *Mecca* to *Medina* is about 224 miles, which are performed in about forty days.

b *MEDINA* is situate in latitude 25. 0. east, longitude 39. 12. seventy-six miles from the *Red Sea*, in a plain, watered with the river *Larick*, and covered with stately palm-trees. *Mohammed's* resentment against his fellow-citizens of *Mecca*, who were for banishing him from the place of his nativity, inspired him with a resolution of being revenged upon them. He declared, that *Medina* should be his city, and the seat of empire for him and his successors; whence, by way of excellency, it is so called by the *Arabs*, *Medina* signifying a city in general; and it is sometimes stiled *Medina al Nabi*, or, the City of the Prophet. *Mohammed* also ordered, that his sepulchre should be built here; and accordingly, his coffin rests in the great mosque, a structure of vast magnificence, supported by 400 stately columns, and illuminated by 300 fine lamps, which hang on them, and are kept continually burning. It has a small cupola covered with plates of silver, and the floor is covered with cloth of gold. It stands almost in the center of the city, and is the most resorted to in the whole world except that of *Mecca*. *Mohammed's* coffin lies under the cupola, and the tomb is exposed to view from the middle to the top of the dome, round about which is a little wall pierced with windows, which are fenced with silver grates. The inside is enriched with stones of immense value, of great size and beauty, especially on that part of the cupola which is over the head of the prophet, and where there is a diamond, one inch thick and two long, presented by sultan *Osman*, the son of *Achmet*. At the feet of the coffin is a rich golden crescent, so curiously wrought, and adorned with such precious stones, that it is esteemed a master-piece, and of very great value. The coffin is kept covered under a rich pall of gold and silver tissue, and under a canopy of the same precious cloth, both which are annually sent hither by the basha of *Egypt*, by order of the grand signior, and with the greatest magnificence. It is commonly carried upon and displayed over the back of some stately camel, in company with the rest of the caravan; and when the precious gift is taken off, the beast is no longer to be used in servile drudgery. When laid upon the coffin, the old one is cut into innumerable shreds, and either sold or given away as one of the most valuable presents. The place where the coffin lies is supported by black marble pillars, and encompassed with a balustrade of silver, hung with such a number of burning lamps, that the smoke darkens the place. The cupola, which is hung with red and white damask, has the epitome of the *Mussulman* faith embroidered on it in golden *Arabic* characters, GOD IS GOD, AND MOHAMMED IS HIS PROPHET. The crowd of pilgrims is so great at the time of their resorting to this mosque, that they can only see the outside of the dome, and some of the treasures that glitter within through the silver grates, as the large diamond and crescent, which are indeed the most valuable curiosities of all; but those who make any long abode in the city, may take a convenient time when there is no crowd, and for a certain sum see every particular of the inside at leisure. All true *Mussulmen* are bound by their religion to visit this tomb at least once in their life; and after performing that ceremony, they are looked upon as saints ever after. The rich and great, whose ambition lies another way, are dispensed with for a considerable sum, and by sending some other person in their stead. Christians of all denominations are forbid to come within fifteen miles of this city, under pain of being burnt alive as at *Mecca*.

Magnificent mosque, and Mohammed's tomb described.

c As soon as the caravan, which brings the presents from the grand signior arrives, the dervises, who have the care of the mosque, appear to receive it. Then the pilgrims, in conjunction with those that came in other caravans, make the whole edifice resound with their shouts of joy, and songs in honour of their prophet. After which, there is nothing but feasting and open rejoicing, till the departure of the caravan.

d THE day of departing the pilgrims assemble again, and set out singing some verses of the *Alcoran* with a loud voice. Every one thinks it an honour to supply them with provisions for the whole journey, and they are sure upon their return to meet the congratulations of all the towns from whence they set out. They are honoured every where, and from that time they begin to enter into the possession of all the privileges which their religion grants to those who go to visit the prophet's tomb. Their pilgrimage screens them from all pursuits on former delinquencies, and, if criminals, renders them perfectly guiltless. The camels also, as above hinted, which have had the honour to bear presents to *Mecca* and *Medina*, are not to be treated afterwards like common animals; they are considered as consecrated to *Mohammed*, which exempts them from all labour and service. They have cottages built for their abodes, where they live at ease, and are well fed and taken care of.

THE



THE most powerful *Mohammedan* princes pay the deepest veneration to the sherifs of *Mecca* and *Medina*, considering them as of the race and successors of *Mohammed*: they also frequently send them offerings and valuable presents; and, among his other pompous titles, the grand signior in particular styles himself the servant of the two sacred towns of *Mecca* and *Medina*.

## C H A P. V.

*Of the Eastern Asiatic Turkey, containing the Provinces of Diarbeckr, Turcomania, and Georgia.*

WE are now come to the eastern division of *Asiatic Turkey*, which comprehends the provinces of *Diarbeckr*, *Turcomania*, and *Georgia*, of all which we shall treat in this chapter.

*Diarbeckr in general.*

*DIARBECKR* in its largest extent comprehends the provinces of *Diarbeck*, properly so called, *Yerack*, and *Curdistan*, which were the ancient countries of *Mesopotamia*, *Chaldea*, and *Affyria*, with *Babylon*. It is called *Diarbeck*, *Diarbeker*, or *Diarbekr*, as signifying the duke's country, from the word *Dhyar* a duke, and *Bekr*, country. It extends along the banks of the *Tigris* and *Euphrates* from north north-west to south-east; that is, from *Mount Taurus*, which divides it from *Turcomania* on the north, to the inmost recesses of the *Persian* gulph on the south, about six hundred miles. And from east to west, that is from *Persia* on the east, to *Syria* and *Arabia Deserta* on the west, in some places two hundred, and in others about three hundred miles; but in the southern or lower parts, not above one hundred and fifty. As extending also from the thirtieth to the thirty-eighth degree of latitude, it lies under part of the fifth and sixth climates, whose longest day is about fourteen hours and a half, and so in proportion, and consequently enjoys a good temperature of air as well as in the greater part of it a very rich and fertile soil. There are indeed, as in all hot countries, some large deserts in it, which neither bear any sustenance for men or cattle, nor have any inhabitants. Being a considerable frontier towards the kingdom of *Persia*, it is very well guarded and fortified; but as for those many cities, once so renowned for their greatness and opulence, they are at present almost dwindled into heaps of ruins. *Bagdad*, *Mosul*, *Carabmed*, and a few more, do indeed continue to be populous and wealthy, but the rest can scarce be called by any other name than that of sorry places.

THE river *Euphrates* and *Tigris* having almost their whole course through this country, it will not be improper to give here a short description of them.

*Euphrates described.*

THE *Euphrates* is called by the ancient *Hebrews* *Pharat*, and by the *Arabs* *El Farat*, or *El Frat*, and by the *Turks* *Mourat*. Both *Hebrews* and *Arabs* often stile it by way of excellency *Nahar* and *Nehir*, the river. It is justly esteemed one of the most considerable rivers in all *Asia*, if not of the whole globe. Its source is in the mountains of the north-east corner of *Turcomania*, or in those of *Ararat*; and its course across that province is almost directly west, from which it afterwards bends down southward at the foot of *Mount Taurus*, and making the west boundary, passes between *Syria* and *Diarbeck*; then running along the eastern limits of *Arabia Deserta*, it goes through the provinces of *Yerack* or *Chaldea*, and *Auxa*, where it waters a great number of towns, in particular that of *Hella*, which is above a day's journey from *Babylon*: from thence it begins to flow with a gentle course towards the city of *Aria*, where its waters are not only obstructed but troubled by the violent reflux of the *Persic* gulph, though above thirty leagues from it. At last it joins the *Tigris* near the town of *Carnah*, at the distance of about twenty leagues from the gulph. Its course is for the most part very pleasant, and through many fertile and delightful plains, and its banks are adorned with a constant verdure, from a great number of palm or other trees that grow upon, and the noble pasture-grounds on each side of them. Its waters are esteemed very wholesome, and the *Arabs* have so high an opinion of them, that they repute them efficacious for curing all manner of diseases. They are, however, found very thick in some of the deserts, where mixing with a kind of muddy sand, they contract a yellowish hue and disagreeable taste; and this hue they retain in their fall into the *Persic* gulph, where they may be plainly traced for several miles together. As to the river itself, it is neither very deep nor wide, compared with some others in different parts of the world, except when swelled by the melting of the snows on the mountains of *Armenia*.

*How divided.*

THE *Arabs* divide this river into the greater and lesser *Euphrates*. The first has its spring-head among the *Gordian* mountains, and falls into the *Tigris* near the cities of *Ambar* and



a and *Fclougiab*. The lesser, though its stream is often the bigger of the two, takes its course towards *Yerack* or *Chaldea*, and after forming the marshy grounds of the *Nabathean* fens, discharges itself into the same *Tigris* at a place called *Carnab* or *Horn*, being the horn or nook between the two confluents. From the lesser there is a passage to the greater by a canal formerly made by the emperor *Trajan*, called *Fossa Regia*, and by the *Syrians* *Nabar Malcha*, or the *Royal River*. The *Persians* pretend, that one of the kings of their first dynasty began to divide those two great rivers of *Tigris* and *Euphrates* into several branches, to prevent the inundations they frequently caused: this work was afterwards carried on by some of their caliphs, though they have not been able to keep several territories from being yearly overflowed by them, as *Egypt* is by the *Nile*.

b THE *Tigris* is no less a considerable river in *Asia*. Its source is in a plain of *Turcomania*, according to *Cluverius* in the *Gordian* mountains, according to *Boudrand* in *Armenia*. *Moses* calls it *Hiddekel*, the *Arabs* and *Persians* *Diglat*, the *Turks* *Tegil*. *Pliny* says, that from its spring-head, down a good way where its course is smooth, it was called *Diglito*, but from thence, where it began to be more rapid, *Tigris*, which in the *Median* tongue signifies an arrow or dart. He adds, that its source is in the middle of a plain called *Ele-gosina* in *Greater Armenia*. It runs through the lake *Arethusa*, without mixing its waters with it, then along part of the ridge called *Mount Taurus*, whence, sinking into the earth, it runs under the mountain, and rises again on the other side. An evident proof of its being the same river is, that whatever is thrown into it on one side, is brought up again on c the other. From thence the *Tigris* runs through another lake called *Theispites*, and often sinks again under ground; and in one place having passed the extent of twenty-five miles of ground unseen, it rises up, and continues its course with a very rapid stream, where it begins to be styled the *Tigris* or *Dart*. Its waters are increased by several rivers it swallows up in its course as it runs between *Assyria* and *Mesopotamia*, and a few leagues below *Bagdad*, it begins to branch out into two channels, one of which running across, falls into the *Euphrates* and forms an island, whilst the other continuing its course southwards, falls into the same river a good way below it. These two rivers, before their meeting in this last place of conflux, formerly called *Pasitigris*, confine the country of *Diarbeck Proper*, the one on the east, the other on the west, and after running a long winding course d mostly from north to south, both fall into the *Persic* gulph by one common mouth or channel. *Pliny* informs us, that formerly they had each a separate one, and that in his time there were still to be seen the vestiges of the old one. The *Tigris* commonly overflows about the spring-time, when the snows of the *Armenian* mountains begin to melt; and by it, together with the *Euphrates*, and some other rivers of less note, the greatest part of this province is so effectually watered, and rendered so very fertile and delightful, that among the various opinions and controversies about the situation of the garden of *Eden*, the most judicious and learned writers are agreed, that this once happy spot was situate in the south part of this province.

The Tigris described.

e *DIARBECK Proper* is bounded on the north by *Turcomania*, on the west by *Syria*, on the south by part of *Arabia Deserta* and *Yrack Proper*, and on the east by *Curdistan*. It was named by *Moses* *Padam Aram*, the latter being the general name of *Syria*, and the former signifying fruitful, a proper epithet for this country, which is really so to a very high degree, especially on the northern side, where it yields corn, wine, oil, fruits, and all necessaries of life in great abundance. Formerly it was the residence of many famed patriarchs, yet was over-run with the grossest idolatry, not only in the times of *Abraham's* coming out of it, and *Jacob's* sojourning in it, but likewise during the time it continued under the dominion of the *Assyrians*, *Babylonians*, *Medes*, *Persians*, and *Romans*. It received indeed the light of the gospel soon after our Saviour's ascension from *St. Thaddæus*, who is said to have been sent thither by *St. Thomas*, at the request of *Agbarus*, king of *Edeffa*. This f account, together with that monarch's letter to *Jesus Christ*, we have from *Eusebius*, who took it from the archives of that city; and the whole had passed current and uncontradicted for many ages, till our more enlightened moderns found reasons to condemn it; but whether right or wrong, it plainly appears, that Christianity flourished here in a most eminent manner, till its purity was sullied about the beginning of the sixth century by the heresy of the *Jacobites*, whose patriarch still resides here, with a jurisdiction over all that sect in the *Turkish* dominions.

First division of Diarbeckr.

*DIARBECK Proper* is a beglerbega, under which are reckoned twelve sangiacks; and the principal towns in it are, *Diarbekir* or *Carahmed*, *Rika*, *Moussul*, *Orsa* or *Edeffa*, *Elbir*, *Nisibis*, *Gezir Merdin*, *Zibin*, *Ur of the Chaldees*, *Amad*, and *Carasara*. We shall only give g some account of *Diarbekir* and *Moussul*, the rest being of little note.

Cities of Diarbec Proper.

*DIARBEEKIR*, *Amed*, or *Carahmed*, now the capital of this district, is situate in a delightful plain, on the banks and near the head of the *Tigris*, about one hundred and fifty-five miles, or fifteen caravan days journey north-east from *Aieppo*, in latitude 37. 35. east

Diarbekir described



longitude 40. 50. It is one of the richest and most mercantile cities in all *Asiatic Turkey*, and is well fortified, being encompassed with a double wall, the outermost of which is flanked with seventy-two towers, said to have been raised in memory of our Saviour's seventy-two disciples. It has two or three stately piazzas or market-places, well stored with all kinds of rich merchandize, and a large magnificent mosque, formerly a Christian church. Its chief manufacture is the dressing, tanning, and dying of goat-skins, commonly called *Turky leather*, of which the vent is almost incredible in many parts of *Europe* and *Asia*: besides this, there is another of dyed fine linnen and cotton cloths, which are nearly in the same request. The waters of the *Tigris* are reckoned extraordinary for those two branches of trade, and give red leather a finer grain and colour than any other. The town is so populous, that there are said to be in it no less than 20,000 Christians, two-thirds of whom are *Armenians*, and the rest *Nestorians* or *Jacobites*, with some few of the church of *Rome*. There is a good number of large and convenient inns on both sides of the river, for the caravans that go to and from *Persia*; and on the road near the town is a chapel with a cupola, where holy *Job* is said to lie buried. This place is much frequented by pilgrims of all nations and religions, and a *Turkish* hermit has a cell close to it. The fair sex, who, in most other parts of the *Turkish* empire, are kept quite immured, and considered as mere slaves, enjoy here an extraordinary liberty, and are commonly seen on the public walks of the city, in company with the Christian women, and live in great friendship and familiarity with them. The same is said of the men, who are polite, affable, and courteous, and very different from what they affect to be, especially the *Turks*, in other cities of this empire. The city is under the government of a *basha*, who has great power, and very large dominions. He has commonly a body of 20,000 horse under him, for repelling the frequent incursions of the *Curdes* and *Tartars*, who always go on horseback to rob the caravans. The adjacent territory is very rich and beautiful; the bread, wine, and flesh excellent; the fruits exquisite, and the pigeons better and larger than any in *Europe*.

Moussul described.

Excessive heat and deadly wind.

Second division of Diarbekr.

**MOUSSUL**, the capital of another beglerbegate in this province, is seated in latitude 36. 59. east longitude 43. 00. on the west bank of the *Tigris*, near the ruins of the ancient *Nineveh*, for which it has been mistaken by some authors. It is a spacious city, about a league in compass, surrounded with stately stone walls, and sharp-pointed turrets, which make a considerable shew at a distance, but whose inside is far from being answerable to its external appearance, though it has many fair and large streets, with houses well built, but a great part of them lie waste and uninhabited. It is a great thoroughfare for the caravans from *Syria* to *Persia*, and carries on itself a considerable traffic with *Bagdad*. The territory on the other side of the river is exceeding fruitful, but the ground on the city side is mostly dry, sandy, and barren. The heat in *Moussul* is so excessive in summer, that from two hours after sun-rise, till about an hour after its setting, there is no going out of doors; and even then the walls of the houses feel as hot iron at half a foot distance. There is besides a dangerous wind, called by the natives *Samiel*, which reigns by land from this place to *Surat*, and is supposed to be the east wind mentioned by *Job*. It is mingled with streaks of fire as small as hairs, and kills those that breathe it, who soon appear as black as a coal, and their flesh comes off from the bones. Some who perceive it coming, frequently escape by falling flat with their faces to the ground. It is thought to proceed from sulphureous exhalations, that kindle in being agitated by the wind; for it is chiefly felt on the banks of the river, and not on the water, where these vapours are dissipated by the breezes, or moist air arising from the river. But it is not this sort of wind alone, though indeed the most dangerous of all, that infests the inhabitants of this city and climate; the hot air is dangerous not only to the lungs and blood, but to the very skin, which it raises in blisters and makes to peel off; and the eyes are so affected by it, that travellers are obliged to wear a kind of soft black crape over them to keep the heat off; but as this is not always a sufficient preservative, they anoint them when they begin to be inflamed, with a mixture of sugar and long pepper, sifted very fine.

**YERACK**, or *Chaldea*, the second division of *Diarbekr*, is situate on the south of *Diarbeck Proper*, between and on both sides the two great rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris*. We are told by *St. Jerom*, that the *Chaldæi* derived their name from *Chesed*, the fourth son of *Nachor*, the brother of *Abraham*; but it seems from the tenor of the scripture to have been of older date. Authors differ in opinion concerning the etymon of *Yerack*; but the name of *Yerac-Arabi* is also given to it, because it reaches quite to *Arabia Deserta*.

THE soil of *Chaldea* was anciently so fertile that it produced two or three hundred fold, and might still do the same if rightly cultivated. The pasture grounds are very rich, and breed vast numbers of cattle, which furnish the country with plenty of milk and butter. The *Chaldees* were observed to have been very early proficient in astronomy and astrology, as well as in the art of soothsaying, divination, and other superstitious practices, for which they were famed above all other nations. They are likewise supposed by some

to



- a to have been the first idolaters in the world, though others, with more probability, ascribe this to the *Egyptians*. The scripture brands them for their unparalleled ambition in striving to vie with the power of heaven, and supporting themselves against it, by that bold structure they attempted to raise, called the tower of *Babel*. They received Christianity in the time of the Apostles, but from which of them is uncertain. So early as the *Nicene* council, we find the bishop of *Seleucia* in great esteem, and in all assemblies after he was in rank next to the patriarch of *Jerusalem*. The Christians are here still very numerous, though few orthodox, the two heresies of the *Jacobites* and *Nestorians*, besides several other erroneous opinions and customs, prevailing amongst them. Their language
- b was originally different from the *Hebrew*, which was spoken in *Mesopotamia*; but by the long continuance of the *Jews* amongst them, the purity of both tongues were corrupted and intermingled, and from this mixture arose that which is now called the *Syriack*, which to this day is still used in those provinces.

THE most considerable and best known towns and cities of this division are *Bagdad*, *Babylon*, *Traxt*, *Balsora*, *Kufa*, *Oorta*, *Gorna*, *Seleucia*, and *Ctesiphon*.

- BAGDAD, the famed capital of this province, is situate on the eastern banks of the river *Tigris*, towards *Persia*, in latitude 33. 15. east longitude 45. 40. It has been mistaken by several geographers for the old *Babylon*, though at a great distance from the ruins of that ancient metropolis. It is computed to be about one thousand five hundred paces in
- c length, seven or eight hundred in breadth, and three thousand in circumference. Its walls are all of brick, with terraces and large towers at proper distances, in form of bastions, and defended by about sixty pieces of cannon. The castle is large and flanked by some small towers with cannon; and the garrison usually consists of nine hundred foot, four thousand horse, and sixty gunners. The inhabitants are thought to be about fifteen thousand, including those who live in a suburb on the other side of the *Tigris*, at the end of the bridge of boats, which is undone every night to prevent a surprize. But notwithstanding this number of inhabitants, and largeness of the garrison, the town has still many empty spaces within its walls, and for the most part is but indifferently built; so that the only edifices worth notice are the bazars, some caravans, and the mosques. The two
- d former are all arched, without which there would be no bearing the excessive heat of the day; and even so they are obliged to water them three or four times a day, to keep them moderately cool, and free from dust.

Bagdad described.

- BAGDAD was built out of the ruins of the old *Seleucia*, by *Mohammed II.* caliph of the *Saracens*, who in 762, made it the capital of his kingdom. Its name is derived from the garden of a venerable hermit, who had his abode there, *Bagdad* signifying a garden given, or the garden of the wealthy. It soon became a wealthy and populous town, and continued
- e so till the middle of the thirteenth century, when the famed *Haloon* the *Tartar* put an end to it by the death of the caliph and his whole family, and by taking and destroying this metropolis. It soon, however, recovered itself; but has since so often passed from the *Persians* to the *Turks*, that it now retains very little of its ancient splendor. In 1638, when *Amurath IV.* laid siege to it, a memorable accident happened, which facilitated his making himself master of it: it was then bravely defended by the noble commander *Sophy Kouly Kan*, who had already repulsed the *Turkish* forces in two different attempts, and was likely to have done the same at this time, had not the *Persian* monarch sent his favourite to command in his room. *Sophy Kouli* seeing himself deposed, and resolving to die rather than submit to the disgrace, sent for his wife and son, and shewing each of them a bowl, and a third which he had prepared for himself, exhorted them to follow his example; and having drank off his dose, had the pleasure to see them both do the same, so that they all expired in a very little time. The consequence of this bold action was,
- f that the garrison, who greatly admired their old commander, mutinied, and refusing to obey the new, agreed to surrender the place on condition of marching out with bag and baggage, which was indeed promised them; but the treacherous *Amurath* having entered it, caused them all to be put to the sword, to the number of twenty-two thousand; since which time the *Turks* have continued in possession of it. From that fatal period the trade of the place has decayed very considerably, the sultan having at the same time rifled all the rich merchants. It still, notwithstanding, continues to be a place of pretty good resort for all the commodities of *Anatolia*, *Syria*, *Damascus*, *Constantinople*, *Arabia*, *Persia*, and *India*; but is nothing so populous and opulent as when the *Persians* held it.

When built and its various fates.

- THE air of *Bagdad* and its environs is so hot, that the inhabitants are forced to keep their markets in the night during the summer, and to lie at night on their terraces. The
- g military government is commonly under a basha, but the civil is intirely in the hands of a cadi, who acts as judge, president, and musti, with a *tefterdar* or treasurer under him, who collects the grand signior's revenue.

THE



Third divi-  
sion of Diar-  
beckr de-  
scribed.

THE third and last part of the *Turkish* province of *Diarbekr* is now called *Curdistān*,<sup>a</sup> but was anciently more known by the name of *Assyria*, so called from *Assur* or *Ashur*, the son of *Shem* and grandson of *Noah*, who first planted this country. It lies on the east side of the river *Tigris*, towards *Persia*, being bounded by that kingdom on the east, and the *Tigris* on the west; by *Yerack* or the country of *Bagdad* on the south, and *Turcomania* on the north. It is very narrow towards the south, where it scarce extends ninety miles in breadth; but towards the north it stretches near two hundred miles from east to west, that is, from the forty-first to the forty-seventh degree of east longitude; as for its length from north to south, it reaches from thirty-five degrees thirty minutes, to thirty-seven degrees twenty minutes of latitude. The mountain of *Coatras* divides it from *Persia* on the east, and the *Tigris* on the west from *Mesopotamia* and *Chaldea*.<sup>b</sup>

ACCORDING to the ancient accounts we have of this country, it was rich and fertile; but at present it is found quite the reverse, being indeed very desolate, with vast barren plains and dreadful deserts, except a few parts near some towns, where the territory is a little better cultivated. It must, however, be remembered, that it was formerly a constant field of battle between the *Parthians* and *Romans*, and since between the *Turks* and *Persians*, which must insensibly have quite depopulated it; and where hands and industry are wanting, there the best soil will grow barren, which is now the case of this once celebrated and fertile empire.

Account of the  
inhabitants.

THE *Curds*, or *Curdes*, that inhabit it and some parts of *Persia*, are supposed to be the descendants of the ancient *Chaldeans*, and live intirely upon plunder. They dwell in tents on the plains, till the snows oblige them to retire into their villages, and are ever upon the watch after the caravans and other travellers, whom they plunder, strip, and even murder without mercy. They are without religion, laws, government, or settled habitation, and are called *Jesides*, as having still a kind of tradition, by which they believe in *Jesid*; so they call our *Jesus*, to whom they pay a kind of veneration, though without acknowledging, or perhaps knowing him in any case as the Saviour of mankind. But they stand in great fear of the devil, who, they believe, is able to do them much hurt, to whom for that reason they pay greater regard. They spread themselves from *Moussul* quite to the *Euphrates*, and acknowledge no subjection to either *Turks* or *Persians*, who never trouble themselves about them, except when they commit murder or robbery, and even then content themselves with a pecuniary punishment. They are often shifting in search of pasture for their numerous herds and flocks of cattle; and whilst the men roam in quest of plunder, the women are occupied in making butter and cheese, and training up the children to the fathers trade. Their tents are large and of a sort of coarse brown cloth, which serves as a covering to their portative houses, made of cane hurdles disposed in a square form, and the floor matted to answer the purposes of both bed and board. When they think fit to dislodge, they take their huts to pieces, and load their oxen and cows with them, and with their children and other household utensils. These children are used to go almost naked in the coldest weather. The men are generally well mounted, and take great care of their horses, which are commonly very fleet: the lance is their chief weapon. The women ride indifferently on horses or oxen. Both are naturally stout and nimble, but not in the least agreeable, having very small eyes, wide mouths, bad complexions, very black hair, and something very fierce and forbidding in their looks.<sup>c</sup>

THE *Curdes* were known to the ancients by the name of *Curduchi*, or *Curdueni*, and were so called from the famed ridge of mountains called *Curdo*, but more anciently *Niphatian* hills, which are a part of those known by the name of *Mount Taurus*.

THE chief towns and hamlets in *Curdistān* are *Betilis*, *Schereful Arbela*, *Harpel*, *Nineveh*, *Rebobo*, *Rbesen*, *Van*, and *Hokwan*.

Armenia, the  
second pro-  
vince of the  
eastern Asia-  
tick Turkey,  
described.

TURCOMANIA or *Armenia*, the second province or division of the eastern *Asiatic Turkey*, is bounded on the south by *Mesopotamia*, on the north by *Georgia*, on the east by *Persia*, and on the west by *Cappadocia* and the *Lesser Armenia*, from which it is parted by the river *Euphrates*. Its extent is somewhat above two hundred miles, or from about 38. 20. to almost 42 degrees of latitude; and from 39 to almost 42 of east longitude, or about three hundred miles from east to west. The country is very healthy, the climate temperate, and the soil rich and fertile, especially in the midland and valleys, but is much taken up with mountains, especially about the frontiers; yet these produce very good pasture, and the rest plenty of corn, wine, and fruits of all sorts. The people are robust, stout, and industrious; their lands are well cultivated, and several mechanic arts and manufactures are carried on by them to good advantage. The only misfortune is, they lie too much out of the way of trade, to reap all the benefit they otherwise would do, if more commodiously situated for it. However, they employ themselves in weaving of tapestry, and several sorts of stuffs, which they vend abroad: the rest follow agriculture; and one may see<sup>f</sup>



- a see with pleasure a great difference between this *Turkish* province, and some of those poor, barren, uncultivated, and desolate ones we have already passed in review.

THE inhabitants, though under a *Turkish* government, are at present mostly Christians, but accused of *Eutychianism*, that is, of acknowledging but one nature in *Christ*; for which they have been condemned and excommunicated both by the *Greeks* and *Latins*: yet they pretend to wipe off the imputation by owning his divine nature, but that it is so closely or hypostatically united to the human, as to admit of no further distinction. Some of their learned bishops go even so far as to pretend, that all the difference between them and the orthodox, proceeds from that poverty of their language which does not sufficiently distinguish between person and nature; for they acknowledge the distinct properties of each nature in *Christ*, though from thence they cannot give into the belief of two natures, but only of one single and individual, in which the attributes of those two perfectly coalesce and are united. The truth is, the fault is not so much owing to the barrenness of their language, as to their great veneration for the writings of *Dioscorus* and *Barsuma*, two famed *Eutychians*, and those of their patriarch *Ozvielzi*, and their doctor *Altenasi*, great favourers of the same heresy, whom they implicitly follow, as pillars of their faith, without giving themselves much pains to examine into the merits of the controversy.

- b *ARMENIA* was anciently inhabited by the descendants of *Hul*, or *Chul*, the son of *Aram*, who, it is supposed, called it by the name of their progenitor; whence came the name of *Armenia* or *Aramenia*. Others think it is so called from a *Hebrew* word signifying *high*, because this country lies high, and its mountains are the highest of all this eastern tract. A third etymon is from the *Hebrew* *Har-Minni*, or the mountain of *Minni*; which last was a kingdom mentioned by *Jeremiah*,\* with those of *Ararat* and *Aschenaz*. *Ararat* is thought to be likewise the *Hebrew* name of *Armenia*, by most of the ancient interpreters: so that where *Moses* says, "that the ark<sup>1</sup> rested on the mountains of *Ararat*," and where the two sons of *Sennacherib* are said to have fled into the land of *Ararat*, after the murder of their father; they understand it of the land and mountains of *Armenia*. As to those who fancy it was so called from *Armenus*, the *Rhodian* or *Thessalian*, they are still more out of their notions. But waving all these uncertain etymons, there is no doubt but this country became a considerable kingdom very early, and continued so for several ages.
- c Its present name of *Turcomania* is from the *Turks*, or *Turcomans*.

*TIGRANES*, one of the kings of *Armenia*, greatly extended his dominions on every side, and added to them the provinces of *Syria*, *Phœnice*, and *Media*; but upon being defeated by *Lucullus* in the *Mithridatic* war, the *Armenians* were again driven homeward, and their kingdom restrained to *Armenia Major*. *Mark Anthony* afterwards took their king *Artavasdes* prisoner, and sent him to *Rome* in golden fetters; and *Trajan* reduced the whole country into a *Roman* province. But it since recovered its liberty, and we find it governed by its own kings in the reign of *Constantine the Great*, and some time after, though they were then feudatories to the emperors till 687, when they were subdued by the *Saracens*. These held it till the irruption of the *Turks* or *Turcomans*, out of *Scythia*, who made themselves masters of this province, and gave it the name of *Turcomania*. This happened, according to some, in the year 755; but, according to others, not till 844. But whilst the *Turks* were employed in other conquests, the *Armenians* took the opportunity of recovering their liberty, and set up some new kings of their own. These were again subdued by the *Tartars*, but not so extirpated but that there still remained some of them, one of whom succeeding to the throne of *Persia*, made *Armenia* a province of that kingdom in 1472. But it was again partly reconquered by the *Turks* under sultan *Selim I.* in 1515; so that ever since, the western part has continued subject to the *Turks*, and the eastern to the *Persians*.

- f THE *Turkish* inhabitants of this country, though inferior in number to the Christians, are possessed of some of the richest and fairest territories on each side of the *Euphrates*; but with this difference, that instead of being absolute masters, as they formerly were, they are now tributary to the *Ottoman Porte*, or rather enjoy a shadow of liberty under it; and hence proceeds their innate hatred against it; for they still adhere to their ancient way of leading a pastoral life in tents, and shifting their habitations. They are tall and stout, of a swarthy complexion, flat noses, square faces; but their women are generally very handsome, and well shaped. They are governed by their own chiefs and laws, and profess the *Mohammedan* religion, but do not trouble themselves much about the observance of it. Being naturally addicted to plunder, they would do a deal of mischief to commerce, were it not for the care of the *Turkish* bashas to keep them in order: for as the tribute paid by the caravans, and the number of passengers, make the most considerable branch of their income, it is their interest to preserve the roads as free and safe as they can. In other

Etymon of the  
nam. of Ar-  
menia.

Turkish in-  
habitants of  
Armenia.

\* Chap. li. 27.

<sup>1</sup> Gen. viii. 4.

<sup>m</sup> 2 Kings xix. 37.



Armenian  
traders and  
merchants.

respects they wink at many irregularities in their way of life, as their frequent inroads upon the *Curdes*, the *Arabs*, and other neighbouring nations that own no subjection to the Porte. These *Turks*, a hardy race, excellent horsemen, courageous and enterprising, spread themselves likewise towards the east, even into *Persia*. They are computed altogether to amount to about one hundred thousand families.

THE name of *Armenians* is also given to those who were transported into several parts of *Persia* by shah *Abas*; and more particularly to that celebrated colony of *Armenians* who dwell at *Zulfa*, one of the suburbs of *Ispahan*. These *Armenians*, and in general all those of the same denomination, who apply themselves to trade, which they make their chief business, are civil and polite, and have a great deal of good sense and honesty. They are not only, in a great measure, masters of the whole trade of the *Levant*, but have also a great share in that of the most considerable towns in *Europe*; for it is very common to meet with some *Armenians* at *Leghorn* and *Venice*, in *England* and in *Holland*; whilst on the other side they travel into the dominions of the Grand Mogul, *Siam*, *Java*, the *Philippine Islands*, and over all the East, except *China*. It is not agreed among the learned, under what *Abas*, king of *Persia*, the colony of *Zulfa* was transported to *Ispahan*, and settled where it now is. But it is very certain that shah *Abas the Great*, in order to secure the conquest of *Armenia*, which he had taken from the *Turks*, removed into *Persia* the first *Armenians* who ever settled there; and about thirty thousand families of them were transported into the province of *Ghilan* only, from whence the finest *Persian* silks come. He also caused all the inhabitants of *Zulfa*, a large city of *Armenia*, to settle at *Ispahan*, whence the new *Zulfa* of *Persia* took its name. This *Zulfa* is now the center of all the commerce of the *Armenians*; and it is to the same Shah *Abas* these people owe their genius and capacity for trade, which did but very little appear till their transmigration into *Persia*. And as *Abas the Great* had no other view but to enrich his country, and was sensible he could not compass that design but by the means of trade, he cast his eyes upon silks, as the most precious commodity, and upon the *Armenians*, as the most proper people to dispose of it. In short, the *Armenians*, who were but husbandmen, were by him turned into merchants, and these merchants are become some of the most able and most celebrated traders in the world. When thus the trade of the *Armenians* was sufficiently established, the kings of *Persia* no longer meddled with it; the citizens of *Zulfa* alone continued to support it, and by the assistance of their brokers or agents, who are of the same nation with themselves, they distribute through the whole world the finest and richest commodities of *Asia*. These agents undertake for a very moderate profit, to conduct the merchandizes to the very places they are designed for, to take care of them during the march of the caravans, to dispose of them to the best advantage they can, and to give afterwards a faithful account to those by whom they are intrusted. It cannot be sufficiently expressed how faithful those agents are, what care they take to preserve the merchandizes they conduct, not fearing even to run the danger of perishing themselves, in order to succour the camels, and other beasts of burthen that carry them, at the crossing of rivers, or at the difficult passes of mountains. Their charity for each other is unspeakable; and, when those who are settled in some town are acquainted with the coming of a caravan, they do not scruple to undertake a journey of a day or two, in order to go and meet them, and carry refreshments to their brethren. When the caravans make any stay in towns, the *Armenians*, to live the cheaper, join several together. In *Asia*, they sell upon the road hardwares of *Venice*, *France*, *Germany*, and *England*, in order to get provisions. In *Europe* they obtain them for musk and some spice. In a word, there is no nation comparable to them for sobriety, good husbandry, and honesty. It is true, indeed, that when their affairs prove unprosperous in those foreign countries where they trade, they seldom return home, not daring, they say, to appear before their creditors, whose confidence they have abused. But it must be owned that this happens very seldom; it being extremely uncommon to see an *Armenian* become a bankrupt. There is nothing more extraordinary, and at the same time more pleasant, than the manner of striking bargains among the *Armenians*. They begin with putting money upon the table; after which, they cavil or dispute as much as they can about the price, the buyer and the seller presenting and repulsing alternately the pieces of money which they add to the price offered, or which they abate from the price demanded: this is always done with so much noise and ill humour, that one would think they were going to devour each other. All this, however, is nothing but grimace and affectation; and when the broker, who is always present at this comedy, judges that things are pretty near their value, he squeezes the seller's hand with so much violence that he makes him cry out, but does not leave him till he accepts the buyer's offer. The farce ends with reciprocal jokes, each laughing on his side, thinking that he has the best of the bargain.



a THE principal towns in *Armenia*, which are populous and wealthy, are *Erzerum*, the capital, and *Tocat*. Both carry on a considerable trade in brass and copper ware, fur, gall-nuts, caviar, madder, silk, yellow and red leather, and printed calicoes. The *English* keep a consul at *Erzerum*, who is generally in great credit and esteem. Other places of some note are *Van*, *Kars*, *Irvan*, *Zulfa*, and *Mackisvan*.

Principal towns.

b *ARARAT*, a celebrated mountain in this country, not like *Taurus*, *Caucasus*, and a great many others, which ought rather to be called vast chains of mountains of extraordinary length, rises with two summits, one larger and somewhat higher than the other, but both of so prodigious a height, as to be seen at the distance of five days journey. The *Armenians* pay a great veneration to it, from a belief that it was the place on which the ark rested, and pretend to shew some fragments of it, which they say have been preserved from corruption, not so much by a miracle, as from the serenity of the climate at that vast height, which is so much above the clouds, that there is neither rain, snow, dew, nor any thing but continual sunshine. The ascent is not only very difficult and fatiguing, but also dangerous, through the ruggedness of some parts, the deep sands of others, the horrid precipices one is obliged to behold in the way, not without horror, and the dreadful giddiness which seizes the stoutest. There are two monasteries at the bottom of the mountain, and higher up a few shepherds huts. Ascending from thence, some partridges are seen flying about; but proceeding to the second region, nothing but tygers are met with, which commonly keep at a due distance, and here and there a flight of crows. All the remaining part of the mountain is covered with snow, which in all probability has been there ever since the flood; and thick clouds overspread it for one half, at least, of the year, and keep it quite from sight.

Mount Ararat described.

c *GEORGIA*, the third province or division of the eastern *Asiatic Turkey*, is the country which lies between the *Euxine* and the *Caspian Sea*, and is so called, according to some, from *St. George the Martyr*, who is the patron of all the Christians of the *Greek church*; but with more probability, according to others, from *Kurgia*, a name derived from its river *Kur*. The inhabitants are indifferently called *Georgi*, *Gurgi*, and *Kurgi*, and the country *Gurgistan*, and *Kurgistan*, by the *Persians*.

Georgia the third province of the eastern Asiatic Turkey, described.

d *GEORGIA* is bounded on the north by *Circassia*, on the east by *Daghestan* and *Shirvan*, on the south by *Armenia*, and on the west by the *Euxine*, or *Black Sea*. It comprehends in its largest extent the *Colchis* and *Iberia* of the ancients, as the *Daghestan* and *Shirvan* comprehend the ancient *Albania*. It is divided by a ridge of mountains into eastern and western; in the first of which are the kingdoms of *Caket* on the north, and *Carduel* on the south. The western contains *Abcassia* on the north, then *Mingrelia*, *Mireta*, and *Guriel*. *Georgia* is again divided into *Georgia* in general, thus including in its largest sense, the limits of the above kingdoms; and *Georgia Proper*, in which sense the provinces of *Abcassia* and *Mingrelia* are distinct from it; so that it contains only those of *Caket* and *Cartheul*. This distinction is necessary to be remembered by those who study history, because there was a time when the whole country of *Georgia* was governed by kings of its own. As for *Georgia Proper*, it was conquered by the *Persian king*, who keeps a viceroy in it, and obliges him to make public profession of *Mohammedanism*, without which none can be admitted to that dignity.

THIS country is naturally rich and fertile, but is far from being rightly cultivated; and though the natives profess Christianity, they are of so rude and vicious a nature, that they neither encourage ingenuity or labour, nor apply themselves to agriculture, manufactures, or other laudable occupations.

f *GEORGIA* abounds with woods and mountains, but has likewise a great number of beautiful plains, though not wide in proportion to their length. The heart of it, more smooth and even, is watered by the river *Kur*, called by the generality of geographers *Cyrus* or *Corus*; it comes from *Mount Caucasus*, and running through the middle of it, empties itself into the *Caspian Sea*. This river has an advantage above all the other great ones of *Persia*, that it is navigable through a great part of this empire.

g THE whole country of *Georgia* is but thinly inhabited, and has but very few cities in proportion to its extent and fertility. This must be ascribed to their trading chiefly in boys and girls, a barbarous and unnatural traffick, which is here carried on to a most shameful height, parents selling their children, masters their servants, lords their vassals and tenants, and, in short, every man selling what males and females he can get power over, all which are disposed of to the *Turks*, *Persians*, and others, who make use of them in their armies and seraglios, as slaves, mutes, eunuchs, soldiers, statesmen, and concubines, according as their capacities, or the favour they find with their masters, can recommend them. Hence then may be said to proceed its scarcity of inhabitants and great cities, though formerly it abounded with both to a great degree, as may appear, not only from its history, but from the vast number of ancient cities now lying in ruins, which by their remains seem to have been



been very large, opulent, and sumptuously built; but were all destroyed by the inundation of northern barbarians from *Mount Caucasus*, as the *Scythians*, *Huns*, *Suevi*, and some others, so much noted in ancient history for their strength, courage, and conquests. To these also may be added the once famed *Amazons*, who dwelt in the neighbourhood of this country towards the North, and who invaded and destroyed the kingdom of *Caket* or *Gaguetia*. a

THE air of *Georgia* is serene, dry, and healthful, but very cold in winter and hot in summer. The fine weather commonly begins about *May*, and lasts till *November*, but the lands want a good deal of watering to make them produce a full crop; in which case they yield plenty of all sorts of grain, pulse, and fruits, which sell at a cheap rate, so that the people live here in ease and plenty. The fruits in particular are so exquisite, that no country in *Europe* produces better pears and apples, nor any in *Asia* more delicious pomegranates. b  
The bread is as good as any in the world. The cattle both large and small are fat and good, and in great numbers; and the same may be said of the game. But the common people live mostly, if not altogether, upon swine's flesh, which is every where excellent, and by their own account very wholesome and easy of digestion. The river *Kur*, as well as the *Caspian Sea*, which lies east of *Georgia*, supplies it with plenty and variety of fish, so that each season of the year is abundantly furnished with every necessary peculiar to it. But the most noble product of *Georgia* is its excellent wine, of which great quantities at a moderate price are sent into the neighbouring countries, and particularly into *Persia* for the king's own table. It likewise produces a good deal of silk; but as the *Georgians* hardly c know how to manufacture it, it is chiefly sent to *Erzerum* in *Armenia* for that purpose.

Georgian  
women.

THERE is hardly any nation under the sun that can boast of such fine women. Nature seems to have heaped such graces upon them as are no where to be seen, whether we consider them with respect to their fair complexion, beautiful faces, handsome stature, slender waist, or clean limbs. This is the reason they are in such request in the courts of *Persia* and *Turkey*; but for the better part they are as vicious as handsome, contributing by their lewdness, to which they are extremely addicted, to that inundation of sensuality by which the country is over-run.

Character of  
the men.

THE men are also very comely, tall, and well-shaped, and have good natural parts, which might be greatly improved by the help of a good education; but they are commonly d brought up in such a manner, as rather tends to keep them ignorant, vicious, and untractable; so that they are generally knavish, deceitful, perfidious, treacherous, ungrateful, proud, impudent, and commonly behave with the most surprising insolence, and where once offended, retain an irreconcilable hatred to the end of their lives. These are not their only vices, being also shamefully given to drunkenness, debauchery, lewdness of the worst kind, which is looked upon rather as gallantry than a disgrace. The very clergy make no scruple to be seen bestially drunk, especially on holidays, or publicly keeping concubines for their own use. They are likewise great usurers, seldom lending without a valuable pledge, and at the rate of two or three *per cent.* per month, as our common pawn-brokers. In other respects they appear affable, courteous, and grave, and give all kind e of liberty to strangers to live, trade, and converse among them in what way, and to profess what religion they please: so that people are seen here of several nations, as *Turks*, *Armenians*, *Persians*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Indians*, *Tartars*, *Russians*, and *Europeans*; but the *Armenians* are the most numerous, and by carrying on the greatest part of the trade, are also the richest, for which reason the haughty *Georgians* hate and despise them, and consider them in the same light as *Europeans* do the *Jews*. The *Georgians* wear fur caps on their heads, and a kind of long loose vest, opened before, but which may be buttoned at pleasure; their breeches and under-garments are like those of the *Persians*, and so is the attire of their women.

Buildings.

THEIR houses, especially those of the better sort, are also after the model of those of *Persia*, as well as all their public buildings; and they may afford to have them built after f the best manner, having not only stone, wood, plaister, lime, and all other materials in the greatest plenty and cheapness; but also can have the most laborious work done for little or nothing by their own vassals, over whom they have such an absolute power, that they can keep them employed whole months together, without allowing them either wages or food. The churches in the cities are neat, well built, and kept clean, and some of them even grand and stately: but in the country, they are mean without, dirty within, and for the most part neglected and decaying. The *Georgians*, as well as the other Christians on the west and north, have a very strange custom of building most of their churches g on the tops of high and almost inaccessible mountains, and at a distance from their towns, to which they seldom or ever repair, insomuch that some of them are not opened once in ten years; and they have a prevailing notion among them, that if they do but build a church in this manner, all their sins of whatever kind shall be forgiven them.



- a THE tenets of the *Georgians* are much the same with those of the *Greek* church. They are said to have received the Christian faith about the middle of the fourth century, by means of a woman-slave. But if we except the *Mingrelians*, who are rather the worst of the two, they seem to have really lost both the spirit and notion of Christianity, and to have retained only the name. They neither seem to know, or at least to observe any precept of the gospel, only the *Georgians* keep up their fasts and festivals a little more strictly, and make use of longer prayers than the *Mingrelians*. They are under a patriarch, styled *Catholicos*, with an archbishop, and several bishops always chosen by the *Persian* viceroy, who, though a *Mohammedan*, at least in outward profession, commonly fills these dignities with his own relations. The nobles and gentry in the country assume the same privilege in their own territories, and not only bestow those benefices on whom they please, but even go so far as to depose, imprison, and punish those ecclesiastics under them, as they do their common vassals among the laity.

*Tenets, prelates, &c.*

In the province or ancient kingdom of *Mingrelia*, are contained those of *Imeretia*, *Gauria*, and *Samsa*, as having been all formerly under one monarch; and though they form a larger country than that of *Georgia*, properly so called, yet they are reckoned by geographers as part of that country, and are comprehended under that general name. The inhabitants which lie nearest *Mingrelia*, are the *Suani*, *Alani*, *Abcasses*, *Circassians*, *Zicqui*, and *Caracholi*, all which pretend to be Christians, though neither faith nor devotion are found among them.

- c THE famed *Mount Caucasus*, a great curiosity in this country, lies between the *Caspian* and *Euxine Seas*, and has *Russian Tartary* on the north, and *Turkey* and *Georgia* on the south. It is higher and larger than the mounts *Imaus* and *Taurus*, both in respect to its various summits, which are always covered with snow, and in respect to its extent from east to west, and from north to south. It is full of rocks and frightful precipices, where, with great labour, paths are cut out of the rock, for the convenience of passage, which is, notwithstanding, very difficult by reason of the steep declivity. In winter the snow lies long, and adds much to the difficulty and danger of the passage; which the better to provide against, the guides wear a sort of shoes, with soles as broad as a racket, and much in that form: these shoes preserve them from sinking into the snow, and by them they skim along the surface with surprizing agility, at the same time turning aside the snow, and making a path for the passengers, with a kind of shovel which they carry in their hands. A high wind is then very dangerous, as the drifts of snow caused by it will overwhelm both man and horse. The passage over it is computed to be about one hundred and twenty miles; but in the way are several villages, where travellers find plenty of provisions; for the soil in general is very prolific, even to the top, yielding corn, wine, fruits, honey, and cattle, in abundance, and all very good in their kind. The eastern parts of *Caucasus* terminate in two *portæ*, gates or passes, which served as a passage to the *Huns* to enter into the territories of the *Persians* and *Romans*. One of them was anciently called *Caucasian*, and the other *Caspian*: the first has since changed its name for that of *Tzur*.

*Mount Caucasus described.*

- e THE river *Phasis*, of great note also among the ancients, bends its course through part of this country. Its fountain-head is among the ridges of *Mount Caucasus*, and thence traversing the province of *Mingrelia*, continues winding westward, and empties itself into the *Euxine Sea*, by two mouths forming a multitude of pleasant isles. Its waters retain their sweetness for a considerable way in the sea, which may be attributed to their lightness, as swimming for some time on the surface of the salt. It is reckoned one of the largest rivers in all *Asia*, and towards its mouth is a mile and a half in breadth, and its bed upwards of sixty fathom deep. Some think it, from its name of *Phasis*, to be the ancient *Pison*, mentioned by *Moses* as one of the rivers of *Paradise*.

- f THE principal cities and towns of *Georgia* are *Tbiflis*, the capital, *Gori*, *Aly*, *Suram*, *Zagan*, *Cotatis Akalzike*, and *Terchi*.

## C H A P. VI.

### *Of the Origin, Conquests, Government, Religion, Customs, Manners, Policy, &c. of the Turks.*

- g HAVING described every thing that is material relating to the provinces of the *Turkish Asiatic* empire, it seemed necessary to subjoin here a general idea of the people, who by an almost insensible increase, have at length formed one of the greatest and most potent dominions at present subsisting in the world.



Origin of the  
Turks.

IF we should endeavour to trace their origin back to its source, we might find that it reaches almost as high as the general dispersion of nations. The *Huns*, known for several centuries past by the name of *Turks*, at first occupied the country north of *China*, between the rivers *Irtis* and *Amour*; by degrees they became masters of all *Great Tartary*, and established a dominion in those vast countries, which maintained its grandeur above 2000 years: the remaining monuments point out illustrious emperors, sage legislators, and renowned conquerors. What particularly renders the history of this people an interesting matter, is its connection with the histories of almost all the other people of *Europe* and *Asia*. It is blended with that of the *Chinese* and eastern *Tartars*, who were contiguous to the *Huns*, and with whom they had continual wars. In the reign of the emperor *Valens*, these *Huns*, under the conduct of *Attila*, abandoned the frontiers of *China*, traversed immense countries, and brought ravage and desolation with them into *Europe*. It cannot be questioned but that the particulars of this irruption, and an inquiry into the causes that produced it, must throw great light upon the history of the lower empire.

AFTER these *Huns* came others from the side of *Persia*, who settled in *Iconium*. To them succeeded the *Ottoman Turks*. There is no deducing the origin of any of these, but by clearing up many difficulties which occur in the *Greek* writers, and pointing out the errors which abound in *Chalcondylus*, the *Turkish* historians, and prince *Cantemir*, who has followed them too scrupulously. To come at a knowledge of the *Turks* who extinguished the power of the caliphs, and reduced them to mere chiefs of a religion, the history of the Mussulman emperors must be reviewed. The *Russians*, *Poles*, and *Hungarians*, must meet with part of their own affairs in the details which concern the expedition of the *Tartars* as far as the *Baltic Sea*. In a word, these barbarians have made incursions into *Italy*, *Germany*, and *France*, so that their history has a connection with that of all those states. In the wars occasioned by the crusades, the *French* were always fighting against the *Turks*: an inquiry into this people cannot therefore but rectify, in that respect, the ancient *French* historians, and teach us how to distinguish what is true in them from circumstances which an extravagant credulity has prevailed upon them to admit.

BUT as it is not our business to point out the objects to which a general history of the *Huns* should extend, it will be sufficient to observe in regard to the *Turks* their descendants, that though we are not informed of the occasion of their change of habitation, it may notwithstanding be easily guessed at. Being a very stout and hardy people, they propagated so fast, that they were obliged not only to enlarge their borders, and spread themselves where they most conveniently could, but likewise to send out large colonies into other lands.

First excursion  
of the Turks.

THE first attempt they made was upon *Georgia*, about the middle of the eighth century, where, having only ravaged and plundered the country, they retired, or perhaps were forced so to do, by the repulse they met with. But when they had once found the sweets of this first expedition, it is not to be doubted but that they conceived eager desires after a second; and that it would not be long before they came with a greater force, and with sufficient resolution to settle themselves, if possible, in a country so far superior in every respect to their own. Accordingly in 844, rushing on like an impetuous torrent, they penetrated as far as *Armenia Major*, where they fixed themselves. They did not, however, alter their old way of living, but contented themselves with their usual custom of dwelling in tents, and shifting their habitations as occasion required, till about the year 1000, when they were invited by the king of *Persia* into his service, who, at that time, was strongly beset by the caliph of *Babylon* on one side, and the *Indians* on the other. Their brave general *Tangrolipix*, having marched at the head of three thousand of them to his assistance, soon after totally defeated his enemy; but that ungrateful monarch, instead of rewarding their valour, refused to pay or dismiss them, and even caused their passage homewards to be stopped. The *Turks*, extremely disgusted at this treatment, retired into a wilderness, whence making frequent excursions, they plundered and ravaged all the adjacent countries; and having surprized and intirely routed twenty thousand *Persians* sent against them, they began to grow very numerous and powerful. The *Persian* king marched next against them at the head of a numerous army, but they encountered him also near *Ispahan*; and after a long and fierce conflict, in which that monarch was killed, they gained a compleat victory, and *Tangrolipix*, entering that capital at the head of his victorious *Turks*, seized on the *Persian* throne, and having embraced *Mohammedanism*, was unanimously acknowledged by all the *Persians* in 1030.

Rise of their  
power.

THIS was already a great step towards the rise of the *Turkish* power in this country; but *Tangrolipix* not stopping here, soon after fell upon the caliph of *Babylon*, defeated and killed him, and seized also on that kingdom. His next attempt was on *Arabia* on one side, and *Media* on the other; but these proving unsuccessful, he turned his arms against *Asia Minor*, which was then in a manner neglected and defenceless, on account of the dissensions then raging



a raging at *Constantinople*. His son *Axan*, and nephew *Cullumfes*, who were at the head of this expedition, made a very quick progress there in a little time. *Tangrolipix* and his successors possessed the *Persian* throne, till about the year 1260, when the *Tartars*, under their prince *Haalon*, invaded it, and with as great rapidity of success as the *Turks* had overrun *Persia*, *Assyria*, and *Asia Minor*, made themselves masters of all the *Persian* dominions, and for that time brought down the *Turkish* grandeur greatly below their own.

At the same time that *Tangrolipix*'s posterity reigned in *Persia*, there was formed another small kingdom of the *Turks*, in the east of *Persia*, under a prince of another family. There were then, it seems, two eminent *Turkish* families, the *Selzuccian*, from which *Tangrolipix* was descended; and the *Ogyzian*, from which *Ottoman* afterwards sprung. *Solyman*, the grandfather of *Ottoman*, and sultan of *Machan*, (for that was his title) seeing *Cursumes*, the last of the *Selzuccian* family, become the victim of the *Tartars*, had little hopes himself to escape their fury by any other means than flight. Accordingly, taking with him all his family, and as many of his friends as were willing to accompany him, he retired first into *Armenia*, thence into *Cappadocia* and *Syria*; and afterwards endeavouring to return to his ancient territories, was unfortunately drowned in crossing the *Euphrates*. His son *Ertogrul*, and father of *Ottoman*, with his travelling waggon and forty equipage, begged of his countryman the sultan of *Iconium*, a small tract of land to reside in, and at the same time gave him such a seasonable assistance with his little army against the *Tartars*, then at war with him, that an intire victory was gained over them. This so ingratiated him to the sultan, that he granted him a parcel of land, where he led a quiet pastoral life, after the primitive *Turkish* manner, and lived to a good old age.

Two principal families of the *Turks*.

His son *Ottoman*, who was too brave and enterprising a prince to follow his father's example, soon found means to raise himself to a greater degree of power and glory. He began with attacking his neighbours, and carrying off numerous herds of cattle from them: next he seized on their castles, which being of little or no strength, he easily made himself master of. His success so increased with his force, that at length he began to attack large cities, and in a little time subdued those of *Prusa*, *Nice*, and many others; insomuch that the greater part of *Asia-Minor* was forced to submit to his superior arms and fortune. Hereupon, he founded a new kingdom of the *Turks* in *Asia-Minor*, which continued to increase and swallow up all the inferior ones. It is from him that the *Turkish* empire obtained the name of *Ottoman*, and the present grand signior deduces his pedigree from him.

*Ottoman's* rise and conquests.

*OTTOMAN*'s son, *Orchanes*, first passed the *Hellispont*, and reduced *Gallipoli* and other places in *Europe*. *Amurath*, his successor, reduced *Adrianople*, *Servia*, and *Bulgaria*. After him, *Bajazet* conquered *Thrace*, *Macedon*, and *Achaia*; but being taken prisoner by *Tamerlane*, beat out his brains against the iron cage he was kept in. *Solyman*, eldest son to *Bajazet*, succeeded to the *European* provinces. *Mahomet*, the youngest son of *Bajazet*, possessed the *Asiatic* provinces in 1450; and having subdued *Solyman*, succeeded to the whole. He also conquered *Dacia* and part of *Sclavonia*. *Amurath II.* in 1547, subdued the rest of *Achaia*, *Thessaly*, and *Epirus*, and invaded *Hungary*. *Mahomet II.* surnamed the Great, conquered the two empires of *Constantinople* and *Trapezond*, with two hundred cities more, and was first styled emperor of the *Turks*. *Constantinople* was taken in 1453, and *Trapezond* in 1460. *Bajazet II.* in 1481, subdued *Caramania*, reduced the *Morea* and *Dalmatia*, then possessed by the *Venetians*, and part of *Armenia*. *Selimus II.* in 1512, subdued the *Mameluke* kingdom in *Egypt*, *Palestine*, *Syria*, and *Arabia Petraea*. *Solyman the Magnificent*, in 1520, reduced *Rhodes*, *Eelgrade*, *Buda*, and great part of *Hungary* in *Europe*; and *Babylon*, *Assyria*, and *Mesopotamia* in *Asia*. *Selimus III.* in 1566, took *Cyprus* from the *Venetians*, and *Tunis* in *Africa* from the *Moors*. *Amurath III.* enlarged his conquests on the side of *Persia*. *Mahomet IV.* in 1648, took *Candia* from the *Venetians*, after a siege of thirty years, having lost before it 180,000 men: the Christians lost 80,000 men in the defence of it. Volunteers from every Christian nation assisted the *Venetians* in this war. *Solyman III.* in 1687, besieged *Vienna*, but met with a total defeat there by *John Sobieski*, king of *Poland*, and lost great part of *Hungary*; the *Venetians* also recovered the *Morea* from him. In the reign of *Achmet II.* 1691, the *Turks* were intirely driven out of *Hungary* and *Transylvania*. *Achmet* recovered the *Morea* back again from the *Venetians* in 1715. *Mahomet V.* deposed his uncle sultan *Achmet* in 1730, and was succeeded by sultan *Osman III.* who dying on the 29th of *October*, 1755, his nephew, the present emperor, *Mustapha III.* who was born in 1716, ascended the throne.

Conquests of *Ottoman's* posterity.

THE *Turks* had the original of their civil government founded in time of war; for when they first came out of *Scythia* or *Tartary*, and took up arms, and submitted to one general, it may be supposed that they had no laws but what were arbitrary and martial, and most agreeable to their intended enterprize. The first sultans, owing their promotion purely to their own valour, and elate with ideas and maxims of war, would have a blind obe-

Government of the *Turks*.



obedience paid to them ; they punished with severity, and endeavoured to keep their subjects under an inability to revolt ; and they would be served only by persons who stood indebted to them for their fortune, and whom they could advance without jealousy, and crush without injustice. These maxims, which have continued amongst them for upwards of four centuries, render the sultan absolute master of his empire. In possessing the intire revenue of himself, he does but enjoy the inheritance of his ancestors ; and if he has an absolute power of life and death over his people, he regards them only as the issue of his forefathers slaves. His subjects also are so intirely persuaded of the same opinion, that they make no resistance, but submit to the first order for taking away their life or goods. This excess of obedience, infused into them from their very cradle by a refined piece of policy, is rather a duty of religion than maxim of state ; and, under the force of this prejudice, even the chief officers of the empire conclude it to be the highest good fortune and glory to end their days by the hands or order of their lord. The whole extent of the *Turkish* empire, lands and houses, castles and arms, (except lands dedicated to religious uses) are therefore the proper goods of the grand signior ; and being his possession and right, remain in his sole gift and disposal. The lands being thus originally in the prince, divisions, after conquests, were made of the houses, manors, and farms, among the soldiery, and called timars, as rewards for their valour and labour ; in consideration of which every one, proportionably to his revenue and possession, is obliged to maintain horse and men, to be always ready when the grand signior shall call him forth to serve in the wars. This is not unlike the tenure of knight's-service in *England*, or lands held of the crown ; but with this difference, that here they are enjoyed by the title of a fixed and settled law, never to be forfeited but upon treason and rebellion ; whereas, though the *Turks* enjoy them also by inheritance from father to son, yet they are only as usufructory during the pleasure of the sultan, to whom the property is always reserved, and who often, as his humour and fancy lead him, to please and gratify a stranger, ejects an ancient possessor, whose family has for many generations enjoyed that inheritance.

THE absolute and unlimited power of the sultan is still more evident from the titles they give him, as " God on earth, the shadow of God, brother to the sun and moon, the giver of all earthly crowns, &c." And though they do not erect altars to him, as was done to the *Roman* emperors, yet the exalted notions they entertain of his power, the ray of divine illumination they conceive to be in him, are a kind of imagery and idolatrous fancy they frame of his divinity.

Inauguration  
of the sultan.

WHEN there is a new emperor or sultan, it is customary to conduct him with great pomp to a place in the suburbs of *Constantinople*, called *Job*, where solemn prayers are made, that God would prosper, and infuse wisdom into him who is to manage so great a charge. Then the mufti embracing him, bestows his blessing, and the sultan swears and promises solemnly to maintain the mussulman faith and the laws of the prophet *Mohammed*. Afterwards the viziers of the bench and other bashas, with profound reverence, kissing the ground first, and then the hem of his vest, acknowledge him to be their lawful and undoubted sovereign. This form of inauguration over, he returns with the like solemnity to the seraglio. The sultan in this manner obliges himself to govern within the compass of the law ; but he is given so large a latitude, that he cannot be said to be under any restriction ; for though bound to the execution of the *Mohammedan* law, yet that law calls him the mouth and interpreter of it, and endows him with a power to alter and annul the most settled and fixed rules, or at least to dispense with them, when an obstacle to his government.

Turkish of-  
ficers of State

THE great officers of state in *Turkey* are the grand vizier, or prime minister ; the mufti, or high priest ; the viziers of the bench, who sit in the divan, or courts of justice with him ; the cadalisquiers, or chief justices of provinces ; the beglerbegs, or viceroys ; the bashas, or governors of towns and districts under the beglerbegs ; the kiamacan, or governor of *Constantinople*, who is the grand vizier's lieutenant in his absence ; the reis-effendi, or lord chancellor and secretary of state ; the testerdar, or lord-treasurer ; the kislar aga, or black eunuch, superintendant to the women ; the capi agasi, or white eunuch, who has the command of all the pages and white eunuchs ; the chamberlain, and other officers of the household ; the aga, or general of the janizaries ; and the captain-basha, or admiral. There are no nobility or hereditary governments in *Turkey* ; the bashas and great officers of state are all educated in the seraglio, being the children of Christian parents, taken by the *Tartars* in their excursions, or purchased by the merchants, many of whom deal only in this kind of traffic. Sometimes, indeed, the renegado Christians arrive at the highest employments in their fleets and armies, and are observed to have done more mischief to Christendom, than those educated *Mohammedans*, being better skilled in the arts of war and navigation than the *Turks* usually are. And indeed, but few of the native *Turks* are found in any great posts, their officers, both civil and military, with the best part of their forces, being composed chiefly of the children of Christians or renegadoes.

THE



- a THE most beautiful, well made, and sprightly of the youth, who are designed for employment in the government or army, are always reviewed and approved of by the grand signior, before they are admitted into the seraglios of *Pera*, *Constantinople*, or *Adrianople*, which are the three colleges or seminaries, where they are educated or fitted for employments, according to the opinion the court entertains of them. They are first taught silence, and an humble modest behaviour; then instructed in the *Mohammedan* religion, and to speak and write the *Turkish* language, and afterwards the *Persian* and *Arabic*. When fit for manly exercises, they are taught the use of arms, and such other arts and sciences as may render them serviceable to the state, and are advanced, and their salaries augmented, according to their proficiency, and, as places and governments fall, are preferred to them;
- b but they are seldom preferred out of the seraglio till the age of forty, before which they are thought not sufficiently qualified for governors. The janizaries, or grand signior's guards, are all educated in the seraglio, and their aga or commander is the most considerable military officer. Part of the court is composed of mutes and dwarfs; the mutes, who are born deaf and consequently dumb, are about forty in number, and are taught to discourse by signs. With these and the dwarf the sultan frequently diverts himself; and if a dwarf happens to be an eunuch and a mute, too great a value cannot be set upon him.

educated in the seraglio.

- c THE ladies of the haram are a collection of young beautiful virgins, either the presents of governors, or purchased, or taken in war, most of them the children of Christian parents. On their admission, they are committed to the charge of some ancient lady, and taught music, dancing, and other accomplishments, and furnished with the richest cloaths and ornaments: these frequently play and dance before the grand signior, while others entertain him with their conversation. They are scarce ever suffered to go abroad, except when the grand signior removes; if by water, a troop of black eunuchs convey them to the boats, inclosed with lattices; and when by land, they are put into close chariots; and signals made at certain distances, to give notice that none approach the road through which they march. Besides these ladies, there are a great many female slaves in the seraglio, whose business it is to wait on them.

Women of the seraglio.

- d THE *Turks* have always very numerous armies on foot, and the greatest part of them consist of a kind of militia; every one who holds his lands by military tenures, as before mentioned, being obliged to bring a certain number of soldiers into the field: these may amount to several hundred thousand, and are called out to action whenever the government requires their service. But their chief dependence is on their janizaries, who have been bred in the seraglio, and exercised in military discipline from their infancy, and of whom there are 25,000 in actual pay. There may be in the empire 100,000 that bear the name of janizaries, but these are not enrolled with the others: the serdar in every province, who has the command of the janizaries in it, frequently abuses his office, and will take any man into that body, who desires to purchase the privilege of committing outrages with impunity, and of screening himself from justice; for a janizary is accountable to none but his own officers, whatever violence he commits; and this, in some measure, may be a reason why the janizaries, who compose the grand signior's guards, frequently depose him when he happens to be unsuccessful, or his administration does not please them, though they usually advance his nearest relation to the throne. The spahis, or best *Turkish* horsemen, bred up in martial exercises, as the janizaries, are also a very formidable body, and may amount for the grand signior's horse-guards, to about 12 or 15,000. There are considerable bodies of others under the same denomination in every province. But their numerous armies frequently occasion their defeat, by charging in too much confusion; though basha *Bonneval* had prevailed on some of their troops to submit to *French* discipline, of which they made great advantage in their last *German* war, recovering a great extent of country they had lost south of the *Danube*: Their naval forces are
- f not so considerable as might be expected in such extensive dominions, situate on several seas, and abounding in commodious harbours: but their neglecting navigation and foreign commerce is the true reason they could never find sailors to man a great fleet, if they should build one.

Forces.

- g THE revenues of the grand signior arise by the customs, the produce of the demesne lands, and a kind of capitation tax, imposed on every subject of the empire who is not of the *Mohammedan* religion. Another branch of these revenues arises from the annual tributes paid by the *Crim Tartar*, the princes of *Moldavia*, *Wallachia*, the little republic of *Ragusa*, and part of *Mingrelia*; and half a million of money, out of a million and a half, levied annually in the kingdom of *Egypt*, comes into the royal treasury, the rest being laid out in paying the officers and forces of that province. But all these are a trifle in comparison to the vast sums the sultan continually extorts from his viceroys and great officers of state, under the name of presents. He is heir to all his officers and ministers; and when they have plundered whole provinces and kingdoms, they are forced to leave all to be dis-

Revenues.



posed of by him when they die ; and he gives but a very small portion to the relations of the deceased, though their ancestor has behaved never so well. Sometimes, under pretence of misconduct, he cuts them off in the prime of life, especially if they happen to be immoderately rich. a

Coins.

THE current coin of *Turkey* consists of gold and silver, but there is no copper or brass money. The gold coin is of two sorts, the one of their own country, the other of foreign money. The first is called a *scheriff*, a *sultanine*, or *sequin*, and is worth about 10s. sterling, though formerly it passed only for 8s. 6d. or even for 6s. 6d. These gold pieces come from *Grand Cairo*, the only city in the whole empire where gold is coined. The foreign gold are the ducats of *Germany*, *Holland*, *Hungary*, and *Venice*. The silver coins are the *asper* and *parisi*. An *English* crown is worth 120 *aspers*, and a *parisi* is worth four *aspers*: both are struck at *Grand Cairo*. b

Purse.

A PURSE is worth 500 crowns ; and of these the grand signior makes his usual presents. But a golden purse, which he bestows on his sultanas and favourites, is worth 15,000 sequins, or 30,000 crowns. A *kize* is a bag of 15,000 ducats.

Religion.

OF all false religions, the *Mohammedan* is the most dangerous, as it not only flatters the senses, but in many points agrees with Christianity. It is called *Islam*, and is divided into two distinct parts ; *Iman*, signifying faith or theory, and *Din*, religion or practice. The first is that general confession of faith, that “ there is no God but the true God, and that *Mohammed* is his apostle,” under which are comprehended six branches, 1. Belief in God. 2. In his angels. 3. In his scripture. 4. In his prophets. 5. In the resurrection and day of judgment. 6. In God’s absolute decree of predestination both of good and evil. The points relating to practice, are, 1. Prayer, under which are comprehended those washings or purifications, which are required as necessary preparations before prayer. 2. Alms. 3. Fasting. And, 4. The pilgrimage to *Mecca* and *Medina*. c

THE Devil, whom *Mohammed* calls *Eblis*, from his despair, was once one of those angels nearest to God’s presence, and fell, according to the doctrine of the alcoran, for refusing to pay homage to *Adam* at God’s command. Besides angels and devils, the *Mohammedans* are taught by the alcoran to believe an intermediate order of beings, whom they call *Sin* or *Genii*, created of fire, as they fancy the angels to be ; but of a grosser fabric than angels, because they eat and drink, propagate their species, and are subject to death. Some of them are supposed to be good, and others bad, and capable, like men, of future salvation or damnation. As to the scriptures, the *Mohammedans* are acquainted by the alcoran, that God, in divers ages of the world, gave revelations of his will in writing to several prophets, the whole, and every word of which, it is absolutely necessary for a Moslem or Mussulman to believe. The number of these sacred books amounts, according to them, to 104 ; ten of which were given to *Adam* ; fifty to *Seth* ; thirty to *Edris*, or *Enoch* ; ten to *Abraham* ; and the other four, being the pentateuch, the psalms, the gospel, and the alcoran, were successively delivered to *Moses*, *David*, *Jesus*, and *Mohammed* ; which last, being the seal of the prophets, all revelations are now closed, and no more are to be expected. All these divine books, except the four last, they say, are now intirely lost, and their contents unknown ; and of those four, the pentateuch, psalms, and gospel, have undergone so many alterations and corruptions, that though there may possibly be some part of the true word of God in them, yet no credit is to be given to the present copies in the hands of the *Jews* and *Christians*. The *Mohammedans* have a gospel in *Arabic*, attributed to *St. Barnabas*, wherein the history of *Jesus Christ* is related in a very different manner from what we find in the true gospels, and correspondent to the traditions *Mohammed* has followed in his alcoran. This book does not appear to be an original forgery of the *Mohammedans*, though undoubtedly for serving their purpose they have since interpolated it. Instead of the *Paraclete*, or *Comforter*, they have inserted the word *Peryclyte*, that is, “ famous or illustrious ;” by which they pretend their prophet was foretold, that being the signification of *Mohammed* in *Arabic* ; and further, to justify the passage in the alcoran, where *Jesus* is formally asserted to have foretold his coming, they derive his other name *Abmed* from the same root as *Mohammed*, or *Mabomet*, to import the same. In consequence of these and some other like forgeries, the *Mohammedans* cite several passages, of which there is not the least vestige or analogy in the New Testament. They also take notice of the writings of *Daniel* and several other prophets, sometimes making quotations from them ; but they do not believe them to be divine scripture, or of any authority in matters of religion. d

Paradise of the Moham-medans.

THE paradise of the *Mohammedans* is said by them to be situated above the seven heavens, or in the seventh, and next under the throne of God ; and to express the amenity of the place, they tell us that the earth of it is of the finest wheat-flour, or of the purest e



a musk, or of saffron; and that its stones are pearls and jacinths, the walls of its buildings enriched with gold and silver, and the trunks of all its trees of gold, amongst which the most remarkable is the tree Tuba, or tree of happiness. They pretend that this tree stands in the palace of *Mohammed*, though a branch of it will reach to the house of every true believer, loaded with pomegranates, dates, grapes, and other fruits of surprising bigness, and delicious tastes unknown to mortals. If a man desires to eat of any particular kind of fruit, it will immediately be presented to him; or if he chooses flesh, birds ready dressed will be set before him, and such as he may wish for. They add, that this tree will supply the blessed, not only with fruit, but with silk garments also, and beasts to ride on, adorned with rich trappings, all which will burst forth from the fruit; and that the tree is  
b so large, that a person mounted on the fleetest horse, would not be able to gallop from one end of its shade to the other in a hundred years. Plenty of water being one of the greatest additions to the pleasantness of any place, the alcoran often speaks of the rivers of paradise, as the principal ornament. Some of these rivers are said to flow with water, some with milk, some with wine, and others with honey: all of them have their sources in the root of this tree of happiness; and as if these rivers were not sufficient, we are told that the garden of this paradise is also watered by a great number of lesser springs and fountains, whose pebbles are rubies and emeralds, their earth of camphire, their beds of musk, and their sides of saffron. But all those glories will be eclipsed by the resplendent and exquisite beauty of the girls of paradise, the enjoyment of whose company will constitute the  
c principal felicity of the faithful. These, they say, are not formed of clay, as mortal women, but of pure musk, and are, as their prophet often affirms in his alcoran, free from all the natural defects and inconveniencies incident to the sex. Being also of the strictest modesty, they keep themselves secluded from public view in pavillions of hollow pearls, so large, that, as some traditions have it, one of them will be no less than sixteen, or, as others say, sixty miles long, and as many broad. With these the inhabitants of paradise may taste pleasures in their height, and for this purpose will be endowed with extraordinary abilities, and enjoy a perpetual youth.

It is said to be a general notion among the *Mohammedans*, that women have no souls, or that they will not be rewarded in the next life, or at least will not be admitted into the  
d same abode with men, because their places will be supplied by the paradisaical females. But whatever may be the opinion of some ignorant people amongst them, it is certain that *Mohammed* had too great a respect for the fair sex to teach such a doctrine; and there are several passages in the alcoran which affirm, that women in the next life will not only be punished for their evil actions, but will also receive the reward of their good, as well as man; and that God in this case will make no distinction of sexes: but whether the delights good women are to enjoy in a state of future bliss will be in the company of agreeable paramours, created for them to compleat the œconomy of the *Mohammedan* system, does not appear to be any where decided.

*Women rewarded or punished in the next life.*

The Mussulmen are so fond of purifications, that they spend a great part of their life  
e in washing. There is not a village among them which has not a public bath. Those in the towns are the chief ornaments of the place. The men never bathe with the women, and great decorum and modesty are observed in this particular. Women are very happy when they are permitted to go to the public baths; but most of them, especially such whose husbands are rich enough to build them baths at home, have not this liberty. In the public baths they entertain one another without any constraint, and pass the time more agreeably than in their own apartments. The men who have any complaisance for their wives, do not refuse them those innocent diversions; for too much confinement makes them sometimes seek reasons for a divorce.

*Purification of the Mohammedans.*

The *Mohammedans*, not content with bare ablutions, think themselves obliged to several  
f other points of cleanliness, the chief of which is circumcision. It is held to be an ancient divine institution, though not so much as once mentioned in the alcoran; and also highly proper and expedient, tho' not so absolutely necessary, but that it may be dispensed with in some cases. The *Arabs* used this rite for many ages before *Mohammed*, having probably learned it from *Ismael*, though the same was practised by several other tribes besides his descendants. *Josephus* tells us, the *Ismaelites* used to circumcise their children, not on the eighth day, as was customary with the *Jews*, but when they were twelve or thirteen years old, at which age their father *Ismael* underwent that operation. The *Mohammedans* so far imitate them, that they do not circumcise their children till they are able to pronounce the profession of their faith, "That there is no God but God, and *Mohammed* is the apostle of God." However, they make choice of what age they please for that  
g purpose, which is generally between six and sixteen. Upon the day of circumcision, a feast is made for the relations of the child that is to be circumcised; and when the operation is over by the surgeon's shewing the prepuce to the assistants, and crying with a loud voice

*Circumcision.*

"God"



"God is great," they all croud about to felicitate him upon his being admitted into the rank of a Mussulman or Believer. a

The two  
Bairams.

BESIDES the ceremonial of circumcision, they have two principal annual feasts, called Bairams. The first is called the feast of breaking the fast, as beginning immediately after the great fast of *Ramazan*. The *Mohammedans* are obliged, by express command of the alcoran, to fast the whole month of *Ramazan*, from the time the new moon first appears, till the appearance of the next new moon. During this time they must abstain from eating, drinking, and women, from day-break till night, or sun-set. This fast is extremely rigorous and mortifying to the *Turks*, who impatiently wait for the next new moon, and the moment it appears, they publish their Bairam or *Easier*, by the firing of several guns, and public bonfires and rejoicings. This feast continues three days, during which they b indulge themselves in several sorts of pastimes. One thing, however, is very commendable in them at this time, and this is their pardoning and being reconciled to all their enemies; for they think they have made a bad Bairam, if they keep malice in their heart. They also wish one another a thousand prosperities, and send presents, as is customary in some countries in *Europe*, at the beginning of the year. The other Bairam, called the greater, or The feast of the sacrifice, begins the tenth day of the moon *Dhu'l-hajja*; but though reckoned the principal act of devotion among the *Mohammedans*, it is taken much less notice of by the generality of the people, because the ceremonies whereby it is observed are performed at *Mecca*, the only scene of that solemnity.

Things prohi-  
bited.

NEXT to these commandments, there are some things which are prohibited to the *Turks*, and which they cannot make use of without sin. These are, all figures and representations of men, women, or beasts; the drinking of wine, under which name are comprehended all sorts of strong and inebriating liquors; all games of chance; lending money upon usury; and the eating of blood, swine's flesh, and whatever dies of itself, and is slain in the name, or in honour of any idol; or is strangled, or killed by a blow, or fall, or by any other beast. c

The musti and  
Turkish  
priests, &c.

THE musti, who is at the head of the lawyers, is the chief of their religion, and the interpreter of the alcoran. He is appointed by the sultan, who generally chuses a man of probity, learned in the knowledge of the law, and of established reputation. By this choice he becomes the most respectable officer in the empire, and all his decisions, made only by Yes or No, which he writes under any proposed question, are held as sacred. It is, however, his interest to behave with great circumspection; for being often consulted only out of formality, he runs great risque of being deposed if he does not answer according to the prince's pleasure. By the law, a musti is not to be put to death; but if guilty of high treason, or any enormous crime, it would be in vain for him to plead the privilege of the law; and he could not escape being degraded, imprisoned, strangled, or pounded alive in a mortar. There is only one musti, and his ordinary residence is at *Constantinople*; and as he cannot dispatch all affairs of conscience in that vast empire, the cadilequers perform the office of musti out of *Constantinople*, in consequence of their skill in the canon as well as civil law. For want of cadilequers they have recourse to the moullas, the chief of the cadi's; and as there are several places where there is neither a cadilequer nor moulla, but only a cadi, this cadi discharges the office of all, and is judge in all matters. The chief amongst the priests are styled imans, and their employment is to say prayers, to read in the mosques, to bless marriages, to assist the dying, and accompany the dead. Upon the vacancy of a cure, they are recommended to the grand vizier by the people of the parish, or in the provinces, to the principal governing officer, who dispatches their preferment, by making them read some passages of the alcoran, or laying that book upon their head. The hodgia's are the counsellors and doctors of the law, and sometimes perform the office of imans, and even preach on certain festivals. They are often consulted about affairs of importance, and are in great reputation among the people. The dervises are in the nature of monks, making vows of poverty, chastity, and obedience; tho' they do not observe them, as they easily give themselves a dispensation from the two first, and marry, by quitting their order, when the humour takes them. Every *Tuesday* and *Friday* they make a dance, which is very pleasant to see. Passing before their superior, they salute him very humbly, and then making a leap, they begin to turn round with their naked feet, the left serving for a pivot to turn upon; and this they perform so fast, and with so much agility, that one is sooner weary of looking on than they of turning. These gyrations are performed to the sound of drums and flutes. Formerly, they were such frantic enthusiasts as to cut and slash their bodies; but now they scarce raise the skin, though they still sometimes burn themselves on the side of their heart, with small wax-candles, as a mark of their tenderness to the objects of their love and devotion. They attract the admiration of the people by handling fire unhurt, and they will also hold it in their mouth a good while, like our mountebanks. They besides perform a thousand fests g



a feats of activity, and play surprisingly with the juggler's box. They are the only *Turks* who travel into the eastern countries, and chiefly for the sake of alms, which they collect in abundance. Music is one part of their study; and though it is forbidden by the alcoran to praise God with instruments, they have set it on foot in spite of the edicts of the sultan, and the persecution of bigots. It is observed by the more intelligent and better meaning sort of *Turks*, that the dervises are great hypocrites, who would pass for men wholly given up to the contemplation of God, whilst they are consummate in all sorts of vice.

b It is observed that the *Turks* are generally personable men, which may proceed from the choice they make of their women; they collect the greatest beauties that can be met with in the neighbouring countries to breed by, and every man is allowed by the alcoran four women for wives or concubines. The men wear their beards long, but shave their heads, which they cover with a turban of enormous size, and never put it off but when they sleep. They suffer no Christians or other people to wear white turbans but themselves. Their breeches or drawers are of a piece with their stockings, and they wear slippers instead of shoes, which they put off when they enter a temple or house. They wear shirts with wide sleeves, not gathered at the wrists or neck, and over them a vest tied with a sash, their upper garment being a loose gown somewhat shorter than the vest. The women's dress pretty much resembles that of the men, only they have a stiffened bonnet of pasteboard, something like a mitre, and covered with cloth of gold, or some handsome stuff, on their heads, instead of a turban; and they wear their hair down, which hangs in tresses upon their back, and is a wonderful grace to them. When they go abroad they are so wrapped up, that their faces cannot be seen.

*Persons, dress, manner, &c. of the Turks*

c An uniformity runs through all the actions of the *Turks*, and they never change their manner of living. There is no need of much wit to behave well amongst them; for a good mien and gravity are instead of merit in the East, and much gaiety would spoil all. They are proud, and value themselves above all other nations, thinking themselves the most valiant men upon earth, and that the world was made for them alone: and indeed, they despise all other nations in general, especially those who are not of their religion. There is no such thing as making great feasts with them: they are satisfied with a little. Rice is the standing dish in their kitchens, with or without flesh-meat, and they dress it various ways. They seem to have no manner of genius or inclination for the improvement of arts and sciences. A slothful indolent way of life is preferred to every thing; they saunter away their time, either among their women in the haram, or in smoking tobacco, drinking coffee, and taking opium. They seldom travel, or use any exercise or rural sports; and have no curiosity to be informed of the state of their own or any other country. They are very amorous, and frequently in an unnatural way; which they care so little to conceal, that their songs are upon no other subject than that infamous passion and wine. Being also exceeding covetous, their friendship is easily acquired by money and presents: money effects every thing at the grand signior's court; money makes heads fly off; in fine, money is the powerful attractive charm, the great talisman there, as well as elsewhere.

d THE indifference of the *Asiatic* nations under the *Turkish* empire, with respect to virtue, their ignorance and abject state of mind, are the necessary consequences of their form of government, and must some time or other bring on its destruction. How can slaves, educated under the menacing brow of a master, stifle, at the approach of a hardy enemy, the habitual sensations of fear they have contracted from arbitrary power? how can men so debased, without elevation of mind, accustomed to trample on the weak, and to cringe before the powerful, avoid yielding to the magnanimity, the policy, the valour of a bold enterprising people? how can dastardly slaves resist a free and powerful nation? The tyrant, to make use of arbitrary power with impunity, is forced to enervate the minds and the courage of his subjects. What renders him formidable at home, renders him weak abroad: with liberty, he banishes from his empire the splendor of all virtues; for virtue cannot dwell in base and servile minds.

*Reflections on the premises.*

e THE lustre thrown upon such nations as the *Turks*, is always of short duration. If sometimes they attain to the highest pitch of power and glory, and become illustrious by success of all kinds, this success is more owing to the prowess of the governing chiefs, than to the form of government. It has always been as fleeting as brilliant. The strength of such states, however it may impose upon us, is but an illusion: it is the colossus of *Nebuchadnezzar*, of which the feet were of potter's clay. These empires resemble the lofty pine, whose top reaches to the heavens, the beasts of the field, and the birds of the air seeking for shelter under its branches; but, being fixed in the ground by too weak a root, is overthrown by the first storm. Such states have but a momentary existence, if they are not surrounded by nations who are but little disposed to great enterprizes, and



are likewise subject to arbitrary power. The respective strength of such nations consists, therefore, in an equilibrium of weakness. If a despotic empire has received a shock, and the throne cannot be secured without a manly and courageous resolution, that empire is destroyed.

THE people who groan under the yoke of arbitrary power have therefore only a momentary success, a mere flash of glory; and must, sooner or later, submit to a free and enterprising nation. But supposing that particular circumstances and situations save them from this danger, the bad administration of these kingdoms is sufficient to destroy, depopulate, and convert them into deserts; the lethargic languor that successively seizes all the members, produces this effect. The property of despotic power is to silence the passions; and when minds have, by being divested of passions, or through the want of them, lost their activity; when they are emasculated by luxury, indolence, and softness, the state then droops into a consumption. The apparent calm it enjoys, is, in the eyes of the intelligent, a languid state, which is the forerunner of its dissolution. Passions are necessary in a nation, and are its life and soul: the people who have the strongest, are in the end triumphant. "O happy times (cries *Tacitus*, under the reign of *Trajan*) when people obey only the laws, when every one may think freely, and freely tell his thoughts; when every heart flies to the prince, and the sight of him is a benefit!"

## C H A P. VII.

### Of P E R S I A.

*Ancient extent  
of Persia.*

THE ancient *Persian* monarchy reached from the mouth of the river *Indus* in the south east, to the *Hellepont* in the south-west, which was 2800 *English* miles in length; and from the *Black-Sea* to the mouth of the *Arabian Gulph*, or *Red Sea*, which was 2000 miles in breadth. It also comprehended *Egypt*, part of *Ethiopia* and *Lybia* in *Africa*, the islands in the *Ægean Sea*, with *Thracia* and *Macedonia* in *Europe*. But it must be observed, that *Egypt* was then reckoned part of *Asia*, and that what the *Persians* had in *Europe* could not be properly called their possession, having enjoyed it only during the time of invasions, while they made war against the *Greeks*. The *Parthians*, long after them, established a new empire, which reached sometimes from the river *Indus* to the *Euphrates*, and sometimes as far as the *Hellepont*, or the streight of the *Dardanelles*; the island of *Ta-probana*, now *Ceylon*, on the coast of the *Mogul* empire, was also tributary to them, and they possessed in *Africa*, *Egypt*, *Lybia*, and as far as the frontiers of *Ethiopia*.

*Origin of its  
name.*

SOME derive the name of this country from *Persis*, one of its chief provinces, so called from *Perseus*, a *Greek*, who subdued the country, and gave it his own name. The poets make him the son of *Jupiter* and *Danae*, and conqueror of all the East. Others derive its name from *Paras*, or *Pharas*, which signifies a horseman, because *Cyrus* taught the *Persians* the use of horsemanship, and published an edict, ordering all men to travel on horseback, though their journies were ever so short. This country is called *Elum* in the Old Testament, and the inhabitants *Elamites*, from *Elam* the son of *Shem*, who is said to have first planted it after the flood. The *Greeks* and *Romans* used the modern name of *Persia*, and all *European* nations do the same, with some variation in the termination; but the *Turks* and *Persians* call this country *Agem*.

*Present bound-  
aries, extent,  
climate, and  
air.*

PERSIA, at present, is bounded on the north by part of *Russia*, the *Caspian Sea*, and the country of the *Usbeck* and independant *Tartars*; on the east by the *Mogul* empire, from which a ridge of mountains and the river *Indus* divide it; on the south it has the *Arabian-Sea*, which is part of the ocean and the *Persian Gulph*; and on the west it has *Georgia* and *Aran*, or ancient *Armenia*, from which the rivers *Kar* and *Aras* part it; also, the rivers *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, which separate it from the *Turkish* empire in *Asia*. Its greatest extent from south to north is about 19 deg. from 25. 40. to 44. 40. that is, 1140 *English* miles; and its greatest extent from east to west is about 1280 miles, though in many parts it is much narrower, especially towards the north, where on the west it contains but a narrow tract of land between *Turkey* and the *Caspian-Sea*; and on the east it is also pent up between the same sea and the country of the *Tartars*. It is situated under the fourth, fifth, and sixth climates; whence the longest day in the north is fifteen hours and some minutes, and in the south thirteen hours and forty-five minutes; and the temperature of the air is therefore various, according to the different provinces. In the province of *Edzerbaijan*, or *Aiderbeitzan*, the capital of which is *Tauris*, to the south of *Armenia* or *Aran*;



- a *Aran*, the air is very cold, and yet very healthy ; but in *Tabristan*, or *Masanderan*, to the south of the *Caspian-Sea*, is very unwholesome. The country here is marshy, and abounds with an infinite number of insects, which dying when the marshes are dried up in summer, infect the air with poisonous exhalations ; there are besides so many fetid waters in this province, that, by often overflowing part of the country, they occasion the inhabitants to have an earthy complexion. Shah *Abas* transported 20,000 *Armenian* families into *Tabristan*, in order to people and cultivate it ; but few of them withstood the insalubrity of the country, which is notwithstanding very fruitful. The air is not better in the province of *Ghilan*, which lies to the north-west of *Tabristan* ; and, indeed, is so bad in both, that it is customary to ask, when any person is appointed governor of either, whether he is guilty of robbery or murder, that he should be sent thither ? The province of *Persian Irac*, of which *Ispahan* is the capital, and which lies about the middle of the kingdom, enjoys six months hot, and six months cold weather, though lying between the 31st and 36th degree of north lat. It snows there four or five times in the season, and sometimes in such quantities that it is impossible to find the roads. At about a league's distance from *Ispahan*, there is a stone three or four feet high ; and when the snow happens to cover the ground to that height, it is a sign of a plentiful year. The first peasant that carries the news of it to court, receives a reward of an hundred tomans, about 230l. sterling. It rains here very seldom, except in *April*, when the showers are sometimes pretty heavy. In the southern provinces, especially along the sea-coast, the air is so excessive hot and sultry, that it is very dangerous, and even mortal to *Europeans*, particularly to such as are not temperate in eating and drinking.

GENERALLY speaking, the soil in *Persia* cannot be much commended ; for though some parts are fruitful, others are perfectly barren, being mountainous and sandy. By reason of the scarcity of rivers, there is only rain and dissolved snow for watering the land ; and these falling from the mountains in small brooks and rivulets, render the vallies fertile. Here their corn ripens exceedingly, and in some parts they have a three-fold crop in a year. At *Ispahan* they have almost all kinds of the choicest *European* fruits, but fairer and better ; and by the dryness of the air, they keep a whole year. The melons are excellent, and not dangerous as in *Europe* ; their apricots delicious, and their peaches large and good. They have nine or ten sorts of very good grapes, which yield good wine, chiefly white ; for the red wines do not keep so well, except that of *Shiras*, which is excellent in its kind, and stomachical. They have few trees but what grow in their gardens, and of these the palm-tree is the most carefully cultivated. When young, and before it bears fruit, they dig on one side of it eight or ten fathom deep in the earth, till they find water ; then the hole is filled up with pigeons dung, of which they have always great provisions from the vast number of tame pigeons, kept chiefly for the sake of their dung, which serves both to manure the ground, and make hot beds for raising melons.

- It is said, that if they did not take that course with the palm-trees, they would not bear good fruit. But there is besides something very curious to be observed in the cultivating of this tree, which is, their taking every year, when the palm-trees are in blossom, the blossoms of the male palm-tree, and putting two or three bunches of them into the matrix of each female, when they begin to blow. If this was not done, they would produce dates with only skin and stone without any pulp. The matrix is that bud which contains the flowers, from which, in process of time, the dates are formed. The time of making this impregnation is about the end of *November* ; not but that the male palm-trees also bear fruit, but being good for nothing, they therefore take all their blossoms for impregnating the female. As to the dates, it will not be improper to observe, that the use of them is very dangerous, during the heats of summer, because they make the whole body break out in blotches and boils, and spoil the sight. *Persia* also produces all sorts of our culinary herbs, plants, roots, and pulse ; it has good store of cattle, especially oxen, and abounds particularly with poultry and game. The *Persian* bread is generally very thin, white, and good, and commonly cheap enough. Their horses are the finest in all the East ; they are higher than the *English* saddle-horses, straight before, a small head, legs wonderfully slender and finely proportioned, mighty gentle, good travellers, very light and sprightly, and doing good service till they are eighteen or twenty years old. The fine horses are valued from 90 to 450l. sterling ; but the great numbers of them sold into *Turkey* and the *Indies*, though none can be carried out of the kingdom without a special licence from the king, is what makes them so dear. Their mules are next in request ; they pace well, never fall, and are seldom tired : the highest price of a mule is about forty-five pounds. Their *Arabian* breed of asses are the best in the world ; they have smooth shining hair ; they carry their heads lofty ; their feet are light, and they move them gracefully. Some of them are valued at twenty pounds, being kept for riding, and their masters love them for their lightness and easy going. Their beasts of burthen are, the com-

Soil, produce, &c.

Culture of the palm tree.

Persian horses, mules, asses, camels.



mon as, like ours, slow and heavy; and camels, of which there are two sorts, northern a and southern. The latter, much the smaller, carry but 700 weight; the other can carry 1300. Both are profitable to their masters, as costing little or nothing to keep. They travel without halter or reins, grazing on the road from time to time, notwithstanding their load. They shed their hair so clean in the spring, that they look like scalded swine, but then they are pitched over to keep the flies from stinging them. The camels hair is the most profitable fleece of all the tame beasts; fine stuffs are made of it, and in *Europe* hats with the mixture of a little beaver. The *Persians* take notice when the camel is in love to increase his load, otherwise he would be ungovernable.

*Metals and minerals.*

As *Persia* is very mountainous, it is full of metals and minerals, which they began to work upon in the last century much more than in preceding times. Their diligence b in this respect was owing to the great Shah *Abas*. The metals usually to be met with, are iron, steel, brass, and lead. No gold or silver have yet been found, though it should seem impossible that so many mountains, which produce most sorts of metals, with sulphur and saltpetre, should not likewise produce the more precious metals; but the *Persians* are too slothful to make any discoveries. Minerals and mineral waters abound throughout *Persia*; sulphur and saltpetre are extracted out of the mountain of *Damavend*, which separates *Tabristan* from *Irac*.

*Wild beasts and insects.*

WILD beasts are not very common in *Persia*, because there are few forests; but in all woody countries, as in *Hircania*, now called *Tabristan*, there are abundance of lions, bears, tigers, leopards, porcupines, wild boars, and wolves; but the last not so numerous c as any of the other species. There is a beast called thacal, seen almost every where; it roars hideously, and is very greedy after dead bodies, which it digs up, unless some person is set to watch the graves. There are but few insects in this country, which may be ascribed to the drought of the climate. In some provinces, however, there is an infinite number of grasshoppers, which are seen flying along like clouds, and so thick, that the air is darkened by them: and in some parts there are large black scorpions, which are so venomous, that those who are stung by them die in five hours. In some parts also, birds of a prodigious length are met with, being an ell long, and in shape resembling a toad, with a rough skin and as hard as that of a sea dog. It is reported, that they sometimes fall on men and kill them. The southern provinces are infested by gnats, d some with long legs, like those we call midges; and some white, and as small as fleas, which make no buzzing, but sting suddenly, and so smartly, that the sting is like the prick of a needle. Among the creeping insects there is a long square worm, which they call hazarpag, or a thousand feet, because its whole body is covered with feet; it crawls very fast, and its bite is dangerous, and even mortal, when it gets into one's ears.

*PERSIA* is divided into the following provinces.

*Division of Persia.*

1. *SCHIRWAN*, which is the most northern province of *Persia*, and lies along the western coast of the *Caspian-Sea*. It has part of *Muscovy* or *Georgia* on the north; the river *Kur* (the *Cyrus* of the Ancients) parts it from the province of *Erivan*; and the *Kur* and *Aras* (the *Araxes* of the Ancients) separate it from *Aiderbeitzan*. It is a cold but e healthy country; the soil, however, is observed to be extraordinary fruitful, yielding rice, wheat, barley, hay, and even great store of vines. The chief cities in this province, are

1. *DERBENT*, the *Caspia Clausura* of the Ancients, and still the gate from *Persia* into *Muscovy*. It stands on the western shore of the *Caspian-Sea*, about 157 miles from *Teflis* in *Georgia*, towards the south-east, and fills up the whole defile between the *Caspian-Sea* and the craggy mountains on the frontiers of *Georgia*. The coast is all a rock, which renders it dangerous for shipping. Upon the whole, this city, which is reckoned to be a league and a half in circumference, is considerable only on account of its strength, being the passage from *Russia* and *Tartary* into *Persia*. The *Russians* took it in 1723, and by f a treaty of peace concluded in 1735, it was ceded to them by the Shah *Nadir Thamas Kouli-Khan*. 2. *Gangea*, situated in a pleasant plain of about thirty leagues extent, and an hundred and eighteen miles distant from *Derbent* towards the south-west. It belongs properly to *Georgia*, as standing on the other side of the river *Kur*. The *Persians* call this place the garden of the empire, by reason of its being exceedingly well watered, and pleasantly surrounded with groves of trees. It carries on a good trade, and on that account is much resorted to by strangers. Its bazars and market-places are very noble and magnificent. 3. *Shamaki*, reckoned the capital of this province, stands on a river which falls into the *Caspian-Sea*, and is about sixty-six miles from *Derbent* towards the south, and ninety-two from *Gangea* to the south-east. This city was one of the best and g most populous of *Persia*, before it was destroyed by an earthquake. It is, however, supposed to contain near 60,000 inhabitants, chiefly *Armenians* and strangers, whom the pleasantness of the country and traffic have invited thither. The khan, or governor h of



a of *Schirwan* resides in it, and he is reputed one of the most considerable in all *Persia*, by reason of the great subsidies he generally levies upon the countries round about. 4. *Baku* stands on the western part of *Schirwan*, upon the *Caspian-Sea*, eighty-two miles from *Shamaki* towards the south-east. It is fortified, and has a very fine harbour. The *Russians* having taken it during the troubles of *Persia*, it was yielded to them by the late *Shah Nadir*.

b II. *AIDERBEITZAN*, or, as the *Persians* call it, *Azerbeyan*, borders to the east on the province of *Ghilan* and *Tabristan*; to the south on *Persian-Irak*; to the west and north-west upon *Upper-Armenia*, and the river *Aras*; and to the north on *Schirwan*. The etymology of the name of this province imports a country of fire, so called by the *Persians*, on account of the temple erected in it for keeping their sacred fire. The soil is fruitful, and the climate healthy, though cold. The most considerable cities are,

c 1. *TAURIS*, a large and potent place, and the second in *Persia* for dignity, grandeur, riches, trade, and number of inhabitants. It is situate in a fine plain near a mountain, 192 miles from *Shamaki*, towards the south-west. Being near the frontiers of *Turkey*, it has been often taken and retaken. The *Turks* surprized it during the late civil wars in *Persia*, and exercised their usual barbarity on the inhabitants, killing an incredible number of them; but *Kouli Khan* reduced it under the obedience of the *Persians* again, and pursued the *Turks* into their own territories. At the end of this city, to the west, upon a little mountain, stands an hermitage, a very neat piece of workmanship: they call it *Ayn-Haly*, or the house of *Ali*. This caliph, whom *Mohammed* made his son-in-law, was, as the *Persians* report, the most lovely man that ever was seen; so that when they would signify any thing extremely handsome, they say, it is *Ali's* eyes. The hermitage serves the inhabitants of *Tauris* for a place of devotion, and the way to it for a walk of pleasure. Most modern geographers take *Tauris* to be the ancient and celebrated *Ecbatana*, so frequently mentioned in Scripture, and in the ancient histories of *Asia*. But there are no remains to be seen at *Tauris*, either of the magnificent palace of *Ecbatana*, where the monarchs of *Asia* kept their court in summer, nor of that of *Daniel*, which was afterwards the mausoleum for the kings of *Media*, of which *Josephus* speaks in his tenth book, and d which he assures us was intire in his time. If then these stately and magnificent palaces were standing sixteen centuries ago, in the place where *Tauris* now stands, the very ruins themselves are not now to be found; for amongst all those within the circuit of the city, none are seen but what are of earth, brick, or flint, which were not the materials anciently made use of in *Media* for the building of sumptuous palaces. The government of the province of *Tauris* is the chief in the *Persian* empire, and it is usually annexed to the dignity of the captain-generalship. There is scarce a place of greater resort in *Asia*; and there is, perhaps, no sort of merchandize but may be found in the magazines at *Tauris*. 2. *Ardevil*, about twenty-eight miles distant from *Tauris* to the east, in a fair and spacious plain, surrounded with mountains, which occasion continual changes e of weather, in extremities of heat and cold, and subject the city to epidemical diseases. It claims dignity among the best cities in *Persia*, because it was honoured with the residence of several of their kings, and is also the place of their burial. *Shah Eider*, author of the *Shai* sect, to whom the *Sophian* family owed their origin, lived and died here. His sepulchre, which is no small ornament to the city, is visited with great devotion by pilgrims. *Sophy Ismael*, the first king of that race, is likewise buried here. 3. *Sultania*, about 135 miles from *Tauris*, to the south-east. It was once the metropolis and largest city of *Persia*, as may appear from its vast ruins; but is now inconsiderable, though there are some public buildings in it very remarkable as well for their structure as architecture. There are several other cities, and a great number of good villages in this province; but f none equal to those already mentioned.

III. *GHILAN* lies to the south-west of the *Caspian-Sea*; which with the province of *Tabristan*, bounds it on the east, *Persian-Irak* on the south, *Aiderbeitzan* on the west, and the heath of *Mockan* on the north. This province is exceedingly well situated, having on one side the sea, along which it lies in form of a crescent, and on the other high mountains, by which it is so well separated from all the rest of *Persia*, that there is no entrance to it on the land-side but by very narrow passes, which can be very easily defended. These mountains towards *Persia* are nothing but frightful ruins and precipices; but towards the province of *Ghilan* they have a most delightful descent, being covered with all sorts of fruit trees. The country of *Ghilan* is the finest and most fruitful of all *Persia*. It is watered by several fine rivers, which spring on all sides from the mountains. g The sea on the coast abounds with fish, as do also the rivers that fall into it; and to such a degree, that the farming out the privilege of fishing there, brings in a very considerable revenue to the king. The cities in *Ghilan* are *Resht*, or *Rascht*, *Kesker*, and *Astara*. The first wants nothing that can render a city agreeable, rich, and beautiful.



IV. *TABRISTAN* has the *Caspian Sea* on the north, *Gilan* on the west, *Persian-Irak* on the south, and *Corasan* on the east. It abounds with plants, fruit, and wood; and is watered with many springs and rivers, but yet is not without its inconveniencies; for in winter it is very cold, and the roads are exceeding bad; and in summer the air is so malignant, that most of the inhabitants are obliged to remove to other places. The malignancy of the air is attributed to the vast number of serpents and other insects, which dying in summer for want of water, most springs in that season being dried up, cause a corruption and infection, which fill the air with contagious vapours. All the people of this country look yellowish and tawny. The places of note in *Tabristan* are, *Terabath*, *Alazanderan*, *Escriff*, *Chocoporo*, and *Amoul*. The first is remarkable for a palace of *Abas the Great*, which was adorned with noble furniture and paintings, and had in its precinct delightful gardens; the last is a place of some strength, having a strong fair castle, moated round, and some celebrated mosques, which are held in great veneration by the people, upon account of 444 princes and prophets who are said to have been buried in them. The ridge of mountains which lie on the south of these two provinces, and divide them from *Persian-Irak*, is a branch of mount *Taurus*, which runs east and north to *Tartary*. The passage through it, in the road from *Ispahan*, is so narrow, that a robber in king *Abas's* time, kept possession of it with his troop a long time, in spite of the forces the king sent against him.

V. *PERSIAN-IRAK*, or ancient *Parthia*, so long the seat of empire in *Asia*, is the largest and principal province of the *Persian* monarchy. It is intirely the proper demaine of the king, and has no governor, as most of the other provinces. It is bounded on the east by *Corasan* and *Segestan*, on the south by *Farfistan*, on the south-west by *Chufistan*, on the west by *Curdistan*, on the north-west by *Aiderbeitzan*, and on the north by *Gilan* and *Tabristan*; and its extent is about 200 leagues in length, and 150 in breadth. The air is very dry, and, in several respects, the most healthy of any in the world. The face of the country is more mountainous than level; the mountains are very bare, and scarce produce any thing but thistles and briars; but the plains are very fertile and pleasant where there is any water. There are upwards of forty cities in this large province, which may be thought a great number, when we consider that *Persia* is not an empire peopled proportionably to its extent. The principal cities and towns here are, 1. *Abber*, enjoying a very delightful situation, with fine gardens, and some elegant public structures. It is about twenty-six miles distant from *Sultania* to the south east. 2. *Casbin*, a large city, six miles in circumference, and containing 12,000 houses, and 100,000 inhabitants. It is seated in a very pleasant plain, twenty-eight miles from *Abber*; one of the fairest places to be seen in it is the Hippodrome, or Royal Piazza, 700 paces in length, and 250 in breadth. *Abas the Great* removed his court from this city to *Ispahan*, but the royal palace and gardens are still kept in good order; and the *Persian* grandees, from father to son, still also keep possession of their numerous palaces, by reason of the long residence from time to time of the court at this place. Most of our *European* geographers assert, that *Casbin* is the ancient *Arsacia*; but the *Persian* historians will not allow it to be so ancient. 3. *Sawa*, or *Sava*, a great city, but thinly inhabited, seated in a sandy and barren plain, about eighty-eight miles from *Casbin*. There is nothing remarkable in it nor its environs, except the mausoleum or monument of the prophet *Samuel*, in the middle of a magnificent mosque, which stands four leagues to the east of *Sawa*. The *Persians* believe he was there interred, and have therefore made it one of their most famous places of pilgrimage and devotion. Opposite this mosque, or nine miles west of the city, are seen the vestiges of the famous city of *Rey*, the largest in all *Asia*. The wonders related of it are incredible. The *Persian* historians assert, that in the ninth century of Christianity, the city of *Rey* was divided into ninety-six quarters, each of which contained forty-six streets, and every street 4000 houses and ten mosques, besides 6400 colleges, 16,600 baths, 15,000 towers of mosques, 12,000 mills, 1700 canals, and 13,000 inns. In the wars between the two sects of *Mohammedans*, one of which called in the *Tartars*, this city was destroyed, towards the end of the sixth age of the *Hegira*. 4. *Komm*, a large city, and pretty populous, containing about 15,000 houses, among which are some fine bazars and caravanseras, though the trade of the place is inconsiderable. It is situate in a plain, by the side of a river, about thirty-seven miles south-east of *Sawa*. The chief thing it is remarkable for is the mosque, in which the princess *Fatima*, *Mohammed's* daughter, and two kings, *Abas I.* and *Sophi I.* lie interred. Nothing can be imagined richer, neater, and more magnificent than this mosque; the *Persians* call it *Mossuma*, or pure, and hold it in great veneration. 5. *Hammadan*, one of the largest and most considerable cities in *Persia*, having a good trade, and being a stage of caravans going to *Mecca*. It lies on the road to *Bagdat*, about ninety-five miles north-west of *Komm*. The *Jews* flock here in pilgrimage to visit the tombs of *Ester* and *Mordecai*, which they assert



- a assert to be still in this place. 6. *Casban*, a populous and wealthy city, by its manufactures of all sorts of silks, stuffs, and tissues of gold and silver. It stands about ninety-eight miles north of *Ispahan*, in a large plain near a high mountain, which being opposed to the south, the reverberation of the rays of the sun so furiously beat upon it in the summer, that the heat is intolerable. The bazars and baths of this place are elegant structures, and the Royal Inn, founded by *Abas the Great*, in the suburbs, is the fairest in all *Persia*. Adjoining to it stands the royal palace, and opposite to it another designed for lodging ambassadors. 7. *Ispahan*, the capital of *Persian-Irak*, and now the metropolis of the whole *Persian* empire. It is situate on the banks of the river *Zenderoud*, in latitude 32. 26. east longitude 52. 55. The walls of the town are about 20,000 paces in compass, built with mud, and kept very indifferently, though they are so hid by the adjacent houses and gardens, that one can hardly find them out. Here are also a castle and ditch. The beauty of this city consists chiefly in a vast number of sumptuous palaces, handsome and airy houses, spacious caravanseras, very beautiful bazars, many canals and streets planted on both sides with lofty plane-trees; though, generally speaking, the other streets are narrow, crooked, and not paved: but the air being very dry here, and every housekeeper causing the street to be watered before his door twice a day, there is neither so much dirt nor dust as in many great cities in *Europe*. The Meidan-Shah, or Royal-Square, is one of the finest in the world. It is 440 paces long, and 160 broad, and is surrounded by a canal built with bricks, cemented with a black mortar, which in time becomes harder than freestone. The royal mosque is at the south end of this square, and its portico is wonderfully adorned with a thousand figures, and an inconceivable profusion of gold and azure, the whole being also inlaid with enamelled squares, and a frieze round it of the same materials. Few structures can equal the magnificence of this, many of its pieces and decorations being wrought in a manner unknown to our *European* architects. The same may be said of the royal palace, and the haram, or women's apartment. The palace is certainly one of the most spacious in the world, being near a league and half in compass. Its great portico stands in the Royal Square, and is all built of porphyry, and very high. The *Persians* revere it as sacred. The suburbs of *Ispahan* are very large, and are chiefly inhabited by *Armenians*, of whom an account was given under that article. There are besides 1460 villages round about *Ispahan*, and the inhabitants live chiefly upon the manufacturing of silk and wool. 8. *Yezd*, a large city, 175 miles from *Ispahan* to the east. It has some trade and manufactures of silks and stuffs, mixed with gold and silver, and sometimes with cotton. The women of *Yezd* are reckoned the handsomest in all *Persia*.

VI. *CHUSISTAN* is a pretty large province, bounded on the north by *Persian-Irak*; on the west by *Irak-Arabi*, or *Terack*; on the south-west by the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*, a little before and after their junction; on the south by the *Persian* gulph; and on the east by *Farfistan*. This is the same country with *Cush* in *Assyria*, having preserved its ancient name with only a *Persian* termination. Its chief cities are, 1. *Suster*, the ancient *Susa*, and the winter-seat of the *Persian* monarchs, as *Ecbatana* was their summer-seat. It is a fair and large city. 2. *Abwas*. 3. *Laurestan*; but both inconsiderable.

VII. *FARSISTAN*, sometimes called *Fars*, the ancient *Persia*, has *Persian-Irak* on the south; *Chusistan*, with part of the *Persian* gulph, on the west; the remainder of the same gulph on the south; and *Kerestán*, with part of *Segestan*, on the east. *Lauristan* is included within this province, as well as the Isle of *Ormuz*, which are reckoned to belong to *Farfistan*, since they were conquered by the *Persians*. The most remarkable places in this province, are,

1. *SCHIRAS*, the capital, and reputed the next in rank after *Ispahan*. It is seated 175 miles from that city, in a plain surrounded with craggy mountains, which are nothing but dry rocks, and neither bear tree nor weeds. The soil about the city is very good and fruitful, and produces the excellent wine of *Schiras*, so famous all over *Persia*. There is nothing very beautiful in the city itself, being now almost half ruined. 2. The ruins of the ancient *Persepolis*, thirty-five miles north-east of *Schiras*. This city, in ancient times, was esteemed the chief of the East, and excelled all others in glory and worldly felicity. The wealth of it is evident by the great plunder *Alexander's* soldiers made, and by the treasure he himself seized, which amounted to 120,000 talents in silver and gold. The citadel, which was the king's palace, was a structure of such surprizing magnificence and beauty, that perhaps no building ever exceeded it. The king's throne was of pure gold, adorned with pearls and precious stones, and the furniture of the chambers so excessively rich, that nothing could exceed it, the bedsteads being of solid gold, beset with gems, and every thing else proportionate. But its glory did but procure its destruction; for, at a great feast *Alexander* held in it, *Thais*, the *Athenian* courtesan, proposed to the king, then heated with wine, as a noble exploit, to burn that fine palace,



palace, which he readily agreed to, and led the way himself with a firebrand. Thus fell *Persepolis*, which for several ages had been the seat of the *Persian* monarchs, giving law to many nations, and being a long time the terror of *Greece*. The lofty columns still standing declare the height of the fallen roofs, and the stairs, the steps of which are thirty feet long, shew the apartments they led to were vastly greater than any thing we now see. A large town, now built on the place where the old city stood; is called *Mirkas-Ghan*, 3. *Karscom*, about sixty-five miles from *Schiras*; a town of many houses, but all miserable. 4. *Bender-Rik*, *Bender-Rakel*, *Bender-Delem*, and *Bouchier*, all maritime towns on the *Persian* gulph, but of little trade either by sea or land. The inhabitants are chiefly *Arabs*. The islands of *Carac* lie about west-north-west, twelve leagues from *Bouchier*. One of them has no inhabitants but deer and antelopes. The southernmost has between 2 and 300 poor fishermen on it, who serve shipping with pilots for *Bassora*. The anchoring-place is at the north end of the inhabited island, in twelve fathom water. 5. *Churchoir*, a town on the sea-coast, twenty-one miles south of *Bouchier*, noted for the ruins of a large castle and pier, built by the *Portuguese*, who kept a garrison there, and had gallies continually cruising in the bottom of the gulph, to compel all ships to pay ten per cent. toll to them. 6. *Congon*, a town of pretty good trade, for most of the pearl fished for at *Babara*, on the *Arabian* side, is brought here to market, and many fine horses are sent from hence into the *Indies*, where they generally sell very well. It stands on the south-side of a large river, about ninety-five miles south-east from *Bender-Rick*. 7. *Lar*, the capital of a province, thence called *Larestan*, forty-eight miles distant from the coast of the *Persian* gulph to the south. This country was for some time a kingdom in the possession of the *Gaures*. The city is built on a rock, and has nothing worth notice in it but the Khan's house, the market-place, the bazars, and the castle. In the suburbs are several houses pretty well built, amongst which is the *Dutch East-India* house. The town contains about 4000 houses. The *Jews*, who are pretty numerous in it, exercise a silk manufacture, and the other inhabitants make the best musket-barrels. 8. *Congo*, or *Bender-Congo*, a little sea-port town, forty-five miles distant from *Lar* to the south. It once made a good figure in trade, when the *Portuguese* were settled here, but now it seems is chiefly confined to some small commerce with the *Banians* and *Moors* from *India*. The territory of the town is of small extent, but produces excellent fruits of several sorts. 9. *Gomrom*, or *Bender-Abassi*, which signifies the port of *Abas*, being so called from *Shah Abas the Great*, who first brought it into vogue. It lies about seventy-two miles to the south-east of *Lar*, on the coast of *Farsistan*, just opposite the island of *Ormus*, in a very narrow streight formed by that island, and in a very convenient haven. From a small village, as it was before the reduction of *Ormus*, it is grown so considerable; that it may be ranked with the best towns in *Persia*; for, though still but a small place, yet its convenient situation for trade brings a great resort of ships and caravans to it. The *English* and *Dutch* factories support its commerce to a great degree, and the *Persian* governor who resides here, lives in great splendor.

*Persian*  
*islands.*  
*Ormus.*

THE island of *Ormus* is two leagues distant from the main land to the southward, almost at the mouth of the *Persian* gulph, which reaches from thence to *Bassora*, which is the bottom of it. An account has been already given of *Ormus*, under the article of *Arabia Felix*.

THE island of *Babara*, or *Babaren*, lies near the north-east coast of *Arabia Felix*, in the midway between *Bassora* and *Ormus*. The largest, brightest, roundest, and truest Oriental pearls are fished for here. This fishery begins in *June*, and ends with *August*. The profit of it is computed at 110,000 crowns *per annum*.

*Quesmo.*

QUESMO is a pretty large, fruitful, and well-inhabited island. The west end of it is not above a league and a half from *Congo*, and the east end about a league from *Comrom*. It furnishes *Ormus* with wheat, barley, and some other provisions, where the people could not live without them.

*Persian*  
*gulph.*

BEFORE we proceed, it will not be improper to add a word or two concerning the *Persian* gulph, or sea of *Elcatif*, as sometimes called. It is a large bed of water, lying between the coasts of *Persia* and *Arabia Felix*, about 170 miles wide in the middle, but contracted to near a quarter of that breadth at the two extremities. It commences in the west, in the 49th degree of longitude east of *London*, at the gulph of *Bassora*, which is made by the mouth of the two great rivers *Euphrates* and *Tigris* united, and extends eastward almost to the 57th degree of longitude, where cape *Muca*, a promontory of the province of *Vodanor*, in *Arabia Felix*, by stretching forward to lat. 26. deg. 15 min. shuts it up into a mouth, not above thirty-six miles over, where the island of *Ormus* is seated, which, together with the other two islands abovementioned, intirely command the passage.

VIII. KERESTAN, or *Kerman*, is the ancient *Caramania*, and is bounded on the west by *Farsistan*, on the south by the *Persian* or *Arabian* Sea, on the east by *Mecran*, and



a on the north by *Segestan*. The country is mountainous, and the upper grounds barren; but the vallies are reasonably fruitful, and yield variety of odoriferous flowers, especially roses, the distilled waters of which are sold to advantage by the inhabitants at *Ispahan*. The sheep of this province bear the finest wool in the world, which they shed after eating new grass. This wool is chiefly manufactured in the town of *Kerman*, the only place of any note in this country, where also the best scimitars are made, and a kind of porcelain, little inferior to the *Chinese*. The *Gaures*, or ancient *Persians*, inhabit this province.

b IX. *MAKERAN*, or *Mecran*, is a small province, situated towards the mountains which divide *Persia* from *India* on the east, and surrounded with deserts and sandy plains. It is inhabited by the *Balluches*, a fierce and warlike nation.

X. *SEGESTAN* has *Corasan* on the north, part of *Candabar*, with *Sablestan* on the east, *Mecran* on the south, and *Farfistan* on the west. The face of the country is for the most part flat, and bears a vast number of palm-trees; but it is withal very sandy, and so much exposed to winds, that the sand often overwhelms the houses, and even whole villages. The road by land from *Persia* to *India*, lies through this country; but it is so barren and sandy, that few care to venture through, but chuse rather to go by sea.

c XI. *SABLESTAN* has *Candabar* on the north, *Segestan* on the west, *Mecran* on the south, and on the east the high mountains which separate *Persia* from *India*. This country is watered by several rivers, springs, and lakes, and is full of mountains known to the ancients by the name of *Paropamisi Montes*. They are a branch of mount *Taurus*, and are all covered with forests. The inhabitants are rude and clownish.

d XII. *CANDAHAR* has *Sablestan* on the south, the *Mogul* empire on the east, the country of *Balk* on the north, of which an *Usbec Tartar* is prince; on the south also part of the *Mogul* empire with *Segestan*; and on the west, part of *Corasan*. This province is very mountainous, yet produces abundantly all sorts of provisions that are necessary for the subsistence of its inhabitants, except towards *Persia*, where it is very barren. The chief city, which bears the same name with the province, lies about 670 miles from *Ispahan* to the east. It had princes of its own for a time, who subsisted on the mutual jealousy of the two powers between which it was situated; but at last, Shah *Abas the Great*, who made as many conquests by his policy as arms, found a fair opportunity to engage the prince, who was master of it in his time, to put himself under his protection, which he did accordingly, on condition that a prince of his race should always command in *Candabar*, as vassal and tributary to the king of *Persia*. Shah *Abas*, who, according to the maxim of all true politicians, was a punctual observer of his word, not only secured the possession of *Candabar* to the prince who submitted, but also continued the government of it to his son *Alimerdan-Khan*, after the death of his father. Shah *Sepbi*, grandson of Shah *Abas*, succeeding him, the court of *Persia* changed their maxims. As *Alimerdan-Khan* was possessed of great wealth, which he had for the most part by inheritance from his ancestors, and as he made the figure of a potent sovereign in his government, always eating out of gold vessels, and keeping a house almost as magnificent as the *Persian* kings, the ministers, who governed during Shah *Sepbi's* minority, and who, by inspiring him with violent suspicions against several of the greatest noblemen, had persuaded him to put some of the most considerable of them to death, did not fail to raise the same jealousy in his breast against the prince of *Candabar*, whose wealth, of which they hoped to be sharers, tempted them more than the possessions of the others whom they had caused to be cut off. The difficulty was to get him to court; for the misfortune of those, who, after being drawn thither in that manner, left their heads there, made him very loth to go; and he saw that, without regard to his remonstrances, couriers were dispatched to him one upon another, with pressing orders to repair to *Ispahan*. At that time, he had two children at the court of *Persia*, and he would not, perhaps, be so much pressed as he was to come to *Ispahan*, had it not been presumed, that his regard for his children, who remained as hostages at court, would hinder him from carrying matters to extremities. But having before his eyes the example of another governor more powerful than himself, who was invited to court with his children, only to suffer death, he imagined, that instead of saving the lives of his two sons, he should only hasten their death with his own; and therefore chose to take refuge with the Great *Mogul*, by delivering up *Candabar* to him. His children would undoubtedly have been cut off with him, if he had gone to *Ispahan*; but the fear of exasperating the inhabitants of the province of *Candabar*, and of rendering them irreconcilable by putting to death the two young lords, obliged the court of *Persia*, which hoped one day or other to recover *Candabar*, not only to keep fair with them, but also to treat them with more distinction than ever. This policy of Shah *Sepbi* had its effect under his son and successor *Abas II.* for when that prince laid siege to *Candabar*, in the beginning of his reign, the *Persians*, who composed the greater part of the



army sent by the Mogul to its relief, remembering the kind treatment of *Alimardan-Khan's* children at the court of *Persia*, did not exert themselves as they might have done to hinder *Abas II.* from making himself master of it, which he did in 1650; since which time, that city has always remained in the hands of the *Persians*, notwithstanding all the attempts afterwards made by the Mogul to recover it. The place is of the more importance to *Persia*, because it covers the frontiers towards the *Indies*, and is the strongest in the whole kingdom, having been fortified by *European* engineers, employed there by the Mogul, while master of it. Its opulence is owing to its being the thoroughfare of the caravans between *Persia* and the *Indies*; and a judgment of its wealth may be formed by the tribute paid to the king, which was twelve pound weight of gold for every day in the year, exclusive of many other duties, fines, and forfeitures.

XIII. *CORASAN*, including the province or kingdom of *Balk*, has *Persian Irak* with *Astrabad* on the west, from which it is parted by a large desert; *Parstian*, with *Segestan*, and another large desert, that parts it from *Kerestan* and *Candabar* on the south; the Mogul's dominions on the east and north-east, and *Usbec-Tartary* on the north. Hence it appears, that it is a very large province. It is very populous and fruitful, and produces the best manna in the world. It has a rock of turquoise-stone, so excellent, that the king allows none to be sold but to himself. The *Persian* geographers reckon thirty-two considerable towns in this country, four of which are royal cities, where the kings of *Persia* have sometimes resided: these are *Balk*, *Merou*, *Nisabour*, and *Herat*. The last is a strong place, fortified by *Tamerlane*, and said to be thirteen miles in circumference. *Mached*, another city in this province, is very famous for a pilgrimage instituted here in honour of the iman *Reza*, by *Shah Abas the Great*. This he did with a political view, to divert the resort of his subjects to *Meca* and *Medina*, whereby a great deal of gold was carried out of the kingdom; and, as he knew the devotion of the people is easily led away by external decoration, he spared no expence in this respect, even so far as to cover with plates of gold the mosque of this iman, who was always held in great veneration by the *Persians*. This city is surrounded with a noble wall, whereon stand 300 towers.

XIV. *ASTRABAD* with *Kboemus*, are seated in the north-west part of *Persia*, having *Corasan* on the east, part of *Tartary* on the north, the *Caspian-Sea* on the west, and also a little on the north; *Tabristan* on the west, and a branch of mount *Taurus*, with the desert of *Segestan* on the south. It is a mountainous country, and except near the banks of the two rivers *Murgab* and *Arias*, which run through it, the soil is sandy and barren; but in that part it is plain champain land, pleasant and fruitful, and produces grapes of a wonderful bigness. The inhabitants are a mixture of *Persians* and *Tartars*.

The Caspian-  
Sea described.

As a good part of *Persia* lies upon the *Caspian-Sea*, it will not be improper to give here a description of it. This sea is so called from the *Caspii*, a nation dwelling near its banks; or otherwise the *Hyrcean-Sea*, thus denominated from the province of *Hyrkania*, now *Tabristan*, or *Mazanderan*, whose shore it washes. It is a very large bed of water, quite surrounded with land, and being destitute of any known efflux, is therefore by some writers stiled a lake. It approaches in form to that of an oblong square, the longest side of which, from north to south, is about 640 *English* miles. Its greatest breadth, from east to west, is about 310 miles; but in many places it is much narrower. On the west it is bounded by the kingdom of *Ajracan*, and by the provinces of *Georgia* and *Shirwan*; on the north by *Russian-Tartary*; on the east by *Usbec-Tartary*, and part of *Astrabad*, which last bounds it on the south-east, and partly on the south, where it also washes *Tabristan* and *Ghilan*, which likewise surround the south-west part of it. The *Persians* call this sea *Kulsum*, or otherwise the sea of *Baku*. It receives the great river *Volga*, which itself is like a sea for largeness, and near a hundred other rivers, and yet is never increased nor diminished; nor ever observed to ebb and flow. This constant appearance has given rise to many speculations, and some think, that it must have a subterraneous communication with the *Black-Sea*, or *Persian gulph*, though the former is 120, and the latter near 200 leagues distant from it. In favour of this opinion, *F. Avril*, a modern traveller, says, that near the coast of *Ghilan*, there is a mighty whirlpool in the *Caspian-Sea*, which, by absorbing every thing that comes near it, there must be consequently a cavity in the earth there; and that in the *Persian gulph* a great quantity of willow-tree leaves are found floating, though no willow-trees grow any where near that gulph; whereas great plenty of them are seen on the coast of the *Caspian-Sea*, whence they must be carried by subterraneous passages from that sea to the gulph. Perhaps, the quantity of vapours drawn by the sun in this hot climate, may be equal to the quantity of water this sea receives from rivers; and thus we may account for its equal fulness. It was formerly very little navigated, except by *Cossack* rovers, who used to plunder all they met; but the *Russians*, being now masters of a part of the coast, are continually sailing from



a from one port or other of it, and carry on a profitable commerce with most of the adjacent countries. The water of this sea is as salt as any other sea-water; and breeds a variety of good fish.

WHEN the kingdoms of *Media* and *Persia* were united under *Cyrus the Great*, in the year of the world 3419, that prince having conquered *Babylonia*, erected the second, or *Persian* monarchy, upon the total ruin of the *Assyrian* empire, and thereby extended the *Persian* dominions through *Assyria*, *Armenia*, and all *Asia Minor*, to the very borders of *Europe*: but this monarchy continued no longer than 206 years, in a succession of twelve kings; the third of whom, *Darius Hystaspes*, invaded *Greece* with an army of 100,000 foot, and 10,000 horse, a force sufficient for over-running all that country, if the virtue and bravery of the *Greeks* had not exceeded what could possibly have been expected from men. The *Greeks* could not get together an army of above 10,000 men, and yet this handful of people ventured, under the conduct of *Miltiades*, to give the *Persians* battle in the plains of *Marathon*, near *Athens*; and with the loss of 192 men only, according to *Herodotus*, intirely defeated that immense army. *Xerxes*, the son and successor of *Darius*, renewed the attempt against *Greece*, and after ten years preparation, invaded it with so large an army, that the whole land was in a manner covered, and intire rivers drank dry by them; but this expedition did not prove more successful; for, after the battle by land at the streights of *Thermopy'æ*, and the sea engagement at *Salamis*, *Xerxes* was glad to retire, and leave his general *Mardonius* with 300,000 men, to finish the war; which was, indeed, soon after put an end to, by the intire rout of the *Persian* army, at the famous battle of *Platæa*. About 150 years after, *Alexander*, king of *Macedon*, invaded *Asia*, fought the numerous *Persian* armies, first, at the river *Granicus*, in *Phrygia*; secondly, at *Iffus*, in *Cilicia*; and thirdly, at *Arbela*, in *Assyria*; in all which battles he won intire victories, and finally entered *Babylon* in triumph. Here began the third, or *Grecian* monarchy, which lasted, properly speaking, only during the king's life.

AT the grand partition of *Alexander's* dominions among his captains, *Persia* was made part of the *Syrian* kingdom of *Seleucus Nicanor*, but did not continue long so; for in the reign of *Antiochus Theos*, the grandson of *Seleucus*, the *Parthians* revolted under the conduct of *Arsaces*, a nobleman of that country, who persuaded the neighbouring nations to join with him, and assumed the title of king. He was succeeded by a race of princes, who were potent monarchs, and opposed the *Romans* with greater vigour than any other nation. This kingdom remained thus under the *Parthian* government, from the year of the world 3718, to the year of *Christ* 228, when *Artaxerxes*, a noble *Persian*, having slain *Artabanus III.* and repelled the *Romans*, ascended the throne. This king is reckoned to have restored the ancient *Persian* race, and from him began a new dynasty, or race of kings, who, in twenty-eight generations, governed this country 406 years.

IN the year 634, the *Saracens*, under *Omar*, the successor of *Mohammed*, defeated *Herimifdas II.* This put an end to that kingdom; so that *Persia* became a part of the *Saracen* empire, and was governed by certain deputies, with the title of sultans, under the grand caliph. In process of time, the sultans of *Persia*, *Babylon*, &c. quarrelling among themselves, occasioned several revolutions and fluctuations of power, which, in the end, brought in the *Turks*. *Tangrolipix* overcame the sultan, or king of *Persia*, in the year 1030, and assumed the government of that country. He was succeeded by a race of *Turkish* princes for about 200 years, and then a new dynasty of *Tartarian* princes gained the government. *Haalon*, the first of these, became king of *Persia* in the year 1260, and was succeeded by eight of his posterity till the year 1337; when, upon the death of *Abusaid*, the last of that house, the kingdom became divided amongst several *Tartar* princes, till about the year 1400, when *Tamerlane* reduced the whole to his obedience, and left it to his son *Mirza Charock*: but that family did not hold it long; for after continual feuds among themselves, in a succession of six generations, the last of them was defeated and slain in 1472, by *Usum-Cassan*, an *Armenian* prince, who was, at that time, governor of *Turcomania*, and founded a new dynasty called the *Armenian*. There were five other princes of this line, the last of whom was at first successful in war against the *Sophian* family, who then began to make a great figure in *Persia*; but he was at last defeated by *Ismael Sophi*, the founder of the dynasty of the *Sophian* race, who governed *Persia* till within these few years.

THE kings of *Persia* of this family pretended to be derived from *Ali*, who was a cousin-german to *Mohammed*, and his son-in-law, by marrying *Fatima* his daughter. *Ali*, succeeding *Mohammed*, made a very great alteration in his law; he added some things, left out others, put new glosses, and made such a reform in it, that it might pass for a new law. All these alterations occasioned a division in *Mohammedanism*. The greater number adhered to the law, as delivered by *Mohammed*, and preserved by *Omar*, one of his chief disciples; and the rest declared for it, as it had been corrected by *Ali*. *Sophi*, said

History of the  
Persian mo-  
narchy.



said to be descended from *Ali*, flourished towards the end of the fourteenth century, and was the first that rescued *Ali's* laws from the obscurity in which they had been buried for many ages. His grandson, *Scich-Eidar*, preached up the same doctrine, but with a great many alterations, pretending to a revelation, that no Mussulmen should be saved but those who followed the doctrine of *Ali*, such as he explained it. His reputation was so great for sanctity and integrity of life, that *Usum Cassan*, who was made king of *Persia*, as above observed, gave him his daughter *Martha* in marriage. *Usum-Cassan*, dying in 1478, was succeeded by his son *Jacup*, and after him by two other kings, who had reigned till the year 1490. *Rustan*, a young nobleman, ascended the throne, and reigned seven years. Conscious to himself of *Scich-Eidar's* better right to the crown, and alarmed at the concourse of people from all parts, to embrace his religion, and adhere to his person at *Ardevil*, the place of his birth and residence, he procured him to be assassinated there; and persecuted to such a degree the new sect he was establishing, that several who had embraced it, abandoned it again. This *Rustan* was killed by *Abmet*, who, in his turn, after a reign of six months only, was put to death with torture by one of *Rustan's* principal officers. Hereupon, *Alvante*, a nobleman, the nearest akin to *Usum-Cassan*, was elected to fill the throne.

*SCICH-EIDAR*, whom *Rustan* caused to be murdered at *Ardevil*, left three sons, who would have met with the same fate as their father, if they had fallen into that prince's hands. The two eldest, who were of age to see their danger, fled, one into *Affric*, the other to *Aleppo*. *Ismael*, the third, who was but a child, was saved by the care of his father's friends, who put him under the protection of a nobleman of *Tabriz*, by name *Pyrchalim*, a friend to their family, who was master of several places on the *Caspian-Sea*. *Pyrchalim* took great care of young *Ismael's* education, and caused him to be brought up in the principles of the sect of his father, who had been artful enough to venture in favour of *Ismael*, one of those predictions that never hurt those for whose advantage they are made, and which are often a great help to them in the execution of their projects, by prepossessing the common people in their favour: in short, he had foretold, that his son would be a great prophet and a conqueror; and that by his zeal, and by the conquest of a great part of the East, he would one day equal the glory of *Mohammed* himself.

As soon as *Ismael* was grown up, and began to appear in the world, his behaviour was such as could not but confirm the great hopes people had conceived of him; and by the noble indifference he shewed upon all occasions for government and grandeur, he opened for himself a path to it, which was so much the safer as he seemed to be the more worthy of it: yet, as an honest care to recover his patrimony was not inconsistent with the disinterestedness he valued himself upon, he made use of this pretence to arm a good number of his disciples, and having reinforced them with some succours which *Pyrchalim* had sent him, he entered *Armenia*, where the lands lay which *Usum-Cassan* had given his mother for her dowry, and took possession of them by force of arms. His first success gave his party a reputation, which increased daily; he next attacked the castle of *Marmurlac*, which was full of riches, and having forced and plundered it, he led his army against *Sumach*, the capital of *Mesopotamia*, which he also took, and gave the plunder to his troops. From thence he marched his army towards *Tauris*, then the capital of *Persia*, and where *Alvante*, lately placed upon the throne, had his residence, and who fled at his approach, and retired towards *Armenia*. *Alvante* had created himself many enemies in *Tauris* by his cruelties, and was even destitute of the necessary forces for holding out a siege. *Ismael* entered with triumph into *Tauris*, but soon pursued *Alvante*, in order to prevent his joining with his brother *Moratcham*, who was raising troops for him in *Affyria* towards *Babylon*; and having surprized him, his troops were defeated, and the king himself killed, fighting at the head of them. *Moratcham* was, in a short time after, totally routed and put to flight, as he was marching to possess himself of *Tauris*. This was in the year 1499, which is reckoned the first of *Ismael's* reign. A series of victory afterwards attended his arms; he reduced *Babylon*, *Mesopotamia*, and all the neighbouring provinces to his obedience; he withstood all the efforts of the *Turks*, and died in 1525, at the age of forty-five years, a quiet possessor of one of the largest and most powerful monarchies in the world, and was reputed one of the greatest and most famous kings that ever ruled in the East.

From him there was a succession of princes by the names of *Thomas*, *Ismael II.* *Mahomet-Cadabende*, *Emir-Hemse*, and *Ismael III.* till *Abas the Great*, the third son of *Mahomet-Cadabende*, ascended the throne in 1585. his two brothers, *Emir Hemse* and *Ismael III.* having reigned but a few months. This prince raised the splendor and power of *Persia* to a very considerable height, and was afterwards justly stiled the restorer of it. He vastly enlarged his empire on the side of *India*; on the south reduced *Lar* and *Ormus*, and



- a and drove the *Turks* out of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, and all the conquests they had made on *Persia* since the death of *Ismael I.* which were at least 150 leagues in length, from north to south, reckoning from *Tauris* to the extremities of the kingdom of *Caket*, and as much, or even more, in breadth from the western coast of the *Caspian-Sea*, to the *Black Sea*; to which may be added *Babylon*, with all *Mesopotamia* and *Assyria*. But as by all those great feats of arms he shewed himself an able soldier, he discovered that he had yet greater talents as a statesman, in the measures he took to make himself absolute in his kingdom, and to civilize it, by crushing the power of the petty princes, who had often supported one another in a total independency on the crown. He died about the close of the year 1622, and was succeeded by his grandson *Sepbi I.* a cruel prince, who is supposed to have
- b died by poison in 1642, after a reign of twelve years. His son and successor *Abas II.* was very different from him, and it may be said, that next to *Ismael I.* and *Abas the Great*, *Persia* never had a better king of the *Sophian* family. *Sepbi II.* his eldest son, who succeeded him in 1666, was a prince of a cruel and yet indolent disposition; he died in 1694, leaving two sons, *Hussein* and *Abas*, of which the former succeeded him in the throne.

*HUSSEIN* continued many years in the peaceful possession of his throne, and would have died so, were it not for the corruption and venality of his court. Every thing being set to sale in his reign, *Myrr-Weis*, a popular nobleman, purchased the government of *Candabar*, but was soon after displaced to make room for another nobleman, who had advanced more money. *Myrr-Weis*, hereupon becoming a malecontent, assembled his

c friends and dependants, and drove his rival out of *Candabar*, after which success he began his march towards *Ispahan*, the capital city, but died before he arrived there. *Mahomood*, his son, advanced with the army to *Ispahan*, took the city; and soon after, though the king had consented to be dethroned, and made over his crown to this *Mahomood*, he had him murdered and all the royal family, with the prime of the *Persian* nobility, except prince *Thamas*, one of *Hussein's* sons, who had escaped and fled to the north of *Persia*. *Mahomood*, some time after, in the midst of his barbarities and excesses, was murdered by *Esriff*, one of his officers, who usurped the throne. Prince *Thamas*, having assembled an army, invited *Nadir-Kan* into his service, who had obtained great reputation for his valour and conduct. He was the son of a *Persian* nobleman, on the frontiers of *Uzbek-Tartary*, and

d his uncle, who was his guardian, keeping him out of possession of the castle and estate, which was his inheritance, he took to robbing the caravans; and having increased his followers to upwards of 500 men, became the terror of that part of the country, and especially of his uncle, who had seized his estate. His uncle therefore endeavoured to be reconciled to him, and invited him to the castle, where he was splendidly entertained; but he ordered his followers to cut his uncle's throat in the night-time, and turn his people out of the castle. Prince *Thamas*, by giving him the command of his army, soon after met with all the success he could hope for. He defeated the usurper *Esriff*, put him to death, and recovered all the places the *Turks* and *Russians* had made themselves masters of during the rebellion; and then prince *Thamas* seemed to be established on the throne: but

e *Nadir-Kan*, to whom *Thamas* had given the name of *Thamas Kouli-Kan*, that is, the slave of *Thamas*, thinking his services not sufficiently rewarded, and pretending that the king had a design against his life, or at least to set him aside, conspired against his sovereign, made him prisoner, and put him to death, as is supposed, after which he usurped the throne, styling himself *Shah Nadir*, or king *Nadir*.

He afterwards laid siege to *Candabar*, of which a son of *Myrr-Weis* had possessed himself. While he lay at this siege, the court of the Grand Mogul being distracted by factions, one of the parties invited *Shah Nadir* to come to their assistance, and betrayed the Mogul into his hands. Hereupon, having marched to *Delly*, the capital of *India*, he summoned all the viceroys and governors of provinces to attend him, and bring with them all the

f treasure they could raise; and those that did not bring so much as he expected, he tortured and put to death. Having thus amassed the greatest treasure that ever prince was master of, he returned to *Persia*, giving the Mogul his liberty, on condition of resigning the provinces on the west side of the *Indies* to the crown of *Persia*. He afterwards made a conquest of *Uzbek-Tartary*, and plundered *Bochara*, the capital city. Then he marched against the *Dagistan Tartars*, but lost great part of his army in the mountains, without fighting. He defeated the *Turks* in several engagements; but laying siege to *Bagdad*, was twice compelled to raise the siege. He proceeded to change the religion of *Persia* to that of *Omar*; hanged up the chief priests, put his own son to death, and was guilty of such cruelty, that he was at length assassinated by his own relations in 1747, who have been

g fighting for the crown ever since. Of late the contending parties have been reduced to two, and in the spring of the year 1763, *Kerim-Kan* made himself master of all *Persia*, by the defeat of *Fat-Ali-Kan*. The highways have been since safe, trade has recovered its vigour, caravans are very frequent, and between 15 and 20,000 families of that king-



dom who had retired to *Bagdad*, are successively returning to their own country. That vast empire, after being so long rent and ravaged by a croud of petty tyrants, seems to be on the point of recovering its ancient splendor, under the wise and vigorous administration of *Kerim-Kan*. At first this prince declined the title of king, assuming only, in his *Firmans*, and on his coin, that of *Sabelzaman*, which signifies master of the present time; but he has since, in the month of *October* of the same year, convoked all the *Persian* grandees to meet him at *Ispahan*, in order to assist at his coronation at *Tauris*.

Government  
of Persia.

*PERSIA* is an absolute monarchy; the king's will is law in all cases; he judges of the lives and fortunes of his subjects, without regard to any other justice or law than his own pleasure, and that often leads him to extravagant severities. He has no established council, but is advised by such ministers as are most in favour; and the resolutions taken among the ladies in the haram frequently defeat the best laid designs. The crown is hereditary, excluding only the females; but the sons of a daughter are allowed to inherit. The laws of *Persia* exclude the blind from the throne; and this is the reason that the reigning prince usually orders the eyes of all the males of the royal family, of whom he entertains any jealousy, to be put out. The prime minister is called *Attemaer Doulet*, which signifies the director of the empire, and also *Vizier Azem*, or the great supporter of the empire, as he alone almost sustains the whole weight of the kingdom. This minister's chief study is to please his master; to secure to himself an ascendant over his mind, and to avoid whatever may give him any uneasiness or umbrage. With this view he never fails to flatter him, to extol him above all the princes upon earth, and to throw a thick veil over every thing that might help to open his eyes, or discover to him the weakness of the state. He even takes very particular care to keep the king in utter ignorance, to hide from him, or at least to soften all unwelcome news, and above all to exalt immoderately every the least advantage he obtains over his enemies. By this sort of policy it is that this minister is able to aggrandize his family, and to raise his friends to the first posts in the empire; nor does he ever want a pretence for ruining some, and advancing others; and this is the easier for him to do, as all in employment are guilty of mal-administration. He has also a thousand opportunities of serving those in his interest, who give him a share in their plunder, and of sending them those royal vests, called *calaat*, by the officers of his house, who are greatly rewarded for the same, which serves them instead of wages. The governors of provinces and cities endeavour, by underhand practices, to procure those presents of honour; nor do they spare any money to obtain them, to render their government more respectable, as none must dare complain of their misdemeanors, when they see them so much in favour at court as to obtain these robes. Thus it is, that the prime minister is in perpetual agitation to support himself, to raise some, and destroy others, according as he is actuated either by love or hatred. Yet, with all his arts and precautions, he can never be quiet in his mind; for it is impossible for him to be sure of the fidelity of any one person; those he has been kind to being often the first to hasten his destruction, when they find that fortune has given him a shock. Infidelity and ingratitude have taken such deep root all over this country, that children make no scruple to cut off the ears, the nose, and even to cut the throat of their own parents, whenever the king commands it, and this with the base and mercenary view of possessing their posts in the government; a barbarity of which there are many instances. However, the prime ministers in *Persia* continue generally in their employment during life, or if removed, are only banished to some city, where they spend the remainder of their life in a private station.

Principal of-  
ficers of state.

THE great officers of the state after the prime minister, are the *Nadir*, or grand master of the household; the *Nichter*, or groom of the chamber, who is always a white eunuch; the *Mir-akbor-bashe*, or master of the horse; the *Mir-shikar-bashe*, or great huntsman and falconer; the *Divan-beggi*, or chief justice; there is a lieutenant of police, stiled *Deroga*, in every town, but there may be an appeal from his sentence to the *Divan-beggi*: the *Vacka-nuviez*, or recorder of events, or first secretary of state; the *Muslaushe-elmenalick*, or master of the accounts and finances of the kingdom; the *Numes-hum-bashes*, or king's chief physicians; the *Shick-adasi-bashe*, or inspector of the palace, and regulator of rank at court; and the *Khans* or governors of provinces, under whom are other governors, called *Soltans*, appointed also by the king.

Ministers in  
spirituals.

THE chief in spirituals is the *Zedder*, or great pontiff, who has the direction of all the wealth and emoluments consecrated to public worship or religious uses; under him are the *Sheik el felom* and *Cadi*, who decide all points of religion, and make all contracts, testaments, and other public deeds; they are appointed by the king in all the principal towns: and, next to these are the *Pichnamas*, or directors of the prayers, and the *Moullahs*, or doctors of the law.



**a** THE king is exceeding rich in gold, plates, and jewels of all sorts; and his store is continually increased by the presents made him by the Khams or great lords, which they often repeat, especially every new year's day. He has many lands, which he farms out at the rent of one fifth, third, or sometimes half the produce. He has the monopoly of silk, large subsidies from the several companies of tradelmen; and all estates confiscated by delinquency, revert to the crown. These, together with many smaller taxes, raise his revenue to the amount of eight millions of toman *per annum*, each toman being worth about 5 l. 6 s. 8 d. of our money; and indeed, the charge of his army is so great, his stables are so largely furnished with fine horses, some of which eat out of golden mangers; his court **b** is so numerous, his equipages so sumptuous, his attendants so many, his gardens so surprisingly spacious, and so elegantly laid out, his wives and concubines so many, and in short his grandeur in all respects of pomp and expence so remarkable, that it cannot be maintained with a less revenue.

*King's riches and revenues.*

THE arms of the king of *Persia* are a lion couchant, looking at the sun as it rises over his back. His usual title is Shah, or Parshah, the disposer of kingdoms. To his titles are also added those of Sultan and Kham, the title of the *Tartar* sovereigns. He does not subscribe his name to acts of state, but the grant runs in this manner, *viz.* "This act, (or edict) is given by him whom the universe obeys."

*His arms and titles.*

**c** THERE are three sorts of militia in *Persia*, which compose, as it were, so many distinct armies, namely, the Kortshies, the Goulans, and the Tafichties. The first are descended from an ancient, but foreign race, which have been famous on account of their courage. They encamp under tents, fight always on horseback, are well paid and kept, and often come to be promoted to the highest employments. There are generally about 22,000 of them in pay. The second are slaves, or the children of slaves of all nations, but particularly *Georgian* renegadoes; they serve the king very well, and also on horseback: their number is about 18,000. The third are a body of infantry, to the amount of 40 or 50,000; they are commonly picked out of the country, from amongst the most laborious and robust of the people.

*Forces.*

**d** THE religion of the *Persians* is the same in substance with that of the *Turks*, though no nations in the world hate one another so much on account of religion as they do. The true ground of their division is, that the *Turks* pretend, that *Abubeker* was the lawful successor of *Mohammed*, *Omar* the successor of *Abubeker*, *Osman* of *Omar*, and then *Ali*; whereas the *Persians* assert, that *Ali* succeeded *Mohammed*, or ought to have succeeded him, as being his son-in-law; and that the rest were but so many usurpers of his right. This is the reason that the *Turks* hold the *Persians* to be hereticks. The *Persians* further say, that *Ali* was the first of the twelve imans or priests whom they much honour, and who succeeded one another, and of whom the last, called *Mahomet-Mehedi-Sahabremon*, or the master of times, was snatched out of the hands of those who would have killed him, and translated as *Enoch* and *Elias* were; and that he will also come at the day of judgment to force the world **e** to embrace the faith of *Mohammed*, that *Jesus Christ* will be his lieutenant, and will marry: for they look upon it as a great defect in his person, that he was not married. There is something very singular and curious in the religion and other practices of the *Gaures*, who are the remains of the ancient *Persians*; but we shall defer giving any account of them, till we examine the analogy which is supposed to be between them and the original inhabitants of *Indostan*.

*Religion.*

**f** THE *English* and other nations trade with the *Persians* several ways, particularly by the gulph of *Ormus* at *Gombron*, by the way of *Turkey*, and by the way of *Russia* through the *Caspian-Sea*. Woollen manufactures are exchanged with them for raw and wrought silks, carpets, camblets, leather, and other manufactures of the country; but the trade is carried on in *European* shipping, the *Persians* having scarce any ships of their own, and the *Russians* having the sole navigation of the *Caspian Sea*. The trade to *Persia* through *Russia* is disused at present, being prohibited by the court of *Russia*, who were apprehensive the *English* would teach the *Persians* to build ships, and dispute the navigation of the *Caspian-Sea* with them. There is not a richer or more profitable trade carried on any where than between *Gombron* and *Surat* in the *East-Indies*; and the *English East India* company frequently let out their ships to transport the merchandize of the *Banians* and *Armenians* from *Persia* to *India*: but there has been scarce any trade here since the civil wars began. The king of *Persia* is the chief merchant, and he usually employs his *Armenian* subjects to traffick for him in every part of the world. His agent must have the refusal of all merchandize before his subjects are permitted to trade. His greatest ministers do **g** not think the business of a merchant beneath them. Thus it was before the civil war commenced. The most current money in *Persia* are the abassi's, worth about 1 s. 4 d. sterling: they are of the finest silver. An abassi is worth about two mahmoudi's, a mahmoudi two shai's, and a shai ten single and five double casbeghi's. These last pieces are of brass; the other

*Trade, manufactures, coins.*



*Persons, ha-  
bits, genius,  
temper, &c.  
of the Per-  
sians.*

other three sorts of silver; for gold is not current in trade. A toman is a certain sum of money, and no coin, worth fifty alaffi's; and in *Persia* they generally reckon by tomans. a

The *Persian* blood is generally thick, as may be seen in the *Gauxes*, the ancient *Persians*, who are homely, ill shaped, dull, and have a rough skin and olive complexion. The same is observed in the provinces next the *Indus*; but in other parts of the kingdom, the *Persian* blood is now grown clearer by the mixture of the *Georgian* and *Circassian*; and the men are of a good stature, shape, and complexion, and the women handsome and well shaped, but still inferior to the *Georgians*. The men wear large turbans on their heads, some of them very rich, interwoven with gold and silver; a vest girt with a sash, and over it a loose garment something shorter, with sandals or slippers on their feet. The women's dress does not differ much from the men's, only their vests are longer, and they wear a stiffened cap on their heads, and their hair loose. The men are exceeding fond of riding, which they do every day, if it be but to a house in the same town; they wear pliant boots of yellow leather; and the furniture of their horses is immoderately rich, their stirrups generally silver; and, whether on foot or horseback, they wear a broad sword and dagger in their sash. They have also a particular passion for hunting, which is commonly managed by birds of prey. Their hawks are the best instructed of any in the world, and they are taught not only to fly at birds, but at hares, deer, and all manner of wild beasts. The *Persians* have been always esteemed a brave people, of great vivacity and quick parts, lovers of learning, and their polite men are upon a level with the politest in *Europe*. They excel more in poetry than any other kind of literature, and astrologers are in as great reputation in *Persia* as the magi were formerly. Their books are all manuscripts, the art of printing having not yet been introduced among them; but they excel in writing, and have eight several hands. They write from the right to the left like the *Arabs*. In a kind of short hand they use the letters of the alphabet, and the same letters differently pointed will have twenty several significations. They are famed for nothing more than their humanity and hospitality. Their greatest foible is profuseness and vanity; whence the richness of their cloaths, the number of their servants and equipage, too often exceed their revenues, and bring them into difficulties. In short, they are born with as good natural parts as any other people, but few abuse them so much, becoming dissemblers, cheats, flatterers and liars, to gratify, if possible, their eager bent to voluptuousness and a luxurious life.—They drink coffee for breakfast, and at eleven dine upon melons, fruit, or milk. Their chief meal is in the evening, when they usually have a dish of pillo, consisting of boiled rice, fowls, or mutton, so over-done, that they pull the meat in pieces with their fingers, using neither knives, forks, nor spoons. Their meat is seasoned very high with salt and spices when they dress it; but they never salt up their meat, eating it the same day it is killed. They spread a cloth upon a carpet, and sit down cross-legged at their meals, washing both before and after they eat. They are frequently entertained with music, both vocal and instrumental, at their festivals, and girls dance to divert the company. Their usual drink is water or sherbet, wine being prohibited by their law; but several of them frequently break through this restraint, and none of them make any scruple of intoxicating themselves with opium. There is no place where women are so strictly guarded and confined as in *Persia*, especially in the courts or harems of their princes and great men. When the king's women remove, they are sent away in covered litters, with a strong guard; and all men are required to quit their habitations, and remove to a considerable distance from the places they pass through, on pain of death. There is no nobility in *Persia*, nor any respect given to a man on account of his family, except to those who are of the blood of their great prophet, or patriarchs; but every man is esteemed according to the post he possesses; and when he is dismissed, he loses his honour, and is no longer distinguished from the vulgar. The *Arabic* is the learned language of the *Persians*; the *Turkish* is usually spoken at court, and in the provinces adjoining to *Turkey*: in other parts, they generally speak the *Persian* tongue, which is a modern language, and much of the same date with their religion. b c d e f



C H A P. VIII.

Of Great Tartary and Asiatic Russia.

**T**HIS country, called *Great Tartary*, to distinguish it from the *Lesser Tartary* in *Europe*, is the ancient *Scythia* and *Serica*. It lies between the 53d and 138th degree of longitude east from *London*, and between the 40th and 80th of north latitude; which makes it about 4000 miles in length, and 3400 in breadth. The soil of so extensive a country cannot be expressed in general; the climate is so various, that the produce of the earth must be different in the several districts; but, according to the best accounts, the southern parts would be fruitful, if duly cultivated. It is true, that even there the land is much incumbered with mountains, so that we hear of no profitable commodity brought from thence but rhubarb, which it seems grows there very freely.

*Situation and extent.*

*Soil and produce.*

THE people are of an offspring of the northern *Scythians*, who came down southwards above 500 years ago, and like the *Goths* in *Europe*, and *Saracens* in *Africa*, carried all before them. They conquered *Persia* and a great part of *Asia-Minor*; and though beaten thence, they found their way westward, and established a monarchy in *Taurica Chersonesus*, which continued above 300 years. That the *Tartars* are of *Scythian* original, is evident from their sentiments and manners at this day. The *Scythians* sacrificed to their gods the prisoners taken in war. The *Tartars* do not indeed deprive their prisoners of life, but they make death preferable, by selling them to masters that equal themselves in cruelty. The ancient *Scythians* lived on mare's milk, applied themselves to the feeding of cattle, and neglected tillage. They had no other habitations but tilted waggons, which were drawn from pasture to pasture, as herbage failed and necessity required. Their cloathing was the skins of beasts. They made use of poisoned arrows. To cross a river they filled sacks with cork, on which they placed themselves, and were drawn over by horses which they held by the tail. They had no written laws, but administered justice according to the natural dictates of reason. These customs still subsist with little variation among the *Tartars*. There was one very singular custom among the *Scythians*: when two friends wanted to swear a lasting friendship, they made incisions in their fingers, and received the blood in a cup. Both dipped the points of their swords in it, and lifting them to their heads, eagerly sucked it. When the modern *Tartars* take an oath, they dip their sabres in water, which they afterwards drink. The barbarity of some of their customs appears to have been softened by time: but one thing which has remained invariable in the character of these people, is their rage of invading the neighbouring nations upon every opportunity that offers, and often of falling upon one another, when they are confined in their own country by superior force or fear. Their wars, their incursions, their ravages, differ in nothing from those of the *Scythians*. We may apply to them what the prophet *Jeremiah* said, speaking of the irruption of their ancestors into *India*, "Their chariots are as a whirlwind; their horses are swifter than eagles, and their quiver is as an open sepulchre."

*Inhabitants, their conquests, manners, character, and proved to be of Scythian original.*

ASIA, as before observed, has often felt that they have lost nothing of the brutal impetuosity of their ancestors. Their success is less surprizing than that continuance of their valour, which, though not always sufficient to preserve their conquests, still kept up in them a desire to recover them. Thus, though expelled *China* in 1368, after possessing it above a century, they never ceased their efforts to recover it; and in 1644, reduced it in such a manner, that they have no reason to apprehend a second expulsion. The exploits of *Tamerlane*, the chief of one of their rulers, are well known. He was equal to *Cesar* in courage, and not inferior to *Alexander* in good fortune. He conquered the *Indies*, subdued *Persia*, vanquished the *Turks*, and ravaged all *Egypt*. His name and reputation have reached nations to whom his country is still unknown.

THE *Tartars* are generally divided into three distinct powers: the first are those known by the name of *Tartars*; the second are the *Calmuks*; and the third the *Moungals*. The *Tartars* properly so called, live to the west of the *Caspian-Sea*. The most considerable of them are the *Usbecks*, the *Kara-Kalpacs*, the *Nogais*, who are subject to *Russia*; the *Baskirs*, who also hold of that empire; and the *Daghestans*, who depend on no power, and are more savage and untractable than any of the rest. The *Nogais*, who at present occupy the lands of *Ajirachan*, between the *Jaick* and the *Volga*, and the *Baskirs*, who are situated in the eastern part of the kingdom of *Casan*, between the *Volga* and the river *Kama*, formerly received tribute from *Russia*, which the great duke of *Moscow* carried to them an-

*Tartars divided into three powers.*

\* Jer. iv. 13.



nually on his own horses. He was obliged to go on foot, followed by the principal persons of his court, to meet the persons who came to demand this tribute, and who were the poorest and most wretched of all their tribes. *John* or *Iwan*, duke of *Muscovy*, surnamed *the Great*, was the first who, to free himself from this shameful mark of servitude, attempted to bring the *Tartars* under subjection. His son *Basil* continued to reduce them; but the final blow was given them by *John Basilides*, a prince detested for his barbarity, but resolute and valiant. He extended his power over the most distant of their hords. The kan of the *Calmucks* who occupy a great part of the country which lies between the *Moungal* and the *Wolga*, is so powerful, that it is said he can bring an army of 100,000 men into the field. There is always a body of them in the *Russian* army. They are rather short than tall; but strong, robust, courageous, and inured to fatigue. Their complexion is tawny, their faces flat, and their noses sunk to a level with their cheeks; their nostrils are the only parts that are striking, because larger than their eyes; and these are so small, that they would be scarce perceptible, if they were not very black and sparkling. They have scarce any beard; and their hair, of which they wear only a tuft on the crown of the head, is rough like a horse's mane. They wear a round bonnet with a border of fur, in the *Polish* manner, and a kind of loose coat of sheep-skins, which comes down to the middle of their leg. They serve only on horseback: their arms are a bow which is larger, and arrows which are longer than usual. It is said that their arrows are so sharp-pointed, and that they make them fly with such force, that they will pierce a man through. They carry also a musket, which hangs by their side; and a lance, which they handle with great dexterity. They are all *Pagans*: the name *Calmucks* is a kind of nickname given them by the *Mohammedan Tartars*, with which they are much offended. They want to be called *Megouls*. Those *Tartars* who are at present called *Moungals*, are situated, on one side, between these last people and the sea of *Japan*, and on the other between *China* and *Siberia*.

Kingdom of  
Astracan.

THE kingdom of *Astracan* begins in the 43d degree and  $\frac{1}{2}$  of latitude, under the finest of climates, and ends towards the 50th, comprehending about as many degrees of longitude as latitude; bounded on one side by the *Caspian-Sea*, on the other by the mountains of *Circassia*, and still reaching beyond the *Caspian-Sea*, along *Mount Caucasus*; watered by the great river *Wolga*, the *Jaick*, and several other rivers, between which, as our countryman the engineer *Perry* pretends, canals may be formed, which, serving as a bed to inundations, would produce the same effect as the channels of the *Nile*, by increasing the fertility of the land; but this fine country, to the right and left of the *Wolga* and *Jaick*, was infested, rather than inhabited by the *Tartars*, who never cultivated any thing, and who always lived as strangers on the earth.

ENGINEER *Perry*, employed here by *Peter the Great*, found vast deserts covered with pastures, different sorts of pulse, cherry and almond trees. Wild sheep, which yielded excellent nourishment, fed in these solitudes. To second therein nature, it was necessary to begin by taming and civilizing the men of these climes.

THIS kingdom of *Astracan* is a part of the ancient *Capshak*, conquered by *Gengis-Kan*, and afterwards by *Tamerlane*. The dominions of these *Tartars* extended as far as *Moscow*. The czar *John Basilides*, as before mentioned, delivered his country from the *Tartar* yoke in the tenth century, and added the kingdom of *Astracan* to his other conquests in 1554. *Astracan* is the boundary of *Asia* and *Europe*, and may trade with either, transporting by the *Wolga* the merchandizes brought by the *Caspian Sea*. This was one of the grand projects of *Peter the Great*. It was partly executed by him. An intire suburb of *Astracan* is inhabited by *Indians*.

Orenburg.

AT the south-east of the kingdom of *Astracan* is a small country newly formed, called *Orenburg*. A town of the same name was built in 1734, on the banks of the river *Jaick*. The face of this country is uneven and rugged by some branches of *Mount Caucasus*. Forts raised at equal distances defend the passage of the mountains, and the rivers that descend from them. It is in this region, formerly inhabited, that the *Persians*, for some years past, have been laying up and secreting from rapacious robbers their effects that escaped the civil wars. The town of *Orenburg* is become the refuge of the *Persians* and their fortunes, and has increased by their calamities. The *Indians* and people of the *Great Bukaria*, come to traffic there; so that it may be said to be a mart for *Asia*.

Governments  
of Casan and  
the Great  
Permia.

BEYOND the *Wolga* and the *Jaick*, towards the north, is the kingdom of *Casan*, which, together with *Astracan*, fell to the lot of a son of *Gengis-Kan*, and afterwards of a son of *Tamerlane*. This is also a conquest of *John Basilides*. It is still peopled by a great number of *Mohammedan Tartars*. This great country extends as far as *Siberia*. It was formerly rich and flourishing, and still retains some opulence. A province of this kingdom called the *Great Permia*, and afterwards *Solikam*, was the staple of *Persian* merchandize and *Tartar* furs. A great quantity of the coins of the first caliphs, and some gold idols of the *Tartars* have been found in *Permia*; but these monuments of former wealth were found in the



- a midst of poverty, and in deserts where no vestiges of commerce could be discovered. Such revolutions happen but too soon and easily in a barren country, since they have happened in the most fertile.

THE famous *Swedish* prisoner, *Straltemberg*, who turned to so good an account his misfortunes, after the battle of *Pultowa*, and who examined all those vast tracts of land with so much attention, is the first who made probable a fact which could never gain credit, concerning the ancient commerce of these regions. *Pliny* and *Pomponius Mela* relate, that in the time of *Augustus*, a king of the *Suevi* made a present to *Metellus Celer* of some *Indians* cast by a storm on the coasts near the *Elbe*. How should the inhabitants of *India* navigate the *German* seas? This adventure appeared fabulous to all our moderns, especially since

- b the commerce of our hemisphere changed by the discovery of the *Cape of Good Hope*. But formerly it was not more strange to see an *Indian* trade into the northern countries of the west, than to see a *Roman* pass into *India* by *Arabia*. The *Indians* went into *Persia*, embarked on the sea of *Hyrcania*, sailed up the *Rha*, which is the *Volga*, proceeded as far as the *Great Permia*, by *Kama*, and from thence might embark on the *North Sea*, or *Baltic*. There have been in all times enterprising men. The *Tyrians* undertook and succeeded in more astonishing voyages.

If, after having passed in review all these vast provinces, you cast your eye to the east, there again the limits of *Europe* and *Asia* are confounded. A new name should seem requisite for this great part of the world. The ancients divided into *Asia*, *Europe*, and

c *Africa* their known world; they had not seen the tenth part of it; and this is the reason, when the *Palus Meotis* is passed, that it is not known where *Europe* ends and *Asia* begins. All beyond *Mount Taurus* received the vague appellation of *Scythia*, and afterwards that of *Tartary*. It would be proper, perhaps, to call by the name of *Arctic Land*, or *Land of the North*, all the country that extends from the *Baltic* to the confines of *China*, as the name of *Austral Land* is given by some to the part of the world, not less vast, situated under the antarctic pole, and which makes the counterpoise of the globe.

- FROM the frontiers of the provinces of *Archangel*, *Resan*, *Astracan*, *Siberia* extends to the east, with further tracts of land as far as the sea of *Japan*; it touches the south of *Russia* by *Mount Caucasus*; from thence to the country of *Kamschatka* about 1200 common
- d leagues are reckoned; and from *South Tartary*, which serves it as a boundary, as far as the *Frozen Sea*, there are about 400, which is the least breadth of this country. *Siberia* produces the richest furs, and it was this that occasioned its discovery in 1563.

Government of  
Siberia.

A *Don-Cossack*, by name *Yarmak*, being obliged by some accident to leave his native country, and having no means of subsistence, betook himself, with a few accomplices, to robbing on the highway. He soon became famous and powerful, for he robbed only the rich, and by a generosity uncommon in such a character, liberally bestowed on such as were in want. He never killed, or even hurt any person, unless compelled to such outrages in his own defence. This behaviour so raised his reputation, that all the idle fellows in the country enlisted themselves in his gang, and he became at last so troublesome, that the go-

e vernors of the southern provinces sent out troops to apprehend him; but he being informed of their design, withdrew from the land, and procuring boats upon the *Volga*, commenced pirate. Being attacked here also, he was forced to cross the *Caspian-Sea*, and shelter himself on the *Persian* shore, where he passed for a merchant. Being again discovered, he was obliged by the *Persians* to quit their coast; and now his only refuge was to return to the *Volga*, where he behaved with great circumspection, often lurking in woods and villages; and being in no want of money, he paid liberally for every thing he needed. Foreseeing, however, that such a numerous gang could not be long concealed, he took the resolution of leaving the *Volga*, and steered his course up the river *Kama*, at that time little frequented by the *Russians*, or any other nation: here he hoped to find, at least, a

f safe retreat during the winter. *Yarmak*, therefore, with his followers, amounting to 200, continued their voyage up the *Kama*, till they were stopped by the ice, at no great distance from a large village. The inhabitants, alarmed at the sight of so many armed men, whom they were not able to oppose, gave them a hospitable reception. *Yarmak* demanded only provisions and winter-quarters for his men, promising to leave them unmolested in the spring. In consequence of this declaration, he and his followers passed the winter very quietly in that remote place; but apprehensive, at the approach of summer, of being discovered by the government, and uncertain what course to steer, it was at last determined to cross the mountains of *Verchaturia*, and go to the eastward, in hopes of finding some uninhabited country, at least a safe retreat.

Discovery and  
conquest of  
Siberia.

- g HAVING passed the mountains, they arrived at the river *Tur*, and finding it navigable, soon made a sufficient number of canoes for the whole gang. After rowing for some days down the *Tur*, they discovered several villages of *Mohammedan Tartars*, who were surprised at the sight of such a number of strangers, of whom they never had before so much as heard.

Tar-



*Yarmak* having got what intelligence he could procure of the situation and government of the country, pursued his voyage to the river *Tobol*; where he found the towns populous, and the lands well cultivated. His approach alarmed the king of the *Tartars*, who assembled a numerous body of horse and foot, armed with bows and arrows, lances and other such weapons, with whom our adventurer had many skirmishes, and defeated great multitudes by means of his fire-arms, which had never before been known in these parts. The poor *Tartars* were as much amazed and terrified at the sight of the *Russians* and their arms, as the inhabitants of *Mexico* on the arrival of the *Spaniards* in *America*; to which *Siberia* may, in many respects, be compared.

*YARMAK*, finding his enemies daily more numerous the nearer he approached the residence of the *Tartar* king; having also lost many of his men in continual encounters, and spent the greatest part of his ammunition; knowing, besides, of no place of safety, where he might pass the winter, which is both long and severe in this quarter, at last determined to retreat. He therefore steered his course to the west, up the *Tobol* and *Tur* rivers. The *Tartars* gave him no rest, but harassed him perpetually from the banks. He himself and a few more escaped with a considerable booty, and returned to the village where they wintered before. The inhabitants, on seeing the rich furs and other spoils, gave them a welcome reception; and *Yarmak* did not forget to dispense his favours liberally among those who had entertained him in his distress, when he fled from justice.

Our adventurer had now time to reflect on his miserable circumstances. He considered, that his lurking in these parts, though remote from any town, could not be long kept a secret; to make another attempt against the *Tartars* with a handful of men, ill provided with arms and ammunition, might perhaps be ruinous, and certainly unsuccessful. He therefore resolved to submit himself to the czar's clemency, in hopes of obtaining a pardon for himself and his accomplices, on condition of pointing out the way to a rich and easy conquest of a country which he had discovered. The proposal was made at court by a friend, and was of too great importance to be neglected. In short, *Yarmak* was brought to *Moscow*, under a safe conduct, where he communicated the whole affair. He begged his majesty's pardon, and asked a certain number of troops, which he promised to lead to a glorious conquest. His majesty granted him a pardon, approved of the expedition, and gave orders for the troops to attend him. They marched to *Selkansk*, where they passed the winter in making preparations for their enterprize.

DURING this interval, *Yarmak* behaved with surprising prudence and activity, and discovered himself to be a person of uncommon genius. He collected such of his former followers as remained, and formed them into a company, in whom he could confide on all occasions.

AT the proper season, the troops set out towards *Siberia*. On coming into the inhabited parts of the country, they found many straggling parties of *Tartars* in arms, ready to oppose them, and a number of boats upon the rivers, full of armed men; the king of the *Tartars* himself was on board one of these vessels. This expedition was of short duration, and fully answered the expectations of the *Russians*. The *Tartars* in the boats being pursued by the *Russians*, a battle ensued on the river *Irtish*. *Yarmak* observing the king's barge, ordered his crew to board her, which he endeavoured to do at the head of his men, jumped short, fell into the river, and was drowned, to the great grief of all his followers. Thus fell poor *Yarmak*! Notwithstanding this misfortune, the *Russians* gained a complete victory. The brave king of the *Tartars* lost his life also in the action. His son, and the rest of the royal family, were taken prisoners, and sent to *Moscow*, where they were honourably received by the czar, and treated according to their quality. The prince had an extensive property granted him in *Russia*, which the family now enjoys, together with the title of *Sibirsky Czarowitz*, or prince of *Siberia*.

How the Samoieds were discovered.

It was not in the reign of the czar *Feder Iwanowicz*, but in that of *Iwan Basilides* in the sixteenth century, that a private person of the neighbourhood of *Archangel*, a man rich for his condition and country, perceived that men of extraordinary figure, clothed after a manner till then unknown in his part of the country, and speaking a language which none understood, came down regularly every year a river that falls into the *Duina*, bringing with them, to market, martens and black foxes, which they exchanged for nails and bits of glass, as the savages of *America* first gave their gold to the *Spaniards*. He had them followed by his children and servants as far as their country: they were *Samoieds*, a people that appear like the *Laplanders*, but not of the same race. They are ignorant, as the *Laplanders*, of the use of bread; they have, as they, the assistance of rein-deer, which they yoke to their sledges. They live in caverns and huts in the midst of the snow; but nature has otherwise set some very distinguishing marks between this species of men and that of the *Laplanders*: their upper maxilla, or jaw, more advanced, is on a level with their nose, and their ears are higher up; the men and women have hair only on the head; the nipple



a ple of their breast is of a black ebony colour. Neither sex of the *Laplanders* have any of these marks; so that it is without any just foundation that the species of the *Laplanders* and *Samoieds* have been confounded. There are many more different races of men than are thought of; those of the *Samoieds* and *Hottentots* seem to be the two extremes of our continent; and, if we attend to the black breasts of the *Samoied* women, and the apron nature has given the *Hottentot* women, and which descends to the half of their thighs, we shall have some idea of the varieties of our animal species.

The morality of the *Samoieds* is equally singular with their physics. They pay no worship to the Supreme Being: their religion is a sort of Manicheism, or rather the ancient religion of the Magi, in the one point of acknowledging a good and bad principle. The horrid climate they dwell in, seems, in some respects, to excuse this belief, so ancient among so many people, and so natural to the ignorant and unfortunate. Theft and murder are not heard of among them: being almost without passions, they are without injustice. They have no terms in their language to express vice and virtue. Their extreme simplicity has not yet permitted them to form abstracted notions; sentiment alone directs them; and it is, perhaps, an incontestible proof that men love justice by instinct, when their passions do not blind them. Some of these savages were persuaded to suffer themselves to be conducted to *Moscow*; every thing there struck them with admiration: the emperor they regarded as their god, and submitted to give him yearly an offering of two fables per each inhabitant. Some colonies were soon established beyond the *Oby* and the *Irtish*, and even forts were built there. A *Cossack* was sent into the country in 1595, and conquered it for the czars, with some soldiers and artillery, as *Cortez* subdued *Mexico*; but he scarce conquered any thing more than desarts.

At the confluence of the rivers *Irtish* and *Tobol*, a small habitation was found by the *Russians*, which they converted, since their conquest, into the city of *Tobolskoy*, the capital of *Siberia*, at present considerable. It contains about 15,000 inhabitants. The clergy consist of about fifty monks, or priests. There was once a good trade from this place to *China*, by caravans; but the mutual knavery of the *Russians* and *Chinese* merchants soon reduced it to a languishing state; and some differences which arose between the two powers, have since totally destroyed it. These differences were occasioned by a revolution which happened among the *Zungore Calmucs*, after the death of *Galdan-Tcherin*, in 1746. *Galdan Tcherin* was kan of the nation which inhabited that part of *Northern-Tartary* which is situated between *Siberia* and *China*. This nation admitted no sovereign but its kan, and upon the death of *Galdan-Tcherin*, a civil war broke out amongst several competitors to succeed him. The *Chinese*, who dreaded the power of this nation, which was become formidable to all its neighbours, contrived first to weaken it on this occasion, by favouring each of the competitors by turns, and then to fall upon the conqueror, and destroy his power at once. The name of this unhappy prince was *Amoursaman*; and the wretched remains of this once mighty nation, consisting of about 20,000 families, took shelter under the protection of *Russia*, upon the banks of the *Volga*. *Amoursaman*, after having wandered from place to place, at last retired to the frontiers of *Siberia*, in 1757, where he died of the small pox in 1760. The *Chinese*, as soon as they heard he had retired to *Siberia*, demanded that he should be delivered up, or, as the *Russians* say, that he should be confined for life. He continued for some time at *Tobolskoy* before his death, and his body was sent to the frontiers of *Siberia*, whither the *Chinese* sent commissioners more than once to examine it. Two *Calmuc* ambassadors, who had been sent to *Petersburgh* whilst *Amoursaman* was still living, learnt, on their return to *Tobolskoy*, that their nation was no longer existing.

*Tobolskoy,*  
capital of *Siberia*.

Revolution  
among the  
*Calmucs*.

Who would believe it, that this country was, for a long time, the abode of the same *Huns* who ravaged all as far as *Rome*, under *Attila*, and that these *Huns* came from the north of *China*? The *Usbec-Tartars* succeeded the *Huns*, and the *Russians* the *Usbecs*. These savage countries were disputed, after the manner that nations exterminated each other for more fertile. *Siberia* was formerly better peopled than it is, especially towards the south; some sepulchral monuments and ruins are a sufficient argument that it was so.

ALL this part of the world, from the sixtieth degree, or thereabouts, to the mountains, eternally frozen, which bound the north seas, resemble in nothing the regions of the temperate zone. The earth does not afford the same plants and animals, nor the lakes and rivers the same fish. The ridge of the *Verchaturia* mountains, which may be considered as a branch of *Mount Caucasus*, commencing to the southward, and separating *Asia* from *Europe* quite to the *Frozen Sea*, is no where higher than from fifty to eighty fathoms; but the declivity is very steep, and the summit is covered with pine, birch, and fir. The way over these mountains is very frightful, and by night extremely dangerous; for if the sledge deviates ever so little from the beaten track, the unfortunate traveller will inevitably be buried in a gulph of snow. Here there is seldom any sign of a more clement season, not

*Verchaturia*  
mountains.



so much as by the flight of a bird ; for even the pies and crows, which abound through all *Russia*, abandon these horrid deserts, where nature herself seems benumbed, and it is only by the traces of the sledge that the country is known to be inhabited. The gloom of desolation surrounds it on every side, and a horrid silence, which is never broken but by the outcries of those that suffer from the perils of the way. The inhabitants are shut up in their hovels nine months in the year ; the snow appears upon the mountains in the beginning of *September*, and so great a quantity descends in a short time afterwards, as to leave scarce any traces of a habitation upon them. The inhabitants are then obliged to break a way through it, and it seldom begins to thaw there till the middle of *April* ; and though it gives somewhat sooner in the plain, it does not totally disappear till the end of *May* ; so that the severity of the winter is suspended only three months in the year, during which time, however, they sow rye, oats, barley, and pease, which they get in by the end of *August* ; but none of them are perfectly ripe.

*Inhabitants  
described.*

THE inhabitants of this country, for the most part, profess the religion of the *Greek* church, but with a fanaticism that seems gradually to increase with the distance from the capital. As their state and situation do not admit the indulgence of artificial wants, their desires are necessarily few ; they have neither manufacture nor commerce ; their provision is very bad, and therefore easily procured, consisting of dry or stinking fish, pease, and a coarse black kind of bread, made of rye ; their drink is a wretched kind of beer, and a liquor they call *quas*, which is no other than water fermented with bran, and then mixed with a small quantity of mea'. They live in total idleness and inactivity, shut up in their stoves, the extreme nastiness of which is not to be conceived. They are, however, fond of their condition, and hate the thoughts of stirring out of their dunghill, especially to bear arms ; but, if forced into the service, brandy, and the fear of punishment, will make them tolerable soldiers. The unwholesomeness and inconvenience of their hovels are greatly increased by the severity of the winter, which prevents their communication with the fresh air ; their windows are seldom more than a foot wide, and six inches high ; and they are also deprived of the light of the sun all the while he is passing through the southern signs ; nor have they any artificial light but by splinters of birch-wood, which they set on fire, and stick up in the chinks of the floor : this practice is, indeed, common through all *Russia*, and frequently causes fires, which almost immediately spread over half a town, as the houses are all built of wood, except in the cities and principal towns. But, notwithstanding all this inactivity, confinement, and nastiness, they enjoy robust and uninterrupted health ; so effectually does perpetual temperance counter-balance all that can weigh against health and life. There is scarce one amongst them that is weakly or deformed, and their manner of education secures to them this good fortune. The child, as soon as born, is laid upon a heap of straw or old rags, in a basket, where it sprawls about, and stretches its limbs, without any restraint ; it is nourished with milk, by means of a horn which is fitted to a cow's-teats, but sometimes suckled by the mother ; the basket is hung at the end of a long elastic pole, so that it may easily be put in motion, and the child rocked as in a cradle ; but before it can go alone, it is placed upon the ground, where it rolls about at pleasure, till it learns first to stand, and then to totter along, with nothing to cover it but a shirt, which scarce reaches to the middle of the thigh. By this management their children walk sooner than ours can stand alone, and, as soon as they are able, are suffered to run about, and, at the end of the winter, are playing in the road in the midst of the snow, while the weather is still so cold, that the traveller is afraid of getting out of his sledge, though covered with fur from head to foot. They are of a large stature, extremely muscular and strong, and live longer than the inhabitants of any other known part of the world. This, however, is not because their situation, upon the whole, is favourable to life in the tender years of infancy, but it is rather the reverse ; for all the children who are not strong by constitution, die soon, and none are reared but those who are born with the greatest natural advantages. More than two-thirds of the children that are born here die in their infancy, and it is common to find but three or four alive, in families that have had sixteen or eighteen. Many other causes concur gradually to depopulate the villages that are scattered through this vast desert. The small-pox frequently carries off half the inhabitants of one of these hamlets at a time, and sometimes a greater proportion ; the scurvy is also very fatal among them ; and where they can procure spirituous liquors, the inroads of disease and mortality are in proportion to their want of the advantages which makes intemperance less fatal in other places. The venereal disease also makes great havock among these unhappy wretches, to whom the method of cure is wholly unknown ; it prevails so much in *Siberia* and *Northern-Tartary*, that there is great reason to believe it will at length depopulate the country. The manners of the people of *Tobolskoy* are rather more corrupt than those that live dispersed in the country. The women of all ranks and ages paint here, and are in general handsome, but have not that feminine softness which is the principal charm of the sex.



- a BELOW the country of the *Semiréts*, along the river *Oby*, lies that of the *Ostiacs*: they are quite different from the *Semiréts*, except that, like them, and the men of the primitive ages of the world, they are hunters, shepherds, and fishermen. Some of them are without religion, as living separate; others, composing hords, have a kind of worship, and make vows to the principal object of their wants: they adore a sheep's-skin, because no other sort of cattle is more necessary to them. The same way the ancient *Egyptian* husbandmen made choice of an ox, to adore, in the emblem of this animal, the divinity that produced it for man's use. The *Ostiacs* have also other idols, of which neither the origin nor worship does deserve our attention, any more than their adorers. Some of them have been converted to Christianity about the year 1712; but they are such Christians as the grossest peasants, without knowing what they are. Several authors pretend, that this people came originally from the *Great Permia*; but this *Great Permia* is almost a desert. Why should its inhabitants tattle so far off, and so indifferently? These obscurities are not worth our researches. Every people that has not cultivated the arts, ought to be condemned to oblivion. It is particularly among these *Ostiacs*, and the *Burates* and *Jakutes*, their neighbours, that the ivory is often found in the ground, of which the origin cannot be accounted for without having recourse to the Universal Deluge. Some believe it to be a fossil ivory, others, the teeth of a sort of elephant, whereof the race is destroyed. In what country do we not find natural productions, which equally astonish and confound philosophy? Several mountains of these countries abound with the amianthus, or that incombustible flax, of which sometimes cloth is made, and sometimes a kind of paper. The *Burates*, another people not yet made Christians, live to the south of the *Ostiacs*; and eastward are several hords not yet entirely subjected. None of these people have the least knowledge of the calendar; they reckon their time by snows, and not by the apparent course of the sun. As it snows regularly, and for a long time, every winter, they say, I am so many snows old, as we say so many years old.

*Ostiacs and Burates.*

- d THE Swedish officer *Stralenberg*, who had been made prisoner at the battle of *Pultowa*, and spent fifteen years in *Siberia*, all parts of which he had visited, says, that there are still some remains of an ancient people, whose skin is partly coloured and spotted, and that he had seen men of that race. This fact has been confirmed by some *Russians* born at *Tobolskoy*. It seems, that the variety of the human species has much diminished; we find but few of these singular races, which, probably, others have exterminated: for example, there are very few of the white *Moors*, whereof one was presented, some time ago, to the Academy of Sciences at *Paris*. The same may be said of several animals, whose species is become very rare.

- e THIS country was called *Siberia*, only since its conquest by the *Russians*, from a *Sclavonic* word, signifying a prison, having been made such on account of its extreme coldness and barrenness. The prisoners of state who are banished here, some during life, some for a term of years, according to their crimes, or pleasure of the czars, either without any, or with a very small allowance, as, perhaps, a penny a day, are obliged to shoot for their living, or starve. They are, besides, obliged to bring in weekly a certain quantity of furs as a tribute to the czar, else they are severely punished by task-masters set purposely over them. They must also be very careful, that the furs have no holes in them; and this makes them exceeding dexterous in shooting those creatures only in the head, and with a single ball.

*Siberia, whence denominated.*

- f ALL the southern parts of these countries are peopled by numerous hords of *Tartars*. The ancient *Turks* passed out of this *Tartary* to conquer all the territories they are now in possession of. The *Calmuks*, the *Moguls*, are the same *Scythians*, who, headed by *Madies*, seized upon the *Upper-Asia*, and conquered *Cyaxares*, king of the *Medes*. These also are they whom *Gengis-Kan* and his children led afterwards into *Germany*, and who formed the *Mogul-empire* under *Tamerlane*. These people are a great example of the changes that have happened among all nations. Some of their hords, far from being formidable, are become vassals of *Russia*. Such is a nation of *Calmuks* that dwells between *Siberia* and the *Caspian Sea*. Here were found in 1720, a subterraneous house of stone, urns, lamps, ear pendants, an equestrian statue of an Oriental prince, with a diadem on his head; two women sitting on thrones; a roll of manuscripts, sent by *Peter the Great*, to the Academy of Inscriptions at *Paris*, and found to be in the language of *Tibet*. All these were illustrious testimonies that the arts once inhabited this country, now barbarous; and they were also sufficient proofs of what *Peter the Great* was often heard to say, that the arts had made the tour of the world.

- g KAMTSCHATKA is the last province of *Siberia*. It was long known by that name to the geographers of former times: but so little were they acquainted with its situation, that they believed it to be joined to *Jesso*; whereas a large sea, interspersed with many islands, lies between the two countries. At present, *Kamtchatka* is known to be that great peninsula

*Kamtchatka described.*



which makes the boundary of *Asia* to the north-east, stretching from north to south about 7 deg. 30 min. It begins at the rivers *Pustai* and *Anapbo*, lying in the latitude of 59 deg. 30 min. The first runs into the *Penschinska-Sea*, and the other to the eastward. At these places the isthmus is so narrow, that the sea may, in fair weather, be seen on both sides from the hills in the middle. As the country runs broader towards the north, this place may be reckoned the isthmus that joins the peninsula to the main land.

THE natives of this country are divided into three different people; the *Kamtshatkans*, *Koreki*, and *Kuriles*. The *Kamtshatkans* live upon the south-side of the promontory of *Kamtshatka*: The *Koreki* inhabit the northern parts, on the coast of the *Penschinska Sea*, and round the eastern ocean, almost to *Anadir*: The *Kuriles* inhabit the islands in that sea, reaching as far as those of *Japan*. They are all as wild as the country itself. Some of them have no fixed habitations, but wander from place to place with their herds of rein-deer; others have settled habitations, and reside upon the banks of the rivers, and the sea-shore, living upon fish and sea-animals, and such herbs as grow upon the shore. The former dwell in huts, covered with deer-skins; the latter in places dug out of the earth; both in a very barbarous manner. Their dispositions and tempers are rough, and they are intirely ignorant of letters or religion.

It is very probable, that the *Kamtshatkans* lived formerly in *Mungalia*, beyond the river *Amur*, and made one people with the *Mungals*, which appears from their having several words common to the *Mungal Chinese* language, and their terminations in *ong*, *ing*, *cang*, *chin*, *cha*, *kfi*, *kfung*. But not to insist upon the language only, both are of a low stature, swarthy, have black hair, a broad face, sharp nose, eyes sunk in, eye brows small and thin, a hanging belly, slender legs and arms; and both are remarkable for cowardice, boasting, and slavishness to people who use them hard, and for their obstinacy and contempt of those who treat them with gentleness.

BEFORE the *Russian* conquest, they lived in perfect freedom, having no chief, being subject to no law, nor paying any taxes; the old men, or those who were remarkable for their bravery, bearing the principal authority in their villages, though none had any right to command or inflict punishment. They resemble the other inhabitants of *Siberia*; but differ in this, that their faces are not so long as the other *Siberians*, their cheeks stand more out, their teeth are thick, their mouth large, their stature middling, and their shoulders broad, particularly those who inhabit the sea-coast.

THEIR manner of living is slovenly to the last degree; they never wash their hands or face, nor cut their nails; they eat out of the same dish with the dogs, which they never wash; every thing about them stinks of fish; they never comb their heads, but both men and women plait their hair in two locks, binding the ends with small cords. When any hair starts out, they sew it with threads to make it lie close; by this means, they have such a quantity of vermin, that they scrape them off by handfuls, and are nasty enough to eat them. Those that have not a sufficient stock of natural hair wear false locks, and sometimes as much as weigh ten pounds, which makes their heads look like a haycock.

THEY have extraordinary notions of God, of sins, and of good actions. They have filled almost every place in heaven and earth with different spirits, which they both worship and fear more than God, because, in case of troubles and misfortunes, they curse and blaspheme him. Their chief happiness consists in idleness and gratifying their natural lusts and appetites. They have no notion of riches, fame, or honour; therefore covetousness, ambition, and pride, are unknown among them. Their trade is likewise not so much calculated for the acquisition of riches, as for procuring the necessaries and conveniencies of life. They sell the *Koreki* fables, fox and white dog-skins, dried mushrooms, or such trifles; and receive in exchange, cloaths made of deer-skins and other hides. Among themselves they exchange what they abound with for what they want, as dogs, boats, dishes, troughs, nets, hemp, yarn, and provisions. This kind of barter is carried on under a great shew of friendship; for when one wants any thing that another has, he goes freely to visit him, and without any ceremony makes known his wants, though, perhaps, he never had any acquaintance with that person before. The landlord is obliged to behave according to the custom of the country, and gives his guest whatever he has occasion for. He afterwards returns the visit, and must be received in the same manner; so that both parties have their wants supplied.

THOUGH their manner of living is most nasty, and their actions most stupid, yet they think themselves the happiest people in the world, and look upon the *Russians* who are settled among them with contempt: however, this notion begins to change at present; for the old people, who are confirmed in their customs, drop off, and the young ones, being converted to the Christian religion, adopt the customs of the *Russians*, and despise the barbarity and superstition of their ancestors.



a In every ostrog, or large village, by order of her late Imperial majesty *Elizabeth*, is appointed a chief, who is sole judge in all causes, except those of life and death; and not only these chiefs, but even the common people, have their chapels for public worship. Schools are also erected in almost every village, to which the *Kamtschatkans* send their children with pleasure. By these means, their barbarity, very probably, will, in a short time, be rooted out.

In a late expedition of the *Russians* to this country, the sea-officers delineated exactly all the eastern coast of *Kamtschatka*, as far as the cape of *Tchukotskoi*, all the western to the *Penbinska* gulph, and from *Ochotokoy* to the river *Amur*; they described the islands lying between *Japan* and *Kamtschatka*, and also those between *Kamtschatka* and *America*.

b At the same time, the gentlemen of the Academy undertook to determine the situation of *Kamtschatka* by astronomical observations, and to remark every thing worthy of notice in the civil and natural history of the country and places adjacent.

A COSSAC officer went first by land from *Siberia* to *Kamtschatka*, in 1701, by order of *Peter the Great*, who, after the unfortunate affair of *Narva*, still extended his care from one extremity of the continent to the other. Afterwards, in 1725, some time before death surprised him in the midst of his great projects, he sent the *Danish* captain *Bering* with express orders to go by the sea of *Kamtschatka* to the land of *America*, if the enterprize was practicable. *Bering* could not succeed in his first navigation. The empress *Anne* sent him again in 1733. *Spengenberg*, a captain of a ship, who was appointed to keep company

*Expedition for  
discovering  
America.*

c in this voyage, set out the first from *Kamtschatka*, but could not put to sea till 1739, by reason of the time required to arrive at the port where they were to embark, and build and fit out ships with all necessaries. *Spengenberg* penetrated as far as the north of *Japan*, through a streight formed by a long chain of isles, and returned, without any farther discovery than this passage.

In 1741, *Bering* sailed through this sea, accompanied by the astronomer *De l'Isle de la Croyer*, of the *De l'Isle* family, which has produced such learned geographers. Another captain went also on the discovery. *Bering* and he arrived at the coasts of *America*, on the north of *California*. This passage, so long sought for through the North-seas, was, therefore, at last discovered, but no succour nor refreshments were found on these desert d coasts. Fresh water failed them, and the scurvy carried off a part of the ship's crew. They saw, for the space of an hundred miles, the north shores of *California*, and they perceived copper canoes, which carried men like the *Canadians*. All was fruitless. *Bering* died in an island to which he gave his name. The other captain, finding himself nearer *California*, landed ten of his men, but they never appeared again. The captain, after expecting them in vain, was obliged to return to *Kamtschatka*, and *De l'Isle* expired as he just got to land. These disasters are the destiny of almost all the first attempts on the North seas. It is not yet known what benefit will be derived from such painful and dangerous discoveries. Hereafter, in describing *America*, we shall have occasion to speak of that part of it which lies nearest to *Kamtschatka*.

e We have specified whatever composes in general the dominions of *Asiatic-Russia*. All the great parts of the *Russian* empire have been united at different times, as it has happened in all the other kingdoms of the world. *Scythians*, *Huns*, *Massagetes*, *Sclavonians*, *Cimbrians*, *Getes*, *Sarmatians*, are now the subjects of the czars. The *Russians* are, properly speaking, the ancient *Roxelans*, or *Sclavonians*.

AFTER a few cursory reflections, we shall find, that the greater part of other states are composed in this manner. *France* is an assemblage of *Goths*, *Danes*, called *Normans*, septentrional *Germans*, called *Burgundians*, *Franks*, *Allemands*, and some *Romans*, mixed with the ancient *Celts*. *Great Britain* and *Ireland* are much the same way compounded, except that the blood of the *Scots*, *Irish*, and *Welsh*, remains still more unmixed. In *Rome*, f and in *Italy*, are several families descended from the people of the North, as *Lombards*, *Goths*, *Teutons*, and *Cimbrians*; and now none of the ancient *Romans* are known in this country. The *Spaniards* are a race of *Arabs*, *Carthaginians*, *Jews*, *Tyrians*, *Visigoths*, and *Vandals*, incorporated with the inhabitants of the country. When there is such a mixture of nations, it is long before they can be civilized, or even brought to form their language. Some admit of being polished sooner, others later. Police and arts are established with so much difficulty, and revolutions ruin so frequently the commenced edifice, that there is good reason to be astonished, that the greater part of nations do not live like *Tartars*.



## Of the Empires of China and Japan.

Situation,  
boundaries,  
and extent of  
China.

THE vast, ancient, and opulent empire of *China*, situate on the most eastern verge of the *Asiatic* continent, is bounded on the north by east and west *Tartary*, from which it is divided by a prodigious wall of 1500 miles in length, and partly by high, craggy, and inaccessible mountains. On the east it is bounded by the Eastern ocean, on the west by part of the Mogul's empire, and *India extra Gangem*, from which it is parted by ridges of other high mountains and sandy deserts; and on the south, partly by the kingdoms of *Lao*, *Tonquin*, *Ava*, and *Cochin-China*, and partly by the Southern ocean, or *Indian-Sea*, which flows between it and the *Philippine-Islands*. It is of such great extent, that it reaches in latitude from 18 to almost 43 degrees, so that its utmost length, including the island of *Hay-nan*, will be 1800 miles, and its breadth, measured from the sea-port town *Nimpo*, in the province of *Che-kien*, to the utmost boundaries of *Su-chuen*, will be 1260.

Temperature  
and soil.

THE country is for the most part temperate, except towards the northern parts, which are intolerably cold, not so much from their situation, as from the ridges of mountains that run along them, which are excessive high, and commonly covered with deep snows. The soil is different, according to the diversity of climates, and the face of the country, in some parts mountainous, in others champaign; but the inhabitants are such expert and diligent masters of agriculture, that they leave no spot uncultivated. As they abound with artificial canals and reservoirs for watering and fertilizing their low lands, so they have been no less industrious with respect to their high ones; first, by levelling a great many of them, whenever the labour and number of hands could compass it to advantage: secondly, by levelling and flattening the very summits of many of their mountains, in order to make them bear variety of grain, pulse, and the like; and thirdly, by dividing their declivities into as many flat stages as they can conveniently bear; by which means the waters, whether of rain and dew, or of the springs that come down from the tops, have a proper time to soak into the ground, and to nourish the sown seed, instead of rooting it up and washing it down, as it happens in other countries, by the violence of their descent along their natural declivity. Nothing can be more agreeable than to view, from the lower vallies, those sides of the mountains cut into such a number of terraces one over the other, and all covered up to the top with variety of corn and fruits. These mountains are nothing near so hard and stony as ours, but rather of a soft porous nature, and what is still more surprizing, may be dug with ease some hundreds of feet deep; so that the salts which transpire through their pores, prove a constant and excellent manure to these artificial grounds: but where the mountains are rocky, they content themselves with planting them with all sorts of fruit, and other trees, according to the nature of the ground. They are no less curious and careful in improving every sort by a proper manure; and thus, as well by their abundance of water, as warmth of the climate, their ground yields in some provinces two, and sometimes three, plentiful harvests in a year.

Product.

THE product of the country is corn and grain of all sorts, in great plenty; with silk, cotton, honey, wax, fruits of all the sorts we have in *Europe*, and several others, all exquisite to the sight and taste, not known amongst us. Their oranges, grapes, figs, pomegranates, ananas, and many others, are in as great perfection as in any part of *India*. Their rich pasture-grounds breed prodigious numbers of cattle. Game is in great plenty and variety, particularly bears, boars, buffaloes, deer of several kinds, whose skins are a profitable commodity. Besides these, there are a number of elephants, tygers, fierce, and extremely dangerous, seeking their prey commonly in large droves; and leopards, with various kinds of other wild creatures, not to be found in many other countries. The musk-cat, which carries that noble perfume in a kind of bladder under its navel, is caught here, and is in great esteem. They have horses, camels, oxen, swine, in no less abundance than in other countries; their mules in particular, which are wild, are fitter for eating than for other uses. Their birds are eagles, cranes, storks, birds of paradise, pelicans, peacocks, pheasants, geese, swans, ducks, and a numberless variety of others. As for fish, there can be no doubt but that the multitude of rivers, canals, and lakes, as well as the sea that runs along the south east coast of the country, must supply them with the greatest plenty and variety of it. Besides these, most of the great and rich people have large canals and ponds stocked with them for their own use; but the most curious in these kinds of fish-ponds, adorn them with one particular kind, which they call gold and silver-fish from their colour.



- a THIS strange and beautiful species is about the length of one's finger, and thick in proportion. The male is of a delicate red from the head to the middle, and from thence to the tail of a bright colour, which by far exceeds the finest gilding. The female is white, and has a tail like a nosegay, which, with part of its body, shines like polished silver. They generally swim near the surface of the water, and give a most exquisite resplendency and variety to it, and they multiply so fast, that if care be not taken of their eggs, which float upon the water, the whole surface will be covered with them. These eggs are exceedingly tender, and easily killed by heat or cold, strong smells, thunder, or the report of a cannon; the way of preserving them is to take them gently out of the water, and put them in small vessels, well sheltered from wind, rain, and cold, till they are hatched by the sun, and grown to about an inch in length; then, with safety, they may be removed into their primitive reservoirs, where they are justly admired as a wonder of nature.

*Gold and silver fish.*

- b THE *Chinese* have also plenty of sugar, tobacco, and oil, extracted not from olives but from seeds; vast quantities of olives of a different kind from ours, yet of a fine taste, tho' either unfit to produce, or not thought worth extracting oil from; and a variety of excellent wines, some from grapes, others from rice, others from quinces and other fruits, palm, and other trees. Camphire, ebony, sanders-wood, oak, pine, and other lofty and strait trees, are found in great abundance, especially on those mountains, which are not otherwise cultivated. The low country abounds with variety of canes, junks, and bamboes of exquisite beauty, together with vast quantities of medicinal roots, such as china-root, rhubarb, gen-sen, and many more; and, among a vast variety of shrubs, that so much esteemed of late in *Europe*, called tea.

*Other products.*

- c ALL teas are the leaf of one and the same shrub; the supposition that green tea is from one kind of tree, and bohea from another, is a vulgar error; for they differ only as malt may do in being higher or slack dried, or being finer or coarser. The tea shrub is of the kind of our dog-tree, and its leaf of an austere, bitter, astringent taste, without any aromatic warmth. It has very little oil in it, and that which it has is of the resinous kind, and is narcotic and stupefactive. It has also but very little salt, and that is of the fixed kind. Besides the general division of teas into two sorts, green and bohea, they are differently d denominated and known by sub distinctions, according to the provinces or districts where they grow, the period of ripeness when gathered, the size of the leaf, or the method of curing; as Hyson, Imperial, Bloom, Congo, Singlo, Souchong, &c. The leaves, when immediately pulled from the shrub, are so extremely bitter, as to yield an infusion which is very disagreeable to the taste; therefore, to abate this unpleasing quality, the people, who are appointed in *China* to prepare them for use, infuse them, soon after collecting, for a certain time in water, by which a portion of their bitter resinous particles being taken away, they become to be so mild as to be pleasant, and very engaging to the palate. After being infused, they are dried in the following manner: the bohea, which is made from the leaves when full ripe, and ready to fall from the tree spontaneously, being thus brought e to a proper flavour by infusion, is immediately dried by the sun, or fire, so that it may be preserved for use; therefore, as the tree or shrub which yielded it, incurs no detriment from the leaves being pulled off, as they were in a deciduous state, this tea can be afforded at a cheaper price than the green; and this will account for the leaves of the bohea being darker in colour, and smaller in breadth: because, being almost dry when they are collected, and then steeped in water, in curing they are higher dried, and so more contracted and corrugated than the green tea. This, on the contrary, is pulled from the same shrub in a more violent way, just as the leaf is expanded to full maturity; whereby the tree which produces it suffers so much detriment, that two or three years of respite are allowed it f to recover its pristine vigour; and the leaves it produces, in those years of recovery, are collected when they fall, and prepared for the bohea; on which account the green tea is sold at a higher price than the bohea; and the bloom tea still much dearer than either. Green tea also becomes dearer by a more expensive preparation; for as soon as it is reduced to a proper pitch of flavour by the previous infusion in water, it is immediately exposed to the warm rays of the sun, and carefully and assiduously turned for a convenient time; after which it is strewed upon broad sheets of copper laid upon embers, where it is rolled and turned by the hands of proper persons, who are armed with gloves of leather to protect them from the mischief, to which they have found by experience, they are in this business exposed, by the metallic efflorescence from which the green tea derives its more agreeable colour; and, according to general, but false estimation, its superior excellency over the bohea; for, in things of this sort, the delusion or infatuation is almost universal, which prevails among *Asiatics* and *Europeans* indiscriminately, and engages them g to make the consideration of health subservient to the gratification of the palate, and the delights of the eye: therefore, the verdant beauty of this artificial colour is more alluring, and more esteemed, though often pernicious, than the brown hue of the bohea, which

*Tea.*



is prepared in a manner more consistent with the simplicity of nature, and the safety of health. The *Chinese* very rarely drink the green tea; and it is observable, that those amongst them who drink it to any excess become tabid, and die emaciated. In short, the drinking of tea in general may be reckoned a great cause of the manifest effeminacy and diminutiveness of their persons; for what other reason can we assign so probable, for the obvious constitutional difference between them and the more robust people, who live almost under the same latitude? If we also compare the nature of tea with the nature of *English* diet, no one can think it a proper vegetable for us, having no parts fit to be assimilated to our bodies; its essential salt does not hold moisture enough to be united with the body of an animal; its oil is but very little, and that of the opiate kind; and therefore, it is so far from being nutritive, that it irritates and frets the nerves and fibres, exciting the expulsive faculty, so that the body may be lessened and weakened, but cannot be increased and strengthened by it. And, indeed, the nervous complaints, so frequent of late years, especially among the weaker sex, may be chiefly attributed to the use of this exotic beverage.

Brackish waters,  
and of  
strange colours.

THE *Chinese*, it is said, have been obliged to the use of tea for their common drink, ever since they had found by experiment, that nothing else could correct so well their waters, which are almost every where brackish. The most considerable of those waters are, the *Ky-am*, or blue-river, which rises in the kingdom of *Tibet*, and crosses the country from east to west; the *Ho-ambo*, or yellow river, because, after rains especially, it is of that colour, and extremely muddy. It rises near the extremity of the mountains, which divide the province of *Su-chan* from *Tartary*, near the frontiers of the Mogul, and runs a course of above 1900 miles. There are many other great rivers of the same nature, alike rapid and muddy; some of which have great cataracts of a vast height, and make a noise like continued claps of thunder. There is one always as red as blood, another that glitters by night, occasioned by the great quantity of precious stones contained in it, from which it is stiled the pearl-river. There is a third near *Fomin*, which turns blue in harvest, at which time the inhabitants are used to dye that colour. We are told of another near *Pan-gau*, whose waters are so light, that they will bear no timber: those of another near *Chingtien* are said to be sweet-scented; and that called *Kin-xa*, or *Golden River*, is so named from its great quantity of gold sand. There is one in the province of *Fokien*, whose water is green, and is affirmed to turn iron into copper; those who are witnesses of the fact may believe it. That called *Xo* is said to cure divers diseases; but the most remarkable is one that yearly rises upon a certain day, with such a prodigious high tide before the city of *Hang-chen*, that multitudes of people crowd from all parts, to see so surprising a phenomenon, which neither their own, nor *European* philosophers, it is said, have yet accounted for. These waters supply the people of the inland parts with salt, which is made by paring off the superficial earth of the muddy shores, drying it in the sun, rubbing it small, and throwing it into a pit, which they cover with salt water, and afterwards draining it into jars, and boiling it till they bring it to a proper consistence; but in the maritime parts, they make salt of sea-water, after the usual way.

Mines, minerals,  
fossils,  
&c.

THE mountains of *China* abound with variety of metals and minerals; among the former they have several mines of gold and silver; but their monarchs, they pretend, will not suffer the mines of silver to be wrought, that the people should not be forced to such slavish work: but it is more probable that they either keep them in case of need, or rather perhaps to keep down the price of labour, which would rise in proportion to the quantity of circulating money. Their workmen in general have not above five farthings sterling per day, and this is a sufficient reason for the circulation of such immense quantities of their produce and manufactures throughout the world.

As to the mines of gold, it seems, nothing more is done to them than gathering such particles as are washed down by the rivers, and are found sticking on the banks, or caught by fleeces, and other strainers laid across the water. Great multitudes of people live wholly upon this business, and, it is said, vast quantities of that metal are washed down from the mountains, and that even some is found among the sand and mud of those rivers. Their mountains have also mines of copper, lead, iron, and quicksilver, which are manufactured in great quantities, and with great neatness and curiosity. Besides these, they have some others, which are mixed in a peculiar manner, and therefore kept as a great secret among them; such, for instance, is that famed one, called *tonbaga*, or *donbaga*, which is of the colour of very pale brass, or a dull kind of tin; they ascribe several extraordinary virtues to it, particularly of expelling poison, stopping hemorrhages, and the like, by only wearing a ring or necklace made of it. Among other articles produced in their mountains, we may reckon likewise plenty of pit-coal, many salts, excellent quarries of stone, some of marble, and so curiously variegated with landships and other natural resemblances, as if drawn by design with a pencil. Several other sorts are esteemed for their fine colour and hardness, some of which bear a noble lustre like diamonds; and others, when burnt, yield



a yield a metal, of which they make swords and other weapons. We are told of others of a precious kind, shaped like a swallow, and others of great efficacy in divers diseases.

THE province of *Quang si* is famed for a yellow earth, which has the virtue of expelling poison, and curing by external application the bite of venomous creatures. Some sorts of earth they have of a fine vermilion colour, and others of a delicate white, which the ladies use for paints. In several places of the empire, they press a sort of lime from the bark of a tree, which is tough like pitch, and which, when mixed with proper colours, serves to paint their houses, cabinets, and other utensils, and has a fine lustre and smoothness like glass. This lime they call *giran*, but it is more commonly known amongst us under the name of japan-work, because that which comes from *Japan* far exceeds any that is made in *China*, in lustre, hardness, and fine variety of paintings. This secret the *Chinese* are so jealous of having discovered by foreigners, that they have poisoned several, and some of our nation, whom they suspected to have pried too narrowly into it.

Earths and other curious articles.

b BESIDES the common bees-wax, they have another sort, the clearest and whitest in the world, which is produced by an insect no bigger than a flea, on the top of the branches of some particular trees, where these little creatures lay their eggs, which in the spring turn into small worms. The proprietors of these trees gather this wax, and make it into cakes, which are quite transparent. The inhabitants of *Xantum* put these worms into large canes, and by selling them to the adjacent provinces, make a considerable profit of them.

Singular sort of wax.

c THE empire of *China* is divided into fifteen principal provinces, but most commonly into the following distinct parts or districts. 1. North of the great wall are, *Niuche*, *Corea*, and *Laotonge*, the chief towns of which are *Niuche*, *Patcheo*, and *Chinyam*. 2. Within the great wall and adjoining it are *Pekin*, *Xansi*, and *Xensi*; the chief towns, *Pekin*, *Tayan*, and *S-gam*. 3. On the coast of the *Chinese* sea; *Xantun*, *Nanking*, and *Chekian*; the chief towns, *Chinchis*, *Nanking*, *Nimpo*, and *Chusan*. 4. Midland, comprehending *Honan*, *Huquam*, and *Kiamsi*; the chief towns, *Honan*, *Toangfu*, and *Nankan*. 5. Southern, as *Fokien*, *Canton*, and *Quamsi*; the chief towns, *Fochen*, *Amoi*, *Canton*, and *Quelin*. 6. Western, as *Suchuen*, *Quecheu*, and *Yunam*; the chief towns, *Tchinteu*, *Queyang*, *Quecheu*, and *Yunam*. 7. The *Chinese* islands, which are *Formosa*, *Ainan*, *Macao*, and the *Bashee* islands, the chief towns of which are *Tambay*, *Lincato*, and *Macao*.

Division of China.

d CHINA was begun to be surveyed by the Jesuit missionaries the fourth of July 1708, and finished the first of January 1717. They determined the latitudes of above 500 cities by observations, and their longitudes by the method of triangles; being also assisted by maps and histories preserved in the tribunals of the cities, and the information of the mandarins, as well as the chiefs of the people through whose territories they passed.

Surveyed by the Jesuits.

THE cities and towns of *China* are all built in one form, as near as the ground will permit; that is, square. Two great streets, which cross one another in the middle of the town, divide it into four quarters; and from the center the four principal gates may be seen at once. The gates stand due east, west, north, and south. *Pekin*, the capital, consists of two cities joined in one, by the name of old and new: the old is the *Tartar*, and the new the *Chinese* city, which is the more populous. Both together are six leagues in circumference. *Pekin* is supposed to contain not less than two millions of inhabitants. Its walls are fifty cubits high, and defended by square towers about a bow-shot distance from one another. Every gate of the town has a fortress or redoubt built before it of equal height with the gate; the arches or gate-ways are built with marble, but the rest of the walls with brick. The emperor's palace stands in the middle of the *Tartar* city, and is an oblong square, about two miles in length, and one in breadth, defended by a good wall. Without the gates of every town there are usually two magnificent towers erected, and near each tower is a temple of idols, and another dedicated to the genius and guardian angel of the place. In almost every city are triumphal arches, built to the honour of some great men who have been benefactors of their country; and colleges and temples founded in memory of their great philosopher *Confucius*, where his precepts are taught. Without the gates of *Nanking* (formerly the capital of *China*, before the imperial residence took place at *Pekin*) there are two towers built alike in the form of a cone. One of them is called the porcelain tower, being faced therewith on the outside. It is of an octangular figure, contains nine stories, and is 200 feet high. Above the eighth story there is a cupola, which rises thirty feet higher than the tower, and on the top is a very large golden ball. This tower has stood above 300 years, appears very beautiful, and is said to be the best contrived and noblest structure in the East. There is scarce a city or village in the whole empire, especially in the southern provinces, but enjoys the benefit of some navigable river, lake, canal, or arm of the sea, insomuch that almost as many people live upon the water as on land. Wherever there is a town on shore, there is another of boats upon the water, and many people are born, live, and die upon the water, keeping hogs, poultry, dogs, and other domestic animals on board. Besides these vessels, there are a prodigious

Cities and towns described.

f Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI. B b



gious number of floats of timber perpetually going up the rivers and canals, which carry whole villages of people upon them. Some of these floats are a mile in length; the proprietors build little huts on them, where they live till they have disposed of their timber, which they carry sometimes a thousand miles by water; and thus every part of this extensive empire has an easy communication with the other, which is a vast advantage to trade.

Great wall.

THE great wall, which separates *China* from *Tartary*, begins in the province of *Xenfi*, which lies on the north-west of *China*, in about 38 degrees north latitude, and is carried over mountains and vallies, and terminates at the *Kang Sea*, between the provinces of *Pekin* and *Laotonge*. The whole course of it, with the windings, is about 1500 miles. It is almost all built with brick, and such well tempered mortar, that it has now stood about 1800 years, being very little decayed. It was built by the emperor *Chibohamzi*, to prevent the incursions of the *Tartars*. Its height is about thirty feet, and it is broad enough for eight people to ride abreast. It is fortified all along by square towers, at the distance of a mile from each other.

THE Jesuits have computed that there are in *China* 155 capital cities, 1312 of the second rank, 2357 fortified towns, ten millions of families, and fifty millions of people.

Name of China.

*CHINA* is reckoned by most geographers to have been the country of the ancient *Sinæ* mentioned by *Ptolemy*, and so called from one of its ancient monarchs, named *Chin*, or *Cina*, who is said to have reigned here above fifty years before the birth of *Christ*. But this country boasts a much older date; and though it might receive its name from that monarch, it had probably many others before, as it had since; for it is a maxim in this empire, that when the government falls from one family to another, the first prince of the new always gives his name to the whole country. We are also told, that there have been no less than twenty-two such families, who have each changed its name for their own. Some therefore think from thence, and with good reason, that it had the name of *China* from its fine produce of silk, which is here the finest in the world, and is manufactured in the finest manner and variety.

When and by whom discovered.

THE *Portuguese* discovered this remote and opulent country somewhat upwards of 200 years ago. It was, indeed, in some measure, known to the ancients, under the name of *Seres*, and some commerce was carried on between them; but the vast sandy deserts and inaccessible mountains that lie between it and *India*, its great distance from *Europe*, and the old *Chinese* policy of not admitting strangers among them, or suffering their own people to go into other countries, made it impossible for *Greeks*, *Romans*, or any other nation on this side the *Ganges*, to know any thing of this country, or its inhabitants, except what they might guess by the commodities brought from thence, which were but few in comparison to its present exports. 'Tis true, *Paul the Venetian's* account of *Cambalu*, which, in all probability, was the city of *Pekin*, and his mighty character of the cham and his subjects, is now by all applied to *China*; but it was then understood of *Tartary*, and so continued till the discovery of *China* by the *Portuguese*, who opened, by their vast improvements in navigation, a new way to, and commerce with it. They were so greatly surprised at its opulent condition, and the excellent genius and politeness of its inhabitants, considering them as a people that lived intirely within themselves, and had received no helps or instructions from other nations, that the reports they made of them at first appeared more like romance than truth. But we cannot be said to have been fully acquainted with the true state of the *Chinese* nation, till the zeal of the missionaries of the church of *Rome* excited them to go and preach the gospel among them. The Jesuits and others, who were first intended for this mission in 1580, being informed that the *Chinese* had but an imperfect insight into the mathematical sciences, took care, before they set out, to make themselves thorough masters of them, in order by that means to recommend themselves to the *Chinese* gentry and nobility, who shewed a particular fondness for that kind of study. Accordingly they took with them the best maps, globes, spheres, and other mathematical instruments; and, in a short time, shewed a skill in those sciences, especially astronomy and navigation, so far superior to that of the *Chinese*, that they easily introduced themselves into the acquaintance and favour of persons of the highest rank, the emperor not excepted, who raised some of them to the dignity of mandarins, or lords of the council; allotted them apartments in the royal palace, and gave them all manner of encouragement, even to a full permission of propagating their religion all over his dominions. It is therefore to these gentlemen that we are indebted for our present knowledge of *China*, though their accounts did not gain so universal a credit, many things having been thought exaggerated by them, till they had been for the most part confirmed to us by persons of our own, and other nations.

Original of the Chinese.

THE origin of the *Chinese* nation may be justly considered in the same light as the spring-head of the *Nile*, or other such rivers; and what their popular traditions say of it, deserves no less to be exploded by men of sense, since they pretend to an antiquity anterior,

not



- a not only to the flood, but even to the creation. Some of the translators of the *Chinese* history ascribe the foundation of this monarchy to *Fohi*, who is there said to have began his reign about 2952 years before *Christ*. This *Fohi* is affirmed to have been the first who reduced mankind into societies, and to have taught them agriculture and other social arts, which were afterwards improved by his successors. Among these, *Hoam-ti*, surnamed the *Yellow Emperor*, because he assumed that colour, since become peculiar to the imperial dignity, rectified the *Chinese* cycle, invented music and musical instruments, navigation, filth-ing, arms, and other arts. His queen, at the same time, is said to have invented the raising and feeding of silk-worms, and to have laid the foundation of that noble manufacture. These two are supposed to have reigned 2697 years before *Christ*. *Xao-Hao*, their successor, began to build cities, and to surround them with walls; and, for the more expeditious bringing together of proper materials for building, contrived the way of conveying them by carts drawn by oxen. He died, according to the same chronology, 2517 years before *Christ*; and his nephew and successor *Choven-Hio*, made a law, that none but the emperor of the world should sacrifice to the emperor of heaven. He reformed the calendar, and ordered it to begin at the nearest new moon to the spring season. *Ti-cho*, his nephew, who succeeded him 2457 years before *Christ*, is said to have been the inventor of vocal music, in which he received no small help from his four wives. These six princes were followed by the two famed emperors and law-givers, *Yo* and *Xoun*, from whom the *Chinese* received their civil and religious institutes. These two reigned 150 years, which joined to the reigns of the other six, make in all 737 years; and from these eight persons descended the imperial families, 1. Of *Hia*, of which there were seventeen emperors, who reigned 458 years. 2. Of *Xam*, including twenty-eight emperors and 644 years. 3. *Cheou*, thirty-five emperors, 873 years. 4. *Chin*, three emperors, forty-three years. 5. *Han*, twenty-seven emperors, 426 years. 6. *Hau-bun*, two emperors, forty-four years. 7. *Chin* II. fifteen emperors, 155 years. 8. *Soum*, seven emperors, fifty-nine years. 9. *Chi*, five emperors, twenty-three years. 10. *Leam*, four emperors, fifty-five years. 11. *Kin*, five emperors, thirty-two years. 12. *Soui*, three emperors, twenty-nine years. 13. *Tam*, twenty emperors, eighty-nine years. 14. *Heou-eam*, two emperors, ten years. 15. *Heou-tam*, four emperors, thirteen years. 16. *Heou-chin*, two emperors, eleven years. 17. *Heou-ban*, two emperors, four years. 18. *Heou-cheou*, three emperors, nine years. 19. *Soum* II. eighteen emperors, 329 years. 20. *Yoven*, nine emperors, eighty-nine years. 21. *Mim*, twenty-one emperors, 276 years. 22. *Chim*, two emperors, fifty-three years. This was the last family that reigned before the late conquest of *China* by one of the *Tartar* princes.
- b
- c
- d

M. de *Voltaire* tells us, <sup>p</sup> that the *Chinese* history is incontestible, being founded on celestial observations, and traced by the most accurate chronology, so high as an eclipse calculated 2155 years before our vulgar æra, which the reverend missionaries skilled in mathematical learning have confirmed. To this account we can by no means assent, for these reasons.

- e FIRST, it is well known the *Chinese* make use of no letters, but represent words by arbitrary marks, which renders their characters too numerous to be retained by the memory, makes writing very tedious, and the knowledge of what is written to be attended with infinite obscurity and confusion, as the connection between these marks, and the words they represent, cannot be retained in books, but must be delivered down by oral tradition. The history and inventions of past ages must therefore frequently be unintelligible, and the learning and boasted antiquity of this nation, in many instances, extremely problematical.

*Voltaire's opinion concerning the antiquity of the Chinese, refuted.*

- SECONDLY, the *Chinese* themselves are not agreed in settling the antiquities of their country; for there are some who fix the original of their empire hundreds of thousands of years before the creation. This opinion prevails among the vulgar. Some make *Fohi* the founder of the kingdom 2952 years before the birth of *Christ*. Another set of learned men maintain, that the foundations of this kingdom were laid about 4025 years since by a certain prince named *Yas*. This last opinion is looked upon as an article of faith; and if a *Chinese* should publicly deny it, he would be esteemed an heretic, and severely punished. The Jesuits are obliged to adopt this opinion, upon pain of death, and obtained leave from the pope to stick to the Septuagint version, which agrees with it better than the *Hebrew*.
- f

- THIRDLY, the *Chinese* chronology is very uncertain and fictitious. Father *du Halde*, a zealous admirer of it, offers nothing in its defence, except an eclipse of the sun, which happened in the reign of *Chong-kang*, 2155 years before the commencement of the Christian æra. But M. *Maigrot*, bishop of *Koxon*, with great reason believes the chronology of ancient times among the *Chinese* to be very uncertain and precarious; as also that the *Chinese* annalist *Chubi* has adjusted both the years and eclipses solely according to his own
- g

<sup>p</sup> In his introduction to the General History and State of Europe.



fancy. Of this no one can doubt, who considers that the *Chinese* were little versed in astronomy, even when the Jesuits first came among them; and that they were so far from being able to calculate an eclipse, or even likely to make any celestial observations, 2155 years before the birth of *Christ*, that they probably knew as little then of any thing relating to eclipses, and the other heavenly phenomena, as the bulk of mankind, or even the most illiterate nations at present do.

FOURTHLY, if *China* had been so large, rich, and learned an empire as it is pretended, the *Persians* would most certainly not have remained in utter ignorance of it, when their emperors had made part of *India* tributary to them, which was a country contiguous to *China*; and yet we find that there was not the least intimation of this people till the time of *Alexander the Great*, who penetrated into *India*, and even then we find nothing of moment relating to them.

FIFTHLY, the *Chinese* observations of the heavens are frequently fictitious; for as father *Martini* informs us, the sun, according to the *Chinese*, had not set for ten years. Can any one be so sanguine as to believe this to be a real observation? Will not this invalidate their other observations, when they exceed all belief, or at least have not a proper degree of probability? Nothing is therefore more chimerical, than the conclusion drawn from the eclipse 2155 years before the birth of *Christ*, in support of an antiquity equally absurd and romantic.

SIXTHLY, the *Chinese* have no historical records, but only fragments of their classical or canonical books; and those, we may suppose, greatly corrupted: for the emperor *Sbi-wangti*, in the year before *Christ* 213, ordered all the copies of books in his empire, except those written by lawyers and physicians, to be burnt, which was done accordingly. Nay, he ordered many learned men to be buried alive the next year, lest they should invent a method of transmitting to posterity the historical memoirs of the empire, which he was resolved to annihilate.

SEVENTHLY, *Confucius* in his time complained of the want of genuine historical memoirs, and yet the Jesuits and modern *Chinese* pretend to give us authentic memoirs of the monarchs of *China* who lived 2000 years before that philosopher. This is a most absurd pretension, as evidently appears from the translation *M. Bayer* has given us of the *Chun Quieu* of *Confucius*. This contains a most crude, jejune account of the *Chinese* dynasties and reguli preceding his own age, and deserves not the name of an history. If the *Chun Quieu* be as old as *Confucius*, it was written about 500 years before the birth of *Christ*. If so learned a man could write no better, or had no better materials, what can we think of those who lived in the remotest ages? But there is the greatest reason to think that this book is far from being genuine, or coeval with *Confucius*: for the *Chinese* records were destroyed about 267 years after the death of *Confucius*; and we may justly believe that but a small part of his historical works is now remaining. This single remark is enough to destroy the authority of those romantic accounts of the first emperors of *China*, which the modern *Chinese* and their adherents would impose on us. *M. de Voltaire* should not therefore have endeavoured to establish an opinion as incontestible, which he must certainly know has been greatly controverted, and, in the opinion of the most learned and candid judges, fully confuted.

By whom first  
peopled.

THE *Chinese* monarchy, great as it is, must of consequence be supposed, like all others, to have had but a small beginning; especially as their more authentic accounts date its infancy only about two or three hundred years after the flood. About this time, it is probable, some of *Noah's* children, or grand-children having penetrated through the eastern parts of *Asia*, settled on that fertile and delightful spot, which is on the south-east part of *China*. *Fohi*, the founder of the *Chinese* monarchy, from the resemblance of names and other circumstances, has been supposed by several learned men, of our own and other nations, to have been the same with *Noah*; and some have gone even so far as to suppose this patriarch to have been the first planter of *China*, just after the flood; and that the *Ararat* mentioned by *Moses*, on which the ark rested, was not that ridge so called in *Armenia*, but one of those which divide *India* from *China*.

Chinese sub-  
dued by the  
Tartars.

THE *Chinese* have been governed since the year 1645 by *Tartar* princes. Two factions in *China* having engaged the whole empire in a civil war, the weaker called in the champion of *Niuche*, a little *Tartarian* kingdom, to their assistance. This prince had no sooner enabled his allies to crush their enemies, than he took an occasion to pick a quarrel with the party that called him in, and made an intire conquest of the country, where he so well established himself, that his posterity still remains in peaceable possession of the throne. As he was very sensible his *Tartars* were much inferior to the *Chinese* in number, he obliged all the *Chinese* soldiers, especially those who had listed amongst his troops, to cut off their hair, and change their habits to the *Tartar* fashion, in order that being looked upon as *Tartars*, they might over-awe the rest. This he extended immediately after to the *Chinese*



- a *ness* in general; and had it not been for this politic proceeding, the *Chinese* would soon have been sensible of their superiority, and put an end to the *Tartar* usurpation. But what contributed still more to the establishment of the *Tartars*, was their employing the *Chinese* both in their civil and military affairs: they advanced the most popular of the *grandees* to be viceroys and governors of provinces, and so made them accessory to subduing their own country; they remitted to the people one third of their taxes, governed them by their own laws, and delivered them from that tyranny the great men used to exercise over them: so that, except in the matter of their hair and habits, the *Tartars* seem rather to have submitted to the laws of the *Chinese*, than to have imposed any upon them; and *Tartary* may now be said rather to be subject to *China*, than *China* to *Tartary*: for in
- b *China* is the seat of the empire; there the supreme courts of justice are held; there all the wealth of the united kingdoms centers; there all honours and degrees are conferred: whence *China* may be said to have gained a vast addition of strength by *Tartary*, and has now no enemy to fear. Their indigent northern neighbours are under the same sovereign, who keeps them so much in subjection, that they are no longer in a condition to disturb *China*. The petty *Tartar* kings, as they are called, are no more than his viceroys, or governors of provinces; and the emperor has forts and garrisons through their whole country. The present emperor *Cangki* is the grandson of *Xunchi*, or *Tsoue*, the *Tartarian* prince, who conquered *China*, now upwards of 100 years ago. At his accession in 1722, he took upon him the name of *Tong Ching*, which signifies Lasting Peace. The empire
- c of *China* is hereditary, unless the reigning emperor makes an alteration in the succession, which he cannot do without the concurrence of his great council, which consists of the princes of the blood and great officers of state.

THE emperor of *China* is as despotic and arbitrary as any oriental prince; for he has an absolute power over the lives and fortunes of all his subjects, the princes of the blood not excepted. His will is a law, and his commands admit of no delay or neglect under severe penalties. Notwithstanding, his government is one of the most regular in the world, and the tribunals and magistracy are established in the most exact and uniform manner that can be contrived for the administration of justice, and the due performance of all the offices of a well regulated government. For the better managing the great affairs of his vast em-

Government,  
nobility, forces,  
revenues.

- d pire, he is assisted by two sovereign councils, which set at *Pekin*, the capital; the one stiled extraordinary, and composed of princes of the blood only, and the other ordinary, which, besides those princes, consists of several mandarins, and other ministers of state, called *Colaos*. Six other superior tribunals are held in the same city for civil and military affairs; to each belongs a different employ or inspection, and their authority extends over all the empire. Every mandarin or governor is obliged to transmit to court an account of his administration annually, and is severely punished if he endeavours to palliate any miscarriages; but as corruption prevails to a great degree in *China*, he that can bribe highest is morally sure of gaining his point. Except the princes of the blood and tributary kings, there is at present no hereditary nobility among the *Chinese*, or any distinction but what their places and offices, or superior wealth or learning create. The forces of the empire are said to amount to five millions, which are a kind of militia called out only as the exigencies of the state require. They have no naval force, though they have a sea-coast of several thousand miles; and their skill in navigation is trifling, if compared to that of the *Europeans*. The revenues of the empire are said to amount to upwards of twenty millions sterling
- e per annum.

THE religion of the *Chinese* is gross idolatry, or rather, they are said to worship one supreme God, and several inferior deities, who appear to have been men eminent in their several ages, particularly the inventors of arts and sciences. They also worship things inanimate, as mountains, woods, and rivers, but never sacrifice to vice, as is customary

f with other Pagans. There are three sects in *China* at this day; first, the followers of *Li-Laokun*, who lived, they say, above 500 years before *Christ*. He taught that God was corporeal, and had many subordinate deities under his government. His disciples study magic, and pretend to make that drink which will give men immortality. The second is the sect of the learned, or disciples of the so much celebrated *Confucius*, who left many admirable precepts of morality, and instructed the people in philosophy. He speaks of God as a most pure and perfect principle, and the fountain and essence of all beings. Though

g we are told he prohibited idolatry, he has temples and images erected to him, and is worshipped with the profoundest adoration, as appears from the pope's decree against the Jesuits for allowing their converts to mingle this idolatrous worship with that of Christianity. The third sect, which is of the worshippers of the idol *Fo*, or *Fobi*, the founder of the *Chinese* nation, is much more numerous than either of the former. They stile him the only Saviour of the world. His priests teach several moral precepts, and a state of rewards and punishments after this life. The punishments consist chiefly in

Religion and  
learning.



animating some vermin or beast of burden after life ; whence, it seems, the doctrine of the transmigration of souls has been long known to them. The *Chinese* have besides an image of immortality, which they worship in the form of a monstrous fat man, sitting cross-legged, with a huge prominent belly. There is another called the idol of pleasure, about twenty feet high ; and between these, in their temples, is another large image thirty feet high, gilded over with a crown upon his head, and richly dressed : this they call the great Kang, to whom they pay adoration. The emperor being of *Tartar* descent, follows the idolatry of this nation, which does not differ much from that of the *Chinese*, except that they worship a living man, whom they stile the Great Lama. They give him the name of Eternal Father, and all the eastern *Tartars* have the greatest veneration for him. He is shewn in a dark place in his palace, illuminated with lamps. That he may be thought immortal, his priests chuse one out of their number as like him as possible, who succeeds him when he dies. None of his votaries doubt of his living for ever. His urine and excrements are held as sacred, and are distributed in presents to the *Tartar* princes, who mix them up as something very delicious in the sauces of their food. The Christian religion made a great progress in *China* about 100 years ago. The Jesuits relate they had 200 churches and chapels there ; but falling out with the other missionaries, and endeavouring to ruin each other, they were all in general banished the kingdom by the present monarch, and their proselytes were compelled by him to renounce Christianity. We are told, that Christianity was first planted in *China*, and the *Indies*, either by the apostle St. *Thomas*, or by some of his disciples. The *Chinese* records seem to intimate, that a man came there about that time, who preached a heavenly doctrine, and confirmed it by miracles. In an ancient *Chaldee* breviary of the church of *Malabar*, the conversion of the *Chinese* is attributed to that apostle. There is also an ancient marble pillar raised in the province of *Xen-si*, in memory of a man that brought Christianity thither in the year 636. However, the missionaries of the church of *Rome* did not find, as we learn, the least vestige of Christianity remaining in *China* when they came there. As to the learning of the *Chinese*, it seems wholly confined to the study of their own language. Their characters are a sort of short-hand. Every character signifies a word or sentence. They have not to this day the use of letters. There are upwards of 20,000 of these characters, and their most learned men are scarce masters of all of them. Those in common use do not exceed three thousand, which are understood in every part of the empire. They write from the top to the bottom of the page. This vast number of characters is reducible to a pure and simple alphabet, like any other language ; for a *Chinese* character is no more than a word, written with its proper consonants and vowels ; not indeed at length, as we do, but intermingled one with another, by some peculiar method known only to them, or perhaps only to the learned among them, and concealed from the vulgar, and more especially from strangers. It would be no difficult matter to imitate the *Chinese* method of writing in ours, or any other *European* language, by joining and intermingling the vowels and consonants of each word in the same or such like order as they do theirs ; that is, by making the first letter the chief and largest character, and placing the rest regularly round it, either jointly or separately. In all other respects, the *Chinese* are nothing near so learned as cried up : They were almost as bad astronomers, geographers, and musicians, as any of their barbarous neighbours, before the missionaries came amongst them ; and whatever proficiency they have since made in logic, natural philosophy, geometry, anatomy, or any art or science, was intirely owing to the instructions they received from the same missionaries. They are still so fond of their old astrology, that they mark the lucky and unlucky days in their almanacs ; and indeed, they are such superstitious observers of times, and rely so much on the predictions of their astrologers and fortune-tellers, that they govern most of their actions by the direction of such people, and will not undertake a journey or any business of moment without consulting them.

Persons, habits, customs, character, genius, &c. of the *Chinese*.

THE *Chinese* are generally of a moderate stature, broad faces, black hair, small black eyes, short noses, and thin beards. Their complexions incline to tawny near the tropic ; but in the north they are as fair as other people under the same parallel. The women are remarkable for their little feet, being esteemed their greatest beauty. In order to keep them little, they are bound up from their infancy so tight, that they cannot grow to the common size : the foot of a full-grown woman is not much bigger than a child's of four years old. The men wear a bell-shaped cap on their heads, which does not cover their ears ; they also wear a vest and sash, and over the vest a loose coat or gown, and a kind of silk boots quilted with cotton. When they are at home among their friends, they throw off every thing but a pair of drawers, and appear as naked as the common people about the streets ; but this must be understood of the southern provinces. The women dress with their hair down, and keep nothing on their head, in the south. They generally wear a silk vest, red, blue, or green, and over it a loose gown, with white sleeves, and embroidered



- a broidered silk shoes, but, by reason of the smallness of their feet, hobble prodigiously when they walk. In most other countries mutual consent constitutes the validity of marriage; but there is no such thing in *China*: The parties never see each other till the bargain is concluded by the parents, which usually happens when they are perfect children; nor is the woman's consent ever demanded afterwards. Great pomp is used in the marriage-ceremonies. The bride brings no dowry, but is rather purchased by the spouse, who, besides the price he pays for her, commonly spends very considerably on the nuptial feast, and makes a very splendid and costly cavalcade in bringing her home. This is the constant custom of the rich; but the poorer sort, who cannot afford to pay money for a wife, go to some of their foundling hospitals, and beg for one, which is seldom denied; and this both saves charges, and makes the wife commonly more submissive to her husband. In regard to the treatment of persons that die, there is scarce any country where grief is manifested to so great a degree, especially for a near relation, or where mourning is so deep or continued so long. Every *Chinese* keeps in his house a table, whereon are written the names of his father, grandfather, and great-grandfather, before which they frequently burn incense, and prostrate themselves; and when the father of a family dies, the great-grandfather is taken away, and the deceased added to make up the number. No persons are ever buried within the walls of a town or city, nor is a dead corps ever suffered to be brought into them, if the person dies in the country. Mountains and solitary places are generally chosen by the great men to build their sepulchres in; and some of them are said to be little inferior to palaces. If the sepulchre is erected in a plain, they raise a vast heap of earth over it, which they carry almost to the height of a mountain.

- THE *Chinese* are exceeding fond of shows and magnificence, an instance of which we shall here give in an account of a festival not long since solemnized in their country. It has been an ancient custom among them to celebrate the sixtieth year of the emperor's mother with most amazing pomp. The last three months of the year 1751 were taken up in making preparations for this approaching grand festival. All the painters, sculptors, architects, musicians, and carpenters of *Pekin*, and the neighbouring provinces, were employed, each in executing some master-piece of his respective art. The main object was to charm the eyes and ears of the most delicate and voluptuous court in the universe. The whole distance from one of the emperor's houses of pleasure to his palace in the centre of the *Tartar* city in *Pekin*, being about twelve *English* miles, was to be decorated in the most superb manner; and as the procession would be, in great part, along the river, it was foreseen, that the barks constructed to carry the emperor, the empress-mother, and the whole court, were likely to be of very little use, on account of the ice, the time of the ceremony falling out in the most rigorous season of the year. However, certain mandarins undertook the removal of these obstacles, by employing, night and day, for more than three weeks together, some thousands of hands in continually beating the surface of the water to prevent its freezing, and a like number in breaking the ice already formed: but, in spite of all these precautions, the cold prevailed, the whole river was set fast, and the project abandoned. The principal director of this fruitless enterprize was mulcted two years salary, and obliged to furnish sledges instead of the barks. Both sides of the river were covered with edifices of divers forms, which gave a striking pleasure to the beholders. On such parts of the river as were wider than the rest, wooden houses were erected upon piles, and disposed in groups, to which bridges conducted; the whole gilded, painted, and most superbly ornamented. In some were choirs of musicians, in others companies of comedians, and in others magnificent thrones, with all varieties of refreshments for the emperor and his mother, if they should be pleased to stop there. In the city, from the gate of entry quite on to the palace, were grand buildings, peristyles, pavilions, colonades, galleries, and amphitheatres, with numberless rich trophies. Factitious jewels sparkled in all parts, and the gaudy objects were reflected and multiplied by an infinite number of little mirrors of polished metal. These glittering edifices were here and there interrupted by artificial mountains and vallies, cattle, trees, and fountains; in other places, with gardens stocked with fruits and flowers of every season of the year, which, though artificial, could hardly be distinguished from natural, so exquisite was the illusion. In some places rocks arose, and children cloathed in skins played the part of monkeys and other animals, skipping from cliff to cliff. Some weeks before the ceremony, the streets were divided into three parts, of which the middle was destined for those who rode on horseback, or in carriages; one of the sides for persons advancing forwards, and the other for those who were returning. A number of soldiers, armed only with staves, prevented all disorder and confusion; and as women never intermix with men in the streets, the emperor appointed certain days for them alone. The presents made on this occasion in a great measure equalled the magnificence of the spectacle. The *Europeans* distinguished themselves by a most ingeniously-contrived piece of machinery, with which the emperor was so highly delighted, that



that he caused it to be deposited in his palace, and frequently amused himself in visiting it. The expence of this pompous entertainment exceeded 300 millions of rousees, and it was graced with the presence of the two imperial personages on the 6th of January, 1752. a

THE *Chinese* are undoubtedly a very ingenious and industrious people, as appears by all their fine manufactures daily brought into *Europe*; such as their wrought silks, cabinets, and other japanery, their curious porcelane; though in this they are excelled by the *Japanese*, and are still likely to be more so by the *Saxons* and *Germans*, where a manufacture has not long since been set up, which exceeds them both, especially in the beauty of the painting. The admirable cultivation of their land, their great and many canals, and variety of magnificent structures, are further testimonies of their genius and industry: to which we may add, what seems now generally agreed on all hands, that they have had the use of the mariners compass, of gun-powder, and the art of printing, for many centuries; insomuch that some are of opinion, that they were all three brought from thence to *Europe*, either by *Paul* the *Venetian*, or by some other channel. And indeed, with respect to the last, whoever considers that the first essay of *Faustus*, who invented, or rather improved that art, was done upon wooden blocks, in the same way as has been done in *China* from time immemorial, will be apt to own, that theirs gave the first notions to *Europeans*, though they have since so infinitely surpassed them. They are likewise masters of several arts and sciences, though not to the perfection we are; but they value themselves extravagantly, and despise others highly, which is a great blemish to their characters. To this we may add, that they are of a most insinuating address, and will not decline the most hazardous enterprises where there is a prospect of gain. The men of figure are perpetually engaged in pursuits of places and preferments, which they procure by bribes, or presents, as they are called. Their laws oblige them to certain rules of civility in their words and actions; but they are naturally a fawning, cringing generation, and the greatest hypocrites on the face of the earth. Trade and commerce, or rather cheating and over reaching, seems to be the natural bent and genius of this people: gain is their god, they prefer it to every thing. A stranger is in great danger of being cheated, if he trusts to his own judgment; and if he employs a *Chinese* broker, it is well if he does not join with the merchant to impose on the stranger. b

State of the  
Chinese trade.

THE *Chinese*, from the remotest antiquity, exported the growth and commodities of their country, chiefly raw silk, wherein it abounds, all over the east. It is from thence they were, by the *Greeks* and *Romans*, called *Seres*. Under the reigns of some former emperors, *China* was, as *Japan* now is, shut up, and kept from all commerce with foreign nations, and the inhabitants strictly forbid, under severe penalties, to export the growth of the country, or to have any communication with their neighbours. Things stood thus, when the late *Tartarian* conqueror, thinking it would very much conduce to the honour of his subjects, and the advantage of his dominions, for the future to permit a free and undisturbed commerce, resolved to suffer his subjects to trade abroad, and to give free access to his dominions. The *Europeans* purchase the merchandize of *China* with bullion, or foreign coin, which is taken by weight, the *Chinese* pound containing sixteen ounces. c

As there is a great affinity between the religion, customs, books, learned languages, arts and sciences, of the *Chinese* and their neighbours the *Japanese*, and as the *Japanese* islands make an entire and considerable empire, we may, with some propriety, describe them here.

Japan de-  
scribed.

THE great and opulent country of *Japan*, which has the title of empire justly given to it, as being divided into many distinct dominions, stiled kingdoms, under one monarch or emperor of the whole, is situate on the most eastern, and most remote part of *Asia* from us, in all our hemisphere; and, consequently, the place where the rising sun is first seen; and being above 130 degrees from us, they have their morning, noon, and other times of the day, at least eight hours before us. The *Europeans* call it *Japan*, but the inhabitants *Nippon*, from the greatest island belonging to it, and the *Chinese* *Sippon*, probably, on account of its eastern situation; these names signifying, in both languages, the basis or foundation of the sun. Though it has but one general name, it must not therefore be imagined to be one continued tract of land, or one single island; for it consists of several large ones, besides a number of small. *Nippon* is by much the most considerable of the rest, reaching from south-west to north-east about 900 miles, and in breadth, in some parts, near 360 miles. The whole empire, exclusive of the small islands that lie scattered at a distance, consists of three principal ones, *Nippon*, *Ximo*, and *Xi-Coco*; they extend almost eleven degrees, that is, from lat. 30. to almost 41; and from east to west almost 17, that is, from 130. to 147. of east longitude. d

Names.

Consists of se-  
veral islands.

High coasts.

ALMOST all the coasts of this extensive empire are surrounded with such high and craggy mountains, and such shallow and boisterous seas, that sailing about them is extremely hazardous; e



a zardous; and the creeks and bays are choaked up with such rocks, shelves, and sands, that it looks as if Providence had designed it to be a kind of little world by itself; and this may best account, perhaps, for the first peopling of those islands. The *Chinese* do indeed pretend, that they were first peopled by themselves; but it is more probable, their original inhabitants were a mixture of different nations, driven thither by those tempestuous seas, and at different times; and this appears from the great difference observable between the present inhabitants, in regard to features, complexions, shapes, habits, customs, genius, and languages; notwithstanding their having been so long united under one monarch. Whatever affinity there may be between the *Chinese* and *Japanese*, one thing, how-  
 b ever, is certain, that in the character they bear with other nations, they appear in a quite opposite light: Whilst the *Chinese* are looked upon as crafty, cunning, covetous, and knavish, the *Japanese* are admired for their strict honesty, fidelity, and generosity: they are generally wise, acute, and ingenious, surpassing all Orientals, and even *Europeans* in docility. They enjoy themselves as much in innocent pleasures as any other nation, but can at any time forego them for better employment, and are content when their circumstances do not easily admit of them. Neither are they covetous after much wealth, being satisfied with a competency, as the best preservative against lying and cozening, against envy or detraction. In conversation, they observe a great decorum, and avoid all loose, light, and vain speeches, affecting a kind of laconic style, and an aversion to railing and defamation. In  
 c diet, they are abstemious; in dress and furniture, clean and decent. Drunkenness and gluttony are scarce known amongst them, any more than cheating and dishonesty. Yet, with these virtues, which many of them possess in an eminent degree, they are frequently cruel and revengeful, and carry their resentment to excess; and in great misfortunes, as injuries, disgrace, affronts from their superiors, or other such mortifications, they most commonly make away with themselves. Their women are more particularly guilty of this crime of suicide, especially whenever their chastity, conjugal fidelity, or even modesty, are called in question.

How peopled.

Character of the Japanese.

THE situation of *Japan* is such, as to possess the fifth and sixth climates, so that the longest day is between fourteen and fifteen hours; and their heat might be expected to exceed ours by many degrees, though we are told, that their winters are excessive cold, by  
 d the vast quantities of snow that usually fall there, and the great rains and bleak winds to which those islands, which lie very high, are constantly exposed. The *Dutch* in general assure us, that the land is fertile, well cultivated and peopled, and that, besides corn, rice, and other grain, it produces a great variety of fruits, and breeds vast numbers of cattle of all sorts. Some parts are incumbered with woods and forests, and intersected by long ridges of mountains of a considerable height; but some of these mountains are enriched with mines of gold and silver in large quantities, and extraordinary fine; with copper exquisitely fine, tin, lead, iron, besides a great variety of other minerals and fossils; whilst others abound with several sorts of marble, and other curious stone of a more precious nature.  
 e Some of those mountains also may be justly intitled to a rank among the natural rarities of this country; one, in the great island of *Nippon*, is of such prodigious height, as to be easily seen forty leagues off at sea, though its distance from the shore is above eighteen. Some authors think it exceeds the famed pike of *Teneriffe*; but it may be rather called a cluster or group of mountains, among which no less than eight have very dreadful volcanoes, burning with incredible fury, and causing great disorder and devastations round about them, not unlike those of *Vesuvius*. But, to make some amends, they afford great variety of medicinal waters of different degrees of heat; the most remarkable of them is that mentioned by *Varenius*, which is said to be as hot as boiling oil, and to scorch and consume every thing thrown into it.

Climate.

Soil and produce.

Mines, &amp;c.

Volcanoes.

f AMONG the artificial rarities of this country, we shall only mention the famed colossus of the city of *Meaco*, which is all of gilt copper, and of such a prodigious size, that, being seated in a chair eighty feet in breadth, and seventy in height, no less than fifteen men can stand conveniently on its head. Its thumb is fourteen inches in circumference, and the rest proportionable to it. This is one of the principal idols or deities of this island. But the *Japanese* are so greatly addicted to this kind of idolatrous worship, that every place swarms with idols. They have them not only in their temples, but in their other public and private buildings, in their streets, market-places, and even along the highways. The temple of *Meaco* in particular may be considered as a *Japanese* Pantheon, containing no less than 3333 idols within its walls.

Colossus at Meaco.

g THE government of these islands is, and has been for a long time monarchical, though formerly it seems to have been split into a great number of petty kingdoms, which were at length all swallowed up into one. The imperial dignity had been enjoyed for a considerable time, till the year 1500, in a constant succession, by princes under the title of *Dairos*, a name, it is supposed, derived from *Dairo*, the head of that family. Soon after

Government.





Revolution.

that ill-fated epoch, such a dreadful civil war was raised, and lasted so many years, that the empire was quite ruined. During this horrid confusion, in which all the petty kings and princes were committing the greatest devastations against one another, a common soldier, by name *Tayckoy*, and a person of obscure birth, but of an enterprising genius, found means to raise himself to the highest power. He began at first with fifty soldiers, equally intrepid and daring; but was seconded by such an uncommon share of fortune, that their numbers quickly increasing to a great army, he carried on his conquests with incredible success and celerity. In little more than three years time, he subdued all the contending parties, took their cities and castles, and raised himself to the imperial dignity. The *Dairo*, not being in a condition to obstruct, or put a stop to his progress, was forced to submit to his terms; and might, perhaps, have been condemned to much harder, had not *Tayckoy* been apprehensive lest his soldiers, who still revered their ancient natural monarchs, should have revolted in his favour. To prevent this, he granted him the supreme power in all religious matters, with great privileges, honours, and revenues annexed to it; whilst himself remained invested with the whole civil and military power, and was acknowledged and proclaimed emperor of *Japan*. This great revolution happened in 1517, and *Tayckoy* reigned several years with great wisdom and tranquillity; during which, he made many wholesome laws and regulations in his new empire, which still subsist, and are much admired to this day. At his death he left the crown to his son *Tayckosamma*, then a minor; but the treacherous prince, under whose guardianship he was left, deprived him of his life before he came of age. By this murder, the crown passed to the family of *Jejasamma*, whose great grandson *Tsinajos*, was upon the throne when our last accounts came from thence. *Tayckoy*, and his successors, have contented themselves with the title of *Cubo*, which, under the *Dairos*, was that of prime-minister, whose office is now suppressed; so that the *Cubo*, in all secular concerns, is quite as absolute and despotic, and has as extensive a power over the lives and fortunes of all his subjects, from the petty kings down to the lowest persons, as ever the *Dairos* had. The *Dairo* resides constantly at *Meaco*, and the *Cubo* at *Fedo*.

Japan, how  
and when discovered.

WHETHER these islands were known to the antients or not, is a question not worth inquiring into. *Paul the Venetian* gave some account of them, which he had from the *Chinese*, prior to their discovery by the *Portuguese* in 1548, when one of their ships, bound from *Siam* to *China*, was driven upon those coasts by stress of weather. It was not long before their nation got admittance into this empire; and having recommended themselves to the emperor by their great skill in the liberal sciences, not only obtained a free commerce, but likewise a free exercise of their religion, and, in time, a liberty and encouragement to propagate it through his dominions; insomuch that, if their accounts may be credited, about one third of the inhabitants were converted, and the emperor himself an extraordinary favourer of, if not a zealous profelyte to it. All these great advantages were at length intirely lost, partly by the indiscreet zeal of the missionaries, partly by the jealousy of the unconverted nobles, and especially of the *Japanese* priests, who could not, without the greatest envy and regret, behold their old religion, with all its powerful attractives of profit, popular esteem, and respect, daily losing ground; but, more particularly, by the policy or treachery of the *Dutch*, who found effectual means to undermine them. All the Christian converts were put to the most cruel deaths, and the *Europeans*, except the *Dutch*, were, under pain of death, forbid to come within the *Japanese* dominions. The *Dutch* have ever since engrossed the trade of *Japan*, exclusive of all other *Europeans*, but are under such restrictions, that it is quite out of their power to form any designs upon the country.

Trade of the  
Dutch with  
the Japanese.

THE commodities exported by the *Dutch* are chiefly rice, silks, cotton, the finest of porcelane, varnish, gold and silver, copper and steel, elephants teeth, very rich furs, tea of all sorts, some kinds of such excellent flavour and taste that they are sold at a prodigious rate, even above that of gold, weight for weight; a great variety of medicinal herbs, roots, and gums; all which, as well as the tea, are sold genuine, without the adulterations committed by the *Chinese* in theirs: ambergrease, pearls, coral, &c. in exchange for which the *Dutch* bring them not only glasses of all sorts, woollen and linen cloths, &c. from *Holland*, but furnish them likewise with many other commodities from *Siam*, *China*, and other parts of *India*. In the carrying on of this commerce, there is this further encouragement, that no custom is paid for goods, either imported or exported.



## C H A P. X.

## Of India, and the Oriental Islands.

<sup>a</sup> **I**NDIA has lost nothing among the moderns of that esteem which it was possessed of among the antients. The curious do not hesitate to make a voyage of above 3000 leagues to visit the wonders of that country; its riches make our merchants forget the trouble, the fatigue, and danger of a long and painful navigation; the learned, throughout all *Europe*, carefully seek after its animals and plants, to study the singularities of nature, more various and fertile in these countries than in their own; its beauties adorn the palaces of princes, and add splendor to the diadems of sovereigns. Importance of India.

SINCE these 260 years, that the *Portuguese* had found the way to *India* by the *Cape of Good-Hope*, the voyages thither by the *English*, *Dutch*, *French*, *Portuguese*, and *Spaniards*, have been almost infinite. Every one of these nations has made its particular discoveries there; and, at present, that country is almost as well known to us as any of the *European*. *India*, according to the latest observations, extends from the 83d degree of longitude to the 130th; and from the Equator to the 23d degree of north latitude. From *China* to *Persia*, which bound these countries on the east and west, are reckoned about 500 leagues; and there are almost as many from the extremity of the peninsula beyond the *Ganges* to *Tartary*, which bounds *India* on the north side. Extent and boundaries.

THE air cannot be the same throughout this vast extent of country, but, in general, it is good and healthy. The rains, which fall continually from the beginning of *June* till the end of *August*, serve to refresh it, especially in the two peninsulas, which are almost intirely within the torrid zone. They render the earth fruitful, which furnishes in abundance all the necessaries of life, except towards the north, where it does not answer equally the cares of those who cultivate it. From hence arises that almost infinite number of inhabitants in *India*, which compose, even at this day, fifty-two kingdoms and different principalities, whereof, it is true, the greatest part depend on the principal sovereigns of the country. Air and soil.

THIS country is divided into two principal parts; the first called *India* within the *Ganges*, *Indostan*, or the empire of the Great Mogul; and the second, *India* beyond the *Ganges*, or its further peninsula, governed by different princes. Grand division.

THE empire of the Mogul is bounded by *Uzbek-Tartary* and *Tibet* on the north; by another part of *Tibet*, *Acham*, *Ava*, and the bay of *Bengal*, on the east; by the *Indian Ocean* on the south; and by the same ocean and *Persia* on the west. It is situate between 66 and 92 of east longitude, and between 7 and 40 of north latitude, and extends 2000 miles in length, and 1500 in breadth. The south-east coast of *India*, situate on the bay of *Bengal*, usually called the coast of *Coromandel*, contains the provinces of *Madura*, *Tanjour*, east-side of *Bisnagar*, or *Carnate*, *Golconda*, and *Orixa*. The south-west coast, or coast of *Malabar*, those of the west-side of *Bisnagar*, or *Carnate*, *Decan*, or *Visiapour*, and *Cambaya*, or *Guzarat*. The north-east division comprehends the provinces of *Bengal*, on the mouths of the *Ganges*, and those of the mountains of *Naugracut*, distinguished into *Bengal-Propre*, and *Naugracut*, *Jesuat*, *Patna*, *Necbal*, *Gor*, and *Rotas*. The north-west division on the frontiers of *Persia* and the river *Indus*, contains the provinces of *Scret*, *Tesselmere*, *Tata*, *Buckor*, *Multan*, *Haican*, and *Cabul*. And the middle division, those of *Candish*, *Berar*, *Chitor*, *Ratipor*, *Narvar*, *Gualeor*, *Ayra*, *Delli*, *Labor*, *Hendows*, *Cassimere*, *Jengapour*, and *Asme*. Boundaries, situation, extent, and divisions of the Mogul empire.

THE chain of mountains which run through this peninsula from north to south, are the cause of an extraordinary phenomenon in natural history. The countries which are separated by these mountains, though under the same latitude, have their seasons and climate intirely different from each other; and while it is winter on one side of the hills, it is summer on the other. On the coast of *Malabar*, a south-west wind begins to blow from the sea at the end of *June*, with continued rain, and rages against the coast for four months, during which time the weather is calm and serene on the coast of *Coromandel*; and towards the end of *October*, the rainy season, or change of the monsoon, begins on the *Cormandel* coast; at which time, the tempestuous winds beating continually against a coast, in which there are no good ports, make it so dangerous for the shipping to remain there for the three ensuing months, that it is scarce ever attempted. This is the cause of the periodical return of our ships to *Bombay*, where there is a secure harbour and convenient docks. Extraordinary phenomenon.

THIS great extent of country has been inhabited, from the earliest antiquity, by a people who have now little or no resemblance, either in their figures or manners, with any of the *Antiquity of India, and by whom first inhabited.*



Invasion and  
conquered.

Aurengzebe  
and his de-  
scendants.

the nations which are contiguous to them. Its first inhabitants were probably from *Persia*, that kingdom being an inlet to it, and in the way of *Mesopotamia*, where it seems to be agreed the descendants of *Noah* first settled after the flood: but, whoever were the first inhabitants, the *Ethiopians* next possessed the southern division of the peninsula, as appears from their posterity still remaining there, not a white man, or any other complexion but blacks, possessing any part of that country; and that they came from *Ethiopia* is evident, not only from their complexion, but from their long hair and regular features, very different from the other *African* blacks. A further evidence of their being the descendants of the *Ethiopians* is, that the queen of *Sheba*, or *Ethiopia*, made presents to *Solomon* of the finest spices, which only grow in *India*, and were brought from the colonies of the *Ethiopians*, and planted here. It may be said, perhaps, that the people of this country were originally black; but this is far from being probable, because none of the natives of the other parts of *India* are black, though they lie much nearer the Equator. The *Arabs* were the next that possessed the maritime parts of this country; for almost all the coast was subject to *Arabian* or *Mohammedan* princes, when the *Portuguese* arrived here in 1500; and these had dispossessed the *Ethiopians*, and driven them up into the midland country, where they still remain. *India* was afterwards, about the year 1400, invaded by the *Mongul-Tartars* under *Tamerlane*, who fixed his third son *Miraccha*, in the north of *India* and *Persia*; but the southern peninsula of *India* was not reduced under the obedience of the *Mogul* princes until the reign of *Aurengzebe*. This prince deposed and confined his father *Shah Geban*, who died in 1666; and having murdered his three brothers, and some of their children, to acquire the throne, he maintained himself in it near fifty years; but with so strict an attention to the government of his empire, and with so laudable an administration, that the crimes he was guilty of to pave the way to his accession, if they appeared such in the eyes of his countrymen, were quite obliterated, and he seemed entitled to be ranked with the ablest princes who had reigned in any age or country. He conquered more than half the provinces of *Indostan* in person, and his viceroys conquered or subjected almost all the rest, the sea-coasts of *Malabar* excepted. The revenues of the empire amounted, in his time, to thirty-eight millions of pounds sterling. He was near an hundred when he died, in 1707. He never eat any flesh-meat, nor tasted strong drink. But all his abilities did not give him the power of securing his crown to one of his sons in preference to the rest; and it appears by his will, that he foresaw the contests which ensued amongst them after his death. His sons, *Azem Shah*, and *Mahomed Mauzum*, fought at the head of armies not equalled since the time of *Tamerlane*. That of *Mahomed Mauzum* consisting of more than 300,000 fighting-men, of which 150,000 were cavalry. *Azem*, who seems by his father's will to have been the favourite, was defeated and killed, and *Mauzum* was proclaimed emperor, under the title of *Badabr-shah*, after which he attacked his brother *Kaunbuksh*, who was taken prisoner and died of his wounds. *Badabr-shah* died after reigning about six years, and his four sons disputed in like manner the throne. By that dependance to the great men of the kingdom, to which their contest for the crown had reduced the descendants of *Aurengzebe*, the emperors elected, though despotic with the multitude, ascended the throne in bonds, and were, in reality, nothing more than the slaves of their ministers. *Abdallah* khan, and *Hoffam-Aly* khan, two brothers, were powerful enough to make four, and depose five emperors of *Indostan*. But still the blood of *Tamerlane* continued to be held in too great veneration throughout the empire, to permit any others but his descendants to entertain the thoughts of ascending the throne with impunity. The two brothers, and those who stood nearest to the throne, in virtue of their offices and power, were therefore contented to rule the empire as they pleased, by shewing to the people a pompous sovereign, who, in reality, was to command nothing but the women in his seraglio. With this view, they at last fixed their choice on *Mohamed-Shah*, son of one of the princes who perished in disputing the succession of their father *Behadr-shah*. The beginning of his reign was not without a stroke of authority in the mode of eastern politics. The courtiers, to please him, assassinated *Hoffam-Aly* khan, one of the two brothers whose hands had been imbrued in so much of the blood of his family. The other brother immediately appeared in arms, but was soon taken prisoner, and died of the wounds he had received in a battle which he fought for another emperor of his own nomination. The removal of two such dangerous enemies to the throne placed *Mahomed-Shah* in possession of it with a security unknown to his predecessors, since the reign of *Aurengzebe*; but this security served only to render him unworthy of it. Indolent, sensual, and irresolute, he voluntarily gave to favourites as great a degree of power as that which the ministers of the throne had lately possessed in defiance of the will of their sovereign. The favourites quarrelled with *Nizam al Muluk*, the viceroy of the southern provinces, who had under his jurisdiction very near a fourth part of the empire, and who, without rebellion, had rendered himself almost independent of the emperor. He censured openly the pusillanimous administration, and dissolute manners of the



a the court, so degenerate from that of *Aurengzebe*, under whose eye he had been bred. At last, pretending there could be no remedy to such desperate evils, but a total revolution of the empire, he advised *Thomas Kouli-Khan*, who had usurped the throne of *Persia*, to come and take possession of that of *Indoian*; and *Thomas Kouli-Khan* followed his advice. An army, furnished by its own numbers, commanded by chiefs unanimous in nothing but their unwillingness to fight, and these by an emperor who could not command his fears, submitted to enemies whom they out-numbered five to one; but these enemies had been inured to conflicts under the most desperate soldier of the age, and were rendered invincible by the expectation of plundering the capital of the richest empire in the world. A skirmish decided the fate of the empire. *Mahomed Shab* laid his regalia at the feet of *Thomas Kouli Khan*, who took possession of *Delli*, plundered it, and massacred 100,000 of its inhabitants. The conqueror reserving to himself all the countries lying to the westward of the rivers *Indus* and *Attoc*, restored all the rest to *Mahomed Shab*, and reinstated him in the throne with formalities; after which he returned to *Persia*, carrying with him out of *Indo-  
stan* a treasure, which in effects, silver, gold, and jewels, was valued at upwards of seventy millions of pounds sterling. He entered *India* from *Candabar* in the beginning of the year 1738, and returned to *Candabar* at the end of the year 1739. This dreadful incursion is reckoned to have cost *Indoian*, besides its treasures, the loss of 200,000 lives.

*Extraordinary  
revolution,  
how brought  
about.*

c THE cruelties exercised in *India* by *Thomas Kouli-Khan* were such, that a dervise had the courage to present a writing to him, conceived in these terms: "If thou art a God, act as a God; if thou art a prophet, conduct us in the way of salvation; if thou art a king, render the people happy, and do not destroy them." To which he replied, "I am no God to act as a God; nor a prophet to shew the way of salvation; nor a king to render the people happy; but I am He whom God sends to the nations which he is determined to visit with his wrath."

d THE prince whom *Kouli-Khan* had reinstated is said to have been murdered by the vizier *Gauze Odin Khan*, who thereupon exalted *Allum-Geer* to the throne of *Indoian*; but some time after, being dissatisfied with his own election in the person of this prince, he imprisoned him, kept him in close confinement for several years, drove his children from *Delli*; and at length, to compleat the system, murdered him also, and proclaimed another prince at that capital. This is the present state of the Mogul family, and it is *Allum Geer's* son, by the title of *Shah Zadab*, who of late has occasioned great disturbances in the government of *Bengal*, by making a party there. When he was apprized of his father's assassination, he did not long delay to assert his title to the inheritance of his ancestors. He caused himself to be acknowledged king immediately by his dependants, and was recognized as such by his followers; and he demanded homage and obeisance from the Nabob of *Bengal*.

e IT is generally supposed, that the peninsula within the *Ganges* is under the immediate government of the Mogul himself, and that the royal mandates from *Delli* are, according to the received notion of so arbitrary a dominion, obeyed in the most remote parts of the coast. This is so far from the truth, that a great part of that vast peninsula never acknowledged any subjection to the throne of *Delli*, till the reign of *Aurengzebe*, as above-mentioned; and the revenues from those *Indian* kings and *Moorish* governors, who were conquered or employed by him, have, since his death, been intercepted by the viceroys whom his weaker successors have appointed for the government of the peninsula: so that at this time, neither can the tribute from the several potentates reach the court of *Delli*, nor the vigour of the government extend from the capital to those remote countries. And ever since *Indoian* was ruined by *Thomas Kouli-Khan*, the weakness of the Mogul, and the policy and confirmed independency of the viceroys, have, in a manner, confined the influence of the government to its inland department. Let it therefore be understood, that f the sovereign possesses a third only, and that the least valuable part, of his own vast empire. *Bengal*, the smallest, but most fertile province, is governed by a viceroy. The other division, called the *Decan*, extending from *Balasore Jagonaut*, or thereabouts, to *Cape Comorin*, is also delegated by the Mogul to another viceroy of exceeding great power, having within his jurisdiction seven large territories, to which he has the undisputed right of nominating seven Nabobs, or governors of provinces. In all parts of *India* there are still large districts which have preserved, with the *Gentoo* religion, the old form of government under *Indian* kings, called *Raja's*; such are *Maissore*, whose capital is *Seringapatam*, and *Tanjore*, the capital of the same name. There are also, among the woods and mountainous parts of the country, several petty princes, distinguished by the name of Polygars. g These are all tributary to the Nabobs, and those to the viceroy, whose capital is *Aurengabad*. The *Carnatic* is that part of the *Decan* which comprehends the principal settlements of the *Europeans*, *Madras*, *Pondicherry*, and also *Arcot*.

*Government of  
Indoian.*



Military force,  
and manner of  
the Mogul's  
going to war.

Nothing appears a greater difficulty to the military men in this part of the world, than the possibility of subsisting such vast multitudes as the *Asiatic* armies frequently consist of, especially so large a proportion of horse; but, if it be a matter of astonishment that such numbers of fighting men are frequently brought into the field, how will it appear when it is added to the account, that every horseman has two servants, one to take care of his horse, the other to procure him forage, and that all these are accompanied by their wives and children; that there always follows the camp a moveable town of shops, where every thing is to be sold as in their cities; besides some hundreds of elephants for state only, and a train of women, with their numberless retinue, belonging to the prince and the great officers: for whenever the sovereign moves, he is more taken up with a vain ostentation of pomp and magnificence, than with the object of the war; and it is his pleasure that his subjects should abandon the capital, in order to augment his numbers. In imitation of their sovereign, and from the same motives of pride and vanity, the lesser princes and viceroys affect the same magnificence in the splendor of their camps, and the number of their followers. To provide for all these, the whole country is put in motion, and the strictest orders are given for all provisions to be brought into the camp. By these means, all the cities, far and near, are exhausted, but the camp, for the most part, is plentifully supplied. However, it must be supposed that these numerous armies seldom keep the field any time, without great loss by famine; for a very considerable diminution is scarcely felt among such numbers, and very little regarded from any notions of humanity: a famine is, therefore, neither considered as any thing extraordinary, nor will the remembrance of it ever prevent the assembling of another multitude, who must also be liable to the same chances of subsisting or starving, as accident shall determine. In like manner, allowance must be made for the great loss and damage they sustain in men, beasts, and all the implements of war, as often as they move in difficult roads and defiles, and particularly in their method of passing over great rivers: for their rivers, when they are not fordable, in the rainy season become torrents, being swelled to such a degree that they are not to be passed but flantwise, the landing place being frequently above a mile below the place of embarkation.

Want of courage in the Indians, to what owing.

It is owing intirely to an ignorance of the manners of the *Asiatics*, that many people imagine they can never be made soldiers. It may, perhaps, be shewn that they never will, whilst the same wretched government and abhorrence of innovation subsists; but those are greatly mistaken who attribute their dread of fire-arms, and particularly of artillery, to a dastardly disposition, and an invincible timidity. The true cause lies in the inexperience of their leading men, who never understood the advantages of discipline, and who have kept their infantry upon too low a footing. Their cavalry, though not backward to engage with sabres, are extremely unwilling to bring their horses within the reach of great guns; so that they do not decline an engagement so much through fear for their lives, as for their fortunes, which are all laid out in the horse they ride on. Such of the natives as have been disciplined and encouraged by *Europeans*, and formed into a regular infantry under officers of their own, and generally known by the name of *Sepoys*, have familiarized themselves to fire-arms, and behaved well behind walls; and when we give them serjeants to lead them on, they make no contemptible figure in the field. In war with the *Asiatics* alone, we have a much greater advantage in their being so very tenacious of their old manners, than in their want of bravery. When we march round them with our light field-pieces, and make it necessary to move those enormous weights, their bullocks, which are at best very untractable, if a shot comes among them they are quite ungovernable, and, at the same time, so ill harnessed, that it causes no small delay to free the rest from one that shall happen to be unruly or slain. Besides, not only the prince himself, but every Raja, who has the command of all the forces he can bring into the field, be they more or less, always appears among them mounted on an elephant, and is at once the general and ensign, or standard of that corps, who keep their eyes constantly on him, and if they lose sight of him for a moment, conclude that all is lost. Thus we find *Aurengzebe* gained two battles by the treachery of those who advised his two victorious brothers to get down from their elephants, mount their horses, and pursue the vanquished: their troops missing them, immediately dispersed. The same practice, continued to this day, affords our engineers a fair opportunity of deciding the fate of a whole detachment, by one well-directed discharge of a six-pounder; and those enormous beasts now seem to be brought into the field for no other end but to be a mark for our artillery. It is said, they begin to see the danger of this practice; but surely that might have been found long since; for before the use of artillery, the general, thus distinguished, was, in like manner, exposed to the arrows of a whole army, and yet we always find them in the same perilous station. *Porus* is said to have been pierced with nine arrows, and to have sunk from his elephant with innumerable wounds. It should seem probable, that not merely their regard for ancient manners, but

Obstacles to their success in war.



- a but the expediency of keeping their troops together by this signal, will induce them to continue the same method; the necessity of which will appear from the conduct and success of *Shirangzeb*, who, when he found his army giving way on every side, ordered chains to be fastened about the legs of his elephant, to convince them that he would not give the example of flight; and that those to whom his life was dear or interesting, could preserve it by no other means but firmly maintaining their ground. To shew, however, that they themselves are sensible of the danger of being thus exposed, they will sometimes avail themselves of the only device that can afford them any security; for it has been observed, that several elephants caparisoned alike, with riders in the same rich and splendid habits, have appeared in different parts of the field on the same day. Another great obstacle to their success in war is their superstition, and particularly their strict observance of lucky and unlucky days, which often prevents them from taking the most obvious advantages of an enemy. Being fond of all kinds of beasts of prey, they keep great numbers of them, and often visit them before they give battle. If they find them heavy and dull, they think it a bad omen, and a reason sufficient to postpone their intended design of an action; and, on the other hand, the accidental fury of the animal is regarded as a happy omen of success. They have also a custom of matching two wild beasts, most commonly elephants, and having given their own name to the one, and that of the enemy to the other, they bring them together to fight in presence of their army; but in this custom they are not altogether to be condemned for superstitious folly, since they have the policy to make it a very unequal match, and give their own name to the stronger. We shall add to these observations, that notwithstanding they have so severely suffered by being surprized in the night by the *Europeans*, they can never be brought to establish either order or vigilance in their camp. At the close of the evening, every man eats an inconceivable quantity of rice, and many take after it some kind of soporific drugs; so that about midnight the whole army is in a dead sleep. The consequence of these habits is obvious; and yet it would appear a strange proposition to an eastern monarch, to endeavour to persuade him, that the security of his throne depended upon the regulation of the meals of a common soldier; much less would he be prevailed on to restrain him in the use of that opium which is to warm his blood for action, and animate his soul with heroism. It must fill the mind of an *European* soldier at once with compassion and contempt, to see a heap of these poor creatures, solely animated by a momentary intoxication, crowded into a breach, and both in their garb and impotent fury resembling a mob of frantic women.
- b
- c
- d

THERE is certainly an appearance of effeminacy in the eastern dress, which has at all times greatly contributed to lessen their military character with the *European* nations, who, from their own habits and prejudices, will naturally receive a strong impression upon seeing a body of horse in silk or cotton robes; and yet there is no character they are so fond of as that of a warrior; and as they have no other notion of government, they have been, from time immemorial, continually at war with one another.

- e THE inhabitants of *Indostan* have lost very little of their original character by the establishment of strangers amongst them. Besides the particular denominations which they receive from the casts and countries in which they are born, there is one more general, which is applied indiscriminately to distinguish the original natives from all who have intruded themselves amongst them, *Hendoo*, from whence *Indian*.

Character, religion, manners, customs, &c. of the original inhabitants of *Indostan*.

- f THE *Indians* have lost all memory of the ages in which they began to believe in *Vishnou*, *Eswara*, *Brama*, and a hundred thousand divinities subordinate to these. These divinities are worshipped in temples called pagoda's, in every part of *Indostan*, the whole extent of which is holy land to its inhabitants; that is, there is no part in which some divinity has not appeared and done something to merit a temple and priests to take care of it. Some of these temples are of immemorial antiquity: they are; at the same time, monuments of such stupendous labour, that they are supposed to have been built by the gods to whom they are consecrated. The histories of these gods is a heap of the greatest absurdities. It is *Eswara* twisting off the neck of *Brama*; it is the sun, who gets his teeth knocked out, and the moon, who has her face beaten black and blue at a feast, at which the gods quarrel and fight with the spirit of a mob. They say, that the sun and moon carry in their faces to this day the marks of this broil. Here and there a moral, or metaphysical allegory, and sometimes a trace of the history of a first legislator, is discernible in these stories; but in general they are so very extravagant and incoherent, that we cannot help being surprized how a people, so reasonable in other respects, should have adopted such a code of nonsense as a creed of religion, did we not find the same credulity in the histories of nations much more enlightened.

THE Bramins, who are the tribe of the priesthood, descend from those Brachmans who are mentioned to us with so much reverence by antiquity; and although much inferior, either as philosophers or men of learning, to the reputation of their ancestors as priests, their religious



Writings and  
religion of  
Zoroaster.

religious doctrines are still implicitly followed by the whole nation, and, as preceptors, they are the source of all the knowledge which exists in *Indostan*. 2

THE religion and history of the *Gaures*, or ancient *Persians*, are in a great measure the same with those of the *Brachmans*, or primitive inhabitants of *India*. They are derived from *Zoroaster*, and besides, being a very interesting object of themselves, they merit the attention of the learned by the connection these people have had with the *Hebreos*, *Greeks*, and perhaps even the *Chinese*. Great lights may be had from the works of *Zoroaster*, by men of true genius, who are well skilled in the antient languages, by comparing them with other Oriental manuscripts; and very important discoveries may be made concerning the origin of mankind, and the histories of those ages which were near the general deluge. b  
Such of the writings of *Zoroaster* as still remain, speak of the creation of the Universe, of the terrestrial Paradise, of the dispersion of mankind, and the cause of the respect paid by the *Perses*, or *Parfes*, to fire, which they call *Atbro Eboresmdao*, Son of God. They contain also an account of the origin of evil, moral and natural; eulogiums on all the angels that were appointed to the government of the universe; many historical facts, which are more fully related in other works, written in modern *Persia*; they also frequently mention the king and heroes of the first dynasty, and exhibit their chronologies; lastly, they contain predictions with respect to the latter times; several particulars relating to the end of the world, and the resurrection; some excellent moral precepts, and a very extensive ceremonial code. God is called by *Zoroaster* *Meniossepensste*, which signifies a Being absorbed in excellence. c  
Such of the *Persians* and *Indians* who profess themselves observers of his law and worship are thoroughly persuaded of his divine mission, and suppose that he received the books of his law from God himself, after having passed ten years at the foot of his throne.

BUT to return to the *Bramins*: it may be said, as to the particulars of their science and religion, that some of them are capable of calculating an eclipse, which seems to be the utmost stretch of their mathematical knowledge. They have a good idea of logic, but it does not appear that they have any treatises on rhetoric: their ideas of music, if we may judge from the practice, are barbarous; and in medicine they derive no assistance from the knowledge of anatomy, dissections being repugnant to their religion. They shed no blood, d  
nor eat any flesh, because they believe in the transmigration of souls; they encourage wives to burn themselves with their deceased husbands, and seem to make the perfection of religion to consist in a punctual observance of numerous ceremonies performed in the worship of their gods, and in a strict attention to keep their bodies free from pollution. Hence purifications and ablutions, as dictated by their scriptures, are scrupulously observed by them, and take up no small portion of their time. A *Bramin* cannot eat any thing which has been prepared, or even touched by any other hand than that of a *Bramin*, and from the same principle cannot be married to a person of any other tribe in the kingdom, because his own tribe is the highest, even above that of the kings. They say, that they were formerly the kings of the whole country, and retain to this day the privilege of commuting e  
capital punishment, when merited, by the loss of their eyes. To kill a *Bramin* is one of the five sins, for which there is scarce any expiation.

THE pre-eminence of the *Bramins* admitted, it seems as if the *Indians* had determined to compensate the odium of such superiority, by forming themselves into a number of distinct tribes or gradations of people; who respectively submit to the different degrees of estimation, in which they have at last agreed to abide, as implicitly as all agree to acknowledge the superiority of the *Bramins*. The many temporal advantages which the *Bramins* derive from their spiritual authority, and the impossibility of being admitted into their tribe, have perhaps given rise to that number of *Joquees* and *Facquires*, who torture themselves with such various and astonishing penances only to gain the same veneration which a *Bramin* derives from his birth. f

THE tribes into which the *Indians* are divided are reckoned by travellers to be eighty-four: perhaps when *India* is better known, we shall find them to be many more; for there is a singular disposition in the *Indian*, from very trifling circumstances to form a sect apart from the rest of his neighbours. But the order of pre-eminence of all the tribes in a particular city or province is for the most part indisputably decided. The *Indian* of an inferior tribe thinks himself honoured by being suffered to adopt the customs of a superior tribe; which on its side never fails to assert its prerogatives: the inferior receives the vic- g  
tuals prepared by a superior with respect, but the superior will not partake of a meal which has been prepared by the hands of an inferior. Marriage is circumscribed by the same bounds as the rest of their intercourse; and hence, besides the national physiognomy, the members of each tribe preserve an air of still greater resemblance to one another. Some tribes are remarkable for their beauty, others for their ugliness. All these tribes acknowledge the *Bramins* for their priests, and with them admit transmigration. It is on account of



a of this opinion that some afflict themselves at the death of a fly, though occasioned by their inadvertence. But the far greater number of tribes are not so scrupulous, and eat, though very sparingly, both of fish and flesh; but, like the *Jews*, not of all kinds indifferently. Their diet is chiefly rice, and vegetables dressed with ginger, turmeric, and other hotter spices, which grow almost spontaneously in their gardens. They esteem milk the purest of foods, because they think it partakes of some of the properties of the nectar of their gods, and because they esteem the cow itself almost a divinity.

b AN abhorrence to the shedding of blood, derived from his religion, and seconded by the great temperance of a life which is spent in a very sparing use of animal food, and a total abstinence from intoxicating liquors; the influence of the most regular climates, in which the great heat of the sun and the great fertility of the soil lessen most of the wants to which the human species is subject in aufterer regions, and supply the rest without the exertion of much labour; these causes and their various consequences, have all contributed to render the *Indian* the most enervated inhabitant of the globe. He shudders at the sight of blood, and is of a pusillanimity only to be excused and accounted for by the great delicacy of his constitution. His manners are gentle, his happiness consists in the solaces of domestic life; to which sufficiently inclined by the climate, he is obliged by his religion, which esteems matrimony a duty indispensable in every man who does not quit the world to unite himself to god: such is their phrase. Though permitted by his religion, according to the example of his gods, to have several, he is seldom the husband of more than one wife; and this wife is of a decency of demeanor, of a solicitude in her family, and of a fidelity to her vows, which might do honour to human nature in the most civilized countries. His amusements consist in going to his pagoda, and assisting at religious shews, in fulfilling a variety of ceremonies prescribed him on all occasions by the Bramin; for, subject to a thousand lapses from the ideas he has adopted of impurity, the *Indian* is always offending his gods, who are not to be appeased till his priest is satisfied. But, in a country of such great extent, divided into so many distinct sovereignties, it cannot be expected that there should be no exceptions to one general assertion of the character of the inhabitants. There is every where in the mountains a wild inhabitant, whose bow and  
d *European* can scarcely draw. There are in the woods people who subsist by their incursions into the neighbouring plains, and who, without the ferocity of the *American*, possess all his treachery.

THE arts which furnish the conveniencies of life have been carried by the *Indians* to a pitch far beyond what is necessary to supply the wants of a climate which knows so few. At the same time no ideas of taste or fine design have existed amongst them; and we seek in vain for elegance in the magnificence of the richest empire of the globe. Their knowledge of mechanical powers is so very confined, that we are left to admire, without being able to account for, the manner in which they have erected their capital pagodas. It does not appear that they had ever made a bridge of arches over any of their rivers, before the  
e *Mohammedans* came amongst them. It is to the suppleness with which the whole frame of an *Indian* is endowed, and which is still more remarkable in the formation of his hand, that we are indebted for the exquisite perfection of their manufactures. The same instruments which an *Indian* employs to make a piece of fine muslin, would, under the rigid fingers of an *European*, scarcely produce a piece of canvas. Thus, not content with the presents which nature has showered on their climate, the *Indians* have made improvements when they felt no necessities. They have cultivated the various and valuable productions of their soil, not to the measure of their own, but to that of the wants of all other nations; they have carried their manufactures to a perfection which surpasses the most exquisite productions of *Europe*, and have encouraged with avidity the annual tributes of  
f gold and silver which the rest of the world contest for the privilege of sending to them. They have from time immemorial been as addicted to commerce, as they are averse to war. They have therefore always been immensely rich, and have always remained incapable of defending their wealth.

THE *Mohammedan* princes of *India* naturally gave a preference to the service of men of their own religion, who, from whatever country they came, were of a more vigorous constitution than the stoutest of the subjected nation. This preference has continually encouraged adventurers from *Tartary*, *Persia*, and *Arabia*, to seek their fortunes under a government, from which they were sure of receiving greater encouragement than they could expect at home. However, though the present *Mohammedans* in *India* may be computed at near ten millions, they are still out-numbered by the *Indians* ten to one; and this  
g inferiority of number has obliged the *Mohammedans* to leave many *Rajas*, or *Indian* princes, in possession of their respective sovereignties, which they are permitted to govern without molestation, on condition that they pay the stipulated tribute, and do not infringe any of the articles of the treaties by which they or their ancestors have acknowledged the sove-

*Arts and manufactures of the Indians.*

*State of the Mohammedans of Indostan, compared with that of the original natives.*



reignty of the Great Mogul. Besides the *Indians* who reside in the territories of the *Rajas*, there are every where great numbers in those parts of the country which are immediately subject to the Great Mogul, without the interposition of an *Indian* prince to govern them. They are the only cultivators of the land, and the only manufacturers of the immense quantities of cloths which are made in the empire. It is rare to see in the villages or fields a *Mohammedan* employed in any thing except levying contributions or acting in some other respects as an officer of the Great Mogul. a

IN all the countries absolutely subjected, the Great Mogul styles himself proprietor of all the lands, and parcels them out at will as revenues for life to his feudatories; but still these grants take not away from the cultivator the right of sale and bequest. The policy of all the *Indian* governments of *Indoستان*, as well as that of the Great Mogul, seems to consist more in a perpetual attention to prevent any one family from obtaining great possessions, than in the intention of making slaves of the body of the people; for such a slavery would leave the monarch little grandeur to boast of, and few subjects to command. b

It has been observed, that all the *Mohammedans* established in *India* acquire, in the third generation, the indolence and pusillanimity of the original inhabitants, and at the same time a cruelty of character to which the *Indians* are happily strangers. Hence we are almost induced to give assent to the opinion, that the prohibition of shedding blood of any kind, inculcated by the *Indian* religion, was a political institution, wisely calculated to change into gentler manners the sanguinary disposition, which is said to have characterized all the inhabitants of *Indoستان* before the religion of *Brama* was introduced among them. c

British establishments in  
Indoستان.

THE *British* establishments in the kingdom of *Indoستان* are divided into three governments, independent of each other. *Bombay* commands the factories on the western side of the peninsula, commonly called the *Malabar Coast*, together with those in *Persia*: the establishments and possessions on the western or *Cormandel* coast are under the government of *Madras*; and those in *Bengal* depend on *Calcutta*. From the year 1745 to the conclusion of the late peace, the *English* have been continually engaged in war, in one or other of these divisions; and the preservation of their commerce in the *East Indies* absolutely depended on the conduct and success of the wars of *Cormandel* and *Bengal*. The *French* were beaten by them out of all their settlements; the treacherous designs of the *Dutch* were prevented; great armies of *Indians* were totally defeated; in short, there is no part of the world in which the *British* arms have, of late years, acquired more honour. It is not our business to discuss the merits of the revolution of *Bengal* that was brought about towards the close of the war in those parts, nor of the contests that have since arisen concerning the misbehaviour of the succeeding nabobs: these particulars are variously agitated; but the present peaceful condition of the province, by the reinstating of *Jaffier Aly Cawn*, in whose favour the revolution was first brought about, and the sending over lord *Clive*, seems to make here any observations on those events unnecessary. We shall therefore proceed to the other part of *India*, which is called the *Further India*, or the peninsula beyond the *Ganges*. d

India beyond  
the *Ganges*,  
Etc. described.  
*Ganges*.

WE should in vain seek for any lights, with respect to this country, in the writings of the ancients. They had no idea of it in the time of *Alexander*, and only knew it by the report of those whom trade or curiosity had incited to undertake so long and dangerous a voyage. All of them, astonished at the greatness and rapidity of the *Ganges*, which has not its equal in *Asia*, imagined it was the *Pison*, one of the four rivers of the terrestrial paradise. *Josephus* is the first whom we know to have mentioned this; and he has been followed by many fathers of the church, commentators on scripture, and modern divines. It is difficult to determine whether foreigners or *Indians* have given rise to this notion. All we know is that the latter entertain great reverence for the waters of the *Ganges*. From a persuasion that they deface all the spots of sin, they go in crowds from the remotest parts of the country to wash in them. The reason of this is, because they imagine this river does not take its source from the bosom of the earth, but that it descends from heaven into the paradise of *Devendre*, and from thence into *Indoستان*. Nothing is more childish than the fables related by the Bramins on this subject; yet the confidence of the people is what gives them all their authority. The Mogul and the prince of *Golkonda* drink no other water but that of the *Ganges*; foreigners, on the contrary, pretend that it is very unhealthy, and that it cannot be drank, unless first boiled. There are a great number of superb pagodas on the banks of this river, some of which are immensely rich. At certain festivals, which last several days, there has sometimes been a concourse of 100,000 people, who come to bathe. But the great virtue of this river, and the only one which renders it valuable is, that it washes down gold in its sands, and throws it on its banks; that it is placed in the first rank of those rivers which produce precious stones; that the gulph of *Bengal*, into which it discharges itself, abounds in pearls and valuable stones; and that the *Ganges* is looked upon as the origin of them. e  
f  
g



**a** The peninsula beyond the *Ganges* stretches its whole length into the sea, and modern geographers give it 530 leagues from north to south, and 360 from east to west, its greatest breadth. It is divided into three parts: the north, in which are the kingdoms of *Aham*, or *Azem*, *Ava*, *Pegu*, *Laos*, and some others little known: the south, which contains those of *Siam* and *Mulaya*: the east, which comprehends those of *Tonquin*, *Cochin-China*, and *Cambodia*. Extent and division of the peninsula beyond the Ganges.

THE kingdom of *Azem* lies to the east of the Great Mogul's dominions, to the north of the kingdom of *Ava*, and to the west of the lake *Chiamay*. It was hardly known before *Mirgimola*, general of *Aurengzebe*, conquered it about the middle of the last century. He

Kingdom of Azem.

**b** undertook this expedition with the more confidence, as that country had been without any wars for the space of 6 or 700 years, and the people had entirely neglected the use of arms. It was not difficult to conquer such a people; yet tradition attributes to them the invention of gunpowder, which passed from *Azem* to *Pegu*, and from *Pegu* to *China*, which has given occasion to say, that the *Chinese* were the authors of that discovery. It is said, that, in that war, *Mirgimola* had taken several pieces of cannon, which were all of iron.

THIS kingdom is one of the best in *Asia*, and produces every thing that is necessary for the sustenance of man. Mines of gold, silver, steel, lead, and iron, are found here, the property of which the king has reserved for himself, on condition of not levying any subsidies on his people; and in order not to harass them by any unseemly labour, he employs none but slaves purchased from his neighbours, to work them. Thus all the inferior subjects of *Azem* enjoy themselves in ease and affluence, which is not the case with the rest of the *Indians*, who have scarce any thing but slavery and misery for their portion, in the midst of a country where they ought to live in riches and plenty. The princes reside in the city of *Kemmerous*, about twenty-five or thirty days journey from the ancient capital, which bore the same name; but their tombs and those of all the royal family are in the city of *Azoo*, on the banks of the river *Laquia*. Every prince builds a kind of chapel in the great pagoda to serve for his burial-place; and being persuaded that after their death they go to another world, and that those who die sullied by any crime, suffer a great deal, chiefly by hunger and thirst, they place all necessaries near the corpse, to serve them as they may want. The king is interred with those idols of gold and silver which he worshipped in his life-time, a live elephant, twelve camels, six horses, and a great number of hounds, in the belief that all these things will be useful to him in the other world. Barbarity accompanies superstition in this funeral solemnity. At the king's death, the woman whom he has loved best, and the principal officers of his household, poison themselves, that they may have the glory of being interred with him, and of serving him in a future state. If a private person, all his friends and relations must assist at his funeral; and every one must throw into the grave the bracelets and other ornaments he wears.

**d** THE accounts of those who have travelled into the East, give us little or no information about the kingdom of *Ava*, which is said to be four times as large as *Great Britain*. They only tell us that the prince is immensely rich, which appears by the magnificence of his palace.

Kingdom of Ava.

**e** ALL that historians relate of the kingdom of *Pegu* is drawn from *Gaspar Balbi*, a rich *Venetian* merchant, who once traded thither. According to him, that kingdom had been exposed to several revolts, and had been the theatre of a bloody war during all the 16th century. The *Peguans* may be ranked amongst the nastiest and most superstitious of all mankind. They maintain and worship crocodiles, and will drink nothing but the waters of the ditches where those monstrous animals harbour. By thus exposing themselves to the manifest hazard of their lives, they have frequently the misfortune to be devoured. They have five principal festivals in the year, called *sapans*, which they celebrate with an extraordinary magnificence. In one of them the king and queen make a pilgrimage about twelve leagues from the city, riding on a triumphal car, so richly adorned with jewels, that it may be said without an hyperbole, that they carry about them the value of a kingdom. This prince is extremely rich, and has in the chapel of his palace several pagods of inestimable value, some of them being of massy gold, or silver, and adorned with all sorts of precious stones. The talapoins, or priests of this country, have no possessions; but such is the respect paid them by the people, that they are never known to want. They preach to them every *Monday* not to commit murder, to take from no person any thing belonging to him, to do no hurt, to give no offence, to avoid impurity or superstition, but above all not to worship the devil. But their discourses have no effect in the last respect. The people attached to *Manicheism* believe, that all good comes from God, and that the devil is the author of all the evils that happen to men; and that therefore they ought to worship him, that he may not afflict them. This is a common notion among the *Indian* idolaters.

Kingdom of Pegu.

THERE



Kingdom of  
Laos.

THERE is no country, where more ivory is to be had than in the kingdom of *Laos*, or *Lao*. Elephants are so numerous in it, that the inhabitants are said to have taken their name from them; many kinds of animals, as oxen and buffaloes, which are here very common; a great quantity of benjoin, the best in the East; lacca, being a kind of earth met with in some forests lying about ant-hills; garden fruits, vast quantities of rice, fish of an enormous bulk with which the rivers abound, and salt spontaneously formed of a kind of foam which the great rains leave upon the earth, are the other advantages of this kingdom. Nothing can be more senseless than the whims with which the priests here have possessed the people, and which they give out as the foundation of their religion. This is, that a buffalo, or wild ox, which nature had formed with all imaginable defects, produced a gourd full of black and white men; and that there are four Gods who governed the world 18000 years before it was renewed, and who afterwards retired into a very large and spacious column, which was raised towards the north. Such visions, accompanied with corrupt morals, could only render the people as vicious as their priests, if the severity of the law did not put a restraint on their licentiousness. The propensity which the *Laosians* have to passion and bloodshed, has forced their kings to punish, not only those who give a blow, but even those who shew anger against another. Nay, frequently to inspire the greater terror, the innocent is involved in the punishment of the guilty. If the chief of a family is convicted of any great crime, all who belong to him in the different degrees of consanguinity are degraded, and deprived of their offices, rights, and privileges; and, for the future, are employed in nothing but the service of the elephants, as gathering grass for them, carrying it to the king's stables, and watching them all night.

Kingdom of  
Siam.

To the south of those countries lies the kingdom of *Siam*, the most famous of all the *Indies*. The *Portuguese* have given the name of *Siam* to the capital of the kingdom, which the natives call *Crung si ayn, thaya'*, that is, the excellent city, or the admirable, extraordinary, and angelic city, because they believe it impregnable. It is built on the river *Menan*, which means the sea of waters, and forms an island two leagues in circuit. The place is besides every where surrounded with a strong wall, and has within itself resources sufficient to support a siege of many months against an army 50,000 strong. The chief of these resources is an infallible succour from the overflowing of the river every six months; so that there are no lines which it does not carry off, nor army which it does not oblige to retire. By means of those waters, they have made several canals, which run through all the streets, without doing any damage; and there are few houses to which there is not access to with a boat. The convenience of transporting their effects and landing them quite from the sea at the warehouses, with the other advantages of the kingdom, have drawn traders thither from all parts. At first the *Portuguese* were masters of the commerce; but some insults offered to the *Indians* and *Dutch* merchants gave the latter a pretence to declare themselves their enemies; and in 1634 they built one of the finest lodges they have in the East. Notwithstanding, the *Portuguese* were not entirely expelled; they have still factories there as well as the *English*, *French*, *Chinese*, and some others, who all dwell in the two vast and rich suburbs which lie to the east and west of the city. Here it is that some modern travellers relate that they have seen immense treasures of all kinds. The riches of the country are chiefly displayed in the pagodas, and the prince's palace, by the quantity of workmanship in gold with which they are adorned; by their prodigious bulk, their admirable structure, and the incredible collections of precious stones of all kinds. However, all this kingdom, which is very large, is nothing better than a desert. In proportion as one advances into the country, scarce any thing is seen but forests and wild beasts. The people, who are miserable, dwell on the banks of the rivers, and prefer that situation to any other, because the lands, which are overflowed six months in the year, produce, almost without any culture, great quantities of rice, which does not thrive but in water. In this rice consist all the riches of the country. Thus in going up from *Bancok* to *Luvo*, is seen, with respect to the people and the cities, all that can merit any attention in this kingdom. Haughtiness, despotism, and an absolute government, are the only marks by which the prince chuses to be distinguished from all other sovereigns. The respect which he demands of his people reaches almost to adoration, and the posture in which they must appear in his presence is a testimony of it. Even in council, which lasts sometimes four hours, the ministers of state, and the mandarins, are continually prostrated before him. They never speak to him but on their knees, having their hands raised to their heads, making every moment profound reverences, and accompanying their discourse with pompous titles, celebrating his power and his goodness. When he goes abroad, all are obliged to keep within doors. His subjects are slaves, who possess nothing but what belongs to him. Even nobility is not hereditary, consisting only in honours and employments, which the prince bestows, and which he may withdraw whenever he pleases.



<sup>a</sup> THE king of *Siam*'s dominions stretch southward to the neighbourhood of *Ligor*, where the kingdom of *Malacca* begins. This country is that peninsula or tongue of land which lies between the strait of that name and the gulph of *Siam*. Some travellers assure us, that it is divided into seven kingdoms, every one of which may be about ten leagues in breadth, and thirty in length. It was discovered in 1509, by *Seguera*: and in 1511, by *Alphonso Albuquerque*, who made himself master of the city of *Malacca*. The *Dutch*, supported by the forces of the king of *Tbor*, in 1606 began to disturb the *Portuguese* in their possession, and after thirty-five years of continual hostilities, took it from them in 1641.

Kingdom of  
Malacca.

<sup>b</sup> THE inhabitants of *Malacca*, or the *Malais*, are, for the most part, savages, and live after the manner of beasts. The heat of the climate, which is almost under the Line, renders their colour extremely swarthy: and they are very fond of *Europeans* on account of their whiteness. As soon as they arrive on their coasts, they offer them their wives and daughters, that they may have children like them. Notwithstanding the barbarity of their manners, their language is reckoned the finest in all the *Indies*, where it is at least as common as the *French* in *Europe*. It is very easily acquired, because it has no inflections, either in nouns or verbs. The country is rich only on account of its commerce with the *Chinese*; it must then have been through ignorance or mistake, that the ancients gave it the name of the *Golden Chersonese*; or rather it is evident they did not give it to that kingdom. Yet we are told by some missionaries, that they reckon their riches by bars of gold, and that every

<sup>c</sup> bar contains four quintals.

ON the south and west by the sea, and the dominions of the king of *Siam*, lies the kingdom of *Camboia*. This country, which throughout its whole extent is watered by the river *Mecon*, produces in abundance all that is necessary for the life of man, whether in rice or flesh, in cocoas, or fruits of all other kinds. Yet it is ill-peopled, and its trade inconsiderable. The capital of the same name is the only place which deserves notice. The prince resides in a very ordinary palace, but it is defended by a great number of *Chinese* cannon, and other pieces of artillery which were saved from the wreck of two *Dutch* vessels thrown upon the coast of this kingdom. There is a temple here of a very particular structure, whose beauty is much commended. It is supported by wooden pillars varnished with

<sup>d</sup> black; the foliages and reliefs are gilded: even the pavement is valuable, and is preserved by mats laid over it. The priests who serve in it hold the first rank in the state.

Kingdom of  
Camboia.

THE use of betel is not peculiar to the people of this country; nothing is so common throughout the *Indies*, and bread is not more so in other places of the world. It is a plant which creeps along the ground like peas or hops; and its stalk being weak, it must be supported by a prop, or planted near the tree areca, to which it fixes itself like ivy. Its leaf resembles that of the citron-tree, though a little longer; its stalks and fibres are also stronger, and it becomes reddish when dried. Betel thrives best in watery places, such as the banks of the sea or rivers. There it bears a fruit shaped like a rat's tail, but produces none in climates too hot or too cold, where the inhabitants must be contented with the leaf, which is prepared with the fruit of the areca, and a little lime made of oyster-shells. An *Indian* is seldom seen without betel in his mouth. As soon as any one goes into a house on business, or to make a visit, it is brought and presented to the company by way of compliment. When foreign ambassadors are admitted to an audience of the king, they find him commonly reposing on his couch, or seated cross legged on a carpet on the ground with an officer in waiting, who holds his betel, which he chews continually, throwing out the husks and the saliva which it produces. The greatest honour he can do them is to invite them to taste his betel. The *Indians* say it fastens the gums, preserves the teeth, makes the breath sweet, is good for the stomach, promotes digestion, prevents wind and vomiting, to which they are very subject, and lastly, prevents the scurvy. Notwithstanding all those real or

<sup>e</sup> imaginary properties, few *Europeans* can accustom themselves to it. In many it occasions sickness, others it perfectly intoxicates, but so as not to last long.

<sup>f</sup>

Use of betel in  
India.

THE areca, which is used with the leaves of the betel, is from a tree nearly resembling the cocoa in height and shape, except that its trunk is smaller, and its leaves shorter. From beneath the leaves there proceeds a long mass, which forms a bunch or cluster of fruit like nuts or apricots: the flowers lie intermingled with the fruit. Two months after the flowers fall off, the husks which cover the fruit, begin to open and fall off: then an oblong fruit appears, of the bulk of a middling plum, and of a whitish and shining colour; its shell becomes firm, compact, and reddish; the pulp contained in it is of a brown cast, bordering on red, and soft and astringent to the taste. The *Indians* prepare the pulp, or kernel, of this fruit with the leaves of the betel, dividing a nut into eight or ten parts.

Use of the  
areca.

<sup>g</sup> SOUTH-EAST of the kingdom of *Camboia* lies that of *Ciampa*, but so small, that it has not merited the particular attention of travellers. It is bounded on the north by the desarts of *Cochin-China*, another kingdom, of which authors have given us a notion more splendid than real. We ought, therefore, to prefer the simple and ingenious account of *F. Alexander*

Kingdoms of  
Ciampa and  
Cochin-  
China.



*ander of Rhodes*, a Jesuit, and famous missionary in those parts. This kingdom, according to him, was formerly a province of *China*, and was separated from it now upwards of two centuries ago, by the revolt of a governor sent thither by the king of *Tonquin*, who caused himself to be declared king. There is no country in the torrid zone wherein the four seasons are better distinguished. Though the rivers are not considerable, they are sources of its plenty. During the months of *September*, *October*, and *November*, they rise every fortnight, overflow all the fields for three days, and render them so fertile by their slime, that they can sow and reap twice a year. The soil produces rice, several sorts of fruits and herbs, pepper, cinnamon, benjoin, eagle, and calemba-wood. Gold, silver, silk, cotton, and porcelain, are likewise to be found here. Amongst other rare animals, are rhinoceros's and elephants, of an extraordinary size and surprising docility. The sea abounds with excellent fish. There are sixty good harbours, which occasion the inhabitants to apply themselves much to trade and navigation; that of *Faifo* is one of the most considerable. The city is inhabited by *Chinese* and *Japanese*, who carry on a free trade under the protection of the prince. It is defended by a fortress, and situated on a navigable river, a little above its mouth.

Kingdom of  
Tonquin.

NORTHWARD of *Cochin China* lies the kingdom of *Tonquin*. The voyages to this place which religion and commerce have given occasion to, have procured us a very circumstantial knowledge of the government and nature of this country. *Tonquin* had been heretofore subject to the vast empire of *China*, when a famous robber, called *Din*, put himself at the head of a body of men of his own profession, into whom he inspired the resolution of taking up arms, and throwing off the yoke of all servitude. He succeeded, and those whom he engaged in the revolt, out of gratitude, placed the crown upon his head. The happiness which the *Tonquinse* flattered themselves to have acquired by their independence, became to them a source of miseries and cruel wars, still more pernicious than their former subjection to the *Chinese* emperors. For seven centuries after their revolt, they were almost continually in arms, one against another, in support of the different factions which ambition and jealousy had raised up among them; and the families on the throne have been already changed six times.

THE issue of the last civil war was a treaty, by which the competitor of the king *Le*, less desirous of the title of sovereign than of real power and royal authority, left him all the external splendor of a monarch, on condition that he should have the absolute command in the armies, with the greatest part of the revenues of the kingdom, and that his descendants should succeed to the same privileges. By virtue of this agreement, there are two sorts of kings; he who receives all the honours of royalty is called *Bua*, and the *Chouab* has all its advantages. The *Bua*, sensible of the diminution of his power, is seldom seen out of his palace. He is taken up almost every day in giving audience to his subjects, hearing their complaints, and determining their private differences; which is the utmost extent of his power, for he can set forth no act or edict concerning the public government, without the consent of the *Chouab*. The princes, his sons, partake of his servitude: they never go out of the palace but four times a year, and that only six days each time; and they are, besides, attended by officers whom the *Chouab* appoints for them. In the first of those six days of liberty, they visit the temples; the two following they take the diversion of hunting; and, during the three last, they sail upon the river in galleys magnificently adorned. The right of primogeniture does not regulate the succession to the crown; the will of the father decides it in favour of him whom he loves or esteems most. As soon as he is declared, the *Chouab*, followed by his principal officers, the counsellors of state, and the eunuchs, do him homage, and take an oath to place him on the throne after his father's death.

THE pomp and magnificence of all the ceremonies observed at the king's funeral, are very extraordinary. During the sixty-five days that follow his decease, he is served as if still alive, and provisions are distributed amongst the bonzes and poor. The whole nation puts on mourning, and every one wears it according to his rank; the mandarins for three years; the king's household nine months, the noblesse six, and the people three. These three years are times of sadness, during which no rejoicings are allowed, except at the coronation of the succeeding prince. The custom is to carry the body of the dead king into the desarts lying beyond *Bodego*. It is two days journey from *Keco*, the capital of the kingdom, to that city. But as the king and all the court go thither on foot, it takes them up fifteen or sixteen days. All the road is covered with a stuff of a violet colour, and at every quarter of a league there are places for refreshment. The *Chouab* takes care that there shall be lodgings for every day. In the midst of an immense and magnificent retinue of officers, horses, and elephants, is the chariot which carries the king's coffin, drawn by eight harts trained for that purpose. After the corpse comes to *Bodego*, it is put into a galley, and is attended only by the six principal eunuchs of the court, who inter it in a remote place, after having obliged themselves by oath never to reveal it. This secrecy is, perhaps,



a perhaps, an article of religion, or a precaution to prevent the treasures buried with him from being carried off, which they imagine he may have an occasion for in the other world. It is said, that the princes and princesses order themselves to be buried near him, out of a motive of gratitude, and that they may continue to render him their services.

After this funeral ceremony comes on the coronation of the new king, which diffuses pleasures and diversions over the city of *Keco* and the country about. He is carried upon an elephant into the great court of the palace, which is covered with rich tapestries in form of a tent, and there he receives the oath of fidelity from the great men of the kingdom, to whom he makes a present of several cakes of gold, and small bars of silver, the only money used in this country. Afterwards, a large camp is erected in the midst of a vast plain  
b along the river *Chale*. The king goes thither with all the officers of his household, and a great part of the army, and there receives the oaths of the deputies of his kingdom, and of the people. One half of the month passes away in rejoicings; every day is remarkable for the diversity of festivals, and the generosity of the prince; even the darkness of the night is not unemployed; for then the amusement of various scenes of fireworks charm the senses, which are said to be infinitely finer and more curious than those we have in *Europe*.

This particular species of ingenuity as well as many others, are a consequence of the emulation which the kings of *Tonquin*, like those of *China*, have encouraged amongst their subjects, in order to refine and improve all the sciences. Nobility, with suitable revenues, is the reward of those who excel in the knowledge of the laws, of mathematics, astronomy,  
c and natural philosophy. Several days in the year are set apart for the examination of those who present themselves, and sometimes there are near 3000 candidates. The king honours this ceremony with his presence; he confers nobility on those who have given satisfaction to the questions of the mandarins; he orders a robe of violet satin to be given them, and appoints the cities and villages which are to produce the revenues he is pleased to assign them.

The physicians are another class of the learned, and much esteemed; all their study is to know simples, and to apply them according to the different distempers. They pretend to infallible remedies for several diseases thought to be incurable in *Europe*. They make use of tea, which is brought from *China* and *Japan*, for the cure of pains in the head, the  
d stone, and cholic.

Where the arts flourish, it seldom happens that the manners of the people are rough and unpolished. The *Tonquinese* are affable, and naturally formed to the laws of reason. The gravity and modesty of their garb shews their character. Both sexes are clothed almost in the same manner: their dress is a long robe, pretty straight, with a close neck, reaching down to the heels, and kept tight about the waist with a silk girdle of gold and silver tissue: the military dress comes no farther than the knees. It is the common custom of the country to go barefooted all the year. The *Tonquinese* ladies are as modest and reserved as the common women are free; they wear a sort of very broad hat, made of the leaves of a tree, and adorned with a net-work of thread curiously wrought. They wear their hair as  
e long as it will grow, and dress it with great care; the men tie it under the neck, or leave it loose behind, especially the mandarins and learned men. They are of a strong and hardy constitution, their stature middling and well-proportioned, their features just and agreeable. Those who live in the cities are rather white than brown, but the country people are almost all olive-coloured. All are indefatigable in whatever business they apply to. Their judgment is just, and they are capable of long application. Nature has blessed them with so happy a memory, that, perhaps, there is no nation which surpasses them in that particular; whatever they study or write, all is done singing, in order to imprint it the better on their minds. They still make use of lunar months. The lower class of people are slaves during one part of the year; for, except the citizens of *Keco*, all tradesmen whatever are  
f obliged to work three months for the royal family, and two more for the mandarins and great lords. One of their most laborious employments is to lop the trees for feeding the elephants belonging to the king and the army. Their principal riches consist in great quantities of silk, musk, and aloes-wood, which they sell to foreigners; they value themselves much on their fairness in trade, which is the more surprising, as they are neighbours to the *Chinese*, and have frequent dealings with that cunning people, who are versed in all manner of deceit.

These are the advantageous lights in which the *Tonquinese* appear; but, when we take a view of their worship, the scene is changed: nothing is seen but error, impiety, and extravagant superstition. Of the three sects into which they are divided, that of a hermit,  
g called *Chachabout*, might be considered as the only reasonable one, by the observation of the precepts of the law of nature, of which he has made ten express commandments, if it was not corrupted by imaginations and chimeras founded on the metempsychosis, and if it did not bring up its votaries in idolatry. The second is, that of the philosopher *Confucius*, whose



whose memory is so famous throughout *China* and the neighbouring states. The doctrine of his books, as explained by the learned men of this country, is nothing but idolatry, or, perhaps, a refined atheism, acknowledging no other God but the heavens, or virtue, and supposing that the human soul evaporates into air at death. The third sect is, that of *Lantbu*, originally a *Chinese*, whose whole study was the contriving of enchantments, and the impostures of magic, which he unhappily rendered respected by a false outside of zeal and charity for the poor. Most of the bonzes, or *Tonquinese* priests, offer no sacrifices, and give no responses till they have consulted the devil by some magic charms, or ceremonies, all tending to that wicked purpose.

Indian or  
Oriental  
islands.

WE now come to the *Indian* and *Oriental* islands, which consist of, 1. The *Ladrone-Islands*. 2. The *Japan-Islands*. 3. The *Philippine-Islands*. 4. The *Moluccas* and *Amboyna*. 5. The *Banda-Islands*. 6. The islands of *Celebes*, *Gilolo*, *Ceram*, &c. which surround the *Moluccas* and *Banda-Islands*. 7. The *Sunda-Islands*, as *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, and *Java*, and those that lie to the eastward of *Java*, *Bally*, *Lomboe*, *Timor*, &c. 8. The *Nicobar-Islands*. 9. The *Andaman-islands*. 10. The *Maldivia-Islands*. And 11. The island of *Ceylon*.

Ladrone  
Islands

THE *Ladrone*, called also the *Marian-Islands*, are about twelve in number; they are situate in the *Pacific Ocean*, in 140 degrees of east longitude, and between 12 and 24 deg. of north latitude. *Guam*, the largest, is forty miles long and twelve broad. The *Spaniards* have a fort, and a small garrison of thirty or forty men, in the chief town of the same name; and most ships touch here in their voyage from *Mexico* to the *East-Indies*. These islands were discovered by *Magellan*, in his voyage to the *Spice-Islands*, in *India*, by the west, in the year 1521. They are remarkable for producing a fruit as big as a football, which yields a soft pulp like the crumb of a white loaf, and is therefore called bread-fruit by seamen. Their swift sailing sloops, going generally twenty-four miles in an hour, is another peculiarity. One of them that was dispatched to *Manila* in the *Philippine-Islands* performed the voyage in four days, being 1200 miles. It was at the little island of *Tinian*, situate north of *Guam*, that lord *Anson* first touched, after passing the *Pacific-Ocean*, in his voyage round the world. He found great refreshments in it, the island, though uninhabited, abounding in cattle, fruits, and other necessaries. The *Japan-Islands* may be seen described in the same chapter with *China*.

Philippine-  
Islands.

THE *Philippine-Islands* are situate in the *Chinesian-Sea*, between 114 and 131 deg. of east longitude, and between 5 and 19 of north latitude; comprehending the islands of *Luconia*, or *Manila*, *Tandaga*, or *Samar*, *Mosbato*, *Mindora*, *Luban*, *Paragoa*, *Panay*, *Leyte*, *Bobol*, *Sibu*, *Sogbu*, *Negros*, *St. John*, *Xollo*, and *Mindanao*. They lie 300 miles south-east of *China*: and *Manila*, the chief, is 400 miles long, and 200 broad. They were discovered by *Ferdinand Magellan*, a *Portuguese* gentleman, who had served his native country both in the wars of *Africa* and in the *East-Indies*; particularly under *Albuquerque*, the famous *Portuguese* general, who reduced *Goa* and *Malacca* to the obedience of that crown. *Magellan*, having a considerable share in those actions, and finding himself neglected by the government of *Portugal*, and even denied, as it is said, the small advance of a ducat a month in his pay; left the court of *Portugal* in disgust, and offered his service to *Charles V.* then emperor of *Germany* and king of *Spain*, to whom he shewed there was a probability of discovering a way to the *Spice Islands* in the *East-Indies*, by the west: whereupon, the command of five small ships being given him, he set sail from *Seville* on the 10th of *August*, 1519; and, standing over to the coast of *South America*, continued his voyage to the southward to 52 deg. where he formerly hit upon a strait, since called the *Strait of Magellan*, which carried him into the *Pacific Ocean*, or *Scuth-Sea*; and then, steering northward, repassed the *Equator*; after which he sailed west over that vast ocean, till he arrived at *Guam*, one of the *Ladrones*, on the 6th of *March*, 1521, and soon after came to the *Philippine Islands*, which he took possession of in the name of the king of *Spain*, but happened to be killed in a skirmish in one of them. His people, however, arrived afterwards at the *Molucca's*, or *Clove-Islands*, where they left a colony, and returned to *Spain* by the way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, being the first men that ever sailed round the globe. But there was no attempt made by the *Spaniards* to subdue, or plant, the *Philippine-Islands*, until the year 1564, in the reign of *Philip II.* king of *Spain*, when don *Lewis de Valasco*, viceroy of *Mexico*, sent *Michael Lopez Delagaspes* with a fleet thither from *Mexico*, and a force sufficient to make a conquest of these islands, which he named the *Philippines*, in honour of *Philip II.* son of *Charles V.* who was then upon the throne of *Spain*, and they have ever since been subject to that crown.

IN the late war, *Spain* having entered into engagements with *France*, in consequence of the *Family-Compact* of the house of *Bourbon*, it was found expedient in *England* to declare war also against *Spain*; whereupon a force was fitted out from our *East-India* settlements, particularly *Madrafs*, for the conquest of the *Philippine-Islands*. *Manila*, the capital



a pitail, was taken on the 6th of October, 1762, by storm, after twelve days operation; but to save so fine a city from destruction, it was stipulated to pay a ransom for it, to the amount of a million sterling.

THE inhabitants of the *Philippine Islands* consist of *Chinese, Ethiopians, Malais, Spaniards, Portuguese, Pintados*, or painted people, and *Mestees*, a mixture of all these. It is observable, that the features of the blacks of these islands are as agreeable as those of the white people. *Manila*, lying between the eastern and western continents, was once esteemed the best situation in the world for trade. Two vessels sailing yearly to *Acapulco* in *Mexico*, loaded with the riches of the East, returned, as they do at this day, freighted with silver, and make 400 per cent. profit. There is not a soil in the world that produces greater plenty of all things necessary for life, as appears by the multitude of inhabitants found in the woods and mountains, and only subsisted by the fruits of the earth, and the venison they take. Nor can any country in the world appear more beautiful; for there is a perpetual verdure, and buds, blossoms, and fruit, are found upon the trees all the year round, as well on the mountains as the cultivated gardens. Vast quantities of gold are washed down from the hills by the rains, and found mixed with the sand of their rivers: there are also mines of other metals, and plenty of cattle of all sorts. These islands also, being hot and moist, produce abundance of venomous creatures, as the soil does poisonous herbs and flowers, which not only kill those that touch or taste them, but so infect the air, that many people die in the time of their blossoming. They are also subject to terrible earthquakes: by one that happened in 1645, a third part of the city of *Manila* was overthrown, and no less than 3000 people perished in the ruins. The *Spanish* viceroy resides at *Manila*, and lives in the state of a sovereign prince. The present viceroy is an archbishop, and the same who agreed to surrender these islands to general *Draper* and admiral *Cornish*, who commanded on the expedition. The government is said to be one of the best in the gift of the king of *Spain*: the archbishop is a kind of pope in this part of the world; but as the inhabitants are a compound of every *Indian* nation, every religion is tolerated.

d ALL the *Philippine Islands* belong to the crown of *Spain*, except *Mindance*, the largest of them next to *Manila*. It is near 200 miles long, and 150 broad, inhabited by very different people; those of the inland country are supposed to be the antient Pagan inhabitants, whom the Mohammedans, who possess the coasts, have driven up into the mountains.

THE *Moluccas*, or *Clove-Islands*, are situate south of the *Philippines*, in 125 degrees of east longitude, and between 1 degree south, and 2 degrees north latitude, comprehending the islands of *Bachiam, Machiam, Motyr, Ternate, and Tydor*. They produce neither corn nor rice, but the natives make bread of sago. Besides the tropical fruits, they once produced great quantities of cloves; but the *Dutch* send people every year to root up all the plants of that kind, lest other nations should possess them, and have transplanted the cloves to *Ambogna*, which lies south of the island of *Ceram*. The largest of the *Molucca-*

*Molucca, or Clove-Islands.*

e THE *Banda*, or *Nutmeg-Islands*, are situate between 127 and 128 degrees of east longitude, and between 4 and 5 deg. of south latitude, comprehending the islands of *Lantor, Poleron, Rosinging, Pooloway, and Gonapi*. These alone produce the nutmeg, which is covered by the mace: they also produce most of the tropical fruits, but scarce any corn or cattle; the largest of them is scarce twenty miles round. The *Dutch* keep the inhabitants entirely dependent on them for their provisions.

*Banda-Islands.*

THE islands surrounding the *Moluccas* and *Banda*, and lying under, or near the Equator, are, *Ambogna, Celebes, or Macassar, Gilolo, Ceram, Flores, Timor, Misacomby, Bouton, Bouro*, and a few others.

*Islands surrounding the Moluccas and Banda.*

f AMBOYNA is situate in 126 degrees of east longitude, and 3. 40. of south latitude, between the islands of *Molucca* and *Banda*, and commands both. It is about seventy miles in circumference, and the *Dutch* have a strong castle in it, defended by 7 or 800 men, to protect their plantations of cloves. Here the *English* and *Dutch* had their respective factories and settlements, and had by treaty agreed to divide the *Spice Islands* between them; but the *Dutch*, under pretence of a plot the *English* were concerned in against them, seized upon the *English* factors and merchants, tortured them by all the cruel methods they could invent, in order to make them confess a plot, and then put them to death. They also seized upon the *English* shipping, expelled the *English* from their settlements in the *Banda-Islands*, which had put themselves under the protection of the king of *Great-Britain*, and proceeded to massacre and extirpate the natives, and this in a time of full peace, in the year 1622, just after a treaty was concluded between the two nations for confirming their respective rights and possessions in the *East-Indies*; and they have continued in possession of these invaluable islands ever since.

*Ambogna.*

THE island of *Celebes*, or *Macassar*, is situate under the Equator, between the island of



Celebes, Gilolo, Ceram, &c.

*Borneo*, and the *Spice Islands*; and is 200 miles long, and 200 broad. It produces no spice, except pepper, but opium in abundance. No place is furnished with a greater variety of poisons; and the natives, it is said, study which will have the most speedy operation. Their darts, which are dipt in poison, give instant death; if a limb be cut off immediately after the wound is received, it will not save the patient's life. The *Dutch* have fortified this island, as a barrier against all nations that may attempt to visit the islands where cloves and nutmegs grow. *Gilolo*, another large island, which lies under the Equator, near the *Spice Islands* is fortified by the *Dutch* in like manner. *Ceram* also, which covers the nutmeg islands, they have secured by their fortifications, and will sink any ship that shall attempt to traffic in those seas.

Sunda-Islands.

THE *Sunda-Islands* are situate in the *Indian Ocean*, between 93 and 120 degrees of east longitude, and between 8 deg. north, and 8 deg. south latitude, comprehending the islands of *Borneo*, *Sumatra*, *Java*, *Bally*, *Lamboo*, and *Banca*.

Borneo.

*BORNEO* is situate under the Equator, and is the largest island in the world, being 800 miles long, and 700 broad. The flat country near the coast is overflowed most part of the year, which makes the air very unhealthful; and they build their towns upon floats in the middle of their rivers. Besides rice, cotton, canes, pepper, and the tropical fruits, diamonds are here found of a large size, and excellent water. The coast is governed by Mohammedan princes, and the inland parts inhabited by Pagans.

Sumatra.

*SUMATRA* is divided into two equal parts by the Equator, extending five degrees; and upwards north-west of it, and five to the south-east; and is 1000 miles long, and 150 broad. This is supposed to be the *Opbir* of the ancients, being rich in gold; but what the *Europeans* trade with the inhabitants chiefly for is their pepper. Both the *English* and *Dutch* have several colonies and settlements here: the chief of the *British* settlements are those of *Bencoolen* and *Fort Marlbro'*, on the west coast, from whence the *East-India* company import more pepper than from any other country in *India*. *Bencoolen* was taken in the late war by the *French*, who put the *Dutch* in possession of it; but the definitive treaty of peace has since recovered it for the *English*. The coasts are possessed by Mohammedan, and the inland country by Pagan princes.

Java.

*JAVA*, situate south of *Borneo*, is 700 miles long, and 200 broad. The country is mountainous and woody in the middle, but a flat coast and a great many marshes render the air unhealthful. It produces pepper, sugar, tobacco, rice, coffee, cocoa-nuts, plants, and other tropical fruits. The *Dutch* are absolute masters of the greatest part of the island, particularly of the north coast, though there are still some princes beyond the mountains on the south coast, who maintain their independency. *Batavia*, in this island, is the capital of all the *Dutch* dominions in *India*, an exceeding fine town and port, well fortified, and defended by a castle and strong garrison: they have about 20,000 forces in the island, either *Dutch*, or formed out of the several nations they have enslaved; and they have a fleet of between twenty and thirty men of war, with which they give law to every power on the coast of *Asia* and *Africa*, and to all the *European* powers that visit the *Indian Ocean*. It was but a little before the Revolution they expelled us our settlement at *Bantam*; but no nation has been dealt more cruelly with than the *Chinese*, who fled thither, rather than submit to the *Tartar* princes. There are 100,000 of them in the island, and about 30,000 resided in the city of *Batavia*, where they had a particular quarter assigned them, and grew very rich by traffic. In the year 1740, the *Dutch*, pretending that the *Chinese* were in a plot against them, sent a body of troops into their quarter, and demanded their arms, which the *Chinese* readily delivered up; and the next day the governor sent another body of troops, with orders to murder and massacre every one of the *Chinese*, men, women, and children. Some relate, there were 20,000, others 30,000, that were put to death without any manner of trial; and yet the barbarous governor, who was the instrument of this cruel proceeding, had the assurance to embark for *Europe*, imagining he had amassed wealth enough to secure him against any prosecution in *Holland*; but the *Dutch*, finding themselves detested and abhorred by all mankind for this piece of tyranny, endeavoured to throw the odium of it on the governor, though he had the hands of all the council of *Batavia*, except one, to the order for the massacre. The states, therefore, dispatched a packet to the *Cape of Good Hope*, containing orders to apprehend the governor of *Batavia*, if he came to *Europe* that way, and to send him back to *Batavia* to be tried. He was accordingly apprehended at the *Cape*, but has never been heard of since. It is supposed, he was thrown overboard in his passage to *Batavia*, that there might be no further enquiries into the matter; and it is said, all the wealth this merciful gentleman had amassed, and sent over before him in four ships, was cast away in the passage. The rest of the *Sunda islands* are inconsiderable.

Andaman and Nicobar Isles.

THE *Andaman* and *Nicobar Islands* lie near the coast of *Malacca*, at the entrance of the bay of *Bengal*; they afford no merchandize but provisions, besides the tropical fruits, with which they supply the shipping that touch there.



a THE *Maldivia Islands* consist of numberless little rocks, just above the water; lying between the Equator and *Cape Comorin*, in the *Hitber India*, and afford little more than rice, the tropical fruits, and fish; besides the little shells called cowries, which serve instead of small cash in most of the *Indian* nations. Maldivia-  
Isles.

CEYLON is the last island of note in this part of the world. It is situated about 45 leagues from *Cape Comorin*, between the 6th and 10th degree of north latitude, and between the 79th and 82d degree of east longitude; and is about sixty leagues long, and above 200 in circumference. Some imagine it to be the *Taprobana* of the antients. It was first discovered by the *Portuguese* in 1506, and in 1602, began to be visited by the *Dutch*, who, encouraged and assisted by the natives, successively seized all the forts possessed by the *Portuguese*, whom they drove quite out of the island in 1657, by the reduction of *Colombo*, the handsomest and strongest town in *Ceylon*. In 1672, the *French* made an attempt to settle on this island; and the king of *Candi* desirous of employing them against the *Dutch*, as he had formerly employed the *Dutch* against the *Portuguese*, had ceded to them by treaty the port of *Gottiar*, situated at the bottom of the bay of *Trinquemaille*, on the east side of the island; but the enterprize failing, the *Dutch* company remained sole masters of the coasts, and of the cinnamon trade; but were still on bad terms with the natives, who continually reproached them with their knavery, and would place no confidence in them. The seeds of discontent once sown seldom fail to shoot out. The *Dutch* on their side were continually bent upon oppressing and enslaving the natives; their inherent temper, wherever they have any power, can never shew them in the character of lenity: at last their repeated cruelties caused the natives to rise and destroy most of them, with the plantations of cinnamon and other spices. This happened lately in the year 1761. Whether they have since repossessed themselves intirely of their settlements in this island is uncertain; they have at least endeavoured to do so, and it is likely they have got some footing again, having had for a considerable time none to oppose them but the natives. Island of  
Ceylon.

CEYLON produces many things besides cinnamon, with which the inhabitants might carry on a great trade; such as long pepper, cotton, ivory, several drugs and roots useful in dying and in medicine, cardamum, mirabolans, silk, tobacco, ebony, excellent timber for building, lead, ore, betel, wild honey, musk, wax, crystal, saltpetre, sulphur, sugar, corcoma, rice, of which the *Dutch* carry a great quantity to the coast of *Cormandel*; iron, steel, copper, gold and silver, all sorts of precious stones, except diamonds; and, lastly, elephants. Indeed the mines of gold and silver are prohibited to be worked; the precious stones are all reserved for the king; and sulphur and saltpetre are not allowed to be exported, but are refined on the island: whence the commerce of the *Dutch* may be said to be confined almost to cinnamon; and even for this they trade only with the natives adjoining to their settlements, who are kept under subjection by the awe of their garrisons. The cinnamon tree does not grow on all parts of the island: some parts produce very few trees, and others none at all. What is called the cinnamon field, which belongs wholly to the *Dutch*, lies between *Negambo* and *Gallietes*, comprehending the west and south coasts of the island. The best cinnamon grows in the neighbourhood of *Colombo* and *Negambo*; that at *Point de Galles* is pretty good; the rest is middling. Cinnamon is divided into three sorts; finest, middling, and coarse. The best is taken from young trees; and as the trees advance in years, the bark degenerates. The trees multiply very fast, and almost without culture: but the *Dutch*, to keep up the value of cinnamon, obstruct their propagation. The *Dutch* also export a considerable number of elephants from *Ceylon* to *India*, where they are much valued; the smallest selling for upwards of forty guineas, and the largest for about seventy pounds sterling. Their teeth are larger, whiter, and of a finer grain than any that come from *India* or *Africa*.

f BEFORE the *Europeans* appeared in *India*, the *Chinese* were masters of the trade of *Ceylon*; afterwards the *Persians*, *Arabians*, and *Ethiopians* came in for a share of it; at last the *Dutch* excluded all other nations.

ASIA has much the advantage over the other three parts of the world in respect to fertility, opulence, and populousness, except where the tyranny of the government has laid an invincible obstacle on them. With regard to its soil, it is plain that nature has been extremely munificent to it, and that it abundantly repays all the cost and labour expended on it, both in the quantity and quality of its produce; and that the grain and fruit it yields, are by far more delicious than those of *Europe*, and in much greater plenty and variety. This is visible by what has been said of *Persia*, *China*, *Japan*, and some other parts, where the lands are hereditary, and every owner encouraged to make the best of every spot; whereas, in those vast tracts of *Asia* which groan under the *Turkish* yoke, though naturally as rich and fruitful, at least they were so in better times, and under easier governments, scarce one tenth part is turned to the advantage it formerly was, and might still be, with proper encouragement. This is a plain indication, that it is not the pretended

Some reflections on Asia in general.



pretended natural indolence of the inhabitants, but the precarious property of the lands, a that makes so many rich and fruitful countries lie uncultivated, so many once opulent cities and provinces either intirely laid waste, or so poorly inhabited in the latter; whilst, in the former, where property is secured to the industrious owner, every country is well tilled, and full of inhabitants; and among these, a much greater number of ingenious men than of rude and idle, who take pleasure in exerting their application to trades, manufactures, and all sorts of commerce, all which must naturally rise and fall, according to the good or bad principles that constitute the policy of the government.

Now, considering the state of arts, religious rites, and civil institutions, as spread over the face of our globe, it will appear from the lights we have concerning these matters, b that *Asia* has originally contributed to the peopling of the other parts, and that consequently a good argument may be deduced from hence in favour of the truth of the *Mosaic* history. According to the scriptures, the whole race of mankind issued from thence at two periods, first, on the expulsion of *Adam* from *Paradise*, a place situated near the *Tigris* and *Euphrates*; and secondly, when the earth was repopled upon the descent of *Noah* from the ark at *Mount Ararat*, a considerable eminence likewise in *Asia*. *Moses* himself has informed us concerning the first inhabitation of many of the eastern countries, and of the names and extraction of the first planters of them; but what is most remarkable in the case, the most ancient histories and accounts we have, those of *Moses* excepted, are concerning such countries and kingdoms as lie in the eastern parts of the world, such as *Egypt*, *China*, *Babylon*, &c. clearly shewing, according to the *Mosaic* account of things, c that these places were the first inhabited, and the first cultivated. Hence, it would be no difficult matter to evince the progress of arts and sciences, of religious usages, and civil customs; and even to trace the introduction of many trees, plants, and animals from the same quarter into the more western parts.

THE rite of sacrifice prevailed in the eastern *Asia*, and from thence was brought into the western, and into *Egypt*, *Greece*, and *Rome*. The law of matrimony, instituted at first in the East, spread itself afterwards all over the West; and it was the custom in *Persia* and *Egypt*, and in some parts of *Greece*, for a brother to marry a sister, it is very natural to suppose, that even this practice might be taken up from what necessarily passed d under the first race of men. The rite of circumcision descended from *Abraham* into *Egypt* and *Arabia*. Polytheism or idolatry was a very ancient corruption of the eastern *Asiatics*, being at least as old as *Scrug*; and we find it spread over *Asia-Minor*, *Egypt*, and *Greece*, though in different modes. As to *Greece*, it seems first to have come into *Crete*, where *Jupiter*, whose age is sufficiently ascertained, both lived and reigned. The institution of the sabbath, or the rest of one day in seven, is as old as the creation, and accompanied *Noah* into the ark; and the *Greeks*, and other ancients, though more western nations, had it amongst them. Thus again, we have very early accounts in scripture of the practice of hunting, which yet in appearance did not arrive in *Greece* till the time of *Diana*, a daughter of *Jupiter*. The *Asiatics* had corn of every kind; and the time is in a manner known when it was first brought into *Greece*, being introduced by *Ceres*, who e taught *Triptolemus* the method of his cultivation. The *Greeks* before then lived upon fruits, acorns, plants, and roots. The *Asiatics* also had the vine, which *Bacchus* meeting with in his excursions eastward, he brought into *Europe*, and for his service in that respect, had a place assigned him among the Gods, as the case had been before with *Diana* and *Ceres*. The olive, we must suppose, was unknown in *Europe* till the building of *Athens*, as likewise was the horse; when, on occasion of the fabulous contest between *Minerva* and *Neptune* about the patronage of that city, she produced the olive, and he the horse; whereas both had been long known before in the eastern parts of the world. The art of ship-building was begun by *Noah* in the fabrication of the ark, and was revived from thence in the maritime parts of *Phœnicia*, from whence it was brought, perhaps by *Tiphys*, f into *Greece*, and thence travelled westward, if it had not done so before by means of the *Phœnicians*. Music was not known in *Greece* till the time of *Apollo*, *Mercury*, and *Pan*, and yet was in *Asia* an antediluvian science. The same may be said of the use of metals, which seem not to have been manufactured in *Greece* till the age of *Vulcan*, son of *Jupiter*. Alphabetical letters, it is well known, were brought into *Greece* by *Cadmus* the *Phœnician*. The cock, that most useful creature, and consequently the hen, came originally into *Greece* from *Persia*, as appears from *Aristophanes*, and other authors. The pheasant takes its name from the river *Phasis* in *Asia*, which plainly shews the country from whence the *Greeks* and *Romans* received this fowl. The turkey, an eastern bird, as the name itself shews, did not get into *England* till the reign of king *Henry VIII*. The *French* call g this fowl “Coq d’Inde,” or the *Indian* cock, which shews, that it was not known amongst them till after the discovery of the *Indies*. Cherries, as *Pliny* tells us, were brought from *Pontus* into *Italy* by *Lucullus*. *Pliny* also has traced the several stages of the plane-tree from *Syria*



- a Syria through the Grecian islands, till it arrived in *Italy*, and passed thence to the western parts of *Gaul*. All these particulars tend to shew, that the progress of things has, in fact, been from east to west, and that the emigrants for peopling the western parts had of course brought their arts and sciences, inventions, fruits, animals, vegetables, religion and languages, in part along with them; and what they had not at first brought, they afterwards endeavoured, if possible, to supply themselves with.

b

## S E C T. II.

# Of A F R I C A.

## C H A P. I.

### Of Africa in General.

- c AFRICA, one of the four principal parts of the world, lies south of *Europe*, and west of *Asia*, and is bounded on the north by the *Mediterranean*, which parts it from the former; and on the east by the *Red Sea*, which separates it from the latter, to which it only joins by that small isthmus, or neck of land, which cuts off the communication between these two seas, and is commonly known by the name of *Suez*. On the south and west, it is surrounded with the main ocean, so that it may be properly stiled a vast overgrown peninsula, joined only to the continent of *Asia* by the isthmus abovementioned. It extends a prodigious way, not only on each side of the equator, but of the tropics likewise, the southern verge of it reaching quite to the 35th degree of south, and the northern almost to the 37th of north latitude; whereby its utmost extent, from north to south, is almost seventy-two degrees, or about 4320 miles. From east to west it reaches still farther, viz. from seventeen west to sixty east, or seventy-seven degrees of longitude, that is, 4620 miles. It is of a triangular or pyramidal figure, the base being the northern part of it, which runs along the shores of the *Mediterranean*, and the point or top of the pyramid the *Cape of Good Hope*.

Situation and boundaries of Africa.

Extent.

Figure.

- d Its situation for commerce is certainly beyond any of the other quarters of the world. It stands as it were in the center between the other three, and has thereby a much nearer communication with *Europe*, *Asia*, and *America*, than any other quarter has with the rest; for it lies opposite *Europe* in the *Mediterranean*, almost 1000 miles in a line east and west, from beyond *Tripoli* to *Cape Spartel* at the *Streights* mouth; the distance seldom 100 miles, no where 100 leagues, and often not twenty leagues. It is opposite *Asia* all the length of the *Red Sea*, north and south; the distance sometimes not being above five leagues, seldom fifty; and it fronts all the southern coast of *Asia*, viz. the coasts of *Cilicia*, and that of *India*, though at a greater distance, yet much nearer than any other country. It is also wonderfully accommodated for commerce, by the interposition of islands from *Madagascar* to *Malabar*; and more particularly by means of the alternate trade winds, which render the navigation safe, easy, and constant. Lastly, it lies opposite to *America*, about the distance of 500 to 700 leagues, including the islands, by a coast of above 2000 miles; whereas *America* no where joins *Europe* or *Asia*, except where it may be a *terra incognita*, the former under a distance of 1000 leagues, the latter under that of 2500.

Situation for commerce.

- e It is furnished with the greatest and most convenient navigable rivers, and perhaps with as many of them, as any other of the chief parts of the world; such are the *Nile* and *Nubia* on the north shore, running into the *Mediterranean Sea*; the *Niger*, or *Rio Grand*, running into the *Atlantic* ocean, on the west side of *Africa*; the *Congo*, the *Zairi*, and the *Loango*, three rivers of prodigious extent, south of the line, which empty themselves into the *Ethiopic* ocean on the same west side, but beyond the *Gold Coast*: also the *Natal*, the *Prio St. Esprit*, the *Melinda*, and the *Mozambo*, all rivers of a very great length and breadth, which empty themselves into the *Indian* ocean on the east side of *Africa*. Besides these, there are innumerable others, which though not equal to them, are yet very noble streams, fitted for navigation and commerce; and was this country blessed with a people qualified for trade and business, they might become the medium of an endless commercial correspondence. It is, indeed, populous to a greater degree than commonly thought; the soil fruitful, and the air salubrious: and, if once a turn for industry and the arts was introduced among the natives, a greater quantity of the *European* produce and manufactures might be exported thither, than to any other country in the whole world. And as

Other advantages by rivers; fertility of the soil, &c.



State of the  
African and  
Asiatic trade.

in general, they stand in great need of *European* commodities, so they have the most valuable returns to make for them. This is not the state of trade between *Europe* and *Asia*: *Europe* calls for a vast variety of goods from *Asia*, and *Asia* calls for more money than any thing else from *Europe*: yet there seems to be a kind of peculiarity in this trade, to the infinite advantage, particularly of the *Indian* and *Chinese* commerce, and the great disadvantage of most, if not all the nations of *Europe*: for the trade of *Asia* drains the whole western world of their ready money, in return for their mere products and manufactures. However, in the main, this is not such a disadvantage to *Europe* as some are inclined to think; and it need only be observed, that some great politicians have looked upon gold and silver in no other light than as commodities, and ought to be as freely exported and imported, except in our own coin, as any other whatsoever: and if *Europe* at present contained all the gold and silver that *Africa* and *America* have ever produced, it is to be questioned, whether she might be said to be ever the richer, by reason that gold and silver would then be, as was said of *Solomon's* time, as plenty as the stones in the streets, and therefore of little or no value. So that a commerce which takes off from the *Europeans* some proportion of its silver, may be as necessary as any other, to keep its value equally with that of gold, the latter always finding its value according to the quantity of the former.

BUT to return to the valuable returns the *Africans* have to make, which the *Europeans* experience from the share of traffic they carry on with them at present: to what a degree they abound in gold, we have not only the testimony of the *Portuguese*, the *Dutch*, and the *French*, as well as the *English*, who have settlements on the coast of *Africa*, but the vouchers of the most authentic historians. There is no country in the world, says *Leo Africanus*, richer in gold and silver, than some kingdoms in *Africa*, as those of *Mandingo*, *Ethiopia*, *Congo*, *Angola*, *Butua*, *Quiticui*, *Monomotopa*, *Casati*, and *Mehenemugi*. By means of settlements of strength on the continent of *Africa*, the *Europeans* might, by the exchange of their commodities, draw into their hands all the gold of those countries. And here is a prodigious number of elephants, which would not only facilitate the inland intercourses of commerce, but also afford a very beneficial branch of traffic, in the teeth of these notable animals. In the same historian are numberless passages relating to those rich mines, and shewing how easy it would be for the *Europeans* to carry on a very extensive traffic with that part of the globe. This account of the great treasures of *Africa* is confirmed likewise by the *Nubian* geographer, who says, that the king of *Guinea*, the greatest city in all the countries of *Negroland*, has a mass of gold of thirty pounds weight, as it was naturally produced in the mines; which is completely pure, tough, and malleable, without having been smelted by the ordinary arts of refining that metal from its native ore. Father *Labat* has descended to a very minute specification of a great variety of rich mines, which, he says, are very shamefully worked by the negroes, by reason of their being totally ignorant of the nature of mining; nor have they ever yet come to the main vein of any of their mines. Copper is the next valuable ore found in this part of the world. The quantity of it is not fully searched into, though there is good reason to believe it is so exceeding great, that it is commonly said amongst them, that the mountains which we call *Atlas*, are all copper. On the northern coasts they have such plenty of corn, that their fields, though but very meanly cultivated for want of a knowledge in agriculture, yield them an hundred-fold increase. Gums, ivory, wax, civet, ostrich-feathers, are in such quantities, that any expence of them can scarce ever be missed: and in these warm climates, the country, besides what Nature has of herself disseminated, is, and must be capable of improvement, in all the nicest and most estimable productions, which the well-cultivated world supplies us with, from other places in the same latitude. It cannot be doubted but the fruitful rich lands every where to be found upon the coasts, and within the country, upon the banks of the rivers near the *Gold-Coast* and the *Slave Coast*, would produce all the richest articles of the *East* and *West-India* commerce. The spices of *Banda*, *Ternate*, and *Ambuyna*, might be produced on the rich and fruitful shores of *Melinda*, on the east side, or of the *Slave-Coast* on the west side of *Africa*; and that as easily, and to as great advantage, as where they are now produced; the latitude being the same, and the soil not unlike. The cinnamon of *Ceylon*, the tea of *China* and *Japan*, and the coffee of *Mocha*, would all three be produced on the same coast, from the *Rio de St. Esprit*, and southward to the river *Natal*; a temperate, fertile, healthy, and manageable soil. It has been affirmed that the sugars of *Barbadoes* and *Jamacia*, as also the ginger, cotton, rice, pepper, or pimento, with the cocoa, the indigo, and every other plant which comes from these islands, would be as easily produced in *Africa*, and the crops equally profitable and plentiful, if supported by the same industry as in *America*: and we are assured that ginger, cotton, and indigo, have been attempted by the *English* factories on the *Gold-Coast* of *Africa*, where they have thriven to admiration. Upon the foundation of these facts, nothing seems wanting to render *Africa* equal by nature, if not in many respects superior to any of the other parts of



- a the world: for though the middle of it, lying between the tropics in the torrid zone, and under the line, is exceeding hot; yet even in the hottest part it is habitable and inhabited; and the people abound in plenty, have cattle, corn, cooling fruits, shades and rivers, and live very agreeably and healthy: as, for instance, in the island of *St. Thomas*, under the very line; also on the *Gold-Coast*, and in the kingdom of *Benin* and *Angola* on the west shore; and in *Ethiopia*, *Melinda*, the coast of *Zanguebar*, and several of the more intemperate places on the eastern shore. But making allowance for some of the inland countries remote from the sea, which we are told are without water, and therefore desert; yet are they not equal to the uninhabited wastes of *Europe*, *Asia*, and *America*? Notwithstanding this, *Africa*, in the respect of feeling no cold, has an advantage over the other parts of the world: the most
- b northerly latitude is about 37, and the most southerly about 35 degrees; so that the far larger part enjoys the finest and most temperate climate. It is, however, melancholy to observe, that a country which has near 10,000 miles of sea-coast, and noble, large, deep rivers, should yet have no navigation; streams penetrating into the very center of the country, but of no benefit to it; innumerable people, without knowledge of each other, correspondence, or commerce. At the entrance of these rivers into the sea are the most excellent harbours, prodigious in number, deep, safe, and calm, covered from the wind, and capable of being made secure by fortifications; but no shipping, no trade, no merchants, even where there is plenty of merchandizes. In short, *Africa*, though a full quarter of the globe, stored with an inexhaustible treasure, and capable, under proper improvements, of producing so many things delightful, as well as convenient within itself, seems utterly neglected by those who are civilized themselves, and its own inhabitants are quite unsollicitous of reaping the benefits which nature has provided for them. What it affords in its present rude unimproved state is solely given up to the gain of others. as if not only the people were to be sold for slaves to their fellow creatures, but the whole country was captive, and produced its treasures merely for the use and benefit of the rest of the world, and not for their own.
- c

- WHETHER, instead of making slaves of these people, it would not rather become such nations that assume to themselves the name and character of Christians, to give them a relish for the blessings of life, by extending traffic into their country in the largest degree it
- d will admit of, and introducing among them the more civilized arts and customs, may be submitted to consideration. The *Dutch*, by recommending their dress and introducing their customs in the *Spice-Islands*, have wonderfully humanized the inhabitants, who were as strange in their manners as the negroes. But it is to be feared, that while the slave-trade with these people continues to be the great object of the *Europeans*, it will ever spirit up wars and hostilities among the negro princes and chiefs, for the sake of making captives of each other for sale. This, therefore, will ever obstruct the civilizing these people, and extending their trade into the bowels of *Africa*, which, by the contrary means, might be easily practicable. The obtaining a competent number of servants to work, as the negroes at present do, in the colonies belonging to the several *European* potentates, who have settlements in *America*, does not seem at all impracticable. *Europe* in general affords numberless poor and distressed objects for that purpose; and if these were not over worked, as the negroes are in some of the *American* colonies, the *Europeans* would make as good servants for the planters as the blacks do; and if also all the *Europeans* were upon a level in regard to the price of labour in their colonies, they would all, very probably, find their account in laying absolutely aside the slave-trade, and cultivating a fair, friendly, humane, and civilized commerce with the *Africans*.
- e

*Reflections on the African slave trade.*

- AFRICA* once contained several kingdoms and states, eminent for the liberal arts, for wealth and power, and the most extensive commerce. Then almost all the northern parts of *Africa* were full of people from the *Red Sea* to the *Atlantic* ocean; the kingdoms of *Egypt*
- f and *Ethiopia* were much celebrated, and the rich and powerful state of *Carthage* extended her commerce to every part of the then known world: even the *British* shores were visited by her fleets, till *Juba*, king of *Mauritania* and tributary to *Carthage*, unhappily called in the *Romans*, who, by the assistance of the *Mauritanians*, subdued *Carthage*, and made all the kingdoms and states in *Africa* subject to them. After this, the natives constantly plundered, and consequently impoverished by the governors sent from *Rome*, neglected their trade, and cultivated no more of their lands than might serve for their subsistence. Upon the decline of the *Roman* empire, in the fifth century, the north of *Africa* was over-run by the *Vandals*, a barbarous northern people, who contributed still more to the destruction of arts and sciences; and, to add to this country's calamity, the *Saracens* made a sudden conquest of all the coasts of *Egypt* and *Barbary* in the seventh century: these were afterwards succeeded by the *Turks*; and both being of the *Mohammedan* religion, whose professors carry desolation with them wherever they come, the ruin of that once flourishing part of the world was thereby completed.
- g

*Ancient state of Africa.*



THREE different people inhabit this continent, namely, *Pagans*, *Mohammedans*, and *Christians*. The first are the most numerous, possessing the greatest part of the country from the tropic of Cancer to the *Cape of Good Hope*, and these are generally black. The *Mohammedans*, who are of a tawny complexion, possess almost all the northern shores of *Africa*. The people of *Abyssinia*, or the *Upper Ethiopia*, are denominated Christians, but retain abundance of *Pagan* and *Jewish* rites: there are some other Christians upon the sea-coasts on almost every side of *Africa*; but the number is small, compared with that of the *Pagans* or *Mohammedans*. There are also some *Jews* on the north of *Africa*, who manage all the little trade that part of the country is yet possessed of. But it is remarkable, that though the *Carthaginians*, who inhabited this very country of *Barbary*, had greater fleets and a more extended commerce than any other nation, or than all the people upon the face of the earth when that state flourished, the present inhabitants have scarce any merchant ships belonging to them, and no other ships of force than what *Sallee*, *Algiers*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, fit out for piracy, and these but few and small, their whole strength not being able to resist a squadron of *European* men of war.

Disagreement  
about the di-  
vision of  
Africa.

Commodiously  
divided into  
ten parts.

THERE are scarce any two nations, or indeed any two of the learned, that agree in the modern division of *Africa*; and for this very reason, that scarce any traveller has penetrated into the heart of the country, and consequently we must be content to acknowledge our ignorance of the bounds, and even the names of several of the midland nations. These may be still reckoned among the unknown and undiscovered parts of the world; but, according to the best accounts and conjectures, *Africa* may be commodiously divided into ten parts, consisting of, 1. *Egypt*. 2. *Ethiopia Superior*. 3. *Zanguebar*, with *Adel*; all which lie on the east of *Africa*. 4. *Monoemugi*, *Monomotapa*, and *Caffraria*, called by some the *Lower Ethiopia*, which lie on the south. 5. *Guinea*, on the south-west. 6. *Nigritia*, or *Negroland*, in the middle of *Africa*, extending almost quite through the country from east to west, on both sides of the great river *Niger*. 7. *Zaara*, or the desert to the northward of *Nigritia*. 8. *Biledulgerid*, the ancient *Numidia*, to the northward of *Zaara*. 9. The empire of *Fez* and *Morocco*, containing the north-west part of *Africa*. 10. The coast of *Barbary*, on the north, containing the countries of *Algiers*, *Tunis*, *Tripoli*, and *Barca*.

## CHAP. II.

### Of EGYPT.

Names of  
Egypt.

*EGYPT* is supposed to derive its name from *Egyptus*, the brother of *Danaus*, once sovereign of this country. The *Hebrews* and *Arabs* called it *Misraim*, from the son of *Cham*, and grandson of *Noah*, of that name; and it has also been known by the name of *Coptus*, the capital city of *Upper Egypt*, from whence the natives are called *Coptis*, as the Christians of *Egypt* are at this day; and though not the most numerous, are looked upon to be the true descendants of the ancient *Egyptians*. The *Turks* call this country *El-kebit*, which signifies one that is overflowed.

Boundaries,  
situation, and  
extent.

*EGYPT* is situated on the north-east part of *Africa*, being bounded by the *Mediterranean* sea on the north; by the *Red-Sea*, and the isthmus of *Suez*, which divide it from *Asia*, towards the east; by the empire of *Abyssinia* and *Nubia* towards the south; and by the Desert of *Barca* towards the west. It extends from the 21st degree of north latitude, to the 31st, and a few minutes beyond; and consequently must be about 600 miles in length from south to north; but the breadth in many places does not seem to be near 200.

Air, waters,  
and fertility.

THE air of this country is not healthful, the situation being very low; the mud, which covers the best part of it after the overflowing of the *Nile*, sending up a noisome vapour. The sandy deserts also, which encompass *Egypt* on three sides, render it excessive hot. Nor are there more than two springs in the whole country to refresh the parched inhabitants; so that they seem to be under a necessity of building their towns on the banks of the *Nile*. Accordingly, most of them stand near the river upon rising ground, so made by art or nature; and when the river overflows, they appear like so many islands, which have a communication with each other only by boats. It seldom rains in summer; but in the winter, modern travellers assure us, it rains plentifully sometimes, especially in the *Lower Egypt*. However, the fertility of the country, especially in corn, is not owing to these rains, but to the course and overflowings of the river *Nile*. As to its swelling, geographers inform us, that it corresponds exactly with the rainy seasons between the tropics. They commence in the mountains about the beginning of *May*, and the water of the *Nile* begins to swell about the middle of it; so that there are fifteen days allowed by nature for the course of the water from the latitude of *Ethiopia* to that of *Egypt*, which is esteemed

Inundation of  
the Nile.



- a effected a pretty exact allowance ; the distance being from 13 or 15, to the latitude of 28 and 30, which may very well correspond with the time. As to the continuance of the inundation, this is said to be just the same, keeping time with the rains ; for as it is in several parts of *Africa*, so it is in *Ethiopia*, the rains abate at the beginning of *September*, and cease by the beginning of *October*. Thus the inundation answers exactly fifteen days, the same space as before. After the rains begin to abate in *Ethiopia*, the inundation of the river begins to abate in *Egypt* ; and ten days after the rains cease in *Ethiopia*, the *Nile* is quite reduced to its ancient channel in *Egypt*. This being the case, there can be no room any longer to doubt of the rains in *Ethiopia* being the cause of this inundation.
- b In regard to the height to which the waters rise, some authors give an account of the swell being about forty feet in height perpendicularly ; which though it be extraordinary to imagine, and must, in our imagination, as before observed, place all the towns on a hilly situation, or suppose them to be laid under water ; yet, since so many affirm it for truth, we must assent to what they say. The effects of this inundation are fructifying the earth, not only moistening it instead of rain, but enriching the land with the fattening slimy substance, which it receives from the richness of the soil in *Ethiopia*, from whence it comes. This is said to be peculiar to the river *Nile*, as the country of *Ethiopia* is rich and fruitful beyond all that part of *Africa*. It is true, that the *Niger*, the *Congo*, and several other rivers on the coast of *Africa*, which overflow the country, do make it fruitful, and enrich the soil as well as the *Nile* does, but none in so extraordinary a manner.

*Division of Egypt.*

*EGYPT* is commonly divided into Lower, Middle and Upper.

*Lower Egypt.*

*LOWER Egypt*, or *Egypt* properly so called, is so styled on account of its situation, according to the course of the *Nile*, it being the last of the three through which that river runs, and from which it discharges itself into the sea. It is bounded on the south by *Middle Egypt*, on the north by the sea, on the west by the desert of *Barca*, and on the east by the isthmus of *Suez*. This country is very fertile, and so well improved, that it abounds with pasture grounds, corn, wine, rice, dates, senna, cassia, baulm, medicinal drugs, plants, and some other valuable articles. Its principal towns are,

- BUSIRIS*, an ancient city, but now dwindled into a village called *Aboasar*. *Alexandria*, by the *Turks* called *Scanderic*, is situate at the mouth of the *Canopean* branch of the *Nile*, where it forms a noble spacious haven, in form of a crescent ; and which, though not very safe, is much frequented. This city boasts of its antiquity, having been built by *Alexander the Great* after the taking of *Tyre*, that he might preserve the trade between *India* and *Europe*, which he found, to his great dissatisfaction, was ruined by the destruction of *Tyre* : so great a value was set upon the *East-India* trade even in those days. This trade from *India* was carried on for many ages with infinite advantage by the *Tyrians* ; and *Alexander*, who was ill advised in extirpating the *Phœnician* merchants, to make the world amends, erected this city, making it a free port, and giving it his own name. But though he exerted his utmost sagacity and authority to bring the *Indian* merchants to settle there, and make it the staple of their manufactures, a great part of their commerce took another turn, and passing from *India* by the river *Oxus*, and the city of *Samarcand* into the *Caspian Sea*, and thence by land to *Trapezond*, from whence it crossed the *Euxine Sea*, and passing other neighbouring seas, at length centered in the city of *Corinth*, which by that means became a great and opulent city. *Alexander*, however, so far prevailed, that a great part of the trade from *India* came this way, particularly such of it as was carried on at the coast of *Malabar*, and in the *Persian* gulph, which coming up the *Red Sea*, landed goods at *Elam*, now *Suez*, and they were thence carried over land to the *Nile*, and then again by water to *Alexandria*. That this city, in the most flourishing state of its commerce, was a large, opulent, strong, and magnificent city, is certain ; and that, since the decay of its trade, it is now little more than the skeleton of what it has been, is not less true. Its conflagration by the *Saracens*, indeed, effected its present ruinous state, in comparison to what it was in its splendor. It has still some trade, and is populous, but not considerable. *Rosetto* also, and *Damietta*, and even *Grand Cairo*, have lost the fund of their wealth and glory from the time that the *Portuguese*, unhappily for them, found the way to the *East Indies* by the *Cape of Good Hope*.

*Principal towns.*

- THE ground *Alexandria* stands upon is so extremely low, that it can scarce be discerned by mariners till they are just upon it, which was probably the occasion of erecting that famous *Pharos*, or high-watch tower, so frequently mentioned in history for a sea-mark. In the room of it there is now built a castle, which serves for the same purpose. The old town of *Alexandria* stretched from east to west, and was about seven miles in circumference, but is now a heap of ruins, scarce any thing being left standing, except one long street, indifferently built, with some houses facing the harbour, and a part of the walls, which are very magnificent, having great square towers at about 200 paces distant from each other, and a little tower between them. It was built upon arches, supported by



marble pillars, and under every house were cisterns, to receive the waters of the *Nile*, which were conveyed thither by aqueducts. Among the ruins are several fine pillars of porphyry and granite, with hieroglyphics upon them. But the finest piece of antiquity still left standing is *Pompey's* pillar, about 200 paces from the town, erected by *Julius Cæsar*, in memory of his victory over that great man, who fled thither from the battle of *Pharsalia*, and was murdered on the *Egyptian* coast. a

*Pompey's  
pillar.*

THE body of the pillar is one intire piece of granite marble, or some composition as durable and beautiful as marble. The height of it is seventy feet, and the circumference twenty-five, with a noble capital and base; on which are several hieroglyphics. It is amazing how such a prodigious stone could be brought here, and as difficult to conceive with what kind of engine it was raised. Some imagine it was made or cast upon the place, and this has occasioned it to be suggested, that the ancients had an art of casting stone, and of imitating, or rather excelling, the most beautiful pieces of natural marble, particularly the *Egyptians*; but this is much doubted by the learned. b

THE next considerable place to *Alexandria* is *Rosetto*, a healthy, pleasant, and populous city, situate on a branch of the *Nile*. The chief business of the inhabitants is carrying the *European* merchandizes, which are brought hither from *Alexandria*, to *Cairo* in boats. For this purpose, the *Europeans* have their vice-consuls and factors to expedite business, and all letters and bills brought from *Alexandria*. Letters of consequence are conveyed by land across the Desert by foot-messengers directly to *Cairo*.

*Method of  
making Sal-  
Ammoniac in  
Egypt.*

ABOUT an hundred miles eastward of *Rosetto*, stands the city of *Damicta*, or *Pelusium*, in one of the eastern branches of the *Nile*, about ten miles from the mouth of it. It is reckoned one of the keys of *Egypt*; is large, though ill built, and has about 25,000 inhabitants, without reckoning a good, large, and populous town, on the other side of the river, chiefly inhabited by sailors and fishermen, and a much greater number of strangers from all parts, on account of traffic, all which have contributed not a little to make it opulent and considerable. The towns and villages between this city and *Cairo* lie pretty thick, and a good number of the inhabitants are employed, some in hatching vast multitudes of eggs in ovens, and rearing the chickens; and others in making great quantities of *Sal Ammoniac*. This salt is procured from the soot which arises from the burnt dung of animals that feed only on vegetables; but the dung of these animals is only fit to burn for *Sal Ammoniac* during the four first months of the year, when they feed on fresh spring grass, which, in *Egypt*, is a kind of trefoil, or clover; for when they feed only on dry meat it will not do. The dung of oxen, buffaloes, sheep, goats, horses, and apes, at the proper time, is as fit as the dung of camels for this purpose: it is said that even human dung is equal to any other. The soot arising from the burnt dung is put into glass vessels, and these vessels into an oven or kiln, which is heated by degrees, and at last, urged with a very strong fire for three successive nights and days; the smoke first shews itself, and in a short time after, the salt appears adhering to the glasses, and, by degrees, covers the whole opening. The glasses are thus broken, and the salt taken out in the same state and form in which it is sent to *Europe*. c

*Middle  
Egypt.*

MIDDLE *Egypt* is situate between the Upper and Lower, having the former on the south, and the latter on the north, the *Red-Sea* on the east, and the desert of *Barca* on the west. At present it is chiefly known by the names of *Bakeirah* and *Benefor*. It is divided in two by the *Nile*, on the banks of which the soil is fruitful; but more sandy and barren the farther the land runs from it.

*Cairo.*

CAIRO, the capital of *Egypt*, and by far the largest and most populous in the whole kingdom, is pleasantly situated on the *Nile*. It appears from the vast number of squares, caravanferas, bazars, and other such public buildings, to have been a place of extraordinary commerce, now decayed, since the trade to the *East-Indies* by the way of the *Cape of Good-Hope*; yet it still is famed for some manufactures, especially that of *Turkey* carpets, and a good trade by means of the caravans. The beglerbeg, or viceroy of the whole kingdom, resides here in the castle, which stands on the top of a hill in the south quarter of the city, and commands a noble prospect of it and the environs. It is two or three miles in circumference, and appears like another city. The walls are high and thick, with towers after the ancient way of fortification; and it is said, that there are several subterraneous vaults or passages, leading from them to distant towns. But what travellers seem to be the most taken with here, is a well 280 feet deep, which has obtained the name of *Joseph's* well. This and another are the only springs in the kingdom of *Egypt*. There are also shewn, in the ruins of a noble building, which is pretended to be *Joseph's* hall, where he sat in judgment, thirty fine pillars of *Theban* marble, with part of the roof overlaid with gold and azure. f

*Castle of  
Cairo.*

*Pyramids of  
Egypt.*

BETWEEN three and four leagues to the westward of *Cairo*, stand those three vast pyramids so justly the admiration of all that view them. That which has suffered least by the g



- a the injuries of time, is situated on the top of a rock, in the sandy desert of *Lybia*, about a quarter of a mile to the west of the plains of *Egypt*, above which the rock rises upwards of an hundred feet with an easy ascent. Each side of this pyramid, at the base, is 693 feet, according to the *English* standard; its perpendicular height is 499 feet; but if taken as the pyramid ascends, inclining, then the height is equal to the breadth of the base, viz. 693 feet. The whole area of the base contains 480,249 square feet, or eleven acres of ground, and 1089 of 43,560 parts of an acre. This pyramid is ascended on the outside by steps; the breadth and depth of every step is one intire stone, many of them thirty feet in length, and the number of steps from the bottom to the top is 207. On the north side of this pyramid, going thirty-eight feet up an artificial bank of earth, there is a narrow, square passage, leading into the pyramid, about three feet and a half high, and three feet and a quarter broad: this passage is very steep, and runs downwards ninety-two feet and a half; the smoothness and evenness of the work, and the close knitting of the joints, shew it to have been the labour of some exquisite hand: the curious traveller having passed, with lighted torches, through this strait, which, towards the end grows so narrow, that he is forced to creep upon his belly, comes into a place somewhat larger; but nothing worth description is observed in it, except the monstrous bats, said to exceed a foot in length, by which it is inhabited. The length of this obscure broken place contains eighty-nine feet, the breadth unequal, supposed to have been dug for the discovery of some hidden treasure. On the left, adjoining the narrow entrance first passed, a stone eight or nine feet high must be climbed up, to enter upon the lower end of the first gallery, of which the pavement rises gently, and consists of smooth polished marble, of a white and alabaster colour, being about five feet in height, and as many in breadth. This gallery contains in length 110 feet; and at the end begins a second gallery, a very stately piece of work, not inferior in materials or workmanship to the most magnificent buildings. The length of this gallery is 124 feet; and if we consider the narrow entrance at the mouth of the pyramid, by which the first descent is made, and the length of the first and second galleries, by which the ascent is again in one continued line, and leading to the middle of the pyramid, we may easily apprehend the reason of that strange echo of four or five voices, mentioned by *Plutarch*, or rather of a long continued sound, which is heard on discharging a musket at the entrance; for the sound being shut in, and conveyed in those close smooth passages, as in so many pipes or tubes, finding no issue out, makes a repercussion upon itself, and causes a confused noise and circulation of the air, which by degrees vanishes as the motion ceases: but to return. This second gallery is paved and lined with white polished marble, cut in vast squares or tables: the roof is of the same materials; and the junctures of the stones are so close and exact, that they are scarce perceptible. The height of this gallery is twenty-six feet, and the breadth six; and there are benches on each side of polished stone. Passing from the second gallery, through a small square hole, into some closets, or little chambers, lined with *Thebaic* marble, there is an entrance to a very noble hall, or chamber, which stands in the centre of the pyramid, equidistant from all the sides, and almost in the midst between the base and the top. The floor, sides, and roof of this room, are all of exquisite tables of *Thebaic* marble. From the top to the bottom of it there are but six ranges of stone: and the stones which cover it are of a stupendous length, like so many huge beams lying flat, and traversing the room, and nine of these form the roof. The length of this hall is somewhat more than thirty-four *English* feet, the breadth seventeen, and the height nineteen and a half. There stands a tomb in it, supposed to be that of *Cheops*, or *Chemnis*, king of *Egypt*, the founder of the pyramid. This tomb is one intire piece of marble made hollow; it is uncovered at the top, and sounds like a bell on being struck. There are no signs of any corpse having been laid in it. The hollow part is little more than six feet in length, and two in depth and breadth; from which dimensions it has been observed, as well as from the embalmed bodies seen in *Egypt*, that there is no decay in nature, but that the men of this age are of the same stature they were 3000 years ago.
- b
- c
- d
- e
- f

In passing from the first pyramid to the second, are seen the ruins of a pile of building, all of square polished stone, supposed to be the habitation of the priests. The stones of this pyramid are white, and not near so large as those of the former, nor do the sides rise by degrees, or steps, like the other, but are all plain and smooth. The whole fabric, except on the south, is very intire, and free from any deformed ruptures or breaches; and the dimensions, both as to height and breadth, are equal to the first; but no entrance has been yet discovered into it, nor is it known whether there be any apartments within,

- g though it is highly probably there are, this being designed for the sepulchre of *Cephren*, the brother of *Cheops*, another *Egyptian* king. This pyramid has, on the north and west-sides, two very stately buildings, thirty feet in depth, and fourteen hundred in length, hewn out of the solid rock: these, it is supposed, were designed for lodging the priests,

but

*Second pyramid.*



but have no other entrance into them than such square openings hewn out of the rock, of the same bigness with those described in the first pyramid, and within are square chambers arched and made out of the rock.

Third pyramid.

Other pyramids.

THE third pyramid stands a furlong distant from the second, upon a rising of the rock, which makes it seem equal to the former at a distance. It seems to be intirely built of a clear white stone, something better and brighter than that of the other two. Each side of the base is somewhat more than 300 feet, and the height the same. There are several other pyramids dispersed about the *Lybian* desert, to the amount of twenty, but most of them much inferior in bulk to any of these three. One, which stands twenty miles south and by west of those above described, is of the same dimensions with the first, with steps or degrees on the outside, but more decayed. It has also an entrance on the north-side, but blocked up, so that there is no getting in to see the apartments.

Built probably by the Israelites.

THESE pyramids are supposed by many of the learned, to have been built by the *Israelites*, which is confirmed by *Josephus*, who says, that when time had extinguished the memory of the benefits of *Joseph*, and the kingdom was transferred to another family, they used the *Israelites* with great rigour, wasting them by several labours. It is very probable, the kings of *Egypt* employed them in these stupendous works, more on a political account, than for any ostentation of power and grandeur. It seemed expedient to keep a mutinous people in action, who, upon the least respite from their labours, were ready to break out into rebellion; and as it appears at the time of their leaving *Egypt*, there were no less than 600,000 of them, besides women and children, there cannot be a properer epoch assigned for erecting these vast structures, than when they dwelt in this kingdom.

Occasion of erecting them.

THE general opinion is, that these pyramids were erected for sepulchral monuments, and in confirmation of it, *Ibn Abd Albokm* the *Arabian* relates, that *A'mamen*, the caliph of *Babylon*, when he caused the largest pyramid to be opened, between 8 and 900 years since, found in it towards the top, a chamber with an hollow stone, in which there was a statue like a man, and within it a man, on whom was a breast-plate of gold set with jewels; upon the breast-plate lay a sword of inestimable price, and at his head a carbuncle of the bigness of an egg shining like the light, and upon him were written characters with a pen which no man understood. But there is this farther reason given, (which sprung from the theology of the *Egyptians*, who believed that as long as the body endured, so long the soul continued with it :) that they therefore kept their dead embalmed, that their souls might continue with them a great while, and not pass suddenly into other bodies; and for the same reason, they enclosed them in the most durable buildings, endeavouring thereby, as much as in them lay, to render them eternal. The *Egyptians*, says *Diodorus Siculus*, make small account of the time of this life, as being limited; but highly value that which after death is accompanied with a glorious memory of virtue. They call the houses of the living, inns; because they inhabit them but a short space; but the sepulchres of the dead, eternal mansions, because they continue with the gods for an infinite space: therefore, in the structure of their houses they are not very solicitous, but think no cost sufficient in sumptuously adorning their sepulchres. However, though the *Egyptians* were of opinion, that as long as the body endured, the soul continued with it; yet it did not quicken or animate the body, but remained only as an attendant, or guardian, unwilling to leave her former habitation.

THE reason why the *Egyptians* built their sepulchres in the form of pyramids, was, because this is the most permanent form of structure, being neither over-pressed by its own weight, nor so subject to the sinking in of rain as other buildings are: or they might hereby intend to represent their gods; for anciently the *Gentiles* expressed them by columns fashioned like cones, or by quadrilateral obelisks.

Mummy-pits, or catacombs.

THE mummy pits, as called by modern travellers, are in the *Lybian* deserts, three or four leagues distant from the three great pyramids, and a little to the westward of the place where the city of *Memphis* once stood: these pits are square, and built of good stone, or hewn out of the solid rock. When the people, who have the care of the mummies, have removed the sand from the surface, they take up a great stone which covers the mouth of the pit, and let down those who would view them by ropes, or a man may go down by putting his feet into the holes on the sides: the shallowest of these pits are thirty-two feet deep; at the bottom are square openings and passages ten or fifteen feet long, which lead into square arched rooms, in which the embalmed bodies lie, some of them in chests or coffins of wood, others in stone-coffins, and others in coffins made only of pieces of linen-cloth, gummed or glued together, which are as strong as the wooden ones. With these mummies are usually found the figures of birds and beasts, and little images of several sorts, some made of copper, others of stone, and others of several sorts of earth. The danger of entering the pyramids and mummy pits is intimated by several travellers, on account of the thievish *Arabs*, who watch all opportunities of plundering those who come to view them.



- a** In speaking of the pyramids, we should not omit mentioning the colossus, or, at least, the head of one, which stands near the largest pyramid. It is usually called a sphynx, the upper-part of which should resemble a woman, and the lower part a lion. By this figure the *Egyptians* in their hieroglyphics represented an harlot; intimating, the danger of being smitten with a beautiful faithless woman, whom the fond lover would, probably, in the end, find as cruel and rapacious as a lion. Nothing more of this figure is now discernable but from the shoulders upwards, and yet it is near thirty feet in height, and seems to be hewn out of the solid rock. It is a question whether there was ever any more of the figure, though *Pliny*, and some of the ancients, give it a belly, and much larger dimensions, making it to be 102 feet in compass; and some of our modern writers pretend, that there is a subterraneous passage from the first pyramid to the head, which is hollow, suggesting, that the heathen priests used to deliver their oracles from it; but it does not seem well proved that there is any such passage under ground from the pyramid to the sphynx, or that any oracles were ever delivered from hence.

- b** ANOTHER curiosity, mentioned by ancient and modern writers, is a labyrinth near the banks of the river *Nile*, towards the *Upper-Egypt*, built by king *Psammiticus I.* the greatest part of it under ground, and containing, within the compass of one wall, twelve palaces and a thousand houses; the walls, pillars, and roofs of marble, to which there was only one entrance, and so many intricate turnings and windings, that it was impossible for a stranger to find his way through, or get back again, if he had entered it without a guide. The marble, it is said, was laid with so much art, that neither wood nor cement were used in the whole fabric.

- c** AT *Materza*, about five miles north-east of *Cairo*, there is a well, which with that in the castle of *Cairo*, is the only one of good water in the whole country. It is reported, that the Virgin *Mary*, and her husband *Joseph* rested here, when they fled with our Saviour from *Herod*; and that being very thirsty, a spring issued suddenly out of the earth for their relief.

- d** THE province of the *Higher*, or *Upper-Egypt*, anciently called *Thebais*, is bounded on the east-side by the *Red Sea* all the way, on the north by *Middle-Egypt*, on the west by the desert of *Barca*, and on the south by *Nubia* and the coast of *Abex*. It is by far the least cultivated and populous of all the three. Most of its towns, or rather villages, are very thinly inhabited. *Sayd*, anciently *Thebes*, or the city with an hundred gates, was formerly here the capital of the kingdom; but it is now inconsiderable, and has nothing to boast of its grandeur, but vast columns of marble and porphyry, which lie half buried in the ground, and statues and obelisks of a prodigious size, with hieroglyphics upon them. The same are to be met with in most parts of this country, an argument that it once had very considerable towns, and magnificent buildings. *Minio*, a neat town, is famous for an earthen manufacture of water-pots, or vessels, not only very curiously made, but said to give an uncommon freshness to the water; and, on that account, are in great request all over *Egypt*, but especially at *Cairo*. The *Turks* and *Arabs* make the best opium at the village of *Aboutic*, which is of note for the vast quantities of black poppies that grow in and about it. This opium is thence conveyed all over *Turkey* and *India*. The inhabitants of this division of *Egypt* are composed chiefly of *Copti* Christians and *Arabs*: the former are the more numerous, and have their bishops to preside over them, who are subject to the patriarch of *Alexandria*.

- e** THERE still remain some remarkable things to be related of this country, which every curious traveller who passes through it takes notice of. In this rank is,

- f** THE papyrus, an aquatic plant, growing by the banks of the river *Nile*. According to the description *Pliny*, after *Theophrastus*, gives us of it, its stalk is triangular, and of a thickness that may be grasped in the hand, its root crooked, and it terminates by fibrous bunches composed of long and weak pedicles. It has been observed in *Egypt* by *Guilandinus*, an author of the sixteenth century, who has given us a learned commentary on the passages of *Pliny* where mention is made of it; and it is also described in *Prosper Alpinus* and in *Lobel*. The *Egyptians* call it berd, and they eat that part of the plant which is near the roots. A plant named papero, much resembling the papyrus of *Egypt*, grows likewise in *Sicily*: it is described in *Lobel's Adversaria*: *Rây*, and several others after him, believed it was the same species; however, it does not seem that the ancients made use of that of *Sicily*; and *M. de Jussieu* thinks, they ought not to be confounded, especially by reading in *Strabo*, that the papyrus grew only in *Egypt*, or in the *Indies*. *Pliny*, *Guilandinus*, *Montfaucon*, and the count *de Caylus*, are of this opinion. The internal parts of the rind of this plant were the only that were made into paper, and the manner of the manufacture was thus: strips, or thin flakes, of every length that could be obtained being laid upon a table, other strips were placed across, and pasted to them by means of water and a press; so that this paper was a texture of several strips, and it even



appears, that, in the time of the emperor *Claudius*, the *Romans* made paper of three lays. *Pliny* also informs us, that the strips of the papyrus were left to dry in the sun, and afterwards distributed according to the different qualities fit for different kinds of paper; scarce more than twenty strips could be separated from each stalk. The paper of the *Romans* never exceeded thirteen fingers breadth, and this was their finest and most beautiful, as that of *Fannius*. In order to be deemed perfect, it was to be thin, compact, white, and smooth; which is much the same with what we require in our rag paper. It was sleeked with a tooth or shell, and this kept it from soaking the ink, and made it glister. The *Roman* paper received an agglutination as well as ours, which was prepared with flour of wheat, diluted with boiling-water, on which were poured some drops of vinegar; or with crumbs of leavened bread diluted with boiling-water, and passed through a bolting-cloth. Being afterwards beaten with a hammer, it was agglutinated a second time, put to the press, and extended again with the hammer. This account of *Pliny* is confirmed by *Cassiodorus*, who, speaking of the leaves of the papyrus used in his time, says, that they were white as snow, and composed of a great number of small pieces, without any junction appearing in them, which seems to suppose necessarily the use of size. The *Egyptian* papyrus seems even to be known in the time of *Homer*; but it was not, according to the testimony of *Varro*, till about the time of the conquests of *Alexander*, that it began to be manufactured with the perfections art always adds to nature. Paper made in this manner, with the rind of this *Egyptian* plant, was that which was chiefly used till the tenth century; when some person imagined the making of it with pounded cotton reduced into a pulp. This method, known in *China* several ages before, appeared at last in the empire of the East, yet without any certain knowledge of the author, or the time and place of the invention. All public acts and diplomas were written on the *Egyptian* paper, till the eleventh century; and it is probable, that linen-rag paper was invented some time in that century, as then the *Egyptian* paper began to be disused in the West, and that of cotton in the East. However, there is no finding an exact date to this discovery; for, notwithstanding the most diligent search of the learned antiquary *Montfaucon*, both in *France* and *Italy*, he could never find a book, or leaf of paper, such as is now used, before the year 1270.

Hatching  
chickens in  
ovens.

THE next remarkable thing to be met with in *Egypt*, is the hatching of chickens in ovens. The eggs are kept heated with so temperate a warmth, which imitates so exactly the natural heat of a hen, that chickens are at length formed and hatched. It has been disputed whether this can be effected in any other country besides *Egypt*, where the natural heat of the climate is thought to contribute much towards these productions; but *M. Thevenot* tells us, that the duke of *Florence* sent for some of the *Copti's* (who are the only *Egyptians* that follow this business) and hatched chickens in *Italy* in the same manner. Very lately some experiments have been made in *France*, for hatching chickens by the fermentation of tan (P.)

(P.) *M. Bauffau du Bignon*, the author of these experiments, inserted in the fourth volume of the *Memoirs*, presented to the Academy of Sciences, says, that the best tan for this purpose is that which is used for the hides of oxen, that come to the *French* generally from *Ireland*. This tan must be procured when newly taken out of the pits, because it will serve longer, and it must not be suffered to contract any more moisture, being already too wet. First, a pretty high and broad bed is to be made of it, in order that the vessel, which is to serve as an oven for the chickens, may be on all sides surrounded with three times as much tan as it measures in diameter. Previous to this, if the tan is too moist, the humidity and smell may be diminished by often stirring it.

In a fortnight, three weeks, or a month, at latest, the tan will be heated by the required degree; but if it does not grow hot in this time, by still retaining too much moisture, it must be stirred again, and as it shrinks, in proportion to its moisture, it must be stirred more than once, if it be much shrunk and collected into a mass.

It may be known when it has acquired a proper degree of moisture or dryness, if a drop of water cannot be squeezed out of a handful, and if scarce any moisture remains in the hand of him that squeezes. Then it usually ferments in a fortnight, and its heat is easily ascertained, by introducing a slender stick from the top to the bottom, and drawing it out immediately after, to judge of the degree of heat by feeling it.

#### ANOTHER

The tan will retain its heat at 32 degrees during an intire month, without any other care than keeping the opening of the oven more or less shut up, and the heat will continue naturally for three months successively at the 28th degree.

As the heat increases during some time, there is no occasion to be uneasy, if it is not yet at the 32d degree. Two or three days are required to be assured of its constancy, to fix it and dissipate the vapours and interior moisture of the vessel or oven, during which time the 32d degree will happen; and as the heat increases insensibly for a fortnight or three weeks, and decreases when past this term, it will be easy not to be mistaken, the covering and different accounts kept from time to time being sufficient to prevent all inconvenience.

Nothing more for reheating is required than a second bed of tan, made in a month or three weeks later than the first; and it will be ready to receive the eggs and chicks when the first appears to grow too cool. During the heat of the second, the first may be immediately stirred up, and it will afterwards yield the same service as the second, which may be so continued for three years successively.

The author adds, that it is now three years since he has made these experiments with great success, and that in this manner he has brought forth and reared a great number of very fine and well tasted chickens. He found also, by his experiments, that tan ferments for more than three years after it has been taken



**a** ANOTHER thing which creates admiration in the credulous traveller, as well as the superstitious natives, both Christian and Mohammedan, is the pretended annual resurrection of human bodies, some say of whole limbs, and others, intire bones, in a certain burial-place, near *Old Cairo*, on *Good Friday*, and the two preceding days. Mr. *Thevenot* relates, that he went to see the place on *Good-Friday*, where he found a good many bones, but suspected they were scattered there on purpose to serve the lucrative views of some pious fraud. Discovering his opinion to some about him, he was taken to be an atheist, and would have exposed himself to the danger of being insulted, had he not prudently desisted from undeceiving the multitude, by seeming to join them in opinion.

*Resurrection of human bones.*

**b** THE animals, which *Egypt* is remarkable for, are, first, the crocodile, formerly thought to be peculiar to this country; but there is no material differences between these creatures and the alligators at the mouth of the *Ganges*, and in other rivers of *India* and *America*. Both are known to be amphibious animals, accustomed to land and water; they grow to a prodigious length, twenty feet and upwards. In shape they are like a lizard, with four short feet, or rather claws, and some of them are so large as to swallow a man: they have a flat head, their eyes indifferently large, and their back covered with broad scales, like some antiquated pieces of armour. They seem to move with the greatest strength and agility in the water; and though they run a great pace by land, yet their bodies are so long and unwieldy, that they cannot easily turn, whereby their prey escapes them on shore. They watch therefore in the sedge, and other cover, by the sides of rivers, and so much resemble the trunk of a tree, that, it is said, travellers, mistaking them for such, have been unwarily surpris'd. As for the tears and alluring voice, ascribed to the crocodile by the ancients, they may be considered as mere fiction; and the same may be said of the little bird trochileus, which is reported to live on the meat she picks out of the crocodile's teeth; and the rat ichnuemon, which jumps into the crocodile's mouth, and eats his way out again through his belly. Notwithstanding crocodiles grow to such a prodigious size, it seems, they proceed from an egg no bigger than a turkey's hatched in the warm sand.

*Crocodiles.*

**d** THE hippopotamus, or sea-horse, is another amphibious animal which frequents the *Nile*. M. *Thevenot* says, he saw one, which was shot by some janizaries as it was grazing on the land. It was about the bigness of a camel, of a tawny colour, the hinder part made more like an ox, and the head like that of an horse, with great open nostrils; the eyes and ears small; thick large feet, almost round, and four claws; the tail like an elephant's, and not more hair than upon an elephant. In the lower jaw it had four great teeth, half a foot long, two of them crooked, and as large as the horns of an ox, and the other two strait, but standing out in length. These monsters are very rare, even in *Africa*, for none had been seen there many years before.

*The hippopotamus.*

**e** THE cameleon is reckoned among the remarkable animals of *Egypt*, but is not peculiar to this country. In shape and size, it partly resembles a lizard, and partly a frog, and is, in a true light, of a greenish colour, but assumes the colour of most things it stands near. It was formerly thought to have lived only upon air, but has been observed to take flies, by darting out its tongue, which is of an extraordinary length: however, those that have kept them in boxes, observe, that they will live several months without any nourishment but what they draw in with their breath.

*The cameleon.*

THE ostrich is another animal very common in the deserts of *Egypt* and *Arabia*. They are the tallest fowls we meet with any where, and will strike a blow like a horse, with their huge feet. Their backs are shaped almost like a camel's, and they run a prodigious pace, assisted by their wings, which are of little use to them in flying, for they can scarce raise themselves from the ground, and the *Arabs* frequently ride them down.

*Ostrich.*

**f** THE serpent called the basilisk, or cockatrice, whose very eyes dart certain death, if we may credit the ancients, is said to be found also in *Egypt*; but this may be rather supposed to be only a simile of the ancient poets, to illustrate how fatally young men are frequently allured and captivated by the eyes of some fair charmer to their destruction. The asp is another little serpent found also in this country, by whose bite the celebrated *Cleopatra* and her ladies chose to die, the poison operating suddenly, and throwing the party into a deep sleep, though its effects are said to be various, some who are wounded by it dying in a laughing fit, and others weeping.

*Basilisk.*

*Asp.*

**g** *EGYPT* is famous for camels, dromedaries, and fine horses, as the neighbouring country of *Arabia*. Oxen, buffaloes, goats, and sheep, are to be met with likewise in great plenty here; especially the sheep with fat tails, which weigh several pounds. They abound also with poultry, geese, ducks, and a great variety of small birds; but fish is not very good

*Other animals.*

taken out of the pits; so that the curious who have warmth in the most rigorous seasons; which, notan, and use it for maintaining heat in their green-houses, may likewise see birds produced from its doubt, must be a double pleasure to them, arising from the same cause.



or plentiful, unless in the maritime parts, and near the mouth of the Nile. Upon the retiring of the waters of that river to the usual channel, a multitude of frogs and other insects are produced; and was there not a large fowl like a stork, perhaps, the ibis of the ancient Egyptians, which constantly devours them, they would be annually afflicted with the plague of frogs.

Present inhabitants of Egypt.

As Egypt is inhabited by several different people, their stature, complexion, and habits are different. The genius, character, person, and manner of life of the Turks and Arabs, are as already described in treating of their countries in Asia. The Moors, and common people, who are natives of the country, are almost as swarthy as the Arabs in this hot climate; and they are generally an ill-looking people and very slovenly, especially the Copts. The Egyptian women that are not exposed to the sun have fine complexions as well as features. All of them, in general, are very frugal in their diet.

History of the Egyptian sovereigns.

THE Egyptians are certainly a very ancient nation, though far from being so ancient as they make themselves, when they give us a catalogue of their princes, some of whom, according to them, must have lived several thousands of years before the creation. But as it is observed by some, that the Egyptians by years did not intend the periodical revolution of the sun, but of the moon, it may not be difficult to account for this mistake; besides, as it has been long since observed of the Chinese and other people, who run up their original so very high, that they give us no tolerable account or history of those pretended times, but, on the contrary, relate that all arts and sciences, even agriculture, were introduced among them about the times our histories relate; if the world had been so old as they suggest, it must be very strange that these arts had not been introduced before, without which it would be very difficult for mankind to subsist.

THAT Egypt was planted by Misraim, the grandson of Noah, cannot be asserted, because it is very difficult to shew who were the first planters of almost any nation in the universe. It is sufficient that it appears, that this and several of the neighbouring nations, were planted soon after the dispersion of the people at the tower of Babel. Cham, the son of Noah, is generally held to be the same with Jupiter Ammon; and Misraim, his grandson, the same with Osiris, the great deity of the Egyptians, and from him, it is said, descended that race of monarchs who had the general denomination of Pharaohs; but from whom or how the word Pharaoh came to be the style of their kings, no satisfactory reason can be given.

THERE are reckoned above sixty princes of the line of these Pharaohs, and they reigned, as it is said, in an uninterrupted succession to the year of the world 3435, when Pharaoh Psammiticus, the second monarch of that name, was conquered by Cambyses II. king of Persia, who united Egypt to that empire, under which it remained till the reign of Darius, being upwards of 100 years, when it revolted from that crown, and became an independent kingdom again under Amyrteus, the first king after the revolt, in which state it continued about fifty years, when Ochus king of Persia recovered the dominion of it again; and it remained subject to the Persian monarchs till Alexander the Great defeated Darius, when it fell under the power of that prince, with the rest of the provinces of the Persian empire.

AFTER the death of Alexander, Ptolemy the son of Lagus, or, as others insinuate, the son of Philip of Macedon, and consequently half brother of Alexander, found means to mount the throne of Egypt, and render it an independent kingdom once again. His successors ever after retained the name of Ptolemy; and this line continued between 2 and 300 years, the last sovereign being the famous Cleopatra, wife and sister to Ptolemy Dionysius the last king, and mistress successively to Julius Caesar and Mark Anthony.

It was Ptolemy Philadelphus, son of the first Ptolemy, who collected the Alexandrian library, said to consist of 700,000 volumes, and the same prince caused the scriptures to be translated into Greek; but whether by seventy-two interpreters, and in the manner as is commonly related, is justly questioned. The Ptolemies sometimes extended their dominion over great part of Syria, and were frequently at war with the kings of Syria, in which they met with various success. After the death of Cleopatra this kingdom fell under the power of the Romans, and continued a Roman province, till the reign of Heraclius, the emperor of Constantinople; when the people, being disgusted with their governors, called in Omar the third caliph of the Saracens, and submitted to the Mohammedan power about the year 640. But surely the administration of the Greek emperors must be very grievous, which could induce a christian nation to make choice of a Saracen for their sovereign.

THE caliphs of Babylon were sovereigns here till about the year 870, when the Egyptians set up a caliph of their own, called the caliph of Cairo, to whom the Saracens of Africa and Spain were subject; but the governors of the provinces, or sultans under the caliphs of Babylon and Cairo, soon wrested the civil power out of the hands of their caliphs, or high-priests, leaving them only a shadow of sovereignty.

ABOUT the year 1160, Affareddin, or Saracen, general of Norradin, the Saracen sultan of Damascus, subdued the kingdom of Egypt, and usurped the dominion of it; being succeeded



- a in this kingdom by his son *Saladin*, who reduced also the kingdoms of *Damascus*, *Mesopotamia*, and *Palestine*, under his power, and about the year 1190 took *Jerusalem* from the Christians. It was this prince who established a body of troops in *Egypt* like the present Janizaries, composed of the sons of Christians taken in war, or purchased of the *Tartars*, to whom he gave the name of Mamalukes, which signifies no more than slave. Among the forces of the *Mohammedan* princes the title of slave is indeed very honourable, being expressive of a particular devotion to the service of the sovereign, and such consequently are intitled to greater privileges than other subjects. The posterity of *Ajfredin* enjoyed the crown till the year 1242, when the Mamalukes deposed *Elmutan*, as they had done
- b his father *Melech Affalack* some years before, and set one of their own officers upon the throne. The first king of the race of the Mamalukes was *Turquemenius*, and he and his successors were engaged in continual wars with the Christians in *Syria* and *Palestine*, till *Araphus* the sixth sultan intirely dispossessed the Christians of the Holy Land. The ninth sultan *Melechnassar* subdued the island of *Cyprus*, and made it tributary to *Egypt*. About the year 1501, *Campson Gaurus* the fifteenth sultan of the Mamalukes, entering into an alliance with *Ismael*, the sophi of *Persia*, against *Selimus* the third emperor, and tenth king of the Ottoman family, the confederates received several memorable defeats; and *Tonombius II.* who succeeded *Campson Gaurus*, was deposed and murdered by *Selimus*, and, according to some accounts, hanged up at one of the gates of *Grand Cairo*. *Gazelle*, one of
- c the grandees of the Mamalukes, maintained a war for some time against *Selimus*, but was at length defeated, and *Egypt* made a province of the Ottoman empire. The Mamaluke sultans were always chosen by a majority of Mamalukes out of their own body, who were so jealous of the kingdom's being made hereditary, that they scarce ever elected the son of the preceding sultan; and if the choice ever happened to fall upon such a one, they were so apprehensive of its being made an ill precedent, that they never rested till they deposed him.

- SINCE the Ottoman emperors have had the dominion of this kingdom, they always governed it by a viceroy, stiled the Bassa of *Grand Cairo*; but as *Egypt* is subdivided into several inferior governments, these governors are not sent from *Constantinople*, or appointed
- d by the viceroy, but are natives of *Egypt*, and seem to be vested with sovereign power in their respective districts. The grand signior has thought fit to humour them in this respect, rather than hazard the revolt of so rich a province, which is now esteemed the granary of *Constantinople*, as it was anciently of *Rome*; for this is a soil so fertilized by the *Nile*, that it is not in the power of the *Turks*, it seems, to render it barren. But another great reason of its continuing fruitful is, that the *Egyptians*, by being still governed by their own princes, have an inheritance in their lands, which are privileges very few of the subjects of *Turkey* enjoy besides; neither dares the *Turkish* government to overload this people with taxes, for fear of a general revolt: so that except what the viceroy and his creatures illegally extort from them, the whole revenue raised by the government does not amount to a
- e million of our money, of which two thirds are spent within the kingdom, and not more than one third comes into the grand signior's treasury.

- WE must not forget that from *Egypt* came that vagrant race called Gypsies, dispersed into every kingdom of *Europe* and *Asia*. They were originally called *Zinganees* by the *Turks*, from their captain *Zinganeus*, who, when sultan *Selimus* made a conquest of *Egypt* about the year 1517, refused to submit to the *Turkish* yoke, and retired into the desarts, where they lived by rapine and plunder, and frequently came down into the plains of *Egypt*, committing great outrages in the towns upon the *Nile*, under the dominion of the *Turks*. But being at length subdued, and banished *Egypt*, they agreed to disperse themselves in small parties, into every country in the known world; and, as they were natives
- f of *Egypt*, a country where the occult sciences, or black art, as it was called, was supposed to have arrived to great perfection, and which, in that credulous age, was in great vogue with persons of all religions and persuasions, they found the people wherever they came, very easily imposed on.

- IF we trace these cheats, these illusions of fancy back to their original source, we shall find them all flowing from the superstition in which the ideas of the *Egyptians* were primitively immersed. How could this people avoid being highly superstitious? *Egypt* was the country of enchantment; imagination was there perpetually struck by the grand machines of the marvellous, and nothing was to be seen but phantoms of terror and admiration. The prince was an object of astonishment and fear: like the thunder which gathers in the depths of the clouds, and seems there to roll with greater grandeur and majesty, it was
- g from the inmost recesses of his labyrinths, and his palace, that the monarch dictated his will. The kings never shewed themselves without the terrifying and formidable apparatus of a power sprung from a divine original. The death of the king was an apotheosis: the earth sunk under the weight of their mausoleums. By these powerful Gods, *Egypt*

Present government of Egypt.

Gypsies.

Causes of the superstition of the Egyptians.



was covered with superb obelisks, filled with wonderful inscriptions, and with enormous pyramids, whose summits were lost in the air: by these beneficent Gods those lakes were formed, which secured *Egypt* against the inattentions of nature. a

More formidable than the throne and its monarchs, the temples and their pontiffs still farther imposed on the imagination of the *Egyptians*. In one of these temples was the colossus of *Serapis*: no mortal dared to approach it. With the duration of this colossus was connected that of the world: whoever should break this talisman would have replunged the earth into its first chaos. No bounds were set to credulity: every thing in *Egypt* was ænigma, wonder, and mystery. All the temples gave oracles; all the caverns bellowed forth horrible howlings; every where were seen tremulous tripods, the *Pythia* in a rage, victims, priests, and magicians, who, invested with the power of the gods, were ready to exert their vengeance. b

The philosophers, armed against superstition, rose up against it; but soon engaged in the labyrinth of too abstracted metaphysics, dispute divided their opinions; interest and fanaticism took advantage of them, and produced the chaos of their different systems: from thence sprung the pompous mysteries of *Isis*, *Osiris*, and *Horus*. Then, covered with the mysterious and sublime darkness of theology and religion, the imposture remained undiscovered. If some *Egyptians* perceived it, by the glimmering light of doubt, revenge, always suspended over the head of the indiscreet, turned their eyes from the light, and locked up truth in their mouths. Even the kings, who to guard against all disrespect, had at first, in concert with the priests, raised up terror and superstition about the throne, were themselves terrified at them, and soon entrusted the temples with the sacred depositum of the young princes; fatal epoch of the tyranny of the *Egyptian* priests! No obstacle could then oppose their power. Their sovereigns were encircled from their infancy with the bandage of opinion, free and independent as they were; and while they might see nothing in these priests but cheats and mercenary enthusiasts, they became their slaves and victims. The people, the imitators of their kings, followed their example, and all *Egypt* fell prostrate before the feet of the pontiff, and the altar of superstition. c

### C H A P. III.

d

*Of Ethiopia, comprehending the Countries of Nubia, Abyssinia, Abesh, and Anian, Zanguebar, Monomotopa, Monemugi, and Caffraria.*

*Boundaries of Ethiopia, and the countries comprehended under that name.*

THE ancients, as it appears from their histories, called all that they knew of *Africa* to the southward of *Egypt*, *Ethiopia*, and the people *Ethiopes*, from their dark complexions; but the moderns include only under that denomination the countries of *Nubia*, *Abyssinia*, *Abesh*, and *Anian*, which are bounded by *Egypt* and the desert of *Barca* on the north; by the *Red Sea* and the *Eastern Ocean* on the east; by *Zanguebar* and *Caffraria*, on the south; and by *Guinea*, *Nigritia*, and *Zaara*, on the west: however, all the countries still according to the ancient division, that lie almost in a straight line from *Egypt* to the *Cape of Good Hope*, may be comprehended under the general name of *Ethiopia*, divided, as before-mentioned, into Upper and Lower. e

*Nubia.*

*NUBIA* is bounded by *Egypt* towards the north; by *Abyssinia* on the south; by the coast of *Abesh* on the east; and by *Zaara* and *Nigritia* on the west. It is said to be 400 leagues in length, and 200 in breadth; but scarce any two historians or geographers agree in these matters, seeming to guess at almost every thing they relate of *Nubia*, which is the case of almost every other inland country of *Africa*. Some tell us of a considerable river that rises here and falls into the *Nile*; that the country abounds in gold, musk, sandal wood and ivory; that it has elephants, horses, camels, lions, and such other animals, wild and tame, as are found in the neighbouring country of *Abyssinia*; but they give us not the least intimation, whether it be a monarchy or commonwealth; or whether it is divided into many little kingdoms and states, the last of which is most probable, because we hear so little of the inhabitants. The same uncertainty we meet with in regard to their religion; but it is highly probable *Paganism*, *Judaism*, *Christianity*, or *Mohammedanism*, is professed by one or other of the natives, people of all those various religions bordering upon them. f

*ABYSSINIA* has now little communication with the rest of the world, the *Turks* having possessed themselves of *Abesh*, which runs along the western coast of the *Red-Sea*, and the rest of it being surrounded by mountains, or unpassable deserts. Within these it appears to be an exceeding fine country, diversified with woods and fruitful plains, well planted with palm-trees, dates, and cedars, and watered by several noble rivers. The river *Nile* rises in the midst of it, and having first taken a circuit almost round its source, g



- a runs 100 miles to the northward, and afterwards 200 miles towards the east; then turning to the south and south-east, continues its course 250 miles further. In this course it forms the lake of *Dambee*, of 120 miles extent. From thence it takes a semicircular sweep of 500 miles, and then turning directly north, enters the kingdom of *Egypt*. This winding course not only renders the soil extremely fertile, but is of great advantage to inland commerce; though after the *Nile*'s entering *Egypt*, there are so many steep falls and cataracts, that the river is no longer properly navigable for the purposes of traffic. Being swelled by the rains which annually fall at a certain season between the tropics, it overflows all the lower grounds that border on it; and this is the case of all the rivers that rise within the tropics, though the ancients were at so great a loss to account for this periodical flood;
- b and what increases the flood still more are the torrents that fall from the numerous hills with which this country is incumbered. The inhabitants, however, have this advantage from their hills, that they can remove thither in the hot season, and enjoy a cooler air than they do in *Egypt*, which lies several degrees north of *Abyssinia*. Their valleys, also rendered fruitful by the annual rains and the numerous rivulets, produce plenty of corn, rice, wine, flax, sugar, and fruits proper for the climate. Their flax is esteemed the finest in the world; and from hence, it is said, that the *Egyptians* had theirs, of which they made the fine linen of *Egypt* mentioned in the scripture: and had they, at this day, an opportunity of exporting the produce of their soil, this country alone, it is thought, might raise rice, sugar, and other commodities, sufficient to supply all the neighbouring countries.
- c The *Turks*, who are masters of the coast of the *Red Sea*, though they will suffer no other nation to trade to *Abyssinia*, annually export great quantities of rice from hence, particularly at the times of the great pilgrimages to *Mecca*, *Arabia* not affording provision sufficient for their subsistence. Gold is also very plentiful here, of which the *Turks* get some; and had the *Abyssinians* an opportunity of bartering it for the merchandize of *Europe*, as great a plenty of it might be found in this country as any where, though none of the gold mines are wrought at present, but only those of silver and copper. Amongst other precious stones they have the largest emeralds in the world. Their cattle are camels, oxen, sheep, asses, all in great plenty, and very large; their wild beasts are such as are common to the rest of *Africa*; but what they are most famous for, is an excellent breed
- d of horses, equal to those of *Arabia*; or, as some conjecture, those of *Arabia* are, in reality, bred in *Abyssinia*, where they abound in rich pastures. As to the persons of the *Ethiopians* or *Abyssinians*, they are generally of a good stature; their complexion a deep black, but their features more agreeable than their southern neighbours, having neither flat noses nor thick lips like other *Caffres*. The sovereign of this country was once absolute; but at present the great men set up for princes in their respective governments, and the king can transact nothing of any consequence without them. It was the king of this country, that the *Europeans* used to stile *Prester John*. The *Portuguese*, it is said, when they first discovered it, seeing a cross always carried before him, stiled him priest, or *Presbyter Maximus*. He took upon him the supreme ecclesiastical as well as civil power; others say the *Turks*
- e gave him the name of *Prester Cham*, or *Cam*, that is, king of slaves, because they purchased most of their negro slaves in this country. The government appears now to be a republic, or rather a mixed monarchy, in which the prince's power is extremely limited by the great men. As to the common people, it is not very material whether the power be lodged in the king or lords, for they are all slaves either to the one or the other. Their religion is a mixture of Christianity and *Judaism*; but they seem to adhere more to the *Greek* church than to the *Latin*. They keep both the Christian and the *Jewish* sabbath, and both baptize and circumcise their children, and even their females. They are said to have a great deal of vivacity and natural wit, to be of a teachable disposition, and fond of learning, though they have but few opportunities of improving themselves. The better
- f sort of them are clothed in vests, made of silk stuffs or cotton, after the manner of the *Franks* in *Turky*; but their poor people go almost naked, having only a small piece of skin or coarse stuff wrapped about their waists. They have no other bread than thin cakes baked upon the hearth as they want them: they eat all manner of flesh almost as the *Europeans* do, except swine's flesh, and such other meats as were prohibited to the *Jews*; they also abstain from things strangled, and from blood, killing their meat in the same manner as the *Jews* do. As to the poor people, they live chiefly upon milk, butter, cheese, roots, herbs, and what their flocks and herds produce. This is the country from whence, it is supposed, the queen of *Sheba* came to hear the wisdom of *Solomon*; and from whence the eunuch, prime minister of queen *Candace*, came, who was converted to Christianity and baptised by St. *Philip*. *Ethiopia* was then a mighty empire, subject to one sovereign, who commanded the sea-coast as well as the inland country. When the *Portuguese* missionaries resorted to *Ethiopia* towards the latter end of the fifteenth century, they brought over a great many of the *Ethiopians* to their religion, and persuaded the emperor not only to acknow-



acknowledge the pope's supremacy, but to admit a patriarch amongst them sent thither from *Rome*. The government also consented to abolish their ancient rites and ceremonies, and conform intirely to the ritual of the *Latin* church; but many of the nobility and governors of the provinces, with a majority of the common people, having the greatest abhorrence of these innovations, rose in arms against their emperor, which occasioned civil wars in *Ethiopia*, that lasted upwards of 100 years, wherein many thousands were killed. But the court, with the assistance of the Jesuits, *European* engineers, and some *Portuguese* troops, were generally victorious over those of the ancient religion, but could never subdue their obstinate perseverance in it; and several provinces revolted intirely from the emperor. However, the *Ethiopian* emperors continued still to profess the tenets of the *Latin* church, and to submit to the dictates of *Rome*; till at length the Jesuits, under pretence of maintaining the pope's ecclesiastical jurisdiction, took upon them to direct most secular affairs, treating the prince rather as a viceroy to the pope, than sovereign of the country; and having erected and garrisoned several forts, were leading for *European* forces to maintain their usurped power, when the emperor, as well as the nobility, taking the alarm, agreed at once to abolish popery, and restore their ancient religion. The *Romish* priests were hereupon generally sacrificed to the fury of the people, and their patriarch very narrowly escaped out of the country with his life: and when afterwards three capuchins came as far as *Squaquena*, upon the *Red Sea*, from whence they sent letters to the emperor of *Ethiopia* to obtain leave to come into his territories again; that prince requested the *Turkish* bassa, who commanded on the coast, to suffer no *Franks* to come that way into his territories, and to send him the heads of those capuchins. This the bassa not only obliged him in, but sent him their skins flayed off and stuffed, that he might know them to be *Franks* by their colour, and priests by their shaved crowns. Thus have the *Romish* missionaries procured themselves to be banished out of almost every country where they have planted their religion. They have indeed by their skill in medicine and mathematics, and an artful address, insinuated themselves into the courts of many great princes; but their ill advised advancing of the pope's supremacy to an extravagant height, together with their endeavours to control the government in civil, as well as ecclesiastical matters, has ever occasioned their expulsion. Thus it was in *Japan*, where the emperor finding them encroaching upon his civil authority, ordered every Christian in his dominions to be massacred, and that no Christian should ever set foot on shore there again. This also has put a stop to their progress in *China*, and occasioned very severe persecutions of the Christians there. Still the Jesuits persist in their encroachments on princes where they have an opportunity; but the consequence must be, as we lately have found it verified by the conduct of the kings of *Portugal* and *France*, that they will at length procure their own extirpation by the general consent of Christian princes, as the Knights-Templars did by their insolence in the fourteenth century. There seems nothing more material to add in regard to the *Abyssinians*, but that the sons of the emperor succeed according to their seniority, as do those of the nobility who have obtained an independency; but the rest of the people have no inheritance of their lands, nor can dispose of their estates or effects, but by the permission of the emperors, or their respective lords. The prince is stiled Negascht by his subjects, which in their language signifies, king of kings; and for this reason the *Europeans* give him the title of emperor. The *Persians* also give him the title of Pat-sha, the disposer of kingdoms, which is the highest title known in *Asia*, and equal to that of emperor in *Europe*. But every one of these princes, at his accession to the throne, assumes a particular title: one stiles himself the Pillar of Faith; another, the Virgin's Incense; and another, the Beloved of God, sprung from the stock of *Judah*, the son of *David*, the son of *Solomon*, &c. for they have a tradition, that their princes are descended from *Solomon* by the queen of *Sheba*. The arms of the emperor are a lion rampant, holding a cross, with this motto, *Vicit Leo de Tribu Judah*.

Abeish and  
Anian.

THAT part of *Ethiopia* which is called by the name of *Abeish* and *Anian*, is bounded by *Egypt* and *Abyssinia* towards the north and west; by the *Red Sea* and the *Eastern Ocean*, on the east; and by *Zanguebar* on the south, extending from the fifth degree of north latitude to the twentieth. *Anian* lies upon, or near the *Eastern Ocean*, and the *Red-Sea*. The *Portuguese* and other *Europeans*, who have visited it of late years, assure us, it is a perfect desert, from latitude 5, to the straits of *Babelmandel*, and even within those straits for several miles. The *Turks* are masters of the coast of *Abeish* to the northward of *Anian*, and in the principal ports, *Suaquem* and *Arquico*, about 150 miles distant from each other, keep strong garrisons, which command the country, a fruitful tract of ground, populous and abounding with plenty of most things.

Zanguebar.

UNDER the name of *Zanguebar*, may be included all the east coast of *Africa*, extending from 5 degrees north to 28 south, and comprehending the countries of *Magadoxa*, *Melinda*, *Quilca*, *Mozambic*, and *Sofala*. All the people upon this coast are in alliance, or rather subject



- a subject to the *Portuguese*. The country of *Magadexa* is barren, affording scarce any merchandize or cattle, unless a good breed of horses, which the natives, a mixture of *Pagans*, *Mohammedans*, and *Christians*, sell to the *Portuguese*, who dispose of them again to the *Arabs*. *Melinda*, though it lies so near the Equator, is exceeding pleasant, fruitful, and healthful, being frequently refreshed with showers and fine sea-breezes. The city of the same name, and the capital of the *Portuguese* dominions in this part of the world, is situate in two degrees and a half south latitude, on an island at the mouth of a river also of the same name. It is a large populous place, well built, and has a good harbour, commanded by a strong citadel. Some calculate that the inhabitants of the city, and the little island on which it stands, do not amount to less than 200,000 souls, great part of them Christians. The
- b public buildings, consisting of seventeen churches, nine religious houses, the governor's palace, and the magazine and town hall, exceed any thing of the kind in magnificence that is to be found in *Africa*. The warehouses are stocked with all sorts of *European* goods, with which the *Portuguese* trade with the natives for gold, elephants teeth, slaves, ostrich-feathers, wax, senna, aloes, civet, ambergrease, and frankincense. The country produces also rice, millet, sugar, and fruits; and the *Portuguese* export great quantities of rice to their other settlements, besides what they use. The king of the country of *Quiloa*, which lies to the southward of *Melinda*, pays, it is said, a tribute in gold to the *Portuguese*, amounting to the value of 100,000 crusades annually. Excellent sugar-canes are here produced, but the *Portuguese* do not improve them, by reason of the unhealthiness of the climate. The country of *Mozambic* lies south of *Quiloa*; the chief town is situate on an island on the mouth of a river of the same name, in fifteen degrees south latitude. It is regularly fortified, and has a good harbour, defended by a citadel; and the island on which it stands, is thirty miles in circumference, and extremely populous. The *Portuguese* shipping to and from *India*, call here for refreshments; and as this country produces great herds of cattle, the *Portuguese* kill beef and salt it up, sending it to the *Brazils*, or selling it to the *European* shipping. They also barter *European* goods with the natives for their gold, elephants teeth, and slaves. The town has six churches and several monasteries. *Mongale*, another inland-town in this country, is also garrisoned by the *Portuguese*, being their chief staple for *European* goods. The gold they receive from the natives, is found near the surface of the
- d earth, or in the sands of rivers, no gold mines, or very few, being at present wrought in *Africa*. The country or kingdom of *Sofala* lies south of *Mozambic*, and the gulph of the same name is part of the channel of *Mozambic*, on the east. From the mouth of the river of the *Holy Ghost* to *Cape Corientes*, the soil is very even, barren, and desert; but from that cape to the mouth of the river *Cumena*, the country is fruitful and very populous. The coast is very low, and mariners discover their approach to it, not so much by their sight as smell, because it abounds with fragrant flowers. The inhabitants assert, that their gold mines yield above two millions of metigals *per annum*, each amounting to about twelve shillings sterling; that the ships from *Zedein* and *Mecca* carry off above two millions a year in time of peace; and that the governor of *Mozambic*, whose office lasts but three years,
- e has above 300,000 crowns revenue, without reckoning the soldiers pay, and the king of *Portugal's* tribute. From hence *Mequet* concludes this to be the *Ophir*, whither *Solomon* sent ships every three years from *Eziongebar* to fetch gold; *Eziongebar* being thought to be *Suez*, a sea-port on the *Red-Sea*. This conjecture is supported by several edifices, which seem to have been built by foreigners. Some think this to be confirmed by the authority of the Septuagint, who translate the word *Ophir* by the word *Σοφίρα*, *Sophira*; and since liquids are often put for one another, *Sephira* does not differ much from *Sofala*. Besides, *Thomas Lopez*, in his *India* voyage, relates, that the inhabitants of this country boast that they have books which prove, that in the time of *Solomon*, the *Israelites* sailed every third year towards these parts to fetch gold. The inhabitants of *Quiloa*, *Mombaza*, and *Melinda*,
- f come to this country in little boats, called *Zambues*, with stuffs of blue and white cottons, silk stuffs, yellow and red ambergrease, which they exchange here for gold and ivory, and the natives sell them again to the subjects of *Monomotopa*, who give them gold in return without weighing it. It is said, that when the *Sofalese* see ships coming, they light up fires, to signify that they shall be welcome. The capital city here, and the only one of note, is also called *Sofala*. It stands on a river of the same name, about six leagues from the sea-coast. The *Portuguese* are masters of it, having built a strong fortress there, ever since the year 1500. Their chief trade consists in ambergrease, gold, slaves, and silk stuffs. They likewise take care to have those mines worked which lie to the south of the town. This country is spacious, and little known to any but to them; and they appear to be wiser in relation to the conduct of their trade in *Africa* than any other of the *European* potentates, having not contented themselves with erecting a few forts and factories, but settled them-
- g

12 Kings ix. 28.



selves upon the continent in great numbers, and brought the natives to clothe according to the *European* mode; which has created a considerable and profitable commerce to them.

Monomotopa.

*MONOMOTOPA*, an inland country in this part of *Africa*, has the maritime kingdom of *Sofala* on the east, the river *del Spiritu Santo* on the south; the mountains of *Caffraria* on the west; and the river *Cauma* on the north, which parts it from *Monemugi*. The air of this country is very temperate, the land fertile in pastures, and all the necessaries of life, being watered by several rivers, on the banks of which grow many fine trees and sugar-canes without any culture; and yet this fine country is not peopled in all parts of it. The inhabitants are rich in horned cattle, which they value more than gold. They have no beasts of burden, but a vast number of elephants, as appears from the great quantity of ivory that is exported from this country. Here are a great many gold mines; and the rivers that run through their veins, carry a great deal of gold dust along with their streams. The inhabitants dive to the bottom of the rivers and lakes, take up the sand, and carry it on the banks to separate the gold from it. They are tall, well-shaped, strong, healthy, and much more lively than the people of *Mozambique* and *Melinda*; and they are besides lovers of war, which is the trade followed by all those who do not apply themselves to commerce. This country is divided into seven provinces, or petty kingdoms, vassals to the king. *Manica*, situate on the south of the river *del Spiritu Santo*, is the capital town, and to the south of it are gold mines.

*MONEMUGI*, another country in the south of *Africa*, has *Zanguebar* on the east, *Monomotopa* on the south, *Motamba* and *Makoko* on the west, and *Abyssinia* on the north, and partly to the west, though its boundaries that way cannot be exactly ascertained. It is divided into the following parts. 1. *Mujaco* borders on *Congo* westward, on *Nubia* northward, on *Abyssinia* and on *Makoko* southward. That the extent of this monarchy is very great, appears by the distant countries its confines extend to, and the sovereign's great power, by his being in continual war with his neighbour the king of *Makoko*. The people of *Congo* travel hither for elephants teeth. 2. *Makoko*, otherwise called *Anzico*. Its boundaries northward, eastward, and southward, cannot be well ascertained. The people here do not till the ground, have no property, nor any settled habitation; but, like the *Arabs*, wander from place to place and subsist by plunder. They traffic in the kingdom of *Angola*, whither they carry slaves from their own country; and from *Nubia*, which they exchange for salt, glass beads, silk, knives, and other wares. 3. *Gingiro*, a potent kingdom, lies between *Narca*, the most southern kingdom of *Abyssinia*, and *Makoko* and *Cambate*; north and east of the first of them, and west of the latter. The great river *Zebee*, that runs down to *Makoko*, almost environs it. When the king here purchases any thing of foreign merchants, he pays them in slaves, and these are the sons and daughters of any family, which he takes at pleasure without contradiction. 4. *Cambate* joins to this kingdom on the west; has *Abyssinia* on the north; *Alaba*, or the country of the *Galas*, on the east; and *Makoko* on the south. The country pays some acknowledgments to the emperor of *Abyssinia*, which are only voluntary. 5. *Alaba*, another large kingdom, still to the eastward of *Cambate*, inhabited by a cruel people, called *Galas*, and reaching to the coast of *Zanguebar*. 6. *Monemugi Proper*, so called, lies in the torrid zone, and about the equinoctial line, south of *Makoko*, west of *Zanguebar*, north of *Monomotapa*, and east of *Congo* and of the northern parts of *Monomotopa*. To ascertain its extent is too difficult a task, being a country so little frequented. The country known abounds with gold, silver, copper mines, and elephants. The natives clothe themselves in silk and cottons, which they buy of strangers, and wear collars of transparent amber-beads, brought them from *Cambaya*, which beads serve also instead of money; gold and silver being too common, and of little value among them. Their monarch always endeavours to be at peace with the princes round about him, to keep an open trade with *Quiloa*, *Melinda*, and *Mombaza*, on the east, and with *Congo* on the west, from all which parts the black merchants resort thither for gold. The *Portuguese* merchants report, that on the east side of *Monemugi*, there is a great lake full of small islands, abounding with all sorts of fowl and cattle, and inhabited by negroes. They relate also, that on the main land eastwards, they heard sometimes the ringing of bells, and that one could observe buildings, very much like churches; and that from these parts came men of a brown and tawny complexion, who traded with those islanders, and with the people of *Monemugi*. This country affords also abundance of palm-wine, and oil, and such great plenty of honey, that above half of it is lost, the blacks not being able to consume it. The air is generally very unwholesome, and excessively hot, which is the reason why no Christians undertake to travel into this empire.

Caffraria.

*CAFFRARIA* is the last country that remains to be described in the southern parts of *Africa*. It begins at *Cape Negro*, about the 15th degree, and 30 minutes south latitude; extends from thence south easterly to the *Cape of Good Hope*, thence north east to the river



- a river *Del Spiritu Sancto*, about the 25th degree of south latitude, which river separates it on the north-east from *Monomotopa*; on the north it reaches almost to the Equator, where it borders on the kingdom of *Makoko*; and on the north-west it has *Congo*, or *Lower-Guinea*, with the kingdom of *Benguela*. *Martinieri* observes, that *Caffraria* is not properly the name of any particular country, and that there is no nation called *Caffres*, the appellation being rather opprobrious, and given by the *Arabs* to all those who do not profess the *Mohammedan* religion. It is derived from the *Arabic* word *Cafir*, which signifies an infidel, or unbeliever. The *Portuguese* taking the name in a more general sense, have called *Caffres* all those nations of *Africa* who have, or seem to have, no knowledge of a Deity.
- b From these boundaries of *Caffraria*, it appears to be a very large country, extending from *Cape Negro* to that of *Good-Hope*, near 20 degrees, or 1200 *English* miles from north to south; from the *Cape of Good Hope* north-east, to the mouth of the river *Del Spiritu Sancto*, about 850 miles; and from the same cape almost to the equinoctial line, about 29 degrees, or 1740 miles. Its greatest breadth, from *Cape St. Tome* to the mouth of the above river, is about 900 miles; but from the tropic of Capricorn, up to the equinoctial line, its breadth is not much above 600 miles. *Caffraria* may be divided into the kingdom of *Mataman*, the country of the *Hottentots*, *Terra de Natal*, and *Terra dos Fumos*.

- MATAMAN* is bounded by the kingdom of *Benguela* on the north; by the river *Bravabul* on the east and south; and by the *Ethiopic Ocean* on the west. It extends from *Cape Negro*, in south latitude 16. 30. to the mouth of the river *Bravabul*, beyond the tropic of Capricorn, in south latitude 24. so that its greatest length, from north to south, is about 450 *English* miles; but its greatest breadth, from west to east, is not above 260 miles. About 200 miles to the west of *Cape Negro*, the climate is pretty temperate; and, though the coast is very sandy, the country is pretty fruitful, and produces a great variety of provisions. The lands are extremely sandy all along the sea-coast, and the harbours bad, and little frequented. Here are no towns nor cities bordering upon the sea, but only poor scattering villages.

- THE country of the *Hottentots* is bounded on the north-west by part of the river *Bravabul*; on the north it extends to the tropic of Capricorn; on the north east, the river *Del Spiritu Sancto* parts it from the empire of *Monomotopa*; on the east and south it has the *Eastern-Ocean*; and on the west the *Ethiopic-Ocean*.

- THE *Cape of Good-Hope*, which is the most famous place for any traffic among the *Hottentots*, was first discovered in the year 1493, by *Bartholemew Dias*, a *Portuguese* admiral, in the reign of *John II.* king of *Portugal*. The admiral gave it the name of *Cabo dos totos los Tormentos*, or, *The Cape of Great Sorrows*, from the boisterous winds that are almost continually roaring there. But the king changed that name into *Cabo del bonne Esperanza*, or, *The Cape of Good Hope*; because, says he, there was now good hope of making prosperous voyages to the *East-Indies*; and by that name it has been known in *Europe* ever since. It lies in latitude 34. 15 south, and longitude 20. 10. east of *London*.

Cape of  
Good Hope.

- c THOUGH this famous cape was first discovered by *Dias*, yet he only went so near it as to observe its situation, bays, and anchorings; but the *Portuguese* never made any settlement there; nor did the *Dutch*, who first visited it in the year 1600, immediately discern all the advantages arising from this situation; and they only touched there for many years, in their voyages to and from the *East-Indies*, to traffic for provisions. For this purpose, they went from time to time, in bodies up into the country, and having thrown up a small fort near the harbour, they secured themselves and their purchases in the night-time, till they had shipped them. The *Dutch* made another use of the Cape, while things were carried on in this way, which was a notable contrivance. Every commander going out was provided with a square stone, upon which, at his departure from the Cape, he caused
- f his own name, that of his ship, and the names of his principal officers, to be fairly cut, together with the day he arrived there, and the day he departed. The stone, with such inscriptions, was buried in a certain place without the fort, and under it was put a tin box, sealed up, containing letters from the captain, and others, to the directors of the *Dutch East-India* company, together with such other letters as any person on board thought fit to send into *Europe*. This stone and box were taken up by the next ship that passed by the Cape, in her return, and by her conveyed to *Holland*. And whoever considers the situation of the Cape, (as a sort of half-way house in the *East-India* voyage) and the satisfaction the company by this means received, from time to time, concerning the fortune and condition of their ships, will acknowledge this a very useful contrivance.

- g AFTER this manner the *Dutch* used the Cape till the year 1650, when their fleet anchoring before it for the usual purpose, *M. Van Riebeck*, a surgeon, belonging to it, had the penetration to discern the still greater advantages which the company might reap from the Cape, by means of a very little cultivation. He observed, that the country was plentifully stocked with cattle; that the soil was rich, and capable of generous productions; that



that the natives were tractable, and the harbour commodious and improveable ; and upon the whole, made a good judgment to what a degree the *Dutch* trade might be secured, and facilitated by means of this situation : in a word, he saw that it was highly adviseable for the *Dutch* to make a settlement there. Accordingly, he digested his observations, and, on his return to *Holland*, laid them before the directors of the *East-India* company, who were so well satisfied with them, that immediately after a grand consultation on the same, they came to a resolution to attempt a settlement at the Cape without loss of time. Hereupon four ships were ordered for the Cape, with all the materials, instruments, artificers, and other hands necessary in such an expedition. *Van Riebeck*, the surgeon, was appointed admiral, with a commission on his arrival, to act as governor and commander in chief of the intended settlement ; and with power to treat, manage, and act, for the introduction and establishment of the *Dutch*, in such manner as he should think fit. *Van Riebeck* arriving safely with those four ships at the Cape, the natives were so captivated with the presents he brought them of brags, toys, beads, tobacco, brandy, &c. and so charmed with his address, that a treaty was no sooner set on foot than concluded ; wherein it was agreed, that, in consideration of such a quantity of certain toys and commodities to be delivered to the natives, as might cost 50,000 guilders, the *Dutch* should have full liberty to settle there. This being immediately performed, the *Dutch* took possession of the Cape, which with a great deal of ceremony was delivered up to them. The traffic of the *Dutch* with the natives was also, by the same treaty, established on a good and solid foundation, with many considerable privileges and regulations for their commercial interests.

In consequence of these measures, the governor raised a fort, wherein he built dwelling-houses, warehouses, and an hospital for the reception of the sick. To this fort he added proper outworks, to secure himself from any attacks from the *Europeans*. But, in process of time, settlers flowing abundantly to the Cape, and trade greatly increasing, the then governor, whose name was *Bax*, took notice, that the company's store-houses which were without the fort, would be soon too small to receive all the company's merchandize at the Cape : he judged likewise, that there was a necessity for augmenting the garrison, since all the trading nations in *Europe* saw, and began to envy the *Dutch*, the advantages they made of the Cape, and that therefore it might be justly apprehended, that one or other of those nations would attempt to wrest it from them. These things he represented to the court of directors, and proposed to them the erecting of a new fort in a more advantageous situation. This was accordingly done, and from time to time has been so augmented, that, at this day, it is a very strong and stately building, and provided with all manner of accommodations for a garrison. It covers the harbour roundly, and is of admirable defence towards the country ; and the company's storehouses for merchandizes are very large and commodious.

THE settlement being firmly established, they increased and multiplied in people to such a degree, that in few years, being still joined by new settlers from *Europe*, they began to extend themselves into new colonies along the coast. At present, they are divided into four principal ones : the first is at the Cape, where are the grand forts and the capital city ; the second is the *Hellenbogeest* ; the third the *Drakenston* ; and the fourth the *Waverish* colony. The *Dutch East-India* company has likewise bought, for the future increase of the people, all that tract of land called *Terra de Natal*, lying between the *Mozambique* and the Cape ; for which they paid in toys, commodities, and utensils, to the value of 30,000 guilders ; so that the province is now become of great extent.

EIGHT particular establishments constitute the present government of the *Dutch* colony at the Cape. These are, a grand council ; a court of justice ; a petty court of assaults, &c. a court of marriages ; a chamber of orphans ; an ecclesiastical council ; a common-council ; and a board of militia ; by means of all which, this colony is well regulated and governed.

In the neighbourhood of the Cape are three remarkable hills : the *Table-Hill* is the highest of the three. On the tops are several fine springs, the water as clear as crystal, and of a very delicate taste. Though at a distance no tokens of fertility are discovered on this hill, yet, in ascending it, the eye is surprised with the charms of its fruitfulness. The stately trees with which it is adorned, are hardly to be discovered till one is just near them. On this hill also, between two groves, a silver mine was discovered some years ago. Some ore dug out of it was sent to *Holland*, but not yielding, it seems, such a quantity of pure silver as to induce the company to think that the produce of the mine would answer the charge of working it, the mine was closed up and neglected : this mine may, probably, be wrought to good profit some years hence. Besides the pleasing harbours on this hill, the beauty, variety, and fragrancy of the flowers that grow in plenty, and adorn its tops and sides, are not to be expressed, says *Kolben* ; and they are more delightful to the eye, and more odoriferous, than any he ever met with in *Europe*. The other is called *Lyon Hill*, which is separated



separated from the former by a valley, whereon stands a hut for the shelter of two men, posted there by the government, to give notice to the fortress at the Cape of the appearance of any ships making in, of which they give signals to the fort. The last of these is the *Wind Hill*, which abounds with excellent pasture.

PART of the *Hottentots* have submitted themselves to the *Hollanders*, and are therefore styled the company's *Hottentots*. The *Dutch* send annually about fifty or sixty persons to trade with them, who purchase their cattle, and give them in exchange, arrack, tobacco, hemp, and such garden-seeds, &c. as they have occasion for, by which means a good understanding is preserved.

SEVERAL authors, particularly the *Dutch*, have been profuse in their descriptions of every thing regarding the *Hottentots*; but it may suffice in general to observe, that they are of a middling stature, with small limbs and active bodies, flat oval faces, large eyebrows, black eyes, and their colour and complexion rather tawny than black. They besmear their bodies with grease and soot, with the latter, perhaps, to appear blacker, and often twist the guts of beasts and fowls about their legs and arms in the manner of bracelets, which some say they occasionally make use of for food. Upon their heads they wear some shells, and on their bodies a mantle of sheep-skin, with the woolly side outwards, and another piece, like an apron, hanging before from the navel. Their huts are very mean, and so is their furniture, consisting only of two or three earthen pots to dress their victuals in, which are usually herbs, flesh, or shell-fish. In every village the eldest is first in order and dignity, his advice, as to what concerns the whole, being chiefly followed, as having most experience. They have neither temples, idols, nor any other peculiar place of worship; they celebrate, indeed, several nocturnal dances, with singing, at the new and full moon; but these are performed near their huts, and seem to be rather pastimes, or merry-meetings, than any thing relating to religious worship. Their weapons are javelins, with which they are very dexterous at hitting a mark; and bows with poisoned arrows, which are said to be mortal on drawing blood. They are so fond of their own country, and the sweets of a vagabond life, that there is no getting the better of their invincible reluctance to adopt the *European* manners and customs. For this reason, the *Dutch* missionaries, with all their endeavours, have not been able to convert a single *Hottentot*. *Van der Stel*, a governor of the Cape, having procured a *Hottentot* infant, took care to have him brought up in the principles of the Christian religion, and the manners and customs of *Europe*. He clothed him richly, had him taught several languages; and the boy's progress perfectly corresponded with the attention bestowed upon it. The governor, big with expectations from his pupil's capacity, sent him to the *Indies* with a commissary-general, who employed him usefully in the company's affairs; but, the commissary dying, he returned to the Cape, and in a visit he made to some of his *Hottentot* relations a few days after his arrival, took the strange resolution to exchange all his *European* finery for a sheep's skin. In this new dress he returned to the fort, loaded with a bundle containing the clothes he had thrown off, and presented himself in the following words: "Be so kind, Sir, as to take notice, that I for ever renounce this apparel. I likewise for ever renounce the Christian religion. It is my firm resolution to live and die in the religion, manners, and customs of my ancestors. All the favour I ask from you, is to leave me the collar and the hanger I wear, I shall keep them for your sake." These words were scarce out of his mouth, when he took to his heels, and was out of sight, nor did he ever appear among the *Europeans* again.

OUR *English* seamen who have touched at the Cape, could never be reconciled to the *Hottentots*, but always considered them as the nastiest and most brutal people in the world. This is chiefly owing to their ill smell, occasioned by their greasing themselves continually; yet this is not a custom peculiar to the *Hottentots*, being used by most of the negroes on the coast of *Guinea*. It is true, that the latter, generally speaking, make use of oil, which is less offensive; but when they cannot get that, like the *Hottentots*, they content themselves with such grease and kitchen-stuff as they can purchase from the *Europeans* who trade with them. This custom prevails likewise in the *East-Indies*, particularly on the *Malacca* coast, but more especially in the islands; as for instance, at *Sumatra*, where the natives grease themselves as much, and smell to the full as strong, as the *Hottentots*. The *Javanese* likewise practise the same; and so do the people of the *Philippines* and of the *Spice-Islands*; but then they commonly make use of cocoa-nut oil, which is far from being disagreeable. In one respect, however, the *Hottentots* exceed them all; for they are particularly careful to grease and smut their faces, which is what the *Indians* never do. This custom of anointing is not altogether unknown to the *Americans*, though, generally speaking, they rather affect painting their bodies, perhaps, from the same cause that the *Hottentots* and *Indians* anoint themselves, in order to defend their naked bodies from the inclemency of the weather.



*TERRA Dos Fumos* is but a small country along the sea-coast, from the mouth of the river *Delagoa* to that of *Rio de Ladroon*, or, the River of the Robbers. The *Europeans* have no settlement for trade here, and the *Caffres*, who inhabit this country, have neither towns, villages, nor any settled dwelling.

To the north of the country of the *Hottentots*, is the land of *Mozumbo Aculunga*, which has the kingdom of *Mataman* on the west; the *Hottentot* country on the south; *Monomotapa* on the east; and the province of *Obila* on the north. Next to this, northwards, lies the province of *Obila*. Farther north is the kingdom of *Abutua*, which is said to be rich in gold mines. *Dapper* says, that this province, which he calls *Toroca*, or *Teroa*, and others *Butua*, begins to the south of the mountains of the *Moon*, and extends northwards to the river *Magnica*, having the river *Bravabul* on the west. The town of *Fatucoa* abounds with gold, silver, and precious stones; and there are two gold mines at *Boro* and *Quitici*, 200 leagues distant from *Sofala*; they are esteemed the richest in the whole country. Going higher up to the north-east, we find the kingdom of *Chicova*, abounding, travellers say, with silver mines. In regard to these, and several other barbarous nations, it may be observed, that their gold and silver, and precious stones, have no tendency, like arts and commerce, to civilize and give them any taste for the rational enjoyments of life.

#### C H A P. IV.

##### Of Guinea and Nigritia, or Negroland.

Division and  
extent of  
Guinea.

Upper Guinea.

Grain Coast.

THE great region known by the name of *Guinea*, is divided into the two large countries of *Upper* and *Lower Guinea*, of which the latter is commonly called *Congo*. These two together extend above 2500 miles along the sea-coast.

THE most general division of *Upper-Guinea* is into three parts, viz. *Malagueta*, *Guinea-Propria*, and *Benin*; which together extend 500 leagues from east to west.

1. THE country of *Malagueta* is generally known under the name of the *Grain Coast*, from the paradise grain, or *Guinea* pepper, called *Malagueta* in *Spanish*, which grows here plentifully. This country is divided into the kingdoms of *Sherbro*, *Quoja*, and *Sanguin*, along the coast, and *Manou* inland. But these are little known except near the coast. The chief place frequented by the *Europeans* is *Sherbro*, the capital of a petty kingdom of the same name. *Sherbro* river is navigable for canoes a great way up; the chief trade here is in cam-wood. Near the mouth of this river is *Yerk-Island*, on which the *English* had once a factory, and good fort, now in ruins. There is also another island called *Farellons*, which abounds with poultry, rice, potatoes, bananas, orange and lemon-trees. About twenty-five leagues distant from the mouth of the river *Sherbro*, to the south-east, is *Cape Monte*. It is furnished with numerous villages, and the negroes on this part of the coast are extremely industrious, particularly in the planting of rice and boiling of salt.

2. THE country of *Guinea-Propria*, extends from *Cape Palmas* to the river *Volta*, about 140 leagues along the sea-coast, which bounds it on the south. It has the kingdom of *Benin* on the east; *Gago* and *Melli* on the north; and *Malagueta* on the west. The *Europeans* divide it into two parts, the *Tooth* and the *Gold-Coast*; the former extends from *Cape Palmas* to the river *Sueira da Costa*; and the latter from thence to the river *Volta*.

Ivory Coast.

THE *Tooth*, or *Ivory*, or *Quaqua-Coast*, is thus called from the great plenty of elephants-teeth traded in here. When the natives come to trade with any ship, they take some water into their hands, and let a few drops of it fall into their eyes, which is a kind of oath, whereby they signify, that they would rather lose their eye-sight than cheat those they trade with. They are no less averse to drunkenness than to fraud; and though their country produces a prodigious number of palm-trees, yet they drink no palm-wine, but only a certain small liquor which they mix with water. They have manufactures of cotton habits, which are called *Quaqua* gowns. A fundamental law of the country is, that every one is obliged to continue all his life-time in the condition in which he was born; so that one whose father was a fisherman, for instance, can never become any thing else but a fisherman; and so of all other trades and professions.

Gold Coast.

THE *Gold Coast* follows next; but why particularly so called cannot be well accounted for, since other countries in *Guinea* produce gold also. Undoubtedly, all the countries in *Guinea* abound with gold mines; and though the natives are not artists enough to know where or how to follow a vein, yet they find great quantities of gold in several of their mines, which are also so sacred to them, that they will not permit any *European* miner either to see their mines, or to search for others. They bring down, however, good store of what they find to the sea-coasts, as an article of their traffic. The natives, near the sea, have another way of finding gold. In the rainy seasons, after a wet night, the sea-shore is covered with people, mostly women, each with a couple of bowls, the largest of which they fill

with



- a with such sand and earth as are driven down from the mountains by violent floods into the rivers and brooks. This sand and earth they wash with many waters, by often turning the bowl round, till it washes over the brim. The gold, if there be any, sinks to the bottom, by reason of its weight ; and thus they continue, till they have washed all the earth and sand away, except two or three spoonfuls of the bottom, which they carefully take out, and lay by in the small bowl, after filling of which, they carry the dregs home, and search it diligently for the gold. *Affinee*, on this coast, is a country abounding with gold, and formerly a considerable trade was carried on here ; but since the devastation made by a neighbouring nation, there is very little trade, in comparison to what there was ; and the little
- b gold dust that is brought hither, is either sophisticated, or of very small value. From the *Affinee* to *Cape Apollonia*, a great deal of land has been cleared and sown with *Indian* corn. The inhabitants here of *Axim*, a town of some note, are generally pretty opulent, driving a great trade with the *Europeans* in gold, which they chiefly vend to the *English* or *Dutch*. The natives industriously employ themselves in trade, fishing, or agriculture. The latter is chiefly exercised in the article of rice, which grows here above all other places, in an incredible abundance, and is transported hence all the *Gold-Coast* over. The returns are in millet, yams, potatoes, and palm oil, all which are very scarce here ; for the soil is generally moist, and, though fit to produce rice, and some fruit-trees, does not kindly yield other fruits. The country throughout the *Gold-Coast* abounds in hills, all adorned with extraordinary high and beautiful trees. The vallies between the hills are wide and extensive, and
- c fit for the planting of all sorts of fruits ; and if they were as well cultivated as watered, would supply half the coast with provisions. The earth produces in great abundance very good rice, the richest sort of millet, the grain of which is red ; yams, potatoes, and other roots, all good in their kind ; nor is the soil deficient in fruit-trees. The sugar-canes grow here in greater plenty, and larger, than any where else on the coast of *Guinea*. Palm-wine and oil are very good and in great plenty : the country also abounds in all sorts of tame and wild beasts.

3. THE country of *Benin* comprehends the *Slave-Coast*, having *Guinea-Propet*, or more particularly, the *Gold Coast* on the west ; *Gago*, *Brafera*, with the desert of *Seth*, on the north ; *Mujaac* and *Makoko* on the east ; and part of *Congo*, with the *Ethiopic-Ocean*, on the south. It is commonly divided into three parts, viz. *Whydah* and *Ardab*, containing the *Slave-coast*, and *Benin-Propet*. Slave Coast.

- WHYDAH*, so called by the *English*, is called *Juda* by the *French*, and *Fida* by the *Dutch*. It is bounded on the west by the river *Volta* ; on the south it has the gulph of *Guinea* ; on the east the kingdom of *Ardab* ; and on the north the kingdom of *Dahomy*. *Whydah* is allowed to be a very delightful country. The number and variety of tall and beautiful trees seem as if planted in fine groves for ornament. The lands were in general well cultivated, till the king of *Dahomy* conquered it. Before this time, the natives were so industrious, that few places thought fertile escaped cultivation ; and they were so anxious
- e in that particular, that, the day after they had reaped, they always sowed again, without allowing the land time for rest. The *English African* company have a fort here ; wherein are mounted several pieces of cannon ; and, at a little distance, there is also a *French* fort. *Sabee*, the capital town of *Whydah*, is about four miles distant from the *French* fort, towards the north : but it was reduced to ashes by the king of *Dahomy*. The town was very populous, and had daily markets, wherein many sorts of *European*, as well as *African* commodities, were exhibited to public sale, with a great variety of provisions. Near the *European* factories was a spacious place, where grew a parcel of fine, tall, shady trees, under which the *English*, *French*, and *Portuguese* governors, factors, and sea-captains, walked, and transacted business every day as on an exchange. All these places were reduced to
- f ashes by the king of *Dahomy's* army. Adjoining to the kingdom of *Whydah* are several small royalties, as *Coto*, *Little* and *Great* ; *Popo*, and *Quaboe*, situate on the *Slave-Coast*. At *Coto* their land is flat, sandy, and barren ; but they have the palm and wild cacao-trees in tolerable plenty. Their trade is chiefly in slaves and fish. *Quaboe* abounds with gold, which the inhabitants carry through *Aquambce* to *Acra*.

*DAHOMY* country is situated to the north of the *Slave-Coast*, and extends greatly inland. Its boundaries on the west, north, and east, are unknown. This country is healthy, lying high, and being refreshed with cool breezes. The trade of the natives is chiefly in slaves and some gold.

- BENIN-Propet* has part of the gulph of *Guinea* and the *Slave-Coast*, or *Ludra*, on the west ; part of *Gago* and *Brafera* on the north ; *Mujaac* and *Makoko* on the east, and *Congo* on the south. Its extent, from west to east, is about 600 miles ; but from south to north remains unascertained. The country abounds with wild beasts, as elephants, tygers, leopards, boars ; and with game, as harts, hares, partridges, pidgeons, turtle-doves : the soil produces great variety of trees and plants, as orange, lemon, and especially cotton-trees ; pepper,



per, but not in such quantities as in the *East-Indies*. The natives are pretty well civilized, and if humoured in their ceremonious way of traffic, may be managed to good advantage. They are very expert in business, though tedious; which, however, they manage with so much civility, that none can well be angry. They seem very obliging to each other; but this is only external grimace, for they repose little confidence in their countrymen. They are jealously prudent, and very reserved, especially in the management of their trade, which they conduct with the utmost secrecy, lest they should be represented as great traders to their governors; who, upon such discovery, would certainly accuse them of some crime or other, in order to possess themselves, though ever so unjustly, of their effects. Those, therefore, who have no share in the government, always pretend to be poorer than they really are, to escape the rapacious hands of those in authority. This obliges them to a cunning sort of civility, to avoid accusers; and the *European* dealers who will conceal their transactions with them, may do business to great profit. Such as have any thing of stock apply themselves to merchandize. Very few of the commonalty among the males are industrious, laying the burden of labour on their wives and slaves, whether it be tilling of ground, spinning of cotton, weaving of cloth, or any other handicraft employ; yet there are but few manual arts, besides weaving, practised or understood amongst them: the chief workmen are smiths, carpenters, or leather-dressers; but all their workmanship is but mean, for want of proper instruction. *Benin*, which gives name to the empire, and is the king's residence, is situate about sixty miles from *Agatton*, a town at the entrance of the river *Formosa*, near the sea. Continual markets are kept in this city of cattle, cotton, elephants-teeth, and *European* wares. Those who attend the court are rich, but do not concern themselves with trade, agriculture, or any thing else, leaving all their affairs to their wives, who go to all the circumjacent villages, to trade in all sorts of merchandizes, and are obliged to bring the greatest part of their gains to their husbands. All male slaves here are foreigners, for the inhabitants cannot be sold for slaves, and only bear the name of the king's slaves; nor is it allowed to export any male slaves that are sold in this country, but females may be dealt with at every one's pleasure.

*AWERRI* is about twenty leagues from *Benin* to the south, and is the capital of the kingdom of the same name, whose king is independent of the king of *Benin*.

*AREBA*, a common trading place for the *Europeans*, is situate above fifty miles higher up than the mouth of the river *Formosa*. So far ships may conveniently come in their passage, sailing by a great variety of the branches of that river, besides creeks. Here formerly were two factories, one of which belonged to the *English*, the other to the *Dutch*; but the *English* have now no fort or factory, having traded here but very little for several years past.

*AGATTON* has several circumjacent villages, whose inhabitants resort to it at every considerable market, which is held for five days.

At *Cape Formosa* the trade consists in elephants teeth, wax, and honey.

Lower-Guinea.

*CONGO*, or *Lower-Guinea*, has *Upper-Guinea*, or the kingdom of *Benin*, on the north; the *Ethiopic-Ocean* on the west; the kingdom of *Mataman*, reckoned part of *Caffraria*, on the south: but its boundaries east and north-east are not well known. The extent of this country from *Cape Lopo*, in the first degree of south latitude, to *Cape Negro*, 23. 30. of the same latitude, is about 16 deg. 30. min. or about 990 *English* miles; how far it extends eastward is not known. The country is watered with many rivers, and would be very fruitful, if better cultivated; but nothing can conquer the laziness of the negroes, who, for the most part, chuse rather to live in want, than give themselves the trouble to get a comfortable livelihood. The mountains abound with the most precious metals, as gold, silver, and copper; but none but the iron mines are worked, chiefly for the purpose of making arms. *Congo* is commonly divided into *Loango*, *Congo-Propre*, *Angola*, and *Benguela*. *Angola* seems to be under the best regulation, being governed, especially a good part of the coast, by the *Portuguese*. The number of slaves here is prodigious; the *Portuguese* Jesuits alone, who perform the office of curates in the country, are said to have upwards of 12,000 slaves at *Loango*, which is the usual residence of the Roman Catholic bishop. However, these slaves are not found so serviceable as from other parts of *Guinea*, being naturally addicted to laziness, which seldom or ever can be conquered by any sort of treatment. The inland parts of *Benguela* are little known; but along the sea-coast are several places with which the *Europeans* are better acquainted, particularly the *Portuguese*, who are here pretty numerous, and carry on a good trade in fine linen and cotton cloths, gum, gunpowder, slaves, some gold, and ivory.

Origin and state of the English trade on the coast of Africa.

THE *Portuguese* being the first that discovered the coast of *Africa*, they built one fort on the island of *Arguin*, on the north coast; another called *St. George del Mina*, on the *Gold Coast*; and a third at a place called *Loango St. Paul's*, on the coast of *Angola*, to the southward of the Equinoctial line. By virtue of these possessions, they not only claimed, and for



a for many years enjoyed, the right in and to all the said lands and countries, but likewise seized and confiscated the ships of all nations, as often as they are found any of them trading on any part of the said coast.

ABOUT the latter end of the reign of king *Edward VI.* some *London* merchants fitted out the first *English* ships that ever traded to *Guinea*; and in the reign of queen *Mary*, and for the first ten or twelve years of queen *Elizabeth*, sundry other private ships were fitted out for the same parts; but the *English* not having as yet any settlements or plantations in the *West-Indies*, and consequently no occasion for negroes, such ships traded only for gold, elephants teeth, and malaguetta; and all such voyages were undertaken and performed at the hazard of losing the ships and cargoes, if they fell into the hands of the *Portuguese*,  
b without the least ground to hope for any redress or satisfaction for the same.

QUEEN *Elizabeth*, in the 30th year of her reign, being then at war with *Spain* and *Portugal*, erected a company for the better discovering and carrying on a trade from the northernmost part of the river *Senegal*, and from and within that river, all along that coast, unto the southernmost part of the river *Gambia*, and within the same; and gave and granted unto them the whole and sole trade in, to, and from the said river and countries, for a certain term of years; with prohibition to all others her subjects to trade to the same places, on pain of forfeiture of ships and goods: and these were the first *English* merchants that ever traded to the coast of *Guinea*, by and under the authority of the crown of *England*.

IN the reigns of the kings *James* and *Charles I.* and during the time of the usurpation,  
c several persons were encouraged by public authority, to trade to other parts of *Africa*, and to take such measures for the better carrying on and improving the same, as they should judge most proper. In pursuance whereof, they built one fort at a place called *Cormantine*, on the *Gold-Coast*, and another on the river *Gambia*, on the north coast; and these were the only places of any consequence which the *English* were in possession of at the Restoration.

KING *Charles II.* soon after his restoration, being made acquainted with the dangerous and precarious state and condition to which the trade of his subjects in those parts was reduced; and having likewise received many complaints touching the interruptions given to, and depredations committed upon, the ships of this nation, by the *Dutch West-India* company on the coast of *Africa*, it became necessary to consider not only of a proper method  
d for protecting and securing the said trade for the future, but likewise how and in what manner reparation might be obtained for such damages and depredations. The result was the institution of the company of Royal Adventurers of *England* trading into *Africa*, by letters patent under the great seal of *England*, bearing date the 10th of *January*, 1662. But this company, though they kept their footing in *Africa*, yet, by reason of the consequences of the wars with the *Dutch*, which the nation was then obliged to engage in, they had so many difficulties to struggle with, that they consented to surrender their charter to the crown. This was in consideration of a certain sum of money, to be paid unto them by another new company, then intended to be established. The terms of the surrender being  
e accepted, his majesty established and incorporated a new Royal *African* Company, by his letters patent under the great seal of *England*, bearing date the 27th of *September*, 1672; and granted unto them, all and singular the lands, countries, havens, roads, rivers, and other places in *Africa*, from the port of *Sallee*, in *South-Barbary*, to the *Cape of Good-Hope*, for and during the term of 1000 years; with the sole and intire trade into these countries, and a prohibition to all his other subjects to visit or frequent the same, without the licence and consent of the said company: and also, with such other powers and privileges, as were then judged proper and necessary, for enabling and encouraging them to undertake so hazardous and chargeable a work.

THIS new company met with all possible opposition from the *French* and *Dutch*, and  
f sustained particularly several considerable losses by means of the wars with the *French* in the reign of king *William III.* insomuch that the parliament in 1697, taking the trade to *Africa* into their consideration, thought fit, as a further means of enlarging and improving the same, to lay it open to all his majesty's subjects for thirteen years; and in regard that the Royal *African* company of *England* had been at the charge of building and maintaining a considerable number of forts and castles on the said coast, which the parliament likewise judged necessary to be kept up and maintained in future, for the preservation and better carrying on the said trade, they were further pleased to impose a duty of ten per Cent. *ad valorem*, on all goods and merchandise exported to *Africa*, during the said term. to be answered and paid to the said company for enabling them to keep and maintain their forts  
g and castles.

THIS act continued in force from the 24th of *June*, 1698, to the 24th of *June* 1712; in which time the charges the company were at in maintaining their forts and castles, amounted, at a medium, to about 20,000 *l. per annum*, and in fourteen years, to 280,000 *l.*



in the whole. The duty which the separate traders paid in the same time, amounted in the whole, to 73,785*l.* 10*s.* 6*d.* <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>, and no more; and ten *per cent.* upon the company's own exports for the same time, amounted to the sum of 36,387*l.* 13*s.* 1*d.* <sup>1</sup>/<sub>2</sub>. From whence it appears, that, even while that act continued in force, the total of the ten *per cent.* duty came very much short of half the charges and expences which the company were at in keeping and maintaining their forts and castles. Under these difficulties, and by the extravagant rise in the prices of negroes at *Anamboe*, and other places on the coast, and by the decay of the gold trade which ensued thereupon, the proprietors of the company were for many years obliged either to raise sundry great sums of money for maintaining their forts and castles, without receiving any profit from the trade in return for the same; or to run the risk not only of losing all the money which they had from time to time raised and expended for supporting their own property, but of becoming accessaries to the intire loss of the trade of *Africa*, and consequently, by relinquishing and abandoning their forts and castles, to be seized and possessed by such foreign nations as were long watching for an opportunity to get them into their hands. This being the case with regard to the company, and it being the sense of the nation, that the trade to *Africa* should continue free and open to all his majesty's subjects, the only thing that remained to be considered was, whether or no forts and castles were necessary to be kept up and maintained for the preservation of the said trade to this kingdom; and if they were necessary for that purpose, who, upon the footing of a trade still free and open, ought in justice and reason to bear and defray the charges of them? <sup>a</sup>

As there was no reason for the company's being obliged to maintain the forts and castles at their own sole cost and charge, they petitioned the parliament in 1730, and obtained 10,000*l.* to enable them to support their forts and settlements. This sum was annually continued to them, except two or three years interruption, till the last change made in the state of this company, by an act of parliament of the year 1751. By this act the company were divested of their charter, and after the tenth of *April*, 1751, ceased to be a corporation, and their forts, castles, and all other their possessions in *Africa*, were vested in a new company of merchants: and in consequence of the trade to *Africa* being, by virtue of the said act, and that also of the 23d of king *George II.* made free and open to all his majesty's subjects, the parliament allow this company 10,000*l.* *per annum* for the support of the forts and castles for the public service. <sup>b</sup>

THE *African* trade, as may be known from the premises, consists of but three capital articles; slaves, ivory, and gold; a very beneficial and advantageous commerce, especially as it was once carried on, when these were all purchased at low rates from the negroes; and even those low rates paid in trifles and toys, such as knives, scissars, kettles, glass-beads, and cowries, things of little value; but even this part of the trade is greatly declined in profit, since by the strife and envy among the traders, particularly between our late royal *African* company and the separate traders, we have had the folly to instruct the negroes in the value of their own goods, and of the cheapness of ours; endeavouring to supplant one another, by underselling and overbidding, by which we have taught the negroes to supplant both, by holding up the price of their own productions, and running down the rates of what we carry them for sale. Thus that gainful commerce, once superior, to all the trades in the world, which carried out the meanest of all exportations, and brought home the richest, is sinking daily, and we are sometimes said to buy even the gold too dear. But all this while there is not the least use made of the land; the fruitful soil lies waste; a vast extended country, pleasant vallies, the banks of charming rivers, spacious plains, capable of improvement and cultivation to infinite advantage, remain barren and untouched. But there are now some hopes that these advantages will be no longer neglected, by the opening to a more extensive commerce that has been made for us in the late definitive treaty of peace, and particularly by the cession of *Senegal*, of which, with the country of *Nigritia*, it belongs to, we are now going to give some account. <sup>c</sup>

Nigritia.

NIGRITIA, or *Negroland*, a country in *Africa*, lies between eighteen degrees west, and fifteen degrees east longitude; and between ten and twenty degrees of north latitude, the great river *Niger* running through it from east to west. It is bounded by *Zaara*, or the desert, on the north, by unknown countries on the east, by *Guinea* on the south, and by the *Atlantic Ocean* on the west. The *Europeans* have several settlements on the branches of the river *Niger*, especially near their mouths. A great many nations inhabit the banks of the *Niger*, of different languages, and independent on each other. The country is fruitful, abounding in rice, *Guinea-grain*, and *Indian corn*, where it is cultivated; cattle are not wanting; but there is abundance of cocoa-nuts, plantains, pulse, palm-trees, and tropical fruits. <sup>d</sup>

Niger and  
Sanaga  
rivers.

THE *Niger* and *Sanaga* rivers are esteemed by the most accurate geographers to be the same, or at least the *Sanaga* to be a part of the *Niger*. *Europeans* have been able to trace

the



- a the main river but part of the way, beyond which they know nothing of its course, but what is learned from the *Mandingo* Negroes, who, among all the blacks, are the most addicted to travelling and traffic, but are neither expert enough in their observations, nor have gone far enough to know any thing of its real source, since they place it no higher, according to *Labat*, than the lake *Maberia*, in the kingdom of *Tombut*, which is little more than half way to that of the *Nile*. Others, with *Labat*, have stretched its course back eastward, to the lake *Bournow*, which lies under the eighteenth degree of latitude, and 19th of east longitude, and fix its spring-head there; it being difficult to trace it further, on account of the dangers of such an attempt from the supposed barrenness of the country, but rather from the savage disposition of the inhabitants who live beyond it; and who can never be civilized till the *Europeans* take wise and honest measures for that purpose. It is certain, however, that the *Niger* or *Sanaga* is a very large and considerable river, and of very great extent in its course, even though we should trace its spring-head no farther than the lake *Bournow*. But if we suppose it to spring from the same head with the *Nile*, it will then cross almost the whole country of *Africa* where it is widest, and will have a course of near fifty degrees from east to west, exclusive of its windings. The entrance into it is narrow and somewhat difficult, by reason of its immoveable bar and sandy shoals, as well as the several islands that are at the mouth of it, and the several canals and marshes that clog it: but after sailing up eight or ten leagues, it is found broad and deep, and fit to carry large vessels; and except about five or six leagues on each side above the mouth, which is a sandy and barren ground; in all the rest, as far as the lake *Maberia*, the banks are covered with stately fruit-trees and villages, and the country well watered and very fertile for a great way; for like the *Nile* it overflows it for many leagues, and enriches the land to a great degree, and would do so still more, if the inhabitants were as expert and industrious in making all the advantages they could of it; but this is not the case, though the people on both sides live as near to it as they can, and feed great herds of cattle, and sow large and small millet in great quantities, and with great increase.
- b
- c

As the *Niger* receives many considerable rivers in its course, which swell it high enough to be able at all times to carry vessels of forty or fifty tons, so it splits itself into several branches, which uniting again, form very large and fertile islands, well filled with towns, villages, and inhabitants.

d

TOWARDS the coast, the noted island of *Senegal* is situated in the river *Sanaga*, sixteen degrees fifteen minutes north latitude, about fifteen miles from its mouth. It is about one mile and a quarter in length, from north to south; and almost half a mile in breadth, from east to west. It is composed of a bed of loose sand, productive of nothing but what is forced with art and the richest manure; notwithstanding which it contains 3000 inhabitants, whose principal food is fish and maize. This sort of corn grows in great plenty, almost all over the country. It may seem surprising, that a part of the world, so very unhealthy as this, should yet be so populous; but the wonder will cease, when we come to understand, that the greatest pride among the men consists in the number of their wives; so that every one takes as many as he is able to maintain; some six, others eight, and others twelve at a time.

e

Island of Senegal.

To the north-east, east; and south-east of this island, lies a prodigious large and low country, covered with marshes and woods. Much the greatest part of it is utterly unknown to us. It is through this country that the large branches of the *Niger* empty themselves into the sea, particularly the *Sanaga*, *Gambia*, and *Sherbro*. During the rainy months, which begin in *July*, and continue till *October*, they lay the whole flat country under water; and, indeed, the very sudden rise of these rivers is incredible to persons who have never been within the tropics, and are unacquainted with the violent rains that fall there. At *Galam*, 900 miles from the mouth of the river *Sanaga*, the waters rise 150 feet perpendicular from the bed of the river. At the island of *Senegal*, the river rises gradually during the rainy season, above twenty feet perpendicular over part of that flat coast, which of itself alone so freshens the water, that ships lying at anchor at the distance of three leagues from its mouth, generally make use of it, and fill their water there for the voyage home. When the rains are at an end, which usually happens in *October*, the intense heat of the sun soon dries up those waters, which lie on the higher parts, and the remainder forms lakes of stagnated waters, in which are found all sorts of dead animals. These waters every day decrease, till at last they are quite exhaled, and then the effluvia that arise are almost insupportable. At this season the winds blow so very hot from off the land, that they may well be compared to the heat proceeding from the mouth of an oven, and they bring with them a smell that is quite intolerable. Their effects upon wolves, tigers, lions, and other wild beasts are such, that they are seen to resort to the river, keeping their body under water, and only their snout above it, for the advantage of breathing. The birds likewise seem to soar to an immense height, and to fly a vast way over the sea, where they continue till the wind changes and comes from the west.

f

g

Face of the adjacent country.

ONE



ONE of the most considerable articles of commerce, and the chief inducement to *Euro-*  
*peans* for settling here, is the gum *senega*, so denominated from the river *Senegal*, the fo-  
 rests bordering upon that river abounding with this gum. It greatly resembles the gum  
 arabic, but its granules are usually larger, of an oval form, the surface very rough, and  
 the inner substance bright, where broken. It is very hard, but not tough, considerably  
 heavy, and of an extremely fine and even texture. When broke, the colour is frequently  
 of a pale brown, but like the gum arabic, sometimes yellowish, reddish, or whitish. Dy-  
 ers and other artificers consume the greatest quantities of this gum. The *French*, when  
 they were in possession before the late war of this part of the *African* coast, from *Cape Blanco*  
 to the river *Gambia*, extending along the shore about 400 miles, found the gum *senega* so  
 useful in their silk and linen manufactures, that they engrossed the whole trade of it to  
 themselves, and occasionally prohibited its exportation. And hence it is, that this country,  
 quite unhealthy as it is, and those roads so dangerous for shipping, have nevertheless been  
 eagerly contended for by the *English*, *French*, *Dutch*, and *Portuguese*. All strove to settle  
 here in their turns. being the only place for the gum trade, by being masters of the *Senegal*  
 rivers: a trade, which seems a light matter in itself, but is, in effect, very considerable,  
 whether we regard the price the natives sell the gum for, which is very moderate; or, lastly,  
 the quantity of *European* merchandizes it takes off ready wrought, the vent of which makes  
 manufactures spread, money circulate, and so finds work for abundance of hands, which is  
 the main end of commerce.

BEFORE we close our account of this part of *Africa*, it will not be amiss to take notice of a  
 tree of a new genus, which grows in *Senegal*, which may be justly reputed the largest vege-  
 table production in nature, and therefore by its vast magnitude a more singular and remark-  
 able phenomenon than all the histories of botany, or perhaps of the world have yet pro-  
 duced.

Description of  
 the baobab.

THE real name of this tree is *baobab*; the *Oualofs*, natives of the country, call it *goui*,  
 and its fruit *boui*; and the *French* know it by the name of *calabassier*, or *calibath-tree*, and  
 call its fruit *pain-de-singe*, or *monkey's bread*.

THE *baobab* cannot grow out of a very hot climate; it delights in a sandy and moist soil,  
 especially if this soil is free from stones that might hurt its roots; for the least scratch they  
 receive is soon followed by a caries communicating itself to the trunk of the tree, and caus-  
 ing it infallibly to perish.

THE trunk of this singular tree is not very high: M. *Adanson*, (who had lately commu-  
 nicated his observations on the *baobab* to the *French* \*academicians) saw hardly any exceed-  
 ing twelve or fifteen feet, from the roots to the branches; but he had seen several seventy-  
 five and seventy-eight feet round, that is, from twenty-five to twenty-seven feet in diameter.  
 The first branches extend almost horizontally; and being very thick and about sixty feet in  
 length, their own weight bends down their extremities to the ground; the center branches  
 rise perpendicularly, but so as to make a shelving, and the tree being thus regularly round-  
 ed, its trunk is absolutely hidden, and it appears as an hemispherical mass of verdure, of  
 about 120, 130, or 140 feet in diameter.

THE roots of the *baobab* are answerable to its size in all respects: to the branches above,  
 there is a correspondent number of radical branches below. That of the middle forms a  
 pivot that strikes very deep into the earth, but the rest spread towards the surface. M. *Adanson*  
 had seen one laid open by a current of water, in the extent of upwards 110 feet; and it was  
 easy to judge by its bulk, that what still remained under ground, was at least forty or fifty  
 feet long; and yet this tree, compared with others, was but of middling bulk.

THE bark of the trunk is greyish, smooth, and, as it were, unctuous to the touch: strip-  
 ping it off, the inside appears of a green, pricked with red; the thickness is about eight or  
 nine lines. The bark of the younger branches is green and thinly disseminated with hairs:  
 the wood of the tree is very soft and white.

THE leaves are about five inches long and two broad, and pointed at both extremities,  
 pretty thick, of a sprightly green on the upper side, and pale underneath; and adhering  
 three, five, or seven, but most commonly seven, in the manner of a fan, or a common pe-  
 dicle, much like those of the *chestnut tree*: they only grow on the young branches, where-  
 on the pedicles are alternately placed. The blossoms or flowers are in proportion to the  
 tree, not yielding in magnitude to the largest we know of. They form, when still in the  
 bud, a globe of about three inches diameter; and when blown, are four inches long and  
 six broad. After the falling of the petals and the stamina, the ovary, as it ripens, be-  
 comes an oblong fruit, pointed at both extremities, fifteen or eighteen feet long, and five  
 or six broad, cloathed with a kind of greenish down, under which is found a ligneous, hard, al-  
 most black rind or peel, and marked with twelve or fourteen furrows, dividing it lengthwise

\* Printed in their memoirs for the year 1761.



- a into ribs. This fruit hangs from the tree by a pedicle of about two feet in length, and contains a kind of pulp or whitish substance, spongy, and full of fourish water. The pulp seems to make but one mass, when the fruit is new; but, in drying, shrinks and divides of itself into a great number of bodies, with several facets, each containing a brown shining seed, nearly of the figure of a kidney bean, five lines in length, and three in breadth; and the pulp that surrounds them, is easily reduced into a powder, brought hither from the *Levant*, and known for a long time, by the very improper name of *Terra Sigillata* of *Lemnos*, because indeed the *Mandingues* carry it to the *Arabs*, who afterwards distribute it in *Egypt*, and through all the eastern parts of the *Mediterranean*. *Prosper Alpinus* was very sensible that this powder was vegetable; but certainly one might not be aware of seeking after in *Senegal*, a drug that is imported from the *Archipelago*.

- b M. *Adanson* believes that the baobab may be naturally classed with the malvaceous plants that have but one calix. This tree cannot be transplanted neither when it begins to rise, nor when it is ten years old, as its root would almost infallibly perish. The best plant is that which is from six months to two years old; branches sometimes take from a slip, but they frequently fail; and the progress even of those that do is always slower than that of the plant rising from the seed. Besides the canes that attacks the trunk of the tree when its roots are hurt, it is also subject to another malady, more rare indeed, but not less fatal to it. This is a kind of mouldiness that gets into the whole ligneous body, and which without changing the texture of its fibres, softens it to the degree of its having no more consistence than the ordinary pith of trees; then it becomes incapable of resisting the ordinary blasts of wind, and this monstrous trunk is broke down by the least storm. M. *Adanson* had seen one in this condition; it was inhabited by a great number of the grubs of beetles and chafers: they did not, however, seem as if they had contributed to the disordered state of the tree; but their eggs might have been introduced into the wood on growing soft, the same way as an infinity of insects introduce their eggs into the willow-tree, when it undergoes a similar state of softness, though they do not attack it when it is sound.

- c THE real country of the baobab is *Africa*, and particularly the western coast of that part which extends from the *Niger* to the kingdom of *Benin*. It is not found in the catalogues of the *Asiatic* plants, nor in those of *America*; yet might be actually in some of the climates of those two parts of the world, which resemble the part of *Africa* that produces it; but the tree does not grow there spontaneously. The negro slaves, yearly transported from *Africa* into the *American* colonies, fail not to carry with them a little bundle of seeds, which they presume will be of service to them, and among these are always some seed of the baobab. It is probably to this transportation that are or will be owing the baobabs found there, such as that M. *de Chanvallon*, a correspondent of the *French* academy, says he had seen at *Martinico*, and which indeed was but young. They may perhaps be naturalized to the climate; but this will not be their first origin, and none for a long time will be seen equal in magnitude to those of the coast of *Africa*; for though a very tender wood, they take up a great time in growing to this enormous bulk.

- e M. *Adanson* has carefully collected all the facts he believed could give him any insight in regard to this article; he had seen two of these trees in one of the *Magellan* isles, on the bark of which were cut *European* names and dates, whereof some were later than 1600, others were as far back as 1555, and had been probably the work of those who accompanied *Thevenot* in his voyage to the *Terra Australis*; for he says himself he had seen baobabs in that place: others, in fine, appear prior to 1500; but these might be questioned, the characters of the names being about six inches high, and the names taking up two feet in length, that is, somewhat less than the eighth part of the circumference of the tree. Supposing even that these characters had been cut in the early youth of the tree, it would follow that, if in 200 years it grew six feet in diameter, it would require upwards of eight centuries to be twenty-five feet in diameter, supposing it always grew equally; but this supposition can hardly be considered as true; for M. *Adanson* observed that the growth of this tree, very rapid in the first years succeeding its birth, diminishes afterwards very considerably; and though the proportion of this diminution is not well known, it might be thought, he fancies, with good reason, that the latter growth of the baobab proceeds with an extreme slowness, and that such of those trees which have arrived at the abovementioned bulk might have first appeared out of the earth not long after the time of the universal deluge: but what is very deserving of notice is, that those raised elsewhere carefully, pursuant to the temperature of their climate, do not receive at most but the fifth part of the increase they have at *Senegal* in the same time; an observation which should prove, if it was possible to doubt of it, that artificial heat, in regard to exotics, can be but a very imperfect substitute to that which they experience in their natural climate.

- f THE baobab, as all the other plants of the malvaceous tribe, has an emollient virtue, capable of maintaining in the body an abundant transpiration, and of opposing the too great



great heat of the blood. The negroes dry its leaves in the shade, and reduce them into a powder they call lalo, which they mix with their aliments, not for giving them a relish, for the lalo has scarce any taste, but for obtaining the just mentioned effect. M. *Adanson* himself experienced the same virtue; and the decoction of these leaves preserved him and a *French* officer, who confined himself to this regimen, from the heat of urine and hot fevers, which usually attack foreigners at *Senegal* during the month of *September*, and which raged still more furiously in 1751, than they had for several years past. The fresh or newly gathered fruit of this tree is not less useful than its leaves; its pulp is eaten, which is subacid and agreeable enough; and in mixing its juice with water and a little sugar, a liquor is made, attended with the best effects in all hot affections, and in putrid or pestilential fevers; lastly, when the fruit is spoiled, the negroes make an excellent soap of it, by burning it, and mixing its ashes with the oil of the palm-tree that begins to be rancid.

THE negroes make still a very singular use of this monstrous tree. We have said it was subject to a caries, which often hollows its trunk; they enlarge those cavities, and make a sort of chambers, where they hang the dead bodies of those they are not willing to grant the honours of burial to; those bodies dry there perfectly, and become real mummies, without any other preparation. The greatest number of the bodies so dried is of the *Guiriots*: these people may be compared to the ancient bards and jugglers, so famous among our ancestors. They are poets and musicians, and have a kind of inspection over feasts and dances. Their number is always pretty considerable at the courts of the negro kings, whom they divert and flatter to an extravagant degree in their poetical compositions. This kind of superiority of talents makes them dreaded by the negroes during their life; they attribute it to something supernatural: but, instead of making, as the ancient *Greeks*, their poets the children of the Gods, they regard them, on the contrary, as sorcerers, and ministers of the devil, and believe that in that quality they should draw down malediction on the earth, or even on the waters which might receive their bodies; it is therefore that they hide and dry them in the hollow trunks of the baobab.

*HOMER* relates, that *Ulysses* had made for himself at *Ithaca*, a compleat bedstead of the trunk of an olive-tree, supported on its roots, about which he had afterwards built a chamber. If this prince had had in the precinct of his palace a baobab tree, he might have extended the singularity still farther, and procured himself a chamber and all its furniture cut in the same piece of wood.

THE baobab was never described probably, either as to leaves, fruit, or flowers, before M. *Adanson*; and as *Senegal* is now one of our possessions on the coast of *Africa*, the produce of this tree may in a great measure become an important object of our commerce.

## C H A P. V.

### Of Barbary, Biledulgerid, Zaara or the Desert, and the African Islands.

Boundaries  
and extent of  
Barbary.

THE vast tract of *Barbary*, in general, is bounded on the north by the *Mediterranean* sea, which divides it from *Europe*; on the east by *Egypt*; on the south by *Zaara*, or *the Desert*; and on the west by the *Atlantic*, or *Western Ocean*. Its utmost extent from east to west, that is, from *Cape None*, on the most western coast of *Morocco*, to the confines of *Egypt*, is almost 37 degrees, that is, from 10 degrees to  $26\frac{1}{2}$  degrees eastern longitude, or about 2200 miles. As for its breadth from north to south, it is very unequal; in some parts not above six or seven degrees, and where widest, as from *Cape None* to *Tangier*, not above ten degrees; but we must observe, that most geographers have given it a much greater extent both ways; some of them as far as 4000 miles in length, and 1200 in breadth; which can only be meant by including the creeks and windings, which are too precarious and unknown to be depended upon.

Soil, produce,  
commodities,  
&c.

*BARBARY* is, next to *Egypt*, the most fruitful, trading, and populous part of *Africa*. The soil abounds with plenty and variety of grain and fruits, especially citrons, oranges, dates, figs, olives, grapes, pomegranates, and almonds; in all which the inhabitants drive a considerable trade, as well as in coral, *Morocco* leather, *Barbary* horses, and other commodities. The air is temperate, though hot, being refreshed by constant breezes from the *Mediterranean*.

History of the  
states on the  
coast of Bar-  
bary.

THE coast of *Barbary* was probably first planted by the *Egyptians*. The *Phenicians* afterwards sent colonies thither, and built *Utica* and *Carthage*. The *Carthaginians* soon became powerful and wealthy by trade, and finding the country divided into a great many little kingdoms and states, either subdued or made the princes on that coast their tributaries, who being weary of their yoke, were glad of the opportunity of assisting the *Romans*

\* *Odyss.* l. xxiii.



in subduing *Carthage*. The *Romans* remained sovereigns of the coast of *Barbary*, till the *Vandals*, in the fifth century, reduced it under their dominion.

- THE *Roman*, or rather the *Grecian* emperors, having some time after recovered the coast of *Barbary* from the *Vandals*, it remained under their dominion till the *Saracen* caliphs, the successors of *Mohammed*, made an intire conquest of all the north of *Africa* in the seventh century, and divided the country among the chiefs, of whom the sovereign of *Morocco* was the most considerable, possessing the north-west part of that country, which in the *Roman* division obtained the name of *Mauritania Tingitana* from *Tingis* or *Tangir*, the capital, and is now stiled the empire of *Morocco*, comprehending the kingdoms or provinces of *Fez* and *Morocco*. The emperors of these territories are almost always at war with the *Spaniards* and *Portuguese*. In the eighth century, their ancestors made a conquest of the greatest part of *Spain*; but after the loss of *Granada*, which happened about the year 1492, they were dispossessed of this country; and *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, who were then upon the throne of *Spain*, obliged them to renounce their religion, or transport themselves to the coast of *Africa*. Those who made choice of the alternative of going into exile, to revenge themselves on the *Spaniards*, and supply their necessities, confederated with the *Mohammedan* princes on the coast of *Barbary*, and having fitted out little fleets of cruising vessels, took all the *Spanish* merchant ships they met with at sea, and being well acquainted with the country, landed in *Spain*, and brought away multitudes of *Spaniards*, and made slaves of them. The *Spaniards* hereupon assembled a fleet of men of war, invaded *Barbary*, and having taken *Oran*, and many other places on the coast of *Algier*, were in a fair way of making an intire conquest of that country. In this distress the *African* princes applied to that famous *Turkish* rover, *Barbarossa*, desiring his assistance against the Christians. He very readily complied with their request, but had no sooner repulsed their enemies, than he usurped the government of *Algiers*, and treated the people who called him in as slaves; as his brother *Heyradin Barbarossa* afterwards did the people of *Tunis*; and a third obtained the government of *Tripoli* by the like means. In these usurpations they were supported by the grand signior, who claimed the sovereignty of the whole coast, and for some time they were esteemed the subjects of *Turkey*, and governed by *Turkish* bashas or viceroys; but each of these states, or rather the military men, at length took upon them to elect a sovereign out of their own body, and rendered themselves independent of the *Turkish* empire. The grand signior has not now so much as a basha or officer at *Algiers*; but the dey acts as an absolute prince, and is only liable to be deposed by the soldiery that advanced him. At *Tunis* and *Tripoli* he has still bashas, who are some check upon the deys, and have a small tribute paid them. All of them, however, in case of emergency, claim the protection of the *Ottoman* court, and they still continue to prey upon the *Spaniards*, having never been at peace with them since the loss of *Granada*. They make prize also of all other Christian ships that have *Spanish* goods or passengers on board, and indeed of all others that are not at peace with them. The *Turks* of *Algiers*, *Tunis*, and *Tripoli*, are an abandoned race, consisting of pyrates, banditti, and the very refuse of *Turkey*, who have been forced to leave their several countries to avoid the punishment of their crimes.

- THE empire of *Morocco*, the most considerable on this coast, is bounded by the *Mediterranean* sea on the north; by the river *Fulvia*, which divides it from *Algier*, on the east; by *Biledulgerid* on the south, and by the *Atlantic Ocean* on the west, being about 500 miles long and 200 broad. It is a fine country, consisting of mountains and vast extended plains, none of them unfruitful; of the mountains, those of *Atlas* are the chief, extending from *Algier* in the east to the ocean in the west, which from them has obtained the name of the *Atlantic Ocean*. *Fez*, the capital, so called from the kingdom of the same name, is computed to have about 300,000 inhabitants. The houses, as well as streets, swarm with men of all professions, and with merchants of all sorts, this place being esteemed the general magazine of *Barbary*, whither all *European* goods are brought and exchanged, and sent into the other provinces, to be exchanged for those of the country. The Jews, who are here above 5000, are the chief brokers, especially between the Christians and Mohammedans. The emperor has a palace at *Fez*, but his chief residence is at *Mequinez*, about thirty miles west of *Fez*, situate in a much more desirable country, surrounded by fine parks and olive grounds, and containing much about the same number of inhabitants as *Fez*. There are no ships of war in this empire, except some small pyritical vessels, commonly called *Sallee* rovers, which are crowded with men, and sometimes take great prizes. As for merchant-ships, or foreign trade, the subjects carry on none on their own bottoms. And, indeed, it seems to be a happiness, that all the *Morocco* dominions do not afford one tolerable harbour; that of *Sallee*, which is the best, being almost dry at low, and not twelve feet deep at high water, besides a very inconvenient bar. Better ports might be an inducement to their making a figure at sea, and becoming a greater annoyance; but no flourishing trade or improvement can be carried on under a government so despotic, oppressive,



pressive, and rapacious. The land is judged capable of producing a hundred times more <sup>a</sup> than the inhabitants can consume, yielding three crops a year; yet, except within three leagues of a town, it has no proprietor. Those who have a little money are afraid to let it out upon interest, lest they should be reputed wealthy, and, consequently, become a prey; they, therefore, bury it with any furniture of value, nothing being seen in their houses but a mat or two to lie on, and a few ordinary things. Their inland trade consists of caravans, two of which set out every year from *Fez* to *Mecca* and *Medina*, carrying woollen manufactures, indigo, cochineal, skins, and ostrich feathers. They likewise send caravans to *Guinea* every year, consisting of many thousand camels. The tyranny of the government is said to be the motive of the *Arabs* continuing a wandering life, lest, by living in fixed habi- <sup>b</sup> tations, they should forfeit all property and liberty by the rapaciousness of the officers. The emperor has a tenth of all corn, cattle, fruits, and produce of the soil; likewise, the tenth of prizes, and of all the captives. His whole revenue, ordinaries and extraordinaries, is computed at 500 quintals of silver, each worth 385l. sterling; if the revenue of a monarch can be stated, who frequently confirms his absolute prerogative by the ruin and death of the most dignified persons in his dominions. He has 40,000 negroes in his army, and as many *Moors*, horse and foot. The *Moors*, or natives of the country, are of the same complexion as the *Spaniards* on the opposite shores; those that are exposed to the air are a little tawny, but the rest as fair as *Europeans*.

Algier.

*ALGIER*, the next powerful state on this coast, is bounded on the east by *Tunis*, on the west by the kingdom of *Fez*, on the north by the *Mediterranean*, and on the south by the <sup>c</sup> deserts of *Biledulgerid*. It enjoys a constant verdure; for in *February* the leaves begin to bud, and in *April* they shew their fruit in full growth, which are mostly ripe by *May*. The grapes are fit to gather in *June*; and the figs, peaches, nectarines, olives, nuts, &c. in *August*. The soil is various, many parts being dry, hot, and barren; others fertile in corn and fruit; and others in excellent pasture-grounds. The towns, even along the sea-coasts, are but few and thinly peopled, except the metropolis. The *Algerines* are very great pyrates, and reckoned the most dangerous of all *Africa*. They are extremely avaricious and cruel to those that fall into their hands, especially to the Christians. In the city of *Algier*, the capital of the whole kingdom, are merchants of several nations, and so <sup>d</sup> numerous, that they amount at least to 3000 foreign families, which have settled there on the account of trade, and keep about 2000 shops in the two bazars of the place. The Jews, whose number amounts to 8000, dwell together in a particular quarter, and almost the whole trade here passes through their hands. The greatest commerce of the *Algerines* consists in the merchandize which they obtain by the pyratrical plunder of the Christians over the whole *Mediterranean*, and in part of the ocean. The corsairs are continually bringing in prizes, with great numbers of Christian slaves. Their marine is so strong, that they fit out every year to the amount of twenty-three vessels, with 3 or 400 men each.

Tunis.

THE kingdom of *Tunis* is the country which was formerly the celebrated republic of *Carthage*. In its utmost extent it lay stretched along the coasts upwards of 120 leagues; but is now reduced within a very little compass; extending only from east to west about <sup>e</sup> sixty leagues, and about 105 from north to south. Towards the west it is pretty fertile, being watered by some good rivers. Its greatest commerce consists in oil, olives, dates, soap, kali, or ashes, ostrich-feathers, camels, and horses. The many vallies between the high mountains afford plenty of corn, fruit, and pasture. The city of *Tunis* is said to owe most of its strength and beauty to the *Arabs*, who came hither from *Carthage*, where they did not think themselves so safe. It is now so populous, that it is computed to contain 10,000 families, and 3000 shops, where they sell linen and woollen; and the *Venetians* and *Genoese* are the two *European* nations that drive the greatest commerce with them. A great part of the inhabitants, both within the city and suburbs, are employed in the linen ma- <sup>f</sup> nufacture, which is here the finest in all *Africa*, their thread being the most delicate and best twisted; and it is of this that they weave that superfine cloth, of which they make those turbans called tunecis, so highly esteemed by the *Turks* and *Moors*. But their most advantageous business is piracy, in which they seem to be upon a level with their neighbours, especially in the number of Christian slaves they make. The province of *Susa* here is so called from its capital, an ancient *Roman* city, built upon a rock near the sea-side, over-against the island of *Pentileria*, and one of the nearest to *Sicily* of any of the *African* cities. It has a commodious large haven, where the pirates revel in safety; and the inhabitants, though mostly seamen, are reckoned a civil and trading people. The territory is fertile in barley, figs, olives, dates, and pasture-grounds. The city is strong, well walled, and is defended by a good stout castle and garrison. It also drives a pretty good trade in <sup>g</sup> oil, honey, wax, and especially in the tunny-fish, which is here caught and pickled, and in great request.

Tripoli.

THE kingdom of *Tripoli* has *Tunis* on the west, from which it is parted by the river *Capes*,



- a *Capes*, which rises out of the sandy desert to the south, and falls into the *Mediterranean*. This kingdom has some large, trading, and populous cities on the coasts, where, besides several manufactures, the inhabitants carry on the pyratel business to great advantage to themselves, though to the great hazard and loss of the *European* nations trading on the *Mediterranean*.

ON the south coast of the *Mediterranean*, between *Tripoli* and *Egypt*, is situate the extensive desert of *Barca*, the ancient *Cyrene*, and anciently famed for the temple of *Jupiter Hammon*. It is now truly a desert, scarce a town, or cultivated spot of ground being met with in it.

Desert of Barca.

- b OF the same nature are *Zaara*, and a good part of *Biledulgerid*; both divisions of *Africa*; situate between twenty and thirty degrees of north latitude, having *Negroland* on the south; *Morocco*, and the other parts of the coast of *Barbary*, on the north; the unknown parts of *Africa* on the east; and the *Atlantic Ocean* on the west. The name of *Zaara* implies a desert country; and it is in effect so destitute of water and provisions, that great part of the camels, which form the caravan that travels from *Morocco* to *Guinea*, are laden with water and necessaries for the subsistence of the people. *Biledulgerid* is the ancient *Numidia*, and was once tolerably fruitful, when it was possessed by an industrious people; but the *Mohammedans*, who are now masters of it, taking no care to cultivate the soil, it produces little more than *Zaara*. It is, however, renowned in some measure for its considerable quantities of dates. The people who inhabit it for the most part are *Arabs*; they live in tents, and being acquainted with the few springs and places where forage is to be found, pitch their tents sometimes in one part of the country, and sometimes in another; but though there are scarce any towns here at present, there are some considerable ruins, which shew that the country has been better inhabited and cultivated. What is most remarkable is the change of complexion, there being scarce any blacks north of *Negroland* but what have been purchased in *Guinea*, and carried to *Morocco*. There is also a change of religion as well as complexion; the people of *Guinea* and *Negroland* being for the most part pagans, and those of *Biledulgerid*, *Morocco*, and the coast of *Barbary*, *Mohammedans*.

Zaara and Biledulgerid.

- c THE *Mohammedans*, wherever they are established, especially those of them who partake of the genius and disposition of the *Turks*, have very little inclination to the arts of industry. This evidently appears in the inhabitants of those parts we have been now describing on the *African* sea-coast. Being a rapacious and tyrannical people, disdaining all industry and labour, neglecting all culture and improvement, it made them thieves and robbers, as naturally as idleness makes beggars; and, being trained to rapine and spoil, when they were no longer able to plunder and destroy the fruitful plains of *Valentia*, *Granada*, and *Andalusia*, they fell to roving upon the sea. They built ships, or rather seized them from others, and ravaged the neighbouring coasts, landing in the night, surprising, and carrying away the poor country-people out of their beds into slavery. This was their first occupation, and this naturally made pyrates of them: for, not being content with mere landing and plundering the sea-coasts of *Spain*, by degrees, being grown powerful and rich, and made bold and audacious by their success, they armed their ships, and began to attack, first the *Spaniards* upon the high seas, and then all the Christian nations of *Europe*, wherever they could find them. Thus this detestable practice of roving and robbing began. What magnitude they are since arrived to, what mischief they have brought upon the trading part of the world, how powerful they are grown, and how they are erected into states and governments, nay, into kingdoms, and, as they would be called, empires, for the kings of *Fez* and *Morocco* call themselves emperors; and how they are, to the disgrace of all Christian powers, treated with as such, is well known from the histories of those nations who have been at any time embroiled with them.

Reflections on the pyratel states of Barbary.

- d THE first Christian prince, who, resenting the insolence of these barbarians, and disdaining to make peace with them, resolved their destruction, was the emperor *Charles V.* He was moved with a generous compassion for the many thousands of miserable Christians who were, at that time, kept among them in slavery; and, from a benevolent principle of setting the Christian world free from the terror of such barbarians, he undertook singly, and without the assistance of any other nation, to fall upon them with all his power. In this war, had he been joined by the *French* and *English*, and the *Hans-towns*, (as for the *Dutch* they were not then a nation) he might have cleared the country; at least, he might have cleared the sea-coasts of the whole race, and have planted colonies of Christians in all the ports, for the encouragement of commerce, and for the safety of all the *European* nations. But *Francis I.* king of *France*, his mortal and constant enemy, envied him the glory of the greatest and best enterprize that was ever projected in *Europe*; an enterprize a thousand times beyond all the crusades and expeditions to the Holy-Land, which, during 120 years, cost *Europe*, and to no purpose, a million of lives and immense treasure. Though the emperor was assisted by no one prince in Christendom, the pope excepted, (and his artillery would



not go far in battering down stone-walls) yet he took the fortrefs of *Goletta*, and afterwards the city, and the whole kingdom of *Tunis*; and, had he kept poffeffion, it might have proved a happy fore-runner of farther conquelts; but, mifcarrying in his attempt againft *Algier*, and a terrible ftorm falling upon his fleet, the farther attempt was laid afide, and the kingdom of *Tunis* returned to its former poffeffors, by which means their pyracies are ftill continued.

THERE feems, therefore, to be a neceffity, that all the powers of *Europe*, efpecially the maritime, fhould endeavour to free themfelves from the infolence of thefe rovers, that their fubjects may thereby be protected in their perfons and goods from the hands of rapine and violence, their coafts fecured from insults and defcents, and their fhips from capture on the fea. The conquelt could not be attended with any great difficulty, if the *Englifh*, *Dutch*, *French*, and *Spaniards* would unite, to join their forces and fleets, and fall upon them in feparate bodies, and in feveral places at the fame time. The general benefit of commerce would immediately follow, by fettling the government of the fea coaft towns in the hands and poffeffion of the feveral united powers; fo that every one fhould poffefs the leaft, in proportion to the forces employed in the conquelt of it: the confequence of the fuccels would foon be fenfibly felt by the interefted parties; for if the quantity of productions fitted for the ufe of merchandize be fo confiderable as we find it to be, even now, under the indolence and floth of the moft barbarous people in the world, how may we fuppofe all thofe valuable things to be increafed by the induftry and application of the diligent *Europeans*, efpecially the *Englifh*, *French*, or *Dutch*. We might alfo reasonably fuppofe, that the *Moors*, being in confequence of fuch a conquelt driven up farther into the country, (for we do not propofe the rooting them out as a nation, but only the fupplanting or removing them from a fituation which they have juftly forfeited by their depredations upon other nations;) and being obliged to feek their fubfiftence by honeft labour and application, would at length be induced to increafe the product; and as multitudes of Chriftians would be encouraged, by the advantages of the place, to go over and settle upon it, the manufactures and merchandizes of *Europe* muft foon find a great additional confumption; and the many new ports and harbours where thofe Chriftian nations might settle, would be fo many new markets for the fale of thofe manufactures, where they had little or no fale or confumption before. Befides, would not the fuccels be delivering *Europe* from the depredations of powerful thieves, and their commerce and navigation from the rapine of a merciless crew, who are the ruin of thoufands of families, and, in fome fenfe, the reproach of Chriftendom? Such meafures as thefe are far from being impracticable; they are worthy of being undertaken by the princes and powers of *Europe*, and would, therefore, bring infinitely more glory to the Chriftian name, than all their intestine wars among each other, which are the fcandal of *Europe*, and the only thing, that, at firft, let in the *Turks* and other barbarians among them.

African  
Islands.

To finish our account of *Africa*, fome notice remains to be taken of its iflands, fome of which lie in the *Eastern* or *Indian Ocean*; and fome in the *Western*, or *Atlantic Ocean*. We fhall begin with the *Eastern*.

Zocotora.

THE firft of any note that presents itfelf in the *Indian-Ocean*, is *Zocotora*, fittuate in eaft longitude 53. north latitude 12. thirty leagues eaft of *Cape Gardesoi*, on the continent of *Africa*. It is about eighty miles long, and fifty-four broad, and has two pretty good harbours in it, where fhips put in fometimes when they lofe their paffage to *India*, the country being plentiful, and affording fuch fruits and plants as are ufually found within the tropics; as alfo frankincenfe, gum tragacanth, and aloes.

Babelmandel.

*BABELMANDEL* is fittuate in eaft longitude 44 30. north latitude 12. It commands the ftrait at the entrance of the *Red Sea*; and preferves the communication between *Ethiopia* and *Arabia*; on which account it was formerly much contended for by the *Ethiopians* and *Arabs*: otherwife, it is of very little confequence, being a barren fandty fpot of earth, not five miles round.

Comorra  
Islands.

THE *Comorra-Islands* are fittuate between 41 and 46 deg. eaft longitude, and between 10. and 14 deg. fouth latitude, equally diftant from *Madagascar*, and the continent of *Africa*. *Joanna*, the chief, is about thirty miles long, and fifteen broad; and affords plenty of provisions, and fuch fruits as are produced between the tropics. *Eaft-India* fhips bound to *Bombay* ufually touch here for refrefhment. The people are negroes of the *Mohammedan* religion, and entertain our feamen with great humanity and hofpitality.

Mauritius.

*MAURITIUS* is fittuate eaft longitude 56. fouth latitude 20. about 400 miles eaft of *Madagascar*. It was fubject to the *Dutch*, who named it *Maurice*, in honour of their ftadtholder, but is now poffeffed by the *French*. It is of an oval form, about 150 miles in circumference, a mountainous country, well covered with good timber of feveral forts, and watered with feveral rivulets which run down from the mountains. The *Dutch* erected faw-mills upon it, and from thence fupplied their fettlements in *India* with plank. This ifland was of great ufe to the *Dutch* before they poffeffed the *Cape of Good Hope*, having then no other place to furnifh them with refrefhments between *Europe* and *India*.



*MADAGASCAR*, or *St. Laurence*, the chief of the *African-Islands*, is situate between 43. and 51. deg. of east longitude, and between 12. and 26 degrees of south latitude, 300 miles south-east of the continent of *Africa*, and is about 1000 miles in length from north to south, and generally between 2 and 300 miles broad. It abounds in corn, cattle, fish, fowl, and all manner of animals and vegetables that are to be found on the continent of *Africa*. Here are a great variety of hills, vallies, woods, and champaign, and the island is well watered with springs and rivers; neither does it want good harbours, and yet no *European* nation has thought it worth while to plant colonies in it, no merchandize being produced therein that will bear the expence of so long a voyage, except negroes, which are purchased here as well as on the continent, by trading ships. But besides negroes, there are white men and a tawny generation upon the coast, who are descended from the *Arabs*, as is evident from their language, and their religious rites, having a mixture of *Mohammedanism*, *Judaism*, and *Paganism*; but they have no mosques, temples, nor any stated worship. The country is divided amongst a great many petty sovereigns, to whom the seamen that touch there give the title of kings and princes, who, making war on each other, as they do on the continent, sell their prisoners, or slaves, to the shipping which call here, taking cloathing, utensils, and other necessaries, in return. *European* pyrates, of which lately was the noted *Avery*, have frequently their stations in the harbours of this island. It is confidently affirmed, that the island has also gold and silver mines; but it is not known in what province they lie. Nor does it want for precious stones, as topazes, amethysts, agates, &c. but the natives value a plate of copper more than the most beautiful precious stone, when rough; and deride foreigners who bid them any thing for them. The island is not populous in proportion to its bigness.

*MASCARIN*, called *Mascareigne*, or the *Isle of Bourbon* by the *French*, is about 370 miles distant from the coast of *Madagascar* to the east, under the 21st and 22d degrees of south latitude. It was discovered by a *Portuguese* of the house of *Mascarenhas*, who gave it his name. Afterwards *M. de Flacourt*, governor of *Fort Dauphin*, and of the *French* settlements in *Madagascar*, gave it the name of *Bourbon*, in the year 1654, when he took possession of it in the name of his king. However, the *French* did not settle at first upon this island; but, finding afterwards how advantageous it might prove to their navigation, they made a considerable settlement there in 1672, after they had quitted the island of *Madagascar*. They have now pretty considerable towns there, with a governor and several magistrates. There are many good roads for shipping about this island, but no safe ports to secure ships against the violent storms which often rage in those parts. This is, at present, the baiting-place of the *French East-India* ships, and the only one where they can conveniently get refreshments. The island, which is about ninety miles round, is fruitful in plants, and abounds particularly with aloes, tobacco, white-pepper, ebony, palm, and other fruit-trees; a kind of trees which produce odoriferous gums, as benzoin, &c. and a great many trees proper for timber. The soil is well-watered by several small rivers, rivulets, and springs of very good water; and the rivers abound with fish. On the sea-shore are gathered great quantities of ambergrease, coral, and fine shells. There are many more small islands about *Madagascar*, but not worth mentioning. The islands of the *Atlantic-Ocean*, next in order, are,

*ST. HELENA*, situate in west longitude 6. 30, south latitude 16. 1200 miles west of the continent of *Africa*, and 1800 east of *South America*. It is a rock in the middle of the ocean, very high and steep, about twenty miles in circumference, and only accessible at the landing place, which is defended by batteries of guns. A foot of good earth covers the top of it, and produces corn, grapes, and all fruits proper for the climate. It abounds also in cattle, poultry, and other fowls; but the inhabitants are unfortunate in having a multitude of rats in the island, which eat up all the corn as soon as it is sown; and, by burrowing in the rock, there is no practicable means of destroying them; so that all the flour they use is imported from *England*, and in a scarcity they generally eat yams and potatoes, instead of bread. The *East-India* company are proprietors of the island, which was given them by king *Charles II.* soon after it was taken from the *Dutch* by admiral *Monday*, in 1672. There are about 200 families in the island, most of them the children of the *English* that planted it: their complexions are as good as those of the natives of *Old England*, though they lie in so warm a latitude; which may be ascribed to the trade winds, which constantly blow over them, and the sea, which so closely surrounds the island, and renders it cooler than might be expected. Here the *English East-India* ships take in water and fresh provisions in their way home: but the island is so very small, and the wind so much against them outward-bound, that they very seldom see it then; and if a ship overshoots the island, and falls to leeward, it is very difficult to recover it.

THE island of *Ascension* is situate in 17 degrees west longitude, and 7 south latitude, 600 miles north-west of *St. Helena*. It is about twenty miles round, and uninhabited; but the



*East-India* ships usually touch here to furnish themselves with turtle, or tortoises, which are very plentiful and vastly large, some of them weighing above an hundred pounds a-piece. a

St. Matthew. THE island of *St. Matthew* lies in 9 degrees west longitude, and in 2. 30. south latitude, 700 miles south of *Cape Palmas*.

St. Thomas. THE island of *St. Thomas* is situate under the Equator, in 8 degrees east longitude.

Anaboa. ANABOA is situate near the coast of *Loango*, in east longitude 8. 30. south latitude 1.

Prince's- PRINCE'S-ISLAND on the same coast, in east longitude 9. north latitude 1.

Island. FERNANDO PO is situate in east longitude 10. north latitude 3. near the mouth of the river *Cameron*. These five are small islands belonging to the *Portuguese*, which furnish shipping with fresh water and provisions as they pass by, but are not considerable on any other account. b

Goree. GOREE is situate in 14. 41. north latitude, and 17. 20. west longitude, about eight leagues to the south-east of *Cape Verd*, and within about three miles of the continent. It is about three quarters of a mile in length, and one quarter in breadth. It was taken in 1758, in the late war, from the *French* by commodore *Keppel*, and restored to them by the definitive treaty of peace. Its appearance from the sea is low and even, except towards the south-west, where it rises into a rocky hill, upon the summit of which is situated the fort, called *St. Michael*. Besides *French* natives, the island is inhabited by about 300 free negroes, all Christians, who live in the plain to the south.

Cape Verd Islands. CAPE VERD Islands are situate between the 13th and 50 minutes, and the 17th and 50 minutes of north latitude, and between the 22d and 25th degrees of longitude west from London. They were discovered by *Antonio Noel*, a *Genoese* in the service of *Portugal*, in the year 1460, and are governed by a viceroy from *Portugal*, who resides in the isle of *St. Jago*. The inhabitants are *Europeans*, or families originally from *Europe*, with a good number of negroes, all professing the religion of the church of *Rome*. The most considerable of these islands are, c

MAYO, the whole of which is a very dry sort of soil, without any fresh water or streams to moisten it; but only showers in the wet season, which run off as fast as they fall. There is but one small spring in the middle of the isle, from which proceeds a little stream of water, that runs through a valley between the hills. On the west side of the island, where the road for ships is, there is a large sandy bay, and a sand-bank about forty paces wide, which runs two or three miles along the shore, within which there is a large salina, or salt-pond, contained between the sand-bank and the hills beyond it. The waters which yield this salt work out of the sea, through a hole in the sand-bank, like a sluice, and that only in spring-tides, when it fills the pond, more or less, according to the height of the tides. They who come hither to lade salt take it up as it kerns, and lay it up in heaps on the dry-land, before the water breaks in again. Our nation drives a great trade here for salt, and has commonly a man of war stationed here, for the guard of our ships and barques that come to take it in; of which, in some years, there have not been less than an hundred in a year. It costs nothing but men's labour to rake it together, and wheel it out of the pond, except the carriage, and that is also very cheap; the inhabitants having plenty of asses, for which they have little to do, besides carrying the salt from the ponds to the sea-side, at the season when the ships are here. These asses too are a commodity in some of those islands, several of our ships coming hither to freight with them, carry them to *Barbadoes*, and our other plantations. The inhabitants of this island, even their governor and priests, are all negroes, and speak the *Portuguese* language. The negro governor expects a small present from every commander that lades salt, and is glad to be invited aboard their ships. d

ST. JAGO is the chief, the most fruitful, and best inhabited of all the islands of *Cape Verd*; and yet is mountainous and has much barren land. On the east-side of the island is a town called *Baya*, with a good port, which, in peaceable times, especially, is seldom without ships: for this has been long a place where ships outward-bound to *Guinea*, or the *East-Indies*, *English*, *French*, and *Dutch*, have been wont to touch at for water and refreshments, but few ships call here on their return to *Europe*. *St. Jago* town, the capital of the island, lies on the south-west part of it, and is the seat of the general-governor, and of the bishop of all the *Cape Verd-Islands*. There are several small sugar-works on this island, from which they send into *Portugal* near an hundred tons every year; and they have plenty of cotton growing in the country, wherewith they clothe themselves, and send also a great deal to *Brazil*. They have some wines, and an abundance of different sorts of excellent fruits. f

THE other islands are *Buena Vista*, *Sal*, or *Salt Island*, *St. Nicholas*, *St. Lucia*, *St. Vincent*, *St. Anthony*, *Fuego a Vulcano*, and *Brava*; some of which have very good roads and harbours. The island *Sal* is full of large salt ponds, where the water naturally congeals into salt; and, at *St. Vincent*, the *Portuguese* load hides. g

Canaries. THE *Canaries*, antiently called the *Fortunate-Islands*, are situate between 12 and 19 degrees west longitude, and between 27 and 29 north latitude, about 150 miles south-west of



- a of *Morocco*. The chief island, called the *Great Canary*, which communicates its name to the rest, is situate between 27 and 28 degrees of north latitude, and is about 150 miles in circumference. The particular names of the others are *Lancerota*, *Fuerte-Ventura*, *Teneriffe*, *Gomera*, *Ferro*, and *Palma*; in all seven in number. These islands enjoy a pure temperate air, and we may judge of the richness of the soil from their having frequently two harvests in a year. They abound particularly in the most delicious fruits, among which the grapes produce those rich wines that obtain the name of *Canary*, whereof no less than 10,000 hogheads are annually exported to *England* in time of peace. They were first discovered and planted by the *Carthaginians*; but the *Romans* destroying that state, put a stop to navigation, especially on the west coast of *Africa*, and these islands lay
- b concealed afterwards from the rest of the world, for many ages, till they were again discovered by the *Spaniards* in 1405. The natives, upon the first landing of the *Spaniards*, were idolaters, worshipping the sun and stars; their number was very considerable; they were robust and active, and well skilled in the managing of the warlike weapons of bows, arrows, and darts. None of the people of the continent could understand their language; but when they had learnt *Spanish* enough to be understood, could give no account of their ancestors, or from what country they came; and though they resembled the natives of the north of *Africa* in their stature and complexion, retained none of their customs, were masters of no science, and did not know there was any country in the world besides their own. Having struggled for their liberties till about the year 1460, they were forced to
- c yield to the superior power of their invaders, who sent a great number of them to *Spain*, to end their days in slavery. Those that were more fortunate have endeavoured to retain their ancient demesnes, by submitting intirely to the *Spanish* yoke in church and state, and now far exceed their teachers in probity and civility to strangers.

- THE *Gran Canaria*, the capital, which stands on the south-west side of the island, called the *Great-Canary*, is defended by a very ordinary castle; but its best defence are the rocks that lie under water, which make the approach to the shore very dangerous. There is eighteen fathom water before it, and it measures about a league in circumference; but the houses, though for the most part built well enough, are low, seldom above one story, and terraced at top. Here is the episcopal see, the inquisition-office, the supreme council, or
- d assembly of the states of the seven islands, and several houses of monks, friars, and nuns.

- ABOUT fourteen leagues from the *Great-Canary*, is *Teneriff*, in which is a mountain called the *Pico*, or *Peak of Teneriff*. It is so high, that as soon as the sun appears, its shadow seems to cover not only this and the *Great Canary Island*, but even the sea to the very horizon; where its top, in the form of a sugar-loaf, seems to turn up, and to cast its shadow into the air. It requires three days to arrive at the top, from whence may be seen to the distance of above fifty leagues round, and all the adjacent islands plainly discovered: and, though it often emits fire, flames, smoke and ashes, like *Ætna* and *Vesuvius*, it is so cold, and covered with snow at the top, that there is no ascending it but from the middle of *May* to the middle of *August*. In the year 1704, there happened so dreadful an eruption of sulphur and melted ore from this mountain, that it ran down like a river, and destroyed several considerable towns, spoiling the richest lands in the island, and converting them into a barren desert.
- e

- THE most remarkable curiosity of these islands is the fountain-tree, in the island of *Ferro*. This island has neither river, spring, fountain, nor well, though twenty-five leagues in circumference; but was formerly supplied with abundance of wholesome fresh water by means of this wonderful tree. All the authors who have recorded the discovery of these islands mention it; and *Lewis Jackson*, an *Englishman*, has exactly described its nature and qualities. This tree is as thick as an oak, between six and seven fathom high, the branches spreading somewhat loose and open, and the leaves like those of laurel, white within and green without. It bears neither fruit nor blossoms, dries, and seems to wither in the day-time, when the sun shines, and drops water all night; when a cloud always hovers about its top. Under each of these trees, of which there are many in this island, there was a cistern or basin, capable of holding sufficient water for 8000 inhabitants, and 100,000 beasts on this island. The principal basin is supposed to have contained 20,000 tons, and was filled in one night, and conveyed through several canals into other reservoirs about the island; a thing incredible, did not experience evince the truth of it. Hence also we may account for its name, *Pluvialia*, in ancient geography, which imports, that this island was supplied with water from heaven. Some modern writers have taken the liberty to decry this account as a mere fiction; merely, because Providence having taught the inhabitants a more easy manner of saving rain-water in cisterns, and of filtrating brackish water for common use, thought proper to alter its former method: and indeed this method of supplying a certain people with water from heaven, is as easy to be accounted for, as God's feeding the *Israelites* forty years with bread from heaven in the wilderness; and there is no
- f
- g

*Fountain-tree, a remarkable production of nature.*



more inconsistency in its ceasing now for some years past, since the inhabitants have been providentially instructed to supply their want of water in a more natural way, than there is in God's ceasing to rain manna every morning, after the *Israelites* were arrived in a land, where, by art, cultivation, and industry, they were able to procure corn from the earth for their sustenance. These exertions of God's Providence were done, and continued so long as needful for the support of his creatures, to shew that his mercy is over all his works, and were only discontinued when they were enabled to provide for themselves in a natural way.

Madeira.

*MADEIRA*, the best of the *African* islands, lies under the 32d degree of north latitude, and under the 17th and 18th degree of longitude, west from *London*. The air is far more moderate than in the *Canary-Islands*, and the soil more fertile in corn, wine, sugar, and fruits, being much better watered by five or six little rivers; but it is alike stored with the same sort of cattle, birds, plants, and trees, from which are had dragon's blood, mastic, and other gums. Here is a perpetual spring and warm weather, which produce blossoms and fruit every month in the year. The lemons are of a monstrous size, with oranges of all sorts. Fruit-trees from *Europe* thrive in perfection. They make here the best sweet-meats in the world, and succeed wonderfully in preserving large citrons, and beautiful oranges, and in making marmalades and perfumed pastes, which infinitely exceed those of *Genoa*, whatever the *Italians* may pretend. The sugar they make is extremely beautiful, and smells naturally of violets. This is the first place in the west where this manufacture was set on foot; and from hence it has been carried into *America*, where they make such vast quantities of sugar, that the *Portuguese*, finding that this trade was not so profitable to them here as it proved at first, pulled up the greatest part of their sugar-canes, and planted vineyards in their stead, which produce excellent wine, and which foreigners come to buy up, and whereby the *Portuguese* make an immense profit. It is observable of *Madeira* wine, that the heat of the sun improves it much, when exposed to it in the barrel, after the bung is taken off. They make in the whole island, about 28,000 pipes of wine, 8000 of which are drank there, and the rest exported, the greatest part to the *West-Indies*, especially to *Barbadoes*. The chief towns are *Funchal* and *Porto Santo*, both very populous. This island wants harbours, and has only a bay, which is safe enough, except when the wind blows from the south-west. The *Portuguese* planted this island in 1425, and by burning down the woods with which it was almost covered, rendered it exceeding fruitful. It is computed to be about 120 miles in circumference.

### S E C T. III.

## OF EUROPE.

### CHAP. I.

#### Of Europe in General.

Boundaries  
and extent.

*EUROPE*, one of the four divisions made by geographers of the whole world, is bounded on the north by the *Frozen Ocean*; on the south by the *Mediterranean Sea*, which divides it from *Africa*; on the east by *Asia*, from which it is parted by the *Archipelago*, the *Euxine* or *Black Sea*, and the *Palus Mæotis*, and thence by a line drawn from the river *Tanais* or *Don*, almost to the river *Oby*, in *Muscovy*; and on the west, it is bounded by the *Atlantic Ocean*. It is extended between 34 and 80 degrees north latitude, and between 5 and 80 degrees of longitude, reckoning the first meridian to pass through the island of *Teneriff*. It contains in breadth as a continent, from the *North Cape* to *Cape Metapan* in the *Morea*, about 2600 miles; and in length, from the mouth of the river *Oby* in the east, to *Cape St. Vincent* in *Portugal*, west, about 2800 miles.

Advantages  
of Europe.

THOUGH *Europe* be the least of the four parts of the world, it may justly have the preference for the mildness of the air, the fertility of the soil, the many navigable rivers, the great plenty of corn, cattle, wine, oil, and all things requisite, not only for the sustenance and comfort, but even for the luxury of human life; and more especially for the beauty, strength, courage, ingenuity, industry, and wisdom of its inhabitants; the excellency of their governments, the equity of their laws, the freedom of their subjects; and, which

surpasses



a surpasses all, the purity and sanctity of the Christian religion, which is professed throughout all *Europe*, except that part of it which is possessed by the *Turks*. *Europe* also has for many ages been exceeding populous, and her inhabitants, in general, are justly illustrious for their valour, wisdom, and virtue; by which they conquered the greatest part of *Asia* and *Africa*, and subjected them to the two empires of *Greece* and *Rome*; and, in these latter ages, almost one half of the earth, that was formerly unknown, has been discovered by *Europeans*, and possessed by the colonies they have sent thither.

THE *Europeans* also have been the most renowned for learning and arts. All their scholastic sciences they have brought to a much greater perfection than either the *Asiatics* or *Africans* ever did; and the invention and improvement of numberless useful and ingenious arts, particularly that of navigation, on which all intercourse of foreign commerce between distant nations depends, is wholly owing to the genius and industry of the inhabitants of this part of the world.

EUROPE was peopled after the flood, as is generally believed, by the posterity of *Japhet*, who came from *Asia Minor* over the *Hellepont* into *Greece*; though some say, that the descendants of *Shem*, passing by land between the *Caspian Sea* and the *Palus Mæotis*, went through *Tartary* and *Scythia* into *Scandinavia*, and thence afterwards into *France*, *Germany*, and the neighbouring countries. Which of these opinions is most to be credited we cannot undertake to determine; but we may account for, with great certainty, the original of the principal states of *Europe*, as to their present constitution, in this manner.

c THE *Roman* empire was destroyed by those multitudes of people that poured forth from the north at different times into different countries, and most of the nations that are considerable at present were peopled by them, and are in the possession of their descendants. The first of these that ravaged *Europe* were the *Cimbri*, so early as the year 639 from the building of *Rome*, but they were intirely extirpated by *Marius* before they got footing in *Italy*. The *Visigoths*, or western *Goths*, had better success some centuries afterwards; they sacked *Rome* under *Alaric*, in the year of Christ 409, and settled in *Italy*, *Languedoc*, and *Spain*; though their *Italian* kingdom was ruined by *Narses* the Eunuch, *Justinian's* general, in 552. The provinces of *Gaul* fell to the share of the *Franks* and *Burgundians*, and still retain the names of their conquerors. The *Huns* subdued *Pannonia*, which has ever since been called *Hungary*. The *Romans* being no longer able to defend *Britain* from the incursions of the *Picts* and other wild people, the *Britons* called in the *Angles*, or *Saxons*, to their assistance, who defeated both parties in their turn, took possession of the best part of the country for themselves, and gave it the name of *England*. The *Britons*, thus expelled from their inheritance by their foreign allies, retired, some into that part of *France* which is from them called *Brittany*, and others, who would not adventure to quit the island, retreated beyond the river *Severn*, into that part of it which was named *Wales* by the *Saxons*.

e THE *Longobardi*, or *Lombards*, a people originally from *Scandinavia*, but last from *Hungary*, were the next that settled in *Italy*, part of which is called *Lombardy*. Afterwards the *Normans*, another northern people, over-run that part of *France* which still bears the name of *Normandy*, obtained the crown of *England* under *William I.* penetrated even into *Italy*, and there founded the kingdom of *Naples*.

f THE last emperor of the western part of the *Roman* empire was *Augustulus*, driven out of *Italy* by an inundation of barbarous people about the latter end of the fifth century, under *Odoacer*, who changed the title, and was the first who called himself king of the *Romans*. Amongst the effects of these changes, religion was not the least; for as the removal of the seat of empire from *Rome* to *Constantinople* was the true cause of the ruin of the *Roman* state, so it was the very means of the rise of the *Roman* church; for the popes, or bishops of *Rome*, who until that time had no authority but that which their piety and learning gave them amongst an ignorant people, became, in the absence of the emperors, mediators of all the differences of *Italy*. On the destruction of the eastern empire by the *Turks*, the popes had recourse to *France* to support the power they had gained by degrees against the encroachments of the *Lombards*, and it was *Charlemagne* who laid the foundation of and established that vast influence which this spiritual monarchy afterwards obtained. In return for this they made him emperor, and he created his son king of the *Romans*, which title is still often vested in the eldest son of the emperor of *Germany*, though not now by creation, but by a majority of the electors of the empire, to which the person so chosen succeeds in course. The pope created the priests near *Rome* cardinals, who soon excluded the people from their right of voting in the election of a pope, and always advanced one of their own college to the holy see. The pope also in the time of *Otho III.* deprived the *Roman* people of their right of voting in the election of an emperor, a privilege they had till then enjoyed, and vested it in the six electorates of *Germany*, three ecclesiastic, *Mentz*, *Triers* or *Treves*, and *Cologne*, and three secular princes, *Brandenburg*, *Palatine*, and *Saxony*; to these

*Europe how first peopled.*

*Origin of the European states.*



these latter *Bavaria* and *Hanover* have since been added; the kingdom of *Bohem* has also a vote in the election. The emperors and popes, though they had thus mutually concurred to the aggrandizement of each other, soon disagreed, insomuch that pope *Alexander II.* ventured to degrade *Henry II.* from the empire. This bold step divided *Italy*, and was the origin of the famous parties of *Guelfs* and *Ghibellines*, the latter of whom favoured the imperial, the former the papal authority. A principal partizan among the *Guelfs* was *Maud* countess of *Tuscany*, who left that part of her dominions which is still called the patrimony of *St Peter*, to the church. This was a great addition of power to the popes, but the occasion of almost all the wars that happened in *Italy* for two centuries afterwards; for the popes to extend their own dominions, or to erect principalities or dukedoms for their families, called first one foreign power, then another, into *Italy*, and gave rise to all the pretensions which the *French*, *Spaniards*, and *Germans*, have upon most of the territories there; and to those disputes in which so much blood has been shed, and which have required so many treaties to adjust them, even down to the present times.

THE modern powers of *Europe* built upon the ruins of the *Roman* empire are, the empire of *Germany*, with all its sovereign independent states; the kingdoms of *France*, *Spain*, *England*, *Hungary*, *Naples*, and *Sardinia*; the territories of the pope, and all the dukedoms and republics of *Italy*. The eastern empire is now intirely under the dominion of the *Turk*, where the sword of *Mokammed* has planted his doctrine, which is likely to continue without the divine interposition; for the interests of Christian potentates will always be different, and the humour of entering into wars for the sake of religion is over long since.

Use of languages to discover the origin of nations.

ALL these great changes did not only alter the names of the provinces, cities, and rivers, but gave rise to several modern languages; those of *France*, *Spain*, and *Italy*, being various mixtures of the ancient *Roman* or *Latin* tongue, with that then spoken by the new possessors of these several countries. Nothing bids fairer to discover the origin of nations than the critical knowledge of languages; for it is evident, that as historical monuments are far from reaching to the origin of nations, great use may be made of the vestiges of ancient languages still remaining, especially in the proper names of rivers and forests, and even of countries, towns, and men; and as it may be laid down as a principle, that all proper names were originally appellative, the question will be therefore to find out the signification of those ancient names, which is not always impossible.

WE learn from a verse in the poet *Venantius Fortunatus*, that the word *Ric*, or *Ricus*, which was the termination of so many names among the *Germans*, *Franks*, *Alemanni*, *Saxons*, *Goths*, *Vandals*, &c. signified only *fortis*, strong, since that poet renders the name *Cbilperic*, *adjutor fortis*, a strong helper; and *help*, or *hulpe*, is used still in the *Teutonic* languages, for *auxilium*, assistance. One may observe in the greatest part of our continent, some remains of an ancient prevailing language, which has been as it were perpetuated by some words used from the *British* sea as far as *Japan*. Without dwelling upon the word *sack*, which has been observed by so many grammarians, the ancient *Celtic* word *mar*, or *mare*, a horse, not only still remains in the word *marechal*, a word common to so many languages, but is not unknown to the most eastern *Tartars*, namely, to those who conquered *China*. Such is again the word *Kan*, king, prince, derived from the verbs *kan*, *kennen*, which in the *Teutonic* language signify *posse*, to be able; for it is well known that these words, *king*, *konig*, *chagan*, *can*, denote or denoted, a monarch, a great man, among all the *Germanic* nations, the *Sarmatæ*, the *Huns*, the *Persians*, the *Turks*, and the *Tartars*, as far as *China*.

HENCE there is good reason to believe, that the greatest part of the words of that primitive language were formed by onomatopœia, that is, men endeavoured to express, by a sound, the idea or passion excited in them by the presence of certain objects; and that therefore, for example, the power and strength of those who first usurped empire over men, are in some measure represented by the strong pronunciation of the word *kan*, which is owing to the letter *k*.

ALL the languages derived from that primitive language may be properly divided into two great classes. The first we may call *Japhetic*, or *Scythian* languages; these were spread through the northern countries, in which we may reckon all *Europe*. The second go by the name of *Aramean* languages, and were spoken in the southern countries. Among the latter the *Arabic* seems to have prevailed over all others, the *Syriac*, *Chaldaic*, *Hebrew*, *Punic*, and *Ethiopic*, being only dialects of it. The *Persian*, *Armenian*, and *Georgian*, are a mixture of the *Scythian* and *Aramean* languages. As for the *Coptic*, or *Egyptian*, there is so little affinity between it and the other southern languages, that its original might well be derived from the ancient language spoken in *Ethiopia*, before the *Arabs* penetrated into that country.

FROM the ancient *Scythian* language sprung those of the *Turks*, *Sarmatians*, *Finnonians*, and *Celtæ*: by the ancient *Scythians* are understood those nations that first inhabited the shores



a shores of the *Euxine Sea*, and are called *Cimmerii* by *Homer*. A surprising affinity is found between some words of the ancient *Scythian* language, preserved by *Herodotus*, and those languages which are originally *Celtic*, such as the *Greek*, the *Latin*, the *Irish*, and the *German*. That *Greek* historian informs us that the *Amazons*, a *Scythian* nation, were surnamed *Æcrpata*, that is, murderers of men, from these two *Scythian* words *Æcr* man, and *Pata*, to kill: but this last word is very like the ancient *Latin* word *batuo*, which signifies the same thing; and the word *Æcr* comes very near these *Latin*, *Irish*, and *German* words, *Vir*, *Baro*, *Herr*, *Herr*, *Er*, *Var*, which denote a man. In the *Greek*, *Latin*, and *German* languages, the etymology of the *Scythian* word *Arimaspi* may be found out. It was, according to the testimony of *Herodotus*, the name of a *Scythian* nation, so called because the men had but

b one eye; for, says *Herodotus*, *Arima* signifies one, in the *Scythian* language, and *Spi* signifies eye. We find some vestiges of those two words, both as to the sound and signification, in the *Greek* word *ἑρμους*, solitude; in the *German* word *Arm*, poor, desolate, forsaken; and in these *Latin*, *German*, *Italian*, and *French* words, *Specere*, *Speken*, *Spicare*, *Esperer*, which signifies to see, to look. Thus it were to be wished that some learned man would give himself the trouble to make a collection of all the ancient *Scythian* words, as others have collected all the ancient terms used among the *Gauls*, *Phrygians*, *Ethiopians*, &c.

If we take a survey of the several nations which may be deemed *Scythians* by extraction, we may begin with the *Turks*, with whom may be enumerated the *Little Tartars*, the *Calmucs*, the *Moguls*, and the eastern *Tartars*, because the languages of all those nations have a great affinity: afterwards, we may proceed to the *Sarmatians*, called since *Slavonians*, to whom may be referred not only the *Muscovites*, the *Poles*, the *Bohemians*, the *Moravians*, the *Bulgarians*, the *Dalmatians*, and the *Slavonians* of our time, but also other *Sarmatians* more northern, bordering upon the *Baltic Sea*, and called *Wendi* or *Wenedi*; of whom are still some considerable remains in the duchy of *Lunenbourg*, and in *Lusatia* and *Brandenburg*. Among the *Sarmatians* may also be reckoned the *Huns* and the *Avari*, who formerly invaded *Pannonia* or *Hungary*; the *Rascians*, the *Servians*, the *Croatians*, and some other nations are their posterity: as for the *Hungari*, they did not make themselves masters of *Pannonia* till a long time after, being come from the *Asiatic Scythia*, under the empire of *Charlemagne*. What shews that the *Huns* were *Sarmatians*, or *Slavonians*, is, that in the language

d of the latter, *Coni*, or *Cluni*, signifies a horse; and it is well known that the *Huns* had no other troops but cavalry, as the *Tartars*; so that *Hun* and horseman are one and the same thing. Besides, *Jornandes*, describing the funeral of *Attila*, king of the *Huns*, mentions a great feast, which he calls *Strawa*; a name used to this day, among the *Slavonians*, to denote a great apparel. As for what concerns the *Finnonians*, *Tacitus*, who calls them *Fennos*, represents them as a wild and fierce people, which very well agrees with the *Laplanders* and *Samiæds*, who in some respects are originally *Finnonians*. It is very probable that the inhabitants of *Esthonia* and *Livonia*, and some other nations that live along the shores of the *Baltic Sea*, whose language have no affinity with the *Slavonian*, might be of a *Finnonian* race; but it is more than probable that the *Hungarians* who came from *Asia*, are of the

e same race; the more, because there is no language in *Europe* that comes so near the *Hungarian* as the *Finnonian*.

The *Celtæ* came originally from *Scythia*, and spread themselves through the greatest part of *Europe*: they peopled by degrees *Germany*, *Gaul*, *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Great-Britain*. Hence it seems well grounded that the ancient *Britons* were the first inhabitants of *Ireland*, and that the language of that country would afford the best means of reviving the ancient *Celtic*. The *Cambrians*, or *Cimbri*, now called among us the *Welsh*, and the *Anglo-Saxons*, succeeded the ancient *Britons*. The first inhabitants of *Italy* were the *Celtæ*, who came from *Germany* and *Gaul*; and, in process of time, many *Greeks*, *Lydians*, *Phrygians*, *Phœnicians*, and other nations, were incorporated with them. The ancient *Ætrurian* language, which

f is no longer understood, as its characters cannot be read, was in all probability spoken by the ancient inhabitants of *Italy*. As for the *Spaniards*, it may be believed that they are generally of a *Celtic* extraction; but the *Basques* may well perplex any linguist, because their language being so far different from all those known to us, it may be thought, with good reason, that, before the arrival of the *Celtæ* in *Spain*, that country was inhabited by some *African* colony, from which the *Basques* are descended. Some have thought they found an analogy between this language and the *Irish*; but they are indeed quite different.

GERMANY sent several colonies into *France* and *Italy*, and also furnished *Scandinavia* with new inhabitants, who drove away the *Finnonians*, or *Laplanders*. This opinion seems to differ much from that of several learned men in the north, who look upon the *Germans* as a colony of the ancient *Goths*. Certain it is, that this origin would have some probability, if the inhabitants of the remotest parts of *Sweden* and *Norway* spoke the *Germanic* language. These inhabitants are *Laplanders*, or *Finnonians*; but their language has no affinity with the *German*. It may, notwithstanding, be said, that the *Germans*, having increased in



*Scandinavia*, spread themselves again through *Germany*; for it is certain that the *Germans*, the *Saxons*, the *Heruli*, the *Vandals*, and some other nations, came from the shores of the *Baltic Sea*; but this happened long after the first migrations.

FROM these curious reflections on the use of languages to discover the origin of nations, an ingenious person, besides satisfying curiosity, may find wherewithal to supply with very probable conjectures the deficiency of historical monuments. The hint is improveable, and in the main may be attended with some utility.

Considerations  
on Europe  
compared with  
the other parts  
of the world.

BUT to resume the course of our general observations upon *Europe*, from which we may seem to have digressed: it may be said, that though *Europe* is esteemed the most happy and valuable quarter of the globe, these prerogatives are not derived from its size, since it is the least of all the four into which the world is divided. It has been supposed, that if the whole habitable globe was divided into 300 parts, *Europe* will contain of these 27, *Asia* 101, *Africa* 82, and *America* 90: and though *Europe* respectively excels *America*, and perhaps *Africa*, yet she falls far short of *Asia*, if we may depend on the accounts of the least experienced travellers. With regard to subterranean riches, her gold and silver mines are not to be compared with those in the other quarters of the world: she has few precious stones, and as to spices and perfumes, we well know from whence they come. But with regard to territory, if we consider what the *Spaniards*, the *English*, the *Portuguese*, the *French*, and the *Dutch* possess in the other parts of the world, it may be said, that the dominions of the *European* powers are equal, if not superior to *Asia*; and if it does not contain so many people within its own limits, yet it commands more; and, in consequence of their trade, the *Europeans* enjoy all that nature has bestowed on the other parts of the world.

Revival and  
progress of  
the trade of  
Europe.

THE trade of *Europe* has, in a course of ages, undergone great alterations. Upon the fall of the *Roman* empire, it seemed to be, in some measure, extinguished, but soon revived among the *Saxons*, who, when they became masters of this island, established a great maritime power here, which did not continue long, the *Danes* becoming masters of this country. After some ages, commerce and maritime power retired southward, and were, in a manner, engrossed by the *Italian* states, particularly by the *Venetians* and *Genoese*, who shared the traffic of the East. In the thirteenth century, several free cities in *Germany* began to league together for the support of their trade, and made their confederacy known to the world by the title of The *Hanseatic League*. As their trade acquired them immense wealth and power, so it rendered them haughty and insolent, which, with other concurring circumstances, at length brought on their ruin; for in the fifteenth century, the *Portuguese* perfected a new route to the *East-Indies* by the *Cape of Good Hope*; and about the same time the *Spaniards* discovered *America*, which threw the trade of *Europe* and its chief naval power into the hands of those nations, who, if they had known how to cultivate and use them with moderation, might not only have raised it higher, but made it more durable than it proved. But the boundless ambition, and cruel oppression of the *Spaniards*, animated the *United Provinces* to throw off their yoke, and engaged them and the *English* to share in those riches, which were the source of the *Spanish* power; and this gave rise to the maritime powers. The progress of the *Dutch* from this time, in commerce and naval power, was amazingly rapid; for in the space of about half a century, from having scarce any ships at all, they came to have more than all *Europe* together. Since that time, *Great Britain*, by extending her commerce and multiplying her colonies, has raised her maritime force to an equality, and now even to a great degree beyond the *Dutch*. The *French* too have for some years past not only raised a considerable maritime force, but extended their traffic into most parts of the world: for though the three last general wars, in a great measure, ruined their navy, yet we experienced by the last war, that they had greatly raised it again, and carried their commerce to a pitch beyond all apprehension; and, whatever disadvantages they lately sustained in either, they now seem to be in a fair way of retrieving them: so that the maritime affairs of *Europe* have in the last and present century suffered a very great change, though probably they may suffer a greater before the present century is expired. The like attention to commerce and maritime power has, within these sixty years, appeared in almost every other nation in *Europe*. The *Swedes* and *Danes* have set up *East India* companies, and the *Russians* have opened a new and beneficial traffic, as well on the *Caspian* as on the *Black Sea*. The house of *Austria* has shewed a great desire of reviving the ancient commerce of the Low Countries. The *Genoese* not long since have erected a company of assurances, to encourage their subjects to venture upon long voyages, and, if possible, to recover their ancient reputation, as a maritime power. Nay, even the *Spaniards* themselves, who, in this respect, have slept for such a number of years, have, at length, opened their eyes, and erected some companies, and established some capital manufactures for encouragement and extension of trade throughout their *European* and *American* dominions. Whence it is plain, that the navigation and shipping of the *Europeans* in general, are, within these last sixty years, greatly increased, and now in a very prosperous condition.



Superiority of  
one European  
nation over  
another by  
trade and na-  
val power.

a THAT nation which augments its commerce and maritime power to the greatest extent, bids fairest to give law to the rest. Thus, for instance, if the house of *Bourbon* should ever acquire as great a proportion of trade and naval power as either of the maritime powers, by which name they are at present distinguished, this would be an acquisition of much more consequence, than any they have hitherto made in point of territories or dominion. It is therefore, the interest of the maritime powers to sustain their characters in that respect at all events, since by this means only they can preserve their independency, protect their subjects wherever they may be settled or dispersed, and assist their allies, notwithstanding the efforts and ambitious designs of any aspiring neighbour. We need not wonder then at a common notion which prevails, as if we had a right to prescribe to some other nations the bounds of their naval greatness. What has been here said in relation to trade and commerce, may answer the end expected from it in an historical light, and enable us, in some measure, to judge of the nature, extent, and comparative strength of what is stiled maritime power. We see and know, that whatever state or power is possessed of an extensive commerce may have a proportionate naval force, the effects of which will render her considerable; yet it is requisite to know how this happens, and why the strength and dominion of a maritime power is firmer and more durable than that which arises from a great extent of territory, multitudes of subjects, or rich and fruitful countries.

c TRADE is certainly the strength and happiness of a nation, let the form of its government be what it will; because it introduces industry and arts, by which the manners of a people are civilized, even from the greatest savageness and brutality. Nor is it the number of subjects only, but the number of useful subjects, that is, trading subjects, that make a state powerful: for commerce introduces property, and without security in that respect, the inducements to pursue trade will flag; but with security, it will thrive and prosper, and wherever this security is thoroughly established, and wisely cherished and promoted, it will draw after it an inconceivable flux of people.

d HENCE we may easily assign the true causes of the long duration of republics renowned for their trade; such as *Tyre* and *Carthage* in ancient times, the *Venetians* and *Genoese* in later ages. It is almost impossible; that a nation active and industrious in commerce, and consequently rich and populous, and living under a mild government, should not exert a greater force when employed in attacking others, and have much greater resources in case of being attacked herself, than other states that are defective in those advantages: whence it will appear, how the states of *Holland* rose to such a vast power in so short a time, and how her subjects have been able to thrive and grow opulent under taxes and impositions, which must have beggared them in any other situation than that of a trading republic. Add to this, that trade quite changes the comparative strength of states and kingdoms, because, wherever it resides, it creates so many and so great advantages, and begets such relations and connections, as render a trading country infinitely superior to her neighbours who are differently circumstanced; for such a state, if on the continent, can fortify her great towns, so as to resist a power ten times stronger, in respect to people; she can maintain, if requisite, great numbers of regular troops, and on emergency hire more of her neighbours, besides what she may be able to do by the help of her maritime force. Hence arises that great strength, or real power, shewn by trading republics, when attacked either by ambitious princes, or even by powerful confederates. Thus the *Venetians* have often been too hard for the *Turks*; the *Genoese* for the most powerful princes in *Italy*; and, in earlier times, the *Lubeckers* for the greatest powers in the north. Hence the famous league of *Cambray*, which was formed for the destruction of the state of *Venice* in 1509, came to nothing, though the greatest princes of that time engaged in it, and though the *Venetians* themselves were guilty of some indiscretions, and though also they had been much exhausted by former wars. Thus in like manner, the famous confederacy between *France* and *Great-Britain* against *Holland* in 1672, proved abortive, though, at the first, even the *Dutch* themselves thought their affairs desperate; but their love of liberty animated them to exert themselves to the utmost, and their commerce furnished them with the means of getting tolerably out of the war. Nor has trade only a great influence on the particular affairs of nations separately considered, being almost the sole cause of a comparative difference in the strength of most of the powers of *Europe*, but is also of unspeakable advantage to the *European* quarter of the globe in general: it frees us from the apprehensions of being over-run by those barbarous empires which the *Mohammedan* religion has established in the world, and likewise brings us every thing that is rich and costly, every thing that is curious and estimable, even from the remotest quarters of the earth; so that to trade alone, all is due in this part of the world: in a word, it is to commerce that the people of *Europe* owe their freedom and independency, their learning and arts, their extensive colonies abroad, and their riches at home; and, above all, that naval power, which so much surpasses any thing of the same kind in other parts of the world, and whatever was attempted in that way in former ages.

THE



European balance of power.

THE reciprocal connections between nations resulting from trade, have quite altered the state of things, and produced, within these two or three centuries past, a kind of new system in *Europe*, by which every state is led to have a much greater concern than formerly for what may happen to another. In former ages, a quarrel in the north could only have affected the north, but in the last century things were totally altered. Both the *English* and *Dutch* sent fleets into the *Baltic*, upon the quarrel that happened between the *Swedes* and *Danes*, a little before the restoration of *Charles II.* Not long after this, the crown of *Sweden* became a contracting party in the famous triple alliance for maintaining the peace of *Europe*, preserving the *Spanish Low-Countries*, and setting bounds to the power of *France*. After the Revolution, towards the close of the reign of king *William*, both the maritime powers sent their fleets again into the *Baltic*, with the same view and the same success, and the like has been done more than once since. In all those cases the pretence was the love of justice, and a punctual performance of treaties, in which there was somewhat of truth; but the real design was, to prevent those inconveniences which must have befallen the maritime powers, if either *Sweden* or *Denmark* had been undone by those wars. May it not, therefore, be truly said, that the balance of power, in the strict sense of that phrase, was created by trade, and must continue to be the object more especially of trading countries, so long as they preserve their commerce and freedom? Whenever any power in *Europe*, therefore, attempts to oppress another, or betrays a design of increasing its own strength by weakening or conquering its neighbour, other potentates are ready to interpose; from a quick sense, not only of the inconveniences that must arise from the incroachments made by such a power, but from the just apprehensions that these must prove prejudicial to commerce in general, and to that of several nations in particular. Whence it appears, that the balance of power is not an empty name, or a chimerical thing, but a just and significant expression, though a new and figurative one: for the intention is, to preserve the several governments of *Europe* in their present condition, and prevent any in particular from acquiring such a measure of power, as may be dangerous or fatal to those reciprocal interests before observed; which, as they took rise from, are absolutely necessary to the continuance of commerce; as, indeed, any attempts thereupon must be felt by every nation that has a share of trade to preserve. Now, it follows, that it is the interest of all the powers of *Europe* to support each other's independency, and prevent whatever has the appearance of universal monarchy, or the introducing the influence of one court over the greatest part of the rest; because this must be detrimental to the whole, and injurious to the freedom, learning, arts, manufactures, and commerce of *Europe* in general. Without, therefore, urging more on this head, it appears, that peace and good neighbourhood, the encouragement of arts and sciences, and the pursuit of manufactures and commerce, as they are agreeable to the interest of every particular state, so they are best for the whole; and would contribute to render every particular country of *Europe* infinitely more populous, and the people in all countries much more happy, than any vain endeavours to aggrandize particular families at the expence of the human species.

As *Europe* is now the only part of the world that is justly renowned for being the emporium in which all the trade, as it were, of the other parts centers, it will not be improper to pass also in review its commercial correspondence with the other three parts particularly.

Commerce of Europe relatively to the other quarters of the world.

RESPECTING *Africa*, its inhabitants, *Egypt* excepted, being mostly barbarians, such as the *Moors* and *Mohammedans* on the north and north east part, and the *Ethiopians* on the north-east, or the mere savages and negroes of the south and west parts; they all take no great quantities of merchandizes from *Europe*: they take very little indeed, in comparison of the returns made to *Europe* in exchange. The *European* goods sent to *Africa* are such as the *Moors* of the coast on the south shores of the *Mediterranean* sea take off, which consist chiefly in some *English* and *French* woollen and linen manufactures, and great quantities of toys and baubles; in return for which, *Europe* receives from that side of *Africa* far more than an equivalent in corn, salt, almonds, wax, copper, and a large quantity of very valuable drugs. From the coast of *Africa*, on the side of the ocean west, and on the side of the *Indian* or *Ethiopian* seas east, *Europe* receives annually an immense treasure, either brought immediately to them, or carried by the *European* merchants in their own ships, and for their own account to *America* or elsewhere; and this is properly the *European* trade, and consists of gold, elephants teeth, slaves, and drugs. By these articles (the quantity and value of which is infinitely great, considering that a great part of them is procured by the exchange of mere toys and trifles, scarce worth naming) the balance of the commerce between *Europe* and *Africa* is greatly to the advantage of the former; and that so far, that it is mighty extraordinary and unaccountable that the several maritime nations of *Europe* do not extend that commerce to a far greater degree; which it is manifest might be done with the greatest ease, and to such a height as, perhaps, might equal all the present improvements by colonies and plantations in *America*, many of which are remote, dangerous,



a and unhealthy, liable to certain charge, to disaster, and miscarriage: whereas *Africa* is near hand, every way equal in fertility, superior in its productions, the trade safe, the country in many parts extremely healthy, the people tractable, and the returns immensely rich, and doublets abounding, if we could once carry our traffic into the center of this great and populous country, with an infinite variety of commercial articles, which the *Europeans*, at present, are absolutely strangers to. These particulars have been already discussed in our general account of *Africa*.

*AMERICA* is to be next considered with respect to *Europe*. This is often reckoned by far the largest country of the four into which the world is generally divided; and, if we may give credit to the measurement of some geographers, it is equal to the other three, b and beyond them all, perhaps, in its extent. And it is found, by the experience of commerce, to be infinitely beyond them all in its produce, either on its surface, or from its bowels; for as to manufactures, and the labour of the people, *America* being unimproved, and the people therein mostly unemployed, that part is not scarce begun: so that *Europe* and *Asia*, in this respect, go infinitely beyond it. What may be the consequence hereafter, we would not conjecture. As the land of *America* is the property of *Europe*, so is the commerce; and all the wealth of the country passes yearly away, like a tribute, to the several parts of *Europe* to which the various parts of *America* belong. And though it is true, that the wealth of *America* goes away as a tribute to *Europe*, yet it is also true, that it goes thither by way of commerce too, and in return for the manufactures of *Europe*, c which are sent to them in *America* for their supply. In a word, the *Europeans* receive the whole product of the country, and send the *Americans* in lieu thereof, a few cloaths to wear; and these very cloaths are chiefly for the use of the *Europeans* settled there for maintaining the possession as lords of the country; and who, having dispossessed the native inhabitants, and driven them into corners, rule them with a rod of iron, especially the *Spaniards*. The produce of *America* is a prodigy of wealth, immeasurable in its quantity, and inexpressible in its value. It consists chiefly of gold, silver, pearl, emeralds, hides of beasts, tobacco, sugar, cacao, cochineal, indigo, peltry, drugs, spice, cotton, dyers-woods, fish, and sundry other articles. These are returned to *Europe* in its proper divisions, thus: d the gold chiefly to *Portugal* from the *Brasils*, which is afterwards disseminated in the course of the *Portugal* trade, to divers other parts of *Europe*; the silver to *Spain*, from the shores of the *South-seas*, and from *Mexico* and *Peru*, which also is dispersed throughout the other parts of *Europe*, in the channels of the *Spanish* commerce. The fish from *Newfoundland* is sent to various parts of *Europe*; and the other articles, which are no inconsiderable object, are always disposed of to great profit by their respective proprietors. Upon the whole of this commerce, it is certain, that *Europe* also is the gainer, and that to an excess scarce to be conceived; the balance being so great in its favour, that it has, together with the *African* wealth, immensely enriched and aggrandized all the *European* nations that have any great concern in these capital branches of commerce.

*ASIA* is likewise a country extremely rich in its product, though in that respect, not to e be compared with either of the former two; but it is rendered so by the prodigious numbers, and inimitable diligence, industry, and application of its inhabitants, who are so circumstanced, that they call for little from any other part of the world; and they are so indefatigable, assiduous, and ingenious in the mechanic and manufactural arts, so amply supplied by nature with materials, and their workmanship is so extremely cheap, that they are able to fill the whole world with their manufactures and produce: by which means, the state of trade between *Europe* and *Asia* stands thus, as we have before, in some measure, observed, in treating of *Africa* in general. *Europe* calls for a vast variety of goods from *Asia*; great quantities of which are dispersed into *America* and *Africa*, by way of barter and exchange for the productions of these parts of the world; so that although a considerable part of the silver that comes from *America* is sent to *Asia* for their produce and f manufactures; yet, as silver is one of the plentiful productions of *America*, it is the same thing as the *American* bartering any other commodity for the *Asiatic* commodities, and therefore the trade of *Asia* cannot be so injurious to the wealth of *Europe*, as some have been wont to apprehend: for, let it be supposed, that every ounce of silver that was ever produced in *America* centered in *Europe*, and was in circulation, it is to be questioned whether *Europe* would be ever the richer; and the comparative state of the riches of these *European* nations who shared in the *American* silver, would be the same at it is at present: the labour and manufactures of these nations in *Europe* would be so much dearer in their reciprocal barter and exchanges of produce and manufactures with each other; which would g still keep up the same comparative equality, with respect to their riches. But if the riches of nations so much consist in the plenty of silver, as some are pleased to think, the immense quantity of wrought plate which is at present in *Europe*, demonstrates, that all the silver from *America* has not been sent to *Asia*: an immense quantity of it lies dead in



these articles; and it may, perhaps, be questioned, whether these nations would ever be the richer, if all the wrought plate among them was coined into money, and preserved as long as the course of trade would permit, in their commercial circulation. If the trade of *Asia* had, for a series of years, been so disadvantageous to *Europe*, as is by some suggested, it would certainly have greatly impoverished all these nations therein concerned, which does not appear to be the case: on the contrary, not only those who have been long interested in this trade, are zealous to preserve and encrease it, but new powers are daily struggling to obtain some share of it, which they would hardly do if they were not convinced, that this trade, upon the whole, is really beneficial to the respective potentates who are engaged in it. Add to this, that the peculiar policy of the *Asiatics*, in regard to the importation of silver from *Europe*, may deserve some consideration; for though silver is a commodity which they take partly in barter for their produce and manufactures, yet, if we are rightly informed, this silver is not coined into money, and kept in circulation: no, to prevent this, the princes and great men not only turn a great deal into wrought plate, but bury under ground immense quantities; whereby they effectually prevent its coming into their commercial circulation, and consequently, by that means, prevent a rise in all the necessaries, even luxuries of life, and thereby keep the price of labour always low and at a stand; so that by this policy they can afford to sell their produce and manufactures cheaper than any other nation whatsoever; besides, it is said, that such is the policy of several of the governments in the *East-Indies*, that their priests propagate a notion among the people, that the more silver they are possessed of, the happier they will be in a future state; which notion occasions the silver to be hoarded and buried, and thereby kept out of circulation to prevent any rise in the price of labour and commodities; and this is said to be the occasion of the surprising cheapness of all their produce and manufactures, when bought at first hand, in comparison to those of the richest *European* nations.

Observations  
on paper cir-  
culation, as  
relating to  
the premises.

If this principle, upon examination, should be found to be good policy, may not the great paper-circulation of the kingdom of *Great Britain* in particular, which is occasioned by our national debts and taxes, deserve serious consideration? For, if paper circulation, by authority, will answer the end of coined money, the more paper there is in circulation by way of transfer, or otherwise, the more money there is, in effect, in circulation; and if so, do not our debts and taxes, in this respect, as well as in others, contribute to keep up the price of labour, and render our produce and manufactures proportionably dearer than otherwise they would be? Can any thing, therefore, more importantly concern the interests of our commerce, than the exonerating us from our national debts, and, in consequence thereof, from the payment of those taxes, which are appropriated for the payment of the interest and principal? For when the whole debt shall be paid off, and all the paper effects thereby occasioned be annihilated, and consequently the public taxes abated, will not all merchandizes fall in their price? That this will prove the case, there are two reasons assignable; the first is, that when those paper effects, which have now the operation of money, are sunk, their operation must cease of course; for, as the value of commodities has risen by the increase of gold and silver within these 150 years, so would they of necessity fall in their price, if our gold and silver were considerably diminished; the consequence must be the same of that which has the operation of money. The second reason is very obvious; for goods that are taxed bear a price in proportion to the impost upon them. When they are free from this incumbrance, there can be no reason why they should not come to their natural value: for instance, if the duty on malt be sixpence per bushel, when this duty is taken off, malt of course, should be sixpence a bushel cheaper than before. The same must be said of all other commodities that are taxed.

THESE observations may give some idea of whatever is necessary to be considered in regard to *Europe* in general; but as they will more fully appear by descending to particulars, we shall now take a view of the different countries and states of *Europe*, proceeding from west to east, and beginning with *Spain*.

## C H A P. II.

### Of Spain.

Situation,  
boundaries,  
and extent of  
Spain.

*SPAIN* is situate on the most western part of all the continent of *Europe*, and is encompassed on every side by the sea, except on the side of *France*, from which it is separated by a continued ridge of mountains called the *Pyrenees*. On the east and south it is bounded by the *Mediterranean*, the streights of *Gibraltar*, and part of the *Atlantic-Ocean*; on the west by the same ocean; and on the north, by the sea called the bay of *Biscay*, and the *Pyrenees*. Its site is in the temperate zone, between the 36th and 44th degree



- a gree of north latitude, and consequently, under the sixth, seventh, and eighth climates; and in length it extends from the 10th degree of west to the 3d degree of east longitude, that is, 13 degrees from east to west, and 9 degrees from north to south.

THIS kingdom is divided into fourteen provinces, viz. *Galicia, Asturias, Biscay, Navarre, Arragon, Catalonia, Valencia, New-Castille, Old-Castille, Leon, Estramadura, Andalusia, Granada, and Murcia.*

*Divisions.*

- b THE soil of *Spain* has been misrepresented as dry and barren by several writers, who appear to have had no knowledge of it. We may even affirm, that its most mountainous and barren parts do produce something for use. Some are covered with stately trees of several sorts, either for timber or fuel. The rocky parts abound with wild thyme, marjoram, and other aromatic herbs, which serve to feed a vast number of sheep and goats; and give their milk and flesh a more exquisite flavour than any which are fed on the richest pastures; and if these happen to be scorched with too much heat in summer, the cattle are driven down to the sides of the hills, where they find plenty of those herbs, and meadow grounds well watered by the great number of rivers with which the country abounds; so that at the worst, they never want a sufficient quantity of herbage to supply their numerous flocks. Other mountainous and rocky lands produce quantities of a famed plant called by them *esparto*, of which they make all kinds of ropes and other cordage. The *Spanish* wheat is inferior to none, if not the very best in *Europe*, and the common product of it more than the natives can consume. Their barley is very good, and in such plenty, that it is the common grain for their horses and mules, instead of oats, which are here very scarce; and the straw of it serves them likewise instead of hay, of which they make hardly any throughout the kingdom. Wine they likewise have in such abundance, that the poorest people drink it; and few are unacquainted with the goodness and great variety of it. As for fruits, they not only have the different sorts in much higher perfection, which either naturally grow, or which we cultivate with so much pains here in *England*, but likewise many others, which, with all our art, cannot be brought by us to any tolerable ripeness, and with which we are more easily supplied from them. The same may be said of their herbs, flowers, and medicinal plants, which, though excellent in their kinds, grow most of them wild here, when, in other places, they could not be produced without great art and industry.

*Soil and produce.*

- d THEIR oil, wax, and honey, are allowed to be as good as any in the world. Few countries exceed this for plenty, goodness, and variety of fowl, both wild and tame; and of four-footed game, as deer, both red and fallow, hares, rabbits, and particularly wild boars. As for their tame swine, those who have had experience of it, allow that the *Spanish* bacon exceeds even that of *Westphalia*. Their sheep are most exquisite in taste, but they are still more valuable for their incomparable wool, which exceeds any in *Europe*. Above all, we must not forget their horses, greatly famed for their exceeding celerity. The *Spaniards* were from the earliest ages very curious in their breeding of good horses, and very dexterous in the use and management of them, especially in the field. As for the other services of that useful creature, such as carrying, drawing, plowing, they have great numbers of mules, which seem much better fitted by nature for such drudgery, as well as for going over the most craggy and mountainous parts of the country; being both larger, stronger, and surer-footed, than the horses, though nothing so swift. Many of them are sixteen, and some even seventeen hands high, and carry very heavy burdens over such rocky parts, and with such ease and steadiness, as is quite astonishing to those who are not accustomed to them.

*Other valuable articles and commodities for which Spain is remarkable.*

- e THE silken manufacture is at present so encouraged in *Spain*, that we are told above a million of people are employed in feeding, gathering, and curing silk-worms, and in spinning, weaving, and making all kinds of silks. The same may be said of their cotton, hemp, and flax, which likewise grow here in large quantities, and employ a proportionable number of hands; not to mention their scarlet dye, saffron, sugar, pitch, rosin, and other commodities that grow above ground.

*Silk and other manufactures.*

- f IF we dive into the bowels of the earth, we shall find gold, silver, quicksilver, (which latter they send in large quantities into the *West-Indies*) lead, copper, and excellent iron, the best of which is dug from the mountains of *Biscay*, and is sent all over *Europe*, as exceeding any other in goodness. They have also great plenty of sulphur, allum, calamine, and other minerals; as likewise of jet, agate, cornelian, granate, crystal, marble, alabaster, jasper, and other stones. As to their gold mines, it must be owned, that they have quite neglected them ever since they have been able to draw such immense quantities of that metal from *America*. But anciently they had it in as great plenty, or much greater, out of their own.

*Mines, minerals, &c.*

- g THE healthfulness of this country may be gathered, not only from its excellent situation and serene sky, but likewise from the stoutness and longevity of its antient inhabitants,

*Salubrity of the air.*



bitants, whilst they gave themselves up to a habit of exercise and temperance; in which a  
last they always did, and do still excel all other nations in *Europe*.

HAVING thus far run through all that need be said in general concerning this country, we shall now take a view of it, with respect to each of its particular kingdoms and provinces, in the same order as we have before ranged them.

Province of  
Galicia.

THE kingdom of *Galicia* is washed on the west by the ocean, on the north by the *Cantabrian-Sea*, or *Bay of Biscay*; on the east it borders upon *Asturias* and *Leon*, and on the south upon *Portugal*, from which it is parted next the sea by the river *Minho*. This small kingdom produces wheat, millet, all kinds of herbs, plenty of cattle, especially hogs, whose bacon far exceeds that of *Westphalia*; strong mules, good horses, though not large; but it is most famed for its noble wines, particularly that of *Ribadavia*. It has, besides, b  
plenty of firing, and of timber for building houses and ships, with quarries of fine marble, and some flax, of which a pretty good sort of linen is made.

Corunna:

CORUNNA in this province, called by our seamen the *Groyne*, is a famed ancient seaport, on the *Bay of Biscay*. By its situation, it is well fenced against the winds, and against the enemy, by two strong castles. It stands between the two famed promontories of *Finisterre* and *Ortegal*, and is wealthy, being a place of considerable trade.

Province of  
Asturias.

THE principality of *Asturias* lies on the north-side along the *Bay of Biscay*, and borders on the west on *Galicia*; on the south it is divided from *Castille* and *Leon* by a ridge of mountains, called the *Asturian* mountains; on the coast it reaches to the port *Llanes*, now *Santillana*, where it joins a narrow slip of land belonging to *Old Castille*, which runs into the sea between *Asturias* and *Biscay*. The whole length of *Asturias* is about 135 miles, and breadth 60; and it is generally divided into two parts or districts, the one called *Asturias de Oviedo*, and the other *Santillana*. But it is farther subdivided into seven merindades, or liberties, besides a little province called *Lieba*, about twenty-seven miles long, and twelve broad. It is one of the most craggy and mountainous parts of *Spain*, excessive high, and almost inaccessible. The mountains are called *Europæ*, and are in full front of the sea, but produce plenty of corn, wine, fruit, cattle, and game. This country gives a title to the eldest son of *Spain*, who is stiled, Prince of the *Asturias*. c

Province of  
Biscay.

THE lordship of *Biscay*, as generally taken, is divided into three parts, viz. *Biscay*, properly so called, *Guipuscoa*, and *Alava*. The whole is bounded on the west by that slip of *Old-Castile* which reaches to the sea; the ridge of the *Asturian* mountains branching from the *Pyrenees*, parts it from *Old-Castile* on the south-east, as the same mountains do again from *Navarre*, and the river *Cidaro* from *France* on the east; and all the north-side is washed by the *Cantabrian-Sea*, called commonly the *Bay of Biscay*. The country is mountainous and barren, scarce producing any thing but timber for shipping, millet feed, and fruit, of which last cyder is made in plenty; but its greatest treasure lies in its inexhaustible mines of iron, which is reckoned the best in the world, and is transported thence into all parts. Here are whole towns where all sorts of iron-works are carried on, especially swords and fire-arms, very elegant, and in great quantities. *Bilbao*, in *Biscay-Propre*, though no city, is now the capital of *Biscay*, being a place of great trade, by reason of its good port, small vessels coming up to the mole, and others of greater bulk lying farther out. The greatest export here is of the fine wool brought mostly from *Old Castille*, and of exquisite iron chiefly in bars. The town stands six miles distant from the sea, on the river *Ibaichaval*. *St. Sebastian*, in the district of *Guipuscoa*, is another noted port on the *Bay of Biscay*, nine miles from *Fuentarabia*, and almost inclosed with rivers, which fall into the sea in its neighbourhood, particularly that which they call the *Branco*. The mole will receive 200 ships. d

Bilbao and  
St. Sebastian.

Province of  
Navarre.

THE kingdom of *Navarre* is divided from *France* on the north by the *Pyrenees*, which also cut it into two parts, distinguished into *Upper* and *Lower*; the former, much the larger, is on the *Spanish* side, and belongs to that crown; the other beyond these mountains, is annexed to the crown of *France*. *Spanish Navarre* borders upon *Biscay* and *Old Castille* on the west, on *Castille* and *Aragon* on the south, and eastward upon *Aragon*. Its length is about ninety miles from north to south, and about eighty in breadth from east to west. It is divided into the five districts of *Pampelona*, *Tudela*, *Estela*, *Olite*, and *Sanguessa*, which are parted by prodigious high mountains, yet yield good corn, and other grain, wine, oil, honey, fruits, and herbs, and afford plenty of food and pasture for their cattle, besides an infinite number of fowl both wild and tame. These mountains produce metals and minerals, and had formerly several rich mines of gold and silver, though now either exhausted or neglected. Here are likewise abundance of fine springs, hot baths, and other medicinal waters. e

Province of  
Aragon.

THE kingdom of *Aragon* is bounded on the north by the *Pyrenees*, which divide it from *France*; on the west it has *Navarre*, and *New* and *Old-Castille*; on the south the kingdom of *Valentia*, and the principality of *Catalonia*. The whole length from north to south is 210 miles, and breadth between 100 and 120. The country is mountainous, but full of delightful g



- a delightful and extraordinary fertile vales, which produce great plenty of wheat, wine, oil, saffron, and fruits of the most delicious kind. It also breeds great numbers of cattle, and abounds with all sorts of fowl both wild and tame. The mountains are said to have mines of gold, silver, and other metals, but little is made of any of them, except iron. Here are likewise very considerable rivers, and plenty of good fish: the most remarkable of the rivers is the *Turio*, which fertilizes a great part of the country, not by an overflow like that of the *Nile*, but by its slow and gentle course, which gives opportunity to the husbandmen and gardeners to cut channels from it to water their lands, insomuch that we are told, their trees will bear fruits three, and often four times a year; and not only in great plenty, but in such variety, that they reckon no less than 400 sorts produced in this kingdom.
- b Their orchards, gardens, and pasture-grounds, are likewise much admired for their continual verdure and fertility. In a word, *Arragon* is on all these accounts, as well as for the extraordinary serenity of its air, compared to *Egypt*. The *Mediterranean* helps very much to enrich the country, both by foreign traffic and the great quantity of fish which is caught on those coasts.

*SARAGOSSA*, the metropolis of this kingdom, is an ancient and opulent city, seated almost in the heart of it, on the bank of the *Ebro*, and in a fertile and delightful plain, watered with three other rivers, the *Xalon*, *Gallego*, and *Guerva*. It is of an oblong form, is rich and populous, and carries on a great commerce, with a considerable number of trades and manufactures both within and without the walls. Saragossa.

- c *CATALONIA* is bounded on the north by the *Pyrenees*, by which it is parted from the province of *Roussillon* in *France*, on the west by *Arragon*, and a small part of *Valencia*; from the first of these it is separated by the rivers *Naguera* and *Mataruna*, and a ridge of hills, and from the latter by the river *Genia*. On the south and east it is washed by the *Mediterranean*, and has many convenient sea-ports along those shores. The inland is a mixture of plains and mountains; that part next to *France* is the most mountainous, but further in, it abounds with delightful and spacious plains. The climate which reaches from 41 to 43 degrees of north latitude, and from one degree to 30. 20. east longitude, is therefore neither so hot as *Andalusia*, nor so cold as *Asturia* and the north part of *Spain*, being moreover sheltered on the north by the *Pyrenees*, and on the east by the sea. This temperature, joined to the many streams and rivers with which the country abounds, makes it exceeding fertile and delightful. Its products are much the same with those of *Arragon*, besides quarries of marble, alabaster, and jasper stone, coral taken out of the sea, salt, and many other commodities. Province of Catalonia.
- d

- BARCELONA* is the capital of this province, and is inferior to few in *Europe* that are not courts of princes. It is pleasantly seated on the *Mediterranean* coasts, a little below the gulph of *Lyons*, and opens to the sea in a beautiful semicircle, which, together with its eminence and castle, and the beauty of its churches and other sumptuous edifices, affords a most delightful prospect to the ships that sail by or to it, especially as it stands between two considerable rivers, the *Lobregat* and *Bezes*, which pay their tribute to that sea on each side of it. The coast it stands upon is a good safe road, and the port, though rather too small, has rendered it a place of great trade, especially when *Indian* commodities were brought from *Turkey* and *Egypt* through the *Mediterranean*. Its situation is on a spacious plain, at the foot of the mountain *Monjuyque*; and its territory is stored with all necessaries for sustenance and delight. This province has also some other towns and cities of considerable note, as *Tartagona* commodiously situate near the coast of the *Mediterranean*, with a safe harbour for small ships; *Tortosa*, situate on the bank of the *Ebro*, not far from the sea, with a good bay formed by that river; *Vicque*, pleasantly situated, thirty-six miles north from *Barcelona*, in a kind of peninsula made by the rivers *Ter* and *Naguerra*, which almost encompass it; and *Cardona*, sixty miles distant from *Barcelona*, and remarkable for a mountain of salt near it, which yields an annual revenue of 30,000 pieces of eight. This salt is transparent, and, when powdered, is exceeding white. All these places enjoy a very fertile and delightful territory. Barcelona.
- e
- f
- Other places of note.

- THE kingdom of *Valentia* lies on the east, along the *Mediterranean*, facing the islands of *Majorca* and *Ivica*, except only a small part towards *Catalonia*, which is parted from it by the river *Genia*; on the north it has the kingdom of *Arragon*; on the west *New Castille* and *Murcia*, and the small tract of it which runs towards the south, bordering also upon the kingdom of *Murcia*. The greatest length of *Valentia* is about 210 miles, and its greatest breadth about 48. The whole kingdom is so delightful as to be compared to an earthly paradise, being universally allowed to be the most charming part of *Spain*, and by many even of all the world. The surprizing excellence of its soil and climate is the cause that the whole country is filled with noblemen's and gentlemen's seats; and where the land is not employed for the purposes of pleasure, it produces immense plenty of corn, wine, oil, Province of Valentia.
- g



honey, flax, and all kind of herbage; also flowers and fruit in great variety, the trees being always covered with verdure and blossoms. To all which we may add, that the sugar, rice, and silk it produces, one year with another, is reckoned to amount to three millions of pieces of eight. The mines of gold, silver, and other metals, besides great quantity and variety of precious stones, which here formerly amounted to an immense value, are now wholly neglected. Here is also abundance of alum, the best and finest white lime, and plenty of cochineal.

Valentia.

*VALENTIA*, the noble and ancient capital of this kingdom, is seated on the shady banks of the river *Turio*, over which it has five stately bridges, and stands about two miles from the sea. It lies in 39 degrees 20 minutes of north latitude, and about 15 minutes east longitude. Its distance from *Madrid*, the present metropolis of *Spain*, is about 180 miles south-east; from *Barcelona*, south-west, about the same number; and south from *Saragossa* about 135. Its sea-port, named *Grao*, which stands on the *Mediterranean*, about a mile and a half from the city, furnishes it with every thing either for conveniency or delight, the sea supplying it with an extraordinary variety of fish, the neighbouring lake of *Albufera*, or little sea, with great abundance of water fowl and fresh water fish; and the fertile country about with the greatest plenty of corn, wine, oil, fruits, herbs, and other provisions. It is enriched by the number of quality and gentry which live in it, by its great commerce, and the variety of manufactures that are carried on, especially the woollen, so that the cloth that is made here is reckoned the finest in all *Spain*.

Alicant.

*ALICANT* is another famous city of this kingdom, and a sea-port on the *Mediterranean*, distant from *Murcia*, towards the north-east, forty-two miles, sixty south from *Valentia*, and about 210 from *Madrid*. It is a place of great trade by reason of its commodious harbour, and well known to the *English*, for its delicate wines and delicious fruits.

Province of  
New Castille.

THE kingdom of *New Castille* is bounded on the north by *Old Castille*, from which it is every way divided by mountains, which are only known by the names of the countries they run through. On the east it is parted from *Estramadura*, by another chain of them called *Guadalupe* and *La Sarena*; on the south from *Andalusia* by those called *Sierra Morcna*, and by an imaginary line from *Murcia*; and on the west by the river *Segura*, and the mountains of *Almanza* and *Requena* from *Valentia*; and from *Aragon* by those of *Maya*, *Daroka*, and *Molina*. The length of this kingdom from south to north is about 180 miles, and pretty near the same in breadth, where widest, but its figure is irregular in the latter. The country being all inland, and surrounded with such high mountains, which contract the sun's rays, as it were, into a focus, and at the same time suppress the free passage of the cooling sea-breezes, its climate is consequently hotter in summer, and colder in winter, than those which lie along the sea-coasts, under the same latitude. It is notwithstanding very healthy, and its soil generally fertile.

Madrid.

*MADRID* is the capital of this kingdom, and at present of all *Spain*. It is situated on a chain of little hills, surrounded with high mountains, and is about seven miles in circumference, without walls or fortifications, but containing several grand streets and spacious squares. There are three royal palaces here, called the *Palace Royal*, the *Casa del Campo*, and the *Buen Retiro*. The other places of considerable note in *New Castile* are,

Toledo.

*TOLEDO*, built on a high, steep, and craggy rock, almost inaccessible on all sides, and made much more so by the course of the river *Tagus*, which encompasses it almost round, and over which it has two noble bridges. Here are a great number of merchants, tradesmen, and artificers, especially in the silk and woollen manufactures, which two branches alone are said to employ 10,000 hands. *Toledo* is about thirty-six miles distant from *Madrid*.

Talavera.

*TALAVERA de la Reyna* is delightfully seated on the river *Tagus*, thirty-six miles west from *Toledo*, and is much famed for its woollen manufacture of stuffs, and particularly for an extraordinary kind of fine earthen ware that is made at it.

Province of  
Old Castille.

THE kingdom of *Old Castille* was formerly part of the *Roman Tarraconensis*, and borders all the way on the south to *New Castille*, from which it is divided by a ridge of mountains, which change their names according to the places of note they pass through, as *Molina*, *Siguencia*, *Segovia*, &c. by that chain of them which is called *Sierra de Tablada*, and by those of *Pico* and *Banos*, from *Estramadura*, on the west; and by those of *Avala* and *Pernia*, with the little rivers of *Carrion*, *Pisuerga*, and *Heban*, from *Leon* on the north-west. It is parted again on the north from *Asturias* and *Biscay* by another ridge of hills branching out from the *Pyrennees*; only in the center, between these two provinces, it has a narrow slip of land which reaches quite to the *Bay of Biscay*; lastly, on the east, the *Ebro* and mountains of *Doea*, for a considerable length, part it from *Navarre* and *Aragon*. The greatest extent of this province from north to south, reaches from 40. 10. to 43. 15. degrees of latitude, and from 1. 30. to 4. 10. degrees of west longitude; that is, about 180 miles, and near about the same number from east to west; that is, both ways taken where largest, for its figure



a figure is very irregular, and not near answerable in other parts. The climate here differs somewhat from that of *New Castille*, on account of the country being more mountainous, which makes the several parts vary, according to their situation, the vallies being excessive hot, and the upper grounds proportionably cold and bleak; but, upon the whole, the soil is generally good. Snow covers the tops of the mountains here all the summer, and it is carried away and sold in the towns, as is usual through all *Spain*, to cool their wine.

*VILLADOLID*, in this kingdom, stands on the bank of the river *Pisuerga*, on a pleasant rising ground, and yields a noble prospect by this its fine situation and grand edifices. It is both populous and opulent by means of the woollen manufacture, which is here the best and most considerable in all *Spain*.

b THE kingdom of *Leon*, properly so called, is now bounded by the *Asturian* mountains; on the east it has *Old Castille*, from which it is divided by the mountains of *Pernia*, and the rivers *Carrio* and *Pisuerga*, as far as the *Ebro*, then by those of *Ileban* and *Reganno*, till you come to the mountains *Bonilla de la Sierra*; on the south, the mountains of *Banos*, and another ridge, divide it from *Estramadura*; and on the west, the rivers of *Agueda*, *Duero*, and a chain of mountains part it from *Portugal*, as does the same ridge of hills continued from *Galicia*. The whole extent of *Leon* from north to south is about 120 miles, and from east to west about ninety. The river *Duero* runs almost cross the middle of it, leaving one half on the north, and the other on the south. As this kingdom lies in the same climate and latitude with that of *Old Castille*, to which it is contiguous, and is, like it, intermingled with ridges of high hills, capacious vallies, and champain plains, which occasion pretty near the same degrees of heat and cold, dry and moist; its soil and temperature differ very little from it. The natives are here also robust, hardy, laborious, brave, temperate, and lovers of learning. The mountains have some minerals, but chiefly quarries of excellent marble and veined alabaster, jasper stones, and some others of greater value, as turquoises, garnets, amethysts, and the like.

Province of  
Leon.

c THE province of *Estramadura* is divided from *Portugal*, or from the *Portuguese Estramadura*, on the west, by the rivers *Ehya*, *Caya*, and some others of less note; on the north it joins to the kingdom of *Leon*, without any noted mountains or rivers to part them; on the east the mountains of *Banos*, *Pico*, and *Guadalupe*, divide it from *Old* and *New Castille*; and on the south, it is parted from *Andalusia* by the chain of hills called *Sierra Morena*.

Province of  
Estramadura.

d The rivers *Tajo* and *Guadiana*, running through it from east to west, divide it into three parts; the most northern is that which is beyond the *Tajo*; the next is between that and the *Guadiana*, and the last is that which is south of the *Guadiana*. The length of the whole province from north to south, is 150 miles; and breadth from east to west about 120. The climate indeed is extremely hot and somewhat sultry, being mostly inland, and wanting those cooling gales which the hills and sea communicate to the adjacent provinces; but in all other respects, it may be justly reckoned the pleasantest and most fertile not only in all *Spain*, but perhaps in the world. For an evidence of which we need but instance in the celebrated plain called *La Vera de Plasencia*, of which it might suffice to say, that several of the ancients placed the *Elysian* fields in it, as knowing of no place more delicious and beautiful. This noble plain is about thirty-six miles in length, and ten in breadth, and so sweetly delightful, that it invites great numbers of nobility and gentry to spend the summer in it. It has thirteen small towns or villages, and about 5000 houses, all beautifully situated, and neat, and all the rest is either covered with the greatest variety of fruit-trees which *Europe* affords, or beautifully variegated and disposed into olive-groves, vineyards, gardens, orchards, meadows, and fields, watered with many pleasant springs and streams. Such is, in fine, the product of this valley, that of the territory of only four inconsiderable villages, out of the thirteen that are in it, the product is said to have amounted in one year to 150 tons of oil, 550 of wine, 60,000 bushels of chefnuts, an incredible quantity of wheat and other grain; whilst other parts of it yielded not only the like, or even larger quantities in proportion, of the same produce, besides fruits, flax, &c. and likewise abundance of silk, wax, honey, saffron, besides pasture, and great numbers of cattle.

e THE province of *Andalusia* is divided, on the north, from *Estramadura* and *New Castille*, by the *Sierra Morena* mountains; on the east, from *Portugal* by the river *Chanca*, and from *Algarve* by the *Guadiana*; on the south it has the ocean, the mouth of the *Streights*, and part of the *Mediterranean*; and along the south-east it has the kingdom of *Granada*. No province in *Spain* exceeds this in fertility and commerce, and the latter is owing to its maritime situation and convenient harbours. Its great quantity of wine and oil is so extraordinary, as to be almost beyond credit. Its cattle also are numberless. Fine oranges, citrons, raisins, almonds, pomegranates, and figs, are the natural growth of this province. To all these articles we may add its great plenty of fine salt and sugar, and an excellent breed of horses.

Province of  
Andalusia.

f *SEVILLE*, its capital, is situate on the river *Guadalquivir*, and in one of the most beautiful

Seville.  
tiful



tiful plains of *Europe*. Here is an *India* house for the regulation of their *West-India* trade, a fine exchange, and mint. Silk and silver stuffs are its most considerable manufactures, with those of soap and pottery ware. Without the city are salt-pits and quarries of marble. Along the river are many commodious keys, where ships of good burden may safely lie. *San Lucar de Barameda*, about forty-five miles below *Seville*, serves it as a port. It was much more considerable than at present, before the *Spanish West India* fleets were allowed to set out from and return to

Cadiz.

*CADIZ*, which is next in rank to the royal cities. Its situation for commerce is very advantageous, the spaciousness of the harbour, seated upon the ocean so near the *Mediterranean*, drawing thither a concourse of ships and merchants, to purchase the products of *Spain*, and, not long since, of the *West-Indies*, which are now first brought to this place. There are in this province several other cities and towns of considerable note for trade and manufactures.

Province of Granada.

THE kingdom of *Granada* is divided on the north, from the province of *Andalusia*, by the mountains of *Cazorla*, *Sierra Morena*, *Segura*, and some others; on the east, another chain of mountains divides it from *Murcia*; on the south it is contiguous again to *Andalusia*, without any noted boundaries; and on the west it is bounded and washed by the *Mediterranean*. The whole length of it from east to west, is about 210 miles, but the greatest breadth exceeds not 72. This country, besides those immense quantities of corn, wine, oil, fruit, cattle, game and fish, which it has in common with the finest provinces in *Spain*, can boast that its most craggy mountains are every where covered with vines, fruit-trees in the highest perfection, and what would to some appear incredible, if not attested by several undoubted eye-witnesses, that many of its bunches of grapes, like those of the Promised Land, are obliged to be carried on a pole between two men; and some of them, we are assured from persons of veracity, have weighed forty pounds. Sugar is likewise cultivated here in great plenty, and exceeds any in *Spain* for fineness; and silk is manufactured in such quantities and great variety, as to be sufficient to serve the whole kingdom, besides what is exported. Those fields, hills, and other places, which are reckoned the most barren, are covered with thyme, marjoram, lavender, and all other sorts of aromatic herbs and odoriferous shrubs; so that if we consider this province either with respect to its surprising fertility and plenty of all things for food and delight, or to the admirable prospect of its hills and dales, or the fragrantcy of its fruits and herbs, no country seems to approach nearer to the idea we have of an earthly paradise than this. If we add to all these, its excellent maritime situation, number of commodious harbours and ports, and its vast exports and imports, the number and opulence of its cities, of which *Malaga* is the chief, we shall easily own that this little kingdom is one of the noblest and finest in all *Spain*. Near *Antequera*, in this province, is a famed salt-pit, three miles in length and near two in breadth, which supplies the whole territory with salt. About eight or nine miles from it is a spring, that dissolves the stone, and brings it away by urine.

Province of Murcia.

THE kingdom of *Murcia* borders on the north upon *New Castille*, on the west it is parted from *Granada* and *Andalusia* by the mountains of *Segura*, and some others, which stretch themselves into the sea, and partly by the kingdom of *Valentia*. Its greatest length from north-west to south east, is about 100 miles, and its greatest breadth, from north-east to south-west, about 70. Its climate is somewhat of the hottest; but the soil, though mountainous, is exceeding fertile, never failing but through extreme drought. But what makes its chief wealth is the great quantity of silk which is here made and exported, and employs the greatest number of hands. Round about the spacious and delightful plain, in which its capital of the same name is situate, are planted an infinite number of mulberry trees, with the leaves of which the inhabitants feed as many worms as generally make every year 210,000 lb. weight of silk.

Carthagena.

*CARTHAGENA*, in this province, is seated on the side of a hill, on the *Mediterranean* coast, on the mouth of the river *Guadalatin*, and is a commodious, as well as one of the most noted sea-ports in *Spain*. The harbour is well sheltered from storms by a small island called *Escombrada*. There is good plenty of fresh water on the shore, and the air here is so temperate in summer, and so mild in winter, that the trees are every where covered with leaves, blossoms, and fruit. Besides these productions of the earth on the surface, its bowels yield amethysts, garnets, agates, and other such precious stones.

History of Spain.

WE shall now pass from the description of *Spain* to its history, and in this respect, it will not be improper to observe, that the *Roman* empire in this country lasted something more than 400 years after the commencement of the christian æra, and that the *Spanish* history is connected with the *Roman* for near 600, till that empire was utterly extinct. The *Goths* entered about the year 400. *Himeric*, with the *Suevi* and *Alans*, conquered *Galicia*, about the year 308. These *Suevi*, who gave name to *Galicia*, subdued *Portugal* about the year 464. *Requina*, the son of *Himeric*, conquered *Biscay*, *Andalusia*, and took *Saragossa* and



<sup>a</sup> and *Tarragona* in 488. *Recaredo* was king of *Spain* in 587, and called a Cortes, at which prelates, as well as secular lords, assisted, and granted aids to the crown. After him came *Witteric*, to whom succeeded *Gundemar*, in 610. *Sisenando* was chosen king in 631, and called a Cortes at *Toledo*. The *Moors* entered *Spain* about the year 680, consequently the Gothic government did not last 300 years. *Tarif Abenzarca* came in 713.

<sup>b</sup> THE three principal northern nations which came here were the *Vandals*, from whom the province of *Andalusia* received its name; the *Vandals* went afterwards into *Africa*; the *Suevi*, who remained long in *Galicia*; and the *Goths*, who conquered the whole country, and held it upwards of 200 years. The *Goths* possessed the whole continent of *Spain*, *Mauritania* in *Africa*, and *Gallia Gothica*, or that part of *France* which is now corruptly called *Languedoc*; but in their turn they gave place to the *Moors* or *Arabs*, whose dominion ceased when *Pelayo* was established in his throne. The *Moors* conquered all *Spain*, except those mountainous parts, whither some bodies of resolute Christians fled for refuge. These by degrees planned and concerted measures to shake off the *Arabic* yoke. The first stand made against them was made by the mountaineers of *Asturias*, who elected king the infant don *Pelayo*, swearing the nobles over a shield, and crying out, *real! real!* This *Pelayo* was a Gothic prince by birth, so that in some measure he restored again the Gothic monarchy. He recovered *Gijon* and *Leon*; and his son got possession of part of *Portugal*, and of all *Galicia*. From this recovery of *Leon* came the race of the kings of *Oviedo* and *Leon*. The boldness and success of these Christians alarming the *Arabs*, they attacked them in their different strongholds, in order to cut off their communications one with another. But this produced a very different effect from what they expected. The Christians, to repel the danger that threatened them on every side at the same time, chose different heads in different places, who being separate one from the other in their governments, defended their subjects independently of one another. This necessary resolution gave rise to the different kingdoms in *Spain*. Such was their undoubted origin, though it is impossible to say at what exact period each kingdom rose, as there are no ancient monuments remaining sufficient to prove that point.

<sup>c</sup> THE first kingdom or monarchy that arose, after the *Moorish* invasion, was that, as we have said, of don *Pelayo* in the *Asturias*, an elective monarchy; and in proportion as the *Asturian* princes dislodged the *Saracens* of those lands and territories that lay nearest to them, they changed the style of their titles; being first called kings of *Asturias*, then of *Oviedo*, and lastly of *Leon* and *Galicia*, until they were incorporated with the kings of *Castille*, by the marriage of queen donna *Sancho Isabella*, sister of king don *Bermudo* III. its last prince, both of them descendants of king don *Alonzo* V. who married the daughter of *Ferdinand the Great*, to whom some give the title of emperor, and who was first king of *Castille*.

OF this long period, in which the Christian princes gained such glorious successes, and singular victories over the infidels, there are some short and obscure accounts in the little chronicles of don *Alonzo* III. king of *Leon*, surnamed *the Great*, and of *Alveda*, *Sampiro*, and don *Pelayo*.

<sup>e</sup> AT the same time with these *Asturian* princes, arose many nobles, who signed their deeds and instruments, with the title of counts or princes, and, among others, those of *Castille*, which state arrived at sovereignty in the time of the great count *Fernan Gonzales*, by his heroic valour, glorious triumphs, and extended power. The most distinguished prince of this house was don *Sancho Garcia*, whose violent death was the cause why this house united itself to the crown of *Aragon* and *Navarre*, by the marriage of the princess donna *Sancho* his sister, with the king don *Sancho Mayor*, whose second son don *Fernando* raised *Castille* into a kingdom. *Castille* afterwards became an hereditary crown in his lineage, in preference to all the other kingdoms, though inferior in origin to *Aragon* and *Navarre*.

<sup>f</sup> THE series and chronology of the several counts is much contested between the *Spanish* writers, *Arredondo*, *Arevalo*, *Sandoval*, and others: a dispute not worth our entering into, since it is certain, that from the bravery, success, and power with which don *Fernando* extended his dominion, so as to be stiled first king of *Castille*, his kingdom became so famous, that all the *Moorish* princes acknowledged him for their sovereign. His son was don *Alonzo* VI. his grand-daughter was the queen donna *Urraca*, with whom ended the barony of *Navarre*; the crown of *Castille* falling back again into the house of the counts of *Burgundy* (who came from the kings of *Italy*) by her marriage with the count don *Raymund*, her first husband; from which match came their son the great emperor don *Alonzo* VII.

<sup>g</sup> THIS prince left his estates divided between his two sons: to don *Sancho*, the eldest, whose great virtues and untimely death gained him the name of the *Regretted*, he left the kingdom of *Castille*, and part of *Leon*: and to don *Ferdinand*, the second, the rest of *Leon*, *Galicia*, and *Asturias*. He took upon himself the title of king of *Spain*, pretending that the primogeniture of the *Goths*, which was re-established in *Pelayo*, had centered in himself.



DON *Sancho* dying, was succeeded by don *Alonzo the Noble*, one of the greatest princes a of his time. It was he who gained the famous battle in the plains of *Toledo* over the *Moors*, destroying, as some *Spanish* historians say, 200,000 of them at one time; but this number must be exaggerated. He dying without issue-male, the two kingdoms of *Castille* and *Toledo* went to donna *Berenguela*, his eldest daughter.

ALTHOUGH the royal barony of *Burgundy* ended in the queen donna *Berenguela*, it returned and united with the kingdom of *Leon*, *Galicia*, and *Asturias*, by the marriage of king don *Alonzo*, her uncle (who succeeded in those kingdoms to king don *Fernando*, brother to king don *Alonzo the Noble*, her grandfather) from which match came the king *Sn. Fernando*, from whom descended, without interruption, the kings of *Castille* and *Aragon*, until united in *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*. That king was reputed the wisest prince of his time, and his queen was really the wisest of her sex in that age. It was his policy b that made the kings of *Spain* great; it was her virtue that made the crown so.

THERE were three things that fell out under their reigns, which entirely altered the face of affairs in *Spain*, and thereby changed the system of *Europe*. The first was the junction of the crowns of *Castille* and *Leon*, with the dominions that belonged to each of them; and this was brought about by their marriage. The second was the total expulsion of the *Moors*, which was effected by the conquest of *Granada*, the last of those principalities which they had erected in that country; and which the union of their dominions put it in the power of these princes to accomplish. The third was the discovery of the New World, and the annexing of it, when discovered, to their dominions; by which *Spain* may be said to commence her maritime power. Thus, in the compass of about thirty years, c *Spain* became beyond all comparison the greatest power in *Europe*, which before was very inconsiderable. After their death, the crown devolved to the august house of *Austria*, by the marriage of the queen donna *Juana*, their eldest daughter, to the archduke don *Philip I.* from which great union sprung the emperor *Charles V.* He was at once emperor of *Germany*, king of *Spain* and *Naples*, master of a great part of *Italy*, and lord of the whole *Low-countries*, as well those that now form the republic of the *United Provinces*, as those which were stiled the *Spanish Netherlands*, and now belong mostly to the empress-queen of *Hungary*.

His son *Philip II.* who, if ambitious princes are to be stiled so, was the wisest king, at least the greatest politician that *Europe* ever saw, and in that quality bade the fairest for d universal monarchy; in his pretensions to which, he was rather defeated by providence, than either by the power or prudence of those that opposed him; and yet he had to deal with some of the greatest princes that ever ruled in this part of the world. The mighty power which he established dwindled away and sunk to nothing under his successors, *Philip III.* *Philip IV.* and *Charles II.* so that at last they were protected in the possession of their dominions, by those very powers that had been raised upon their ruin. A strange revolution this! but worthy of attention; because it shews us how the most potent governments are enfeebled and brought to decay by all-grasping princes; and how providence counteracts human policy, so as to draw events directly contrary to their intentions, from the plans laid down and executed by the ablest statesmen, to gratify the desires of the most e ambitious princes.

As *Charles II.* of *Spain* had no issue, *England*, *France*, and *Holland*, formed, in 1699, the famous treaty of partition, for dividing the dominions of the crown of *Spain*, upon his death. Each party had, or at least pretended to have, the common view, in this treaty, of preventing such a vast accession of power from passing, either into the house of *Austria*, or that of *Bourbon*, already formidable enough of themselves. This step very sensibly affected the court of *Spain*: *Charles II.* was so much offended at it, that, on his death-bed, he signed a will, by which he bequeathed all his dominions to *Philip* duke of *Anjou*, grandson of *Lewis XIV.* Though that prince had before entered into the partition-treaty, yet, f finding the succession thus left to his family, he paid no regard to any former engagements or renunciations; but on the eighteenth of *February*, declared his grandson *Philip* king of *Spain*, who arrived at *Madrid* on the fourteenth of *April* 1701. This proceeding immediately alarmed the maritime powers and the emperor; the former were apprehensive of *Spanish America's* falling into the hands of the *French*, and the latter, besides the injury he imagined done to his own family, dreaded the too great influence of the power of the house of *Bourbon*. A war ensued; and *Charles*, archduke of *Austria*, was soon after set up in opposition to *Philip V.* His claim was vigorously supported by the maritime powers, and at first favoured by many of the grandees of *Spain*. In the g third year of this war, the king of *Portugal* and the duke of *Savoy* joined likewise in the alliance against *Philip*; who, in the following campaigns, was driven from his capital, by the success of the allied forces, and almost obliged to abandon *Spain*. In the end, however, his party prevailed, and, at the peace of *Utrecht* in 1713, he was acknowledged as king



a king of *Spain* by all the confederates leagued against him, except the emperor. The allies then contented themselves with such limitations and restrictions, as might keep the two monarchs of *France* and *Spain* disunited. A treaty of partition may, indeed, be said to have taken place at last; for *Philip*, by the articles of the peace, was only left in possession of *Spain*, its *American* colonies and settlements in the *East-Indies*; but the *Spanish* dominions in *Italy*, and the islands of *Sicily* and *Sardinia*, were dismembered from that monarchy, which had also lost the island of *Minorca* and the fortrefs of *Gibraltar*, both of which places were ceded to *Great Britain*. The duke of *Savoy* was put in possession of the island of *Sicily*, with the title of king; and the arch-duke *Charles*, who two years before had been elected emperor of *Germany*, held *Milan*, *Naples*, and *Sardinia*, and still kept up his claim to the whole *Spanish* monarchy.

b THOUGH *Philip*, by the peace concluded at *Utrecht*, was left, by the allies, possessor of the greatest and most important part of the *Spanish* dominions, yet some obstinate enemies still remained to be reduced, before he could be said to have fixed the *Spanish* crown securely upon his head. The inhabitants of *Catalonia* refused to acknowledge him, and finding themselves abandoned by their allies, solicited the assistance of the grand signior, in hopes of establishing themselves into an independent republic. Their blind obstinacy, however, served only to heighten the miseries and calamities to which they had been greatly exposed during the whole course of the war. After a most bloody and stubborn defence, they were intirely reduced by the king's troops, when they were deprived of their ancient privileges, and their country was annexed to the crown of *Castille*, as a conquered province.

c THE reduction of *Catalonia* restored tranquility to *Spain*, which had been harrassed for twelve years by a most cruel and bloody war. *Philip*, by that conquest, finding himself quietly seated upon the throne, began to turn his thoughts to the reunion of the *Italian* dominions, which he had seen wrested from him with the utmost regret. With a view to this re-union, his first wife being dead, he married *Elizabeth Farnese*, heiress of *Parma*, *Placentia*, and *Tuscany*; which alliance afterwards proved a source of new dissensions and wars among the princes of *Europe*; and, to this day, leaves an open field for bloody contests.

d THE new queen brought her father's minister into power, who was afterwards so well known by the title of cardinal *Alberoni*. This man, who must be allowed a great genius, projected the revival of the *Spanish* power, and the recovery of her *Italian* dominions, at a time when the former was thought very difficult, and the latter appeared totally impracticable. It is true, that he did not absolutely succeed in this scheme: but it is not less true, that he came much nearer it than any body could have imagined; for he put the affairs of *Spain* into such order, that she had fleets and armies capable of alarming her neighbours, with which he actually recovered *Sardinia*, and would have recovered *Sicily*, if the *British* naval power had not interposed, and given such a blow at *Messina* to his catholic majesty's maritime forces, as ruined all his schemes at once; and, what was still more, obliged his master to part with him, and to accede to the quadruple alliance, which was set on foot to supply the defects of the treaty of *Utrecht*, and to fix the tranquility of *Europe* upon a more stable basis.

e SOME time after, *Philip*, about the beginning of the year 1724, astonished all *Europe*, by publicly abdicating his crown in favour of his eldest son don *Lewis*, prince of *Asturias*, who was then in the seventeenth year of his age. *Philip* himself, though he had not reached his fortieth year, had long been sick of regal grandeur. From a weakness of body and mind, the least application to business had for some years given him a disgust; his mind was continually filled with religious scruples, which rendered him timorous and indecisive in every thing; and he falsely imagined that a scepter was incompatible with a life of integrity.

f THE *Spaniards* expressed great joy upon the accession of *Lewis I.* who was endeared to them, not only by being born among them, but by his generosity, affability, and many other virtues. The public joy, however, was soon turned into mourning, by the unexpected death of the king, who died of the small-pox, universally regretted in the eighth month of his reign.

g UPON the death of *Lewis*, *Philip* being persuaded to resume the reins of government, began to meditate new and strange designs, or rather such as were infused into his mind by the queen and his ministers. It is generally believed and not without good grounds, that cardinal *Alberoni*, who was then at *Rome*, contrived that amazing scene which astonished all *Europe*; at least it is certain, that it was managed and transacted by one of his creatures, a man born to make a figure in unquiet times. This was the famous *Riperda*, who negotiated the treaty of *Vienna*, by which the emperor *Charles VI.* and king *Philip*, in whose quarrel such streams of blood had been shed, and such immense treasures expended, run into a close alliance for the mutual support of each other's interest, against those very powers which had sacrificed



sacrificed so much for the aggrandizement of both. The true motives to this singular measure are by many held to remain still secret; but it seems to be pretty evident, that the views of the emperor were immediate, and those of *Spain* more at a distance. The former thought, by this means he should establish his *Ostend* company, by which he hoped to revive the trade of the *Low-Countries*, though at the expence of his old friends the *Dutch*; the latter consented to the aggrandizing of the Imperial power, from the flattering expectation that don *Carlos*, by marrying the eldest archduchess, at present empress and queen of *Hungary*, would become the successor to that branch of the house of *Austria*; as himself had been of the other, by which he seemed to renounce his engagements with *France*. a

THIS strange turn was more extraordinary, considering the time in which it happened, when both *France* and the maritime powers were labouring to bring about, in a rational and effectual manner, such an accommodation as these monarchs hastily, and, in a great measure, inconsiderately clapped up, with views only to their private advantage. To balance this *Vienna* alliance, *France*, the maritime powers, and *Prussia*, entered into the famous treaty of *Hanover*, in order to provide for their own interests, which they thought could never be safe, while this unnatural conjunction subsisted. b

THE emperor and the Catholic king, or rather his queen (for she was at the bottom of all this) seemed determined to persist in the execution of schemes from whence they expected to derive such mighty advantages; but the *Hanover* allies took their measures so effectually, that they were obliged, after some fruitless attempts, to submit to the old method of determining all differences by a negotiation, which produced the congress of *Soissons*. c

THIS congress was opened the 14th of *June*, 1728, but to very little purpose, except that it served to shew the ascendancy which the *French* minister, cardinal *Fleury*, had gained by an appearance of probity, and an exterior display of equity and moderation; which demonstrates, that universal monarchy might be attained by any powerful prince, who really possesses those virtues. But this situation growing tiresome to the *British* nation, their ministers entered into a secret negotiation with the crown of *Spain*, ending in the famous treaty of *Seville*; which it was expected would have determined all differences, and put a period to the labours of the ministers on both sides. But this was so far from answering those sanguine expectations, that the two next years were taken up in contriving expedients for carrying what was stipulated by that treaty into execution. d

FOR the emperor's security it was before settled, that *Swiss*, and not *Spanish* troops, should be sent into *Italy*, to maintain don *Carlos* in the countries yielded to him by these several treaties. But the treaty of *Seville* altered this method, and provided, that *Spanish* troops should be substituted instead of *Swiss*. To which the emperor, as it might be reasonably expected, refused his consent in the most positive and direct terms. It was to get over this difficulty with him, that new negotiations were necessary, and, at length, the thing was brought about. The infant, don *Carlos*, was sent to *Italy* with *Spanish* troops, and received in quality of heir-apparent by the grand duke of *Tuscany*, which, it was hoped, would have contributed much, not only to the pacifying these troubles, but securing the peace of *Europe*, for the present age at least. But, as the ablest politicians are very liable to mistake, this last step proved the cause of a war. The infant don *Carlos* arrived in *Italy* in 1731, and, being in the possession of all the dominions to which his expectative right had created so many disputes, his mother formed new schemes for enlarging his power, and for enabling him to assume and maintain the regal dignity. In order to this, she set on foot intrigues in *France*, to engage even the pacific cardinal in a measure directly repugnant to his system; and she endeavoured to engage the king of *Sardinia* to facilitate this design, by the promises of the duchy of *Milan*. His majesty had some reasons to wish well to the *Spanish* power, because of his being next in the intail of that monarchy; and, he had stronger reasons to dislike the measures of the Imperial court, which, in respect to him, were not altogether so just, and by no means so grateful or decent as they ought to have been. e f

THESE were the motives to a new confederacy, which, upon the death of the king of *Poland*, in 1733, broke out into a war in *Italy*; and in the year following, don *Carlos*, or rather the *Spanish* general, *Montemar*, conquered the kingdom of *Naples*, where he fought one decisive battle at *Bitonto*, of which, to perpetuate the memory of his victory, he was made duke. As for the island of *Sicily*, the inhabitants, though not very remarkable for their loyalty or steadiness, had long shewn an affection for the *Spanish* government, which put don *Carlos* in possession of that country without a stroke. The emperor, though he had no assistance from his allies, made a tolerable defence in *Italy*; and the circumstances of things inclining the court of *France* to a peace, while it was in her power to be well paid for it, *Spain* was forced to submit, and by this means public quiet was restored in 1735. g

By this peace, don *Carlos* remained king of the *Two Sicilies*, and thereby erected a third monarchy in the house of *Bourbon*; but then he relinquished his maternal succession, which was, (considering the different conditions of the countries) perhaps a full equivalent for it.

His



a His *Sardinian* majesty, who had hazarded much, and whose dominions had suffered excessively by the war, gained very little, if we except his gaining such an experimental knowledge of the good faith of the house of *Bourbon*, as must scarce have allowed him to trust it again. *France*, who pretended to get nothing, got all; for she had *Lorraine* added to her dominions, without any colour of right, except the most inglorious abandoning of king *Stanislaus*, chosen a second time king of *Poland*, could be so called: This treaty was concluded at *Vienna*, with which, except *France*, none of the contracting powers either were, or had any reason to be satisfied. After this, king *Philip* might well be supposed to have nothing more in view, than to spend the remainder of his days in peace; and, indeed, this, very probably, might be all the view he had; but, for his queen, her views were without end. She had made her eldest son a king, her third a cardinal, and archbishop of *Toledo*, almost in his cradle; and, after all this, *Europe* must be once more embroiled, rather than her second son, don *Philip*, should miss being made an independent prince. To influence *France* in his favour, she had married him to a *French* princess; and to bring the king of *Sardinia* into her scheme, she promised him any thing; but to no effect. She endeavoured likewise to cajole the court of *Great Britain*, but to no purpose. She then caused the king to turn a deaf ear to the complaints that were continually made of depredations committed in the *West-Indies*, which produced at last a war between the two nations, extremely prejudicial to their mutual interests, and not less to her own, had she considered them in a true light; but ambition is usually blind, and the desire of acquiring defeats the power of discovering the means of acquisition.

c UNDER the misfortunes of this war, and worn out with age and infirmities, *Philip V.* departed this life on the 11th of *July*, 1746, in the 63d year of his age, and was succeeded by the only surviving son of his first marriage, don *Ferdinand*. By his second queen, *Elizabeth* of *Farnese*, who is still living, *Philip* left three sons, don *Carlos*, then king of the *Two Sicilies*; don *Philip*, at present duke of *Parma* and *Placentia*; and don *Lewis*, who has not long since obtained leave to quit the church. Three daughters by the same queen likewise survived him, *Maria-Anna Victoria*, at present queen of *Portugal*; *Maria-Theresa*, married the year before to the dauphin, and *Maria-Antonietta*. *Maria-Theresa* died in childhood, a few days after her father.

d *FERDINAND VI.* was about thirty-three years of age when he ascended the throne. He began his reign with several acts of popularity, and among others, he assigned two days in the week to receive in person the petitions and remonstrances of his subjects. It was generally believed upon his accession, that things would have taken entirely a new turn in the court of *Spain*, and his Catholic majesty, or at least his ministers, took some pains to keep up this opinion, from whence they reaped very considerable advantages. The war, however, was carried on with vigour, because, as the new king published in his manifestoes, it was very earnestly recommended to him by his father; and at the same time it was given out, that his Catholic majesty looked upon it as a point of policy, as well as of duty, to procure his brother an establishment in *Italy*; so that it was very quickly discerned that a peace was not to be had without it.

e In the negotiations that were carried on for peace, the court of *Madrid* relied implicitly upon that of *Versailles*. The marquis *de Soto Major* acted as the *Spanish* plenipotentiary at *Aix la Chapelle*, where the seventh article, regarding the cessions made to the infant don *Philip*, was indeed the most important, and by much the most disputed in the whole treaty; and though it was not adjusted entirely to the satisfaction of the *Spanish* court, which pressed for a general settlement of the duchies of *Parma*, *Placentia*, and *Guastalla*, upon the royal infant and his issue, yet the terms were as good as could be reasonably expected, being confirmed by the most authentic acts of the empress-queen and the king of *Sardinia*. Honourable provisions were besides made for the allies of *Spain*, the duke of *Modena*, and the republic of *Genoa*. The disputed points between the *British* and *Spanish* commissaries were at length finally settled by a treaty concluded at *Madrid*, on the 5th of *October*, 1750. By this treaty, the king of *Great Britain* gave up his claim to the four remaining years of the *Affiento* contract, and to all debts the king of *Spain* owed to the *English* company on that account, for an equivalent of 100,000 *l.* sterling. His Catholic majesty engaged to require from *British* subjects trading in his ports no higher duties than they paid in the time of *Charles II.* of *Spain*, and to allow the same subjects to take salt on the island of *Tortuga*. All former treaties were confirmed, and the two princes promised to abolish all innovations that appeared to have been introduced into the reciprocal commerce of both nations. These innovations, however, not being specified, it was the same thing as if no mention had been made of them at all; and thus the most material differences being suffered to remain undecided, most unhappily gave rise to another war.

g THE remaining years of *Ferdinand's* reign, after the signing of the treaty of *Madrid*, were very barren of events. The *English* court was jealous of his attempts to introduce



the woollen manufacture in *Spain*, and reclaimed their workmen in that branch who had a passed over thither. New disputes likewise arose between them on account of the *English* trafficking with the *Indians* of the *Moskito* shore, who had never submitted to *Spain*, and claimed to act as a free nation. *Ferdinand*, at the same time, had the mortification to find it impossible to introduce a spirit of industry among his subjects, the favours and encouragement of the court being like rain falling upon a sandy desert, where there was not a seed or plant to be enlivened by it.

IN the year 1756, a war breaking out between *Great Britain* and *France*, *Ferdinand* declared on that occasion, that he would adhere to the strictest neutrality; but he was far from observing the neutrality he professed, and partially favoured *France* in a great number of instances. His queen, the infanta *Mary-Magdalena* of *Portugal*, dying about the end of b the year 1758, he was so affected with grief, that he intirely abandoned himself to gloom and melancholy; and neglecting both exercise and food, threw himself into a dangerous distemper, which, after preying upon him for several months, put a period to his life the year following, on the 10th of *August*.

As *Ferdinand* left no issue, he was succeeded by his brother don *Carlos*, king of the *Two Sicilies*, who resigned that kingdom, and disjointed it from the monarchy of *Spain* by a solemn deed, in favour of his third son don *Ferdinand*, setting aside his eldest son on account of his weakness of mind, or idiocy, and reserving his second son for the succession of *Spain*. Don *Carlos*, or *Charles III.* arrived in *Spain* in the month of *November*, and soon after entered *Madrid* in great pomp and ceremony. The transactions of the present reign, those c particularly relating to *Great Britain*, are recent in every one's memory; so that it need only be observed, that whoever will peruse the letters laid before our parliament, relating to *Spain*, will plainly perceive the candour of the court of *Great Britain*, and the ability of her ministers; and that the *Spaniards* artfully, and with the greatest injustice, sought a rupture, for which they since paid very dear, by their losses at the *Havannah*; and by being obliged to desist from their pretensions to a fishery at *Newfoundland*, and likewise to cede to us all *Florida*, and to allow us to cut logwood in the bay of *Campeachy*.

IF *Spain* had been absolutely detached from, and no way dependent upon *France*, with which she seems now rivetted more than ever by the *Bourbon* family-compact, her power would not have been the object of envy to the rest of *Europe*; and the establishment of d the younger princes of her family in *Italy* might have been promoted, instead of being so vigorously opposed by certain potentates, who do not act either from ambition or caprice, but are influenced purely by motives of self-preservation, and a just regard for the maintenance of that commerce, which is, and must be the basis of their power.

THE face of affairs in *Spain* has been greatly changed by the accession of the present family to the throne, who, without doubt, reaped vast advantages from the prodigious efforts made in their favour by the *French*, who yet made those efforts in favour of a younger branch of their royal family, and not as the natural, or even political allies of the *Spanish* nation; and it is certain, that they have been well paid for it since. But the condition to which *Spain* was reduced both in *Europe* and *America*, at the time of the death of e *Charles II.* is a proof that there cannot be a greater misfortune to any people, than for their princes ever to entertain thoughts of universal monarchy, whether by actually subduing, or by maintaining a general influence over other nations; for the former method will infallibly leave them without men, as the latter must necessarily leave them without money.

Government  
of Spain.

THE government of *Spain* was, by its antient constitution, a limited monarchy, of hereditary succession, both in males and females. It was limited by its Cortes, or parliament, composed of representatives sent from the cities and towns, each of which, according to the old *Gothic* plan, sent procurators, or deputies, chosen by and out of the aldermen of their respective cities. The eldest member for *Burgos* always acted as speaker for the house; though *Toledo* was a rival to *Burgos* for that privilege. In order to adjust amicably f their claims, the king used to say on opening the session of the Cortes, "I will speak for *Toledo*, which will do what I order: but let *Burgos* speak first;" because *Burgos* was anciently the capital of *Castille*. No act could pass in this parliament by majority of voices; it required the unanimous consent of all the members. All its acts were afterwards carried to the king to be confirmed. The members of this parliament were always assembled in a Cortes, by letters convocatory from the king and privy-council; and it was dissolved by a notification from the president of that council. But notwithstanding its dissolution, a committee of eight members still remained at court. This Cortes has rarely been called since the year 1647, when they gave *Philip IV.* the millones, or general excise. Their last meeting was in *May*, 1713, when they assembled to receive the renunciation of *Philip V.* g to his rights upon the crown of *France*. This assembly was anciently the keeper of the revenues of the crown; but *Charles V.* and his ministers first laid them aside, because they could get no money from them: and having obtained a grant of the sale of the bull of the

cru-



a crusado from the pope, they found they could get money without the help of a Cortes, and so took their leave of an assembly which few princes or ministers are fond of seeing, as their power was great, and they could call ministers so severely to an account.

THIS ancient *Spanish* Cortes undoubtedly resembled our *British* parliament; for all the northern nations had originally a like form of government, which was a limited monarchy, and the legislative authority was so commixt in the king and the estates, that no laws could be made, repealed, or suspended, nor any money raised upon the subject, but with their common consent. But now this Cortes is laid aside, *Spain* is no longer a mixt monarchy, but intirely absolute; the whole government being solely in the hands of the king and his ministers, and the councils, which are altogether at their devotion. This change from mixt to absolute monarchy was occasioned by the timidity of the commons of *Castille*, who having in their last struggle for expiring freedom, supported for some time a war against the crown, on a single defeat deserted the noble cause of liberty in the most abject manner. This war began in the year 1520, and lasted only two years; at which time *Charles V.* carried his point with a high hand, and told the Cortes, he would always have the supplies granted first, and then he would pass the bills they petitioned for, and not before, to which they timidly submitted, and voted him four millions of ducats, about 480,000 l. sterling, to be paid in three years.

THE writ anciently sent to each city, as a summons to parliament, convened all the prelates, masters of the military orders of knighthood, earls, rich men, nobles, and procurators of the cities and towns throughout the realm.

THE *Spanish* kings, according to the laws of *Spain*, are declared of age, or out of their minority, on the completion of their fourteenth year. In regulating the succession, after the death of *Charles II.* a medium was observed between the *Salic* law, and the usage of *Castille*; namely, that any male heir, however distant, should inherit before a female, who was to have no right but after the extinction of every male branch.

THE laws of *Spain* are compounded chiefly of the *Roman* civil law, the royal edicts, and probably, certain provincial customs, much in the nature of our common law in *England*.  
 Much of the feudal and *Gothic* constitutions still remain, the *grandees* having still their vassals, and very extensive powers over their persons.

d BESIDES their tribunals and courts of justice, there is the council of the inquisition, or, as they call it, the supreme office of the Holy Tribunal, consisting of an inquisitor-general, five counsellors, whereof one must be a Dominican-friar, a procurator, two secretaries of the chamber, two secretaries of the council, an *Alguazil* mayor, a receiver, two reporters, two qualificators and consultors, and a legion of familiars, or spies. This tribunal is established at *Madrid*, but there are also other inferior ones in the great cities almost all over *Spain*. These are the great state-curbs that hold the people in such an implicit religious obedience, and preserve their boasted uniformity of the *Roman* Catholic faith. This court was erected in the thirteenth century, about the year 1251. Pope *Innocent IV.* authorized the Dominicans as perpetual inquisitors. *Clement IV.* confirmed these powers, and enlarged their privileges and tribunals in the year 1265. It was established in *Castille* under *Ferdinand* and *Isabella*, and in *Portugal* by *John III.* in the year 1557. In 1483, *Ferdinand* obtained a bull to constitute the inquisition in *Arragon* and *Valentia* from *Sixtus IV.* who afterwards extended it all over the Catholic dominions. This holy office used anciently to acknowledge only the power of the pope above it, and bade defiance to all other controul. It raised itself far above the authority of their kings, who were often bridled, humbled, and even punished by it. It then was truly formidable, when supported by the united force of papal and royal authority. Their *Auto de Fés*, or solemn acts of faith, used to be exhibited commonly when their princes came of age, or at their accession. But now these sanguinary acts seem to be growing out of vogue in *Spain*. There has not been an *Auto da Fé* at *Madrid* for these thirteen or fourteen years; which was owing to this circumstance. A Jew and his wife, and a daughter of about thirteen years of age, being condemned to be burnt, while the father and mother were burning they set the child loose from its fetters, and the priests got round it with a view of converting it by the united force of their rhetoric, and the terror of immediately undergoing the same cruel death. The child, after seeming to listen awhile to their oratory, gave a sudden spring, and vaulted into the midst of the fire; giving a shining example of the force of filial piety and heroic fortitude, equal to that of the most resolute *Roman*, or the most unshaken martyr. The power of this tribunal is now declining very visibly, and seems hastening to its fall; for the present king of *Spain* has taken a bolder step to humble the inquisition, than any of the *Philip's* or *Charles's* who went before him. The inquisitor-general having thought proper in the year 1762, to prohibit a liturgy which the king had licensed, without consulting his majesty about it; the king, with a very proper spirit, put the inquisitor under an arrest, and immediately sent him, guarded with a file of grenadiers, into exile, in a con-



vent at a great distance from *Madrid*. So determined and resolute a measure as this alarmed the whole body of the clergy; they moved heaven and earth to obtain the inquisitor's recall; but for some time their endeavours had no effect: the king was inflexible. The common people were taught by their priests to say, that his Catholic majesty was no good Catholic in his heart. At length, however, the king restored the inquisitor to his liberty; but, in such a manner, that the prelate had no reason to triumph; for his majesty, at the time of releasing him, published at *Madrid* an edict, as a curb upon the proceedings of the inquisition.

State of the  
commerce and  
manufac-  
tures of  
Spain, so  
far as they  
relate to  
Great Bri-  
tain.

It is said, that our trade with *Old and New Spain* is now full one third less than it was about forty years ago; and that the balance and exchange between *Spain* and *Great Britain*, are every day more and more turning against the latter. The causes of this decrease are indeed not at all difficult to be discovered or accounted for. Part of it is owing to the extreme avarice and extortion of our own merchants, who, not contented with moderate profits, have kept up the prices of their goods beyond their just proportion, and thereby opened a door for the *French* and *Dutch* to undersell us at the *Spanish* markets. Another reason is, that the price of labour in those two countries is considerably lower than our own, which enables them likewise to afford their goods to the *Spaniards* at a much cheaper rate than we can do. A third reason is, the alteration introduced during the *Spanish* war in queen *Anne's* time, when the *French* crept into that trade, and deprived us of a greater share of it than we shall probably be ever able to recover. A fourth reason may be, the progress which the *Spaniards* themselves have made in some branches of manufacture; for the encouragement which the kings of the house of *Bourbon* have given to manufactures and arts, has excited some few *Spaniards* to apply themselves to industry and trade. To second this view, the reigning family and the ministry also in *Spain* have endeavoured, by means of foreign workmen, to set on foot various manufactures; and the great attention they have given to that object, has not been altogether without effect. Notwithstanding these unfavourable circumstances, our traffic with *Spain* is still very considerable, and chiefly in the following articles. We export to that country large quantities of dried and salted fish, called by them *bacalas*; likewise broad cloths, and woollen stuffs of various kinds to a great amount: silk stuffs, cutlery ware, warlike and naval stores, particularly cables and anchors; also watches, wrought brass, and prince's metal, toys, mathematical instruments, cabinet-work, particularly of mahogany, wrought and unwrought tin, leather, led, corn, dry and salted meat, cattle, butter, cheese, beer, hats, linen, vitriol, pepper, rice, and other products of our *American* colonies; and, if we attended to it, we might supply them with great quantities of timber from those colonies, as the *Spaniards*, though they have, in some parts, fine woods of excellent oak, yet, from their inexpertness in felling trees, and want of roads, are in a manner intirely deprived of the use of them. From *Spain* we receive the following articles: wines, oil, vinegar, fruits of various kinds, as olives, raisins of the sun, raisins dried with ashes, called by them *passas de lexia*; raisins from *Almunegar*, a city on the coast of *Andalusia*, famous for that produce; chestnuts, almonds, figs, citrons, lemons, oranges, cacao-nuts, *Spanish* pepper, pomegranates, fine oil, indigo, cochineal, materials for dying, kali, or barilla, and loba, for the making of soap and glass, chiefly from *Alicant*; quicksilver, some wrought silks, particularly from *Valentia*; and of late raw silk, balsam of *Peru*, vanillas, cake-chocolate of *Guajata*, salsaparilla, salted sea-brizzle, salt-petre, salt from *Cadiz*, salt from *Port St. Mary's*, woollen counterpanes, and a remarkable fine sort of blankets from *Segovia*, iron from *Biscay*, sword blades, particularly from *Toledo*, gun and pistol barrels from *Guipuscoa* and *Barcelona*, vermilion, borax, hams, snuff from *Seville* and the *Havanna*, soap, formerly a considerable article, but as we now make it ourselves, only a trifle; several roots and drugs of the growth of *Spain* and *America*, employed in medicine. Logwood is not specified as an article of importation from *Spain*; for however it may have been such formerly, we may now hope to supply ourselves with it, as it appears by the sixteenth article of the preliminaries of the late peace, that we have at length happily obtained the free and unmo-  
lest liberty of cutting it in the *Bay of Honduras*, on condition of demolishing all our fortifications erected there, and in other parts of *Spanish America*. But it were to be wished, that the liberty of cutting it had also been extended in express terms to the *Bay of Cam-  
pachy*. Those who know the value of this article, will receive great pleasure on seeing it now well settled; for whatever our pretensions were, we certainly had but a very dis-  
putable title to this important branch of trade; and this will even appear from the perusal of the memorial of the board of trade, laid before his majesty king *George I.* and drawn up expressly to prove that claim. We shall have occasion to make some further obser-  
vations on the trade and commerce of *Spain*, when we come to treat of *Spanish America*.

State of ag-  
riculture and  
population in  
Spain.

THE soil of *Spain* is naturally dry, and is rendered still more so, by reason of the great heats, which parch up the springs and brooks, and by the want of rain to refresh the earth



a at proper seasons. Notwithstanding this inconvenience, arising from the dryness of the soil, and the want of rain, yet, if the inhabitants were industrious, and applied themselves with assiduity to the cultivation of their lands, a general abundance might prevail, which is far from being the case at present, for in many places there is often great scarcity of bread. The genius of the people is doubtless naturally averse to toil and labour. Give a *Spaniard* but his cloak, hat, and sword, his wine and his bread, and he cares not how little he works. Another great obstruction to agriculture is the immense number of lazy ecclesiastics in these kingdoms, and the perpetual succession of holidays allowed by the church, which deprive the state of one third of the labour that it ought to receive from its subjects. To these may be added the thinness of its population: *Spain* in general, and *Granada* in particular, have never recovered that fatal blow of the expulsion of the *Moors*; the effects of which are felt still more by the addition of civil and religious celibacy. When *Philip*, on one hand, banished to the amount of 100,000 industrious infidels, from a principle of religion, he ought, on the other hand, from a principle of policy, to have set open the gates of every nunnery and convent in his dominions. The number of these useless, sequestered males and females, these dead limbs of the body politic, are computed by some at no less than 200,000; but probably this calculation is much exaggerated. Besides the bad consequences of religious celibacy, their thin population is in part owing to the sterility of their females; and above all, to the vast emigrations of their people to *America*. To remedy these defects, the ministry, in *Philip III's* and *Philip IV's* time, offered vast premiums to promote marriage and agriculture. But their imprudent schemes of policy in other instances have rendered those patriot laws almost ineffectual. Another unfavourable circumstance to agriculture is, there being no exportation of corn allowed in *Spain* from one province to another, except for the king's use, the exigencies of the fleet, army, and such occasions. In consequence of this bad policy, they are obliged to send to *Barbary* and other parts of *Africa*, or to *England* for corn; for it is morally impossible but the harvest must fail annually in some one province or other, and then that province must be supplied from abroad. Indeed, the transportation of it to any great distance is almost impracticable; for their large rivers being left in their natural state, are not navigable. But the military spirit of these people, which has always prevailed, has no doubt given them a contempt for agriculture. Whoever travels over *Spain*, will be grieved to see such vast tracts of fine land turned to so little advantage; great part of it not tilled, and that which is, done in so careless and slovenly a manner, as to produce a starved crop of corn, even in spots where they might command the most abundant harvest. Their corn is usually choked up with stones, filth, and weeds of every kind. There cannot be a stronger proof given of the fertility of the soil in *Spain*, than its producing so much as it does, when it is considered how little labour they bestow upon it. When they plow, they scarce do more than just scratch the surface of the ground with a slight furrow; after the first plowing they let the earth lie for a few days, and then they sow the wheat in *September*, and the barley in *February*: when this is done, they seldom use the harrow, but plow it over again, in order to cover the seed. Thus it stands till *June* or *July*, at which time they cut it down. The barley is rarely bound in sheafs, and the wheat not always. Neither, however, are carried into barns; but they lay them down on some clean dry hillock, and then their mules come with a drag, and tread or beat out the corn; it is a shorter method than our threshing. The winnowing there is done still easier, by only throwing the corn up into the air. Yet such is the general indolence of the inhabitants of this country, that many of them will neither reap nor gather in their own corn. We should except, however, the industrious *Gallicians*, who, with great numbers out of *France* from *Alsace* and *Languedoc*, annually travel over all *Spain* to be its husbandmen.

f THE *Spaniards* have in general an olive complexion, are of a middle stature, rather lean, but well made; have fine eyes, glossy black hair, and a small well shaped head. Their clothes are usually of a very dark colour, and their cloaks almost black. This shews the natural gravity of the people. This is the general dress of the common sort; for the court and persons of fashion have most of them adopted the *French* dress and modes. As their natural air is gravity, so they have consequently great coldness and reserve in their deportment; they are therefore very uncommunicative to all, and particularly to strangers. But when once you are become acquainted with them, and have contracted an intimacy, there are not more social, more friendly, or more conversible beings in the world. They are a people of the highest notions of honour, even to excess, which is a still visible effect of their ancient love of chivalry, and was the animating spirit of that enthusiasm. They have great probity and integrity of principle. As they persevere with much fidelity and zeal in their friendships, you will naturally expect to find them warm, resentless, and implacable in their resentments. They are generous, liberal, magnificent, and charitable; religious without dispute, but devout to the greatest excesses of superstition. If they have any predominant fault, it is, perhaps, that of being rather too high-minded; hence they have entertained, at

Persons, genius, character, manners, humours, and diversions of the Spaniards.



different periods, the most extravagant conceits; such as that the sun only rose and set in a their dominions; that their language was the only tongue fit to address the Almighty with; and that they were the peculiar favourites of heaven. They formerly thought that wisdom, glory, power, riches, and dominion, were their sole monopoly; but the experience of two or three centuries past has contributed to shew the fondness of all these delusions. The open and avowed attempts of *Spain's Austrian* princes grasping at universal monarchy, the secret and more concealed ambition of the *Bourbon* line, with all their plans of refined policy, have been, as *Shakespeare* calls it, "like the baseless fabric of a vision." It has been owing to these lofty conceits that they are still possessed with the highest notions of nobility, family, and blood. The mountaineer of *Asturias*, though a peasant, will plume himself as much upon his genealogy and descent as the first grandee; b and the *Castilian*, with his coat armour, looks upon the *Galician* with sovereign contempt. The profession of arms is their chief delight; to this darling passion commerce, manufactures, and agriculture, have been always sacrificed. They bear all hardships with the most unremitting patience, and can endure heat, cold, and even hunger, with some degree of cheerfulness. They have courage and constancy sufficient for the most hazardous undertakings; and though naturally slow, yet when once put in action, pursue their object with great warmth and perseverance. Bigotry has been very prejudicial to the *Spaniards*, and not only in religion, but in the arts and sciences, and has greatly retarded their advancement in learning. It is impossible that those who are too blindly attached to the opinions of the ancients should make any great figure among the moderns. To politics c the *Spaniards* have a natural inclination; they study and understand the political interests of their country thoroughly; even the common peasants will sometimes make reflections on public affairs that would be not unworthy of a senator in the Cortes.

THE taste for gallantry and dancing prevails in *Spain* universally; they are the two ruling passions of the country. Jealousy, ever since the accession of the house of *Bourbon*, has slept in peace. It is observable, that in proportion as manners become more civilized, that furious passion always loses its force. Dancing is so much their favourite entertainment, that their gravest matrons never think themselves excluded by age from this diversion. You may see the grandmother, mother, and daughter, all in the same country-dance: the *English*, on the contrary, give dancing to youth, and leave cards to d age. Most of the *Spaniards* take their *siesta* or sleep after dinner, mass in the morning, dinner at noon, and the evening's airing generally finish the round of their day. Though it is the custom of the country for the men and women to wear in the street and at mass all the same dress, yet the ladies in private visits wear as much variety of dress and of a much richer sort than those in *England*; but to a people of gallantry the advantage of all wearing the same uniform in public is easy to be conceived. The married ladies in *Spain* have each their professed lover, just as the *Italian* ladies have their *cicisbeo*. Their evening's airing is insipid to the last degree; you see nothing but a string of coaches following one another, filled with people of fashion: here a duke and his confessor, there a couple of smart young abbés *tête à tête*; here a whole family grouped together, just like a e *Dutch* picture, husband and wife, children and servants, wet nurses and dry all together. When they take their airing on *gala* or court-days, all their footmen are then dressed in laced liveries, with plumes of feathers in their hats. The number of servants kept by the grandees and people of the first fashion is immoderate. Some of the *Spanish* grandees retain to the number of 3 and 400; and the *English* ambassador, in compliance with the taste of the country, keeps near 100.

### C H A P. III.

#### Of Portugal. f

Boundaries  
and extent of  
Portugal.

THE kingdom of *Portugal* borders northwards on *Gallicia* in *Spain*, and is divided from it by the *Minho*, next the sea, and by some small rivers and hills farther up land towards the east. The west and south sides are washed by the ocean, including the little kingdom of *Algarve* on the south, and on the west the *Guadiana* parts the said little kingdom from *Andalusia*; from whence drawing a line northwards, *Portugal* borders on *Andalusia*, *Estremadura*, and *Leon*. The whole extent of it from north to south is 300 miles; that is, from 37 to 42 degrees of latitude. From east to west, where broadest, which is about the middle, it is about 120 miles; that is, from 7 to 9 degrees west longitude, and where narrowest next *Algarve*, about 60. g

Soil, produce,  
&c.

THE soil of *Portugal* is perhaps the very worst in all *Spain*, yet not universally so. Upon the whole, it never produces corn enough to maintain its inhabitants, but must be supplied



- a supplied either from *Spain* or from *England*, and other northern countries. Pasture is no less scarce, if we except some of the northern parts, as the province called *Entre duero e Minho*, and along the banks of some of their great rivers, where the best and largest cattle are fed; but on the southern side the cattle are very scarce, small, and lean, though the flesh is generally good. To make amends for this want of corn and pasture, vast quantities of wine are made, which is indeed the best commodity of this kingdom, and so well known at present to all *England*, that we need say the less about it. Oil is here likewise in great abundance, but far inferior to that we have from other countries, being commonly so strong and fetid, that none can use it who have been ever accustomed to the *Spanish* and *Italian*. Lemons and oranges also grow here, and are exported in great quantities, though the acidity of the latter is nothing near so pleasant as that of those which come from *Seville*; nor are indeed any of their fruits so large or well tasted as those of *Spain*. Herbs and flowers of all sorts are here commonly very good, and great quantities of perfumed waters are distilled from the odoriferous kinds, which are in great request, being in some shape or other used in almost every thing that is eaten, drank, or worn. This country produces likewise great quantities of alum, white marble, alabaster, and especially salt, of which immense loads are continually exported from the port of *Setuval*, for most of the northern nations. Here also are several mineral and medicinal springs, of great virtue, and much resorted to, some of a hot, and others of a cold nature. The woollen manufactures of *Portugal* are of so indifferent and coarse a nature, that they are only worn by the meaner sort, being scarce fit for any other. Their silks are, in some places, much better, but far inferior, not only in beauty and goodness, but in quantity, to those which are made in *Spain*. The country in general is well peopled, and filled with goodly cities, towns, and villages, though not every where alike.
- b
- c

*PORTUGAL* is divided into six provinces, including the little kingdom of *Algarve*. *Divided into six provinces.* These provinces, beginning at the north, and descending to the south, are, 1. *Entre Duero e Minho*. 2. *Tra los Montes*. 3. *Beira*. 4. *Estramadura*. 5. *Alentejo*. And, 6. *Algarve*.

- d The province of *Entre Duero e Minho* has the *Minho* on the north to divide it from *Gallicia*, and the *Duero* on the south, which parts it from *Beira*; on the west it is bounded by the ocean, and on the east by a ridge of mountains, which separates it from the province of *Tra los Montes*. Its utmost length does not exceed thirty-six miles, greatest breadth thirty, and where narrowest twelve or fourteen; but though small, it is the best inhabited, and has the greatest number of cities, towns, and villages, of all the rest in proportion; besides that, it is one of the pleasantest and most fertile, though mountainous, having many other rivers besides the two that inclose it, and a vast number of rivulets and sweet springs to water it, which, as above hinted, make it abound in good pasture more than any other parts of *Portugal*, though inferior in this respect to many of the provinces of *Spain*. Together with the pastures, the plains are every where covered with vines, fruit, and other trees of all sorts, and the country well supplied with every necessary of life, except, as before observed, it has not a sufficient quantity of corn for its inhabitants.
- e

*BRAGA* and *Porto*, or *Oporto*, are its chief cities. The latter is a famed sea-port on the north side of the *Duero*, about three miles from the sea, and pleasantly situated on a rocky ground, that river washing its walls. The port, a very commodious one, is so well known and frequented by our nation, that we need say the less of it. The harbour is safe against all winds, but when the floods come down, no anchor can hold the ships; at which time they are forced to squeeze and fasten them to each other along the walls, to avoid the fury of the torrent. The city stands in 41. 10. north latitude, and 8. 30. west longitude. Its distance is 120 miles north from *Lisbon*.

- f THE province *Tra los Montes* is so called because seated on the other side of that chain of hills which parts it on the west from that of *Entre Duero e Minho*, just described; on the north it borders on *Gallicia*, and eastward on the kingdom of *Leon*, and on the south the *Duero* parts it from *Beira*. Its length from east to west is at most about 74 miles, and breadth near 60. This country is but dry and barren, having but few rivers to water it, and none of them of any considerable length or breadth. For this reason the territory has but few corn fields, except rye and some barley, but yields plenty of wine, fruits of several sorts, and abundance of game. The cities of this province are *Braganza* and *Miranda*.

- g THE province of *Beira* is divided on the north from the province *Entre Duero e Minho* by the former of those rivers: it is bounded by the ocean on the west, and by some part of *Estramadura*; on the south by another part of that province, and by the *Tagus*; and on the east it runs contiguous to the *Spanish Estramadura*, and the kingdom of *Leon*. The country, though not so rich and fertile as some in this kingdom, is yet capable of producing good corn, wine, and other useful commodities, if rightly cultivated.

*COIMBRA,*



Coimbra and Aveiro.

COIMBRA, once the metropolis of *Portugal*, is still one of the finest cities in this kingdom, and no less celebrated for its famed university. It is pleasantly seated on the north side of the river *Mondego*, about ninety miles north from *Lisbon*. *Aveiro* is a considerable market-town, commodiously seated in a plain, upon a bay at the mouth of a creek, on the western coast, and made by a small river, which divides the town into two parts, joined by a stately bridge. In this creek, which is pretty large, and forms a kind of haven, is made a vast quantity of salt, which is exported, some into other parts of the kingdom, and the rest into foreign parts. It stands about 101 miles from *Lisbon*.

Province of Estremadura.

THE province of *Estremadura* is a long narrow slip, running along the sea-coast, and reaching from the mouth of the river *Mondego* northwardly down, and southwardly quite below the town of *Setuval*; so that it extends from the latter to the former, that is, from south-west to north-east, about 110 miles. Its breadth is scarce fifty, and in some places much narrower; and its utmost verge westward, which is the *Cape la Roca*, or, as our seamen term it, the rock of *Lisbon*, lies under nine degrees forty-five minutes west longitude. It is bounded on the north by the *Mondego* above-mentioned, which parts it from *Beira* and the province of *Alentejo*; and it has again *Beira* on the east, and the ocean on the west. The land is here for the most part the very best in *Portugal*, and the climate very pleasant and mild, by being so near the western ocean. It produces wheat and other grain in greater plenty than the other provinces, abundance of wine, oil, fruits of all sorts, especially citrons, lemons, oranges, pomegranates, figs, dates, almonds, &c. upon which account the people here live much better, and are above want. Here are also greater variety of manufactures carried on, and a much larger share of trade and commerce; all which is owing partly to its commodious situation and sea-ports, to its proximity to the city of *Lisbon*, the metropolis of this province and kingdom, and to the noble river *Tagus*, which is navigable a considerable number of leagues inland, and is therefore the means of a very considerable commerce from that metropolis.

Lisbon.

LISBON, the head city of this kingdom, the residence of its monarchs, the great seat of all the courts of justice, the metropolitan see of *Portugal*, the most noble and celebrated university of it, an emporium of the world, the receptacle of all the richest merchandizes of the *East* and *West Indies*, and the best sea-port in the whole kingdom, is situate in 38 degrees 46 minutes of latitude, and about 9 of west longitude, in an excellent air; and though the climate is rather inclinable to heat, yet it is refreshed by the delightful breezes of the sea, and of the river *Tagus*, on the banks of which it is pleasantly and strongly seated, and which conveys to it a very great share of the wealth of *Asia* and *America*, as well as the chief commodities of *Europe* and *Africa*. The harbour is one of the most commodious in *Europe*, lying upon the western ocean, and capacious enough of itself to contain 10,000 ships, all riding in safety, and without incumbering each other; and it carries water enough for the largest vessels to anchor before the windows of the royal palace. The entrance of it is defended by two handsome forts, the first seated on the shore, the other standing opposite to it, on a shelf in the midst of the water. Besides these, nature has provided it with another defence, which is the bar, very dangerous to pass without pilots belonging to the place. Within this appears a vast capacious bay, which contracts itself as it draws near the city.

Earthquake at Lisbon.

THE city of *Lisbon*, built, like old *Rome*, on several little hills, is one of the finest views from the water that can possibly be imagined. As you approach nearer to it, the tragical effects, the havock of that dreadful earthquake which happened on the first of *November* 1755, cannot but touch every beholder with sentiments of pain. After landing, you pass through some streets, near a mile in length, where the houses all fell on each side, and still lie for the most part in that undistinguished heap of ruin into which they sunk at the first convulsive shocks. Not that it is to be imagined that the greatest part of that fine city fell on that fatal morning; so far from this, that not above one-fourth part of it was destroyed; for it prevailed more in one particular quarter than the rest, and there the desolation was almost universal, scarce an house or building remaining that was not thrown down. In the other parts of the city some single ill-conditioned or ruinous buildings fell, but the rest stood; and there is scarce a street but shores and props may be seen fixed to the buildings on each side, to prevent their falling even now, having suffered so much from the shocks they had received. *St. Ubas*, not far from *Lisbon*, was also destroyed. The shocks continued for several days after, and were felt in most parts of *Europe*; and the waters were agitated in many places in a most surprizing manner. The cities of *Fez* and *Morocco* received likewise considerable damage from the several shocks they had in those parts, where numbers of the inhabitants were destroyed. Considering how much time has elapsed since this earthquake, very little of the city of *Lisbon* has been rebuilt in proportion. They have built a custom-house, an arsenal, a theatre, and some few other buildings. All agree that the fire occasioned infinitely more havock than the earthquake.

Thousands



<sup>a</sup> Thousands of the inhabitants unhappily, in the first confusion of their fear, taking the ill-judged step of thronging into the churches, the doors of which being sometimes shut by the violence of the croud, and sometimes locked by mistake, when the fire seized the roofs of these buildings, these unhappy sufferers were most of them destroyed; some by sheets of lead, that poured like a molten deluge upon their heads, others mashed by the fall of the roofs, and the rest burnt alive. One's imagination can scarce form a scene of confusion, horror, and death, more dreadful than this. After the shocks were over, the fire continued burning for many weeks; and it is thought was one principal cause of their escaping the plague, as the putrefaction of the bodies was by that means much less. The calculation of the number that perished, as they kept no registers, must be in a great measure conjectural; but that thousands and ten thousands were destroyed, there is no doubt. The morning on which it happened was most remarkably serene and pleasant, particularly about ten o'clock; and in one quarter more all was involved in this dreadful scene of terror and destruction. As this event produced many changes, those among the commercial parts of the city were not the least remarkable. One who yesterday was at the eve of a bankruptcy, found himself to-day with his books cleared; and hundreds, who lived in ease and affluence, as soon as they had recovered from their first panic and dismay, saw want and poverty stare them in the face.

<sup>b</sup> Some of the churches, the arsenals, the theatre, and above all, the aqueduct at *Lisbon*, deserve the attention of every traveller; the center arch, for its height, being one of the noblest perhaps in *Europe*. One thing is remarkable, that during the earthquake this building stood the attack, though so much affected by the shock, that many of the key-stones fell several inches, and hang now only because a small part of the base of the key-stone was caught by the center's closing again. The streets of *Lisbon* are cleaner than those of *Madrid*, but disagreeable, from the continual ascents and descents one is obliged to make. Most of the houses have the *jalousie* or lattice. The women, though more beautiful, are not so much seen in public as the *Spanish*, and their head-dress is much prettier. There are few fires in chimnies in the rooms at *Lisbon*; the want of them is supplied by wearing a cloak constantly in the house, or perhaps by a brazier, though the cold is sometimes very piercing. The view of the *Tagus*, from those windows of the town which command it, <sup>c</sup> is remarkably pleasing: the bean-cods, or small boats, which sail with any wind or tide, and are continually passing; the river crowded with shipping of all nations; the coming in of a *Bakia* or *Brasil* fleet; the opening of the river towards the bar, with the castle of *Bellem* on the right, the king's palace, and the castle of *St. Julian's* on the left, all together form a very fine and agreeable view.

<sup>d</sup> The other places of note in this province are, 1. *Setuval*, a considerable sea-port on this coast, a little below *Lisbon*, being much resorted to by most northern nations, especially for the vast quantities of salt that are made here every year. 2. *Santarem*, forty-two miles north-east from *Lisbon*, situate on a high hill, close to the *Tagus*. It has on the south side a deep valley, with a steep winding ascent to the town, and on the north is a craggy solid rock, altogether inaccessible; but on the west it faces a delightful plain, covered <sup>e</sup> with gardens, orchards, and fertile fields, producing a vast quantity of corn, oil, and variety of fruits. The *Tagus*, which is here very broad and navigable, enriches the adjacent country by the channels that are cut from it; insomuch that we are told by some *Spanish* authors that it yields a prodigious increase of wheat and other grain, which are often sown, cut down, and threshed, within the space of two months. 3. *Sintra*, seated near the sea, at the foot of a ridge of mountains, and by the cape that bears its name, almost on the utmost western verge of *Portugal*. The town is justly esteemed the most delightful spot in the whole kingdom, both for the beauty of its situation and prospect, and for the fruitfulness of its territory. The rock on which it stands has a noble quarry of black and white marble, in <sup>f</sup> great request. 4. *Alcazar Do Sal*, situate thirty-five miles south-west from *Lisbon*, on the river *Zadao*. It is so called, from the great quantities of salt produced in its environs.

<sup>g</sup> The province of *Alentejo* borders on the north on part of *Estramadura*, and of the river *Tagus*; eastward on the *Spanish* province of *Andalusia* and *Estramadara*; on the west it is bounded by the ocean, and part of the *Portuguese Estramadura*; and on the south by the little kingdom of *Algarve*. It lies between 37 degrees 30 minutes latitude, and about 39 degrees west longitude; but so irregular, and runs so much into the adjacent provinces, that its extent cannot be precisely stated. In the whole it runs, where widest, between 90 and 100 miles; and in some places beyond, and in others much less than 80. This country is reckoned the finest and most fertile in all *Portugal*, and its inhabitants the wealthiest and best bred. The far greater part are farmers, and the land is so rich, and so well watered by a number of rivers, which fall either into the *Tagus* or *Guadiana*, which two last great ones run quite across the province, that they are all wealthy and industrious, and

Province of  
Alentejo.



have few poor people among them. Its cities and towns of chief note are *Faro*, *Algarve*, and *Estremos*. Near the last, remarkable for its curious manufacture of red earthen-ware, is a noble spring, which throws up so much water in summer, as serves to turn several mills; and, contrary to all others, is dried up all the winter.

Kingdom of  
Algarve.

THE little kingdom of *Algarve* is that part of *Portugal* called, by some ancient authors, *Cuneus*, or *Wedge*, being really wedged in by the ocean on the west and south; on the east by the *Guadiana*, which parts it from *Andalusia*; on the north, by the mountains called *Serra de Algaroc*, and *Serra de Monchique*, which divide it from *Alentejo*; so that it is but ninety miles in length, where longest, and but twenty-eight in breadth, where broadest. The country, though mountainous in most parts of it, produces most sorts of fruit in abundance, but little corn. It is the least populous and wealthy part of *Portugal*, and has no remarkable towns or cities.

History of  
Portugal.

THE history of *Portugal* is blended with that of *Spain*, until it was recovered from the *Moors*. *Alphonso*, sixth king of *Leon*, having made a conquest of the northern provinces of *Portugal*, constituted *Henry of Burgundy*, a noble volunteer in these wars, earl of *Portugal*, in the year 1093. *Alphonso*, son of *Henry*, assumed the title of king in 1139, having recovered several other provinces from the *Moors*; and his successors continued the wars with the Infidels, till they had reduced all *Portugal*. The crown continued in this line till the reign of *Ferdinand*, upon whose death *John* his bastard brother usurped the throne, in 1385. This prince invaded *Africa*, and took the port-town of *Cuta* from the *Moors*. The *Madeira* islands, and the *Azores* or western islands, were also discovered in this reign, and added to the kingdom of *Portugal*, with the coast of *Guinea*; and, after a glorious reign of near fifty years, *John* left the crown to his son *Edward*. His grandson *Alphonso* invaded *Morocco*, and took the towns of *Tangier*, *Arzilla*, *Alcassar*, and several others on the coast of *Africa*, from the *Moors*. *John* II. was the first prince who endeavoured to trace out a way to the *East-Indies* round the coast of *Africa*: leaving no children, he was succeeded by his cousin *Emanuel*, who banished many of the *Jews* and *Moors* out of *Portugal*, and compelled those that remained there to profess Christianity, on pain of being made slaves. It was in this reign that *Portugal* arrived at the highest pitch of glory, for their fleets passed the *Cape of Good Hope*, the most southern promontory of *Africa*, and planted colonies in the *East-Indies*, whereby they became sole masters of the traffic between *India* and *Europe*; which was before carried on through *Egypt* and the *Turkish* dominions, from whence the *Venetians*, *Genoese*, and other maritime powers in the *Mediterranean*, used to transport the *Indian* merchandizes to *Europe*, and grew immensely rich and powerful by that traffic; but have been in a declining way ever since the *Portuguese* brought the riches of *India* to *Europe* by the route of the *Cape*. The *Portuguese* also possessed themselves of the rich country of *Brazil* in *South America*. *John* III. the son of *Emanuel*, sent out a multitude of missionaries to convert the eastern nations, and among them was the famous *Francis Xavier*, who planted the Christian religion in *India*, *Persia*, *China*, and *Japan*, as well as on the coast of *Africa*, where the *Portuguese* have still numerous plantations and settlements; and he sent other missionaries to *Brazil* in *America*. His grandson *don Sebastian* transported a powerful army into *Africa*, at the instance of *Muley Hamet* king of *Morocco*, who had been deposed by *Muley Malucco*; and joining *Muley Hamet*, they attacked the usurper with their united forces, but were defeated; and *don Sebastian*, with most of the *Portuguese* nobility, and *Muley Hamet*, the deposed prince, were killed in the field of battle. *Muley Malucco* the usurper died of a fever the same day. *Don Sebastian*, leaving no issue, was succeeded by cardinal *Henry* his uncle, the only surviving male of the royal family; and he dying after a short reign of two years, *Philip* II. of *Spain* possessed himself of the kingdom of *Portugal*, in the year 1580, which he claimed in right of his mother, though the *Braganza* family were deemed to have a better title to the crown.

*PORTUGAL* remained under the dominion of *Spain* sixty years; and it was this that gave occasion to the *Dutch*, who had shaken off the *Spanish* yoke, to deprive the *Portuguese* of their settlements in the *Indies*, on the coast of *Africa*, and, in a great measure, of the *Brazils*; for the *Spaniards* looking upon *Portugal* as a conquered kingdom, took but little care of its concerns; and the *Portuguese* nobility, who had formerly shewn so much courage and constancy in the service of their native princes, were far from exerting themselves in the same manner for the support of strangers, who they plainly saw did not either use or wish them well. At last, tired out with the bad behaviour of those who were sent to govern them by the court of *Madrid*, they resolved to throw off the *Spanish* yoke at all events. *John* duke of *Braganza*, grandson to that duke who was competitor with king *Philip* for the kingdom, was raised to the throne of *Portugal* by the title of *John* IV. His subjects were no less steady and constant in supporting him upon the throne, than they had been universally willing and ready to raise him to it, though the *Spaniards* maintained a long war in hopes of recovering this kingdom: and though the *Dutch*, notwithstanding they



a they were then fighting for their own liberties against the same crown, prosecuted their designs in the *Indies*, and in *Brazil*, against the *Portuguese*. It is true that they lost several of their remaining settlements in *Asia*, and that it was with great difficulty they preserved *Goa*, *Bombay*, *Diu*, and a few inconsiderable places on the continent; but in the *Brazils* they had better fortune; the people preferred their government to that of the *Dutch*, and in a short time they recovered all they had lost in that quarter of the world.

b We must observe that, while the *Spaniards* were masters of *Portugal*, their maxims of making the most of the kingdom, while in their hands, ruined the trade, sunk the naval power, and brought the *Portuguese* plantations almost to nothing. An equal and just government is necessary, not only to raise, but to preserve these advantages to any nation, since, whenever that is wanting, they droop, dwindle and decay, like plants that remain unwatered, or children trusted to a mercenary nurse, that soon lose their flesh and colour, plain indications of the pains taken with them by an affectionate mother. To judge from effects may be a bad maxim in morality, but in politics it seldom fails.

c *JOHN IV.* died in 1651, without seeing an end of that war which his accession had occasioned. He left his dominions to his son *Alphonso VI.* then a child, under the tutelage of the queen dowager his mother. By the peace of the *Pyrenees*, the *French*, who had hitherto been the warm, and almost the sole allies of *Portugal*, engaged to give that crown no farther assistance; but their great regard to their own interest induced them, in direct violation of that article, to send the *Portuguese* greater assistance than they had ever done, under the command of marshal *Schombergh*, an officer of such capacity, that it might be truly said his single person was equivalent to a small army. He reformed many abuses, and introduced a new discipline among the *Portuguese* troops; so that, notwithstanding they had the whole *Spanish* force to deal with, yet they bravely defended their liberties, and gained two such signal victories at *Estremos* and *Villa Viciosa*, as convinced their enemies, that the desire of freedom may over-balance superiority of numbers. At last, in 1668, the *French* king *Lewis XIV.* falling, contrary to the faith of treaties, with a great army upon the *Low Countries*, the *Spaniards* found themselves under a necessity of making peace with *Portugal*, which was done under the mediation of king *Charles II.* of *Great Britain*, who had married the infanta *Catherine*, daughter to king *John*, and sister to king d *Alphonso*: by this treaty the crown of *Spain* renounced all her claims and pretensions to that of *Portugal*, and solemnly acknowledged the rights of the house of *Braganza*, which put an end to a disputed title, and restored peace to this country, after a war, or at least the interruption of peace, for the space of twenty-eight years.

e *ALPHONSO VI.* having attained the years, though not the discretion of a man, resolved to take the government of his dominions into his own hands, though his mother had ruled with great prudence, and himself could not but be satisfied of his own incapacity, which is said to have been owing to a long indisposition, that so much weakened his abilities, both in body and mind, as to render him equally unfit for the duties of a king and of a husband. Those who had pushed him upon these designs, and had no other view than that of governing the kingdom at their own will under his name, began next to infuse jealousies of his brother don *Pedro*, the presumptive heir of the crown; and are also said to have engaged him in such other low and shameful intrigues, as obliged the queen, a princess of *Savoy Nemours*, after she had cohabited with him for six months, to retire to a convent for the preservation, as she affirmed, of her honour and her life.

f THE infant don *Pedro*, considering the incapacity of his brother, the confused state of public affairs, and his own great peril, determined by the advice, and with the assistance and consent of the principal nobility, to secure the person of the king, and to take upon himself the administration of the government. This was accordingly done, and not long after the queen left her convent, and a dispensation having been obtained from the court of *Rome* for that purpose, espoused the prince don *Pedro*, who removed *Alphonso* to the island of *Tercera*, where he kept him confined under a strong guard; but caused him to be treated with the tenderness which he owed his brother, and the respect that was due to a king. However, some malicious tongues, in a few years, reporting the contrary, the prince caused him to be brought back to the castle of *Sintra*, within a day's journey of *Lisbon*, and there, under an easy custody, he was served and respected as a king. The prince was persuaded by many to assume that title himself, but inflexibly declined it, contenting himself with that of regent till his brother died, which was in 1683.

g KING *Pedro* had by his first queen, who had been his brother's wife, only one daughter, and by his second the princess *Maria Sophia*, daughter to the elector palatine, *John* prince of *Brazil*, and the infants don *Francis*, don *Antonio*, and don *Emanuel*. Don *Pedro* continued for many years to govern his subjects with great justice and moderation. A little before the peace of *Ryswick*, he offered his mediation to *Lewis XIV.* but received such an answer, as shewed plainly enough that *France* was resolved to reject it with a kind of disdain.



disdain. The *Portuguese* monarch thought fit to pass by the affront for the present; but it afterwards cost *France* dear. When *Philip V.* mounted the throne of *Spain*, the friendship of *Portugal* became not only expedient but necessary. Upon this occasion, *Lewis XIV.* was as obliging and civil as he had formerly shewn himself haughty and proud; and though don *Pedro* had already resolved on the part he was to take, yet considering how soon, and how easily he might be crushed by the forces of the two crowns, he entered into an alliance with king *Philip*, and this for various reasons. In the first place, it gained time, and delivered him from present danger; in the next, it gave an opportunity of gaining good terms, which might be of use to him on another occasion; and, lastly, he obtained by it some present advantages, which were very beneficial to his subjects. But as soon as the general confederacy was formed against *France*, and it clearly appeared that the allies meant to set up another king of *Spain*, the *Portuguese* monarch demanded of the *French* king, pursuant to a late alliance, a fleet of thirty sail of the line, and a large sum of money. He knew well enough, that as things then stood, those demands could not be complied with; but he wanted a pretence for breaking that treaty, without breaking faith, and this did his business very effectually; for as soon as the fleet of the allies appeared upon his coast, he thought fit to declare himself neuter, and not long after made a treaty with *Charles III.* but before any steps could be taken for prosecuting the war, he was removed by death, *December 9, 1706*, when he had lived fifty-eight, and from the death of his brother, had reigned twenty-three years.

*JOHN V.* succeeded his father, and pursued his steps very exactly, notwithstanding the *Spaniards* surprised the town of *Alcantara*, and made the garrison prisoners of war, almost before he was settled in the throne. The assistance he gave the allies brought the *Spanish* monarchy twice to the brink of ruin; and though most of our accounts say, that the *Portuguese* soldiers behaved but indifferently in that war, yet this ought not to be understood as a national reflection, farther than as long peace, great wealth, and much luxury, are capable of corrupting any people. While the war continued, the commerce of the *Brazils* began to grow much more considerable than in former times, by the working of the gold mines; and, as there was at that time a great intercourse between the two nations, the *British* traders obtained a large share of that gold for the commodities and manufactures with which they furnished the *Portuguese*. King *John* could not help seeing this with concern; he thought it hard they should have but a sight of the vast wealth derived from their own settlements, and that it should immediately vanish, as it were, out of *Portugal* into another country. His ministers were exactly of their master's opinion, and many consultations were held about finding a speedy and effectual remedy for what they considered as the greatest grievance. At length it was concluded, that the only method that could be taken was to prohibit the wear of foreign manufactures; and this had certainly been put in execution, if lord *Galway*, the commander of our forces in that country, though a *Frenchman* by birth, had not prevented it. He was a great favourite with his *Portuguese* majesty, and esteemed to be, as he certainly was, a very honest man. To him, therefore, as to a friend, and under the strictest injunction of secrecy, the king communicated this affair, and asked his advice about it. His lordship told him fairly, that the remedy would be worse than the disease; that the same providence which had given his subjects gold, had bestowed commodities and manufactures upon the *English*; that the exchange therefore was not so injurious as he imagined; and that, by prohibiting commerce, he might force those that were now his best friends to become his enemies, and to employ their naval power, which he knew to be so much superior to his own, in taking that by force for which they now gave a proper equivalent. He farther represented that, whatever turn the war might take, *Portugal* must always stand in need of the friendship of *England*, to prevent becoming dependent on the house of *Austria* or the house of *Bourbon*; and therefore it was much better that his subjects should trade with those from whom he had so much to hope, than with other nations from whom he had all things to fear. The king, who was both a reasonable and a just prince, and who in this business acted solely from a laudable affection for his subjects, comprehended the force of these arguments, and immediately laid aside a project, which how plausible soever in its first appearance, was certainly at the bottom neither equitable nor practicable. Happy for the world if all kings meant as well, deliberated as coolly, and were as ready to receive and follow good advice.

THE two crowns of *Spain* and *Portugal* were not reconciled thoroughly till the year 1737; and from this period they became every day more united, which gave much satisfaction to some courts, and no umbrage to any. In this situation of things, a treaty was made in 1750, with the court of *Madrid*, by which *Nova Colonia*, on the river of *Plate*, was yielded to his Catholic majesty, to the great regret of the *Portuguese*, as well on account of the value of that settlement, as because they apprehended their possession of the *Brazils* would



a by this action be rendered precarious. On the last of *July* the same year, this monarch; worn out by infirmities, deceased in the 61st year of his age, and in the 44th of his reign.

b Don *Joseph*, prince of *Brazil*, succeeded him, to the universal satisfaction of his subjects, and with as great expectations as ever any monarch that mounted the throne. It was generally believed that he would make considerable alterations, in which he did not disappoint the hopes of the public; and yet they were done so slowly, with such moderation, and with so many circumstances of prudence, as hindered all grounds of complaint. Amongst other new regulations, the power of the Inquisition suffered some restriction; the king directing, that none of their sentences should be put in execution till reviewed and approved by his privy-council. But as in the reign of his father he had consented to the treaty with *Spain*, c he ratified it after his accession, and has since actually carried it into execution upon this noble principle, that no considerations of interest ought ever to induce a monarch to break his word.

HOWEVER, within the space of the few years of this king's reign, the calamities of *Portugal* in general, and those of the city of *Lisbon* in particular, cannot, in a great degree, be paralleled in all history.—An earthquake, a fire, a famine, an assassination-plot against their prince, executions upon executions, the scaffolds and wheels for torture reeking with the noblest blood; imprisonment after imprisonment of the greatest and most distinguished personages; the expulsion of a chief order of ecclesiastics, the invasion of their kingdom by a powerful, stronger, and exasperated nation; the numerous troops of the enemy laying waste d their territory, bringing fire and sword with them, and rolling, like distant thunder, towards the gates of their capital; their prince ready almost to save himself by flight!—The *Spanish* ministry had already decreed the doom of *Portugal*, and nothing was to be heard at the *Escurial*, but *Delenda est Carthago*. *Carthaginian*, perhaps, or *Jewish* story, may possibly afford a scene something like this, but, for the shortness of the period, not so big with events, though in their final destruction superior. From that, indeed, under the hand of Providence, the national humanity and generosity of *Great Britain* has preserved the *Portuguese*; and it remains now to be seen, in future treaties, how that people will express their gratitude. Those who are able to search deeper into human affairs, may assign the causes of such a wonderful chain of events; but no wise man will ascribe all this to so singular a cause as that e which a *Spaniard* has done, in a famous pamphlet, printed in the year 1762, at *Madrid*. It is entitled a *Spanish* Prophecy, and endeavours to shew, that all these calamities have befallen the *Portuguese*, solely on account of their connection with the heretic *English*. The great ruler and governor of the world undoubtedly acts by universal laws, regarding the whole system, and cannot, without blasphemy, be considered in the light of a partizan. The rest of the pamphlet tends to shew, that his Catholic majesty carried his arms into *Portugal*, solely to give them liberty, and set them free from *English* tyranny.

As for the interests of *Portugal*, they may be divided into political, with regard to their possessions in *Europe*; and commercial, with respect to their dominions in *Asia*, *Africa*, and *America*. As to the first, there is no doubt that it consists in maintaining peace; a point, e to which his late majesty remained always well inclined, and thereby preserved quiet to his subjects in the midst of all the broils of *Europe*. But, as the family-compact of the house of *Bourbon* towards the close of the late war, threatened the destruction of *Portugal*, and may hereafter do the same, that kingdom is under a necessity of living upon good terms with the maritime powers, and more especially with *Great Britain*. It is, indeed, saying no more than truth, that there is scarce any instance in history of a more lasting and sincere friendship, than has subsisted, for near a century past, between the two crowns; and, indeed, it is their mutual interest that it should subsist; so that while it continues, and while *Great Britain* maintains her superiority at sea, *Portugal* can hardly ever be in danger. The safety, independency, and prosperity of *Portugal*, must depend either upon her maintaining a strict conjunction with her natural allies, or upon her acquiring a strength sufficient to maintain herself, without having recourse to any foreign assistance; but, as the latter is a thing very difficult to do, so beyond all question, till it can be brought about, it will never be good policy in this crown to run any hazard as to the former. Till *Portugal* therefore acquires f a naval force superior to that of her neighbours, she must, in some measure, depend upon that of *Great Britain*, and consequently, it is directly contrary to her true interest to take any step whatever that may be either prejudicial to that force upon which her own safety depends, or which may weaken those ties experience has shewn to have been hitherto strong enough upon any emergency to intitle her to that assistance.

As to the commercial interest of the *Portuguese*, it lies now chiefly in the *West*, as it did g formerly in the *East-Indies*; and, in respect to *Brazil*, their strength is so great, that they have no reason to apprehend any thing from their neighbours: the only danger to which they are exposed is from an insurrection of their own negroes, which might indeed have very bad consequences. In the present state of things, this colony is the most profitable in the

Interests political and commercial of *Portugal*.



world, since considering the proportion between the two kingdoms, *Portugal* draws more profit from her *Brazils* than *Spain* from both *Mexico* and *Peru*. It is otherwise in regard of *Asia*, where, from an empire of almost incredible extent, the *Portuguese* dominion is in a manner shrunk within the narrow bounds of the little peninsula, at the point of which stands the city of *Goa*. Their traffic on the south-coast of *Africa* is still very considerable.

IN the whole, it may be said, that whatever affects the commerce between *Great Britain* and *Portugal*, operates to the disadvantage of both, as well by lessening naval force, which depends upon trade, as by weakening the connections that unite the two nations, of equal consequence to both. We ought to support *Portugal*, because it is our interest to preserve her independent. But still it is not our interest to do it more than other *European* nations; for they are all as much interested as we are in the preservation of the balance of power in the south as well as in the north; and they have besides all advantages in common with us in the commerce of that country. *Hamburg* enjoys almost as great a trade with *Portugal* as *England* does: *Holland* a very great one; and so do *Sweden* and *Denmark*; and yet all of them sat as indifferent spectators during the last scene of the troubles of *Portugal*. Hence may be seen the insignificance of the plea urged by interested people with regard to *Portugal* that was before urged with regard to *Hanover*; which is, that it was an invasion in consequence of her connections with us. But the cases are not parallel, nor are the pleas in either sufficient; for *France* did not enter *Germany* in the late war as the foe of *Hanover*, having not declared war against that state; nor had *Spain* any right to force *Portugal* from her desired neutrality. It is well known, that the present Catholic king considers himself as lineal heir, in right of his mother, to the crown of *Portugal*; and it was long ago foreseen, and foretold, that he would seize the first favourable opportunity that offered for asserting that claim. This opportunity offered from the then embroiled state of *Europe*, the distressed condition of *France*, which constrained her for her own safety, to be an assistant in a project that she otherwise would have opposed with all her might; our own too much exhausted condition; the mercenary disposition of the *Dutch*, which influences their inattention to every thing but the security of present gain; and, above all, the weakness of *Portugal*, from her preceding great calamity; these were the motives that induced *Spain* to attack *Portugal*. It was no war with her upon our account. *Spain* rather forced a war with us, in order to form a pretence for attacking and seizing *Portugal*.

Government  
and laws of  
*Portugal*; and  
genius, &c. of  
the inhabi-  
tants.

THE king of *Portugal* may be now considered, as well as the king of *Spain*, as an absolute prince. The Cortes have long since sold their part in the legislature to the crown, and only serve to confirm or record such acts of state as the court resolves upon; to declare the next heir to the crown when the king is pleased to nominate him, or to ratify treaties with foreign princes who may still deem their consent of any weight. The laws of *Portugal* are all contained in three small volumes; and are founded on the civil law, and their particular customs. As to the genius, customs, manners, &c. of the *Portuguese*, they resemble those of *Spain*, of which they were a province. Their religion is the same, and there are a proportionable number of convents. A patriarchate has lately been erected at *Lisbon*, which is the only difference between the ecclesiastical government of *Spain* and *Portugal*. It is not long since the present king, having no male issue, has married his eldest daughter, the princess of *Beira*, with the pope's dispensation, to his brother don *Pedro*.

#### C H A P. IV.

##### Of France.

Situation, extent, and boundaries of  
*France*.

THE kingdom of *France* is most advantageously situated in the middle of the temperate zone, and extends from the 42d degree and  $\frac{1}{2}$  of latitude to the 51st; containing in breadth, according to the observations and calculations of some of the members of their Royal Academy of Sciences, about 13 degrees of longitude; namely, from the extremity of *Brittany*, near the island of *Ushant*, that is, from *Conquet*, which lies 5 degrees west of *London*, to *Strasburg* in *Alsace*, which is about 8 degrees east of *London*. *France* therefore contains in length, from the *Pyrenean* mountains in the south, to *Dunkirk* in the north, 8 degrees and  $\frac{1}{2}$ , that is, 170 leagues, or 510 miles, reckoning twenty leagues, or sixty miles to a degree of longitude; and in breadth, from the uttermost point in *Brittany* to *Strasburg* in *Alsace*, about 165 leagues, or 495 miles; but its breadth decreases considerably, going from *Brest* to the south, and to the north. On the north, it is separated from *England* by the *British* channel; on the north-east it is contiguous to the *Netherlands*; on the east it borders on *Germany*, *Switzerland*, *Savoy*, and *Piedmont*, from the last of which it is separated by the *Alps*; on the south it is bounded by the *Mediterranean-Sea*, and by the *Pyrenean* mountains, which divide it from *Spain*; and on the west it is surrounded by the ocean.



- <sup>a</sup> THE air is very temperate and wholesome, and not subject to the great cold of *Germany*, *Sweden*, and *Muscovy*, nor to the excessive heats of *Spain* and *Italy*; but it is more or less hot or cold, according to the different situation of the several provinces. In the southern parts, as in *Dauphiny*, *Provence*, and *Languedoc*, the winters are generally very sharp, but do not continue long; and the seasons in *France* are much more regular than they are in *England*. There is no country in *Europe*, says *La Martiniere*, more beautiful, nor more pleasant to live in than *France*. There you may behold high mountains, the *Pyrennees*, the *Alps*, the mountains of the *Cevennes*, of *Auvergne*, and some others, together with several fine rivers which run through it, and render it very fruitful. It abounds with corn, fruit, wine, oil, herds of cattle, tame and wild fowl, hemp, and flax: the sea-coast furnishes the inhabitants with abundance of fish, and with a quantity of salt sufficient for them and their neighbours. There are also mines of lead, iron, and copper; and some gold and silver; but these are not suffered to be worked, because the profit would not answer the expence. The salt is chiefly made in the isle of *Rhee*, about *Rochfort*, and on the coast of *Saintonge*.

*Air, fertility, and produce.*

- <sup>b</sup> THE kingdom of *France* was generally divided by geographers into twelve governments; but as the number is much larger, we shall follow for greater accuracy father *Buffier's* account, who reckons thirty distinct governments, each of which has a particular governor independent of all other persons but the king. Of these thirty governments, there are eighteen in the circuit of the kingdom, and twelve in the middle. Those in the circuit may be divided into four parts according to the four cardinal points of east, south, west, and north.

*How divided.*

- <sup>c</sup> ON the east, are five governments, namely, 1. *Alsace*, 2. *Franche-Comte*, 3. *Burgundy*, 4. *Lyonnois*, and 5. *Dauphiny*.

ON the south, are also five governments, as 1. *Provence*, 2. *Languedoc*, 3. *Roussillon*, 4. The county or earldom of *Foix*, and 5. *Bearn*.

ON the west, are the same number of governments, which are, 1. *Guienne*, 2. *Saintonge*; annexed to *Angoumois*, 3. The county of *Aunis*, 4. *Poitou*, and 5. *Brittany*.

ON the north are but three governments, but equal, at least in extent, to five of the others; these are, 1. *Normandy*, 2. *Picardy*, and 3. *French Flanders*.

- <sup>d</sup> THE twelve governments in the middle of *France* may be considered as placed on the three sides of a triangle, the point of which is towards the south, on the borders of *Auvergne* and *Limousin*; and thus we find four governments on each side of the triangle, viz.

ON the east, 1. *Champagne*, 2. *Nivernois*, 3. *Bourbonnois*, and 4. *Auvergne*.

ON the west, reckoning from *Auvergne*, 1. *Limousin*, 2. *La Marche*, 3. *Berry*, and 4. *Touraine*.

TOWARDS the north, 1. *Anjou*, 2. *Maine*, 3. *Orleannois*, and 4. *The Isle of France*.

- <sup>e</sup> IT would lead us beyond the bounds we have prescribed for ourselves, to describe the particular provinces, counties, districts, or cities, contained in each of these governments; so that we shall content ourselves in regard to *France*, which is an extensive country, with taking a cursory view of its principal sea-port towns, and some other places of note, first giving a general idea of its particular subjects and articles of trade and commerce.

THE productions of *France*, as subjects of trade, are 1. Wines of *Champagne*, *Burgundy*, *Bordeaux*, *Rochelle*, *Nantes*, and other places on the *Loire*. 2. The produce of the wines, as brandy of *Bordeaux*, *Nantes* and *Rochelle* vinegar, and lees of wine. 3. Fruit, such as prunes and prunelloes, dried grapes, pears and apples in *Normandy*, oranges and olives in *Languedoc* and *Provence*. 4. Corn, salt, hemp, flax, silk, rosin, oil, cork. 5. Kid-skins in abundance, perfumes, extracted oils, drugs, and chemical preparations. 6. They have also minerals and metals of divers kinds, and are daily discovering others; and they are become great artists in the smelting and refining them, and perform these operations to as great perfection as any other country.

*Productions and manufactures of France, as subjects of trade.*

- <sup>f</sup> THE manufactures of *France* are 1. Silks, as lustrings, alamodes, sarcenets, broad, flowered, and brocaded silks, velvets. 2. Woollen manufactures, in imitation of those of *England*, which are chiefly carried on in *Normandy*, *Poitou*, *Languedoc*, *Provence*, *Guienne*, and some other parts. 3. Linen, such as *Normandy* canvas, sail-cloth, at *Vitry* and other places; doulasses at *Morlaix*, and fine linens and lace in the inland provinces. 4. Paper of all sorts. 5. Tapestry, which they make very rich and fine in *Picardy*, and near *Paris*. 6. Soap, which they chiefly make in *Provence*, and which is so considerable an article, that when their crop of oil fails, they fetch a prodigious quantity from the *Levant* to supply the soap-makers. The *French* have, for some years past, obtained the secret from *Spain* of making *Castille* soap, as it is called, and have set up very large manufactures thereof both at *Marseilles* and *Toulon*, and have thereby beat the *Spaniards* out of that valuable branch of trade.

<sup>g</sup> Nor is this the only benefit which *France* receives by this manufacture; for, as one of the chief ingredients of making this soap, is *Levantine* olive-oil, together with the ingredients of *sosa* and *barilla*, their large vent for their soap gives them the advantage of constant

back-



back-freights from the *Levant*, with these oils ; which, it seems, has proved one great, if <sup>a</sup> not the only means of the *French* advancing their *Turkey* trade upon the ruins of our's ; for, we having no such manufacture of *Castille* soap, that will consume such quantities of *Levant* oil as the *French*, we can neither trade with the *Turks* so much to their advantage as the *French* do, nor so much to our own, as if our *Turkey* traders had the like benefit by constant back freights.

Inland trade  
of France.

As *France* is certainly the most populous and extensive kingdom in *Europe*, so its inland traffic is proportionate, and, in many particulars, far beyond any country in *Europe* ; being carried on with great ease and little expence, by means of many large navigable rivers. Five rivers empty themselves into the *Seine*, and this so near to *Paris*, that goods are brought thither from some of the remotest parts by these rivers. These are the *Marn*, <sup>b</sup> *Aisne*, *Logn*, *Oyse*, *Yonne* ; besides the canals of *Orleans* and *Briere*, and by them from the *Loire* ; also up the *Seine* by *Rouen* from the sea ; so that, by these rivers, the traders of *Paris* can receive heavy goods from most of the northern parts of *France*, also from *Lorraine*, *Burgundy*, *Picardy*, *Normandy*, and *Brittany*, at very easy rates. The *Loire*, without comparison, the largest river in *France*, and the farthest navigable, and on which stand the largest and most capital cities of the kingdom, *Paris* excepted ; conveys their wines down from all the wine-making provinces to *Nantes*, and, in return, furnishes those countries with all necessary goods for the merchants and traders of those parts. The *Rhone*, an inland river of a long course, takes in the *Soan* and the *Doux* from *Burgundy*, and the *Durance* from *Dauphiny*, and supplies all the province of *Languedoc*, as well as *Burgundy* and the *Swiss* cantons, with merchandize from all parts of the world. The *Garonne* does the same in *Guienne*, *Gascoigne*, *Poitou*, and *French Navarre*. But the home-trade of *France*, which well deserves our regard, is their coasting trade by sea, in order to bring the product of the south parts of *France* to those of the north, for the supply of the great city of *Paris*, and of all the northern provinces ; and this, indeed, is a very considerable, as well as material part of their trade ; and, next to the coal trade of *England*, is, perhaps, the greatest article of its kind in *Europe*, and employs more ships and more people. The principal ports for this commerce are the cities of *Bordeaux* and *Rouen* ; but many other places share in the trade by the way, both in the out-loading, and in the returns. The first ships are loaded at *Bordeaux* with wines and fruits of all sorts, and all other products of the southern provinces ; and there setting out in a fleet, and under convoy, in time of war, stop at *St. Martin's*, and the *Ile of Rhé*. Here they are joined by the ships from *Rochelle*, laden also with wines and fruits of all kinds, as well as with corn, which the adjacent country supplies. Hence they proceed to the coast of *Brittany*, and anchoring at *Belleisle*, are joined by another fleet from *Nantes*, *Skerrant*, and *St. Malo*, laden with white wines, brandy, and corn : though generally the ships from *Nantes*, &c. take care to be ready for the convoy, and to be at *Belleisle* before them. The fleet thus gathered, and sometimes even during a war, make up from 150 to 200 sail, and they proceed to the mouth of the *Seine*. The ships designed for the trade of *Paris* put in at *Havre*, and, taking the opportunity of winds and tides, make the best of their way up to *Rouen*, while the rest separate for their respective <sup>c</sup> ports, as *Caen*, *Dieppe*, *St. Valery*, *Bulogne*, *Calais*, *Dunkirk*, &c. These are the chief ports where they unload. The gross of their loading is delivered in this manner ; and from these places the wines are dispersed over all the northern provinces of *France* and the *Netherlands* ; for *Dunkirk* being a free port, all the merchandizes destined for *Flanders*, on board these coasting-vessels, are dispersed from *Dunkirk* by the canals and rivers with which that country abounds. Nor is this coasting-trade only thus considerable in one fleet, but it is passing and repassing all the year, especially in the autumn after the vintage.

It would be endless to enumerate the cities and towns which supply *Paris* with their manufactures ; but though the commerce of this royal city is mighty considerable, yet being no sea-port, it is not the center of the trade of the whole country, as is the case of <sup>f</sup> *London*, *Amsterdam*, and some others of the principal cities in *Europe* ; nor is it possible to be so, the extent of the country being so exceeding great. However, *Paris* being the most populous city in *France*, there being, as computed, near a million of people, and near half as many more in the adjacent towns, for ten or twelve miles round it : this great confluence of people must necessarily cause a proportionable accumulation of provisions and merchandizes, brought as well by the *Seine*, as by other rivers, from the remotest countries in *France*. And though there is no trade of malt in *France*, which makes so great an article in the corn trade of *England*, the *French*, drinking little malt liquor throughout the kingdom ; yet, as the *French* usually eat more than double, if not treble the quantity of bread, in their ordinary way of diet than the *English* do, so the quantity of <sup>g</sup> wheat and barley may rise something in proportion, and, perhaps, near equal to that of both wheat and malt in *England*, considering the number of people in both countries. The quantity of corn produced therefore in *France*, in a plentiful year, must be extremely great ;



a great; and then they supply *Germany, Switzerland, Geneva*, and several other parts with corn: yet, if either an extraordinary hot or wet summer happens, their crop is injured, and a scarcity ensues; and they are less able to support the want of corn than other countries, and are much more oppressed on such occasions than the *English* would be, who having so plentiful a supply of flesh, roots, and malt liquor, are able to live with the least bread of any nation in *Europe*. In these times of scarcity in *France*, the greatest quantity of corn brought to *Paris* comes up the *Seine*, being imported at *Rouen*, and other ports not far from that river, from *England* or *Holland*; or else at *Nantes*, and brought up the *Loire* by the canals beforementioned.

THERE is another centre of inland commerce in *France*, which has not an immediate communication with *Paris* by water, except by a very long circuit, and that is in the south, and south east parts of *France*, and the centre of this trade may be placed at *Lyons*: for *Lyons* is seated, in some respects, in regard to commerce, like *Paris*; it is nearly at the same distance from the sea; and upon as great, or rather a greater river, though not so happily navigable as that part next the sea, by reason of the violence of the current, and the weakness of the tides. As the navigation, however, respects inland commerce chiefly, it is happily supplied by the canal of *Martigues*, so that there is no want of larger shipping; and, for goods of foreign importation, they are conveyed by the ports of *Marseilles* in *Provence*, and that of *Cette* in *Languedoc*, sufficient for that part of the trade. The confluence of the *Soane* and the *Rhone*, which meet at *Lyons*, gives an advantage of inland navigation to that city, from a very great extent of the country round. The first receiving the river *Doux* from *Burgundy*, and even from the frontiers of *Alsace*, commands all the trade of that part of *France*, till they come so near the *Loire* and the *Seine*, that a small voiture by land makes a communication that way; and the manufactures of this part of *France* are conveyed, by either of these rivers, into the north parts of *France*, and to *Paris* itself. Nor on the west-side is it above eight leagues, till meeting with the waters of the *Lot*, a navigable stream in the *Gevaudan*, which runs into the *Garonne*, their goods are likewise conveyed to *Bordeaux* by water, and from thence by sea, not only to *Paris* but to *England*; also to *Holland*, and most other parts of the world. Next to the *Soane* and the *Doux*, which particularly maintain a trade with that part of *Burgundy* called the *Franche Comté*, the navigation of the *Rhone* itself brings to *Lyons* all the commerce of the city and lake of *Geneva*, and all the adjacent cantons of the *Swiss*; from whence there is a great and constant return of trade, especially from the city of *Geneva*, which particularly manages the rest of the trade from all the *Swiss* cantons, and brings to *Lyons* abundance of manufactures, as well from *Switzerland* as from the *Rhine*, by the navigation of the *Aar* and other rivers; whereby *Geneva* has a communication with the *Upper-Alsace*, *Suabia*, and other parts of *Germany*. Also, by the *Durance*, a large river, and though very rapid, yet made useful for part of its channel, the trade is supplied into *Dauphiné* and *Provence*, even to the mountains of *Pignerol*, and thence to the *Po*, and by that river into *Piedmont* and *Italy*. It may be here observed, in regard to *Lyons*, that the distance from the rivers *Soane* and *Rhone* to the *Loire*, the *Seine*, and the *Garonne*, by which the communication is maintained with *Bordeaux*, *Nantes*, *Paris*, and other parts of the kingdom of *France*, make the trade of that city not so difficult as it would otherwise be; and so again, for *Lyons* receiving the *Turkey* raw silk, and *Italian* thrown silk, &c. is likewise easy from *Marseilles* to *Avignon*, where it is embarked on the *Rhone*, or from *Marseilles* to *Martigues*. This commodiousness for inland commerce is exceeding beneficial to *Lyons*, and renders it a city of very great consequence to the kingdom; for, as *Paris* is to the north of *France*, so is *Lyons* to all the southern provinces, as *Dauphiné*, *Provence*, all the *Upper-Languedoc*, *Burgundy*, or the *Franche-Comté*, *Neufchatel*, and also *Geneva*, *Savoy*, and the *Swiss-Cantons*. By the same inland navigation, the city of *Lyons* drives a very considerable trade in the woollen manufactures made in *Languedoc*, about *Nismes*, *Beaucaire*, and other places; and which are brought up the *Rhone* at the proper seasons, and sold at the fair at *Lyons*. In like manner, the wines of *Burgundy*, and of *Champagne* also, are brought down the *Soane* and the *Doux* to *Lyons*, and sent from thence to all the principal cities of *Languedoc* and *Guienne*.

Foreign trade of France.

WE shall now consider how the kingdom of *France* is situated in regard to its coasts for foreign trade; and how extensively she carries the same on in *Europe, Asia, Africa*, and *America*. The *French* coast in the *Mediterranean* sea begins opposite to *Perignan*, which is the first city on that side, under the *French* government; and the first port in *France*, on this side, though of no consequence, is port *Vendre*. *Perignan* is a frontier of *Roussillon* by land, and of importance, in case of a war against *Spain*; on which account the *French* have made it very strong. The sea, on the coast of *Roussillon*, and onward to *Montpelier*, is called the gulph of *Narbonne*. The city of *Narbonne* is particularly famous for the finishing that great work of a navigation between the two seas, that is, the joining the

Narbonne.



*Cantabrian* and the *Mediterranean* sea together, by a canal. This work was set on foot by *Lewis XIV.* a prince born for great undertakings. It was fifteen years in completing, from 1666 to 1681, and cost an immense sum. All difficulties were surmounted; vallies were filled up, mountains and hills levelled, and the boats continue to pass and repass with great ease, for the benefit of commerce. Between the river *Aude*, and the mouth of the *Rhose*, there lies, parallel with the sea, a lake thirty miles long, and from three to five broad, extending from the river *Erant*, and the city of *Agde* west, almost to the mouth of the *Rhose* east. *Agde* is a small city on the river *Erant*. The port is small; yet they have some ships, and they export wine and oil; and, within these thirty years, their trade has increased. In the middle of this lake there is an opening into the sea, which makes a very good port called *Cette*. Here ships of burden may come in; and, the royal canal being carried on from *Narbonne* to *Agde*, the merchandize, which is brought from *Italy* to be sent by the canal to *Bordeaux*, is generally landed at *Cette*; and thence carried by the lake to *Agde*, and put on board barges for the canal.

*Marseilles.*

BETWEEN *Cette* and *Marseilles*, the great river *Rhose* empties itself into the sea. The fame of the city of *Marseilles* for commerce is well known all over the world. It is indeed, the only trading city and port of note in the south of *France*. It lies about 50 leagues east of *Narbonne*. The harbour is spacious and good, and receives the largest ships, though sometimes the biggest are obliged to lighten their loading a little before they come in. The city is fine, large, populous, and rich, and is rendered so particularly by its commerce; the whole *Italian* and *Turkey* trade of *France* being carried on here. *Lewis XIV.* as he well knew the importance of this city, so he took it into his particular favour, and gave such directions for beautifying it, and for encouraging men of trade and business to resort to it, that *Marseilles* became quite a new city to what it had been. The key is said to be one of the finest in the world, except that of *Seville* in *Spain*. The fortifications are so prodigiously strong that no others scarce equal them: by sea, nothing can hurt the city, and by land, it would require 100,000 men to attack it in form. But, after it was visited with a plague in 1723, this city suffered a great eclipse, and its commerce decayed for near a twelve-month unspeakably, not a ship being suffered to pass or repass, nor would any nation admit them to come into their ports; so that the poor were left to starve, and the sailors perished miserably at sea; but it has since surprisingly recovered itself, and now daily advances in commerce. The *French* trade to *Turkey* and *Egypt*, as also to the coast of *Africa*, and to all the islands of the *Archipelago*, centers at *Marseilles*. They have also a considerable trade to *Venice*, *Genoa*, *Leghorn*, *Naples*, and *Sicily*; and they have consuls at almost all the islands and ports in the *Mediterranean*, *Marseilles* being the only city of *France* for trading in those seas; but above all for the *Turkey* trade in general, wherein, at present, they exceed all other nations, and have surprisingly supplanted the *English*.

*Toulon.*

*TOULON*, a port town of *Provence*, is situate on a bay of the *Mediterranean* sea, twenty-five miles south east of *Marseilles*. It has the most secure and capacious harbour of any port in *France*. Here the largest ships of the royal navy of *France* are built and stationed, and here vast magazines of all manner of naval stores and timber for shipping are repositied. Here likewise are the finest docks and yards, for the fitting out and furnishing ships of war, in the whole world perhaps. In *Toulon*, there are academies for the marine guards, where they are taught navigation; and there is a royal foundery for cannon and mortars, and all manner of utensils for cannoneers and bombardiers. They had in the harbour of *Toulon*, when the confederates laid siege to it in 1707, sixteen first rate men of war, eight second rates, twenty-four third rates, and six fourth rates; all which the *English* had very probably taken, if the *Germans* had not detached 15,000 men to *Naples*, which were intended to constitute part of the army to form that siege. From hence to the coast of *Nice*, and the frontiers of the dominions of the duke of *Savoy*, *France* affords nothing considerable.

*Isles of Hieres.*

THE isles of *Hieres* lie off the coast, under the west part of which there is a good road for the largest ships; and where the *English* fleet lay many months in 1744, and blocked up the *French* and *Spanish* fleets in the harbour of *Toulon*; and, on their quitting that harbour, the combined fleets were engaged by admiral *Matthews*, before whom they fled to the coast of *Spain*, and would have been destroyed if he had not been deserted by one of the *English* admirals, and several of his captains: but, on the shore, no towns of note, or ports of trade, are found, till we come to the cape of *Antibes*, on the east-side of which lies the city of *Antibes*, the last in *France*. It lies at the bottom of a small gulph; but the harbour is not very good, nor is the trade considerable.

*Dunkirk.*

ON the coast of *France*, from *Dunkirk* to *St. Malo's*, and from thence to *St. Sebastian*, are *DUNKIRK*, once a very formidable place for strength, and terrible to all *Europe*; but its fortifications were destroyed by the treaty of *Utrecht*, and being since in a great measure re-instated, were again to undergo the same fate by the late treaty of *Paris*. Nothing supports this town at present, but its being a free port, and the neighbourhood of the city of *Lille*; which



- a which being a rich and great city, and for its wealth and number of people, called *Little Paris*, has no other port but that of *Dunkirk* to carry on its trade at.

*CALAIS* is the easternmost town of the antient kingdom of *France*, and was once a very considerable place, being long contended for between the crowns of *England* and *France*; but the port, not being capable of receiving ships of burden, has very little trade, unless in the smuggling way by small craft.

- b *BOULOGNE* is a large town, and stands on the sea-shore; but as the river is small, is no port of any consequence. It lies in a large bay bearing its own name. The channel is here thirty miles over, reckoning from about *Romney* in *Kent* to the bottom of the bay of *Boulogne*. There are some merchants here, and it is particularly eminent for the manufacturing trade, but highly injurious to *Great Britain* for one article of it; the bringing of *English* wool over from *Romney-Marsh*, in *Kent*; a trade, which the *French* find so much their account in, that they have long experienced it to be their interest to give great encouragement to the *English* smugglers; and all the vigilance of the government, which has been remarkably severe upon this occasion, has not been able to put an effectual stop to it, though it is certainly of late very greatly checked. As *Romney Marsh* is the place where it is ordinarily shipped off, so this town of *Boulogne*, and the coast all along the bay, from *Boulogne* to the mouth of the *Soane*, the principal river of *Picardy*, is the usual place where it is brought on shore. Nor have the *French* the advantage of the *English* wool only, but it is observable, that they have constantly many *English* workmen among them, especially such as we call in *England* master-manufacturers; and these being brought over from *England* by the influence of extraordinary rewards and encouragements, and having the *English* wool to work on, have brought the *French* to a proficiency in the woollen manufactory, that may in time prove the ruin of the like trade of this kingdom.

*DIEPPE* is a fine town, and the best for trade next to *Dunkirk* on this part of the *French* coast. Before the late war, they had in particular a considerable trade to *Newfoundland*, and to the *French* settlements in *North-America*. Their ships often unlade at *Havre*, in the *Seine*, for the convenience of sending their cargoes up the river to *Rouen* and *Paris*. However, when they are unladen, they come with more ease into the haven of *Dieppe* to lay up, where they have water enough when they are in, and are laid safe. The seamen of *Dieppe* are accounted the best sailors in *France*.

- d *ROUEN*, being the sea port to *Paris*, becomes of course a great, rich, and flourishing city. Its trade is extraordinary, and consists of divers branches, in respect both to its foreign as well as home parts, especially in the linen and woollen manufactures, and in the latter more eminently. It has a great trade with *Ireland*, particularly for leather, butter, tallow, and other products of that country. Its coasting-trade has been already mentioned.

- e *HAVRE-DE-GRACE* stands at the mouth of the *Seine*, and is said to be the port to the city of *Rouen*, as *Rouen* is to the city of *Paris*, the merchants here laying up their ships, which are too large to go up so far in the river. It has the most considerable share in the fishing-trade of any port in *France*, principally to *Newfoundland*, the *North-seas*, and for the herring-fishery, not only in the channel, but on the back of the sands off *Yarmouth*; and since the *French* king laid high duties on the *Yarmouth* fish, they have wonderfully improved in curing them in the *Yarmouth* way, to our no little detriment.

*CAEN* is the first port beyond the mouth of the *Seine* west. It is a small port, but a pretty large city, and, having a communication with the *English* channel, does not want commerce, though not to the advantage of *England*. The navigation of this coast, as far as the island of *Alderney*, is safe and easy; afterwards there is need of good pilots.

- f *ST. MALO* is a city of commerce, and inferior to none that *France* has in the ocean. The road for shipping and the harbour are safe and convenient, which, with the commodious situation, open to the *British* channel; make it a place of the best trade to *France* on this coast; the merchants here, particularly in the wars of queen *Anne*, were some of the richest in all *France*, being deeply embarked in the *South-sea* trade at that time. In our late wars with *France*, their privateers have proved a great grievance to us by frequent captures of our merchant-ships. It was before the last war a flourishing place of trade, especially for the *Newfoundland* fishery, also to *Martinico*, to *Quebec*, and, indeed, to most of the *French* colonies in *America*. It is situate in the bottom of a large bay, extending from cape *La Hogue* to the *Seven Isles*, after which the land falls away to cape *Ushant*. Between these lies the town of

- g *MORLAIX*, at the mouth of a river of the same name. It is large and beautiful, full of people and trade, the port good, the channel deep, and ships of above 100 tons come up to the key. The best printing and writing paper in *France* is said to be made here. In fine, the increase of commerce has greatly increased the wealth, the splendor, the happiness of the place, which are ever the invariable effects of it.

*BREST* is a place of consequence upon this coast, being the largest and most capacious road



road and harbour that *France* is possessed of on the ocean. It is also the best defended, and safest harbour in *France*. Here the *French* fleets are oftentimes laid up, though the greatest of their men of war generally go to *Toulon*. Here are warehouses and magazines to lay up naval stores for 100 sail of ships of war of the line, and some of eighty and ninety guns have been built here. *France*, in the year 1690, had a royal navy at *Brest*, equal, if not superior to all the naval power of *England* and *Holland* united. It offered them battle, which they declined. The inlet of the sea, which forms the harbour of *Brest*, is very large, the waters every way deep, and the anchorage good.

Mouth of the  
Loire.

THE next place of consequence on this coast is the mouth of the river *Loire*. The towns of note on or near the *Loire*, below the canal of *Orleans*, and before it comes to *Nantes*, are *Orleans*, *Blois*, *Amboise*, *Tours*, *Saumur*, and *Angers*, all of them large trading cities. No country, except the *Netherlands*, can shew seven such cities, on the banks of one river, under one sovereign, and in so small a compass of territory.

Rochelle.

ROCHELLE, on this coast of the ocean, is a considerable port of trade, though unfortified, for reasons too well known. This city was once the strongest in the whole kingdom, and, on account of its opulence and splendor, for years the bulwark of the *French* Protestants. It supported their interest in the civil wars in *France*, during five kings reigns, and at length defended itself with almost incredible bravery and resolution, against the whole power of *France*, the *French* king *Lewis XIII.* besieging it in person: nor would the *Rochellers* have been reduced at last, if we may credit history, had not the *Dutch*, though Protestants, and some *English* ships too, been hired by the *French* to maul their fleet, and deprive them of assistance by sea; whereas they were before masters of the sea, and all the naval power of *France* was not able to match them. But their fleet being beaten, and the promised succours of the *English* failing, cardinal *Richelieu* contrived a sea-wall to be made, and carried it on with invincible industry, to block up their harbour. Thus being deprived of all relief, they were obliged to submit, by the extremity of famine, 20,000 people having perished here, in the year 1628, for want of bread. Though *Rochelle* on this occasion lost all its privileges, the Protestant religion being banished the place, and its fortifications demolished, it continued afterwards, and still does to be a place of considerable trade, full of wealthy merchants, whose commerce extends to most parts of the world, but especially to the *West-Indies*, *Martinico*, *St. Domingo*, and *Quebec*, before the late war: from hence also was a very great part of the *Newfoundland* trade carried on, and likewise that of their *Mississipi*. The *French East India* company too made use of *Rochelle* as a port, though not always, for the return of their ships from *India*, and for disposing of their cargoes.

Port-Lewis.

PORT LEWIS is a harbour deserving our notice, and, if it had stood on the north part of *France*, in *Normandy*, or *Picardy*, would have been worth a kingdom itself; but as it stands on the coast of *Brittany*, to the south of *Cape Ushant*, where *France* has many good harbours and safe roads for shipping, as well for war as commerce; such as the harbours of *Brest*, *Rochelle*, *Nantes*, *Bourdeaux*, &c. and the roads of *Conquest*, *Belleisle*, *St. Martin*, and others; this makes *Port Lewis* the less regarded. It is, however, populous and rich, and has many wealthy merchants, especially such who trade pretty largely to the *West Indies*; and being a good harbour, is likewise a station for part of the royal navy, and for the ships of the *French East-India* company.

Nantes.

NANTES stands thirty miles within the land, upon the north bank of the *Loire*, which is here a very spacious and noble river, has a deep and safe channel, and makes a fine harbour. It has a flourishing trade, both domestic and foreign, few towns in *France* outdoing it. The great exportation of wines and brandies from hence are the capital constant articles upon which *Nantes* chiefly depends. It is scarce credible to conceive how considerable the trade is, both of brandies and wines together; insomuch that it is an usual thing to see two or three hundred sail of ships in the *Loire* at a time, taking in wines and brandies.

THERE is no port of any consequence between *Rochelle* and the river *Garonne*, nor upon the *Garonne*, except

Bourdeaux.

BOURDEAUX, which is forty miles up that river. This is an exceeding large and populous city, and is so spread by vineyards, as to be accounted not less than twenty miles long. The tide flows quite upto the city of *Bourdeaux*, and brings ships of good burden to the very key. It stands on the south of the river *Garonne*. The trade here is chiefly for wine, and that in such prodigious quantities, that when our trade with *France* was open, it had been ordinary to see four or five hundred ships in the river at a time, loading wines for *England* only, and for other nations many more. Hence came the clarets and strong wines of *France*, as those of *Pontac*, *Graves*, *Frontiniac*, *Carveac*, &c. being the names of the vineyards, or of the towns where the vineyards are, the wines taking their names from the towns, or from the persons who own them. They have also a considerable traffic here to the *West Indies*, as particularly to the *French* sugar colonies in *America*, and they



a they have many sugar-bakers, which has brought them a great trade for refined sugars, both at home and abroad.

BAYONNE is the last considerable town in the *French* dominions. It is an antient, spacious, opulent, and populous city, has a great trade both in *France* and with *Spain*, and with many other parts in *Europe*. Its fine harbour in the mouth of the river *Adour* reaches into the very heart of the city, and is so deep and safe, that the largest ships come up to the very merchants doors; and the entrance into it is secured by a strong castle, regularly fortified, *Bayonne* being a frontier both by land and sea, for it is within fifteen miles of the frontiers of *Spain*.

Bayonne.

Thus we have seen how *France*, by its situation, has the advantage for commerce of all the nations on this side the globe, *Britain* excepted. To the prodigious number of their people must be joined the temper and genius of the nation; they are vigorous, active, industrious, and even in trade as well as war, an enterprizing people. So greatly have they increased their trade since the peace of *Utrecht*, that they now carry their wines and brandies into the *Baltic*, where formerly the *Dutch* sent them in *Holland* bottoms; and the *French* bring their naval stores from *Livonia*, *Prussia*, and *Petersburg*, in *French* ships, where before that treaty no *French* ships had scarce ever been seen. The *Hans Towns* now have little or no share in furnishing *France* with iron and copper, with timber, pitch, or tar. The *French* also now trade with *Sweden*, as other nations do, and to *Dantzic*, and have greatly increased their commerce in *Russia*, as well as their neighbours. With all these advantages of situation, extent of land, and numbers of people, *France* has laboured, from the beginning of its commerce, under two difficulties, which rendered it next to impossible to produce any considerable staple manufactures, unless these difficulties could be effectually surmounted. These were the want of a competency of wool, and of silk, the two fundamental articles in the general manufactures of *Europe*, and such too, which the *French*, from the activity and industry of their people, were well disposed to fall into; but wanting these fundamental natural productions in ample quantities, suffered the discouragement many years, with no little affliction; for they fell into the silk manufacture to a very great degree, encouraged by the *Italians*, when the *French* were masters of the *Milanese*, in the reign of *Francis I.* and though they bought their silk in *Italy* and *Turkey*, as they still do in some quantities; yet all the southern parts of *France*, especially the *Upper Languedoc*, the *Lyonnais*, and part of *Dauphiny*, were employed in the manufacture of silk, and greatly improved in it, spreading it into *Champagne*, and even to *Paris* itself. This was from about the year 1520. But at length, the *French* conquered this difficulty. By the means of some *Piedmontese*, who became subjects to *France* after the seizure of *Pignerol*, in the reign of *Louis XIII.* they first began to plant the white mulberries in *Languedoc*, and part of *Provence*; and, nourishing the silk-worms with unspeakable industry, and being greatly encouraged by the court in the reign of the late *Louis XIV.* they, after many years spent in the first experiments, at length brought the same to perfection, and produced the silk itself in good quantities, which is now become a natural produce of *France*, as it was before of *Piedmont*, and other parts of *Italy*, who originally borrowed it from the *Asiatics* of *Armenia* and *Georgia*, as the *French* did from them, and as the *English* most certainly might from them both, and effectually establish the same in our colonies on the continent of *America*. But it has not proved the same in *France* with regard to the produce of wool, which as to quantity and quality is far from being equal to that of *England* and *Ireland* in general. The *French*, a vigilant, and improving people, being sensible how deficient they were in the article of wool, obtained sheep from *England* and *Ireland*, as they had wool, in order to try the possibility of raising wool, by the means of our sheep, as good in quality, and as large in quantity in general, as our wool is; but hitherto they have been disappointed, though it is said there is at present in *Normandy* another grand attempt on foot to accomplish this design. We are apt to flatter ourselves with the impossibility hereof, yet we may one day find ourselves mistaken. The examples brought from our bull-dogs, hounds, and mastiffs, all which are said to alter their nature upon change of climate, supposing these things to be matter of fact, do not, perhaps, afford any thing conclusive with respect to the article of sheep. We shall not, however, enter into the philosophy of this matter; nor would it become *Britons* to be instrumental to let such rivals into a secret of that kind, was it in their power. Certain it is, that *France* still labours under the want of this essential production, to the degree that we have it. They have wool, indeed, of their own growth in great quantities, since the success of their woollen manufactories; and in some places, as with us, it is better than in others, as in *Upper Languedoc*, *Poitou*, *Guienne*, and those provinces lying towards *Burgundy*; but the best has been said not to be qualified for near so estimable a manufacture as ours is in general, neither will it mix or work with the foreign wools so well, the staple being too short, and the wool itself weak, and not sufficiently strong to bear the several needful operations of combing, carding,

Rise and progress of the trade of France, and to what owing.



and weaving, to that perfection which ours does; so that the manufactures, when made of the best of it, are thin, slight, and not of that substance, duration, and beauty, as those made of the *English* and *Irish* wool. Yet this disadvantage by nature has not discouraged this nation from attempting the woollen manufacture in every branch; for, since they have not wool so good in general as ours, they have been long determined to have our *English* and *Irish* wool, which being properly mixed with their own, or properly worked by itself, they have had art enough to impose their woollen manufactures upon several other parts of *Europe*, even for *English* fabrication. This supplying *France* with *English* and *Irish* wool was first brought about by the indefatigable endeavours and profound policy of their great minister *Colbert*, to whom we owe that pernicious trade of owling, as it is called, or the running of wool from this kingdom into *France*. He first set the poor to work all over *France*, in combing, spinning, weaving, and dyeing of wool and woollen goods. And what was soon the consequence of this? the *French* king saw all his subjects clothed, however indifferently, with the manufactures of their own country, who, but a few years before, bought their cloaths from *England*, or, which was worse, at second-hand from *Flanders* and the *Dutch*. This commercial minister also decoyed, by rewards and encouragements, *English* artists into every part of *France* where it was found most proper to establish these manufactures; and there they taught the people so well all the several parts of the manufacture, and the *French* were so apt to learn, and so dexterous and chearful in teaching each other, that, in a few years, they could do without *English* instructors. Being thus able to furnish their own people, to clothe the nobility and gentry, nay, even the king himself, for he would wear nothing that was not the manufacture of his own subjects; they not only, in a few years, excluded the *English* woollen manufactures from their country by a law, but began to turn their eyes abroad, and prepare to rival the *English* in all the foreign markets of *Europe*, as in *Spain*, *Portugal*, and *Italy*, as also in *Asia* and *Africa*, but especially in *Turkey* and *Barbary*. To effect this, the great *Colbert* took these measures: he first informed himself of the several sorts of the *British* manufactures sold in every foreign market, of which he had pieces and patterns brought him; and he erected particular works for making these very goods; and, what was another master-stroke of politics, he wisely encouraged the merchants to export them, by causing credit to be given them out of the public stock, that is, by the king, even till the return for these goods came home. This was particularly done with the *Turkey* merchants at *Marseilles*, who had credit out of the royal treasury till the returns of their ships from *Smyrna* and *Scanderoon*; by which politic encouragement the *Marseillians* first supplanted the *English* in the *Levant* trade, wherein we are too sensible they have surprizingly increased ever since.

HAVING thus far given a pretty ample account of the *French* commercial concerns, we shall now consider the inhabitants as to their history, and some other interesting particulars.

Origin of the  
French.

THE want of literature, in the earlier ages of the world, has made it extremely difficult to discover the origin of nations. The best that can be learnt of that of *France* is that it was peopled after the flood by the posterity of *Gomer*, the eldest son of *Japhet*. These growing numerous composed many nations, to whom the *Greeks* and *Romans* gave the general name of *Galli* or *Celtæ*. Under that name they were known in the time of *Tarquinius Priscus*, the fifth king of *Rome*, and possessed a country of very large extent, comprehending not only all present *France*, but part of *Italy* also, as far as the river *Rubicon*, which falls into the *Adriatic* sea between *Ravenna* and *Rimini*, and all that part of *Germany* and *Belgium*, that lies within the river *Rhine*. The *Gauls* remained subject to the *Roman* empire from the time of *Julius Cæsar* till the *Franks* or *French* entered it. These were a warlike people of *Germany*, who possessed all the country that lies between the *Rhine* and the *Wefer*, and from the *German* ocean in the north, to the river *Maine* in the south. They consisted of the nations of the *Sicambri*, *Bructeri*, *Salii*, and *Cherusci*, who conquered the country beyond the *Maine*, and making the banks of the river their chief seat, gave the name of *Franconia* to the country now called so. The first notice of them in history under the denomination of *Franks*, is in the reigns of *Valerian* and *Galienus*, about the year of Christ 260; after which they are frequently mentioned on account of their plunders and pillage in *Gaul*. *Constantine the Great* took their kings *Ascaric* and *Ragaisè* prisoners, and exposed them to wild beasts, for having violated their faith in making war against the *Romans*.

ABOUT the year 412, the *Armerici*, who inhabited the maritime provinces of *Gaul*, as *Flanders*, *Picardy*, *Normandy*, and *Brittany*, revolted from the *Romans*; they were joined by the *Franks*, who by that means possessed themselves of the *German* and *Belgic* provinces of *Gaul*, which the *Romans* were forced to grant them. Soon after this they chose *Pharamond* for their king. He reigned ten years, and had his seat in *Gaul*; but about the time of his death, the *Romans* beat the *Franks* out of *Gaul* again, and took from them the lands they had given them; which *Clodion* the son and successor of *Pharamond* endeavoured



a vowed to regain ; but he was beaten back by *Attilus* the Roman general. *Clodion* was some years without undertaking any thing, having chosen for the place of his residence the castle of *Disparg* on the other side of the *Rhine* ; but hearing by his spies, that there were no gar-  
risons in the towns of the *Belgica Secunda*, now the territory of *Rheims*, he set out immediately with his army, and keeping his march secret, made himself master of *Bouay*, *Cambray*, and some other neighbouring places.

*MEROTEE* succeeded *Clodion*. In his time *Attila* king of the *Huns* invaded *Gaul* with a numerous army ; for the relief of which *Merotee* joined his forces with those of *Attilus* the Roman general, and of *Theodoric* king of the *Visigoths*, who all together fell upon *Attila*, and in battle killed 200,000 of his men, as historians report, and drove him out of *Gaul*.  
b *Attilus*, who was the great support of the Roman power in *Gaul*, was soon after massacred by *Valentinian*, who himself was killed by *Maximus*. This put the Roman affairs into such disorder, that *Merotee* had time to extend his conquests, which he did over all *Picardy*, *Normandy*, and part of the *Ile of France*. His son *Childeric* took *Paris*, *Orleans*, and several other cities, and established the French monarchy. *Clovis* his successor freed the French wholly from the Roman power, and gave the name of *France* to all the country that reaches from the *Rhine* to the *Loire*.

AFTER the death of *Clovis* the dominion of the *Franks* was divided into two parts, viz. *Ost-ick*, or the Eastern Kingdom, called by corruption *Austria* and *Austrasia* ; and *Westerick*, or the western part or kingdom, called *Neustria*. The former contained all *Old France*, and the country beyond the *Maine*, which they had conquered, together with *Rheims*,  
c *Chalons*, *Cambray*, and *Laon*, which was from that time a separate kingdom, the seat of which was *Metz* in *Lorraine*. *Aquitaine* was not comprized under the name of *France*, nor *Burgundy*, even after it had been conquered, nor *Britannia Armorica*, at least the Lower, as being an independent state. *Neustria* contained all the country that lies between the *Meuse* and the *Loire*, which was again divided into three kingdoms. 1. Of *France*, the capital of which was *Paris*. 2. Of *Orleans* ; and 3. Of *Soissons*. When the French had afterwards subdued the *Visigoths* and *Burgundians*, the kingdoms of *Aquitaine* and *Burgundy* were erected. All these kingdoms were several times united and divided, as the royal family happened to be more or less numerous. But the title of kings of *France*, historians have given to those  
d only who ruled at *Paris*.

THERE are reckoned three races of these monarchs. The first is called the *Merovingian* from *Merotee*, who, putting aside the children of *Clodion*, caused himself to be chosen king, and fixed his regal seat in *Gaul*. This race continued during the reigns of nineteen kings, and ended in *Childeric III.* who being a very weak man, was degraded by the assembly of the states, and *Pepin*, the son of *Charles Martel*, maire of the palace, was elected in his stead. With him begins the second race, called the *Carlian*, or *Carlovingian*.

THE maire of the palace was an officer of great dignity and power. He was at first chosen by the nobility, and confirmed by the king, and was intrusted with the management of all affairs of state. The power of the maires became in time almost absolute ; for by reason of the weakness and supineness of the kings, they increased it as they pleased, so that  
e at last, it became hereditary. *Pepin* and his son *Charles*, surnamed *Martel*, both successively maires of the palace, were in a manner kings themselves, during the reigns of *Dagobert II.* *Chilperic*, *Cloaire*, and *Thierry* ; and after the death of *Thierry*, *Charles* made himself chief governor, with the title of maire and duke of the French ; in which posts he was succeeded by his sons *Carloman* and *Pepin*, during an inter-regnum of six or seven years ; and after the deprivation of *Childeric*, *Pepin* obtained the royal dignity.

PEPIN was succeeded by his son *Charlemagne*, or *Charles the Great*, an epithet the noble actions he performed very justly deserved ; for it was he that conquered the barbarous inhabitants of the most northern parts of *Germany*, and established Christianity and civil government among them, after he had overcome *Wittikind*, the last king of the *Saxons*. He also  
f conquered the *Bell*, or *Bavarians*, became king of *Germany*, and in the pope's quarrel carried his arms into *Italy* against *Desiderius* king of *Lombardy*, who attempted to diminish the papal power, and make himself king of *Italy*. *Charles* defeated him, seized his kingdom, and was crowned king of *Lombardy*. He also conquered the *Saracens* in *Spain*, and the *Huns*, *Danes*, and *Normans*, who infested his own countries, and was finally chosen emperor by the *Romans*, being crowned as such on *Christmas day*, in the year 800. Thus he erected a new western empire, and made himself the greatest prince in the world. But this mighty monarchy was in a little time reduced to its former limits ; for his son *Lewis the Debonnair*, or *Meck*, divided the kingdom of *France* among his three sons, the kingdom of *Italy* having  
g been given during the life of *Charles the Great*, to *Bernard* the natural son of *Pepin*, one of that emperor's children, but who died before him. After the death of *Bernard*, *Lewis the Debonnair*, having taken his son *Lutherius* into partnership of the empire, gave him also the kingdom of *Italy* ; his son *Pepin* he made king of *Aquitaine*, *Lewis* king of *Bavaria*, and  
*Charles*



*Charles* king of *Rhætia*. Though some of *Charles the Great's* posterity succeeded in the empire, yet his family degenerating, they not only lost that title, but *Charles*, surnamed *the Simple*, the great grandson of *Lewis the Debonnair*, was for some time kept out of the throne of *France* also, by *Lewis* and *Carloman*, his bastard brothers; and after them by the emperor *Charles the Fat*, and by *Eudes* earl of *Anjou*; and though he obtained it at last, he could not enjoy it quietly, being forced to resign it to *Radolph* of *Burgundy*, who kept it two years, and after his death the son of *Charles the Simple* was restored. But his son and grandson were disturbed by *Hugh Capet*, earl of *Paris* and *Anjou*, and maine of the palace, descended from *Eudes* abovementioned, who after the death of *Lewis the Painless*, or *Lazy*, was chosen king by the assembly of the states held at *Noyon* in the month of *May* 988, and began the third, or *Capetine* race of the kings of *France*, which is still upon the throne. b

*LEWIS IX.* a direct descendant from *Hugh Capet*, and who, on account of his various expeditions against the Infidels, obtained the surname of *St. Lewis*, died in 1270, and left two sons, *Philip* and *Robert*. The latter espoused *Agnès*, daughter of *John III.* son to *Hugh* duke of *Burgundy*, by the heiress of *Arkamhault*, *seigneur de Bourbon*. This lordship coming thus to *Robert* count of *Clermont*, son to *St. Lewis*, in right of his wife's mother, he thereupon assumed the name of *Bourbon*. His family succeeded to the crown about 300 years afterwards, on the murder of *Henry III.* the last monarch of the house of *Valois*, by *James Clement*, a Dominican friar, in the person of *Henry* king of *Navarre*, who was the ninth in descent from *Robert* count of *Clermont*, and whose claim to the crown was clear, as next heir male, all the other branches from the other stock being extinct, and none remaining but women, or princes descended from the women, who by the *Salic* law cannot inherit the crown. This prince, by the style of *Henry IV.* and *the Great*, annexed to the crown of *France*, *Bearne*, *Bigorre*, and the counties of *Foix* and *Bresse*, which were his private patrimony. Being assassinated by *Ravaillac*, on the twenty-fourth of *May* 1610, he was succeeded by his eldest son *Lewis XIII.* whose son *Lewis XIV.* born *September* 5, 1638, succeeded him in the throne *May* 14, 1643, and was crowned at *Rheims* *June* 7, 1655. He died *September* 1, 1715, and was succeeded by *Lewis XV.* his great grandson, born *February* 15, 1710; for the dauphin, son to *Lewis XIV.* died of the small pox, *April* 14, 1711, and the duke of *Burgundy*, son to the dauphin, died *February* 18, 1712, six days after his duchess. They left two sons, the eldest of whom died the 8th of *March* following; so that when the present king of *France* was born, there were three heads between him and the crown, who all died within less than a year. c

Character  
and govern-  
ment of the  
princes of the  
house of  
*Bourbon*.

THE *French* history since the accession of the house of *Bourbon*, which contains but four reigns, may be said to include almost all that need be known of the general history of *Europe*. *Henry IV.* in respect to public affairs, was a great and good prince; he loved his subjects as his children, promoted trade, and maintained justice throughout his territories. He was not inclined to disturb or injure his neighbours; but, rather contented with his own dominions, he was so far persuaded, that a steady and unalterable balance of power was for the common benefit of *Christendom*, that in the latter end of his reign and life, he formed a design to establish it, and to cut off pretences for wars in succeeding times, by means of a perpetual congress. In order to this, he thought it requisite to lessen the power of the house of *Austria*, by depriving it of those dominions acquired without any just title in *Italy*, which he proposed to have erected into separate principalities, as most conducive to a general peace, and the common benefit of the inhabitants. But while he meditated these great and glorious projects for the good of mankind, and had assembled in *Champaigne* a numerous army, which was on the very point of marching to put them in execution, a period was put to his days and schemes by an infamous assassin, in the fifty-seventh year of his age and twenty-second year of his reign. d

*LEWIS XIII.* his son, enlarged the royal authority far beyond its ancient and legal bounds. This was the great, the distinguished character of his reign. Before his time, the nobility were potent, and even the meanest of the people were in some measure free; but at his decease the royal authority had almost swallowed up all; and men's safeties and fortunes, as well as power and preferment, depended on the will of the king and his ministers. Yet such was the abject flattery, or rather ridiculous folly of those times, that his subjects bestowed on him the surname of *Just*; as if he had been more careful in observing the laws, and maintaining the ancient and legal constitution of *France*, than any of his predecessors; whereas in fact, he did more towards destroying it, than all the kings that had reigned before him. It is true, this did not proceed so much from himself as from his minister cardinal *Richelieu*; but that minister could have done nothing without the assistance of his authority; and if he had preferred the welfare of his subjects to the possession of boundless power, he would never have given into his schemes. Cardinal *Mazarin*, the creature and disciple of *Richelieu*, pursued his master's instructions, if not with equal genius, yet with much greater cunning; so that in the space of thirty-seven years, for so long e



- a long the ministry of these two cardinals lasted, the design of rendering the government of *France*, which in former times resembled the other governments of *Europe*, an absolute monarchy, was brought to bear, not more to the oppression and misfortune of those, who from being subjects only, were made slaves thereby, than to the terror and confusion of all Christendom ever since. It may hence appear, that the personal characters of princes are not of any great consequence in altering of governments. *Lewis XIII.* was, in parts, very far inferior to *Henry the Great*, and yet he acquired much more power by listening to the suggestions of a minister, who governed him, whereas his father governed his ministers as well as his subjects. There are very great qualities requisite in a prince who aims himself at overturning a constitution; but passive obstinacy is a quality not hard to be met with, and this conducted by a designing minister will do the work full as well.

- b THE cares of his successor, *Lewis XIV.* after the conclusion of the peace of *Utrecht*, were such as ought to have been the cares of his whole life: they were bent to secure the succession of the royal family, and to restore the trade and welfare of his subjects, to both which he appeared now very solicitous; nor did he make any scruple of confessing, that experience had convinced him of the error of his former conduct, and the follies of which he had been guilty, in preferring his own grandeur to the good of his people, and the lustre of his reign to the safety of the state. Before this period, as a king, he was ambitious with respect to his neighbours, arbitrary towards his subjects, and boundless in both. With regard to the former, he had no tie but interest; and to the latter, no law but his will. He intirely subverted the constitution of his country. He left the princes of his blood without power, and his parliaments without authority. The force of his kingdom he reduced to a standing-army; the property of his subjects he rendered precarious, and every rank of them intirely dependent upon the will of his successor, under whom the same maxims have been invariably pursued, though with the shew of greater lenity and moderation, the prince being naturally good, but weak.

- c THE greatest lawyers, and best historians of *France* agree, that the power of their kings was anciently restrained, not only within narrower bounds than at present, but, in reality, they were as much limited as any monarchs could be. That in all governments, supreme and absolute power is, and must be lodged somewhere, we find generally agreed; that, according to the old constitution in *France*, this did not reside in their princes, but in the general assembly of the states of the kingdom, as in all other *Gothic* constitutions, is certain. But, as it was found inconvenient to hold these general assemblies very frequently, so, to hinder the encroachments of their kings while they were not sitting, part of their powers were transferred to certain committees, which gave rise to the parliaments of *France*, and particularly to that of *Paris*, which was at first ambulatory, that is, attended the person of the king; but, in process of time, was fixed to that city for the convenience both of prince and people. The antient prerogatives of this assembly plainly prove, that as representatives of the states, the sovereignty was really in them, for amongst others they had these three. First, they judged the peers and great men of the kingdom, over whom the king in this respect had no power; for in case they were suspected of failing in their duty to the constitution, they were to be tried by their equals, according to the known law of the kingdom. Secondly, all the great officers of state took their oaths in parliament; from which it is manifest, that they were bound not to the person of the king, but swore to him in his political capacity, and for the general benefit of the state. Thirdly, they had the right of registering, approving, and promulgating the king's edicts, without which they had not the sanction or force of laws. These instances unquestionably demonstrate, that according to the *Gallic* constitution, their kings were not absolute; but all these checks are now taken away. The assembly of the states is a thing no longer heard of; and as for parliaments, they are but shadows of what they were, or rather, are now become the instruments of that power they were instituted to restrain.

Antient constitution of France.

Rise of the parliaments of France.

- f THE liberty of the subject is entirely at the mercy of the king; he imprisons whom he pleases, without giving any account; and, whenever he finds it requisite, appoints such judges for the trial of offenders as he thinks fit. The great officers of state take their oaths to and from him; so that they now belong intirely to the king, who appoints, removes, extends, or retrenches their authority as he pleases. The registering of edicts is become a mere matter of form; the parliaments do, indeed, sometimes remonstrate, but in the end the king's will and pleasure always prevail. Thus it is, that the whole government of this great nation has been, by the arts of cardinal *Richelieu*, drawn intirely into the hands of the crown and its ministers, the utmost pains having been since taken to reduce it into such a system, that this power might influence the whole, and keep every branch thereof in a strict and constant dependence.

Absolute power of the king.

- g WE have heard much of the *Gallican* church, and of its freedom; but from the time of cardinal *Richelieu*, this freedom is become a mere engine of state, by the help of which the

State of the Gallican church.



king has sometimes made use of the power of the clergy, and at other times of that of the pope, to extend his own. It was with a view to this, that the protestants of *France* were in general expelled, by revoking the edict of *Nantz*. *Lewis XIV.* was resolved to make himself supreme in church as well as state, the true reason why he would admit of no dissenters; and he and his successors have carried this into execution, notwithstanding the nominal authority of the pope, which was often made use of by them, and cannot now be turned against the king. The clergy of *France* are, however, a very great and considerable body. They consist at present of 18 archbishops, and 113 bishops, all named and appointed by the king; who has likewise the nomination of 770 abbies, and of the superiors of 317 convents of nuns. This must give the crown great influence over that part of its subjects, which were formerly the least attached to it. The ordinary revenue arising from the tenths of the clergy, amounts to 1,200,000 livres *per Annum*; besides which, in the general assemblies of the clergy, free gifts are so constantly expected even in times of peace, that this additional revenue is computed annually at two millions; but in time of war the extraordinary free gifts render it much more.

Civil and political governments.

As to the civil government, the king has a great council of state, and twelve parliaments, besides others courts, such as Generalities and Intendancies, for the management of the revenue; of the former there are twenty-six, and of the latter more. As for the political government, it is managed by several great councils, or rather committees of council, of which there are at present four, which are stiled the council of state, the council of dispatches, the royal council of finances, and the royal council of commerce. The first civil officer in *France* is the chancellor, and the only officer that is not removeable at the king's pleasure; that is, he cannot be removed without being brought to a trial; but the king may, and frequently does, take the seals from him, and put them into the hands of another, with the title of keeper and power of chancellor. There is generally a person at the head of the ministry, either with or without the title of prime-minister, and with more or less authority, as the king pleases. For the management of public affairs, there are four principal secretaries of state, for the separate departments of foreign affairs, domestic concerns, war, and the marine. The principal officer of the revenue is the comptroller-general of the finances, who has under him a multitude of intendants and other officers, subject to the direction of the council of finances. The ordinary revenue of the crown is generally computed at six millions sterling; but in time of war a much larger sum is levied.

Military establishment.

As the ecclesiastical and civil government was moulded in the compass of two reigns, into such a form as made the *French* wholly subservient to the purposes of the crown; so the military establishment, as it now stands, was intirely the work of *Lewis XIV.* for, before his time, a few companies of guards, and four old corps, as they are still called, were all the standing troops of *France*. It was by the help of his standing army, that he gained so many and great advantages over his neighbours, and annexed several conquered provinces to his dominions; which, at the same time, afforded him an opportunity of increasing the number of these regular troops, and of covering his frontiers on every side with abundance of strong fortresses.

Reflections on the premises.

THE grandeur of the crown, which with some impropriety is in that country stiled the glory of *France*, appears to be the ultimate aim of the *French* ministers; not but by the wise regulations that have been made since the accession of the house of *Bourbon*, *France* may vie with, and even surpass in the perfection of its police, all the other states of *Europe*: but to speak impartially, it is, indeed, on keeping up this spirit, that the peace and safety of the government, as it is now administered, depends; and it is impossible for the *French* court to drop her influence abroad, without manifestly hazarding her quiet at home; so that to expect a *French* monarch should adhere strictly to treaties, and relinquish all views upon his neighbours, is to expect a golden age; a thing that may be wished even by the wise, but which fools themselves can never hope to see. The *French* power was at its greatest height at the time *Lewis XIV.* made the peace of *Nimeguen*, or a very little after. All the succeeding wars exhausted that nation prodigiously, though its views, in some measure, might have been served by them; and if we consider the distresses of *France* before the last definitive treaty of peace, we cannot help saying, that her glory or grandeur, which occupies so much her cares and attention, was scarce ever eclipsed to the degree it had been in the late war: her armies were beaten in every quarter of the globe; her fleets sunk, shattered, and made captive, and her public credit was almost expiring: so that whatever her resources may still be, it is certain, the advantages she enjoyed before the war will hardly be recovered in a course of years.



C H A P. V.

Of Italy, and Switzerland.

- a** **I**TALY is bounded on the west by the *Alps*, which separate it from the adjacent provinces of *France*; on the north it is likewise bounded by the *Alps*, and on the east by the dominions of the house of *Austria*; on the one side it is washed by the *Mediterranean*, from the county of *Nice* to the coasts of the kingdom of *Naples*; and on the other by the *Adriatic* and the gulph of *Venice*; a narrow streight divides it from the fruitful island of *Sicily*, which, however, has been in all times reckoned a part of it. From the frontiers of *Switzerland* to the extremity of the kingdom of *Naples*, it is about 750 miles in length; and from the frontiers of the duchy of *Savoy*, to those of the dominions of the state of *Venice*, which is its greatest breadth, about 400, tho' in some parts it is scarce a fourth part so broad.
- b** THE soil and climate, in different parts, are as opposite as can well be imagined. In *Switzerland*, and the county of the *Grisons*, the mountains are as high as in any part of *Europe*; the earth barren, and the air bleak and sharp; the plains of *Lombardy* again are justly stiled the garden of *Europe*, as well on account of their fertility, as the serenity and pleasantness of the climate; in the dominions of the church, and in the kingdom of *Naples*, the heat in summer is excessive, to which, however, they are indebted for the richest fruits, and the most odoriferous flowers, as well as oil, wine, silk, and other valuable commodities. There are few countries in the world better watered than this, in respect to springs, rivulets, small and great lakes, as well as large rivers. Thus bountifully dealt with by nature, it has also, from the ingenuity and application of its inhabitants, been esteemed the mother of arts and commerce, in respect to the rest of *Europe*; its reputation
- c** is still so high with regard to the first, that the tour of *Italy* is considered as the necessary conclusion of a polite education; and, in reference to the latter, though the trade of *Italy* is now nothing to what it was, yet the ports of *Genoa*, *Leghorn*, *Naples*, and *Venice*, to say nothing of those in *Sicily*, make still a very great figure; and derive vast advantages to the sovereigns in whose dominions they are situated. Besides all this, the several countries of *Italy* have such funds of natural riches, and the people are so happy at improving, as well as inventing manufactures, that they stand in need only of some favourable juncture to revive their ancient spirit, and to make as great a figure as their ancestors did in comparison with other nations.
- d** THIS great and fruitful country of *Italy* has been, as high as history records, either the seat of empire, or the theatre of war. It was then in the same situation that it now is, cantoned out into various little states and republics, all living in distrust, at least, if not in war with each other. The *Roman* commonwealth changed the face of things by swallowing up all, and making herself the head and mistress of *Italy*. The division of her empire proved the ruin of it, and the provinces adjacent to *Italy* being lost, the barbarous nations that conquered them very soon became masters even of the imperial city of *Rome*, and divided *Italy* once more into separate principalities, all of which have been extremely subject to revolutions, sometimes from the superior power of foreign invaders, and as often from the effects of intestine commotions; so that no history is fuller of events, and consequently more capable of gratifying curiosity, and fixing attention, than that of this
- e** country.
- THERE is no kind of government subsisting in any part of *Europe*, of which something of the like kind is not to be found in *Italy*. As to the sovereignty of the pope, it is peculiar to this country, being vested in a spiritual person, and yet altogether a temporal power, exercised as absolutely, and, as is generally supposed, with more policy, than in any other monarchy. The dominions of those two crowned heads (for as yet there are no more) that lie within its limits, are those of his *Sardinian* majesty at one end, and of the king of the *Two Sicilies* at the other. The duchy of *Milan*, once the largest and richest in this part of the world, together with the duchy of *Mantua*, and its dependencies, belong to the house of *Austria*. His imperial majesty is considered as one of the *Italian* powers, not only
- f** in that capacity by which he claims a title, paramount to the greatest part, if not the whole, but particularly also as grand duke of *Tuscany*. The infant duke of *Parma* is in possession of a settlement, composed not only of that duchy, and of *Placentia*, which was the patrimony of his ancestors by the mother's side, but likewise of *Guastalla*. His serene highness the duke of *Modena* holds that duchy and *Reggio*, together with the duchy of *Mirandola*; and besides these, there are some other lesser princes who would take it ill if they were not stiled sovereigns. The republic of *Venice* is an unmixed aristocracy, still venerable for the wisdom

Boundaries  
and extent  
of Italy.

Soil, climate,  
arts, com-  
merce, &c.

General  
history.

Government.



wisdom of its government, as heretofore formidable by the extent of its dominions, as well as a great naval force. The republic of *Genoa* is an aristocracy also, but not quite so pure as that of *Venice*. The *Swiss* cantons, the *Grisons* their allies, and the city of *Genoa*, are so many different republics, each having its particular form of government, but owing their strength to their confederacy, which renders them truly great and formidable. There are besides these two free states, the dominions of which are surrounded by those of sovereign princes, to whom notwithstanding they owe no obedience, or even homage; the first of which is the commonwealth of *Lucca*, in the neighbourhood of *Tuscan*, and the latter the republic of *St. Marino*, in the midst of the pope's territories. Such is the distribution of power in *Italy*; and in supporting this distribution, and maintaining each of these princes and states in their respective rights, so as to prevent their encroaching upon each other, or being overborne by a foreign force, consists the preservation of the balance in *Italy*. We shall now consider all these states separately, according to their distinct governments, beginning first with the dominions of the king of *Sardinia*. a

Dominions of  
the king of  
*Sardinia*.

THE dominions of his *Sardinian* majesty, considered as duke of *Savoy*, and prince of *Piedmont*, have been always regarded as the key of *Italy*, on the side of *France*; and in latter times this prince has been justly looked upon as the natural master of the balance in *Italy*. Not that his dominions even now, when by various acquisitions they are become much superior to what they were under any of his ancestors, qualify him to give law to his neighbours, or even to secure himself from the bad effects of a general alliance against him; but upon the score of its being his interest to affect peace rather than war; and because while he remains firm to his own interest, reason and experience shew, that he will never want allies willing to give him all the assistance he needs for the preservation of his own territories, and maintaining that system upon which their security and his own grandeur must always depend. His dominions in *Italy*, and contiguous to it, consist principally of *Piedmont*; some districts acquired by conquest or treaty; *Savoy*, and the island of *Sardinia*; of the last we shall speak in our account of the *European* islands. b

*Piedmont*.

*PIEDMONT* is bounded on the east by the duchies of *Milan* and *Montferrat*; by the territories of *Genoa*, and the country of *Nice*, on the south; by *High Dauphiny*, and part of *Savoy*, on the west; and by the duchy of *Aoste*, and part of the *Milanese*, on the north. The river *Po* divides it into two parts. Its length, from north to south, is about 130 miles, and breadth from east to west, where broadest, about 94 miles. It reaches from 43 deg. 25 min. to 45 deg. 50 min. of latitude, and from 7 deg. to 8 deg. 30 min. east longitude. It is a very rich and fertile country, and one of the most pleasant and plentiful in all *Italy*. It produces great abundance of corn of all sorts, wines, and fruits in great variety; also hemp, flax, saffron, mulberries, to feed great quantities of silk-worms, silk here being a great manufacture; and affords besides good store of cattle, some metals, and, in a word, plenty of every thing fit for man's use and delight; and it is so well peopled, that the *Italians* are wont to say, that the duke of *Savoy* has but one city in *Italy*, 300 miles in compass. c

*Savoy*.

THE duchy of *Savoy* is situated between *France* and *Italy*, on the west side of the *Alps*, bounded by the lake and territories of *Geneva* on the north; by *Switzerland* and *Piedmont* on the east; by another part of *Piedmont* and *Dauphiny* on the south; and by *Franche Compté* and *Dauphiny* on the west. It is a barren country, being for the most part incumbered with the high cold mountains of the *Alps*; however, there are some pleasant fruitful valleys, producing corn, wine, and fruit; and they have large herds of cattle, and abundance of game, venison, and wild fowl, in their mountains, and plenty of fish in their lakes and rivers. Their greatest misfortune is, that they lie open to the incursions of the *French*; and whenever their prince is at war with that kingdom, *Savoy* is first made sensible of the ravages of the *French* troops, and used as a conquered country, though, upon every treaty of peace, it has hitherto been restored. d

Commercial  
concerns.

THE commerce of the dominions of his *Sardinian* majesty was heretofore so very inconsiderable, as to be scarce worthy of notice; but by degrees, and under the two last reigns more especially, things have been much changed. The staple commodity of *Piedmont* is a kind of silk indispensibly necessary in many manufactures, and his *Sardinian* majesty has put this under such regulations as to make it rise to the highest amount possible. The *English* alone have taken off the value of 200,000 l. of their raw silk annually, for several years; but their crops of silk-worms are sometimes destroyed by storms of hail, called the plague of *Piedmont*. The navigation of the *Po* enables the inhabitants of *Turin*, and the adjacent country, to carry on a considerable trade to *Venice*. There is a little, and but a little traffic stirring at *Alexandria* and *Villa-Franca*. Besides all these, his *Sardinian* majesty has gradually and silently possessed himself of all the passages by which the inland trade is carried on between *France* and *Italy*, and having it by this means in his power to lay what duties he thinks proper, derives from thence an additional revenue; which is not only of great consequence in itself, but the more so by keeping the neighbouring states in a kind of dependence, e



a dence, through fear of the injuries he might otherwise do the commerce of their subjects. Nothing can be of greater importance to the trade of the *British* nation, than preserving the balance in *Italy*; which, if lost, must necessarily throw all that valuable branch of commerce, in which we have at present so large a share, and from which we derive annually a considerable profit, into other hands, and, which is worst of all, into the hands of the *French*; a thing against which we have as much reason to guard as a trading nation; as the king of *Sardinia* himself has cause to oppose, as far as possible, the growth of the *French*, out of regard to his own safety. This sufficiently shews that our interests are really mutual, and that there is nothing of political art in the expediency of supporting this monarch against all his enemies, though at a large expence to ourselves.

b THEODORIC, king of the *Goths*, gave the country of *Piedmont* to the *Heruli*, after he had conquered the famous *Odoacer*, and stripped him of his dominions in *Italy*. The *Heruli* being afterwards subdued by the *Lombards*, *Aripert* their 17th king, made a present of it to the see of *Rome*; but as it lay too far from that metropolis, and the grant was not confirmed by any of that monarch's successors, it fell into the hands of the kings of *Italy*, of the house of *Charles the Great*. *Thomas*, the son of *Humbert III.* and after him *Peter*, surnamed *Little Charlemagne*, the former the seventh, and the latter the tenth earl of *Savoy*, made themselves masters of the greatest part of this country by force of arms; the one in the year 1210, and the other in 1259; since which time the eldest son of the house of *Savoy* is stiled prince of *Piedmont*. The marquissate of *Saluzzo* was afterwards annexed to it by the marriage of a daughter of that family with *Charles I.* duke of *Savoy*, in the year 1481.

*History of the  
dukes of Savoy  
now kings of  
Sardinia.*

c THIS family is, according to the generality of genealogists, descended from the famed *Figuardo*, king of *Saxony*, in the year 636; which if true, it must have preserved itself ever since, that is, upwards of 1100 years, in a continued series of heroic princes, without ever vitiating or interrupting their pedigree. They are accordingly ranked among the greatest princes of *Italy*, and their family has given birth to no less than five emperors, and four kings. But we need not, for our purpose, ascend any higher than *Victor Amadeus II.* the father of his present *Sardinian* majesty, and who, in his life-time, was esteemed one of the greatest captains, as well as one of the ablest politicians in *Europe*. His whole study was the balance of *Italy*, which he perfectly understood and steadily pursued. His situation

d made this requisite, his penetration brought this very early to his notice, and having once conceived its importance, it became his rule of action to his life's end. He succeeded his father duke *Charles-Emanuel*, in the year 1675, and that by a very surprizing accident. He was then a boy, and had just began his exercises; his father, who had a true foresight of his great qualities, was extremely fond of him, and coming one day to see him ride, the young prince had the misfortune to be thrown from his horse with such violence, that those about him cried out he was killed, which affected duke *Charles-Emanuel* to such a degree, that he fainted upon the spot, and died in a few days of the fright. His mother, the duchess-dowager of *Savoy*, governed his dominions during the minority of *Victor Amadeus*; and when he had attained to an age fit for marriage, she negotiated a match for him with the

e Infanta, who was then esteemed heiress of the kingdom of *Portugal*, which was carried so far, that the duke *de Cadaval* came with a *Portuguese* squadron to *Nice*, in order to have carried his highness to *Lisbon*. But the young prince, suspecting that he might lose his hereditary countries, and possibly miss of the foreign crown he was seeking, changed his mind suddenly, and broke off the marriage. Some time after, he espoused *Anna-Maria* of *Orleans*, the eldest daughter of *Philip* of *Orleans*, only brother to the late *Lewis XIV.* by *Henrietta Maria*, daughter of our king *Charles I.* so that he became nearly allied to our royal family; and his son, the present king of *Sardinia*, is the first prince of the *Roman Catholic* line, after the heirs male of the house of *Stuart*, but excluded from this succession by the *Act of Settlement*.

f IT was in virtue of this marriage, that in the beginning of his reign the duke of *Savoy* went into the measures of *France*, and, at the instigation of *Lewis XIV.* began a violent persecution against his Protestant subjects in the vallies, about the year 1685, which threw his whole country into blood and confusion. But it was not long before he perceived his error, and that nothing could be so fatal to a prince, as depriving himself of a great part of his subjects. He was also convinced, that the *French* monarch meant him no better than the rest of his neighbours, and therefore, when the first grand alliance was formed at the *Hague*, in 1690, he took care to be included in it, and ventured so far as to stake his dominions to preserve his independency.

g His dominions suffered greatly in the course of the war, but at length he happily extricated himself from all the difficulties he had laboured under. In 1706, assisted by the allies under prince *Eugene*, he attacked the *French* in their lines before *Turin*, beat them, and, by a single victory, recovered *Piedmont*, and saved *Italy*. The very next year he invaded *France* in his turn, forced the passage of the *Var*, marched directly through *Provence*, and



formed the siege of *Toulon*, which, though it miscarried, he continued the war with his own forces, and obliged the *French* to keep an army on that side constantly to prevent his irruptions, which weakened their forces elsewhere, and convinced them he was no contemptible enemy. a

At the conclusion of the treaty of *Utrecht*, the late queen *Anne* insisted upon the cession to him of the kingdom of *Sicily*, and took care that the crown of *Spain*, the heirs of *Philip V.* failing, should be entailed upon this prince. *France* restored to him the dutchy of *Savoy*, and the county of *Nice*, and yielded to him likewise in perpetuity, the valley of *Pragelas*, with the forts of *Exilles* and *Fenestrelles*, the vallies of *Oux*, *Bardonache*, and *Chateau Dauphine*; but, on the other hand, he yielded the valley of *Barcelonetta* to the crown of *France*. His most Christian majesty likewise confirmed the cessions that were made by the emperor, b of a part of *Montferrat*, the provinces of *Alexandria* and *Valentia*, the countries between the *Po* and the *Tenaro*, the *Lomelin*, the valley of *Seffia*, and the equivalent that was to be given for *Vigevanasco*.

ALL this contributed to make the king of *Sicily*, as he was now stiled, a very considerable prince; and he would have soon become much more considerable, if he had remained longer in possession of *Sicily*, where he began to make himself very agreeable to the people. But the *Spaniards*, on the one hand, could not endure that he should keep that island, and the late emperor, *Charles VI.* on the other, kept up his claim to it, and resolved to take the first opportunity that should offer of re-uniting it to his kingdom of *Naples*. In this dilemma, his best measure, he judged, was striking in with his old allies, who about this time concluded the quadruple alliance. All he could obtain was the exchange of *Sicily* for *Sardinia*, which, though a very great loss, was better than nothing; but in a little time it seemed very doubtful whether he would be able to obtain even this, the *Spaniards* making themselves intirely masters of that island, at the same time that they attacked and conquered a great part of *Sicily*. These events passed in the year 1718, when the affairs of this monarch wore but an indifferent aspect, till Sir *George Byng*, having entirely destroyed the *Spanish* fleet, put it in the power of the Imperialists to make themselves masters of *Sicily*; and so far checked the ambition, and humbled the power of the Catholic king, that he was once more content to abandon *Sardinia*, which, in consequence of the alliance before-mentioned, was delivered up to *Viſtor Amadeus*, who bore ever after the title of his *Sardinian* majesty, and continued also in possession of that island, situated very near his own dominions. It was very far from being an inconsiderable acquisition, though certainly much inferior to the noble kingdom of *Sicily*, which for the present, fell under the dominion of the emperor *Charles VI.* and continued so many years after, till, in consequence of the resentment of his present *Sardinian* majesty, it was once again recovered by the *Bourbon* family, remains still, and is like to remain in their possession. c

As soon as the king found himself in some measure extricated from those troubles and disputes with which his reign had hitherto been embarrassed, he set about the execution of a project he had long before conceived, in causing to be compiled under his direction, a complete code, or body of laws, for the use of his subjects, which he ordered to be published in 1723, and by which, in a great measure, he freed his people from trivial and vexatious suits, and from running into a tedious length of such as were more necessary. He had also projected other regulations, and seemed wholly bent upon such measures as might tend to the improvement of his country, and to better the condition of his people, when he found himself under a necessity of taking a very extraordinary step, which was the resignation of his crown in favour of his son the prince of *Piedmont*. He was moved thereto from various considerations, but chiefly from finding himself so extraordinarily pressed by the emperor on one side, and by *France* and her allies on the other, that he could scarce determine with himself what side to take, and therefore inclined to make a chasm in the government, rather than take either, in hopes of gaining time for his successor. Add to this, that being much worn with the continual fatigues of a long and active reign, he was desirous of passing a few years in repose with the countess *St. Sebastian*, whom he married when a private man, and retired with her to *Chamberry* in *Savoy*. d

THIS resignation took place with great solemnity in *September* 1730, in presence not only of the great ministers of his court, but also of almost all the nobility and persons of distinction in his dominions. *Charles Emanuel II.* his son, successor, and present king of *Sardinia*, mounted the throne in the 30th year of his age: but it was not long before the old king, at the instigation of the lady he had made his wife, but not his queen, grew dissatisfied with his private condition, and began to form designs of resuming his dignity. The young king acted a very wise and discreet part; for there is nothing more certain, than that it was with the utmost reluctance and concern he took, by the advice of the great officers of state and the nobility, the only measure that was left for him to take, that of confining the old king to his palace at *Montcalier*, where he remained to the day of his death, which e



- a which was the last day of *October*, 1732, in the 67th year of his age. His present majesty has since fulfilled the great hopes he had given from his most tender years of making a mild and gracious, as well as gallant and wise prince. At his entrance into the government he met with many and unexpected crosses, but he has happily extricated himself from them without blemish to his character, and without prejudice to his administration. In 1733, the death of *Augustus*, king of *Poland*, occasioning a rupture between the houses of *Austria* and *Bourbon*, he entered into an offensive and defensive alliance with *France*, to which *Spain* afterwards acceded, for restoring the balance of power in *Italy*, where he thought the house of *Austria* had acquired too great an ascendancy. During the course of this war, he shewed a reach in politics much superior to his age; but his behaviour in the
- b battle of *Gustalla* obscured all that he had hitherto performed; and the splendor of that victory, which was entirely owing to his personal courage and conduct, threw all his former great actions into shade, since all *Europe* rung now with his praises as a hero. However, while this war was drawing to an end, he had a convincing proof of the bad faith and sinister intentions of the court of *France* to him; for the *British* ministry having concerted with the court of *Venna* a plan of peace, by which *Tortona* and the *Tortonese*, *Novara* and the *Novarese*, together with the *Vigevanasco*, were to be detached from the duchy of *Milan*, and annexed for ever to *Piedmont*; the *French* court, by a clandestine negotiation, deprived him absolutely of one of those districts, and only left him his choice of the other two, in which situation he preferred the former. These preliminaries were signed *October* 3,
- c 1735, and were in every respect favourable to *France*, injurious to her allies, fatal to the house of *Austria*, and destructive of the balance of *Europe*.

- From this time forth, his *Sardinian* majesty pursued with the greatest steadiness his proper and original system, of restoring and preserving to the utmost of his power, the balance of *Italy*, by preventing the incroachments of either of the two great families, whose quarrels have so long disturbed the peace of that country, and, indeed, of all *Europe*. After the death of the late emperor *Charles VI.* when *Spain* was determined to push her pretensions in *Italy* by force, and had also secured the assistance of *France* for that purpose; both threats and promises, with all the address of the ablest ministers, were employed to bring his *Sardinian* majesty into their measures. But though his affairs, at this time, were
- d in a very embarrassed situation, the queen of *Hungary* being pushed to the utmost in *Germany*, and her forces weak in *Italy*, he resolved to act in her favour. He defended the duchy of *Milan* against a *Spanish* invasion, reduced *Modena* and *Mirandola* by force, obliged the *Spanish* army, under the duke de *Montemar*, to retire towards the frontiers of *Naples*, and defeated all the attempts of the *French* and *Spaniards* to penetrate into *Piedmont*. These exploits were performed in 1742 and 1743, though, towards the close of the former year, his enemies, by the dint of superior force, made themselves masters of his duchy of *Savoy*, out of which he had driven them some time before.

- In *October* 1743, as the strongest proof of his constant and unalterable resolution to support the common cause, and preserve the *Austrian* dominions in *Italy*, he concluded with the queen of *Hungary*, and his *Britannic* majesty, the famous treaty of *Worms*, the only clear and explicit alliance entered into during the war; by the eighth article of which he obtained certain concessions in return for what he had already done, and in consideration of what by that treaty he undertook to do, and which he afterwards most punctually and faithfully performed.
- c

- In the campaigns of 1744 and 1745, he afforded new proofs of his abilities, and of the significance of his friendship; and when the circumstances of the queen of *Hungary* allowed her to reinforce her armies in *Italy* in the spring of the year 1746, his majesty very early exerted himself, and, by a most surprising stroke of military courage and conduct, drove the *French* out of most of the places they had taken in his territories, and afterwards joining the *Austrian* army, shut them up in the city of *Placentia*. This brought on the famous battle of *Rottorfreddo*, in which they opened a passage for a flight out of *Italy*, abandoning *Genoa* to the resentment of her enemies, and retiring with precipitation into *France*, whither they were soon afterward followed by the allies. His *Sardinian* majesty took this opportunity, and availing himself of his good fortune, reduced *Savona* and *Final*, which remained in his possession to the end of the war. These glorious and incontestible proofs of his wisdom, valour, and probity, received the next year a noble addition by the almost incredible victory gained at *Exilles*, by which the best laid plan the *French* and *Spanish* generals ever formed was intirely disconcerted, and the flames of war hindered from spreading again into the heart of *Italy*.
- f

- By the 6th article of the treaty concluded at *Aix-la-Chapelle*, he was obliged to restore to the republic of *Genoa*, and to the duke of *Modena*, whatever had been taken from them; so that by this means he lost both *Savona* and *Final*, and consequently, all that had been stipulated in his favour by the treaty of *Worms*, as to the last mentioned place; but, by the
- S



same article, the duchy of *Savoy*, and the county of *Nice*, were restored to him by the house of *Bourbon*. By the seventh article, he made a solemn resignation of that part of the duchy of *Placentia* which had been yielded to him by the empress-queen, by the treaty before mentioned. But, by the 12th article, the possession of all his former acquisitions, as well as those that were left to him in consequence of the treaty of *Worms*, were recognized and secured, and he likewise obtained the general guarantee established by that treaty for those provinces, as well as for all the rest of his dominions wherever situated, or in what manner soever acquired.

THE territories of the king of *Sardinia* are now the same as they stood at the conclusion of the peace of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, for he bore no part in the late war; yet by the peace, he has obtained a confirmation and guarantee of that part of the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, which establishes his reversionary title to *Placentia*, on failure of the male line of the infant don *Philip*; or in case that prince or his issue should succeed to the crowns of his family. In the mean time, the king of *France* has engaged to pay him an annuity equivalent to the revenues of the territory in question, and has stipulated to remit immediately the capital sum of those revenues, on condition of repayment whenever the king of *Sardinia* enters into possession of them. In this manner, a subject of dispute, which might otherwise embroil *Italy*, is happily settled. His father, as we have seen, was obliged to accept the island of *Sardinia* instead of *Sicily*: the duchy of *Savoy*, principality of *Piedmont*, and county of *Nice*, are the ancient patrimony of his majesty's family: the duchy of *Montferrat* was formerly annexed to that of *Mantua*, but the house of *Savoy* had an old claim to it, which was revived when the last duke of *Mantua* was put under the ban of the empire, in 1708, when the present king of *Sardinia*'s father obtained the investiture of it from the emperor, which was confirmed to him by the peace of *Utrecht*. Besides these, the districts which from time to time have been acquired at the expence of the duchy of *Milan*, have augmented very considerably both the power and revenue of his *Sardinian* majesty, and have also extended his influence in such a manner, as to make his friendship very essential to the safety of his neighbours; so that he is justly esteemed one of the most considerable potentates in *Italy*, exclusive of his expectancies, which, if any of his family should come to enjoy, would render them one of the most considerable powers in *Europe*.

THE king of *Sardinia* is an absolute prince, and the crown hereditary; but the administration of the government, in the several territories he possesses, is committed to as many councils, and they are governed by their respective laws, where the king does not interpose.

*TURIN*, situate on the rivers *Po* and *Doria*, is the capital of his dominions. It is of a square form, three miles round, and admired for its spacious squares, piazzas, and streets, and particularly the king's palace, which, for the beauty of the apartments, the richness of the furniture, the elegant paintings, cabinets of curiosities, and library, is scarce to be paralleled. The chapel of the *Holy Handkerchief*, built of black marble, is much admired: this handkerchief, tradition says, was presented to our Saviour by a compassionate virgin, as he was going to his crucifixion, and our Saviour having wiped his face with it, returned it with his portrait impressed on the handkerchief in the most lively colours. We thought it necessary to be thus far explicit in regard to the dominions of his *Sardinian* majesty, because we consider him in the light of our faithful ally, and as a prince of the greatest consequence in *Italy*. We shall now take a view of the *Austrian* dominions in this country.

Dominions of  
the house of  
Austria in  
Italy.

THE dominions of the house of *Austria* in *Italy* are now confined to the duchies of *Milan* and *Mantua*. The former is one of the most fertile provinces in *Italy*: it is bounded on the west by *Piedmont*, *Savoy*, and *Montferrat*; on the south by the *Appennine-Mountains*, and the territory of *Genoa*; on the east by the states of *Venice*, *Parma*, and *Mantua*; and on the north by the territory of *Valais*, the *Grisons*, and *Switzerland*. It is above 240 miles in length, and 80 in breadth; and is generally divided, together with the countries annexed to it, into thirteen districts, viz. the *Milanese-Proper*, the *Pavese*, the *Lodesan*, the *Cremonese*, the *Comasco*, the county of *Anghiera*, the vallies of *Sessia*, the *Novarese*, the *Vigevanois*, the *Lomeline*, the *Alexandrin*, the *Tortonese*, and the territory of *Bobbio*: but of these several have been ceded to the king of *Sardinia*, some by the emperor *Charles VII.* and others by the empress queen now reigning; yet what remains to the house of *Austria*, may be still considered as one of the fairest and finest countries in her possession. It lies in a most excellent climate, and is blessed with as fruitful a soil as any in *Europe*, watered by the noble rivers *Po*, *Tessin*, *Adda*, and *Sessia*, besides the famous lakes of *Maggiore*, *Lucano*, and *Como*. But to come to the most material point, the revenues that are drawn from it amount to at least 300,000 l. sterling a year, besides its furnishing subsistence for 30,000 men, and enabling the court of *Vienna* to provide with governments and preferments, ecclesiastical, military, and civil, numbers of her dependents, and that too, which is no very easy matter, even to the extent of their hopes and wishes. *Milan*, the capital, is



a is not well peopled, but is one of the most trading cities in *Italy*. Its principal manufactures are those of the silken and woollen, steel and iron work, prodigiously neat, especially sword-hilts, snuff and tobacco-boxes, buckles, and the like. They likewise work very neat on a sort of rock-crystal, which is brought hither from the *Alps*, some pieces of which are large enough to be worked into fine looking-glasses of about twelve inches by thirteen; but this work is very difficult. The citizens here are very rich, and gentry numerous. *New Lodi*, in the *Lodigian*, is a rich and populous town on the river *Adda*. They breed a vast quantity of cattle in the territory about it, and it is famed for making excellent cheeses, and of a monstrous bigness, some of which weigh above 500 pounds, and far exceed the *Parmesan* in taste; as also for dried neats tongues, and a fine sort of earthen-ware, not inferior to the *Dutch* delft.

b THE duchy of *Milan* formerly constituted the north part of the ancient *Liguria*, and was inhabited by the *Insubres* when the *Romans* reduced it under their dominion. The *Goths* made a conquest of it in the fifth century, and were dispossessed by the *Lombards* in 572. *Milan* then composing the best part of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, was subdued by *Charlemagne* the emperor, about the year 800; but in the wars between the emperors and the pope, *Milan* withdrew her allegiance, and assumed an independency, sometimes in the form of a republic, and sometimes governed by dukes. It was long contended for between the emperor and the *French*, till *Charles V.* expelled the *French* about the year 1525, and gave it with *Spain* to his son *Philip II.* to which crown it remained subject till the death of *Charles II.* the last heir male of the eldest branch of the house of *Austria*. In the war occasioned by the contending powers for his succession, the Imperialists, with the assistance of their allies, drove the *French* out of *Italy* in 1706. The *Spaniards* and *French* recovered it from the Imperialists in 1734; but by a subsequent peace it was restored to the emperor, on his ceding *Naples* and *Sicily* to don *Carlos*, the king of *Spain's* son; and the *Austrians* remain possessed of the duchy of *Milan* to this day, the empress queen governing it by her viceroy or vicar.

d THE duchy of *Mantua* is about fifty miles in length, but so unequal in breadth, that there is no saying any thing of it with certainty. The capital is very large, and one of the best fortresses in *Italy*, both by art and nature. The country, which is very fine, abounds in corn, fruit, flax, silk, and cattle, and the revenue is usually computed at about a fourth part of that of *Milan*. This duchy was also part of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, and was conquered by *Charlemagne* in the year 800. In the wars between the pope and the emperor, it assumed an independency, sometimes as a republic, and sometimes governed by dukes. These dukes were of the family of *Gonzaga*, who held it till the year 1703, when *Ferdinand Charles*, the last duke, adhering to the *French* against the house of *Austria*, the emperor seized on this duchy as a fee of the empire; and the duke dying without issue in 1708, the *Austrians* still keep possession of the whole except *Guastalla*, a part of it, which by the peace of *Aix la-Chapelle*, concluded in 1748, was allotted to don *Philip* of *Spain*, together with the duchy of *Parma*.

e THE duchies of *Parma* and *Placentia* form together a very considerable sovereignty; in length, from west to east, they are about sixty *English* miles, and their breadth from south to north is about forty. On the west they are bounded by the dominions of the empress queen and the king of *Sardinia*; on the south, by the territories of the republic of *Genoa*; on the east by the duchies of *Modena* and *Reggio*; and on the north they are divided by the river *Po* from the duchies of *Mantua* and *Milan*. The climate is equally healthy and pleasant, and the soil wonderfully fruitful; the vallies abound with all kinds of fruit, with rich pastures and excellent vineyards; and in the mountains are both copper and silver mines. The inhabitants have prodigious herds of horned cattle, and numerous flocks of sheep; the first enable them to make the best cheese in *Italy*, and, in the opinion of many, in *Europe*; and the latter furnish them with vast quantities of very fine wool. The cities of *Parma* and *Placentia* are the only places of any consequence in the royal infant's dominions: the former is an old irregular place and not very large, meanly fortified, but commanded by a castle of some strength; the latter is larger, better situated, more beautiful, and more populous, within a very small distance of the *Po*, which is a great convenience.

f *PARMA* underwent the fate of the rest of *Italy*, till it became subject to the *German* emperors; it afterwards became subject to the pope, the *Venetians*, the *Milanese*, and the *French* successively. Pope *Julius II.* in 1545, reduced it under the obedience of the see of *Rome*; and pope *Paul III.* created his natural son, *Peter Lewis Farnese*, duke of *Parma*; but the male line failing, the late emperor *Charles VI.* granted it as a fee of the empire to don *Carlos*, son of the queen of *Spain*, and heir of the house of *Parma*, against which the pope protested, esteeming it a fee of the holy see. *Parma* was afterwards relinquished by don *Carlos*, on his being advanced to the throne of *Sicily*; but by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, *Parma* was allotted to the infant don *Philip* his brother, together with the duchy of

Dominions of  
the infant  
duke of  
*Parma*.



of *Guastalla* in *Mantua*, which, indeed, is nothing more than a district of the duchy of *Mantua*, having been given as a provision for a younger branch of the ducal house of *Gonzaga*. It is separated from the rest of the royal infant's dominions by a part of the duke of *Modena's* country, but the communication by the *Po* is, notwithstanding, always open. *Guastalla* is a very neat and flourishing place; and the country about it both fruitful and pleasant. Its revenue is computed at 50 or 60,000 crowns; and that of *Parma* and *Piacenza* formerly at 600,000 crowns, but it may be doubted, whether the people can raise above two-thirds of that sum. It is, however, supposed that these duchies may maintain a regular force of about 6000 men, without any great detriment to either prince or people. These are all the territories that the royal infant possesses in *Italy*; and though in themselves they may be justly reckoned very considerable, yet when we reflect on the royal birth, the high pretensions, and illustrious marriage of his royal highness with the daughter of *France*, we cannot help admiring at the strange profusion of men and money with which this inconsiderable settlement was purchased. The daughter of *France*, *Louisa Elizabeth*, with whom he was married, died *December 4, 1759*, and her daughter by him, married to *Joseph* of *Austria*, at present king of the *Romans*, died the 27th of *November 1763*. Don *Philip* has still living by his late duchess, a son, by name *Ferdinand*, born the 20th of *January, 1750*.

Dominions of  
the duke of  
*Modena*.

THE estates of the duke of *Modena* have the duchies of *Mantua* and *Guastalla* on the north; the grand duchy of *Tuscany* on the south, with the territories of the republic of *Lucca*; the *Bolognese*, and the duchy of *Ferrara* on the east; and the duchy of *Parma* on the west. The extent of them from south to north, is about fifty-six *English* miles, and they are about fifty miles in breadth from west to east. The duchy of *Modena*, properly so called, comprehends one of the fairest and most fruitful countries in *Italy*, abounding with corn, wine, oil, and fruits, very populous, and inhabited by an ingenious and industrious people. The small country of *Frignano* bordering on the *Bolognese*, is annexed to it on one side, and part of the country of *Carfagnano* on the other, the rest belonging to the republic of *Lucca*. It is very mountainous, but far from being despicable on that account, as in these mountains there are mines of great value, and the inhabitants are a race of people as robust, hardy, and brave, as any in *Italy*. The duchy of *Reggio* lies west from that of *Modena*, and is by some accounted the more considerable duchy of the two; and indeed so it is, if we consider its dependencies, such as the principalities of *Correggio* and *Carpi*, the former heretofore possessed by the princes of the same name, and the latter belonging to the family of *Pio*. In the north-west corner of this duchy stands *Bercello* upon the *Po*, formerly a place of great strength, yielded by the late duke of *Modena* in 1701 to the Imperialists, to facilitate their military operations in *Italy*, and for that reason, besieged, taken, and intirely demolished by the *French* in 1705.

THE duchy of *Mirandola*, including that of *Concordia*, is about twenty miles in length, and five in breadth. It is a very beautiful and a very plentiful territory, full of villages, and the country round about them thoroughly cultivated. *Mirandola* is strong by situation, and has been formerly well fortified. The city of *Concordia* stands on the *Secchia*, at the distance of six miles from *Mirandola*, between which cities there is a fine canal called the *Navilio*, which facilitates the commerce of both. These duchies were very great acquisitions to the family of *Este*, their revenues at a moderate computation amounting to 100,000 crowns a year; and in the whole, the duke of *Modena*, in time of peace, may be supposed to enjoy a revenue of about 100,000 *l.* a year at least, with which he maintains a very splendid court, and when his circumstances render it requisite, can keep up a body of 8000 regular troops. The greatest inconveniency in the situation of his country is, that it has no communication with the sea, which might easily be removed, if he could recover either by treaty or force the duchy of *Ferrara*, which lies upon the gulph of *Venice*. It is to be observed also, that the western part of the duchy of *Reggio* intervenes intirely between the duchy of *Parma* and that of *Guastalla*, so that they can have no communication but by the river *Po*. As this is very inconvenient for the infant duke, it has been surmized that he would restore to the empress queen a part of the duchy of *Guastalla*, in order to engage her to grant the duke of *Modena* an equivalent for this part of his country; and if this negociation is ever brought to bear, that equivalent will be easily found, since the country of *Novellara*, which is likewise a part of the *Mantuan*, lies in the midst of the estates of the duke of *Modena*, and would be very convenient for him. On the other hand, it has not been long since rumoured as if his serene highness was desirous of exchanging for it the countries that he holds in *Hungary*, which to him, no doubt, would be very acceptable, but will hardly appear in the same light to the house of *Austria*.

THE duchy of *Modena* underwent the same revolutions with the adjacent countries, till it was annexed to the marquissate of *Ferrara*. It was possessed alternately by the pope and the family of *Este* till the year 1597, when the pope and the duke agreed to divide the

country



- a country between them. The pope accepted of *Ferrara*, and the family of *Este*, the dukes of *Modena*, *Reggio*, and *Mrandola*. This family is not only allowed by the best historians to be without controversy one of the most ancient and illustrious in *Italy*, but also in *Europe*. It derives its descent from *Azon*, lord of *Este*, (which is a small but pleasant town in *Lombardy*, not far from *Padua*,) who flourished in the tenth century. His descendants became very considerable princes, and so continued down to *Alphonso I.* who was duke of *Ferrara*, *Modena*, and *Reggio*. *Mary Beatrix Eleanora*, daughter of *Alphonso IV.* married *James* duke of *York*, afterwards king of *Great Britain*, in 1673, by whom she had issue *James Francis Edward*, born the tenth of *June* 1688, and *Louisa Maria Theresa*, born the 18th of *June* 1692, who died the eighteenth of *April* 1712, and several other children that died in their infancy. *Francis Maria d'Este*, the present duke of *Modena*, was married *June* 21, 1720, to *Charlotte Aglae*, daughter of *Philip II.* duke of *Orleans*. By adhering to the *French* and *Spaniards* against the *Austrians*, in the war that preceded the last, he was expelled his dominions, but restored by the treaty of *Aix-la-Chapelle*. He has been since appointed administrator for the government of the *Milanese*, during the minority of the archduke *Peter Leopold*, governor-general thereof. The prospect with respect to this ducal house is much altered by the death of the cadet prince of *Este*. The present duke is old, and the duchess also, who resides in *France*. The hereditary prince, *Hercules Renault d'Este*, born the 22d of *November*, 1727, upon whom the continuance of this illustrious family depends, is not on the best terms with the princess of *Massa-Carara*, by whom as yet he has only a daughter: so that considering the nature of fiefs in *Italy*, the fate of so considerable a succession may excite much political confusion.

- THE territories of the republic of *Genoa* lie in the crescent; on the *Mediterranean* sea, for 150 miles from the town of *Ventimiglia* on the west, almost to the territory of the republic of *Lucca* on the east, and are called the *Rivieras of Genoa*, an *Italian* word signifying a strand; and indeed, the country is little better, no where extending twenty miles from the sea, and in some parts not ten. The *Appennine* mountains in a manner cover it on the land side, and separate it from the countries of *Milan*, *Piedmont*, the *Montferrat*, the *Milanese*, and *Parmesan*. The tops of these mountains are perfectly bare, having neither trees nor herbage upon them; but towards the bottom, they are well planted with vines, olives, and other fruit; but the soil yields scarce any corn, and the sea not many fish. The capital of this republic, of the same name, is situate in nine degrees thirty minutes east longitude, and in forty-four degrees thirty minutes north latitude, part of it on a level strand near the sea, but rises gradually to the top of the hill. The harbour is large and deep, but exposed to the south-west wind, only there is a mole for the security of their galleys and small vessels, and the city lies pretty much exposed to a bombardment; as they experienced in 1684, when *Lewis XIV.* ordered the town to be beat about their ears. There are here large quantities of silk manufactured, also velvets, tabbies, sattins, silver and gold brocades, fine point, gloves, and sweetmeats, which are in great request, as well as their soap.

Republic of  
Genoa.

- THE trade in wrought silks which was carried on at *Genoa*, when all the silks made in the *Milanese* and *Mantuan* were formerly bought up here by commission from *England* and *Holland*, is at present extremely decayed, both those countries being grown wise enough to employ their own people in the silk manufacture. But there is another trade carried on here, in which the *Genoese* have so great a share, and have managed so well, that it is thought they have gained more by it than they did by all the commerce of the *Milanese*: this is, their making most of the silks, which they bought before, in their own little dominion, and employing their own subjects; and as the trade they carry on in these goods to *Lisbon* and *Cadiz* is prodigiously increased, it is said they flourish more in these branches of it, than they did before with all the rest, not forgetting that they have still a considerable commerce with *Holland*, and some with *England*. They have likewise a very considerable traffic in paper, large quantities of which are brought to *England*, besides what they send to *Portugal* and *Spain*, as well for their trade to *America* respectively, as for their own consumption.

- THIS republic, for near three centuries, rivalled *Venice* in the dominion of the *Mediterranean*, and the commerce to the *Levant*; but, after the memorable victory of *Chiozza*, the *Venetians* bore away the maritime empire; yet *Genoa* still maintains no inconsiderable share in the commerce of the *Levant*, and by its medium foreigners carry on the trade of *Lombardy*. What figure the *Genoese* fleets have formerly made, by means of their commerce, may be easily conceived, by the many victories they gained over the *Saracens*, *Pisians*, *Venetians*, *Turks*, and *Spaniards*; as well as from their many large conquests; such as those of the islands of *Crete*, *Sardinia*, *Majorca*, *Minorca*, *Negropont*, *Lesbos*, *Malta*, and their settlements in *Scio*, *Smyrna*, *Achaia*, *Theodosia*, and other towns on the eastern confines of *Europe*; but, at present, their whole navy is reduced to a small number of galleys, which



which serve only to fetch them some corn, wine, and other provisions; insomuch that when, in the late queen *Anne's* war, they had but six of these gallies in all, and had resolved to build more, the *French* king sent expressly to forbid it, telling them, that he knew better than they how many they had occasion for.

THE great inducement to the traffic of *Genoa* is a kind of free, as well as a fine port; for, on the arrival of foreign ships, the merchandizes are deposited in a grand free ware-house, no duties of import or export being paid, except in proportion to the sales that are made; and what remains unsold is re-imbarked without duty. The *Genoese*, *Venetians*, and *Florentines*, are said to have been the first trading countries who fell into the way of negotiating money by bills of exchange, and first discovered the profits and advantages to be occasionally made thereby. It was they also that discovered the admirable art of accountantship by charge and discharge, according to the method of double entry.

*GENOA*, as part of the ancient *Liguria*, continued under the dominion of the *Romans*, till the ruin of that empire by the *Goths* and other northern people; after which it made a part of the kingdom of *Lombardy*, and then of the *German* empire, and at length set up for a sovereign state. It was afterwards successively subject to the archbishop of *Milan*, to the *French*, to the marquis of *Montferrat*, and the duke of *Milan*. Its present form of government it owes intirely to the virtue of *Andrew Doria*, who, in 1527, rescued it out of the hands of the *French*, and refusing the sovereignty offered him, fixed its condition as a free state. Its constitution is of a mixed nature, but seems from experience to be but ill contrived, as having so much of an aristocracy as to make the people uneasy, and yet so much of a democracy as to keep up a continual ferment. The doge, or duke, is elected every two years, during which time he resides in the palace, is maintained at the public expence, has guards and other insignia of princely dignity, and twelve counsellors continually about him, styled the seignory, in whom the majesty of the republic resides; but the legislative power is vested in the great council, which consists of 400. However, the most considerable body in power in the republic, is that which is called *St. George's Bank*, constituted of such branches of the public revenue as have been set apart by the government for the payment of such sums as are borrowed during the exigencies of the commonwealth, and which have never been violated under the greatest troubles and perplexities of the state. The administration of this bank being for life, and partly in the hands of the citizens, gives this body a great authority in the state, and a powerful influence over the people. This bank is generally thought a great load to the state, and as a kind of inferior senate, which breaks the uniformity of their aristocratic government. The people, however, receive no small benefit from it, both as it is a check to their aristocracy, and distributes the power among more private members of the republic; and while the republic kept out of the broils of *Europe*, the bank maintained a circulation for the support of the public credit and their commerce. But this state having unhappily taken part in the war that broke out in 1744, they exhausted their public treasure, on which foundation the bank was constituted, and its credit received so violent a shock, as not easily to admit of a flourishing revival.

THE revenues of the republic are very far from being considerable, nor is its trade near so great as it was; both, however, are still capable of being recovered. The private persons in the city of *Genoa*, of great families, are commonly rich, and have large estates, some in *Naples* and *Sicily*, others in *Spain*, and not a few in the *Italian* dominions belonging to the house of *Austria*; which is attended with great inconveniences; as throwing them into interests inconsistent with, or directly opposite to those of their country. The island of *Corfica*, which belongs to this republic, we shall consider in our account of the *European* islands.

Republic of  
Venice.

WE must cross over the countries we have described to come from *Genoa* to *Venice*. This ancient republic may be divided into three parts: the dominions in *Italy*, called *Terra Firma*; those in *Dalmatia*, and those in the *Ionian* and *Egean* seas, called the *Levant*. The *Terra Firma* dominions are again subdivided into the following territories, viz. the *Dagado* of *Venice*, the *Paduano*, *Vicentino*, *Veronese*, *Bresciano*, *Bergamasco*, *Friuli* and *Aquilegio*, *Istria*, *Cremasco*, *Polesin de Rovigo*, *Marcas Trevigiana*. The coasts of *Dalmatia* contain the towns of *Zara*, *Nona*, *Spalatro*, *Sebenico*, *Trau*, *Cliffa*, and *Cattara*; and the isles of *Charto*, *Otero*, *Vigia*, or *Vegia*, *Arbe*, *Pago*, *Isola*, *Longa*, *La Barga*, *Lessna*, *Curzola*, and some few more of small note. In the *Levant*, the isles of *Cephalonia*, *Corfu*, *Zant*, *La Praza*, *Millo*, *Cerigo*, *Tine*, *Kimolo*, or *Argentaria*, and the *Morea*.

THE *Venetians* have little produce of the country, or manufacture of the people, except the silk, and the silken manufactures; the former respects the land part, the latter the city, where many of the silk manufactures are made; but yet the state is very opulent, as abounding with universal merchants; and this is owing to an universal correspondence, by which, as the *Dutch* are to these northern parts, so are the *Venetians* to all the shores of the *Adriatic-Gulph*, the isles of the *Archipelago*, and the sea-coasts of the *Turkish* dominions; for to all



- a all these places they send their ships, freighted with the growth and manufactures of other countries, as of *England, Holland, France, Spain, &c.* in return for which they bring but few goods, except from *Turkey*, whence they import large quantities of silk, which they sell again, among their own manufactures in the city, as also in their *Terra Firma* dominions, and likewise to the duchies of *Milan* and *Mantua*, and all the countries between the gulph and the river *Danube*, through all which the *Venetians* have a great and flourishing commerce, partly by the help of canals, and partly by small navigable rivers. The trade which may be called their own, and which is more considerable, is by the navigation of those great rivers the *Po*, the *Adige*, the *Adde*, the *Mincio*, and others, by which they carry all the heavy goods they import from foreign parts into the rich and populous provinces of
- b *Lombardy*, and have a communication even with *Turin*. By these rivers also they have a correspondence with the country of *Trent* and *Tirol*, and even with *Bavaria* itself; and by the lower branches of the *Po*, and the canal of *Ferrara*, with all the southern provinces of the papal dominions, as *Ferrara, Bologna, Urbino, and Parma*, and as far into the country westward as *Modena*.

As they have the sole commerce of most of these countries, and in such a manner as not to be interrupted by any rival nations, it is not to be wondered that the *Venetians* have a very thriving and gainful trade, and that they can advantageously disperse the large importations they make from almost all parts of *Europe*, as from *Spain, Portugal, England, and Holland*. Nor do they bring any valuable returns back from the inland countries, for they have few

c productions in those provinces, except corn: neither have they metals or minerals, iron excepted; nor wool, cotton, or hair, or any considerable manufacture for employing their people: so that the *Venetians* are said to drive the most ready-money trade of any of the *Mediterranean* countries, because they export such great quantities of goods to countries which have no returns to make them but money. However, they receive large quantities of other merchandize from the *Turkish* dominions, and more perhaps than any one nation besides.

We must not forget that there is a trade almost peculiar to the *Venetians*, which consists in naval stores; for the provinces of the *Vicentino*, the *Trevigiana*, and part of *Friuli*, are full of firs, and those so well grown and large, that they cut masts there even for their biggest

d ships of war: they have likewise good oak for building. In consequence of their fir woods, they have pitch and tar; and the same countries produce great quantities of hemp and flax; so that they have deals, timber, masts, sails, hemp, flax, pitch, and tar, all of their own, which none of the princes or states in the *Mediterranean* can boast of in the same manner. Nor is this solely beneficial to them in regard to their own navy, and to fill their own magazines, but they furnish all those materials, in great quantities, to the other ports of *Italy*, as *Genoa, Naples, Messina, and Palermo*, or to any other places where they build ships, especially those of force; and the knights of *Malta* fetch most of their naval stores from hence. Were the countries this way furnished for trade, and with wealth sufficient to carry it on, they would send hither for ships, and *Venice* would be the arsenal of the *Mediterranean*, as *Holland* has been of other parts of *Europe*.

On the large coasts of the other side of the *Adriatic-Gulph*, called *Dalmatia*, they have some good ports, though no city of any considerable commerce; neither does the country produce any thing extraordinary for merchandize: it supplies the city of *Venice* with corn and mutton, in great quantities; and, in return, the *Venetians* supply the people with their foreign merchandize. Yet the *Venetians* want many things which their own territories cannot supply them with, and which, since the *Turks* have possessed themselves of so much of their dominions, they are obliged to purchase from them, and from the *Greeks* under the *Turkish* government; and these are as well necessities as merchandize. They carry the *Greeks* proper manufactures, such as wrought silks, fine linen, bone-lace, and all sorts of

f haberdashery for the women, who love to go fine, especially in the isles. What they carry back in return is difficult to enquire, but is from all parts according to the production of the place, such as currants, raisins, figs, drugs, rice, corn, oil, wine, cotton, silk, &c. and this is the reason why *Venice* is the magazine for the scarcest drugs, and from whence they are sent over the whole Christian world. As for money, they take little in the islands, the balance in that respect being rather against them.

It may be observed here, that the cities of *Venice* and of *Rome* are, of all the cities of *Europe* for their bigness, the most noted for pomp and shew, the confluence of strangers to both being scarce conceivable. At *Venice*, the diversions of the carnival, the magnificence of the buildings, among which are 400 noblemen's palaces, with the splendid appearance

g of ladies richly attired, cause a prodigious trade in things otherwise of no great moment, as equipages, coaches, gondaloes, liveries, habits of ceremony, furniture, paintings, and other extraordinaries of that kind. Hence there are more taylors, upholsterers, gold and silver lace-makers, embroiderers, and, to sum up all, footmen and pages, with fidlers and



strumpets, than in any other city in the world, *Paris* and *London* excepted. At *Venice* also a the numerous throng of gentry, and persons of the first quality, to the carnival is such, that they frequently number twenty or thirty sovereign provinces there at a time, besides others of lower rank, without number. Thus, nothing may be said to conduce more to the promoting of commerce than the gay and sumptuous drets of the people, especially where the humour once becomes national, as it is at *Venice* and *Rome*.

THE islands on which the city of *Venice* stands, were formerly subject to *Padua*, when the *Goths* and other northern nations invaded *Italy* in the fifth century. The inhabitants of *Padua*, *Aquileia*, and other cities on the continent, fled to these islands for shelter, and formed a republic. They elected a duke, or doge, vesting him with absolute power; but within a few years the principal citizens abridged his power to that degree, that they left b him only the name of sovereign, vesting the supreme authority in the principal families, and their male issue, who are now stiled noble *Venetians*, and amount to about 1500; but do not suffer the nobility in their territories on the continent to have any share in the government. The signiory consists of the duke and six other members, chosen by the grand council of the nobility, and of the three chief judges of the principal courts of judicature; these are called the council of ten, in whom the executive power seems to be lodged; and this council elect three of their own number every three months, who are a kind of state inquisitors, or secret committee, receiving all accusations and informations against persons suspected of conspiring against the government; and may imprison, and proceed capitally against them without calling them to make a defence, if they all agree; otherwise the c matter is brought before the council of ten. They have boards or councils also for raising and collecting the public revenues, and every other branch of business.

THE *Venetians* no sooner became powerful at sea, but they extended their conquests on every part of the *Terra Firma* in their neighbourhood, and afterwards to the most distant coasts and islands on the *Mediterranean* and *Euxine* seas. They reduced *Dalmatia*, and the islands on that coast, under their dominion about the year 978. They took from the eastern emperors the islands of *Rhodes*, *Scio*, *Samos*, *Mytilene*, and *Andros*, in the year 1117; and in confederacy with the *French*, they even took the city of *Constantinople* in 1194, and remained in possession of part of that empire for some time. They reduced *Candia*, and the rest of the *Ionian* and *Ægean* seas, as well as the *Morea*, and the city of *Gallipoli* on the d *Hellepont*; and at length made a conquest of their mother city of *Padua*, and many other great cities on that side, extending their dominions upwards of 100 miles in the north of *Italy*. They disputed the dominion of *Sclavonia*, *Croatia*, *Morlachia*, and *Dalmatia*, with the king of *Hungary*; and contended with the *Genoese* for the empire of the sea with various success; but the *Turks* breaking into *Europe*, took from them *Thessalonica* in 1453, and demolished the wall on the isthmus of *Corinth*, which defended the *Morea*. The pope, *France*, and *Spain*, joining in a confederacy against the *Venetians*, took from them their dominions on the continent in 1509: but the pope and *Spain* changing hands, they again recovered their territories on the continent. Their greatest loss was that of the *India* trade, which was ruined by the *Portuguese* discovering a passage to *India* round the *Cape of Good Hope*. Before this discovery, the *Venetians* purchased the merchandize of the East at *Alexandria* and the ports of *Turkey* in the *Levant*, and dispersed them all over *Europe*. The *Turks* took *Cyprus*, *Candia*, and all the islands in the *Archipelago* from them; and at length they lost the *Morea*, in 1715. They are still, however, the greatest naval power in *Italy*, and have seldom less than 20,000 men in their pay in the time of peace, most of them foreigners, both officers and soldiers. The intire revenue of the republic is computed at about eight millions of ducats, but the annual expence does not commonly extend to half that sum. Before the fatal war of *Candia* they had in their treasury fifty millions of ducats in ready money, exclusive of the famous gold chain, to which they annually added some links, which forty porters could hardly carry, and which on certain festivals was extended f cross the square of *St. Mark*, for the entertainment of the people.

THE doge annually, every Ascension-day, formally espouses the sea, or gulph of *Venice*, by throwing a ring into it; being attended by 3 or 400 of the nobility in their galleys, with a vast number of barges and gondaloes richly adorned.

It is highly to the honour of this state, that for upwards of twelve centuries she has preserved her freedom, and for a great part of that time has lived under the same government, without suffering any of those dreadful revolutions by which many of her powerful neighbours have been involved in blood and confusion. This has justly given a high reputation to the wisdom of her senators, who, by their great policy and wonderful secrecy, have been able, through so long a space of time, to guard with equal diligence and success against foreign confederacies, many of which they have defeated, when laid with the deepest cunning, and supported with no inconsiderable strength. Her very losses are so far from reflecting discredit on the republic, that on the contrary they do her the greatest honour in the g



- a the sentiments of those who are capable of forming a right judgment of history, and know how to distinguish properly in respect to causes and events. The common opinion that the continues to decline, and that the very being of the republic is in danger from a slow consumption, has been perhaps taken up without a due attention, and for want of having just notions of the wise and solid maxims by which her government is conducted: for though it be true, that she is in no condition to maintain such a war as that of *Candia*, yet it is no less true, that as things are now circumstanced, she has very little reason to fear it, especially being now better secured against the *Turks* by her perpetual alliance with the house of *Austria*. Since the peace of *Passarowitz*, which was concluded on the tenth of July 1718, the *Venetians* have remained very quiet, and have very wisely avoided taking
- b any share in those disputes that have since perplexed *Europe*; being mindful of their great and favourite maxim, To manage the government with the utmost frugality, encourage trade as much as possible, and to preserve peace as long as they are able.

THE grand duchy of *Tuscany* is composed of the territories that formerly belonged to the three small but potent republics of *Florence*, *Sienna*, and *Pisa*. The bounds that are generally ascribed to it are the river *Tiber*, the *Appennine* mountains, and the river *Magra*. The whole extent of this country from south to north, is about 130 miles, and about 120 from east to west. It is washed on the south and on the west by the *Mediterranean*, and with respect to strength and convenience, has all the advantages from situation that can be wished. As to the soil of this country, it is in some parts mountainous, where there are

c mines of copper, iron, silver, and allum, and quarries of fine marble, alabaster, and porphyry. In other parts it abounds with pleasant hills, which are covered with vines, oranges, lemons, olives, and other fruits, and in some places there are vallies which produce abundance of corn and grass. It has many little rivers, but the chief of them is the *Arno*. The other commodities besides those already mentioned, are wool, flax, saffron, serges, woollen cloths, silks, tapestries, gilt leather, earthen ware, perfumes, &c. There is no country in the world where the people are, generally speaking, better adapted to mercantile affairs, or where they know better how to make this disposition of theirs turn to account. The country round about *Florence* is excellently cultivated, and the city itself so rich and beautiful, that it is stiled at home and abroad *Florence the Fair*, according to the

d *Italian* humour of bestowing epithets upon all their great cities. The other two parts of the grand duke's dominions, the *Pisan* and the *Siennois*, though the country is not inferior to the *Florentine*, are far from being so well peopled, and consequently from being so much improved. On the contrary, in some places they lie almost waste for want of inhabitants, which has been owing chiefly to the jealousy of their princes. As this humour is now pretty well worn out, there is good reason to hope that these countries may recover, at least, to a tolerable degree, though not to their ancient splendor in the times when *Pisa* and *Sienna* were republics, and either of them very capable of making head against *Florence*. This shews the different effects of government, and that places may derive from liberty almost as great blessings as from nature.

- e *TUSCANY*, known anciently by the names of *Ombria*, *Tyrrhenia*, and *Hetruria*, fell under the dominion of the *Romans* about 455 years before Christ. The *Ostrogoths* possessed it in the fifth century, and then the *Lombards*, who were expelled by *Charlemagne* in the year 800; after which it became subject to the *German* emperors, who appointed the governor; till the pope encouraged these governors to render themselves independent, and accept of his protection against the emperor. There were two potent factions in *Tuscany* at this time, 1240, which divided the whole empire, and occasioned a very long civil war both in *Italy* and *Germany*; these factions went by the names of the *Guelphs* and *Gibellines*; the first appearing in the interest of the pope, and the other in that of the emperor. During these contentions, the cities of *Florence*, *Pisa*, *Sienna*, and several others, withdrew themselves
- f from the dominion of both, and erected such governments as they saw fit. It was about the middle of the fifteenth century that *Cosmo de Medicis*, who had the glorious surname of The Father of his country, assumed the supreme power. *Alexander de Medicis*, his descendant, was made duke of *Florence* by the emperor *Charles V.* in 1531. He was succeeded by his cousin *Cosmo*, who had the title of grand duke bestowed upon him by pope *Pius V.* in order to raise him to a rank superior to the princes of *Italy*, though he had the style only of serene highness, whereas that of royal highness was given to the duke of *Savoy*. About the beginning of the present century the grand duke *Cosmo III.* finding the title of royal highness given by the emperor *Leopold* to the duke of *Lorrain*, applied himself likewise to his imperial majesty in order to obtain the same favour, which was accordingly
- g granted. This prince, after a long and happy reign, deceased October 31, 1723, and was succeeded in his dominions by his son *John Gaston de Medicis*, the last heir male of his family. The infant don *Carlos*, at present king of *Spain*, was declared his heir; and soon after his arrival in *Italy* assumed, with the consent of the grand duke, the title of hereditary

Grand duchy  
of Tuscany.

tary



tary grand prince of *Tuscany*. But upon the conclusion of that war, by which he acquired the kingdoms of *Naples* and *Sicily*, it was stipulated by the treaty of *Vienna*, that the grand duchy of *Tuscany* should be given to *Francis* duke of *Lorraine* in exchange for that duchy, which was to be yielded to his most Christian majesty after the demise of king *Stanislaus* of *Poland*, who was to be possessed of it during his life. a

ALL the princes of the house of *Medicis* were merchants, and by their example commerce was always thought in *Tuscany* what it ought to be thought elsewhere, a thing not at all incompatible with nobility. They were always remarkable for their prudent œconomy, which rendered them without comparison the richest princes in *Italy*; they were great patrons of industry and arts, very attentive to what might promote the welfare of their subjects, and omitted nothing that might engage strangers of merit to settle amongst them. b

BUT the great glory of *Tuscany*, and the true source of her power and wealth, at least in modern times, has been her famous port of *Leghorn*, or, as the *Italians* call it, *Livorno*, obtained in exchange for *Sarzana* from the *Genoese*. The country about it was formerly a vile morass, or rather quagmire, the noxious steams of which rendered the air unwholesome; but by the skill and pains of an *Englishman*, Sir *Robert Dudley*, son to queen *Elizabeth's* potent favourite, the earl of *Leicester*, and himself created duke of *Northumberland*, the soil was rendered habitable, the air much less unwholesome, and the port improved so, as to become the best in *Italy*. By his advice also it was made a free port, that is, the duties inward are very easy, and there are none upon exportation. This has rendered it for about a century past the great magazine of the *Levant* trade, and drawn thither merchants from all parts, more especially *Jews* and *Armenians*, of whom many reside there, and have great privileges allowed them. But after all, the greatest part of the commerce was and is carried on by the subjects of the maritime powers, who for that reason have their consuls resident there, and interest themselves upon all occasions in its favour. On this account care has been taken to stipulate in all the treaties since the *Quadruple alliance*, that the port of *Leghorn* should remain in its present situation, in whose hands soever it was left; which, however, to some may appear almost a needless precaution, since it is of such very high importance to the sovereign of *Tuscany* that it should so remain. It is, in truth, the great wheel which gives motion to the trade of that country, and attracts thither the richest commodities and the most valuable manufactures of *Italy*, from whence vast advantages arise, not only to the subjects of the grand duke, but also to the prince himself; whence one would be tempted to suppose, that respect to his own interests might supersede the necessity of any such interpolation: besides, the friendship of the maritime powers is a thing of so great consequence to whatever prince is in possession of *Tuscany*, that the bare consideration of that seems to be a motive more than sufficient to secure all the immunities granted to the port of *Leghorn* from the smallest violation. However, in matters of so tender a nature nothing ought to be neglected; and therefore we have the greater reason to persuade ourselves, that a thing so perfectly agreeable to the interests of all parties will never become the subject of any kind of dispute. c

IT was never thought an extravagant computation, when the revenues of this grand duchy were estimated at between three and four millions of crowns yearly; one half of which, at least in times of peace, remained safe in the coffers of the grand duke; or if it found its way out, was employed in trade, or lent to his subjects at a good interest. Whether the savings are altogether as great now as in former times, may possibly admit of some doubt; but there is none with regard to the income, which is as great as ever. The grand duke had also commonly 30,000 men in pay, or rather inrolled; but as they were seldom called out to service, some have suspected, that instead of costing him any thing, his troops might probably contribute to the increase of his revenue. In the situation that things are now, there is a small regular force maintained by the grand duke; and for the sea-service, against the insults of the *Barbary* corsairs, four men of war, which have been not long since built by him, and are kept stationed on the coast of *Tuscany*. d

Republic of  
Lucca.

THE republic of *Lucca* followed the fortune of the neighbouring cities in *Tuscany*, till they purchased their independency of the emperor *Rodolph* for 10,000 crowns, in 1279, since which time they have continued a free state. The circumference of this republic does not exceed thirty *Italian* miles, yet the fertility of the soil, and clemency of the government have proved such prevalent motives to settling here, that the inhabitants of the city, together with those of the hundred and fifty villages, of which the republic consists, are said to amount to 120,000, 30,000 of which are capable of bearing arms. The territories of the grand duke intirely encompass those of *Lucca*; so that a foreign force only can prevent this republic from falling under the yoke of the grand duke of *Tuscany*: nor have those princes failed often to shew their desire of uniting this delightful spot with their own dominions, and reducing *Lucca* to the same circumstances with *Florence*, *Sienna*, and *Pisa*. The situation of *Lucca* being such, an universal harmony among the members of e



- a that republic is absolutely necessary, if they are desirous of transmitting to their posterity the blessings of liberty, their darling idol, with whose image they decorate their coins, their city-gates, and public buildings. The republic is governed by a council of state, and a great council: the former is composed of the gonfaloniere, or doge, and nine senators, who are all members of the latter, or great council. These senators are termed *Anziani*, or elders, have the title of *Excellentissimi*, and, during their office, which continues only two months, have apartments in the palace of the republic, and are maintained at the public expence. A doge cannot be re-elected till seven years after the expiration of his office. The great council consists of 130 nobles and 10 burghers, who enjoy their office two years. A corps of seventy-six *Switzers* form the doge's guard; the other forces belonging to the republic amount to about 500 men, and its annual revenue to about 400,000 *scudi*, or 80,000 l. sterling.

b THE city of *Lucca* is about three *Italian* miles in circumference, and is defended by eleven bastions, on which 280 pieces of cannon are mounted. Several rows of trees are planted round the walls, which render the walks on them very pleasant. The city is situated in the middle of a delightful plain, which is every where terminated by a chain of mountains; and from the diligence of its inhabitants in their silk and other manufactures, has acquired the honourable epithet of *Industriosa*, the Industrious. They extract from a small, but excellent sort of olives, the finest oil of any in *Italy*; and from this commodity the republic derives considerable advantages. It would be unjust not to commend the inhabitants, of whom there are near 4000 in the city, for their justice, candour, and polite behaviour. Their police is very attentive in suppressing luxury and superfluous expences, too often the destruction of useful families.

c THE dominions of the pope, composing what the *Italians* call *Stato della Chiesa*, or, the States of the Holy See, are bounded on the north by the territories of the state of *Venice* and the *Adriatic-Sea*; on the east by the kingdom of *Naples*; on the south by the *Mediterranean*; and on the west by the dominions of the great duke and the duchies of *Modena*, *Mirandola*, and *Mantua*. The greatest length of this country, computed from *Francolino*, in the duchy of *Ferrara*, to *Terracina*, in *Campagna di Roma*, which is a line from north-east to south-west, may be about 240 *Italian* miles; as to the breadth, from *Civita Vecchia*, in the Patrimony of *St. Peter*, to *Ancona*, it is about 130 miles; but in many other places it is not near so broad.

d THE situation of the papal dominions, thus lying in the very middle of *Italy*, and going quite across from the gulph of *Venice* to the *Mediterranean*, is an advantage that, (except the king of the *Two Sicilies*) no other prince in that country enjoys but the pope himself. We will speak of the several territories of which these dominions are composed, in their natural order, beginning with the country that lies farthest to the north-west, which is the duchy of *Ferrara*. This, which was formerly one of the finest principalities in *Italy*, lies stretched upon the gulph of *Venice*, the river *Po* running through it, and falling there into the sea. The climate was formerly good, and the soil fruitful, producing corn, flax, hemp, and other valuable commodities, which made the duke rich and the people happy; but now things are quite altered, for the country lying low, and being thinly inhabited, the inundations of the *Po* have rendered a great part of it a morass; and *Ferrara*, from being one of the finest in *Italy*, now scarce deserves the name of a city. The town and county of *Comacchio* is no better than a fishing-village, surrounded by unwholesome marshes. The *Bolognese* is still a very fine country, and retains something of its antient freedom; the capital is stiled *Bologna*, or *Bononia the Fat*, from the fertility of its territory in corn, wine, and flax. Fort *Urban*, which stands ten miles from *Bologna*, is a fortress built to cover the pope's frontier on this side. The *Bolognese* is an inland country, but as it lies between *Tuscany* and the duchy of *Mantua*, the road through it creates some little trade. The country of *Romagna* is next, lying upon the gulph of *Venice*, and very pleasant and fruitful, being watered by several fine rivers, and enriched by its salt mines: the capital is *Ravenna the Old*, as the *Italians* call it, and, indeed, its appearance speaks it so, for it is now fallen very much to decay. The duchy of *Urbino* lies also upon the *Venetian* gulph, and though it was formerly reckoned a fine country when under princes of its own, there is nothing more certain than that the air is very unwholesome, and the soil extremely barren; the best place now is *Pesaro*, on the coast of the *Adriatic*, from whence it enjoys some trade, and is tolerably well built. The marquissate of *Ancona* lies on the same gulph; the city from whence it receives its name was formerly famous for its port, now in a very low and poor condition; but *Loretto*, which stands about ten miles from it, is famous for its riches acquired by the concourse of pilgrims to the *Santa Casa*. The territory of *Citta de Castello* is small, and derives its name from that place, which stands on the river *Tiber*, and is pleasant and well built. The *Perugiano* lies next, and abounds with excellent wine and very good corn. The capital is *Perusa*, enriched by its famous lake well stored with excellent

*Dominions of the pope.*



cellent fish. The *Orvietano* lies next, so called from its capital *Orvieto*, a small but beautiful country, rich in corn and wine, and enjoying the best air in the pope's dominions. Adjoining to this province lies the duchy of *Castro*, belonging formerly to the dukes of *Parma* and *Placentia*, but rejoined to the Holy See, partly by usury, and partly by violence; the pope's possession was quieted by a treaty with the emperor *Charles VI.* in 1724; but it is possible the old title to it derived from the dukes of *Parma*, on a favourable occasion may yet be revived. The Patrimony of *St. Peter* lies on the *Mediterranean*, and is fruitful in corn and wine, and famous also for its allum-mines: the capital of it is *Viterbo*, anciently a fine place, now little better than a heap of ruins. *Porto*, formerly, as its name signifies, a noble haven, is now capable only of receiving barks; but *Civita Vecchia* has still a fine port, and would be a very considerable place, if the unwholesomeness of its air did not render it thinly peopled, and the laziness of those people who dwell in it did not contribute to the unwholesomeness of the air, by leaving their country uncultivated. *Umbria*, or the duchy of *Spoletto*, is a country well watered, and much diversified in its appearance, in some parts mountainous, in others marshy, but intermixed with plains fruitful in corn, wine, oil, and fruits: the capital is *Spoletto*, and there are some other good towns in this country, which is owing to a little trade stirring there. The province of *Sabina*, which takes its name from the *Sabines*, is small, but very fruitful and pleasant. The country about *Rome*, called *Campagna di Roma*, would be wholesome and fruitful if well cultivated; but at present it is neither, especially in some seasons of the year, when the capital becomes a kind of desert, being alike abandoned by strangers and its best inhabitants, for the sake of enjoying a purer climate. A project is said to be now on foot for draining the *Pontine* marshes, which will be a means of preventing their noxious effluvia, and withal acquire a considerable tract of land for the purposes of agriculture.

BESIDES these, the pope has other dominions, as well in *Italy* as elsewhere. The kingdom of *Naples* is held from him by an annual tribute. The duchies of *Parma* and *Placentia* were part of the patrimony of the church; but by the famous Quadruple Alliance, they are declared to be fiefs of the empire, and are like to be considered in that light for the future. The principality of *Masseran*, belonging formerly to the family of *Fiesque*, and at present to the king of *Sardinia*, is held in like manner from the pope. Other dominions he has in possession, which are held from other princes, such as the territory of *Benevento*, in the kingdom of *Naples*, the archbishop of which is the second ecclesiastical dignity in that kingdom; and the county of *Avignon* in the south of *France*, in which, while they were deprived of *Rome*, the popes themselves resided, who still govern it by a viceroy; and this, in every respect, is a very considerable acquisition, of which the popes are particularly tender, and which is the only part of their possessions obtained in the way of a fair purchase.

HAVING thus fairly and clearly stated the just extent of the pope's dominions, we might think, that, after the two crowned heads, he is the most considerable power in *Italy*; and yet, though his government is truly despotic, and his subjects the hardest used of any in *Italy*, his revenue is below that of any other prince; for it has never been computed at above two millions of *Roman* crowns; whereas *Tuscany*, that has not half the extent of territory, produces twice as much to the grand duke. His regular troops are now only fit for shew, hardly any of his fortresses in a state of defence; and though we sometimes hear of the pope's gallies, his naval power is very inconsiderable. We must, however, in justice to some of the last popes, allow, that they have endeavoured to correct the errors of their predecessors, and that their subjects have lived much easier under them; but then these amendments have extended no farther than to keep things from growing worse, and much more must be done before they can be expected to grow better.

HITHERTO we have considered only the state of the temporal monarchy of the pope, but if we take a view of his spiritual monarchy, we shall find, that though, like some of the leaning towers which have made so much noise in *Italy*, it seems since the Reformation to carry evident marks of weakness; yet, in fact, it is still a structure very strong in itself, contrived with great skill, and supported with much art. If in other monarchies princes have pretended to a Divine right, the pope goes still farther, and claims a kind of Divine power, by which he is raised as much above other princes, as those princes are above their people. This claim, together with the title of Holiness, having the recommendation of a long prescription, cannot but excite an high veneration in the minds of such as believe it. The papal character being given with the greatest ceremony by those who are presumed to be the best judges of religion and religious interests, seems, in the opinion of the multitude, to alter the very name of him who is adorned therewith, and to transform him from a man of like passions with themselves into a sacred person. It is true, that in Protestant countries, as nothing of this is believed, so it is very hard to be understood. Yet the fact is beyond dispute, and whatever wiser persons in popish kingdoms may conceive, the bulk of the people have the highest reverence for the Holy Father.



- a THE close connection between the clergy in all popish countries and the court of *Rome*, joined to the occasional benefits that monarchs themselves may receive by bulls from the Holy See, makes them unwilling to interpose, or break off that commerce which their subjects have with *Rome*, that upon certain occasions they may derive favours from thence, which may easily procure what otherwise might with difficulty be forced by their own authority. We may add to this another reason, which is, that the popish princes cherish the spiritual power of the pope, as the means of preserving unity in religion, and thereby preventing religious disputes, which very seldom disturb the church, without disturbing the state also. Thus it appears, that, independent of enthusiasm and superstition, political principles have no small share in promoting that adherence to the see of *Rome*, which, at first sight, seems to be irreconcilable to the absolute authority of sovereign princes, and which, notwithstanding, by their dexterous management, is often made to co-operate therewith.

- b IN these points of view, one may with great truth and impartiality venture to assert, that the whole scheme of the *Romish* religion is admirably well adjusted to maintain, in every respect, the power of the supreme head. He is reputed by many doctors of the church of *Rome* intallible, that his decisions may have the greater weight; the traditions of the church, which with the members of it pass for a rule of faith, are subject to his controul; all religious doctrines are liable to his censure; the power of absolution, even in the highest cases, is attributed to him; he dispenses the spiritual treasures of the church, such as pardons and indulgences; he grants dispensations of all kinds; he regulates fasts and feasts at his pleasure: in a word, being reputed the successor of *St. Peter*, and the visible head of the Christian church, he has prerogatives without bounds, and without number; so that it is not in the least surprising, that so much power, directed by the great policy of its spiritual forces, should be able to perform such mighty things, and to preserve itself for so many ages. These spiritual forces are the several ranks and orders of men, subject in an especial manner to the Holy See. In the first class of these stand the cardinals, who are acknowledged princes of the church, and pretend to be next in dignity to crowned heads. They were originally no more than the parish priests of *Rome*, and their number sometimes greater, sometimes less; but now fixed to seventy-two, in allusion to Christ's disciples. Heretofore a cardinal was content to be stiled His Excellency; but now they assume the title of Eminence, which was formerly given to Princes, and thereupon the latter took the title of Highness. The cardinals are of all nations, that the influence arising from the hopes of this dignity may be the more extensive. The nomination to hats by crowned heads is a new stroke of *Roman* policy, which heightens the dependence upon the Holy See, while it seems to lessen the Papal authority. The majority, however, are always *Italians*, to prevent the throne from being filled by a stranger; and it is provided, that in all elections the person chosen shall have the voices of two thirds of those who enter the conclave, that there may never be a strong faction against the pope among the cardinals, which might be attended with ill consequences. All the subordinate dignities of the church may be considered as the nobility in the pope's spiritual empire: but as in all others, so in this, the strength of the monarchy consists in the number of its subjects, and if we take into our view the secular and regular clergy in the church of *Rome*, the former bound by the most sacred ties, and the latter not by vows only, but by their interests, to the obedience of the Holy See, we cannot but entertain a high idea of its power, since not long ago it was the calculation of a certain sovereign pontiff, that in *Europe* he had 300,000 parishes, and 50,000 convents subject to his jurisdiction. The constant resort of all these to *Rome* upon different occasions, must carry thither annually an immense treasure. The present pope, late cardinal *Charles Rezzonico*, and bishop of *Padua*, is stiled *Clement XIII.* He was born at *Venice*, the 7th of *March*, 1693, and was elected pope the 6th of *July*, 1758.

- f ROME, the capital of the pope's dominions and of *Italy*, stands on the river *Tiber* about sixteen miles north-east of the *Tuscan-Sea*. The walls are about twelve miles in circumference, as they were in the time of the *Romans*; but not a third part of the ground within the walls is now built upon; the rest is taken up with vineyards and gardens; and the inhabitants are computed to amount to 120,000 souls. There are five bridges over the river; twenty gates, and 300 antique towers still remaining. The castle of *St. Angelo* is a modern fortification, but of no great strength, and serves rather to keep the inhabitants in awe, than to defend them against foreign enemies. Modern *Rome* stands fourteen or fifteen feet higher than the old city, being built on the ruins of the former, and is much more upon a level than the old city was, great part of the hills being washed down into the vallies, in-somuch, that the *Tarpeian* rock, which was once a terrible precipice from whence malefactors were thrown, is not now more than twenty feet high. The city is generally magnificently built; the streets spacious, and adorned with 300 fine churches, and a vast number of palaces and convents; and the triumphal arches, pillars, obelisks, statues, and fountains, are no small addition to its beauty; but then there are other streets as meanly built as



in any town whatever. The greatest curiosities in *Rome* are the ancient theatre and amphitheatres, Pagan temples, triumphal arches, baths, aqueducts, fountains, catacombs, obelisks, cirques, sepulchres, bridges, churches, palaces, statues, paintings, piazzas, colleges, and hospitals. 'Tis said that the people of this city are more obliging than in any town of *Europe*, and that an universal civility reigns here. They are not in the least possessed with a spirit of bigotry or persecution against strangers of any country or religion whatever. The city is extremely well supplied with water by their noble aqueducts and fountains, and there is great plenty of all manner of provisions, as corn, flesh, fish, fowl, and fruits; and the greatest variety of wines that are to be met with any where: in the midst of all this variety, the people are extremely sober; never sitting down purely to drink, and very seldom drinking wine without water.

Kingdom of  
Naples.

*NAPLES* is by far the largest state in *Italy*. It is bounded on the north-side by the *Adriatick-Sea*, on the south by the *Tuscan*, on the west by the Ecclesiastical state, and on the east by the mouth of the *Adriatic* and the *Mediterranean*. The air and soil are extremely delightful and excellent in most places; and the country in general is very rich, fertile, and well-watered with rivers and springs, which flow through it from both sides of the *Appennines*: these rivers are, indeed, commonly so rapid, that they may rather be called torrents. The land produces excellent wines, especially that emphatically called *Lachrymæ Christi*. They have, in several parts, plenty of corn, but not sufficient for the consumption of the country, and the harvest in *Sicily* failing in 1763, occasioned the year following, a plague and a famine in *Naples*. They have likewise oil, rice, and pretty good pasture; and the *Neapolitan* horses are in no small request. Their almonds, olives, figs, citrons, oranges, pomegranates, grapes, and other fruits, are very good and in great plenty; and so are their flax, hemp, pulse, anise, coriander, and other seeds. The air is, indeed, in some places excessively hot, especially on the south-side of the *Appennines*, where the mountains reflect the sun's heat with such vehemence, that it is hardly to be borne in the three or four hot months of the year; but the north side of them is quite temperate, healthy, and delightful. They are sometimes annoyed with the locust.

THE far greater part of the provinces into which this kingdom is divided, have advantages peculiar to themselves. For instance, the air of the Hither Principality is so serene and healthy, that people live in it to a prodigious age; and the Farther Principality abounds in cattle more than any other, and all its fruits are excellent. The *Basilicate* is famed for its fine saffron, honey, and wax; *Calabria* for its plenty of good manna; the Hither for corn, wines, and mulberries, and the Farther for its fine honey and beautiful horses. *Otranto* is said to produce as much oil as would supply all *Italy*. *Molise* abounds with such a quantity of venison, that it sells cheaper there than beef or mutton. The territories of *Lavoro*, *Campania*, and some others, are blessed with so rich a soil, and excellent a temperature, that they produce the same flowers twice a year. The *Abruzzo*, especially the Hither, besides being the coolest part of the kingdom, produces great quantity of corn, wines, oil, and saffron. The other three provinces not only come short of all those conveniences mentioned in the rest, but have, moreover, some grievous disadvantages peculiar to them; as, in the *Capitinata*, the soil is dry, sandy, and in many places barren, and the climate unhealthy. In *Apulia*, the heat is so excessive, and the people and cattle plagued with such swarms of venomous flies, that it is scarce habitable. In the province of *Bari* the air is pretty temperate; but the people are generally infested with scorpions, vipers, and serpents, especially the tarantula, which renders their territory as uncomfortable as that of *Apulia*.

THE capital, of the same name with the kingdom, is situated 140 miles south-east of *Rome*. It is seven miles in circumference within the walls, and as much more, if the suburbs are included, and contains about 300,000 inhabitants. It stands on an eminence, rising gradually from the sea to a moderate height, on a fine bay of the sea of thirty miles diameter; and the islands which lie before it form a secure and commodious harbour. On the east is a large plain, on the farther side of which is mount *Vesuvius*, and on the west a large hill, on which stand the castle of *St. Elmo*, and a *Carthusian* monastery, from whence there is the finest prospect in the world. Here it is seldom cold in winter; and in summer the cool breezes from the mountains and the sea make the hottest part of it tolerable; nor is the sea subject to storms, and the shore is so bold, that large ships may lie close to the quays. The buildings are magnificent and elegant, and inhabited by people of distinction; nor can there be in all respects a more desirable situation, did not the eruptions of *Vesuvius*, and earthquakes, sometimes disturb their quiet. This mount, within a mile and a half of the top, is covered so thick with the ashes of the burnt earth, and grows so steep, that it is very difficult to ascend it, and sometimes it continues on fire for the better part of a month, throwing out burning matter with such force, that some of it falls at thirty miles distance; and a vast quantity of melted minerals, mixed with other matter, runs down like a river



- a for three miles, carrying every thing before it which lies in its way ; and sometimes such quantities of cinders and ashes are thrown out, that it is dark at *Naples* at noon-day.
- b M. DE LA CONDAMINE observes in his *Journal of a Tour to Italy*, that we meet every step we take, on the road from *Naples* to *Rome*, and from *Rome* to *Viterbo*, *Loretto*, and other parts, productions like the lava of *Vesuvius*, whence he presumes it follows, that all this part of *Italy* has been overturned by volcanoes. These plains, which at present appear smiling and fertile, covered with olive-trees, mulberry-trees, and vineyards, as are also to this very day even the sides of *Vesuvius*, have formerly been, like them, overrun with burning waves, and like them bear not only in their bowels, but even on their surface, the vestiges of those torrents of fire, the billows of which are at present grown cold again and condensed. It is well known, adds he, that *Naples* is paved with this lava ; but it is surprising, that no body has yet remarked that the pavement of *Rome* is also composed of the same materials. As much may be said of the pavement of the greater part of the antient *Roman* highways, and perhaps of all those of which any vestiges are remaining from *Rome* to *Naples*, as well as on the road from *Naples* to *Puzzuoli* and *Cumea*. In short, it is the same with the *Appian* way, which still subsists, and makes a part of the high road from *Rome* to *Naples*. This antique pavement is intirely composed of lava. We shall be less surpris'd at this, when we come to know that the foundations of the houses in the subterranean city of *Herculaneum*, built now 2000 years ago, are pure lava. This proves evidently, that the great eruptions of *Vesuvius* are not all of them posterior to that which swallowed up the city of *Herculaneum*, and that vast conflagrations have happened anterior to all historical monuments. But though the city of *Herculaneum* is, in fact, buried under several strata of lava, properly so called, yet we must not imagine, that its streets, squares, and buildings are covered with lava : were this the case, neither the pick-axe nor chissel would be able to penetrate there. The matter with which the interior parts of the city are filled has never been either fused or liquid. It is only one immense mass of cinders, earth, gravel, sand, coal, pumice-stones, and other materials, launched forth through the mouth of the volcano at the time of its explosion, and fallen again in heaps in all the circumjacent parts. These at first buried all the houses ; by degrees they penetrated into the interior parts, as well by their own proper weight, as by the assistance of wind and rains, and lastly, by the roofs and timbers giving way. This mixture being united by the infiltration of the waters, has condensed in process of time, and formed a kind of sand stone, more or less hard, but every where easy to be dug through.

- THE kingdom of *Naples* was, probably, first peopled from *Greece*, which lies but a little to the eastward of it : certain it is, the *Greeks* sent several colonies hither afterwards, and gave it the name of *Magna Græcia*. This, with the rest of *Italy*, was subdued by the *Romans* ; and, on the decline of that empire, in the fifth century, the *Eastern* emperor possessed himself of one part of *Naples*, and the *Goths* of the other. The *Lombards* dispossessed the *Goths* of their part, and remained masters of it, until they were expelled by *Charlemagne*, about the year 800. In the ninth and tenth centuries, the *Saracens* subdued a great part of *Naples* ; but the pope, with the assistance of other Christian powers, drove out the *Saracens* again : in which service, *Tancred* the *Norman*, and his twelve sons, having had a great share, part of *Naples* was given them by the pope. *Robert*, the son of *Tancred*, was created duke of *Apulia* and *Calabria* by the *German* emperor ; and *Roger*, the son of *Robert*, was made king of the *Two Sicilies*, viz. *Naples* and *Sicily*. The heirs of *Tancred* enjoyed this crown till the year 1166, when, happening to disoblige the pope, he introduced the earl of *Anjou* and the *French*, and his posterity were kings of *Naples* and *Sicily*, till the *Spaniards* dispossessed them about the year 1504. The kings of *Spain* continued sovereigns of *Naples* till 1707, when the *Spaniards* were driven from thence by the Imperialists, and *Naples* was confirmed to the emperor *Charles VI.* by the treaty of *Utrecht*, in 1713. The *French*, *Spaniards*, and *Sardinians*, entering into a war with the emperor, in 1734, reduced *Naples*, and made don *Carlos*, the king of *Spain's* son, king of *Naples* ; and he was confirmed in that throne by the emperor, at a subsequent treaty. He continued in possession of that kingdom till his late accession to the crown of *Spain*, having procured his third son *Ferdinand*, born the 12th of *January*, 1751, to be made king in his room. A regency composed of the most illustrious persons in the kingdom is appointed to conduct affairs during the minority of this prince.

- THE dignified clergy and nobility of this kingdom are very numerous. These are, it is said, twenty-five archbishops, one hundred and twenty-five bishops, and three hundred princes, dukes, marquisses, and earls. The clergy possess one-third of the kingdom ; the crown, nobility, and gentry, the rest ; the peasants have scarce any thing they can call their own ; they are subjects and vassals to their respective lords, manure their lands, plant their vineyards and olive-yards, and are allowed only a subsistence sufficient to enable them to perform their daily drudgery, and receive justice in their lords courts in cases that



are not capital, insomuch that every lord or gentleman, who is proprietor of the soil, is sovereign of the people who live upon his estate. The *Neapolitans* have a numerous militia, the nobility and gentry holding their lands by military tenures; but these are little depended on, and seldom called out, the king usually maintaining 15,000 regular troops, in time of peace, and being able to raise twice that number in time of war. The revenues of the crown are computed to amount to one million sterling. a

THE goodness of the port of *Naples* draws thither a great number of foreign shipping. They were daily, under the late reign of don *Carlos*, endeavouring to render the same more grand and magnificent: its principal trade consists in divers sorts of silk stuffs, raw silk, knit silk stockings and waistcoats; oils of various sorts, sulphur after the *Calabrian* manner, rosemary flowers, anise and coriander seed, dried raisins, raisins of *Corinth*, figs and olives, tartar, soap, dried orange and citron peels, essences and quintessences of all kinds. b

Switzerland. WE must now return from the south of *Italy* to the north, to take a view of *Switzerland*, a country which, though surrounded with rocks, and in a manner inaccessible, yet is very considerable, and of great consequence from its situation.

THE dominions of the *Switzers* are bounded on the north by part of *Alsace*, the *Black Forest*, and the circle of *Swabia*; on the east by the country of *Tyrol*; on the south by the duchies of *Savoy* and *Milan*, by the territories of *Bergamo* and *Brescia*; and on the west by the *Franche Compté*, or county of *Burgundy*. It appears from hence, that they have for neighbours the subjects of the house of *Austria*, those of the crown of *France*, the king of *Sardinia*, and the state of *Venice*. We need nothing more to give us very high notions of the force and bravery of this nation, than the bare observation, that they have not only preserved their freedom in spite, but have been also always formidable to the most potent of their neighbours: yet their country is very far from being large; in length somewhat less than 300, and in breadth very little more than 100 miles. c

THE inhabitants of *Switzerland* may be divided into three parts: first, the *Swiss*, properly so called, or the thirteen cantons, which stand in the following order. 1. *Zurich*. 2. *Bern*. 3. *Lucern*. 4. *Wic*. 5. *Switz*. 6. *Underwald*. 7. *Zug*. 8. *Glaris*. 9. *Bazil*, or *Basle*. 10. *Friburg*. 11. *Soluthurn*. 12. *Schaffhausen*. And 13. *Appenzel*. Of which the Protestant cantons are *Zurich*, *Bern*, *Bazil*, and *Schaffhausen*, with above two thirds of the canton of *Glaris*, and more than half of *Appenzel*; the people in the rest are all Roman Catholics. d

SECONDLY, the subjects of the *Switzers*, which are either such towns and bailliages as belong to them all, or to several in common, or that depend upon several cantons. Of the former they reckon nine; viz. the county of *Baden*, the *Free Villages*, the counties of *Turgovy*, *Sargantz*, and *Rhintal*, and the four *Italian* bailliages of *Lugano*, *Locarno*, *Mendrisco*, and *Valmodia*, to which we must add the three cities without territory of *Boemgarten*, *Mellingen*, and *Rapperswail*. The four *Italian* bailliages were dismembered from the duchy of *Milan*, and belong to all the cantons except *Appenzel*, which at that time was not admitted into the alliance. Three other bailliages in *Italy*, viz. *Pellinzona*, *Valbrima*, and *Riviera*, were conquered by the cantons of *Zurich*, *Switz*, and *Underwald*, from the dukes of *Milan*. The little territory of *Alfex*, and the county of *Werdenberg*, both seated on the *Rhine*, belong, the former to the canton of *Zurich*, and the latter to that of *Glaris*. The bailliage of *Gasteren* belongs to the cantons of *Switz* and *Glaris*; and the cantons of *Bern* and *Friburg* possess the four bailliages of *Morat*, *Gremton*, *Echelens*, *Swartzenburg*, which they conquered from the dukes of *Savoy*. e

THIRDLY, the allies of the *Switzers* are the *Grisons*, who are divided into three leagues, that of the *Grisons*, of the house of God, and of the ten jurisdictions: they are partly Protestants, and partly Roman Catholics, and have also a considerable conquered country that belongs to them: the town and county of *Neufchatel*, of which the king of *Prussia* is sovereign; the abbot and city of *St. Gall*; the little republic of *Wallis*; the city and republic of *Geneva*; the town of *Bienne* or *Biel*, allied to the canton of *Bern*; and the town of *Mulhausen*, not far from *Bazil*, to which it is allied. f

THE *Switzers*, formerly called the *Helvetians*, were brought under the dominion of the *Romans* by *Julius Caesar*, who added their country to his province of *Gaul*. They were afterwards part of the kingdom of *Burgundy*, then subject to *France*, and then to the *German* empire: but being oppressed, they threw off their allegiance, and erected several independent states: and at the treaty of *Westphalia*, in 1648, they were acknowledged free and independent. There is hardly one of the cantons, states, or cities abovementioned, that agrees with another in point of government; and indeed every kind of government that ever was invented is to be found amongst them; yet they are all maintained under their respective forms, and in their respective rights, from that common love of freedom and justice, which prevails generally among the whole nation. g

THE greatest part of their country is the most rugged in its appearance, and naturally the



a the most barren in its soil of any in *Europe*; and yet by dint of labour and cultivation they render it tolerably fruitful. All their cities are well built, populous, and many of their inhabitants live pretty much at their ease, which is owing partly to their industry, and partly to their frugality. The gentry of *Switzerland*, notwithstanding what is generally reported of them, are, generally speaking, tolerably educated, and from their seeing foreign countries, commonly well bred. Their traders have great privileges, and some of them are in wealthy circumstances; and as for their peasants, they are very hardy and laborious. As their women are justly reputed very honest as well as very good housewives, so they are generally speaking very prolific, and their country being but narrow, this lays them under an absolute necessity of sending out numbers every year to seek their bread in foreign countries. Being naturally of a martial disposition, and accustomed to arms from their youth, they usually seek some foreign service or other; those of the Roman Catholic cantons go into the *French* and *Spanish* pay; those of the Protestants, and not a few others likewise, into that of the States General; but wherever they are, they have the honour to be accounted as good troops as any in the world. After some years service more or less, according to their contracts, the private men return home, though their corps remain still in foreign service, and are from time to time filled up with fresh recruits. It is owing to these people who have served abroad, both officers and soldiers, that the *Swiss* are never at a loss for as large and well-disciplined an army as any government in *Europe* can raise, which are at the same time the guardians of their own liberty, and the protectors of their neighbours freedom. Neither is their power grounded only on opinion, for they have defended themselves at different times against most of the great powers in *Europe*; and though they have been sometimes outwitted, yet they were never beaten or reduced to demand peace, by any power whatever; so that they may be justly considered, taking in their situation and their militia, as the most unconquerable people in *Europe*.

It is very difficult to make a just computation of the force of the *Swiss*. Things are much changed with them from what they were formerly. They have now several good fortresses, though heretofore they had none. Several of the cantons are now very rich, and besides vast sums locked up at home, they have also great wealth in foreign banks, and particularly in our funds. Every great city is well furnished with artillery, and at *Bern* and *Zurich* they have field and battering trains of brass cannon, than which there are few better in *Europe*. Yet with all this force they are not in the least formidable to those that live near them, since they are without doubt the very best neighbours in the world; so void of ambition that they have no idea of conquest, such lovers of justice that the very report of oppression will bring them to the relief of the distressed. By this means the city of *Geneva* has been often, and will probably be always, protected against two very formidable powers, one the most enterprising, and the other the most ambitious in *Europe*.

It is in this country, and its confines, that the *Alps*, the highest mountains in *Europe*, excite the attention of travellers. The melting of the snows in summer, being suspended every night in their gorges, and renewed again every day during the hours in which the sun is hottest, gives occasion to very fantastical appearances. A valley, in whose depth the eye is lost, covered with rough pieces of ice resembling waves, and the whole surface of this sea again congealed, and intersected here and there with deep crevices; the noise of a subterraneous torrent which sustains this enormous mass, and changes the appearance as well as level of it from day to day; all these effects wrought by changes that are almost sudden, and variously combined of heat and cold, can scarce be seen any where else in so astonishing a degree: they form together a very singular spectacle, worthy the curiosity of naturalists, and calculated to furnish a variety of observations.

f

## C H A P. VI.

### Of the Austrian, French, and United Netherlands.

THIS country was anciently called *Gallia Belgica*, and the inhabitants *Belgæ*, but was of a much larger extent than the present *Netherlands*; of which the boundaries now, are the *German* ocean, or North Sea, on the north; the *British* sea, with part of *Picardy*, on the west; the rest of *Picardy*, with *Champagne* or *Lorrain*, on the south; and the archbishopric of *Triers* and *Treves*, the duchies of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, the bishoprick of *Munster*, and the county of *Emden* or *East-Friesland*, on the east. It is situated between the 49th degree and 25 minutes to the 53d degree and 25 minutes of latitude; and between the 2d degree and 5 minutes to the 6th degree and 50 minutes of longitude east from *London*.

Boundaries  
and situation of  
the Netherlands.

THE



Nations that  
possessed the  
Netherlands,

and the divisi-  
on of them in-  
to different  
states.

THE greatest part of the *Netherlands* was conquered by the *Romans*; and that part which lies towards *Gaul* continued in their subjection till the decline of that empire; after which the *Franks* became masters of it; and under the *French* monarchy, it was part of the kingdom of *Metz* or *Austrasia*.

THE division of the *Netherlands* into so many states is derived from the earls or counts of *Ardenne*. Their origin was from the sons of *Clodion*, king of *France*, who being kept out of that succession by *Merovee*, were forced for their security, to betake themselves to the most defensible places of the forest of *Ardenne*, and the countries on the banks of the *Moselle*, where they founded the two great earldoms of the *Moselle*, and the *Ardenne*. The former belongs to *Germany*; the latter comprehended part of *Flanders* and *Brabant*, all *Hainault*, *Namur*, *Limburg*, and *Luxemburg*, together with the duchy of *Bouillon*. These large estates continued peaceably under the earls of *Ardenne* for some time, who, growing powerful and great, became the envy of their neighbours, and were attacked by *Dagobert*, king of *Metz*, and son to *Clotharius II.* king of *France*, who in battle overcame and slew *Brunulph*, earl of *Ardenne*, and seized his country, giving only *Hainault* as an earldom to *Albert*, his son. *Dagobert* succeeded his father in the kingdom of *Neustria*, in 629, whereby he became king of almost all *France*, being before king of *Metz* or *Austrasia*, and of *Burgundy*: he gave away several parts of the country or earldom of *Ardenne*; but the rest still bore the title of an earldom, and continued for a long time a very considerable state.

TOWARDS the year 940, *Luxemburg* and *Limburg* were given to two of the younger sons of *Ricuine*, earl of *Ardenne*, and about the same time, *Namur* was erected into an earldom: the rest came afterwards by marriage to the house of *Lorraine*; which continued in possession of it a long time. Such is the origin of the earldoms of *Luxemburg*, *Limburg*, and *Namur*.

PART of *Brabant*, as above observed, was included in the earldom of *Ardenne*; the other part, which lies towards the sea, was very much infested, and even almost depopulated by the depredations of the *Danes* and *Normans*; wherefore to guard the coast, and protect the inhabitants, a certain officer was appointed, called lord warden of the marches, which title was continued till *Utilo*, nephew of *Aldiagerius*, king of the *Boioarians*, (the people of *Bavaria*) having shewn great courage against these pirates, was honoured with the title of lord marquis of *Antwerp*: one of his descendants, named *Ansegestus*, was mayor of the palace in *France*, and made duke of *Brabant*; and his great grandson, *Pepin*, obtaining the crown of *France*, that duchy became a province of that kingdom, and was afterwards part of the kingdom of *Lorraine*. About the year 980, the cities and territories of *Brussels*, *Louvain*, *Antwerp*, and *Nivelle*, were separated from the duchy of *Brabant*, and made a new state, with the title of the marquisate of the holy empire, by the emperor *Otho II.* and given to his aunt, whose grand-daughter *Gerbarg*, succeeding her, conveyed it by marriage to *Lambert*, son of *Reyner*, earl of *Hainault*, who had the title of the earl of *Louvain*: he was succeeded in it by his descendants, one of whom, named *Godfrey VII* earl of *Louvain*, conquered the rest of the country, and was created duke of *Brabant*.

*FLANDERS* was a wild and waste country, the sea-coasts being infested by the *Danish* pirates, and the other parts but meanly cultivated, till it was conquered by the *French* kings, who, soon after the establishment of their monarchy, appointed a certain officer, with the title of forester of *Flanders*, to suppress the robbers who infested the woods and the sea-coasts, and by government and protection to civilize the people, and encourage them to industry. This office continued in the same family for several descents, and was at length changed into the title of a count or earl, about the year 864, by *Charles the Bald*, emperor and king of *France*, in favour of *Baldwin*, the seventh forester, who had married his sister.

*ARTOIS* was included in the earldom of *Flanders*, till the year 1234, when *Robert*, grandson of *Philip Augustus* king of *France*, and husband to *Isabella*, daughter of *Baldwin VIII.* earl of *Flanders*, was made earl of *Artois*.

*GUELDERLAND* was part of the *French* kingdom of *Austrasia*, and with it became part of the empire of *Germany*; and as such was governed by certain guardians, or protectors, first instituted in the reign of *Charles the Bald*, of whom *Otho* of *Nassau* was the first free prince, created earl by the emperor *Henry V.* in the year 1079; and his descendant *Raynold*, was made duke of *Guelderland* in 1339.

*ZUTPHEN* was a separate earldom for many years, till it became united with *Guelderland*, by the marriage of *Otho* of *Nassau*, just now mentioned, with *Sophia* the daughter of *Wickman*, the last earl of *Zutphen*.

*HOLLAND* and *Zealand*, a rude unpeopled country, being much infested by the *Norman* piracies, were first made an earldom by the emperor *Lewis II.* about the year 863, and given to *Tbierry*, in whose line the succession continued till the death of *John*, about the year 1300, who leaving no issue, was succeeded by *John* of *Avesnes*, earl of *Hainault*, son of *Alcide*, the daughter of *Florence IV.* earl of *Holland*.

FRISELAND



a *PRISELIND* was but a part of the country of the ancient *Frisii*, some part of *Utrecht* and *Overyssel*, as well as *East-Friesland* in *Germany*, being inhabited by those people, who were governed by their own kings, till they were conquered by *Charlemagne*; and this part, now one of the seventeen provinces, was annexed to the duchy of *Guelderland*, and was afterwards a distinct barony.

*OVERESSEL* and *Groningen* were part of the episcopal see of *Utrecht*, first founded about the year 600, by *Dagobert*, king of *France*, in favour of *Willibald*, an *Englishman*, the first converter of these countries to Christianity, whose successors were temporal as well as spiritual lords of their diocese, for 900 years, and were very powerful princes.

b It being thought necessary thus briefly to mention the origin of these dukedoms, earldoms, and lordships, we shall now relate how they came to be all subject to the house of *Austria*.

*PHILIP*, surnamed the *Hardy* or *Bold*, duke of *Burgundy*, and son of *John*, king of *France*, married *Margaret* the only daughter of *Lewis de Male*, or *Malain*, earl of *Flanders* and *Artois*, and succeeded to those two earldoms after the death of *Lewis*, who died in the year 1383. *Antony* of *Burgundy*, the second son of *Philip*, got the duchies of *Brabant* and *Limburg*, the marquissate of the holy empire, and the lordship of *Mecklin* or *Malines*, in the year 1406, as heir to *Jane*, his aunt, by the father's side, the daughter of *John III.* duke of *Brabant*, and sister to *Margaret*, the wife of *Lewis de Male*. He left two sons, *John IV.* who died April the 17th, 1426, and *Philip*, who died August the 4th 1430. As they both died childless, *Philip the Good*, duke of *Burgundy*, their first cousin, succeeded to those duchies, to the marquissate, and to the lordship of *Mecklin*: he had bought in the year 1429 the county of *Namur* of *Thierry*, the last earl, leaving him, however, the title and profits of it till his death. *John*, the son of *Philip the Good*, had married *Margaret*, the daughter of *Albert* of *Bavaria*, earl of *Holland*, and sister to *William*, the father of *Joan* of *Bavaria*, countess of *Hainault*, *Holland*, and *Zealand*, and lady of *Friesland*. This countess had four husbands, but no children by any of them; so that *Philip the Good*, who was her first cousin, inherited all her estates, the administration and government of which she had been obliged to give up to him some years before she died. The same *Philip* did, in the year 1443, seize upon the duchy of *Luxemburg*, having driven out of it *William*, duke of *Brunswick*, who had usurped it from *Elizabeth*, the widow of *Antony*, duke of *Brabant*, and daughter of *John* of *Luxemburg*, duke of *Gerlitz*, who was brother to the emperors *Wenceslaus* and *Sigismund*. *Charles*, the son of *Philip the Good*, bought, in the year 1472, the duchy of *Guelderland*, and the county of *Zutphen*, of *Arnold* of *Egmond*, the father of *Adolphus*, who was a prisoner at *Courtray*; but *Charles* being killed in the year 1476, *Catherine*, the sister of *Adolphus*, retook *Guelderland* for her nephew, *Charles* of *Egmond*. *Mary*, the only daughter and heiress of *Charles*, duke of *Burgundy*, just now mentioned, married *Maximilian* of *Austria*, son of the emperor *Ferdinand III.* and brought him in marriage, the duchies of *Brabant*, *Limburg*, and *Luxemburg*, the counties of *Flanders*, *Burgundy*, *Hainault*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, and *Namur*; and the lordships of *Friesland*. *Philip* of *Austria*, son to *Maximilian* and *Mary*, married *Jane*, the daughter of *Ferdinand*, king of *Arragon*, and of *Isabella*, queen of *Castile*, by which means, their son *Charles* inherited not only almost all *Spain*, and the vast countries then lately discovered in *America*, but also those noble provinces of the *Netherlands*; and was chosen emperor, under the name of *Charles V.* Towards the latter end of the year 1527, he added to his dominions the temporalities of the bishoprick of *Utrecht*, on both sides of the *Tyffel*; and *Henry* of *Bavaria*, being distressed, through war with the duke of *Guelderland*, and tired with the continual rebellion of his own subjects, surrendered to the emperor the temporalities of his diocese, which was confirmed by the pope, and the states of the country. In 1536, *Charles V.* bought of *Charles* of *Egmond* the reversion of the duchy of *Guelderland*, and of the county of *Zutphen*, in case that prince should die without issue. The same year the city of *Groningen* took the oath of allegiance, and submitted to *Charles V.* and in 1543, he put a garrison in the city of *Cambray*, and built a citadel there. Having thus united the seventeen provinces, as it were, in one body, he ordered that they should continue for ever under the same prince, without being ever separated or dismembered; for which purpose, he published in November 1549, with the consent, and at the request of the states of all the provinces, a perpetual and irrevocable edict, or law, by which it was enacted, that in order to keep all those provinces together under one and the same prince, the right of representation, with regard to the succession of a prince, or princess, should take place for ever, both in a direct and collateral line, notwithstanding the common laws of some provinces to the contrary. *Charles* had even a mind to incorporate these provinces with the *Germanic* body, and to make of them a circle of the empire, under the title of the circle of *Burgundy*, in order thereby to engage the princes of the empire to concern themselves for the preservation of those provinces. But the *Netherlanders*, always jealous of their liberty, did not seem to like that incorporation;

*How the Netherlands became subject to the house of Austria.*



tion; and, when they were demanded to pay their share towards the expences of the empire, they refused it; whereupon the princes of *Germany* refused in their turn to take any part in the wars in *Flanders*, and looked upon those provinces as by no means belonging to the *Germanic* body.

*PHILIP* of *Austria* and his son *Charles*, who were born in the *Netherlands*, had for these provinces that natural affection which men use to have for their native country; and knowing how jealous the inhabitants were of their liberty, and of the privileges granted to them by their former princes, they took great care to preserve them, and suffered willingly that the states, who were the guardians of the people's liberty and privileges, should, in a manner, share the supreme authority with them. *Philip* II. son to the emperor *Charles* V. had not the same affection for the *Netherlands*, nor those generous sentiments which his father had endeavoured to inspire him with. Being born in *Spain* of a *Portuguese* woman, he had no regard but for his native country; and, when he removed out of the *Netherlands*, he left them to the weak government of a woman, to the proud and haughty spirit of the cardinal *de Granville*, and to the wild ambition of some lords of these provinces, who, availing themselves of the imprudent conduct and continual blunders of the council of *Spain*, found their private interest in the disturbances they could not fail to produce. *Philip* II. also instead of the mild and moderate measures which his predecessors had successfully employed, on many occasions, as best suiting the genius and temper of the people, had recourse to the most violent and cruel proceedings, which, far from curing the evil, served only to exasperate it the more, and render it incurable. The *Spaniards*, whom he sent thither, being born and educated in an absolute monarchy, jealous of the liberties, and envious of the riches of the people, broke through all their privileges, and used them almost after the same manner as they had done the inhabitants of their new and ill-gotten dominions in *America*. This treatment occasioned a general insurrection. The counts *Hocorn*, *Egmont*, and the prince of *Orange*, appearing at the head of it, and *Luther's* reformation gaining ground about the same time in the *Netherlands*, his disciples joined the malecontents: whereupon king *Philip* introduced a kind of inquisition, in order to suppress them, and many thousands were put to death by that court, besides those that perished by the sword; for these persecutions and incroachments had occasioned a civil war, in which several battles were fought. The counts *Hocorn* and *Egmont* were taken and beheaded; but the prince of *Orange*, retiring into *Holland*, did, by the assistance of *England* and *France*, preserve *Holland* and some of the adjacent provinces, which entered into a treaty for their mutual defence at *Utrecht* in 1579, and they have ever since been styled the *United Provinces*; but the other provinces were reduced to the obedience of *Spain* by the duke of *Alva*, and other *Spanish* generals: however, their ancient privileges were in a great measure restored; every province was allowed its great council or parliament, whose concurrence was required to the making of laws, and raising money for the government, though these assemblies were too often obliged to follow the dictates of the court; and, as for those which have been reduced under the government of *France*, they are now under the same arbitrary dominion, as the rest of the subjects of that crown.

THE *Spaniards* continued possessed of almost eight of these provinces, until the duke of *Marlborough*, general of the allies, gained the memorable victory of *Ramillies*. After which *Brussels*, the capital, and great part of these provinces, acknowledged *Charles* VI. (afterwards emperor,) their sovereign; and his daughter, the present empress queen, remained possessed of them till the war that preceded the last, when the *French* made an intire conquest of them, except part of the province of *Luxemburg*; but they were restored by the peace of *Aix-la-Chapelle*, in the year 1748, and the *French* retain only *Artois*, the *Cambrisis*, part of *Flanders*, part of *Hainault*, and part of *Luxemburg*, of which they have had the dominion now upwards of eighty years.

Soil, climate,  
and face of  
the country.

THE soil is generally fruitful, but differs in the several parts. The climate also differs in the several provinces; in those towards the south it does not differ much from that of *England*, though the seasons are more regular. In the northern provinces the winter is generally very sharp, and the summer sultry hot; but the extreme cold, and excessive heat, seldom continue above five or six weeks. The air is reckoned very wholesome, but is subject to thick fogs in winter, through the moistness of the country, which would be very noxious, were it not for the dry easterly winds, which blowing off a long continent for two or three months in the year, clear the air, and cause very sharp frosts in *January* and *February*; during which, the ports, rivers, and canals, are commonly shut up. The face of the country is low and flat, so that very little can be said of its mountains; for, except some small hills, and a few rising grounds in the provinces of *Utrecht* and *Guelderland*, and in the parts lying towards *Germany*, there is no hill to be seen in the whole seventeen provinces. This is the reason that they have been called the *Low Countries*. The provinces towards the sea lie so very low, that large parts of them have been many times overflowed



a overflowed by the irruptions of the sea, notwithstanding the strong banks, which the inhabitants keep up at a vast expence, almost all along the coast of *Groningen, Friseland, North Holland, Zealand, &c.* These banks and dykes are commonly seventeen ells thick, and yet have not been found sufficient to resist the violence of the sea and land floods. They may, however, be reckoned among their curiosities, with some *Roman* paved highways still intire. But their greatest curiosities are their manufactures of lawn, cambric, lace, and tapestry, in which they exceed all the world.

The *Netherlands* were once the center of the woollen manufactures, which we have now the satisfaction to call the *English* manufactures, but originally derived from the *Flemings*, whose country was thereby immensely populous and enriched. The materials for these manufactures, particularly the wool and the fullers-earth, they had from *England*. The *English* did not see their error till about the year 1450, when they began to think that these manufactures might as well be carried on in *England* as in *Flanders*, and their own people employed in this prodigious scene of traffic, to the enriching of themselves rather than their neighbours. On these motives they wisely put a stop to the exportation of wool, and the cloathing was gradually encouraged in *England*, by the means of manufacturers obtained from the *Netherlands*, to instruct our people. The *Flemings*, being thus deprived of their fund of wool, were obliged to turn their hands to other things; which brought them to the making of lace and linen, to silk-weaving, and to other business of various kinds; so that the manufactures carried on in these provinces at present, are 1. Lace, known by the name of bone-lace, of which the finest and best of the kind in *Europe* is said to be made at *Brussels*. 2. Fine thread. 3. Linen, consisting chiefly of cambricks and lawns. 4. Woollen, which includes the tapestry made at *Arras* and the adjacent country. 5. Silk, of which at present they make not only sufficient for their own use, but for exportation. This domestic trade necessarily creates a great foreign one, where the situation will admit of it; and so considerable are the exports of these manufactures, that very good judges have estimated them at no less, in fine thread, bone-lace, and linen, including their lawns and cambrics, than to the value of two millions sterling a year.

In regard to industry, the *Netherlands* are an example to the whole world. Nothing can live where they starve, and nothing is idle among them that can sustain any degree of labour. The universal navigation of the rivers and canals passing through innumerable cities and populous towns, implies, that there must be a great inland traffic; and this, indeed, in proportion to the extent of territory, is a prodigious business. The trade of the *French* and *Dutch Netherlands* is much the same with that of the *Austrian*; and, in regard to the *Dutch* particularly, it may be said, that there is not a manufacture in *Europe* but is managed to advantage among them, nor a place in the world but they visit with their fleets. They have also some advantages in their traffic, which the rest of the world cannot rival them in, particularly in the sale of the fine spices, which they have monopolized these hundred years, and in the herring and whale fisheries, by which they acquire immense wealth.

The vast trade of *Holland* arose chiefly from the destruction of *Antwerp*, which, when the civil wars in the *Netherlands* broke out, was, and had been long the center of traffic in *Europe*. The troubles in *France*, the wars in *Germany*, and the religious persecutions set on foot in other parts of *Europe*, contributed to fill the *United Provinces* with people, merely because here they might enjoy their consciences, and the fruits of their industry, in peace. Those who resorted thither were such as had wherewithal to live upon, or were acquainted with some manufacture or mystery, by which a living might be obtained. Both were welcome, and both sorts of people were very soon at their ease; new manufactures were every day set on foot, and trades too big even for a wealthy purse were managed with facility, and to great advantage, by joint stocks; the fisheries were annually improved, new branches of commerce were continually opened, and, in the compass of twenty years, their villages swelled into fair towns, and those that were good towns before rose into rich cities. At first, the inhabitants of those provinces carried on a large trade to *Portugal*, from whence they received great quantities of *Indian* goods; but when *Philip II.* became master of *Portugal*, he put an end to that trade, which, instead of proving a misfortune, was, in reality, of high advantage to the *Dutch*, by forcing them to attempt opening a trade to the *East-Indies*, which, in the compass of a few years, they did with success beyond their hopes; and this commerce being managed by a company with great prudence, frugality, and industry, soon produced prodigious advantages. This encouraged them to set up a *West-India* company, and that too became not less flourishing in a very short space of time. The subjects of the state likewise, by the recommendation, and under the protection of *Henry IV.* of *France*, obtained leave to trade in all the ports within the dominions of the Grand Signior; so that their commerce in the *Levant* became also very considerable. Taking therefore their fisheries, manufactures, and foreign trade together, we may easily account for the growth of their naval power, the increase of their wealth, and the possibility of their sustaining

Commercial concerns of the Netherlands.

Causes contributing to the great trade of the Dutch.



sustaining that infinite variety of taxes, customs, and excises, which were necessary to support so long and so expensive a war, as that by which their liberties were established and secured. a

We ought likewise to observe, that the situation of affairs in *Europe* through this whole period, was remarkably favourable to the growth of this new republic. The overgrown power of *Spain* was equally dreadful and dangerous to most of the potentates in *Europe*, which induced them openly or secretly to give all the assistance possible to the inhabitants of these provinces upon their revolt; and the intestine disturbances in several countries, but more especially in *Germany* and *France*, prevented their meeting with any rivals; and though it be true that *England* began at that time to extend her commerce, and increase her naval power, yet this was so far from being any detriment, that it was in reality of very great service to the *Dutch*, with whom they acted conjointly in warlike expeditions, and from whom, by the temptation of high wages, they drew numbers of experienced pilots, and able seamen, who were extremely useful to them in their early voyages both to the *East* and *West Indies*. The quarrel between *England* and the *Hanse Towns* turned also very much to their advantage; and in short, before any spirit of envy or emulation arose, the republic was not only beyond the reach of danger, but infinitely superior in every respect to any that could through envy aim at lessening her grandeur, the progress of her prosperity being not barely quicker than either expectation or experience could suggest, but beyond any thing which either antient or modern history records, and which by posterity will be very hardly believed. b

Stadthold-  
ership and  
government  
of Holland.

*WILLIAM* of *Nassau*, prince of *Orange*, surnamed the *Great*, was the first stadtholder, and may be properly called the founder of the *Dutch Republic*, by engaging the provinces of *Gueldres*, *Holland*, *Zealand*, *Friesland*, and *Utrecht*, to associate for their mutual safety in 1579. He spent his life in the study of war and politics, in which he was a great proficient, and not less distinguished for his private virtues. At length he was assassinated, in consequence of the resentments of the *Spaniards*, and sealed the generous actions of his life with his blood. His son *Maurice*, the second stadtholder, adhering to the virtuous principles of his father, supported the independency of the republic. *Henry Frederic*, the next brother, succeeding to the stadtholdership, distinguished himself as a warrior and a patriot. The fourth stadtholder was *William II.* who married the eldest daughter of our king *Charles I.* This prince dying at the age of twenty-four, left a posthumous son, who was our *William III.* In his infancy the dignity of stadtholdership was annulled; but the terror of *French* armies obliged the states to recur to that expedient to which they owed their very being, as a republic. King *William* fought their battles, and saved them. After his decease, though the dignity of stadtholder was not abolished, it was suffered to expire, nor did the states revive it till the sixth and late stadtholder, *William Charles-Henry-Frigo*, a collateral branch of the illustrious house of *Orange*, who, by the salutary mediation of a strong party of his friends, and the spirit of a mob, when a *French* army was already at their doors, had this dignity conferred on him in 1745. The stadtholdership, which is now made hereditary in the house of *Orange*, was, from its original nature, elective; but the high and indelible obligations which the *Dutch* owe to *William the Great*, and the renowned patriotism and fidelity of the illustrious house of *Orange*, through every generation, have ever thrown the choice on this family as a kind of necessary consequence. The present hereditary stadtholder is *William V.* prince of *Orange* and *Nassau*, born *March* the 8th, 1748; he is son of the late stadtholder by the princess *Anne*, the eldest daughter of our king *George II.* The authority of a stadtholder is very confined, unless when he appears at the head of an army, and then, perhaps, he is not only an object of jealousy, but his power is too much circumscribed. The stadtholder sometimes signs public treaties in conjunction with the states, but such treaties do not derive from hence the greater weight or authenticity; for though he is supposed to represent the dignity of the republic, yet whilst the states possess the sovereignty, he cannot be considered but as a subject. He has indeed the power to pardon condemned malefactors; but he has not even a seat or vote in the assemblies of the states. There are certain prerogatives annexed to the office, which vary in the different provinces, and are alterable by the power from whence they are derived, that is, by the states-general. The appointment of the stadtholdership from the states is 100,000 guilders, or 9,500 l. sterling; but the prince's paternal inheritance is far more considerable. c

THE states-general consist of deputies from every province, and are usually about thirty in number; some provinces send two, others more; but every province has no more than one voice; and whatever resolution the states-general take, must be confirmed by every province, and by every city and republic in that province, before it has the force of a law. The deputies of eighteen cities, and one representative of the nobility, constitute the states of the province of *Holland*; *Amsterdam*, and every one of those eighteen cities, are separate d



- a rate and independent republics. In *Amsterdam* the legislative power is lodged in thirty-six senators, who continue members of the senate for life, and when one dies his place is filled up by the survivors; the senate also elect the deputies to represent the cities in the province of *Holland*. There is a council of state, consisting of deputies from the several provinces; to which *Holland* sends three, *Guelderland*, *Zealand*, and *Utrecht*, two a-piece; and the provinces of *Friesland* and *Groningen*, each of them one. In this council they do not vote by provinces, as in the states-general, but by personal voices; and every deputy presides by turns, and the stadtholder has a decisive voice in this council, where the votes happen to be equal. This council calculates what taxes or forces will be necessary for the current year, and prepares other matters for the determination of the states-general. In an assembly of the states of a particular province, one dissenting voice prevents their coming to any resolution.

THE *Texel* and the *Maes* are the two chief ports of the country, in which the head places of trade are *Amsterdam* and *Rotterdam*.

Chief places  
of trade in  
the United  
Provinces.

- THE city of *Amsterdam* has infinitely the superior part; here all the fleets of ships arrive, as the herring-fleet, the *Greenland*, the *East* country, the *Turkey*, and the *East-India* fleets, with the fleet of men of war, or the national fleet. Among these, particular ships belong to the chambers of *Rotterdam* and *Zealand*, and to the merchants there; but the grand arsenal, both for war and trade, is at *Amsterdam*, the ships, stores, furniture of the men of war, and *East-India* ships, being all laid up there; and, indeed, *Amsterdam* seems to be a general mart for navigation, more ships for sale being built in it than in any place in the world; and not only ships, but fleets may be bought, if there is an occasion, together with naval stores of all kinds, ammunition, and arms, having a sufficiency for all the nations of *Europe*.

- As the navigation is managed here, so is the merchandize they bring. Here the *India*-house and warehouses are kept, and the goods sold; here are the admiralty-offices, and the building-yards and docks, not for their own shipping only, but for all nations that please to employ them; here is the bank, the only one in the country; the exchange, the greatest in *Europe*, that of *London* only excepted. In short, there is not a city in the world so rich, so populous, or that carries on so great a trade in so narrow a compass of ground. It is frequently surrounded with water, that threatens to swallow it up, and yet seldom or ever receives any considerable damage; and the number of ships and vessels of all sorts, which are always lying before it, is so great, that it is thought, should any general inundation of the sea drive them to that dreadful necessity, all the people in the city might at once embark, and be saved from drowning.

- THE city lies almost in the form of a crescent. The port is of difficult access, it being scarce possible for a loaded ship, or man of war, to enter the harbour; and indeed, the *Zuyder-Sea* is so shallow, and full of sands, that scarce any but their own flat-bottomed vessels can cross it; but then this is their greater security against foreign enemies, whose men of war scarce ever venture to pursue them beyond the *Texel*, and other entrances into this sea. The foundations are laid upon vast piles of timber drove into the morass on which the town stands, at a prodigious expence; the stadthouse alone has upwards of 13000 piles of wood to bear up the foundation. The first mention of this town in history is about the year 1300, when it was a poor fishing town. In 1585, it appears to have been the chief town of trade in those provinces, when they began to fortify it; and great additions were made to the fortifications in 1672, when *Lewis XIV.* invaded the country. The houses are built with brick or stone, the streets spacious and well paved, and through most of them run canals planted with trees. The town is computed to be half as big as *London*, including the fortifications, and in it are people of almost every nation, and every religion in *Europe*, who are all tolerated in their respective persuasions, but none admitted to any share in the government but the Calvinists.

ROTTERDAM is a flourishing city, but not to be compared with *Amsterdam*, to which it is as *Bristol* is to *London*, though rather with a larger share in the proportion. It is populous, and much more conveniently situated for trade than *Amsterdam*; the canals which run through it bringing ships up to the doors; and the *Maes* is much sooner free from ice than the *Wye* at *Amsterdam*; on which account the *British* merchants resort to this port more than to the other. There are several other towns of trade and note in the United Provinces; but we need only mention

- THE *Hague*, which is situated in the province of *Holland*, two miles east of the sea. It is encompassed with fine meadows and groves, but no walls, and therefore esteemed a village, but one of the largest and most elegant in *Europe*, and enjoys all the privileges of a city of *Holland*, except that of sending representatives to the states. But here the states of the province of *Holland*, and the states-general assemble, as well as the council of state, and their supreme courts of justice; and here foreign ministers are admitted to audience,



and all public affairs transacted; and here is a palace, in which there are apartments for the princes of *Orange* when stadtholders; the chambers of the states-general, and provincial, and of the council of state. On the west of the palace is a large area, surrounded by good houses, and planted with fine walks of trees, which makes it sometimes to be compared to *St. James's-park*; and here every city of the United Provinces has a house for their respective deputies. On the north side of the *Hague* is a walk planted with lime-trees, two miles long, extending to the village of *Scheveling*, by the sea-side.

Naval  
strength of  
the Dutch.

As to the naval strength of the *Dutch*, which we sometimes hear much boasted of, it may be said, that in this particular at present they are forty years behind the *English*. Whether this wondrous change is an effect of unvoidable calamities, or of voluntary national defection from their antient maxims of government, is not so easy to judge, though the latter cause may seem the more probable. It is now much above an hundred years since the *Dutch* were able to vie with *England*; and, towards the close of the last century, even in time of peace, they thought it their interest to employ between thirty-five and forty ships of war. Upon an emergency, they were able to send an hundred sail to sea: it was computed, that the support of thirty capital ships then cost them annually only six millions of guilders. But if this power is departed from, which seems to be the case, and *Great Britain* left to take care of herself, the larger portion of commerce must fall to her share, in order to the support of a greater naval force. This consideration seems to put us in mind of the present situation of *Great Britain*, and the necessity of application to our marine; not only as a counterbalance to the accumulating strength of *France* and *Spain*, but as an easy and natural expedient to compensate for the insufficiency of the *Dutch*.

Genius, man-  
ners, &c.  
of the Dutch.

TRAVELLERS, either in pursuit of learning or pleasure, seldom consider this country in the same light as *Italy*, or *France*, and consequently there is not much said of it. Sir *William Temple*'s general idea of the *Dutch* in his time is contained in these words: " *Holland* is a country where the earth is better than the air, and profit more in request than honour; where there is more sense than wit; more good nature than good humour; and more wealth than pleasure; where a man would chuse rather to travel than to live; shall find more things to observe than desire; and more persons to esteem than to love." As a kind of contrast to what is remarked by this polite author, a burlesque historian says, " In *Holland* the four elements are good for nothing; it is a country where they worship a golden idol, seated on a throne of cheese, and crowned with tobacco; where art surpasses nature, and industry alone makes the state flourish; where rusticity of speech is preferred to the persuasive softness of gentle words, and a coarseness of manners makes a shew of liberty; where the wives are mistresses, and the husbands servants; where the houses, by dint of frequent washings, appear as cabinets; and an excess of cleanliness is inconvenient: in a word, where butter and cheese is the harvest and reward of the people's toil."

THE *Dutch* are most certainly devoted to commerce, and, though in the midst of *Europe*, detached as it were from other nations, they are bred up in an abhorrence of regal power, and consequently have a distaste of the manners of the polite nations who are subject to this form of government. Under these circumstances they can hardly be supposed to raise many men of genius, or to cultivate the more refined arts of contemplative life and liberal science. Hence the ease, the gentleness, the sweetness of manners, which we find in polite nations, are seldom possessed, even amongst the higher ranks of the people in *Holland*, though we often meet with an excess of complaisance; nor is this at all surprising, if we consider, that men devoted to arts of gain from their earliest life can with difficulty be formed to a true taste of society. The amusement in which the *Dutch* have the greatest pretence to delicacy, is, that of gardening, for which some of them contract so great a passion, that there is a law for restraining the price of tulip-roots. They are so well convinced that much diversion not only creates expence, but calls off the mind from business and domestic duties, that in *Amsterdam* no public shews are permitted within the walls. After seven in the evening every person that passes the gates pays one stiver, and a coach five stivers; so that diversions are taxed with this impost. It is not, however, very considerable, for the people have not a great passion for theatrical entertainments. In the winter-time skating is their greatest amusement. Their retired manner of living is often the occasion that the men when they affect a cheerful, polite, and delicate turn of manners, are awkward; and when gay, wicked: the same remark holds with the women also, when they depart from a reserved habit of life. Their notions of religion, which must ever influence the manners of a people, are not very liberal; and though the practice of it is strictly enjoined as a duty, it does not appear to be rendered delightful.

It is not difficult to conceive, that constant application to business, and indefatigable industry not diverted by any of the warmer passions, nor by the habit or temptation of pleasure, should produce that degree of wealth, power, and influence, at which the *Dutch* once arrived, and of which, with respect to individuals, they may yet boast. But there is no-

thing



- a thing which lowers the reputation of the *Dutch*, or reflect<sup>s</sup> greater dishonour on them than their cruelty. This does not so much arise from fierceness in their blood, or warm passions, as the love of money; and they seem to have followed the example of their old masters, by taking the same steps to support themselves in the *East* as the others did in the *West-Indies*. In this *Great Britain* is distinguished, no part of her greatness being owing to unwarrantable slaughter.

C H A P. VII.

b Of Germany.

- c GERMANY ought, with good reason, to challenge a special attention from the curious, as being the seat of a great people, and of many sovereignties of different denominations, and under various forms of government; a country of large extent, and the scene of many and great actions; a country, whose affairs and transactions are interwoven with those of every nation in *Europe*, of which it may be termed both the head and center; a country, whose princes are every day forming alliances of marriage, which pave a way for them to the principal thrones of *Europe*, several of which, as those of *Great Britain*, *Poland* lately, *Sweden* and *Prussia*, we see filled at this day by some of its princes; a country, which, for the good sense, considerable learning, and the many useful and ingenious inventions of the natives, highly deserves of all her neighbours: to all this it may be added, that it is our original country; that from thence came our ancestors, whose language, customs, laws, we, in a good measure, still retain, together with their form of government, the chief glory and happiness of the *British* isles. Upon these accounts, no *Englishman* can call this country foreign, nor its natives foreigners to him. Indeed, most nations in *Europe* have been either peopled from hence, or subdued by its armies; as happened to this island by the *Saxons*; to *Gaul*, by the *Franks*; to *Italy*, *Spain*, and *Afric*, by the *Goths* and *Vandals*: to those glorious people almost all *Europe*, and part of *Asia* and *Africa*, owed their freedom from those chains wherewith the *Roman* power had so long bound them; and, wherever any of their colonies settled, they established a just and mild government on the ruins of tyranny.

Germany, in  
every respect,  
deserving of  
our attention.

- e GERMANY, as set out by *Ptolemy*, and other antient writers, extended northward as far as the ocean, whereby *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, were included; and southward it was bounded by the *Danube*; so that *Austria*, *Bavaria*, &c. now reckoned part of it, were then excluded, as well as *Alsace*, part of the *Palatinate*, and the *Spiritual Electorates*; the *Rhine* being reckoned the western bounds. The *Germans* afterwards possessed the latter, with the adjacent countries, and being conquered by the *Romans*, were then named *Germania Prima* and *Secunda*. Germany, as it is at present bounded by *France* and the *Netherlands* on the west, *Poland*, and *Hungary* on the east, *Denmark* and the *Baltic* sea on the north, and *Switzerland*, with the dominions of the state of *Venice* and the *Alps*, on the south; is situated between 45 degrees, 12 minutes, and 55 degrees of latitude, and between 6 degrees, and 19 degrees, 45 minutes of longitude; extending from north to south, that is, from *Stralsund*, in *Pomerania*, to the frontiers of *Carniola* and *Istria*, 150 German leagues, or 600 *English* miles; and in breadth, from the town of *Spa*, in the west, to the confines of *Poland*, in the east, about 500 *English* miles.

Extent, bound-  
aries, and  
situation of  
Germany.

- f THE soil is exceeding fruitful, especially on the banks of the *Rhine* and the *Danube*, where also the air is very temperate; but in the northern parts it is cold, and the ground less fruitful. In general, this country and *Poland* are so like to *Great Britain*, both in climate and soil, that no countries in *Europe* agree better with *English* constitutions. Besides great plenty of corn, cattle, sheep, wool, cloth, horses, &c. the earth also affords mines of divers sorts of metals and minerals, as iron, bitumen, nitre, ochre, copper, tin, lead, and even silver in some parts; alum, vitriol, quicksilver, salt, coal, terra sigillata, diamonds, agates, crystals, jaspers of several colours, fine alabaster, turquoise-stones, rubies, &c. In general the surface is even, and, though in some parts hilly, is no where mountainous, except towards the south and south-west, where the *Alps*, and a few mountains in *Alsace*, serve as boundaries and bulwarks against *Italy* and *France*. The forests and wastes yield plenty of wood for fuel and building, and abound with great variety of wild-fowl, and all sorts of good venison; they also feed vast numbers of hogs; and some of them, as the forest of *Ardenne*, feed good mutton. The orchards are full of our common fruit-trees; and in the southern provinces there is plenty of the more delicate sort, as peaches, apricots, figs, olives, grapes, &c. in good perfection. There are rich wines, of which the *Rhenish* and *Moselle*, in particular, are exported in vast quantities to foreign nations; and are not only

Soil, climate,  
produce, &c.



only equal, but preferable to some of the wines in *Italy*. The very mountains of the *Alps*, on the *German* side, are in many places, cultivated to the top, and the vallies abound with pastures and vines. In short, no country, perhaps, in the world abounds with such variety of every thing conducive to the comfort of life; and though others may exceed it in the goodness of some particular articles, yet even of these they have a sufficiency, and might still have them in greater perfection, were the inhabitants industrious; or, rather, did the landed men give encouragement to husbandry and industry.

Rivers.

No country in *Europe*, if in the whole world, has so many great and noble rivers as *Germany*. The chief are the *Danube*, the *Rhine*, the *Elbe*, the *Oder*, the *Wefer*, the *Mein*, and the *Inn*. The whole course of the *Danube*, from its fountain in *Swabia* on the borders of *Alsace*, to the *Black Sea*, is about twenty-seven degrees; which, reckoning sixty miles to a degree, is 1620 miles, without including its turnings and windings, which must make it at least one third more, so that it may well be affirmed to be longer than the *Nile* in *Egypt*, which in many particulars it resembles.

Trade of  
Germany.

As to the trade of *Germany*, that of the cities on the *Rhine* and the *Moselle* consists chiefly of wood, corn, wine, and oil; but the traffic of many of them has failed since the settlement of the *Dutch* republic. The chief commodities we have from *Germany* are linen, diaper, and damask, of which many thousand ells are constantly imported by the way of *Hamburg*. We have likewise large quantities of their mineral waters, and their *Rhenish* wine, which last is reckoned the staple of *Germany*. In return, they have from us some lead and brass, much pewter; some of our woollen manufactures, as flannel, stuffs, &c. to the value of about 100,000 *l.* a year, all by the way of *Hamburg*. They have also from us considerable quantities of buttons, buckles, scissars, and such trinkets, with which the towns of *Nuremberg* and *Augsburgh* formerly supplied not only *Germany*, but *England*, and most other countries. The same may be said of watches, which the *Germans*, so famous for clock-work, were at first wholly in possession of; but now they prefer *English* watches to their own. Both the inland and foreign commerce of the country might be very much improved, were the inhabitants duly encouraged, or more attentive to their particular interest. By the *Rhine*, the *Elbe*, and the *Wefer*, it has a communication with the ocean; by the *Oder*, and the city of *Lubeck*, it may at least share, if not engross, the *Baltic* trade; by the *Moselle* and the *Meuse*, it is capable of trafficking to *France*; by the *Danube*, which falls into the *Euxine Sea*, it might send goods into the heart of *Turkey*, and supply both the *European* and *Asiatic* provinces of that empire; and by means of the *Adriatic* gulph, it might have part of the trade of the *Mediterranean* and the *Levant*.

Germany,  
how peopled.

WHETHER *Germany* was peopled, as *Cluverius* says, in the 136th year after the flood, by *Ascnas*, the grand-child of *Japhet*; or whether *Tuisco*, who, some say, was the son of that *Ascnas*, and others the son of *Noah*, was the conductor of the first colony hither, as *Verstegan* affirms, is uncertain; however that be, *Germany* was peopled very early. The ancient *Germans* had two deities, called *Tuto*, or *Tuisco*, and *Mannus* his son, under which names, by their songs and festivals, they honoured God, the maker of the world, and *Adam* the propagator of mankind: and from the name of the former of these two deities, *Germany* was called the *Teutsche* nation, which by the change of *T* for *D*, is now made *Duytsche*, and the country *Duytschland*.

Temper, ge-  
nius, &c. of  
the Germans.

THE temper of the inhabitants of *Germany* was always reputed martial; but it is observable, that though they are generally of large bodies, much flesh, and strong sinews, they want spirit to actuate their large bulk, and heat to concoct their phlegmatic humour, and, therefore, are better at guarding a post than gaining a pass. It is true, that they formerly opposed the *Romans* for 210 years, and not long since the *Turks*; having fought many battles, and acquired great honour by the glorious victories they obtained, not only over those infidels, but the *French*, *Italians*, *Spaniards*, and others. They are generally good-natured, free from malice and subtlety, much addicted to both drunkenness and gluttony, but not over much to venery. The peasants are laborious, sincere, honest, and hospitable; as are likewise the merchants and tradesmen, who are withal very complaisant. The nobility are men of great honour, and commonly scholars. All the sons of a nobleman inherit their father's title, which exceedingly increases the number of their nobility; and the more because the *German* ladies are generally good breeders; and by that means the estates of the princes are so divided, for the sake of the younger children, that the principalities and sovereign lordships have increased to a vast number. All the nobility scorn marriage with a commoner; wherefore the younger brothers are often obliged to take to arms, or enter into orders, whereby they are enabled to keep up the grandeur of the family, especially by the latter, because the ecclesiastical preferments here are both numerous and rich. The women are of good complexions, corpulent, and more obsequious to their husbands than our women, many not sitting at table with them, and none having the upper place: they are well educated and fond of music, but more addicted to gaming than becomes their sex;



a but they are observed not to be very talkative. The genius of the *Germans* has appeared in the invention and improvement of many mechanical arts, especially clock work. They also claim the invention of the art of printing, and of guns; and to these we may add their improvement of the art of chemistry.

b THE greatest monarchy that has been in *Germany* was that of *Charles the Great*, otherwise called *Charlemagne*, king of *France*; for he was not only lord of the parts upon the *Lower Rhine*, and the *Maine*, but by his arms subdued *Saxony* and *Bavaria*; and acquiring in the year 800, the honour of emperor of the *Romans*, resided with it here, and *Germany* has ever since been called the sacred *Roman* empire; which dignity, though but a shadow of the ancient *Roman*, it has ever since borne. But for the sake of greater accuracy, it will be necessary to observe, that under the race of *Charlemagne*, the founder or restorer of this new empire of the West, the constitution or government was hereditary and absolute, and the title of emperor and empire rather regarded *Rome* and *Italy*, than *France* and *Germany*. After the death of *Charlemagne*, and his successor *Lewis le Debonnaire*, their vast states were parcelled out and divided. The titles of emperor and of *Italy* were conferred in 840, on *Lothaire* the eldest son of *Lewis*, and he was succeeded by his eldest son *Lewis II.* in 855. The others had different states: *Lothaire* got the kingdom of *Lorraine*, to which he gave his name, *Lotharingia*. *Charles III.* son of *Lewis II.* was king of *Provence* in 875. *Charles le Chauve*, or *the Bald*, the fourth son of *Lewis le Debonnaire*, who was already king of *France*, was declared emperor, as the nearest in blood, being uncle of *Lewis II.* In 877, *Charles* had for his successor his son *Lewis le Begue*, or *the Stammerer*, who died in 879. The imperial crown passed afterwards to *Charles le Gros*, or *the Fat*, from the year 880 to the end of 887, when that prince fell into so strange a weakness of mind, that the grandees of *Germany* acknowledged for their sovereign *Arnoul*, natural son of *Carloman*, who was eldest son of *Lewis I.* king of *Germany*. The title of emperor then began to make itself known in *Germany*; for they had there kings of *Italy*, as *Berenger*, *Guy*, *Lambert*, and *Lewis III.* but none of them were generally received as emperor. Towards the end of the month of *March* 896, *Arnoul* received the imperial crown at *Rome*, and his son *Lewis* succeeded him both in quality of king of *Germany* and emperor. With this prince, who died in *January* 912, ended in *Germany* the posterity in the male line of *Charlemagne*, which was here given an account of, chiefly with the design to shew, that the empire was then successive, and that it passed to the nearest in blood from the last emperor. His will had the force of law; yet they were careful to consult men that were wise, prudent, and intelligent in business; which still makes us admire the laws that remain to us under the title of *Capitularies*.

History of the constitution of the German empire.

CONRAD, count of *Franconia*, was elected king of *Germany* in 912, without assuming the quality of emperor, which was disputed till the year 964, as well as the sovereignty of *Italy*, by five different princes, namely, *Berenger I.* *Rodolph*, *Hugh I.* *Lothaire*, and *Berenger II.*

c HENRY, duke of *Saxony*, surnamed *the Fowler*, possessed himself notwithstanding of the throne of *Germany*, but without the quality of emperor, which he never assumed in any of his letters patent or diploma's: he is qualified in them by the title of king of *Germany*, and sometimes by that of *Eastern France*; and he is even stiled *Advocatus Romanorum*, signifying protector and defender of the *Romans*. Henry dying the second of *July* in 936, *Otho I.* his eldest son, was chosen king in his place; but he was not crowned emperor till the beginning of the year 962. From this time forth the *Germans* were always possessed of the title and the imperial crown.

f To begin by the constitution or state of the empire, such as it has been since *Otho I.* it is proper to observe, that the election of the emperor was performed by all the grandees of *Germany*. These grandees were no other than the chief officers of the last emperors, and the governors of provinces, who acted in *Germany* as the governors of provinces had done in *France*, appropriating their governments to themselves and their posterity; but always acknowledging either the king of *Germany* or emperor lord paramount, and making no difficulty to call themselves his first vassals.

g THE emperor *Otho I.* held the imperial sceptre with dignity, which procured for him the surname of *Great*: he added to the title of *Cæsar* that of *Romanorum imperator Augustus*, as *Frederic Barbarossa*, elected in 1152, had himself stiled *Semper Augustus*. After *Otho the Great*, the empire languished during some time: his son *Otho II.* lived despised, and his grandson *Otho III.* converted the love of justice into cruelty. There was a revolution in 1105; and after the death of *Henry IV.* which happened the year following, a constitution was made, whereby it was regulated, that the children of kings, though worthy and capable of governing, were not for the future to pretend to the empire by right of succession, but only by the way of a free and voluntary election: these are the terms the constitution is conceived in, and the succession began then to be insensibly abolished.



THOUGH the grandees, consisting of the bishops, the prime nobility, or the great vassals, had the principal authority in the election of the emperor; yet the people, that is, the great cities, had also some share therein, not so much by their vote as approbation, which lasted till the middle of the thirteenth century. Then the principal princes, who about this time assumed to themselves the title of electors, appropriated to themselves also the election of the head of the empire.

ACCORDING to the *Bulla Aurea*, or Golden Bull, this election must be at *Frankfort* on the *Maine*; but there have been emperors elected at *Ratisbm*. The emperor *Joseph* was elected king of the *Romans* in 1690 at *Augsburg*, because the empire was then at war with *France*, and the armies were too near *Frankfort* to hazard the solemnizing there of so important and august a ceremony.

States of the  
empire and col-  
lege of the elec-  
tors.

THE emperor being declared chief, there must be a corporation or body of states at the head of which he is to be. This body is divided into three classes or colleges; viz that of the electors, that of the princes of the empire, and lastly, the college of the imperial cities. This distinction was established at the diet of *Frankfort* in 1580.

THE elector of *Mentz* is the director of the electoral college, which consists of nine electors. At what time, or by what means, these princes first obtained the electoral power, is not certainly known, though it is very probable, as above hinted, they insensibly assumed it themselves. The common opinion is, that the emperor *Otho III.* and pope *Gregory V.* instituted them; but this is disputed, and many learned men are of opinion, that though it be true, that from the time of *Otho*, the empire was elective, yet the elections were not made by these princes only, but by the great officers of the empire in general; of whom, these being the chief, and most considerable by their estates, took the advantage to overtop the rest, and assume that power wholly to themselves. This is dated from the time of *Frederic II.* and *Conrad IV.* at the death of the last of which several elections were made at the same time, and the affairs of *Germany* put thereby into great disorder. At length this kind of usurpation received a fixed and permanent state, having been passed into a law by the emperor *Charles IV.* who made the famous golden bull, which contains the whole form of the election and power of the electors, and answers to our *Magna Charta*. The number of these electors was then but seven, to whom an eighth was added in the last age on the following occasion: *Frederic V.* count *Palatine*, falling into difference with the emperor, and accepting of the crown of *Bohemia*, in opposition to the pretensions of *Ferdinand II.* was by him proscribed; and being defeated at the battle of *Prague*, in the year 1620, was deprived of his country and honours, which the emperor bestowed upon the duke of *Bavaria*: but great contests and wars ensuing thereupon, it was at last agreed, in the *Westphalian* treaty of 1648, that the count palatine should be restored to his electoral dignity; but because the duke of *Bavaria* could not be brought to part with his, an eighth electorate was erected for him; and the *Lower Palatinate*, part of his country, being restored, he has since had the title of elector palatine of the *Rhine*, and the eighth seat in the electoral college.

TOWARDS the end of the last century, the emperor *Leopold* created a ninth electorate, in favour of the house of *Brunswic Hanover*, which was greatly attached to him. This house is undoubtedly one of the most ancient and illustrious of the empire of *Germany*; and *Leopold*, to acknowledge by this dignity the affection of the branch of *Hanover*, created in favour of the duke *Ernestus-Augustus* a ninth electorate on the nineteenth of *December* 1692. This was notwithstanding with the extra-collegial consent of the electors of *Mentz*, *Bavaria*, *Saxony*, and *Brandenburg*; but as this affair had neither been discussed nor concluded collegially by the electors, the new elector became involved in many difficulties, even after the electoral investiture which his imperial majesty had conferred on him at *Vienna*. These difficulties were not got over till the house of *Austria* and the friends of that of *Hanover* had found means to obtain the collegial consent of the electors of *Triers*, *Cologne*, and *Palatine*. Thus, after a long opposition, they at last agreed that the duke of *Hanover* should enjoy the title of elector; and though they reserved to themselves the definitive discussion of the conditions whereby the new elector was to be put into the total possession and exercise of the title, all was terminated to the advantage of the house of *Hanover*. But it will not be amiss to have a competent idea of what concerns every elector in particular.

IN the decline of the house of *Charlemagne*, the great officers of those emperors had governments, which they made successive and hereditary in their posterity: the same was done by the *French* lords, who from being only beneficiary dukes or counts of the great fiefs of the crown, made them their property. The ecclesiastical princes did not attempt any of the like usurpations: their great demesnes were from the liberality of *Charlemagne*, his successors, and even from the first kings of *Germany*, and the ancient *German* emperors.

Elector of  
Mentz.

THE three ecclesiastical electors are styled arch-chancellors, which is a dignity of the state, and not considered as domestic. The elector of *Mentz* is arch-chancellor of the empire for *Germany*. This dignity is purely elective, and depends on the chapter composed



a of twenty-four canons, called capitularies, as forming particularly the high chapter. The other canons, to the amount of eighteen, are called domiciliaries; and as admitted, having produced proofs of sixteen descents, they are aggregated in their turn to the number of the capitularies. The revenue and extent of the states of this prince are but inconsiderable. He usually nominates a vice-chancellor, who resides at *Vienna*; to take care of the affairs of the *Germanic* body, which are laid before the imperial court. The city of *Mentz*, capital of this electorate, was formerly an imperial city; but was deprived of this advantage in punishment for the assassination of *Arnoul of Zellenoven*, its archbishop, which was committed by the burghers of that city in 1160. *Henry II. of Wimbург* is the first archbishop of *Mentz*, who was declared elector at the time of publishing the golden bull; and who died in 1353. The elector of *Mentz* accepts for his temporalities the emperor's investiture as one of the great vassals of the empire; upon account of the fiefs he has received from his predecessors. He is the keeper of the archives and matricula of the empire, the inspector of the aulic council and imperial chamber, and arbiter of the greater part of the public affairs of the empire. It is to him, as prime minister; that foreign princes apply concerning any proposals to be made by them to the *Germanic* body; and to him also the princes of the empire bring their complaints. His usual residence is at *Aschaffenburg* on the *Maine*, above *Frankfort*, but rarely at *Mentz*. He sits on the emperor's right hand in the diet, and had formerly the right of crowning the king of *Bohemia*.

c THE elector of *Triers* is arch-chancellor of the empire for *Gaul*. The pretensions of the emperors formerly to the kingdom of *Arles* gave room to the creation of this office; but it is now without any exercise annexed to it. This elector, the second of the electoral college, occupies the most ancient see in all *Germany*. The chapter of *Triers* observes the same customs as that of *Mentz*. In the assemblies or diet of the empire, the elector of *Triers* is the first that gives his opinion or vote; and he is seated in the middle opposite the emperor. All the fiefs arising from his archbishopric revert to him, in case of the death of the feudatories without male issue. Besides *Triers*, he has also *Coblentz* and *Hermanstein*; the first, on the western bank of the *Rhine*, where the *Moselle* empties itself into that great river; and the second, opposite the first, on the eastern bank of the same river. These two places serve for the usual residence of the elector, who in the wars the emperor sometimes has with France, endeavours, as much as possible, to preserve a neutrality. *Baudouin*, count of *Luxemburg*, and brother to the emperor *Henry VII.* appears to be the first of the archbishops of *Triers*, who was made an elector of the empire. He was appointed to that see in 1308, and died in *January 1354*.

Elect. of  
Triers.

d THE archbishop of *Cologne*, though the third and last of the ecclesiastical electors, is notwithstanding one of the most powerful among them. He bears the title of elector of *Cologne*, an imperial city, situate on the *Rhine*, but independent of its archbishop. His usual residence is at *Bonn*, a place of some strength, a few leagues above *Cologne*, and on the same river. His chapter, composed of princes and counts, none of the degree of barons or gentlemen being received into it, consists of sixty canons, whereof the twenty-four first are capitularies, and are alone intitled to a vote for the election of their archbishop. This elector is arch-chancellor of the empire for the states of *Italy*; but as the empire now possesses nothing on that continent, his office of arch-chancellor is but titular, as that of *Triers*. The ecclesiastical princes of the house of *Bavaria* have been for some time in possession of this electorate, to which are often annexed several other bishoprics of consequence, as those of *Osnabrug*, *Hildesheim*, *Munster*, *Paderborn*; because those prelacies being much sought after by Protestant princes, the Catholics find themselves obliged to nominate to them a prince of a powerful family, and in a condition of being supported, either by himself or the princes of his name. The elector of *Cologne* claims the first vote in chusing the king of the *Romans*, and the prerogative of setting the crown on his head: he sits next the emperor, on his left hand. The first archbishop of this city honoured with the electoral title, was probably *Wabramus*, count of *Juliers*, who died in 1349.

Elect. of  
Cologn.

e THE first of the secular electors is the king of *Bohemia*. This kingdom formerly had only the title of duchy, and the first duke, it is said, was *Czechus*, who lived in the year 325. Others, with more probability, make *Primislaus* the first duke in 722; it was he who built the city of *Prague*, and died in 745. *Uladislaus*, who died in 1092, was the first that was acknowledged by the title of king of this state in the year 1086. After many revolutions, this kingdom came into the house of *Austria* by the marriage of *Ferdinand I.* brother of *Charles V.* with the princess *Anne*, sister of king *Lewis*, who was slain at the battle of *Metz* in 1526. By this alliance, the *German* branch of the house of *Austria* obtained an electorate; and this kingdom subsists in it to this day. The duchy of *Silesia*, which made the most considerable and richest part of *Bohemia*, is now separated from it, and in possession of the king of *Prussia*, elector of *Brandenburg*. The county of *Lusatia*, a fief of *Bohemia*, belongs almost all of it to the elector of *Saxony*, except some districts the king of

King of Bo-  
hemia.

Prussia



*Prussia* is possessed of; so that the greatest fief of this kingdom is now confined to the mar-  
 quilate of *Moravia*, which has remained to the heiress of the house of *Austria*. Formerly  
 the king of *Bohemia* only voted and sat among the electors in the business of choosing an em-  
 peror; but in 1708, a decree or imperial constitution was made, whereby this king has a  
 right to sit and vote in the electoral college. This act of the diet is called Readmission,  
 and in consequence of it, his ambassador has a right to assist at all the deliberations of the  
 empire. The king of *Bohemia* also is chief cup-bearer to the emperor, and in public pro-  
 ceSSIONS walks next to him, or to the king of the *Romans*.

Elector of  
Saxony.

THE electoral house of *Saxony* is undoubtedly one of the most ancient and illustrious in  
*Germany*, where it has been known even before the tenth century. It was not, however,  
 invested with the electoral duchy of *Saxony* till the year 1423, in the person of *Frederic*, sur-  
 named *the Warlike*, who enjoyed only during five years this great dignity, and died in the  
 month of *June* 1428. In 1547, there was a considerable revolution: *John Frederic*, sur-  
 named *the Magnanimous*, having declared himself for *Luther's* opinions, was attacked, de-  
 feated, and made prisoner by the emperor *Charles V.* who put him under the ban of the  
 empire, and divested him both of the electoral dignity and the duchy of *Saxony*. Prince  
*Maurice* of *Saxony*, *John Frederic's* cousin, was invested with them the same year, and dy-  
 ing without issue in 1553, left his states to the prince *Augustus*, his brother. It is from the  
 latter the house of *Saxony* descends, having ever since subsisted with great dignity in the em-  
 pire, and consideration in *Europe*. The prevailing religion in this electorate is the Protestant  
 or Lutheran. The elector *Frederic Augustus* having been elected king of *Poland* in 1697,  
 embraced the Catholic religion, and his son and successor the late king of *Poland*, abjured  
 the protestant communion at *Rome* in the course of his travels, and declared it publicly in  
 1717. He was not long survived by his eldest son, *Frederic*, who died of the small-pox,  
*December* 1763. The present elector is *Frederic Augustus*, born the 23d of *December*, 1750,  
 and under the regency of his mother the electress, and prince *Xavier* of *Saxony*. The  
 elector of *Saxony* has great privileges: besides being, during the vacancy of the imperial throne,  
 one of the vicars of the empire, a dignity we shall speak of hereafter, justice is administered  
 by him in a definitive manner, without an appeal to the emperor's aulic council, or the  
 imperial chamber of *Wetzlar*. The states he possesses as elector, are *Upper-Saxony*, *Misnia*,  
 which he holds from his first progenitors, and the *Upper* and *Lower Lusatia*, which his an-  
 cestors have acquired from the princes of the house of *Austria*, as kings of *Bohemia*. The city  
 of *Dresden*, situate on the *Elbe*, is the place of his usual residence. The elector of *Saxony*  
 is stiled grand-marshal of the empire, and carries the naked sword before the emperor.

Elector of Ba-  
varia.

THE younger branch of the *Palatine* house, or of *Bavaria*, called commonly in the em-  
 pire *Guillelmine*, has been only in possession of the electorate since the year 1623, after the  
 elector palatine *Frederic* had accepted in 1619 of the crown of *Bohemia*. This house is in-  
 contestably one of the most ancient in the empire. The abbot *du Bos*, in the manifesto or  
 public declaration made by him at the beginning of the *Spanish* war, in favour and under  
 the name of *Maximilian Emanuel*, goes so far as to say, "That we might find in history  
 that the house of *Bavaria* was already one of the most illustrious in *Germany*, when that of  
*Hapsburg* was not yet much celebrated." This illustrious house, a branch of the *Palatine*,  
 was very well known towards the middle of the eleventh century, when *Otho*, count of  
*Schyren* and *Vitteffpach*, was made count palatine of *Bavaria*. The *Lower Palatinate* after-  
 wards came to him. It must not, however, be supposed that *Otho* of *Schyren* cannot be  
 traced back to more remote times. The *Bavarian* historians have set forth the great dig-  
 nity and eminency of this house in the genealogy they have published of it. We see therein  
 that it has produced kings, as well as emperors. It is from *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, raised to  
 the imperial dignity in 1314, and who died in 1347, that the branch of the dukes of *Ba-*  
*varia* descends. Though its possession of the electoral dignity is dated from 1623, and the  
 confirmation of it with the *Upper Palatinate*, from the treaty of *Westphalia* in 1648; it was,  
 notwithstanding, or ought to have been, electoral long before, that illustrious dignity belong-  
 ing alternately to the *Rodolphine* branch, the elder, and to the *Guillelmine*, the second. Such was  
 the convention made at *Pavia* between the emperor *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, and *Adolphus* son of  
*Rodolphus*, and brother of *Lewis*. But *Charles IV.* a declared enemy of *Lewis* of *Bavaria*,  
 whose competitor he was for some years before, being his successor, deprived by the gol-  
 den bull the branch of *Bavaria* of the electorate in order to appropriate it solely to the  
*Palatine* branch; and thereby he cut off the alternative. The treaty of *Westphalia* after-  
 wards confirmed the house of *Bavaria* in the electorate; and though that dignity was also re-  
 stored to the *Palatine* house, a difficulty still subsists, which has not been entirely decided.  
 During the vacancy of the imperial throne, the elector-palatine was vicar of the empire in  
 the principalities included in the rights and privileges of *Suabia* and *Franconia*: the elector  
 of *Bavaria* as surrogated to the rights of *Palatine*, pretended also to be vicar of the empire;  
 but there has been not long since a sort of an agreement between the two electors, in ex-  
 pectation of a definitive resolution.

THOSE



- a Those two branches have produced great men, either in several kings of *Sweden*, or in some electors of the *Rodolphine* branch, which was vellel with the *Palatine* electorate; or in the *Guillelmine* branch, which produced the celebrated *Lewis* of *Bavaria*, who supported the imperial dignity with so much courage against all his enemies. We have had within this century that respectable prince, *Maximilian Emanuel*. The emperor *Leopold*, whose son-in-law he was, could not forget that he had expended in the wars of *Hungary* upwards of thirty millions of *German* florins, which the elector *Ferdinand* his father had amassed by the neutralities he preserved in all the wars of his time. *Leopold*, to detach him from the interest of *Lewis XIV.* and *Philip V.* offered him the kingdom of the *Two Sicilies*, but *Maximilian's* honour made him adhere inviolably to his engagements. *Leopold* was scarce
- b dead, when his most inveterate enemy the emperor *Joseph*, put him under the ban of the empire in the aulic council, contrary to the tenour of all the imperial laws. The states-general of *Holland*, who had a singular esteem for this great prince, gave him the strongest assurances that peace should never be made, till he was intirely reinstated; and this accordingly was effected in 1714. The late emperor was of this house: he was raised to this dignity in 1742. The elector of *Bavaria* is high-stewer, and in public processions and ceremonies carries the globe before the emperor, and at the election-feast serves the first dish on the new emperor's table.

- c NOTWITHSTANDING the illustrious antiquity of the house of *Brandenburg*, which is dated from the ninth century, it did not arrive at its present grandeur, but by degrees and a small increase. Besides the electoral dignity that in 1417 it acquired with the marche, or marquissate of *Brandenburg*, it possesses greater demesnes than any other prince of the empire. These are *Prussia*, erected into a kingdom in 1701; the duchy of *Cleves*, the principalities of *Magdeburgh*, *Halberstadt*, and *Minden*, with the counties of *Ravensberg* and *la Marck*, and lately the county of *Emden*, and the duchy of *Silesia*, except some small districts. The personal accomplishments of the present king of *Prussia*, his share in the late wars, his conduct therein, his experience as a general, his wisdom as a legislator, are all too well known in *Europe* to require here any particular panegyric. Justice is administered in his states, according to the different customs of each province, from whence the parties may appeal to the elector's sovereign council; but there can be no appeal from
- d it, either to the aulic council, or imperial chamber. This prince's states are situate at such a distance from one another, that he is obliged to use great precautions in his alliances and treaties with the several powers. The elector is of the Calvinist persuasion, but there are numbers of Catholics in his states, who are more protected in them than in other Protestant states. The Lutherans also are tolerated by him. The branches of the electoral house of *Brandenburg* are those of *Bareith* and *Anspach*. *Berlin* is the usual residence of the elector, who, as great chamberlain, presents water to the emperor, and in public ceremonies carries the Imperial sceptre.

Electors of Brandenburg.

- e THE electoral *Palatine* house, notwithstanding its re-establishment in 1648, lost its pre-cedency, being since classed in the eighth rank. We have already shewn its consanguinity with the electoral house of *Bavaria*; all that now need be said is, that the present elector, one of the princes of *Sultzbach*, comes from a branch of the *Palatine* house, elder than that of *Bavaria*. It is well known, that after *Wenceslaus*, who was deposed, *Robert* count palatine, was placed on the Imperial throne in the year 1400; and that the branch of *Deux-Ponts*, the younger of that of *Sultzbach*, has given three kings and a queen to *Sweden*. The elector's country is the *Lower-Palatinate*; his religion is that of the church of *Rome*; but his subjects are for the most part Protestants. He is stiled high-steward of the empire, and carries the crown.

Electors Palatine.

- f We have already shewn the difficulties the duke of *Hanover* met with, in becoming peaceable possessor of the electoral dignity, which was justly due to him, if we consider the antiquity of his illustrious house. If the emperor *Leopold* shewed his gratitude to the dukes of *Hanover*, by creating them electors, it may be also said that they have not failed in making a suitable return to the house of *Austria*, whose pretensions, before the late war, they constantly supported and defended as their own.

Electors of Hanover.

- g THIS house, which retired from *Italy* into *Germany* in the tenth century, comes from the ancient house of *Est*; it soon distinguished itself in the empire, where it possessed the duchy of *Saxony*, and even the imperial throne, in the year 1208, in the person of *Otho IV.* The branch of *Brunswic-Hanover*, which is the younger, has been more fortunate than the elder branch, that of *Brunswic-Wolfenbutel*, which, notwithstanding, is at the head of the princes of the empire. In 1714, *George I.* the second elector of *Hanover*, ascended the throne of *England*, and greatly augmented his *German* dominions by the purchase of several principalities from the king of *Denmark*, who had conquered them from *Charles XII.* of *Sweden*. The elector may thus be now considered as one of the most powerful princes of the empire. He has the title of arch-treasurer, and carries the standard.

WHEN these princes cannot assist themselves in person at the imperial ceremonies, they



Substitutes of  
the electors.

are replaced by a substitute who represents them : thus, the elector of *Mentz* nominates a himself his vice-chancellor, whom he puts in place and changes at pleasure ; but the rest are represented by lieutenants in right of their titles, as the king of *Bohemia* by the count of *Limburg*, the elector of *Bavaria* by the count of *Walburg*, *Saxony* by the count of *Pappenheim*, *Brandenburg* by the count of *Hohenzollern*, and the palatine, by the count of *Sultzendorf*.

Vicars of the  
empire.

THE elector of *Saxony* and the count palatine were formerly the two sole vicars of the empire during an interregnum ; but the latter having been put under the imperial ban, and stript of his electoral dignity, the emperor *Ferdinand II.* conferred it on the duke of *Bavaria* in 1623 ; and in the treaty of *Munster*, in 1648, it was resolved, “ That the electoral dignity, which heretofore had been possessed by the princes palatine, was to remain to the lord *Maximilian* count palatine, duke of *Bavaria*, and his children.” Here- upon the elector of *Bavaria* pretended that the vicarship of the empire belonged to him, exclusively of the count palatine. On the other hand, the elector palatine, newly reinstated, maintained that the vicarship did not depend on the electoral dignity, but on that of count palatine of the *Rhine*, according to the antient usage, and the Golden Bull, Chap. V. wherein it is specified expressly, that the count palatine of the *Rhine* is vicar of the empire on account of his principality, and the privilege of a count palatine. This prince, in virtue of the vicarship, has a power of administering justice, nominating to ecclesiastical benefices, receiving the revenues of the empire, investing with fiefs, and of having allegiance and homage paid to him in behalf, and in the name of, the Holy Empire. This allegiance and homage are, notwithstanding, to be renewed to the king of the *Romans* as soon as he is elected ; but the fiefs of the princes, and those usually given with the standard, are specially reserved to the emperor alone, or to the king of the *Romans* ; and in case of a vacancy of fiefs, the count palatine, as vicar of the empire, cannot alienate them during the time of his administration. Such is the law of the empire regulated by the Golden Bull, and the duke of *Saxony* enjoys the same privilege in the extent of his vicarship ; for their departments are quite separate. The jurisdiction of the *Palatine* is along the *Rhine*, and in the provinces aggregated to the circles of *Suabia* and *Franconia* ; and the power of the duke of *Saxony* takes place in all the northern territories and principalities where the *Saxon* laws and privileges are in force.

HOWEVER, the *Palatine* vicarship has already been involved in several difficulties. After the death of the emperor *Ferdinand III.* in 1657, the elector of *Bavaria* first disputed the *Palatine*’s right. He opposed his competitor’s pretensions ; and by the many writings published on both sides, the empire became divided in opinion. But in the election of the present emperor *Francis* of *Lorraine*, there was a kind of partition, and each of the two electors exercised his right in a certain extent of country, which may happen again, unless the diet of the empire should undertake to decide finally this matter.

Princes of  
the empire.

AFTER the electors comes the college of the princes of the empire, more extensive as to number, but less powerful than the electoral college, which, with the emperor, is at the head of the *Germanic* body. They are divided, as well as the electors, into two classes, ecclesiastical and secular.

Archbishop  
of Saltz-  
burg.

THE first are at present the archbishop of *Salzburg*, the most distinguished next to the three ecclesiastical electors. His revenue is very considerable. He has thirty-six chamberlains, who, as those of the electors, carry a gold key by their side. He is primate of *Germany*, and his chapter is composed of twenty-four capitulary canons, who have a right to elect their archbishop, as they have a right to be also elected. There are besides domiciliary canons, who become capitulary in rotation, according to their seniority. The archbishop of *Salzburg* has the particular privilege, which no other archbishop in the empire enjoys, of having the sole nomination to the bishopricks of *Levantz*, in the *Lower Carinthia*, and *Chiemsee*, a small town of the circle of *Bavaria* ; but these two bishops are not princes of the empire.

Bishop of  
Bamberg.

*BAMBERG* sits next on the bench of ecclesiastical princes, as first bishop of the empire ; he is one of the most powerful, and acknowledges only the pope for superior in spirituals. His chapter is composed of twenty capitulary canons, who have a right to elect and to be elected. This prelate is sovereign in his states, which consist of some portions of the territories of the four electors of *Bohemia*, *Saxony*, *Bavaria*, and *Brandenburg*.

Bishop of  
Wurtzburg.

THE bishop of *Wurtzburg* assumes the title of duke of *Franconia*, though this province depends on several secular princes. When he celebrates mass pontifically, his grand-marshal assists at it with his sword on his shoulder ; hence came the proverb in *Germany*, *Herbipolis sola pugnât ense & stola*. His chapter consists of twenty-four capitulary canons, who, in order to be admitted, must not only make proof of nobility, but also undergo a ridiculous ceremony, which is of passing between two rows of canons, and receiving the discipline of rods from them on the naked shoulders. It is pretended that this custom was introduced to hinder princes, counts, and barons, getting into the chapter.



a THE bishopric of *Worms* is one of the least considerable in revenue; its situation on the *Rhine* does not therefore make it the more prized, no more than that of *Spire*, situate above it on the same river. On the least motion of war, these two states are commonly ruined or abandoned, not having strength enough in themselves to provide for their security.

Bishop of  
Worms and  
Spire.

b THE bishop of *Augsburg*, though in the midst of the empire, is not apprehensive of the like inconveniences; but his power, both in spirituals and temporals, is extremely limited, being not permitted to remain in his episcopal city, but as long as his chapter admits him. *Augsburg* besides is a free and imperial city, holding only of the empire and emperor. The bishop of *Constance*, on a lake of the same name, is not more powerful, though the bishoprick was founded by the kings of *France* of the first race, and has a jurisdiction over 1800 parishes. The city of *Constance*, formerly imperial, having refused the *interim* in 1548, was put under the ban of the empire, and the house of *Austria*, having assumed the property of it, still enjoys the same.

Bishop of  
Augsburg and  
Constance.

c THE bishoprick of *Paderborn* was established by *Charlemagne*, who built its church in 777. This bishoprick is almost surrounded by Protestant princes, whose endeavours to make themselves masters of it, oblige its chapter to make always choice of some powerful prince who might be in a condition to support and keep them independent of their enemies. The conditions for being received canon, are to have studied in an university of *France* or *Italy*, and to have resided there a year and six weeks, without lying out of the city. *Paderborn* was formerly free and imperial; but having made some motion in the sixteenth century in favour of the Protestants, it was laid under the ban of the empire, and subjected to its bishop.

Bishop of Pa-  
derborn.

*HILDESHEIM*, whose bishoprick is not less sought after by the Protestants than that of *Paderborn*, owes its foundation to *Lewis le Debennair*, who transferred it to this city in 814; for *Charlemagne* had before established it in the borough of *Ellze*. Though the greater part of the inhabitants are Protestants, they acknowledge the bishop for their sovereign as well as the Catholics. When a canon has resided three months, he may be absent six years, that is, two years for travelling, two out of devotion, and two on account of study.

Bishop of Hil-  
desheim.

d *RATISBON*, situate on the *Danube*, is one of the most ancient cities in *Germany*. Its bishop, established about the year 740, is prince of the empire, and holds only of the see of *Rome* in spirituals; but he is not master of his city, which was made free and imperial about the close of the twelfth century. It is at present the place of assembly for the diets of the empire, and this is what makes it so considerable. The Catholics possess in it the cathedral, and upwards of twenty other churches; but their interest is otherwise so inconsiderable, that they are not only excluded the magistracy, but even the privileges of citizens.

Bishop of Ra-  
tisbon.

e THE bishoprick of *Osnabrug* was founded by *Charlemagne*, in 776. Its bishop is sovereign in an opulent and plentiful country, that extends into *Westphalia*. The Lutherans have four canons in the chapter, and the bishop is alternately Catholic and Protestant; but the latter must be chosen in the house of *Brunswick-Lunenburgh*. In this case, the archbishop of *Cologne*, as metropolitan, superintends all spiritual affairs, and the pope nominates thereto an apostolical vicar. The present bishop of *Osnabrug* is his royal highness *Frederick*, second son of his majesty king *George III.* of *Great Britain*.

Bishop of Os-  
nabrug.

f THE bishoprick and principality of *Munster* is one of the most considerable of the empire. Its bishop was established in 794, at the solicitation of *Charlemagne*, who endowed him with great possessions; but as *Munster* was not yet built, the foundation was at *Mimmingrode*; and in the beginning of the ninth century, the second bishop *Herman*, had a monastery built, and it is from thence that the city then forming took its name. This bishop did not become a prince of the empire till 1246. The emperor *Frederic II.* made over his right of nominating to this bishoprick by a *Congé d'Elire*, which he granted the chapter. It was in this city that was concluded in 1648, the famous treaty, whereby the king of *Spain* acknowledged the state general of the United Provinces, as sovereign, free, and independent.

Bishop of  
Munster.

g THE bishopricks of *Metz* and *Strasbourg* are less extensive, and contribute much less to the charges of the empire. The first, situate between the *Upper-Palatinate* and *Bavaria*, is indebted for its establishment to *St. Boniface*, archbishop of *Meutz*, who founded it in the year 748. The dignity of prince of the empire, with a seat in the diet, was preserved to the archbishop of *Strasbourg* by the emperor *Charles VI.* though the greater part of this prelate's territory is now under the dominion of *France*; but he is still possessed of a large tract beyond the *Rhine*, in the empire, where his jurisdiction takes place both in temporals and spirituals.

Bishop of Aich-  
set and Stras-  
burg.

g THOUGH the bishoprick of *Liege* is aggregated to the *Netherlands*, its bishop is notwithstanding one of the most powerful princes of the circle of *Westphalia*. Its foundation was at *Tongres*, in the beginning of the fourth century, but was transferred to *Liege* in 709. The bishop is sovereign in the city, but there is something of a republican government in the state, which was formerly the cause of revolutions.

Bishop of  
Liege.



*Bishops of Frisinghe, Passau, Basil, Coire, Trent, and Brixen.*

THE bishopricks of *Frisinghe* and *Passau*, in the circle of *Bavaria*, are inconsiderable ; but they have always a rank and seat among the ecclesiastical princes, as well as *Basil* in *Switzerland*, and *Coire* in the *Grisons* country, *Trent* on the frontiers of *Italy*, and *Brixen* in the neighbourhood of *Carinthia* and *Friuli*, which give to their bishops the quality of princes of the empire, being sovereigns in their episcopal cities, and under the protection of the house of *Austria*, though acknowledging no dependence on it.

*Bishop of Lubeck.*

THE bishop of *Lubeck*, though a Lutheran, has always retained his vote and seat in the diet, as an ecclesiastical prince. The house of *Holstein* may be said to have made this pre-lacy its property, and the election of the chapter is but a matter of mere ceremony. The city was declared free and imperial in 1181, which was renewed and confirmed in 1227. The bishop has no temporal authority over the city, though he has always preserved his spiritual jurisdiction. In the sessions of the diet, he is seated on a particular bench, separate from the other bishops.

*Secularized bishopricks.*

BEFORE the revolutions occasioned in *Germany* in the beginning of the sixteenth century, by a difference in religious sentiments, there were several other ecclesiastical princes who had a vote and seat in the diets of the empire ; but they are at present secularized, and converted into principalities, purely temporal, possessed by divers electors and other princes of the empire ; as those of *Magdeburg*, formerly an archbishoprick and primacy in *Germany* ; *Bremen*, also an archbishoprick ; the bishopricks of *Halberstadt*, *Verden*, *Mersburg*, *Naumburg*, *Meissen*, *Havelberg*, *Brandenburg*, *Iebus*, *Ratzeburg*, *Sucrem*, and *Camin*.

*Other bishopricks.*

*BESANCON* and *Cambrai*, though qualifying their prelates with the title of princes of the empire, have now neither vote nor seat in the states : the same may be said of the archbishops and bishops of *Bohemia*, *Silesia*, *Moravia*, *Hungary*, and *Austria* ; but these even in ancient times had no vote nor seat in the diet.

*Grand master of the Teutonic order, and Grand Prior of Malta.*

WE must reckon among the ecclesiastical princes the grand master of the *Teutonic* order, who votes and sits before all the bishops. He was formerly settled in *Ducal Prussia*, which is now a kingdom. *Albert*, of the house of *Brandenburg*, seized that principality in the beginning of the sixteenth century, and established himself in it in 1525, with the title of duke, after introducing there the opinions of *Luther*, and having received the investiture of it from *Poland*. This grand masterdom underwent many revolutions in the empire, as well as the state of grand prior of *Malta*, who sits also as prince in the imperial diets.

*Abbot of Fulda.*

THE abbots come next in order, of whom the first is the abbot of *Fulda*, the primate and chief of the abbots, and prince and arch-chancellor to the empress. In the last quality, he formerly believed he could dispute the precedence with the secular electors, but his endeavours were to no purpose. Though his country, or rather his states, have been ruined during the long wars of the empire, he is still, notwithstanding, very rich, and enjoys great prerogatives : it may be also said, that he is the richest of all the abbots of *Europe*, and that he can maintain a good number of troops. His abbey owes its foundation to *St. Boniface*, bishop of *Mentz*, who established it in 744. The city is handsome and well built, and all parts of his principality are well cultivated.

*Other abbots.*

THE other abbots are those of *Kempten* in *Suabia*, of *Elzwangen* in the same circle, secularized in 1460 ; of *Murbach* in *Alsace* ; of the grand prior of *Malta* ; of *Bergstoljgad*, united with the diocese of *Salzburg* ; of *Weissenburg* ; of *Prum*, united with the archbishoprick of *Triers* ; of *Stavelo*, united with *Malmedy*, in the bishoprick of *Liege*. *Corwey*, or the *New Corbie*, in the circle of *Westphalia*, was founded in the year 823, by *St. Adalard*, abbot of *Corbie*, in *France*. The other prelates that are immediate, have all together but one vote, as also the abbeesses, who are represented by their deputies.

*Secular princes.*

THE secular princes take their seats after the ecclesiastical. These are principally those of *Bavaria*, and palatines of different branches, and of *Saxony*, *Brandenburg*, *Brunswick*, without mentioning many other princes who vote alternately ; of this number are *Mecklenburg*, *Wurtemberg*, *Hesse*, and *Baden*.

*Counts of the empire.*

THE immediate counts of the empire are divided into four classes ; namely, those of *Westphalia*, *Suabia*, *Franconia*, and *Westphalia*, and each of those classes has but one vote. The number of those counts is about an hundred and ten.

*Imperial cities.*

THE imperial cities form a third college in the diets of the empire, and are divided into two benches ; namely, the bench of the *Rhine*, which has twenty, and that of *Suabia*, which has thirty-six ; but all of them are not of equal consequence, except *Cologne*, *Lubeck*, *Frankfort*, and *Hamburg*, in the bench of the *Rhine* ; the greatest part of the rest enjoy but a shadow of liberty. *Ratisbon*, *Augsburg*, *Nuremberg*, *Ulm*, and some others, are cities of consequence in the bench of *Suabia* ; but most of those that come next are contented with enjoying their liberty. Those cities collectively were in former times so considerable in the empire, that it was sometimes apprehended they might occasion a general revolution ; but the humbling of them, which was brought about by different wars, made this fear to vanish. They have but two votes in the diets, each bench one. It must, however, be observed



a served in regard to their votes, that when the two colleges of electors and princes are agreed, the college of the cities is obliged to obey, and consent to their decisions, without any farther consultation among themselves.

b BESIDES the diets, or general assemblies, particular ones are also held in the circles. Those circles are a sort of generalities, or great provinces, wherein the princes, prelates, counts, and imperial cities that compose them, assemble to regulate their common affairs. Their establishment is owing to the emperor Maximilian I. who first, in 1500, established six of them, as those of *Franconia*, *Bavaria*, *Swabia*, the *Rhine*, *Westphalia*, and *Lower Saxony*. In 1512, he added thereto those of *Austria*, *Burgundy*, the *Lower Rhine*, and *Upper Saxony*. Charles V. his grandson, confirmed this division at the diet of *Nuremberg* in 1522, and since this time it has always subsisted; but, pursuant to the treaty of *Munster* in 1648, the circle of *Burgundy* being then deemed independent of the empire, has not since contributed to its charges. Each circle has its directors and a colonel. The first call together the assembly of the states of their circle, in order to regulate therein in concert the public affairs. The colonel commands the troops, and has the care of the artillery and the necessary ammunition. The states of each circle are to contribute to the wants of the empire, whereof they are members, by a tax imposed on them for maintaining the troops and defraying other expences, in proportion to the number of horse and foot, and other exigencies.

Circles of the empire.

c THE circle of *Austria*, which the dignity of the house of *Austria* usually places in the first rank, comprehends the hereditary countries of that house, with the duchies of *Stiria*, *Carinthia*, and *Carniola*; to which are joined the county of *Tirol*, and *Austrian Savia*, though separated from those provinces. The ecclesiastical princes of this circle are the bishops of *Trent* and *Brixen*. The secular princes are the archduke of *Austria*, the sole director of them; the others are the counts of *Auersberg*, *Dietrichstein*, and *Piccolomini*; to which are added the four forest-towns in *Switzerland* belonging to the house of *Austria*.

Circle of Austria.

d As to the original of this great and flourishing family, the disputes of various writers about it, incontestably prove its great antiquity; and the different sentiments that have been published of it, are pregnant evidences of a desire to entitle many ancient and illustrious houses to the honour of being allied to this. The most probable and best attested of these accounts, make *Radolph* count of *Hapsburg* generally reputed the founder, because he was the first emperor of this family, in 1273. He was descended by his father's side from the counts of *Tiersten*, near *Basil*, in *Switzerland*; and by the mother's side from the ancient counts of *Hapsburg*. From the time that *Albert II.* of this family was chosen emperor, in 1138, the Imperial dignity has continued in the house of *Austria*, in which the order of primogeniture has always determined the electors. Not long after *Albert's* demise, the whole monarchy of *Spain* fell to the same house, by the marriage of *Philip I. Maximilian's* son, to the infant *Jane*, daughter of the Catholic king *Ferdinand*. This *Philip* being father to the emperors *Charles V.* and *Ferdinand I.* they formed two branches; the eldest of which reigned in *Spain* till 1700, when it came to be extinct by the death of *Charles II.* and the younger has had the good fortune ever since, by consent of the electors, to keep the Imperial crown in their family. The said *Ferdinand* annexed the kingdoms of *Bohemia* and *Hungary* to the house of *Austria*, by his marriage with *Anne*, the heiress of those two kingdoms; and the late emperor *Charles VI.* after fourteen years war, begun by the emperor *Leopold* his father, and *Joseph* his brother, to regain the *Spanish* monarchy, made the peace of *Radstadt*, in 1714, with *France*; and that of *Vienna*, in 1725, with *Spain*; by which he renounced the *Spanish* monarchy, on condition of keeping the kingdom of *Naples* and *Sicily*, and the ports and places on the coast of *Tuscany*, and that part of the *Netherlands* which formerly belonged to the crown of *Spain*. But by a subsequent treaty, concluded with *France* in October 1735, his Imperial majesty parted with *Naples* and *Sicily* to Don *Carlos*, the second son of the king of *Spain*, in lieu of which he had entailed upon him the succession to the duchies of *Tuscany*, *Parma*, and *Placentia*, on the demise of the late duke; and in consequence thereof, the duke of *Lorraine*, the present emperor of *Germany*, who married the queen of *Hungary*, daughter to the said emperor, is now great duke of *Tuscany*.

Account of the house of Austria.

e THE Pragmatic Sanction is the name given to the disposition for intailing the *Austrian* estates upon the female issue, in case of failure in the male. *Charles VI.* made one in 1720, which was then sworn to by his own states, and in 1726, made a public law by the *German* diet. It was also guarantied by *Spain*, *Muscovy*, *Great Britain*, the *States-General*, *Denmark*, and at last by *France*. The tenor of this notable disposition was to this effect: all the hereditary countries were formed into one state, to remain for ever united and indivisible, and were granted, on the demise of his Imperial majesty, to the archduchess, his eldest daughter, and her heirs; and on failure thereof, to her sister and her heirs: and, in default of both, the succession passes to the electoral princess of *Saxony*, the late queen of

Pragmatic Sanction.



*Poland*, as eldest daughter of the emperor *Joseph* : thence to the electors of *Bavaria* her sister ; then to the house of *Portugal* ; and lastly, to that of *Lorrain* ; or the nearest relations of the house of *Austria*, who should offer themselves.—But to return to the circles.

Circle of Bavaria.

THE circle of *Bavaria*, of which the duke of *Bavaria* and the archbishop of *Salzburg* are directors, is situate between *Bohemia*, *Franconia*, *Suabia*, *Tirol*, and *Austria*. Besides the archbishop of *Salzburg*, the other ecclesiastical princes are the bishops of *Frisinge*, *Ratisbon*, and *Passau*, with the provost of *Berchtesgaden*, the abbies of *Waldseelen*, *Keyserlein*, *St. Emmeran*, *Nides*, and *Obermünster*. The secular princes are the dukes of *Bavaria* and *Neuburg*, the prince of *Salzburg* ; the counts of *Ortenburg*, *Sterstein*, *Eggemberg*, and *Lobkowitz*. *Ratisbon* is the only imperial city of this circle.

Circle of Suabia.

THE circle of *Suabia*, a fertile and plentiful country, comprehends for ecclesiastical princes the bishops of *Constance* and *Augsburg*, with the abbies of *Kempten*, *Elwangen*, *Lindau*, *Buchau*, and several other less considerable, to the amount of twenty-one, including the Teutonic commandery of *Alfshausen*. The secular princes are the duke of *Wurtemberg*, the marquises of *Baden Baden* and *Baden-Durlach*, with the principalities and counties of *Hohenzellern* and *Fürstenberg*, and twelve other countries of less consequence. The principal imperial cities of this circle are *Augsburg*, *Ulm*, *Heilbronn*, and a number of others less considerable. Its directors are the bishop of *Constance* and the duke of *Wurtemberg*.

Circle of Franconia.

THE circle of *Franconia* extends not less than forty leagues either in length or breadth. It was antiently inhabited by the *Franks*, and was called *Eastern France* under the first and second race of the *French* kings. *Pepin* and *Charlemagne* gave their possessions in *Franconia* to the bishop of *Würzburg*. This country had dukes who were kings of *Germany* after the house of *Charlemagne* became extinct. The princes and states of this circle are the bishops of *Bamberg*, *Würzburg*, and *Aichstet*, with the grand master of the Teutonic order. The secular states are the marquises of *Culembach* and *Anspach*, with the counts of *Henneberg*, *Schwartzenberg*, and seven or eight others less considerable. The city of *Nuremberg* is the richest and most important of the imperial cities in this circle, the directors of which are the bishop of *Bamberg*, and the marquis of *Culembach*, of the house of *Brandenburg*.

Circle of Upper-Saxony.

THE circle of *Upper-Saxony* has no imperial cities, and but one director, who is the elector of that name. Its princes are now all secular. These are the electors of *Saxony* and *Brandenburg*, with the princes possessed of the secularized bishopricks of *Mersburg* and *Nawmburg*, both at present united to the duchy of *Saxony*. There are also some titular abbots, but of the Lutheran communion. Almost all the princes of the house of *Saxony* have their estates in this circle, in which are also included the duchy of *Pomerania*, belonging to *Brandenburg*, and the principality of *Anhalt*.

Circle of Lower-Saxony.

THE circle of *Lower-Saxony*, formerly occupied by the ancient *Saxons*, is one of the most extensive of the empire. Its ecclesiastical principalities are now reduced to those of *Hildesheim* and *Lubeck*. The secular princes are very powerful, as those of the duchy and electorate of *Hanover*, the duchies of *Brunswick*, *Lunenbourg*, *Mecklenburg*, *Holstein*, *Magdeburg*, and *Saxe-Lawemburg*. The last is possessed by the elector of *Hanover*. Its imperial cities are *Lubeck*, *Bremen*, and *Hamburg* ; the rest are inconsiderable. Its direction is alternately under the duke-electors of *Hanover*, as duke of *Bremen*, and under the elector of *Brandenburg* in quality of duke of *Magdeburg*, with the elder of the dukes of *Brunswick*.

Circle of Westphalia.

THE circle of *Westphalia* is considerable enough, very fertile, and one of the most powerful in the empire. Its directors are the dukes of *Juliers* and *Cleves*, who are so alternately as well as the bishop of *Münster*. The ecclesiastical princes of this circle are the bishops of *Paderborn*, *Liege*, *Osnabrug*, and *Münster* ; with the abbots of *Stablo*, *Corwey*, *St. Cornelis*, *Münster*, and two others less powerful. The secular princes are the dukes of *Juliers* and *Berg*, at present the elector-palatine. The duke of *Cleves* is the elector of *Brandenburg*, in quality of count of *la Marck*, and also prince of *East-Friezland*, and prince of *Minden*, a bishoprick secularized by the peace of *Westphalia* ; but the principality of *Verden* belongs to the duke of *Hanover*, who purchased it in 1712 from the king of *Denmark*. Except the estates of the house of *Nassau*, and the county of *Ravensberg*, which belongs to the elector of *Brandenburg*, the others are much less considerable. The imperial cities here are *Cöln*, *Aix-la-Chapelle*, and *Dormund*.

Circle of the Lower-Rhine.

THE electoral circle, or of the *Lower-Rhine*, has both these names ; the first, as comprehending four electorates ; the second, as being in the lower part of the *Rhine*. It is more considerable by its electors, than by the other princes or states that compose it. These electors are those of *Mentz*, *Triers*, *Cologne*, and *Palatine*. *Mentz* and *Palatine* are its directors ; and in the other states, the counties of *Nassau-Beilstein*, *Lower-Isenburg*, and *Aremberg*, are the most distinguished.

Circle of the Upper-Rhine.

THE circle of the *Upper-Rhine* was antiently more extensive than at present. Its directors are the bishop of *Worms*, and the elector-palatine, as duke of *Simmeren*. The other eccle-



a ecclesiastical princes are the bishops of *Strasbourg*, for the estates they possess beyond the *Rhine*, the bishop of *Spire* and *Basil*; with the abbots of *Fulda*, *Prum*, and the grand prior of the order of *Malta* in *Germany*. The principal secular princes are the palatine of the *Rhine*, the duke of *Deux-Ponts*, the landgrave of *Hesse*, the prince of *Hirselfeld*, the counts of *Hanau*, *Nassau-Wilbaden*, and some others of distinguished birth, but not so powerful as those mentioned. The imperial cities are *Worms*, *Spire*, *Frankfort on the Main*, a place very considerable for its riches and commerce, *Wetzlar*, *Geinkhausen*, and *Friedberg*, which three last are much less considerable.

b THE circle of *Burgundy* comprehends the *Franche-Comté* and the *Netherlands*; but at present all these states are independent of the empire, and not being concerned with the diets, they consequently form no circle. Circle of Burgundy.

THUS we see, that the diet, or parliament of *Germany*, is composed of the electors, the princes spiritual and temporal of the empire, and the deputies of the imperial cities. This general assembly of all the states of the empire is summoned by the emperor, by letters directed to every member, six months before the session, informing them of the time and place. When they are assembled, the emperor, or his commissioner, proposes the matters to be transacted, which are things that concern the empire in general; such as raising money for a foreign war, and making laws which oblige all the states. Diet of Germany, how convened and held.

c THE power of the emperor has been so restrained by several capitularies, or agreements between the emperor and the princes, that it is difficult to say what it is. The best account that can be given of it is, that he exercises regal authority over all *Germany*, except in such things as by grants of his predecessors he is restrained; the chief of which are; first, the emperor has not the legislative power. The general law throughout the empire is the civil, or *Roman*, mixed with the canon, and the old customs of the *Germans*; and, in the several states, the particular laws made by them, which firmly oblige in their respective dominions. To these are added, the statutes of the diets, by which alone any new laws can be introduced, or any law that will bind all the states; and such statutes of the diet oblige the emperor also. Next, the emperor cannot levy taxes out of his own dominions. If there be occasion for money to be raised for the service of the empire in general, it cannot be done without the consent of the diet. By the capitulary of the emperor *Leopold*, he was tied up from beginning a war, or making alliance with a foreigner, without the consent of the electors. By the same it is declared, that the emperor shall not deprive any prince, or state, of their dignity, or dominions, nor expel any man, though guilty of a great crime against the empire, without the diet: nor can he impose religion on any prince or state, or punish any man on that account. Except the states consent to a war, and promise their assistance, the emperor has no right to demand their help. He cannot assemble a diet without the consent of the electors, and when he grants investitures, it is in the name of the empire as well as his own. As to his own hereditary dominions, he may act as he pleases with respect to the particular laws there. In the empire also, he only can confer honours, create princes, enfranchise cities, institute universities, and give leave to build cities. He is served by the greatest princes of *Germany*; addressed to by the name of *Cæsar*, and *Semper Augustus*; and his ambassadors in foreign courts take place of all crowned heads in *Europe*. He can prohibit the over-rating of the customs, to prevent the ruin of the trade of *Germany*; which is observed to be the only instance wherein he is left to exercise his power for the public good. Power of the emperor, and laws and constitutions of the empire.

f THE king of the *Romans* is chosen to be the emperor's deputy, in case of his absence or sickness, and upon his death, to succeed him without other election. This was introduced in policy by the emperors, that they might in their life-time secure the succession to their family, and procure their successors better terms than they might be able to obtain in a vacancy. It is usual for the king of the *Romans* to be first made king of *Bohemia* and *Hungary*; for it is to the first of these kingdoms that the electoral dignity is annexed. The archduke *Joseph* of *Austria* was lately elected king of the *Romans*, and installed and crowned with great pomp at *Frankfort*. King of the Romans.

THE emperors are seldom crowned the same time they are chosen. The elector of *Mentz*, or his vice-chancellor, directs the ceremony, which, among other particulars, is performed with *Charlemagne's* crown, and the ancient imperial robes. Crowning of the emperor.

g ACCORDING to a constitution of *Charles V.* every state of the empire is taxed in proportion to its ability; which tax, or quota, is entered into a public register, called the *Matricula* of the empire, and kept in the office of the elector of *Mentz*, the chancellor of the empire. There it is, that a prince, or other lord, and such city as the emperor makes a member of the empire, is obliged to be matriculated, with the consent of the college and circle to which they are to be aggregated. This constitution was established, not only for maintaining the forces of the empire, but for its other necessities. It was regulated at the rate of a certain number of horse and foot, or a sum of money to be paid monthly, by the name Matriculation of the empire.



name of the *Roman* months; because formerly the states of the empire were obliged to raise <sup>a</sup> 20,000 foot and 4000 horse, which they kept in pay, to accompany the emperor to *Rome*, when he went to receive the crown; and such as were not able to furnish their quota in troops, did it in money. This contingent was settled at twelve florins for a trooper, and four for a foot soldier; but as the price of provisions was raised, in time this tax was extended to sixty florins for the former, and twelve for the latter; so that the tax of the present *Roman* month is equal to five of the old *Roman* months; but the *matricula* not having been altered since *Charles V.* and every state being taxed according to the old footing, this deficiency was supplied, without derogating from the *matricula*, by augmenting the number of the months, in proportion to the levies required, and other necessary demands

THE total of the *matricula* is, in horse, 2528; in foot, 12,360; in florins, 77,407. <sup>b</sup> The ecclesiastical electors, with the other ecclesiastical princes, are able to raise 74,500 men; and the emperor, secular electors, and other secular princes, 379,000. By the total therefore of the forces of the empire, which is 453 500 men, and by other particulars, it appears, that the emperor and the empire make the most potent government in *Europe*, when they have a good understanding with one another.

## C H A P. VIII.

Of Carniola, Croatia, Slavonia, Hungary, Transylvania, and the Turkish Do- <sup>c</sup>  
minions in Europe.

Some of the  
dominions of  
the house of  
Austria, out  
of Germany.

Port of  
Trieste on the  
confines of  
Carniola.

**A**DJOINING to the *Venetian* territories, and extending to *Turky* in *Europe*, are some of the dominions of the house of *Austria*, consisting of *Carniola*, *Croatia*, *Slavonia*, *Hungary*, and *Transylvania*.

*CARNIOLA* is included in the circle of *Austria*; but the chief place of note, lying on the confines of *Carniola*, and on the coast, is *Trieste*, a port town of *Istria*, situate on the gulph of *Venice*. Great quantities of salt are made here, and exported; and the neighbouring country produces good wine, called by the *Germans* *Reinfal*, which the *Venetians* <sup>d</sup> buy cheap, and sell for exportation. The harbour is large, but is only frequented by small vessels, just to cross over to *Venice*; though the late emperor *Charles VI.* who had no other sea-port in all his hereditary dominions before the treaty of peace at *Rastadt*, which threw *Italy*, *Sicily*, and the *Spanish Netherlands* into his hands, made this a free port, and gave great encouragement to the ships and merchants of all nations to come to it, designing to make it the center of the *Austrian* commerce in these parts of the world. But the merchants of *Trieste* not having a stock, the *Venetians* themselves came among them, and carried on that trade for them, by which they were so sanguine at one time, as to think of supplanting even *Venice* itself: for from this port the *Venetian* merchants struck into a new commerce, by the river *Save* to *Belgrade*, and thence to *Sinope* in the *Black-Sea*, and like- <sup>e</sup> wise to *Constantinople*. But the most that it appears the *Austrians* have done yet here, is to send some ships among the *Archipelago* islands, from whence they bring back wines, cotton yarn, fruits, some silk, grogram yarn, camels hair, and such goods. The great misfortune they laboured under, for carrying on the great trade promised from this port was, that they had no fund of goods for exportation, either of their produce or manufacture; the chief they could export of any value being the wrought iron made in *Carinikia*, *Styria*, and the adjacent countries; which indeed is of great service to the *Venetians*, because they have no iron-works near them. Upon the whole, therefore, the trade of this new free port is not likely to answer the end proposed; yet the merchants keep up their expectations of trade, and some time ago talked of erecting manufactures of wool and silk, that they might have <sup>f</sup> something more to export besides iron. However, the house of *Austria* have a noble revenue from the rich wine made and sold at *Proseg*, which is about seven miles north-west of *Trieste*.

Croatia.

*CROATIA* was once divided between the *Hungarians* and *Turks*, but is since subject for the most part to the house of *Austria*. The present boundaries of this province are the river *Save* on the north and north-east, which parts it from *Slavonia*; *Bosnia* on the east, *Carniola* on the west, and *Morlachia* on the south and south-west. It is above eighty miles in length either way. It pays above twice the sum *Slavonia* does to the emperors queen's extraordinary subsidies. The soil is fruitful in wine and oil, as well as all necessaries for life, where it is cultivated; but being a frontier province, like *Slavonia*, labours under <sup>g</sup> the same inconveniences. The people, called *Croats*, are of a good stature, valiant, hardy, and good soldiers, especially the horsemen, who are so famous, that they are entertained in most of the courts of *Germany*, as their horse-guards.

SLAVONIA



a *SCLAVONIA*, including *Ratzia*, is bounded by the rivers *Drave* and *Danube*, which separate it from *Hungary*; on the north-east by the river *Save*, which divides it from the *Turkish* provinces of *Servia* and *Bosnia* on the south-west; and by *Croatia* and the country of *Cilley* on the west, being 200 miles long, and 60 broad. It is a fine level fruitful country, where cultivated; but having been for many years a frontier province against *Turkey*, and subject to the ravages of the Christian as well as the *Turkish* armies, it has produced but little corn or wine. The chief town is *Pofega*. The *Ratzians* inhabit the eastern division of the country; and the natives in general are of good stature, a brave hardy race, soldiers from their cradles, their country having been long the seat of war.

b THE ancient *Sclavonia* contained many large countries. Some have extended it from the *Adriatic* to the *Euxine* sea. It is said to have taken its name from the *Sclavi*, a *Scythian* nation which subdued *Greece*, as well as this country, in the reign of the emperor *Justinian*. The *Venetians* made a conquest of *Sclavonia*, and compelled the natives to submit to the vilest drudgeries, insomuch that some derive the word *Slave* from this people, thus oppressed and abused by their conquerors. The *Hungarians* and *Venetians* possessed this country alternately. The king of *Hungary* was sovereign of *Sclavonia*, when *Solyman the Magnificent* invaded and reduced it in 1540; and the *Turks* remained possessed of it till the year 1687, soon after which they lost this, and all the territories the *Austrians* possess north of the *Save* and *Danube*.

c THE kingdom of *Hungary* is situate between 16 and 23 degrees of east longitude from *London*, and between 45 and 49 degrees of north latitude, bounded by the *Carpathian* mountains, which divide it from *Poland* on the north; by *Transylvania* and *Wallachia* on the east; by the river *Drave*, which separates it from *Sclavonia* on the south; and by *Austria* and *Moravia* on the west. The country abounds with mines of gold, silver, and other metals, as also pits of salt. No soil is scarce more fruitful in general. It produces good corn in such plenty, that it is six times as cheap as in *England*. Their grapes are large and luscious, and their wines, particularly those of *Tockay*, preferred to any in *Europe*. They have great plenty of grass and cattle, of which latter they send incredible numbers to *Germany*, not less than 80,000 in a year. Among other medicinal plants they have rhubarb. Their breed of buffaloes is very good, which serve them in ploughing and husbandry. Their horses are swift, but not large, and therefore more used for riding than draught. They have such numbers, that their kings have brought 50,000 into the field. Here is abundance of deer, wild-fowl, and other game, which every body has the privilege of taking, so that they are the common food of the very boors. They have no great foreign commerce, besides the exportation of their cattle and wines; and no other manufactures of consequence, besides those of copper and other hardwares, though the queen of *Hungary*, at present, is greatly encouraging divers capital manufactures, which are likely to prove very prosperous. No country produces so many metals as this, tin excepted; and in some parts are found even diamonds and other precious stones. The peasants, even as they till the ground, sometimes find grains of gold. They have likewise great plenty of white, red, and black marble, and some fine porphyry. This country abounds also with salubrious hot baths and fountains; and some of them are of vitriolic, petrifying, and other peculiar qualities. Its air is temperate, but in the summer the days are excessive hot, and the nights as cold. Its many marshes and lakes render it frequently unwholesome; and its waters, except those of the *Danube*, are stinking; but they are all well stocked with fish, especially the *Tibiscus*, where 1000 carp have been sold for a crown, and in some places they throw their fish to the hogs. This prolific quality of the rivers is ascribed to the hot exhalations that rise every where out of the sulphureous soil, especially in the south part.

f THE *Huns*, a *Scythian* nation, possessed themselves of this country in the third century, and communicated their name to it, being then part of the ancient *Pannonia*. It was at first divided into many little principalities and states, which at length united under one head, who had the title of duke. The last of these dukes was *Geyza*, who, becoming a proselyte to Christianity, was baptized; after which he resigned the government to his son *Stephen*, who took the title of king in the year 1000. It was an elective kingdom many years, but generally in one family, and the constitution of the government was a limited monarchy. *Charles-Robert* ascended the throne in 1310, and subdued *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, *Croatia*, *Dalmatia*, *Sclavonia*, and many other provinces, which he annexed to his dominions, some whereof the *Venetians* recovered from him. The *Turks* invaded *Hungary* in the 15th century, in the reign of *Ladislaus*, an infant king; but were bravely repulled by the celebrated *Hunniades*, who was regent of the kingdom during the minority of *Ladislaus*.

g On the death of *Ladislaus*, the *Hungarians*, in gratitude for the father's services, elected *Matthias Corvinus*, the son of *Hunniades*, their king, in 1458. *Lodowick*, king of *Hungary*, engaging *Solyman* emperor of the *Turks* with very unequal numbers, was defeated and killed in battle in 1526, and great part of *Hungary* lost. *John*, waywode of *Transylvania*, as-



cended the throne of *Hungary* the same year; but was deposed by *Ferdinand*, brother of the emperor *Charles V.* *Solyman* restored king *John*; and at this time began the wars between the *German* and *Turkish* emperors, for the dominion of *Hungary*, which lasted near 200 years. *Ferdinand*, archduke of *Austria*, was advanced to the throne of *Hungary* in 1527; and the *Austrians* have been able to influence the elections in such a manner, as to keep the crown in their family ever since; so that the kingdom, from being elective, is now become an absolute hereditary monarchy. The late emperor *Charles VI.* procuring it to be settled on his female issue, in default of males, his eldest daughter the empress queen enjoys it at this day. The *Hungarians* are a brave and warlike people, and their country has long stood as a barrier against the *Turks*. Their troopers are called hussars, and their foot heydukes; and the insurgents are a militia that are raised on the last necessity.

Transylvania.

*TRANSYLVANIA* is a principality bounded by the *Carpathian* mountains, which divide it from *Poland* on the north; by the *Iron-gate* mountains, which divide it from *Turkey* on the south; and by *Hungary* on the west. The country is very mountainous, and covered with woods, as the frontiers towards *Turkey* also are, from whence the *Latin* name of *Transylvania* was given it. The air is warm, but not so unhealthy as that of *Hungary*. The soil is fruitful, abounding in corn, wine, cattle, and rich pastures; and their mines and sands of their rivers afford gold, silver, iron, and salt. Their principal manufactures are copper and iron utensils; their foreign trade is inconsiderable; and though the soil is rich, it does not yield so much profit to the sovereign as might be expected, it being a frontier province, and frequently plundered by friends and foes; which is the reason also that it is not populous.

*TRANSYLVANIA* was part of the ancient *Dacia*, which is said to have been subdued by *Lyfimachus*, one of *Alexander's* generals. *Julius Caesar* repulsed the *Dacians*, when they passed the *Danube* and invaded the *Roman* empire. *Augustus* fortified the southern shore of the *Danube*, to prevent their incursions. The emperor *Trajan* subdued them, and reduced *Dacia* to the form of a province. It was over-run by the *Goths*, on the decline of the *Roman* empire, and the *Goths* were expelled by the *Huns*. *Stephen I.* king of *Hungary*, subdued *Transylvania*, and introduced the Christian religion there in the year 1000. From that time *Transylvania* was a province in *Hungary*, and governed by an *Hungarian* viceroy, called a waywode, or vaivod, and their vaivods at length set up for themselves, and assumed an independency. In the year 1526, two rival princes contended for this principality; one of them was supported by the *German* emperor, and the other by the *Turk*; whereupon this country became the seat of war for many years. The princes of the house of *Ragotski* were at the head of the Protestant faction, and supported by the *Turks*; but being at length obliged to quit *Transylvania* by the *Austrians*, *Ragotski* fled for refuge into *Turkey*, and at the treaty of *Carlowitz* in 1699, this country was confirmed to the house of *Austria* by the *Turks*.

It is at present inhabited by three different people, *Saxons*, *Huns*, and *Cingars*, that have little relation to each other. The *Saxons* have near two-thirds of the country; the posterity of the *Huns* are situate on the north-east; and the *Cingars*, who are gypsies, live in tents, and encamp all over the country.

Turkey in Europe.

THE *Turks* are possessed in *Europe* of *Romania*, *Bulgaria*, *Servia*, *Bosnia*, *Ragusa*, *Walachia*, *Moldavia*, *Bessarabia*, *Budziac*, and *Ockzakow Tartary*, *Crim* and *Little Tartary*, *Albania*, *Epirus*, *Macedonia*, *Thessaly*, and all the ancient *Greece*, with its numerous islands in the *Archipelago*. Thus happily situated in the center of our continent, if we reckon in their *Asiatic* territories, which we have already given an account of, they could not fail of acquiring the trade as well as the empire of the whole world, if these glorious advantages were not lost by their indolence and inactivity, and the destructive maxims of their government. But though the *Turks* are no traders, being rather discouragers and destroyers of trade; yet as they possess so great a part of the world, and some of the most fruitful countries, and productive of the best and choicest merchandizes, it will always induce the *European* parts of the world to send their merchants among the *Turks*, to traffic with them; and the *Turks* themselves, by their haughtiness, despising manufacturing, and not improving the product which they enjoy in many places, must necessarily be obliged to purchase of other nations the things they stand in need of; which naturally encourages the merchants of the other nations to come among them.

State of the Turkey trade in general.

THOSE that settle among them from the eastern part of the world, are generally *Greeks*, *Jews*, *Armenians*, and *Georgians*; those from the western parts are chiefly *Venetians*, *French*, and *Dutch*, with some *Jews* also, chiefly *Italian*.

THE principal places of trade on this side the *Turkish* dominions, respecting *Europe*, where the said merchants reside, are *Constantinople*, *Smyrna*, *Aleppo*, *Alexandretta*, or *Scandercon*, *Alexandria*, *Tripoli*, *Antioch*, and the islands on the coast. There are some Christian merchants in most of the islands belonging to the *Turks*, as at *Cyprus*, *Candia*, *Rhodes*, *Zant*, *Cephalonia*,



**a** *Cephalonia*, and in most of the inhabited islands of the *Ægean* sea, or *Archipelago*. These merchants are generally *French*, though there are some *Jews*. This commercial establishment, by way of factories, among the *Turks*, taking the same all together, is, in one general acceptation, called with us the *Turky* trade; the manner of which trade is this:

THE merchants of *England*, *France*, and *Holland* chiefly furnish the *Turks* with fine woollen cloths, dyed scarlet, crimson, purple, blue, and green; the first three in grain, and as rich in colour as possible, which raises their value. The *English*, besides their cloth, send block-tin, lead, clock-work and watch-work, both in gold and silver; and, all put together, the value was formerly for upwards of 300,000*l.* sterling, one year with another. The returns which the *Franks* (for so the *European* merchants are called in *Turky*) make from the *Turks*, and which are the product of the *Turkish* and *Persian* dominions, are as follow:

**b** RAW silk: this, though the chief return of the whole trade, is not all the immediate produce of the grand seignior's dominions, but of the *Persians* also, is brought from the country where it is produced to *Alleppo*, and from thence to *Scanderoon*, where the merchants trade for it. The silk, thus brought raw in bales from *Persia*, is *sherbaff*, the *Persian* word for raw silk, or, perhaps, for silk in general. When this *sherbaff* silk is landed here, and comes into the hands of our manufacturers, it is called by a name of their own, *legee*. Besides this, the *Levant* or *Turky* merchants import another sort of raw silk, which they call white, and our workmen *belladine*: this is shipped either at *Cyprus* or *Scanderoon*, on board the same *Turky* ships that bring the other sort of raw silk, but is produced in several distant parts of the *Turkish* dominions, as at *Cyprus*, *Antioch*, and *Tripoli*; that is, in the country adjacent to the ancient *Syria*, and in several of the islands of the *Archipelago*. The same sort of silk is also shipped off at *Smyrna*. This island silk is generally the product of the islands of *Andros*, *Naxos*, *Zea*, *Thermia*, *Syra*, *Santerini*, &c. The quantity of silk imported formerly from these places, and as comprehended under the denomination of the *Turky* trade, has been calculated at between 3 and 400,000*lb.* weight, one year with another, except that, upon some occasions, the trade met with an interruption, as in the time of a plague and war.

THE other importations are, 1. Wool and yarn, as *Caramania* wool, and wool of the islands; grogram and mohair yarn, that is, goats hair, spun or twisted; cotton wool and yarn, from almost all the islands of the *Ægean* sea. 2. Gums, such as gum dragant, sandarac, senega, arabic, sarcocolla. 3. Manufactures, as *Persian* silks, carpets, burdets, calicoes, from the islands of *Siphanto*, *Paros*, &c. cordevans, shagreen skins. 4. Drugs, dye-stuffs, earths, &c. as galls from *Syria*, coffee from *Mocha* by *Alexandria*, balm, natural balsam, rhubarb; from *Persia*, sal ammoniac, turmeric, incense, pumices; from *Santerini*, storax; from *Samos*, scammony, myrrh, manna, galbanum, sena, aloes hepatica, olibanum, zedoary, esquinethes, hypoastri, aceatrice, oker, emery-stone, bolus an earth, adrachne, all at *Samos*; velani, from the island of *Zea*; coloquintida, euphorbium, mirabolans, frankincense, from *Persia* and *Egypt*; mastic, from *Scio* and *Naxos*, besides opium and some other articles. 5. Liquids, as arac, orange-flower-water, vermecelli, turpentine. 6. Seeds, as worm-seed, garden-seeds, rice. 7. Fruits, as figs, pistachas, raisins of *Smyrna*, pomegranates. 8. Woods, as box and cypress-wood, fustic, ebony, walnut-tree.

**e** THESE are the principal productions with which the merchants of *Europe* trade among the *Turks*. The number of drugs may, perhaps, be greater than what are here mentioned, but these are the most considerable. The chief articles are the silk which comes from *Georgia* and *Persia*, the wool, the hair, and the galls. The cotton, as well in wool as yarn, and also most of the goats hair, is the product of the islands on the *Asiatic* side of the *Archipelago*, and those also of the *European* side. These serve for the bulk of the trade; the others, perhaps, are equally useful in their kind, but not of equal value in general commerce.

**f** As the *Turks* have little or no trade but what is, as it were, forced by the *Europeans* and others, so they have but few ships, compared to the extent of their naval dominions. The chiefest of their shipping is among the *Grecian* islands, and these are such as belong to the *Greeks*. Also in the *Morea* and in the *Black Sea* they have some shipping; but, for the traffic between *Egypt* and the *Porte*, they generally hire *English*, *Dutch*, or *Venetian* ships upon freight.

**g** THE produce of the islands is exceeding great, and assists the *Turks* in making returns for the goods they buy of the *European* merchants; for the *Turks* are either such strangers to correspondence, or such enemies to all the world but themselves, that they have no such thing as exchange; so that, to balance their trade, they are frequently at a great loss, if the balance runs against them. It is true, it may be in their favour in one place, and the contrary in another, whereby they may sometimes bring one part to make good another; but they cultivate no epistolary correspondence, no regular posts going from one place to another, to adjust these things; so that most trade and business are executed by messages and



and expresses ; and as for money returned from place to place, it must be carried all in specie : much less have they any assurances for the risque of trade, or any of the usual conveniencies of commerce that other nations have.

FROM what has been here said, in relation to this branch of trade, a right judgment might be made of its importance ; yet, important as it is, it has indeed languished to that degree, that our *Turky* merchants, who, some years since, figured it at the top of the commercial world, now bow their diminished heads. However, the trade is not intirely sunk ; on the contrary, we import annually from *Aleppo* above 600 bales of raw silk. This alone is a great national object ; for if those 600 bales of raw silk contain 180,000 small pounds, what a benefit do we not receive by the manufacturing of this silk, in the article of labour ?

Constanti-  
nople.

*CONSTANTINOPLE*, situate in east longitude 30. 15. latitude, 41. 3. is the place where all the *Turkish* wealth and power may be said to centre, as being the metropolis of their empire. It was anciently called *Byzantium*, and by the *Turks* at this day, *Stamboul* ; but frequently, by *European* nations, the *Porte* ; being one of the securest and most commodious harbours in *Europe*. It lies on the western shore of the *Bosphorus*, or strait of *Constantinople*, in the province of *Romania*. The city is built in the form of a triangle, and the ground rising gradually from the shore, the whole town appears at one view from the sea. The seraglio or palace is built upon a point of the triangle, which runs out between the *Propontis* and the harbour, and underneath the palace are the gardens, which extend to the water-side. It is surrounded by a wall of no great strength, about twelve miles in circumference, exclusive of *Galata*, and the other suburbs. The streets are narrow, and the private houses mean, built chiefly of wood, so that when a fire happens, thousands of them are sometimes destroyed ; but the public buildings, palaces, mosques or temples, bagnios, and caravanseras for the entertainment of strangers, are many of them very magnificent. The chief mosque, particularly that which was formerly the metropolitan church of *St. Sophia*, is said to be the finest temple in the world, covered with five extensive domes or cupolas.

It would be an endless, if not an unnecessary task to enter into a particular detail of all the countries and provinces of *European Turkey* ; so that it may be sufficient to observe, that they are either inhabited by *Turks*, of whom we have given an account under *Asia*, or by Christians, chiefly *Greeks*, or by *Tartars*.

Greeks.

THE *Greeks*, the ancient inhabitants of the better part of these countries, were eminent for their wit and learning, for their great actions, and for the numerous heroes that appeared amongst them ; but since they have been subject to the barbarous *Turk*, most of their fine cities have been destroyed, and a deluge of ignorance introduced into those admired seats of learning and politeness. The *Athenians* retain, perhaps, to this day more vivacity, more genius, and a politer address, than any other people in the *Turkish* dominions. Oppressed as they are at present, they notwithstanding oppose, with great courage and wonderful sagacity, every addition to their burden, which an avaricious or cruel governor may attempt to lay on them. They want not for artful speakers and busy politicians, so far as relates to the affairs of their own city. Some of their priests have the reputation of being learned men, and excellent preachers. There is great sprightliness and expression in the countenances of both sexes, and their persons are well-proportioned. The men have a due mixture of strength and agility, without the least appearance of heaviness ; and the women have a peculiar elegance of form and of manner. Some of the most curious remains of antiquity are to be found in *Greece*, and particularly at *Athens* ; and these monuments of antiquity may be truly said to be capable, not only of illustrating history, but regulating taste, as they afford the most essential helps for the improvement of architecture, painting, sculpture, and all the arts which embellish life.

Tartars.

THE *Tartars* of *European Turkey* are those that lie next to *Poland*. By their incursions into that kingdom they have made themselves well known, and are called *Little Tartars*, to distinguish them from those of *Asia*. Like these they are divided into several hords, each forming a different nation : the *Kubans*, the *Tartars* of the *Crimea*, or *Perceop* ; the hord of *Ockzakow*, and that of *Budziack*.

BESIDES these four species of *Little Tartars*, there is another very singular one, of which it may not be improper to take notice. They are situated in the heart of *Lithuania*. Some tribes of this people formerly threatened that duchy : *Vitoldus*, uncle of *Jagellon*, a bold and haughty prince, marched against them and succeeded. He led captive into *Lithuania* many thousands of those *Tartars* of both sexes. He treated them mildly, and assigned them lands near *Vilna* to cultivate, which their posterity possess at this day. They have retained *Mohammedanism*, and all their ancient customs ; but they are less barbarous than those of the *Crimea*, and its neighbourhood. They love work, are very sober, and of inviolable fidelity. The grandees of *Poland* are fond of having them in their service.

ALL these *Tartars* in general, originally one and the same people, come into the world with



- a with their eye-lids closed together so fast, that for some days they cannot open them. They are thick set, with broad shoulders, and extremely strong and vigorous. They have a short neck and a large head, a flat face almost round, a large forehead well shaped, bright eyes, a short nose, a little mouth, white teeth, an olive complexion, rough black hair, and scarce any beard. They clip the hind part of their head, leaving only a tuft before. They never till the ground, and are strangers to all the arts of luxury and effeminacy. They know nothing of the sciences. Their laws are simple, and are derived from plain good sense, as much as from custom. Gentle and affable among themselves, they are so likewise to those whom trade brings into their country. They have no law-suits nor quarrels among them. If any one has a claim upon another, he goes to one of the principal men, called murzas,
- b who determines it without long discussion, and without formality. Prejudiced in favour of *Mohammed's* law, which they profess, they abhor all Christians; and in their invasions, covering their avarice with a religious motive, they make a merit of causing Christians to feel all the ferocity of their character.

THEY are brought up very hardy. Destined to a life of toil, they are inured to it from their infancy. Mothers often wash their children in cold water, mixed with salt to harden their skins: hence, in the depth of winter they swim across rivers without suffering any inconvenience. To teach them to be marksmen, they receive no food after they are seven years old, but what they kill with their arrows.

- c THEIR cloathing is sheep's skins. In winter, they wear the wool next to them; but in summer, or when it rains, the other side. The kan, and all his family, are cloathed in silk, which they usually receive in presents from the neighbouring nations, particularly *Poland*; and the officers wear cloth. They wear no turban, but bonnets of the *Polish* fashion.

THEIR arms are a crooked sabre, a lance, and a bow. They are afraid of fire-arms. They fight at a distance, and even in their flight, let fly their arrows; but if they cannot avoid a close fight, they use their sabres with such dexterity, that it is not easy to ward off the blows. In their flight, they are very swift, and their pursuers run a great risque, not so much from their arrows, as from their unexpected return. They all carry a knife and an awl, to make leather straps to bind their prisoners. They often poison the points of their arrows.

- d THEIR horses are extremely brisk and nimble runners, and as indefatigable as their riders; but they make no shew: the *Tartars* often make them travel fifty or sixty miles without halting. They cut the cartilage which separates their nostrils, that, breathing more easily, they may be less apt to give out, however violently they may be rode. They always lead several in their hands, and when one is tired, they spring on the back of another without stopping a moment.

- e THE usual food of these *Tartars*, and that of which they are most fond, is horse-flesh. Bread and mutton are reserved for the rich, and for those that live in towns without ever taking the field. The poorer sort bake under ashes cakes made of millet, barley, or other corn, which grow spontaneously. The *Poles* call this bread *tatarka*. Though some become servants to others, yet most of them choose rather to seek their food by rapine, than to earn it by an ignominious subjection. It is scarce conceivable, considering their indefatigability in war, how lazy and slothful they are in their families, where they spend their days in the most contemptible ignorance. When they kill a horse, they first thrust a knife into his throat, and carefully saving the blood, mix it with flour of millet, and make a kind of pudding, which they hold to be delicious. They afterwards cut the horse into four quarters; the master reserves only one for himself, and sends the other three as presents to his friends or neighbours, who make returns in kind.

- f THEIR usual drink is water. In some parts of their country there is none, and they either have not the sense to dig pits, or they neglect it through indolence. Snow, however, in the winter, supplies the defect. Those who live more comfortably than the rest, make a kind of drink of boiled millet. It is of the consistence and colour of milk, and drank to excess will intoxicate. However, they esteem nothing comparable to mare's milk, which they chiefly use when they cross deserts to make war. Being *Mohammedans*, they abstain from wine, or drink it only by stealth; but they think the frequent use of brandy no breach of their laws.

- g WHEN they find themselves indisposed, they open a vein of a horse, drink the blood hot, and fatigue themselves as much as possible by galloping. If any one is so weak that he cannot use this exercise, two of them get on horseback, and holding him each by an arm, make him ride at full speed. There are few ailments which they do not actually cure, or believe they cure, by this remedy. Without any other occasion than to appease their hunger or thirst, when they have nothing else, they bleed their horses, and drink the blood: this likewise was the custom of the ancient *Scythians*. They all carry millet-meal with them



when they go to war. They mix it with water; and this supports them in their painful marches, and extremely refreshes them in the great heats. a

EVER ready to make incursions among their neighbours, because they have no other way of supplying themselves with what they want, they are not apprehensive of being attacked in their turn. They trust to the power of the *Turks* for their protection.

WHEN they are preparing for an expedition, they send their horses for some time to graze in the fields to fatten; their kan holds council with the galga, or general of the army; they assemble their chief murzas; they draw up the plan of operations, or rather of the ravages to be committed. If the kan commands in person, all must march with him; none must stay even to guard their country; nor are the infirmities of old age admitted as an excuse. On these occasions, the army amounts to 100,000 men, and 2 or 300,000 horses; for each *Tartar* has two or three. b

THEY cross rivers in a very extraordinary manner. Every one gathers rushes or reeds, which he fastens to two long poles, and makes a kind of raft, on which he places his cloaths and arms. He ties these poles to the tail of one of his horses, whose mane he holds with one hand, and holding a rod in the other to guide the horse, he swims with his feet, and passes the river quite naked. These rafts, though thus made in haste, are so compact and well joined, that they carry safely such of their slaves as cannot swim.

If they have effects which water might damage, they kill four horses that are nearly of a size, and preserving the skins whole, after taking out the flesh and bones, they blow them up like bladders, and place them on sledges or waggons, of which they take off the wheels. Several *Tartars* swim at the sides to secure this floating machine, which is drawn by two horses, each of which has a conductor to guide him to shore. c

THEY are more eager to make incursions in winter than in summer, because in that season they find in the houses of the peasants, all the provisions which in summer they must collect in the fields, and the rivers and marshes being frozen, they can go any where without hindrance; the snow too renders the roads more convenient for their horses, which they never shoe. The feeding of their horses gives them no more trouble than the feeding of themselves; they require neither provisions nor magazines. Moss, bark of trees, and poor herbs, are to them as good, and support them as well as the choicest forage; and in winter they seek their food under snow, which they remove with their feet. d

THE *Tartars* in their expeditions never follow the usual beaten paths. They always choose the least known and most difficult roads; and to cover their march still more, they make fires in their camp. By these means, they surprise even those who are most upon their guard against these incursions. When they arrive within three or four leagues of the country into which they intend to penetrate, they halt for some days to rest. They then divide into three bodies; two of which compose the main body of the army: the third is subdivided, and forms a large detachment at each side. In this order they enter the country; the center advances in a parallel line with the right and left; but the whole marches night and day, without halting above an hour at most.

AFTER marching sixty or eighty leagues into the country, (which tract they spare at present, passing through it only as travellers) the two wings are ordered to disperse six leagues round, divided again into ten or twelve brigades, of above 5 or 600 men each, and these into several others. As they advance, they make what haste they can to pillage the country; and joining again by degrees, and in the same order in which they separated, they carry the booty to the main body of the army, which, during this time, kept together to repel the inhabitants who might assemble to attack them. Two new corps are detached to scour the parts where the former had been; and in the instant these return, a third detachment is sent out to gather the gleanings the others may have left. These barbarians spare none; they cut the throats of infants and old people; but men and women, boys and girls, they compel to follow them. The number of their captives has sometimes exceeded 50,000. They generally burn the houses they have plundered, and turn the most pleasant and fruitful countries into a frightful desert. e f

THE same havock which they make round the places they fix for the limits of their incursions, they make also in their return in those parts, which they spared at first, provided they are not pursued. When they pass the frontiers, and get to a place of safety, they repose themselves and divide the booty, of which one tenth is always reserved for the kan. They cruelly separate all the members of one family; the husband from the wife, the children from the parents, allotting them to different persons, and selling them into different countries. They sell many of them to the *Turks*, who employ them on board their galleys; but they reserve the young women to be the unfortunate victims of their brutality. Though they arrive in a country all together, yet, in going back, they march in several divisions, that those who follow them, seeing several tracks, may not know precisely which road they have g



- a have taken. On these occasions, the *Cossacks*, who have almost as much ferocity, and no less love of plunder, generally lay ambuscades for them. They wait for them in defiles, or even in the midst of plains, where they march in *tabors*; that is the name they give to their manner of travelling between two rows of waggons, which enclose them; and from thence they fire on the *Tartars* with small-arms. It seldom happens but that the whole army is put into disorder. They fly in such confusion that one runs over another, without respect even to their leaders. Each runs whither his fears carry him; and if they are pursued, they gradually throw away all they carry. They strew effects in the way, to amuse the enemy. They throw away even their arms, and often, without ceasing to run, they cut the girths of their saddles, and let them fall off, in order to relieve their horses, that they may run the more swiftly.

## C H A P. IX.

### Of Poland.

POLAND, in its present state, presents us with several striking contrasts: the regal dignity existing with the name of a republic, civil laws with feudal anarchy, a rude resemblance of the *Roman* commonwealth with *Gothic* barbarism, and abundance united with poverty.

*Present state of Poland.*

- NATURE has furnished the inhabitants of this country with all the materials of opulence, such as corn, pasture, cattle, wool, hides, leather, salt, metals, and minerals; and yet they are the poorest nation in *Europe*. The chief source of the wealth of *Poland* is the sale of the crown. Both land and water concur to invite commerce, and yet it has never appeared among them. The number of fine rivers, the *Duna*, the *Bog*, the *Neister*, the *Vistula*, the *Niemen*, the *Berysthenes*, serve only to make a figure in geographical maps. It has been often observed, that it would be an easy matter to join the *Northern-Ocean* and the *Black-Sea* by canals, and by this means take in the commerce both of the East and West. But the *Poles* are so far from building merchant-ships, that they have never thought of forming a naval force to protect them from the fleets of their enemies, by which their country has often been insulted. Their dominions are larger than *France*, and yet do not contain more than six millions of inhabitants. They leave a fourth part of their lands uncultivated, and yet the land is excellent, which makes the loss so much the more to be lamented.

- POLAND is bounded by the *Baltic-Sea* and *Livonia* on the north, by *Russia* on the east, by *Turky* and *Hungary* on the south, and by *Pomerania*, *Brandenburgh*, *Silesia*, and *Moravia* on the west. A kingdom of such extent, being 200 leagues in breadth, and 400 in length, would require numerous armies to guard its vast frontiers, and yet it can scarce pay 40,000 men. King *Stanislaus*, who governed it for some time, and who has shewn that he was capable of doing in a whole kingdom, what he has actually done in a single province of *France*; a king equally qualified for writing and acting, informs us, that "there are cities in *Europe*, whose treasury is richer than that of *Poland*; and that two or three merchants of *London*, or *Amsterdam*, trade for much larger sums than the income of all the lands belonging to the republic." Such a republic can never have made the reflection, that the power of *Holland* was originally founded upon the art of catching and salting herrings.

- BEFORE the sixth century, when the *Poles* were yet *Sarmatians*, they had no kings, but lived without government in mountains and forests, having no habitations but waggons; always meditating some new invasion; bad troops for foot service, but excellent cavalry. It is something surprising, that a barbarous people, without a leader, and without laws, should stretch their empire from the *Tanais* to the *Vistula*, and from the *Euxine-Sea* to the *Baltic*; boundaries prodigiously distant from each other, and which they enlarged still further by the acquisition of *Bohemia*, *Moravia*, *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, *Misnia*, *Mecklenburg*, *Pomerania*, and the marches of *Brandenburg*. The *Romans*, to whom so large a part of the world submitted, never penetrated into *Sarmatia*.

*General history of Poland.*

- THIS historical paradox shews what can be done by strength of body, a habit of living hardly, a natural love of liberty, and a savage instinct, which supplies the place of kings and laws. The *Sarmatians* were called robbers by civilized nations, who forgot that they themselves had begun in the same manner.

- THE *Poles*, who took this name about the middle of the sixth century, are far from having preserved entire the inheritance left them by their ancestors. It is a long time since they lost *Silesia*, *Lusatia*, great part of *Pomerania*, *Bohemia*, and all that they possessed in *Germany*; and they have since lost *Livonia*, and the vast plains of the *Ukraine*. Many a great empire has, in like manner, sunk under its own weight.

About the year 550, *Leck* formed a design of civilizing the *Sarmatians*, though he was but



but a *Sarmatian* himself. He begun with cutting down trees, and erecting himself a dwelling. Other huts were soon raised round this model; the nation, hitherto erratic, became fixed; and *Gnesna*, the first city of *Poland*, took the place of a forest. The *Sarmatians* seem scarce to have known what eagles were, since we are told, that from their finding several nests of these birds in the trees which were cut down upon this occasion, the eagle came to be painted upon the *Polish* standards. But these fierce birds make their airies only upon the tops of high rocks, and *Gnesna* is situated in a plain. *Leck* soon drew the eyes of his equals upon him, and by displaying talents fit for government, as well as action, he became their master, with the title of duke, when he might as easily have assumed that of king.

FROM the time of this leader, down to the present age, *Poland* has been successively governed by other dukes, by vaivodes, now called palatines, by kings, queens, and queen-regents, with the intervention of frequent interregna. These last have been little better than so many times of anarchy. The regents had always made themselves hated. The few queens there were had scarce time to shew themselves. The vaivodes have always been oppressors. Among the dukes and kings, there have been some great princes; the rest have been mere warriors or tyrants. Such will always be the fate, in a great measure, of all the nations of the world; because it is not the laws, but men, that govern.

IN this long series of ages, the *Poles* reckon four classes of sovereigns. The heads of the three first races are *Leck*, *Piast*, and *Jagellon*; the fourth, which begins with *Henry* of *Valois*, forms a class by itself, because of the crown's passing from one family to another, without fixing in any.

IN the year 750, the *Poles* had not yet examined the question, Whether a woman might govern men? It had long before been decided in the East, that women were born to obey. *Vanda*, however, reigned in *Poland*, and reigned with glory. The *Polish* historians relate, but we are not obliged to believe them, that a *German* prince, named *Ritiger*, won by the charms of this unfeeling beauty, demanded her for his wife at the head of an army; that she offered him battle; that the *German* troops refused to fight in a love-quarrel; that *Ritiger* killed himself; and that *Vanda* threw herself into the *Vistula*, that she might no more disturb the peace of her subjects. Whatever becomes of the truth of this story, it is certain, that she would have done them greater service by continuing to govern them well.

FROM this time, the *Salic* law, or rather custom of *France*, was adopted in *Poland*; for the two queens that reigned there afterwards, *Hedwigia* in 1382, and *Anne Jagellon* in 1575, were advanced to the throne only by accepting the husbands which were appointed to support them in so exalted a station. *Anne Jagellon* was sixty years old when she was elected, but *Stephen Batori*, who married her to get the crown, thought that a queen was always young.

IN former ages, other ways had been laid open to arrive at royalty. In 804, the *Poles*, being embarrassed about the choice of a governor, offered their crown as a prize to the best runner; a practice antiently known in *Greece*, and which did not appear to them more singular than to annex the crown to birth. It was won by an obscure youth, who took the name of *Lesko* II. The annals of that age say, that he retained, under the royal purple, the modesty and gentleness of his former fortune, and was fierce and audacious only when he took the field against the enemies of the state.

ALMOST all the *Poles* maintain that their crown has always been elective; but they are little interested in the decision of this question, because they enjoy the thing contended for. If it was to be decided by a series of facts for six or seven centuries, it would be given against them, since it can be shewn, that, under the two first classes, the crown constantly passed from fathers to children, except in cases of the intire extinction of the reigning family. It was not till the end of the second class, that hereditary right was abolished to make way for election. The form of government has also had its revolutions. In the time of *Leck* it was absolute, perhaps too much so; but the nation afterwards felt its own strength, shook off the yoke of a single governor, and divided the authority between twelve vaivodes, or generals, with a view to weaken it. But these vaivodes, who were exalted upon the ruin of one throne, collected its shattered fragments, and formed them into twelve, which, by their mutual collisions, shook the very foundations of the state. The nation, amidst these dreadful agitations, regretted the government of a single person, without duly reflecting on what they had suffered by it. But the more prudent part sought after a man fit to govern a free people, and to restrain licentiousness, without encroaching upon liberty. Such an one was at length found in the person of *Cracus*, who gave his name to the city of *Cracow*, which he founded in the beginning of the seventh century.

THE extinction of his posterity after the first generation, put the sceptre again into the hands of the nation, who not knowing where to bestow it, had again recourse to the vaivodes, so lately proscribed. These last completed the disorders introduced by the first. The *Hungarians*, who had long been under apprehensions from *Poland*, now resolved upon its destruction, and spread terror on all sides by a sudden invasion. The chiefs of the nation



a tion were hated and despised, the soldiers had no confidence in them, and the people were plunged in despair. In the midst of this confusion, an obscure man conceived a thought for saving his country. He drew the *Hungarians* into a narrow pass, where the greatest part of them were cut off. *Przemislaus*, (that was his name) became in one day the idol of his countrymen; and that wild people, who had as yet no idea of any other title to the crown but virtue, placed it upon the head of their deliverer, who wore it with equal glory and success, by the name of *Lesko I.*

b This restoration of absolute power did not last long without a fresh concussion. *Papiel II.* the fourth duke from *Przemislaus*, deservedly drew upon himself, by his crimes, the scandal of being the last prince of his family. Leaving no children, the most ruinous anarchy succeeded. The bastards of the ducal family on one side, and the twelve palatines on the other, were employed in rending out of each other's hands the reins of government; and these two principal factions engendered a hundred more. Every individual flew to arms, and right was made to consist in force only, courage in brutal fury, and safety in murder; till the nation, weary of tearing itself in pieces, (a thing which it had not done in a more uncivilized state) saw the necessity of taking speedy refuge under the government of a single person. The candidates met at *Cruswick*, a village in *Cujavia*; where an inhabitant of that country received them in his rustic cot, entertained them with a frugal repast, and displayed a sound judgment, an honest and humane heart, abilities superior to his condition, a resolute mind, and a love for his country, which these madmen did not feel in their own breasts. Ambitious men, who themselves despair of governing, chuse rather to submit to a third person, who has not entered into the competition, than to obey a rival. In the present case, they determined in favour of virtue; and by this means repaired in some measure, the mischiefs they had occasioned by their contests for the throne. *Piaft* therefore was chosen king in the ninth century. The *Polish* historians will have it, that two angels were concerned in this event, though *Poland* had not at this time embraced Christianity. What they relate of the good government of *Piaft* is supported by better proofs.

c THE princes of this family, who succeeded one another, continually increased their authority, which even seemed to be more absolute than ever, under *Boleslaus I.* in the tenth century. Till this time the sovereigns of *Poland* had only the title of duke. Two powers, d the emperor and the pope, were then contending for the right of making kings. The pope miscarried in his pretensions; and it was the emperor *Otho III.* who respecting the virtues of *Boleslaus*, invested him with the regal dignity, in his passage through *Poland*. One would scarce imagine, that with this instrument of despotism, the first king of *Poland* laid the foundations of a republic. This hero, after having penetrated into the heart of the empire, and extended his conquests as far as the confluence of the *Elbe* and the *Sala*, where he erected three columns as monuments of his glory, after having twice subdued *Russia*, began at last to think seriously; and considering on one side, that his enemies were subdued, and on the other, his subjects exhausted and ruined, and their wounds still bleeding, had the humanity to weep over his victories. Hitherto he had reigned without a council; but he now created one, consisting of twelve persons of distinguished merit.

e THE nation, which had hitherto obeyed implicitly, now turning its eyes towards liberty, discovered with pleasure the first image of it; for this council might in time become a senate. We have seen, that the *Poles* had long ago abolished monarchy to make way for twelve vaivods; and this transient idea of a republic had never been intirely defaced. Though the *Polish* kings, after the restoration of the old constitution, had regularly succeeded one another by hereditary right, yet there still remained a persuasion, that there were circumstances in which the nation might resume the crown; and it exerted this right by deposing *Miecislaw III.* a bad prince, in the twelfth century. Instances of this sort were repeated more than once in the thirteenth century.

f A NATION, which has proceeded so far as to depose its kings, has nothing to do but to chuse its materials for erecting the edifice of liberty, and time will do the rest. The banishment of *Boleslaus II.* after the patience of his subjects had been exhausted by his barbarous behaviour, was favourable enough for such an undertaking, there being scarce any absolute sovereign in *Europe*. The nobles in *France, England, Sweden, Denmark, Italy,* and *Sicily*, confined the authority of their princes within very narrow limits. The *Spaniards* have not to this day forgot the ancient form of inaugurating their kings. "We, who are as good as you, make you our king, upon condition that you will observe our laws; otherwise not." The *Poles* too had laid some restraints on the regal power; but this power being always ready to overleap its bounds, they still thought it too extensive, for their kings g made war and peace at their own pleasure.

In the 11th century, *Casimir the Great*, being impatient to put an end to a long war, made a treaty of peace, which the enemy required to be ratified by all the estates of the realm. Being assembled for this purpose, they refused their concurrence; and from this



time were convinced, that it was not impossible to establish a republic, and at the time to keep a king. The foundations of this constitution were laid even before the death of *Casimir*, who having no son, proposed his nephew, *Lewis*, king of *Hungary*, for his successor. The *Poles* gave their consent; but it was upon such conditions as laid heavy fetters upon absolute power. *Lewis* himself, in the latter part of his life, when he had no hopes of begetting an heir to the throne, pitched upon his son-in-law *Sigismund* to succeed him, with the approbation of the *Poles*, which he purchased by ceding to them fresh privileges: but the *Poles* were not contented with having in some measure disposed of the crown, by their consent being asked; they were resolved to strike a decisive blow, by abolishing the succession. If either of *Lewis*'s two daughters had a right to the crown, it was undoubtedly his eldest, the princess *Mary*, wife to *Sigismund*; they therefore rejected both her and her husband, and gave the crown to *Hedwigia*, the younger, upon condition that she would take no husband but of their appointing.

Among the competitors that appeared on this occasion, *Jagellon* displayed the lustre of the crown of *Lithuania*, which he promised to incorporate with that of *Poland*. This offer was certainly considerable; but it would have been nothing, if he had not subscribed to the republican form of government. Upon this condition he married *Hedwigia*, and was declared king.

First establishment of the republic of Poland.

A REPUBLIC was now established, composed of three estates; the king, the senate, and the equestrian order. The king's portion was majesty, power fell to the senate, and liberty was the share of the equestrian order; an order including all the rest of the nobility, and which soon set up tribunes, by the name of deputies. These deputies represent the whole equestrian order in the general assemblies of the nation, called diets, and put a stop to all proceedings there, whenever they please, by their right of *Veto*. The commonwealth of *Rome* had no king, but the commons were reckoned as one of its three orders, sharing the sovereign power with the senate and the knights; and the majesty of the *Roman* people was extolled both at home and abroad. *Poland*, actuated by different principles, has placed its people upon a level with the cattle that till the ground. The senate, which holds the balance between the king and liberty, can look without emotion upon the slavery of five or six millions of men, who were much happier of old when they were *Sarmatians*.

WHILE the commonwealth of *Poland* was yet in its infancy, *Jagellon* seemed to forget upon what conditions he reigned. An edict issued by him was found contrary to the oath he had taken, and the new republicans hewed it in pieces with their sabres before his face. But the reign of *Sigismund Augustus* was the æra when the republican pride displayed itself in the haughtiest manner.

THIS king dying in 1573 without children, the *Poles* took this opportunity of guarding their liberty with new bulwarks. They examined into their old laws, limited many, extended some, and abolished others; and after many debates, it was agreed that the kings elected by the nation should make no attempts to get their successors appointed; that they should not so much as propose any one to the state for this purpose, and consequently should never assume the title of heirs of the kingdom; that they should always have about them sixteen persons by way of council, without whose concurrence they should neither receive foreign ministers, nor send any to other princes; that they should not levy new troops, nor order the nobility on horseback without the consent of all the orders of the republic; that they should admit no foreigners into the council of the nation, nor confer upon them any office, dignity, or starosty; and lastly, that they should not marry, without having first obtained the permission of the senate and equestrian order.

THE whole interregnum was spent in contriving how to guard against what was called the encroachments of the throne. The republican language became henceforward the prevailing stile in all assemblies of state. *Henry of Valois* was shocked at it upon his arrival in *Poland*, and at his coronation in 1574. But a few months after, the castellan of *Sandomir* was deputed, with five others, to notify to him his approaching deposition, if he did not more punctually discharge the duties of the throne. Soon after, his precipitate flight put an end to the complaints of the nation, and to his reign together.

The Polish republic how constituted.

To these spirited attacks, made at different times, it is owing that *Poland* has retained royalty without fearing its kings. A king of *Poland*, at his very coronation, and when he swears to the *Paſſa Convēnta*, absolves his subjects from their oath of allegiance, in case he violates the laws of the republic.

THE legislative power belongs essentially to the diet, which the king is obliged to call together every two years; and in case of his failure, the republic has a right to assemble by its own authority. The little diets or dietines of every palatine precede the great one; and in these they prepare the matters that are to be discussed in the general assembly, and elect the representatives of the equestrian order, out of which is composed the chamber of deputies. The persons of these deputies or tribunes are held as sacred. The old castle of

Warsaw,



- a *Warsaw*, in which the kings of *Poland* formerly resided, is the place where the diet meets. In order to form an idea of the senate, which is the soul of this body, we must cast our eyes upon the bishops, palatines, and castellans. The two latter of these dignities are less known than the former. A palatine is the chief of the nobility within his own palatinate, presides at all their assemblies, leads them to the field of election, when a king is to be chosen, and to the field of battle, when the *Polish* is assembled, or the *Polish* gentlemen, in virtue of the king's summons to war. He has also a right to fix the price of commodities, and to regulate weights and measures: in short, he is a governor of a province. A castellan enjoys the same privileges within his own district, which always makes part of a palatinate; he represents the palatine in his absence. The castellans were formerly governors of the strong castles and royal cities; but these governments are now in the hands of the starosts, who also administer justice either in their own persons, or by their deputies. The starost of *Samogitia* is the only one who has a seat in the senate; but there are in it two archbishops, fifteen bishops, thirty-three palatines, and eighty-five castellans, in all 136.
- b

THE ministers of state have a seat in the senate, without being senators: these are the grand marshals, grand-chancellors, vice-chancellors, grand-treasurers of the crown and of *Lithuania*, with the marshals of the courts of *Poland* and *Lithuania*; in number ten, two of each denomination, by reason of the union of the two states. The grand-marshal is the third person in the kingdom, having only the king and the primate above him. As master of the palace, he appoints ambassadors their days of audience; and exercises an almost absolute authority in the court, and for three leagues round it. He provides for the safety of the king's person, and the preservation of the public peace: he takes cognizance of all crimes within his district, and judges without appeal; nor can his sentences be reversed but by the whole body of the nation. It is also his business to assemble the senate, and keep in order those who would disturb it; for which purposes he has always a body of troops at his command. The marshal of the court can exercise no jurisdiction but in the absence of the grand-marshal. The grand-chancellor is keeper of the great seal, as the vice-chancellor is of the privy seal. One of them is always a bishop, with a jurisdiction in ecclesiastical matters; and all answers given in the king's name upon public occasions, must be given by one of these two officers. The grand-treasurer is entrusted with the revenue of the republic, the *Poles* being very careful not to leave this money at the disposal of the king. A vote of the whole nation, or at least a *senatus consultum*, directs how it shall be employed; and the grand-treasurer is accountable to the nation only.

c

d

THERE is very little resemblance between these ministers and those of other courts. They are appointed indeed by the king, but the republic only can turn them out. Nevertheless, as they are connected with the crown, which is the source of all favours, and as they are men, the republic has not thought fit to allow them a deliberative vote in the senate.

- e THE first man in the senate is the archbishop of *Gnesna*, commonly called the primate. By virtue of his office, he is legate of the holy see, and censor of the kings of *Poland*: he is himself in some measure a king in every vacancy of the throne, during which he takes the name of Interrex; and the honours he receives are proportioned to the dignity of his station. He never exercises his censorship but with applause. If the king does not listen to his remonstrances in private, and persists in bad measures, it is in full senate, or in the diet, that the primate arms himself with all the power of the laws to reclaim him; and the mischief is generally put a stop to.

- f WHEN the diet is not sitting, the springs of government are kept in motion by the senate, under the inspection of the king; but the king can neither by authority nor violence over-rule their suffrages. The liberty they possess is visible even in their outward forms; for the senators are seated in arm-chairs, and as soon as the king is covered, they follow his example. However, the decrees of the senate, when the diet is not sitting, are only provisional; but when the diet is assembled, the senate, together with the king and the chamber of deputies, has a legislative power.

- g THE first thing done in a diet, is always to read the *Paſſa Conventa*, containing the obligations which the king has entered into with his people; and if he has failed in any particular, every member of the assembly has a right to insist upon its being better observed for the future. In the other sittings, which are of six weeks continuance, the usual duration of a diet, are settled all the concerns of the nation; such as, the nomination to vacant dignities, the disposal of the crown lands to such as have served long in the army with distinction, the passing the grand treasurer's accounts, the diminution or augmentation of taxes as circumstances require, the negotiations with which the ambassadors of the republic have been entrusted, and the manner in which they have executed their commissions; the alliances to be formed or broken, the making of peace and war, the abrogating or passing laws, and the strengthening of public liberty. The last five days, called the great days



are set apart for uniting all the votes. Every decree, to have the force of a law, must be ratified by the unanimous consent of all the three orders; the opposition of a single deputy undoes every thing. This privilege is considered as the most sacred institution of the commonwealth; and a sure way of being torn in pieces would be to propose its abolition. It may sometimes do good, but upon the whole much more mischief. A single deputy may thus not only annul a good decree, but if he has a quarrel with all, he has nothing to do but to make a protest, and leave the assembly, and the diet is instantly dissolved. The remedy against these dissolutions is a confederacy, in which matters are decided by a majority of votes, without paying any regard to the protests of the deputies; and one confederacy is frequently formed against another. The acts of these confederacies must afterwards be ratified or annulled by a general diet. All this must needs occasion great convulsions in the state, especially if the army comes to meddle in the dispute.

Manner of  
electing a  
king of  
Poland.

As soon as the throne is vacant, all the courts of justice, and other ordinary springs of the machine of government, remain in a state of inaction, and all the authority is transferred to the primate, who, as above observed, in quality of interrex, has in some respects more power than the king himself; and yet the republic takes no umbrage at it, because he has not time to make himself formidable. He notifies the vacancy of the throne to foreign princes, which is in effect proclaiming that a crown is to be disposed of; he issues the universals or circular letters for the election; gives orders to the starosts to keep a strict guard upon the fortified places, and to the grand generals to do the same upon the frontiers, towards which the army marches.

THE place of election is the field of *Wola*, at the gates of *Warsaw*. All the nobles of the kingdom have a right of voting. The *Poles* encamp on the left side of the *Wistla*, and the *Lithuanians* on the right, each under the banners of their respective palatinates, which makes a sort of civil army, consisting of between 150 and 200,000 men, assembled to exercise the highest act of freedom. Those who are not able to provide a horse and a sabre, stand behind on foot, armed with scythes, and do not seem at all less proud than the rest, as they have the same right of voting.

THE field of election is surrounded by a ditch, with three gates, in order to avoid confusion, one to the east for *Great Poland*, another to the south for *Little Poland*, and a third to the west for *Lithuania*. In the middle of the field, which is called *Kolau*, is erected a vast building of wood, named the *Szopa*, or hall for the senate, at whose debates the deputies are present, and carry the result of them to the several palatinates. The part which the marshal acts upon this occasion is still more important than in ordinary diets; for, being the mouth of the nobility, he has it in his power to do great service to the candidates; he is also to draw up the instrument of election, and the king elect must take it only from his hand.

It is prohibited, upon pain of being declared a public enemy, to appear at the election with regular troops, in order to avoid all violence. But the nobles, who are always armed with pistols and sabres, commit violence against one another, at the time that they cry out "liberty!"

ALL who aspire openly to the crown are excluded from the field of election, that their presence may not constrain the voters. The king must be elected *nomine contradicente*, by all the suffrages without exception. The law is founded upon this principle, that when a vast family adopts a father, all the children have a right to be pleased. The idea is plausible in speculation; but if it was rigorously kept to, *Poland* could have no such thing as a lawful king. They therefore give up a real unanimity, and content themselves with the appearance of it; or rather, if the law which prescribes it cannot be fulfilled by means of money, they call in the assistance of the sabre.

BEFORE they come to this extremity, no election can possibly be carried on with more order, decency, and appearance of freedom. The primate, in few words, recapitulates to the nobles on horseback, the respective merit of the candidates, which has already been examined in the dietines; he exhorts them to chuse the most worthy, invokes heaven, gives his blessing to the assembly, and remains alone with the marshal of the diet, while the senators disperse themselves into the several palatinates, to promote an unanimity of sentiments. If they succeed, the primate goes himself to collect the votes, naming once more all the candidates. *Szoda*, answer the nobles, "That is the man we chuse," and instantly the air resounds with his name, with cries of *vivat*, and the noise of pistols. If all the palatines agree in their nominations, the primate gets on horseback, and then the profoundest silence succeeding to the greatest noise, he asks three times if all are satisfied; and after a general approbation, three times proclaims the king; and the grand marshal of the crown repeats the proclamation three times at the three gates of the camp. How glorious a king this, if endued with royal qualities! and how incontestable his title in the suffrages of a whole people!

THIS



a The speech of a free and peaceable election is by no means a representation of what usually happens. The corruption of the great, the fury of the people, intrigues and factions, the gold and the arms of foreign powers, frequently fill the scene with violence and blood.

The nobility having seized the reins of government with all the honours and emoluments of the state, have thought themselves obliged to defend it too, and to leave all the rest of the nation to cultivate the lands. *Poland* is at present the only country in the world whose whole cavalry is made up of gentlemen, of which the grand duchy of *Lithuania* furnishes a fourth part; and in this cavalry consists the chief strength of the state, for the infantry is scarce reckoned as any thing. This army, or rather these two armies, the *Polsk* and the *Lithuanian*, have each their grand general, independent of one another. It has been already observed, that the office of grand-marshal is first in dignity after the primacy; but the grand general is superior in power, being unconfined by almost any bounds but what he prescribes to himself; and this great authority is suspended only when the king commands in person. The two armies have also each of them a general, whose functions are confined to the field, called the petty-general, who has no authority but what the grand-general chooses to give him, and who supplies his absence. A third officer of note is the *stragenik*, who commands the van. There is also kept up in *Poland* a third body of troops, consisting of foot and dragoons, the institution of which is of no great antiquity. It is called the foreign army, and made up almost entirely of *Germans*. When the whole is complete, which seldom happens, the ordinary defence of *Poland* is about 48,000 men. A fourth army, the most numerous and the most useless of all, is the *Polspolite*. In case of necessity, more than 150,000 gentlemen would mount their horses, in order to submit only to such discipline as they liked; to mutiny, if they were detained more than a fortnight in the place appointed them to meet in, without marching; and to refuse to serve, if it should be necessary to pass the frontiers. Another mischief is, that the two bodies of troops which are its ordinary defence, the *Polsk* army and the *Lithuanian*, being commanded by two grand-generals, independent of each other, are without that principle of union which makes forces act in concert. It has happened more than once, that when one has marched, the other has halted: they have even been known to threaten each other.

Military establishment of the Poles.

d THE *Poles* are born soldiers; and though they resemble their ancestors, the *Sarmatians*, much less than the *Tartars* do theirs, yet there are still remaining among them some *Sarmatian* features. For instance, they are frank and haughty; which last quality is natural enough in a gentleman who elects his own king, and may come to have that honour himself. They are also extremely passionate, affairs being often decided sword in hand by the representatives, in their national assemblies. Hospitality is a virtue much cultivated among them, and was learnt from the *Turks* and *Tartars*. The *Poles* are brave, robust, and inured to cold and fatigue; but they have departed from the simplicity and frugality of the *Sarmatians*. To the very end of the reign of *Sobieski*, a few wooden chairs, a bear's skin, a pair of pistols, and two boards covered with a mattress, was all the household furniture of a nobleman in decent circumstances; and a suit of furs was his dress. Luxury began to get footing under *Augustus II.* and the *French* fashions, already adopted in *Germany*, were added to the magnificence of the East, which displays itself more in pomp than elegance. The *Poles* love money, but not with a view of hoarding. Their stateliness is such, that a woman of quality never stirs abroad but in a coach and six, though it were only to cross a street. These women, however, are far from being delicate. They mix with the men in competitions at public games, in hunting, and the pleasures of the table; and frequently take a journey of 100 or 200 leagues in a sledge, without any apprehensions about inconvenient lodgings, or the badness of the roads.

Character of the Poles.

f PERSONS who travel in *Poland* find that good morals are of more value than good laws. The number of forests, the distance of habitations, the custom of travelling by night as well as by day, the negligence of the starosts, with regard to the safety of the roads, all contribute to favour robbery and murder, and yet an instance of either is scarce known in ten years.

The extremes of liberty and slavery seem to be contending which shall ruin *Poland*. The nobility can do whatever they please; and the body of the nation groans in servitude. Wherever the great have tyrannically trampled upon the people, the latter have revenged themselves by giving up their oppressors into the hands of an absolute monarch. That all men are born upon a footing of equality, is a truth which will never be eradicated from the human mind; and if an inequality of condition is become necessary, it must be alleviated by the enjoyment of natural liberty, and equal laws. A *Polsk* noble, whatever crime he has committed, cannot be taken into custody, till he has been condemned in an assembly of all the states of the realm; which is, in effect, furnishing him with all imaginable means to escape; but, whoever is not nobly born, is a mere cypher in the city, or a slave in the country;



and it is certain, that every state is undone where the plebeian has no possibility of rising, but by overturning the whole constitution. In consequence of the slavery of the people, *Poland* has very few artificers or tradesmen. In all their wars, they are forced to hire foreign engineers; there is no such thing among them as a school for painting; architecture is yet in its infancy; and theatrical entertainments they have none. They write history without taste, know little of the mathematics, and less of true philosophy; they have no public building of any note, and not one great city in all the kingdom; even *Warsaw* does not contain 60,000 souls.

Dantzic,  
Courland,  
Ducal Prussia.

But we must except *Dantzic*, and some other trading towns, which are distinct republics and governed by their respective magistrates. The duchy of *Courland* is besides reckoned a province of *Poland*, but the *Courlanders* elect their own princes, and are governed by their own laws. They are influenced however in their choice, either by the *Poles* or the *Russians*, and the latter seem to have the greatest influence on them at present by reinstating *John Ernest Biron*, duke of *Courland* and *Semigallia*, in exclusion of prince *Charles* of *Saxony*, who was elected to that dignity in September 1758. As to *Ducal Prussia*, reputed another province of this kingdom, the crown of *Poland* acknowledged it to be independent in 1663, upon condition that it should revert to it on failure of male issue. The elector of *Brandenburg*, *Frederic III.* duke of *Prussia*, first assumed the title of king of this country in 1700.

Kings of Po-  
land to the  
present time.

We have mentioned the chief dukes and kings of *Poland* as far as the æra of the establishment of the republic, and as far as *Henry of Valois*, who abdicated the crown of *Poland* on succeeding to that of *France*. *Stephen Batori*, prince of *Transylvania*, was elected in his room in 1575. He made it a rule with himself to dispose of all honours and employments according to merit. He reformed the manifold abuses which had crept into the administration of justice; maintained peace within the kingdom, and kept in awe the *Tartars*, *Muscovites*, and *Cossacs*. His reign lasted ten years, a space long enough for his own glory, but too short for the good of the republic. *Sigismund III.* prince of *Sweden*, succeeded him in the throne, but did not supply his place, having neither the same great qualities, nor the same good fortune. He lost an hereditary kingdom to gain an elective one. His sons, *Uladislaus VII.* and *Casimir V.* both succeeded him. The first, who ascended the throne in 1632, invaded *Russia*, and took the capital city of *Moscow*, obliging the *Russians* to cede the province of *Smolensko* to *Poland*. He spent the sixteen years of his reign in acquiring the love of his subjects. The second, from a jesuit became a cardinal, and from a cardinal a king. In his reign, *Charles Gustavus* king of *Sweden*, in one year, (1655) made an intire conquest of *Poland*, and *Casimir* fled into *Silesia*; but the *Swedes* retiring next year, *Casimir* was restored: whereupon he entertained *German* forces to secure his possession; but the *Poles*, apprehending he intended to make himself absolute, deposed him. He retired into *France*, and became abbot of *St. Germain*. *Michael Wiefnowieski* was next elected in 1670. In his reign the *Turks* conquered the province of *Podolia*, and besieged *Leopol*; but compelling the *Poles* to pay them an annual tribute, they abandoned *Leopol*. A new war breaking out, *John Sobieski*, the crown-general, gained a great victory over the *Turks*; but the *Poles* refusing to keep the field any longer, he obtained no great fruits of his victory. King *Michael* dying in 1674, the *Poles* elected *John Sobieski* their king, in regard of his services against the *Turks*. This is the illustrious *Sobieski*, a name revered to this day in *Poland*, who joined the duke of *Lorraine*, the imperial general, when the *Turks* besieged *Vienna* in 1683, and obtained that decisive victory, which compelled the infidels to abandon *Hungary* not long after. On his death *Frederic Augustus*, elector of *Saxony*, was chosen king of *Poland* in 1698, in opposition to the prince of *Conti*, who was proclaimed king by the *French* faction, but obliged to retire into *France*. The year following, at a treaty between the *Turks*, and the *Germans* and *Poles*, at *Carlowitz*, the *Turks* restored *Podolia* with its capital *Kaminieck*, to *Poland*. King *Augustus* in 1700, having entered into a confederacy with the *Danes*, *Russians*, and *Brandenburgers*, against *Charles XII.* king of *Sweden*, was defeated in several battles by the *Swedes*, who deposed him, and advanced *Stanislaus Leszczynski* to the throne of *Poland* in 1704. King *Stanislaus* remained on the throne of *Poland* till the year 1709, when *Charles XII.* being defeated by the *Russians* at *Pultowa*, and obliged to take refuge in *Turky*, king *Augustus* re-ascended the throne of *Poland*, though he had sworn not to disturb *Stanislaus* in the possession of it. Dying in 1733, his son *Augustus III.* was advanced to the throne of *Poland*, by the interest of the *Austrians* and *Russians*, though the *French* faction had proclaimed king *Stanislaus*, who retiring to *Dantzic*, was besieged in that city by the *Saxons* and *Russians*, and escaping from thence, retired into *France*: whereupon his party submitted and swore allegiance to king *Augustus*, who died in October 1763. This prince did not seem to be much in the affection of the *Poles*; for though the king of *Prussia* had, in the late war, plundered *Saxony*, and taken the capital city of *Dresden*, which he kept possession of for some time, the *Poles* made not the least motion in his defence. On the 6th of September, 1764, the ceremony of the election of count *Stanislaus Poniatowski* to the throne



- a throne of *Poland*, passed with the most perfect unanimity of the suffrages of the whole nation, delivered by the different palatinates assembled for that purpose; and the next day he was proclaimed by the name of *Stanislaus Augustus*, and conducted to the court and palace through the acclamations of several thousands of spectators.

## C H A P. X.

### Of the Russian Dominions in Europe.

- b THE empire of *Russia* is the most extensive in the world. It measures from west to east upwards of 2000 common leagues, and upwards of 800 from south to north, in its greatest breadth: it borders upon *Poland* and the *Frozen Sea*: it touches *Sweden* and *China*: its length, from the isle of *Dago*, to the west of *Livonia*, as far as its most eastern boundaries, comprehends near 170 deg. so that, when it is noon in the west, it is near midnight in the east of the empire. What is now comprehended under the name of *Russia*, is more vast than all the rest of *Europe*, than the *Roman* empire ever was, or that of *Darius* conquered by *Alexander*; for it contains more than 1,100,000 square leagues. The *Roman* empire and that of *Alexander* contained each but 550,000; and there is not a kingdom in Europe that makes a twelfth part of the *Roman* empire. Length of time, and czars, such as *Peter the Great*, are still required for making *Russia* as populous as more southern countries.

Extent and boundaries of the empire of Russia.

The *Russian* empire is now divided into sixteen great governments, of which several contain immense provinces.

- d THE nearest province to us is that of *Livonia*. It is one of the most fertile of the north. Its inhabitants were pagans in the twelfth century. Some merchants of *Bremen* and *Lubec* traded there; and the knights of the Teutonic order seized upon it in the thirteenth century, and kept their ground, till *Albert*, margrave of *Brandenburgh*, grand master of these conquering knights, made himself master of *Livonia* and *Brandenburg-Prussia* about the year 1514. The *Russians* and *Poles* then began to contest the right to that province. The *Swedes* soon after entered it. All these powers ravaged it for a long time. It was conquered by *Gustavus Adolphus*, and ceded to *Sweden*, in 1660, by the famous peace of *Oliwa*. Lastly, the czar *Peter* conquered it from the *Swedes*.

Livonia.

- e FARTHER north is the government of *Revel* and *Estonia*. *Revel* was built by the *Danes* in the thirteenth century. The *Swedes* possessed *Estonia* since the country put itself under their protection in 1561. This is also one of *Peter's* conquests. On the borders of *Estonia* is the gulph of *Finland*. Eastward of this sea, and at the junction of the *Neva* and the lake of *Ladoga*, *Petersburg*, the newest and finest city of the empire, was built by the czar *Peter*, notwithstanding all the obstacles that opposed its foundation. It rises on the gulph of *Cronstadt*, in the midst of nine branches of rivers, which divide its quarters. An impregnable castle occupies the centre of the city, in an isle formed by the great current of the *Neva*. Seven canals, formed out of the rivers, wash the walls of a palace, those of the admiralty, and of the yards for ship-building and several manufactures. Thirty-five great churches are so many ornaments to the city; five of which, as an example of toleration to other nations, are allotted to foreigners, whether Catholics or Reformed. There are five palaces; the old one called the summer-palace, situated on the river *Neva*, is inclosed by an immense balustrade of fine stone all along the shore. The new summer-palace, near the triumphal arch, is one of the finest pieces of architecture in *Europe*. The buildings raised for the Admiralty, the Corps of Cadets, the Imperial Colleges, the Academy of Sciences, the Exchange, the Merchants Warehouse, and that of the Gallies, are all magnificent monuments. The police, or mansion-house, that of the public pharmacy, where all the vessels are of porcelain, the court-warehouse, the foundery, the arsenal, the bridges, the market-places, the squares, the lodges for the horse and foot-guards, contribute equally to the embellishment and security of the city. It is computed that there are actually 400,000 souls in it. In the environs are pleasure-houses, which may justly astonish travellers by their magnificence; of one in particular the jetteaus and cascades are much superior to those of *Versailles*. There was nothing here in 1702: the place was an impassable marsh. *Petersburg* is reputed the capital of *Ingria*, a small province conquered by *Peter the Great*. *Wiburg* also conquered by him, and the part of *Finland* lost and ceded by *Sweden* in 1742, make another government.

Governments of Revel, Petersburg, and Wiburg.

g HIGHER up to the north is the province of *Archangel*, a country intirely new to the southern nations of *Europe*. It had its name from *St. Michael*, the archangel, under whose protection it was put, long after the *Russians* had embraced Christianity, which they did

Archangel!

not



not till the beginning of the eleventh century. It was not till the middle of the sixteenth that this country was known by other nations. The *English*, in 1533, seeking a passage through the north and east seas to the *East Indies*, discovered the port of *Archangel* in the *White-Sea*. In this desert there was only a convent, with the little church of *St. Michael the Archangel*. From this port, having ascended the river *Duna*, they arrived in the midst of the country, and at last at the city of *Moscow*. They easily made themselves masters of the commerce of *Russia*, which from the city of *Novogorod*, where it was carried on by land, was transferred to this sea-port. It is, indeed, inaccessible seven months of the year; however, it was of much greater utility than the fairs of the great *Novogorod*, which sensibly decayed by the wars against *Sweden*. The *English* obtained the privilege of trading there without paying any duty, and it is so all nations ought, perhaps, to trade together. The *Dutch* soon shared with them the commerce of *Archangel*. Long before this the *Genoise* and *Venetians* had settled a trade with the *Russians* by the mouth of the *Tanais*, where they built a town called *Tana*: but, since the ravages of *Tamerlane* in this part of the world, this *Italian* branch of trade has been destroyed. That of *Archangel* subsisted with great advantages to the *English* and *Dutch*, till *Peter the Great* opened the *Baltic* to his states.

Russian-Lap-  
land, in the  
government of  
Archangel.

*RUSSIAN-LAPLAND*, the third part of that country, the two others belonging to *Sweden* and *Denmark*, lies to the west of *Archangel*. It is a very large tract, taking up about eight degrees of longitude, and extending in latitude from the polar circle to *Cape North*. The inhabitants were confusedly known to antiquity by the name of *Troglodytes*, and septentrional pygmies. This appellation suited indeed men living in caverns, and generally not more than three cubits high. They are such as they were then, of a tan-colour, though the other northern people are white; almost all diminutive, whilst their neighbours, and the people of *Iceland*, under the polar circle, are of high stature. They seem made for their mountainy country, nimble, well-set, robust; their skin hard, the better to resist cold; their thighs and legs thin and small; their feet little, to skip and clamber with greater facility over the rocks their whole country is covered with; yet they are passionate lovers of this country, which they alone can be fond of, not being able to live elsewhere. All these particulars shew, that the *Laplanders* are indigenes as well as their animals, and that nature has made them for one another. The inhabitants of *Finland* and *Swedish-Lapland* adored formerly an idol they called *Jumalac*; and since the time of *Gustavus Adolphus*, to whom they are indebted for the name of Lutherans, they call *Jesus Christ* the son of *Jumalac*. The *Muscovite-Laplanders* are now reckoned to belong to the *Greek* church; but those who lead a vagabond life towards the mountains of *Cape North*, content themselves with adoring a God under some gross forms. This kind of men, few in number, have also few ideas, and they are happy in not having more, as then they must have new wants which they could not satisfy: they live contented, and to a great age, without sickness, scarce drinking any other liquor but water in the coldest climate.

Moscow.

In going up the *Duna*, from north to south, one arrives in the midst of the country about *Moscow*, the capital of the empire. This city was for a long time the centre of the *Russian* states, before they were extended towards *China* and *Persia*. *Moscow*, situated in  $55\frac{1}{2}$  deg. of latitude, in a soil less cold and more fertile than *Petersburg*, lies in the middle of a large and beautiful plain, on the river *Moskwa*, and two other small ones, that empty themselves with it into the *Occa*, and afterwards increase the *Volga*. This city, in the thirteenth century, was only an assemblage of huts, peopled with the wretches oppressed by the race of *Gengis kan*. The *Cremelin*, which was the residence of the grand-dukes, was not built till the fourteenth century. Some *Italian* architects had the conducting of it; the taste was *Gothic*; the same then prevailed throughout *Europe*, as well for palaces as churches. The earl of *Carlisle*, ambassador from our king *Charles II.* in 1663, to the czar *Alexis*, complains, in his relation, that he neither found any conveniency of life in *Moscow*, nor inn on the road, nor assistance of any kind. He was disgusted to see that the greater part of the boyards had no other beds than planks, or benches, on which a skin, or some other covering was laid; this was the antient custom of all people: the houses, almost all of wood, were without furniture, the dining-tables without linen, no pavement in the streets, nothing agreeable and convenient, very few artizans, and these bungling ones, and only labouring at works of necessity. This people would have appeared *Spartans* had they been sober. But the court, on days of ceremony, appeared like that of a king of *Persia*. The earl of *Carlisle* says, that he saw the czars and his courtiers robes covered with gold and precious stones. These cloaths were not manufactured in the country: however, it was evident, that the people were capable of being made industrious, since they had cast at *Moscow*, long before, in the reign of the czar *Boris Godono*, the largest bell that is in *Europe*, and could produce, in the patriarchal church, some silver ornaments, which were not wrought without great pains. These works, conducted by Ger-



- a *mans* and *Italians*, were transitory efforts; it is industry, and the multitude of arts continually put in practice, that make a nation flourishing. *Poland* then, and other neighbouring countries, were not superior to the *Russians*. Manual arts were not brought to greater perfection in the north of *Germany*, and the politer arts were scarce better known there in the middle of the seventeenth century. Though *Moscow* had nothing then of the magnificence and arts of our great cities in *Europe*, yet its circumference of 20,000 paces; the part called the *Chinese* town, where the curiosities of *China* were exposed to sale; the spacious quarter of the czar's palace; some gilt domes and lofty towers of a singular construction; in short, the number of inhabitants, amounting to near 500,000; all this made *Moscow* one of the most considerable cities of the world. *Theodore*, or *Fedor*, *Peter the Great's* eldest brother, began to police *Moscow*: he had several large houses built of stone, tho' without any regular architecture: he encouraged his principal courtiers to build, advancing them money, and furnishing them with materials. It is to him the *Russians* are indebted for the first breed of fine horses, and some useful establishments. *Peter*, who did all, took care of *Moscow*, whilst he was building *Petersburg*; he had it paved, and adorned and enriched it with edifices and manufactures; and lastly, within these few years, *M. de Shouvalov*, chamberlain to the late empress *Elizabeth*, has had the honour of founding in it an university.

- To the west of the duchy of *Moscow* is that of *Smolensko*, part of the ancient *European-Sarmatia*. The duchies of *Moscow* and *Smolensko* composed *White-Russia*, properly so called. *Smolensko*, which belonged first to the grand dukes of *Russia*, was conquered by the grand duke of *Lithuania*, in the beginning of the fifteenth century, and retaken by its former masters a hundred years after. *Sigismund III.* king of *Poland*, seized upon it in 1611. The czar *Alexis*, *Peter's* father, recovered it in 1654, and since this time it always made a part of the *Russian* empire.

- The province of *Novogorod* lies between *Petersburg* and *Smolensko*. It is said, that in this country was the first settlement of the ancient *Sclavonians*, whose language extended throughout the north-east of *Europe*: they built the city of *Great-Novogorod*, situate on a navigable river from its source. This city long enjoyed a flourishing commerce, and was a powerful ally of the hanse-towns. The czar *Ivan Basilowitz* conquered it in 1467, and brought away with him all its riches, which contributed to the magnificence of the court of *Moscow*, almost unknown till then.

- To the south of the province of *Smolensko* lies that of *Kiovia*, which is the *Little Russia*, the *Red Russia*, or the *Ukrain*, crossed by the *Dnieper*, which the *Greeks* call *Boristhenes*. The difference of these two names, the one hard to be pronounced, the other melodious, serves to shew, with an hundred other proofs, the harshness of the northern dialects, compared with the graces of the *Greek* tongue. The capital, *Kiow*, formerly *Kisovia*, was built by the emperors of *Constantinople*, who made a colony of it. Some *Greek* inscriptions, of 1200 years standing, are still to be seen there. It is the only town of antiquity in these countries, where men have lived so many ages without building walls. There also the grand dukes of *Russia* resided in the eleventh century, before the *Tartars* subjected *Russia*.

- The *Ukrainians*, called *Cossacs*, are a collected body of ancient *Roxelans*, *Sarmatians*, and *Tartars*. This country made part of the ancient *Scythia*. Nature seems lavish in it of her favours to men; but the men have not seconded nature, living upon fruits produced by a land equally uncultivated and fertile, and living still more upon rapine; fond to an excess of a happiness preferable to all things, liberty; and yet having served by turns *Poland* and *Turky*. They gave themselves up lastly to *Russia* in 1654, and, though not disposed to be intirely subject, *Peter* made them so. The other nations are distinguished by their towns and villages, and divided into ten districts; a chief, called hitman, was elected by a plurality of votes to govern them, but without supreme power. It is now a lord of the court the *Russian* sovereigns send them for hitman, whose power resembles that of a governor of certain states, which still retain some privileges. At first, the inhabitants of this country were all Pagans and *Mohammedans*; they were baptized Christians of the church of *Rome* when they served *Poland*; and now, since they belonged to *Russia*, are baptized Christians of the *Greek* church. Among them are comprehended those *Zaporavian Cossacs*, who, in some measure, are such enterprising courageous robbers, as were formerly the free-booters. What distinguishes them from all other people is, that they never suffer women in their habitations, as it is pretended the *Amazons* did not suffer men. The women that serve them for population dwell in other isles of the river. There is no marriage, no family among them: they enlist the males in their militia, and leave the females to their mothers. The brother has often children by his sister, and the father by his daughter. No other laws subsist among them but customs, established by necessity; however, they have some priests of the *Greek* church. Not long since the fort *St. Elizabeth* has been built on the *Boristhenes*,

Smolensko.

Government of  
Novogorod  
and Kiovia,  
or Ukrain.



to restrain and keep them within bounds. They serve in the *Russian* army as irregular troops, and behave like *Tartars* to those that fall into their hands.

Government of  
Belgorod,  
Veronise, and  
Nischgorod.

In going up to the north-east of the province of *Kiovia*, between the *Boristhenes* and *Tanais*, you find the government of *Belgorod*, as extensive as that of *Kiovia*. It is one of the most fertile provinces of *Russia*, furnishing *Poland* with prodigious numbers of large cattle, known by the name of *Ukrain* oxen. These two provinces are secure from the incursions of the *Little-Tartars*, by lines extending from the *Boristhenes* to the *Tanais*, and defended by forts and redoubts. Going still farther north, and passing the *Tanais*, you enter the government of *Veronise*, which extends to the *Palus-Meotis*. It was near the capital, called *Veronesleb*, at the mouth of the river of the same name, that *Peter the Great* had his first fleet built; an enterprize which none had a notion of before, throughout those vast states. The government of *Nischgorod*, fertile in corn, and watered by the *Volga*, is the next that presents itself. b

THESE are all the *Russian* territories in *Europe*; those in *Asia* have been already treated of.

State of Russia  
before Peter  
the Great.

It is very probable, that *Russia* had been much more populous than at present, in the time when the small-pox from the heart of *Arabia*, and the other from *America*, had not yet ravaged these climates, where they have taken root. These two plagues, whereby the world is more depopulated than by war, have been introduced, the one by *Mohammed*, the other by *Columbus*. The original pestilence of *Africa* rarely infected the countries of the north. In short, the people of the north, from the *Sarmatians* to the *Tartars* beyond the great wall, having overwhelmed the world with their irruptions, this ancient seminary of men must have been strangely diminished. c

THE customs, modes of dress, and manners of *Russia*, were always more in imitation of *Asia* than Christian *Europe*: such was the ancient custom of receiving the people's tribute in commodities, and of defraying the expences of ambassadors on their route, and during their residence. The long gown on days of ceremony seemed more noble than the short garb of the western nations of *Europe*. A tunic, lined with furs, a long sizar, enriched with precious stones on solemn days, and the sort of high turbans that raise the stature, were a more agreeable spectacle than close coats and perukes, and withal suited better cold climates; but this ancient manner of cloathing of all nations seems less adapted to war, and less commodious for labour. The far greater part of their other customs were gross and rustic; but we must not imagine that their manners were as barbarous as represented by so many writers. d

THE *Russian* government resembled that of the *Turks*, by the militia or *strelitz*, which, like that of the *Janissaries*, sometimes disposed of the throne, and troubled the state almost always as much as they supported it. These *strelitz* were to the number of 40,000 men. Such of them as were dispersed in the provinces subsisted by robbery; those of *Moscow* lived as citizens, traded, but were in no subjection, and carried their excesses to insolence.

THE state did not possess five millions of rubles. This revenue was sufficient when *Peter* came to the crown, for keeping within the bounds of the ancient frugality; but it was not the third part of what was necessary for making a considerable figure in *Europe*. e

THE religion of the state was, ever since the eleventh century, that which is called the *Greek*, in opposition to the *Latin*; but there were more *Mohammedan* and Pagan countries than Christian. *Siberia*, as far as *China*, was idolatrous; and, in more than one province, all kind of religion was unknown. It is pretended that a princess, by name *Olba*, introduced it, towards the close of the tenth century. She was baptized at *Constantinople*, and called *Helen*. Her example did not at first make a great number of proselytes. Her son *Sowastolaw*, who reigned a long time, was not of the same way of thinking; but her grandson, *Volodimer*, born of a concubine, having assassinated his brother, to reign in his place, and having sought for the alliance of the emperor *Basil* of *Constantinople*, did not obtain it but on condition of being baptized. It is at this epocha, of the year 987, that the *Greek* religion began in effect to be established in *Russia*. The patriarch *Photius*, so famous for his immense erudition, his disputes with the *Roman* church, and his misfortunes, sent proper persons with a commission to baptize *Volodimer*, in order to add that part of the world to his patriarchate. *Volodimer* finished therefore the work begun by his grandmother. A *Greek* was the first metropolitan, or patriarch of *Russia*; and hence it is, that the *Russians* have adopted in their language, which is the *Slavonian*, an alphabet taken partly from the *Greek*. These superior prelates soon after their institution, would fain share the authority with the czars. It was reputed a small matter that the sovereign walked bare-headed once a year before the patriarch, leading his horse by the bridle. This exterior respect served only to irritate their thirst after power; but this mad temper for affecting and exerting power occasioned great troubles here as well as elsewhere. f g

RUSSIA,



a *RUSSIA*, which is entirely indebted to *Peter the Great* for its influence on the affairs of *Europe*, had none, since it embraced Christianity, till his time. In the reign of *Heraclius*, and sometimes after, it was seen to arm on the *Black-Sea*, 40,000 small barks, and appear before *Constantinople* to besiege it, and impose a tribute on the *Greek Cæsars*. But *Volodimer*, taken up with the care of introducing Christianity, and perplexed by the intestine troubles of his family, weakened still more his states by dividing them among his children. They almost all became a prey to the *Tartars*, who, during 200 years, kept *Russia* in subjection. *Ivan Basilides* delivered and aggrandized it; but after his reign civil wars brought it to ruin.

b BEFORE *Peter the Great*, *Russia* wanted much of being as powerful, of having as many lands cultivated, as many subjects, as great revenues, as in our days. It possessed nothing in *Finland*, nothing in *Livonia*; and *Livonia* alone is worth more than all *Siberia* was for a long time. The *Cossacks* were not properly subjected; the people of *Astracan* obeyed but indifferently; and the little commerce carried on was scarce attended with any advantage. The *White-Sea*, the *Baltic*, the *Duxine*, that of *Asoph*, and the *Caspian*, were entirely useless to a nation that had not one ship, and even wanted a term in its language to express a fleet. If nothing more was wanting than to be superior to the *Tartars*, and the people of the north, *Russia* enjoyed that advantage: but it was necessary to equal policed nations, and to be some time or other in a condition to surpass several. Such an enterprise appeared impracticable, because it had not one ship on the seas, was absolutely ignorant of military discipline by land, did scarce encourage the most simple manufactures, and even neglected agriculture, the primum mobile of all. Attention and encouragement are great requisites to well-governing.

c THIS want of cultivating the necessary arts shews sufficiently that the *Russians* had not an idea of the politer, which become necessary in their turn, when all the rest are had. They might have sent some natives of the country for information among strangers; but the difference of language, manners, and religion, were against it; a law also of state and religion, equally sacred and pernicious, forbade the *Russians* to go out of their country, and seemed to condemn them to eternal ignorance. They possessed the largest states of the universe, and every thing was to be done in them. In short, *Peter* was born; and *Russia* d was formed.

*PETER's* family was on the throne since the year 1613. *Russia* before this time had experienced revolutions, which still kept a reformation and arts at a distance. Such is the fate of all human societies. There were never worse troubles in any kingdom. The tyrant *Boris Godonow* had assassinated in 1597, the lawful heir *Demetrius*, and usurped the empire. A young monk assumed the name of *Demetrius*, pretended to be the prince that escaped out of the hands of the assassins, and assisted by the *Poles*, and a great party which tyrants have always against them, expelled the usurper, and usurped himself the crown. His imposture was discovered as soon as he became master, and the people being dissatisfied with him, he was put to death. Three other spurious *Demetrius's* successively started up. e This series of impostures supposed a country over-run with disorders: the less men are civilized, the more easy it is to impose upon them. The *Poles*, who began the revolution, by setting up the first pretended *Demetrius*, were on the point of reigning in *Russia*. The *Swedes* divided the spoil on the side of *Finland*, and pretended also to the throne. The state was threatened with intire ruin.

In the midst of these calamities, an assembly composed of the principal Boyards, elected for sovereign in 1613, a youth of fifteen years of age. This did not seem to be a sure means of putting an end to the troubles. The name of this youth was *Michael Romanow*; he was grandfather of the czar *Peter*, and son of the archbishop of *Rostow*, surnamed *Philaretus*, and of a nun, related by the mother's side to the former czars. This archbishop f was a powerful lord, and was forced by the tyrant *Boris* to become a priest; his wife *Sberemeto* was also obliged to take the veil; such was the antient custom of the western Christian *Latin* tyrants: that of the *Greek* Christians was putting out the eyes. The tyrant *Demetrius* conferred the archbishoprick of *Rostow* on *Philaretus*, and sent him ambassador into *Poland*. The *Poles*, then at war with the *Russians*, imprisoned him, contrary to the law of nations, which indeed all these people were ignorant of. It was during his detention that the young *Romanow*, his son, was elected czar. The father was exchanged for some *Polish* prisoners, and the young czar created him patriarch: in short, he became the real sovereign under the name of his son.

g If such a government may appear singular to strangers, what will they think of the czar *Michael Romanow's* marriage? The *Russian* monarchs did not seek out for wives in other states since the year 1490. It seems, that after they were possessed of *Casan* and *Astracan*, they followed in almost all particulars the *Asiatic* customs, especially that of intermarrying only with their subjects. What still more resembles the customs of ancient *Asia* is, that,

Family of  
Peter the  
Great.



to marry a czar, the most beautiful young women of the provinces were brought to court; the great mistress of the court received them into her apartments, lodged them separately, and made them all eat together: the czar saw them, either under a borrowed name, or without disguise. The wedding-day was fixed, though the choice was not yet known; and, on that day, a wedding-garment was presented to her on whom the secret choice had fallen; other cloaths were distributed to the pretenders, who returned home. It was in this manner that *Michael Romanow* married *Eudoxia*, the daughter of a poor gentleman called *Streshnev*. He was cultivating his lands himself, with his domestics, when the chamberlains, sent by the czar with presents, informed him that his daughter was on the throne. The name of this princess is still dear to *Russia*. All this is foreign to our manners, and yet is not less respectable. a

It is necessary to say, that before the election of *Romanow*, a considerable party had elected the prince *Ladislaus*, son of *Sigismund III.* king of *Poland*. The neighbouring provinces to *Sweden* had offered the crown to a brother of *Gustavus Adolphus*. Thus *Russia* was in the same situation *Poland* has often been in, where the right of electing a monarch proves generally the source of civil wars. But the *Russians* did not imitate the *Poles*, who make a contract with the king they elect. Though they had experienced the fatal effects of tyranny, they submitted to a young man, without requiring any thing of him. b

*RUSSIA* was never an elective kingdom; but the male line of the ancient sovereigns having failed, and six czars, or pretenders, having perished unfortunately in the late troubles, there was a necessity for electing a monarch. This election caused new wars with *Poland* and *Sweden*, which fought for their pretended rights to the throne of *Russia*. Such rights, of governing a nation against its will, never subsist for any long time. The *Poles*, on one side, after pillaging the country as far as *Moscow*, which was the way of conducting military expeditions in those days, concluded a truce of fourteen years: *Poland*, by this truce, remained in possession of the duchy of *Smolensko*, where the *Boristhenes* has its source. The *Swedes*, having made peace also, remained possessed of *Ingria*, and deprived the *Russians* of all communication with the *Baltic*; so that this empire remained more than ever separated from the rest of *Europe*. c

*MICHAEL ROMANOW* reigned quiet after this peace, but made no change in his states that either corrupted or perfected the administration. After his death, which happened in 1645, his son, *Alexis Michaelowitz*, or the son of *Michael*, about sixteen years of age, reigned by hereditary right. He married as his father, and chose the most amiable among the maidens brought to him. His reign was troubled by bloody and furious seditions, by intestine and foreign wars. It was he, however, who first digested a code of laws, though imperfect: he introduced manufactures of linen and silk; he peopled the deserts about the *Volga* and *Kama* with *Lithuanian*, *Polish*, and *Tartar* families, taken in his wars. All prisoners, before his time, were the slaves of those into whose hands they fell; *Alexis* made them husbandmen: he established military discipline in his armies as much as he possibly could. In fine, he was worthy of being the father of *Peter the Great*; but he had not time to perfect any of his undertakings; an untimely death cut him off at the age of forty-six, in the beginning of the year 1677. d

AFTER *Alexis*, son of *Michael*, all fell again into confusion. He left, by his first marriage, two princes and six princesses. The eldest, *Fædor*, ascended the throne at the age of fifteen. He was a prince of a weak and sickly constitution; but his merit was uninfluenced by his bodily infirmities. *Alexis*, his father, had him acknowledged for his successor the year before he died. The second son, *Ivan*, or *John*, was still worse used by nature than his brother *Fædor*, being almost deprived of sight and speech, as well as health, and often seized with convulsions. Of the six daughters born of this marriage, the only one famous in *Europe* was the princess *Sophia*, distinguished by the talents of her mind, but unhappily still better known by her evil designs on *Peter the Great*. *Alexis*, by his second marriage with another of his subjects, the daughter of the boyard *Nariskin*, left *Peter* and the princess *Nathalia*. *Peter*, born the 10th of *June*, new stile, was but four years old when he lost his father. The children of the second marriage were not beloved. and it was little expected that *Peter* would ever reign. e

THE genius of the *Romanow* family was always bent upon policing the state; such was likewise the character of *Fædor*. But the war he was engaged in with the *Turks*, or rather with the *Crim-Tartars*, which continued with an equality of success, did not permit a prince of such an ill state of health to think of accomplishing so great a work. Observing, before his death, that his brother *Ivan*, too much disgraced by nature, was incapable of reigning, he nominated for heir of the *Russia's*, his second brother *Peter*, who was then only ten years old, but gave great hopes of extraordinary abilities. As to his sisters, if the custom of raising subjects to the rank of czarina was favourable to their sex, there was another that leaned hard on them. The daughters of the czars were then seldom married; f

most



a most of them spent their lives in a monastery. However, *Sophia*, the third of the czar *Alexis's* daughters, by his first marriage, a princess of a wit equally superior and dangerous, having seen that her brother *Fedor* had but a little time to live, did not embrace the party of a convent, but finding herself between her two other brothers, who could not govern, the one by his incapacity, the other by his childhood, conceived the design of putting herself at the head of the empire.

b *SOEDOR* was therefore scarce expired, when having secured in her interest the corps of the *Strelitz* by bribes, and promises of an augmentation of pay and presents, she convened at her apartments an assembly of the princesses of the blood, the generals of the army, the boyars, the patriarch, bishops, and even the principal merchants; she represented to them, that the prince *Ivan*, by his right of seniority and merit, ought to have the empire, of which she hoped in secret to hold the reins. At the breaking up of the assembly, her emissaries stirred up every where the soldiery against the family of the *Nariskins*, and principally against the two *Nariskins*, brothers of the young czarina dowager, mother of *Peter I.* The *Strelitz* were persuaded that *John*, one of these brothers, had taken the robes of a czar, had placed himself on the throne, and had attempted to strangle the prince *Ivan*; and to this was added the poisoning of the czar *Fedor* by a *Dutch* physician. In short, *Sophia* had put into their hands a list of forty lords, whom she called her enemies, and those of the state, and whom there was a necessity of massacring; and indeed, all were so served that were odious to the *Strelitz*, or suspected by *Sophia*. Examples of such horrors have been

c seen in all countries, in the time of troubles and anarchy. This horrible execution ended by proclaiming sovereigns, in *June 1682*, the two princes *Ivan* and *Peter*, associating with them their sister *Sophia*, in quality of co-regent. Such were the steps by which she ascended in effect the throne of *Russia*, without being declared czarina; and such were the first examples *Peter the Great* had before his eyes. *Sophia* enjoyed all the honours of a sovereign; her bust upon the coins, the signature for all expeditions, the first place in the council, and the supreme power in all respects. She was a person of great wit, even made verses in her language, wrote and spoke well; an agreeable figure gave additional charms to so many talents; her ambition alone tarnished them.

d SHE procured her brother *Ivan* to be married according to the custom, of which we have seen so many examples. The beauty of a young lady of the name of *Soltikoff* prevailed against the intrigues of all her rivals. In the midst of the solemnity of these espousals, the *Strelitz* fomented a new insurrection on account of some religious disputes. It was quelled, but soon after followed by a more dangerous one, contrived by a *Russian* lord, to revenge himself on *Sophia's* ingratitude, to whose elevation he had contributed. The cause of religion and devotion was the mask of his designs; but, in the main, he did not pretend to less than the empire; and to rid himself of all future apprehensions, he resolved to massacre the two czars, *Sophia*, the other princesses, and all who were attached to the czarish family. The czars and princesses were obliged to retire to the monastery of the *Trinity*, within twelve leagues of *Petersburg*. Besides serving as a convent, it was also a palace and fortress, as *Mount Cassino*, *Corbie*, *Fulda*, *Kempen*, and so many others among the Christians of the Latin communion. This monastery of the *Trinity* belongs to the monks of *St. Basil's* institute; but it is environed with large ditches, and brick ramparts, mounted with a numerous artillery. The czarish family was there secure, rather by the strength than the sanctity of the place. From thence *Sophia* negotiated with the rebel, deceived, inveigled him half way, and procured him to be beheaded, with one of his sons, and thirty-seven *Strelitz*, who accompanied him. His other associates and the *Strelitz*, who had taken up arms for supporting his cause, were pardoned on making a proper submission.

e AFTER these convulsions the state resumed an exterior tranquility. *Sophia* had still the principal authority, abandoning *Ivan* to his incapacity, and keeping *Peter* in tutelage. To f augment her power, she shared it with the prince *Basil Gallitzin*, a person of considerable abilities, whom she made general in chief, administrator of the state, and keeper of the seals. *Peter's* talents, notwithstanding the endeavours of the princess *Sophia* to keep him in a state of ignorance, began daily more and more to shew themselves. When he was about seventeen years of age, he had the courage of being czar in effect, though *Ivan* had still but the name. This was enough to alarm *Sophia*. In conjunction with *Gallitzin*, she engaged anew the chief of the *Strelitz* to sacrifice the young czar to their interests; the death of *Peter* was resolved on; the blow was ready to be struck, and *Russia* was on the point of being for ever deprived of the new existence it afterwards received. *Peter*, apprized of their designs, was again obliged to consult his safety in the convent of the *Trinity*, the usual asylum of the court when threatened by the soldiery. There, having called together the boyars of his party, he assembles a militia, confers with the captains of the *Strelitz*, and invites to him some *Germans*, who had been long settled at *Moscow*, all attached to his person, because he already favoured strangers. *Sophia* and *Ivan* remain at



*Moscow*, and conjure the corps of the *Strelitz* to continue faithful to them; but the cause of *Peter*, complaining of an attempt against his person and mother, prevails over that of *Sophia*, and a czar, whose aspect alone was sufficient to banish all affection for him. All the accomplices were punished with a severity to which the country was then as much accustomed as to such base crimes. Prince *Galitzin*, by the mediation of a relation in the czar *Peter's* interest, obtained his life; but he was stripped of all his wealth, which was immense, and banished on the road of *Archangel*. The princess *Sophia* was confined to a monastery in *Moscow*, after having reigned a considerable time: this change was a sufficiently great punishment. From that moment *Peter* reigned. His brother *Ivan* had no other share in the government but seeing his name in the public acts: he led a private life, and died in 1696.

HISTORY will inform the reader of the acts of *Peter I.* They indeed afford such matter of good and solid entertainment, that few are unacquainted with them. Here it will be sufficient to observe, that he was justly surnamed *the Great*, the father and founder of that *Russian* empire which makes so glorious a figure at this day, and which will be known, as one of the greatest powers in the world, to latest posterity.

Successors of  
Peter the  
Great.

THIS great and good prince, dying in the beginning of the year 1725, was succeeded by his second consort, the empress *Catharine*, a lady whom he had raised to his bed, purely from the consideration of her merit. She governed this great empire on the same principles by which it was founded; and, during her whole reign, was respected by her own subjects, and by all the powers of *Europe*, as the worthy successor of so great a monarch. Yet she enjoyed this high dignity but for a very short space, dying in the month of *May* 1727, and leaving the empire to the grandson of her deceased lord. *Russia*, from being governed by a woman, fell under the dominion of a child, who was the emperor *Peter II.* the last heir male of his family, and in the hands of an ambitious statesman, prince *Menzikoff*, the favourite of *Peter*, and no less so of the late czarina *Catharine*.

PRINCE *Menzikoff* was a man of boundless ambition, and at the time of the young emperor's accession, had the whole power of the empire in his hands. He had framed a design of raising his daughter to the rank of empress; and it is not improbable that he might have succeeded in this view, if he had not by an act of insolence incurred the young emperor's displeasure; who, though he was but twelve years old at his accession, yet had so much sense and spirit, that he disgraced and banished this too powerful subject, and confiscated all his estate. He afterwards raised the prince *Dolgouki* to the highest employments in the empire, and actually espoused the princess *Catharine*, daughter to prince *Alexis*, and sister to the princes *Sergius* and *John*; but, before the marriage was consummated, he was seized with the small-pox, of which he died on the 19th of *January*, 1730.

UPON the death of the emperor *Peter II.* the regular succession in that empire was at a stand. According to the will of the empress *Catharine*, her eldest daughter *Anne Petrowna*, duchess of *Holstein*, ought to have been called to the throne; but she died the year after her mother, and left behind her a son, who was at that time about two years old. The senate and nobility of *Russia*, to avoid so tedious a minority, resolved not to adhere to this will; for which they established this pretence, that it was vacated by the declaration of the late emperor upon his death-bed, who had appointed another successor, though at first they could not agree among themselves whom they should declare this successor to be; by which it was very manifest, that notwithstanding their assertions, the young emperor in reality made no such declaration.

IT has been reported, that some of the principal nobility had thoughts of changing the government into a republic; but that, finding this would be impracticable, they framed a new scheme of rule, which was to govern the empire themselves, allowing only the name and ensigns of sovereign authority to one of the imperial family. The next consideration was, who this person should be; and, after some debate, they cast their eyes upon the princess *Anna Iwanowna*, duchess of *Courland*, of the imperial line indeed, but out of all the rules of succession. She was the second daughter of the emperor *Ivan*, or *John*, elder brother to *Peter the Great*, and for some time his associate in the empire; but then she had an elder sister, *Catharine Iwanowna*, who was married to the duke of *Mecklenburg*, to whom, if the succession was to devolve first on the daughters of the elder brother, the imperial crown should have come; but her husband was engaged in a kind of civil war with his nobility, and therefore it was given out, that for securing the peace and tranquillity of his subjects, the young emperor *Peter II.* had passed her by, and called her younger sister to the succession, which, soon after his death, she was invited to accept.

THE princes *Dolgouki* and their faction, who took upon them the management of this affair, assigned the new empress a council, framed a constitution for the empire, and limited her authority as they thought proper; to which regulations she readily consented: but as soon as the czarina was fixed upon the throne, she cancelled all these limitations, and banished the authors of them. She made choice of grave and wise men for her ministers, and gave



a gave the command of her armies to very able and experienced generals; which enabled her to govern with great reputation, and to maintain the credit of her empire with regard to the rest of *Europe*, in as high a degree as any of her predecessors. She afforded the late emperor of *Germany*, *Charles VI.* powerful successors against the house of *Bourbon*; she seated the late king of *Poland*, elector of *Saxony*, upon the throne of his father, notwithstanding all the arts, and in spite of the arms of *France*; she made war against the *Turks* with great success, and in the course of the war totally ruined the power of the *Crim-Tartars*. In a word, she made her government as much revered, as, from the power of her extensive dominions, it ought to be, and concluded such alliances with foreign states, as were most proper for maintaining that system of government which she laboured to establish.

b SHE brought to her court her niece, the princess *Anne* of *Mecklenburgh*, daughter of her eldest sister, and married her to prince *Anthony-Ulric*, of *Brunswick-Bevern*, resolved to call the issue of this marriage to the succession. The princess of *Mecklenburgh* was delivered of a son, on the 12th of *August* 1740, whom the czarina, according to the *Russian* constitution established by *Peter the Great*, named her successor, and directed, that the prince his father, and the grand-duchess his mother, should be his guardians; she likewise appointed a council about the young emperor, whom she thought the most capable of sustaining the weight of affairs, and of preserving things in that condition wherein she intended to leave them; so that there seemed no great reason to doubt the government might be carried on as well as in the former minority; and, flattered with these fair hopes, the empress *Anna Ivanowna* died, in *October* 1740.

c THE emperor was immediately owned by the senate and people in his cradle; and the marquis *de la Chetardie*, the *French* minister, made his imperial majesty a long speech upon the occasion, in which he assured him, *Ivan* or *John*, sovereign of all the *Russias*, of the sincere friendship of *Lewis XV.* But, as if professions of *French* friendship were ominous to all princes, it was not long before it appeared, that this government could not subsist in the form in which it stood by the late empress's will.

d *PETER the Great* left behind him a daughter, whose name was *Elizabeth Petrovna*, a lady of distinguished accomplishments, and then about thirty-eight years of age. She had lived at court, during the last reign, in a manner and under circumstances far enough from being suitable to her birth: and the prudence of her behaviour, joined to that magnanimity with which she had supported her misfortunes, had such an influence on all who beheld her, that she had long reigned in the hearts of the people, while others reigned upon the throne. At last, the whole *Russian* nation, princes, nobility, senators, soldiers, and even the populace, testified such an affection for her, that some who had served her father with fidelity, and now enjoyed the rewards of their services, resolved to hazard all for her deliverance, and to risque every thing to recover her just rights. They attempted it, and Providence gave a blessing to the attempt: this revolution happened in a single night. On the 5th of *December*, the princess *Elizabeth* was a kind of prisoner in the imperial palace, and on the 6th she was seated on the imperial throne, and the tongues of her subjects being set at liberty, saluted empress of all the *Russias*, by the unanimous voice of the people. The deposed emperor, *John II.* was confined at *Riga*, with his father and mother.

e THE empress *Elizabeth* was no sooner possessed of the crown of her illustrious ancestors, than she gave the highest marks of those virtues which rendered her worthy of that elevation, and which her former circumstances had concealed. But her conduct appeared in nothing more wise and amiable, than in the care she took for settling the succession, which she knew must be fixed, before she could hope to see her government firmly established. She therefore resolved to send for her nephew, *Charles Peter Ulric*, the young duke of *Holstein*, who was the presumptive heir to the imperial crown, under the original establishment of *Peter the Great*. He was born the tenth of *February*, 1728, and soon after his arrival at *Petersburg*, was declared grand duke of *Russia*, and heir apparent to the empire; in which quality he was also acknowledged by the senate, as well as by all the nobility of that great empire, with the utmost cheerfulness possible.

f IN 1745 he married the princess *Catharine* of *Anhalt-Zerbst*, by whom he had one son, *Paul Petrowitz*, born in 1754. On the decease of the empress *Elizabeth*, he ascended the throne, on the fifth of *January*, 1762, by the title of *Peter III.* but was deposed on the 9th of *July* following, and in a week after died of poison. This prince stands accused of having observed no rules of prudence or moderation either in his public proceedings or private conduct. He had offended the clergy, who are a numerous, powerful, and popular body, by attacking their beards, which *Peter the Great* had attempted to demolish in vain, and what was still worse, by diminishing their revenues, and changing their ecclesiastical discipline and religious rites. He had offended the *Russian* grandees by his warm attachment to the prince of *Holstein* and the *Germans*. He had shocked all orders of the nation



nation by his sudden and precipitate change of the political system which had been warmly pursued in the late war by his predecessor in favour of the house of *Austria*, and by his blind zeal and unbounded affection for the king of *Prussia*, whom he took for his infallible guide in religion, politics, music, war, and every thing else. Besides all this, his private intrigues with one of the nieces of chancellor *Wronzoff*, whom, it is said, he loved as well as he could, gave umbrage to the empress, whom he had never loved to much purpose; and it was even supposed that he had formed the design of fluting her up in a cloister, and of raising the countess of *Wronzoff* to the dignity of empress. But she found means to elude his designs; and it was she herself, at the head of 15 000 men, that seized the person of *Peter III.* being previously proclaimed sole and reigning empress of *Russia*, and her son, the great duke *Paul*, acknowledged as her lawful heir.

THE czar, her consort, when he first came into *Russia*, was indeed not much disposed to embrace the manners of the people. She, on the other hand, acted quite another part. She studied their language, assiduously complied with their customs in every thing, and expressed upon all occasions a great zeal for the *Greek* church. It was chiefly by her conduct that the emperor met with no opposition at his accession; and having so strong an instance of her power over the minds of the people, this revolution will appear less wonderful than, without considering these circumstances, it would seem. However, as she is a *German* by birth, and was bred a protestant, she cannot be supposed to have any partiality to the *Greek* church, whose doctrines are established in that empire; nor is it reasonable to imagine, that the *Russians* can naturally have more love for her than for her husband, on account of their being both *Germans*. If she was engaged to take this extraordinary step by any ambitious view, it is hardly possible that a revolution so founded can long subsist; and it must be allowed, that she is not altogether free from dangers and apprehensions, witness the conspiracies, though hitherto ineffectual, that have been set on foot to dispossess her.

BUT now, since the base and barbarous murder of the late emperor *John*, (in the castle of *Schlusselfberg*, to which he was removed since her reign) what must we think of the situation of her mind? Can it be at ease, or does she imagine that tranquility can dwell with her upon a throne which she has endeavoured to secure by such horrid measures? She has published a manifesto relative to that unfortunate prince, wherein she describes him from her own personal knowledge, and that of several, who in company with her paid him a visit while alive, as a most miserable object, stupid, senseless, unable to read, and troubled with a very great impediment in his speech; that her intention in visiting him was to have given him some comfort, by assuring him that his life should be made easy; but that finding him so poor a creature, not only insensible of her intended kindnesses, but even unknowing of those he had about him, she found it impossible to do any thing more for him, than leave him where she had found him, with proper conveniencies; and that from thence an attempt was made to rescue him by a desperate young officer, named *Basil Mirowitz*, grandson to the first rebel that joined the famous *Mazepa*; but that the guardians of his person, two officers of the garrison, sooner than deliver him up, agreed to put him to death. This manifesto, published to justify this execrable deed, is almost as unaccountable as the deed itself. It seems to have been drawn on a supposition, that all those for whom it is designed are destitute of both common sense and common humanity; for a very moderate portion of these must render this declaration an object of horror. The accounts of *Ivan's* mental disorder are known by many to be false, and the story of his deliverer (since put to death) is indeed marvellous: but while the voice of nations deplores the fate of the unfortunate *Ivan*, and the tears of humanity flow at the view of that innocent victim, (to guilt and fear) expiring under the blows of two execrable assassins, the defender of this bloody deed dares to make use of the name of Providence and its adorable decrees, and throws a motly mask of religion and politics over a scene of murder. The mind that is truly religious must tremble at this monstrous association.

Government  
of Russia.

THE czar, *Peter the Great*, was the legislator of his dominions; and though no prince was more absolute than himself, yet it is certain that he aimed at setting some bounds to the power of his successors; and for this reason he established a senate, in which it is thought that he had the government of *France* in view, and that he meant that this should resemble the parliament of *Paris*, which it does in many respects, and in none more than this, that it serves to give a sanction, and the form and authority of laws to acts that spring from the will of the prince. But still the old constitution prevails, and the true government of *Russia* is, what it always was, despotic. In minorities indeed, and in other conjunctures, there seems to be an actual power attributed to the senate, which, to people at a distance, may represent the form of rule in *Russia* as a limited government; but when we come to examine it more closely, we shall perceive so strict a conformity between the will of the prince and the decrees of this assembly, as must sufficiently convince us, that



a the imperial power is rather strengthened than controuled by their proceedings. As to the several colleges, as they are stiled in *Russia*, or, as called by us, boards, to which the various branches of the administration are assigned, though the form is *German*, yet the thing is *French*; and *Peter the Great* contrived them after the model of the several councils in *France*. The high-chancellor is generally considered as the prime minister, and the vice-chancellor as his coadjutor.

It will not be amiss to observe here, in concluding this article, that the northern parts of the *Russian* empire, from the frontiers of the *Swedish* dominions to those of *China* and *Japan*, are guarded in such a manner as to be secure not only from danger, but from apprehensions; having on that side a sea, hitherto impenetrable, and through which, if any passage could be found, it must turn to the benefit, but can never prove of any disadvantage to the subjects of *Russia*, which is a point of great consequence, and is a blessing scarce known to any other country but this. The frontiers of the empire towards *China* are also inaccessible, as consisting of deserts impenetrable by armies, but which yield a tolerable passage for caravans; so that the *Russians* may, in a great measure, always reckon on the friendship of the *Chinese*; and whenever they apply themselves seriously thereto, may make this friendship turn to their advantage. The *Tartars*, inhabiting the countries between *Russia* and *Persia*, are no longer formidable to the *Russians*; on the contrary, they all respect them, and many of them have willingly submitted, and become their vassals. The *Caspian Sea*, and the dominions which the *Russians* have on that side, give them a fair opening into *Persia*, which they have already improved so as to gain to themselves a very advantageous trade, and this by degrees may be extended perhaps as far as the *East Indies*.

Security of the Russian dominions on the north, &c.

## CHAP. XI.

### Of Sweden.

d THE kingdom of *Sweden* is bounded by the *Baltic* sea, the *Scound*, and the *Categate* on the south; by the mountains of *Norway* on the west; by *Danish* or *Norwegian Lapland* on the north; and by *Russia* on the east. The soil, where capable of cultivation, is tolerably fruitful; but, for want of industry, the *Swedes* have not a competent supply of corn, and therefore import many sorts of grain from *Livonia*. Their cattle are small in size, their sheep bear a coarse wool, fit only for cloathing peasants; their horses are of a delicate kind: they have plenty of wild beasts, which are hunted for their flesh, as well as for their hides and furs: fowl, both wild and tame, are in great plenty and good in their kind: their lakes are well stored with variety of fine fish: their woods and forests overspread great part of the country, and are for the most part of pines, fir, beech, birch, alder, juniper, and some oak. The air is excessive cold in winter, the mountains being for nine months covered with snow. They have no considerable manufactures, and yet they have a very great trade, and are very strong in shipping; the reason is, the produce of their land, notwithstanding its northern situation and barren soil, is an immense treasure, and makes up for their want of manufactures: this product is not only great, but inexhaustible in its fund, and consists of silver, copper, iron, timber, flax, hemp, pitch, tar, furs, and hides.

Boundaries, soil, products, &c. of Sweden

e THE silver they have is peculiar to themselves, being found in no other place in all these parts of the world, except in *Norway*, and this is the product of one mine only, at a place called *Nola*. The ore in the mine lies 145 fathoms deep, the working of which has continued near three hundred years, and yet, as they relate, is unexhausted. The mine itself is very curious, and strangers are often carried down to see it. The revenue of it to the crown is according to the degree of its being worked.

Silver mines

f THEIR mines of iron and copper are very valuable indeed, and are a fund of wealth considerably greater than the mine of silver. They will support *Sweden*, perhaps, to the end of time; for, as the quantity is inexhaustible, so the advantage of working these mines is very great. Without this, *Sweden*, which is a poor and barren place, excepting some few valleys and flat countries on the sea-coast, would not be able, on any terms, to import such great quantities of the manufactures and product of other countries as they now do; but their copper and iron supply them with all things, and the balance is always very much in their favour, which is not to be wondered at, as before the calamitous wars they were engaged in with the *Russians*, which drained them both of men and money, the *Swedish* nation was a formidable power: and they tell us, that *Sweden* only, without including their provinces in *Germany*, furnished *Charles XII.* from the time of his first expedition against the king of *Denmark*, to his death at *Fredericksbal*, above 300,000 men for soldiers, and 227 tons of gold, either in specie, or bills of exchange made good in *Sweden*, or bills at

Iron and copper mines.



*Hamburg*, when exchange failed from *Sweden*; and this was always made good in copper or iron. If this be true, and that we add to it the dreadful havock and destruction of the mines of copper and of the iron-works, which the *Russians* made in their several invasions upon them at the end of that war, we need not wonder that the *Swedes* have been since in a low condition, in comparison to what they were, both as to real wealth and trade. The *Russians* carried away 70,000 tons of iron, besides copper; and did an irreparable damage, by destroying the copper-mines, which had cost immense sums to bring to perfection; and by cutting down the woods, which were the life and support of the iron-works. Notwithstanding all this, and other subsequent disasters, we see the *Swedes*, by an application never enough to be commended, recovering, and their government and gentry contributing to the repair of their mines, and exciting them vigorously to agriculture, and even to manufactures.

Territories out  
of Sweden.

THE *Swedes* have two countries distant from their native one, in which they have still some interest; and these are *Finland* and *Pomerania*. In *Finland* they have very few ports left, the *Russians* being possessed of *Elsingvas* and *Wiburg*. At *Abo*, and some other small places remaining to them, they drive a considerable trade in deals, which are very valuable in *England* and *Holland*, being of a good durable and uncommon kind of yellow fir. They also export the best masts for ships of any place, except *Wiburg*, in all those seas. The inland country is famed for good horses, and the *Finlander* horse were once esteemed the best cavalry in all *Germany*. In *Pomerania*, the *Swedes* have still the port of *Stralsund*, which is a very considerable, rich, trading city, and a good port; and the isle of *Rugen* is a large, fruitful, and well cultivated island; and from hence *Sweden* itself, in times of scarcity, is often supplied with corn. *Pomerania* is of note for the best oak timber and plank, and the *Swedes* have the greatest part of theirs from hence, with which they build their ships of war at *Carelscoon*.

Navigation of  
the Swedes.

THE *Swedish* navigation was very inconsiderable, till queen *Christina*, at the conclusion of the war in 1664, obtained from *Denmark* a freedom for all ships and merchandize, belonging to the *Swedish* subjects, in their passage through the *Sound*; and established in her own dominions that difference of custom which still subsists between *Swedish* and foreign ships, and is in the proportion of four, five, six, the first being called whole-free, the second half-free, and the last unfree: so that, where a whole-free *Swedish* ship pays 400 crowns, a half-free one pays 500, and a foreign vessel 600. But great as this disadvantage was, it had but little effect, till the *English* act of navigation bridled the *Hollanders*, and opened the intercourse between *England* and *Sweden*. Since that time their commerce has been much augmented, as well as ours, that way, and goods are transported by both, or either party, according to the various conjunctures of affairs. When *Sweden* has been engaged in a war, the *English* ships have had the whole employ; but, in time of peace, the advantage is so great on the *Swedish* side, and merchants so much encouraged, by freedom in customs, to employ their own ships, that *English* bottoms cannot be used in that trade, but only when *Sweden* is unprovided with a number of ships sufficient for the transportation of their own commodities.

History and  
constitution of  
Sweden.

THE *Goths*, the ancient inhabitants of this country, have had the reputation of subduing all the southern nations in *Europe*; but it is not to be supposed that this nation singly could effect those mighty conquests: they were, no doubt, joined by the *Normans*, *Danes*, *Saxons*, *Vandals*, and other people, and by many adventurers in *Germany* and other countries through which they passed, in hopes of sharing the plunder of the world with them, and possessing warmer climates. It appears that the countries of *Scandinavia*, which were *Sweden*, *Denmark*, and *Norway*, were sometimes under the dominion of one prince, and at other times had each of them their respective sovereigns. In the year 1523, *Sweden* being subject to *Denmark*, *Gustavus Erickson*, a *Swedish* nobleman, assembled the miners of *Dalecarlia*, with whom he had lived under ground for some time, and joining other advocates of liberty, raised such a force, that he expelled the *Danes* out of this kingdom; in gratitude for which service, the *Swedes* first elected him their king, and afterwards made the crown hereditary in his family.

BUT we need not go higher in the *Swedish* history than *Gustavus Adolphus*, who ascended the throne of *Sweden* in 1611. He was a prince of great abilities, which manifested themselves so clearly in his youth, that the states thought fit to give him the intire administration of affairs soon after his accession to the crown, though he was then but eighteen. He found his kingdom the lowest and weakest, as he left it the greatest and most powerful in the north. He recovered from the *Danes* the fortresses they had taken from the *Swedes*. Then turning his arms against the *Russians*, he took from them great part of *Livonia*, *Ingermania*, and the city of *Hexholm*, the possession of which he secured by a treaty concluded under the mediation of *Great Britain*. The long war he maintained against the *Poles* proved very advantageous to *Sweden*, and procured for her the remaining part of *Livonia*, and the important city of



- a *Riga*. He next declared himself the protector of the Protestants in *Germany* against the house of *Austria*, the power of which was then formidable to all *Europe*, and which nevertheless he broke in a short space of time, and with a very small force, having soon made himself master of *Stetin*, and a great part of *Pomerania*, and defeated the imperialists in the glorious battle of *Leipsic*, on the 7th of *September*, 1631. In the battle of *Lutzen*, on the 16th of *November*, 1632, the *Swedish* foot having routed the imperialists, and seized their cannon, the king thinking the horse did not advance fast enough to the pursuit, put himself before them in passing a small river, on the other side of which he was found dead, having his arm broke by one musket shot, and another entering his back, had passed through his body. There were great suspicions of treachery in this case. *Puffendorf* fixes
- b it expressly upon the duke of *Saxe-Lawenburg*. However it was, the king's death was soon known, which instead of abating, heightened the courage of the *Swedes* into fury, so that when the imperialists were rallied, they again attacked and again defeated them, which circumstance does the highest honour to the *Swedish* troops. Thus fell this great conqueror in the arms of victory.

As he had extended the dominions, and raised the reputation of *Sweden* abroad, so he likewise acted the part of a legislator at home, and reduced the constitution of his country into order, which he would certainly have improved if he had lived to return into his own dominions. Sometimes a single genius changes intirely the condition and circumstances of a whole nation, as his indeed did the *Swedes*, and that of *Peter the Great* the *Russians*. In

c virtue of his regulations, the crown, which was before intailed only on the male line, descended to his daughter *Christina*, a child of six years old; which minority, though it seemed to threaten ruin, proved in reality the great security of *Sweden*; for the king of *Denmark* and the elector of *Brandenburg* remained firm to the engagements into which they had entered with *Gustavus*, and the rest of the allies became less apprehensive of the power of that crown, than they had been in the life-time of that king.

THE chancellor *Axel Oxenstiern*, to whom the whole management of affairs in *Germany* was committed, made so right an use of these favourable circumstances, and managed all things so wisely and so well, that at the close of the war, which lasted several years, the *Swedes* were possessed of 100 fortified places, and had an army on foot of upwards of 100,000

d men, which enabled them so effectually to maintain their pretensions, that on the conclusion of the peace of *Munster*, they had the country of *Pomerania*, with the duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden*, the city of *Wismar*, a vote in the diets of the empire and circle of *Lower-Saxony*, together with a million of crowns in ready money, as a satisfaction for their services.

As the war was glorious to the arms, so the peace was no less honourable to the councils of *Sweden*; and the young queen *Christina* was esteemed and courted by all the powers of *Europe*. She had a great deal of learning, and a very extensive capacity; but with these great qualities, there was a mixture of many defects. Her subjects would willingly have seen her married to her cousin prince *Charles Gustavus*; to which, however, neither she nor that prince were inclined, and therefore she very wisely chose to content all parties, by resigning to him the crown, which she did in an assembly of the states, held at *Upsal* in *May*,

e 1654, reserving only a pension to herself for the support of her dignity; and having embraced the Roman Catholic religion, she retired to *Rome*, where she lived with great magnificence to the time of her decease, which happened *April 9*, 1689.

*CHARLES Gustavus*, or *Charles X.* of *Sweden*, who ascended the throne by the abdication of queen *Christina*, was son of *John Casimir*, prince palatine of the *Rhine*, and *Catherine* of *Sweden*, daughter of *Charles IX.* and sister to *Gustavus Adolphus*. He conquered the greater part of *Poland* in three months time, to revenge the affront done him in protesting against his admission to the crown; but the powerful confederacy of the emperor, *Russia*, *Holland*, and *Denmark* against him, obliged him to relinquish his conquests on that side:

f he humbled *Denmark*, and his courage and virtues enabled him to make so great a figure, as not only to maintain the credit which the crown of *Sweden* had acquired, but to carry it even higher than it had risen under his glorious predecessor, the famous *Gustavus Adolphus*; but then it was built on the foundation he had laid. A fever cut short his days on the thirteenth of *February*, 1660, whilst he was still engaged in a war against some of the greatest powers in *Europe*.

*CHARLES XI.* his son and successor, was but five years old when he died. Things were kept in good order during his minority, the treaty of *Oliva* being then concluded, whereby the king of *Poland* renounced his claim to the crown of *Sweden*, and the republic all her rights to *Livonia*; a peace also was made at the same time with *Denmark*. This prince inquired after and corrected all abuses that had crept into the civil government, whilst former kings of *Sweden*, trusting all things to their ministers, minded nothing but war; and looked particularly into law-suits, sitting himself in the supreme court, and dispatching there more causes in seven years than before had been decided in twenty. By this means he gained the

g love



love of his subjects to such a degree, that the states of the kingdom consented, at his request, to take away a great part of the power which till then the senate had enjoyed; and made afterwards such farther alterations in the government, as rendered the king as absolute as any monarch in *Europe*. But such was his conduct, that the people being satisfied whatever grants or concessions they made were all for their own service, they thought they could never do too much for him; and indeed his reign is the strongest proof, that the surest way for a prince to make his will the law, is to govern by law. Thus, by a steady and prudent management, he supported his own power at home, and maintained the credit of the crown of *Sweden* abroad to the time of his decease, which happened on the fifth of *April*, 1697, aged forty-two.

His only surviving son and successor, *Charles XII.* was declared major by the states before he reached sixteen, notwithstanding the administration of the government was appointed to be continued in the hands of the dowager of *Charles X.* assisted by five senators till her grandson came to the age of eighteen. The general peace of *Ryswick* was concluded under his mediation in half a year after the declared term of his majority. His neighbours, however, taking advantage of his youth, formed a confederacy for attacking him on all sides, and this without the least provocation. The confederates were *Frederic IV.* king of *Denmark*, *Augustus II.* king of *Poland*, and the czar *Peter the Great*, all esteemed as wise princes as any of their times; but influenced in this by their ambition, and the prospect they had of dividing amongst themselves the acquisitions of *Sweden*. *Charles*, having penetrated this scheme, landed an army in *Zealand*, and besieged *Copenhagen*, reducing in a very short time the king of *Denmark* to low, that he was constrained to make peace, and desert the confederacy by a treaty signed at *Travendahl*, *August* 8, 1700. The very same year he relieved *Narva*, that was besieged by the czar, and obtained on the 20th of *November*, the most compleat victory with the greatest inequality of forces, that is recorded in modern history. He turned his victorious arms next against the *Poles*, forced them to depose king *Augustus*, and make choice of a new king, which they did the 5th of *May*, 1704, in the person of *Stanislaus Leszinski*, palatine of *Poznania*. He pushed his relentment still farther, by following *Augustus* into his hereditary dominions of *Saxony*, where he exhausted the country by excessive contributions, and imposed very hard conditions on that monarch himself, by the famous treaty which was concluded at *Altranstadt*, a village within two miles of *Leipsick*. We may truly affirm the year 1708 was that in which the glory of *Sweden* rose to its utmost height. *Charles* had then the balance of *Europe* in his hands, and might have prescribed terms to all its powers, from the critical situation of his own affairs and theirs; but his boundless ambition threw him very soon into a different condition. Desirous of completing his plan, towards which there wanted but one stroke, he marched through the *Ukraine* into *Russia*, resolved to drive the czar out of his territories, as he had forced the *Dane* to save his capital by a peace, and the *Poles* to depose a king who was his enemy. This produced the famous battle of *Pultowa*, which cost the *Swedes* 30,000 men, and forced the king to take shelter in *Turkey* with a handful of people. This fatal engagement happened on the 27th of *June*, 1709, and made an open for his enemies to execute the projects they had formed ten years before, an opportunity which none of them let slip. The king of *Denmark* once more declared war, and made a descent upon *Schonen*; the king of *Poland* entered again into possession of his dominions; the *Russians* repossessed themselves of the most valuable part of the *Swedish* territories on the *Baltic*; and though at first the confederates kept some measures in *Germany*, yet at last they attacked and divided the *Swedish* territories there: the *Prussians* got the better part of *Pomerania*, and *Bremen* and *Verden* falling into the hands of the *Danes*, they disposed of them to the elector of *Hanover*.

His *Swedish* majesty returned into his dominions in *November* 1714, and very soon made his enemies sensible of his presence. He found his territories exhausted, his own and his predecessors conquests lost, and scarce any friend or ally left; yet he maintained his absolute power over his own subjects, and prosecuted the war with inflexible resolution. He persisted in his former notions of destroying or deposing every prince with whom he was displeased. He meditated a descent upon *Zealand*, with a view once more to besiege *Copenhagen*, in which he failed; he engaged in some designs for disturbing the peace of *Great-Britain*, which were disconcerted; his last attempt was an invasion upon *Norway*, where he was shot before *Frederickshal*, on the 1st of *December*, 1718, dying as he lived, ill treated, but unconquered.

UPON his demise the states of *Sweden* declared his younger sister the princess *Ulrica Eleonora* queen, and her husband, the hereditary prince of *Hesse-Cassel*, generalissimo; for the war still continued. In 1720 that prince, having embraced the *Lutheran* religion, was raised to the throne of *Sweden*; and soon after peace was made with all the powers with whom *Sweden* had so long contended. By these treaties the *Swedes* recovered part of *Pomerania*, and the town of *Wismar*; but the king of *Prussia* kept the duchy of *Stetin*; the duchies



a duchies of *Bremen* and *Verden* were left to *Hanover*, and the czar kept in general all his conquests.

In consequence of these steps, the face of affairs of *Sweden* has been intirely changed, and from being one of the most absolute, it became the most limited crown in *Europe*, the senate having recovered all their ancient privileges, and the states having resumed and even extended their powers ; so that the king can do nothing of consequence without their approbation. The present constitution of the government consists of four estates, with the king at their head : 1. The nobility and gentry. 2. The clergy. 3. The burgeses, and 4. The peasants. With the nobility and representatives of the gentry, the colonels, lieutenant-colonels, majors, and captains of every regiment sit and vote. The clergy elect

Present government of Sweden.

b one from every rural deanery, consisting each of ten parishes, which, with the bishops and superintendants, amounting to about 200, represent that body. The magistrates and council of every corporation elect the burghers to represent them, of which there are four for *Stockholm*, and two for every town, amounting to about 150. The peasants chuse one of their own number, and not a gentleman, to represent them out of every district, amounting to about 250. All these generally meet at *Stockholm*, and, after the state of affairs has been represented to them from the throne, they separate and sit in four several chambers or houses, in each whereof the votes of the majority conclude the rest ; but every chamber has a negative in the passing any law. The senate, without whom the king can determine nothing, are reduced to fourteen, and are elected in the following manner ; c twenty-four of the nobility or upper house, twelve of the clergy, and twelve burgeses, chuse three persons, on a vacancy, and present them to the king, who appoints one of them to supply the vacancy ; but two of a family cannot be of the senate at the same time, and the peasants have no vote in the election of a senator. When the king is absent or sick, the executive power is lodged in the senate, and the king has no more than the casting vote when present ; but they are accountable to the diet for their administration. Every one of the superior courts of justice has a senator for its president ; and there are councils or boards established to manage the public revenues, as a war-office, commissioners of the admiralty, others for the mines, for commerce, and every other branch of business. Law-suits concerning the titles of estates are but of short continuance, all sales and alienations d of lands being registered, as well as the incumbrances on them. People are allowed to plead their own causes if they think fit ; and in so little reputation is the profession of the law in *Sweden*, that no gentleman will undertake it. Criminals for small thefts are condemned to labour in the public works, fortifications, buildings, and highways ; and, what is peculiar to this country, they have courts of honour erected, where if any gentleman has received an affront, he may have satisfaction awarded him. There has been no instance of the punishment of popish priests here by castration, since it passed into a law.

THE prince of *Hesse*, who, we have seen, was raised to the throne of *Sweden*, was not able to defend the kingdom against the *Russians*, who in 1741 invaded *Sweden*, plundered the country, and destroyed, as before mentioned, their copper and iron-works. There e were some hopes that things would have gone better for *Sweden* after the great revolution in *Russia* ; which placed the empress *Elizabeth* upon the throne ; but after various negotiations, the war broke out again with greater heat than ever ; and the *Swedes*, who had so often in former times beat the *Russians*, were now beaten by them over and over, the best part of their army made prisoners, and all the country of *Finland* lost, which reduced them to the hard necessity of making peace upon the best terms they could obtain.

In the beginning of this war, *Ulrica Eleonora* the queen of *Sweden* dying without issue ; the *Swedes* elected the duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, son of the elder sister *Charles XII.* to succeed to that crown after the death of the late king ; but the duke rendering himself incapable of the crown of *Sweden*, by accepting the reversion of the *Russian* empire, the *Swedes* f made choice of *Adolphus Frederick*, the duke of *Holstein Eutin*, bishop of *Lubeck*, who is now upon the throne.

THE *Swedes* in support of their allies in the late war made a very indifferent figure ; but this may be attributed to a division among themselves, the court being secretly attached to the king of *Prussia*, to whose third sister *Louisa Ulrica*, the king of *Sweden* is married.

THE *Swedes* are a race of men as hardy, patient, and robust, as any in *Europe* ; and pre- serve in full vigour their abilities both in body and mind to a very advanced age. They g have been always very justly esteemed a martial people, and though their force is much reduced, yet the troops they have are as good as ever. They profess the *Lutheran* doctrine ; which is not only the faith by law established, but the only one tolerated amongst them. The nobility, gentry, and better sort of people, have all a tincture of learning, and very few have more ; they have always been esteemed loyal to their princes, and have generally shewn themselves hearty friends to liberty, though they have been sometimes mistaken about it, and yet have persisted obstinately in their mistakes. As to the vices of the *Swedes*,

Character of the Swedes.



they are at least as conspicuous as their virtues; they have a fickleness in their tempers, equally fatal to them in the pursuit of politics or learning; they have a great proportion of vanity, which displays itself particularly in furniture and equipage; for as to those expenses that make no shew, these people are by nature little addicted to them. But the vice most predominant among them is envy, directed more especially against strangers, who if they thrive in trade, at court, or in the army, fill the people with an unaccountable malice and displeasure. And the same bad turn they are apt to take, even against their own countrymen, more especially if they spring from a low beginning, or rise at too quick a rate. They are not much inclined to manufactures, nor have they any true genius for trade, though they have good ships and skilful seamen.

## C H A P. XII.

## Of Denmark.

*Divisions,  
boundaries,  
extent of the  
kingdom of  
Denmark.*

THE kingdom of *Denmark*, one of the most ancient in *Europe*, is divided into two parts by the *Baltic-Sea*, namely, the peninsula annexed to the continent of *Germany*, and the islands. The former, which contains the duchy of *Holstein*, *South Jutland*, or *Sleswic*, and *North Jutland*, is bounded on the west and north by the *German ocean*; on the east, by that part of the sea called *Categate*, and the *Middie-fori-Sound*; and, on the south, by the river *Elbe*. Its greatest length, from south to north, is about 224 miles; but its breadth, not including the islands, is not above 74 miles; and in some places, much narrower. The islands, which make up the other part of this kingdom, are *Zeeland*, *Funen*, *Langeland*, *Laland*, *Falster*, and some others of less note.

*Air, soil, commodities,  
trade, navigation, &c.*

THE air, though very cold in *Denmark*, is not so sharp as in some places of *Germany*, though situated much more to the south; the vapours of the sea surrounding it, melting and dissolving the nitrous particles, carried by the wind from northern countries, before they arrive here. The soil, though in most places barren and mountainous, has good pastures, which feed vast herds of kine, and an excellent race of horses; but the country in general produces but little corn. It has no rivers navigable for vessels of any considerable burthen. There are lakes, which afford a good quantity of fish; and the forests are abundantly stocked with venison of all sorts, and wild-fowl in great plenty. Its commodities for exportation are very few; cattle is the chief, which they sell to the *Netherlands*; but as for manufactures, they have so few as not to deserve notice.

*COPENHAGEN*, in the island of *Zeeland*, is the capital of the kingdom, and is so called from its safe and commodious harbour, the name signifying "The Merchants port;" and indeed it may justly be reckoned, in all respects, one of the best in the whole world. The chief trade of *Denmark* is carried on here, though there is some at *Elfsinur*. But the trade of either of these cities is small, in comparison of that on the rest of the *Baltic*. Goods which sell best in *Denmark*, are salt, chiefly that of *Spain* and *Portugal*, rather than of *France*; but the wines and brandies of *France* are the most esteemed. Great quantities of paper are also imported; gold and silver stuffs; silk and woollen stuffs, chiefly those of *Holland*; with spices and drugs. Tallow, hemp, cod, stock-fish, wheat and rye, are the chief commodities they export from *Zeeland*.

THIS country enjoys the singular advantage of a sea coast for the encouragement of navigation, and their king by that means has a tolerable good fleet; yet they have only the port of *Copenhagen* that is considerable: and some have asserted, that they scarce ever loaded one ship with their own productions and manufactures, to any part of the world. At present, indeed, in imitation of many other powers of *Europe*, they seem to give more than ordinary attention to the affairs of commerce and navigation, as well in the *East Indies* as in *Europe*; and their merchants begin to increase, not only at *Copenhagen*, but at *Altena*, near *Hamburg*, who, indeed, are not, properly speaking, to be called merchants of *Denmark*, though many of them are *Danes*. They are admirably situated for the fisheries, great and small; that is, for the herring-fishery, and for the *North-Sea* cod-fishing, which is on their own coast; and for the whale-fishery in *Greenland*; but they do not seem to exert themselves in any but the whale-fishery, and that to no great degree; as, on the contrary, they buy their herrings, train-oil, and whalebone of the *Dutch*; so indolent have they been till lately, and so averse to trade, that, though the best harponeers, and the best steersmen, and most skilled in the whale-fishing, are found among the subjects of the king of *Denmark*, yet they generally go to *Greenland* in the service of the *Dutch*, the *Bremers*, or the *Hamburgers*.

By the means of *Norway*, now subject to the crown of *Denmark*, they supply *Great-Britain*, *Holland*, *France*, and *Spain*, with so great a quantity of fir-timber, deals, &c. that they



a they load thereby upwards of 2000 ships a year, and return seven-eighths, at least, of the value in ready money. And some have complained in *England* of this timber trade being very detrimental to us; because we should rather encourage our own navigation, by building large bulky ships, such as are used by the *Danes* and *Swedes*, in order to import our own timber from *New-England*, *Nova-Scotia*, and *Newfoundland*.

In the history of these northern countries, mention being frequently made of the *Baltic*, we shall here, with some propriety, give an account of it, and the origin and nature of the toll paid at the *Sound*.

b THE *Baltic* is an inland, or *Mediterranean* sea, so called from an antient *High-Dutch* word *Belt*, signifying a strait, or narrow-space; so that the *Baltic-Sea* is no more than the *Belt-Sea*, or *Narrow-Sea*. The opening of this sea into the ocean is called by the *Dutch* and us, the *North-Sea*, as the farther and inmost parts are called the *East-Sea*. The part called the *North-Sea*, being the entrance of the *Baltic*, lies between the *Skaw*, or *Scagh*, on the south, and the *Naze* of *Norway* on the north. About 200 miles from the *Naze* east, and in the middle of the channel of this *North-Sea*, stand the islands of *Denmark*, ten in number, and in a kind of cluster, as if they were thrust together by the stream in the very entrance of the *Baltic-Sea*. They block up indeed the passages, so as to leave no way into or out of the *Baltic*, but through some of the channels between them; the principal of which is called the *Sound*, passing between the island of *Zeeland* and the country of *Schonen* in *Sweden*.

*Baltic-Sea,  
and toll paid  
at the Sound.*

c THE toll of *Schonen*, though considerable to the *Danes*, in regard to the largeness and fruitfulness of the province, was yet more so, in respect to the dominion of this great passage. For, though the *Danes*, by the treaty of peace, have expressly retained their title to it, and receive toll from all ships that pass, except those of the *Swedes*, yet they do not esteem the security of that title so firm as they could wish; for, not being masters of the land on both sides, they may have the right, but not the power, to assert it upon occasion; and seem only to enjoy it according to their good behaviour; their stronger neighbours, the *Swedes*, being able to make use of the first opportunity given them to their prejudice.

d AS to the original and nature of this toll, it is said to have been, at first, laid by the consent of the traders into the *Baltic*, who were willing to allow a small matter for each ship that passed, towards maintaining of lights on certain places of that coast, for the better direction of sailors in dark nights. Hereupon this passage of the *Sound* became the most used; that other of the *Great-Belt* being in a little time quite neglected, as well because of the great conveniency of those lights to ships passing in and out of the *East-Sea*, as because of an agreement made, that no ship should pass the other way, that all might pay their shares; it being unreasonable, that such ships should have the advantage of those lights in dark or stormy winter nights, who avoided paying towards maintaining those fires, by passing another way in good weather.

e BESIDES, if this manner of avoiding the payment had been allowed, the revenue would have been so insignificant, considering the small sum each ship was to pay, that the lights could not have been maintained by it; and the *Danes* were not willing to be at the charge solely for the use of their own trading ships, because they were masters of so few as made it not worth their while; the *Lubeckers*, *Dantzickers*, and merchants of other hanse-towns, being the greatest traders at that time in the northern parts of *Europe*, by which they arrived to a great height of power and riches; but there being no fixed rule or treaty to be governed by, with regard to the different bulk of the ships belonging to so many different nations, the *Danes* began, in process of time, to grow arbitrary, and exacted smaller or greater sums, according to the strength or weakness of those they had to deal with, or according to their friendship or discontent with those princes or states to whom the several ships belonged: therefore, the emperor *Charles V.* to ascertain this toll, concluded a treaty with the king of *Denmark*, which was signed at *Spire* upon the *Rhine*, and was in behalf of his subjects of the *Netherlands*, who had a great traffic in the *Baltic*; and agreed, that, as a toll-custom in the *Sound*, every ship of 200 tons, and under, should pay two rose-nobles at its entrance into, or return from, the *Baltic*; and every ship above 200 tons, three rose-nobles. A rose-noble is worth about 18 s. sterling.

f THIS agreement remained in force till such time as the United Provinces shook off the *Spanish* yoke; and then the *Danes*, taking an advantage of those wars, raised their toll to an extravagant rate, the troublesome times not affording the *Dutch* leisure to redress such a mischief. However, about the year 1600, they joined themselves with the city of *Lubec*, in opposition to such an extravagant toll as was taken from both of them; and from thenceforth the *Dutch* paid more or less, as fortune was favourable or adverse to them; but generally little. In 1647, the first treaty was made between *Denmark* and the United Provinces, as sovereigns for this toll; and they were obliged to pay a certain sum for each ship. This



was to continue forty years; after which, if in the mean time no new treaty were made, that of *Spire* was to be in force. This treaty of 1647 expired in 1687, and the *Danes* agreed to make an interim treaty, till such time as the many differences between them and the *Hollanders*, in this and other matters, could be adjusted at leisure, and concluded by a more lasting and solemn one. This interim-treaty, which was but four years, expired in 1691; so that no new treaty being made and completed during that term, the ancient treaty of *Spire* remains in force, and no other.

THE treaties of the *English* with *Denmark* are grounded on those between the *Dutch* and that kingdom, and have reference to them, with a covenant, that we shall be treated as a nation in the strictest friendship with the *Danes*. The *French* have an advantage over other nations in passing the *Sound*, that their goods are not inspected; nor need they, if they will, pay the customs till three months after, on the master's declaration and bill of lading.

FROM this short history, it appears how slightly grounded the king of *Denmark's* title is to this right; which, from an easy contribution the merchants chose to pay for their own conveniency, and whereof the king of *Denmark* was only treasurer or trustee, to see it fairly laid out for the common use, is grown to be a heavy imposition upon trade, as well as a kind of servile acknowledgment of his sovereignty of those seas; and is purely owing to his taking an advantage of the difficulties of the *Hollanders* during their wars with *Spain*, and the connivance of king *James I.* in prejudice of the *English* he favouring the *Danes* upon account of his marriage to a daughter of that crown; and upon these two examples, all the lesser states were forced to submit.

NOR is it conceivable how it could be otherwise brought about, since it is very well known, that the passage of the *Sound* is not the only one into the *Baltic*, there being two others, called the *Greater* and the *Lesser-Belt*: the former is so commodious and large, that, during the wars between the *Danes* and the *Swedes*, the whole *Dutch* fleet chose to pass through it, and continued in it for four or five months together; and the *Danish* strength at sea never appeared yet so formidable, as to oblige the *English* and *Dutch* to chuse which passage it pleased. Besides, the breadth of the *Sound*, in the narrowest part, is four *English* miles over, and every where of a sufficient depth; so that the king of *Denmark's* castles could not command the channel, when he was master of both sides, much less now he has but one. It is plain, therefore, this pretended sovereignty is very precarious, being partly founded upon a breach of trust, as well as on the carelessness of some princes concerned in it, to the great injury of trade.

THIS toll affords the king yearly a considerable profit, though much less than formerly. About the year 1640, it produced 240,000 rixdollars *per annum*; but, since 1645, it has not yielded above 80,000; and, in 1691, it did not extend to full 70,000.

History and  
constitution of  
Denmark.

THE first inhabitants of *Scandinavia*, comprehending *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, descended from the *Scythians*, who had no fixed habitations. When they first settled in towns is uncertain. The *Cimbri*, a *German* nation, next possessed themselves of *Jutland*, which from thence obtained the name of the *Cimbrian Chersonese*. The *Teutones*, another tribe of *Germans*, reduced *Zeeland*, *Funen*, and the rest of the *Danish* islands. The *Jutes* and *Angles* succeeded the *Cimbri* in the *Chersonese*, and from the *Jutes* this peninsula obtained the name of *Jutland*. In the fourth century, we find the inhabitants of these countries, and the north west of *Germany*, called *Saxons*, a people very terrible to the *Roman* provinces of *Gaul* and *Britain*. They invaded and plundered the sea-coasts, and obliged the *Romans* to station their forces on these coasts, which were commanded by an officer stiled, *Comes litoris Saxonici*; but the *Saxons* were not able to fix themselves in *Britain* till the decline of the *Roman* empire; when *Vortigern*, king of *South-Britain*, invited them over about the year 450, to defend his country against the *Picts* and *Scots*. After they had repulsed those northern invaders, they quarrelled with the *Britons* who called them in, and at length made themselves intire masters of *South-Britain*.

*SAXONY*, of which *Denmark* was then deemed a part, was at that time divided among several petty sovereigns and states, who were all united under *Gestrius*, their first king, about the year 797. The *Danes* and *Normans*, or *Norwegians*, invaded and harrassed the coasts of *Gaul* and *Britain* in the eighth century, and continued their incursions till the year 1012; when *Swein*, king of *Denmark*, made an intire conquest of *England*, and left it to his son *Canute*, who was king of *England*, *Denmark*, *Norway*, and *Sweden*, in the year 1020. The *Danes* and *Normans* also invaded *France*, entered the rivers *Seine* and *Loire* in their boats, burnt and plundered the country to the gates of *Paris*, about the same time they had reduced *England*; and the *French* were, at length, obliged to yield up *Normandy* and *Brittany* to *Rollo*, the *Norman* general, to preserve the rest of the kingdom.

THE kingdoms of *Denmark*, *Sweden*, and *Norway*, were after this governed by distinct sovereigns; but *Denmark* and *Norway* became united again by the marriage of *Aquin* king of *Norway* with *Margaret*, daughter and heiress of *Waldemar* king of *Denmark* in 1376.

Margaret



a *Margaret II.* queen of *Denmark* and *Norway*, subdued *Sweden* about the year 1390, and *Sweden* was subject to *Denmark* till *Gustavus Erickson* rescued his country from their dominion in 1525. *Christiern II.* was then upon the throne of *Denmark*, but having drawn upon himself the contempt and hatred of the *Danes*, as well as of the *Swedes*. on account of his suffering himself to be governed by his concubine, he was at length deposed, his uncle *Frederic*, duke of *Holstein*, being elected and advanced to the throne of *Denmark* in his stead.

b This prince, by confirming the great privileges of the nobility and clergy, maintained himself in possession of the kingdom to the time of his death, which happened after a reign of ten years, and left the crown to his son *Christiern III.* in whose time the Reformation took place, and the *Lutheran* religion was established by law in this country. *Frederic II.* succeeded his father in 1558, and was engaged in a long war with *Sweden*, which ended however in 1570. by a peace concluded under the mediation of the emperor and the kings of *France* and *Poland*; he died in 1588, when his son *Christiern IV.* ascended the throne. This monarch governed much longer than any of his predecessors, and in times full of calamity and trouble. *Frederic III.* his successor, was engaged by the *Dutch* to break with the *Swedes* in 1657, which had like to have proved fatal to him; for *Charles Gustavus* of *Sweden* laid siege to *Copenhagen*, and, had it not been for the powerful interposition of the *Dutch*, would, very probably, have taken the city, which he reduced to great extremities. At this juncture, however, it was, that the king, who, notwithstanding his misfortunes, c was certainly as wise and brave a prince as any of his time, found means to change the constitution of *Denmark*, and, from one of the most limited and precarious, made it the most absolute sovereignty in *Europe*. According to their old form of government, the whole power of the nation was lodged in the gentry or nobility, for between these there was in those times no distinction. Every gentleman was a kind of prince in his own estate, and the farmers and countrymen were very little better than slaves. They sent, however, their representatives to the general diet, where they had scarce any thing more to do than to give their consent to taxes, by which they were oppressed to such a degree, that they might be justly esteemed the most wretched people upon earth. The nobility formed a distinct body in the states of the kingdom, and without their advice, the king could do d nothing of importance; so that, in time of peace, he was very little better than president of the council, and in time of war no more than general of the army. The succession of the crown too was very precarious; for, though the son succeeded the father, yet it was by the consent of the nobility; so that the monarchy was, strictly speaking, elective, though in appearance hereditary. It is not at all wonderful that a king should be extremely uneasy in such circumstances, or that he should desire to fix himself and his family in an easier situation; but it is truly amazing, that, after losing a part of his dominions, and under circumstances of the greatest distress, a king should be able to do this without any foreign force, without bloodshed, and in less than a week's time; which, however, was what this prince projected, and happily achieved by the interposition of the commons, whose e condition could not be worse under the government of a single person, than under such a variety of tyrants. The king governed after this with great wisdom and prudence ten years, and died universally beloved by his subjects, whose affections he gained by many acts of liberality, and by taking care that justice should be duly and speedily administered.

f His son *Christiern V.* succeeded in 1670, and having put his affairs into very good order, and made several powerful alliances, he resolved to lay hold of this opportunity to recover part of what his predecessors had lost to the *Swedes*; but, that he might be in a better condition to do this, he resolved to make himself master, first, of the person of the duke of *Holstein*, in which he succeeded, but with very little advantage to his reputation; for the duke, suspecting nothing, in 1675, came to *Rensbourg* to visit him, and was there seized and put under a guard, till such time as he consented to relinquish the advantages he had gained by the treaty of *Roschild*; after which, the king made himself master of *Tonningen*, the strongest place in his dominions, and pursuing his advantage reduced likewise *Wismar*. He had also some success in the beginning of the next year, but his good fortune did not continue long; for, being defeated by the *Swedes*, in the famous battle of *Lunden*, he was from that time never able to do much against them by land, though by sea he was fortunate; but at last made peace with that crown upon equal terms. He afterwards employed his forces against the city of *Hamburg*, upon which the kings of *Denmark* always had pretensions, which, twice in his reign, he had made turn to good account. In the year 1694, on the death of the duke of *Holstein Gottorp*, his *Danish* majesty formed two claims upon that family, which were for some time adjusted by the mediation of the emperor, and the kings of *Great-Britain* and *Sweden*, *William III.* and *Charles XII.* whose sister the duke of *Holstein* had espoused. But in the last years of his g



life these disturbances broke out again, and things were on the point of coming to a rupture, when the king died in the month of September 1699. a

His son and successor *Frederick IV.* acted precisely on his father's principles, and resolved to compel the dukes of *Holstein* to remain dependent on the kings of *Denmark* for the future; in order to which, he over-ran that country; and undertook the siege of *Tonningen*, which gave occasion to the long war in the north at the beginning of the present century. The *English* and *Dutch*, as guarantees of the late peace, sent a powerful fleet into the *Baltic*, and the king of *Sweden*, at the same time, besieged *Copenhagen*, so that the *Danes* were obliged to conclude the famous treaty of *Travendahl*, on the 18th of *August*, 1700. It was stipulated in this treaty, that the house of *Holstein* should, for the future, enjoy the same rights with other sovereigns; that the duke should be at liberty to raise troops, and build forts in his own dominions, provided they were two miles distant from any fortrefs belonging to the *Danes*, and at least a mile from their frontiers. It was likewise agreed, that the crown of *Denmark* should pay the duke of *Holstein* 250,000 crowns, and that the chapter of *Lubec* should be at liberty to elect a prince of *Holstein* for their bishop. b

In 1712, the king of *Denmark* availing himself of the misfortunes of *Charles XII.* took the town of *Stade* and the duchy of *Bremen*; but the same year his army was beaten by the *Swedes*, who afterwards burnt the fine town of *Altona* to the ground. In 1714 and 1715, he had great success against the *Swedes* both by sea and land; and in 1716, he drove them intirely out of the places they had conquered in *Norway*, and in conjunction with the *Prussians* reduced *Elisnar*; after which he did not push the war with the same vigour for many reasons, but chiefly because he saw that his success would be less advantageous to himself than to his allies. This made him the more inclinable to peace, which was concluded under the mediation of *George I.* king of *Great Britain*, in 1720. By this treaty, his *Danish* majesty obtained all that he could reasonably expect; and, which to him was a matter of great consequence, he procured the guarantee of the king of *France* for the possession of the duchy of *Sleswic*, and the king of *Great-Britain* renewed his, which had been given before. c

His son, the late king *Christiern VI.* ascended the throne of his ancestors with universal reputation. He had, in his father's life time, been very attentive to the concerns of the *East-India* company, and had been in a great measure the support of it; which induced the people to hope that a particular regard for trade would be the principal view of his reign; and so indeed it proved. At his very accession to the government he made many changes, but all of them such as gave great satisfaction to his subjects. In 1732, he acceded to the treaty between the courts of *Vienna* and *Petersburg*, by which he obtained their guarantee for his own, and became himself guarantee for their dominions, and of the *Pragmatic Sanction*. In virtue of a separate article of this treaty, the king obliged himself to pay the duke of *Holstein* a million of rixdollars, provided he renounced his pretensions on the duchy of *Sleswic*. In fine, during the course of sixteen years that he reigned, he never fell into one false step against the interests of his crown, or to the prejudice of his subjects; so that, as no prince of his time was more beloved or better obeyed while living, hardly any at their death have been more sincerely or universally lamented. d

His son *Frederick V.* the present possessor of the throne, succeeded to it, *July* 26, 1746, in the 23d year of his age. He espoused about three years before, the princess *Louisa* of *Great Britain*, by whom he has an heir apparent, *Christian*, born *January* 29, 1749. His queen died *December* 19, 1751. The king has steadily pursued his father's maxims in maintaining peace, improving the trade, and encouraging the industry of his subjects. His application to business, joined to a constant and well-regulated œconomy, has enabled him not only to live within the bounds of his revenue, but to make considerable savings. It is incredible to what a degree the face of affairs has been changed within the time of his own and his father's prudent administration. New ports have been opened, which has been owing to the opening new channels of trade; the shipping of the *Danes* has been more than doubled, and the revenues of the crown have increased in the same proportion within that small space. The court is splendid without profusion, the king rich without oppression, the ministers attentive to the duties of their respective stations, not only from the example of their master, but from the sense they have that a contrary behaviour would infallibly draw upon them immediate disgrace. Adored at home, and respected abroad, the king is only attentive to preserve and promote the happiness of his subjects, in which he places his own. e

TOWARDS the close of the late war, *Denmark* was somewhat alarmed by the disputes with the house of *Holstein*, which might have had serious consequences, if the *Russian* emperor *Peter III.* had lived to execute his intentions; but his untimely death put an end to them for the present. In this critical situation, the king of *Denmark* acted with prudence g



a dence and circumspection, and though he shewed he was well disposed to compromise matters upon moderate terms, he discovered, at the same time, by the armaments made, that he was in a condition, in case of being attacked, to defend himself.

THE *Danes* have been formerly esteemed a very warlike nation, and though from the misfortunes in their wars with the *Swedes*, their power is much diminished; yet the credit of the *Danish* troops is still very good. The forces the king keeps up are very well paid and disciplined, and are numerous enough to secure his dominions against any invasion, more especially as his fleet is in excellent order; and as the *Danish* seamen and the *Norwegians* are justly reputed the best in the north.

b THE laws of this country have been deservedly in reputation, as lying within a very narrow compass, and the administration of justice is so well looked after, that suits in this country are but few, and those very speedily determined. The king makes and repeals laws, as to him appears necessary for the good of his subjects; but the crown has always used its power with much moderation and discretion: so that as *Denmark* may be said to be the only legal absolute government in *Europe*, perhaps, in the world, the people have had less reason to regret the change made by themselves than could well have been expected; and if their monarchs copy after the example of their present king, the *Danes* will feel fewer evils from the want of liberty, than in other nations are produced by the abuse of it.

### c C H A P. XIII.

#### Of Great Britain and Ireland, the principal of the European Islands.

THE island of *Great Britain* lies in longitude (*Teneriff* being the meridian) between 9  $\frac{1}{2}$  and 17  $\frac{1}{2}$ , and between 50 and 59 deg. of north latitude. The southern division of this island, or that part of it called *England*, is bounded by *Scotland* on the north; the *German-Sea*, which separates it from *Germany* and the *Netherlands*, on the east; by the *English* channel, which divides it from *France*, on the south; and by *St. George's* channel, which separates it from *Ireland*, on the west. It is 360 miles from north to south, and 300 in breadth from east to west, in the widest part.

*Situation, divisions, and extent of Great Britain.*

THE northern division, called *Scotland*, is bounded on the south by the *Irish-Sea* and *England*; on the east by the *German-Ocean*; on the north by the *Deucalidonian Sea*; and on the west by the *Atlantic Ocean*: It is about 215 *Scots* miles in length; and in breadth, in the widest part, about 140.

IRELAND, situated between longitude 5. 40. and 10. 37. west from *London*, and between 51. 16. and 55. 20. of north latitude, is an island separated from *England* and *Scotland* by *St. George's* channel on the east; has the *Scots* western islands on the north and north-east; the mouth of *St. George's* channel on the south; and the *Atlantic-Ocean* on the west: It is reckoned to be about 300 miles in length, and 150 in breadth, or to bear proportion to *England* and *Wales* as 18 to 30.

*Situation and extent of Ireland.*

A GREAT number of smaller islands lie round *Great Britain*; some single, as the *Isle of Wight*, the *Isle of Man*, &c. others, as it were, in clusters, as the *Orkney-Isles*, and other little slips, that are scattered all along the coasts of *Scotland*.

*Other islands.*

THE three kingdoms have, on all sides, very convenient harbours, and are accommodated with navigable rivers in abundance, which convey to them the riches of the sea and of foreign nations. The advantage of the sea surrounding them, as it is a security against enemies, so it is also against the violent colds to which the climate would otherwise be exposed; for the tides and constant motion of the sea send us in a kindly sort of vapour, which qualifies the natural sharpness of the air, even to such a degree, that, in some parts of *France* and *Italy*, they feel more of the winter than we do in *England*. The soil in *England* and *Ireland* doth, in a great measure, owe its fertility to the same cause; the vapours not only mollifying the air, and by that means nourishing every vegetable, but they also furnish us with gentle showers in their proper seasons; insomuch that our ancestors believed these must needs be the *Fortunate Islands*, so much talked of by the Antients; as having, of all others, the best claim to those natural blessings and delights, with which they made them abound. It cannot be well determined, whether it was more the courage and vigour of these westerly inhabitants, than any natural cause, which gave rise to the opinion, that, the farther west we go, the constitutions of the people are more firm, and their courage greater.

*Advantages in situation, &c.*

g THAT part of *Great Britain* which lies towards the *Western-Ocean* is mountainous, as *Cornwall*, *Wales*, and many large tracts of *Scotland*; but the inner parts are, generally, a plain champaign country, abounding with corn and pasture. The most remarkable mountain, as it may be called, is that continued ridge which runs from south to north, dividing, as it were, the whole island into the east and west parts, and is by some writers called the *English Appennine*.

*Face of the country.*

THE



Original of  
the inhabi-  
tants.

THE inhabitants of the several parts are of a different original: those of *Cornwall* and *Wales* are, in a great measure, the posterity of the antient *Britons*; who, upon the invasion, first of the *Picts*, and then of the *Saxons*, betook themselves to those mountainous corners and out skirts; and have ever since preserved both their language, and many of their families, from any mixture of foreigners. Of late years, indeed, the *Cornish* are come over to the *English* language, modes, and ways of living; and the *Welsh* are not less polite. The *Scots* are originally *Irish*, but not without a mixture of *Picts*; who, though they were subdued by the former, and fell under their government, could not yet be entirely cut off, any more than the conquered usually are in other kingdoms. *Bede*, *Camden*, *Usher*, *Stillingfleet*, and many other historians, are very positive, that the west parts of *Scotland* were peopled from *Ireland*; and the *Irish*, which is their language, puts it beyond all dispute; but the exact time when this did happen, is a point the learned still differ about; while the natives are fond of their own extraordinary antiquity, and their neighbours will not suffer them to run up their original too high. As for *England* though the *Britons* were for many hundred years in full possession of it, and, after that, the *Romans* made a considerable figure among us, yet we cannot well imagine there is much of the blood of either nation among us at this day. The real *Britons*, indeed, may, with some reason, value themselves upon their descent from the *Romans*, with whom, in such a vast length of time, they could not but have frequent intermarriages, and so incorporate themselves, as it were, into one people. This they may insist upon with more reason, and less vanity, than some among them do, who are fond of deriving their origin from the *Trojans*, at first hand: but whoever considers how the foreign wars, under the late emperors cleared this kingdom of the *Romans*, and how the prevailing power of the *Saxons* swept off the miserable *Britons*, will have but a mean opinion of our title to a descent from either. It is true, we have more of the *Roman* language to shew than the *Welsh* have; but we have had it at second-hand only, from the *Normans*; whereas the remains these produce have been derived to them from age to age, ever since their mutual correspondence with the *Romans*; so that the *Saxons*, and likewise the *Danes*, who for many years over-ran the whole kingdom, and the *Normans* who conquered it, are the principal ingredients of the *English* nation at this day.

AND as we are a compound of the northern nations, and of the *Norman*, with *French*, so we seem to retain something of the temper and humour of both, keeping a mean between the two: the *Frenchman* is brisk, gay, and airy; the *Hollander* and *German*, unactive, heavy, and unwieldy; the *Englishman* has neither so much of the first qualities, as to carry him to levity, nor of the second, so as to make him fairly chargeable with dulness; his fancy does not out-run his judgment, nor his judgment suppress his fancy: this difference is very remarkable in two particulars, war and learning; in war, what more notorious than the slowness of the *Germans*, the quickness of the *French*, and the firmness and bravery of the *English*? In learning, nothing is more apparent than the bulks of lectures, comments, and common-places, which the first have given us; the little whimsies, airy sallies, and pert essays, we have had from the second; and the solid argument, substantial matter, and true philosophy, from the last. The *French* indeed, have done great honour to learning, under the protection of *Lewis XIV.* who established a more lasting name by his eminent patronage of it, than by the progress of his arms: they have also this advantage, that their language, being understood in most parts of *Europe*, conveys their learning as far as it reaches. Could but our *English* tongue be settled in as many parts of the world, or would our great men make themselves masters of the Latin tongue, and write in a language so universally known, our books would undoubtedly make their own way; they would carry instruction abroad, and bring reputation to our own kingdom.

Commercial  
concerns, and  
interests of  
Great Bri-  
tain and  
Ireland.

BUT, in the main point of view we propose to consider our present matter in, when it is duly considered what quantity of shipping and water-craft of every kind are employed in our home coasting trade round our islands; and likewise the shipping employed to and from *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, to our colonies in *America*; and what quantity our colonies employ among themselves: when these points are well weighed, our seamen and tonnage of shipping would, perhaps, intitle us to the character of a maritime power, though we had no commerce with other nations. Yet, if we had no commerce with other nations, and our neighbouring potentates had, and a commerce so wisely regulated, that they were constant gainers by it; and we only carried on a domestic trade within our own territories; should we not be at a kind of stand, with regard to wealth and power, while other nations were daily increasing both? Was this the state of things, would it be possible to maintain ourselves an independent people? Must we not always be at the mercy of our most potent neighbours, and become vassals to their will?

LET any man conversant with the world, pass but a transient reflection on the state of mankind throughout the globe, and he will find, that scarce any thing prevails, but a con-  
conce-



a confederacy of civil, ecclesiastical, and military power against the liberties and properties of the whole human species, except in the little spots called *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, and their dependent dominions. And was it not the advancement of the commerce of this nation in the days of our great queen *Elizabeth*, that first enabled us to oppose those chains of slavery which were so resolutely forged for us in *Spain*? And has not our trade and navigation, ever since, been the only means, whereby we could keep pace with our enemies in riches and power, in order to defend ourselves against that tyranny and oppression, to which almost the whole world is liable? Can any man consider these indisputable facts, and hesitate a moment, whether our trade is not still the only means left us, whereby we can protect ourselves from that bondage wherein other states are involved? Now, as this  
b converse with the world is the honest way to strengthen and enrich a nation, and the great discourager of idleness and debauchery; and as we are situated by nature, and have genius proper for its cultivation, ought we not to make it our study to manage it to its highest capacity of advancement? which if we would in earnest pursue, war itself would be such an advantage and security to us, that we should not only be out of danger from our enemies, but command the trade of the world; and, on the contrary, if that be neglected, all the miseries, attendants on slavery and poverty, that shall happen to the nation, may be ascribed to our own improvidence and inactivity.

c We see every day, that the convenient situation of any estate gives an estimate, and raises its purchase; and, without convenience, life itself would be but a mere spiration, scarce worth the valuing: *Great Britain* and *Ireland* then, most certainly deserve to be valued and preferred to all nations on the earth, having both to so great advantage.

THEY are islands placed as a center to the circular globe, towards which trade may draw a line from the whole circumference; they are blessed with a moderation of every element: no torrid zone scorches, nor frigid zone benumbs their natives, but a medium influence strengthens and beautifies their inhabitants, who are of regular shapes; neither an unwieldy nor pygmy breed, but fit to endure the toils of war, or peaceful labours on the land: our climate is so moderate, that the sun neither exhales, nor the cold phlegmatizes the spirituous parts, but allows a temperature between both; so that our native imaginations are neither too airy for consideration, nor too dull for invention; the soil is  
d highly prolific, and where barrenness appears on the surface, the bowels are enriched with valuable mines. No *Alpine* mountains, nor *Holland* bogs, but a delightful variety of hills and dales compass the land; so that, when the parching sun burns up and chops the higher lands, the humble meadows thrive with verdure; and when mighty showers drown the vales, the hills grow fruitful by watering: our lands, when tilled, produce a grateful plenty in return to labour; our trees in general are lofty and well topped, and afford us all the conveniencies we can expect; our kingly oaks so firmly rib our ships, that our royal navy will ever prove an invincible bulwark against any daring foe; our fruits are pleasant and useful; our cattle large, healthy, strong and numerous, and as good as the world produces for labour or for food; their skins are firm and of such contracted pores,  
e that better leather is no where to be met with. Our wool is very good, and, if duly attended to, would equal the boasted *Segovia*; it is the parent of our chief manufactures, and gives us a plaudit in our cloth throughout the universe. We have fowl in plenty, and that plenty good. In the bosom of our native earth are hid riches, which are easily obtained by the artist and laborious, as tin, lead, copper, iron, coals, &c. Our land is plentifully veined with rivers, refreshing the earth, and affording variety and plenty of fish. In short, the nation is a verdant field, indented with harbours around it, where our ships, from their natural situation, may ride on the tempestuous storm.

f THE sea, by Providence, is a wall which surrounds us, to defend us from the Pharaoh that would enslave us; it is champain and servant too; for by our ships furrowing its waves, we send plenty out, and bring the riches of the most distant parts of the world into our possessions. It is wonderful to think, how several sorts of fish, in numbers innumerable, at certain seasons, visit our coast by divine appointment and natural instinct, for our sustenance; and day by day are ready, not only to furnish us with food, but also to be made merchandize of, to the enriching of the nation.

g IT is very observable, how heaven blesses us by the course of the wind, that commonly blows westerly for above half of the year, which makes all our cape lands and bays, opposite to the *French* and *Dutch* coasts, good roads for our ships to ride with security; for we are on the weather, and the *French* on the lee shore: besides, our anchor-hold is much better than either the *French* or *Dutch*; for we have generally a stiff clay, chalk, or hard gravel, whilst the *French* have only hard rocks or loose sands; and the *Flemings* and *Hollanders* a great number of sands on their coasts, their water of less depth, and consequently their ports choaked up with quick-sands; when our ships ride safe, even between our lands, by our country's being a weather shore.



Thus, in epitome, we see what a rich heiress with an immense fortune we enjoy, by the gift of the great Father of the universe; but we should consider, when this portion was given, gratitude and duty were expected, that it might descend as a jointure to our posterity.

LINENS are the staple manufactures of *Scotland* and *Ireland*; and the encouragement of the linens and fisheries of the former, and the linens of the latter, can in no respect be injurious to *England*; but it is highly to the disadvantage of *England* to support either the *French*, the *German*, or the *Dutch* linens; because the balance is highly against her with the two former, and so likewise with *Holland*. Why does *Ireland* carry on the clandestine trade of wool with *France*, but because they have more than they can manufacture for themselves, or send in wool, or woollen yarn, to *England*? It is true, *England* encourages the importation of *Irish* wool, and woollen yarn; and this importation proving so beneficial, must convey an idea, how highly injurious the clandestine exportation of wool to *France* must prove to these kingdoms, as *France* not only supplies herself with woollen manufactures, but has interfered therein with us in foreign nations. None would imagine, we apprehend, that to suppose the *French* import, in time of peace, at least, double the quantity of *Irish* wool the *English* do, in any shape, is beyond the bounds of truth and probability: it is rather to be feared, that this will be thought a supposition far below the mark; yet if *France* gains as much by it as *England*, we find it will not be less than two millions *per annum*. Should it be said, that *France*, obtaining the *Irish* wool clandestinely, makes it come dearer to them than it does to the *English* legally; and that therefore, the gain of *France*, by the manufacture of *Irish* wool, cannot be so great as it is to the *English*: to this it may be answered, that the greater quantity the *French* import, together with the benefits of exportation after dyeing, may be presumed to compensate more than the occasional disadvantage in point of price.

WITHIN now about thirty years, the possibility of *Irish* linens arriving at their present perfection, was looked upon as chimerical, and was treated as such, in the capital contest about taking off the drawback, upon the re-exportation of foreign linens: but fact and experience have demonstrated that some worthy gentlemen were mistaken in their foresight. Nor are the linen manufactures the only point wherein those people, as well as the *Scots*, have wonderfully improved within these twenty years, but the *Irish* have really made considerable improvements in divers other essential particulars, as in the raising of hops, corn, and turnips; in marling, gravelling, and liming land; in the draining of bogs; in making butter and cheese; in spinning baize yarn; in rearing calves, and in working mines. Wherefore, from the extraordinary spirit of industry and zeal for the advancement of commerce in that country, we may hope to see their linens equal those of any foreign country whatsoever. The wonderful improvements also, that have been made in *Scotland*, are no way inferior; and we have reason to expect, that the fisheries likewise will there increase, to the intire satisfaction of the united kingdoms.

THE *French* are the greatest rivals in our manufactures; but let care be taken to prevent their being supplied with wool from *England* and *Ireland*, and we shall soon see an alteration therein. It is true, they have wool of their own; but they cannot work it, so as to injure us at foreign markets, without ours or *Irish*. As this will be laying the axe to the root of the *French* commerce, does it not become the wisdom of the nation to think seriously of what so nearly and importantly concerns us?

EXPERIENCE has sufficiently convinced us, that war is not the way to put it out of the power of *France* to hurt us. Were we to exert the *British* bravery at the expence of an hundred millions more than we have done, it is certain, that under such incumbrances, we should grievously waste ourselves; but it is much to be doubted, whether we should gain any permanent advantage over *France*. For the art of war is now become a science, and indeed, a trading one; and *France* is often obliged to give their military people diversion abroad, lest they should be troublesome at home. War, therefore, every ten or twenty years seems to be necessary to that nation; but is not so to us, unless defensively. When the sword is drawn, besides those who immediately engage, do we not see other potentates, from various views and instigations, drawn in on either side; and what was at first a contest only between two, comes at last to involve twenty? Wherefore let us deal with *France*, and indeed, with all other nations, by the peaceable arm of commerce; let us beat them by our superior industry in the acquisition of such useful arts as will not only employ our own people, but invite all hither who are oppressed in other countries; for plenty of people and of useful arts yield beneficial employment, and will give us such power, that no nation, nor any confederacy, will dare to insult us.

It is the maintaining the *British* empire in this situation, that ought to be the sole point of view to our statesmen and patriots, as of old among the *Greeks* and *Romans*. Our constitution, like theirs, is of a mixed nature; but one may without partiality or vanity affirm,



- a that it is more happily compounded; so that majesty and liberty trespass not upon each other, the prerogative of the prince being without restraint, where it may be exerted for his subjects' good, and the paramount prerogative being this, that the crown can do no hurt. It is most evident therefore, that at this day our princes can have no temptation to enterprize wars of conquest, as in former times; so that a true spirit of patriotism can never be shewn in opposing projects that will never be set on foot; and in this lies our great happiness, that, having no views or pretensions upon our neighbours, there is no solid, indeed, nor so much as a plausible ground for us to hate them, or they us. This is the true fundamental principle of our policy, that, in respect to the affairs of the continent, we are not to be governed by any of those temporary or accidental conveniences, which very often, b and that justly too, pass for reasons of state in other kingdoms; but by this single rule of their acting in conformity to our natural interests, so far as is consistent with their own.

THERE is a distinction often made, chiefly by foreigners, between the interests and the commerce of *Great Britain*; but, in reality, this is a distinction without a difference; for the interest and commerce of the *British* empire are so inseparably united, that they may be very well considered as one and the same. For commerce is that tie, by which the several, and even the most distant parts of the empire, are connected and kept together, so as to be rendered parts of the same whole, and to receive not only countenance and protection, but warmth and nourishment from the vital parts of our government, of which, if we may be indulged so figurative an expression, our monarchy is the head, and our liberty the soul. c Whatever therefore assists, promotes, and extends our commerce, is consistent with our interest; and whatever weakens, impairs, or circumscribes it, is repugnant thereto. We may easily, considering things in this light, (and if we consider them in any other, we shall deceive ourselves) derive from thence a true notion of the interest of *Great Britain*, and be able to judge when that interest is really pursued, and when it is either neglected or abandoned.

WE have omitted giving here any history of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, of their form and of government, supposing them sufficiently known from our numerous histories, &c. already extant, and constantly publishing.

d

## C H A P. XIV.

### *Of the other European Islands.*

WE shall begin with those in the *Atlantic-Ocean*, and the first that occur, are, THE *Azores*, denominated also the *Terceras*, and *Western-Islands*. They are situate between 25 and 32 degrees of west longitude, and between 37 and 40 north latitude, 900 miles west of *Portugal*, and as many east of *Newfoundland*, lying almost in the midway between *Europe* and *America*. They are subject to *Portugal*. St. Michael's, the most easterly island, is the largest of the *Azores*, being near an hundred miles in circumference; a mountainous but fruitful country, abounding in corn, fruit, cattle, fish, and fowl. This island was twice invaded and plundered by the *English*, who got a considerable booty in the reign of queen *Elizabeth*. *Tercera* is esteemed the chief island on account of its having the best harbour, and a good town, where the governor of these islands resides, as well as the bishop. This too is a mountainous country, but has a great deal of good arable and pasture grounds, and an excellent breed of cattle. Here the *Portuguese* fleet constantly put in, when they are homeward-bound from *Brazil*, *Africa*, or the *East-Indies*.

Other islands of the Atlantic Ocean.

f THE *Faro-Islands* lie between *Iceland* and *Scotland*, and are subject to *Denmark*. They are very small, and produce no corn. The inhabitants subsist chiefly on fish and wild fowls. There are also a great many small islands on the coast of *Norway*, the chief of which are *Malsfrom* and *Histeren*.

ICELAND is situate between 10 and 20 degrees of west longitude, and 63 and 67 degrees of north latitude. The chief town is *Skalholt*, where the *Danish* governor resides. It is a poor barren country, and yields the sovereign little profit. The most remarkable thing in it is the vulcano of mount *Heckla*. Corn will scarce grow in any part of this island; the inhabitants feed on the flesh of bears, wolves, and foxes, and make bread of dried fish ground to powder. Few trees grow here but juniper shrubs, birch, and willow. Their fish, with roots and herbs, are their greatest dainties.

g EAST-GREENLAND is situate between 10 and 30. deg. of east longitude, and 76 and 80 deg. of north latitude. It is claimed by *Denmark*, but uninhabited. The chief whale-fishery is on the coast, which the *Dutch* have in a great measure engrossed to themselves. Whether *East-Greenland* be a continent or island, is uncertain; some imagine it to be contiguous to *West-Greenland*, but no man ever made the experiment.

WEST-



*WEST-GREENLAND* is situate between the meridian of *London* and 50 deg. west longitude, and between 60 and 75 deg. north latitude. It is inhabited by a barbarous people, among whom the *Danes* have sent some missionaries to convert them to Christianity; but there are no towns in the country, nor any product that will tempt strangers to traffic with them. The fishery on the coast seems to be all that is worth contending for; and this the *Dutch* make very free with, notwithstanding the representations and menaces of the *Danes* upon that head. *West* and *East-Greenland* produce scarce any trees or herbage.

Islands of the  
Baltic-Sea.

THE chief islands of the *Baltic-Sea* are, 1. Those belonging to *Denmark*, of which *Zealand*, the chief and the seat of the government, is a barren soil: no wheat will grow here, and there is but little good pasture; great part of it is a forest, and reserved for the king's game. *Funen*, the next largest island, has barely corn sufficient for the inhabitants. The island of *Laland* is a fruitful soil, and supplies *Copenhagen* with wheat. The islands of *Langland*, *Falster*, and *Mona*, are indifferently fruitful. 2. *Gothland*, *Aland*, and *Rugen*, are subject to *Sweden*. The last is part of *Swedish Pomerania*, separated from the continent by a narrow channel, not three miles over. The island is thirty miles long, and near as many broad, and is a plentiful country, abounding in corn and cattle; the chief town *Bergen*, which has no wall, any more than the other towns, and consists of about 400 houses. 3. *Usedom* and *Wollin*, subject to *Prussia*, which by being possessed of them, commands the navigation of the *Oder*. The passage between these two islands is called the *Swin*. 4. *Osel* and *Dagbo*, subject to *Russia*. They both lie opposite *Livonia*.

THE islands of the *Mediterranean* sea are,

Islands of the  
Mediterranean  
Sea.

1. *IVICA*, situate fifty miles east of *Valencia* in *Spain*, and as many south west of *Majorca*. It is about thirty miles long, and twenty-four broad, a mountainous country, the chief produce salt, of which they export large quantities. It is subject to *Spain*, with

2. *MAJORCA*, which is situate about eighty miles south of the coast of *Catalonia*, and 100 miles east of *Valencia*. It is about sixty miles long, and forty-five broad. The country is mountainous, but produces corn, wine, oil, and fruit, and has several good harbours. This was the chief of those islands called by the ancients *Baleares*, famous for their slingers.

3. *MINORCA*, situate almost 100 miles south of the coast of *Catalonia* in *Spain*, and about twenty miles east of the island of *Majorca*, is thirty miles long, and twelve broad, incumbered with barren hills, and only valuable for its secure and capacious harbour of *Port Mahon*, where the largest fleets may ride safe from tempests or enemies, the entrance being defended by platforms of guns, and forts strongly fortified. The *English* made a conquest of it in the year 1708, which was confirmed to them by the peace of *Utrecht*, in 1713; and the harbour has since been of infinite service to the *English*, as here they repair their ships, and here the merchants ships lie in safety till they can meet with convoys. In *April* 1756, this island was invaded by 13,000 *French* under the duke de *Richelieu*, who became masters of the whole by the surrender of *St. Philip's* castle, *June* 29 following, after a siege of two months, having been bravely defended by the late lord *Blakeney*, the lieutenant-governor: *Minorca* has since been restored to the *English* by the late definitive treaty of peace.

4. *CORSICA*, situate 100 miles south of *Genoa*, sixty south-west of *Leghorn* in *Tuscany*, and separated from *Sardinia* by the narrow strait of *Bonifacio*. It is 110 miles in length, and fifty in breadth. The face of the country is mountainous, rocky, and covered with wood. The air is pretty good, but the soil barren; however, it produces corn and wine enough for the natives, but has very little to traffic with. It was taken from the *Saracens* by the *Genoese* and *Pisans*, who divided it between them for some time; but at length the *Genoese* expelled the *Pisans*, and their viceroy is governor of the island. The doge of *Genoa* is crowned at his accession as knig of *Corfica*. The natives have for many years been in arms against their sovereigns, the republic of *Genoa*, for which they assign the tyranny of that government, while the *Genoese* charge them with being a seditious factious people. They were not long since reduced very low by the emperor of *Germany*, and afterwards by the *French*, who sent some forces to the assistance of the *Genoese*; but of late they have recovered under the spirited conduct of their general *Paoli*, and almost driven the *Genoese* out of the island.

5. *SARDINIA*, situate about 150 miles west of *Leghorn* in *Tuscany*, and 120 miles north-west of *Sicily*, is 140 miles in length from north to south, and sixty miles in breadth from east to west. It is prettily diversified with hills and vallies; the mountains in the north are very high. The climate is warm, and the air not reckoned healthful. The soil is very fruitful where it is manured, producing corn, wine, and oil, in great plenty; but the people are so indolent, that little improvement is made by them. The *Phenicians* and *Greeks* first sent colonies to this island, and erected several small states, as they had done in the south of *Italy* and *Sicily*. The *Carthaginians* succeeded them, and had



a had almost the dominion of the whole island. The *Romans* dispossessed the *Carthaginians*. The *Saracens* invaded it in the eighth century, as they did *Naples* and *Sicily*. The republics of *Genoa* and *Pisa* recovered part of the island from them. Pope *Boniface* took upon him to transfer the island to the king of *Aragon*, who subdued the *Genoese*, *Pisans*, and the rest of the inhabitants, and annexed it to his own dominions; and it remained united to the crown of *Spain* till the allies made a conquest of it in 1708, and it was allotted to the emperor at the peace of *Utrecht* in 1713. The *Spaniards* recovered it in 1717, but were obliged to abandon it two years after, when it was conferred on the duke of *Savoy*, in lieu of the kingdom of *Sicily*, in 1719; and his son, the present king of *Sardinia*, is now sovereign of this island, the revenues of which scarce exceed the charges of the government.

b 6. *SICILY*, divided from *Italy* by the narrow strait of *Messina*, which is not seven miles over. This island is 170 miles in length, and 100 in breadth. It lies in a warm climate, but the air is healthful, being refreshed by sea breezes on every side. Both hills and valleys are exceeding fruitful, no country producing more corn, wine, oil, and silk, in proportion to its dimensions; from whence old *Rome* was principally supplied with provisions when it abounded with people. The silk, raw or manufactured, with the other produce of the island, are exported in large quantities from *Messina*, where a consul from almost every nation in *Europe* resides, to manage and protect the trade of his nation: and of late years the *Sicilians* have traded with *Turky*, and the coast of *Barbary*, which they never did before their late king don *Carlos* ascended the throne. The most noted of the mountains in this island is that of *Etna*, now called *Gibello*, a terrible vulcano, situate in the province of *Val Demona*. This mountain is sixty miles in circumference, and at the top there is a basin of burning sulphur six miles round, from whence sometimes issue rivers of melted minerals that run down into the sea. The hill is so high, that round the basin there is a circle of snow great part of the year. Before any great eruption there is generally an earthquake. The port town of *Catania* was overturned by an earthquake in 1693, and 18,000 people perished by it. *Syracuse*, once the greatest city of the island, has been so often demolished by earthquakes, that very little of it remains at present. There are eight small islands, which lie near the north coast of *Sicily*, to which the inhabitants gave the name of *Æoliae* and *Vulcaniæ*, feigned by the poets to be the seats of *Æolus* and *Vulcan*, the chief of which is *Lipari*, from whence they are usually called the *Lipari Islands*. Two of them are volcanoes, as *Strombolo* and *Hiera*. The small islands of *Levanzo*, *Maritima*, and *Favagnana*, lie at the west end of the island. *Sicily* was also called *Trinacria*, from its triangular form. The *Greeks* and *Carthaginians* divided it between them, but were both subdued or expelled by the *Romans*, who reduced it into the form of a province. It followed the fortune of *Italy* in its several revolutions, until the *Sicilian* vespers in 1282, when the natives massacred their *French* masters, who had then the dominion of it. The *French* were succeeded by the *Spaniards* until the year 1707, when they were driven from thence by the *Imperialists*; and at the peace of *Utrecht* this island was allotted to the duke of *Savoy*, with the title of king. The *Spaniards* invaded it in 1718, but were forced to abandon it again; and then it was conferred on the late emperor *Charles VI.* who held it till the year 1735, when the *Imperialists* were driven out of this island, and of all their *Italian* dominions; and don *Carlos*, the king of *Spain's* eldest son, by the princess of *Parma* his second queen, was advanced to the throne of *Naples* and *Sicily*, which were confirmed to him by the subsequent peace, on condition of his relinquishing *Milan*, *Parma*, and all the rest of the emperor's *Italian* dominions, which the *Spaniards* and *French* had taken from him in that war.

e 7. *MALTA*, formerly *Melita*, situate in 15 degrees east longitude, and 35 degrees, 15 minutes north latitude, 60 miles south of *Cape Passaro* in *Sicily*, is of an oval figure, twenty miles long, and twelve broad. The air is clear and healthful, but excessive hot, when not cooled by the sea-breezes. The island is all a white soft rock, covered with a foot of good vegetable earth, producing great quantities of cotton, indigo, oranges, lemons, olives, figs, and other fruits, with great plenty of pulse and other garden-stuff; but very little corn or wine, with which the inhabitants are supplied chiefly from *Sicily*; nor have they any wood except fruit trees, on the island. The town of *Malta* or *Valetta*, is magnificently built, strongly fortified, and has an excellent harbour. *Charles V.* emperor of *Germany* and king of *Spain*, gave it to the knights of *St. John of Jerusalem* in 1530, whose predecessors distinguished themselves in the defence of the *Holy Land*, and the protection of the pilgrims who resorted thither. When the Christians were driven out of the *Holy Land* by the *Saracens*, these knights retired to *Cyprus*. They afterwards took the island of *Rhodes* from the Infidels, and defended it against all their power for 200 years; and then, surrendering it upon honourable terms, retired to *Malta*; and when *Solyman*, the *Turkish* emperor, invaded *Malta*, they obliged him to abandon the island, after he had lost 20,000 men before their walls. These knights consist of seven several Roman Catholic



lic nations, and are all of ancient, noble families. The grand crosses, as they are called, <sup>a</sup> are the heads of each nation, and are stiled grand priors. Each of them has his convent of knights, and they have estates, or commanderies in the respective nations to which they belong. These priors elect a grand master, who is the chief commander in the island. They have a squadron of men of war, and land forces, and are engaged in a perpetual war against the *Turks*, *Algerines*, and other *Mohammedan* powers. The Knights make vows of celibacy and chastity; notwithstanding which, every man keeps as many concubines as he pleases, who are for the most part *Grecian* beauties, which they take in the islands of the *Archipelago*, subject to *Turky*.

THERE are several other small islands on the coasts of *Italy*, particularly near *Naples* and *Tuscany*, the chief of which are, *Capri*, *Ischia*, *Procita*, *Ponza*, *Giglio*, *Elba*, *Pianosa*, <sup>b</sup> *Capraria*, *Gorgona*, and *Maloria*. Of these *Capri* is much taken notice of for its noble ruins. It is situate at the entrance of the gulph of *Naples*, about three miles from the continent, being about four miles long, and one broad. This was the residence of the emperor *Augustus* for some time, and afterwards of *Tiberius* for many years. The most considerable ruin stands at the extremity of the eastern promontory, where there are still several apartments left, very lofty, and arched at the top. Some years ago, there was discovered a paved road, running under ground from the top of the mountain to the sea-side. What recommended this island to *Tiberius* was, the temperate healthful air, being warm in winter and cool in summer, and its inaccessible coast, which is so very steep, that a small number of men may defend it against an army. And here it is conjectured that <sup>c</sup> emperor had different residences, according to the different seasons of the year. The whole island was cut out into easy ascents, adorned with palaces, and planted with as great a variety of groves and gardens as the ground would admit: and the works under-ground were more extraordinary than those on the surface; for the rocks were all undermined with highways, grottoes, galleries, bagnios, and subterraneous retirements, which suited the brutal pleasures of that emperor, and were afterwards demolished by the *Romans*, in detestation of the unnatural and lascivious scenes which had been acted there. The rest of the islands on this coast do not merit a particular description; neither do the islands in the *Adriatic* and *Ionian* sea, four of which, as *Liesina*, *Corfu*, *Cephalonia*, and *Zant*, are subject <sup>d</sup> to *Venice*; but *Leucadia* belongs to the *Turks*.

THE principal islands of the *Archipelago*, or the *Egean* and *Levant* seas, are,

*Islands of the  
Archipelago.*

1. *NEGROPONT*, the antient *Eubœa*, stretching from the south-east to the north-west, along the eastern coast of *Achaia* or *Livadia*, from which it is separated by a narrow channel, called the *Euripus*. The island is ninety miles long, and twenty-five broad in the widest part. Before the chief town of the same name, there usually lies a fleet of *Turkish* galleys, and the captain-bassa, or admiral of the *Turkish* fleet, is viceroy of this island, and the adjacent continent of *Greece*. The island abounds in corn, wine, and fruit; but what is most taken notice of, is the uncommon tides in the *Euripus*, or sea between the island and the continent. These are sometimes regular, and at others irregular, according to the age <sup>e</sup> of the moon; from the three last days of the old moon to the 8th of the new, they are regular; on the 9th day they begin to be irregular, and flow twelve, thirteen, or fourteen times in twenty-four hours, and ebb as often.

2. *LEMNOS*, or *Stalimene*, is situate on the north part of the *Archipelago*, of a square form, twenty-five miles in length of each side, about seventy miles south of *Mount Athos*, on the continent of *Greece*. It produces plenty of corn and wine, but its principal riches arise from a mineral earth, called terra lemnia and sigillata, from a seal the *Turks* put upon every parcel that is sold to foreigners: it is said to have great virtues in healing wounds, expelling poison, stopping fluxes, &c.

3. *CIO*, or *Chios*, lies near the west coast of *Ionia* in the *Lesser Asia*, about eighty miles west of *Smyrna*, and is about 100 miles in circumference. It is a rocky mountainous coun- <sup>f</sup> try, not a river or spring in it, and no corn but what is brought from *Candia*, or the continent of *Asia*. They have wine in great plenty, which is reckoned the best in *Greece*, with oil and silk; and they have manufactures of silk, velvet, gold and silver stuffs. Their most profitable plant is the lentisk-tree, from which the gum called mastic issues, the profit whereof the government in a manner monopolizes, obliging the natives to sell it to their agents at what price they please to set upon it. This island is populous, the inhabitants consisting of *Turks*, *Latins*, and *Greeks*, being computed at near 420,000. The *Greeks* are the most numerous. Their women are reckoned the greatest wits, as well as beauties, in this part of the world.

4. *SAMOS* is situate near the coast of the *Lesser Asia*, almost opposite to *Ephesus*, scarce <sup>g</sup> seven miles from the continent, being about thirty miles long, and fifteen broad. A chain of mountains runs through the middle of this island, being of white marble, but covered with a staple of good earth, producing wine, oil, pomegranates, silk, fruit-trees, and <sup>i</sup> other



a other plants. The muscadine wine is much admired; there is also fine wool which the *French* purchase. Here are great remains of antiquity, particularly of the ancient city of *Samos*, and of *Juno's* temple, patroness of the island. *Tournefort* says, there is nothing in the *Levant* to compare to them; abundance of marble pillars, which once supported temples or porticos, lie neglected by the *Turks*.

b 5. *PATMOS* lies north of *Samos*, and is about twenty miles round. It is one of the barrenest islands in the *Archipelago*, full of rocks and stony mountains, without trees or herbage, and not a river or spring in the island which is not dry in summer; but the haven of *Scala* is one of the most commodious ports in the *Mediterranean*: the convent of *St. John* is situated three miles south of *Scala*; the building called the hermitage of the apocalypse, depending on the convent, has a very mean appearance; the chapel is about eight paces long and five broad; on the right of it is *St. John's* grotto, the entrance of which is seven feet high, with a square pillar in the middle; in the roof they shew a crack in the rock through which, according to their tradition, the Holy Ghost dictated the Revelations, which *St. John* wrote in his banishment, which happened in the reign of *Domitian*, A. D. 95.

c 6. *RHODES* is situate twenty miles south-west of the continent of the *Lesser Austria*, and is about fifty miles long and twenty-five broad. It abounds in good wine, fruit, and all manner of provision but corn, which is imported from the neighbouring continent. At the mouth of the harbour of *Rhodes*, which is fifty fathom wide, stood the colossus of brass; esteemed one of the wonders of the world, one foot being placed on one side of the harbour, and the other foot on the other side, so that ships passed between its legs: the face of the colossus represented the sun, to whom this image was dedicated; the height of it was seventy cubits (about 135 feet) and it held in one hand a light-house for the direction of mariners. The *Rhodians* were once the most considerable naval power in the *Mediterranean*, and instituted laws for the regulation of navigation and commerce, called the *Rhodian* laws, by which maritime causes were decided in all the provinces of the *Roman* empire. The knights of *St. John* of *Jerusalem* being obliged to retire from *Palestine*, invaded this island, and took it from the *Turks* about the year 1308, and defended it against all the power of that empire till the year 1522.

d 7. *CANDIA*, the antient *Crete*, about 200 miles long, and sixty broad, is almost equally distant from *Europe*, *Asia*, and *Africa*. There are no considerable rivers in the island; *Lethe* is one of the largest streams. *Mount Ida* covers the middle of the island, and is for the most part a barren rock, scarce any tree or herbage upon it; but the vallies are full of vineyards, olive-yards, myrtles, laurels, oranges, and lemons, intermixed with other fruits, and fine corn-fields: their wines, both white and red, are exquisitely good. The city of *Candia* or *Mutium*, the capital, is situate on a bay of the sea about the middle of the north side of the island, and was once a good harbour, but is at present choaked up. The siege of this city is famous in history: the *Turks* invested it in the beginning of the year 1645, and the garrison having held out till the latter end of *September* 1669, surrendered at last upon honourable terms, after they had been stormed fifty-six times. The *Venetians* lost upwards of 80,000 men, and the *Turks* above 180,000, during the siege.

e 8. *CYPRUS* lies opposite the coast of *Syria* and *Palestine*, from which it is not above thirty miles distant. It is about 150 miles long, and 70 broad, and is supposed to have obtained the name of *Cyprus* from the great number of cypress trees in it. The air is hot, dry, and not very healthful. The soil produces corn, wine, oil, cotton, salt, wool, and some silk. The traffic of the inhabitants is very considerable, and consuls from almost every *European* nation reside here. The chief town is *Nicosia*, the seat of the *Turkish* viceroy, and formerly the residence of its kings. The chief mountain bears the name of *Olympus*, of which name there are several more in *Turkey*. Here are no springs or rivers but such as are produced by the annual rains. This island, antiently dedicated to *Venus*, has been under the dominion of the *Egyptians*, *Phenicians*, *Persians*, *Greeks*, *Romans*, *Saracens*, *Venetians*, and *Turks*. *Richard I.* king of *England*, meeting with an unhospitable reception here, subdued the island, and transferred his right of it to *Guy Lusignan*, titular king of *Jerusalem*, whose descendants transferred it to the state of *Venice*, from whom the *Turks* took it in 1570, and have ever since remained in possession of it. While it was in the hands of the Christians it was well peopled, having 800 or 1000 villages; but it is so thinly inhabited at present, that half the lands lie uncultivated. The present inhabitants are *Turks*, *Jews*, *Greeks*, *Armenians*, and some few *Latin* Christians; but the *Greeks* are much the most numerous.

f BESIDES these islands, several others were formerly of some note, as *Tenedos*, *Skyros* or *Scirio*, *Lesbos* or *Mytilene*, *Delos* in the center of the *Cyclades*, which are about fifty in number, *Paros*, and *Cytherea*. *Santorini*, which is one of the southernmost islands in the *Archipelago*, of about thirty-five miles in circumference, is a kind of pumice-stone rock, covered over



over with about a foot of earth, raised out of the sea by a vulcano, as were two or three other small islands near it: *Santorini* first appeared in the year 1707. The vulcano, which formed this island, was preceded, in the adjacent islands, by violent convulsions of the earth, followed by a thick smoke which arose out of the sea in the day-time, and flames of fire in the night, accompanied with a dreadful roaring noise under ground, like thunder or the firing of great guns.

## S E C T. IV. Of A M E R I C A.

### C H A P. I.

#### Of America in General.

Discovery,  
extent, bound-  
aries, &c. of  
America,

**A**MONG the discoveries mentioned in history, whether owing to accident or reflection, that of *America* is not the least advantageous. This quarter of the world was for many ages unknown to the *Europeans*. At length the happy æra arrived, when industry, spirited up by resolution, was to remove all the difficulties exaggerated by ignorance. It is so called from *Americus Vespucio*, a *Florentine* by birth, who, in 1497, was sent to improve the discoveries made by *Columbus*. The prodigious magnitude of this continent, the multitude and extent of its provinces, the variety of its climates, products, and curious particulars; and lastly, the distance and difficulty of one part communicating with another, and especially with *Europe*, have been the cause that *America*, though discovered and inhabited in its principal parts by *Europeans*, is still but imperfectly known by them in many things, which would greatly contribute to give a more perfect idea of so considerable a part of our globe. What has hitherto been discovered, reaches from latitude 78 degrees north, to latitude 56 degrees south; that is, 134 degrees, which, taken in a straight line, amount to upwards of 8040 miles in length. With regard to breadth, it is very irregular, being in some places 3690 miles, and in others, not above 60 or 70 miles over. The boundaries ascribed to it are the lands about the pole on the north; the *Atlantic Ocean*, which separates it from *Europe* and *Africa*, on the east; another vast ocean, on the south; and the *Pacific Ocean*, usually called the *South Sea*, which divides it from *Asia*, on the west.

THIS vast country was not discovered till the year 1492, when the enterprizing genius of *Columbus* drew aside the veil of ignorance, and shewed it to the surprised inhabitants of the old world. The honour, however, of this great discovery has been claimed by almost all the maritime nations of *Europe*. The *Spaniards* tell us, that *Columbus* received his lights from the papers of captain *Aldres*, their countryman, who had been cast on the coasts; and the *French* say he had them from *Betincourt*, who first discovered the *Azores*. It would be a difficult matter to determine this contest; but it appears that our claim to the discovery of this new world is prior to that of the *Spaniards*, whose pretensions seem to be the best grounded: no one can dispute the authenticity of those vouchers, whereby it appears that *Sebastian Cabot*, a *Venetian*, a man no less enterprizing, or less skilled in navigation, than *Columbus* himself, was sent by our *Henry VII.* a year before the discovery of *Columbus*; and, having first discovered *Newfoundland*, sailed along the coast as far as *Florida*. We must not omit, that the *Welsh* claim a more ancient discovery than any yet produced; asserting that prince *Madoc*, son of *Owen Guineth*, was cast on the coast of *Florida* as early as 1170, or 1190. Though indeed some look on this relation as fabulous, it has a great many corroborating circumstances, that make it appear not improbable; for *Meredith ap Rheife*, who gives us the account, was prior to *Columbus*, and died in the year 1477, which is fifteen years before *Columbus* began his expedition. To this we may add the affinity between the language of the *Welsh* and of some of the settlements in those parts, which receives some weight from the evidence of Mr. *Davis*, who tells us he met with a whole settlement that spoke the *Welsh* language in its utmost purity; and from the tradition of some of the inhabitants, who assert, that their ancestors came from a country beyond the great waters, nearly about the same time, from the same point of the compass, or from the rising of the sun.

THIS



- a This may seem, in some measure, to account for the *Eskimaux*, the only people in the vast continent of *America* that differ from the rest of the original inhabitants. They live in the north part of *America* in a country called *Labrader*, but whether they reside constantly there or not is uncertain. They make excursions as far as the sea-coasts of *Newfoundland*; and they have been seen near *Nelson's-River*, that falls into the west side of *Hudson's-Bay*. They deserve the name of savages better than any people yet known; for they eat raw flesh, and have a thick beard that covers their faces up to their eyes, insomuch that their features can hardly be perceived. Their hair is generally black and rugged; their eyes little and wild, and their whole external appearance frightful and ugly. Their character and their manners are quite agreeable to their hideous appearance; for they are wild, fierce, distrustful, and always ready to do mischief to strangers. Their stature is rather tall than otherwise, and they have a pretty good shape; but their large beards and plenty of hair, the whiteness of their skin, their always going cloathed, and their having no resemblance of their next neighbours, leave no room to doubt, that they proceed from a different stock from the rest of the *Americans*: still their language, having no resemblance, as it is thought, to any we know of, must make us seek a different original for them from the *Welsh*; for it may be well presumed, that though the *Welsh* dialect is uncommon and little known out of *Wales*, yet some of our seamen, or the *Britons* among the *French*, by their intercourse with this people, must have discovered the analogy of their language long before now, if there was any.
- b

Conjectures on the original of the *Eskimaux*.

- c HOWEVER, it is very remarkable that all the native *Americans* are nearly alike, except the just-mentioned *Eskimaux*; for they have all coarse black hair, and are without beards, nor yet have they any hair on any part of their bodies: some have pretended that old women have been employed to pluck the beards and other hair up by the roots; but this is known to be a fable, which is confirmed by all the later and more sensible travellers. Besides, it is well known, that when hair is plucked off it will grow again; therefore it must be wonderful that no hair is ever seen, not even on the bodies of those that have been brought to *England*.

Similarity of all the native *Americans*.

- THE *Americans* in all the *European* plantations are very well known, and yet it might be doubted, whether those in the southernmost parts of *America* are like the other inhabitants; especially as some seamen have represented those near the straits of *Magellan* as giants, that is 9 or 10 feet high. However, we have been undeceived in this particular by Sir *John Narborough*, who informs us, that both men and women are of a middle stature, and well proportioned, with roundish faces and low foreheads. Their eyes are black, and their nose is of a middle size; their teeth are very white, and close set; but their ears are small. Their hair is black, coarse, and shaggy, and both men and women wear it of the same length. They are full breasted, and their complexion is of an olive tawny, or rather red. They grease their bodies, and their faces are dawbed with spots down their cheeks that are both white and black, without any method. They have small heads, and short fingers; and they are active and nimble in all their motions; their cloaths are made up with pieces of the skins of seals, guanacoes, and otters sewed together, and are in the form of carpets, about five feet square.
- d They wrap them about their bodies as the *Scots* do their plaids; and they have also caps made of the skins of fowls, with the feathers on. Instead of shoes, they have pieces of skin tied on their feet. They are a very hardy people, and seldom wear their garment when they are stirring about; but were quite naked from head to foot when he saw them, which was at a time when the hills were covered with snow. They have no hair on their bodies or faces, nor any thing to cover their private parts; only some of the women had a piece of skin before them. The garments of both sexes are the same, except that the women had bracelets of shells about their necks. The men are of a larger size than the women, and their faces more full. The speech of the men is very harsh, and when they talk there is a rattling in their throat; but that of the women is shriller and lower. They live upon what they get, and
- e they are under no government; neither have they the least sign of religion. The men have always bows that are ready strung, which are about an ell long, and their arrows about eighteen inches; these are headed at one end with flint, and at the other there are two feathers tied on with the twisted gut of a beast. They have very large mungrel dogs of several colours, besides which they have no domestic animal.
- f

- M. BOUGUER, who went into *South America* to measure a degree of the earth, says that the *Americans* of *Peru*, who live in woods, form a kind of little republic, under the direction of a *Spanish* priest, and have a governor with his officers, of their own nation. They want vivacity, and are addicted to idleness; but they live in great harmony with each other, without the least distrust. The doors of their huts are always open, though they have cotton, calabashes, and a sort of aloes of which they make thread, besides a few commodities they trade with. They go almost naked, and paint their bodies and faces with red stripes. They are of all trades; for they build their own houses, make their own canoes, and weave their own cloth. They live upon the fruits of the earth, hunting and fishing;
- g



by which they always get sufficient to maintain their families. There are other *Peruvians* <sup>a</sup> called warriors, who have not yet been brought under subjection ; but they seem to have the same manners and customs. The colour of these *Americans* is that of red copper, which is more or less dark in proportion to their being more or less exposed to the weather. They have no beard, nor hair on their breasts, nor any other part of their bodies ; but have long coarse, straight black hair on their heads.

THE *Americans* near *Virginia*, according to those who have lived among them, are of a middle stature, and are straight and well-proportioned, with the finest limbs in the world ; nor is there a dwarf or misshapen person among them. Their colour is chestnut or rather of red copper, rendered darker by their greasing themselves, and being exposed to the weather. They have black eyes, and their hair is coal black, which the men cut into several shapes ; <sup>b</sup> both men and women always grease it, which causes it to shine. The better sort wear a sort of coronet on their heads, four or five inches broad, and open at top. It is composed of a sort of beads ; but sometimes they wear a wreath of dyed furs ; they have also bracelets on their necks and arms ; but the common people go bare-headed, only they stick large shining feathers in their hair. Their cloaths are a large mantle, carelessly wrapped round their bodies, and sometimes girt close with a girdle. The common sort only tie a string round their middles, and pass a piece of cloth or skin between their thighs, which they turn over the string at each end. Their shoes, when they wear any, are made of an untanned piece of buck-skin. The dress of the women differs little from that of the men, only the better sort have more beads and bracelets. They commonly go naked as far as their <sup>c</sup> navel downwards, and upwards to the middle of the thigh ; their breasts are round and small, and never hang down, as those of the black women do on the coasts of *Guinea*. Instead of keeping their children warm, they dip them over head and ears in cold water, and afterwards tie them to a board, covered with somewhat that is soft ; and there is a hole therein, through which they evacuate their excrements. They keep them several months in this posture, till the limbs begin to grow strong ; when they suffer the child to crawl about as well as it can. The child is generally laid flat on its back ; but sometimes they hang it up by a string.

LAWSON informs us, that the *Americans* of *North Carolina* are a well shaped clean-made people, of different statures like the *Europeans* ; but most of them are rather tall than <sup>d</sup> otherwise. They are very straight, and their limbs are exceedingly well made ; particularly their legs and feet, which are the handsomest in the world. Their eyes are black or of a dark hazel, and the white is marbled with red streaks. Their colour is tawny, which becomes so by daubing themselves with bears grease, for otherwise it is reddish. They are never bald, which may perhaps be owing to their greasing their hair. When they intend to be fine, they mix red paint with the bears grease, which they sell at a great price to one another. He never saw a dwarf among them, nor but one that was hump-backed ; but the teeth of both sexes are yellow, which is owing to their smoking tobacco. They have no beard, nor hair under their armpits, nor yet on any other part of their bodies. They let their nails grow very long, and laugh at the *Europeans* for paring theirs. The <sup>e</sup> bark they make their huts with, is generally that of the cypress-tree, or red or white cedar. They set poles in the ground as thick as the small of a man's leg, with the bark stripped off, about two yards asunder, in a circular form, for their huts are always round ; then they bring the tops together, and bind them with the barks of trees. The women's dress in very severe weather is a hairy watch-coat like a plaid to keep out the cold ; but at other times they have only an apron half a yard deep. The dress of the men is the same as in *Virginia*, and the management of the children is the same.

ON the isthmus of *Darien* the *Americans* are generally between five and six feet high, according to *Waser* ; and they are straight, clean limbed, big boned, full breasted, and well shaped. They are very nimble and active ; but the women are short and thick, and not <sup>f</sup> so lively as the men ; however, those that are young are very plump, well shaped, and have a brisk eye ; but when they grow old they are very ordinary, and have hanging breasts. Both sexes are round visaged, with short bottle noses, and large sparkling eyes. Their teeth are white and even, their lips are thin, and their mouth moderately large ; but in general their features are pretty handsome. Both sexes have straight, long, black, lank, coarse, and strong hair, which generally hangs down to the middle of the back, only the women tie theirs together just behind the head. Their natural complexion is a copper colour, or orange tawny, and the eye-brows are naturally as black as jet. They anoint themselves all over with oil, to render their skins smooth, sleek, and supple ; and it preserves their skin from being parched, as it otherwise would be in this hot climate. Both men <sup>g</sup> and women paint their bodies, and sometimes sucking children, with the figures of men, beasts, birds, trees, and the like. The women are the painters, and their chief colours are red, yellow, and blue, which are very bright. Some print these figures in the skin after



- a after they are drawn, by pricking them with a sharp thorn till the blood gushes out ; then they rub in the colour they design, after which it never comes out. They wear no clothes, the women only have a clout, that is tied before and behind by a string round their middles ; sometimes these hang down before as far as their knees, if they can get one large enough. The men go quite naked, without so much as a clout ; but they have ornaments on their faces, which is a piece of silver plate hanging over their mouths ; but the principal men have theirs of gold. It is in the shape of a half moon, that pinches the bridle of the nose with its points. The women have rings in the gristles of their noses, which hang over their mouths ; but these in both sexes are chiefly worn on some public occasions ; and they always take them off at meals. Besides these, the men, women, and
- b children, wear strings or chains of teeth, shells, beads, and the like, which hang down from the neck upon the breast. She must be a poor woman who has not fifteen or twenty pounds weight of these strings ; but they do not wear them when they are in their houses. The women take care of the plantations, and the men build the houses or huts, and go a hunting ; both play their parts with great alacrity. When a woman is brought to bed, another takes her and her child on her back down to the river, and washes them therein. The child for the first month is tied upon a board, as in *Virginia* and *Carolina*. The men have several wives, which are generally disposed in different parts, so that they always find one when they go a hunting.

- THE *Californians* are the least known to the *Europeans* of any in this part of the world.
- c Those of *Puerto Seguro* in that country, who were seen by the captains *Rogers* and *Cook*, had long black hair, and dark skins, made so by dawbing them with grease ; for according to some accounts they would otherwise be reddish. The men go quite naked, only they wrap or tie round their heads a piece of linen, or a kind of network. They wear about their necks, and sometimes on their hands by way of ornament, various figures in mother-of-pearl, intermixed with small round fruits like beads. Their weapons are bows and arrows, or javelins, which they carry always in their hands for hunting, or defending themselves against their enemies ; for wars are frequent among them. The dress of the women is somewhat more modest than that of the men, for they wear from the waist to the knee, a sort of apron made with reeds plaited like mats. They cover their shoulders
- d with skins of beasts, and have network on their heads like the men. They have also necklaces of mother-of-pearl, intermixed with stones or kernels of fruit and sea-shells, which hang down to their waist. They are a very lively people, and are fond of joking ; but they do not seem to have any form of government, nor yet do they shew any sign of religion.

- If we compare this description of the *Americans* with what is recorded of some late discoveries made by the *Russians*, in regard to the inhabitants of *Kamtshatka* and the neighbouring parts, we shall have good reason to believe that *America* was first peopled from the north-east of *Asia* : for though it now seems to be certain, that there is an open sea between the two continents, yet it is towards the north so narrow, that it may be easily
- e passed in the canoes or boats made use of by the people on both sides, especially the straits between the *Tchukotschi-nofs*, or cape, and the continent of *America* ; and if any credit can be given to the people who live upon that cape, there is an island lies opposite to, and within sight of the cape, to which they may, in half a day, pass over in their boats ; and from that island may be seen in a clear day, a large continent to the eastward which is full of people, who, in every particular, resemble the *Tchukotschi* themselves ; but this continent, they say, is a much better country than their own, as it has large forests of fir, pine, larch, and cedar-trees, and great rivers running from the east, and falling into the sea upon the west side of it.

Great probability of *America* being first peopled from the north east of *Asia*.

- It is therefore highly probable, that, many ages since, some people have passed over
- f from the north-east of *Asia* to the opposite coast of *America*, and finding that country more fruitful and better provided with game of all sorts than their own, it is natural to suppose that they would settle there ; for hunting and fishing were the only methods they had been accustomed to, of procuring themselves either food or raiment : even to this day the people upon the north-east coast of *Asia* never think of sowing or reaping ; and the character of being provident no ways belongs to any of the natives we know of in *America*. The north-west coast of *America* having been thus provided with a few inhabitants, it is also natural to suppose, that their posterity would from thence, by degrees, spread to the southward, and at last, over the whole continent of *America*. This conjecture is strongly confirmed by two very remarkable circumstances : we know, as above observed, that the natives of *America* have no beards : the case is the very same with regard to all the natives
- g inhabiting the north-east continent of *Asia*. Another circumstance is the total ignorance of that destructive as well as useful metal called iron or steel. The natives of *America* had found out the method of refining gold and silver, and of making several little trinkets of those



those metals ; but they knew nothing of iron and steel when the *Europeans* came first among them, nor had they any weapons or instruments of that metal : the *Russians* tell us the same of the *Kamtschadales*, and the neighbouring nations upon the north-east coast of *Asia*. They might, perhaps, have seen some iron or steel-arms, or instruments among the *Japoneſe*, who happened to be shipwrecked upon their coasts, but they knew nothing of the metal itself, until the *Russians* came amongst them ; and for this reason, the arrows, spears, and other weapons, they made use of in their wars, were pointed only with sharp flints, or fish bones.

THESE, we know, were the only sort of arms the *Americans* had, when the *Spaniards* first arrived in their country ; and as these two people resemble one another originally in their arms, so they likewise still resemble one another in their conduct in war. The north-eastern *Asiatics* carry on their wars more by stratagem than bravery, as they never will openly attack their enemies, unless forced to it by necessity ; and the male prisoners they take, especially if they are men of consequence, are treated with all manner of barbarity, such as burning, hewing them to pieces, tearing their bowels out whilst alive, and hanging them up by their feet till they expire ; but it is not said, that scalping has as yet been introduced among them, probably, because they are not yet generally provided with sharp knives ; nor was this cruel custom introduced among the *Americans*, till the *Europeans* provided them with instruments proper for the purpose, and promised them a reward for every scalp ; but with regard to their male prisoners, they are still equally cruel with those we may now call their ancestors of *Asia*, and carry on all their wars more by stratagem, ambuscade, or surprize, than by bravery.

WITH regard to the form of government among the people in the north-eastern parts of *Asia*, we are told, that before the *Russian* conquest, they lived in perfect freedom, having no chief, being subject to no law, nor paying any taxes ; the old men, or those who were remarkable for their bravery, bearing the principal authority in their villages, though none had any right to command or inflict punishment ; and they were so ignorant of numbers, that none could count above one hundred, very few above twenty, and even that, not without the help of their toes and fingers. Are not the people in most parts of *America* still in the very same situation, both with respect to government and numbers ? But it would be endless to take notice of every correspondence that may be observed in the manners and condition of these two people ; and if we consider that for so many ages, there has never been any intercourse between the ancestors in *Asia* and their posterity in *America*, we must be surprized to find that they still agree in so many particulars ; especially, if at the same time we consider the vast difference that is known to be between the climate and the fertility of the two countries, and the many ages that must have passed over, before a few stragglers from the northernmost parts of *Asia* could have filled the whole continent and islands of *America* so full of people, as they were found to be when the *Spaniards* first arrived there.

BUT that this could not require a very great number of ages must be granted, if we suppose, that they had not for ages any wars among themselves, nor any intoxicating liquors ; both of which are highly probable : they could have no wars, because they had room enough to extend themselves on all sides, without driving others out of the parts they were possessed of ; and, by the dark accounts we have of the empires of *Mexico* and *Peru*, it seems that they extended themselves faster, and in greater numbers, towards the south, and along the western coasts of *America*, than they ever did towards the east of that continent ; which is a further proof that the western coasts of *America* were the first that were peopled. Then, as to intoxicating liquors, even to this day, they know nothing of such liquors in those parts of *America* which have not had the misfortune to be visited by any *Europeans*, as seems probable from the account of captain *Bering's* voyage from *Kamtschatka* to the western coast of *America* ; for at *Schumagin's* islands, upon that coast, his people presented a glass of brandy to an *Indian* who came on board their boat, which he tasted, but immediately spit it out again, and was so much affronted, that he would not accept of any of the presents they offered him ; which is a proof that they had never before tasted any such liquors.

FROM all which, we have reason to conclude, that the natives of *America* were all, without exception, originally descended from the people of the north-eastern coast of *Asia* ; for even as to the *Eskimaux*, (if they were not of a *Welch* original, as it is very probable they are not,) we know so little of them, that we cannot positively say, whether or no they had any beards, or any knowledge of iron, when we first began to visit that coast : if they had, it is probable they came originally from *Norway*, or *Iceland*, to *Greenland*, and from thence to *Labrador*, after the rest of *America* had been peopled, which prevented their spreading themselves to the southward ; and this, consequently, is an argument for, rather than against what has been said, with respect to the origin of the rest of the people of *America*.

WHAT the products and other particulars are of *America*, will appear by the following account.



## C H A P. II.

## Of South-America.

**I**N this division of *America*, we shall begin with the *Terra-Firma*, and proceed in order to the other countries contained in it.

**TERRA-FIRMA**, otherwise called *Castilla del Oro*, is bounded by the *North Sea*, (part of the *Atlantic-Ocean*) on the north; by the same sea and *Guiana* on the east; by the country of the *Amazons* and *Peru* on the south; and by the *Pacific-Ocean* and *Veragua* on the west. It lies between 62 and 83 deg. of western longitude, and between the equator and 12 deg. of north latitude, being upwards of 1200 miles in length from east to west, and 800 miles in breadth from north to south. *Terra-Firma-Proprie*, which is more known by the name of *Darien*, lies between 8 and 10 deg. of north latitude, and between 78 and 83 deg. of west longitude, in the form of a crescent, about that spacious bay of *Panama*; and is 300 miles in length, and 60 in breadth from the *North* to the *South Sea*; this being the isthmus which joins *North* and *South-America*. The north division contains the provinces of, 1. *Terra-Firma-Proprie*, or *Darien*; the chief towns, *Porto-Bello* and *Panama*. 2. *Carthagena*; 3. *St. Martha*; 4. *Rio de la Hacha*; 5. *Venezuela*; 6. *Comana*; the chief towns of which are of the same name: and, 7. *New Andalusia*, or *Paria*; the chief town *St. Thomas*. The south division contains the provinces of 1. *New Granada*, the chief town *Santa Fe de Bogota*; 2. *Popayan*, the chief town of the same name.

**THE** town of *St. Philip de Porto-Bello* stands in 9 deg. 34 min. 35. sec. north latitude, and in the longitude of 296 deg. 41 min. from the *Pico of Teneriffe*. This harbour was discovered on the 2d of *November* 1502, by *Christopher Columbus*, who was so charmed with its extent, depth, and security, that he gave it the name of *Porto-Bello*, or the *Fine-Harbour*. The town stands near the sea, on the declivity of a mountain, which surrounds the whole harbour, and consists of one principal street, extending along the strand, with others smaller crossing it, and running from the declivity of the mountain to the shore, together with some lanes, in the same direction with the principal street, where the ground admits of it. Here are two large squares; one opposite to the custom-house, which is a structure of stone, contiguous to the quay; the other faces the great church, which is also of stone, large, and decently ornamented, considering the smallness of the place: most of the houses are built of wood. In some, the first story is of stone, and the remainder of wood. They are about 133 in number, but most of them large and spacious. The town is under the jurisdiction of a governor, with the title of lieutenant-general, as being such under the president of *Panama*; and the term of his post is without any specified limitation. He is always a gentleman of the army, having under him the commandants of the forts that defend the harbour, and whose employments are for life.

**AT** the east end of the town, which is the road to *Panama*, is a quarter called *Guinea*, being the place where all the negroes of both sexes, whether slaves or free, have their habitations. This quarter is very much crowded when the galleons are here, most of the inhabitants of the town quitting intirely their houses for the advantage of letting them, while others content themselves with a small part, in order to make money of the rest. The mulattoes, and other poor families, also remove either to *Guinea*, or to cottages already erected near it, or built on this occasion. Great numbers of artificers from *Panama* likewise, who flock to *Porto-Bello* to work at their respective callings, lodge in this quarter for cheapness. Towards the sea, in a large tract between the town and *Gloria Castle*, barracks are also erected, and principally filled with the ships crews; who keep stalls of sweetmeats, and other kinds of eatables brought from *Spain*; but at the conclusion of the fair, the ships put to sea, and all these buildings are taken down, and the town returns to its former tranquillity and emptiness.

**THE** name of this port indicates its being commodious for all sorts of ships or vessels, whether great or small; and, though its entrance is very wide, it is well defended by fort *St. Philip de todo Fierro*. It stands on the north point of the entrance, which is about six hundred toises broad, that is, a little less than the fourth part of a league; and the south-side, being full of rises of rocks, extending to some distance from the shore, a ship is obliged to stand to the north, though the deepest part of the channel is in the middle of the entrance, and thus continues in a straight direction, having nine, ten, or fifteen fathom water, and a bottom of clayey mud, mixed with chalk and sand. On the south-side of the harbour, and opposite to the anchoring-place, is a large castle, called *St. Jago de la*



*Gloria*, to the east of which, at the distance of about an hundred toises, begins the town, a having before it a point of land projecting into the harbour. On this point stood a small fort called *St. Jerom*, within ten toises of the houses. All these were demolished by admiral *Vernon*, who, in 1739, with six ships only, made himself master of this port. The *Spaniards* say it was unprovided with every thing, the greatest part of the artillery, especially that of the castle *de todo Fierro*, or *Iron-Castle*, being dismounted for want of carriages, part of the few military stores unserviceable, and the garrison short of its complement.

NORTH-EAST of the town is the mouth of a river called *Cascajal*, which affords no fresh water within a quarter of a league or upwards from its mouth; and it is not uncommon to see in it caymanes or alligators. b

AMONG the mountains which surround the whole harbour of *Porto-Bello*, one is particularly remarkable by its superior loftiness, as if designed to be the barometer of the country, by foretelling every change of weather. This mountain, distinguished by the name of *Capiro*, stands at the utmost extremity of the harbour, in the road to *Panama*. Its top is always covered with clouds of a density and darkness seldom seen in those of this atmosphere. When these clouds thicken, increase their blackness, and sink below their usual station, it is a sure sign of a tempest; while, on the other hand, their clearness and ascent as certainly indicate the approach of fair weather. It must, however, be remembered, that these changes are very frequent, and very subitaneous. It is also seldom that the summit is ever observed clear from clouds, and when this happens, it is only, as it were, for an instant. c

THE jurisdiction of the lieutenant-general-governor of *Porto-Bello*, is limited to the town and the forts; the neighbouring country, over which it might be extended, being full of mountains covered with impenetrable forests, except a few vallies, in which are thinly scattered some farms, the nature of the country not admitting of any farther improvements.

THE inclemency of the climate of *Porto-Bello* is sufficiently known: not only strangers who come thither are affected by it, but even the natives themselves suffer in various manners; it destroys the vigour of nature, and often untimely cuts the thread of life. It is a current opinion that formerly, and even not above thirty years since, parturition was here d so dangerous, that it was seldom any woman did not die in childbed. Another opinion equally strange is, that the animals from other climates, on their being brought to *Porto-Bello*, cease to procreate, and in a short time lose their flesh, though they do not want plenty of good pasture. The heat is excessive, being augmented by the situation of the town, which is surrounded with high mountains, without any interval for the winds, whereby it might be refreshed; and the copious exhalations, which form large clouds, and precipitate in violent torrents of rain, are accompanied with such tempests of thunder and lightning, as must daunt even the most resolute; this dreadful noise being prolonged by repercussions from the caverns of the mountains, like the explosion of cannon, the rumbling of which is heard for a minute after. To this also may be added, the howlings e and shrieks of the multitudes of monkeys of all kinds which live in the forests of the mountains, and which are never louder than when a man of war fires the morning and evening gun, though they are so much used to it.

FRESH water pours down in streams from the mountains, some running without the town, and others crossing it. These waters are very light and digestive; qualities, which in other countries would be very valuable, but are here pernicious: for, doubtless, this water is too fine and active for the stomachs of the inhabitants, and thus produces dysenteries, the last stage of all other distempers, and which the patient very seldom survives. However, those rivulets, formed into reservoirs, serve the purposes of bathing, which is here found to be very conducive to health. f

As the forests almost border on the houses of the town, tygers often make incursions into the streets during the night, carrying off fowls, dogs, and other domestic creatures; and sometimes, even boys have fallen a prey to them. Besides the snares usually laid for them, the negroes and mulattoes, who fell wood in the forests of the mountains, are very dexterous in encountering them, and some, even on account of a slender reward, seek them in their retreats.

AMONG the great variety of animals in this country, one of the most remarkable is, the perico-ligero, or nimble Peter, an ironical name given it on account of its extreme sluggishness and sloth. It resembles a middling monkey in shape, but of a wretched appearance, the skin of it being of a greyish brown, and all over corrugated, and the legs g and feet without any hair. He is so lumpish as not to stand in need of either chain or hutch, for he never stirs till compelled by hunger; and shews no manner of apprehension



- a either of men or wild beasts. When he moves, every effort is attended with such a plaintive, and at the same time so disagreeable a cry, as at once produces pity and disgust; and this even in the slightest motion of the head, legs, or feet, proceeding, probably, from a general contraction of the muscles and nerves of his body, which puts him to an extreme pain when he endeavours to move them. In this disagreeable cry consists his whole defence; for, it being natural to him to fly at the first hostile approach of any beast, he makes at every motion such howlings as are even insupportable to his pursuer, who soon quits him, and even flies beyond the hearing of his horrid noise. Nor is it only during the time he is in motion that he makes these cries; he repeats them while he rests himself, continuing a long time motionless, before he takes another march. The food of
- b this creature is generally wild fruits, and when he can find none on the ground, he looks out for a tree well loaded, which, with a great deal of pains, he climbs; and in order to save himself such another toilsome ascent, plucks off all the fruit, throwing them on the ground; and, to avoid the pain of descending the tree, forms himself into a ball, and drops from the branches. At the foot of this tree he continues till all the fruits are consumed, never stirring till hunger forces him to seek again for food.

Serpents are here numerous, and deadly; and toads innumerable, swarming not only in the damp and marshy places, as in other countries, but even in the streets, courts of houses, and all open places in general. They generally measure about six inches in length, and nothing can be imagined more dismal than their croakings during the night,

c in all parts of the town, woods, and caverns of the mountains.

THE town of *Porto-Bello*, which is thinly inhabited by reason of its noxious air, the scarcity of provisions, and the barrenness of its soil, becomes, at the time of the galleons, one of the most populous towns in all *South-America*. He who hath seen this town quite empty, and every place wearing a melancholy aspect, must be filled with astonishment at the sudden change to see the bustling multitudes, every house crowded, the squares and streets incumbered with bales of merchandize, and chests of gold and silver; the harbour full of ships and vessels, some bringing the goods of *Peru*, as cacao, jesuit's bark, vicuna wool, and bezoar-stones; others coming from *Carthagena*, loaded with provisions; and thus a spot, at all other times detested for its deleterious qualities, becomes the staple of the riches of the old and new world. and the scene of one of the most considerable branches of commerce in the whole world.

d

FORMERLY this fair was limited to no particular time; but as a long stay in such a sickly place, extremely affected the health of the traders, his catholic majesty transmitted an order, that the fair should not last above forty days, and that if, in this time, the merchants could not agree in their rates, those of *Spain* should be allowed to carry their goods up the country to *Peru*; and accordingly the commodore of the galleons has orders to re-embark them, and return to *Carthagena*; but otherwise by virtue of a compact between the merchants of both kingdoms, and ratified by the king, no *Spanish* trader is to send his goods, on his own account, beyond *Porto-Bello*: and, on the contrary, those of the *English* were formerly permitted to send annually a ship to this fair, which turned to a great account, and whilst the assiento of the negroes subsisted either with the *English* or *French*, one of their principal factories was settled at *Porto-Bello*.

e

PANAMA is built on the other side of the isthmus of the same name, the coast of which is washed by the *South-Sea*. Its latitude is 8 degrees 57 minutes 48 seconds  $\frac{1}{2}$  north, but its longitude is uncertain. In 1521, the emperor *Charles V.* constituted it a city, with the proper privileges. In 1670, it had the misfortune to be sacked and burnt by *John Morgan*, an *English* adventurer, who had before taken *Porto-Bello* and *Maraycabo*. This misfortune rendering it absolutely necessary to rebuild the city, it was removed to its present situation, which is about a league and a half from the former, and much more convenient.

f It has a wall of freestone, and is defended by a large garrison of regulars, from whence detachments are sent to do duty at *Darien*, *Porto-Bello*, and *Chagre*. The houses in general are of stone, and make a handsome appearance. The streets are straight and broad, and for the most part paved. In this city is a tribunal, or royal audience, in which the governor of *Panama* presides; and to this employment is annexed the captainship-general of *Terra-Firma*, generally conferred on an officer of distinction, though his common title is that of president of *Panama*. It has also a cathedral, and some religious houses. There are none here of such monstrous fortunes, as in some cities of *America*; yet it is not destitute of wealthy inhabitants, and all have a sufficiency; so that if it cannot be classed among opulent cities, it is certainly above poverty.

THE harbour of this city is formed, in its road, by the shelter of several islands. The ships here lie very safe, and their distance from the city is about three leagues. Both the road and whole coast abound in a great variety of excellent fish. At the bottom of the sea are a great number of pearls, and the oysters in which they are found are remarkably

g



ably delicious. This kind of fishery is of great advantage to the inhabitants of all the islands in this bay ; and there are few persons of substance near *Panama*, who do not employ all, or at least part of their slaves, in this fishery, the manner of which not being commonly known, it will not be improper to describe it here.

THE owners of the negroes employ the most proper persons for this fishery, which being performed at the bottom of the sea, they must be both expert swimmers, and capable of holding their breath a long time. These they send to the islands, where they have huts built for their lodgings, and boats which hold eight, ten, or twenty negroes, under the command of an officer. In these boats they go to such parts as are known to produce pearls, and where the depth of the water is not above ten, twelve, or fifteen fathom. Here they come to an anchor, and the negroes having a rope fastened round their bodies, and the other end to the side of the boat, they take with them a small weight to accelerate the sinking and plunge into the water. On reaching the bottom, they take up an oyster, which they put under the left arm ; the second they hold in their left hand, and the third in their right ; with these three oysters, and sometimes another in the mouth, they rise to breathe, and put them in a bag. When they have rested themselves a while, they dive a second time, and thus continue, till they have either compleated their task, or their strength fails them. Every one of these negro divers is obliged daily to deliver to his master a certain number of pearls ; so that when they have got a sufficient number of oysters in their bag, they begin to open them, and deliver the pearls to the officer, till they have made up the number due to their master ; and if the pearl be but formed it is sufficient, without any regard to its being small or faulty. The remainder, however large or beautiful, are the negro's own property, nor has the master the least claim to them, the slaves being allowed to sell them to whom they please, though the master generally purchases them at a very small price.

BESIDES the toil of this fishery, from the oysters strongly adhering to the rocks, they are also in no small danger from some kinds of fish, which either seize the negroes, or by striking on them, crush them by their weight against the bottom : so that these creatures seem to know that men are robbing them of the most valuable product of their element, and therefore make a vigorous attack upon their enemy. Every negro, to defend himself against these animals, carries with him a sharp knife, with which the fish being struck, immediately flies off. The officers keep a watchful eye on those voracious creatures, and, on discovering them, shake the ropes fastened to the negroes bodies, that they may be on their guard. Many, on the divers being in danger, have thrown themselves into the water, with the like weapon, and hastened down to their defence : but too often all their dexterity and precaution are not sufficient to protect the diver from being devoured by these fish, or losing one of his legs or arms by their bite. Several schemes have been practised to prevent such melancholy accidents ; but they have hitherto proved very ineffectual.

THE pearls of those fisheries are generally of a good water, and some very remarkable both in shape and size ; but as there is a difference in both these properties, so there is also in their difference and colour, some being highly valuable, and others as remarkably defective ; some of these pearls, though indeed but few, are sent to *Europe*, the greatest part being carried to *Lima*, where the demand for them is very great, being not only universally worn there by all persons of rank, but also sent from thence into the inland parts of *Peru*. There are forty-three islands, where the pearl-fishery is carried on ; some of them in the bay of *Panama*, some near the coast of that city, and others south of *Veraguas*.

FROM what has been said relating to the commerce of *Porto-Bello*, in the time of the galleons, an idea may be formed of that of *Panama* on the same occasion, this city being the first where the treasure from *Peru* is landed, and likewise the staple for goods brought up the river *Chagre*. Even during the absence of the armada, it is never without a great number of strangers, being the thoroughfare for all going to the ports of *Peru*, in the *South-sea*, as also for any coming from thence to *Spain* : to which must be added, the continual trade carried on by the *Peruvian* ships, and the coasting barks, which abundantly supply the city with all necessaries. The climate here, though hot, is by far more healthful than at *Porto-bello*, and the inhabitants in general may be said to live very comfortably.

Carthagena. THE city of *Carthagena* stands in 10 degrees, 25 minutes, 48 seconds ; north latitude, and in the longitude of 301 degrees, 19 minutes, 36 seconds from the meridian of *Pico Teneriffe*. Its advantageous situation, the extent and security of its bay, and the great share it attained of the commerce of that southern continent, soon caused it to be erected into an episcopal see. The same circumstances contributed to its preservation and increase, as the most esteemed settlement and staple of the *Spaniards* ; but at the same time they also drew on it the hostility of foreigners, who, thirsting after its riches, or induced by the im-

portance



a portance of the place itself, have several times invaded, taken, and plundered it.

This city is situated on a sandy island, which forming a narrow passage on the south-west, opens a communication with that part called *Tierra Bomba*, as far as *Bocha Chica*. The neck of land which now joins them, was formerly the entrance of the bay; but having been closed up by orders from *Madrid*, *Bocha Chica* became the only entrance; and this city has been filled up since the last attempt of the *English* in 1741, who, having made themselves masters of the forts which defended it, entered the bay with an intent of taking the city; but they miscarried in their attempt, and retired with loss. This event caused orders to be dispatched for opening the old entrance, by which all ships now enter the bay. On the north side the land is so narrow, that before the wall was begun the distance from sea to sea was only thirty-five toises; but afterwards enlarging, another island was formed on this side, and the whole city is now, excepting these two places which are very narrow, entirely surrounded by the sea. Eastwards it communicates by means of a wooden bridge with a large suburb called *Xexemani*, built on another island, which has also a communication with the continent by means of another wooden bridge. The fortifications both of the city and suburb are constructed in the modern manner, and lined with free-stone. The garrison in time of peace consists of ten companies of regulars, each containing, officers included, seventy-seven men, besides several companies of militia.

On the *Xexemani* side, at a small distance from that suburb, on a hill, is a fort called c *St. Lorenzo*, commanding both the city and suburb, and having an enchanting prospect, extending over the country and coast to an immense distance. The city and suburbs are well laid out, the streets being straight, broad, uniform, and well paved. The houses are built of stone, except a few of brick; but consist chiefly of only one story above the ground-floor; the apartments well contrived. The churches and convents are of a proper architecture, and sufficiently capacious; so that, in the whole, *Carthagena*, with its suburbs, is equal to a city of the third rank in *Europe*, and is well peopled, though most of its inhabitants are descended from the *Indian* tribes: it is not the most opulent in this country, for besides the pillages it has suffered, no mines are worked here, and most of the money seen in it is sent from *Santa Fe*, and *Quito*, to pay the salaries of the governor, d and other civil and military officers, and the wages of the garrison; and even this makes no long stay here. It is not however unfrequent to find persons who have acquired handsome fortunes by commerce, whose houses are splendidly furnished, and who live in every respect agreeable to their wealth. The governor resides in the city, which, till the year 1739, was independent of the military government. In civil affairs an appeal lies to the audience of *Santa Fe*, and a viceroy of *Santa Fe* being that year created, under the title of viceroy of *New Granada*, the government of *Carthagena* became subject to him also in military affairs. The jurisdiction of the government reaches eastward to the great river e *de la Magdalena*, and along it southward, till, winding away, it borders on the province of *Antioquia*; from thence it stretches westward to the river *Darien*; and from thence northward to the ocean, all along the coasts between the mouths of these two rivers. The extent of this government from east to west is generally computed at fifty-three leagues, and from south to north eighty-five. In this space are several fruitful vallies, called by the natives *Sacannaks*, and in them many settlements large and small, of *Europeans*, *Spanish Creoles*, and *Indians*. The bay of *Carthagena* is the first place in *America* at which the galleons are allowed to touch; and thus it enjoys the first fruits of commerce, by the public sales made there. These sales, though not accompanied with the formalities observed at *Porto-Bello* fair, are very considerable. The traders of the inland provinces of *Santa Fe*, *Popayan*, and *Quito*, lay out not only their own stock, but also the monies intrusted to them by commissions, for several sorts of goods, and those species of provisions which f are most wanted in their respective countries. The two provinces of *Santa Fe* and *Popayan* have no other way of supplying themselves with the latter, than from *Carthagena*. Their traders bring gold and silver in specie, ingots, and dust, and also emeralds: as besides the silver mines worked at *Santa Fe*, and which daily increase by fresh discoveries, there are others which yield the finest emeralds; but the value of these gems being now fallen in *Europe*, and particularly in *Spain*, the trade of them, formerly so considerable, is now greatly lessened, and consequently the reward for finding them. All these mines produce great quantities of gold, which is carried to *Choco*, and there pays one fifth to the king, at an office erected for that purpose.

The climate of *Carthagena* is excessive hot, yet the inhabitants enjoy a good state of g health, and generally live to a great age. It will be here unnecessary to describe the other divisions of *Terra-Firma*, as being chiefly inland countries, and scarce ever objects of any of our expeditions in time of war with the *Spaniards*.

PERU, next in order, formerly a powerful empire, is situated between 60 and 81 de- Peru.  
MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI. 4 G grees



of west longitude, and between the Equator and 25 degrees of south latitude, being near two thousand miles in length from north to south, and from two hundred to five hundred broad; bounded by *Popayan* on the north, by the mountains of *Andes*, or *Cordilleras*, which separate it from the country of the *Amazons* and *Paraguay*, on the east; by *Chili* and *La Plata* on the south; and by the *Pacific Ocean*, or *South Sea*, on the west. It is divided into three parts, the north, middle, and south: the north division comprehends the province of *Quito*, the chief towns *Quito* and *Payta*; the middle division that of *Lima*, or *Los Reyes*; the chief towns *Lima*, *Cusco*, and *Callao*; and the south division that of *Les Charcas*; the chief towns *Potosi* and *Porco*.

THE coast of *Peru*, which extends upwards of 1500 miles along the *Pacific Ocean*, is a high bold shore. About thirty miles within land is a chain of mountains, called the *Sierras*; and beyond these, about eighty miles, are prodigious high mountains, called the *Cordilleras des Andes*, which, with the *Sierras*, run the whole length of *South America*, upwards of 3000 miles. They are always covered with snow, and the air on them is too pure and subtle for animals to breathe in; nor are there any beasts upon them, wild or tame. It never rains in that part of the country which lies near the sea-coast, unless within three or four degrees of the equator; but the country is watered by the rivers which fall from the *Andes* into the *South-Sea*: these they turn into the fields and gardens, and have their vintage and harvest at what time of the year they please, this being the only country between the tropics that affords wine. The wind blows continually from the south, or south-west at sea, near the coast. The weather is bright, when the sun is in the northern signs; and hazy when south of the equator, though no rain falls. The sandy plains near the sea-shore are perfectly barren, except some few vallies. The *Sierras* are also barren hills, but the vallies beneath are fruitful, and produce almost all manner of grain and fruits. This part of the country is best inhabited, being the most temperate, for the sandy plains near the sea are excessive hot.

THE *Peruvian* sheep, called *pacos*, or *huancu*, are of the bigness of a stag, and resemble a camel. The body is covered with a coarse kind of wool; they are very tractable, and were formerly the only beasts of burden among the *Peruvians*: the flesh is very good meat, and esteemed as innocent as chickens. The *vicuna*, to which the *Spaniards* give the name of the *Indian* goat, something resembles that animal. The bezoar-stone is found in it, and is famed for expelling poisons and performing many cures. Their deer are much smaller than ours, their wild beasts not many, and those not so fierce and dangerous as in this continent. The cattle imported from *Europe* are vastly encreased, and many of them run wild and are hunted like other game. They had no tame fowl but the *nuana*, mostly resembling the duck, but much larger. Among their forest trees, the most valuable is the *quinquina*, or *jesuits-bark*, which grows in the province of *Quito*: it is about the size of a cherry-tree, the leaves round and indented; and bears a long reddish flower, from whence arises a pod with a kernel like an almond. The tree that yields this bark grows also on the mountains of *Potosi*: neither the flower nor fruit have the same virtue. They have now plenty of *European* corn and wine; bread is likewise made of the *cassavi-root*, as in other parts of *America*. Balsam of *Peru* proceeds from the trunk and branches of a little tree; and the country besides yields storax, guaiacum, and several other gums and drugs.

GOLD is found in every province of *Peru*, washed down from the mountains; and there are plenty of silver mines, of which the richest are those of *Potosi*, discovered in 1545: it is a solid rock, and the ore so hard that they break it with hammers, and it splits as if it were flint. The quicksilver mines near *Lima* were not discovered till 1567, and the *Spaniards* did not begin to refine their silver with mercury at *Potosi* till 1571; whereby they extracted a great deal more silver from the ore, than they could do before by fire.

Lima.

THE city of *Lima*, the capital of *Peru*, is situated in the spacious and delightful valley of *Rimac*, in the latitude of 12 degrees, 2 minutes, 31 seconds south; and longitude from the meridian of *Teneriffe*, 299 degrees, 27 minutes,  $7\frac{2}{3}$  seconds. This situation is one of the most advantageous that can be imagined; for, being in the center of that spacious valley, it commands the whole without any difficulty. Northward, though at a considerable distance, is the *Cordillera*, or chain of the *Andes*, from whence some hills project into the valley. A river, which is of the same name, washes the walls of *Lima*, and has a very elegant and spacious stone bridge built over it. *Lima* now affords but a faint idea of its former glory, magnificence, opulence, and other particulars which rendered it so famous in the world. The tremendous earthquake, of the twenty-eighth of *October*, 1746, leaves still room, instead of noble objects, for introducing the most melancholy and shocking scenes of ruined palaces, churches, towers, and other stately works of art. Were it not for this dreadful circumstance, to which *Lima* is subject, it would be one of the most desirable places of abode in the world: but unhappily, the interval between the earthquakes

felt



- a felt here, is never of a length sufficient to obliterate the remembrance of them. However, though frequent and sudden, they have their presages, one of the principal of which is a rumbling noise in the bowels of the earth, about a minute before the shocks are felt, and this noise does not continue in the place where it was first produced, but seems to pervade all the adjacent subterraneous parts. This is followed by dismal howlings of the dogs, which seem to have the first perception of the approaching danger. The beasts of burthen passing the streets stop, and, by a natural instinct, spread open their legs, the better to secure themselves from falling. On these portents, the terrified inhabitants fly from their houses into the streets with such precipitation, that if it happens in the night, they appear quite naked: fear and the urgency of the danger banish at once all sense of decency; and in a short time the whole city exhibits one dreadful scene of consternation and horror. Nor does this end with the shock, none venturing to return to their houses, through fear of a repetition, which frequently demolishes those buildings which had been weakened by the first.

THE frequent earthquakes to which *South America*, particularly *Lima* and all the neighbouring country, is subject, opens a field for inquiry concerning their causes. Many hypotheses have been formed by philosophers; but the immediate cause of earthquakes, with the greatest appearance of truth, is a subterraneous explosion; and the cause of this subterraneous explosion is a quantity of water suddenly breaking in upon a subterraneous fire, by which a vapour is instantly produced, the quantity and elastic force of which are equal to all the phenomena of earthquakes.

Cause of earthquakes.

THE city of *Lima* could not have attained to all its splendor, if, besides being the capital of *Peru*, it had not also been the staple of the kingdom. But as it is the residence of the government and chief tribunals, so it is also the common factory for commerce of every kind, and the center of the products and manufactures of the other provinces, together with those of *Europe*, brought over in the galleons or register ships; and from hence they are distributed through the vast extent of these kingdoms, whose wants are supplied from *Lima*, as their common mother. All the wealth of the southern provinces being brought to *Lima*, is there embarked on board the fleet, which at the time of the galleons, sails from *Callao* to *Panama*. The proprietors of the treasure commit it to the merchants of *Lima*, who traffic at the fair with this and their own stock. The same fleet returns to the harbour of *Paita*, where the *European* merchandizes of value, purchased at *Porto-Bello* fair, are landed, in order to avoid the delay of sailing to *Callao*, and sent by land to *Lima* on droves of mules; but those of less value are carried thither by the same ships.

THE viceroyalty of *Peru* extends over those vast countries included in the jurisdiction of the audiences of *Lima*, *Los Charcas*, and *Cbili*; and in these are comprehended the governments of *Santa Cruz*, *de la Sierra*, *Paraguay*, *Tucuman*, and *Buenos-Ayres*. Though these three provinces, and the kingdom of *Cbili*, have particular governors invested with all the authority agreeable to such a character, and as such are absolute in political, civil, and military affairs, yet in some cases they are subordinate to the viceroy; for instance, on the death of any inferior governor, the vacancy is supplied by him.

THE kingdom of *Cbili* next presents itself. It extends from the frontiers of *Peru* to the straits of *Magellan*, the distance being 530 leagues. Those two kingdoms are separated by the desert of *Atacamo*, which extends eighty leagues between the provinces of the same name, being the last of *Peru*, and the valley or *Copoyapu*, the first in *Cbili*. Eastward, some parts of this kingdom terminate on the frontiers of *Paraguay*, though some uninhabited deserts intervene; and others confine on the government of *Buenos Ayres*, though between these are the *Pampas*, or extensive and level plains. Its western boundary is the *South-Sea*, extending from 27 degrees nearly, the latitude of *Copoyapu*, to 53 degrees 30 minutes south. But to confine ourselves to the true extent of this kingdom, as inhabited by the *Spaniards*, it begins at *Copoyapu*, and terminates at the large island of *Chiloe*, the southern extremity of which is 34 degrees of south latitude; and its extent from west to east is the distance between the *Cordillera*, which is here of a stupendous height, and the coast of the *South-Sea*; that is, about 30 leagues.

PART of the country which at present composes the kingdom of *Cbili* was subjected to the empire of the *Yncas* by *Yupanqui*, the tenth emperor; who, incited by the enchanting account given of those provinces, undertook the conquest of them; and prosecuted the enterprize with such success, that he subdued the several nations which inhabited the vallies of *Copoyapu*, *Coquimpu*, and *Cbili*. But in his intended career southward, the victorious *Ynca* met with an unsurmountable difficulty from the *Purumauco Indians*, and other nations, whom the rapidity of his conquests had induced to oppose him by a general confederacy. Thus he found himself under a necessity of desisting, after having carried his arms as far as the river *Mauli*, which is in the latitude of 34 degrees, 30 minutes.

AFTER



AFTER the *Spaniards* had undertaken a descent in *Peru*, and made themselves masters of its provinces, the marshal *Don Diego de Almagro* was commissioned for the conquest of *Chili*. Accordingly he marched from *Cusco*, at the beginning of the year 1535, and, after losing the greatest part of his *Indians*, and a considerable number of *Spaniards*, of which his army was composed, who perished with cold in passing over the *Cordillera Nevada*, he arrived at *Copoyapu*, where the *Indians*, without trying the chance of war, submitted. Animated with this unexpected pusillanimity, he proceeded to the conquest of other nations, and even such as never had acknowledged the *Yncas*: and though he here met with a more warlike people, who were determined to sell their liberty dear, he carried on the war very prosperously. But the king, in consideration of his great services, performed with so much hazard, having conferred on him the government of a territory 100 leagues in length, south of that which belonged to the marquis *Don Francisco Pizarro*, a difference arose between them, in regard to the boundaries of their respective governments. *Almagro*, being impatient to take possession, and pretending that the city of *Cusco* ought to be included in his government, the conquest was suspended, and he himself hastened to that city, where, instead of being invested with the chief command, he fell a sacrifice to the jealousy of *Pizarro*, who endeavoured to conceal his irregular proceedings under the veil of justice.

IN 1541, the conquest of *Chili* was again set on foot, and the marquis *Pizarro* conferred the command on *Pedro de Valdivia*, together with the title of general. Accordingly, he marched into the country, and founded most of the principal towns and villages in it: so that, in the year 1548, he was promoted to the government of it by the president of *Peru*. In the prosecution of the conquest of these provinces, he had many sharp skirmishes with the natives, till at last in 1553, bravely opposing a general revolt, with a very inferior force, he fell fighting with the greatest intrepidity at the head of his troops, the greatest part of whom, enraged at losing so brave a man, chose to perish with him, rather than save themselves by flight. His name, besides the figure it makes in history, is still preserved in this country in the town of *Valdivia*, which he founded.

THE martial genius of the *Indians* of this kingdom considerably retarded the reduction of it, and has always been the chief cause why the *Spanish* settlements here are so little proportionate to the extent, fertility, and riches of the country. The beauties of the parts adjacent to the city of *Conception* are enchanting, and the returns of nature, for the husbandman's toil, exuberant. The like profusion of natural productions is seen all over this kingdom. Its plains, eminencies, vallies, in short, the whole country is an object of admiration. Every particle of earth, in this amazing fertility, seems transformed into feed. The country round *Santiago*, as it is not inferior in pleasantness and fertility to that of *Conception*, so also, from the great affinity to the climates, its products are nearly the same. Accordingly, some farmers wholly apply themselves to corn, others to fattening of cattle; some to the breeding of horses, others to the culture of vines and fruit-trees: the first find their account in plentiful harvests of wheat, barley, and particularly in hemp, which thrives here surprisingly. The second, by their large slaughters, have great quantities of tallow, sole leather tanned, and *Cordovan* leather, grassa, charqui, and neat tongues; the three last being no inconsiderable articles.

BESIDES the commerce carried on with *Peru* in these articles and many others, we must also mention that of metals, this kingdom abounding in mines of all kinds, but principally of gold and copper. The most famous gold mine lies in a country east of *Santiago*: this gold was formerly highly esteemed, and found in great plenty; but now on account of a whitish tinge, the value of it is considerably diminished. This mine, for the length of time it has been worked, is equal to the most celebrated in *Peru*. In the country of *Yapel*, which is situated in the same quarter, but farther to the northward, along the *Cordillera*, are also rich gold mines, and the metal twenty-three carats fine. In 1710, in the mountains of *Lumpanguí*, near the *Cordillera*, were discovered several mines of gold, silver, copper, lead, tin, and iron; and the gold between twenty-one and twenty-two carats fine; but the working, from the hardness of the stone, is very difficult and laborious. This inconvenience does not, however, occur in the mountain *Llavin*, where the stone is soft, and not less rich in metal, equal in fineness to the former. Besides these, there are other gold mines, worked with good success at *Tilti*, near *Santiago*. Between *Quillota* and *Valparaiso*, in a part called *Ligua*, is a very fine rich gold mine, and the metal greatly esteemed. *Coquimbo*, *Copoyapu*, and *Guasco*, have also gold mines, and the metal found in the two last, is, by way of pre-eminence, called oro capote, being the most valuable of any yet discovered. Another kind of mine of the same metal was also found in this kingdom, but was exhausted soon after it had elated the hopes of the undertakers with some rich specimens. Mines of this kind are very common, as well as another kind called *lavaderos*, which are pits dug in the angles of trenches made by rain, wherein it is imagined there may be gold; and, in order to discover the metal, a stream of water



- a is turned through it, and the earth briskly spread, that the gold may be carried down with the current, and deposited in the pits. All the gold thus collected in *Chili* is brought to *Lima* to be coined; and by the accounts constantly taken, it amounts, one year with another, to 600,000 dollars; but that clandestinely sent by way of the *Cordillera* is said to be nearly 400,000; consequently, the whole must be at least a million. In the countries of *Coquimbo* and *Guaico*, mines of all kinds of metals are so very common, that the whole earth seems wholly composed of minerals; and it is here those of copper are worked, and from them all *Peru* and the kingdom of *Chili* are furnished with that metal. But though this copper exceeds every thing of that kind hitherto known, the mines are worked with great caution, and no more metal extracted than is sufficient to answer the usual demand;
- b and other mines, though known to be equally rich, are left untouched.

THE country of *Chili*, near the *Pacific-Ocean*, enjoys a fine temperate air, and a clear, serene sky most part of the year. The rivers and springs are frozen up in the winter season on the mountains, and those who pass the highest of them at any time of the year, feel an air so piercing and subtle, that it is with difficulty they breathe. There are, in this chain of mountains, a great many volcanoes, which sometimes break out, and cause very terrible and astonishing effects.

- PATAGONIA* is sometimes described as part of *Chili*, but as it is yet inhabited only by the *Indians*, it may be reckoned a distinct country, and with it also may be included the island of *Terra del Fuego*, from which it is separated only by the narrow strait of *Magellan*.
- c The *Spaniards*, who built a fort upon the straits of *Magellan*, left a garrison in it to prevent any other *European* nation passing that way into the *South Sea*; but lost most of their men, who perished for want of food, from whence the place obtained the name of *Port-Famine*, and no people have attempted to plant colonies here ever since.

Patagonia.

- PARAGUAY*, or *La Plata*, is bounded by the country of the *Amazons* on the north; by *Brazil* on the east; by *Patagonia* on the south; and by *Peru* and *Chili* on the west. It is 1500 miles in length from north to south, and almost as much in breadth. The country produces rice and *Indian* corn, and the *Spaniards* have introduced *European* corn and fruits, as well as cattle, of which last there are vast herds. To the west of the great river *Paraguay*, are vast plains extending some hundred miles, with very little wood upon them, and scarce
- d a hill to be seen; but on the east of the river *Paraguay*, which is divided from *Brazil* by a chain of mountains, there is a variety of hills and vallies, woods, and champaign; and this being the property of the *Jesuits*, is very well cultivated by the natives, who are their proselytes and subjects. This country is called *Paraguay*, from the river that runs through it from north to south; and *la Plata*, from the river which rises in *Peru*, and running south-west through it, joins its waters with the *Paraguay*, near *Buenos Ayres*; after which the united stream is called *la Plata*, and falls into the *Atlantic Ocean*, between the *Spanish* territories of *la Plata*, and the *Portuguese* territories of *Brazil*. The *Spaniards* bring part of the treasures of *Peru* from thence to *Buenos Ayres*, down the river *la Plata*; and at *Buenos Ayres* put them on board of ships for *Spain*, with vast quantities of skins, and other merchandize of those
- e countries. But all articles of commerce are far less advantageous to the inhabitants than the herb called *Paraguay*, which alone would be sufficient to form a flourishing trade in this province, it being the only place which produces it, and from hence it is sent all over *Peru* and *Chili*, where its use is universal.

Paraguay.

- THE climate of *Paraguay* is very little different from that of *Spain*: and the distinctions between the seasons are the same. In winter, indeed, violent tempests of winds and rains are here very frequent, accompanied with such dreadful thunders and lightnings as fill the inhabitants, though used to them, with terror and consternation. In summer, the excessive heats are mitigated by gentle breezes, which constantly begin at eight or nine in the morning. In short, for the enjoyments of life, especially with regard to the salubrity of the air,
- f a finer country cannot be imagined.

- WE now pass from the *Spanish* dominions in *South-America* to those of the *Portuguese*, which consist of the territories of *Brazil*. This country is situated between 35 and 60 deg. of west longitude, and between the equator and 35 deg. of south latitude; bounded by the *Atlantic Ocean* on the east; by the river *la Plata* on the south; and by *Paraguay*, and the country of the *Amazons*, on the west; the chief town *St. Salvador*, on the bay of *All-Saints*. The discovery of this country was intirely accidental; for the *Portuguese*, sailing with a considerable force to the *Indies*, by the way of the *Cape of Good Hope*, to avoid the calms upon the coast of *Africa*, thought proper to stand out at sea, by which means they fell upon the continent of *South-America*, without having the least idea of any such country. Upon their
- g return to *Lisbon*, they made so favourable a report of the country, that the ministry took the affair into consideration, and set about establishing a colony with all imaginable expedition. The court of *Spain*, however, was greatly offended at their proceedings, as it claimed the sole dominion of that extensive country for itself; but finding the *Portuguese* very strenuous

Brazil.



in defending their new-acquired property, the *Spaniards* thought a friendly accommodation more eligible than an open rupture ; and agreed at last, that the *Portuguese* should possess all that tract between the river *Amazon* and the river *la Plata*. a

BUT in the midst of all this prosperity, one of those important events which determines the fate of kingdoms, not only stripped the *Portuguese* of this settlement, but left them also without liberty. Don *Sebastian*, one of their greatest princes, perished in an expedition against the *Mos* ; and the kingdom of *Portugal* fell intirely under the discretion of a *Spanish* government. Not long after this revolution in the affairs of *Portugal*, the *Spanish* yoke became so intolerable to the inhabitants of the *Netherlands*, that they made a desperate effort for the recovery of their liberty, and fortunately regained it. Flushed with this success, they began to make reprisals on the property of their former masters ; they attacked the *Spaniards* in their strongest holds, and grew formidable by their conquests, and opulent by their plunder. The *Portuguese* settlements principally engaged their attention ; they subdued all the fortresses of any consideration in the *East-Indies*, which were not sufficiently defended by the *Spaniards* ; and then directed their operations to the *Brazils*, which they knew were at that time unprotected by *Europe* ; and found means, by the dishonesty or cowardice of the governor, to get possession of the then capital city, without much bloodshed or expence. In this exigence it was, that the reverend hero, don *Michael de Texeira*, archbishop of the place, made so glorious an opposition in favour of his country. This illustrious prelate was descended from one of the noblest families in *Portugal*, and possessed a soul exalted with the highest principles of honour and virtue. The general emergency, he thought, exempted him from the necessity of complying with the stricter customs of his profession, and he therefore looked upon every ceremonial observance as a matter of less consequence than the welfare of the public. Accordingly, he took up arms, and, at the head of his monks and a few scattered forces, put a stop to the conquest of the *Dutch*, till assistance was sent him from *Europe*. Upon the arrival of this reinforcement, he resigned the military command, which the public necessity had obliged him to assume, into the hands of a proper officer, and returned to the duties of his own function, which he always discharged with exemplary piety and goodness. By this gallant behaviour of the bishop, seven of the fourteen provinces, or captainships, in the *Brazils* were preserved to the *Portuguese*, the other seven falling into the hands of the *Dutch*, who conquered and maintained them with a bravery that would have done them much honour, had it been more distinguished by humanity. b

THE celebrated prince *Maurice* of *Nassau* was, at that time, commander in chief of the *Dutch* forces, and to him they were principally indebted for the acquisition of this colony, and the beneficial accommodation which secured them the possession of it. But what the prince's great abilities had procured them, was afterwards lost by their own parsimony and avarice. Too sanguine after money, they complained of the expence their general put them to in erecting more fortresses, and keeping more troops than were necessary for their service. His living in some splendor was also no little matter of uneasiness ; and, in short, looking upon official œconomy to be the most valuable qualification in a great captain, they treated prince *Maurice* with so little respect, that he threw up his command, and left them to govern their new acquired territories as they could. Upon the prince's retiring from the command, their own frugal plan of government took place, and for a little time, the advantages arising from these new regulations became very considerable. The expences of a court were retrenched ; the charge of troops lessened ; the money laid out upon fortifications saved ; their profits amounted to near cent. per cent. and every thing seemed in the most flourishing situation. But this flattering system of government ended not only in the loss of their capital, but the total ruin of their *West-India* company. They lost the affection of the *Indians* by their avarice in dealing, and excited their resentment by the rigour of their proceedings. From the defenceless condition of the frontiers, their neighbours were encouraged to encroach upon their settlements ; and the *Portuguese*, making one vigorous attempt, re-conquered that part of the *Brazils* which the *Dutch* had formerly taken from them, notwithstanding the States made a most resolute struggle in its defence. The *Portuguese*, thus settled in their former possessions, proceeded with unwearied application to advance the interest of the colony. c

THE country they called *Brazil*, from a wood of that name, in which it plentifully abounds. It extends all along a charming sea-coast upon the *Atlantic-Ocean*, upwards of 2000 miles, between the river *Amazon* on the north, and *la Plata* on the south. The *Brazil*-tree generally flourishes in rocky and barren grounds, where it often grows to a great height and considerable thickness ; but this thickness is liable to mislead the judgment, in regard to the quantity of the wood ; for, upon stripping off the bark, it happens very often, that a tree as thick as a man's body will be reduced to a log no larger than his leg. It commonly grows crooked and knotty like a hawthorn, with long branches, and a smooth green leaf, hard, g



<sup>a</sup> hard, brittle, and dry. Three times a year, bunches of small flowers appear at the extremities of the branches, and between the leaves. These flowers are of a bright red, and have a strong aromatic and refreshing smell. The wood is of a red colour, hard and dry, and is used in dying red; but the red it produces is far from being of the best kind. It is also in some cases administered as a medicine, both as a stomachic and astringent.

<sup>b</sup> THE *Portuguese* trade in the *Brazils* is very great and daily increasing; and that settlement may, at this time, be reckoned by much the most flourishing of any in *America*. Their sugar is considerably finer than that of any other establishment in those parts; and their tobacco is also remarkably good. In the last article they deal very extensively to the coast of *Africa*, where they not only dispose of it to the natives, but even supply the vessels of other nations, who are obliged to purchase it, for the convenience of carrying on the gold-dust and slave trade with any tolerable advantage. The north and south parts of the *Brazils* abound with horned cattle, which are hunted for their hides, of which no less than 20,000 are annually exported to *Europe*. The bay and river of *Rio Janeiro* are now resorted to by the *Portuguese*, more than any other part of *Brazil*, on account of the gold and diamonds which have been discovered in the mountains to the westward of this and the neighbouring provinces of *St. Vincent*; and it is incredible what quantities of gold are constantly brought from thence. The southern provinces of *Brazil* enjoy a healthful air, being constantly refreshed with breezes from the sea.

<sup>c</sup> THERE is nothing further of note in *South-America*, but *Amazonia* and *Guiana*. *Amazonia* is remarkable for its river, being one of the largest in the world; and, no gold being found here, as was expected, neither the *Spaniards*, *Portuguese*, nor any other *European* nation, have thought worth while to leave any colonies in it, so that the *Indians* remain a free people, not subject to any foreign dominion. The country obtained the name of *Amazonia*, from the *Spaniards* seeing women on the banks of the river with arms in their hands, which they carried only to ease their husbands, as they do the baggage in all their expeditions. The *Dutch* have a colony at *Surinam* in *Guiana*, and numerous plantations about it, which produce tobacco and sugar; part of which they took from the *English*, in the reign of king *Charles II.* and by a subsequent peace these were confirmed to them, in consideration of relinquishing their pretensions to *New-York*, and other places in the northern colonies, which the *English* had taken from them. Except this colony, and some little islands on the coast of *Terra-Firma*, and among the *Caribbees*, the *Dutch* have no other settlements in *America*.

### C H A P. III.

#### Of North-America.

<sup>e</sup> MEXICO is the first country that occurs in *North-America*. It is distinguished into *Old* and *New*. *Old Mexico*, or *New Spain*, lies between north latitude 7 deg. 30 min. and 30 deg. 40 min. and is bounded on the south-east by the isthmus of *Darien*, or *Panama*, and on the north-west by *New-Mexico*. It is divided into three audiences, or sovereign districts, governed by a viceroy appointed by the king of *Spain*.

THE three districts or courts of audience are, 1. *Guadalajara*, which contains the provinces of *Cinalva*, *Culiacan*, *Chamephan*, *Xalisco*, *Guadalajara Proper*, *Zacatecas*, and *New Biscay*. 2. *Mexico*, including the provinces of *Mechocan*, *Mexico Proper*, *Panuco*, *Tlascalala*, *Guaxaca*, *Tabasco*, and *Yucatan*. 3. *Guatemala*, containing the provinces of *Chiapa*, *Sonocufca*, *Guatemala Proper*, *Vera Paz*, *Honduras*, *Nicaragua*, *Costa Rica*, and *Veragua*.

<sup>f</sup> THOUGH this country lies for the most part within the torrid zone, yet the air is very temperate, and generally reckoned extraordinary wholesome. It produces divers sorts of grain, fruits, and herbs; rich mines of gold and silver, and good pasturage. Its chief grain is wheat, barley, pulse, and maize; the chief fruits, pomegranates, oranges, lemons, cherries, apples, figs, and cocoa nuts; and its principal commodities are wool, cotton, sugar, silk, cochineal, feathers, honey, balm, amber, salt, tallow, hides, tobacco, ginger, and various medicinal drugs.

<sup>g</sup> THE *Spaniards*, who have been long sole masters of this country, and of the far greater part of *South America*, have taken such care to keep all foreigners out of them, that the lawful commerce between them and *Europe* is in their hands, and subject to the direction of their crown. It will not be improper to shew here in what manner the same is carried on by annual ships, usually divided into three classes, the *flota*, the register-ships, and galleons.

*Manner of carrying on the Spanish trade in America.*

THE *flota* is a fleet consisting of three men of war, and fourteen or fifteen merchant ships.



ships, from 400 to 1000 tons burthen; they are loaded almost with every sort of goods which *Europe* produces for export; all sorts of woollens, linens, silks, velvets, laces, glass, paper, and cutlery; all sorts of wrought iron, watches, clocks, quicksilver for the use of their miners, horse-furniture, shoes, stockings, books, pictures, military stores, wines, fruits, &c. so that all the trading parts of *Europe* are highly interested in the cargo of this fleet. *Spain* itself sends out little more than the wine and fruit; this with the freight, and commissions to the merchant, and the duty to the king, is almost all the advantage which that kingdom derives from her commerce with the *Indies*. This fleet is fitted out at *Cadiz*, and bound to *La Vera Cruz*, situated on the south-west part of the gulph of *Mexico*, and to the south-east of that city. They are not permitted to break bulk on any account, till they arrive there. When all the goods are landed and disposed of at *La Vera Cruz*, the fleet takes in the plate, precious stones, cochineal, indigo, cocoa, tobacco, sugar, and hides, which are the returns for *Old Spain*. From *La Vera Cruz* they sail to the *Havanna* in the island of *Cuba*, which is the place of their rendezvous, where they meet the galleons. These are another fleet, which carry on all the trade of *Terra Firma*, by *Carthagena*; and of *Peru*, by *Panama* and *Porto Bello*, in the same manner as the flota serves for the trade of *New Spain*. When the flota arrives at the *Havanna*, and joins the galleons and register-ships, which assemble at the same port from all quarters, some of the cleanest and best sailing vessels are dispatched to *Old Spain*, with advice of the contents of these several fleets, as well as with treasure and goods of their own, that the court may judge what *indulto*, or duty, is proper to be laid on them, and what convoy is necessary for their safety.

#### Register-ships.

REGISTER-ships are sent out by merchants at *Cadiz* or *Seville*, when they judge that goods must be wanted at any certain port in the *West-Indies*. The course is, to petition the council of the *Indies* for licence to send a ship of 300 tons burthen, or under, to that port: they pay for this licence 40,000 or 50,000 dollars, besides presents to the officers, in proportion to the connivance necessary to their design: for though the licence runs only to 300 tons at most, the vessel fitted out is seldom less than 600. This ship and cargo are registered at the pretended burthen. It is required too, that a certificate be brought from the king's officer at the port to which the register-ship is bound, that she does not exceed the size at which she is registered; all this passes of course. These are what they call register-ships, and by these the trade of *Spanish America* has been carried on principally for some years past; which practice has been thought as much to the prejudice of their trade, as it is contrary to all their former maxims for carrying it on.

#### Galleons.

THE fleet which is called the galleons, consists of eight men of war of 500 tons each, designed principally to supply *Peru* with military stores; but in reality laden, not only with those, but with every other kind of merchandize on a private account, so as to be in too weak a condition either to defend themselves, or protect others. Under the convoy of these are twelve sail of merchant ships, not inferior to the galleons in burthen. This fleet of the galleons is regulated in much the same manner with the flota, and is destined for the exclusive commerce of *Terra Firma*, and the *South Sea*, as the flota is for that of *Mexico*.

As soon as this galleon fleet arrives at *Carthagena*, expresses are dispatched to *Porto-Bello*, and to all the adjacent towns; but particularly to *Panama*, that they may get ready all the treasure which is deposited there, to meet the galleons at *Porto-Bello*; at which place all the persons concerned in the various branches of this extensive trade, assemble. There is no part of the world, as before observed, where business of such great importance is negociated in so short a time; for sometimes in a fortnight the fair is over. During the fair, heaps of wedges and ingots of silver, are thrown about upon the wharfs, as things of no value. The display of gold, silver, and precious stones on one hand, and of the various and rare workmanship of the several ingenious fabrics of *Europe* on the other, are truly astonishing.

#### Acapulco galleon.

THE whole trade between the *East-Indies* and *Spanish America*, is carried on by one great galleon, which arrives at *Acapulco* on the *South Sea*, from the *Philippine-Islands*, in the month of *December*. They see no other land in their whole voyage of three thousand leagues, which they perform in five months, than the *Little Ladrones*. The ship is laden with all the rich commodities of the east, as cloves, pepper, cinnamon, nutmegs, mace, china, japan wares, calicoes plain and painted, muslins of every sort, silks, precious stones, rich drugs, and gold dust. At the same time the rich ship from *Lima* comes in, and is not computed to bring less than two millions of pieces of eight in silver (450,000 *l.* sterling). Several other ships, from the different parts of *Chili* and *Peru*, meet upon the same occasion; and besides the traffic for the *Philippine* commodities, this causes a very large dealing for every thing which those countries have to exchange with one another, as well as for the purchase of all sorts of *European* goods. The fair at *Acapulco* lasts sometimes for thirty days. As soon as the goods are disposed of, the galleon prepares to set out on her



- a her voyage to the *Philippines* with her returns, chiefly in silver, but with some *European* goods to, and some other commodities of *America*. We speak here, as though there were but one vessel on the trade with the *Philippines*; and in fact there is only nominally one trading vessel, the galleon itself, of about 1200 tons; but another attends her commonly as a sort of convoy, which generally carries such a quantity of goods, as in a great measure disables her from performing that office. The galleon has often 1000 people on board, either interested in the cargo, or merely passengers; and there is no trade in which so large profits are made; the captain of the vessel, the pilots, the mates, and even the common sailors, making, in one voyage, what in their several ranks may be considered as easy fortunes. It is said by the writer of Lord *Anson's* voyage, that the jesuits have the profits of this ship to support their missions.

- b This commerce to so vast a value, though carried on directly between different parts of the king of *Spain's* own dominions, enriches them in proportion but very little; the far greater part of every thing which comes from the *Philippines*, being the produce or fabric of other countries; the *Chinese* particularly are largely interested in this cargo. The trade between *Spain* and her colonies in *America*, is the most considerable part of their external commerce, and the great support of their navy. But their internal traffic is by no means proportionate to the numbers of their people, the natural advantages of their situation and climate, the abundance of raw materials which their country produces, and their *Indies* supply them with. The truth is, the *Spaniards* add none of the artificial value of labour to any thing; and the great error of their policy seems to be this: They never sufficiently attended to the truth of the following maxim, That industry, manual labour, and the arts, are more beneficial, and truer sources of wealth to a state, than the richest mines of gold and silver. Dazzled with the spoils of *America*, they turned their whole attention to seize the exclusive possession of those seeming riches; they neglected agriculture and manufactures, and contracted a contempt for the mechanic, and even liberal arts; in consequence of which, the country becoming daily less populous, their maritime and military strength soon declined. Of late years the *Spanish* ministry have been fully sensible of this fatal mistake, and have endeavoured to raise a spirit of industry among the people, by promoting the establishment of manufactures, in various parts of their dominions: but though they have tempted the people, by exemption from taxes, and many other privileges, yet the progress they have made is not so considerable as might have been expected.

State of the Spanish commerce.

- d But to proceed in our account of *Mexico*, though common report places mines of gold and silver in almost all the provinces, yet we are assured that both are only found in the province of *Mexico*. Of silver there are no less than a thousand mines. Some *Spanish* authors say, that the gold is only found in *Veragua*, and *New Granada*. As to other commodities, there is an exceeding great quantity of sugar, chiefly on the side of the gulph of *Mexico*, *Guaxaca*, &c. so that here are more sugar-mills than in any part of *Spanish America*; but it is chiefly consumed in the city of *Mexico*, and particularly the monasteries, in chocolate, sweet-meats, preserves and confectionary wares; of which, however, there is a vast deal sent from *Guaxaca*, *Guatemala*, and other provinces, to *Mexico* and *Panama*, from whence it is carried by sea, to *Lima*, *Guayaquil*, and *Baldivia*. There is a great home trade in the goods manufactured of cotton. They have the best indigo in the world; and the trade of cochineal is managed wholly by the merchants of *Mexico* and *Carthagena*. It is said the people of *Nicaragua* and the *Honduras* employ 300,000 mules and horses to carry corn, sugar, cocoa, &c. into the inland provinces, and particularly to the city of *Mexico*; and when the galleons come from *Old Spain*, the number of carriages, men, and horses, employed to carry the treasure of the country to *La Vera Cruz*, is incredible. The carriage of the *European* goods that come by the galleons back again to other parts, is a very considerable article of trade, as is also the carriage of tobacco, sugar, and other produce of *Guatemala* and *Guaxaca*, which come from the south coast to *La Vera Cruz*, all which is said to employ 60,000 horses, mules, and asses, besides a proportionate number of men. So much silver is also brought from *Zacatecas*, as is said 6000 mules are employed in the carriage of.

Further particulars of the commerce and commodities of Mexico.

- f *NEW MEXICO*, so called, because of its being discovered since the *Old Mexico*, or *New Spain*, is sometimes stiled by the *Spaniards*, a kingdom, and sometimes a province. It is bounded on the north by high mountains, beyond which is a country altogether unknown; by *Louisiana* on the east; by some of the provinces of *New Spain* on the south; and on the west, by the gulph of *California*, and the *Rio Colorado*. But whether the limits on the north and east should be contracted or extended, is what we shall not pretend to determine; for there are no people that we know of to the north of *New Mexico*, nor is there a twentieth part of the country within the limits specified, that is either cultivated or inhabited; nor is it any more certain how we might venture to extend the limits of it on the east side towards *Florida*, no one having attempted to fix the bounds between these two

New Mexico.



countries, except the *French*, who have introduced *Louisiana* into their maps in the room of *Florida*, bounding it with the *British* plantations on the east, and *New Mexico* on the west. The extent, however, has not been discovered; but what has, may be said to extend 100 leagues north from *New Biscay*; and there is no less from the Straights of *California* on the west, towards *Florida* on the east.

As it lies in the midst of the temperate zone, it is a very pleasant climate; the summers are very warm, and the winters pretty sharp; but then the former are neither sultry nor unwholesome, and the latter are clear, without being intolerable. The weather upon the whole is, generally speaking, agreeable to the season, and refreshing to an *European* constitution. The soil is beautifully interspersed with rising grounds, and with rivers well stocked with fish; abounds with fruit and timber-trees; produces turquoises, emeralds, and other precious stones, has mines of gold and silver, and feeds all sorts of wild and tame cattle, especially those of the neat-kind. Here are also several sorts of fowl; and in fact, it is said to be as pleasant, plentiful, and rich a country as any in the world. There are few great rivers in it, but several small ones run into the gulph of *Mexico*; and there are divers bays and creeks on that coast, which might easily be converted into ports.

THE greatest part of this country is still in the hands of the natives, the principal of which are the *Apaches*, a warlike nation differing from all the other natives in language, being clad also in deer-skins, and living in tents, which they carry with them wherever they go. Thinking themselves aggrieved by the *Spanish* government, about the close of the last century, they made a general insurrection, and did a vast deal of mischief; but were at last suppressed, and have since been curbed by stronger garrisons. Most of the natives are now Christians.

SOME geographers divide *New Mexico* into fifteen provinces, many of the *Spanish* writers into eighteen, of which they give us barely the names; but the latest geographers seem to divide it only into five. On the other hand, some writers have subdivided it into twenty or twenty-five provinces, and furnished us with the names of as many towns; but we find no description of any, but that which is by all agreed on to be the capital city, by name *Santa Fé*, which stands 130 leagues from the sea, near the source of *Rio del Norte*, which runs a great way through the country southward, and then bending east, falls into the gulph of *Mexico*. It is said to be a rich city regularly built, and is the see of a bishop, suffragan of *Mexico*, as well as the seat of the governor of the country. *Dampier* has more than once mentioned the possibility of penetrating in this country to the gold mines by making a descent on the shores, opposite to

California.

**CALIFORNIA**, which is reckoned by some a part of *New Mexico*, and by others, but improperly, a distinct country. It is situate between 116 and 138 degrees of west longitude, and between 23 and 46 degrees of north latitude, lying almost in the form of a cone reversed. It was a matter of doubt for a long time, whether it was an island or peninsula; but was discovered to be the latter by father *Caino*, or *Kins*, a *German* jesuit, who landed in *California* from the island of *Sumatra*, and passed into *New Mexico*, without crossing any other water than *Rio Azul*, or the Blue River, about north latitude 35. The more southern part was known to the *Spaniards* soon after the discovery of *Mexico*; for *Cortez* discovered it in 1535; but they did not till lately penetrate far into it, contenting themselves with the pearl fishery on the coast. But our Sir *Francis Drake* landed there in 1578; and took possession of *California* for his mistress queen *Elizabeth*, by the name of *New Albion*; the king of the country actually investing him with its sovereignty, and presenting him with his crown of beautiful feathers; and the people thinking the *English* to be more than men, began to sacrifice unto them, but were restrained. Though the *English* have never yet attempted to settle any colonies here, yet if the revival of our right should ever become necessary, we seem to have a much better plea than the *Spaniards*.

It is bounded on the north by a continent unknown; on the east by the province of *New Mexico*, and the gulph of *California*, which some call the *Purple*, or *Red Sea*; and by the *South Sea* on the south and west. Though it lies for the most part in the temperate zone, there are great heats on the coast in summer, but the inland part is very temperate; and though in the winter it is pretty cold, it is judged to be a healthy country. In respect to the soil, the mountains are well wooded, and the plains well watered; they abound with fruit-trees, and are capable of bearing all sorts of *European* grain. Here are deer, of which two kinds are peculiar to the country; all sorts of fowl and birds, common in *Europe* or the *Indies*; a prodigious plenty of sea and river fish, particularly cray-fish, which are taken out and kept in reservoirs. There is besides, one of the greatest pearl-fisheries in the world, and it is thought to have mines. It has two considerable rivers, *Rio Colorado* and *Rio du Carmel* with several other small rivers, and variety of fine ports, both on the east and west sides with innumerable bays, creeks, and roads, which is the reason of its having been so much frequented by our privateers in the *South Seas*.

See H



Such of the natives who live on the east side, on the purple shore, are great enemies to the *Spaniards*; but in other parts of the peninsula, they seem very hospitable to all strangers.

It is observable of this country, that after the rainy season is over, a great quantity of dew falls in the mornings, in *April*, *May*, and *June*, which not only renders the land exceeding fruitful, but, settling upon rose leaves, candies and hardens like manna, and is sweet as sugar, though not so white and pleasant to the eye. In the heart of the country there are plains of salt, quite firm and clear as crystal, which, considering the extraordinary quantity of fish of all sorts that are found there, might prove of unspeakable advantage to any civilized people, who were possessed of the country.

- b HERE is also excellent pasturage in all seasons, for great and small cattle. Almost every season there is plenty of pistachoes, of curious kinds, and figs of different colours. The trees are beautiful, and particularly those called by the natives *Palo Santo*, yielding a great quantity of fruit, from which a most excellent perfume is extracted. The soil produces fourteen sorts of grain, which the natives feed on, and in short is so rich, that many plants bear fruit three times a year. The inland country, especially towards the north, is populous. It is but lately the *Spaniards* had any settlement on this peninsula; and what they have is only a village near *Cape Lucar*, at the south end of it, which they call *California*. The *Manilla* ships touch here sometimes in their course to *Acapulco*, and it is like to become a considerable place in time, by their trading with the *Indians* for pearl.
- c There are many small islands on the coast of this peninsula, both in the *South* and *Purple Seas*; and it is to be observed, that captain *Dampier* proposed seeking a north-west passage, by doubling *Cape Blanco*, the most northern part in *California*.

ALL the rest of *North America*, except the *French* settlement of *Louisiana*, make a part, but the far greatest, of the *British* empire in *America*, *Canada*, with its dependencies, having been ceded by the *French*, and *Florida* by the *Spaniards*, to the crown of *Great Britain*, pursuant to the late definitive treaty of peace. In discoursing of these countries, we shall begin with our new acquisition of *Florida*, and then taking a sweep along the coast, come round to *Canada* and *Louisiana*, with which, and a few reflections, we shall conclude whatever of moment has been observed in regard to the continent of *North America*.

British dominions in North America.

- d THE country called by the *Spaniards* *Florida*, extends by their accounts, according to the most accurate observations, from about 25 degrees 6 minutes, to 39 degrees 38 minutes north latitude, and its most eastern coast lies in about 81 degrees 30 minutes west longitude from *London*; its whole length being nearly 1000 *English* miles, but the breadth very variable. They extend it on the north to the *Apalachian* mountains, where it is very narrow, and make the river *Altamaha* the boundary between it and *Georgia*, by which they take in the whole country of the *Lower Creek Indians*. On the north-west, they separate it from *Louisiana*, by the *Rio Perdido*. To the east it has *Georgia*, the *Atlantic Ocean*, and the channel of *Babama*, or gulph of *Florida*; and to the south, the gulph of *Mexico*.

Florida:

- e THOUGH the *Spaniards* give the name of *Florida* to a much greater extent of country than that which we confine it to, calling all the coast lying north of the gulph of *Mexico* by that appellation; yet whatever the extent may be, the *English* were the first discoverers of this continent; for *Henry VII.* king of *England*, being determined to find out the north-west passage to *Cathay* and *India*, took into his service *Sebastian Cabote*, a very able mariner, and fitted out two caravals for him in 1496; the account of which we shall give in *Cabote's* own words: "But after certain days, I found that the land run towards the north, which was to me a great displeasure. Nevertheless, sailing along the coast, to see if I could find any gulph that turned, I found the land still continent to the 56th degree under our pole; and seeing that there the coast turned toward the east, despairing to find the passage, I turned back again, and sailed down to the coast of that land toward the equinoctial, (ever with an intent to find the said passage to *India*) and came to that part of this firm land which is now called *Florida*, where my victuals failing, I departed from thence, and returned into *England*."

EIGHTEEN years after this discovery of the continent by *Sebastian Cabote*, *John Ponce* of *Leon* being discharged from his government of *Boriquena*, now called *Porto Rico*, in which he had acquired great riches, fitted out two caravals, in order to discover the islands of *Boiuca*, in which, the *Indians* affirmed, was a spring, the virtue of whose waters was to restore youth: having wandered in vain for six months, he came by accident to the *Biminis*, and discovered the land of *Florida*, in 1512, on *Easter-day*; which the *Spaniards* call the Flourishing day of *Pascha*, and from thence gave it the name of *Florida*.

- g A COUNTRY so extensive in latitude must be supposed to vary somewhat in point of air and climate, but it may upon the whole, be called very warm, though the great heats in the southern parts are much allayed by the cool breezes from the sea; and such as are more inland, towards the north, feel a little of the roughness of the north-west wind, which, more



or less, with its chilling breath, prevails over the whole continent of *Northern America*, and is observed to bring with it, and spread the inclemency of frost and snow many degrees more to the southward in those regions, than the north-east wind does in ours; which, though the coldest we feel, yet is of shorter duration, as the westerly winds generally prevail here. Severe cold is commonly known in the winter months on the *American* continent, so low as 34 or 35 degrees of north latitude, which is rather more southern than the straits of *Gibraltar* in *Europe*; and vast shoals of ice are seen floating, and the sea frequently frozen to a small distance from the shore, in the latitude of 44 or 45 degrees north, which are the same parallels under which the southern parts of *France* lie. This difference in temperature, may, perhaps, in a great measure, be accounted for by considering the amazing extent of uncultivated land, covered with forests, and intermixed with vast lakes, and marshes of stagnated fresh water, over which the north-west wind blowing, meets with no accidental cause to mollify its rigour; whereas the smaller continent of *Europe* is broken and interspersed with many large seas and gulphs of salt water, which, having a communication with the warmer parts of the main ocean, do, with the motion and formation of their saline particles, greatly mellow and soften the circumbient air impregnated therewith. But to return; notwithstanding the climate of *Florida* is, as we have said, very warm, it is not for that reason less pure and wholesome; the best testimony of which that can be given is the size, firmness, strength of constitution, and longevity of the *Floridan Indians*: in all these particulars they far exceed the *Mexicans*.

THE soil of *Florida* is remarkably rich and fruitful, frequently producing two or three crops of *Indian* corn in the year, and might, with proper cultivation, be made to bear every sort of grain. It abounds with all kinds of timber, particularly pines, cedar, palms, laurel, cypress, and chestnut-trees; but, above all, sassafras is found in the greatest plenty; excellent limes and plums also grow here in great abundance, with many other fruits of delicious flavour; vines likewise of various sorts are the natural product of the country, and the land is thought to be as proper for the cultivation of the grape, as those of *Europe* are found in general to be. Cotton also grows wild here in great abundance, hemp and flax are likewise very common. The many rivers with which *Florida* is watered render it fertile. The sea-coast is very flat, sandy, and full of shoals: on this level shore there are prodigious numbers of oysters adhering to the mangrove-trees, with which the southern coast is covered.

ANIMAL food is plenty here, and very good in its kind, particularly beef, mutton, and veal. The country also feeds great numbers of swine, the flesh of which is very good, there being no want of acorns, chestnuts, and such nourishment as is proper for these creatures. Their cattle have a kind of long black hair upon them, so fine that, with a little mixture, it is thought by some capable of being manufactured into hats, cloathing, &c. Horses are also bred here very good both for the saddle and draught, and so cheap that one of them may be purchased for any trifle that is brought from *Europe*.

THE wild animals found in this country are the panther, bear, catamountain, stag, goat, hare, rabbit, beaver, otter, fox, racoon, and squirrel. The rivers abound with snakes and alligators. Birds are here in great plenty, such as partridges, jays, pigeons, turtle-doves, thrushes, crows, hawks, herons, cranes, geese, ducks, and an infinite number of others, some of which have their plumage most elegantly variegated.

AMONG its more precious productions cochineal may be reckoned, of which there is both the wild and the cultivated, but the latter is by far the more valuable. The indigo plant also grows plentifully in many of the southern parts of this province. Ambergrease too is frequently to be met with on the coast, from *Porta de Ianche*, the most southern cape of *Florida*, as far as *Mexico*.

THE native *Indians* of *Florida* are of an olive complexion, their bodies robust and finely proportioned; both sexes go naked, excepting that they fasten a piece of deer-skin about their middle. They stain their skins with the juice of plants. Their hair is black and long, and they have a method of twisting it about their heads, so as to make it look very graceful. Their weapons are bows and arrows, which they manage with great dexterity; the strings of their bows are made of the sinews of stags, and they arm the points of their arrows with the teeth of fishes, or sharpened bones. The women are very handsome and well shaped, and withal so active, that they will swim across broad rivers with their children on their backs, or climb, with surprising agility, to the tops of the highest trees. In religion they are bigotted idolaters, worshipping the sun and moon, and bearing an extreme aversion to all Christians; which indeed is not to be wondered at, since the horrid cruelties exercised by the *Spaniards* upon the natives of the adjacent island of *Cuba*, and other places, even to extirpation, could not fail to excite the utmost abhorrence and dread of them in those savages, instead of recommending to them the purity of Christianity.

THE chief settlements the *Spaniards* ever made in this country, were at *St. Augustine* and *St. Matthee*.



- a *St. Mattheo.* *Pensacola*, situated in 30 degrees 25 minutes north latitude, is chiefly frequented by our shipping. Its road is one of the best in all the gulph of *Mexico*, in which vessels can lie in safety against every kind of wind. The bottom, which is sandy, mixed in many places with ooze, is excellent for anchorage: the sea is never agitated here, because the land surrounds it on every side; but the tides are irregular here as well as upon all the rest of the coast.

OUR colony of *Florida* is still in an infant state; but considerable matters may in time be expected from it. Two governors are assigned it; Colonel *James Grant* for *East Florida*; and *George Johnston*, Esq; for *West Florida*.

- b NEXT to *Florida*, lie *Georgia* and *Carolina*, which last is divided into *North* and *South*. By the late definitive treaty of peace, the boundaries of those colonies may be said to be altered; it being agreed in consequence of the seventh article, that for the future, "the confines between the dominions of his *Britannic* majesty, and those of his most Christian majesty in that part of the world, shall be fixed irrevocably, drawn by a line along the middle of the river *Mississippi*, from its source to the river *Iberville*, and from thence, by a line drawn along the middle of this river, and the lakes of *Maurepas* and *Portchartrain*, to the sea; and for this purpose, the most Christian king cedes in full right, and guaranties to his *Britannic* majesty, the river and port of the *Mobile*, and every thing which he possesses, or ought to possess, on the left side of the river *Mississippi*, except the town of *New Orleans*, and the island in which it is situated, which shall remain to *France*."

*Carolina and Georgia.*

- c THE face of these countries is low and level, not a hill to be seen from *St. Augustine* to *Virginia*, and a great way being, and is generally covered with wood, where the planters have not cleared it. But about one hundred miles west of the coast, the country rises gradually to the *Apalachian* mountains, which are about 150 miles distant from the *Atlantic Ocean*. This ocean is so shallow near the coast, that a ship of any great burden cannot approach it, except in some few places. There has not yet been found one good harbour in *North Carolina*; the best are those of *Roanoak*, at the mouth of *Albemarle River*, and *Pimlico*. In *South Carolina* there are the harbours of *Winyaw*, or *George Town*, *Charles Town*, and *Port Royal*. In *Georgia*, the mouths of the rivers *Savannah* and *Altamaha*, form good harbours.

- d *CAROLINA* is situate between the extremities of heat and cold; but the heat is more troublesome in summer, than the cold in winter. The vegetables are innumerable, for all that grow in *Europe* grow here, not to mention many that cannot stand our winters. The country has, and would produce silk, wine, and oil, if properly cultivated; mulberry-trees and grapes grow spontaneously, and the soil is extremely proper for olives. We have had samples of their silk brought over, equal to any we purchase of foreigners. *Georgia*, the most southern province, is not a fruitful country; but having several fine rivers running through it, the banks of them are fortified, and make a very good barrier for the *Carolinas*, which were before exposed to the incursions and ravages of the *Spaniards* and their *Indian* allies.

- e AMONG their native animals they have the urus, which the *English* improperly call a buffalo. The other native animals are the same as in *Mexico* and *Florida*; and the *European* cattle are vastly increased here, as well as in other plantations. The wool of their sheep is not inferior to the *English*. Poultry and other fowls are in great plenty.

THE *English* traffic with the *Indians* for deer-skins, and bear and buffalo skins, for which they give them guns, powder, knives, scissars, looking-glasses, beads, and some coarse cloth and duffils. These are carried on pack-horses 5 or 600 miles into the country, west of *Charles Town*; but most of the trade is confined within the limits of the *Greek* and *Cherokee* nations, which do not lie above 300 miles from the coast.

- f THE chief commodities shipped off from *Carolina* yearly, are great quantities of rice, deer-skins, pitch and tar, turpentine, and indigo, which last thrives better here than in any of our other plantations.

- g *CAROLINA* was the last country in *America* planted by the *English*, after Sir *Walter Raleigh*'s unfortunate attempts to fix colonies in *Carolina*, in the latter end of the reign of queen *Elizabeth*. It seems to have been intirely overlooked till the restoration of *Charles II*. The then ministry being informed that *Carolina* would produce wine, oil, and silk, and almost every thing that *England* wanted, procured a patent or grant to themselves, dated the 24th of *March*, 1663, of great part of this coast; the grantees being *Edward*, Earl of *Clarendon*, lord chancellor; *George* duke of *Albemarle*, the general; *William*, lord *Craven*; *John*, lord *Berkley*; the lord *Anthony Ashley Cooper*; Sir *George Carteret*, Sir *William Colleton*, and their heirs. These proprietors, however, did little towards planting it, until the year 1670, when lord *Ashley* struck out a whimsical kind of government for the colony, creating a palatine or sovereign, with a council to be a check upon him; which involved them in perpetual quarrels, and almost destroyed the plantation as soon as it was settled;



to prevent which, they were at length obliged to sell their shares to the crown : and it is now a royal government, only the late earl of *Granville* thought fit to retain his seventh share. The present governors appointed by the crown are, for *South-Carolina*, *Thomas Boone*, Esq; for *North-Carolina*, *Ar. Dodds*, Esq; and for *Georgia*, *James Wright*, Esq.

*VIRGINIA* borders upon *Carolina*, which is its south boundary ; its other boundaries being the river *Patowmack*, which divides it from *Maryland* on the north-east ; the *Atlantic Ocean* on the east ; and the *Apalachian Mountains* on the west. It is computed to be about 240 miles in length, and 200 in breadth. As we approach it from the ocean, it appears to be low land ; and for one hundred miles up into the country, there is scarce a hill or stone to be met with. Before being planted it consisted of forests, bogs, and morasses, which last the people in the *West Indies* call swamps, and such the greatest part of it is at present. Their trees are much loftier than ours, and no underwood or bushes grow beneath. People travel with ease through these forests on horseback, and never want a fine shade to defend them from the summer heats. The air and seasons depend very much on the wind, as to heat and cold, dryness and moisture ; the north and north-west winds are very nitrous, piercing cold, and clear, or else stormy ; the south-east and south, hazy and sultry hot ; in winter they have a fine clear air, and dry, which renders it very pleasant ; their frosts are short, but sometimes so very sharp, that it will freeze the rivers over three miles broad. Snow falls sometimes in pretty great quantities, but rarely continues above a day or two ; their spring is about a month earlier than in *England* ; in *April* they have frequent rains ; *May* and *June* the heat increases, and the summer is much like ours, being mitigated with gentle breezes, that rise about nine o'clock, and decrease and increase as the sun rises and falls. *July* and *August* those breezes cease, and the air becomes stagnant ; then the heat is violent and troublesome. In *September* the weather usually breaks suddenly, and heavy rains fall, when many fall sick, this being the time for fluxes, scorbutic dropsies, gripes, or the like.

THE great bay of *Cheespeak* runs up through *Virginia* and *Maryland*, almost due north, 300 miles and upwards, being navigable most part of the way for large ships. We enter this bay between two promontories, called *Cape Charles* and *Cape Henry*. Into the west side of the same bay fall four great rivers, which rise in the *Apalachian Mountains*, running from the north-west to the south-east ; the most southerly of these is *James River*, generally about two miles over, and navigable at least eighty miles. A little to the northward of this is *York River*, and north of *York River* is that of *Rappahanock*, and further north is the great river of *Patowmack*, which is navigable near 200 miles, and nine miles broad, in some places, but generally about seven.

No country produces greater quantities of excellent tobacco, and yet *Virginia* is generally a sandy land, with a very shallow soil ; so that after they have cleared a fresh piece of ground out of the woods, it will not bear tobacco above two or three years, unless cow-penned, or well dunged. Of spontaneous flowers there are great variety ; the finest crown imperial in the world, the cardinal flower, so much extolled for its scarlet colour ; and almost all the year round the plains and vallies are adorned with flowers of one kind or other. There is also found the fine tulip-bearing laurel tree, which has the pleasantest smell imaginable, and keeps blossoming and seeding several months together. Silk grass grows spontaneous in many places ; and its fibres being as fine as flax, and much stronger than hemp, how great must be the advantages of so useful a plant ? The woods produce great variety of frankincense and sweet gums, which distil from several trees. All sorts of naval stores may be produced there, as pitch, tar, rosin, turpentine, plank-timber, masts and yards, besides sails, cordage and iron ; and all these may be transported by any easy water-carriage to *Great-Britain*. Their animals are generally the same as those already enumerated in *Florida* and *Carolina*.

SOME attempts were made by Sir *Walter Raleigh* and others to settle colonies here, and at *Carolina*, in the reign of queen *Elizabeth* ; but all of them through neglect proved ineffectual till king *James I.* by his letters patent, dated the tenth of *April* 1606, authorized Sir *Thomas Gates*, Sir *George Summers*, *Richard Hackluit*, clerk, prebendary of *Westminster*, and other adventurers, to plant the coast of *Virginia* between 35 and 45 degrees of north latitude. Hereupon, having fitted out three small ships, they set sail from the *Downs* the 5th of *January*, 1606-7, and on the 26th of *April*, 1607, arrived in the bay of *Cheespeak*, and sailing up the river *Powhatan*, now *James River*, they landed on a peninsula about fifty miles up the river, where they built a fort, and afterwards a town, which they called *James Town*, in honour of king *James I.* This was the first town built by the *English* on the continent of *America*. There happened some skirmishes between the *English* and the natives at their landing ; but the fear of fire-arms brought the latter to a pretended reconciliation, waiting, however, for an opportunity of falling upon these strangers, when they should meet an advantage. The fort being finished, captain *Newport*, who commanded



- a manded the expedition, returned to *England* on the 22d of *June* 1607, leaving 104 men in the new settlement. The garrison soon finding themselves in want of provisions, and the natives refusing to furnish them with any, though they offered to give the full value for them, the *English* found themselves under the necessity of plundering the country; upon which an open war commenced between them and the natives. However, fresh supplies and reinforcements coming over, commanded by the lord *Delaware*, the *Indians* were glad to enter into a treaty of peace, during which, the *English* finding a great demand for tobacco in *Europe*, began to encourage the planting of it, in which they succeeded beyond their expectations; and at the same time Sir *George Yarmy*, the governor, established a government resembling that of *England*, and the first general assembly, or parliament met at *James-Town*
- b in *May* 1620, and negroes were first imported into *Virginia* the same year. The planters not long after falling out among themselves, the *Indians* took advantage of their divisions, and made different attempts to recover their country, killing great numbers of the *English* by surprize. These misfortunes being ascribed to the mal-administration of the company, king *Charles I.* dissolved them in the year 1626, and reduced the government of *Virginia* under his own immediate direction, appointing the governor and council himself, ordering all patents and process to issue in the king's name, and reserving a quit-rent of two shillings for every 100 acres of land. After this regulation, there were other parties and factions again, and the *Indians* made new efforts to recover their liberties. The prudence of Sir *William Berkley*, the governor, composed these dissensions, and having afterwards made
- c peace with the *Indians*, he promoted manufactures of silk and linen in this plantation, and was in all respects esteemed as an excellent governor; but the act of navigation, restraining the planters from sending their merchandize to foreign countries, and from receiving cloathing, furniture, or supplies, from any nation but *England*, having created a great deal of discontent, Mr. *Bacon*, a popular, factious gentleman, took the advantage of their disaffection, and setting up for himself, drew the people into rebellion, deposed the governor, and compelled him to fly to the eastern shore of the bay of *Cheespeak*; and had not *Bacon* died in good time, he had probably made himself sovereign of *Virginia*. Upon his death Sir *William* returned to his government, and the people to their duty, since which there have been no material alterations in the state of *Virginia*; but they have neglected making silk,
- d wine, and every other branch of business which the soil and climate seemed proper for, and employed themselves solely in the planting and curing of tobacco.

It is computed there are in *Virginia* upwards of 100,000 souls, besides servants and slaves, which are above twice that number. The government is formed upon the *English* model; the governor acts as king; the council supplies the place of a house of lords, and the house of representatives the commons. The present governor is major-general *Amberst*.

- MARYLAND*, adjoining *Virginia*, a little higher up the coast, is bounded by *Pensylvania* on the north; by another part of *Pensylvania*, and the *Atlantic Ocean*, on the east; by *Virginia* on the south; and by the *Apalachian Mountains* on the west. It is about 140 miles in length, and 135 in breadth; and, as well as *Virginia*, may be divided into the lowlands
- e next the sea, the hilly country towards the heads of the rivers, and the *Apalachian Mountains* beyond, which are exceeding high. The rivers are here capable of receiving large ships, which, with the numerous bays and creeks that indent the land on every side, give the seamen an opportunity of bringing their vessels up to the planters doors to receive their freights. The air of this country is excessive hot some part of the summer, and equally cold in winter, when the north-west wind blows. Their winters are not of more than three or four months duration, and in these they seldom have one month of bad weather; all the rest they are happy in a clear air, and bright sun, and are scarce ever troubled with fogs. Tobacco is planted and cultivated here with as much application as in *Virginia*, and their principal traffic with *England* is in this article: though the country produces most of the
- f grain and fruits of *Europe* and *America*. The planters live in farms, dispersed all over the country, chiefly near the banks of rivers, or on the sea coast. They seem to have an aversion to reside in towns here, as well as in *Virginia*, or rather they find it more convenient for the management of their plantations.

- MARYLAND* was discovered in the year 1606, when *Virginia* was first planted, and for some time was esteemed a part of *Virginia*, till king *Charles I.* in 1632, granted all that part of *Virginia*, which lay north of *Patowmac River*, and was not then planted, to the Right Hon. *Cecilius Calvert*, lord *Baltimore*, of the kingdom of *Ireland*, and to his heirs; which was afterwards named *Maryland*, in honour of the then queen-consort *Henrietta-Maria*. The *Baltimore* family were deprived of the government of this province, during
- g the civil wars in *England*, but recovered it again on the restoration of king *Charles II.* and they still remain proprietors. The estate enjoyed by them here is one of the most considerable of any subject of *Great Britain* abroad. The first adventurers being Roman Catholic gentlemen, followed by many families of that persuasion, who came over from
- England*

Maryland.



England to avoid the penal laws, most of the planters still profess that religion. They were constantly from the beginning upon good terms with the *Indians*, and this soon occasioned the colony to be in a very flourishing condition.

Pennsylvania,  
New York,  
and the Jer-  
seys.

FROM *Maryland*, we may proceed to *Pennsylvania* and *New-York*, with the *Jerseys*. The first is bounded by the country of the *Iroquois*, or Five Nations, on the north; by *De la War River*, which divides it from the *Jerseys*, on the east; and by *Maryland* on the south and west; being 200 miles in length and the same in breadth. The coast is flat near the sea, like the adjacent colonies, but rises gradually, having the *Apalachian Mountains* on the west.

*NEW-YORK*, with the *Jerseys*, are bounded by *Canada* on the north; by *New-England* on the east; by the *American Sea* on the south; and by *De la War River*, which divides them from *Pennsylvania*, on the west. The south part of *New-York*, and the *Jerseys*, are low flat countries, but ascending twenty or thirty miles up *Hudson's River* to the north, the country is rocky and mountainous, and covered with wood, where it has not been cleared by the planters.

THE merchandize of these plantations consists of horses, pipe-staves, pork, beef, and fish, salted and barrelled up; skins and furs; all sorts of grain, as wheat, rye, pease, oats, barley, buck-wheat, *Indian corn*, *Indian pease* and beans, pot-ashes, wax, &c. with which they supply the sugar colonies, and in return import from them and other places, rum, sugar, melasses, silver, negroes, salt, and wine; and from *Great Britain*, household goods, and cloathing of all kinds; hardware, tools, and toys. They traffic also with the logwood cutters in the bay of *Honduras*, and clandestinely with the *Spanish* settlements, exchanging the manufactures of *Europe* for treasure, which they send to *England* as merchandize; of their dried and salted fish they export a great deal to *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Italy*, and other countries of *Europe*, and of late great quantities of timber to the same places, which is become to them a very profitable branch of business. Their trade with the *Indians* consists but in few articles; they receive of the natives chiefly skins and furs of their wild beasts, for which they give them cloathing, arms, ammunition, rum, and other spirits, in return. *Pennsylvania*, the *Jerseys*, and *New York*, appear extremely proper to produce hemp and flax where they are cultivated.

SIR *Walter Raleigh* was the first adventurer that attempted to plant colonies on these shores in the reign of queen *Elizabeth*, and, in honour of that princess, gave all the eastern coast of *North America*, the name of *Virginia*. Mr. *Hudson*, an *Englishman*, sailing to that part of the coast which lies between *Virginia* and *New-England*, in the beginning of the reign of king *James I.* and being about to make a settlement at the mouth of *Hudson's River*, the *Dutch* gave him a sum of money to dispose of his interest in this country to them, and in the year 1608, began to plant it, and by virtue of this purchase laid claim to all those countries which are now denominated *New York*, *New Jersey*, and *Pennsylvania*; but there remaining some part of this coast which was not planted by the *Hollanders*, the *Swedes* sent a fleet of ships thither, and took possession of it for that crown; but the *Dutch*, having a superior force in the neighbourhood, compelled the *Swedes* to submit to their dominion, allowing them, however, to enjoy the plantations they had settled. The *English* not admitting that either the *Hollander* or the *Swede* had any right to countries first discovered and planted by a subject of *England*, and part of them at that time possessed by the subjects of *Great-Britain*, under charters from queen *Elizabeth* and king *James I.* king *Charles II.* during the first *Dutch* war, in 1664, granted the countries of *New York*, the *Jerseys*, and *Pennsylvania*, the *Dutch* had usurped the possession of, to his brother *James* duke of *York*; and Sir *Robert Car* being sent over with a squadron of men of war and land forces, and summoning the *Dutch* governor of the city of *New Amsterdam*, (now *New York*) to surrender, he thought fit to obey the summons, and yield that capital to the *English*. The rest of the places in the possession of the *Dutch* and the *Swedes* followed his example, and these countries were confirmed to the *English* by the *Dutch*, at the next treaty of peace between the two nations. The duke of *York* afterwards parcelled out these countries to under-proprietors, among whom *William Penn*, son of Sir *William Penn*, admiral in the *Dutch* wars, was one. All the rest of the under-proprietors, some time after, surrendered their charter to the crown, whereby *New York* and the *Jerseys* became royal governments; but *Penn* retained that part of the country which had been granted to him; and king *Charles II.* having made him another grant in 1680, of the rest of that country which now constitutes the rest of *Pennsylvania*, he began to plant them in the year 1681. The *Dutch* and *Swedish* inhabitants chusing still to reside in this country, as they did in *New York* and the *Jerseys*, they and their descendants enjoy the same privileges as the rest of his majesty's subjects in these plantations do, and are now in a manner the same people with the *English*, speaking their language, and being governed by their laws and customs. Mr. *Penn*, however, notwithstanding the grants made by the crown and the duke of *York*, did not esteem himself the real proprietor of the lands granted



- a granted him, till he had given the *Indians* a valuable consideration, or what they esteemed such, for their country: he assembled therefore their sachems or princes, and purchased countries of a very large extent of them, for a very moderate price, as they made scarce any other use of their country, than to hunt in it. He paid them for it in cloth, tools, and utensils, to the infinite satisfaction of the natives, who still retained more lands than they could possibly use, being very few in number. *Pennsylvania* is now one of the most flourishing colonies we have in *North America*, having never had any quarrel with the natives. Whenever they desire to extend their settlements, they purchase new lands of the sachems, never taking any thing from them by force. The present governor of *New York* is *Robert Montgon, Esq;* and of *Jersey*, *Sir William Franklin*, knight. The proprietors of *Pennsylvania* are *Thomas* and *Riccard Penn*.

b THE air and seasons in *Pennsylvania*, *New York*, and the *Jerseys*, are somewhat milder than in

- c *NEW ENGLAND* which comprehends the colonies of the *Massachusetts*, *New Hampshire*, *Connecticut*, *Rhode Island*, and *Providence Plantations*; and is situated between 67 and 73 degrees of west longitude, and between 41 and 45 degrees of north latitude, bounded by *Canada* on the north west; by *Nova Scotia* or *Acadia*, on the north east; by the *Atlantic Ocean* on the east and south; and by the province of *New York* on the west; being 300 miles long, and from 100 to 200 broad. The land near the sea is generally low, but farther up the country it rises into hills, and on the north east is rocky and mountainous. The north and north west winds blowing over a long tract of frozen country, are excessive cold, which makes the winters here much severer and longer than in *Old England*, the ground being also covered with snow, and the shipping on the coast frozen up several months; but then the weather is more constant, and not variable as in *Old England*, and the short summer much hotter: the climate too appears to be as healthful as in any of our *American* plantations.

- d THE fruits of *Old England* come to great perfection here, particularly peaches and apples; but *English* wheat not thriving so well, the inhabitants make use chiefly of maize, or *Indian corn*, one grain of which frequently produces 1200 grains, and sometimes 2000. This corn is of three several colours, blue, white and yellow. Besides the forest trees of *Old England*, they have cedar, cypress, pine, and fir trees, which last are of a prodigious bulk, and furnish the royal navy of *England* with masts and yards, and they draw from these and other trees, pitch, tar, and rosin; turpentine, gums, and balm; and the soil is proper for hemp and flax.

THE animals which seem almost peculiar to *New England* and the rest of *North America* are, the moose deer and the beaver; but they have now almost all *European* animals in as great perfection and plenty as we have them here. The spermaceti whale is found upon this coast, of which, and other whales, they take great numbers, and send some ships every year to fish for whales in *Greenland*: hence it is that we receive all the whale-bone and whale oil we import, except what we purchase of the *Dutch* and *Hamburgers*.

- e As ships may be built and rigged out with the produce of the soil, ship-building is become a considerable employment in this country. They also manufacture coarse linen and woollen cloth for their own use; and not long since have ventured upon other manufactures, as of hats, paper, sugar baking, and distilling, to the prejudice of their mother-country. They have a great trade by sea to the *British* sugar colonies, and with the *Dutch* at *Surinam*, and *Curassou* near *Terra Firma*, whither they send horses, salt provisions, and lumber. They also send ships to the bay of *Honduras* for logwood, which they transport to *Europe*; as they do sugar from the *West Indies*, and fish from *Newfoundland*.

- f THERE was no attempt made to settle *New England* till the reign of king *James I.* who by letters patent dated the 10th of *April*, 1606, erected two companies, empowering them to send colonies to *Virginia*, as all the north-east coast of *America* was then called. One of these companies was called the *Plymouth* company, who for some time traded only with the natives of *North Virginia*, or *New England*, for furs, and fished upon the coast. About the year 1619, some dissenters of the independent persuasion, who were uneasy at being required to conform to the church of *England*, having purchased the *Plymouth* patent, and obtained another from king *James* to send colonies to *North Virginia*, now *New England*, embarked 150 men on board a ship, which sailed from *Plymouth* the 6th of *September* 1620, and arrived at *Cape Cod* in *New England* on the 9th of *November* following, where they built a town, and called it by the name of *New Plymouth*. The *Indians* were at this time too much engaged in wars among themselves, to give these strangers any disturbance; and luckily for them *Massasoit*, prince of the *Massachusetts* nation, entered into an alliance, offensive and defensive, with the *English*, by whose assistance he hoped to make a conquest of the *Narraganset* nation, with which he was then at war. He also consented to acknowledge the king of *England* his sovereign, and made a cession of part of his country to the new planters. Several other princes followed his example. Ships arriving every day almost



with planters and provisions; the colony soon became well established, when differences arising upon account of religion, had like to have been of very bad consequence. The independents, who were the most numerous, not allowing a toleration to any other sect or persuasion, several of the adventurers removed to other parts of the country, and others returned home, whereby the colony was so weakened, that if the *Indians* had not been engaged in civil war, the *English* would infallibly have been driven out of the country. In the mean time another set of adventurers in 1627, purchased a grant of the *Plymouth* company, of all that part of *New England* which lies between the rivers *Merimac* and *Charles*; and, to strengthen their title, procured a grant of it from king *Charles* in 1628. This new company fitted out six ships, with 300 planters, furnished with live cattle, and all manner of stores and provisions. In 1630, they built *Boston* on the *Massachusetts Bay*, now the capital of *New England*. The same year, 1630, king *Charles* granted part of the country of *Connecticut* to the earl of *Warwick*, which was afterwards purchased of that earl by *William* lord viscount *Say and Seale*, *Robert* lord *Brook*, *Sir Nathaniel Rich*, *Charles Fiennes*, *John Pym*, and *John Hampden*, Esqrs. gentlemen at that time disaffected to the government, who designed that plantation as a place of refuge, in case they had not succeeded in their opposition to king *Charles*; and they were once upon the point of transporting themselves thither, with the chief of their party, being in doubt whether they should carry their point in the senate: even *Oliver Cromwell*, it is said, was once on board, in order to have transported himself to *New England*; and there appears to have been a proclamation published in 1637, prohibiting people to transport themselves without licence; whereby *Cromwell*, *Sir Arthur Haselrig*, *Mr. Hampden*, and several more, were prevented going; but prevailing afterwards against the crown, they sold their interest in the plantations to others. Another set of adventurers planted *New Hampshire*, and others *Providence* and *Rhode Island*, the last being chiefly *Quakers*, driven out of the *Massachusetts* colony by the independents, who had long persecuted them, and actually hanged some of the *Quakers* for not conforming to their sect: thus all the *New England* provinces were planted and well peopled within the space of twenty years, reckoning from the arrival of the first colony at *New Plymouth*, during which time they were very little interrupted by the *Indians*; but the *English* colony of *Connecticut* beginning to erect fortresses, and extend their settlements to the westward, without leave of the natives, the *Indians* were alarmed, apprehending they should in time be dispossessed of their country, and enslaved by these foreigners. The sachem *Metacomet*, therefore, (to whom the *English* gave the name of *Philip*) the son of *Massassit*, who first entered into an alliance with the *English*, observing the danger his country was in, and that the *English* now no longer acted as allies, but tyrannized over his people, and had in a manner deprived him of his authority, dispatched messengers privately through all the tribes of the *Indians*, inviting them to take up arms in defence of their country, which they did, and succeeded in several engagements at first; but their prince *Philip* being killed by a musket-shot, the *English* at length prevailed. Great numbers of the *Indians* were massacred, and others were driven out of their country, and joined the *French* in *Canada*, who promising them protection, and frequently assisting them in their invasion of the *British* settlements, it is no wonder that they ever since remained attached to the *French* interest.

THE four provinces into which *New England* is divided have different constitutions, and generally different governors. The province of the *Massachusetts*, comprehending *New Plymouth* and *Maine*, are included in the same charter. *New Hampshire* has another charter, and is a distinct government. *Connecticut* and *Newhaven* are included in a third charter. *Rhode-Island* and *Providence-Plantation* have another charter, and no dependence on any of the rest. As to the constitution of the *Massachusetts* colony, the crown appoints the governor, and all the officers of the admiralty; and the power of the militia is intirely in the hands of the governor, as captain-general; all the judges, justices, and sheriffs, are nominated by the governor and council, and the governor has a negative in the choice of any member of the council; all laws of the general assembly are sent to *England* to receive the approbation of the crown, and no act of government is valid, without the governor's consent in writing. As to the colonies of *Connecticut* and *Rhode-Island*, though their governments are distinct and independent of each other, yet is their constitution much the same, for each are impowered, by their respective charters, to elect their own governor, deputy-governor, council, and assembly; to appoint officers both civil and military, and to make laws for the government of their respective colonies. As to the colony of *New Hampshire*, it is immediately dependent on the crown; the king appoints their governor, lieutenant-governor, council, magistrates, and officers; but the freemen elect their representatives, or lower house, as in *Old England*; but the laws in all the colonies are liable to be altered and repealed by the parliament of *Great Britain*. From whence it appears, that the *Massachusetts* colony, which is the chief of the *New England* colonies, has a different



- a different constitution from any of the rest. There is a mixture in it of the royal and the charter governments; for though the king appoints the governor, he depends on the general assembly for his subsistence, and the general assembly chuse the council, which is equivalent to our house of lords; but then the governor can reject any member of the council, chosen by the lower house; and the power of the militia, and the collection of the customs, is intirely in the crown. The present governors of *New England* are, for *Massachusetts Bay*, *Francis Bernard*, Esq; for *New Hampshire*, *Benning Wentworth*, Esq; for *Rhode-Island*, *S. Ward*, Esq; and for *Connecticut*, *Thomas Fitch*, Esq;

- b BESIDES a *New England*, there is a *New Scotland* in *America*, commonly called by its Latin name, *Nova Scotia*, and by the French *Acadie*. It is bounded by the river of *St. Lawrence* on the north; by the bay of *St. Lawrence* and the *Atlantic Ocean*, on the east; by the same ocean and *New England* on the south; and by *Canada*, on the west. It is computed to be 500 miles in length, and 400 in breadth. Great part of this country is still a forest; but where it has been cleared and cultivated, it affords good corn and pasture. The timber is fit for building, and will produce pitch and tar; and the soil is proper for hemp and flax, so that all manner of naval stores might be had here. There is also at present plenty of *European* cattle; but any deficiency may be readily supplied by the great abundance of deer, wild fowl, all manner of game, and the finest cod-fisheries in the world on the coast.

- c In the year 1690, Sir *William Phipps*, governor of *New England*, raised an army, which he transported to *Nova Scotia*, and took *Port Royal*, or *Annapolis*, from the French; and reduced another French settlement at the mouth of *St. John's* river, in the bay of *Fundy*, of which the English kept possession till the peace of *Ryswick*, in 1697, when king *William* thought fit to cede them to *France*, notwithstanding they belonged to *Great Britain* originally; but *Annapolis*, with all *Nova Scotia*, was restored to *Great Britain* by the treaty of *Utrecht*, in 1714. A regiment was then sent over to take possession of *Annapolis*, the capital, but no provision was made to plant the rest of *Nova Scotia* till the year 1749, when about 3000 English families, under the command of governor *Cornwallis*, were sent thither, and erected the town of *Halifax* in *Chebueto Bay*; and since that several other embarkations have been made, so that there are not less than 5 or 6000 inhabitants there at present.
- d In the late war, one of the disputes between *Great Britain* and *France*, was not whether *Nova Scotia* was yielded to *Great Britain* by the treaty of *Utrecht*, but what were the bounds of *Nova Scotia*, which the British commissaries demonstrated to extend to the river of *St. Lawrence*, on the north, by several treaties between the two nations: whereas the French insisted, that only part of the peninsula was ceded to *Great Britain*, being then, indeed, possessed of the north part of *Nova Scotia*, which is near three parts of the whole. The English commissaries observed also, that part of the French in *Nova Scotia* swore allegiance to the crown of *Great Britain*, and the rest of them removed to *Quebec*, capital of the French settlements in *Canada*, soon after the peace of *Utrecht*; but it appearing that the French, who remained in *Nova Scotia*, not regarding their oaths to the king of *Great Britain*, constantly adhered to *France*, it was thought fit to remove them from thence, and disperse them in the rest of the British plantations. The present governor of *Nova Scotia*, *Cape Breton*, &c. is colonel *Montagu Wilmot*.

- e THE last place that remained in *North America* to the English before the late war, and still in their possession, is the country called *New Britain*, or *Esquimaux*, and *British Canada*, comprehending *Hudson's Bay*. It is bounded by unknown lands about the pole, on the north; by the *Atlantic Ocean*, and *Baffin's Bay*, on the west; by the bay and river of *St. Lawrence* and *Canada* on the south; and by unknown lands on the west: being about 1600 miles in length, and 1200 in breadth; but if we should extend it as far as our mariners have discovered to the north, we might make a line drawn through  $81\frac{1}{2}$  degrees, the northern boundary; for captain *Hudson* sailed as high as  $81\frac{1}{2}$ , in the year 1607, and captain *Baffin* as far in the years 1623 and 1624.

f THERE are very high mountains in the north, which being perpetually covered with snow, and the wind blowing from thence three-fourths of the year, is one occasion of that excessive cold which is found on this continent, beyond any thing that has been known on the eastern continent, under the same parallels of latitude.

- g THE principal settlements belonging to our *Hudson's Bay* company at present are, *Churchill*, *Nelson*, *New Severn*, and *Albany*, on the west side of *Hudson's Bay*, and the forts *Charles* and *Rupert* at the bottom of the bay. The lands near the south end or bottom of the bay produce large timber, and plenty of herbage, and it is presumed would produce corn, if cultivated; but towards the north there are few vegetables. The country about fort *Nelson* is a low marshy soil, producing juniper, birch, poplar, and small wood of the spruce or fir kind, and the surface produces chiefly mois; neither corn nor pasture is to be expected in the north, where the earth, even in summer, remains frozen six feet deep, and the



the mountains are perpetually covered with snow. The soil of *New Britain*, or the eastern shore of *Eskimaux*, is much the same as that on the western side of the bay, under the same parallels. The north part of *Eskimaux* is usually called *Terra de Labrador*. a

THE animals in this country are the moose-deer or elk, stags, rein-deer, bears, tygers, buffaloes, wolves, otters, lynx's, martens, squirrels, wild cats, and hares : of the feathered kind, geese, bustards, ducks, partridges, and all manner of wild fowl : of fish, whales, morises, seals, cod-fish, and a white fish preferable to herrings ; and in the rivers and fresh waters, pike, perch, carp, and trout. The foxes, hares, and partridges turn white in the winter ; the partridges are as large as hens. There have been taken at port *Nelson*, in one season, 90,000 partridges, and 25,000 hares.

THE food of the *Indians* is chiefly what they take in hunting or fishing. The *English* kill beef, pork, mutton, and venison, at the beginning of the winter. These are preserved by the frost six or seven months free from putrefaction. Also geese, partridges, and other fowls, killed at the same time, are hung up with their feathers on, and guts in, yet hold good all the winter. In lakes and standing waters, which are not ten feet deep, the water is frozen to the bottom and the fish killed ; but in waters of greater depth, and rivers near the sea, the fish are caught all the winter, by cutting holes in the ice, to which they come for air. As soon as they are taken out of the water, they are immediately frozen and stiff, but may be thawed again by being immeried in cold water ; and thus it is that the salt provisions are thawed and freshened here : the meat is let down through a hole in the ice into the water, and in a little time it becomes soft and pliable, as if it never was frozen, and eats very well ; whereas, if roasted or boiled when frozen, it will be spoiled, and eat as if it was rotten. b

A THOUSAND *Indian* men, and some women, in about 60 canoes, come down usually to port *Nelson* to trade with the *English*. They seem to come from far distant countries, and are much delayed in their voyages, by being obliged to go on shore every day to hunt for provisions ; for their canoes are so small, holding only two men and a pack of 100 beaver skins, that they cannot carry much provision with them. The *Indians* are of the usual stature of other men, and of a tawny complexion. In the north of *English* bay, there is a race, (as observed in treating of *America* in general,) much whiter, enemies to the southern *Indians*, and may be supposed to come from *Greenland*. c

THE eastern shores of this country were first discovered by *Sebastian Cabot* for *Henry VII.* king of *England*, in the year 1498, and afterwards visited by *Davis* and other *British* mariners. Mr. *Hudson* made four voyages thither, between the years 1607 and 1611 ; in the last of which his men forced him and eight more of their officers into a boat, and left them to starve in the bottom of the bay, and they were never heard of more ; but the ship and the rest of the men returned home. Sir *Thomas Button* pursued the discovery in 1612, and captain *James* in 1631, in hopes of finding a north west passage to *China*. Captain *Gilham* sailed to the bottom of the bay in 1667, and at his return his owners procured a patent for planting this country in 1670. The first *English* governor who went thither was *Charles Batley*, Esq ; who built a fort on *Rupert River*, calling it *Charles-Fort*, and soon after settled another factory at *Nelson*. In the year 1684, the chief *English* factory was at *Albany*, and a fort erected for its defence. The *French* invaded our settlements, and took fort *Rupert* and *Albany*, in July 1686, though we were then at peace with *France*. In king *William's* war of 1693, the *English* recovered their settlements again. During the war in queen *Anne's* reign, the *French* reduced all our settlements except *Albany*, but were obliged to restore them at the peace of *Utrecht* in 1714, and the company have remained in the possession of them ever since. d

WE are now to return southwards to give an account of *Canada* and *Louisiana*, the former of which the *British* arms made an intire conquest of in the late war ; and the same was ceded and guarantied in full right to the crown of *Great Britain*, by the fourth article of the definitive treaty of peace. Geographers are not agreed in fixing the limits of *Canada*, so that it will be sufficient here to say, that as its extent is very considerable, both in length and breadth, its temperature, climate, soil, &c. cannot but vary accordingly : all that part which was inhabited by the *French*, and which is mostly along the banks of the great river *St. Lawrence*, is, generally speaking, excessive cold in winter, though hot in summer, as most of those *American* tracts commonly are, which do not lie too far to the northward. The rest of the country, as far as it is known, is intersected with large woods, lakes, and rivers, which render it still colder. It has, however, no inconsiderable quantity of good fertile lands, which by experience are found capable of producing wheat, barley, rye, and other grain, grapes and fruit, and indeed almost every thing that grows in *France* ; but its chief product is tobacco, which it yields in large quantities. There is likewise plenty of stags, elks, bears, foxes, martens, wild cats, and other wild creatures in the woods, besides wild-fowl and other game. The southern parts, in particular, breed great numbers of e



a wild bulls, deer of a small size, divers sorts of roe-bucks, goats, wolves, &c. The meadow-grounds, which are all well watered, yield excellent grass, and breed great quantities of large and small cattle; and where the arable land is well manured, it produces large and rich crops. The mountains abound with coal mines, and some, we are told, of silver and other metals, though we have not learned that any great advantage has been made of them. The marshy grounds, which are likewise very extensive, swarm with otters, beavers, &c.

b THE lakes are both large and numerous; the principal of which are those of *Erie*, *Michigan*, *Huron*, *Superior*, *Frontenac* or *Ontario*, *Temiscaming*, besides others of a smaller size; but the largest of them is that which they name *Superior*, or *Upper-Lake*, which is situated the farthest north, and is reckoned 100 leagues in length, and about 70 where broadest, and hath several considerable islands on it; the chief whereof are the *Royal Isle*, *Pont Chartrain*, *Mauripas*, *St. Anne*, *St. Ignatius*, *Hocquart*, *Minong*, and a number of smaller ones.

c THE whole country abounds with very large rivers, which it is endless to enter into a detail of; the two principal are those of *St. Lawrence* and the *Mississippi*; the former of which abounds with no less variety than plenty of fine fish, and receives several considerable rivers in its course. The entrance into the bay of *St. Lawrence* lies between the *Cape de Retz*, on the side of *Newfoundland*, and the north cape in that called the *Royal Island*, or more commonly *Cape Breton*. The *Mississippi*, which runs through the greatest part of the province of *Louisiana*, from north to south, is called by the *French* the river of *St. Louis*, and by the natives *Mississippi*, on account of the vast tract of ground which it overflows at certain seasons; and by the *Spaniards*, *la Palissada*, from the prodigious quantities of timber which they send down upon it in floats to the sea. It is navigable above 450 leagues up from its mouth. The spring-head of this river is not yet satisfactorily known; but it is certain that it discharges itself into the gulph of *Mexico* by two branches, which form an island of considerable length.

d CANADA, in its largest sense, is divided into eastern and western, the former of which is commonly known by the name of *Canada*, or *New France*, and the latter, which is of much later discovery, *Louisiana*, in honour of the late *Louis XIV.* The eastern *Canada* contains the following provinces, viz. 1. *Canada*, properly so called; 2. *Sanguenay*; 3. *Acadia*; 4. *Atrurembeg*; 5. *New England*; 6. *New Holland*; 7. *New Sweden*; the five last of which have been dismembered from it some time since; so that there are but two provinces in this eastern *Canada* that belonged to the *French* before the late war, viz. *Canada-Propre* and *Sanguenay*. The former of these, including all to the north and west of the great river and lakes, contained formerly twenty-eight tribes, but at present is divided into the thirteen following provinces, most of them named from their capital towns or forts, viz. 1. *Gaspé*; 2. *St. Jean Isle*; 3. *Miscon Isle*; 4. *Richlieu*; 5. *Les Trois Rivières*, or the *Three Rivers*; 6. *Montreal Isle*; 7. *Fort Frontenac*; 8. *De Conti*; 9. *St. Francois*; 10. *Notre Dame des Anges*; 11. *St. Alexis*; 12. *St. Michael*; 13. *St. Joseph*. *Sanguenay* contains four nations or tribes, and is divided into the six following provinces or cantons, called so from their chief towns or forts, viz. 1. *Quebec*, a bishoprick; 2. *Sillery*; 3. *Tadoussac*; 4. *Port-neuf*, or *New-port*; e 5. *Chicbequeduc*; 6. *Port St. Nicholas*.

f CANADA-PROPER is by far the most considerable province of all this country, the farthest subdued, the best peopled, and the best cultivated. It has on the north the *Terra de Labrador*, *Hudson's-Bay*, and *New Britain*; on the east the great river *Sanguenay* divides it from the province of that name; on the south the great province of *Louisiana*, and the *Iroquois* and *Etechemins*; as to the northern boundaries, they are not known, and must be left to time to discover.

g THIS province is allowed to have greater plenty of beavers, and larger and finer than any other that are bred throughout *Canada*. These, as well as the castors, are very much valued, not only for their furs, but the latter for their testicles, which have been from long experience found to be an efficacious remedy against several diseases, especially those of the hysteric kind; and accordingly the natives carry on a large commerce of both. The river *Canada* abounds with variety of fish, especially carp of a prodigious size, and white porpoises as large as oxen, besides great numbers of crocodiles, and other amphibious creatures.

h THIS colony, before the late war, was said by some to be inhabited by 180,000 *French*, who lived in affluence and tranquility: they were free from all taxes, and had full liberty to hunt, fish, fell timber for fuel or building, and to sow and plant as much land as they could cultivate. Their greatest hardship was the winter cold, which is there so excessive from *December* to *April*, that the greatest rivers freeze over, and the snow lies commonly two or three feet deep on the ground, though this part lies no farther north than from 40 to 48 degrees of latitude.

i TROIS RIVIERES, or the *Three Rivers*, so called from the three rivers which join their currents about a quarter of a mile below it, and fall into the great one of *St. Lawrence*, was the capital of the *French* government, and much resorted to, by several nations, which



come down these rivers to it, and trade with it in various kinds of furs. The town here is surrounded with pallisades, and advantageously situated in the center of the country, and consequently free from the incursions of the savage *Iroquois*. It was the residence of the governor, who kept a major under him; and it has a monastery of Recollects, who act as curates. It was formerly the common emporium, where the wild natives brought their furs, and other commodities, for sale, before the *English* seized it in the reign of king *Charles I.* and their settlement at *Montreal*. The colony was again restored in 1635, and the monks who had settled a mission there, returned to it in 1673. The country about it is pleasant, and fertile in corn, fruits, &c. and has a good number of lordships and handsome seats. On each side of the river stand a great number of genteel houses, scarce above a gun-shot from each other, and the river is full of pleasure and fishing boats, which serve for catching vast quantities of fish.

*MONTREAL* is situated on an island of the same name, in the river of *St. Lawrence*, is about fourteen leagues long, and four wide where broadest, and is very fertile in corn, fruits, &c. This town carried on a prodigious trade with the natives, whose chiefs went first to pay their duty to the governor, and make him some presents, in order to prevent the prices of goods, which they came for, being raised to an exorbitant height. This concourse began about *June*, and some of them came hither from places distant above 500 leagues; the fair was kept along the banks of the river, where they exchanged their commodities with the *French*; and centinels were placed at proper distances, to prevent the disorders which might otherwise happen from such vast crowds of different nations. This concourse lasted for near three months. The *Indians* brought thither all sorts of furs, which they bartered for guns, powder, ball, great-coats, and other garments of the *French* manufacture; iron and brass work, and trinkets of all sorts.

*SANGUENAY*, a province in the eastern *Canada*, is divided on the west, from that properly so called, by the river of its name. It has on the north-east the nation called *Cres- tinaux*; on the north-west that of the *Esquimaux*; on the south-east it is bounded by the river *St. Lawrence*, and on the south-west by that of *Sanguenay*, at the mouth of which is the town of *Three Rivers*, above-mentioned. Its extent is computed from this town, which is the frontiers of *Canada Proper*, quite to the farther end of the bay called the *Seven Isles*.

THE territory and lands on each side of the river were found so indifferent, that the colony which settled at *Tadoussac* suffered so much there, that it quite discouraged the *French*, for a long time, from settling; but at length, upon their sailing up as high as *Quebec*, they found such encouragement as was sufficiently productive of their prosperity there.

THE river of *Sanguenay* springs from the lake of *St. John*, and falls into that of *St. Lawrence*, at the town of *Tadoussac*. The haven is capable of containing twenty-five men of war, and has good anchorage and shelter from storms, it being of a round figure and deep, and surrounded at a distance with very high rocks. This province is much the same, as to its soil, climate, and inhabitants, with that of *Canada Proper*. It is remarkable, indeed, for an extraordinary plenty of marble of several kinds, insomuch that not only the principal towns, forts, churches, and palaces, but even the houses of private men are built of it.

*QUEBEC* is the capital of this province; and the other principal places are, *Sillery*, *Tadoussac*, *Port Neuf*, *Beau-Port*, *St. Anne*, *Chicopee de Port*, *St. Nicholas*, *Port Cartier*, and *Necouba*.

*QUEBEC*, the metropolis of all *Canada*, and an episcopal see, in latitude of 46. 53, and west longitude 70. 40, is situated on the confluence of the rivers *St. Lawrence* and *St. Charles*, or the *Little River*, and on the north side of the former, and about 140 leagues from the sea. The haven is large, and capable of containing at least 100 ships of the line; and the great river whereon it stands, though about four leagues wide, here contracts itself at once to the breadth of about a mile; and it is on that account that the name of *Quebec* was given it, which in the *Algonquin Indian* language signifies a shrinking or growing narrower.

THE *Iroquois* are the most considerable, and best known, of all the *Indian* nations in these parts; they are seated along the north side of the lake *Ontario*, *Frontenac*, and along the river of their name, which is that which carries the waters of the lake into the river of *St. Lawrence*. They are bounded on the north by the nations called *Algonquins* and *Outavais*, and the settlements at and about *Montreal*; on the east and south-east by *New England*, *New-York*, *Jersey*, &c. on the south by part of *Canada Proper* and the lake *Erie*; and on the west by that of the *Hurons*, and the canal between these two lakes. Their soil is rich and high; their water-melons, pompions, &c. are very large, sweet, and of a fine colour and flavour; but they are too proud and lazy to give themselves much trouble about cultivating their lands, which is perhaps the cause of their producing so little.

THE *Illinois* inhabit near the lake and river of that name; they live in villages at a great distance



a distance from each other, on the marshy plains, on both sides of the river, near which are large woods and hills, covered with a delightful verdure about nine months in the year, whilst the current thereof, which is mostly south-west, is so smooth and agreeable, that vessels of a considerable size may sail up and down it with ease and safety, for a course of 120 leagues, before it falls into that of the *Mississippi*. The lands on each side afford such plenty of pasture, that they are covered with most sorts of cattle; and the river swarms with water-fowl of divers species.

*CANADA*, since it became a colony of *Great Britain*, has been divided into the three governments of *Quebec*, *Montreal*, and *Trois Rivières*. The present governors, are, for the first, the Hon. Brigadier General *James Murray*; for the second, Major General *Thomas Gage*; and for the third, Colonel *Robert Burton*.

b *WESTERN-CANADA*, or *Louisiana*, contains a vast tract of land, and, according to the most modest of the *French* geographers, is bounded on the south by the gulph of *Mexico*; on the north by the *Illinois*, last mentioned, and other *Indian* nations; on the east by part of *Florida*, *Georgia*, and *Carolina*; and on the west by *New Mexico* and *New Spain*; but indeed these limits must now be much contracted, pursuant to the seventh and twentieth articles of the late definitive treaty of peace. Louisiana.

THE various rivers, frequently overflowing this country, render it in general extremely fertile and pleasant. Nothing is more delightful than the meadows, which are fit for seed of all kinds. In some parts, the soil yields three or four crops in a year, for the winter consists only in heavy rains, without any nipping frosts. Almost all sorts of trees that *Europe* affords are to be found here, besides variety of others unknown to us; and some of them very estimable, such as tall and admirable cedars, a tree that distils gum, which is said to excel all our *European* noblest perfumes; and cotton-trees, which are of a prodigious height. The whole country abounds with an infinite variety of game, fowl, cattle, and indeed every thing that life can desire. But the chief glory of *Louisiana* is the famous *Mississippi*, already mentioned, in many respects the finest river in the world: it is free from shoals and cataracts, and navigable within sixty leagues of its source. The channel is every where deep, and the current gentle, except at a certain season, when, like the *Nile*, it floods. Its banks are adorned with a delightful variety of meadows and groves, and inhabited by almost 200 different nations, whom the *French* found tractable to their measures. Our *American* seamen assert, that several of their rivers are fit to receive ships of the largest burdens, and have several safe and commodious harbours. What renders the *Mississippi* more considerable, is a great number of other large and navigable rivers, that run from the eastward and westward, and mix at last with its stream. Of the first, M. *De Sale*, in the relation he presented to Count *Frontenac* of his voyage on this river, affirms there are six or seven, each 300 leagues in length; that fall below the *Illinois*; and proposes it as a matter of the last importance, that the discovery of them should be carried on, to prevent the *English* of *Carolina* from interfering with the *French* in their commerce with the *Indians*, since some of these rivers take their rise from the *Apalachian* hills, not far from our settlements in that colony.

c THE *French* settlement on the *Mississippi* is the only one in *North America*, that remained untouched from the ravages of the late war. *New Orleans* is the sea-port to all this extensive country, capable of producing every thing, sugar, wine, &c. if civilized, cultivated, and peopled, as probably in a few years it will be.

THE crown of *England* has a right, by discovery and taking possession, to all this country. Sir *Francis Drake* took possession on the west side of it, as far north as latitude 42, and a great way south of that, for queen *Elizabeth*. King *Charles II.* granted it to the ancestors of the late Doctor *Cox*; but they neglecting to settle and people it, the *French* came and built the city of *New Orleans*, fifty leagues up the river, and a fort or two about sixty miles below that city.

f THE *French*, before the late war broke out, imported from *Canada*, in beaver, 75,000 *l.* in deer-skins, 20,000 *l.* in furs, 40,000 *l.* total 135,000 *l.* The *English* import from *North America*, in the same articles, to the amount of 90,000 *l.* The great advantages, gained by the *French* from such a surprizing increase in trade, are conspicuous from the immense sums they drew annually from other countries, in return for their *American* products, as well as for their cambrics, tea, brandy, wine, and other home manufactures. It is from hence that they chiefly maintained such powerful armies, and afforded such plentiful subsidies and pensions to several powers in *Europe*, when subservient to their views and interests; and it is from hence that they built their ships of war, and nourished and maintained seamen to supply them. It is computed, that they drew from two to three millions of pounds sterling per annum from foreign countries, in return for sugars, indigo, coffee, ginger, beaver manufactured into hats, salt-fish, and other *American* products; and near one million more from *Great Britain* and *Ireland* only, in wool and cash, in return for cambrics, tea, brandy, and wine; and thereby fought us in trade, as well as in war, with our own weapons. Whether this

great

Reflections on  
the premises.



great increase of the *French* commerce was owing to the extent and fertility of their territories, or to their prudent regulations and encouragements thereof, both at home and abroad, or to the experience and vigilance of the council of commerce, we will not determine; though, perhaps, chiefly to the latter.

BUT it hence evidently appears, that most nations, who have any concern in this part of the globe, are taught by experience, that they who promote the trade of their plantations, in due subserviency to the interest of their mother-country, are likely to have the greatest share of mercantile shipping, can boast of the best nursery for seamen, enjoy an inexhaustible fund of wealth, and will always be able to maintain the sovereignty of the seas. What noble prospects of such a prosperous and flourishing state must therefore our *North American* colonies now open to our eyes, being at length happily extricated from the horrors of a bloody and expensive war, and consigned over to the sweets of peace by the expulsion of their enemies, from whom all resources for creating fresh disturbances, in those parts, seem to be entirely cut off!

BUT these fine hopes have yet only dawned upon us. The peace was scarce settled, when the avarice of some of our planters involved our *North American* colonies in a new war with the native *Indians*. The settling and encroaching on *Indian* lands and property, not yielded to us by treaty, has often been the principal foundation of *Indian* quarrels; and it cannot be disputed, that the *Indians* have no right to complain of the mischief, or to revenge themselves of the cruel reprisals we have made in defence of our injurious proceedings.

Plan for a  
lasting peace  
with the In-  
dians.

To prevent these dreadful calamities for the future, and establish a lasting harmony and good neighbourhood with the *Indians*, it would be highly expedient, if a surveyor was appointed, and paid by every province, frequently to ride the boundaries of that province, to see if any encroachments or new settlements were made on the *Indian* territories; and to make a report of his survey every three months to the governor and council of that province; and, at the annual sittings of the assembly, to deliver in a memorial of all his proceedings, that if any persons proved refractory, they might be dealt with as the house should judge proper.

WHEN the surveyor has found a new settlement on *Indian* lands, he shall immediately make a report of it to the governor and council; who shall forthwith send an order by the surveyor to the settlers, to quit the lands, and remove their stock in three months. But if they neglect to obey that order, and do not remove in the limited time, then the governor shall send sufficient force to compel them, and seize their stock, which shall be judged forfeited by their contempt. The surveyor should be a person of worth and probity, have a good salary, and give sufficient security, under a large penalty, for the faithful discharge of his office.

As our ill usage of the *Indians*, by cheating and breach of promise, deceiving, and encroaching on their lands with impunity, brings on *Indian* wars; to prevent the like for the future, an easy and effectual law may be made by parliament, for their obtaining speedy redress, when they are injured. For when the *Indians* do not receive immediate satisfaction for repeated insults and oppressions, by legal and summary methods, they will not fail, at last, to redress themselves by violence, of which we had lately a recent instance.

THE case of the *Indians* is very hard; for, after might has overcome right, it is impossible for them to obtain satisfaction by a legal course, as their evidence is not admitted in our colony courts. But if their evidence was admitted, it is impossible for them to attend, and go through the long process of our courts. They will not wait a year or two for the decision of a matter in dispute between them and our people.

THEREFORE, to prevent the *Indians* coming to cruel extremities, when they have been wronged and abused, let *Indian* advocates be appointed and paid by every province, to whom the *Indians* may come, and make their complaints, and from whom they may receive speedy justice. These advocates to be elected out of the council of each province, to be empowered by the assembly to act speedily and finally, in settling all complaints from the *Indians*.

LET a suitable place be appointed, on or near the frontiers of every province, and the advocates repair thither once or twice a year, to brighten the chain of friendship with the *Indians*, who are to have previous notice of the time and place of meeting, that what differences could not have been before settled, might then be finally determined. The advocates to be invested with full power to summons any *English* offender; and, if he doth not appear, to use force to compel him; on contumacy, to outlaw him, and confiscate his lands. If those of the council in every province refuse to be advocates for the *Indians*, such refusal shall disqualify them from being any longer of the council. If the advocates take bribes, or delay justice, they shall incur severe fines and penalties.

As our colonies grow very extensive, they may be divided into eastern and western districts. The governors and advocates that compose each district, to meet once a year near the center of that division; timely notice to be given to the neighbouring *Indians*, that if they



a they have not received ample satisfaction from the decision of the advocates, that they may appeal to this general council, with their complaints, where no means is to be omitted to settle and accommodate all differences in the most amicable manner; which will be more effectual towards making them good neighbours and peaceable allies, than all the methods taken hitherto to convert them.

As a settled and lasting peace with the *Indians* is of the greatest consequence to the future prosperity and safety of all the colonies, no excuse to be admitted from governors not attending the general council, but risque of life, which is to be certified by the affidavits of two physicians. If they are absent upon any pretence, or without such certificate, it shall disqualify them from being longer governors.

b On complaint from the *English* for injuries received from the *Indians*, the advocates for *Indian* affairs shall summon the *Indians* complained of to a conference; and use all possible fair means to bring them to make satisfaction, if the complaint appears to be just. But if satisfaction cannot be obtained, then, against the next great annual council of the governors for *Indian* affairs, timely notice shall be sent to the chiefs of the *Indian* nations round that district, and also to the *Indian* nation complained of; to attend the great council, and hear the allegations on both sides; and then fairly and equitably to examine the matter, and finally to do justice to the complainant with the concurrence of all the *Indian* chiefs there assembled. But if that *Indian* nation continues refractory, and will not submit to the judgment and determination of the great council, the council shall, then and there, engage the assistance of all the other *Indian* chiefs, to assemble their people, and join them with such a number of regular troops as may be thought sufficient to oblige the offending *Indians* to make reparation to the injured party or province.

c It may well deserve the consideration of the legislature, whether it would not be advisable to make it felony to carry rum to the *Indians*; for from their intemperate drinking it, proceed most of the disorders committed on the *English*.

#### C H A P. IV.

##### Of the American Islands.

d **T**HE islands of *America* are of no less importance than its continent. To avoid confusion, it will be best to treat of them under distinct heads; as they belong to *Spain*, *France*, *Holland*, *Great Britain*, &c.

THE *Spanish* islands in *America* are the following:

e 1. *CUBA*, which begins on the east side at latitude 20 degrees 20 minutes; touches on the north at the tropic of Cancer, and extends from longitude 74 degrees to 85 degrees 15 minutes; about 11 degrees from east to west, or 660 miles from *Cape St. Antonio* on the west, to *Cape Maize* on the east; but is very narrow in proportion, being in some parts not above twelve or fourteen leagues, and at most but 120 miles in breadth. It lies sixty miles to the west of *Hispaniola*, twenty-five leagues to the north of *Jamaica*, one hundred miles to the east of *Yucatan*, and as many to the south of *Cape Florida*; and commands the entrance of both the gulphs of *Mexico* and *Florida* and the windward passage; so that the *Spaniards*, who are the sole possessors of it, may, with a tolerable fleet, not only secure their own trade, but annoy their neighbours.

f THERE are no winters in this island; but in *July* and *August*, when the sun is vertical, the rains and storms are great, else the country would be intolerably hot. The fairest season is when the sun is farthest; and then it is hottest in the morning; for towards noon a sea-breeze springs up, which blows pretty brisk till the evening. The trade winds in these seas blow from the north-east. At the full and change of the moon, from *October* to *April*, there are brisk winds at north and north-west, which in *December* and *January* often turn into storms; though this is called the fair season.

g *CUBA* is said to have generally the best land, for so large a country, of any in *America*, and to produce all the commodities known in the *American* islands; particularly ginger, long pepper, and other spices; cassia, mastic, aloes, large cedars, and other odoriferous trees; oaks, pines, palm-trees, plenty of large vines, fine cotton-trees, and the most of that sort of tobacco from which the *Havanna* snuff is made. Two sorts of fruit, called camitor and guanavana, are also produced in this island: the first is like a *China* orange, and its tree as tall as the pear-tree, with a leaf green on one side, and of a cinnamon-colour on the other. The second is in the shape of an heart, green without, and having some thorny prickles within, and also some stones and a juice between sweet and acid; the tree is as big as that which bears the pine-apple. The other fruits are plantains, bananas, ananas, guavas, and lemons. The inhabitants have besides many large walks of cocoas and good sugar-works; but the sugars, though the best in the *West Indies*, are in no great quantity, for

Spanish Ame-  
rican islands.  
Cuba.



want of hands to cultivate the canes. Here are mines of copper, which furnish the *Spanish* plantations with this metal for all their brals guns; and gold dust being found in the sands of the rivers, it is conjectured there are mines of gold, if not of silver, in the mountains, of which a high ridge runs from the east to the west end of the island; but the *Spaniards* having destroyed all the natives, they either never discovered where the mines were, or if they did, it is supposed they are loth to venture the opening of them, for fear of an invasion; as is said to be the very case at *Florida*, where, though they have many mines towards the north sea, they rather employed themselves in others far up the country.

*CUBA* has many very good ports and harbours, which are of great advantage to ships for passing the gulph in safety. There are great conveniences near it, both for making salt and catching fish. It has mules, plenty of horses, sheep, wild boars, hogs, and cattle of a larger and better breed than any other part of *America*; together with wild and tame fowl, parrots, partridges with blue heads, and large tortoises. The cattle brought hither formerly by the *Spaniards* have multiplied to such a prodigious degree, that they run wild in the woods, though great numbers are killed purely for the hides, that are sent into *Spain*. The flesh being cut into pieces, is dried in the sun, and serves as provision for ships. Quarries of flints are also here met with; and several fountains of bitumen, which is used for ships instead of pitch, as well as for medicinal purposes. Upon the whole, the island is pleasant, and its present state flourishing, the *Spaniards* having every year, for a considerable time past, added something to its improvement.

It is divided into seven provinces, of which the civil government is dependent on the audience of *St. Domingo*; and as to spiritual, its bishop, whose see is at *St. Jago*, though he commonly resides at the *Havanna*, is suffragan to the archbishop of *St. Domingo*. The east part of the island is said to be subject to the governor of *St. Jago*, and the west to the governor of the *Havanna*. It contains many considerable towns; but the chief of all, though *St. Jago* still retains the name of the capital city, is

*HAVANNA*, a city and port on the north west coast, about fifty leagues from *Cape St. Antonio*, its westernmost point; 490 miles west from *St. Jago*; forty-one leagues south of the cape of *Florida*, the gulph of which it commands by being situated at its mouth, entering into the gulph of *Mexico*; and two days sail from the straits of *Bahama*. It was built by *Diego de Velasques*, who, in the beginning of the sixteenth century, landed here with 300 *Spaniards*, and conquered *Cuba*, with the assistance of the famous *Bartholomew de las Casas*, who afterwards turning a Dominican friar, was made bishop of *Chiapa*, in *New Spain*, and wrote the history of the *Spanish* cruelties here and in the other parts of the *West-Indies*. It was taken and sacked pretty often by the *English* and *French* adventurers. The *English* buccaneers, under captain *Morgan*, took it in 1669, and would have kept it, if they could have obtained the king of *England's* protection. The *Spaniards* since fortified it to the degree, as they thought, of having made it impregnable; but towards the close of the late war, after a long and obstinate defence, it surrendered, with all its forts and dependencies, the men of war in the harbour to the amount of eleven, and some frigates, with an immense treasure, to his *Britannic* majesty's arms, by capitulation, on the 13th of *August*, 1762.

THE port of the *Havanna* is said to be the most frequented, as well as the best, in all the *West Indies*, and one of the finest in the world. It is so large, that 1000 sail of ships may ride in it commodiously and safely, without anchor or cable, no wind being able to hurt them. It is also so deep, that the largest vessels anchor at a small distance from the shore, and there is commonly six fathoms water. The entrance, which has no bar or shoals to obstruct it, is by a channel about three quarters of a mile in length, but so narrow, that only one ship can go in at a time. The harbour, into which it leads at the north west corner, is a long square, lying north and south. At the other three corners, it forms three creeks and bays. At the bottom of that in the south east corner, lies the town of *Guan Abacca*, two leagues from the *Havanna* by land, but little more than a league by sea.

THE city, which is said to be the richest in *America* (as it is, no doubt, when the galleons are here, for at other times it is poor enough) stands in the most fruitful part of the island, and the only part where there are any farms or sheep, all the rest of it being mountainous and uncultivated. It is built on the west side of the harbour, in a delightful plain along the shore, which rounds so much, that above half of it is washed by the sea, and the rest of it by two branches of the river *Lagida*. Its figure is oval, and begins about a quarter of a mile from the mouth of the harbour. The buildings, which are of stone, make a good appearance, but are not high: and the streets are narrow, but clean and straight. There is a fine square with uniform buildings in the middle of the town. The churches are magnificent and rich. In fact, it is a city of the greatest importance to the *Spaniards* of all their cities in *America*, being the place of rendezvous for all their fleets in their return from that quarter of the world to *Spain*, and lying at the mouth of the gulph of *Florida*, through which they are all obliged to pass. The *Spaniards* therefore, not with-



a out reason, call it the key of all the *West Indies*, to lock up or open the door or entrance to all *America*: and, indeed, no ships can pass that way, without leave from this port. Here rides the king of *Spain*'s navy, and here meet, in *September*, the galleons, flora, and other merchant-ships, from several ports both of the continent and islands, to the number of fifty or perhaps sixty sail, to take in provisions and water, with great part of their lading; and for the convenience of returning to *Spain* in a body. A continual fair is kept till their departure, which is generally before the end of the month; when proclamation is made, forbidding any that belong to the fleet to stay in the town, on pain of death; and upon firing a warning-gun; they all go aboard. The cargo they go off with is seldom less than seven millions sterling; so that it may be naturally imagined, that a place of this importance is in a condition both to defend itself, and to protect the ships that frequent it. Since it has been restored to the *Spaniards* by the late treaty of peace, they have been busy in repairing all the damages the fortifications sustained during the siege, and adding new ones, besides taking every other precaution to secure it for the future from all attempts of an enemy.

b 2. *SAINT DOMINGO*, or *Hispaniola*, is the largest, next to *Cuba*, of all the *Antilles* Islands. It is situate fifty miles east of *Cuba*, and seventy of *Jamaica*, and is about 420 miles long from east to west, and 120 broad from north to south. It is separated from *Cuba* and *Jamaica* by what is called the windward passage; and is allowed to be the most fruitful, and by much the most pleasant in the *West-Indies*, having vast forests of cabbage-trees, palm, elms, oaks, pines, acajou, and other trees, taller and larger, and the fruit more lovely to the eye, and better tasted, than in the other islands; particularly ananas, bananas, grapes, oranges, lemons, citrons, toronias, limes, dates, and apricots. There is scarce a country in the world better watered, either by brooks or navigable rivers. Its herds of cattle are innumerable, and sufficient to supply most of the neighbouring colonies. The general commodities are hides, sugar, indigo, cotton, cocoa, coffee, ginger, tobacco, salt, wax, honey, ambergrease, and various kinds of drugs and dying woods. This island was the first of the *Spaniards* discoveries, and for some time the center of their commerce in *America*. After their conquests in *Peru*, they slighted it, the gold found here being nothing in comparison to what they met with in that kingdom. The buccaneers and other adventurers came hither afterwards to hunt the cattle the *Spaniards* had imported, which were grown wild, and killed incredible numbers of them for their hides and tallow; and here also they used to victual their ships. The *French* finding the island almost deserted, took possession of the north-west part of it, which they still possess; whereupon the *Spaniards* returned and settled in *Domingo*, the south part of the island, again, to prevent other nations seizing of that, and interrupting their navigation to the continent. The capital city, *St. Domingo*, was taken by Sir *Francis Drake*, the *English* admiral, in 1586: but quitted again, as several other places were, in the reign of queen *Elizabeth*, the court not thinking it good policy to keep them; but *Cromwell* was of another mind, and sent his generals *Penn* and *Venables*, with the greatest force the *English* ever had in those seas, to possess themselves of *St. Domingo*; but being disappointed, they afterwards subdued the island of *Jamaica*, in 1654. The *French* have improved their settlements here to such a degree, and are grown so powerful, that they may make themselves masters of the whole island whenever they please. In 1726, it was computed that there were 200 sugar-works on this island, which, on an average, made annually 400 hogsheds, each of 500 weight, and did not bring less than 200,000 l. sterling *per annum*, to the *French*. The indigo was thought to produce half as much. At present, it is thought the trade is rather in a better than worse condition, in regard to these articles.

*St. Domingo or Hispaniola:*

c 3. *PORTO-RICO*, separated by a narrow channel from *St. Domingo*, is 120 miles long, and 60 broad. It is a very fertile island, abounding in fine meadows, and well stocked with wild cattle. The principal commodities in which the inhabitants deal, are sugar, ginger, hides, cotton thread, and raw cotton, cassia, mastic, &c. Their pork is excellent, and so is the flesh of their kids, but their mutton is poor dry food. They have good ship timber, and variety of fruit trees, with rice and *Indian* corn. The genius of the people, and the convenient situation of the island, would render it the most flourishing of all the *Spanish* colonies, were it not for the mischiefs to which they are frequently liable from great droughts, hurricanes, and the descents of privateers, whereby their sea-ports have been often ruined. This island was conquered by the earl of *Cumberland*, at his own expence, and that of other private adventurers, in the reign of queen *Elizabeth*; but he was obliged to abandon it again, having lost most of his men by sickness in the latter end of the summer, when this, and all places in these latitudes, are very unhealthy. The chief city of *Porto-Rico* is *St. John's*, situated on a small island within the harbour, on the north side of the chief island; and joined to it by a causeway. The town is about a mile and a half in circumference, built after the *Spanish* model, and fortified, as well as the entrance

*Porto-Rico.*



of the harbour, by forts and batteries of guns, which render the town almost inaccessible a  
by sea; nor is the situation less pleasant than strong, being built on an eminence, and com-  
manding the ocean on one side, and the main island on the other. The *Virgin Islands*, si-  
tuate at the east end of *Porto Rico*, are exceeding small.

Trinidad.

4. *TRINIDAD*, separated from the continent of *Andalusia*, in *Terra Firma*, by the nar-  
row strait of *Boco del Drago*, eighty miles north-west of the river *Oronoque*. This island is  
ninety miles long, and sixty broad, and is reckoned an unhealthy but fruitful soil, produ-  
cing sugar, tobacco, indigo, cotton, ginger, and *Indian* corn. It was taken by Sir *Walter*  
*Raleigh* in 1595, but quitted again, and the *French* took it in 1676; and besides their plun-  
der, extorted 30,000 pieces of eight from the *Spaniards*, to save their houses; but the  
*French* also quitted the island, and the *Spaniards* still remain sovereigns of it. b

Margaretta.

5. *MARGARETTA*, situate 200 miles west of *Trinidad*. It is one of the largest of the  
*Leeward Islands*, being about fifty miles long and twenty-four broad, and affording *Indian*  
corn, and the usual tropical fruits; but very little wood or water.

THERE are other islands belonging to *Spain*, but situate in the *Pacific Ocean*, as *Chiloe*,  
on the coast of *Chili*; *Juan-Fernando*, 300 miles west of *Chili*; *Gallipago's Islands*, under  
the equator, 400 miles west of *Peru*; *Golden Island*, *Isle of Pines*, *Samballas Islands*, and  
*Bastimentos*, near *Porto Bello*, in *Terra Firma*. We have already treated of the *Pearl Islands*,  
in the bay of *Panama*.

French Ame-  
rican Islands.

THE *French*, besides part of the island of *St. Domingo*, described above, are now possessed  
of *Cayenne*, *St. Martin*, *St. Bartholomew*, *Desseada*, *Guadaloupe*, *Marigalante*, *Martinico*, c  
and *St. Lucia*.

Cayenne.

1. *CAYENNE*, deemed a part of *Terra Firma*, is a town situate on a small island of  
the same name, bounded by the *Dutch* colonies of *Surinam* on the north, and the mouth  
of the river *Amazon* on the south. The *French* have given it the name of *Equinoctial-France*,  
from its situation under or near the equator. It produces tobacco, sugar, and *Indian* corn.

St. Martin.

2. *SAINT MARTIN*, an island of no great consequence, is situate a little to the north-  
west of

St. Bartholo-  
mew.

3. *SAINT BARTHOLOMEW*, a small island about ten leagues north of *St. Christo-*  
*pher's*, taken by the *English* under the command of Sir *Timothy Thornhill*, in 1689, but re-  
stored to the *French* at the peace of *Ryswick*.

Desseada.

4. *DESEADA*, *Desiderada*, or the *Desirable-Island*, so called by *Columbus*, because it was  
the first land he discovered in his second voyage to *America*, is situate about ten leagues  
east of *Guadaloupe*. It is a small inconsiderable island, and not so fruitful as the following  
*French Caribbee-Islands*. d

Guadaloupe.

5. *GUADALOUPE*, so named by *Columbus*, from its hills resembling those of that name  
in *Spain*, is situated about thirty leagues north of *Martinico*, and almost as much south of  
*Antego*. It is the largest of all the *Caribbee-Islands*, being twenty-two leagues in length,  
and half as much in breadth, at each end; but almost divided into two, by a deep gulph  
or bay on each side, so that the ends are joined together by a narrow isthmus. It abounds  
in sugar, cotton, indigo, ginger, &c. and is in a very flourishing condition; and, agree- e  
able to the consequence it is of to the *French*, they took great pains to have it restored to  
them, with *Martinico*, by the late definitive treaty of peace, both islands having been  
some time before subdued by the all-conquering *British* arms in *America*. The *French* be-  
gan to send colonies to this island about the year 1632; but, being unacquainted with  
the nature of the soil, for many years were in danger of starving; and afterwards the  
planters, by their divisions, almost ruined one another; so that this island did not make any  
great figure till the present century; since the beginning of which it has vastly increased,  
and makes more sugar now than any of the *British* islands, except *Jamaica*.

Marigalante.

6. *MARIGALANTE*, lying a little to the south-east of *Guadaloupe*, is about sixteen  
leagues in circuit, the soil pretty good, and its sugars of the finer sort; besides which, it f  
produces indigo, cotton, and ginger. It was discovered by *Columbus* in his second voyage  
to *America*, in 1493, and named by him *Marigalante*, or the *Gallant-Mary*, after the name  
of his ship. The *French* began to send colonies thither about the year 1647.

Martinico.

7. *MARTINICO* is situate 120 miles north-west of *Barbadoes*; being sixty miles long,  
but scarce twenty broad in any place. The inland part is mountainous, from whence fall  
numerous rivulets into the sea; and there are several safe and commodious harbours, all well  
fortified, on the coast, with good roads for shipping. The produce of the island consists of  
sugar, cotton, ginger, indigo, cacao, aloes, pimento, cocoas, plantains, and other tropical  
fruits; and as it is much larger and better peopled than *Barbadoes*, it yields a great deal  
more sugar. It is now the chief of all the *French Caribbee Islands*, and the seat of their go- g  
vernor-general; and had formerly 3500 men bearing arms, and about 16,000 blacks of  
both sexes.

St. Lucia.

8. *SAINT LUCIA*, one of the islands called *Neutral*, by the 9th article of the late de-  
finitive



- a definitive treaty of peace, is to remain in full right to *France*, as by the same stipulated partition the other *Neutral Islands* of *St. Vincent*, *Dominica*, and *Tobago*, are to remain in full right to *Great Britain*. This island of *St. Lucia* lies twenty-one miles south of *Martinico*, and is about twenty-two miles in length, and eleven broad. The greatest part of it is very good land; in some places hilly, interspersed with many rich valleys, and very well-watered with fine rivers all through the island, which render it exceeding pleasant and delightful. It must also be very healthy by being so narrow, and the hills not being so high as to intercept the general trade winds that continually fan it from the eastward, whereby the heat of the climate is mitigated, and made rather agreeable than troublesome. The variety of situations it besides affords by the hills and vales, makes it both convenient and delightful, as well as the pleasantness of the prospects. It is covered with woods, among which are great quantities of fine timber, fit for building houses and windmills. Before the late war, both *Barbadoes* and *Martinico* were from hence furnished with large quantities. The island also abounds with wild fowl, and the adjacent sea with fish. It has several good bays, and excellent harbours for ships to anchor in; particularly one on the north-west part of the island, in which a great number of ships may be safe from all weathers. In short, this island is much the finest and most convenient of any in the *Caribbee Islands*.

- THE *Dutch* are possessed of *Curassou*, *Bonaire*, and *Aruba*; near the coast of *Terra-Firma*; and *Eustatia* and *Saba*, among the *Caribbee-Islands*. *Curassou*, or *Curacoa*, is about nine or ten leagues in length, and about five in breadth; the soil is far from being fruitful, and the climate still farther from being either wholesome or agreeable; but notwithstanding these disadvantages, such have been the care and industry of the *Dutch*, that they have always drawn great advantages from this small country, in which, formerly, there were large pastures and a great quantity of cattle, but they turned these into sugar and tobacco plantations; so that, at present, it may be thought, that the provisions of all sorts raised in this island could scarce maintain its inhabitants one day; yet such is the prudence of the *Dutch* government, that the inhabitants are so far from being exposed to want, that there is not a more plentiful or better provided place in the *West-Indies*; but, at the same time, it must be understood, that every thing fetches a high price here, which instead of being a disadvantage, is, in reality, the principal source of the great wealth of the inhabitants. On the south side of the east end of this island there is a harbour, called *Santa Barbara*; but the chief harbour is about three leagues from the south-east end, on the south side, where the *Dutch* have a very good town and a strong fort. The town, for its size, is one of the fairest and finest in *America*; and contains every thing necessary to render it commodious and agreeable, as far as the climate and soil will permit. The other *Dutch* islands of *Bonaire* and *Aruba* are considerable chiefly, (and indeed, the same may be said of *Curassou*) for their situation near the coast of *Terra-Firma*, which gives the inhabitants an opportunity of carrying on a clandestine trade with the *Spanish* settlements in *Terra-Firma*. Let the *Spanish* governors prohibit this smuggling trade never so severely, the *Spaniards* stand so much in need of *European* commodities, that they run any hazards to deal with the *Dutch*; and as it is their common interest to connive at this kind of traffic, the people cannot be very hearty in their endeavours to prevent it. On the south-side of *Bonaire* is a good salt-pond, whither the *Dutch* sloops come for salt, which is now become a very considerable commodity, and the *Dutch* are contriving methods of turning it to still greater advantage. The *Dutch* islands of *Saba* and *Eustatia* produce sugar, &c. as the rest of the *Caribbee Islands* do.

Dutch American Islands.

- THE *Danes* are possessed of the island of *St. Thomas*, one of the *Caribbees*, producing sugar, &c. It is the only place they have in *America*. *St. Croix*, or *Santa Cruz*, a small island about twenty leagues west of *St. Christopher's*, is now under the protection of the king of *Denmark*, but chiefly the property of some *Irish* gentlemen. This island has been contended for by the *English*, *Dutch*, *Spaniards*, and *French*.

- THE *British-American* islands are, *Jamaica*, *Barbadoes*, *St. Christopher's*, *Nevis*, *Antego*, *Barbuda*, *Anguilla*, *Montserrat*, *Dominica*, *St. Vincent*, *Tobago*, the islands of *Grenada*, and of the *Grenadines*, the *Lucaya's*, or *Bahama-Islands*, *Bermuda*, or the *Summer-Islands*, *Cape-Breton*, and *Newfoundland*.

British American Islands.

1. *JAMAICA* was discovered by *Columbus* in 1493, and taken from the *Spaniards* by general *Venables*, and a squadron of men of war under the command of admiral *Penn*, in 1654. The *Spaniards* continued to lurk in some parts of the island for several years after, but at the Revolution it was so intirely reduced, that the *Spaniards* yielded it to the crown of *Great-Britain*, to which it has belonged ever since; and it is, doubtless, the noblest possession we have in those parts. It is situated in the *Atlantic-Ocean*, between 17 and 19 deg. of north latitude, and about 60 deg. of west longitude from *Ferro*; and stretches east to west 140 miles, and is about 60 in the middle, from north to south; but grows less towards each end.

Jamaica.



THE whole island has one continued ridge of hills, running from east to west through the middle of it, which is generally called the *Blue Mountains*: the tops of some are higher than those of others; one of the highest is called *Mount Diabolo*. On each side of this chain of mountains are others, but much lower. The surface of the earth seems to be different here from what it is in *Europe*, the vallies being very level, with little or no rising ground or small hills, without rocks or stones; the mountainous part is very steep, and furrowed by very deep channels on the north and south-sides of the highest hills; these channels are made here by frequent and very violent rains, which almost every day fall on the mountains, and, first, wearing a small trench or course for their passage, wash away afterwards whatever opposes these torrents, and make their channels extraordinary steep. The greatest part of the highlands of this island are either stone or clay, which, resisting the rains, are not carried down violently with them into the plains, as the moulds proper for tillage and friable earths are: hence it is, that in these mountainous places, such earths are rarely found, but, instead thereof, a very strong tough clay, or some kind of rock, on which no earth appears. All the highlands are covered with woods, some of the trees very good timber, tall and straight; and it is surprising how such trees can grow in such a barren soil, so thick together among the rocks; but the trees send down their fibrous roots into the crannies of the rocks, where, here and there, they meet with small receptacles of rain-water, which nourish their roots.

It is wonderful to see in how short a time a plantation, formerly cleared of trees and shrubs, will grow foul. This arises from two causes: the one, by not stubbing the roots, whence young sprouts arise; and the other, the fertility of the soil. The settlements and plantations, not only of the native *Indians*, but also those of the *Spaniards*, are now entirely overgrown with tall trees; and there would be no traces of them remaining, were it not for old palisadoes, ruins of old buildings, orange-walks, &c. which evidently shew plantations have been there. There are the same strata, or layers of earth, over one another, in the fruitful part of the island, as are to be met with in *Europe*; and the same difference of soil appears, as in *England*, in digging of wells and other occasions of opening the ground. Most of the savannahs, or plains fit for pasture, and cleared of wood, are like our meadow land, and lie near the south side of the island, where one may ride a great many miles without meeting the least ascent; some of these plains within land are incircled with hills. These savannahs, after rains, are very green and pleasant; but, after long droughts, are much withered, and look yellow and parched.

THE chief ports in the island are, 1. *Port-Royal*, a fine capacious harbour. 2. *Old-Harbour*, which lies seven or eight miles south-west of *Spanish-Town*. 3. *Port Morant*, at the east end of the island; and 4. *Port Negril*, at the west end of the island. There are, besides these, several more on the south and north sides of the island; but the coral rocks, which almost surround it, make it dangerous to approach the coast without a pilot.

THERE are near one hundred rivers in *Jamaica*, but none of them navigable; for rising in the mountains in the middle of the island, they precipitate themselves down the rocks to the north or south, and fall into the sea, before they have run many miles, carrying frequently down with them large pieces of rocks and timber. But, notwithstanding the number of rivers, water is very scarce in some of the savannahs in dry years, so that many cattle die with thirst. Near the sea, as at *Port Royal*, the well-water is brackish and unwholesome, causing fluxes and other disorders in the sailors who drink it. The river water is thick with clay and earth, and has a disagreeable taste; but if suffered to settle some days in earthen jars, is very good. There is a salt river, and many salt lagunas, or great ponds, in the island. It is very common to see cataracts, or cascades, in the rivers among the mountains, fifty or sixty feet high.

THIS island, lying seven degrees within the tropic, has the trade wind continually, which, on the south side of the island, is called the sea-breeze. It begins about eight o'clock in the morning, and increases till noon; and then, as the sun grows lower, the breeze decreases till four in the afternoon, when it is quite calm. About eight in the evening begins the land breeze, extending itself four leagues into the sea, and continues increasing till midnight, and decreases till four. The land-wind blowing at night, and the sea-breeze in the day-time, no ship can come into port but during the day, nor go out, but at break of day, or very soon after.

EARTHQUAKES are very frequent in *Jamaica*; the inhabitants expect one every year. A very considerable one happened on the nineteenth of *February*, 1688, and was felt all over the island: It was observed, that the ground rose like the sea in waves, as the earthquake passed along. But this was nothing to that which happened at *Port Royal*, in 1692, by which that town was almost swallowed up.

THE dews here are so great within land, that the water drops from the leaves of the trees, in



a in the morning, as if it had rained; but there are seldom any fogs in the plains or sandy places near the sea. The rains are very violent, and the drops surprising large: the great rainy seasons are in *May* and *October*.

The general produce of the island of *Jamaica* is sugar, rum, ginger, cocoa, coffee, pimento, several kinds of woods, some medicinal drugs, and tobacco, but the last of so ordinary a sort, that it is only cultivated to serve the negroes. Fruits of most sorts grow here in great plenty; but the sugar-cane is the glory and treasure of *Jamaica*, and the principal article of its commercial concerns.

b THE consumption of sugars in *Great Britain*, one year with another, has been computed at 70,000 hogheads, each containing 1200 lb. and all our colonies are supposed to produce, on an average, 850,000 hogheads of sugar yearly. It is computed that there are 300 sail of ships sent every year to our sugar-colonies from *Great Britain*, which are navigated by 4,500 seamen; that the freight of the sugars brought hither amounts to 170,000 l. per year; and the duty, commission, &c. to little less than 200,000 l. more. As to the exports from hence to our sugar colonies, it appeared, by the custom-house books in 1726, that all the *British* manufactures exported to *Barbadoes*, all the *Leeward Islands*, and *Jamaica*, put together, the latter of which generally take as much for the *Spanish* trade, &c. as all those other islands, amounted to 234,785 l. 17s.

c THE *Jamaica* sugar is said to be the best of all our plantations, and made with the greatest ease; for it cures faster here in ten days, than it does in six months in *Barbadoes*, especially in those places where it rains for months together. There were about sixty sugar mills in *Jamaica* in 1670, which were computed to make about two millions of pounds weight of sugar; and some say, they now make ten times as much as they did then.

d THERE are few colonies in *America* so well stocked with cattle as this: horses, asses, and mules, are very cheap; and there would have been numbers of horned cattle here, had not the inhabitants, who mind planting much more than grazing, lessened their stock by their inattention to them; so that at present they are supplied with beef, &c. from the northern colonies. Their sheep are generally large and fat, and their flesh very good; but the wool, being long and full of hairs, is worth nothing. Their bays, roads, and rivers, abound with excellent fish of almost all the *European* and *American* kinds; but the tortoise is by much the most valuable, both for its shell and fish, the latter being accounted the most delicious, and at the same time the most wholesome in all the *Indies*.

THE chief trade of *Jamaica* is with *Great Britain*; for the islanders wear, eat, and drink scarce any thing but what comes from thence, except *Madeira* wine and rum punch.

e THE capital of *Jamaica* is called *Spanish Town*, but, being an inland place, its trade is inconsiderable: however, several wealthy merchants, and most of the gentlemen of estates, have houses in it, where they live in a very gay and splendid manner. The harbour of *Port-Royal* is, perhaps, one of the best in the world; it is about three leagues broad, and very deep, so that 1000 sail of the largest ships may ride in it safe from all winds, the hurricanes excepted. *Kingston* is about five miles from *Port-Royal* by water, but not less than fifteen by land: it is the residence of the most considerable merchants, whose ships load and unload here, which renders it a place of vast trade; and there are rarely less than 200 sail of ships in the bay before it. The harbour is spacious, and the ships lie land-locked; but the peninsula that covers them from the sea, being low and narrow, they are not entirely safe from storms.

THIS, and all the other governments in the *British American Islands*, are royal governments. The king appoints the governor and council, and the representatives are chosen by the freemen; and these assemblies make laws, but they must be confirmed by the court of *England*.

f THE inhabitants are either *English*, or of *English* extraction born in the island; with *Indians*, *Negroes*, *Mulatto's*, or *Mestize*, or the descendants of them. The *English*, and those of *English* extraction, may be 30,000; the *Indians* are but few, most of the natives having been destroyed by the *Spaniards*. The negroes on the island are about 100,000.

g It has been a complaint of long standing, that this island has been monopolized by a few over-grown planters, who make an advantage of keeping the greatest part of the island in a state of barrenness; as, by that means, they raise sugar at less expence, and sell it at a greater price than they could otherwise do were the lands in more hands, or in a more extensive state of cultivation. It has therefore been thought by many, that an attack upon it by an enemy would be so far from being a national loss, that were it successful, it could only affect a few individuals. But those who reason in this manner, do not consider the immense revenue brought to the crown by the produce of this island: and, what is still of greater advantage, is the specie brought from the neighbouring continent, by means of the traffic (whether illicit or not, is not material) that is carried on in the gulph of *Mexico*, and other *Spanish* colonies, from whence immense returns are made annually. This current of wealth,



wealth, therefore, once stopped, and the island drained, what now appears, at first sight, to be only a partial evil, would soon become general; and a great want of money, as well as a stagnation of trade, would immediately ensue; for the merchandizes principally traded with from *Jamaica*, are manufactured at home; and the uninterrupted intercourse between the two islands produces an inconceivable source of wealth to the merchants in both, and this wealth diffuses itself to all the working people employed in the several branches of commerce that are thus carried on, even to the remotest corners of *Great Britain*. Add to this, that *Jamaica*, by its situation, is fitted for the general rendezvous of the fleets employed in all the different services in the *West Indies*.

Barbadoes.

2. *BARBADOES* is not only one of the chief of the *Caribbee Islands*, and the most considerable of all the *British* islands in *America*, next to *Jamaica*, but was also the first settled, and the mother of all the *British* sugar islands. It lies about twenty leagues from *St. Vincent*, which may be seen from it in a clear day. The climate is very hot, especially for eight months in the year, but not so excessive as in the same latitude on the continent; because, though there are no land breezes, yet there are others which arise from the sea with the sun, and increase as it advances to, but abate as it declines from, the meridian. There is scarce a harbour in the island, except that of *Bridge-town* in *Carlisle-Bay*; nor a stream that deserves the name of a river; but they have wells of good water almost all over the island, without digging very deep; and they have large ponds and reservoirs for rain-water. The country is for the most part plain and level, with some small hills, and the woods have been all cut down to make room for plantations of sugar-canes, which now take up almost the whole island, and render it the most valuable plantation to *Great Britain*, for its size, that it ever possessed.

WHEN they first began to plant here, they produced a considerable crop yearly, from three years to nine, without farther trouble, except weeding and cleaning the soil; and every acre one with another yielded 10s. a year profit to the national stock of *England*, besides what the planters got, and the thousands it employed both here and there. But the soil of late years is not so fertile as formerly; and they are obliged to employ tame cattle, for the sake of manure.

HERE are all sorts of the tropical fruits, with oranges and lemons in abundance, the fruit of which is large, and the juice delicious. Citron-trees also abound here; with the rind of whose fruit the ladies make the most delicious cordials and sweet-meats. Fruit, in general, is become a staple commodity; so that some tons have been imported into *England* and *Ireland* every year.

IT has been computed that in the space of one hundred years, the inhabitants of *Great-Britain* have received twelve millions of silver by means of this plantation, besides having 50,000 of her inhabitants maintained all that time, by the people of this colony. The *Barbadians*, in 1730, exported hither 22,769 hogsheads of sugar, each weighing 1300 lb. of which near 18,000 hogsheads came into the port of *London*; and they made 340,391 l. clear profit of the whole, it being proved that their rum and melasses paid all the charges of the plantation. With regard to indigo, great quantities of which were formerly exported from thence, now little or none is made there; but of scraped and scalded ginger they export vast quantities; as also *lignum vitæ*, citron water, the best that comes from any of our plantations, melasses, rum, and lime-juice.

IN *Bridge-Town*, the chief of the island, there is a college erected, with a revenue for professors in the several sciences: Colonel *Codrington* was the principal benefactor. The number of white inhabitants are computed to be 20,000, and of their negro-slaves 100,000. They receive their corn, flour, cattle, flesh, and salted fish, from *Pennsylvania*, and other *British* northern colonies, or from *Ireland*; and their furniture and cloathing from *England*. They have sometimes hurricanes in autumn, but not so often as in the neighbouring islands. The plantations suffer greatly by these hurricanes. A kind of plague visited the *Barbadians* in 1691, and carried off multitudes of white people, a loss which they have not yet recovered to this day.

THIS island was first resorted to by the *English* in the reign of king *James I.* but *James*, Earl of *Carlisle*, obtained the first grant of it in 1625, in the first year of king *Charles I.* who parcelled it out to several adventurers that transported themselves thither. They found no inhabitants, but a good breed of hogs, supposed to have been left here by the *Spaniards* or *Portuguese* in their voyages to the continent of *America*. The adventurers applied themselves at first to the planting of tobacco, which not thriving as expected, they planted cotton and indigo, which yielded a considerable profit; but they made little sugar till 1647, when the colonels *Modiford*, *Drax*, and *Walrond*, with other cavaliers, living uneasy under the usurpation, converted their estates into money, and transported themselves to *Barbadoes*, where they erected sugar-works, and acquired very great estates; and in the year 1650, the white inhabitants of the island were increased to upwards of 30,000, with twice that number



a of negroes, who exercised their masters with constant conspiracies, in hopes of recovering their liberty; but not succeeding, were severely punished. King *Charles II.* purchased the property of this island of the proprietors in 1661, ever since which *Barbadoes* has been a royal government, and the colony granted a duty of four and a half *per cent.* on their sugars, for maintaining the forces and fortifications in the island, which amounts to 10,000*l.* *per annum*, though not always applied to the purposes it was designed, and proves an insupportable burthen on the planters, no other island having so high a duty laid on their sugars. *De Ruyter*, the *Dutch* admiral, treacherously attempted to surprize this island in 1664, in a time of peace, but was bravely repulsed.

b 3. THE island of *St. Christopher's*, called by our seamen *St. Kitt's*, lies between the latitude St. Christo-  
pher's.  
17 degrees 25 minutes north latitude, and in 44 degrees 55 minutes west longitude from *Ferro*. It is about ten miles from *Nevis*, and forty-two from *Antego*, and is twenty-five miles and a half in length from east to west, and its greatest breadth from north to south is seven. The air is sultry, but pleasant and healthful, being agreeably tempered with cool breezes. Some represent it as one of the most delightful islands in the world. The soil is light and sandy, and proper not only for the cultivation of tobacco and sugar, but also for cotton, indigo, ginger, pine-apples, and fruits of all sorts. It is well supplied with springs, and has some hot baths. The vallies and sides of the hills are very fertile, but the mountains are of a sulphureous composition, and overgrown, for the most part, with palmettoes, cotton-trees, *lignum vitæ*, and various other sorts of trees. At the south east end of the island there  
c is an isthmus that runs into the sea, within a mile and a half of *Nevis*, where are salt ponds, which produce a salt perfectly, and more strong and pungent than the *French*. Though this is one of the largest of all the *Leeward Islands*, yet the middle part of it is so mountainous, that it is believed it has not above 24,000 acres of land fit for sugar plantations, of which commodity it is reckoned to produce 10,000 hogsheds one year with another. It is also supposed to make three hogsheds of sugar to one of rum. This island was discovered by *Columbus* in his first voyage to *America*, and he gave it the name of *St. Christopher* from the figure of its mountains, there being near the middle of the island a very high mountain, which bears on its summit another lesser mountain, as *St. Christopher* is represented like a giant, with our Saviour on his back. The *Spaniards* deserting it, the *English* and *French*  
d arrived here in 1625, and divided it between them. They lived in great amity together, till a war broke out between the two nations, when the *English* drove the *French* intirely out of the island; and the country being yielded to the crown of *Great Britain* by the treaty of *Utrecht*, all the *French* territory was sold for the benefit of the public.

4. *NEVIS*, about six leagues in circumference, is but three or four miles from the south point of *St. Christopher's*. The soil is fruitful, and even more so than that of *St. Christopher's*. Sugar, which is the staple commodity here as well as there, serves all the purposes of money. The whites on this island are now computed at about 3000, and the negroes at three times that number, of whom at least 4000 are employed in the sugar business. The *English* sent the first colony to this island in 1628. An earthquake in 1690, almost destroyed its chief town.

e 5. *ANTEGO* lies sixty miles east of *St. Christopher's*. It is of a circular form, almost twenty miles over either way, and has a great many good harbours: the governor usually resides at *St. John's*, the chief town. The produce is chiefly sugar, ginger, cotton, pine-apples, plantains, and other tropical fruits. Antego.

6. *BARBUDA* is a small island lying fifteen miles north-east of *Montserrat*. The inhabitants apply themselves chiefly to the breeding of cattle, and raising provisions, with which they supply the neighbouring islands. This island is the property of the *Codrington* family, who have a great number of negroes here and in the island of *Barbadoes*. It was their ancestor Colonel *Christopher Codrington*, governor and captain-general of *Barbadoes*, who dying in 1710, gave two plantations in *Barbadoes*, and part of this island of *Barbuda*, valued at  
f 2000*l.* *per annum*, to the Society for propagating the Gospel; for the instruction of the negroes in *Barbadoes* and the rest of the *Caribbee Islands*, in the christian religion, and for erecting and endowing the college abovementioned in *Barbadoes*. Barbuda.

7. *ANGUILLA*, about thirty miles long, and ten broad, is situate thirty miles north west of *St. Christopher's*. The inhabitants, as at *Barbuda*, apply themselves chiefly to the feeding of cattle, planting of *Indian* corn, and other parts of husbandry. Anguilla.

8. *MONTSERRAT* is situate thirty miles south-west of *Antego*, and affords sugar in proportion to its extent, being one of the smallest of the *Caribbee Islands*. Montserrat.

9. *DOMINICA* lies thirty miles north of *Martinico*. It is about forty miles long, and as many broad. Being before the late peace a neutral island, it served occasionally for wood  
g and water. Dominica.

10. *SAINT VINCENT* was another of these neutral islands: it lies fifty miles south-west of *Barbadoes*, and is about eight leagues in length, and six in breadth. There are f-



veral mountains in it, between which are very fruitful vallies. The timber on this island is very valuable, and there is a vast stock of all kinds. Indigo thrives here surprizingly.

Tobago.

*TOBAGO*, the third of these neutral islands, now confirmed to *Great Britain*, is fifty-two miles long, and twelve broad, and lies 120 miles south of the island of *Barbadoes*. The soil is fruitful, and capable of producing whatever the sugar-islands are remarkable for.

Granada,  
and the Gra-  
nadines.

12. *GRANADA*, the most southerly of the *Caribbee Islands*, is situate 150 miles south-west of *Barbadoes*. It is about twenty-five leagues in circuit, and has a pretty good soil. The soil is excellent, producing sugar, indigo, cotton, rocou, and cassia. This was one of our conquests in the late war, and by the peace confirmed to us with the *Granadines*, which lie to the south of *Granada*, but are very inconsiderable.

Bahama-  
Islands.

13. *THE Bahama Islands* are situate in the *Atlantic Ocean* to the north of the island of *Cuba*, stretching from the north-west to the south-east. The island of *Bahama*, which gives name to the rest, is about twenty-five leagues distant from the continent of *Florida*. It is about fifty miles in length, but very narrow, scarce any where sixteen, and in many places not half so broad, but very pleasant and fruitful, the air temperate and serene, the soil remarkably rich, and the country every where abounding with brooks and springs of water. Though these islands were the first-fruits of the new world, *Columbus* arriving first at *Man-guana*, which is one of them, and to which he gave the name of *St. Salvador*, yet the *Spaniards* never thought of settling there, and it was long before we had any knowledge of them. Captain *William Sayle*, in the year 1667, being bound to *Carolina*, was forced by a storm among these islands, which gave him an opportunity of examining them carefully, particularly a large island, to which at that time he gave his own name, and it is that which has been since known by the name of *Providence*. At his return to *England*, he reported the benefit they might prove to the state. Accordingly grants of them were made to proprietors, but the government was reserved in the hands of the crown. None of them, however, except *Providence*, *Lucays*, and *Harbour Island*, are yet settled; which seems surprizing, as they would certainly prove of the greatest advantage to *Great Britain*, if they were fully settled and properly cultivated.

Bermuda or  
the Summer-  
Islands.

14. *BERMUDA*, or the *Summer Islands*, were so called from Sir *George Summer*, who lost his ship on their rocks in 1609. They are situate on the *Atlantic Ocean*, in 65 degrees of west longitude, and 32 degrees 20 minutes of north latitude, 7 or 800 miles east of *Charles-town* in *South Carolina*, being a cluster of small islands, in the shape of a shepherd's crook, containing 20,000 acres, walled round with rocks. No part of the world enjoys a purer air, or more temperate climate, or is more remarkable for health, and plenty of flesh, fish, poultry, fruits, herbs, and roots. The chief town is *St. George*, in the north-west part of the island, containing 1000 houses. Here were fine groves of cedar, with which they build their houses, and their swift sailing sloops, which they sell to the sugar-islands, as well as provisions. There are three clergymen in the island, well provided for with a handsome revenue; and Dr. *Berkley*, late bishop of *Cloyne*, was formerly about erecting a college here, for the education of the *Indians*; but the design miscarried.

Cape Breton.

15. *CAPE BRETON* is situate between 61 and 62 degrees of west longitude, and between 45 and 48 degrees of north latitude, in the *Atlantic Ocean*, in *North America*, separated from *Acadia*, or *New Scotland*, by the narrow strait of *Canso*; and is about one hundred miles in length, and fifty in breadth. This island was one of our conquests in the beginning of the late war, *Louisbourg* its fortress, with the island of *St. John*, and its other appurtenances, being surrendered by capitulation on the 26th of July, 1758. It was before taken from the *French* by the *English* in 1745; but restored to the *French* by the treaty of *Aix la Chapelle*, in 1748. To avoid expence, and prevent the *French* from again settling upon it, all the fortifications of *Louisbourg* were demolished since the last taking of that place. This island was of infinite consequence to the *French* by its several good harbours, and the excellent fishery they had on the coast; they also commanded the navigation to *Canada* by the river of *St. Lawrence*. Abstracting from these conveniencies, the country is barren, producing scarce any corn or grass, and but little wood: it is also excessive cold, and covered with snow in winter, and subject to great fogs even in summer.

New found-  
land.

16. *NEWFOUNDLAND*. This island is of a triangular form, about as big as *Ireland*, and 310 leagues, or 930 miles in circuit. On the north it is separated from *Terra de Labrador*, or *New Britain*, by the strait of *Belleisle*, which runs north-east, and is about twenty-three miles over in its narrowest part. On the west it has the gulph of *St. Lawrence*, and on the south and east, the *Atlantic Ocean*. *Cape Race*, or *Raz*, the most southerly part of the island, lies in north latitude 46. 45. the most northern point is in latitude 51. 30. so that the greatest length of the island, from south to north, is 280 miles. *Cape Rye*, its most westerly point, lies in north latitude 47. 35. and, between it and *Cape Race*, the distance is about 80 leagues, or 240 miles.



<sup>a</sup> AUTHORS differ widely in the account they give of its climate and produce. Some assert, that the sky is almost constantly clear and serene; that here are beautiful forests and verdant fields, covered with straw-berries, &c. that the bushes are nothing but rasp-berries of a delicious taste and flavour; that here are exceeding good waters, very fruitful vales; and that there is here a kind of rye, which grows naturally without culture, and is very nourishing; and that the island abounds with all sorts of game. Others, on the contrary, represent it as a frightful country, and assert that the whole island is almost one continued rock, &c. In order to reconcile these opposite descriptions, says *F. Charlevoix*, we must distinguish the different parts of the isle, which have been visited by *Europeans*. It is true, adds he, that the southern and eastern coasts do not commonly enjoy a very serene sky, because of their neighbourhood to the great bank, which is almost constantly covered with a thick fog. But in the northern and western parts the sky is very clear, both in summer and winter. As for the innermost parts of the country, there is nothing certain concerning them, it being almost impossible to travel far into the island. Among those who have travelled farthest, some, perhaps, may have observed beautiful vales, whilst others, who went another way, could perceive nothing but steep and barren rocks.

<sup>b</sup> THERE are a great many fine bays all round *Newfoundland*, but those on the east and south coasts are best known. Those on the east side, are *Bonavista*, *Trinity*, and *Conception*, which stretch themselves to the south-west; *Torbay*, *Capelin*, *St. John's Harbour*, the *Bay of Bulls*, *Fresh-water Bay*, and others; for there is no shore in the world better accommodated with excellent harbours: and the bays on the east and south coasts are so near each other, that nothing could be more commodious for an easy communication, were there inhabitants that wanted it. On the south there are the bays of *Biscay*, *St. Mary's*, *Placentia*, bay of *Fortune*, or *St. Peter's*, and the bay of *Despair*, going from east to west; but the most famous and considerable of them is the bay of *Placentia*.

<sup>c</sup> THE chief and almost only trade and business here, is fish; whereof there is such plenty in this sea, that all the world almost might be supplied from it, all sorts being taken here in immense quantities; but the principal fishery here regarded is that of cod, whereof at least 500 sail of ships are laden every year for *France*, *Spain*, *Portugal*, *Italy*, *England*, and other parts. The main fishery is on the great bank, and on the other banks about this island, as also all along the coast. The fishing season is from spring till September. Train oil is drawn off the livers of the fish, which are thrown up in heaps when the cod is cured; and from thence is drawn all the oil that comes from *Newfoundland*.

<sup>d</sup> THE great bank of *Newfoundland* is a vast mountain concealed under water. According to the most accurate sea-charts, its southern extremity lies in or about the 41st degree of north latitude, and its northern extremity in 49. 25. However, those two extremities are so pointed, that it is not easy to mark its limits that way. Its greatest breadth from east to west, is about ninety marine *English* leagues, between 42. 30. and 51. 30. of longitude west from *London*. The depth in various places is commonly five, twenty-five, and sixty fathom. But whatever be the dimensions or figure of this bank, it is covered with a vast quantity of shells, and several kinds of fish of all sizes, most of which serve for food to the cod-fish, whose number here seems to equal the grains of sand on the bank itself. Between two and three hundred vessels have loaded here annually for two centuries, and yet this vast consumption has produced no alteration in their plenty.

<sup>e</sup> THE next bank is called the *Green Bank*. The charts make it about 120 miles long, and about 50 over, where broadest: it lies off the south coast of *Newfoundland*. The other banks are not considerable enough to deserve particular notice, and their shape and situation may be seen in some good sea-chart, whose proper business it is to describe sands and soundings.

<sup>f</sup> THE great strand, or drying place for fish, which is about a league in extent, lies between two steep hills, one of which, on the south-west, is separated from the strand by a small rivulet, which runs out of the channel, and forms a kind of lake, called the *Little Bay*. Here they catch plenty of salmon. The great strand may contain at once where-withal to load threelcore ships. There is another lesser strand for the use of the inhabitants, who fish all along the coast. On both these places fish may be laid to dry without danger.

<sup>g</sup> THE first settlements were made here by the *English*, in 1610; and the *French* were permitted to settle here in the reign of king *Charles II.* but were obliged to quit the island by the peace of *Utrecht*, in 1713, only they were left at liberty to dry their nets on the northern shores. About the close of the late war, the *French* surprized this island, and took possession by capitulation of *St. John's*, on the 27th of June 1762; but were soon after compelled to leave it by our forces in September following. By the fifth article of the ensuing definitive treaty of peace, the subjects of *France* have a liberty of fishing and drying on a part of the coasts of the island of *Newfoundland*, such as is specified in the thirteenth article of the treaty of *Utrecht*; also



State of the  
Newfound-  
land trade.

the liberty of fishing in the gulph of *St. Lawrence* at the distance of three leagues <sup>a</sup> from all the coasts belonging to *Great Britain*; and at the distance of fifteen leagues from the coasts of the island of *Cape Breton*. The islands of *St. Pierre* and *Miquelon* are besides ceded to them by the sixth article, to serve as a shelter for their fishermen; but they are not to fortify these islands. By the eighteenth article of the said peace, his catholic majesty desists from any pretensions in favour of his subjects, to the right of fishing in the neighbourhood of the island of *Newfoundland*.

THERE are two sorts of trade in regard to the *Newfoundland* fishery; the one, and perhaps the more profitable, considering the risque is less, is that driven by the fishers themselves, who only victual and man their ships at *Biddeford*, *Pool*, *Dartmouth*, and other western ports chiefly, and go away early to fish, having the hands <sup>b</sup> and the ships necessary. The other is, when the masters sail directly to *Newfoundland*, to purchase cargoes of fish of the abovementioned fishers, or of the inhabitants of their stages. These traders purchase their cargoes with bills of exchange, at two months date, which are very seldom protested. The fish that is shipped for *Great-Britain* and *Ireland* is inconsiderable, in comparison to what is sent to *Portugal*, *Spain*, and *Italy*. Some fish is also shipped for *Barbadoes*, and the other sugar islands.

BESIDES the great profit which particular merchants make by this fishery, considering the seamen it constantly breeds, the tradesmen it maintains, and the shipping it requires, the increase of the national stock is no less than 3 or 400,000*l.* yearly; for a ship of 100 tons, with the charge only of victual, and fishing-tackle <sup>c</sup> for twenty hands, shall bring to market in *Portugal*, *Spain*, or *Italy*, 3000*l.* worth of fish, and clear frequently not less than 2000*l.* to the proprietors; so that 150 such ships only will clear 300,000*l.* and consequently increase so much the public and private stock.

IF we were to pay due attention to our fisheries at *Newfoundland*, the gulph and river of *St. Lawrence*, the coast of *Nova Scotia*, and *Cape Breton*, and here at home to our herring-fishery on the coast of *Scotland*; we should have no room to envy the wealth or opulence of any other nation. These are true mines of greater value, as well as cheaper wrought, than those of *Mexico* and *Peru*: and indeed, they seem as if they would fully answer all the purposes and exigences of the nation.

THE fisheries in *Holland* are well known not only to have been the first rise of that <sup>d</sup> republic, but the grand prop and support of all their commerce and navigation. This branch of trade is of such unpeakable concern to the *Dutch*, that in their public prayers, it is appointed to be mentioned, when they pray to the Supreme Being, "That it would please him to bless the government, the lords the states, and also their great and small fisheries."

WHENCE, it requires no argument to enforce the necessity of our exerting ourselves in this valuable branch of commerce; for, if other nations shall enjoy so certain and so important a nursery for seamen, and we shall neglect the same, it does not require the gift of prophecy to foresee who must one day obtain the superiority in maritime power.

UPON this point then seems to turn, in a great measure, the very being and security of this kingdom, with regard to its freedom and independency; and what more need be urged to <sup>e</sup> rouse the *British* nation, to leave nothing undone, which ought to be otherwise, for the advancement of our fisheries of every kind?

WITH respect to those which are upon our own coast of *Great Britain* and *Ireland*, and on the coast of our *American* plantations, no nation can pretend to deprive us of our natural rights of fishing in these parts; and if we shall think proper to indulge other states with the like privileges of fishing upon our own coasts, and reaping unspeakable advantages thereby, is it not the worst of policy, is it not superlative infatuation, to suffer other rival nations to grow rich and powerful by this commerce at our own doors, while we shamefully neglect it?

IT is greatly to be doubted, whether any nation would grant us the like privileges, had nature given them the same advantages. But it is a received truth, that the sovereignty of <sup>f</sup> the *British* seas is the most precious jewel of the *British* crown, and next, under God, the principal means of our wealth, and our security as a free people; and this certainly appertaineth to the kings of *Great Britain* by immemorial prescription, continual usage, and possession, the acknowledgement of all our neighbouring states, and the sense of the municipal laws of the kingdom: and this right hath been insisted on many hundred years by the kings of *England*.



# I N D E X.

*The Numbers expressed by Letters refer to the Volume, those by Figures to the Page, and the Letters inclosed thus ( ) to the Notes.*

## A.

- A** ALBURG, province of, ix. 652  
 Aalen, account of it, and government, xv. 443 (S)  
 Aarii, king of Angola, who engaged against queen Zingha, vi. 535. Abandoned by the Portuguese for his bravery, ib.  
 Aaron, khalif, a great friend to the Jews, v. 525.  
 —, the Napthalite grammarian, who and whence, v. 531.  
 (F). Contest about correcting the Hebrew text, ib  
 —, a rich Jew in England, deeply fined, v. 567 (Z)  
 —, head of the Caraites, disputes with the talmudists, v. 570  
 —, mountain in Morocco described, vii. 151. Pharaoh's castle there, ib.  
 Aazas taken by Obeidah, through the treachery of Youkinna, i. 214  
 Aba, or Abas, an infamous magician, his punishment, i. 378  
 —, monk of Mar Abib, made bishop of Armida, i. 390  
 —, chosen king of the Hungarians, invades Bavaria and Austria, xv. 382. Gives the emperor a sum to retire, but becomes hateful, and is defeated and slain, ib.  
 Abaca, a kind of flux in the island of Zebu, iv. 200  
 Abadan taken by the Zenijans, i. 489  
 Abagun, a stately Ethiopian bird, vi. 187  
 Abahay, a province of Mongalia, ii. 245  
 Abaka Khan, father-in-law to Kay Khofraw, drives Bendokdar out of Rum, ii. 236. Puts Berwanah to death, ib. Succeeds Hulaku in Iran, 477. Invaded by Barkah Khan, 478. By Borak Oglen, whom he totally defeats, ib. Invited into Syria by Sayfo'ddin, 480. Ill success of his forces there, and dies in the seventh year of his reign, ib.  
 Abakum, a Russian priest, tumult occasioned by him through new doctrines, who, with some of his disciples, is put to death, xiii. 177  
 Ab'al Dar, the head of several Arab tribes, i. 4  
 Abash, of Habash, Abyssinian embassy to Aureng Zib, iii. 110.  
 Beg an Alkoran for their emperor, vi. 1. See Abyssinia.  
 Abasq's strange marriage to Jaafar, i. 426. Her dreadful end, 427  
 Abbas, Mahomet's uncle, refuses to shelter him, i. 30. His speech to the Medians, 40. Advances great sums towards the Greek war, 93. Proclaims the prophet's death, 108. Takes care of his interment, 109  
 — Ebn Sahel defeats the Shiites, i. 188  
 —, one of the khalif's generals, his success against the Greeks, i. 344. Goes into Pisidia, 346  
 —, governor of Ray, conspires against sultan Massud, ii. 188  
 — Al, his pretensions revived, and the chief men of the family, i. 370  
 —, Al, Al Mansur's brother, and governor of Harran, persecutes the Manichees, i. 400. Invades the imperial dominions, 401. Saves the public treasury from five hundred revolted slaves, 403  
 —, Al, becomes wazir of Egypt, i. 710. Assassinate the khalif, 713. Sets up his son on his throne, ib. Pursued and slain by the Franks, ib.  
 Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.  
 Abbas, Al, house and family of, affronted by Al Mamun, i. 450, who sets up Ibrahim on the khalif's chair, ib.  
 —, son of Motasem, set aside from the khalifat, i. 456. Swears allegiance to his uncle, 459. Starved for want of water by his order, 462  
 — Ebn Al Abbas, succeeds in Sicily, i. 470  
 — Ebn Omar, defeated and taken by the Karmatians, i. 502. Dissuades the khalif from pursuing the war against them, ib.  
 —, (Mirza) the son of Soleyman Shah, his character, ii. 644. Raised to the throne by Husseyn Shah, and soon after deposed and confined, 664  
 — I. Seventh shah of Persia, ii. 609. Resentment at his tutor's insolence, ib. Defeats the Uzbeks in Khorassan, ib. Success against the Ottomans, and cruel treachery to the Kurds, 610. Conquests in Shirwan, &c. and invaded by 500,000 Turks, ib. Defeats them in several engagements, and is cured of a dangerous poison, 611. Kindness to some Tartar princes, invasion of Georgia, severe edict against tobacco, jealousy and cruelty against his sons, tyranny and horror of mind, 612. His grief and mourning for his murdered son, ib. Cruelty to several khans, ib. Herbert's account of these transactions very different, 613. War in Georgia with Luarzah, king of Karthuel, 614. Treachery to him, ib. Subdues the Georgians, 615. Takes Baghddad, signal defeat of the Othmans, with other conquests, 616. His last sickness and will, 617. Death artfully concealed six weeks, and character, 618. Instances of his severe justice, ib. and of his promoting commerce, 619. Suppresses pawnbrokers and foreign pilgrimages, ib. Public works, ib.  
 — II. ordered to lose his eyes by his father, but saved by an eunuch, ii. 629. Declared heir to the crown, ib. Enters Ispahan, and his frequent journies to Julfa, 630. Grand reception of the Uzbek prince, ib. Recovers Kandahar from the Mogul, ib. Unsuccessful expedition against the prince of Jaskes, and dies distracted of the foul disease, 631. His monumental tomb, character, cruelties, &c. 632. Drunken familiarity with the Franks, 634. Fondness for drawings, 635  
 — Sasa, a great friend to the Jews, v. 525  
 Abbeville, marquis of, his assurances at his first public audience, and in private, to the prince of Orange, xi. 636. Presents two memorials to the envoy of the States General, one relating to India commerce, and the other for banishing Dr. Burnet, ib.  
 Abbot of the people, when created in Genoa, x. 550  
 Abd Menaf, the son of Kofa, declared prince of the Koreish, i. 4. His sepulchre made into a common burying-ground, ib. An idolater, 5  
 Abd'al Dar, head of several Arab tribes, i. 4  
 — Motalleb, the son of Hashem, succeeds him at Mecca, i. 6. Discovers the well Zemzem, ib. His twelve sons, ib. His death, ib. Calls his grandson Mohammed, 10. Injunction to his son about Mohammed, 12  
 — Massih foretels the advancement of Mohammed, i. 10  
 Abd'allah, Mohammed's father, greatly admired for his beauty,



- beauty, i. 6. Dies young, *ib.* Whether before his son's birth, 11
- Abd'allah, the servant of Abu Becr, supplies him and Mohammed with provisions in the cave, i. 44. Seizes upon a Meccan caravan, 50. Holds Mohammed's bridle on his entry into Mecca, and affronts the Koreish on the way, 76. Commands at the battle of Muta, 78. Slain, 79. His tomb reared by Mohammed, 88
- Ebn Saad proscribed by Mohammed, i. 83. Corrupts his Koran, 117
- Ebn Khatal proscribed by Mohammed, i. 83
- Ebn Zabara proscribed for his biting poems against Mohammed, i. 84
- Dna'l Najadain's death and grand funeral, i. 94
- Ebn Obba buried, at his request, in Mohammed's shirt, i. 96
- Ebn Masud made Mahommed's antecessor, i. 119
- Ebn Salam, a Jew, assists Mohammed in compiling the Khoran, i. 152. Death, 287
- Ebn Jaaser's dangerous attempt on Dair Abi'l Kodos, i. 188, and timely assailed by Khalid, *ib.*
- Ebn Hodafa, a favourite of the khalif, taken prisoner, and generously released by Heraclius, i. 221
- Ebn Nadil, his successor in Persia, i. 245
- Ebn Sa'id, made governor of Egypt, and highly liked by the Egyptians, i. 250. Brings Nubia under tribute, 253
- Ebn Abbas, his advice to Ali, i. 259. Made governor of Yaman, 260. Recalled from Basra, 273. His advice to Husein rejected, 303
- Ebn Waheb chosen chief of the Kharejites, i. 271. Defeated and killed, *ib.*
- Al Hadrami seizes upon Basra, defeated and slain by Ziyad, and the town retaken, i. 273
- Ebn Zobeir refuses to swear allegiance to Yezid, i. 301. Escapes to Mecca, *ib.* Is deposed by Yezid, and succeeded by his brother, who encounters, defeats, and imprisons him, *ib.* Takes up arms against Yezid, 310. Aggravates Husein's death against him, *ib.* Is promised the khalifat by an Egyptian prophet, and circumvents Walid, 312
- Ebn Moti set over the Koreish, *ib.* Made governor of Cufa, 318
- Ebn Hantelah set over the Ansars, i. 312
- Ebn Yezid's friendly advice rejected by Soliman, i. 323
- Ebn Hazim's noble refusal of Abd'almalec's offers, i. 333. Defeated and put to death by him, *ib.*
- Ebn Ali made governor of Syria, i. 382. Revolts against his nephew Al Mansur, and sets up for himself in Syria, 386. His pretensions to the khalifat, 387. Defeated by Abu Moslem, *ib.* Comes out of his concealment, 390. Stirs up the Rawandians against the khalif, *ib.* and cruelly treated by Al Mansur, 392. Betrayed into his hands, 396. His strange punishment and death, *ib.*
- Ebn Boktr revolts, and his ravages at Edeffa, i. 383
- Ebn Ali Ebn Hudij, made governor of Egypt, i. 402. Dies, 404
- , Al Hakem's uncle, rebels against Abd'alrahman in Spain, i. 453
- Ebn Taher made governor of Egypt, his success against Al Sari there, and gratified by Al Mamun, i. 455. Appeased in favour of the patriarch Thomas, 458. Quells a rebellion in Tabrestan, 462. His death and character, 466
- Ebn Sahel, a famed astronomer of khalif Mamun, i. 458
- Ebn Yahya made grand visier to Al Mo'tamed, and governed by his own brother, i. 489
- Ebn Kawus heads the Arabs against the Greek emperor, is defeated, and sent prisoner to Constantinople, i. 492
- the brother of Mohammed, chosen khalif in Spain, i. 495. Quells several rebellious cities, *ib.*
- Ebn Abd'allah Ebn Taher's death and noble character, i. 513
- Ebn Abd'alrahman dies in Spain, with his character, i. 513
- , rise of, and revolt against the Almoravides, vii. 130. Assumes the name of Mohedi, and his success against Brahan, 131. Death and regulations, *ib.* (B)
- , the son of shariff Mohammed, succeeds his father in Morocco, vii. 185. His pretended death, *ib.* Beheads vazir Budchat, with his horrid cruelty and debaucheries, *ib.* (I). Dominions and public buildings, *ib.* (K)
- , son of Muley Ishmael, mounts the throne of Morocco, vii. 199. Takes Fez, *ib.* Instances of his cruelty, *ib.* His reception of count Ripperda, 200. New instances of his cruelty, 292. Murders the Arab deputies, *ib.* Deposed and restored to the throne, *ib.* Cruelty to the Mequinese, is opposed by the negroes, and his cruelty to their general, 203. Defeated by the negroes, defeats his competitor, and re-assumes the crown, *ib.*
- Abd'alamid and his new fleet shipwrecked, i. 493
- Abdalaneze defeats the king of Tremecen, vii. 241
- Abd'alaziz made governor of Egypt, i. 319. Refuses to put Amru to death, 329. Quells the mutineers at Damascus, *ib.* Defeated by the Azarakites, 332. Dies governor of Egypt, 341. His famous works there, and fables concerning him, *ib.*
- , the son of Musa, reigns in Spain, and is assassinated, i. 345
- Omar, the son of Soliman, i. 355. See Omar
- , a Moorish general, succeeds his father in Spain, vii. 584. His conspiracy suspected, 585. Assassinated by the Moors, and concealed by Alahor, *ib.*
- Abd'alkarim sent to quell the Calahorrans in Spain, i. 449. His success there, and against the revolted Cordubans, *ib.* Recovers Barcelona from the Christians, 450
- Abd'almalec Ebn Refa'a made governor of Egypt, i. 350
- Ebn Batal's success in Phrygia against the Greeks, i. 366
- , the son of Merwan, succeeds him in Syria, i. 325. Changes the Syrian pilgrimage Mecca to that at Jerusalem, and reduces the revolted Amru at Damascus, 329. Slays him, *ib.* His palace besieged by Yahya, his avarice, his becoming tributary to the Greek emperor, and his expedition against Irak, 330. Resolves to go in person, *ib.* Victory over the Persians, *ib.* Conquests and banquets in Irak, 331. Reflections on Mus'ab's head being brought to him, *ib.* He bends his forces against Mecca, 332. Becomes master of it, and of the Moslem empire, 334. Coins the court gold and silver money, 338, 339. Dies of a dropsy, 342. His burial, character, &c. *ib.*
- sent governor into Spain, i. 367. Ill success and defeat, upon which he is recalled with disgrace, 368. Cruelly murdered by the Moors in Spain, 369
- Ebn Yezid made governor in Egypt, i. 391. Deposed, *ib.*
- , emir of Khorasan, killed by a fall, ii. 555. His brother succeeds, *ib.*
- Al Canderi, his wazir, presides over Bagdat, ii. 657
- Abd'alrahman converts some Arab tribes, and marries the prince's daughter, i. 65
- , his gallantry at the siege of Basra, i. 138. Presides at the election of a new khalif, 248
- Ebn Amer, his success in Khorasan, i. 252
- Ebn Meljem, one of the assassins of Hali, his punishment, i. 275
- Ebn Okba made governor of Egypt, i. 318
- Ebn Al Menef defeated and slain by the Azarakites, i. 335
- Ebn Al Abbas put to death for Zendicism, i. 415
- , an Arab governor, rebels against the khalif of Persia, i. 339
- , the western khalif dies, i. 418
- Ebn Mohammed rebels against Al Hejai, and is defeated by him, i. 340. His death, *ib.*
- , governor of Spain, i. 366. Success against the Muniz, ravages France, and defeated by the French, *ib.* Forced to retire into Spain, 367. Stript of his government of Egypt, 368
- Ommiyah acknowledged khalif in Spain, i. 390. Founds a new khalifat there, *ib.* Success against Yusef, 391. Cruelties to his friends and adherents, 392. Settles himself in that khalifat, *ib.* Still successful in Spain, 402. Suppresses the revolted Toledans, 433. New conquests, 465. Defeats the Norman fleet sent against him, 466. Public works in Spain, and numerous issue, 471. His death, *ib.*
- strips Ali of the Spanish khalifat, defeated and slain before Granada, i. 415
- , chosen khalif in Spain, i. 627. Treachery to the Cordubans, and is slain by them, *ib.*
- Abd'alrashid raised to the Gaznian throne, i. 652. Deposed and murdered by an ungrateful favourite, 653
- Abdalmelech succeeds Muley Mohammed in Morocco, his victory and death, vii. 186.
- II. his reign and death, vii. 187 (N)
- , son of Muley Ishmael, revolts in the kingdom of Suz, vii. 194. Takes up arms against the king his brother, 196. Defeated and wounded, *ib.* Message rejected, 197. Chosen king, with his cruelty and short reign, 198. Succeeded by his



- his brother, *ib.* Besieged in Fez, 199. Taken and sent prisoner to Mequinez, where he is strangled, *ib.*
- Abdalmelech, brother of Hassan, seizes on the Tunisian throne, and dies soon after, vii. 327
- Abdelquibir, the son of Hassan, sent on a pilgrimage to Mecca, vii. 174
- Abderram sent governor of Taphilet, vii. 180. Treachery to his brothers, and poisoned by his father's orders, 181
- Abdo'l Gheray defeats the Persians, ii. 607. Defeated and made prisoner by Mirza Hamzeh, *ib.*
- Fazl sent to conquer Dekan, iii. 61. His success, *ib.* Murdered by Shah Selim's means, 62
- Khan, his successes against Rana, iii. 68. Destroys the pagods, *ib.* Successes in Guzerat, *ib.* Subdues Kur and Kalpi, 70. Successes against Malec Amber, 71. Made governor of Guzerat, 73. Ill conduct, 74. Strives to retrieve it, *ib.* Defeated, put to flight, abandons the rebel prince, and is well received, 78
- Abdo'llah, son of Ibraim Shah, flies to Ulug Khan, and reigns one year, ii. 589
- a famed astrologer, foretels Timur's victory over Bajazet, ii. 562
- , son of Iskander, his success and conquests in Great Bukharia, ii. 710
- Kothb Shah disoblige Amir Jimola, iii. 152. His capital and palace plundered, 153. Besieged in Golkonda by Aureng Zib, *ib.* Generosity to him, and relieved by his son-in-law Mirza Mahommed, and a peace made by means of Amir Jimola, *ib.* A kind reception of the Mirza, and vast esteem for him, 154. Strengthened by his alliances against Aureng Zib, *ib.* Gives his youngest daughter to Mirzah Abdollah Hassan, 155
- Abdo'llatif imprisoned by Alao'ddawlet, ii. 588. Revolts and defeats his father, whom he puts to death, 589. Murders his brother Abdo'laziz, *ib.* Slain by his soldiers after a six months reign, *ib.*
- Abdo'laziz Khan invaded by Abu'lghazi, and concludes a peace with him, ii. 711
- Abdo'llis, a tribe of the Afghans in Persia, who and where situated, ii. 649. Submit to Persia, *ib.* Revolt against Mir Mohammed, 655. New incursions into Herat, 658. Join with the rebel Mir Mahmud, 659
- Abd'olmomin Khan slain by his people on his return home, ii. 710
- Abdo'lwal prevents Argun from meeting Shah Rukh, ii. 585
- Abdul Hedi made viceroy of Tunis, vii. 317
- Abeikas savages, account of them, xv. 44
- Abel, second son of Valdemar, alliance between him and Adolphus of Holstein, xii. 30. Treacherously murders the king his brother, 33. Chosen in the room of his brother Eric V. to the Danish throne, and the states reason for it, 34. His conscience torments him for his brother's murder, *ib.* Defeated and slain, with the different accounts of this matter, and his character, 36
- Abelard (Peter) a famous professor of philosophy in France, his writings and condemnation, who, through Peter abbot of Cluny's intercession, is absolved, ix. 591
- Abeldah, (R. Moses) his character and writings, v. 591 (K)
- Aben Gama, the Moorish viceroy, forms a conspiracy against the emperor Alonso's life, vii. 680. Disappointed and slain, 681. Specimen before given of his fidelity, *ib.* (T)
- Abenakis where seated, xiv. 587. Their conversion by missionaries from Quebec and New England, *ib.* Their fidelity to the French, vii. 628. How provoked to hostilities against the English, 656. Their preliminaries in treating with the English what, *ib.* How relieved and settled by the French, 679. Disputes between them and the English, 694
- Abercrombie (General) succeeds Shirley in his command in North America, xiv. 709. Succeeds Lord Loudon in America, and the vast army under him, 713. Unsuccessful attack and great loss at Ticonderoga, with his return, *ib.*
- Abgara, his bloody contest for the crown of Monomotopa, vi. 576
- Abimelech, one of Al Rashid's generals, his ravages in the empire, i. 423
- Abiskun, the island where Soltan Mohammed died, its situation, ii. 304 (R)
- Abkhaz, who, and where situated, ii. 192. Defeated by Soltan Arestan, *ib.*
- Abnakhayyal made patriarch of Alexandria, i. 368. Persecuted by the governor, *ib.*
- Abo, a treaty concluded there between Russia and Sweden, xii. 423
- Abobes in Quito, what, xiv. 454
- Abodrites, account of that people, x. 627 (C)
- Abodrites, who xv. 503. After various struggles submit to Pepin and Charlemagne, *ib.* The latter protects them, and defeats Wittikind and the Wils, 509. Their king why murdered by the Saxons, *ib.* Their wars with these and the Danes, who subdue them, *ib.* Still protected by Charlemagne, and by his son Lewis, *ib.* Attempts to convert them, yet continue to hold out, 510. Their first Christian king, who, *ib.* They invade Denmark, *ib.*
- Abolostayn taken, and the people massacred, by Bayez, ii. 234
- Abra and Abaz, two ancient kings of Abyssinia, vi. 252
- Abraham's pretended station at Mecca, i. 99 & 101
- Abraham Alim ravages Media, ii. 161. Defeated and slain by Tagrolipiz, *ib.*
- Al Braham, the last king of the Almoravides, his unworthy reign, vii. 130. Supplanted by the Almohides, *ib.* His indolence, revolt against him, and his death, 131
- , a Maronite Jesuit, sent into Abyssinia, vi. 279. Taken and beheaded, 280
- Hallevi, a strenuous opposer of the Caraites, v. 547 (W)
- prince of the Jews, thinks the configuration of Moses's birth would bring in the Messiah, v. 575 (A). But mistaken about it, *ib.*
- Abravanel in high favour at the Spanish court, v. 576. Forced into banishment, *ib.* (C)
- Abrobi, a noted village on the Gold Coast, vi. 651
- Abroga, a congress there, and a peace concluded between Sweden and Denmark, with the treachery of the Swedish commissaries, and Charles Canutson's resentment, xii. 252
- Abruzzo, invasion of, by Ambrosio Visconti, defeated, x. 467
- Abfalon of Denmark, his disinterestedness with regard to the people's remonstrances over-ruled, xii. 18. Who break out into open rebellion, and the tumult suppressed through Abfalon's prudence and firmness, 19. Surprises and defeats Bugislaus, the Vandal prince, so that Barbarossa is disappointed in his views, with Abfalon's farther successes, 23. Death and noble character, 25
- Abtelah, country of, whence so called, ii. 136. Subdued by Khosrohes, *ib.*
- Abu Becr gained to Mohammed's party, i. 22. Who gains many other chiefs to his religion, 24. Saluted his khalif, 23. His three competitors, *ib.* Wager in favour of Mohammed's prophecy won, 29. Ordered to vouch for the story of his journey to heaven, 38. Accompanies him to his cave near Mecca, 43. Success against the Kelabites, 75. Large contributions towards the Greek war, 92. Made president of the pilgrimages at Mecca, 95. Classed among the illustrious friends of Mohammed, 119. Digests the Koran into its present form, 131. Appeases the tumults at Medina, *ib.* Speech to the populace, and elected khalif, 132. Subdues several provinces, 135. Sends an army to invade Syria, 136. Charge to his general, and orders to Khaled after the victory of Ajnadin, 145. His death on the day Damascus was taken, 147. His last will, *ib.* Person described and character, 181. Two famed sayings, with omens which happened before his death, 182
- Ayub's death and famous tomb, i. 290
- , the brother of Ayesha, dies, i. 297
- Horeira's death and character, with his true name, i. 297
- Jahl's bravado fatal to him and the Koreish, i. 51
- Musa refuses to assist Ali, i. 264. Is forced by the Cufans to comply, 265. Corrupted by Amru, 270. Proclaims Ali deposed, and is forced to retire to Mecca, *ib.*
- Lulua, Omar's assassin, i. 245. See Firuz.
- Obeidah obliges Damascus to surrender, i. 146. Saves the besieged from being put to the sword, *ib.* Applauded for his humanity to the Damascenes, 183. Conceals his being set over Kaled, and acts as his subordinate, 186. Is obliged by the khalif to assume the chief command, *ib.* Marches to Balbec, 189. Is ordered to sit down before Emessa, *ib.* Grants the Emessans a year's truce, 191. Imposes a tribute on them and other Syrian cities, *ib.* His inaction displeases the khalif, 192. Makes a truce with other Syrian cities, *ib.* Lays siege to Balbec, 194. Takes it, 195. Outwits the Emessans of their provisions, 196. Takes the castle of Arrestan, 197, and Shaizar, *ib.* Forced to abandon Emessa for a time, 198. Marches towards Yermouk, 199. Desires from the khalif some fresh forces, 200. Defeats the Greek army, 201. Distribution of the spoil disliked by the army, 203. Confirmed by the khalif, and he besieges and takes Jerusalem, *ib.* He reduces Aleppo, 211. Attempts its castle in vain, 212. Ordered by the khalif to continue the siege, 213. Takes it by stratagem, *ib.* and stormed, 214. Takes the iron bridge near Antioch, 218.



- also possession of Antioch, 219. Sends the khalif an account of it by express, 220. Dies of the plague in Syria, 232
- Abu Obeid, his success in Persia, i. 182. Slain, ib.
- Thaher made head of the Karmatians, i. 518. Invades the khalifat, and successful attempt on a Meccan caravan, ib. Rich booty, 519. Embassy to the khalif, whom he invades with a powerful army, ib. & 520. Defeats his general Yusef with a handful of men, ib. His other victories alarm the khalif, and his cruelty to Bakka and other cities, 521. Horrid cruelties, prophanation, &c. at Mecca, 522. Immense spoils carried away by him, and he plunders a new caravan, 531. Advantageous treaty with the Emir Al Omra, 532. Dies of the small-pox, ii. 544
- Ebn Doreidi, a celebrated poet, his death, character, and works, i. 527
- Ahmed Ebn Moctafi nailed to the wall of Al Kaher's seraglio, i. 529
- Al Mohdi, the founder of the Fatemite dynasty, his death, i. 530 (C). Concealed by his successor, ib.
- Ebn Ta, reduces Egypt, i. 531. Success there, 532
- Beir Ebn Rayek made supreme emir by the khalif Radi, with his usurpations, i. 532. Shameful treaty with Abu Taher, ib. Made Emir Al Omra by Almotakki, 540. Slain by the treachery of Abu Nafero'ddawlla, 541
- Ebn Ali Motaj, his success against Mahcan Ebn Mali, i. 539
- Mohammed Al Hafan, his ready assistance to khalif Motakki, and treachery to Abu Beir, i. 541
- Ibrahim, his character and Deylam history, i. 596
- Mohammed Ebn Yusef, the grammarian, his death and works, i. 599
- Ali Al Mansur, succeeds his father in Egypt, i. 600
- Amer Mohammed, wazir of Spain, his death and character, i. 607
- Amer, since Almanfur, governor of Corduba, his rise and character, ii. 575. Victory over Garcia, and other exploits against the Franks, with his death, ib.
- Tharif made emir of Cufa, i. 587
- Mahommed Al Aswad persecutes the Sonnites in Syria, i. 60
- Racwah raises a revolt in Egypt, but is defeated and taken by Al Hakem, i. 610. His death and punishment, ib.
- Yezid's successful revolt against the African khalif, i. 545. Raises the siege of Mohdia, 547. His defeat, imprisonment, and death, 549
- Nafr Mohammed, his death and character, i. 550
- Tamim Ma'bad succeeds his father Al Mansur in Kairwan, i. 551. The first Fatemite khalif in Egypt, ib.
- Omar Ebn Waheb, his death and character, i. 553
- Mohammed Al Farfi, the grammarian, dies, i. 554
- Faras taken prisoner by the Greeks, i. 554. Released, ib. Retaken by the Greeks, 557. Re-exchanged, 561. Put to death, 563
- Shaja Fatek, a Greek slave, his rise and death, i. 556
- Ali, the lord of Kerman, his death and character, i. 563
- Taglib confines his father to the castle of Ardman, ii. 563. Ill treatment of him, 564. Wars with his brothers, ib. Success against them, 567. Seizes on Bagdad, 570. Driven out and defeated, with his treachery to his brother, 576. Defeated by Adado'ddawla, ib. Driven out of Damascus by Cassam, 578. Defeated by Dagfal Ebn Mofraj, 580. Taken and put to death, ib.
- Ihak Ibrahim, his treachery to Adado'ddawla, and imprisoned by him, i. 582
- Fadl Jaafar, his learned character and works, i. 585 (M)
- Thaher Ibrahim recovers possession of Mawfel, i. 591. Invaded by Bad the Curd, ib. Defeats him, 592. Invaded afresh by his nephew, and is defeated and killed by Abu'l Dzowad, ib.
- Ali Ebn Merwan invades Diyar Beir, i. 592. Made governor of Aleppo, ib. Assassinated by Ebn Dimna, ib.
- Nafr, why imprisoned by his brother, i. 592. Seizes on Erzerum and Diyar Beir, ib.
- Ali Simjur rebels against Nuh Ebn Mansur, i. 596, but is defeated by him, 597. His submission to him, ib.
- Al Hassan's death and works, i. 603
- Naashar, vulgarly called Abu Mafar, a famous astrologer, his character and death, i. 497
- Sa'id, head of the Karmatians, invades Bahrein, i. 501. Success, ravages, and cruelty to the Hajrans, 502. Assassinated in a bath, 513
- Sa'id Al Daif, his success in Sicily, i. 515
- Al Taleb educates young Mohammed, i. 7. Charged with the care of him by his own father, 12. Threatened for his friendship to him, 23. Causes the Koreish league to be rescinded, 27. Dies soon after, and whether a convert to Mohammed, 28.
- Abu Hanifa's sect described, i. 410. Instances of his great charity, writings, character and mausoleum, 411
- Zeid Abd'alrahman, a famed Christian physician, his character, &c. i. 475
- Abdallah drives the Aglabites out of Kairwan, i. 511
- Mohammed Obeid'allah raised to the throne of Kairwan, i. 511
- Sa'id, surnamed Behadr Khan, succeeds his father in Iran, i. 488. Quells the rebellious army, and gains the title of Brave, ib. Gives his sister to the regent Juban, ib. Love to his daughter occasions a breach between them, and he puts his son Damashk to death, 489. Raises an army against Juban, and orders him to be put to death, 490. Pays the charge of his funeral, his last expedition against Shah Uzbek, and his death, supposed by poison, 491
- Beir Mirza. See Mirza.
- Chemen restored to the Tremecen throne by the king of Spain, and becomes tributary to him, vii. 145
- Ferez, king of Tunis, revolts from the king of Morocco, vii. 317
- Barsucceeds Hutman in Tunis, vii. 318. Defeats Hassan, and retakes Tunis, but is assassinated by Chijah, and succeeded by Abu Camen, 319
- Abuali rebels against his brother Eackh, ii. 137
- , khalif of Egypt, assassinated, ii. 186
- Abuhaner, a Mogul province, where situated, ii. 245
- Abu'l Hija released from imprisonment, i. 515
- Kasem, son of the Fatemite khalif, his conquests in Egypt, i. 515. Defeated by Munes, Al Moktader's general, ib.
- Kasem succeeds his father in Egypt, i. 547
- Kasem Abd'alrahman Ebn Ishak, the famed grammarian, his death and works, i. 550
- Hafan Jawhar's great conquests in Africa, i. 554
- Faraj, the Ommiyan scribe, his death, writings, &c. ii. 563
- Werd, prince of Khalat in Armenia, his death, i. 557
- Ebn Hamed loses and recovers the khalifat of Spain, i. 626
- Kasem, emir of Sicily, his success against the Christians, i. 571. Devastations in Calabria, ib. Incursions into, and slaughters in Italy, 574. Slain by the Franks, 583. Reputed a martyr by the Moslems, ib.
- Fathi cruelly punished by Adado'ddawla, i. 574
- Sarur, a Christian, poisons the patriarch of Alexandria, and his punishment, i. 577.
- Faraj Ebn Shabin assassinated in Batiha, i. 586
- Ma'ali, an infant, chosen prince of Batiha, i. 586. Banned by his treacherous guardian, 587
- Ebn Nobatah's death and character, i. 587. Vision and dreaming sermon, ib.
- Hasen Ali Ebn Nasr succeeds Al Modhaffer in Batiha, and his excellent character, i. 580
- Fadayel succeeds his father in Syria, i. 594. Invaded by the Egyptians, with his success against them, 595
- Kasem, the wazir, his character and death, i. 595 (Q). Highly esteemed, 599. His last advice to Falkhro'dawla, with his works, ib.
- Kasem Mahmud Ebn Al Zamakshari, his death, titles, and works, i. 707 (U)
- Kassem Babr seizes on Jorjam after Shah Rukh's death, ii. 588
- Mehraf Nasr succeeds his father in Shaizar, i. 668
- Jaafar Al Tabari, the famous Arab historian, his death and character, and an account of his history, i. 517. Abridged and continued by Al Makin, ib. (A)
- Kasem, lord of Seville, &c. dies, i. 649
- Hares, king of Mawara'nahr, deprived of his eyes and crown, ii. 138
- Abumer, a famed Rabbi at Pundebita, v. 526 (Q)
- , sultan of Karazm, defeated and foolishly slain, ii. 729
- Katar, sent general into Spain, and opposed by the Arabs there, i. 371
- Hashem, a hearty friend to the house of Abbas, i. 376
- Moslem, sent to Khorasan by Ibrahim Ebn Ali, and made governor of it, i. 377. Defeats Merwan, and drives him out of Khorasan, 378
- Moslema, made counsellor by the khalif Abu'l Abbas, by whom he is put to death, i. 385
- Jaafar made governor of Adherbijan, i. 382.
- Abbas Ebn Mahommed proclaimed khalif, i. 380. His signal victory over Merwan's forces, ib. His troops way nicknamed Uchama, or black, 382. His first executions



- and promotions, *ib.* Horrid cruelties to the Ommiyahan family, *ib.* Great advantages over them, *ib.* See Saffah.
- Abul Saraya, his revolt against Al Mamun, i. 449. Defeated and beheaded, *ib.*
- Mansur defeats and kills Abu Sa'id, i. 655. Obtains the crown of Fars, but dethroned by his new-raised wazir, Huya, *ib.*
- Ali Al Hasan revolts against the Egyptian khalif, i. 661. Besieges him in his palace, *ib.* Forces him to part with his wealth, *ib.* His dreadful ravages and death, 664.
- Mansur Berar rebels and is proclaimed khalif by Asteikin, but defeated by wazir Aidai, i. 685.
- Thaher, head of the Batanites, i. 688.
- Mahali commands the castle of Aleppo, i. 692.
- Hareth Ebn Nuh succeeds Al Mansur, and dethroned by Baktuzun, i. 604. Imprisonment and death, *ib.*
- Kafem invades and kills Samsamo'dawla, i. 603.
- Fadayel, prince of Aleppo, poisoned, i. 605.
- Ganagem, the Mazjaite, slain by the Doboizites, i. 614.
- Fawares revolts against his brother, i. 621. Fights and retreats, yet obtains a peace from him, 622.
- Munajem Bekr seizes on the sovereignty of Aleppo, i. 627. Surrenders it to Al Catemi, *ib.*
- Mansur, wazir of Baghdad, invests young Mohammed sultan, i. 675. Compliments to the queen mother, 676.
- Taleb, his death and character, i. 600. Silenced from preaching, 601.
- Amer Mohammed, prime wazir in Andalusia, his death and character, i. 607. Succeeded by Abu Merwan, *ib.*
- Mohammed drives out the shah of Georgia, i. 614. His revolt, severe punishment, death, and sufferings, *ib.*
- Calijar succeeds Soltano'ddowla in Kerwan and Fars, i. 629. Forced to resign them to Abu'l Fawares, *ib.* Recovers them from him, *ib.* Sues to his uncle for help in vain, 631. Invades him, and seizes on Basra and Waser, *ib.*
- Taleb Rostan subdued by Soltan Mahmud, i. 632.
- Camel, the son of Saleh, escapes to Aleppo, i. 634. Seizes on the government of it, and drives Moezo'ddawla from thence, 636.
- Jaaffer succeeds his father in the khalifat, i. 637. Takes the surname of Al Kayem Beamri'llah, *ib.* Confers the post of Emir Al Omra upon Jalalo'ddawla, *ib.*
- Kafem Ebn Al Kayem succeeds his grandfather Al Kayem Beamri'llah in the khalifat of Baghdad, i. 665. His character, *ib.*
- Salem made governor of the Persian Irak, i. 638. Founds the principality of Hamadan, *ib.*
- Caab supplants his brother in Sicily, but is driven out by him, i. 640.
- Tamin succeeds his father in the Fatemite khalifat, i. 640.
- Ali Ebn Zarah, a Christian author, his death and works, i. 647.
- Califar refuses to be Emir Al Omra of Bagdad, i. 650. Makes an alliance with Togrol Beg, 651. His death and character, *ib.*
- Ali Ahmed revolts against Al Hafedh, i. 701.
- Al Hakem raises new feuds in Egypt, i. 701. Defeated by Barahm, 702.
- Zijen, king of Tremecen, defeated by the pirate Barbarossa, vii. 145, and slain by his own subjects, 246.
- Hommen protected by the emperor, and restored to the Tremecen kingdom, vii. 247.
- Zachariah, his conquests in Tunis, &c. vii. 317.
- Ferez revolts from the king of Morocco, vii. 317. Proclaims himself king of Africa, 318. Is succeeded by his son Hutman, *ib.*
- Barca, of Tunis, murdered by his nephew Chiajah, vii. 318.
- Ghazi advises the murdering of his two brothers, ii. 736. Offers himself to do it, 737. Defeated by them, and narrowly escapes, *ib.* Returns with the Uzbeks to Karazm, 740. Arrested by Isfandiar Khan, and sent close prisoner into Persia, 741. Particulars of his birth, with his escape out of Persia, 742. Succeeds his brother Sharif Mohammed as 16th Khan, *ib.* Narrowly escapes being taken, *ib.* Is proclaimed Khan on his arrival, *ib.* Repulsed before Khayuk, but takes it on the second attempt, 743. Perfidious massacre of the Turkmans, and invaded by the Kalmuks, 744. Repulses and forgives them, *ib.* Invades Great Bukharia, *ib.* & seq. Ravages Yayzi, *ib.* Takes the city of Karmina, *ib.* and attacked in his retreat by Abdo'laziz, whom he defeats, 745. Invades Bukharia a second time, resigns the crown, and retires, with his death and character, 746.
- Abu'l Ebn Moktader accused by his sister to the khalif, i. 591. Flies, and is well received by Mohadhdhebo'dd, *ib.*
- Dzwad, the Okailite, founds the dynasty of that name, i. 592. Success against Abu Thaher, *ib.* Raised to the khalifat, *ib.* Takes the name of Al Kader, *ib.* See Al Kader.
- Kafem, judge of Deinawar, murdered by the people, i. 618.
- Afar, the Moslem general, killed before Messina, i. 646.
- Fetah, the famed physician, his death and character, i. 647.
- Maimun succeeds in the Egyptian khalifat, i. 699.
- Fetah, a learned Arab, his death and works, i. 713.
- Moslem sent to quell the Cufans, i. 386. Defeated by Abdallah Ebn Ali, 387. Is assassinated by the khalif's order, 388. Account of the treacherous deed, *ib.* His character and gluttony, *ib.*
- Bekr Malek made governor of Herat, ii. 314.
- Gayir Khan, his exploits and successors, ii. 706. Grows formidable by them, 707. Defeated and slain, *ib.*
- Ghazi obtains Urjensh from Isfandiar, ii. 738. Advises the destroying of the Turkmans, but is seized and imprisoned by Isfandiar, 739. Revolts and gains the Uzbeks to him, *ib.* Defeated by the Khan, *ib.* Obliges him to a treaty, *ib.* and being abandoned by his troops, he marches out of Karazm, 740. Meets with a cold reception at Turkestan, &c. *ib.*
- Affan, being joined by the king of Granada, invests Tarafa, viii. 45. The kings of Castile and Portugal join to relieve the place, when the Moors are defeated with the loss of half their army, in the battle of Salsedo, *ib.*
- Abulah invited by Ilbaro into Karazm, ii. 723. Their exploits, and the dominions of his descendants, *ib.* Rebels against Hassan Kuli, *ib.*
- Abu'l feda, whence descended, i. 192.
- Abuna, the head of the prelates of Abyssinia, vi. 222. Under the patriarchate of Alexandria, *ib.* Most of them very ignorant and remiss, 224. Strange way of giving absolution, *ib.* (D). Some of them not in priests orders, 225. Their large revenues and perquisites, with the priests and komos under them, 226. A false one arrives at Anarea, 305. Deposed and banished, *ib.* A true one tampered with by the missionaries, proves an enemy to them, 306.
- Abundar imprisoned for his ill treatment of Othman, i. 253.
- Abusaid Mirza. See Mirzah.
- Khan, his short and obscure reign, ii. 709.
- Abyssinia, history and empire of, vi. 157. When first known to the Europeans, 158. Why become inaccessible to them, *ib.* Why so far extended by antient geographers, 159. The new Nuremberg map of it defective, *ib.* (B) and others still worse, *ib.* (C). Its situation and extent, 167. Kingdoms and provinces inclosed on all sides, 168. A government by queens, 169 (B). Supposed the antient Meroe, *ib.* Its various names, and whence falsely called Prester John, *ib.*— 170. Called by that name before the Portuguese searched after it, 171. Few towns in the whole empire, 174 (F). Sad state of its provinces, 175. Invaded by the savage Gallas, and an account of these invaders, *ib.*— 176. The climate, soil, and product, 180. Various seasons, violent storms, rains, &c. 181. Diseases, 182. Various grain, *ib.* Cattle, *ib.* Physical and other plants, 183. Cotton, *ib.* Plenty of domestic animals, and fine breed of horses, *ib.* Mules, 184. Camelopards described, *ib.* Elephants wild and destructive, and monstrous lions, how destroyed, 185. Amphibious animals, *ib.* Fishes and fowls, 186. Vast plenty of honey, 187. Infested with swarms of locusts, *ib.* Various nations inhabiting it, 188. In danger from numerous Turks, 189. Infested by the Agaus, *ib.* Various languages, 190. Ignorant clergy, 191. Natural rarities, 199. Gold mines, and scarcity of silver, &c. *ib.* Mines of salt, of which they make the current coin, 200. Stupendous rocks and mountains, *ib.* Way of craning beasts and their burthens, &c. up and down these, 202. Lakes, *ib.* Rivers, 204. Their fertile course, 205. Artificial rarities, *ib.* Stately churches cut out of solid rocks, and other antient churches and monasteries run to decay, 206. Imperial palace described, government, laws, &c. *ib.* Royal camp, and rich church pavilions, 207. Administration of justice, 215. Corruption of it, and capital punishments inflicted by the prosecutors, *ib.* Stout soldiery, who carry their families along with them, 216. Succession and history of its monarchs very lame and doubtful, 251. Usurpers and women struck out of their list, with different computation of years whence arising, *ib.* (A). Wretched state at the arrival of the Portuguese, 255. Rich gold-mines



- in some of its provinces, 272 (E). Miserably wasted by the Moors, 276. Closely blocked up by the Turks, 277. Abyssinians, their monarchs jealous of the Europeans, vi. 158. Their descent, high titles, homage, retinue, and magnificence, living mostly in camps, 207. Manner of removing them, their vast havoc, and supplied by the poor subjects, 208. Manner of marching and pitching their camps, and the crown how far hereditary, 209. Princes how confined to a fortress, ib. (E). and guarded, ib. That custom how abrogated and revived again, 201. Ceremony of coronation, ib. Anointing, &c. 211. Cutting the cord, ib. (G). Their queens how chosen and married, 212. One declared empress, with her privileges, &c. ib. (K). Emperors, why in holy orders, 213, and why no tributary kings, 214. Chief officers, their horrid bribery and corruption, ib. Army, 215. Why without fire-arms, 216. Sorry discipline, and pay, ib. Attended by a numerous clergy, ib. Imperial revenues whence, and the whole inconsiderable, 218. Their coat of arms, 219. Sumptuous funerals, 240. Chronology and succession, 251. Dethroned by the Zaycans, 252. Their annals and records why so maimed, 254. Stile themselves still Defenders of the Faith, 311. Their way of riding, 184. Of killing and eating the destructive locusts, 188 (E). Good disposition 191. Other good qualities, ib. (B). Peaceableness, ib. (C). Singularity, abstinence, and fasts, 192 (D). Veneration for their saints, ib. Dress and marriages, 193. Polygamy and frequent divorcements, ib. Marriages how celebrated, 194. Mean way of living, 195. The rich fed by hand, ib. Feastings and carousings, ib. Drink, ib. Wine not permitted, and how made for Divine service, 196 (H). Furniture and ornaments, and go bare-headed, ib. Mean houses, ib. No palaces nor towns, 197. Scarcity of trades, 198. Commerce, ib. Extraordinary hospitality, but abused by vagrants, 199. Unskilfulness in metals owing to their indolence, ib. Their religion, whence brought to them, 218. Its conformity to the Jewish, 219. Antient tradition about the queen of Sheba, ib. Many tenets of it received from the Rechabites, 221. When, and by whom, converted to Christianity, ib. Subject to the Alexandrian patriarchs, 222. Constant zeal for religion, 223. Clergy, 224. Allowed to marry, 226. Numerous and poor, vast respect for their churches, and their Divine worship, ib. Priestly ornaments and other ceremonies all opposite to the Romish, 227. Communion how administered, ib. and received, 228. Monks and monasteries, when first introduced, ib. (H). Much earlier than Paul and Antony, 229. Opposite to that of the Latin and Greek monks, ib. Their abstinence and other institutes, 230. Ablutions and other mortifications, ib. Mean diet and habits, 231. Their abbats, or generals, how distinguished, ib. Carry different crosses in their hands, ib. Monasteries called by their Jewish names, 232. Run into decay, 233. Their practice of circumcision, ib. Judaic customs vindicated, 234. Keeping the sabbath, 235. Abstaining from blood, &c. ib. Countenanced by St. Paul, 234. Misrepresented by the Jesuits, 236, and when first tainted with heresy, ib. Condemned by the Chalcedonic council, ib. Curse it and the pope on that account, 237 (B). Revere Dioscorus, and disclaim Eutyches, ib. Receive the first three councils and Nicene creed, ib. Summary of their faith, and they receive the Old and New Testament, and Apostolic Constitutions, 238 (C). Pray to saints and relicks, and hold no purgatory, 239. Their prayers and alms for the dead, ib. Long mournings and lamentations for them, ib. Veneration for their dead saints, 240, and angels, 241. Hold only two sacraments, ib. (G). Manner of conferring baptism, ib. (G) and the holy communion, ib. Two kinds of sacred unction, ib. Washing at the feast of Epiphany, ib. (I). No rebaptization, 243, but a Jewish ablution, ib. Their baptism by fire, what, 244 (K). Join no confirmation with baptism, ib. Use the holy chrism, and hold not penance a sacrament, 245. Confession a late institution, ib. Consecration of the holy chrism, 246. Different from that of the Coptic church, ib. (N). Communion not given out of the church, ib. Manner of anointing the sick, 196. Ordination and marriage no sacraments, ib. Clergy and laity very ignorant, ib. Want of academies, and youth how taught, 248. Summary of their catechism, and general belief, 249. Shamefully negligent with respect to their records, 254. Persecuted by the emperor Suseus, 288—290. Revolts frequent, ib. Complaint against his severity, ib. Receive the Roman faith, x. 17. Their dislike to the popish worship, vi. 295. Representation to the emperor, 298, and obtain liberty of conscience, 300. Seize on the Romish churches, 301. Abyssinian women, their character, dress, and singular privileges, vi. 192. Abuse of marriage among the great ones, 193. Infidelity how punished, 194. How married, ib. Eat separately from their husbands, 195. Their head-ornaments, 196. Surprising fecundity, 199. Instances of their desperate valour, 263. Abzal river, its famed bridge described, ii. 528. Aca (or Acca) described, i. 686. Academy, French, by whom founded, and its true design, ix. 393. Acadia neglected by the French, through mistaken policy, xiv. 626. Its miserable state, and the English fishery continuing on its coasts, 672. Attempt of the English against it defeated, 680. Their loss, ib. Defeated a second time, and the siege of Port Royal raised, 681. Defeat of parties of the English there, 690. Acamapixtli chosen the first king of Mexico, and speech to him for the good of his people, xiv. 362. Death, character, and public works, 363. Acapulco, annual ship's voyage from Manilla, iv. 211, of the flated galleons from thence, 213. How supported during the voyage, ib. The passage why so long, 214. Its route to California and Mexico, ib. Dangers and diseases to which they are exposed, 215. — port, where, iv. 215. The haven most commodious, ib. (Q). Vessels and cargoes how accommodated and disposed, ib. Manner of the homeward-bound galleons passing thence to Manilla, 217. Exact distance of homeward bound and outward-bound ships computed, 218 (T). — described, xiv. 440. Its lofty castle, ib. Mistake as to the commerce between it and Peru, ib. The annual Lima and Manilla ships arrive here, ib. Great fair there, 441. The money which the galleon carries off to the Philippines, what, ib. Acca, (Acre) where situated, and taken by the Moslems, i. 228. Acciaivoli, his apology by letter to Peter Medici, and his sarcastical answer, xiii. 420. An accommodation readily concluded, is sent into exile, with the occasion, 357. His death and character, 420. Accursius, professor of civil law in Bologna, xiii. 570. Acha, a famed Rabbi of Sora, dies in Judea, v. 525. Achem, a kingdom of Guinea, described, vi. 675. Achen, its English settlements described, with its commerce, coin, &c. iv. 397. Achevasi, territory of, whence so called, v. 162. Acher Beg sent ambassador into Muscovy by the Uzbek Khan, ii. 747. His account of his matter and country, ib. Achien, king of Sumatra, instigated against the Dutch, iv. 413 (G). His close siege of Malacca, 151. Achmet, a Turkish army under him enters Albania, and their successes, x. 367. Achombone, capital of Axim, described, v. 644. Achu made general of the Mungls, ii. 364. Stratagem at the siege of Syang Yang, 366. Discomfits the Song's fleet, 368. Attacks the place with fresh valour, 369. Takes Yang-chew, &c. from the Song, 378. Defeats the Song's general, 367, and why he ordered Cang-quey to be killed, 369. Joined by Pe-yen's army, 372. Successes in Kyangnan, and he burns the Song's fleet, 374. Aclaf Segued, Al John, 94th king of Abyssinia, vi. 254. Acon, taken by the Christians, ix. 47. Açores islands, whence so called, and by whom discovered, iv. 112—153. See Azores. Acra, the European settlement on the Gold Coast, vi. 673. Acremah proscribed by Mohammed, i. 83. Acron, kingdom of, on the Gold Coast, vi. 671. European settlements there, with its kings, chiefs, produce, &c. 672. Actions of Esté. See Brunswick. Acuna, Don Pedro, his answer to the Chinese ambassador, iv. 181. Reduction of the Moluccas, and poisoned, ib. His conduct whether blameable, ib. (G). Acunha defeats a squadron of Mahomedan corsairs, viii. 477. Acupuncture, a curious chirurgical operation performed in Japan, iv. 18. Its use, ib. Manner of performing, and success, 19. Acyad Eben Ganem invades Mesopotamia, i. 241. Reduces Edessa and Constantia, ib. Abadin, in Armenia, taken by the Moslems, i. 243. Adadi, the famed hospital in Baghdad, stored and opened, i. 583. Adado'ddowla mounts the Persian throne, i. 550. Sends reinforcements



- inforcements to Azzo'ddawla, and plunders his camp, but forced to abandon Baghdad, 570. Defeats Azzo'ddawla, and plunders his camp, 573. Appears before Baghdad, 576. The post of Emir Al Omra conferred upon Adado'ddawla, ib. Promises Sclerus great succour, 577. Seizes on the Hamdan territories, 578. Treachery to Sclerus, 579. Forces the emperor to a peace, cruel usage of his ambassador, and ordered to be prayed for by the khalif, ib. Strips his brother of Al Ray and Hamdan, 580. Public repairs and works at Baghdad, 581. Marries his daughter to the khalif, and seizes on Jorjan and Tabrestan, 582. His death and character, 583. Some of his impious poems censured, 584. Great men his cotemporaries and favourites, ib. (M). Learned works dedicated to him, 585. Last words, ib. Struggles between his sons for the succession, ib. Funeral obsequies, 586
- Adais, Port les, xv. 59
- Adakii Kisser-Ili, tribe of Turkmen, where settled, ii. 694—719
- Adala, one of the four contenders for the Monomotopan crown, vi. 376
- Adalgise invades Italy with a Greek army, but defeated by Grimoald, and put to death, ix. 516
- treacherously imprisons the emperor Lewis, by surprising him at Benevento, with the ravages committed by Lewis there, x. 384
- Adam Ebn Yezid, a horrid persecutor of the Christians, i. 403
- , his house at Mecca, i. 100
- , his bridge at Marava, iii. 175
- Adana, in Armenia, taken by John Comnenus, ii. 216
- Adda Rajah's government in Malabar, iii. 162. His dominions, 163
- Adca, a fabulous kingdom on the African coast, vi. 334
- Adel Al Ledini'llah proclaimed 10th khalif of Egypt, vi. 53. Beheads his aunt for the murder of his wazir, ib. Contends that office upon his late wazir's son, ib. Why so little mention is made of this khalif's reign, 55 (F). Reception of, and presents to, Asado'ddin, 57. His death, 60, and end of the Fatemite dynasty, ib.
- (Al Melek) succeeds as khalif in Egypt, vi. 64. Opposed by his brother Al Aziz, ib. Invades Syria and Egypt, 65. Reduces Al Kayro, ib. Assumes the royal title, 66. Receives an embassy from Abyssinia, sends an abuna thither, and is invaded by the Franks, 67. Harassed by the tumultuous Christians, 68. His death, ib.
- or Zeila, kingdom of, why so little known, vi. 320—324. Its situation, 325. Metropolis why called Zeila, ib. (B). Described, with other towns, ib. Rivers, 326. Government, ib. Kingdom by whom first founded, 327, and dismembered from Abyssinia, ib.
- , the king of, his wars against the Portuguese, vi. 327
- Keray, the 19th khan of Krim, ii. 451
- Soltan, 22d khan of Bukharia, ii. 466
- Aga, takes up arms against the usurper Ahmed, ii. 494. Proclaims his brother Bayezid, ib. Abandoned by his officers, ib.
- Shah, his conspiracy against Timur Bek, ii. 509. Discovered and punished, 510. Put to death, ib.
- (Sarek), made governor of Soltaniya by Timur Bek, ii. 516. Slain before Azerbejan, 517
- Aktashi saves Timur Bek's life, ii. 530
- Shah assists Malek Amber, iii. 69
- Khan murders his nephew, and seizes on his kingdom, iii. 56. Deserted by Khrisna Rajah, 135. Takes Bisnagar, and an immense plunder, 136. Falls out with his two colleagues, 137. His other conquests, ib. Dominions in Vifiapur, 139
- Shah, the 7th of his name, his reign in Vifiapur, iii. 141. His legitimacy called in question, ib.
- , its king sends his forces into Abyssinia, vi. 258. Under the protection of the Othman Porte, 333. Why stiled saints then, or the holy king of Adel, ib. Yet shut up in their own dominions by the Turkish bashaws, ib.
- succeeds his father Gothar in Sweden, xii. 224. After a sea-engagement with Jarmeric, he concludes a peace, and the condition of it is, marrying Adel's sister, who is torn asunder by wild horses on a false accusation, ib. Invades Denmark and takes Jarmeric, who is broken on the wheel, ib. His conquest of some provinces, and giving the crown of Denmark to Broder, Jarmeric's brother, with his unfortunate death, 225
- Adelaer, admiral, he and the Dutch cover Copenhagen, with his death much regreted, xii. 189 (A)
- Adelbert of Tuscany, why he invites the Hungarians into Italy, who fall upon Tuscany, ix. 538
- , St. first converter of the Poles, xii. 439
- Adelchis succeeds his brother Adelcar in Benevento, x. 383
- Adelgise of Benevento, unable to withstand the infidels, enters into alliance with Guaferius, who jointly entreat the emperor's assistance, x. 383. Reconciled to the emperor, but is murdered by his relations, ib.
- Adeljawz, its prince submits to Timur Bek, ii. 518
- Adelites, why suspicious of the Europeans, vi. 324 (A). Resentments against the Abyssinians, also hatred and dread of the Portuguese, ib. Care to guard their coasts against them, ib. Martial genius, weapons, &c. 326. Complexions and religion, 327
- Ademarius, prince of Salerno, imprisoned by Guaferius, son of Dauferius, x. 383
- Aderbijan, a province reduced by Al Mogheirah, i. 242. Visited by a grievous pestilence, 502. Seized on by Wakshudan, 553
- Adhraar, &c. plundered by the Karmatians, i. 509
- Adi Ebn Hathem shot to death by the Shiites, i. 326
- Adian Segued, or David, emperor of Abyssinia, his glad reception of the Portuguese embassy, v. 257. Sends an ambassador to the king of Portugal, and a submissive letter to the pope, ib. Called in question, ib. (R). Detains the Portuguese, 258. His success against the Moors, and greatly distressed by them, 259. His affairs and empire distracted, ib. Miserable death, ib.
- Adid sent to enquire into Artiz's revolt, i. 707. Murdered by him, ib.
- Adimnaim, a strange kind of sheep, described, vii. 99
- Admagnada, its rare virtue, vi. 183
- Admiral of France, (Coligni), in conjunction with the prince of Condé, begins the third civil-war in France, ix. 260. Makes an excellent retreat after the battle of Jarnac, in which the prince of Condé is slain, 261. Raises the siege of Poitiers, little to his credit, 262. He and others declared rebels by the parliament, is beat at Moncontour, and the protestants brought very low, ib. Traverses a vast tract, and beating marshal de Cossé, slips him, and obtains a third favourable peace, which is signed at St. Germain en Laye, 263. Over-reached by the king's cajoling, he goes to court, 265. Fears of the Guises and furious ecclesiastics from the king's conduct on this occasion, ib. Persuaded to stay at court, and Langoiran's speech to him, 266. Shot at, and wounded, from a window in the daytime, with the king's seeming regret for his wounds, ib. Assassinated in the massacre of St. Bartholomew, with his speech to the assassins, and brutal insult offered to his body by Guise, 267
- Adnan, number of generations between him and Fehr, i. 2
- Adolphus of Nassau elected emperor by the intrigues of the elector of Mentz, xi. 12. Account of him, with an incident, when taken prisoner by John duke of Brabant, ib. (H). Beginning of his reign how fortunate, and why he declares war against Otho of Burgundy, 13. His expedition into Suabia against Albert of Austria proving abortive, several princes join the party of the latter, ib. His success in reducing the revolted nobles in Alsace, ib. Enters into an alliance with Edward I. of England against France, 14. His demand to Philip treated with contempt, ib. (I), who engages the duke of Austria in his interest, with the latter's motive, and how the English money, with which Adolphus bought Thuringia and Misnia, ruins his affairs, ib. (K). Disobliges his best friends, ib. Wages war with three brothers, princes of Thuringia, to no effect, and renders himself odious to the nobles by his behaviour, ib. who not only declare against his mal-administration, but form a conspiracy against him, 15. Articles of accusation and deposition, though the pope refuses his consent, ib. A flame breaks out between him and Diethric of Yffenburg, but, after mutual ravages, the latter cedes his right to the former, 103. Defeated and slain, after an encounter hand to hand with Albert, 16. Account of him, ib. (M)
- the second son of Gerhard, a circumstance about him, xii. 83 (A)
- the Simple, elector Palatine, xv. 471
- II. and John Albert II. duke of Mecklenburgh, their marriages, xv. 528. Enter into a confederacy with Denmark to restore Frederic V. count Palatine, to his dominions, ib. Operations of this war, with the defeat of Mansfeldt at Dessau, by Wallenstein, 529. Christiern IV. entirely



- entirely defeated by Tilly, 529. Forces Tilly to raise the siege of Menburgh, who forces Norheim, *ib.* Dukes of Mecklenburgh put to the ban, and their dominions granted to Wallenstein, *ib.* who with Tilly over runs Holstein, 530. Distresses of Denmark, with negotiations for, and conclusion of, a peace, *ib.* The dukes interests quite overlooked till Gustavus Adolphus befriends them, with the reasons which induced him to a war, 531. Wallenstein refusing to renounce the investiture of Mecklenburgh, is dismissed by the emperor, *ib.* Gustavus opens a passage into Mecklenburgh, with the prudent conduct of the dukes all this time, *ib.* The king narrowly escapes an ambush by Aligheri, *ib.* Re-instates the dukes in their dominions, with the conduct and valour of one Mellé, a Mecklenburgher, 532. They reduce a great part of their duchy; and Gustavus's rapid progress, with the defection of the protestant princes, and Magdeburgh thereby taken by Tilly, with the monstrous cruelties committed there, *ib.* Gustavus returns to Mecklenburgh, with the ceremony of the dukes re-inauguration, *ib.* Saxony and Hesse join Gustavus, who beats Tilly at Leipzig, with the successes ensuing, 533. The dukes take Rostock, and penetrating into Lower Saxony, the protestant princes, &c. declare against Austria, *ib.* Gustavus defeats Tilly, who dies of his wounds, and Augsburgh surrenders, *ib.* There he establishes the protestant religion, and obliges the inhabitants to swear allegiance, *ib.* He takes Munich, which is ransomed, *ib.* Wallenstein recalled, retakes Bavaria, and checks the Swedish arms, *ib.* The protestants principle of union gone by Gustavus's death at Lutzen, *ib.* Horn defeats the duke of Feria, and Wallenstein forming an association among his officers to stand by him, is disgraced, *ib.* Is put to the ban, and killed by three Scottish officers, *ib.* Treaty of Prague concluded, acknowledging the dukes rights to their dominions, yet the Swedes continue the war, and duke John Albert dies, 534. His marriages and issue, *ib.* Duke Adolphus obtains the guardianship of his nephew Gustavus, *ib.* Bannier forces the Saxons to retreat from Mecklenburgh, who, though beaten out of Pomerania, take Magdeburgh and Tangermünd, pushing Bannier back into Mecklenburgh, *ib.* Maracini takes Stargard, and the woful state of the duchy, *ib.* Bannier defeats the Saxons, takes Werben, and pursues the Imperialists, *ib.* Continuation of the war, with the duke's mediation ineffectual, *ib.* Successes of Saxe-Weimar and Bannier in Mecklenburgh and beyond the Rhine, 535. Irruption into Bohemia, and defeat of Hofkirk, but Saxe-Weimar dies, *ib.* His conquests given up to the French, with the distresses of Mecklenburgh, *ib.* Piccolomini's caution against the confederates, with the fruitless negotiations for peace, 536. Bannier's famous retreat from Bohemia to the Moldau, and death thereby, *ib.* Character of him and Torstenson, with the latter's successes, and the peace of Munster, settling the affairs of Mecklenburgh, *ib.* Account of the cessions made by the duke, 537, also his acquisitions, with those of Sweden and France, *ib.* Tranquility restored to Mecklenburgh, and the duke's wife administration, *ib.* Marriages of his family, with his administration of his nephew Gustavus's estates, his death, great character, and issue, *ib.* To a posthumous son he bequeathed Strelitz, *ib.*
- Adolphus Frederic II. of Strelitz, his death and issue, xv. 540
- III. duke of Mecklenburgh, dies without issue, xv. 546
- IV. nephew to Adolphus Frederick III. now reigning duke of Mecklenburgh Strelitz, with his brothers and sisters, one of which latter is queen of Great Britain, xv. 546
- Adom, kingdom of, in inland Guinea, described, vi. 676
- and two Norwegian assassins stab the grand marshal of Denmark, xii. 126 (A). The king's remorse on his death-bed on account of it, *ib.*
- Adorno (Gabriel) how chosen duke of Genoa, x. 562. New designs formed by the nobles, which obliges the duke to a treaty with the Visconti, *ib.* He is expelled from the palace, 563
- , (Antoniotto) on Montaldo's death, is chosen duke of Genoa, x. 564. His aspiring disposition, and offer of mediation in the grand schism of the church, rejected, *ib.* Conspiracy against him discovered, *ib.* Why he abandons the government of Genoa, 565. Restored, but obliged to quit the palace to Antony Montaldo, *ib.*
- , (George) appointed governor of Genoa, x. 569
- Adrian sent to quell the revolted Jews, v. 490 (A). Dreadful slaughter of them, 491 (A), (B). Rebuilds Jerusalem, 492
- Adrian (or Hadrian) IV. a native of St. Albans, succeeds pope Anastasius IV. with an account of him, ix. 594 (H). Soon quits Rome, and retiring to Viterbo, excommunicates William of Sicily, *ib.* Goes to St. Germain, with other transactions, 595. Writes a respectful letter to the emperor, explaining what gave offence in a former, 596. Grants a bull to Henry II. of England for the conquest of Ireland, and the terms, 597 (N). His death, *ib.*
- V. elected pope on the death of Innocent V. but dies soon after, ix. 645
- VI. succeeds pope Leo X. with an account of him, x. 72 (B), xiii. 495. Arrives at Rome, x. 72. Sends a legate to the diet of Nuremburg, *ib.* Drives Malatesta from Rimini, and is reconciled to the dukes of Ferrara and Urbino, 73. Joins in the league against Francis, 317. Dies, with his epitaph, and great contests in the conclave, 73 (C). Fatal consequences of his death to the confederacy, 319. His successor Clement VII. assumes a quite different conduct, *ib.* His system the same with that of the emperor, xiii. 499
- Adriano, (Cardinal) his favourable sentiments towards Cortez's undertakings, xiv. 254
- Adrianople surrendered to soltan Morad, v. 163
- , the famed mosque of, and the occasion, v. 163
- Adrien, (Admiral Peter) his successes in the West Indies and All-Saints, xi. 514
- Adultery, its punishment inflicted by the Koran, i. 177. Severely punished in Hinduitan, iii. 22. Not capital in China, 589. Slightly punished in Ethiopia by a fine, vi. 194. In Benin three ways, vi. 580
- Adym Segued al Basilides, 93d king of Abyssinia, vi. 254. Enmity to the Roman catholics, *ib.*
- Jawso, 95th king of Abyssinia, vi. 254. Kind reception of the physician Poncet, *ib.*
- Ælius, (or Julius) raises a revolt against the emperor Sufneus, vi. 289. Bold conspiracy against him and his brother, *ib.* Disappointed by father Payas's contrivance, and pursues his rebellion, *ib.* Supported by the abuna, with their defeat and death, 290
- Æra of the Arabs, how computed before the Hejra, i. 180
- of Martyrs, how computed in Egypt, i. 689
- Aerio, (Soltan) treacherously murdered by the Portuguese, iv. 156 (H). The cause of a fatal war, *ib.*
- Aerlens, (Francis) his character, by whose instigation the synod meets at Dordrecht, xi. 494.
- Aeth surrenders to the French commanded by Catinat, xi. 319
- Ætna, (Mount) two eruptions of, x. 459
- Af-Shin defeats the rebel Babec in Persia, i. 459. Conquests in that kingdom, and fresh success against Babec, 460. Overthrows him, *ib.* Puts him to a cruel death, and his success against the Greek emperor, 462. Conspiracy and execution, *ib.* His idolatrous house burned down, 463
- Afdal instated wazir of Egypt, i. 679. Opposes Negar's succession to the khalifate, *ib.* Defeats the revolted Mansur Berar, and his excellent government unrewarded, 685. Abolishes the Coptic or solar year, 689. Demolishes the great church of Meffr, 691. Assassinated by the Batanists, on what account, and strip of his immense wealth by the khalif, 696
- Afghans of Persia revolt against the Persians, and on what account, ii. 648.—649. Their original tribes, &c. *ib.* United under the Persian yoke, 650 (Y), (Z), (A). Join in Mir Weis's revolt, 651. Defeat the Persians before Kandahar, 653. Proclaim Mir Weis king, and debate about surrendering Kandahar to the shah, 654. Driven out of Kerman, 657. Incline to peace with Persia, 658. Fresh attempts on the kingdom, *ib.* Lest under Mir Mahmud, *ib.* Defeat the Persian army, 660. Singular lenity to their female captives, 662. Vast plunder found in Julfa, and they lay siege to Ispahan, *ib.* Seize on the bridge Abbas, 663. Defeated by prince Tahmasp, 664. By the garrison, 665. Give free passage to Nadir Shah, iii. 124
- Afla and his family flung into the sea for rebellion, i. 620.
- Afrasiab, the conqueror of the Persians, his exploits, ii. 115. Remarks upon him, *ib.*
- Africa, or Afrina, the Greek general, taken prisoner, i. 555. Released, 556
- Africa invaded by the Moslems, i. 239. In a terrible combustion, 392. Polished by the bringing Sicilian nobles, 556. Its general description, v. 651. Why so little known to the Europeans, *ib.* A large peninsula, 652. Altered since Ptolemy, and not fully known to the African writers, *ib.* Best discovery made by the Portuguese, 653. (C). Described.



- Described, 656. Fabulous notions about it exploded, *ib.* Various names, 657. How best divided, *ib.* Inhabitants, 658 (F). Account of their thievish genius, *ib.* Various religions, 660. Mohammedism brought into it, and much corrupted, 661. Barrenness of arts and sciences, 664. Its commerce, 666. Gum and other commodities exported, *ib.* Tongue mostly Arabic, 668. Its Arabs described, 669. Why famed for wild beasts, 681. Wild and tame described, *ib.* Fowl wild and tame, 686. Excellent game, 688. (D). Venomous insects, 689. Plenty of fish, 691. Pearl fisheries, 693. This carried on by women, 694. Other shell-fish, *ib.* Ambergris in great plenty, 695. Rich gold mines, *ib.* Easily procured by the natives, and its chief mountains, 696. Lakes and rivers, *ib.* Traffic upon them, *ib.* The coasts when and by whom first discovered, 699. Invaded by the Vandals, 705. Their several kings, *ib.* Recovered from them by Belisarius, 713. By the Arabs, 717. Subdued by the Fatemite khalifs, *ib.* Invaded and plundered in their several reigns, and greatly oppressed by the Arabs, 720. Shake off their yoke, *ib.* Various kingdoms and changes by the Zeneti, 721
- Africa** Proper invaded by the Saracens, i. 339. Cleared of them by John the Patrician, *ib.*
- African** (Royal) English company, its origin and progress, vi. 640. Obstructed by the civil-wars, and its charter from king Charles II. 641. (E). Treaty with the French company, 642. Receive some assistance from the crown, *ib.* First hint of erecting it from what, xv. 285. The vast profits arising therefrom, whence, *ib.*
- Africans**, their wretched character, v. 658. Enormous vices, 659. Remarks on their black complexion, *ib.* Their idolatry, 660. Wretched surgery and physic, 664. All kind of handicrafts, &c. pitiful; their stupidity and indolence, *ib.* Weaving and other manufactures, 665. Fondness of European trinkets, 697. Its western coast and kingdoms described, vi. 410. Gold found in the sands, 418
- Islands described, vi. 780
- Afrihi**, a famed Arab scribe, his writings and character, i. 569
- Astekin** (Al) chosen general of the Turks, i. 569. Lays siege to Wafet, and forced to raise it, 570. Drives Taglab out of Baghdad, *ib.* Driven out by Adado'ddawla, and invades Syria, 571. Successes in Damascus and Syria against Jawhar, and defeated by Al Aziz, *ib.* Amply rewarded by him, *ib.* Drives Jawhar from before Damascus, 578. Taken and brought to Egypt, where he is greatly honoured and promoted by the khalif, but is soon after poisoned by Al Aziz's wazir, *ib.*
- A-su**, the faithful general of King-Ti, iii. 700. Defeats a powerful confederacy, *ib.*
- Ahmed** Aga, governor of Ispahan, his brave defence against Mir Mahmud, ii. 662
- Agabius** persuades Abd'allah to abandon Sclerus, i. 577. Made patriarch of Antioch, and banished for treason, 519
- Agades**, desert of, described, vii. 102
- kingdom of, different from it, vii. 104
- Agarens**, in Abyssinia, vi. 174
- Agatha**, (St.) castle of, in Naples, taken by an African general, i. 521
- , (St.) Castle of, submits to the abbot of Cassino, ix. 557
- Agatton**, a town in Benin, vi. 576
- Agaus**, in Africa, v. 660. Their cruel inroads into Ethiopia, vi. 190. Manner of living in caverns, are subdued, and converted, *ib.* The latter by father Pays, 290. New revolt and defeat, 297
- Aggo**, the first migration under him from Denmark, xi. 680
- Agila** chosen king of the Visigoths in Spain, vii. 534. Cruel resentment against the Cordovans, is defeated, and destroyed by a conspiracy, 535
- Agincourt**, battle of, fought by Henry V. of England, against the French, who are totally defeated, ix. 134. Loss on both sides, with the French prisoners, 135. Henry arrives safe at Calais, *ib.*
- Aglab** (Al) and his family driven out of Kairwan, and take refuge in Egypt, i. 511
- Aglabites** pay tribute to Abu Al Mohdi, i. 512
- Aglens**, who, and bloody cruelties at Tauris, ii. 516 (D)
- Agner** sent to England by his brother Ivar of Denmark, who reduces the revolted English, and orders a cruel massacre, but is afterwards slain in Sweden, xi. 687
- Agnier**, Grand, his death through mistake, and Charlevoix's character of him, xiv. 634
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Agniers**, why averse to peace, with their murdering and scalping a missionary near Sylleri, xiv. 592. After sufficiently humbling the Hurons, they send a deputation to Quebec, the chief of which makes a haughty ipsech to Lauson, 595. Delivers two strings of wampum, and his address afterwards to Lauson as haughty, *ib.* Lauson's answer to the deputation by Le Moynes, *ib.* Chief of the Bear tribes his address to the deputies, *ib.*
- women, their zeal, xiv. 609
- men, their resolutions in a general assembly with regard to Christianity, xiv. 609. Expedition of the French against them, the barbarity of the latter's orders, but proves unfortunate, 648. Haughtiness of two deputies to Frontenac, 660
- Agnola**, the Milanese general, instance of honour in his punishing a traitor, xiii. 380
- Agobord**, bishop of Lyons, his unseasonable zeal against the Jews, v. 528. Timely suppressed, 529
- Agonna**, kingdom of, on the Gold-coast, vi. 671. Country described, 672. Its gold mines, and governed by a queen, *ib.*
- Agra**, province of, in Hindostan, described, iii. 11. Number of its cities, 12
- , the capital city of, iii. 11. Palaces, mausoleum, and other structures, *ib.* Fortified by Akbar, 58. The castle finished, 59. Alarmed at the false news of Aureng Zib's death, 99
- Agria** surrendered to Mahomet III. and the barbarity of the Turks there, xi. 178 (C)
- Agrirentum** taken by Ali Ebn Kema, i. 646
- Agrepou**, where situated, v. 542 (F). Jews there and its commerce, *ib.*
- Aguer**, Cape, described, vii. 160
- Aguiguan**, or Holy Angel Island, of the Ladrones, described, iv. 227. Whether discovered by Captain Funnell, *ib.* (C)
- Aguirre**, (Juan Lopez de) lands on the Mariamne islands, iv. 239
- Ahama**, a griping governor, favoured by Kublay, ii. 364. Repentment against the Chinese lords, 365. Made receiver-general, *ib.* Accused by the Hyu-Heng, 366. Great power and insolence, 367. Malice and extortions, 383. Death and dishonour, *ib.*
- Ahdab**, a famed forger and counterfeiter of writings dies, i. 582
- Ahmed** Ebn Yusef succeeds Jaasar emir of Sicily, i. 624. His tyranny over the Moslem inhabitants there, 629
- Ebn Hasan made grand wazir to khalif Al Kayem, i. 638
- Ahmed, grandson of Mas'ud, his stratagem to assassinate him, i. 647. Defeated and taken prisoner by his brother Mawdud, and put to death, 648.
- Ebn Soliman revolts against Sanjar, i. 699. Forgiven and restored by him, *ib.*
- Beg, the eleventh Shah of the White Sheep (Ak Kuvunlu) dynasty, iii. 704. Dethrones Rostam Shah, but is defeated and slain by Mirza Morad, *ib.*
- Ebn Hanbal cruelly whipt for not believing the creation of the Koran, i. 456. Death and numerous burial, 471. His disciples raise a cruel revolt, 531. Punished and suppressed, *ib.*
- Ebn Nazir beheaded by khalif Wathek, i. 467.
- Ebn Mottawakkel sent to besiege Al Mosta'in in Baghdad, i. 483. Obliges him to abdicate, *ib.* Banished by Mo'ttaz, 485
- Ebn Yakub made emir of Sicily, i. 490
- Ebn Tolun rebels against khalif Al Mo'tamed, i. 492. His swift conquests, but is cursed by the khalif, *ib.* His death and character, 494
- Ebn Al Tabi, prince of the Karmatians, obliges his subjects to pay annually a dinar each, i. 497
- Ebn Shaikh, his brave defence of Amida, i. 501. In favour with Al Mo'taded, *ib.*
- Ebn Tiyeb, the learned preceptor of khalif Al Mo'taded, his works, i. 505
- Ebn Hassan, emir of Sicily, recalled into Africa, i. 563. Dies at Tripoli, 565
- Khan puts Khosraw III. to death, ii. 237
- , or Al Nikucar Oglan, succeeds his brother in Iran, ii. 481. Turns Mohammedan, and is hated by his subjects, *ib.* Deposed, taken prisoner, and put to death by his mother-in-law, *ib.*
- Jalayr's unlucky attempt upon Tauris, ii. 517. His grand embassy to Timur Bek, why rejected, 531. Precautions against him, *ib.* His defeat and flight at Kerbela, *ib.* His son and family taken prisoners, 532. Conspired against



- against by Sherwan, 553. Punishes the conspirators, with his caution and flight to Timur Bek, *ib.*
- Ahmed (Pir) restored to his kingdom of Lorestan, *ii.* 530
- Soltan attempts to rebuild Baghdad, *ii.* 561. Defeated and put to flight by Mirza Abu Bekr, 566. Retires with his son Taher, who revolts, *ib.* Defeats him, and narrowly escapes out of Baghdad, *ib.* Recovers his capital, 583
- , son of Abufaid, succeeds his father, *ii.* 594. His reign, 595
- , the son of Avis, slays his brother, and mounts the Iran throne, *ii.* 494. Attacked by the two Ali's, *ib.* Defeats and kills them, 495. Opposed by Adel Aga, and driven out by Timur Bek, he takes refuge in Egypt, *ib.* Regains the throne by stratagem, but is defeated and murdered by Kara Yusuf, 496. His bloody character, *ib.*
- an Arabic historian, his character, *ii.* 498
- Abad, a fair and rich city in Hindustan, *iii.* 11. Palace and other structures, *ib.* Relieved and fortified by Akbar, 59. Retaken by Jehan Ghr's generals, 73.
- Ahnaf, Al Yezid's uncle, his answer to the khalif's question about him, *i.* 296
- Alhwaz taken by Saad Ebn Vakkas, *i.* 243. Where situate, and battle of, 332
- rebels, who; refuse to acknowledge Moawiyah, but are reduced by his son Yezid, *i.* 293
- Ajan (Axan) coast described, *vi.* 323. Inhabitants, commerce, &c. *ib.*
- Ajed (Mir) kills the usurper Shanba, but ill rewarded by Turan Shah, *ii.* 690
- Ajem, or Al Ajem, the import of that Arabic word, *i.* 654 (A)
- Aiguillon, duchy of, given to cardinal Richlieu's niece, *ix.* 395
- Ajit besieges and takes Lulua from the Christians, *i.* 455. Reduces the Zathdhians, 461
- Ailah Christians become tributary to Mohammed, *i.* 94
- Aillebout (M. de) succeeds Montmagny governor of Canada, with the character of both, *xiv.* 587
- Aiman Ebn Obeid, one of Mohammed's martyrs, *i.* 120
- Aimon succeeds his brother Edward, count of Savoy, *xiv.* 126
- Ain, Sammin, or Zammet, a city in Tunis, *vii.* 308
- Ainadin, famed battle of, *i.* 143
- Aincaria taken by the Greeks, *i.* 471
- Ainzarba taken by the Greeks, *i.* 556
- Aio succeeds his brother Radelchis, whom the Beneventans had expelled, *x.* 386. He is taken prisoner and released, *ib.* Renounces allegiance to the Greeks, 387
- Aix la Chapelle treaty made on the triple alliance in 1688, *viii.* 326. By which Lewis XIV's conquests in Flanders are ceded to him by Spain, &c. *ix.* 453. Vanity of the States General in striking two medals on the conclusion of that peace, 454
- treaty concluded there in 1748, *xiii.* 609. *xv.* 619.
- Article relating to Parma and Placentia, *xiii.* 667.
- , account of the city of, *xv.* 438. Its government and religion, *ib.*
- Aiyad Ebn Gamen takes several cities of Mesopotamia, *i.* 241
- Akanfas, Indians, *xv.* 11. Beautiful river, *ib.* Their hospitality and public economy, what, *ib.* Their massacring some savage tribes, and who, 42. Post, where, 60
- Akeri, his treason against sultan Hemayun, *iii.* 56
- Akka, or Akra, taken by the Crusaders, *ii.* 178
- Akatty Soltan destroys several of Ilbar Knan's family, *ii.* 726. Carried prisoner into Bukharia, *ib.* Brought back by his son sultan Hajim, 727. Eighth khan of Karazm, defeated by Yunus, 728. Taken and cruelly murdered by him, *ib.*
- Akbar, the third sultan, or great mogul, seizes on the kingdom of Guzerat, *iii.* 7. Grants privileges to the Gralias, *ib.* Proclaimed emperor, 57. Enthroned at Dehli, *ib.* Fortifies Agra, his successes against the rebel Zimet Pata and other revolvers, 58. His barefooted pilgrimage to obtain children, and success against the revolters in Guzerat, *ib.* His entire conquest of Bengal, 59. Defeats several revolted khans, 60. Others pay him servile homage, with his success and fresh conquests, *ib.* Ill success in Decan, 61. Reduces some of its provinces, *ib.* War with Rajah Rana, and he marches against his revolted son, 62. Also a second time, *ib.* Taken ill, and receives him into favour, 63. Dies of poison prepared for Mirza Gaji, Jehan's son, and is succeeded by Selim, *ib.* His issue, *ib.*
- Akbar, Aureng Zib's youngest son, why preferred by him, *iii.* 109. Revolts against him, 116. Outwitted and defeated, *ib.* Flight to, and reception in, Persia, *ib.* (Z), (A). Dies there, 119
- Akbuga gains the steep heights of Kalaa Sefid, *ii.* 529. Richly rewarded by Timur Bek, 530
- Akham Al Koran, by whom compiled, *i.* 312
- Akhjuk stripped of Adherbjan, *ii.* 495. Put to death by Avis, *ib.*
- Akiba Rabbi sets up for the forerunner of Bar Chochab, *v.* 481 (B), 491
- Ak kyunlu, or White-sheep dynasty, what, *ii.* 696. Its kings, 701
- Akitmur Bahadar saves Ali Mirza before Sistan, *ii.* 515
- Aklat (Khelat) capital of Armenia, subdued by Jalalo'ddin, *ii.* 229
- , taken and given to Kakhan, *ii.* 534 (T)
- Akra, (Al) the famed mount, sunk into the sea by an earthquake, *i.* 472
- , a river near it, sinks and disappears by the same shock, *i.* 473
- Aksankar made governor of Mawfel, *i.* 691
- Aksaray, Timur's palace, whence so called, *ii.* 511
- Akfika invaded by Timur Bek, *ii.* 535
- Akfiz, Malek Shah's general, reduces Damascus by famine, *i.* 665. Defeated in Egypt, 666. Cruelty at Ramla and Jerusalem, *ib.* Is succeeded by his brother in Egypt, and slain by him, 667
- Akfu, a country in Bukharia, described, *ii.* 460
- Akul, where situate, *i.* 568. An Arab bishop's see, *ib.*
- Alaafun dissuades Timur from invading Pa-pe-fi-fu, *ii.* 397. Policy in favour of Hayshan, 399. Dies in Tartary, 402. Occasion of his disgrace, and his great character, *ib.*
- Al Abbas. See Abbas.
- Alaho'ddin, king of Pars, imprisoned by Mansur, *ii.* 529. Escapes and is defeated by him, *ib.* Who puts out his eyes, *ib.* Revenged by Timur Bek, 530
- Al Adib Abu'l Hasan, a famed philosopher, *i.* 692
- Al Adel, sultan Sanjar's slave, his success against the Turkmans, *i.* 712
- Aladoba, antient king of Abyssinia, *vi.* 252
- Al Af's ill success in Syria, *ii.* 480
- Alahor made general of the Moors in Spain, *vii.* 585. Completes the ruin of the Visigoth kingdom, 586. Severities in Spain, *i.* 356. *vii.* 585
- Alais, his design on Sardis frustrated, *v.* 149
- Alakur, Khan of the White Tartars, his signal friendship for Temujin, *ii.* 227. Discovers Tayyan's designs to him, *ib.*
- Alam, an intriguing female, causes Mostacfi to be chosen khalif, *i.* 545. Occasions his deposition, with her punishment, 546
- , or Alem, Shah, succeeds Aureng Zib, but defeated and slain by his elder brother Mauzm, *iii.* 119
- Alamid, an antient king of Abyssinia, *v.* 252
- Al Amin declared successor to Al Rashid, *i.* 418, 419. A dirhem coined with his name explained, 426. The share of government conferred upon him by his father, *ib.* Warlike preparations against his brother, 435. Proclaimed khalif at Bagdad, 438. Design to supplant his brother Mamun, *ib.* Whom he degrades from the succession, 439. Declares war against Al Mamun, *ib.* But is defeated by him, 440. Fatal dissension sown between his generals, 442. Deposed and restored at Bagdad, *ib.* Closely besieged there, 447. Assassinated in his flight to Harthema's camp, *ib.* His head sent to Al Mamun, with his character and other particulars of his flight and death, *ib.*
- Saleh succeeds his brother Nasr at Aleppo, *i.* 666
- Alan Noyan sent to invade Farnakant, *ii.* 296
- Alani, where defeated by the generals of Jenghiz Khan, *ii.* 321
- Alanku, ancestress of Jenghiz Khan, her miraculous conception, *ii.* 266
- Alans, 6000 list into Andronicus's service, *v.* 147
- Al Ansars, who, *i.* 30. See Ansars.
- Alautar left with Alipuko, to assist him with his advice, in Karakoram, *ii.* 359. Plots against Kublay, 361
- Alao'ddawlet seizes on Khorassan after Shah Rukh's death, *ii.* 588. Defeated and stripped of it by Ulug Beg, *ib.* Defeated also by Abufaid, 591. Seizes on Herat, 596. Imprisoned by Babr, *ib.* Escapes and seizes on Irak, *ib.* Defeats Babr, and recovers Herat, but is driven out of it, and defeated by him, 597
- , brother of Babr, his death and burial at Herat, *ii.* 592
- Alao'ddawlet



Ala'uddawlet, brother of Orkham, made his prime wazir, v. 155.  
 A'addin, founder of the Gaur dynasty, i. 712. His division of its government, ib.  
 — Kaykobad, 10th sultan of the dynasty of Rum, his success against Jalalo'ddin, ii. 229. Despises Oktay's offers and advice, breaks with Al Malek, and takes many places from him, 230. Cruelty to the Christians, his conquests and plunder, ib. Sudden death and character, ib.  
 —, from a shepherd becomes king of Dehli, and engages not to destroy Sideravaldi's tomb, iii. 26  
 — Athaol Molk, made grand wazir of Baghdad, and restores the city to its antient lustre, ii. 478  
 Alaric II. succeeds to Euric in Spain and Gaul, vii. 530. Treachery to Siagrius, makes alliances with Theoderic and Gondabaud, and is slain in a war with king Clovis, ib.  
 — succeeds Hognor and Hognin in Sweden, xii. 221. Gostibund king of the Goths, whom he attacks, is assisted by Frotho, rather Rolvo, of Denmark, with auxiliaries, ib. 22). These, after defeating Alaric's son, march against the father, but Eric of Norway kills Alaric in single combat, ib.  
 Al Alammî's death, character, and works, i. 553  
 Al Athari's death and character, i. 542. Famous dispute with Al Jobbai the Motazalite, and his monument why demolished by his disciples, 543  
 Alatak taken by Timur Bek, ii. 519. Where situate, and interview at, 534  
 Alatenatheli sent against the rebel Tukyen, ii. 413. Defeats him in several battles, upon which Yun-nan and Se-chwen submit, 414  
 Alava, country of, its site, vii. 63, (E)  
 —, count, with his family, takes refuge with Abderhamen king of Cordova, viii. 631. His services there, ib.  
 Al Az defeated by the Karmatians, i. 507, but repulses them from Aleppo, ib.  
 Al Aziz succeeds his father in Kerwan, with his success against Asteikin, i. 571, also in Egypt, 572  
 —, the son of Jalalo'ddawla, succeeds him at Baghdad, i. 650  
 —, Fatemite khalif of Egypt, his kindness to Mansur Ebn Mokshar, i. 647  
 Alba, (Alva) Duke of, sent into the Low Countries, viii. 258. His measures in the Netherlands serve to establish the Dutch republic, and the princess Margaret resigns the government, 259. His recall desired by the emperor's brother ill received by the king of Spain, 262. His imprudence at Antwerp displeases his master, 263. Reduces Portugal, after twice defeating Don Antony, 268  
 Albanians confederate against sultan Morad, and are defeated, v. 164  
 Albany, Duke of, his progress in Florence, xiii. 503  
 Albemarle, the Dutch general, bombards Arras, ix. 503  
 —, Duke of, after a four days fight with de Ruyter, afterwards beats Van Tromp, xi. 602—603  
 —, Duke of, governor of Jamaica, xv. 284. Dies by intemperance, ib.  
 —, Earl of, lands on the island of Cuba, xv. 338. Begins and continues the siege of the Havanna, with the vast difficulties attending it, 339. Accidents retard his operations, ib. Possesses a covered-way, and makes a lodgment, 340. Repulses a vigorous sally, ib. Springs a mine, which makes a breach in the Moro castle, which he takes by storm, ib. The place capitulates, and the articles, 341  
 Alberigo is worsted by the Florentines, and why sent for in chains to Milan, with the daily detection of the Milanese troops, xiii. 388  
 Alberoni, Cardinal, his amazing efforts, and the allies resolution to deprive the queen of Spain's issue of the succession to the duchies of Tuscany, Parma, and Placentia, xiii. 647. Kindles a war in Italy, ib. Vast projects, xv. 561. His plot against the regent of France discovered, and war declared against Spain, ib. Expedition against Britain, in favour of the pretender, under Ormond, ib. The Spanish fleet with the embarkation shipwrecked, ib. His scheme for a diversion in Scotland frustrated by Wightman, 562. Is dismissed, 564  
 Albert of Bavaria, war between him and his brother Christopher, with peace concluded, xi. 112  
 — III. xv. 469  
 — IV. the Wise, xv. 469  
 — V. the Magnanimous, introduces the privilege of birth-right, xv. 469  
 — I. surnamed the Triumphant, duke of Austria, and emperor of Germany, the nobles of Austria and Styria revolt-

ing against him, a peace is concluded, xi. 12. His haughty reply to Adolphus on the latter's proposing a match between his own son and Albert's daughter, 13. Elected emperor, ib. and the elector's speech on that occasion, 15 (L). Takes the Jews into his protection, notwithstanding which the famous Mordecai of Austria is hanged by the people of Nuremberg, 16. Re-elected and crowned at Aix la Chapelle, in a vast concourse, when several persons were squeezed to death, 17. Solicits the pope's confirmation, which he at last obtains, and has an interview with Philip of France at Vaucouleur, where the antient leagues are renewed, and an alliance concluded, ib. The ecclesiastical electors, in a diet at Toul, protest against the articles, with the pope's behaviour on the occasion, ib. The empress Elizabeth crowned, and his son Rodolphus invested with Austria, ib. Engages in a war against John d'Avenes about the succession to Holland and West Friesland, ib. but a body of Imperialists being cut to pieces by John, and the emperor's hasty retreat to Cologne, a peace is concluded, 18. The emperor publishes statutes with regard to the charge of electors, and quarrels with the ecclesiastical ones, ib. and the pope lending a deaf ear to his complaint, the emperor resolves to right himself by force, and the electors letter to the pope with his answer, in which he forbids them to acknowledge Albert, ib. The ecclesiastical electors complain before the elector Palatine, who pronounces the emperor convicted, ib. Declares war against the ecclesiastical electors, compelling them to sue for peace, with the terms, ib. Invades Bohemia, with his ravages there, but is obliged to retreat with loss, 19. His re-election confirmed by the pope, and the very humbling conditions granted by the emperor, ib. Seizes the kingdom of Bohemia for his son Rodolphus, but on his sudden death two factions are formed, 20. The emperor obliged to return with his army, and leave Henry in peaceable possession of Bohemia, ib. Espouses Philip of Nassau's claim to Misnia and Thuringia against Frederic, who entirely defeats the Imperialists at Luchau, ib. Oppresses the Swiss contrary to his father's conduct, 21. His rapacity for aggrandizing his family, 22. He refuses to do justice to his nephew John duke of Suabia, ib. who enters into a conspiracy against his uncle, and the latter is assassinated near Schaffhausen, with the fate of the regicides, and a cloister erected on the spot where the emperor was murdered, ib. His issue and character differently represented, ib. (Q)  
 Albert the Deformed, duke of Austria, attempts in vain to subdue the Swiss, xi. 44  
 — the Magnanimous, duke of Austria, succeeds his father-in-law Sigismund in the empire, Hungary, and Bohemia, with his character and other particulars, xi. 89. Defeats his competitor Casimir, and is crowned at Prague, 90. He, together with the German princes, agrees to a neutrality with regard to the disputes betwixt the pope and the council of Basil, ib. Renews the engagements of public security to that council, and their favour in return, ib (F). After this coronation he reforms several abuses in the administration of justice, regulates the imperial tribunal of Austregues, &c. suppresses the secret and Westphalia judgment, ib. but does not abolish the remarkable manner of proceeding against theft in Klagenfurt, ib. Confirms the neutrality of the German princes, and proposes a general council in some third town, ib. Takes the field against the Turks, but dies on his return to Vienna, 91. Leaves his Empress big with Ladislaus, ib. His issue, ib. (G). The basis of the power of the house of Austria, with an account of his person and character, ib.  
 — IV. surnamed the Prodigal, duke of Austria, a quarrel between him and his brother the emperor, which, though compromised, is renewed, and Albert is repulsed from Vienna, where two factions reign, xi. 103  
 —, archduke of Austria, and cardinal, makes an irruption into France, xi. 311. Resigns his hat and the archbishopric of Toledo, viii. 279. Appointed governor of the Netherlands, with Philip's designs, xi. 445. His character, and procures the liberty of Philip, eldest son to the late William of Nassau, with restitution to his estates and honours, ib. Embassy from the States-general to Philip, with his obliging answer, ib. Arrival of Albert in the Netherlands, 446. Receives fealty from Brabant, viii. 279. Takes Calais, xi. 446, and reduces Hullst, ib. Contract of marriage between him and the infanta Isabella, but, on his repairing to Madrid, seditions arise among the troops, 451. Appoints his brother, cardinal Andrea of Austria, to succeed him in the government, ib. Espouses the princess Isabella, ib. Returns with his consort to the Low Countries, where,



- after some difficulty from the archduchess, they take the oaths at Louvain, 446—456. Proceeds to Flanders, with powers to treat with queen Elizabeth at Boulogne, viii. 281. He marches to attack Maurice, a detachment of whose army, under Ernest of Nassau, is defeated, xi. 460. Totally defeated by prince Maurice in the battle of Newport, 461. Lays siege to Ottend, 463, which is taken by Spinola, 469. The archduke's deplorable situation, with the consequences prevented by Spinola's return, 470. Deputies arrive at the Hague to make proposals, with the states answer, and their claiming to be treated as a free people, 476 (A). Declaration from Spain, ratifying the archduke's proposals, objected to by the states, 478. A second ratification also objected to, *ib.* Remonstrances from the emperor, with the States-general answer, 479. The last ratification allowed by the provincial states to be a sufficient basis for a truce or peace, *ib.* The States-general now ready to enter on the negotiation, *ib.* Plenipotentiaries set out for the congress, with the congratulatory meeting of Spinola and Maurice, 480. The archduke and republic are reconciled, through the abject submissions of the latter, 485. His death, 496.
- Albert of Saxony takes Lawenburgh, xii. 30
- , Earl of Orlemund, who sold Hamburg to the inhabitants, set at liberty by Albert of Saxony, xii. 30 (A)
- Marquis of Brandenburg, twice routed by Maurice elector of Saxony, xi. 166. Escapes to Franconia, and is afterwards comprehended in the truce of Vaucelles, *ib.*
- surnamed Achilles and Ulysses, elector of Brandenburg, his military exploits, xv. 490. Re-unites Franconia to the electorate, and the partition among his sons, after which he abdicates, *ib.*
- , Marquis of Brandenburg, last grand master of the Teutonic knights, and a series of them up to Walpot the first, xii. 657
- of Modena succeeds his brother Aldobrandin of Este, with his character and possessions, xiv. 106
- , commander of the Hugonot colony in Florida, is murdered by them, xv. 71. Their great distress, and taken up at sea by an English ship, 72
- the Great, second duke of Brunswic, cedes Lunenburg to his second brother John, and reduces his rebellious subjects, xv. 480. Goes to England, and marries Adelheid, sister of Otho of Montferrat, and obtains a grant for Hamburg to trade with that kingdom, then acquires Grubenhagen and dies, 481
- the Gross, unites the lines of Gottingen and Brunswick, xv. 481
- Duke of Mecklenburgh, his war with the duke of Stettin, and peace concluded, xv. 519. Balances between the parties in the north, and reduces Fionia, *ib.*
- of Mecklenburgh, chosen king of Sweden in the room of Magnus deposed, xii. 243. xv. 520. Defeats and takes Magnus prisoner, with an accommodation between them, and the terms, xv. 521. Forms a confederacy against Denmark, and how broken, *ib.* His claim to the crown of Denmark, and an association against him in Sweden, *ib.* Olaus chosen, and Margaret his mother regent, *ib.* Agreement made but not ratified, when Albert duke of Mecklenburgh, father of king Albert, dies, *ib.* His distresses, and defeat by Margaret, where he and his son Eric are taken prisoners, and Margaret's right to the throne recognized in Sweden, 522. Assisted by John duke of Mecklenburgh, who relieves Stockholm, *ib.* A truce concluded between him and queen Margaret, with a ransom raised by the ladies of Mecklenburgh, and their privileges on that account, 523. He returns to Mecklenburgh, and on his son Eric's death sends a renunciation of the crown to Margaret, *ib.* State of the duchy through the vigorous measures of his brother Henry the Suspensor, *ib.* They do homage to Margaret and Eric her associate, *ib.* War with Eric, and duke John obliged to a capitulation, when he and the other princes found the university of Rostock, with the deaths of dukes Albert and John, 524. The arts of peace cultivated till John dies without issue, *ib.*
- the Handsome, account of his wars against Christiern II. of Denmark, xv. 526. Obligated to submit, and various accounts here, *ib.* Marriages and death, *ib.*
- the Astrologer, establishes the university of Vienna, xv. 474
- the Patient, xv. 474
- Alberti banished from Florence, and the occasion, xiii. 347. Factions prevail there after his banishment, and a fresh prosecution of his party, with the occasion and the consequences, 356
- Albertus Magnus created bishop of Ratibon, ix. 639
- Albigenses, their increase to what owing, ix. 615 (W). A crusade published against them, 617 (Y). Their obstinate defence, *ib.* According to Matthew Paris they chose a pope as their head, 624. An army is sent against them and reduces them, with their submission, 626
- Albion, New, first discovered by Sir Francis Drake, v. 60
- Albizi (Rinaldo) Machiavel's great character of him, xiii. 390 (C). Disappointment, and advising to take up arms, which he and his party accordingly do, and on what occasion, 391. Two of the greatest men of his party refuse to join him in arms, and he fails of success, *ib.* On pope Eugenius's mediation he, with others, lays down his arms, but are banished, and he bears his fate like a brave man, *ib.* His death, 400
- Alboine, Longobards under that king make a successful irruption into Italy, with his marriage to fair Rosamund, and his death procured by her means, xiii. 274
- Al Borak, Mohammed's al, described, i. 31. Answer to the angel Gabriel, 32
- Albret, (John de) the dethroned king of Navarre, defeated, and its fortresses demolished, viii. 227
- Albuquerque, (Alfonso) his arrival at Hormuz, ii. 691. His conquests there, proud demands from the king refused, and his military execution, *ib.* Builds a fort there, and brings the island to submit, *ib.* Seizes on Malacca, iii. 322
- , (Don Francisco) his arrival in India, iv. 117. Restores the king of Cochin, builds a stout fort near his capital, with his treachery and insolence to the samorin, 120. His vast riches, and return, but is shipwrecked and lost, *ib.* (T)
- , (Alphonso) sent admiral into India, is imprisoned by the viceroy, with his successes and exploits, iv. 122 (U). Appointed viceroy, *ib.* Attacks Ticuarin, 123. Entry into Goa, *ib.* (Y). Reduces and fortifies Malacca, 124. His great power and activity in India, 125. High character, *ib.* Submission of Idalcán, &c. and he seizes on the port of Ormuz, 126. Complimented by a Persian embassy, *ib.* Other projects which he did not live to execute, 127. Death and character, *ib.*
- , (Don Juan) retires from court, and all his creatures removed from their employments, viii. 50. Is poisoned by an Italian physician, *ib.*
- Alcacazon, a plant in Mechoacan, its uses, xiv. 437
- Alcacovas, peace with Portugal, viii. 202 (B)
- Alcala de Henares reduced by don Bernard, archbishop of Toledo, vii. 668. To whom the king makes a grant of it, 669
- , university of, founded, vii. 228. *sub not.*
- , (Duke de) appointed viceroy of Naples, with his character, x. 507. Disperses the banditti, and vigorously opposes the usurpations of the Romish church against the king's prerogative, *ib.* particularly the bull of Pius V. in *Cœna Domini*, and also several other encroachments, *ib.* Provides for the defence of the kingdom against the Turks, who ravage the coasts, with his death and character, 508
- , (Duke de) succeeds the duke of Alva in the viceroyalty of Naples, with the distresses of the nation, the wars in Lombardy, &c. x. 516. Asks a general voluntary contribution, and alienates the crown lands for supporting the wars, *ib.* Instance of the kingdom's great poverty, with the distress and consternation of the people, and the occasion, *ib.* Recalled, *ib.*
- Al Canderi, Togrul's wazir, imprisoned, i. 659
- Alcaleb Rabbi Isaac Ben Tzadic, and Rabbi Isaac Ben Solomon Ben Tzadic, two celebrated Jewish astronomers, banished, v. 575 (A)
- Alcantara possessed by the knights of St. Julian, vii. 709. Whence the name, and an account of the magnificent bridge there over the Tagus, *ib.* (H). Taken by king Charles III. but, not haitening to Madrid, loses it, viii. 539
- Alcaraz, battle against the Moors, viii. 113—116
- Alcassar described, vii. 158. Why and by whom built, *ib.* (Q)
- Alchaman, the Moorish general, invades Asturias, vii. 591. Miraculously defeated, 592
- Alcmar besieged, and, after a brave resistance, the siege is raised, xi. 413
- Aldaba, a famous desert in Ethiopia, vi. 204. Its numerous anchorites, *ib.*
- Aldarate, disobeying Cortez's orders, is the occasion of his defeat before Mexico, xiv. 268
- Aldobrandini settles himself in Attalia, ii. 227
- Aldringen killed in his march to Landshut, xi. 234
- Alem Shah, his conquest of the kingdom of Dehli, iii. 133
- Al Emir Al Hamid succeeds his father in Khorassan, i. 543
- A. c. jik



Alenjik taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 518. Besieged by him a second time, and abandoned by the Turkmans, 534. Besieged by him a third time, 539.

Alenfon, (Duke de) his plot to bring over the English into Normandy discovered, for which he receives sentence of death, which is afterwards changed to perpetual imprisonment, ix. 161. Having received a free pardon, he is again found plotting, for which he is a second time condemned to death, but his sentence is mitigated, and he is imprisoned for life, 173.

—, (Duke of) a formidable faction springs up, headed by him, ix. 269. Executions on his account, who makes a mean confession, while the king of Navarre acts with spirit, ib.

Aleppo threatened with a siege, i. 210, and surrendered by the citizens to Abu Obeidah, 211. Its situation, soil, strength, &c. described, 412. Taken by Sharf'oddawlet, lord of Musol, ii. 170. Surrendered to Soltan Shah, 180. Taken by Hulaku, 473. By Timur Bek, 556. By the Greeks, 557. By Curuba, 564, and plundered by the Greeks, 565.

—, castle of, besieged by Abu Obeidah, i. 211. Makes a brave and long defence, 212. Taken by stratagem, and stormed, 213. Taken by Hulaku, ii. 474. By Timur Bek, 556. Rescued from the Greeks by Dhalem Alkali, 557. Subdued to the Egyptian khalif, 648. Revolts against the khalif of Egypt, 657. Seized by Moezzo'd-dawla, ib. By Mahmud, 661.

Aleifar, Rabbi Moses, a learned defender of Maimonides, v. 589.

Aletz obtains a good capitulation at Privas, which is honourably executed, ix. 379.

Alexander II. the married clergy expelled out of Milan by a decree of that pope, ix. 562.

— III. succeeds Adrian IV. in the papacy, and excommunicates the antipope Victor IV. who had been declared pope ix. 597. Is excommunicated in turn by Victor, whom the emperor favours, and who is acknowledged pope by the council of Pavia, ib. Canonizes Edward, formerly king of England, ib. and is acknowledged by the kings of France and England, but a council at Lodi confirms Victor, and he is received as pope by several princes, ib. Forced to quit Italy, goes into France, and absolutely refuses to submit to a council called by the emperor, 598. Holds a council at Tours, where Thomas Becket assists, and Victor is excommunicated, with their several canons, ib. Encourages Thomas Becket to be steadfast in defence of the church, and a difference between him and the king of England on Becket's account, ib. Endeavours to reconcile the king and Becket, with other transactions, and returns to Rome, 599. Protects Tusculum from the fury of the Romans, 600, and sends two nuncios to mediate a peace between the king of England and Becket, 601. Excommunicates several bishops, and suspends the archbishop of York, ib. The king makes an offer of peace but without effect, ib. Other proceedings of the pope, and a full resignation of the king of Hungary's right to vacant benefices, &c. ib. Sends two legates to England, and threatens an interdict, to avoid which the king agrees to a reconciliation, ib. The Greek emperor asks the imperial crown from him, with his answer, 602. Embassy from England to justify the king from Becket's murder, and the pope sends two legates to examine and receive his satisfaction, who absolve him, with the terms, ib. The next day they celebrate a council in Normandy, ib. The penance enjoined to Becket's four murderers, and Becket canonized, 603. Writes to the emperor of Abyssinia, with the first example of two benefices conferred on a prelate in Denmark, ib. Accepts of the submission of the Romans, comes to the city, and is reconciled to the antipope, upon his acknowledging his error, 604. Holds a general council at the Lateran, with their decrees against heretics, and confers the title of King on Alphonso D. of Portugal, ib. Reformation of the clergy in Ireland, by his legate, and sends another to Scotland, who excommunicates the king, and why, ib. Effects of his letter for a crusade, with the institution of the Carmelites, and by whom, ib. (O). Is a protector of the Jews, v. 545. Dies, ix. 605.

— IV. elected pope on the death of Innocent IV. ix. 637. Opposes Manfred, with an account of his other ecclesiastical proceedings in Lombardy, France, and Bohemia, ib. Grants the investiture of Naples to the king of England's son, ib. Excommunicates the inhabitants of Turin, Asti, also Ezzelino, with other transactions, ib. Obligated to quit Rome, and his legate is defeated and taken.

Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

prisoner in Lombardy, 638. Other ecclesiastical proceedings, ib. Death and character, 639.

Alexander V. upon his elevation to the pontifical chair, writes to Prague for prohibiting the doctrines of Wickliffe, ix. 704. His death, ib.

— VI. elected pope upon the death of Innocent VIII. and how procured, with his infamous character, x. 46 (I). The states of Italy agree to congratulate him, but are prevented, with the consequences, ib. Joins Storza in inviting Charles VIII. of France into Naples, 47. Is reconciled to Ferdinand of Naples, grants America to the Spaniards, and orders a crusade against the Turks, ib. Seems to incline to the French interest, but gives the investiture of Naples to Alphonso, the successor of Ferdinand, by his legate refusing the request of France, and has a conference with Alphonso, ib. Solicits the assistance of Bajazet against France, 48. His treaty with Bajazet for what, ix. 86. Enters into an alliance against Charles of France, who returns to Rome, which the pope quits, x. 49. After seizing on the territories of the Ursini, he concludes a peace with them, 50. His resolution of reforming ineffectual, ib. Methods used to prevent the Venetians from assisting against Borgia; yet they privately solicit the French monarch, 52. Imprisons cardinal Ursino, who is poisoned, 54. Poisoned by mistake, and dies, 56.

— VII. succeeds Innocent X. with an account and character of him, x. 150 (D). Great expectations of his government, strict abstinence, and mortification, 151. Cardinal de Retz's remarks on his genius, ib. Gives Retz the pallium, but finding he had, by this act, exasperated the French court, he resolves to act with more reserve for the future, and orders donna Olympia to be prosecuted, ib. Abates of his rigour to his relations, and loads them with wealth and dignities, with the expedient for salving his oath, ib. (E). Lays aside his austere manner of living, and runs into the other extreme, ib. According to Retz he is quite changed, ib. Condemns Jansenius's five propositions, with great disturbances in France by his bull, 152. The French court stops the dispute, and why, ib. Through resentment to Mazarine, he rejects the proposal of a general league against the Turks, 153. Another instance by uniting Castro to the apostolic chamber, ib. He publishes a bull against the proceedings of the doctors of the Sorbonne, 155. Gives great offence by a bull concerning attrition, and among some relics which he sends to France is a pasteboard skull of St. Fortunatus, ib. His death and character, ib. (F).

— VIII. succeeds pope Innocent XI. with an account of him and character, x. 164. Promises assistance to James II. of England after his abdication, 165. Mutual concessions of the king of France and the pope, with the advantage of the former, ib. His chief concern is aggrandizing his family, with his answer to an intimate on this occasion, ib. (D). Renews the dispute with France concerning the regalia, ib. After publishing a bull condemning the four propositions, he dies, having disappointed the expectations about him, with his character, ib.

— son of Casimir III. and duke of Lithuania, is raised to the Polish throne, xii. 483. Marries the princess of Muscovy, whom the primate refuses to crown, and the reason, ib. Is carried in a litter against the Tartars, who are defeated, with his death and character, 484.

— of Parma, married in the Low Countries to a princess of Portugal, xiii. 629. Is at the battle of Lepanto, and returning has two sons, ib. Accompanies Don John to Brussels, with an instance of his coolness of temper to Henry IV. of France, ib. His expeditions into France, with his son Ranuccio, who acquires great glory, ib. His death and character, 631. Placentia having been restored to him, ib.

— Farnese, Don, history of, and his intrigue with a Parmesan countess, who elope together, xiii. 641. are stopped at Ancona, and brought back to Parma, where the don is imprisoned for life, and his paramour sent to a cloyster, 642.

—, 84th emperor of Abyssinia, his reception of Peter Covillan, vi. 253. See Escander.

—, (Sir William) obtains a patent for colonizing Nova Scotia, and sends a ship with adventurers, who settle there, but dispossessed by a treaty with France, xiv. 494.

Alexandretta ravaged by Boucicault, vii. 407.

Alexandria besieged by the Moslems, i. 436. The governor outwitted by them, stormed, and taken, 237. Its surrender, riches, port, &c. ib. and library destroyed, 239. Description of it, ib. Re-taken by the Christians, 250.

4 T

Re-taken



- Re-taken by Amru, *ib.* The center of commerce between Europe and India, *iv.* 103. Cause of its decay, 106
- Alexandria, its famed church burned, *i.* 513. Taken by the Magrebians, *ib.*
- , antient, in Egypt, built after the model of the Labyrinth and castle, *vi.* 20. Strip of all its antient splendor, *ib.* Its two ports and castles described, *ib.* Noble prospect, pillars, and obelisks, 21. Number and character of its inhabitants, with its traffic carried on by the Jews, *ib.*
- Alexandrian patriarchate suffers a grievous revolution, *i.* 364
- Jews raise a bloody tumult there, *v.* 510 (F)
- church, their chief tenets, *vi.* 26. Circumcision preferred to baptism, *ib.*
- patriarch, number of bishoprics under him, *vi.* 24 (S). Breaks with the church of Rome, *ib.* sub not. Tampered with by the Jesuits, *vi.* 169. Complaint against Maillet, and message to the pope, 166
- Alexandrians, 200,000 perish in one campaign, *i.* 515. Grievously fined by Bedr Al Jemal, 669
- Alexis attacked by the Turks, *ii.* 203. Harasses Soleyman, 204. Makes peace with him, *ib.* and outwits Apelkasslem, 206. Recovers Nice and other cities by artifice, *ib.* Success against Tzakaz, 208. Secures Nicomedia, *ib.* Is jealous of the crusaders, *ib.* Assists them with a body of troops, and recovers Smyrna and other places, 209. Defeats the Turks at Filomelion, 210, and in Anatolia, 212. Defeats Amir Mohammed, *ib.* His long pursuit of the Turks, 213. Their way of fighting makes him alter his discipline, *ib.* A battle ensues with equal advantage and bravery, which is concluded by a mutual peace, 214
- , a pretended son of the emperor Manuel, sets up, and applies to sultan Khliziaslan, *ii.* 223. Slain by a priest, *ib.*
- , another pretender, is slain, *ii.* 224
- Michaelowitz crowned czar after his father Michael Theodorowitz, *xiii.* 152. Sends an embassy to Q Christina of Sweden, and an agreement made between them on the transmigration of Swedes from the borders into Russia, 159. Pays Sweden money instead of rye, *ib.* Declares war against Poland, besieges Smolensko with 300,000 men, takes it, also Wilna, the capital of Lithuania, with the province of Czernichew, and the city of Kiow, 160. His excellent domestic government and regulations, 162. Haughty answer to the grand seignior's embassy, 168. Sends to all the Christian powers for forming a league against the Turks, 169. His ambassador at Rome greatly caressed, and the czar distrusts the king of Poland, with his answer to the Russian ambassador on the occasion, *ib.* Has hopes of the crown of Poland for his son, 170. Sends an army into the Ukraine, with its operations in three bodies, 171. A report artfully spread by the czar, that the sultan wanted nothing more than peace with the Poles, provided they would assist him in driving the Russians from the Ukraine; and the Poles not being averse to such a proposal, discover their real sentiments to the czar, who complains thereof to their king, *ib.* Sends a reinforcement to his army in the Ukraine, and has his son Theodore Alexowitz acknowledged his successor, 172. His death, marriages, and issue, *ib.* Character, *ib.*
- Alexius, emperor of the East, offers by an embassy to receive his crown from the pope, *ix.* 582
- Alexowitz (Theodore) succeeds his father Alexis Michaelowitz, czar of Muscovy, *xiii.* 173. Behaviour with respect to the Poles, and a peace concluded between the Russians and the Turks, 174. Domestic administration in salutary regulations, with his marriages and death, after appointing his half-brother Peter his successor, in preference of his own brother John, 175
- Alfingo, a wild and dangerous beast to ride on, *vi.* 370 (B)
- Alfo, governor of Denmark, disputes the heart of the princess of Gothland by engaging her at sea, and, after conquering, marries this pyritical Amazon, *xi.* 675. His war with two Hibernian princes, who are killed in battle, as well as himself, *ib.*
- Al-fondi, prince of Monomotapa, his rise and signal valour, *vi.* 376. Succeeds to the crown, with his glorious reign and character, *ib.*
- Alfudail, king of Quiloa, dethroned, *vi.* 350
- Algarve, in Portugal, given as a dower, and an account of it, *viii.* 396 (H)
- Algezira, siege of, where cannon were first used, *viii.* 46. Remarkable circumstances attending this siege, *ib.* The place at last surrendered to the king, *ib.*
- Algiers, kingdom of, described, *vii.* 204. Traffic with the negroes, 205. Government and militia, 208. The dey confirmed by the Porte, 209. Out of whom chosen, *ib.* (D). Exposed to frequent depositions and murders, 210 (E). By whom chosen, *ib.* Aga of the Janizaries, his office, with other officers of state, *ib.* Their dewan, or divan, frequently attended with tumults, 211. Language, *ib.* Traffic, 212. Coin and chief rivers, 213. Few of them navigable, *ib.* Religion, 214. Superstitions, *ib.* Dress, *ib.* Revenue of the dey, 215. Corruption and oppression under it, *ib.* Punishments, 216 (D) Causes how tried, *ib.* Foreign commerce and that of Christian slaves, *ib.* Their dreadful treatment and funeral, 218. Tombs, *ib.* (C). Forces, *ib.* Privilege of the Turkish soldiery, and their nations among them unsubdued, 219 (E). Troops how paid, and their discipline, 220. Fleet how paid and supplied, 221. Imports and exports, *ib.* (H). Cruising ships described, *ib.* Prizes how disposed of, *ib.* Divided into three governments, 223. The eastern described, *ib.* Impatience under the Turkish yoke, 227. Its western division described, 228. Southern government described, 230. Tributary villages, 231. Their forces, *ib.* Nations at war or peace with it, 238, & notes. Why in friendship with Morocco, 239. Put themselves under the protection of an Arabian prince, 241
- metropolis of, described, *vii.* 231. Its six gates, 232. Forts, mole, and haven, *ib.* Inhabitants, 233. Dey's palace and other structures, 234, & notes. Territory and fine prospects, 236. Spacious plains, *ib.* Other natural curiosities, *ib.* Invite Barbarossa, 252. Cruelly used by him, 243. Plot to assassinate him, 245. The Spaniards shipwrecked on their coasts, *ib.* Alarmed at the arrival of Charles V. but saved by a mad prophet, 251 (G). Disastrous catastrophe of the emperor's attempt on, *viii.* 245. Cortez's last expedition thither as a volunteer, *xiv.* 279
- Algonquins, where seated, *xiv.* 567. Alliance with the Iroquois, and the terms on both sides, *ib.* Rise of the war between them, *ib.* Hurons join the Algonquins, but the Iroquois are generally victorious, *ib.* Good effects of the French taking the field against them towards peace, and Le Moyne solicits to be their missionary, 592
- language, a radical one, *xiv.* 565. Its use for travelling, 566. Original property what, *ib.*
- chief, account of his conversion, *xiv.* 582. Effect on his nation, *ib.*
- heroine, instances of her courage, and remarkable escape from the Iroquois, *xiv.* 586
- woman, brave action of one against five Agniers, *xiv.* 592
- Algoth, (Bennet) Magnus gives that favourite the investiture of Holland and Schonen, *xii.* 63
- Algu, the 4th khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 465
- Al Hadi Musa born to Al Mohdi, *i.* 413. Succeeds him in the khalifat, 415. Persecutes the impious Zendicees, *ib.* with his inauguration at Baghdad, *ib.* Success against Hoseim, severity to his family, and jealousy and ingratitude to his brother, *ib.* Sudden death, supposed by means of his own mother, his pretence for attempting his brother's life exasperating her, 416. His character, 417
- Al Hadi propagates the impious sect of the Darari, *i.* 623
- Alhaija, a festival among the Arabs, *i.* 180
- Al Haitham, the famed geometrician, his wild project for fertilizing Egypt, with his works, character, and death, *i.* 646
- Al Haikem, a Fatemite khalif in Egypt, deceived by a Basran geometrician, *i.* 646
- , the western khalif in Spain, sends forces against the rebel Calahorrans, *i.* 449, 450. His death, 452
- khalif of Egypt, his contest with Al Khader of Baghdad, *i.* 614, 615. Favours and encourages the impious Darari, 623. His death and character, 624
- Al Hallaj, a pretended miracle-monger, his character and actions, *i.* 516. Trial and execution, with other particulars of him, 517
- Alhama surprized, and, after a brave defence, forced to submit to the marquis of Cadiz, *viii.* 204. Thrice besieged by the Moors, and as often relieved by don Ferdinand of Arragon, *ib.*
- Al Hannah powder, what, with the vast traffic of it in Egypt, *vi.* 37
- Al Hareth, the son of Fehr, head of the Banual Kholoj, *i.* 5
- Al Hasan, prince of Batina, assassinated by his brother, *i.* 586
- Samfamo'ddayla chosen emir of Sicily, *i.* 639. Receives



- ceives an embassy from the emperor Michael, and forced by the Moslems to fly to him, 640
- Ali, son of Abu Taleb, becomes a Moslem, i. 22. Proclaims himself Mohammed's wazir, ib. Highly revered by the Persians, ib. Runs imminent danger on Mohammed's account, 43. His first-born, 56. A second, 60. Slays the challenging Koreish in a single combat, 61. Kills the gigantic lord of Al Ramus, 72. Storms and takes that place, and his fabulous strength and piercing sword, ib. Conduct and bravery at the siege of Mecca, 81. Breaks the idols of the Khozaite; 82. Destroys the idol Al Fatas, 92. Proclaims the 9th chapter of the Koran at Mecca, 96. Performs his devotions there after Mohammed, 103. Pays the first ablution on his dead body, 109. Was one of his chief secretaries, 117. His class allowed as one of the first of Mohammed's companions, 118. Illustrious friends, 119. As successor to Mohammed, opposes the election of Abu Becr to the khalifat, 132. Is forced to yield, ib. He visits Mohammed's tomb, to obtain a blessing on the army in Syria, 200. Persuades Obeidah to besiege Jerusalem, 203. Left governor of Medina during the khalif's absence, 204. Complying behaviour after Omar's death, 248. Appeases a rebellion against Othman, 254. Suffers him to be massacred, 255. Succeeds to the khalifat after his death, 258. Attempts it with great reluctance, ib. Inaugurated at Medina, ib. Changes most of the governors of his predecessors, 259. Why surnamed the Lyon, &c. and is accused by Ayesha of the murder of Othman, II. ib. Procures the suppressing of Moawiyah in Syria, ib. but marches against Ayesha, 263. His misconduct greatly blamed by his son, and advice to him and to his army, ib. Is joined by the tribe of Tay and other Arabs, also by the Cufans, 264. Advances to Basra, and endeavours in vain to reclaim Zobeir, 265. Engages Ayesha and him at Khoraiha, 266. Gains the victory, ib. Goes to reside at Cufu, 267. Leads his army into Syria, ib. Rencontre with a Christian hermit, and defeats Moawiyah at Seffein, 269. Disconcerted by a stratagem, and submits his title to arbitration, ib. Is deposed by it from the khalifat, obliged to drop his title, and opposed by the Kharejites for it, 271. Defeats and cuts them off, ib. Marches against Moawiyah, 272. Abandoned by his governors, ib. also by his own brother, 274. Assassinated at the mosque by a Kharejite, 275. His burial and stately tomb, 276. His person and character, ib. Wives and children, with other particulars of him, 277. Extravagant notions about him, 278. Various surnames given him, 279. He and his family cursed by the Ommiyahites, ib. Writings and sayings ascribed to him, and different branches of his family, 280. Disturbances occasioned by them, ib. Esteemed the greatest man Arabia ever produced, 281
- the son of Hosein; his gallantry at the battle of Kerbela, i. 305. Wounded and cut in pieces, 306
- , another of Hosein's son's, a child, saved from Shamer's cruelty, and sent prisoner to Damascus, i. 307, thence to Medina, 308. Why surnamed Zein Alab'addin, ib. Spared at the taking of Medina, 313. His interest revived by the Cufans, 319. Imprisoned by Abd'allah, 326. His death, 367
- Ebn Isa sent against the revolted Al Mamun, i. 439. Surprised and slain, ib.
- Ebn Mufa declared Al Mamun's successor, i. 450. His death and character, 451
- Bahadr, quitting Malatiah, recovers the possession of it, ii. 234. Success against the Bahrin, 514
- , the son of Amur, revenges his father's death on Malek, ii. 241
- Soltan, the 17th khan in Bukharia, ii. 465
- Yefuri submits to Timur, ii. 504. Brave defence of Bukharia, ib.
- , king of the Greeks, taken prisoner, ii. 506
- Bey revolts against Timur Bek, ii. 512. Frustrated in his treachery to him, 513. Submits again, and put to death, 514
- Bahadr, his gallantry before Kelat, ii. 514. Scuffle with Aly Bey on the walls, and intercedes for him to Timur Bek, and sent in pursuit of Kamro'ddin, and of Amir Veli, ib. Ordered to subdue Kurdestan, and murdered by his guide, 528
- Ebn Abbas, a famed physician of Adado'dawla, iii. 584 (M). His works, ib. sub not.
- Ebn Bowab improves the Arabic character, i. 628
- Emir, general of sultan Mohammed, betrays him to his revolted brother, and hanged for it by Mas'ud, i. 638
- Ali Merdan Khan, his just revenge on his treacherous brother, ii. 663
- Ebn Selar forces himself into the wazirat of Egypt, i. 710. Favour to the Christians at a high price, is deposed and murdered, ib.
- Puko left governor of Karakoram, ii. 357. A competitor with his brother Hu-pi lay, 361. Rich bribes to the Mungl lords, 362. Attempts on Shen-fi, ib. Signal defeat, ib. Second defeat in Karakoram, 364. Escape, ib. (R). Submission and pardon, 365
- Mirza, his success against the revolted Getes, ii. 514. Valour and escape before Sistan, 515
- Kuchapa, a blacksmith; occasions a grievous massacre in Isfahan, ii. 519
- Sharif, prince of Sheki, suspected by Timur Bek, ii. 550. Assists solan Taher, at Alenjik, ib.
- Kalander defeated by Mirza Rustem, ii. 552
- Soltan rebels against his brother Mahmud, ii. 594. Deprived of his eyes, outwitted, and utterly ruined by Khofru Shah, ib.
- Khan Soleyman, his wazir barbarously used by him, ii. 639
- Soltan slain in revenge of Mahomed Gazi's death, ii. 725
- Soltan, last of the Avanish family; raises contributions on the Turkmans, ii. 730. Defeats Badr Khan, the Persian general, ib. Dies a victim to his modesty, ib.
- , a Shiite impostor, leads the Zenjians into the Moslem empire, with his conquests in Irak, Arabia, ii. 730
- , Moktader's vizir, put to death, ii. 519
- Ebn Isa harasses the monks in Egypt, and is degraded for it, ii. 519
- Kuli Khan, his revolt and death, iii. 58
- , made governor of Kandahar, iii. 72
- Merdan Khan revolts from shah Sefi, ii. 623
- , third king of Barbary, his reign, defeat, and death, in Spain, vii. 130
- of Morocco, son of Joseph, king of the Almoravides, besieges Toledo without success, vii. 664. Retires also from Madrid, and, failing in the whole expedition, returns to Morocco, ib.
- Al Jama; temple at Baghdad, by whom built, i. 673
- Jawerek; famous for his Arabic lexicon, with his death, i. 610
- Aljatu, or Aljaptu, succeeds his brother Gazan in Iran, ii. 487. His high title, and new-built residence, with his vain attempt on Syria, ib. (E). Success against the Turks, ib. Against his two cowardly generals, with his death and character, ib.
- Ali Ebn Hamed revolts in Spain, i. 620. Proclaimed khalif there, and he defeats khalif Soliman, ib. Kills him with his own hand, ib. and breaks his word with Hayran, 622. Conspired against, 623. Dethroned and murdered, with the year of elevation, ib.
- Alibamons favourable to the French, xv. 20. Account of them, 44
- Alid's dreadful ravages in the Greek dominions, i. 339
- Alihi, the Turkman tribe, where settled, ii. 694—719
- Alikonda, a tree for drink and cloaths, described, vi. 413, (B)
- Alifuras, the Turkish general, defeated by Rogers, v. 149. who is admitted into Tripoli, ib.
- Al Kader Bi'llah chosen khalif of Baghdad, i. 593. His inauguration, 594. Ordered to be prayed for, ib. His manifesto against the Egyptian khalif, 615. His motives for it, ib. Defeats Jalala'ddowla, 630. Pious answer to sultan Mahmud's haughty letter, 637. Death and character, ib.
- Kader's black ingratitude to Mohaddhebo'ddawla, i. 608. Opposes Al Sharif's being made kadi and iman in Irak, ib.
- Khaheer raised to the khalifat, and deposed in three days, i. 521. Imprisoned by his brother, ib. Succeeds him, 526. Cruelty to his brother's children, avarice, and inhumanity, ib. Conspired against, 527. Severity to the conspirators, ib. Deposed, deprived of his eyes, and imprisoned, 528. His release and extreme poverty, character, and cruelties, 528. Released from his confinement by Al Mostach, i. 545
- Kasem, the son of Al Rashid, his share of government, i. 426
- Ebn Waheb's treachery to Badar, i. 506. Causes him to be murdered, ib.
- Kasem, raised to the Spanish khalifat, i. 623



- Ali Kayed reigns in Africa, i. 651. Succeeds Hamadin in his new dynasty, 632—651. His death, 653.  
 — Khayem succeeds his father in the khalifat, and conceals his death a whole year, i. 530. See Khayem.  
 — khalif of Kairwan, invaded by Abu Yezid, i. 545. Dies, 547.  
 — Beamrillah, Al Kader's son, succeeds him in the khalifat of Baghdad, i. 637.  
 — Kendi, a famed philosopher among the Arabs, i. 497.  
 — Khafer raised to the khalifat by the soldiery, but is deposed and forgiven by Moktader, i. 521.  
 — Khalij raises a revolt in Syria, i. 509. Success against Isa Al Nutheri, and defeated by the khalif, ib.  
 — Khaman's success in Spain, i. 332. Defeated and killed, 353.  
 Allahdad persuaded to join the revolted Khodadad, ii. 380. Outwits him, and goes over to Khalil, ib. Made wazir by him, ib. Over-reaches and ruins Hussayn Soltan, 581. Stratagem for repopling Termed, 583. Betrays Khalil to Khodadad, 584. Left by him shut up in Samarkant, 585. Put to a torturing death by Shah Rukh, ib.  
 Allat, a Tayefite idol, described and destroyed, i. 95.  
 Alleghany mountains, proposal concerning them, what, xv. 134.  
 Alliance, grand, between France, Spain, and Savoy, viii. 352. Besides another with Portugal, ib.  
 —, grand, between the emperor, Great Britain, and Holland, signed at the Hague, with the objects proposed by it, ix. 481.  
 —, triple, between Holland, Britain, and Sweden, viii. 326.  
 —, triple, its design, and Lewis retaining his conquests, xi. 609. Arrogant medal struck by the Dutch on this occasion, and Van Beuningen's vanity, ib. (A)  
 —, triple, between England, Denmark, and Sweden, with a stipulation in it about rebels not being harboured, xii. 186.  
 —, quadruple, account of the succession to Parma, as settled by it, and fifth article of it, with a new treaty between the emperor and king of Sicily, xii. 647.  
 Allies, rejecting all propositions for peace, prepare for war, viii. 343. This campaign less unfortunate than the last, ib.  
 —, war declared by them against the French and Spaniards, x. 531. Altercation between them and the Swiss cantons, xi. 643. Their fortunate proceedings, 645, at sea, ib.  
 Allouez, Father, pays the Outagouais a visit when assembled, with their gentleness and docility, xiv. 606. Little success among them, to what owing, ib. Baptizes a venerable Indian much respected by the natives, ib. His great success among the Outagamis, and other savages, ib. 613.  
 Al Modayen, the old seat of the Persian shahs, why not demolished by Al Mansur, i. 394.  
 Almagro, fortress of, holds out a stout siege against the Moors, vii. 705.  
 —, Pizarro's associate, an account of him, xiv. 280. Contest between him and Pizarro on the latter's return from Spain, 283. Joins Pizarro at Caxamalca, and why he hangs his secretary, 296. Greatly instrumental in the victory over the Indians at Xauxa, 304. Made marquis of Peru by the emperor, 306. Jealousy of Pizarro, and the different accounts of this affair, ib. The compromise, and he marches to Chili, 307. Difficulties on the road, ib. After great difficulty and loss surmounts the Andes, ib. Reaches a fine plain, and his reception there, ib. Reinforced by several Indians, he reduces many provinces of Chili, 308. Joined by some Spaniards, and a new commission brought him from the emperor, he prepares for returning to Peru through the deserts. Incredible hardships sustained, and deserted by the high-priest Vilchoma, with the different accounts here, ib. Proclaims Topu inca, ib. Returns from Chili to Cuzco, and his proposals for an alliance against Pizarro, why rejected by the inca, 313. Arrival before Cuzco, demanding the place of Ferdinando Pizarro, and at last seizing it, 314. Defeats and takes Alvarado prisoner, 315. Triumphant return to Cuzco, and marching towards the coast, ib. Marches to Chinca valley, and his commissioners for an accommodation with Pizarro seized, 316. Appeal to the council of the Indies, ib. Punctiliousness, and another circumstance of misconduct ruin him, 317. Imprisoned, tried, condemned, and executed, by Pizarro, 318. Character and account of him, ib. (D)  
 —, his son, dispossessed of his father's estate, and sent prisoner to Lima, xiv. 318. not in fin. His friends discon-
- tent, and the marquis Pizarro's severity, 326. They form a conspiracy, ib. After several attempts frustrated, they at length assassinate the marquis, 327. Plunder his treasures and proclaim the young Almagro governor of Peru, ib. Cabals raised against his friends under Alvarez Holguin, 328. Cruelty to secretary Picardo, who is put to death, ib. Marches to Cuzco, and his preparations, 329. Escaping Alvarado's plot for his life, seizes and puts him to death, ib. Marches against the governor Castro, ib. Pacific proposals and representations to him, ib. Slays Candia his engineer for treachery, and is defeated by Castro, 330. Betrayed at Cuzco, and delivered up to Castro, ib. Executed, ib. Reflexions hereon, and his party entirely extirpated, ib.  
 Al Mamun, second son of Al Rastid, his share of the government, i. 426. Sent against the rebel Rafe', 434. Opposed by his brother Al Amin, 435. Fidelity to his brother ill rewarded, 438. Breaks off from him, 439. Defeated by him, 440. Victory over him, ib. Assumes the khalifat, ib. Fresh successes against Al Amin, and dirhems coined on the occasion, 441. Fresh successes against him, 442. Egypt and other provinces declare for him, ib. Joy at the receiving his brother's head, 447. Ascends the throne, 448. Opposed by sundry revolts, 449. Causes Ali Ebn Musa to be declared his successor, 450. Forbids black colours to be worn, despises the house of Al Abbas, and hastes to Baghdad, ib. Recalls his edict against wearing black, 451. Frequent changes of his governors, 453. Invades the Greek emperor's dominions, 454. Enters Egypt, and quells two revolts, ib. His public works, &c. there, 455. Last expedition into the Greek empire, ib. Rejects the emperor's offers of peace, his death, and last orders about the creation of the Koran, 456. Person and character, ib. That of his master Kassai, 457. Officers and other cotemporary particulars, ib. Learned men, 458. Almanzor beaten by the count of Castile, and the kings of Leon and Navarre, viii. 557. Christian exiles among the Moors recalled, but not altogether successful, 558.  
 Al Mansur proclaimed khalif, i. 386. See Abu Jaafar. His many other names summed up, 287.  
 — Al Hajani, his seasonable reproof to Al Mohdi, i. 414.  
 —, khalif of Kairwan, quells a rebellion in Africa, i. 548. Success in Sicily, 549. Death and character, 551.  
 —, in Andalusia, i. 575. See Abu Amer.  
 —, emir of Africa, his submission and presents to Al Aziz, i. 587.  
 —, king of Tydon, makes peace with the Portuguese, iv. 154. Poisoned by don Garcias's order, 155.  
 —, khalif, a great friend to the Jews, v. 525.  
 — Jacob, king of the Almohides, reduces Tremecen and Tunis, vii. 133. Transplants the Arabs out of them, ib. (D). His vast conquests and dominions, 134. Trope with Alphonso, ib. Reduces the revolted in Morocco, with his horrid cruelties to the city, 135. Disappears, and dies at Alexandria, with various conjectures about his recess, ib.  
 Almanza, battle and defeat of the allies under Galway, by Berwick, viii. 366. Misfortune there, to what owing, 541. After that victory, fortune declares for Philip V. in Spain, ix. 491.  
 Almaricus, of Paris, his heretical doctrines what, and condemned, ix. 614.  
 Almedo, Father, gains a party for Cortez among Naryaca's men, xiv. 232.  
 Almeida, the Jesuit, his travels through Abyssinia, vi. 160. His list of the Abyssinian monarchs, 251. Succeeds father Pays there, 292. Kind reception at court, ib.  
 —, (Francisco de) lands, and is slain at the Cape of Good Hope, vi. 395.  
 Al Meimendi, sultan Mahmud's wazir, deposed, i. 634. His love for learned men, ib. His death and character, 638.  
 Almeida, port, burnt by Al Hasan, i. 552. Taken by the emperor Alonso, vii. 680. Account and site of the place, ib. (S)  
 Almeida, the Portuguese admiral, his arrival at Quiloa, vi. 352. Attack on it, ib. Reduces it, ib. Despises Ibrahim, and brings the kingdom under tribute, and fortifies the city, 353. Settles Mombaso, 355. Flattering message to the king, 356. Rejected with scorn, ib. Sets the city on fire, assaults it while burning, and seizes on it and the palace, ib. Fierce attack on the royal palace, 357. Plunders and burns the city, also rejects the king's offers of submission, and sails in quest of the Arabian trading vessels, ib.  
 Almeyda, (Don Francisco) sent the first viceroy into India, iv. 121.



121. His character and exploits, and jealousy of Albuquerque, *ib.* Signal victory over the Moors, *ib.* Resigns his post, and murdered by the Africans in his return, 122
- Almeyda, (Apollinaris de) bishop of Nice, succeeds Seco in Abyssinia, vi. 297. Persecuted by Basilides, 303. Put to death, *ib.*
- Al Moezz succeeds his father at Kairwan, i. 551. Falls out with Abd'alrahman, 552. Severe reprisals on him, *ib.* and his vast conquests in Africa, 554. Victory over the Greeks, 559. Conquests in Egypt and Syria, 564. Retires into Egypt with all his wealth, 566 (H). Entry into Alexandria, 567. Defeats the Karmatians, 569. His death, 572. Succeeded by his son Al Aziz, *ib.*
- Almohade-, dynasty, when and by whom first founded, with their first exploits, i. 695. vii. 130. Severity to the Christians, i. 681. Disputes with the independent Moors of Spain, 690. Rise in Barbary, vii. 130. Defeated by the Spaniards, 173
- Al Mohdi, the Baghdan camp, whence so called, i. 396
- , the son of Al Mansur, sent to cover the building of Baghdad, i. 390. Declared Al Mansur's successor, 395. Succeeds his father, 407. Proclaimed at Baghdad, *ib.* Success against his competitors, and two-fold irruption into the Greek empire, 408. Two more expeditions against the Christians, 409. Goes to Jerusalem, *ib.* Forces the empress Irene to become tributary, 410. Articles of the treaty, 411. Persecutes the Zendelites, and designs to disinherit his eldest son, *ib.* Poisoned by a concubine, 412, and buried under a walnut-tree, *ib.* Pompous pilgrimage to Mecca, and character, *ib.* Chief counsellors, *ib.* Stratagem against his suspected counsellor Yakub, and severity to him, 413. His person, &c. described, 414. Pleasant adventure with a poor Arab, *ib.*
- , the name of, assumed by Abu Mohammed Obeid'-allah, founder of the Fatemite dynasty, i. 512. Success against khalif Moktader, 513. Driven out of Egypt by his forces, *ib.* Defeated at sea by the Sicilian emir, 514
- , of the race of Ommiyah, usurps the khalifat in Spain, i. 611. Defeated and expelled by Soliman Ebn Ali Nasr, *ib.* Put to death by the khalif, with Roderic's different account of this rebellion, *ib.* and of his punishment and death, 612
- , khalif, friend to the Jews, v. 525
- Al Mokanna, a false prophet, rebels against Al Mohdi, with his impious doctrine, i. 409. Strange and desperate death contrived to gull his disciples, *ib.*
- Al Moktar, a famed disciple of Abu'l Faraj, i. 650
- Al Mondar succeeds to the Spanish khalifat, i. 495. Dies two years after, *ib.*
- Almoravid dynasty in Barbary, vii. 128. Its extinction, 130
- Al Motanabbi, a Jofan poet, his rise, poems, and new sect, i. 560. Suppressed by Lulu, and slain in defence of his money, together with his son, by some Arabian robbers, 561
- Al Motawakkel succeeds his brother in the khalifat, i. 468. Cruelty to Mohammed Abda'llah, *ib.* Settles the succession on his sons, with his hatred to the Christians and Jews, 469. To the family of Ali, *ib.* Revenge on the revolted Armenians, 470. Drives the Greeks out of Samosata, 471. Disgusted at the city of Damascus, with his severity against the friends of Ali, 472. Defeats the Thracians, &c. and builds the new city of Jaafariya, 473. New irruption into the Greek empire, 474, and assassinated by his eldest son's order, *ib.* Reasons assigned for the parricide, *ib.* with his horrid cruelties and debauches, 475. Learned men who flourished in his time, *ib.* Prodigies forerunning his death, 477. Edict against the Christians, *ib.* His person, character, and love of learning, 478
- Almoravides, a tribe of Arabs, who, vii. 659. Why called Morabites, *ib.*
- Al Mowayyad, khalif in Spain, stript of his power by his prime wazir, i. 607, who is put to death by Al Mohdi, *ib.*
- Alms, variety of them prescribed by the Koran, i. 169. Edict in France forbidding it in the streets, ix. 348
- Alnebr, a wild beast in Tartary, famed for its fur, ii. 122
- Al-Nil, where situate, and by whom built, i. 606
- Alonso of Portugal, (Don) a promoter of navigation, iv. 111. Slain in the civil broils, *ib.*
- , assumes the kingdom of Asturias, vii. 593. His great conquests and improvements, with his death, 594
- II. surnamed the Chaste, vii. 597. Invaded by the Moors, and defeats them, 598. Embassy to Charlemagne, is deposed and imprisoned, *ib.* Restored, and has fresh wars with the Moors, 599. He protects the rebel Mahmut, *ib.* Betrayed by him, *ib.* Victory, resignation, and death, *ib.*
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Alonso III. surnamed the Great, dethroned by Don Froila, vii. 602. Recovers his kingdom, 603. Two victories over the king of Cordova, and other conquests, *ib.* Defeats the opposing Moors, 604. Suppresses the revolted Galicians, 605. Reforms the government, *ib.* Suppresses the rebels in Galicia, and calls a council at Oviedo, *ib.* Defeats the Moors, and imprisons his revolted son Garcias, 606. Rejects all petitions in his favour, *ib.* Publicly resigns the crown to him, 607 (G). Makes a campaign after his abdication, with his death and character, *ib.*
- IV. found incapable of the government, vii. 610
- , king of Arragon, the quarrel between him and his queen Urraca still continues, vii. 665. After a reconciliation she leaves him, *ib.* Resolves to keep Castile, Leon, and Toledo, by force, *ib.* Now perceives that nothing but success can secure his authority, *ib.* Marches with a small body of troops into Castile, *ib.* Totally routs the queen's troops in the battle of Campo de Espina, and its consequences, *ib.* Galicia declares for the young prince Alonto Raymond, who is crowned by the archbishop, *ib.* The war continues between the king and his queen Urraca, of which the Moors take advantage, 666
- Raymond, prince, recognized by Galicia, and crowned, vii. 665
- , Don, extends his conquests on the side of Portugal, and takes several places, vii. 658. Engaged in a war against Don Sancho of Arragon, *ib.* Joins a body of auxiliaries with the confederate Moors, in defence of the kingdom of Huesca, *ib.* These made prisoners before Huesca, *ib.* He marries Zaide, daughter of the king of Seville, and makes an alliance with him, *ib.* Strange alliance with Joseph king of Fez and Morocco, 659, who conquers Seville, with the best part of Andalusia, *ib.* His succours preserve the city of Valencia from the Moors, 661, but he orders them to withdraw, *ib.* Loses his fifth wife, Isabella, formerly Zaide, *ib.* (K). Her inscription, *ib.* sub. not. Marries Beatrix of Este, *ib.* Loses a battle with the Moors, *ib.* Alonso born to count Raymond by the infanta Urraca, 662. A bright star observed, *ib.* Is alarmed by the invasion of Joseph king of the Almoravides, *ib.* Loses his son-in-law Raymond, when coming to command his army, *ib.* Sends the infant Don Sancho to the army, *ib.* Totally defeated in the fatal battle of Ucles, *ib.* Donna Urraca marches her forces towards the Moors, who retreat, *ib.* His death and character, as the greatest Christian monarch in Spain, 663. No disturbances happen during the eighteen months of his illness, *ib.* Disputes upon his demise between Alonso king of Arragon and his queen Urraca, *ib.* She is made prisoner by him, but soon delivered, 664, upon a civil war breaking out in Galicia, the rebels seize the young prince, *ib.*
- III. the young king of Castile put under the tuition of Guitierrez de Castro, vii. 686. The regent's character, *ib.* Betrayed into Don Manrique de Lara's hands, *ib.* His uncle Ferdinand of Leon claims the regency, and entering Castile with an army, at last compromises the dispute, *ib.* This treaty broken, and Castile invaded by the kings of Leon and Navarre, the former defeating Lara's faction, *ib.* Other confusions hence arising, *ib.* Causes why the Moors did not make greater advantages of these disorders, 687. The king, by the advice of Manrique, intends to seize on Toledo, 688. Opposed by Ferdinand de Castro, and Manrique killed, 689. The castle of Zurita besieged, and taken by treachery, *ib.* (A). The traitor's eyes put out, *ib.* Toledo and other places taken, *ib.* Marries Eleanora daughter to king Henry II. of England, 690. Settles all disputes with the king of Arragon, at an interview, and a treaty concluded, *ib.* Reception of Eleanora of England, *ib.* Takes Cuenca, and, with the assistance of the king of Arragon, beats the Moors, who attempt its relief, 693, but the garrison make a good capitulation, *ib.* For this service Arragon is released from the homage for Saragossa, &c. *ib.* A remarkable incident in an assembly of the states, *ib.* (D). Forced by the king of Arragon to make peace with his uncle the king of Leon, 694. Interview between him and Ferdinand of Leon, *ib.* Repeated expeditions against the Moors in Andalusia, *ib.* Interview with the king of Arragon, *ib.* Has great success against Navarre, 699. Donna Blanca is married to prince Lewis of France, by means of queen Eleanora of England, *ib.* Gives his second daughter Urraca in marriage to Alonso of Portugal, 701. Meets and parts very amicably with the kings of Arragon and Navarre, *ib.* Begins a war with the Moors, *ib.* Don Ferdinand sent to make an irruption into their territories, *ib.* who dies soon after, *ib.* Gives up several



several places to Leon for settling a peace, 705. Takes several places from the Moors, *ib.* A great famine distresses his people, *ib.* His death, with that of his daughter Eleanor, and other great personages, 706. Character, and other particulars about him, *ib.* (G)

Alonso, (Don) infant of Castile, marries Molina's daughter, of the house of Lara, whereby the latter is reduced to obedience, vii. 710

—, succeeds his father Ferdinand IV. king of Castile, in the third year of his age, viii. 33. Assumes the government at the age of fourteen, 36. Calls an assembly of the states, in which the regents lay down their authority, *ib.* He acts with severity, to recover some appearance of justice; storming Valdenebra castle, puts the banditti in it to the sword, *ib.* The chief persons about him, 37, (Q). He follows the bent of his own disposition, *ib.* & not sub fin. After trying gentle methods, he causes Juan the Deformed to be assassinated, *ib.* and publicly avows it, *ib.* In a progress he severely punishes all transgressors, 38. Marries the infanta of Portugal, and his sister Leonora is espoused to Alonso of Arragon, making alliances with each, 39. Labours to bring Juan Emanuel back to his duty, but without effect, *ib.* Makes a campaign against the Moors, and takes Tebe, &c. *ib.* Enters into an intrigue with Leonora de Guzman, by whom he has several children, *ib.* Secret history of this reign, *ib.* (R). Receives the king of Granada as his vassal, and Alonzo de la Cerca into favour, and grants him an honourable establishment, 40. Institutes the order of the Band, since dissolved, *ib.* Concludes a truce with the Moors in order to relieve his subjects, 41. Obligated to remit the king of Granada's tribute, before he would ratify the truce, *ib.* Endeavours by extraordinary severity to extinguish factions, *ib.* The marriage of Constantia with Pedro of Portugal not opposed by him, *ib.* He diverts his nobles with feasts and a carousal, *ib.* His dominions attacked by the viceroy of Navarre, whom he defeats, 42. Receives two embassies, one from Morocco, and the other from England, *ib.* A truce concluded between Castile and Portugal, 43. The pope writes to him to part with Leonora de Guzman, 44. Peace and alliance concluded with Portugal, 45, one article of which is the marriage of Constantia, Juan Emanuel's daughter, with Don Pedro, *ib.* Converses with Leonora de Guzman only in public, *ib.* Accepts but of part of his subjects free gift, *ib.* Takes Alcala de Ben-zayde, and the whole Moorish fleet beaten, 46. His stratagem for procuring money, *ib.* Remarkable circumstances attending the siege of Algezira, which at last surrenders, 47. Sends home Abul-Affan's daughters, who had been taken at Salsedo, without ransom, with that prince's solemn embassy of thanks, *ib.* Breaks the truce with the Moors, and besieges Gibraltar by sea and land, 48. Dies of the plague before that place, when just about to capitulate, *ib.* The Moors suspend hostilities all the day his body was removed, *ib.* His short character, *ib.*

— of Castile enters Arragon as a friend, and, leaving a garrison in Saragossa, retires, with an account of this matter, viii. 118

— king of Portugal, invades Leon, but his forces defeated, and himself taken prisoner, by K. Ferdinand, vii. 689. Concludes a peace and returns home, 690. Quarrel between him and Mohammed of Niebla compromised, viii. 8

—, K. of Portugal, assisted from Burgundy, viii. 374. Marries his daughter Urraca to Raymond of Burgundy, *ib.*

— Enriquez assumes the government of Portugal from Theresa, viii. 378. Different accounts of the consequences false, and he defeats and imprisons her for the remainder of her life, 379. Repulses and defeats a Moorish prince, *ib.* Makes several fruitless attempts on his mother's possessions in Galicia, and makes a peace with Alonso emperor of Spain, *ib.* Becomes tributary to the pope, *ib.* Defeats Isinar's vast army at Ourique, 380. On which the Portuguese monarchy is founded, *ib.* Fables and absurd accounts, *ib.* Proclaimed king of Portugal, 381. Makes war on the emperor Alonso, and the Moors, with no success, *ib.* Surprises Santaren, *ib.* Causes his titles to be recognized, with the ceremony, 382. The constitution settled, and laws made, *ib.* Some account of the latter, *ib.* (A). Marries Mafalda of Maurienne, 383. Reduces Lisbon with the assistance of the Crusaders, *ib.* His success hereupon, *ib.* Account of these Crusaders, Eltrema-dura, and Lisbon, *ib.* (B). Very wise government, 384. Procures a bull confirming his title, and frees his country from vassalage to Leon, *ib.* Enlarges and improves his

dominions, *ib.* His lameness does not abate his military ardour, 385. Embarks in wars with the Christians and Moors, *ib.* Gains a complete victory over the Moors at Santaren, 386. Dies much regretted. His character, *ib.* (C). Institutes two orders, *ib.* sub not.

Alonso II. or the Fat, succeeds his father Sancho, viii. 389. Does two very popular acts, but quarrels with his brothers and sisters, *ib.* His marriage with Urraca, and their issue, *ib.* (E). Compelled by the pope to compromise matters with his family, 390. Assisted by the Crusaders he takes Alcacardo Sal, and beats the Moors, *ib.* Differs with the clergy, and is excommunicated by the pope, under which interdict he dies, with his character, 391 (F). Chief cause of his troubles, *ib.* sub not.

— III. brother of Sancho II. made regent of Portugal by the pope, viii. 393. Succeeds his brother Sancho in that kingdom, 395. Character different from what it was before, *ib.* War with the Moors, and severity in one place, with his wife administration and spirited enterprizes, *ib.* Miscarriage of his attempt against the Moors, and subsequent accommodation, with his marrying Beatrix, natural daughter of Alonso the wife of Castile, *ib.* Algarve given in dowry with her, 396. His marriage disapproved by the pope, and the kingdom put under an interdict, *ib.* but the pope is softened, and a remission of all claims from Castile, 397. Policy and character, *ib.* (I) Reconciled to the church on his death-bed, *ib.*

— IV. or the Brave, K. of Portugal, succeeds his father Denis, viii. 404. Is very indolent in the administration, *ib.* (B). A nobleman's remonstrance to the king, and his answer, *ib.* sub not. Changes his conduct much for the better, 405. Account of his issue, *ib.* (C). Proclaims his natural brother Sanchez a traitor, but is reconciled, *ib.* A war with Castile, which is compromised, and an alliance made, *ib.* The Moors make a descent on Algarve, but driven out, 406. Amour of prince Pedro with Agnes de Castro very strongly represented to the king, 407, to whom it is proposed to remove her out of the world, and he consents to her murder, *ib.* Don Pedro lays waste the country, but submits, *ib.* Succinct view of Alonzo's administration, with his death and character, 408

— V. surnamed the African, succeeds his father Edward in Portugal, viii. 435. Disgust of the Portuguese against the queen dowager, *ib.* She demands support of Pedro duke of Coimbra, *ib.* The king takes the government into his own hands, and approves of the regent's administration, 437, whose daughter he espouses, *ib.* Goes in person with his son Juan into Africa, and sustains some loss, 442. Gains several conquests, and redeems the body of his uncle Ferdinand, *ib.* Takes Arzila and Tangier, 443. Returns home with glory and stiled the African, *ib.* Resolves to vindicate the title of his niece Joanna to Castile, *ib.* Unfortunate issue of that dispute in the cabinet and field, with the king's voyage to France for assistance from Lewis XI. and their interview, 444. Finding himself the dupe of Lewis, he proposes retiring to Jerusalem for shame, but dissuaded, *ib.* Renews the war with Castile, which terminates in a peace, 445. Joanna takes the veil, and why, *ib.* The king assiduous in leaving his dominions in peace, 446. Intending a second time to resign, he dies, with his character, *ib.* (G)

— VI. of Portugal, his character, with his intractable temper, viii. 516. Antonio and Juan Conti, sons of a Genoese pedlar, become his chief favourites, *ib.* Impatient to rule without controul, with the queen's intrigues to set up his brother Pedro, and artful memorial, 517. Supported by the council, she sends Antonio, the king's favourite, and others into Brazil, *ib.* Remonstrance made to the king, and the queen's intrigues for perpetuating her regency frustrated, *ib.* Count Castlemelhor succeeds Conti in the king's favour, *ib.* The king, by him, breaks through all his mother's contrivances, *ib.* After trying all methods, she resigns, 518. Intrigues at court by new favourites, who advise the king to banish several persons of note, 519. The queen ordered to quit the palace, *ib.* and arrives at Lisbon, 521. Sensible of his danger, the king tries in vain to bring back his friends, 522. Secretary de Sousa, &c. retires from court, *ib.* The king refuses to summon an assembly, but compelled to it, 523. The queen retires to a convent, and writes a letter to the king, *ib.* who is forced to resign the government into the hands of a regent, 524. The pope confirms the nullity of his marriage with the queen, his dispensation, and her second marriage, 528. After the breaking up of the states, the king is sent prisoner to the island of Tercera, *ib.* The regent



regent's letter on this head, *ib* (A). Public spirit shewn by the regent in the administration, 529. Foreign alliances renewed, and all embarrassments avoided, *ib*. Long peace and good administration alone hinder the public affairs from growing worse, with the true causes of decline, *ib*. The king brought back, and the Spanish ministry disavow any hand in the conspiracy, with other assurances, 530. Dispute about a new Portuguese colony compromised, *ib*. Project for marrying the heiress of the crown to the duke of Savoy, *ib*. To this the states consent, but not to be made a precedent, 532. A superb squadron fitted out for bringing the duke, but the scheme is defeated, *ib*. Death of Alonzo and the queen, with several proposals of marriage for the infanta abortive, 533.

Alonso II. K. of Arragon, his character, *viii*. 129. Gallant behaviour in Provence, after entering upon the administration, *ib*. Takes several towns from the Moors, *ib*. Enters into a close alliance with Alonso of Castile, *ib*. Makes an irruption into Valentia, and takes Terval and Xativa, 130. He and the king of Castile invade Navarre to little effect, *ib*. Sends ambassadors to demand Eudocia, daughter of Manuel the Greek emperor, yet marries Sancha of Castile, *ib*. The war with Navarre submitted by the three kings to the judgment of the monarch of England, *ib*. Assists in the battle of Cuenca, as an ally to the king of Castile, who remits his homage, *ib*. Great exploits performed by him in Spain and France, 131. The rest of his actions, *ib*. His death, character, and issue, *ib*.

— III. King of Arragon, succeeds his father, *viii*. 148. His character and great prudence at his accession, *ib*. Resolves to marry Eleanor, daughter of Edward I. of England, 149. After conquering Minorca and Yvica, and restoring the dignity of his crown, he dies suddenly, *ib*. His character, *ib*.

—, K. of Leon, withdraws and is well received in Toledo, *vii*. 650 (E). Improbable circumstance related by Mariana, *ib*. sub not. Returns to his dominions on the news of Sancho's death, 652. Reception into Zamora, *ib*. Invitation to Castile, but obliged to purge himself by oath of Sancho's murder, *ib*. Imprisons don Garcia, depriving him of his dominions, *ib*. The Galicians submit to him, *ib*. Espouses donna Agnes, 653. By joining Ali Maymon, he puts an end to the war with the king of Seville, *ib*. Superiority claimed over him by pope Gregory VII. *ib*. but he alledges his independency, *ib*. Some bishops admit, and others refuse, the Roman service, 654. Seizes on a part of Navarre, and the king of Arragon the rest, *ib*. In a council at Burgos the Roman service is enjoined, *ib*. Provides for the king of Navarre's family excluded from the crown, *ib*. (G). The pope's legate divorces him from queen Agnes, and a new marriage negotiated, 654. Conquers Toledo, which he makes the capital of Castile, 655. Deceived by a stratagem of Aben-Falax, commander to the prince of Saragossa, *ib*. (H). His great care to improve that city, 656. Difference from himself before his expulsion, and after his restoration, *ib*. Upon the loss of Toledo the Mahomedans enter into a confederacy, *ib*. Appoints a council to chuse an archbishop of that see, *ib*. Takes Coria, but loses a battle with the Moors, *ib*. Enters into a negotiation of peace with the Moors, 657. In his absence the cathedral of Toledo is taken from the Moors, and he is transported into rage on hearing of it, but is requested by the Moors to pardon this act of injustice, upon which the cathedral is consecrated, *ib*. In this interval of peace he repairs several cities and towns, *ib*. The old Gothic characters disused, and those common through Europe introduced, *ib*. Other acts of this king's reign, *ib*. with his death and character, 660.

— of Leon marries donna Berengara, *vii*. 672. Holds a council in Valencia, quells several insurrections, and banishes don Roderic Gonzales, *ib*. Noble instance of generosity, *ib*. Valiant behaviour of Gonzales against the Moorish camp, after he had obtained the king's pardon, *ib*. An insurrection in Asturias, a war in Galicia by Alonso of Portugal, and an irruption of the Moors, all quelled, and the latter defeated, 673. His glorious expedition against the Moors, lays waste all the neighbourhood of Cordova, with his triumphant return, *ib*. Solemnly invested and crowned emperor, *ib*. Homage paid him by several princes, *ib*. Laws made in the assembly of the lords and prelates, 674. (P). The kings of Navarre and Portugal, upon this, enter into a league against him, *ib*. His army sent to expel the enemy out of Galicia, defeated, *ib*. Dismisses don Roderigo Gonzales, who goes to the Holy Land, *ib*. Account of this matter, and his behaviour there, *ib*. (Q). Good fortune of Roderic Fernandes against the Moors, 675.

Grants a peace to Alonso Henriquez of Portugal, upon his request, *ib*. Another successful expedition of Roderic Fernandes against the Moors, *ib*. The emperor turns his arms against the Moors, but with indifferent success, *ib*. Raises the siege of Coria, after the loss of one of his generals, and makes preparations for attacking the Moors, *ib*. Marches to reduce the castle of Oreja on the frontiers of Castile, which makes a gallant defence, 676. Reduces it after an obstinate resistance, in spite of the whole power of the Moors, *ib*. Grants the garrison a capitulation, and his generous treatment of them for a month in his camp, and returns in triumph to Toledo, 677. Recovers Coria after a short siege, 678. Highly commends and rewards Muna Alonso's services, *ib*. who makes an irruption into the Moorish territories with great success, and nobly extricates himself from superior numbers, with the loss of the two Moorish alcaides, *ib*. Blocks up the Moors in the castle of Mora, *ib*. Attacks the Moors, after which both sides retire, 679. Killed, after a very valiant defence, in an action against the Moors, *ib*. The emperor takes Almeria, with the assistance of the French, Genoese, and Pisans, 680. Declares his two sons kings in the great assembly of the states, 681. He, together with don Garcia, gains a glorious victory over the Moors, *ib*. Marries a second wife Rica, 682, and his daughter Constance married to Lewis VII. of France, *ib*. Their arrival at Toledo, and grand reception by the emperor, 683. Takes Andujar and other places, *ib*. His son Sancho has a son born to him, but the mother Blanco dies, *ib*. Totally defeats the Moors with great slaughter, *ib*. His death, and great character, *ib*. His son Sancho declared king of Castile, and his brother Ferdinand sovereign of Leon, Asturias, and Galicia, 684. The Moors, encouraged by the emperor's death, take some places lately lost, and are promised assistance from Morocco, *ib*.

Alonso IX. son and successor of Ferdinand of Leon, knighted by the king of Castile, *vii*. 695. Marries donna Theresa of Portugal, *ib*. His queen and four prelates excommunicated by the pope's legate, and the marriage declared void, 696. The interdict taken off only with regard to the king and queen, *ib*. Expeditions against the Moors, *ib*. That under the archbishop of Toledo performed with unexampled severity, *ib*. Excites a dreadful war with the Moors, imprudently fights at Alarcos, before the junction of the succours he was obliged to ask of Leon and Navarre, 697. Totally defeated, and the dismal consequences, *ib*. Invades Leon, while the Moors ravage his own dominions, *ib*. Has a son by Berengara, afterwards St. Ferdinand, king of Castile and Leon, 699. Disputes between him and his mother-in-law Urraca, concerning some fortresses, *ib*. at which don Diego Lopez is provoked, *ib*. Obligated by the pope to part with his second queen Berengara, 700, but the children declared legitimate, which occasions a war, *ib*. Turns his arms against Portugal, 704. His heir apparent, don Ferdinand, dies, *ib*. Victory over the Moors in a general engagement, 711. Crusades granted against them, *ib*. Takes Caceres, 712. Its antient name how corrupted, *ib*. Takes Merida, and gains a complete victory over the Moors, with other conquests, *ib*. His death, *ib*. Sancha and Dulcia by Theresa of Portugal, declared his co-heiresses, *ib*. His character, *ib*. (K). Disputes concerning the succession amicably settled at an interview between Theresa and Berengara, 713. A second interview, at which, by agreement, Castile and Leon are united in St. Ferdinand, *ib*.

— IV. succeeds his father Jayme II. king of Arragon, *viii*. 155. Espouses Leonora of Castile, *ib*. Manages foreign affairs with spirit and success, *ib*. but is very unhappy in his family, *ib*. Pedro marries Maria of Navarre, *ib*. The king dies sincerely beloved by his subjects, *ib*.

— V. succeeds his father Ferdinand in Arragon, *viii*. 185. Applies himself to the affairs of government, quashes a conspiracy, and settles every thing in Sardinia, 186. Adopted by the queen, he becomes master of Naples, and forces her to take shelter elsewhere, 187. Returns home and takes Marseilles, with the reasons for his return, *ib*. Misunderstanding with Castile, and resolves on another expedition into Italy, 188. The true reason for his being in perpetual action abroad, *ib*. Invades Gerbes, and worsts the king of Tunis, *ib*. Is bent on the conquest of Naples, *ib*. Involves himself in a war with the duke of Milan and the Genoese, *ib*. In a sea-engagement he is beaten and taken prisoner, with several others, 189. Is landed at Savona, and conducted to Milan, *ib*. Draws over the duke, who enters into a new treaty with him, and is dismissed with the other prisoners, *ib*. The states of Arragon, Valencia, and Catalonia, grant him large supplies, 190.

A powerful



- A powerful confederacy formed by the Italian princes against him, 190. He becomes sole master of Naples, and is acknowledged king, with his son Ferdinand as successor, *ib.* Gives law through all Italy, 91. Receives his nephew Carlos kindly at Naples, *ib.* Settles the disputes between that prince and his father Juan of Navarre, *ib.* Fresh troubles throw Alonso into a fever, and he dies, 192. His great character, *ib.* Declares by will his brother Juan of Navarre his heir in Spain, *ib.* and gives Naples to his natural son Ferdinand, *ib.*
- Alonso VII. being before king of Galicia and Toledo, succeeds in Castile, Leon, and Asturias, vii. 67c. His reception at Leon, and progress to other parts, *ib.* Some places still hold out, but soon yield, 671. Concludes a peace at an interview with Alonso king of Arragon and Navarre, *ib.*
- VII. or il Guerrero, succeeds his brother don Pedro in Arragon, viii. 114. Marries Urraca, daughter of Alonso of Castile, emperor of Spain, *ib.* Irreconcilable difference between him and his queen, and the marriage declared null, *ib.* Beats the Moors, and takes Tudela by assault, 115. Beats them again, and takes Saragossa, *ib.* also several other places, *ib.* Gives them another defeat in a pitched battle near Alcaraz, 116. He surprisingly beats them in another great battle, *ib.* He besieges and reduces Bayonne, *ib.* He besieges Fraga their capital, 117. Is defeated in a great battle, and dies of grief, *ib.* His character and large conquests to Arragon, 118. A separation made of Arragon and Navarre, distinct kings being proclaimed, *ib.*
- de la Cerda proclaimed king, viii. 18. The particulars of this affair farther opened, *ib.* (K). He and the Arragoneses, &c. enter Castile with a numerous army, *ib.* but the king of Arragon forced to retire, *ib.* and some concessions made him for this fruitless attempt, *ib.* The inhabitants of Badajoz declaring for Alonso, are invested by the king's troops, and cut in pieces, 22. In alliance with the king of Arragon, he enters Castile, when don Juan and other lords join him, 25. The allies besiege Majorca, but forced, by an epidemic disease, to raise the siege, *ib.* The Moors obliged to retire from before Tarifa, *ib.* Quitting Arragon, he solicits France in vain for assistance, 28
- X. or the Wise, espouses Yoland of Arragon, viii. 7. Succeeds his father Ferdinand in all his dominions, 8. Some Moorish princes become his vassals, *ib.* Breaks with Henry III. of England on the score of Gascony, *ib.* A peace negotiated upon his son prince Edward's marrying Eleanor, king Alonso's sister, *ib.* Prepares for the expedition into Barbary, *ib.* A crusade, and bull for levying aid on the clergy, granted by the pope, *ib.* Some mistakes of the Spanish historians concerning him and his queen rectified, *ib.* (E). His preparations for the African expedition go on, though with great inconveniency, *ib.* Don Henry his brother revolting is defeated, 9. Aims at the imperial dignity, *ib.* The Moorish prince of Niebla, to preserve his liberty, parts with most of his dominions, *ib.* Makes a digest of laws called Las Partidas, *ib.* Some account of that project in Ferdinand's time, *ib.* (F). Amidst the king's fondness for science, the Moors meditate a general revolt, *ib.* Wastes Granada with fire and sword, 10. Totally defeats the Moorish princes, *ib.* A tax is laid by the pope on the clergy of Spain for the emperor of Constantinople, *ib.* Succours come from Morocco to the Moors, *ib.* Investing Xerez, he grants them favourable terms, *ib.* Limits between Castile and Portugal adjusted, and Algarve entirely ceded to the latter, *ib.* The king of Granada submits to Alonso's terms, *ib.* Remits the homage from Portugal to Leon, and this affair stated, 11, (G). A conspiracy secretly managed against him, which he rather promotes by imprudently satisfying the demands of the conspirators, *ib.* It breaks out, and they retire to the Moors, *ib.* In an assembly of the states he remits some, and moderates other taxes, *ib.* A new king of Granada set up by the Christian malcontents, *ib.* In consideration of a considerable sum he accepts the king of Granada upon the same terms that his father held that crown, *ib.* At a general assembly the malcontents are restored to favour, *ib.* Leaves his son Ferdinand regent, and sets out for France in pursuit of his claim to the empire, *ib.* Forced by the pope to renew the war with the Moors, and the quarrel in the royal family compromised, 15. Terminates the war with the Moors, that he might attack Granada, 16. Complaints of the clergy on the former account to no purpose, *ib.* Interview at Auch between him and the king of France, *ib.* Agreement concluded between him and France, *ib.* Event relating to a body of banditti, 17. In an assembly of the states the nobility differ with the king, *ib.* Calls in the Moors, and disinherits his son Sancho with a curse, *ib.* The pope exerts his power for the king, *ib.* The king of Morocco assists him with fresh forces, 18. Pardons don Sancho, and revokes all his curses, *ib.* Dies at Seville, *ib.* Character, learning, and works, with a favourable construction of his impious saying, *ib.* (I)
- Alonso I. styled emperor of Spain and Gainer of Battles, succeeds his brother Pedro, king of Navarre and Arragon, with an account of him, viii. 566. Totally defeated by the Moors, and dies without issue, *ib.* The states chuse Garcia Ramirez, grandson of Ramiro, *ib.*
- Alp Arslan succeeds his uncle in Irak, with his names, ii. 163 (D), and to the khalifat, after Kayim's death, *ib.* Miraculously relieved in a barren desert, 164. Reduces the revolted Kharazmians, *ib.* Declares his son Malek Shah his successor, and repulses the Romans at Aklarat, 165. Takes Iconium and plunders Cilicia, *ib.* Attacks and defeats Romanus at Zanra, and takes the emperor prisoner, *ib.* His speech to him when brought before him, and sets him at liberty on easy terms, 166. Generosity to him, and he conquers part of Georgia, leaving his son to reduce the rest, *ib.* Marches towards Turkestan, *ib.* Takes the fortress of Berzun, *ib.* Cruel treatment of its governor, stabbed to death by him, and his last words and character, 168. Another account somewhat different about him, i. 658—663
- Alphonso defeated and slain by Yusuf near Badajoz, i. 669
- de Portugal, 11th grand master of Malthe, is poisoned, vii. 385
- Castel St. Pedro, the Maltese admiral, his vain attempt on a fort of the Morea, vii. 503
- VIII. of Spain, favours the Jews, v. 545. Outwitted by his clergy, *ib.* (M)
- X. an encourager of the Jews, v. 556. Uses learned men from among them, *ib.* & notes
- XI. his edict against them, v. 558
- , the son of Garcia II. unjustly disinherited, and put to death by his brother, vi. 486
- , eldest prince of Kongo, baptized, vi. 474. Succeeds his father, *ib.* His zeal occasions a general conversion, 475 (X). Sends his son into Portugal, and is desirous of fresh supplies of missionaries, 476. His death and exalted character, *ib.*
- of Calabria besieges the pope in Rome, but is defeated, and the siege raised by Malatesta, x. 273. His successes in the Bergamasco and Brescian, with Lissa taken by the enemy's fleet, 274
- of Arragon defeated and taken prisoner by the Genoese off Ponza, with his treatment of the king in contempt of them, x. 572. Peace between him and the Genoese, which is soon broken, 574. Sends an army and fleet against Genoa to little purpose, 575
- , the Astrologer, king of Castile, is chosen emperor by one party, x. 715. Exercises the imperial authority in one instance, and the pope observes a strict neutrality with regard to the competitors, 716. Renounces his claim to the empire, and the consideration for this from the pope, xi. 5
- of Arragon, defeated and taken by the Genoese fleet, is sent prisoner to Milan, together with his two brothers, &c. and why generously released by Philip, xiii. 394. Progress through the Florentine state, 405. Besieges Piombino, with the great distress of the Florentines through want of provisions, and a kind of mutiny, while an infection is in Alphonso's camp, who shamefully raises the siege, 406. League between him and the Venetians, 409. Renews the war against the Genoese, 413. Gains over the pope by presents, and by providing for his three sons, 436
- duke of Calabria, his progress, and a truce accepted, xiii. 430
- succeeds Hercules I. duke of Modena, with his great character, and the pope stripping him of his dominions, with the protection given him by the emperor Charles V. xiv. 107. Is the best engineer of the age, *ib.* Reinstated in his dominions, with the pope's insincerity and the emperor's mercenary disposition, also his marriages and issue, *ib.*
- II. succeeds his father Hercules II. duke of Modena, xiv. 108. Account of him and his three marriages without any issue, *ib.* Adopts Caesar d'Este, *ib.*
- III. succeeds his father Caesar I. duke of Modena, with his marriage, short reign, and taking the habit, under the name of John Baptist, xiv. 108
- IV. or II. succeeds his father Francis I. duke of Modena, with his character, marriage, and issue, xiv. 108
- Alphonso



- Alphonso of Leon, reigns under a regency, vii. 621. Proves an excellent prince, and rebuilds the city of Leon, 622. Slain in an invasion against the Moors, ib.
- Alphonfus of Arragon, peace concluded between him and the king of France, x. 450. On the death of his father Ferdinand of Arragon, he is declared king of Sicily, 477. At the request of several barons he lands in Puglia, and he, with all his gallies, except one, taken by the Genoese, 482. Concludes an alliance with the duke of Milan against Renatus, and being set at liberty returns to Gaeta, ib. Takes Naples by storm, and Renatus leaves the kingdom, 484. Causes the barons to swear fealty to his bastard son Ferdinand, and enters Naples through a breach of the wall in a triumphal chariot, ib. Concludes a treaty with pope Eugenius, from whom he receives the investiture, secures the fidelity of the barons by intermarriages, and sends troops with a fleet to assist the pope in Ancona against Sforza, 485. Declares war against the Florentines, and on what pretence, ib. with a rupture between him and the Venetians, but a peace and alliance is concluded with them, ib. Reasons for his languor on this occasion, and Renatus' arrival in Lombardy gives a new turn, ib. The Venetians conclude a treaty with Francis Sforza and the Florentines, to which Alphonfus accedes, ib. Friendship made between him and Sforza by intermarriage, with a rupture between him and the pope, 486. His death and character, ib. He leaves Naples to his bastard son Ferdinand, with his advice to him, ib. (W).
- II. while duke of Calabria, besieges Otranto, and obliges the Turks to surrender, x. 490. Succeeds his father Ferdinand king of Naples, and receives the investiture from the pope, 493. Resigns the kingdom to his son Ferdinand, and retires in a panic to Sicily, where he lives a monk, and dies, 494 (Y).
- Al Rashid, (Harun) his expedition against the Christians, i. 409. Takes the fortress of Samalek, ib. Invades the imperial dominions, 410. Returns laden with spoils, ib. Contents of his treaty with Irene, 411. Refuses the succession, as wronging his elder brother Al Rabi, 412. Made his prime wazir, 415. Escapes being murdered by his brother, 416. Succeeds his brother in the khalifat, 417. First promotions of his friends, 418. Settles the succession among his sons, ib. Threatened with a war from the King of the Khosars, and his expeditions into the Greek empire, ib. Fondness for physicians, and severity to the revolted Yahya, 420. Frequent changes of Egyptian governors, 421. Pilgrimage to Mecca, ib. Why performed on foot, and his successful irruption into the Greek empire, 422. Surnamed Jaafar in some of his coins, ib. Grand embassy to Charlemagne, 423. Vast extent of his dominions, which are invaded by the khakan, and the cause of this war, ib. Makes a fresh pilgrimage to Mecca, 426. Divides the government of his dominions among his three sons, and his severity to his favourite Jaafar whence, ib. And to his whole family, 427. Raises an army against the Greek emperor, 428. Takes Heraclea, and defeats him, 429. Forces him to a peace, ib. Invades Phrygia, 433. Expedition against the Greek emperor with 135,000 men, ib. Invaded by the revolted Rafe' Ebn Al Leith, ib. Vast success against Nicephorus, 434. Sends his son Al Mamun against him, ib. Pilgrimage to Mecca, sudden illness and ominous dream, forced to retire to Tus, with his death and stately tomb, 435. Revenge on Bashir, the brother of Rafe', and his character, ib. Other particulars of his life, 436. Odd conference with a madman, 437. Fine advice to his son Al Amin, 438.
- Al Rim taken by the Egyptians, i. 553
- Alface, Strasburg, Basil, Friburg, and other places there, associate against Walter lord of Schwanau, whom they subdue, xi. 43
- , jurisdiction of its grand baillie still continued, xi. 49. The prefecture of the province mortgaged to the count Palatine of the Rhine, ib. Invaded by freebooters, who are expelled by the emperor at the head of his troops, 53. Ravages there and other places, 63. Commotions there and other provinces on the Rhine, ib. Put as a deposit into the hands of France, by virtue of a treaty between that crown and Sweden, xi. 238
- Allen, island of, xi. 652
- Al Shafei, his death and character, i. 451. Writings and doctrine, ib. His discipline, ib.
- Al Sharif Al Mufawi, president over Ali's descendants, i. 608
- Althash surrendered to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 299
- Altheh, (Rabbi Moses) a famed professor at Sapheta, his writings and metaphorical titles, v. 583, sub not.
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Attay, now Siba, a river in Mongolia, ii. 247
- Mountain in Mongolia, ii. 250
- Al Tay' Li'llah succeeds his father in the khalifat, i. 568. Enters Baghdad, 570. Marries his omra's daughter, 582. Deposed by Bahao'ddawla, 593. Insulted by the Deylamites, with his death, person, and character, ib.
- Altena burnt by the Swedes, xii. 204. A fresh treaty between Sweden and Denmark, with the queen's influence towards pacific measures, 358
- Al Thaher, the khalif of Egypt and Syria, dies, i. 640
- Altieri deprives the ambassadors of their immunities at Rome, x. 160
- Altin, lake, xiii. 29
- Altoviti, gonfalonier of Florence, his violent proceedings, xiii. 421
- Alt-Ransludt treaty, contents of, with the difference made by such as favour Augustus' character, xii. 603. Several difficulties about executing that treaty, which the Swedes exact to a tittle, ib.
- Altun Khan opposes Jenghiz Khan's progress, ii. 288. Defeated, 289. Poisons himself, ib.
- Tash made governor of Khowarazm, i. 621. Expedition against Al Takin, whom he defeats, but is himself mortally wounded, 638. Succeeded by his son, ib.
- Aluwhem-temur, his fatal advice to Towhan-temur, ii. 428 (D). Sudden revolt against the latter, but is delivered up and slain, ib.
- Alva (See Alba), duke of, the imperialists under him over-run the Campagna, x. 96. Appointed viceroy of Naples, 506. Invades the ecclesiastical territories, from whom the pope obtains a truce, ib. Proceedings on his return to Naples against the duke of Guise's preparations, and after repulsing the French under Guise, threatens Rome, upon which a peace is concluded with the pope, ib. His administration full of troubles, 515, and the nation oppressed for supporting the Spanish wars, and by several calamities, ib. The viceroy's magnanimity and generosity, who makes a regulation for the annual sum each corporation is to expend in the public service, 516. Recalled, with an account of the donative and free-gift for himself, and his character, ibid.
- Alva, duke of, sent with an army into the Netherlands, with the governante's remonstrance thereon, xi. 406. That Spaniard's character and commission, with his establishing a new council, ib. On the duchess of Parma's resigning he succeeds to the government, with the first acts of his power, 407. Arbitrary and cruel proceedings, with new commotions, 408. While the prince of Orange is preparing to levy an army, the edict for the tythe and twentieth penny is published by him, with the consequences, 409. Relents, but the states general declare against him in favour of Orange, with the vigorous measures taken for resisting the tyranny of Spain, 411. Barbarity in Mechlin, ib. Soothing proclamation rejected by the Hollanders, 412. His grand fleet defeated by the Zealanders, and resigning, he is succeeded by don Lewis de Requesnes, 413
- Alvarado, (Pedro de) treacherously falls on the Mexicans for their jewels, xiv. 237. Different accounts of this affair, ib. Cortez greatly shocked at this massacre, 238. Reduces the inhabitants of Milteco, 274. Assists the cazique of Tecoa-tepec, ib. Account of him, and his expedition to Peru, 303. Arrives at Cape St. Francis, lands at Caragues-bay, and proceeding he finds a rich booty in Mantu, ib. His great hardships, and the improbability in some circumstances, ib. Makes an agreement with Pizarro and Almagro, ib. Met by Pizarro, who gives him a sum above the agreement, with presents, 304. Sent with a considerable force to Cuzco, his miscarriage to what owing, with the various accounts, 314. Is defeated and taken prisoner by Almagro, 315
- , (Garcia de) his cruelty and insolence, xiv. 328. Kills Sotelo, 329. Is seized by stratagem and put to death, ib.
- defeated entirely by the rebels under Giron, xiv. 353. This to what owing, ib. Defeated by the Mexicans at Tlapaquilla, 354
- Alvarez, writer of the first history of Abissinia, vi. 160. Reflection on their manner of baptism, 242 (i). Account of their washing on Epiphany, 243. His notion confuted by the emperor, ib. Chosen chaplain to the Portuguese embassy, 257. Sent ambassador to the pope, 258 (S).
- , king of Kongo, his embassy to Portugal, vi. 479. Complaint against the Portuguese, ib. Invaded by the Gias, ib. but is assisted by the Portuguese, 480. Refuses to discover his gold mines, 481. Offers to yield them to the king, ib. New embassy to king Philip, 482. His death, ib.
- Alvarez



- Alvarez II. king of Kongo, mounts the throne, vi. 482. Embassy to king Philip, and reception of his missionaries, restores religion, and dies, 483
- III. suspected of murdering his brother, vi. 483. Disculpates himself, and sends a grand embassy to the pope, ib. Death and character, 484
- IV. his short reign, vi. 485
- V. grows jealous of the duke of Bamba, vi. 485. Defeated and taken by him, but he afterwards restores him, and is a second time defeated, and killed for his ingratitude, ib
- VI. raised to the throne of Kongo, his zeal for Christianity, and is murdered by his brother, vi. 486
- VII. his strange rise to the crown, vi. 488. Bloody reign, and is deposed by his subjects, ib.
- VIII. chosen in the room of Alvarez VII. to the throne of Kongo, vi. 488, but is deposed by the marquis of Pemba, ib.
- Alvaro, grand master of St. Jago, submits to the king, is tried, and suffers death, viii. 90. Some account of his undaunted behaviour, ib. (D). Different representations of this action, ib. No distinct account of his crimes in the sentence, ib. (E). His loss much regretted by the king, but is enriched by the forfeitures, ib.
- Alviano defeats the Germans in the valley of Cadorino, x. 287. His progress, and a desertion of the emperor's army, with his general's retreat, 288. Ordered triumphal honours at Venice, 289. His character, 292 (D). Taken, 293. Storms Verona, but is repulsed, 303. Attempts to cut off the enemy's return to Vincenza, but the Venetians, struck with a panic, are defeated, and the French dispossessed of all Italy, 305 (A). On the commencement of hostilities he totally defeats the imperialists, but is repulsed from Moran, 306. Comes, at the head of the Venetian troops, very seasonably to the assistance of Francis I. at Marignan, and the Swiss retreat in good order; with an account of the French loss, 309. Besieges Brescia, but dies, with his character and disinterestedness, 310
- Al Walid Ebn Otba refuses to take off Husein's head, i. 300. Lets Abd'allah Ebn Zobeir escape, 301, who defeats his brother Amer, ib. Made governor of Mecca, 311. Resentment against Amru, and deposed, 312
- Al Walid, the son of Abd'al Malek, succeeds him in the khalifat, i. 343. First success against the Greeks, and rebuilds the temple of Medina, ib. Builds a sumptuous one at Damascus, ib. & 344. Extends his dominions into Transoxania and other provinces, and invited by Vitiza's sons to conquer Spain, 345, which he accordingly performs, 349. Vast preparations against Constantinople, 350. Death, character, and vast conquests, ib.
- Alub Khan, his brave defence of Samarkant, ii. 302
- Alwand Beg, 12th shah of the White Sheep dynasty, ii. 704. Often defeated, and divides with Morad, 705
- Al Wathek Bi'llah succeeds his father in the khalifat, i. 465. Adheres to the Motazelites, and persecutes the Sonnites, ib. Invades Sicily, and whether, ib. Agrees to a cartel with the Christians for redemption of slaves, 467. Death, person, and character, ib. Other particulars related of him, ib.
- Al-Yas, the son of Modr, and grandfather of Khozaimah, i. 2 (B)
- Ama, his private intercourse with the empress Ki complained of in vain, ii. 420. Made prime minister, and he debauches the emperor and court, 423. Plot against Towhantemur discovered, with his trial, banishment, and death, 425
- A-ma-Van, prince, appointed governor to the young emperor Sunchi, iii. 731. His death, 736
- Amadeo, marquis of Savoy, succeeds his father Hubert, but dies without issue, xiv. 125
- II. succeeds his father Otho marquis of Savoy, and takes advantage of the emperor Henry IVth's distress, xiv. 125
- III. succeeds his father Hubert II. marquis of Savoy, who is stript of Turin by the emperor Frederick I. xiv. 125
- IV. succeeds his father Thomas I. marquis of Savoy, xiv. 126
- V. son to Thomas II. succeeds Philip of Savoy, and surnamed the Great, xiv. 126. His gallant behaviour in the isle of Rhodes, and origin of the device F. E. R. T. ib.
- VI. succeeds Aimon count of Savoy, xiv. 126
- VII. succeeds his father Amadeo VI. count of Savoy, xiv. 127
- VIII. succeeds his father Amadeo VII. in Savoy, with his purchases, xiv. 127. His further acquisitions, with his remarkable character, ib. His luxurious retreat at Ripaille, ib. (A). Chosen pope by the council of Basil, under the name of Felix V. ib. He and the council of Basil excommunicated by pope Eugene IV. on whose death he is sole pope for a few days, 128. & x. 15. Resigns the popedom to Nicholas V. with the stipulations in the duke's favour what, and his death, xiv. 128
- Amadeo IX. or the Happy, succeeds his father Lewis duke of Savoy, with his remarkable saying to a foreign minister, in answer to the latter's question about keeping of hounds, xiv. 129
- Amadmagda, a plant, its rare virtues, vi. 183
- Amadnagar besieged by the Moguls and taken, iii. 62. Taken a second time by them, 71
- Amado'ddawla dies in Shiraz, after having appointed his nephew his successor, i. 549
- 'Amado'ddin, or Omado'ddin, Zenki, founds the Atabek dynasty, i. 698. Takes possession of Mawfel and Aleppo, 699. Success in Syria, ib. Defeated by khalif Al Mostashshid, 700. Conquests in Syria, 705. Marriage with Zamorrad Khatun, whom he dismisses, ib. Cruel siege of Baalbek, ib. His conquests, and peace with Mas'ud, 706. Conquests upon the Franks, 707. Assassinated before J. bar, with his character, conquests, &c. 708
- Amæneburgh, bloody encounter there between the French and allies, xv. 627
- Amalaric, prince of the Visigoths, set aside from the throne, vii. 531. Assumes the government, ib. (H). Settles the limits of his dominions with Athalaric, 532 (I). Marries Cotilda of France, and slain for his ill-treatment of her, ibid.
- Amalfi, duchy of, its extent, x. 394 (K).
- Aman Ola, or Olla, commands under the rebel Mir Mahmud, ii. 660. Routs the Persians with his armed camels, ib. Defeats the succours sent towards Ispahan, 663. His shameful treachery to them, ib.
- Amantas, in Peru, their office, xiv. 392
- Amastris taken by the Turks, ii. 239
- Amasia reduced by Ba-Yezid, v. 167
- Amajur, his success against Isa in Syria, i. 490
- Amay, ancient king of Abissinia, vi. 252
- Amazaldi invests Toledo with a numerous army of infidels, vii. 667. Next year his troops and himself are cut to pieces, ib.
- Amazides, subdued by Salgor Shah, ii. 690 (F)
- Amazons, a canton in Monomotapa, described, vi. 373. Their valour, ib. Bloody wars with the Giagas, 380
- island, near the Ladrões, iv. 269, sub not. (C).
- river, distresses of the Spaniards in marching along it, xiv. 325
- country, described, xiv. 481. Voyages down the river of, ib. Temperature to what owing, ib. Beautiful appearance, and commodities, ib. Account of the natives, ib. Notion about the Amazons to what owing, ib. Governed by caziques, ib.
- Ambassadors, (European) highly distinguished by Timur Bek, ii. 571 (M). & 573 (Q)
- Ambassies, year of, whence so called, i. 91
- strange, between the Abissinian emperors and the popes, vi. 165. Inflame the clergy and people, 166
- Amber Malek, or Malek Amber, king of Dekan, invaded by the Mogul sultan, iii. 68. Disperses the enemy's army by a stratagem, 69. Surprises Khandish and Barar, 71. Defeated and stript by Abdol Khan, ib. Kind reception of the rebel Khurm, 75. Defeats two khans of Jehan Ghir, 76. Yet joins forces with him, 77
- Ambergrise, two sorts of, in Africa, v. 694. How found, ib. (L). Why despised by the Japanese, iv. 23, 45. Some thrown into large lumps, ib. How adulterated and discovered, ib. How used as a remedy, ib. Boats caulked with it by some islanders, 269 (C)
- Amberg, capital of the Upper Palatinate, xv. 468
- Ambiza, his great success in Spain, and death, i. 361
- Ambohitsmene province and red mountains in Madagascar, v. 94
- Amboina, the treachery of the Dutch there proved from their own writers, iv. 423. See Amboyna
- Amboinese at Batavia, their trade, &c. iv. 478
- Amboise, (Emeric de) the 39th grand master of Rhodes, vii. 426. Leagued against by Bajazet, and gives his fleet, and that of the sultan of Egypt, a repulse, 427. Takes a rich ship belonging to the Turks, ib. Defeats the Egyptian fleet, 428. His death, ib.
- , Marshal, appointed lieutenant of Genoa, x. 583
- , his conspiracy defeated, ix. 252. The cruelties following



- lowing thereupon, with the account of Villemonge, one of the sufferers, 10.
- Amboise, Cardinal de, his death and character, ix. 197. Receives the investiture of Milan for Lewis XII. of France, xi. 127
- Amboutnossi, a river and island in Madagascar, vi. 95
- Amboyna, (See Amboina) when first discovered, iv. 154. The second chief settlement of the Dutch, iv. 487
- islands about it, and subject to the Dutch, iv. 487. sub not. (Y). Why these are deprived of their clove trees, *ibid.*
- , its forces and vast advantages, iv. 488. Discovery of its gold mines, *ib.* Red-wood its beauty and advantage, *ib.* (Z). Sad state of the English factory, iv. 303, encourages the Dutch to attempt it, *ib.* The horrid massacre of the English, 304, and variety of other cruelties used against them, 305. Dreadful execution of them, *ib.* Cruel rejoicings of the Dutch on this occasion, *ib.* The scandalous proceedings of their governor and fiscal, *ib.* Detected and exploded, 308. The innocence of the English sufferers, 310. Situation of the English factory at that time, *ib.*
- Ambrose, St. his keen zeal against the Jews, v. 507
- Ambrosio, Don, 12th Christian king of Kongo, vi. 485
- Amde Jesus, 81st king of Abissinia, vi. 253
- Amazion, 73d king of Abissinia, vi. 253
- Ame, a learned disciple of R. Jochanan, v. 500
- of Savoy, afterwards pope Felix, and likewise bishop of Geneva, his history, xiv. 7. His death, and a Bible under his head when buried, with his inscription, 8. Succeeded as bishop of Geneva by his grandson, *ib.*
- , abbot of Beaumont, chosen bishop of Geneva, with his character, but that dignity is given by the pope to John of Savoy, with the duke's views in this promotion, x.v. 12
- Amelia, an island in Georgia, described, xv. 105
- Amena, Mohammed's mother, from whom descended, i. 3. Married to Abd'allah, 6. Dies, 11
- Amer Ebn Saad sent against Hosein, i. 305. Friendly message to him, is forced to fight, and he defeats him, 306. Put to death by Al Mokhtar, 326
- invells Nice, i. 363
- , or Amir, Beachcamillah, Al, succeeds his father as khalif of Egypt, i. 685. His character and reign, 686. He is assassinated by the Batanists, 691, ii. 186
- Beachcamillah, 7th khalif of Egypt, vi. 49. Defeats his revolted uncle, with his ingratitude to his wazir Abd'allah, *ib.* Assassinated by some Batanists, *ib.*
- Amerald, (Andrea de) causes the loss of Rhodes by his perfidy &c. vii. 430. Opposes the grand master's precautions, 431. Another instance of his perfidy, 435. His treachery discovered, 438. Trial and punishment, 439
- America granted to the Spaniards, x. 47. Its history, xiv. 141. Advantage of its trade, *ib.* Design of deducing it, what, 142. When first discovered, *ib.* Voyages made by the Spaniards to that end, *ib.* Its continent first discovered by Columbus, 146. Date of its first discovery by the Spaniards, *ib.* From whom it took its name, 148. Reflections on the obscurity of all histories, 372. Spanish and Portuguese settlements there, 418. Populousness at Columbus's discovery, xv. 44, and the various causes of its depopulation what, *ib.*
- , (North) the British settlements there, xiv. 484. First expedition of the English to it, *ib.* (B). Reflections on the governments of France and England there, 651. Its state, 654. Plan of operations there for the French, 656. Bad management of the English government, 673. General view of the French and English government there, 686. Disgraceful operations of the English there by sea and land, 712. British measures for carrying on the war there, 715. The commanders there, *ib.* Meeting of their governors at New-York, xv. 140. Proceedings there, *ib.* War there through the encroachments of the French, 620. Reprisals by the English and success, *ib.* They take the French forts on the isthmus between Nova Scotia and Acadia, *ib.* Braddock's defeat and death in his way to Fort du Quesne, 621. Operations and success of the French, *ib.*
- American savages, their make, xv. 60
- Americans, what nations among them had symbols to express their ideas, xiv. 421
- Americus, his voyage with Alonso de Ojeda to America, xiv. 147. See Ojeda
- Amhara, a kingdom in Abissinia, described, and its peculiar dialect, vi. 173
- Amherst, General, his operations in Canada, xiv. 715. Garisons Ticonderoga, which the French abandoned, *ib.* as
- as also Crown Point, planning a stronger fort there, *ib.* His glorious progress in Canada, takes Isle Royale, &c. and, after a dangerous voyage, lands at Montreal, which capitulates, 725. Passage in his letter in praise of the officers and troops, 726. Reduces Canada, xv. 625
- Amid (Amida) taken by the khalif Al Mo'taded, i. 501
- Amida, one of the chief deities of Japan, iv. 7. Fabulous history of, *ib.* (H). A pretended apparition of him, 53
- , or Hamida, prince of Tunis, revolts against his father, vii. 325. Raises false reports against him, 326. Defeats and takes him prisoner, *ib.* Deprives him of his eyes and liberty, 327. Refused entrance into Tunis, but is recalled by the Tuniseans, *ib.*
- Amiens, a conference there between Francis and cardinal Wolsey, x. 327
- Amimor, a disciple of R. Asce, finishes the Babylonish Talmud, v. 512
- Amin Malek submits to the Mongls, ii. 303. Assists Jala-lo'ddin against them, 315, also at the battle of Birwan, *ib.* Fatal contest with the other generals, 516. Conduct at the battle of Indus, 517
- , khalif, dethroned by his brother Mamun, v. 525
- Ebn Mohammed's death, i. 553
- Amir, sultan of Ephesus, ravages Thrace, v. 156. Singular generosity to Kantakuzenus, 157. Kind interview with him, and success and narrow escape, *ib.* Strict fidelity to him, *ib.* Valour at the castle of St. Peter, and death, 158 (T). Generosity and success in his favour, *ib.* Design against Constantinople frustrated, and suspected of poisoning young Soleyman, *ib.* Kills a rash patriarch at the altar, and kind advice to Kantakuzenus, 159
- Amkas, or great mogul's audience hall, described, iii. 45
- Amnon, Rabbi, a learned Jew, his pretended sufferings and miraculous cure, v. 569
- Amogavares assist the emperor Michael, v. 148. Defeated by the Turks, 151. Treachery to the Greeks, and grow successful and formidable, *ib.*
- Amol, where situate, ii. 527. The cisterns emptied by Timur Bek, *ib.* with the unparalleled carnage there, 528
- Amorium in Phrygia, taken by the Moslems; but re-taken, i. 290
- , Hagan repulsed before it, i. 409
- , besieged by khalif Motasem, i. 462. Betrayed to him by a Christian apostate, and its sad catastrophe, *ib.*
- Amoy-A-Mwy, or Emoy, a port in China, described, iii. 533
- Amman Ebn Yezid his zeal for the house of Abbas, i. 377
- Ammar Ebn Yaser beat almost to death before Othman, i. 254
- , or Amur, the Tatar, defeats Malek Masur, submits and is murdered by him, ii. 240
- Ebn Yaser slain at the battle of Seffin, i. 268
- , the Magrebian admiral, his descent on Calabria, i. 553
- Ammarah Ebn Sahal made governor of Cufa, but rejected by the Cufans, i. 260
- Ammonius, a tumultuous monk, hanged at Alexandria, v. 510. Untimely zeal of the bishop, *ib.*
- Amptsmann, and Ampt, in Denmark, what, xi. 660
- Ampfala left governor of Tigre, vi. 286. Narrow escape from Jaacob and his banditti, *ib.* (Q)
- Ampura, province, the worship there, what, xiv. 397
- Amran, emir of the Moslems, murdered at Palermo, i. 513
- Amru Ebn Al As, embraces Islamism, and sent ambassador to the king of Ethiopia, i. 77
- , one of Mohammed's fourteen wives, divorced for her apostacy, i. 116
- succeeds Said in the command of the khalif's forces, i. 137. Ill success in Palestine, 182. Sent to reduce Egypt, 210. Marches into Palestine, 222. Hath a conference with Constantine, *ib.* and ordered to march to Cæsarea, 224. Seizes the supply sent thither by Constantine, and makes himself master of the city, 226. Undermined by Othman at the khalif's court, 233. Continues his march into Egypt, and takes Farma, after a month's siege, *ib.* Takes the city of Mefr, and destroys it, contrary to articles, 235. Drives the Greeks out of Keram into Alexandria, 236. Lays siege to that city, *ib.* Is taken prisoner, and how saved by his slave Wordan, and takes it by storm, 237. The Greeks take it, but is retaken by him, *ib.* & 250. Sends the khalif an account of his success, as also of the riches, grandeur, &c. thereof, 237. Ordered by the khalif to destroy its noble library, 239. Sends some forces into the western parts of Africa, 240. Stript of his government of Egypt, 250. Is restored to his government, and recovers Alexandria from the Christians, 251. Swears allegiance to Moawiyah against Ali, 267. Chosen arbitrator



- arbitrator between Ali and Moawiyah, 269. Decides against Ali, 270. Conquers Egypt, 272. Narrowly escapes being murdered by a Kharajite, 275. Made viceroy of Egypt, 286. His death and high character, 287
- Amru Ebn Jarmuz strikes off Zobeir's head, and brings it to Ali, i. 266. Reproved by him, and kills himself, ib.
- Ebn Hegai defeats the Cufans at Kerbela, i. 306
- Ebn Said, a private enemy to Yezid, i. 311. Deprived of the government at Mecca, and received into favour by Yezid, but refuses the command of his forces against Medina, 313. Left governor of Damascus, 328. Seizes it for himself, and put to death by the khalif, 329
- Ebn Leit succeeds his brother in Irak, i. 492
- Amsterdam, island of, discovered and described, v. 18
- , three first Jewish synagogues there, v. 611
- , a fort on the Gold Coast, described, vi. 670
- , city of, declares for the friends of the prince of Orange, with the stipulations in the treaty, which is soon broken, xi. 420. Tumult there, quelled by prince Henry, 515. Besieged by the count of Nassau, who had received the prince of Orange's orders, 554. Prepares for a defence, and some of the sluices are opened, 555. The prince of Orange proposes an accommodation, and the motives of the magistrates for agreeing to it, with the terms, ib. Demands of the populace posited up there, 618. It and other places declare against a levy of 16,000 men, and the prince's unconstitutional scheme, by a plurality of voices, causes violent commotions, 631. Protests against the levy of 16,000 men, ib. Insurrections there, occasioned by a tax on burials, 646, but the edict is repealed, 647
- , (New) taken from the Dutch by Sir Robert Car, and their honourable capitulation, xiv. 539. Afterwards called New York, 540
- Amu, by the Arabs called Jihun, a river in Kharazm, described, ii. 712. Change of its bed, ib.
- Amul Khoja khan of Little Bukharia, ii. 467
- Amunah invited into Karazm, ii. 723. Excursions into Khorassan, ib. The dominions of his descendants, ib. Rebels against Hassan Kuli Khan, ib. and puts him to death, 724. His descendants destroy Burga's posterity, and recover Karazm, 725. They chuse Khal Soltan the khan of it, 727
- Amur, river of, xiii. 29. Its principal lakes, ib. Account of its site and fish, whose teeth are the fossil ivory found in in Siberia, 186 (Z)
- Amurat, by the Turks called Morad, his reign, death, character, &c. according to the Greek historians, v. 165, 166
- Amurath, Soltan, invading Bulgaria, sues for peace, with advantageous conditions for Hungary, xi. 94; but resuming his arms contrary to his oath, he loses his life, ib.
- III. his general ravaging as far as Carniola, is defeated and slain by the emperor's brother Ernestus, xi. 176
- Amut, its strong fortrefs, taken by the Assassins, i. 671
- Anabaptists. See Sacramentarians
- in Germany, great disturbances by, who are reduced with loss, x. 75. Their disorders in Munster under their king John, xi. 147
- , some German, on the king's absence, arrive at Stockholm, with their disturbances there, xii. 277
- Anaclete is acknowledged pope by Roger, whom he creates king of Sicily, ix. 589. His death, 590. See Innocent II.
- Anamaboa, island on the sea, described, v. 24
- , the English fort at, vi. 669. Insolence of the natives to the English, with the fort and country described, 670
- Anas Ebn Malec, one of the authors of the Mohammedan traditions, i. 119
- Anastasiu IV. succeeding pope Eugenius III. confirms the archbishop of Magdeburgh, ix. 594. His death, ib.
- Anatajan, or St. Joachim's Island, one of the Mariannes, iv. 230
- Anatolia described, ii. 197. Invaded by the Turks, 236. Quite over-run by them, 239. Designed by Timur to be given to Bayezid, yet ruined by Timur's emirs, 564
- Anazarba, a well-fortified city, taken by John Comnenus, ii. 216
- Anayer Keray, 32d khan of Krim, put to death, ii. 451
- Anbar subdued to the khalifs, i. 135
- Ancas left governor of Karazm by Idchas, ii. 582
- Ancestors revered after their death in China, ii. 365
- palace built by Hu-pu-lay, ii. 365. Halls built by the same, 366
- Ancon Mahmud generously refuses the crown of Melinda, vii. 350 (E). Short defence against the Portuguese admiral, 352. Made king of Quiloa by the Portuguese admiral, 353. The grand ceremony of his coronation, ib. (F). Relinquishes the crown to the lawful heir, ib. A difference between Marmul and Olorio about that transaction, ib. (G)
- Ancre, Marquis de, out of favour with the queen, with his advice to the princes, but recovers his credit and made a marshal, ix. 349. Receives a severe check from the parliament of Paris, 354. His house and his secretary's pulled down by the mob, on the prince of Conde's confinement, 355. How deceived as if all was at his command, ib. Believing himself secure, gives a loose to his temper, and on ill terms with Luynes the king's favourite, who contrives his ruin, 356. A retreat not patiently borne by the marshal, with his strange answer, but he is arrested, and slain on making resistance, 357. Total change follows, ib. Process of his lady Galigay, who falls with fortitude, and the queen-mother exiled to Blois, ib. All d'Ancre's employments and estates bestowed on Luynes, with some singular events following d'Ancre's death, ib.
- , Marshal d', partition of his vast estates between the pope and France, x. 135
- Ancyra taken and burnt by khalif Motasem, i. 461. Reduced by Soleyman, v. 161. By Isoltan Morad, 163
- Taken by the Moslems, i. 252
- Andaca deposes Euric king of the Suevi, but defeated by the Visigoths, vii. 546
- Andalusia, New, granted to Ojeda, xiv. 153
- , a province of Terra Firma, described, and its produce, xiv. 451. Its capital, ib.
- Andaman, island in Siam, inhabited by canibals, iii. 320
- Anderab, a city of Balkh, described, ii. 456
- Anderson, Commodore, cashiered for his bad conduct, xv. 296
- Andes, or Cordilleras, mountains, severity of the cold there, xiv. 307
- , inhabitants of, man-eaters and man-sacrificers, xiv. 372. Their brutality on such occasions, ib.
- , extraordinary length of them, xiv. 470
- Ando, an eminent Christian senator, put to death in Ethiopia, vi. 309 (Z)
- Andrada, Commodore, his successful arrival in China, iv. 159, and lucky escape out of it, 160
- Andre, St. sent with a petition to parliament from the admiral in favour of the Hugonots, and resolution thereupon against them, ix. 255. This softened by another edict from the queen-mother, 256
- Andrea, St. a port in Kochin, and its famous mud bay, iii. 165
- , declaration published by that cardinal in the name of Isabella, xi. 453
- Andrew the Greek, sent ambassador to the khalif, i. 289. His bold answer to him, ib.
- , St. a river on the Ivory Coast of Guinea, and adjacent country, vii. 2
- , St. that archbishop's cause determined, ix. 605
- , St. made a metropolitan see, x. 37
- , husband to queen Jane, crowned king of Naples by the pope, with the consideration from Lewis of Hungary, x. 460. Basely murdered at Averla, with his most cruel treatment, 461 (P). Strict enquiry made after the murderers, and their punishment, ib. The queen delivered of Carobert, and the murderers excommunicated, ib.
- , king of Hungary, rebuilds churches, marries his daughter to the prince of Moravia, and reduces Aultria, xv. 383. Divides that kingdom between himself and his brother Bela, with the dissention on the former's marriage, ib. Invaded by the emperor Henry III. who is obliged to make peace, ib. Andrew defeated and slain by his brother Bela, and the occasion, ib.
- II. resolves on an expedition to the Holy Land, and contradictory accounts of his going, xv. 389 (C). Trusts the government to Bancbanus, who murders the queen in the absence of the king, but is acquitted on his trial, with contradictory accounts here, 390 (D). Quits the Holy Land and brings home some relics, ib. Marries a princess of Este in his way, with the austere life of his daughter, ib. His death, ib.
- III. the Venetian, chosen king of Hungary amidst several competitors, xv. 393. The pope favours Charles Martel, ib. who continues in possession of part of the kingdom, and the co-rival kings die, ib.



- Andria, duke of, his revolt, x. 467. Flies to Avignon, and his troops quit the kingdom, *ib.*
- Andronicus, Angelus, his shameful flight from the Turks, ii. 221
- , the son of Michael Paleologus, sent against the Turks, ii. 239. Rebuilds the city of Tralles, and is deceived by a false oracle, *ib.* Succeeds his father in the empire, 240. Strives to repress the Turks, 241. v. 147. Kind reception of Kuximpaxis, 148. Ineffectual to secure Bithynia from the Turks, *ib.* Invades the Othman dominions, *ib.* Visited by sundry princes, and meets with Amir's fleet in Samothrace, 156, but declines engaging the Othman, and makes an alliance with Sarkhan, *ib.*
- , successor to Paleologus, his attachment to the Greek ceremonies, ix. 648
- Andros, Sir Edmund, made governor of New England, xiv. 521. Takes the field against the Indians, but without success, 522. Several accusations against him, *ib.* His arbitrary proceedings, *ib.* Complaints against him sent to England, *ib.* His proceedings on the news of the Revolution, *ib.* His creatures are secured and thrown into jail, *ib.* Letter written to him by the principal inhabitants, and displaced, 523
- , governor of New York, his conduct with regard to the Iroquois and French, xiv. 629
- , governor of Virginia, xv. 373. Account of his administration, and repealing the cohabitation-act, &c. *ib.* Great objection to him what, 374, and government good in general, with his recall, *ib.*
- , Sir Edmund, governor of Maryland, and his proceedings, xv. 108. Dies, *ib.*
- Anegada, account of that island, with its humming-bird and painted crabs, xv. 237
- Angazia, one of the Commorra islands, described, with its trade, aristocratic government, &c. vi. 116
- Angive island, where seated, and seized by the Portuguese, iv. 121
- Angelos, (tos) province, and capital of Tlascalala, described, xiv. 438. Vast revenue of its cathedral, and riches of the province to what owing, *ib.*
- Angels, their existence and variety asserted in the Koran, with their names and offices, i. 156
- , good and bad, worshipped in India, iii. 206. Their two kinds, *ib.*
- Anghiari, the consequence of that battle to both parties what, xiii. 401
- Angola, kingdom of, described, vi. 489. Extent and boundaries, *ib.* River, particularly the Coanza, provinces, and soil, *ib.* Still unconverted, the kingdom how divided, and chief provinces on the south of the Coanza, 490. On the north of that river, 495. One entirely subject to the Portuguese, 496. Ancient and present government, 497. Commerce with Kongo, and chiefly of slaves, *ib.* Encouraged by the Portuguese, *ib.* Dysentery its sad effects and various cures, *ib.* (E). Their military discipline, 498. Their way of fighting practised by their forces, *ib.* Poor discipline and warlike instruments, 499. Sad state of Christianity, *ib.* Zeal of the new missionaries, *ib.* Erected into a bishopric, *ib.* The Angolan language, 500. Funerals, and inhuman customs used at them, *ib.* Scandalous traffic, four different ranks among them, and inhuman butchery of victims, 501. Chief mountains, and snowy ones, *ib.* Tyranny of the Portuguese over their vassals, *ib.* Low and contemptible state of the Angolic kings, 512, 534
- Angolic kingdom reduced under the government of the Portuguese, vi. 535
- Angot kingdom in Abyssinia ruined, vi. 172
- Angoulesme, account of the house of, and of Louisa the last countess and the king's mother, ix. 204 (A)
- Angoy, kingdom of, in Loango, described, vi. 541. Made independent, *ib.* Its bay and port, with the fertility of the soil, and an account of the natives, 542, and their customs, *ib.*
- Angra, capital of the Azores, described, vi. 155. A royal magazine of sea-stores, 156.
- de los Reves captainry, xiv. 479
- Angria, the famed Indian pirate, his rise and success, iii. 149. Repulsed before Mangalore, 161. Destroyed by Watton and Clive, iv. 372
- Anguien, Duke de, entirely beats the Spaniards at Rocroi, ix. 299. Commands in Germany, 300. He, together with Grammont and Turenne, beats the Germans at Nortlingen, 416. Assisted by Van Tromp's fleet, he takes Dunkirk, 420. Dispute about the superintendency of the
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- marine, which post, on his demanding it, the queen takes to herself, *ib.* Inherits his father's title of Conde, with his vast fortune and polls, 421
- Anguilla, account of that English island, xv. 237. A few militia repulse 1000 French from it, with loss, *ib.*
- Anhar, al, taken by al Bafasiri, i. 652
- Anican, English fort on the Gold Coast described, vi. 669
- Anjengo, English settlements there, iv. 387
- Anjou, Duke of, escaping from England, where he was an hostage, refuses to return at his father's desire, ix. 106
- , Duke of, under his regency all public affairs run into confusion, and the king's education neglected, ix. 117. While the English besiege Nantes, the duke of Bretagne treats with France, *ib.* The people of Languedoc and Paris punished in their purses for insurrections, *ib.* Wastes every shilling of his treasure to get possession of Naples, and dies, *ib.*
- , Duke of, son of the former, acknowledged king of Naples, ix. 118
- , Duke of, sent by the queen-mother to command the army, with the character of his officers, ix. 256. Elected king of Poland, and concludes a pacification with Rochelle, 269. His reluctance to quit France, *ib.* Succeeds to the French crown, 271. See Henry III. of France
- , Duke of, brother of the former, invited by the catholics of the Low Countries, ix. 276. Comes into the Netherlands, 277, xi. 421. Elected sovereign of the Netherlands, though the real power is in the prince of Parma, 425 (A). Sails for England in suit of queen Elizabeth, ix. 277. xi. 426. Returning to the Low Countries, he is honoured with fine titles but little authority, ix. 278. Public entry and investiture at Antwerp in the government of the provinces, and takes Alost, xi. 427. His private negotiations with Spain disappointed by the prince of Orange, ix. 279. A conspiracy against him, Orange, and d'Espinoi, discovered, xi. 427. His situation and design, *ib.* His attempt on Antwerp frustrated, 428. Returns to France, *ib.* where he is treated with contempt by the king his brother, ix. 277. Reconciled to the king, 278. His death, xi. 428, a misfortune to the nation, ix. 281
- , Renatus, duke of, arrives at Genoa, with his reception there as king of Naples, x. 573. Takes the castles commanding Naples with the assistance of the Genoese, who enter into an alliance with pope Eugenius against Alphonso, *ib.*
- , Duke of, a will made in his favour by the king of Spain, viii. 349. ix. 480
- An-kan, 28th emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52
- Anketura revolts against Timur Bek, ii. 520. Defeated by Mirza Omar, 522
- Ankoo, 21st emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52
- Ankora, or Ankuria, taken by Timur Bek, ii. 563
- Ankuans, a tribe of atheists, destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 530
- Annabon island described, vi. 118
- Annah, capital of Arabia Deserta, its situation and strength, ii. 532 (I)
- Anna Comnena's history confused, i. 681 (O)
- Annapolis, attempt on it frustrated, xiv. 496, also a second time under Vivier, *ib.* and a third and fourth time under M. de Ramsay, *ib.*
- , its governor's scheme for driving the French out of part of Nova Scotia how frustrated, xiv. 497
- , the capital of Nova Scotia, described, xiv. 498
- Royal, where, and whence so called, with the expence of its conquest to the English, xiv. 689
- , the capital of Maryland, described, xv. 110
- Annates of benefices, a perpetual bull for reserving them refused by the English clergy, with an account of this bull, ix. 699 (W). Abolished by the council of Basil, but opposed by the pope's legate to no effect, x. 9
- Annemonta, the ape, an inferior deity of India, iii. 206. Its stature, 208
- Ann, Queen's, point, its English fort described, vi. 668
- , Queen, her firmness obliges the Dutch to consent to the conferences at Utrecht, ix. 502. Lewis's good situation, with an account of the plenipotentiaries, *ib.* Particular instructions from the queen by Harley, and why the negotiations are suspended, with Lewis's alternative, *ib.* St. John's answer to it, and king Philip's determination puts an end to all, 503. On the emperor's death, and other motives, the queen determines on a peace with France, xi. 347. The imperial ministers shew that this event should effect no change in the views of the confederates, on some of whom their arguments prevail, *ib.* The queen signs preliminaries, 348. Declaration of
- 4 Y
- archduke



- archduke Charles and the elector of Hanover to her, *ib.*  
 Withdraws her forces from Portugal and Catalonia, 360  
 Ann Petrowna, the marriage of the duke of Holstein with that prince, *ib.* 259  
 —, Empress, brings her niece of Mecklenburgh to court, and marries her to Anthony Ulric of Brunswick Bevern, with the only error in her government, that of confiding in strangers to the great disgust of the Russians, *ib.* 265  
 —, Iwanowna, the regular succession of Russia is broken through by declaring that duchess of Courland empress, in preference to her elder sister Catherine duchess of Mecklenburgh, *ib.* 265. A short view of her spirited and wise reign, *ib.* Names John of Brunswick her successor, appointing a regency, with Biron her great favourite at their head, 266. Her death, *ib.*  
 —, Fort St. in Hudson's-bay, an attempt on it by the French miscarries, *ib.* 688  
 Anneke, (Januarius) a gunsmith, made chief of the rioters in Naples, with his character, whose government is quickly detested, *ib.* 522. Enters into a negotiation with don John, 524. Is condemned and executed, *ib.*  
 Anossi, a province in Madagascar, described, *ib.* 88. Gold mines and inhabitants, *ib.* 89  
 Ansars, tribe of, join with Mohammed, *ib.* 41. United by him with the Mohajerin, 47. Bravery and fidelity at the battle of Bedr, 51. Discontented at the division of the spoil, 52. Fall out with the Mohajerin, 65, and with Mohammed about the spoil, 89. Some of their chiefs reproved for not coming to Tabuc, 95. Receive Mohammed's last orders, 106. Allowed in the number of his companions, 118. Challenge the choosing of a new khalif, 132. Hate Ali, yet elect him to the khalifat, *ib.* 258  
 Anscharius, first preacher of Christianity in Sweden, and his success, *ib.* 227. Is sacrificed, *ib.*  
 Anselm, why banished the kingdom of England, with an embassy to the pope and his answer, *ib.* 577  
 Ansgarius, bishop of Bremen, propagates Christianity in Denmark, *ib.* 688  
 Anziko, kingdom of, where situate, *ib.* 572. Government, *ib.* Religion and inhuman customs, *ib.*  
 Anson, (Commodore George), his expedition into the South Seas, *ib.* 104. *ib.* 579. Strength and number of his ships, *ib.* Arrives at St. Catherine's in South America, *ib.* Orders to his captains before his departure from that island, *ib.* Danger from Pizarro's squadron, and resolution in a council to attack Baldivia, *ib.* Passes the Straights of Le Maire, with dreadful storms at Cape Horn, reaches Juan Fernandez, and great relief found there, 580. Vast distress of his squadron, *ib.* Remarkable history of captain Cheap in the Wager, 581, with his wonderful escape, *ib.* Progress of the commodore, who resolves to fall down to Panama, *ib.* Takes several prizes, 582. Is encouraged to attempt the taking of Paia, 583, the execution of which he commits to lieutenant Brett, in boats, *ib.* who soon performs it with great courage and conduct, *ib.* Booty taken there, and the town set on fire, *ib.* *ib.* 456. His further proceedings, *ib.* 584. Prizes taken by the Gloucester, *ib.* The commodore intends to cruise for the Manilla galleon, 585. His crew how encouraged, *ib.* Destroys all his ships except the Centurion, and the reason, 586. Sails from Macao in quest of the Acapulco ship, *ib.* 123. Speech to his men, and gets sight of the galleon, 124. Engages her, 125. Detail of the fight, *ib.* Takes her, 126. *ib.* 586. The value of the prize, *ib.* 126. *ib.* 586. Sails with her to Canton, *ib.* 127. Audience and reception from the Chinese viceroy, 129. Sails for Europe, 130. Arrival in England, 131. Reflections on this expedition, and its advantage to England, *ib.* *ib.* 586, and on Pizarro's catastrophe, *ib.* 133. Defeats the French fleet, *ib.* 698  
 Anta, kingdom of, on the Gold Coast, described, *ib.* 648. Its villages of note, 649  
 Antap, or Antapa, taken and abandoned by Timur Bek, *ib.* 555  
 Antaratius, in Syria, besieged in vain by the Arabs, *ib.* 340  
 Antavare river in Madagascar, *ib.* 94  
 Antediluvians conveyed astronomy to the new world, *ib.* 660. Had probably some kind of writings, 662. Their best records preserved by Noah, *ib.*  
 Anthropophagi of Africa, remarks on the reality of such monsters, *ib.* 570, and their impious tribe of priests, 571. Others in South America, *ib.* 275  
 Antiani restored in Bologna, *ib.* 585  
 Antibes, attempt of count Brown on it, but obliged to retreat, *ib.* 667. *ib.* 618  
 Antigua, account of that island and population by the English, *ib.* 255. Why invaded by the French, and capitulates, 256. Dampier's account of the reason, with observations on it, *ib.* Flourishing state, and to whom owing, *ib.* Dreadful earthquake, and the Indians availing themselves of those calamities, with Byam's deserving character, *ib.* Codrington's particular services, 257. The French depredations, and reprisals thereon, with the conquest of Mari-galante, *ib.* Thornhill relieved, with the zeal of the inhabitants against the French, *ib.* The island flourishes, *ib.* Plot of the negroes there, 262. Discovered, and the ring-leaders punished, 263. Topographical description, and Natural history, *ib.* Quantity of sugar, number of inhabitants, and parishes, *ib.*  
 Antioch betrayed by Youkinna to the Moslems, *ib.* 219. Taken by the crusaders, *ib.* 177. Besieged by Kawam'od-dawlat Kodbuka, and the siege raised, *ib.* Betrayed to Soleyman, 204. Destroyed by an earthquake, *ib.* 345. By another, 472. Taken and plundered by the Greeks, 566. Taken by them, 572. Submits to Basilus, 577. Besieged by Sclerus, *ib.* Conquered by Malek Shah, 665. Taken by the crusaders, 682. Besieged by Kodbuka, and in great distress, *ib.*  
 Anti-popes, several chosen successively, *ib.* 577  
 Antoine of Berry, who became regent of the college, and minister of a church near Geneva, account of and condemnation, *ib.* 45. Charge against him, and is sentenced to be strangled and burnt, *ib.*  
 Antoku, 81st emperor of Japan, dethroned, and drowned, *ib.* 58  
 Antoninus Pius, a great friend to the Jews, *ib.* 495. Legends about his privacy with their doctors, *ib.* (Q)  
 Antonio, king of Kongo, a bloody prince, *ib.* 486. His contempt of religion, and censured by the whole church, 487 (F). Hatred to the church and Portuguese, *ib.* Breaks out into a war, and is deluded by his heathen priests, 488 (G). Slain, and his head carried in triumph to Loando, *ib.*  
 —, Don, defeated as he entered the port of the Azores, and the prisoners all beheaded or hanged, *ib.* 269  
 —, Don, prior of Crato, gets himself proclaimed king of Portugal in a tumult, *ib.* 490. His forces routed by Alva for king Philip, 491. Antonio, after long disguise, is obliged to quit Portugal, which wholly submits to Philip, *ib.* Fruitless attempts made for him by England, 492. His death, with an account of him and his issue, 493  
 —, Cardinal, advanced by Mazarine, *ib.* 416  
 —, lord of Faenza, befriends the Florentines, who, by a public decree, declare him their chief ally, and are defeated, with their rapacity, and disregard to Piccinino's complaints, *ib.* 379  
 —, Port, in Jamaica, described, *ib.* 335  
 Antony, St. island of, described, *ib.* 129  
 —, St. fort of, *ib.* 646  
 —, St. canonized, *ib.* 628  
 —, succeeding his brother Francis in Parma, has a dispensation to marry the latter's daughter, but has no issue by her, *ib.* 646. Death and will what, 648  
 Ants, white, a pernicious kind in Japan described, *ib.* 44  
 —, several kinds in Kongo, *ib.* 437. Used for executing great criminals, *ib.* (U). Dangerous to travellers, 438  
 Antwerp, siege of, and erecting a wooden bridge at Callo, *ib.* 430. Submits to king Philip II. and whole families retire to Amsterdam, 431  
 Anudin river described, *ib.* 29  
 Anville, Duke de, account of his expedition to North America, and plan of operations, *ib.* 697. Is unfortunate and dies, *ib.*  
 Anujur succeeds his father in Egypt, *ib.* 547. Kept under by the regent Casur, *ib.*  
 Anusba Mahamed Bahadr, his success and bravery, *ib.* 745. Defeats Abdo'laziz Khan, *ib.* Succeeds Abu'l Ghazi as 17th khan of the Uzbeks, 746. Makes a league against Persia, *ib.*  
 Anushirwan subdues the country of Abtela, and where situate, *ib.* 136, and that of Balkh, *ib.*  
 —, Khan suffers his governors to tyrannize over his subjects, *ib.* 434  
 Anushtakin, his success against Aleppo, with his extraction and character, *ib.* 648  
 Apaches, a people of New Mexico, described, *ib.* 429. Massacre of the Spaniards, *ib.*  
 Apaktalpa, his dreadful punishment for oppression, *ib.* 571  
 Apalacha, English settlement there, *ib.* 83  
 Apalache, village of, described, *ib.* 65  
 Apalaches savages, account of them, *ib.* 44



- Apam, the Dutch fort on the Gold Coast, vi. 671
- Ape, a divining one, kept by Jehan Ghir, and a surprising trial of her, iii. 82
- , tooth of one, worshipped by the Peguers, iii. 247.
- Taken and burnt by the Portuguese viceroy, 264. A counterfeit substituted for it, and a third trumped up against the other two by the king of Kandeia, 265
- Apellcassem seizes on Nice after Soleyman's death, ii. 206. His shipping burnt by the emperor, ib. Is invited to his court, and amused by him, ib. Goes to bribe the Persian sultan, and slain by his orders, ib.
- Api-Rajah ascends the throne of Siam, iii. 359. His signal defeat of Maupa Rajah, with his death, ib.
- II. succeeds his brother Api, iii. 359. Cruelty to his eldest son, and succeeded by his next, who is insulted by the Japanese slaves, ib. Embassy to Goa, with the reception of one from thence, ib. His character, cruelty, &c. 361. Generosity, ib. Death, ib.
- Apocryphal books of the Jews when probably written, v. 498
- Apokaukas, his ill offices against Kantakuzenus rejected by Amir, v. 157. Invidious slanders effectually repelled, 158. Slain in the public prison of Constantinople, ib.
- Appenzel, account of it, and alliance with the Swiss cantons, xv. 447
- Appleton, Captain, his squadron from Leghorn escapes admiral Cats, xi. 563
- Apraxin, General, advantages gained by him in Ingria, xiii. 213
- Aps, Emengard de, 9th grand master of Malta, vii. 384
- Apulia and Calabria, great disturbance there, the people of which are assisted by the Normans against the Greeks, and the emperor invited into Italy, ix. 553. Account of it, 583 (T)
- , by whom formed into a principality, x. 667
- Apurimac, an ingenious contrivance of an inca for crossing that river with an army, xiv. 386. Its effect on the enemy shewn by their submission, ib.
- Aquamboe, its great kingdom described, and despotic government, vi. 673
- Aqui Titu, a Peruvian general, his progress in reducing people to his brother the inca, xiv. 388. Abolishes unnatural lust in the valley of Hacari by rigorous laws, ib. Returns to Cuzco, and appointed regent, ib.
- Aquila, his new version of the sacred books, v. 497 (Y)
- , a revolution, and a peace concluded there, xiii. 433
- Aquilar, a Spanish prisoner in Yucatan, recovered by Cortez and his adventures, xiv. 177
- Aquileia, bishop of, taken prisoner, x. 197
- Aquitaine, by whom re-annexed to France, viii. 669. How given to Charles son of the emperor Lewis, 695
- Arab, an infamous one, his stratagem for evading his due punishment, i. 217
- Arabshah, the son of Fulad, where settled, and his successors, ii. 706
- Arabia visited with a grievous mortality, i. 232, and a dreadful famine, 240
- , the wali of, his treachery to the Persians, ii. 660, 663, 664. Doomed to death in vain by the new shah, 665
- Arabian year, how computed, i. 46, and months, 47
- era, how computed before the Hejira, i. 47
- women, their valour, i. 142. A fresh instance, 146.
- Rally the Moslems twice or thrice at the battle of Yermok, 202, and help to gain the victory, ib.
- Arabic tongue, chiefly used in Africa, vi. 668. How preserved, ib.
- Arabs bad chronologists, i. 7. Why so easily drawn into Mohammed's religion, 17. Their state at that time, 19. When first infected with idolatry, 85. Submit for the most part to Mohammed, 91. Embassy and submission of five of their princes, ib. Their calendar reformed by Mohammed, 104. Privileges obtained for them by him, 121—126. Revolt against Abu Becr, 133. Reduced by Khaled Ebn Walid, ib. and the number of other Arabs abjure Islamism, ib. Held four months of the year as sacred, 180. Declare for Ali after Othman's death, i. 258. Their murmurs suppressed by Moawiyah, 297. Defeated by the Christians in Syria, 408. Make a two-fold expedition against them, 409. Defeat the Imperialists by sea and land, 419. Defeated near Ephesus, 423. Driven out of Phrygia, ib. Those called Al. Mosafia expelled the khalifat, 523
- of Abadan plundered by Timur Bek, ii. 561
- Marabouts, their wretched character, v. 668
- , Christian, assist to defend Aleppo against the Moslems, i. 210. What tribes are Christians, 213
- Arabs of Maad invade Assyria and Harran, i. 404. Cantons and places seized by them, and their horrid impieties, ib.
- Arabs invade Sicily, i. 430. Their yearly commerce with other nations, iv. 96. Propagate their trade and religion in India, 101. When first obstructed by the Portuguese, 102
- , Okailite, seize on Mawfel, i. 591
- , Khaffajite, ravage Cusa, &c. i. 617. Put to flight, ib.
- , Mazjadite, bloody war against the Dobaisites, i. 618. Defeated with loss to the latter, ib.
- of Maskat, who and where situate, ii. 656 (P). Revolt against Husseyn Shah, and their fleet against Persia, ib. (S)
- , wild, their extraction and classes, v. 669. Why hateful to each other, ib. The manner of living of the town Arabs, ib. The wandering esteemed the most noble class, ib. Stiled plunderers by the prophet, ib. Their camps, tents, &c. 670. Dress of their Women, ib. and excellent character, 671. Complexion, &c. ib. Keep exact genealogies of their mares, ib. Paint their faces, 673. Common diet, ib. Hospitality, ib. Traffic, physic, and poetry, with their neglect of arts and sciences, ib. Gross superstitions, 674 (P). Inoculate for the small-pox, 675. Great skill in arithmetic, ib. Governed by their cheyks, or chiefs, ib. Manner of fighting, 676. Women accompany the men in their wars, ib. (Q). Chief diversions, 677. Visits and entertainments, ib. Weddings, 678. Mournings and funerals, ib. Why they have no mosques, 679, yet are strict observers of the Koran, ib. Their caravans, ib. (S). Traffic, 680. Regard for the elephants, 681
- their frequent ravages in Egypt under their cheyks not subdued, vi. 8. Splendid equipage of the beighs, ib. Dread of a bashaw's anger, ib.
- of Barbary described, vii. 124
- of Tremecen, their tribes, character, &c. &c. vii. 139, 140 (B)
- of Morocco, vii. 147
- of Algiers, their chief tribes and princes, vii. 208
- Aracises, or Rock Island, where situated, iv. 267
- Arado, antient king of Abissinia, vi. 252
- Atadus, island of, taken by the Moslems, i. 252
- , city of, destroyed by Moawiyah, i. 252
- Araffat, Mount, near Mecca, the devotions performed there by Mohammed, i. 102
- , Mount, where the pilgrims of Mecca, &c. meet, vi. 32
- Aral, Lake, in Karazm, described, ii. 513. xiii. 29. Fine salt made from it, ii. 513.
- , province of, in Karazm, described, ii. 714.
- Aranca in Chili, xiv. 474
- Arahi, a city in Karnata, iii. 177
- Aranjuez, treaty there between the French, Spaniards, and Genoese, and its principle articles, xiii. 663
- Arap Mahamed, the son of Hajim, 13th khan of the Uzbeks, ii. 735. Invaded by the Kossaks, with his revenge on them, ib. and on the Kalmuks, ib. Defeats several plots against his life, and two of his sons conspire against him, 736. Bribes them in vain to their duty, ib. Marches against them, 737. Is taken prisoner and slain by Ilbars, ibid.
- Ararat, on which the ark rested, whether in Armenia or India, iii. 658
- Arba Khan, his descent, ii. 492 (C), (D). Is defeated and slain by Musa Khan, ib.
- Arbo taken by the Genoese, x. 225
- Arca, castle of, taken by the Greeks, i. 564
- Arcadius's laws against the Jews, v. 507 (Y)
- Archangel, government of, with its divisions and principle plates, also the capital of the same name; described, xiii. 7. Foundation of its trade laid by the English, ib. Its mart transferred to Petersburg, 253
- Archbishops, order of procession amongst them, xi. 379. Their benedictions in the presence of the emperor, 380
- Archdale, governor of Carolina, his account of the impracticability of its government, xv. 85. Character of his printed account of the province, ib. His difficulties, 87, and prudent management, ib.
- Archduke, Cardinal, marches to relieve Amiens, but fails, ix. 314
- Archduchess her intrepidity at receiving Albert in Ghent, xi. 461. Her proposals for a truce, with the arguments for and against it among the Dutch, 520. Representations to her, but her views for redress are frustrated by Olivarez, 522. Scheme resumed by her for cutting off the communication between Zealand and Holland, 523, but frustrated, and the Spaniards defeated, ib. Her death and character, 531



- Archipelago of St. Lazarus, in the Spanish East Indies, iv. 178 (D).— See Philippine Islands
- Archives, the custom of keeping, when and by whom first introduced into Germany, x. 681 (G)
- Archot, Duke de, faction formed by him against the prince of Orange, xi. 419. He is arrested, but released at the prince's intercession, ib.
- Arcona, capital of Rugen, part of it destroyed, xii. 13. Account of the place, 15
- Arcos, duke of, viceroy of Naples, his character, x. 519. Sends several reinforcements to the Spanish garrisons in Tuscany, and the kingdom distressed to oppose the French in Italy, who are driven from the coast of Naples, ib. From a dread of the duke of Guise, then at Rome, he concludes a treaty with the rioters more disgraceful than the former, 522
- Ard, in Egypt, bloody battle there, i. 513
- Ardabasta, his arrival at Toledo, vii. 560. Kind reception from the king, and conjectures about his extraction, ib.
- Ardebil, or Ardevil, city, where situate, and taken and burnt by the Mongls, ii. 318
- Ardoyn, marquis of Ivrea, declared king of Lombardy by a party of nobles, ix. 551. Upon the emperor's return to Germany, he takes Vercelli, &c. which the archbishops of Milan and Ravenna recover, upon which he retires to a monastery, where he dies, 553
- Ardrah taken by the king of Dahomay, vi. 612. Kingdom described, 621. How divided, ib. (G). Its chief towns, ib. The metropolis described, ib. Royal palaces and gardens, ib. Fine roads, produce, soil, diseases, &c. 622. A strange kind of Cypher used, their dress, and women, 623. Food and drink, with the king's wives, ib. (H). Remarks on the latter, 624. Agriculture, ib. Funerals and Government, ib. Order of succession, with the king's revenue and despotic power, 625. Civility to Europeans, 626. Imports and exports, ib. Militia, ib. Religion and vast number of priests, 627. Odd notion of the resurrection, ib. Des Marchais's farther account of this kingdom, 628. The king's wars, and reception of the French embassy, ib.
- Ardshir, a preaching impostor, with the strange effects of his sermons on the hearers, i. 686
- Arechis, duke of Benevento, acknowledges Charlemagne, x. 377. Renounces allegiance to the Franks, makes incursions into the pope's territories, and Charlemagne returning into Italy grants him peace, Grimoald his son being hostage, ib. Enters into a negotiation with the Greek emperor, who grants his propositions, but he and his son Romuald die, 378. His character and epitaph by Paulus Diaconus, ib. (A)
- Arequiba, a port and town in Quilca, described, xiv. 462. Healthiness here to what owing, ib. Frequent earthquakes, ib.
- Aretin, (Guido) the inventor of the six musical notes, at what time he flourished, ix. 555 (H)
- Aretino, his silence as to an embassy from Florence to the emperor, and wonderful agreement of the Italian writers, xiii. 300 (A)
- , the revivor of classical Latin in Europe, xiii. 355
- Arez Beg, the Persian general, taken and hanged by the Turks, ii. 607
- Arezzians, war with them, who, in a sally, totally defeat the Siennese, xiii. 288. Renew their confederacy with the Florentines, and the generosity of the latter as to the Pistois, with their assisting the papal authority, as well as Civita Castellana, 298
- Arezzo described, xiii. 272. Taken, and the bishop becomes master of it, 288. Restored to its independency, 324. Besieged by the French, who, on Lewis's death, sell it to the Florentines, with John Visconti's great power, which they endeavour to check, 346
- , Bishop of, his successful irruption on Fagiolani's estates, 305. His successes render Castruccio jealous, 388
- Argan made governor of Lin-gan, ii. 377. Swift conquests in Fo-kyen, 378. Sent to invade Japan, 382. His death, 384
- Argensola, (Leonora de) his history of the Spanish conquests in India, iv. 156 (G)
- Argenson, Viscount de, governor general of New France, his arrival there, xiv. 597. The first exercise of his power very seasonable, by some severities towards the savages, ib.
- Argers taken and plundered by the Venetians, x. 263 (A)
- Argol, governor of the colony at James Town, his cruising voyage to Cape Cod, xiv. 494. Attacks a little colony of French at St. Croix, who submit, ib. Reduces a settlement at Port Royale, (Acadia) ib.
- Argon, or Kerlon, a river in Tartary, ii. 119 & 247
- Arguette, M. de, taken prisoner, with his deplorable death and that of his party, xv. 56; which was occasioned by the brutality of Bienville, ib.
- Arguim, an island and fort on the Senegal, described, vii. 81. By whom discovered and fortified, ib. Its various revolutions since, 82. Desperate defence against the French, ib. Description of the fort, which was destroyed, 83
- Argun, khan of the Tartars, invades Rum, ii. 240. Assists Malek Masur, or Massud, ib. 483. Revolts against his uncle, but is defeated and imprisoned by him, 481. Released and takes him prisoner, and mounts the throne of Iran, 482. Proves a friend to Christians and Jews, but is prevented by death, 483
- Kothbo'ddin, punished for oppression, ii. 569
- Shah, shuts the gates of Samarkant against Malek Shah, ii. 578. His feigned apology for it, ib. Left by Khodadad in Samarkant, with his cruel death, 585
- Arhus, bishop of, and the deacon of Roschild, arrested in the street, xii. 58
- Arhusen, account of, xi. 652
- Ariana, city in Tunis, whence so called, vi. 303 (I)
- Arias Diz chosen general of the Portuguese, vi. 266. See Diz
- Arica, a port in La Plata, described, xiv. 466. Immense booty taken here by Drake, ib.
- Aricka, (Abba) or Rab, or Rau, a learned rabbi, v. 502 (H)
- Arimoa island in the South Sea, with an account of the people, and their generosity to the Dutch, v. 38
- Aris, i. 82. See Zemzem
- Aristotle's philosophy and metaphysics why burnt, ix. 614
- Arjuan made governor of the young Egyptian khalif, i. 600
- Ark of God, fabulous account of its model being brought into Abissinia, vi. 219. Held in great veneration there, ib. (A)
- Arkanias savages, where, xv. 48
- Arkat, a city of Karnata, plundered by the Maharattas, iii. 177
- Arles erected into a kingdom by Boson, viii. 712
- Armada, Invincible, of Spain, sent against England in 1588, sunk, taken, shattered, or dispersed, viii. 270. A second invasion frustrated, 278
- Armagnac, Count de, a French army under him assist the Florentines, xiii. 350. By their own imprudence they are totally defeated by the Milanese under Galeazzo, with the loss of Armagnac, &c. 351
- , Count de, claims the crown of Majorca, viii. 168
- , the constable, ruins Burgundy's faction, and restores the king's affairs, ix. 135
- Armenia betrayed to the Arabs, i. 341. Rid of them, but subdued afresh by Al Walid, 345. Grievously ravaged by Bundokdar, ii. 479. Damaged by an earthquake, ib. Subdued by Timur Bek, 518
- , Lesser, why stiled the country of the White Sheep, ii. 696. Invaded by the Greeks, i. 596
- Armenian Cavalry, 4000 of them ordered to be buried alive by Timur Bek, ii. 554
- Armenians, their noble defence of Julfa, ii. 661. Plundered and cruelly treated by the rebel Mir Mahmud, 662. Settle their commerce at Batavia, iv. 478
- Armeria, an island in the South Sea, described, v. 12
- Arminians from the Netherlands, people Frederickstadt, and the same privileges granted at Gluckstadt and Godstadt, xiii. 166 (A). Persecution against them renewed, xi. 499. Present a petition to the states general, and an apology by Grotius for them rather irritates the Gomarrists, ib.
- Armetzek submits to Timur Bek, ii. 519
- Armleder, a peasant, causes a massacre of the Jews, v. 571 (M). Beheaded, ib. xi. 44
- Arnheim bravely forces the intrenchments of the imperialists, and takes Stenaw and Glogaw, xii. 237. Is repulsed with loss from Stum, xii. 322. His perfidy, 332. 336. 337. 517
- Arnold the high-priest, leader of the free-booters in Alsace, assassinated by his followers, xi. 56
- , his heresy what, ix. 590
- , of Brescia, condemned and burnt at Rome as an heretic, ix. 594 (I)
- , abbot of the Cistercians, &c. preaches to the Albigenses in France, but hath few converts, and to what the increase of these separatists is owing, ix. 614 (W)



Arnold, duke of Bavaria, defeats the Hungarians, x. 625.  
 Defeated and mortally wounded by the emperor Conrad, ib.  
 — bad policy of that English envoy to the Onnontagueſe, and their ſpeech thereon, xiv. 620  
 Arnolphus ſends an army into Italy againſt Vido, who at laſt bribes their general, ix. 532. Marches in perſon into Italy, ib. but returns to act againſt Rodolphus king of Burgundy, ib. Offered the empire by the pope, marches an army into Italy, beſieges and takes Rome, ib. Crowned emperor by Formoſus, has a potion given him, with its effects, and why he marches in all haſte into Germany, 533  
 Arſamofata, or Armoſata, fortrefs of, where and by whom built, i. 402  
 Arſhot, duke de, his ſpeech againſt the Spaniards, xi. 443  
 Arſhine, or Ruſſian ell, what, xiii. 36 (A)  
 Arſlan, ſoltan of Ikonium, marches againſt Jaweli, ii. 180.  
 Defeated and drowned, ib.  
 —, (Malek) ſuppreſſes the revolters againſt him, ii. 192.  
 Confirms the Salgarian dynasty in Pars, ib. His death and character, ib.  
 — II. the 5th ſoltan of Kerman, ii. 196  
 —, prince of the Karluks, aſſiſts Jenghiz Khan againſt the Kin, ii. 283, and againſt ſoltan Mohammed, 296  
 —, unjuſtly beheaded, ii. 402  
 —, governor of Kyang-fi, leads his Myan-tſe againſt the rebels, ii. 422  
 — Balu, his ſucceſs againſt Ilekkhan, i. 605  
 — Shah Al Argun, murders his father in Khorafan, i. 682  
 Affaſſinated for it, ib.  
 Arſno revolts againſt Suſneus, vi. 286. Defeated and put to death, ib.  
 Artaguette, M. Diron de, arrives in Louiſiana, as French commiſſary, and his meaſures, xv. 19. His information given the court, and their reſolution, what, ib.  
 Artak Ebn Akſak, impriſoned by Malek Shah, his death and descendants, i. 675  
 Artak takes Manbij, is killed at the ſiege of its caſtle, and his forces diſperſed, i. 697  
 Artichokes, the faction of, in Geneva, who, xiv. 29  
 Artzans, their various devices at Timur Bek's jubilee, ii. 572  
 Artze, taken and burnt by Tagrolipix, ii. 161  
 Arukorchin, a Mongl province, where ſituate, ii. 245 (Z)  
 Arwa Ebn Maſud ſlain for his adherence to Mohammed, i. 91  
 Arzemidokht, queen of Irak, defeated, i. 183. Depoſed and aſſaſſinated, ib.  
 Arzenjan taken and put to the ſword by the Moguls, ii. 231  
 Arzerum taken and plundered by the Moguls, ii. 231, and by Timur Bek, ii. 518  
 Arzila, in Morocco, deſcribed, vii. 158  
 Arradez, a city in Tunis, deſcribed, vii. 303  
 Arragon diſturbances there upon the old king dying without heirs, vii. 673. Its power and extenſive dominions at its union with Caſtile, viii. 108. Its ſituation, extent, and produce, 109. Its derivation and rivers, ib. Its antient inhabitants, ib. Their genius why for a long time little changed, ib. How they preſerved their religion and liberties upon the irruption of the Moors, ib. Erected into a kingdom by Sancho the Great of Navarre, in favour of his ſon, Ramiro, 110. The limits of that kingdom then and its capital, ib. Its hiſtory from Alonſo II. till its union with Majorca, including the conqueſt of Valentia, viii. 129. Some account of its original conſtitution, 171  
 The office of chief juſtice deſcribed, ib. A common miſtake on this head rectified, 172. Hiſtory from the interregnum, on don Martin's death, to its union with Caſtile in Ferdinand and Iſabella, 181. State of this kingdom and its dependencies during the interregnum, ib. The ſtates appoint a committee to regulate the declaration of a king, 182. Nine judges choſen to determine the title of claimants, ib. Great confuſion in Valentia, ib. The judges are choſen by the viceroy and chief juſtice of Arragon, with an account of them, ib. Some of theſe, in the meeting at Caſpé, are objected to, but over-ruled, ib. The number of claimants and their pretenſions, 183. Diſtreſſed with factions, a plague, and war from the French, 197. United with Caſtile in don Ferdinand, 198. Inſurrection there, with freſh acts of ſeverity, 274. Their privileges curtailed, ib.  
 —, how it became a county, viii. 549  
 —, Its king is excommunicated, but abſolved ſoon after, ix. 634  
 —, Cardinal of, viceroy of Naples, proceeds by ſeverities to reform the city and nation, and publiſhes an edict againſt fraudulent bankruptcies, x. 527. On the king of Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

Spain's death, the queen regent recalls him to aſſiſt her in the adminiſtration under her infant ſon Charles II. ib.  
 Arrakan, or Kakan, kingdom of, in farther India, where ſituate, iii. 225. Sea coaſt deſcribed, 226. Soil and produce, ib. Provinces, ib. Rivers, their riſe and courſe, 227. Capital populous, and houſes, ib. Royal palace and wealth, ib. Fine ſtatue, ib. Large lake and cities, 228. Inhabitants and dreſs, 229. Vile diet, marriages, &c. ib. Diſeaſes how cured, ib. Dancing and phyſic, ib. Funerals and other cuſtoms, 230. Religion, 231. Priests, monks, &c. ib. Government, ib. King's title and reſidence, ib. Superſtitious, cruelties, and inceſtuous marriages, 232. King's concubines how choſen, with their power and martial prowels, ib. Their hiſtory, and invaded by the king of Pegu, 233. Make themſelves maſters of that kingdom, and ill requited by the Portuguese, ib. Revolutions cauſed by them, 234. Threatened by the Mogols, 235. Betrayed by Tiboa, ib. The king's revenge on him, 236. Recovers Sundiva iſland, 237. Forgives the Portuguese, and ſettles them at Chatigan, ib. Is again betrayed by them, over-reached by his prieſts, dies, and leaves the kingdom in anarchy, ib.  
 Arran taken by the Mongls, ii. 319  
 Arras, ſiege and reduction of, after a brave defence, by colonel Boyle in the Spaniſh ſervice, ix. 400, and thirty-five days open trenches, ib.  
 Arreitau ſurpriſed and taken by the Moſlems, i. 197  
 Aſadites defeated in an attempt againſt Mohammed, i. 58. His expedition againſt them, 64  
 Aſado'ddin, or Shairacuh, his ſucceſs againſt Daragan, vi. 55. Sent to invade Egypt, 56. Succeſs againſt the wazir, and takes Alexandria, ib. Truce with the wazir, and ſent againſt the Franks, 57. Grand reception at Kayro, ibid.  
 Aſaf, an idol, worſhipped by the Koreiſh, i. 76  
 Aſbag, a Chriſtian prince, turns Moſlem, i. 65  
 Aſcalon taken by the Moſlems, i. 228  
 Aſcenſion iſland, on the African coaſt, deſcribed, vi. 117  
 Aſcetics in Egypt, from whom probably derived, their ignorance and mortifications, vi. 25 (S)  
 Aſdal, (Jeſſon) his cruelty in Dalecarlia, xii. 248  
 Aſe, or Aſce, R. a learned diſciple of R. Jochanan, v. 499. Completes the Babylonish Thalmud, ib. (D). His ſchool and method of teaching, 512 (K). Writings, with his ſon's ſucceſs, ib.  
 Aſem, Aſſam, Azem, or Achem, deſcribed, iii. 110. See Aſſam. Invaded by Amir Jemla, by Aureng Zib's deſire, ib. Its capital plundered by Jemla, ib. (F)  
 Aſhapuwha's advice to Hayſhan Khan, with his promotion, ii. 401  
 Aſharians, their hatred to the Motazelites, i. 542. Their chief tenets, ib.  
 Aſher, R. his deſperate catastrophe at Toledo, v. 558. His character and writings, 559 (C)  
 Aſhraf (Malek) his tyranny in Azerbejan, but defeated and ſlain by Janibek, ii. 447  
 —, Al, lord of Miyafarckin, beſieged by Yaſhmut, ſon of Hulaku, ii. 474. Put to death by him, 475  
 —, (Malek al) the brother of Haſſan Kujuk, ſucceeds him, but defeated and ſlain by Jani Bek, ii. 497  
 —, ſoltan, condemned to death by the rebel Mir Mahmud, ii. 664. Acquitted and reſtored, ib. (O)  
 Aſia Minor deſcribed, ii. 197 (A). D'Herbelot's table of the Seljukian ſoltans who reigned in it, 200. Defects of that table diſplayed, and a more authentic one, 201. Ravaged by the Othmans, v. 152  
 —, its ſtate at Jenghiz Khan's invaſion, ii. 294  
 Aſkagava, a river in Japan, deſcribed, iv. 3  
 Aſſam, a perſon of no merit, ſucceeds Obeid'allah in Khorafan, i. 294. Turned out, 295  
 Aſma married to, but not bedded by Mohammed, i. 116  
 Aſmai, tutor to the khalif Harun Al Raſhid, his learning and character, i. 438  
 Aſmouil, a learned Spaniſh rabbi, turns Mahomedan, and writes againſt the Jews, v. 550 (E)  
 Aſmund ſucceeds his father Suibdager in the three northern crowns, with his war on Hadig, whoſe ſon he kills, xii. 219  
 —, or Hamund, is elected to the throne of Sweden, xii. 223. His four ſons pirates, after encountering the four ſons of the king of Denmark in the Baltic, ſtrike up a peace, and repair to the court of Denmark, ib.  
 — ſucceeds to the three crowns of Sweden. Gothland, and Denmark, and the other conqueſts of his father Inguar, xii. 225.



- xii. 225. He revenges his father's murder, encourages husbandry, and cuts out roads, &c. *ibid.* A battle fought between him and his brother, who laid pretensions to the crown, in which he is killed, with his character, *ib.*
- Asmund, on the defeat and death of Biorno III. is raised to the Swedish throne, xii. 227. In his reign the Christians are persecuted, and Vitard martyred, *ib.* He is deposed, and follows piracy, with unparalleled cruelty, *ib.*
- Kolbrenner succeeds his father Olaus in the Swedish throne, and the reason of his surname, with his character and zeal for Christianity, xii. 229. Is engaged in a war with Norway, with his death, *ib.* (A)
- Slemme, or Gomneel, succeeds his father Asmund Kolbrenner in Sweden, xii. 229. Of a different disposition from his father, and the reason of his surnames, *ib.* In recovering Schonen he is defeated and slain by Canute the Rich, *ib.*
- Asnaf Segued, or Za Denghil, invaded by the Gallas, vi. 281. Noble speech to his dastardly troops, *ib.* Signal victory and triumph, reception and conference with F. Pays, 282. Invites new missionaries from Rome, *ib.* Letter to the pope and king of Spain, why suspected by Mr. Ludolph, and causes a new revolt, *ib.* Abandoned by his forces, interdicted by the abuna, and falls too soon on the rebels, by whom he is defeated and killed, 283
- Asof, or Azat, plundered and put to the sword by Timur Bek, ii. 538 (R)
- Khan betrays sultan Ghir's treasure to Jehan Khurm, iii. 72
- Asoph besieged by czar Peter, xiii. 187. Attempt to storm it ineffectual, and the siege raised, *ib.* Garrison surrenders, delivering up the traitor Jacob, *ib.*
- Asow, government and fortrefs of, described, xiii. 14. Its inhabitants who, *ib.*
- Astarabad taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 516. Taken by Abusaid, 592 (C), and by sultan Hussayn, 593
- Astorga, Marquis of, made viceroy of Naples, x. 528. Is very assiduous in putting a stop to the many evils in the kingdom, sends assistance to Catalonia against the French, and to quell a revolt in Messina, *ib.* off the harbour of which the Spanish fleet is beaten by the French, *ib.* The viceroy's method for raising money to refit the fleet, *ib.* Is recalled, *ib.*
- Astracan, government of, described, with its contents, xiii. 31. Its principal places, and Astracan the capital described, *ibid.*
- Astrakhan taken by the Mongls, ii. 322
- Astrologers blamed for Soleymán's sickness, ii. 636. Way of repairing their fault, *ib.* Put a trick upon shah Jehan, iii. 86. Disgraced at the Mogol's court, 110. Foretell an inundation, i. 681
- Astronomy, a system of, published in China, ii. 382. Understood by the antediluvians, iii. 660 (E). How communicated to the new world, 661. Reasons for its small progress afterwards, *ib.*
- Asturias, Prince of, espoused to Blanca of Navarre, viii. 84, but the marriage not consummated, *ib.* He and the queen concur with the malecontents, *ib.* The king being in their power, is compelled to yield to their requests, *ib.* The prince raises fresh disturbances, and offers his father battle, 86. An agreement patched up to prevent the effusion of blood, 87. Forbids any succours, that he may compel his father to resign, *ib.*
- , Princess of, delivered of Carlos, dies, viii. 247
- Asukepa, declared Yesun-temur's heir, ii. 409. Proclaimed by Taulasha, 411. Totally defeated by Yen-temur, 412. Slain, *ib.*
- Asum, or Asion, a town in the kingdom of Adel, vi. 325 (C)
- Aswad, Al, one of Mohammed's rivals, i. 105. Imposture and success, *ib.* Assassinated two days before Mohammed's death, 107
- Aswan, the antient Syene, destroyed by the Nubians, and where situated, i. 553
- As, wild, confounded with the zecora, or wild mule, described, vi. 185
- Astad Ebn Abd'allah kills the Khakan in a single combat, i. 367
- Aslahyah subdued to the khalif Abdalmalek, i. 334
- Assafs, in Egypt, an insolent soldiery, vi. 22
- Assalit, (Gilbert de) 4th grand master of Malta, vii. 382
- Assam, Asham, or Azem, kingdom in India, its limits, iii. 223. Cities, soil, and product, *ib.* Inhabitants tax-free, 224. Allowed polygamy, also the supposed inventors of guns and powder, *ib.*
- Assan ravages and subdues Media, ii. 161 (X). Defeated by the Romans, *ib.*
- , or Hassan, Sabah, founder of the Bathanian dynasty, ii. 170 (B). Answer to Malek Shah's ambassadors, with his death, after a reign of thirty-five years, i. 698
- Assassines, who and whence, ii. 170, with their principles and manners, i. 671. See Batanits
- Assazoe, a plant, its rare virtue against serpents, vi. 183 (B)
- Assen, capital of Ardrah, vi. 621
- Assidona, dreadful battle at, i. 349
- Assinai. See Cenis
- Assiniboils, lake, described, xiv. 565
- , Indians, xiv. 566
- Associators, a term of reproach given by the Turks to the Christians, i. 184
- Assoff taken prisoner by Mohabet Khan, iii. 78. Released and sent to Jehan Ghir, 80. Made prime minister to Jehan Shah, 84
- Assumption, capital of Paraguay, described, xiv. 469
- , fort, where, xv. 56, 60. Demolished, *ib.*
- Assyria infested with bands of wild Arabs, i. 404
- Atabek Tegtekin seizes on Damascus, ii. 178
- dynasty, when and by whom founded, i. 698. ii. 184. The signification, *ib.* (F)
- Kharafankar causes Pir Mohammed's decollation, and dies soon after, ii. 188
- Atabeki Shahin Lala, Morad's wazir, his conquests in Egypt, v. 163
- Atabeks, from whom descended, i. 674
- in Fars, their origin and duration, i. 709
- in Irak founded, ii. 186
- in Pars, or Persia Propria, ii. 189. Throw off the Seljukian yoke, 190
- Atacama desert, a party of Spaniards under Menroy and Meranda, defeated there, and the commanders taken, but escape to Peru, xiv. 320
- Atacapas, savages, where seated, xv. 47. The only man-eaters in Louisiana, 48
- Atacoma, port of, in La Plata, xiv. 465
- Atahay sends the Song emperor prisoner to Tatu, ii. 377. Promoted by Hu pu-lay, 378. Unfortunate attempt on Japan, 384
- Atahualapa, brother to the inca of Peru, his character, xiv. 287. His brother remonstrates, and is little regarded, *ib.* Defeats him thrice, takes and throws him into a dungeon, *ib.* Sends a nobleman to dive into Pizarro's designs, *ib.* Taken prisoner by Pizarro, after a great slaughter of the Indians, 294. Very rich booty found in his tent, *ib.* The fidelity of the Indians to him, with the ambition of some of his nobles, *ib.* Somewhat reconciled to his situation, and proposes an immense ransom, *ib.* Accepted, and some Spaniards detached to Cuzco for collecting it, 295. Tried, and treacherously put to death by Pizarro, his noble defence, and the consequences of this event, *ib.*
- Ataida, prime minister, his remarkable probity, viii. 473
- Atameh made grand wazir by Al Mosta'in, i. 481. Murdered by his mutinous Turks, 482
- Atapakus, vast ravages of the Turks under him on the imperial provinces, ii. 221. Defeated by Vataces, and crosses the Meander in his shield, but is afterwards slain, *ib.*
- Atel river, ii. 122. See Wolga
- Atzfed, antient king of Abissinia, vi. 252
- Atenulphus usurps the sovereignty of Capua, and at whose instigation, x. 387. Seizes on the principality of Benevento, deposing Radelchis, and defeats the Saracens, 388. ix. 533. Retiring to Capua, he returns and quells a revolt in Benevento, x. 388. Unable with his confederates to suppress the infidels, he applies for assistance to Leo the Greek emperor, by his son Landulph, but dies, after having associated his other son, 389. Both his sons govern jointly, *ib.*
- Ath taken by the French, ix. 476
- Athanagilde, a Gothish king of the Visigoths, vii. 534. Makes alliance with the emperor Justinian, and succeeds the murdered Agila, 535. Takes several imperial places, *ib.* His death and progeny, 536. His daughters cause a war among the French princes, *ib.* A five months interregnum causes new troubles in the kingdom, *ib.*
- Athanasius, St. his account of the Jews malice against the Christians in Persia, v. 506, sub (S)
- Atheists, a new sect starts up in China, and strenuously opposed by Suma-quang, iii. 720
- Athenæus, (Ras) joins in a conspiracy against Asnaf Segued, vi. 282. Treachery to Sufneus, 284. Defeat and narrow escape, *ib.* Dreadful end, 285 (P)



- Athias**, (Joseph) a learned Jewish printer in Amsterdam, v. 613  
**Atikh's** revolt and success against khalif Hesham, i. 367  
**Atira** delivered up to Nasiro'ddawla and killed, i. 630  
**Atiyah** succeeds his brother at Aleppo, and driven from it by Mahmud, i. 658  
**Atkins**, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 182. Number of inhabitants there, 183. Why he desires a recall, ib.  
**Atlas**, mountains of, described, v. 696  
 —, Greater and Lesser, described, vii. 150. But two seasons there, 123. Several branches of the Great, 150  
**Atude Ebn Amran**, a slave, betrays Baghdad to the Mongls, ii. 472. Is preferred to the government of it, 473  
**Atziz**, shah of Khowarazm, rebels against Sanjar, and founds the Khowarazm dynasty, ii. 721. Attempts the sultan's life, i. 707. Pardoned but rebels afresh, ib. Is besieged in the castle of Hezar Asb, 709. Escapes and is forgiven by Sanjar, notwithstanding his arrogance, ib. His death and character, 714  
**Atta Kulla Kulla**, the Cherokee deputy, his treaty of peace with the governor of South Carolina, xv. 95  
**Attaquan**, a tribe of Hottentots, account of, vii. 385  
**Attar Khoja**, wazir of Hormuz, his preparations against Albuquerque, ii. 691. Brave answer to his bold message, ib. Forced to conclude a treaty with him, but bribes his men and eludes it, 692  
**Attendulo**, the Venetian general, defeats Picinino twice, x. 257. Other successes, ib. Retreats and entrenches at Lodi, 258. Storms and plunders Placentia, ib.  
**Attikamegues**, Canadians, never after heard of, xiv. 609  
**Attila**, irruption of the Huns under him into Italy, xiii. 273. Though defeated by the Goths and Ætius, he besieges, takes, and destroys, Aquileia, with his other successes, ib.  
**Attilus**, Holward's son, marrying Ursilla, Helgon's daughter, obtains Sweden, with his avarice, but his treasure is carried off by her, xii. 220  
 — II. succeeds his brother Roderic, king of Sweden, but is assassinated, xii. 220  
**Attinga**, Queen of, presents paid her, and the English invited to her court are cut off, iii. 166  
**Attok river**, crossed by Shah Nadir, iii. 125 (N)  
**Ava river**, iii. 238. Its course, 276  
 —, kingdom, invaded by the Barmas, iii. 255. Subdued by them, with its rich mines, 262. Its port attacked by the Barmas, 255. Its capital razed by Branjinoko, 266. Description of it, and also the palace, 277  
**Avadouras**, a sect of penitent bramins in India, iii. 218  
**Avanash**, the sixth khan of Karazm, intangled in broils by his son's rashness, ii. 725. Forced to a war against sultan Gazi, who is defeated and slain, ib. Put to death by Omar Gazi, 726  
**Ava**, king of, drives the Portuguese out of Sirian, iii. 274. Takes and impales Brito alive, with his severity to his family, 275  
 —, kingdom, little known to the Europeans, iii. 276. Its boundaries, extent, &c. ib. Soil and produce, 277. Great river Lu Kyang, or Menan Kiow, and jewel trade, 278. Inhabitants, ib. Government, 279. Laws and other regulations, ib. Ordeal trials, 280. Monarchs, their grandeur and vain titles, with their assumed authority, ib. His forces how paid, and officers how distinguished, 281. Religion, customs, and antient state, ib. Invaded by the Barma king, his wars with, and conquest of, Pegu, ib. Takes the kingdom of Lanjan, 310  
**Avans**, their revolt against Branjinoko, iii. 268. Transplanted into other provinces, they perish, ib.  
**Avangour**, Baron de, succeeds d'Argenson governor-general of New France, with his character, xiv. 599. Declaration on visiting the posts, ib. Strict declaration against selling spirituous liquors to the savages, with the spirit of debauchery introduced among them and the French soldiers, 601. Recalled from Canada, and soon after killed in Hungary, 602  
**Aubusson**, Peter de, the 38th grand master of Rhodes, vii. 417. Receives a threatening embassy from Venice, ib. His prudence and moderation on it, with the reasons, and he receives another from the bashaw of Lycia, 418. His wife conduct on it, and he amuses Mohammed with offers of peace, but outwitted by him, with whom he makes a truce, 419, as also peace with Tunis, ib. Invested with the sovereign power, ib. Brave defence of Rhodes, 420. A plot against his life discovered, 421. His brave answer to the besiegers causes a murmuring among the knights, 422. Repairs the city and fortifications, 423. Grand reception of prince Zizim, whom he sends into France for his greater safety, 424. Reception of Bajazet's politic embassy, and concludes an advantageous peace with him, ib. Complained against by prince Zizim, and against the peace, ib. Obtains great advantages to his order from the pope, 425. Is created a cardinal, and repents the pope's treachery to prince Zizim, ib. Undermined by the pope, 426. Dies of grief, ib.  
**Audiences** in South America, their tribunals and chambers what, xiv. 445  
**Avenick** invested by Timur Bek, and Messir its prince bribes for his pardon by presents, ii. 534  
 —, fortress, holden obstinately by Messir, with its siege and catastrophe, ii. 534  
**Avery**, or Every, an English pirate in India, takes a Mogol ship, iii. 117  
**Augsburg**, account of the league concluded there, viii. 337. Diet there ineffectual, x. 69.  
 —, confession of, formed, and why so called, with the emperor's presiding at the diet, xi. 141. The confession publicly read there, and a refutation by the catholics, to which last the emperor gives the sanction of his approbation, 142. Those of that confession invited to the council of Trent, 163. Occasional resolution of the diet there with regard to religion, 167. Several proposals made in the diet there, 172. Those of the confession enter into an association for mutual defence, and into a secret alliance with Gustavus Adolphus, 220  
 —, account of that city, its religion, and government, xv. 441 (K). Negotiations for peace there, 626, but with little prospect of success, ib. Surrenders to Gustavus, xi. 228  
**Augusta**, fort, in Georgia, described, xv. 104  
**Augustine**, St. fort of and town described, xiv. 432. The attempts made on it by the English, ib. Alarmed by Georgia colony, ib. Its governor treats with the English, for which he loses his head, ib. Within the English limits, 433  
 —, why that name was given to the river of Dauphin, xv. 78. A fort planned there, ib. Its town taken by the Carolinians, 88, but the siege of its castle raised in a panic, ib.  
 — monk's treatise on Christ and the church condemned by the council of Basil, with the tenets therein, x. 9 (D)  
**Augustus**, obliged to renounce the crown of Poland, xi. 340. Recovers it, 346. Interview and treaty between him and the czar, xii. 372. Determines to solicit a peace from Charles XII. on any terms, the management of which is left to the countess of Koningsmark, but Charles refuses to see her, 373. Treachery of the Polish primate to him, ib. Turns the respite he has by Charles's breaking his thigh to his advantage, by assembling the different orders of the kingdom, with their resolutions thereupon, 374. Is deposed, and the sentence pronounced by the primate, ib. Returning to Warsaw obliges Stanislaus to quit it, 375. Forced to quit Poland, of which Charles XII. becomes master, 376. Begs peace by a letter to Charles, 380. The terms granted by Charles, who now is courted by all the powers in Europe, ib. Inexorable to Augustus's plenipotentiaries, and the peace goes on but slowly, ib. After signing Te Deum at Warsaw, signs the peace concluded at Alt-Ranstadt with Charles XII. and has an interview with him at Gunterdsdorf, 381. Enters Poland and his motives, 389. Recovers the crown of Poland, 391  
 —, elector of Saxony, declares his pretensions to the crown of Poland, and the contest runs between him and Conti, xii. 552. War declared by some districts against that elector, and a deputation sent to him from the bishop of Cujavia to congratulate his accession, 559. Carries all before him, by means of two millions to the Polish army, 560. Three proposals made by his adherents to frustrate Conti's hopes, the last of which the elector embraces, and detaches a strong reinforcement to oppose Conti, whose circular letter has no effect, 566. Makes a progress to Prussia, ib. Successes upon Conti's returning to France, 567. The primate and some noblemen still maintain an opposition, ib. Enters Warsaw, 568. Writes for a diet of pacification published by him, but the expected effects did not follow the elector's declarations, ib. Interposes on troubles breaking out in Lithuania, and exhorts the contending parties not to disturb the peace of the kingdom, ib. The army mutinies, and the primate as averse as ever to an accommodation, with the reason; but he becomes more pliant in his demands, ib. Has designs upon Kamienieck, and has an interview with the czar Peter, and concludes an alliance, 570. Nominates an extraordinary embassy for peace, and prepares for taking the field, ib.  
 Takes



Takes measures for reconciling the primate and bishop of Cujavia, 571. Proposal for visiting his German dominions warmly debated in the Polish senate, with the result, and he repairs to Dresden, 574. Repeated letters desiring his return, to restrain within bounds the aversion of the Poles to the Saxons, and he invades Livonia on Patkul's solicitation, 575 (E). Calls a grand council, which he opens with a speech, endeavouring to gain the Polish republic's consent to a rupture with Sweden, 576, which they refuse, with their reasons, and the bishop of Cujavia strongly opposes him, 577. He, notwithstanding, sets out for Livonia, ib. Gains an advantage over Welling, the Swedish general, who retreats from Riga, 578. Murmurs every where in Poland against the king, and a deputation for assembling the diet, &c. 579, which meets accordingly, and their warm debates, 580. Interview between him and the czar at Birzen, with inebriation for fifteen days there, 579. A plan of operations and treaty concluded, ib. A remonstrance presented to the king, by a deputation, and his reply unsatisfactory, yet the diet breaks up, ib. Dismisses the Saxons, 581. Seconds the primate's circular letters with others, and the answer from many palatinates, ib. Overtures to the general council rejected, and the primate referred to for an answer to some other demands, 582. The council's answer to more questions, ib. Defeated at Glissow, convokes a diet, and their proceedings, 584 (F). He calls an assembly of the senators, in which the primate obtains leave to send proposals of peace to Charles, with that prelate's selfishness, and refusal of audience to the Polish envoys, ib. The deputies again refused, ib. Posts to Polish Prussia and thence to Dresden, ib. Arrests the French envoys, upon which M. de Torcy complains bitterly to the primate, who writes to Augustus, with his ironical and sarcastical answer, 585. Assembles another council at Marienburg, ib. Their decrees against Charles, and the primate's declaring against king Augustus, 586. Opens a diet at Lublin, with their resolutions couched in six articles, ib. Declares the confederates traitors, by which means he increases the number of his enemies, 587. His great embarrassment, ib. In a council called by him at Javarow, after several mortifications he breaks up the assembly, and sets out privately for Saxony, ib. In an assembly called by the primate at Warsaw, he is deposed by the confederates, but the unfortunate monarch still has hopes, and on what grounds, ib. He seizes prince James Sobieski, whom Charles proposed as his successor, as also his brother Constantine, and concludes an advantageous treaty with the czar, and the terms, 588. The effects produced by publishing this treaty determine him to return to Poland, ib. Pursued by the Swedes, and declines coming to an engagement with general Renschild, 589. He returns to Sandomir, and holds a diet, with their proceedings, ib. His chagrin on receiving the news of Stanislaus's election, and impotent resolution of declaring him and his adherents traitors, 591. His situation, ib. Takes Warsaw, 593. This advantage used by him with little moderation, ib. The reasons for his declining a battle, 594. The pope sides with him, but to little effect, 595. Instance of irresolution which does little honour to his spirit or policy, ib. His situation in Saxony, ib. Institutes at Grodno the order of the White Eagle, and has an interview with the czar, 598. Convokes a great council at Grodno, with their proceedings, 599. A council holden by the opposite party at Warsaw, ib. Plan for surrounding the Swedish army under Renschild, disappointed, 600. Quits Warsaw, and from Pilka sets out for Cracow, 601. At length has recourse to Charles's clemency, for a cessation of hostilities towards a peace, 602. His envoys fill up at Alt-Ranstadt one of the blanks signed by him with such articles as Charles dictates, and his peculiar perplexity with regard to prince Menzikoff, the czar's general, and what, ib. He, with the assistance of Menzikoff, gains a victory over Meyerfeldt, yet is forced to renounce the crown of Poland, ib. Has an interview with Charles XII. who obliges him to write a letter of congratulation to Stanislaus, 603 (A). Grants an act of abdication, and a pardon for all who had taken up arms against him, and these published in the palatinates, 604. The perplexity of his friends, to whom the czar offers his protection, with his sentiments of the treaty, ib. Publishes a manifesto, 608. The various impressions made by this piece, and Augustus's conduct defended, who sets out for Lusatia, and begins his return to Poland, ib. A treaty of neutrality is concluded between him and Krassaw, the Swedish general, for the German dominions, but which is rejected by

Charles, then in exile, 609. Several come over to Augustus, between whom and the czar there is an interview, ib. Interview between him and the king of Prussia at Leipzig, 610. His return notified, and the pope absolves him from the obligations of Alt-Ranstadt, ib. Schemes against Charles XII. fruitless, 611. A conspiracy against him, but its author doubtful, 612. He meets, however, with great opposition from his friends, ib. The primate writes to him at Dresden to withdraw the Saxons, ib. His reasons for positively denying a diet on horseback, with a deputation for the king's return, and other demands, ib. His spirited declaration, and recalling the Saxons, with the occasion, 613. The little differences which disturb him at last accommodated, ib. In a diet at Grodno he complies with all the demands of the Courland deputies, but count Maurice refusing is put under the ban, 617. This event the occasion of a bloody war, 618.

Augustus privately negotiates a treaty with Charles, renouncing the crown and acknowledging Stanislaus, xiii. 209. He basely gives up Patkul and his own honour, ib. His unaccountable behaviour in signing the fatal convention with Charles, ib. and writing a more shameful letter to his envoy Finckenstein, in which he begs pardon for obtaining his late victory, ib. Resumes the government of Poland, 220. His death and character, xii. 619.

—— the Pious, elector of Saxony, xv. 466.

——, duke of Brunswic Wolfenbuttle, xv. 487. Collects a large library, and his learning, ib.

Aviary, a fine one in Mexico, xiv. 215.

Avibahe, a river and lake in Madagascar, vi. 94.

Avicenna Ebn Sina, the famed Arab physician and historian, where born, i. 311. Dies in Persian Irak, 641. High character, works, &c. and is raised to the wazirat, ib. Impairs his health by wine and venery, and refuses sultan Mahmud's invitation, ib. His stratagem to cure king Kabus's nephew, 642. Reception at that court, ib. and from the learned at Ispahan, ib.

Aujengo, fort of, on the Malabar coast, iii. 166. Its factory and trade, ib.

Avignon, the pope's residence there, ix. 77. Pope Clement V. was the first who transferred his court to it, x. 454. Sold to the pope, ix. 676.

Avila, Bishoop of, prevails on the prince of Asturias to attempt his father's release, viii. 85. A new civil war breaks out, in which the king is victorious, ib.

——, (Arias de) sent governor of Darien, to succeed Nunez Balboa, xiv. 163. His unhappy expeditions under several commanders, by violent treatment of the natives, 164. Returns with great loss to Darien, after exerting admirable intrepidity, ib. Another unfortunate enterprize under Velejo, ib.

——, (Gonzales de) his discoveries in Nicaragua, xiv. 276 (C).

Avis, Awis, or Weis, succeeds his father Hassan II Khani, ii. 493. Subdues Azerbaijan, ib. (T). Forced to abandon it, with his new conquests and successes, ib. Dying injunctions about his four sons, and his character, 494.

Aviz, grand master, kills Ferdinand d'Andeyro, queen Leonora's gallant, in the palace, viii. 419. The populace, by stratagem, support the grand master, and carry him out in triumph, ib. Match between him and the queen rejected by her with contempt, ib. The populace proclaim him regent and protector, ib. Politic administration, 420. His attempt on king Juan's life, by connivance of the dowager, 421, discovered, and he sent into Castile, ib. Gains a victory over the Castilians, ib. Piety on raising the siege of Lisbon, and occasion, 422. Gains many over, while king Juan and his Castilians lose the affections of the people, and the states of Portugal meet to consider the state of the kingdom, 423. Different sentiments of the members, and the regent's speech, ib. who is declared king, by which the interregnum ends, 424.

Aumale, (Francis duke de) assumes the title of Guise, ix. 235.

Aumont, M. de, assisted by Sir Martin Forbisher's fleet, beats the leaguers and Spaniards, ix. 307.

Avoyels, savages, where, xv. 48. Their trade with the French of Louisiana what, ib.

Avoyer, account of that office, x. 696 (S).

Aurelio, Don, succeeds to the crown of Asturias, gives his cousin Adofinda to don Silo, and dies, vii. 596.

Aurelius, (Marcus) his resentment and ill usage of the Jews, v. 456.

Aureng'Abad, the capital of Balagat, described, iii. 138. Its saddle sheep, and vast commerce, ib.

—— Zib, Jehan Shah's third son, his character, iii. 87. Intrigue with his sister, 83. Sent viceroy into Dekan, ib.

Intimacy



- Intimacy with Amir Jemla, and obliged to stay at court, 89. Artful message to his brother Morad, *ib.* Gets Jemla over to him, 90. Persuades Morad to join him, *ib.* Both march to Agra, and he comes to the river Eujin, 91 (G). Defeats the opposing army, and engages his brother Dara, 92. Order of battle, 93. Distressed by the enemy, *ib.* yet gains the victory, 94. Submissive message to his father, 95. Seizes on the capital, and imprisons him in his palace, *ib.* Submissive letter to him, 96. Is joined by the chief omrahs, and his bloody artifice against his brother Morad, *ib.* Forced to pacify the army, 97. Goes in pursuit of Dara, *ib.* Returns to the capital, his bold escape, and presence of mind, 98. Goes in pursuit of his brother Sujah, *ib.* Falls into great distress, yet defeats him, 99. Sends his son and Jemla against Sujah, 100. Confines the former for life, 101. Stern warning to his second son, *ib.* Assumes the royal dignity, 102. Goes in pursuit of Dara, with his success against him, *ib.* Debates about deposing him, 104. Sentences him to death, *ib.* Dissembling kindness to young Soleyman, 105. Puts him to death, 106. Conduct after his brother Sujah's death, 107. Reception of the two Uzbek ambassadors, and is seized with a strange fever, 108. Followed with deep plots and cabals, and his strenuous resolution, *ib.* Pretence to his son Akbar, *ib.* Forced complaisance to his imprisoned son, 109. Reception of the Dutch ambassadors, and some beggarly ones from Abissinia, &c. *ib.* That from Persia disgraced, 110. Joy at the news of Jemla's death, 111. Jealousy of his sons, 113, and makes several great promotions, *ib.* Forms the siege of Kandahar, 114. His ambassador affronted by the king of Persia, *ib.* His revenge, 115. Splendid funeral of his father, and the remainder of his history why curtailed, *ib.* His other conquests, and jealousy of his sons induces them to revolt, 116. Artifice against his rebellious son, *ib.* Behaviour to the English at Bombay, 117. His death and last will, *ib.* Person and character, 118. Abstemious life, *ib.* Employment of cap making, *ib.* Titles and vast revenue, *ib.* Sons, 119. Successor, *ib.* His signal defeat before Daman, *iv.* 142. Peace with the English company, 324. Frustrates the Dutch in their designs, 325. His mild edict in favour of them, *ib.* (H).
- Aurora island, in the South Sea, described, *v.* 34  
 — Borealis, account of it, in Siberia, *xiii.* 33 (K)  
 Australis, Terra. See Southern Continent  
 Austregues tribunal in Germany, *xi.* 100  
 Austria, Don John of, an embassy sent to him from the grand master, to complain against the viceroy of Sicily, *vii.* 509. Takes off the embargo against the Malthese, 510  
 —, war breaks out between that house and Basil, with the mutual ravages and cruelties till peace is concluded, *xi.* 68  
 —, duke of, divested of his dominions, and the Swiss empowered to subdue them, the emperor being obliged to confirm their conquest of Tergow, *xi.* 75  
 —, jealousy of that house against Sigismund I. of Poland, and its effects, *xi.* 216  
 —, account of that archduchy and hereditary dominions, *xv.* 473. Division into Upper and Lower, and the cities therein, *ib.* Soil, mines, and rivers, *ib.* Antient history, and coming to Rodolphus of Habsburgh, the ancestor of the present family, *ib.* Privileges of this archduchy, 474. Disputes about its succession, 628  
 A-u-tay assembles the Mongl lords in favour of Honanta, *ii.* 399. Opposed by a great majority, condemned to death, 400, and executed, 401  
 Autuman, (Othman) the khalif, his great success in Spain, *i.* 365  
 Autzal, 8th king of Mexico, his great character, who subdues Quaxacatlan and Guatemala, *xiv.* 365. His noble aqueduct, death, &c. *ib.*  
 Awtas, famed battle there, *i.* 87  
 Axara besieged by the Tartars, *ii.* 233 (T)  
 Axelsson made protector of Sweden, with disputes about the succession, *xii.* 117. Designs frustrated by the regent, and a Danish fleet ordered to cruise off Gothland isle, 121  
 —, (Eric) chosen administrator of Sweden, *xii.* 257  
 —, (Yvar) defeated by Christian II. who is made a dupe, *xii.* 258. His conduct, and surrendering the isle of Gothland to king John, 259  
 Axim, the capital of a canton on the Gold Coast, described, *vi.* 643  
 —, canton of, described, *vi.* 644. Government, *ib.* Laws, punishment, &c. 645. Retailing debts, 646
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Axuma, metropolis of Tigre and Abissinia, its ruinous state, *vi.* 172. Ancient record preserved, 251  
 Axyaca chosen 7th king of Mexico by Tlacaellec, *xiv.* 365. Successful war against Tlateluco, &c. and a fabulous tradition here, *ib.* (A). Death, *ib.*  
 Ayas, Ayaz, king of Hira, defeats the Persians, *i.* 54  
 —, king of Hormuz, settles on the desert island of Jerun, *ii.* 683. Buys it of the king of Keys, 684. His death or resignation, 685  
 Aydin subdued by Bajazet, *v.* 167  
 Aysha, one of Mohammed's wives, accused of adultery, *i.* 66 & 114. Takes care of him in his last sickness, 106. Pleasantries between them, *ib.* Resentment against her husband's son-in-law Ali, 114. Takes up arms against him, *ib.* and encourages a general revolt against Othman, 255. Becomes the oracle of the Moslems, 114. Declares for Ali after Othman's death, 258, and soon after becomes his bitter enemy, 259. Cabals with Thela and Zobeir at Mecca, *ib.* Marches directly against him to Medina, 261. Stopt by the dogs at Jawab, 262, but continues her march with her army to Basra, *ib.* Defeats the governor, and takes the town, *ib.* Is defeated at the battle of Khoraiba, and honourably dismissed by Ali, 267, but afterwards confined to her house at Medina, *ib.* Highly displeased with Moawiyah, 289. Her death and character, 297  
 Ayetone, Marquis de, appointed governor of the Netherlands, with his conduct there, *xi.* 531, who, after concluding a treaty with the duke of Orleans, takes Argentau on the Meuse, and besieges Maestricht in vain, 532  
 Aykutmur defeated and slain by Tokatmish, *ii.* 526  
 Aynanje Khan defeated, with his death, *ii.* 318  
 Ayotuxtetlatlans, though defeated by Cortez, reject overtures of peace, *xiv.* 275  
 Aysa, prince of Mardin, submits to Timur Bek, *ii.* 533. Put in irons, also freed and restored by him, 540  
 Ayscough, lieutenant governor of Jamaica, *xv.* 306. Again governor, 307. Defeats the negroes at Nawny, *ib.*  
 Ayub builds Calatayub in Spain, *i.* 345. Why recalled by Soliman out of Spain, 354  
 —, the son of Soliman, dies, *i.* 353  
 — Ebn Serjabil made governor of Egypt, *i.* 356. Turned out by Yezid, 360  
 —, father of Salaha'ddin, invited by him into Egypt, and becomes his chief counsellor, *vi.* 59  
 Ayud, or Audiha, a province of Hindustan, *iii.* 16. Its two famed pagods, *ib.*  
 Ayviri, inhabitants, their obstinacy against inca Lloque in a bloody battle, *xiv.* 380. Are intirely defeated and submit, 381  
 Aysun the Astrologer, his answer on inundations, and rewarded by the khalif, *i.* 682  
 Aytun, Haeton, king of Armenia, his travels into Tartary, *iv.* 109  
 Ayyaz Ayyad assists Barkearok against his rebel brother, *i.* 685, 687, *ii.* 175. Appointed guardian of his son, *i.* 685, *ii.* 178. Also chief atabeck or governor, *ib.* Taken prisoner by Mohammed, and slain, *i.* 689, *ii.* 179  
 Ayyewshihtata, son of Towhan-temur, averse to his father's magic and debauchery, *ii.* 423. Raises great troubles at court, 427. Cruel and unjust proceedings, 429, 430. Grows odious to the court and people, *ib.* Defeated by Tukyem-temur, *ib.* Takes Koko-temur into his service, 431, and repairs with him to court, *ib.* Made generalissimo by his father, 432. Succeeds him, 434, and removes his court to Karakorom, *ib.*  
 Ayyulipalipata banished by Timur's widow, *ii.* 399. Sent for to court by Alaason, *ib.* Arrival at Tatu, 400. Resigns the emperor to his brother Hayshan, *ib.* Goes to meet him, and enters the city with him, 401. Succeeds his brother in the empire, and punishes the abuses committed during his reign, 403. Other excellent regulations, *ib.* Suppresses sundry extortions, 404. Publishes a general amnesty, *ib.* Honours great men with temples, with his death and character, 405  
 Aza Mulkh's escape from Timur's pursuit, *ii.* 500  
 Azael, (R. Jehudah) a famed Jewish preacher at Ferrara, *v.* 599  
 Azafra plundered by the rebel Al Mohdi, *i.* 612  
 Azag-Tino, secretary to Susneus, banished, *vi.* 301  
 Azam's vast success in Spain, and whether the same with Zama, *i.* 361  
 Azapuzalco, city of, where situated, *xiv.* 361  
 Azar, the Arab, defeated in Cilicia, *i.* 341  
 Azarakites, who, *i.* 328. Their horrid murders and ravages in



in Irak, &c. *ib.* Defeated, *ib.* Inform Mohalleb of Mus'ab's death, 331. Strange dispute between them, and defeated by Al Mohalleb, 332. Pursued and cut in pieces, *ib.* Also a second time, 335

Azd, or Azdi, the Arab tribe, described, i. 312

Azem Khan defeats the revolters in Guzerat, *iii.* 58. Severely punished by Jehan Ghir, and restored, 67. Success in Dekan, 69. Sends ambassador to Shah Abbas, 70. His grand reception, *ib.*

— Mohammed Shah defeated and slain by his brother, *iii.* 119

Azerbejan invaded by the Mongls, *ii.* 318. Conquered by Janibek Khan, 447. By Timur Bek, 517

Azhar Baheli, his three odd visits to Al Mansur, i. 406

Aziz Bill'ah, Al, the Fatemite khalif, his treachery to Al Afrekin, i. 578. Favours the Melchite sect, 579. Strips and imprisons his rich wazir, but is forced to restore him, 587. Ill success against Aleppo, 595. Against Manjubek, *ib.* His death and character, 600. Libelled for his favour to the Christians and Jews, *ib.*

—, second khalif of Egypt, his ill success in Syria, *vi.* 44. Cruel treatment of the brave Jawhar, with his death and character, *ib.*

—, rebels against his brother in Egypt, and dies suddenly in Syria, *vi.* 64, 65

Azmir, province of, in Hindustan, *iii.* 12

—, the capital, described, also its salt-petre trade, *iii.* 12

Aznar, revolting from Pepin, establishes himself among the Spanish Vascons, and founds the sovereignty of Navarre, *viii.* 550. Account of his reign, and succeeded by his brother count Sancho, 551

Azo, or Azoo, a city and fortrefs in Farther India, *iii.* 223. The burial-place of the kings of Assam, *ib.* *iii.* 111, (E). Taken by Amir Jemla, *ib.*

—, some account of that professor, and the vast number of scholars under him, with a deduction of its professors, *xiii.* 568

— de Este, the pope gives him the investiture of Ferrara, and he enters into the confederacy, as do several other powers, *xiii.* 582

— succeeds his father Galeazzo in Milan, with an account of him and the Visconti family, *xiv.* 71. His management with the emperor, from whom he receives the investiture of Milan for money, *ib.*

—, first count of Este, account of him, *xiv.* 103, and his two successors, 104

— II. count of Este, his history, *xiv.* 105, who becomes head of the Ferrarese branch, and the history of his successors till the end of the thirteenth century, *ib.*

Azrail, the angel of death according to the Koran, i. 157. Gives Mohammed the choice of life or death, 108

Azrakheens who, i. 293

Azzo, after a little difficulty, admitted into Milan, *xiv.* 72. His apprehensions what, and a league formed among the Italian princes, at the head of which he is, with their partition of power, 73. His activity, notwithstanding the gout, *ib.* Makes successful war on Scaliger, improves his capital, and dies without issue, with his character, 74

Azzo'ddawla succeeds as Emir Al Omra to Al Moti, i. 561. Disobliges the Deylamites, 562, also the people, and causes a revolt, 568. His palace plundered by Sabektakin, and besieged in Wafet by the Turks, 569. Relieved by Adado'ddawla, *ib.* Recovers Baghdad, and defeats the Turks, 570. Pays homage to the new khalif, betrayed and imprisoned by Adado'ddawla, but is restored to his post, 571. Adado'ddawla revives his quarrel against him, 573. Defeated by him, *ib.* and he abandons Baghdad, 576. Treachery to Hamdan, and defeated by Adado'ddawla, 577. His flight and decollation, with his vast strength, *ib.*

Azzo'din, Ezzo'din Azatines, or Kaykaws, ninth sultan of the Rum dynasty, with his reign and death, *ii.* 229

— Kaykaws, twelfth sultan of Rum, summoned by Oktay Khan to pay him homage, *ii.* 232. Sends his brother Roknoddin to him, deposed by Oktay's successor, and divides the kingdom with his brother, *ib.* Plots against his life, takes him prisoner, and confines him in a castle, 233. Defeated by Bayesu, who releases Roknoddin, *ib.* Greek accounts of this contest, *ib.* Divides the empire with his brother, 234. Applies to Michael Paleologus, and retires to Constantinople, 235. Stirs up the Tartars against him, with various accounts of him, *ib.*

Azzo'ddin Malek, his bravery before Van, *ii.* 518. Robs Timur Bek of some curiosities, with his narrow escape, 533. His revolt and punishment, 569

B.

**B**A, a place in Ardrah, where is a Dutch factory, *vi.* 622

Baalbec, a superb city in Syria, i. 189. Besieged by Abu Obeidah, 194. Makes a gallant defence, *ib.* but forced to capitulate, 195. Surrendered and taken by the Attabek Zenki, 705. Its prodigious walls, &c. and taken by Timur Bek, *ii.* 557. See Balbec

Baanes Hepladænon betrays Armenia to the Arabs, i. 341

Baba, a false Turkman prophet, his ravages in the dynasty of Rum, &c. defeated and put to death, *ii.* 231

—, a famed Santon, flings a breast of mutton at Timur Bek, interpreted as a good omen by him, *ii.* 512

—, the Uzbek sultan Khayuk, *ii.* 733

Babek, a false prophet in Persia, raises a revolt, i. 459. Defeated and slain, with 60,000 of his followers, *ib.*

Babel Mandel, coast of, *vi.* 320. Unknown and fabulous kingdoms placed thereon, *ib.*

Babina, account of the commonwealth of, instituted in Poland, in the reign of Sigismund-Augustus, *xii.* 488, sub not.

Babor, or Babr, Soltan, his reign, *ii.* 595. Driven out by the Uzbek Shay Beg, *ib.*

— Soltan defeated by Kushanj Khan, with his retreat and death, *ii.* 709

—, or Zehiro'ddin, first sultan of the Mogols, *iii.* 53. His invasion of it, and great conquests, with his death and character, *ib.*

Babylon, old city of, distant and different from Baghdad, i. 394

Babylonian Irak reduced by Abd'al Malek, i. 351

Bacjur stript of his government of Damascus, i. 590. Sets up for the sovereignty of Rakha, attempt on the prince of Aleppo, with an account of his defeat and death, 594

Bacon, (Roger) imprisoned and condemned, *ix.* 647

—, his rebellion in Virginia, and character, *xv.* 368. Bids defiance to the governor, who arrests him, but he escapes, 369. His proceedings against the governor, who flies to Accomack, and various skirmishes hereupon, *ib.* The desolation ensuing from the rebels and Indians, *ib.* He dies, 370. His party submits, and succours arrive from England, *ib.*

—, Colonel, father of the rebel of that name, deputy governor of Virginia, approves a project for a college there, *xv.* 372

Bad, prince of Diyar Becr, invades Mawfel, i. 591. Defeated and killed, 592

Badaghan, a city in Balkh, *ii.* 456

—, the king of, invades Hufsayn's dominions, *ii.* 501

Badagus, who, and what their language, *iii.* 134

Badajox, his unfortunate expedition to Nombre de Dios, and his frequent pillagings across the isthmus, *xiv.* 165. His misfortunes thereupon, 166

Badakshan surrendered to the Mongls, *ii.* 307, 317

Baden Dourlach, Marquis of, declares for the elector Palatine, with his motives, *xi.* 207

—, issue of the different representations of the Catholics in a diet there, *xi.* 233

—, Prince of, retires before Villars, to the discredit of the former, *xi.* 335. Beats the Turks near Terven, 308. Takes Nissa and Vidin, 310. On disputes between him and Marlborough, the allies separate, 331

Badhan, viceroy of Yamen, his message to Mohammed, i. 69. Becomes his convert, *ib.* His death, *ib.* &c. 98

Badi Azzaman invaded by sultan Bakht, *ii.* 709

Badio'zzaman, the son of Hufsayn, reigns after him, jointly with his brother Mozaffer, *ii.* 599. Is carried to Constantinople, and dies, *ib.*

Badis Ebn Mansur, emir of Libya, sends his uncle Hammad to preside over Ashir, i. 601, who revolts, but is defeated by him, 619. His death, *ib.*

Badro'ddin alarms Mohammed's army by false reports, *ii.* 297

—, lord of Mawfel, submits to Hulaku, *ii.* 473

Badur Khan, the Mogol general, defeated before Vizapur, *iii.* 142

Baet, a piratic port in Hindustan, *iii.* 7 (B)

Baffa, on the Grain Coast, described, *vii.* 12

Bagameder, kingdom of, in Abissinia, described, *vi.* 173

Bager, or Boga, a Turk, presented with a fine scimitar by the khalif Al Motowakhel, i. 474. Cuts him off with it, *ib.* A strange account of the sword, 475. Deprives Montaser's brother of the succession, 479, 481. Excites an insurrection at



- at Baghdad, 482. Conspires against the khalif, *ib.* Discovered and executed, *ib.*
- Bagh, chapel, by whom built, and why erected into an asylum, i. 393
- Baghi-shemal palace, built by Timur Bek, described, ii. 540
- Dilensha, another of his palaces, described, ii. 541
- Baghnagur, capital of Golkonda, plundered and burnt by Sevaji's son, iii. 142. 146. The city, palace, &c. described, 150. Towers, &c. 151
- Baghdad, city, founded by Al Mansur, and why, i. 391. 393. Its situation, why so called, and a different account of that foundation, 393. Described, 394. The work goes on after Al Mansur's death, 396. Completed and called Medinat Al Salam, or City of Peace, *ib.* The founder of it according to the Persians, 397. Whence called Irenopolis, *ib.*
- besieged by Hulaku, ii. 471. Betrayed to him by the wazir, 472. Plundered and destroyed, *ib.* Restored by him, 473. Besieged by Timur Bek, and its vigorous defence, 560. Taken and destroyed, with horrid massacre, *ib.* Ordered to be rebuilt, 566. Taken by Ismael Sofi, 602. By Shah Abbas, 616. The city flourishes, and learned men there, i. 408. Rise up in arms against the Turks, 482. A bloody fray between two sects about a passage in the Koran, 522. Plundered by the Safians, 528. Cruelly plundered by the Hanbalites, 531. Suffers under a most grievous famine, 548. Taken, plundered, and burnt, by the Turks, 630. Tumult by the rebel troops of Basiri, 654. Put to the sword by Togrol Bek, 655. Deep mourning there for the loss of Jerusalem, 684
- , kingdom, harrassed by the Seljuks, ii. 158. 160. By the rebel Basiri, 159. Subdued by Togrol Beg, and it passes to the Seljuks, *ib.* City and palace pillaged by Basiri, *ib.* Taken by sultan Massud, 188. Its palaces described, i. 394. The castle in the middle, 396, 399. Bridge, 398. Orthodox and schismatical bishops in it, 397. Various names, 398. College and other particulars, *ib.* Famous men, 399. Commerce, government, pasha, officers, and garrison, 400
- Khatun, the favourite wife of Abusaid, and how she became so, ii. 489, 490. Suspected of having poisoned him, 491. Put to death for it by Arba Khan, 492
- Baglana, or Buglana, a province in Dekan, described, iii. 138
- Bagnacavallians submit to the Bolognese, xv. 594
- Bagra Khan invades Khorasan, with his death and character, i. 596
- Bagrafa reduced by Katiba, i. 343
- Bahadr defeated by sultan Hemayun, iii. 54
- Khan sent to besiege the castle of Kangra, iii. 70
- Khan, his revolt and death, iii. 58
- Bahama islands, their situation and first discovery, xv. 269. Columbus's devotion on this occasion, and the pretext on which the sailor was refused his just reward, *ib.* (X). Settled by English proprietaries, 270. Being claimed by the Spaniards, they are put into a posture of defence, 272. Two expeditions of the Spaniards against them defeated, 273. Their natural history, *ib.*
- Bahao'ddawla succeeds as Emir Al Omra in Irak, i. 590. Cruelty to his nephew, and joins the Turks against the Deylamites, 591. Releases Samfamo'ddawla, 593. Deposes the khalif Al Tay, *ib.* and is governed by his favourite Moallam, 596. Forced to sacrifice him to the Baghdans, *ib.* Orders Al Kader to be prayed for, 614. His death and character, 616
- Mansur Ebn Nuro'ddawla dies and is succeeded by his son in Hella, &c. i. 669
- Bahao'ddin's tyranny at Ispahan, ii. 478
- Ayaz Seifin reigns at Hormuz, ii. 682. Civil wars, invaded by the Turks, and removes to the island of Brokht, *ib.* See Ayas.
- Bahadiyah taken by Mahmud Gazni, i. 609
- Baharam Shah, ninth sultan of Kerwan, ii. 195
- Baharsada, or Bahar Azgued, 68th king of Abissinia, vi. 253
- Bahi province in Manilla, iv. 190. Its excellent beetle, *ib.*
- Bahi Bok in Iran, ii. 483
- Bahia de todos los Santos captainry described, xiv. 479
- Bahram invited to the wazirat of Egypt, i. 702. Great service to khalif Al Hafedh, *ib.* and why deposed by him, 704. His fidelity, moderation, and retiring to Egypt, where he becomes a monk, but is taken prisoner and released, *ib.* Another account of his dying at court, 706
- Bahram Chubin opposes the Turks with great slaughter, ii. 137
- Shah, of the Gazni family, revolts from the Seljuks, but is reduced, ii. 182
- Shah, 17th king of Hormuz, defeats his rebel brother, also the king of Keys, and is murdered by Shaha-bo'ddin Isuf, ii. 686
- Shah, put to death by Turkan Khatun, ii. 307
- Shir, one of the conspirators against Husfayn, is bribed back by him, ii. 503
- Bahrayn taken by the Maskat Arabs, ii. 656. Redeemed for a sum, 658
- island described, ii. 687 (A). Strange springs, and pearl fishery, *ib.* Invaded by Thadi, 689. By Shamba, with slaughter and other disasters, 690
- Baia, Bayjah, or Begia, a great mart for corn, vii. 308. Where situate, *ib.*
- Bajadora, Cape, described, vii. 100
- Baiard, loss of the chevalier de, with his extraordinary character, ix. 212
- Bajaiah, or Bujiyah, Capital of the Kammaditish kingdom, i. 651. Put an end to by Togrol Bek, 654
- Bajazet marching towards the frontiers of Hungary, from an intercepted letter of Emanuel to Sigismund, suddenly invests Constantinople, xi. 73. Marches against Sigismund and cuts off his numerous army at Nicopolis, and the time of this action differently told, *ib.* (Q). Proposal made by his ambassador at Rome, relating to his brother Zem, accepted of by the pope, x. 45. See Bayezid
- Baikal lake, xiii. 29
- Baily, Mr. first governor of Hudson's Bay, xv. 153. Chief residence, and Indian neighbours, *ib.* Humanity to a French Jesuit, and discovering his real business, 155. Marches for Point Comfort, and delivers his authority to Lyddal, appointed governor, and then returns to England, *ibid.*
- Bakkan, kingdom, where situate, iv. 263
- Bakker Khan sent in pursuit of Jehan Ghir, ii. 76
- Bakht Soltan, his resentment against Burga sultan, ii. 707. Conquests and dynasties in Great Bukharia, 709. Defeated and slain by Shah Ismael, *ib.*
- Bakhtiyar's insolence and extortion on khalif Moti, i. 566
- Bakhtiars, who and where situate, ii. 663 (L). Come to the relief of Ispahan, *ib.*
- Bakhtishua made Al Rashid's chief physician, i. 418
- Bakirgan, a large province in Karazm, ii. 714
- Bakt Begum, Mereke's widow, given to Solyman Shah, ii. 524
- Baktuzun's treachery and ingratitude to Abu'l Hareith, i. 604. Defeated by Gazni, *ib.*
- Baku taken by Sofi Ismael, ii. 602
- Bal, prince of Indostan, subdued by Mahmud Gazni, i. 613
- Balaghate province, how divided and governed, iii. 133
- Balak, the son of Bahram, seizes on Aleppo, i. 697. Slain, and his army dispersed before Manbej, *ib.*
- Balafagun, where seated, i. 611
- , or Kombali, the metropolis of the eastern Turks, ii. 140. 146. Resigned by Ilekk Khan, 141 (P). Described, 147
- Balatian, patriarch of Egypt, highly favoured by khalif Harun, 437
- Balayan, province in Manilla, described, iv. 188
- Balbek, or Baalbek, taken by Saleh Ebn Marcas, i. 628. Where situated, and fortified by Heraclius, i. 139
- Balbiano, the Maltese admiral, his great bravery in Candia, vii. 509
- Balboa's attempt on Darien successful against the Indians, and made chief of that settlement, xiv. 157. Artful management, and replaced in Darien, *ib.* Makes alliances with some caziques, *ib.*
- Nunez, his exploits in Darien, xiv. 159. Conspiracy to seize his person discovered, and he is appointed captain general, *ib.* Goes in quest of the South Sea, with his success on the way, and execution made by his dogs, 160. First sight of the South Sea, and prophetic extasy thereon, *ib.* How he takes possession of it, *ib.* The terror struck into the Indians by his musquetry, with their caziques reception, and presents interchanged, *ib.* Reaches the sea, and takes possession of it for Spain, 161. Further attempts and great distress, *ib.* Gets intelligence of Peru, *ib.* Why he returns to Darien by a different route, *ib.* Civilities from an Indian cazique, 162. Violates his faith to Poncra, a great Indian lord, *ib.* Friendship of Cazique Boneniamo, and speech to Nunez, *ib.* Their distress for provisions,



- provisions, and friendship of several other caziques, *ib.* Tubanama attacked by surprise, 163. Establishes a colony in Pacorosa's dominions for gold and trade, *ib.* Arrival at Darien, *ib.* His great character, *ib.* Made lieutenant of the South Sea, 165, but thwarted by Arias d'Avila, governor of Darien, *ib.* Reconciled to the governor, and builds brigantines in the South Sea, 168. Misfortune to the timber and vessels by worms and flood, *ib.* His distress, and how extricated, *ib.* The vessels, after great difficulties, are built, *ib.* Sails to the continent eastward, and how prevented from landing, *ib.* Animosity between the father-in-law and son renewed, and the latter tried and beheaded, 169
- Baldaccio, the Florentine general, and Capponi's friend, assassinated, and why, *xiii.* 403. His character, *ib.* The barbarity of his enemies, and Machiavel's praise of his widow, *ib.*
- Balderic made duke of Friuli, and his transactions, *ix.* 519
- Baldivia port described, *xiv.* 473. The value of this place, *ib.* The town taken by the Dutch, *ib.* Its trade, 474
- Baldwin plunders a caravan, and makes a peace with Egypt, *i.* 692. Death and burial, 693 (Q)
- , king of Jerusalem, his death, *ii.* 185
- , assailed by the knights of Malta, *vii.* 383. Sad condition of his kingdom, and death, *ib.*
- , emperor of Constantinople, a person appears who styles himself so, and his fate, *ix.* 57
- , contest between him and the pope's legate, *ix.* 577
- , defeated and taken prisoner by the king of Bulgaria, *ix.* 614
- made Greek emperor, *x.* 200
- Balears, their conquest long projected before accomplished, *viii.* 173
- Balgaty Noyan assists at Oktay's coronation, *ii.* 334
- Balia in Florence discontinued, *xiii.* 413
- Baliga, the 10th khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 465
- Balik and Ebn Ali, &c. revolt against Al Kaher, who are betrayed and put to death, *i.* 527
- Balis taken by the Moslems, *i.* 220
- Balisan island in the East Indies, *iv.* 202
- Balise, Fort de la, where, *xv.* 58
- Balka, or Albelkaa, where situate, *i.* 143. By whom built, 368. Taken and plundered by the Mongls, *ii.* 311. Farther described, 456. Repaired by Haslayn, 505. Besieged by Timur Bek, 506. The citadel taken and destroyed by him, 507. The inhabitants ordered to rebuild the old city, *ib.*
- Balkh, an account of that city from an antient dirhem coined there, *i.* 429. Various masters, names, &c. 430. Other particulars concerning it, *ib.* Taken by Togrol Bek, Tamerlane, &c. 431. Its present state, fortifications, &c. 432. Its true longitude, latitude, and coin, *ib.*
- province described, *ii.* 456
- Ballanore, a potent lord in Malabar, who lived by piracy, *iii.* 163
- Ballafore, its dangerous bar and trade, *iv.* 394
- Balli, books sacred among the Siamese, *iv.* 335, 341
- Balsora, gulph of, where situate, *iv.* 502. Dutch settlements, *ib.* (O)
- Balthazar, Don, his birth a lucky incident for the minister Olivarez, *viii.* 296, whose obstinacy kindles a general war, *ib.* Acknowledged heir of Spain, 297. Dies, 306
- , Otho's brother, marries the heiress of Fondi, *x.* 467
- Baltimore, Lord, proprietary of Maryland, and the names of the first settlers, *xv.* 106. Expence of the first settlement of Maryland what, 107. Deprived of the power of naming a governor to Maryland, 108
- , the family of, declare themselves protestants, *xv.* 108
- Balu, or Bali, where, and by whom inhabited, *vi.* 321
- Baluchi of Hindustan, who, and whence, *iii.* 19
- in Persia, who, and where situate, *ii.* 653 (H). Join in Mirweis's revolt, *ib.* and with the rebel Mir Mahmud, 659
- Balyur, a sea-port on the Red Sea, *vi.* 321
- Bamaburinak province in Karazm, *ii.* 714
- Bamba dutchy, in Kongo, described, *vi.* 427. Tyrannic government, mines, fishery, &c. 428
- Bambela cruelly ravaged by the Giagas, *vi.* 415
- Bamberg made a bishopric, *x.* 644
- Bamiyan besieged by Jenghis Khan, with its stout defence, but taken and destroyed, *ii.* 314
- Ban island, where situate, *iv.* 266
- , the meaning of that word, and the form, *x.* 647 (F). *xi.* 334
- Banaka, Ebn Oka, his horrid ravages against the Christians, and raises the siege of Syce, *i.* 403
- Banana defeated and killed in Jurjan, *i.* 379
- Banares, university in Hindustan, *iii.* 17
- Banda island discovered, *iv.* 154
- belonging to the Dutch, *iv.* 489. Their government, &c. and their nutmeg parks how distributed, *ib.* (A)
- Bandar Abassi, the Dutch settlements at, *iv.* 502 (N)
- Bander Abbassi, or Gomrun, where situate, *ii.* 656 (Q)
- Bandi Angola, king of Angola, his tyrannic reign, *vi.* 505
- II. or Ngola Bandi, defeated by the Portuguese, *vi.* 507. Sends his sister Zingha to the Portuguese viceroy, but refuses to ratify the alliance with Portugal, *ib.* Defeated and slain, and commits his son to the care of the Giagas, 509
- Banditti, their increase, and a commotion in Rome upon seizing one of their chiefs, *x.* 113. Their progress; part of whom, in passing the Appenines, are destroyed by stones from the rocks, *xiii.* 331, and their force increases, through the accommodation between the Perugians and the Siannele, with their lawless exactions in their return towards Florence, 332. Pursued from place to place by the Florentines, they draw off precipitately, *ib.* And invade Pavia, *ib.* Account of their case, 334
- Banin tree in Hindustan described, *iii.* 3
- Banians, their religion and various sects, *iv.* 382
- Banka, Prince, his presents to the king of Rakan, *iii.* 106. Taken prisoner by him in his flight, 107. Put to death by the Kakan king, *ib.*
- Bankok fortified by general Farges, *iii.* 392. Gallant defence by the French, *ib.* Greatly distressed by the Siamese, 394, with the vast works made round it by them, *ib.*
- Baukial, head of the revolters against Al Mohtadi, decollated, *i.* 489
- Bantam plundered by the Portuguese, *iv.* 150
- court, state, and commerce, *iv.* 460 (U). Contest between two of its kings, 461. Decided by the assistance of the Dutch, *ib.* and the son infatuated by them, 462
- , King of, falls out with his old friends the Dutch, *iv.* 460
- Bantry-bay, the French fleet victorious there, *ix.* 470
- Banu, its various tribes whence sprung, *i.* 2 (B)
- Banna-dala expelled the Siriam fort by the Portuguese, *iii.* 272. Defeated by them, 273
- river in Loango, its large commerce for logwood, *vi.* 539
- Bannier, General, his successes in Bohemia as far as Prague, from which, on the junction of the elector of Saxony and Arnheim, he retires to Melnic, *xi.* 237. Attacks the Saxons near Parkheim in Mecklenburg, and takes Havelsberg in Pomerania, 243. Defeats the elector of Saxony and Hasfeldt, with great slaughter, in the plain of Wislock, and the consequences of that victory greatly in favour of the Swedes, *ib.* His conquests in Pomerania, 247. Progress in Saxony and Bohemia, but quits the siege of Frieberg, and defeats the Saxons under Maracini, with great slaughter, 249. Defeats Maracini a second time, upon his throwing a reinforcement into Frieberg, *ib.* Consequences of this victory to the Swedes, *ib.* The emperor's tampering only to amuse him, 250. Upon being joined by Longueville, he compels the duke of Brunswic to declare for him, 251. Joins Guebriant with a view of seizing on Ratisbon, but, after firing several shot, miscarries, 253. His masterly retreat, *ib.*
- taken prisoner, *xii.* 182. Defeats the Saxons, 339. Again defeats the Saxons, with the consequences of this victory, 340. Obliges eight regiments of Saxons to surrender, *ib.* Is greatly embarrassed, but extricates himself, at Torgau, *ib.* Defeats general Gallas, 341. His successes, *ib.* Marches towards Misnia, and why, 342. His successes in Bohemia, *ib.* Operations and attempt on Ratisbon, which miscarries, and why, 344. In the utmost danger and how extricated, *ib.* After a dangerous march through the Bohemian forest he reaches Annabert, and is joined by the Weimar army, *ib.* Death at Halberstadt, and great character, *xi.* 253. *xii.* 344 (A). Consequences of his death, *ib.* *xi.* 254
- Baptist, (St. John) highly respected by the Moslems, *i.* 321. Fables about his murder, *ib.*
- Baptista, (John) a bishop, sent into Abissinia, and his death, *vi.* 279
- Barabinzians described, *xiii.* 38
- Barak, a Kharajite, wounds Moawiyah at Damascus, *i.* 274. His cruel punishment, *ib.*
- Barak.



- Barak, Khan of Kipjak, his reign and competitors, ii. 449  
 —, fifth Khan of Buckharia, ii. 465  
 Baran invaded by Timur Bek, and the canal made by him there, ii. 543  
 Baranca del Malambo, a town in Santa Martha, and its trade described, xiv. 450  
 Barar, province of, subdued by Akbar, iii. 61  
 Baratene islands discovered and described, v. 62. Inhabitants, ib.  
 Baravel, (St.) island, where situated, iv. 266  
 Barbadoes, history and first discovery, xv. 173. First patent for it, ib. granted to Hay earl of Carlisle, who settles it, 174. Great fertility and tobacco trade, ib. Clashing of two settlements of the English there, 174. Original of its sugar trade, 175. Comprehensive state of this affair, ib. Account of its population, 176. Negroes imported into it, 177. Their conspiracies how prevented, ib. Sir George Ayscue sent with a fleet against it, 178. After some difficulty it submits to the parliament, 179. How its population decreases, ib. Patent surrendered, and proprietary government dissolved, 180. The king's demands of a tax on the assembly, ib. Laws by whom collected, 182. Some of its acts remarkable, ib. Damage by a hurricane, 183. Measures to prevent the bad consequences, ib. How oppressed by the African company and otherwise, ib. The ships of the island seized, and consequences thereof, ib. New taxes laid on that island, 184. Remarkable answer to their representation, 185. A plot among the negroes discovered and punished, ib. Its government very profitable, ib. Appoints agents in London, and their high prosperity, ib. Acts passed, but their affairs mismanaged, ib. Great distress and loyalty, 186. Another conspiracy of the negroes, and their plan, 187. How discovered and punished, ib. They invade Martinico, ib. Miserable mismanagement of this expedition, 188. Loyalty, ib. Fit out privateers against the French, and their success, ib. Grand reception of the duke and duchess of Portland in their way to Jamaica, 191. Concern in settling St. Lucia and St. Vincent, ib. Article of instruction to its governors about these, 192. Assistance given to their settlement, ib. Disadvantages what, 193. Disappointed of redress, and their striking complaints against their governor, 194. Many other private complaints, ib. Governor's vigorous defence and return to England, ib. The islanders petition to the king, 195. They obtain some redress, ib. and this to what owing, ib. Merits of the islanders, and their disappointment at the capitulation of Guadaloupe, 203 (T). Services in the expedition to Martinico, 206. Description of it and chief town, 207. Its fortifications, 208. Attempts of the French against the island, number of its inhabitants, and military state, with the nature of its government, ib. (X). The bishop of London's attempt to introduce suffragans into America discouraged, 209. Military establishment how supported, and the duties imposed, ib. Number of negroes, and its trade, 210. Its exports, ib. Inhabitants, 211. Treatment of the negroes, ib. Division of the island, its soil, and product, ib. Its cattle, 212. Birds and fishes, 213  
 Barbadorio, the memorable spirit of that Florentine deputy to the pope at Avignon, xiii. 339  
 Barbara, princess of Angola, redeemed by her sister Zingha, and noble reception, vi. 519. Forced to marry her churlish general, 521. Succeeds Zingha in the throne, with her weakness to her husband, 531. Sickness and death, 533. Bloody obsequies, ib.  
 —, the empress, her infamous character, xi. 89 (D). Scandalous reply on instancing the continence of the turtle, ib. Part of her character probably a lye of the catholics, ib. sub fin. not. Released, and an annual allowance granted her, 90.  
 Barbarigo, (Marco) the 73d doge of Venice, his character and domestic transactions, x. 275. Remarkable decree for the poor, and his death, ib.  
 —, (Agostino) 74th doge of Venice, his character, x. 275. Embassy to the grand seignior, ib. War with Sigismund lord of the Grisons, and his general takes Rovero, at which siege bombs were used, though not much known in Italy, ib. Death and character of that Doge, 285  
 Barbarini, (Lanfranc) betrays the Genoese fleet off Sicily, and his punishment, x. 549  
 Barbaro, his indefatigable zeal, and his repulse by Italus, x. 253  
 Barbarossa invited by the Algerines, vii. 242. His extraction, &c. ib. Ingratitude and cruelty to the Algerines, 243. Treachery to prince Eutemi, ib. (D). Proclaims himself king of Algiers, 244. Guilty of ill conduct, ib. Plotted against by the Algerines, 245. Defeats the Spaniards before Algiers, ib. viii. 227. The Arabs plot against him, vii. 246. Forced to abandon Tremecen, 247. Defeated and slain by Charles V. 248. His head sent to the king of Tremecen, ib.  
 Barbarossa, (Hayradin) on his brother's defeat and death, is proclaimed king of Algiers, vii. 248. Destroys or takes six imperial galleys, viii. 239. His expedition to Tunis, vii. 319. Outwits the Tuniseans, 320. Enters Tunis in triumph, ib. Defeats Charles the fifth's designs in favour of Hassan, ib. Fortifies Goletta, and arms all the Moslems against him, 321. Noble defence of Goletta, 322. Forced to abandon it, ib. His great loss, and prepares for the defence of Tunis, 323. Bloody orders against the Christian slaves frustrated, 324. His hasty flight out of Tunis to Bona, ib. Made a batha and maritime general, he lays waste the emperor's coast, viii. 239, and Preiendes, sent to Tunis for intelligence, is betrayed and beheaded, 241. Subjects the kingdom of Tunis to the grand seignior, xi. 148. He, together with the French, takes Nice, but not the citadel, viii. 245. His fleet winters in Toulon, and there exercises piracy, ix. 229. Attacks Corfu, and Soliman repulsed from before the citadel, x. 338. Attempt on Candia defeated, 340. Retreats before the confederate fleet to Gallipoly, and his tampering with Doria, 342. Ravages the coasts of Italy, who, with the French admiral d'Enguien, besieges Nice, but is obliged to raise it, 348. Dies old, viii. 246. x. 348  
 —, (Mohammed) king of Granada, murdered by don Pedro, when he came to Seville to submit himself, viii. 55. Pregnant marks of barbarity in this act, ib. (W)  
 —, (See Frederic I. emperor) proposals from him to Waldemar about an alliance, and a conference between them, xii. 19. His insidious views, and embassy to Canute, 21. He excites the Vandals to a war against the latter, ib. Resolves on an expedition to Palestine, reconciles all differences, and recalls Henry Leo from banishment, 23. His terrible menaces to the Venetian ambassadors, x. 198. His son Otho's fleet defeated, from which time the ceremony of marrying the sea is continued, ib. Through Otho's means, who was taken prisoner, a peace is concluded, with the emperor's reception at Venice, and reconciliation with the pope, ib. While the Genoese extend their commerce, and aggrandize their state, the emperor arrives in Italy with a formidable army, 541, who consents to a treaty with them, upon finding them resolute, ib. Invades Poland, but a treaty is concluded, xii. 464  
 Barbary, a treaty concluded by the States general with its maritime cities, also with Fez and Morocco, xi. 499  
 —, Modern, its state and history, vii. 121. Situation and limits, ib. Soil, climate, &c. 122. Seasons, ib. (A). Inhabitants, 123. Why so called, 125. Its history under the Almoravides, 128. Under the Almohedes, 130. Its state quite changed after the extinction of the Almoravid dynasty, 132  
 Barberini, their retreat from Rome to Paris, with their reception, ix. 416. But restored to favour and confidence at Rome, x. 149  
 Barbinais, a French captain, his odd description of the isle of Guam, iv. 244, sub not.  
 Barbin's banishment changed into perpetual imprisonment, ix. 359  
 Barbo, old, his speech in the senate of Venice, x. 294  
 Barbora, a town in the kingdom of Adel, vi. 325  
 Barcan, plain of, the Turks defeated there by Sobieski and Lorrain, who take the town of Barcan and Strigonia, xi. 301  
 —, fort, forced by the Poles, and the garrison put to the sword, while Tekei appears on the surrounding mountains, but retreats, xii. 542  
 Barcelona besieged and taken by Lewis of Aquitaine, viii. 124. After a gallant defence, it surrenders upon its own terms, 195, 345. Taken, and Catalonia mostly recovered, 310. Besieged by Philip and Tesse, but quit it with the loss of their artillery and magazines, 359. The commons there seize the city, and refuse to obey the new government, in opposition to the nobility and clergy, 370. Invested, and the trenches opened by Berwick, xv. 554. Message to the inhabitants from Wishart, and their respectful answer, with the brutality of the French, and number of bombs thrown in, ib. Their moving letter to Wishart has no effect, and obliged to surrender, ib.  
 Barchochab sets up for the Jewish Messiah, v. 490. His extraction and residence at Bither, 491. Declares war against Adrian, and his sad end, ib. (A)



- Barclay, (Robert) the famous Quaker, governor of New Jersey, xiv. 547
- Barda taken by the Russians, i. 544
- Bards, or Scialdres, in antient Scandinavia, their employment, xi. 672
- Bareith, Marquis of, on the death of the prince of Baden, is made imperial general on the Rhine, and, to satisfy the directory of Mentz, prince Eugene is appointed to command alternately, xi. 337. Flies from the lines of Stollhoffen before the French under Villars, ib. who raises contributions in Baden-Dourlach and Wirtemberg, ib.
- Barentz, the pilot, sails in search of the North-east passage, iv. 409. Dies in Nova Zembla, 410
- Baretto, (Don Francis) his ill-timed hostility against Monomotapa, and poisoned by the Arabs, vi. 375
- Barham opposed by Redwan in the vazirate of Egypt, vi. 50. Deposed, and retires to Upper Egypt, where he becomes a monk, and is taken prisoner, but released, ib. See Bahram.
- Bari revolts from the Greeks, with the cause, x. 395. Again recovered, ib. Council there, ix. 576
- Baribeg abandons Baghdad to Soffi Ismael, ii. 602
- Baridi, Al, becomes tributary to the khalifat, i. 532. Driven out of Waset by Yahcam, and his impudent demand on the khalif, 540. Fresh attempt on Baghdad, 541. Driven out of Baghdad, ib. Fresh attempt upon it, and defeated by Abu'l Hasan, ib.
- Barka, where situate, and taken by Habbasah, i. 512
- Barkah Khan invades Iran with 300,000 men, but prevented by sudden death, ii. 478 (A)
- Barkalon, or Praklang, his office in Siam, iii. 347
- Barkiarok succeeds Malek Shah in Irak, i. 676. ii. 173. Escapes out of his mother-in-law's hands, i. 676. ii. 174. Defeats his rebel uncles, i. 676. ii. 174. Causes himself to be prayed for, i. 680. Crowned at Baghdad, and forced to fly from his brother Mohammed, by whom he is defeated, 685. ii. 175. Defeats him in turn, i. 685. Divides the empire with him, 687, ii. 175. Dies at Ispahan, with his character, i. 687. ii. 177
- Barkok, sultan of Egypt, invited to amity with Timur Bek, ii. 532
- Barmecidæ, their antient origin, i. 427. Some of the most famous members of it, and in high esteem, ib.
- Barmas in Pegu, their dress, iii. 244
- in Ava, their country, origin, and conquests, iii. 278. Government, 279. They first conquer Ava, 281
- , or Bramas, who, and where situated, iii. 252. Tributary to Pegu, and they conquer it, 253. Their other conquests, ib. and 115,000 slaughtered before Meletay, 255. Conquests in India, 256, under Chau-Migrem, 260 & 262
- Barnagash, or Barnagasho, a fabulous kingdom on the Red Sea, and whence that mistake, vi. 320
- Barnet sent commander into India, iv. 359. His success against the French, ib. His death, 360
- Barneveldt, his steadiness, xi. 486. Proposes restraining the liberty of the press, which is published but never put in force, 487. His great anxiety, 488. In conjunction with Maurice, he terminates the differences raised by the Haarlem deputies, 490. Publishes a remonstrance against libels impeaching his character, with a reward offered for the discovery of the author of a libel against him and the states general, 491. Imprisoned, condemned, and executed, 495. His character and high veneration for his memory, ib. (B). The odium this unjust action brings on prince Maurice, ib.
- Barnucium betrayed to the Arabs by Sergius, i. 339
- Baroch, a sea-port in Hindustan, famed for its excellent cotton, iii. 10. Dismantled by Aureng Zib, ib.
- Baron, an Huron captain, his practices against the French, and treaty with the Tsonnonthouans, &c. xiv. 655
- Baronowsky, insolence of his confederated army, and the Polish senate proposes a conference with him, with his demands, xii. 548. Refusal of them makes him send detachments to raise contributions over the kingdom, but, through the remonstrances of the nobility, he recalls them to the skirts of the republic, 549. His ravages still continued, 553. The confederate army reduced to submission, ib. His extreme meanness on being pardoned, ib.
- Barraba, desert of, and copper-mines there, xiii. 43. Forts in it and on its borders, 48
- Barradas, the Jesuit, his arrival in Abissinia, vi. 292
- Barre, M. la, his arrival in New France, and difference with la Sale, xiv. 617. Allegations against him not groundless, ib. Calls an assembly of the inhabitants for advice, and the mistaken policy of the French court, 618. Negotiation with the Iroquois, and heavy complaints sent to court against the English, ib. The insolence of the Iroquois, ib.
- Resolves on an offensive war, with his assembling a body of French Indians to little effect, 619. Preparations for an expedition, with the number of men, ib. Receives a reinforcement from France, 620, with the import of two letters sent him, ib.
- Barremporter, or Bramaputren, a river in India, described, iii. 223
- Barreto, (Don Pedro) viceroy of India, iv. 131
- , (Nunez de) intended to be sent patriarch into Abissinia, vi. 273. Sues the viceroy of Goa to get intelligence from Abissinia, but attempted in vain, 277. Dies there, ib.
- Barricades-day, whence so called, ix. 206
- Barfalli, kingdom in Guinea, described, with the state and retinue of its king, vii. 51
- Barselar, a city in Kanara, and its Dutch factory, iii. 160
- Bart, M. du, success of his squadron of privateers against a Dutch merchant fleet, xi. 647
- Barth, (Gaspard de) his death, with an account of him, xi. 278 (F)
- Bartholomew, St. cruel massacre of the Protestants on that day in Paris, ix. 266. Medals struck on that occasion, 270, sub not.
- of Prato put to death by the Florentine general Bernard, and the consequences, xiii. 358
- , St. account of that French island, xv. 235
- Baruc of Germersheim, a learned Jewish Cabalist, v. 569 (F)
- Basafiri raises a new revolt in Baghdad, i. 653. ii. 158. Deprives Omrah Malak of his power, i. 654. His rise and insolence, ib. (A). Abandoned by his troops, ib. Applies afresh to the Egyptian khalif, and is driven out of Mawfel by Togrol Bek, 655. Induces Ibrahim to revolt, and enters Baghdad with the Egyptian standard, ib. Severity to the wazir and khalif, 656. ii. 159. Defeated and killed, with his true name, 657. ii. 159
- Bascow Bojar, the rebels under him defeat the czar Zusky, xiii. 143. He is piqued, and goes over to the czar, acquainting him that there was no real Demetrius, with the taking and executing their ringleaders, ib.
- Basha of Egypt, his charges and revenues, vi. 5. Extortion on the Arab Cheyks, 7
- Bashar Ebn Saad, the Ansar, his success against the kingdom of Yaman, &c. i. 75
- Ebn Artah, his conquests in Africa Propria, i. 289. Ravages against the Christian territories, 290 & 294
- Ebn Merwan, made governor of Cusa, i. 332
- Bashee islands described, iv. 256 (D)
- Basil, a Greek, causes the loss of Tyre, i. 225
- , the Armenian, his many robberies and death, i. 691
- , the famous council of, opened, x. 2. Their proceedings, and the pope sends full powers to Julian to dissolve it, ib. (B). The fathers resolve to continue the council, with the purport of their letter to all the faithful, 3. The French declare for it, with their proceedings in the second session, ib. The pope and cardinals invited to come to Basil, while deputies from the council have a conference with those of the Bohemians at Egra, and safe conduct allowed them to Basil, 4 (C). Arrival of Hussite deputies with great pomp, ib. Their defence of their four articles and answers to them, 5. The pope's reasons for transferring it to Bologna, ib. This answered by the emperor, and cardinal Julian continues it, ib. The emperor appoints deputies, and the elector of Bavaria as protector of the council, x. 2, which is accordingly opened, ib. Alterations made by the council in the Bohemian articles sent back, to which they agree, and submit to the Church, 6. Upon this the peace entitled Compactata is received by all the Hussites, ib. Among their proceedings several decrees are passed against the pope's authority, x. 4. Probably countenanced by the emperor, who publishes a bull, ib. Further proceedings against the pope, ib. Arrival of the emperor there, and the term of proceeding against the pope prorogued, with other matters in the council, 7. Legates sent by them into Italy, in favour of the pope, ib. Deputies from the Greek emperor arrive there, and the resolutions of the councils thereupon, with other decrees compelling the Jews to hear sermons, &c. and for the study of the eastern languages, ib. Deputies sent from that council to treat with the Bohemians, 8. Several decrees against the concubinage of the clergy, ib. Mandate, to the famous congress at Arras, ib. Nuncios sent from the council to the emperor of Constantinople, 9. Several restrictions laid upon the pope and cardinals by the council, 10. Plenary indulgencies granted by the fathers to defray the expences of the Greeks who should come to the œcumenical council, but exclaimed against by the pope's legates, ib. (E). The pope's



pope's offers for that purpose rejected by the fathers, *ib.* Request made to the fathers by the clergy of Denmark and Norway granted, *xii.* 100. Diffentions revived there about the place for the œcumenical council which the fathers appoint, and the council divided into factions, which publish separate decrees, *x.* 10. The pope confirms the decrees of the minority, *ib.* Nuncios sent by each party to Constantinople, the Greek emperor embarking in the pope's galley, *11.* The factious party irritated against the pope, with their proceedings thereupon, *ib.* Notwithstanding the emperor's advice, the council declare the pope guilty of contumacy, *ib.* The pope transfers the council to Ferrara, which the fathers at Basil declare null, and suspend the pope, *ib.* & 12. Cardinal Julian and other cardinals leaving Basil, the cardinal of Arles is created president, *ib.* The fathers produce new articles of accusation against the pope, and admit witnesses to prove them, *13.* Their deputies in the diet of Nuremberg refuse all terms of accommodation, *ib.* Great confusion in the council, *15.* A decree against the eight propositions of the catholic faith, and relics substituted in the room of the absent bishops, *ib.* They depose the pope, and only seven bishops present, *ib.* (K). A decree confirming the immaculate conception, *ib.* (L). Proceedings in favour of Felix V. *16.* Publish a letter, supporting the authority of a council above a pope, *ib.* *xiii.* 392. How the different Christian powers stood affected at this juncture, *x.* 16 (M). Decree for reinstating their adherents in their benefices, *17.* A decree passed there for celebrating the Visitation of the Virgin Mary, *ib.* An interview there between the emperor and Felix, who quits that city, *18.* Decree translating the council to Lyons, *ib.* Why that council assents to convoking a new council, *xi.* 94, also to Lausanne, where they terminate the schism, *96.* After passing a decree in favour of Felix V. and owning Nicholas V. the council is dissolved, *x.* 21. The joy this causes in Rome, and the bulls published thereon, *ib.* Basil, the bishop of, his address to God on the election of Rodolphus, *xi.* 4. (Q)  
 — city, account of, and alliance with the Swiss cantons, *xv.* 447 (Y)  
 Basilan, a fruitful island near Mindanao, *iv.* 204. Clove trees why rooted up by the king, *ib.* (E). The people Mohammedans, *ib.*  
 Basilica reduced by the Venetians, *x.* 263 (B)  
 Basilides, or Adyam Segued, 93d king of Abissinia, *vi.* 254. Proclaimed by the revolvers, *297.* Succeeds his father, *301.* Persecutes the Romanists, banishes the patriarch to Fremona, and his answer to the patriarch's expostulatory letter, *ib.* Defeated by the Gallas, *304.* Exasperated against the Jesuits, and the remainder of his reign variously represented, *305.* Alarmed by false reports from Europe, *307.* Bribes the bashas of Suekem to his interest, and his jealousy of his brother Claudius whether well grounded, *ib.* Falsely accused of other crimes, *308.* His precaution to secure his brother, &c. *ib.* Causes a general revolt by the monks, *ib.* Charge against him much to be suspected, *309* (Z). Why said to be unfortunate in his wars, *310.* Defeated by the Agaus, *ib.* Severity against the Romanists, and defeated by the revolted mountaineers, *ib.* Invaded by the king of Adel, *ib.* Ill successes contradicted by abbot Gregory, *ib.* and by the French physician Poncet, *311.* Severity to the revolted monks, *ib.* His character, devotion, and pompous dress, &c. *312*  
 Basilus, the emperor, invades Mesopotamia, *i.* 589. Forced to make peace, and enters into alliance with the Russians, *590.* Defeats Phocas by sea and land, *ib.* Expedition into Armenia, and makes peace with the governor, *596.*  
 — Protosnatharius, the Greek admiral, his descent on Sicily, *i.* 553  
 — king of Nubia, his embassy to wazir Bedr Al Jemal, *i.* 670  
 — Demetriwitz revenges his father Demetrius's disaster, *xiii.* 92  
 — the Blind, the son of Basilus Demetriwitz, his various fortune, *xiii.* 93  
 — Iwanowitz, formerly Gabriel, after taking off young Demetrius, succeeds his father John Basilowitz, czar of Moscow, *xiii.* 96. The Expectations of disturbance in Russia and Poland disappointed, *ib.* Takes Pleskow by treachery, and Smolensko, *97.* His dangers increase, and the emperor Maximilian breaks off his alliance with him, *98.* Counterplots Sigismund, who stirs up the Crim Tartars to invade Muscovy, *99.* Unsuccessful in Livonia, through the grand master Plettenberg, *ib.* His policy, *ib.* Concludes a truce with Poland, with his treachery to the duke of Servia, whom he imprisons, and then seizes on his dominions, *100.* Fruitless expedition of his two generals

into Casan, *ib.* Repudiates his consort Solomea for barrenness, and marries Glinky's niece Helena, *ib.* & 101. Renews the truce with Poland, *ib.* His death and character, his son John succeeding him under Glinky's regency, *ib.*  
 Basilowitz, (John) great duke of Muscovy, his character and marriages, *xiii.* 93. Shakes off the yoke of the Tartars, through his consort Sophia's means and his own resolution, *ib.* Makes himself master of Casan, where he is crowned, with his other conquests, *94.* particularly Great Novogrod, which yields him an immense treasure, but for the present puts it under the protection of the Poles, but soon after establishes magistrates of his own there, the several petty princes of Russia submitting, *ib.* Poland being in great distress, purchases a cessation of arms, and Servia submits to the Russians, *ib.* Intrigues of his consort Sophia for her own children, and an account of them, *96* (L). His death and character, with an account of his person, and other transactions, *ib.*  
 — II. (John) an infant, succeeds his father John Basilowitz, czar of Muscovy, *xiii.* 102. His uncles miscarry in their attempts to wrest the scepter from him, *ib.* An extraordinary embassy from the czar to the emperor Charles V. and its views, *ib.* Invades Casan, but his troops mutinying before the capital of that name, is forced to return home, *ib.* He punishes the rebels, attacks the city of Casan again, and, by springing a mine, enters and takes it, with its king and queen, *103.* He also takes Astracan, *ib.* (P). The archbishop of Dorpt and the Livonians agree to terms with the czar, *ib.* but the Livonians, being joined by the Swedes, violate them; upon which Basilowitz invades Finland, where a peace is concluded with Gustavus Vasa of Sweden, *104.* Applies again to the emperor for German artists, &c. but to no purpose, and his reception of the Livonian ambassadors, with his sending them home by round-about ways, *105.* His declaration of war against the Livonians, and the Russians ravage Livonia, *ib.* They sue for peace, but the negotiation broken off by an accident, *ib.* His policy, with a prolongation of the truce between Russia and Sweden, *107.* Very grossly affronted by the Poles, *ib.* Declines the offer of an alliance from Sweden against the Poles, by whom his troops are twice worsted, *ib.* A very dangerous plot against him discovered, and the pretences for it, *108.* He feigns to abdicate, and a pathetic address from Moscow to resume the government, with his reply, *ib.* He reascends the throne, with the necessary precautions for his future safety, particularly a body-guard, *109.* He sends an embassy to queen Elizabeth for a treaty of commerce, *ib.* Proposal to queen Elizabeth for a retreat, &c. deferred in answering, *110.* Another conspiracy against the czar by Petrowitz, and his tragical end by Basilowitz's own hand, *ib.* An ambassador from, and sends another to, queen Elizabeth, with what passed, *111.* A letter from him to the queen, complaining of a slight put upon him, with her answer, which proves satisfactory, *ib.* His severe punishment of his brother George and Novogrod, with the occasion, *112.* His policy in declaring Magnus duke of Holstein king of Livonia, *ib.* Prepares to put Magnus in possession of his kingdom by force, *113.* Makes a truce with Poland, but rejects overtures of peace from John of Sweden, *114.* Ravages Finland and Livonia with two powerful armies, *ib.* Takes Wittenstein, &c. but is defeated by the Swedes under Claas Ackeson, with a small body of men, *ib.* Expresses a desire of peace with Sweden, and Magnus marries a relation of his at Novogrod, with the czar's behaviour on the occasion, *ib.* Takes the castles that were ceded to the Danes, *115.* Agreement between him and Magnus, which the latter violates, and the former's revenge, *116.* Noble behaviour towards Magnus, and just indignation against the people of Wenden, *ib.* Takes several places, and permits Magnus, after some reproaches, to go to his consort at Kackenhausen, *117.* Sends a numerous army against Pleskow, *ib.* Solicits peace with the Poles, who resolve to continue the war, and take several places from the Russians, and burn Wielkiluki, *119.* His scheme, with his marriage, and that of his son, *ib.* Desires the pope's mediation between him and Poland, and on what condition, *120.* Remonstrance made by several Russian nobles to the czar, who is greatly incensed, and accidentally kills his own son, with his grief hereupon, *122.* A full account of this matter, *123* (A). Magnificent funeral, and large sums to pray incessantly for his soul, *ib.* Makes a truce with the Swedes, and evades the demand of the pope's legate for re-uniting the church of Russia with the see of Rome, with a particular circumstance which gives the czar a great dislike to the pope, *ib.* Worsted by the Tartars, he makes



- makes peace with them, and dies, with his regard for the people's welfare, and desire to his son, 124. His great character, *ib.* Utter abhorrence of the Jews, and unfeigned devotion, with an observation of Milton on this prince, 125 (C). Determined to civilize his people, *ib.* His great virtues, *ib.* Inflexible in preferring merit, 126. Detested drunkards, and composed a body of laws, with his uncommon forbearance, and striking proofs of his firmness, *ib.* His person described, great memory and magnificence, with his issue, his eldest son Theodore succeeding, *ib.*
- Basage**, his History of the Jews maimed and corrupted by that of Paris, v. 483 (B). Unjustly censured and misrepresented, also vindicated, *ib.* *sub not. & passim*
- Baba**, city, by whom built, with its bay described, i. 408. Trade, inhabitants, colleges, and learned men, *ib.* Taken and abandoned by the Karmatians, 518. Relieved by Mohallebi, the wazir of Moezzo'ddawla, 551. Taken by Adado'ddawla, 573, and by Sharfo'ddawla, 588. See *Bofra*
- Bafans** (Bofrans) severely treated by Hejai, i. 335. Revolt against Merwan, 336
- Bafia**, besieged and taken by the confederates, but recovered by the duke of Ferrara, x. 301
- Bafidas's** voyage to America, xiv. 149
- Bafils**, marshals Montmorency and Colfe sent to that prison, 12. 269
- Bafowado** how given in China, iii. 589
- Bafuri**, the Malabaric name for the small-pox, whence, iii. 202
- Baffam**, an opulent city in Vizapur, described, iii. 139. Subject to the Portuguese, iv. 169
- Baffora**, its vast yearly commerce, iv. 98. Excellent situation for it, *ib.* (L). European factories, *ib.* The first French consul when settled there, 622. Its extensive trade with India, *ib.*
- Bafway**, on the Grain Coast, described, vii. 12
- Batakola**, a town in Kanara, iii. 160
- Batanists**, or Assassins, their rise and intrepidity, ii. 170
- Bataniyah**, or Batanists, who, with their conquests in Persian Irak, i. 671. Assassinate the Egyptian khalif, 699
- Batavia**, antiently Kaleppa and Jocatra, its condition at the coming of the Dutch, iv. 419. By whom called *Batavia*, 421
- , New, by whom built, and made the foundation of a new empire, iv. 421. Twice besieged by the king of Java, 426. By the king of Bantam, 442. Indian princes sent to it for their education, 448. When and by whom beautified, 455. The city, government, and commerce, described, 474. Islands defending its harbour, 475 (I). Fortifications, *ib.* Garrison, citadel, &c. 476. Indian inhabitants, *ib.* Manners, habits, &c. 477
- Batavian**, or Hollanders, their antient history, xi. 391
- Batavis**, a kind of Arabian hermits, cause a revolt, and slaughtered by Salla Chirios, vi. 291
- Batayut**, or Al-Batayut, made wazir of Egypt, i. 700
- Bathida** persecutes the Jews in France, v. 552
- Bathuel**, brother of Siward, ascends the Danish throne, as 418 king, xi. 670. Deplorable state of Denmark, and affairs retrieved by Jarmeric, Siward's son, to whom Bathuel resigns, *ib.*
- Batiba**, territory of, described, i. 596
- Bator**, (Stephen) elected king of Poland, upon the abdication of Henry de Valois, duke of Anjou, preferably to the emperor, xi. 175. Account of the competitors, *ib.* (F). He marries the princess Ann, and is crowned, with an account of his great qualities and rise, xii. 494 (J). Invests Dantzick, with Collen's bravery, and death in a sally, upon which a peace is concluded with the Dantzickers, 495. He applies to domestic administration, and puts the Polish cavalry on a good footing, called the *Quartienne*, 498. The czar Basilowitz II. sends an embassy against him to the emperor Maximilian, but king Stephen sends another to the czar for peace, xiii. 115. His embassy to the czar for satisfaction, and war declared in an extraordinary manner by the former's ambassador, with the czar's reply, 117. Great preparations on both sides, the king disciplines the Cossacks, and attaches them to Poland, xii. 498. xiii. 118. Conquests of the Poles and Russians, *ib.* The king takes Polozkow, &c. *ib.* Draws towards Pleskow, and, notwithstanding the difficulties, lays siege to it, with the bravery of the besiegers and besieged, 121. While the king is taking measures for the reduction of Riga, he dies, xii. 499. Confusions hereupon, and the competitors for the crown, 500. His character, and Latin epitaph, 499 (A)
- Bats**, extraordinary, of Hindustan, iii. 5
- Batua**, its gold mines, vi. 377 (F). Castles antiently built for their safe guard, *ib.*
- Batu**, or Patu, Khan, made governor of Kipjak, ii. 335. Accompanies Supalaj to the Caspian Sea, 346. Defeated, and how kept from retreating, 352. Presides at the election of Khan Mengko, 354, and nominates him to the succession, *ib.*
- Batu**, or Badu, Khan, his reign and conquests, ii. 445. Successes and conquests in Russia, 706. Relinquishes them to his brother Sheybani, *ib.* His death, 445
- Batuir**, its desert situation, ii. 544. Taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, with the sad carnage there, *ib.*
- Batta**, dukes, their extraction, vi. 471. Become tributary to Kongo, and their capital described, *ib.*
- Battel**, (Andrew) his account of the Giagas, vi. 415. His abode with them, 418
- Bavaria**, Duke of, why divested of his dominions, which are given to the emperor's son Henry, x. 651, who is declared king of the Romans, and the emperor drives the duke out of Carinthia into Hungary, *ib.* War between that house and Austria, with a truce concluded, xi. 56
- , Duke of, declines being chosen king of the Romans, xi. 198. Reduces the Protestants of Upper Austria, who are pardoned, 202. Invades Bohemia, and offers the Protestants terms, with his reply upon their refusal, 203. The electoral dignity transferred by the diet to the house of Bavaria, 210. The other electors and princes how swayed herein, *ib.* Is admitted into the electoral college, 212. Makes a separate peace with France, 268. Laid under contribution, and the elector withdraws to Salzburg, 269. Declared head of the catholic union, 275. His observation on rejecting the imperial throne, with the intrigues of the French in this matter, 277. A partition treaty between the three brothers for the Bavarian dominions, xi. 62. The elector assumes the command of the army, and takes Albe Royale, 304, also Belgrade by assault, 307. Openly declares for France, after seizing Ulm, &c. 325. His successes against the imperial generals, and taking possession of Ratibon, 326. Takes Inspruck, &c. but the boors oblige him to quit Tirol, 327
- , cruelties of the imperialists there, notwithstanding a treaty, xi. 333. False accusation alleged by the Austrians, with an oppressive edict published by Lowenstein there, *ib.* Revolt caused thereby, and being defeated, a treaty is granted, but observed like the former, *ib.* The elector, together with the elector of Cologne, is put under the ban by the Aulic council, with the ceremony in pronouncing this decree in the emperor's presence, 334. Complains against the severity and informality of this sentence, *ib.* The imperial court confiscates the estates of the disaffected ministers and officers there, 338. Dismembering of it by the emperor's authority, 345. Truce concluded with it by Sweden, xii. 350
- , Duke of, made hereditary governor of the Netherlands, viii. 341
- , history of that electorate, xv. 467. Its antient and modern extent, with its capital and other towns, *ib.* Its four great bailliages, *ib.* Antiquity of this house and derivation from the counts of Scheyren, 468. Passes into other families, and at length to its hereditary lords, *ib.* Its duke how chosen emperor, 613. His Britannic majesty observes a neutrality, but is forced to change his measures, and defeats the French at Dettingen, *ib.*
- Bavarians** take Kempten and Weissemburg, beating count Pals, xi. 325. Their menaces to Ratibon, with the disputes in the diet thereupon, 327
- Baubek Khan** severely reprov'd by Shah Abbas, iii. 114
- Baucher**, a powerful squadron under him sent to Brasil, but the Dutch at length routed, xi. 548
- Bautzin** reduced to ashes, and how, xi. 237
- Bax** made governor of the Cape of Good Hope, vi. 396. Improvements there, 397
- Bayagoulas**, village and temple there described, xv. 14
- Bayalkiri**, province in Karazm, ii. 714
- Bayan Kuli**, the 20th khan of Bukharia, ii. 466
- Baydu** dethrones Ganjatu in Iran, ii. 484. Conspired against by Gazan, deceived by Newruz, and slain, 485
- Bayegu**, the Tartar, refused winter quarters, ii. 233. Defeats Azzo'ddin, *ib.* Assists his brother against him, *ib.* 472. Successes in Irak, *ib.*
- Bayezid**, prince of Kojend, his wars with other Mongl princes, ii. 506. Put to death by Togliuk Timur, *ib.*
- , or Aydin, its submission to Timur Bek, ii. 534. Its prince doth the same, 535
- Bayezid,



- Bayezid, Soltan, his haughty answer to Timur Bek, ii. 554. Wars against him, and desire of peace from him, 561. Embassy to him, ib. Marches against him, ib. Defeated and taken, 563. Crowned king of Anatolia, ib. Falls sick and dies, 564.
- , or Bajazet, the son of Morad Ogli, marries the daughter of Ghermian Ogli, v. 164. Proclaimed his father's successor, ib. Mounts the throne, 166 (A). Causes his younger brother to be strangled, ib. (B) (C). His father's pompous funeral and monument, 167. Conquests in Europe and Asia, ib. (F) (G). Defeats the Moldavians, ib. Why surnamed Ilderim, or Lightning, ib. (M). Other conquests in Asia, 168. Victory over the Christians under Sigismund, ib. Vast rich plunder, ib. & notes
- Bayhin island, described, with the Dutch settlement upon it, iv. 505
- Baylakan rebuilt by Timur Bek, ii. 568 (F). Given to Bahram Shah, ib.
- Baymund succeeds his father prince of Antioch, i. 710
- Bayonne, the Spaniards forced to withdraw from it, ix. 212. Conference there, in which the ruin of the Protestants is resolved on, with the consequences, 258
- Bayoue Ogoulas, savages, where, xv. 48
- Baypin, an island on the Malabar coast, iii. 165
- Bay-Sanker Mirza, the 9th shah of the White Sheep dynasty, ii. 703. Disturbed by revolts in favour of his uncle, and slain by Mirza Rostam, 704
- Bayfankar, the son of Shah Rukh, his three sons quarrel about the empire, ii. 588
- rebels against his brother Massud, ii. 594. Outwitted and ruined by Khosru Shah, ib.
- Bayfur, a Mongl prince, revolts in Iran, and suppressed, ii. 488
- Bayut Turks, whence descended, ii. 128
- Baza, siege and reduction of, viii. 209
- Bazano taken from the Modenese, and burnt by the Bolognese, xiii. 589
- Beachy, sea-fight off, between the French and the allies, in which the Dutch are roughly handled, xi. 639
- Beard-cutting a great infamy in the East, ii. 520 (B)
- Beasus, reputed the original inhabitants of Borneo, described, iv. 151
- Beatrice, daughter of Ferdinand of Portugal, proclaimed but not acknowledged, vii. 418. Delivered of Alonso, whom the states of Castile acknowledge his father's successor, 710
- Beavers of Canada described, xiv. 554. Their flesh, castoreum, furs, properties, and wonderful buildings, 555. Outward fortifications, ib. Their cabbins, ib. Cleanliness and œconomy, 556
- Beaufort, Dukes of, account of king Henry the fourth's amour with her, ix. 318 (D). Her death to what ascribed, ib. Her character and issue, ib. sub fin. not.
- Beauharnois, M. de, succeeds Vaudreuil as governor of New France, xiv. 696
- Beaujeu, Dame de, her great address retains some restless spirits within bounds, ix. 181. She gains over René of Lorraine, who returns the lye given the governess by the duke of Orleans with a blow on the face, ib. Discontents run high, which break out in the midst of seeming tranquillity into a flame, ib. Her artful management, 182. The malcontents cited as rebels before the parliament, ib.
- , Lord of, succeeds his brother as duke of Bourbon, and his consort hence stiled duchess of Bourbon, ix. 183
- Beauvais, bishop of, his armour sent to the pope, with the question put at the same time, ix. 609
- Bebia taken by the Venetians, x. 224
- Bebut Beg murders prince Safi by his father's order, ii. 612. Obligated by him to murder his own son, but is murdered himself by his own slave, ib.
- Becasse, la, a renegado from Malta, his defeat and punishment, vii. 506
- Beck, general, defeated by prince Henry, xi. 548
- Becket, (Thomas) sent for by Alexander III. takes the habit of a monk, ix. 598. Assails at the council of Tours, and created legate a latere, ib. The new legate excommunicates those who observed the royal customs, 600. Two legates appointed to decide the difference between the king and him, ib. The king obtains a suspension of the archbishop's authority, but the pope recalls the commission of his legates, ib. Murdered soon after his return to England, 601. Canonized, 602
- Beckford, lieutenant-governor of Jamaica, celebrates K. William's obsequies and queen Ann's accession, xv. 294
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Beckowitz's expedition from Russia to the Kessel, ii. 712. Ensnared by the Tartar Khan, and slain, 713
- Bedford, Duke of, regent of France, ix. 142. His great prudence, 143. His success by what retarded, and makes a tour to England, 144. Obliges the duke of Bretagne to subscribe the treaty of Troyes, 146. Concludes new treaties with the dukes of Burgundy and Bretagne, 148. Punishes several citizens of Paris, ib. Difference between him and the duke of Burgundy, 150. His death and character, ib.
- Pedmar, the capital of Kanara, iii. 159
- Bedr Al Jemal, his cruel character and deeds, i. 662. Rise in Egypt, 664. Puts his son to death for rebellion, 669. Receives splendid presents from the Ethiopian metropolitan, 670. His quarrel with him for not suffering mosques in Abissinia, 671. His haughty letter to the Abissinian emperor returned in kind, ib.
- , capital of Tolenga, described, iii. 138. The famed battle where and when fought, i. 50. The well filled with the bodies of the slain, 51. Valley famed for the excellent plant erak, 53
- Beghi, the 6th khan in Bukharia, ii. 465
- Begum, Ara, Shah Jehan's second daughter, iii. 101. Her reception of her brother Aureng Zib, and her death supposed by poison, 115
- Behader, Keray, the 16th khan of Krim, ii. 451
- Behesim taken and plundered by Mahmud Gazni, i. 613
- Behesna, its strong situation, ii. 555
- Beja, Duke of, attends the emperor Charles V. into Barbary with succours, but with little advantage to Portugal, viii. 474
- Beira, in Portugal, account of, viii. 374 (D)
- Beiram, the two festivals of the Moslems, i. 181
- Bektekin's success in Palestine against Mosray, i. 583
- Bela, or Bala, Nevian, his success against Jalalo'ddin, ii. 317. Sent to oppose his return from India, 319
- I. king of Hungary, falls on his people assembled tumultuously, and soon after dies, xv. 383
- II. king of Hungary, his good administration, and how he alienates his subjects affections, xv. 387, who are reduced and punished, ib. His death, ib.
- III. king of Hungary, his wise administration, xv. 388. Marches into Dalmatia against the Venetians, with his success, and a truce concluded, ib. Dies, ib.
- IV. king of Hungary, his pompous coronation, xv. 390. Alarmed by an invasion of the Tartars, and the Cumani on that account ask for refuge, whom he receives, but thereby offends his own subjects, ib. Invasion of the Tartars, and their great barbarities, and are joined by the Cumani, 391. He assembles an army to oppose them, but is defeated, with the loss of all his troops, ib. Obligated to fly into Austria, and detained prisoner, ib. Being released, he conceals himself in Dalmatia, while the Tartars ravage Hungary, and return home, 392. Is restored by the assistance of the knights of Rhodes, and invades Austria, defeating its duke, who is killed, ib. War declared against him by Othogar king of Bohemia, who defeats the former, and peace concluded, ib. Rebuilds the ruined cities and churches, and dies, with the contradictory accounts here, ib. (E)
- Belalcazar, (Sebastian de) his expedition to Quito, and hardships, xiv. 301. Repulses a party of the Indians, ib. Grants an alliance to the Canaries provinces, ib. Seasonably relieves Ruyz Diaz, and the combatants separate, ib. Gains an eminence, and the enemy's stratagem frustrated, 302. Arrives at Riobombo palace, and his equitable proposals of peace rejected, ib. Defeats them in several skirmishes, and they still reject peace, and murder his messengers, ib. Gains a strong pass, and massacres 300 families in Quito, ib. yet disappointed of treasure here, 303
- Belcher, (Jonathan) made governor of New-England, and his speech to the assembly about his salary, xiv. 534. His speech to the house of representatives, ib. Their answer, and a minute entered in their books, ib. At last prevailed on to accept of 1000 l. but not binding on future assemblies, 535. Dispute about white pines, with a proclamation of the assembly, and public notice from Mr. Dunbar surveyor, ib. Complaint against him sent to Old England, with a vote passed in the British parliament, as also about the censure passed on Mr. Dunbar, for evidence given, 535
- Belhaven, lord, governor of Barbadoes, shipwrecked, xv. 191
- Belisarius sent against the African Vandals, v. 713. Lays siege to Carthage, 714. Triumphant entry into it, ib. Marches out



- out against the Vandals; and the state of both armies, 715.  
 Drives the Vandals out of Africa, 717  
 Belkin Ebn Mohammed rebels, and is proclaimed in Bujivah, i. 653. Murdered, and succeeded by Nasr Ebn Alnas, 658  
 Belosero, province, and its provincial town of the same name, xiii. 7  
 Beluja, a fish, described, of which the best singlafs and caviar are made, xiii. 57  
 Bells, small, worn about men's privities in India, iii. 243  
 Bell, a monstrous large one at the temple of Dagon, iii. 242.  
 Large ones in China described, 646  
 — succeeds Hunkes, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 176.  
 His regulations for its government, and great increase of inhabitants, 177. Is succeeded by lord Willoughby, ib.  
 Bella Christos defeated by the revolted mountainers, vi. 310  
 Bellamont, Earl, made governor of New England, and the king's view in this, xiv. 529. Arrives in New England, ib. Proceedings with count Frontenac, when the latter dies, 530. Holds a general assembly at Boston, account of his appointment, and seizing Kidd the pirate, ib. Dies soon after, ib. Views with regard to the Iroquois, xiv. 672. His bad policy towards the Iroquois, but desists from his demands, ib. His administration, ib. Fishery at Mount Lewis, miscarries, ib.  
 Bellarmine, a piece of his suppressed, ix. 347  
 Belleisle, adventure of that French officer in Louisiana, xv. 47. How he escaped from the savage Atac-a-pas, 48  
 —, Count de, takes Traerbach, xv. 612. Procures the votes of the electors for the duke of Bavaria to be emperor, 613. His scheme for distressing the queen of Hungary, 630  
 —, island, taken by the English, xv. 626  
 Bellem, or Bethlem, monastery of, in Portugal, by whom founded, with the village and fort described, viii. 457 (C)  
 — Para, capital of Paria, in Brasil, described, xiv. 477  
 Bellisone, account of, xv. 448  
 Bembea, High and Low, in Angola, described, vi. 491  
 Bembo, (Francisco) his fleet defeats the enemy on the Po, x. 236  
 —, Cardinal, his character of the French, x. 292 (E)  
 —, (Matteo) pursuing the pirates, and battering Durazzo, is banished, x. 351  
 Bembow, Admiral, English fleet under him bombard St. Malo for three days, ix. 474. Sent to Jamaica with a squadron, xv. 293. His crews greatly diminished by distempers, ib. His activity and success against the French, 294. Account of his engagement with Du Casse, near St. Martha, ib. Keeps up a running fight for several days, and the cowardice of two of his captains, ib. His right leg shivered, yet maintains the fight in a cradle on deck, ib. Expostulates with his cowardly captains, and returns to Jamaica, 295. Kirby and Wade sentenced to be shot, which was accordingly executed, ib. Constable cashiered, (Hudson having died) and Fog and Vincent provisionally suspended, ib. Du Casse's letter to the admiral, and honourable testimony of his conduct, ix. 474. xv. 295. His letter to his wife and death, ib.  
 Benares, university in Hindostan, iii. 35 (O)  
 Benavente, Count de, viceroy of Naples, reforms abuses in the criminal tribunals, and imposes new taxes, x. 511. Puts a stop to the practices of money clippers, and destroys Durazzo, which served for a retreat to the Turks, also a great number of Banditti in Calabria, ib. Vigorously opposes the encroachments of ecclesiastics as to sanctuaries, and is recalled, with his character, 513  
 Bencoolien, the English settlement there described, iv. 398  
 Bendokdar, sultan of Egypt, his success against the Mogols in Rum, ii. 237. 479. Moderation towards Kayscariyah, 237. 479. Restores Hatem's son to him, ib. Flies from the approach of Abaka, and dies in Syria, with an extraordinary piece of bravado between him and the khan of Iran, 237. 480  
 Benedict VIII. chosen pope, but obliged to quit Rome by an opposite faction, who chose another, ix. 551. On the death of Clement he seizes on the papal dignity, till Damasus II. is sent by the emperor, but dies, 558  
 — X. or XI. succeeds pope Boniface VIII. with an account of him and the reception he gives his mother, ix. 657 (T). Receives a letter from Insibram, patriarch of the eastern Christians, and endeavouring to reconcile the factions of Italy, is forced to desist, ib. Annuls all his predecessor's acts against the king of France, and restores the Colonna family only to the communion of the church, with his other endeavours and death, ib.  
 Benedict XII. chosen pope, his exclamation thereupon, with his first transactions, ix. 671. x. 459. Receives an embassy from the emperor, but without effect, ix. 672. Publishes a bull about the beatific vision, and a peace proposed between him and the emperor ineffectual, with his other proceedings, ib. Endeavours in vain to reconcile the kings of France and England, ib. Informs the king of France of the emperor's designs against him, 673. The other transactions of that pope, who also gives the investiture of Sardinia and Corsica to the king of Arragon, ib. Receives an embassy from Andronicus, ib. Sells the title of vicars of the empire to several nobles in Lombardy, with Villani's exclamation thereon, ib. Other proceedings, ib. His answer to Frederick's ambassadors, x. 459. Confirms all John's bulls against the emperor, xi. 43. His death, ix. 673  
 — XIII. chosen antipope, ix. 701. Escapes from prison at Avignon, and sends two nuncios to Rome about an union, with the issue, ib. In a council opened at Perpignan, he subscribes to the means for ending the schism, 703. His proposals to Innocent for union, rejected, 702. Deposed, 712. Clement VIII. elected by the two cardinals of his obedience, 714. Still refusing to resign, the emperor undertakes to bring this affair about, but miscarries, xi. 77. Benedict, on the emperor's menaces, flies to Peniscola, and loses all his partisans, ib. Dies, ix. 714  
 Benedictines, a prosecution of theirs against the Bolognese, ordered by the pope to be dropt, xiii. 592  
 Benevento, duke of, renounces his allegiance to the Greek emperor, ix. 531. x. 387. Reduced by the Greeks, ix. 532. x. 387. Occasion of its recovery, 388  
 —, decrees made in a council there, ix. 573. Another council there, 578  
 —, modern name of that duchy, and what the possessions of the Greek empire there, with the extent of the duchy, x. 377  
 — and Capua in the same government, x. 386 (G). Separated from Capua, Landolph II's two sons reigning respectively in each, 390. The two brothers acknowledge the emperor Otho their sovereign, ib.  
 Bengal, a fertile province in Hindostan, described, iii. 16. Bold women, ib. Castles, towns, and factories, 17. Subdued by sultan Hemayun, 54. By Akber, 59. Some changes made in it by Jehan Ghir, 68. The English settlements there, iv. 395  
 Bengo, province in Angola, described, vi. 495  
 Benguela, kingdom, described, vi. 411. Old Benguela described, ib. Inland provinces, &c. 413. Soil, natives, &c. and money, ib. Mines, ib. Capital of Kashil described, and strange idols, &c. ib. Infamous method of making slaves, and a strange creature called Abada described, with its use, ib. The country cruelly ravaged by the Gagas, 414  
 —, town, described, and its villages, vi. 411, 412. State since its conquest by the Portuguese, 491. Its fortrefs, ib. Privileges and product, ib. and its natives not yet converted, ib. Strong garrison, 494  
 Beni Mager, mountains in Morocco described, vii. 150  
 — Zeker, a mountain in Morocco, and its traffic, vii. 151  
 — Manzor, a mountain in Morocco, vii. 151  
 — Oriegan, a mountain in Morocco, vii. 151  
 — Jubar, mountains of Algiers, part of the Little Atlas, vii. 226  
 — Tefren, mountains in Tunis, vii. 298  
 Benja, river, in the kingdom of Fetu, described, vi. 659. Its extreme saltness whence, ib.  
 Benimerini succeed the Almohedes in Barbary, with their vast dominions and conquests, vii. 138  
 Benin, or Great Benin, kingdom, a part of Guinea, vi. 574, 575. Its towns and rivers, 576. Capital described, ib. Palace, 577. Causes of its decay, and strangers not permitted to examine it, ib. (A). The country described, 578. Natives, their genius, &c. and how divided into classes, ib. Way of living, 579. Dress, 580. Courtship and weddings, ib. Adultery how punished, ib. Singular modesty of the natives, 581. Circumcise their children, twins reckoned lucky, but put to death in one of the provinces, 581 (A). Their women fruitful, their diseases, and way of curing them, with their funeral obsequies, ib. Those of the king, and theft how punished, 583. Five different methods of purgation, for the accused, ib. Their religion, 584. Notion of a future life, ib. High regard for their priests and idols, ib. Method of measuring time, and their festivals, 585. Laws at the succession of their kings,



- kings, their state, and revenue, 586. Forces ill disciplined, and arms, *ib.*
- Benkat, a city in Turkestan, *ii.* 147
- Benlorin's treachery to the factory of Benecolen, *iv.* 354
- Benshin left general in Khorassan by his brother Abaka, *ii.* 478
- Bentivoglio (Giovanni) effects a revolution in Bologna, *xiii.* 361. *xiv.* 85
- , (Annibal) murdered by Cannefchi, for which he is put to death by the populace, *xiii.* 404. A bastard grandson of his discovered to the Bolognese, with Cosmo de Medici's speech to him, and his accepting the charge of the Bentivoglio family, with his prudent management therein, *ibid.*
- , (Santi) drives out the exiled Bolognians, who had entered the city by the common sewers, *xiii.* 409
- family recalled, who continue in Bologna till Leo X. renews the government by a legate, *xiii.* 598
- Bennet, governor of Bermudas, *xv.* 276
- Beraa taken by the Moslems, *i.* 220
- Bera, first count of Barcelona banished for life, for intriguing to render himself independent, *viii.* 124
- Berat Kaja punished for cowardice, *ii.* 520
- Berbuda, account of that English island, *xv.* 238. The property of the Codringtons, *ib.* who bequeath a great part of it to pious uses, *ib.* Some salutiferous serpents here, *ibid.*
- Bardoa, province of Africa, described, *vii.* 104
- Berebers of Algiers, who, and whence, *vii.* 205 (A). Their various tribes, *ib.*
- of Morocco, *vii.* 147
- Bereke, Shekyh, highly honoured by Timur Bek, with his death and funeral honours, *ii.* 570
- Berendak, Amir, favours Mirza Kalil's revolt, *ii.* 557. Swears fealty to him, 578
- Berengara, or Berenguela, the empress, her death, with the disturbances among the Moors, *vii.* 681
- , Donna, proclaimed queen of Castile, *vii.* 708, but resigns to her son Ferdinand, *ib.* upon which Alonso of Leon enters Castile, but retires, *ib.*
- Berengarius succeeds to the crown of Italy, *ix.* 531. Forces Boson to renounce his claim to the crown of Italy, upon oath, 534. Succeeds Lewis in the empire, and his peaceable reign for twenty years, 535. His care in repairing the damages caused by the Huns and the Saracens, procures privileges from the pope for the bishop of Pavia, and rebuilds the church of Padua, 538. Crowned emperor by the pope, Adelbert count of Tuscany dies, and his son Vido confirmed by the emperor, but conspires against him; also a new conspiracy against the emperor by the marquis of Ivrea, &c. 536. Lambert, made archbishop of Milan by Berengarius, joins the conspirators, who are unexpectedly attacked by the Huns at Brescia, 537. Count Gilbert, though dismissed by Berengarius, directly joins the rebels, and conducts Rodolphus of Burgundy's army over the Alps, whom they had invited into Italy, *ib.* treacherously murdered in a church of Verona, 540
- , son of Albert marquis of Ivrea, sends Amadeus in disguise to sound the Italian nobles, *ix.* 540. The emissary eludes all search after him, goes himself into Italy, where he is joined by many, and arriving at Milan, assumes the government, 541. Hugh and Lotharius retain the title, but Berengarius the power, of king, *ib.* Said to have poisoned Lotharius, who dies, 541. Is crowned at Verona, and associates his eldest son Adelbert, 542. He possesses himself of Pavia, and imprisons Adelaide for rejecting a marriage with his son, but she escapes to Canosa, where she is besieged by Berengarius, *ib.* She solicits the assistance of Otho, king of Germany, and the terms, *ib.* Goes into Germany, and submitting to Otho, is restored to most of his kingdom, on condition of paying homage, *ib.* Italy extremely harassed by the tyranny and avarice of Berengarius, who is defeated several times by Ludolphus, Otho's son, *ib.* Ludolphus dying, Berengarius renews his former violences against those who abandoned him, and restores their ancient privileges to the Genoese, 543. His tyranny obliges the Italians again to solicit Otho's assistance, *ib.* Surrenders, and is sent prisoner into Germany, 545
- of Tours abjures his heresy, *ix.* 569
- Berenger, (Raymund) 29th grand master of Maltha, chafes away the Barbary corsairs, *vii.* 401. He burns Alexandria, and is prevented from abdicating, 402. Reforms some abuses, with his death, *ib.*
- made count of Barcelona, *viii.* 126
- Berenger and Raymond, joint-counts of Barcelona, the latter of whom is murdered by banditti, *viii.* 127
- , bishop of Gironne, his tongue is cut out, *viii.* 142
- Beresow circle in Tobolsk, described, *xiii.* 46. Its most remarkable places, with Berezow, where prince Menzikoff died in exile, *ib.*
- Bergama surrendered to Orkhan, *v.* 156
- Bergue, Count de, and the Spaniards disappointed in their expeditions into the Provinces, *xi.* 502. His successes, and junction with Spinola before Breda, 504. Defeats the forces of the states general, 512. With twenty-five thousand men he is repulsed from the besiegers camp before Bois le Duc, 517. Resigns and retires to Liege, 525. The archduchess writes him a letter, with his answer, and he declares against the Spaniards, with the substance of the prince of Orange's letter to him, *ib.* He returns to Aix in Holland, and is declared a traitor by the court of Brussels, 526
- Berkley, Dean, his plan for a college in Bermudas, *xv.* 276. It proves ineffectual, *ib.*
- , governor of Virginia, *xv.* 366. Makes peace with the natives, *ib.* His impolitic conduct what, *ib.* Rechosen governor of Virginia, and the terms, 367. Their loyalty for K. Charles II. and a particular mark of his favour, *ib.* His wise regulation ineffectual, and the deficiency what, *ib.* Noble example to the colony for improvements, 368. Sends out on discoveries, *ib.* His conduct and firmness on Bacon's rebellion, *ib.* Moderation on the latter's death, *ib.* Suppresses that rebellion and dies, with his character, *ib.*
- Berlyps, Countess, and all the Germans sent home from Spain, on the prince of Bavaria's death, *iii.* 348
- Bermudas, (Summer islands) their discovery by the English *xv.* 274, but abandoned by them, *ib.* Are re-inhabited, and their property given to the Virginia company, *ib.* Wonderful escape of five Englishmen in an open boat, 275 (Z). Visited by Waller, and character of his poem on them, *ib.* Prosperity, and the chief adventurers who, *ib.* Their loyal address to K. William, 276. Dean Berkley's plan for a College ineffectual, *ib.* Situation and natural history, *ib.*
- Bermudes writes a second history of Abissinia, *vi.* 160. Left in the country by Alvarez, 257. Sent ambassador to Rome and Portugal, 259. Consecrated patriarch, with his success at Rome and Lisbon, *ib.* Returns to Goa, and his narrow escape from the Moors, 263. Contest with the young emperor, 265. Speech to his Portuguese upon it, *ib.* (Z). Rude behaviour to him and his mother, 266, *sub not.* Irritates him with fresh outrages, 268. Outwitted by his fair promises, *ib.* Renews his threatenings against him, 269. Sent and confined among the Gaffates, with his quick return, 270. He escapes being poisoned by him, *ib.* New expostulations tried in vain with the patriarch, *ib.* Ordered to be closely watched, 271. Lucky escape to sea, *ib.* Arrival at Lisbon, and some remarks on his plain history, 272
- Bermudo I. accepts and resigns the crown to don Alonso, *vii.* 597
- II. his victory over the Moors, *vii.* 619. He becomes king of Oviedo and Leon, but unable to resist the Moors, *ib.* Defeated by Almanzor, 620. Defeats him at the battle of Osma, *ib.* His death, with the dismal state of his realm, 621
- III. succeeds his father under a regency, *vii.* 622. Deprives the bishop of Compostella, 623. Contest with the King of Navarre, *ib.* Makes peace by the cession of some of his dominions, *ib.* but recovers them again, 624. Slain at the battle of Carriou, *ib.* The last of the male line of the Reccared kings, 625
- Bernard, count of Thoulouse, made count of Barcelona, who is stabbed by the emperor Charles the Bald, *viii.* 124
- Bernard, St. abbot of Clairvaux, his character, *ix.* 38. Preaches the croisade with success in Germany, 39. Preaches a croisade in France, 592. Prevails on Lewis king of France and Conrad the emperor to take the cross, *ix.* 592. His apology for himself, 593 (F). His death, with an account of his foundations, *ib.* (G)
- , natural son of Pepin, crowned king of Italy, *ix.* 518. Revolts and loses his eyes and life, 519
- , duke of Lower Saxony, submits to the emperor Henry II. *x.* 645
- , duke, succeeds Gustavus in the command of the army, with his successes in Saxony, *xii.* 334. Victories obtained by him on the Rhine, with his subsequent successes, 341. His death distresses the Swedes, 342



- Bernard III. duke of Saxony, xv. 465  
 —, duke of Brunswic, makes exchange with his brother Henry for Luneburg, xv. 481. Has an extraordinary cannon cast, still preserved, and dies, *ib.*  
 Bernardino, St. the famed streight of, in the Philippines, described, iv. 198 (Z)  
 Bern, auxiliaries from, assist the Genevois, and their successes on the road, also their avarice, and the duke of Savoy stripped on all hands, xiv. 28. Account of that city, and alliance with the Swiss cantons, xv. 446 (U)  
 Bernois offended at the severities against the reformers, xiv. 22. Demands on Geneva, 23, and complaints there, 24. Befriends the Genevois, and declares war against the duke of Savoy, with the occasion, 28. Sends them assistance, and the French king's friendship, 40.  
 Bernstein, the imperial general, defeated and killed, xii. 326  
 Bero. See Biorno.  
 Beronis, (Andrew) a gallant action of that Swedish sea-captain, xii. 291 (A)  
 Berthelier, remarkable persecution of him, and his escape to Fribourgh, which city espouses his cause, xiv. 14. His courage, and pursuing a plan of alliance between that city and Geneva, *ib.* Acquittal, *ib.* Arrested by the bishop of Geneva's vidame, with his behaviour and beheading, 16. Further particulars about him, and his epitaph, *ib.* (C)  
 Bertoalde slain by Clotaire, and his army routed, viii. 648  
 Bertold and Erchengen executed, x. 625  
 — duke of Savoy, account of him, xiv. 125  
 Berwana amuses the Mongls in Rum with false security, and put to death by Abaka, ii. 479  
 Berwick, Thaur endeavours in vain to bring him to a battle, while he covers Dauphiny and Provence by his judicious situation, xi. 344  
 —, lieutenant-governor of Barbadoes, his wife administration, xv. 194  
 —, Duke of, takes Fort Kehl on the Rhine, but killed before Philipsburgh, xv. 612  
 Berytus, or New Bayreut, subdued by the Moslems, i. 230, and described, 231  
 Befa, Busa, or Fesa, an antient city in Persia, i. 407  
 Bessarion, Cardinal, his negotiations in France unsuccessful, with his death and character, x. 37 (A). His Greek library bought at a high price by the republic of Venice, *ib.* *sub fin.* not.  
 Best, Captain, his voyage into India, iv. 297. Noble success against the Portuguese, and high reputation thereon at the mogul's court, *ib.*  
 Betel, a leaf chewed by the Indians, iii. 21. Its virtues, *ib.* and that of Manila the finest, iv. 190. That of Java described, and pernicious to the Europeans, 459  
 Betzaleel, Rabbi Judah, chief of the Moravian Jews, his learned works, vi. 606 (Z)  
 Beyan Selduz revolts and slays Abdo'llah, also causes great confusion by his love of wine, ii. 499  
 Beyram Khan, his success against Hemow Khan, iii. 57. Suspected by the sultan, and obtains his dismissal, but slain in the way to Mecca, *ib.*  
 — Bek seized and put in irons by Shah Jehan, iii. 75  
 Beza, Theodore, an idle report about him, xiv. 36. A solemn deputation to the king of France, at the head of which he is, 37, with his fulsome speech, and the answer, *ib.* Makes a thanksgiving sermon, ordering the 124th Psalm to be sung, which is still done on this anniversary, 40. His death and character, 41  
 Bezier, Count of, has a conference with Pedro II. of Arragon about the cruelty of the pope's soldiers on the Albigenes, viii. 134. Earnestly intercedes with the legate on this head, 135. Marches to assist the king of Castile, and is present at the battle of Tolosa, *ib.* Joins the confederates in Provence, and killed before Muret, *ib.* Confusions in Arragon hereupon, 136. Is succeeded by his son Jayme, and a regency appointed, of which his uncle Sancho is head, *ib.*  
 Bezoar of Kongo whence taken, vi. 433  
 — in some huge crocodiles, vi. 436  
 Bees, remarkable kind in Guadaloupe, xv. 231  
 Besson, governor of Jamaica, remedies several abuses, xv. 287. Proclamation against the settlers of Darien, 292. His death, 293  
 Biäfar, kingdom, where situated, vi. 573  
 Biäfara, kingdom in Africa, described, vii. 110  
 Bianco, or Blanco, Cape, in Tunis, when first discovered, vii. 101. Described, 297  
 Bibars, or Buidokdar the Lesser, slays the sultan Kotuz, and seizes on the Syrian kingdom, ii. 475  
 Biberach, account of it, and government, xv. 413  
 Bibles, Hebrew, first printed at Venice, v. 550  
 —, Italian version published by pope Sixtus V. x. 122 (M)  
 Bico, the French defeated there, through the obstinacy of the Swiss, and their loss, x. 317. In consequence of this the Milanese is entirely conquered, *ib.*  
 Bidaw, an Indian prince, subdued by Mahmud Gazni, i. 609  
 Bielinski, in the French interest, elected marshal of Poland, xii. 554. The glaring corruption of the electors, *ib.* The equal strength of the two parties and their agents, and their intrigues, with Fleming's ensuring success by money, 555. An audience is given the foreign ministers, with the indecorum observed by the imperial minister's servants, *ib.* (A)  
 Bielogorod, government of, and division into eleven districts, with its capital described, xiii. 14  
 Bielski's ambitious projects in favour of his pupil Demetrius, the czar Basilowitz II's only brother, xiii. 126. His views, frustrated by the Russian nobility, and he is banished, 127  
 Bienne, its alliance with the Swiss cantons, xv. 448  
 Bienville, M. his success against a party of savages, but is killed, xiv. 642  
 —, his method of gaining the friendship of the Natches in Louisiana, xv. 32  
 —, governor of Louisiana, xv. 53. Continues the war against the Chicachas, with his demand, and their spirited answer, 54. His negotiation with the Chactaws, and slow march of his army against the Chicachas, *ib.* Suppresses a conspiracy, and proceeds on his expedition against them, *ib.* He besieges them in their fort, 55. Forced to retire shamefully, *ib.* Disbands his army, *ib.* Imprudent firing upon a party sent by one of his own officers, 56. The deplorable death of the officer upon whose party he fired, with that of his men, *ib.* Undertakes a new expedition against the Chicachas, *ib.* Different nations in his army, which continues inactive, *ib.* Effects of his inactivity on his army what, *ib.* Makes peace with the Chicachas, *ib.* His conduct in this war, 57  
 Bigu, a Turkish prince, educates Seljuk after his father's death, i. 645  
 Bikijek's stratagem at the siege of Kortene, and amply rewarded by Timur Bek, ii. 567  
 Bikkermansid seizes Jehan Ghir prisoner, but killed by one of his guards, iii. 73  
 Bilbars, the brother of Ilbars Khan, comes with him into Karazm, ii. 723. His valour, success, and death, *ib.*  
 Bilcaonga, surprising victory of Soto at a pass there, xiv. 300  
 Biledulgerid, that vast country described, vii. 114. Some errors of modern maps corrected by Mr. Lisle, 115. Great province described, and the sad character of the inhabitants, *ib.* Their dress, and general use of the ostriches, *ib.* Their religion, priests, &c. and cities, 116  
 Bilojiki taken by Othman through stratagem, v. 146  
 Biloxi, damage done there by a hurricane, xv. 31  
 — post, where, xv. 58  
 Billing, (Herman) made first duke of Saxony by Otho I. xv. 464. His successors, *ib.*  
 Bimaidæ, Al, Christians in Egypt, i. 254. Raise a revolt against khalif Mamun, but are defeated and destroyed, *ib.*  
 Biorno succeeds his father Snio king of Denmark, with the diversity of accounts, xi. 681  
 — III. or Bero, son of Regner, king of Denmark, succeeds Charles a Swedish lord in Sweden, xii. 227. In his reign Christianity is first preached in Sweden by Ansharius and Vitmar, but dethroned and slain soon after, with the occasion, *ib.* (A)  
 Bir, or Bira, castle, taken by the Moslems, also its strength, valley, &c. described, i. 249. Delivered up by the Franks to Nejmo'ddin, i. 707, ii. 189  
 — taken by Timur Bek, ii. 559  
 Birch, governor of New Providence, but finds it abandoned, xv. 272. It becomes a nest of freebooters, *ib.*  
 Bird, the apparition of a strange one before Mottawakkel's death, i. 477  
 — of Honey, or Honey-bird, in Kongo, described, vi. 435  
 Music-birds, also ominous birds and fishes, *ib.*  
 — Islands, in St. Lawrence's gulph, described, xiv. 550  
 — Island, account of, xv. 363  
 Birds, their language pretended to be understood by the Arabs, i. 347  
 Birdi bek made governor of Azerbaijan, ii. 447. Succeeds his father in Kipjak, with his ill life and death, *ib.*  
 Birger Jerl, king Eric's son-in-law, his successes against the Tawastians of Finland, and putting all to the sword who refused Christianity, xii. 253. Made regent of Sweden, with



- with his many excellent institutions, and, at the desire of the nation, he is made a duke, 233, with the meaning of the word Jerl, *ib.* (C). His perndy, *ib.* His death and issue, 234 (D)
- Birger, after the death of his father Magnus Ladislaus, ascends the throne of Sweden, *xii.* 236. Marries the princess of Denmark, and builds Landskroon, which the Russians demolish, *ib.* He and his queen are crowned, and contentions arise between him and his brothers, with the occasion, *ib.* They are forced to sign concessions to the king, *ib.* who becomes jealous of them a second time, *ib.* They take refuge in Denmark, but are obliged to seek shelter in Norway, from which they make excursions into Gothland, *ib.* Eric defeats the king's army, and an accommodation made, 237 (G). Surprised and taken prisoner by his brothers, 238. A treaty is concluded, by which the king is restored to part of his dominions, and resolves to recover the rest, *ib.* The concurring circumstances to favour it, with the junction of the armies of the king of Denmark and Birger, with their successes, 239. The kings besiege Nicoping, upon which the nobility desert them, a peace is concluded, with the terms, *ib.* Their reconciliation how destructive to the people, *ib.* The king perfidiously seizes the dukes at Nicoping, and throws them into a dungeon, where they perish, *ib.* Is defeated at Stockholm, as also by Kettle-munson, and Steckenburg taken, and his son Magnus, *ib.* His retreat to Denmark, 240
- Biron, Duke of, his jocular answer to his son, *ix.* 300. His death, with his character, 301
- , Marshal, sent over to queen Elizabeth, and their interview about the earl of Essex, *ix.* 322. Sent to renew the alliance with the Swiss cantons, and carries this important point, 324. Is prevailed on to come to court, 325. He and count d'Auvergne arrested, *ib.* His process formed before the parliament, *ib.* Makes a long and eloquent speech, 326; notwithstanding which he is unanimously adjudged to death, which he suffers in confusion, and without his usual intrepidity, *ib.* His personal history and character, *ib.* (E). The turn this conspiracy gives to the king's policy, *ib.* *sub fin. not.*
- , (John Ernestus) the empress Anne's great favourite, appointed by her the head of the regency in Russia, *xiii.* 266. He is banished with his family into Siberia, *ib.*
- Birwan, battle of, variously related, *ii.* 318
- Bisays, in the Spanish East Indies, who, *iv.* 201. Language what, 202 (C)
- Biscara taken by the Algerines, and the sad slavery of the inhabitants, *vii.* 226
- Biscay, Rioja, &c. how separated from Navarre and added to Castile and Leon, *viii.* 564
- , New, province, described, *xiv.* 436
- Biserta gulph described, *vii.* 298
- , a city of Tunis, described, *vii.* 306. Its fishery, 307
- Bishbalig taken by Jenghis Khan, *ii.* 290
- Bishops of Egypt, their avarice, *i.* 636
- , French, sent into India, *iii.* 369. Strive to convert the kingdom of Siam, *ib.*
- in Poland, their privileges and those of the archbishop of Gnesna, *xii.* 433
- Bisnagar, once the capital of Karnata, its situation, *iii.* 178
- , the empire of, described, *iii.* 134. Its history, 135. Divided between the slain Rama's nephews, 136. Re-united under one king, *ib.* Distracted between its three tyrants, *ib.* Conquered by Aureng Zib, 137
- , Its lawful king kept in confinement by Rama Rajah, *iii.* 136. Slain by Temi's son, *ib.*
- , the capital of, described, *iii.* 134. Attacked and destroyed by the three Dekan kings, with the immense plunder of the place, 136
- Bisukay Behadr, the father of Jenghiz Khan, his great conquests, *ii.* 266
- Bissagoe, islands in Africa, on the Cazegut, described, *vii.* 98
- Bissao island, in the Cazegut of Africa, described, *vii.* 93. Its extent, and its fertility obstructed by their wars, *ib.* Inhabitants, 94. Despotical government, *ib.* (E). Manner of going to war, 95. Religion and numberless idols, 96. Commerce, and contest between the Portuguese and French, 97 (P)
- , the emperor of, arbitrary, *vii.* 94. Inhuman obsequies at his death, 95. How elected, and his palace, retinue, &c. 96. Its Balontes who, 97. Jealousy on account of their gold mines, *ib.*
- Bitu, kingdom of, described, *vii.* 110
- Bither besieged by the Romans, *v.* 491. Its horrid catastrophe, *ib.* (A)
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Bithinia over-run by the Turks, *ii.* 239. *v.* 147
- Bitzleer, (Rabbi Liwa) favourite of the emperor Rodolphus, *v.* 606 (Z)
- Black, the colour worn by the khalifs of Al Abbas, *i.* 572
- Blacks, their origin according to Lanjans, *iii.* 297. Two sorts in the Philippines whence, *iv.* 196 (Y)
- Bladislaus, (John) the Bulgarian usurper, his submissive offers to the emperor Basilus, *i.* 621, but murdered by his soldiers, 623
- Blake, Admiral, burns the Spanish galleons at Teneriff, *viii.* 316. Takes fifteen sail of the Brasil fleet, 510. Attacks the Dutch fisheries off Shetland, takes their convoy, but dismisses the buffes, *xi.* 561. Engages the Dutch fleet near the Kentish Knocks, and the Dutch are worsted next day *xi.* 563. Heavy complaints made in Holland, *ib.*
- , governor of Carolina, *xv.* 87. The last fundamental articles from England, and his wife conduct, *ib.*
- Blanc, (Vincent le) his account of the Portuguese exploits in Monomotapa, *vi.* 375
- Blanca obtaining leave to perform her devotions in Toledo cathedral, refuses to come out, and induces the inhabitants to a revolt, *viii.* 50. Her death and character, 54 (V)
- of Arragon imprisoned and poisoned, *viii.* 194
- Blanchecourt, (Guy de) the 40th grand master of Rhodes, *vii.* 428. Dies in his way to it, *ib.*
- Blanco, Cape, in the South Sea, most difficult to double, *v.* 98
- , island, account of it, *xv.* 365
- Blenheim, famous battle of, gained by the duke of Marlborough, *ix.* 186. Reflections on the defeat of the French and Bavarians there, *ib.*
- Bletisa, site, an account of its present name, *vii.* 688 (Z)
- Blois, states there, cancel the edict of pacification, *ix.* 275. The war renewed against the Hugonots, and some places taken from them, with the revival of the edict of pacification, *ib.* Treaty confirmed, but infringed by the French, *xi.* 126
- Blondel, the syndic of Geneva, who is fined for misdemeanors, racked and executed for murder and treason, *xiv.* 41
- Blood, a rain of, continues for twelve hours, *iii.* 115 (B)
- , Precious, that order by whom instituted, *xiv.* 115
- Boccalino, governor of Osimo, his revolt, *x.* 44
- Bodajor, or Bojadore, Cape, by whom first doubled, *iv.* 110, 112
- Bodoairia, or Participatio, (Urso) the 18th doge of Venice, his character, *x.* 189. His son taken by the Dalmatians, and the doge resigns, *ib.*
- Boeda-Mariam, the 83d emperor of Abissinia, *vi.* 253
- Boemond surprised and wounded by the Turks, but gives them two signal defeats, *ii.* 209
- Boetica invaded by the Saracens, *i.* 345
- Boga, father and son, put to death for rebellion, *i.* 485
- Bogar, the grand magazine of oriental commerce, and the seat of the Uzbek khans, *iv.* 93
- Bogdan, the Usurper of Moldavia, obliged to sue for peace, and is assassinated, *xii.* 480
- Bogislaus, last duke of Pomerania, his death, and his estates devolve to Brandenburg, *xi.* 245
- , account of him, and his bold speech to the revolted army, with their laying the whole country round under contribution, and their remonstrance to the Polish senate for their arrears, *xii.* 547
- Boheira, or the monk Sergius, his charge concerning Mahomed, *i.* 12. Correspondence with him, 14. Assists him in compiling the Koran, 152
- Bohemia, King of, reduces Lombardy, *ix.* 670. He rejects the pope's proposal to desert the emperor, and quits Italy, 671. Arrival of him and his son at Avignon, who negotiate a treaty for the empire, and the latter is chosen emperor, 675
- deputies of, own the emperor as their king, *xi.* 86. Also Sigismund with the provision, 87
- , by whom made a kingdom, *x.* 661. Fresh troubles there, a truce, and an embassy sent to the emperor for redeeming Ladislaus, *xi.* 97. Its crown offered by the pope to Mathew king of Hungary, with his fears about accepting it, 105. The Catholics of that kingdom offer their crown to Casimir king of Poland, who declines it, *ib.* The crown given to Uladislaus, the eldest son of Casimir III. who also takes the crown of Hungary, and dies, *xii.* 481
- , its history, *xv.* 449. Its boundaries, towns, and antient inhabitants, *ib.* Declared elective by the Golden Bull, but hereditary to the house of Austria by the treaty of Munster, *ib.* Its king the first secular elector, but its states



- states not under the government of the empire, 450. Its provinces, and antiquity, *ib.* Government, and six courts, *ib.* The states by whom peopled, *ib.* Immunities of the king and inhabitants there, xi. 372. Mines of golver, silver, &c. 373
- Bohemians deliver their articles and the conditions of the union to the deputies of the council of Basil at Prague, and their purport, x. 6. Give their crown to Ladislaus of Poland, 35. The demands of their ambassadors to the emperor in the diet at Ratisbon rejected, 87. Chuse two administrators, 91. Revolt, with their proceedings, 193. Accuse cardinal Klesel, the emperor's prime minister, *ib.* An army raised for them by their allies, 194. An accommodation offered them at Pilsen, 195, which they decline, 196
- Bohio island discovered by Columbus, xiv. 143. His arrival there, and calls it Hispaniola, *ib.* See Hispaniola
- Bohol island, among the Philippines, described, iv. 197
- Boiling in oil, a Japanese punishment, iv. 16
- Bois le Duc surrenders to prince Henry, and the Spaniards every where defeated and dispirited, xi. 518
- Boka, strong fortrefs of, taken by John Comnenus, ii. 216
- , a shepherd, founds the kingdom of Bishnagar, and builds the city of that name, iii. 135
- Bokhara, where situate, and described, ii. 297. Besieged by the Mongls, and abandoned to them by its three commanders, *ib.* Burnt, and since rebuilt by Jenghis Khan, 298
- Bokharia, kingdom. See Bukharia
- , city, described, ii. 454. Its coin, trade, &c. *ib.*
- Bokht Nafr, the famed Nebuchadnezzar of the Arabians, i. 2
- Bokrat raises a revolt in Armenia, but is defeated, i. 470
- Bolaki, or Balokki, recovers Guzerat, iii. 73. Seized on by Mohabet Khan, 78. Forced out of the Rasputs hands, 79. Crowned sultan pro tempore, 83. Strangled by order of Jehan Shah, 84
- Boleslaus of Bohemia sues to the emperor Henry II. for peace, and does homage, x. 645. Violates the treaty, and again sues for peace, with the condition, *ib.*
- Chrobry I. raised after the death of his father Mieczslaus to the regal dignity of Poland, with his character, xii. 449. His policy in affecting more state than usual, *ib.* His military exploits against the Bohemians, and taking of Prague, also the duke and his son in Wisslogrod, 450. On account of civil commotions in Russia, he has an invitation from Suantepolk, *ib.* He accordingly invades Russia, *ib.* He beats Jarislaus the brother of Suantepolk, and takes Kiovia, with vast treasure in it, *ib.* Reinstates Suantepolk, and defeats Jarislaus a second time, *ib.* Upon the ingratitude of Suantepolk, he again enters Kiovia, which he gives up to pillage, after which he returns to Poland, 451. Conquers Saxony, Pomerania, and Prussia, *ib.* He now applies himself to the internal government of Poland, and again conquers Russia, with his death and character, 452
- II. or the Bold, succeeds his father Casimir I. in the throne of Poland, xii. 455. The unfortunate neighbouring princes are protected by him, *ib.* His war with the duke of Bohemia in favour of Jacomir that prince's brother, 456. A treaty and alliance concluded by the duke with the king's sister, and he defeats the Hungarians in behalf of Bela, king Andrew's brother, *ib.* Andrew is taken and dies, with Bela's ascending the throne of Hungary, and Boleslaus marries a princess of Russia, *ib.* His motives for a war with Russia, a great part of which he conquers for Zaslaus, 457. He establishes the peace of Hungary on Bela's death, again quells a revolt in Russia against Zaslaus, and takes Kiovia, *ib.* with the luxury of which place he is corrupted, 458. Contest between him and the clergy, with the massacre of the bishop of Cracow in the cathedral, *ib.* Heavy complaints to the pope against the King, who is excommunicated for the murder, forced to fly with his son, and becomes a cook in a monastery, where he dies, 459. Different accounts of his end, *ib.* (C), & 459 (D). His character, *ib.* The pope's vengeance extends to Boleslaus' son and the whole kingdom, but he at last consents to the brother Uladislaus being raised to the ducal dignity, *ib.*
- III. Crivenstus, or Wry-mouth, succeeds his father Uladislaus Hermannus as duke of Poland, and the disputes between him and Sbigneus, with the occasion, xii. 460. War with the emperor Henry IV. who is defeated by him near Warsaw, 462 (B), but he marries the emperor's sister, *ib.* His unfortunate war with Russia, and the occasion, with his death and character, *ib.*
- IV. or Crispus, raised to the ducal dignity of Poland in room of his deposed brother Uladislaus II. xii. 462. Compels the Prussians to embrace Christianity, who afterwards defeat him, 465. Civil war upon this, and the occasion, with a fresh investiture of Silesia to the duke's nephews, and his death, *ib.*
- V. or the Chaste, raised to the ducal throne of Poland, in room of his father Lechus VI. xii. 470. Conrad the uncle is supported by the Teutonic knights, *ib.* (B), but is twice defeated, yet disturbs his nephew, with an irruption of the Lithuanians, *ib.* His death, and some few particulars relating to him, *ib.*
- I. or the Cruel, duke of Bohemia, submits to terms from the emperor Otho, xv. 452
- II. or the Pious, duke of Bohemia, quells a conspiracy with the assistance of the Jews, and their reward, xv. 452. On an invasion from Poland he takes Cracow, *ib.*
- III. or the Blind, duke of Bohemia, xv. 452. Resigns, *ib.*
- Bolgar, a canton in West Tartary, ii. 122
- Bolgari, Al Emir, seizes on Aleppo, i. 693. His extraction, *ib.*
- Bolinao, a famed port in the Philippines, iv. 189
- Bolm, a kingdom in Sierra Leona, described, v. 23
- Bologna, council there prorogued, x. 89. The prelates there disperse, some few pensionaries excepted, *ib.*
- , its history and state under Charles the Great, xiii. 549, who makes several alterations in civil policy, &c. *ib.* Its privileges from the pope, and pious donations, with its magistracy, &c. *ib.* Its form of government aristocratical, and state under some succeeding emperors, *ib.* Method of electing magistrates there, 549. Famous for the study of the law, 553. The pope's reception there on his way to Verona, and refusing the emperor's request, 558. Domestic broils there, 559. Election of a prætor, who, for corruption, has all his teeth knocked out, 560. Family dissensions there, 561. Why interdicted, with their wonderful constancy, 565. Delivered from the interdict, *ib.* League between that city and Faenza, 566. Visited by the empress Constantia, as also by Peter emperor of Constantinople, 567. Its power, *ib.* Remarkable decree in favour of the scholars, 568. Vastly embellished, 569. The pope's injunctions about the professors of law and students of divinity, *ib.* Interdicted by its bishop, 570. Its privileges are augmented by the emperor and pope, and they quarrel, with the occasion, *ib.* Military regulations made there, 572. The emperor's authority in transferring its university to Naples disregarded, *ib.* Commotions there by Joseph the Tuscan, and the occasion, 574. Its government changed to democratical, *ib.* Civil discord there, and the consequences, with their invading the Modenese, and other disturbances in Lombardy, 579. Two remarkable laws passed there, 582. Its bishop resigns, 583. The emperor failing in his attempt on it, barbarously ravages the open country, and transfers its university to Padua, *ib.* Differences reconciled by father Vicentio, and regulations in favour of the university, 585. Its bishop made a cardinal is sent to the Bolognese by the pope, 586. Civil discord there appeased, and a public act for making Medicina and Argellata part of their territory, 588. Endeavours to extinguish dissensions there, 591. New regulations made there, and its influence in Ravenna, from a confederacy, &c. with examples of public justice, 592. Its war with the Cervians, who at last submit, with some domestic occurrences, 593. A law for manumitting slaves, 595. Threatened by the pope for not executing the award about Frignano, 596. Relieves several states oppressed with famine, *ib.* Public works compleated, and the high reputation of its inhabitants, with the institution of horse-races, 597. On great differences there, the pope sends them a cardinal legate, for whose inhuman cruelties he is driven out, *ib.* Its government sold to Visconti, archbishop of Milan, but it returns to its subjection under a legate till it falls under the power of Bentivoglio, *ib.* The several vicissitudes it underwent till Julius II. drove the Bentivoglians out of Bologna, and established a new form of government, *ib.* Now part of the pope's dominions, 598. Factions there, xiv. 87
- Bolognese shake off the German yoke, and the occasion, xiii. 550. They side with the pope by Matilda's advice, but make their peace with the emperor Henry IV. 551. His charter in their favour, *ib.* Build a most magnificent town-house, and are in great prosperity, *ib.* Their religious constitution, companies, and civil laws, what, 552. Their preparations for war with the Modenese, but prevented



vented by an honourable peace, *ib.* They appease the emperor Lothaire, and defeat the Modenese, who still claimed Nouantola, with the consequences, 553. Their privileges confirmed by two popes and the emperor Conrad, *ib.* Differences with the emperor Barbarossa, war with the Imolese, and remarkable terms of a peace concluded, *ib.* Matters compromised with the Modenese, 554. Their great power, and joining the emperor's army, with the lawyer's decision in his favour, *ib.* Their prosperity owing greatly to their law-schools and the privilege granted its students, *ib.* The professors respected by the emperor, but the Bolognese fall under his displeasure, and he dismantles their city, *ib.* They oppose his deputy, but submit; he is assassinated, and they enter into a confederacy against the emperor, 555, who is driven out of Italy, and the consequences, *ib.* War with the Faventines, who are defeated, and peace granted them, *ib.* They renew their league, with a remarkable article of it, *ib.* They oppose the imperialists, and raise the siege of San Cassiano, 556. The confederacy renewed, the emperor Frederic defeated by the allies, and a peace concluded, *ib.* Privileges granted the canons of Bologna, and the differences between the Modenese and Bolognese adjusted by a formula, *ib.* Their league renewed with the Faventines, and war continued with the Imolese, 557. A new alliance concluded, and the Imolese totally defeated, with a peace concluded, *ib.* They enter into a crusade, and the institution of law lectures, 558. Form of bargain between Lothaire of Cremona and the magistrates, *ib.* Great confluence of law-students, with the emperor's coming into Italy, who increases the privileges of the Bolognese, 559. Alliance with the Ferrarese renewed, *ib.* Successes against Marcoald, the emperor's cup-bearer, 560. During the divisions in Germany they recover their towns, with their care of the university, *ib.* Are at war with the Imperialists, and reduce Alberto a mountaineer, with other parts of imperial Imolese, 561. A war in conjunction with the Reggians, &c. against the Modenese, who are defeated, *ib.* The dissensions continue, *ib.* Difference between the Modenese and Reggians compromised, *ib.* Quarrel with the Ferrarese adjusted, and a new league concluded, 562. They next attack the Modenese, and make a league with the Reggians, and its remarkable contents, *ib.* (A). An unsuccessful negotiation, and also another, but at last an accommodation takes place, 563. They assist the Mantuans against the Reggians, who are worsted, with regulations for their law-school, and great resort of scholars, *ib.* The Reggians assisted by them, and the Mantuans conquered, with public works finished at Bologna, 563. Their difficulties on the legates coming to their city, 564. A war with the Pistoians, and the occasion, *ib.* Their success against the Pistoians, and join Aldobrandini of Este against Salinguerra, 565. Consent to a crusade, and their agreement with one Hugh, a surgeon, for curing wounds, &c. 566. Difference with the bishop, and the occasion, 567. War with the Riminese, *ib.* against whom the Bolognese assist the Cesenians, and conquer, with a peace concluded, and the terms, *ib.* A large sum issued by them for the crusade, and civil dissensions, the consequences of which are prevented by the podesta's prudence, and other wise citizens, 568. Add a professorship of grammar to their university, assist the Faventines against the Imolese, with the emperor's views, and the demands of his ambassadors at Bologna rejected, 569. Accommodation with the Imolese, and the legate umpire between the Bolognese and Pistoians, *ib.* The reputation of their crusaders in taking Damietta, 570. The pope's excommunication little regarded by the emperor, and the difficulties of the Bolognese, who carry on works of beauty, *ib.* A decree in favour of strangers settling in their territory, 572. They are interdicted, yet build Castel Franco, *ib.* War between them and the Modenese, with the auxiliaries on each side, 575. Entirely defeated, with their inglorious retreat from Bazano, and the governor of Plumati murdered, 576 (B). Take San Cesario, *ib.* but an action ensuing, James Hoveri saves the Parmesan standard, but that of Bologna is taken by the Modenese, and themselves defeated, *ib.* A truce concluded by the pope's means, and its terms, *ib.* Sudden quarrel between them and their bishop, and the former are interdicted, 578. Difference with the bishop compromised, *ib.* Assist the Faventines against the Forlense, but a peace is concluded, *ib.* A robbing war with the Modenese, who, in revenge, make a canal from the Scultemina, for destroying Castel Franco, and they take Monzo, 579. On the emperor's return to

Germany, they increase their warlike preparations, *ib.* Take and demolish Castel Loiano, with their ravages also in the Modenese, and are deeply interested in the dissensions of Faenza, 580. Ravage Frignano, the inhabitants of which had returned to their duty, *ib.* Prepare for war, with the occasion, 581. March to Modena, but on what occasion recalled from the siege, *ib.* and they relieve the Guelphs in Faenza, besieged by the Gibelines, after defeating the latter, *ib.* Renew the war against the Modenese, with their success, *ib.* Defeated before Vignola, 582. Their constancy, 583. Adorn their city, *ib.* Treaty between them and the Parmesans, with the want of punctuality in the former, 584. Their neutrality in the war, yet have domestic dissensions, *ib.* Their preparations, *ib.* Their foresight and economy, with their taking care of the roads, and building a palace for the Antiani, 586. Shelter the Gibelines from Bresciano, and assign them subsistence, *ib.* Build the castle of Scaricalesi, assist the Brescians against Entius, and make a law for re-occupying the open country, *ib.* Success against the Modenese in the Romagno and Imolese, also take Cervia, 588. Spirited up by cardinal Octavian, defeat Entius, and take him prisoner, &c. 589. Return to Bologna, which they enter in triumph, and enact a law about Entius, with their taking Modena by capitulation, *ib.* Its several articles, 590. Ratified and the dispute about Frignano adjusted, *ib.* Persist in their opposition to the emperor, whose menaces about his son's captivity they despise, 591. Excellent laws passed in favour of the open country, *ib.* On the pope's coming to Genoa, complaints are made by the Modenese against them; Innocent makes a progress to Bologna, and confers the signal honour on that city of consecrating two new churches, *ib.* Alteration in the government by admitting a popular podesta with the other, whom they called captain of the people, 593. Their resolution, and thereupon the Bagnacavallians submit, *ib.* Are Arbiters between Forli and Forum Populi, with their award, 595. Affair between them and the Bagnacavallians ratified, *ib.* Arbitrary law made for the free peasants furnishing corn, *ib.* The pope hires a body of Bretons under the legate of Geneva to reduce them, with his affected tenderness, and the potiff comes to Italy, *xiii.* 339

Bolingbroke, Lord, forwards much the treaty in favour of the duke of Savoy, *xi.* 360

Bombay yielded by the crown to the East India company, and a fort built upon it, *iv.* 317. A revolt of the natives quelled, 319. The fort besieged by the Moguls, 322. In great distress, *ib.* Relieved, 323, but ruined by its bad governor, 326. Island and fort described, 385. Strange diseases of it, *ib.*

Bomberg, (Daniel) a famed Hebrew printer at Venice, *v.* 596

Bomb-ketches, invented by Renard, tried first at Algiers, *ix.* 466

Bombs, where first used, *x.* 275

Bommaeen, an Indian sacheem, taken by the English, *xiv.* 227. Effect of this towards a peace, but why it comes to nothing, *ib.*

Bona government and city described, *vii.* 223. Its port, 224

Bonacursi, one of the podestas in Mantua, puts the other podesta, Zenachalli, to death, and is succeeded by Bardellone, the son of Bonacursi, with different accounts of him, *xiv.* 112 (A)

Bonaventure island described, *xiv.* 551

Bond, Lieutenant governor of Barbadoes, and his excellent measures, *xv.* 128

Bonello flies, but the king, convinced of Majone's treason, recalls him to Palermo, *x.* 417, but he forms an association to dethrone the king, who, in Bonello's absence, is seized, and his young son Roger is proclaimed, with his death by a kick from his father, *ib.* On a new insurrection Bonello is imprisoned and dies, *ib.*

Boniface, Admiral, sinks several of the Moorish ships, and obliges the rest to retire, *viii.* 7

— VIII. elected to the pontifical chair after Celestine V. *ix.* 652. Annuls several acts of his two predecessors, with the accusations against him, and, at his return from church, the kings of Sicily and Hungary hold his bridle, *ib.* His arrogant chiding and imprisoning Celestine for life, with other methods for securing his dignity, *ib.* Endeavours to conclude a peace between the French and Aragonians, &c. and publishes a bull for the immunity of the clergy from taxes, and afterwards another more moderate, 653. Overlooks the rights of the empire through a large sum from the Italian cities, *ib.* His revenge against



- against two cardinals of the Colonna family and the archbishop of Genoa on a false information, *ib.* (R). Publishes a severe bull in favour of the sacred college, and canonizes St. Lewis, *ib.* Crowns the king of Arragon king of Corsica and Sardinia at Rome, *ib.* Refuses to consent to the deposition of Adolphus the emperor, and to confirm Albert's election, 654. Settles the articles of treaty between France and England, with his treatment by the former crown, *ib.* He concludes a treaty and alliance with Albert, and disapproves of king Edward's invasion of Scotland, *ib.* The first jubilee opened at Rome, with the vast concourse and the great cheapness of provisions under him at Rome, *ib.* Account of it, *ib.* (S). Embassy from the king of the Tartars on defeating the sultan of Egypt, and taking Damascus, and orders a croisade for the Holy Land to be preached, 655. Would not receive an embassy from Albert, but affirms himself to be emperor and pope, *ib.* Creates Charles of Valois vicar of the empire, and attempts to reconcile the Whites and Blacks in Florence, *ib.* Difference between him and the king of France, *ib.* Receives an embassy from the king, bishops, and nobles of France, with his answer, and confirms Albert's election, with the conditions, 656. Sends several articles to be subscribed by the king of France, who refuses them, and is excommunicated, *ib.* Accusations in a parliament at Paris against him, and appeal to a general council, *ib.* Proceeding upon an accusation at Paris, and seized by the French and Colonna at Anagne, but, after three days imprisonment, he is set at liberty by the citizens, 657.
- Boniface IX. elected pope, with an account of him, ix. 696 (V). A jubilee at Rome, with great abuses in the indulgences, *ib.* Ladislaus and his consort crowned king and queen of Sicily by his orders, *ib.* Publishes a letter to all the faithful, acquaints the king of England with the ambitious views of the French monarch, with a bull for the liberty of ecclesiastics, 697. Retires to Perugia, and grants a divorce to Ladislaus, *ib.* Sends nuncios to France for assistance in restoring union, *ib.* Returns to Rome, which he quits, 698. After an interview of the emperor and king of France he consents to resign, if Benedict will first abdicate, who, refusing this, is confined by the French king, 699. Returns to Rome on condition of transferring the power entirely from the people, *ib.* Confirms the duke of Bavaria's election to the empire on Wincelaus's deposition, 700. On the death of pope Urban, he espouses Landislaus' cause, who, with Constantia, is crowned at Gaeta, x. 472. Dies, ix. 701.
- , surnamed Roland, succeeds his father Amadeo IV. marquis of Savoy, and is unfortunate, xiv. 126.
- Bonis, De Laris, a Jew of Provence, invents an astronomical ring, v. 593, *sub not.*
- Boniti, siege of, and surrender to Charles of Anjou, xiii. 282.
- Bonzas when first in vogue among the Mongls, ii. 353. Carressed by Mangu Khan, 360.
- of Fo and Tau regulated by Kublay, ii. 379.
- designed for Japan, but all drowned, ii. 385. Forty thousand assemble to settle their religion, 387. Their lands taxed, 402. Supposed the authors of several calamities, 403. Declared useless in China, 409. Favoured in China by the emperor, iii. 562. Their wretched character and knaveries, *ib.* (H). Principal tenets, 563. Massacred by Tay-vu-Ti, and 100,000 of them obliged to marry to beget soldiers, iv. 711. The whole tribe obliged to return to a secular life, 715. Those of Japan great moralists and orators, iv. 17. The undertakers at funerals, 32.
- Bonne. See Marlborough.
- Bonnivard, abbot of St. Victor, his good advice to the Genevois, xiv. 20. Reply to their deputies on their dissuading him to read a writ of excommunication by the archbishop of Vienne, *ib.*
- Bonnivet, Admiral, his ill success in Italy, with the loss of Chevalier Baiard, ix. 212. Recovers some part of the Milanese, *ib.* Passes the Alps with an army, with his successes on the Milanese frontiers, x. 319. His error and Colonna's diligence occasion the bad success of the French, *ib.* Retires from Milan, and takes Lodi, &c. with the cautious measures of the Venetians, *ib.* The Swiss under him revolt, and his rear defeated in passing the Alps, 320.
- Borachio Sapatoc, fruit, its inebriating quality, xiv. 434.
- Borak Ogdon invades Abaka in Iran, ii. 478. Defeated by him, *ib.*
- Borcus Cunossus, and Spera, succeed their grandfather Palæmon in Lithuania, xii. 625.
- Bored-island described, xiv. 551.
- Boreel, his spirited remonstrance at Paris, xi. 580.
- Borelo succeeds his cousin Seniofred count of Barcelona, viii. 125. Very assiduous and fortunate till defeated by Mohammed Almanzor, at Moncada, 126, who takes Barcelona by assault, *ib.* which Borelo regains, *ib.*
- Borgia's legation in Spain, luxury, and avarice, x. 37 (B).
- , (Cæsar) pope Alexander VIth's natural son, made cardinal, and the methods used by his father to remove impediments, x. 47 (K). Resigns the cardinalate, and goes legate into France, 51. Created a duke in France, where he marries, *ib.* Takes Imola and Forli, 52. Poisons the cardinal of the same name, and conquers Pesaro and Rimini, but obliged to raise the siege of Faenza, 53, which surrenders to him, and he is created duke of Romagna, *ib.* Takes Piombino, *ib.* Convention between him and the Florentines, with his insolence, which the French king checks, xiii. 458. Makes himself master of Urbino, &c. x. 54. Confederacy against him, but the Urfini consenting to a separate peace, the other lords accede, *ib.* His cruelty, with his taking possession of several places, *ib.* The Spaniards conquest of Naples owing to the neglect of the French, *ib.* Borgia begins to treat with the Spanish general, but the pope resolves on a neutrality between France and Spain, 55. Designs, with his father's concurrence, to poison the cardinals, when both he and the pope are poisoned by mistake, of which the pope dies, and Borgia loses his skin and hair, *ib.* Great confusion in Rome by the French and Spaniards, *ib.* Instance of the vanity of human politics, xiii. 461. Imprisoned by the new pope, resigns the cities in Romagna, and escapes to Naples, with his perpetual imprisonment in Spain, and his escape and death, x. 56 (O).
- , (Roderigo) or Alexander VI. chosen pope after Innocent, with his wicked character, xiii. 435. Design of that pope and his son Cæsar in prevailing with Lewis of France to lend him a body of troops, 456. He and the French king reconciled, with his and his son's insolence, 460. Confederacy of the lesser Italian princes against them how disconcerted, with their treachery and cruelty to the confederates, *ib.* Mutual league among the Florentines and others also against them, *ib.* That pope and his son's deceit, 461. His character and his two immediate successors, *ib.* Dies of poison taken by mistake, *ib.* (A), x. 55.
- Borgo di San Domino taken, xiii. 602. Its fortifications demolished, *ib.* Submits to Carmagnola, xiv. 99.
- Boris succeeds his father Ginvil in Polocz, and his uncle Skirmunt in Lithuania, xii. 626. Character, and building several magnificent structures, *ib.* Extends the blessings of the gospel, *ib.* (A).
- Gudenow, whose sister the czar Theodore marries, his character and rise, xiii. 127 (E). On Batori's death he endeavours to obtain the crown of Poland for Theodore, but it is given to Sigismund of Sweden, 128. Checks the Tartars, *ib.* Resolves to usurp the Russian throne, and his measures for that purpose, 129. Causes young Demetrius to be assassinated by an officer, whom he also causes to be taken off, *ib.* Intricacy of this affair, *ib.* (K). Causes Moscow to be set on fire, with his artful generosity to its inhabitants, 130. Artful management after poisoning the czar Theodore Iwanowitz, and is proclaimed czar and crowned, 132 (M). First acts, after this, towards those who had any claim to the crown, and to Gustavus Ericson, *ib.* He concludes a peace with the Poles, and an alliance with Christian IV. of Denmark, *ib.* Rejects an embassy from the Turks, 133. Grants privileges to the Lubeckers, English, and Dutch, *ib.* Attempts, by a party of Cossacks, to murder Demetrius, but miscarries, *ib.* His embassy to Sigismund of Poland, and that king's answer, 134. Again attempts Demetrius's life, but he himself dies of poison, 135. Different accounts of it, *ib.* (T). Character, and his son Theodore Borissowitz succeeding, *ib.*
- Borissowitz, (Theodore) succeeds his father Boris, czar of Muscovy, and his character, xiii. 135. The Muscovites revolt, and he and his family imprisoned, with his violent death, and that of his mother in prison, *ib.*
- Borium, where situate, and becomes a retreat to the Jews, v. 517 (X).
- Borivorius, first Christian duke of Bohemia, xv. 451. Chuses a voluntary exile, is recalled, but abdicates 452.
- II. king of Bohemia, xv. 454.
- Borka, Sid, comes ambassador to Jehan Chir, iii. 81. Mutual presents of value, *ib.*
- Borkholm taken by the Swedes, xii. 132.
- isle of, surrenders to the Danes, xii. 316.
- Borneo, its first correspondence with the Portuguese, iv. 151. Situation, inhabitants, and chief kingdoms, *ib.*
- Bornholm,



- Bornholm, account of, xi. 652  
 Bornow, kingdom, described, vii. 104. Its capital, 105  
 Borona, a kind of corn in the isle of Zebu, iv. 200  
 Borondon, St. the Marvellous Island, described, and why so difficult to be found, vi. 152  
 Borso succeeds Lionel of Este, in prejudice of his son, and made duke of Modena, xiv. 106, also duke of Ferrara, with the pope's maxim for disregarding legitimacy, ib.  
 Borth, (Peter) sent admiral to the Indies, iv. 416  
 Boscawen, Admiral, sent into India, iv. 366 Lays siege to Pondicherry, 367. but obliged to raise it, 268. His fleet lost in a storm, ib. Defeats De la Clue's fleet, xv. 624  
 Boschhower, (Marcellus Van) sent by the Dutch to negotiate a truce in Ceylon, iv. 552 (G). Great honours done him there, ib. Ill success in Holland, 553, and makes a treaty with Denmark, 554  
 Bosembroo, a congress of the Danes and Swedes there, xii. 171. Peace concluded there with Sweden, and Christian IV's motives, 172  
 Bosso's proposal for attempting the island of Modon, vii. 448. Sent to treat with the pope about Malta, ib. Success, disaster, and death, with his prudent precaution, ib.  
 —, (Thomas) chosen bishop of Malta by the order, yet another put in by the pope, vii. 451. A long contest about his election, and concluded at length in his favour, ibid.  
 —, (the learned Antony) made agent at Rome to the order of Malta, vii. 504  
 Bosman's brave defence of Wodenburgh, vi. 653  
 Boson made king of Provence, viii. 712. Erects Arles into a kingdom, ib.  
 Boslu, a party under him attempting to force the Brille, defeated, xi. 410. His cruelty in Rotterdam, ib.  
 Bost, where situate, ii. 515 (W)  
 Boston, in New England, built, and the occasion, xiv. 506. The Puritan ministers who, that were instrumental in the prosperity of this colony, ib. Ravage of the small-pox among the Indians, ib. Dreadful fire there, 531. Burnt, and rebuilt in a more elegant manner, 532. Described, 537. Encouragement of learning, and their commerce what, ib.  
 Bostra, (Basra) besieged by the Moslems, i. 137. Betrayed by the governor to them, 138. Taken by Moawiyah, 273. Retaken by Ali, ib. Ravaged by the Rawandians, 392. A dirhem coined there, 408  
 Bota island, where situate, iv. 266  
 Botaniates, Nicephorus, revolts against the Romans, ii. 203. Proclaimed emperor and harassed by Soleyman, 204. He resigns the empire, ib.  
 Bottelary division in Africa described, vi. 401  
 Bortxella, nephew of Bardellone, succeeds him in the government of Mantua, xiv. 112  
 Bottio, the execution of that marquis, xiv. 131  
 Bottom, Island without, in the South Sea, described, v. 8  
 Bothita, or Buteria, in Sicily, taken by the Moslems, i. 471  
 Botla, Ebn, a Baghdad physician, his controversy with Ebn Redwan, i. 652  
 Botskay, (Stephen) seizes Transylvania, and Bathori's part of Hungary, xi. 179  
 Bova, the royal title in Tong-King, iii. 446. Stripped of its secular power, &c. ib. Their melancholy state under the usurping chovas, and succession how settled, 447  
 Bouchafra, alcayd of Morocco, betrays Muley Mohammed, vii. 191. Punished according to his own sentence, ib. (S)  
 Bouchain taken by Marlborough, after several successes of the French, ix. 499. Different accounts of this capture, and last military enterprize of that great general, xi. 348  
 Boucicard, a French marshal, his arrival at Genoa as governor, x. 567. Tranquility is re-established there by lessening the taxes, and, by the Genoese entreaties, the king appoints him governor for life, 568. With a fleet he obliges the king of Cyprus to agree to a peace, and the lord of Candelorum to a perpetual alliance, ib. Attacked by a Venetian fleet, and the commotions in Genoa quieted on his return, with the lords of Pisa and Padua, &c. submitting to the French, ib. His severity, and design of seizing on the Milanese, 569. His shameful juggling xiii. 365. A new faction in Milan for inviting the French under him, xiv. 88. Adventure as guardian of the Milanese, 89. Is totally defeated, and a piece of barbarity ascribed to him, ib.  
 Bouffar, (Muley) of Morocco, defeated by Abdalla, vii. 199  
 Boufflers, Marshal, takes Philipsburgh, &c. xi. 308. Why arrested in the name of his Britannic majesty, with his extraordinary reception by Lewis at Versailles, ix. 475. Feuquieres's severe censure on his conduct at Namur, ib. (A).  
 MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.  
 His success over Opdam near Antwerp, but both disgraced, 484. His death, ib.  
 Bouganville, M. sent with a body of observation to watch the English at Quebec, xiv. 720; and, though reinforced, is obliged to retire, 721  
 Bouillon, treaty with that duke, who is received into the king's favour, ix. 332. Makes his court to the queen at the expence of the Reformed, 348. Advises a negotiation with the queen-mother, 361. Dies, 369. On his leaving an only daughter, what the views were of the house of Lorraine, 285  
 —, Duke of, pardoned, ix. 408  
 Boulanvilliers's Lite of Mohammed censured, and sundry errors, i. 7. The English version guilty of the same errors, &  
 Boulogne taken by Henry of England, ix. 230  
 Bourbon, fort. See Nelson  
 —, or Mascarenhas, island, described, iv. 616. When and how colonized by French from Madagascar, 617. A new set of inhabitants rebel against the East India company, 618. Vast difference of its inhabitants as to complexion, &c. ib. When first fortified by the company, 619. Coffee first brought into it, great profit thereof, and the island attempted in vain by admiral Boscawen, ib.  
 —, Island, in Africa, described, vi. 83  
 —, Duke of, who had joined the duke of Orleans, dies, with his excellent character, ix. 130  
 —, Duke of, constable of France, goes into the emperor's service, ix. 210, xiii. 499. An account of this matter, and his disputes with madame, the French king's mother, 211 (C). This event suspends Francis's sending of succours into Italy, ib. The constable's successes in France, but retires from before Marseilles, 213. His embarrassments in Italy, and how supplied with money, x. 319. The imperial army under him recover Vercelli, 320. Is reinforced with a body of troops, and the movements of both armies near Pavia, xiii. 504. Throws a body of Spaniards into Milan, himself at their head, and the effects, 512. Advances against Tuscany and Rome, 515. Marches towards Tuscany, 516. Proceeds to Rome, 517, which is sacked, and he himself killed, ib. The disorders committed by his army, with the immense booty taken, ib.  
 —, Cardinal, his reproach to the queen-mother, and her answer, ix. 290. His death, 298  
 —, Duke of, on Orleans's death, first minister of France, restores Villeroy, xv. 610. Character and administration, ib.  
 Bourbonites, disorders committed by them, xiii. 520  
 Bourbourg, its gallant defence by the duke of Gloucester, ix. 118  
 Bourdeaux accepted for a congress between Alonso and the king of France, viii. 15. The French in the mean time take Pampeluna, ib. The conferences opened without effect, insurrection there, and the proceedings of the constable, who deprives it of its privileges, ix. 234. Some of the principal inhabitants obliged to dig Monem's dead body out of the grave with their nails, ib. Different effects of these severities and the wild proceedings of the duke of Aumale, ib. The city restored by the king, 235  
 —, Archbishop of, disgraced, ix. 401  
 Bourbonnais, Mr. made chief commander of the French in India, iv. 360. Encounters with captain Peyton, 361. Lays siege to Madras, 362, and takes it, which he agrees to restore for a ransom, 363. Noble conduct, ib. Opposed by Dupleix, 364. Design against the English factories, 365. His vast improvements in the Isle of France, 614. Accused at court, ib.  
 Bourg, Chancellor Du, trampled to death at the king of France's public entry, ix. 226  
 —, Count Du, his great intrepidity when executed, ix. 251  
 Bourgeois, (Margaret) her institution of the Daughters of the Congregation, at Montreal, what, xiv. 597. How preferable to that of the Ursuline nuns at Quebec, ib.  
 Bourguignons, their kingdom where, xiv. 4  
 Bouro, island, its situation, trade, &c. under the Portuguese, iv. 158  
 Bourtry, a town on the Gold Coast, described, vi. 649  
 Boustrophein, a singular way of writing in Japan, iv. 20 (W)  
 Bouteroue made intendant of Canada in Talon's room, xiv. 617  
 Bouteville, afterwards marshal Luxemburg, his defence of Bellegarde, and honourable terms given, ix. 438  
 Bouton besieged by the king of Macassar, but relieved by the Dutch, iv. 450  
 Bouvines, famous victory of, ix. 54  
 Bowman's Island, in the South Sea, described, v. 36



- Boyle, Mr. first governor of the society for propagating the Gospel in New England, xiv. 515
- Boyrak, khan of the Naymans, makes an alliance against Temujin, ii. 272. Defeated by him, 280
- Bozoli, his misconduct, x. 317
- Brachio created the Florentine general, with his character, xiii. 372. His successful exploits against Sforza, and relieving Urbini besieged in Rocca Contrado, ib. He is besieged in Todi, and surrenders; but the Neapolitan garrison there expelled for their brutality, and Brachio recalled by the inhabitants, with his brave defence, 373. The pope's design against him, but reconciled, being appointed governor of Bologna, ib. His successes, with the revolt of the Bolognese, his pardoning them and selling Bologna, &c. to the inhabitants, 375. Reduces his native country, Perugia, after defeating Chicolini and Malatella, who are taken ib. Employed to reduce Bologna, which had revolted, 376. Appointed papal general, with his success, ib. His character, 403
- , (Charles) son of the former, dies, and the consequences, xiii. 429
- Bradstreet, Colonel, his success against parties of the enemy, and information given Abercrombie, xiv. 710. Reduces Fort Frontenac, through incredible difficulties, 714
- Braddock, General, his character and disappointment on his arrival in Virginia, xiv. 705. Disadvantages what, in his way to Fort Du Quesne, ib. Messages to the governors of Pennsylvania, &c. with the consequences, xv. 134. His imprudent conduct, is entirely defeated and killed, xiv. 706
- Braga, Archbishop of, &c. his conspiracy against the king of Portugal, viii. 505. Different accounts of its discovery, ib. Manner of their punishment, 506
- Bragadino, his cruel treatment in Famagosta from the Turks, with his death, and amazing firmness, x. 366 (A)
- Braganza, (Constantine de) viceroy of India, with his success, iv. 131
- , (Alonso), duke of, his death and character, viii. 441
- , Family of, in Portugal, account of it, viii. 441 (F)
- , Duke of, executed, and his brothers declared traitors, viii. 447. The situation of affairs and sense of the Portuguese about them, 448. Family restored, 455. Don Diego, account of him, and issue, 457 (B)
- , Duke of, his expedition into Africa, and wife conduct there, viii. 463
- , (John) duke of, his situation and family, viii. 498. His character, and that of his duchess, ib. Resolves to accept that crown upon an invitation, with what passed from his secretary and duchess, ib. By a sudden revolution he becomes king of Portugal, 500
- Braganza, Duke of, refuses obedience to the pope, x. 144
- Braham, or Ibraim, chosen king of Quiloa, but dethroned, vi. 350. Civil answer to Cabral's message, reception, and splendid interview, 351
- Brahmans, or Brahmins, of Hindostan, their several classes, iii. 24. Whence so named, and their dignity, 25. Their learning, poetry, and philosophy, 33. Sects, ib. Notions of a first principle and morality, ib. Physic, anatomy, and astronomy, 34. Apprehensions of eclipses, ib. Absurd geography, 35. Universities, books, study, &c. and manner of initiating infants, 36. Horrid cruelty in funeral-rites, 38. Notion of the world's creation, first man and woman, 185, 186. Destruction and new creation of mankind, ib. Their moral and ceremonial law, 188. Frequent ablutions, ib. Worship, prayers, and pilgrimage, 189. Various tribes, new destruction and creation of the world, ib. Last day, and they believe no resurrection, 191. Their gods of the first class, 193. Of the second and third, 205. System of the universe, and three-fold heaven, 207. Seven-fold earth, and purgatory, 208 (G). Ages of the world, and their temples, ib. Ceremonies and superstitions, 210. Their origin, privileges, &c. 211. Education, 212. Marriages and polygamy, 213. Hierarchy, 214. Eighty-two tribes, ordination, and duty, ib. Classes and rules, 216. Various sects, ib. Vast number of monasteries, 219
- Bramante lays the first stone of St. Peter's at Rome, x. 57 (P)
- Bramma, the Indian god, his origin and office, iii. 195. Created with five heads, ib. One cut off by Veslnum, ib. Wife, children, and temple, 196
- Brammans in India, in what they differ from the lamas, iii. 306
- Brampur, capital of Kandish, in Hindostan, described, iii. 18. Its vast trade, ib. and besieged by the rebel Khurm, but defended by Rostan Khan, 77
- Brandenburgh, account of an impostor who lived there, xii. 60
- , Elector of, alone espouses the cause of the Duke, with whom he concludes a treaty, ix. 455
- , when erected into an electorate, xi. 71
- , war between that marquis and Nuremberg, with his wife, xi. 96. The foundation of the marquis's claim, and his appellations and character, ib. (O)
- , (John) marquis of, enters into the Protestant league, xi. 152. Joins the confederates, 623
- , Elector of, intercedes for the elector of Saxony's pardon, with the conditions, xi. 160; and he, with Duke Maurice, proposes articles of accommodation between the emperor and the landgrave of Hesse, ib.
- , Albert of, occasion of the war kindled by him, and his ravages, xi. 164 (C)
- , Marquis of, and the prince of Neuburg joins their forces, under the protection of Henry of France, and they are declared legal possessors of Juliers and Cleves, xi. 181. Treaty concluded about Cleves, Juliers, and Berg, between that elector and the duke of Neuburg, but frustrated, 212. Negotiation with France ineffectual, 260. Thwarted by the imperial general, he retires into the bishopric of Hildesheim, 288. He makes peace with France, ib. Invades Swedish Pomerania, with his successes, 291. Takes Stetin, Stralsund, and Gripswald, 293. Opposes Leopold's designs, with his motives, 299. Takes Bonn, 309. Cedes the circle of Schweibus in Silesia to the emperor, who gives him the title of King of Prussia, 316, 323
- , the succession of Juliers and Cleves espoused by the states general in favour of that prince, xi. 485
- , Marquis of, reconciled to queen Margaret, xii. 39. Reduces Fredericks-ODE, but his further progress is prevented by commodore Pen, 183. Different accounts of the action in which he defeated the Swedes, 188. His declaration on introducing Calvinism into his dominions, 189
- , Elector of, invades and reduces most of Royal and Ducal Prussia, but is defeated, and acknowledges Ducal Prussia a fief of Poland, xii. 358. Excites the jealousy of several powers, ib. Better terms granted him by Sweden to preserve this only ally, 359
- , Elector of, concludes a treaty with Sweden, xii. 366, with Poland, 572
- , dominions of that electorate, xv. 487. Division and capital, ib. Possessed of part of Cleves, Mark, and Ravensberg, 488. Each country of this electorate has its own laws, and no appeal from the sovereign, ib. Its religion, and privileges of the elector, ib. His votes, 489. The antient inhabitants who, 506. Antient government, ib. as also its modern, ib. The marquis of, obliged to a peace with Mecklenburgh, 518
- , New, stormed by Tilly, xii. 325. Account of that town, xv. 552
- Branjinoko, king of Pegu, rescued in single combat by means of his elephants, iii. 266. See Pranjinko
- Brasil, by whom first discovered, viii. 457. A gold-fleet arrives from it, and an account of the colony whence brought, 535 (C). Discovered by the Portuguese, xiv. 148. Described, 476. Attempts on it unsuccessful, ib. Difference of climate there, ib. Poisonous reptiles of vast size and variety, ib. Commodities and vast commerce, ib. Revenue to Portugal from it, ib. (A). The principal manufactures exported to it from different countries, ib. sub not. Times of the fleet's sailing, ib. in fin. Mines of gold and diamonds their produce, 477. Number of slaves sent from Africa, ib. Division into provinces, (capitanias) ib. Viceroy, his authority, ib.
- Brasilian colonies, reflections on them, xiv. 479
- Brasilians, character of them, xiv. 479. Account of their eating human flesh, by Purchas, fictitious, 480. Prevailing notion, which evinces their religion, ib. Probable reason for not having temples, ib. Kind of civil institution among them, with their hospitality and funeral rites, ib. Manner of burying, ib. Knowledge of the art of war, ib.
- Brava, island, on the African coast, vi. 129
- , republic of, not an island, and where situate, vi. 335. Account of it, &c. 336
- Bray, Dr. his settling church matters in Maryland, xv. 108
- Brayne supercedes Sedgewick, governor of Jamaica, but dies, xv. 280
- Breda, congress there fruitless, xi. 415. Taken by the confederates by stratagem, and Parma's endeavours to recover it ineffectual, 437. Trenches are drawn round it by Spinola,



- nola, with the situation of the garrison, and the advantage gained by Baglioni, 504. Prosecution of its siege, 505. After ten months siege, it capitulates, 506, 538. Important consequences of this conquest, ib. Congress at last opened there, 607. Peace concluded there, 608
- Breitenfeldt, consternation caused at Vienna by the defeat there, xi. 257
- Bremaw's creation and labour, who brings forth twins, that re-people the world, iii. 187
- Bremen made an archbishopric, x. 638 (R). Its complaints in the diet at Ratisbon against Sweden, and a peace concluded at Staden, xi. 275. Affairs of the North with regard to the king of Denmark's invading it, and a treaty concluded, which settles the division of it, 291. Conquest of it and Verdun, ib. The French repulsed in an attempt upon it, xv. 627
- Brescia besieged makes a desperate resistance, but, after a long defence, surrenders, and is dismantled, xi. 276. Different accounts of historians here, x. 293 (F). Surrender to the Venetians, xiii. 379. Relieved by Sforza, after defeating the Milanese fleet, 399. Retaken from the Venetians by de Foix, 473
- Bressaguan makes peace with the Portuguese, iii. 251. Ceremony of swearing to it, but murdered by a Bramavassal, 252
- Bressani, a Jesuit missionary, his cruel treatment when taken by the Iroquois, xiv. 583. Reflections on such accounts of the missionaries, ib. Returns to Canada, 586. Absurdly offers to go among the Iroquois, ib.
- Bretagne made a dukedom and peerage, the first in France, ix. 73
- , Duke of, fore pressed by the king of France, retires into England, ix. 113
- , the French driven out of it, and its duke restored, with wrong steps of the king, ix. 115. The duke seizes the constable Clisson, and, after extorting a vast sum, sets him at liberty, with his project of landing in England overthrown by the duke of Bretagne, 120. Dies, leaving his family to the care of Oliver de Clisson, with the resentment to his own daughter, 124
- , (Arthur) duke of, dies, ix. 16
- , Duke of, after his minister Landais's death, by whom governed, ix. 181. Makes what treaty the king pleases to admit of, and dies, 183
- Bretigny, treaty there with France, ix. 104
- , M. first settled on Cayenne isle, xiv. 483
- Bretislau, duke of Bohemia, ravages Poland, xii. 453. xv. 453. His success in Poland, and against the emperor Henry II. yet obliges him to a peace, ib. Makes an edict against witchcraft, and recovers Silesia from the Poles, 454
- Breton, Cape, ceded to France by the treaty of Utrecht, xiv. 492. The French retain the right of fishing there and in St. Laurence's Bay, 496. Why chiefly memorable, 498
- Brewer, his passage into the South Sea discovered, xi. 545
- , Admiral, account of his expedition to Chili, xiv. 324. Successes and death, after making an alliance with the natives, ib. His Squadron returns, ib.
- Breze, (Peter de) makes a descent on the English coasts, in concert with queen Margaret of England, ix. 161. Spaniards beat by the French fleet under him, 399. Killed in an engagement with the Spanish fleet, and the retreat of that of France, ix. 419
- Bridge, Mohammed's, over Hell, described, i. 162. The notion taken from the Persian magi, ib.
- Bridgman, (Sir Orlando) appointed governor of Jamaica, but did not come over, xv. 308
- Brienne, (John de) king of Jerusalem, marries Berengara, sister to king Ferdinand of Castile, vii. 710. Mediates between the emperor and pope with success, xiii. 572. He and his daughter Bianca visit Bologna, ib.
- Brigoudis, a brave Hottentot tribe, their manner of training up lions for war, vi. 395
- Brin, every thing there favourable for the Protestants, of which place Swenbecci takes possession, x. 197. Diet there refuses Prague liberty of conscience, xi. 80
- Brion, Admiral, reduces most part of Piedmont for Francis, ix. 224
- Brisac, Count, his military operations in Italy, ix. 236. Surprises Casal, with other advantages on this side to the French, and new negotiations for a peace ineffectual, 240. His successes in Piedmont lost through the king's concession, 243. Abandoned, but coming to court clears himself, 247. His death and character, 257. Weymar's answer on this head, 247
- Brisac surrenders, after being reduced to extremity, with the designs of France and Weymar respectively on it, xi. 246. A promise of it obtained by Richelieu from Erlach, 247 (X). Taken by the French, for which the governor is beheaded, and the second in command degraded, 326
- Britain, New, an island in the South Sea, why so called, v. 29 Described, 37. The natives have a sharp skirmish with the Dutch, ib. Country described, ib. Proposals for settling a colony in it by the South Sea company, 44
- , Great, queen of, her exile and reception at Paris, ix. 415
- , ———, king of, threatens to break alliance with the French, if the king proceeded further in Holland, and Lewis's insolent terms, as also those from England, at Boxtel, rejected, ix. 457
- , conquers there by what Danish king, xi. 667. By whom reduced, 685
- , Great, its negotiations at the Hague for peace rejected by the allies, xii. 685
- , ———, attacked with an invasion, but defeated by them, xii. 647. Plan of accommodation from Spain rejected, and accedes to the quadruple alliance, ib.
- British, several names.
- Briton, first expeditions to North America, and by whom, iv. 484
- , sent, its representation to the Russian ministry, xiii. 234. Orders reprisals on the French in North America, xiv. 702. Orders two American regiments to be raised, and their officers named, 703
- parliament, both the support and cement of the grand alliance, xi. 339
- Brito, (Philip, and Nicoto de) an upstart Portuguese, sets up for king of Pegu, iii. 233. Over-reaches the king of Arrakan, and his ingratitude to him, 272. Assisted by the viceroy of Goa, ib. Proclaimed king of Pegu, 273. Defeats the Tanguan fleet, and takes the prince of Arrakan prisoner, whom he releases for 50,000 crowns, 274. Defeats the joint forces of Arrakan and Tangu, takes the latter prisoner, and from him a million of gold, ib. Is besieged by the king of Ava, betrayed, and impaled alive, 275. His wife made a common slave, his son put to death, and his misfortune owing to his wife, ib.
- Broder succeeds his father Jarmeric, 43d king of Denmark, with his indolent and weak reign, also the revolt of several provinces, xi. 680
- Broecke (Peter Vanden) bombards Jacatra from his fort, iv. 420. Taken prisoner by the king, through stratagem, and wrested from him by admiral Koen, 421. First sailing to the Red-Sea, and returns richly laden, ib.
- Broglio, joined with Soubise, defeats Yfenburgh, xv. 622
- Broguy, (John of) a swineherd, bishop of Geneva, his history, xiv. 7
- Brokht island described, ii. 683
- Broughton, (Thomas) governor of Carolina, xv. 94
- Brouillan, M. governor of Placentia, his character, xiv. 664. Takes Fort Forillon sword in hand, ib. Other petty advantages, but differs with Iberville, and on a compromise takes Fort St. John, 665. On Villebon's death, succeeds him as governor of Acadia, 672
- Brown penetrates into Provence, xiii. 666. Notwithstanding the bombardment of Antibes by the British fleet, is forced to retire from it before Belleisle, ib.
- Bruan obliged to abandon Merghi, iii. 395. Made commander of it, 398
- Brue, M. de, over-reaches the king of the Isle of St. Lewis, vii. 46. Other instances of his knavery, ib. (A). Seizes and fortifies the isle of Goree, 80. Discovers a great piece of artifice in the inhabitants, ib. (O).
- Bruges taken by the French, ix. 491
- Brun, M. le, an embassy from Spain by him, with its motives, xi. 552
- Brunehaut forms a confederacy to revenge her sister's murder, and the event in her favour, viii. 632. Revenge against Fredegonde, and various successes thereupon, 633. Her character, and with regard to Fredegonde, 643. Banished, through her ill conduct, by her grandson Theodobert, ib. Prevails on Thierri and Theodobert to make war on Clotaire, whose forces are cut to pieces, 644, but obtains peace from his cousins, with a second war between them, and a peace concluded, ib. War between Theodobert and Thierri how ended, 645. Brunehaut abandoned by the Bur-



- Burgundians, with her miserable end, 648. Different accounts of her character, *ib.* (L)
- Bruneleschi, his plan by a mound for drowning Lucca, baffled by a counter-mound, *xiii.* 384
- Bruno, (Anthony) the Jesuit, his arrival in Abyssinia, *vi.* 290. Persecuted with his brethren by the emperor Basilides, 302. Put to death, 303
- , a Saxon, chosen pope, under the name of Gregory V. *ix.* 570
- , nominated by the emperor Henry, sets out for Rome, is chosen pope, and takes upon him the name of Leo IX. *ix.* 588
- Brunswic, the Jews settled and protected there, *vi.* 607. A fruitless congress there, *xiii.* 227
- , Duke of, his arrival in Italy with 12,000 Germans, who besieges Lodi, but raises the siege, and retires into Germany, *x.* 330 (F)
- , war between that duke and the bishop of Hildesheim, but a peace is concluded, *xi.* 58
- , war between the duke and city of that name, but a treaty is concluded, with the principal articles of it, *xi.* 191 (N). The duke's ravages, he is totally defeated by Tilly, and this puts an end to the party of Frederic V. elector Palatine, 208, 211
- , Duchess of, attempting a revolution, is arrested at Riga, where she has been confined ever since, *xiii.* 267
- , antiquity of that house, *xv.* 477. Descended from a Roman nobleman, Caius Aëtius of Elle, *ib.* Series of his descendants down to Mathildis, *ib.* From thence till the Aëtii, or Elle, blood is united with the Guelphs, *ib.*
- Halberstadt, Duke of, cuts in pieces a body of Croats, *xi.* 213. His death, with an account of him, *ib.*
- Wolfenbüttele, account of that line, *xv.* 487
- , Prince of, takes Wachtendonck, *xv.* 622. Drives the French out of Fulda, 625. Defeated and wounded, *ib.* Defeats Glauhitz, with the prisoners taken, *ib.* Supports Bulow, and takes Cleves, *ib.* Defeated at Campen, with loss, *ib.* Obligated to draw off from Fritzlar, which submits soon after, 626. Defeated near Grunberg, *ib.* Drives the French out of their intrenchments before Brunswic, 627
- Brussels, an assembly convoked there, with the jealousies between the Flemings and Spaniards, *xi.* 443. Proposals made by that court, and conferences opened at the Hague, 529
- Bryennius, (Nicephorus) his revolt in Asia Minor, *ii.* 203
- Buccaneers, their rise in Jamaica, *xv.* 280. Instances of their extravagance, with their history, 281
- Buccanigra chosen captain of the people of Genoa, and a council of thirty-two ancients together nominate a podesta, *x.* 548. How deposed, *ib.* and his authority given to a podesta, 549. Tumultuously made duke of Genoa, quells a riot of the commons, connives at a second, and is confirmed duke for life, 559. Some nobles, for a conspiracy against him, are publicly executed, *ib.* Assists the king of Castile against the Moors, and Albenga against the marquis of Final, who is obliged to ask pardon at Genoa, *ib.* The exiles still promoting disaffection, the duke puts several to death, with his other proceedings against them, *ib.* Thro' the intrigues of the exiles, and an agreement between both parties, he resigns, and retires, with a large sum, to Pisa, *ib.* Again tumultuously chosen duke of Genoa, with his proceedings against the nobles, and the Visconti, 561. Notwithstanding the discovery of conspiracies against him, he is poisoned, *ib.*
- Buchan, Earl of, defeated and taken at the battle of Crevant by the English, *ix.* 143
- Buchau, account of its nunnery, *xv.* 445
- Buchorn, account of, *xv.* 444
- Buckingham, Duke of, traversing France, arrives with an army in Guienne, *ix.* 115
- , Duke of, stabbed by Felton, *ix.* 377. See Rochelle
- Buda, after a stout and long resistance, is taken by the duke of Lorraine by assault, *xi.* 305. The Turkish army retires, and passes the Drave, while the duke takes Segedin, the Five Churches, &c. *ib.*
- Budchat, (Ali Ben) causes Hammed and his sons to be strangled, *vii.* 184. Outwitted by the princess Meriam, 185. Is beheaded, *ib.*
- Budæus sent ambassador to the pope from Francis I. but proves ineffectual, *x.* 66
- Budda, or Boutta, the same with Sommona Kodom, *iii.* 306. Its origin and antiquity, and worshipped by the Sarmanes, 307
- Buena-vista, one of the Cape Verd isles, described, *vi.* 123
- Buenos Ayres, in los Charcas, described, *xiv.* 463. Its capital, *ib.* Abundance of cattle and horses roving wild in the country, *ib.* Other cities here, 470
- Buffaloes of Canada described, *xiv.* 457. Manner of hunting them, *ib.*
- Buga Timur, the 7th khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 465
- ordered to put prince Argun to death, *ii.* 481. Releases, and raises him to the throne of Iran, and is made his prime minister, 482. His revolt and death, 483
- Bugia, or Boojiah, city and port in Algiers, described, *vii.* 225 (C). Its traffic and territory described, *ib.* Relieved from a Moorish fleet, *viii.* 225
- Bugessaus compelled by Canute to sue for peace, on condition of doing him homage, *x.* 682
- , death of, and partition of his dukedom, *xii.* 22
- Buglana See Baglana
- Buhazon defeated by Salh Reys, *vii.* 182. Attempt on the city of Fez, *ib.* Betrayed by him, *ib.* Crowned king of Fez, and jealousy of his two sons, *ib.* Defeats the sharif Mohammed, 183. Is defeated and killed by him, *ib.*
- Buhayen, a province of the island of Mindanao, described, *iv.* 202. River therein of the same name, 203
- Buiningen, negotiation of that Dutch minister with Sweden, *xi.* 565. His remonstrances ineffectual, *xii.* 97
- Buissou, M. du, subdues, and cruelly murders, the brave Outagamis, for which Charlevoix commends him, *xiv.* 693
- Buka Timur, his bloody expedition against Hella, *ii.* 473
- Bukha al Malk seizes on Maru, *ii.* 512. Driven out by Alaslar, and slain by the Mongls, *ib.*
- Bukhara, city, *ii.* 454. See Bokhara
- Bukharia invaded by the Moslems, *i.* 294. Its queen narrowly escapes, *ib.* Taken by Khatiba, 343
- the Great, described, *ii.* 452. Various names and provinces, 453. Situation, soil, &c. *ib.* Division, *ib.* Inhabitants described, religion, trade, &c. 456. Monarchs descended from Jenghis Khan, 463
- Proper, described, *ii.* 453. Government, language, &c. 454
- the Lesser, described, *ii.* 458. Soil, product, division, 459. Cities, *ib.* Inhabitants, 461. Drels, manners, &c. *ib.* Marriages, polygamy, &c. 462. Religion, legends also of the Virgin Mary, *ib.* Future state, &c. and strict lent, 463
- Bukharian learned men presented with Timur's valuable curiosities, *ii.* 570
- Bula, fictitious king of Chozar, the legend of his conversion, *v.* 524 (M)
- Bulacabi, Cape, in the isle of Panay, *iv.* 197
- Bulgaji tribe defeated by Timur Bek, *ii.* 523
- Bulgar, capital of Bulgaria, where sited, *i.* 693
- Bulgaria ravaged by the Othmans, *v.* 160
- Bulgarians, their panic, and flight from before Didymotikum, *v.* 157
- Bull, Golden, or Caroline, the famous edict of the empire so called, enacted at Nuremberg and Metz, in the reign of the emperor Charles IV. and reason of its name, *xi.* 52, 53 (Z), 54 (B), 365. Account of the original at Frankfurt, *ib.* (\*). Its remarkable preamble, *ib.*
- , Mexican, (urus) described, *xiv.* 216
- Bulla Mataro, an apostate Kongoese, buried in a church at Kongo, and his carcase carried off by devils, *vi.* 479 (B)
- Bullul Khan, seizes on the young king of Visapur, and usurps the government, *iii.* 141. Ill success against Seva'ji, 142
- Bungo, a city in Japan, and capital of the isle of Ximo, *iv.* 40
- Buomping, a town in Kamboja, described, *iii.* 410
- Bupo, or Kohot, brings the Indian religion into Japan, *iv.* 51
- Buguoi makes some progress in Bohemia, *xi.* 198. His successes in the Netherlands, 471
- Buquoy repulsed, and an agreement made at Ulm, *xi.* 202. Makes some progress in Hungary, but loses his life in an engagement near Newhaufs, with count de la Tour, 206
- Burdin, (Maurice) archbishop of Braga, made pope Gregory VIII. *vii.* 668. Hideous picture of him, but not true, *ib.* (N). His character and promotions, *ix.* 583 (S). Taken prisoner, and his ignominious procession, 586, and miserable end, *vii.* 668, sub not.
- Burewin family, princes of Mecklenburgh, *xv.* 514. How they recover their independency, *ib.* Submit again to the Danes, 515
- II. division of Mecklenburgh between him and his sons, *xv.* 515, who submit to Denmark, with their fidelity, *ib.*



Burga Soltan, his great service to Abu'lgayir, ii. 707. Conquests in Great Bukharia, with other gallant exploits, and defeats Khojah Mirza, ib. Seizes on some of his lands after his death, ib. Put to death for it by sultan Bakht, and his son's advancement under him, 708 & 722. His posterity driven out of Karazm, but restored by Obeyd Khan, 726

Burgara, port, in Malabar, iii. 163

Burgha Khan, his reign and conquests in Kipjak, who turns Mahomedan, and dies, ii. 445, 446

Burgos, in Old Castile, account of it, vii. 627 (B)

——, Counts of, arrested and put to death by Don Ordogno, vii. 628. This act how reputed by historians, ib. Upon it the Castilians revolt, and set up two judges as supreme, ib.

Burgundy (Franche Comté) described, viii. 234 (H). Different claims on it, ib. Disputes about the succession to it, which John of France annexes to the crown, ix. 104

——, (Philip the Hardy) duke of, established in Flanders, ix. 118. Marries his son to the heiress of Albert of Bavaria, 119. Sends powerful succours to the Scots, with the discredit brought on their country by the French there, ib. Invasion on England fails to the loss of the French, ib. All kinds of diversions contrived for amusing the king, ib. Favours the people against the duke of Orleans, and his death, 126 (E). The policy of marrying him to the heiress of Flanders, and his issue, ib. sub not. His son John who succeeds him excluded by the queen and duke of Orleans from the government, ib.

——, (John the Fearless) duke of, succeeds his father Philip the Hardy, ix. 126. After the murder of Orleans, he retires, 128. Comes to Paris, and forces a pardon from the dejected king, but which is declared null, ib. Upon the duke's return from Liege, the queen and princes of the blood retire with the king, and he obtains his own terms, but loses his credit through the licentiousness of his troops, 129. His submission in general terms to the king, and his intrigues with the princes of the blood, ib. Assumes, as governor of the dauphin, the direction of the kingdom, 130. Failing in his designs he retires to Flanders, with the Butchers, but sets fresh intrigues on foot for recovering the administration, 132. Effectual means for awakening the dauphin in a grand council, ib. Murdered at Montereau, by the connivance, if not command, of the dauphin, 138. Condolance sent the young duke on the murder of his father, with his character and issue, 139 (G)

——, (Philip the Good) duke of, obliged by the duke of Gloucester to raise the siege of Calais, ix. 151

——, (Charles the Hardy) duke of, succeeds Philip the Good, ix. 169. Concludes a treaty with the king on what terms he pleases, 170. Obliges the king to march with him against Liege, ib. On the king's return he confirms the treaty, and why he orders all magpies and jays to be destroyed, ib. Discovery of the secret correspondence of the prime minister cardinal Balu and bishop of Verdun, also their conviction, and confinement in iron cages, ib. Refined policy, with very singular events attending it, and the peace of Crotoi, which the king refuses to ratify, 172. Declares war against the king, who gains over Philip de Commines, the duke's prime minister, 173. The duke failing to re-take some towns, discovers the constable's treason to the king, ib. How the constable saves himself, and a person detected in poisoning the king, ib. Diverted from France by disputes in the empire, 174, with the king's views, who invades Burgundy, ib. The duke, though invaded in his camp by the Germans, has a treaty granted him, ib. Though offended at the king, he concludes a truce with him, 175. Gives up the constable, who is tried and executed, ib. Runs headlong into a war with the Swifs, who defeat him twice, ib. Defeat and death at the siege of Nancy, which event king Lewis endeavours to turn every way to his advantage, ib. Some more particulars on occasion of that duke's death, ib.

——, disputes between France and Spain about that title adjusted, xi. 628

——, Transjurane, what, ix. 531

Buri, and Bolm, kingdoms in Sierra Leona, described, vii.

23  
Burikha, the Arab, revolts against Abu'l Abbas, and defeated by him, i. 383. Chosen head of a new revolt, ib. Defeated by the khalif, 384

Burkut Turks in West Tartary, iii. 127

Burma, a province in Karazm, ii. 714

Burnet, Dr. memorial for banishing him from Holland, xi. 636

Burnet, (William) made governor of New England, and the flourishing state of the colony, xiv. 533. Disputes about a settled salary, and he dies, 534

——, (William) governor of New York, xiv. 542. His character, ib. Obtains an act of assembly for prohibiting trade with Canada, ib. Remonstrated against in England, but the governor's reply proves satisfactory, and the act since made perpetual, ib. He builds Oswego, ib.

Burning, a Japanese punishment, iv. 16

——, a death chosen by the Indian women, after their husbands decease, iii. 122 (C)

—— Island on the South Sea, v. 20

Bursa, ancient Prusa, taken and dismantled, i. 548

Burulday's revolt suppressed, ii. 521

Busakin sent to besiege Aleppo, slays Saleh Ebn Mardas, and sends his head to the khalif of Egypt, i. 634

Busbudgia fort taken by admiral Watson and colonel Clive, iv. 372

Busfra sent basha of Tetuan, and defeats Hammed in his attempt upon it, vii. 196

Butan, the 14th khan of Bukharia, ii. 465

Buteux, father, murdered by the Iroquois, xiv. 591. On which account, and the destruction of the Hurons, many of the missionaries return to Europe, ib.

Butler, governor of Bermudas, introduces a new government, xv. 275

Buts, among the Bramans, what, iii. 214

Butan river, in Mindanao island, iv. 203

Buvetz, the 26th emperor of Japan, iv. 52

Buxentuf betrayed by sharif Mohammed, vii. 175

Buyan dynasty, by whom and when founded, i. 527

Buyts, the Dutch envoy in London, his virulence and indiscretion, ix. 501

Buzenjir Khan, his miraculous birth, with his descendant down to Jenghis Khan, ii. 266

Buzjani, Al, a famed geometrician, his death and character, i. 602

Buzzuga, the 5th khan of Karazm, ii. 724. Invited into an alliance with Shah Tahmasb, and makes peace with him, ib. His death and progeny, ib. (V). The family extinct, 731

Byng, admiral Sir George, upon rejection of certain articles to Spain, destroys the Spanish fleet, xiii. 647. Sent with a squadron up the Mediterranean, xv. 555. Engages the Spanish fleet, which he defeats off Pessaro, ib. A letter from Walton on the loss of the Spaniards, and the king's letter of thanks to Byng, 558. Consequences of this victory as related by Corbet, ib. Memorials on the Spanish oppressions disregarded, ib. War in Sicily, with Byng's letter to Maffei, about the German reinforcement for Messina, 559, which surrenders, ib. Saves the Sicilian fleet, a Turkey ship, and rear-admiral Delaval, ib. Alliance for giving the duke of Savoy Sardinia, on evacuating Sicily, ib. Byng saves the Germans in Sicily from perishing, 560. A reinforcement sent from Eugene's army for Naples, ib. Success of his fleet under Matthews at Pentamelia, 562. Gets leave to confiscate all French ships employed by the Spaniards, with the characters of the opposite generals Merci and de Lede, ib. Transports the imperialists from Hungary to Sicily, who fail in their attack on the Spanish camp, ib. Advises to form the siege of Messina, which is taken, with the Spanish ships in the mole sunk and destroyed, 563. The citadel of Messina surrenders, and he again saves the imperialists, ib.

——, (Robert) son of the above, governor of Barbadoes, indemnification for the loss of his equipages, xv. 196. His administration distinguished by the spirit of the islanders against the enemy, ib. Death, and the assembly's resolution, ib.

Byron, Captain, destroys French ships in the bay of Chaleurs, xiv. 727

C.

(See several Articles under K.)

CAAB, the son of Lowa, his descent, i. 3. Gives a new name to the sixth day of the week, ib.

—— Ebn Ashraf, assassinated by Mohammed's order, i. 56.

—— Confounded by Prideaux with Caab the poet, ib.

——, the poet, forgiven by Mohammed, i. 92

——, a Moslem commander, defeated near Aleppo, i. 211

5 F

Caab,



- Caah, a Jew, converted by khalif Omar at Jerusalem, i. 209  
 Caaba, what, and by whom possessed at first, and the number of its idols, i. 57 & 85  
 —, white and black stone, what, and whence brought, i. 99, 102. Devoutly kissed by Mohammed, and how visited by all the Moslems, 81  
 —, idols, destroyed by Mohammed, i. 81. Sacred among the Arabs from the earliest times, 85. Described, and whence so called, 98. White stone, or tomb of Ishmael, 99. Its oratories, cupolas, &c. ib. Its pretended antiquity, 100  
 —, famed black stone, described, i. 101. Whence its blackness, ib. Carried away by the Karimatians, and sent back twenty-two years after with contempt, ib. Pilgrimage to it instituted by the Koran, 104  
 —, white stone of Abraham, described, i. 101, 323  
 Caabites punished by Mohammed for refusal of the ordinary contribution, i. 91  
 Cabeczo, a province in Angola, described, vi. 493. The lord of it a Christian, ib.  
 Caboceroes, in Guiney, who, and how chosen, vi. 701  
 Caboche's attempt on the king of France, ix. 243  
 Cabot, (John) his discovery of Newfoundland, &c. prior to that of the Spaniards, xiv. 146  
 —, (Sebastian) first discoverer of the east part of America, and the consequent claim of the English what, xiv. 484. Why neglected by them, ib. Under Henry VII. discovers Canada, 567. Discovers Florida, xv. 63 (Q)  
 Cabral, (Petro Alvarez de) sent admiral to Calicut, vi. 351. Flattering message to the king of Melinda, and to that of Mosambico, ib. To that of Quilon, and his grand reception on board, ib. Forced to leave Quilon in fear and haste, 352. Reception at Melinda, fails for India, with his piracies on the Arabian ships, ib.  
 — discovers the Brasils, viii. 457. His voyage to America, and anchors at Puerto Seguro in Brasil, xiv. 148  
 Caboul, Gaboul, where situate, and its vast commerce with the eastern, northern, and western nations, iv. 93  
 Cabres, Ilha del, or Goat Island, vi. 119. Very unhealthy to the Portuguese, ib.  
 Cachao, a province of Tong-King, and also its metropolis, described, iii. 433. Royal palaces, &c. subject to frequent fires, 434. Method for preventing this, 435 (B). English factory there, and its stout dyke, ib. The great fair there, 441  
 Cachimies, in California, their creed, xiv. 425. How accounted for, ib.  
 Cacongo, kingdom, described, also its soil, natives, &c. vi. 541. Its commerce, ib.  
 Cadalous, bishop of Parma, appointed pope by the emperor, by the name of Honorius II. who going to Rome with an army, is defeated by Godfrey marquis of Tuscany, ix. 562, and upon invitation entering Rome again is besieged in the castle, ib.  
 Cadem Saghed, the 70th king of Ethiopia, vi. 253  
 Cadi, or Kadi, the office of, at Baghdad, become venal, i. 555  
 Cadillac's generosity to the Canadian savages, and its effect, with their success against the Iroquois, xiv. 657  
 —, la Motte, his imprudence in a quarrel between the Outaouais and the Miamis, xiv. 684. Discovers a conspiracy against the French, and claps up a dishonourable peace, ib. Why made governor of Louisiana, and his proceedings, xv. 19  
 Cadiz taken by lord Howard and the earl of Essex, viii. 277. Successful expedition to it by the English and Dutch fleets, xi. 446  
 Cadodacchos, their kind reception of Mr. Joutel, xv. 10  
 Cadodaguioux, savages, and vast number of tribes, xv. 48  
 Caerdon, (Paul Van) his vain attempt on Mosambico, vi. 359  
 Cæsar de Este, excluded by pope Clement VIII. as illegitimate, from Ferrara, and that pontiff takes possession of it, xiv. 108  
 — I. duke of Modena and Reggio, succeeds Alphonso II. with his death, marriage, and issue, xiv. 108  
 —, Don, his naughty behaviour to the dowager of Modena, and influence over that duke, who dies without issue, xiv. 109  
 Cæsarea seized by the treachery of Khliziaflan, ii. 218. Taken and put to the sword by the Moguls, 231. Taken by Moslema, an Arab general, i. 363. Surrendered to the Moslems, 226. Its present state, 227  
 Cæsarius, bishop of Arles, falsely accused by the Jews, v. 521  
 Cæsarius, the patrician, sends an ambassador to Sisebut the Visigoth, vi. 553. Makes a disadvantageous peace, ib.  
 Caffa, in Crim Tartary, seized by the Genoese, iv. 104 (G). Importance of that port, 105 (H). Their settlement there taken by the Turks, x. 577  
 Caffres, have no religion, v. 660. Those among the Hotentots described, and utter enemies to the Christians, iv. 498. Whether really so barbarous as reported, ib. (K). Whence so called, with their vile character and customs, vi. 382  
 Caffaria described, and its northern boundaries uncertain, vi. 382. The country and people described, ib.  
 Catur, an Ethiopian, made regent of Egypt, i. 547. Expels Saiso'Udawl out of Damascus, 548. Makes himself absolute, but opposed by a Greek slave in high power, 556. Seizes on the government of Egypt, 561. His death, 562. His character and successor, ib.  
 Cagayan, province in Manila, its metropolis by whom founded, and government, iv. 188  
 Cagliari, capital of Sardinia, described, xiv. 125  
 Cane surprized by the king of Navarre, ix. 276  
 Cajetan, cardinal, chosen pope, by the name of Gelasius II. with an account of him, ix. 583 (V)  
 Cairo, or Al Kahirah, in Egypt, by whom founded, i. 564. Why called Al Kahirah, 567, in fin not. Becomes the capital and chief mart of the kingdom, iv. 100  
 Cairoan, or Kahirwan, the ancient Cyrene, where situate, and by whom rebuilt, iv. 100  
 Calabria invaded by Abu'l Kasem, i. 571. Made thambles of cattle, 572  
 —, duke of, his reception at Rome, and a Latin verse put over his door, x. 42 (E)  
 —, duke of, some places in Italy surrender to him, but his brother is defeated, and taken prisoner, x. 453  
 —, duke of, on the death of Violante and Charles Martel, becomes heir apparent to Naples, x. 454. The pope's ratification of the treaty, and terms, ib.  
 Calais, with Ardres and Hulst, taken by the Spaniards, viii. 277. Taken by Edward III. who turns out the inhabitants, and replaces them with his own subjects, ix. 97. The war unfortunate on every side to Philip, ib. who forgives Geoffrey de Harcourt, Edward yields to a truce, and disappoints in person an attempt upon Calais, ib. Reduced by Guise, and some further account of this place, ix. 246. The English soon after ousted from all they possessed in France, ib.  
 Calamianes, three islands near the Philippines, and extent of the province, iv. 196  
 Calaminham, the great empire of, where, iii. 255 (X). Described, ib. & 256 (Y). Vast power of its emperor, and Pinto's account probably fabulous, ib.  
 Calamo, isle, described, vii. 393. Its inhabitants excellent divers, ib.  
 Calao, the port of Lima, its former commerce with Zebu, iv. 210. Since decayed by changing the course to the Philippines, ib. Proves detrimental to New Spain, ib. Attempt of the Dutch on it frustrated, v. 87. The Viceroy's resentment against them, 89. Inhuman reprisals by the Dutch on the Spanish prisoners, ib. The port described, xiv. 461. Its importance, ib.  
 —, island and harbour of, where situated, xiv. 306. Several stupendous monuments there, 383 (E)  
 Calasio, the compiler of the famed Hebrew Lexicon, v. 601 (L)  
 Calarrava, its defence, the Templars having given it up, undertaken by St. Raymond, abbot of Vitero, vii. 685  
 Calatrava, knights of, remove to Salvatierra, vii. 708  
 Callahom, or Aahown, third minister in Siam, iii. 347. His office, ib.  
 Calbaria, province, in Africa, described, vi. 573  
 Calcutta fort taken from the English, iv. 371. Melancholy state of its garrison, ib. (C). Retaken by admiral Watson and Mr. Clive, 372  
 —, or Fort William, described, iv. 395  
 Calicut, arrival of the Portuguese under Vaquez de Gama, iv. 115. 117. Besieged by the Indians, but relieved by Menzilzib, 129. See Kalikut  
 Calderona, Lerma's favourite, rise and fall of, viii. 290, and though acquitted is executed, 392  
 Caleb, or Elefbaan, antient king of Abissinia, conquers the Homerites, vi. 252  
 Calendar, Persic, corrected under Al Moktadi, i. 678  
 —, Chinese, rejected by the Pa-pe-si-suans, and invaded for it by the Mongls, ii. 397



- Calendar, European, by whom reformed, x. 113  
 —, Gregorian, introduced into France, ix. 279  
 Calendo, a famed chief of the Giagas, with his wife's singular long life, vi. 569  
 Calentar, in Persia, its office, ii. 650 (B)  
 Calhau, who and where situated, xiv. 361  
 Calido, governor of Dowaro, in Abyssinia, surprized by the Portuguese, and slain by one of their marksmen, vi. 271  
 California, a million established there by the Jesuits, iv. 215 (Q). Its wine esteemed through Mexico, ib. sub not. Discovered, v. 60. Name, site, derivation, and climate, xiv. 419. Its animals, native and imported, described, 420. Birds, ib. Insects, fish, and trees, ib. Shrubs and manna, 421. Nations and languages, ib. Neglected by the Spaniards, and the different attempts for discoveries on that coast, 427. By whom found to be a peninsula, ib. Indefatigable zeal of the missionaries, and the fault found with them what, ib. Negligence of the court of Spain, and the Spanish town near Cape St. Lucar to what use put, ib. Islands in its gulph inhabited, and what, ib. (N)  
 Californians, their persons described, xiv. 421. Without knowledge of letters, and tradition of their origin, ib. Their characteristical genius, and that of other Indians, 422. Some emulation among them, ib. No idea of wealth, ib. Government among them little or none, and what, ib. Occasional leader how promoted, ib. Their wretched huts, ib. Sleep sitting, their dress what, and decency of their women, 423. Their petticoats how prepared, and their love of ornaments, ib. Dexterity in their fishing nets, and plurality of wives, &c. ib. Manner of marriage, ib. Absurd custom in the women after delivery, and also in the men, ib. Established custom among widows, 424. Festivals, ib. Comedies and dances, ib. Religion, but no idolatry among them, ib. Their speculative tenets surprizing, ib. Accounted for, ib. Their other religious notions, ib. Their priesthood, 425. Impostures, and the motive, ib. Their only physicians, and a remarkable medicine what, ib. Schools for propagating their impostures, and what the youth are taught, ib. Dress of the priests at public festivals, and its ridiculousness, ib. Their behaviour, 426. The licentiousness of these meetings, ib. Another public festival what, ib. The priests impostures, ib. Barbarous ceremonial, &c. ib. Their funeral rites and barbarity, ib.  
 Calijar, (See Abu) invited to the government of Kerman, i. 636. Marches against Jalalo'ddawla, ib. But defeated by him, 637. Seizes on Tabrestan, 641  
 Calilaya, province in Manilla, described, iv. 188  
 Calitura surrendered to the Dutch, iv. 440  
 Calixtine and Bohemian nobles agree to the famous treaty Compactata, but the orphans and Thaborites opposing it, twenty thousand of them are cut in pieces at Frague by the nobles, xi. 87. Offer the crown of Bohemia to Albert elector of Bavaria, who declines it, as does also the emperor, on the states tendering it to him, and both offer it in favour of young Ladislaus, xi. 92  
 —, or Hussites, in Bohemia, their grievances, xi. 191  
 Calixtines and Catholics becoming friends, resolve in an assembly to wait for the empress's delivery. xi. 91  
 Calixtus II. or Guido, elected pope by the cardinals at Cluny, ix. 385 (X). Account of him, ib. Is consecrated at Rome, ib. Holds a general council at Rheims, where the emperor and antipope are excommunicated, ib. Has a conference with the king of England at Gisors, and the agreement thereupon, with his arrival at Rome, and proceedings on the road and afterwards, ib. Receives an embassy by Suger from Lewis king of France, ib. The antipope falling into his hands is, after a mock procession, shut up in a convent, x. 564 (K). Creates the bishop of Compostella a metropolitan, with an account of Calixtus's writings, ix. 486 (Z). Deposes and excommunicates Oderisius, abbot of Cassino, thro' a private pique, 587 (A). Gives a commission to Otho bishop of Bamberg, for converting the Pomeranians, with his other transactions and death, also his character, ibid.  
 — III. elected pope in the room of Nicolas V. and an account of him, x. 23. Acts with vigour against the Turks, with the emperor's embassy to the pope, ib. Difference between the pope and king of Naples, ib. A misunderstanding between the pope and the German princes, xi. 100. Articles of complaint in a remonstrance from them, with the import thereof, and this accusation answered article by article, and drawn up by Æneas Sylvius, in favour of the pope, 101. The pope endeavours an accommodation between the emperor and Ladislaus, who dies in the mean time, ib. Several competitors arise for the crown of Hungary and Bohemia, ib. Appoints his nephew Borgia governor of Rome, &c. x. 24. Upon the death of Alphonfus, he claims Naples against Ferdinand, but dies, having earnestly promoted his relations, ib. (P)  
 Callica, (Don Juan) sent admiral into India, with his character and success, iv. 118  
 Callenburg surrendered to the king of Denmark, but Canute Porcius's widow is disappointed of Halland, xii. 58  
 Calliere's memorial to France for the conquest of New-York, xiv. 629. Plans for that conquest why deemed impracticable, 631. Receives an embassy at Montreal from the Iroquois, with six belts, and their import, 632. A representation to him from the Iroquois, and his answer, 668. Made governor of New France, and his character, ib. Negotiation with earl Bellamont, 669. Receives a deputation from the four upper cantons of the Iroquois, and his answer, ib. His views with regard to the Iroquois, 672. Interposes in a quarrel between the savages, and his answer to their remonstrances, 673. His apology when pressed on a settlement at Detroit, ib. Sends an embassy to Onontague, with their threatening speech, 674. Teganisforens' lively declaration to him concerning the prisoners, ib. His policy in a preliminary congress with the savages, 675. General conferences opened, ib. Gratifies the Iroquois request, ib. Solemn ratifying peace with the savages, 676. Conferences with their deputies, and sends missionaries, on their own request, among them, ib. Dies, and his character, 677  
 Callinicum fortified by Almanfur, i. 403  
 Callipolis overturned by an earthquake, v. 160. Romans there made prisoners, and rebuilt by sultan Soleyman, ib. Surrendered to him by Kallaconias, 162  
 Calmar. See Colmar  
 Callo, wooden bridge erected there, xi. 430. Attack of the Zealanders on it ineffectual, 431  
 Calojanes, or Kalojanas, surrenders Nicomedia to the Ottomans, v. 155  
 Calous sent into Syria against the Arabs, i. 139. Incenses the Damascenes, and taken prisoner by the Moslem general, 140  
 Calpisca, what, xiv. 196  
 Calvert, (Sir George, lord Baltimore) obtains a grant of part of Maryland, xiv. 492  
 —, adventures of that governor in Maryland, xv. 106. His reception from the Indians, and a town ceded him by them, which he calls St. Mary, 107. Progress of his settlement, ib.  
 —, (Charles) governor of Maryland, his good character, xv. 107. His influence over the Indians, and equal administration, ib.  
 Calvi admits a Genoese garrison, upon the fleet of the latter breaking through that of the enemy before Boniface, x. 570  
 Calvin arrives at Geneva, with his character, xiv. 28. Joint success with Farrel, ib. Underhand arts for expelling Castilio, 29. Goes to Strasburgh, ib. Invited to return to Geneva from Strasburgh, and becomes dictator of the state, ib. His rigour, 30, and death, 31. Strong apology for his sincerity, ib.  
 Calvinists in Geneva, their jealousy on an indulgence shewn there to a Lutheran prince, xiv. 44  
 Calvisiano surrenders to Sforza, x. 261  
 Calvo, Governor, obliges the prince of Orange to raise the siege of Maestricht with loss, ix. 462  
 Caluximbo, chief of the Giagas, elected, and why slain, with three hecatombs of each sex sacrificed at his funeral, also his thirty successors, vi. 569  
 Cam, (Diego) discovers the coasts of Kongo, vi. 472. His reception and success there, ib. (V). Embassy to the court, ib.  
 Camak, famed fortress of, betrayed to the Arabs, i. 421  
 Camarines, province of, in Manilla, described, iv. 188  
 Cambadoxi, one of the chief deities of Japan, and fabulous account of him, iv. 7 (H)  
 —, lugubral festival how kept, iv. 11  
 Cambamba, province in Angola, described, vi. 495. Mountain there, its silver mines, vi. 501  
 Cambi, a princess of Angola, taken prisoner, vi. 507. Baptized by the name of Barbara, 508. See Barbara  
 Camboja river in Cambaya, iii. 405  
 —, kingdom, described, iii. 405. Extent and limits, ib. Produce, commodities, &c. 406. Ports, ib. Chief islands, ib. Gum where bought, ib. Animals, 407. Chief rivers, 409. Capital described, 411. Royal palace and



- and stately temple, 412. Inhabitants described, *ib.* Natives, *ib.* Their commerce, but quitted by the Dutch and English, and the latter again invited to it, 413. Their religion, *ib.* Future state, *ib.* Various and numerous priests, with their popish missionaries, 414. Government and marks of honour, *ib.* Kingly power absolute, and state grandeur, 415. History of the kingdom, 416. Invaded by the Siamese, *ib.* Assaulted by the Spaniards, *ib.* Subdued by the Siamese, and torn by intestine wars, 418. Becomes tributary to Cochin-China, and abandoned by the Siamese, *ib.*
- Camboja revolts from the king of Siam, *iii.* 356, 362. Repulses him with great loss, *ib.* Its king defeated before Diu, *v.* 130. Submits to the Portuguese, 131
- Cambray, league of, formed by the pope against the Venetians, for what end made, *viii.* 221. *x.* 58. *xi.* 127 (*L.*) *xiii.* 465. Proclaimed in Spain, *viii.* 221. Its stipulations sworn to by the emperor and king of France, 237. Serviceable to the Florentines for the recovery of Pisa, *xiii.* 466. Great springs of that league, *x.* 289. Another cause of this formidable league, and its rise, 291 (*A.*) Conditions of the league, and the contracting parties who, *ib.* The princes invited to this alliance, and when signed, *ib.* (*B.*) —, why called the Ladies Peace, *ix.* 219. Its contents, *ib.* Generosity of Henry VIII. towards Francis I. upon this treaty, and the troubles in Germany lucky for Italy, 220 —, the pope's scheme on the disunion of its allies, *xiii.* 467. Francis's accommodation with Charles there, 523. Memorials from the discontented Italian states there, 647. Proceedings of the congress there, *xv.* 565. Family connections formed there between France and Spain, *ib.* Those and the congress broken off, 566
- Cambridge, Earl of, with a fleet and small army arrives at at Lisbon, *viii.* 65. His eldest son Edward, six years old, married and publicly bedded with the infanta Beatrix, *ib.*
- Camel of Mohammed performs his devotions, and the print of his footprint how and when discovered, *i.* 103 —, battle, or Khoraiha, whence so called, *i.* 267 —, sacred, what, and its singular privileges afterwards, *vi.* 31
- Camels, how made to supply the want of artillery, *ii.* 660 — of Africa, their great usefulness, *v.* 681. How brought up for use, 682 (*V.*) How reared for use in Egypt, *vi.* 39. Vast traffic by the Nile, and since by the caravans, *ib.*
- Camelion in Africa described, *v.* 689 (*E.*)
- Camelopardus of Ethiopia, remarkable, described, *vi.* 184
- Cameros, (Roderic Diaz de los) resigns his government of Rioja to king Ferdinand for a valuable consideration, *vii.* 709
- Caminatzin, Motezuma's nephew, heads a dangerous conspiracy against Cortez, *xiv.* 125. His character differently related, *ib.* Holds an assembly of the princes at his palace at Tezeuco, and his harangue how thwarted by one of the caziques, *ib.* The plot discovered, with Motezuma's counsel on Cortez's representation, 226. Taken prisoner, *ib.* His plot defeated, and the conspirators pardoned, upon submission, *ib.* Deposed from the crown of Tezeuco, and his nephew chosen, whom Cortez supports, and becomes Christian, 257
- Camifars. See Cavaliere
- Camma, a province of Loango, described, *vi.* 540
- Camoens, (Luis de) the famous poet, born, *viii.* 461
- Campaign in Holland, its operations, *xi.* 454
- Campanella's dangerous conspiracy in Naples discovered and quelled, *x.* 511. The Turks repulsed from the coasts, and his death, *ib.*
- Campbel, Captain Dugal, his brave character, and death, *iv.* 372
- Campeachy town described, and taken by Mims, *xiv.* 439
- Campeng, or Kampeng-pet, a city in Siam, described, *iii.* 316
- Camphire-tree, in China, described, *iii.* 652. Method of extracting and purifying its gum, 653. The virtues and uses of both, 654. Chinese treatise about them, 652 — in Japan, and the gum how extracted, *iv.* 44 — in Sumatra, by far the best, *iv.* 150 (*Z.*)
- Camp-notary in Poland, what, *xii.* 499
- Campo de Espina battle, in which Alonso of Arragon totally routs his consort Urraca's troops, *vii.* 665
- Camran, or Kamran, affronts soltan Hemayun, *iii.* 55. Taken prisoner, blinded by him, and dies, 56
- Canada, expedition from England against it, *xiv.* 531. Arrival at Boston, and how delayed, 532. The number of the fleet what, *ib.* Its miscarriage, *ib.* This attempt one of the articles against the earl of Oxford, *ib.* Its boundaries, 549. Quadrupeds described, 554. French trade what, 559. Storehouses erected there, which were improved into forts, and these multiplied gave rise to the war with the French, 559. Its fishery, *ib.* Birds what, 561. Great variety of trees in its forest, *ib.* also shrubs of various kinds, 562. A vast tract of unknown country west of it, and the names of the natives, 563. Their superstition and other rites, *ib.* Population how accounted for by M. le Page du Pratz, *ib.* Three radical languages, 565. Its history and first discovery by whom, 567. Its state during the minority of Lewis XIII. 572. How neglected, 573. War renewed between the Indians, and the state of the French colony, *ib.* Its decline how owing to the ecclesiastics, *ib.* French colony there its management and weakness, 583. Its situation, 597. A bishop sent to it, who introduces a total change, *ib.* Stiled bishop of Petree and apostolical vicar, *ib.* Favourable turn of affairs for it among the Onnontague women, 598. Reinforcements from Old France arrive there, with the good effects, but how damped by the governor-general, 600. Dreadful thunders, lightnings, and earthquakes, with the construction put upon them by the clergy and nuns, 601. Furious hurricanes consequent there, and the frightful effects, *ib.* Extent of those calamities, and one remarkable circumstance what, *ib.* Real effects of these on the people, and the present face of the country convinces the dreadful effects of the desolation, *ib.* Surrendered by its company to the king of France, who new-models its government, *ib.* The regulations made have an effect on the Canadians different from what was expected, *ib.* Council of state established, and its members who, *ib.* Restoration of peace with the Iroquois how retarded, 602. Remarkable request of the colonists in their petition to the king of France what, 603. Its government how ill conducted, and the Jesuits how blameable, 605. Their interested conduct, *ib.* Iron mines discovered, and why these and a tannery came to nothing, *ib.* Why they encouraged the fur trade, *ib.* Flourishing state, and commendable policy of the French therein, 607. How the French colonists fall off, and the advantage thereby to their British neighbours, *ib.* Number of French there, 616. Practices of the Iroquois through the English, *ib.* Practices of the missionaries there, 617. An English armament for invading it, and Frontenac why surprized at it, 636. Vast preparations in the English settlements against it, 686. Its force, 695. Number of its inhabitants, 696. All reduced, and reflections on its conquest, 727. Ceded to Great Britain, and the contest about its limits in the subsequent treaty of peace why unnecessary, *ib.* Reflections on it with regard to its new possessors, 728
- Canadians, ill success of the missionaries among them, *xiv.* 609
- Canal Royal, in China, when and by whom made, *ii.* 389. Completed, 391 (*R.*) — between the Twerza and Msta, making a communication between the Caspian and Baltic seas, *xiii.* 6
- Canalis (Jeronimo) beats a Turkish Squadron, *x.* 333. Soliman, on this, detains the Venetian merchants in his ports, but enlarges them soon after, with his commendation of Canalis, 334 (*A.*) — scours the Adriatic of pirates, *x.* 352
- Canaries, when and how discovered, *iv.* 110 (*E.*) Yielded to prince Henry of Portugal, 112 — islands described, *vi.* 131. When first discovered, 132, (*B.*) Situation, climate, &c. 133. First inhabitants, *ib.* Singular humanity, 134. Various states, religion, &c. *ib.* Grand Canary described, 144. Fertility, *ib.* — by whom reduced, *viii.* 77 — provinces in Quito, an alliance made with them, *xiv.* 301
- Candace, the common name of the Ethiopian queens, *vi.* 169, 222 (*B.*)
- Candahar, the occasion of its revolt, *ii.* 648, 650. Taken by Timur Bek, 515. Betrayed to the great Mogul by Merdan Khan, 623. Recovered by Shah Abbas II. 630. Its various changes of oppressive masters, 650. Petition to Shah Husseyn, *ib.* Baffled by Gourgin Khan, 652. Joins Mirweis's revolt, *ib.* Besieged by the Persians, 653. Relieved by Mirweis, *ib.* Its vast commerce with Europe and India, *iv.* 94. The city and province described, *ib.* Besieged and taken by Shah Abbas, *iii.* 72
- Candelaria, Puerto de, *xiv.* 281
- Candia, Duke of, murdered in the streets of Rome by his brother the cardinal, *x.* 50 —, Jews converted there, *v.* 519. Taken, and other considerable



- considerable acquisitions to the republic of Venice, x. 200. The first war there fomented by the Genoese, but the whole island subdued, and how divided, *ib.* Second war there, and the Venetian general defeated, with a treaty concluded, 199. Insurrection there, and return to their allegiance, with the conditions, 202. Another revolt, and the rebels terms accepted conditionally, *ib.* Revolt, and war with the Candians, with horrid murders and stratagems, 216. The Venetian army landing, defeat the Candians, with their capital taken, *ib.* Mutiny in the army quelled, and the island submits, 217. Another revolt there, but are twice defeated, though not decisively, *ib.* yet obliged to submit, and the whole island reduced, *ib.*
- Candiano, (Pietro) 16th doge of Venice, being slain in a sea-fight against the Narentines, the rest of the Venetians surrender, x. 188
- II. (Pietro) 19th doge of Venice, obliges the Com-machians to surrender at discretion, with the moderation of the Venetians in releasing them, x. 190. Death and character, *ib.*
- III. (Pietro) 21st doge of Venice, his character before and after promotion, x. 190. The Narentines submit, and are pardoned, with the banishment of his son and colleague Pietro, who encouraged riots, *ib.* Pietro's ravages on the Venetian shipping, and his father's death, *ib.*
- IV. (Pietro) son of the last, 22d doge of Venice, recalled with great honours, and his brutal government, x. 191. Savage treatment of the inhabitants of Uderza, *ib.* Put to death, *ib.*
- Candida, a Chinese lady and zealous Christian, iii. 568. Her piety and generosity, *ib.* (M)
- Candith, or Cavendish, (Sir Thomas) his voyage round the world, v. 66. Account of him and his commission, also engagement with the Spaniards, 67. Arrival at the Streights of Magellan, *ib.* Enters into the South Sea, 68. Various successes, 69. Takes the St. Ann, a rich Acapulco ship, 70. Leaves his vice-admiral in the Content, who is lost, 71. Intercourse with the caziques of Cabul, *ib.* Sails for the Cape of Good Hope, 72. His singular letter to lord Hunsdon, *ib.* His character and death, 73. See Cavendish
- Canea, a city of Candia, in vain besieged by the Christians, vii. 518
- Caneta, expedition thither by Gonzalo Pizarro, xiv. 325
- Can-ghe, or Kanghe, a portable pillory used in China, iii. 589 (I)
- Cang-hi, emperor of China, whether a Christian in his heart, iii. 562. His favour to the bonzas, *ib.* A favourer of the literati, 564. Explains the term Tyen, or heaven, by an edict, 565 (I), 566 (K). Edicts against the Christians, 571. Reflections on the preceding emperor's declarations, 586, sub (E). A great admirer of learning, 593. Grand funeral and deep mourning for his mother, 630. Judgment on European dissections, 654. Proclaimed emperor, 739. Severe edict against the Christians, and reception of the Portuguese ambassadors, *ib.* His palace burnt to the ground, 740. Pays a great honour to the Chinese monarchs, severity to the king of Quang-Tong, and visits his Tartarian dominions, 741. Fixes the frontiers with Russia, 742. Decrees in favour of and against the Christians, *ib.* His successor disgraced, a victory over the Eluths, with his reception of the Russian embassy, *ib.* Taken ill and dies, 743
- Cang-Wang, emperor of China, his good reign, iii. 690
- Cangoxima, a sea-port in Japan, with its castle and light-house described, iv. 40
- Cani, two islands belonging to Tunis, vii. 297
- Canjivoran plundered by the Maharattas, iii. 148
- Cannari province, some account of the manners and a peculiar custom among that people, by binding their children's heads with fillets, xiv. 410
- Canneta, Marquis of, arrives as viceroy of Peru, and executes the rebel officers who had deserted, xiv. 356. Others banished, with his further proceedings, *ib.* Prevails on an inca prince to accept a pension, 357. Raises enemies by his proceedings, *ib.*
- Cannohatinnos, their defeat by the Ceniz, and barbarous custom what, xv. 9
- Cannon, with large bullets, where first used, x. 249
- when first used in Germany, xi. 60 (D)
- Cano, the son of Amida, a chief deity of Japan, iv. 7 (H)
- kingdom, in Africa, described, vii. 103
- Canopus, gulph of, in Africa, described, vi. 17
- Canofa, famous castle in Modena, described, xiv. 103
- Canfo, in Nova Scotia, described, xiv. 493
- Cantacuzenus, his success against the Othman fleet, v. 157.
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Assumes the imperial title, *ib.* Brought to the greatest distress, *ib.* Relieved by the brave sultan Amir, and gives his daughter in marriage to Or Khan, 159. Ceremony of her betrothing, greatly assisted by him, and grand reception of Or Khan, *ib.* Greatly aided by him against Paleologus, *ib.* Ill treated by his son Soleyman in Thrace, 160. Makes peace with Paleologus, and soon after retires from the world, 161
- Cantelmo, his successes in the territory of Waes, xi. 544
- Cantemir, Prince, his account of the origin of the Turks, v. 135. Exploded, 136. Objections against his history of Soleyman Shah, 138 (X). Chosen by the grand seignior prince of Walachia, but why he revolts to the czar, xiii. 222. An incident about that prince much to the czar's honour, *ib.*
- Canterbury, Archbishop of, in a council at London, condemns Wickliffe's doctrines, ix. 698
- Canute the Little, being a child, and the only son of Eric the Usurper, and 61st king of Denmark, Enignup is chosen for life, xi. 689. His character with regard to religion, *ib.*
- the Great succeeds his deposed brother Harold in the Danish throne, and seventy-first king of Denmark, xi. 694. His character and invasion of England, with the contradictory accounts of the English and Danish historians, *ib.* (C). Olaus of Norway invading Denmark, Canute's son pursues him into Russia, *ib.* Omund of Sweden assisting Olaus, Canute enters upon a war against both, 695. His stratagem against Olaus, with his defeating and killing the king of Sweden in battle, *ib.* Success of his policy in Norway, and Olaus's death, with the great power of Canute, and dividing his kingdom among his sons, *ib.* Mistake of the English historians about his issue, *ib.* (A). His death and character, 695. An anecdote not mentioned by any English historian, *ib.* (B)
- the Pious, called to the Danish crown after his brother Harold the Simple, and 75th king, xi. 699. His views in accepting the crown, and obliging several idolaters to receive the truths of the Gospel, *ib.* He enforces reformation by his own strict example, the good effects and virtuous character of his reign, with his several ecclesiastical regulations, 700. His regard for learning, and resolution for the recovery of England, *ib.* His brother Olaus conspires against him, the army deserts, and he calls a diet, which he opens with a speech, *ib.* Why the people revolt, he is betrayed and put to death, his character and catastrophe, which has a striking analogy with that of Charles the First of England, 701. Canonized, 702
- , son of Eric III. obtains the government of Sleswick, and surprises the head-quarters of Henry prince of the Vandals, who escapes, but is afterwards defeated, xi. 704. He abjectly supplicates for peace, and obtains it, a strict friendship is entered into between the two princes, and by Canute's wife measures, on Henry's death, he is made king of the Vandals, *ib.* Triumphs over the ambition of his sons, which disturbed his happy reign, *ib.* Denmark, Sweden, and Poland, uniting against Vratisslaus prince of Sclavonia, Canute's generous interposition with Nicolas for Vratisslaus, 705. This generosity, and his other virtues, prove his ruin with the credulous Nicolas, *ib.* A conspiracy against his life how frustrated, and the queen's speech to him on her death-bed, *ib.* His enemies renew their attacks on him, but he convinces Nicolas of his honour and loyalty, *ib.* An accidental omission greatly endangers him, with an oath of secrecy taken by the conspirators upon it, 706 (A). Diffimulation and treachery of Magnus the son of Nicolas, to whose perfidy Canute falls a sacrifice, notwithstanding the notice sent him by his wife Ingeburga, *ib.* (B). His character, the king sheds tears for his loss, and the whole kingdom inconsolable, *ib.* His wife, soon after his murder, is delivered of a son, Eric and Harold, the child's uncles, being appointed guardians, 707. Why no notice is here taken of his other sons, *ib.* (A). Insurrection of the people under Eric for revenging his death, and, after several speeches in a public assembly, Magnus is banished to appease the people, *ib.* but the king recalls him, which occasions an open rebellion headed by Eric, who, through treachery, is defeated by Nicolas, 708 (A)
- V. ascends the throne of Denmark, xii. 3. War between him and Swen, but are reconciled, and march against the Vandals, *ib.* The civil war breaks out again, and Canute is defeated by Swen, *ib.* Valdemar declares for Swen, and Canute, being defeated by him, flies to Sweden, *ib.* Again invades Denmark, and besieges Swen in Wiburgh, but is defeated, 4. A third attempt by him, but is once more forced into exile, 5. He engages the emperor Barbarossa



- Barbarossa in his service, *ib.* After various vicissitudes, he is murdered by Swen's means, with his character, 9
- Canute VI. Valdemar's infant son, proclaimed, conjointly with his father, king of Denmark, xii. 13 (A). Commands an army against the Vandals, and his successes, 18. The rebels under him and Charles defeated, *ib.* Succeeds his father Valdemar, king of Denmark, 20. A revolt in Schonen, and the rebels chuse Harold their king, with his character, *ib.* The tumultuous rebels defeated without bloodshed, and reduced soon after to order by Absalon, *ib.* Over-runs the Vandal country, 22. Defeats Bugislaus, who sues for peace, with the terms, *ib.* Answer to an embassy from Barbarossa, *ib.* Account of the contest between that king and Valdemar bishop of Sleswick, who is seized and imprisoned, with which his projects end, 23. His sister Ingeburga married to Philip II. of France, and why divorced, *ib.* (A). Quarrel between him and Otho of Brandenburg, with the success of the latter against the Danish army, but Canute in person obliges the enemy to sue for peace, 24. Death and character, 25
- Ericson invades Sweden, takes Charles Suercherfon prisoner, who is beheaded, xii. 232. Defeats the Danes and Goths under Kol, Charles's brother, who is slain, also an incursion of the Esthonians and Courlanders, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.*
- , king of the Abodrites, why persecuted at the Danish court, xv. 511. Is acquitted, and received into friendship, but treacherously murdered, 512. His death revenged, *ib.*
- of Denmark reduces Mecklenburgh, xv. 513. A grant of it procured by his successor Valdemar, *ib.*
- Canutson, (Charles) grand mareschal of Sweden, joins the rebels, but bears a grudge to Engelbrachtson, xii. 101, 248. Engelbrachtson murdered by his means, 101. Chosen general of the rebel army, 248 (D), and administrator of Sweden, he causes Eric Pache to be seized and beheaded, *ib.* Seizes also on Christian Nelson, with his successes against Nicholas Stenson, 249. Broeder Suenfon's bold expostulation with Canutson, who seizes and executes him, *ib.* History of his regency, and the means by which he ascended the throne of Sweden, 250. Brought over, in a diet of the three kingdoms, to favour Christopher, with the considerations, 104, 250, which are confirmed by Christopher, 104. Chosen king of Sweden and Norway, xi. 96, xii. 108, 252. His resolution to subdue Gothland, with an embassy from Denmark, remonstrating against this step, 108, 251. Descent on Norway, and coronation, 110. Peremptory instructions to his deputies on the head of peace with Denmark, *ib.* Christian's complaints against him, and the Swedes disgusted with his government, *ib.* Is violently enraged at his plenipotentiaries negotiations, 111. Signs an agreement with the suspected lords, 252. A dispute between him and the archbishop of Upsal, with the occasion, 253. Enters Schonen, and his dreadful ravages there, but is driven from Lunden with great slaughter by the archbishop, and from Wetcheffle castle by a lady, 111. Returns to Sweden with a great army, and raises the siege of the capital, 112. A party of Danes cut in pieces, with the taking of Ladese, and all the governors of West Gothland surrender to Charles, *ib.* His proposals to the archbishop being rejected, he abdicates, and sails for Dantzic, with Puffendorf's inaccuracy here, 253 (A). The great power of the archbishop upon this, *ib.* Deposed, and Christian elected king of Sweden, 114. Recalled to the Swedish throne, with the first acts of his administration, but abdicates with more dishonour than before, 116, 255. Recalled again, and defeated through treachery, 257, and by the archbishop of Upsal on the ice, and he renounces all claim to the crown, 117, 256. His death, 117. Declaration of both parties upon this, 258
- Caoutas savages, account of them, xv. 44. Reject an emperor from Bienville, yet take one from Perrier, hardly reconcilable, *ib.* Trade with the English, *ib.*
- Capac Yupanqui, 5th inca, succeeds his father Mayta Capac, xiv. 386. Makes a progress, 387. Builds a bridge over the river Apurimac, which he crosses with an army, *ib.* Several nations submit, *ib.* Haughty answer to his summons from the lords of Uncafuyu, *ib.* Surprises them, and they submit, *ib.* Settles their boundaries, and is carried in a chair of gold to Chirirqui, 388. Prepares for another expedition under his brother Aqui Titu against the Quechoas, *ib.* Makes an expedition in person as far as Lake Puria, *ib.* The nations around submit, and two lords of Callafuya refer their differences to him, and his decision, 389. Both become subjects of the inca, and he returns in triumph to Cuzco, *ib.* Builds a bridge at the mouth of the Titiaca lake, and marches over it with an army, *ib.* Summons the inhabitants of Chayanta, with their ambiguous answer, but at last they submit, *ib.* Proceeds to Charco, most of whose natives submit, *ib.* Returns to Cuzco, and, after sending his son on an expedition on Chincafuya side, to whom all the people submit, he dies, 390
- Capac Yupanqui, brother to inca Pachacatee, advances to Sanza province, xiv. 399. Proceeds to Chicarpac territory, whose inhabitants, after some skirmishes, submit, *ib.* Goes next to Ancara province, which, and Hyalias provinces, immediately submit, abolishing sodomy among the latter, *ib.* Returns to Cuzco, and his triumphal honours, *ib.* Sent with the inca's eldest son and a vast army towards Chincafuya, when Pinan province submits on summons, *ib.* Other provinces confederate for their defence, with a spirited answer, 401. Besieged in an inaccessible situation, they at last submit, and are graciously received, *ib.* Arrives near Huamuchacu province, whose lord joyfully submits, and why, *ib.* Proceeds to Callamarca, 402. Their contemptuous answer to his message, when besieging them closely, after several bloody skirmishes, they submit, and he builds a city, temple, &c. here, *ib.* Marches to Yanyu, whose inhabitants submit, *ib.* Returns, with his triumphant entry into Cuzco, *ib.* With the inca's eldest son he marches to Chinea, *ib.* On their way Yca and Pisco submit, *ib.* Bull defiance sent him by the Chinchese, upon which he enters their country, *ib.* After several obstinate skirmishes, &c. they submit, 403. His kind reception of their curaca, *ib.* Solemn festivals and processions on the prince's return to Cuzco, *ib.* He takes the field again, entering Huarca territory, and begins a bloody war with Chuquimanca, who refused to submit, *ib.* His army thrice exchanged, *ib.* Obliges him to surrender, *ib.* Proceeds to conquer Cusmanca's four vallies, and summons him, *ib.* The curaca's answer in the hearing of his army what, 404. Not disagreeable, and he sends a message to him on entering Pachacamac valley, with its import, *ib.* A conference agreed to, and effectual, *ib.* Is invited to Cuzco, and the honours done him there, *ib.*
- Capaulican elected leader of the Araceans of Chili, who revolt, xiv. 321. His military conduct, forming his men into battalions, 322. Defeats Veliagea, 323. Taken prisoner, and put to death, *ib.*
- Cape, discoveries of the Portuguese round it, with their influence on the commerce of Venice, x. 277
- Coast in Guiney, and English settlement described, vi. 664. See Coast.
- Capet, (Hugh) his accession to the crown of France, and by what means, ix. 20. Duke of Guienne refuses to acknowledge him, but being beaten he submits, *ib.* He associates his son Robert, and has him crowned, *ib.* Charles of Lorrain takes Laon by surprize, and Rheims is betrayed to him, 21. Laon betrayed to the king by its bishop, and duke Charles, his dukes, and archbishop Arnold, made prisoners, *ib.* Proceedings against Arnold, and Gerbert advanced to the see of Rheims, *ib.* All this reversed by the pope, *ib.* Government mild and cautious, 22. Peers of France when instituted, *ib.* (A). Paris made the seat of government, *ib.* Death, character, and issue, *ib.* (E). Meaning of his surname of Capet, *ib.* sub not. in fin.
- Capez, a nation of Sierra Leona, described, vii. 23. Frequent wars, *ib.*
- Capistria taken by the Venetians, x. 225
- Capral, (Pedro de) sails with a second fleet into India, iv. 116. His indiscretion fatal to his countrymen, 117. Brings Indian ambassadors into Portugal, with his cold reception there, *ib.*
- , (George) made viceroy of Goa, and his design against the samorin prevented, iv. 131
- Capralis, (Pedro Alvarez) first discoverer of Brasil, xiv. 476
- Capra, a city in Biledulgerid, described, vii. 117
- Captain of Genoa, a conspiracy discovered against him only establishes his authority, x. 458
- resigning, a foreign podesta is made, x. 463
- Captains, two, chosen in Genoa, with a foreign podesta, abbot of the people, and antients, x. 538
- Captivity, its Jewish chiefs, v. 501. Whence so stiled, *ib.* (F). Pretended antiquity, &c. exploded, *ib.* sub not. When first begun, 502
- Capua, civil war in that country, with the occasion, and confusions ensuing, x. 385. Diffentions still there, 386. It and



- and Benevento comprehended under the same government, 389 (G). But erected by the emperor Otto into a principality for Pandulph, 390
- Capua, counts of, revolt from the prince of Salerno, and declare themselves independent, and the prince after several unsuccessful skirmishes obliged to retire; with the boundary of the county of Capua, x. 383 (F)
- Capuans expel their bishop, and chuse another, whom the pope consecrates, ix. 527
- Capuchines, three put to death by the governor of Suakem, and new ones sent into Abissinia, vi. 304
- betrayed and stoned, vi. 300
- , order of, confirmed by the pope, x. 80 (G)
- Cappadocia invaded by khalif Al Walid's generals, i. 344. By khalif Hesham, 365. Invaded by the Greek emperor, and by khalif Motasim, 461. Ravaged by the Seljuks, 660
- Capponi, (Gino) the wisdom and magnanimity of that Florentine, xiii. 369
- , (Neri di) his death, and the effects of it with regard to Cosmo, xiii. 413
- , (Nicola) chosen gonfalonier of Florence, xiii. 520. A revolution in Florence how occasioned by his management, 523
- Car, (Sir Robert) sent with a strong squadron to dispossess the Dutch from New York, xiv. 539. Takes New Amsterdam by capitulation, ib.
- Caracalla, his friendship to the Jews, v. 498 (C)
- Caraccas, country and town described, xiv. 451. Great illicit trade here, ib.
- Caracombo island, in Africa, described, vi. 124
- Carafa, (Gregory) the 60th grand master of Malta, vii. 517. Completes its fortifications, and assists the emperor against the Turks, ib. Takes Coron from them, with Modon, and other fortresses, ib. Descent into Dalmatia, and death, 518
- Caraffa, cardinal, sails with a fleet against the Turks, surprises and plunders Smyrna, returning with the spoil, x. 37 (Q)
- Caragan coast, where situated, and commerce with the Ladrones, iv. 269 (B)
- Caraites Jews at Constantinople numerous, v. 542
- Caraman Oglu invades the Othman dominions, but defeated and slain by Bajazet, v. 167
- Carasus province submits to Or Khan, v. 156
- Caravan of Mecca and the pilgrims destroyed by an inundation, i. 682
- , or famed pilgrimage, from Egypt to Mecca, vi. 28 (V). Its vast expence and danger, with the time of their going, 29. Number of pilgrims, 30. Danger on the road through deserts, 32. Vast traffic at Mecca, ib. Visits Medina, 33. Returns to Kayro, ib. Joyful return thither, 39. March homeward described, 40
- Carbe (Victor) a Jewish convert, his learned works against them, v. 602 (Q)
- Carbonniere, in Newfoundland, success of the French there, xiv. 688
- Carcajou of Canada described, xiv. 556. How he destroys the elk, ib. Employs three foxes to hunt for him, ib. (F)
- Cardeyra, (Lewis) the Jesuit, his arrival in Abissinia, vi. 292. Concealed by Tekla Emanuel, but is put to death, 303
- Cardinal, an Ethiopian bird so called, vi. 187
- Cardinals, at the election of a pope, ordained to be shut up, ix. 645
- dissention among them, and its consequences, ix. 662
- decoyed to Lyons and confined, ix. 663
- chuse pope John XXII. ix. 663
- , their proceedings previous to an election, which falls on Paul II. x. 31
- , compelled by the Romans to chuse an Italian pope, who takes the name of Urban VI. who is abandoned by the French cardinals, x. 468. These cardinals retiring to Anagni elect Clement VII. ix. 602. Miserable schism occasioned hereby, 603 (Q). Urban is favoured by the queen of Naples, with his rude returns, and intrigues with the duke of Durazzo, x. 468. She and the cardinals disgusted at his moroseness, and an antipope chosen, who resides at Avignon, ib.
- Cardoso, (Isaac) a learned Spanish Jew, his character and writings, v. 578 (G)
- Cardoso, Lord, his settlement in Carolina, how abortive, xv. 86
- Carelians, conquest of them, xii. 236
- Carelsaven surrenders to the Daves, xi. 194
- Careri, (Gemelli) his account of the natives, and produce of New Mexico, xiv. 428
- Caretti, (Fabricius) the forty-first grand master of Rhodes, vii. 429. Invaded by the Turks, ib. His death, ib.
- Caribbeans, (Caribbees) account of them from Lery, xv. 231. Their manners, 232. Formerly man-eaters, ib. Humanity to captive women and children, ib. Vindictive, 233. Their fare, ib. Odd manner of beginning war, ib. Customs, names, and other modes of living, with some idea of two principles, ib. Whimsical custom, 234. Humanized by the English, ib.
- Caribbeana Proper, what, xiv. 482. Settlements of different nations, ib. Its coast and nations described, ib.
- Caribert, king of Paris, and Siegbert's brother, his character and issue, viii. 630 (F). His dominions divided among his brethren, but Paris left common to all, ib.
- Caribore, description of that wild ass, xv. 158
- Caribou, a species of stag in Canada, described, xiv. 457
- Carillo, archbishop of Toledo, his insolence to the king and queen of Castile, with their firmness, viii. 200. Submits and is pardoned, 201
- Car khanays, or work-room of the Great Mogol, iii. 45 (K)
- Carlsbad, how discovered by the emperor, xi. 58 (B)
- Carlisle, Earl, obtains a grant of Barbadoes, xv. 175. On account of a flaw he obtains a new patent, ib.
- , Lord, governor of Jamaica, and the inhabitants fears of the French during his administration, xv. 284
- Carloman and Pepin succeed their father Charles Mart I, and their dominions settled by the nobles, viii. 660. They act on all occasions with entire confidence, and the consequences, 661. Pepin proclaims Childeric, the son of Thierry of Chelles, ib. Both act in reducing Odilon, duke of Bavaria, and his German allies, ib. Defeat Odilon, ib. Pepin forces Hunald duke of Aquitaine to submit, who retires into a convent, 662. Their joint success against the Germans, with Carloman's retiring to a convent, ib.
- . See Charlemagne
- . See Lewis
- saluted king of France, viii. 712. His composition and that of Charles le Gros with the Normans, with Carloman's death without issue, and his character, ib. An interregnum follows, ib.
- appointed successor in the empire to his father Charles the Bald, ix. 527. Marches back from Italy with his army to Germany, ib.
- Carlos of Navarre released from France, viii. 65
- acknowledged successor of Spain, viii. 254. Almost killed by a fall, 255. Intrigues with the malecontents of the Low Countries discovered, 258. Attempts to kill Alva before his departure, 259. Forms a design of flying into Germany, with a character of him, 260. The king in person causes him to be arrested, ib. The prince's behaviour, and that of the king, ib. Dies under confinement, with various accounts of this matter, ib. (A) & 266
- , don, eldest son to the queen of Spain, the emperor grants him the investiture of Naples, and the stipulations enforced by the treaty of Seville, xiii. 544, which is guaranteed by Spain, Great-Britain, France, and the States General, with the emperor consenting at last, ib. Conveyed to Italy by an English fleet under Wager, 650. Makes himself master of Naples, 651. Complaints throughout all his new conquests, and a negotiation proposed, which comprises the different claims in a few questions, 653. Embarkation for the conquest of Sicily, and a circumstance between him and the young pretender, 652. Sicily submits to him, ib. Progress of the Italian war in his favour, xv. 570. All Naples submits to him, ib. Great successes of the Spaniards, ib. Preliminaries for a pacification, 572. What with regard to Spain, ib. Objections by the queen of Spain to the plan of the pacification, ib. Becomes king of Spain, his settlement of the crown of the Two Sicilies, and arrival from Naples, 588. Neutrality and prudent administration, but his resolution is shook by the French, ib. Family-compact between him and France, with some of the articles, ib. A federal as well as incorporate union, with some of the articles, 589. Lends his name to Buffa's famous memorial, with the British minister's answer to it, 590. The earl of Bristol's representations to Wall and his answer, ib. Wall more peremptory, and reply to the earl's last dispatch as a declaration of war, who leaves Madrid, ib. The Spanish minister's insolent note left on his quitting London, ib. The earl of Egremont's answer, 591. War declared on both sides, ib.



- Carlestadt taken, and Christian V's demand of it alarms the allies, xii. 189
- Carlowitz, peace concluded there between the Poles and Turks, with its articles, xii. 571, by which Kaminiack, Podolia, and the Ukraine, are restored to Poland, 572
- , peace concluded between the emperor and the Turks there, xi. 321
- Carlson defeated, xii. 258
- Carmagnola abandoning the government, is succeeded by James Isolani, x. 571
- , deserts Philip of Milan, xiv. 94. Attempt to poison him baffled, 95. Called in by the Venetians, and his speech, x. 233. Declaration of war, and the town and fort of Brescia surrenders to him, 235. His conduct, and besieging Ortolunga, with the repulse of the enemy, 236. Raising the siege, he marches to Cremona, and has a doubtful battle with Philip Visconti at Sama, 237. Defeated by Sforza at Socinna, 240. His barbarous execution of the young Arsellani, and Malatestas, xiv. 92. His suspicious conduct, and reception at Venice by the senators, notwithstanding an edict against him, x. 243 (A). Seized and beheaded, ib. His character, xiv. 97
- Carmelites, by whom instituted, ix. 604 (O)
- Carolana, (Florida) account of, by Coxe, xiv. 431
- , (Mississippi) known to the English before the French, xv. 16
- Carolina island in India, when first discovered and named, iv. 268
- , account of, xv. 83. First settlement, ib. Description of the old places, and Charles II's patent, 84. Toleration of religion granted the settlers, and their original sacred constitutions, ib. Abstract of some of these, ib. Civil constitution, ib. Alterations therein, 85. Impracticability of this government, ib. Expences of the proprietaries, ib. Some deviation from its constitutions, its first planters who, 86, and a schism, or civil war, with the occasion, ib. Flourishing state, ib. Dissentions there on the failure of an attempt on St. Augustine, 89. Bill passed there against occasional conformity, &c. 90. The commissioners therein, with the consequences, ib. Address of the house of lords thereon to the queen, in favour of the Carolinians, and her answer, ib. On the board of trade's representation, their charter forfeited, ib. Irregular proceedings of their assembly, and their speaker's speech, 91. Remarkable preamble of an act there, ib. Terribly harassed with pirates, 92. Amity concluded with four Indian nations, and a dreadful plot of the negroes disappointed, ib. Their numbers here, ib. Right of chusing juries by ballot confirmed from England, ib. The charter resumed, and the consideration, ib. This compact confirmed by act of parliament, and one clause there reserving lord Carteret's right, ib. Flourishing state and settlement of the Swifs there, 94. A noble scheme of his majesty for its benefit, 92. Their grievance with regard to the distribution of lands, and redress, 94. Division into South and North, 95. Its description, 98. Settlement according to the French, and produce, ib. Trade, ib.
- , (North) little care about its police, xv. 95. Its counties, 99
- , (South) thriving state of, and the governor's speech, xv. 95. Interview here with the Creeks and Cherokees, ib. Alliance, and good effect, ib. 99. Its provinces and towns, ib.
- Caroline, famous bull, what, xi. 53. See Bull
- , Fort, mutiny there against Laudonniere, and the occasion, xv. 74. The conspirators turn pirates, forcing Laudonniere to sign a commission, ib. Their ill success, 75. Punishment of such of them as fell afterwards into his hands, ib.
- , ——, mistake about it, xv. 93
- Carolinians, their war with the Yamassees, and the issue, xv. 93
- Carpenter, general, his success in the East Indies, iv. 425. Southern discoveries, ib.
- Carpi, in Modena described, xiv. 102
- Carpin, (John de Plant) his voyage into Great Tartary, iv. 108
- Carpio, marquis del, viceroy of Naples, x. 529. He labours assiduously to root out all public disorders, restores the currency of the coin, and extirpates the banditti, ib. The benevolent part of his character, and death, 530
- Carraccioli, favourite to queen Jean of Naples, his intrigues for supporting himself in the supreme administration, x. 480. His contemptuous language to the queen, and his murder by means of the dukes of Sessa, with Alphonso's disappointment, 481
- Carracena sent to command against Portugal, and finds things different from what he expected, viii. 323. Totally defeated on the plain of Montes Claros, and the last army of Spain ruined, with king Philip's answer on the news of this defeat, ib.
- Carral, the common serjeant of Geneva, broke on the wheel, xiv. 42
- Carranza, the unfortunate archbishop of Toledo, dies at Rome, viii. 266
- Carrario, (Francisco) war with him, in which Visconti takes Padua and Treviso, with the partition of conquests between him and the Venetians, x. 227. Successes of the Venetian generals against him, 228. His son Tertius repulsed from the Venetian camp, and he himself defeated by Sabello, 230. He and his family are strangled at Venice, ib.
- , son to the above, attempting a revolt in Padua, is seized, convicted, and put to death by the Venetians, x. 245
- Carre, M. his bravery in repulsing the English from Quebec, xiv. 340
- Carriac, king of the Suevi, converted from Arianism, and his death, vii. 544
- Carron persuades the French to attempt Ceylon, iv. 455. How and by whom frustrated, 456
- , Sieur de, fruitless attempt on the island of Ceylon, iv. 582
- , character of that Recollect missionary, who came with Champlain to Canada, xiv. 572
- Carthage seized on by the Arabs, but driven out, i. 339. Its ruin, vii. 303
- Carthage, province and city described, xiv. 448. The several attempts made on the place, particularly the disgraceful one by Vernon, ib. Its situation and that of the harbour, &c. ib. Particular diseases here, 449. Trade with the galleons which arrive first here, ib. How regulated now, and the illicit trade with the English and Dutch, 450. Strength, and to what owing, xv. 317
- Carthaginians discovered an island beyond Hercules's Pillars, and why they hindered settling there, xiv. 142.
- Carthago, capital of Costa Rica, and its trade with Panama described, xiv. 444 (R)
- Cartier (Jaques) his voyage to North America, xiv. 568. His discoveries up the river St. Lawrence, ib. Generous treatment from the natives, and kidnapping his friend an Indian chief, ib.
- Carvajal taken prisoner, and cruelly maltreated by the soldiers, xiv. 346. His magnanimity and humane usage from his enemy, with his execution, ib.
- Carvatho, the Jesuit, his arrival in Abissinia, vi. 292
- Carwas, lord of Mawfel, tricked by Kukias, i. 649. His death, 652
- Cas, St. defeat of the English there, xv. 623
- Casal, enterprise on it unaccountably defeated, and the Spaniards defeated, viii. 300
- and Mardyke taken, ix. 417, but the former recovered, and the latter surprized by the Spaniards, ib.
- receives a French garrison, xi. 298. The allies take it, 314. Taken by the duke of Savoy, but restored by the emperor after its demolition, xiv. 119
- Casan, meaning of it, xiii. 32 (D)
- government described, and its divisions, xiii. 32. Its chief towns and capital, ib.
- Casas, (Bartholomew de la) his plan of polity for the Indies, and principal laws, xiv. 331 (B). Remarks thereon, ib. sub not.
- Casba city in Tunis described, vii. 308
- Casabad, famous castle of, surrenders to Motafem, i. 461
- Casco-Bay fort taken by the French, xiv. 634
- Cashim Beg becomes tributary to Or Khan, v. 156
- Casimir, brother to the king of Poland, elected by a party of Bohemians, and crowned king at Prague, xi. 89. His brother Ladislaus advancing into Bohemia, gains several advantages, yet is forced by the marquis of Brandenburg to retreat to Thabor, ib. but the marquis making an irruption into Upper Poland, Ladislaus retires, ib.
- chosen king of Poland, xi. 94. Defeated by Charles Gustavus of Sweden, 276
- Prince, enters the Netherlands, and why suspected, whose army, and Anjou's, become useless, xi. 422
- returns to Poland, and the Poles in general revolt, massacring the Swedes every where, xii. 358
- , Rixa's son, character of, who is driven out of Poland, when the civil wars commenced, xii. 453. The kingdom put under her regency for him, ib.



Casimir I. recalled from banishment to the Polish throne, and discharged by the pope from his sacerdotal engagements as a monk at Clugny, xii. 455. He is received on the frontier, and conducted to Gnesna, where he is crowned, ib. He quells the Banditti, and marries Mary sister to Jarislaus of Russia, ib. His wife administration and conquering Mollaus, a private foldier, who assumed the title of prince, and revolted, ib. (B). Death, ib.

— II. or the Just, raised to the ducal throne of Po'and, in the room of his deposed brother Mieczslaus III. xii. 466. His character, and subduing Lower Poland and Pomerania, with his equitable administration, and rescuing the peasants from the tyranny of the nobles, ib. The duke's singular generosity to his brother, and the latter's ingratitude, 467. He quells a revolt in Poland, with the occasion, ib. Conquers Russia, ib. His death, character, and a peculiar anecdote, ib. (I)

— III. or the Great, succeeds his father Uladislaus III. in the Polish throne, xii. 473. Subdues Russia Nigra, applies next to domestic administration; among other regulations, he abolishes a ridiculous custom of determining private differences, and publishes a written code, 474. His wife administration and character, ib. War with the Teutonic knights, with the occasion, and he is defeated in his camp before Marienburg, 481. He conquers the knights, and obliges them to a peace, with the terms, ib. Some attempts made by his mother for him, and his generosity in behalf of his elder brother Uladislaus, and by whom seconded, 518

— (John) raised to the Polish throne on the death of his brother Uladislaus VII. xii. 523. He disapproves of the measures against the Cossacks, and on his answer to the nobility, they act against that people without his consent, and the account of their first operations deficient, ib. A peace is concluded with them, and the terms, ib. Defeats the Tartars, ib. Invited to return to Poland, 525. Civil commotions between that king and the Polish nobles, and a war with the Russians, who are twice defeated, 526. The citadel of Vilna long besieged by him, and disputes rise high, when that monarch relings the crown, and retires to France, where he dies, 527. Calumny raised on the king, with the defence of his conduct and character, and a fine Latin inscription recites his virtues, 528 (F)

— succeeds Sigismund in Lithuania, on whose elevation to the throne of Poland, upon the death of Uladislaus VI. it devolves to Alexander, the younger son of Casimir, but he is soon elected king of Poland, in the room of his brother John Albert, xii. 646

Caspian Sea, its commerce open with India, iv. 104. Whence named Kurzem, or Karazm, v. 135 (N)

—, an exact chart of it sent by the czar Peter to the Royal Academy at Paris, xiii. 252

Castanaga, governor of the Netherlands, his bitter counter declaration against Lewis XIV. ix. 468

Castelmelhor engrossing all power in Portugal, supplant every one else, as well as Antonio Conti, though recalled from the Brasils, viii. 519. His brother a great favourite with Pedro of Portuga., ib.

Castelnuovo, bravery of the women in defence of it, saves the place from an attack, x. 368

Castellana, Civita, described, with its stupendous bridge, xiii. 272

Castile. See Arragon

—, See Terra Firma

—, its history how perplexed, vii. 625. Opinions about the origin of the name, 626. Why called Old, with its situation and recovery from the Moors, ib.

—, counts of, whence so called, and their office, vii. 626 (A)

—, antient counts, their true and fabulous history, vii. 627 (B)

—, succession accounted for, vii. 639 (I)

—, fresh troubles there, vii. 672

— and Leon, their history from the accession of St. Ferdinand to their union in Ferdinand and Isabella, viii. 1

— and Arragon, the kings of, form schemes for travelling, both frustrated, viii. 11

—, excellent laws made by the states, viii. 43. Distressed with a grievous plague, 47

—, admiral of, takes sixteen Portuguese gallies, with Juan Alonso the queen's brother, viii. 63

—, irruption into it by the Portuguese and English, but retire into Portugal, viii. 68

—, queen of, sole regent, with a council to assist her, and the Canaries reduced by Bathencourt, viii. 77. Found

dead in her bed, with her character, ib. The king, tho' scarcely thirteen, proclaimed of full age, and married to Maria of Arragon, ib. Troubles there increase, and the queen delivered of Henry, who is declared presumptive heir, 79. Troubles break out afresh, in which the king prevails, 81. Concludes a truce with Mohammed, ib. Put under an interdict by the pope, but recalled, 230. Discontents there, ib. Insurrection becomes general, ib. The constable and admiral of Castile associated with the regent, ib. Armies raised by the regents and commons, with de Croy and his uncle Chievres' death, and a character of the latter, ib. A letter of the cardinal regent to the emperor intercepted, and published by the commons, ib. The commons defeated, and their chief commanders taken prisoners, 232. All the cities submit except Toledo, ib. After several battles, the commons, or Germans subdued, ib. The states grant Charles a free-gift, and he makes several good laws, 233. Pope Adrian's death and successor, ib. He receives an ambassador from Persia, and the French obliged to repass the Alps, ib. Dearth there through locusts, 245

Castile, Amirante of, withdraws to Lisbon, viii. 353. Attainted of treason, 355. Forfeited and banished, but acquitted of treason, with his dangerous intrigues in Portugal for the archduke Charles, ib. Plots through him discovered, 357. Dies, account of him, and character, ib. (B)

—, admiral of, made viceroy of Naples, has the same demands as his predecessors for men and money, suspends the collecting a tax for fear of a general insurrection, and requests to be recalled, x. 519

Callilians fortunate in the war with the Moors, viii. 82. A peace with Arragon and Navarre, ib.

Castilla, (Sebastian de) chosen governor of Charcas by the malecontents, xiv. 350. Assassinated, ib.

Castin, Baron St. his influence over the Abenauquis, is arrested by the English, but released, xiv. 694

Castration, why the only way of promotion in Tong-King, iii. 450. Why performed with little danger, ib. (K)

Castrillo, count, arrives as viceroy of Naples, and his character, x. 525

Castro, (Ferdinand de) sent to take possession of the Canaries, iv. 112

—, (John de) his success against the Turks, and ample reward from the king of Portugal, iv. 131

—, (George) occasions a change of affairs in the Molucca islands, iv. 159

— and Lara bring the disputes of their houses to the decision of a battle, vii. 691 (B). The former gain a complete victory, 692

—, (Agnes de) the prince of Portugal's amour with her, viii. 407. Taken off with his father's consent, ib. The murderers punished, 409

—, (Peter de Novo) the too great severity of that preacher, ix. 616 (X)

—, duchy, why forfeited to the pope, xiii. 633, 638

—, Bishop of, assassinated, xiii. 634, 638

—, city razed, and the bishopric transferred to Aquapendente, xiii. 634

—, (Vaca de) his arrival at Quito from Spain as governor, xiv. 328. Sets out for Truxillo, 329. All submit to him, and he is received at Lima, ib. His cruelty and public institutions, 330. Discovers Gonzalo Pizarro's plot, and the governor's lenity, 331. Superseded by Velazco the viceroy, and imprisoned, 333. Bailed, ib. Makes his escape from Panama, and designs to oppose Pizarro, 336

Castruccio Castracani of Pisa takes some places from the Guelfs in the eastern Riviera, x. 557

— Castraccani, some account of him, xiii. 302

—, his retreat from Prato before a tumultuous multitude of Florence, xiii. 305. Driven from Fucetti, escapes, wounded, and with great difficulty, 306. Assisted by Galeazzo of Milan, beats the Florentines, and lays waste their territory, 307. Besieging Murli it capitulates, 308. On the bishop of Arezzo's death, he acts as general and sole minister to the emperor, 310. Besieges and takes Pistoia, which is thought the most shining action of his life, 311. His death, whence the good fortune of the Florentines, 312.

Custus, the fifth grand master of Maltha, vii. 382

Cassange Calanga, a chief of the Giagas, abolishes some inhuman customs, and is assassinated by his own son, vi. 570

Cassano, obstinate battle of, in which Vendome defeats prince Eugene, xi. 329

Cassart, the French admiral, his expedition against St. Jago, one of the Cape Verdes, who raises contributions from Surinam and Brabin, Dutch settlements, ix. 505



- Cassel surrenders to prince Ferdinand, xv. 625  
 Cassieres, (John l'Eveque de la) the 49th grand master of Malta, vii. 496. Complained against by the order, but put a stop to by the pope, 498. Sedition raised against him, ib. His death, 499  
 Cassino, abbot of, shipwrecked and perishes in going to Constantinople, ix. 553  
 Casson, kingdom of, on the Senegal, described, vii. 53  
 Cassoni, his success against the Milanese, but disappointed at Milan, xiv. 52. Obligated to leave Milan, into which Otho is received, ib. Portrait of him in profile, ib. Defeated and killed, 64  
 Cat nation. See Erles  
 Cataculus's brave defence of Messina, i. 646  
 Catadia, a Javanese, plots the destruction of the Dutch factory in Java, iv. 467  
 Catalan resolves to retreat, and, notwithstanding his gallant efforts, his army is cut off, x. 613  
 Catalans assist the Greek emperor, v. 148. Commit horrid ravages in Bithynia, and the cruel revenge on Kallipoli and Perinthus, 150. Their treachery to the Greek general discovered by a woman, 151. Ravage the Greek empire, 152. Defeat some of the Turks, ib.  
 —, their representations to the king of Castile in council, who refers the matter to Lewis of France, and that king's award disliked by both parties, viii. 383. Revolt against the king out of hatred to queen Juana, 194. Defeated by king Juan II. ib. They call in Rene of Anjou, with the fatigue of opposing whom the queen dies, ib. Her last words, ib. Defeated again with considerable loss, 195. Why they revolt and murder the viceroy, 301. Their demands satisfied, and their return in money, 338. Fortify Barcelona, and submit to the crown of France, stipulating only for their privileges, ix. 401. Visit the Genoese coasts, which the Genoese return, and the former appear no more at sea, x. 558. Peace concluded between the Genoese and them, ib. Their spirit, xi. 362. Their hard case, with king Philip's answer to a memorial from Great Britain, xv. 553. Bolingbroke's remark to one of the plenipotentiaries, and the contempt shewn the minister in Spain, on a representation about them, with the consequences, ib. Assurance of the Spanish minister in London in his memorial, ib. Withart sent with a squadron, and his infamous instruction about them, 554. Address of the British peers about them, with instructions to lord Bingley, and counter-orders to Withart, ib. See Barcelona  
 Catalina married to the duke of Savoy, viii. 269  
 Catalonia, its history and that of Barcelona, till united with Arragon, viii. 123. Revolt there, 340. Description of the old country, its boundaries, produce, and extent, ib. Its antient inhabitants, ib. Derivation of the name, and its conquest by Charlemagne and Lewis, ib. Events there, viii. 308. Convention for evacuating it, 370. Its singular nature what, ib. Revolt and cause, ix. 400, x. 518. Campaign there to the advantage of the allies, ix. 469. Agreement made with regard to it, xi. 362  
 Catama, Al, fortress, surrendered to Al Mansur, i. 548  
 Catami, Al, made governor of Tripoli, in Africa, i. 567  
 Catana taken by Abu'l Kasem, i. 571. Seized by Ebn Thamam, 646  
 Catanduanes isle described, iv. 190  
 Catanella, by stratagem, takes Rocabarbera and Zuccarel, 612  
 Catapanata, now Capitanata, in Puglia, account of it, x. 396 (L)  
 Cataphan, in Italy, what, x. 394 (I)  
 Catapompa, address of one of their orators to the Peruvian general welcoming him, xiv. 388. Their rich present, and are received into favour, ib.  
 Cataracouy fort blown up by the French, xiv. 631. Repaired by Frontenac, whose name it bears, 654. Its importance, 668  
 Catasto, a new tax at Florence so called, what, and why strenuously supported by John de Medici, xiii. 380. Its extending to all the cities subject to Florence complained of, ib. Cosmo de Medici gives way to it, and a flat denial to the great men for repealing it, 413  
 Catharine espoused to prince Arthur of England, viii. 212, but prince Arthur dying, she is married to his brother Henry, afterwards Henry VIII. 217  
 —, Infanta of Portugal, married to Charles II. of England, viii. 515. Declared regent of Portugal, 539. Resigns, dies, and leaves her immense wealth to the king of Portugal, ib.  
 Catharine of Barr dies, to the regret of king Henry IV. and the Protestants, ix. 328  
 —, account of the ascendancy of that mistress over Eric XIV. and making her queen, xii. 294  
 —, empress, the czar Peter and his army at Pruth saved by an expedient of that princess, xii. 353, and concludes a peace, xiii. 222. Delivered of a prince, 231. Crowned at Moscow, 257, having been declared empress on the death of her husband Peter I. 258. Bestows great funeral honours on the emperor, ib. Her prudent management with regard to the army and conflicts, 259. State of the empire at her accession, with her great attention to guard against any disturbance, ib. also of foreign affairs, with her wife precautions, ib. Gains great advantages in Persia, on the Caspian Sea, in Georgia, and over the Dagestan Tartar, 260. Executes several of the late emperor's designs, as settling the succession, enquiring into ecclesiastical revenues, &c. ib. Prevailed on to agree to the Vienna treaty, 261, and an alliance with the emperor, ib. She assembles a great naval force to favour the duke of Holstein, and a report spread to irritate Denmark, with the consequences, ib. Treaty between her and the king of Prussia, with the motive to it, and guarantying their respective possessions, &c. 262. Her measures for preserving her influence among her neighbours, and appoints the late Czarowitz's son Peter her successor, by previously declaring him great duke, 263. Receives the order of the White Eagle from Augustus king of Poland, ib. She presides at the first meeting of the academy of sciences at Petersburg, and how taken ill, 264. Prepares against an alliance of the English, French, Danes, and Swedes, but preliminaries of a peace are signed, to which the northern powers are to be invited, ib. Her illness increases, with her death and character, ib.  
 —, the czar Peter's niece, married to the duke of Mecklenburg-Schwerin, xiii. 231  
 —, St. that order instituted by the czar Peter, xiii. 230  
 —, St. fort of, in Geneva, demolished, xiv. 37  
 —, St. Portuguese colony on that island described, xiv. 479  
 —, St. in Jamaica, described, xv. 334  
 —, St. account of it and inhabitants, xv. 363. Contempt of money, and happiness without it, 364. The climate and produce, ib.  
 —, Cape St. described, vi. 363  
 —, St. island of, account of it, xiv. 426. Difference in relations here, 427. Crows in the island of St. Catharine, story of two large ones, and the opinion of the natives about them, ib.  
 —, II. how raised to the Russian throne, xv. 633. Her character, ib.  
 Cathcart, lord, his manifesto for the Spanish West Indies, xv. 316. Draws a declaration from France, ib. Grand armament under him and Ogle for the West Indies, ib. Their strength and the principal officers, ib. Dies regretted, ib.  
 Catholic, title of, bestowed by the pope on Ferdinand, viii. 214  
 Catholics, association entered into by them, and the chief of those concerned, xi. 149 (M)  
 Cathrinenburg circle in Tobolsk province described, also its chief places, as Cathrinenburg, &c. xiii. 43  
 Catimens repulse Olid, but defeated by Sandoval, they submit, xiv. 275  
 Catinat, marshal, his character, ix. 469, and he beats the duke of Savoy at Staffarda, upon which all Savoy, except Fort Montmelian, is soon reduced, ib. Takes Montmelian after an obstinate resistance, 471, xi. 312. Defeats the allied army in Savoy, and Schomberg taken prisoner, yet Catinat repasses the mountains, reinforcing the garrisons, ix. 473. Superseded by Villeroy, 481. Takes Salusies, Nice, Villa Franca, &c. xi. 311. Defeats the duke of Savoy at Marsaglia, 313. His death and character, ix. 505  
 Catino besieged, which is surrounded with a strong rampart and ditch, also its surrender to the Florentines, xiii. 314  
 Catoche, Cape, whence its name, and where situated, xiv. 168  
 Catonbella, a river in Africa, v. 698  
 Cattle, sundry Arab superstitions about them forbid by the Koran, i. 174. Craned up and down some Ethiopian mountains, vi. 202  
 Cavades persecutes the Jews, v. 513. Punished for it, ib. (N)  
 Cavaliere, a famous journeyman baker of the Cevennes, some account of him, and the revolt of the Camisars, ix. 487  
 Cavalry, in Poland, and their division, xii. 439



- Cavazzi's account of the Western Ethiopia, why so imperfect, vi. 419 (E). An account of his travels and mission, ib. sub not.
- Caudebec taken by the confederates, ix. 300. It and Espernai recovered, 301
- Cavelam, kingdom of, subdued by the Barmas, with the rubies and other products, iii. 262
- Cavendish, admiral, takes a rich East India prize, iv. 210 (L). First visit to the Mariannes islands, with a farther account of them, 239. Expedition round the world, iv. 290. See Candish
- Cave's isle on the South Sea described, v. 28
- Caviar, what, xiii. 77
- Cau-dron, Black, his descent on Montreal, and exploits, xiv. 646. How killed by some Algonquins, 667. Charlevoix's account of it, ib.
- Cau-tong besieged by the traitor Li, and that place laid under water by mischance, iii. 730
- Cau-Tsong, emperor of China, his fatal fondness for his wife, ii. 712. His death, ib.
- Cau-tiu, emperor of China, his shameful and fatal treaty with the Lyau-tongers, iii. 311
- Cau-tiu-ven-ti murders the emperor, and founds the 12th dynasty of China, iii. 711. Reforms music, rhetoric, &c. and is murdered by his son Yang-ti, who founds the 13th dynasty, ib.
- Caxas, a large building there for spinning women, and men suspended by the heels for entering it, xiv. 283
- Cayanca, a general council there, vii. 644
- Cayenne, French settlement on that island described, xiv. 482. Taken by the Dutch admiral Binks, but recovered by count d'Eures, and is still under the French, 483. Villages and methods for securing this establishment, ib.
- Cayero, (John) forced to reject the king of Martavan's vast offers, iii. 253. Assists the Barman king against him, ib.
- Cayona, town in Tortuga, described, xv. 359
- Cayro, or Grand Cayro, in Egypt, described, vi. 12. Its garrison, ib. Old and New Town described, 14 (M). Its port where situate, 15. Number of its houses and mosques, ib. Grand aqueduct, 16
- Cayrwan, or Cayrowan, in Tunis, by whom built, and described, vii. 305. The sepulchre of the Tunisean kings, and the mosque described, ib. (K)
- Ceba Christos, a friend of the papiks in Abissinia, slain by the revoltors at Lasta, vi. 296
- Cebu, Zebu, or Sogbu, islands of the Philippines, described, v. 199. Its bishopric, trade, &c. gone to decay, its inhabitants, produce, &c. 200. Its commerce with Lima shorter than Manilla to Acapulco, ib. Other islands near Cebu, 201
- Celebes island described, iv. 152. Its government, &c. and why not converted to Christianity, 153. Excellent situation for commerce, ib. Its product, and attachment to the Portuguese, ib.
- islands subdued by the Dutch, iv. 492. Brave inhabitants described, ib. (D). Their vast importance to the Dutch company, and its rich gold mines kept concealed, 493
- Celef river in Algiers, vii. 213
- Celestine II. succeeding pope Innocent II. takes the interdict off France, ix. 591. Dies, ib.
- III. succeeds pope Clement III. who crowns the emperor Henry VI. and his wife Constantia at Rome, ix. 607. Singular manner of this coronation, ib. Bull in favour of the church of Scotland renewed, and the disturbers of the public peace in England excommunicated, 608. Orders the archbishop of York to be tried by the archbishop of Canterbury as legate, who holds a council, and the canons made at York, ib. Excommunicates the duke of Austria for the violence done to Richard of England, as he does also the emperor, 609. Sends a legate into Bohemia and Poland, and dies, 610. Excommunicates the king of Galicia, 689
- IV. succeeds pope Gregory IX. after some vacancy, but dies soon, ix. 632, xiii. 583
- V. chosen pope, after two years interval, in the room of Nicolas IV. and conveyed on an ass, with the vast number present at his consecration, ix. 651. Ignorance and simplicity, with a decree for his own abdication, 652
- Celfo, (Lorenzo) the 58th doge of Venice, his character, x. 215
- Cemagre's palace, a description of it, and the information given by the cazique's son where gold was to be found, xiv. 158. Amount of the king of Spain's fifth, ib.
- Cemluk cattle taken by Or Khan, v. 156
- Cemmeroo, or Kenneroof, the capital of the kingdom of Assen, iii. 223
- Cenis (Affinis) people described, xv. 5. Their cabins, furniture, &c. 6. Gain a victory over the Cannohatinnos, and their triumphs thereon, 9. Inhuman cruelties, 10. Procession, ib.
- Centen-general in Peru, his power, xiv. 378
- Centeno's extraordinary retreat before Caravajal, but at last forced to disperse, xiv. 339. He and other royals come from their places of concealment, 341. His answer to Pizarro's proposals, but defeated at Huerina by the latter, 343. Humane treatment of Caravajal when prisoner, 346. His two brothers take Panama, and seize the royal treasure, 348. Driven out and the treasure recovered, ib. Are hanged, and many of their followers executed, ib.
- Centraigo, (Pietro) the 28th doge of Venice, his wife admiral, deposition, and character, x. 193
- Centurioni, the Genoese admiral, his gallant defence against four stout corsairs, with several other advantages obtained by him over them, and a treaty of commerce concluded, x. 609
- Cercut, one of the four contenders for the Monomotopan crown, vi. 376. Reigns jointly with his brother, his fatal fratricide and end, ib.
- Ceritolles, account of that battle, xi. 15 (T)
- Cerveteri described, xiii. 272
- Cessation of arms between France and England proclaimed, ix. 503
- Cetra, cape, described, and islands about it, vi. 359
- Cevennes, account of the war there, and the cruel persecution of the Protestants, ix. 487
- Ceuta, or Septa, taken by Abd'alrahman, i. 555. Described, vii. 159. Blockaded by the Moors, and its great poverty, with the people's activity, ib. Besieged by Ripperda, 200. His gallant behaviour at it, ib. After a long siege it is abandoned by the Moors with great loss, viii. 345
- Ceylan, Seylan, the famed idol, taken and burnt by the Portuguese, iii. 264. Two others substituted in its stead, 265. Its various names, iv. 145
- Ceylon, the chief king of it obliged to submit to Portugal, iv. 122
- island invaded by the Dutch, iv. 436. State at their first coming to it, ib. Subdued by the Dutch, 440, xi. 586 (E). Attempt of the French upon it, iv. 455. The king's signal policy to gain the Dutch, 439. Unsuccessful war against the Dutch, 440. Reduced by them, ib. His expostulatory letter to them, ib. (E). His station and condition since reduced by them, 485 (T). How cinnamon is cultivated, ib. (V). Its vast trade, ib. Rich mines, ib. (X). Pearl-fishery, 486. Natives described, and converts numerous, ib.
- Chaftaws oblige the French to redeem their own prisoners, xv. 41. Their character, 42. Where seated, 45. Reasons for their populousness, ib. The use to be made of them and their country, 58
- Chahan left general in Kin, ii. 327. Repulsed before Ching-chew, 347, and Gang-tong, 348
- Temur retakes Kay-fong-tu, and fortifies it, ii. 427. Fatal quarrel with Polo-temur, and success against him, 428. Murdered by Tyen fong, ib.
- Chahar Khan deposed for his cruelties, ii. 261
- , the descendant of Kublay, rules over the other Mongls, ii. 437. Becomes subject to the Manchews, ib.
- Cha-hay sent against the song, ii. 346
- Chajab, or Cajab, a Jewish chief, takes up arms against Mohammed, v. 515
- Chajim, Al, (R. Joachim) his impious affront on the city of Prague, v. 608 (B). Execration and impious behaviour, ib.
- Chakri, second minister of state in Siam, iii. 347
- Chalce isle, near Rhodes, described, and its inhabitants excellent divers, vii. 393
- Chalci, or Chalcas, who and where seated, xiv. 360
- Chalcidonians revolt in favour of the Ommiyahans, but totally defeated, i. 383
- Chaldeans, by their deputies, submit to Rome, x. 19
- Chaleu kingdom where situate, iii. 254 (P)
- Chaleurs, the French ships, &c. destroyed in that bay by captain Byron, xiv. 727
- Chalil, the son of Or Khan, taken by a pirate, and redeemed at a vast price, v. 161
- Chalons, the parliament there declares the pope's bulls null and seditious, ix. 299
- Chalula, its famous idol, xiv. 367
- Challenges in Germany, account of, xi. 377
- Chamb, account of, xv. 468



Chamberry, the capital of Savoy, and other places, described, xiv. 122

Chamber, Imperial, at Spire, x. 622, xv. 444

Chamblay fort, in Canada, described, xiv. 560

Chamdara city in the kingdom of Assem, iii. 223

Chamilly, the French under him take Heidelberg, not sparing the electors tombs, xi. 314

Champa, its princes stir up the Makassars against the king of Siam, iii. 376. The kingdom described, 419. Islands on its coasts, bays, cities, inhabitants, &c. ib. Religion, laws, product, and trade, 420. Detain a French ship, and punished, 421. Its king described, ib. who obliges the French ship to redeem itself, 422

Champion, chancellor of Savoy, succeeds as bishop of Geneva, xiv. 9

Champlain Lake described, xiv. 560. The variety of fish in it, ib.

——, founder of Quebec, change in the river since his time, xiv. 552. Account of his settlement there, 570. Impolitic joining the Hurons against the Iroquois, ib. Superstition of his allies, and impositions of their spiritual jugglers, with his expedition in canoes and discoveries, 571, and his victory over the Iroquois, ib. The inhumanity of the victor Hurons, ib. His farther adventures, and storming the Iroquois intrenchment, ib. Frequent voyages to and from Old and New France, 572. His character, ib. Arrival at Quebec with four Recollects, and during his absence in Old France, a conspiracy formed by the Hurons against all the French, how diverted, with their satisfaction for the murder of two of the latter, 573. Wounded in an attack on the Iroquois, and defeated, ib. Builds a stone fort at Quebec, and the occasion, 574. Returns to France with his family, ib. On the restitution of Canada he is made its governor, and his indefatigable zeal, with his sole view, what, 576. Conduct, 577. Death and character, ib.

Champmelin, count de, retakes Pensacola from the Spaniards, xv. 27. His reprisals on them for their cruelty to the French at the Havannah, 28. Partly demolishes Pensacola fort, ib. Miserable state of his Squadron, and assembles the savages to thank them for their services, 29

Chamtovers, Hottentots, who and where situated, vi. 386

Chamu, king of, taken prisoner by Timur Bek, turns Mahomedan, and is set at liberty, ii. 549

——, city of, taken by Timur Bek, ii. 549

Chamuka revolts from Temujin, and defeated, ii. 268

Chanan Mehischa, a famed Jewish Gaon, v. 514

Chancellor of France, his son and Mons. de Vienville disgraced, ix. 369

—— of Sicily, difference between him and the pope, x. 424. Upon William Capparos's seizing the palace and king, he recovers his authority, ib. He makes peace with Marcoaldus, and why the convention thereon never took effect, 425. Excommunicated by the pope, ib.

—— of Russia murdered by the people of Moscow, xiii. 157

——, (captain Richard) his discoveries, xiii. 109 (S)

Chandegri, a strong castle, the residence of the king of Bishnagar, iii. 136 (G)

Chandenagore taken by admiral Watson and Mr. Clive, iv. 374. The latter's success against the nabob, 375

Changa, king of, seizes on the kingdom of Quiloa, vi. 349

Chang-Chew-fu retaken by the song, ii. 374, also by Pe-yen, and put to the sword, 375

Chang-chew, in Fo-kyen, its noble bridge, iii. 533

Chang-chi raises a revolt against Jenghiz Khan, but defeated and beheaded, ii. 288

Chang-chi-Kyay intrenched before Gan-lo, ii. 371. His cruelty to Pyen-piau, and death thereby, 376

Chang-ching-Kong dethroned for his excesses, iii. 710

Chang-hong-fan, his success in Kyang-nan, ii. 374. Surprizes the song lords in Yay-shan, and defeats their fleet, 381

Chang-hyen-chang, a bloody Chinese general, his dreadful butcheries, iii. 736 (Z). Pretence to favour the Christians, with his strange and sudden death, ib. sub not.

Chang-jau made general under Hupilay, ii. 358

Chang-Kya-kew, the third gate of the Chinese wall, ii. 244. The people and situation in that course, 245

Chang-lin deputed emperor of Kin by Shew-fu, ii. 345, and performs his funeral obsequies, 346

Chang-pe-tu, a famed pirate, taken and executed, iii. 704 (H)

Chang-Quey comes to the relief of Syang-yang, ii. 369. Bravery and death, ib. Honourable burial and tomb, ib.

—— causes lectures of history to be founded, ii. 409.

Famous memorial against some conspirators, 410, and other bad ministers, and his bonzas, ib.

Chang-shah taken by Ali Haya, with the heroic fidelity of the besieged, ii. 376

Chang-shi-Kyay defeated by the Mungls, ii. 374. Fidelity and distress, ib. Made prime minister to the song, 380. Leads the young emperor into an island, ib. Builds him a palace and other conveniences, but surprized by the Mungls in it, 381. Defeated by Hong-fan, and buries the drowned emperor, empress, and her ladies, ib. Fresh attempt to restore the song family, and drowns himself in a storm, 382

Chang-shun, follows on Chang-quey's rear, but slain in the attempt, ii. 368

Chang-ti, his short reign in China, iii. 704

Chang-yau, his gallant behaviour to Minghan, ii. 325. Enters into the Mungl service, with his success against Kya-ju and U-tsyen, 326

Chang-yu-chun, Chu's general, his success in Kyang-nan, ii. 433

Chanina, Rabbi, fables reported of him by the Jews, v. 481, sub not.

Chatenbon, a large river in Siam, iii. 313

Chaourasou, a sort of pike in Lake Champlain, described, xiv. 560. How artfully he destroys birds, ib.

Chapar, the son of Hay-tu, submits to Timur, ii. 398, and to Hay-shan, 402

Chapas battle described, xiv. 330

Chapatonado, a peculiar disease in Carthage, account of it, xiv. 449

Charcas described, xiv. 307. Reduced by Pizarro, 325. Troubles in that province occasioned by the judges, 349. The malcontents why not countenanced now by Noujosa, 350. Treasures seized by the malcontents under Castilla, ibid.

—— los, (la Plata) audience described, xiv. 464. Various climate, ib. Commodities and mines, ib.

Chariots of Hindustan described, iii. 13, 112

Charlemagne recovers part of Navarre, but severely checked in the valley of Roncevaux by the Vascons, viii. 459. He and Carloman succeed their father Pepin, 671. The character of the former and his person, with the reverse character of the latter, ib. Makes an irruption into Lombardy by two different routes, 673. Didier's army, on a small advantage of the enemy, retires, ib. Verona, Milan, &c. fall into Charlemagne's hands, and he takes a tour to Rome, with what happened there, 674. On the surrender of Pavia, and Didier's submission, he becomes master of Lombardy, and is crowned king of it; but, repassing speedily into Germany, he quells the revolted Saxons, and concludes a peace, 675. Fresh troubles in Lombardy, but suppressed by his quick return, ib. The Saxons revolt again, but, upon his return, demand pardon, and offer to become Christians, ib. Further precautions to prevent a revolt of the Saxons, ib. Invited by several Moorish lords, he makes an irruption into Spain with success, 676. Returns home, ib. Fresh disturbances in Saxony quelled, and their submission received once more, ib. Obtains securities from them for preachers of the gospel, and new troubles in Italy occasion his return, upon which they are quelled, ib. Makes another visit to the pope, with the division of his dominions, 677. Suppresses a fresh rebellion of the Saxons with remarkable severity, ib. The repentment of this raises a general revolt, which brings on a bloody war, ib. Witikind and Albion received with great respect by him, 678. Other revolts quashed, and he makes a tour into Italy, and suppresses the commotions there, ib. Repasses the mountains, ib. Totally defeats the Greeks, with the loss of their general, 679. Makes ecclesiastical canons, and introduces the Gregorian song, with his assiduous application to government and police, and the universality of his genius, 680. Love of learning, and zeal for promoting it by the advice of Alcuin from Britain, ib. Assists the Abodrites, or inhabitants of Mecklenburg, against the Wilzi, ib. Makes an expedition against the Huns, as far as Raab, 681. Discovery of a plot against his life by his son Pepin, ib. New revolt of the Saxons, with great slaughter on both sides, ib. His dominions attacked on every hand, with his conduct on this occasion, ib. Noble scheme for uniting the Danube and Rhine for commerce, ib. Defeats the Moors in Spain, and the malcontents in Italy fall out, 682. After an obstinate war, he almost extirpates the Abdares, or Huns, ib. Humbles the Moors, ib. Visited by pope Leo III. at Paderborn, &c. ib. Provides



vides against the Norman pirates, 683. Takes a journey into Italy, and Grimoalde duke of Beneventum reduced, *ib.* Is crowned at Rome emperor of the West by pope Leo, *ib.* He compels the Moors in Spain to submit, and reduces Rieti in Italy, *ib.* The Persian monarch, by his ambassadors, makes him a cession of the holy places in Jerusalem, 684. He compels the emperor Nicephorus to acknowledge him Augustus, and conclude a treaty, *ib.* Obliged the king of the Normans to conclude a peace, and the division of his dominions among his three sons, 685. Advantages over the infidels and a tribe of Slavonians, *ib.* Receives an embassy from Harun Al Raschid, monarch of Persia, *ib.* By his wise precautions the Norman pirates give him but little trouble, and why styled Norman, *ib.* Repels the Moors and Greeks by the same means, *ib.* War with Godfrey king of the Normans, who proves formidable, 686. Represses the Moors and Greeks, *ib.* Restores Ædulf king of Northumberland, *ib.* Progress of his war with Godfrey, the Greeks, and Moors, *ib.* His domestic employments, and various successes against the Moors and Greeks, *ib.* His beloved daughter Rotrude and his son Pepin die, 687. The latter's bastard son Bernard declared king of Italy, *ib.* A solid peace with the new king of the Normans, *ib.* Death of his eldest son, and most of his enemies inclined or compelled to peace, *ib.* He associates his only son Lewis in the empire, 688. Form of investiture by the emperor, *ib.* Appoints several councils, and his magnificence in the diets, *ib.* (D). His frugality on other occasions, and strong instance of it, *ib.* *sub fin. not.* Peace renewed with the Normans, and success against the Moors, *ib.* He is crowned king of Italy, ix. 515. The Lombards revolt, but are reduced by him, visits Italy again, and on what account, *ib.* A body of laws by him, and his son Pepin crowned king of Lombardy, with a league by Irene for restoring Adalgise the Lombard, which is prevented by the return of Charlemagne, who gives Arechis a peace, which he begged, 516. Pardons Tassalon's revolt, and the Huns invading Germany and Italy are defeated, *ib.* The Greeks intend to invade Italy, *ib.* (A). He marches into Italy, and is crowned emperor of the Romans by the pope, 517. His army over-runs Saxony, but are driven out in his absence, xi. 682. His success at the head of an army against the Saxons, *ib.* His excessive joy on hearing of the death of Gotric of Denmark, *ib.* His death and character, viii. 689, ix. 518. Charlemagne's line reduced to Charles the Simple, who is made king of Lorraine, ix. 5. The causes of their utter exclusion, 19 (H). Charleroi lost, viii. 342. Its surrender to Luxemburg, xi. 642. Charles, youngest son of Brachio, his attempt on Sienna frustrated by the Florentines, xiii. 425. — Court island in the South Sea described, v. 33. — Fort St. in Penfacola, attacked by the French, xv. 25. It capitulates, *ib.* The terms broken, *ib.* — Town, in South Carolina, xv. 86. Described, 99. — of Valois, Boniface's intrigues with him, who creates him paciare of Tuscany, x. 454. Sails with a formidable army to Sicily to no effect, and concludes a peace with Frederic, one of the conditions of which was Frederic's becoming king of Trinacria, *ib.* Hurts his reputation by this treaty, and is recalled to France, afterwards seizing the pope at Anagni, with that prelate's death, *ib.* Sent by the pope, is admitted into Florence, with his conduct there, and the motives, xiii. 294. Recalled from Florence, where the Black faction, or Donati, prevail, who defeat the Bolognese confederated with the Whites, or Circuli, 295. Death, character, and issue, *ib.* — declared king of Neustria, and on Pepin's death, has a new distribution of country, and made king of Lorraine, ix. 6. Devolves all his power on his favourite Haganon, *ib.* Prediction of Henry of Saxony on this intimacy, *ib.* Deposing Charles by the nobility avoided by a treaty, and they crown Robert duke of France, *ib.* Charles, by an unexpected attack, kills Robert, but is defeated, 7. Entirely abandoned, and imprisoned, through the treachery of Herbert count of Vermandois, *ib.* —, king of Almain, why he declares war against Boson, ix. 529. This prevents Boson from assisting the pope, *ib.* — the Wicked succeeds his mother Joanna II. in the throne of Navarre, viii. 58. His character and good conduct then, but his severity soon after alarms his people, *ib.* Has an interview with Pedro the Cruel of Castile, and Pedro of Arragon, with the consequences, 586. Goes to the French court, and espouses the king's sister Joanna, but becomes a

Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

malecontent, *ib.* Raises a rebellion, and has a correspondence with John of Gaunt, *ib.* Formal but insincere reconciliation between the two kings, *ib.* He contrives new schemes against John of France, and seduces the dauphin, 587. Betrayed by the dauphin to his father, who imprisons him and punishes his confederates, *ib.* His schemes perplex king John, with his escape out of Aileux castle, his entry into Paris, and reconciliation with the dauphin, *ib.* His famous harangue to 10,000 people in a square, *ib.* Demands, and funeral oration for his friends, 588. By his intrigues he brings France to the brink of ruin, and is willing to save it by peace, *ib.* Interview with Pedro the Cruel, who forces him into a war with Pedro of Arragon, *ib.* Interview and confederacy with Pedro of Arragon and Henry count Trastemara, against Pedro of Castile, with the war in Normandy between France and Navarre, 589. A peace is concluded, with its terms, *ib.* Disbanded troops of France, Arragon, and Navarre, sent against Pedro of Castile, *ib.* He concludes contrary treaties with Pedro and Henry of Castile, endeavouring to reap advantage from both, 590. His artful and base contrivance, *ib.* He and the king of Arragon treat at once with Pedro and Henry, *ib.* but Henry, after recovering Castile, resolves to be revenged on the king of Navarre, 591. Concludes a definitive treaty with Edward III. of England, and with France, with the terms, *ib.* but is obliged to a neutrality in Normandy, *ib.* Interview between him and the king of France, who conclude a peace, 592. Some new differences left to the arbitration of pope Gregory XI. and Henry of Castile invades Navarre, but, at an interview, he concludes a peace with Charles, *ib.* who endeavours to draw over Henry against France, and compound with John of Lancaster for his pretensions, *ib.* Carlos of Navarre espouses Leonora of Castile, *ib.* Puts Rodrigo Urriz to death, and the king of Navarre accused of intending to poison the king of France, the executions thereupon, and seizing his children and estates, with some clearing up of these proceedings, 593. Renews his treaty with Richard II. of England, who lends a body of English troops against Castile, and the war with this crown terminated, and the terms, 594. After an interview with Carlos, Henry dies, and an insurrection suppressed, *ib.* Carlos of Navarre released, *ib.* The king's fresh designs against the life of the French king and his uncles, but liable to various objections, 595. Carlos of Navarre marches troops to the relief of his brother-in-law of Castile, upon the duke of Lancaster's sailing to Portugal, and, though infirm, suppresses a tumult, 596. His death, with strange stories about him, particularly his exit, and the true cause probably accounted for, *ib.* Character and behaviour, with the embarrassment he caused in France, ix. 99.

Charles III. succeeds his father Charles the Wicked, king of Navarre, viii. 597. His character, and surname of Noble and Liberal, *ib.* Declares for pope Clement VII. and his care to live on good terms with his neighbours, and compound disputes amicably, *ib.* Lets the queen return to her own country for the recovery of her health, applies himself to regulate domestic affairs, and fruitless endeavours to prevail on the queen to return, 598. Proceeds to his coronation, and obtains the restitution of Cherbourg; &c. from Richard II. of England, *ib.* but fails in his application to the court of France, and queen Leonora returns to Navarre, *ib.* Gives the 40th part of his revenue to build Pampeluna cathedral, and the queen delivered of a son, 599. Marriage of his two sisters, with the death of his son and brother, *ib.* Goes to France, adjusts all claims, and concludes a marriage of his daughter with Bourbon count de la Marche, with his return, 600. The marriage celebrated, *ib.* Pursues the welfare of his dominions, and sends succours to Castile against the Moors, but obliged to make a new tour into France, and settles matters with Charles Vith's family, *ib.* His treatment of duke Benevente, who fled from Castile, with his justice and moderation at home and abroad, 601. Death of queen Leonora, and he assists count de Foix against count d'Armagnac, *ib.* The latter marries Isabella the king's daughter, and Blanche espouses Juan of Castile, who becomes presumptive heir, *ib.* He cultivates the arts of peace, and Blanche delivered of Carlos, who is declared heir of Navarre, and also of Donna Blanche, 602. His death and character, *ib.* — of Anjou resigns the vicariate of Tuscany and senatorial dignity to the pope, ix. 646, xiii. 285. Made king of Sicily by the pope, x. 439. On Urban's death, his successor Clement IV. clogs his bull of investiture to him with several articles, 440 (D). Arrives at Rome, 440.



The barons of Puglia correspond secretly with him, notwithstanding their promises to Manfred, *ib.* He and his wife crowned in St. Peter's church, *ib.* The cities of both kingdoms almost submit to him, who oppresses his new subjects by his officers and soldiers, 441. Profuse donations to the Puglians, and preparations for an expedition to Africa with St. Lewis, 442. He concludes a peace with the king of Tunis, *ib.* His cruelty in publicly beheading Conradin and other prisoners at Naples, *ib.* The king of Tunis becomes tributary, *ib.* Gregory X. chosen pope, and his reception at Puglia by Charles, who reduces the Gibellines of Rome and Tuscany, 443. Resolves to make Naples his residence, which he beautifies and fortifies, with an account of the number and privileges of the *Saggi*, or *Piazze* there, *ib.* (G). Complaints against him in the council of Lyons, and the pope's admonition to him, and, on Gregory's death, Innocent V. is chosen pope, *ib.* Charles has the cession of the title to the kingdom of Jerusalem, *ib.* On Innocent's death, Adrian V. chosen contrary to Charles's design, and he dying, John XXI. or XXII. is chosen, who crowns Charles king of Jerusalem, *ib.* Nicholas III. chosen pope, 444. Charles makes preparations against Jerusalem and Constantinople, with his great power at this time, and greatly oppresses the Sicilians, with an instance of this towards the farmers, *ib.* (H). Why pope Nicholas resolves to humble him, *ib.* His immense armament against Greece, *ib.* A conspiracy carried on against him by John de Procida, 445, but disturbed by the pope's death, pope Martin espousing his interest, while John's plot goes on, *ib.* Besieges Messina by sea and land, with the brave resistance of the inhabitants, and even the ladies, 446. Raises the siege of Messina, and precipitately evacuates Sicily, the Aragonian fleet taking several of his galleys, *ib.* Both kings agree to decide their quarrel by a duel at Bourdeaux, 447. The two kingdoms disjoined, Naples being the seat of the French, and Palermo of the Arragonians, *ib.* Hangs several rioters in Naples, and the prince of Salerno saved by Constantia's generosity, 448. He fits out another armament from Naples against Sicily, and how diverted to Reggio, which he besieges, but obliged to retire, *ib.* Marching to Rome, he is crowned there king of Naples, and he defeats Mainfroy, who is killed in battle, and makes himself master of the Two Sicilies, ix. 641, x. 717. Crowned king of Naples at Rome, with the brave exploits of the exiles under him, xiii. 279. A peace made with the Pisans, and Gregory X. chosen pope, 282. Forces the Florentines to re-admit the exiled Gibellines, *ib.* Successes in Africa, and death soon after, with his appointing count d'Artois regent, x. 448, xiii. 29.

Charles prince of Salerno crowned king of Sicily by the pope at Rieti, x. 449, having been released by the treaty of Oleron, with its articles, *ib.* Pope Nicholas absolves him from this agreement, but through the king of England a truce is concluded between king Charles and king James, 450. Favour to the Gaetans, and his eldest son Charles Martel crowned king of Hungary, on the death of his uncle Ladislaus, *ib.* Celestine V. elected pope, and creates twelve cardinals, friends to that prince, and resigns, Boniface VIII. being chosen, 451, who mediates a peace between them, with king James's motives for deserting the Sicilians, *ib.* He cultivates the arts of peace at Naples, with his death and character, 454. Account of his issue, *ib.* (M).

— of Naples, king of Hungary, on a revolt of the nobles, is murdered, ix. 695, xi. 70, xv. 398. Fate of his murderers, *ib.*

— le Gros, emperor, called to the throne on the death of Carloman of France, viii. 713. Pretences of the nobility for this, and his character, 714. Enters into a war with the Normans, who come up the Seine with a large fleet and besiege Paris, *ib.* Succours brought by Henry of Saxony, and his murder in attacking them, *ib.* The emperor goes to its relief, *ib.* who by a sum of money induces them to withdraw and go into Burgundy, 715. Declining state of Charles, *ib.* Deposed and succeeded by Arnold of Bavaria, *ib.* Comes into Italy, and is crowned king by the archbishop of Milan, ix. 529, also emperor by the pope at Rome, who solicits his assistance against the Saracens, &c. 530. He succeeds his brother Lewis king of Germany, *ib.* The Normans ravaging France and Germany, the emperor makes a dishonourable peace, *ib.* Why deposed in a diet at Friburg, *ib.* Arnulph, Carloman's natural son, chosen, and Charles, deserted and decrepid, dies soon after, being the last of the Carolingian race, with his character and issue, *ib.* viii. 715 (F).

Charles of Luxembourg, intrigues by Philip of Valois in his favour, and is chosen king of the Romans, and crowned by his own party, xi. 46. The particulars he engaged to perform when with the pope at Avignon, *ib.* (O). Succeeds Lewis of Bavaria in the empire, 47, xiii. 326. His education, qualities, and exploits, previous to this event, *ib.* Succeeds his father Blind John, who was slain at the battle of Cressy, in the throne of Bohemia, *ib.* (K). His pious exclamation on the news of Lewis's death, and is acknowledged king of the Romans and emperor by many imperial cities, *ib.* though affronted in several places, *ib.* (O). Why he chastises Frankfort by a high fine, and is crowned with his consort, xi. 48. Imposes new tolls on rivers, which Strauburg refuses to pay, 49. This failing, he mortgages the imperial domains, and allows others to redeem those already mortgaged, *ib.* Sends succours to the empress-dowager of the Low-Countries against her son William, whom she defeats, 50, but defeated in her turn, and obliged to fly to England, the monarch of which effects an accommodation, *ib.* After several wholesome regulations in a progress through Alsace, takes the field against the Swiss, but retires, with the occasion, *ib.* After the commotion are settled in Germany, and the emperor's other proceedings, he sets out for Italy, and is crowned at Milan, and with his consort also at Rome, 51. He breaks out on town the same day, and confirms his promises to the detriment of the empire, but is rebuffed in different places on his return, 52, and reproached in a letter from the poet Petrarck, *ib.* (X). He supports the Guelfs against the Gibellines, who espoused the interests of the empire, with the troubles of the north of Germany, and the confusion he finds at his return, *ib.* Convoques a diet at Nuremberg, in which the emperor vests the right of voting entirely in the count Palatine, which the princes of Bavaria protest against, and, among other decrees, the famous Golden Bull is enacted, *ib.* In another diet at Metz, prepares a festival, in which each elector exercises his peculiar function, 53. Marches against the dukes of Bavaria and their confederates, *ib.* who agree to an accommodation, *ib.* Finishes Carletem citadel, *ib.* On his return to Bohemia, is wholly engrossed in amassing wealth, and enlarging his hereditary dominions, 54. The incorporation of Silesia and Lusatia involves him in a war, and how treacherously terminated, *ib.* (A). He encourages learning, remonstrates against the extravagance of the clergy, and applies himself with extraordinary care to administer justice, *ib.* Inexcusably remits in the affairs of Italy, and he sells the imperial jurisdictions, &c. there, with a difference between him and the pope, and a flat refusal given by the diet to the nuncio's demand, *ib.* To pacify the pope, he publishes the famous Caroline Bull, and what, *ib.* (B). The empress delivered of Winceflaus, the emperor neglects the affairs of the empire, and grows extremely covetous, 55. Sells the landgraviate of Alsace to the bishop of Strauburg, with the origin of landgrave, 56 (C). This acquisition occasions a war, which is soon terminated by a peace, *ib.* He and the German princes in vain solicited for succour by Peter Lusignan king of Cyprus, *ib.* Effect an accommodation between the pope and Visconti, *ib.* Quarrels with the king of Hungary, but an accommodation is effected by the pope, *ib.* He marries the daughter of Bugislaus duke of Pomranian, projects great designs, and, among other things, makes the abbots of Fulda, Weissemburg, Kempten, and Hirsbach, princes of the empire, *ib.* At the head of his troops, he expels the freebooters that had invaded Alsace, *ib.* Has an interview with the pope at Avignon, and engages to march into Italy against the usurpers of church lands, and those belonging to the empire, *ib.* Yields the sovereignty of Dauphiny to France for a dinner at Villeneuve, *ib.* Marches into Italy, with his successes, and peace made with the Visconti, 57, but he revokes the privileges of the rebellious towns, and restores them again for money, *ib.* Accompanies the pope to Rome, leading his horse by the bridle, and holding his stirrup, with the coronation of the empress in St. Peter's, *ib.* Purchases Brandenburg for his second son, 59. He visits Germany, and bribes the electors, who chuse his son Winceflaus king of the Romans, *ib.* & xv. 457. He sells towns, so as to be said to have plucked the eagle, makes a journey to Paris, with his entry there, and declares the dauphin perpetual vicar of Arles, *ib.* Erects an university and archbishopric in Prague, xv. 457. Declares war against the marquis of Brandenburg, who is obliged to resign, *ib.* Brings to Prague the relics of St. Vitus, beautifies his capital, and reduces the laws into writing,



writing, *ib.* Causes his son Winceſlaus to be crowned, when two years old, and raiſes the ſiege of Straſburg, *ib.* Death, character, marriages, and iſſue, xi. 59 (C), & xv. 457. His answer to the princes intreating him to quit Bohemia, xi. 60. Account of his eueils and tranſactions, and cannon ſuppoſed to have been firſt uſed in his reign, *ib.* (D).

Charles V. elected emperor, x. 70. xiii. 488. Proclaimed, x. 314. His diſſimulation, 79. Treaty with the pope, *ib.* His ſucceſs in Italy, 80. Concludes a treaty at Cambray with Francis I. 81. Conferences between him and pope Clement VII. at Bologna, where he is crowned, and afterwards ſets out for Germany with Campegio, *ib.* He and the catholic princes enter into a league, and publiſh an ediſt for the Romiſh religion, *ib.* Reggio and Modena adjudged by him to the duke of Ferrara, *ib.* Returns to Italy, 82. An alliance renewed between him and the pope at Bologna, *ib.* Triumphant entry into Rome, 84. Continues the truce with the proteſtants, and refers the diſputes to a council, 86. Treaty between him and Ferdinand of Arragon, the Swiſs and Sforza, the pope joining therein, 308. Preparations for a war with Soleyman, and paſſes into Italy, but could not draw the Venetians into a league, 333. Raiſes a powerful army and fleet againſt Soleyman in Africa, *ib.* A conference between him and Francis, but nothing concluſive, 337. Yields the iſland of Maltha to the grand maſter of Rhodes, vii. 448. Difficulties about coming, &c. removed, 449. Conteſt about the naming a biſhop yielded to him, and joins forces with him againſt the Turks, 452. The emperor's ſucceſsful attempt in Africa, 320, vii. 457. Gives aſſiſtance to Haſſan king of Tunis, 320. Expedition to that ſiege, 421. His navy and camp how ſupported with all neceſſaries, *ib.* The ſiege ſucceſsfully carried on, 322 (B). The place taken, *ib.* Entry into Goletta, and reſolves to beſiege Tunis, 323. Reception of the brave Simoni and his ſeven thouſand ſlaves, 324. Horrid carnage committed by the Germans on the Tunifeans, *ib.* Above two hundred thouſand periſh by their cruelty, 425. Terms of vaſſalage to which he reduces Muley Haſſan, *ib.* (F). His fleet ſhipwrecked, and his arrival in Sicily, *ib.* Raiſes a new armado in favour of Muley Haſſan, 328. Sells his Indian pretenſions to Portugal, iv. 177. Burns two Jewiſh impoſtors, v. 593 (O). Aſſiſts the Tremecens againſt Barbaroſſa, vii. 247. Defeats and kills him, 248. Arms againſt his brother Hayradin, 250. Beſieges Algiers, 251. Harraſſed by rains, &c. 252. Forced to raiſe the ſiege, *ib.* Meets with a freſh ſtorm, *ib.* Obtains a ſubſidy from Spain after great diſturbances, viii. 230. Appointing cardinal Adrian regent of Caſtile, he embarks and lands at Sandwich, 231. Is met by the king of England, and, after making this monarch umpire between him and France, embarks and lands at Flushing, *ib.* War hot in Italy between him and Francis I. 232. Treaty with Henry VIII. but its views broken by the death of pope Leo, and cardinal Adrian choſen pope, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with Henry, and ſails for Spain, *ib.* A full pardon read from a magnificent theatre, with ſome exceptions, *ib.* His jocular answer to a buſy informer, *ib.* The Italian princes negotiate a league againſt him, 233, but are diſappointed in obtaining Francis's liberty, 234. The holy league in Italy concerted againſt him, 235, into which Wolſey brings Henry, *ib.* Two kings at arms from England and France, in an audience of the emperor declare war againſt him, 236. Strange meſſages between Francis and the emperor, which end in a challenge, but without effect, *ib.* The ſtates own Philip as heir, and various ſucceſſes in Italy, 237. Treaty concluded at Barcelona between him and pope Clement VII. with the conditions, *ib.* Concludes a peace with Venice, and promiſes to reſtore Francis Sforza, who ſubmitted, *ib.* Arragon, Catalonia and Valentia, grant him a free gift, 239. Gives Tripoli and Goſa to the knights of Jeruſalem, 240. Interview with the pope and French king, 252. Ransom paid him by Francis, part of which goes to England, 238. Orders the opinions about Henry of England's marriage to be collected, *ib.* His precaution in defending his dominions againſt France, *ib.* From the too great expence of the conqueſt of Colon, quits it, 239. His expedition into Africa, and reducing Goletta, 240. Defeats Barbaroſſa, takes Tunis, and reſtores Muley Haſſan, who becoming his vaſſal, cedes Goletta, *ib.* Reſolves to attack Algiers, but fails, *ib.* The war breaks out with Francis I. upon the death of the duke of Milan, 241. Invades France, and beſieging Marſeilles, is obliged to raiſe it, *ib.* Attacked by the French upon one ſide, and by the Turks

on the other, he obtains ſubſidies from Caſtile and Arragon, *ib.* The Turkiſh fleet burn and pillage ſeveral places, but Doria takes twenty galleys, *ib.* Truce with France, the pope, and the Venetians, 242. Meets with ſeveral cauſes of mortification, 243. The emperors diſt., *ib.* Her illue, *ib.* On Ghent revolting he paſſes through Paris to reduce them, *ib.* His reception there and throughout France, *ib.* Incident of dropping a ring before the duchels d'Elampes, and the ſtate, *ib.* Interview with the pope, 244. Compels the duke of Cleves to ſubmit, 246. By taking ſeveral places terrifies the Pariſians, *ib.* Goes into Germany and makes cruel war on the proteſtants, 247. Two great projects of his military, *ib.* Reſolves to return to Spain, but embarrassed by the conjunction of the French and Turks, 248. Narrowly eſcapes from Maurice of Saxony, *ib.* Marches an army towards the Low-Countries, 249. Large ſupplies from Spain, *ib.* Vigorous war in the Low-Countries, *ib.* Projects Mary of England's marriage with his ſon, *ib.* War in Italy and the Low-Countries, 250. Gains over Wolſey, and upon Francis's demanding ſuccours, Henry declares war, ix. 210. Effects of the invasion upon Francis's affairs, *ib.* Concludes a truce with the regent of France, and negotiates a marriage with a ſiſter of Portugal, 213. His meaſures, and thoſe of the princes of Germany, 223. Enters France with a large army, 224, which beſieges Marſeilles, *ib.* Miſerable retreat of his troops out of France, *ib.* Avails himſelf of his ſuperior ſtrength, 226. His forces under Arſcot defeated, 228. The duke of Cleves makes the beſt terms he can with him, and the Engliſh are auxiliaries in the latter's ſervice, *ib.* His views, and thoſe of Francis in the preſent war, and how executed, *ib.* The imperialiſts defeated entirely by the duke d'Anguien at Cerizolles, and the conſequences, 229. Beſieges Metz with a numerous army, but obliged to decamp with loſs, 238, and the duke of Guiſe's generoſity to the Imperialiſts, *ib.* Takes and razes Terouenne, with the diſaſters there and at Heſdin, 239. Worſted before Renri by the French, yet the latter retreat, with his remark on the compliment of a lord about it, 240. Builds Charlemont and Philipville, 241. His reſignation, with that of Ferdinand, prevented by the French miniſters, *ib.*

Charles, Ferdinand's grandſon, ſucceeding to the Spaniſh monarchy, (See Charles V. emperor) writes to the Neapolitans, and confirming Cordona their viceroy, arrives in Spain from Bruſſels, x. 498. Concludes a treaty with the king of France at Noyon, *ib.* & xi. 132. The Spaniards openly take up arms againſt his governors, x. 499. Makes himſelf maſter of the Milaneſe, *ib.* He and the pope make an alliance, *ib.* Prepares for an expedition into Africa, and, after defeating the Moors, and making a progreſs through Sicily, arrives at Naples, 502. Makes alliance with the pope, 591. His birth and education, xi. 135. Declared of age at fifteen, and made governor of the Low-Countries, ſucceeding alſo to Spain on Ferdinand's death, *ib.* Is a candidate for the imperial throne, but Francis I. is his competitor, and the crown offered to Frederic the Wiſe, of Saxony, who declines it in favour of Charles, *ib.* Elected emperor at Frankfort, and crowned at Aix la Chapeile, *ib.* Has, before his coronation, an interview at Canterbury with Henry VIII. of England, and convokes a diet at Worms, *ib.* The Spaniards, or Sanſta junta, who take up arms againſt him, are reduced, *ib.* Sets out for Spain, 137. He firſt viſits England, and enters into an alliance with Henry, *ib.* (C). His allies become jealous of him, and aſſociate to expel the Spaniards out of Italy, 138. Alliance formed againſt him, who endeavours to reconcile himſelf with the king of France and the pope, 140. Makes peace with the confederates, and confers with the pope at Bologna about reducing the proteſtants, with the reſult, 141. Crowned there, and his further proceedings, *ib.* Exerting himſelf for ſecuring the Imperial dignity to his brother Ferdinand, is oppoſed by the duke of Saxony, &c. who enter into alliance at Smalcalde againſt it, 142. Reasons for contenting to an accommodation with the proteſtants, 143. Repairs again to Italy, where he writes to the ſtates, and the import, 144. Has a conference at Bologna with the pope, with whom, and the Italian princes, he renews the league, and embarks from Genoa for Spain, *ib.* Makes a deſcent upon Barbary, takes Tunis and Goleta, defeating Barbaroſſa by ſea and land, 148. Obligated to turn his arms againſt the king of France in Italy and at Rome, makes a very paſſionate harangue, challenging Francis to ſingle combat, *ib.* His ſolicitations with the pope for holding a council



a council, with his unsuccessful attempt in person on Provence, and in Picardy, by count Nassau, 119 (I). He is visited at Genoa by ambassadors from the protestant princes, *ib.* Hilde the vice chancellor, and the pope's nuncio, meet the protestants at Smalcald, 152. There they produce the pope's bull for convoking a council, with the declaration of the Lutheran divines thereupon, *ib.* Intrigues against Charles Egmont, duke of Guelderland, *ib.* Powers granted by him for accommodating all matters in dispute, *ib.* Is informed by the king of France of a revolt in Ghent, 151. He passes through France to the Low-Countries, with his splendid reception there, and his promise by way of gratitude, which he eludes, *ib.* The murmurs of the people that Francis did not retort Charles's usage at Madrid, *ib.* (P). Severe proceedings against Ghent, and he confirms the result of the assembly at Frankfort in favour of the protestants, when, after several unsuccessful assemblies, he refers the disputes in religion to a conference, 152. Account of the presidents and doctors appointed, *ib.* (Q). Notwithstanding public decrees against the Protestants, he privately indulges them with liberty of conscience, and the result, *ib.* Puts the duchy of Cleves to the ban, with other proceedings, *ib.* Undertakes an expedition against Algiers, which proves unfortunate, with his view therein, 153 (R). After several proceedings by the way, arrives in Germany, marches to Duren in Juliers, and takes it by assault, with the surrender of other places, 154. Pardons the duke of Cleves, *ib.* Rises from before Landrecy, and afterwards presiding at the diet of Spire, among other proceedings he is favourable to the protestants, *ib.* Treaty upon this entered into between the emperor and elector of Saxony, also a scheme concerted by Charles for attacking France with Henry of England, and his views, 155. Concludes a treaty with the pope, 157. By it a treaty of peace is concluded between France and England, with the emperor's motives published in a manifesto, which is answered by the protestants, *ib.* Tampering with the elector of Saxony's cousins, he also takes the field, 158. In his route to Ingolstadt, takes several places, and skirmishes only happen between both armies, *ib.* He takes advantage of the elector of Saxony's disappointments, and speedily pursues him, 159. He receives the landgrave of Hesse's submission, 161. But is afterwards arrested by the emperor's orders, and contrary to the articles of the treaty, *ib.* One word foisted in the accommodation for another, *ib.* The electors of Saxony and Brandenburg protest against this breach of faith, *ib.* (Y). The landgrave, notwithstanding he fulfils some of the articles, is still detained, and the emperor explains himself to the diet, eluding all solicitations, *ib.* Private complaints he takes into his own hands, and confirms the electoral dignity to duke Maurice, 162. He sets out for Brussels, *ib.* His removal from Augsburg to Inspruck, and with what views, 163. Is solicited to set the landgrave of Hesse at liberty, and upon his answer Maurice prepares for war, 164. Engaging the whole force of the protestants in his interests, marches against the king of France towards Strasburg, 165. He destroys Terouane, and then turns his attention to prevent the war kindled by Albert of Brandenburg, 166 (C). Joined by the marquis of Brandenburg, he besieges Metz with a very numerous army, but forced to retire, *ib.* He turns his attention to a match between his son Philip and Mary of England, *ib.* He and his brother send ambassadors to Moscow, about renewing the former treaty, and mediating between Russia and Poland, xiii. 100 (N). Conduct of the emperor with regard to the Italian states, particularly the Florentines, 330. Mark of the pope's affection to him against the French, and that pontiff's changing his system, with his answer to the emperor's remonstrances, 501. The pope and Florentines courted by the emperor, with the pontiff's endeavours for peace, 503. His inactivity after the battle of Pavia, 504. His views in Florence, 508. A confederacy concluded against him, and its terms, 510. The generals in the league against him are appointed, and a negotiation between the Imperialists and the pope broken off, 511. Shews himself a great prince, 145. His obstinacy, 520. Begins hostilities against the Florentines, who are not daunted, and he also arrives at Genoa, 524. They send a deputation to attend him, with the courage and conduct of the Florentines, *ib.* An interview at Bologna between him and the pope, with the former's prepossession against the Florentines, *ib.* The subject of consideration at that interview with the pope, what, 527. Crowned by the pope at Bologna, with other matters that passed there, 529. Changes the govern-

ment of Florence to what it was when the Medici held it, and all the pope's friends restored in Sienna, 532. Colours between the emperor and pope, from the latter in fact refusing to convoke a general council, 533. The emperor decides the affair of Modena and Reggio against him, in favour of the duke of Ferrara, *ib.* Interview at Bologna between him and the pope, 534. Differences continue between him and the pope, on the induction of a council, 535. A separate agreement between him and the pope, 536. Progress in returning to France, and proceedings at Sienna, which he takes under his protection, 443. But the French garrison driven out, and the strength of the league increases, *ib.* Letter from him to Geneva, encouraging them to stand out against the Bernois, xiv. 29. Commission and grants to Cortez arrive, 276. Thought to foment divisions among the Spaniards under him, 277. Arrival of his officers in Mexico, *ib.* Their cruelty to Cortez, *ib.* Act of renunciation unanimously approved at Frankfort, and Ferdinand's election to the empire, xi. 169. But the validity of both refused by the pope, who appoints commissaries to examine the merits of the affair, with their opinion, *ib.* The manner in which the emperor appropriated the sovereignty of the Low-Countries, 396, who also united Utrecht to Holland and Zealand, *ib.* Treaty at Turin with the Florentines, and the terms, 444. Another between him and the allies at Vercelli, the latter performing next to nothing, 445. The war renewed, *ib.* Resolves to abdicate, and his motives, viii. 250. xi. 167. Resigns the sovereignty of the Low-Countries, with all his royalties and dignities to his son Philip, *ib.* viii. 251. Is disappointed by his brother Ferdinand in the succession to the empire intended for Philip; formally transmits his assigns to the diet, resigns in favour of the former, *ib.* x. 96. Embarks at Flessingen, after setting out with a grand retinue from Brussels; he arrives in Spain; with his pathetic exclamation at Laredo, *ib.* Shuts himself up in St. Justus's cloister as a simple friar, xv. 475, where he dies, after receiving the Eucharist in both species, viii. 252, ix. 247, xi. 167. His marriage and issue, *ib.* (D). Sketch of his portrait and character, *ib.* His religion, viii. 252.

Charles VI. unanimously chosen emperor in the room of his brother Joseph, with the reasons, x. 173, 532, xi. 350. Divisions in the council at Vienna, *ib.* Insists on the preliminaries at Gertrudenberg, sets out for Germany, lands at Vado, and has a conference with the duke of Savoy, *ib.* Receives congratulations on the road, and swears to the imperial capitulation as proposed by the electors, with their intention in this, and the substance thereof, 351 (A). Other particulars contained in the capitulation, *ib.* By it the electors did not approve the conduct of the two last emperors, and he is crowned at Frankfort, *ib.* He and the Dutch open the campaign, 355. He is crowned king of Hungary at Presburg, and the demands of the deputies in the diet, 357; who express their distrust at the emperor's ready promises, and their jealousy fomented by count Bercini, *ib.* Levies oppressive taxes in his hereditary dominions, *ib.* Refuses the terms at Utrecht, xi. 508. Obstinacy of him and the Dutch, as to proposals of peace, xi. 359, xiv. 139. Prepares for war, but meets with great obstacles, xi. 361. Dies, and the consequences, xv. 613. His daughter Mary present empress, 476.

—— VII. emperor, his death, xv. 632

——, a Swedish lord, raised to the throne on the flight of Olaus Trætälga, but is slain by Regner, king of Denmark, in single combat, who gives Sweden to his son Bero, or Bjorno, xii. 226 (A)

—— and Eric the Holy, are chosen kings, the former by the Goths, and the latter by the Swedes, to reign alternately themselves, and their descendants, with a compromise, xii. 231

—— Suercherion, after some demur, is acknowledged king by the Swedes, according to agreement, xii. 231. Recalls Canute, son of Eric, from Norway, and declares him presumptive heir, with his character, and too great complaisance to the pope, *ib.*

—— Canuton, joins the rebels, is jealous of Engelbrachtson, xii. 248. Chosen general of the peasant army, *ib.* (D). See Canuton

—— IX. raised to the Swedish throne in the room of the deposed Sigitmund, is unsuccessful in Livonia against the Poles, xii. 314, 506. He is beaten by the Poles, 314. He a third time attacks Livonia, and his general, Mansfeldt, agrees to a suspension of arms, which the king refuses to ratify, *ib.* He gives a challenge to Christian of Denmark, which he refuses, 165. His success in Russia under de la

Gardie,



Gardie, 315. His death and character, with the state of Sweden after this event, 165. 316

Charles Gustavus. See Gustavus

— X. of Sweden. Politics of Holland and Denmark with regard to him; fresh alliance concluded, and an embassy from Sweden to the king on that score, ends in nothing, xii. 175. His success in Holstein, 176. Invailes Denmark from Kiele, passes over the ice with intrepidity to Zealand, 177. Proposals of peace to him, and his appointing Ulfeldt to treat, ib. Resolves to lay siege to Copenhagen, and the king of Denmark's ardour to resist him moderated by the senate, ib. Negotiations for peace go on slowly, and his hard conditions rejected, ib. Upon Christina's resignation, is crowned king of Sweden, 356. Difficulties at his first accession and proposals to the states, with their injustice in declaring against Poland, ib. Invades Poland by general Wittenburg, with Charles's progress, and the Poles twice defeated, ib. He takes Cracow, and the whole kingdom submits upon king Casimir's flight to Silesia, ib. He defeats general Czarnicki, and his army is in a deplorable situation; but in imminent danger he forces a passage to Warsaw, and marches to Prussia, 358. He besieges Dantzick, 359, but desists on the Dutch interfering, ib. In conjunction with the elector of Brandenburg, upon a treaty with the latter, defeats the Poles, 359. Concludes a treaty with Ragotzki, after which he returns to Prussia, ib. Marches to Stetin, 360. Passes over the ice to Pomerania, which and the isles he reduces, 361. He, from some measures taken by the king of Denmark, renews the war, and besieges Copenhagen, ib. But Opdam relieves the siege, and Charles converts it into a blockade, 362. His measures for frustrating the concert of the Hague, ib. He invades and conquers Poland, Casimir flying to Silesia; the provinces take an oath to the conqueror, 524. By the change of measures at the court of Moscow, and joining the king of Poland, is very likely to evacuate Poland, but he dies, 526 (A). The other powers of Europe take umbrage at his rapid progress, ib. Death and character, 362. Its consequences, xi. 586

— Duke. A p. stern gate in Stockholm is opened to that duke, ix. 297. He opposes his brother the king of Sweden, xi. 301. He, on notice of Sigismund's election to Poland, makes a declaration, and its purport, 303. He is entrusted with a share of the Swedish government, 304. His marriage, 305. He takes the administration of Sweden till Sigismund's return, 306. Disturbances in the kingdom, and the occasion, ib. Is declared regent by the Swedish senate during Sigismund's absence, ib. They jointly convoke the states for opposing the new liturgy and growth of popery, ib. Counsels the king to grant his subjects entreaties, and the king's answer, which brings on a threatening reply, 307. Takes the matter upon himself, to whom and the Polish lords, the king promises fallaciously all that is required, ib. The civil dissensions seemingly compromised, are soon renewed with more violence, ib. Escapes a plot formed by the king for assassinating him, 308. Espouses the cause of the peasants in Finland, ib. Made governor of Sweden, 309. His care in restraining the insolence of the soldiers, with the quarrel between him and the senate, 310. He retires in disgust to Grypholm, ib. Calls an assembly at Abroga, with their resolutions, ib. Assembles an army, with his success, ib. On an open rupture between the brothers, that duke clears himself, as do also the states, 311, while the king raises a powerful army for reducing him, ib. Hostilities are first renewed by that duke against the king, 312. He forms alliances with Lubec and the czar, ib. Enjoys the authority of a king, with his great address and policy, 313. On Sigismund's return to Poland, forms designs on the crown, and the Polish writers account of his management, 305. See Charles IX.

— XI. a minor, succeeds Charles Gustavus in Sweden, under a regency, xii. 313. Takes the reins of government to oppose Christian V. and makes a descent on Schonen, xi. 193, but the latter makes himself master of Helsingburg and Landskrona, ib. Also Cortholund, ib. &c. 315. Abolishes the chief sway in the Swedish senate, and the king raised above the peers, yet still with a clause of limitation, xii. 211. Invades Brandenburg, 312. Takes the reins of government into his own hands, but is unsuccessful against the Danes in Schonen, 304; yet his fortune returns by beating general Dornum near Helsingburg, and at the battle of Lund, ib. He marries Ulrica Eleonora of Denmark, 366. His queen is crowned, 367. Her influence towards pacific measures, 368. The Rytwick congress greatly owing to his mediation, 369. Acquires absolute power, ib.

MOB. HIST. VOL. XVI.

His embarrassment when he succeeded his father, and his forces beaten near Fearberlin in Brandenburg, xiii. 171. The abuse of the supreme power by him, particularly with regard to Livonia, 198. His death and character, xii. 369. His military regulations still continue, 217

Charles XII. a minor, succeeds his father Charles XI. in the Swedish throne, under the tuition of his grandmother, and five senators, xii. 369. Quarrel between him and Augustus of Saxony, but a treaty is concluded, xi. 334. Occasion for breaking it, ib. Forces the emperor to accede to all his propositions, 335. Maintained his prerogative till defeated at Pultowa, when the Swedish senate resumed their authority, but on his return were deprived of it, xii. 212. He, with the English and Dutch fleet, makes a descent on Zealand, and prepares to lay siege to Copenhagen, 370. Marches to the relief of Narva, besieged by the czar, and a contrast of the princes and their armies, 371, xiii. 198. He, with 8000 men, defeats three large bodies of Russians successively, xii. 371. His saying to an officer, who remonstrated on the king's attacking the Russian entrenchments, ib. He, with 4000 men, pursues 50,000, with an account of the killed and taken, ib. His generosity to the prisoners, and the czar's saying on hearing this defeat, ib. His prediction verified, and his design of attacking the king of Poland, 372. Obtains a complete victory over the Saxons, ib. (A). Progress in Courland, and Lithuania, ib. Scheme of deposing Augustus, and the concurring circumstances, ib. Defeats the Poles and Saxons, 374, and marches to Cracow, but intending to pursue the enemy, his horse falls under him, and his thigh broke, ib. Levies a heavy contribution in Dantzick and Elbing, with the reason for it, ib. Again defeats the Saxons under Stenau, ib. Contrary to his first intention to Sobieski, makes Stanislaus king of Poland, 375. Besieges Leopold, 593, and takes it by assault, with a rich booty, 375. Attacks Schullenburg, in Pomerania, with the king's oversight in not dismounting his cavalry, 376. Penetrates into Prussia, 586. Publishes a manifesto, ib. Takes Thorn, which the inhabitants purchase for dismissing, 587. A deputation sent to him by the confederacy and primates, proposing a treaty, and his answer, 588. yet several quit the confederacy, and why, ib. He declares in favour of Lecziński, palatine of Pomerania; and count Horn insists on finishing the election, 590. Negotiations carried on with him, but prove fruitless, 595. He resolves to seize upon Saxony, which reduces Augustus to great necessity, 601, and has some thoughts of placing the hereditary prince of Saxony on the electoral throne, 602. An interview of Augustus and Stanislaus, which is great matter of triumph to him, 603. Crosses the Boristhenes, and fights the battle of Helowitz, after which the Russians retire towards Smolensko, the Swede pursuing, 606. After quickly finishing the war in Denmark, raises the siege of Riga, 198. A deputation from the Polish council sent to the king, with his answer that he would hold the conference at Warsaw, whether he marches, publishing a manifesto, ib. He enters Saxony, 378. His declaration here, and the good consequences, ib. where only a few Saxons, &c. forced who were found in arms, and their fate, 379 (A). Attacks the Saxons encamped on the Dwina, who are defeated, 580. Letter from the primate and deputation from Lithuania, with his answer to each, ib. Treaty with the Sapihas, ib. (M). Imposes heavy contributions, but protects the people from the ravages of the soldiers; and a pleasant anecdote shewing the king's strict discipline, 379 (B). He imposes harder terms on Augustus, 381. His inflexibility in regard to Patkul, ib. Forces the emperor to mean submissions, 382. An anecdote shewing the terror with which he struck the court of Vienna, 383. His saying with regard to Rome, and his plan of deposing the czar, and conquering Russia, with an extraordinary visit to Augustus at Dresden, ib. (B). He quits Saxony, and marches against the Russians, through snow and ice, &c. ib. and, in his march after the Russians, defeats a large body of the enemy, 384. His memory preserved by a medal struck in Sweden at that time, ib. Difficulties which the king encounters in the pursuit of the Russians, ib. He enters into a treaty with Mazepa, general and chief of the Ukraine, but is frustrated by the Russians, 385. After vast difficulties enters the Ukraine, ib. Passing the Duna, defeats the Saxons, and conquers Courland, with Peter's continuing his armaments, xiii. 201. Continues ravaging Poland, ib. Advances against the Russians at Grodno, from which Augustus flies towards Saxony, 203. Acquires not a single province by all his victories, being now in pursuit of Augustus, ib.



He obliges Augustus to write a congratulatory letter to Stanislaus, and to deliver up Patkul, the czar's ambassador, 209. Leaves Saxony, and pays an extraordinary visit to Augustus at Dresden, after which he marches through Poland, with the horrid cruelties of the Swedes, 210. Narrowly misses taking the czar in Grodno, *ib.* Triumphs at Altranstadt near Leipzig, being courted by most of the powers in Europe, *ib.* He triumphs in Poland, yet acquires no territory, while Peter procures real advantages, 211. Advances towards Russia, with his intrepid passage of the river Wabitz; and passing a morass on foot, defeats the Russians at Hollowzin, *ib.* Reaches the Dnieper near Mohilo, and marches towards the Ukraine, Peter following him, 212. He crosses the Dnieper, with a skirmish between his troops and the Russians, *ib.* Distressed situation, with Piper's prudent advice, and the king's obduracy, 214. The constancy of him and the Swedes, with some anecdotes of this kind, xii. 386 (A). With his army, greatly diminished, penetrates to Pultowa, *ib.* Invests Pultowa, xiii. 215. Constantly repulsed, and wounded in the heel, is carried in a litter, then on pikes, with his firmness on the occasion, xii. 387, xiii. 216. Resolves to attack the Russians, with the different accounts on one circumstance, xii. 387 (B). Entirely defeated, *ib.* (M), and the loss of the Swedes, xiii. 216. The prisoners sent to Siberia, xii. 388. Account of the principal persons, xii. 217 (B). With the happy consequences to Russia, xii. 388. His flight and arrival at Ozakow, with his relenting at the misfortune of some of his followers in Turkey, *ib.* Kind reception there and at Bender by the seraskier, with the conduct of the Porte and French court to him, 389, who is still big with hopes, *ib.* His cause espoused by the sultana, and grand vizir; but the czar's money, which he had taken at Pultowa, at last prevails, 390. Through his own constancy, and Poniatowski's fidelity, effects a revolution in the Turkish ministry, *ib.* The new vizir makes him a handsome present, respectfully admonishing him to return quietly home, but the king rejects this proposition, 391. Builds himself a sumptuous castle at Bender, and, instead of two tables, orders four to be kept, 394. The great distresses of the Swedes at Bender for money, *ib.* (A). He comes to the Turkish camp, and grossly affronts the vizir, 394. Great obduracy, xiii. 218 (D). Much caressed, but traversed by the czar's envoy, 221. Refuses listening to peace, *ib.* A letter sent him by the sultan for returning home, xii. 395. His answer, *ib.* A renuance of 1200 purses made to him by the Porte, on condition of his departure, 399, which he squanders away, and demands a thousand more; with the sultan's speech in an extraordinary divan upon it, 400. His strange resolution to repel force by force, *ib.* The royal quarters are invested by 20,000 men, with the affection of the janissaries for him, 401. Refuses to depart, xiii. 221, 226. He affronts the janissaries, who exclaim against his stubborn ingratitude, xii. 401. Stormed in his intrenchments and house, and at last taken prisoner, 402. His situation at Demotica, 405 (C). Here he consents to the marriage of his sister Eleonora to the landgrave of Hesse-Cassel, and at length determines to return, 405. A present sent by the vizir to him, but no money, the article most wanted, *ib.* He sets out for Sweden, but dismissing his Turkish attendants, and accompanied only by colonel Daring, through bye-paths, he makes the tour of Germany, and arrives at Stralsund, 406 (B), with his admission to the governor, and the universal joy thereupon, *ib.* He drives the Prussians out of the isle of Usedom, which they soon recover, 407. Winters at Carlscroon, and his reasons for not visiting Stockholm, 409, with his cruel extortion under the name of taxes, *ib.* (A). His irruption into Norway, and successes there, but at last obliged to retreat, *ib.* He invades Norway, and forms the siege of Frederichshal, where visiting the trenches, he is shot by a cannon-bullet, with different accounts of the circumstances, 412 (A). His character, *ib.* Consequences fatal to Goertz, and conferences renewed, xiii. 247.

Charles, first duke of Nevers, succeeds Vincent II. duke of Mantua, xiv. 116. Supported by France, and the account of that affair, *ib.* On the peace of Luevasque he gets the investiture of Mantua, *ib.*

— III. succeeds his father Charles II. duke of Mantua, xiv. 117. His person, character, amorous adventures at Venice, and death, *ib.*

— IV. succeeds his father Charles III. duke of Mantua, xiv. 117. Advantageous marriage with the princess of Guastalla, and his precipitate catering into the French measures, with his character, *ib.* Their negotiations for

gaining him over, and his giving them Cassel up, 118. The Venetians break with the duke, who fortifies Guastalla, in violation of his marriage-contract, but obliged to destroy it, *ib.* On a love affair at Venice, he challenges the elector of Bavaria, who declines it, but at the head of an army, with the duke's making a campaign against the Turks, and is a favourite with the emperor, *ib.* Offers made the duke by the emperor, &c. but he again joins the French, and his capital given them up on summons; with the Imperial minister's notice to the diet at Ratisbon on this head, 119. His second marriage with the princess d'Elbeuf, and name general of the French in Italy, who are driven out of Mantua, with his death; and leaving no lawful issue, after being put to the ban, the emperor keeps possession of the Mantuan, and gives Montferrat to Savoy, 120.

Charles I. or, The Warlike, succeeds his brother Philibert, duke of Savoy, and dies, xiv. 129.

— II. when nine months old, succeeds his father Charles I. duke of Savoy, and dies when eight years old, xiv. 129.

— III. succeeds his half-brother Philibert the Handsome, duke of Savoy, with his good fortune from the emperor Charles V. and Francis I. his resentment, xiv. 129. Joins the emperor's general the duke of Bourbon, with Francis's stripping him of most of his forts and cities by Chabor, *ib.* His other losses and death, *ib.*

— Emanuel succeeds his father Emanuel Philibert, duke of Savoy, and wrests the marquisate of Saluces from France, with his little moderation, by a medal, xiv. 131. Invades Dauphiny and Provence, but obliged soon to quit them, *ib.* A peace concluded by him, *ib.* and after the siege of Geneva, forced to give the Genevois satisfaction, *ib.* His war in Mantua, and peace concluded, *ib.* His war with the Genoese, and victory of Ottagio, with a peace concluded, xiv. 131. He renews his claim on Montferrat, 132. He dies, and his character, *ib.*

— II. a minor, succeeds his brother Francis Hyacinth, duke of Savoy; the dispute about the regency continued, xiv. 133. Declared of age at fifteen, *ib.* The Spaniards take two places; the one retaken, and the other restored by the peace of the Pyrenees; he cultivates the internal policy of his dominions, *ib.* Among other works, he cuts a passage through the rock Mount Viso, and the manner of his death, *ib.*

— III. succeeds his father, duke of Savoy, and king of Sardinia, with his complaints against the emperor, xiv. 136. Concludes a treaty with France and Spain, with its stipulations, and the king's manifesto against the emperor, *ib.* Villars joins the king, and they take Pavia, &c. with the conquest of the Milanese, *ib.* Having the sole command, beats the Imperialists at Guastalla, with the loss of the prince of Wirtemberg, &c. 139. Leaves his interests in the hands of Great Britain, and, after his queen's death, keeps the Imperialists in Lombardy in awe, *ib.* Negotiations for a peace at the arbitration of Great Britain and the states general, *ib.* His acquisitions in the Milanese by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle, and marrying a princess of Lorraine, 140. A parallel between him and his father, with his obligations to the British ministry in the late war, and his punctual perseverance, with his cultivating commerce, *ib.*

— of Durazzo, his arrival at Rome, and reception by Urban, who gives him the crown of Naples, with the terms, x. 496. Proceeding to Naples he defeats and takes Otho prisoner, *ib.* The queen being also imprisoned, he takes possession of the kingdom, and queen Margaret crowned by the legate, *ib.* But after alienating many, he orders queen Joan to be put to death, *ib.* On the renewal of the dissensions, besieges the pope in Nocera, who escapes to Genoa, 470. Patronizes the Florentine exiles, but the progress of his general, Gianazzo of Salerno, towards Florence, is checked by Hawkewood, xiii. 344. He takes Arezzo, *ib.* His ambassadors politely received at Florence, and a present of money made him, with the condition, *ib.* A deputation from Florence, congratulating his accession to the crown of Naples after queen Joan's death, *ib.* Accepting the offer of some malecontents, is crowned king of Hungary, and murdered, x. 471, xi. 71.

— I. of England, his strange journey when prince of Wales to Madrid, and reception there, viii. 293. Buckingham and Olivares quarrel, by which England becomes an enemy to the house of Austria, *ib.* Marries Henrietta Maria of France, ix. 370. His desire of information for a re-union with Rome, x. 140 (Z). Assists the Huguenots in the isle of Rhee, *ib.* Only evasive promises given to him for Frederic elector palatine, xi. 222. He demands justice from the emperor in behalf of the count palatine, who



- who publishes a manifesto and protest, 244. Analogy between him and Canute of Denmark, 701. His charter of Carolana (Mississippi) xv. 16. Different conveyances down from Sir Robert Heath to Dr. Cox, ib.
- Charles II. his request of a squadron from the states disregarded, xi. 565. The states general receive him with great respect, and send an embassy to him after his departure, 587. Debate about a present given by him to a son of the ambassador Beverwert, 588. Proposals of peace made by that king to the Dutch, 606. Vide Congress. He seizes four Dutch East Indiamen, and declares war, with an account of this frivolous declaration, 613. Clamours in England about the administration, and the states irrefragable answer to the king's declaration, ib.
- Lewis, prince palatine, defeated in Westphalia, by Hasfeldt, xi. 247. Pretending to the succession of Weymar, is arrested in France, as also his two brothers, 250. but set at liberty, and restrictions put upon him, 251. Re-established in the Lower Palatinate, xv. 472
- II. elector palatine, dies without issue, xv. 472
- Philip, elector palatine, xv. 472
- of Burgundy, succeeds Philip the Good, ix. 168. Takes Dinant by assault, which he reduces to ashes, and puts all to the sword; Liege abjectly submitting, xi. 105. On Philip's death the Liegeois again revolt, but are humbled by Charles, who dismantles St. Trou, Liege, &c. ib. Obliged Lewis XI. of France to sign the treaty of Peronne, where they meet together, 106. Takes and destroys Liege, murders his prisoners, and ravages Franchemont, ib. His unbounded ambition, who tampers with the electors, 107. Employs all his efforts to achieve his enterprizes, and besieges Nuys, but obliged to quit it, 108, with the reasons for so doing, ib. (X). In a battle with the Swiss at Nancy, loses his life, 109. The confusion occasioned by this event, ib.
- of Bourbon, outwits the pope and marches to Rome, in attacking of which he loses his life, yet the city is taken and sacked, xi. 140
- duke of Lorraine, contests in France between him and Hugh Capet, with the issue, x. 639
- of Neustria, by ill timed rigour, almost ruins his affairs, and the Normans bought off to retire, viii. 701. Beaten twice in Bretagne, ib. A peace concluded there, and the disorders in the French empire, exposed to all the barbarians; with a kind of constitution settled between the three brothers, ib. Pillaging and burning of Bourdeaux by the Normans, what effect on Charles's affairs, with the revolt of the duke of Bretagne, who defeats him, 702. Peace concluded, the Aquitainers throw off their allegiance, and Lewis sends his son among them, ib. The Bretons revolting, defeat him, and his grant of the duchy of France to Robert le Fort, their general, 704. For a sum of money engages one body of Normans to expel another, ib. His childrens ill conduct very vexatious, ib. The king of Lorraine's divorce occasions fresh disturbances in France and Italy, ib. Continual disturbances in France from the descents of the Normans, 705. His death, and account of his issue, ix. 9 (B)
- the Bald, enters Italy with an army, and deceiving his nephew Carloman, marches to Rome, and receives the Imperial crown from the pontiff, viii. 708. His baseness with regard to his nephew's only daughter, ib. The ravisher Boson made duke of Lombardy, and Charles's viceroy, ib. Change of Charles's behaviour after receiving his new title, ib. Crowned emperor by the pope upon Lewis's death, and owning the independency of Rome and the empire, the gift of the pope, ix. 526. Also king of Lombardy at Pavia, ib. Holds a diet at Pavia, with his transactions there, ib. Conspiracy of the count of Tuscany, &c. against the pope quashed, 527. Is defeated by Lewis king of Germany, and obliged to quit Lorraine, which he usurped on his brother's death, ib.
- the Gros, marches to Italy with an army, and a compromise between him and his brother Lewis, king of Germany, ix. 528
- the Simple, seated on the throne of France, ix. 3. Declining state of the government, and the great change in the monarchy by introducing of Feels, ib. The Normans more formidable than ever under Rollo, ib.
- III. Method for supplying his treasury, ix. 107. Declines Edward's assistance, ib. Confummate policy in assisting Henry to the crown of Castile, 108. His prudent administration restores matters at home, 109. By the assistance of his states declares war against Edward, 110. Little done on either side, but the same taxes imposed, as for the release of king John, 111. Through the king's management the war carried on with advantage, and his methods for strengthening his alliances, prosecuting the campaign, and wearying out the black prince, ib. His vigilance in relieving his subjects, and a truce between both kings, 113. Improves it for his people's good, 114. Orders a solemn service for the death of the black prince, ib. His armies, upon intelligence of king Edward's death, attack the English on all sides, ib. Victory over them, and but few places left them, ib.
- Charles IV. or the Fair, succeeds his brother Philip V. king of France, and without opposition, ix. 85. Marriage with Blanch, being annulled by the pope, he marries Mary of Luxemburg, and a war breaks out with England, ib. He puts Lewis in his grandfather's seat, as count of Flanders, but disappointed of being elected to the empire, 68. Treaty with the Scots about the succession in either kingdom, 87. Espouses his cousin Joan, ib. and accepts of Edward III's excuse for not doing homage, ib. Erects Bourbon into a dukedom-peerage, and his leaving his queen pregnant, with his character, ib. The last male heir of Philip the Fair, ib. Remarks on the French succession in the third race, 88.
- the Fair, succeeds his brother Lewis Hutin, and assumes the title of Navarre, viii. 581. Troubles here, and his death, 582. Solicits the empire at the pope's desire, but drops his pretensions, ix. 667. Set up by the pope as Lewis of Bavaria's competitor, with an interview proposed at Bar sur Aube between him and the German princes, but to no effect, xi. 37
- V. or the Wise, succeeds his father John in France, ix. 106. Prudential maxims by which he restores France, and the count de Mountfort admitted duke of Bretagne, ib. Gets a round sum from the pope, with his absolution, 108. Last instructions, with his death, character, and issue, 116 (D)
- VI. carried by the duke of Burgundy against the revolted Flemings, ix. 117. Returning from Flanders, chastises the Parisians, by executions, and extorting from them and others money, &c. 118. Spirit and prudence against them, who are defeated at Rosebecque, and his outrageous severity, ib. Has an interview with Isabella of Bavaria, whom he resolves to marry, 118. Makes an expedition into Flanders, ib. Assumes the government, and names a new council, also makes a truce with England, and the use made of it by him, 120. Obtains the surname of Well-beloved, and makes a Tour to Avignon, ib. In his return visits Languedoc, redressing grievances, and count de Foix declares him his heir, 121. His brother, the duke of Touraine, afterwards duke of Orleans, espouses Valentina of Milan, ib. The king diverted from foreign enterprizes, but his allies assisted, ib. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy disgusted at their exclusion from court, ib. The hatred shewn against the constable, ib. Marching into Bretagne, seized with a sudden phrenzy, 122. The dukes of Berry and Burgundy seize the government, excluding the duke of Orleans, ib. The king's indisposition increased by another singular accident, ib. His disease returns more frequently and violently, 123. Mild and prudent government of his uncles, ib. Accommodates all disputes with Richard II. of England, who espouses his daughter Elizabeth, with the duke of Orleans's rapaciousness, ib. Assisted with troops by count Nevers, and constable d'Eu, ib. Has frequent returns of his malady, 124. The queen delivered of a son, 125. Holds a bed of justice, and an edict for esteeming the eldest sons of France as kings at their accession, 128. A new scheme of accommodation proposed, and the two factions of Orleans and Burgundy how designed, and their marks of distinction, 130. Several turns of superiority between both dukes, ib. The king makes some changes in the administration, 131. Puts himself at the head of an army against his uncle and nephew, ib. A complete army from England under Clarence lands, ib. The old treaties renewed, and hostages given for the payment of the English, who march to Guienne, ib. The states being assembled and dismissed, the dauphin resolves to take the government, and the financiers persecuted, with the discovery made by Esbards, who possesses himself of the Bastille, ib. but being surrounded by the band of butchers is persuaded to surrender, with several commotions by the rabble, and the dauphin's method for repressing their insolence, 132. Marches against the duke of Burgundy, and a peace signed with him, ib. Splendid embassy sent to England, with their information on returning, 134. The queen's plate seized, and herself with her daughter Catharine,



Catherine, banished to Tours, but protected by the duke of Burgundy, with the measures thereon, and his attempt on Paris frustrated, 135. General spirit of deceit at this period in every court, destroying all faith, *ib.* A reconciliation of the queen with the dauphin's party prevented by the constable Armagnac, *ib.* A truce between France and England, 137. Death, prodigious strength, character and issue, 142.

Charles VII. proclaimed king of France, ix. 142. Character of Charles VII. or the Victorious, *ib.* His surprising preservation amidst the fall of a house, 143. In his distress endeavours to draw assistance from abroad, particularly Scotland, and thereby has a considerable army, *ib.* His troops defeated by Bedford, at the battle of Verneuil, in which the constable, the earl of Douglas, and his son, &c. are killed, 144. Reduced to a sad situation, but sustains himself by his temper, *ib.* Reconciled to Arthur earl of Richmond, and his brother the duke of Bretagne, *ib.* He gives himself up to ease, without detriment, 149. By the intrigues of the duke of Orleans in England, engages king Henry to consent to a treaty at Arras, which is concluded in favour of Charles's propositions, though more in favour of the duke of Burgundy, 150. After taking Montereau, makes a solemn entry into Paris, but forced to abandon it on account of a plague and dearth, 151. In an assembly of the clergy at Bourges, establishes the liberties of the Gallican church by the pragmatic sanction, 152. Conferences about a treaty with England, come at last to nothing, *ib.* Contrives a plan of military discipline, which he causes to be executed, *ib.* Greatly distinguishes himself by taking Pontoise sword in hand, 153. New troubles excited in the kingdom by the dukes of Orleans, Burgundy, and Bretagne, with the king's behaviour, who detaches Orleans from the malecontents, and dissipates the league, *ib.* With firm steadiness he goes to the relief of Portras, in Languedoc, *ib.* Truce between him and Henry of England, 154. Accepts of a composition from Metz, and carries his scheme of discipline into execution, with the part he had in this and other matters in defence of his character, 155. Takes Mons, and his apology to Henry accepted, 156. Alteration in France through the king's good management, and unaccountable breach of the truce by the English, amidst great confusion at home, *ib.* Provides silently and speedily for war, and enters Normandy, *ib.* Great part of that duchy and Rouen reduced, and by the defeat of the English general Kyreil at Fourmigni, all of it, 157. Makes a sudden peace with the duke of Savoy, whose daughter the dauphin marries, 158. Sends a governor to Genoa, which republic had put themselves under his protection, 161. Reduces the government in Dauphiné to its ancient form, and takes all methods of shewing the dauphin his great desire to reclaim him, 162. Dies through want of sustenance, for fear of poisoning, *ib.* His character, with several particulars of his reign, 163 (B). Issue, and monumental inscription, *ib.* *sub not.*

VIII. succeeds his father Lewis XI. of France, at fourteen, ix. 179. His low education, and to whom owing, with his deformed and infirm state, 180. Contest between his sister Anne, dame de Beaujeu, and two princes of the blood, about assisting the king in the government, referred to the states, *ib.* Some of the late ministers delivered up to public resentment, *ib.* The states at Tours settle the administration, and give a large subsidy, and present, *ib.* Steps taken with his armies, and their effect, 182. Invades Bretagne, and brings its duke into great distress, *ib.* who extricates himself, and the king's success in Guienne, *ib.* Victory of St. Aubin, in which the duke of Orleans and prince of Orange are taken, 183. Treaty of pacification concluded, and releasing the prince of Orange, sends him into Bretagne, where he does signal service, *ib.* Negotiations for a marriage with the princess of Bretagne, and the objections, 184. Upon releasing the duke of Orleans he goes to Bretagne, and brings about the marriage with the king, *ib.* Jealousy which this measure raised in the neighbouring powers, *ib.* Makes a truce with the archduke Philip, and restores Roussillon and Cerdagne to king Ferdinand of Castile, 185. Makes the treaty of Sc. Il's with the archduke, and the motives upon which he embarks in the war of Naples, and the states of Italy, *ib.* In his way to Italy falls ill of the small-pox at Arr, 186. His treaty with the pope, and entering Naples in Imperial robes, 187. Rapid fortune, with the use made of it, *ib.* Beats the whole force of Italy with a handful of men in Forno-

vi-valley, marches home, with his mighty conquests rapidly lost, 187. Preparations for renewing the war in Italy abortive, and all Naples recovered, *ib.* Fickle and fickle temper of the Italians now, and some curious particulars of this expedition into Italy, *ib.* 188. Names what, with their influence on his administration and health, 189. Enters Italy, whom Sforza joins, x. 47. 493. 573. Embassy to Florence by Ab. gny about his passage to Naples, not positively answered, xiii. 436. Intimidated, but refuse to join against him, 442. Takes several places, and enters Rome in triumph, x. 48. Is solicited by the cardinals to depose the pope, but concludes a treaty with him, *ib.* Makes an easy conquest of Naples, 49. His pretensions, with those of Louis, to Naples, 493 (X). Fatal consequences of this invasion to Italy, *ib.* Without opposition enters Naples triumphantly, 494. Enters Florence as a conqueror, with his demands, and the determined resolution of the Florentines, particularly Pietro Capponi's boldness in the king's presence brings about an accommodation, 439. Enters Rome, to whose demands the pope yields, and an accommodation effected, 440. Disputes between the Pisans and Florentines, with the allegations of both before him, *ib.* who favours the Pisans and temporises with the Florentines, *ib.* Keeps possession of Pisa, 444. Beats the confederates at Forno vi, *ib.* The Florentines favoured by him, who is insulted by his own officers, and prepares to return to Italy, 447. His message to Sforza, by Rigault, whom he amuses, *ib.* His great indulgence, *ib.* His unaccountable trifling spoils all appearances for the French, and their interest entirely destroyed, 450. Precipitate return, 49. 118. Sudden death, character, and issue, ix. 189 (G). In him ends the direct line of Valois, 190.

Charles IX. succeeds his brother Francis II. king of France, ix. 255. The constable recalled, and the queen mother has the power of regent, *ib.* Assembly of the states, and their proceedings, *ib.* The queen mother at the head of affairs uncontrolled, 257. Declared major, and the queen out of spite becomes a zealous catholic, *ib.* Peace with England, and progress made by the queen with the king, *ib.* She publishes an edict against the protestants, *ib.* The year begun in January, *ib.* An accident at Paris near reviving the war, *ib.* Prince Henry set up by his mother as competitor to Condé in the constableship ineffectually, 258. The queen-mother's dark policy, with the king of Spain's dissimulation, all aimed against the protestants, *ib.* Retreat of the court from Meaux to Paris, performed by the Swiss, and their reward for this service, 259. The queen-mother's cabinet council, with their views, and an attempt to seize the prince and admiral, occasions the third civil war, 261. He appears in a new point of light, and his marriage with Elizabeth of Austria, and her character, 264. Speech to his ballard brother Henry, and the duke of Guise's retiring from court, with the king's seeming to consult his true interest under the deepest dissimulation, 265. Treacherous cajoling of the queen of Navarre, and her death, 266. Fires on the flying Hugonots, with the fate of Peter Ramus, and its effect on Lambin, 267. This cruelty, which lasts three days, is avowed and boasted of by the king, with the execution of two gentlemen for a feigned plot, *ib.* The example in Paris followed by other cities, and called the Mattins of Paris, 268. Thirty thousand protestants butchered, and the governors in some of the provinces relent, or absolutely refuse the orders, *ib.* Settles affairs according to the queen-mother's desire, and his miserable end, 270. Account of him and character, *ib.* (L). Famous saying with regard to poets, his queen, daughter, other issue, with his device and medals struck upon the massacre of St. Bartholomew, *ib.* An interregnum after his death, with the conduct of the queen-mother as regent, 271. The queen-regent sets out for Lyons, 272.

— of Arragon prevails on the states to proclaim him, and grant a free gift, viii. 229. Marries his sister Leonora to the king of Portugal, who had before her two aunts, 230. Catalonia and Valentia grant him a free gift, 240.

I. of Spain, or emperor Charles V. his history to his abdication, viii. 226. Proclaimed in Spain, *ib.* And the cardinal's answer to a disputation of the nobility, *ib.* Grants commissions of array, 227. First disgust given the Spaniards by that king, 229. Obtains a free gift from the states of Castile, *ib.* Elected king of the Romans, *ib.* On the demise of his grandfather, chosen emperor, *ib.* Succeeding on the death of his grandfather, Ferdinand of



Spain, he makes a treaty at Noyon with Francis, x. 433, xi. 132. See Charles V. E.

——— II. of Spain, succeeds his father Philip IV. viii. 324. Character of his mother the queen regent, with her unaccountable conduct by bringing her confessor Nitard into the regency, and excluding don Juan, 325. Forced to make peace with Portugal, and acknowledge the house of Braganza, ib. Declared of age, his spirited answer to his mother, and suspicion for the change in his temper, 329. His sensible answer to the French and English ministers, 338. The queen-mother's influence, and the use made of it, ib. The great share he has in the revolution by the prince of Orange, ib. Acts wisely to strengthen the confederacy against France, with the queen's death, and the king's marriage with the princess palatine, 339. A war breaks out, ib. In Roussillon and Flanders the Spaniards are successful, 340. Queen's public entry, and a well-penned paper of Spain against France, with the success of the campaigns, ib. Arrival of the galleons at Cadiz, ib. Count Oropela his disgrace, and why, ib. He appoints a junto for the finances, 341. The campaign goes equally on both sides, ib. The public engaged to relieve itself with good effect, ib. Intrigues about the succession, 342. Spain and her allies have the worst every where, ib. Spanish court torn by factions, 346, with the king's health declining, ib. De Harcourt's management, ib. The first partition treaty between king William and Louis XIV. ib. Reason of his making a will, and for whom, ib. Remonstrance from France on this head, 347. Death of the prince of Bavaria alters things with regard to the king's will in his favour, and a sedition in Madrid, ib. The king visits the Escorial, and has the coffins of his mother and wife opened, with a commotion by removing Monterey, ib. The king resents the conduct of Great Britain in the first partition treaty, 348. He is supposed to be bewitched, and what follows, ib. His situation, ix. 478. How his disease increased, viii. 348. On Portocarrero's representation, makes a will in favour of the duke of Anjou, 349, x. 531. Adds a codicil, and appoints a regency, viii. 349. His death, ib. The will accepted by the king of France and the duke of Anjou, who sets out for Spain, 350, and is acknowledged in Naples, x. 531. Death of near all his progeny, 466 (Q)

———, archduke, war carried on in Flanders and Piedmont, with little advantage, viii. 245. (See Charles VI. Emp.) Publicly declared king of Spain at Vienna, 355. Arrival in England, xi. 328. Comes to Lisbon in an English fleet, ix. 485, and assumes the title of Charles III. viii. 355, with the manifestos of this new king and the king of Portugal, ib. Conveyed to Barcelona by a grand fleet, under Peterborough and Shovel, which becomes the seat of his government, 358. Catalonia, Roses excepted, and most part of Valentia, declare for him, ib. Stifles a sedition at Barcelona, 361. His new queen received at Barcelona, and the duke de Moles declared his prime minister, 362. His army, their calamities, 364, not. Takes Madrid and Toledo, but could not keep them, 365. Death of the infanta his intended spouse, and with what terms he influences Portugal, ix. 485 (A). Election of a new emperor falls on him, 499. By the treaty at Rastadt, he is put in possession of Naples, &c. which refuses to acknowledge Philip king of Spain, x. 531. Invested with Milan, xi. 336. Revolution in Naples for him, 338. His marriage to a princess of Wolfenbuttle, 339. The pope's equivocal acknowledgment of his right to Spain, xi. 342. His declaration, 346

——— (Charobert) crowned by the legate, whom the states at last acknowledge king of Hungary, xv. 394. Defeats the count palatine Matthew, who rebelled, ib. His marriages and issue, with his war against Walachia, ib. Fate of Felicianus, who attempted to murder the royal family, ib. Invading Walachia, is defeated with the loss of almost his whole army, ib. Goes with his son Andrew to Naples, and is visited in Hungary by several great persons, 395. His eldest son Lewis declared heir of Poland, ib. The king dies greatly lamented, ib.

——— Albert, present duke of Bavaria, xv. 470

——— Leopold of Schwerin, his marriage, xv. 540. Differences with the nobility, and unhappy situation thereon, ib. His connections with the czar Peter, whose niece he marries, and the czar's views for seizing that duchy, 541. Stipulations between him and Sweden relating to his Britanic majesty and Mecklenburg, ib. The Russians occupy the duchy, ib. The king of Sweden killed, and Goertz his minister executed, ib. The duke deserted by the czar,

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

with the award by the emperor in his nobles favour, 542. His misfortunes hereupon, and his brother appointed administrator, whom the Hanoverian troops supported, ib. Succession of the Russian empire, and why the duchess of Mecklenburg was set aside, ib. Settled in the younger sister Anne, duchess of Courland, ib. Her vigour in annulling the capitulation, unmeasurable affection for Biron, and nominating her niece of Mecklenburg her successor, who, with her mother, escapes into Russia, 543. Visits his daughter incog. who is married to Anthony Ulric of Brunswic, which is opposed, but in vain, ib. Is delivered of John, and Biron appointed regent of Russia, during his minority, ib. Prudent conduct of the duchess of Mecklenburg, death of the empress Anne, and John proclaimed emperor, 544. Biron condemned, on the princess of Mecklenburg being appointed regent, and prince Antony chosen duke of Courland, ib. Revolution in favour of princess Elizabeth, ib. The princess of Mecklenburg arrested with her husband and son, 545. The duke of Holstein adopted by the empress, and married, with his fate, and death of the princess of Mecklenburg, ib.

Charlevoix, his contrast of the French of Quebec, and the English planters, xiv. 554. His account of the pretended bravery of three French against an hundred English, 650. His character of the English, ib. (H). His opinion about the submission of some Abenaguais, and further canvassed, 653. The French treachery, ib. His remark on the cause of the French miscarriages in America, ib. His partiality to the French, and prejudices against the English, 666 (I). His account of a sham cession to Vandreuil, by the Tsonnonthuan deputy, 677. His meaning of a French neutrality, what, 678 (L). His mistake in his map of Louisiana, xv. 11 (Z). Character of him and his work, 15. His report to the French court about the want of missionaries in Louisiana, and measures taken accordingly, 32 (E). His hatred to the Natches and Chactaws, and for what, 42. Character of the latter, by a missionary, ib. His unfavourable prejudices against the English, ib. Inaccuracy of his maps, 56 (N)

Charobert elected king of Hungary, is approved by the pope, xi. 20

Charran, Harran, Charra, where situated, i. 143

Charolt, the Maltese admiral, his success against the Turks, vii. 506

Chafdar's letter to Joseph king of Chozar, v. 524 (M)

Chateau Cambresis, peace concluded there, in which England and the empire are abandoned, viii. 254

Chateaneuf, (William de) the eighteenth grand master of Maltha, vii. 388. Fortifies the Holy Land; in great favour with the pope; and dies of grief, ib.

———, abbe, on Polignac's integrity being impeached, comes to Poland, but an order of the palatinates for the queen to quit Warsaw, sets all right again, xii. 551

Chatelet, the last of their conquests recovered from the Spaniards, ix. 395

Chatigon, or Xatigam, inhabited by swarms of Portuguese pirates, iii. 112 (H)

Chatillon, marshal, beaten at Marfee, ix. 402

Chatots, savages, account of, xv. 44

Chatte, M. de, governor of Canada, his success by Pontgravé, xiv. 569

Chaubayna besieged in his capital of Martavan, iii. 253. Vast presents offered to the Portuguese, ib. Capitulates and submits to the king of the Barmas, with his mournful procession and barbarous death, 254

Chandar Tartars of Kermian, who, and whence, v. 153 (Z). Put the Othman territories to fire and sword, ib.

Chau ma-fa, his brave defence of Chichew, ii. 372

Chau-migrem's bloody fight with the Avans, iii. 255. Unlucky attempt on Savadi, 256. Artifice to save himself and the Barmas from the Peguers, 259. Rich plunder and retreat, ib. Marches against Shemin-doo, 260. Defeats, and puts him to flight, ib. Crowned king of Pegu, and forced to compound with his mutinous army, 261. Triumphant entry into Pegu, ib. Cruelty to Shemin-doo, his daughter and lords, with the farce acted after his public execution, 262. His history imperfect, ib. Conquests of above twelve kingdoms, ib. When made, with his invasion of Siam by a prodigious army, 263. Reduction of the capital and kingdom, ib. A white elephant the occasion of the war, 264. The number of his forces, and expedition against Arrakan frustrated, ib. Choused with a sham princess, and a sham ape's tooth, ib. Both brought in a magnificent galley, 265. His public works, and death, with his wives and progeny, ib.



- Chaumord, M. St. his negotiations in Germany in favour of his master, xi. 242
- sent ambassador to Siam, iii. 372. Memorial in order to convert the king, 373, with his acute and discouraging answer, ib. Returns with three Siamese ambassadors, 375
- marshal, battle between the French under him and the Venetians, in which the latter are defeated, and Alviano taken, x. 293. His death and character, ix. 198
- Chaunor, or Cape Non, when discovered, and where, iv. 136
- Chau-pi translates the Chinese books into the Mungl language, iii. 365
- Chau-syang defeats the king of Tsi, iii. 698, and usurps the Chinese crown, ib.
- Chau-ti, emperor of China, his mild reign, iii. 701
- Chau-tien, a province and kingdom in Korea, iii. 749. The king of Korea tributary to China, 754
- Chau-tsung, emperor of China, suppresses the eunuchs, iii. 715. Confined and restored; he causes them to be destroyed, ib. Is murdered by the rebel Chuneen, ib.
- Chauvelin totally disgraced at the court of Versailles, which offers its mediation between Britain and Spain, xiii. 656
- Chauvin, his progress in Canada, by Pontgravé, xiv. 569
- Chaul, or Chaol, a fortified port in Vizapur, iii. 140. Taken by the Portuguese, iv. 132. Its nine months siege, 134. Strength and importance to Portugal, 142. Its fine situation and strength, 169
- Chaw-pasa-thong becomes king of Siam, by treason, iii. 362. Marries the princess, 363. Murders her brothers, and pompous funeral of his daughter, ib.
- Chaw-vang, emperor of China, his odious reign, iii. 690. Drowned by a stratagem, ib. Portents before his death, ib. (P). Fo born in his reign, ib. sub not. (See Fo)
- Chau kong, great loyalty to his prince, iii. 691
- Che, king of Korea, tributary to China, iii. 754
- Chebueto-bay and river in Nova Scotia, its conveniency, xiv. 498
- Che-ching, one of the three khans of the Kalkas, his dominions, ii. 438
- Chektea, the sixth sect of Brammans in India, iii. 218
- Che kyang, a province of China, described, iii. 539. Manufactures, product, &c. ib. Canals, cities, &c. 540
- Chelebi Muffa, Bayezid's son, taken prisoner by Timur Bek, ii. 563
- Muffulman, Bayezid's son, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 563
- Ifa, another of Bayezid's son, doth the same, ii. 564
- Yakub, a fourth son, obtains some provinces from Timur Bek, ii. 564. All honoured by him after their father's death, ib.
- Cheli, a noble lord, accuses the rapacious Sang ko to Hupilay, ii. 390. Is cruelly bastinadoed for it, but his honest intrepidity rewarded, ib.
- Chelles, abbess de, Orleans's daughter, persecuted on the score of the bull Unigenitus, xv. 611
- Chenalat's treason discovered, who is executed at Geneva, xiv. 43
- Cheng-chau, his noble defence of Chang-chew-fu, and death, ii. 375
- Cheng-kin, prince, his grief for Wangsun's death, ii. 384. His death and character, 397
- Cheng-tsung declares against the project of the Whang-ho, ii. 419. Disgraced for it, ib.
- Chen-tsu-jin, a brave Chinese censor, banished, ii. 430
- Chepar, Mr. French commandant among the Natches, his security, and he with his guests killed, xv. 33
- Chepe Noyan sent to invade the Kin provinces, ii. 283 (G). Forces the posts and the great wall, ib.
- Cher, Shir Khan drives Humayun out of Dekan, with the contrariety of that account, iii. 133. (Vide sub Shir Khan)
- Cherasco, in Piedmont, taken by assault, xi. 149
- Cherburgh taken by the English, the works destroyed, and the shipping burnt, xv. 622
- Cherokees, their perfidy effectually chastized by colonel Montgomery, xiv. 723. Savages, account of them, xv. 44. Treaty concluded with them at Charles-Town in Carolina, 93. Conspiracy of the hostages in fort Prince George, who are put to death, 96. The savages without repelled, as also from fort Ninety-six, ib. Measures taken against them, ib. Besiege fort Loudon, which they take, with their barbarity to the garrison, 97
- Chersonesus Aurea, of the antients, probably Sumatra, iv. 150, fin. (Z)
- Chetards in Russia, what, xiii. 63
- Cheti, emperor of China, murdered by Lyang-ki, iii. 704
- Chetodul brings off the miserable remains of la Roche's settlement on Sable-Isle, xiv. 569
- Che-tsung, emperor of China, presented by his minister with ten noble maxims, iii. 720. The famed Ko-lau in his reign, ib. (A)
- Chevert, the French general, unsuccessful in his attempt on Imhoff, xv. 622
- Chen-yew-lyang refuses entrance to his principal Tsiu chew-whay into Nan-chang-su, iii. 427. Causes him to be slain, ib. Founded the dynasty of Han, and defeated by Chu, 429, and slain, ib.
- Chew, a bloody emperor of China, his reign, iii. 687. Dreadful end, 688
- Chew-kong, prime minister, offers his life to heaven for the emperor, ii. 689. Forced to retire, ib. Is recalled, ib. Singular presents to the foreign ambassadors, ib. (O)
- Chew-kyun abandons the empire to the usurper Chau-syang, iii. 697
- Chew-shan, or Shu-fan, island described, iii. 541 (E)
- Cheykur, the Ranna's capital, treacherously seized on by the Mogols, iii. 116
- Chialias, the chief managers of the cinnamon woods in Ceylon, iv. 485 (U)
- Chiamettan province described, and its capital, xiv. 436
- Chiapa province described, xiv. 439
- Chiari battle, in which the duke of Savoy, the French generalissimo, is defeated; Carinat's address to his officers before the attack, with the duke's insincerity, to whom this and other losses in Italy are ascribed, ix. 482
- Chiaux, one sent to renew treaties with the Porte, ix. 360
- Chicachas, their practices, xv. 42. Charlevoix's account of them, and his groundless surmise about the English, 52. Language, its extent, 44. Savages, where, 45. Universality of their language, ib. War, account of its beginning, 53. Progress, ib. Take a French boat with powder, 54. New expedition against them, 56. Their character, ib.
- Chi-chew taken by the Mungls, ii. 372
- Chichimecas, or Otonnies, why the Mexicans are so called, xiv. 360
- Chickley, deputy-governor of Virginia, procures forts to be built at the head of the four great rivers, xv. 370. Act of assembly passed in favour of this colony, ib. Again appointed, 371
- Chievres, Le Croy his nephew made archbishop of Toledo, viii. 229
- Chija, rabui, his strange way of quelling his lust, v. 503
- Chiker river in Mongolia, ii. 245
- Child, Sir John, governor of Bombay, makes reprisals on the Mogols, iii. 117. Insolent answer to Sedi-yakub, and forced to beg pardon, ib.
- Child, Sir Josiah, his shameful government in India, iv. 318. Barbarity and insolence, 319. Articles of complaint against the Moguls, ib. sub (E). Occasions a war with them, 321. General depredations on the Moguls, ib. Base cowardice, ib. Death, 323 (F)
- Childebert, his edict against the Jews, v. 521. Invades the Visigoths in the quarrel of his sister Clotilda, viii. 623. The war of Burgundy and Auvergne, with the revolt and murder of Munderic, ib. He reconciles himself to Theodobert, and declares him his heir, 624. He and Theodobert again make war, and are reconciled to Clotaire, 625. He and Clotaire invade Spain, but are thoroughly beaten by the Visigoths, 626. Death and character, 628 (E). His issue, and their fate, ib. in fin. not.
- , king of Austrasia, avails himself of the disputes between the Greek emperor and the Lombards, viii. 640. A conspiracy against him discovered, and the conspirators cut off, ib. Another conspiracy, in which, and the former, the bishop of Rheims had the chief hand, 641. The battle between him and Fredegonde, with his success, ib. Dies young, and is succeeded by Theodolert, 642
- Childebert, called to the throne of Austrasia, behaves wisely at first, but becomes a tyrant and perishes miserably, with his pregnant queen and prince Dagobert, viii. 654. France in a state of anarchy, ib. With his family shut up in a convent, 665
- Children in Peru kept to strict decorum, xiv. 378. And the effect on the Peruvians, ib.
- Chilefians, their jealousy of the Spaniards, and an invariable maxim among them, what, xiv. 471. The governor and colonists reap all the advantage among them, ib. Their last treaty with Spain, what, ib. Governed by their own chiefs, and their office, ib. Account of the natives, ib. Ther



- Their desperate perseverance, and the particulars of the war between them and the Spaniards, xiv. 323. Destroy the Spanish settlements, ib. See *Chilians*
- Chili*, Le Hermitte's arrival on its coast, v. 86. Attempt of the Dutch upon it, 89. Country and natives described, ib. The state of the Spaniards in it, and skirmishes with the Dutch, ib.
- , Almagro's expedition to it, xiv. 307. Rich presents of its inhabitants to the Spaniards, ib. Expedition to it, and its natives very brave, 319. Valdivia sent thither, 320. Disposition of its several inhabitants, 321. An expedition thither by admiral Brewer, 324. His successes and death, after making an alliance with the natives, ib. The kingdom described, 470. Various accounts of its extent, ib. Height of the mountains here, ib. The seasons here opposite to those in the northern hemisphere, ib. A comfortable climate, and its productions, ib. Number of Spaniards and natives, 471. Commanderies here, what, ib.
- Chilians*, their plot against Valdivia discovered and punished, xiv. 320. Drive the Spaniards from St. Jago fort, and set fire to the outworks, &c. ib. Defeated by Valdivia, and the place repaired, ib. Rise against the Spaniards, whom they put to the sword at Copiapo and Coquimbo, destroying the towns, 321. But repulsed by Valdivia, ib. See *Chilians*
- Chiloe-Island*, in *Chil.*, xiv. 474
- Chiloe-Island*, in the South-sea, described, xv. 364
- Chilperic* persecutes the Jews, v. 522. Marries Galswintha, the eldest sister of Brunehaut, viii. 631. Account and character of his concubine Fredegonde, ib. (G) Murders his queen, ib. His defeat, and dishonourable treaty, 634
- , king of Soissons, assassinated, viii. 635. Account of his death and character, 636 (H)
- , Daniel, declared king of the Franks, and Charles Martel, duke of Austrasia, viii. 657. The forces of the former are driven away, thro' the activity of the latter, 658. The king and his treasures delivered to Charles, and the civil war ended by Charles's granting terms to Rainfroi the mayor, ib. His death, after a short and uneasy reign, 659. His character, ib.
- Chilvagni*, Quinama, refuses the crown of Angola, vi. 503. Resigns it to his son Angola, 504
- Chilwapopoca* chosen third king of Mexico, and murdered by the Tepeacans, whence a war arises, xiv. 363
- Chillingworth*, first governor of the Bahamas, xv. 270. Forcibly shipped off for Jamaica, ib.
- China*, how divided in Jenghiz-khan's time, and what part called Kitay, ii. 267. Invaded by him, 283. State of the southern empire at that time, 286
- , ancient state, growth, and extent of its empire, iii. 513 (A). Limits and provinces, 514 (B). Climate, ib. How improved, 515 (C) (D). Various names, ib. Twenty-two dynasties, ib. (E). Whence the name of China, 516. When first discovered by the Europeans, their mutual surprise and admiration, ib. Its divisions and peculiar advantages, 517. Populousness, army, &c. ib. Villages on the water, 518. Numerous cities, and their different ranks, ib. Castles and forts, with other peculiar advantages, 519. Provinces described, and chief cities, ib. Ancient religion, 557. Still preserved, ib. Idolatry, when and how introduced, ib. Complied with by the learned, 558. Different sects, ib. (E). The ancient religion revived by Confucius, 559. Sect of Fo, when and how brought hither from India, 561. Ridiculous notions and worship of him, 563. How represented, and punished or rewarded by his votaries, 564. Sect of the Literati introduced, ib. Christianity, when and by whom preached, 567. Its monarchical government, 574. Supreme tribunals, 577. Four military ones, 578. Courts, how regulated, ib. Provincial tribunals, 579. Laws much abused, ib. Agriculture promoted and improved, 607. Plenty of pasture, 609. Animals, wild and tame, 610. Little fags and birds described, ib. The fine kin-ki and flower-bird described, 611. Excellent fruits, ib. Singular trees, 612. Tea-shrub, &c. 613. Cotton, how propagated, &c. 616. Jen-feng, and other physical roots, ib. Gold, whence brought, 613 (H). Silver, not coined, but cut and weighed, 621. Character of its ancient and present inhabitants, 622. How early peopled, 657. Divided into various states, 705. Invaded by the Eastern Tartars, 692, 720, 721. Reduced by them, ib. Their first dynasty of the nine emperors founded, 723. Subdued by the Tartars, 731. Sea-coasts and towns destroyed, 739. Damaged by a great earthquake, 740. Its commerce with Russia very ancient, iv. 90
- China* married women, their melancholy condition, iii. 627. Care of their children while young, 639. Sickness of their feet, 633. Close confinement, io. Dress and ornaments, 634 (S)
- ware, iii. 619. See *Porcelane*
- princes of the blood persecuted for being Christians, iii. 743. Dreadful banishment into Tartary, 744
- or *Cochinchina*, kingdom described, iii. 423. Its extent, populousness, fertility, &c. ib. Produce, mines, &c. ib. Cities unwall'd, manufactures, &c. 424. Commerce, and liberty granted to strangers, ib. (E). Genius, diet, and dress, 425. Customs derived from the Chinese, ib. Bad astronomers, 426. Fond of astrology, their religion, and various sects, ib. Cause of its decay, and various superstitions, 427. Their monarch's manner of giving audience, ib. Capital punishments, their revenue, ib. (E), and tributaries, 428. Army and strict discipline, ib. Gallies, why quickly manned, ib. Royal court, richness, &c. and ministers, why all eunuchs, 429. Army and fleet, by whom commanded, and why more severely punished, ib. Arms and fine appearance, and imperfect manner of fighting, 430. Sway over their neighbours, and the origin of their monarchs from their own records, ib. Why and when they revolted from the Tonquinese, which has entailed a mutual war to this day, 431. Isles belonging to *Cochinchina*; wrecks dived for and got along its coasts, ib.
- a passage opened from Malacca to it, viii. 456
- Bakkar, a city in Pegu, iii. 239
- Chinca* (*Chica*) province, their worship there, what, xiv. 397
- Chincafuya*, a revolt there, according to the account given the inca by his banished son Virachoca, xiv. 394
- Chinche*, their own account of their valour, xiv. 403 (G). Their defence obstinate and brave, with a remark on the difference of valour in the climates between the tropics, ib. in sin.
- Chinda Swintho*, king of the Visigoths, maintains his crown by force, vii. 559. Kind reception of Ardabasta, and calls a council at Toledo, with his great learning and piety, his public works and death, 560
- Chinese*, very superstitious, iii. 563. Fondness for astrology, fortune-tellers, &c. 566. Pay a worship to the sun and planets, ib. To the souls of the deceased, ib. Their laws, government, and politics, 579. Military under five courts, artillery imperfect, 580. Improved by the Jesuits, ib. Provinces and cities how governed, ib. Their constitution gradually polished, 588, yet not wholly free from some cruelties, ib. Capital punishments, and disobedience to parents punished like high-treason, ib. Murder how punished, 589. Adultery not capital, ib. Branding, torture, &c. 590. Their gaols better kept and ordered than in Europe, ib. Civil causes how judged, 591. Tribunals often corrupted, ib. Their learning improved by their missionaries, 592. Records, how far certain, 594. Observatories, ib. Calendar mended by the Jesuits, and their fondness for astrology, ib. Astrological tribunal, their office, and great skill in arithmetic, 595. Ceremony in observing eclipses, ib. (D). Navigation, how far carried, 596. Shipping, ib. &c. Sailing, ib. (E). Floating villages, 597. Want of logic, rhetoric, and their physic imperfect, 598. Pretended skill in pulses, 599. Aversion to anatomy, ib. yet long acquainted with the circulation of the blood, ib. Crude music, ib. Several sorts of poetry, all imperfect, 600. History, its merit, 601. Ancient language described, ib. That now in use, 602. Voluminous dictionaries, 603. Whence the difficulty of learning it from books, ib. (K). Various dialects, 604. Way of writing, ib. (L). Ancient character, ib. Difficulty of learning the present, and the manner of writing, 605. Paper, 606. Manner of printing, ib. Why inferior to ours, 607 (P). Agriculture greatly encouraged, ib. And improved, ib. Mountains cultivated, 609. Manner of doing it, ib. Plenty of pasture and cattle, ib. Causes of the country's poverty, 617. Miseries of the meaner sort, ib. Foreign trade very gainful, ib. With Europe much decayed, 618. Tradesmen great cheats, ib. (I). Their manufactures, ib. Money, 621. Silver paid by weight, ib. Copper, their only coin, described, 622 (R). Weights, how divided, ib. High conceit of themselves, 623. Destructive fondness for gaming, ib. Sumptuous festivals, ib. Sobriety at them, 624. That of the new year, how magnificently kept, ib. (C). That of the lanterns, ib. Two festivals in honour of Confucius, 626. On birth days, ib. How they



- they allow of polygamy, and second marriage, 627. Melancholy state of married women, *ib.* Funeral obsequies and long mourning, 628. Anniversary obsequies to their ancestors, *ib.* Funeral procession described, 629. Tombs and stately monuments, *ib.* Feastings at them, 630. Mourning for an emperor, *ib.* Education of children committed to the wives, and humility of style in speaking and writing, 631. Formalities used in their visits, *ib.* (R). Treatises written on the subject, 632. Various shapes and complexions, &c. 633. Dress of the women, *ib.* Affectation of modesty, 634 (T). The present dress of the men, and forced upon them, 635. Their diet and rare dainties, *ib.* Bread and corn mills, 636. Common drink, *ib.* Made wines, and spirituous liquors, with the vast detriment occasioned by them, 637 (X). Fine roads and easy way of travelling, *ib.* But bad inns and dusty roads, 638. High cataract, 639. Remarkable rivers, mineral springs, and curious lakes, *ib.* Metals and minerals, *ib.* Gold and silver fish, how propagated and kept, 640 (A). The great wall described, 641. When, and by whom built, *ib.* Its great bulwarks, 642. Artificial mountains, and roads cut through high rocks, *ib.* Stately bridges, 643. Triumphal arches, 644. Sepulchral monuments, *ib.* Curious and stately towers, and that of Nanking, *ib.* Large bells, and their use, 646. Sumptuous fire-works, *ib.* Their reigning diseases and method of curing them, 647. Method of bleeding, cupping, &c. 649. Their origin and antiquity, &c. 654. Reasons of their differing from other nations, 656. Conformity of their religion with that of the ancient patriarchs, 664, and worthy of Noah, 665. Some of their excellent doctrines, and prophecy concerning the Messiah, *ib.* Ancient chronology from Fohi to Yaw, proved the purest, 666. More proofs of Noah being their founder, 667. The beginning of their monarchy, 672. Their cycle, by whom invented, and how computed, 676. The first variously fixed, *ib.* Reigns of their monarchs, 677, & *ad fin.* Subdued by the Tartars, 732. Their apology for it, *ib.* in *fin.* (R). Resume their courage, 735. Their bloody insurrection in Manilla, *iv.* 180, and fatal end, 181. Embassy from China upon it, *ib.* Their insurrection and dreadful massacre in Java, 471, 474 (H). Pompous titles of their monarchs, *iii.* 575. Absolute hereditary power, and great honours paid to them, 576. Supreme councils, *ib.* Assiduity in public affairs, *ib.* (Q). Their forces, officers, &c. 580. Their wise maxims eluded by their ministers, 581. Various causes of their corruption, *ib.* Vast homage paid to them, 582. Splendor of their court, and vast retinue, *ib.* Their revenues, whence, 583. Wives and concubines, *ib.* Their children equally capable of succeeding them, 584. Their palace and hall of audience described, *ib.* Reception of ambassadors, *ib.* The sole enactors of the laws, 585. Some of their excellent declarations, 586 (E). Funeral duties to their parents, 628 (M) (N). The chronology of their nine first emperors, 673. That of the following ones uncertain, and not to be fixed, 676. Their respective dynasties and reigns, 678, *ad fin.* Liberty of commerce restored in Japan, *ib.* Chinese embassy, *iv.* 62, 67. Why since much restrained, 67. Idolatrous worship of the Chinese converts condemned, *x.* 170. Congress and treaty concluded between the Russians and them at the river Amur, with the splendid retinue of the latter, and the singularity of this embassy and treaty, *xiii.* 186. The negotiation managed in Latin between two Jesuits on the Chinese side, and a German in the Russian embassy, *ib.*
- Ching dynasty in China, its duration and extinction, *iii.* 696. — confirmed king of Korea, and disoblige Hu-pi-lay, *iii.* 754
- Chingaii chosen chief of the Giagas, *vi.* 569. Slain in Angola, *ib.*
- Ching-chi-kong, called by the Dutch Coxinga, defeats the Tartars at sea, *iii.* 735. Driven out of China, goes to Formosa, and drives the Dutch out of it, *ib.* (Y). *Vid.* Coxinga
- Ching-chi-long, called by the Dutch Coxinga, his zeal for the Chinese monarchs, *iii.* 733. His surprising rise and success, *ib.* (S). Wealth and power, *io.* Strenuous loyalty, 734 (T). Rejects the offers of the Tartars, *ib.* (V). Sent prisoner to Peking, *ib.* Submits to the emperor Shunchi, *ibid.*
- Ching-king-may succeeds Coxinga in Formosa, *iii.* 738. Treachery to U-sang hey, 740 (C)
- Ching-ko, a dispute about tablets, decided in her favour, *ii.* 416
- Ching-long chi betrayed by an officer in Ching-tu fu, with his firmness and death, *ii.* 354
- Chi ni-chong, prime minister of the Song, sues for peace to the Mongols, *ii.* 375. Breaks his promise with Pe-y-yen, 376. Leaves the court in anger, *ib.* Is heard of no more, 379
- Chin-hay, a noble general, promoted by Oktay, *ii.* 335. A favourite of Toly-kona, 351. First minister of Quey-yew, 353
- Chin-pasien murders two emperors, and founds the eleventh dynasty, *iii.* 710
- Ching-tang raised to the Chinese throne, *iii.* 683. Founder of the Shang dynasty, *ib.* (K). His excellent reign, 684 (L)
- Ching-ti, a lewd emperor of China, his reign, *iii.* 702
- Ching-ting-vang, emperor of China, his preference of celibacy to marriage, *iii.* 695. And hence surnamed Challe, *ibid.*
- Ching-tin fu, a city in the province of Pecheli, *iii.* 527
- Ching-tsong, his shameful peace with the Lyau-tongians, *iii.* 719. Fondness for the feet of Tau, and artfully reprov'd by the prime minister, *ib.* (Z). Encourages agriculture, &c. *ib.*
- the Chinese name of Timur, *ii.* 395. (See sub Timur)
- Mild reign in China, *iii.* 723
- Ching-tsu, or Yong-lo, drives the Mongols beyond the Desert, and his death, *ii.* 436
- emperor of China, his excellent reign and maxims, *iii.* 725
- Ching-tu-fu betrayed to the Mongols, *ii.* 352. Capital of Se chwen, ruined by the wars, but restored, and its singular bird, *iii.* 548
- Ching-wang, emperor of China, reconciled to his prime minister, *iii.* 689. Reception of foreign embassies, law against the use of wine, and his death, *ib.*
- Chin-in, his brave defence of Ho-chew, with his surrender and death, *ii.* 334
- Chintila, king of the Visigoths, becomes master of all Spain, *vii.* 558. Expels the Jews out of it, *ib.* His edict approved by the council of Toledo, *ib.* (Q). His death, 559
- Chioggia, &c. taken, with Carrario's cruelty, *x.* 222
- Chios Isle reduced by the Genoese, *x.* 563. Revolt there quieted, with the occasion, 569
- Chirigriquan tribe of Hottentots described, *vi.* 385
- Chirsea, city in Karnata, *iii.* 178
- Chitanagar, its fine pagod, *iii.* 138
- Chitor, a famed city in Hindostan, *iii.* 17
- forts seized by Zimer Pata, *iii.* 58. Blown up by sultan Akber, *ib.*
- Chitwa, a river, the boundary of Samorin, *iii.* 164 (R)
- Cho-han gur, Timur's general, his success in Tartary, *ii.* 396
- Choisy sent with Chaumont ambassador to the king of Siam, *iii.* 372. His relation of that monarch's conversion, 373. Rejects lord Faulkon's proposal, 382
- Cholera morbus, or cholicky disorders, how cured in Japan, *iv.* 18, 19
- Cholulans, their conspiracy against Cortez how discovered, and severely punished, *xiv.* 206
- Chong-ping, a traitor, put to death, *ii.* 288
- Chong-ting, emperor of China, his reign, *iii.* 685
- Chong-tong year, what, *ii.* 363 (P)
- Chong-tu, or Yen-king, built by Kublay Khan, *ii.* 366
- Chorlu taken by the Othmans and demolished, *v.* 162 (N)
- Choromandel coasts ravaged by the Maharattas, *iii.* 149
- Chosroes persecutes the Jews, *v.* 514
- II. an equal enemy to them, and afterwards reconciled, he sacrifices the Christians to them, *v.* 515
- Chotkiewitz, successor to Zamoski, defeats the Swedes in Livonia, *xii.* 506, which remains to the conqueror, 507 (H)
- Chova, or prime ministers, in Tonquin, assume the supreme power, *iii.* 446. Become absolute, *ib.* Numerous court, 447. Succession how settled, *ib.* Strength by land and sea, 448. Grievous oppressions, 450. Ceremony of their inauguration, 451. Largeesses to their nobles and subjects, *ibid.*
- Chouchouacha animal described, *xv.* 14
- Choulun, on the Malabar-coasts, described, and the Dutch dislodged from it, *iv.* 14
- Chozar, an imaginary king converted to Judaism, *v.* 323 (L). The occasion and manner of it, *ib.* King Joseph's account of that kingdom, 524
- Chrisna Rajah defeats the king of Visapur, *iii.* 135
- Chril, origin of the knights of, *xiii.* 17
- Christia I. of Oldenburg, elected king of Denmark, after Christopher III. *xii.* 108, *xi.* 96. Proclaimed king of Denmark and Norway, *xii.* 108. Treats Eric with great politeness and humanity, requesting him to reside in Denmark,



mark, but he retires to Pomerania, 109, where he ends his days, *ib.* Relieves the besieged in Wisby, and takes that city, *ib.* Courts the friendship of the Swedes, and his view; is crowned and married to the dowager Dorothea, *ib.* Sends an embassy to Sweden about a peace, 110. Again invades Sweden, and subdues all West Gothland, 113. Among other successes he takes Oeland, *ib.* And the Swedish bishops and nobility form a design of bestowing the crown upon him, *ib.* He fomented their discontents, is privately invited to Sweden, takes Wibourg, and why the diet of Sweden breaks up in very ill temper, *ib.* Holstein and Stormar ceded to that king for a valuable consideration, 114. His moderation with regard to Hamburg, and he composes differences between the people and clergy of the Huns Towns, 115. Obliges the Dominicans to refund the treasure lodged with them by Charles Canutson, *ib.* Divides the money of indulgences levied in Sweden between himself and the pope's legate, *ib.* Composes a difference between Adolphus's two nephews, and also holds a congress at Wismar, with complaints of the Swedes against their new government, *ib.* His imprisoning the archbishop of Upsal, and his retiring privately from Stockholm into Denmark; when returning with a powerful armament the Swedes revolt, 116. Being a second time besieged in Stockholm, he sails to Denmark, *ib.* (A). Releases the archbishop, loading him with civilities, *ib.* His inactivity, *ib.* Rises from the siege of Oeresteen, in West Gothland, and returns to Denmark, 117. Enters Sweden, but is wounded, and the different accounts of his success, 118. Applies himself to the domestic affairs of Denmark and Norway, and setting out on a visit to the pope is invested by the emperor with the country of Dithmarsh, and his reception at Rome, *ib.* He founds an university at Copenhagen, *ib.* Persecutes a certain noble family of Denmark, *ib.* Endeavours to restore the union of Calmar, but though the Swedes refuse to acknowledge him, they promise to chuse his son John, who is associated with him, and crowned at Lunden, *ib.* Deposes and imprisons the bishops, with a decree of the diet abolishing their temporal power, against which severity Luther himself remonstrates to the king, xii. 154. Keeps Sweden in continual alarm, and policy herein, 112, 253. The successes of the Danes, and an error in Puffendorf's account, *ib.* Invited to Sweden, *ib.* Mounts the throne, and unites the three crowns, 254. His conduct, and a dispute about Sleswick determined in his favour, who imposes heavy taxes, *ib.* Is invested in Stockholm, and obliged to abandon it, 255. Agreement between him and Katil, with the conditions, 114 (A). Death, character, and issue, 119, 259.

Christian, prince, his success and severity in Norway and Sweden, xii. 127

II. succeeds his father John, king of Denmark, xii. 135. State of the country at his accession, and his scheme of marrying Isabella, the emperor's daughter, *ib.* Indulgence to his queen, and domestic conduct, 136. Interview between him and Gustavus at Stockholm, with the intention, 137. His arbitrary proceedings with regard to Torbern, *ib.* whose death ensues in spite of all intercession, *ib.* The whole nation disaffected, and a stratagem used to blast Torbern's memory, but with an effect the reverse of what was expected, 138. Instances of his believing himself faulty with regard to the bishop of Odensee, *ib.* Not in the least disturbed, *ib.* A revocation of the pope's bull against him obtained, *ib.* Misled by his favourite Sigibrette, who renders him odious to the nation, by raising the supplies, 139. Proposition to the clergy rejected, and his recourse to foreign assistance, with his queen's portion, *ib.* Renews the war with the Swedes, and the dreadful disorders committed, 140. After three battles the Swedes are defeated by Crumpen, with the loss of the administrator, *ib.* Declared king of Sweden, and after reducing Stockholm is crowned, *ib.* His horrid plan for massacring the Swedish senate at his coronation, which he executes, 141. After this horrible scene, lets loose his troops upon the citizens, with other instances of his brutal cruelty, *ib.* Visits his brother-in-law, and obtains the reversion of Holstein, 142. Abdicates the throne, and endeavours to restore himself, 144. Sails with his family and treasure from Copenhagen, and, after a storm, arrives at Wesel, *ib.* Formally deposed, and deserted by all his friends, with his character and issue, *ib.* Unsuccessful attempt for him, 147. Attempts to recover his crown, but his Flemish fleet is entirely destroyed by the Gyllenstierns, 148. On his dilemma in Sweden, he surrenders and is imprisoned, *ib.* Remod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

nounces all claim to Denmark and Norway, with the consideration, 157. Returns to Sweden with a numerous army, and is defeated by bishop Katil, 255. Defeated by Nils and Steen-sture, 258. Invades Sweden, *ib.* Unbecoming expressions before Stockholm, and the different accounts of the prince, *ib.* (A). Proclaimed at Upsal, and his popularity; is defeated and wounded by Sture before Stockholm, so that Steen-sture is firmly established, *ib.* Invades Sweden, but is defeated by Sture, 265. Ravages of the incensed Christian, and his perfidy against Sture disappointed, *ib.* Sails to Denmark with six Swedish hostages, and the differing accounts, *ib.* (D). Invades Sweden, *ib.* His success, and proclaimed by Gustavus Trolle, *ib.* Stockholm surrenders to him, with the conditions, and he is crowned by Trolle, 266. His diabolical project for exterminating the Swedish nobility, with Trolle's speech, and the execution of several noblemen, *ib.* (A). Brutal cruelty in several instances, 267. Denmark all in arms against him, who abdicates, and flies into Germany, 274. Designs on Bremen frustrated, though the Swedes are something unsuccessful, 332. Representation in a diet by ambassadors from him, 149. Visiting the emperor at Rotemburg, receives the investiture of Dythmarsia, Stormar and Holstein, now formed into a duchy, xi. 110 (Z). And at his son's marriage institutes the order of the elephant, *ib.* sub fin. not.

Christian III. elected to the Danish throne in the room of his father Frederic I. xii. 150. Is crowned at Odensee, 150, 152. But refusing to sign the peace with Lubec, that regency conspire against his life, 153. Invades Norway, and is crowned king, 154. Confession of faith offered to the inferior clergy of Denmark, with an alternative, *ib.* Discovers the emperor's intrigues against him by an intercepted letter of the governante of the Netherlands, 152. Negotiations between the emperor and him miscarry, 155. Manifestoes, and his formidable armament against the Netherlands frustrated by a storm, 156. Uneasiness this armament caused to Henry VIII. of England, *ib.* (A). A peace with the Netherlands, also between the emperor and Denmark, *ib.* Dismembers Holstein from the crown in favour of his two brothers, which measure, though unpopular, had no bad consequences for a long time, 156. Declaration of his right in his coin, and Gustavus's complaint, but without redress, 157. His reign, its happy conclusion, death, and character, *ib.*

IV. proclaimed king of Denmark and Norway after his father Frederic II. and a regency appointed, xii. 164. The young prince's promising qualities, and he marries Anna Catherina of Brandenburg, 165. Enters into the Protestant league, xi. 150. Divides his army, which the Austrians do also, 213. At first rejects the emperor's monitorial letters for evacuating Holstein, with the reason, and the emperor's reply, 219 (D), but at length withdraws his troops, *ib.* Takes Calmar by storm, and lays siege to the citadel, when it is raised by the defeat of the Danes, xii. 165. Interview between him and Gustavus Adolphus, 166. Chosen head of the Protestant league, *ib.* Obliges Tilly to raise the siege of Neenburg, but Wallenstein joining the count, turns the scales, *ib.* Defeated by Tilly, 167. That king's memorable retreat with his cavalry, *ib.* On Mansfeldt's death affairs fall into disorder, with the rapid progress of Tilly, joined by Wallenstein, in Holstein, and the king defeated a second time, but gains some advantages, which are counterbalanced by the enemy, *ib.* Defeated at Wolgast, and the superiority of the Imperialists every where after, *ib.* Proposals for peace, which is concluded, 168. Offers his mediation to terminate the differences between the emperor and Gustavus, but comes to nothing, 169. A vast and chimerical project formed by him, which is defeated by Tromp, *ib.* Invests Gottenburg by sea and land, 170. Count Horn raises the siege, *ib.* An embassy from him to the emperor, and count Galas ordered to his assistance, *ib.* France and Holland offering their mediation, defers giving an answer, *ib.* His vigilance prevents Horn's farther progress, *ib.* He gains an advantage over the Swedish fleet, 171. Alliance between him and the court of Versailles, *ib.* Death and character, 172 (A) (B)

V. succeeds his father Frederic III. king of Denmark, xii. 187. Differences between him and the duke of Gottorp, with an interview at Rendsburg, *ib.* On advice of the defeat of the Swedes by Brandenburg, makes a peremptory demand on the duke of Gottorp, who complies, 188. Declares war against Sweden, and hostilities commence at sea, 189. Has an interview with the elector of



- of Brandenburg at Gadesbach, and their operations concerted, *ib.* He forces the strong post of Damgarten, *ib.* Dispute with Lubec settled, *ib.* Orders levies, and imposes a proportional poll-tax, &c. *ib.* Demolishes the fortifications of Tonningen, *ib.* Various conjectures on several great persons imprisoned by him, 190. Honours Tromp with the order of the elephant, 192. Returns to Copenhagen, and his transactions there, 195. Preparations for prosecuting the war with Sweden, and the operations on both sides, 196. Lays siege to Malmoe, but after great loss is obliged to raise it, 197. On 5000 men falling into his hands, 198, endeavours to raise the siege of Christianstadt, but fails, it is forced to surrender in sight of the king, through an error of Arensdorff, who is put under arrest, 199. Enters into an alliance with Brandenburg and the bishop of Munster, at which the Dutch take umbrage, 200. Dispels their suspicions by a declaration, *ib.* Interview between him and the elector of Brandenburg, with his imposing a heavy tax on each plough in Holstein, *ib.* Applies himself to the affairs of the empire and terminating differences, *ib.* At Copenhagen he arrests two Lubec ships, which are at last released, 201. Dispute with the Dutch, 202. A treaty concluded between him and the Dutch, with his death and character, 203
- Christian VI. succeeds his father Frederic IV. king of Denmark, xii. 204. His wife alterations, and abolishing a public farm, with his noble saying on the occasion, *ib.* A short view of his wife policy, death, and great character, 205
- duke of Lunenburg renews the alliance with France and Sweden, xi. 254
- I. elector of Saxony, introduces Calvinism, xv. 466
- II. whose guardian, the duke of Weimar, again introduces Lutheranism, xv. 466
- of Mecklenburg Schwerin, his extraordinary character, xv. 537. On account of disputes with his duchess and the nobility, he travels to France and turns Roman Catholic, 538. Re-marries, with his unhappiness here, and disappointment in travelling incog. to Rome, to see Kircher, *ib.* His country made the seat of war, *ib.* Goes to the Hague, and dies there, without lawful issue, 539
- Lewis of Mecklenburg, on his brother Charles's death, makes a fundamental convention with his nobility, xv. 445
- children forbid to be taught to read, i. 396
- king Most, who first had the title, ix. 179
- religion, by whom first introduced into Denmark, xi. 686. By whom restored in Denmark, 693
- church greatly disunited and weakened in Mohammed's time, i. 17. Sadly persecuted in Egypt by the khalifs, 385. Heavily taxed by Al Mansur, 390. Forbid to publish their account of it, 392. Disputes about keeping of Easter, *ib.* All crosses on church-tops ordered to be taken down, 396
- monument digged up in the capital of Shen-si, iii. 547, and 728. Its inscription, 547 (L)
- embassy into China well received, iii. 712
- name becomes odious in India through the Portuguese management, iv. 157
- Christianity favoured early by a Chinese emperor, iii. 546 (L). When and by whom first planted in China, 567. Utterly suppressed and replanted by the Jesuits, *ib.* Imperial edicts against it, 571. Its sad state throughout India, *ib.* When first introduced into Japan, iv. 11. Its vast success whence, *ib.* (M). Introduced into Ton-king, but proscribed and persecuted, iii. 446
- when first preached in Sweden, and by whom, xii. 227. Persecuted, *ib.*
- Christians persecuted by the Chinese Bonzas, iii. 569. Legendary miracles wrought in their favour, *ib.* (N). Persecuted in China and India, 571. Their name detested by the Indians, *ib.* Persecutions raised against them, 713
- one hundred thousand invade Syria, i. 408. Successes against the Arabs, *ib.* and banished out of Japan, iv. 62, and 67. Their surprising constancy and sufferings during forty years, *ib.* Desperate defence and final extinction, *ib.* Forbid to ride on horses, only on asses and mules, i. 471. Obtain a mission into Siam, iii. 381. Persecuted by the khalif Al Hakem, i. 626. By him forced to bear a mark of infamy, *ib.* Rebuild their churches in Syria and Egypt, *ib.* and 628
- in Africa, various sorts, v. 661
- of St. Thomas, differ from those of St. Peter, iii. 165. Who, and where situate, vi. 170
- Christians, twenty thousand, lost in seven months in Spain, viii. 210
- Christiansburg fort, on the Gold coast, when and by whom built, vi. 673. Its fertile soil, 674. Natives, and the in-land described, *ib.*
- Christianstadt taken by the Swedes, xii. 366
- surprised by Charles Gustavus, the citadel surrenders to the Danes, and other advantages follow; upon which the king of Sweden challenges Christian to single combat, who declines it, xii. 316
- Christiern of Denmark is crowned by Bugenhagius, a Lutheran minister, x. 85. (See Christian)
- duke of Brunswic Halberstadt, one of Frederick's allies, is defeated by count d'Anhalt, xi. 207, with his horrid ravages in Westphalia, *ib.* Some account of him and his profligate army, *ib.* (Z)
- Christina, at six years of age, proclaimed queen of Sweden, after the death of her father Gustavus Adolphus, under regents, xii. 335. Her education committed to tutors, and claimed by John Casimir, prince palatine, xi. 231 (N). Besieged in Stockholm is forced to capitulate, and confined, but released, xii. 262. Determines to secure the succession of Sweden, 353. In a speech to the senate, she declares her intention against marriage, *ib.* Conjectures about her reasons for this, *ib.* (A). Crowned, 354. Affectation of learning, and vanity her foible, *ib.* The supposed reasons for transferring the crown to her successor, *ib.* Still persists in her resolution, but consents through representations to postpone her resigning, 355. Had like to be drowned, *ib.* Suddenly resumes her intentions, *ib.* Abdicates the throne, and a revenue allotted her, *ib.* Her design of settling the reversion of the crown on count de Tor, and making him a duke, relinquished, 356. Unprecedented affront to the Portuguese envoy, *ib.* (A). Quits Sweden and goes to Rome; reception and confirmation by the pope in St. Peter's, with some reflections on the event, and her character, *ib.* Her ambition revives, and she becomes a candidate for the crown of Poland, xii. 356 (B)
- consort of Uladisslaus II. her ambition, and representation to the Polish states against the princes, that duke's brothers, xii. 463
- Christinaux Indians described, xiv. 566
- (Creek) Indians. See Creeks
- Christodolus, the Egyptian patriarch, tortured by the revoltors, i. 661. Buys his life with a vast sum, *ib.* His death, and his name expunged for that of Cyril, 667
- Christopher, St. or Christoval de Laguna, metropolis of the isle of Tenerif, vi. 143
- de Gama, sent into Abyssinia, vi. 260. See Gama
- St. taken by the English, ix. 470
- I. chosen king of Denmark after his brother Abel, and the states reasons for it, xii. 36. War between him and Henry Meldorp, in which the king is defeated, *ib.* But Meldorp retires out of the kingdom, *ib.* A war between Christopher and the princes of Holstein, *ib.* Dispute between him and the bishop of Lunden, with the conduct of the latter, 37. Obtains the confirmation of the sovereignty of the Vandal country from the pope, but the people opposing it are defeated, &c. *ib.* On Valdemar of Sleswic's death, a quarrel arises between him and his son Eric, *ib.* Sleswick falls an easy prey to the king, 38. While war is preparing on both sides, dies, with the different accounts about this event, and his character, 39
- II. succeeds to the Danish throne after Eric VIII. by abject supplication and corruption, xii. 48. Form of a particular oath administered to him, by which it appears that the regal authority was much limited, *ib.* Recovers the citadel of Hameren, 50. Contrary to his oath receives the propenning, quarrels with the clergy, and the occasion, with the causes of discontent, *ib.* Abdicates, and makes several unsuccessful attempts to recover the crown, *ib.* Measures for recovering the Danish crown, and Brandenburg's efforts ineffectual, 51. His successes, and the Danes seek a change of government, 52. His son Eric rescued out of prison, *ib.* Is restored, his party reunited, and all differences removed, with the crown lands almost entirely mortgaged, *ib.* His misconduct, *ib.* Quarrel between him and Gerhard of Holstein, in which the king is defeated, 53. Made prisoner, but soon set at liberty and dies, with his character and bitter lampoons against him, 54 (B). Death also of the queen his mother, 71
- III. chosen king of Denmark, by the three kingdoms, in the room of the deposed Eric X. and made protector of Sweden and Norway, xii. 103. His edict for surrendering



- surrendering fortresses to the senate as the supreme power, 104. His solemn promises at the diet of Wibourg, and in a diet of the three kingdoms at Abroga, *ib.* On complaints against Eric's piracies from Gothland, he visits him there, and they part good friends, 105. Crowned in Norway and Denmark, and attaches himself particularly to the latter, 106. Salutory domestic regulations, and goes incog. to the congress of German princes at Wismar, with the embarrassment of this account, and his designs against the Hans Towns, *ib.* Marries the daughter of the margrave of Brandenburg, with a large portion, but never paid, *ib.* Murmurs of his subjects, and for what, *ib.* Studies popularity, and the good of his people, *ib.* Is shipwrecked, with the loss of vast treasures, 107. While preparing to hold a diet in Sweden, he dies without issue, and his character, *ib.* (A). Great disputes in the three kingdoms about a successor, *ib.* Resolution of the Danish senate, and they make an offer of their crown to Adolphus of Holstein, who refuses it, *ib.*
- Christopher of Bavaria, the Danes invite him to accept of their crown, with their complaint against Eric, xii. 101. 249, 250. The states insist on making elections absolutely free from the sovereign's will, *ib.* (A). 102 (A). Eric's conduct on this occasion, *ib.*
- becomes a tyrant, xii. 250. Alienates the affection of the nation by all his measures, and his death, *ibid.*
- Eric the VIIIth's brother, his conduct, and king's charge against him to the states, xii. 44. Restored to Halland, *ib.*
- of Oldenburg's remonstrance to duke Christian, with the answer and reply, xii. 150
- Christopher's, St. Island, account of, xv. 238. Settlement by the English and French, who shamefully massacre the natives, 239. Invaded by the Savages, *ib.* Proofs of the English being better acquainted with the West-Indies than the French, 240. A partition and league between both, *ib.* who are driven out by the Spaniards, *ib.* but return, and the flourishing state of the English partition, 241. English dispossessed, *ib.* but reconquered, *ib.* Dreadful earthquake there, 242. Restored to the French by the treaty of Ryſwick, 244. Descent on it by the French, but repulsed, 245. Ceded to Great Britain by the treaty of Utrecht, *ib.* The article about it vindicated, *ib.* Acts of parliament passed in its favour and St. Nevis, *ib.* Raise their coin, with the council's opinion about it, 246. Secretary of state's letter on it, *ib.* Governor's salary settled, and order against receiving gifts, *ib.* Its produce, a silver mine, and its forts, 247. Quantity of sugar, *ib.*
- Chronicon Arab of Cambridge, when, and by whom probably wrote, i. 559 (F)
- Chrysoloras, of Bizantium, invited to Florence, xiii. 355
- Chu, or Kong-vu, his rise and success, ii. 424. Embarks over the Kyang, 425. Success against the Mungls in Kyang-nan, *ib.* Further success and strict discipline, 426. Success against Chen-yew-lyang, and defeats him, 429. Burns a hundred of his ships, and kills him in a new engagement, *ib.* Proclaimed king, 430. His speech to his generals, success, and new conquests, 432. Palaces built, and his mean extraction, *ib.* (B). Character and successes, his manifesto to the Chinese against the Mongls, and is proclaimed emperor, 433. Founds Tay-ming dynasty, under the title of Hong-vu, *ib.* (C). Vid. iii. 724. His excellent government, 725. Grief for his son, and some of his laws, *ib.* (G)
- Chucupuya, some account of that country and people, xiv. 408
- Chucuy-tu province, submits to Inca Lloque, their kind reception, and the effects on others and himself, xiv. 381
- Chudderers, in Malabar, a kind of priests, iii. 216.
- Chui, a river of the Mongl Eluths, ii. 250
- Chunca-cunayci, the meaning of that Peruvian word, xiv. 378 (C)
- Chung-king, the fourth emperor of the first Chinese dynasty, iii. 680. Wisely avoids the artifice of Ys, but dies soon after, *ib.*
- Chung-tſon recalled from his long exile, iii. 713. Crowned emperor and poisoned, *ib.*
- Chu-puwha, his gallant defence of Whay-gan-fu, ii. 425. Bravery and character, *ib.* (G)
- Chuquimanca, a lord of four valleys, his bloody war with Capac Yupanqui, xiv. 403. Its continuance differently told, *ib.* At last surrenders, and how, *ib.*
- Church, schism in it, when, ix. 42. Still continues, xi. 63. How finally terminated by the emperor, 70
- Gallican, observes a neutrality between the Basil and Ferrara council, x. 13
- head of, what emperor acknowledged such, x. 634
- of England, predominant in Maryland, xv. 108
- Chu-tſay yelu made prime minister to Oktay, ii. 334. Salutory advice to Jenghiz Khan, 236. Undermined by envious lords, 337. His singular generosity, *ib.* For the rest, see under Yelu
- Chu-ven assists to restore the emperor to his throne, iii. 715. Rebels and murders him, and founds the fourteenth dynasty, but murdered by his eldest son, 716
- Chwang-tſong, set on the Chinese throne, founds the fifteenth dynasty of China, iii. 716. His fatal avarice and death, *ib.*
- Syang founds the fourth Chinese dynasty of Tſin, and defeats a powerful confederacy, iii. 697
- Chwang-wang, emperor of China, unable to reduce his tributaries, iii. 692
- Ciarpellone, why arrested and put to death by Sforza, xiii. 404
- Cicogne, a Jew; sets Frankfort on fire, v. 371
- Cicilia ravaged by the Seljuks, i. 660
- Cil-manci river, in the kingdom of Adel, vii. 326
- Cinaira province described, xiv. 436
- Cinnamon of Ceylon, excellent and plentiful, iv. 485. Its tree described, *ib.* Its various kinds, *ib.* (U). Yearly product, *ib.* in fin. not.
- Cinque Mars. That favourite's strange answer to his friends, who advised his assiduity near the king, ix. 404. Quarrels with the cardinal Richelieu, and resolves to attempt the latter's ruin, *ib.* Joins the duke of Bouillon and Orleans, with the cardinal's remarkable words to the former at parting, 405. Arrested upon a plot, 407. Convicted and beheaded, *ib.*
- Circulation of the blood long since known among the Chinese, iii. 599. 649
- Circumcelliones, heretics so called, who, ix. 635
- Circumcision, why practised among the Abissinians, vi. 233. Countenanced by St. Paul, 234. Why practised on the females, *ib.*
- Cities, Imperial, their history, xv. 436. Distinction into free, mixt, and municipal, *ib.* For the general affairs of the empire, and for convocation, 437. Protected by the emperor, *ib.* Those of the bench of the Rhine, *ib.* Of the bench of Suabia, 440
- Civdad Real, capital of Chiapa, described, xiv. 439
- Clamcoets, description of that people, xv. 5. Their fine country, *ib.*
- Clare, St. its nuns escorted to the duke of Savoy's dominions, xiv. 26 (B)
- Clark, governor of the Bahamas, murdered by the Spaniards, xv. 270
- Classen, desperate resolution of that vice-admiral, xi. 475
- Claudius, or Asnaſ-segued, the 88th king of Abissinia, vi. 253. Assisted by the Portuguese, and succeeds his father, 260 (T). Excellent character and learning, *ib.* Discountenances the Roman missionaries, various successes against the Moors, assisted by Christopher de Gama, *ib.* Joins the Portuguese in the Jewish mountains, 265. His grand reception, contest with the patriarch Bermudez, and forced submission to him, *ib.* sub (Z). Endeavours to slide away from him, 266. His strange behaviour against the Moors, and generosity to the victorious Portuguese, 267 (A). Falls out afresh with them, 268, yet forced to submit to him, *ib.* 269 (B). Resentment against him, *ib.* Treacherous designs against him, 270. Forced to call in the Portuguese to his assistance, 271. Extreme concern at the ruin of his provinces, *ib.* Progress through the empire, and fresh generosity to the Portuguese, 273. Reception of bishop Oviedo, *ib.* Moderation towards him, *ib.* (F). Invaded by the Moors, 274. Abandoned by his dastardly troops, brave defence, death, and memory, why unjustly blasted, *ib.* His confession of faith, 275 (G)
- Clement III. succeeds pope Gregory VIII. ix. 606. He sends a legate to the emperor, who takes the cross, *ib.* His bull of exemption to Scotland, 607. Sends a legate to France, and the design, *ib.* Gives the investiture of Sicily to Tancred, in prejudice of the emperor's son Henry, *ib.* Dies, *ib.*
- IV. chosen pope after Urban IV. ix. 641. With an account of him, *ib.* (N). Charles of Anjou's arrival at Rome, in favour of whom the pope exerts himself, *ib.* His proceedings, creates Charles of Anjou vicar of the empire, with the occasion, 642. His intrigues for the Guelphs against Conradine, and proceedings, *ib.* Death, *ib.* Clement



Clement V. chosen pope, who transfers his court to Avignon, ix. 658 (A). Crowned at Lyons, and his horse led by king Philip le Bel and his brothers, 247. Fatal accident at the procession, with the steps taken by him in favour of the king, and the papal residence fixed at Avignon, ib. Philip's son Lewis takes the title of king of Navarre, and his daughter Isabella's marriage with Edward II. of England, ib. Disappointed by the pope of the Imperial crown for his brother Charles of Valois, and Lyons annexed to France, ib. Prosecution of the Knights Templars, with their origin and character, ib. Resides in France, ix. 658 (A). Revokes Boniface's bull against France, with other concessions, &c. and sends a legate to quiet the troubles in Italy, who is expelled from Bologna, ib. Excommunicates the Greek emperor Andronicus, ib. Consecrates bishops to be sent into Tartary, with his answer to the king of France about Boniface, 659. Suppresses the Knights Templars, ib. (B). Sends a legate and army against Dulcinus an heretic, who is burnt, ib. Stratagem to avoid solicitation for transporting the empire to France on Albert's murder, ib. Removes to Avignon, and excommunicates the Venetians for seizing on Ferrara, 660. Confirms Henry of Luxemburg's election to the empire, with the condition, ib. Recovers Ferrara, after defeating the Venetians, and gives the investiture of the Two Sicilies to Robert, son of king Charles, ib. Annuls all transactions between Boniface and France, ib. Holds a council at Vienne, by which the suppression of the Templars is approved, with other canons, &c. 661. He grants indulgencies against the Turks, ib. His transactions and death on the road to Bourdeaux, ib.

— VI. chosen pope, and his character by Petrarch, ix. 674 (G). 679. Excuses himself from an invitation to Rome, and appoints a jubilee there, with his proceedings against the emperor, and complaints against Edward III. of England, with the answer, ib. Excommunicating the emperor, ib. endeavours in vain to conclude a peace between France and England, 675. Publishes a bull in favour of the Jews, 676. Embassy from the Greek emperor to him, 677. Excommunicates the archbishop of Milan for seizing on Bologna, 678. Treats the emperor's advances to a reconciliation with a high hand, and the articles demanded by the pope, xi. 45 (M). who excommunicates the emperor with all his adherents, and the dreadful imprecations in a bull against him, 46 (N). Dies, ix. 679

— VII. chosen pope in the room of Adrian VI. with an account of him, x. 74. Refuses to engage in the dispute between France and the emperor, ib. Seeks an accommodation with the emperor, 75, but his offers being refused, the pope enters into a confederacy against him, who seizes the Milanese, ib. He concludes an alliance with the king of France, now returned home, and with the Venetians, ib. Surprized in Rome by the Neapolitans, and compelled to a truce, but refuses to fulfil its articles, &c. 78. Attacks Naples, but concludes a truce with the viceroy, and why, ib. Capitulates with the prince of Orange, and detained prisoner in St. Angelo, the plague ravaging Rome, 79. Escapes from St. Angelo, ib. Solicited by Henry of England for a divorce from queen Catharine, and the motives, ib. (F). Excuses himself from a league with France, and appoints the affair of a divorce to be examined in England, ib. The pope enters into a private negotiation with the emperor, 80. His double dealing, and taking to himself the judgment of the divorce, concludes a treaty with Charles at Barcelona, ib. Greatly offended at the emperor, and why, 81. Nuncios sent to Scotland to oppose Lutheranism, and their success, 82. Has a conference with Francis at Marseilles, and excommunicates the king of England and his subjects, 83. Why acceptable to the French court, ix. 229. Is distressed at Rome, with his plot against Sienna frustrated, and agreeing to an accommodation, xiii. 514. His pusillanimity and inconsistency, 515. Distress encreases, ib. A suspension of arms concluded, with the pope's imprudence, 516. Disgraceful accommodation with his enemies, what, 518. The pope delivered, 519. His backwardness in acceding to the league, and policy therein, what, 521. Applies to the French king, with the latter's insincerity and policy, 529. Cruelty and despotism of him and his creatures in Florence, 532. After that pope's compromise with the duke of Ferrara, a confederacy signed, and its terms, 535. Negotiation and agreement between him and Francis I. about Catherine de Medicis's marriage, and an interview proposed at Nizza be-

tween them, 536. His death soon after, and character, ib. x. 83

Clement VII. antipope, proposes to submit to a general council which Urban rejects, ix. 696. His bull for assisting Smyrna against Tamerlane, 697. Dies, whom Peter de Luna succeeds as Benedict XIII. 698

— VIII. succeeds pope Innocent IX. with an account of him, x. 125 (O). Publishes a bull against duelling, and espouses the league, ib. Refuses Henry of France absolution, with the pope's declaration, and his swearing to it in the consistory, ib. Bulls about the Jews, ib. Dismisses Henry's ambassador, who prints his journal, with a spirited remonstrance, at Venice, 126. Receives an embassy from the patriarch of Alexandria, ib. After public supplications, &c. he barefoot grants to Henry the IVth absolution, with the terms, ib. Receives an embassy from Russia and Livonia, with the report about the Russians, and forgery of the Alexandrian embassy, ib. Reception of the legate in France, and the French ambassador in Rome, ib. Sends an army to Hungary against the Turks, who are defeated before Gran, ib. On Alphonso II. of Ferrara dying, and Caesar D'Este succeeding, that pope claims the duchy, after which Caesar renounces his pretensions, with the terms, 127. Two intermarriages performed by the pope, between Spain and Austria, 128. Receives an embassy from Persia, with a squabble about precedence, and the issue, 129. Composes by a bull the dissensions among the papists in England, and sends troops against the Turks, with the unsuccessful siege of Canisa, 130. Refuses to canonize Loyola, though he does cardinal Charles Borromeo, ib. Allows the dispute about grace and free-will to be freely canvassed, with the state of that affair, ib. (R). Edict against the Jews, v. 596. Death and character, promotion of cardinals, x. 131

— VIII. antipope, on Benedict's deposition, chosen, ix. 714

— IX. after much caballing succeeds Innocent X. with an account of him, x. 156 (G). Abolishes some taxes, and orders the secularization of some monastery lands in Venice, but opposed in the Milanese and Naples, ib. Offers his mediation for a peace between France and Spain, and an alliance against the Turks to little effect, though a treaty is concluded at Aix la Chapelle, ib. Moderation with regard to his relations, and he quiets the differences betwixt the Molinists and Jansenists, with mutual concessions of the pope and France, 157. Sends a fleet, and prevails on others to do so, for assisting Candia, ib. Grants a dispensation to the king of Portugal for marrying his brother's wife, and acknowledges him king, ib. Applies to re-establish his finances, and complains of the ignorance of the prelates; but while revolving on a remedy dies, with his character, 158. Obstinate factions in the conclave, ib.

— X. elected pope after Clement IX. with an account of him, x. 158. Adopts cardinal Paluzzi as his nephew, and advances his family, ib. He assumes absolute power, and seeks by all means to establish them, 159. Canonizes Pius V. and sends a subsidy to the Poles, ib. Bad correspondence between Poland and Rome, with the occasion, ib. Dispute with the French king about Jus Patronatus, and an edict by the king in defence of it, ib. Embassy at Rome from Muscovy, and the Pope dies, 160. His answer a few hours before to Altieri's importunity, with his character, ib.

— XI. succeeds pope Innocent XII. with a rare example of modesty, and account of him, x. 168. Resolves to execute justice with exactness, and appears to act with vigour, ib. Grants the investiture of Naples to Philip V. of Spain, and embraces a neutrality about the Spanish succession, 169. On the French and Imperialists entering Italy, a legate à latere is sent to Philip, ib. An edict published at Rome against luxury, with desolating inundations and earthquakes, ib. Methods for retrieving these calamities, and other abuses, ib. The Imperialists and French without leave entering the pope's territories, soon withdraw, ib. Rupture between the pope and the emperor, 171. Raises an army to protect his dominions, with his violent proceedings, but the former obliged to a peace, 172. Suppresses Port Royal monastery as a nest of heresy, and condemns Quessel's New Testament, 173

— James, a particular account of that monk's assassinating king Henry III. and is killed on the spot, ix. 293 (G). Cried up as a martyr, and pope Sixtus V. magnifies the zeal of this villain, ib. sub not.



- Clement, a Lubeck pirate, Rantzaw's success against him, and his catastrophe, xii. 151
- Clementine party which favoured Anjou possess Naples, ix. 695
- Clermont, Annet de, 57th grand master of Malta, his death and character, vii. 512
- , Urban holds the famous council there, with the two points discussed, x. 658
- Clergy, secular, of Poland, account of them and their character, xii. 441
- Cleves. See Juliers
- and Juliers, fresh differences about them, which the emperor takes under his protection, and the consequences, xi. 513
- Clijji, a tribe of the Afghans, destroyed by sultan Mahmud, ii. 649 Their way of living, 650
- Clinton, admiral, his descent in Bretagne, but quickly obliged to re-embark, ix. 247
- Clive, his first appearance at Madras in India, iv. 369. Brave defence of Arkhot, and success against the French, ib. His character vindicated in several respects, 370. Takes Mons. d'Anteuil prisoner, ib. Number of prisoners made from the French, sails back for England, a cessation of arms, 371. Made governor of Fort St. David's, and success with admiral Watson against the pirate Angria, 372. Also at the retaking Calcut, ib. Defeats the Nabob, and forces him to peace, with its articles, 373. Success against the French at Chandernagore, 374
- Cloak, Mohammed's, becomes a state garment among the khalifs, i. 92. Burned by Holagu, ib.
- another rich one given by him to prince Yohanna, i. 94
- Clock-work, a clumsy piece much admired by the Persians, ii. 630
- Clock, the first erected at Seville, viii. 73.
- Clusterfeven, its convention, xv. 621
- Clotaire, by Childebert's advice, murders their nephews, and they share their dominions, viii. 624. His cruelty, who, with Childebert, finishes the conquest of Burgundy, while Thierri acts against the Visigoths, ib. Gets himself acknowledged his nephew's successor, 627. Involved in a war foreign and domestic, and by whom fomented, 628. His issue, and the behaviour of his eldest son, ib. Is sole monarch of the Franks, with his eldest son's insurrection, 629. The latter, and his family, ordered to be burnt by the father, ib. His death and character, ib. His dominions divided by lot among his four sons, and the empire of the Franks continues in peace some years, ib. Invasion of the Huns, 630
- II. absolute master of the three kingdoms of the Franks, viii. 647. Changes his conduct, and becomes mild, ib. Defeated by Bertoalde, duke of the Saxons, and narrowly escapes, ib. Death and character, 648.
- III. succeeds Clovis II. in Burgundy and Neustria, with an account of his reign and ministers, viii. 653. Dies, ib.
- Clotildis, Clovis's queen, her prudence prevents disputes among her children, viii. 621. Her children invade Burgundy, and murder Sigismund its monarch, 622. Clodomir slain, by which the Franks are inspired, ib.
- Clove trade, when first brought to Amboyna, iv. 487. How gathered and cured, ib. Why destroyed in the Moluccas, 488
- Clovis succeeds his father Childeric in Gallia, viii. 617. Defeats Syagrius the Roman governor, and substitutes his own power in Gaul, ib. Mild government after reducing the Roman power in Gaul, and his publishing the Salique law, 618. With a succinct account of this matter, ib. (A). He defeats Basin, king of Thuringia, and makes his subjects tributary, 618. Espouses Clotildis, niece of Gondobaud, king of Burgundy, 619. With some account of her and her progenitors, ib. (B). Becomes a Christian, ib. Account of his baptism, ib. (C). The story of the holy vial canvassed, ib. sub not. He reduces Armorica, 620. Defeats Alaric near Poitiers, and the latter slain, ib. Beaten before Arles by Theodoric, and a general peace made, ib. A diadem and robe sent him by Anastasius, emperor of Constantinople, ib. Prompted by ambition to destroy the petty kings of the Franks, ib. Makes Paris the seat of his empire, ib. Some other acts, with his death and character, 621. His dominions shared among his four sons, ib.
- the last of Chilperic's sons by queen Andouera, murdered, with his mother, by Fredegonde's means, viii. 635. Continual disputes between the three kings, ib.
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Clovis II. king of Neustria and Burgundy, account of his reign, viii. 651. Injustice done his memory by the monks, ib. Account of his lunacy, 652 (N). Refutation of this story, ib. in fin. Lying judgment about his weakness, ib. Death, with some account of his character, 653
- III. eldest son of Thierri, bears the title of king of the Franks, viii. 656. On his demise, Childebert II. his brother, succeeds, ib.
- Cnutson appointed regent and tutor to Berger, king of Sweden, xii. 236
- Coango river, in Kongo, described, vi. 426
- Coanza coasts cruelly ravaged by the Giagas, vi. 416 and 489. Extreme rapidity of a cascade and islands, ib.
- or Quansa river, in Africa, v. 697
- Coaqui, its capital, where situated, with its riches and plenty, xiv. 283. Its climate unhealthy, and a loathsome disease among the Spaniards, 284
- Coast, Gold, (see Gold) vi. 635, & seq.
- , Cape, on the Gold Coast, vi. 664. Chief settlement of the English described, and Bosman's description of its fort, &c. 665. Disadvantageous situation, ib. English servants, their salaries, ib. Company's gardens, and country near them, 666. Two other forts not far off, ib.
- Coban, a Japanese gold coin, described, how marked and valued, iv. 26.
- Cochaquan, a tribe of Hottentots, described, vi. 384
- Cochi, how that Gonfalonier is drove mad, xiii. 413
- Cochin Chinese of Champa described, iii. 419
- kingdom, on the Malabar coasts, iii. 165. Jews settled there, and the inhabitants have swelled legs, ib. The king a vassal to the Dutch, ib. The capital described, ib. His palace and residence, and why diminished of its ancient splendor, ib.
- Old, its bazar and commerce, iii. 165. Its king makes alliances with other Portuguese against the Samorin, iv. 117. Burnt by the Samorin, 119
- Coco-tree of the Maldives described, and its various uses, iv. 144 (R)
- Cocos island in the South-sea described, v. 17
- Codbuka's haughty answer to the Crusaders in Antioch, i. 682, and strange defeat, 683
- Cod-fishing on the great bank of Newfoundland described, xiv. 550. Different kinds of cod, ib. Lesser banks, and its particular fish, ib.
- Codingus's vindication of the Abissinian baptism, and reflection on the different accounts of it, vi. 242
- Codrington, deputy-governor of Barbadoes, xv. 182. Governor of St. Christopher's, on the Revolution, ib. The English how dispossessed by the French, ib. But re-conquer it, ib. His operations at the siege of Basseterre in St. Christopher's, 243. Is taken, 244. Death, and succeeded by his son as governor, with the latter's great character, ib. Reduces the French part, ib.
- defends Nevis against the French, xv. 251. Strength of his expedition against St. Christopher's, 252. Governor of Antigua, his great character, 257. Descent on Guadaloupe, and why unsuccessful, 258
- Cœlicolæ, a new sect in Africa, suppressed by Honorius, and falsely supposed to be Jews, v. 511 (I)
- Coen, (Peter) the Dutch admiral, defeated by the English in India, iv. 420. Retires to Amboyna, ib. Destroys the city of Jacatra, 421. Lays out New Batavia, ib. His second voyage into India successful, 424. Brave defence of Batavia, 426. His death, ib.
- Cœur (James) the king's financier, one of the richest subjects in France, some account of him, ix. 158, sub not.
- Coffee first brought into Java, iv. 466. Its wonderful growth there, and when first brought into Arabia, 467 (E). Forbidden to go out of Egypt, vi. 35
- Cogden desert described, vi. 102
- Coglio, a priest, sent to queen Zingha's court, and ill success, vi. 513
- Cognac, treaty of, between Francis, Clement, and the Venetians, x. 322
- Cohanah, a learned rabbi, of the family of Eli, v. 503 (H)
- Cohen-zedek sent to preside at Sora, v. 526, sub (Q)
- Coil, or Kali-koulán, the principality in Malabar, and Dutch factory there, iii. 166
- Coin, when first stamped by the khalifs, i. 338. Its progress, inscriptions, &c. and why disliked by the Moslems, ib. Othman, introduced by Orkhan, v. 155
- Coinage, base, how redressed by the queen of Denmark, xii. 94 (A)
- Coia circle, in Archangel, government, and its chief places, xiii. 7
- 5 N
- Cola,



- Cola, a school-master, some account of him, by whose means Galeazzo was murdered, xiii. 426
- Colan, a town in Quito, xiv. 456
- Colapissas savages, where seated, xv. 19
- (Aquelou-pissas) savages, where, xv. 45
- Colazzo dies of joy at the sight of captain Diaz, iv. 113
- Colbert made chief director of the finances, with his character, and has the greatest share of power, ix. 450. Tellier and Louvois promoted, all which reflects honour on the king, *ib.* His management of the finances, 451. His character and Louvois's, by whose means matters are brought to bear in France, 452. Promotes several useful arts, 511. Erects a West-India company, with the clamours raised against him, and marriage encouraged, 512. Manufactures and military improvements, with the marine, commerce, and navigation, increased, *ib.* Number of royal ships in France in the year 1681, with their expences, 513 (A). Improves the finances, *ib.* His death and character, 466 (A).
- Croissy, M. de, sent from Lewis to London, xi. 610
- Colepeper, lord, governor of Virginia, brings over a commission for trying Bacon's followers, and instructions unhinging the constitution, xv. 370. Several acts passed, and his salary greatly enhanced, 371. His arbitrary proceedings in the coin, and how disappointed, *ib.* Gives fresh provocation, and a rebellion why prevented, *ib.* But reformed by the assembly, *ib.* Caution and equity in the Northern-Neck affairs, *ib.* Opposition of the Virginians against the grant of the Northern-Neck to him, ineffectual, 372. His wife administration, and return to England, *ib.*
- Coligny, cardinal, his behaviour in contempt of the pope, x. 104 (A)
- , admiral, permitted to plant a Huguenot colony in Florida, under Ribaut, xv. 71
- Colima, a colony founded there, xiv. 275
- Colioure surrenders after a month's siege, ix. 405
- Coliva, the king of France attacks it in person, viii. 303. Its relief attempted, but those who undertook it surrender, 304. It and Perpignac taken, *ib.*
- Colmar admits a French garrison, xi. 241. Reduced by the bishop of Strasburgh, 12. The famous union concluded, and its articles, xii. 81, 246 (B). Surrenders to the Danes, 316
- Colognes, at Algiers, who, vii. 218
- Cologne, elector of, decried for employing Protestant preachers, x. 87. Cited to Rome for favouring heretics, 88. His excommunication and deposition, 89. Assassinated, and the assassin broken on the wheel, 701
- , city of, a neutrality negotiated for it, xi. 268. A congress appointed there, but a suspension of arms not being agreed upon, Lewis XIV. takes Maestricht, 288. A congress opened there, but why the French and their allies retire, 621. Occasional congress there, and its design, but contentions arise about the chief command on the Rhine, 642. Account of that city, xv. 437. Privileges, and by whom granted, 438 (Z). Government and religion, *ib.*
- Coloman, king of Hungary, opposes the Germans march through Hungary, but defeated, xv. 385. Civil war between him and his brother, but reconciled, the latter is seized, and his eyes put out, *ib.* Defeated by the queen of the Russians, *ib.* Joins the Venetians to repulse the Normans out of Dalmatia, part of which acknowledges his dominion, *ib.* Defeats the Venetians, and makes peace with them, 386. Repels an invasion of the emperor, and dies, *ib.*
- Colombanus, the Irish abbot, banished, viii. 645
- Colombo, sea-port on Ceylon, taken by the Dutch, iv. 146
- fortress on the Island of Ceylon, iv. 484, 485 (T). The governor's residence, *ib.*
- Colonna, cardinal, succeeds Orange as viceroy of Naples, with his character, x. 502. His reformation of universal dissoluteness prevented by death, *ib.* How his conduct saves Treviso, 305
- governor of Verona, his wife conduct, and a nuncio sent upon this to the emperor, x. 312 (E). Takes Coma, with other successes, 316
- , general, obliged by Lautrec to raise the siege of Parma, x. 316. The former invests Milan, *ib.*
- Pompey, his embassy to Philip of Milan, with the latter's answer, x. 361. Sent to Venice, and speech there, with a senator's answer, and his reply, 362. Debates for and against peace, *ib.* League between Philip, the pope,
- and Venetians, also consultations with the allies about the operations of the war, and their resolutions, *ib.*
- Colonna Otto, or Martin V. chosen pope, with his character before and after, and comes to Florence, xiii. 374
- Prospero, the confederate general, his death, xiii. 501
- Coloran river, in the kingdom of Madura, iii. 174, not.
- Columbo, sea-port, (see Colombo) surrendered to the Dutch, iv. 440
- Columbus's offers accepted at the court of Madrid, iv. 174. Character vindicated, v. 49. Why ranked among the circumnavigators, 50. His proposal rejected by the Genoese and by the Spaniards, 51, but patronized by the queen of Spain, *ib.* with whom he signs a contract, viii. 212. Sent out with a fleet, and his first discovery of land, iv. 52. Sent on a second voyage, 53. Protected by John king of Portugal, viii. 452. How led to the discovery of the new or western world, xiv. 142. Hints of it from Plato, Solon, Aristotle, Sir Thomas More, &c. *ib.* When he discovered the Bahamas, Cuba, Hispaniola, 143. Discovers the islands south-west of Hispaniola, and calls them Virgins, 145. His second voyage and discoveries, 144. Made governor-general, and admiral, but unfortunate, yet clears himself of all aspersions, *ib.* His third voyage, and discovery of America, 146. He and his brother put in irons, are sent to Spain, *ib.* 139, & xv. 350. Release and reception at court, xiv. 139. His fourth voyage to America, 150. Discovers islands at the entrance of Honduras-bay, *ib.* Account of the people as he coasted eastward, *ib.* Discovers the Antilles, &c. 151. His arrival at Porto-Bello, *ib.* Returns to Spain, with the news of the discovery of Hispaniola, xv. 345. Comes back with a proper force, with the massacre of those he had left behind, *ib.* His conduct, and building towns, with the discovery of a rich gold mine, 346. His further discoveries and intention of exterminating the Caribbeans, with his character, *ib.* Barbarous treatment of the natives, and the latter's resolution to prevent it, *ib.* Distresses of the whole island, *ib.* His measures on a mutiny and excommunication, with a dreadful hurricane, 347. Opposed by the priests, with complaints against him, and recal, *ib.* His failings, *ib.* Returns to Spain, and vindicating himself, has his commission renewed, *ib.* Accusations sent to court against him, 349. How clear of all blame, *ib.* Returns to Hispaniola, with the bad impressions at court against him, and a commissary of enquiry sent, with his character, 350, who puts him and his brother in irons, and thus sent to Spain, *ib.* & v. 54. The king's policy on their landing, xv. 350. He clears himself, is restored, except to the government of Hispaniola, *ib.* Bad conduct of his enemies in that island, and ordered home, how their immense treasure and themselves perish, 351. His distress and death in Spain, xiv. 151. xv. 351. Character, viii. 220
- , Bartholomew, lieutenant-governor of Hispaniola, xiv. 146
- (young) defeats four Venetian galleys from the East, and carries them into Lisbon, x. 275
- (Don James) a verdict in his favour, xiv. 152, in fin. not. delayed by the king, and appointed admiral, *ib.* Among other colonies, Cubaqua recommended, and its produce of pearls, 153. His conduct in obstructing expeditions, *ib.*
- (Diego) viceroy of Hispaniola, xv. 353. Recalled, and dies, *ib.*
- Colla inhabitants, why they implicitly submit to inca Lloque, xiv. 381. Their various nations, their origin and worship, *ib.* Oppose inca Mayta Capac, are defeated after a bloody battle, and submit, 385
- College, Electoral, convoked, and the empress-regent's application to the electors ineffectual, xi. 349. Also the remonstrances of Bavaria and Cologne disregarded, *ib.* Proceedings of the electoral diet, *ib.* Archduke Charles chosen emperor, 350
- of the German princes, their power, x. 620
- of the electoral princes. See Electoral
- of the Imperial towns, their power and division, x. 621
- Colleges, the famed ones of Tatu, built by Kublay, ii. 389. Encouraged by Ayyulipalipata, 403
- Collen, (John de) his bravery and death, xii. 495
- Collewa, a tree in Congo, and its fruit described, vi. 423
- Colliton, governor of Carolina, how unpopular, and driven out, xv. 86. Other governors mentioned, and who, 87
- Collup (Tilo) account of him, who pretended to be the emperor Frederic II. xi. 6 (Z)



Comana (New Corduba) capital of New Andalusia, described, xiv. 451. The buccaneers repulsed from it with great slaughter, *ib.*

Comanna kingdom, in Guiney, its limits unknown, vi. 675

Comet, a fiery one is seen about the time of Abu Becr's death, i. 182. A fiery one in the East and West, 392. A fresh one in the North-east, succeeded by a rain of black stones, 493. A dreadful one before Hu-pi-lay's death, ii. 393. Another causes a general amnely in China, 404. A new one seen there sixty-three days, 417 (F), and a fresh one, which threatened the destruction of the Ywen dynasty, 421. Karazm deserted at the appearance of a new one, 740. Seen in Egypt for twenty days, i. 591. A dreadful one, &c. before a famine, 661

—— remarkable in Denmark, xii. 28

Comin, a small island, described, and under the order of Maltha, vii. 376

Cominat island, belonging to the knights of Maltha, described, vii. 376

Commendians raise a revolt against their prince, and assisted by the Dutch, both are defeated by the brave king, vi. 655

Commendo kingdom, on the Gold Coast, described, vi. 652.

People numerous and stout, great cheats, thieves, &c. *ib.* The English and Dutch forts at, 653. Adulterate their gold, *ib.*

Commendo, Little, described. Fort and factory settled at, vi. 653

—— king, his bravery against the Dutch, vi. 654. Basely murdered by the English, 655. The murder revenged against them, 656.

Commendon, cardinal, legate at Augsburg, prevails with the Catholics there to receive the council of Trent, and gives a subsidy from the pope against the Turks, x. 108

Commerce of Europe with India described, iv. 78. (See EAST INDIA.) General reflections on its advantages, xiv. 141. Particularly that of America in several instances to Europe, *ib.* The design of all this, what, 142. Scheme of, for Holland, transmitted to Madrid, xi. 481. Its flourishing state, 495

Communes (Philip) put into an iron cage, ix. 182

Commission, grand, in Sweden, appointed, with the province belonging thereto, xii. 365

Committee, among other privileges, lost, the commons in Sweden are not admitted into the secret, and the nobility get the power into their own hands, xii. 213 (A). How chosen, and their legislative power, *ib.*

Commons, in Sweden, made a counterpoise to the nobility and clergy, xii. 210

Commorin cape, iv. 485

Commorro Islands described, vi. 115. Their traffic with Africa, and produce, 116

Comnena (Anna) daughter of Alexis, her history of that emperor, ii. 204 (I)

Comneni justly censured for their pernicious ambition, ii. 226

Comnenus (Isaac) taken prisoner by the Turks, ii. 203

—— governor of Antioch, defeated and slain by the Turks, ii. 203

—— John, the son of Alexis, his success against the Turks, ii. 216, in Armenia, *ib.* in Syria, *ib.* Gives the Turks several defeats, *ib.* Recovers some considerable places, *ib.*

—— Manuel, an enemy to the Jews, v. 542

—— John, the son of Isaac Comnenus, turns apostate and traitor, ii. 216

—— David, strives to get the empire for his brother Alexis, but defeated by Lascar, ii. 227

Como taken by the league, xiii. 495

——, agent from Parma, why ordered to quit London, xiii. 647

Comos, a higher rank of priests in Abyssinia, vi. 226 (F)

Compactata peace, what, x. 6. Received by the Calixtins, xi. 86. But the Orphans and Thaborites opposing it, 20,000 cut in pieces, *ib.*

Companies, the Grand, ravage France, with an account of them, ix. 108. Edward's proclamation for laying down their arms, with their answer, *ib.*

Compass, mariner's, the Chinese only pretended inventors of it, iii. 596. Particulars about the use of it, *ib.* (E). Vid. 689 (O). Its variation first observed, v. 52. How early used, x. 448 (K)

Compostella, general council there, vii. 645, 669. Raised to an archbishopric, *ib.* Archbishop seized by Urraca, *ib.* Whom the Galicians, supported by her son Alonso, forced to set at liberty, *ib.* A rupture just ready to break out, 670

Compostella bells, in Cordova, account of them, viii. 3 (B).

The Christian worship restored in the Church, with other particulars of the king's success here, *ib.* in fin. Some account of it by the bishop of Tuy, *ib.* His character, *ib.*

Comps, Arnold de, the third grand master of Maltha, vii. 382 —, Bertrand, the sixteenth grand master, wars with the Turkomans, and dies of his wounds, vii. 387

Conception coast first discovered, v. 53

——, immaculate, pope's bull for it, and contradicted, x. 39. Warm disputes between the Dominicans and Franciscans about it, with the pope's decree, 135. High disputes about it in Spain, and a bull prohibiting any to assert the contrary, 154. This unsatisfactory to Spain, besides his favouring the king of Portugal, *ib.*

—— la, founded by Valdivia, xiv. 321. Situation, *ib.* Peaceableness of the inhabitants, *ib.*

—— capital of Veragua, described, xiv. 444

—— in Chili, described, xiv. 472. Destroyed by earthquakes, *ib.* Good harbour, *ib.* Peasants, their dexterity in the use of the noose and lance, 473

Conchacs savages, account of them, xv. 44. Cane among them of that name, *ib.*

Conches, or shells, beautiful in California, xiv. 420

Concini, a bloody renegade, defeated by the brave Romega, and his flesh torn off by the teeth of the Christian slaves his prisoners, vii. 476

Concordat introduced into France, and what, ix. 206 (B)

Concordata, famous, about church benefices in Germany confirmed by pope Nicholas V. xi. 94 (N)

Condamine, M. his voyage down Amazon river, xiv. 48

Condé, prince of, joins with Spain, viii. 309. His discontent embarrasses the Spanish affairs there, 311. Guise's dissimulation, who offers to be his second, ix. 125. Is tried and condemned, with the narrow escape of the king of Navarre, 254. By the Constable's advice their lives spared, and a reconciliation with the Guises brought about, *ib.* He and the admiral design to surprize the court, but twice frustrated, 259. He marches into Lorraine to join the German succours, 260. The flame of war spreads every where, and he besieges Chartres, and concludes a peace here; yet several places, particularly Rochelle, refuse obedience, *ib.* Is wounded at the battle of Jarnac, and after barbarously shot through the head, with an account and character of him, and his issue, 262 (K)

——, his retreat to Strasburgh, and again admitted into communion with the Protestants there, ix. 269. Carries on the war with success, 283. Great advantage by a marriage into the house of Trimouille, *ib.* Retires to Milan, and reception from the Spaniards, 339. Resisting all temptations from Spain, he returns to France, 345. He and Soissons leave the court, with their reasons, 348. Their complaint why groundless, with the favourite Conchini's inclining to Condé on Soissons's death, *ib.* His manifesto, and the queen's answer, 349. Some are for maintaining that answer by arms, and others by negotiation, 350, which is concluded at Menchoud, *ib.* His fresh revolt, 352. Is arrested, which alarms several great men, and the ministry changed, 355. Has the sole direction on his arrival at court through d'Ancre, who receives a message from him that he was no longer his friend, 354. Is released, joins Luynes, and accompanies him to the parliament, where he is received as a duke and peer, 362. Obligated to raise the siege of Fontarabia, 394. His miscarriage before Salces, in Roussillon, with loss, 399. Opens the siege of Lerida with a concert of violins, but raises it the twenty-first day after, 423. Grammont's high reputation, and the caution which the affair of Lerida taught Condé ever after, *ib.* The part acted by him through the support of the duke of Orleans, 433. Raises a new civil war in Guienne, and his confederates, inhabitants of Bourges, prevailed on to quit his party, and receive their majesties, *ib.* Is declared generalissimo, 434. His forces defeated by Turenne, save themselves in Paris, and an assembly at the Hotel de Ville attacked by an armed mob, 435. Process, and the parliament's sentence against him and his adherents, 439. His noble retreat, with the insolent conduct of the French and Spanish ministers, with regard to their masters, 442. His extraordinary march to Cambray highly commended by Turenne, and the former's endeavour to surprize Calais disappointed, 445. His saying to the duke of Gloucester, and his masterly retreat, *ib.* The command of the army given him, with Turenne's compliments on that occasion, and his in return, 453. Soon over-runs Franche Comte, *ib.* Takes Maestricht, but inundations stop his course, 459. Passes the Meuse, *ib.* Campaign in Flanders unsuccessful under



- under him, 461. His error in attacking the intrenched camp of the allies, as a contrast to that of Orange at Seneff, *ib.* Which two battles most distinguished the faculties of each general, *ib.* That prince attacks the prince of Orange at Seneff, with doubtful success, xi. 290. Powerful diversion made by him and Turenne, xii. 348. His death and character, ix. 461
- Condé, viceroy of New France, xiv. 573
- , or Count, fruit described, vi. 30
- Confederacy endeavoured, between Philip of Spain, the pope, and Venice, with methods used for engaging other Christian powers and the Sophi, x. 548. Treaty between Spain, the pope, and Venice, 549. Dispatch used by the Turkish fleet, and a contagion in that of Venice, *ib.*
- for dividing the conquests at Lerice, xiii. 316
- , new, formed, with the emperor's dissimulation, and ordering his holiness to be restored to his liberty, xiii. 519
- Confederates, Milan, Parma, &c. submit to them, x. 302. An embassy sent to England, and their league published, 323. Equip a fleet, and block up Genoa, *ib.* Their forces land, and the city invested, with its surrender, and that of Milan citadel, *ib.* Their misfortunes, 324. After Lepanto battle, sail to Corfu, with those in the grand alliance, xi. 641. Distribution of the spoils, and their separating, x. 374 (B). Opportunity for a decisive blow lost, *ib.* The Sophi's just notion of their mutual losses, *ib.* (C). Great preparations on both sides, 374. The campaign ended, and their fleet separates, disgracefully for them, *ib.* March into Hesse-Cassel, and are followed by Piccolomini, to whom this campaign proves glorious, though without any general action, xi. 251. In an assembly at the Hague, send two armies to the Rhine, commanded by the electors of Bavaria and Brandenburg, 310. Gain some towns, but with considerable loss, 437, 345. Notwithstanding Brandenburg joins them, dissensions arise among the generals and troops of different princes, xi. 624. A sea-fight off Beachy, between them and the French, in which the Dutch are roughly handled, 640. Several bombardments on the French coasts by their fleet, 645. See Allies
- Conflans's squadron from d'Anville's fleet, returns safe to France, much to the disgrace of the English marine, xiv. 614
- Conforgien, his piety on the field of battle, who takes and sacks Crusille, xiv. 35
- Confucius Kong-fu-tse, restores the old religion among the Chinese, iii. 559. Account of his birth, life, writings, &c. *ib.* (F). His sublime doctrines opposed by the grandees, 560. Just notions of the Deity, *ib.* His descendants the only nobles in China, 582. His two yearly festivals how observed, 626. Time of his birth, 694. His writings in high esteem in Ton-king, 439 (D), and in Japan by the Imperial authority, *ib.* & iv. 56. Highly esteemed in Ton-king, iii. 441
- Congoese, proud conceit of themselves and of their kings, vi. 440 (Y). Extreme poverty and sloth, *ib.* Trades, and sturdy beggars, 441. Jealousy and envy, *ib.* Want of natural affection, *ib.* (Z). Religion and superstition, 442. Gangas, or priests, a greedy tribe, *ib.* (A). Their peculiar offices, 443. Chalombe, or high-priest, 444. His great power, *ib.* Dies not a natural death, *ib.* Inferior ones under him, *ib.* (B). Heavy taxes, 447, and frequent revolts, 448. Churches in the palace run to decay, 452. Gold-mines, why neglected, 453 (H). Capital crimes, how punished, 456. Great injustice and oppression, *ib.* (K). Traffic with Europe, 457. Manufactures, *ib.* and chiefly in slaves, *ib.* (L). Their vast number and value, 458. Weaving, clumsy and tedious, *ib.* Lazy way of travelling, 459. Roads difficult and dangerous, *ib.* (M). Few and dangerous, 460. Poor way of living, 461. Mean houses and furniture, *ib.* Shameful disregard to marriage, 462. Ill customs tolerated, *ib.* Nuptial entertainments expensive, 463. Priests very scarce, *ib.* Music rough, and musical instruments, 464. Odd dancing, *ib.* (N). Diseases, and strange physicians, 465. Fatal effects of the venereal disease, *ib.* Its cure, *ib.* (O). Wretched surgeons, 467 (P) (Q). Funeral obsequies, *ib.* Interments in churches, *ib.* Barbarous customs still in vogue among the unconverted nations, 469. Their chronology fabulous, *ib.*
- Congo kingdom, by whom discovered, iv. 112
- kings, their vast power, vi. 447. Splendid state learned from the Portuguese, 449. Stately throne, 450. Guards, *ib.* (F). Grand retinue, 451. Chief officers, *ib.* Numerous and slavish court, 452. His queen and her attendants mutual infidelity, *ib.* Forces ill disciplined, &c. 453. Scurvy appearance, 454. Exercise, and poorly paid, are forced to live on, plunder, *ib.* Way of fighting, 455. Their history uncertain till the Portuguese arrive, 471. Their first signal victory over the rebels, 474
- Congo kingdom, or Western Ethiopia, described, vi. 418. Its extent imperfectly known, *ib.*
- , Proper, described, vi. 419. Seasons how divided, 420. Fertility, 421. Women mere slaves, *ib.* Chief product and exotic fruits, &c. 422. Various shrubs described, 424. Aromatic plants, *ib.* Grass why dangerous to travellers, 425. Various flowers described, *ib.* Principal rivers, *ib.* Its provinces how distinguished, 427. Its capital described, and why called St. Salvador, 430. Royal palaces, 431, and other provinces, *ib.* Animals wild and tame, 432. Land and water-fowl, 434. Fish of all sorts, 435. Monstrous serpents, 437, and other venomous insects, *ib.* (V). Its populousness whence, 438 (X). Prodigious fecundity of its women, 439. Vast armies, *ib.* Idolatry and superstition, 443. Danger of opposing it, 445. Sad state of Christianity, 446 (C). Sadly neglected, *ib.* Better cultivated in some provinces, 447. King's government, *ib.* (D). Kings, how far elective, 448 (E). Bless the people, 449. The ceremony of it, *ib.* and of granting investitures, *ib.* Antient state, 469. Monarchy, by whom founded, 470. Coast of, by whom discovered, 472. Decay of religion, 479 (B), and of commerce, whence, *ib.* Receives a new bishop, 481
- king of, sends his son with others to be brought up at Lisbon, viii. 463
- Congrats, different places nominated for one, and the reasons of the Dutch against them, xi. 588
- event and small success of one held by the Canadians at St. Mary's Fall with the French, xiv. 611
- holden at Montreal, between the savage deputies and Callieres, xiv. 605
- Cong-kia recovers the Chinese throne, with his lewd reign, and death, iii. 682
- Cong-ti, the last emperor of the 18th dynasty, iii. 718
- Cong-tsong, his offers of peace to the Tartars haughtily rejected, sent away prisoner into the Cohi desert, and dies, iii. 722
- Cong-vang, emperor of China, his cruelty to the Mycans, with his remorse and good government afterwards, iii. 690
- Coni saved by prince Eugene, ix. 471. Siege of, raised, xi. 312
- Conjunction, a grand one of all the planets, Anno 1185, ii. 193
- Conquests and settlements of the Spaniards, v. 174
- Conrade, emperor of Germany, lands at Constantinople, ii. 217. Bravery and success against the Turks, *ib.* Baffled before Iconium, and returns home, *ib.*
- emperor Barbarossa's son, why his intended marriage with Berengara of Castile fails, vii. 695
- son of the emperor Frederic, upon the death of his father marches into Italy, and joins his brother Manfred, ix. 636
- duke of Franconia, entering Italy is crowned at Monza, ix. 555. He publishes several laws, and obliges Pavia to surrender, *ib.* Goes to Rome, and is crowned with Gifelle by the pope, *ib.* An insurrection of the Romans quelled, he quits Rome and returns to Germany, but comes again, and after quieting the disturbances raised by a faction returns, *ib.* The Italians enter into a resolution of a general revolt, and returning, sends many of the malecontents prisoners into Germany, 556. He besieges Milan, holden by Henibert, but to no purpose, and how a sedition in Parma while the emperor was there is punished, *ib.* From Rome he orders justice to be done to the monks of Cassino, which Pandolphus of Capua refusing, Conrad marches against him and is crowned at Capua, *ib.* (I). He confers Capua on Guiomar, prince of Salerno, and confirms Rainulphus the Norman in Aversa, &c. but returning to Germany his army is attacked by a contagious distemper, and he dies, 557
- son of the emperor Henry, acting as groom to the pope, is promised assistance, ix. 575. In a private assembly of Nobles at Coblenz declared emperor, with an account of Innocent's behaviour by his legate in the affair, as also of this meeting, 590 (C). Proposes a peace, which is rejected, and being excommunicated dies, 636
- succeeds his father Frederic in all his dominions, particularly the Two Sicilies, x. 435. His father's determination by will in favour of his other children, *ib.* Manfred his bastard brother assumes the administration in Conrad's



- rad's absence, *ib.* A great party in Puglia declare for the pope, and Conrad arriving there with an army, revokes all the grants made by his father's will, &c. 436. Makes himself master of several places, and of Naples, *ib.* Among other proceedings of the pope against Conrad, he offers the kingdom of the Two Sicilies to Richard earl of Cornwall, *ib.* but rejected by him and the count of Anjou, *ib.* Holds a parliament at Melphis, and the death of his brother Henry, with the king of England's offer to the pope rejected, *ib.* Reduces Puglia, and a second excommunication against him, after which he soon dies, 437.
- Conrad I. the first German emperor, x. 624. Precautions to support his authority, *ib.* Executes Erchanger and Berthold as traitors, *ib.* Dies, *ib.*
- the emperor, Henry's eldest son, is put to the ban, x. 658
- who had been elected king of the Romans, narrowly escapes assassination, with the fate of the traitors, sets out for his Italian dominions, and takes Naples, x. 712. Has several quarrels with the church, and dies, *ib.*
- II. or Salic, the princes present at his election, x. 647 (E). His chief care what; he marches into Italy, and after reducing the Lombards is crowned at Rome, *ib.* On his return causes his son Henry to be declared his successor, and crowned at Aix la Chapelle, *ib.* Defeats the rebels, and Ernest duke of Suabia slain, having been put before to the ban, *ib.* Marches against Mislco king of Poland, who, on account of the emperor's generosity, surrenders at discretion, *ib.* His successful expedition against Stephen, king of Hungary, and Eudes, count of Champagne, and he succeeds to the kingdom of Burgundy, 648. Is seized with the gout and dies, his character, and an instance of his generosity, 649 (H)
- the emperor's uncle dies, and consequences, x. 690
- III. duke of Franconia, succeeds Henry V. in the empire, x. 657. Roger, king of Sicily, and Guelph of Bavaria, take the field against him, *ib.* His generosity on seeing the conjugal fidelity of Guelph's consort, and the ladies to their husbands, *ib.* Engages in the croisade to the Holy-land, which is unsuccessful, with his valour at the siege of Damascus, 668 (R). Upon this St. Bernard reviled, *ib.* On the death of Henry his eldest son, settles the succession on his nephew Frederic Barbarossa, and dies, 669 (S). His character and issue, *ib.* (T)
- of Bavaria dies, his character, and distribution of his dominions, viii. 712
- the emperor, Henry the IVth's eldest son, revolts, ix. 575 (X). x. 658 (A)
- of Antioch, taken by Charles of Anjou, and hanged like a malefactor, x. 718. All this barbarity said to be advised by pope Clement IV. *ib.* (M)
- the emperor's chancellor, his negotiations in Italy, with the emperor's arrival at Bologna, who confirms at Rome the privileges of the Bolognese, xiii. 570
- I. king of Bohemia, xv. 454
- II. king of Bohemia, xv. 454
- Conradine invited into Italy, but prohibited by the pope, ix. 642. Marches to Rome upon defeating a body of French, *ib.* but is entirely defeated by Charles, taken prisoner, and executed with several more, *ib.* & x. 442
- an infant, succeeds his father Conrad, under the regency of Berthold de Honebruch, x. 437. He assumes the title of king of Sicily, opposed by the pope, and alliances entered into by Charles of Anjou, 441. Arrives with an army in Italy through Henry, &c. of Castile, for whom several cities declare, but is excommunicated, *ib.* He is entirely defeated at Tagliacozzo by Charles, Conradin, and the duke of Austria, being taken and sold by the Frangipani, 442. With the brave retreat of the Germans home under Sticho, a blacksmith, *ib.* (E). His behaviour on the scaffold, &c. 442 (F). 718 (N)
- Conradsburg fort, on the Gold-coast, vi. 660
- Conringius, the celebrated, answers the pope's bull against the Osnaburg treaty, xi. 273
- Conspiracie, or combinations in Germany, xi. 376
- Countable of France dies, ix. 161
- Constance, lord, iii. 372. (See Faulkon) The lady of Faulkon put to the rack, 396. Clapped in Irons and rescued, makes her escape to Bankok, but brought back to the usurper, 397. Wretched condition after this, *ib.*
- the famous council of, appointed, xiii. 373. Opened there by pope John XXIII. with their decrees and other proceedings, ix. 706. Emperor's proceedings traversed by the two anti-popes, xi. 705. Nuncios from the anti-popes, and lay-deputies admitted, with votes
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- given not by particulars but nations, ix. 707. The council is continued by decree, *ib.* and its authority declared superior to the popes, 708. Resolved that John being bound to resign, on refusal should be reckoned deposed, and proceeded against, *ib.* Its justification, *ib.* Decreed that John should appoint proxies for his resignation, and invited by an embassy to return, *ib.* Its proceedings, 711. Benedict summoned to appear there, with the emperor's return to Constance, 712. Warm debates about the reformation of the church, which is opposed by the cardinals, &c. and a perpetual decree made for holding councils, *ib.* A decree about the election of a pope by thirty deputies, and twenty cardinals, *ib.* who choosing Martin V. on Benedict's deposition, he is conducted to the cathedral, the emperor and elector of Brandenburg holding his reins, &c. *ib.* & xi. 78. Condemn the opinion that it is lawful to kill a tyrant, with the occasion of this decree, 710 (U). Pope John arrives there, xi. 75. Resignation of the competitors for the popedom being the only expedient determined on, pope John promises to renounce, but retracting, by Frederic of Austria's assistance, flies into Switzerland, *ib.* The council confirm his deposition, excluding also the other two popes his competitors, 76. Upon this John acquiesces, and freely renounces, as doth Gregory XII. but Benedict refuses to submit, *ib.* & xiii. 374. Its decrees reckoned by the pope tantamount to reforming the church, ix. 713 (X). Council appointed at Pavia, and an elusory declaration of the pope, about the council's decrees, *ib.* Its decree about the Eucharist, ix. 709. The emperor's officiating as deacon at mass said by the pope, xiii. 374. The splendor of the council, *ib.* Is dissolved, ix. 713, & xi. 79
- Constans, his severe laws against the Jews, v. 506
- Constantia, Constantina, taken by the Moslems, i. 241
- Constantina, in Algiers, described, vii. 224. Residence of the bey, and French factory, *ib.*
- Constantine, the son of Heraclius, his conference with the Moslem general, i. 222. His forces in Syria desert him by degrees, 224. Abandons his camp to the Moslems, and sends a reinforcement to Cæsarea, *ib.* Retires with all his wealth to Constantinople, 226. Recovers Alexandria from the Moslems, with frequent complaints, between their fleets and his lieutenants, 250. Defeats the Arabs in Syria, i. 295. Gracious reception of the Moslem ambassadors, *ib.* Advantageous peace, *ib.*
- king of Georgia slain by Kara-yusef, ii. 587. His severe laws against the Jews, v. 504
- , antient king of Abyssinia, vi. 252
- Constantinople besieged by the Moslems, i. 290. In what year, 291. Its brave defence, 295. By Solomon, 352. Stout defence against him, 353. The siege raised, 354. The centre of European and Asiatick trade, and its citizens consign the care of it to the Italians, iv. 99
- emperor and empress of, crowned at Rome, ix. 622. The emperor and legate taken prisoners in Thessaly, *ib.* Taken by Mahomet II. with the loss to the Greeks, and an end put to their empire, x. 22. Is taken by the French and Venetians, twice, x. 200. Besieged, but relieved by the Venetians, 202 (A). Second siege by Vattafus, who is defeated by a brisk sally, *ib.*
- Constem, the famous constitution of, declaring the independence of the empire, xi. 44 (L)
- Constitution of Sweden, a small alteration made in it, and by whom, xii. 288 (A). 367
- Contareni, legate, accused by the Catholics, but defended by cardinal Fregosa and the emperor, x. 87
- Dominico, the thirtieth doge of Venice, takes Zara from the prince of Croatia, x. 193. Death and character, 194
- Jacomo, the forty-seventh doge of Venice, x. 205. Dispute with the Genoese compromised, and a revolt of the Istrians quelled, *ib.* War with Ancona, the inhabitants of which supplicate peace, and the terms, 206. Resignation of the doge, *ib.*
- Andrea, the sixtieth doge of Venice, succeeds Cornaro, x. 217. Speech to Pisani, with the people's zeal for him, 223 (A). Works built round Venice by his advice, *ib.* That doge's death and character, 226
- defeats Visconti's fleet on lake Benac, x. 255. Takes several places, *ib.* His bold remonstrance to the grand visier, on the latter's proposal, 344
- Conti endeavours to circumvent Castelmelhor, but is caught in his own trap, viii. 520. His proposal to the minister about marrying one of his nieces, and the consummation, ix. 439. Is elected king of Poland, but Augustus of Sax-



- ony has more interest, 476. Ardour of his friends in Poland, now cooled, *ib.* 558. The elector of Brandenburg offers his mediation, but the conferences are frustrated, and why, *ib.* His party animated by letters sent by him, 559. A confederacy formed to support his interest, and prevent the elector's coronation, 560. The obstructions to the ceremony are surmounted by quibbles, *ib.* Much disgusted at the Sapiehas, and their general, and he loses all hopes of success on young Sapieha's declaration, 563. The magistrates of Dantzick seize on his effects, as does general Brandt those lodged at Oliva, the French ambassador narrowly escaping with difficulty, *ib.* Some Polish lords repairing to Cracow, determine him to return to France, *ib.*
- Contifuyu, a causeway built there over a marsh, by inca Mayta Capac, *xiv.* 386. His successful progress over it, *ibid.*
- Contracts, private, how regulated by the Koran, *i.* 178
- Contus (Stephen) one of the Hungarian chiefs, his fortitude, with the consequence of his cruel execution, *xi.* 73
- Convention, which throws England into a flame, and preparations for war, *xiii.* 656
- Convers, an English captain, his gallant behaviour against the Indians in New England, *xiv.* 525
- Converts, Christian, in China, their great zeal, and sufferings, *iii.* 568
- Connecticut river, settlements made there under Mr. Hooker the minister, *xiv.* 507. Difficulties encountered, and at last surmounted, *ib.* They chuse Hopkins their governor, *ib.* Constitution, 536. Their prudence when their charter was called in by king Charles II. 537
- Cook, (Sir Thomas) sent to the Tower, *iv.* 341. His account of the destruction of Pula Candore factory, 356. Genius of the natives displayed, *ib.* (B)
- Coopman tribe of Hottentots described, *vi.* 385
- Copau tree, in Guadaloupe, *xv.* 230
- Copea, a sort of stone pitch in Florida, *xiv.* 431
- Copeik, what, and how many to a ruble, *xiii.* 25 (R)
- Copenhagen, the capital and royal residence, description of it, *vi.* 630 (B)
- a magistrate of police there, and his office, with an excellent custom in watching and extinguishing fires, *xi.* 660 (I). Regulations about chimney-sweepers, torches, and lanthorns, &c. with salutary regulations about apothecaries, *ib.*
- university, by whom founded, *xii.* 118
- after suffering inexpressible miseries, surrenders to Christian III. who, after reproaching Oldenburg, pardons him, *xii.* 153. He deposes and imprisons the bishops, *ib.* Defenceless state of it, with Frederic the III'd's courage, a peace concluded, and Ulefeldt's complaisance in the conditions, 177. Besieged by land and sea, with an embassy from Frederic III. to Charles ineffectual, 179. Danish nobility resolve to stand by the king, their great promises through the burghers, with the brave resolution of Frederic and queen, *ib.* Trenches opened before it, and continual fire on them from some plaemes, with vigorous sallies and attacks on both sides, 180. Siege of it languishes, and a brisk attack towards the West gate baffled, *ib.* The whole glory of this sally on Wanderver's plan, owing to the king's execution of it, *ib.* The siege turned into a blockade, and the elector of Brandenburg marches to Frederick's relief, 181. Several advantages gained over the Swedes, *ib.* Burnt, 204
- Copiapo port described, *xiv.* 473. Produce of its mines, *ib.* Saltpetre and lead mines, *ib.*
- Copin's horrid accusation against himself and the Jews, *v.* 567 (B). Dreadful punishment, *ib.*
- Coptic computation by Kharajian years, when and by whom suppressed in Egypt, *i.* 689. Account of it, and whence called Kharajian, *ib.*
- church in Egypt, its tenets and heresy, *vi.* 24 (S). Their great ignorance, 26
- Copts, articles of peace with the Moslems, *i.* 235. Whence so called, *vi.* 24 (S)
- Coquimbo town, or la Serena, described, *xiv.* 473. Fine climate and cattle, &c. *ib.* Trade, *ib.*
- Corales los, or Coral-islands, where situate, *iv.* 267
- Corbary tree, in Guadaloupe, *xv.* 230
- Cord, why worn by the Brammanic tribe, *iii.* 212
- Cordilleras, or Andes mountains, severity of the cold there, *xiv.* 307
- Corduba, Cordova, three furs seen there, followed by a famine, *i.* 386. Becomes the seat of the Spanish khalifate, 390. The first mosque built there, 406. The great mosque and bridge when, and by whom built, 420. Streets paved by Abdalraman, 470. Seized by the rebel Almohdi, *i.* 611, 612. Ravaged by Soliman, *ib.* Impresses Hesham's name on its coin, 619
- kingdom and khalifate, abolished, *i.* 631
- Cordubans drive the rebel Almohdi out of their city, *i.* 611. Plunder Azafra, 612. Murder their African garrison, 627. Raise Hesham to the khalifate, 628. Depose and imprison him, 631
- Cordoua's successes, yet obliged by Mansfeldt to raise the siege of Frankendal, *xi.* 206
- Cordova lands at Cape Catoche, is attacked by a large body of Indians, and defeats them with twenty-five men, *xiv.* 169. Near the field are temples with hideous images, *ib.* Proceeds to Campeche bay, with the hideous idols in their temples, crosses, &c. 170. Lands in a bay about a league from Potonchou town, and after a sharp rencounter with the natives, and loss, he regains his shipping, *ib.* His expedition to Yucatan and Florida from the Havannah, 169. Lands on the coast of Florida, is attacked, and extricating himself sails for the Havannah, and dies of his wounds, 170
- Cordovero (Moses) a celebrated professor at Sapheta, *v.* 583. *sub not.*
- Corea (Martin) his first successful expedition against the king of Zeila, *vi.* 728
- ravaged terribly by the Japonese, *iii.* 756. Relieved by the Chinese, *ib.* Under stricter obedience to the Tartar emperor, 758
- Coreans, their origin and government, *iii.* 752. When subdued to the Chinese, and invade China, *ib.* Shake off the Chinese yoke, 753. Invade Lyau-tong, and are subdued afresh, *ib.* Refuse a passage to Hu-pi-lay's ambassadors, 754. Invaded by the Japonese, 755. Panic at their approach, 756. Reduced and ravaged, and assisted by the Chinese, *ib.* Drive the Japonese away, 758. Pay homage and tribute to the Tartar emperors, *ib.* Instances of their great subjection to them, 759. Their ambassadors meanly treated at Peking, *ib.* Abject reception of the Chinese ones, *ib.*
- Corebut arrives at Prague, and severely punishes the disturbances of the Thaborites there, *xi.* 80
- Corfu, junction of the Spanish and Venetian fleets there, where the officers quarrel, *x.* 375
- Corja, (Donna Beatriz) prevails on an inca prince to accept of a pension from the Spaniards, *xiv.* 357
- Corientes Cape, in Africa, described, *xiv.* 363
- a city in Buenos Ayres, *xiv.* 470
- Coritia, the isle of, how annexed to Venice, *x.* 271
- Corla, inhuman and cowardly expedition of the French against it, *xiv.* 633
- Cormantin the Lesser, a village on the Gold-coast, *vi.* 670
- The great described, *ib.*
- Cornaro, Marco, the fifty-ninth duke of Venice, *x.* 217
- Paolo, his speech to Visconti, and his answer, *x.* 235. Remonstrance of ambassadors from Florence; speech of Visconti's ambassador, *ib.* He dies in prison, 244
- Cornbury, lord, governor of New-York, the good order of that colony under him, *xiv.* 541
- Conillon (Peter de) the 27th great master of Maltha, ordered by the pope to abandon Rhodes, *vii.* 400. Mild answer to his threats, 401. Dies of Grief, *ib.*
- Coroas, and other savages, distinguished by pronouncing or not pronouncing (r) when united under the Chicachas, *xv.* 47
- Coromandel coasts, and European commerce there, *iv.* 500. Its vast importance, 501 (M). Reason of the different climate from that of the Malabar coasts, *iv.* 563 (T)
- Coron besieged by the Imperial and Maltese fleet, bravery of the knights, and it capitulates, *vii.* 452
- Correa (Anthony) sent ambassador to the king of Pegu, swears to the peace with him on a music-book, *iii.* 252
- (Don Salvadore de) sends Capuchins to queen Zingha, *vi.* 514, without any success, 515. Second embassy and alliance with her, *ib.* Epistolary correspondence and presents, *ib.*
- (Andrew) raises an insurrection in Calicut, *iv.* 117
- Corregio, how made lord and defender of Parma, *xiii.* 613. Nominated lord of Placentia, but quits the city, 614. Marriage of his two daughters and grand-daughter in one day, 616. His influence in Bologna, *ib.* The confederates march for Ferrara, while the Placentine exiles take and demolish Vigolini, with the Bolognese, assisting Ebe, *ib.* He ravages the Parmesan, and all ranks assist in keep-



ing him out, with a fruitless expedition for that purpose, 620. He purchases from the emperor the government of Parma, with some of the money he received for joining with the legate, 624. Why he conspires to surprise Placentia, but saved, and the Pavians defeated, as are also the Parmesans, 625. Henry's favours to him, and the reason why the former opposed him, *ib.* The emperor's accusation against him and two others, *ib.* His condemnation, and is deprived of his power in Parma, through Mastino the doge of Verona, 626.

Corregio, his night-piece in Modena, *xiv.* 102

——— principality in Modena described, *xiv.* 102

Corfica reduced by the French, except Calvi, but recovered by the Genoese, *ix.* 239. Disturbances there, *x.* 578. The French invade and conquer it, and old Doria commands the Genoese forces, whose grand-nephew young Doria reduces almost the whole island, 590. Fresh war there, with the occasion and event, 594. The Genoese defeated by the Corsicans, with an account of Andrea de Costa Corio, who was taken prisoner, *ib.* (A). Upon George Doria being appointed to command the army, and Costa lieutenant there, the rebellion soon ended, 595. Corsicans divided into two factions, who persecute each other with great rancour, *x.* 595; but upon Fornari, the Genoese general's recall, peace succeeds, *ib.*

Corso (Pietro) base project by a cordelier for betraying him, and he and his son killed, *x.* 594

Cortez, Hernand, his character, he sails from Cuba on discoveries, *xiv.* 172. Further account of him, 173. Appointed captain-general of the expedition to Yucatan, or Mexico, by Velazquez, *ib.* Contradictory accounts of Herrera and de Solis about him, *ib.* (A). Sails from St. Jago de Cuba, 174. How ordered at Trinidad to be dispossessed of the command, *ib.* but disobeyed, *ib.* Arrives at the Havannah, after being separated in a storm, *ib.* A second order for seizing him disobeyed, and he throws off obedience to Velazquez, 175. Wise dispositions made, and sets sail for the isle of Cozumel, with his arrival there, *ib.* Publicly censures Alvarado's conduct, 176. Animating speech to his army, *ib.* The Indians flock to him, and is visited by their cazique, *ib.* Discovers a Spaniard detained prisoner in Yucatan, *ib.* He and his whole army take a view of Cozumel, and his design herein, 177. His dissuading his men from violence, *ib.* Visits their temple, with an account of it and the idols, *ib.* Destroys the idols of Cozumel, *ib.* Erects an altar and image of the Virgin, with a cross, *ib.* His arrival at Tabasco, 178. The Indians resolve to oppose his landing, and the different representations here of his behaviour, *ib.* Forces the Indians in their canoes, and they fly, *ib.* Defeats them again on land, *ib.* Assaults the town, which he takes, and defeats the Indians, 179. Difference in the account of the action, *ib.* (B). Is deserted by Melchior the Indian, and some skirmishes with the Indians, whom that deserter encouraged, *ib.* Their bad success makes them sacrifice him, *ib.* His representations in a council of his officers, and their effect, 180. Proceeds to meet the enemy at Cinthla, *ib.* He defeats a vast body of Tabascan Indians, 181. Dismisses his prisoners with presents, *ib.* Why he rejects an embassy from the Indians, *ib.* Accepts a fresh embassy from the cazique, *ib.* who himself visits him, *ib.* Leaves Tabasco, arrival at St. Juan d'Ulova, in Mexico, receives a message by ambassadors from the emperor Motezuma, 182. His transactions with the Mexican governors, *ib.* His request to them, and its extraordinary effect on them, 183. Their presents and reply to him, with his declaration, insisting on an interview with Motezuma, *ib.* He sends some curiosities as presents to the emperor Motezuma, 184, who makes him a present in return, but declines an interview, *ib.* He still persists in his resolution of seeing the emperor, *ib.* Different reasonings of the Spaniards on a review of the emperor's presents, *ib.* Keeps his men in constant exercise, 185. His reply to Motezuma's answer, and the ambassador's return to it by way of challenge, 187. His remark thereon to his people, *ib.* Murmurings of his soldiers, and his masterly address in stopping them, 188. Embassy from the cazique of Zempoala for an alliance with him, *ib.* His regulations and civil promotions, *ib.* Settlement of Villa Rica made, and speech to his newly formed council, 189. Good effect of his using rigour on some of his people, and lenity thereupon, *ib.* His measures for removing to Quibillan, 190. Takes the road to Zempoala, where he arrives, is visited by the cazique, and what passed between them, *ib.* Arrival at Quibillan, *ib.* Visited by the cazique, and what passed, 191. Arrival of Motezuma's

commissaries, their magnificent dress and bloody demand, *ib.* Seizes these Mexican commissaries, and gains high reputation, *ib.* Mild course taken with them, *ib.* and its good effects, *ib.* Founds Villa Rica, and the blunders of authors corrected, 192. Receives a magnificent embassy from Motezuma, *ib.* Instance of his prudence and penetration, 193. His piety highly praised by Spanish writers, but not reconcileable with Christianity, *ib.* Receives a slender reinforcement and mortifying intelligence at the same time, *ib.* Sends messengers to Spain with an account of his proceedings, 194. His justification, and a discovery of a plot, and its contrivers punished, *ib.* Burns his fleet, and why, *ib.* Prepares for marching, *ib.* Begins his march for Tlascala, encountering difficulties, 195. His declaration to an Indian cazique on the road to Tlascala, *ib.* Difficulty about the route he was to take, *ib.* Arrives on the frontiers of Tlascala, 196. Declaration to the Tlascalan senate by his ambassadors, *ib.* The answer to it, *ib.* His ambassadors detained, 198. Their escape, 199. Magiscatzin, his speech in favour of Cortez, 197. Defeats the Tlascalans in several engagements, 198. Pushes forward and possesses a village, 199. Seizes on several villages, releases his prisoners, and sends a message to Xicotencal, *ib.* Its effect on that general, *ib.* Advances, with the disposition of his men, *ib.* Defeats a vast army through some discontent among the Tlascalans, 200. Appeases a mutiny, *ib.* His answer to the suit of the Tlascalans for peace, 202. Marches to Tlascala, and his public entry, 204. His surprise at the behaviour of the Cholulans, and their embassy why refused, 206. He prepares to march for Cholula, and joined by a body of Tlascalans, *ib.* Enters that city, and severely punishes the inhabitants for a plot, *ib.* His address in revenging a plot at Cholula, 207. Massacres the Indians, *ib.* His clemency after removing all danger, 208. He reconciles the Tlascalans and Cholulans, *ib.* Receives another embassy from Motezuma with magnificent presents, 209. Avoids a snare laid by the Mexicans in Mount Chalio, *ib.* He halts at Amemeca, where he receives the compliments of the neighbouring caziques, 209. Also an embassy from Motezuma, headed by his nephew, *ib.* Their declaration, and his answer, *ib.* He marches on without stopping at Tezeuco, *ib.* Stays some time at Quilavaca, 210. Proceeds to Iztoapala, and the disposition of his army, *ib.* (B). Entry into it, *ib.* Arrives at Mexico the capital, and his grand reception, *ib.* Account of the procession of the emperor, 211. His public entry, *ib.* His and his officers lodgings in Mexico described, 212. Splendid banquet prepared there, and Motezuma's visit and speech to him, *ib.* His answer to Motezuma's speech, *ib.* The emperor's reply, *ib.* Visits Motezuma in his palace, 213. His grounds of suspicion for Motezuma, 219. Stumbles on a repository of treasure, and his behaviour thereon, *ib.* (A). Disagreement in the opinions of his officers, *ib.* His own opinion for seizing the emperor, the measures for it, 220, which he takes, and at length carries him to the Spanish quarters, *ib.* Claps him in fetters, 222. He causes the Mexican general to be publicly executed, after which Motezuma is taken out of his fetters, 223. Is regarded by Motezuma's nobles as his chief countellor, and applied to accordingly, *ib.* Nominates a governor and lieutenant for Vera Cruz, *ib.* Intelligence from thence changes the face of affairs with him, 218. Builds two vessels on the lake of Mexico, much to the satisfaction of the emperor and his people, 224. His address in bringing the emperor to an alliance with his master, *ib.* Gets circumstantial information about the empire, *ib.* Attempts a revolution in religion, with its violent effects, 225. A compromise made, and a dangerous plot discovered and defeated, *ib.* His evasive reply to Motezuma, on ordering his departure, 228. Fresh source of anxiety to him, what, 229. His desperate situation and brave resolution, *ib.* His perplexity on Narvaez's arrival at Vera Cruz and his address with Motezuma, 231, and his own men, *ib.* Proposals for a reconciliation with Narvaez, *ib.* His humane treatment of Guavara, and the other Spanish prisoners sent from Vera Cruz, *ib.* Sends father Almedo to Narvaez, 232. His request to the allied caziques, and prepares for taking the field, *ib.* After trying amicable means, resolves to march against Narvaez, *ib.* Artful representation of his motives to Motezuma, and directs his march to Zempoala, *ib.* Assurances given him by Motezuma, 233. Progress till he joins Sandoval at Makalequitan and reception at Tlascala, *ib.* Intelligence from Zempoala by two spies sent thither, *ib.* He sends Almedo a second time, and Velazquez de Leon, with ove



tures of peace to Narvaez, who rejects them, 234. On Narvaez's preparing an ambuscade, he marches against the enemy, *ib.* His measures for surprizing Narvaez in Zempoala, and the disposition made of his troops, *ib.* Defeats Narvaez totally, *ibid.* Interview between him and Narvaez, with what passed, 235. He enlists his troops, *ib.* Prepares for returning to Mexico, 236. Advices, received from Alvarado left in the capital, hasten his march, *ib.* Resolution of his troops, and entry into Tlascala, *ib.* Passes Mexico lake without opposition, and is joyfully received by Motezuma, with the different accounts here, 237. Is shocked at Alvarado's massacre of the Mexicans, yet prosecutes his plan, 238. On the Mexicans revolt, resolves to conquer them by force, *ib.* By a sally defeats the Mexicans, 239. A cessation of hostilities ensues, *ib.* An accommodation being rejected, he makes a fresh sally on the Mexicans, who retire at night, 240, as do the Spaniards, and Cortez wounded; hyperbolical accounts of this and other engagements, *ib.* (A). His perplexity, and that of Motezuma, *ib.* Promises Motezuma to evacuate Mexico on that emperor's proposal, 241. Resolves to march, and his request to the emperor complied with, *ib.* Assaulted again by the Mexicans, but they are repulsed, and Motezuma shews himself to them, *ib.* His successful attempt on a neighbouring temple, 243. His narrow escape in rescuing secretary Duero, *ib.* His reply to the Mexicans proposal of peace, *ib.* Plans his retreat in the night, 244. Begins his march, and its disposition, leaving most of the treasure behind, *ib.* Is attacked, *ib.* Escapes with difficulty and loss, over the breaches in the causeway, 245. Halts near Tacuba, *ib.* Why the Mexicans did not pursue him, *ib.* His difficult retreat before the Mexicans, 246. Takes possession of a tower on an eminence, *ib.* Continues his retreat, *ib.* Rushes with intrepidity on the Mexicans in Otumba-valley, 247. Kills the captain-general, and takes the royal standard, upon which the Mexicans fly, and great slaughter of them, *ib.* Keeps retreating towards the Mexican frontiers, and reaches Gualipa, a town of Tlascala, 248. Honourable reception by the Tlascalans, and an embassy from them, *ib.* His public entry into Tlascala, *ib.* Is seized with a fever, but recovers, 249. He and the Tlascalans, why disgusted at the Tepeacans, 250. Remonstrances to his men for an expedition prevail, *ib.* Marches against the Tepeacans, and his message to them rejected with insolence, *ib.* Defeats them twice, 251. Enters their city, and accepts their submission, *ib.* Fortifies Tepeaca city, *ib.* and sends his prisoners to be sold for slaves at Tlascala, *ib.* He receives a message from Guacachula for his protection against the Mexicans, *ib.* Expedition thither, 252. Defeats the Mexicans near Guacachula, and takes possession of the town after the Mexicans evacuating it, *ib.* By various accidents reinforced, *ib.* He resumes the conquest of Mexico, 254. Sends ships in pieces on men's backs from Tlascala for Mexico, *ib.* Transmits an account of his transactions to court, with a present of gold and jewels, *ib.* which is seized by the officers of the council of the Indies, *ib.* Successful issue of his solicitations in Spain, *ib.* His commissioners, their accusation of the bishop of Burgos, 255. Controversy between him and Velazquez determined in favour of the former, *ib.* His conduct approved by a letter from the emperor, 256. Receives a supply of arms and ammunition from Vera Cruz, &c. *ib.* Resolves to march to Tezeuco, reviews his army, and issues orders to be observed in the march, *ib.* He advances to Tezeuco, makes an alliance there, and orders some alterations in its government, 257. Informed in several particulars about Caminatzin, *ib.* Surmounts several difficulties in the way to Mexico, 256. The Mexican army retreats, *ib.* Advances to Tezeuco, where an alliance is made, *ib.* Marches for Iztapalapa, and his motives what, 257. Is in great danger here from opening the sluices, *ib.* Retreats to Tezeuco, and repulses the Mexicans, *ib.* Several provinces submit, *ib.* His lenity to his prisoners, and message by them to the emperor Guatimozin, 258. Why he undertakes an expedition to Yalcocon before the siege of Mexico, *ib.* Repulses the enemy, and takes possession of the place, 259. Takes several other places in his way, *ib.* Defeats the Tacubans several times, 259. Obligated to retreat from the causeway to Tezeuco, *ib.* And forced to retreat from Sachimillo, proceeds to Guastapeque, 261. Beats the Mexicans at Quitlavaca, *ib.* The inhabitants submit, 262. Marches to Sachimillo, gains a pass, drives the enemy from under the walls into the city, which he forces, is taken prisoner, and wounded, but rescued by Olla, *ib.* A body of Mexicans without the

walls forced to retreat, *ib.* Possesses a temple, and puts a large body of the enemy to flight, *ib.* Retreats to Tezeuco, and a plot against his life discovered, 263. Also against the chief captains, *ib.* Seizes the conspirators, and his stratagem to satisfy justice, what, *ib.* Appoints a body-guard, 264. Xicotencal withdraws with a body of men, *ib.* His preparations for the siege of Mexico, *ib.* Destroys the aqueducts, and defeats a large fleet of canoes on the lake, 265. Drives the enemy from the causeway into the city, *ib.* Gains the principal street, and forces a temple, *ib.* Proceeds to Iztapalapa, and by extricating Sandoval from the canoes, drives the enemy into the city, 266. Evacuates Iztapalapa, and seizes Tapeaquilla, *ib.* How he straitens the Mexicans greatly, *ib.* Countermines a plot of the Mexicans, by which their peraguas are either sunk or taken, *ib.* Makes pacific overtures by some prisoners, which are accepted by the emperor and his council, but why opposed by the priests, 267. By whose means the council and prince change sentiments, *ib.* On knowing their resolution, he resumes his attacks with vigour, but is defeated, 268. To whom owing, *ib.* Deserted by the Indians, and by whose means, *ib.* Are recovered by his contrivance, *ib.* Again he pushes the attack on Mexico on receiving certain intelligence, 269. Establishes a footing in the city of Mexico, *ib.* Defeats them entirely, 270. Possesses the great square, and his furious progress, *ib.* Renews his overtures of peace, and a suspension of hostilities succeeds, *ib.* Renews his attacks on the emperor's quarter, and on a parley asked hearkens to negotiations of peace, 271. His reception of the emperor Guatimozin, when his prisoner, and the moving scene between them, 272. His reply to the emperor's demand, *ib.* His cruelty in racking the prime minister of Mexico to death, and the emperor for some time, in order to discover treasure, *ib.* Excuse to the emperor for this breach of his word, 273. Taxed with perfidy and cruelty, *ib.* He establishes a civil policy, and sends an account of his success, with rich presents, to court, *ib.* Several caziques and provinces submit, *ib.* Sends an embassy to Mechoacan, *ib.* His expedition against Garay, 275. In his way defeats the Ayotuxtetlatlans, *ib.* Danger at Chila, but triumphs at last, and forces the Panucans to retire, *ib.* He founds San Estavan del Puerto, *ib.* Why he destroys Chila and Panuco, *ib.* Great expence of this expedition, *ib.* (B). He destroys the enemy's country, and hangs the cazique of Tatupa, &c. *ib.* Repairs and parcels out the city of Mexico, *ib.* Builds himself a magnificent palace, 276. Defeats Garay's attempt, *ib.* Supercedes the Spanish officers in Mexico, 278. Why he sets out on an expedition for Ybuera, *ib.* When finished, *ib.* sails for Spain, and for what end, *ib.* Is made marquis of Guaxaca by the emperor Charles V. &c. *ib.* He returns with a limited commission, *ib.* Conspiracy against him by Guatimozin discovered, who, with his officers, is hanged for it, *ib.* Why suspected by Charles V. and the unaccountable treatment from the officers sent by the latter, 277. His immense fatigue and distress, *ib.* Embassy to him from Ticoantipe Cician Pipe, 278. Continues his patriotism, and concurs with the viceroy Mendoza in new discoveries, *ib.* Sails for Spain, and his reception, *ib.* Sails also with the emperor to Algiers, 279. His expedition to the continent of America, xv. 336. His last military action in Algiers, and death, with his character, xiv. 279

Cortez, a Maltese knight, assassinated, and the punishment of the murderers, vii. 497

Cortona, or Crotona, described, xiii. 272

Corvo Island, one of the Azores, described, vi. 157

Corunna, &c. sacked by a fleet and army from queen Elizabeth, in favour of don Antonia, viii. 271

Corwar, the English settlement, with vast variety of fowl, fish, &c. iv. 385

Cos, or Lango, one of the Rhodian islands, with its castle and trade, vii. 393

Cosby appointed governor of New-York, his altercations with president Van Dam, and the consequences, xiv. 544. The French and Indians troublesome during his government, *ib.* His conduct exceptionable, *ib.*

Cosmas, a Melchite, possessed with all the churches in Egypt, i. 364, by what means he obtained the patriarchate, *ib.* Made Patriarch of the Jacobites, 512

Cosmi, Cosmin, a sea-port of Pegu, iii. 239. Why gone to decay, 242. Island off its coast, *ib.*

Cosmo, succeeds as great duke of Florence, xiii. 537. His zeal against the Protestants in Germany, and on the Sienese revolt, his assisting the Imperialists, and having Sien-



- succeeded to him, *ib.* Institutes the order of St. Stephen, out of regard to the house of Austria, and the original design, 538. Tragical account of his sons John and Garcia, with Cosmo's death and great character, *ib.*  
 Cosmo II. succeeds his father as great duke of Florence, *xiii.* 530. Magnificence of his niece's marriage with the French king, *ib.* Assists the duke of Mantua against Savoy, and builds the fine chapel of San Lorenzo as a mausoleum, *ib.*  
 ——— III. succeeds Ferdinand II. great duke of Tuscany, *xiii.* 539. Account of his marriage with Louisa of Orleans, *ib.* Firmness in his answer to the French ambassador after Louisa's parting from him, *ib.* Marriage of his eldest, and second son John Gaston, the latter of whom succeeded him, *ib.* but both dying without issue, their uncle Francis-Marie succeeded, 541. He obtains the title of royal highness, *ib.* His attachment to the pope and devotion, with his recommending religious persons to him, *ib.* Is made a canon of St. Peter's, and the occasion, 542. His other foopperies and adventures at Rome, under the name of count Pitigliano, *ib.* Has several important affairs to manage there, his breaking with the Genoese and Liguorians, and the occasion, *ib.* His difficulties upon the death of the king of Spain, *ib.* He visits, in his own galley, the duke of Anjou, king of Spain, with his brother the cardinal's profound doubting, and at last embracing the French interest, 543. His great moderation, *ib.* The vast encouragement given by the grand duke to learned men, *ib.* Whence indifferent about the stipulations preceding the quadruple alliance, with regard to the succession of Tuscany, *ib.* His death, *ibid.*  
 Costa, De, sent into Portugal by king Alvares, and drowned at sea, *vi.* 481  
 ——— (Ebn Luka) a famed Christian philosopher among the Arabs, *i.* 498. His monument erected by Senharib, *ib.*  
 ——— Rica province described, *xiv.* 443 Whence its name, 444 (Q)  
 Corso (Andrea de) account of him, *x.* 592 (A). Escape and reception by Doria, 593 (B). His operations retarded by a storm, *ib.*  
 Cossa, Balthazar, is chosen pope John XXIII. *xiii.* 370. Some account of, *ib.*  
 Cossacks, origin and etymology, with an account of them, *xii.* 498. Make an irruption into Tartary, 503. Project against them, with the occasion, is adopted by the king and senate of Poland, 520. They revolt, are defeated several times by Koniecpolski, and their leaders beheaded, contrary to treaty, *ib.* A decree passes in the diet against the Cossacks, and they force Koniecpolski to relinquish his design on Tchemeravia, *ib.* (A) & 521. Their declaration at the same time, *ib.* The former conditions renewed to them, with the particular cause of their revolt afresh, *ib.* Their dreadful ravages in Poland, 522. Proposals of peace accepted, 523  
 ——— general of, the Turks and Tartars are defeated by him on the hither side of the Neister, and the country on the other side laid waste, *xii.* 542 (N)  
 ——— their various names, *xiii.* 11. Description of those who inhabit the Ukraine, 13  
 ———, several forts described, *xiii.* 13. How forced to make peace with Poland, 160  
 ——— Zaporog, revolt against Poland, *xiii.* 167  
 ——— choose another hetman, and Mazeppa excommunicated and hanged in effigy, with some of his accomplices broken on the wheel, *xiii.* 213  
 Cotatta, a party of Cortez's men penetrate to it, *xiv.* 190  
 Cot-bah, what, and by whom introduced, *i.* 299  
 Cotoner (Raphael de) the fifty-eighth great master of Maltha, *vii.* 512. Assists the Venetians against the Turks, and ill success of his gallies, 513. Sends fresh supplies to the Venetians, and dies, *ib.*  
 ——— (Nicholas de) the fifty-ninth grand master, suppresses the Barbary corsairs, sells the isles of Christopher to the French, and transports the Spanish infanta to Barcelona, *vii.* 514. Harlem's priory sold to the Hollanders, *ib.* Noble contest with two Turkish sultanas, and fortifies the island against the Turks, 515. Obtains a decision from Lewis XIV. in favour of the order, 516. Contest with prince Demetrius about the Ostroglands in Poland, and assists the viceroy of Sicily, with the kind reception of the English fleet, *ib.* Peace concluded with France, and his death, 517  
 Cotton shrub in China, how propagated, *iii.* 616 (F). Its manufacture described, 619  
 ——— *Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.*  
 Cotton plentiful in Florida, *xiv.* 431  
 Couchin, the Dutch settlement at, how taken from the Portuguese, *iv.* 503. The English obliged to abandon it, and the town described, 504  
 Couci (Enguerrand de) prosecutes the emperor's claim to the succession of the house of Austria, but without success, *xi.* 59  
 Coudres-isle, in St. Laurence-river, *xiv.* 551  
 Coventry (Mr.) sent by Charles II. to Stockholm, to draw off the king from the triple alliance, *xi.* 611  
 Covilan (Pedro) travels into India and Ethiopia, after Prestor John's country, *iii.* 112. His good and bad treatment there, 113. Discovered, *ib.* (H). Sent in search after Prestor John's kingdom, *vi.* 171. His pretended discovery and improbability, *ib.* Why detained in Abyssinia, 256  
 Couko, Cooko, kingdom, a refuge for the Algerine runaways, and independent of them, *vii.* 227  
 Council, general, of the holy league at Venice, with the fleet and army to be raised, *viii.* 263  
 ———, its decree about the election of future popes, *x.* 678  
 ———, grand, at Rome, for continuing the war, but their plan refused, *viii.* 264  
 ——— Aulic, and their decisions not final in all cases, *x.* 623  
 ——— of senators called at Cracow, their proceedings, *xii.* 610  
 Courage between the tropics, whether the effect of climate, *xiv.* 403 (G) in fin.  
 Courcelles, M. made governor of Canada in Mefy's room, and a commission to try the latter if necessary, *xiv.* 603. His expedition against the Iroquois, and after little success he returns to Quebec, 604. Difference between him and Talon, what, with their characters, 607. His conduct with regard to the savages, and success, &c. 608. His wise conduct in preventing a war with the Indians, 609. His design of outwitting the Canadians, and how, 611. Is recalled, *ib.*  
 Coureurs des Bois (Rangers) regulation against them, *xiv.* 613  
 Courland, disputes about the succession to that duchy, with an account thereof, *xii.* 617. Regency issue writs for assembling a diet, in which three candidates are proposed, *ib.* Over-awed by the Russians, who force Maurice to retire, 618. Its affairs, *xiii.* 264, and the states eventually choosing count Maurice of Saxe, natural son to Augustus, which is disagreeable to the Poles, and that nobleman put under the ban, &c. *ib.*  
 Courlanders and Esthonians, their piracies, *xii.* 15. Vanquished, *ib.*  
 Court, Imperial, and its session, *xi.* 381  
 ——— of Sweden, and their province, *xii.* 213  
 Courtemanche, father, his success in reclaiming prisoners from the savages, and in other matters, *xiv.* 674  
 Courteen, (Sir William) makes a settlement in Barbadoes, *xv.* 173 (S)  
 Courtrai taken by the archduke Leopold, *ix.* 426  
 Couvanski, general of the Strelitzes, aspires to the crown, by intending the murder of the czars and Sophia, &c. who are obliged to retire to the monastery of the Trinity, *xiii.* 178 (R). He and his son, &c. seized and beheaded, *ib.*  
 Cow-hill, at the cape of Good-hope, described, *vi.* 399  
 ——— sea, Cow-Valley, whence so called, and described, *vi.* 400  
 Cows-bay, or Baya das Vaccas, described, and its commerce, *vi.* 412 (A)  
 ——— river, *xv.* 5  
 Cox, lieutenant-governor of Barbadoes, and his character, *xv.* 191  
 ——— his account of Carolana (Florida) *xiv.* 431  
 Coxinga, or Ching-ching-kong, besieges Nan-king, *iii.* 735. Defeated by the besieged, sails to Formosa, settles his new kingdom there, with his death, 738. See *iv.* 445, and notes  
 Coylan, a city in Pegu, *iii.* 239  
 Cozumel island, by whom first discovered, with a town, temples, &c. *xiv.* 170  
 ——— isle, whence so called, and its situation, *xiv.* 177  
 Cracow, its surrender to the Imperialists, *xii.* 361  
 ——— Bishop of, his massacre. See Boleflag II.  
 ——— the comedy of, a pasquinade so called with five acts, handed about, *xii.* 558  
 Cracus I. chosen duke of Poland on the expulsion of the Palatines, *xii.* 443. His victories over the Franks, *ib.* His character,



- character, death, and difference about the time of his reign, with a marvellous exploit by him, *ib.* (A)
- Cracus II. succeeds his father Cracus I. duke of Poland, who, after a short reign, is killed by his brother Lechus II. *xii.* 443
- Crailli (Archambaude de) the constable's brother, received into high favour at court, *ix.* 125
- Cranfield made governor of New-England, on a new regulation of their charters by the crown, turns out the former governor, but is turned out himself, *xiv.* 521
- Cranganor, anciently a Jewish republic, with their history, *iii.* 165. Taken by the Dutch, *iv.* 143 (Q). Its decay, *ib.* Jews settled ever since the captivity, 504. Its channel, 505
- Craon (Peter) attempts to assassinate the constable, and leaves him for dead, then flies into Bretagne, *ix.* 121
- Cratea reduced by Soleyman, *v.* 161
- Cremona, the Imperialists take it, but retaken, and how the Florentine troops become the best in the army, *xiii.* 514. How sold to Venice, *x.* 282
- Cremonese, and its capital Cremona described, *xiv.* 54
- Creoles of Louisiana, what, and their make to what owing, *xv.* 60
- Crequi defeated and taken in Treves, with Condé's character of him, *ix.* 462. Famous campaign, and defeat of a body of the enemy at Kokersberg, with his taking Fribourg, &c. 463. His second glorious campaign against the duke of Lorraine, whom after great address he defeats, 464. Insulted at Rome, and his demands notified to the pope before he quits Italy, and returns to France, *x.* 153. After negotiations were twice broke off, a treaty is concluded at Pifa, *ib.* Defeats Spaan near Minden, *xi.* 297. The French under him take Luxembourg and Triers, 302
- Cressy famous battle of, won by Edward III. of England, against Philip de Valois, *ix.* 96
- Crevecoeur fort on the Gold-Coast described, *vi.* 673. Its site, *xiv.* 615
- Crevelt battle, in which prince Ferdinand defeats the French, *xv.* 622. Count de Gisors killed there, *ib.*
- Creuomyssius, governor of Bohemia, *xv.* 451
- Creeks, interview and treaty with Oglethorpe at Savannah, *xv.* 100. Character of them, *ib.*
- Crillon's answer to the king on confiding the execution of Guise to him, *ix.* 288
- Crim Tartary, the demands of the khan of, with some account of the country, *xiii.* 179 (S)
- Criminals in Sweden, allowed to purge themselves by oath, *xii.* 216
- Crisafy, M. de, account of him and his brothers, *xiv.* 642. His death for neglect of his services, 657
- Cristinaux (Creek) Indians, account of, *xiv.* 606. See Creeks
- Croc, governor of Bohemia, *xv.* 451
- Crocodiles, not now seen in Lower Egypt, *v.* 4
- of Kongo described, and their eggs eaten by the natives, *vi.* 437
- of Egypt described, *vi.* 185. See Ancient History, *i.* 181
- of Abissinia, *vi.* 185
- Croisade, or Holy war, account of, from Oriental writers, *ii.* 177. See Croises
- in what sense advantageous to Christendom, *iv.* 107
- preached with great success in France, by Walter Sans Avoir, and Peter the Hermit, &c. *ix.* 576. Its name is from a cross of red cloath on the right shoulder, and who were the first that put themselves on their march, with their numbers and leaders, *ib.* Preached with success in England and Germany, 609
- against the Albigenes, and success, *ix.* 617
- against the Moors in Spain published, and the Croisaders obtain a signal victory, *ix.* 618
- a new, preached for the Holy-land, when 30,000 boys, &c. taking the cross, the greatest part of them perished, *ix.* 618. A powerful, unto the Holy-land resolved on, *ib.*
- ordered to be preached every where by the pope, upon the entire expulsion of the Christians from Asia, *ix.* 651
- against robbers in France, *ix.* 684
- preached against the Hussites, *ix.* 714
- against the Turks, who are defeated by Uladislaus of Hungary, *x.* 18
- preached in Hungary against Selim, who concludes a peace with Ladislaus, and the army raised for that expedition turn their arms against the nobility, with their outrage and dispersion, *x.* 65 (W)
- Croisade another against the Moors in Portugal, *x.* 668. The croises take Lisbon by assault, and a third against the pagans of the North, who are converted by fire and sword, 669
- a new one, whose first exploit is the reduction of Zara, and they next take Constantinople, *x.* 694. Greatly forwarded by pope Honorius III. successor to pope Innocent, 696
- against the infidel Prussians, who are defeated, *x.* 713
- preached up against the Turks, *xiii.* 487
- pope's project of one, how frustrated, *xi.* 8
- Croises, in great straits in Antioch, *ii.* 177. Strangely delivered, *ib.* Take Rama, and lay close siege to Jerusalem, which they take, with the horrid slaughter of the Jews and Moslems, *ib.* Farther conquests in Syria, 180. Horrid cruelties in Asia Minor, 208. Fall into a dreadful ambuscade, 209. Take Nice, defeat the Turks, and march to Antioch, *ib.* Hunger-bitten before Iconium, they abandon the siege, 217
- their horrid butcheries of the Jews, *v.* 536
- murder the rich Jews in Germany, committing other outrages, and Coloman, king of Hungary, denies them a passage, but is obliged to consent, *ix.* 577. Their bad success, 593
- enter into treaty with Alexius, take Constantinople, and restore his father, *ix.* 613. Substance of the treaty on Alexius's part, *ib.* (U). The Greek emperors neglect to fulfil their engagements with them, who take Constantinople a second time, and make a partition of the empire, 614. The pope confirms their proceedings, *ib.*
- take Damietta, after a very great loss of Saracens, *ix.* 622. Embark for the Holy Land, but the emperor puts into Otranto, when many of them return, 622 & 626. For this the emperor twice excommunicated, *ib.*
- an army of them under Capistran, joining Hunniades, raise the siege of Belgrade, *x.* 23
- three large armies made up of them, and their destination, *x.* 693. Defeat the Moors in Portugal, with their retaking Alcazar, and their arrival in the East, also the taking of Damietta, and defeat of sultan Meledin, 696
- Cromwell concludes a treaty with France, *viii.* 312, *ix.* 442. By his admirals takes Jamaica, *viii.* 315. Concessions obtained from Holland by him, *ix.* 442. His intrigues, and absurd proposition to the Dutch deputies about an union, *xi.* 570. Relaxes in his former demands to the Dutch deputies, but adds two disagreeable articles, 571. Several difficulties started to the proposals of peace, *ib.* Articles signed by the Dutch ambassadors, *ib.* His letter to the Genevois, with two thousand pounds for the protestants of Piedmont, and his minister Morland also sent, *xiv.* 46
- Cross-men, why Christians are so called in Japan, *iv.* 62 sub (W)
- Cross, the Holy, discovered by a Jew, *v.* 505 (R)
- order of it in Kongo, *vi.* 451
- , the ceremony of trampling upon it in Japan, *iv.* 62 (W)
- Crosse, president du, murdered by a conspiracy in Montpellier, *ix.* 367
- Crow, governor of Barbadoes, his first acts what, *xv.* 190. Is recalled, *ib.*
- Crown-Island, in the South-sea, described, *v.* 30
- point, account of it, *xiv.* 708 (S)
- Crowning of kings not used in Persia, Mogul's country, &c. *ii.* 635. See also *ii.* 601 (K)
- Croy, duke de, obliged to raise the siege of Belgrade, *xi.* 315
- Crozat's exclusive patent of Louisiana, *xv.* 19. His bad conduct about Louisiana, and character, 23. Complaints to court, what, *ib.* Part of his memorial, *ib.* Surrenders his patent, *ib.*
- Croze, Mr. de la, his unfair censure of Basnage's history exposed and exploded, *v.* 483, sub (E)
- Crucifixion, a Japonese punishment, how, and on whom inflicted, *v.* 16
- Cruz Vera. See Villa Rica
- Santa, in Morocco, why deserted by its inhabitants, *vii.* 193
- in the Isle of Tenerif described, *vi.* 143
- Vera, intelligence from thence changes the face of affairs with Cortez, *xiv.* 218
- Triumpho de la, by whom built, *xiv.* 276
- la Vera, Old and New, described, *xiv.* 438. Unhealthy situation, whence, *ib.* Centre of the American treasures,



- fures, and vast trade, *ib.* Fair here on the arrival of the  
 flora, *ib.*  
 Cruz Santa, account of that Danish island, xv. 236. How it  
 came after several revolutions into their hands, *ib.*  
 Cuama, or Zembere-river in Africa, described, and whence  
 so called, vi. 362 (B)  
 Cuba, when discovered by Columbus, and described, xv. 243.  
 xiv. 143. Colony settled there, and described, 158. After  
 much dissension, success in colonizing, *ib.* Its extent, pro-  
 duce, inhabitants, &c. *ib.* (A)  
 — St. Jago de, account of that capital, xv. 343. Trade,  
 344. Its products, *ib.* Secrecy of its government dis-  
 tinguished, *ib.*  
 — island, the first discovered, v. 53. Its situation, xv.  
 335. Discovery by Columbus, and when, *ib.* & xiv. 143.  
 Barbarity of the Spaniards, and found to be an island, xv.  
 335. Miseries of its inhabitants from the Spaniards, 336.  
 Chief towns, places, and climate, 343. Mariel harbour  
 possessed by the English at taking the Havanna, *ib.*  
 Cubagua colony, its produce, what, xiv. 153. Account of,  
 xv. 352. Disobedience and wealth of the Spaniards there,  
*ibid.*  
 Cubos, in Japan, their original office, iv. 12, 13. Strip the  
 dairo of his secular power, 12. Pay a triennial homage to  
 him for it, 13. Their original power, 12. Four chief  
 ministers, council, and politics, *ib.* Numerous and splen-  
 did court, 14. Standing forces, weapons, vast revenues,  
 and riches, *ib.* (Q)  
 Cuchupuya, her speech to inca Huyayna Capac in behalf of  
 the Chuchupuyans, xiv. 414. The united exclamation of  
 her women attendants, and the inca's favourable answer, *ib.*  
 Cueva, cardinal de, viceroy of Naples, x. 506  
 Cufa plundered by the Karmatians, i. 520. A second time,  
 and re-taken by the khalif's forces, 588. Abandoned by  
 the khalifs, and the pretended residence of the Rechabites  
 where, but refuted, v. 539  
 Cufans take Hosein's part against Yesid, i. 301. Over-reach-  
 ed by Obeid-allah, 302. Abandon Hosein's interest, and  
 fight against him, 304. Resolve to retrieve their fault in fa-  
 vour of his son, 319. Roused to it by Soliman, with their  
 shameful baseness to him, 322. How inspirited by Al  
 Mokhtar, 327. Surrender to Al Mufab, *ib.* Open their  
 gates to Abdal Malek, 331  
 — join in rebellion with Zeid, i. 368. Defeated by Yu-  
 sef, *ib.* Revolt against Merwan, and quelled by Abd'allah,  
 376. Taxed an obole per head by Almanfur, 406  
 — exhorted to assist Ali, i. 263. Send him a reinforce-  
 ment, 264  
 Cufic characters, among the Arabs, by whom improved, i.  
 527  
 Cugna (Tristram de) the Portuguese admiral, his brave re-  
 pulsive before Magadoxa, vi. 334. Attacks, plunders, and  
 burns Brava, 335. Seizes on the isle of Zocotora, 355  
 Cujavia, bishop of, nominates Augustus king of Poland, xii.  
 557. Unformality of both parties, *ib.* Sends a deputation  
 to congratulate his accession, 559  
 Culab territory ravaged with fire and sword, i. 383  
 Culiacan port, on the South-Sea, iv. 259, sub (F). Ships sent  
 thence in search of the North-east passage, *ib.*  
 — province described, xiv. 436  
 Culm, Castellan of, his interview with Augustus at Dresden,  
 and his proposals for securing of success, xii. 552. Embar-  
 rassment on his return, relieved by count Fleming's arrival  
 from Dresden, *ib.* Election postponed by his protesting,  
 556  
 —, account of that town, xii. 650  
 Culmean code, and other laws in Prussia, xii. 650  
 Cuma, a town in Brasil, its trade, xiv. 478  
 Cumani, irruption of that savage people into Hungary, xi. 8  
 Cumberland-Island, in Georgia, described, xv. 105  
 Cumberland, earl of, his commission by privy-seal from queen  
 Elizabeth, for destroying her enemy's territories, xv. 361.  
 Journal of his voyage to Porto Rico, *ib.* which he takes,  
 362. His loss and return to England, *ib.*  
 Cumming (Sir Alexander) his signal services to Great Britain  
 in gaining over the Cherokees, xv. 92. Some of their chiefs  
 arrive with him in England, but these advantages little im-  
 proved, and as little rewarded, *ib.*  
 Cunha (Nunhoda) made general of India, and his vast suc-  
 cesses, iv. 130  
 Cunegunda undergoes the fiery ordeal unhurt, x. 645  
 Cunocephalus of Africa described, v. 690 (F). How it gave  
 rise to dividing the twelve hours of the day and night, 691  
 Cunossus, on the death of Boreus and Spera, seizes on their  
 dominions, xii. 625  
 Cunningham, governor of Jamaica, his character, and saving  
 the minister his chief merit, xv. 308. His altercations, in-  
 temperance, and death, *ib.*  
 Cupang-soap, a sea-port in Kamboja, with its commerce, iii.  
 406  
 Cupruli, that vizier's integrity and fall, with the revolutions at  
 the Porte, xii. 393  
 Curcuas, the Greek governor of the Moslems, orders crosses  
 to be set up where Christian pulpits stood, i. 521. Success  
 against khalif al Radi, 530  
 Curd, the Nestorian convent and all its people reduced to  
 ashes, i. 401  
 Curds of Al Mawfel forced to pay homage to Adado'dawla,  
 i. 581  
 — made dreadful inroads into Persia, ii. 655  
 Curuba seizes on Aleppo, i. 564. Made tributary, and plun-  
 dered by the Greeks, 565. Causes Saado'ddawla to be  
 prayed for, *ib.*  
 Cusa, cardinal, imprisoned by Sigismond, duke of Austria, and  
 the reason, x. 26 (S)  
 Cutahia recovered by the Othmans, v. 153  
 Cut-point, (Point-coupée) post, where, and why so called, xv.  
 59. Circumstance about the river's channel, what, *ib.*  
 Cutteris, Kuttereys, or Settreas, of India, their office and dig-  
 nity, iii. 25. Their race why destroyed, their antient state  
 flourishing, and once divided into thirty-four tribes, with  
 their decline and present state, 26  
 Cuyo, the five islands so called, near the Philippines, describ-  
 ed, iv. 197  
 Cuzco, arrival of a Spanish party there from Pizarro, and  
 their friendly reception by both parties, xiv. 296. And the  
 vast treasure brought from thence, *ib.* Pizarro's entry into  
 it, treasures found, and the brutal behaviour of the Spa-  
 niards there, 304. Specimen of the immense wealth found  
 there, 307 (D). Account of the inca besieging the Spa-  
 niards there, 310. Progress, *ib.* Long continuance, 311.  
 Prodiges told by the Spanish writers at it, *ib.* Reflections  
 thereupon, *ib.* Number of Indians and Spaniards slain,  
*ib.* (A). Gallant actions in single combat, and the Indians  
 always worsted, *ib.* Siege why relinquished on Almagro's  
 approach, 313. Conduct of the magistrates there, with an  
 insurrection thereby occasioned, 348. Discontents there,  
 what, 349  
 — valley, Vega's slip about it, and followed by Ricaut,  
 xiv. 374 (A)  
 — in Peru described, xiv. 462. Rich mines beyond the  
 mountains, *ib.*  
 Cycle of twelve lunar years used among the Mungls, ii. 258  
 — of sixty years used in China, invented by Whang-ti's  
 minister Ta-nau, iii. 676 (O)  
 Cylongo, or Chilongo, the third province of Loango, de-  
 scribed, vi. 537  
 Cyprian brass mines in the kingdom of Ava, iii. 262  
 Cypriots, rupture between them and the Genoese, x. 561  
 Cyprus Island taken by the Moslems, i. 251  
 — (Candia) the Jews there converted, v. 492  
 — how annexed to the republic of Venice, x. 276, 301  
 (G). The queen of Cyprus's reception there, and provi-  
 sion for her, *ib.* Arrival of the Turkish fleet there, and  
 debarkation of the troops, with Nicofia besieged, and the  
 Turks defeated at a breach, 357. Famine among the be-  
 sieged, with Tieni's noble resistance in a sally, *ib.* Dila-  
 tory conduct of the Spaniards, whose fleet, with the  
 pope's, joins the Venetians, *ib.* Taken by the Turks from  
 the Venetians, after the loss of 100,000 men, 366. Taken  
 by the Genoese, 562  
 — Proceedings of the Genoese fleet there, and admiral  
 Peter Fulgofio takes Famagosta, with the whole island, but  
 restored, except that capital, x. 562  
 Cyrenians, their bloody massacre by the Jews, v. 489  
 Cyriacus, bishop, brings a noted ecclesiastical impostor to  
 condign punishment, i. 404  
 Cyril, the Jacobite patriarch of Alexandria, his answer to  
 Dionysius of Antioch publicly read, and his usual residence,  
 i. 667. Death and various works, 675. Charity, *ib.*  
 —, bishop, takes up arms against the tumultuous Jews, v.  
 510 (F). A dreadful squabble with the prefect, and raises  
 a regiment of monks against him, *ib.* Followed by the  
 horrid butchery of the amiable Hypatia, *ib.*  
 Cyrus, an Egyptian bishop, buys the Arabs out of his coun-  
 try, i. 241. Sent prisoner to the emperor for it, and dis-  
 patched to buy a peace from them without success, *ib.*  
 — Ebn Tebith raises a revolt in Mesopotamia, and de-  
 feated by one John, a Syrian, i. 383  
 — or Kurus, taken and destroyed by the Greeks, i. 510  
 Cyziacum



Cyziacum taken by Soieyman, ii. 204

Czar, his irruption and cruelty in Lithuania, with several defeats given the Russians, xii. 489. They still continue their irruptions, but are again defeated, and a truce concluded, ib. His irruption into Livonia, 495. His cruel ravages, particularly in Ascherod, 496. Sues for peace from Poland, 497, which is concluded at Zapolia, with the giving up of Livonia, ib. See Peter

—, ceremonies of his coronation, xiii. 80. A prayer read by one of the metropolitans, ib. The archbishop of Moscow's charge and homage to the czar, with that of the nobles, &c. 81. His titles, ib. Meaning of it, ib. (K). His titles at full length, ib. (L). Succession how regulated, and the sovereign's power, 82. Numerous court, and attendants, with the three orders of knighthood, ib. Principal state officers, with the czar's table-expence, and revenues, 83 (M). Whence arising, ib. (O), & 84. The whole annual expence of the government, ib. Military establishment of the emperor, ib.

Czarewna and Czaricza explained, xiii. 150 (F)

Czarneski defeated by prince Adolphus and Wrangel, xii. 358. His brutality in Pomerania, 361. Defeats a body of Swedes near Jarislaw, 525

Czarowitz, what, xii. 150 (F)

—, his worthless character, xiii. 223. Birth of a son to him, and the mother's death, 231. Brought to Moscow, and what passes between the father and son, with the latter's renouncing the succession, and the form of it, 238 (A). His brother Peter's right of succession to Russia recognized, and confirmed by an oath, with the form of it, ib. (A). His examination by several questions and answers, with his father's letters to him, and the answers also to them, ib. (C). His answers to the several questions put to him by his father, and his confession far from sincere, notwithstanding the important condition on which it was made; and his forming a design to usurp the throne in his father's life-time, 244. The contrariety of their dispositions, ib. Trial, ib. Sentence of death pronounced against him, 245. From the violent agitation of his mind, &c. he is thrown into convulsions, with the czar's pardoning, and blessing him in a very pathetic manner, and his death in prison, 246. Pompous funeral, and various opinions about his death, 247. His accomplices punished with severity, and his mother and aunt, the princess Mary, imprisoned for life, ib.

Czallaw, account of the battle won there by the king of Prussia against prince Charles of Lorraine, xv. 631

Czechius, account of that first ruler in Bohemia, xv. 451

Czeremtoff, Michael Romanow's uncle, his underhand dealings with the archbishop of Moscow in the election, xiii. 147

## D.

**D**Agobert persecutes the Jews in Gaul, v. 522

—, son of Clotaire II. resides at Metz, with an account of his government, viii. 647. His defeat by Bertolalde, and narrow escape, 648. Succeeds his father Clotaire II. and becomes the fourth monarch of France, ib. Gives his brother Charobert Aquitaine, ib. Good and bad character, ib. Succeeds his brother in Aquitaine, 649. War with the Slavonians, and its many untoward consequences, ib. Cruelty to the Bulgarians who took shelter in Bavaria, ib. Revolt of the Saxons, ib. Declares his son Sigebert king of Austrasia, and Clovis his successor in Neustria and Burgundy, ib. Subdues the Gascons, and obliges the count of Bretagne to do him homage, but dies, 650. The number of his wives, ib. (M). Deposed, and exiled into the western isles of Scotland, Childebert being substituted in his room, 652, but the latter deposed, and Childeric placed on the throne, ib.

— II. son of Sigebert, restored to his father's throne in Austrasia, viii. 654, which he enjoys but a few years, ib. Upon the death of Childebert II. is declared king of the Franks, and Grimoalde, Pepin's son, made mayor, 657. Is under the tutelage of an old woman, and a young child her grandson, ib.

Dahar, Al, an enemy to the Rhodian knights, vii. 410. Makes peace with them, ib. Renews the war, defeated, and put to flight, 412

Dahomans, their bloody wars with the Whidans, vi. 613. A description of their strength, policy, manners, and king, 614

D'aillabout succeeds Montmagny, governor of Canada, xiv. 587

Dair, Al Akul, (see Akulah) i. 568

Dairos, the antient monarchs, also pontiffs, of Japan, iv. 12. Their power and magnificence, ib. Stripped of their temporal power by the Cubos, 13 (N). Retain the ecclesiastical authority, ib. Origin of their subjection to the Cubos, ib.

Dakem made governor of Dekan and Kunkam, iii. 133

Dalecarlians revolt, and are headed by Engelbert Engelbraktion, xii. 248. Marching to Charles Canutson's assistance, are defeated, and he renounces the crown, 256 (A). Revolt against Erickson, and beg a truce, with the terms, 281. Again revolting, submit, ib. A tumult by them for the prince of Denmark in Stockholm, quelled by force, 423

Daman city, in Vizapur, described, iii. 139. Taken from the Portuguese by the Maharattas, its decay since, fort and garrison, ib. iv. 142. Besieged in vain by Aureng-zeb, ib. Soil, climate, and port, 169

Dambi Angola crowned king of Angola, his vile character, and short reign, vi. 504

Dame, Nostre, and Lewis Mounts, in St. Laurence-river, described, xiv. 551

Damian, admiral to Al Mostafi, his success in Egypt, i. 509. Also against the Greeks, in the islands and coasts of the Egean-sea, 512

—, Peter, goes to Milan as legate, with measures for reforming the clergy, which the archbishop swears to do, ix. 561

Damiata plundered and burnt by the Greeks, i. 470. Fortified after by khalif Motawakkel, 471. Delivered up by the Christians to the sultan, and conclude a truce, ix. 623. The pope sends legates into several parts, difference with the emperor, and the latter's justification of his proceedings, ib.

Damot kingdom in Abissinia, its rich mines, vi. 272 (E)

Dampier's voyage round the world, v. 30. Reflections on it, ib. His character, birth, &c. 93. The ships he meets with in his course, 94. Cuts logwood in the bay of Campeachy, ib. His account of the tortoises of Gallipagos, 95. Makes a descent on the Spanish coast, 97. Lands on the coast of Amapalla, 98. Description of the inhabitants, ib. Burns the town of Paita, and miscarries on Guaiquil, ib. Project of settling on the isthmus of Darien, 99. Escapes a plot of the Spaniards against him, ib. Joins a large party of the French and English buccaneers, ib. Takes the city of Leon, 100. Sundry descents on the Mexican coasts, ib. Their fleet separates, and waylaid by the Spaniards, 101. Proposal for settling on the Philippines, ib. Arrival at the Piscadores, and the islands described, 102. End of his voyage, 103. His voyage to the South-Sea, vi. 16. Description of the coasts and islands, &c. 22. Arrival on the coasts of New-Guinea, 25. New islands described on his return, 26. Adventure on that of Providence, 27. Also with the natives at Cape Orford, 28. The people described, 29. Dreadful volcano in the neighbouring island, ib. Arrives on an island which he calls New-Britain, ib. His proposal for finding a north passage by Cape Blanco, on the Pacific Ocean, but neglected, xiv. 428, sub (N)

Dampierre beaten by the Moravians, while Buquoy makes some progress in Bohemia, xi. 198

Damville puts himself at the head of a confederacy, ix. 273

Damulian tongue on the coast of Coromandel, iv. 564 (X)

Dan, the first king of Denmark, raised to the crown by his success against the Saxons, xi. 664. Marries Gritha, a Saxon lady, with his death and character, ib. Placed by some about the time of Hother, 669 (S)

— II. twentieth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Olaus I. xi. 671. The first years of his reign glorious, but the last infamous, ib.

— III. twenty-third king of Denmark, succeeds in the room of his father Frotho II. xi. 671. He reduces the Saxons, is wounded in single combat, and afterwards dies, ibid.

Dancale kingdom, where situated, vi. 321. King and court, and odd reception of the Portuguese, ib. (A). Attendants, poverty, and greediness, 322. The subjects black, and very poor, 323

Dance, a strange one among the negroe ladies, iii. 202 (Q)

Dancers, in the Indian worship, all prostitutes, iii. 208 (K)

Danda, a province of Angola, described, vi. 495

Dandi Rajah-pur, a sea-port in Vizapur, iii. 140. Its fort, ib. Taken by Seva-ji, 144

Dandolo



- Dandolo (Henrico) the forty-first doge of Venice, his wife administration, with the Pisans taking Pola, and a war thereupon, x. 199. Venetians re-take the place, and intercept a homeward-bound Turkey fleet, ib. Trade with Verona prohibited, and upon making satisfaction, restored by a peace, ib. The Istrians submit, and Zara taken, 200. The Zaratines revolt, and are conquered, with the death of that doge, and his character, 201
- the Venetian admiral, defeats the combined fleets of Greece and Genoa, x. 203. After a bloody engagement, he defeats another Genoese squadron under Michael Doria, with his character, 204. The Genoese are again defeated, and their fleet of merchant-ships intercepted by him, with the success of the Venetians against them in Syria, ib.
- Giovanni, the forty-eighth doge of Venice, in his time Venice overflowed and shaken by an earthquake, x. 206. War with the patriarch of Aquileia and Istria, also fruitless attempts upon Trieste and in Syria, ib. Death of the Doge, ib.
- , admiral, taken prisoner, who dashes out his own brains, x. 207
- Francisco, chosen fifty-second doge of Venice, his death, x. 209. His character in private and public, ib.
- Andrea, the fifty-fourth doge of Venice, death and character, x. 211
- Danemarck, a church, why so called, xii. 231 (C). Occasion of building it, ib.
- Danes, misunderstanding between them and the Imperialists, how occasioned, xi. 260. Their successes, also the conquest of Bremen and Verden, 291. Their persons and dress, 654. Manner of living, learning, and genius, with their character, ib. Condition of their nobility before and since the government became absolute, 655. Policy of the court in disposing of offices, ib. A second migration of them to Prussia, &c. 689. A battle between them and the Holsteiners, xii. 53. Defeated by Adolphus of Schawenburg, and their loss, with different accounts of this action, 84 (A). Take a rich fleet of Lubeckers, 132 (A). Are defeated at sea off Femeren, with considerable loss, 171. Invade and ravage East-Gothland, but retreat, 263. Make reprisals for the devastation of the Swedes, 292. Take Staden, xi. 358. Are defeated in Bremen and Holstein, xii. 360. Their successes, 365. Repulsed from Malmoe, ib. Take several places in Holstein, 405. The Livonians and German dragoons sell some castles to them, xiii. 114
- Danewarck, the occasion for building that famous wall across Sleswick, what, xi. 691
- Daniel Sinopenis sent ambassador to the khalif Al Walid, i. 350. His account of the vast preparations there against the Christians, ib.
- Shah, the son of Akbar, his successes against his father in Dekan, iii. 62. Gives himself up to drinking, and dies of it, 63
- an enthusiastic missionary at St. Joseph, refusing to fly from the Iroquois, is barbarously mangled, xiv. 588
- Danish East-India company, its rise and progress, iv. 547 (A). First promoted by Christian IV., 548, and their first expedition into India, 549. An account of the great empire of Bismagar, and its civil wars, 550 (D). Their first settlement at Tanjour, 551 (E). First negotiation with the king of Ceylon, 552. First acquisition in India, 554. Causes of their decay there, 555. Often opposed by the rajah of Tanjour, 557. Misrepresented as pirates, ib. (N). Assisted by the English in Tranquebar, 559. Send missionaries into Tranquebar, ib. (P). Their zeal and intrepid conduct, 561 (Q). Settlement at Tanjour, 562. Advantages of propagating Christianity in those parts, 567. Objections and answers to it, ib. Obtains a charter from the court, 568 (C). The company transferred to Altena, 569, which alarms the maritime powers, 570 (D), who complain to the court of Denmark, ib. (E). The contest between them not yet decided, but regulated by Christian IV. 571. Their trade carried on into China, 572
- peasants fixed to the lands, and sold with them like any other stock, xi. 656. Change in their condition since the revolution in the year 1660, 657. Diseases consequent on their miserable situation, ib. Battle betwixt it and the Swedish army, in which the Swedish king is conqueror, ib. The brevity and perspicuity of their laws, 659. Account of coins, weights, and measures, 661 (K). Troops, their small pay, 662 (L). Religion, and the power of the clergy there when in the pulpit, ib. and they retain confession, 663. Have superintendants instead of bishops, Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- and their office, with their marriages and magnificent funerals, ib. Political interest, ib. Partition of the dominions made in a congress, xii. 9 (A)
- Danish proceedings in the diet, and a congress for settling disputes between them, Sweden, and Norway, xii. 35. The proceedings in a general diet, and the corrupt conduct of the clergy, 74. Differences between them and the court adjusted by Margaret, ib. Fleet defeated by that of Stralsund, which occasions the queen's death, and her character, 94. Annoy the commerce and harass the coasts of the Swedes, 111
- senate, their decree against Eric's adherents, xii. 102. Fleet besieges Stockholm, and their king subdues all West-Gothland, 112. Act of that diet to prevent persecution, with its contents and consequences, 147. The nobility extend their privileges, with the state of the kingdom, 172
- fleet defeated by the Swedes, xii. 293
- minister's memorial for a categorical answer as to the Russian preparations, and their answer, xiii. 263
- Dante's account of a battle between the Florentines and Arezzians, xiii. 290. His advice to the Florentines, 294. His severe fate, 295
- Dantzic built, xii. 13. Account of it, 426, 650. Disputes with that city, what, and at last compromised, 610
- Dantzickers revolt against Batori, xii. 494. They reject an accommodation, and are declared rebels, and by a storm they are prevented from surprising the camp of Zborowski, Batori's general, 495. He defeats them proceeding, under John de Collen, to Warsaw, ib. Their spirited conduct, through the clergy, gives a turn, 525
- Dara Shikowh, shah Jehan's eldest son, his character, iii. 87. Made viceroy of Kabul and Multan, yet much suspected by his father, 88
- a province of Biledulgerid, described, vii. 117
- khan, clapped in irons, and carried prisoner, iii. 75, and with his children is put to death by sultan Mohabet, 76
- Dararian sect, their impious tenets, vi. 47 (Z)
- Daras stormed and taken by the Moslems, i. 241
- Darbend, or Derbent, and its fortification, described, ii. 321 (C). Taken by Sofi Ismael, 602 (H). Submits to Abbas Shah, 610
- Baku, or Caspiangates, walls of its fortress built by Timur Bek, ii. 539 (B)
- Dargan opposes the wazir Shower, vi. 54. Cruelties and defeat, 55
- Daria, or Sir, a river in Karazm, described, ii. 712
- Darien, settlement there, how made, xiv. 156. Several embark from thence for Cuba, by virtue of an edict, 169
- (Panama) isthmus described, xiv. 446. The principal rivers there on the north and south side, ib. See Edinburgh.
- Scottish ships from it refused admittance into New-York, xiv. 541. Account of the Scottish colony there, xv. 290. The projector of that plan, and an act passed in Scotland for it, alarms the king, parliament of England, and other nations, 291. King William orders his ministers at Hamburgh and Lunenburgh against the Scots subscriptions, and gives no satisfactory answer to their addresses, ib. yet the Scots land at Darien, and settle regularly at St. Catharine's-Island, 292. Proclamation against them from England published in Jamaica, and the reasons therein, ib. also in other parts of America, 293. Defeat the Spanish governor of Santa Maria, taking him prisoner, and through famine quit the spot, ib. Their inexpressible misery and cruel treatment at Jamaica, ib. (A). Two fresh supplies for colonizing, how obliged to quit the settlement, with reflections on the whole, ib.
- Darmstadt, prince of, his reduction of Gibraltar, xi. 328
- Dartmouth-town, on Halifax-bay, surprized by the Indians, and how favoured by the French, xiv. 702. Double dealing of the French court, on remonstrances from the British minister, ib.
- Dasbourg, disputes about the succession of that counts, which, after much bloodshed, are accommodated, x. 701
- Dashmensa, the 19th khan of Bukharia, ii. 466
- Dauma, a province of Interior Africa, described, vii. 110
- Daumat al Jandal abandoned to Mahommed, i. 60. Taken by Khaled al Walid, 94. Where situated, 95
- the place where Ali's controversy with Moawiyah was to be decided, i. 269. The mock ceremony how performed, 270
- Daun recovers Saxony, xv. 632
- David, the 76th king of Abissinia, vi. 253



- David, bishop of Dara, chosen patriarch instead of George, deposed, and the occasion of a long schism, i. 401
- a Jewish chief, his fatal pride, v. 530. Destructive to the Jews, ib. Resentment against the worthy rabbi Saadiah, ib. (C)
- the son of Andronicus, settled in Paphlagonia, &c. ii. 227
- prince of Georgia, quarrels with his brother Simon, made governor of it, and tributary to Tahmasp shah, ii. 605
- Fort Saint, in Karnata, and the narrow escape of the English there, iii. 179
- Fort Saint, attempted by the French, x. 365. Sold to the East-India company, 387. Its territory, &c. described, and its strength, ib. (I)
- son of Taklima noth, raised to the Abissinian throne, vi. 254
- Dauphin arrests the king of Navarre, and some of his confidants beheaded, ix. 100. His treatment by Marcel, provost of Paris, and Charles of Navarre, 101. Obtains the title of regent from the parliament, with an insurrection of the peasants called Jacquiere, great numbers of whom are cut off by the nobles, 102. Declared perpetual vicar in Dauphiny, 115. Dies, after the departure of Burgundy's deputies, with his character, 142
- concurs with the malecontents in the sedition of la Praguerie, or Brigueurie, ix. 152. Forced to return and submit to the king, with what passed, 153. Relieves Harfleur, by storming an English redoubt, also reduces count d'Armagnac, who had revolted, 154. Leads an army against the Swiss, between whom and France he concludes the first treaty, 155. Retiring to Dauphiné, affects an independency of his father, 157. His hatred of Pierre de Bresse, accusation and trial, with his aversion against Agnes Sorel, his father's mistress, 158 (A). To aoid being seized by his father's troops, retires to Genep, with what passed between him and the duke of Burgundy, 160. Reconciliation mediated by the duke of Burgundy, and the king's answer, ib.
- takes Philipsburg, and several other places reduced, ix. 468
- by whom declared perpetual vicar of Arles, xi. 59. Forty thousand French under him, of which are 8000 English auxiliaries, sent to assist the emperor Frederick III. with the motives for sending such a vast body into the empire, 93. Four thousand brave Swiss give them battle near Baill, and all the French cut off to one man, who on his return home is beheaded for cowardice, ib. (L). Seizes some towns in Alsace, ib. Terrible ravages there by his troops called Armagnac, and an embassy first sent from the diet for satisfaction, 94. His answer and demands, with the emperor's reply, 95. The affair compromised, but peace not thereby restored in Alsace, and how at length brought about, ib.
- commands the French, xi. 310
- (Maffre) isle, xv. 13. Settlement there, 18. Invaded by an English privateer, and the damage, 19. Arrival of three French ships there, 23. Fortifications, &c. raised, but its harbour choaked up and abandoned, ib.
- Dauphiné, in whom first annexed to the crown of France, ix. 96. Invaded by the duke of Savoy, and Ombrune taken, 472. By whom yielded for a dinner, xi. 56
- Daulies, or tribe of Daws, great engineers among the Arabs, i. 87. Assist Mohammed before Tayef, ib.
- Dawas hired to murder Al Hakem, khalif of Syria and Egypt, his punishment, i. 624
- Dawd Siyah slays Ali Ebn Isa, i. 440
- son of Mahmud Shah, murdered, i. 707
- Kuli Khan abandons Sofi's court, ii. 624
- the son of Togrol, deprived of the Seljuk throne by his uncle Masud, i. 701
- Daro, son of Dio, basely murders Widferc, Regner's son, and lieutenant in Mysia, xi. 685. Regner defeats and takes Daxo prisoner, but generously grants him his life, ibid.
- Day, governor of Bermudas, xv. 276
- Day-go, the 60th emperor of Japan, his troublesome reign, iv. 56
- II. the 95th emperor, iv. 59
- Daynur Denewar taken by the Mungls, ii. 310
- Day-seo-kwo-tev, the 109th emperor of Japan, marries Fide-Tada's daughter, iv. 61
- Dead, their state, according to the Koran, i. 159
- Deborah, a famed Jewish poetess at Rome, v. 395
- Debra Libanos, a famed Abyssinian monastery, vi. 232. Vastly large but mean, ib. Bisan, another of the same kind, by whom founded, ib. Hallelujah, a third one very considerable, and its vast decay, 233.
- Debtaras, a sort of chanters in Abyssinia, vi. 225. Strange service at church, ib.
- Deby, Hammed-Maley, mounts the throne of Morocco, vii. 195. His insatiable avarice, &c. and he makes a ferment in his kingdom, ib. Dies of a dropsy, 199
- Decrees absolute of God, according to the Koran, i. 167
- Dehak Ebn Kais, his speech on the death of khalif Moawiyah, i. 298
- Dehestan, a province in Karazm, where situate, ii. 715
- Dehli kingdom, where seated, and under whom, ii. 294. City besieged by Timur Bek, 545. Taken, 546. Described, and destroyed, 547. The Dehlians massacred, ib. Its battle, 546. The palace, by whom built, and plundered, 547
- province in Hindustan, described, iii. 12. Its capital, ib. Fortress, walls, &c. and its imperial palace, described, 44. Restored by Shah Jehan, and called by his name, 85. Entered by the Persians, 128. Horrid massacre of its inhabitants, ib. amounting to above 110,000 persons, 129 (C)
- Denne, citadel, bloody execution there, ii. 515
- Dekak supplants his brother at Damascus, i. 630. Repulses him there, 681
- the brother of Redwan, takes Damascus from him, ii. 176. Drives him away from besieging it, 177. Dies there, and supposed by poison, 178
- Spans al Moluc invited against the Franks in Syria, i. 686. Prevents their besieging Hems, ib. Strangely poisoned by his mother, ib.
- Dekin in vain attempted by sultan Akber, and where situate, iii. 61 (C). Advised by Abdul Razl to reduce it, 62. Invaded by Jehang-hir, 69
- or Diken kingdom, when, and by whom founded, iii. 132. How divided into provinces, 133. Its various revolutions, and its extent, 134. Countries comprised in it, 137. Early marriage of the boys and girls, 138
- Dekim, Degum, kingdom in Africa, where situate, vi. 321
- Delaware, lord, made governor of Virginia, xiv. 488. His appointment of three deputy governors, their shipwreck on the Bermudas, and arrival in Virginia, ib. Anarchy prevailing in the colony, and resolution of the deputy governors to embark, when they are actually met sailing off by lord Delaware, who orders them back with a severe reprimand, 489. Recommends an alteration of behaviour, and appoints a council, and who these were, ib. His activity and resolution retrieve the colony, ib. Sends his lieutenant-general Sir Thomas Yates to England with an account of the colony, ib. And this confirmed by lord Delaware himself on his arrival, ib. Fresh supplies arrive under Sir Thomas, ib. Embarks a second time for Virginia, but dies on his passage, 490
- Delfino (Giovanni) the fifty-eighth doge of Venice, x. 215. War with Lewis of Hungary, and peace concluded, ib. His death and character, ib.
- Deigarino, captain, his exploits and name dreaded in Morocco, vii. 166
- Delmenh rlt, account of, xi. 654
- Deli mount and river, iii. 162
- Demarcation lines, how settled by the popes, iv. 252, & sub (A)
- Dembea kingdom, in Abissinia, the chief residence of the emperor, vi. 174
- lake described, vi. 174, 202 (B). Islands, monasteries, &c. upon it, variety of fish in it, ib. And crossed by the river Nile, 203
- Demetrius, the younger brother of Fædor, a stranger under that name, claims the Russian crown, xii. 507, who passes the Boristhenes with a body of troops by Sigismund's permission, and surprises Zerniga, ib. He defeats the Russians in his turn, ib. His furious success, ib. Enters Moscow, and is crowned, with the fall of that prosperous impostor, and the occasion, ib. Manner of his death, 509 (A), and his wife thrown into a dungeon, ib.
- another impostor, starts up, but is not so successful as the former, xii. 509
- Iwanowitz, endeavours to shake off the yoke of foreign bondage in Russia, but perishes with his whole army, xiii. 92
- brother to czar Theodore, said to be alive and in Poland, xiii. 133. Whether or no an impostor is a very difficult



difficult point to clear up, *ib.* (N). Reception in Lithuania by Wichnowicki, whence he is sent into Poland, 134. What authors say who treat all this as a fable; the Poles strongly espouse his cause, and two very extraordinary circumstances in this pretended Demetrius, *ib.* (O). Advances into Russia, gains a victory, but defeated in the next engagement, 135, yet he recruits his shattered army, &c. *ib.* Defection of the Russian troops in favour of him, through Bosmanoff, *ib.* On Borislowitz's death, proclaimed czar, makes his public entry into Moscow, 136. Sends for his mother, the widow of John Basilowitz, from a convent, to which Boris had banished her, and her reception, with their mutual embraces of tenderness at meeting, *ib.* His continual deference for her regains him the public esteem, which he had lost by debauching Boris's daughter, 137. But he soon displeases the people, with the occasion, and sends an ambassador to Poland, with a pompous retinue and rich presents, *ib.* (X). Who marries by proxy from the czar the daughter of the Palatine of Sandomir, *ib.* The people grow discontented, and the occasion, *ib.* Imprudently changes his guards of Poles and Germans for Russians, 138. Arrival, marriage, and coronation of the czarina Mariana Maiecki, 139. Entertainments on the occasion, &c. give offence to the Russians, *ib.* Warned of his danger, takes no other notice than to bid his guards be watchful, *ib.* The conspirators put their design in execution, and seize on the palace, massacring the Poles, 140. Jumping out of a window he dislocates his thigh, is insulted, and afterwards mangled to death, *ib.* Account of the czarina dowager's declaration, and the reasons published for killing him, 141. Demetrius flies from a convent to Poland, *xiii.* 141. Account of his person and character, *ib.*

— a second pretended, starts up by means of Knez Schacopski, *xiii.* 143

— the Poles set up a third, *xiii.* 143. Beats the Russians twice, the field-marshal Masulski being taken; he besieges Moscow, 144. Intercepts the Palatine of Sandomir and his daughter, with that impostor's signal impudence, *ib.* Massacred by the Tartars, 145

— a fourth impostor, takes that name, with his character, and great number flocking to him, till at last he is betrayed and hanged, *xiii.* 145

— a new one appears in Poland, with an account of him, and raised up by Uladislaus, *xiii.* 161. This impostor easily detected, and his strict friendship with the famous Galga, prince of Tartary, *ib.* (I). On Casimir's election withdraws to several places, and at last to Holstein, where he is delivered up to the czar, carried to Moscow, and put to death, 161

Denis, the Liberal, of Portugal, succeeds his father Alonso III. *viii.* 398. Quarrels with his mother, and marriage with Isabella of Arragon, *ib.* New disputes with the clergy, and how compromised. Their articles of complaint, *ib.* Insurrection by his brother Alonso, how settled, 399. Swears to an agreement with the clergy, *ib.* Wife provisions of improvement, and Lisbon university founded, *ib.* True source of the difference between Castile and him, *ib.* Compromised by a double marriage, 400. His brother Alonso's rebellion quelled, *ib.* Advantages to Castile from Denis's prudence, *ib.* New misunderstanding between Castile and Portugal, 401. His second son Alonso discovers an inclination to rebel, *ib.* His father's remonstrances, and wife measures pursued, *ib.* Success with the pope, 402. Wise precautions against his son's practices, with a civil war, but the king is victorious over him, *ib.* On repeated revolts, the king is reconciled, *ib.* A third compromise, and the change in the prince's behaviour, 403. The king's death and character, with remarks on his reign, and trade of Portugal, *ib.* (A)

Denis, St. surprized by Condé, and Paris straitly blocked up, *ix.* 259. Battle there, in which the constable Montmorency is mortally wounded, *ib.*

— St. bloody battle, in which king William remained master of the field, also reflections on this attack, *ix.* 465 (O)

— St. his adventures in Louisiana, *xv.* 19. How thrown into prison, released, and presents made him, with his marrying a Spanish lady, 20. Chastises the Natches, 38

Denmark, king of, his reception at Rome, *x.* 38.—Arrives at Metz, and does the emperor homage only for Wandalia, with the conditions, 674. Defeated, and several places in Lower Saxony taken from him, 704. Intestine troubles there, with the occasion, and issue by accommodation, 713. Disputes about the crown decided by the emperor, with the conditions, *xi.* 45.—His preparations

for war, and his various successes, 217.—Peace between it and France, 261

Denmark, treaties of alliance and redemption concluded by it with the Dutch republic, *xi.* 553. Treachery of that king to the States-General, 575

—, history of, *xi.* 649. Antiquity and name, *ib.* (A). Geographical description of it and Norway, *ib.* General division into provinces, 650. Its produce, 653. The king's troops quartered on the peasants, and paid by them, furnishing the court or creatures of it with horses and wag-gons in their progresss, 656. Degrees of nobility there, with only one exclusive privilege, *ib.* Ancient form of government, and that since the year 1660, 657 (A). Frequent conventions of the states, a fundamental article, and their legislative power, *ib.* The executive lodged in the king, and the manner in which the great revolution happened, 658. The king made arbitrary, and the crown hereditary, *ib.* The king's present power, *ib.* Three courts of justice there, 659. No public societies of lawyers here, and a process limited to a certain number of sheets, *ib.* Salaries of the judges paid out of the exchequer, and their extraordinary severity in criminal cases, and great profits of the executioner, 660 (H). Revenues of that crown, 661. Specie scarce there, and the causes, 662. Antiquity of that kingdom, 664 (A). The male line of the royal family being extinct in Siwald II. is governed by five noblemen for some time, 676. Renovation of the alliance between it and Saxony against the Vandals, *xii.* 12. Surrounded with enemies, 14. Its power appears from a muster made by Canute, 23. His success by this force against the Vandals, Prussians, and Livonians, with his views, 24. Estimate of its revenue and forces, 28 (B). Rupture between Denmark and Norway, 41, also between it and Sweden, with their reconciliation, *ib.* Pestilential disease, *ib.* Intermarriage between it and Sweden, 42. Congress for a peace between it and Norway ineffectual, 44. Dispute between it and Brandenburg about Stralfund, and overtures of peace accepted, with the terms, 47, but broken by the citizens of Stralfund, and a peace settled as before, *ib.* War between it and Brandenburg, 48. Notwithstanding the king's inactivity, an advantageous peace is concluded, *ib.* Its state during a seven years interregnum, 55. A rupture between it and Sweden, 78. Several competitors to the throne, and amongst others Olaus, king of Norway, and Valdemar the II'd's grandson, with the reasons which influenced the diet to his election, 82. Remarkable act passed, with the reasons for it, *ib.* An impostor claims that crown, and his execution, 83. Peace between it and Sleswick proclaimed, *ib.* Truce concluded between it and Sleswick, 85. Treaty between it and Poland, 90. Insurrections there, 101. Senate renounce their allegiance to Eric X. 102. Crown of Norway and Sleswick revert to it on the death of Adolphus, 114. Disputes between it and the earl of Oldenburgh; which are compromised, 115. Elephant order, by whom instituted, 116 (A). Their queen's imprisonment, 126. Released, 128. War between it and the Hans Towns, 124. War between it and Poland, which is wholly omitted by the Danish writers, 135. Discontents increase there, 143. Religious disputes there, with an edict for liberty of conscience, and Frederic's views, 147. Who openly declares himself a protestant, *ib.* Peace concluded between it and Lubec, with an apology sent to Gustavus for Christian's conduct, admitted, 153. Enjoys profound peace, with the king's domestic regulations, 154. Disputes between it and Sweden, *ib.* Peace concluded between it and Sweden at an interview, 155. Policy of such a measure with regard to the emperor, and why; also a treaty between both crowns and France, with one of its articles, *ib.* (A). War between it and Sweden, 165. Enjoys peace for a series of years, 166. Battle between the fleets of it and Sweden, in which the former are deserted by the Dutch, 176. State of it on Christian the Vth's accession, 187. Difference between it, Sweden, and Holland, 200

—, alliance formed there for balancing Gustavus and the emperor, *xii.* 331. Its king declares against Sweden, with the occasion for it, 360 (A). Invades Schonen, and seizes Helsingburgh, 391. Invades Bremen, and his reasons for it, 397

—, origin of its king's title as king of the Vandals, *xv.* 513. Sequel of its history, with the wise character of the king, 634

Denonville made governor of New-France, arrives there with a reinforcement, *xiv.* 621. His design for building a fort



- at Niagara, remonstrated against by Dongan the English governor of New-York, 622. Declaration of war against the Iroquois, with his shameful treachery, and its bad effect, 623. Various measures towards war, and what, 624. Acknowledges to his court the service of the missionaries, *ib.* Begins his hostile operations, 625. The number of his troops, and what passed between him and Dongan on the occasion, *ib.* Marches into the country of the Isonnonthouans, with an action there, *ib.* His horrible ravages in a defenceless country, and return to Niagara, *ib.* Successful practices with some of the Agniers, 626. His situation on a haughty embassy from the Iroquois, and the narrow escape of the French from ruin, 627. Peace concluded and the terms, 628. Hostilities again break out, and some check given the Iroquois, *ib.* Great disorders of the French colony now, *ib.*
- Dennis's (See Denis) irruption into Portugal, who assumes the title of king, viii. 427
- Denny, captain, succeeds Morris, as governor of Pennsylvania, xv. 144. His favourable reception by the assembly, and how undeceived, *ib.* (K). His proprietary instructions as to money-bills, *ib.* Difference between him and the assembly, with the occasion, 145. The latter obliged to yield, with a vindication of themselves, and an estimate of the proprietary estate, *ib.* Is succeeded by governor Hamilton, 147. Gets quiet possession of Virginia for the parliament, and by what means, 367
- Derar defeats Heraclius's forces, i. 141, but repulsed and taken prisoner, *ib.* Rescued by Khaled's stratagem, 142. His bravery in saving Khaled from the Greeks, 144. Defeats a body of Greeks, and kills the governor of Tripoli, 188. His share of the spoil, 189. Conduct before Baalbec, 195. His contest with Sertabil decided in his favour by the khalif, 203. Taken prisoner, 216. Insolent behaviour to Heraclius, *ib.* Escapes being punished for it, 217
- Derby, earl of, his conquest in Guienne almost recovered by Philip's son, ix. 104. Supplants his cousin Richard II. 124
- Deren-deren mountains, in Morocco, and its warlike natives, vii. 150
- Dervish (Ali) and Mehemed, put to death by Timur Bek, ii. 510
- Desada, (Desiderata) that French island described, xv. 234
- Desert-Islands, on the African coast, described, vi. 117
- Desiderius returns (See Victor II.) to Monte Cassino, and dies, after recommending his successor to the bishops, ix. 573
- Desnambuc, first governor of the French part of St. Christophers, xv. 239. Backwardness of his settlement, *ib.* Promoted by Colbert, 240
- Detour à l'Anglois post, xv. 58
- Dettingen, account of that battle, and king George the II'd's moderation in using that victory, xv. 632
- Devil, a two-horned bird of Africa, so called by Europeans, v. 187, 688
- in Guadeloupe, xv. 231
- Dewetas, or good angels, worshipped in India, and their residence, iii. 206. Of two kinds, *ib.* (A)
- Deylam, province, where situate, and how divided, i. 420
- Deylamites begin to make a figure, their dynasty and conquests, i. 521. Reduced by the Emir Al Omra, 591. Indignities offered by them to the khalif Al Tay, 593
- Dhafer Beamri'llah raised to the Egyptian khalifat, i. 710. Assassinated by his minister, 713. His body found and honourably interred by Al Fayer, 714
- Al, the ninth khalif of Egypt, vi. 51. Unnatural love to Nefr, and murdered by him and his father, 52
- Dhu-Mokammara, one of Mohammed's friends, i. 120
- Kar, or Dhu Kard plain, where situated, i. 54. Mohammed's expedition against it, 64
- Dhul Caffain, idol, destroyed by Mohammed, i. 88
- Cola, suspicion about his Islamism, i. 97
- Diacks, what, xiii. 64
- Diadibris besieged by Massu'd, lord of Ancyra, and surrendered, ii. 224. The Greek generals ill-treated before it by the Turks, *ib.*
- Dianga, a sea-port in Arracan, iii. 228. The massacre of the Portuguese there, 233
- Dianga city, iii. 228
- Diaz (Bartholomew) discovers the passage into India, by doubling the Cape, iv. 113. Shipwrecked, 117
- Dickscove-fort, on the Golden-coast, described, vi. 648
- Diego, don, king of Kongo, his embassy to Portugal, vi. 477. Fondness of the Portuguese luxury, &c. and death, a source of many evils, 478
- Diego, don, acknowledged successor of Spain, viii. 268 (D).
- Dies, 269
- Diemen's, Van, land discovered, v. 16
- Diepoldus reconciled to the pope, when he and his son are seized by the chancellor and legate, x. 426; but escaping, gains a victory over the Neapolitans, and takes their general, *ib.*
- Dieskau defeated by sir William Johnson, and an account of his bad conduct, xiv. 707
- Diet, German, at Spire, releases Richard of England, x. 688. He makes all dispatch into the Low-Countries, and remits the remainder of the money to Leopold of Austria, who is seized with remorse in his last moments, 689. Orders the hostages to be released, and his son sends back Eleanor of Bretagne, Richard's niece, *ib.* Agrees to send auxiliaries into Hungary, but prevented by the pope's death, 697. Resolution to maintain 20,000 men against the Turks, 706
- Imperial, of what composed, with the methods of administering justice, x. 622. Plan of the session of the states in the general diet, and their rank, 616, 617
- Danish, resolution to annoy the commerce, and harass the coasts of the Swedes, which is accordingly done, xii. 111
- final, in Poland, of election-meets, in which are debates about chusing a marshal, xii. 430. Peculiarly absurd custom there, *ib.* Its venality, and general corruption, and form of passing laws, 431. What business is entered upon, *ib.* 432. The constitution broke through in many instances, *ib.* Act there for excluding all natives, 548. Disputes there about the confirming of the election, 558. It breaks up without coming to any resolution, *ib.* Different provinces under different sovereigns, *ib.* Summoned by the primate and bishop, *ib.* Of confirmation, summoned by the primate, with the dangerous temerity of one of the deputies, 560. For coronation assemblies, and the utmost confusion there, with fruitless protests against the proceedings, before and after the coronation, 561. A general one meets, which proceeds and ends happily, 572. Of election meets, and, after warm debates, they adjourn, with an account of the candidates, 590. Petty, meet, and every thing concurs to render the election favourable to Stanislaus, 597. Sits, on the Saxons being dispersed, with the act of the confederacy signed for the deputies, 598. At Lublin, make high complaints, and agree to publish an interregnum, with the czar's serious design of procuring a new election, 605. A general one, and their proceedings about the troops and authority of their generals, with some queries put to the king, and his answer, 612. Meeting and spirited conduct of, with measures taken to establish the interests of the republic, 618
- Diethric of Ysemberg, a flame breaks out between him and Adolphus of Nassau, but after mutual ravages the former cedes his right to the latter, xi. 103
- Diggs, governor of Virginia, xv. 367
- Dilon Ildak, the feat of Bilukai Khan, father of Jenghiz-Khan, ii. 256 (Q)
- Dilshadaga, Timur's wife, her death, ii. 514
- Dimassavan, its lord, his hospitable reception of Ferd. Magalhaens, and island described, iv. 198
- Din Mahamed, taken prisoner in a plundering excursion, ii. 725. Sent back in scorn to his father, slays Risha, and his other guards, *ib.* Bloody stratagem and murder of Mahmed Gazi, and he takes several princes under his protection, 726. Takes the fortrefs of Khayuk, marches against Obeyd Khan, and defeats him, *ib.*
- the tenth khan of Karazm, ii. 728. Stratagem to recover Yawrfurdi from the Persians, and his strange intrepidity shewn to the Persian shah, *ib.* Stratagem against Obeyd-khan, and makes Maru his last residence, 729. Grief and sickness for his son's defeat and death, strange recovery, and he adopts his grandson Nur Mahmed, *ib.*
- Dinar, an Arab c gold coin, by whom first coined, i. 338. On what occasion, and described, *ib.*
- Ghayazo'ddin seizes on the government of New Hormuz, is abandoned and flies, ii. 686
- Dinckenspiel, account of it and government, xv. 443
- Dinewar, or Daynur, taken by the Mungls, ii. 310
- Dnie, an excellent fruit in Karazm, described, ii. 717
- Dinkira, a country in Guinea, described, vi. 675
- Dinwiddie, governor, alarms the British government about the



- the practices of the French on the Ohio, and the measures taken by him, xiv. 700
- Dicafeana, treachery of the Jews there against the emperor Constant, v. 56. Destroyed by Gaius, and whence the name given to it, ib. (T)
- Diodati, deato, with some account of him, xiv. 46
- Dionysus, bishop of Hiran, dies, i. 403. Succeeded by Dionysus the monk, ib.
- Dionysus propagates the Eutychian heresy in Egypt, vi. 24 sub (S). Condemned by pope Leo and council of Chalcedon, but gets both anathematized by that of Ephesus, and dies in exile, 25, sub not.
- Dirhem, a silver Arabic coin, its weight and original, i. 338. A new set coined at Waset, 377. A fresh sort coined at Cufa, and described, 384. One coined at Basra, under Khalif Mohdi, explained, 408. Another coined at Saurai, 422. Another inscribed to khalif Al Amin, 426. One explaining the origin of the city of Balkh, 429. Another coined at Mohandia, 435. Another coined by khalif Al Amin, 439. By his brother Al Mamun, ib. New ones coined by Al Mamun, 441
- Disabules, king of the Oriental Turks, his embassy to the emperor Justin, ii. 130. State of the Turks in his reign, 131. Engages in a war against the Persians, 132
- Disma, in Japan, the Dutch factory there, how obtained, iv. 24 (B). Situation, ib. sub not.
- Ditmar, the historian, his death, x. 646 (A)
- Dithmarsh, province of, xii. 24
- Dithmarshians totally defeat John of Denmark, xi. 655. An army marches into their country, and a declaration previously published, xii. 158, which is carried by a criminal on a white staff through Heida; their rage at the herald, who is concealed, and their respectful letter to the king, ib. The success of the confederates in the defeat of the brave Dithmarshians, who obtain a truce, and hard conditions of peace, 159. The ceremony of servitude through which this brave people are obliged to pass, with the laying of a priest on this occasion, and Ranzaw's answer, ib. (A)
- Div, Timur, the twelfth khan of Bukharia, ii. 465
- or Div, a city in Hindustan, described, with its strength and buildings, iii. 8. Surprized by the Muskat Arabs, and recovered by the Portuguese, ib. Its pirates called Warrels, a bane to commerce, 9. Yielded to the Portuguese, iv. 130. Besieged by the Turks, but relieved by the viceroy of Goa, 131
- Div, island and fortress, with its trade and consequence, iv. 141. Its port described, 170. Strength, trade, &c. ib. (T)
- Diuchari province and people, in East Tartary, who, and where situate, iii. 465. Religion, &c. ib. (O). Copious language, 466 (P)
- Divination by arrows forbid by Mohammed, i. 173
- Divorce, how far allowed by the Alcoran, i. 176
- formulary fixed by the Jews, v. 601 (M)
- Diyarbekr, Amid, or Hamed and Khoja, its prodigious walls, ii. 533. Taken by Timur Bek, ib.
- Diz, Arias, chosen general of the Portuguese in Abissinia, vi. 266. Defeats the Moors, ib. Marries the widow of the king of Adel, and hath two kingdoms bestowed on him, 268, 270 (C)
- Dizier, St. his brave defence saves France, and capitulates at last, ix. 230. The Parisians in consternation fly, ib.
- Dnieper river, xiii. 5
- Dobaiute Arabs, their victory over the Mazjadites, ii. 614
- Dobays, an Arab prince, joins in Basafiri's rebellion, ii. 158. 160 (O). Is reconciled to Togrol-Beg, ib.
- Ebn Sadekah offers to betray the Khalifha and Baghdad, ii. 187. Is slain by sultan Massud, ib. i. 702
- Dobazi city in Arracan, iii. 223
- Dobbs, account of his attempt for a north-west passage, xv. 161. Abstract of Scrogg's journal, 162 (P), which confirms him in his opinion of that passage, ib. The reasons for it, and how it ought to be prosecuted, 163. Sham proceedings of the Hudson's-bay company herein, ib. He applies to the government, with Sir Charles Wager's answer to him, ib. (Q). Middleton's instructions for this discovery, 164. His voyage, ib. Sends some Indians on shore, 165. Fails in his discovery, ib. Suspected, and why, 166. Other facts alledged, ib. (R), 167. Act of parliament encouraging the discovery, 168
- Dorpt taken by a stratagem of the czar Peter's, after Slippenbach's defeat, xiii. 205.
- Dog-drivers, a people in East-Tartary, why so called, iii. 463 (E). Used to draw sledges there, ib.—Wild in Congo, and very fierce, vi. 434
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Dog-island, in the South-sea, discovered, v. 7
- flesh, a dainty in Angola, vi. 434
- Dogs, large, used by invaders into Poland, xii. 471
- greatly serviceable in a revolt, xiv. 153
- Dogris, the grandson of the emperor Orhman, drowned before Kutahia, v. 153
- Dohya Ebn Kaeleifa sent agent to Constantinople, by Mohammed, i. 64, and to convert the emperor Heraclius, 69
- Dolet Keray, eighth khan of Crim Tartary, ii. 451, 452
- Dolgorucki defeats the rebels under Stenko, who makes many severe examples at Arsamas, xiii. 166. The valour of a nun who is taken prisoner, and intrepidity in lying down on the pile to be burnt, ib.
- Domea, the first sea-port of Ton-king, where situated, iii. 432
- Domingo, St. or New Itabella, settlement in Hispaniola prosecuted, and why so called, xiv. 146. Its supreme tribunal opposes Velasquez's armament, but in vain, 230. Their deputy and Velasquez's secretary embark with Narvaez for Mexico, ib. Arrival of a considerable reinforcement sent to Cortez by its audience, 259. Description of that city, xv. 360
- Dominic of Jerusalem, a famed professor at Sapheta, v. 583. not.
- St. Account of his order, ix. 620 (B & C). Confirmed, 621. What passed in the first general chapter holden by him at Bologna, 623. Carested in Bologna, xiii. 569. Buried magnificently by the Bolognese, 570. Re-buried by John of Vicenza, and canonized, 579
- Dominica, account of that island now ceded to Britain, and its discovery, xv. 247. Pre-occupancy of the English before the French ascertained, ib. Its inhabitants, and foolish reports of the French, 248. The former submit to the English, and surrender their island, ib. With the proceedings of the English afterwards, ib. Reflections on its natural state, ib. Declared neutral, with the perfidiousness of the French, and entire cession to Britain, ib. Its importance, 249. Its natural history, ib.
- Dominicans, controversy between them and Franciscans about priority, ix. 632. Dispute with the Jesuits about grace, x. 132. Abuses committed by them in the matter of indulgences, xi. 132 (Q)
- missionaries; their original, ix. 667. By Tetzels, defend the pope's authority; and condemn Luther's theses, x. 68
- institution of that order, xiii. 567. Some account of that order, and their influence in Bologna, 591
- Dominique discovered by Columbus, xiv. 144
- Don, account of, xiii. 5
- Donati, Curzio, his intrigues during his exile, xiii. 294. His discontent, and the consequences prevented by the Lucchese, 295. How killed, 298
- Donato, Francisco, the 75th doge of Venice, x. 340. Storms threatening Italy, ib. With that doge's death and character, ib.
- Donawert, Catholics expelled from by the Protestants, and the town proscribed and besieged, xi. 182
- Donawert, account of that city, xv. 443 (R)
- Dongan, governor of New-York, remonstrates against the French building a fort at Niagara, with his character, xiv. 622. Ineffectual representations to the Onnontague, but with success to the savages of Michillimakinac, ib. Denonville's design hereupon, what, ib. Dispossesses the French from St. Therese, on Hudson's-bay, 623. His influence with the Iroquois, 625. Sends a messenger to Denonville, and the occasion what, 626 (C). Conditions of peace sent at the same time, 627. Gains over the Iroquois, ib. Their haughty embassy to Denonville, ib.
- Doraid, one of the commanders at the battle of Honeim, i. 86. Defeated by Mahomet, ib. Renews the fight at the battle of Awtas, 87. Put to flight and slain, ib.
- Doria sent against the pirate Dragut, and success against him, vii. 328
- Andrew, commands the Imperial fleet against the Turks, vii. 457. Scours the seas of Turkish corsairs, ib.
- junior, commands the emperor's fleet against Dragut, and his success, vii. 459. Blocks up the city of Africa, or Mehedia, ib. and takes it, 460
- Andrew, attempts to revenge Barbarossa's affront, viii. 238. Successes against the Turks by sea and land, with the emperor's arrival at Barcelona, ib. Beats the Turkish fleet, and relieves Coron, with the repulse of the Turks in a second sally, 239. Takes twenty Turkish galleys, 241. Carries on the war in the Mediterranean, 247. His fleet beaten by the Turks, retires to Sardinia, 248. His generous proposal to king Francis, and his return, ix. 219.



- ix. 219. Commands the confederate fleet, and twice declines an engagement, x. 85. Expels the French from Genoa, and restores liberty, 331. His and Barbarossa's successes at Sea, 334. His base conduct, 342, who is obliged to attack the Turkish fleet off Nicopolis or Actium, but makes a disgraceful retreat, ib. His conduct variously accounted for, ib. (A). His excuses for declining to fight the Turks answered by Colonna, the pope's admiral, and the Venetian admiral's remonstrance, 358. His gallant actions, who forms schemes for restoring liberty to his country, 586 (B). He gains possession of the city, ib. Attempts for seizing Genoa disappointed by him, 587, who adopts Jeannetin Doria as his successor, with an account of him, ib. Escapes from his palace in Genoa, 588. Is, on Jeannetin's death, invited to Genoa, and complimented by the senate, 589. Procures those concerned in the late insurrections to be declared traitors, with his severe proceedings thereupon, ib. His death and character, 592
- (Michael) defeated by Dandolo, and his character, x. 204
- Sea-fight between that French admiral and Gobbo, in which the latter is defeated, x. 329
- the Sicilian admiral, taken by Roger de Loria, with the loss of several of his galleys, x. 453
- Stephen, his successes against Corso, x. 593. Retreats to Bastia, ib. Executes barbarous instructions from the directors of St. George, defeats Corso the rebel general, 594. Takes Corte, ib. After which there are only marches and counter-marches, with skirmishes, ib.
- (John Jerom) chosen general of the Genoese forces, and Carlo to command in the city, x. 602. He and Spinola recalled for the defence of Genoa, 603. Steps taken by his advice for preventing the confusion, while the differences between the duke of Savoy and the constable retard their operations, with the Genoese at Ottagio defeated by the former, 604 (A)
- Dorilaus, English envoy, his murder in Holland, xi. 552
- Dormepatam, port in Malabar described, iii. 163
- Dorothea fort, on the Golden coast described, vi. 648
- widow of Christian III. her death, xii. 164
- Dort, two Genevois deputies sent to that synod, xiv. 43
- Dortmond, account of that city, xv. 440 (H)
- Dorylaeum, noble defence of the Greeks there against the Arab general Hasan, i. 409
- Dost, sultan, the eleventh khan of the Usbeks, put to death by Hajim, ii. 731
- Dotoes, a pernicious kind of pismires in Japan, iv. 44
- Dottin, lieutenant-governor of Barbadoes, his salutary administration, xv. 196
- Douay taken by the allies, ix. 495
- Douglas, general, takes Mittau, and the duke of Courland is made prisoner, xii. 362
- governor of Antigua, how he becomes unpopular, xv. 261
- Doutreleau, father, wounded by the Savages, but escapes, xv. 35
- Douwet shah, defeated by sultan Akber, and beheaded by his own subjects, iii. 59
- Dowaydar's ill advice to the khalif of Baghdad, ii. 471. Puts the Tartars to flight, 472. Defeated by Bayeju, and sent for by Kulaku, ib. Refuses to come, ib. Killed by the besiegers, ib.
- Dowla Sulajud, nabob, his articles of peace with the English, iv. 373. Refuses to ratify them, 374. Is defeated and put to death, 375
- Dowlet, or Doltabad, a city in Dekan, described, iii. 138
- Downing succeeds Sir William Temple at the Hague, who had been suddenly recalled, xi. 611. His solemn protestation and insidious assurances, with de Wit's penetrating into Charles's real views, ib.
- Downs, battle of, led on by the English, account of it, in which the Spaniards are defeated, ix. 445
- Doyji, the eighth khan of Bukharia, ii. 465
- Doyly, first English governor of Jamaica, xv. 279. Drives the Spaniards from their works, ib. Quells a mutiny, 280
- Draco, a tree of Teneriff, described, with its singular gum, vi. 140
- a rich pirate, by whom conquered, xi. 667
- Dracuncula, a painful tumour caused by it in Carthage, xiv. 449
- Dracunculus, in Mocha, a strange worm bred in the limbs, and the way of drawing it out, iv. 377
- Dragut, a famed pirate, seizes on several ports of Barbary, and a powerful fleet sent against him, vii. 328. Defeated and taken by young Doria, ib. Bold speech to him, ib. (I). Hard slavery in Genoa, and release, ib. Seizes on Mehedia by treachery, 329. Ravages the island of Maltha, and defeated by Laitic, is driven out, 430. Arrival at the siege of Maltha, 435. Mortally wounded before fort St. Elmo, 484. Success at sea, but repulsed from Candia, with a suspension of hostilities obtained from the Turks, x. 344
- Drake, Sir Francis, why obstructed by king Philip II. on the Pacific-Ocean, iv. 248 (R). Discovers a groupe of islands above the Ladrone, 269 (B). His account of them, ib. His informations to the English East-India-company, 289. His first voyage and discoveries, v. 55. Commission from queen Elizabeth, 56. An account of his voyage, 57. Arrival in the Pacific-Ocean, 58. Plunders the Spanish settlements, 59. Arrival at the Moluccas, 61. His character villified and vindicated, 62. Knighted by the queen on board his ship, ib. Advantage of his circumnavigation, ib. Other exploits against the Spaniards, 64. Immense booty taken by him at Arica, xiv. 466. His arrival at Roanoke, and taking Lane's colony on board, 486. Takes fort St. Juan (Mattheo) in Florida, xv. 83. Death and character, v. 65
- , Sir Bernard, his voyage to Newfoundland, xiv. 491
- Drakenstein settlement, at the Cape of Good-Hope, described, and inhabited by refugees, vi. 401
- Dresden, account of it, its palace and arsenal, xv. 461
- Dreuilletes, father, missionary among the Abenakis, his character, and influence among that people, xiv. 591
- Drogo the Norman, succeeds his brother in Puglia, x. 399. Receives joyfully several new adventurers from his own country, ib.
- Dromedaries of Africa described, v. 682
- Droningholm, for what purpose built, xii. 26
- Drought extraordinary in Germany, x. 666 (N)
- Drysdale, lieutenant-governor of Virginia, xv. 375
- Dsin-gu, a famed Japonese heroine, subdues Korea, iii. 753
- Dsiome, the thirty fifth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 53
- Duarte, uncle of Theodosius, his barbarous treatment and death, account of it, viii. 509 (A). Speech to the Imperial commissary when delivered to the Spaniards, ib. sub not. Reasons for this usage, sub fin. not.
- Dubb, an African insect like the tarantula, v. 689. Dies upon tasting of water, ib.
- Dublin taken by Fridleff king of Denmark, xi. 671
- Ducas (Michael) his general, Isaac Comnenus, defeated by the Turks and taken prisoner, ii. 203. Taken prisoner also by them, ib.
- (John) his success against the Turks, ii. 209. 216
- Ducks, a fine breed in Japan, described, iv. 44
- Dudley made governor of New-England, why deposed and sent prisoner to Old England, xiv. 521. 531. His expedition against Acadia abortive, 680
- Duelling, severe edict against it in France, ix. 327. How ineffectual, 387. Its punishment in Sweden, xii. 216. 349. Edicts against it, and a particular manner of stopping the practice in Sweden, 321
- Duero, secretary, seasonably and with difficulty rescued by Cortez, xiv. 243
- Dulcia, queen to Sancho of Portugal, viii. 387 (D). Dies, 388
- Dulcinus, a heretic, burnt, ix. 659
- Dumas, governor of Pondicherry, his gallant behaviour to the distressed nabob's widow, iv. 626
- Dummer, Mr. his reproaches against New-York, and why, xiv. 544. Repeated applications on this subject, and their answer, ib.
- Dumnoi, what, xiii. 64
- Dunavas, a Jewish king, subdued by king Caeb of Abissinia, vi. 252 (B)
- Dunbar, colonel, on Braddock's death, commands the army, and the disadvantages he laboured under, xiv. 706
- Duncamp, general, defeated by the Swedes, with other successes of Tromp and the Danes, xii. 194
- Dungan, colonel, governor of New-York, and his wife conduct, xiv. 540. Favoured by king William, who offers to provide for him in Spain, which Dungan declines, ib.
- Dunkards (Dumplers) account of that sect in Pennsylvania, xv. 150. Their settlement, dress, and temperate diet, ib. Their ingenuity, president, and religious tenets, 151
- Dunkirk taken by the English, viii. 316. Sold to the French for a trifle, 321. Taken by Enginen, assisted by Tromp,



Tromp, ix. 421. Surrenders to Spain, 436. Surrenders to the French on the death of its brave governor de Lede, 445. King's triumphant entry into it, which Mazarine is soon forced to deliver up to Cromwell, ib. Extraordinary vanity of Mazarine, whose request for ascribing the honour of the military operations to him, Turenne nobly refuses, ib. Confined to the English troops, 503. Port blocked up, with the ravages of its privateers prevented, xi. 437. A fleet from it destroys the fishing buffes, 462. Privateers, success against them, 472. Blocked up by sea and land, 514. Fortified in breach of treaty, xv. 612

Dunkirkers project of a joint fleet of Dutch and English, how frustrated, xi. 511. Squadron of them defeated, 514. And the East-India company assist with a squadron against them, ib. Their successes, 531

Dunois, count, now Longueville, reduces all Guienne in little more than four months, ix. 158

Dunnamunde, Saxons repulsed from it, but is taken at last, xii. 576. 582. It and other places in Riga government described, xiii. 18

Dunquan, a tribe of Hottentots described, vi. 386

Dunster, Hannah, her brave exploit in Essex county, and her reward for it in Bolton, xiv. 529

Duornius what, xiii. 61

Dupuy (Raymond) grand master of Malta, offers his services to the young king of Jerusalem, with a list of his successors, vii. 382

Dupuy arrives at Montreal after vast difficulty, xiv. 597

Duran, (Rabbi Simeon) his learned works, v. 553 (O). — A Jewish convert, his artful hypocrisy, 574 (V)

Durantaye, why superseded in his command at Michillimackinac, and death, xiv. 634

Durazzo, Grimaldi, chosen duke of Genoa, his character, x. 598

— Charles, invited by the nobles to ascend the Hungarian throne, xi. 70. On being acknowledged at Offen, takes the administration into his own hands, ib. Amused by queen Elizabeth, and the fickle people growing tired of his government, he is treacherously murdered by her direction, and by whom, ib. (P)

Durell, admiral, his success in the river of St. Laurence, xiv. 716

Durman Turks, whence descended, ii. 128

— one of the four tribes of Uzbek-Tatars, ii. 719

Durum citadel taken by Timur Bek, ii. 515

Duslerp, bravery of that Swedish colonel, and Charles the XIIth's extraordinary letter to him, xii. 407

Dust, a dreadful rain of it in Egypt, i. 591

Dutch embassy to China rejected, iii. 737. Their contest with Coxinga, 738 (B). Policy in Japan against the Portuguese, iv. 21, sub not. (Y). Kept under great restraint there, 23. Their stratagem at Disnia defeated, 24 (B). How confined in it by the Japanese, ib. sub not. Embassy to the Japan emperor, how performed, ib. Exchange of goods, 25. They and the Chinese only admitted to that commerce, 67. Unlucky attempt on the Gold and Silver Islands, 73. Embassy to Aurengzebe turns back, iii. 109. Grand armament against Chili, iv. 423. Horrid hostilities at Lima, 424. Sail to the East Indies, ib. Wrest the island of Ceylon from the Portuguese, iv. 143. Take Malacca from them, 149. Attempts on Sumatra, 150. Hard articles imposed on the king of Macassar, 154. Help to drive the Spaniards out of Tydore, 156. Erect factories in it, ib. Supplant the Portuguese in the Spice-Islands, 157. Help to drive the Portuguese out of Japan, 164 (O). Frequent attempts on the Philippine-islands, 184 (I). Encouragement of the Spanish merchants, 408. Form a design upon Ceylon, 436. Make an alliance with the king of Candy, 437. Success against the Portuguese there, ib. Outwitted by them at the surrender of Gallo, 438 (B). Defeat them under their admiral Caron, 439. Favoured by king John IV. ib. (C). Courtied by the king of Ceylon, ib. Renew the war with the Portuguese, and the success against them, 440. Fall out with the king of Ceylon, ib. Become masters of the island, ib. (E). Attempt to trade with China, 441. Frustrated by the Jesuits, ib. Remarks on that embassy, 442 (F). More successful in that to Japan, ib. (G). Renew the war in Java, and with their old friend the king of Bantam, ib. Restore the king of Bengal, 443. Treachery and success against the king of Macassar, ib. (H). Flourishing colony in Formosa, 444 (I). Invaded by Coxinga, ib. Forced to surrender it, 446. Reduce the Malabaric coasts, 447. Grand embassy to Aurengzebe, ib. Polite behaviour towards the king of Siam, 448 (M). Send a

fleet to assist the Chinese, ib. Ill treated by the Chinese Tartars, ib. War with the king of Macassar, 449. Plunder Sandravazes in it, 450. Totally reduce that kingdom, 451. Get a fourth charter, 452. But opposed by John de Wit, ib. Management of the company, 453. Commerce with Tonquin, 454. How, and by whom interrupted, 455 (R). Oppose the French projects in the East-Indies, 456

Dutch East-India company, their foul dealing with that of England, iv. 285 & 293. Their conquests, discoveries, &c. 407. True origin of their commerce, ib. Disappointed in their first plan of the North-east passage, 409. Fall into the Portuguese route, 411. Unite with the Amsterdammers, ib. Their success, and they invite other cities, 412. Quarrel with the king of Achen, and reconciled, 413 (G). Undermined by the Spaniards, ib. The present company when, and on what grounds, erected, 414. Their first fleet sails under admiral Waerwyk, ib. Obtain a truce with Spain, 415. Defeated by them, 416. Successful embassy to Japan, 417, and great damages compensated by new privileges, 418. Quarrel in India with the English, and the consequences, 419. Settlement in Java, ib. Defeated by the English and settle at Amboyna, 420. Make peace with the English, and how prevented, ib. Lay the foundation of a new empire in India, 421. Play the same policy in Europe, ib. Obtain a new charter from the states, 422. Treacherous seizing on Amboyna, 423. Surprising success, and immense gain, 424. Difficulty of securing their homeward-bound riches, 425. Discoveries in the South continent, ib. and commerce on the Red Sea, when and by whom begun, also in Japan, 426. Opposed by the Spaniards in this case, 427 (\*). Embassy to the emperor, ib. why repulsed with scorn, ib. (A). Their factory and effects seized, 428 (C). Restored on the delivering up of Nuytz, 429. Their valuable presents to the court, 430, which procure his liberty, 431 (G). Political maxims with regard to Indian princes, ib. Obtains a new charter, 433. Great advantage obtained over the Portuguese, 434. Manner of terminating disputes with the English, 435. Attempt on the isle of St. Thomas, 457. Exclusion of the English out of Macassar, 458 (T). First settlement in Java, 459. Ill gotten power, whence, 461. Treachery to the English, and hated by the natives, ib. Politic condescension to the king, 462. Design of driving the French out of India, 463. Reduce Pondicherry, but obliged to restore it, 464. A curious and grand secular medal stamped, ib. Described, ib. (B). Their part in the last war of Java, 465. Rebuild their stadthouse in a grander manner, 466. Cultivate coffee with great success, ib. Conspiracy against them, how discovered, 467. Sentence and execution of the chief criminals, 470. Chinese insurrection against them, 471. Horrid massacre of them, with different accounts thereof, 472. The governor degraded, and his vast effects confiscated, 474 (H). Nations subject to, or at enmity with them in Java, 479. Whence their vast rise of power, 481. Treatment of their various subjects, and the inhabitants, ib. & 484. Good understanding with the emperor of Ceylon, ib. Settlement at Amboyna described, 487. Vast advantages of it, 488. Regulations about the clove-trade, ib. Settlement at Banda, 489. Regulations about the Nutmeg-plantations, 490. The fourth government in India, namely Macassar, 492. Fifth government in the Moluccas, 493. Their hard conquest of them, ib. Destroy their spiceery, 494 (F). Government at the Cape of Good-Hope, ib. Their extent of lands, plantations and forces, 496. Two noble gardens described, 497. New discoveries in the country, ib. Commerce with the natives, ib. Their seventh government in Malacca, 478. Treachery to the governor, &c. 499. Secondary governments in India, 500. Its rapid progress, 471. Prodigious successes, and those in S. America, 501. Assist against the Dunkirkers with a squadron, 514. Outwit the Portuguese at Couchin, 503. First settlement on the Cape of Good-Hope, vi. 396

Dutch, their lands, fortifications, and other improvements in Africa, vi. 396. Various colonies and their governments, ib. Their several courts of justice, 397. Militia of horse and foot, 398. Fine gardens of Round Bush, &c. 399. The richness of their settlement there, 401. Ill returns and ingratitude to the poor natives, 408. Charges of maintaining it, 409. Notable instance of their company's wisdom and policy, v. 19 (G). Success on the Guinea coasts, vi. 638. Origin of their commerce with them, ib. Take the fort of Elmina from the Portuguese, 639.



Fall on the English settlements, 640. Treachery to the king of Comendo, 654. Defeated, but are restored afresh, 655. Signal villainy of their governor on the Gold-coast, 656. Success in Elmina, 661. Regulations in their African trade, 662. Order and office of their servants, 663. Dutch by a truce acknowledged a free state, with the clamours in Spain about it, though much for their interest, viii. 283. Peace between them and Spain, 307. Their partiality to the French, 324. Alliance of the emperor and Spain renewed, with whom they declare against France, 328. They and the Spanish fleet off Palermo, beaten, burnt, and sunk by the French, with the loss of the admirals Ibera and Van Haan, 330. Driven out of Brasil, 511. Detach themselves from the French, and conclude a separate treaty with the Spaniards, ix. 425. Their minister at Paris gives them notice of the storm ready to fall upon them, and how to be prevented, 455. France and England, &c. declare war against them, ib. Preparations of the Dutch, ib. Overflow their country, and make Orange stadtholder, 457. All the powers of Germany, except Bavaria and Hanover, engage in treaty with the republic, 460, yet Lewis relinquishes none of his grand designs, ib. Their policy, 464. Palpable anachronism with regard to their settlements in India, x. 297 (A). Flourishing state of their commerce, xi. 496. Naval transactions much to their detriment, with the detention of an hundred vessels in Spain and Portugal, 501 (A). Naval transactions against and for them, 503. Insidious conduct to the English in the East Indies, ib. States apply their attention to the finances, which occasions civil dissensions, 553. Several advantages gained by their garrisons, 513. Victorious every where, 517. Naval affairs, ib. Renew their alliance with France, and the terms, 520. Conferences for a truce broken off, ib. Transactions in the West Indies and in Europe in favour of them, 523. Allies besiege Louvain, with the occasion of their rising from the siege and separating, and the calamity of the French army, 536. Renew their alliance with France and Brandenburg, 537. Truce with Portugal concluded, yet they drive the Portuguese out of Japan, 544. Notwithstanding Richelieu's death, a new treaty signed between France and the republic, 545. A new treaty concluded with France, and the view, ib. Alliance with France renewed, 546. The consequent operations, ib. Their inattention in Brasil, and a project for expelling them discovered, 547. War is resumed, and they lose ground, ib. Absolute independence insisted on by the states deputies at Munster, 549. Articles of peace between Spain and the United Provinces, for which separate peace France accuses the republic of ingratitude, ib. With letters from the king to that effect, 550. Exchange of ratifications notwithstanding the remonstrances of the French, ib. Fresh difficulties of the states with Brandenburg, also their perplexity with regard to Spain, 551. Intrigues of the court of France prove fruitless, ib. Portuguese ambassador only amuses the states-general, ib. Observe a strict neutrality during the troubles in England, 551. Send an embassy to intercede for the king's life, but to no purpose, ib. Condolances made to the prince of Wales at the Hague, ib. Contentions in their cities about the election of magistrates by what means heightened, with the state of their commerce, and its greatest obstruction from England, 559. Prepare for war, and they equip a prodigious fleet, 560. The first hostilities begun by the English, ib. States send an embassy to England, but no regard paid to their remonstrance, 558, 561. They recal their ambassadors and publish a manifesto, which is answered by the parliament, ib. Some altercations with the French, 564. A stratagem of its envoy in Denmark against the English frustrated, 566. He concludes a treaty with Denmark, and its stipulations, but useless, ib. Remonstrances of their admirals and de Wit to the states, 568. Situation of Holland after this defeat, ib. Their surprising efforts to repair their loss at sea, 570. Debates among the states about the instructions to their admirals, 570. Defeated, and their loss, with public thanks given by the states to Ruyter, Evertson, 571 (A). Negotiations with Cromwell, 574. State of the republic with regard to Sweden, 575, and an offensive alliance concluded between the republic and Brandenburg, ib. Frustrated by a treaty of the latter with Sweden, and an embassy sent by the states-general to Denmark, ib. Commerce disturbed by English privateers, and how terminated, 577. Dissensions among the provinces, ib. Republic sends ambassadors to Copenhagen and Stockholm, ib. Complaints against the English de-

predations, and why not regarded by Cromwell, 578. The states refuse to ratify the treaty of Elbing, and a fresh quarrel with Sweden, ib. Compromised, 579. Disputes between France and that republic, with the ships and effects of the latter seized in the ports of France, ib. Their merchant ships seized in the Tagus, 581. War thereon with Portugal, ib. States, their spirited resolutions softened by a letter from the king of France, ib. Civil dissensions in the provinces, 582. States assist the king of Denmark against the Swedes, with a squadron under Opdam, 583. States, jealous of England and France, order Opdam to winter in Dunkirk, 584. Several accidents make considerable alterations in the politics of the states, 585. Arts by which they counteract the Portuguese Jesuits in the East Indies, 587 (A). Treaty concluded by them with Portugal, 589. Disputes between the states and the king of England, ib. Treaty signed by them with France, but the ratification deferred, 591. Report of a treaty between France and England alarms the states and pensionary de Wit, 594. Some alarms to them from Denmark, 595. State of that republic at the commencement of the war with England, 597, and their ambiguous conduct with regard to France, ib. whose shipping, which were detained, the states restore, ib. Differences with the court of France, ib. One more effort of the states encouraged by de Wit, 601. The face of affairs in that republic changed by de Wit's return, ib. The fire of London, and other causes contribute to that republic's security, 606. Republic enters into a defensive treaty with Spain, 611. Traversed by England and France to no purpose, ib. The state of the republic with regard to foreign powers, and the parties in the provinces, also their different views, 612. Importance of that republic apparent from the precautions of the two kings of France and England before breaking with it, 613. Implore peace, with Lewis the XIVth's insolent demands, 615. Their deputies harsh reception in England, and the preliminaries proposed by those of the king, 616. Owing to the prince of Orange that they were not accepted, ib. Conditions of their treaty with Spain favourable to that republic, with those stipulated by the latter, 621. Proposals made by them to the king of Great Britain, the emperor accedes to the treaty, the two courts of Vienna and Madrid denouncing war against France, 622. Peace concluded with England, and though Lewis accepts Charles's mediation, why disgustful to the confederates, ib. Ambassadors at Paris, disputes about the honours due to them adjusted, 627. A present of cannon from them confirms the friendship of the dey of Algiers, 628. State of the republic with regard to Great Britain, 633. Action between two men of war and a French squadron, with the mean submission of the republic on that occasion, 635. Their harbouring the ingenious artisans driven out of France, with other improvements in commerce and manufactures, ib. D'Avaux and Abbeville's memorials presented to them on the revolution, with the states reply to that of the latter, 636. Their envoy is refused an audience at Constantinople, where preparations are made for opening the campaign, 643. Squadron, a sea-fight between it and a French one to the disadvantage of the former, 645 (A). States treaties with Denmark unsatisfactory to the people of Holland and Denmark, xii. 172. Envoy's application to Frederick king of Denmark, on the approaching war with England, and Frederick's scruples about his proposals, 174. Another treaty concluded with them, and the advantages to king Frederick III. who, together with the states-general, change their mind as to the redemption-treaty, ib. Arrival of one fleet in the Baltic, with the policy of Holland, and a treaty concluded with the king of Sweden, 175. Conclude a quadruple alliance with Denmark, Brandenburg, and Brunswick, by which their East India fleet finds a safe retreat in Bergen from the English, 186. Some little contentions between them and the duke of Holstein and Frederick, ib. Build a fort at Baldivia, but prudently withdraw, xiv. 324. Buy New York, and their settlements there, but destroyed by the English, 539. Their first governors in New York, ib. Notwithstanding remonstrances from the emperor they accede to the treaty of Utrecht, xi. 360. Their answer to these, ib. Dutton, Sir Richard, governor of Barbadoes, a court tool, xv. 184. Remarkable address from the grand jury to the king presented by him, ib. Passes several new acts, also one for governing the rebel convicts from England, ib. Pompous proclamation of king James II. 185. How a zealous friend to the African company, ib.



Dwina river, account of, xiii. 50  
 Dydimothycon surrendered to Or-khan, v. 162. Restored by him to the emperor, *ib.* (P)  
 Dykveldt, M. sent by the Dutch republic to London, xi. 636  
 Dynasty of Ywen, in China, when founded, ii. 382. End of it, 434  
 — of the white and black sheep, ii. 696 (E). Shahs of the black, *ib.* The end of it, 701. Shahs of the white, 705. The end of it, *ib.*  
 — two of the Usbeks, where settled, ii. 708  
 — of the Chinese monarchs, iii. 513 (E). The first, in what year begun, 677. Their number, and the order of their monarchies, 678  
 — the first raised in Egypt by Ebn Tolun, i. 494  
 — Fatemite, by whom founded, i. 512

E.

**E**AGLE, white, the order, by whom instituted, xii. 598  
 — double, when first used in the emperor's seal, xi. 47  
 Eang-pee, a long ridge of high mountains in Lyau-tong, in China, iii. 557  
 Earthquake in Persia, i. 9. In Palestine, which lasts thirty days, 182  
 — in Syria and Mesopotamia, i. 297. In Syria, 380. In Palestine, Syria, &c. 389. In Mesopotamia, 390. A dreadful one in Tabristan, Persia, &c. 471, 472  
 — Another at Constantinople, &c. i. 591. At Damascus, 595. At Ramla, &c. 660. A dreadful one at Meir, 691. A dreadful one in Syria, &c. *ib.*  
 — One felt in China for an hundred days, ii. 422. A second terrible one there, iii. 744. Others in Japan, iv. 5 (G)  
 — A violent one, anno 1304, v. 148. In Thrace, 160  
 — A terrible one in Calabria, and the distress augmented by Pietro Paolo Saffanio, an impostor, who is condemned to the galleys, x. 517  
 — A terrible one and storm, in Denmark, xii. 135  
 — dreadful, in Algarve, xv. 596. In Lisbon, 598  
 Earthquakes dreadful, in the Bolognese, xiii. 572  
 — frequent in Lima, and several instances, xiv. 456  
 — dreadful in Antigua, xv. 256. One almost destroys Montserrat, 264. Most dreadful in Jamaica, 284. At Port Royal, 286. In Martinico, 221. In St. Christopher's, 242  
 East Indies, the European commerce to it, whether profitable or not, iv. 78. Its vast consequence to the maritime powers, *ib.* Change wrought by it on the manners of the Europeans, 79. Is the soul of all their other trades, 80. Objections against it answered, 81. Balance of it proved, 82. The discovery of the West Indies owing to it, 83 (G). How improved since the new passage was discovered, 83. & 84. Preferable to the ancient way of commerce, 86. This last described, 88. How formerly carried on, 91. Its various changes, whence, 92 (F). What first invited the Europeans to it, 110. Princes who most encouraged it, *ib.* The property of new discoveries granted by sundry popes, 112  
 East India company, commissioners appointed to settle the dispute between the English and Dutch, with the shuffling of the latter, xi. 576  
 Easter-Island in the South Sea described, also the inhabitants, v. 31 & 32  
 Eaton, captain, arrival and reception at Guam, v. 242. Courted by the natives against the Spaniards, *ib.*  
 Ebenezer, settlement on the Savannah by Saltzburghers, xv. 102. Removed elsewhere, 103. Industry of its inhabitants, 104  
 Ebn Artak takes Mecca and Medina, with his ravages and cruelties in Yaman, i. 274  
 Ebn Wahab sent with a powerful army into Cappadocia, i. 392  
 — Ziyaj driven out of Sicily by Abul Fawares, i. 511  
 — Mokla made Alkaher's vizir, with his revolt and lucky escape, i. 527. Raises a fresh revolt, 528. Made Al Radi's grand vizir, *ib.* Hath an emir created over him, and is deposed by him, 532  
 — Bakir Ariodowlas, vizir, put to death by Adadodawla, i. 576  
 — al Bakelani sent to the emperor Basilus by Adadodawla, and stratagem to avoid bowing down to him, i. 583  
 MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Ebn Al Alam, a famed astronomer, his character and works, i. 584  
 — Dimna assassinated Ali Ebn Merwan, i. 592, and Sheikh Abd'al Barrigi, *ib.*  
 — Shimjur defeated by Mahmud Gazni, with his imprisonment and death, i. 598  
 — Wasel, his life, success, and treason, against Mohadhdheboddawla, i. 608  
 — al Bakelani dies at Baghdad, with his singular character and writings, i. 617  
 — Al Thamen seizes on Catania and Syracuse, i. 646  
 — Al Moslema, Al Kayem's vizir, fettered by Basafiri, and led in mock triumph thro' Baghdad, being beaten till he dies, i. 656  
 — Jazlah, author of the Takwim, a physical book, i. 678 (L). Encouraged by Malek Shah, *ib.*  
 Eboli, princess, some account of, viii. 272 (B)  
 Ehora taken, and the battle there, viii. 322  
 Ebbo, first migration from Denmark, when, and the name of the colony, xi. 680  
 — See Aggo  
 Eclipse, total in Arabia, at Moawiyah's death, i. 294 & 298. Another, total in Abdalmalek's reign, 335. In that of Almanfur, 392  
 — a famous one observed in China, iii. 680. An irregular one observed in China, 703 (G)  
 — dreaded in Hindus, iii. 34  
 Eclipses in Spain in 1239, viii. 5  
 Ecclesiastics in Sweden, prohibited from marriage by a papal nuncio, xii. 233 & 236  
 —, one for murder, boiled alive in a cauldron, in the streets of Parma, xiii. 608  
 Eder-castle surprised and taken by Abdol khan, iii. 68  
 Edessa, now Al Roha, taken from Abu Nasr, by the Greeks, i. 638  
 — submits to the Moslems, i. 241  
 — taken from the Franks by Zenghi, ii. 189  
 Edict, perpetual agreement so called, made with Don John of Austria, who confirms the pacification of Ghent, and dismisses the Spanish army, xi. 417. States General make objections to it, *ib.*  
 Edinburgh, New, account of the Scottish colony of Darien there, and how frustrated, xiv. 448 (T)  
 Edrifites in Western Africa, an end put to their power, i. 515  
 Edward, prince of Portugal, encourages the discovery of the East-Indies, iv. 110. Succeeds his father king John, viii. 431. Removes his father's body with great pomp, and produces a code of laws, 432. Drawn into an expedition for reducing of Tangier, with its unfortunate issue, *ib.* Henry's pains to save the remains of the Christian forces, 433. Ferdinand of Portugal left as an hostage among the Moors till his death, *ib.* Chancellor Regras advises the king to resume crown lands, *ib.* His death by the plague, 434. His character, *ib.* (C)  
 —, prince of England, married to Eleonora of Castile, viii. 8  
 — III. does homage to the king of France at Amiens, and what sort, ix. 90. Suffers an invasion by his nobility into Scotland, and through Artois's persuasion, takes measures for supporting his right to the crown of France, 92. Philip makes alliances against this storm, and Edward debarks a numerous army at Sluys, with their operations, *ib.* Truce concluded between the kings by means of the countess of Hainault, *ib.* Destroys a French fleet which had ravaged Southampton, and is proceeded against as a peer of France, 93. He assumes the title and arms of France for gaining over the Flemings, a truce concluded, and dispute about the succession to Bretagne revives the war, *ib.* Passes over into Bretagne, where, after an unsuccessful campaign, a truce is concluded, 94. A cruel act of Philip's gives him an opportunity of declaring the truce void, and sending him a defiance, 95. His success in Guienne, *ib.* Philip meditates an invasion into England, and debarks, by Geoffrey de Harcourt's advice, a great army in Normandy, which over-runs that duchy, 96. Ravages the country about Calais, 99. He invades France with a powerful fleet and army, making but little progress in laying waste the country, 103. Concludes the famous treaty of Bretigny, near Chartres, 104. Makes a new convention with king John of France, but disapproved by the dauphin and parliament, 105. The Genoese assist France against him, x. 558  
 Edward, Black prince, and his brother John of Gaunt, march with a body of troops to restore Pedro to the crown of Castile,



- Castile, viii. 58, and after beating his competitor Henry, return to Guienne, *ib.* Success in Guienne, ix. 99. Re-seats Pedro the Cruel on the throne of Castile, after the battle of Navarette, 109. But Henry is replaced by the defeat and death of his brother, *ib.* Distressed by his expedition into Spain, 110, who is summoned before Charles to answer complaints against him, *ib.* After recovering Limoges, and putting great part of the Inhabitants to the sword, returns to England, 111. Dies, for whom Charles orders a solemn service, viii. 471. ix. 113
- Edward IV. of England driven from the throne, and Henry replaced through succours from Lewis of France, ix. 171. Quietly re-seated in his throne, 172. Upshot of a message to the king of France, by a herald from him, who debarks a fine army at Calais; but finding himself deceived by his allies, concludes the treaties of Pequigny at an interview with Lewis, 174. His resentment of a marriage treaty between the archduchess Margaret and the dauphin, prevented by his death, 178
- of England forms a strong league with the German princes, at the head of which is the emperor, who making him vicar, breaks off his negotiation with the pope, xi. 43. Chosen emperor by a party, but declines the honour, 48
- I. succeeds his father Ranuccio, first duke of Parma, under tutelage, and his character when of age, xiii. 631. Difference with marshal Crequi at the siege of Valenza on the Po, *ib.* Going with difficulty to his own estates from France, is besieged in Placentia, with his exasperating the pope, 632, and his distress through obstinacy, *ib.* He reconciles himself to the Spaniards, and his address in getting rid of the French garrison, *ib.* His secret dislike to his new connections with the Spaniards, chief resentment and complaints against pope Urban, whom he is prevailed upon to visit, 633, who grants him a diminution of interest for a debt, with a view of his marrying into the pope's family, and the duke's return in marrying a daughter of Tuscany, *ib.* The Barbarini's revenge, *ib.* He forfeits his duchy of Castro, for non-payment of principal and interest, 634. The Italians and Spaniards alarmed at this, with representations to the pope by Tuscany, *ib.* The pope disappointed in his application to the Venetians, and their declaration against him, *ib.* Intractableness of the pope from his successes in Castro, *ib.* and declaration that the duke had incurred excommunication, who is vigorously assisted by Venice and Tuscany, 635. The Spaniards distrusting the pope, are neutral, and the pope's proposal to the French ambassador, in the duke's favour, strengthens their suspicions, *ib.* Contest between the Spanish and Portuguese ambassadors at Rome, brings the pope to a reconciliation with the duke of Parma, who yet invades the ecclesiastical state, the pope's nephew Thaddeo flying to Verona, 635; but the duke is obliged to retire, and the pope's apprehensions, with his artful dissimulation, 636. The duke's distress makes him fall back into Tuscany, and has recourse to negotiation, in every point of which the pope baffles his minister Lionne, *ib.* The duke, disappointed in his main plan, takes two places in the Ferrarese, *ib.* The pope's army, under his nephew Antonia, after a vast expence, disgracefully driven out of the Modenese, and the Tuscans gain advantages in the ecclesiastical state, 637. Peace with France to the pope's advantage, and the duke regains Castro, with his gratitude to the Venetians and French, *ib.* Reflections on this affair, and the duke's death, *ib.*
- prince of Parma, his very magnificent wedding with Dorothea of Neuberg, xiii. 640
- succeeds his father Amadeo the Great, count of Savoy, xiv. 126
- Effendi Saadi, his history of the Turks, origin and conquests, v. 137
- Effingham Howard, lord, governor of Virginia, his arbitrary proceedings, xv. 372. No redress obtained from England, but the imposts on Tobacco increased, *ib.* Other overstrained acts of power, and he returns to England, *ibid.*
- Egica persecutes the Jews in Gaul, v. 521
- Egil succeeds Hacquin in Sweden, and his unfortunate death, xii. 224
- Egiza mounts the Visigoth throne resigned to him, vii. 571. Calls a council at Toledo, *ib.* Conspired against by archbishop Sigebert, 572, and by the Jews, *ib.* Defeats the Saracens at sea, *ib.* Calls a new council, and associates Witiza with him; his death and character, 573
- Egmond, count, account of him, xi. 403. Philip's rigour mitigated, and sent into Spain, 405. Executed, 407
- Egridur described, and taken by Timur Bek, ii. 564
- Egypt invaded by the Moslems under Amru, i. 233. Conquered by him, 272. Invaded by the Greeks, 470. Alarmed by various strange phenomena, 500, and strange meteors, 502. Reduced by caliph Al Mostafi, 508. Invaded by the Magrelians, 515. Ruined by swarms of Locusts, 522. Subdued by Mohammed Ebn Tagai, 531. Damaged by earthquakes, &c. *ib.*
- subdued by Al Moezz's forces, i. 564. Alarmed with dreadful phenomena, 591. Under a dreadful famine, 660. Its horrid effects, 661. Restored to peace and plenty, 665. Alarmed with other strange phenomena, 690
- becomes an Ottoman province, iv. 106. Its vast advantage from the Indian commerce, *ib.*
- modern history of, vi. 1. Soil, why short of its ancient fecundity, 2. Owing greatly to its tyrannic government, 4. The basha's vast charges and revenue, 5. His assistant officers, *ib.* Corps of militia, 6 (D). Hall where they sit, 7 (E). Whence the plague is brought into it, and its very great havock, 9. Stately burying places, *ib.* Stair-cases, 10. Decay of trade, and their manufactures, *ib.* (I). Dexterity in mounting of guns, 11. Famous library destroyed by Saladin, *ib.* Decay of military discipline and government of Selim, 12. Is without naval forces, and its cities described, *ib.* Labyrinth, 18. Other castles and garrisons, 19. Patriarchate described, 22. Grand caravan to Mecca described, 28. (See Caravan.) Vast imports and exports, 34. Ships on the Red-sea, 35. Commerce with Europe, &c. 36. Trade to Cairo, 37, under the caliphs of Baghdad, and the Fatemite caliphs, 41. Their great power and opulence, *ib.* Splendid court at Cairo, and sumptuous palaces, &c. 42. Great profusion at their tables, *ib.* Their several reigns from Moezz I. of Egypt, and IV. of Africa, and its conquest, 43 (H) (See Moezz.) Labours under a grievous famine, 48. Pestilence, *ib.* Invaded by the Turks, *ib.* Also by Nuro'ddin, 56, and by the Franks, 57
- Egyptians driven out of Jerusalem by the Franks, i. 683. When first masters of it, *ib.*
- why afflicted with plagues, &c. vi. 2 (A), and other sad diseases, 3 (B)
- their commerce of great antiquity, iv. 97. Their reduction under the Saracens, 100. Subjection to the Mamelucs, 101
- Eggs, how hatched in ovens at Canton, iii. 549
- Ehrenschild, Swedish admiral, czar Peter's compliment to him, xiii. 229
- Elak Nevian sent to subdue Ilak, ii. 300. Takes Tonkat and makes it a magazine, *ib.* Lays close siege to Khojend and takes it, 302. His conduct at the siege of Khojend, 300. Settles the affairs there after its surrender, 302
- Elbing seized by the elector of Brandenburg, the Polish king's resentment against him, and the emperor's mediation is accepted, yet the treaty is protracted above a year by Brandenburg, xii. 570. Upon intelligence of a conspiracy there, the garrison is strengthened with more Brandenburgishers, 572. Evacuated, 573. The magistrates, reproached by the Polish commissaries with cowardice and perfidy, are fined, &c. *ib.*
- Elchi Timur Khan lives at Tamerlane's court till this prince dies, ii. 435
- Buga, his stratagem to save Timur-Bek's life, ii. 506. Revolts with others against him, 510
- El-David, a famed impostor among the Jews, v. 551. Disappears from his pursuers, but betrayed and beheaded by his father-in-law, *ib.* (K)
- Eleanora, the first Christian queen of Congo, baptized, vi. 474
- delivered of infanta Berengara, vii. 690
- of Denmark, married to Charles of Sweden, xii. 200
- princess Ulrica, Charles's sister, is called to the administration in her brother's absence, xii. 404. Her marriage with the prince of Hesse, who is made generalissimo, 406. Succeeds her brother Charles XII. in the Swedish throne, 413. Crowned, an act of amnesty preceding, 414. Dies, with her character, 423. Disputes thereon about the succession, and the several candidates, *ib.*
- Eleazar, Rabbi, his treatise on the measures of the temple, v. 439, sub not. (S)
- Electoral college, their number and power, x. 620. Privileges of electors, *ib.*
- principalities, union of them, and their rights, xi. 378



Electoral princes, order of succession among them, and those who carry the honorary ensigns, xi. 378. Their functions in the courts of the emperors, or kings of the Romans, 382. Their tables, 384. Are to be instructed in the languages, *ib.*

Electorate, ninth. See Hanover

Electors, German, their right being authorized by custom, they chuse at Worms Conrad, duke of Franconia, as emperor, on the death of Lewis IV. x. 624

—— method of proceeding at their election of an emperor, what, xv. 412. 414 (S)

—— embrace a neutrality between the pope and council of Basil, with their view therein, xi. 90 (E)

—— at Frankfort, why they remonstrate to pope Eugenius, with an accommodation made, xi. 94. Refuse to admit the archduke Philip into the electoral college, 124

—— how, and by whom to be conducted to the place of electing a king of the Romans, xi. 366. Form of the oath taken by them, 369 (B). Ecclesiastical, their precedence, 370. The princes who, *ib.* Comparison between those and the common princes, with the succession of the former, 371. Election of the princes, 374. Their coin, *ib.* Assembly of the princes, *ib.* Revocation of their privileges, 375. Form of proxy to ambassadors, 377. Punishment of conspirators against any of them, 380. Preserving their principalities entire, 381 (A) & (B)

Elephants dreaded by the Jagatays, and those are discomfited by Timur's buffaloes, and how, ii. 546. Make their submission to him, *ib.* Taught to pay homage to the kings of Pegu, iii. 271. A fatal instance of their loyalty, 713

—— from Ethiopia, wild and dangerous, vi. 184

—— vast numbers in the kingdom of Sofala, vi. 363.

Of the Cape of Good-Hope, 403

—— Bezoar-stone bred in their ventricles, vi. 432

—— of Africa, described, v. 683. Dangerous fierceness, 684. Singular sagacity, *ib.*

—— monstrous size in Congo, vi. 432. How caught, *ibid.*

—— order of, instituted in Denmark, xii. 118 (A). Some account of, *ib.*

Eleibaen, or Caleb, defeats and subdues the Homerites, vi. 252 (B)

Elfsburg taken by the Danes, whose further progress is stopt, xii. 291

El Hammah Gabbs baths in Tunis described, vii. 309

Eliakim, rabbi, compiles his Jewish ritual, v. 545 (M)

Elias Al Kedr comforts Mohammed's family, after his death, i. 109

—— Kojaglen, the son of Togluk-Khan, made governor of Jagatay, and his conquests, ii. 501. Succeeds him, but defeated and taken by Timur Bek, 502. Defeated afresh with great slaughter, *ib.*

—— Beg sent to seize upon Ray, but defeated and slain, ii. 602

—— Pathetic apology for the oppressed Jews before the English council, v. 567 & (A)

—— Levita, a learned Jewish rabbi, his character and works, v. 594 (T). Extreme poverty, *ib.* sub not.

Eliezer, rabbi, a learned cabalist of Jerusalem, v. 569 (F)

Elisha, the Galilean, a famed Jew of the first century, v. 489, sub (S)

Elizabeth of France, her death and character, ix. 415

—— queen, regent of Hungary, solemnizes the marriage of Sigismund with her daughter Mary, and then sends him into Bohemia, xi. 71. On Durazzo's murder, resumes her former authority, *ib.* but on a progress put to death by Hiornard, governor of Croatia, Gara and Charles's murderer being cut to pieces, *ib.* He throws her daughter Mary into a dungeon, *ib.*

—— empress, why she puts her son Ladislaus under the emperor's protection at Vienna, xi. 92

—— queen, seizes a sum sending into Flanders, which causes the first rupture with Spain; various success of the war, viii. 263. Mysterious conduct in the affair of her marriage, ix. 278. Smart answer on Bodin's desiring her picture, with the queen's view in all this, *ib.* Her character by pope Sixtus V. x. 117. Lends the states-general twenty-thousand pounds, with the conditions, xi. 416. Their treaty with that queen, which she afterwards breaks, 419. Treaty concluded with her, and her manifesto on this head, 432. Her remonstrance on Leicester's elevation, and the state's answer, *ib.* She loudly complains of the alliance between the states and Henry IV. of France, 444. The state's answer to her demands, and their temporizing, *ib.* Embassy from that queen to Frederic II. of Den-

mark, with the order of the garter, xii. 154. Death, xi. 467 Elizabeth of England married to the elector palatine, xi. 186 ———, daughter to Peter the Great, a revolution in Russia in favour of, xiii. 266. Her character, and declared empress of Russia, *ib.* Sends for her nephew Peter of Holstein, whom the states of Sweden chuse their king, 267; but she appoints him her successor in Russia, and is he accordingly styled grand duke, *ib.* & 82. Those instrumental in keeping her from the throne sentenced to die, but pardoned, 267, declaring that none should be put to death during her reign, which promise she observed, *ib.* Is crowned at Moscow, *ib.* Offers peace to the distressed Swedes, and the preliminaries signed at Abo, with conditions, *ib.*

Elk, in Congo, a remedy against the epilepsy, vi. 433 (S)

—— of Canada described, xiv. 556. Hunting of them, *ib.*

Elkan, the prince of the Satrapas, takes Cyziacum, and other places in Asia-Minor, ii. 207. Is taken and sent prisoner to Alexis, *ib.* Dreadful havoc of the Crusaders, 209

Elmina fort taken by the Dutch, vi. 639. Besieged by the natives, 640. Described, 657. Its citadel, 659. Garrison, *ib.*

—— city, its ancient splendor, &c. and warlike natives, vi. 658. Spacious buildings, 659. Company's gardens, 660. Account of it under the Portuguese, 661, and under the Dutch, with the rise of the latter's trade, *ib.*

Elmo, fort de St. besieged by the Turks, vii. 479. Makes a dreadful sally on them, 480. A mutiny of the garrison, 482. The great master's order to them, *ib.* Repels the Turks with great loss, 483. Renew the attack with the same ill success, and the garrison die sword in hand, 484. Christians inhumanly treated, *ib.*

Elora, its stupendous pagods described, iii. 138

Elvas, the Spaniards forced in their lines there, viii. 514

Elviran council, their decree against the Jews, v. 504

Eluths (Aluths) Calmucs, a tribe of what Tartars, ii. 119.

Called also Virats, 125, and Mungls, 249. Their country described, *ib.* High situation, produce, &c. 250. Great fertility, 251. Live in tents, their khan's residence, court, &c. described, *ib.* also their manners, customs, &c. 253. Submit to the Manchews, 261. At present powerful, and caressed by the Chinese emperors, 262. Their government, forces, weapons, way of fighting, &c. 263. Intrepid bravery, with their khan's revenue, *ib.* And subdued by Kang-hi, iii. 742

—— Koshoti, where situated, ii. 252. Government, 263

—— Torgauti, where situated, ii. 252. Government, 263

Eluth khans, from whom descended, and their history, ii. 441. When reduced under one khan, *ib.*

Elledin Burham, who; strip of his dominions by Bajazet, vi. 167

Elliot (Mr. John) his labours and success for converting the Indians of New-England, and his character, xiv. 512. His converts build a town, and laws enacted, to which they agree, *ib.* Prevails on his Indian converts to lay aside several of their customs, 513. Sachems alarmed, and one of them turns Christian at last, *ib.* His converts build a large town, *ib.* Translates the Bible, &c. into Indian, *ib.*

—— captain, gives intelligence at Jamaica of a descent by the French, xv. 288. Handsomely rewarded by the king, *ibid.*

Ellis, governor of Georgia, gets a gratuity from his majesty for his administration, xv. 104

Emanuel, king of Portugal, invited to pursue the East-India traffic, iv. 114. Reasons for and against it, *ib.* His success, 115. Design to drive the Mahometans out of India, 122. Death and character, 128

—— strange treatment of the African princes, vi. 350. Tyranny to his tributaries, 354

—— his first fleet sent round Africa, with his chief motives, v. 700 (A)

—— his embassy to queen Helen of Abyssinia, vi. 160. Reception of queen Helen's ambassadors, 255

—— his care of educating the king of Congo's son, vi. 475. His grand embassy to the king of Congo, 476. Success against the Moors, and conquests, vii. 173 (A)

—— his success in Africa, viii. 462. A jealousy of the Portuguese hinders Ferdinand the Catholic from deposing the monarch of Fez, *ib.* Ensigns of the garter sent Emanuel from England, and the queen delivered of Henry, *ib.* Splendid embassy to pope Leo X. on giving him the first fruits of the Indies, 463. In return a bull is given, leaving the clergy at his mercy, with an embassy from Abyssinia, and success in Barbary, *ib.* Mortifying dis-

appointments



- appointments in Africa, and deceived in disgracing Albuquerque, who breaks his heart, 464. The queen delivered of Duarte, and the king soured with the disappointments in Africa, and ready to abandon it, is dissuaded, 465. A minister from the Shah of Persia, acceptable, and why, *ib.* Queen Maria dies, and his endeavours to form a league against the Turks ineffectual, as also is an enterprise into Barbary, *ib.* A passage opened to China from Malacca, and the king talks of abdicating in favour of his son, but alters his mind, 466. Marries Leonora of Castile, and his consummate policy in not disobliging his people from a remarkable instance, *ib.* The nobility under a cloud, and why, 467. Matters mend in Africa, with the entire change in prince Juan's conduct, and the queen delivered of Carlos, but he dies, *ib.* Generous behaviour with regard to Charles V. 468. Kindly taken, and listens to the remonstrance of the clergy, *ib.* Project of going by land through Congo into Abyssinia, *ib.* Marries Beatrix to Charles of Savoy, and the queen delivered of Maria, 469. Declines entering into a contract with the Venetians for the East-India spices, *ib.* On a grievous famine in Barbary, supplies the Moors greatly, and clears the seas of pirates, with his unexpected death, and his character, 470 (D). Remarkable interview between him and a lady, and character at more length, 471, in *fin not.*
- Emanuel the Fortunate succeeds Juan II. of Portugal, with all the titles he could wish, viii. 453. Account of him and character, *ib.* (A). Wise measures at his accession, and happy effects, 454. Restores the family of Braganza, 455. His edict with regard to the Jews, and its consequences, *ib.* A new passage to the Indies attempted by Vasco de Gama, *ib.* Espouses Isabella, dowager of Portugal, heiress of Castile and Arragon, *ib.* Dominions surveyed, and he goes to Castile with his pregnant queen, who is acknowledged presumptive heir, 456. Effect of an embassy to pope Alexander VI. exhorting him to decency of life, with his vigilance in the administration, *ib.* In what time Vasco performed his voyage, and his advancement, *ib.* Promotes his predecessor's son, and his own nephew, with a marriage between himself and Maria of Castile, *ib.* Joins a squadron with the Venetians against Bajazet, 457. Regard for Diego, duke of Braganza, his nephew, with an account of him and issue, *ib.* (B). Both fleets joining, Bajazet drops his design against the Venetians, *ib.* Discovery of Brazil, by Cabral, *ib.* Bethlehem, or Bellem monastery founded, with an account of its village and fort, *ib.* (C). Continues sending squadrons to the Indies, 458. Expedition into Barbary, and the queen delivered of a prince, with the omens, *ib.* His solemn pilgrimage to St. James's, at Compostella, with his acts of piety, *ib.* Vasco's return with a cargo from the Indies, *ib.* His indifferent success in Africa, with the birth of Isabella, and death of the queen's mother, Isabella of Castile; also the birth of Beatrix, 459. Sends a strong fleet to the Indies, upon which the sultan of Egypt threatens the pope, Castile, and Lisbon, 460. Remarkable law passed by the states, *ib.* The king's respect for Duarte Pacheco on his arrival from the Indies, with his fate afterwards, *ib.* His queen delivered of Lewis and Ferdinand, with the surprize of port Saffi from the Moors, *ib.* Disputes with Castile in Africa left to commissaries, and their determination, *ib.* Sends a squadron to the Indies, and the queen delivered of Alonso, 461. A French pirate taken by the Portuguese, *ib.* His transactions in Barbary, 468
- , treachery of that Greek emperor to the Venetians, x. 197
- duke of Savoy, and the French king, complaints of, with the answer of the Genevois, xiv. 31
- Philibert, succeeds his father Charles III. duke of Savoy, and his great character, xiv. 130. How he recovers his dominions, and his war with the Vaudois, *ib.* His purchases and death, with his marriage, *ib.*
- Embaca, a province in Angola described, vi. 496. Its Giagas brave soldiers, but subject to the Portuguese, *ib.*
- Emden, a new East-India company set up there by Prussia, iv. 668
- Embriacus, on the return of the Genoese from the Holy Land, is chosen the first of four quadrennial consuls, x. 537
- Emeralds, ignorance of the Spaniards in trying them, and one of large size sent to Panama, xiv. 284
- Emerick, king of Hungary, whose brother Andrew rebels, xv. 389. Speech by which he prevails on them to lay down their arms, and pardons his brother, *ib.* (B). Loses Zara, and the conditions of a peace concluded, he dies, *ibid.*
- Emerobaptists, an upstart sect among the Jews, v. 496
- Emesa, Hems, where situated, i. 159. 189. Buys a year's truce of Abu Obeidah, 191. Stripped of all its provisions by Abu Obeidah, 196. Besieged by him, 197. Makes a gallant defence, and relieved by Heraclius, 198
- abandoned to the Greeks, i. 565
- Eminia-n-zima, the founder of the Congoeze monarchy, and his conquests, vi. 470
- Emir Omra, a new dignity, above that of grand vizier, created, i. 532 (D). Becomes absolute, *ib.* Abolishes the khalifate in Spain, i. 631
- Emma of England, to whom married, xi. 689
- Emperor, Greek, at Charles of Anjou's desire, is excommunicated, ix. 648
- arrival at Avignon, ix. 685. On his arrival confirms the rights of the church very amply, (See Empire). Enters Italy with an army, and peace concluded with Bernabo, 687. Leads the pope's horse by the bridle to St. Peter's, and after the empress's coronation, returns home, *ib.* Enter's Italy twice, but returns, 697
- Empire, modern, its history and titles, xv. 407 (L). Its head and members, who, *ib.* (M). Immediate and mediate states, *ib.* Species of its government, 408. Declension of the empire to what owing, *ib.* Some form of hereditary succession for two hundred years, *ib.* Rights and cities alienated, with the views particularly of Rodolph of Hapsburgh, *ib.* Also Lewis of Bavaria, 409. How governors made themselves masters of places, *ib.* Conduct of Charles IV. and his son Wenceslaus, *ib.* (N). The empire not reckoned monarchic after the institution of electors, and who anciently had a right, *ib.* This power when restrained, and the emperor's authority how augmented, *ib.* The present form of government, whether aristocratical, and the proofs, *ib.* (O). This opinion greatly destroys the dignity of the empire, 410. The emperor's sovereignty how evinced, *ib.* His high titles alleged to import no independent sovereignty, *ib.* Of the emperor and his election, 411. His necessary qualifications, *ib.* (P). The election must be according to the form in the Golden Bull, and what, *ib.* Power of the elector of Mentz, and how limited, *ib.* Reception of the electors on the road, and oath at the place of election to them, 412. Vary in several things from the Golden Bull, but when they proceed to the election follow it exactly, 413. Proceed from the town-house in cavalcade to the church, *ib.* Seated in the choir, divine service begins, after which they take the oath before election, and what, *ib.* A majority carries it, a verbal process signed by the electors, they repair to the high altar, and the emperor confirms the electors right, 414 (S). Coronation of the emperor, and its particularities, *ib.* The imperial ornaments, and church where the ceremony is performed, *ib.* (T). The great officers in the procession to church, *ib.* The ceremony when there, and Latin questions put to him, 415. The oath taken thereupon, *ib.* Question put to those assisting, and answer, when, after some prayers, he is consecrated, *ib.* Then clothed in the old imperial vestments, and the ceremony of giving him Charlemain's sword, *ib.* The ring, sceptre, and globe, put into his hand, the imperial mantle and crown put on, *ib.* He reads in German the oath at the altar, and presents a piece of gold, with the procession to the tribunal, and words pronounced there, 416 (V). Solemn Te Deum sung, *ib.* The emperor creates knights, is made a canon of Aix upon oath, and the presents he makes thereof, to that and other churches, *ib.* (X). A writing given the church of Aix by the emperor and electors, *ib.* The emperor's pre-eminence, his titles and prerogatives, 417 (Y). He confers secular dignities, *ib.* Rights of regality, investiture of great fiefs, delegation to princes, and right of life and death, &c. 418. Grants fairs and offices in the Imperial chamber, with consent of the empire, and other rights, *ib.* General consent necessary in religion, and making laws, &c. *ib.* Power of the king of the Romans and vicars, with the restriction of his rights by the capitulations, 419. Origin of the latter, and diminution of the emperor's dominion, *ib.* Revenue of old and of late, *ib.* His advantages, what, 420. The means by which the house of Austria aggrandized itself, *ib.* Ceremony of investiture to Maurice of Saxony, *ib.* Investiture confirmed on every succession, 421. Investiture of ordinary fiefs by an ambassador, what, *ib.* Perquisites to officers, *ib.* Account



count of his great officers, *ib.* His three councils, 422. Titles ancient and modern, 424. That of august, and always august, 425. Variation in his titles whence, *ib.* Epithets conferred on him, 426. Relicks at his coronation, and marks of honour, *ib.* Crowns, *ib.* Globe, sceptre, rings, and swords, 427. Habits, *ib.* Where, and by whom kept, 428. Eagle in his arms, 429. Different acceptation of king of the Romans, *ib.* Why so called now, *ib.* Regulation for it, *ib.* Election of one at Augsburgh, 430. Must be ratified by the emperor, 431. Advantages common with the latter, *ib.* Vicars of the empire their power, *ib.* & 411. Those under the emperors of different houses, 432. Count palatine, his power as vicar, *ib.* Uncertain when the elector of Saxony enjoyed the vicariate, *ib.* and that by concession, *ib.* Origin of the Palatine's right, 433. Division of the vicar's power, 434. Districts under the vicariates, *ib.* The rights of the vicars, *ib.* Vicars of the Roman empire and Italy, 435. Other vicars appointed, *ib.* Office of the vicars of Italy, and those of Aries, 436.

Empresses, their number limited by Tutemur, *ii.* 414. The point about their having of tablets decided, 416.

Empress queen, war between her and Prussia, with the success in favour of the latter, *xv.* 631.

Enbanej revolts against sultan Arilan, *ii.* 192. Submits and is slain, *ib.*

Enei, third emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 50.

Enetes ravaged deplorably by the Turks, *ii.* 239.

Engelbert, bold remonstrance to the king. See Erick. His successes, and the Swedish diet by his means renounce allegiance to king Erick, *xii.* 248. See Dalecarlians.

— in a diet at Abo, is declared prince of Sweden, *xii.* 97, and an accommodation made with the senate, *ib.* (A). Erick violates the treaty, *ib.* The Swedes revolt, *ib.* Murdered, 99 & 248.

England, by whom subdued, *xi.* 686, 688.

— invaded by Philip II. of Spain, *xi.* 436. Disaster of his armada. See Armada.

— embraces the interests of Portugal, and Charles II. his treaty for marrying Catharine, *viii.* 420.

— declares war against France, *ix.* 243.

— king of, as mediator between France and Holland, renews the negotiations, with his partiality, *ix.* 463. His terms rejected, *ib.* Difficulties in adjusting matters with it and France, but compromised, and both sides ready to sign, 505.

— king of, refuses to recall Becket, whom the pope creates his legate à latere in England, *ix.* 600. Association there against Roman and Italian priests, who are plundered, 628. Refused money for succours promised to Sicily, 639.

— war between it and France renewed, with the papal usurpations in the former opposed, *ix.* 678. Its brief to the papists there, about an oath published by the king, 432.

— and France oblige Charles and Philip to agree to a peace, the latter renouncing all pretensions to Naples, *x.* 533.

— solicits the emperor for the count palatine, and Ferdinand's offer for satisfying him rejected, *xi.* 255. It and Holland declare war against France and Spain, 324. Suspension of arms with it signed, 355.

— parliament of, resolves to chastise the states-general, *xi.* 559. The two republics on the point of coming to a rupture, and the demands from England to the ambassadors from the states, *ib.*

— disputes between its king and the states-general, *xi.* 589. Causes of a rupture between them, 592. The Breach widened by Sir George Downing, 593. Daily increase of jealousy, and Skelton recalled, 635.

— differences between it and Denmark terminated by a treaty, *xii.* 95. Treaty between it, France, and Holland, for establishing peace in the North, 183.

— double treaty between it and Sweden, one of which regards Hanover as to Bremen and Verden, *xiii.* 248.

— preliminaries of peace between it and France, with the articles, *xiii.* 655. Objected to by the queen of Spain, but at last agreed to by her, the king of Sardinia, the emperor and empire, 656.

— reflections on its government in North America, *xiv.* 651. War declared between it and France, 676. Awakened by the encroachments of the French in North America, and measures taken accordingly, 696; but, after vast preparations, the expedition against Quebec ends in smoke, by a pusillanimous attempt on Port l'Orient in Old France, *Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.*

697. Negotiation at London between it and France, with the latter's indifference, 703. Negligence of its government about its American colonies, *xv.* 94.

England, disputes between it and Spain, *xv.* 281. Report of the board of trade thereon, *ib.*

— New, its original extent described, *xiv.* 499. Seasons here, *ib.* Rivers and fish, *ib.* Indian corn, *ib.* Fowls and animals wild and tame, 500. Timber, what, 501. Different whaler, *ib.* Their affection to their young, and an account of the whale killer fish, *ib.* Its discovery, *ib.* Origin of its colony to what owing, 502. The first adventurers dissenters, who obtain a grant from king James I. and land at Cape Cod, *ib.* From whence they make a settlement at New Plymouth, and receive a visit from the Indians, which the governor repays, and the consequence, 503. Hostilities commencing, the Indians submit, and make a grant to the colony, *ib.* Puritan ministers success in procuring supplies and encouragement in Old England, 506. Account of the murder of some Englishmen by the Indians, with the occasion, *ib.* Great scheme for peopling it, and by whom, 507, but dropt, and the patent sold to Connecticut colony, 508. Absurd conduct of the English court, and an embargo laid on some ships for New England, and why, &c. *ib.* Its two great branches of trade, what, *ib.* Two countries laid out for them, *ib.* Expedition of their confederated colonies against the natives, 509. Their success in massacring several natives, *ib.* Another massacring expedition against the Pequots, *ib.* Example of savage virtue in the Sachem's wife, when taken, *ib.* The natives lands distributed among the planters and their allies, *ib.* Religious differences now in that colony, and what, *ib.* Increase of that colony, 510. Great improvement and trade, *ib.* Differences among the Indians there, 511, and the part the colony takes in them, with their remarkable compelling the Sachem to fulfil his treaty, *ib.* Practices of the French from Canada against that colony, *ib.* Articles of confederation between the four colonies, and their import; hence all is called New England, *ib.* Society for propagating the gospel there, 514. A corporation established in Old England for that purpose, *ib.* Conspiracy against the English, *ib.* Agree to the Westminster confession and discipline, *ib.* Persecution against the Baptists and Quakers, *ib.* Inhuman laws against the latter, *ib.* Their enthusiasm, and inflicting capital punishments, but stopped by the English government, 515. Two Indian princes, their submission, one of which dies of a fever, contracted by violent agitation from an affront, *ib.* Effect of the Bartholomew act on it, what, *ib.* Burn innocent people for witches, &c. *ib.* Union of incorporation between Connecticut and Newhaven, *ib.* Erected into a society for propagating the gospel, and the illustrious names at its head, *ib.* A commission sent thither for deciding all controverted points, and his majesty's letter, 516. Persecution of the Baptists and Quakers renewed, and interposition for them from England ineffectual, *ib.* Forts built there after the Philippic war, and a synod held at Boston for reformation of manners, 521. Death of three governors, and their successors who, *ib.* Charters of all its colonies resumed by the crown, *ib.* Complaints of the Indians, what, *ib.* How a war is kindled hereupon, *ib.* Hostilities begun by them, and egged on by the French, with Andros' bad success, 522. How they resume their charter government by their own authority, and confirmed by king William, 523. War between them and the Indians continued, *ib.* The hostilities committed by the latter, and an error of the English in the late war rectified, *ib.* The French instruct the Indians in their arts of treachery, *ib.* Charter granted them by king William, and what, 524. Only allowed to chuse Phipps their governor, 525. The Indians recommence hostilities with French officers and their Indians, *ib.* Remarkable words when they charged, *ib.* Peace concluded with the Indians, and the terms, 526. Hostilities committed there by the Indians and French, 527. A debility now in their government, 528. War renewed and the Indians appear on horseback, 527. Blame of its government, 528, and why hostilities are renewed by the Indians, *ib.* Threatened by a French invasion, 529. Hostilities renewed there by the Indians, but ended by the peace of Ryswick, 530. Treaty with the Indians at Penobscot, and an instrument of submission by the Sachems, *ib.* Their attention to commerce, and benefit from privateers, 531. Public spirited proceedings, *ib.* Governor's speech to the assembly on the miscarriage of the Canada expedition, 532. Improved in the polite arts of life, *ib.* Sachems of the Eastern Indians renew their submission, and remarkable



- remarkable saying for its duration, 533. An insurrection of some of them soon quelled, *ib.* Dimensions of the trees there reserved to the crown, 535. Inconveniencies of this reservation, *ib.* Their troops take Louisburg, by which they give peace to Europe, 536. Exerted the same spirit in the late war with France, *ib.* Its constitution, *ib.* Laws, what, *ib.* Some laws very rigorous, and others most equitable, 537, and a remarkable law about Christian strangers, *ib.* Government, what, *ib.* Foreign trade, what, 538. Exports to Barbadoes, and the returns from it and Europe, with the amount, *ib.* Religion and number of congregations, with their church-government, *ib.* Police for morals excellent, and great industry, *ib.* Division into twelve countries, its towns, &c. with the number of their shipping, *ib.* Proposal from it to Canada, and the latter's absurd condition what, but all to no effect, 588
- England, New, ridiculous account of an irruption into it by the French, *xiv.* 678, and a reciprocal one on the Abenaguais by the English, *ib.* Plan of an expedition against it at Montreal, and the French take Haverhill, 685. The French account of this why improbable, *ib.* (O)
- English, their vain attempt to trade into Japan, *iv.* 21. *sub not.* (Y). Lose their settlement at Tirando, *ib.* Ungratefully treated by the Dutch at Java, 419. Give them a total defeat, *ib.* Reinforced by 4000 Bantams, &c. 420. Make peace with the Dutch, 421. Deprived of their Spice-Islands by the treacherous Dutch, 423. How reconciled to the loss, *ib.* (P). Seize on the homeward-bound ships, 425. Their rich factory at Bantam plundered by the Dutch, and excluded from that kingdom, 461
- East India company, its rise and progress, *v.* 285. Whether hurtful or beneficial, *ib.* How, and when it began, 288. First charter granted by queen Elizabeth, 290. First fleet sent out, 291. Privilege granted the English by the king of Achen, *ib.* Second expedition, anno 1604, *ib.* Other successful expeditions under new captains, 293. Their various settlements in India, 298. Embassy into Persia, *ib.* Success against the Portuguese, *ib.* Treaties between them and the Dutch abortive, 299. A new fleet sent into India, 300 (U). New treaty with the Dutch, *ib.* Cruelty of the latter how palliated, 301. Send a new fleet under captain Shilling, 302. His success against the Portuguese, *ib.* Their factories at Amboyna massacred by the Dutch, which they lose by their remissness, 304. Pretended conspiracy of the English confuted, 310. Character of the Dutch displayed, 311. Why no satisfaction was obtained from them, *ib.* Decline of the English trade since, 312. A new revival attempted, 313, and as industriously obstructed by the Dutch, 314. Commissioners appointed to settle their disputes, *ib.* Concessions made by the Dutch, 316. New charter obtained from king Charles II. and an English squadron sent to Bombay, *ib.* Attempt to recover Bantam, 318. Encouraged by king James II. and shameful behaviour of the East India governor, *ib.* They settle an inquisition at Bombay, 319. Forced to make restitution for their governor Child's injustice, 321. His death, 324. Peace is obtained from Aurengzebe, *ib.* Complaints made against the company, 327. Their answer to them, 328. The contest brought before the house of commons, 330. The resolution of that house, 331. Referred to the king's council, 332 (P). Obtain a new charter from the queen, 334. Forfeit it for non-payment, *ib.* Merchants, &c. petition against the company, 335. Their answer, 336 (Q). Obtain a new charter from the council, 337 (R). Abuse their power, 339. Open a new subscription, anno 1694, *ib.* Their accounts examined by the house of commons, 340. Directors examined, *ib.* A stop why put to the enquiry, anno 1698, 341. Offer a loan to the government, but rejected, 342. New petition to the parliament, *ib.* Heard by council at the bar, 343. Merchants, &c. objections against it, *ib.* A new company rejected, 345. Authorized by parliament, *ib.* Contests between the old and new company, *ib.* United together, 346. Their division subsists still abroad, 347. Resolution to lend money to the government, 348. Obtain some acts in their favour, 349. War with the Sandah Rajah on the Malabar coasts, 356 (C). New obstacles raised at home, 357. Fresh proposals to the government, *ib.* A squadron sent into India, 358. Lose the fortress of Calicut, 371. Their affairs recovered by Watson and Clive's success, 372. Its various settlements in Asia described, 377. That of Fort St. George described, 387. The company's revenue, 389. Customs on imports and exports, 391. Extent of their trade, 392 and notes. Settlements on the isle of Sumatra, and privileges granted to them, 396. Take the island of St. Helena, 397. Retake it from the Dutch, *ib.* Island described, *ib.* Forbid to trade into the Philippine Islands, 402. Mr. Postlethwait's proposal for uniting the African and East India commerce into one company, 405. How far practicable, 406
- English attempt on the Azores fails, and they also let the plate-fleet go, *viii.* 278
- when ousted from France, *ix.* 246.
- catholics allowed all the benefits of the jubilee in their own kingdom, *x.* 111. College at Rome by whom founded, *ib.*
- clergy will not consent to refuse Boniface obedience, and the emperor excuses himself to the French king on the same account, *ix.* 699
- attack the Dutch fleet, *xi.* 287. Parliament consents to the preliminaries of peace, 351
- their Baltic fleet brought into Dunkirk, *ix.* 488. Lewis XIV's reply on St. Paul's death in this service, *ib.*
- their attempt on the Dutch fleet in Bergen miscarries, *xi.* 600. Dispersed and shattered in a storm, while Ruyter arrives safe, *ib.*
- council, warm debates there, and the arguments for and against peace with Spain, *xi.* 449. Historians, their mistake in assigning the cause of the war between England and Holland, 593
- merchants, headed by the marquis of Caermarthen, give the czar Peter 15,000 l. for leave to export tobacco into Russia, *xiii.* 192 (C)
- Mercenaries disbanded on the peace of Bretigny, *xiii.* 334. Ravage in a separate body, most of whom are bought off by the Florentines, but Sir John Hawkwood remains in the Pisan service, 337
- students at Bologna, demolish one altar to Thomas à Becket, and erect another, *xiii.* 561. Ministry join the French in their pacific system for Italy, and the Imperial minister at the Hague, his memorial to that effect, 654. An armistice in Germany and Italy concluded, *ib.* Bombard Genoa and other places, 663
- boys, bravery of two in defending a fort, *xiv.* 523. Success against the Indians from their intelligence, 519
- court, their disadvantageous treaty with the French for North America, with some of the articles, but disregarded by the people, *xiv.* 623. A large body of them, Iroquois, &c. for reducing Montreal, and how frustrated, 640. Retreat from Quebec, and the loss of their ships in going down the river, 641. War between them and the French continues in Canada, with its operations, 643. Attempt on Newfoundland how unsuccessful, 646. Misconduct on both sides, and retreat of the English, 647. Fleet sails from Boston, 649. Their expedition against Martinico miscarries, 650. Recover Fort St. Anne, in Hudson's-bay, *ib.* Expedition against Quebec, 691. Curious manifesto on this occasion, and its substance, with the bad effects on the natives, *ib.* It miscarries, and Charlevoix's exaggeration of the English loss, 692. Their expedition against Placentia in Newfoundland miscarries, *ib.* Spirited preparations against the French, 704. Against Canada, 705, but disappointed, *ib.* Discord among them in America, 706, but postpone all their little differences and unite, 707. Sailors drag a cannon up a precipice, and excellent use made of it, 720. Courage and coolness in general at the battle of Quebec, 721. Massacred by the French among the Chactaws, *xv.* 20
- settlements in Hudson's-bay, and trade, *xv.* 156. Take Fort Bourbon, (Fort Nelson) and other settlements, which the French recover, 158, but keep possession of Fort Albany, *ib.*
- their declaration of war against Spain, and its material parts, *xv.* 577. Success of their fleet under Haddock in the Mediterranean, 578. Spirited proceedings in parliament, *ib.* Success on the French coast, 622
- Enguien, duke de, a victory obtained by him over the Spaniards near Ardennes, *xi.* 258 (C). Attacking the Bavarians and Austrians, they are defeated near Nordlingen, 263. The remains of the Bavarian army retreat to Donawert; Nordlingen and other places submit to the conquerors, but are soon retrieved by the archduke Leopold, *ib.*
- Ensisferi, account of that new military order, instituted to defend the Christians of Livonia, *x.* 695 (P)
- Enthusiasm, extraordinary fit of, particularly in Tuscany, and Aretin's account of it, by long processions of the inhabitants of towns in white, *xiii.* 355. Different readings here, *ibid.*
- Enthusiast, conspiracy by one in Rome detected, and he with the principal conspirators put to death, *xiii.* 411



- Entius, king of Sardinia, natural son to the emperor Frederic II. is defeated and taken prisoner by the Bolognians, and dies among them, x. 710. Intercepts at sea the prelates going to the council at Rome, xiii. 583
- Entre Minho e Douro, in Portugal, account of it, viii. 374 (D)
- Enna retaken from the Christians by the Moslems, i. 473
- , or Castro Giovanni, taken by Ali Ebn Kema, i. 646
- Epernon, duke de, prevents his being murdered by his own intrepidity, ix. 287
- Ephesus retaken from Tangriphermes, by Alexis' general Ducas, ii. 209
- seized on by Sayfan, and its hard fate, v. 151
- Epiphanius, St. converted from Judaism, v. 506. Runs into the errors of the Gnostics, ib.
- Era. See *Æra*
- Erasmus does not declare for Luther, as he expected, x. 70 (A)
- preceptor to Ferdinand I. emperor, xi. 169
- Erberfeldt (Peter) joins in the Javanese plot against the Dutch, iv. 467. Discloses his ambitious views to the king of Bantam, 468. His trial, sentence, and execution, 470. A pillar of infamy reared where his house stood, ib.
- Eric, king of Denmark, coming to Rome, is absolved from an unjust excommunication by the archbishop of Hamburgh, ix. 573, and the bishop of Lundy made primate, ibid.
- , war carried on by him against the princes of Holstein, who being totally defeated by them, is compelled to sue for a truce, xi. 80. Sequel of the troubles in the North of Germany, between him and the counts of Holstein, 82. The emperor endeavours to mediate a peace between them, with conferences begun at Nicoping, and afterwards at Helsingburgh, but ineffectual, ib. Both parties have recourse to virulent recriminations, ib. After a very long dispute, makes peace with the princes of Holstein, 93. But why deposed, and Christopher of Bavaria chosen in his room, ib.
- Bern, when a child, chosen to succeed his father Siward Snakeye in the Danish throne, and fifty-ninth king, xi. 688, but deposed by Eric, brother of Harold, who assumes the government, ib.
- usurps the Danish crown in the room of Eric Bern, is the sixtieth king, and putting to death the ministers of the gospel, restores Paganism, xi. 688. Reduces the English and Saxons, but on his return embraces and propagates Christianity, by means of Ansgarius, bishop of Bremen; and Guthorm, his brother's son, becomes his rival for the crown, ib. Joins with young Eric, dissensions thereupon, and he and many others slain, upon which young Eric is restored, ib. With Eric's character and death, 689
- III. called to the Danish throne from Sweden, where he was in exile, to succeed his brother Olaus the Hungry, and seventy-eighth king, xi. 702. Excellent character, his war with the Vandals, also taking the capital of Rugen, and dismantling it, ib. Extirpates the pirates in the Baltic, and on a revolt, severely chastises the Vandals, ib. Obtains leave from the pope to have his brother Canute canonized, also a dispute between him and the bishop of Bremen, and how awarded by the pope, ib. Extraordinary instance of the power of music on him, his pilgrimage to the Holy Land, reception at Constantinople, death at Cyprus, also that of his queen Bathilda, and his character, 703
- why he accepts the Danish sceptre he before refused, with the perfidy of the emperor Lotharius, who came with an army to his assistance, xi. 708. Ambassadors to him from the king of Norway for an alliance with Canute's daughter, ib. Defeats Magnus at sea, but Nicolas beats his land-army commanded by Christiern his general, ib. as also great part of his own army which had landed, his brother Harold deserting to the king, ib. Defeated by the king, flies into Norway, where, by means of the queen his niece, he escapes from danger designed against him, and arrives in Langland, ib. Makes one effort more for the recovery of the throne, and entirely defeats the king, with the loss of Magnus in the field, 709
- IV. proclaimed king of Denmark after Nicolas, and 79th king, xi. 710. Reduces the Vandals, and subdues the isle of Rugen, ib. After this, marches into Norway, 711. Cruelty to Magnus, and raising Harold to the throne, ib. Murdered by Plogus, ib. His character, ib.
- the regent, account of him, xi. 712 (A)
- V. or the Lamb, the 80th king, ascends the Danish throne after Eric IV. xi. 712. Ecclesiastical disputes renewed, with attempts on the king's life, ib. Defeats Olaus, who is several times worsted, and at last slain, 713. Afterwards falls from wise measure to a shameful indolence, with his death and character, ib.
- Eric, Valdemar's son, declared successor to the Danish crown, xiv. 31. With the provision made for the other sons, ib.
- VI. or Plog-Penning, succeeds his father Valdemar II. king of Denmark, xii. 31. The origin of the civil dissensions, ib. War commenced between him and Abel, but peace is concluded, 32. War renewed between him and his brothers, but compromised, ib. Acts hostilely against the Lubeckers, ib. who make descents on Denmark, but peace ensues, ib. A new quarrel between the brothers, with the devastation subsequent therefrom, ib. Short truce agreed to, with the defeat of Canute by the king his brother, 33. Releases his brother Christopher, who becomes his vassal, and defeats the Lubeck fleet, and, among other transactions, Sleswick subdued, ib. Treaty of peace concluded between the brothers, with the terms, ib. War carried on between him and the princes of Holstein, 34. His fine character, ib.
- VII. succeeds his father Christopher in Denmark, and his mother Margaret becomes regent, xii. 39. Quarrels between the crown and the clergy, with the consequences, ib. Crowned a second time, ib. Young Eric claims Sleswick as heir to Valdemar, his brother, ib. King and queen are taken prisoners through Findan-Ivan's treachery, but released, 40. His queen, the legate excommunicates her, and how the dispute ends, ib. (A). Domestic occupations, and sending an army into Esthonia against the Muscovites, &c. who are defeated, but with the loss of the Danish commander, ib. Occasion of the war between the king and Eric duke of Sleswick, ib. On the latter's death, and that of his wife, fresh troubles arise between the king and the princes of Holstein, and how compromised, ib. Murdered, and his character, 42
- VIII. the Pious, or Menved, a minor, succeeds his father Eric VII. king of Denmark, Valdemar of Sleswick being appointed his guardian, xii. 42. A plot for seizing that king frustrated, ib. Enquiry into the conspiracy against him, and the conspirators outlawed, ib. Congress between him and Hacquin ineffectual, with the ravages of the latter, 43. Quarrel between that king and his brother Christopher, 44. Altercation with the pope's legate and the bishop of Lunden, ib. The king concludes a treaty with Lubec, ib. The pope, on that king's most plaintive letters, removes the interdict, ib. Is reduced to great straits before Nicoping in West-Gothland, and a treaty concluded, 45. Charge to the states against his brother Christopher, ib. whom he afterwards restores to Halland, ib. Supports his brother-in-law Birger, king of Sweden, but wants vigour, and is easily amused, ib. Conspiracy against that king's life discovered, and the punishment of some of the conspirators, with all particulars adjusted in a new congress, 46. An insurrection in North-Jutland quelled by the king, ib. Grants his brother Christopher a free pardon, and appointing him his successor, dies, 48 (A). His character, ib.
- of Pomerania succeeds to the three Northern crowns, on the death of Margaret, xii. 247. A war between him and Henry of Holstein, with the occasion, and his oppressing Sweden, ib. States of the three kingdoms depose him, and the different opinions of authors on this head, 248. He retires to the isle of Gothland, and practises piracy, 249 (E). Deputies sent by the diet to him, and his unsatisfactory answer, ib. & 100. They enter on measures to raise Christopher of Bavaria to the three crowns, ib. Makes depredations on Sweden, 250. Carried to Denmark, where he dies, 251
- X. of Pomerania, succeeds Margaret in the three northern thrones, with some account of him, xii. 86. Enters Sleswick with an army, 87. His proceedings there, and restoring the senate of Lubec, ib. Losses in Sleswick, 89. Repulsed by Henry of Osnaburgh, ib. Investing Sleswick and Gottorp, takes the former, 89. Hamburgh joins in the confederacy against Eric X. ib. Femenen recovered by him, and his ravages, ib. Defeated at Immerfwerd by the Holsteiners, and the proverb thereupon, with a truce concluded, 90. His unsuccessful attempt on Alsen, &c. with some salutary regulations in several cities of Denmark, ib. His army repulsed from Tonderen, ib. Forms alliances with the Vandal cities, ib. His pilgrimage to Palestine, with its inconveniencies, 92. On his return, an interview about Sleswick unsuccessful, ib. Entering Sleswick a third time, besieges its cities and Gottorp, and how obliged



- obliged to quit his attempts, *ib.* Successes at sea, and his desire of accommodating matters with the Hans-Towns how frustrated, and the emperor mediates a peace, but the treaty is broken off, 93. Embassy to him from Henry VI. of England, and his answer, with a treaty concluded, *ib.* Answer to the Stralsund deputies, 95. Engelbert's bold remonstrance to him against Jesson Alcad, and his spirited reply to the king, *ib.* Dalecarlians under him revolt twice, and how pacified by the senate, *ib.* They fly a third time to arms, with Engelbert's successes, and speech to the senate, 96. Their perseverance in their servile obedience, and his generous exclamation, terrified with which they renounce their allegiance, *ib.* Progress, and concluding a treaty of peace with the Schoneners, *ib.* Fleet destroyed in a storm, his arrival at Stockholm with a single ship, and an interview between him and the diet, a truce for a year is concluded, 97. Makes peace with Holstein, and his motives, 98. The diet being offended, waves his request for a new proposition of a coadjutor, and their reply, *ib.* Suddenly withdraws out of the kingdom, but returning, on the senate's invitation, he promotes foreigners, *ib.* Accommodation made with him, in a diet at Calmar, 99. Giving Rugen to the duke of Pomerania, 100, lives at ease in Gothland, deaf to all remonstrances, 101. Complaints against the usage received from his subjects, with his expostulatory letter to Christopher, 103. Decree of the senate against his adherents, *ib.* Fresh articles of accusation against him, the first of which is false, *ib.* Deposed, and his nephew Christopher crowned, *ib.* Lives twenty years afterwards in retirement, and his character, *ib.*
- Eric XI. closely besieged by the Swedes in Wisby, and his brave defence, xii. 108. Obtains a short truce by cajoling the Swedish generals, and terms rejected by Eric, who puts the citadel into the hands of the Danes, 109
- XIV. succeeds his father Gustavus Vasa in Sweden, with his character, xii. 287. Displeases the dukes his brothers, with the occasion, and the marriage-affair with queen Elizabeth resumed, 288. Visit to England postponed on account of a war in Livonia, and the reason, *ib.* Sets sail for England, but narrowly escapes shipwreck, and now he entertains a passion for Mary queen of Scots, *ib.* Disobliges the Swedish nobility, and by what means, *ib.* Quarrels with Lubec and the Danes, with instances of his inconstancy in his addresses for marriage, 289. Exact both money and services from the nobility, *ib.* Cites his brother John to Stockholm, who refuses the summons, *ib.* His unsteadiness, and a confederacy formed against him by Denmark, *ib.* With his success in Livonia, and he demands the princess of Hesse in marriage, *ib.* His fleet for escorting her defeats the Danes, with their preparations, and the prince of Hesse does not relish the marriage, 290. Vast projects and negotiations for a peace with Poland fruitless, 291. Besieging Warburgh, he storms it, 293. Runs mad, 295. His liberality, *ib.* That king's views in putting the government into the hands of regents, *ib.* He resolves to re-unite himself to his brothers, *ib.* Persecutes the Sture family, with his stratagems for ruining them, *ib.* That king's intrigue with the czar of Muscovy, and he obliges duke John to sign an instrument, with several unjust articles, 296. The dukes resolve to dethrone the king their brother, and take several fortresses, *ib.* but after writing to the king, and receiving a haughty answer, they declare war, *ib.* The rapid progress of the dukes, who besiege Stockholm, 297. Surrenders in Stockholm, and is deposed, upon which duke John is chosen king, with Eric's character, *ib.* Proceedings in an assembly of the Swedish states to renounce allegiance to him, his behaviour in court, with his cruel treatment afterwards, *ib.* Swear obedience to John, 298 (A). On the czar's intrigues for re-instating him, he is more closely confined, 299. His death, 302
- Christopher's son, declared successor, and crowned king of Denmark, xii. 39
- IX. is elected an associate in the Danish throne, and the king neglects his solemn engagement, upon which the people revolt, xii. 49. A powerful confederacy formed, and hostilities committed, *ib.* His whole army made prisoners by the rebels, 50
- Christopher's son, married to Gerhard's sister, xii. 53. His death, 54 (A)
- first prince of Sweden, with an account of his reign and character, xii. 217. Succeeds to the Swedish throne, in the room of Alaric, and after Gestiblund's death annexes the kingdom of the Goths to his own, 221. His character, and the king of Denmark's esteem for him, who raises his brother to the crown of Norway, but his subjects revolting, are defeated by Eric, *ib.*
- Eric, sister's son to Sward, succeeds him in Sweden, and his war with his cousin Halden, xii. 222. After several repulses, Halden seeks shelter in the mountains of Gothland, from which he is drawn by Eric's invading Denmark, *ib.* After the defeat and death of Harold in this kingdom, and Eric's return to Sweden, he is totally overthrown at sea by Halden, *ib.* (F)
- Waderhead succeeds his father Ingo in Sweden, xii. 228. Fabulous reign, and the reason of his surname, *ib.*
- Segherfell, or Victorious, succeeds his father Eric Waderhead in Sweden, xii. 228. His conquests of several provinces, and at last of Denmark, with the flight of Swen the Danish monarch, and his return on Eric's death, *ib.*
- Stenchil Milde, or Aarsal, is raised to the Swedish throne, on the death of his father Eric Segherfell, xii. 228. Two Christian teachers sent him from Hamburgh, and his zeal for propagating the Christian religion occasions his death from the Pagans, *ib.*
- the Holy subdues the Finlanders, and obliges them to receive the gospel, with his excellent administration in Sweden, and compilation of laws, called St. Eric's Lag, xii. 231. A conspiracy against him, and a son of Denmark invited to join them, *ib.* (B). Eric dies in battle, fighting like a hero, *ib.* The enemy proclaim Magnus king, but the Swedes and Goths cut them to pieces; with the death of the king and prince of Denmark in the field, *ib.* where the conquerors build a church called Danemarc, *ib.* (C)
- Cnutson, after Suercher's death in battle, is raised to the crowns of Sweden and Gothland, xii. 232. He renews the treaty of alternate succession, and appoints John the son of Suercher his successor, *ib.* His marriage with Reckot, sister of Waldemar, king of Denmark, and death, *ib.*
- the Stammerer, and son of Eric Cnutson, according to the treaty of succession, mounts the throne of Sweden, xii. 232. His unpromising appearance, but great qualities, and his alliance with the Falkunger family, who revolt and defeat him, flying to Denmark, 233. He returns, and defeats the usurper Canute Falkunger, with the taking and beheading his son Holinger, *ib.* Death and character, *ib.*
- young, elected king of Sweden, xii. 246
- Erickson, his cruelty to the Swedish peasants, xii. 247
- Steen, released from Denmark, causes suspicion in king Eric XIV. and why, xii. 292 (B)
- Eries (Cat nation) exterminated by the Iroquois, and where they were seated, xiv. 593
- Eringdrane, a province in Madagascar, vi. 92
- Erivan, Ervan, or Rivan, taken by Shah Safi I. ii. 627, with the loss of 50,000 lives, *ib.*
- Erkekara dethrones his brother Vang-khan, ii. 271. Defeated by Temaisin, *ib.*
- Erland, archbishop of Lunden, his insolence, with Christopher's charge against him in a diet, and the archbishopric deprived of all its extraordinary privileges, xii. 38. His pride, *ib.* Charge by the king in the diet against him, after which Christopher writes to the pope, who redresses the king's grievance, *ib.* His obstinacy, and the bishops replaced, 39
- Erlembaldus, prefect of Milan, receives letters of excommunication from the pope against the archbishop, ix. 562. A riot arises in the church and streets, when many are slain, *ib.* Obtains another decree, *ib.*
- Erling, king of Norway, after his queen comes over to Valdemar of Denmark, submits, xii. 12. Embassy from him to Denmark, and the conditions of a treaty with him, 15 (A)
- Ermine of Canada described, xiv. 557
- Ernest, the emperor's son, and king of Hungary, crowned king of Bohemia by his father's authority, xi. 216
- archduke, made governor of the Netherlands, and why his letter for peace to the states disgusts the Spaniards, xi. 442. Answer of the states, *ib.* Odium into which the archduke falls, *ib.* His three questions about peace, with the states answer, 443. Dies, *ib.*
- of Austria, the emperor Maximilian's vigorous endeavours for him, how frustrated, xii. 492
- elector of Saxony, xv. 465
- duke of Bavaria, xv. 469
- Augustus, first elector of Hanover, and the reason for his creation, xv. 476
- the Confessor, duke of Luneburg, how acquainted with Luther, xv. 482. Makes preparatives for a reformation in Lower-Saxony, and his prudence therein, *ib.* His uncommon



- uncommon application and zeal, 483. Joins in a protest against putting the ban against Luther into execution, and enters into an union at Smalcald, *ib.* Helps to suppress the peasants and anabaptists at Munster, *ib.* Dies, and his sons Henry and William found the Brunswic and Lünenburgh lines, with his character, *ib.* Agreement between his seven sons not to divide their paternal inheritance, and sultan Achmet's saying thereon, 484. Becomes bishop of Osnaburg, *ib.* His share in public transactions what, *ib.* Establishes primogeniture in his house, and opposes the French, in consideration of which he becomes an elector, 485. Dies, with his character and issue, *ib.*
- Ertogrul's birth and conquests in Asia-Minor, v. 138 (X). Conquests and alliance with sultan Aladiu, *ib.* & 139. Death, *ib.*
- Erviga rebels against Wamba, king of the Visigoths, vii. 568. Crowned and confirmed by a council, 569 (D). His singular prudence and public spirit, 570 (E). Relinquishes the crown to Egila, Wamba's nephew, *ib.* His retirement and death, 571 (F)
- Elbraad, king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Escalona, duke, upon storming Gaeta, is taken prisoner, x. 532
- Eschil, archbishop of Lund, raises forces for the king against Olaus, but twice defeated, xi. 712. Rebels, but submits at last, with the mortifying conditions, xii. 3
- Escurial, by whom built, viii. 304. Removal of the royal bodies to it, 312. Finished, *ib.*
- Esfahan seized on by Wasmakin, i. 530, 531. Subdued by sultan Mahmud, 632, 633, and by the Gazan Turks, *ib.*
- Esfarayen, Esfaryin, where situated, i. 620. A nursery of learned men, *ib.*
- where situated, ii. 513 (Q). Taken and plundered by Timur Bek, *ib.*
- Esfigab, a city in Turkestan, ii. 147
- Esgaillon, why beheaded at Geneva, xiv. 35
- Elkander on Amir Hamid being killed by mistake, is slain by Hussayn for it, ii. 502
- Sheykhi's dreadful revenge on the Darvishes, ii. 528
- Prince of Kashmir eased of his heavy tribute to Timur-Bek, ii. 549
- Sheykhi's revolt pursued by the two Mirza's, ii. 570. Defeated and escapes, 571. His end uncertain, *ib.*
- Dethrones Pir Omar, and imprisons him, ii. 583. Defeated and put to death by Shah Rukh, and the son of Omar made governor of Hamadin, 584. Mistaken by the Arabs for Abubekr, *ib.*
- the son of Kara Yusuf, carries on the war, ii. 587. Defeated by Shah Rukh, and killed by his son, *ib.* (Vide ii. 700, and sub Isfandiari)
- Esaki taken by sultan Morad, v. 163
- Esaki, strong fortress, delivered up to Timur Bek, ii. 512
- Eslingen, account of that city, its privileges and government, xv. 443 (Q)
- Esperson's rude answer to a message from the king, ix. 310. Fine diamond ring, the only recompence for assisting the queen, *ib.* Quarrels with du Vair, and retires to Metz, with the true cause for it, 359
- Espinosa, Philip's prime minister, dies, with his character, viii. 312
- licentiate, how sent into the territories of Pocorosa, on the isthmus of Darien, xiv. 166. His successful expeditions, 167. Defeats the Indians with great slaughter, and returns to Darien with considerable booty, *ib.* Settlement made at Panama by him, 168
- Espirito Santo captainry and capital described, xiv. 479
- Espirito Santo built by Sandoval, xiv. 274
- Esplana, Damien de, sent governor to the Mariannes island, but ill-brooked by the savage natives, iv. 241. Lucky reception of captain Eaton, 242, 243 (N)
- Esquimaux Indians in Canada, an account of them, xiv. 562
- Essenians probably introduced the ascetic life into Abyssinia, vi. 229
- Estavan del Puerto, San, founded by Cortez, and where seated, xiv. 275
- Estayalu made governor of Diyarbekr, ii. 602
- Este, the original of that house, dukes of Modena, xiv. 103. Increase of this house's power and reputation, 105. Bastard line takes place of the legitimate, *ib.* (See Azo)
- Esterka, a distemper, its dreadful effects, ii. 502
- Eithonia, the Danes murmur about the sale of it, xii. 62
- (See Livonia) xiii. 15. Its inhabitants and their origin, *ib.*
- Eithonia, diet of, holden at Reval, and its government, xiii. 16
- Eithonians and Courlanders, their piracies, who are vanquished, xii. 15
- Estremadura, Portuguese, account of, viii. 383 (B)
- Estrees, what part the French under him had in the action of Solebay, xi. 615 (A)
- Etamado'ddawiet's conspiracy against Jehan Ghir, ii. 564. Punishment, *ib.* Death, 568
- Ethabar Khan secures Jehan Ghir's treasures, iii. 72
- Etheired of England, sends three Christian missionaries to Sweden, and their success, xii. 228 (B)
- Ethiopia, its queen banishes a bishop, and why her husband recalls him, i. 464
- western, described, vi. 418. Account of its present governments, 419, and notes. How divided, *ib.*
- Ethiopic, the learned language of Abyssinia, and of their divine service, vi. 190
- Elina, Eychina, taken by Jenghiz-Khan, and where situated, ii. 327 (G)
- Evangelic princes, assembled at Hall in Suabia, undertake the defence of the two princes possessors of Juliers and Cleves, xi. 182
- religion is sworn to, and none else to be tolerated in Sweden, xii. 285
- Evangelics, Silesian, their answer to Ferdinand's assurances, xi. 197
- Evans, governor of Pennsylvania, breaks with the assembly, xv. 119. Influenced by his secretary, *ib.* Character, *ib.*
- Eudes, or Eudo, his successes against the Saracens in Spain, i. 361. Invites the Arabs to assist him against the French, 364, but joins with Charles Martel against them, and defeats them, *ib.* Does not support the revolted Muniz, 366
- count of Paris, chosen king of France, ix. 1, with the conditions, 531. Great victory over the Normans, 2. Suppresses an insurrection in Aquitaine, and embarks in a civil war with young Charles's partizans, *ib.* Divides the kingdom with him, doing homage for his part, and dies, with his character, 3
- Eudocia married to Michael Romanow Theodorowitz, with her character, and the birth of the Czarowitz Alexis, xiii. 130
- Everard, governor of St. Christopher's, xv. 241. Reduced by Penn, 242
- Everhard, duke of Franconia, dissention between him and Henry of Brunswic, Otho's brother, with the odd punishment appointed the former, x. 630. They are both summoned by the emperor to the diet of Arensburg, but disobey, and a remarkable decision about it by duel, *ib.* (F)
- Evertzen, a fleet of Dunkirkers defeated by him off Dieppe, xi. 536. Narrowly escapes from the rage of the people, with the trial and condemnation of several Dutch captains, 598
- Eugene, prince, the Imperial general, enters Italy, and forces the strong pass of Carpi, &c. ix. 481. xi. 323. Repulses the enemy from his camp at Chiari, *ib.* Campaign in Italy, how retarded, with the battle of Luzzara, and its consequences, ix. 483. His fine march for the relief of Turin, xi. 335. After joining the duke of Savoy, he forces the French lines, and defeats them, with the taking count Marfin wounded, ix. 490. xiv. 135. Its consequence, the driving the French out of Italy, *ib.* Takes Quesnoi, ix. 503. Repulsed from the bridge of Prouvi, 504. Carnagnola retaken by that prince, xi. 312. Commands the army in Hungary, 321. Succeeds in Bosnia, 322. His design on Cremona miscarries, only Villeroy is taken prisoner, and Vendome succeeds Villeroy in Italy, 324. Is sent over to the court of London, but to no purpose, 348. His importunate solicitations in England, 353, but proving ineffectual, he repairs to the Hague, *ib.* States remonstrance to him on the subject of the Spanish Netherlands, 356. Permitted to open a negotiation at Rastadt with Villars, where they sign a treaty, 364. Takes Modena by storm from the French, also the citadel, xiv. 109
- Eugenius III. succeeding pope Lucius II. quits Rome, and is consecrated at Farfara, after which he retires to Viterbo, ix. 592. Receives several embassies, and gives liberty to St. Bernard to preach up a croisade in France, *ib.* Goes into France, and in a council at Paris, opposes Gilbert, bishop Poitiers' heresy, and some others, taught by Henry of Thoulouse, *ib.* Holds a council at Rheims against the bishop of Poitiers, his transactions at Triers and Clarivaux, with the austerity of his living in the latter, 593 (E). Returns



- turns to Italy, and the titles he gives Conrad, *ib.* Encourages another Croisade in France, but is opposed by the Cistercians, *ib.* Divides Ireland into four metropolitan provinces, *ib.* Sets on foot the famous croisade, in which the emperor receives the cross from St. Bernard, x. 663. Re-establishes the papal authority in Rome, *ib.* His death, ix. 594
- Eugenius IV. elected pope in room of Martin V. with an account of him, and some articles appointed by the cardinals before the election, x. 1 (A). Plot against his life by a Franciscan discovered, *ib.* By the plenitude of his power, dissolves the council of Basil, and his reason for it, 3. Condemns their proceedings, *ib.* Accused of contumacy, and though he confirms the council by a bull, yet decrees are passed against his authority, 5. They reject his bull as deceitful, and the deputies he appointed to preside, *ib.* Two Bulls sent by him to Basil, and his annulling their decree against himself and the cardinals, 6. On the duke of Milan's seizing the church patrimony, and threatened revolt of the Romans, that pope adheres to the council of Basil, 7. The legates incorporated, and obliged to swear fidelity for the council, *ib.* They and cardinal Julian allowed to preside, but not coercively, *ib.* Obligated to quit Rome in disguise, *ib.* Sends a letter to the council of Basil from Florence, confirming their proceedings, *ib.* Plot to seize him discovered, 8. Offer for defraying the expence of the Eastern prelates, &c. rejected, 9. Makes a new creation of cardinals to strengthen his party, 16. Denounces an anathema against P. Felix V. and his adherents, which the fathers at Basil condemn, *ib.* Sends cardinal Julian legate into Hungary, recovers some of the ecclesiastical patrimony, and gives the investiture of Naples to Alphonsus of Arragon, with the terms, 18. Returns to Rome, and his declaration to the people in the streets, *ib.* Upon his deposing the electors of Cologne and Triers, revokes the sentence at the instance of the emperor, 19. Emperor's embassy to that pope about a council in Germany refused, *ib.* Grants some demands of ambassadors from Poland, with a bull for provision of vacant benefices in Germany, 20. (O). The pope's legate, on refusing the Hussites demands in Bohemia, is obliged to quit it, *ib.* Issues a bull for dissolving the council at Basil, and convoking another at Bologna, but the fathers continue at the former city, xi. 34. His reasons for transferring it to Bologna, x. 2. These answered by the Emperor, and cardinal Julian continues it, *ib.* For confirming the council of Basil, and empowering them to reform manners, as well as extinguish heresies, crowns the emperor at Rome, who truckled to all his demands, xi. 84. Death and character, x. 20
- Eulo, his conspiracy against his father-in-law. See *Ælius*
- Eulshi treasonably seizes on the Chinese empire, iii. 698. Is betrayed by his Kolau, and murdered, *ib.*
- Eunuchs promoted by Soliman Shah, ii. 638. Artifice to revoke the prohibition of wine, and their vast power and tyranny in that court, 645. A faction between the Blacks and the Whites, *ib.* (K). Kept up by policy, 646. Insolence and oppression, *ib.*
- suppressed in China, iii. 523
- why the chief officers in the court of Ton-king, iii. 450
- Euphemia, death of that queen, character and issue, xii. 53
- Euric, the founder of the Spanish monarchy, vii. 527. His extraction and rise, *ib.* (A). Conquest of the greater part of Spain, 529, and afterwards Gaul, *ib.* His death, 530
- king of the Suevi deposed by Andaca, vii. 527. A kingdom substituted by the Visigoths, 547
- Europe, all begins to unite against France and England, ix. 459
- a violent plague all over it, ix. 676. (H). With the general depravity thereupon, *ib.* sub not.
- general state of it, at czar Peter's setting out to travel, and character of its princes, xiii. 189. All, now at war, 221. Short view of the situation of Affairs in other parts of it, 260
- its history to more modern times, xv. 553
- Europeans, why detested in India, iii. 571
- are grievously treated in Siam, iii. 395
- Eustatia, St. account of that Dutch island, xv. 235. Policy of its masters, *ib.* Its first settlement, and oft changing masters, 236
- Eustatius, Abba, a reformer of the Abyssinian monks, vi. 231 (K)
- Eutimi, prince, becomes the protector of the Algerines, vii. 241. Opposed by the Spaniards, *ib.*
- Eutychean heresy, what and by whom broached at Alexandria, vi. 24 (S)
- Excise scheme in Castile miscarries, viii. 242
- Excommunications, how used in pope Gregory the VIIth's time, ix. 566 (L)
- Ezad-Allah, his parricide and revolt, ii. 655. Success against Zamman-khan, and in Herat, with a signal victory over the Persians, 656
- Ezechiel, a Jewish poet, his poem on the Exodus, v. 489, sub. (S). His tomb revered, and where shewn, 539 (A)
- Eznir. See *Smyrna*
- Ezra, Aben, a learned rabbi, his works, v. 547 (T). Poetical and others, 549
- Ezzelino's defeat and death, with his cruelties in Lombardy, ix. 639
- Ezzo'ddin, son of Ok-senkars, succeeds him in Musol, ii. 186

F.

- F** Acone al Togitza, a famed lake in Japan, whence occasioned, v. 44 (Q)
- Fadac, a Jewish town, reduced by Mahomet, i. 73. Restored to the descendants of Ali, 456
- Fadh-lovich rebels against Alp Arslan, ii. 164. Surrenders his fortrels for want of water, *ib.*
- Fadluiah, a grand commander, sent against the revolted Kara Arslan, i. 639. Revolts against Alp Arslan, and defeated by a miracle, *ib.*
- Fadl, Al, sent to pillage Mambij, and taken prisoner, i. 217. Sent to Sapor's assistance, 290. Goes with Yezid against Constantinople, *ib.*
- Ebn Saleh made governor of Egypt, i. 412
- Ebn Yayha's success against the revolted in Deylam, i. 420
- Ebn Al Rabi instigates the caliph against his brother Al Mamun, i. 439. Promoted by him, 449. Hated by the Baghdans for his tyranny, *ib.* Accused by Hartema, *ib.* whom he causes to be put to death, 450. Himself privately murdered by Mamun's orders, *ib.*
- Faekh revolts against his brother Nuh, i. 596. Made governor of Samarkand by him, 598. Revolt and treachery against Abu'l Hareth, 604. Defeated by Mahmud Gazni, *ibid.*
- Faenza, the emperor Frederic takes it, xiii. 583
- taken by the Venetians from Borgia, xiii. 461
- lord of, on his assassination by means of his wife, the Florentines become administrators, xiii. 434
- Fagel, open confession of that pensionary about the destination of the Dutch armament, xi. 637. States declaration, and the prince of Orange's manifesto published soon after, *ibid.*
- Fahroddawlat, prince of Halep, or Aleppo, succeeded by his son Taj'oddawlat, ii. 180
- Fahro'ddin-kotli, or Kotlu-Beg, the second shah of the white sheep dynasty, ii. 702
- Faifo, the chief emporium of Cochinchina, iii. 424
- Fai-tai, the 47th emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 55
- Fakhr Al Molk, governor of Irac, put to death, and his vast riches plundered, i. 619
- the son of Nodham, made wazir to Barkiarok, i. 677
- lord of Tripoly, i. 686
- Fakhroddawla refuses homage to his brother, i. 580. Driven out of his dominions, *ib.* Seizes on Hammadar, &c. 586. Confirmed by caliph Al 'Tai, 587. Just regret for his wazir's death, 599. His death, 602
- Fakhro'ddin's vain attempt on Ya-bar castle, vi. 57
- chosen to deliver up Al Harem castle to Hula-ku, ii. 474. Put to death by him, *ib.*
- Fakirs, or Indian monks, their great penances and prodigious numbers, iii. 23. Another sort of them, 24
- Fakku-basi, the famed temple in Japan, its origin, iv. 51
- Faliero Vitalis, the thirty-second duke of Venice, after having the investiture of Dalmatia and Croatia from the emperor Alexis for annexing them to Venice, dies, x. 194
- Ordolpho, the thirty-fourth duke of Venice, sends a great fleet to Africa, x. 194. Successes in the Holy-Land, and Acre given the republic as a recompence by Baldwin, *ib.* War with the Paduans, and their defeat at Bebia, *ib.* Subdues Croatia, 195. Killed in a battle with the Hungarians in Dalmatia, who rout his army, *ib.*
- Fakiro



- Faliero Martino, the fifty fifth doge of Venice, x. 213.  
Discovery of that doge's conspiracy against the Venetian state, 214, who with the principal conspirators are executed, and a particular mark of infamy on the former's memory, ib. (A). Origin of the state inquisition, ib. After an interregnum and successes over the Genoese, a peace made, 215
- Falkner, burgomaster, how seized, with his papers, xii. 191.  
For ever banished, ib.
- Falkunger. See Eric the Stammerer
- Fallaffe, Sir John, beats a French detachment, ix. 146
- Falitia, account of, xi. 651
- Famagosta, in Cyprus, the Venetians how repulsed from it, x. 221  
—— granted the Genoese in perpetuity, x. 564  
—— invested by Mustapha, but nothing done by the confederate fleet, x. 360. Brave sailly from it, and a rich Turkish yacht burnt, ib. Supplies from Cardia thrown into the city, with a diversion made by Selim, and the treaty with Spain, Rome, and the Republic renewed, ib. The contention about the command being determined, other difficulties arise, ib. Its furious attacks, and defence by the besieged, with Baglioni's courage and resolution, 363. After five attacks in breach, the Turks repulsed, and in a wide breach totally routed, 364, but gain the counterescarp, ib. Incredible assiduity of assailants and defendants, with famine in the city, 365. Soldiers remonstrance to Bragadino, and his answer, with the repulse of the Turks in other assaults, ib. The place capitulates on honourable terms, ib. Mustapha's barbarity to Bragadino, the officers and soldiers, ib. The Turks by that conquest become masters of Cyprus, after the loss of one hundred thousand lives, 366. Their brutality, 360. Success and ravages of the Turkish fleet, 366
- Famine, severe in Italy, France, and England, ix. 113  
—— in Italy, ix. 552  
—— severe, in Rome, x. 113  
—— great, in the ecclesiastical state, x. 121, 122  
—— in Denmark, xi. 680. Causes a barbarous proposal, which gave birth to the first migration of a colony under Aggo and Eboo, with the queen mother's speech inducing to it, ib. Various conjectures about the time of this migration, and the place of the colonies settling, with their names, ib. (A)  
—— dreadful, and pestilence in Denmark, occasioning Olaus's death for grief, xi. 701 & xii. 83  
—— a desolating, in Moscow, xiii. 132  
—— in the Florentine state, how occasioned, xiii. 286. Another in Florence, 295. The great humanity of the Florentines, with a pestilence ensuing, 326  
—— threatens Pisa, xii. 366  
—— and pestilence in Bologna, xiii. 574  
—— in Bologna, xiii. 578. And natural calamities continue in Bologna, 579  
—— in Parma, generously relieved by the Bolognese, xiii. 603. 617  
—— over Italy, especially Parma, xiii. 601  
—— in Geneva, xiv. 9
- Fan-ching, the famous siege of, ii. 368. Battered with new engines, is forced to surrender, 369
- Fan-chin's impious sect breaks out in China, iii. 709 (N)
- Fang-que-cheu, the pirate, infests the Chinese coasts, ii. 421
- Fang-ywen confirmed king of Korea, and his vast tribute of oxen, iii. 755
- Fan-sey, the 19th emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52
- Fan-shun, his noble defence of Fan ching, ii. 369
- Fantin, kingdom on the Gold-coast, described, vi. 667, 668. Its government, 671. Trade and duties, ib.
- Fanus, or Kabus Ebn Washmakin seizes on Jorjan, &c. i. 601
- Fanna-Sonno, ninety-fourth emperor of Japan, iv. 59
- Farabad, its sumptuous palace abandoned by the Persians, ii. 661
- Farel's success in preaching at Geneva, xiv. 26. Disputations and difference with the Bernois upon some trivial articles, 28. Character, ib.
- Fartaneze, account of them, viii. 69 (Y)
- Fargana city, where situated, i. 208. Hath given birth to many learned men, 209  
—— province, its rich produce, i. 208. Reduced by Katiba, 343
- Farges, his account of the Siamese revolution, iii. 386. His part in it, 387. Ordered to go to the king, 389. Returns and defends the fort of Bangkok, 391. His two sons released, 395. His character and conduct variously represented, 398. His death at sea, 400
- Farino, city and port, vii. 307
- Farma, Farama, where situated, i. 233. Taken by the Moslems, ib.
- Farmer, lieutenant-governor of Barbadoes, xv. 189
- Farnakant surprized by Timur Malek, ii. 302
- Farnese, Alexander's widow, married to the pope's nephew, viii. 242  
—— family of them, under whose power the Parmesans fall, particularly cardinal Alexander, or pope Paul III. and his children, xii. 626. Death and character of his son Peter Lewis duke of Parma, ib. How displeased with the pope, and his message highly exasperates his holiness, ib. Brutal saying on his departure with an army for Germany, x. 89
- Farnetio, the Florentine general, his exploits, modesty and death, xiii. 333
- Fars in Persia, reduced by Togrol Bek; but regained by Malek Al Rahim, i. 654
- Farwa, Heraclius's lieutenant in Syria, embraces Islamism, i. 97
- Farraj Al Nasser detains Ahmed in Egypt, ii. 495  
—— Sultan of Egypt, disoblige Timur Bek, and invaded by him, ii. 555. Treachery against that emperor's life discovered, 557. Feigns a submission to him; but attacks and is defeated by him, with the surrender of Damascus, 558. Massacre there by Timur Bek, ib.
- the Mongl refuses to deliver up Baghdad, ii. 560. Defeated by Mirza Rustem, ib. His desperate defence of it, ibid.
- Fasts, various and severe, prescribed by the Alcoran, i. 170
- Fatah, a faithful counsellor of Motawakkel, i. 474. Brave defence against his assassins, ib. Charged with that caliph's death, 479. His unjust punishment, ib.
- sets up for prince of Aleppo, and governor of Tyre and Sidon, i. 618
- Fateh Keray, the eleventh khan of Crim, deposed, ii. 451
- Fatek's success against the rebel Al-Knallij, i. 509. Torn in pieces by the soldiery, 511  
—— Fatek revolts against Nah Ebn Mansur, i. 596. Defeated by him, and his flight, 597
- Fatema, Mahomet's daughter, bears Ali a son, i. 56. Fables about her marriage, 305  
——, the sister of Hothain, her mournful concern for him, i. 305. Brave speech to Amer, 306. How treated by Zid, 307  
——, the daughter of a Zendicee, got with child by him, i. 415
- Fatemitte dynasty, its founder, i. 512. His death and successor, 550. Why distinguished by their white dress, 572  
—— dynasty founded in Africa, vi. 41 (G). Its extinction, 60  
—— caliphs, from whom so called, i. 309. Bring Hothain's relics into Egypt, ib.
- Fatemitte, a conspiracy in their favour dreadfully defeated and punished, vi. 61 (G)  
—— when and by whom driven out of Sicily, i. 646. Lose all their power in Egypt, 665
- Fatey Ali Khan undermined at the Persian court. ii. 657. Tortured and deprived of his eyes, ib. (V & W). Acquitted, and confined for life, ib
- Fatihah (Kabihah) the mother of Al Motazz, her immense hidden treasures forced out of her hands, i. 487. Curses against Saleh, ib.
- Fateh Abad village, whence so called, iii. 131
- Faventines again break out into Tumults, xiii. 594. Resolution of the Bolognese thereon, ib. Letter to the Bolognese on their civil animosities, ib. Its desire complied with, upon a demand from Azo of Este, ib. Submit to the Bolognese, ib. Outlaws submit to the Bolognese; with the oath taken by the podesta of Faenza, 595
- Faufel nut in Java, its use, &c. iv. 459
- Favia, don, succeeds Pelayo, and killed by a bear, vii. 503
- Faulkon, lord, or lord Constance, made prime minister of Siam, iii. 372. His opinion of that monarch's conversion, ib. His origin, 374. Adventures, ib. Success against the Makassers, 380. Cabals with the French ambassadors, 383. Treachery to Fourbin, ib. (C). Becomes hateful to the Siamese, 384. Seized by Pitrachas at the royal palace, 387. Cut in pieces by him, ib. His widow tortured and stript of all, ib. Other account of it, ib.
- Fawara's short reign in Egypt, i. 562
- Fayer Al Benazri'llah raised to the Egyptian khalifate, i. 713  
Fayez.



Fayez, Al, a minor, proclaimed tenth caliph of Egypt, vi. 52. How he becomes an idiot, *ib.* His death, 53  
 Fayum, Al, taken by Al Mohdi's troops, i. 512  
 Fazel, or Huyz, assuming the Farsan throne, dies in a prison, i. 655  
 Fe de Bogata Santa, capital of New Granada and Terra Firma, described, xiv. 452  
 — Santa, capital of New Mexico, described, xiv. 429  
 (O). Governor's avarice in monopolizing the soldiers pay, and these how armed, 430  
 — Santa, a city in Buenos Ayres, described, xiv. 470  
 Fedais, who; massacred by Timur Bek, ii. 528 (E)  
 Fehr, the son of Malek, father of the Khoreish, i. 3 (F)  
 Feid-so, fifty-first emperor of Japan, vi. 55  
 Feijoh, Padre, his learned confutation of sundry supposed islands, &c. iv. 274 (F)  
 Feldt, la, battle there, xv. 619  
 Felton, John, executed in London, x. 109 (E)  
 Felu rock, one of the Senegal's greatest cataracts, vii. 113  
 Fenelon, archbishop, is accused of Quietism, and his book condemned by a bull, with his intire submission, x. 168  
 Feneri, capital of the kingdom of Champa, iii. 419  
 Ferdinand, king of Spain, procures a grant of the East Indies from the pope, iv. 174. Adjusts the limits with the court of Portugal, 175. Strenuous pretensions on the Moluccas, *ibid.*  
 — banishes all the Jews out of Spain, v. 576 (C). Receives the title of Catholic from the pope, who gave them refuge, 577  
 — second son of Sanchez, takes the title of king of Castile, vii. 640. Fabulous motive for it, *ib.* Obtains the crown of Leon in right of his queen Sancha, 641. How troubled by the Galicians, and on what account, *ib.* (K). his character for the first seven years of his reign, 642. Invades the Moors in Portugal, and extends his conquests to the river Malna, 643. Account of the chronology here used, *ib.* (A). Besieges and takes Coimbra, *ib.* The Moorish kings of Toledo and Saragossa become his vassals, 644. Holds a general council at Cayanea, *ib.* Visits don Garcias, king of Navarre, when sick, *ib.* Deaths of the queen-dowager, donna Elvira, and the old king of Toledo, *ib.* Visited when sick by don Garcias of Navarre, whom he imprisons, *ib.* Defeats don Garcias after his escape in a general engagement, who is killed, 645. Holds a general council at Compostella, *ib.* Contradiction in Mariana's account of his conquests from his brother don Garcias, 646 (B). Consequences of the umbrage taken by a legate at the Gothic liturgy, *ib.* Translation of St. Isidore's body to Leon, *ib.* Don Ramiro of Arragon defeated and killed before Saragossa by don Sancho, 647. Great difficulty in this piece of history, *ib.* (C). Proposes to the states the division of his dominions among his three sons, *ib.* The Gothic officers declared orthodox in a council at Mantua, 648. Dies after returning from an expedition against the kings of Toledo and Saragossa, *ib.* His issue, *ib.*  
 — compromises differences with don Manrique, vii. 688. Settles several towns very carefully, and marries donna Urraca of Portugal, *ib.* Rebuilds and fortifies Merobriga and Bletifa, *ib.* Quells the insurrections caused thereby, *ib.* Makes alliance with the king of Navarre, and adds other places to his dominions, *ib.* Compelled by the pope to part with his queen Urraca, 692. But not before an interdict, and espouses donna Theresa, 693. Death, 694. Character and issue, 695  
 — de Castro, upon the death of Tiennetta, espouses Urraca Lopez, vii. 694. Takes Caceres from the Moors, *ib.* And is present, as an auxiliary, at the glorious victory of Santaren over them, *ib.* Death, *ib.* Character and issue, 695  
 — of Castile, marries Beatrix of Swabia, daughter to the emperor Philip, vii. 709. Invites Alvaro Perez from the Moors, 710. And marches an army into their territory, *ib.* Succeeds against the Moors, 711. Lays the first stone of Toledo cathedral, 712  
 — of Leon, reduces several fortresses in the possession of the Moors, vii. 711. Mohammed king of Baeza murdered by his Moors for granting these to Ferdinand, *ib.* Baeza gallantly defended while invested by the Moors, *ib.* Who are repulsed from the siege, *ib.*  
 — St. comes to the interview between both branches of the royal family at Benevento, viii. 1. Has an interview with Sancho of Portugal, and concludes a treaty, 2. Reduces some lords of Galicia to reason, *ib.* A bull of pope Gregory IX. ratifies the settlement of Leon,

*ib.* Gives those places taken from the Moors by the archbishop of Toledo to his diocese, *ib.* Alonso, the king's brother, defeats the Moors with great slaughter, and the loss of their general, *ib.* Remonstrances from the pope against the Jews extortions, *ib.* Several places, together with Ubeda, reduced, *ib.* Death and issue of his consort Beatrix, 3. Scheme for reducing Cordova frustrated, till Ferdinand comes before it, who enters the city in triumph, *ib.* Aben-Hut loses the opportunity of relieving this place, and his life, *ib.* (A). Marries to his second wife Jane de Ponthieu, 4. Renews the league with Navarre, *ib.* Reason of his tour to the northern parts of his dominions, *ib.* (C). True source of the ruin of the Moors, *ib.* sub fin. A famine at Cordova supplied by the king, *ib.* Many places submit to him, without bloodshed, 5. Forms a line of regular fortifications to his country, *ib.* King of Murcia submitting and paying homage, is received into his protection, *ib.* Laying waste the country round Jaen, besieges this city, *ib.* Death of his mother Berengara, 6. Resolves to form a fleet, *ib.* Besieges Seville by land and sea; his admiral Boniface forcing the port and beating the Moorish fleet, *ib.* The king besieges the place all winter, 7. It surrenders, and he makes his public entry, *ib.* Sweeps all the Moors places from Seville to the fall of the Guadalquivir, with a view to invade Africa, *ib.* Carried off by a dropsy, 8. Suitable disposition at that juncture, *ib.*  
 Ferdinand IV. proclaimed king of Castile when ten years old, viii. 24. The troubles arising hereupon, *ib.* The queen obliged to give Henry the regency, while she retains the education of the king, *ib.* King of Granada wastes Andalusia, and forced to retire by Rodrigo Ponce, who dies of his wounds, *ib.* Marriage with Constancia of Portugal, 28. And of Alonso, son of Juan, with Teresa, sister of Juan de Lara, *ib.* Concludes an alliance with the new king of Granada, 29. Treaties with the king of Arragon, and the infants de la Cerda, *ib.* The king finds himself obliged to court Diego Lopez de Haro, 30. Attempts to reduce Juan de Lara by force of arms, but fails, *ib.* And then by negotiation, *ib.* Which detaches Diego de Haro from him; and the king makes another attempt, to no purpose, 31. A change of measures forced upon him by don Juan, *ib.* The king engages in a war with the Moors, but without any considerable success, *ib.* Forms a design of assassinating don Juan; but the latter escapes, through the notice given him by the queen, *ib.* Obtains a power from the pope to keep his subjects in their duty, through fear of excommunication, *ib.* His queen delivered of Alonso, *ib.* Reconciliation between the king and Juan, 32. New disputes prevented by the queen, *ib.* The king renews the war with the Moors, *ib.* His death said to be by Divine judgment, for condemning two innocent brothers to death, *ib.* This affair opened further, *ib.* (O). Troubles about the regency, *ib.* His queen dies suddenly, *ibid.*  
 — declared regent of Castile with the queen, viii. 75. Prosecutes the war on the Moors with success, and the truce renewed, *ib.* The regent's upright administration, 76. Takes Antequera, *ib.* Assisted by the queen in his claim to the crown of Arragon, *ib.* Declared king by the states of the country, and placed in quiet possession by the Castilians, 77  
 — of Castile's title to the crown of Arragon how made out, viii. 183. The majority of the judges determine in his favour, *ib.* Good reason to think they determined conscientiously, 184. He is acknowledged, accepts the crown, and is proclaimed, *ib.* & 182. He reduces the count de Urgel in Balaquer, 185. Crowned at Saragossa, and as well received in Arragon as could be expected, *ib.* Is denied his demands by the states of Catalonia, and withdraws into Castile, where he dies, *ib.* His issue, and character, *ib.*  
 — and Isabella proclaimed king and queen of Castile and Leon, viii. 199. To govern jointly; and the king to do nothing of importance but by her consent, *ib.* The five articles of arbitration, at which the king is dissatisfied, *ib.* (A). Embassy from Edward IV. of England, 201. Matters settled in the provinces, and the queen delivered of a son, *ib.* Peace concluded with Lewis XI. of France, and with Portugal, *ib.* The articles of the latter, called the Peace of Alcacovas, 202 (B). Motives of this treaty, not in fin. Wise methods for settling all grievances in their dominions, 202. Firmness in restoring of justice through the provinces, after so long an interruption, 203. Thereby the



the peace of the kingdom restored, *ib.* Jean declared their majesties successor; and the inconveniency of former grants redressed, 204. He much improves the military system, &c. 207. Punctual in his capitulations, with his generosity to the Moors, *ib.* Wise regulations made as to horses and mules, 213. The king declares himself free from all engagements at the treaty of Roussillon, upon the French invasion of Naples, *ib.* They take the best part, but are expelled by Gonzales de Cordova, *ib.* Narrow escape of their majesties from assassination, 209. The Moors make a very vigorous resistance, *ib.* Ferdinand escapes assassination, 213. Jealousies between him and the archduke, 218. Acknowledged administrator, *ib.* Recalls part of his army in Naples, *ib.* On proposing a match with Germain de Foix, a niece of France, Philip concludes a treaty with him, *ib.* The queen delivered of Maria, *ib.* Retires to Arragon, 219. At an interview gives Philip much good advice, *ib.* On the latter's death he is recalled by the committee of seven, *ib.* His queen's frantic behaviour, 220. Settles every thing in Naples, *ib.* Returns from Italy, and governs Castile in his daughter's name with his usual firmness, 220. Acts with great spirit in an insurrection at Cordova, 221. Recovers for the king of Portugal some towns the Moors took from him, *ib.* Offers him Pignon de Valez, belonging to Fez, *ib.* The dispute between him and the emperor Maximilian compromised, *ib.* Brings the queen to alter her way of life, 222. Feuds of the grandes extinguished by the king, as umpire, *ib.* He and the pope detach themselves from the league of Cambray, by which Venice is saved, *ib.* Has the investiture of Naples from the pope, *ib.* The tribute to the latter changed to a white horse, *ib.* Great armament given out to be against the Moors, procures him many advantages, without a blow, 223. A league against the French in Italy, who are driven out, *ib.* Conquers Navarre, and the only gainer in this war, *ib.* & xi. 130. His great reputation as a politician, viii. 223. Reaps the advantage of a truce demanded by the French, *ib.* Continues compromising disputes among the nobility, *ib.* Flattered by a French cook to take a strengthening soup, but falls into a languishing condition, which excites intrigue, *ib.* But his indisposition has no effect on the administration, 224. War in Italy continues, and he arms by land and sea, which procures him great advantages, *ib.* His designs seconded by the states of Castile, but opposed by Arragon, *ib.* Being taken ill, appoints don Ferdinand regent; and recovering, is extremely offended with the states of Arragon, *ib.* Obtains a free gift from the towns, and Henry of England renews his treaties with him, 225. An embassy to him from the archduke, *ib.* Death and great character, *ib.* & xiii. 182. Appoints Joanna his heir, and after her don Carlos, viii. 226. His issue, and character, *ib.*

Ferdinand, don, governor of the Low Countries, dies; and his character, viii. 302

— don, takes possession of the see of Toledo, viii. 291

— of Portugal, succeeds his father Pedro, viii. 411. Temper and character, *ib.* Sets himself up as heir of Castile on the death of Peter the Cruel; his measures for that purpose, 412. Enters into a war with Henry of Castile, yet concludes a peace, by espousing his daughter Leonora, *ib.* Raises the coin, 413. Marries Leonora del Tellez, to the disgust of his subjects, *ib.* Endeavours to bring over the English, by an alliance with John of Lancaster, *ib.* Breaks the peace with Castile, and, after a short and bloody war, makes a very indifferent peace, 414. The alliances then stipulated, *ib.* New war meditated against Castile, his fleet and army beaten, 416. Peace made with Castile, at the expence of the allies, *ib.* Offers his only daughter to the king of Castile, whom the queen carries thither, and is married, 417. Convinced of his queen's infidelity, resolves to take off her gallant Andeyro, *ib.* Death and character, 418 (G). His daughter Beatrix proclaimed, but not acknowledged, *ib.*

— duke of Visco, his success with an army in Barbary, viii. 442

— brother to the king of Portugal, married to Maria Coutinho, viii. 472 (A). Account and character of him, *ibid.*

— Alphonso's general, his successes, x. 260

— III. of Naples, through jealousy of Gonfalso, comes to Naples, with the honours conferred on the latter, x. 497. His proceedings disoblige both parties; and on his son-in-law Philip's death, returns to Spain with Gonfalso, *ib.*

— the Bastard, succeeds his father Alphonso in Naples, x. 486. Opposed by pope Calixtus III. *ib.* But receives the

investiture from pope Pius II. 487. And notwithstanding the intrigues of the malecontent Neapolitans, crowned at Barletta, *ib.* Retrieves his affairs; and Scanderbeg crossing the Adriatic to his assistance, he entirely defeats John of Anjou at Troja, who is abandoned by all the barons, 488. On the prince of Tarento's death, his troops and great treasure come to Ferdinand; upon which John returns to Marseilles, *ib.* Death of Pius II. *ib.* His proceedings for quieting troubles, *ib.* The duke of Calabria married to Hippolita, the duke of Milan's daughter, *ib.* Sends troops to Tuscany for assisting Peter Medici, *ib.* On Scanderbeg's defeat, the league conclude a peace with the Venetians, 489. Difference between him and the pope, *ib.* Both his daughters married, and he himself married to Jean of Arragon, *ib.* Forms an alliance with the pope against the Florentines, *ib.* Yet makes alliance also with the Florentines, who with the Venetians had excited the Turks to invade Naples, *ib.* Achmet Bascha takes Otranto by assault; with the Turks barbarity there, *ib.* His design of invading Greece disappointed, 490. Assists his son-in-law of Ferrara against the pope and Venetians, *ib.* Alphonso entirely defeated near Rome, 491. The pope agrees to a peace with him, who raises contributions in the Venetian territories; and the republic invades Puglia with great success; and peace concluded, *ib.* On Sixtus IV's death, pope Innocent VIII. succeeds, between whom and Ferdinand a difference arises, *ib.* The barons revolt, through Alphonso's arbitrary proceedings, and the pope's resentment, *ib.* The pontiff zealously espouses their cause, *ib.* But a peace being concluded, most of the barons are seized and put to death; for which Ferdinand is hated, 492. His death and character, 493

Ferdinand escapes into Ischia, x. 494. Almost the whole kingdom recovered by him, who marrying a daughter of Spain, dies, *ib.*

— III. of Naples, dies, x. 496. And archduke Charles succeeds, *ib.*

— takes Picinino into his pay; and he and his son decoyed into the castle of Naples, and put to death, xiii. 417

— archduke, convokes a diet at Spire, and with what view, xi. 141. Attempts to succeed the emperor Matthias; and he confirms the Bohemians in their privileges, 196. They decline his proffers, and the war continues on both sides, *ib.*

— king of Hungary, is married to Mary-Ann of Spain, xi. 223 (G). Elected and crowned king of the Romans, 244. Dies, 275

— chosen king of the Romans, and crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, xi. 142. Defeated in Hungary by Solymán, who takes Buda, and the young king, 153. Reconciled to the landgrave of Hesse and duke of Wirtemberg, 146

— irritated at the pope, x. 88. Preparations for war by him, *ib.* Condescensions to the Protestants offensive to the fathers at Trent, *ib.* Protests against the translation of the Trent council to Bologna, and a new form of reformation drawn up by his order, 89. Greatly offended at their proceedings, and his request rejected by the friars and the pope, 90. Objection to the bull for restoring the council to Trent; appeases the Protestants in some measure, and sends three ambassadors to Trent, 91. Obligated to a peace at Passau with the Protestants, in their favour, 93

— orders and opinion in the case of his election confirmed in the empire by pope Pius IV. xi. 169, and xv. 475. Orders a diet at Augsburg; and his resolutions, and those of Francis II. *ib.* Death, character, and issue, 171 (E)

— elected king of Bohemia, xi. 192. Crowned upon conditions; but is said to have been absolved of his oath, *ib.* (O). Protestants complaints rejected with contempt, 193. Confederacy against him signed at Prague, between Silesia, Moravia, and Lusatia, 198. Allegations against his acting as elector of Bohemia, and his reply to the deputies of the states, *ib.* Chosen emperor in the room of Matthias; against which the Bohemians protest, 199. Some additional clauses to the articles of his capitulation, *ib.* and xv. 475. Strengthened by new alliances, xi. 201. Sends a summons to the elector Palatine, with the elector's answer, 202. Two powerful armies of that emperor, 203. Mansfeldt is repulsed, 204. Ferdinand puts the Palatine and his confederates to the ban, 205. Concludes a treaty with Gabor, and marries Eleanora de Gonzaga of Mantua, 207. Proceedings against the proscribed Bohemians, 209. Expels the Protestants from Prague, and his hereditary dominions, *ib.* In a diet at Ratisbon transfers the electoral dignity



- dignity to the duke of Bavaria, 211. The electors and other princes how swayed in this affair, with a remonstrance of the duke of Newburg, *ib.* Divides Frederick's spoils at his pleasure, *ib.* Accommodation between him and the elector of Saxony, *ib.* Though Lipsstadt is taken, conditions of peace are proposed by him, and why rejected by Frederick elector Palatine, 212. Conditions of peace dictated by him to Frederick, and his answer, 216. These representations unsatisfactory to him; with the ambition of the house of Austria, and the apprehensions of all the German princes on that head, *ib.* A diet opened at Mulhausen, where his intention of giving law to all Germany plainly appears, 217. Among other proceedings, those in the diet relating to the elector Palatine, *ib.* New difference with Christian of Denmark, 218. His tampering with what view, 220. Treaty concluded between him and the king of France; but not approved of, 222. Complains loudly against the Protestants, 223. Accommodation between the emperor and France with regard to Mantua, *ib.* Egon de Furstenberg, commander of the Austrian troops, returned from Italy, compels some of the Protestants to renounce the league of Leipsic, *ib.* Negotiations with the pope and Italian princes against the Swedes miscarry, 227. Contrary to Walstein's advice continues the war, 231. Tamperers with Brandenburg and Saxony to detach them from Sweden, but ineffectual, 233. Convoles a diet at Ratisbon, with the four articles he proposes for their deliberation, 244. Death, slavish bigotry, and issue, *ib.* (V)
- Ferdinand III.** succeeds his father Ferdinand II. as emperor, xi. 245, xv. 475. Amidst his tampering with Weymar, who rejects his proposals, he dies at Newburg, 247 (Y). Nature of his will, *ib.*
- creates three princes of the empire, xi. 252. Refuses to ratify preliminaries of peace, *ib.* Assembling some troops, takes Newmark, 253. Makes a peace with Ragotski, 266. Has no success with the Swifs, 256. Crowned at Prague and Presburg, 268
- elected king of the Romans, xi. 274. Engages in a treaty with the kings of Denmark and Poland against Sweden, but dies; with an account of his character, marriages, and issue, 276 (E)
- succeeds his brother Francis IV. duke of Mantua, and dies without issue, xiv. 116
- king of Hungary at the same time with Zapoli, but the latter expelled by him, xv. 406. Defeated at Buda with great loss, *ib.* Transylvania brought under his government, and several places taken by the Turks, *ib.*
- king of Bohemia, xv. 461. This kingdom and the empire ever since in that house, *ib.*
- I. duke of Austria and emperor, xv. 475. His singular grants to the Jews, v. 605
- II. of Austria and emperor, xv. 475
- III. emperor, xv. 475
- Mary, elector of Bavaria, his wife character, xv. 469. Commands in several campaigns for the emperor, who puts him and his brother of Cologne to the ban, 470
- Albert, duke of Brunswic-Wolfenbuttle, xv. 487
- II. his issue and death, xv. 487
- prince, joined by the British troops, xv. 622. Reduces Dusseldorp, and other advantages, *ib.* Passes the Rhine at Griethbuyster, *ib.* Defeats Chevalier de Muy at Warburgh, 625. Surprizes Zierenburgh, *ib.* Drives the French out of Cassel, *ib.* and seizes their magazines, *ib.* Quits the siege of Cassel, 626. Repasses the Dymel, and forced to fall back on the Lippe, *ib.* Defeats the French at Kirkdenkern, *ib.*
- king of Spain, his treaty with Great Britain at Aix-la-Chapelle, xv. 586. Prudent administration, *ib.* Settles matters with Great Britain, through general Wall, and continues unalterably attached to pacific measures, 587. Excessive grief for his queen, and death, 588.
- II. succeeds Cosmo II. great duke of Tuscany, 539. Befriends the duke of Never's pretensions on Mantua, *ib.*
- duke of, the pope highly incensed against him, x. 298. The pontiff's progress and remonstrances thereon, xi. 129. Greatly favoured by the Colonnas, &c. and escape from Rome, xiii. 476. Recovers several places in the Romagna, 495. Reinvested by the pope, 498.
- Ferdusi, Al Hafan,** a famed Persian poet, writes the Persian annals in verse, i. 634. Retirement to Baghdat like to have caused a war, 637
- Fereiro, Antonio,** his services to, and opulent pension from, the Barman king, iii. 256 (Z)
- Ferentino,** conference between the emperor and the pope there, with the former's engaging to go into the Holy Land, ix. 624
- Fere, la,** surrenders to the king of France, ix. 311
- Ferez, Abu.** See Abu, vii. 318
- Ferhabad** built by Abbas the Great, ii. 619
- Feria, duke,** takes the field with a powerful army; upon which the confederates against Genoa retreat, x. 606. Obliges the rhinegrave John-Philip to raise the siege of Brisac, xi. 234. But thwarted by Aldringhen, Walenstein's Minion, *ib.* Dies of grief, *ib.*
- Ferid Zade Sheykh** put to death by Timur Bek, ii. 554
- Fer Khan,** son and heir of Shir Khan, murdered by his uncle, iii. 56
- Fernambuco** captainry in Brazil, and districts, with its produce, described, xiv. 478. Town of that name (Arrarife) and harbour, *ib.*
- Fernandez, Emanuel,** a Jesuit, taken prisoner in Abyssinia, vi. 276
- Antony, accompanies the Abyssinian embassy, vi. 287. Difficulties and dangers in the East Indies, *ib.* Imprisoned, searched, and forced to burn the emperor's letter; is sent back into Abyssinia, 288
- Pedro, founder of a new order, vii. 689 (Y). Its ensign, and why always painted red, *ib.* Number of commendaries and revenues, *ib.* sub not.
- Garcias, count of Castile, succeeds his father, and victorious over the Moors, vii. 632. Baffles them in several attempts with inferior numbers, and his various successes, 633. Obtains several advantages, *ib.* Recalls the Vela family, *ib.*
- Juan, island, described, v. 94, & xv. 364
- Fernando Poo's** island, on the African coast, vi. 125
- Ferokhzad's** narrow escape from the traitor Togrol, and raised to the Gaznean throne, i. 653
- Feruccio,** commandant of Empoli, his boldness, activity, and imprudence, xiii. 530. Taken and put to death, 531
- Ferrara,** œcumenical council opened there, and the order of their sitting, &c. x. 12 (G). The pope presides, and proceedings against the Basil fathers, *ib.* One decree of the patriarch, and another of the pope, assented to, *ib.* (H). Disputes between the Greeks and Latins left undecided, *ib.* Disputes between the Greeks and Latins, in which Bessarion of Nicea makes an eloquent speech, and the archbishop of Rhodes also, 13. The expression, AND FROM THE SON, opposed by the Greeks, with the answer of the Latins, and where the whole dispute is to be met with, *ib.* (I). Matters still left undecided, with cardinal Julian's declaration, 14. Transferred to Florence, *ib.* Disputations on the meaning of words about the Divine Persons, and unanimous agreement of the Greeks and Latins as to the procession of the Holy Spirit, *ib.* The patriarch dies, *ib.* The union effected with the Greeks, and arrival of deputies from the patriarch of Armenia, who approves of the Roman doctrines, 15
- duke of, his eldest son marries the pope's daughter, with an immense fortune, x. 53.
- duchy and city, united to the apostolic see, x. 127. City invested, and pope Sixtus joins the enemy, with the republic's memorial, and a strong confederacy against Venice, xiii. 582, x. 295. Siege raised, xiii. 616
- duke of, pursues his resentment against it, which is invested by the Venetian fleet and the pope's army; but the former twice defeated, x. 297
- Ferrarese** rebel against their governor Diego, who executes the chief partisans of the Este family, and the pope gives the investiture to Obizo, third brother to Francis, whose bastard son Aldobrandin succeeds him, xiv. 106
- Ferrario, Vincent,** a famous converter of the Jews, v. 573 (T). His converts short-lived, *ib.* Punishments inflicted on relapsers, &c. 574
- Ferro,** an island of the Canaries, described, vi. 136 (E). Its famed tree, called the Santo, supplies the inhabitants with water, 137 (F). Made the first meridian, ix. 382
- Fesi,** a very high mountain in Japan, iv. 44
- Fetiches,** who, vi. 669. The great Fetiche at Cape-Coast, his dignity, &c. 697. Intrusted on all emergencies private and national, 698
- Fetipur,** a city of Indostan, iii. 12. Fortified and adorned by sultan Eckbar, 58
- Fetu,** kingdom on the Gold Coast, described, vi. 657. Also the country and natives, with the European settlements, *ib.* King's birth-day a great festival, 667. Time how measured, *ib.*



- Feudal estates in Germany, who deprived of them as unworthy, xi. 375
- Feuillade, vast preparations for besieging Turin under him, with his character, ix. 489. Little progress in its reduction, *ib.*
- Feuquieres's lines forced with loss, and himself taken, ix. 397
- the French minister's representations to the electors of Saxony and Brandenburg, with their reply, xi. 233
- Fevre, Mr. Le, governor-general of New-France, xiv. 616
- Fez taken by Abul Hasan, i. 554. Described, vii. 155 (L). Great mosque, *ib.* Other edifices, 156. Government, *ib.* Punishments and traffic, 157. Two castles and their site, *ib.* Revolts against Muley Deby, 195. Besieged and taken by Abdallah, 199
- river described, vii. 155. Bridges over it, *ib.*
- monarch of, Philip of Spain's alliance with him, viii. 267. Marches against Sebastian of Portugal, and his wife precautions, 482
- Fezans, their barbarity to the banished Jews, v. 577 (D)
- Fide-jori, emperor of Japan, receives an embassy from China, and dethroned by Jeassama, vi. 61 & 66. Suspected to be a convert to Christianity, *ib.* Dismal end, *ib.*
- Fide-josi succeeds Tacho-samma in Japan, vi. 61
- created quanbuku in Japan, vi. 61. (Vid. sub Taycho) 62. 66
- Fide-tada, secular emperor of Japan, pays his homage to the empress Nio-te, vi. 62. Succeeds his father, and persecutes the Christians, 67
- Fiefs, change introduced by them in France, ix. 3
- of the empire, x. 623.
- Fiesco, John Lewis, rise and progress of the Revolution attempted by him in Genoa, with his character, x. 587. Gains the friendship of France and the pope, 588. His intrigues and circumspect behaviour in Genoa, *ib.* Being drowned, his conspiracy falls with him, 589. Prudence and intrepidity of the senate on this occasion, while three of the conspirators sail for France, *ib.*
- Figuiera, Gaspar de, his success in Ceylon; but defeated by the Dutch, iv. 440
- Fijardo, Alonso de, his rebellion, viii. 93
- Fikakusa, Go, eighty-eighth emperor of Japan, iv. 58
- Filokales sent to rebuild the ruined towns of Asia Minor, ii. 211. Defeats the Turks assembled at Lampis, 212. His lucky stratagem against Hassan, *ib.*
- Final seized by the Spaniards, viii. 264
- of the Modenese, described, xiv. 103. Reduced, x. 574
- Finland lost, but restored to Sweden, xii. 423. Truce only concluded for it, xiii. 115. A complete conquest by the Russians, after their defeating the Swedes at Laplar, 228
- Fiogo, a famed dyke and port in Japan, iv. 46
- Fionia revolts, xii. 151
- Firando, an island in Japan, with an English factory there, iv. 22, sub not. A Dutch one driven out of it, 42. Its stout castle, *ib.* Given to the Dutch, 427
- Fire, liquid, made use of against the Turkish fleet, i. 353
- terrible, in Venice, x. 191. In the palace and St. Mark's church, 232. In different parts of Denmark, xii. 41
- on the bridge of Geneva over the Rhone, xiv. 50
- arms, small, first introduction of into Italy, and their description, xiii. 384 (A)
- locks introduced, into Venice, x. 276
- Firmah undertakes to poison sultan Togrol, who is made to take it, ii. 193
- Firaz the Persian embraces Islamism, i. 97
- Mogheira's slave, stabs the khalif Omar in the mosque, i. 245, and himself, 246
- Firuzkuh, a citadel, taken by Timur, ii. 570. By Sofi Ismael, 602
- Fishery, new, projected at Mount Lewis on the river St. Laurence, xiv. 666. Miscarries, 672
- Fish-gig, an instrument for fishing described, v. 26
- Fish-woman, or Peisce-donna, described, vi. 436. Where mostly caught, *ib.*
- Fitangajama, the famed cataract in Japan, iv. 44
- Fit-atku, the thirty-first emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52. Laws in favour of brutes, *ib.*
- Fi-ti, the last of the fifteenth dynasty in China, burns himself alive, iii. 717
- Fitzwilliams, governor of the Bahamas, quashes a mutiny of the independent company, xv. 273
- Flabenico, Dominico, the twenty-ninth doge of Venice, unjustly proposes expelling the Urseolo family, which the multitude agree to, x. 193. Death, *ib.*
- Flagellants in Germany who; persecute the Jews, v. 571 (N). Account of, ix. 639 (M). Seel revived, with their tenets, and a bull against them, 677. Progress and extirpation, xi. 49 (V)
- Flanders, war there with count Baldwin, which ends in a peace, x. 651
- Flavian, Antony, the thirty-third great master of the Rhodian order, vii. 409. Threatened by the Turks, &c. 410. Makes peace with Al Daher, *ib.* Summons a grand chapter at Rhodes, and reforms great abuses, 411
- Fleming, disorders committed by his soldiers upon the peasants in Finland, xii. 309
- his well-laid scheme to seduce the abbe Polignac frustrated, xii. 553. Ensures success by money, 554. Publishes a manifesto, after reducing some places in Livonia, but has little effect, 575. Disappointed in his attempts on Riga, *ib.* Blocks up Riga more closely, and publishes a second manifesto, 576. His signal services for Gustavus Erickson before Stockholm, 273
- Flemings have Margaret of Austria appointed their gover-nante by her father Maximilian, xi. 126
- ambassadors of, on declaring their final instructions, the negociation is at an end with the Dutch, 481. Propose a truce, against which prince Maurice writes a circular letter, and the conferences break off, *ib.* Their discontent, and the measures taken thereupon, 522
- Fletcher, governor of New-York, for Lesly and Milbourne's holding out against him executes them, xiv. 540. Complaints against this, but he dies, *ib.*
- made governor of Pennsylvania by the crown, xv. 115. Supercedes the proprietary right, *ib.* Differences with the assembly of Pennsylvania, 116. Goes abruptly to New-York, *ib.* Returns and meets the assembly, *ib.* Remarkable close of his speech, *ib.* Dissolves them twice, and why, 117. Obtains an aid for New-York, 118
- Fleury, character of that cardinal, xv. 611. Persuades the king to establish the bull Unigenitus on clergy and laity, 612. Princesses born, and procession for the queen's having a dauphin, *ib.* His death, xii. 660
- Flisci submitting to the marquis of Montserrat, are restored to their share in St. George's bank, x. 568
- Flisaw his successful attempt on Genoa, with the revolution occasioned thereby, x. 574. Ravages by the malecontents, *ib.*
- Flockinger family cause a civil war in Sweden, xii. 234
- Charles, rejecting all Birger Jerl's overtures, retires to the grand master of the Teutonic order, xii. 224. His astonishing valour there, and death, *ib.*
- Florence, council transferred to the Lateran, x. 17. Capitulates, and the pope's grand-nephew Alexander acknowledged its sovereign, 81. Description of it, xiii. 269. Old ducal palace, and curiosities, 270. History, with a reflexion on it, and the Etrurians, 273. Festival instituted there, and the occasion, *ib.* Confusions there, with the return of the exiled nobility, and end of the popular government, 278. The Gibelines get possession of it, *ib.* Factions again break out, and Conradin prepares to recover his paternal inheritance, while Charles' is made Imperial vicar of Tuscany by the pope, 281. The Gibelin exiles, who on this occasion left Florence, are put to the sword, and the vast altercation ensuing hereon in the city, *ib.* A new college erected in Florence by the pope what; and war between the Florentines and Siennese, *ib.* Why laid under an interdict, 284. Pope continues the interdict, but his successor Innocent V. takes it off, *ib.* War between the Florentines and Pisans continues, yet forced by the pope to a peace, 285. Four popes dying in three years, Nicholas III. reconciles the parties in Florence, and new models their government, by his legate Latino, *ib.* History after the new plan of their republic took place, *ib.* They change the form of government, with the occasion, 286. Three principal citizens appointed presidents, and soon after six, *ib.* Prosperous state, and a jubilee, 287. New divisions there, occasioned through the Pistoian Whites and Blacks, and the pope's interpositions ineffectual, 294. Hostilities rage still more, 295. Fresh dissensions, and the city set on fire with considerable loss, 296. A new magistrate created, and what, 297. They despise the papal power, and they and the Lucquese are interdicted, *ib.* Singularity in this state, 298. How saved, 302. The Pisans and Lucquese rebel against Fagiolani, *ib.* New regulation about the horsemen's armour, 303. A decree there for re-admitting the exiles into the city, 305. The exiles disappointed of seizing



seizing the city, 306. The wife proceedings of the people on suspecting some citizens, and those moderately fined, *ib.* (A). New alterations in the constitution, *ib.* (B). Intestine commotions upon one Bordo's account, 307. Progress of the war between the Florentines and Castruccio, wherein the former are defeated, *ib.* (C). Deplorable situation and utter ruin how prevented, also their constancy, 308. Impending danger animates them to provide against the worst, with the emperor's relaxing his preparations, 312. Its prosperity, 313. War with Pisa how occasioned, and its progress, 314. Tumults there how occasioned, and the authors sentenced, with the consequences, 320. A confederacy formed, and peace made with Pisa, 324. Severe laws against the nobility, *ib.* Magnanimous wisdom of the state in pursuing the banditti from place to place, which all Italy admire, 332. The banditti draw off precipitately, with a reflection on this event, *ib.* Invade Pavia, *ib.* A war with Pisa how occasioned, with the Florentines success, and taking of Pacciolo, 333. After several descents on the coast, they enter the port of Pisa, after breaking its iron chain, which they carry to Florence, *ib.* Law passed there, what, *ib.* Diffensions begin, occasioned by an admonitory law, 341. Bad consequences, and alteration of its government, *ib.* Proceedings of the exiles and the Florentine ambassadors to Charles of Durazzo differ in their report, with the confusion in Florence on notion of a conspiracy, 343. A kind of dictatorial power erected, and many nobles innocently put to death, through the fury of the mob; and magistrates created to purge the state, with their proceedings, *ib.* New troubles, and the occasion, 344. And the upshot in favour of the nobility, *ib.* Their tyranny, *ib.* Danger from Galeazzo of Milan, 345. Its flourishing condition, 346. Commotions there, 357. How delivered, 358. Conspiracy discovered and punished, with another by Galeazzo, and what, 359. A plot for subverting the government discovered, and the authors punished, 361. Long tranquility to what owing, 373. Its state, and jealousies of its citizens, 376. Emperor refused entrance, 392. Alterations in the constitution, 393. New regulations, 403. Unanimity of the princes Cosmo and Capponi, 413. An expedition against the Infidels encouraged, especially there; but why the fervor subsides, *ib.* Consequences of the popular system on the government, *ib.* Magnificence of, with their cultivating the civil arts, 415. Why discontents arise there, *ib.* & 420. Their government moulded into a parliament, 440. Soderini's long speech, and Vespucci's answer, 441. Divisions there about assisting the French, 472. 477. The gonfalonier's conduct, and the great council's resolution, 477. The gonfalonier is forced to resign, and escapes to Ragusa, 478. Gonfalonier made annual, and Ridolfi chosen, 479. The Spanish viceroy withdraws, *ib.* Danger whence, 504. Disturbances appeased by fair methods of Urbino, 516. New negotiations, 517. Revolution there for the popular government, and Capponi chosen gonfalonier, 519. Besieged, 527. Siege continued, 528. It is reinforced, and the Florentine officers resolution, 529. Slow progress of the siege, 530. Florentines make a separate peace with the king of Naples, x. 40. War betwixt the Genoese and them, and peace concluded, but the Florentines refuse to fulfil their engagements, 578. Beat the Genoese and take Sarzana, *ib.* The emperor Frederic II's tyranny to them, xiii. 274, whom he subjects, but after his death they erect themselves into an independant state, and their war with the Pistoians, &c. 275. Their further successes, defeating the Pisans and Siennese; and taking Volterra, *ib.* Erect a magnificent town-house, &c. with their good faith in their wars, and make a truce with Arezzo, 276. Make a league with Sienna, *ib.* Exiles at Sienna implore Manfred's protection, with the magnanimity of their principal deputy, and the war of the Florentines with Sienna, 277. Exiles assist the Modenese Guelphs, and drive the Ghibelines from Modena, as also from Arezzo, 279. The Genoese join them against the Pisans, and how count Ugolini saves them, 287. Cultivate the arts of peace, *ib.* Their tranquility how interrupted by the bishop of Arezzo, who is besieged in Civitella by the Arezzians, 288. But driven back to their city, *ib.* Succour the Arezzian exiles, but make a league against the Arezzians, and purchase their privileges from the emperor Rodolph, *ib.* The Arezzians defend themselves, 289. Florentines and Arezzians resolve to give each other battle, *ib.* with their disposition, and the noble behaviour of a Florentine nobleman, and

its effect, with the defeat of the Arrazzians, *ib.* Miscarry in an attempt on Arezzo, 290. Improvement in the Florentine government, *ib.* With their confederates invade the Arezzian territories, without taking the city, and renew their league with the Genoese against Pisa; their degeneracy in military virtues, and idle expeditions, 291. By the influence of Janus Labella, the nobility are excluded from all share in the government, *ib.* An act of justice by the gonfalonier strikes terror into the nobility, and they listen to a proposal of peace from the Pisans, maugre the remonstrances of their allies, with its terms, and their tranquility, 292. Magnificence in building the Holy Cross Church, *ib.* A fray and its consequences occasion the voluntary banishment of Labella, &c. to prevent a civil war, *ib.* Diffensions break out again between the nobles and people, *ib.* Labella's recall proposed, but prevented by the pope; he dies, 293. Magnificent works erected by the Florentines, who mediate between the Bolognese and Ferrarese, *ib.* The pope summons them to appear before him, and an attempt of the opposite party to seize the city in the mean time, disappointed, 296. They renew the confederacy with their neighbours, and chuse prince Robert of Naples their general, 297. Besiege Arezzo, and enter into a confederacy against the emperor, 299. Apply to Robert king of Naples, and transfer the sovereignty to him for five years, 301. The express conditions what, and Robert's first act of government highly approved, *ib.* Highly exasperated against the Pisans, and the good faith of the former, 302. Exiled Lucquese assisted by them, *ib.* Apply to the war with Pisa, while Fagiolani pushes the Lucquese exiles, and totally routs the Florentines at Cafino, *ib.* Instance of their good faith, who also assist the king of Naples, 303. Their wars with Castruccio of Lucca, and the low state of their affairs, *ib.* Assist their allies of Sienna, and enter into a treaty with the Genoese, and an officer deserts to Castruccio, 304. Resigns the government for ten years to Charles prince of Tarentum, 308. Apprehensive of their liberty from Charles of Tarentum, and the pope's legate are prevailed upon by Galeazzo to invite the emperor Lewis, 309. Take Pistoia by their general Philip, 310. Difference between them and Philip, 311. Their governor Charles dying, they make alterations in their government, with a signal proof of its firmness and wisdom, also a pretended Catilinarian plot, 313. Besiege Lucca, 314. Defeat the Germans before Ferrara, 315. The pope's legate saved by them, 316. Their conduct, 317. War declared by them against Scaliger, &c. with the occasion, and his power; also a general reflexion on their conduct, *ib.* The Perugians animated by them, surprise Citta di Castello, *ib.* Purchase Arezzo, 319, which is reclaimed by the Perugians, and both parties come to an accommodation, *ib.* On Scaliger's reinforcing the garrison of Lucca, the Florentines ravage its territories, *ib.* Enjoy some years tranquility; dismal apprehensions how raised in them, *ib.* (C). Invading the Pisan territories, are defeated, 320. Miserable situation, 321. Oversight in resettling the government, with heats revived thereon, 324. The nobility are expelled from the magistracy, and the ancient forms restored, *ib.* A difficulty surmounted, 325. Intoxicated by their prosperity in two instances, and a great bankruptcy in Florence on account of Edward III. of England, 326. The king of France orders all Florentines in his dominions and their effects to be seized, *ib.* Confederacy formed against Visconti of Milan frustrated, with his artifice, and Præto secured by them, 327. Also Pistoia, after some failure of success, *ib.* Augment their forces, and by two reinforcements the siege of Scarperia is raised; also Arezzo preserved, 328. False musters punished by the Florentines, and the origin of their war with the German banditti, and the latter's success, 330. Their staple why removed to Talamone, and the consequences, 331. Bibbiena in the Casentine besieged and taken, 333. A war in the Bolognese, *ib.* Defeat the Pisans, 335. Both sides hire troops, 337. Florentine army mutinies, with the magnanimity of the state, and a peace with the Pisans, *ib.* Refuse declaring against Barnabo of Milan, with the emperor Charles's sternness to their deputies, and his demands; also his hostilities with the Florentines, and obliged to return to Germany, *ib.* Their quarrel with Barnabo, whose general Hawkwood defeats them under their general Regino, with his saving, and being taken prisoner; also St. Miniato taken by treachery, *ib.* They generously purchase freedom for Lucca, *ib.* (A), with the great policy of the Florentines, who



who assist in beating Barnabo, and raising the siege of Reggio; but the pope concludes a peace with him, 338. Also with the Florentines, and their subsequent long unanimity thereupon, with their great spirit against the pope's legates or governors in Italy, *ib.* They engage the Italian states to assert their liberties, *ib.* Prepare for war, and bring over the English in the pope's pay, all the latter's intrigues failing, 340. By their general Rodolfo of Camerino they seize on Fabriano, which refuses to give them possession, and why, *ib.* The pope, on the point of an accommodation with the Florentines, dies, *ib.* Reflection on their honour, 342 (B). Alarmed at Lewis of Anjou's marching into Italy to drive out Charles, with their embracing a neutrality, 344, yet privately supply Hawkwood with money for the pope's services, and join Charles; difference with the Genoese and Venetians, and the occasion, *ib.* Enlarge the area before the public palace, 346. Their courage and firmness, 347. A league concluded at Pisa, but broken, *ib.* Demands and mediation of the French rejected, and a war commences between Galeazzo and them, 348. On a design of conquering Milan, they strengthen themselves by foreign alliances, 349. The prince of Carrara comes to assist them, as does Stephen, duke of Bavaria, who surprises Padua, with the apology and demands of the latter to the Florentines, and their answer, *ib.* The difficulties they are involved in on all hands, *ib.* Successful war in Tuscany, and embassy from the Bolognese to them, with the latter's answer, and its effects, 350. Their expedition against Sienna, with its success; and they order Hawkwood to march directly to Tuscany, 351. Their vast riches, generosity and magnificence, with an embassy from Galeazzo, and their commission, 354. Their reply to some part, and promising to send deputies, who would answer the rest, *ib.* More join the confederacy, 355. Revivers of Greek learning, and bring Chrysolorus of Byzantium to their city, *ib.* Mediating between Nicholas prince of Ferraro and Azzo a relation, raise an army, 356. Jealous of the emperor Winceslaus's offers, and negotiate with the French king against Galeazzo, *ib.* They support Lucca against Apiano of Pisa, 357. Buy off Barbiansi's two generals, and their views, with Galeazzo's bitter complaints, and their evasive answer, 358. Succour Mantua, and their successful war in Tuscany, 359. Scheme frustrated by Galeazzo's address, and war between the two states renewed, with a negotiation for peace, which ends in a truce, 360. Their danger and distresses, 361. Invite Robert the emperor into Italy for a large sum of Money, which he accepts, but is defeated by Galeazzo before Brescia, 362. He deceives them, but returns to Padua, 363. Their great spirit, *ib.* Apply to the pope and Venetians for assistance, but disappointed; Galeazzo in the mean time proposing a peace, but dies, 195. Making war in the Milanese, and a negotiation proposed, in which they are left out, and Perugia and Bologna re-annexed to the Holy See, 364. Declare war against the Siennese, who, putting themselves under the protection of the pope, a peace succeeds, *ib.* Almost the final period of their glory, *ib.* Buy Pisa of Gabriel, the natural son of Galeazzo, 365 (C). The citadel given up to them, but they lose it again the same day by the bravery of the Pisans, against whom war is declared, 366. Negotiate with Ladislaus of Naples and Otho of Parma for a neutrality, *ib.* Miscarry in an escalade on Pisa, with divisions thereon in the camp, and between Sforza and Tartalia, 367 (D). Pestilential diseases, and the siege more closely pursued, with their cruelty, 368. Why they add the ancient Roman inscription to their arms, 378 (C). Lose their towns, yet they reject Philip's offers, as do the Venetians, 379. Account of the league between them and the Venetians, with the terms, and effect of it, also the danger of the mercenaries, *ib.* Vast expence of the war between them and the Venetians, and respectable condition of the Venetians therefrom, 380. A peace mediated by the pope, and concluded, between them and the Venetians, with instances of rancor in this war, *ib.* Incapacity and brutality of their generals, 383. Astorre, one of them, is recalled and condemned; the other, Albizi, resigning, two others appointed, *ib.* Melancholy state of the Florentines, who buy Sforza off, and on what terms, 385. Unwarrantable manner of their procuring Guinigi's deposition, *ib.* Their dissimulation to the Siennese, who chuse Antonio their chief magistrate, 387. Make a league with Venice, (pope Eugene IV. projecting it) to counterbalance that between Milan, Genoa, and Sienna, *ib.*

Their cruelty to Pisa, through the archbishop's brutality, *ib.* Surprise Trebia, 389. Discontents on the bad success of the war against Lucca, the weight of which falls on the leaders, *ib.* Difficulties to which they are reduced on a demand of the Venetians with regard to Sforza, 395. Bring Sforza into a confederacy with them and the Venetians, and the conditions, 396. Their negotiation with Venice, *ib.* Craft with regard to cardinal Vetteleschi, whom the pope arrests, 397. The pope comes into a league with them and the Venetians, 398. Also an agreement made with Sforza for relieving Brescia, *ib.* Army now complete advances to Anghiari, where Piccinino thinks to surprise them, but is defeated, 399 (A). The victory, why bloodless, and a considerable booty, *ib.* Bad discipline, and the exiles disperse, *ib.* Divide their army in pursuit of Piccinino, 400. The part under Capponi take Poppi, with the hard terms to its count, *ib.* On the duke of Milan's consenting, they actually assist Sforza, 402. Recover all the places taken by Alphonso, 406. Assist the Venetians, *ib.* Treaty concluded by them with Sforza, and its terms, for the conquest of Milan, *ib.* Enter into a war with Alphonso, and the previous steps to it, 409. League between them and Sforza, *ib.* The Genoese and king of France join them, *ib.* Recover the places taken, 410. A change in their manners for the worse, 423. Heightened by the arrival of the duke and duchess of Milan with their court, and a sumptuary law passed upon their departure, *ib.* A war declared by them against Volterra, which they sack and plunder, 424. Their firmness against the pope, 429. They give him up the cardinal, with the progress of the war, *ib.* Reconciliation between the pope and them, 431. Their first care to have their towns restored, *ib.* At war with the Genoese, besiege Pietra Santa; the ravages of the latter repressed, and are repulsed from Leghorn, with the taking of Pietra, 433. It is claimed by the Lucquese, *ib.* Prosperity owing to Lorenzo de Medici, 434. Their prodigious encouragement of learning after his example, *ib.* Answer made to the French ambassadors, 437. Repulsed from Vico Pisano, as also from the Florentine gate at Pisa, 445. Distress of the Florentines, 448. They refuse to submit to the emperor Maximilian's decision about Pisa, even despising him at bottom, *ib.* War continuing between them and the Pisans, ends in a long truce, 449. Apply to the pope, with their offer to join the confederacy, and the condition, 450. Despised for their temporizing; yet a treaty is made between Lewis of France, and them, with the terms, 455. Misconduct of those who assisted them, who are themselves partly to blame, 457. Factions among them, and for what, 458. A treaty between them and Lewis, with its terms, 459. The Pisan war renewed by them, who lose Arezzo, *ib.* Taken under the French protection, with their danger, and how extricated, 460. Arezzo restored to them, who make the gonfalonier for life, *ib.* Take some places from the Pisans, who are assisted by the Genoese, Lucquese, &c. 461. Their success, and Pisa defended against them, 462. Unsuccessful every way against it, *ib.* Intirely defeated by the Pisans, with the consequences to the former, 463. Reduced to a most deplorable state, but favoured by Gonsalvo the Spanish general, *ib.* Alviano the Pisan general defeated by them, with their resolution against Pisa and Sienna, &c. also the divisions among them, 464. Besiege Pisa, with the brave defence of the besieged, and inglorious rising from it, *ib.* Operations against Pisa, 465. Cruel edict against it, x. 240. A defensive league between them and the Lucquese, with the terms, xiii. 465. Conclude a treaty with the emperor Maximilian, and its terms, 467. Attached to the French, for which the gonfalonier Soderini is assassinated, *ib.* Invite the emperor to their assistance, 468 & xiv. 85. Stagger in their alliance with the French, *ib.* Recover Monte Pulciano, 470. Their appeal from the papal interdict to a council, 471. Troops to guard the French cardinals in Pisa prohibited by them, *ib.* Upon which the pope suspends the interdict, *ib.* Their disagreeable situation from their neutrality, 476. Miscarry in an attempt upon Arezzo, 482. Their hardships, 507. Take Doria into their pay, 510. Their importance, 511. Why uneasy; and on the pope's retiring to St. Angelo, conclude a disadvantageous truce, 514. Why outrageous against the Medici, 519. Bravery of their troops at the siege of Naples, 521. Distrustful of the pope, 522. Their firmness against the pope, and gain over Malatesta from his service, *ib.* Abandoned by the French king, 523. Progress of the war against them, with Francis's



- diffimulation, 525. Abandoned by their allies, with their courage and constancy, 526. Continue to treat, with suggestions against them, *ib.* Negotiate conditionally with the pope, and his dissembling answers, 527. But fortify the city, and prepare for a vigorous defence, *ib.* A successful sally made by them, 528. All to the disadvantage of the Imperialists, with the prince of Orange's vast preparations ineffectual, 529. Distress, 530. Disappointment from Francis, and loss in a sally against the Imperialists, 531. They lose all hopes of foreign assistance by the defeat of Ferruccio at Cavinana, in which the prince of Orange is killed, *ib.* Their courage, but compelled by Malatesta to capitulate with Gonzaga, and the terms, *ib.* Not observed by the pope, and the popular constitution abolished by Malatesta's means, with its new modelling, *ib.*
- Florentius V. count of Holland, how murdered, xi. 16
- Flores, one of the Azore islands, described, vi. 157
- Florida, discovered by Ponce de Leon, and whence so called, xiv. 159 (B). Situation, &c. 430. Different voyages made to it, with the use made of it by the Spaniards, *ib.* Its former and present limits, *ib.* Its air pure and its soil rich, with its produce, *ib.* Valuable articles of commerce and living, 431. Natives described, *ib.* Their character, fraud, religion, and government, *ib.* Priests act in a triple capacity, *ib.* Rivers and adjacent provinces, 432. Ceded to Great-Britain, *ib.* (P)
- Cordova's expedition to it and Yucatan, xiv. 165
- British, farther account of it, xv. 63. Expeditions to it, *ib.* Reason of its name, *ib.* First discoverer, *ib.* (Q)
- Floridans, their character, and account of their soil, xv. 71 (R)
- Florigni burns some Tripolitan galleys, vii. 521
- Flota's intrepid reply to the pope, in king Philip's behalf, ix. 656
- Fly bird of Canada, described, xiv. 561. Beauty of the male, which kills ravens, *ib.*
- island, in the South Sea described, v. 8
- night, a curious one in Japan, described, iv. 44 (R)
- Fo worshipped among the Mungls, and their strange notions about him, ii. 259. Reception of the emperor's ambassadors, *ib.* His sects when first received, *ib.* The worship of him supported by Ayyuli-palipata, 403. His worship and priests condemned as useless, 409. Worshipped in Cochinchina, iii. 426. In Tonquin, 441. When and how first brought into China, 561. Fabulous accounts about its author's birth, &c. *ib.* (G). His doctrine greedily received by the Chinese, *ib.* Often invoked by the superstitious vulgar, and various representations of him, 563. How punished when he doth not answer their prayers, 564. When born, 690 (P). Worshipped in Japan, iv. 651
- Foburg, Christian's favourite, rise and fall of, xii. 136
- Fogo Ilha del, or Fire-island, described, vi. 129
- Fo-hi, the founder of the Chinese monarchy, whether the same with Noah (see Noah) iii. 655. The beginning of his reign fixed upon a fact, 671. Founded upon the authority of our Hebrew chronology, and of the Chinese annals, 672
- Foix, count and countess, assume the title of king and queen of Arragon, but retire into Navarre, viii. 169. Makes a fruitless attempt upon Arragon, and dies soon after, *ib.*
- M. de, a great reinforcement sent him from France, xiii. 473. Ordered to fight the enemy, *ib.* Great caution, *ib.* Besieges Ravenna, and battle there with the confederates, in which the latter are defeated and de Foix killed, 474
- Fo-kyen, a wealthy province in China, described, iii. 532. Its vast commerce and distinct language, 533. Formerly a separate kingdom, and its cities, *ib.*
- Folgiens, their bloody wars with the Karrows, vii. 36. The latter subdued by the former, *ib.*
- Folk Bookal, a Danish lord, arrested by Eric of Sweden, xii. 56
- Fon, or Bangkok, a city of Siam, described, iii. 319. Strong situation, *ib.*
- Fong-cheu put to fire and sword by the Mungls, ii. 337
- Fong-tsyang-fu taken by Oktay, ii. 336
- Fong-whang, a fabulous bird in Tartary, iii. 460
- Fong-whang-ching, a populous city in Shin-yang, iii. 460
- Fong-whang-shang, a noted mountain in Shin-yang, iii. 460
- Fontainebleau, proceedings of a convention of estates there greatly alarm the pope, x. 98
- Fontana erects an ancient obelisk in Rome, x. 118
- builds Naples university, x. 513
- Fontarabia, siege of it raised by the French, ix. 210. Surrendered to the emperor, and its governor degraded, 212.
- Fontenoy, bloody battle of, between the sons of the emperor Lewis the Gentle, viii. 699. The fruits of it lost, *ib.* Another battle there, xv. 617
- Forbes, brigadier, his character, xiv. 713. Takes fort du Quesne after vast difficulties, 714. His services there, and death, *ib.*
- Force, marquis de la, submits to the king, and is rewarded, ix. 367
- Fori-kava I. the seventy-third emperor of Japan, v. 57
- II. the eighty-fifth emperor, v. 58
- Formosa island, on the coast of Fo-kyen, described, iii. 534. When first discovered, *ib.* (X). Entered by the Japanese and Dutch, *ib.* Its climate, produce, &c. 535. Rich mines, *ib.* Known but in part to the Chinese, *ib.* A scene of treachery acted by them in it, 536. Severely repaid, *ib.* European accounts of the island absurd, *ib.* (Z). Wise way of courtship among the natives, 537. Government, tribute, &c. 538. Some of them converted by the Dutch, *ib.* Harbour of Tay-wan-fu described, *ib.* Garrison and other forces, *ib.* Fort of Naganping becomes useless, *ib.* Account of the island, written by a pretended native, owned to be false, 539. Seized on by Coxinga, 738. Surrendered to the Chinese, 741. Revolts, and is re-taken, 743. The Dutch settlement flourishing upon it, iv. 443. Whence called Tai-ovan, 444. (I). By what means re-united to China, *ib.* & not. *ad fin.*
- river in Benin, described, vi. 578
- Formosus, pope, dying, Rome is thrown into the utmost confusion, through several successors to the papacy, ix. 533
- Fornication, its punishment according to the Alcoran, i. 177
- Fornova battle, ix. 187
- Foro, great, in Ardrah, described, vi. 621
- Fort, M. le, origin and first preferments, xiii. 184. Made general of a regiment of twelve thousand men, 185. Wounded in a mock fight, and is made an admiral, *ib.* One third of his regiment French refugees, *ib.* (Y). Builds long-boats, and two thirty gun ships, at the mouth of the Woronetz, emptying into the Don, in order to awe the Crim Tartars, 186. His death, and the honours done by the czar at his funeral, to whom the alterations appeared not to be owing, but to Peter's own planning, 194
- Fortune, Garcias, succeeds his father in Navarre, with the confusion in those ancient reigns, and Mariani's fabulous accounts, viii. 552 (A). His character, *ib.* Retires to a monastery, and places the crown on his brother Sancho's head, and how accounted for, 553
- Fortunius taken prisoner by the Saracens, and generously discharged, i. 473
- Forrest, and two English captains, their gallant behaviour against a French squadron off Cape Francois, xv. 357. His rich captures off Petit Guaves, *ib.*
- Foscari, Francisco, the sixty-fifth doge of Venice, succeeds Tomaso Mocenigo, x. 232. Honours done him by the pope, 260. Deposed for his great age, with his character, 262. Dies of grief, with his son's mal-treatment, *ib.* (F)
- Fostat, Al, abandoned to the rebel Al Khalij, i. 509
- Foslokava's ill success, and he kills himself, iv. 60
- Foundation, charitable, a vast sum left for one in Venice, an account of it, x. 198 (A)
- Fouquet arrested, and condemned to perpetual imprisonment, ix. 450
- Fourbin, chevalier, his great services to the king of Siam, iii. 376. Against the rebellious Makassars, 377. Stratagem against them, 378. His account of the French embassy to Siam, 381. Of the poverty of that kingdom, 382. Raised to an high dignity there, 383 (C)
- Fournier. See Benedict, pope
- Fox, the Mongul year, what, ii. 363 (O)
- Foxes of Canada described, xiv. 457
- Foot, their superiority over horse exemplified, xiv. 344
- Frame (cadre) manner of executing on it, and what, xv. 43 (G)
- France, isle and settlement, iv. 609. Its produce, &c. 610 (M & N). Mistakes about it rectified, 611. Called Mauritius by the Dutch, *ib.* How ruined by them and the French, 612. Granted by Lewis XV. to the French East-India company, 613. Improved by Mons. la Bourdenaye, 614. And by the Inhabitants, *ib.*
- history from Clovis to Lewis XV. viii. 617. Confusions there occasion a peace with the malecontents, 287. Double marriage between it and Spain solemnized, *ib.* Disgust at Spain, and how shewn, 293. Various enterprises respectively, 298. Its proposals of peace rejected by Spain, 314. The king, on the queen-mother's death, claims the Netherlands, 325. Takes several places there, *in*



in the time of full peace, 326; also Burgundy, *ib.* Truce between it and England, ix. 139. The king upon this sends his son with an army against the Albigenes, 622. Assembles his prelates, who deprive Benedict XIII's adherents, and regulate the Gallican church during the neutrality, 703. Several edicts published derogatory to the Roman see, x. 39. Its civil policy, 40. Richieu and Mazarine break the insolence of the nobility, *ib.* Manner and prejudices of the French changed by Lewis XIV. and his able ministry, *ib.* Arts and sciences encouraged, 41. Comparison between England and France in these respects, *ib.* King by his own authority annuls the pragmatic sanction, 35. Demands from the pope not granted, 37. Tythe there continued, 45. Commotions in France for religion, with several edicts published there, 98. A peace between it and Savoy, with the terms, 129. King of France invades Arragon, x. 448. Peace concluded with it at Arras, xi. 111. Alliances made with France previous to declaring war, 240. Five considerable armies raised, 241 (S). A treaty between it and Weymar's forces, with the conditions, and consequences of the negotiation in favour of that crown, 247. Treaty between it and Sweden renewed, 255. Peace between France, Sweden, Denmark, and Brandenburg respectively, 261. Duke of Deux-Ponts and count Veldenetz refuse homage to the king of France, 262, with the negotiations between him and the emperor hereupon, *ib.* The Dutch and emperor agree to the truce with it, and other articles of their agreement, 266. Why the king of France begins hostilities on the Rhine, 308. On his conditions being rejected by the emperor, the troops in the former make conquests in the Palatinate, *ib.* Some states of the empire and king William resolve to make war on him, with an alliance for that purpose, to which other foreign princes accede, 308. Distresses in France, and their monarch's propositions of peace rejected, 316. Obliges Lorraine to receive their troops into Nancy, &c. 325. A detachment sent to make an irruption into it, returns only with plunder, 356. Declares war against Philip II. 443. War why denounced by it against Spain, 534. Some altercations between it and Denmark, occasions a treaty with Sweden, xii. 203. Truce between it and Spain alone, xiii. 449. Intrigues of that court at Munster fruitless, 551. Disputes with the Dutch, and the latter's ships and effects detained in the ports of the former, 579. Its king with his allies declares war by an ordinance, without descending to particulars, 613. His pretences contradictory to his connexions, *ib.* (A). Imminent danger to the Dutch from their king, 614. Admirable policy in promoting the colony of Canada, xiv. 607. Reflexions on its government in North-America, 651. Causes of its not supporting Canada, what, 668. War declared between it and England, 676. Negotiations at London between it and England, with the former's insincerity, 703. Its history continued, xv. 605. Duplicity of its court on George I. his accession to Great-Britain, *ib.* Declaration to maintain amity between the two crowns, *ib.* Religious disputes between the Jesuits and Jansenists, 607. Progress of these, 612. Extraordinary ordinances there against British subjects, with an explanation obtained by their minister, 613. Interior affairs, 619. Disputes between the king and parliament, *ib.*

France, New, (see Canada) representations of an assembly there, xiv. 618. Approved in Old France, and measures taken accordingly, *ib.* Miserable state, 621. Number of its colony, and ignorance of its government, 629. Prosperous state, 647. Weakness of its government, and Frontenac's address, 652. Two great distresses, and how remedied, 683. State at the time of the treaty of Utrecht, 693. Prosperity, and entire loss of a French ship of war near Louisbourg, 696.

Franchecomte described, viii. 234 (H). Different claims on, *ib.* not. Taken by the French, 328.

Franchere river in Madagascar, vi. 88.

Francis Phœbus, count of Foix, succeeds his grandmother Leonora of the kingdom of Navarre, viii. 609. Character, and the disposition of the states tried, with his public entry into Pampeluna, and coronation, *ib.* Beloved at his accession, and brings his kingdom into surprising order, *ib.* Sudden death, and count de Lerin supported by a body of troops, 610.

— goes into Spain to treat with the emperor, where he falls ill, and their interview at Madrid, viii. 234. Resolution not to part with Burgundy, *ib.* Account of the country, and the Franchecomte, *ib.* (H). Different claims

of France and the emperor upon these opened, not. sub fin. Offers the restitution of Burgundy, and the conditions, 235. Concludes the famous treaty of Madrid, *ib.* His solemn oath to execute the treaty, but with reservation, though he espouses Leonora of Portugal, *ib.* When at liberty declares he will act as he thinks reasonable, *ib.* Signs the holy league, the allies of which threaten the emperor, and his answer, 236. Takes Luxemburg, xi. 154.

Francis I. or the Patron of Learning, succeeds Lewis XII. king of France, ix. 203, x. 66. First acts of his government, ix. 203. Designs to recover the Milanese, with the measures for it, 204. Passes the Alps with a powerful army, 205. Renews alliance with Venice, x. 66. His accommodation with the Swifs, but defeats them after an obstinate battle, at Marignano, *ib.* Takes Milan, 74. Triumphant entry into Milan, and treaty with the pope at Bologna, with his return home, *ib.* Introduces the Concordat by force into France, with an account of it, and the parliament's proceedings, ix. 206 (B). Intrigues against Charles V. xiii. 533. Birth of a dauphin, *ib.* The king's management with the pope, 207. Through Wolsey he recovers Tournay by purchase, *ib.* Accommodation with England, *ib.* Splendid interview between that king and Henry of England, in the cloth-of-gold-camp, 208. Alliance with the pope in favour of his second son Henry, *ib.* Conquers Navarre, but soon loses it, *ib.* Colour for the war between Charles and Francis, 209. This long continued, with no advantage on the side of the Low Countries, and the loss of Milan, *ib.* Pope Leo's death not improved by the French, *ib.* Francis attacked on all sides, he sends an army into Italy, 211. New expedition into Italy, and recovers most of the Milanese, 213. Besieges Pavia, which throws matters into disorder, *ib.* & xiii. 503. A diversion concerted for the relief of Pavia, ix. 213. Loss of the battle of Pavia, in which Francis is defeated and taken prisoner, 214, & viii. 233. Short account of it to the regent, ix. 214. Great distress in France, and singular part acted by Henry of England through Wolsey, 215. The king's and emperor's propositions rejected mutually, 216. Wearied of confinement, Francis consents to go to Spain, and falls ill there of grief, *ib.* Visited by his sister Alençon, and the intrigues carried on, *ib.* Treaty of Madrid signed, and its articles, *ib.* Protest before he signed it, *ib.* Exchanged on the frontiers against his two eldest sons, *ib.* He meets the regent and court at Bayonne, and signs the bonds stipulated with Henry VIII. 217. Refuses entering into new engagements with Spain, and enters secretly into the holy league against the emperor, *ib.* Remonstrances of the states of Burgundy to the king, and the viceroy of Naples's expostulation, with his answer; and the holy league proclaimed with the contracting parties, and bad effects of Francis's slowness in sending succours to Italy, *ib.* Opinion of an assembly of notables on two questions proposed by Francis, 218. Heralds sent by him and Henry, with their different treatment, *ib.* Sends a coarse challenge to the emperor, with the issue, *ib.* His double dealing with his allies, 219. The release of his children and consort, 220. His public entry into Bourdeaux, and his taste for the sciences promoted, *ib.* Lascaris lays the foundation of the royal library, and chairs erected for Hebrew and Greek professors, with the title hence given the king, *ib.* Death of some illustrious personages, *ib.* Appoints the grands jours, with the death of his mother, and different characters of her, 219. His desire of uniting Bretagne to the crown, 221. And success, through the prudence of their president, *ib.* The parliament of Paris protests against the union, *ib.* Has an interview with Henry at Calais, and only amuses Charles with a declaration of sending a body of troops against the Turks, as the emperor does, with the causes of disquiet to the king, 222. Resolves to establish a national infantry called legions, and their use, *ib.* Marries his second son Henry duke of Orleans to Catherine de Medicis, and engages the pope to satisfy his ally Henry, and what other share the king had in this, *ib.* The king's minister put to death by the duke of Milan, and a war thereon, 223. Enters into a war with Savoy, *ib.* Extraordinary step and wild saying with regard to Lutheranism, *ib.* Reduces best part of Savoy; duke of Milan's death, and the insincere negotiations on the side of Charles and Francis, *ib.* Still more irritated against Savoy, amused by Charles in a romantic speech, *ib.* Dauphin's death, with different accounts of it, 224 (F). Causes Charles to be summoned before the parliament of Paris, 225. Army's proceedings in Artois, and a truce concluded, with two interviews between the emperor and Francis,



- Francis, who also make a truce, *ib.* Singular engagement between Charles and him, *ib.* On the revolt of Ghent, Charles passes through France into the Low-Countries, and the part Francis acts, *ib.* Constable, admiral, and chancellor, all in disgrace, with what passed between the king and the admiral, who is replaced, 227. Marshal d'Annebant executes the office of constable, *ib.* Makes a treaty with Christian III. of Denmark, with the murder of his ministers to Venice and the Porte, *ib.* The French army ravages Luxemburgh and Brabant, 228. Francis duped by the emperor Charles in the treaty of Crepi, 230. Equips a large fleet, with an army on board, for invading England, *ib.* The admiral's ship burned, and the Isle of Wight, &c. ravaged, *ib.* Besieges Boulogne in vain, *ib.* A peace concluded with Henry of England, *ib.* Revives religious persecutions, 231. Death how occasioned, 232. Character, issue, and unintelligible device, *ib.*
- Francis II. succeeds his father Henry II. king of France, ix. 249. Intrigues caused the subsequent troubles, *ib.* Settles the administration in the Guises, 250. Henry of Navarre detached from the malecontents, with popular edicts published by the court, and the views, 251. When once established, they shew quite another spirit, *ib.* Assembly des notables called together, at which the king presides, with a petition in favour of the Protestants, now called Huguenots, seconded by some bishops, 253. An assembly of the states appointed, and with what view, *ib.* Renews the treaty with Venice, x. 307. Over-runs Piedmont with an army, 335. His death, and the total neglect of his corps, ix. 255
- Succeeds Cosmo great duke of Tuscany, with an account of his marriages and issue, dies, xiii. 539
- duke of Lorraine, succeeds Gaston great duke of Florence, don Carlos becoming king of the Two Sicilies, xiii. 544. The queen of Spain's proposal for her son, the duke of Parma, rejected by Great Britain, and the good regulations made in Tuscany by its present possessor, also emperor of Germany, *ib.*
- I. succeeds his father Ranuccio second duke of Parma, with great advantages, xiii. 643. Difficulty as to the dispute between the emperor and pope about Parma, and ten articles settled with the Imperial general, the ninth of which remarkable, *ib.* These articles condemned by the pope, and an extract of part of the papal decree, 644. Answer of the Imperial court to this thundering declaration, *ib.* 646. An accommodation without a decision takes place, *ib.*
- of Savoy becomes bishop of Geneva, with an expensive entertainment given by him, xiv. 9
- Hyacinth, a minor, succeeds his father Victor Amadeus duke of Savoy, with the advantages taken by the Spaniards, and a dispute about the regency, xiii. 132. Dies, *ib.*
- of Este's cruelty, who makes himself master of Ferrara, which is retaken by the pope, xiv. 106
- I. succeeds his father Alphonso III. duke of Modena, who had resigned, xiv. 108. Character and confusion in the denomination of the dukes, with his quitting the French interest, and his three marriages and issue, with some account of his brother cardinal Rinaldo, *ib.*
- II. succeeds his father Alphonso IV. duke of Modena when two years old, under his mother's tutelage, xiv. 109
- Mary de Este, succeeds his father Rinaldo duke of Modena, with his marriage, and losing his dominions, xiv. 109. Issue and restoration to his dominions by the peace of Aix-la-Chapelle, and reception incognito in England, with his being made governor of the Milanese, and a considerable prince, 110
- I. succeeds his father Lewis in Mantua, with his character and death, xiv. 113
- II. succeeds his father Frederick I. marquis of Mantua, his illustrious character, and particular manner of his accession, xiv. 114. His valour against the French in the battle of Taro, and on other occasions, *ib.* Enters into the French service, but quits it, and how that occasions the loss of Naples, with other great actions he performed, his affability, wearing a large beard, death and issue, *ib.*
- III. succeeds his father Frederick duke of Mantua, under the tutelage of his uncle Hercules; his marriage, without any issue, and death, xiv. 115
- IV. succeeds his father Vincent I. duke of Mantua, his death, and issue only a daughter, xiv. 116. The quarrel about the succession, *ib.*
- Otho, duke of Lunenburg, dies, xv. 481
- Francis, St. account of his order, ix. 620 (B & C). Canonized, 626
- of Assise, becomes absolute in Bologna, xiii. 569
- See Franciscans
- St. fort, where, xv. 57. Demolished, 58
- St. river, where, xv. 60
- Franciscans, controversy between them and the Dominicans about priority, ix. 632. Two burned as heretics at Avignon, 680. Some account of their order, and their influence at Bologna, xiii. 591
- Francisco, don, king of Congo, his short reign, vi. 477
- of Angola, defeats and slays the apostate Monazingha, and crowned king by the Portuguese, vi. 534
- François, Cape St. described, xv. 359. Its flourishing state, *ibid.*
- Frangipani maltreats and imprisons P. Gelafus, with some of the cardinals, ix. 583
- Frankfort, a horrid massacre of Jews there, and burnt, v. 568. Perpetual edict, ix. 673. Diet there supports the rights of the empire, 674. Deputies from Basil and from the pope to the diet there, x. 17. A council held there, 644. In a diet there a schism arises about the choice of an emperor, 31 (A). The competition stands between Frederick of Austria and Lewis of Bavaria, when each is elected by his own party and crowned, 32. This dispute maintained by mutual ravages for several years, *ib.* Proceedings of a diet there, xi. 260. Diet there for electing an emperor, with the representations of the French ambassadors, who endeavour to traverse Leopold's election, 277. The several competitors, *ib.*
- on the Oder, stormed by Gustavus, xii. 325, who almost compels the electors of Saxony and Brandenburg into an alliance, *ib.* Reduces all Pomerania, by taking Gripswald, and reinstates the dukes of Mecklenburgh, 326
- Franks, their conquests in the Holy Land, i. 682. Take and plunder Jerusalem, 683. Succeeds in Palestine, 686. Succeeds in Syria, 690. Defeated by sultan Mohammed, but reduce Sidon and other sea-ports, *ib.* Plunder an Egyptian caravan, 692. Make peace with the Fatemite caliph, *ib.* Their attempts on Aleppo frustrated, 697. Take Tyre after a long siege, 698. Defeated by Tagan-takin, *ib.* Repulsed in Syria, 701. By Atabek Zenki, 707. By Nuro'ddin, 710. Alliance with the Egyptian vizir, vi. 55. Cruel ravages in the city of Meir; burn it, and lay close siege to Cairo, 57. But obliged to raise it, *ib.* Defeated slightly by Saladin, 59. Signal defeat at Alexandria, 62. In Palestine, *ib.* Fleet on the Red Sea destroyed, 63. Their immense plunder of the Egyptian caravan, 64. New invasion of Egypt, 67. Repulsed before Damietta, *ib.* Lay fresh siege to it, 69. Their history from Clovis, viii. 617. First line of kings in Gaul, called Merovingian, *ib.* Enter Italy, but Narfes subdues them and the Ostrogoths, 627
- Fredegonde's intrigues; viii. 641. She prevails on Gontran to become sponsor to her son Clotaire, *ib.* Defeats Brunehaut's forces in Austrasia, with her death, and instances of her wickedness, 642 (I). Her three sons die, viii. 627
- Frederick, brother to the marquis of Tuscany, chosen pope Stephen IX. on Victor II's death, ix. 560
- I. or Barbarossa, succeeds his uncle Conrad III. in the empire, ix. 593. x. 669. Reason of his appellations, and receives homage from the king of Denmark in person, and sends ambassadors to Rome, *ib.* Contest with Henry the Lion of Saxony adjusted by him, *ib.* Resolves to march into Italy to chastise Roger of Sicily, and quarrels with the pope, 670. Enters Italy with an army, ix. 594. The seditious Romans kill a cardinal, *ib.* Condescends to hold the pope's stirrup, and is crowned; after which he repulses the Romans, with great loss on their side, and hardly any on his, 595. Returns to Germany, *ib.* Difference between him and the pope on account of an expression in the pontiff's letter, *ib.* The pope advised by the bishops of Germany to a reconciliation, and the first offence given by a picture, *ib.* (M). Enters Italy with a formidable army, *ib.* After reducing Milan, and other places submitting, he determines the regalia or Imperial prerogatives, which are sworn to, 596. New disputes between him and the pope, *ib.* Deputies of the king of England, &c. swear never to acknowledge pope Alexander III. and though that king refused his approbation, the emperor orders all his subjects to take the same oath, &c. *ib.* Enters Italy with an army, *ib.* Is crowned with his empress at Rome, *ib.* Retires with great loss thro'



thro' a sudden mortality, to Pavia, *ib.* Escapes with his shattered army into Burgundy, 600. Sends an embassy for peace to pope Alexander, and his answer, 601. Enters Italy, and on his defeat and retreat to Pavia, he proposes a peace, but without effect, and is intirely defeated, 603. Proposals of peace accepted by the pope, who goes to Venice, where the peace is concluded, *ib.* Returns to Germany, with his transactions there, 606. Writes a haughty letter to Saladin, with his reply, *ib.* The kings of France and England follow the emperor's example in taking the cross, with the murmurings against the tax called Saladin's tythe, *ib.* Marches to the Holy Land, and is followed by the kings of England and France, 607. Lands in Thrace, and defeats the Turks near Philomelion, *ib.* 222. Returns to Germany, *ib.* 607. Marches into Italy, and subdues Apulia, Calabria, and Sicily, 608. Conspiracy against him, *ib.* Strong confederacy by the Italians against him, *ib.* 676, who divests Ladislaus of the administration of Bohemia, and bestows the regency on Sobieslaus, 677. He makes an expedition into Italy, with his success, till Henry the Lion deserts him, and the reason, *ib.* Congress for an accommodation ineffectual, and the siege of Pavia raised, *ib.* The archbishop of Mentz's successful operations, *ib.* The confederates totally defeat Barbarossa at Sigiano, who narrowly escapes with his life; his subjects abandon him, and his son Henry beaten at sea and taken prisoner by the Venetians, *ib.* In his turn defeats his enemies, and concludes an accommodation with the pope, with the particular account of it, 678 (D). Interview between the emperor and pope at Venice, with the behaviour on each side, *ib.* (E). The rebellious towns in Italy also submit, and the terms granted them, *ib.* His successes, and those of the confederate princes, against Henry the Lion, *ib.* Jealousy of the emperor at Otho Wittelsbach's prudent administration in Bavaria, also the treaty of Placentia with the Lombard cities, and some of the articles, 660. The inhabitants of Alexandria pardoned, with the conditions; and in a diet at Mentz the emperor's son Henry again declared king of the Romans, and the emperor repairs to Italy, *ib.* Visits his holiness at Verona; but the pope refusing his desires, his son Henry crowned at Milan, and the emperor returns to Germany, 681. Asserts the right of the empire to the succession of St. Peter's patrimony, with Lucius's death, pope Urban III. succeeding, *ib.* The emperor's son Henry married to Constance, heiress of William king of Sicily, with the pope's resentment against the bishops who assisted at the nuptials, *ib.* Forgives Cremona, and extends the jurisdiction of Milan, *ib.* Leaves the government of Lombardy to his son Henry, and returns to Germany, where he seizes the revenues of Mentz, *ib.* Fomenta a war between the duke of Pomerania and Canute king of Denmark, *ib.* His vain endeavours to entrap Canute, with the occasion and consequences, 682. Sobieslaus duke of Bohemia deprived of his dominions by him, who gives the investiture to Frederick, son of Uladislaus, *ib.* Obliges the Bohemians to reinstate Frederick son of Uladislaus king of Bohemia, in his dominions, *ib.* Difference between the emperor and pope; the former engaging the ecclesiastical princes in Germany to his interest against the latter, with their sharp remonstrance, *ib.* The pope dying, Gregory VIII. succeeds; but not surviving long, he leaves Philip archbishop of Cologne his legate, who creates disturbances in the empire, 683. The emperor makes war against Humbert, count of Savoy, *ib.* But its progress stopt by Humbert's death, to whose son Thomas the investiture of his dominions is granted, *ib.* On the news of Jerusalem being taken by Saladin, the emperor takes the cross, whose example many others follow, 683. Vast number of adventurers, with the methods taken by the emperor for raising money, and his proposal to Henry the Lion accepted during his absence, 684. Settles the government and succession of his dominions, sets out for Palestine, *ib.* Defeats the perfidious Greeks and the Turks, but is drowned, and buried at Tyre, *ib.* His son Frederick succeeds in the command, who dies of an infectious distemper, which proves fatal to his army, *ib.* The emperor's character and issue, *ib.*

Frederick II. conciliates the affections of the Germans by every method possible, *ib.* 698. Succeeds every where, and he concludes a treaty with Waldemar king of Denmark, and its stipulations, *ib.* Succeeds Otho as emperor, with his character, and proposes his grandfather as his pattern, 696. Crowned at Aix-la Chapelle, *ib.* Divers salutary laws by that emperor, 699. The cities of

Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

Milan and Placentia hold out against him till Otho's death, *ib.* He convokes a diet at Gollar, and receives the imperial ornaments from Henry, to whom his brother Otho had delivered them, *ib.* Takes Thibaut of Lorraine prisoner, with his regulations in a diet at Frankfort, 700. Arrives in Italy, and is crowned at Rome by the pope, *ib.* Takes an oath on that occasion to defend the rights of the Roman see, and sends an army into Asia, *ib.* (X). Proceedings after his coronation in the kingdom of Naples, *ib.* His son Henry crowned king of the Romans at Aix-la Chapelle, *ib.* The pope's remonstrance to him, and his answer, 702. They are reconciled, and have conferences together, *ib.* The emperor engages to marry the king of Jerusalem's daughter, who arrives at Rome, *ib.* He prepares for his expedition, *ib.* Confederacy of the Lombard towns against the emperor retards it, and he convenes an assembly at Cremona, 703. Account of the associated towns, who block up the passes against the king of the Romans, *ib.* (Z). He quarrels again with the pope, and their mutual reproaches, *ib.* Holds an assembly at Cremona, and a peace concluded with the Lombard towns, *ib.* (A). Sets sail for the East from Brundisi, but puts back, 705. Upon which the pope declares that he incurred excommunication, and the towns of Lombardy revolt, *ib.* The emperor resolved to be revenged on the see of Rome, is actually excommunicated, *ib.* The pope obliged to quit Rome, with the animosity between the Guelphs and Gibelins revived, *ib.* The emperor embarks and sails for Cyprus, then to Ptolemais, *ib.* His lieutenant in Italy excommunicated, with Frederick's cold reception in his kingdom of Jerusalem, and why, *ib.* Concludes a truce with the Saracens, *ib.* (B). Differences between him and Otho of Lunenburg terminated, 707. Marries Isabella of England, *ib.* Returns to Italy, and the principal cities still hold out, *ib.* Confines his son Henry in a castle, where he dies, *ib.* Obtains a victory over the Lombardic league, 708. Why again excommunicated by the pope, with part of the bull and his answers, *ib.* (C). The latter read before the army and sent into Germany, with its effects there, *ib.* Entirely routed in the Milanese, retreats to Placentia, and then into Tuscany, 709. Takes vengeance on the Guelphs, *ib.* Sends deputies to Lyons, who clear him from the pope's accusations, yet excommunicated, with his declaration and rage on receiving the news, *ib.* (D). Sets out for Lyons; but on the surprise of Parma, he returns and invests it for several months in vain, 710. Attempt by poison on his life how prevented, with the fate of the traitors, *ib.* The emperor defeated by a vigorous sally of the Parmesians, 711. Retires to Naples, and after a partition of his dominions among his children, dies; with some account of his eldest daughter, *ib.* (E). His character, *ib.* (G). An interregnum in Germany, 712. Frederick of Sicily chosen emperor, *ib.* 618. Arrives at Rome, and goes for Germany, with only sixty horse, *ib.* Concessions to the see of Rome before his coronation at Aix-la-Chapelle, and he takes the cross; with great efforts of the pope in favour of this emperor, 619. Methods used by him for soothing the clergy, 624. Marries Jolanta, daughter to the king of Jerusalem, 625 (F). A peace between him and the cities of Lombardy, with the terms, *ib.* Excommunicated twice, 626. Goes to the Holy Land, and the pope enraged that he went without absolution, *ib.* Concludes a truce with the Saracens, of which the pope makes a handle against him, 627. A peace between him and the pope, *ib.* Desires the pope's mediation with the cities of Lombardy, and enters Italy with a formidable army, 630. Defeats the confederates in Lombardy with great slaughter, *ib.* Carries on the war in Italy with great fury, 631. After ravaging round Rome, he marches towards Naples, with his cruelty to the Croisades, and accuses the pope of ruining the Christian affairs in Syria, *ib.* Seizes the prelates on their voyage to Rome, 632. Compels the cardinals to proceed to an election, when Innocent IV. is chosen, *ib.* Emperor rejects the preliminaries to an accommodation, *ib.* Plot against him discovered, and his hiring assassins to murder the pope, with the calamities in Italy from the war, 634. Signal victory ruins the emperor's affairs in Lombardy, and his competitor crowned by the pope's legate, 635.

—— of Naples addresses humbly the king of Spain, and Gonzales makes no small progress towards the partition of that kingdom, *ib.* 216

—— Roger, the infant son of Constantia, receives the investiture of Sicily from pope Celestine, *ib.* 422. She orders



ders Marcoaldus and all the Germans to quit her dominions, *ib.* Obtains from pope Innocent III. the investiture of Sicily for her son; but dying soon after, imprudently leaves the guardianship of him and the kingdom to the pope, with the consequence, 423. Creates the pope's brother, for his services, count of Sora, 426. Assumes the administration, and marries Constantia, sister to the king of Arragon, with the disturbances in Puglia, 427. Elected emperor by many of the German princes, *ix.* 617. *x.* 427. Otho is entirely abandoned, and Frederick crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, with the conditions, 428. Crowned a second time, when he gives Fondi in perpetuity to the Roman see; and why pope Honorius III. desires him to resign Sicily, with the consequences, *ib.* Frederick, leaving Germany, is crowned emperor at Rome, *ib.* Holds a general parliament at Capua, with the proceedings there and elsewhere, *ib.* He banishes several prelates and barons in Puglia and Calabria, *ib.* Calls a parliament at Messina, with their proceedings, and the differences between him and the pope, 429. Though he gives some satisfaction to the latter, yet the differences increase, *ib.* His endeavours for appealing the pope; and whilst employed in opposing the Infidels in Sicily, his queen Constantia dies, *ib.* A marriage concluded between the king and Jolanta, daughter to John de Brenna king of Jerusalem, *ib.* (Z). Preparations for the conquest of his new kingdom, and, among other proceedings, embellishes Naples as his residence, 430. Erects an university, with the privileges; also an high court, *ib.* (A). Marries Jolanta, *ib.* Holds a diet at Cremona; but the cities of Lombardy associate against him, and he puts them to the ban, *ib.* He and the pope reconciled in a conference at Reate, and an accommodation made with the Lombards, 431. Still puts off his expedition to the Holy Land, and is excommunicated, *ib.* Death of Jolanta, after being delivered of Conrad, *ib.* Proceeds to the Holy Land, and pope Gregory highly exasperated, *ib.* The pope's army invades Puglia with success, *ib.* Concluding a peace with the sultan, returns to Italy, and soon recovers his dominions, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with the pope, and its articles, 432 (B). Among other proceedings publishes a volume of laws for his hereditary dominions, and a strict inquisition against the Patarni heretics, *ib.* The pope's endeavours to reconcile the Guelph or associated cities of Lombardy to the emperor ineffectual, *ib.* He punishes the chiefs of a revolt in Messina, with his other proceedings, *ib.* Re-establishes the university of Naples, and assists in person pope Gregory against the Romans, who had expelled him; but the rebels are obliged to submit, 433. Reduces his rebellious son Henry in Germany, who marries Isabel of England, and his younger son Conrad, elected king of Germany, is crowned at Cologne, *ib.* Returns with an army to Lombardy, and gains a complete victory over the allies, after which most of their cities submit; but is excommunicated, *ib.* Invades Ancona, and ravages the Roman territory, *ib.* The pope calls a council at Rome, with the successful part Frederick acts against the church, *ib.* Death of popes Gregory and Celestine IV. with those of the emperors and his son Henry, 434. Innocent IV. chosen pope at last, with whom he refuses a peace; and the pope holds a council at Lyons, with an account of his two deputies, *ib.* Frederick excommunicated here and deposed; yet still acknowledged by the Christian princes, only a small party in Germany chuse the landgrave of Thuringia, who is killed the year after, *ib.* The pope encourages a conspiracy against Frederick's life; and the conspirators submitting, are with their relations put to cruel deaths, *ib.* Parma is surprized by the Guelphs, and his fortified camp Victoria taken by the besieged, 435. After this defeat his affairs decline in Germany and Italy, *ib.* Amidst his preparations he dies, and his penitence, *ib.*

Frederick, on his brother's renunciation, crowned king of Sicily, *x.* 451. Invades Calabria, and takes several places, *ib.* The siege of Messina by the duke of Calabria raised by him; and a conference between them, in which a short truce is concluded, 453. Success, *ib.* Splendid embassy to the emperor Henry VII. at Genoa, and another at Pisa, 455. Why excommunicated by the pope; and he causes his eldest son Peter to be crowned, 456. Dying, is succeeded by Peter his son, 459

— of Sicily marries the king of Arragon's daughter, *x.* 466. Peace with him renewed, and his marriage with Antonia del Balzo, after which they are crowned at Pa-

lermo, 467. His death, with his only daughter Mary succeeding, and the confusions in that island, 468

Frederick succeeds his nephew Ferdinand king of Naples, with his character, *x.* 494, *xiii.* 447. Receives the investiture from the pope, and crowned at Capua, *ib.* Lewis of France publishes his claim to Naples, and enters into an alliance with the pope, *ib.* Over-runs the Milanese, which Sforza recovers; but is betrayed again to the French, and rejects Frederick's offer of becoming tributary, 495. Retiring to France, resigns the kingdom to Lewis, and the consequences, 496. Death at Tours, and account of his issue, 497 (Z)

— of Austria, after a combat of fifteen on each side and all cut off, is defeated in a general action at Muldorf, *xi.* 33. Reinforced by Leopold and Ulric de Ferrera, *ib.* (B). He obliges the Bavarians under Lewis to retreat precipitately, and ravages Bavaria, 34. On the pope's promises, supports the Guelphs, but abandons them on Vitconti's remonstrances, *ib.* Battle between him and Lewis at Vestrivic, *ib.* (C) & (D). He, his brother Henry, and the duke of Lorraine, taken prisoners, *ib.* *ix.* 665. Absolved by the pope from his oath; but Leopold dying, all his hopes expire, *xi.* 38. Resigns in favour of Lewis, *ix.* 667

— of Thuringia nominated emperor by a party, who resigns, for a consideration, in favour of Charles of Luxemburg, *xi.* 48

— of Austria why put to the ban, and his brother Ernest usurps his dominions, but an accommodation is made, *xi.* 78. Among other investitures by the emperor at Constance, Frederick of Nuremburg created elector of Brandenburg, *ib.*

— margrave of Misnia, why he departs from Constance in great wrath, but the emperor appeases him, *xi.* 78

— the Warrior, elector of Saxony, *xv.* 465

— the Pacific, *xv.* 465

— III. the Wise, first protector of Luther, *xv.* 465

— Augustus signalizes himself on the Rhine, and against the Turks, *xv.* 467. Renounces Lutheranism for the crown of Poland and that crown also which he recovers, *ib.*

— II. professes the Catholic religion secretly, but publicly declares it, *ib.* Becomes president of his father's privy-council, *ib.*

— king of Bohemia goes into banishment, but recovers his dignity, *xv.* 454. Routs his rival, *ib.*

— count of Tyrol chosen administrator of Austria, *xi.* 91

— III. duke of Austria succeeds Albert II. in the empire, *x.* 16. *xi.* 91, with an account of him, *ib.* (H). Endeavours to extinguish the schism, with other regulations made in a diet at Frankfort, 91 (I), where it is agreed to adhere to the neutrality, which is referred to the pope and council, *ib.* The emperor has an interview at Basil with pope Felix, whom he refuses to acknowledge; and the emperor's saying on rejecting Felix's offer, 93. War with his brother Albert VI. ended by a peace, 94. Sends Æneas Sylvius to Bohemia, who gains the inhabitants and Podiebrad over to his interest, 97. Invited by the pope to Rome, whose departure for Italy is retarded by a revolt in Austria, *ib.* Invests the duke of Austria with authority to levy troops for suppressing it, and sets out for Italy with young Ladislaus, &c. 98. Makes a very magnificent entry into Venice, and a present made him of a curious glass cupboard, which his jester breaks to pieces, with the emperor's remark thereon, *ib.* (O). Repairs to Ferrara, Bologna, and Florence; when joining Eleanora of Lisbon at Sienna, he takes an oath to the pope before he enters St. Peter's patrimony, with the form of it, *ib.* (P). Intercepts an embassy against him to the pope from the malecontents of Austria, *ib.* Justifies himself, *ib.* Is endangered by a tumult in Viterbo, and how he escapes, 99. He arrives at Rome, and is crowned king of Lombardy, *ib.* Married to Eleanora, and with her he is crowned emperor, *ib.* *x.* 22. He and the pope ratify the Concordata, and afterwards with his empress he visits the king of Naples; returns to Rome, and declines Sforza's invitation to Milan, *xi.* 99 (Q). After creating Borso duke of Modena, and Galeazzo a knight, and being royally received at Venice, he quits Italy with a contemptible character, and why, *ib.* On his return to Austria he postpones complying with the Thuringians and Austrians; but they compel him to an accommodation, in which Ladislaus is put under count Cellay's tuition, 100. Which increases the latter's ambition, who is forced to retire to his own country, and Ladislaus crowned at Prague, *ib.* Frederick's backwardness, notwithstanding all remonstrances, *ib.* Two competitors dispute



- dispute with him the succession to Ladislaus's dominions in Austria, 101. After mutual ravages, an accommodation made, *ib.* Storm ready to burst on his head prevented by him, 102. Sends Albert, the German Achilles, against Lewis of Bavaria, who retakes Donawert, and for his good management is created judge of state-criminals through all Germany, *ib.* Enters Vienna, and changes the magistrates, with a tumult among the people, and an insurrection against the emperor, who is besieged in the castle, 103. Relieved by Podiebrad, by whose means a treaty is concluded, which neither side observes, *ib.* They again have recourse to arms, and all efforts of reconciliation prove ineffectual, till Albert dies suddenly, when Sigismund yields to the emperor Ladislaus's portion of Austria, 104. After a war with the Hungarians, he restores their crown, and concludes a treaty with Matthias, and the emperor's demand of supplies of troops from Germany against the Turks ineffectual, *ib.* Indolence in not interposing in a revolt of Liege against its bishop, 105. Alarmed with the continual irruptions of the Turks, resolves on a journey to Rome, where he arrives, 106. He holds several consultations with the pope, and their issue, *ib.* Sets out on his return, *ib.* Invited by Charles of Burgundy to an interview at Triers, 108. But retires abruptly, and the reasons for the duke's incurring the emperor's suspicion, *ib.* (U). Is defeated, and Lower Austria taken, 112. Indifference about his capital, visiting Maximilian in the Low Countries, and an accommodation with Matthias, 113. Quits the siege of Ghent, and erects Austria into an archduchy in favour of his grandson Philip, 114 (B). Enters into a negotiation with Matthias, which is frustrated on purpose till the king dies, and the emperor then demands the throne of Hungary, *ib.* Retires from government to Lintz, where he dies from an amputation of his leg, and his observation thereon, 115. Account of him, and of his pacific but inconstant character, &c. *ib.* His device, and the explanation, 116 (D). His epitaph and issue, *ib.* (E)
- Frederick I. the Victorious, elector-palatine, xv. 471
- II. the Wise, xv. 472. Establishes Lutheranism, *ib.* Obligated to ask the emperor's pardon for it, *ib.*
- III. encourages Lutheranism, then Calvinism, xv. 472
- IV. the Sincere, establishes Calvinism, xv. 472
- V. the Patient and Constant, elector-palatine, chosen king of Bohemia, xv. 472. Put to the ban, *ib.* Marriage with Elizabeth of England, and their issue, *ib.* Of these Elizabeth, a learned princess, and Sophia declared by parliament the first in succession to the crown of England, *ib.* Accepts of the crown of Bohemia, notwithstanding James of England's remonstrances, xi. 199. His arrival and coronation with the electress Elizabeth at Prague, *ib.* Is acknowledged by Venice and Bethleem Gabor of Transylvania, *ib.* Secures the friendship of several princes, 200. The princes exhorting him to resign the crown, they send deputies to the states of his party, with an account of these, *ib.* Favoured by the diet of Nuremberg, 201. Follows the Imperialists, and is attacked by the duke of Bavaria, by whom he is, after an obstinate resistance, utterly defeated at Weisenberg, 204. Reply to an officer who consoled his defeat, *ib.* (Y). Repairs to the king of Denmark, and his wife delivered of Maurice at Custrin, 205. Fruitless attempts towards a peace, *ib.* Reception in Holland, 206. Upon his disappointments from James of England, he applies to the kings of Sweden and Denmark, *ib.* with the latter's sending an embassy in his favour to Vienna, where the king of England likewise complains, and count Schwartzenburg sent to that prince, *ib.* On the principal authors of the revolt in Bohemia being put to death, Frederick acquires new allies, *ib.* Imprudently dismisses Christiern and Mansfeldt, in compliance with king James's advice, when Tilly completes the conquest of the Palatinate, 209. Joined by Mansfeldt and Brunswick at Bremen, 213. His death and character, 230
- I. duke of Sleswick, on Christian II's abdication, is proclaimed king of Denmark, after reducing Copenhagen, xii. 144, as also king of Norway; beholds Gustavus's election to the throne of Sweden with jealousy, his ambition flattered by archbishop Troll; he remonstrates by ambassadors to the Swedish diet, and their answer, 145. Accepts Norby's proposal of submitting, and negotiates with the regency of Lubeck, 146. He relieves Norby, besieged by the Swedes, and declines submitting Gothland to arbitration, *ib.* Openly declares himself a protestant, 147. Death and character, 148. Disputes about a successor, and the kingdom divided into three factions, *ib.* Some of the chief Danish nobility enter a protest against ajourning the diet, and retire; of this the bishops take advantage, and get a decree passed in their favour, *ib.*
- Frederick, the eldest son of Christian III. crowned king of Denmark and Norway, xii. 157. His war with the Ditmarsians, *ib.* Request to the Hanse Towns refused, 161. Arrests the Swedish ambassadors, with the real causes of a war between the crowns of Denmark and Sweden, 160. He forms an alliance with Lubeck; their confederate fleet worsted; and the Danish admiral taken, *ib.* (A). Grants Sweden a truce, 163. Consents to a negotiation for peace with Sweden, *ib.* Death and character, 164
- III. succeeds his father Christian IV. of Denmark, xii. 172. Chimerical scheme for dethroning him, 173 (A). Seizes a large fleet of English merchantmen at Copenhagen, 174. The object of his politics and disputes with Sweden about Ulfeld, *ib.* His son Christian acknowledged his successor by the states, *ib.* Declares war against Sweden, and his army enters Bremen, with its progress, 175. The Danes driven out by Wrangel, and a new treaty upon this between Denmark and Holland, 176. A sum of money lent him by the Dutch, *ib.* Challenge from him to Charles Gustavus for single combat, questioned by Puffendorf, 179 (A). His intrepidity and vigilance, 183. Resentment of the artful conduct of the Dutch, and their espousing his cause the more strongly, with negotiations for a peace, 184. Applies himself to domestic concerns, and forms a plan for making himself absolute, and the crown hereditary, 185. Disputes between him and the Dutch about the behaviour of their factors in Guinea, 186. His death, character, and issue, 187 (B)
- IV. succeeds his father Christian V. king of Denmark, and a short view of his conduct, xii. 204. Overruns Holstein, and concludes the famous peace of Travendahl, with the stipulations, *ib.* His attacking the Swedes in different places, who defeat his army, and burn Altena to the ground, *ib.* His successes by sea and land, with his concluding a peace under the mediation of Great Britain, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.*
- V. succeeds his father Christian VI. king of Denmark, xii. 205, whom he copies after, and his marriage with Louisa of Great Britain, and the great improvement of Denmark in this and the preceding reign, *ib.* A singular anecdote of this prince, *ib.*
- the Pious, duke of Lunenburg, taken prisoner by the archbishop of Munster, redeems himself, and retires to a monastery, xv. 482
- VI. count of Hohenzollern, invested with Brandenburg by the emperor Sigismund, and first elector, xi. 78. xv. 489. Makes a division of his estates, *ib.*
- Iron-Tooth and Magnanimous, his acquisitions, and he abdicates in favour of his brother, xv. 490
- William, grand elector of Brandenburg, his education under Henry of Orange, xv. 497. State of his country, which he retrieves by his wife's management, *ib.* Receives the investiture of Prussia from Poland, and of the electorate from the emperor, *ib.* Recovers his provinces, and Farther Pomerania, &c. by the treaty of Westphalia, 498. The possession of Juliers and Berg regulated, with liberty of conscience to the Protestants, *ib.* Refutes Charles Gustavus the ports of Pillau and Memel, on the former's declaring war against Poland, *ib.* Concludes alliances and a treaty with the Swedes at Konigsberg, *ib.* Also with Poland, by which the sovereignty of Prussia is acknowledged, 499. His progress against the Swedes in Denmark, *ib.* On Charles's death the treaty at Oliva concluded, *ib.* The states of Prussia at length submit to the elector, who turns his attention to the welfare of his people, *ib.* Sends assistance to the emperor against the Turks, and settles the succession of Cleves with Newburgh, &c. *ib.* He enters into a quadruple alliance, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with the United Provinces against the French, 500. Marches to their assistance, but opposed by Turenne, who possesses himself of Cleves and Marck, with his generosity to that general, *ib.* Concludes peace with France, whose troops are forced to evacuate Holland, *ib.* On Lewis XIV. invading the empire, the elector promises a large body of troops to the latter's assistance; but the allies are at first unsuccessful, *ib.* On a surprise from Turenne, passes the Rhine, and winters in Franconia, *ib.* The Swedes invading Pomerania, are defeated by the elector at Fehrbellin, with his narrow escape, 501. His success against them in Pomerania, and forces Stetin to surrender, *ib.* The Swedes invading Prussia from Livonia, are defeated by the elector, *ib.*



- ib. The French entering Cleves, oblige the elector to a peace with Sweden, and the terms, ib. His great character, and receiving an ambassador from the chain of the Tartars, ib. A Spanith man of war carried into Konigsberg; has Magdeburg incorporated for ever with the electorate; settles disputes in East Friesland, and a company at Embden, 502. Concludes several alliances, ib. French Protestants retire into Brandenburg; and for his assisting the emperor against the Turks, has Schwibus in Silesia, ib. Grants his protection to Hamburg against Denmark, and mediates between the latter and Holstein, but dies, having two days before taken leave of his council, and advised his son, ib. Character and issue, ib.
- Frederick elector of Brandenburg engages in the alliance against France, xv. 503. Views of aggrandizement from the emperor, and yielding him the circle of Schwibus, ib. Founds Hall university, and builds sluices on the Salle, ib. The czar Peter arrives at Berlin, and a general peace concluded at Ryswick, ib. Seizes on Elbing, the territory of which, after evacuating the city, he retains, ib. Engages with the emperor in the war against France, and acquires the title of king of Prussia, with the terms, ib. Acknowledged by the kings of England and Poland, and is crowned Frederick I. Institutes the order of the Black Eagle and a royal academy at Berlin, 504. Succeeds to part of the Orange estates, and why he declares war against France, ib. Concludes a defensive alliance with Charles XII. of Sweden, and his troops greatly instrumental in the victory of Blenheim, with the earl of Marlborough's artful flattery of him at Berlin, ib. Death and great character of his queen Sophia, with the bravery of his troops at the siege of Turin, ib. Acquires Tecklenburg, and the sovereignty of Neufchattel, 505. Assists Hamburg against a popular sedition, and makes Cologne acknowledge their error in attacking his resident's chapel, ib. Would not engage with Augustus in the war against the Swedes, ib.
- I. king of Prussia, his troops take Aire and Douay, and he also retains Gueldre, xv. 505. Goes to Cleves for terminating the succession of the prince of Orange, and the prince of Friesland is drowned, ib. Dies; his marriage, issue, and character, ib. Improvements in his reign, chiefly by means of his queen Sophia, 506
- William II. king of Prussia, changes intirely the form of the state, xv. 506, 507
- William, duke of Mecklenburgh, his compromise with the nobility, and country becoming the seat of war, xv. 540. Dies, and succeeded by his brother, ib.
- duke of Mecklenburgh, the unhappy situation of his country between the Swedes and Germans, xv. 545. Cruelty of the king of Prussia, and a pathetic representation from one of the princesses, since queen of England, 546
- I. succeeds his father Lewis III. marquis of Mantua, xiv. 114. With his great character, issue, and death, ib.
- II. succeeds his father Francis II. marquis of Mantua, xiv. 114. Solemn inauguration, character, and reception of the emperor Charles V. who creates him the first duke, ib. Marriage and issue, ib.
- Fredericksburgh, fort, on the Gold-coast, described, vi. 647. Prussian settlement there, but abandoned, ib. Taken by the Dutch, 648
- Fredericksburgh an interview there between the kings of Denmark and Sweden, with reflections on the king of Denmark's conduct, xii. 178
- Fredericksball, Charles XII. shot there, xii. 412 (A)
- Fredericks-Odde taken by Wrangel, xii. 176
- Fregoas, John Baptista, chosen duke of Genoa, and several forts surrendered by the French, x. 583. The families of Fiesco and Adorno oblige the duke to quit the city, and restore the French government, ib.
- Octavian, on Lewis's losing the battle of Novaro, expels the Adornos, and is chosen duke of Genoa, x. 584. The Adornos, in an attempt to seize Genoa, repulsed by him, ib.
- Fremona town and monastery where situated, vi. 172. The ancient residence of the Jesuits in Ethiopia, 173. Its situation, &c. 197 (I)
- French duped in Siam, iii. 404
- become odious in Siam, iii. 384. More so to Pitrachas, 385. Arrested by him, 387. Those of Louvo abandon it, 391
- their brave defence in Bankok, iii. 392. Suffer greatly there, 395. Deliver up the lady Faulcon, 396. Permitted to leave the kingdom, 397. Pursued in their retreat, 399. Abandon Pondicherry, 400
- French, their success in Madagascar, iv. 90. Commerce and settlement there, ib. Ingratitude to their king, ib. (D). Compulsive and artful methods used there, ib. (E)
- travels mostly light, and supplied by fancy, iv. 244 (O)
- East India company's rise and progress, iv. 573 (A). A new company raised, and united to the old, 574 (B). A new one projected by cardinal Richelieu, but comes to nothing, 576 (D). Revived afterward by Messrs. Colbert and Carpentier, with its different titles, 577 (E). Large funds raised by the court for its support, ib. New powers granted to it, 579 (F). Send a colony to Madagascar, ib. But remove it soon after to Surat, 581. Their success obstructed by Mr. Caron, ib. Removal of their colony from the Dauphin Island to Surat, 582. Forced to grant a limited permission to private traders, 583. Appoint a fresh number of directors, 584. But suffer great hardships from the government, 585 (M, N). Reduced to great straits, 586 (O). License Mr. Jourdain to trade into China, ib. His success gives rise to a new China company, ib. But without success, 587 (Q, R). Make an acquisition of Pondicherry, 588. But taken by a Dutch fleet and army, 589. Restored, and put into a state of defence, 590. Fort and town described, 591 (X). Great commerce in India, 593. The want of a port how supplied, 594. The probability of its officers of great advantage to their trade, 596 (B). The company made subservient to the duke of Orleans's schemes, 597. Reasons for suppressing the old company, 599. Grants and new capital given to the new, ib. Why stiled Perpetual, ib. (G), & 600. Divided into annuitants and traders, 601. Political design, ib. & notes. The ill effect of that project on the company's trade, 604. Its slow recovery under the ministry, 605. How that scheme came to be set aside by it, 607. Contentions between it and the proprietors, ib. Present state of their settlements in India, 609. In the Isle of France, ib. Description of that settlement, ib. Design to have one in the island of Madagascar, 615. Proves abortive, 616. An account of the Isle of Bourbon, ib. Its climate, produce, &c. ib. When the first colony was sent by the French from Madagascar, 617. Their settlement at Mocha, and trade in coffee, &c. 621. Correspondence with the Persian Gulph, ib. Factory at Surat, its various fate from its foundation, 623. Commerce with the coast of Malabar, 624. Pepper-trade, and sovereignty of Karical on the coast of Coromandel, ib. (G). Reception of the deposed king of Tanjour at Pondicherry, 625, who confirms that district to them, ib. Favours granted to them by the Great Mogul, ib. The occasion of it, 626 (I). Affairs of their settlement at Masulipatan, 629. Commerce with the Great Mogul, ib. And with China, 630. Settlement at Port l'Orient, 631. Claim the first discovery of the Guinea coast, vi. 635. Renew their voyages thither, and fall out with the Portuguese, 638
- abandon Messina, viii. 332. Obligated to repass the Alps, 333. Invade Navarre and Catalonia, which ends in a bad truce for the Spaniards, 336. Take two Spanith galleons, with a demand for losses in Mexico, 338. Their liberty whence shewn, ix. 100 (B). Their fleet beats the English, with the loss of both admirals, 201. Take Tortosa by storm, and shed much blood, 426. Make themselves masters of the Milanese, x. 51. Gain a complete victory at Ravenna, though with the loss of their general de Foix, and the places afterwards taken and delivered to their legate from the council of Pisa, with the consternation of the pope and cardinals at Rome, 65. Are almost expelled from Italy, and many places taken, ib. Nearly recover the Milanese, but lose it, being surprised and defeated by the Swiss, as were the Venetians by the emperor and Spain, 64. Defeated before Pavia, 74. Obligated to evacuate Italy, ib. Enter Lombardy, 96. Clergy's formal protest against the late pope's encroachments, 147. Bishops submission to the pope, 109. Takes Brescia, which the Spaniards recover, 302. Renounce all pretensions to Naples, 501. Vain attempt to raise an insurrection there in favour of prince Thomas of Savoy, 524. Obligated, after the victory before Turin, to evacuate Italy, 172. Ambassadors to the porte murdered near Pavia, 345. Massacred by the Sicilians, with the occasion, ix. 70, 648. Another account of this massacre, ib. (I), xiii. 286. Invade, through dissensions, the dominions of Geneva, but evacuate them, ix. 567. The dissensions still continue, and the sovereignty of the republic conferred on the king of France, with the stipulations; and, to prevent disturbances,



disturbances, a captain of justice, &c. appointed, *ib.* Despairing of recovering Genoa, sells several towns, 569. King sends John of Arjou to Genoa, *x.* 575. Weymar takes Bingen, and, after forcing Mansfeldt's lines, raises the siege of Deuxponts, *xi.* 241. They and the Swedes, in great want of provisions, decamp from Mentz, and are pursued by the Imperialists, whom they repulse, after an oblique engagement, in a dingle, 242. Hostilities recommence between them and the Bavarians, 268. Soon overrun three provinces of Holland, 287. Evacuate the three provinces of Holland, 289. A new alliance formed against them, *ib.* Take Besancon, &c. *ib.* Reject proposals of peace, 290. Decamping on Turenne's death, are attacked by Montecuculi, and retire with precipitation, 291. Take several places in the Low Countries, *ib.* King's preparations for war with the emperor, 308. Forced to evacuate Wintemberg, and prevented from entering Brabant, 314. Proposals of peace from them ineffectual, 317. Their ravages, upon being disappointed of Nimeguen by the earl of Aradone, 325. Taking of Triers and Traerbach by them, *ib.* Take Tongren, 327. Their intrenchments attacked by the Allies, who take Limburg and Huy, Gueldres surrendering to the Prussians, *ib.* Though in a wretched condition; oblige the cardinal infant to retire, with a moving picture of this army by Nuville, 535 (A). King continues the usual subsidy to the states-general for the war; but prince Henry's illness frustrates the attempting any thing, 543. Their strength and spirit in two engagements off the coast of Sicily with the Spaniards and Dutch, 625. Minister's menacing memorial puts a stop to all vigorous proceedings, 632. His terms accepted, a treaty concluded, and hostilities in Flanders cease, *ib.* Destroys several Dutch and English merchantmen, with three Dutch men of war taken, 642. Their cruizers successes, 648. Asti defended and Novara taken by them, *xiii.* 443. Rendezvous at Asti, and their rapid success, 455. Their shameful acting, and the Spanish king's, with a treaty concluded between them, and the terms, 465. Their progress in Italy, which produces a peace between the emperor and Venetians, 469. King's sudden turn in favour of the pope, and his irresolution, *ib.* Take Ravenna by storm, 474. The places they still keep in Italy, 476. Expelled in a manner from Italy, 497. Enter Lodi; but making no progress against Milan, they propose a truce, which is rejected, 500. Their ignominious retreat from Milan, and great misery, *ib.* Invade the Milanese; and how they take Milan, 501. Garrison Parma, and introduce a large body of troops into Italy, while the duke of Parma is excommunicated, 628. On his brother Horatio's death, resolves to submit his pretensions to the emperor, who also dies, *ib.* Their success, by beating count Merzi near Parma, with the surrender of Modena and Gaeta, 652. Obligated to rise from Mirandola, 653. Rising from the siege of Coni disgracefully, 663. Their secret policy in Italy, 664. King favours the Genevois, with his success against Savoy in the campaign, *xiv.* 37. Enter the Modenese, and annex it to Milan, 109. Driven out of Lombardy, 135. Successes in Savoy, 136. Surprise and take Canzo, 496. Four attempts on Annapolis frustrated, *ib.* 497. Court, its mistaken notions about Acadia, and mismanagement what, 626. Their proceedings with the Iroquois, 632. Fleet for Quebec, its escape from the English, and distress on their arrival there, 641. War between them and the English continues in Canada, with its operations, 643. Their advantages, *ib.* Unsuccessful attempt against the Agniers, 644. Government, their difficulties with regard to the savages what, 657. New differences with the English in Canada, and the occasion, 667. Embassy sent to Onnontague, and its purport, 670. Proceedings of their great assembly, *ib.* Their definitive resolution favourable to the French, *ib.* Prisoners among the French Iroquois, why they refuse to return home, *ib.* The savages break with them, and why, 678. Their policy in North America, 690. Defeat the English at Grand Pré in Acadia, 698. But are defeated at sea, with considerable loss, by Anson and Warren, *ib.* Endeavour to re-establish Canada, *ib.* Also aim to possess Nova Scotia, 699 (Q). Their measures for joining Canada and Louisiana, *ib.* Driven from their intended settlement on the Ohio by the natives, *ib.* The measures for accomplishing their unjust designs what, *ib.* Account of their forts, &c. built, *ib.* As also of their disputes with the English commissaries about limits, *ib.* Their encroachments become more barefaced, 700. Fleet sails for Canada, 704. The *Lys* and *Alcide* taken by the Dunkirk and Defiance, *ib.* Resume la Sale's projects on

the Mississippi, *xv.* 15. Ministry, their misconduct with regard to Louisiana what, 17. Outwitted by the Spaniards, *ib.* The little progress made by them in besieging the Natches fort, 40. The reason what, *ib.* Women prisoners with the Natches, their miserable condition, 42. Cruelties in the Chicacha war, 53. Successes in Hudson's Bay, 156. Take Fort Nelson, which they called Fort Bourbon, 157. Retaken by the English, 158. Why some of them murdered by the savages, *ib.* Defeated in the East Indies by Watson and Clive, 621. Driven out of Hanover shamefully, and repass the Rhine, *ib.* Successes in Germany, 625. Freedom of that nation, 627. Frenoxama, Frenajama, a famous university in Japan, described, *iv.* 17. Its vast advantages, *ib.* (V) Frefati, what, and the reason of that name, *ix.* 607 Freytag, the Imperial minister, raises disturbances at the court of Sweden, with the occasion, *xii.* 418. But ordered to make his Swedish majesty reparation, *ib.* Frezena, the antient king of Ethiopia, deposed, *vi.* 252 Friars, Penitents, on the pope's desire, are exempted from military labours, *xiii.* 592. Entertained at Bologna, 596. An insurrection against their preaching, with the punishment of the insurgents, 603. Injustice of the legate at Florence on this occasion, but without any consequences, *ibid.* Friburgh, how it falls under the dominion of Austria, *xi.* 57. The Imperialists take it, 261. Surrenders to the French, not without treachery, 292. Account of that city, and alliance with the Bernois, *xv.* 447 Fribergers' complaints of the duke of Savoy and bishop of Geneva refused, and the alliance completed, *xiv.* 14. Complain of Geneva, 24. Utterly renounce their alliance with Geneva, 25 Friday, why appointed holy by the Alcoran, *i.* 181. Not so strictly kept as the Jews and Christians do their sabbaths, *ib.* Fridlef of Denmark, joining Halden of Sweden, obtains a signal victory over the Norwegians, and storms a strong fortress where they shut themselves up, *xii.* 221. Halden's gratitude to Fridlef, and the occasion, *ib.* —, twenty-fourth king of Denmark, succeeds Dan III. *xi.* 671. Defeats Huirvil king of Halland, who is slain, and annexes his kingdom to his own; over-runs Ireland, and takes Dublin; but suffers a signal defeat in Britain, and dies at home very old; *ib.* — II. twenty-seventh king of Denmark, succeeds Hiarn, *xi.* 672. His war with Norway, also with Norwegian giants; death and character, *ib.* Friedburg, account of that city, *xv.* 440 (I) Friesland, its ancient history, *xi.* 397. Compelled to pay its contingent, 458 —, East, states-general buy several fortresses there from their ally Mansveldt, *xi.* 502 Frieslanders revolting against Maximilian, put themselves under the protection of the duke of Guelderland, *xi.* 119 Frignano, a Modenese province, submit to the Bolognese, *xiii.* 579. Sentence of arbitration about it in favour of the Modenese, 593 Fruli; its duke defeats several Pannonian generals, *ix.* 516 Froila, don, dethrones Alonso the Great, *vii.* 602 —, don, succeeds Alonso I. in Asturias, *vii.* 594. Obliged the clergy to cast off their wives, and defeats the Moors at Pontamo, *ib.* Founds the city of Oviedo, 595 (E). His fratricide, and is stabbed, *ib.* — II. succeeds don Garcias in Spain, with his short and uneasy reign, *vii.* 610 Fronde party entirely quashed, *ix.* 444 Frondeurs, parties in France, their rise, *ix.* 427. Gain the duke of Orleans, and treat with the princes, 431 Fronsberg, a new army of Imperialists under him in Lombardy, *xiii.* 515 Frontan chosen one of the four kings of the Suevi, *vii.* 541 (A) Frontenac, count, governor of New-France, his treachery against the English colonists what, *xiv.* 519. Invades Albany, and his ravages, 541. But forced to retreat with considerable loss, *ib.* Succeeds Courcelles, governor in Canada, and the fort of his name how fraudulently built, 611. Its situation, and that general's character, 612. Haughty behaviour, and the confusion caused thereby in Canada, 613. Difference between him, the intendant, and clergy, *ib.* Disregards the king's ordonnance, and severely reprimanded, *ib.* He and the intendant recalled, 616. His haughty behaviour to the Iroquois, 617. Negotiations to no purpose, *ib.* Again made governor of New-



- New-France, and his orders; also the plan with regard to the conquest of New-York, 630. Remarks on its barbarity, and how disappointed, *ib.* Measures for gaining the Iroquois cantons, *what*, 631. Sentiments about the coalition of the Outaouais and Iroquois, 633. How he ingratiates himself with the savages, 635. Transactions with them, 637. Some of his people surprized by them, *ib.* Measures for defending Quebec against the English, 638. Answer to Phipps's summons, *ib.* Information given him about the English, &c. and a body of Iroquois, with his representation thereon to the court of France, 641. Difference with the Jesuits, and the occasion, with mutual recriminations, 642. Letters to him from the governor of New-England, and his answer, 644. Representation to court, and answer, *ib.* His instructions to Callieres, 645. Defects charged on him, *what*, 647. Interview between him and Tareha, an Onneyouth, and the issue, 649. His reception of some savage chiefs at Montreal, and measures for regaining the Miamis to his interest, 650. Visited by an Onneyouth lady, with his reception of her and Tareha, *ib.* (G). His intrigues with the savages why ineffectual, 650. His address in Canada, 651. Negotiates with the Agnier deputies, *ib.* Measures for re-establishing Fort Cataracouy, *ib.* Interview with deputies from the Goyogouins and Tsonnonthouans, 652. His treatment of Tareha; but mollified by father Milet, on his arrival from captivity, *ib.* Wonderful address in New-France, *ib.* His answer to deputies from the northern savages, 655. Moving address of a Sieux deputy, and ceremony thereon, *ib.* Just vindication of his own conduct, 656. A remarkable passage therein, *ib.* Representation to court why neglected, *ib.* Preparations against the Iroquois, 657. March of his army, and their ravages, 658. Abandons his expedition against the Iroquois, *ib.* His motives *what*, 659. His mistake about the Iroquois, *ib.* Other expeditions against the savages, *ib.* Answer to a haughty message by two Agniers, 660. His orders to harass the Iroquois, and for the savages of the Highlands and St. Lewis not to stir from home, on offering their assistance, *ib.* Receives fresh orders from court, and *what*, *ib.* His conduct on receiving orders from France, 661. His menace to the head of the Onneyouths, who renew their incursions, *ib.* Embroiled with the Miamis, whom he softens; and the occasion of his fear *what*, *ib.* Memorial to the court, which consents to his proposals; and is joined by other savages, with their services, *ib.* Complaints made by these, and his dealings with them, *ib.* Countermands his threatened expedition against the Agniers, and the consequences, 666. False hopes from his savage allies; and his success and information to La Gemberaye at Fort Cataracouy, 667. Receives a fresh ordonnance from France, and its import *what*, *ib.* His remonstrance to no effect, and he eludes its execution, *ib.* Evasive answer to Bellamont's demands after the peace of Ryfswick, *ib.* His artifices and infidelity *what*, *ib.* His death and character, 668.
- Frontenac, Fort, taken by the English, *xiv.* 714. Taken by the English, *xv.* 623.
- Frontera, Segura de la, citadel, built by Cortez, *xiv.* 251.
- Frossolan saved from the viceroy of Naples by the arrival of the confederates, and their success on the coast of Naples, *x.* 325.
- Frotho I. ninth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Had-ding, *xi.* 667. His character, and conquests over Draco, a rich pirate; also over Britain, Scotland, &c. and takes London by stratagem, *ib.* His death and issue, *ib.*
- II. twenty-second king of Denmark, succeeds Hugleth, *xi.* 671. His noble character, and annexing Norway to his dominions, with his death, *ib.*
- III. a child, succeeds his father Fridlef, twenty-fifth king of Denmark, *xi.* 672. The restriction under which his guardians are placed, *ib.* How he first gains the name of Pacific, and soon after of Great; but taken off by poison, *ib.*
- IV. twenty-eighth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Fridlef, with his noble character, *xi.* 673. Valour, and treacherous death, *ib.*
- V. and Harold I. two brothers, succeed their father Olaus II. *xi.* 673. Their different departments, *ib.* (H)
- VI. the sixty-second king of Denmark, succeeds his father Canute the Little, *xi.* 689. His warlike and religious character, with his marriage to Emma of England, by whom he had Gormo, who succeeds, *ib.*
- succeeds Niord king of Sweden, *xii.* 218. His reign and character, *ib.*
- Frumarius chosen one of the four kings of the Suevi, *vii.* 541 (A). Dies, and is succeeded by Remimond, 543.
- Frumentius completes the conversion of the Abyssinians, and made first bishop of Axuma, *vi.* 222. Assumed to be the translator of the Holy Scriptures, 236 (C)
- Fu-chew, a chief city in Kyang-li, *iii.* 532. The metro-poli<sup>s</sup> of Fu-kyen, 533.
- Fu-ges, (Sigan) an island near the Philippines, *iv.* 202.
- Fuego (Togo) Terra del, island, why so called, and its extent, *xiv.* 475. Inhabitants described, *ib.* Brutal savages, *xv.* 363.
- Fuenfaldagna, count, his mortification upon the loss of Valenza, and why, *viii.* 313. His representations incline the courts of Madrid and Turin to a peace, 317.
- Fuentes, count de, succeeds the archduke Ernest in the government of the Low Countries, and the natives why dis-gust d, *xi.* 444. His conduct embarrasses the states, *ib.*
- Fuente Ventura, an island of the Canaries, described, *vi.* 145.
- Fuili, or Fouli, kingdom, in Inland Guinea, *vii.* 41. Ex-tent, complexion, and populousness, 42. Women describ-ed, *ib.* Commerce here, how carried on, 43. Govern-ment, *ib.* Laws, 44. History of the prince of Sambo-boz, with his amiable character, and duty to the king, *ib.* Thirty years voluntary banishment, *ib.* Protected by the king of Galam, 45. Raised to the Fouliau throne, *ib.* Just complaints against the French company, *ib.* Singular clemency towards them, 46 (A)
- Fuilians, their singular hospitality and bravery, *vii.* 46. Their dress, weapons, &c. *ib.*
- Fu-kyen, a northern prince, invades the emperor Vu ti, and is defeated by him, *iii.* 307. Strangled by his own gen-eral, *ib.*
- Fulad Sotun opposes his younger brother as emir of Baghdad, *i.* 651.
- Fulgentius taken prisoner by the Turks, *vi.* 277.
- Fulgosio, Dominic, chosen duke of Genoa, with his proceed-ings, *x.* 562. Upon an insurrection that duke is seized and banished, 563.
- , James, chosen duke of Genoa, *x.* 575.
- , Thomas, after several commotions, is chosen duke of Genoa, with his character, and other proceedings, *x.* 570. He frustrates the designs of several families against him, and sells Leghorn to the Florentines, *ib.* Unsuccess-ful attempts on Genoa, 571. Is repulsed from before Ge-noa, *ib.*
- , Peter, chosen duke of Genoa, and his severity, with an instance of a monk whom he caused to be hanged, and an inscription under his feet, *x.* 575. His designs on Ge-noa frustrated, and his death, 576.
- , Baptist, obliged by his uncle cardinal Paul to abdi-cate in his favour, *x.* 578. After which he composes nine books of memorable actions and sayings, *ib.*
- Fumigar Bachi, al, the emperor of Monomotapa, his death embroils the state with a bloody war, *vi.* 376.
- Funchal, the capital of the Madeira isles, *vi.* 147. A great defect in its fortifications, and inhabitants described, 148, who are given to all sorts of vice, *ib.* The bishop, con-vents, &c. 149.
- Funduli of Cremona, shocking murder of him, *xiv.* 91.
- Funen islands, *xi.* 651 (C)
- Fungeno kingdom described, *vi.* 573.
- Fungi, who, and where situated, *vi.* 39 (F)
- , princess of Angola, taken prisoner by the Portuguese, *vi.* 507. Baptized at Angola, with her kind treatment there, 508. Tried and executed for treason, 514.
- Funnafo, Go, 103d emperor of Japan, *iv.* 60.
- Furbity, the Romanist champion, *xiv.* 24. His conduct in Geneva, and a letter from the French king in his fa-vour, 25.
- Furrukhfir, Mohammed, defeats and dethrones Shah Jehan-dar, *iii.* 120. Ascends the mogul's throne, 121. De-throned and murdered by his two prime ministers, *ib.*
- Furstenberg, Egon de, commander of the Austrian troops re-turned from Italy, compels some of the Protestants to re-nounce the league of Leipzig, *xi.* 223.
- Futheki, or Living fo, among the Mongis, with his habit and behaviour, described, *ii.* 259.
- Fusheni taken by Timur Bek, *ii.* 512.
- Fusimi, the 9th emperor of Japan, *iv.* 59.
- II. succeeds him, *iv.* 59.
- Fu-ti, emperor of China, murdered for his cruelty, *iii.* 708.
- Fu-ywe, an obscure male, made prime minister in China, and his wife instructions to the emperor, *iii.* 687.



## G.

**GABOR** Bethleem invades Hungary with success, xi. 200.  
 The states of High-Hungary submit by their deputies, as do the towns of Lower-Hungary, and he marches towards Vienna, ib. (T). Takes Presburg, and the terms of the capitulation, ib. Declared king of Hungary, 203. Invests Presburg, but obliged to relinquish it, 206. Breaking the truce in Hungary, is defeated by the Imperialists, and an accommodation concluded, 212.

**Gabriel**, the angel, brings the Aicoran to Mahomet, i. 20. Frequent visits to him, 24. Leads him up to heaven, 31. Brings him back to Mecca, 36. Stirs him up against the Koreidites, 61. Fights for him against Mostalek, 66. Cures that bewitched prophet, 70. Comforts him for the loss of his son, 97. Brings him the joyful news of the death of his rival Aswad, 107. Introduces Fatema to the bridal bed, with Michael, and seventy thousand other angels, 112. Other favours done by him to Mahomet, 150.

—, the son of Bakhtishua, an eminent physician to caliph Al Bashed, his strange cures richly rewarded, i. 419. Illusory interpretation of the caliph's dream, 434. Cures him of an apoplexy, 436. Disgraced by caliph Al Mamun, 458.

—, the Egyptian patriarch, refuses to augment the number of bishops in Abyssinia, i. 707. Obliged the emperor to recant and submit, 708. His death, ib.

—, Abuna; made patriarch of Alexandria, i. 513.

—, Martinengo, a famed engineer, sent for to Rhodes, vii. 432. Shot in the eye by the besiegers, 438.

**Gabini**, revolution at Rome by him, who is created tribune, and his extravagant proceedings ruin him, ix. 676. Defeated, and brought prisoner to Avignon, ib.

**Gabbs**, or Caps, river in Tunis, described, vii. 297.

—, or Capes, a city in Tunis, its present decay, vii. 306.

**Gaffates**, who, and where situated, vi. 304 (V).

**Gage**, brigadier, made governor of Montreal, xiv. 726.

**Gages**, the battle of Parma lost by the Spaniards under him, with the diminution of his army, and retreat from Bologna to Rimini, xiii. 661. Ordered to attack the Austrians at St. Lazaro, 665. Ordered to resign, 666. M. de las Minas succeeds, and leaves the Genoese to the mercy of the Austrians, ib.

**Gaghir**, Gayer, governor of Otrar; murders Jenghiz khan's ambassadors, ii. 293. Besieged in Otrar, 298. Retires to the castle, ib. Taken and executed, 299.

**Gagnier's** partiality in favour of Mahomet, i. 29. English version of Mahomet's ascension, 37.

**Gago** kingdom subdued by Muley Hamed; vii. 186.

**Gaidaris** succeeds his uncle Adelgise in Benevento, to the prejudice of his son Radelchis, x. 385.

**Gal**, St. account of it, and abbot, xv. 457. Allied with the Swifs, ib.

**Galam**, kingdom in Guinea, described, vii. 52. Its situation and extent, ib.

**Galas**, Imperial general; surprises Philipsburgh; but Spire, which he took, is retaken, xi. 238. Irruption into Franche-comte unsuccessful, 242. Forces his way into the circle of Leutmeritz, 263. Defeated by Banier, xii. 341. Conduct of that count, the Imperial minister at London, xi. 348.

**Galates** of Eastern Scythia, invaded by prince Soleyman, v. 161 (B).

**Galatzin's** great success in Finland, xiii. 230.

**Galbaio**, Maurizio, seventh doge of Venice, succeeds Monegario, x. 183. War with Pepin, and the occasion of Venice declaring itself a free state, 184. Death and character, ib.

**Galeb**, the son of Fehr, falsely supposed an eminent spag-iric, i. 3.

**Gale**, Van, his death occasions new disputes, and how decided, xi. 296.

**Galeazzo**, on F. Sforza's death, made governor of Milan, whose principles are very opposite to those of his father, and his behaviour towards the Genoese, x. 577, who quietly submit to his oppressive government, and why, ib.

— origin of this name, xiv. 62.

— aspires to the throne of Italy, but dies in the midst of his successes, with the consequences on this event, xi. 68.

— his insincerity in one of the stipulations with the Florentines about preventing the disbanded soldiers from

forming into banditti, xiii. 353. His injustice to Ricci and the prince of Carrara; but the Florentines renew their ancient league, and the parties concerned; ib. Recalls his troops from the Arezzian territories, and causes Gargonza to be retaken, 356. Assists the Pisans with troops, but a peace is mediated by the Florentines, 358. All Galeazzo's troops rendezvous at Pisa, to the terror of the Florentines; with their preparations, and danger to Florence, ib. How delivered, ib. By his contrivance; his disbanded troops break into Tuscany, and a revolution at Pisa in favour of him, who grants protection to the Perugians, and the Bolognese enter into his alliance, and the Siennese submit, 360. Declares war against Bentivoglio; whom the Florentines assist, but are entirely defeated, with their general Bernard taken, and Bentivoglio afterwards killed; yet recover from their consternation, 363. Account of his death, issue, and the partition of his dominion amongst his sons, ib. Diffensions and barbarism of his court, ib.

Galeazzo persuaded to return home, as being a hindrance to the Florentines success; after which a battle fought, and the confederates disperse, xiii. 420. Murdered by three young noblemen, through the lectures of Cola, a school-master, 425. But their cause not backed by a single man, ibid.

— young, his conduct, xiv. 66. The father and son recalled from banishment, ib. How he saves his father, 67. Succeeds his father Matthew in Milan, with an account of him, and his valour, 68. Also of his brothers Luchin and Marc, ib. His speech, and baffling the French, ib. Revolt of Milan against him, and how caused; ib. A plot against him defeated, as are also the confederates, 69. Manner of his negociation for a peace by his prisoner Raymond Cordona, and at last concluded, 70. How accused to the emperor by his brother Marc, ib. His saying on this accusation, and his brother Marc's answer, ib. Imprisoned; with circumstances of cruelty; ib. Gratitude to Castruccio, with his death and character, 71.

— II. of Milan, account of him and his son, also of Barnabo and his sons, and the exact division of the heritage between the brothers, xiv. 78. He and Barnabo defeat the Germans at Casa, ib. They lead their troops against Bologna, with the confederacy against them there, ib. A diversion in the Mantuan by him, and a new treaty concluded, 79. Raises his family by two royal matches, ib. His character, magnificence, and instances of his justice, also his palace; as characterized by Petrarch, 80. His death, ib.

— John, first duke of Milan, succeeds Barnabo, and his character, xiv. 82. 84. Encouragement of literature, 83. Plan of his education; ib. Economy in keeping exact accounts, yet unbounded generosity to such as served him, 84. Makes himself master of Pavia, ib. (See xiii. 346.) Bad success in Lombardy, 85. Makes himself master of Perugia, ib. Also of Pisa, and Bologna submits, ib. His vast policy, ib. His plan to make himself master of Lombardy, and the Imperialists defeated by his general Vermì at Alessandria, with an unusual proof of his virtue and moderation towards the Florentines, 86. And a peace concluded by him with them, ib. Not remarkable for his virtue, and he dies; with his marriage and issue, ib. His person described; and the division of the government between his two sons, ib. The provision for his eldest natural son Gabriel, ib.

**Galen**, Van, defeats Bodely, xi. 561. With the loss of the Dutch admiral, 562.

— bishop of Munster; his character and remarkable sayings, xi. 582. Disputes of the states-general with him, occasioned by his incroachments on the city of Munster; and the states-general determine to succour the citizens, ib. A compromise struck up, and the bishop's public entry, 583. His resentment against the republic and the inhabitants of Munster, ib.

**Galerio**, bridge in Parma, is finished, xiii. 605.

**Galga**, the famous prince of Tartary, xiii. 161 (I).

**Galicia**, disturbances in don Garcia's kingdom, vii. 648. Civil war raised in it upon the demise of king Alonso VI. 664. A formidable rebellion raised in it by Alonzo of Arragon, 666 (M). But quelled by the archbishop of Compostella, ib. sub not. Fresh troubles there, 667. The nobility declare for the young king Alonzo, ib.

**Galitzin** Basil, the rise and great character of that prince, with whom Sophia shares her power, xiii. 178. He curbs the excessive insolence of the Strelitzes, and brings about a peace with Sweden and Poland, the latter ceding Smolenskow



- Ienskow and the Ukraine to Russia, *ib.* An army raised to invade the Crim commanded by him, who would gladly have declined that honour, and why, 179. He only builds a town on the river Samara for magazines, which is well fortified, *ib.* The miscarriage of this expedition imputed to the Hettman of the Cossacks, who is banished to Siberia, Mazeppa succeeding him, *ib.* His second expedition into the Crim and encountering the enemy, who withdraw to defend Precop, 180. Advancing within cannon-shot he suddenly orders to return, and how imposed on herein, 181. False information to Sophia about defeating the enemy, with the consequences particularly fatal to him, *ib.* Banished to Karga, stripped of his immense estate, and his allowance three-pence a day, 182 (B)
- Galvano's success among the Moluccas, *iv.* 158. Fatal removal puts an end to his grand discoveries, 159. Sent ambassador into Abyssinia, and dies at Cumaran, *vi.* 257
- Galway, earl of, beat again at Gudina, *viii.* 363. Commands in Portugal, and loses his right arm, 539. Public entry as ambassador extraordinary from England, 542
- Gall, St. abbot of, obliged to submit to the emperor, *xi.* 10
- Galla V. doge of Venice, succeeds Theodato, *x.* 183. Soon deposed, and blinded, with his character, *ib.*
- Gallas, a general account of them, *v.* 660
- of Abyssinia, who and whence, *vi.* 175. Conquests in that empire, and extraction, 176. Whence their use of circumcision, *ib.* Horrid invasions and ravages, 177 (K). Depraved manners, religion, and cruel customs, 178. Bravery and warlike discipline, *ib.* Sorry cavalry, and way of riding, 179. Government, *ib.* Mean condition, food, &c. way of fighting, 180. Fidelity, and good qualities, *ib.* Zeal of some of their converts, *ib.* Make a fresh irruption, 271. Their dreadful ravages throw the emperor into a swoon, *ib.* Cut in pieces by the brave Asnaf Segued, 281. Success against Basilides, and vain attempt upon Arkiko, 304
- in the kingdom of Balu, and their king rich and powerful, *vi.* 321
- Gallinato sent to the assistance of the Kambojans, *iii.* 416. Murders the usurper, 417. Refuses the offered crown, and restores the king to it, *ib.*
- Gallus sent against the Jews of Palestine, with his success against them, *v.* 506
- Gama, Vasquez da, doubles the Cape of Good Hope, *iv.* 115. Forced to leave Calicut, *ib.* Arrival at Angediva, 116. Second voyage to India, and success against the Samorin, 118. Return with rich spoils, and triumphal entry, 119 (Q). Sent viceroy into India, whose death causes great disorders there, 129
- Vasco de. See Vasco
- Vasco de, his departure for Africa, *v.* 700. Success and discoveries, 701. Difficulties at the Cape of Good Hope, *ib.* Safe arrival at that of St. Blas, *ib.* Reception of some natives on board, 702. Narrow escape at Mofambique, *ib.* Departure for the Indies, 704. Arrival at Lisbon, *ib.*
- Christopher de, arrives in Abyssinia, *vi.* 260. Brave answer to Granhe's message, 261 (V). Success against him, and second defeat of him, 262. Fortifies himself against him, *ib.* Proudly refuses to attack him in the night, *ib.* His standard-bearer slain, and himself desperately wounded; refuses to retreat with his men, *ib.* Taken prisoner and insulted by Granhe, 263. Surprising constancy and policy against him, 264 (Y). Intrepidity and death, *ib.* Reckoned a miraculous martyr; but is so to his rashness, 265. Vide vol. *vi.* 328, & seq.
- Vasco de, his attempt for a passage to the East Indies, *viii.* 455. In what time performed, and his advancement, 456. Returns with a cargo, 459. Sent to the Indies, and his death, 473
- Gamaliel succeeds Jochanan in the Jewish patriarchate, *v.* 477. His high character and merit; whether a Christian convert, *ib.* sub. not.
- succeeds Judah Hakkadosh, *v.* 494
- the fourth and last Jewish patriarch occasions the abolition of that dignity, *v.* 495
- Gamarazan's treason again Zeyed, *vii.* 136. His reign in Tremecen, *ib.*
- Cambacurta of Pisa, his death, through his secretary Appiano, a partisan of Galeazzo, alarming the Florentines, and his seizing that government, *xiii.* 354
- choien rector of Pisa, but soon deprived for his barbarity, *xiii.* 366
- Gambia, river, its various names, *vii.* 70. Course, navigation, and length, *ib.* European commerce first established on it, 71. The first English settlement, *ib.* Disorderly soldiery, 73. History of its commerce, 74. Various bickerings with the French, and proposals for an accommodation, 75. Answer of the French, *ib.* Mutual endeavours for a coalition, 76. Treaty of neutrality, and new efforts to revive the trade, 77. Commerce, how carried on by the English, 78. By the French and Portuguese, *ib.*
- Gambroon, the Dutch settlement at, *iv.* 502 (N)
- Gaming of all kinds forbidden by Mahomet, *i.* 172
- Gan-chi-tay's incursions into the Song, *ii.* 352
- Gandikot's strong situation, *iii.* 152 (U). Taken by treachery, *ib.*
- Gandikott, a strong city in Karnata, taken by Amir Jemia, *ib.* 178 (O)
- Ganges, its head, where, *ii.* 548 (N). The river described, and why deemed sacred by the Indians, *iii.* 2
- Gangra in Pontus taken by John Comnenus, *ii.* 216
- Granjatu, or Kaiktu, mounts the throne of Iran, *ii.* 483. His debauches cause a revolt; is defeated and slain by Badu, 484
- Gao-lo taken by the Moguls, *ii.* 374
- Gan-nan, the Mungls expedition to it unsuccessful, *ii.* 383. A new attempt against it, 386, but succeeds no better, 388. King, his submission and tribute to Hupilay, *ib.*
- Gannims, a set of pirates about Surat, *iii.* 10, 147
- Ganti pawha, one of the conspirators against Shotepala, his life spared, but is banished, *ii.* 48
- Gan tong's noble character and rise, *ii.* 566
- Gantz, R. David, the famed Jewish historian, *v.* 506 (Z). Remarks on his Tzemach David, *ib.* sub. not.
- Gauga, province, described, *vii.* 105
- Gaon, a set of doctors among the Jews, *v.* 513
- Gap, dangerous, a snowy mountain in America, *xiv.* 409
- Gara, Nicholas, his wicked policy under the queen regent Elizabeth of Hungary, *xi.* 71
- Garaffa (Gamelopard) of Africa, described, *v.* 685
- Garacontnie, grand chief of the Onnontague, his great character, and services to the French, *xiv.* 599. Sent from the Onnontague, as head of a deputation, to Montreal, 600. Two accidents on the road, what, and honourable reception on his arrival, *ib.* His proposals granted by the governor-general, and the latter's motives, *ib.* Two hundred of his people in the mean time invade the French colonies, *ib.* Arriving, he obtains a ratification of the treaty, and a delivery of the French prisoners, *ib.* Arrives with the deputies of his canton and other two colonies, with a funeral oration by him on Le Moyne, and his demands, 603. Prudent management; is baptized by the name of Daniel, 609
- Garay's attempts defeated; is arrested and pardoned by Cortez, *xiv.* 276
- Garcia, the Goth, erects a kingdom in the Pyrennees, *i.* 351
- don, viceroy of Sicily, amuses the great master of Malta, *vii.* 483
- in a desperate attack against the Moors, taken prisoner; dies of his wounds, and his body redeemed, *vii.* 634
- the deposed king of Galicia, dies in prison, with his solemn funeral, *vii.* 658
- king of Navarre, defends himself from the emperor Alonso and the king of Arragon, *vii.* 677. Defeats the latter before he joined the emperor, *ib.* Concludes a peace with the emperor, as does also the king of Portugal, *ib.* Marries donna Urraca, the emperor's natural daughter, 679
- Ximenes, chosen chief of Navarre, *viii.* 549
- Inigas, succeeds his father, chief of Navarre, with his character, *viii.* 549
- becomes sovereign of Navarre, with the transactions of his time, *viii.* 551. Several petty chiefs submit to him; and is killed in battle against Ordogno, king of Oviedo, *ibid.*
- Ximenes, first king of Navarre, *viii.* 552. His character and issue, *ib.*
- II. king of Navarre, succeeds his father, *viii.* 556. Measures after his accession for strengthening his dominions; and defeats the count of Castile, whom he takes prisoner, *ib.* Nobly sets him at liberty, with an account of the rest of his reign in the arts of peace, and death, *ib.*
- III. the Trembler, succeeds his father Sancho II. king of Navarre, *viii.* 557. Close alliance of the Christian princes against the Moors, *ib.* His death, character, &c. *ib.*
- IV. of Najara, succeeds his father Sancho the Great, king of Navarre, *viii.* 561. Marries Estafana of Catalonia, *ib.* His brother Ramiro unexpectedly enters Navarre; but Garcia forces his camp, and obliges him to fly, *ib.* But upon Ramiro's return, he returns home; with his great care in regulating domestic affairs, and redressing the complaints of the clergy of Biscay, 562. His brother Ferdinand



mand seizes the king's person, *ib.* Garcia escaping, invades Castile, and is slain by treachery; with an account of his issue, 563

Garcias, Henry, made governor of the Moluccas, *iv.* 154. Treacherous attempt on the king of Tydore, and inhuman treatment of the natives, 155

—— don, succeeds his father in Spain, *vii.* 607. First expedition against the Moors, *ib.* Unnatural design against his brother, and dies unregretted, 608

—— Sanchez, assassinated at Leon, *vii.* 622

—— Sanchez, succeeds his father, and glorious success against the Moors, *vii.* 635. His alliance solicited by Zuleiman, a pretender to the Cordova crown, *ib.* Whom he assists, and forcibly sets on the throne, *ib.* After his expulsion, he enters into a new league with Hissém, the lawful heir, much to his advantage, *ib.* Whom he assists in besieging and taking Toledo, 636. Peculiar privilege granted his nobility, *ib.* (G). Sends the Vela family again into exile, 637. Regulations in Castile during the interval of peace, *ib.* Improbability of obliging his mother to poison herself, *ib.* Extends his frontiers, and dies, *ib.* Founded also one monastery, 638 (H)

Gardankhast, a province in Karazm, *ii.* 714

Gardiner, Sir Christopher, history of him in New England, and his petition against the colony to the council of Old England unsuccessful, *xiv.* 506

Garisenda of Bologna, his adventure, and the inhuman use he makes of his wife's precaution, *xiii.* 563

Garner of Syria, the eighth grand master of Malta, his bravery against the Saracens, and dies of his wounds, *vii.* 384

Garzia, the twelfth Christian king of Congo, his short reign, *vi.* 485. Murders his brother, 486. Hated by his subjects, *ib.* Kind reception of the Capuchin missionaries, *ib.* Bloody reign, horrid superstition, and cruel enormities before his death, *ib.*

Garzez, Martin, the fifty-first great master of Malta, *vii.* 501. Death, *ib.*

Garrat, Dennis, an island in the South Sea, *v.* 27

Garrouda, the sparhawk, an Indian inferior god, *iii.* 205. His temples and idol, 208

Gasco, Pedro de, sent president to Peru, *xiv.* 339. Arrives at Nombre de Dios, and his politic declaration, *ib.* Gains the garrison and fleet there, 340. His agent gains the inhabitants of Lima, *ib.* Arrives from Panama at Tumbez, 341. Makes Nonojosa general by land, 342. Wise management, and speech to animate his troops, 344. Marches to Cuzco, and is joined by Valdivia, *ib.* His address in crossing Amancay river, *ib.* Division of lands, and consequent dissatisfaction occasioned thereby, 347. His letter to silence it, *ib.* Resigns, and his rapacity, with his setting out for Panama, 348

Gascony invaded by the Arabs of Spain, who are driven out by Charles Martel, *i.* 364

Gasne, Mahmud. See Mahmud

Gaspey, bay and point, described, *xiv.* 551

Gassion, marshal de, gallant action of, with two hundred horse near Menin, *ix.* 420. Death before Lens, and his character, 424

Gastaldi, the bravery of the garrison of Rena under him, Corfelin deserting to the enemy, *x.* 615

Gaston, duke of Nemours, takes Bologna, routs the Venetians, and recovers Brescia, *ix.* 199. His character, *ib.* Beats the confederates in the battle of Ravenna, but is indiscreetly lost, *ib.*

——, John, succeeds his father Cosmo III. great duke of Tuscany, with his presenting memorials against the quadruple alliance, *xiii.* 543

Gat, fortrefs in Hormuz, *ii.* 682 (G)

Gaufride, the duke of Parma's minister, account of him, whom his master beheads, *xiii.* 638

Gavi surrenders, through an artifice of the duke of Savoy, *x.* 604

Gaunt, John of, enters into a treaty with the king of Portugal, in support of his pretensions to Castile, *viii.* 61. Also with Arragon, 62. But forced to abandon his design of invading Castile, *ib.* His brother the Black Prince dies, 63. Landing in Galicia, takes Compostella, and is proclaimed king of Castile, 68. Makes a treaty with Portugal, *ib.* Afterwards an embassy comes to him from don Juan of Castile, *ib.* Makes an irruption with the Portuguese into Castile, *ib.* The state of this whole affair, *ib.* (X). Treaty with Castile in his favour, *ib.* Ravages Arragon, but the differences soon appeased, 167

Gaur country, where situated, *ii.* 183

—— dynasty, by whom founded, *i.* 712

Gauras sent with presents and offers of peace to Manuel, *ii.* 221

Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

Gauriquan, tribe of Hottentots, described, *vi.* 386

Gautier, why executed at Geneva, *xiv.* 46

Gautu-lauman's vast offers for the Chinese customs, *ii.* 348. A favourite of Tolyekona, 351. Prime minister of Kayuk, 353

Gayatho'ddin, sultan, dies, *ii.* 181

—— sixth sultan of the Rum dynasty, his share of his father's dominions, *ii.* 224. Invades the Imperial dominions, and attempt on Iconium how frustrated, with his singular humanity to the Christian prisoners, 225. Attacked by his brother Rokno'ddin, *ib.* Retires to the emperor Alexis, and continues a private man for some time at his court, *ib.* Drives his nephew out of his dominions, *ib.* Retakes Iconium, and reassumes his kingdom; he supports Manuel Maurozomus, 227. Is repulsed before Attalia, 228. Slain by Lascaris in his attempt on Antioch, *ib.* Mistakes of the Greeks about him and his reign, *ib.*

—— the son of Alao'ddin, the eleventh sultan of the Rum dynasty, *ii.* 230. Success against the Karasimians, *ib.* Against two pretended prophets, 231. Defeated by the Moguls, and becomes tributary to them, with his death, character, and children, *ib.* Alliance with Vatazez against the Tartars, 232

Gayer, Sir John, made chief commander in India, and his ill conduct, *iv.* 326

Gaysee made inspector of physic in China, and supposed a Christian, *ii.* 363 (M)

Gayur Khan submits to Timur Bek, *ii.* 538

Gaz, the son of Japhet, the father of the Gazan Turks, *i.* 633

—— or Az, Turks, who, *i.* 675 (H)

—— or Wandering Turks, in West Tartary, *ii.* 121. Incursion into Amid, &c. and driven out by the Arabs, 157

Gaza reduced by the Moslems, *i.* 227. Its present state, 228

Gazan Turks, from whom descended, *i.* 633. Defeated by sultan Mahmud, and horrid ravages in Adherbijan, *ib.* Expedition into Mesopotamia, 649

—— conspires against Baydu, *ii.* 484. Makes alliance with Amir Newruz, *ib.* And gets the crown of Iran by his means, 485. Base ingratitude to him, *ib.* And to his high treasurer, 486. Invasion of Syria; defeated by Nasser, and builds the city of Sham Gazan, with his death, *ib.*

Gazi Keray, 4th khan of Crim Tartary, *ii.* 450

—— II. the tenth khan of Crim Tartary, deposed and restored, *ii.* 451. The meaning of the name, and why given to khan Ilbar's descendants, 723, & not.

—— Omar, the son of sultan Gazi, his private retreat, *ii.* 726. Rise under Obeyd Khan, *ib.* Puts Avanash Khan to death, *ibid.*

Gazna besieged and taken by the Moguls, *ii.* 320

—— mountain in India; described, *iii.* 2

Gaznian dynasty, its founder, *i.* 609. The end of it, 712, 715

Gebra Mesket, king of Abyssinia, makes alliance with the emperor Justinian, *vi.* 252

Gedaliah's learned works printed, *v.* 591 (G). Extract, &c. 598. Chronology very imperfect, *ib.* (B)

Gediminas, by a conspiracy with the grand dukes, takes off Vitenus, and, marrying the dowager, is raised to the Lithuanian throne, *xii.* 636. Penetrates into Prussia, and recovers Samogitia, 637. His invasion of Russia, and conquests, though assisted by the Russians in his late attacks on the Teutonic knights, he obliges them to renounce their sovereignty over Lithuania; *ib.* His domestic transactions, with the fabulous account of his founding Wilna, the capital, 638. Invasion of Lower Poland, and ravages there; and he joins Uladisslaus Locticus of Poland against the Teutonic knights, who are reduced very low, *ib.* He again ravages Poland, *ib.* His son Olgerdus enters Prussia twice, with the repeated incursions and desolation committed by the Lithuanians in Prussia, and Dobrina, a territory of Poland, *ib.* A peace concluded, upon the marriage of Ann, daughter of Gediminas, with Casimir prince of Poland, 639. Death and character of Gediminas, 640

Geesa, or Al Jizah, in Egypt, taken by Salch, and its nunnery polluted by him, *i.* 385

Gelasus II. pope, account of, *ix.* 583 (U). Excommunicates the emperor and pope Gregory VIII. in a council at Capua, *ib.* The pope lives privately in Rome, and goes to France, *ib.* Being released, is obliged to quit Rome, and consecrated at Gaeta; after which he gives investiture to several nobles, 584 (W). Restores Leetus to the archbishopric of St. Alban's, *ib.* His death, *ib.*

Gelenhausen, account of that city, *xv.* 440

Gelimer, the sixth and last king of the African Vandals, *v.* 712. Persecutes the Orthodox; is invaded by the emperor Justinian,



- Justinian, and defeated by Belisarius, 713. His metropolis and treasures seized by the latter, 714. Obligated to recall his brother from Sardinia, 715. Defeat, and shameful flight, *ib.* Miserable retreat into the mountains, 716. Mournful request, *ib.* Surrenders himself to Belisarius, and brought in chains to Constantinople, with his speech to the emperor; dies of grief, *ib.*
- Gemund, account of its government and religion, xv. 445 (T)
- Genealogies, Arab, when and how first fixed, i. 3
- General, great, of Poland and Lithuania, his power with other officers, xii. 439
- Geneva, articles composed there; on the pope's agreeing to which, Felix V. promises to abdicate, x. 20. Account of the quarrels between its bishops, the counts, and the counts of Savoy, 683 (H). City, and manners of its inhabitants, described, xiv. 3. Form of government republican, and three councils, with its ecclesiastical and military establishment, *ib.* Antiquity, *ib.* How its bishops became the sovereigns, with an assembly of the states here under Charlemagne, 4. The several competitors about its sovereignty, and the rise of its bishops and counts, 5. The temporal claims of the bishops opposed by the citizens, and the succession of the former, *ib.* Attempt of the dauphin of Vienne intirely defeated; with a remarkable decree of Ame its bishop, and disputes about Geneva, with the issue in favour of the count of Savoy, 6. Difference between the bishop and count compromised, and the former excommunicates the people of Geneva, and the occasion; with a war for some years, and the battle of Monthouz, *ib.* Peace concluded, *ib.* Pope's award on the bishop's appeal, *ib.* The liberties of Geneva confirmed, and the most material articles, *ib.* Evidences of the independency of Geneva on the house of Savoy, 7. Ample confirmation of its rights by the emperor Wincellaus, and a cardinal bishop of it, with some account of his proceedings, *ib.* Sigismund's reception there, which pope Martin V. and fifteen cardinals also visit, *ib.* The pretensions of Savoy rejected by the inhabitants, and the constitution of Geneva settled, *ib.* His holiness's declaration in favour of it, *ib.* Loses its records, and the occasion, 8. Troubles there after the defeat of Charles of Burgundy at Morat, 9. A league with the Switzers, *ib.* History of the bishop's two favourites, *ib.* Insurrection of the peasants quelled, *ib.* Maintains its liberty against Savoy, 10. Expensive entertainment by its bishop, *ib.* Beginning of the alliance between it and Fribourg against Savoy, and the occasion, 11. Its danger from the duke of Savoy and the pope, *ib.* Dispute there about a French ambassador put under arrest, who is carried off to Bern, 12. And about the rights of the Genevois, who prevail, *ib.* Bishop and his officers excommunicated by the archbishop of Vienne, but annulled by the pope, 13. The pope's threats against the city, with the latter's refusal of the duke and bishop's terms, 14. Their alliance with Fribourg, *ib.* Taken, with the abuses committed by the duke of Savoy's soldiers, and his severe proclamation, 15. Succours obtained from Fribourg, and their success in entering Morges without resistance, *ib.* Bishop's conduct in an appeal to Rome, 18. Revolution interrupted by the duke of Savoy, with the danger of the bishop, *ib.* Increase of the power of the magistracy in managing the affairs of the bishopric, 21. Their danger, but delivered by their allies, *ib.* Bishop returns from the Franche Comte to Geneva; but his endeavours proving ineffectual to establish his authority, he hastily leaves it, 23. Tumults there, with an accommodation between both parties, and its substance chiefly in favour of the Gospellers, *ib.* The tumults renewed, on the Bernois interfering, *ib.* Conspiracy there discovered determines the magistrates, and the consequences, 24. Bishop's attempt frustrated, 25. Female poisoner discovered there, and executed, *ib.* A successful sally against the Savoyards, &c. 28. Vernay's successful irruption into Savoy across the lake, *ib.* A new alliance with the Bernois, and the terms; also religious affairs, *ib.* A decree passed against a change of government, with the disturbances from a faction called Artichokes, 29. The death of its bishop, who is succeeded by Auberive, *ib.* Religious dissensions there, 30. Chief sanctuary of all the Reformed, with the league between Geneva and Bern renewed, and made perpetual, 31. A college instituted at Geneva, where Calvin and Beza read Divinity, *ib.* Severity of the magistrates discipline, *ib.* Furnishes preachers to all the reformed states, *ib.* In danger from the duke of Alva, who desists, and the city visited with a plague, 32. Alliance with France, the Swifs, and Genevois at Soleure, *ib.* National calamities there, and a perpetual alliance with Zurich, *ib.* Account of its famous scalade, and the dispositions for surprizing that city, 38. Exploits of three private persons at it, *ib.* The enemy's loss, retreat, and the duke of Savoy's saying on the ill success, 40. Execution there of the prisoners, and their heads stuck up on the walls, *ib.* Conspiracy of Terrail and Bastide against it discovered; arrested at Yverdun and executed, 42. Fortified, *ib.* Its manufactures discouraged, *ib.* Inhabitants for the duke of Savoy, and the occasion, *ib.* Receives additional fortifications, *ib.* Refugees there, as the princess Emilia of Orange, and sieur d'Aubigne, 44. The latter superintends its works, *ib.* Disappointment of the bishop, 47. Dissensions there, and the occasion; but compromised, 50. A plot against it, and a letter left at the syndic's, *ib.* Alliance with the Swifs, xv. 448 (C)
- Genevois, treaty between them and the count of Saxony, xiv. 5. The earl of Geneva outlawed by the bishop, 7. The duke of Savoy and the bishop endeavour to make them rebel, and a ridiculous occasion taken by them, 12. In danger of losing their liberty, from the duke's residence at Geneva, &c. 17. Apply for a general alliance with the Swifs cantons, 18. Alliance between them and the cantons of Bern and Fribourg, 19. Their perplexing situation, 20. A peace between the duke of Savoy and them, with the terms, 21. Differences arise anew, and the determination, by a general assembly of the cantons, *ib.* But rejected in most part by the duke, *ib.* Lay their grievances before an assembly of the cantons at Baden, and refuse to re-admit their bishop, 25. Unsuccessful attempt on Pency, 26. Request to the Bernois refused, *ib.* The low pass of the Genevois, *ib.* Yet they never think of submitting to their former tyrants, and how relieved, through their poverty, *ib.* Favourable turn of their affairs, by a reinforcement of journeymen printers from Lyons, *ib.* Their jealousy, from the French refugees, 30. They and the Bernois break with the duke of Savoy, and the war continued; with the success of the former, 33. Loss of the Genevois and Bernois before La Cluse, *ib.* Further successes on both sides, *ib.* The duke of Savoy's infamous breach of capitulation for Ternay-cattle exasperates them, who have the better in every encounter, particularly in the fort near the Arve, 34. A truce concluded, with the success of the confederates after its expiration, *ib.* Their distress, and their scaling a fort at Versoy, *ib.* Their further successes, with their taking La Cluse; and forced to abandon it, through the cowardice of Esgaillon, 35. Generally have the better, with the mutual reproaches of don Amideo and the Genevois, *ib.* The latter worried, but Geneva saved, through Lubigny's vigilance in his night-gown, *ib.* The war with Savoy renewed, and, notwithstanding their little caution, are victorious in Focigny, through the care of their commander Conforgien, with his piety on the field, *ib.* Both sides resolve to give no quarter, *ib.* Their further successes, especially at Buringe, *ib.* A truce concluded, 36. Hostilities recommenced, but peace concluded, *ib.* Bernois sends them assistance, and the French king's friendship, 39. Shrewd observation of the Genevois, in their manifestos, on the duke's perfidy; with their precaution, and invade the Savoy dominions with success, 40. The French king befriends them, who conclude a truce and a peace at St. Julien, 41. Both sides now resume their pens, *ib.* Presents made them by the landgrave of Hesse and elector palatine, 42. An officer executed for a conspiracy, 43. A letter from their pastors to an assembly of Protestants at Paris, and its purport, 44. Support a baron of Bohemia, *ib.* Renew their alliance with Bern and Zurich, 46. Assistance sent by them to Bern against an insurrection, *ib.* Send assistance to their allies, and fortify Mount St. Victor, 47. They send a deputation to the French king at Lyons, and his obliging answer, with their fortifying Geneva, *ib.* Their danger, from formidable preparations by the duke of Savoy, 48. Precautions in guarding their city, *ib.* They have assistance from their allies, *ib.* Their danger vanishes; further differences with Savoy; the occasion, and how dropped, 49. Fresh differences with Savoy, and the occasion; with the protection of France to them, and the reasons, 51. Their narrow escape from the ambition of France, and prevented by the vigilance of the British ministry, the Dutch also intersting themselves, 52. A treaty of exchange between the king of Sardinia and them, *ib.*
- Genii, their nature, office, &c. according to the Mahometans, i. 157. Taken from the Jewish rabbis, 158
- Genmei, empress of Japan, her reign, iv. 54
- Genoa detaches itself from Spain in favour of France, viii.



297. Its revolt from the French, ix. 194, x. 63. Fort commanding the passage into the city carried by the French, ix. 194. The city obliged to surrender at discretion, and their pardon obtained by a fine, 195, x. 324. Rebellion there against Visconti, fomented by Spinola, who returns from Venice to that city, but prevented by Sigisfund, x. 245. History, antient and modern extent, 534. Rebuilt by the Romans, after burning it, and continues under their dominion till Theodoric, ib. And under the Goths, till subdued by Belisarius, and next by the Lombards, ib. Charlemagne erects it into a marquissate, continuing under counts till the extinction of Pepin's race in Italy, ib. The Saracens sack that city; but the Genoese defeat them off Sardinia, and recover their booty and captives, 535. They form themselves into a republic, under consuls freely elected, and consent to acknowledge Berengarius III. duke of Friuli, who confirms their rights, ib. Erected by the pope into an archbishopric, with three bishops subjected to it, and three to Pisa, 539. Arrival of pope Alexander III. there, who enlarges the privilege of their see; and the emperor extends their jurisdiction over all the coast of Liguria, with their stipulations in return, 541. Civil dissensions there, and a fresh quarrel with the Pisans; upon which a war continues long about Sardinia, 542. The emperor mediates a peace between them, ib. They conclude an alliance with the sultan of Egypt, with other domestic transactions; and some disputes with the Pisans, ib. On Jerusalem being taken, and nearly all the territories in Syria, from the Christians, the Genoese send a fleet into that country, ib. Factions greatly disturbing the city, the government is committed to a foreigner, 543. Imperial and Pisan fleets retire from it, 547. Pope Innocent IV. conducted by sea to Genoa, and almost all their whole fleet destroyed by a storm, ib. Disputes in the city between the Gibellines and Guelphs; one of the former imprisoning the podesta, and causing himself to be proclaimed captain, with the issue, 549. Thrown into Charles of Naples's hands, who invades their territories, but to little advantage, ib. The republic excommunicated, but afterwards absolved, who make large purchases within their territory, 550. New form of government there, by chusing a foreigner their captain annually, 552. Disputes there, about declaring against the Catalans; arise to fighting in the streets, 553. Reconciliation effected there between the Gibellines and Guelphs, and the pope's endeavours for peace ineffectual, ib. Violent sedition in that city, ib. The Venetians take several places from the Genoese the while, 554. Fresh disturbances in that city, and the worsted party exiled; but an accommodation concluded, ib. New commotions, with the occasion, ib. Hostilities continue between both parties, and a violent dissension between the nobles and commons, with the occasion, 557. A truce and then a perpetual peace concluded betwixt both parties, with the stipulations, ib. The general desolation occasioned by this war very great, ib. Their animosities subside, ib. Fresh disturbances there, and the occasion, 558. New duke elected there with the concurrence of the nobles, and his desire to be bound by articles, ib. Peace concluded with the exiles, and the terms, 559. Revolution there by the Visconti, with the occasion, 561. New tumults there, and a duke chosen, with his character, 564. Great disturbances there, with the successive chusing of several dukes, and in its territories, 566. Insurrection there against the French governor, 567. Total cessation of arms agreed to, with the damage done that city, ib. The French governor twice obliged to abandon the palace, and captains chosen, ib. New form of government there, with salutary regulations, 570. Epidemical distemper there, ib. Tumultuous proceedings there, 574. Dominion of the state accepted by the king of France, 576. Commotions there on Galeazzo's death, 577. Renewal of the factions in that city, ib. New form of government established there, 578. King of France's designs against it frustrated, 579. Revolts from the king of France, with the commotions thereupon, 580. Remarkable cold succeeded by a dreadful pestilence, ib. Tribunes of the lowest class appointed, and their proceedings, ib. Attempts of the emperor and pope Julius II. on that city abortive, 583. Taken by the Spaniards, who enter and pillage it, 585. With the gallant resistance of a handful of men in the streets, who at last surrender, 586 (A). The pillaging brings on disputes between the confederate generals, 586. Emperor visits it, and his proposal for a citadel rejected by the senate, 590. Disturbances there by the duke's intrigues, 595. Why the old nobility murmur against the new, ib. Changes in the

government there by its deliverer Andrea Doria, and the reformers chuse Aubert Lazari duke, ib. Civil dissensions and designs of the old and new nobility there, the city being divided into three factions, 598. Influence of two popular leaders, and the horrid confusions caused thereby, ib. Situation with regard to the neighbouring powers; and conniving at the attempt of assassinating the constable by the baron d'Alegre, 605. Money arriving from Spain, inspires new spirits into the republic, ib. Several circumstances concur to defeat the enemy's projects, with advantages gained by the peasants over them, 606. Spain resolves to lessen the interest of money borrowed from its bank, ib. Variance between the republic and Savoy, ib. Treaty between Genoa and Turin, and the expence of this war to the Genoese, with a prodigious wall built on the occasion, 608 (B). Pestilence there, 608. Plot of the Spaniards for seizing it discovered; also a dreadful plague, and a war with the corsairs of Barbary, 609. Revolution there through Spinola, and recovers its independency, xiii. 394. The king of France accepts the sovereignty of that republic, 414. Revolt of it, when Regnier and John are both defeated, and return both to France, ib. Falls into the hands of the Milanese, 434. The attempts of the French against it defeated; 448. Owing to Charles's dilatory wavering counsels, with other reasons, 449. Revolution there, 623. Junction of don Philip's and Gage's armies near it with that of the republic, 663. Its reconquest by the Austrians baffled, 667.

Genoese attempt an independant trade into India, iv. 103. Seize on the port of Caffa, 104. Their cowardice before Callipoli, v. 152. Seize on Phocæa, 156. Refuse to release Sarkan's hostages, ib. Seize on the island of Chio; 158. Assisted by sultan Orkan, 160. Cruelty to the banished Jews, 577 (D). War with them occasioned by the isle of Tenedos, x. 220. Seize Lemnos; but defeated and driven from Tenedos, ib. War with them, and their gallies taken and destroyed, 212. After their defeat on the Sardinian coast, they put their sovereignty into the hands of Visconti the duke of Milan, 213. Sea-fight between them and the Venetians, with the defeat of the former, ib. Successes of their allies by land, 221. Closely beset in Chioggia; and beaten in the haven, ib. After Zeno's arrival with a fleet; are defeated; they give up Chioggia, and surrender prisoners of war, 224. Rupture with them; who are defeated by Zeno the Venetian admiral; 229. Fleet's arrival at Cortu, 243. Persuaded to lay aside their armament against Sicily, 451. War between them and the Pisans, with peace concluded; after which they jointly attack the Moors in Africa, 535. Form themselves into a republic under consuls, and consent to acknowledge Berengarius, who confirms their rights, ib. They and the Pisans conquer Sardinia, with the different accounts of their annals respectively, ib. Their fleet continually employed about the Croisaders to or from the Holy Land; and, under William Embriacus, the Genoese, by their ingenuity, greatly contribute to the taking of Jerusalem, 336. Make a treaty with Baldwin for a third part of whatever booty is taken, ib. Coin their own money, ib. Make a new treaty with Baldwin in Syria, with their services in that country, and the privileges bestowed upon them, 537. Begin to renew their disputes with their neighbours, and resolve to reduce all the old marquissate, ib. Make a small alteration, and chuse eight supreme magistrates for four years; ib. They protect pope Gelasius II. against the emperor Henry V. with a new war between them and the Pisans about Corsica, and the different accounts, with a peace concluded, but of short continuance; and the consecration of the Corsican bishops decided in the Lateran council to belong to the pope, 538. The Pisans enraged at this, renew the war, with the advantages gained by the Genoese, who invade their territories, and peace between them by the pope's mediation, ib. Add a new company to the seven old ones, and two consuls for each; and they turn their arms against the Moors with success, 539. The emperor Conrad confirms their privilege of coining; they reduce Ventimiglia; make a settlement in Montpellier, &c. with a confirmation of many privileges from the pope, ib. Their success under Caffaras against the Moors; fit out a fleet; and take Almeria by storm, as also Tortosa, 540. The republic's inactivity to what owing, ib. They take an oath of allegiance to the emperor Frederick Barbarossa, and conclude an alliance with the Greek emperor, ib. The pope interests himself for the republic with three eastern princes, ib. While extending their commerce, Barbarossa arrives in Italy with a formidable army, who consents to a treaty on find-

ing



ing them resolute, 541. Complete the wall of the city, and oblige one of the Moorish kings in Spain to agree to a peace, *ib.* Its various success, *ib.* Negotiation for a peace how interrupted, *ib.* Enter into a treaty with the emperor Henry against Tancred about Naples, 543. Restore the consuls; but the dissensions continuing, Oberto d'Olivano of Pavia is chosen podesta, *ib.* They reduce the whole island of Sicily for the emperor Henry, with his perfidy to them for their services, and a succession of four podestas, and their transactions, *ib.* Several privileges obtained for them in Armenia; conferences for peace with the Pisans ineffectual, and, among other transactions, Syracuse taken by assault, 544. Hostilities between them and the Venetians, with the occasion, *ib.* Among other transactions, the Genoese relieve Syracuse; invested by the Pisan fleet, which is intirely defeated, with the loss of twenty of their vessels; with a truce and perpetual peace agreed to, *ib.* A cessation of hostilities between them and the Pisans, 545. Enlargement of their territories, and an embassy from Armenia confirming their privileges, and civil causes at home committed to five sovereign judges, *ib.* Again restore consuls, who conclude a truce with the Pisans and Venetians, *ib.* The enlargement of their territories gives great jealousy to their neighbours; who revolt, but submit; with some domestic disturbances, 546. Ambassadors sent to the Levant, and a fleet against the Moors of Murcia, *ib.* A rupture between the Genoese and the emperor, *ib.* The latter hearkens to an accommodation, *ib.* Also another made with the king of Ceuta, and betwixt the Venetians and Genoese, *ib.* Their fleet taken or sunk by the Imperial and Pisan fleets, 547. Espouse pope Gregory's party against the emperor Frederick about the extent of their jurisdiction, *ib.* Alliance with the Venetians renewed, 548. A complete victory gained by their fleet, which conducts St. Lewis to Egypt, *ib.* In conjunction with the Florentines and Lucchese distress the Pisans, *ib.* Rupture between them and the Venetians at Acon, with the occasion, *ib.* An accommodation at Rome between them, as also the Pisans, *ib.* The same day the Genoese fleet intirely defeated by the others in Syria, *ib.* Make an alliance with Michael Paleologus; assist him with a fleet against the Venetians, but excommunicated, 549. Its podesta, on accusations against commanders in the Archipelago, obliges all masters to give security for their behaviour, *ib.* Their fleet defeats the Venetians off Durazzo, *ib.* The success of another fleet, *ib.* Absolved from excommunication, and send a fleet to Syria, five of which the Venetians take before Acon, *ib.* They make alliance with Charles of Naples after his defeating Conradine, and with St. Lewis, whose expedition proves fatal to them, with Charles's rapacity, 550. Dissensions throughout the whole Genoese territories, particularly Ventimiglia, and its consequence in Genoa, *ib.* Exiles, who had been restored, raising new disturbances, are condemned to perpetual banishment, and with their friends surprize Chiavari, but soon abandon it, *ib.* Alliance with Charles against the Greek emperor rejected by them, who inform him of the intended invasion; which miscarries, on account of the famous revolt of Sicily, 551. New war between the Pisans and Genoese; but the former submit to terms prescribed, with the occasion of the rupture, *ib.* Peace, after some captures by them, concluded with the Pisans, against Ugolino's inclination, whom, with his family, they starve to death, 552. Their fleet's success in Corsica, *ib.* New rupture with the Pisans, and the occasion, with the success of the Genoese before Pisa, *ib.* The Venetians are jealous of their prosperity, *ib.* Two Genoese vessels sail through Gibraltar Straights westward, *ib.* (B). A rupture between them and Venice, with the occasion, *ib.* Take thirty Venetian gallies, with the vigorous preparations on both sides, 553. Their fleet gains a complete victory over the Venetians on the coast of Dalmatia, *ib.* (D). Peace concluded hereupon, *ib.* The Pisans purchase a truce from Genoa, *ib.* Excommunication against them, and their absolution, *ib.* Their animosities subside, 558. The captains resigning, a foreign podesta made, *ib.* A remarkable revolution in their form of government by the sailors, 559. So that at length the Genoese, in a tumultuous manner, create Buccanigra duke, *ib.* Defeat the Turks in the Black Sea, *ib.* With others take Smyrna; but are betrayed by the Tartars in the Black Sea, *ib.* Their exiles, who rejected the terms offered them, raising a considerable force, send them against the English in Flanders, and most of them slain at Cressly, 560. Fleet, in its way to the Black Sea, among other successes, reduces the isle of Chios, with a decree, on their return, in favour of the pro-

prietors, *ib.* War with the Venetians in the Black Sea, and the occasion of it, with the captures on each side in Caltre, *ib.* The Genoese defeat the united fleets of Venice and Arragon off Pera; and they are beaten in their turn off Sardinia, *ib.* Fleet, under Paganus Auria, surprizes that of Venice on the coast of the Morea, with peace concluded, 561. Rupture between them and the Cypriots, with the proceedings of the former's fleet at Cyprus, 562. Join Andronicus against his father, and place him on the Imperial throne, with a war between them and the Venetians, 563. Fleet defeated, and the revolt of Visconti from the republic, *ib.* Fleet beat the Venetians off Pola in Istria, *ib.* And their further proceedings, *ib.* They storm Chioggia, and besiege Venice, while the Venetians, assisted by the English, oblige the Genoese to retire; and they retake Chioggia, with the successes of the Genoese in their city, 564. Treaty between both republics, *ib.* Conduct pope Urban VI. to their city, who in disgust goes to Lucca, *ib.* Many English and French joining them, they invest Tunis; but conclude a treaty with the infidels, 565. Revolt, massacre most of the French, and declare the marquis of Montferrat captain of the republic, 569. Gallies, with Ladislaus of Naples's fleet, storm Ventimiglia, *ib.* After their making some captures at sea from the Florentines, a peace is concluded, *ib.* Assist Jane II. of Naples against Arragon, 571. Revolt from the duke of Milan, 573. Imprudently renew their former animosities, *ib.* Peace between them and Alphonso, but soon broken, 574. Dispose of their settlements in Corsica and the Black Sea to the bank of St. George, 575. Revolt from the French; and the king of France resigns Savona and his title to Genoa in favour of Francis Sforza of Milan, 576. Their singular services at the siege of Otranto against the Turks, 577. Throw off the yoke of Sforza, whose forces are routed by them, *ib.* Persuaded by the cardinal Paul Fulgosio to put themselves under the protection of Lewis Sforza, 578. Enjoy great tranquillity, 579. Cruelty of the rebels there to the French in the upper citadel, 581. The lower gallantly defended, *ib.* Mutineers, their humility on king Lewis's arrival at Asse, with Charles d'Amboise marching forward, and the king's besieging the city, *ib.* Genoese defeated, and the senate most humbly supplicates for peace, *ib.* Besiege the French garrison in the citadel, with a bold action by Cavallo, and Toscano's ingenuity, the governor being obliged to capitulate, 584. Unconquerable aversion between the Spaniards and them, with an instance of it, and the people attack the Spaniards, 590. Take Fiorenzo, 591. Peace negotiated between the Porte and republic, also between France and Spain, with an article in favour of the Genoese, *ib.* Seize on the marquise of Final, 592. An epidemical disease rages in their camp, 593. Confusion of their army, and a remarkable circumstance for it, 595. Indolence of the antient nobility, whilst the new urge their demands, *ib.* The antient nobility murmur against the new, and retire out of the city, with the proceedings of the new, 596. The latter re-establish the law for incorporating certain citizens with the nobility, and they levy forces, 601. Ambassadors sent to the pope, who espouses the cause of the new nobility, and sends a legate, *ib.* (C). The old nobility forced again to quit the city, levy troops, *ib.* Both factions appeal to different courts, with an embassy extraordinary from the emperor, 602. Several meetings of the old nobility, without any certain resolution; and the people alarmed at don John of Austria's approach, who returns to Naples; with the estates of the antient nobility confiscated and sold, *ib.* These nobility again issue orders for all of their body to quit Genoa, with the king of Spain's answer to the ambassadors from both parties, *ib.* The manner in which hostilities are begun, but forced to retire by order of the duke de Gandia, 603. Proposal in favour of Spain, by the antient nobility, rejected by the senate, *ib.* A reconciliation between the old and new nobility, and the regulations in that government, 604. Long peace after this, *ib.* War with the duke of Savoy, and a treaty between him and France, with the Genoese refusing succours from Spain, 602\*. Their application for assistance from his holiness proving vain, the senate exerts itself vigorously; with the seizure of a large sum that the duke of Guise was sending to Genoa, *ib.* Party defeated by the French, 604\*. Gain several advantages over the Piedmontese through the intrepidity of the Corsicans, when prince Gabriel escapes in disguise, 612. Do not improve their victory over the Piedmontese, 614. Oneille and several other towns taken by them, *ib.* (C). Briga, also Perinaldo, taken by them from the duke of Savoy, 614. The



- The Spanish gallees act in concert with the Genoese, and Lewis XIV. espouses the part of the duke of Savoy, *ib.* Peace with Lewis XIV. after his bombarding their city, 616. Their partiality for Galeazzo, *xiii.* 353. Declare against the Florentines, and appoint Piccinino their general, 386. Defeated by the Venetians in the Tuscan sea, 389. Their hostilities, who are defeated, 434.
- Gennric the Vandal, invited into Africa, with his conquests and reign there, *v.* 705. Hatred against the orthodox, and destroys the Roman edifices, 706. His cruel character displayed, *ib.* Persecution of the orthodox, 707. Softened by the Roman ambassador Severus, and concludes a peace with the emperor Justin, 708. Becomes more friendly to the Christians and Romans, *ib.* Breaks the peace with them; his defeat, last will, and death, 709. The Vandals' irruption into Italy under him, *xiii.* 273.
- Gen-soo, the twenty-fourth emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 52.
- Gen-sioo, empress of Japan, her reign, *iv.* 54, and famed for the appearance of some Japanese deities, 55.
- Gentil, Valentine, his recanting his errors twice, and afterwards burned at Bern, *xiv.* 31.
- Gentiles in Abyssinia, who and whence, *vi.* 189.
- Gennup invellied by prince Henry, and, notwithstanding the bravery of Preston, the governor, surrenders, *xi.* 544.
- George, a Christian physician, cures the caliph Almanfur, *i.* 401. Refuses his large presents, and three fine girls, and honourably dismissed by him, *ib.*
- the patriarch, deposed and imprisoned, *i.* 401.
- Fort St. (Madras) the chief English settlement, described, *iv.* 387. Its disadvantageous situation, 388. Fort and White Town described, *ib.*
- , St. Bank at Genoa, its origin, formation, and wealth, *x.* 569 (F).
- duke of Lunenburg, defeats the Imperialists at Oeldorf with considerable loss, and afterwards takes Hamelen, *xi.* 233.
- prince of Denmark, his generosity, *xii.* 203 (A).
- duke of Lunenburg, and his military exploits, *xv.* 484. Is poisoned and dies, *ib.*
- Lewis, duke of Lunenburg, his early valour, *xv.* 485. Marriage with the only daughter of Zell; his bravery; and the crown of England settled on his mother, the princess Sophia, 486. Forces the house of Wolfenbuttel to quit the French alliance, and succeeds to Zell, *ib.* Surprizes a body of French horse at Offenbergh, and obliges the bishop of Hildesheim to forbear his oppression of the Protestants, *ib.* His succession to the British crown, and electoral dignity acknowledged by France, *ib.* He comes to the throne, with his death and character, 487.
- William, elector of Brandenburg, misery of his dominions under him, *xv.* 493. Misfortune attending him and his relations, *ib.* Ravages by the Dutch and Spaniards in Cleves, *ib.* The emperor sends an army into Saxony against the Protestants, who are defeated and retire into Brandenburg, which they pillage, 494. The Imperialists put garrisons into Pomerania, *ib.* The edict of restitution published by the emperor, and war declared by Gustavus Adolphus, *ib.* Great contributions raised in Brandenburg by the Imperialists, *ib.* The king of Sweden enters Germany, and takes possession of Pomerania, *ib.* The elector fortifies Berlin against him, and obliged to deliver up the fortresses of Spandau and Custrin, with the king's views in this, 495. Magdebourg taken by the Imperialists, and its miseries, *ib.* The elector joins the Swedish party, and Gustavus totally defeats the Imperialists, *ib.* The emperor sends an army against the electors of Saxony and Brandenburg, which is defeated at Lutzen, with the loss of Gustavus, 496. Oxenstiern concludes alliances, and his proposal about Pomerania; upon which, and the defeat of the Swedes, at Nordlingen, the elector concludes a peace with the emperor, *ib.* The Swedes ravage Brandenburg, *ib.* On the death of the duke of Pomerania, the war is carried into that country, and the Swedes appear before Berlin, blocking up Spandau and Custrin, *ib.* The elector dies, *ib.*
- I. king of England, declines the sole mediation between the emperor and Spain, *xv.* 566.
- Georgi Morini, the fiftieth doge of Venice, his character, *x.* 208. Death, *ib.*
- Georgia invaded by Timur Bek, *ii.* 517. Ravaged by him, 552. Also afresh, 559. Again invaded and ravaged, on account of religion, 566. Seven hundred towns plundered and destroyed by him, 568. Invaded by Kara Yusuf, 587. *Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.*
- Revolts from the Persians, 607. Reduced by Malek Shach, *i.* 663. Its wall exasperated against Huseyn Shah, refuses to fight for him, *ii.* 658. 664.
- Georgia, its settlement when planned, *xv.* 93. Encouraged by the Carolinians, *ib.* Account of its charter, 99. Names of the trustees erected into a corporation, and reasons for not employing negroes, 100. First settlement under Oglethorpe; arrival in Carolina, and kind reception, *ib.* Progress of that colony, and arrival of its settlers, 101. Industry of its planters, 102. Progress of that colony, and new names given places by Oglethorpe, 103. Preparations for its defence against the Spaniards, *ib.* Fundamental error in its constitution rectified, *ib.* Further encouragement given, *ib.* Specimen of its raw silk, 104. Several regulations made by the trustees, *ib.* Invaded by the Spaniards, who are repulsed, *ib.* Drooping state, and importance, under governor Ellis, and the advantages from it to Great-Britain, *ib.* Account of its islands and forts, 105. Religious notions of its Indians, *ib.* The accounts why suspicious, *ib.* Its natural productions, *ib.* Variety of game and wild-beasts, with fish, *ib.* Fewness of its hands, *ib.*
- Georgiana subdued to caliph Soliman, *i.* 351. Invaded by Timur Bek, *ii.* 535. The mountainous parts ravaged by him, 538, 539. Natives cruelly butchered by him, 568.
- Georgians ill treated by Alp Arslan, *i.* 663. Prepare to oppose the Mogul generals, *ii.* 319. The former defeated by them, *ib.* Sold for two Abbas per head, 614. Cruelly ravaged by Abbas, 615. Submit upon easy terms, 616.
- Georgis, Amhara, discovers the sham Jacob, who is beheaded, *vi.* 286 (Q).
- Georgissa, princels, banished by Basilides, *vi.* 301.
- Geran, St. dies, *ix.* 369.
- Gerard, founder of an hospital for pilgrims, *vii.* 378. Is succeeded by Dupuy, *ib.*
- Gerbæ isle, on the African coast, reduced, *x.* 565.
- Gerbillon settles the boundaries between China and Russia, *iii.* 741.
- Gergenti, ancient Agregentum, in Sicily, revolts, *i.* 533. Taken by Ali Ebn Kema, 646.
- Gerhard of Oldenburgh, disturbances between him and his brother Christian king of Denmark, but the latter pardons the prince, *xi.* 104.
- , uncle to Valdemar of Sleswick, ambitious designs on the Danish throne, *xii.* 55.
- Geriah besieged and taken by admiral Watson, and its vast plunder, *iv.* 372.
- German princes and bishops intreat the pope to be reconciled to the emperor, *ix.* 673. Upon refusal, they publish the perpetual edict at Frankfort, *ib.* Diet agrees to send auxiliaries to Hungary, but prevented by the pope's death, *x.* 23. Resolves to maintain twenty thousand men against the Turks, 34. Empire involved in great confusion, and a powerful association, with a list of those concerned, 715 (H). Confusion and calamities throughout the empire, and the several methods for remedying the public distress, 716. Marriages of quality, account of them, *xi.* 13 (H). Disorders there so great during the interregnum, that associations are formed for mutual defence, 31. Disputes about the right of electors how determined, *ib.* Princes in the diet at Nuremberg refuse to act against Potho, but grant supplies against the Turks, 105. Diet's proceedings at Nuremberg, with regard to Basil and the Teutonic knights, 123. Privately solicit cardinal Richieu to defeat them; and he sends Marcheville into Germany, and by his means the election of a king of the Romans is delayed, *xi.* 216. Princes, assembly of them at Brunswic, with the treaty and resolutions formed there, 358. Princes associate, and take up arms, under count de Lippe, against the Spaniards, 456. But being repulsed, they disband, *ib.* Artists, &c. intended for Russia, why stopped at Lubeck, and the czar's ambassador imprisoned there, *xiii.* 102. Mercenaries, a mutiny of them, who throw themselves into Parma, and Scaliger's raising the siege thereupon, 316 (A). Pope John's death gives a turn, *ib.* Emperor's election. See Emperor.
- Germans, their reconciliation with pope Eugenius, and the terms, *ix.* 21. Make loud complaints against the pope, with Æneas Sylvius's justifying him, 24. Wimpeling's answer to his letter, and the nuncios expelled from Wurtzburg, 25. Their character, *x.* 624. Obligated to quit Upper Hungary, *xi.* 281. But attacked by the peasants on their march, the disturbances still continue, *ib.*
- Germany, rebellion there, *ix.* 629. Anarchy there by the death



- death of William, count of Holland, 637. Two competitors for that empire, and the pope defers deciding in favour of either, 638. History and constitution, x. 617. How it became the seat of the new western empire, *ib.* Limits and contents; its division into circles or larger provinces, 618. Directors, *ib.* Distribution of its states, *ib.* Provinces, account of them at the death of Lewis the IVth. 624 (A). Dangerous feud there, 670 (U). Pope's authority opposed there, 692. Desolation there by two elections, *ib.* Troubles in the northern parts, with the instability of the German princes to the two competitors for the empire, 694. The whole empire a scene of blood and confusion, *ib.* Appeased, after sending an embassy to the emperor at Prague, by the interposition of the electors and other princes, xi. 62. Measures taken there for terminating the schism in the church, 64. A diet holden at Frankfort, and deputies sent to Rome, with their determination on that head; but the pope evades it, *ib.* Its princes, on the emperor's refusing to chuse an administrator, enter into a confederacy for redressing grievances, 65. They depose Wincefflaus at Laenstein, *ib.* The authors of this deposition, who; and the sentence itself, with the articles against him, *ib.* (H). They chuse in his room Frederick of Brunswick, and, on his assassination, Robert count Palatine, 66. Wincefflaus bears his disgrace with resignation, and his conduct considerably amended; and why he connived at Huss's reformation, 67 (I). Diet at Brin refuses liberty of conscience to Prague, 80. Divisions among the princes of that empire, 84. Each prince's quota when first registered, *ib.* Forces of that empire march into Bohemia under Frederick of Brandenburg and cardinal Julian, who fly precipitately on sight of the Hussites, *ib.* Why an attempt at the diet of Frankfort to reform the head and members of the empire proves abortive, 88 (B). The princes in the diet of Mentz agree that the council of Basil should suspend the pope's deposition, 91. Its division into circles in Albert's reign, *ib.* Complaints against the rapacious exactions of the nuncio there, and on other accounts, 119 (G). Formed into circles, with an account of their directors, 121 (I). Insurrection of the peasants, with a civil war on the death of George the Rich of Bavaria, 125. In the diet of Nuremberg, divided into ten circles, 137. Peasants, great disturbances by them, against which Luther writes with great force, 139. All Germany in commotion, 201. College of the princes and towns claim a privilege of sending deputies to Munster and Osnabrug, being supported in their pretensions by France, 261. At which Ferdinand is greatly incensed, *ib.* Division between the Catholic and Protestant states there, *ib.* Commotions in the north, 319. Distress of the provinces, through a long war, and the measures taken thereupon at Heilbron, 336. Representation of the four associated circles there to the British ministers, 361. Operations between the Russians and Swedes there, xiii. 226. Affairs there, and a mutiny of the Italian troops, 533. Troubles after the death of the emperor Charles VI. xv. 628
- Germontus succeeds his father Swinthorus in Lithuania, and dies in less than a year, xii. 631
- Gerthom, a celebrated rabbi, v. 535
- Gertrudenberg, negotiations there why broken off, ix. 494. Open declaration of the allies there, xi. 345. Project for delivering it to the Spaniards discovered, 463
- Gervais, St. in Geneva, fortified, xiv. 47
- Gesalaic succeeds his father Alaric in Spain, vii. 531
- Gesula, province, discovered, and its public fair, vii. 163. Laws, government, &c. *ib.*
- Getes defeated by Timur Bek, ii. 502. A second defeat, *ib.* A third and more bloody one, 503. Defeat Hussain, and lay siege to Samarkant, and forced to raise it, *ib.* Defeated by Timur Bek, 535. Submit to him, 506. Revolt, and submit afresh, *ib.* 514. Defeated by Mirza Omar, 520. By Timur Bek, 522. Their country totally ruined, 523. Ravaged afresh by the Amirs, 524
- Geyfa, first Christian king of Hungary, and the opposition he meets with from the nobles, xv. 381. Yet proceeds, and makes alliances, then dies, *ib.*
- Ill. king of Hungary, and the administration in the bishops and nobles, xv. 387. Defeats Henry of Austria, who had taken Presburgh, *ib.* The emperor's ravages in passing through his country, *ib.* And the contrary behaviour of the king of France, *ib.* Defeats Lodomerius, and reinstates his father-in-law in Russia, *ib.* Dies, *ib.*
- Ghammas, river in Kaymak, ii. 120
- Gharfanites abandon the siege of Medina, i. 61. Expedition against Mahomet, 68. Defeated by Ebn Rawaha, *ib.*
- Ghayazo'ddin. Malek, invaded by Kothbo'ddin, and put to death, ii. 687
- Ghazwan, a famous mountain in Arabia, i. 30
- Ghebbers, or Fire-worshippers, the place of their worship, ii. 314. Destroyed by Timur Bek, 531. Their desperate defence at Batnir, 545. Massacre of them, *ib.* Desperate fury at Dehli, 547. Cruel massacre at Milcha, *ib.* By land and water, 548. On the mountain of Swalek, and totally destroyed, *ib.*
- Ghed, the Danish admiral, for declining battle, is tried and beheaded, xii. 171
- Ghent, emperor's answer to their embassy, viii. 244. Also to the French ambassadors, *ib.* Surprized, ix. 491. Taken, xi. 416. Pacification, on Antwerp being destroyed, is formed, and its terms, *ib.* Disorders there, and in other towns, which are stopped by the prince, 425. Ravages committed there, and the situation of both parties, *ib.* Submit to king Philip, 430
- Van, killed, xi. 614
- Gherghon plundered by the Moguls, iii. 111
- Gherman gives his daughter to Bajazet, v. 164. Banished and stripped of his dominions by him, 167 (I)
- Ghew-yang-swen, the chief compiler of the Chinese annals, ii. 418 (O)
- Ghey lye-vang, emperor of China, his troublesome reign, iii. 695
- Ghilan, its prince submits to Timur Bek, ii. 518
- Ghilkupruk, province in Karazm, ii. 714
- Ghir, Jehan, Timur Bek's son, marries the famed Khan Zadeh, and his magnificent reception of her, ii. 509. Defeats Komro'ddin in Jetah, *ib.* Immature death, 510
- the son of sultan Akbar, the fourth emperor of the Moguls, iii. 65. Provinces subject to him, *ib.* Offers to his revolted son rejected, 66. Defeats and takes him prisoner, *ib.* Dreadful execution of his accomplices, *ib.* (I). Conspired against by his omrahs, and severe revenge on them, 67. Falls in love with Shir Affeghan's widow, 68. Marries her, *ib.* His war with rajah Rana, and success in Guzurat, *ib.* Outwitted by the son of Dekan, 69. Success against Ozman the Patan, and embassy to Persia, 70. First journey to Kathmir, *ib.* Reduces the Mukhans, *ib.* His treasure attempted by his son, 72. And capital besieged, *ib.* Betrayed by his omrahs, and taken prisoner; yet gains the victory; sends offers of pardon to Khurm, and reduces Guzurat, 73. Gives Khurm a total overthrow, 74. Recalls Mahobet to court, 77. Treats his son-in-law with cruelty and contempt, 78. Defeated and seized on by him, *ib.* Escapes out of his hands, 79. Receives a grand embassy from Great Bukharia, 81. Reconciled to Mahobet, by means of rajah Rana, *ib.* Dies; his character, and acts of cruelty, 82. Charity, *ib.* Credulity, *ib.* Children, 83
- Ghiria, the common residence of Angria, with its forts and castle, iii. 140 (F)
- Gholaites, a sect of the Moslems, i. 278. Extravagant notions of Ali, &c. *ib.*
- Ghost, Holy, Cape, in the Philippines, described, iv. 198
- Ghozia, Mahomet's fourth wife, divorced, i. 115
- Ghurghin, king of Georgia, disoblige Timur Bek, ii. 553. Flies at his approach, *ib.* Obtains a peace from him, 554. Complains of Timur's unjust invasion, 559. Presents and submission to him, 561. Sends him a fresh homage and presents, 565. Invaded anew on account of his being a Christian, and summoned to turn Mahometan, 566. Forced to sue for peace by dint of rich presents, &c. 568
- Giagas settle among the Caffres, with their vile character and customs, vi. 379. List of them in the emperor of Monomugi's service; their horrid ravages and butcheries, and wars against the Monomotapan Amazons, 380
- of Benguela, described, vi. 414. Reception and traffic with our And. Battel, 415. Dreadful ravages in other parts, *ib.* Horrid slaughter of the Benguelans, *ib.* Method of consulting their idols, 416. Of encamping, 417. Of supplying their children by those of their captives, and their intrepidity, *ib.* Funerals, and inhumanity to their sick, 418
- in Congo, their way of burying, vi. 468. And mourning, 469. Great obstructions of the Persian commerce, 552. Sequel of their depredations in other parts, and horrid excursions through the heart of Africa, 558. Different notions about their origin, 559 (A). Irruption into Congo, &c. *ib.* Their success and horrid butcheries, *ib.* Defeated by the Portuguese, 560. Descent on Quiloa, &c. *ib.* Horrid slaughter made of them, and they dispersed



- disperse themselves at Kilomba, 562. Exploits under their new queen, *ib.* Their horrid rites and superstitions, 563. Manner of fighting and encamping, &c. 566 (G). Dress, 567. The exploits of some of their other chiefs, 569
- Ghiazod'din Khan reigns in Kipjak, and whether the same with Kayazo'ddin, *ii.* 443
- Gibelines league against the pope, *ix.* 66. Moderation after expelling the Guelfs out of Geneva, *x.* 558. Origin, 658 (Y) & 667 (P). In Italy declare for Lewis of Bavaria, *xi.* 33. Their factions in Italy, *xiii.* 276
- Gibraltar, whence so named, *i.* 346. Reduced, with an account of the manner, *viii.* 95 (G). Annexed to the crown of Spain from the family of Medina Sidona, *viii.* 216. Pillaged by one of Barbarossa's captains; but the booty and prisoners recovered, 244. Taken by the English, under captains Whitaker and Jumper, with the sea-fight off Malaga, 356. Siege carried on by the Spaniards with obstinacy, but without effect, and at last raised, 357. Taken, *ix.* 486. Siege raised, 488. Prince of Darmstadt reduces it, *xi.* 328. Besieged by the Spaniards, with the loss of half their army, *xv.* 568. Plan of accommodation, and its articles, *ib.* That relating to Spain, *ib.* The siege raised, 569
- Giedrussus succeeds his father-in-law Kukovitus in Lithuania, with his character and peaceable reign, *xii.* 628
- Gigatella, Joseph, a famed cabalist, banished out of Spain, *v.* 576 *sub not.*
- Gigeri, a city in Algiers, described, and the French driven out by the Arabs, *vii.* 225
- Gihun, account of that river, *xiii.* 27 (T)
- Gilbert bishop of Poitiers, his heresies, *ix.* 592
- captain, his expedition, and arrival at New-England; he builds a fort, and returns home with a cargo, *xiv.* 486
- Sir Humphrey, takes possession of Newfoundland for queen Elizabeth, *xiv.* 491
- Gililo, its clandestine spice-trade, *iv.* 492 (D)
- Gillenburgh seized in London, but released, at the intercession of the czar and duke of Orleans, *xii.* 410 (A). *xiii.* 23
- Gingen, account of it, *xv.* 443
- Gingenbach, account of it, *xv.* 445
- Ginvil of Lithuania the first Christian prince, *xii.* 626
- Giodlotus, the seat of that noble family near that of Giedutus, the brother of Narimundus, *xii.* 633 (C)
- Gioseppino, count Calvi, a singer, and afterwards first minister to the duke of Parma, *xiii.* 640. A magnificent palace erected for him, and he grows rich, *ib.* Mortified by the duke, *ib.*
- Giotto, the famous marble tower, when built by him, *xiii.* 317.
- Giovanni, eighth doge of Venice, succeeds his father Maurizio, *x.* 184. Character, *ib.* Barbarous treatment of the bishop of Grada, *ib.* Plot against the doge, with the deposition of him and his son; also other facts, *ib.*
- twelfth doge of Venice, when an impostor personates Obelerio, *x.* 186. Obligated to fly, and his head cut off by the doge, *ib.* Who is forced to quit the city; but is recalled, and at length deposed, 187
- wrongfully executed at Geneva, *xiii.* 431
- Gipal, rajah of Indostan, subdued by Mahmud Gazni, *i.* 630
- Giramo, the fate of that infamous minion, *xiv.* 90
- Girolamo count, assassinated, with the resolute conduct of his countess, who is revenged on the conspirators, and Pincaldoli castle recovered, *xiii.* 434
- Giron, Francisco Hernandez, a malecontent against Gasca, *xiv.* 347. Imprisoned, but released, and sent to reduce Charcas, he raises forces, *ib.* Compromise between the citizens of Cuzco and his soldiers, 348. Heads an insurrection at Cuzco; is taken prisoner, but dismissed, and why, *ib.* Origin of his rebellion at Cuzco, 351. Becomes the leading person, *ib.* Seizes the government of Cuzco, and the occasion for it, what, *ib.* Defeats a royal detachment, 352. Speech to his men, 353. Defeats the Royalists under Alvarado, *ib.* Rich booty taken, *ib.* Inactivity after this victory, *ib.* How he offends the citizens of Cuzco, 354. His cruel retaliations, *ib.* Judgment in chusing encampments, *ib.* Continual skirmishes between him and the Royalists, *ib.* Resolves to attack them, *ib.* But repulsed, and deserted; makes a good retreat, 355. Some officers desert him, particularly Vasquez, *ib.* Speech to his men on it, 356. Flies in the night to the mountains, *ib.* Fate of some of his officers and men, *ib.* Taken and executed at Lima, *ib.*
- Giseliuss inflammatory harangues at Rotterdam, who is suspended and expelled, *xi.* 487
- Gisulphus, the infant son of Guaimarius II. succeeds him in Salerno, *x.* 390. Reception by the emperor Otho and his sister the empress at Capua, *ib.* Deposed by his uncle, with the latter's ingratitude, 392. How restored by Pandulph prince of Capua, *ib.* At his death he leaves Pandulph his successor in Salerno, *ib.*
- Givet, the allies under Coehorn burn the French magazines there, *ix.* 318
- Glaris, its alliance with the cantons, *xv.* 446
- Glinki, after seizing several places, goes over to the Russians, *xiii.* 97. Disgraced and imprisoned, *ib.* Perishes there, 101
- Glutton, a carnivorous animal in Mongolia, *ii.* 251
- Gnaia, Francesco de, his arrival at Sofala, and builds a fort on the island, *vi.* 362. Kind reception from the king of Sofala, and ill requital for it; and his admission into the kingdom raises a tumult, 366. His fort besieged by the Sofalanese, 367. His artful speech to them, who submit to his king's yoke, *ib.* Confirms the election of the traitor, in wrong of the lawful heir, *ib.* Dies of a strange disease, and is succeeded by the king's murderer, 368
- Goa, where situated, and taken by the Portuguese, *iv.* 123. Vast power of its viceroys, 133. Besieged by the whole force of India, 134. Its antient state, city and island described, 166 (Q). Climate, strength, and fine prospect, *ib.* Buildings, inhabitants, &c. 167. Government, viceroy, &c. *ib.* Corruption of its inhabitants, whence, 168. Vast number of idle slaves, *ib.* Chief places depending on its government, and vast number of ecclesiastics, 169 (R). City how supplied, and a strange way of begging, *ib.* The gold coin debased; the place why not abandoned, and its commerce how carried on, 172. The fatal avarice of the viceroys, *ib.* (X). Frequent wars with the Indians, *ib.* (Y). Most likely way to revive the commerce, 173. The Jews there deceived by a false Messiah, and punished by the inquisition, 581 (M)
- Gobbi, province of Loango, *vi.* 540. Described, with their strange wars and customs, *ib.*
- Godinez, Basco, chosen leader by the malecontents of Charcas, *xiv.* 350. His uncontrolled power and executions, but is seized by artifice, 351. His sentence and execution, *ib.*
- Goentz, the Imperialists under him defeated at Jacknaw, near Thabor, by Torstenfon, with the loss of that general, *xi.* 263. Consequences of this victory, *ib.*
- Goertz, baron, his projects against Augustus king of Poland and the elector of Hanover, *xii.* 410. Success at the court of Moscow, and his conferences with the czar in Holland, *ib.* Notice of his intrigue given by the duke of Orleans to the court of London, *ib.* Seized at the Hague, but released, *ib.* *xiii.* 233. Posts to Moscow, and his preliminaries of the conferences at Abland, *xii.* 411. Measures in Sweden become odious to the people; and at Ahland he finishes with Osterman the peace between the czar and the king of Sweden, with its stipulations, *ib.* He and his secretary, &c. arrested, 412. A charge drawn up against him, who defends himself with great ability, 414. He is condemned and executed; with his complaints in his justification, *ib.* (A)
- baron, projects of that prime minister of Sweden to be executed by his master and the czar, *xiii.* 232
- Gog and Magog, or Yajuj and Majuj, in West Tartary, described, *ii.* 121. Also its surprising bank, *ib.*
- Goga, a sea-port town in Indostan, its commerce, &c. *iii.* 9
- Khan, defeated and killed in Guzurat, *iii.* 59
- Gohens, the Dutch under him take Ceylon; who are left in full possession by the king of that island, *xi.* 586
- Gojam, a kingdom in Abyssinia, described, and surrounded by the Nile, *vi.* 173
- Gokomatz, the hundred and first emperor of Japan, *iv.* 60
- Golconda, when taken by the great mogul, *iii.* 117 (D). Its kingdom described; its climate, ports, trade, &c. 150. Capital, and other fortresses, 151. Riches and jewels of its kings, greater and lesser omrahs, *ib.* Its modern history since the conquest of it, 152. Its declining state, and the power of the omrahs, 154. Subdued by Aurengzeb, 158. Its fortress besieged by Aurengzeb, 117, 153. The siege raised, *ib.* Besieged afresh, and surrendered to him, 158 (X)
- Gold and Silver islands, where situated; vainly fought for by the Europeans, *iv.* 73. In Java, undiscovered by the Dutch.



- Dutch, and carefully concealed by the Indians from the Europeans, iv. 466
- Gold Coast, its geography and division, and where it begins, vi. 643. European settlements described, 646. The natives described, with their senseless indolence; their women, 679. Dress their chief delight, 680. The Mulattoes described, ib. Method of building, 681. Diet and marriages, ib. Polygamy, and privileges of the wives, 682. Shameful prostitution of their wives, ib. Their fertility, ib. Manner of naming their infants, and how circumcised, 683. Adultery how punished, ib. Laws about inheritance, 684. Other peculiar laws and customs, ib. Manner of initiating their prostitutes for public use, 685. Manner of saluting, visiting, &c. 686. Treatment of slaves, 687. Their arts, manufactures, &c. ib. Corn-markets, 688. Fairs and festivals, ib. Mock fights, 689. Musical instruments, &c. ib. Their fear of death, ib. Method of treating their patients, ib. Superstitious customs concerning them, and previous to their burials, 691. Obsequies performed, 692. Orations over their graves, 693. Belief of a God, 694. Obligatory engagements how performed, 695. Fetiches consulted in all extraordinary cases, 696. Religious ceremonies, ib. Notions of a future state, 698. Of the devil, 699. How represented and worshipped, and their notion of apparitions, ib. Time how divided by them, 700. Government, ib. Royal succession how regulated, 701. Instalments expensive to the nobility, 702. Poor how usefully employed, 703. Despotic power of rich kings, ib. Simplicity of their living, 704. Hire out their troops, and princes how educated, ib. Officers of state, 705. Courts of judicature, ib. Causes for entering upon a war, 706. Martial discipline, 707. Weapons, dress, &c. ib. Air, weather, and climate, 708. Tides and currents, 709. Seasons, 710. Rain esteemed unwholesome, 711. Their tornadoes, ib. Land-cloud, what, 712. Trade-winds, ib. Various quadrupeds, 713, 718. Various fowls, ib. Reptiles, 720. Fresh water and sea fish, 721. Trees, plants, roots, &c. 722. Grain, herbs, &c. 724. Inland country from the river Sierra Leone to that of Senegal, vii. 39. Gold how searched for and refined by the negroes on that coast, vi. 677. How sophisticated by them, ib. (A). Methods of trying it, 678. Weights used by them, and yearly exports of it by the Europeans, ib.
- and silver, edict against wearing, ix. 349
- chain in Peru, on what occasion made, xiv. 411. Another account of the occasion, by Garcilasso, ib. Its length and weight, ib. But never found by the Spaniards, after all their search, 412. Gives name to Huascar, the Inca's son, ib. Two famous lumps of gold found in Guarrano district, 463
- Goletta, a province belonging to Tunis, vii. 295. Described, 299 (F). Taken by the Maltese, 454. See Gouletta and Guletta
- Golowin, governor of Siberia, his splendid retinue, and the limits of both empires fixed at the river Kerbechi, with the remarkable terms in which the peace is sworn to, xiii. 186. Two important points inferred from this form of treaty, with two copies in Latin made of it, and the treaty engraved on two large pillars, ib.
- Goltz defeated by the Swedes, with the loss of his whole convoy, xii. 594
- Gomara, one of the Canary Islands, described, vi. 137
- Gombroon city described, iv. 378. English settlement there, and unhealthy situation, ib. Traffic how regulated, 380 (C). Coin used in it, 381 (D)
- Gomez the pilot abandons Magellan, iv. 176. His unlucky search after the north passage, 258 (F)
- Gonara, the hundred and sixth emperor of Japan, iv. 60
- Gondebaut, as Clothaire's son, brought into France, and proclaimed Chilperic's heir, viii. 637. With his friend stands out a siege, ib. But is betrayed by Mummol, who is put to death by Gontran's orders, 638
- Gonfalonier, or standard-bearer of justice, institution of in Florence, and other regulations, xiii. 290
- Gonsalvo, the great captain, honours done him by the king of France, and his disgrace, x. 498
- Defeats the French, xiii. 461. Death, viii. 229
- Gontran, Sigebert, and Chilperic, often fall out, and as often reconciled, viii. 632
- king of Burgundy, takes Fredegonde and her son into his protection, viii. 636. Disabuses Childebert, and engages him to assist in suppressing Gondebaut, 637. Retains Fredegonde, and enquires into Chilperic's murder, and after Clovis's body, with what passed, 638. Enters into a war with the Visigoths, and is obdurate in it, though unsuccessful, 639. Obligated to keep the balance even between Fredegonde and Brunehaut, as endangered from the intrigues of both, ib. His death, 641. Is succeeded by Childebert, ib.
- Gonzaga's treachery to the Venetians, notwithstanding his assurances, discovered by Mellate, and a fleet equipped against him, x. 24
- Lewis, his origin and marriage, with his extirpating Passerino's family, and having the investiture of Mantua, xiv. 112. His death and illness, ib.
- Gonzales, the first independent count of Castile, tradition about him, vii. 629. His great qualities, and those of his consort, ib. Their son reckoned to be don Ferdinand Gonzales, though his genealogy is otherwise accounted for, ib.
- don Ferdinand, history and establishment of his family, vii. 629. Noble character, and bravery at the battle of Simanca, ib. Disobeys the king of Leon, and is imprisoned; but afterwards released, and reconciled, ib. His daughter married to don Ordogno of Leon, who parts with her, 630. Juicious remark of Ferreras on Gonzales's exploits, ib. (D). Takes share with Ordogno in the war against the Moors, 630. Advances don Ordogno the Wicked to the throne of Leon, 631. Thereby breaks with his brother in law don Garcias of Navarre, who beats and takes him prisoner, ib. Is afterwards sent home, but makes war on the infidels with various success, ib. Deprives the Vela family of the county of Alva, ib. Death, 632
- Goram province described, vii. 110
- Goranno, king of Zeila. See Granhe, vi. 327
- Gordian's tomb, a famed inscription upon it, v. 503
- Gordish province in Karazm, ii. 714
- Gordon, or Gurdun, Ayazzo'ddin, the sixteenth shah of Hormuz, invaded by Nein, with a rich capture of Indian ships, ii. 685. Taken prisoner. 686. Makes his escape by means of a storm; returns to his kingdom, and dies, ibid.
- shah, kept prisoner by Isuf Shahabo'ddin, ii. 686. Beheaded by him, 687
- general, trains a regiment of 5000 men in Russia, xiii. 185
- governor of Pensylvania, his demand on the province submitted to, and what, xv. 123
- Goree, island on the river Gambia, described, vii. 78. Fortified by the Dutch, and taken by M. de Casse, 79. Who defends it against the Dutch, with its extensive commerce, 80. Proposals for securing its advantageous trade, and tariffs settled by De Brue, 81. Convenient harbour, 85. Taken by the English, xv. 623
- Gorgora church and monastery built and richly endowed, vi. 287
- Gorj, whether the same with the Khofars and Kafjaks; they defeat the Mahometans, ii. 185
- Gori, who; and 3000 of them slain by Bendokdar, ii. 237 (N)
- Gormo Angle II. succeeds his father Frotho VI. and the sixty-third king of Denmark, xi. 689. His equitable character and death, ib.
- III. or the Old, succeeds his father Harold V. and the sixty-fifth king of Denmark, xi. 689. His character, and enmity to the Christians, with the warlike exploits of his two sons in England and Ireland, 690. Gormo's devastations against the Christians in Saxony, and his defeat by Henry the Fowler, who grants him peace; with his death, ibid.
- Gormon, the fifty-second monarch from Dan in Denmark, xi. 681. Profound skill in magic and the secrets of nature, with his pacific life, and dying old, ib.
- Gorod, its explanation, xiii. 4 (D)
- Gossij Rakava, the seventy-seventh emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 57
- Gotha taken and dismantled, xi. 173
- Gothar succeeds his father Egil in Sweden, xii. 224. His ambassador to demand the daughter of Asmund king of Denmark murdered in Halland by robbers, for which he declares war; with his successes, and carrying off his mistress in triumph, ib. His defeat and death, ib.
- Gothland, by whom annexed to Sweden, xii. 229. Insurrection there, and the occasion, 238. Swedes at last obliged to quit the isle, which is ceded to Denmark, 251. Depredations from that isle, 262. Sweden disputes with Denmark about it; the citadel of which Norby, the governor, surrenders to Frederick of Denmark, 276. By a congress at Malmoe, the dispute is left to the decision of the Hanse Towns, ib.



- Goths, or Swedes, after Eric's death, are long harrassed with civil wars, xii. 218 (B). The form of Government then among them, with the names of princes down to Gylfo, and some others, ib.
- kingdom, by whom annexed with Sweden, xii. 121, 123. Their first irruption into Tuscany, xiii. 273. And spreading over all Italy, with the succession of their kings, ibid.
- Gotrick succeeds his father Gormon I. the fifty-third king of Denmark, xi. 681. Reduces the rebellious Saxons, and subdues Sweden, ib. Recovers Saxony a second time, ib. After Gotrick's over-running several provinces of the Franks, he is treacherously assassinated, with his noble character, ibid.
- Gottenburg, the Swedes take thirty vessels laden with provisions there, xii. 194
- Gottorp palace stripped by the Danes, xi. 652 (E). The duke by treaty renounces the sovereignty he assumed, &c. 188. Writes a letter to the king, as entirely satisfied with what had passed, ib.
- Gouda, the ninetyeth emperor of Japan in vain invaded by the Tartars, iv. 59
- Govina, one of the large cataracts of the river Senegal, vii. 113
- Gouletta and Tunistaken by the Turks, viii. 265
- Gounong-Api, one of the Banda islands, its destructive volcano, iv. 489
- Gourgues, M. de, resolves to revenge Ribaut and his people massacred in Florida; with his character, and an account of him, xv. 80. After a tedious voyage from France, he lands in Florida, 81. Interview and alliance with Saturiova and several Paraouslies, ib. Surprises Fort Matheo (Caroline), ib. All the Spaniards killed or hanged on a tree, with the inscription thereon, 82. Reflexion on this affair, ib. Sails for Europe, and after great distress arrives in France, where he is disgraced; but restored to favour, 83. Appointed admiral of Portugal; but dies before he takes possession, ib.
- Goutins, M. des, his integrity and acquittal, xiv. 644
- Gowris, their royal treasures carried off by Timur Bek, ii. 512
- Amir's revolt and punishment, ii. 514
- Goyogouin chief baptized Lewis, and entertainment thereupon, xiv. 610
- chief pays a pacific visit to Quebec, and the governor's answer, xiv. 602
- Goza island described, vii. 375. Strength, fine air, and springs, 376. Castle besieged, and the bravery of an English gunner, 464. Taken, ib.
- Gooan, Deodat de, a knight of Rhodes, kills a monstrous crocodile, vii. 397. Is degraded and imprisoned for it by the grand master; restored by him, 398. Gets himself chosen grand master, 399. His speech to the chapter; defeats the Turks at sea, also the Saracens, with his answer to the pope, and letters to the priors, ib. Reply to the pope's complaint, denies assistance to Paleologus, and begs leave to resign, 400. His public works, death, and epitaph, ib.
- Gooch, lieutenant-governor of Virginia, xv. 376
- Gookin, governor of Pennsylvania, his mean proposition to the assembly, and their answer in money, xv. 121. His character, ib. (B)
- Grada, by whom made the metropolitan see of Venice, ix. 545
- Gradonico, Pietro, the forty-ninth doge of Venice, concludes a truce with the Istrians, x. 206. War with the Genoese renewed, and the successes against them in Greece, ib. Two dangerous plots in his time, 207. Death, 208
- Bartolomeo, the fifty-third doge of Venice, his character, x. 212. Edward III. of England refused assistance by him against Philip of France, though demanded in person, ib.
- Giovanni, the fifty-seventh doge of Venice, succeeds Faliero, x. 214. War with Lewis of Hungary, and death, ib.
- Graebenstein, the French camp there attacked by the allies, xv. 627
- Graham, Patrick, made archbishop and primate of Scotland, x. 33
- Graili, John de, captal de Buch, returns the king of France his patent of Nemours, ix. 107
- Grain Coast in Guinea described, vii. 12. Towns, &c. ib. Buildings, 13. Climate and produce, ib. Commerce, 14. Customs and language, ib. Government, and country on MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.
- each side of the river Sestos, 15. Their manners, 16. Marriages, ib. Funerals, ib. Arts, artists, and Portuguese Mulattoes, 17
- Gram, king of Denmark, his dethroning of the Swedish monarch Sigtrug, and unites both kingdoms, xii. 218. But is driven out or slain, ib.
- succeeds his father Skioldo, fifth king of Denmark, xi. 665. His successful reign, and annexing Sweden to his crown; with his death, issue, and character, ib.
- Gran taken, xii. 542
- Granada coasts ravaged by Al Hasan, i. 552. King dethroned, viii. 81. Troops rout the Castilians, with the loss of Sancho, archbishop of Toledo, 24. Masters Andalusia, but forced to retire, ib. King buys a separate peace, 31. A revolution there, 32. King prevents succours from Africa, renewing his intrigues with Juan Emanuel, &c. 40. Granada and Portugal send to king Juan for renewing the truce, 69. A revolution there, 87. Makes several incursions as confederate to Navarre, ib. King takes several places for Navarre, 88. Irruption by the marquis of Cadiz into it, and his motives, 204 (D). Miserable end of their king Abul Hossien, ib. not in fin. Incidents rendering this war of Granada general, 204. King Muly Abul Abdali defeated and taken prisoner, 206. But released and honourably sent home, ib. Great alteration in managing the war with Granada, ib. Abul Hossien refused a peace; which is granted the monarch of Fez, ib. More alterations, and the military system much improved, 207. The king punctual in his capitulations, with his generosity to the Moors, ib. In an insurrection at Saragossa, the chief inquisitor murdered, ib. Among the adventurers in this war an English lord, by the Spaniards stiled earl Escalas, ib. Plain ravaged, 210. Invested by their king, ib. The whole royal family endangered by a fire in their tent, 211. Santa Fé built on this occasion, ib. Which facilitates the taking Granada, after a long siege, ib. Capitulation, ib. (F). Mutiny of the inhabitants against their king quelled by don Ferdinand, 212. Their majesties entry into it, after the Moors had holden it 779 years, ib.
- city, in Nicaragua province, described; its smuggling, and degeneracy of the inhabitants from their predecessors, xiv. 443
- New, a province of Terra-Firma, described; its produce, climate, &c. xiv. 452
- Granby, marquis, his valour at Graebenstein, x. 627
- Grange, Le, his successful expedition to Newfoundland, and Charlevoix's exaggeration, xiv. 681 (N). Is attacked and taken in his return, 682
- Granha, or Gorhannoo, king of Zeila, his hatred and opposition against the Portuguese, vi. 327. Outwitted and defeated, 328
- Granne sent with an army against Adian Segued, vi. 258. Ravages Abyssinia, ib. Defeated by Gama, 261. Fresh challenge to him, and sends for fresh supplies from the Porte, 262. Defeats the Portuguese, 263. Inhuman behaviour to don Christopher de Gama, ib. Attacks the Portuguese afresh, 267. Shot to death by one of their marksmen, and his army totally routed, ib. His head carried through all Abyssinia, 268. Wife's narrow escape, ib.
- , his hatred against the Portuguese, whence, vi. 327. Wars with them in Abyssinia, ib.
- Grant, major, his brave defence, and taken prisoner to Fort du Quesne, xiv. 714
- colonel James, his expedition against the Cherokees, xv. 98. Reduces them, and a treaty concluded, ib.
- Granville, cardinal, his transactions, with other occurrences, viii. 255. Appointed viceroy of Naples, with his character; and, among other transactions, he assists don John of Austria against the Turks, x. 508. Raises large sums from the Neapolitans, ib. Opposes the incroachments of the clergy, and recalled to Spain by don John's interest, 509, xi. 404. Heart-burnings caused in the Low Countries through his rigour, ib.
- Granville, Fort, surprised and burned by the enemy, xiv. 711
- Gratiosa, one of the Canaries, described, vi. 131
- Gratz, after a long siege, submits on honourable terms, xi. 87
- Grave, &c. surrender to Parma, xi. 433
- Gravelines reduced by Orleans, after forty days open trenches, ix. 414. Taken by Leopold after sixty-nine days open trenches, 437
- Graydon, admiral, sent to Jamaica, and his brutal character, xv. 296. Wilfully lets du Casse's squadron escape, yet justified by the Admiralty, ib. A vote and address of the lords against him, ib.



Grecian empire miserably divided by the Latins, ii. 194.  
 Invaded by the Turks, 237. Restored by Tarkoniatas, and ruined by his successors, 242  
 Gregorian calendar. See Calendar  
 Gregory, an African tyrant, stripped of his dominions by the Moslems, i. 251  
 — an Iberian, ravages Mesopotamia, i. 383  
 — the Armenian patriarch, his visit to his brother the Egyptian wazir, and his death there, i. 703  
 — abbot, helps Ludolph in his Ethiopic history, and his character, vi. 162. Account of Basilides's peaceable reign, opposite to that of the Jesuits, 310  
 — his rebellion in Trebizond defeated, ii. 210  
 —, the famous saint of Tours, falsely accused, and for what, viii. 634  
 — VI. pope, deposed for simony; and the nomination being referred to the emperor, he proposes Suidger (Hede-ger), ix. 558. Receives the allegiance of the dukes of Benevento and Capua, 564. Threatens to excommunicate the king of France for simony, ib. Sends his legates into Germany to hold a council; but being prevented by the emperor, they return to Italy, ib.  
 — VII. (Hildebrand), chosen pope after Alexander II. and character, ix. 563. Excommunicates Guiscard, and proposes a croisade against the Saracens, 564. Claims Hungary and Russia as apostolic fiefs, 565. Offers Sueuo king of Denmark a province in Italy possessed by heretics, ib. A conspiracy formed in Rome against the pope, whom Cincius the prefect seizes and confines, ib. But forced to deliver him up next day, ib. New designs entered into against the pope, ib. Accuses the emperor of several crimes, citing him to appear before the council at Rome, 566. Excommunicates the emperor, ib. Absolving power first assumed by him, ib. (M). Several of the most remarkable resolutions in Worms council called *Dictatus Papæ*, ib. (N). Sets out for Rome with countess Matilda for Augs-burg diet, and confers the title of king on the duke of Croatia and Dalmatia, 567. Receives an embassy from Roger count of Sicily, also from Anzir king of Mauritania, with their several desires, ib. Ignorant of the emperor's design, retires with Matilda to Canosa, and grants absolution to the German bishops, with the terms, ib. Greatly embarrassed between both emperors chosen, 568. His letter to all the faithful, ib. His wavering behaviour greatly blamed, ib. Sends legates into Britain and other kingdoms, and appoints a synod at Rome, with its proceedings, 569. Cardinal Hugh, and several others, both bishops and laity, excommunicated, ib. His letters to the bishop of Girona and Ladislaus king of Hungary, 570. He threatens William king of England with excommunication, and actually excommunicates Boleslaus king of Poland, and refuses to allow the Bohemians to worship in the Slavonic tongue, ib. Reconciled to the Normans, ib. Sends a gold crown to Rodolphus, with an arrogant verse, ib. He exhorts the Germans and others to assist Rodolphus, who is intirely defeated near Mersburg and slain, ib. Receives an embassy from the patriarch of Armenia, with his answer; he also sends a legate to preside at the council of Lyons, ib. Writes several letters to France and all the faithful, 571. Why he writes a severe letter to Lanfranc of Canterbury, and excommunicates the prince of Capua, ib. In some measure consents to an accommodation with the emperor Henry IV. whom the Romans greatly favour, 572. In a council excommunicating Henry, the anti-pope and all his adherents retire to Salerno, ib. Writes to William king of England to be reconciled to his brother Odo, but without success, ib. Dies, recommending several for his successors, ib.  
 — VIII. succeeds pope Urban III. who greatly promotes a new croisade, ix. 606. But dies at Pisa, ib.  
 — IX. chosen pope after Honorius III. ix. 625. Obliges the emperor by a bull to go to the Holy Land, but, returning from sea, excommunicated, ib. Harkens to an accommodation, ix. 627. Council at Thoulouse makes sixteen very severe canons against heretics, ib. His severe edict against them, and several burnt, ib. Quits Rome, and reconciles the inhabitants of Perugia; also intreats the emperor to send succours to the Holy Land, 627. Reconciles the Romans and Viterbans, &c. 628. Makes a composition with the Romans to recal their army from Campania, ib. Appoints a bishop in Russia, with visitors through Christendom; and friars sent into Bithynia to explain the Roman rites; also Franciscans to the sultan of Damascus, ib. Sends missionaries into Georgia, Babylon, and Africa, ib. Why he excommunicates the Florentines, and a ge-

neral expedition into Syria resolved on, 629. Exhorts the king of France to march against the Albigenses, and orders a croisade against the Stadingi; with the rise of these heretics, ib. (K). Nine thousand of them being slain in an engagement, the rest submit to Rome, ib. Obliges the Romans to an accommodation, ib. Expelled, with the hostilities between his army and the Romans; and regulations about Separatists, and punishing heretics, ib. Returns to Rome, 630. Offers his mediation between the emperor and the Lombards, ib. The treaty being broke off, the pope sides with the confederates, ib. Excommunicates the emperor, who writes to the Christian powers in his own justification, 631. Summons a council at Rome, with the emperor's behaviour in that affair, 632. Orders a croisade for Hungary against the Tartars, ib. Death and character, ib.

Gregory X. chosen pope, ix. 643, & x. 18. Sends succours to the Holy Land, and appoints a general council at Lyons, ix. 643. Among other ecclesiastical proceedings, he lays Milan under an interdict, 644. Proceedings in the council at Lyons, ib. Has a conference with Alphonso king of Castile, and dies, 645

— XI. succeeds pope Urban IV. ix. 688. Prohibits publickly discoursing of some tenets maintained by friars in Spain, ib. Reforms the church discipline, ib. Concludes an accommodation with the Visconti, and proposes to return to Rome, ib. Sends missionaries to the Greek emperor, Armenia, &c. 690. Writes to Cantacuzenus, and his son Emanuel; and a general revolt in Italy against him, ib. Excommunicates the Florentines, declaring them slaves, with the confiscation of their goods; and grants a bull for electing Winceslaus Emperor, who is crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, ib. Returns to Rome, and is joyfully received, 691. The Romans retain the sovereignty of the city, and a reconciliation between the pope and confederates, ib. Orders the chancellor of Oxford to imprison Wickliffe, who is protected by several nobles and Londoners; with the chief doctrines of which he was accused, ib. (P). The papal authority opposed in Germany; his death, and the Romans compel the cardinals to chuse an Italian, 692

— XII. chosen pope after Innocent VII. promises to abdicate, and exhorts the anti-pope to resign, ix. 702. But alters his mind, and is deserted by his cardinals, who appeal from him, ib. They also desert Benedict, and, retiring to Leghorn, correspond with those at Pisa, 703. At the former city both cardinals unite, and appoint a general council at Pisa; the popes doing so at other places, ib. His deputies approve of the council at Constance, which confirms all his proceedings, whereupon he abdicates, and is decreed to be next the pope, 710

— XIII. succeeds Pius V. with an account of him, x. 110 (F). Alters the style, which is received in Spain, viii. 269. Composes the intestine divisions in Genoa, x. 111. Prosecutes the Turkish war, ib. Expresses joy for the massacre of the Protestants at Paris, ib. Grants a bull for the war against the Hugonots, and, on the death of the emperor, confirms Bathori's election to Poland, ib. Founds colleges for Greek children and Jewish converts, ib. His mediation desired between Spain and Flanders, ib. Founds an English college at Rome, and prevails on Philip of Spain to assist the Irish rebels, 112. Interests himself in the succession to Portugal; but his mediation rejected by Philip of Spain, who is acknowledged king; and his dispute with Venice accommodated, ib. Concludes a peace between Muscovy and Poland, and releases the grand master of Malta, imprisoned by the knights, ib. Reforms the calendar, which the Greeks and Protestants reject, ib. Excommunicates and deposes the electoral prince of Cologne, who turned Protestant, ib. Suspected of having encouraged assassinating queen Elizabeth, ib. Orders a weekly sermon for the Jews, and refuses the request of the duke of Guise against the king of Navarre and prince of Conde, 113. Embassy to him from Japan, supposed to be an imposition of the jesuits, ib. (H). Death of the pope, and account of him and his administration; with great disorders during the vacancy, ib. A promotion of cardinals, and a college founded at Rome for the Maronites, &c. ib. (G)

— XIV. after great factions, succeeds pope Urban VII. with an account of him, x. 124. Publishes a jubilee, and declares for the league, ib. Sends an army into France, and excommunicates Henry as a relapsed heretic, ix. 299. Who publishes an edict against the pope's bull; and the pope dies, x. 124

Gregory



- Gregory XV. succeeds pope Paul V. with an account of him, x. 136, 137 (U). Publishes an universal jubilee, and creates several new saints, *ib.* Excites the king of France and the Papists to root out the Hugonots, with an account of Dominic de Jesu Maria, the tool he sent thither, *ib.* (W). Proceedings by bulls and otherwise, with endeavours to extirpate the Protestants every where, 137. He grants a dispensation to the infant of Spain to marry the prince of Wales; and receiving the deposit of the Valteline from the Spaniards, dies, 138. His character, and promotion of cardinals, among which was Richlieu, *ib.*
- XV. confirms all the old grants to the order of Malta; but infringes those of the Italic tongue, vii. 503
- Grenada island, described, xv. 219. The French settle in it, with their barbarous treatment of the natives, *ib.* Sold into different hands, and at last surrendered to the French king, *ib.* Ceded with the Grenadines, by the treaty of Paris, to Great-Britain, *ib.* Produce and soil of these islands, *ib.* Its chief port Lewis, *ib.*
- Grenadillo de China plant, xiv. 434
- Grenville, Sir Richard, his expedition to North-America, and leaving a colony at Roanoke, under captain Lane, xiv. 485. Second arrival at Roanoke; and finding none of the former colony, leaves fifteen men there, 486
- governor of Barbadoes, opposes the settlement of Tobago by the French, xv. 197. Indignation of the nation against the latter's breach of treaty, *ib.* An address to his majesty on this head over-ruled, and their settlement revoked, *ib.*
- Grey, governor of Barbadoes, and acts passed, xv. 188. Miserable state of the island, and he goes for England, 189
- Greek fleet sent against Egypt shipwrecked, i. 525.—Authors very defective in their oriental history, ii. 194—198—202. Empire in a woful state, 237—238.—Monarch, his vast imports from India, and duties upon them, iv. 98. Cause of its fall by the Saracens, 99.—Emperor's ambassadors swear submission to the see of Rome, ix. 647.—Gives Bari to Argyrus, creating him prince of Puglia, x. 398. With the encroachments of the Normans, *ib.* Emperor's arrival at Genoa, who obtains assistance from them, 568. Arrival at Ferrara for reconciliation to the Roman church, which is completed at Florence, xiii. 407. Loses his life in defence of Constantinople, which the Othmans take, 412
- Greeks of Mesr driven by the Moslems into Alexandria, i. 236. Their gallant defence of it, *ib.* Surrender, and are driven out of it, 237
- driven out of Mesopotamia, i. 471. Invade the Moslem empire, and their conquests in it, i. 543. Success against Saifo'ddawla, 550. Defeated in Calabria by Saklabi, and by Saifo'ddawla, 552. They outwit and overthrow him, 554. Butcheries at Ain Zarba, 556. At Aleppo, 557. Signal defeat by Al Hassan, 559. And success in Cilicia, 560. Ravages in Syria, 564. And Armenia, 565. Dreadful inroads into Mesopotamia, 566. And Dyar Rabia, 567. Defeated with great loss, *ib.* Conquests in Syria, 572. Assist Abu-Fadayel against the Egyptians, 594. Their success and ravages in Syria, 595
- of Asia, fortify their mountains, and grow opulent, ii. 238. Oppressed by Paleologus, lose their courage, and are invaded by the Turks, *ib.*
- of Europe, take possession of Bari, x. 384. Take Ascoli, 390. After much ravaging besiege Capua, but rise from it; and the emperor Otho ravaging the territories of the Greeks defeats them, 391. Strengthen themselves in Italy, and appoint a new magistrate, called Cataphan, at Bari, with the difference between this officer and captain, 394 (I). Extent of their dominions, *ib.* (K). Several cities and princes submit to them, 396
- religion, when introduced into Kiow, &c. xiii. 89
- Green islands in the South Sea, described, v. 15
- Greenland, or Terra de Cortereal, discovered, and whence so called, viii. 459
- Greenville, governor of Barbadoes, presents abolished in person, and a new house built for him, xv. 189. Disagreeable to the islanders, and an act for paper-money passed, 190. Dies on his voyage to England, *ib.*
- Greeting, middling, what is meant by it, v. 534 (N)
- Griffenfelt, chancellor, his disgrace, with the manner of seizing him, xii. 191. His crime and condemnation, which is turned to perpetual imprisonment, *ib.*
- Griffin sent commander into India, iv. 366. Success against the French, and his conduct blamed, *ib.*
- Griffon, though kindly treated by his brother Pepin, revolts, and engages the Saxons to join him, viii. 663. Receives terms from Pepin, *ib.* But on the death of Odilon of Bavaria, usurps the duchy from his nephew Tassilon; and Griffon taken, with other principal persons, and carried into France, *ib.* Though Pepin gives him the title of duke, he still cabals, *ib.* Killed, and the Bretons, &c. humbled, 665
- Grijalva's voyage, xiv. 170. His first endeavours to establish an intercourse, fruitless, but afterwards defeating the Indians, possesses their town, 171. Settles an intercourse with the Indians of Tobasco, and presents passed between him and the cazique, *ib.* An exchange and profitable traffic begun on his landing, 172. In his voyage he discovers several islands, *ib.* Returns to Cuba, *ib.*
- Grijalva, John de, his discovery of New Spain, and first hint to Cortez, xv. 336
- Grimani, Antonio, the seventy-sixth doge of Venice, his character, x. 315. Death, 320 (B)
- cardinal, arrives as viceroy at Naples, x. 539
- Grimoald revolts, but is reduced by Pepin and Lewis, ix. 516
- of Benevento, becomes tributary to Charlemagne; with invasions and defeats of the Saracens, ix. 518. Slain, and Sicco made prince of Benevento, 519
- succeeds his father Arechis in Benevento, x. 378. Conditions imposed upon him before his departure from Charlemagne; and he, with Pepin's general, &c. attacks the Greeks after landing, and intirely defeats them, *ib.* (B). Renounces his allegiance to Charlemagne, and his principality ravaged by the Franks under Pepin and Lewis, with the Franks taking several places; his death, and epitaph still extant, 379
- II. succeeds Grimoald in Benevento, with his character, x. 379. Peace between Charlemagne and him, who becomes tributary, and invests Naples by sea and land, *ib.* The Neapolitans intirely defeated, and a treaty agreed to, *ib.* Murdered by the count of Confia, &c. *ib.*
- Grilgras, savages, and why so called, xv. 45
- Griska, an account of one, xiii. 141
- Grisons expel the duke of Rohan, and resume the Valteline, viii. 299. Checked by the Austrians, who are defeated near Bregentz by the Swiss, xi. 120. Divided into three leagues, xv. 448 (B)
- Gritti, Andrea, the seventy-seventh doge of Venice, x. 320. The Imperialists under Bourbon recover Vercelli; and under John de Medicis take Biagradio, *ib.* Death and character, 343
- Grombach, his accusation against Frederick Elector Palatine, xi. 172. His death, 173
- Grodno, account of, xii. 623
- Grœnveldt, honours done him and his garrison by the duke of Parma, xi. 434
- Groningen, its ancient history, xi. 400. Compelled to pay the contingent, 458
- island in the South Sea described, v. 36
- Grotius, account of his imprisonment in Louvestein castle, and his escape by means of his wife, xi. 494 (A)
- Grovestein penetrates into France, ix. 503. Villar's retaliation, by sending Pasteur into Zealand, *ib.*
- Guacacamba, where situated, and described, xiv. 288
- Guacachula, expedition thither by Cortez against the Mexicans, xiv. 242
- Guacanagari, a potent cazique or king of Hispaniola, xiv. 144
- Guadalajara (Galicia) audience in Mexico Proper, described, xiv. 436. Site, division, and capital, *ib.* When and by whom colonized, with an account of the inhabitants, *ib.* Why no minute description of it, 437. Its sea-coasts purposely deserted, *ib.* Mestizoes its chief strength, and their good character, *ib.* Healthiness of the climate, *ib.*
- Guadeloupe, expedition of the English against it, after their ill success at Martinico, xv. 199. Description of that island, and its importance, with two small islands east of it, *ib.* Town of Basse Terre taken through the valour of the sea-captains, *ib.* Cowardice of the French governor D'Etreil, and courage of a lady, *ib.* Fort Lewis taken; and general Hopson dying, Barrington succeeds, *ib.* Gradual conquest of the island by general Barrington, 201. Terms of capitulation which it obtained, 202. Wisdom of granting it, 203. Farther conquests, *ib.*—First discovery and name, xiv. 144—xv. 224. Suspicious accounts of the Spaniards and Columbus' character, *ib.* Situation, first peopling of the island, and their distresses, 225, through the misconduct of the directors, *ib.* Purchased by



- by a new company, 228. A treaty of neutrality about it between the French and English, destructive to the latter, 229. Descent of the English, and various accounts, *ib.* A rendezvous for privateers, *ib.* Vast quantity of sugar made here, &c. 230. Its importance how apparent, *ib.* Salubrious air and produce, &c. *ib.* Taken by the English, 623
- Guadil Barbar, a river in Algiers, viii. 213. Its spring, course, &c. 296. Refuted by Dr. Shaw, *ib.* (C)
- Guahan, Guan, and Guam, the chief of the Ladrone islands, described (see Guam) *iv.* 226
- Guaimarius succeeds his father Guafarius, prince of Salerno, x. 386. Assisted by the Greek emperors against the Saracens and Athanasius of Naples, 387
- II. deposes his father of the same name in Salerno, with the occasion, x. 388
- made prince of Salerno, and assumes the title of duke of Puglia and Calabria, x. 393. Gives the Greeks some Normans, who assist them in conquering Sicily, *ib.*
- Gualata, a province in the desert of Sarah, vii. 101
- Gualdares, a jesuit, cut in pieces at Mazwa, vi. 277
- Gualle, don Francisco de, account of his finding the north-west passage, *iv.* 259 (F)
- Gualtier, preliminary negotiations for peace resumed by him and Prior, with the latter's character, and demands by the English for themselves and the Dutch, ix. 500. In which Lewis temporises, *ib.* And sends over Menager to London, *ib.*
- Gualtieri, duke of Athens, fatally chosen Florentine general and stadtholder; with the three kinds of people constituting the state of Florence, and the method he proposed for acting, xiii. 322. Makes a dishonourable peace with the Pisans, giving them up Lucca, *ib.* Beheads some capital citizens; but the Florentine presidents oppose the tyrant, *ib.* Who is made lord of Florence without any limitations; seizes Arezzo and Pistoia, making some alterations in the peace with the Pisans, also its terms, *ib.* His policy, insatiable avarice, and cruelty, 323. A conspiracy formed against him; he is besieged in his palace, and expelled, *ib.* Solicits the court of France, with its effect on the Florentines, 325
- Guam, island of the Mariannes, the residence of the Spanish governor, *iv.* 241. Great offers of the natives to captain Eaton, 242. Take up arms against the Spaniards, 243. Its present state and Spanish settlement, 245. Its city and villages, *ib.* Castles, forces, &c. *ib.*
- Guamanga, St. Juan de Victoria, a city in Peru, described, xiv. 462. Cathedral, university, and principal trade, 463
- Guamaraconas, a warlike nation of Quito, excited against the Spaniards by Quizquiz, but defeated by Pizarro at Apurima, xiv. 306
- Guaneo Bellia, a mine of quicksilver near it, xiv. 463
- Guauuco, in Peru, ruinous, xiv. 462
- Guarantee-treaty with Sweden, the emperor desires to be admitted into it, and his proceedings thereupon, xi. 629
- Guarco, Nicolas, made duke of Genoa, with his transactions, x. 563
- Guardafuy, cape, where situated, vi. 325
- Guarrano, two famous lumps of gold found there, xiv. 463
- Guast, count, his repulse from Monopoli, x. 332
- Guastalla, Lodi and it surprized, but recovered, xiii. 603. Submitting to the protector of Parma, is dismantled, 618
- Guastapeque palace described, xiv. 261
- Guatemala, audience and province described, xiv. 441. Its principal commodities, and old capital destroyed by an explosion from a volcano, 442. New capital described, and other towns in that province, *ib.*
- Guatimozin chosen emperor of Mexico, xiv. 251. His great character, and resigning some of his privileges, *ib.* Detaches an army against the Spaniards, *ib.* Artifice in improving his victory over Cortez, 268. By which the Indians desert the latter, *ib.* Artifice to gain time, and the treaty proposed from Cortez still opposed by the priests, 271. Whence arises a resolution to prosecute the war, *ib.* Insincerity during the negotiations for a peace with Cortez, but is taken prisoner, *ib.* Effect on the Mexicans, *ib.* His person and character, with that of his empress, 272 (A). He and his officers hanged for a conspiracy against Cortez, 278
- Guaves, Petit, described, xv. 358
- Guaxaca, Cortez made marquis of it, xiv. 278
- province, produce and capital described, xiv. 438
- Guba, the residence of the queen of Ethiopia, vi. 174, 179
- Gubba, or Abba Hos, a famed Ascetic in Abyssinia, vi. 230 (I)
- Guber, kingdom, described, vii. 102
- Guebant, count, forces the Imperial lines at Kempen, and makes himself master of Cologne, &c. ix. 409. Surprising march to join Banier in Bohemia, xi. 253. The Imperialists defeated near Wolfenbuttle by him, who enters Westphalia, 254. Defeats the Imperialists under Lamboy near Kempen, and his conquests thereupon, 256. Despairing to reduce Friedberg, marches into Lusatia, 258. Plan of operations settled by him and Torklenfon; but the former defeated, by the latter's marching to Friedberg, *ib.* Dies of a wound, *ib.*
- Guelderland, an accommodation made with the duke of, xi. 121. Ancient history, 393
- Guelph, revolting, is reconciled to the emperor, x. 669
- V. the valiant duke of Bavaria, unites the Guelph and Este blood, xv. 477
- VI. his son, xv. 478
- Guelpho Castello, where situated, xiii. 599
- Guelphs obliged to raise the siege of Milan, ix. 665. Conspiring in Genoa, are obliged to submit, x. 552. Their origin, 658 (Y)—667 (P). Exiles from Genoa attack both friends and foes at sea; but both parties assist the king of France against Edward III. of England, *ib.* Declare for Frederick of Austria, xi. 33. Factions of them in Italy, xiii. 276. Cruelty of the Imperial faction against them, 600. On the death of the emperor Frederic II. an amnesty passes on both sides, *ib.*
- Guerguon, capital of the kingdom of Afem, iii. 223
- Guerin, the fifteenth grand master of Malta, vii. 387. Defeated, and his death uncertain, *ib.*
- Guerra's voyage to America, xiv. 148
- Guesled, a mountain of Tunis, its antiquities, vii. 298
- Gueslin, Bertrand de, engages the grand companies on an expedition into Spain, and with king Charles's approbation, ix. 108. Opens his true design to the companions, *ib.* Conquers great part of the English possessions in France, and the expence of this campaign borne by the Jews, 113. Death, 115
- Gueux, or Sea-beggars, several privateers fitted out by the Reformists, which are so called, with their licentiousness, xi. 409. Brill taken by them, with an account of them, *ib.* (A)
- Guexen, an Abyssinian mountain, described, and once the residence of the princes of the blood, vi. 202
- Gugalki, the Mogul general, re-enters Syria, ii. 475. Cruelty to the inhabitants, *ib.*
- Guiana (Caribean) province, described, xiv. 481
- Proper (El Dorado) xiv. 482. Account of its natives, *ib.*
- French (Old Cayenne) described, xiv. 482
- Dutch settlement, described, xiv. 483
- Guiaquil, town in Quito, described, xiv. 455. Its commerce, *ib.* Twice taken, 456
- Guicciardini appointed the Florentine general, xiii. 384
- the historian, defends Parma, xiii. 495. His own account of this matter, and saving it from the French, 496. Defence of Modena against the duke of Ferrara, 500. Artful management, and conduct blamed, 516
- Guido, or Vido, duke of Spoleto, crowned emperor by pope Formosus, x. 387
- governor of Florence, wise management of that count, xiii. 303
- Guienne, duke of, dies, ix. 172. Insurrection there, and its effects, 234
- Guignan, point and island in the Philippines, *iv.* 198
- Guignard, father, a treatise found in his hand-writing, for which he is hanged, ix. 308. Punishment of the assassin and his father, also banishment of the Jesuits, *ib.*
- Guinaya, when discovered by Columbus, xiv. 143. Surprise of the natives; and called St. Salvador by him, *ib.*
- Guinea, New, its continent, *iv.* 157. Extent, &c. 158 (K). Commerce with the Portuguese, how obtained, *ib.* When and by whom discovered, 267. Described, 268. General account of it, vi. 574. Division of its coasts, 575. The country of, its four divisions, *ib.*
- , ——, when and by whom first discovered, v. 3. The coasts and islands adjacent described, 11. Whether a continent or large island, 19 (G), 20. A further description of it, 40. Its wealth and fertility, 41
- or Gold coast, its geographical description, vi. 635. When first discovered, 650. How divided, 643. The inland kingdoms described, 671. An account of the Negroes, their laws, &c. 679. (See also Gold Coast)
- Ivory Coast, described, vii. 1. Its geography, towns, and villages, 2. Rivers, and countries adjacent, *ib.*



- ib. Continuation of their inland kingdoms and countries, 53
- Guinea, Sweden cedes a sum engaged by Frederick III. for their settlements on that coast, xii. 185
- Guindgate, battle won by Henry VIII. of England, in which the emperor is his mercenary, xi. 131
- Guinigi, an account of his two sons, xiii. 384. Unpopularity, through unreasonable severities, and sending ambassadors to implore assistance from the duke of Milan, ib. (B). And how they obtain it, by Sforza's marching with troops, 385. His own and his son's imprisonment, who both die under confinement at Milan, 386
- Guimere, kingdom, governed by a queen, vii. 5
- Guisan faction league, of which the king of France declares himself head, ix. 274. And but one king among many, ibid.
- Guiscard, Roger, drives the Moslems out of Sicily, i. 646
- Robert, succeeds his brother, count Ulfred, in Puglia, x. 401. Short reigns of the two successive popes contribute to the establishment of the Normans, ib. Amidst great confusions at Rome and Constantinople, he assumes the title of duke of Puglia and Calabria, 402. Takes Bari, and afterwards assists his brother count Roger in Sicily, 403. Conquers Salerno, ib. He and his adherents excommunicated by the pope, ib. Differences between him and the pope accommodated, the latter giving him investiture, 404. Invades Greece in favour of Michael, with his conquests, ib. On a rebellion in Puglia, returns, and his successes there, 405. Delivers the pope, ib. He returns to Greece, and defeats Alexius, endeavouring to oppose his passage, ib. Death, ib.
- Roger, succeeds his father Robert, and takes possession of Puglia and Calabria, x. 405. How reconciled to his brother Boemund, 406. Reduces the rebels of Cosenza, by his uncle's assistance, and the reward for this; with his recovering Rossana, and besieging Amalfi, and its preservation to what owing, 407
- Roger II. succeeds his father Roger I. in Puglia, x. 407
- William, succeeds his father Roger II. in Capua, x. 408
- Roger, returning to Puglia with an army of Saracens, reduces the revolted cities, and punishes the rebels severely, x. 410. The rebels assisted by the Pisans, with Roger's successes, 411. Second revolt of the Puglians, and Roger's successes, who gives the investiture of Capua to his son Ansfusus, ib. Successes at Troja, 413. Upon taking pope Innocent prisoner, the latter grants his requests, confirming all his titles, ib. Progress made by Roger and his two sons, ib. With his first assembling the estates at Ariano, ib. Innocent's successors refuse to acknowledge him as king; but he obliges pope Lucius II. to an accommodation, with the new privileges granted him, 414. Invades Africa, obliges the king of Tunis to become tributary, and ravages the Morea, ib. Associates his only son William in the government, and dies; with an account of his issue, person, and character, 415 (T)
- William, succeeds his father as king of Sicily, x. 415. Leaves the management of affairs to Majone di Bari, ib. (U). Rupture betwixt him and pope Adrian; he is excommunicated, and a great rebellion in Puglia and Sicily, ib. After quieting Sicily, he takes Brindisi, and intirely destroys Bari, 416. Besieges the pope in Benevento, who agrees to a Peace, and gives him the investiture of his states, ib. Returns to Palermo, and among his prisoners Robert prince of Capua dies, who is the last of the counts of Averfa, ib. The Greek emperor, after the defeat of his fleet on the Peloponnesian coast, gives him the title of king, ib. After taking and destroying Butera, reduces all Puglia, and returns to Palermo, where he resigns the government, and having begun a fine palace, dies, 417. His issue and character; with his appointing the queen regent, ib. (W)
- William II. succeeds to the throne of Sicily, under his mother's regency, x. 417. Her methods for reconciling the people to her administration, with the factions at court, ib. William assists the pope against the emperor; with the death of his brother Henry, the last of the Norman princes of Capua, ib. (X). Sends a fleet to the assistance of the Christians of Alexandria, and, rejecting the emperor Frederick's alliance, marries a daughter of Henry II. of England, ib. Other transactions very obscure; gives his aunt Constantia in marriage to Henry, the emperor Frederick's eldest son, with some account of her, ib. (Y). Dies without issue, and his character, 418. A most calamitous civil war ensues, and Tancred count of Lecce declared king, by the chancellor's means, ib.
- Guise, duke of, enters Italy, ix. 243. Recalled and favours heaped on him, and the king's excuses to the constable, with Guise's besieging and reducing Calais, 246. Resolves to have recourse to arms, and several popular steps by the king, 281. While the Guises make a treaty with Spain, they publish a manifesto in the cardinal Bourbon's name, and take up Arms against the king, 282. Surprise some places; with the king's feeble apology, and an insolent memorial from the Guises given the queen mother, ib. According to which a peace is concluded, ib. What effects this had on Henry of Navarre, ib. Introduced to the king; with the barricading of the streets by the students and populace, and the day hence called that of the Barricades, 285. Reception by the king and queen mother, 287. Warning slighted by him, 289. On going into the cabinet, receives six poniards into his breast, with the cardinal Guise and archbishop of Lyons arrested, ib. Curious account of the duke's murder, ib. (M). His brother the cardinal dispatched, 290. Both their bodies burnt, and the ashes scattered in the air, ib.
- , duke of, kills the sieur de St. Pol in the streets of Rheims, and surrenders the province to the king; other places also submitting, ix. 308. Takes Marseilles, with the king's saying upon it, 311
- , chevalier de, kills the barons de Lux, father and son; who is not only pardoned, but advanced, ix. 348. Killed by the bursting of a cannon, 349
- duke of, his romantic journey to Naples frustrated through Mazarine's jealousy, ix. 422. Miscarrying in the revolt of Naples, to what imputed, 426. Descent with a fleet upon Naples unsuccessful, 441. Upon a deputation to him, arrives at Naples, and is declared, with Annefe, chief of their republic, x. 522. Great embarrassment; the French fleet appears before Naples, and, after continuing inactive on the coast, returns to Toulon, without assisting the duke, 523. Who is confirmed in the chief command for seven years, and Annefe forced to resign for a pension, ib. The duke gains ground in the provinces, establishes a magnificent household, and opens the courts of justice, &c. ib. The pope offers the investiture of Naples to the duke, and a large sum, the latter of which he accepts, 524. After several vain attempts to re-enter Naples, flies to Abruzzo, is taken by the Spaniards and detained in Spain, till released at the intreaty of the prince of Conde, 524. With a French fleet vainly attempts to raise a second insurrection in Naples, but quickly re-embarks, 525
- Guises and princes of the blood, succinct account of them, ix. 249. The king settles the administration in the former, ib. Who are supported by both queens, &c. ib. With several other steps necessary for this purpose, ib. Their deliberations not far from Nancy, 281. This faction resolve to support Charles cardinal Bourbon, as presumptive heir to the crown, ib.
- Guilach, the seventeenth king of Denmark, succeeds Viglet, with his long reign; but nothing recorded, xi. 670
- Guldenlew, count, his successes in Norway, and the Swedes defeated in that kingdom; also other advantages gained by Christian V.'s arms by sea and land, xii. 198
- Guletta, Al (see Gouletta,) citadel, described, vii. 299 (F). Fortified by Barbarossa, 320. Besieged by Charles V. 321. Taken, 322. The garrison retreats to Tunis, and the tower saved from being blown up, ib.
- Gulkand, an Indian rajah, invaded by Mohamet Gazni, with his despair and death, i. 624
- Gulman, one of the four contenders for the Monomotapan crown, vi. 376. Treacherously murdered by Cercut, ib.
- Gum-arabic of Africa, described, v. 666. The common food of the poor, and the tree which produces it described, ib. The commerce and profit of it, 667
- Gunches, an account of these old people of the Canaries, vii. 134. Ancient state described, and a gigantic skeleton of them, 142. Were the only priests of the island, with their extinction and manner of embalming, ib. Complexion, physic, &c. 143
- Gundemar's election, and short reign, vii. 552 (K). His war with the Imperialists, ib. Death, ib.
- Gunpowder, the first mention made of it, xii. 76 (A)
- Guns first used by the Florentines at the siege of Pisa, and the obitancy of both sides, xiii. 366
- Gunther of Schwartzenberg elected emperor by a party, and, entering Frankfort, resigns to Charles of Luxemburg, on a consideration, and dies of poison, xi. 48 (T)



Guntzburgh, Samfon de, a celebrated Jewish geometrician, v. 605 (W).

Gurghin, or Gurji Khan, his revolt forgiven by Shah Husein, with his severity to the revolted Afghans, ii. 648

Gurjash invaded by Sanjar, who is totally defeated by the former, ii. 183

Gurjistan. See Georgia

Gurkhan, or Kurkhan, the extent of his dominions, ii. 267.

Defeated by Vangkhan, 269. Kind reception of Kushluk, 281. Quarrel with the king of the Igurs, 282

Gustavus Vasa, or Ericson, his successes, and the hindrances to Christian's sending succours to Sweden, xii. 143. Execution of the Swedish viceroy, Gustavus's mother, sister, &c. ib. Obtains a fleet from Lubeck, and fails in his attempt of burning Norby's squadron, ib. Conduct to the Danish ambassadors, and his sending an envoy to Frederick, between whom and Gustavus a league is concluded, 145. Design on the isle of Gothland, to which Norby had retired, 146. On Christian's request, takes effectual measures for driving the Lubeckers out of Denmark, 151. An act in favour of his lineal and collateral descendants, 157. By a solemn decree resumes the royal prerogatives in Sweden, and makes the government despotic, xii. 211. The introduction of Lutheranism a fortunate incident for his purpose, and a decree to humble the clergy, ib. The usurped rights of the nobility also resumed, and the crown from elective made hereditary, ib. But the chief sway is now in the senate, ib. Account of him in his confinement, and Banner's humane treatment of him, 267. His escape from Banner to Lubeck, 268. His transactions with the regency of Lubeck, and landing at Calmar, ib. After various hazards and disappointments, he arrives in Dalecarlia, 269. How discovered to a Dalecarlian gentleman, and protected by him; and he quits the gentleman's house, and comes to one Peterson, 270. Who would have betrayed him, but for his wife, who recommends him to a clergyman, ib. The latter encourages him with all his interest; and the peasants at Mora declare for him against Christian, 271. They take the governor of the province's castle by assault; the whole province declares for Gustavus, with his success, ib. The barbarity of Christian upon this, 272. Is chosen administrator, and obtains assistance from Lubeck, with the hard conditions, ib. Burns Norby's fleet fixed in the ice, with the different accounts of it, 273. Success in the mean time, and capitulation from Stockholm rejected by him, with his reasons, 274. Among the proceedings of a diet at Stregnez, is elected king, ib. Stockholm surrenders to him, he makes his public entry, and the first acts of his government, 275. He disgusts the clergy, and the occasion; the reformed doctrine introduced into Sweden, and encouraged by the king, ib. Partiality to Olaus Petri, and the mediation of the pope's nuncio, 276. Orders the scriptures to be translated into Swedish; but is opposed by Brusk bishop of Lincoping, 277. Resolves to diminish the number of monks and priests, 278. Orders a second disputation, which turns out in favour of Petri, and declares himself head of the church; with the intrigues of the clergy, ib. Professes himself openly a protestant, and the clergy alarmed, 279. Whom he humbles still more, and their resolution to oppose all encroachments on their order; yet he goes on to retrench their power, ib. His representation on that head, and the answer of the clergy, 280. He threatens to resign, and the states accede to his proposals, with the chief articles of their resolution in retrenching the power of the clergy, ib. Re-annexes grants to the crown, seizes several valuable effects, and king Frederick lives in amity with him, 281. Crowned, ib. Renounces several Romish tenets, establishes Lutheran professors in every diocese, and fresh rebellions raised in the provinces; but he quells them, ib. His resolute answer to the Danish ambassador's demand; and a fresh accident had almost embroiled the nation again, 282. Pardons the Dalecarlians, ib. Marries Catherine of Saxe-Lunenburg, and initials Laurence Petri, a Protestant, in the see of Upsal, ib. Vigorous measures, ib. Assists Denmark, with the success of his reinforcement, 284. Conspiracy formed against that king's life, and the inconsistent account of its discovery, ib. Marries Margaret, the daughter of Abraham Erickson, and his reasons, ib. Disappoints the king of Denmark's intrigues against him, and forms an alliance with France, ib. Secures the crown of Sweden in his own family; upon which young Eric is chosen successor, and the male descendants to inherit successively, 285. Applies himself to the arts of peace, and in settling portions on his

sons, ib. Proposes a marriage between prince Eric and queen Elizabeth of England, 286. Death and character, 287

Gustavus Adolphus's birth, xii. 309 (A). Becomes king of Sweden in the room of his father Charles IX. xiii. 148. Takes the administration during his minority, xii. 316. Substance of a manifesto published against the emperor by him, xi. 222. Who secures an alliance with England and France, taking the isles of Rugen and Usedom, with Camin and Stetin, 223. Concludes an alliance with the duke of Pomerania, ib. (F). His progress in Pomerania; and he receives an expostulatory letter from the emperor, with his answer and raillery, ib. Engages in a league, at Berwald in Brandenburg, with France, and sounds the Protestant princes assembled at Leipzig; but why disappointed, ib. Surprising progress, ib. His sarcasm on Savelli for his defence of Dammin, ib. Takes Potsdam, &c. ib. Threatens the elector of Brandenburg, till he declares himself, ib. The rapidity of his progress, 226. Makes himself master of Mentz, and many other strong places on the Rhine, with his conquests after passing that river, 227. A general revolution in his favour, ib. Tamperings in favour of him miscarry; his answer to an insolent letter from the archbishop of Triers, 228 (K). That prelate puts himself under the protection of France, ib. Enters Franconia, takes Donawert, and makes excursions on both sides the Danube, ib. Augsburg surrenders to that conqueror, who exacts an oath of allegiance to him, and the result, ib. Obligated to quit the siege of Ingoldstadt, enters Bavaria, with his progress, and heroic answer when before Munich, 229. After receiving a reinforcement, attacks the Imperialists intrenched near Pult, but obliged to retreat; and the order in which it was made, owing to one colonel Hepburn, though disgusted at the Swede, ib. Leaves a garrison under Oxenstiern at Nuremberg, and marches towards Bavaria, ib. Resumes all the crown grants, and makes Oxenstiern his prime minister, xii. 317. Notwithstanding embassies from Britain and Holland, he prosecutes the war against Denmark, ib. His perplexity, and Christian's policy, ib. His views on Russia, and the manner in which that affair is dropped, ib. Applies himself to civil polity, and among other transactions, abridges law-suits, and renews hostilities against Russia, with his successes, and a peace concluded, 318 (A). In the Russian campaign he learns the art of war; is crowned, and an interview between him and Christian of Denmark, with the consequences, 319. After his marriage with Eleanora of Brandenburg, renews the war with Poland, and besieges Riga, with the eminent officers under him, and the progress of the siege, 320. His answer to the apology of the inhabitants of Riga, and a truce concluded, after taking Mittau, the capital of Courland, ib. The war renewed, and his success in Livonia, Lithuania, and Prussia, ib. Invests Dantzick, but is wounded, 321 (A). Raises the siege of Dantzick, with his success in his retreat, ib. (C). Disgust given to him in the congress at Lubeck, 322. In person obtains a considerable victory over the Germans and Poles under Arnheim, ib. Who are repulsed with loss from Stum, ib. Resents the emperor's conduct, and forms a project to march into Germany, with his motives, 323. His speech to the Swedish states, and their warm debates, ib. Pathetic speech to the senate, 324. State of his fleet and army, with an account of the British officers in his service, ib. He declares his reason for invading Germany by a manifesto, and lands at Usedom, with his successes, ib. Alliance with the duke of Pomerania, ib. Defeats the Imperialists in Mecklenburg, 325. Marches towards Saxony, with his successes, 326. Judicious situation, ib. A reinforcement arrives for him under the queen of Sweden, and a body of British auxiliaries, under the marquis of Hamilton, 327. A treaty concluded by him with the elector of Saxony, and its conditions, 328. Wins the battle of Leipzick, ib. Mistakes committed by him in not pursuing the victory of Leipzick, and the reasons for his measures after that battle, ib. His motives for penetrating into Franconia, 329. Defeats Tilly's rear-guard in Bavaria, 330. Success in Bavaria, unpopular act in Augsburg, and repulse from Ratisbon, ib. Embassy to him from Denmark for a peace ineffectual, with his answer, and ravages in Bavaria, 331. Is repulsed from Wallestein's camp near Nuremberg, 332. The murmurs raised on this rash and fatal step, ib. Omits nothing to engage the elector of Saxony's fidelity, and his representations with that of Brandenburg for an union of the Protestants, 333. The elector's answers are general, ib. The king, removing from his camp at Nuremberg,



Nuremberg, divides his army into two bodies, *ib.* After joining count Bernard, marches after Wallestein into Misnia, and fights the battle of Lutzen, where he is killed; and the Imperialists beaten before he fell, *xi.* 230, *xii.* 333. Different opinions about his death, *ib.* (A). Suspicion about his assassination by Saxe-Lawenburg, *xi.* 230. Short character of him, *ib.* *xii.* 334. A view of both sides after his death, with the policy of the court of Denmark and other powers, 335.

Gustavus, Charles, reasons for appointing him to command the Swedish army, and his operations, *xii.* 351. Nominated immediate successor to queen Christina, with the substance of the articles sworn to by him, 353. Disposition, and astonishment at Christina's acquainting him with her intentions, and the reasons, 354. Uses his utmost influence, as do others, to prevail on her not to resign, 355. Hopes to gain the queen's affection, *ib.* See Charles Gustavus

Gustrow in Mecklenburgh, described, *xv.* 549

Gutamund, the third king of the Vandals in Africa, *v.* 711. Recalls the banished Orthodox, with his death, *ib.*

Guthorn, (see Suibdager) king of Denmark, *xi.* 688

Guy succeeds his father Lewis Gonzaga as captain of Mantua, *xiv.* 113. His character and assassination by his brothers; and after their father's death, the youngest son Lewis succeeds, *ib.*

— his sensible treatises on trade and colonization revive a spirit of conquest, and a new grant of Newfoundland obtained, *xiv.* 491. Sent with a colony, and lands at Conception Bay, *ib.* Establishes an intercourse with the natives, *ib.*

Guza, or Guça, a dreadful rock in Abyssinia described, *vi.* 201

Guzelhissar, when and by whom built, *v.* 168

Guzerat, a province of Indostan, described; how and when subdued by the great mogul Akber, *iii.* 7, 58. Invaded by Jehan Ghir, 68. And recovered by his forces, 73

Guzi-suren, one of Jenghiz Khan's chief wives, *ii.* 330 (H)

## H.

**H**Ababah, Yezid's favourite courtesan, suffocated by a grape, *i.* 361

Habash, the son of Arap Khan, rebels against him, *ii.* 736. Divides the kingdom with his rebel brother, and flies to him at the approach of Isfandiar, 737

— a famed astronomer, *i.* 458

Habashi citadel taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, *ii.* 531

Habesh, Abash, or Abesh (see Abyssinia) *vi.* 157

Habib's cold reception of Mahomet, *i.* 30

—, Othman's general, his success in Mesopotamia, *i.* 253

— Al, or Ali, prince of the Zenzijans, his irruption into the Moslem dominions, *i.* 488. Strange success, 489. Rapid conquests, 490. More conquests and ravages, 492. Seizes on Ramhormoz, and plunders it, *ib.* Defeated and stripped of his conquests, and besieged in his newly-built capital at Mabiya, 493. Is forced to abandon it, and totally defeated by Mowaffek; is taken and beheaded, *ib.*

Habba Sah, Al Mohdi's general, his success in Egypt, *i.* 512. Defeated, and forced out of it, 513. Fresh invasion, and success, 514

Hacket, Sir Peter, his prudent advice to Braddock, and the latter's contemptuous insinuations, *xiv.* 705. Killed, *ib.*

Hacquin of Norway, the ravages committed by him in Halland, who loses his life there, *xii.* 36. Particulars of this war, and a peace concluded, with the articles, 37. Renounces his pretensions to Norway, with preparations for war between him and Sweden, assisted by Mecklenburg and Denmark, *ib.*

—, king of Norway, the Swedes have recourse to him, *xii.* 242

— the Swedish prince, escaping alone of four brothers from Denmark, takes a cruel revenge on that kingdom, *xii.* 223. Which he at last conquers; and, after succeeding Almund in Sweden, sets a woman to rule over them; with his character and death, *ib.* The utmost confusion among historians about this period, *ib.*

Hadge, a title given to the commander of the Meccan pilgrims, *vi.* 28 (W). His vast power, gain, &c. 30

Hadding, the eighth king of Denmark, succeeds his brother Gunthorm, *xi.* 665. Account of his exile, in company

with Harpinga, a Danish lady, *ib.* He slays the king and prince of Sweden in battle; and his war with Uffon king of Sweden, who at last is slain by him, 666. He lays violent hands on himself, *ib.* (D). His issue, 667

Hâf, Ebn, defeated by Moslema, *i.* 360

Hafedh, Al Ebn Noaim, his death and character, *i.* 618

— Bedini'llah, Al, succeeds to the Egyptian khalifate, *i.* 699. Is confirmed in it, 701. Deposes his worthy vazir Barham, 704. And his successor Redwan, *ib.* Reigns without one, and restores the Copts to their antient rights, 709. His death, 710

— proclaimed khalif of Egypt, and deposes his disaffected vazir, *vi.* 50. Partiality to his disaffected vazir, *ib.* Restores the Alexandrian church, and his injustice to the noble Ebn Yunes, 51. Revenge on his accusers, and death, *ib.*

Hafsa, the daughter of Omar, and fifth wife of Mahomet, *i.* 57. Hath the custody of his Alcoran committed to her charge, *ib.* Catches her husband in the fact with a Coptic girl, 75. Is divorced for discovering of it; but taken home again, *ib.* 115

Hagbord, the third son of Asmund, his amour with Segris, a daughter of Denmark, and the issue, by the intrigues of a Danish courtier, *xii.* 223. Segris's catastrophe, *ib.* Hagenaar's passage of the river Mekon, *iii.* 409. Embassy to Camboia, 415. Audience of the young king, *ib.*

Hagenbach, Charles of Burgundy's governor, oppressing the towns of Alsace, they revolt, and he is beheaded by the burghers of Brisac, with the occasion of this step, *xi.* 109. His brother commits most horrible ravages in the Suntgau, but retires before the Swifs and their allies, *ib.*

Hagi Hoshun made king of Quiloa, *vi.* 354. Defeats Braham, becomes odious and fatal to the kingdom, and is deposed, *ib.*

Hague, preliminaries settled there, and a general congress appointed at Newbourg-house near Ryswick, *ix.* 476, 480. Views of the contending parties, with Lewis's tame proposals, *ib.* Convention there, *xi.* 279. Alliance concluded there between the emperor, England, and Holland, 324. The terms demanded of Lewis XIV. of France by the Imperial plenipotentiaries there, and the several demands of the other powers, 353. Exorbitancy of those of the emperor and the states-general, with the sentiments of the English parliament upon them, 354. Congress opened there, 480

Haguenau, diet opened there, *x.* 86. French retire behind the lines there, and then under the cannon of Strasburg, *xi.* 332. Besieged by the prince of Baden, whose garrison, and their commander Perry, escape out of the place, *ib.* Account of that city, and other nine in Alsace, *xv.* 440

Hajar defeats Moawiyah's forces, *i.* 273

Hajarians revolt against Al Kaher, *i.* 528

Hajeb, the meaning of that Arabic name, *i.* 520 (B). Makes a truce with the Calabrians, *ib.*

Haji torn in pieces at Saganak, *ii.* 299. A monument erected to him there, *ib.*

— Geray, the last khan, reigns in Kipjak, *ii.* 450

— Berlas, Timur Bek's uncle, opposed by him in favour of Kesser Yessuri, *ii.* 500. Flies from Togluk, and is killed by robbers, *ib.*

— Bey's revolt and punishment, *ii.* 522

— Sayfo'ddin begins the fight against the Kipjaks, *ii.* 526

— Sharif's submission and presents to Timur Bek, *ii.* 534

— Terkhân, or Astracan, razed by Timur Bek, *ii.* 539

— second khan of Karazm, *ii.* 723

— Mahamed, the eighteenth khan of the Usbecks, ravages Persia, and his embassy to Russia, *ii.* 747. Whether the author of the late revolution of the Usbecks, *ib.*

— Ornus, made beglerbeg of Rumeli, *v.* 163 (B—C). See under Ornus

Hajib, Karaja, sent to the relief of Otrar, *ii.* 298. Quits the place, and opens its gates to the Moguls, with his fate hereupon, *ib.*

Hajim Soltan, the twelfth khan of the Usbecks, *ii.* 731. His success against Dostkhan, and suffers the Turkish envoy to be stripped, *ib.* And the merchants to be robbed, 732. Retires at the approach of Abdollah Khan, *ib.* Well received by Shah Abbas, 733. Returns and takes Urjensh, 734. Abandons it again, *ib.* Returns, and dies, 735

Hailbron, account of it, religion and government, *xv.* 444

Hajr taken and put to the sword by the Karmatians, *i.* 502

Hajra palace built by Abu Thaher, *i.* 521



- Hakem Ebn Amer** distributes the spoils of his conquests, contrary to Moawiyah's orders, and escapes his resentment by a timely death, i. 288
- the son of Al Walid, declared his successor, i. 371. Imprisoned by Yezid, and murdered by Soliman, 374
- the son of Helham, succeeds him in Spain, and his character, i. 422. Invaded by his two uncles, 423. Defeats them, ib. 424. Generosity to the surviving Abdallah, 426
- Al, lord of Andalusia, his death and character, i. 575
- the son of Al Aziz, the third Fatemite khalif, suppresses a grievous revolt in Egypt, i. 610. Exposed in a manifesto by the khalif of Baghdad, 615. Kayed at Aleppo revolts against him, 621. Runs mad, and sets up for a god, 623
- an impostor, defeated by Al Mohdi, v. 525. His desperate end, ib.
- Al, the third khalif of Egypt, vi. 45. Defeats those who revolted against him, and his ill treatment of the khalif of Baghdad's manifesto; he runs mad and impious, 46. Upheld by the Dararian sect, ib. Assassinated, with instances of his madness and impiety, ib. (L)
- Al, khalif of Egypt, persecutes all religions, and murdered by his sister, vi. 46
- Hakembu**, the brother of Vang khan, submits to Temujin, ii. 277
- Hakemian tables**, by whom computed, i. 611
- Halabas**, province in Hindostan, with its city and fine palace, iii. 16
- Halberstadt**, bishop of, his harrassing count Tilly's army, and death, xi. 509. Account of that principality and its capital, xv. 488
- Haldan**, tenth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Frotho I. xi. 667. Long and cruel reign, with his death and issue, ibid.
- Haldane II. and Harold II.** succeed their uncle Frotho V. in Denmark, xi. 674. After his brother's marrying, reigns alone, and defeats the Swedes, slaying their king in single combat, 675. With his death and character, ib.
- III. married to Gurith, Siwald II.'s daughter, succeeds him as thirty-seventh king of Denmark, xi. 676. Character, and an extraordinary instance of his strength, and how engaged in a war with Viset, ib. (K). But at last slain in battle, ib.
- governor in Jamaica, dies before his entering on government, xv. 329
- Halden** succeeds Eric in Sweden and Gothland, xii. 221. After several defeats from the Norwegians, he receives assistance from the Russians under Fridlef of Denmark, and gratitude to him, ib. After Eric's overthrow, annexes Sweden to Denmark and Gothland, 222. While engaged in quelling the pirates in the Baltic, a rebellion is raised, and Siwald made king of Sweden, ib. The amazing prowess of Halden in two instances of combat, with his death and character, ib. (G)
- Halep.** See Alep, or Aleppo
- Hali**, the founder of the Quiloan kingdom, his origin, vi. 349. His settlement in it, and a list of his successors, ib. Bufoloquefe seizes on that crown, ib.
- Bendawd, his long reign there, and his grandson succeeds him, vi. 349
- a Turkish slave at Malta, stirs up the Porte to war against that island, vii. 524. But the expedition defeated, 525
- Halil Pasha**, his politic advice to soltan Morad, v. 163
- Halima**, one of Mahomet's nurses, chosen by his mother, brings him up, i. 11
- Halitz**, the contentions about that duchy, xiii. 92
- Hall**, account of it, xv. 443
- Halley**, Dr. his variation of the needle confirmed by new observations, v. 18 (E)
- Halifax**, in Nova Scotia, described, xiv. 700. Settlement, from whom named, and the encouragement to settlers, 701. Vast sums given by the parliament, and reflections thereon, ib. Infested by the French, ib.
- Halstan** succeeds his brother Ingo in Sweden, with his character and death, xii. 230
- Halvin** defeats the Spaniards with a body of peasants, and is made marshal, by his father's title, of Schomberg, ix. 393
- Ham**, East, town, settlement made there from New Plymouth, xiv. 511
- Hama**, in Syria, taken by Timur Bek, ii. 556
- Hamadan**, in Persia, taken by Jarir al Bajali, i. 245. Its territory described, 249, ii. 310. Revolt there quelled, 319
- Hamadan principality** in Persia, by whom founded, i. 638
- Hamaditish kingdom**, or dynasty, when and by whom founded, i. 601, 618, 622, 632. Independent of Egypt, 651
- Hamah** obtains a truce from Abu Obeidah, i. 192. Pillaged by Timur Bek, ii. 556
- its famous battle, i. 648
- Hamamel**, in Tunis, described, a small, but wealthy city, vii. 306 (M)
- Hamburgh**, made a staple to the Ostend company, iv. 651. A stop put to it by the emperor, 654. Why called the Lesser Jerusalem, v. 607. When made an archbishopric, x. 638. In a diet at Augsburgh is anew declared free and imperial, xi. 128 (M). Conferences there proving ineffectual, preparations are made for war, 245. Conferences there why ineffectual, 248. Negotiations there, where an agreement is concluded, with the substance of it, 255. Proceedings in the conferences there, 259. By whom sold to the inhabitants, xii. 30 (A). A difference between it and Denmark, 168. Hostilities commenced at that city, and an engagement to the king's advantage, ib. Alarmed by the march of Christian V.'s troops towards the Elbe, and siege laid to that city, 200. An accommodation, and provisional treaty concluded, ib. Amidst divisions there, Christian V. lays siege to that city, but is twice repulsed from the out-forts, 201. Proceeds in form, with the repulses on each side, and a peace concluded, after the king's fruitless attempts to burn the city with his bombs, ib. The principal article, and why the Hamburgers keep the city in a state of defence, 202. Sends two Christian teachers to Sweden, and in what reign, xii. 47.
- Hamdan** tribe embrace Islamism in one day, i. 97
- Ebn Hamdun, revolts against Al Motaded, and defeated by him, i. 499. Taken prisoner, ib.
- falls out with his brother Taglab, i. 564. Plundered of his treasure by him, 567. Betrayed to him, and clapped in irons, 576
- Hamed**, or Amid, (see Diarbecker) ii. 533
- Ebn Abbas, made vizir to Moktader, i. 514. His examination of Al Hallaj, 516. Sentence on him, ib.
- Basba defeated in his attempt on Tetuan, vii. 196. Obtains the government of it from the king, 197. Cruelty and debaucheries, ib. (Z). Deposed, 198
- disperses Merwan's forces, i. 380
- Ebn Kahtaba made governor of Egypt, i. 392. Removed, ib.
- general of the Getes, released by Timur Bek, but murdered by Escander, ii. 502
- Hamida Al Aabd**, king of Tenez, makes alliance with the Arabs against Barbarossa, but defeated by him, vii. 246.
- Hamilton**, captain, tried for his life at Siam, and how acquitted, iii. 346
- marquis, commands a reinforcement of British auxiliaries for Gustavus, xii. 327
- Mr. Andrew, comes from Philadelphia to New York, to plead Zenger the printer's cause for a libel, xiv. 545. Spirited and learned pleading against the attorney-general procures the prisoner's acquittal, ib. Has the freedom of New York given him in a gold box, with classical inscriptions, ib.
- governor of Pensylvania, his great endeavour what, and dies, xv. 119
- James, governor of Pensylvania, xv. 126. Message to the assembly of Pensylvania on the danger of the colony, 129. Their conduct, and answer, ib. Another message on their danger, ib. Is succeeded by Mr. Morris, 130
- succeeds Denny as governor of Pensylvania, with an address to him from the ministers against public diversions, and his obliging answer, xv. 147
- governor of St. Christopher's, abuse of his power, what, xv. 245
- governor of Nevis, declines signing their address to the queen, xv. 253
- governor of Antigua, xv. 261. His behaviour in the affair of Park's murder, and superseded by Douglas, but replaced, ib. Procures the dismissal of his enemies, ib. Several abuses crept into the government, ib. Bankruptcies among the merchants, and a petition on that head, 262
- lord Archibald, governor of Jamaica, xv. 297. Why he puts off the meeting of the assembly, ib. Lays an embargo, which proves fatal, ib. Arbitrary and oppressive conduct, ib. Letter relating to it, 298. Measures for preventing it, ib. Abuses of the government very flagrant, ib. Grants letters of marque, and the clamours against him, 299. Turned out, ib. Put under arrest, and sent prisoner



- prisoner to England; with the charges against him, from which he is acquitted, *ib.*
- Hamlet, account of his father and uncle, with Shakespear's tragedy, xi. 669 (E)
- Hamnad's revolt against emir Badis, and defeat in Africa, i. 619. Makes peace with that emir, 621. Dies, 631
- Hamnadites, kingdom in Africa, where sitcd, i. 712
- Hamnam-leef, or hot-baths, in Tunis, described, vii. 297  
— or sweating-baths, in Tunis, described, vii. 310
- Hammed, the son of Hassen, sent on a pilgrimage to Mecca, with his success, vii. 174. Treachery to the king of Fez, 175 (B). To Outaz, and styles himself king of Suz, 176. Victory over Outaz, *ib.* Other successes, 177. Treachery to his brother, 178. Forgiven by him, *ib.* Treachery to him again, *ib.* Assists the Fezans against him, 180. Banished to Zahara, *ib.* Confined to a convent for life, 183. Strangled with his sons, &c. at Morocco, 184. Their death revenged, 185
- Hamza, Mahomet's uncle, becomes a convert to him, i. 24. Unable to attack the Syrian caravan, 49. Slain at the battle of Ohod, 57. His body abused and buried, 58
- Hamza, chief of the Dararian sect, vi. 46 (Z)
- Hamzabeg, the fourth shah of the White sheep dynasty, ii. 702
- Hamzeh, Mirza, his brave revenge on the Turks, valour, and success, ii. 607. Reign, *ib.* Immature death variously related, *ib.*
- Han river blocked up by the Moguls, ii. 371  
— dynasty when and by whom founded, ii. 426
- Hanbalites extreme aversion against the Motazelites, i. 542
- Han-chew taken by the Moguls, and put to the sword, ii. 352
- Hau-chong-fu taken and put to the sword by Toley, ii. 337
- Handalah Ebn Safwan made governor of Egypt, i. 360. Succeeds Abd'alahman there, 368
- Handiside, lieutenant-governor of Jamaica, xv. 295. Why obnoxious to the people of Jamaica, 297. Forces open the assembly door, and saves Beckford junior, with the effect on his father, *ib.*
- Hang-chew, capital of Che-kiang, with its lake and islands, iii. 540, 541 (C). Fine water-dial, and consumption of food, *ib.* (D)
- Han-hala Tartars, who, and where situated, iii. 464
- Hani the Cufan receives Moslem into his house, i. 302. Betrayed and put to death, 303
- Hanifean college at Baghdad, by whom founded, i. 673
- Hanifites, who, and their tenets, i. 400. Cause the loss of Ray, ii. 309
- Han-lin-eul proclaimed emperor of Song by Lyew-fu-tong, and dies, ii. 432
- Hanover, a ninth electorate erected in the empire in favour of that duke, and the emperor, notwithstanding remonstrances, gives the investiture to Ernest-Augustus, xi. 314. Death of that duke, and the opposition continued to his son George-Lewis, 322. Command of the Imperial army offered to that elector, who declines it, 337. Duke appointed general of the Imperialists, with the title of veldt-marshal, 338. Design for surprising the French camp at Offenburg discovered, *ib.* The difficulties raised against the ninth electorate in that house, and the honours conferred on it, 343. The diet, after acknowledging the elector of Hanover, vote that the emperor had a voice as king of Bohemia, *ib.* His declaration, *ib.* Joins the confederates against Sweden, and his motives, with the besieging Wisnar and Stralsund, xii. 408. Treaty there, in opposition to that of Vienna, with the consequences, and endeavours used on each side for inviting or dissuading to accede, xiii. 647, xv. 567. History of that electorate, and its territories, 476
- Hanno, archbishop of Cologne, coming to Rome, in a council deposes Cadalous, and confirms pope Alexander II's right, ix. 562
- Hans Towns, and their number, with their four free staples, or general factories, for the sale of their merchandize, x. 621. Aim of their alliance and power; with the Teutonic Hans, and their distribution, of which Lubeck is the chief Hans Town, 622. Maintain a war against the king of Denmark, and an accommodation at length, xi. 55. An assembly of them at Lubeck, with the result of their deliberations, 217. Declare war against the kings of Denmark and Sweden, xii. 70. Transactions on both sides, with the defeat of the Lubeck squadron, *ib.* Christopher, the son of Valdemar III. wounded, *ib.* (A). Hans Towns and those of Vandalia declare war against Valdemar III. who obtains a truce, 71. Offer peace, and a
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- truce concluded, 95. The northern Hans Towns submit to Eric X. and he quarrels with the Danes, by proposing the duke of Pomerania to succeed him, 98. A quarrel between the Hans Towns and the Dutch, with the occasion, 283
- Han-ghan-tong, his revolt, ii. 421
- Han-tzo assassinate the traitor I, iii. 681. Ascends the Chinese throne in his stead, and de throne by the true heir, *ibid.*
- Haoax, or Hawash, a river in Abyssinia, described, vi. 205, 321
- Harcourt, count, his famous retreat from Quiers between two armies, ix. 396. Raises the siege of Casal, by forcing the Spaniards lines, 399. Singular enterprise of his, in which Turenne distinguished himself, *ib.* Viceroy of Catalonia takes Roses, after forty-nine days open trenches, 417. The Spaniards beaten by him between Llorens and Balaguer, *ib.* Discovers a dangerous conspiracy for restoring Barcelona, and forced to raise the siege of Lerida, with the loss of his artillery and baggage, 420. Is removed and recalled, yet, by his address, works himself into very high favour, *ib.* Generosity towards Schomberg, 426. Raises the siege of Cambray, 429. Frustrates Wirtemberg's designs on his lines of Weitemburg, &c. xi. 357. The French under him take Turin and Coni, with an accommodation between the uncles and dowager of Savoy, xiv. 133
- Hardicnute, seventy-second king of Denmark, succeeds his father Canute, with the reason for his name, x. 696. His transactions in Norway variously related, and English ambassadors invite him to accept of their crown, on his brother Harold's demise, with his mixed character and death, *ib.*
- Hardouin chosen king of Lombardy, defeats the emperor's troops in the passes of the Alps, x. 641
- Haregol, a river in Algiers, described, vii. 213
- Hares of Canada described, xiv. 558
- Hareth, Al, prince of the Mostalek, his expedition against Mohammed, and slain, i. 65  
— prince of Ghassen, invited to embrace Islamism, i. 70. Embassy to Mohammed, and submission, *ib.*
- Hargan ordered to besiege Sha-vu-kew, ii. 371
- Hariri's death, and excellent Arabic works, i. 696 (S)
- Harior's account of the antient natives of Virginia, xv. 376. See Virginia
- Harmuz, or Ormus, subdued by Timur Bek, ii. 541
- Haro, Lopez de, brought into great credit, but king Sancho is jealous of him, viii. 20. He and Juan de Haro oppose the king's measures, and retire from the assembly of the states, 21. The former arrested, and the latter killed, in the king's presence, by the nobility, *ib.* Which causes great confusion, *ib.*  
— success of his intrigues, and the advantages, viii. 310. Commanding in Portugal, raises the siege of Badajoz, but loses the battle at Elvas, 316  
— Diego de, twice revolting, is on submission restored, viii. 5
- Harold, why he refuses to enlist married men, and basely murdered, through his brother Frotho's instigation, xi. 674  
— II. of Denmark defeated and slain by the king of Sweden, xi. 675  
— III. thirty-eighth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Haldane III. xi. 676. Reduces the regents, and re-unites all the provinces to the crown; is engaged in a war with Sweden, with its success, 677. Conquers Uobo lord of Embden, and several other nations, with an extraordinary instance of his moderation, *ib.* Death and character, *ib.*  
— Klang proclaimed king by the Cimbri; but through the fidelity and courage of Latngartina is defeated by Regner, xi. 684  
— king of Jutland, Christianity is introduced by him; but defeated by Regner, who restores idolatry, xi. 685  
— V. succeeds his father Gormo Angle, and sixty-fourth king of Denmark, of the same disposition with his father, xi. 689  
— VI. or Blaaland, chosen sixty-sixth king of Denmark after his father Gormo III. xi. 690. Claims the crown of England against Haquin king of Norway, and by his death succeeds, who placing one prince Harold in Sweden, it becomes a province of Denmark, *ib.* Takes Sleswic, and annexes it to his dominions, with his success against the Vandals, 691. At a conference with Otho the emperor embraces Christianity, *ib.* Defeats Eric king of Sweden, *ib.* Builds a tomb for his beloved queen Gyntha, and his jester's reply to him on the occasion, *in-*



- timating his son Swen's rebellion, *ib.* (A). Dispute between the father and son for the crown, and, during a treaty of compromise, Harold is slain, 692. His shining character, *ib.*
- Harold succeeds his father Swen, and seventieth king of Denmark, *xi.* 694. Deposed for his crimes, and his brother Canute raised to the throne, *ib.*
- brother of Olaf, recalled by the Norwegians, who place him on their throne, *xi.* 697. Makes war on Swen, who is defeated, 698
- the Simple, Swen's eldest bastard-son, succeeds him as seventy fifth king of Denmark, *xi.* 699. His brother Canute goes over to Schonen, making war on the Vandals, where he continues against all the king's invitations, *ib.* A wife law made by Harold, with his shameful indolence after this till his death; and here chronological difficulties occur, *ib.* (A)
- greatly perplexed on Eric's marching against him, escapes into Norway; and why his two sons in Eric's camp are ordered to be drowned in the river Sley, *xi.* 710. Returning with an army, Eric orders five of his six remaining sons to be put to death, *ib.* Assassinated, *ib.*
- Hart, governor of Antigua, his worthy character, *xv.* 262
- Harthamah ordered by Al Hadi to murder his brother Harun, but is prevented by his mother, *i.* 416
- Harthemah Ebn Aalon joins in Al Mamun's revolt, *i.* 439. Defeats the caliph's forces, 440. Succeeds against the revolters in Irak, 449. Succeeds against the revolted Abul Saraya, *ib.* Put to death by Mamun, *ib.*
- Ebn Ali made emir of Sicily, with his character and mild government, *i.* 549
- Harvey, governor of Virginia, sent prisoner to England, but reinstated by Charles I. *xv.* 366
- Harun Al Rashid, his expedition against the Christians, *i.* 409. Takes the fortrefs of Samalek, *ib.* Invades the Imperial dominions, 410. Returns laden with spoils, *ib.* Contents of the treaty, 411. Refuses the succession in wrong of his elder brother, 412
- Ebn Khamarawiyah succeeds Jaishin Syria and Egypt, and becomes tributary to Al Mo'taded, *i.* 500. Worsted by the Karmatians, 508. Opposes Ebn Soliman's entrance into Egypt, and assassinated by Shaiban, *ib.*
- the son of Alrun Tath succeeds him in Khwarazm, *i.* 638. Invaded by the Seljuks, 639
- Harvard college in New England founded, *xiv.* 510
- Harwendil, father of Hamlet, account of him, *xi.* 669 (E)
- Harran, a famed city of the Sabians, submits to the Moslems, *i.* 241
- Harris made governor of Bombay, *iv.* 325 (I)
- Harro sent against Holsin, *i.* 304. Friendly proposals rejected, *ib.* Comes over to him, *ib.* His brave defence, 306
- Has Koukab, the poor burying-place of khalif Othman, *i.* 256
- Hafan, Al, the son of Aii, born, *i.* 56. Succeeds his father in the khalifat, 281. Pious speech to the people, and offers to resign his dignity to Moawiya, 282. But is prevailed upon to war against him; is deserted, and insulted by his troops, *ib.* Actually resigns the khalifat; articles between him and Moawiya concluded, and retires to Medina, 283. Moving speech to the Cufans, *ib.* Refuses the command of Moawiya's forces, 284. Poisoned by his wife Jaadah, and answer to his brother about his murderer, *ib.* Other particulars relating to him and his family, *ib.* His death, *ib.*—298
- of Basra, his character of khalif Moawiya, *i.* 298. His success in Sicily, 549
- Ebn Yezid seizes on Tabrestan, and holds it nineteen years, *i.* 482
- Ebn Ibrahim raises a revolt in Deylam, and greatly insults the Meccans, *i.* 484. Extends his conquests into Jorjan, 490
- Hatana suspected to have poisoned the khalif Mohdi, and her quarrel with his astrologer about it, *i.* 413
- Hafar-wachin swears to a league with Temujin, *ii.* 274
- Hafcen and his three sons blind the emperor of Morocco by their artifice, and in vain opposed by the king's brother, *vii.* 174. His death, 175
- hired by the Algerine dey to murder the sharif Mohammed, *vii.* 183. Assassinated him, 184. Seizes on his family and treasure, *ib.* Taken and cut in pieces, *ib.*
- Hastfeldt surprises Marienburgh, but retires before Bannier, *xi.* 250
- Hatham, Zende, revolts twice against Timur Bek, and for- given, *ii.* 506. His third revolt, and condemned to a dungeon, *ib.*
- Hathem, the son of Abd Menaf, succeeds him in the principality of Mecca, with his vast liberality to the Arabs, *i.* 5. Death in Syria, *ib.*
- Hathemites take Mahomet's part, *i.* 25
- Hathemiyah, the khalif's residence, why abandoned, *i.* 391
- Hathen, king of Qeile, his reign, *vi.* 350. Deposed, and raised again to the throne, *ib.* But deposed a second time, *ibid.*
- Hasket, governor of the Bahamas, put in irons by the Colonists, *xv.* 271
- Hassan's unsuccessful expedition into Phrygia, *i.* 409
- Hassan Ebn Ali causes Al Amin to be deposed; is pardoned, and his treachery to him punished, *i.* 442
- Ebn Abbas sent emir into Sicily, *i.* 493. His successes there, 558. His victory over the Greeks, 559. Retirement and death, 560
- Ali the Betanist, his answer to Malek Shah, *i.* 671. Pursues his conquests, and his titles, 672
- outwitted and defeated by Filokales, *ii.* 211
- Ebn Abahia, made governor of Egypt, and removed in a few days, *i.* 375. His twelve sons inhumanly treated by Almanfur, 392
- Sheyk supplants the treacherous Malek Kurt, *ii.* 450. Disgraced and recalled, *ib.*
- Buzruk, first khan of the Ilikians, *ii.* 491. His pedigree and reign, *ib.*
- Sheykh sets up Mohammed against Musa, *ii.* 492. Defeated, and surrenders to Hassan Kujuk, *ib.* Proclaims Jehan Timur sultan, deposes him, and dies, 493
- the son of Aviz, set aside, and put to death, *ii.* 494
- Kujuk's descent, *ii.* 496. Rise and power, assumes the royal title, and is murdered by his wife, 497
- Bek invited to Khosraw's assistance, *iii.* 65. Breaks up before Lahur; his defeat, and the dreadful punishment of his associates, 66
- his mosque at Cairo, described, *vi.* 15
- Aga succeeds Hayradin at Algiers, *vii.* 250. Answer to Charles V.'s herald, 251
- takes the city of Tunis, *vii.* 318. Defeated, and stripped of it, *ib.*
- king of Tunis, *vii.* 319. His cruelty to Mamon, and his boasted genealogy, *ib.* (A). Defeated and outed by Afrashid, is forced to flee at the coming of Barbarossa, 320. Restored by Charles V. 322. Hated by the Tunisiens for it, 320. Assists at the siege of Goleta, 321. Enters it with Charles V. 322. Stratagem to reduce Tunis, 323. Restored to the Tunisian throne by Charles V. but becomes his vassal, and the conditions of it, 327 (F). Justly hated by the Tunisiens, *ib.* Re-invaded by Barbarossa, applies to the emperor for fresh assistance, *ib.* Conspired against by his eldest son, 326. Imprisoned, and deprived of his eyes, 327. Obtains new succours from the emperor, 328
- Hassier triple castle taken by Akber, *iii.* 232
- Hassun, governor of Takrit, his severe death, *ii.* 532
- Ali applies to Abufaid for assistance, *ii.* 593
- Beg attacked by Abufaid, *ii.* 593. Takes and puts him to death, *ib.*
- , fourth and last shah of the Black Sheep Turkomen, invaded by Abufaid, *ii.* 701. Slain by Uzun Hassan, *ib.*
- Kuli, third khan of Karazm, his brave defence against the other princes of his house, *ii.* 723. Put to death by them, 724
- Hastenbeck, battle there, in which the duke of Cumberland is obliged to retire to Stade, *xv.* 621
- Hat, the red, by what pope first granted to the cardinals, *ix.* 634
- Hatakin makes alliance against Temujin, *ii.* 271
- Hatan, the son of Ogotay, banished, *ii.* 356. Invites Kublay to the crown, 361. Succeeds against Ali-pu-ko, 362. Defeats his army in Shen-si, *ib.* Success in Tartary, 389
- Hateb's treachery to Mohammed discovered, *i.* 80
- Hatem the Tayite, a zealous Christian, dies, *i.* 90
- king of Armenia, invaded by Buadokdar, *ii.* 479. Successfully assisted by Abaka Khan, *ib.*
- Hats, a faction so called in Sweden, *xii.* 422. Gain a majority in the Swedish diet, and several senators expelled, *ib.*
- Havannah, city and port, described, *xv.* 338. Plundered, 337. Destroyed by the French, and reflexions on its importance, *ib.* Timid policy of Britain about it, *ib.* At length resolve to attack it, *ib.* Armament sent against it under Albemarle and Pocock, 338. Siege by Pocock, *ib.* Description



- scription of its harbour and strength, *ib.* Capitulates to the English, and the articles, 341, 627. Reflexions on the taking and restoring it, 341. Article for it in the definitive treaty, 342. Is evacuated, 343. Town and harbour described, *ib.* Account of the galleons and flota there, 339
- Haucotucalla heads a revolt in Charcas against the inca, and his character, *xiv.* 394
- Hau-king, his wife advice to Hu pi-lay, *ii.* 361
- Hawazens defeated by Mahomet, *i.* 86
- Hawdha, king of Yamama, cursed by Mahomet for not embracing Islamism, *i.* 70
- Hawke defeats Conflans's fleet, *xv.* 624
- Hawkins, captain, sent ambassador to the great Mogul, *iv.* 293. Death, *viii.* 276
- Hawkwood, Sir John, an account of him, *xiii.* 334. His service being rejected by the Florentines, he enters into that of the Pisans, with his ravages, and defeating the former, 335. The English return from Florence with many captives and a large booty, unmolested by the Florentine army, and their extraordinary stratagem for that end, *ib.* The incursions of his little body of troops, 336. Now in the legate of Bologna's service, is sent to reduce Granavio'i; but finding it irrecoverable, takes up his quarters at Faenza, which he sells to the Ferrarese, 339. Made general of Florence, 343. Opposes the Florentine exiles and Neapolitan party for Charles, 345. Sent to Lombardy to assist Barnabo's son, 347. Sent to assist the Bolognese; marches against the enemy, who retire, and he retakes the places lost by the Bolognese, 349. His high merit, 350. Arrives just in time to save Padua, the duke of Bavaria having returned home, *ib.* Is master of the Milanese, *ib.* Defeats the victorious Milanese, with his admirable retreat over the Oglio in sight of superior numbers, also over the Mincio and Adige afterwards, 351. Saves Florence and the Florentine army in the Siennese, with the number of the enemy when joined, and the Florentines recover, with great accessions to their army, 352. Death and character, 355. Account of his son, *ib.* (B)
- Hawley, governor of Barbadoes, causes his predecessor Tuf-ton to be shot, *xv.* 176. Sent prisoner to England by his successor Hunkes, *ib.*
- Haydr Sheykh promoted by Hassan, and why so called, *ii.* 601 (H). Inventor of the tai or Persic diadem, *ib.* (K). Made king of Trebizond, and his alliance with Uzun Hassan, *ib.* Defeated and slain by Ferokzad, *ib.*
- revolts against his brother, *ii.* 605. Put to death by him, *ib.*
- Haye, Mr. de la, embarks in the French project on the East Indies, *iv.* 456
- Hayman, Mr. his account of the cheat Zabathai Tzevi, *v.* 585
- Hay-nan isle described, its government and traffic, *iv.* 551. People, capital, and port, 552
- Hayradin, the brother of Barbarossa, succeeds him in Algiers, *vii.* 248. Protected by the Ottoman Porte, *ib.* Attempt on the pignon of Velez, which he takes, 249. Improves the harbour of Algiers, *ib.* Success against the Spaniards, and made captain basha by the sultan, 250
- his attempt on Tripoli, *vii.* 454. Defeated with great loss, *ib.*
- Hayran raises a revolt in Spain, and causes Ali Ebn Hamuda to be proclaimed khalif, *i.* 620. Calls Al Mondar to his aid against the khalif, 622. Falls out with him, defeated and dethroned by him, and submits to Al Kasem, 623
- Hayshan, Timur's nephew, sent into Tartary, and succeeds against Hay-tu, *ii.* 397. Succeeds him in the empire, 399. Haltes afterwards to Ta-tu, 400. Entry into the city, and proclaimed emperor, *ib.* Strange fondness for the Lamas, 401. Edict to forbid post-horses for foreigners, *ib.* New coin, and plot against him, 402. His death, *ib.*
- Haytum Ebn Obeid, Al, conspired against in Spain, severity to the conspirators, *i.* 365
- Haythonius, Friar, his reception by the pope, and his opinion about an expedition into Syria, *ix.* 658
- Hay-tu, revolt and defeat, *ii.* 366. Revolt in Tartary, 374. Success against Hupilay, and totally defeated by Li-ting, 380. Recovers new strength, 387. Success against Kan-mala, and defeated by Tu-tu-ha, 389. New defeat by Peyen, 392. By Tu-tu-ha, 396. Dies of grief, 397
- Haywood occasional governor of Jamaica, *xv.* 299
- Hazarasb, a city in Karazm, put to the sword by Abdallah Khan, *ii.* 734
- Haarlem invested, *xi.* 412. But after a long siege capitulates, *ib.* (B)
- Heads, human, seventy thousand used to rear up a wall, *ii.* 519
- Heau, a town of Tonquin, *iii.* 435. Palace of a Romish bishop there, *ib.*
- Hebat'allah surprises the Greeks in Diyar Rabia, and gains a signal victory over them, *i.* 567
- Heberville defeats the Hungarian malecontents at Scibo, *xi.* 330
- Hebus and Poroskavia, brother and sister, succeed their father Basilus Rachwold, in Polocz and Lithuania, *xii.* 627
- Hedwiga, daughter of Lewis of Hungary, elected Q. of Poland in his room, and the conditions, *xii.* 475. Her secret passion for William of Austria, but by persuasion marries Jagello, *ib.*
- Hegiasa, a castle where situated, and the Jews besieged in it by Mohammed, *v.* 516 (R)
- Hegira, or Hejra, on the flight of Mohammed's friends into Ethiopia, *i.* 25. In what year it happened, 27. The epoch how computed, 46 (F). When, how, and by whom settled, *ib.*
- Hejaj Ebn Yusef commands the Syrian forces, and ill success in his march, *i.* 333. Lays siege to Mecca, *ib.* Inspires his frightened Syrians, *ib.* Treatment of Abdallah's body, 334. Pulls down and rebuilds the Meccan temple, with his cruelties in that city; government of Irak, and dreadful menaces to the Cufans and Basrans, *ib.* Defeated by Abd'alrahman, 340. Gives the latter a total overthrow, *ib.* Builds Waset, 341. His death, 346. Horrid cruelties in Irak, and remarkable stories of him, *ib.* Puts his astrologer to death, 348
- Heidara, Sharif, flayed alive by Bedr Al Jemal, *i.* 662
- Heidelberg university, when founded, and the origin of its huge tons, *xi.* 47. not. sub fin
- Hejer executed for his friendship to Ali, and intrepid behaviour, *i.* 289
- Heilbron, the assembly of the four circles of Upper Germany there, and the members of which it consisted, *xi.* 232 (O)
- Heine, admiral, his successes in the West Indies, *xi.* 514. Takes the Spanish flota, with his honourable reception in Holland, *ib.* A dangerous sedition among his seamen, who are gratified with a large sum, 515. Three Spanish men of war from Dunkirk taken by that admiral's lieutenant, with the honours paid to the admiral's memory, who had been killed at the first broad-side, 521 (A)
- Helena, St. Island, by whom discovered, with its description, *iv.* 398. Taken by the English, 399. Its healthiness and fertility, and when cultivated, 400 (D). Inhabitants described, 401 (E). Their special happiness, *ib.*
- the empress, invites the Portuguese into Abyssinia, *vi.* 160. Embassy to their court, *ib.* & 255. Noble reception there, her excellent churches, 256. A stately one described, *ib.* (Q). Her empire attacked within and without, and sends for assistance into Portugal, *ib.*
- Helena's dissolute character, through whose artifices the regent perishes in prison, with her fate, and that of her gallant Ozani, *xiii.* 102
- Helgo, after his brother Roe's death, reigns alone in Denmark, and the twelfth king, *xi.* 667. His warlike exploits, and laying violent hands on himself, with his character, 668
- Helian's speech in the diet of Augsburg against the Venetians, *x.* 297
- Heliopolis, in Syria, taken and dismantled by Merwan, *i.* 380
- Hell, the Mohammedan notion of it, *i.* 163. The partition between it and paradise, 164
- Hellah, where situated, *i.* 669
- Hellenists, a new sect, whence its rise, their rupture with the hebraizing Jews, *v.* 496 (W). Trump up miracles in defence of their Septuagint, 497 (Z)
- Helsingburg taken by the Danes, *xii.* 366
- Hemayun, Soltan, see Humayun, *iii.* 46
- Hemow Kuli kan seizes upon Delhi, is defeated and put to death, *iii.* 57
- Hems (Emesa) revolts against Yezid, *i.* 373. Against Merwan, 375. Taken by Timur Bek, *ii.* 556
- Hemming succeeds his father Olaus III. and 56th King of Denmark, *xi.* 682. Concludes a treaty with Lewis the Pious, with his excellent, though short reign, 683
- Henda Bint Otha, proscribed for her ill treatment of Hamza's body, &c. *i.* 84
- Hendrick, the Great Mohawk Sachem, killed in an action with the French, *xiv.* 707
- Hendugha Khalil repulsed before Herat, *ii.* 592. Defeated by Abusaid and submits, *ib.* Revolts against Babr, is defeated, and slain by Ali Behadr, 596



- Henriques, Don, sends ships to sail round Africa, v. 699
- King of Congo raised to the crown, dies of grief in a war with the Anzichi, v. 479
- Henry of Thuringia elected king of the Romans by some princes, x. 710. Called king of priests, ib. Thro' the pope's exhortation is chosen emperor, ix. 634. Dies, x. 710
- the emperor enters Italy with an army, and is crowned at Milan, narrowly escaping in a tumult, ix. 661. Crowned at Rome by the cardinals, ib. His preparations against Naples, and death, 662
- acknowledged emperor by the archbishop of Milan, and bishops, who is pressed to come into Italy against Ardouin, ix. 552. His general Otho, duke of Carinthia, defeated by Ardouin, who makes but little progress, ib. Passes the Alps, defeats Ardouin, and is crowned at Pavia, ib. The inhabitants of which conspire against him; these he pardons, and returns to Germany, ib. Enters Italy with an army, is crowned emperor, and Cunegunde empress, at Rome, by Benedict, now restored, ib. Henry's answer to the pope's question a kind of homage, 553. On a civil dissension in Lombardy, marches with a considerable army into Italy, and divides it into three bodies, ib. Reduces the places, and after settling several affairs, returns to Germany and dies, 554
- confirms the Norman conquests in Apulia, marches his army over the Alps, accompanied by pope Clement, ix. 558. His son, when three years old, declared king of the Romans, 559. Enters Italy with an army, ib. Receives the submission of Gozelo or Godfrey duke of Lorraine, and is present at the council of Florence, called by the pope, 559. Returning to Germany dies, ib. The whole authority assumed by the empress Agnes, and her son Henry is acknowledged emperor, 560
- after passing the Alps, marches his army into Apulia, with his successes, x. 396. Marching into Italy takes Rome, 404. Sends an army into Sicily to support his claim there, 420. Returns to Puglia, after reducing the cities of it, and makes himself master of Sicily, and its dependences, ix. 607. With his perfidy, and extreme cruelty to his new subjects, x. 421. Obligated to raise the siege of Naples, ib. Leaving the administration of Sicily to Constantia, returns to Germany, marches with an army into Italy, and his cruel treatment of Richard count of Cerra, after which he passes into Sicily, 422. Exercises all manner of cruelties, and Constantia declaring openly against him, besieges him in a strong castle, where he capitulates, and dies soon after, ib. & ix. 609
- crowned in Rome, and concludes an alliance with Frederic of Sicily, x. 456. Deposes Robert, and with Frederic declares war against him, but the pope by a bull prohibits attacking Naples, ib. Death of the emperor at Benevento, ib.
- I. or the Fowler, chosen emperor at Fritzlar, with the reason of his surname, x. 626. Why he declines the title of the emperor of the Romans from the pope, and reconciling all the princes of the empire, defeats the Hungarians with great loss, near Mersburgh, ib. After two battles, he exterminates the Vandals and Danes, he also subdues the Slavonians, Dalmatians, Bohemians, &c. ib. Prevented by a severe distemper, from taking advantage of the Lorrainers defection; yet recovering, subdues all their country, and being reconciled to duke Geselbert, restores Lorraine to him twice, and gives him his own daughter in marriage, ib. He regulates the police of his dominions, and converts the king of the Abotrites, 627. Appoints the first bishop in Holstein, and secures his dominions, ib. Marches to the assistance of Wenceslaus duke of Bohemia, whom he establishes at Prague, and protects the Christian religion there, ib. Enters Lorraine against count Boson, who submits to him, ib. Reforms abuses among the clergy, in a council at Erfurt, 628. Invited to Italy by the pope and Romans, but beginning his march is taken ill, and returns to Mansleben, where he dies, ib. Great character, with instances of his superstition, ib. (D). His issue, ib. Appoints margraves, &c. xv. 464
- III. duke of Bavaria, is elected emperor in room of Otho III. x. 641. His competitor Eckard marquis of Saxony, assassinated, and Hermand duke of Suabia declared an enemy to the empire, 642. Being acknowledged throughout Germany, he marries Cunegunda, and after a circuit is crowned again at Aix-la-Chapelle, ib. Hermand his competitor submits, and is pardoned; but he renews his intrigues, and the methods used by the emperor to prevent them, ib. Passes the Alps, and is crowned at Pavia, where he quells a tumult, and accepts of the Pavia's apology, 643. Returns to Germany, with his salutary regulations in his progress, ib. His troops ravage Silesia, and wanting to abdicate for a Monkish life, is dissuaded, and founds a rich prebend in Straßburgh, 645. Othalric son of Jaromir, created duke of Bohemia, ib. His ravages in Flanders, with the pardon of their count, and troubles in Lorraine, ib. Passing the Alps, defeats Hardouin, and is crowned with Cunegunda at Rome, ib. His proceedings in his return, ib. The pope repairs to the emperor at Bamberg, who confirms the laws he formerly enacted at Pavia, 646 (E). Marching into Italy, he takes several places, and reducing Apulia and Calabria, &c. returns to Germany, ib. Has an interview with Robert of France, and soon after dies, with his declaration to the empress's parents, ib. (C). His titles and donatives to the church, ib. (D)
- III. or the Black, succeeds his father Conrad II. in the empire, and crowned at Aix la-Chapelle, ix. 557, & x. 649. Reduces Wratisslaus of Bohemia, and Ovo, with the conditions imposed on the latter, ib. On complaints against Ovo, defeats him, and on a third revolt taken and beheaded, ib. Three popes in Rome prevailed on to abdicate, Gregory VI. chosen but deposed, and Clement II. elected, who crowns the emperor and empress at Rome, ib. (H). In his progress the emperor is refused admittance into Beneventum, with the consequence, and he nominates Bruno to the papacy, 649. Prevailed on by Hildebrand to confirm Victor II's election by the Romans, which was made without his privity or consent, 650. Obliges Andrew of Hungary twice to submit, with a different account by Heiss, ib. (K). Repairs into Italy, with the difference between him and Ferdinand of Castile, compromised at Tholouse by commissaries, 651. His son declared king of the Romans, and himself dies, with an account of his issue, *ibid.* (L). Difference between Beatrice, the emperor's sister, and him, who on his return quashes a rebellion in Bavaria, ib.
- IV. or the Great, succeeds his father Henry III. in the empire, under his mother's regency, with intestine broils in the empire, 652. Dowager divested of the regency, flies to Rome, and the emperor put under tutors, with their different characters, ib. Takes the administration, and begins a reformation of public abuses; but why his good design is traversed, ib. Summoned to Rome by the pope to give account for his loose life, but rejects the citation, 653. On finding the pope resolute, he sends him a submissive letter, acknowledging his former errors, ix. 564. Yet still resolves to assert his own authority, 565. Controlled by the Saxons, who present a memorial, with their demands, x. 653. And upon his answer, besiege Goslar, with the emperor's retiring, ib. Account of the persons associated against him, ib. (O). He is assisted by the states and princes, and makes proposals of peace to the Saxons, yet swayed by evil counsellors, and through his misconduct deserted by his friends, ib. Sends a challenge to the duke of Suabia, with the occasion, ib. (P). Retires from Nuremberg to Worms, finds means to appease the princes, and acknowledges his faults, proposing a duel with Renger, 654 (Q). Upon the Saxons second revolt, he ravages their country, and grants them a favourable peace, ib. Harlesberg destroyed by the peasants, for which he declares war against the Saxons, and after defeating them makes himself master of their country, and grants them a peace upon their submission, ib. Threatened in the diet at Goslar, through the pope's means, with the princes demands, 655. Deposes Hildebrand, who in a council excommunicates the emperor, ib. & ix. 583. Being deserted is obliged in winter to set out for Italy to humble himself before the pope at Canosa, x. 656. Countess Mathilda the cause of this and the subsequent wars between the emperors and the popes, ib. (S). Barbarous treatment of the emperor by the pope, 656, & ix. 568. On Henry's declaring himself the pope's mortal enemy, the former is deposed through the latter's intrigues, and Rodolphus chosen, x. 656. Takes the field against Rodolphus, and obtains three victories over him and his abettors, *ibid.* Excommunicated a second time, ib. National council, called by him at Brixen, deposes Gregory VII. and chooses Clement III. ib. & ix. 570. Defeats Rodolphus at Mersberg, with the latter's address to his officers before his death, on bringing his hand, which was cut off, x. 657. Prevents the Saxons from removing the ornaments on his tomb, and his saying on the occasion, ib. The emperor marches into Italy, and after a long siege takes



takes Rome, Gregory retreating to St. Angelo, 657. His expedient for crowning the emperor rejected, *ib.* (U). Clement III. being consecrated, crowns the emperor in presence, and with the applause of the Romans, and Gregory retreating to Salerno dies, *ib.* Passing the Alps, reduces Lombardy, though Mathilda faces him at the head of her troops, 658 (Z). Provinces of Italy declare against the emperor, with the necessity he is driven to, *ib.* The emperor's second son is chosen king of the Romans at Aix-la-Chapelle, to which Conrad his brother consents, *ib.* (B). Fresh disturbances, notwithstanding the emperor's good measures. Pope Paschal II. excommunicates him. Henry his son persuaded to take up arms against him, with his pretext, 659. Seizes his father's treasure at Spire, with the son's perfidious and effectual expedient, by which the emperor is deposed, and himself proclaimed, and the father's letter to him, *ib.* (C) & ix. 577. His moving expostulation sent to the bishops, sent as deputies, to notify his deposition, and forcibly stript by them of his royal ornaments, x. 659. His extreme wretchedness, and every request he makes refused, *ib.* His efforts to retrieve his affairs, but dies at Liege, and his body dug up by his son, with his character, ix. 579, & x. 660. & seq. (C). (D). (E).

Henry V. or the Young, having basely obtained the empire, in prejudice of his father, Henry IV. begins to change his conduct, with regard to the church, ix. 578, & x. 661. Invites the pope to a conference in Germany, who puts himself under the protection of Philip of France, and why a conference with him at Chalons ineffectual, *ib.* Disturbances in Bohemia, with his conduct therein, and invading of Hungary, *ib.* Makes war with the Poles in Silesia, who are worsted, and obliged to sue for peace, 662. An incident concerning Scrobisius their ambassador, *ib.* (G). Boleslaus, in a second engagement, intirely beats the Germans, and the emperor desists from his enterprize on Silesia, *ib.* He marches into Italy, having married Mathilda of England with an immense dower; concludes a peace with the pope, and his entry into Rome, where his troops make a dreadful carnage, *ib.* The pope and others taken prisoners, when, upon beheading his friends, the pope is prevailed on to renew the treaty about the emperor's investiture, and its articles solemnly sworn to, *ib.* (H). The emperor crowned by the pope, who dividing the host between them, pronounces a remarkable anathema on the infringers of the treaty, 663 (I) & 410. Conquers Puglia, and the investiture given by him and the pope jointly to Rainulphus, 412. New bull published in confirmation of the treaty, and the emperor's return to Germany, where he gives his father's body a magnificent funeral, 663. The emperor is excommunicated by the archbishop of Vienne, *ib.* Marches with success into Saxony; but on his return forced to retreat with loss, though supported by the valour of his nephew Frederic Monoculus, *ib.* Marches to Italy; but the pope refuses audience to his deputies, and, by a council at Rome, condemns the treaty, *ib.* He is magnificently received in Rome, the pope having retired to Apulia, and again crowned by the archbishop of Prague, *ib.* Crowned in St. Peter's by Burdinus archbishop of Braga, ix. 583. Paschal dying, is succeeded by pope Gelasus II. who escapes from Rome, and (Burdinus) Gregory VIII. appointed by the emperor, x. 663, & ix. 584. Returns to Germany, and, on Gelasus's death at Cluny, Calixtus is chosen pope, x. 664. An association in Germany against the emperor, and hostilities begun with various success, till an accommodation is set on foot between him and the pope, *ib.* But miscarries, *ib.* Rebellion fomented in the empire against him, ends in an accommodation, *ib.* Reduces Holland and Worms, which had revolted, with an unsuccessful irruption into France, 667 (L). Flies from a sudden insurrection, and dies at Utrecht, with his marriage and character, *ib.*

— VI. or the Severe, succeeds his father Barbarossa as emperor, and inherits Sicily in right of his wife, x. 685. Why he marches an army into Italy, *ib.* Conciliates the affections of the Lombards, to strengthen him against the bastard Tancred, who is declared king of Sicily, *ib.* Celestin III. succeeding pope Clement III. crowns the emperor with the empress at Rome, and a remarkable circumstance in the ceremony, *ib.* The emperor, after taking several places, invests Naples, but is obliged to raise the siege, on account of a dreadful mortality, 686. Proceedings, and passing the Alps, *ib.* Builds a house at Coblenz for the Teutonic knights, *ib.* (K). Makes the em-

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

pire hereditary in his own house, *ib.* Settles the affairs of the empire, and administers justice, with a remarkable saying on this occasion, and a description of his person and manners, 687 (L). Suspected of being privy to the murder of the bishop of Liege, *ib.* The manner in which he justifies himself in an assembly at Coblenz, *ib.* Acts against Bernard duke of Saxony, one of his confederates, and espouses the cause of a pretender to the crown of Denmark, who is taken prisoner, and obtains peace from Canute on very hard terms, *ib.* Courts the friendship of the king of England, 689. Why displeased at his uncle Conrad, who justifies himself, and is reconciled, *ib.* Confers the Palatinate on his son, *ib.* Returns to Italy, with the successes of his lieutenant in the kingdom of Naples, and the death of Tancred, his infant son succeeding, *ib.* Makes himself master of the two Sicilies, chiefly through his cruelty, 690. Savage treatment of Tancred's infant son, &c. notwithstanding his promise, *ib.* The empress delivered of a son, and, notwithstanding the emperor's precaution, the Sicilians rebel, *ib.* Invests the duke of Brunswic with the Palatinate, and his own infant son Frederick elected king of the Romans, *ib.* At the pope's solicitation he sends troops to the Holy Land, and his eloquent harangue prevails on all the assembly at Strasburgh to take the cross, and even Margaret dowager of Hungary insists, 691. Chastises the Sicilians and Neapolitans, with a conspiracy against him at Palermo, *ib.* Perfidy to the Sicilian malecontents, *ib.* Empress instigating a general insurrection against the emperor, besieges him, *ib.* Sues for peace, which is granted him on unfavourable terms, and dies at Messina, with his character of a mixed nature, 692.

Henry VII. or of Luxemburg, on cardinal Prat's advice proposed to the electors, xi. 23. After some preliminaries regulated at Franckfort by six electors, chosen emperor, *ib.* (R). Succeeds Albert I. with some account of him before his election, 24 (S). Crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, and pronounces sentence of death against John the murderer of Albert, *ib.* Grants the investiture of Austria to Albert's sons, *ib.* (T). Celebrates the nuptials of his own son John with Elizabeth, daughter of Wenceslaus late king of Poland, 24. Her method for clearing her virtue, *ib.* (U). After attending in person at the funerals of Adolphus and Albert, sends an embassy to the pope, who acknowledges him, with the conditions sworn to by his deputies, 25. Why he reduces the dominions of the count of Wirtemberg, and expels the Jews from Germany, *ib.* Why solicited to march into Italy, and in a diet at Frankfort his son John appointed vicar, *ib.* Precautions taken by him before he sets out, and the pope endeavours to thwart the emperor's measures, with the state of Italy and Rome now, 26. Visits several places in his way to Italy, receiving the submission of Milan and many other cities, and is crowned at Milan, *ib.* Escapes Torre's conspiracy against his life, *ib.* His chancellor convicted of this plot is condemned to be burnt alive, 27. Behaviour to the Ghibelines on his arrival in Italy, xiii. 624. A league formed by the pope against him, *ib.* Prostitutes every thing to sale, *ib.* Favours to Corregio, and why the latter opposed him, 625. Takes possession of Placentia, 626. Through the pope's intrigues he is amused by Robert king of Naples, xi. 27. The emperor presents himself before Rome in order of battle, enters the city almost without opposition, and is crowned in the Lateran, 28. After a tumult, in which the emperor loses two thousand men, he departs abruptly, *ib.* Concludes an alliance with Frederick II. king of Sicily, and besieges Florence without success, *ib.* Summoning Robert of Naples to appear as his feudatory, on refusal he is put to the ban, with the sentence denounced against him, *ib.* (Y). On an embassy to him, arrives in Geneva, and chosen governor for twenty years, x. 555. Joins his forces with those of Frederick king of Sicily to attack Robert's dominions, xi. 29. Advancing on that expedition to Benevento, he dies there, and how, *ib.* (Z). His character and issue, *ib.*

— I. of England in danger of losing his crown, through his mother's intrigues for her son Robert, and a compromise made, ix. 26. Totally defeats Lewis of France, 35. Forces him to accept peace on his own terms, *ib.* His two sons, &c. shipwrecked, 36. Once more fortunate against William, his brother's son, and his confederates, *ib.* Excites the emperor Henry V. against Lewis, *ib.*

— II. refuses to recall Becket, whom the pope creates legate a latere in England, x. 600. Obtains a suspension



of his authority, but the pope recalls his legate's commission, *ib.* His deputies at the diet of Mentz, but nothing done for his son-in-law, 680

Henry V. succeeds his father, ix. 131. Demands of his ambassadors, 133. Embarks, and after beating a French squadron, lands in Normandy, 134. Takes Harfleur sword in hand, and his proposal for a negotiation rejected by the French, *ib.* But being forced to fight, gains a complete victory at Agincourt, *ib.* His title to France acknowledged by the duke of Burgundy, and the other princes; but negotiation failing, he is forced to depend on his sword, 137. Reduces the most part of Normandy, *ib.* Policy in treating with the queen and duke of Burgundy, 138. In this confusion the dauphin enters into treaty with the duke, *ib.* Surprises Pontoise with all the treasure there, *ib.* By treaty declared Regent and heir of France, he espouses the princess Katherine, 139. Takes every method for securing the succession, 140. His forces land at Calais, with their progress; and queen Katherine delivered of a son, 141. Discovers a plot against him in Paris, *ib.* Death, and last advice to his lords, *ib.*

— VI. proclaimed king of France, and Bedford regent, ix. 142. Entry into Paris, and coronation, 148. The English save with difficulty the castle of Rouen, where king Henry was, 149

— VII's treaty with the young duchess of Bretagne, and the several projects about her marriage, ix. 183. Pressed to support the young princess of Bretagne, sends Maximilian assistance; with his demands on Charles VIII. of France, 184. Invades France, and after investing Boulogne, concludes the factious treaty of Estaples, with that king, 185. Marches a great army into France, viii. 223. Concludes a peace, 224. Besieges Boulogne, 246

— VIII. lands at Calais, and the emperor his mercenary, ix. 200. Fights the battle of the Spurs, takes Terouenne and Tournay, and then returns home, 201. Signs five treaties with France, and an account of them, 215 (D). Prohibits all intercourse with Rome, and a sentence of divorce published by Cranmer, after which he marries Anne Bulleyn, x. 82. Withdraws his obedience, and abolishes the pope's authority, 83. Assurances to Venice, x. 307. Gains the battle of Guinegate, xi. 31. Anecdote about him, xii. 49 (A). Vanity and ambition, xiii. 507. Befriends Francis, with the pope's despondency, 509. Affairs of England with regard to him, and the place of interview changed to Marseilles, 536. The pope and Francis go thither, where the former's niece is married to the duke of Orleans, *ib.* A private convention between them, *ib.*

— of Castile, succeeds his father Alonzo, vii. 706. The regency falls to queen Berengara by the king's will, but Alvaro de Lara is chosen by the states, *ib.*

— son of St. Ferdinand, account and character of him, viii. 23 (L). His credit entirely lost with the Castilians, 25. Makes a treaty by intermarriage with Portugal, 26. But fails of the advantages expected from it, *ib.* Strange behaviour in public and private, 27. Death, and the queen's generous behaviour as to his funeral, 29.

— count of Trastámara, and his friends, repair to Toledo and oblige the king to come to Toro, who dissemblingly grants their demands, viii. 51. His wife rescued and brought to her husband, 52. Gains a complete victory over his brother, and kills Hinestroza, 53. Confederacy between him and the kings of Arragon and Navarre, for setting the latter up in Pedro's room, 56. An army from France under Bertraud, taken into his pay, *ib.* With a body of veterans from France, advances to Calahorra, and is proclaimed king of Castile, 57. Inaugurated at Burgos, *ib.* Resolves to perform his promises, for the better settling himself on the throne, *ib.* Marches to Toledo, while Pedro embarks with his vast treasures, and the latter falls into his brother's hands, *ib.* Reserves some mercenaries, among which are the English under Sir Hugh Calverly, *ib.* The states give him all he could ask, *ib.* Through the favour of the count de Foix, the pope, and France, he assembles an army, and enters Castile, 59. Besieges Toledo, *ib.* Marches from thence to give his brother Pedro battle, and totally routs him, *ib.* Afterwards kills him in Bertraud's tent, 60. Acquires all Pedro's treasure to maintain the war against enemies on every side, *ib.* Marches into Portugal, *ib.* Pays his foreign troops, besides considerable gratifications and establishments, *ib.* His speech to the states on that occasion; and his fleet defeats the Portuguese and an English squadron, making the earl

of Pembroke prisoner, 61. On the death of his brother Tello, he gives Biscay to his own son Juan, *ib.* Becomes master of Carmona, where Pedro's treasure lay, *ib.* Concludes a peace with Portugal, and a truce with Navarre and Arragon, *ib.* Marches into Portugal as far as Lisbon, and his fleet burns part of the lower town, 62. And compels him to a peace, *ib.* Also the king of Navarre, and a truce with Arragon is prolonged, *ib.* Enters into a treaty of marriage with Portugal, 63. A solid peace at length concluded with the king of Arragon, *ib.* Prescribes the terms of peace to Navarre, *ib.* His death, with strong suspicion of poison, 64

Henry III. succeeds his father king Juan, when just eleven years old, viii. 70. The princes of the blood called to court, and gratified with places, *ib.* A council of regency formed, 71. Perplexed by the intrigues of the archbishop of Toledo and duke de Benevente, *ib.* Wearied out with continual disturbances, the king takes the administration upon himself, *ib.* Marries princess Catherine of Lancaster, and curtails pensions, *ib.* The princes and princesses of the blood unite in opposing the king, *ib.* Amidst these disputes he comes to Toledo, and the strange occasion, 72 (A). Persists in his own resolution, and triumphs over all the malecontents, *ib.* Renews the truce with Granada, 73. Resolves to make war on Portugal with all his force, *ib.* Acknowledges pope Benedict XIII. from whom he had withdrawn his obedience, *ib.* Sends an embassy to compliment Timur Bek or Tamerlane, who returns it, 74. The queen delivered of Maria, *ib.* Frugality, and with what generous view, *ib.* The queen delivered of Juan, and the king builds magnificent structures, *ib.* While meditating the subversion of the Moorish kingdom, he dies of slow poison, *ib.* His amiable character, 75 (B). Is succeeded by his son Juan, fourteen months old, *ib.* The queen and his uncle Ferdinand declared regents, *ib.*

— IV. takes possession of the kingdom of Castile, viii. 91. Acts of grace, and others of government performed by the king, *ib.* Makes war on the Moors with great force but little effect, 92. Espouses Joanna of Portugal, visits the coast, and makes an excursion to Ceuta, *ib.* A confederacy against him for a reformation in the government, *ib.* Upon which he has an interview with the king of Navarre, *ib.* Reconciliation with Isabella, and the honours done her, 106. Endeavours to surprize her and her husband Ferdinand, *ib.* Dies, 108. His character, *ib.*

— the Fat, succeeds his brother Sancho VIII. king of Navarre, viii. 577. His character and issue; a daughter whom the states acknowledge heiress, also a natural son, *ib.* Is choaked with fat, *ib.*

— II. succeeds his father d'Albret king of Navarre, viii. 614. Recovers Navarre by Andrew de Foix lord of Esparré; but loses it soon, and is taken prisoner with Francis I. at the battle of Pavia, but escapes, *ib.* Marries Margaret, that prince's sister, with his death, and personal history, 615 (A). Manner of educating Henry the Great, *ib.*

— III. afterwards king of France, his birth, ix. 239. Succeeds his mother in Navarre, with his marriage, and uniting that kingdom and France, under the title of Henry IV. viii. 616. Remarks on the present state of Navarre, *ib.* Withdrawing from the French court, declares he was forced to renounce protestantism, ix. 274. The famous edict of pacification, *ib.* See Henry IV. of France

— the Honest, duke of Breslau, after triumphing over two other competitors, is acknowledged duke of Poland, xii. 471. Defeats Uladislau Loctacus, one of the competitors, and dies, *ib.*

— duke of Anjou, how he comes to be proposed by Crasofki as a candidate for Poland, xii. 496. The whole Polish diet for him, and the stipulations sworn to by his ambassadors; he is proclaimed, and an embassy sets out for France, 492. On his arrival at Cracow he is crowned king of Poland, and soon engages the affections of the Poles, 493. On the death of his brother Charles IX. he abdicates the crown, steals out by night, and returns to France, *ib.* Notwithstanding his measures for appeasing the Poles, they declare the throne vacant, *ib.*

— of Burgundy, account of him, viii. 373 (A). Also of Theresa, *ib.* (B). Confusion in the time of their marriage and ages, 374 (C). True account of the establishment of the sovereignty, *ib.* Government of the frontiers of Portugal given to him, *ib.* Consequences of this, and account of his sovereignty, *ib.* (D). What part of Portugal



tugal given him with Theresa, and their residence where, 375. Compels the Moorish king of Lamego to submit, and receive a Christian colony, *ib.* Assists Urraca with all his forces, and dies, 376. Mistakes in his monumental inscription, *ib.* His character, *ib.*

Henry, cardinal-prince of Portugal, disappointed of the pontificate, and married to Joanna of Castile, viii 476. Succeeds Sebastian king of Portugal, with his character, 485. Antonio rebels against his uncle, as do Philip II. of Spain, and the pope, *ib.* The king continually chagrined, and why; with the different claimants to the succession, 486. The king timid and unsteady, *ib.* Cites the claimants to produce their titles, *ib.* Appoints commissioners to determine it, 487. Obstinate in wrong measures, *ib.* Consents to a regulation, and the different claimants appear, *ib.* Antonio, provoking the king by his behaviour, is banished, *ib.* Philip II's measures, with the king's obstinacy in favour of him, and the states opposition in vain, *ib.* Dies, and is the last monarch of the male line, 488. His character, *ib.* (F.) On Henry's dying, five governors appointed, 489. King Philip's proposals to them why accepted by all but the deputies of towns, *ib.* These governors betray the kingdom, *ib.*

— of Orange, twice repulsed from Spinola's lines, xi. 507. The operations of that prince and count Ernest, 510. Reduces Groll, and dislodges the enemy from all their posts on the Scheld, with other spirited successes, 511. Tumult at Amsterdam quelled by that prince, 514. Takes advantage of the Spanish affairs, and invests Boisleduc, with its vast strength, and the disposition of his army, 516. Takes Forts Isabella and Antonio at Boisleduc, 517. The stadtholdership made hereditary in his family, 521. Takes Limburg, &c. 526. Twelve thousand Swedes join him at Botel, 527. His designs how frustrated, *ib.* Invests Breda, upon which d'Ayeton raises the siege of Maestricht, and the prince retreats in good order, 529. After the junction of the French and Dutch, that prince passes the Meuse near Maestricht, and takes Tillemont, &c. 534. Jealousy between that prince and the French marshals, *ib.* Unsuccessful attempt on Antwerp and Gueldres, with the defeat of the Dutch, and loss of count Maurice de Nassau, 539. Invades Flanders, but quits it, 542. On a repulse before Hulst, and the loss of Ernest de Nassau, that prince rises from the siege, *ib.* Sas Van Ghent surrenders to him, 546. Takes Fort Moerspeye by assault, thereby securing Waes, 547. Death of that prince, 549. His character, *ib.*

— I. king of France, disturbances by Eudes's sons quelled by him, and the county of Meulan forfeited, ix. 27. The nobility on the same footing as in former reigns, *ib.* (C). Troubles in Normandy, *ib.* Supports William the Bastard in Normandy, *ib.* Grows jealous of him, assists his enemies, but with little success, and has an implacable quarrel with him, *ib.* Causes his eldest son Philip to be crowned, 28. His oath, and Baldwin earl of Flanders appointed his guardian, *ib.* Dies of poison, and a council holden by the pope in France, with Henry's character, *ib.*

— II. succeeds his father Francis I. king of France, ix. 232. Breaks every injunction of his father, with the changes in his council, and some executions, 233. Permits a duel in his presence, and his resolution thereupon, *ib.* The dowager Eleanor retires to Portugal, and seven cardinals why sent to Rome, *ib.* The Swiss cantons are sponsors for the princess Claude, *ib.* Sends succours to the Scots, and French party there send Mary of Scotland into France, with the effects upon her, 234. The king makes a progress, and marries Joan, heiress of Navarre, to the duke of Vendosme, *ib.* Death of Lewis duke of Orleans, *ib.* The king's shocking severity against the Protestants, and its effects on his understanding, *ib.* Fails in his attempt on Boulogne, *ib.* Advantageous treaty with England for restoration of Boulogne, &c. 235. Excessive remittances by the clergy to Rome restrained, and Guerin only beheaded for the severity to the Vaudois in the last reign; and why buildings in Paris restrained, *ib.* Shocking severity against them, and the effects on his understanding, *ib.* Fails in his attempt on Boulogne, *ib.* Renders himself odious by calling in the Turks assistance, with the French writers excuses for it, 236. Forbids money to be sent to Rome, *ib.* Flaming interdict against the French Protestants, *ib.* The pope's legate obliged to act according to the parliament of Paris's restrictions, 237. The king advances with a fine army towards the Rhine, seizing Lorraine, Toul, Verdun, and Metz, *ib.* Extends his conquests in Alsace, but fails in his attempt on Strasburg, the confederate princes

and the Swiss obliging him to desist, *ib.* Takes a turn through Luxemburg, and assists the duke of Bouillon, *ib.* A truce made with the pope in Italy, *ib.* Invades the Low Countries, and takes Marienburg, &c. with the high antipathy between him and Mary of Austria, 239. French defeated in Italy, and the siege of Renti raised, with a conspiracy against Metz defeated, 240. A truce between him and the emperor, 242. Pope's intrigues upon this by his nephew, but the truce broken, *ib.* Dilemma into which he is brought, and the intrigues of the families of Farnese and Medicis, 243. The dauphin's marriage with Mary queen of Scots, 246. Source of the miseries of France occasioned by an interview at Peronne, 247. Dandelot's firm answer to the king about the mafs, and what happened thereupon, with the taking of Thionville, and entire defeat of De Termes, by count Egmont at Gravelines, *ib.* French affairs decline in Italy, *ib.* Marriage of princess Claude with the duke of Guise, and the constable's advice to the king for discarding ruinous maxims, with the consequences of the peace to France, 248. Other marriages of the royal family, and an unfortunate disaster at a tournament, of which the king dies, with his character, issue, horoscope, and device, *ib.* (H).

— III. escapes out of Poland, with the advice given him at Vienna by the emperor, and by the Venetians, ix. 272. His entertainment and progress till his arrival at Lyons, affecting the character of a great prince, *ib.* Contemptible figure at Avignon, 273. Determines to continue the war against the Huguenots, *ib.* Breaks through all good resolutions, and a conspiracy against his life discovered, with his narrow escape, *ib.* Coronation, and marriage with Louisa of Vaudemont, and the confederates remonstrance, *ib.* Marshals Montmorency and Cossé how released, with the king's desire to Henry of Navarre, and his answer, 274. Two instances of the luxury at court, 275. The disturbances there through Guise's bravoes, and the queen-mother negotiates with her son and son-in-law to prevent a new war, *ib.* The king obliges the parliament to register his edicts burseaux, or money-bills, *ib.* Order of St. Michael having grown contemptible, the king creates that of the Holy Ghost, and with what view, 276. The queen-mother relapses into a desire of making war, *ib.* Loses all power, and how divided, 280. End of the king's acting, and how he ought to have acted, *ib.* Reconciliation with his brother of Anjou, *ib.* A splendid embassy sent into England to demand the queen for Anjou, and the construction put upon it, 278. Edict about Protestants rigorously executed, and the king of Navarre's appeal, 283. The war begins on all sides, but with inconsiderable advantage, with a court of justice held by the king, and the result, *ib.* The king's hard circumstances, with his prudent management, 285. Obligated to fly from Paris, and what he said at going, with the duke's observation to the queen-mother, 286. The duke restores the tranquility of Paris, with deputations from that city, and the king's answer, *ib.* Accommodation concluded between him and the Guises, and what contributed to it, *ib.* Edict for the re-union of his subjects to Catholicism, and the chiefs of the league received into favour, 287. Guise's reception by the king and queen-mother, with the distracted state of the kingdom, *ib.* The king takes courage from his dangerous situation, *ib.* Removes some of his principal ministers, and begins to lose all confidence in the queen-mother, *ib.* Meeting of the states, with an account of them, and the king's wise speech to them; also a hint in it at the Guises, 288. Notwithstanding the king's reconciliation to Guise at the altar, and a speech of the duchess dowager of Montpensier, he resolves to get rid of him, *ib.* Concerts with a few select friends the means of executing it, *ib.* King's short speech in the anti-chamber, and to the queen-mother, with what passed between them on Guises murder, 289. Curious account of this matter by Miron the king's physician, *ib.* (M). Queen-mother's death, character, and issue, 291 (F). Her last advice to the king, *ib.* not. The Parisians declaration against burying her body at St. Denis, *ib.* not. The king, disappointed of his expectations that matters would go better in the states, forced to prorogue them, *ib.* Du Guast's conduct with regard to his prisoners troubles him most, and his temporizing humour proves fatal, *ib.* His remarkable compliment to Du Harlay, 293. He and the king of Navarre invest Paris, *ib.* Dies of his wounds, with an account of him, and character, 294 (H).

Henry IV. or the Great, on Henry III.'s murder succeeds as king of France and Navarre, ix. 295. Descent, and title



to the throne, *ib.* (A). None but the Huguenots shew any great zeal for his service, 295. The Swits secured in the army by their colonel Sanci, *ib.* Declaration from a cabal among the Catholics, and the king's answer, with Givry's brisk speech to him, 296. Several come in to the king, *ib.* Raises the siege of Paris, and secures Dieppe and Caen, &c. 297. Attacked in his intrenchments at the former place by Mayenne, who is repulsed, and marches directly to Paris, *ib.* Insults three of the suburbs, *ib.* Some towns declare for the king, and others for the league, while some are neuter; and the king relieves Meulan twice from Mayenne, 298. The king intirely defeats him at Yvry, and his short speech before the action, in which count Egmont is killed; with marshal Biron's compliment to the king, who blocks up Paris completely, *ib.* Forced to raise the blockade of Paris on the duke of Parma's approach, *ib.* Meets with several other mortifications, and has not money to buy him a dinner, *ib.* Makes an attempt by surprize upon Paris, but forced to desist, 299. His attempt called *Journée des farines* also miscarries, *ib.* Pope Gregory XIV. excommunicates the king as a relapsed heretic, *ib.* Publishes an edict at Mante for liberty of conscience, *ib.* Young Guise escapes from Tours castle, and the king's speech upon it, *ib.* His several other competitors for the crown, *ib.* Recovers several places in Normandy, *ib.* Raises the siege of Rouen on Parma's approach; yet some favourable occurrences happen, 300. Attacks Parma's van, marching to relieve Rouen, but to no effect, *ib.* Obligated to raise the siege at last, *ib.* His affairs and those of the league at a crisis, 301. Amidst these perplexities the king hears mass, and receives absolution, with the angry preacher's declaration, 304. An attempt to assassinate the king, but the criminal Barrier executed, *ib.* Satisfies an assembly of the Reformed as much as he could, and the secret negotiations at Paris, *ib.* Goes to Meaux, and does for the people all they could expect; and the magistrates justification of themselves to their country, 306. Blocks up Paris again, and Lyons, *ib.* Some provinces submit to the king, who is crowned at Chartres, *ib.* King's compliments to the Spanish commanders at parting, 307. The parliament of Paris annuls whatever was done from the last year of the late reign, *ib.* Rouen, &c. submits to the king, *ib.* Becomes a Catholic, which breaks the schemes of Spain and the league, *viii.* 275. The pope still acts a double part, and the king inclined to declare war against Philip of Spain, *ix.* 308. Is stabbed in the mouth at Paris by Chastel, *ib.* With the assistance of England declares war against Spain, *viii.* 276. Banishes the Jesuits, *ix.* 308. Several places recovered, and the king repairs to Burgundy to command his army for the conquest of Franche Comte, which he meant to give his son Cæsar, *ib.* By a fortunate temerity he baffles the designs of the Spaniards, 309. Engages Mayenne to quit them, and retire to Chalons; after which the king proceeds to Lyons, while other places surrender, *ib.* Absolved by the pope, 310. The Spaniards success in Picardy draws him from these parts, while Catelet, Dourlens, and Cambray, are taken by Condé and Fuentes, *ib.* Blocks up La Fere, *ib.* Takes it, *xi.* 446. And his advantageous terms to the duke of Mayenne censured, with the king's reasons for this step, and the duke's reception at Monceaux, *ix.* 311. Dukes of Joyeuse and Nemours submit, *ib.* Public affairs in great perplexity, 312. Concludes an alliance with England and Holland, and calls an assembly of the Notables at Rouen, *ib.* In his distresses he is extricated by the assistance of baron Rosny, 314. Becomes more uneasy at Paris, with the general spirit to assist him, *ib.* Prevails on the Huguenots not to form a third party, *ib.* Happy escape from secret conspiracies, and the executions thereupon, 315. But Peter Owen of Bretagne spared, *ib.* Amazing change in the king's affairs, *ib.* His remonstrance to the duke of Bouillon, and to the parliament of Paris, with regard to the edict of Nantes, 316 (C). Appoints commissioners in the conferences at Vervins, *ib.* Offers made him by queen Elizabeth rejected, *ib.* Peace signed, but queen Elizabeth and the states-general unsatisfied, *ib.* Solemnly sworn to, and the restitution of what the duke of Florence surprized on the coast of Florence, 317. Many excellent regulations of the king, *ib.* Marries his sister to the duke of Bar, and presies for the verification of the edict of Nantes, 318. Is registered, with some modifications, *ib.* Inclines to marry the duchess of Beaufort, with the queen's and pope's opposing it, *ib.* (D). Promise of marriage with Henrietta Bassac, and what passed between him and Rosny about it, 319. Why he obtains a divorce from queen Margaret, *ib.* Marriage

with Mary of Medicis negotiated, with his mentioning of the thoughts of domestic disturbances, *ib.* Receives the submission of some chiefs and cities of the league, *x.* 120. Principal confidants, and the king's intention of restoring order and justice by them disgusting to many of the great nobility, *ix.* 319. Declares war against the duke of Savoy, 321. Actual invasion, *xiv.* 131. The progress of the king's arms, *ix.* 321. Montmelian and St. Catherine taken, *ib.* Medals struck in answer to Charles Emanuel, *ib.* Marries Mary de Medicis, the duke of Florence's niece, with the pope's presents to her, and a peace with Savoy, *ib.* *x.* 129. Causes, consequences, and spirit with which this war was carried on by France, *ix.* 321. Makes a tour to Calais, to awe the archduke Albert besieging Ostend, with the compliments exchanged between the king and queen Elizabeth, then at Dover, 322. Birth of the dauphin Lewis, and his nativity calculated, 323. Birth of Anne of Austria, his queen afterwards, *ib.* Presents made the queen on this occasion; a chamber of enquiry erected, and the arrival of a Turkish envoy, with his demands, *ib.* Martial disposition of the young nobility at this juncture, *ib.* Strange disorders in public affairs, and the causes, with the king's quelling insurrections by his presence and acts of severity, 324. Domestic quarrel, with Rosny's advice, and the king's answer, who has an exact account of the conspiracy, and resolves to seize on Marshal Biron, *ib.* Sends a body of troops into Burgundy, 327. Interposes in favour of Geneva against Savoy, and introduces the silk-trade, against the strong opposition of Rosny, and the king's reasons, 328. Makes a tour to Metz, and turns out Espernon's two lieutenants, *ib.* Receives the Jesuits into favour, and makes an alliance with Great Britain by Rosny, *ib.* Two articles obtained by the king for the pope and the Jesuits, *ib.* Grants letters patent for Canada, in which he again differs with Rosny; begins the canal of Briare for joining the Loire and the Seine, sets on foot a crystal manufacture, and encourages strangers, *ib.* New perplexities in the government, 329. Disturbances in the king's family from the queen and his mistress; parts from the latter, and a new conspiracy discovered, in which count d'Auvergne, &c. was concerned, 330. The criminals condemned by the parliament, but gently treated by the king, *ib.* New conspiracies in the provinces discovered by Margaret of Valois, and quelled by the king's presence, 331. His unsatisfactory reception at Rochelle, with new treasons in the provinces, and Mariargues executed, *ib.* The king stopped on Pont-neuf by a madman, *ib.* Three popes successively this year, and the king's deference for the court of Rome, *ib.* Marches to Sedan, and with what view, *ib.* Suits before the parliament for queen Margaret, which she devises to the dauphin, and the king in danger of his life, saved by swimming, and the queen pulled out by the hair, 332. New chamber erected, and the king enters into new amours, *ib.* Accommodates matters between the pope and Venice, with the birth of the duke of Orleans, and its consequences on the princes of the blood; also disputes in the king's council, 333. Unites all his patrimonial estates, except Bearn, to the crown, *ib.* Greatly embarrassed by the affairs of the Low Countries, and he establishes tapestry and linen manufactures, *ib.* The king and minister's different judgments about them, with a negotiation for peace begun in Holland, *ib.* With which state and France an alliance defensive concluded, and birth of the duke of Anjou, afterwards duke of Orleans, 334. Proposals from Spain rejected by him, *ib.* Domestic disquiets, and bad influence of the king's example, with a character of that age, *ib.* Jealousy of the Protestants makes him reject the humble applications of the Morescos in Spain, 335. A hard winter gives occasion to the king's compassion, with the marriage of his son Cæsar to Merccœur's daughter, and of the prince of Conde to Montmorenci's, *ib.* Consequences of the latter with regard to the king, and a long truce between the Dutch and archdukes, 336. The king's ends disappointed, *ib.* A Spanish faction in his council, and the queen's intrigues cause him great disquiet; with the influence on his subjects from a passage in a Jesuit's sermon preached before him, *ib.* Untowardly situation as to his own affairs and his allies, with his schemes for reducing the house of Austria, and the progress therein thro' his management, 337. Succession to Cleves and Juliers gives him occasion of entering on his grand design for humbling Austria, which is admirably contrived, and a confederacy quickly formed, 338. Account of this grand design, and the king's ten wishes, *ib.* (F). Additional motive from the king's passion for the princess of Conde,



and her husband withdrawing with her into the Low Countries, 339. Scheme for carrying her off frustrated, and alliances made with all the neighbouring princes, *ib.* The vast preparations for this expedition, *ib.* Passage granted his troops through archduke Albert's territories to Juliers, *ib.* The king's unquiet apprehensions from the ceremony of the queen's coronation, *ib.* That solemnity celebrated with vast magnificence at St. Denis, 341. Her public entry into Paris, with the king's sending to reconnoitre the passages into Juliers, *ib.* The king's extreme uneasiness and uncommon circumstances preceding his death, being stabbed in his coach by Ravilliac, *ib.* & xiv. 43. Character and issue, ix. 341 (C). What follows on this occasion, 342. Is surnamed the Great, and in what respect, *ib.* The queen-mother intrusted by the parliament with the regency and tutelage of her son Lewis XIII. 343

Henry of Bearn and Henry of Conde acknowledged generals of the Protestants, and the admiral raises the siege of Poitiers, little to his credit, ix. 262. He and others declared rebels by the parliament, *ib.* Conde's death and character, 421

— duke of Saxony revolts, x. 625. But agrees to a suspension of arms, *ib.* Departs for Palestine, his reception on the road, and return, 676

— the Lion, desists from his pretensions on Bavaria, x. 669. Raises fresh troubles in the empire, and his character, 679. Articles of accusation against him, and he is put to the ban, *ib.* Deprived comes hence into England, xv. 480. His successes, and those of his general count Lipstadt; but he is divested of his dominions, x. 679. Marries Mathilda daughter of Henry II. of England, xv. 479. Left heir by his uncle Guelph, who alters his will, *ib.* Retires, by the emperor's advice, to his father-in-law, Henry II. of England, where his wife bore William, the ancestor of the house of Brunswic, xv. 480. His threatening to the emperor, x. 688. Disturbances in Germany by him, who is defeated near Ferden by the king of the Romans, 685. And obtains peace, *ib.* His dissingenuity and its effects, xii. 7. Bribes the officer at Danewark to let him pass, and takes Sleswick, 8. Successes in Pomerania, 12. Unaccountable wavering, 14. Ambassy to Valdemar I. of Denmark, to apologize for his conduct, 14. War between him and Adolphus duke of Holstein, with the latter's conquests, x. 687. Endeavours to raise fresh troubles, 689. His success against the Venedi, and peace with them, xv. 479. Saves the emperor Barbarossa from under the horses feet, and recovers Bavaria from his step-father, with other territories granted by the emperor; he intirely routs the Venedi, *ib.* Defeats his envious enemies, and a peace concluded, *ib.* Death and character, *ib.* & xv. 480. Account of his issue, *ib.*

— count Palatine, disputes for his succession, x. 704

— of Holstein's perfidious conduct before Wardenburg, and the governor's revenge, xii. 70. Peace concluded, *ib.* Death, and its effects, 92

— the Black duke of Bavaria, xv. 478

— duke of Bavaria, xv. 468. Invades Italy, ix. 542

— the Haughty duke of Bavaria, refusing to deliver up the regalia, is divested of his dominions, x. 667 (O). Marries Gertraut, only daughter of the emperor Lotharius, and his possessions how bounded, xv. 478. Has several countries given him by that emperor, and declared his successor *ib.* & ix. 589. Yet prevailed on to acknowledge Conrad, and afterwards put to the ban, xv. 478. Is poisoned, *ib.*

— the Long, succeeds him, but dies without male issue, xv. 480

— duke of Brunswick enters into a league with Everhard duke of Franconia, and Siebert duke of Austrasia, against his brother the emperor Otho I. x. 630. They take the field, but are intirely defeated on the Rhine, with the loss of Everhard and Siebert, *ib.* Retires by capitulation from Meriburg to France; and the emperor Otho reconciled, gives him Lorrain, with an account of another conspiracy, and his pardon, *ib.* (G). His ravages against the Protestants, and he is compelled to surrender at discretion to the landgrave of Hesse, xi. 159

—, bishop, chosen king of Bohemia, and his wife administration, xv. 455. Supported against two invaders, but resigns, *ib.*

— duke of Brunswick-Wolfenbuttle, xv. 487

— king of the Abodrites, his wars with the Danes, xv. 510. Refuses an agreement with Canute, escapes with difficulty from him, and intirely defeated, 511. Noble

behaviour at an interview, and Canute nominated his heir, *ib.*

— Burevin, prince of Mecklenburgh, xv. 513. After governing wisely, he resigns, *ib.*

— succeeds his father John the Divine in Mecklenburgh, how taken prisoner and delivered, xv. 516. Returns to Mecklenburgh, *ib.* His death and issue, *ib.* Is succeeded by Henry the Lion, *ib.*

— the Lion, prince of Mecklenburgh, his war with the Lubeckers, and the occasion, xv. 516. Also with the Rostockers, 517. An accommodation with them, *ib.* Great friendship between Denmark and Mecklenburgh, *ib.* Territory ceded to him, and he dies, 518

— the Fat, duke of Mecklenburgh and prince of Wenden, with his right to the latter title, xv. 524. His death and issue, with the uncertainty of the succession afterwards, *ib.*

— duke of Mecklenburgh, his excellent character, and dispute with the Lubeckers, xv. 525. Accommodation made, *ib.* Conduct with regard to Luther's reformation, *ibid.*

— king of Bohemia expelled for bad government, xv. 456

— the Younger, duke of Lunenburg, why put to the ban, xv. 482

— bishop of Liege, and Frederic abbot of St. Paul, deposed for debauchery, with an account of the former, ix. 644 (O)

— of England, cardinal, made legate in Germany, &c. raises forces by a croisade against the Hussites, ix. 716

— brother of Uladisslaus II. his croisade against the Saracens, xii. 464

— of Thoulouse, heresies taught by him, ix. 592

— bay discovered, v. 16

Hennepin, his account of the discovery of the Mississippi, xiv. 612 (A). Progress from Fort Crevecoeur up and down the Mississippi, 615. Charlevoix treats most of this voyage as a fiction, *ib.* Character of his narrative, xv. 4. (U). Stricture on some part of it, 10 (Y)

Henteti, mount in Barbary, described, vii. 137

— tribe where seated, vii. 137. Their princes, *ib.*

Hepburn, colonel, his generosity to Gustavus Adolphus, xi. 229

Heraclea besieged by Al Raschid, i. 428. Is taken and burned, 433

— city in Tunis, described, vii. 304. Its ruins, *ib.*

Heraclius, emperor, invited to embrace Islamism, i. 69. A second time, 94. His army defeated in Syria by the khalif, 137. Defeats a body of Arabs, *ib.* Defeated by them, 138. In great dread of the Moslems, *ib.* Reinforces Damascus, 139. His army cut in pieces, 144. Loses many cities in Syria, 189, 197. Sends a vast army against Abu Obeida, 198. But is totally defeated, 202. Questions an old Moslem, who is prisoner, about Mohammed, 216. And another about Omar's character, 217. Makes the traitor Youkinna his generalissimo, *ib.* Is betrayed by him, and defeated, 219. Retires to Constantinople, 220

— his statue erected near Kinnisrin, but defaced by an Arab unawares, and the affair how compromised with Abu Obeidah, i. 191

— sent by Apfimar (Tiberius) against the Arabs, and destroys 200,000 of them, i. 339. And 10,000 in Cilicia, 341. Also 12,000 more near Silium, *ib.*

— bishop of Jerusalem, his remonstrances in favour of king Baldwin, to the council of Verona ineffectual, x. 681

Herat, Heri, or Eri, where situated, and taken by the Seljuks, i. 643. Besieged by Tuli Khan, and stout defence; but taken, and spared, ii. 313. Described, 314. Slaughtered for its revolt, 320. Taken by Timur Bek, 512. Seized and plundered by Alao'ddawlet, and entered by Ulug Beg, 588, 589. Revolts, and is reduced by him, *ib.* Repulses Kalil Hendugha, 592. Revolts against Mir Mahmud, 655. Becomes independent from Persia, *ib.*

Herbelot, Mr. de, confuted in some of his accounts, ii. 236

Herbersten, Imperial ambassador, solicits in vain for the czar's making peace with the Poles, and for Gliniski's release, xiii. 98

Herbis, the Damascenian general, capitulates with Abu Obeida, i. 184. Pursued and slain by Khaled, 185

— defeated by the Moslems, and rejects their general's offers, i. 194. Repulsed in his gallant defence of Balbec, *ib.* Submits to a hard capitulation, 195. Assassinated by the citizens, 196



- Hercules I. succeeds Brafé, duke of Modena, xiv. 107.  
 His marriage, great character, and issue, ib.  
 ——— II. succeeds his father Alphonso duke of Modena,  
 with an account of him and his brother the cardinal, xiv.  
 108. His issue, ib.  
 Heredia, Ferdinand de, grand master of Malta, why chosen  
 by the chapter, vii. 403. Great sway with the pope, his  
 new fleet, and he accompanies the pope to Rome, ib.  
 Takes Petra from the Turks, is taken prisoner, and sing-  
 les a generosity, ib. Close confinement, ransom, and  
 voyage to Avignon, 404. Reclaiming speech to the  
 knights, ib. Sends supplies to Rhodes and Smyrna, and  
 dies at Avignon, 405.  
 Herbert releases Charles the Simple, and owns him for his  
 sovereign, ix. 9. How Charles is set again on the throne;  
 but is under a second captivity by Herbert, ib. His mea-  
 sures bring on a war and great confusion, ib. His character,  
 and methods of obtaining succours, and his reconciliation  
 with Rodolph, ib.  
 Heresy, a lady burned alive for it in Parma, xiii. 603.  
 Heretics, severe edicts against them, ix. 625. Severe canons  
 against them, 627. Severe edicts of the pope against them,  
 and many burned, ib.  
 Heribert, archbishop of Milan, by his own authority declares  
 Conrad king of Italy; for which the privileges of his  
 archbishopric are increased; but defeated and driven out by  
 the nobles he oppressed, ix. 554.  
 Herimulc defeated and slain by Tokatmish, ii. 526.  
 Herkle, capital of Semendura, surrendered to the Ottomans,  
 v. 155.  
 Herman, count, competitor to the emperor Henry, submits  
 on his knees, and pardoned, x. 642. But renews his in-  
 trigues, and the methods used by Henry to prevent them,  
 ib. Chosen king of the Romans, 657. And his successor  
 Robert defeated by the emperor, with their untimely end, ib.  
 Hermance, baron, taking of him, and his large ransom, xiv.  
 36. An effectual conference there between deputies from  
 Savoy and Geneva, 37.  
 Hermonigilde declared prince of the Goths, and marries the  
 princess Ingonde, vii. 537. Contest with his father, 538  
 (T). Imprisoned and put to death, 539 (U).  
 Hermite, Jaques, his voyage round the globe, v. 83. Ar-  
 rival at Sierra Leone, and at Annobon, 85. Bad conduct  
 of some of his officers, ib. An oversight at their setting  
 out, 86. Attempt on Callao de Lima frustrated, 87. His  
 death, 88. Return of the fleet to the East Indies, 91.  
 Reflections on this voyage, ib.  
 ——— le, a Dutch admiral, dies in his expedition against  
 Chili, iv. 424.  
 ——— admiral, his victory over a Spanish fleet at Callao,  
 xi. 501. Successful naval transactions in South America,  
 and his death, 507.  
 Hermaphrodites dance in Pegu, iii. 247.  
 Heruli, under Odoacer, their irruption into Italy, xiii. 273.  
 Herring, battle of, in which a detachment is beaten by Sir  
 John Fallstaffe, ix. 146. That expedition why so called,  
 xiv. 16 (B).  
 Herrera, story related by him to account for the Peruvian  
 monarchy, xiv. 375 (B).  
 Hibnan, the eightieth king of Abyssinia, vi. 253.  
 Hisham Ebn Abdalmalek succeeds Yezid in the western  
 khalifate, i. 362. Not successful against the Greeks, and  
 coins some new dirhems at Rufafa, 363. Heaps up im-  
 mense riches, ib. Great favour for Cosmas the Melchite,  
 364. Conquells in the empire, &c. 366. A large comet  
 appears, 367. A second, followed by a rebellion in Africa,  
 and his army defeated by the Moors, 369. His death and  
 character, with his prodigious flock of cloaths, 370.  
 ——— most cruelly whipped by Ebn Al Abbas, i. 382.  
 ——— the western khalif, his exploits and public works in  
 Spain, with his lenity to Moslems and Christians, i. 420.  
 Other conquests and ravages in Spain, 421. His death,  
 422.  
 ——— chosen caliph of Corduba, i. 628. Deposed, ib.  
 Imprisonment and flight, with his death, 631.  
 Hest-quan, tribe of Hottentots, described, vi. 386.  
 Hesse-Darmstadt's reward for his brave defence of Barcelona,  
 viii. 345.  
 Hesse, association entered into by that landgrave, xi. 142.  
 Negotiates with the king of France in favour of Ulric duke  
 of Wirtemberg, 145. Asks pardon of the emperor, with  
 his reply, 146. Takes the field, who, together with the  
 elector of Saxony, is put to the ban, 150. His submission  
 received, but arrested, 161. Set at liberty; but being  
 arrested at Miedelich, is again released, 165. Makes a  
 treaty with Gustavus, 225. His death a great loss to the  
 Protestants, 246. The widow administration of it con-  
 cludes a treaty with France at Doulen in Wirtemberg, 248.  
 Landgrave and duke of Wirtemberg reconciled to the em-  
 peror Ferdinand, with the articles of pacification, 252.  
 The retaking of Zülich, Biele, and Andernach by that  
 prince, 325. An act passed for re-establishing the old con-  
 stitution in Sweden, upon a declaration from that prince,  
 with the substance of the act of limitation, and the present  
 form of government, xii. 212. The states permit the queen  
 to resign in favour of her consort, ib. Who signs an in-  
 strument containing more limitation, ib. The form of  
 government the same now as established at the accession of  
 that prince, 213. And an act to that effect signed by the  
 present king, 214 (B). Princess of Hesse married to the  
 duke of Holstein, 292. Proceedings of that prince upon the  
 death of Charles XII. 412. That prince sends a declara-  
 tion of his intentions to the Swedish diet, 416. It is un-  
 animously resolved to raise the prince to the sovereign autho-  
 rity, and he is proclaimed king, ib. Crowned king of  
 Sweden, ib. Two princes of Hesse-Cassel coming to Ge-  
 neva, one dies, and the honours paid to his memory, xiv.  
 51.  
 Hesse-Darmstadt, his reward for defending Barcelona, viii.  
 345.  
 Hiss-Shah made governor of Bengal, is sent against the Por-  
 tuguese pyrates, iii. 111 (G). Invites them to his service  
 against the king of Rakan, 113. Seizes the island of San-  
 diva from them, and puts an effectual end to the pyrate  
 crew, ib. Happy escape from Savaji's attempt, 144.  
 Hetak cattle taken by Malek Hosain-oddin, i. 705.  
 Hew-king's severity to the traitor Syau-ywen, and he mur-  
 ders the emperor Kyen-ven-ti, iii. 710.  
 Hew-ti, emperor of China, his troublesome reign, and cowar-  
 dice reproved by his son, with his base surrender to the  
 victor, iii. 706.  
 Heycoms Hottentots, who, and where seated, vi. 386.  
 Heyling penetrates into Abyssinia, vi. 306. His success, and  
 put to death in his return, ib.  
 Hezekias, a Jewish chief, his unfortunate reign, and schism  
 risen in his time, v. 531 (F).  
 Heemskirk, James, commands the fleet sent to find the north-  
 east passage, and winters at Nova-Zembla, iv. 410. New  
 observations there, ib. (D). Explodes the Spanish calum-  
 nies against the Dutch, 413.  
 Hiarn chosen twenty-sixth king of Denmark, as making the  
 best verses on Frotho III. who died without male issue, xi.  
 672. Different accounts of his death, ib.  
 Hiaromirius, duke of Bohemia, escapes a conspiracy, and  
 Prague taken by the Poles, xv. 453. Which his brother  
 recovers, and assumes the government, ib.  
 Hieres isles, a Spanish fleet being dispersed by a storm, re-  
 duces them, viii. 298.  
 Hieronimo de Santa Fé promotes a conference with the Jews,  
 v. 572 (Q). His account of it, 573 (R).  
 Hi-long-kew, one of the four gates of the Chinese wall, with  
 the Mongls inhabiting that district, ii. 244.  
 Highlanders under Murray, their effectual execution with their  
 broad-swords in the battle of Quebec, xiv. 721. Settle-  
 ment on Alatomaha river, xv. 102.  
 Hi-hyen opposes Alipuka in China, ii. 362. And he is dis-  
 graced by Ahama's treachery, 367.  
 Hija, Abul, the commander of a Meccan caravan, taken pri-  
 soner, i. 517. Released by Abu Thaher, ib.  
 Hilda, the vice-chancellor, and the pope's nuncio meet at  
 Smalcalde, xi. 149. There they produce the pope's bull  
 for convoking a council, with the declaration of the Lu-  
 theran divines thereon, ib.  
 Hildebrand, monk, his intrigues, and an account of him, x.  
 650 (I). Humbles the emperor afterwards at Canosa. See  
 Henry IV. Chosen pope, x. 403, without the emperor  
 Henry IV.'s knowledge; but, upon his excuses, he is con-  
 firmed, with his excommunications against the German  
 princes and others, 654. That pope tampers with the  
 Saxons, and the emperor reconciled to the pope, who pro-  
 poses a crusade against the infidels, 655. See Gregory VII.  
 Hilderic, the fifth king of the African Vandals, v. 712. Too  
 hasty zeal for the Orthodox, and defeated by Gilimer, ib.  
 Hildeheim, disputes between the Protestants and Papists in  
 that bishopric, xi. 346.  
 Hillel, the first pretended patriarch of the Jews, v. 486 (N).  
 Rectifies the Jewish kalender, and his great learning, 494.  
 Conversion and private baptism at the point of death, with  
 the



- the year of his demise, 495 (N). His Hebrew MS published in France, and its want of two verses accounted for, 545
- Himer takin, governs Karazm in Jon'edai's absence, ii. 306. Defeated by the invading Mungls, and desperate defence of Karazm, ib. Slain by an arrow, 307
- Himelut, the Greek admiral, his ill success against the Moslems, i. 512
- Hindus, the original natives of Hindustan, or Indostan, in India, iii. 18. The Hindus, or Hindows, described, with their tribes, names, &c. 24. Character, &c. 28. Courtesy to animals, 29. Customs, ib. Tribes, and how distinguished, 30. Immortal custom of the women, ib. Diet, 31. Drink, ib. Ingenious mechanics and artists, ibid.
- Hindustan invaded by Timur Bek, ii. 541. Empire described, with its boundaries, soil, climate, &c. iii. 1. Rivers, 2. Heats, rains, &c. ib. Precious stones, fossils, and other mines, 3. Produce, ib. Wild and tame beasts, 4. Reptiles, 5. Fowls, 6. Number of provinces, ib. Their different names at different times, ib. Inhabitants, 18. Various religions, 19. Exercises and diversions, diseases and their cures, 41. Longevity, and computation of time, 42. Manner of building, ib. Furniture, 43. Manufactures and commerce, ib. Coin, and manner of travelling, 44. Imperial court, ib. Forces and strength, 48. Revenues, 50. Vast flux and reflux of gold and silver, yet both strangely scarce, ib. Government, officers, &c. 51. Commanders and soldiery how paid, ib. Cities how governed, and quick administration of justice, 52. Emperors descended from Timur Bek, ib. Confederates against Aurengzeb, 115. Poll-tax laid by him, with temples and idols destroyed by him, 116. Invaded by the great Nadir Shah, 124
- Hing-chang sent to conquer Corea, his success there, and outwitted by the Chinese general, iii. 756. Again overreached by the treacherous Chinese general, 757. Defeats him totally, and forced to end the war, ib.
- Hing-pu, the fifth grand tribunal in China, iii. 578
- Hionard, governor of Croatia, puts Elizabeth queen of Hungary to death, xi. 72. Throws her daughter Mary into a dungeon, ib.
- Hippon, captain, his voyage and success in India, and privilege granted to him by the emperor of Japan, iv. 296 (O)
- Hippopotamus, or sea-horse, described, and dreadful havoc, vi. 185. Fine teeth, and terrible voice, 186
- Hira subdued by the khalifs, and its strong situation, i. 136
- or Hirra, a bishop's see of the Scenite Arabs, i. 568
- Hirot, king of Gothland, succeeds Siward in Sweden, xii. 225. Odd condition upon which the king of Denmark obtains his daughter Thera, and his issue, 226
- Hispaniola, when discovered by Columbus, and its true name what, xiv. 143. Horror and surprize of the natives, ib. Visited by the cazique and his retinue, &c. ib. Behaviour and reception, ib. The inhabitants how reconciled to him, 144. Columbus settles a colony there under Avana, after an interview with king Guacanagari, ib. Calls the fort he built there Navidad, or Nativity, ib. General observations on, and character of, the natives, ib. Account of its inhabitants and caziques, &c. 145 (A). Account of that settlement in Columbus's time, 151 (C). Laws spiritual and temporal, ib. sub not. The French attempt a settlement there, and the free-booters join them, xv. 286. Attempt by the English to dislodge them ineffectual, ib. Expedition by the English under Lillifston to it, 289. Recriminations of the troops against each other, yet the affair terminated advantageously, ib. A reflection on the commander's conduct, ib.—(Domingo) its discovery and situation, 344. Possession by the Spaniards, 345. Its history, 348. Why the natives poison themselves, 353. Their religion and ceremonies, 354. Manners, ib. Particular strictness as to the marriage-bed, and the reason why a cazique murders the Spaniards, ib. They impale for theft, 355. History of an Indian lady, and the occasion of building St. Domingo, ib. Successful expedition against it by Drake, ib. By Penn and Venables, under Cromwell, ib. But fails, 356. How the French settled here, ib. Who were of three sorts, ib. Its north-west part ceded by the Spaniards to them by the treaty of Ryswick, ib. Described, 357. Its products, 358. Number of Whites and Blacks, ib. Value of their exports, ib. Advantageous situation, and district of the governor-general, ib. Opulence of the French part, 359
- Historians and literati highly honoured by Ayyulialipata, ii. 43. Reduce the Chinese history into annals, 418
- Hitong's effluinate reign the cause of several revolts, iii. 715. Driven out of his capital, ib.
- success against the Tartars, iii. 715. His reign disturbed by robbers, and death, ib.
- Hu, a brave warrior, and Chinese general, takes up arms against the Tartars, with his success in Suen-fu, iii. 736
- Hua-wing assists Triang in his transfer, iii. 458. Outwitted by him, and subdues Cochín China, 459
- Habal, one of the idols of the Caba, described, i. 57
- Hobar proscribed by Mohammed, i. 83
- Hochow, the capital of the Igurs, where situated, and its ruins, ii. 282. Besieged by Mengko, with its stout defence, 359. The siege raised on his death, 360
- Hochstet. See Blenheim
- Hocquincourt relieves Roses, viii. 311
- Hodaisa, Ebn Yaman, succeeds Al Nooman in Khorazin, i. 245. His success there, ib.
- Hodebiya where situated, and arrival of Mahomet there in his way to Mecca, i. 67
- Hokkirken's success against the Turks at Guila, xi. 515
- Hogmor and Hogrin succeed Attila II. in Sweden; who reign long, and perish in a sea fight with the Danish king, xii. 221
- Hohenzollern, account of that family, from which descends the king of Prussia, xv. 489
- Ho-kyen-fu, a city in the province of Pe cheli, iii. 527
- Hulben, his famous death-dance, xv. 447 (Y)
- Holbourne sails for Louisbourg, and returns to Halifax, with his useless blocking up the former; but dispersed in a storm, xiv. 713
- Holguin, one of Cortez's sea-captains, takes the emperor of Mexico prisoner in a peragua on the lake of Mexico, xiv. 27
- Alvarez, obliges the Almagrian party to quit Cuzco, xiv. 328. Brought back prisoners, ib. His party greatly increased, and he is confirmed captain-general, ib.
- Holitay sent by Mengko into Tibet, ii. 355
- Holland, New, when and by whom discovered, iv. 425, & v. 16. Reviewed by captain Abel Tasman; rich and large isle discovered by him there, ib. sub not. Described, ib. Dampier's account of it, 23. Farther description, 41. Wealth and fertility, ib. & vi. 400. Whence so called, ib.
- Old, draws upon herself Lewis XIV's jealousy, ix. 454. Flourishing state of that republic and Amsterdam, with the several causes of the king's disgust, and his designs for the intire conquest of the Low Countries, ib. Intimations to Lewis about resuming the negotiations there, and Marlborough why still at the head of the confederate army, 498. States highly incensed at queen Anne, 505. But apply to the British plenipotentiaries to intercede with France, and the conferences hereupon resumed, 506. Matters finally settled, and treaty signed with Portugal and Prussia, 507. Two remarkable articles relating to the latter, ib. And its treaty with Savoy, the basis of that with Great-Britain, 508. Its history, geography, site, climate, inconveniences, &c. xi. 385. Character of the people, ib. Government of the republic, its provinces and cities, with the provincial states, 386. Particularly Holland, ib. The states general, 387. One instance of not consulting the provinces, ib. The council of state, and their five departments, with the chamber of accounts, 388. Council of admiralty, consisting of five departments, ib. One extraordinary circumstance in this, ib. Ancient history of its first counts, 391. Difficulties about raising the supplies there, 472. Religious disputes arise through Arminius and Gomarus, 484. In which the prince of Orange and Barneveldt vent their mutual animosity, ib. States reconciled to the states-general, 576. Among other proceedings of the states of Holland, they, and those of Zealand, stopt the infant prince of his honours, ib. Treaty between Holland and France, 559. Commotions in different parts there, 563. And a very unexpected consequence from these, ib. Situation after the defeat between Scheveling and the Meuse, 571. Act of exclusion of the Orange family, abolished by the states of Holland, 589. Apology of the states to the prince of Orange, ib. Its state with regard to France on Mazarine's death, 590. Every thing takes a turn favourable to it; and, among other revolutions, Lewis is obliged to quit all his conquests, 621. Situation of affairs between it and France, 635. Daily increase of jealousy between it and England, ib. That republic's motives for putting the prince of Orange on the British throne, 637. Its situation between



- between it and Denmark compromised, 640. Other disputes between it and Denmark in what manner compromised, 644. Religious disputes there revived, are regulated by an ordonnance, and its purport, 646. On the duke of Savoy's detaching himself from the confederacy, and joining Lewis, negotiations of peace are carried on there, 648. See States-General, Low-Countries, Dutch. Hollanders assist the king of Siam against the Portuguese, iii. 362. Plan a West-India Company, xi. 479.
- Holmes's successes on the coast of Africa, and taking possession of Nova Belgia, xi. 593. Mistake of the English historians in assigning the cause of this war, ib.
- , Sir Robert, his successful attempt in the road of Vlie, xi. 604 (B). Perfidious attempt on the Dutch Smyrna fleet by him, which Van Nefs by his conduct renders unsuccessful, 612. He contradicts the court account of this affair, 613
- takes and destroys a French Squadron, xv. 331
- Holstein, civil war breaks out between its count and the nobles, who, after vanquishing the latter, turns his arms against Lubeck, xi. 21. But a reconciliation is effected, and their mutual agreement, with the terms, ib. Difference between that duke and the king of Denmark determined by a treaty, which is not observed by either, 318. Account of that duchy, 653. Princes of Holstein seize the duke of Sleswick, xii. 59. The king redeems several places from them, ib. (A). Difference with the princes adjusted, 63. Fresh disturbances with that house on Gerhard's death, and Margaret profits by the present situation, 83. Matters accommodated between it and Denmark, 84. Congress for establishing a peace with it, 86. Eric's conduct at it, ib. Sentence passed with regard to Sleswick, 87. Alliances formed by the Holstein house, and the emperor confirms the sentence against them, ib. A view of the affairs there, ib. Princes successes against Eric X. 89. Proposals for a peace, the treaty for which is broken off by the Holstein princes, ib. Solicitations to the Vandal cities effectual, 92. Proposals made by their princes in a manifesto, 94. The emperor's decree in consequence of it; and they consent to a conference, but nothing is determined, ib. A peace between it and Lubeck, 151. Duke chosen king of Livonia, 163. Demands of that duke rejected by the court of Denmark; but the king of Sweden seconding them, the sovereignty of Holstein is granted, 185. Alliance between it and Sweden, with a demand from the duke granted by Frederick, 186. Duke's marriage with a princess of Denmark, 187. Escapes by night to Hamburgh, 191. Negotiations at Altena with regard to Holstein, and that duke compelled to an accommodation, with the demands of the latter in a memorial, 202. The king's answer, and their differences ended by the treaty of Altena, with the stipulations on both sides, ib. Memorial by Freytag the Imperial minister, for the restitution of Sleswic to the duke, with the Swedish king's declaration, xii. 420. Duke's letters to the king and states on the same subject, ib. The king makes no answer to his letter, nor to Freytag's memorial, ib. The duke's intrigues for raising himself to the Swedish throne, 422. A majority of two voices only for that duke, and the offer of the reversion to him, who is made successor to the crown of Russia, 423. Embassy from that duke to the czar, and its views, xiii. 152 (H). Duke requests the title of Royal Highness from the states of Sweden, with the secret committee's report in his favour; but the king and queen oppose it, 256. However, upon a conference, the states and senate grant it, 257. Duke married to Anne Petrowna of Russia, 259
- Holsteiners driven out of Zealand, Valdemar III. succeeding to the throne, xii. 56. Resentment of the Danes against them, and some battles fought, 57. Surprise Flensberg, 95
- Ho-lu-hay arrested and put to death by Hilyen, ii. 362
- Holwan taken by the Mongls, ii. 310
- Holward Hotelbrod, son of Regner, succeeds his father in Sweden, with his successful war against the neighbouring nations, xii. 220. His marriage with Gyrita of Norway, and war with Denmark, in which their king Roe is slain, ibid.
- Homedes, John de, the forty-fifth grand master of Malta, vii. 455. Sets out for that island, and receives an ambassador from Tunis, 456. Joins with the emperor against Africa, and ill success of that expedition, 457. The bravery of the Maltese, ib. Fruitless embassy to the emperor, 458. Preparations against the Turkish armament, 461. Fatal avarice on the occasion, ib. Rejects the advice of Villegagnon, 463. Enters and defends the capital, ib. His hatred to the governor of Tripoly causes the loss of the place, 465. The French knights accuse him of it, ib. And of unjust prosecution of the governor, 466. Complained against by the French king, 467. New artifices to clear himself, discovered by Villegagnon, 468. Sent to the French court, ib. His death, 471
- Honain, a physician of great learning and honest intrepidity, i. 476. His tragical end and works, ib.
- Honan laid waste by the Moguls, ii. 285. Invaded afresh, 287. Abandoned by them, 288. Invaded by Oktay, 327. Entered by Toley Khan, 337
- a fertile province of China, described, iii. 543. Fine silks, and cities of note, ib.
- city in the province, and a famous observatory within its district, iii. 544
- Honan-fu. See Lo-yang
- Honanta set up competitor against Hay-shan, but opposed by Al-Aafun, ii. 399. Guards set over him, 400. Put to death, together with all his friends, 401
- Honchun, village in East Tartary, famed for its Gen-sing root, iii. 462
- Honcohuallo, chief of the Charcas, his flight and why, xiv. 398. Pathetic speech to his subjects before parting, ib. Several accompany him out of the province, marching towards the Cordillera, and chuse him their king, ib.
- Hondo, powerful state in Guinea, and its customs, religion, &c. vii. 29. Language, arts, &c. 30. Funerals, ib. Laws and punishments, 31. Seminaries for youth, 33. For young ladies, 34
- Honduras province described, and its articles of commerce, xiv. 442. Miserable state of the logwood-cutters there from the Spaniards, xv. 594. This disavowed by the Spanish ministry, ib.
- Honein, the famed battle fought by Mohammed, i. 86
- Honey-bird of Abyssinia, described, vi. 187
- mountains in the cape of Good-Hope, described, vi. 403
- bird in Congo, described, vi. 435
- Hong-kila, Hu-pi-lay's empress, her kind reception of the Song, ii. 378. Noble speech to her husband, ib. Her death and character, 384
- Hong-quang, or Hun-quan, proclaimed emperor, but strangled by the Tartars, iii. 732
- Hong-wha proclaimed emperor of China, kills himself, iii. 741
- Hong-vu, the expeller of the Mongls out of China, (see Chu) ii. 424. His successors drive them beyond the Kobi, 436
- founder of the Tay-ming dynasty, ii. 433. Enters the metropolis of Tatu, 434
- Honkirats, or Kongorats, where situated, ii. 272. Submit to Temujin, 274
- Honorius, the Roman general, defeated by the Ottomans, v. 153
- his mild treatment of the Jews, v. 511. And edict against the Cœlicolæ, ib.
- , pope, writes to the Spanish bishops to tolerate the Jews, and for them to wear a mark of distinction, vii. 708
- II. or Lambert, upon Theobald's refusal, elected pope, ix. 587. Deposes and excommunicates Oderisius abbot of Cassino; but occasioned by a private quarrel, ib. (A). Death, and two popes elected, 588
- III. after Innocent III. elected pope, ix. 621. Confirms the order of St. Dominick, who persuades the pope to establish a master of the sacred palace, with an account of that office, ib. (D). His legate released from Thessaly, 622. Quits Rome, and writes to the king of France to assist the Catholics in Tholouse, ib. Urges the emperor Frederick II. to go and assist the Croises in the Holy Land, with a reproof, 623. Sends legates into several parts, ib. Difference with the emperor, and the latter's justification, ib. Quits Rome, and at Tivoli receives an embassy from the emperor to prolong the term for the sacred expedition, and who were the ambassadors, 624 (E). His demand to all the princes in Europe rejected, 625 (G). Dies, ib.
- IV. succeeding pope Martin IV. refuses the king of England's authority in Scotland, with other ecclesiastical proceedings, ix. 649. Invites Rodolphus to come and receive the Imperial crown at Rome, ib. Disapproves of the king of England's mediation between France and Aragon, ib. Dies, ib.
- Hontan, baron la, account of him and his memoirs, xiv. 646 (F)



Hope, Cape of Good, when and by whom doubled, iv. 113. Conquered by the Dutch, and its vast plenty of provisions, &c. 494. The natives why misrepresented, 495 (G). The Dutch settlement there, ib. Its spacious bay, vast extent, and improvements in the inland, 496. Forces to defend it, ib. The country described, 497. Government expence, and income, ib. (1). Gold mines sought in vain, and seven nations described, 498. Government, commerce, &c. ib. By whom discovered, v. 653. The Dutch settlements upon it, vi. 394. When first discovered, 395. Its fine seats, colonies, &c. 397. Excellent waters, 400. Animals wild and tame, 403. Fowls domestic, 404. Serpents, 405. Insects, ib. Fishes, 406. Vegetables, 407

— island in the South-Sea, described, v. 9. The inhabitants, &c. described, with Schouten's reception from the king of it, 10

Hoquincourt, a Maltese commander, his brave defence and escape, with his unlucky shipwreck, vii. 514

Horatio Farnese, account of him, and the French ambassador's answer to him, xiii. 628.

Hormisdas restores the persecuted Jews, v. 514

Hormoz invaded by the Greeks, ii. 137

Hormuz king of Persia deposed, and deprived of sight, i. 19

— island, taken from the Portuguese, ii. 616.

— kingdom, its extent, islands, origin, and by whom founded, ii. 680. Its kings, 681. Their condition under the Portuguese, 692.

— of Hormuz, the capital of that kingdom, ii. 681 (E). Described, and its increase, 685. Decline whence, ib. Subdued by the Portuguese, 691. Besieged and taken by Albuquerque, ib.

Hormuzans ravaged by the Turks, ii. 683. Remove to Jeron, ib. Men and women described, game, wealth, and commerce, 685 (X). Subdued by Albuquerque, 691

Horn, island in the South Sea, v. 12.

— marshal, takes Stein, but is baffled in his attempt upon Constance, x. 134. Pursues Aldringen with great slaughter, ib. Progress in Upper Suabia, 237. Swedes under him defeated by the Imperialists before Nordlingen, ib.

He and several officers of distinction taken prisoners, with a considerable loss, 238. This defeat to what owing, ib. (R). The Swedes under him invade Prussia, but repelled by the elector of Brandenburg, and their army greatly diminished, 296. Raises the siege of Gottenburgh, xii. 170. Successes of the Swedes at sea under him, as also at land, 291. Successful in Upper Suabia, 337.

Surrenders the citadel of Warlaw at discretion, with Charles's answer on that general's complaint of not being succoured, 375 (A). Embarrassment, 591.

Horse, a monstrous one presented to Towhantemur, ii. 418

— Sea, vide Hippopotamus, vi. 185

— the devil's, a strange Ethiopian bird, vi. 186

Horses of Africa, described, v. 681. Fine breed of Barbs, 682. Wild, ib.

— of Egypt, why preferable to Barbs, vi. 37 (D). Forbid to be exported, 38. Not allowed to Christians in Turkey, ib.

— reason of their superiority in armies over foot, xiii. 432 (B)

Hosamo'ddawla the Okailite murdered, i. 66

Hosamo'ddin Tamartash, his death and character, i. 712

Hosein, Al, Fátéma's second son by Ali, born, i. 60. Strives in vain to dissuade Hasan from resigning, 282

— Ebn Ali opposes Yezid's succession, i. 295

— refuses to swear to khalif Yezid, with his narrow escape, i. 300. Bravely supported by the Cufans, 301. Rash resolution to leave Mecca, 303. Sets out for Cufa against his friends advice, ib. Arrival at Nineveh, 304.

At Herbela, and conference with Amer, ib. Prepares to fight Yezid's forces, 305. Gallant defence, 306. And dreadful death, ib. His head and body where buried, 308. Tomb why stiled Mashhad Hosein, ib. His death revenged, 309. Lamented by the Persians, 310

— Ebn Thamiir commands Yezid's forces against the Meccans, offers the khalifat to Abdallah, and besieges the city, i. 310. Whether the temple was fired by his engines, ib.

— revolts against khalif Al Hadi, is defeated, and put to death, and his character, i. 416. His sepulchre razed by Al Motawakkel, 469

— the fifth son of Yahya, chosen head of the Karmatians, i. 507. Conquests and horrid devastations in Syria, with his defeat and cruel death, 508

Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

— Ebn Hamdan deposes khalif Moktader, but pardoned and promoted by him, i. 511. Raises a revolt in Mesopotamia, is defeated, and sent prisoner to Baghdad, 514

— Al Mefri, his death, and historical works, i. 602

— Al Rasi, a noted philosopher, his death, and works, i. 605

— Mohammed, his revolt and decollation, iii. 59

Hoseinia taken by khalif Al Mo'taded, i. 499

Ho-shang, his noble character and cruel death, ii. 339

Hoshein, Solyman; his reign in Quiloa, vi. 349

Hoshila, prince, retires into the mountains, ii. 404. Declared emperor, 411. Causes himself to be installed, 412. His sudden death, issue, &c. 413

Hosier, admiral, his expedition to the West-Indies, and the reasons, xv. 305. Lies before the Bastimentos; but the Spanish treasure re-landed, ib. His terrible distress, ib.

Hospitallers, the ancient knights of Jerusalem so called, vii. 376. The origin of their institution, their office and name from the holy sepulchre, 377. Numbers of both sexes come into the order, 378. Divided into three classes, 379. Complained against at the Lateran council, 383. Their first institution of knights by Gaston at Vienne in France, ix. 475

Hospitals, three at Jerusalem for pilgrims, vii. 377

Hospodar of Moldavia, protected by Poland, takes an oath of fidelity to that republic, xii. 481

Hosivitus, governor of Bohemia, xv. 451. Irruption by his brother, and peace made, ib.

Hora sent to oppose the Mungls, ii. 338. Outwitted by them, ib. Defeated by Toley Khan, and slain, 339

Ho-tan-kya, the emperor of China, iii. 685

Hote, secretary to Villeroy, betrays all the court secrets to the Spaniards, with his fate, and the suspicion brought on the secretary of state, who is reinstated in as high credit as ever, ix. 329

Hother chosen fourteenth king of Denmark, in the room of Rollo, who died without issue, xi. 668. War with Balder, ib. He falls in single combat with Boo, who lays aside Rorick, the son of Hother, ib. In his time is Dan placed by some, ib. (E)

— succeeds his father Attilus in Sweden, and of different qualities from him, xii. 220. War with Hacho of Denmark, who is slain, and his kingdom annexed to Sweden, ib. He defeats Fridlef, who usurped Denmark, depriving him of his kingdom and life; but he himself is slain in a battle with the Danes, who had rebelled, ib.

Ho-ti, emperor of China, his extensive conquests, and his second empress an excellent lady, iii. 704

— brother of When-lew, dethroned and murdered by Syang-ywen, iii. 709

Ho-tsung, king of the Tartars, invades China, breaks the peace with the emperor, and slain by his own soldiers, iii. 721

Hottentots, their traffic in gold with the Dutch, and massacre them for their curiosity; and whence they have gold, iv. 466. Their country described, origin, &c. vi. 383. Their coats, ib. Various tribes, and names of them, 384—386. Birth and character, ib. Barbarous customs, 387. Strange dress, ib. Diet, and manner of dressing it, 388. Government, kraals or villages, ib. Herding and managing of their cattle, 389. Their peculiar customs, courtship, nuptials, &c. ib. Education, 390. Manner of making war, &c. ib. Hunting, and Heroes among them who, ib. Fishing, and excellent swimmers, 391. Butchers and other trades, ib. Music and dancing, 392. Traffic, ib. Religion, 393. Funerals, 394. Wars with the Dutch, ib. Slaughter of the Portuguese, and revenged, 395. Over-reached by the Dutch, 396. High opinion of themselves, and mean one of the Dutch, &c. 409. Yet greatly oppressed by these, ib.

Houdincourt, marshal, beaten before Lerida, and his conduct unjustly censured by the cardinal, ix. 414. Arrested, and his process made, but honourably acquitted, ib.

Houe, La, sent to Rochelle to persuade them to submit, and his management there, ix. 268

Hour, Menard de, his diversion in Ems for Christian, xii. 152

Houteniquan, a tribe of Hottentots, vi. 386

Houtman, Cornelius, discovers the Portuguese route round the Cape of Good Hope, iv. 411. Endangers the squadron by his fatal rashness, ib. (E). And at Sumatra he is given up, and put to death, 413 (G)

Howaireth, Al, proscribed by Mahomet, i. 83



- Howard, admiral, sent from England to Spain, viii. 282  
 — Philip, of the family of Norfolk, made a cardinal, x. 160  
 Howe, lord, killed in an attack on the way to Ticonderoga, xiv. 713  
 —, lord, governor of Barbadoes, his wife administration, xv. 195. Certain private animosities still subsist, and the consequence, ib. His death much regretted, and the present made his lady, 196  
 Hoz, Sanchez de, on claiming his grant from the emperor, is imprisoned, condemned, and put to death, xiv. 321  
 Hozaib, a clownish Ethiopian slave, made governor of Egypt, i. 437  
 Huacrachucans, some account of them and their name, xiv. 408  
 Hualpa, how that Indian first discovered the treasures of Potof, xiv. 464  
 Huamuchacu, province, account of its people and lord, xiv. 401. How they submit to the inca, ib.  
 Huanca, inhabitants of Sanza, account of them and their fierce manners, xiv. 399  
 Huantu, a kind of Peruvian litter, xiv. 295  
 Huascar, inca of Peru, civil war between him and his brother Atahualapa of use to Pizarro, xiv. 286. Sends an ambassador to Pizarro, and the answer, 290. Interview between him in prison at Sanza and the Spaniards, with his remonstrance against Atahualapa, 295. His advantageous proposal rejected, and he loses his life, 296. The manner differently told, ib. (B)  
 — thirteenth inca, succeeds his father Huayna Capac, and confirms the cession of Quito to his brother Atahualapa, and the two conditions what, xiv. 417; but broken, the inca defeated and taken, with an end thereby put to the inca empire, ib.  
 Huayna Capac, immense treasures of that monarch discovered by Pizarro, xiv. 282. As twelfth inca he succeeds his father Tupac Yupanqui, and the reason for his name, 411. His great conduct and coolness in the Quito war when but twenty, ib. Gains possession of several provinces, for which the king of Quito dies of grief, ib. Hereupon Quito is reduced, after a vigorous war for five years, ib. On his return home he begins a progress, and his joyful reception every where, even to adoration, ib. Commemorates his son's birth by the famous gold chain, ib. Descends to Chima valley, and the neighbouring nations submit, 412. Builds stately edifices and aqueducts in Quito; after which he descends to Sullama valley, and summons the inhabitants of Tumpez, who servilely submit, ib. Endeavours to reform their corrupt manners, and builds a fort and temple, ib. Odd manner of punishing the inhabitants of Huancavilca, and the nations about Puerto Vejo, for massacring his governors, ib. He passes to Rimac oracle, and dispatches a message to Puna island, with their curaca's speech to his subjects, 413. Severe message to Manta and the surrounding country, with their corrupt manners, who cheerfully submit, 415. His exclamation here, and pains to bring the people to a regular life not altogether fruitless, ib. Returns to Cuzco, and some of his remarkable sayings, from which the Spaniards inferred his belief of the true God, ib. Resolves on another progress, in which he has news of a revolt and massacre in Caranque province, 416. Their maltreatment of his messengers, and narrow escape, ib. Destroys all before him, ib. After several battles, he intirely defeats them, and punishes several thousands, ib. He invests his natural son Atahualapa with the sovereignty of Quito, and its consequences, ib. (M). Tradition universally credited about the subversion of the inca empire by a strange people, ib. Also a remarkable omen before his death what, with many others mentioned by Spanish writers, 417. The diviners interpretation of three halo's round the moon, ib. Assembles the college of interpreters, who confirm the prognostic; his inward consternation, but assumed courage outwardly, ib. Manner of his death at Quito, and his character, ib.  
 Huba, or Hubba, one of Temujin's commanders, ii. 276  
 — Nevian, sent in pursuit of sultan Mohammed, ii. 303. His route and success, ib. Overtakes him near the Caspian sea, 304. Sent to invade Chorassan, 307. Treachery to the Kaendarians, 308. Success in Humazan Damegan, ib. In Irak, 309. Makes peace with Hamadan, 310. Sent into Azerbejan, 318. Success against it, and quells a revolt at Hamadan, 319. Takes several other cities, and defeats the Georgians, ib. Passes through Derbent, 321. Winters in Kipjak, ib.  
 Hubert succeeds his father Bertold in Savoy, xiv. 125. His son Amadeus dying without issue, his other son Otho succeeds, ib.  
 — II. succeeds his father Amadeus II. marquis of Savoy, and assumes the title of prince of Piedmont, xiv. 125  
 — III. succeeds his father Amadeo, marquis of Savoy, xiv. 125  
 Hudson, Henry, discovers the famous bay of that name, iv. 416  
 — captain, first discovers New York, and sells it to the Dutch, xiv. 53  
 Hudson's river, settlements there, xiv. 508  
 — bay, an Algonquin sent from it with presents to the governor of New France, xiv. 598. Hostilities committed here between the English and French, 623. Progress of the latter, ib. Attempt of the French on it unsuccessful, and to what owing, 647. Origin of its company, xv. 151. Its inhabitants, 152 (N). Its first discoverers, ib. Establishment of its trade, ib. Terms of its royal charter, and the French pretend a prior claim, 153. Account of some French, and a missionary taking a sham possession, ib. Names of its first directors, ib. This company opposed by the French, 154. Misery of the English there, ib. They are invaded by the French, 155. Different accounts, ib. But recover their settlement, ib. Restored to the English by the treaty of Utrecht, 158. Importance of its trade, and attempts for the north-west passage through it, 159. Company averse to this, 162. Account of this bay, 168. Its south coast described, ib. The untameable Esquimaux there, and furs their only commodity, ib. Different accounts of this country, ib. North main described, 169. Discovery of Streight Davis, ib. New North Wales described, ib. Discoveries by captain Monk, 170. Misery of his company, and his death, ib. Further description, 175. Its soil and trade, with the standard of commerce, ib. Vast gains, the exports and sales, ib. Savageness of the Indians near Rupert river, to what owing, ib. Their okimah (orator) and notion of two spirits, 172  
 Hued Agmed, a river in Morocco, vii. 149  
 — Alquiver, a river in Algiers, vii. 213  
 Huerina battle described, xiv. 343  
 Huefca betrays Toledo to the Saracens, i. 433  
 — taken and described, viii. 113  
 — university founded, viii. 163  
 Hugonots, liberty of conscience granted them in an assembly of the states called by the queen at St. Germain, with its effect, ix. 256. Those killed at Passy by Guise's followers occasions the first civil war, ib. Surprise several places, and put Havre de Grace into queen Elizabeth's hands, ib. Give the king of France infinite disquiet, 312. Prevailed on to be quiet, and not form a third party against king Henry, 314. Obtain an edict from the queen for the free exercise of their religion, with the conditions, x. 100. And one soon after published, but not with the desired effect, and resolve to secure it by arms, ib. Conference between them and papists at Poisser to little purpose; and the queen's demands in their favour refused by the pope, ib. Threaten to seize Avignon, 109. The pope and Henry IV. of France disgusted with a decree of theirs, 130. Succours sent them by the German protestants from what motives, xi. 174  
 Hugh, count of Arles, arrives at Pisa, and is crowned at Pavia by the archbishop of Milan, ix. 538. Concludes alliances with the pope, the king of Germany, and emperor of Constantinople, ib. How he quells a conspiracy, ib. Marries Marofia, his brother's widow, and obtains readily the government of Rome; is expelled by a trifling accident, and the Romans declare Alberic consul and patrician, 539. Treacherously seizes on his brother Lambert marquis of Tuscany, puts out his eyes, and gives his marquisate to his brother Boson, ib. By this cruelty Rodolphus is invited into Italy, but enters into treaty with Hugh, ib. On the Italians offering the crown to Arnold duke of Bavaria, Hugh entirely defeats and obliges him to return, ib. Associates his son Lotharius, who is crowned, and married to Rodolphus's daughter, ib. Marches a formidable army against Rome; but failing, he reduces many other places, ib. Politic methods for establishing his authority, ib. Berengarius and Anscarius, sons of Adelbert, marquis of Ivrea, conspire against him, and the event, 540. Attacks the Saracens in the Alps; but concludes a peace with them, and the terms, ib. They rob and murder



- der pilgrims in their way to Rome, *ib.* Romanus emperor of Constantinople makes an alliance with Hugh, *ib.* Retires with his treasures into Burgundy, becomes a monk, and dies, 541
- Hughley taken and destroyed by admiral Watson, *iv.* 372
- Hughli, or Oguli, a trading city in the province of Bengal, *iii.* 17. The place described, *iv.* 396
- Hugleth elected the twenty-first king of Denmark after Dan II. with his successes and long reign, *xi.* 671
- Hugo, cardinal, sent legate into Spain, *vii.* 653. Ambassadors sent with him to solicit the establishment of the Roman offices there, *ib.*
- duke, short but bloody action between him and the count of Poitiers, in which the latter is beaten, *ix.* 15. His death, and its consequences, with an account of him, *ib.* (E). His connexions and issue, *sub fin.* not.
- Huhu Hotun, or Khukhu Hotun, a province of Mongolia, *ii.* 246. Its capital, *ib.*
- Hujaku abandons the city of Taytong-fu, *ii.* 284. Murders the emperor Yong-tsi, and sets up San upon the throne, *ib.* Defeats Chepe near the river Tfau, and is murdered by Chu-hu-kau-ki, *ib.*
- Kara, the son of Jagathay, and second khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 464
- Hulaku, or Hulagu, a Tartarian prince, divides the Rum empire between Azzao'ddin and his brother, *ii.* 234
- or Hyu-le-hu, commands the Mogul army against Baghdad, *ii.* 357. Promoted by Kublay, 394. Succeeded by Abaka, *ib.*
- or Hulagu Khan, his expedition against Iran or Persia, *ii.* 469. Destroys the Ishmaelite assassins, 470, & *i.* 671. Provoked by the khalif of Baghdad, *ii.* 471. Lays siege to that city, 472. Severe treatment of the khalif, &c. *ib.* Restores the city, 473. Conquests in that kingdom, *ib.* In Syria, 474. Severity at the surrender of Harem-castle, and loses Syria again, 475. Generosity to the Mohammedans, and death, 476. Issue, and vast dominions, 477. Conquests, *ib.* Divides his dominions between his three sons, *ib.*
- Hult, Gaspard, defeats the Portuguese in Ceylon, *iv.* 440. Kind reception from the king of Ceylon, *ib.* (D)
- Hu-lyang-hotay made governor of Tibet, *ii.* 357. Conquests there and in China, 358. Sent to Kublay's assistance, *ib.* Takes some cities in Quang-si, 359
- Humayun, or Hemayun, the second emperor of the Moguls, defeats sultan Bahadr, with his conquests in Guzurat and Bengal, *iii.* 54. Invaded by Shir Khan, *ib.* Defeated by him, abandoned and repulsed by all his friends, 55. His reception from the Persian shah, *ib.* Narrow escape from his brother, his return to Kabul, and recovers Indostan, 56. Defeats Rekander Khan, enters Delli in triumph, and his death, *ib.*
- Humble, second king of Denmark, succeeds his father Dan, *xi.* 664. How the electors stood on long stones, *ib.* (B). After a short reign he is deposed by his brother Lothar, *ib.*
- Humieres, marshal, defeated by prince Waldeck at Walcourt, *ix.* 468. Luxemburg put in his place, 469
- Huna, one of the Jewish chiefs, what time he flourished, *v.* 482 (D). His successors, *ib.* & 502. A grand relation of his assumes the title of prince, *ib.* *sub.* not.
- Hunalde of Aquitaine revolts, but is defeated, *viii.* 671. Delivered up, and imprisoned for life, 672. His sister Gillette matched with Didier's son, and the latter's daughter with Charlemagne, *ib.* By Carloman's death Charlemagne becomes sole sovereign of France, *ib.*
- Hunding, Uffa's brother, elected king by the Swedes and Goths, *xii.* 219. War rekindled between him and Had-ing, and a peace, after fruitless battles, concluded, with a very extraordinary agreement, which they both execute, by laying violent hands on themselves, *ib.*
- Honeric, the second king of the African Vandals, his horrid persecution of the Orthodox, *v.* 709
- Hungarian malecontents threaten to throw off the yoke of Austria, and chuse a king, *xi.* 294. Supported by the Turks, and amused only by the emperor's ministers, *ib.* The bishop of Strigonia negotiates an accommodation with them, *ib.* Their demands, and the emperor's answer, *ib.* Malecontents break the truce, 299. The lords return to their obedience, 302. Malecontents submit to the emperor, 304. Their ravages to the gates of Vienna, 328. Their demands, with the terms of agreement offered them, and their indifference to an accommodation to what owing, *ib.* Penetrate into Austria, and refuse an armistice, 331. Their ravages and progress, 335. Refuse terms, and a diet convoked at Presburg, with a remonstrance of the grievances of the people, and their demands, 340. Make incursions into Austria; but are obliged by Heisler to quit the siege of Neisttelle with loss, *ib.* Their successes, *ibid.*
- Hungarians invade Italy; whose proposals for a retreat being rejected, they defeat Berengarius, *ix.* 535. A second and third invasion, with their ravages; and Berengarius purchases their departure with a large sum, and repairs their devastations, *ib.* Invade Italy and take Pavia, &c. 537. Invade Campania, 540. Oblige the emperor to purchase a dishonourable peace, *x.* 625. Invade Germany with a vast army, but defeated, with considerable loss, 628. Dreading the enlargement of the emperor's power, at first refuse to admit German troops, and even surrender Waradin to the Turks, *xi.* 280. Their discontent, *ib.* Their dilatory conduct, 281. Why they revolt, 282. Their complaints, 283. Concessions to them opposed by the emperor's ministry, and their motives, 352. Upon the Turkish aga having an audience, a treaty is concluded with them, *ib.* Their descent, *ii.* 134, *xv.* 379. The antient and modern bounds of their kingdom, *ib.* Its division and counties, *ib.* They revolt from Charlemagne's descendants, *ib.* After invading Lombardy with various success, they retire, on receiving a sum, *ib.* Invited into Italy, commit great ravages annually, till an alliance is made with them, 380. They invade Germany twice, and a sum paid them annually, *ib.* Again invade Italy, and burn Pavia, *ib.* Intirely routed in Germany, *ib.* Their invasion of Italy, and defeat, *ib.*
- Hungary, &c. ravaged by Batu Khan, *ii.* 445. King invades Italy, whom Berengarius buys off to evacuate the country, *ix.* 542. Bishops excommunicate the pope, with the occasion, 656. King returning to Naples, hostilities are renewed, and a cessation of arms agreed on, with the terms, *x.* 464. Peace with him, and his generous refusal of the stipulation, *ib.* Disturbances there, *x.* 655. Threatened by the Turks, *xi.* 58. States consent to Albert's election, though they had chosen him to their throne, on condition of not accepting that of the empire, with their allegations on that head, 90. Treaty of peace between it and Poland, 91. States declare war against the empire, 99. On Podiebrad's proposal, the states settle the succession on Ladislaus, the son of Casimir, 100. Several competitors for that crown, 101. Progress of the war there, 179. Successes of the counts Serini and De Souches there, 282. Counts Tattenbach and Serini enter into an association there, and soliciting the assistance of the Turks, reject the grand vizir's terms, 285. States declare their kingdom hereditary in the house of Austria, 306. Clause in the coronation-oath of king Andrew revoked, *ib.* Success of the Imperialists there, by taking Filek, &c. and Great Waradin surrenders, 312. Though Newhausel submits to the Imperialists, the old obstructions to peace remain there, 345. End of the rebellion there, 352. Young king, now the Imperial general, takes Ratibon, *xii.* 337. A revolt there, the heads of which are seized and beheaded, 538. Queen renewing the war, is joined by the king of Sardinia, and takes Modena, *xiii.* 657
- Hunningen, complaints against the fortifying of it by the king of France, and his answer, *xi.* 305
- Hunniades, Ladislaus's general, defeats the Turks under Scanderbeg, *xi.* 94. Appointed governor of Hungary, *ib.* Ravages to the gates of Vienna, with a truce concluded, *ib.* Made prisoner in the battle of Varna, fought with Amurath, in which the Christians were totally defeated, *ib.* After three days battle in Bulgaria, is defeated by the Turks, and taken prisoner, 96. A reinforcement being sent to him in Hungary, after a very obstinate engagement, he forces Mahomet to raise the siege of Belgrade, with the loss of 40,000 men, 110. Dying, the common cause is utterly abandoned, *ib.*
- the famous John, vayvode of Transylvania, with auxiliary Poles, surprizes and defeats Amurath near the river Morava, *xii.* 480. Who sues for peace, *ib.*
- Huns, who, according to the Chinese, *ii.* 117. According to the Turkish authors, 125. The same with the Turks, with their way of living, 132. Where situated, 133. Their empire divided, and that of the Northern destroyed, *ib.* The survivors spread themselves towards Europe, 134. The Southern are subdued by the Juifen Tartars, and retire to the mountains of Erkena-Kom, where they set up the iron-forgery, *ib.* Invade Sigebert's dominions of Austrasia, and how pacified, *viii.* 632. Invade Italy with a considerable



- considerable army, but march back again, ix. 533. Invade it with the Saracens, 535. Marching as far as Capua and Lucera, are intirely defeated, x. 390
- Hunt, captain, his voyage and perfidy in New England, and the consequences, xiv. 502
- Hunter, colonel, made governor of New York, where he arrives with 2700 Palatines, and why obliged to go to Pennsylvania, xiv. 541. His character, and he renews the treaty with the five nations; also the great regard shewn him by the province at parting for England, 542
- deputy-governor of Jamaica, xv. 306. His great character, ib. Part of his speech to the assembly, ib. Who make him a handsome present, but would not continue his predecessor's salary, ib. Lays an embargo, and passes an act for abjuring popery, 307. Dies, ib. Excellent plan laid by him before the ministry, and the occasion, ib.
- deputy-governor of Virginia, and great character, xv. 375
- Hu-pu, the second grand tribunal in China, iii. 577
- Hu-pu-lay, or Kublay, made governor of the northern parts of Mongl, ii. 355. His wife government and monitor, ib. Conquests in China, 357. Cleared by his prudent submission to Meng-ko, to whom he was falsely accused, 358. Ordered to besiege Vu-chang-fu, ib. Invited to the throne upon Meng-ko's death, 360. Lays siege to Vu-chang, and makes peace with the Song, 361. Proclaimed khan, ib. Wise regulation, 362. Promotion of learning, 363. Division of China, ib. Victory over Ali Puko, 364. Given to avarice, ib. Introduces the Chinese rites, with the list of his ancestors, 365 (Z, A). Success against the Song, 366, 368. Renews the war against him, 370. New complaints against him, 373. Elogy of Ali Yaya, 374. His reception of the Song family, 378. Regulates the Chinese bonzes, 379. Success in Tartary, ib. Censured for his superstition, with his vain attempt on Japan and Gan-nan, 382. Encouragement of sciences, ib. Fleet against Japan destroyed, with other disasters, 384. Assembles the literati, ib. Second attempt on Japan displeasing to the Chinese, with new regulations, 385. Orders his son to invade Gan nan, and his two generals slain there, 387. Loses his son and heir, with new revolts in Tartary, ib. Vast numbers of ships arrive with tribute to him, ib. Victory over the revolted Tartars, 388. Orders the Royal Canal to be made, 389. New regulations for literature and trade, ib. Partiality to the lamas censured, 390. And the expedition on the Lyew-kyew islands set aside, 391 (O). Complies with the Chinese superstition, ib. (Q). Vast preparations against Quawa set aside, ib. Concern at the appearance of a comet, and death, 393. Character, issue, &c. ib. Behaviour to his subjects, 394. (See vol. iii. 722, 723). Intended expedition against Japan, iv. 2 (B)
- Hu-quang ravaged by the Mongls, ii. 347
- a fertile province in China, with its many lakes, iii. 542 (G). Produce, manufactures, &c. antient princes destroyed, and cities of note, ib.
- Huron colony of Loretto described, xiv. 554. Different accounts of their character, ib. A radical language, 565. Language by whom spoken, 566. Its original property what, ib. A conjecture about it, ib. Its use for travelling, ib. Jealousy against the French in Canada, who invite the Iroquois to join them, for the colony's extirpation, 574. Champlain's measures hereupon, ib. Chief, and Christian convert, account of him, and influence for his countrymen's conversion, 581. Unsuccessful expedition against the Iroquois; he with others is taken, and he suffers at the stake, 582. Missionaries and colony, their distresses, 583. A convoy and Jesuit, sent to assist them, taken by the Iroquois, and their severe treatment, ib. Settlement at Loretto when and by whom instituted, 609
- Hurons, through their supine indolence, twice attacked by the Iroquois, and slaughtered, xiv. 587. Reflexions on the missionaries tutoring of them, 588. Difference between them and those of New England, ib. Jealous of the Jesuits, 589. Their migrations, arrival at Quebec, and taking shelter in other parts, ib. The rest submit to the Iroquois, whilst these destroy all the dispersed Hurons, 590. This desolation to what owing, ib. Their ill-concerted expedition from Quebec against the Iroquois, and intirely defeated, ib. Passion for brandy, and other strong liquors, prevails among them, ib.
- of Orleans, their proposal of an union with the Agniers accepted, with the devastations of the latter on the former's retracting it, xiv. 595
- Hurricane, a dreadful one in Tuscany, xiii. 412. Upon the Mississippi, xv. 31. In Guadaloupe, 227. In Jamaica, 297. Another, 301. In Hispaniola, 347
- Huls, John, publishes Wickliffe's doctrines at Prague, ix. 704. Arrives at Constance, but imprisoned; and being something relaxed, commissioners are appointed to examine him, 706 (S). Willing to retract, if better instructed, 709. Why connived at by the emperor, xi. 66 (I). Preaches Wickliffe's doctrine at Prague, and how protected, 68. Excommunicated by pope John XXIII. who lays Prague under an interdict, ib. Success how detrimental to the university there, 69. His affair and Jerom of Prague's brought before the council of Constance, 75. Appears before the council, and the emperor desires the cardinals to hear his defence, 76. Accused of heresy in thirty-nine articles; but his voice purposely drowned by noise, with his address to the emperor, ib. (U). Convicted, degraded, and condemned to the flames, without examination; walks cheerfully to the stake, and sings a hymn whilst burning, ib. & ix. 710. Dies with great constancy, and his ashes thrown into the Rhine, xi. 76. But the earth on which he suffered taken up by his followers, with the council's answer to the emperor's remonstrance on the little regard paid to his safe-conduct, 77
- Hu sye-hu shews a valorous general's wife counsel, ii. 344. Brave defence of Ju-ning-fu, ib. Desperate death, 346
- Hussey, lord of Emese, murdered by Redwan's order, ii. 178
- or Hussayn, the Gaur, defeated and dismissed by Sanjar, ii. 184
- Kurkhan's success against the rebel Bayfur, ii. 488
- the successor of sultan Avis, slain by his brother Ahmed, ii. 494. His character, ib.
- Moazo'ddin, enlarges his territories, but opposed by Kafagan, and other princes, ii. 499. Assisted by Timur Bek, and other khans, and saved by Timur's great bravery, 501. Mutual success against the Getes, 502. New victories, ib. Defeated with great loss, and occasions a conspiracy by his sordidness, 503. Tries by treachery to recall Timur Bek, ib. Takes Bokhara, 504. Appears before Karshi, ib. Makes peace with Timur, ib. New jealousy of him, 506. Besieged by him in Balk, ib. Surrenders, with his shameful flight and death, 507
- son of Karazm, invaded by Timur Bek, ii. 508. Dies of grief, 509
- , Mirza, lifts into the Syrian service, ii. 557. Kindly received by sultan Faruj, ib. Taken prisoner by Mirza Rukh, 558. Condemned to the bastinado, ib. Revolts after Timur's death, 577. Proclaims himself emperor, 581. Duped by Allahdab, is abandoned, forced to fly, and dies of grief or poison, 582
- sultan, defeated by Abusaid, ii. 592. Takes Astarabad from him, ib. Attempt on Herat defeated, and driven out of his dominions, ib. Fresh attempt frustrated, 593. Driven out of Sajestan by Kalil, 598. Slays Mirza Yadighiar, ascends the throne of Khorassan, and dies, 599—602. His country seized by the Uzbek Khan, ib.
- the son of Solyman Shah, why chosen to succeed him, ii. 644. Forbids wine to be drank or imported, 645. Revokes his edict, becomes a downright drunkard, and a tool to his eunuchs, ib. Sad case of his capital during his reign, 647. Profusion in women, eunuchs, &c. ib. Character, 648. Missed by his favourite Jourghin, 650. Protects Mir Weis, ib. Alarmed at the Russian ambassador, 651. Conspired against by Mir Weis, 652. Ill success against him, ib. Makes Seffi Kouli Khan his general, 655. His total defeat, 656. Invaded by the Malkat Arabs, ib. Instigated by traitors against his prime minister, 657. Cowardly severity, and remorse for it, ib. Fatal partiality in favour of the Lesji, and alarm at the arrival of a Turkish ambassador, with other signs of his weakness, 658. Defeated by Mir Mahmud, 660. Offers to retire to Kasbin, but dissuaded from it, 661. Besieged in Ispahan, 662. Dissuaded from rallying out against the rebels, 663. Resigns the crown to his eldest son, 664
- Khan tortured to death by the Lesji, ii. 658
- ambassador from that deposed shah's son, who concludes an advantageous treaty with the czar Peter; at which the Turks take umbrage, but he satisfies them, xiii. 257. Convention made as to Persia, ib.
- Hussites at Prague exclaim against the pope for a croisade against Ladislaus, and the disturbances thereupon, ix. 705. Their ravages in Bohemia, and their doctrine approved by the



university of Prague, 712. Miserably oppresses the Catholics in Bohemia, with their different sects, and Zisca extirpates the Adamites, 714 (Z). Justification of their proceedings in a letter, with four articles proposed by them; and their deputies hold a synod, which publishes twenty-two articles of faith, *ibid.* Under Procopius gain a signal victory over the duke of Austria, and intirely defeat one hundred thousand Germans, ravaging several provinces, 716. Victorious every where, and terribly ravage Misnia, with the death of their general Zisca, 715. Their ravages, and Julian's offering the Bohemians a free conference at Basil, x. 1, 2. Deputies arrive with great pomp at Basil, with the defence of their four articles, and the answers to them, 5, 6. After fifty days debate, and a friendly conference to no effect, ten deputies from the council set out with the Hussites for Prague, *ib.* The Hussites who agreed to the Compactata defeat the Tabornites, 8. Their complete reconciliation with the church to what owing, 10. Account of their war in Bohemia, xi. 61. Tumult in Prague by them, 79. Offer the crown of Bohemia to Jagellon king of Poland, and, upon his refusal, to Coribut, nephew to the duke of Lithuania, 80. In three bodies ravage Hungary, Poland, and Austria, 81. Progress of their three sects in Bohemia under their leader Procopius the Shaven, *ib.* Every where successful, 82. On Ptaceck's death, elect Podiebrad administrator, 94

Hutmen, or Autman, succeeds his father in Tunis, and takes that city, with his conquests and successes, vii. 318. His reign, *ib.*

Huygens, Dutch admiral, his successes in the Brazils against the Spanish admiral La Torre, xi. 543

Hya, or Hya-fi, and Tangut kingdom, where situated, ii. 267. Invaded by Jenghiz Khan, 281. Laid waste, 287. Invaded again by him, 327. And destroyed by him, 328

— the first Chinese dynasty, its foundation, and series of emperors, iii. 678

— a modern dynasty, when and by whom founded, ii. 429

Hya-men island, on the coasts of Fo-kyen, and its port of Amoy, iii. 533

Hyang-hyu commits horrid ravages in the kingdom of Tfu, and murders their king, with his defeat and death, iii. 699

Hya-quey defeats the Mongls before Syang-yang, ii. 367. Goes over to them, 377

Hyau-ngay-ti, emperor of China, his hopeful reign, iii. 702

Hyau-ping-ti, emperor of China, poisoned, iii. 702

Hyau-tsung, his peaceful reign in China, iii. 721

— ninth emperor of the twenty-first dynasty, his reign disturbed by sundry calamities, and invaded by the Tartars, iii. 727

Hyaw-wang, emperor of China, iii. 691

Hyen-ti, emperor of China, his troublesome reign, iii. 705. The last of the Han dynasty, *ib.*

Hyen-tsung invaded by the Mongls, ii. 436

— emperor of China, his excellent reign, iii. 714

— eighth emperor of the twenty-first dynasty, refuses the Koreans new sort of homage, iii. 727

Hyen-vang, emperor of China, iii. 696. Yu's brazen vessels shake in his reign, and thrown into a lake, *ib.*

Hyfa taken by the Crusaders, ii. 178

Hypatia, the Alexandrian lady, murdered by a monkish mob, v. 510

Hypato, on Marcello's death, elected third doge of Venice, x. 181. Takes Ravenna from the Lombards, and restores it to the inhabitants, *ib.* Killed in a battle with the Heracleans, and an interregnum, with a new form of government, by which a master of the horse is chosen, 182. Short duration of this new office, and the ducal government restored, *ib.*

Hyu-chen, Jenghiz Khan's chief empress, ii. 330

Hyu-heng teaches the sciences to the Mongls, ii. 357. Accuses Ahama of extortion, and promoted by the khan, 368

— appointed minister in China, ii. 362. Accuses Chama, and retires, but is recalled to court, 366—368. Death, and excellent book, 384

I.

**I**, Or Ys, deposes the emperor Tay-kang, iii. 680. Over-reached by Chung-kang, *ib.* His treason against his successor discovered, and assassinated by one of his own creatures, 681

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Jabalab, king of Ghassan, turns to Islamism, but returns to Christianity, i. 75. Profanes the Caaba and runs away to the emperor Heraclius, 190. Joins the Imperial forces near Yermouk, 199. Gallant defence against the Moslems, 200. Makes some considerable prisoners of them, 201. His attempt to assassinate the khalif frustrated, 218. Death, 293

— sea port of Syria reduced by the Moslems, i. 231

Jaben, an inland kingdom in Guinea, vi. 676

Jaber's infamous behaviour in Sicily, i. 583. Turned out of his emirship, *ib.*

Jacatra, its king outwitted by the Dutch, iv. 419. Trepan, the governor of Fort St. Maurice, 420. Deposed, and forced to fly, *ib.*

— city (see Batavia) iv. 419. Destroyed by the Dutch admiral, 421

Jachen, province and town of Ardrah, described, vi. 621

Jachereau, sieur, his settlement on the river Wabash, xv. 18. How disappointed, *ib.*

Jacob Zanzales restores Monophysism in Alexandria, vi. 25 (S)

— who directed the Russian artillery under general Schein, being condemned to the batogs, nails up the cannon, and, deserting to the enemy, defends Azoph with great success, xiii. 187. Reflexions on this, shewing lenity to be preferable to rigour, and the late empress Elizabeth's practice in this respect adduced, *ib.* Jacob's fate, 188

Jacobines in Egypt, an abbot from them arriving at Florence, embraces the Roman faith in their name, x. 17

Jacobites in Egypt, stripped of their churches there, i. 364

— in Mesopotamia, fall into a dangerous schism, i. 401. Persecuted by the governor of Mosul, 403. Their schism still continued, 405

Jacquerie insurrection in France what, ix. 102

Jadhimites cruelty, but as cruelly checked by Khaled, i. 85

Jadoc, marquis of Moravia, appointed the Imperial vicar in Italy, xi. 61

Jafanapatam, a strong fortress in Ceylon, iv. 485 (T)

Jafaria, city and palace, built by khalif Motawakkel, and since made the Imperial residence, i. 473, 474. Palace demolished by Montaser, 479

Jaffar, the grandson and heir of Seljuk, ii. 152. His success in Khorazan, 154. Defeated by Ferukzad, the Gazni sultan, 158. Dies, and is succeeded by Alp Arslan, 162

— Khan disgraced by Abbas II. and restored, ii. 633

Jagarmish, lord of Mosul, submits to Mohammed Shah, ii. 178. Taken prisoner by Al Jawali, 180

Jagatay, Chagatay, the son of Jenghiz Khan, his bravery against the Kharasmiens, ii. 295. Sent to besiege Otrar, 296. Which he besieges and takes, 298. His valour at the battle of Indus, 317. Invades Kerman, 320. Forced to abandon Kelanger, *ib.* Meets his father at Balkh, *ib.* Hath Great Bukharia granted to him by his dying father, 329. His homage to his brother, 334

— province described, ii. 453

— Tatars described, ii. 457

— his reign in Bukharia, and disturbed by a false prophet, ii. 464. His death, issue, and descendants in Great Bukharia, *ib.* And in Little Bukharia, 467

Jagatays confounded with the Mongls and Tatars, ii. 457

Jagbea Tzejon, or Agbascon, the sixty-seventh king of Abyssinia, vi. 253

Jagello, duke of Lithuania, proposes marriage to Hedwiga queen of Poland, and to unite that duchy to the kingdom, xii. 475. Married to Hedwiga, and advanced to the Polish throne, 643 (H). Through her persuasion is baptized, by the name of Uladislaus, and Lithuania annexed to the crown of Poland, 475. Male line in whom extinct, 489

— succeeds his father Olgerdus in the Lithuanian throne, xii. 641. Successful expeditions and his favourite Voidilus's intrigues, *ib.* Invades his uncle Keijustutus's dominions, with the catastrophe of the latter, and escape of his son Vitoldus into Prussia, 642

Jago, St. island, described, vi. 130. A vast fair for provisions, *ib.* Capital also described, *ib.*

— de la Nueva Estramaduras, St. where and by whom built, xiv. 320. Its fort taken by the Chilians, *ib.*

— St. the capital of Chili, described, xiv. 472. Destroyed by earthquakes, *ib.*

— St. the capital of Cuba, account of it, xv. 322

— de los Cavalieros, St. described, xv. 360

Jagupasan, son-in-law of Massud, his share of the Rum kingdom, and attacks his brother Arslan, ii. 218. Defeated and obliged by him to retire to the emperor Manuel, *ib.* His death, 219

6 K

Jaik,



- Jaik**, a river in West Tartary, ii. 118
- Jaille**, Didier de, the forty-fourth grand master of Malta, vii. 454. Takes a rich Egyptian ship, and his death, 455
- Jajo** (Jago) a town of Ardrah described, vi. 622
- Jaish**, or Jeish, succeeds Kamara-wiyah in Syria and Egypt, and assassinated for his cruelty, i. 499
- Jakarmash** resigns Mawfel to sultan Mohammed, and highly caressed by him, i. 688. Defeated and confined by Al Jawali, ib.
- Jakioo**, twentieth emperor of Japan, his reign, v. 52
- Jakok**, Rabbi, a learned Jewish chief, v. 605
- Jakutians** and several other tribes described, xiii. 39
- Jakutzk**, circle in Irkutsk province, with the town of the same name, described, xiii. 51
- Jalal Hamid**, his generosity to Aybaje, ii. 531
- Jalalean kalendar**, when compiled, i. 678
- Jalalo'ddawla** succeeds his brother as emir omra, with his defeat and flight, i. 630. Protects the plundering Turks, with his reception and promotion at Baghdad, ib. His wazir's palace plundered and himself seized by the Turks, 631. Invades and plunders Ahwas, ib. Is invaded without success by his nephew Abu Calijar, 636. Defeats Calijar, and confirmed emir omra by the new khalif, 637. His death, 649, and wazir's palace plundered, 650. Other mutinies raised against him, ib.
- Jalalo'ddawlet**, the son of Ahmed, taken prisoner by Timur Bek, ii. 532
- Jalalo'ddin** retires to Armenia, and defeated by Kaykobad, ii. 229
- **Kortay**, appointed governor of young Azzo'ddin, ii. 231
- **Mohammed's son**, his bravery at the battle of Karaku, ii. 295. Sends to raise fresh forces, 296. Appointed his father's successor, 304. Opposed by his mother, and by his brother Kothbo'ddin, 306. Pursued by Tuli Khan, 311. In extreme distress, and saves Gazna by an expeditious march, 314. Defeats the Mongls, 315. Repentment against them, ib. Defeats their vanguard near the Indus, 316. Totally defeated by Jenghiz Kan, 317. Sorrowful farewell to his family, ib. Crosses over the Indus, with his dangers and exploits on that side, 318. Success against the khalif of Baghdad, defeated by the Mongls, and murdered in his retreat, ib.
- **Timur Bek's mullah and ambassador**, imprisoned by Hussyayn Sofi, ii. 506
- **Shah of Pars**, his embassy to Timur Bek, ii. 513. Pays homage to him, ib.
- Jalan** defeated by the Zenjians, i. 489
- Jalayr** Turks, where sited, and defeat Mutulun, ii. 128
- Jalazi Makinut** sent ambassador to sultan Mohammed, ii. 291. Artful apology for his master, ib.
- Jalkut**, the Jewish book, by whom compiled, v. 602 (Q)
- **Chadash**, or new pouch, v. 602
- Jaloffs**, or Oualoffs in Guinea, who, and where situated, vii. 47. Their genius and customs, ib. Famous for their dexterity in thieving, and void of natural affection, 48. Officers and government, 49. Martial discipline, wars, &c. 50. Character of some of their princes, 51
- Jalta**, island belonging to Tunis, vii. 297—474
- Jalur**, the impregnable castle, betrayed to Akber, iii. 59
- Jama**, island on the South-Sea Coast, described, v. 314
- Jamad**, the first bridge built over it by Timur Bek, ii. 544
- Jamahay**, the capital of Jangoma, iii. 263—273 (E). Situation, &c. described, and lake, 284
- Jamhur** defeats the revolted Sinan, revolts himself against the khalif, and defeated by him, i. 389
- Jami**, among the Othmans, what, v. 162 (S)
- Jamaica**, its discovery by Columbus, xv. 277. His distress there, and instance of his admirable presence of mind, 278. Engages Mendez to go in a canoe with some Indians to Hispaniola, which he performs, ib. Peopled by the Spaniards, and their barbarity, ib. Instances of its wealth under them, ib. Invaded by the English, who conquer it under Cromwell, by Blake and Montague, 279 & viii. 315. The sinking and taking rich galleons, ib. Vast improvements of that colony, xv. 280. Rise of the Buccaneers there, ib. Detriment to its trade by the African company, how removed by parliament, 283. Most dreadful earthquakes there, 284. Proclamation against pirates, 285. Dangerous conspiracy of the negroes suppressed, ib. Dreadful earthquake at Port-Royal, 286. Annual fast, ib. Invaded by the French, but baffled, 287. A fleet of merchantmen after the earthquake cast away, ib. Appoint agents to solicit their affairs in London, and a com-
- mittee to correspond with them, ib. Descent of the French baffled, ib. They re-embark, 288. Address to his majesty, on a reinforcement ordered them, ib. Which arrives under Wilmot and Lilleston, ibid. Negroes there made free, 290. Pointis appears before it, ib. Privateers, their success up Darien river, 295. Success of their privateers against the French and Spaniards, 296. Dreadful hurricane there, 297. Damage done, ib. Another hurricane, ib. How injured by the peace of Utrecht, 298. Complaint of the Spaniards against the frequent piracies there, 299. Opinion of the council thereon, in two parts, ib. Complaints of the English against the Spaniards disregarded, ib. Martial law why revived, 300. Another dreadful hurricane there, 301. Damage done, and an address to the king on it, ib. Relief ordered, ib. Rebellion of the mountainous negroes, 302. Against whom the Musquito Indians are employed, ib. Capture of a galley by the Spaniards, which they refuse delivering up, 306. Particulars of their loss sent to England, which the opposition improve, and a war breaks out, ib. Daily plundered by the Spaniards, and its extraordinary expences, ib. Port Antonio fortified, 308. Considerable captures by their privateers, 310. The chief gainers by a Spanish war, 312. Its affairs and trade how hurt, 313. Pacification made with the mountain negroes, 314 (D). Another part of the negroes accept of the same capitulation, 315. Scheme for arming the Musquito Indians, and success, ib. Proceedings in parliament about Jamaica, 327. Address to his majesty, and foundation what, with the Board of Trade's report and resolutions thereon, 328. Pestered with Spanish depredations, and complain in vain, ib. Spanish pyrates executed there; also disputes between the governor and assembly, with the occasion, ib. Mutual recriminations to a pitch of indecency, 329. Insurrection of the negroes, and incredible secrecy, with their ravages, but quelled, 330. Breaks out again, and suppressed, with wise regulations made about them, 331. Flourishing state of the island at the end of the war, ib. The Paris treaty in its favour, ib. Powder-magazine of Augusta blown up, ib. The damage done by the explosion, ib. Its description and rich soil, 332. Products and sugars, ib. Quantity of that and rum exported to Britain, 333. Its trees and plants, ib. Cattle and wild fowl, ib. Alligators, and number of parishes in the island, ib.
- Jamalarrazd's singular fidelity** to Jalalo'ddin, ii. 318
- Jamalo'ddin** takes possession of Damascus in his brother's right, i. 705
- James**, count de la Marche, after crushing Sforza and Alopa, deprives queen Jean of all share in the government, and imprisons her, with his partiality to Frenchmen, x. 477. Set at liberty by the Neapolitans, ib. They mediate a reconciliation between him and the queen, with the latter's promoting her favourites, ib.
- James of Arragon** crowned king of Sicily, x. 449. His request refused by pope Honorius, who excommunicates him and his brother Alphonfus, ib. Invades Calabria and takes several places, ib. Truce agreed to between him and Charles, 450. On the death of his brother Alphonfus, succeeds to Arragon, and marries Elizabeth of Castile, ibid.
- **St. grand-master** of that order, for a revolt, and repulsing the king with arrows and stones from his castle, is put to death, viii. 44
- **I. of Scotland**, title and presents sent him by the pope, x. 58
- **V. king of Scots**, goes to the assistance of the French, and marries the princess Magdalen, ix. 225
- **VI. of Scotland**, treaty of marriage between him and a princess of Denmark, xii. 164. See James I. of England
- **I. of England**, motives for the neutrality observed by him towards the elector-palatine, though he allows some noblemen to raise a body of troops, commanded by Vere, xi. 201. By Gondemar's address, still indifferent about his son-in-law; but he sends lord Digby on an embassy to Vienna, with the ambassador's demand, and the emperor's answer, 204. Truce concluded by him in favour of Frederick, 211. Gives some money to Mansfeldt, 213. And prevails on the king of Denmark to take arms against the emperor for re-establishing Frederick, ib.
- **II. of England**, when duke of York invents signals at sea, ix. 459. Repentment of that king's conduct by the Dutch, xi. 471 (A). Dislike of that king to the prince of Orange and the Dutch, 633. Excites the Algerines to a war with the Dutch republic, 634. Protection given them



- in the English ports, *ib.* That king's enemies protected by the Dutch, *ib.* The revival of disputes by that king on the trade to Bantam, *ib.* Complaints of his minister at the Hague, with the artful answer of the Dutch deputies, *ib.* (A). That king betrays fear, 637
- James-Fort on the Gold-coast, vi. 673
- Fort on the river Gambia, its history, vii. 73. When taken by the French, *ib.* Retaken and ransomed, but plundered by pirates, 74
- town and fort where built, and described, xiv. 488. The fort improved, *ib.* Distress of this colony, *ib.* Have recourse to captain Smith, who is taken prisoner, and released by means of an Indian lady, with the intelligence he receives from her, *ib.* The distress of the adventurers, from the Indians, and other causes, *ib.*
- James's Plantations encourages several adventurers from different views, and the consequences, xiv. 490
- Jamusha, a famous salt lake, xiii. 43
- Jan, or Tian-Muren, a river in Mongolia, ii. 247
- Jand Bibi's brave defence of her kingdom, iii. 61. Of the castle of Amadnagar, and poisons herself, 62
- Jangoma kingdom, where situate, iii. 263—273 (E). Its produce, and conquests, 263. Revolts against Pranjinoko, 269. Its limits little known, and whence called Taynoe, and by the Portuguese Siame, with its extent and desert site, *ib.* Cities and inhabitants, 284. Their dress, diet, superstition, customs, &c. *ib.* Trade, history, and subdued by the king of Siam, 285. Present state, *ib.*
- Jangshi, the fifteenth khan of Bukharia, ii. 465
- Jani Bek Khan, his reign in Kipjak, and success against Malek Alshraf, and death, ii. 446
- II. or Abufaid khan of Kipjak, his reign, ii. 449
- Keray, the thirteenth khan of Krim, ii. 451
- Mohammed Khan, sent in vain to negotiate with the rebel Mirweis, and imprisoned by him, ii. 653
- Janizaries, when and by whom first instituted, the odd ceremony of it, and their number, prowess, &c. v. 163
- in Egypt, their usurpation and politics, vi. 7, 8 (F). Extortions on the Europeans, *ib.* Their power and insolence at Cairo, 13 (L). As bad at Alexandria, 22
- Janfenism, the disputes about it renewed, x. 170. Occasioned by a case of conscience, with the doctors solution, and its censure by the archbishop of Paris, *ib.* Edict against renewing the dispute. *ib.* The decision condemned by the pope, who avoids determining the chief point, 171
- Janfenius's books on grace and free-will, condemned by the pope, with a view of the tenets, x. 144 (B). Dispute between him and the Jesuits, xv. 607. Five propositions of the former condemned by the pope, *ib.* Mutual recriminations, *ib.*
- Janfons, the two appointed regents by the Swedish senate, xii. 251
- Janunutus succeeds his father Gediminus in Lithuania, xii. 640 (A). The portions of his other brothers, and a conspiracy formed against him by his brothers Olgerdus and Keijustutus, *ib.*
- Japan, a river in Kamboja, iii. 410
- Japan attempted by the Mungis, ii. 382. Probably peopled by sundry shipwrecked nations, iv. 48. Isles and empire described, 1. Situation, *ib.* When discovered, and dangerous coasts, 2. Seasons, products, &c. *ib.* Animals, 3. Rivers, lakes, &c. *ib.* Cattle, fishery, &c. metals, minerals, and gold mines, 4 (D) (E). Fine copper how wrought and exported, 5 (F). Fine way of tempering the steel, *ib.* Why subject to earthquakes, *ib.* (G). How divided anciently, 33. Present state and division, provinces, cities, &c. *ib.* By whom first peopled, 46
- Japanese slaves force the king of Siam to most shameful terms, iii. 360. Dreaded by his successor, 362. War with the Koreans, according to the Chinese accounts, carried on with terror and success, 755. Ended by the emperor's death, 758. Superstitious notions about storms, &c. iv. 6. Religion, *ib.* Chief deities and various sects, *ib.* Other saints, and their sects, with their common rules of life, 8 (I). Monks, and their strange austerities, and whether they worship the devil, *ib.* (K). Their temples and monasteries described, 9. Colossian idols, 10. Pretended apparitions of their gods, *ib.* Festivals, and a lugubral one, 11. Ready reception of Christianity, *ib.* Proscription of it, 12. Ancient government, *ib.* Overturned by the Cubos, *ib.* Two capitals of the empire, 13. Policy and strict discipline, *ib.* Strength and wealth, 14 & not. Imperial palaces, and poor artillery, 15. Breed their youth up to arms; laws, and punishments, *ib.* (S). The latter extend to the relation, &c. 16. Their genius, arts, &c. *ib.* Virtues and vices, *ib.* Learning, and great universities described, 17 (U). Phycic, 18. Acupuncture in surgery, what, and how performed, 19. Poetry, painting, &c. *ib.* Arithmetic, writing, printing, 20 (W). Excellent method of education, *ib.* (X). Language, 21. Manufactures and commerce why impaired, *ib.* (Y). The latter revived with China by the Kang-hi, 22 (Z). Obstructed by swarms of pirates, with their imports and exports, 23. Shipping inconsiderable, 25. Trading vessels described, *ib.* Boats of pleasure how adorned, and various coins, 26. Architecture, and houses how built, furnished, &c. *ib.* Subject to fires, *ib.* Norimons, or close coaches, and dress, 27. Mourning, 28. Diet and drink, *ib.* Weddings and other feasts, *ib.* Wives and women why closely kept, 29 (E). Plurality of them allowed, with punishments for infidelity, *ib.* (F). How kept and attended, 30. Festivals in honour of the dead, *ib.* Funerals, and a barbarous ceremony at some of them, 31 (G). Of those of the lower rank, *ib.* Reigning diseases, 32. Volcanos and hot mineral waters, 43. Method of using them, *ib.* (O). High mountains, 44. Delightful verdure, with cataracts, and other natural rarities, *ib.* Stately bridges, 45. Medicinal earth, its composition and virtues, 46. Factitious metals, origin and antiquity, and two-fold genealogy of their gods, *ib.* (A). Various accounts confuted, 47. Their ancient government, 48. Chronology, 49. Monarchs, *ib.* List of its secular monarchs from Joritomo, 64. Commerce forbid with all Christians, 67. Entrance why shut up against them, 68. Gold and silver islands, 73
- monarchs, stript of the secular power by the Cubos, iv. 12, yet receive a kind of homage from them, 13. Its manner and grand ceremony described, *ib.* & 74. Embassy to the governor of Manilla, 101. A remarkable Indian worship first introduced, 6 & 51.
- Jaqueline, how war in Holland between her and John of Bavaria is occasioned, with a pacification concluded, xi. 82. Obligated to resign the administration, and declare Philip duke of Burgundy her successor; the greatness of that prince's power by these acquisitions, *ib.*
- Jaran's bravery and success in Turkestan, i. 360
- Jarana taken and plundered by Mahommed, i. 89
- Jarchi, whence so called, his works, and æra of flourishing, v. 502 (G)
- Solomon, his character and writings, v. 549. Death, *ib.* (A). His three learned daughters, *ib.* (B)
- Jarisslaus, duke of Russia, invades Poland, but for a time checked by the spirited conduct of the king, xii. 452. With a numerous army of Russians ravages Poland, 454
- Jarmeric mounts the throne of Denmark as forty-second king, his uncle Bathul resigning to him, xi. 679. By reducing the revolted provinces, and his other conquests, he retrieves matters; his queen executed on a false surmise, and he himself put to death by his son, with his character, 680
- the Fierce of Rugen slain, xii. 39
- the usurper of Denmark invited into Sweden, and the occasion, xii. 224. Brutal use made by him of his victory over Gother of Sweden, *ib.* State, character, and reign, xv. 508
- Jaropolk of Kiow meditates revenge against Poland, is betrayed by a scheme of the Polish count Wlofczowiez, and taken prisoner, xiii. 91
- Jaroslav becomes sovereign of Novogorod, &c. xiii. 89 (I). Yet becomes tributary to Boleslaus I. king of Poland, shakes off the yoke under Miecslaus II. and Casimir of Poland marries his sister, 90. Divides his dominions among his five sons, with the horrors of civil and foreign war thereupon, *ib.*
- Jarra, or Jar, order by whom instituted, viii. 74
- Jaskes princes where seated, they defeat the khan of Ormuz, ii. 631
- princess, her desperate courage against the khan of Ormuz, with the cruel revenge on his general, ii. 631
- Jason, a converted Jew, his conference with Papiscus, v. 496
- Java, where situate, and inhabitants whence descended, but much weakened by the Europeans, iv. 151. More by the Dutch, 458. Inhabitants described, 459. Effeminate life of their kings, *ib.* Yet very powerful, *ib.* Cause of it displayed, 465. The Chinese insurrection there against the Dutch, 471. Dreadful punishment, 472, 473. Nations in it subject to the Dutch, 480. How improved under them, *ib.* (P). Fertility and populousness, *ib.*
- Java Major discovered, and a strange custom of its natives, v. 62
- Javon,



- Javon, a Maltese knight, his noble defence against the Turks, vii. 520. Is unhappily shipwrecked, *ib.*
- Jawali's success against Jakarmish, i. 688. ii. 180. Takes the city of Mufol, or Mausel, and his success against the Kileji, *ib.*
- Jawhar, a renegade slave, conquers Egypt, i. 564. Lays the foundation of Cairo, *ib.* Defeats the invading Karmatians, 566. Repulsed before Damascus, 571. Success in Egypt, 572. Shameful flight out of Syria, 578. Submission to Al Hafan, *ib.*
- Jayme proclaimed king of Arragon, and sworn to by the states, viii. 136. And, notwithstanding his tender age, seated on the throne, *ib.* Distractions and wars among the nobility, 137. Marches, though but twelve years of age, against some of his rebellious subjects, *ib.* Marries Leonora of Castile, *ib.* Death of the empress Constantia, the king's sister, *ib.* The king and queen seized by his uncle Ferdinand abbot of Montarragon, 138. The king escapes, and investing Peniscola, is obliged to raise the siege, *ib.* Insurrections raised in different parts by Ferdinand, *ib.* The king by his mildness restores his own power, and his subjects peace, *ib.* Through the management of the pope's legate, the king is divorced from queen Leonora, and he reduces Valentia, and by what means, 139. He is adopted by Sancho of Navarre, purely out of regard to his merit, *ib.* He, notwithstanding his adoption, suffers the right of succession to Navarre in Thibault to take place, 140. By the interposition of the pope, he espouses Yolande, or Violante of Hungary, and obtains a glorious victory in Valentia, *ib.* Besieging the capital, it surrenders, Zaen and his subjects being allowed to depart, 141. The rest of Valentia conquered, in breach of the public faith, *ib.* He resolves to divide his dominions between his two sons, by which they and his subjects are disobliged, *ib.* Causes the tongue of Berenger bishop of Gironne to be cut out, 142. Reduces all Valentia, the inhabitants of which soon after revolt, and resolves to oblige the Moors to quit that kingdom, *ib.* He makes a new distribution of his territories, but no better liked than the former, *ib.* The king pacifies the people's murmurs, by referring their grievances to the states, *ib.* The queen dies, and the king marries his mistress Vidaura, 143. In an assembly of the states he confirms the liberties of the laity and clergy, with the claims of France and Arragon adjusted by a solemn treaty, *ib.* Upon Alonso's death his brother Pedro becomes heir of Arragon, and marries Constantia of Tarento, *ib.* The king, as an ally of Alonso of Castile, conquers Murcia, 144. His private life disgraces his public character, and some impression made on him by a letter from the pope, *ib.* He takes the cross, and embarks for the Holy Land, but is forced back by a tempest, *ib.* Disturbances in Catalonia, in which his natural son Sanchez takes part against his father, but miserably perishes, 145. A new rebellion of the Moors in Valentia, with the resignation of the crown to Pedro, and the king's death, *ib.* His issue, *ib.*
- Jayme II. of Sicily, on the invitation of the states, is crowned king of Arragon, viii. 149. Goes to Rome, and is cajoled by the pope to make war on his brother Ferdinand of Sicily, but obliged to retire, 150. Makes a second expedition against his brother, and though he beat the Sicilian fleet, discontinues the war, *ib.* Acknowledges the infant de la Cerda as king of Castile, but finds it impracticable to establish him, 151. His brother Frederick acknowledged king of Sicily by the pope, *ib.* Sardinia and Corsica granted the king by the pope, to whom he does homage by his ambassador, *ib.* The knights templars persecuted and attacked every where, but protected by the king, *ib.* Has an interview with Ferdinand of Castile, and in conjunction with him makes war on the Moors, *ib.* Defeats them under the king of Granada, and makes a truce with them, 152. His queen Blanca dies much regretted, *ib.* Treats the knights templars, upon the dissolution of that order, with equity and indulgence, *ib.* His daughter Isabella espoused to Frederick of Austria, *ib.* Secures the commerce of his subjects against the Tunese, and accepts of an annual tribute from the Moors, *ib.* Marries Maria, daughter of Henry of Cyprus, and his prudent views in favour of his subjects, *ib.* His eldest son, of the same name, freely renounces all title to the crown, and Juan of Arragon consecrated archbishop of Toledo, 153. Upon the queen's death, he marries Elizinda de Moncada, *ib.* The states approve the expedition against Sardinia, *ib.* Undertaken by the infant Alonso, who conducts it with prudence, and ends it with success, 154. Upon the death of Sancho king of Majorca, the king of Arragon waves his claim, out of regard to justice, *ib.* His fleet before Cagliari beats the Pisans, *ib.* He defeats his uncle's scheme, and procures his son to be acknowledged his successor, *ib.* Theresa dies, as does the king, very highly esteemed, with an account of their issue, 155. Is succeeded by his son Alonso IV. *ib.*
- II. succeeds his father of Arragon, and the first of the same name, as king of Majorca, &c. viii. 175. Confirmed by his brother Pedro III. of Arragon, upon paying him homage, *ib.* But afterwards deposed by one nephew for assisting Philip the Hardy, and restored by another, *ib.* His issue, *ib.*
- III. succeeds to the crown of the Majorcas, does homage to Arragon by his uncle Philip, and espouses that monarch's daughter Constantia, viii. 176. Obtains supplies, by means of the pope, against the Moors, whose pirates he represses, 177. He breaks with the French king, and is dispossessed of Montpellier, and its dependencies, *ib.* Several unsuccessful attempts to recover his dominions, 178. Raising forces with the money for Montpellier to recover Majorca, he is slain in an action, 179. His issue, *ib.* Reasons for pursuing the history of this unfortunate family, *ib.*
- IV. his son, his adventures from his birth to his escape out of prison, viii. 179. Character and marriage with the queen of Naples, *ib.* Attends Edward the Black Prince in his expedition into Spain, 180. But leaves him sick in Castile, where he was kept prisoner, but afterwards dismissed, *ib.* Assembles an army, but dies of fatigue, *ib.*
- of Arragon taken prisoner and beheaded, viii. 198
- Jazira, Al, where situate, given to Ilgasi, and account of its bishops, i. 695
- Jazireh, Al, ravaged by Timur Bek, ii. 533
- Jaabar, or Jaasar castle, where situated, i. 692
- Jaacob, bastard son of Malac Segued, declared emperor of Abyssinia, and sent prisoner into Enarrea, vi. 280. Offers to Sufneus rejected, 284. Defeated and slain, with a horrid destruction of his troops, *ib.*
- Jaacob, a counterfeit upstart, ravages the provinces, vi. 285. Outwitted by a false rumour, and defeated, with his strange concealment in a cave, 286. Is discovered, taken, and beheaded, *ib.* (Q)
- Jaadah, Hafan's wife, hired to poison him, with her motives for it, and whether guilty or not, i. 284
- Jaasar sent on an embassy into Ethiopia with the news of the battle of Bedr, is taken into the emperor's protection, i. 53. Who he probably was, *ib.* His friendly meeting with Mahomet, 74. Bears the great standard at the battle of Muta, and slain, 78. One of his intimates, 119
- the son of Al Hadi, his forced acknowledgment of his uncle's right, i. 418
- Ebn Yahya put to death by Al Rashid, i. 426. His family reduced to poverty by him, 427
- Moez's general, defeats Hafan in Palestine, with his conquests there, i. 564. Assassinated by the Karmatians, 566
- Ebn Mohammed made emir of Sicily, i. 583. His death, and successor, 588
- Ebn Yusef, emir in Sicily, i. 604. Deposed, 624
- Bek, Togrol's brother, his success in Persia, i. 649. His death, and successor, 657
- khalif, his edict against the Jews, v. 525
- Ibekal Halebi taken by the Mongl scouts, ii. 471
- Iberville's arrival at Quebec with rich furs from Hudson's-bay, xiv. 644. Prosecutes La Sale's projects on the Mississippi, xv. 13. His character, and difficulties, *ib.* Progress, and entrance into the Mississippi, 14. In his progress up the Mississippi he meets with a letter from Tonti to La Sale, *ib.* Substance and conclusion of it, *ib.* Builds a fort between the mouths of the Mississippi and Mobile, *ib.* His proceedings on the Mississippi, 17. Two capital articles of his instructions what, *ib.* Settlement on the Mobile, abandoning Biloxi, 18. Builds magazines and a fort on the isle of Dauphin, *ib.*
- Ibibaboka serpent, its vast size, xiv. 476
- Ibis, the famed bird, succeeded in Egypt by the stork, vi. 4 (C)
- or water-serpent of Ethiopia, vi. 186
- Ibraim, the son of Mahomet, born, i. 90. But he dies two years after, 97—113
- Ebn Mohammed brought to young Ali's interest, i. 320. Wholesome counsel rejected by Solyman, 323. Defeats and kills Obeid'allah, takes Nisibis and other places from the sectaries, 327. Submits to Abdallah, 328. Moderate advice to Musak, 330. Defeated and slain at the battle of Masken, *ib.*
- Ebn Al Walid proclaimed khalif, is deposed by Merwan, i. 374. Killed at the battle of Tubar, 381



Ibrahim, chief of the house of Abbas, succeeds his father Mohammed Ebn Ali, i. 376. Success against Merwan, 377. Acknowledged khalif by several provinces, ib. Success against Merwan, 379. Fatal pilgrimage to Mecca, ib. Seized and put in irons at Damascus, and his death variously related, 380. Usual residence, ib.

—— Ebn Abdallah revolts against Almanfur, and defeated by Isa, i. 395

—— the Sabian geometrician, his works, i. 585 sub (M)

—— Seljuki, his successful expedition against Persia, i. 649

—— the brother of Togrol Bek, revolts against him, i. 655. Defeated and strangled, 656

—— king of Gazna, his signal victories, i. 659. Singular piety and fasting, 660

—— king of Sherwan, his conquests in Irak, and drives Ahmed out of Tauris, ii. 495

—— prince of Shirwan, his gallant submission to Timur Bek, and made king of it, ii. 518

—— prince of Kurdestan, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 528. Turns intercessor for the persecuted Georgians, 568. Regales Timur Bek at his court, 569. Invited to command the attendants on his entertainment, and prepares for the conquest of China, 577. Taken prisoner by Kara Yusef, 587

—— Mirza invades Abusaid, ii. 591. Defeated and dies, ibid.

—— the son of Alao'ddaulet, defeated by Jehan Shah, ii. 701

—— Khan shuts Lahur gates against Khosrow, iii. 65. His success against the Mukhans, 70

—— Ebn Jaafar proclaimed khalif in Yaman, i. 450

—— Ebn Al Mohdi proclaimed khalif by the house of Abbas, i. 450. Deposed by the troops, 451. Pardoned by Mamun, 453

—— sent ambassador from the patriarch of Alexandria to Rome, vi. 165. Exposed as a cheat by Maitter, and his defence to the pope, ib. His embassy confirmed by the patriarch, 166. Ill success, and shipwreck, ib.

—— king of Quiloa, his kind reception of Cabral, and grand interview with him, vi. 351. Grows jealous, and makes hostile preparations against him, 352. Cowardice at the approach of the Portuguese admiral, ib. Raises new revolts against the Portuguese, 354. Defeated by Hossein, ib. Restored, and frees his country from their tyranny, 355

—— declares war against the Maltese, vii. 508

—— castle delivered up to the Greeks, i. 587

Isilino a Romano conquered by Palavicini, and carried in chains, xiii. 681

Icko, a sainted monk, worshipped in Japan, iv. 8

Icon, or Igunu Amlac, his reign, and successors in Abyssinia, vi. 253

Iconium, or Cogni, or Kognijah, besieged in vain by the Crusaders, ii. 217

Icrozalski, deputy of Podlachia, his spirited speech in the Polish diet, xii. 590. Horn's embarrassment; but nothing could shake the constancy of the Podlachians, and their resolution, ib.

Ides, Isbrandts, ambassador from the czar, iv. 585. His reception at the Chinese court described, ib. (D)

Idighi Mangap enters into the service of Tokat Mith, ii. 447. Turns over to Timur Kutluk, 449. Advises him to retire from Amir Timur, ib.

Idikut, king of the Igurs, flees to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 281. Submits to him, and becomes his son-in-law, 282. Assists him against sultan Mohammed, 296. His grandson besieged in his capital, his fidelity and bravery rewarded by Kublay, 374. Made khan by Timur Bek, ii. 449. Invades Karasm with his numberless Tartars, 582

Idolatry how and when introduced among the Arabs, i. 85

Idols among the Mexicans all of a horrid aspect, xiv. 367

Idris governor of Ceuta invades Malaga, i. 627

—— Muley, prince of the Heneti, his rise and dominions, vii. 137. Conquered by the Portuguese, 138. His revenge, ib.

Jean, grand-daughter of Robert king of Naples, succeeds, and is crowned, x. 460. Strange alteration in public affairs, the Hungarians assuming the whole administration, 461. Her husband Andrew's character, and her own, ib. The pope grants a bull for crowning Andrew, ib. Marries her cousin Lewis of Tarento, and its influence on her affairs, with the languid opposition made to the Hungarians, and their invasion, ib. Flies to Provence, and her husband follows, ib. Has a dispensation for her marriage from the pope, who declares her innocent of the murder, and to

what this is owing, 462. She and her husband return to Naples, ib. On a second trial, is declared innocent, from her excuse of being under the power of witchcraft, 464. She marries James of Majorca, 466. How this marriage proves unfortunate, and a peace concluded by Jean with Frederick of Sicily, but the conditions never intirely fulfilled, ib. On the death of her third husband James, marries Otho of Brunswick, with an account of him, 467 (R). Charles of Durazzo and the duchess Margaret, her niece, discontented, with her delivery of a son called Ladislaus, ib.

Jean, dowager of Austria, succeeds her brother Ladislaus in Naples, x. 476. Her infamous character, and creating her favourite Alopa great chamberlain, with his arrogance, ib. She marries James count de la Marche, who assumes the title of king, ib. Intirely directed by her high-steward, imprisons her husband, 477. The king recovering his liberty, returns to France, and there he turns Franciscan, 478 (T). The queen crowned by the legate, and her favourite Caraccioli offends the Neapolitans, Sforza, and the pope, ib. The two last of whom invite Lewis of Anjou, to invade the kingdom; but Sforza unsuccessful, and the queen adopts Alphonsus of Arragon, 479. Who is received by the queen at Naples, ib. Sforza makes his peace with her, ib. Rupture between the queen and Alphonsus, and, upon the arrival of a considerable fleet from Arragon, the queen adopts Lewis of Anjou, ib. Which is confirmed by the antipope, ib. On pope Martin's death, Eugenius IV. succeeds, whom she assists against the Colonna, 480. Dies, the last of the first Anjou race, with an account of her wealth, 481

—— de Laune, St. a council convoked there, at which the emperor and king of France are present, but without effect, x. 674

Jebal, Al, kingdom founded by the Assassins, i. 671. Its duration and end, 672

Jeber, the first celebrated chemist among the Arabs, i. 8 (K)

Jedi, a storm raising stone, ii. 502 (K)

Jedso, Jesso, or Yedzo-land, described, iv. 68. Why called Jesso-gasima, and northern extent not known, 69 (B). Trade with Japan, and natives described, ib. Diet, dress, customs, &c. 70. A further account of them from the Dutch, 71. Given to drink, and the women's modesty, ib. Traffic with Japan what, 72. Tributary to it, and whether contiguous with it, ib. How divided, and by whom conquered, 73. Treason, and punishment, with its subjection to Japan, ib. Missionaries account of it, iii. 521

Jeddo, or Yeddo, the second metropolis of Japan, described, its river, bridges, &c. iv. 35. When newly rebuilt, with its many palaces, 36. The imperial palace described, ib. Imperial residence, and stately gardens, 37. Apartments, and by whom built, 38. City how governed, ib. Palace totally burned, 62 (U)

Jeffreys, lieutenant-governor of Virginia, calls an assembly, and solemnly makes peace with the Indians, xv. 370. The good effects ever since, ib.

Jegur, a fruit in Karasm, described, ii. 717

Jehabentafuf, the most faithful Moor, his murder, viii. 468

Jehan Ghir. See Ghir

—— Timur proclaimed sultan, but deposed, ii. 493 (R)

—— Numay castle by whom built, and Timur Bek's arrival there, ii. 545

—— Shah (see Khurm, sultan) bribed over to Rukh Shah, ii. 700. Besieges his brother in Kalat Alenjik, and mounts the Turkman throne, with his conquests and vast dominions, also domestic revolts, 701. Slain by Uzun Hassan, ib.

—— Ghir, fifth shah of the White Sheep dynasty, ii. 702

—— Ara Begum, one of Jehan Shah's daughters, her character and gallantry, iii. 88. An enemy to her brother Aurengzeb, 95. Immured in her palace with him, 96

Jehandar defeats his rivals, and mounts the Mogols throne, iii. 120. His reign, issue, and abdication, ib.

Jehuda, Rabbi, Eliezer's son, his rise and merit, v. 502 (H)

Je-jas, or Jejas-fama, made governor to Taycho's son, and treachery to him, iv. 61. His extraction and government, 66. Ascends the throne, and persecutes the Christians, 67. Admits the Dutch to trade, ib. Death, ib.

Jelalia subdued by Akbar, iii. 60

Jemitz pays homage to the empress of Japan, iv. 62. His reign, 68

Jemla Amir sements a war, iii. 88. Assists Aurengzeb at the battle of Kajowh, 98. Saves his life, ib. Suspected by him, 99. Sent against his brother Sujah, 100. Puts



- him to flight, *ib.* Prevented from his pursuit by the floods, *ib.* Drives him out of Bengal, 106. Politically rewarded by Aurengzeb, 110. Sent to invade Afem, *ib.* His success, *ib.* Dies of the flux, 111.
- Jemla, Amir, his attempt on the kingdom of Assam, iii. 222
- Jemuka, or Chamaka, why an enemy to Temujin, ii. 270. Makes new alliances against him, 271. Raises jealousies in Vangkhan against him, 272. Outwitted and defeated by him, 273. Success against Kharashar, 276. Makes an alliance with other khans against Temujin, 277. His confederacy is betrayed to him, *ib.* Rashness, and cruel death, 278 (C)
- Jenecoping, result of a congress there between deputies from Sweden and Denmark, xii. 105. Fresh articles of accusation against Eric, the first of which is false, *ib.*
- Jenghiz Khan, his history and vast conquests, ii. 264. Various relations, 265. Cause of the dissonance, *ib.* His descent pretended to be divine, with his ancestors, 266. List of his successors in Great Bukharia, ii. 463. (See his history, under Temujin). In little Bukharia, 467. In Iran, or Persia, 469
- Jenisei, account of it, and other rivers it receives, xiii. 28
- Jenson, Nicolo Tedesco, first printer in Venice, the doge's generosity to him, x. 263
- Jensu II. the hundredth emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Jen-vo, the sixty-fourth emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Jennings's expedition into the Mediterranean, a mere parade, xv. 567
- Jerba, island in Tunis, described, vii. 306
- Jercjah, an English settlement near the Gambia, vii. 72
- Jeremiah, rabbi, a famed professor of Sora, v. 503. Sets his wife to dispute with those of Babylon, *ib.*
- Jeritomo, the famous Japanese cubo or emperor, born, iv. 57. Lays the foundation of his new sort of government, *ib.* Dies, 58
- Jerom, St. his high esteem for the Jews asserted by some of their rabbies, v. 187 (Z)
- of Prague summoned to Constance, ix. 709. His and Huf's affair brought before that council, xi. 75 (T). Declared contumacious, ix. 709. Publicly abjures Wickliffe's and Huf's errors; but afterwards retracting, is shut up in a loathsome dungeon by the duke of Bavaria, 711. xi. 77. Defends his doctrines with great eloquence, but condemned to be burned, ix. 711. Suffers with the greatest resolution, and an account of his behaviour and character by Poggio, pope John's secretary, *ib.* (W) & xi. 77
- Jersey, New, by whom first discovered, xiv. 546. Its first settlers who, *ib.* Its government granted by the duke of York to lord Berkley and Sir George Carteret, *ib.* Its limits what, *ib.* To whom sub-granted, 547. Extraordinary mixture of proprietors, *ib.* The terms of partition, *ib.* Why the proprietors of East and West Jersey surrender the government to queen Anne, 548. Who gives them standing instructions, and what, *ib.* The government united with that of New York, *ib.* Its civil constitution what, *ib.* Limits and extent, *ib.*—East, its counties and towns, *ib.*—West, its only county and capital, 549.—Vast improvements in New Jersey, *ib.* Number of inhabitants, *ib.* Trade, with some articles of exports and imports, *ib.*
- Jerun, or Jarun, directs Ayaz to a desert island, since called by his name, ii. 684 (T). He pays an acknowledgment to the Mollahs, with its situation, hot climate, parts, &c. 685. Produce, wealth, &c. *ib.* The Portuguese fort there, 691
- Jerusalem besieged and taken by the Moslems, with articles granted them by the caliph, i. 206. Omar erects a temple where that of Solomon was, 207. Beautified by khalif Al Walid, 343. The great church plundered and burned by the Moslems, 533. Under the Turks, taken by the Egyptians, and then by the Franks, 683. Massacre and rich plunder there, *ib.* Abulfedah's further account of that loss to the Moslems, *ib.* Rebuilt by Adrian, v. 492. Taken by Saladine, ix. 606. Taken by the Croises by storm, ii. 177. ix. 577. And Godfrey elected king, Theobert the legate, who invested him, being chosen patriarch, *ib.* King resigns his title, 625.
- Jesajah, bishop of the Jacobites, his treaty with Mohammed, i. 98
- Jesuit mission in New France, account of it, and the Fathers zeal, xiv. 577. Effect of their medicines stopping a distemper in a Huron village, 578
- Jesuitesses suppressed, x. 141
- Jesuits artifices and boasts in Mogol, iii. 82. Arrive at Siam, 369. Attempt to convert the king, &c. *ib.* A new set arrive there, 372. Their pretended conversions a mere farce, 401. Their inhumanity to the French officers, 402. The sad state of their mission, 403. Success in and banishment out of Tonquin, 446. Four of them put to death for their fresh attempt in coming into it, 449. Revive Christianity in China, 567. Their quarrels with the other missionaries prove fatal to it and them, 569. Their present disguise there, 571. Highly favoured by the emperor Chun chi, 737. Banished by his successor to Ma-kau, with his severity to them, 745. Kind reception in Japan, iv. 11. Become obnoxious to the natives, 12. Persecuted and banished, *ib.* Form new projects on Abyssinia, vi. 165. Vain attempts to convert that empire, 167. Set up schools in it, and scare the people with some of their plays, 249. Raise a revolt against the emperor, 276. Some taken prisoners, with their deplorable state, *ib.* (H). Suspected and recalled by the pope, 277. Revive their credit and mission, 278. Recalled to court by Susneus, 285. In high favour with sultan Segued, 287. And with his brother Sella Christos, *ib.* Conference with the Ethiopian doctors, 288. Excommunicated by the abuna, 289. Arrival of new ones, 290. Persecuted by Basilides, 301. Some put to death, 303. Suspected at Rome and Madrid, 304. Their wretched condition in Ethiopia, 309 (Z). The chief priests at Loanda, 493. Vast number of slaves, 494. Order by whom founded, viii. 239. Their situation, ix. 347. Refused opening their college by the parliament of Paris, *ib.* Allowed to open their college in France, 360. By whom confirmed, and account of their institution, 686 (M). Restriction of their number, x. 86. Deny the pope's infallibility, with other points defended by them, 130. Banished Rome, 132 (S). The dispute between the Dominicans and them about grace ended by pope Paul V. *ib.* A number of them introduced into Sweden, xii. 301. The difficulties they meet with in converting the natives in Canada, xiv. 577. How the latter outwit the fathers, and the occasion, *ib.* The missionaries inflexible perseverance against all discouragement, *ib.* Charges against them what, 582. How contradicted, 583. Their success in Canada why so moderate, 607. Their character, and that of several religious ladies, *ib.* Why their labours were defeated, *ib.* Jesuits among the Iroquois why alarmed, xiv. 671. Their ambition and avarice in North America, xv. 17. Their boasts as to civilizing the Illinois, 18
- Jesus isle in St. Laurence river described, xiv. 559
- Jessey rajah, outwitted by Aurengzeb, iii. 98
- Jeffom Seyn sent to guard the Eujin against Morad, and defeated with great loss, iii. 91. Upbraided for cowardice by his valiant wife, 92. Plunders Aurengzeb's treasury and baggage, 99. Retires, and spreads the news of Aurengzeb's death, *ib.* Abandons Dara, and goes over to Aurengzeb, 102. Refuses to deliver up young Soleyman, 103. Suspected at court, 113. His death, and his widow's brave answer to Aurengzeb, 115. Suspected of corresponding with Sevaji, *ib.*
- Jetah country (see Getes) ii. 502. Princes send embassies to Timur Bek, 543
- Jewish tribe of Khazraj go over to Mohammed, i. 30
- of Kainoka conquered by Mohammed, and banished into Syria, i. 57
- of Al Khaibar invaded by Mohammed, i. 71. Their origin and descent, *ib.* Submit to him upon certain conditions, 73
- settled in Kranganor, iii. 165
- doctors assume a great variety of titles, v. 503. Chiefs of the captivity their extinction, 532. Inscription at one of the Azores, 617
- Jews why cursed by Mahomet, i. 106. First ministers to the khalifs, 338. Forced to wear a mark of contempt, 469. And to ride on asses and mules, 471. Burnt in the temple of Jerusalem by the Franks, 683. Massacre and rich plunder, *ib.* Massacred in Iran, ii. 483. Their synagogue in China described, iii. 572. Conformity with other Jews, 573. And with the Chinese rites, *ib.* Their sacred books agree with ours, 574. The small number of them, *ib.* Obstruct the progress of the Venetians at Caffa, iv. 104. Their pretended settlement at Kranganor since the captivity, and their engraved record of it, 404. Their horrid impiety at the time of their dispersion, v. 479. Woeful condition ever since, yet preserved by a special providence, with a distinction between the Eastern and Western



Western Jews, 480 (A). Their own history fraught with fables, and chronology very imperfect, *ib.* (B). Often palpably falsified by them, 482. Instances of it, *ib.* (C). Their principal Eastern chiefs, *ib.* (D). Chiefs or princes of the captivity, 483. Why said to have been superior to the patriarchs of Judea, 484. The royal line not confined to them, *ib.* (F). Nor wholly removed to Babylon; *ib.* (G). Great numbers retire to Galilee, Egypt, &c. and bloody defence at the castle of Bither, 485 (I). Whether their sanhedrim was continued, *ib.* (K). Oppressed with taxes by the Romans, *ib.* The rise of the patriarchs in Judea, with the gradual rise of their academies, 486. Fabulous list of their patriarchs, *ib.* (N). Exploded, 487. Their most probable beginning, 488 (O). Great men who flourished in the second century, 489 (S). Their revolt in Mesopotamia under Trajan, 490 (T). Quelled by L. Quietus, horrid butchery of the Cypriots, and forbid to come into the island, *ib.* (U). Deceived by several false Messiahs, *ib.* (W). Besieged in Bither, with the horrid slaughter of them, 491 (A). Myriads sold at the publick fairs, with their misery and oppression under Trajan, 492 (D, E). Their patriarchate when and by whom abolished, 495. Great boast of Antoninus Pius's friendship to them, and forbid to make profelytes and eunuchs, *ib.* (Q, R). Hot controversies with learned Christians, 496. Ill treatment from M. Aurelius, *ib.* New upstart sects, *ib.* Cry down the Septuagint version, with new versions made by others, and to what end, 497 (Y). Fidelity to Severus requited, 498. Raised to the highest posts, and insolence to the Christians upon it, *ib.* (B). Compile their manifold traditions, and their Thalmud, *ib.* Extreme danger under Heliogabalus, 500. And highly favoured by Alexander Severus, 501. Peaceable state under his successors, and learned men in the second century, *ib.* Persecution under Valerian by whom occasioned, and condition of the Eastern Jews during this century, *ib.* Chiefs of the captivity (see Captivity), *ib.* Favoured by the Persian monarchs, 502. Persecuted by Sapor II. 503. The occasion of it, *ib.* (I). Highly favoured by queen Zenobia, and by her son Vaballat, *ib.* Strange compliment to Dioclesian, and severely treated by Constantine, 504 (L). Whether he or Adrain ordered their ears to be cut, with laws and decrees against them, *ib.* (M). Why forbid to bless the fruits of the ground, and their famous rabbis of the fourth century, 505. Raise a persecution against the Christians, and make horrid havoc of all their churches, 506 (S). And at Alexandria, but severely punished by Constans, *ib.* Highly favoured by Julian the Apostate, and cruel revenge against the Christians, *ib.* Zeal for rebuilding their temple miraculously frustrated, 507 (W). Valentinian's edict against them, *ib.* More mildly treated by Theodosius, *ib.* Why confined to the Stanor, *ib.* (Y). Insolence under Theodosius, 508. His edicts against them, *ib.* Mutual hostilities with the Christians forbid by a new one, 509 (B, C). Deceived in Candia by an impostor, and embrace Christianity, *ib.* (D). Many cheats among them, and raise a tumult at Alexandria, 510. Defeated by the bishop, *ib.* And followed by a bloody massacre, but more favourably treated in the West, 511. Those of Minorca converted, *ib.* How treated by the Vandals, 512. Their academies in Persia, &c. *ib.* (K). Under a seven years persecution, 513. Start up a new sect, *ib.* (L). Cruelty under Cavades, *ib.* & notes. By Chosroes I. and II. and restored by Hormisdas, 514. They butcher ninety thousand Christians, and frustrated in their attempt upon Tyre, 515. Turn to and assist Mahomet, *ib.* (Q). Hated and persecuted by him, and brought under tribute to him, *ib.* To his successors, 516. Obtain the liberty of their religion, *ib.* Deprived of it by Justinian, 517 & notes. Suppressed in Africa, *ib.* (X). Revolt against the emperor, *ib.* Hostilities against the Christians, 518. At Cæsarea, and join the Goths against the emperor, *ib.* and notes. Cruelly butchered at Naples, and horrid cruelty to the Antiochians, 519. Conversion in the isle of Cyprus, and favoured by Gregory the Great, *ib.* Persecution under Heraclius, whence occasioned, *ib.* (B). Sad distress in Spain and Gaul, 520. Council held against them, *ib.* Julian's satire against them, 521. Conspire against the Goths, *ib.* Edicts against them in Gaul, *ib.* Expelled out of Languedoc, and new persecutions in Gaul, 522. Banishment by Wamba, 523. Their legend of Chozar's conversion canvassed, *ib.* (L). Quiet state under the khalifs, 524. Retrieve their universities under Almanfor, 525. Persecuted by Al Wathek, and forced to wear a mark of infamy, 526 (R). Whether the cause of

the edict against the use of images, *ib.* (T). Persecuted by Leo Isaurus in Syria and Judea, and favoured by Nicephorus, 527. By Michael, and misled by a false Messiah, and severely punished by Ambisa, 528. Invite the Arabs into Languedoc, and dreadfully punished for it, with their great credit in France, *ib.* Oppressed by the bishop of Lyons, *ib.* By bishop Remifus, 529. Accused of high crimes, *ib.* Flourishing state in the tenth and eleventh centuries, with their fatal dissensions, 530. Grown numerous and powerful, 531. A dreadful schism among them, and expulsion out of the East, whence occasioned, 532 (F). Forced to retire into Spain, *ib.* Persecuted and restored in Egypt, *ib.* Persecuted in Granada; 533. Lucky escape under Ferdinand, &c. 534. Learned men there, *ib.* (O). Contempt of profane learning overcome, 535 (P). Few learned in France, their names and writings, *ib.* Their state in Hungary and Bohemia, 536 (S). In Germany, and cruelly massacred by the Crusaders, *ib.* Fourteen hundred burned at Mentz, 537 (T). Protected by the emperor, *ib.* In high favour with Mostang, 538. Dependent on the khalifs, *ib.* And the monarchs in other parts of Egypt, 539. In Palestine, &c. 541. In Greece, 542. Ill treated at Constantinople, *ib.* Their state in Italy, Germany, France, &c. 543. In the East, 544. Pretended chiefs, why protected by the popes, 545. Numerous and flourishing in Spain, *ib.* (M). Fatal divisions in Andalusia, *ib.* Accused of murder in France, *ib.* Persecuted for it, and banished out of that kingdom, *ib.* (O). Recalled, 546. Punished, *ib.* Persecuted all over England, with the occasion of it, *ib.* (R). Contentions for and against Maimonides, 548. They excommunicate one another, *ib.* Famed men among them, *ib.* In Germany, 549. Famed converts and apostates, 550 & notes. Seduced by sundry false Messiahs, and outwitted by the king of Persia, *ib.* Massacred in Persia, and great decay in the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, 552. Chiefs of their captivity abolished, and expelled out of Baghdad, 553. Peaceable state in Judea, *ib.* In Egypt, and under Argun Khan, *ib.* Under the Greek emperors, 554 (P). Sad distress in the West, *ib.* (Q). Whence occasioned, *ib.* (R). Accused of a fresh crucifixion, and new means tried to convert them, 555. Eminent astronomers among them, 556 (U). Massacred at Orfana, and at Palma acquitted by king Alphonso, *ib.* Esteemed by James of Arragon, 557 (Y). Deceived by two new impostors, *ib.* (Z). Pretended miracle, *ib.* Persecuted by the enthusiastic shepherds, and desperate defence against them, *ib.* (A). Persecuted by Alphonso XI. 558. Massacred at Toledo, *ib.* Fidelity to king Peter the Cruel, 559. Persecuted in Castile and Arragon, *ib.* (D). In France and Brittany, 560 (F). Privileges in Languedoc suppressed, 561 & notes. Banished out of France, and recalled, *ib.* Banished by king Edward I. of England out of Gascony, 562. Great abuses crept in among them, *ib.* & notes. Banished by Philip the Fair, *ib.* Recalled and re-persecuted, 563 (P). Final banishment out of France, 564 (Q). Great privileges in Lorrain, *ib.* Strangely favoured by the pope and king of Naples, *ib.* & notes. Massacred at Trani and Naples, *ib.* Protected by pope Clement VI. 565. At Bologna, *ib.* (U). Present the Inquisition with a MS. of the Old Testament, pretended to have been written by Ezra, *ib.* (W). When and by whom invited into England, and banished out of it, 566. Severity to them at Norwich and London, *ib.* At Lincoln, for a new crucifixion, 567 (B). Total banishment, when, and by whom, *ib.* (C). Occasion, and manner, 568 sub not. Severely treated in Germany, *ib.* At Frankfort, Hagenaw, &c. *ib.* Learned men in Germany, Lithuania, &c. *ib.* Complaint against the oaths exacted from them, 570 (I). Disputes with the Karaites, *ib.* (K). A massacre of them at Nuremberg, &c. *ib.* Banished out of Hungary, 571. New persecution in Germany, *ib.* In Bohemia, and banished the empire and Spain, 572. A conference with the Christians promoted by the antipope Benedict, *ib.* (Q). The success of it variously reported, 573 (R). Hypocrisy of their converts, 574. How punished, *ib.* Raise a tumult at Toledo, *ib.* (X). Hold some conferences under king Alphonso, 575. Banished out of Spain, with their vast numbers and hard fate, 576 (B, C). Great miseries, *ib.* (D). Treacherous reception in Portugal, 577. Cruelty used by king John, *ib.* Forced to dissemble with him, 578. Some of their learned men turn Jews again, *ib.* Address the emperor for re-admission into Spain, but opposed by cardinal Ximenes, 579. Decay in the East during the three last centuries,



- turies, 579. (I). An ancient race of them there, *ib.* Persecuted by the Persian sophis, 580. Massacred at Ispahan, *ib.* Shameful hypocrisy, 581. Numerous at Lar, &c. *ib.* Persecuted in Armenia, 582. Printing-houses in Turkey suppressed, 583. Why so few at Jerusalem, *ib.* (Q). More rich and numerous in Syria, 584. Cheated by a new impostor, 585 (T). Strange zeal and generosity to him, *ib.* Deceived by his strange tricks, 586. Undeceived, 587. Great traffic in Syria and in Ethiopia, *ib.* (X). Driven from their rocky situation, 588. Quiet state, 589. Rich and numerous in Africa, strange fidelity to the Spaniards, and numerous at Suz, *ib.* Trade and privileges in Turkey, 590. Cyprus, *ib.* Set up printing at Constantinople, *ib.* Number and privileges at Patras, 591 (I). At Thessalonica, *ib.* (K). Various turns at Rhodes, 592. In Italy, and persecuted by pope John XXIII. *ib.* Threatened with a new storm, *ib.* Banished out of Trent, and persecuted at Naples, 593. Why hated by Charles V. *ib.* (O). Favoured by pope Paul III. and in the county of Avignon, 594 (R). Accusations and edicts against them in Italy, 595. Banished the pope's dominions, *ib.* (X). Print Hebrew bibles at Venice, *ib.* And set up printing at Soncino, 597. Number and government at Rome, 599. Synagogues forbid to the Christians, and attempts to convert them ineffectual, 600. Homage paid to a new pope, *ib.* Why prayed for standing on Good Friday, *ib.* (H). Total of their Italian synagogues, *ib.* (K). Their state in the North, 601. Hebrew concordance when and by whom compiled, *ib.* (L). Banished out of Bavaria, 602. Thirty burned at Mecklenburg, *ib.* (O). Why banished out of Nuremberg, *ib.* (P). And Cologne, *ib.* (Q). Their books threatened to be burned, 603. State after the Reformation, *ib.* (S). Become more learned, and write virulent books against Christianity, 604. Banished out of Mersburgh, and protected by Ferdinand, 605. Flourishing state in the North, and their academies, *ib.* (X). Banished from and resettled at Prague, 606. Famous doctors there, *ib.* (Z). Persecuted in Hungary and Moravia, 607. In Franconia, and great privileges in Poland, *ib.* At Ham-  
burgh and Prague, *ib.* Pretended defence of Prague, and why hated by the Christians there, 608 (B). Instances of their mutual hatred, *ib.* sub not. Singular oath administered to them, *ib.* (C). A general meeting of them in Hungary, 609 (D). Why unsuccessful, *ib.* A new one appointed, 610. Banished out of Vienna, and recalled, and settled in other parts of the empire, *ib.* Vast numbers at Frankfort, *ib.* In Holland deceived by rabbi Zeiglar, with the hatred between the northern and southern Jews, 611 (G). Three first synagogues in Amsterdam re-united, *ib.* Learned Jews there, *ib.* sub notes. Present state over the world according to rabbi Luzati, 616. According to rabbi Manasseh, with that of their general recal, *ib.* (N, O). His opinion about the ten tribes, *ib.* Confuted, and where most probably seated, 617—619. Those in China not of that number, with Alvarez's account of these, 618 (R). Ignorant of the Messiah, &c. 619. Numerous in the province of Honan, *ib.* Pretended antiquity, *ib.* Long succession of kings in Cochin, and Hebrew letter from thence much questioned, and dispersion through India, *ib.* Among Protestants and Papists in Europe, their partiality to the latter, 620. Complaints against the former, and strong expectation of the Messiah confirmed by a learned Protestant divine, *ib.* (V). Their wonderful preservation, 621. Final conversion and return promised, 622. Various causes of their unbelief, *ib.* Main rock on which they split, *ib.* The admission of the Gentiles, and their own rejection, 623. Prejudice against Christ's humble appearance and sufferings, also of the sceptre of Judah being transferred, *ib.* Vain hopes to have found it in Abyssinia, and forgeries raised about it, 624. Prejudices against a spiritual Messiah and kingdom, *ib.* Other causes of their blindness and unbelief, 625. Impious forgeries against Christ's pedigree, &c. 626. Few converts among them to Christianity, *ib.* Wrong notions of their Messiah, *ib.* Encouraged by their rabbis, 627. Excommunicate all converts, and forbid disputing with Christians, 628. False interpretations, chronology, &c. *ib.* Oral tradition set up above the written text, *ib.* The last expedient to oppose Christianity, 629. Absurdities of their talmudic traditions, *ib.* Not sufficient to open their eyes, 630. Yet rejected by the Karaites, 631. Examination of the prophetic temple of Ezekiel, 632 (Z). Division of the land, &c. by the Messiah, *ib.* Imply a positive restoration of the Israelitish kingdom, 633. And is their main support under their long captivity, 634. Strengthened by the wrong measures taken to convert them, 635. Strange formularies of their abjuration, 636 (D). Proving Christian mysteries by Heathen philosophy, *ib.* By their cabala, and by miracles, 638 (F). Send to America in quest of the Jewish sceptre, and ill success of that expedition, 639. In Africa become independent, 660. Tolerated in Spain by pope Honorius's orders, vii. 703. Their massacre in Navarre, viii. 58. Obligated to quit Spain, 212. Dangerous sedition at Lisbon against them, 460. Persecuted and massacred in divers parts of Germany, xi. 16. Shocking massacre of them in Alsace by the lower class, under Armleder an inn-keeper, 44. But protected by the bishop of Strasburg, and Armleder executed, *ib.* A dreadful plague attributed to them, with an insurrection against them, 48. Two thousand of them burned alive at Strasburgh by orders of a butcher, who had turned out the magistracy, besides more in other places of Germany, 49. By whom the populace were instigated to this inhuman tragedy, and peace how restored by the emperor, *ib.* The sect of Flagellants revived, with their increase and dispersion, *ib.* (U). Cruel insurrections in Germany against them, 62. Protected by Jagellon in Lithuania, *ib.* Do the pope homage with his benediction, 78. Their great number, and their contributions in Poland, xii. 441 (B). Have no settlement in Russia, xiii. 69. Case of the Jews in France and Germany, whose offer is rejected at Geneva, xiv. 32  
Jezirah taken by Constantine Copronymus, i. 383  
Isalon, a province in Manilla, iv. 188  
Ignatio, San, city in the isle of Guam, iv. 245  
Igor, a minor, succeeds his father Ruric in the Novogrodian dominions under the care of Olech, xiii. 88. Marries Olga; but is killed, and she becomes a Christian; on whose death her son reigns long, and the Russians rank her among their saints, *ib.*  
Igurs, or Oygurs, where seated; they revolt against Jenghiz Khan, ii. 281. Their country where situated, 282  
Ilgat, a sea-port of Hindustan, described, iii. 8  
Jilfray, an English settlement on the Gambia, described, vii. 72  
I-in's noble stratagem to reclaim the Chinese emperor, iii. 684. Services to his successors, *ib.*  
Jinji, capital of Sevaji, where situated, and besieged by Aurangzeb, iii. 117  
—— a city of Karnata, iii. 177  
Jing-seng root, the most valued where growing, iii. 462 (D). In Liyau-tong described, 556 (C). In great esteem in China, 616. See Geng-seng root  
Jin-tsong's dishonourable peace with the Tartars, and treaty with the Lyau-tongers, iii. 720  
—— the third of the Tartar dynasty, his excellent reign, iii. 724  
—— the fourth of the twenty-first dynasty, his great, sudden, and strange death, iii. 726  
Jitmur's stratagem to take Jund, ii. 299  
I-king book, what, ii. 353 (E)  
Ikrimak's gallant behaviour before Emesa, i. 198. Slain, *ib.*  
Ikzi province in Karazm, ii. 714  
Ikkeri principality described, chief city, &c. iii. 181  
Ilako's envy and plot against Temujin, ii. 272  
Ilal castle taken by the Mongls, ii. 309  
Ilan, the residence of soltan Mohammed's family, taken by the Mongls, ii. 305  
Ilapua repulses the Mongls entrance into Honan, ii. 338. Outwitted by them, *ib.* Defeated by Toley Khan, taken prisoner, and slain, 339  
Ilayas in Manilla, who and whence, iv. 187  
Ilbars, the son of Burga Khan, invited into Karazm, ii. 719—722. Proclaimed khan, *ib.* Takes the capital, puts the Persians to the sword, and invites his uncles to his assistance, with his success in Khorassan, 723. Death, *ib.* Most of his descendants destroyed, 726  
—— the son of Arap Khan, rebels against him, and ravages Khorassan, ii. 736. Seizes on Khayuk, takes his brother prisoner, and forced to flee to a desert, *ib.* Rallies again, and defeats his father's forces, 737. Orders him to be put to death, and divides Karazm with his brother Habash, *ib.* Defeated and put to death by Isfandiar, 738  
Ildighiz the Atabek, promoted by soltan Ma'sud, with his great progeny, and successors in Adherbijan, i. 705—ii. 188  
Ilek khan, his stratagem, and he seizes Bokhara, i. 605 (see vol. ii. 137). Imprisons the Sammanian princes, *ib.*  
Defeated



- Defeated by Abu Montefer, *ib.* And by the Turcmans, 506. Makes alliance with Mahmud Gazni, with his ill success against Montefer, 608. Victory over him, *ib.* Pacified with his brother Togan Khan, 613. Leads an army against him, 614. Death and character, 616.
- Ilek, khan of Turkestan, invades Mawara'nahr, *ii.* 138. Takes Bokharia, and king Abdalmalek prisoner, and is twice defeated by Abu Ibrahim Montefer, *ib.* Invades the new Gazni monarch, 139. Defeated by Mahmud, *ib.* Refrains his empire to the western kitan, 140—145.
- Ilenko, Malek, his brave defence of Tonkat, *ii.* 300. Narrow escape, *ib.*
- Ilenku Nevian sent against the revolted at Herat, *ii.* 319. Makes a terrible massacre of them, 320.
- Ilgazi Ebn Artak his conquests in Syria, *i.* 694. Over-reached and defeated by the Kafjaks, *ib.* His death and character, and why so variously named, *ib.* Critical remark on it, *ib.*
- Ebn Artak defeated by the Gori, rebelled against by his son, and severely punishes his accomplices, *ii.* 185. (See Vol. *i.* 695) Dies, 186.
- Jin tsong, the Chinese name of khan Ayyuli Palipata, *ii.* 405. See Ayyuli Palipata.
- Ili, river in West Tartary, *ii.* 119.
- a river of the Eluth Mungls, *ii.* 250.
- Ilijktay Noyan (Jagatay) assists at Oktay's inauguration, *ii.* 334.
- Ilimsk circle in Irkutsk province, with its chief places and forts described, *xiii.* 49. Its capital of the same name, and three distilleries for spirits, salt-works, &c. *ib.*
- Iltimish invades Timur's dominions, *ii.* 521. Defeated, *ib.* Again, *ib.*
- Ilkhanians who, and whence so called, *ii.* 470.
- dynasty, its rise, and princes end, *ii.* 696.
- Ilyas Khoja, third khan of Little Bukharia, dethroned by Kamro'ddin, *ii.* 468.
- Ilamba, a province of Angola, described, *vi.* 495, and mines of iron, 496.
- Illinois where seated, *xiv.* 612. Dislodged by the Outagamis, and the latter form alliances with some powerful savages, 696. Account of the Illinois, *xv.* 47. Their post where, 60.
- Ilokos, a province in Manilla, described, *iv.* 189.
- Imam, Al Darcathani, his death, and prodigious memory, *i.* 599.
- Al Hamed, a famous professor, his character, works, and death, *i.* 620. Sumptuous funeral, *ib.*
- Kuli Khan defeated by his two rebellious sons, who are defeated and slain by their brother Isfandiar, with his death, *ii.* 710.
- Imanite Arabs who, *i.* 383 (A).
- Imbis, an impious and cruel nation in Africa, *v.* 660. Described, *vi.* 347 (B). Impiety of their monarchs, *ib.* Dispersed through Africa, *ib.*
- Imborsations what, and introduced into Florence, *xiii.* 413.
- Imhoff, baron de, sent governor to Batavia, *iv.* 474.
- Imola, account of it and its castle, *xiii.* 571 (B). Siege vigorously prosecuted, and a capitulation, with its terms, *ib.* Ratified and the emperor enraged against the Bolognese, *ib.*
- Imolese, demands of the emperor's lieutenant against them, and a war with them, *xiii.* 571 (A). Three expeditions against them, *ib.*
- Impalanca, a strange creature in Congo, and its two horns described, *vi.* 433.
- Imperial general, Charles Bourbon, refuses to consent to the truce with Naples, and, marching to Rome, his troops, with the loss of that general, sack it, *x.* 78.
- Imperialists take Milan and Rome, *viii.* 236. Obligated to raise the siege of Marseilles, *x.* 74. Successful in Lombardy, 78. Seize Mantua, and reduce Naples, 172. Take several places in Ferrara, and the emperor defends his rights in Italy against the pope, *ib.* Edict published by cardinal Grimani, the Imperial viceroy in Naples, what, *ib.* Unsuccessful against Maglia and Treviglio, 300. Take Lodi, 320. Take Tata and Papa, with Raab and Buda, *xi.* 177. By the taking of Glatz, they reduce all Bohemia, 209. Invade the duchy of Mantua, but obliged to quit the siege of its capital, 219. Defeated near Leipzig, which, with other places, falls into the conqueror's hands, 226. Driven out of Saxony by the duke of Saxe-Weymar, 231. Take Fribourg, 261. They, with the Brandenburgers, invade Pomerania, 278. Successful against the Turks, 307. Take Porto Hercole, 358. Are twice beaten by the Swedes, *xii.* 334. Successful
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- against the Swedes, 338—360. But raise the siege of Augsburg, *ib.* Their demands in the Bolognese camp rejected, *xiii.* 370. Their progress in Italy, 506. Gain Sienna, *ib.* Other states follow the example of that city in submitting to the emperor, *ib.* His moderation, and the exorbitancy of his officers and soldiers, *ib.* The Imperial ratification to the convention, 507.
- Impostor, one claims the crown of Denmark, and his execution, *xii.* 82.
- Inca, his great road, its extent and description, *xiv.* 288. His offer to Pizarro, and conditions for turning Christian, 304. Speech to his council, *ib.* Effect on them, and he visits Pizarro, 305. Crowned in the cañona, *ib.*
- Incas, the persecution of them by Toledo, the viceroy of Peru, *xiv.* 357. How perfectly acquainted with the state of their provinces, 379. Their humanity, title hereupon, and the people's grateful return, *ib.* Subject to certain maxims, *ib.*
- Incasten, an inland kingdom in Guinea, *vi.* 676.
- Inchiquin, lord, governor of Jamaica, *xv.* 285. His attempt to dislodge the French from Hispaniola unsuccessful, 286. Dies, 287.
- Inden, a city in Shing-yang, now decayed, *iii.* 460.
- India (see Hindu and Hindus) invaded by Timur Bek, *ii.* 543. Whence so called, *iii.* 1. Described, 24. The hither peninsula described, and its government, 132. The further peninsula described, 220. Its extent, site, and various countries, *ib.* Why so little known to us, 221. Erroneous account of it, and its inhabitants described, *ib.* Various religions and sects, with their origin and pretended deity, 222. Its transformations and names, *ib.* Commerce into it, *v.* 78, and how far carried on by the ancients, 403. And followed by the modern Europeans (see under their proper names), 404.
- Indian converts, number of their churches and schools, *xiv.* 513. Discontent of the unconverted, and a sacher's smart repartee, 514.
- Indians, one hundred thousand massacred by Timur Bek's order, *ii.* 545. Oppose his approach to Dehli, *ib.* Defeated, 546. Pretended to be cast on the German coasts, and whether really such, *iv.* 89. (See Hindus)
- of Uraba, their notion of immortality and a future state, with other particulars, *xiv.* 154. Poison on their arrows what, and its effects, *ib.* Their antidotes what, *ib.*
- American, their weapons, and way of fighting, *xiv.* 180. Severely treated by the Spaniards, 332. Strict laws against such usage, *ib.* Remarkable superstition in Peru on their inca's beholding the sun, 415. Five of their chiefs kindly received in London, and their speech to the queen, 541. Upon which an expedition is undertaken against Canada, *ib.* On Walker's miscarriage the troops return, *ib.* Dreadful mortality among those of Canada, and consequences, 609. Their names who entered into treaty with sir William Johnson, 714. Their precision therein, 715. Instance of their cunning and activity, *xv.* 55. Present from his majesty to the six nations, 140. State of affairs in America relating to them, 143. Why some of them averse to the English, 146. A conference by whose means agreed on, and its business, 147. Complaints of the Mohawks, and address of their chief, *ib.* Complaints of other savages, and how the meeting ends to mutual satisfaction, *ib.* Service of this treaty to the English, *ib.*
- Indies, East, passage by sea to whom first owing, *viii.* 450. See Gama. Very rich ships arrive from them in Holland, *xi.* 462. Progress of commerce there, 467. Danish and Brandenburg company to them established, *xii.* 173. See East Indies.
- Indulgences, Christian princes appropriate them to their own use, *x.* 24. Origin, and their prostitution, 68 (Y). Abuses committed by the Dominicans in this matter, *xi.* 137. Which ought to have been granted to the Augustines, *ib.* (Q). The infamous traffic made of them, *ib.* sub fin. not.
- Indus, the famous battle there, *ii.* 317. That river described, *iii.* 2. Its fertility and navigableness, 13.
- Infant, cardinal, his arrival at Milan, in his way to the Low Countries, as successor to Isabella, *viii.* 297. Arrives at Brussels, *xi.* 533.
- Ingar, Inguar, king of Sweden, *xii.* 225. Dispute between him and Snio king of Denmark, with Ingar's conquest of Denmark, and several other nations; but is assassinated, *ib.* The contradictory accounts here in the Swedish historians, *ib.* (A).



- Ingell** chosen to succeed his father Frotho IV. twenty-ninth king of Denmark, xi. 673. Discards his debauched companions, who revolting, are defeated, pardoned, and received into favour, on a reformation, *ib.*
- son of Asmund, is raised to the Swedish throne on Hirot's death, xii. 226. Regimen of wolves hearts given him in his youth by his tutor Suibdager, and the effect, by instances of his subsequent ferocity, *ib.* The Swedes revolt, and defeat him; but an accommodation ensues, *ib.* His insincerity, and setting fire to a house, where several petty tyrants are burned alive, with the cruelty of his daughter Asa, *ib.* On Iwar of Denmark invading Sweden, Ingell sets fire to his palace, and perishes with it, *ib.* He reduced the Swedish laws into one volume, *ibid.*
- Ingleburga**, Canute VI's sister, married to Philip II. of France, and why divorced, xii. 23 (A)
- Ingo** succeeds his father Olaus in Sweden, with his pacific disposition, and, marrying the king of Denmark's daughter, he is slain in the field by the Russians, xii. 227
- a Swedish nobleman, is raised to the throne of Sweden on Stenchil's death, and his great character, xii. 229. Zeal for Christianity occasions his murder, 230
- IV. or the Good, succeeds Philip in Sweden, with his character and that of his queen Raguild, who is in a manner deified, xii. 230. His two daughters married to Eric the Holy of Denmark and Magnus of Sweden, *ib.* He is poisoned by the Ostrogoths, and the reason, *ib.*
- Ingria** (see Petersburg), xiii. 19
- Ing-tsong**, the Chinese name of Shotepala, ii. 405
- the son of Swen-tsong, invaded by the Mungls, ii. 436. Defeated and taken prisoner, ransomed by his empress, and resigns the crown to his brother, *ib.*
- the fifth of the nineteenth dynasty, his quiet reign, iii. 720
- the fifth of the twentieth dynasty, his mild reign in China, and assassinated, iii. 724
- the sixth of the twenty-first dynasty, defeated and taken prisoner by the Tartars, iii. 726. Abdicates, *ib.*
- Inguar** succeeds his father Oltan in Sweden, xii. 225. See **Ingar**
- Ing-wang**, emperor of China, defeated by Lieu-pang, and resigns the throne to him, iii. 699
- Inheritance** how regulated by the Alcoran, i. 177
- Inquisition** jealous and severe on false Jewish converts, v. 574. Five thousand of them massacred in Spain, 578. Severe punishments on apostates, with Jewish fables of those martyrs, 579 (H). When and how first introduced into Spain, viii. 203 (C). Its effect on Christianity, *ib.* not in fin. Introduced into Portugal, and an account of it, 473 (B). Introduced into Castile, and its success, with the authority gained there, x. 40 (C). Appointed at Rome, for preventing the progress of Lutheranism in Italy, 87. An unsuccessful attempt for establishing it at Naples, 89. The cause of a long sedition there, viii. 247. Account of the Inquisition, x. 504. Confederacy in Flanders formed against it, and the king evades their petition against it, xi. 405. The people break out into rebellion, but quieted by Orange and Egmond, *ib.*
- Inrukia**, the twenty-second emperor of Japan, his reign and coin, v. 52
- Insoko**, kingdom in Guinea, vi. 675
- Inspectors of provinces in China** their office, iii. 578. Suppressed, *ib.*
- Inta**, or Assiento, a country in Guinea, described, vi. 675
- Interdicts**, papal, what, and how operating on religion, vii. 700 (E)
- Interim** embarrasses Charles the emperor, viii. 247. A regulation in religion made by the emperor, so called, is received in the diet, with the occasion, xi. 162. As to the administration of justice and private interests, the states refer it to the emperor, *ib.* A formula of religion on the controverted points received in the German diet, *ib.* Openly declared against by the Protestants, 163
- Interregnum** in Portugal from the death of Ferdinand till Juan is declared king, viii. 424. In Germany after the death of Frederick II. xi. 5. Principal laws published during it, *ib.* One of nine months after the death of the emperor Rodolphus I. with the domestic troubles for that time, 12. Upon the emperor Henry VII's death, 29. In Denmark during seven years, xii. 55. Between the king of Poland's election and coronation, with a peculiar ceremony used by the marshal then, and the situation of the queen-dowager and the royal children, 429
- In-ti** invaded by the Lyau-tongers, and murdered by his eunuchs, iii. 717
- Inverness**, New, settlement in Georgia, by whom, xv. 102. Described, 205
- Investiture** prohibited, and the form thereof, ix. 579 (R). Contests between the emperor and pope about them, the former appointing an antipope, x. 403. That affair settled in a general council at Rome, the particulars agreed to, the emperor, &c. absolved, and Honorius II. elected pope without the emperor's participation, 667
- Inundations**, xi. 409. Remarkable one in the Bolognese, xiii. 577. In Parma, 603
- Innocent II.** and Anaclete both chosen popes after Honorius II. ix. 588. Innocent quits Rome, and is excommunicated by Anaclete, who informs the emperor of his election, *ib.* Writes to other princes, particularly the king of France, who acknowledges Innocent, as does also the emperor, in a diet at Wurtzburgh, *ib.* Received at Paris, and in a council at Rheims excommunicates Anaclete, *ib.* Is also acknowledged by the emperor at Liege, upon an accommodation about investitures, *ib.* Crowns the emperor and empress, after which he returns to Italy, *ib.* Taken prisoner by Roger, confers on him the title of king, with the conditions, 590. Death, 591
- III. chosen pope after Celestine III. with an account of him and his writings, ix. 610 (S). Condemns the association of the Tuscans, is consecrated, and receives allegiance from the prefect of Rome for the first time, *ib.* Requires homage from all the Ecclesiastical State, and gives the investiture of Sicily, &c. *ib.* Confirms the election of the emperor Otho by his legates in Germany, *ib.* His excommunication of two German princes in Italy, and its effect to the Roman see, *ib.* On Constantia's death, the pope is left guardian of the king and kingdom of Sicily, *ib.* France put under an interdict, and he sends legates to other princes, and reforms the discipline of the church, and in what respects, 611. Invites the Greek emperor, &c. to take the cross, with other ecclesiastical proceedings, and exerts himself in suppressing the Albigenses, Waldenses, &c. *ib.* Espouses Otho's party against Philip of Suabia, 612. Remarkable words in a letter to Otho, x. 693. Excommunicates Philip and his adherents, *ib.* Answer to the French king's letter, *ib.* Why he writes to king John of England, and his army in Sicily intirely defeats Marcoaldus, ix. 612. Offers to absolve the German nobles from all obligations to Philip of Suabia, and other ecclesiastical proceedings, *ib.* His great ardor for the relief of the Christians in the Holy Land, and why he excommunicates the chancellor of Sicily, *ib.* Who joins the German faction, but is soon after reconciled to the church, with an embassy from Armenia, and two legates sent to that country, as also a legate into Bulgaria, and another with presents to the king of Scotland, 613. Legates sent to France and England, with their proceedings, *ib.* Proceedings of that pope in various cases, *ib.* Sends a crown and sceptre to the prince of Bulgaria, &c. 614. He crowns Peter king of Arragon at Rome, who declares his kingdom tributary to the holy see, *ib.* Among other proceedings the pope excommunicates the archbishop of Cologne for crowning Philip emperor, 615. He obliges the Sicilians and Apulians to take the oath of allegiance, *ib.* Lays England under an interdict, and excommunicates Raymond count of Thoulouse for the murder of Peter de Novo Castro, 616. Embassy from Milan to the pope, and a legate sent to Otho, who, making concessions to the see of Rome, is crowned at Milan by the archbishop, and at Rome by the pope, *ib.* He reproves several princes, and confirms Frederick's election, while Otho returns to Germany, 618. Again excommunicates John of England, with other ecclesiastical proceedings of that pope, *ib.* Writes to the sultan of Damascus, 619. After Otho's defeat at Bovines, the legate crowns Frederic again at Aix-la-Chapelle, 620. Holds the famous Lateran council of one thousand two hundred and fifteen prelates besides ambassadors, with the decrees, *ib.* The English barons and Lewis of France, &c. excommunicated in it; also St. Dominic and St. Francis present, with an account of their orders, *ib.* (B, C). Why he excommunicates the inhabitants of Milan, 621. His death, *ib.*
- IV. succeeds pope Celestine IV. ix. 632. Negotiations for a peace between him and the emperor not succeeding, the former goes for Lyons, *ib.* Among other proceedings that pope grants the cardinals a red hat, *ib.* Inflexible with regard to the emperor Frederick II. and orders



orders a crusade against him, 634. The pope's exhortation to the princes of Germany, *ib.* Writes to the sultan of Babylon and kings of Mauritania in favour of the Christians, *ib.* Rejects St. Lewis's mediation, and procures William count of Holland to be chosen emperor, with legates sent into several parts, *ib.* Exerts himself in favour of the count of Holland, with his proceedings in Lyons, and return to Italy, 635. His offers of the kingdom of Naples rejected, with ecclesiastical proceedings, and severity against heretics in Lombardy, 636. The Romans inviting that pope to their city, he returns, *ib.* Makes a progress and consecrates two new churches in Bologna, *xiii.* 531. Dies at Naples, *ix.* 637

Innocent V. elected pope in the room of Gregory X. but dies six months after, *ix.* 645

—— VI. chosen pope after Clement VI. with an account of him and his promotion, *ix.* 679 (K). Salutory negotiations with regard to the church, and his court, *ib.* Sends a legate into Italy, now a scene of confusion, *ib.* Receives an embassy from the king of Russia, with the pope's answer, 680. Another from a king of Mauritania, *ib.* His intercession for a peace with France and England ineffectual, 681. Proceedings of his legate in Spain, 682. Fortifies Avignon against robbers, like those in Italy, *ib.* The legate Ægidius quits the command of the Papal army in Italy, and his successor Androinus forced to raise the siege of Forli twice, *ib.* Difference between him and the king of England, *ib.* His nuncio refused the tythes in Germany, and the emperor orders a reformation of the clergy, *ib.* Innocent's bull for ecclesiastical liberty, 683. The legate concludes a peace between France and England, with the ransom for the monarch of the former, *ib.* Dies, with his solicitation to Petrarch, 684 (L)

—— VII. elected pope, when disputes happen in Rome between the Guelphs and Gibellines, *ix.* 701. Harassed by the Romans, retires to Sutri, and next to Viterbo, *ib.* The pope returns to Rome, and dies, 702

—— VIII. elected pope in the room of Sixtus IV. with an account of him, *x.* 43. Absolves the Venetians from the excommunication, with his endeavours to quiet the disturbances in Rome, yet he engages in a war with the king of Naples, who agrees to a peace, which he violates, 44. Consents to Maximilian being chosen king of the Romans, *ib.* A tythe on the German clergy refused, and the pope remits it, *ib.* Concludes a peace between the Venetians and duke of Austria, and condemns a book of Picus Mirandola, with an account of him, *ib.* (G). The pope creates new cardinals, among whom is Medici's son, a boy of fourteen, *ib.* His proceedings against the Flemings of Bruges not regarded, and a legate sent into Scotland, upon whose arrival the king is defeated at Stirling, *ib.* Tythe in France continued, and the accusation of that pope by the university of Paris, with a bull for the society of Misericordia at Rome, 45. Excommunicates and deposes Ferdinand of Naples, giving that kingdom to the king of France, *ib.* Grants Ferdinand of Spain an annual subsidy against the Moors, and is reconciled to the king of Naples, 46. His death, character, &c. *ib.*

—— IX. succeeds pope Gregory XIV. with an account of him, and his death, *x.* 124

—— X. chosen pope in the room of Urban VIII. with an account of him, *x.* 145 (C). His great vanity, by accepting an impious panegyric, with the war against the duke of Parma renewed, and Castro taken from him, *ib.* Ungratefully resolves to ruin the Barberini, and their proposals of an alliance rejected, but are supported by France, *ib.* Appoints a congregation to examine the Barberinis past conduct, with the general odium which this severe persecution draws on him, and he banishes his nephew Camillo from Rome, 146. Sentence being passed, without form of law, against the Barberini, they escape into France, and are protected by Mazarine, *ib.* The French that invade Italy taking several places in Tuscany, this prevails on the pope to pardon the Barberini, and be reconciled to Mazarine, *ib.* Refuses to acknowledge the king of Portugal, and that prince's behaviour in return, 147. Confirms the bull of Urban against the Jansenists, and their appeal to the see of Rome for a review, *ib.* On a rebellion in Naples and Sicily he offers the investiture to the duke of Guise, but deserts him, 148. Condemns the treaties of Onabrug and Munster, which are defended by Protestant writers, *ib.* Adopts a nephew, whom he creates cardinal patron with a considerable revenue, *ib.* Begins to repent, and his saying to him, but disgraced through Olympia, *ib.* Interests himself in the release of cardinal Retz, 149.

Publishes a bull against Jansenius, though solicited in his favour, declaring that he did not condemn St. Augustine and St. Thomas, *ib.* Makes a promotion of cardinals, and the Barberinis offer to maintain an army in conquering Naples rejected, 150. Resigns himself wholly into the hands of Olympia, and dies, with an account and character of him; also great caballing in the conclave, *ib.*

Innocent XI. succeeds pope Clement X. with an account of him, *x.* 160. A friend to the Jews, *v.* 600. Proposes a general reformation, and makes choice of cardinal Cibo for his assistant, *x.* 161. Sends a nuncio to Nimeguen, *ib.* Abolishes the franchises of ambassadors in Rome, with a difference between him and the king of France about the *jus patronatus*, *ib.* Furnishes the emperor with subsidies against the Turks, &c. 162. And assists him, by inducing Poland and the Venetians to join in an alliance, *ib.* Approves of the revocation of the edict of Nantz, though not of the cruelties towards the Protestants, *ib.* His sumptuary laws against the immodesty and luxury of women, &c. 163. Offended with the treaty of Augsburgh, *ib.* A rupture between him and France about the franchises of the ambassadors in Rome, *ib.* Renews the dispute about the regalia, 164. Refuses to confirm the election of cardinal Furstemberg to Cologne, and the French writers accuse him of abandoning the Catholic cause, &c. *ib.* Does not warmly countenance king James's designs in England, *ib.* Death and character, *ib.*

—— XII. succeeds pope Alexander VIII. with an account and character of him, *x.* 166. Extraordinary rejoicings at his coronation, and medals, with the inscription, *ib.* (E). He reforms many abuses in government and in Rome, *ib.* Gives public audience to the poor, whom he called his nephews, *ib.* A bull for abolishing Nepotism, *ib.* Suppresses the theatres, and the design of reformation dropped, from its impossibility, 167. Refuses the emperor's pretensions in the Ecclesiastical State; and privately devotes himself to France, *ib.* Endeavours to persuade Spain to abandon the general alliance, and prevails on Savoy to do it, *ib.* Endeavours to put a stop to Quietism, 168. His death and character, *ib.*

Joachim Frederick, elector of Brandenburg, establishes the first council of state, and founds the college of Joachimthal, *xv.* 491. Publishes sumptuary laws, and dies, *ib.*

—— I. surnamed Nestor, elector of Brandenburg, *xv.* 491

—— II. embraces Luther's doctrine; and makes acquisitions, *xv.* 491. Why exasperated at the emperor Charles V. and refuses the Interim, *ib.* Goes to bed to his bride with his armour on, *ib.* Prodigality and death, *ib.*

Joal, the chief port and factory in the island of Goree, *vii.* 80. Their politic reason for poisoning of horses, *ib.* (O)

Joanna declared heiress to the crown of Castile, and betrothed to the duke of Berry, *viii.* 103. Hence arise intestine broils, *ib.* Scheme for marrying her to Henry of Aragon, with the steps taken by the grand master Pacheco to bring it about, 104

—— espoused to the archduke Philip, *viii.* 212. Delivered of Charles V. 216. Delivered of Ferdinand, 217. Delivered of Maria, 218. Delivered of the posthumous Catalina, 220. Proclaimed queen of Castile, *ib.* She and Charles proclaimed in Naples, but the Sicilians revolt against the viceroy, *ib.*

—— of Austria, her marriage with the prince of Portugal, *viii.* 249

—— when three years old succeeds her father Henry the Fat in Navarre, under her mother's tutelage, *viii.* 577. Montague chosen her assistant, *ib.* A strong party against him, and the queen and her daughter fly to France, 578. Three strong factions in Navarre, what, *ib.* Her marriage solemnized, and Navarre thereby becomes united to France, 579. Disputes with Castile compromised, but the war with Arragon continues, with the death of the kings of Navarre and Arragon, 580

—— II. declared queen of Navarre after the death of Charles the Fair, *viii.* 582. And the states appoint regents, with their bill of rights accepted by Philip III. and Joanna, 583. The number of its articles, *ib.* (A). After sending an embassy to Castile, their majesties make a thorough reform in their dominions, 583. War between Castile and Navarre, through the indiscretion of Henry de Solis regent of Navarre, which proving unsuccessful, though assisted by Arragon, a peace is concluded, 584. Her husband Philip's death, of an indisposition caught at the siege of Algezira, *ib.* Much revered in Spain, *ib.* Wise government, and her daughter Blanch married to the king of France, with the queen's



- queen's death, and her issue, 585. Consummate prudence in the alliances she made for her family, *ib.* Is succeeded by her son Charles the Wicked, *ib.*
- Joanna d'Albret succeeds her father Henry II. as queen of Navarre, and Anthony duke of Vendosme as king, in her right, viii. 615. Their death, issue, and character, *ib.* (A)
- Jobert, the sixth great master of Malta, vii. 383. Kills king Baldwin in Syria, *ib.*
- Jochabdes, Simeon, author of the fabulous Zohar, and fabulous miracles concerning him, v. 450 (B)
- Jochanan, the pretended third Jewish patriarch, with the legend concerning him, v. 141
- a rabbi, compiles the Talmud, v. 497.
- a rabbi, invited by pope Alexander VI. teaches the cabala to the duke of Miranda, v. 503 (N)
- Jofali, Al, sent by Mokhtar to Mohammed's rescue, and takes Abdallah prisoner, i. 526
- Jodocus, or Joffe of Moravia, elected emperor, but never acknowledged, xi. 70. At this time there are three emperors and three popes; but Joffe dying in Moravia, Sigismund succeeds, 71
- Joel, Rabbi Ben Sciocu, a famous Jewish preacher, v. 575
- Jogues, father, account of him in an expedition, and cruel treatment from the Iroquois, xiv. 582. His perseverance and escape at last from the Aniers, *ib.* Returns to Canada, and obtains leave from Montmagny to settle among the Agniers, 586. On the war breaking out again between the Upper Iroquois and Hurons, he is seized and maltreated by the former, who, instead of burning him and his companions, chop off their heads, *ib.* This sudden change to what owing, with the fury of the Iroquois, *ibid.*
- Johanna, island in Africa, described, vi. 116
- Johanfon, Thure, his fate from Christian of Denmark, and the occasion, xii. 282
- John, son of Christian I. succeeds him as king of Denmark, xii. 120. His elevation confirmed by the states of Denmark and Norway, *ib.* Differences between the king and his brother Frederick regulated in an assembly at Kiel, by the concession of Holstein and Sleswick, *ib.* Pardons the children of a nobleman whom his father had persecuted, *ib.* His coronation why deferred, and a general tax imposed for redeeming the crown-lands, and this also laid on Holstein, *ib.* (A). His paying off the crown debts, and attention to public affairs, induces the senate to proceed to his coronation, *ib.* Dissuaded by the queen-mother from a war with Sweden, her reasons for it, and her character, 121. He enters upon negotiations with the regent of Sweden, and the arts used by the latter, *ib.* Seized with a kind of frenzy, which goes off, with his demand of a categorical answer from Sweden, 122. Congress of deputies from the three kingdoms meets, but frustrated by the regent, and John prepares to invade Sweden; but, after losing part of his fleet, he returns, *ib.* Excites the Russians against Sweden; and the regent leading an army against them, is deposed in his absence, *ib.* Enters Sweden with an army; his successes, and defeating the Dalecarlians before Stockholm, 123. That city capitulates, and John is crowned king of Sweden, *ib.* A noble saying of his to a German officer, *ib.* Marches against the Dithmarsians, *ib.* The intimation, from superiority, which possesses the whole army, *ib.* Totally defeated by the Dithmarsians, 124. Their cruelty, 125. The loss of the Danes, and a peace concluded, *ib.* & xi. 122. His negotiations with Lubeck, and the regency's answer, xii. 126. Quarrels with the Hanse Towns, his answer to their deputies, and the Lubeckers reject equitable proposals of peace, *ib.* Yet they lay up their fleet, and why they disband their army, *ib.* Foiled in his endeavours of reducing Sweden, and a peace with Lubeck, 128. A decree of the deputies from Denmark and Norway against Sante Sture and other Swedes certified by the Aulic council, *ib.* Blocks up the Trade and the Lubeckers commerce, 130. Permits privateers to cruize against Lubeck and Sweden, and peace again concluded with the latter, 131. Sante Sture the administrator joins the Lubeckers, and declares war, *ib.* His expedition into West Gothland frustrated, 132. Effectually distresses the city of Lubeck, with an engagement between the Danish and Lubeck fleets, also a squadron of privateers saved from the Danes, with the ravages of the latter, *ib.* His exclamation to the sea on escaping a storm, and his piety afterwards, 134. His exclamation to the sea on escaping a storm, and his piety afterwards, 134. His excellent advice to his son on his death-bed, death and character, 135
- John, hereditary prince of Denmark, his marriage with Elizabeth of Hanover, xii. 185
- duke of Denmark, his arrival in Paris to marry the czar's daughter, where he die, xiii. 193
- king invades Sweden, with his army, xiii. 261. Who several times defeating the Swedes, he is proclaimed king, *ib.* His policy and popularity to treat that his son Christian I. should be crowned, 191. His queen Christina crowned, with an account of his admiration and character, *ib.* Becomes a proselyte to the Swedes, who at length exclaim openly, and the remonstrances presented in Sweden, 261. A remonstrance of grievance presented to the king, *ib.* A treaty concluded with him, and the senate refusing to ratify it, the war is renewed, 263
- of Sweden is sent to London in suit of queen Elizabeth for his brother Eric, xii. 287. On whose return Eric preparing for a voyage for England, is prevented by the king's death, 288. He and his family made prisoner, and he is condemned to perpetual banishment, and is in imminent danger of his life from Eric, 290. Is set at liberty, 296. Ascends the Swedish throne in the room of his deposed brother Eric XIV. 298. The first acts of his government, *ib.* Gratifies duke Charles, and orders his own coronation with that of the queen, 299. Solicits Elizabeth of England against the czar, but she favours Eric, *ib.* Account of a plot against the king, *ib.* Endeavours to effect a change in religion favourable to popery, 300. Articles to that purpose drawn up by the archbishop, which the clergy approve, *ib.* Quarrel in his army between the Germans and Scots determines the czar to continue the war, *ib.* Opens an assembly of the Swedish clergy with a pathetic speech, 301. His propositions gain a ready assent, and the kingdom is in the utmost confusion with theological dispute, *ib.* A remonstrance made to the king by the Swedish states, and a nuncio from the pope, *ib.* Persuaded to join with Sigismund in signing some articles proposed by the senate, *ib.* The queen's death, *ib.* He resolves to put an end to the civil divisions occasioned by religion, 302. Quarrel between him and duke Charles renewed, *ib.* The king and prince Sigismund protest against alienating any of the Swedish dominions, 303. A weak and arbitrary manifesto about the new liturgy, *ib.* The clergy of the duchy remonstrate, and the king's indignation increased at their refusal to subscribe, 304. Has an interview with Sigismund at Revel, *ib.* On his return accuses Bielke and other senators of high treason after which he is reconciled to duke Charles, 305. His death and character, *ib.* His death concealed, and the Swedish treasury pillaged, *ib.*
- II. king of Portugal. his harsh reception of the banished Jews, v. 577 (E). Ungrateful return for their good services, and horrid cruelty and treachery to them, *ib.*
- III. of Portugal sends succours into Abyssinia, vi. 259
- duke of Braganza makes his entry into Lisbon, viii. 504. Crowned king of Portugal by the name of John IV. *ib.* His title recognized by the states, and also his son Theodosius as prince, with the revenue allotted for the public service, 505. Conspiracy against him, *ib.* Queen's answer to the archbishop of Lisbon's request, with a providential supply of money, also foreign alliances concluded, 506. Good effect of releasing the vice-queen, *ib.* Singular instance of royal goodness, with a suitable return, 507. The king's favour towards conde Castelmelhor, *ib.* The first battle with the Spaniards won by Albuquerque, who is made count d'Alegrette, *ib.* The Spaniards expedition ineffectual, and the king rejects the pope's proposal of nominating bishops, 508. The old intrigues of the Spaniards ineffectual, but a real plot against the king discovered, *ib.* Dexterity of the king's minister in Holland, 510. The king declines an offensive war, and protects the princes Rupert and Maurice against Blake, *ib.* Differs with his son Theodosius, *ib.* A general dissatisfaction with the king's measures, though prudent, *ib.* Prince's death, and that of his daughter Joanna, *ib.* Suspicion of new plots by the Spaniards in Portugal, 511. His ambassador's brother in England executed by Cromwell, *ib.* Orders for suspending hostilities why recalled, *ib.* Wife and just concessions to the Dutch, iv. 439 (C). Noble and Christian end of that king, viii. 512. His character and issue, *ib.* (E). The queen-dowager made regent for her son Alfonso. 513. Wife precautions taken by her at the beginning of her regency, *ib.* The war carried on, and the defence of one of her generals, 514



John V. of Portugal, viii. 545. Military affairs as un-  
toward as ever, and a suspension of arms for Portugal signed,  
ib. A Brazil fleet arrives, and prince Pedro born, but  
dies, ib. A treaty with France signed, and its conditions,  
546. Things still open with regard to Spain, ib. Arrival  
of the Brazil fleet; but the cargo stopped for the losses at  
Rio Janeiro, with the great perplexity of the court, and  
prince Joseph born, ib. Peace with Spain further off  
than ever, and their claims, ib. Death of queen Anne,  
and a declaration in favour of Portugal, with the arrival of  
a Brazil fleet, and what followed, 547. Peace secretly  
concluded with Spain, and the manner, ib. The substance  
of the treaty, ib. Difference between him and the pope,  
with the occasion, xv. 595. Emanuel, the king's brother,  
withdraws to Holland, and academies of arts and sciences  
established, 596. The king's attention to commerce, ib.  
Two English merchants condemned to die for transporting  
gold coin, ib. Dreadful earthquake in Algarve, and a  
company erected for negroes, ib. Don Miguel, the king's  
brother, drowned, and a dreadful storm, ib. Intermar-  
riage between Spain and Portugal, ib. Breach with the  
see of Rome compromised, ib. Exchange of the two royal  
brides, and the awkward manner, 597. Death and cha-  
racter, ib.

— Albert son of Casimir III. succeeds him in the Polish  
throne, after warm contests, xii. 182. An embassy from  
Venice, and its view, and Albert is defeated in Walachia,  
183. Forced to make peace, ib. Makes an advantageous  
peace with Basilowitz, whose daughter Alexander duke of  
Lithuania obtains in marriage; yet Basilowitz, now czar,  
quarrels with his son-in-law, and the Russians defeat the  
Lithuanians, 184.

— son of the emperor Henry VII. enters Bohemia with  
an army, and soon takes Prague, where he and Elizabeth  
are crowned, xi. 25.

— king of England excommunicated, ix. 617. Declaring  
his kingdom tributary to the holy see, becomes odious  
to his nobles, and is absolved, 619. A bull, annulling  
the agreement between that king and his nobles, is refused  
to be executed, ib.

— d'Albret and his queen succeeding to Navarre apply  
to Ferdinand of Castile, who promises assistance, and takes  
their kingdom under his protection, viii. 611. Proclaimed  
and crowned king and queen, ib. Differences between  
them and Ferdinand of Castile, and for what, ib. Inter-  
view with Ferdinand and count de Lerin, with old claims  
unseasonably renewed by the king on Ferdinand, 612.  
Measures taken thereupon, and the event; but is soon dis-  
possessed by Ferdinand, who refuses to treat with the king of  
Navarre, 613. An unsuccessful attempt made by king John  
to recover his dominions, ib. Navarre annexed to Castile  
by the states of the latter kingdom, and Ferdinand's claims  
what, with the death of the king and queen, after making  
another unfortunate attempt, 614. Their issue, ib.

— succeeds his father Philip of Valois, king of France,  
with his character, ix. 98. The promising beginning of  
his reign sullied by the constable de Brienne's death with-  
out a trial, which intimidates the nobility, as does the  
disposal of his estates, ib. Institutes the order of the Star,  
in imitation of that of the Garter, ib. The truce not  
strictly kept, by a sea-port and fortress being taken recipro-  
cally, but is renewed, 99. Defeated at Maupertuis, and  
taken prisoner with his fourth son by the Black Prince,  
and sent to England, 101. Unhappy condition of France  
from intestine troubles in the king's absence, ib. His usage  
in England, 102. Seeming to be abandoned by his sub-  
jects, he concludes a treaty with Edward, which is reject-  
ed by the states of France, 103. Recovers his liberty,  
and returns to Paris, amidst the people's acclamations, 104.  
His disagreeable methods for procuring money to pay his  
ransom, ib. Annexes Burgundy to the crown, ib. Be-  
stows it on his son Philip, who is declared the first peer of  
France, and is the founder of the second house of Bur-  
gundy, ib. Makes a tour to Avignon, and, at the pope's  
persuasion, takes the cross, 105. Is gratified with the  
title of generalissimo, ib. Goes to England, and dies in  
the Savoy, 106. Character and issue, and his corpse car-  
ried to France, ib. (C)

— the first Christian king of Angola, set up by the  
Portuguese, and dies of grief at his mock-royalty, vi. 510.

— of Anjou invited by the disaffected to seize on the  
crown of Naples, x. 487. Enters that kingdom, and de-  
feats Ferdinand, ib. How this success is lost, ib. In pos-  
session of Genoa, Fregosa and his followers fall from him,  
xiii. 414. His descent on Naples, and his uncle of  
Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.

Arragon's fruitless application to the Florentines for assisting  
his nephew, ib.

John and Peter proclaimed joint-sovereigns of Russia, xiii.  
1-7. And their sister Sophia associated as co regent, ib.  
She approves all the crimes of the Strelitzes by rewards and  
letters patent, thanking them for their zeal, with her  
power and character, ib. John marries a princess of the  
house of Soltikoff, ib. His retired life, 183. Dies, and  
the expences of his household applied to pay the army, 188.

— III. an infant, acknowledged emperor of Russia after  
the empress Anne, xiii. 266. The emperor's mother  
unanimously named regent, ib. But he is deposed, ib.

— of Austria appointed captain-general of the Spanish  
galleys, viii. 261. Visits the coasts and his large report,  
262. Two requests to his brother not granted, 266. Joins  
the confederate fleet, and his apology in a council of war,  
x. 368. Declines fighting, with the ravages of the Turkish  
fleet, ib. To the proposition for fighting don John agrees,  
369. Preparations of the Turks for engaging, ib. Young  
Barbarossa's speech to that effect answered by Parthi, ib.  
Who yields with regret to fight, 370. A trivial accident  
had like to dissolve the Christian league, and both fleets  
draw up in line of battle, ib. Joins the confederates, but  
perpetually raises new objections against proceeding to  
action, \*373. Colonna's bravery against the Turkish  
fleet, but, being unsupported, is obliged to retreat, ib.  
Disputes about the plan of their operations, with blunders  
committed by both sides, ib. Gains the memorable victory  
of Lepanto. See Lepanto. Siege of Navarrino raised by  
don John, \*374. Reduces Tunis, and forms a project for  
becoming its king, but refused by king Philip, viii. 265.  
The Turks land in Otranto, and expel the Spaniards from  
Tunis, x. 509. His arrival at Naples with a Spanish fleet,  
and fatally persuaded by the viceroys Arcos to use force  
with great cruelty; yet the revolters repulse the Spaniards  
several days, and renounce their allegiance to Spain, 522.  
Offers to the duke of Guise on quitting Naples, rejected,  
523. As the people refuse to have any thing more to do  
with Arcos, don John prevails on him to resign, ib. Don  
John's edict, and a manifesto of the nobles ineffectual, as  
are the designs of the duke of Guise against Anne and the  
Spaniards, ib. Succeeds Requesens as governor of the  
Netherlands, with an accident at an audience of the king,  
viii. 266. Has discretionary powers, but not as to liberty  
of conscience, ib. Confirms the pacification of Ghent, and  
dismisses the Spanish army, xi. 417. Violent measures  
advised by him, his seizing of Namur, and attempting  
Antwerp, 418. Joined by an army under the duke of  
Parma, and declares war, 419. His successes, ib. At-  
tacks the states-general's army, but is obliged to retreat,  
421. He dies, and is succeeded by the duke of Parma,  
ibid.

— king of Bohemia marches to the assistance of the  
Teutonic knights, and a peace between them and the  
Poles, xi. 42. Represses robbers, xv. 456. Made vicar  
of the empire, he quiets discontents, and punishes oppressors,  
ib. Assists the inhabitants of Brescia, repulses an invasion,  
and his son obtains a victory in Lombardy, ib. Deprives  
his son of all command, and marches against his son-in-  
law Otho of Austria, and a peace concluded, 456. Be-  
comes quite blind, and resigns to his son, 457. Obliges  
the Poles to a peace, gets his son chosen emperor, and is  
killed at Cressy, ib.

— William, elector palatine of the Rhine, xv. 473.

— Frederic the Magnanimous, duke of Saxony, pro-  
ceedings against him on occasion of one Grombach, xi. 172.

— Frederick, perpetual imprisonment of that duke of  
Gotha, xi. 173.

— George I. elector of Saxony, xv. 466.—II. ib.—III.  
Signalized himself against the French and Turks, ib.—  
IV. Signalized himself on the Rhine and against the  
Turks, ib.

— the Constant, elector of Saxony, earnest for Lutheranism,  
xv. 466.

— the Divine, ancestor of the Mecklenburgh family, 'his  
history and uncommon character, xv. 515. Account of  
his six sons, ib.

— Albert, duke of Mecklenburgh, associates his brother  
Ulric bishop of Schwerin, xv. 526. Their excellent go-  
vernment marred by ambition, 527. The award given  
between them, and John's unsuccessful war with the Ro-  
stockers, ib. His family and death, with the chastising  
of the Rostockers by Frederick of Denmark, son-in-law to  
Ulric, 528.

— IV. of Mecklenburgh, kills himself, xv. 528.



John the Pacific, duke of Bavaria, xv. 469  
 — the Cicero, elector of Brandenburg, his exploits, xv. 490  
 — Sigismund, elector of Brandenburg, succeeds to Juliers, Berg, Cleves, &c. xv. 492. Pretensions of Saxony, ib. Of the other claimants, and who, ib. Division between the elector and duke of Newburgh, ib. The famous union and league formed, ib. Receives the investiture of Prussia, ib. Put in possession, and dies, ib.  
 — George, elector of Brandenburg, divides Bareith and Anspach between his two sons, and dies, xv. 491  
 — archbishop, succeeds Luchin in Milan, and his character, xiv. 75. Recals his two nephews from exile, and matches them into two powerful families, ib. They acquire Genoa to their uncle, ib. Successes of the archbishop's fleet under Doria, 76. The government of Genoa continued to the nephews by a decree, and the archbishop acquires Bologna, with a confederacy against the Visconti, ibid.  
 — Galeazzo, his great art, xiv. 81. Seizes Barnabo with his two sons, and confines them, then takes Milan and the citadel, giving up Barnabo's friends to be plundered, ib. The tyranny and avarice of Barnabo occasions this quiet revolution, ib.  
 — Maria declared by his father Galeazzo duke of Milan, under a regency, with Malatesta at their head, xiv. 86. Compromise by that duke with Scaliger to govern all his estates and armies under him, 89. Conspiracy against that duke, with those concerned in it, and their views, 90 (C). He is murdered, ib. (D). Billius's good character of that prince, but Jovius silent about it, ib. (E). Proof of the detestation of his person, his body taken care of by a whore, who is rewarded by his successor Philip, 91  
 — Francis succeeds his father Lewis; his character, and created marquis of Mantua, in a magnificent manner, by the emperor, xiv. 113. Gives great fortunes to his sons, and his death, ib.  
 — X. chosen pope, by means of Theodora, an impudent harlot, ix. 536. Regulates ecclesiastical matters, and provides against the Saracens by an alliance, ib. These all cut off, and the victory reckoned miraculous, ib. Imprisoned by Vido marquis of Tuscany, and suffocated, 539  
 — XII. by the intrigues of his mistress, returns to Rome, committing great cruelties there, and deposing Leo, ix. 545. Dies, and the Romans elect Benedict in his place, ibid.  
 — XXI. succeeds Adrian V. with his character, ix. 645. Among other ecclesiastical transactions, he sends nuncios to the cham of Tartary, and is killed at Viterbo by the fall of a house, ib.  
 — XXII. made pope in the room of Clement V. and an account of him, ix. 663 (C). Receives embassies from the competitors to the empire, and resolves to confirm Clement's usurpations there, and his claiming its administration during the interregnum, ib. Sends two legates into Britain, ib. Condemns a sect of Franciscans, with their tenets, 664. Excommunicates Frederick of Sicily, and sends missionaries into Tartary, &c. 665. Orders the emperor to abdicate, with his answer to the monitory, and deposition by the pope, 666. Solicits the payment of Peter's pence in several kingdoms, 667. Condemns Peter-John Olive, a Franciscan, with an account of him and his tenets, ib. (E). Invited to Rome, 668. Deliberates on suppressing the Franciscans, 669. Accused of heresy, 670. Which he explains so as to stop clamours, ib. Institutes the tribunal of Rota Auditores, and adds a third crown to the tiara, 671 (F). Amuses both competitors, while he extends his own power in the empire, with his methods for that purpose, xi. 33. Revoking his errors he dies very rich, ix. 671  
 — XXIII. elected pope at Bologna in the room of Alexander V. ix. 704. Persecutes the Jews, v. 592. A great tyrant to the order of Maltha, vii. 409. His demand of tythes, and revenues of vacant benefices, opposed vigorously by the university of Paris; and his troops under Lewis of Anjou defeat Ladislaus twice, ix. 704. Embassy to the pope from the king of Poland, and a croisade preached against Ladislaus; but an accommodation made, 705. Agrees to a general council, which his legates appoint at Constance, with a conference between the emperor and pope, ib. Opens the council of Constance, 706. His concessions in violation of Huss's safe conduct, ib. (T). A long accusation against him suppressed, who solemnly promises to abdicate, with his unsatisfactory answers to the emperor, ib. Escapes from Constance in the disguise of a groom,

707. His letter and mandate to the council, with his protest, ib. Excuses his flight, 708. Ambassadors have a conference with him at Eriburg, with his promises, and the conditions, ib. Summoned to appear at Constance, ib. Seized, and sends a proxy; but he is rejected, and the pope suspended for several crimes, with his submission and deposition, 709. vii. 409. xi. 374, 375. His hard fate described, vii. 409 (L). His submission and preferment by Martin, with his death, and honourable interment by Cosmo de Medicis, ix. 714  
 John, St. disputes with that English envoy, and the result of his negotiation ineffectual, xi. 559  
 — St. island, several unsuccessful attempts of the English on it, xiv. 495  
 — St. river, an arm of that of St. Laurence, xiv. 559  
 — St. Lake, the source of the Saguenay and other rivers, described, xiv. 599  
 — St. fort, taken by the French, whose accounts are exaggerated, xiv. 665. Though it capitulates, is miserably pillaged and burned by the captors, 666  
 — St. in Newfoundland surprized, and the forts dismantled by the French, xiv. 686  
 — St. in Jamaica, described, xv. 335  
 — knights of, have Tripoli, Malta, and Gofa given them by the emperor Charles V. viii. 237  
 — the Grammarian, gains Amru's favour at Alexandria, i. 239. Proves the cause of destroying its library, ib.  
 — a Syrian, defeats the revolted Severus, and his success against Stephen, i. 383. Highly promoted by the khalif, 384  
 Johnston, Sir William, occupies a strong camp in his way to Ticonderago, and a party he sends out under Williams routed, and that officer afterwards killed, xiv. 407. Takes the general at Crown-point, xv. 621. Defeats the French under Dietkau, xiv. 407. Apology for not pursuing his victory, ib. (R). Rewarded by the parliament of Great Britain, 708. Makes a treaty at Ealton between the English and Indians, 714. Defeats the French at Niagara, 716, which he takes, xv. 625. His character as an officer and a man, xiv. 716  
 — Sir Nathaniel, governor of Carolina, xv. 89  
 — Robert, governor of Carolina, and the assistance given the province from England, with the effects, xv. 92. His arrival in Carolina, and part of his speech to the assembly, ib. Other particulars recommended, 93. Treaty with the Cherokees, ib. Interview with Mingobe Mingo and other Indians, ib. That chief's speech, ib. Proclamation about Parrysburgh, and that governor's death, 94  
 — governor of Nevis, account of him, xv. 250  
 Jokkrom-Meway, a Siamese lord, murdered for his treachery, iii. 360. His death revenged by his slaves, ib.  
 Jol takes the island of St. Thomas, vi. 124. Bravery against the Plate fleet, and how lost, xi. 540. He and Henderson successful on the coast of Africa, 543. The former's death, ib.  
 Jon, son of Abulfatah confirmed patriarch of the Copts, i. 709  
 — khan, the Patan, betrays Dara to Aurengzib, iii. 104. Cursed for his inhumanity to him, 105  
 — king of Congo baptized, vi. 474. Success against his rebellious subjects, ib. Laws against idolatry, and death, ibid.  
 — II. defeats the apostate Mona Zingha, defeated and killed by him, vi. 534  
 Jonael raises a revolt against the emperor Suseus, vi. 290. Murdered by the Gallas, 291  
 Jonah, Rabbi, compiles a set of prayers for the king of Arragon, v. 557 (Y)  
 — rabbi Judah, a famous professor at Sapheta, turns Christian, v. 584 (P)  
 Jonas, a Damascen, turns apostate to regain his wife, i. 184. She stabs herself rather than return to him, 185  
 Joncaire, father, his reception among the Tsonnonthouans, xiv. 670. His success in reclaiming prisoners from these savages, 674. His success with the Iroquois in disconcerting the English, 684  
 Jones, governor of the Bahamas, his character, xv. 270 (Y). How arrested and thrown into prison, but recovers his liberty, 271  
 Jonquiere, governor of Canada, claims great part of Acadia, xiv. 699. His menace against the English inland traders, some of whom he seizes, and confiscates their effects, 700  
 Jonsalam, an island in Siam, described, iii. 320. Its port and trade, 321



- Joppa, Jafa, or Joep, submits to the khalifs, i. 227. Its present state, 228
- Jor, Joar, or Johor, kingdom and island, iii. 322. Inhabitants unfriendly to the Europeans, ib. Ancient city described, 324. Old inhabitants, capital, and present inhabitants, and vile character of the king, ib. Slain for his bestial cruelty, and the subjects revolt against his successor, ib. Drive him out of Johor into some other islands, ib.
- Jordani, a strong party formed in Lipari under that count, who is betrayed and taken, and his rebellion extinguished, x. 691
- Jordanus succeeds his father Richard prince of Capua, x. 403
- II. succeeds in the principality of Capua, x. 408
- heads a revolt of the Romans against pope Lucius II. who is killed by a stone, x. 663
- Jorhamites dispossessed of the Caaba, i. 4
- Joceline defeats Nuroddin in Syria, i. 710, & ii. 189. Treacherously seized by him, ib. His noble castle of Tel-Besher where situated, i. 711
- Joseph, the guardian of Judah, persecuted by the Jews, v. 495 (O). His account of Hillel's conversion, ib.
- the Blind, his great learning and titles, and the supposed author of the Chaldee paraphrase, v. 505
- president at Corduba, translates the Talmud into Arabic, v. 533. Excommunicated for it, ib.
- prime minister in Spain, and how supplanted, v. 545
- the son of Jahiah, a learned Jewish astronomer and apollate, v. 552 (L). Compiles his astronomical tables, with his apparition and answer to his friend after his death, ib.
- Ben Hali pleads the Jews cause before king Alphonso, v. 556 (X)
- the son of Jehoshua, a learned Jewish convert, v. 578
- Ben Sheveth, another learned convert, his writings, v. 578 (G)
- Ben Levi, his learned works, v. 591 (K)
- Wells in Egypt described, vi. 16
- St. the French settlement on the Senegal, vii. 85
- king of Fez and Morocco, his project for subduing as much of Spain as possible, vii. 659. Defeats the Christians under don Alonso's generals, ib. Acts on the defensive against Alonso himself, and resolves to return for Africa, 660. Sends reinforcements into Spain under Almohait Hiaya, ib. This general retires upon Alonso's approach, ib. Joseph conquers Murcia, ib. Returns soon after to Africa, and his lieutenant Aben Jacob takes Torres Novas in Portugal, ib. The Moors under him defeated by Ferdinand of Leon, ib.
- archduke, crowned king of Hungary, xi. 307. Elected king of the Romans, 310. Succeeds his father Leopold as emperor, xv. 476. With an account of him and the state of affairs, xi. 330. His offers to the Hungarian malecontents, and the result of their deliberations solemnly sworn to, ib. Conferences for accommodation broken off, ib. Quarrel between him and the pope, with the spirited conduct of the former, 333. Treaty between him and France, with regard to Italy, detrimental to the Allies, 336. Valencia and Alexandria ceded by him to Savoy, ib. Oppresses some of the Italian states, 341. Gives the investiture of Montferrat to the duke of Savoy, ib. Death, issue, and character, ix. 498. xi. 347 (A)
- king of Portugal, his unjustifiable severities against the English merchants, xv. 597. Gets the auto da fe abolished, and also immense endowments by his father to the parochial church of Lisbon, ib. Interchange of territory in the Brazils between Portugal and Spain, with checking the Barbary corsairs, ib. The vast sum remitted to Rome in the late reign, and a new East India company erected, with the profits of the English trade, 598. Permits exportation of gold, and re-unites the royal fiefs, ib. Indignities heaped on the English merchants, ib. Full account of the conspiracy against him, 600. The first intimation, and afterwards cleared up, ib. The persons concerned, and their names, ib. Their description, 601. Accusation against the duke of Aveiro and the marquis of Tavora, ib. Against count Atouguia and his countess, ib. Also against other conspirators, 602. Manner of the assassination intended, 603. Jesuits accused, also Aveiro and lady Eleanora Tavora, ib. Sentence of the criminals, and execution, 604. This conspiracy fomented by the Jesuits, and its consequences, 605. Complaints on the infraction of neutrality by Boscawen satisfied, and the king's brother married to his daughter, ib.
- Joseph, father, a Protestant, his ravages, xi. 295
- the Tuscan commotions by him in Bologna, xiii. 574. Made prefect of the people, 575
- Bay, St. where, a fort begun there by the French, and why abandoned, xv. 24
- Josephus Ben Gorion, author of a sham History of the Jews, and assumed high titles confuted, v. 535 (K)
- Jo-sey, the fifty-seventh emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Jogo II. the hundred and eighth emperor of Japan, iv. 61
- Joshua, the Hebrew chief, proved to be cotemporary with Yau, the eighth Chinese monarch, iii. 673, 674
- Jostir created isogun in Japan, iv. 60
- Joshida Tsubu, his rebellion and destruction, iv. 61
- Jostin's success against Mawdud, i. 690
- Joual, a French settlement on the Senegal, vii. 85. Its prodigious commerce, &c. ib.
- Journée des Farines attempt, what, ix. 299
- des Duppes, what, ix. 383
- Jours Grands by whom appointed, and what, ix. 220
- Joutel's voyage, xv. 4 (U). His adventures among the Ceniz, 9. He and his party set out for the Illinois, and progress, 10. Travels and adventures, 11. His party's progress in discovering the Mississippi, ib. Arrive at Montreal, and afterwards in France, 12.
- Joweira, a captive princels, bought and married by Mohammed, i. 65. His tenth wife, 116
- Joweirah Ebn Sahl sent governor into Egypt, i. 377
- Joygherats submit to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 281
- Joyushi, general of Bahao'ddawla, his feats and death, i. 614
- Joo-mei, the thirty-second emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 53
- Ipokrates Malek, brought in chains to Timur Bek, presents him with David's coat of mail, and is dismissed, ii. 517
- Iguor, a Formosan taylor, raises a revolt against the Chinese Tartars, decoyed to and imprisoned at Pekin, iv. 444
- Irak, its boundaries, i. 135. Made tributary to the khalifs, ib. Subdued by Abd'almalek, 331. Invaded by the Mongls, ii. 310
- Persian, reduced by Soltan Mahmud, i. 632
- taken by Omar Mirza, but retaken by Abubekr, ii. 587. Subdued by Kara Yusef, ib.
- Iran dynasty under the Seljuks, its duration, ii. 156. Likewise under the Mongls, 470
- Shah, the fourth sultan of Kerman, ii. 196
- subdued by Hulagu, ii. 469. Governed by his descendants, 477. Divided into small dynasties after Abusaid's death, 491. Invaded afresh by Timur Bek, 515. In confusion at Timur's return from India, 550
- Ireland, church of, restored to the Roman communion by St. Malachi, a monk, ix. 587. By whom divided into four provinces, 593. Bull for its conquest, 597 (N). Clergy their reformation by whom, 604. Bull for a king there, 606. Has the title of kingdom, x. 95. Over-run by Fridleff king of Denmark, xi. 671. By whom subdued, 686
- Irene the empress invaded by khalif Mohdi, i. 410. Buys a peace by a tribute, ib. Her female fears the cause of the oversight, 411. Her dominions ravaged by Al Rashid, 423. Closely besieged in Didymotikum, but delivered by the noble sultan Amir, v. 157
- Irka, one of Temujin's commanders, ii. 276
- Irkutsk, province in Siberia, its government, and division into seven circles, xiii. 49
- Iron castle by whom built, ii. 208. Capital described, ib.
- wood in Siam, its use, &c. iii. 314
- in China, iii. 596, 613
- Iroquois, account of a chief made captive by the Hurons, his cruel treatment by them, xiv. 578. Afterwards caressed, with his inflexible resolution, 579. At last barbarously executed, ib. Hence the character of the savages deduced, and the imminent perils of the fathers, 580. Five cantons overawed by the French, ib. Their dissimulation to two French deputies, ib. They fall on some Algonquin and Huron canoes, ib. Their dreadful irruptions into French Canada still continue, 581. Still carry on a cruel war, 582. Their devastations to the gates of Quebec, ib. Their deputy's speech to Montmagny, his agitations, and resuming his speech more composedly, 584. Expressive action, ib. Delivers several belts, and emblematical of something expressed by gesticulation, 585. Montmagny's return of presents, and the custom of those savages on such occasions, what, ib. The treaty between the Hurons, Algonquins, Agniers, and Iroquois ratified, ib. Fall on St. Ignatius and St. Louis villages, where they massacre the Hurons,



588. How repulsed from the latter; but, on a third attack, they butcher or take all the Hurons there, 589. Those of St. Mary, after several skirmishes, are defeated by the Iroquois, none escaping, *ib.* The scene of this butchery where, *ib.* The misery of the Hurons hereupon, and after removing to the little isle of St. Joseph from a famine, and to what owing, *ib.* Their further ravages, and murdering all they met with at St. John's, also their missionary Garnier, *ib.* On their successes against the Hurons, insult the French governor of Canada, 590. They fall indiscriminately on the most distant Christian savages, and why they do not attack the Abenaguais, 591. Among other prisoners from Quebec they take father Poncet, who has a finger cut off, with other mal-treatment, *ib.* His companion being burned alive, the father is put into a matron's hand, who gives him his life, *ib.* Why caressed by them, and he sets out for Quebec, where, after a false alarm on the road, he arrives, *ib.* State of their cantons, 592. Carry off from the isle of Orleans fifty Christian Hurons, who are barbarously put to death, 593. Which insult M. Lauson is obliged to put up with, *ib.* Matters of the open country, which they ravage from Montreal to Quebec, and the effect on the colony, 598. Their further designs how disconcerted, *ib.* They butcher the French and Indians every where, with natural calamities in the colony, and fantastic notions cherished thereon, *ib.* Submit to Courcelles, 606. Their Christian settlement in Magdalen's Meadow removed to the fall of St. Lewis, *xiv.* 610, 613. Irruption on the river Illinois by whom incited, 615, 616. Their practices in Canada through the English, and the accidents contributing to it, *ib.* Insolence to La Barre, and repulse from St. Lewis and Cataracouy, 619. Prepare for war, 621. Their security, notwithstanding notice from Dongan, 624. Descent near Montreal, and horrid ravages, 630. Farther designs against the colony, 631. Their ambassador's remarkable speech, 632. Negotiations between them and the Outaouais, *ib.* Louvigny defeats a party of them, 633. Consequence of this defeat in favour of the French, *ib.* Their hostilities continue, *ib.* Their invasion of Canada, and cruel ravages, 641. Their conspiracy against the French how frustrated, 642. Two parties of them obliged to retire from Canada without effect, 645. Their perpetual skirmishes, *ib.* Two parties, their attempt on Canada, but retire, 648. Defeat a convoy from Michillimakinac, 649. Why they prefer the friendship of the English to that of the French, 651. Their management with regard to the English and French, 654. Their descent on Canada, and defeat, 655. Renew their incursions on Canada, 660. Their wise conduct, 668. Proceedings of their great assembly, 670. Their definitive resolution favourable to the French, 671. Grand congress of them at Montreal, Callieres's answer to their harangue, and a provisional treaty, *ib.* Remarkable signatures, *ib.* (K). Their intrigues and those of other savages with the English, and the reason, 677. Their drift in adhering to a neutrality, 679 (L). Treaty between them and the English ineffectual, and the reason, 702

Irish, a river in West Tartary, *ii.* 119

—— Artish, or Erchis, a river of the Eluth Mongls, *ii.* 250, 522 (N)

Irwin, lord, governor of Barbadoes, dies on his voyage, *xv.* 191

Ifa Ebn Ali strengthens his nephew Jaafar in the khalifat, *i.* 387

—— Ebn Musa, his attempt on the khalifat, submits, and is pardoned, *i.* 386. His success against Mohammed Ebn Abdallah, 395. Causes him to be beheaded, sent against Ibraim Ebn Abdallah, and defeats and kills him, *ib.* Declared Almanfur's successor, but deprived of it by a stratagem, *ib.*

—— the Christian physician, highly esteemed by Almanfur, but disgraced for his extortions on the Christian bishops, *i.* 402

—— Ebn Musa sets up for the khalifat against Al Mohdi; but is bought off, and resigns it, *i.* 407

—— Al Sidalani, Mohdi's apothecary, the occasion of his rise, *i.* 413

—— Ebn Sheikh, his rebellion and defeat in Syria, *i.* 490

—— Al Nusheri made governor of Egypt, and his cowardice, *i.* 509. His death, 512

—— an infant, raised to the Egyptian khalifat, *i.* 713

—— Malek brings his daughter to Timur's court, *ii.* 570

—— Khan's three sons murdered by Sefi I. *ii.* 621. Saves his own life by abject flattery, but afterwards slain, *ib.*

Isabella island by whom first discovered, *iv.* 200

Isabella of Montferrat, sister of Jayme of Majorca, transfers her pretensions to the duke of Anjou, *viii.* 180. A very pertinent reflexion made here by Ferreras, *ib.*

—— the infant, declines the title of queen, but is declared presumptive heir, *viii.* 101. *not. in fin.* Several cabals about her marriage, *ib.* She espouses Ferdinand king of Sicily and heir of Arragon, *ib.* Articles drawn by the archbishop of Toledo, and signed by this prince, 102 (K)

—— queen of Castile and Leon, draws over many of the malecontents, *viii.* 200. Espoused to Juan of Portugal, 210. Returns a widow from Portugal, 212. Dies on a visit to her parents Ferdinand and Isabella, 215

—— of Portugal, empress to Charles V. delivered of Philip II. *viii.* 236. Of a daughter of the same name, 258

—— king Charles's sister, contrives the ruin of her husband Edward II. *ix.* 86. Peace regulated, with the terms, and hostilities renewed, *ib.* She deposes her husband, and raises her son to the throne of England, *ib.*

—— queen-dowager, dies, with some account of her, *ix.* 150

Isan-Buga, the eleventh khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 465

Israat Ides, an advantageous commerce between China and Russia settled by him, which, after the rupture in 1722, has been revived, *xiii.* 187. See Ides

Isemburg, count, excommunicated for assassinating the archbishop of Cologne his kinsman, *ix.* 615. Frequency of such murders to what owing, *ib.* (H)

Isepalano kingdom where situated, *ii.* 336 (K). King's submission to Oktay, *ib.*

Iserdes, rabbi, an eminent Jewish doctor at Cracow, *v.* 605 (X)

Isetsk, district in Tobolsk, and its chief places described, *xiii.* 44

Isfandiar marches against the rebel Ilbars, *ii.* 737. Defeated and driven out of Karasm, *ib.* Assisted by the Persian shah, but defeated by a religious cheat, 738. Defeats his two rebel brothers, after a fight of twenty two days, and divides Karasm with them, *ib.* Slaughters the Vigurs and Naymans, 739. Defeats Abu'lghazi and his Ulbecks, *ib.* Stratagem against Abu'lghazi, 741. Massacre of the Ulbecks, *ib.* His death, *ib.*

Ish, his vain attempt upon Urjensh, and war with Hajim, *ii.* 730. Is slain by him, *ib.*

Ishak Malek's offer to Andronicus frustrated, *v.* 151. Renews it with success, 152. But is slain by the Catalans, *ib.*

Ishmaelites, when and how fallen from Abraham's religion, *i.* 85. Submit in general to Mahomet, 91. Whence called Assassins in Irak or Persia, *ii.* 470. Their dynasty abolished by Hulagu Khan, *ib.* Twelve thousand of them put to the sword, 471

Ishuren, or Ruddiren, the third Indian god, its various names, person, office, &c. *iii.* 199. Legendary extravagancies of him, 200, 216

Isidore, translation of his body to Leon, *vii.* 646

Iskander, the son of Kara Yusef, defeated by shah Ruykh, *ii.* 700. Besieged by his own false brother, and murdered by his own son, *ib.*

—— the foolish son of Jani Bek, loses several considerable places, *ii.* 710

Isla Blanca discovered by Grijalva, and why so called, *xiv.* 172

Islam, the proper name of Mohammed's religion, *i.* 156

—— Keray, the fifth khan of Crim Tartary, *ii.* 451

—— II. the ninth khan of Crim Tartary, *ii.* 451

—— III. the eighteenth khan of Crim Tartary, *ii.* 451

Islamism, or Mohammed's new religion, its rapid and surprising progress, *i.* 17, 97

Island, Long, (Nassau) in New York, described, *xiv.* 539

—— Green, in the South-Sea, described, *v.* 10. In the river St. Laurence described, *xiv.* 551

—— of sacrifices, why so called and discovered by Grijalva, *xiv.* 172

Isle, la Verde, discovered by Grijalva, and why so called, *xiv.* 172

Ishmael, the son of Abul Kasem, succeeds him in Kairwan, *i.* 547

—— the son of Sabektekin, succeeds him, *i.* 602. De-throned by his brother Mahmud, *ib.*

—— Ebn Habeth, murders the khalif Yahya, *i.* 627

—— the brother of Mahmud, why imprisoned for life by him, *i.* 635







Juan succeeds his father Henry II. to the crown of Castile, viii. 64. Renews the truce with Granada, enters into a treaty, and consents to another marriage with Portugal, *ib.* Having intelligence that Portugal negotiated an alliance with Richard II. of England and John of Gaunt, he resolves to invade that kingdom by sea and land, *ib.* His fleet disturbs Lisbon, and he forces Portugal to conclude a secret and separate peace, *ib.* One of the articles of which was, that the English were to be sent home in a Castile squadron, 65. Concludes a marriage with the infanta Beatrix of Portugal, and acquires a title to that crown, *ib.* The king of Portugal dies, and the different pretenders to that succession, *ib.* Takes the regal title, and endeavours to conquer Portugal, *ib.* Besieges Lisbon, and takes fort Almeyda, but obliged by a plague to decamp, *ib.* He retires into Castile, *ib.* Invades Portugal again, but is beaten by Juan king of Portugal, 67. Concludes a treaty with John of Gaunt, by a marriage of the latter's daughter with the infant, 69. Reception of the duchess of Lancaster by the king, *ib.* His great tenderness for his subjects, *ib.* Institutes the order of the Holy Ghost, *ib.* Applies to the king of Morocco for leave for the Farnese there to depart, 70. Killed by the fall of his horse, and chief occasion of it, 69 (Z). Succeeded by his son Henry, *ib.*

— assumes the government of Castile when hardly thirteen years of age, viii. 77. His person seized on by Henry of Arragon, but he escapes, 78. Truce with Portugal renewed, and the queen delivered of the infanta Catalina, and next year of Eleanora, *ib.* Compelled to banish the constable Alvaro de Luna, 79. But he is brought to court again by those who drove him thence, *ib.* Proclaims the king of Navarre and Henry rebels, 80. A truce concluded with Arragon and Navarre, and turning his arms against the Moors, gains a complete victory over them, 81. Extraordinary treason against him discovered, and the accomplices broken on the wheel, 82. Becomes superior to all his enemies, *ib.* The war with the Moors has various success, *ib.* Causes Pedro Manrique to be arrested, which makes greater troubles, and the whole kingdom is in arms on account of Alvaro de Luna, 83. Falls on his cousin of Navarre, who procures a body of hungry Gascons to ravage Castile, 87. Marries Isabella, daughter of Portugal, intrusting her with the secret of his mortal hatred to Alvaro, *ib.* She, whom the minister had pitched upon for his master, now contrives to supplant him, *ib.* (C). Interview between him and his son, by which the troubles are increased, 88. The king and his son fall into a distaste of their favourites, and are reconciled by means of a papal bull, *ib.* The queen delivered of Isabella, afterwards queen of all Spain, *ib.* A general confederacy formed to ruin the grand-matter Alvaro, 89. The queen delivered of Alonso, and the king keeps eight thousand lances about his person, 91. Threatens Portugal, on account of discoveries that are inconsistent with the pope's grant of the Canaries, *ib.* Dies, and is succeeded by his son Henry IV. with an account of his latter will, *ib.* (F).

— king of Navarre, on the death of Alonso of Arragon and Naples, succeeds him, viii. 93. Secures himself by raising up new families, *ib.* Confederacy of the nobility transmit a memorial to him, *ib.* Strange intrigues carried on, *ib.* His queen delivered of Joanna, whom few believe to be the king's, 94. Soon after acknowledged heiress of the crown, and the queen miscarries of a son, *ib.* Notwithstanding peace with Arragon, he enters into intrigues with the Catalans, and is proclaimed their king, 95. Representations made him in council, who refer the matter to Lewis of France, whose award is disliked by both parties, 96. Refuses to approve of a new convention, and discards the archbishop of Toledo, *ib.* A league formed against him by that prelate and others, *ib.* Ratifies the peace with Arragon, *ib.* In a conference with Villena about the confederacy, he betrays the king, who escapes narrowly from being seized by them, *ib.* They subscribe and swear to a public instrument, which they send to Rome, 97. His agreement with the malecontents, *ib.* In an audience given to the confederates, his brother Alonso is declared his successor, *ib.* Two commissioners for regulating public affairs appointed on each side, with an umpire, 98. Upon finding the king's commissioners corrupted, he refuses to perform articles, *ib.* The confederates depose him, and declare for Alonso, *ib.* And all this solemnly exhibited on a public theatre in a large plain, *ib.* (H). Both sides march their forces, 99. The king agrees to a suspension of arms, *ib.* He listens to a very strange project, with fruitless negotiations for a peace, *ib.*

Goes to a conference with the malecontents, and his speech, 100. Their answer and true design, *ib.* Are communicated by the pope's legate, and the king narrowly escapes with his life to Toledo, *ib.*

Juan of Arragon raised to the crown of Navarre in right of his consort Blanca, viii. 79

— I. succeeds his father Pedro IV. in Arragon, viii. 167. Severe treatment of his mother-in-law Sybilis, 10. Greatly encourages music, dancing, poetry, &c. *ib.* These diversions prohibited by the stat. 168

— of Navarre succeeds his brother Alonso V. of Arragon in his hereditary dominions, and the queen dowager dies, viii. 192. Notwithstanding his son Carlos's submission, his father does not declare him his successor, *ib.* Quarrel between them on that account, 193. The son seized and imprisoned, but released; and the king dies after, *ib.* Some particulars of his life and character, *ib.* Bequeaths Navarre to his sister Blanca, *ib.* His issue by his mistress, *ib.* *ib.*

— king of Navarre marries his eldest daughter Blanch to Henry, prince of Asturias, who proves impotent, viii. 603. Death of queen Blanch, and the administration left to the prince of Viana, with his character, *ib.* Opposes his father's measures, 604. Dispute between the king and his son terminates in a war, and how raised and promoted, *ib.* The prince of Viana taken prisoner in a battle, *ib.* Is released, but never thoroughly reconciled, and the progress of these disputes, 605. His unhappy death, 606. His issue, *ib.* Great disturbances ensue, *ib.* His sister Blanch how treated by her father, 607. Cedes her right to Navarre in favour of Henry of Castile, *ib.* King Juan makes a new treaty, the effects of which are prevented by the countess of Foix poisoning Blanch, upon which new troubles arise in Navarre, *ib.* Death of Gaston de Foix the son at a tournament, *ib.* Expedient of the countess of Foix to her father, what, and accepted by him, *ib.* But all spoiled by the countess's hurry, with the death of her husband, and the violence of her temper increases her misfortunes, *ib.* Death of her father king Juan, with his poverty and character, 608

— I. declared after an interregnum, king of Portugal, viii. 424. Account of him and his character, *ib.* (A). Additional restrictions put upon him when acknowledged, 425. Ratifies all but the last, *ib.* Appoints some great officers, *ib.* Stratagem for encouraging his men to meet the enemy, 426. They totally rout the Castilians in the plains of Aljubarra, and the grand-master of St. James's also defeated, *ib.* He marries Philippa, daughter to John duke of Lancaster, and, after embarking the latter's troops, makes a treaty with Castile, *ib.* Compels the Castilians to a truce, which, upon his death, is prolonged, *ib.* The constable Pereyra differs with the king, but comes into his measures, 427. Irruptions carried on by each crown, *ib.* They agree to a truce, *ib.* The maxims regulating his administration, 428. The death of queen Philippa, to what owing, *ib.* King John's expedition into Barbary, and taking Ceuta, *ib.* Different opinions in his council against and for demolishing that fortress, 429. The king determines to keep it, with his happiness in his family, *ib.* Beneficial discoveries made, with the good will of the clergy towards him, 430. Takes no advantages from the disturbances in Castile, *ib.* Settlement of his family in marriage, with his death, and last advice, *ib.* His conduct, and its advantages, with his character, and an account of him, 431 (B)

— his able administration as regent of Portugal in the king's absence, viii. 445. Proclaimed king, but resigns on Alonzo's arrival, *ib.*

— II. or the Perfect, succeeds his father Alonso V. king of Portugal, viii. 446. The spirit shewn upon his accession, and particular instances of it, 447. Discovery of a conspiracy by the young duke of Visco, who falls by the king's hand, and what passed between them, 448. The other conspirators suffer, *ib.* The king's reception of the duke's brother, and speech thereon, with the wisdom of the king's conduct with regard to Ferdinand of Castile, *ib.* Some instances of his policy in trade, 449 (H). Also in other respects, and its good effects, *ib.* Sends persons into the Eastern countries by land, and finds a passage to the East-Indies by sea, though he refused supplies to Columbus, 450. By what means he prevails on the king and queen of Castile to give the infanta Isabel to the prince of Portugal, but not so successful in Africa, *ib.* Grand celebration of that marriage, and death of Alonso, with the king's immoderate grief how allayed, *ib.* The king's endeavours to



- to bring his natural son George into the succession ineffectual, yet he attends to the public good, 451. Though seized with an incurable disease, he makes regulations for preventing a famine, 452. His kind protection of Columbus, and wife answer to the ambassador of Ferdinand of Castile, *ib.* His last will, and appointing the duke of Beja his successor, with his death and character, *ib.*
- Juan III. of Portugal succeeds his father Emanuel, with his first acts, *viii.* 471. Marries Catherine, the emperor Charles's sister, 473. An ambassador from Ethiopia arrives, *ib.* His great success in the Indies, and good understanding between Castile and Portugal, 475. The king makes several laws for the good of his subjects, and one regulation in his council, 476. Sends Camoens the poet and persons of spirit to the Indies, *ib.* Unfortunate death of the prince, with his character, and birth of his posthumous son Sebastian, *ib.* Lewis dies, with his character, *ib.* After several salutary regulations the king dies, 477. His character, *ib.* (C).
- V. succeeds his father Pedro II. king of Portugal, *viii.* 541. The assurances given upon his accession, *ib.* Marries the archduchess Mary-Anne, with her entertainment on the way to Lisbon, and arrival in an English Squadron, 542. Rich fleet from Brazil, and levies continued, *ib.* Campaign unsuccessful, and a squabble about the franchises of public ministers has fatal consequences, 543. Nothing done this campaign, only by the French at Rio de Janeiro, *ib.* The allies complain of the king's conduct, and he more heavily in his turn, 544.
- Sancho's brother, retires from Portugal to Morocco, where obtaining some troops, he embarks and invets Tarifa, *viii.* 23. Unheard-of barbarity committed by him on the governor's child, to induce his yielding the place, *ib.* This affair otherwise represented, *ib.* (M). On his approach the Moors raise the siege, *ib.* He makes his will appointing the queen tutorefs of his successor Ferdinand, 24. Death and issue, *ib.*
- St. port in Florida, *xv.* 83. Taken by Drake, *ib.*
- Juanilla, St. freight in the Philippines, *iv.* 198
- Juban Noyan, prime regent under young Abusaid, *ii.* 488. Success against the invading Usbecks, and against his rebellious officers, and marries Abusaid's sister, *ibid.* Severity against his revolted son, 489. Sternly with-holds his daughter from the young khan, and is forsaken by his army, *ib.* Beheaded by Malek Kurt, and obtains his three last requests from him, 490. His character, *ib.*
- Jubanian or Chubanian dynasty, their sultans, *ii.* 496
- Jubilee, the first at Rome, with an account of it, *ix.* 654 (S) — 674—677. *x.* 21—52—74—128—136—137—160—168 & 171. Appointed every thirty-three years, *ix.* 696. Indulgences that year sent by legates to Germany and Poland, with their destination, *x.* 22. Bull for it every twenty-five years, 35—*xiii.* 293
- Judah Hakkadosh compiles the Jewish Mishna, and Jewish fables concerning him, *v.* 493 (F). His character and pompous funeral, 494 (K)
- the son of Hillel, though a minor, succeeds him, *v.* 494
- a learned Jew, his character and writings, *v.* 528
- Hallevi, a good poet, *v.* 547
- rabbi Alcharisi, his poems and learned works, *v.* 548
- the Pious, a Jewish miracle-monger, *v.* 549 (C)
- de Toledo, his astronomical works, *v.* 556
- Judaizers, a new sect of Christians, their tenets, *v.* 604
- Judges the first governors of ancient Scandinavia, particularly Sweden, and the prerogatives of these united in one person, *xiii.* 217
- Judgment, a day of general, asserted in the Alcoran, *i.* 161. The beings to be then judged, *ib.* Their final doom, 162
- Juel, operations of the Danish fleet under that admiral, *xii.* 192. Who, with a reinforcement of six Dutch and Danish ships of war, has two engagements with the Swedish fleet, *ib.* After Tromp's junction, obtains a complete victory over them, in which the Swedish admiral is blown up, and the loss of several ships, *ib.* (A). The Swedes equally unsuccessful by land, *ib.* The Danes under him defeat the Swedish fleet off Gottenburg, 197. The Swedish fleet defeated a second time near the isle of Mona by that admiral, *ib.* Tromp comes up after that action and destroys three sixty-gun ships in sight of Christian V. from the shore, *ib.*
- Juhanba, a river in Africa, *vi.* 698
- Juji, the son of Temujin, born, *ii.* 268. Assists in the council of his enemies, 278. Singular present to his father, 322. Commands in chief in Kipjak, 323
- Juji, or Tushi, Jenghiz Khan's son, his march into Turkestan, *ii.* 294. Success against sultan Mohammed, 295. Lays siege to Saganak, 299. Takes Jund by stratagem, 300. And Tonkat, *ib.* Falls out with his brother before Karasim, 306. Marries the khan sultana, 309. His death, and father's excessive grief, 328. His character, 331. A list of his descendants, or khans of the Kipjak, 444
- Juizen Turks, subdue the Southern Huns, *ii.* 134. Are driven out by Tu-mwen II Khan, *ib.*
- Julfa, one of the suburbs of Isfahan, *i.* 441. Ruined and abandoned by the Armenians, 446. Taken by the rebel Mir Mahmud, with its situation, privileges, &c. *ii.* 661
- Julian, count, joins with the Saracens in Spain, *i.* 345. His dreadful end, 349
- the emperor a great favourer of the Jews, chiefly out of spite to the Christians, *v.* 506 (U)
- an impostor, raises a revolt among the Jews; but is defeated and put to death, *v.* 518
- count, his brave defence of Centz, *vii.* 518. How far what is related of him may be credited, 577 (K)
- cardinal, legate in Germany, presides in a council at Basil, *ix.* 717. His legation in Germany confirmed, *x.* 1. At the head of a German army ravages Bohemia, but entirely defeated by Procopius, *ib.* Offers the Bohemians a free conference at Basil, 2. Sent legate into Hungary, 18. Writes very freely to the pope on the necessity of holding the council of Basil, *ib.*
- Juliers surrendered to a body of French under La Chatre, *ix.* 345. Upon taking it by the princes of Orange and Anhalt, it is again delivered to the princes of Brandenburg and Newburg, *xi.* 183. Conference at Cologne, and in a castle near Leipzig, about this affair, ineffectual, *ib.* The disputes about Cleves and it revived, and several steps taken by both sides, 188. The United Provinces take possession of it, *ib.* Succession to Berg and it canvassed in an assembly at Dreiden, yet left undecided, with the origin of this dispute, 274 (D). Taken by prince Maurice, which Albert looks upon as an infraction of the truce, 485. Surrenders to Spinola, 496
- Julius II. pope, absolves the Venetians from excommunication, and then declares against France, *ix.* 197. Makes war on the French allies in person, 198. His fruitless attempts towards a peace, *ib.* Resolves the recovery of the Ecclesiastical State, and caresses Borgia, *x.* 55. Letter to the pope from the sultan of Egypt, 56. Difference between him and the king of France, who are reconciled, and form designs against the Venetians, *ib.* The pope, notwithstanding the French king's intreaty, marches with an army and makes himself master of Perugia and Bologna, *ib.* Endeavours to excite Ferdinand of Naples and the king of France against the Venetians, *ib.* A new rupture between him and the king of France, and on what account, 57. He and the Venetians persuade the emperor that the French king intended to conquer Italy, 58. Enters with other princes into the league of Cambray against the Venetians, *ib.* His new alliance with France, and his grand design, *ib.* Endeavours to excite Henry VIII. of England and the Swiss against France, 59. Reconciled to the Venetians, and concludes a peace, *ib.* Threatens the duke of Ferrara, and gives the investiture of Naples to the king of Arragon, *ib.* Declares war against the king of France, and duke of Ferrara, with his obstinacy against an accommodation, though unsuccessful, *ib.* Takes Concordia and Mirandola, but abandons his enterprize on Ferrara, 60. Sets out for Rome, with the intelligence he receives at Rimini, *ib.* His endeavours to detach the emperor from France ineffectual, *ib.* On the refusal of his offers to Lewis and other cardinals, he publishes a bull for a council at Rome, 61. And negotiates an alliance against France with Ferdinand of Arragon and the Venetians, *ib.* The consequences in Rome from a false report of the pope's death, *ib.* (R). His endeavours to excite Henry of England against France, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with the king of Arragon, and, deposing the cardinals at Pisa, his army invades Ferrara, *ib.* But is obliged to raise the siege of Bologna, and retire before the French, who retake Brescia by storm, *ib.* Resolves to continue the war, and is suspended by the council of Milan, 62. A great turn happening in his favour, he opens the Lateran council, and that of Pisa condemned, *ib.* Rejects the terms of peace he himself proposed to Lewis, *ib.* Agrees to an accommodation with the duke of Ferrara, and procures the Milanese for Maximilian Störza, also Florence for Laurence Medicis, 63. Presents and title bestowed by him on the Swiss, and his alliance with the emperor against Venice, *ib.* Refuses the emperor



- emperor's proposal to be his co-adjutor, *ib.* (T). Forms new designs, but how prevented, *ib.* Proceedings of the pope and his allies in the Ferrarese, with favourable circumstances for them, and his spirited conduct, *xiii.* 463. His distress's, *ib.* The English ambassador interposes, with menaces against the French general Chaumont not far from Bologna, who breaks up his camp, *ib.* The pope retrieving his affairs, he now raises his voice, and his great activity at the siege of Miranda's, which he commands himself, and the place capitulates, through Chaumont's fault, 469. A negotiation between him and the French through the bishop of Murray ineffectual, 469. A treaty between him, Ferdinand the Catholic, and the Venetians, by which the insolence of the first is increased, 471. Proposes to restore the Medici family, but is opposed, *ib.* Rejects the treaty presented him by the French, 475. His want of faith and honour for the Florentines, 476. The papal power raised from a low state to the highest pitch of power under him, *ib.* His intrigues at Florence for the Medici, *ib.* His death and character, *x.* 302. & *xiii.* 480
- Julius III. pope, causes the Talmud to be burned, *v.* 594. Declares war against the duke of Parma, who is assisted by king Henry II. *ix.* 236. An account of him, *x.* 91 (P). At a promotion of twenty cardinals he gives his own hat to a boy of thirteen years old, *ibid.* Publishes two bulls against heretics, and restores the council to Trent, *ib.* His offer of a neutrality accepted by the king of France, and a treaty concluded, to which the emperor is obliged to consent, 92. Sends troops to raise the siege of Sienna, and an embassy from Philip, informing him of his marriage, and offering homage for Naples and Sicily, 94. Restores Parma, but declines interceding for the duke with the emperor, to whom he himself applies at Augsburg, *xiii.* 627. But obtains only a promise of justice; next he applies to the pope, who also soothes him, *ib.* Death, *x.* 94
- Julliac, Robert, the thirtieth grand-master of Malta, reforms abuses, and his brave defence of Smyrna, *vii.* 402. His death, *ib.*
- Jund, where situated, *ii.* 299. Taken by the Mongls, 300
- Jundogdi, the son of Soleyman Shah, *v.* 138 (Q)
- Juneyd Sheykh, the third grandson of the great sophi, *ii.* 600. Makes alliance with Uzun Hassan, with his conquest of Trebizond and Shirwan, and is slain by Ferokzad, 601
- Ju-ning-fu closely besieged by the Mongls, *ii.* 344. Great distress, *ib.* Strange effects of their famine, *ib.* Repulse the Mongls, 345. Surrenders, *ib.*
- Jurjan province where sited, *i.* 379
- Jurjeh Turks submit to Jenghiz Khan, *ii.* 328
- Juries, antient custom in Sweden, in dispute, *xii.* 216
- Jusan, an island in the South-Sea, described, *v.* 12
- Justice, new court of, erected in France, *ix.* 349
- Justin, his conference with the Jew Tryphon, *v.* 496
- Justinian's edicts against the Jews, *v.* 517. Quells their revolt, 518 (Y). Undertakes the expulsion of the Ostrogoths out of Italy, and what the pretence, *viii.* 624. Justice administered in the empire by his digests, *x.* 666
- II. his quarrel with Abdaimalech about the tribute, *i.* 339
- Justiniano, the eleventh doge of Venice, sends a fleet against the Saracens, *x.* 186. His character and death, *ib.*
- Jutiff, vizier, prevails on the sultan to send Charles XII. a letter for returning home, *xii.* 395. His answer, *ib.*
- Jutland, North, account of it, *xi.* 652. The fortresses of it demolished, *xii.* 48. Revolts, with the part the princes of Holstein had in it, 62. The king of Denmark's preparations to subdue it, *ib.*
- Jutlanders defeated before Gamberg, *xii.* 62. A truce granted them, three of whose nobles are assassinated, 67. The origin of their troubles, and other transactions, 68. Revolt, and form powerful alliances, with the accession of all Valdemar's enemies, 71. Their proceedings hereupon, *ib.* Complaints to the pope, who exhorts Valdemar to gentle measures, 73. Revolt against Valdemar king of Denmark, who is obliged to fly, *ibid.* But restored, and by what means, *ib.* New disturbances there, and Christopher's edict, 105. Revolt, and depose Christian, 143
- J-vang, or Twon-tsung, declared his brother's successor in Song, *ii.* 378. See Twontsong
- emperor of China, his indolent reign, *iii.* 691
- Ivar, the fifty-seventh king of Denmark, succeeds his father Regner, with differences on this head, *xi.* 687 (A). Revenges his father's unworthy death, and defeats Hella, *ib.* (B). Also the rebellious Danes, and sends his brother Agner to govern England, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.*
- Ivory Coast of Guinea described, *vii.* 1. Towns and villages, 2. St. Andrew's river and a forest country, *ib.* Natives described, 3. Cruel disposition, *ib.* Great expertness in swimming, 4. Natives on the coast of Cape Apollonia described, 5. Produce of the country, and animals belonging to the coast, 6. Manners, &c. of the natives, 7. Religion, 9. Diseases, and manner of cure, 11. Coast from the Rio Sellos to Sierra Leona described, 12
- Iwanowitz, Theodore, succeeds his father Basilwitz Heczar of Moscovy, with his character, *xii.* 126. Embassy to him from Poland, and truce with Sweden, 127
- Iyad, a famous Morocco author, his death and works, *i.* 710
- Iza, the third king of Hormuz, his reign, *ii.* 682
- II. the sixth king of Hormuz, *ii.* 682
- Izame, province in Madagascar, described, *vi.* 91
- Izcoalt, fourth king of Mexico, his character, and subduing the Tepeacans, with all the tribes round, by his nephew Tlacaellec, *xiv.* 363. Transfers the right of election to six electors, and his public works, with his death, *ibid.*
- Izli, or Zezil fortress, described, *vii.* 140 (C)
- Izrail, governor of Damascus, recalled; is taken and beheaded by the Moslem general, *i.* 140
- Izcapala, Cortez's arrival there, and its description, *xiv.* 210

K.

- KABALA, (Kambala) princes submit to Timur Bek, *ii.* 517
- Kabata, a river of Guinea, the English first settled there, *vii.* 72
- Kabul Soltan, the twenty-third khan of Bukharia, and his conquests in Balk, *ii.* 466
- Shah re-elected khan by the Getes, *ii.* 502
- a mountain in India, described, *iii.* 2
- the capital of Kabulestan, described, *iii.* 14
- Khan's treason against Aurengzeb, *iii.* 116. His dreadful punishment, *ib.*
- Kabulestan, a province in Indostan, and plenty of aromatics there, *iii.* 14
- Kabus Ebn Waihmakin, prince of Jorjan, &c. his kind reception of Fakhro'ddawla, *i.* 580. Expelled out of Jorjan by Adadodawla, 582. Deposed by his subjects, speech to his son, confinement, catastrophe, and noble character, 616
- Kada, Al, or visitation, performed by Manomet, *i.* 76
- Kadarian sect what, *i.* 315. Why cursed by Mahomet, *i.* 316
- Kadenus's fatal advice to Paleologus, *ii.* 238
- Kadered revolts in Kerman, is overthrown by Malek Shah, and poisoned, *i.* 663
- first sultan of Kerman, *ii.* 195. His origin, reign, &c. 196
- Kadesia, the famous battle there, *i.* 187
- Kaduvava's mean extraction and rise, and sides with Joritomo, *iv.* 58 (Q)
- Kaender, its brave defence against the Mungls, *ii.* 308
- Kafrs, Arabian, who, *iii.* 141 (I)
- Kaffa in Kipjak taken by the Turks, *ii.* 450
- Kahone, an English settlement on the Senegal, *vii.* 80
- Kahtaba's signal victory over Merwan, and drowned in the Euphrates, *i.* 380
- Kairwan where situate, and taken by the Moslems, *i.* 289, 290. Fortified and finished, *ib.*
- Kais Ebn Amir gives a fabulous account of Mahomet's apostleship to Heraclius, *i.* 216
- Ebn Said made governor of Egypt, *i.* 260. Is undermined by Moawiyah, and recalled by Ali, 272
- the khalif's admiral, ravages Syria, *i.* 294
- Kaiserwert, taking of it by the allies, *xi.* 324
- Kaisians, who, and whence so called, *i.* 383
- Kaklo is chosen the seventh khan of Karazm, and divides his dominions, *ii.* 727
- Kal-ach Turks in Tartary, where seated, *ii.*
- Kalaa Sefid fortress described, and taken by Timur Bek, *ii.* 529. Garrison all murdered, *ib.*
- Kalayut (Kalagat) submits to the Portuguese, *ii.* 691
- Kaldan, the Eluth khan, his resentment against the Lama of Sing-chong, *ii.* 439. Invades the Kalkas with fire and sword, *ib.* Pursues the Lama in spite of the emperor Khang-hi, 440. Carries his arms into China, *ib.* But he is totally defeated, 441
- Kaldan,



- Kaldan, the brother of Sengha, his treachery to the Eluth khan, ii. 442. Created khan of the Eluths, ib. Defeat and tragical end, ib.
- Kalendar, Mexican, how adjusted, xiv. 365. Ingenious distribution of their age, 366. Sort of public instruments and register, ib. Absurd superstition, ib.
- Kalikut, or Koykota, a port in Malabar, an English factory, trade, &c. there, iii. 164. Abandoned by the Portuguese and in the hands of the Samorin, iv. 143
- Kalil, sultan, revolts against Pir Mehemed, ii. 577. Secures the capital of Samarkant, and acknowledged by a great number of amirs, ib. Obligated to renounce the empire, but resumes it again, 578. Enters Samarkant, creates Pir Mehemed khan, and makes most profuse largesses, 579. His character and ill conduct, ib. Reduces some considerable places, 583. Rebuilds Termed, and is governed and ruined by Baba Termes, 584. Resigns the empire, and is poisoned, 586
- Kalka, a river in West Tartary, described, ii. 119
- Targar, a province in Mongolia, ii. 246
- Mungls, who, and where situate, ii. 246, 247. Ruined cities, ib. Their country described, 248. Various animals, ib. Furs and fish, 249. A general description of them, 252. Submit to the Manchews, 261. And also to Kang-hi, 262
- a river in Mongolia, ii. 246
- Kalkas, a tribe of the Western Tartars, ii. 119
- , whence so called, ii. 437. Independent from the Manchews, their three khans, vast numbers, and invasions, 438. Invaded and ravaged by Kaldan, 439
- Kalmuks, a tribe of Tartars, ii. 119. Their quarrel with the Uibecks in Karazm, ii. 739. Defeat them, ib.
- Eastern, submit to Temujin, ii. 278
- of Dagheilan, give a free passage to the Mungls, ii. 321
- Kallistri, king of, his residence, iii. 162 (G). Court, dress, &c. 163
- Kamalo'ddin pays homage to Timur Bek, ii. 527
- Kambaya, or Kambawt, a city of Indostan, described, iii. 9. Its trade and fine manufactures, ib.
- Kambori, a city of Siam, where seated, iii. 317
- Kame-Jamma, the eighty-ninth emperor of Japan, iv. 58
- Kamel, Al, his singular equity towards the Christians, vi. 68. Succeeds his father in Egypt, ib. Lays heavy taxes on the Christians, 69
- Kaminiec reduced by the Turks and Tartars, xii. 530. Council in Poland divided about the enterprize on it, 568. Turks make several difficulties about surrendering it, but is at last delivered up, 574
- Kamish, a vast lake in West Tartary, ii. 119
- Kamro'ddin, the fourth khan of Little Bukharia, defeated by Timur Bek, ii. 468 (E), 510. His flight, and close pursuit by the amirs, 509, 524
- Kamtsharka peninsula described, also the inhabitants, xiii. 52. The principal Russian colonies and forts, with their manner of living, &c. ib. Earthquakes and volcanos, 53. What one of these throws out, ib. (T)
- Kamus, Al, a Jewish citadel, besieged by Mahomet, i. 72. Stormed and taken by Ali, ib.
- Kamyzes rashly attacks the Turks, ii. 212. But defeated and taken by Amir Mohammed, ib.
- Kanara, or Kanora kingdom, described, iii. 159. Wholly governed by females, ib. Inhabitants, and barbarous custom of burning the wives, and the men kill themselves before their idols, 160. Cruel punishments and chief ports, ib.
- Kandahar retaken by Jalalo'ddin, ii. 315. Taken by the Mungls, 319. Subdued by Rukh Shah, 582
- mountains in India described, iii. 2
- betrayed to Sultan Akber, iii. 60
- Kandish, a province of Indostan, iii. 17
- Kanga, a sea-port in Loango, and its female idols described, vi. 538
- Kang-chew, a chief city of Kyanfi, iii. 532
- Kangondi, a city in Karnata, iii. 178
- Kangra, an impregnable castle, besieged by the Mungls, iii. 71
- Kang-shin, his noble defence of Lo-yang, ii. 339
- Kankli, a Turkish tribe in West Tartary, ii. 124
- Kanmala, prince, his narrow escape from Haytu, ii. 389. Made general of Tartary by Timur, 395. His death and character, 397
- Kankoi Ostrog among the best in Siberia for the fur trade, xiii. 48
- Kanzal, chief of the Fatemite conspirators, defeated by Salahaddin's brother, vi. 61
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Kannanore, a town in Malabar, described, and turned into a fort, iii. 162. Its strength and importance, iv. 143
- Kaplan-Keray, the twenty-second khan of Crim, ii. 452
- Kappas village, where, xv. 11 (Z)
- savages, xv. 48
- Kara Arilan's rebellion and defeat, ii. 164
- Yusefi, his flight before Pir Mehemed, ii. 537
- Ilug Ozman, or Othman, the third shah of the White Sheep dynasty (see Othman), ii. 702
- Karaite Turks, where seated, ii. 126. War against Temujin, 275. Totally defeated, 276
- Karakitayans, who, and where settled, ii. 140. Various accounts about them, 141. By whom founded, ib. Its final overthrow, ib. 145
- revolt to Jenghiz-khan, ii. 288
- Karakizir, a province of Karasm, ii. 714
- Karakoran, once the capital of Tartary, where situated, by whom built and ruined, ii. 248, 268. Called Ordubaleg, 269, and new fortified by Oktay, 346
- Kara-koy-unlu, or Black Sheep dynasty, ii. 696. Its rise, and the kings thereof, ib.
- Karashar defeated by Jemuka, ii. 276
- Karazm (Khorasan) kingdom, by whom founded, ii. 182. When ended, 185. Invaded by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 294, 304. Described, 305, 711. Soil, produce, and rivers, 712. Lakes, 713. Provinces, 714. Cities, 715. Inhabitants, 718. Government and power of its khans, 720. Forces and antiquity, 721. Conquered by the Arabs, ib. By the Seljuk Turks, and was an empire under Soltan Takash, but subdued by Jenghiz Khan, ib. Also by Shah Bakht, with the history of the Usbeck khans over it, ib. How divided between the two families, 724. Becomes deserted through feuds, 740
- the capital of that kingdom described, and besieged by the Mongls, ii. 306. Makes a desperate defence, set on fire by the besiegers, and taken by assault, 307
- razed by Timur Bek, and restored by Musik, ii. 521
- Karazmian women, their valour in defence of their capital, ii. 306
- men, above a hundred thousand slaughtered by the Mongls, ii. 307
- Karaulac river, where lieutenant Lassenius wintered, xiii. 52
- Karbus, a fine fruit in Karasm, described, ii. 714
- Karchin, one of the Mongl provinces, where situated, ii. 244. How divided, ib.
- Karchukay, khan, gains Abbas a complete victory, ii. 611. Refuses to kill his son Safi, 612
- Karia over-run by the Turks, ii. 239
- Kariat al Jididah, once the metropolis of Turkestan, ii. 146
- Karliks submit to Jenghiz khan, ii. 281
- Karlitz Turks in West Tartary, where seated, ii. 124
- Karmatians sect, the author and rise thereof, i. 496. Whence so called, with its tenets, wars, and disturbances in the Moslem dominions, 497. Pay tribute to their own prince, ib. Ravage the Moslems afresh, 501. Advance to Yamama, and defeat the caliph's forces, ib. Defeated and massacred by him, 502; by Mohammed Ebn Solyman, 508. Seize on and murder the people of Bosra, &c. 510. Seize on the caravan of Mecca, and defeated by the caliph, ib. Enter Irak afresh, 518. Progress in it, 520. Defeated and driven out of Egypt, 566. Afresh, 569. Totally defeated in Irak, 588
- Karmina, a city of Bukharia, ii. 455
- Karrahi seizes on Yazd, ii. 602. Burnt alive by Ismael, ib.
- Karnal, the plain of, battle fought there, iii. 125. Shah Nadir's victory, ib. Village built by him in memory of it, 131
- Karnata kingdom described, and by whom possessed, iii. 177. Chief cities, ib.
- Karo, Isaac, a learned Jew, banished out of Spain, v. 583 sub. not. (C)
- Joseph, a famous president at Sapheta, v. 583 sub (P)
- Kars taken and razed by Timur Bek, ii. 517
- Karshi, a city of Bukharia Proper, ii. 455
- Karrow kingdom subdued by the Quoians, vii. 36
- Karwash, the Okadite, his various success against Bahao'd-dawla, i. 606
- Kasbin taken by Kara Yus, ii. 587
- Kash, a city in Samarkant, ii. 455. Taken and walled by Timur Bek, 511
- Kashbeck deposes Malek Shah II. i. 711. ii. 190. Killed by Mohammed, ib. & 191
- Kashgar, province in Bukharia, described, ii. 459. A city also described, ib.
- 6 P Kashin



- Kashin taken and put to the sword, ii. 279  
 — country where situated, ii. 281. Subdued by Jenghiz Khan, ib.  
 Kashmir city and country described, and its fair women, ii. 549  
 — a province of Indostan, iii. 14. Springs, rivers, &c. 15. Capital of the province, or Srenaker, described, ib. Fine gardens, witty and handsome inhabitants, ib. Invaded by Akber, 60. Betrayed to him by Yabuk Khan's omras, 61  
 Kasmaro'ddawla made governor of Aleppo, i. 676. Persuades Barkiarok to break off with Mahmud, 677. Defeated and slain, 680  
 Kassein Bazar, a rich town in Bengal, iii. 17  
 Kassein Khan deprived of his government, iii. 77. Restored by his wife's address, 79. Treachery to the Portuguese, 85  
 — Khan, sent to guard the engines against Aurengzib, and defeated, iii. 91  
 Kassivabara, the hundred and fifth emperor of Japan, iv. 60  
 Kastamona taken, and the inhabitants put to the sword by the Turks, and retaken by Comnenus, ii. 216  
 Kat taken and put to the sword, ii. 508  
 — a city in Karazm, ii. 717  
 — a febrifuge shrub described, iv. 467 (E)  
 Katharine de Foix, declared queen of Navarre on her brother Francis's death, viii. 610. Married to Jean d'Albret, count Perigord, who becomes king, 611. See Catharine  
 Katiba Ebn Moslem, his success against the Turks, with idols and spoils from Khowarasm, i. 343. Against the khan of Mawaral'nahr, 351. Rebels against Solyman, and cut in pieces by the people, ib.  
 Katil, bishop of Lincoping, revolts, upon whose successes and besieging Stockholm, Christian retires to Denmark, xii. 255. He assumes the authority of protector, and his popularity, ib. Sallying out of Stockholm is defeated, 256. Agreement between him and Christian, with the terms, ib. (A)  
 Katon, Fair, its bay described, vi. 411  
 Katri, head of the Safrians, i. 337. Defeated and killed, ib.  
 Katzira, a mountain sunk into that river, iv. 62  
 Kaverchik seizes on the crown of Kipjak, ii. 449  
 Kaveri Pattevan now almost ruined, iii. 176  
 Kaufbeuren, account of that city, xv. 442  
 Kau ki murders the general Hujaku, and is put in his place, ii. 284  
 Kau-tsong, emperor of China, invaded by the Tartars, himself and Nanking taken, and makes a shameful peace with them, iii. 721. Abdicates, ib. Sends an army into Korea, and reduces that kingdom, 754  
 Kaweri, a river of Madura, and a canal, iii. 174  
 Kayem, al, Beamri'lla, caliph of Baghdad, i. 637. Invites Togrol Bek thither, 654. Marries his sister, 655. Bestows on him the title of Rucno'ddin, and deposed in favour of the Egyptian caliph, ib. Confined in chains, 656. Restored by Togrol Bek, ib. Names his grandson Abdallah his successor, 657. His death and character, 664  
 Kayem, al, the second caliph of Kayrwan, his conquests, defeat, and death, v. 718  
 Kay-fong-fu straitly besieged by the Mungls, ii. 339. Destroyed by the siege and the plague, also by the famine, 341. Abandoned by the Song general, 346  
 — the capital of Honan, destroyed by the overflowing of its river, iii. 543 (H). Rebuilt on the other side of it, ib.  
 Kayim Beamrilla, caliph of Baghdad, his singular honours to Togrol Beg, ii. 159. Imprisoned by the rebel Bafafiri, ib. Restored by Togrol Beg, 160. Pompously conducted to Baghdad by him, ib. Ordered to be prayed for, i. 661  
 Kaykobad, the last sultan of Rum, revolts, and is put to death, ii. 241  
 — the fifth shah of Hormuz, his reign, ii. 682  
 Kay Khofraw (vid. Gayatho'ddin), ii. 224  
 — II. (see Azzoddin)  
 — III. his reign and death, ii. 236  
 Kay-kwo, the ninth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 50  
 Kaymak, a Turkish tribe in West Tartary, where seated, and capital of it, ii. 120  
 Kayor, a kingdom on the Gambia, described, vii. 80  
 Kay-ping-fu, the new Mungl capital, founded, and where situated, ii. 357 (O)  
 Kay-fu-ven murders the king of Korea, iii. 753. Defeated by Tay-tsong, 754  
 Kaytas Pasha hanged by the Persians, ii. 607  
 Kazagan, a wife and noble prince, ii. 499. Opposes Hussayn's ambitious steps, and murdered by Kotluk, ib.  
 Kazan, the eighteenth khan of Bukharia, and cruel reign, i. 465. Defeat and death, 465  
 Kazi, a spiritual judge in Indostan, his office, iii. 52  
 Kazvin, where situated, and put to the sword by the Mungls, ii. 310  
 Kiang county described, xv. 468  
 Kebla, what, changed by Mahomet, i. 48 (G). Fixed by him, 81  
 Kechikten, a Mungl province, where situated, ii. 245  
 Ke-ching Tartars, where seated, why called Fiattas, iii. 464 (F)  
 Kedar, or Kidar, Mahomet descended from, i. 2  
 Keene, Mr. answer to his representations at Madrid, xiii. 650  
 Keijutatus, his catastrophe, xii. 642 (G)  
 Kei-tei, the twenty-seventh emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52  
 Keith, stratagem used by that marshal in the action in which he was slain, xi. 516 (A)  
 — Sir William, governor of Pennsylvania, his character, xv. 121. Soothing and mercenary views, ib. Dispute between him and secretary Logan, with complaints against the former, and instructions from the widow Penn, &c. ib. Artful management, 122. Supported by Lloyd the Speaker, with whom he quarrels, ib. Disregarded by the assembly, and miserable fate, ib.  
 Kelat besieged by Timur Bek, ii. 513  
 Kee-ling's voyage into India, iv. 293  
 Kem, or Jenisea, a river of West Tartary, ii. 119  
 Kemak castle, its strong situation, ii. 562. Taken by Mirza Mehemmed, ib.  
 Kemerat, a province of N. Laos, its capital described, iii. 291. The inhabitants use fire-arms, and their trade with China, ib.  
 Kemoy, a wild people in Cochin-China, iii. 424  
 Kempton, account of it, xv. 445  
 Kenanan, the father of Al Nadr, whence sprung, i. 3. (E) (F)  
 Kenana, the Jew, his gallant defence of Khaibar, i. 72  
 Kendall, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 185. A zealous enemy to the French encroachments, ib. A war with that nation in the West Indies, and acts passed, with the African trade thrown open, 186. Made a lord of the admiralty, 188  
 Keng-wang, emperor of China, and his new regulations, iii. 694  
 Keppel, commodore, covers the landing at the Havannah, xv. 338  
 Ker, captain, cashiered for bad conduct, xv. 297  
 Kerrenay, a monstrous warlike trumpet, ii. 526 (\*)  
 Kerbechi, the limits of the Russian empire fixed at that river, xiii. 186  
 Kerbela, the famous battle there, i. 305. ii. 531. The slain in it, i. 307. Where situated, ib.  
 Kergis Turks, in West Tartary, where seated, ii. 124  
 Keri-kostoron mountain, whence so called, ii. 682  
 Kerites, who and where situated, and when converted to Christianity, i. 665, 714. Also their king stiled Prefter John, ib.  
 Kerki taken by the Moguls, iii. 71  
 Kerlon, a river of Mongolia, ii. 247  
 Kerman Seljuks, (see Seljuks) their dynasty, ii. 195  
 — invaded by the Mungls, ii. 320  
 — city attempted by Mir Mahmud, rescued and fortified by Lustali Khan, ii. 657 (T)  
 Kesra-koja Khan, his brave defence and retreat, ii. 525. Pursued and driven out of Jetah, ib.  
 Kesun Yefuri assisted by Timur Bek against Berlas, but suspects and dismisses him, ii. 500.  
 Ketbuga left general in Syria, defeated and slain, ii. 475  
 Kettlemunson declared protector of Sweden, invades Schonen, xii. 240. Enlarges the limits of Sweden by the addition of Schonen, ib.  
 Kew-when-pu-wha, his success in Huquang, &c. ii. 347. And repulsed by Mengkong, 348  
 Kexholm, or Carlegorod, xiii. 26  
 Key-ko, the twelfth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 51  
 Key-Kofru's gratitude to Timur Bek, ii. 505. Kills Amir Hussayn, 507. Intrigues against Timur, and put to death, 509  
 Keys Kays, or Quays island described, ii. 683 (Q) (R) (S)  
 Khadijah, Mohammed's first wife, i. 13. Her character and death, 14 & 28. Surnamed the mother of the faithful, 114  
 Khagan invades Persia with three hundred thousand men, i. 19  
 Khajath Sheikh's stratagem to prevent a rape, i. 503. Applauded by the caliph, ib.  
 Khaibar



Khaibar territory subdued by Mohammed, i. 71 & 73  
 Khakan, (Kagan) the general name of the Turkish princes, ii. 132 & 136  
 — meaning of that dignity, i. 339  
 Khaled Ebn Walid, a powerful prince, embraces Islamism, i. 77. Makes a sad slaughter among the Koreish, 81. Destroys the idol Uzza and its two priestesses, 84. Expedition against the Jadhimites, 85. Saves the Banu of Mostalek, 91. Succeeds in war owing to his wearing Mahomet's locks of hair, 103. Quells a revolt about the caliphate, 133. Defeats and kills Moseilama, 134, and other revoltors, 135. Subdues Irak, and his rapid success, ib. Is sent into Palestine, 137. Lays siege to Bosra, 288. Beats the Greeks and takes it, ib. Marches against Damascus, 139. Lays siege to it, 140. Resolves to fight the Imperial army, 142. Rendezvouses his generals at Ainadin, ib. Engages the Greeks, 143. Saved from an ambush by Derar, and defeats the Greeks, 144. His letter to Abu Beir, 145. Renews the siege of Damascus, ib. Contest with Abu Obeida compromised, 147. Injustice to the Damascenes, 184. Is deposed by Omar for his horrid cruelty, 186. Continues zealous for the cause, 187. His bravery at Dair Abel Kodos, 188. Opposes in vain Abu Obeida's pacific measures, 192. Defeated by the Christians, 193. Attacks and repulses king Jabala, 200. Sent to ransom the Arab prisoners, 201. Bold behaviour to the Imperial generals, ib. Commands at the battle of Yermouk, ib. Valour before the castle of Aleppo, 213. Extends his conquests and extortions as far as the Euphrates, 220. Dies at Edeffa, 233  
 — Ebn Abdallah made governor of Basra, i. 331. Ill success against the Azarakites, restores Mohalleb to his command, and defeats them, ib.  
 Khalifa, a title given to Mahomet's successors, i. 23  
 Khalifs sadly infested by the Karmatians, i. 130. Succeed Mahomet in the regal and pontifical power, 133.  
 Khalil Beg, the seventh shah of the White Sheep dynasty, slain by his brother, ii. 703  
 — Khan grossly affronted by shah Jehan, iii. 86. Goes over to his son Aurengzeb, ib.  
 Khamarawiyah succeeds his father in his Egyptian dynasty, i. 494. Wars with the caliph, ib. Success against Ebn Diwadad, 495. Embassy to Al Motaded, 499. Gives him his daughter in marriage, and murdered at Damascus, ib.  
 Khamil, or Khamul, province described, ii. 460  
 Khan (Tayki) a prince or king among the Mungls, ii. 261. How elected, ib.  
 Khanbalik taken by Jenghiz Kahn, ii. 289  
 Khandoran obstructs Nizam al Molk's measures, iii. 123. Ill treatment of him, 124. Defeated by the Persians under Nadir Shah, 125. Dies of his wounds, 126. His vast treasures confiscated to the shah, 129  
 Khani-Gheulo's magnificent marriage-feast there described, ii. 572  
 Kharajian years in Egypt, how computed and suppressed there, i. 664 & 689  
 Kharejites sect, whence, and destroyed by Ali, i. 271. Their chief tenets, ib. Desperate attempt of three of them, 274. Oppose caliph Moawiyah, and totally defeated, 284, 286  
 Kharkhir deposes and puts the traitor Togrol to death, and raises Parakhzad to the Gaznean throne, i. 653  
 Kharkir, a Turkish tribe and canton in West Tartary, and their fertile country described, ii. 120  
 Khasbek suspected by Malek Shah, ii. 190. Slain by his successor Mohammed, 191  
 Khatun, queen of Bukharia, defeated by Mohalleb, i. 311  
 Khawlah, a brave Arabian amazon, fights against the Greeks, taken and rescued by Derar, i. 142. Her bravery at the battle of Yermouk, 202  
 Khayuk, a city in Karazm, described, ii. 717. Taken by Abdo'llah, 734  
 Khazalia, a Turkish canton in West Tartary, and its cities, &c. ii. 121  
 Khazarians defeated by the Syrians, i. 335. Defeated by Mohammed, ib. By Moslem, ib.  
 Khanna Khan joins in sultan Khurm's revolt, iii. 72. Persuades him to submit, 73, and to try the intercession of sultan Parweis, 74. Kept prisoner by Mohabet Khan, 76. Makes sad complaints against him at court, 77. Sent by the queen against Mohabet, 80. But prevented by death, ibid.  
 Khasel, a river of Karazm, described, and its course turned, ii. 712  
 — Rabat, province of Karazm, ii. 714

Khika, a province of Karazm, ii. 714  
 Khizaran, the mother of caliph Al Hadi, supposed to have murdered him, i. 416. And her motives for it, 417  
 Khodadad Husfayn revolts against Pir Mehemed, ii. 579. Takes Kalil Soltan prisoner, and haughty behaviour at Samarkand, 585. Plunders their treasures and flies, ib. Rejoins Kalil, and is reconciled, ib. Seized by the Mungls, and put to death by them, 586  
 Khojand-kuli sent to invade Karazm without success there, ii. 732. His second invasion, 734  
 Khojend described, and closely besieged by the Mungls, ii. 300. Noble defence, 301, but surrendered, 302  
 Khorab made emir of Sicily, who destroys Al Mohdi's fleet, i. 514. His fleet against the Christians destroyed, ib.  
 Khorasan, part of that province subdued by the Moslems, i. 244. And under Othman, 252  
 Khoraslan invaded by Timur Bek, ii. 512. Reduced by him, 513  
 Khorremites, or followers of the rebel Babec, are all destroyed, i. 461  
 Khosraw proposed to the Mogul's throne, iii. 65. Flees from his father, ib. Besieges Lahur, and forced to retreat. 66. Defeated and taken prisoner, ib. Pathetic answer to his father's reproaches, ib. (I). Imprisoned, and deprived of sight, 67 (N). Released, 70. Murdered by his brother, 71  
 Khosroff Khan sent against the rebel Mirweis, ii. 653. Refuses the Kandaharians a capitulation, defeated by the Afghans, and his desperate end, ib.  
 Khosru, a name common to the shahs of Persia, i. 208  
 — Mushirvan succeeded in Persia by his son Khosru Hormuz, i. 19  
 — the son of Calijar, succeeds him as emir omrah, but opposed by his brother, i. 651  
 — Shah, the last of the Gazni sultans, dies, with the length of the dynasty, i. 714  
 Khotam, or Hotam, in Bukharia, described, ii. 460  
 Khowarazm, capital, where situate, i. 310. Princes descended from Timur Bek, ii. 595. Becomes tributary to khalif Al Walid, i. 343. By whom conquered, 603. Invaded by the Seljuks, 639  
 Khozaites, who, deprived of the Caaba, i. 4  
 Khozar kingdom, in West Tartary, whence descended, ii. 122  
 Khukhu Hotun, the capital of Hutu Hotun, ii. 246  
 Khurm, Soltan's, success against Rajah Rana, iii. 69. His brother Khosru delivered into his hands, 70. Causes him to be privately strangled, 71. Attempt on his father's treasure in its way to Lahur, 72. Repulsed by Ethaber Khan, ib. Attacks his father, 73. Defeated and submits, ib. Renews his attempt to recover Guzerat, 74. Totally overthrown, ib. Flees to Amber Malek, ib. Enters Bengal, part of which he subdues, 75. Defeated by Parweis and Mohabet, his camp plundered, 76. Besieges Brampur, but repulsed before it, 77. Soothes his father with a present of elephants, and brings up Khosraw's children christians, and why, ib. sub notes. Repulsed before Tatta, 79. Appears again in Decan, 80. Reduced to beg peace from the king of Decan, 81. Invited to his father's throne, 83. Destroys his two competitors, 84. Crowned at Agra, is invaded by the Uzbeks and other Rajahs, ib. With his success against them, and wars against the Portuguese, ib. Takes Ougli or Hugley from them, and themselves prisoners, 85. Restores Dehli, and makes it his residence, but his debaucheries and extravagancies highly censured, 86. Severity against corrupt judges, ib. Imposed on by astrologers, with his treachery to the revolted rajah, ib. Extreme avarice, 87. Children, ib. How deposed, and instigated to a war by Jemla, 89; who invades Decan, ib. Sickness alarms the empire, ib. Tries in vain to prevent a rupture between his sons, 90. His offers rejected by Dara, 92. Dissimulation to his son Aurengzib, 95. Imprisoned by him, ib. Walled within his palace, 96. State of the empire at the end of his reign, 101. Outwitted by one of his rich omrahs, and avarice rallied by a rich widow, ib. His progeny, ib. Kindly treated in his confinement, 109 (B). His death and magnificent tomb, 115. Costly throne seized and broken by Seid Abdallah, 122  
 Khusestan subdued by Timur Bek, ii. 528  
 Khutuktu, the lama, or high-priest of the Mungls, his residence, ii. 259.—Of the Kalkas, his office and residence, their temple destroyed by the Eluths, their manners and behaviour, 260.—Refuses to right the sons of Shasfaktu, 438



- Khuzestan surrendered to caliph Omar, i. 187. Subdued by Abu Musa, 243
- Kialc-kiak, its famous temple and Colossian idol, ii. 241
- Kiali Ulek, his arrival at the siege of Malta, vii. 480
- Kicapous, where seated, xiv. 613
- Kidd, captain, account of him, and equipment of his frigate for New England, xiv. 429. Sails to the East Indies, and turns pyrate, ib. Seized in New England and at last executed, 530
- Kielman and his three sons arrested, xii. 191
- Kiew, government, a part of Little Russia, inhabited by Cossacs, or irregular troops of horse, xiii. 11. Their division into European and Asiatic, with their various names, and some account of them, ib. Its division into eleven circles, and the places of most note, with its capital Kiew described, 13
- Kijomori, a famous Japanese prince, born, with his rebellion and punishment, iv. 57 (O)
- Kilan subdued by Abbas Shah, i. 610. Roads and inns built by him there, ib.
- Kilij Arslan comes to the relief of Mawfell, with honours done to Zenki and others, i. 688. Defeated and drowned, ib. Vid. ii. 180
- I. succeeds his father Soleyman in Rum, or Asia Minor, ii. 209. Re-peoples the city of Nice, and defeated by the Crusaders, ib. Takes possession of Musol, and put to flight by Al Jaweli, 210. Is drowned, ib.
- II. of that name, his share of the Rum kingdom, ii. 218. Attacked by his brother-in-law, and defeats him, he retires to the emperor Manuel, ib. Bafe ingratitude to him, and success against his brother; he invades the Greek empire, 219. Offers of peace rejected, ib. Defeats him in a battle, 220. Offers, and concludes a peace with him, and suffers his Turks to violate it, ib. Fresh irruptions and conquests, and renews them after Manuel's death, 222. Also on the proclamation of Isaac Angelus as emperor, and divides his dominions between his five sons, ib. Is despised and imprisoned, and restored by Gayathoddin, and his death, when, 223
- III. and eighth sultan of Rum, stripped of his dominions by his uncle, ii. 227
- Kilupan makes alliance against Temujin, ii. 271
- Kimchi, three famous rabbi's of that name, their character and works, v. 548 (Z)
- Kim-me, thirtieth emperor of Japan, addicted to strange superstitions, iv. 52
- Kin, or Northern China, invaded by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 283, 285. Army composed of traitors, and his succours defeated, 286. Country destroyed by the Moguls, 287. Invaded by Jenghiz Khan, 327. By Oktay, 335. Defeated, 336. Army totally perisheth with distress, 339. The dynasty ended in Shu-fu, 345
- , or Koy, where situate, and taken by the Mungls, ii. 319
- or eastern Tartar dynasty in China, put an end to by Li-tsung, iii. 723
- King-chew taken by the Mungls, ii. 288. Taken by Ali Yaya, 374
- Ki-ngan, a chief city of Kiang-si, iii. 532
- King-hi, a beautiful Chinese bird described, iii. 553 (U)
- Kin-kew canal restored by Toto, but becomes useless, ii. 418
- King-ki-tau, the metropolis of Korea, iii. 749
- Kinnesrin, a district and city in Syria, i. 189. Obtains a year's truce from Abu Obeidah, 191. Submits to him, 193
- Kinscki, the evangelic general, his success against a body of heydukes, xi. 196
- Kinsen, or Teysen, the one hundred and thirteenth emperor of Japan, with strict enquiry after Christians and other sects, iv. 62. Singular charity to his distressed subjects, 63 (X)
- II. the one hundred and fourteenth emperor of Japan, iv. 63
- King-shi-ta-tyen, a Chinese book composed, ii. 413
- Kingston in Jamaica, account of it, xv. 334
- Kinta invites Jenghiz Khan into China, ii. 286
- King-ti usurps the Chinese crown during his brother's absence, ii. 436. Dethroned and murdered by his kolau, iii. 710
- the seventh of the twenty-first dynasty, reigns in his brother's stead, iii. 726
- King-te-ching, its famous china-ware, and number of furnaces, iii. 531. Strangers forbid the town, ib.
- King-ting, emperor of China, iii. 687. Of the Han dynasty, his mild reign, 700. Defeats a powerful confederacy, ibid.
- King-tsung raised to the Chinese throne by the eunuchs, and murdered by them, iii. 714
- King-wang, emperor of China, his short reign, iii. 693—695
- Kin-tsung of the nineteenth dynasty, invaded by the East Tartars, iii. 711. Carried off prisoner, ib.
- Ki-nyen, the place of Jenghiz Khan his burial, ii. 329
- Kio, a mysterious Indian book brought into Japan, iv. 51
- Kio, palatine of, defeated by the Russian general Goltz, xii. 611
- Kipjak, or Kapchak, a famous plain in West Tartary, ii. 118. The Turkish tribe, where situated, 124. Invaded by Jenghiz Khan, 288. By his sons, 321. The country described, ii. 444. The history of its khans, 445. Confused state by reason of competitors, 448. Divided between the sons of Haji Garay, 449
- Kipjacks defeated by Timur-Bek, ii. 511, 521
- Kirin-ula, government in East Tartary, iii. 460. Its arts, soil, product, &c. 461. Inhabitants, dress, &c. 462. Religion, language, writing, &c. 463, 465. Ruined cities, 466
- Kirk, Sir David, obtains a grant of Newfoundland, as also in Canada, xiv. 472. His grant, and that of Sir William Alexander in Nova Scotia, from king Charles I. given afterwards by that prince to France, 494. Cromwell redresses the adventurers by Major Sedgwick, ib. Destroys the places at Cape Torment, with the distress of Quebec at this time, and Requemont defeated; also his squadron taken, 575. Quebec on summons capitulates, and its terms honourably fulfilled by the English, 576. Which, with Acadia and Cape-Breton, are restored, ib.
- Kirk-Denkern, the French defeated there, with an account of the loss on both sides, xv. 627
- Kistneruppon, the god of water in India, iii. 36
- Kitan, or western Turkish empire, ii. 135. Revolts to Jenghiz Khan, 283
- Kitan Tartars expelled Lyautong by Chi, iii. 754
- Kitans, three hundred thousand defeated by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 290
- Kitay, or Katay, the state of that empire at Yefukay's death, ii. 267. Subdued by Jenghiz Khan, 289
- Ki-tse, the first king of Korea, adopts the Chinese laws, iii. 752
- Kiyazo'ddin, Mohammed's son, taken by the Mungls, ii. 305
- Kizil, the Atabec, conspires against Togrol, ii. 193. Seizes him, ib. Killed by his accomplices, ib.
- Klesel, cardinal, his character, xi. 193. Apprehended and imprisoned by Ferdinand, but acquitted at Rome, and set at liberty, ib. (P)
- Klogenfurt, remarkable proceeding there against theft, what, xi. 90
- Kneas (Russian nobility) account of, xiii. 61
- Knighthood, two orders in Denmark, xii. 657
- Knights, Teutonic, account of their original and statutes, x. 686 (K). Their progress against the Russians, and other northern pagans, xi. 29. Acquisition of Dantzick, 30. Notwithstanding their successes in Europe, their interest in Syria ruined, ib. Alliance with Saladin Cham of Tartary, 74. Degenerate from the valour of their predecessors, and lose a part of Prussia, 81. Peace between them and the Poles, after a fourteen years war, 105. By their intrigues have Pomerania adjudged to them, but obliged by the pope's legate to make restitution, xii. 473. Their jealousy, with the occasion, and their ravaging the great duchy of Lithuania, but are driven out, 476. Ravage Lithuania, but are obliged to relinquish their attempt on Upper Vilna, 477. Their successes in Lithuania, 635. Samogitia invaded, and reduced by them, 637. They are defeated by Gediminus, ib. Invade Lithuania, but are forced to retire, and advantage taken of some circumstances by them, 643. Their origin in Syria, and their first settlement in Prussia, 655. Their first four grand masters, ib. (D). A series of them, from Henry Walput the first, down to Albert of Brandenburg the last, and their exploits, 657. The expulsion of that fraternity out of Prussia and Pomerania, with their settling at Mariendal, and Franconia, &c. ib.
- Templars. See Templars.
- Livonian, why they put themselves under the protection of the Poles, xiii. 106.
- Knivet's monstrous fictions, xiv. 480.
- Knot, a kind of arithmetic in Peru, xiv. 379.
- Knowles, admiral, his unsuccessful attempt on Porto Cavallo, and his sole view possibly what, xiv. 451. Takes a rich Spanish prize, xv. 310. Made governor of Jamaica, 327. Removes



- Removes the seat of government to Kingston, and the disgust thereon, 328. Dispute between the governor and assembly, with the occasion, *ib.* Mutual recriminations to a pitch of indecency, *ib.* Disputes with the assembly of Jamaica, *ib.* General and particular charges against them, *ib.* not without foundation, though some overstrained, 329. Is justified by the British parliament, *ib.*
- Koan, the sixth emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 50
- Koba, a village, where Mahomet built a mosque, *i.* 44
- Kobi, the great desert in West Tartary, *ii.* 118, 246
- Koghertlik, a province of Karazm, *ii.* 715
- Koghey proclaimed emperor by the Chinese army, and founds the eighteenth dynasty, *iii.* 717 (V). And takes the name of Tay-tsu, 718
- Kohkilon, Khan, assists Husseyn Shah against the rebel Mahmud, *ii.* 660. Defeated by Aman Olla, 664
- Kojond, a city of Samarkant, *ii.* 455. Surrenders to the revolted Kalil, 583
- Kojas, Gabriel de, different accounts of his expedition to Pacacama, *xiv.* 300. Peace concluded, and the terms, 301
- Kokonol, or Kokonor-Eluths, where situated, *ii.* 252. Their government, 263
- the son of Hupi-lay conspires against Hay-shan, *ii.* 402
- Koko-temur, revenges his father's death on Tyen-song, *ii.* 428. Defeats Polotemur, 429. Employed by the prince against him, 431. Promoted at court, 432. Disgraced and stripped, *ib.* Restored, and troops sent against him, instead of the new emperor Chu, 433
- Kokza, Kokja, an enthusiast, gives Temujin the name of Jenghiz Khan, *ii.* 280
- Kola, circle of, in Archangel government, and chief places, *xiii.* 7
- Koluga, or pass of the Iron Gate, where, *ii.* 307
- Kom, city, where situated, with its origin, *i.* 349. *ii.* 310. Taken by the Mungls, *ib.*
- Komans ravage Asia Minor, *ii.* 208
- Komatz Go, the 101st emperor of Japan, *iv.* 60
- Komori, cape, where situated, *iii.* 166 (U). Strange variety of seasons, &c. *ib.*
- Kondiarouk, Rats chief, his character and conduct, *xiv.* 629
- Kon-su-tze (Confucius) honoured by the Mungls, *ii.* 398. His books published by them, 401. Recommended to them by Hayshan, and forewarned against wine and women, *ib.*
- Kong, an honorary title, what, *ii.* 261
- Kong-jei, the 76th emperor of Japan, *iv.* 57
- Kong-pu, or Campoo, the sixth supreme tribunal in China, *iii.* 578
- Kong-ti raised to the empire by Li-ywen, and dethroned by him, *iii.* 711
- Kong-tsung, the minor emperor of Song, betrayed by his prime minister, *ii.* 361. Invaded by the Mungls, 363. Sent prisoner to Hupilay, 377. Reception from him, 378. Turns bonza at Putala, 389
- Konja, the ninth khan of Bukharia, *ii.* 465
- Konieckspolkis defeated, *xii.* 516
- Konigsberg, account of it, *xii.* 650. Account of that capital, *xv.* 488
- Konigsfegg, count, surprises marshal Broglio's quarters, and attacks the French in their entrenchments, the Imperialists retreating to Luzara, *xiii.* 653. The loss on both sides, *ib.* Is obliged to retreat from Luzara, 654. Succeeds Wirtemberg in Italy, *xiv.* 135. Surprises Broglio, who escapes in his shirt, *ib.* His army re-inforced, keeps the field, and forces Maillebois to retire under the cannon of Cremona, 139
- Koningsmark's successes against the Imperialists, *xi.* 262. Returns from Westphalia, *xii.* 342. His successes, 347, but unsuccessful in Pomerania, 365. Complete victory in Pomerania, and his ravaging Mecklenburg, *ib.*
- Kon-tay-ki, or great khan, his vast force, *ii.* 262
- Koralam, a city in Karnata, *iii.* 178
- Korchin, a Mogul province, *ii.* 244. Turned into a forest, 245
- Koran, or Alcoran of Mohammed, over valued by some moderns, *i.* 1. How, and by whom compiled, 14. When sent to Mohammed from heaven, 20 (V). Where it begins to allow the power of the sword, 41 (B). Made to contradict itself to excuse Mahomet's lechery, 76. Contradictory salvo about female captives, 87. The ninth chapter of it published at Mecca, 95. The book esteemed the greatest of miracles by the Moslems, 122. By whom reduced into the present form, 131 & 148. When, and by whom completed, *ib.* With strange discordance in the copies of it, and when first published, high titles given to it, and to its several chapters, 149, 154. Editions of it, 150. Division, *ib.* Style concise and elegant, 151. Design in asserting the unity of the Godhead, *ib.* Its author allowed to be Mohammed, and his assistants in it, 152. Pretended to be brought down from heaven, 153. Its materials whence furnished, 154. Various readings and passages abrogated, *ib.* Whether created, 155. Those who affirm it to be so are deemed heretics, *ib.* Honour shewn to it by the rest, 156. Its principal tenets, *ib.* Negative precepts, 171. Positive institutions, 176. Edict about the creation of it, 456. Revived by Motasem, 460. See also 463
- Korazema, a city of Siam, *iii.* 317
- Korea made tributary to the Mungls, *ii.* 326. Under Khan Kayuk, 353. First embassy to Kublay, 366. Revolts against Towan-temur, and cuts the Mungls in pieces, 429. Submits to the new Tartarian dynasty, *iii.* 732. Kingdom described, with its boundaries, 748. Cities, rivers, &c. 749. Product, commerce, &c. *ib.* Religion, government, &c. 750. Laws, customs, &c. 751. Ignorance of geography, *ib.* Origin, antiquity, &c. and when first subdued by the Chinese, and by the Japanese, 752. Shakes off the yoke, continues subject to China, and invades Lyau-tong, 753. A prophecy concerning its reduction, and a new division of it, 754. Courted by the Chinese and Tartars, with a new line of kings, *ib.* Invaded by the Japanese, 755. (See Corea)
- Korei, or Kossi, the seventh emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 50
- Koreidhites, seven hundred of them cut off by Saad; this cruelty approved by Mahomet, and punished by heaven, *i.* 62. Their spoils, *ib.*
- Koreish tribe, whence descended, and the politest of all the Arabs, *i.* 3. Great merchants, 15. Infected with Zendicism, 17. Oppose Mohammed's preaching, 23. Persecute his followers, 25. League against the Hashemites, 26. Make several attempts against Mohammed, *ib.* Are forced by a miracle to rescind their league, 27. Grow more incensed against him, 29. Endeavour to murder him, 42. Defeated by Mohammed, 51. Strive to gain the Ethiopian king, 53. Change the route of their caravans, 56. Besiege Medina with twelve thousand Jews and other allies, 60. Forced to raise the siege, 61. Greatly straitened by Themama, 63. Break their treaty with the Moslems, 80. Submit to Mahomet, 81. Modest answer to him, 82. Used to burn their daughters alive, but that custom abolished by the alcoran, 175. Oppose Yezid's succession, 295
- Kori, Kozars, or Kafjacks, invade and outwit the Moslems, *i.* 694
- Kortene, rock and fortress in Georgia, described, and besieged by Timur Bek, *ii.* 567. Scaled by ropes and taken, and the Georgians massacred in it, *ib.*
- Kofa seizes on the guardianship of the Caaba, *i.* 4
- Ko-shu-king completes a system of astronomy, and a set of instruments, *ii.* 382
- Kofio, fifth emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 50
- Kotluk Turkhan, Timur's noble sister, rouses him from his melancholy, *ii.* 513. Her death and high character, 514
- Kothb Malek assists Malek Amber against the Moguls, *iii.* 69
- Kothboddin founds the new monarchy of Karazm, *ii.* 182. Brave defence of Sistan, and submission to Timur Bek, 515. Sent away prisoner, *ib.*
- nineteenth shah of Hormuz defeats and slays Issuf, and subdues the islands of Keys and Bahrayn, *ii.* 687. Other conquests, *ib.* Dethroned by his brother, 688. Recovers the crown from his two sons, and invaded afresh by them, *ib.* Defeats them, 689. His death, *ib.*
- Kotluk-Timur assassinates Mir Kazagan, but slain for it, *ii.* 499
- Kotolmish, Kutulmish, or Kutlu Moses, his rebellion against Alp Arslan, and his sudden death puts an end to the revolt, *i.* 658 & *ii.* 161. Invades the Roman empire, and rebels against Tagrolipix, 198. The cause of the difference between the Greek and Oriental accounts about him, 199. Conquests in Asia Minor, and when first established there, 200
- Kotovan's success against the Song, *ii.* 346. In Shen-si, and in Sethwen, 347. In Huquang, &c. *ib.*
- Kotaz, sultan of Egypt, drives the Mungls out of Syria, *ii.* 475. Slain by Bibars, *ib.*
- Kotwal, in Indostan, his office and power, *iii.* 52
- Ko-tzuai, a noble Chinese kolaw, and friend to the Christians, *iii.* 714 (R). Deep mourning for his death, *ib.*
- Kowaik river drives the Franks from before Aleppo, *i.* 697



- Kowis Khan seizes on the government of Visapur, and murdered by Bullul Khan, iii. 141
- Kowkin, the eighth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 50
- Kowlis, who; they harass Dara in his flight, iii. 103
- Koyrichak crowned khan of Kipjak, ii. 537
- Koo-ken, the forty-sixth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 55
- Kooko, the fifty-eighth emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Kootoku, the thirty-seventh emperor of Japan, iv. 54
- Korrah Ebn Shebal (Sharik) becomes odious to the Egyptians, i. 343. Made governor of Egypt, 344. Profanation of the cathedral of Meffr, ib. His evasive answer to Al Hegai, 348. His death, and stately mosque, 350
- Korram Abad taken by Timur Bek, ii. 517
- Korrewas, a wandering tribe in Indostan, iii. 27
- Kossacks, robbers, destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 538. See Cossacks
- Kossi, governor of Hirmen Kata, outwitted by Othman, v. 147. Slain by him, ib.
- Krasnoiarsk, circle and town of the same name in Yenesei province described, xiii. 48. Ostrogs, or forts on the Jenesei, ib. See Kanskoi
- Krepost, what, xiii. 43 (R)
- Krim khans, from whom descended, their history, ii. 446, 450
- Krit, a poisoned weapon among the Makassars, iii. 377, 380
- Kromitus taken by the Turks, ii. 239
- Kubeel Azabs, a mosque at Cairo, described, vi. 16
- Kubku Khatun, Jenghiz Khan's fourth wife, ii. 331 (K)
- Kublay. See Hu-pu-lay
- Kublik, prince of the Getes, defeated and put to death, ii. 523
- Kuchluk Khan, his ingratitude to Kurkhan, taken and put to death, ii. 141, 145. Defeat, 289, and death, 290. Ingratitude, ib.
- Kuchnagghen, a city and province of Indostan, iii. 7. Governed by a queen, ib.
- Kuchu's ravages in Hu-quang, ii. 347
- Kui, or Koy, where situated, and taken by the Mungls, ii. 319
- Kuigan, a large province of Karazm, ii. 714
- Kukias the Turkman, his expedition into Mesopotamia, i. 649. Treachery to the prince of Mawfel, and defeated by the Arabs, ib.
- Kukovitus chosen sovereign of Lithuania, in room of his nephew Skirmunt II. xii. 628. Is at peace with the Russians all his reign, ib.
- Kulan Khatun, Jenghiz Khan's fifth wife, ii. 331 (L)
- Kular Agasi's valour and death at the battle of Gutnabad, ii. 660
- Kuliakhan Murshid causes Ishmael III. to be murdered, ii. 608. Insolence to his pupil Shah Abbas, and massacred by his order, 609
- Mirza put to death by Safi I. ii. 621
- Mortuza accuses the chancellor Tabub to Safi I. ii. 623. Made lord high steward, ib.
- Ali, president of the council, made the executioner of Ugurlu Khan, ii. 623
- Imam, and his sons, &c. slain by Safi I. ii. 624. Other particulars of his excellent character and death, 625. Liberality and public works, ib.
- Ali, why surnamed the king's lion, his frequent and long banishment, ii. 636. Recalled, and caressed by Soleyman Shah, and satire on the Armenian churchmen, ib. Base complaisance to the king, 637. Death, ib.
- late divan Beghi of Ispahan, made commander of the Persian forces, is defeated and slain by the revolted, ii. 656
- Khan, or Nadir Shah, his extraction and rise in Persia, ii. 675. Joins Shah Thamasp, and reduces Korassan, ib.
- Kulong kingdom, where situated, and tributary to the Mungls, ii. 384 (Q)
- Kulon-nor, a lake in Mongolia, ii. 247
- Kumcil saves his life by a witty evasion, i. 348
- Kumkala, a city of Karazm, ii. 717
- Kumkant, a province of Karazm, ii. 714
- Kun-chew, the capital of Honan, taken by the Mungls, ii. 339
- Kungua, curious chalk-cavern at that town, xiii. 32 (E)
- Kunkam, a province of Decan, and by whom governed, iii. 133
- Kunkurat Turks, in West Tartary, ii. 127
- submit to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 274
- or Kongorats, a tribe of Usbeck Tartars, ii. 719
- Ku-pe-kew, the second gate of the Chinese wall, ii. 244
- Mongals seated along its district, 245
- Kupele, defile, where situated, ii. 548 (N)
- Kurdistan subdued by Timur Bek, ii. 519
- Kurds suppressed by Timur Bek, ii. 532. Severely punished by him, 561. Cruelly massacred by him, ib. Murdered by Shah Abbas, 610
- Kurje, or Lyautong, invaded by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 288
- Kurla Turks, an eminent tribe, ii. 127
- Kushenji Khan, one of the greatest Usbeck princes, and defeats Soltan Babr, ii. 709
- Kushey, Malek, his cowardice before Kat, ii. 508. Shameful punishment, 509
- Kushluk, son of Tayyan, his shameful flight, ii. 278. Joins with the Tayjuts against him, ib. Defeated, and retires to the Irtilsh, then flees to Turkestan, 281
- Kutlu Moses, or Kotolmish defeated in Arabia, ii. 161. Rebels against his uncle, ib. Against his cousin, and dies of a fall, 163. The Greek account of him false, ib.
- Kutluk conspires against Togrol, ii. 193. Defeated by him, 194. Murders him, ib.
- Timur, his attempt to drive out Tokatmish, ii. 448. Retires and is heard of no more, 449
- Mengu, the grandson of Sheybani, his reign and successors, ii. 706
- Kutnetik, circle, and the chief place of that name in Yenesei province, described, xiii. 48. Two frontier forts, ib.
- Kutuku sent against Jalaloddin, and defeated by him, ii. 315. His stratagem frustrated, 316
- Kuturi's brave revenge of her husband's death, ii. 268
- Kwan-mu, Quam-mu, the 50th emperor of Japan, his reign, defeats some invaders, iv. 55
- Kwassan, or Quassan, the 65th emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Kwo-gien, the 96th emperor of Japan, iv. 59
- II. the 99th emperor, iv. 59
- Kwogoku, the 36th emperor of Japan, iv. 54
- Kwo-mio Go, or Gottō-Mio, the 111th emperor of Japan, iv. 62. Death, ib.
- Kya's bloody reign in China, occasioned by his wicked empress, iii. 682. Dethroned for his cruelty, and ingratitude to his restorer, 683. Defeat, exile, and death, ib.
- Kyang-hay, a city of Laos, its situation, iii. 287
- Kyang-nan, a province of China, described, iii. 527. Its vast tribute and manufactures, 528. Commerce, chief cities, &c. ib.
- Kyang-seng, a province of North Laos, iii. 291
- Kyang-shin, his brave defence of Lo-yang, ii. 339. Bravery and death, 344
- Kyang-si, a poor province of China described, pestered by wild free-booters, iii. 530 (S). Inhabitants, why despised for their frugality, 531 (T). Fine porcelain manufacture, ib. Cities, ib.
- Kyang-tsai, his brave defence of Yang-chew-fu, and death, ii. 378
- Kya-tze-tau causes the ruin of the Song empire, ii. 346 (T)
- a worthless minister of the Song, ii. 360. Makes peace with the new Mogul Khan, 361. Promotes an unfair peace with the Song, ib. Treachery to the Song and Mungl Khan, 363. Exchanges the paper-money for a worse, 366. Singular vanity, 370. Proposal of peace to Pe-yen rejected, 372. In great distress, and flies from the Mungls, 373. Turned out by the empress, ib.
- Kyen-chang, a chief city of Kyang-si, iii. 532
- Kyang-vang, emperor of China, his reign, with two odd sects starting up and quelled, iii. 694 (V)
- Kyen-ven-ti, dethroned and murdered by Hew-king, iii. 710
- afterwards Kau-tsu-ven-ti, dethrones the emperor, and founds the 12th dynasty, iii. 711
- II. emperor of the 21st dynasty, opposed by his uncles, iii. 725. Invaded by Younglo, and burnt in his palace, ibid.
- Kyen-vu seizes on the Korean throne, and assassinated, iii. 753
- Kyernus and Gybutus succeed their father Cunossus in Lithuania, xii. 625. Their exploits, ib.
- Kyew-kyang, a chief city of Kyang-si, iii. 532
- Kylos sent Abuna into Abyssinia, with his reception there, vi. 66 (I). And opposed by the empress, and forced to steal back into Egypt, 67
- Kyo-lyen vanquished by the Mungls, ii. 352
- Kyu, Thomas, a Chinese and Christian general, his success against the Tartars, iii. 735



## L.

**L**ABEZ mountains described, vii. 227

Labyrinth castle, in Egypt, and Lucas's account of it fabulous, vi. 18. Described by Pocock, ib. Conjectures concerning it, and why built without any timber, 19

Ladislaus, St. his regulations about the Jews, v. 536

— of Sicily, crowned king of Hungary, which he immediately quits, ix. 700. Surprises Rome, the pope and his cardinals escaping with difficulty, 705. Marries the daughter of a rich Sicilian count, x. 471. He divorces Constantia, her bearing this reverse of fortune, and marriage to another husband, with her declaration, 472 (S). Succeeds in Naples, and recovery from poison, but stammers till his death, ib. Besieges Naples without effect, ib. Conquels in Naples, he crushes the barons, and marries Mary, sister to the king of Cyprus, 473. Accepts the kingdom of Hungary, and is crowned, but returns to Naples, and why he drops that crown, 474. The death of his queen and pope Boniface, ib. Marches with a body of troops to Rome, and his views there, ib. Seizes on the principality of Tarento, ib. Excommunicated, and an accommodation concluded, ib. His troops repulsed from Rome, but afterwards he enters it in triumph, and assumes a pompous title, ib. The Romans openly revolt, but he again makes himself master of the city of Rome, and invades Tuscany, 475. The council of Pisa chuse a third pope Alexander V. who excommunicates Ladislaus, ib. Pope John excommunicates and publishes a croisade against him, 476. Yet concludes a peace with him, ib. He nevertheless surprises and pillages Rome, with the whole ecclesiastical state, and his expedition against Florence now stopt, ib. Takes Rome, and expels pope Boniface, with Ladislaus's ambition, xi. 67 (L). But dies of poison, 75

Ladislaus II. accepts the administration of Hungary, but not the title of king, xv. 384. Accession of Dalmatia and Croatia, how effected, ib. Defeats the Chuni, and the occasion, ib. Concludes peace with the Russians and Poles, ib. Preparing for the croisade, he dies, 385

— III. king of Hungary, defeats Othogar, who is killed, xv. 392. Excommunicated for oppressing the Christians, and acknowledges his errors, ib. Invaded annually by the Cumani, whom he defeats in the Krapak mountains, who, with the Tartars, ravage the country, 393. Is stabbed by a Cuman woman, ib.

— IV. of Bohemia, chosen king of Hungary, the pope's right to dispose of the kingdom being refused, xv. 393. Goes back to Bohemia, and the pope sends a legate, and mutual excommunications, 394

— V. of Naples, declared king of Hungary, appoints a viceroy, xv. 399. Quits Hungary on Sigismund's approach, who had been released, ib.

— Posthumous son of Albert, crowned king of Hungary, when four months old, xi. 91. xv. 400. Also acknowledged king of Bohemia, ib. Sent for from the emperor, against whom the states declare war for refusing to deliver him up, 402. Corvin made governor during his minority, ib. The king is at last delivered to his subjects, ib. The Turks besieging Belgrade, are defeated with great loss by Corvin, 403, who dies soon after, ib. His son succeeds in the government, but put to death by the king, though he pardoned him on the eucharist, ib. Going to celebrate his nuptials, he dies, ib.

— king of Bohemia, and two governors appointed during his minority, xv. 459. Crown'd at Prague, and he dies, ib. Several competitors for the crown, ib.

— duke of Austria, dies without children, and succeeded by Frederic, xv. 475

— king of Poland, why engaged in a war with the Teutonic knights, who are defeated, and the consequences, xi. 70. Peace between him and the Teutonic knights, 74. But joins with the emperor against them, and the conditions, ib. Succeeds on Podiebrad's death, in Bohemia, and is crowned at Prague, 100. Succeeds to Hungary, with whom the emperor makes peace, 114

Ladoga, lake, xiii. 5

Ladog, a river of Algiers, vii. 213

Ladrones, or Marianne islands, where sit, iv. 78. sub note. When, and by whom discovered, with their names, number, nature, &c. 225. Cattle, fruits, &c. peculiar to them. 228 (D). Its archipelago from what probably formed, 230 (F). Their soil, climate, &c. 231. Strange inhabitants, ib. Excessive vanity, and ignorant of the use of fire, 232. (G). The women of superior endowments to the

men, 233. Privileges prejudicial to men, and the effects towards profligacy herefrom, ib. Houses, &c. 234. Martial discipline, ib. (H). Mechanical genius, 235. (I). Swift vessels, and manner of navigating, ib. note. Motiv character, 236. How first discovered, 237. When first entered by the Spaniards, 238. Barbarous customs among them, 239. Arrival of captain Cavendish among them, ib. Pathetic mourning, 240 (L). Arrival of the first Dutch ship, ib. Receive Spanish missionaries, 241, and a Spanish governor, with the horrid massacre of the missionaries, ib. (M). Take up arms against the Spaniards, 243. Reduced by Don Joseph de Quiroya, and their low condition since, 244. (O). Their importance neglected by the Spaniards, 246. Danger of their falling into other hands, 247. Their vast consequence to the Spaniards, 251, towards further discoveries northward, 252. Rich countries in the neighbourhood, 254. Islands lying south of them, 265, by whom discovered, 266 (A). on the south-east, 267. That on the south-west in danger of being forgotten, ib.

Lady, extraordinary instance of courage in one, x. 269 (H)

— Spanish, her brutal courage in St. Jago, xiv. 320

Lael, a caravan robber, defeated and slain, iii. 68

Lag, laws in Sweden, by whom compiled, xii. 231, (B).

Laguira, Waterhouse fails in his attempt on it, xv. 309

Lahian Banu oppose Mahomet's forces, i. 63

Laho, on the Ivory Coast, various dispositions of the natives there, vii. 4

Lahor, or Lahur, plundered by Timur Bek, ii. 549

— province in Indostan, described, iii. 15

Laila, the favourite sultana of Muley Ishmael, her jealousy against his favourite son, and stratagem to ruin him, vii. 190. Raises a revolt at Mequinez, 194

Lake of the two mountains, in Canada, xiv. 559

— governor of Nevis, his pious character, xv. 249

Lakonsevan, a city of Siam described, iii. 316

Lakka Diva, islands of Malabar, iii. 163 (H).

Laland, account of, xi. 651

Lalleman made visitor of all the European priories, with his success in England, vii. 394

Lamalmon, a dreadful high rock in Abyssinia, described, and beautiful shape, &c. vi. 201

Lamas of Tibet, introduce their religion into Mongalia, ii. 259. Their worship, office, &c. and pretend to magic, physic, &c. 260. Enemies to the sect of Tau, 384. An impious one condemned for horrid crimes, ib. Pardoned by Hu-pi lay, 390

— who, vii. 183. When first in credit among the Mungls, ii. 353 (C). Their extreme insolence unpunished, 401.

Twenty-four of them put to death for treason, 402. Insolence suppressed by the throne, 410. Revolt against Tautemur, 414. Swarm about the court of Towhantemur, and debauch him with their pretended magic, &c. 423. Driven from court by Polotemur, 431. Difference from the Brammans in India, iii. 306. Origin from Tibet, ib.

Lambert, M. de la Motte, sent ambassador to Siam, iii. 369. Audience of the king, 370.

— duke of Spoleto, on the emperor's death, claims the empire, and marches to Rome with an army, ix. 528. The pope imprisoned, but set at liberty, goes to France, ib. who crowns Lewis the Stammerer at Troyes, ib. Succeeding his father Vido, obliges Berengarius to leave Pavia, 532. Declared emperor, 533. Slain, and many of the Italian nobles offer their crown to Lewis, son of Boson, and king of Arles, 534

Lamberville, father, why dismissed from among the Iroquois, xiv. 624. His deliverance to whom owing, ib.

Lamboi defeated at Kempen by the Weimar troops and Hessians, xi. 269. and xii. 346

Lamelein, David, a Jewish impostor, his imprisonment and death, v. 593. sub (O).

Lamiranda sent to defend fort St. Elme, vii. 481

Lamo, isle and kingdom, where seated, vi. 340. Its king headed by the Portuguese, ib. The island and kingdom described, 345

Lampedosa, a ruined island, its antiquities described, vii. 376

Lancaster, his voyage into the East-Indies, iv. 291

— duke of, embassy to him from the king of Castile, viii. 68

Account of his expedition, ib. (X). in fine. With a large army traversing France, arrives at Bourdeaux, ix. 113

Lancerota, an island of the Canaries, described, vi. 145. Its strong castle, ib.

Landau taken by the king of the Romans, xi. 325

Landen taken by the allies, ix. 486. By the king of the Romans,



- mans, xi. 325. Its brave defence by Laubanie, and surrender, 329. Total defeat of the allies there under king William, whose address prevents any important advantage, ix. 473.
- Landen, the allies defeated there by Luxemburg, who takes Huy, xi. 314
- battle lost by the allies, xi. 642
- Landgrave, its origin, xi. 56 (C).
- Landi chosen gonfalonier by the Florentine mob, and his character, xiii. 341 (A). Magnanimity, ib. Subdues the rabble, with a new magistracy regularly chosen, and a law against a president being chosen from the lower people, 342
- Landi, Michael, commendations of his conduct, &c. xiii. 342
- Lando, the banditti under him ravage Italy, ix. 681. The grand company under him defeated in the Appennines, and himself taken, 682. Army of freebooters under him invade Naples, x. 465
- Lando, Pietro, the 78th doge of Venice, succeeds Gritti, x. 343. Senate's preparations for war, ib. Death and character, 348
- Landreci invested by Anhalt Dessau, and covered by Eugene, xi. 356
- Landon, by whom built, xii. 236. Battle of, fought between the two northern monarchs in person, 365
- Landolph, sole prince of Benevento, x. 389. Between him and the Greeks arises a war, with the occasion, in which he entirely defeats them at Ascoli, and Puglia wrested from them, ib. Submits to the Greeks, and dies, 390
- II. succeeds his father Landolph in Benevento, x. 390
- Lane, captain, his progress in making discoveries from Roanoke in North America, xiv. 485. Treachery of Wingina, a petty sovereign, to him, and his distress thereon, what, ib. Discovers a conspiracy of the natives, and Wingina taken prisoner, ib.
- Laneau the missionary arrives at Siam, iii. 369. Vain attempt to convert the king, ib.
- Langon, Adrian, admiral of Malta, his success against the Corsairs, vii. 524
- Lang-chew-fu taken by the Mungls, ii. 358
- Langherta surrendered to the Mungls, ii. 307
- Langhorne, Sir William, his injudicious choice of the spot for fort St. George, iv. 388 (L).
- Langland, account of, xi. 651
- Langton, Stephen, dispute about him between the king of England and Pope, ix. 616
- Lanjang, a city of Laos, its situation, iii. 287. Described, also its large and noble palace, 290
- Lanjans, or Lanchangs, their kingdom in Laos described, iii. 288. Its climate, soil, &c. with its plenty of rice, &c. 289. Excellent gums, ivory, &c. and mines, ib. Animals, and other produce, provinces and cities, 290. Inhabitants described, 293. Their many virtues, and their vices, 294. Hunting of men, their diet, dress, &c. ib. Aversion against polygamy, their marriages, &c. 295. Belief of transmigration, ib. Trade, language, and character, their religion by whom corrupted, 296. Their schools, and notions of Providence, ib. Of the world's origin, ib. Blacks, 297. Account of its peopling, ib. Of the government, ib. Absurd fables concerning the God of the Christians, 298, and his son being crucified for him in the West, with a burlesque on the doctrine of the missionaries, ib. Notion about heaven and hell, 299. Priests, 300. Their arrogance, cruelty, and knavery, 302. Favoured by the kings, 303. Their superstition, ib. Monarchs supreme over the Talapoys, and partiality to them, ib. Impositions on the superstitious vulgar, 304. Deity, ib. Preach up charity above all, 305. Ways of forcing alms, ib. Government, 308. Few laws, and tribes under their heads, 309. Administration of justice, viceroy, and other officers, ib. Seldom seen in public, and their visitation of temples, 310. Audience, antient state independent, and monarchy when begun, ib. Becomes subject to Ava, recover their liberty, and behaviour to his ambassador, revolt, and invade Siam, 360
- Lanjans, capital of the kingdom, repopled by the natives, iii. 310
- Lanoja, viceroy of Naples, defeats the French near Pavia, takes Francis prisoner, and carries him to Spain, x. 499.
- Lansquenets, number of them in Francis's army, and what, x. 308 (B). Obstinacy of French and Swiss in the action of Marignan, ib. Both desist at night, and draw breath in the same station, ib. At break of day they charge afresh, 309
- Lanterns, the famous festival in China, described, with the immense numbers and richness of them, iii. 625 (D). Origin of that feast unknown, ib. Some conjectures offered about it, 669. sub (N).
- Lanthorn-castle surrenders to the Genoese, who demolish it, with the pope's artful management, ix. 202
- Lanthu, the founder of a sect in Ton-king, iii. 441 (F).
- Lanuza, justice, beheaded, viii. 272.
- Lao, a Talapoyan university, iii. 302
- Laodicea surrenders to John Dukas, ii. 209. Fortified by John Comnenus, 216
- or Ladikia, taken by the Moslems, i. 23. Given to the Greek emperor, ii. 233
- Laos, or Lawos, kingdom, where situated, iii. 285. Whence so called, with its mountains, rivers, &c. 286. Provinces, cities, with an itinerary of it, 287. Geography, and maps of it imperfect, ib. Accounts of travellers no less defective, 288. Its division into northern and southern, ib. Southern part (See Lan-jang.) ibid. Northern, 291. Provinces, cities, &c. ib. Religion, priests, doctrines, &c. 296
- Lapland, Russian, and its inhabitants, described, xiii. 7.
- Lapotinski, ambassador from Batori to Basilowitz II. czar, his extraordinary behaviour, xiii. 117.
- Laquejo islands, where situated, conquered by the Japanese, iv. 61
- Lar, kingdom, subdued by Shah Abbas, ii. 613
- Lara, Rabbi David de, a learned Jew at Amsterdam, his works, v. 614. sub note.
- Alvarode, regent of Castile, universally hated, vii. 707. Bold step and forgery to turn this hatred from himself on Berengara, ib. King Henry killed at Palentia by the fall of a tile upon his head, ib. Endeavours still to preserve the sovereignty, but in vain, ib.
- taken prisoner by king Ferdinand, vii. 708. Has his liberty upon surrendering the places in his hands, ib. But relapsing into his old intrigues, is forced to quit Castile, and fly to Alonso of Leon, ib. Is the author of a new war, and dies miserably, 709. His brother Ferdinand retires to Morocco, ib. Retires to Portugal, but received into Sancho's favour, viii. 20
- John Nunez de, declared a traitor by the states, surrenders Lerma after a long siege to the king, who pardons and prefers him, viii. 43
- Manriques de, on recalling Alva to Spain, succeeds as viceroy of Naples, x. 505
- Larach, in Africa, betrayed by the Moreos, vii. 285. Taken by storm, 340
- Lari, a noted village on the Gold-coast, vi. 654
- Larsz Kagge, his bravery at Ratibon, xi. 237
- Lascaris assists Azzo'ddin against his brother Rokno'ddin, ii. 234
- Paulo de Castelar, grand master of Malta, vii. 505. Forms the inhabitants into regular regiments, and distressed by the viceroy of Sicily, 506. Partiality to the French nation, ib. Complaint against the bishop redressed, 507. Invaded by Sultan Ibrahim, 508. Just complaints against the pope, and other great losses to the order, 509. Builds the strong fort of St. Agatha, and new complaints against the viceroy of Sicily, 510. Partiality to the French, and a library erected in the new city; severe orders against them, and purchases the island of St. Christopher, ib. Orders French ships to be fired upon, 511. His galleys affronted at Genoa, and gives a double defeat to the Turks, ib. Dies in the 97th year of his age, with his grand monument, ib.
- Lascaris lays the foundation of the royal library in France, and chairs erected for Hebrew and Greek professors, ix. 219
- Lashkari, the 4th Shah of Hormuz, his reign, ii. 682.
- Lassenius, Lieutenant, in what place of Siberia he wintered, xiii. 52
- Lastan revolters defeated by the emperor Susneus, vi. 299
- Lastra taken, xiii. 528
- Lat, or Al Lat, the famous idol and temple in South-India, destroyed by Soltan Mahmud, and 50,000 votaries sacrificed, and vast treasures plundered, i. 630
- Latabi, and other inland kingdoms in Guinea, described, vi. 675.
- Lateran, a general council holden there, with the ordinance forbidding the investiture of churches from a layman, and one of its decrees, opposed by all the clergy of Germany, ix. 564. xiii. 475. Interdicts France, and a monitory for abrogating the Pragmatic Sanction, x. 63. Restores the schismatic cardinals, 64. Acknowledged by France, and a decree against the parliament of Provence, and certain philosophers, 65. Indulgences are granted for a war against the Turks, &c. ib. Its dissolution a measure condemned by



- by several of the fathers, 67. (X) Decides the consideration of Corsican Bishops, as belonging to the Pope, 538. Annuls the treaty between the Pope and emperor Henry V. which occasions fresh confusion, 663. Its several decrees, ix. 604, 620
- Lathgartha, a young lady of Norway, her bravery, xi. 684
- Lau, a river of Kamboja, described, with Van Wustof's passage of it, iii. 410
- Laval, Francis, sent bishop to Canada, xiv. 597. His first act of power, ib. Prepares with father Lallemont for going on conversions, ib. Their success among the Abenaguais and Esquimaux, and the probable motive among the savages, what, ib.
- Laubanie, brave defence of Landau by him, and its surrender, xi. 329.
- Laudara, king of Kamboja, invaded by the Siamese, iii. 416. Assisted by the Spaniards against them, ib. His son restored to the crown by them, and their fatal end, 417
- Laudonniere sent to Charles Fort in Florida, with a protestant reinforcement, xv. 72. His account of two voyages preferable to that of de Morgues, ib. (S). Arrival in Florida, and worshipped by Parauusti Saturiova, and the latter's friendly offices, ib. (T). Intelligence from a very aged Parauusti, what, ib. Builds fort Caroline, and settles near the mouth of the May, ib. Saturiova's dissimulation, also that of the other Indians, 73. Is urged by Saturiova to fulfil his promise, ib. Robs him of his prisoners, ib. Saturiova's dissimulation, and his revenge prevented by an uncommon tempest attributed to the French, ib. Sends the captives beforementioned home to Outina, 74. Who, by means of a French party, gains a victory, ib. Mutiny against him at fort Caroline, ib. His wife conduct, ib. His further discoveries by la Roche-Ferriere and Gambie, about the riches of Florida, 75. (U) Discoveries by Ottigny, ib. Assists Parauusti Outina, and the French beat his enemies, 76. Distress of the colony, ib. Arrests Outina, who is released with provisions, which the Indians retake, ib. Is relieved by captain Hawkins with great humanity, ib. Who sells him a vessel, ib. Several French ships arrive under Ribaut, who acquaints him with the accusations in France against him, 77. Escapes into the woods on the Spaniards taking fort Caroline, and after great distress gains the French ships in the river, 78. Sails for Europe, and lands at Bristol, with his cold reception in France, 79
- Laurence, or Don Lorenzo Almeyda, his son's brave attack of Quiloa, vi. 352. Dreadful one upon Monbaso, 356
- St. gulph, its extent, xiv. 550. River, described, 551. Its navigation, where uncertain, ib. Peculiar fish, 561. Successful voyages of some French adventurers to it, 569
- Lauretano appointed Venetian admiral, and sent against Genoa, who gains a complete victory, x. 240
- Lauson, M. de, succeeds d'Aillebout, governor of Canada, and his character, xiv. 590
- Lauson, governor of Trois Rivieres, attacks a body of Agniers, whom he defeats, xiv. 591
- Lauterburg revolting, is obliged to surrender, and the troubles of Alsace appeased, xi. 10
- Lau-ti-sha forced to leave the Ywen court, ii. 430. Advanced by the emperor, 431. Put to death, ib.
- Lauteru, a Chilian, and page to Valdivia, his treachery, xiv. 322. Made lieutenant general by his countrymen, ib. Destroys La Conception, but forced to raise the siege of Imperial, 323. Killed at St. Jago, ib.
- Lautrec's severe government in Milan, and bad treatment of marshal Trivulce, ix. 207. Forces Colonna's lines with loss, and the consequences, 210. This occasions enquiries into the cause, and acts of injustice thereupon, ib. Reduces Genoa, and great part of the Milanese, 218. Takes Pavia by assault, and the cruel revenge of the French for their former defeat, ibid. Reduces all Naples except Gaeta and the capital, also the imperial viceroy beaten and killed at sea, ib. New turn of affairs in Italy, through an epidemic sickness and otherwise, ib. His army distressed before Naples, x. 80. Brescia and Verona besieged by the Venetians and French under him, 311. But the sudden approach of the Imperialists obliges them to quit both, ib. Besieges Milan, which he turns into a blockade, 317. Invests Pavia, but a reinforcement from Colonna obliges him to raise the siege, ib. Sent with an army across the Alps, with his successes in taking Bosco and Alexandria, also the reasons for his slow motions, 328. Defeated at Buoque, xi. 137. xiii. 497. Death, ix. 218. x. 330. xiii. 522.
- Law, remarkable one, passed by the States of Portugal, viii. 460.
- Law, Salique, some account of it, viii. 618 (A).
- that called the regulation of six days, what, xi. 58.
- made at Frankfort for preserving the public peace, and the Suanbian league formed thereupon, xi. 113 (A).
- sumptuary, abolition by the Genoese senators, and the people's demands acquiesced in, x. 600
- Mr. projects the Mississippi company, with the heads of his patent, what, xv. 23, 608. Vast circulation and stocks, 609. Mississippi bubble breaks, and how narrowly he escapes, 29, 610
- Lawes, Sir Nicholas, governor of Jamaica, xv. 297. Revives martial law there, and his representation to the assembly, 300. Reclaims pirates from the governor of Trinidad in Cuba, ib. But refused, ib. His proclamation for apprehending two of them, discountenanced by the people of Jamaica, and at home, 301. Breach between him and the assembly, with the occasion, ib. Fresh alterations, ib.
- Lawrence, major, takes the command of the English forces in India, v. 370
- Sent to reduce the French rebels of Annapolis, who find protection from la Corne, governor of Louisbourg, xiv. 701. Beats them out of their intrenchments, and are still sheltered, 702
- fort, St. built by the English, and where, xiv. 702.
- Lay, bloody battle there, ii. 503
- Lazarus, St. Archipelago. See Philippine Islands.
- Lazarus made commander of the confederacy against Morad, but defeated and taken prisoner, v. 164. Beheaded by Bajazet, 166
- Lazica betrayed by Sergius to the Arabs, i. 339
- Le, a province of North Laos, iii. 292
- League, holy, the pope's view of forming one, and the Venetian senate's equivocal answer, x. 314
- of the Rhine, treaty concluded between France and several princes so called, xi. 278
- army passes the Adda, and reduces Milan, &c. through Lautrec's negligence, xiii. 494. Their successes, 497
- Leagues, how sworn to by the Mungls, ii. 270, 274
- Leaguers, truce between them and the king of Navarre, with the remarkable situation of Montmorency, ix. 284. At Paris disown the king from a decision of the Sorbonne, 292. Make the duke d'Aumale governor, and form a new parliament, with its proceedings, ib. Several places declare for the league, and in this distress the princes of the blood, &c. repair to the king, who removes to Tours, ib.
- Leake, Sir John, seizes on Sardinia and Minorca, ix. 462
- Learning encouraged by Ayyuli-palipata, ii. 404
- Lechus, or Lecht, the first Polish duke, xii. 442. Founder of Gnesna and Posen, ib. (A).
- II. succeeds his brother Cracus II. duke of Poland, whom he had assassinated, but soon deposed and deserted, xii. 443
- III. a peasant, on discovering the fraud in a competition for the sovereign power in Poland, at a horse-racing, is made duke, xii. 445. Wise administration and humility at all public ceremonies, and his other excellent qualities and death, ib.
- IV. succeeds his father Lechus III. in the sovereign power of Poland, xii. 445. His extraordinary valour and clemency, with his impolitic act as to his natural sons, ib.
- V. a minor, succeeds his father Ziemovitus, xii. 448. A regency appointed, and his own wife and pacific administration, with his death, ib.
- VI. or the Fair, a minor, is elected to the ducal throne of Poland, under the guardianship of the bishop and palatine of Cracow, xii. 467. Restored to the ducal throne of Poland, in room of Mieczslaus the Old, 469. His unfortunate reign from an invasion of the Tartars and Russians, with his catastrophe by a conspiracy, ib. (K).
- VII. or the Black, succeeds Boleslaus V. in the ducal throne of Poland, with the foreign and domestic troubles of this reign, xii. 470. He is excommunicated, and on what occasion, but restored by the king of Hungary, ib. A second irruption of foreigners accompanied with large dogs, but defeated; he dies without issue, and his character, 471
- Leganez, marquis de, suspected and arrested, with his character, viii. 357. Beaten at Lerida, which finishes his disgraces and those of Olivarez, ix. 409
- Legaspi, Michael, subdues the Philippine Islands, iv. 178. Enters the bay of Luçon, takes and rebuilds Manilla, ib.
- Legate sent to accommodate the differences between Castile and Arragon, but to little purpose, viii. 53
- his letter has a different effect from what he intended, ix. 578



- Legate, his success in preaching against the emperor's lieutenant in Italy, x. 203  
 —excommunicates the king and queen of Denmark, and this dispute, how ended, xii. 40 (A)  
 —his treachery from the confidence of king Christian II. xii. 136  
 Leghorn given to the Genoese, x. 568. Sold to the Florentines, 570. Its description, xiii. 270. Light-house, *ibid.*  
 Legions, in France, by whom appointed, and what, ix. 222  
 Leicester, earl of, made governor-general of the Provinces, with his weak and arbitrary administration, xi. 432. His oppressive decrees about commerce, 433. Makes a campaign in Guelderland, *ib.* Loud complaints of the States against him, who is called to the English parliament, and fails home, 434. Altercations and recriminations between him and the States, *ib.* Returns to Holland, *ib.* Clamour against him, why renewed, and disputes between him and the States, and their masterly remonstrances, *ib.* Project for seizing on Leyden, but recalled, and divested of his government, 435. Pardon, and the articles of accusation against him, *ib.* On his death the towns revolted from the States submit, 436  
 Leichtenberg landgraviate, account of, xv. 468  
 Leimleiri, David, subterfuge to lengthen the promised time of the Messiah, v. 602 (P)  
 Leipzig, battle of, xii. 328. Mistake by Gustavus in not pursuing the victory there, and the reasons for his measures afterwards, 329  
 —account of that city, xv. 461  
 Lekesians reduced by Timur Bek, ii. 517  
 Lemos, count, appointed viceroy of Naples, x. 512. Increases provisions and the public treasury by his wise administration, 513. He builds a magnificent edifice for the university of Naples at a vast expence, and encourages learned men, *ib.* Erects several public works, *ib.*  
 Lempta province, described, and desert of Yguida in it, vii. 103  
 —bay, in Tunis, described, vii. 304  
 Lena river described, xiii. 29  
 Lencicia, palatine of, is seized by a party of Augustus, and Lubomirski reconciled to the latter, xii. 594  
 Lencornet, a sort of cuttle fish in Champlain-lake, xiv. 560  
 Leng, kingdom in North Laos, where seated, and its produce, iii. 292. Rich mines and commerce, *ib.* Capital, *ib.* Tributary to Ava, *ib.*  
 Lens taken, the battle there, in which Condé gains a complete victory over the archduke; afterwards Lens and Furnes retaken, ix. 427  
 Leo, the Greek emperor, his noble defence of Constantinople, and stratagem to burn the Sharif's fleet, i. 352  
 —a famous mathematician raised by Theophilus, i. 478. Made bishop of Thessalonica, *ib.*  
 —Tripolites, the Arab admiral, his conquests in the Greek empire, defeated by Andronicus Ducas, i. 507  
 —emir of Tripoli, his ravages on the Egean coasts, i. 512.  
 —a Tripolitan, defeated at sea by the Christians, i. 520  
 —Opus, his fruitless attempt on Sicily, i. 640  
 —Isaurus persecutes the Jews, v. 527  
 —de Modena, a famous Jewish Rabbi and writer, v. 598. Puerile way of fixing the Hebrew pronunciation and other works, 599 (E)  
 —Africanus, his account of Africa defective, v. 652  
 —pope, his embassy to Charlemagne, shews that prelate's dependency, ix. 516  
 —VIII. chosen pope, recognizes the emperor's rights, but John refusing the papacy, deposes Leo, and is murdered, x. 400  
 —IX. engages the Normans, is entirely defeated and taken prisoner, but entering into treaty with them is set at liberty, and returns to Rome, where he dies, x. 401. ix. 559  
 —X. chosen pope in room of Julius II. with universal satisfaction, and his worthy character, x. 64 (U). The schismatic cardinals submit to him, with his expensive coronation in the Lateran, *ib.* His arbitration between the emperor and Venetians ineffectual, *ib.* Endeavours to reconcile the French and Swiss ineffectual, 65. Treaty of peace concluded by his mediation between France and England, and his design for expelling the Spaniards from Naples, but despairing of that, he renews his alliance with the emperor and Catholic king, *ib.* Accedes to an alliance with the emperor, Spain, and the Swiss, against Francis I. 66. Concludes a treaty with Francis, but refuses the king's request in behalf of the duke of Urbino, *ib.* Dissuades the Hungarians from any treaty with the Turks, and seizing on the duke of Urbino's territories, gives them to his nephew Laurence, 67. A plot by the cardinals against him discovered, and the conspirators punished, *ib.* A promotion of thirty-one new cardinals without regard to merit, *ib.* Though a peace prevails over Italy to the pope's advantage, his usurpations are opposed in Germany, 68. Cites Luther to Rome, 69. xi. 133. Endeavours to promote a general crusade against the Turks, but the secular princes refuse to act, and the Spanish clergy to pay the tithes, x. 69. Renews his bull for indulgences, *ib.* Keeps possession of Florence, and his design of seizing on Ferrara ineffectual, 70. Bull condemning Luther, who with his followers is excommunicated, 71. Renews Luther's excommunications, and for Henry the VIII's defence confers the title of Defender of the Faith on him, *ib.* Fomenta a war, and makes alliance with the emperor and England against France, *ib.* His conduct in the contest between Francis and Charles for the empire, xiii. 487. Endeavours to seize Ferrara, but fails, with his shameful sale of indulgences for supplying his boundless expence, 489. His great prosperity and that of his dominions, with his preparations for war, and views, *ib.* A secret treaty between him and Francis, with its terms, which Francis refuses to ratify, *ib.* His league with the emperor, and its contents, also formidable preparations for invading the Milanese, 490. Unaccountable distribution in the command of the league's army, and junction of their troops, 491. Siege of Parma proposed, but rejected, is resumed, and part of it taken, with the soldiers plunder, and its effect, *ib.* Is shamefully abandoned, *ib.* The Germans mutiny, with the pope's grief and indignation at so many disgraceful events, *ib.* Recovers his courage, 492. His death, x. 316. xiii. 494  
 Leo XI. elected pope, after rejecting Baronius, Bellarmine, &c. in room of Clement VIII. with an account and character of him, x. 131. Dies soon after, and the faction in the conclave, *ib.*  
 Leodrisio's intrigues in Milan, xiv. 73. Is defeated and made prisoner, *ib.* The loss on both sides, and a church built on the field of battle, with a representation of the action on its walls, 74  
 Leogane described, xv. 359  
 Leon and Castile, history from Ferdinand I. to Ferdinand II. vii. 642 & seq.  
 —capital of Nicaragua, described, xiv. 443. Destroyed by buccaneers, *ib.*  
 —Ponce de, his expedition to Florida, xv. 63. Ceremony of possessing Florida, which he took to be an island, 64  
 Leona Sierra in Guinea described, vii. 18. Famous river, 22. Climate, 23. Islands, *ib.* Produce 24. Dress, and genius, 25. Religion, 26  
 Leonezio, the Venetian general, storms Socianna, x. 260  
 Leonora of Castile clapt in prison, and the king consents to her death, viii. 49. Her sons, Henry and Tello, retire from court, *ib.*  
 —queen of Ferdinand of Portugal, her surprising influence and address, viii. 415. Her infamous behaviour to the king's brother, and her own sister, *ib.* Carries on the war by the assistance of the English, under the earl of Cambridge, 416. Her gallant Andeyro killed, 419. Demands support from Pedro of Coimbra, 435. Her deplorable death, 436  
 —countess of Foix, proclaimed queen of Navarre, after her father Juan's death, viii. 608. Short reign and death, with her numerous posterity, and account of them, 609  
 Leontini reduced by the Molesims, i. 469  
 Leontius, a Greek general, his success against the Arabs, i. 331  
 Leopold, of Austria, invades the Trevisan, but defeated, and peace concluded, x. 220. Ravages all about Spire, then marches into Bavaria, and burns Landsberg, while Frederic amuses himself at Basil, xi. 31. Advancing against the Swiss is defeated at Morgarten, 32. Continues the war in several skirmishes, with various success, while several places in Alsace submit to Lewis of Bavaria, 35. Attempts to excite a revolt among the Bohemians against John their king, but frustrated through a reinforcement sent to the king, and an accommodation between him and his nobles, *ib.* Who resolves to exchange his crown for the palatinate of the Rhine, *ib.* From a series of disappointments sends the imperial ornaments to Lewis of Bavaria, which he receives with great indifference, 38; but listens to the advice



- vice of the archbishop of Mentz, and makes peace with the princes of Austria, and some articles of the treaty, *ib.* (G). Overcome, and slain by the Swiſs, 62
- Leopold raises the ſiege of Hailbron, and retakes other places, ix. 416. Claims to the Spaniſh crown, 478
- archduke, ſeizes Prague, xi. 183. His ſucceſſes, 276. Crowned king of Hungary, 277. Sends an army to aſſiſt Caſimir, *ib.* Unanimouſly elected emperor, 278. Succeeds his father Ferdinand III. *ib.* xv. 476. Upon an embaiſſy from him the Dutch renew former treaties with the Imperial court, and promiſe to aſſiſt the Danes againſt the Swedes, xi. 278. Prepares for a war with the Turks, 280. Obtains aſſiſtance from foreign powers, 282. Marries Margaret Thereſa of Spain, 283. Aſks aſſiſtance from the Imperial diet, 286. Reſolves to aſſiſt the States General, 288. Suppreſſes the office of palatine for Hungary, and appoints a viceroy, 293. Prepares for a war with the French, 299. Truce concluded between him and France, *ib.* Makes a league againſt the Turks with John Sobieſki, *ib.* Prevents the diet at Ratibon from agreeing to a truce with France, 302. Gets aſſiſtance from the ſtates of the empire, and promiſes from the pope againſt the Turks, 303. Alliance between him and ſeveral ſtates of the empire, 305. His two propoſitions to the diet at Augſburg, 310. Prepares a fleet for acting on the Danube, with his great embarraſſment for want of money, 315. Gives the title of king of Prussia to the elector of Brandenburg, 320. Death, character, and iſſue, 330 (B)
- town, ſurrenders, with the heavy contributions raiſed, and immenſe plunder taken, xii. 593. New conferences ſet on foot there, and the confederate army reduced to ſubmiſſion, with the occaſion, 600
- Leovigilde, king of the Viſigoths, his progeny, and marries his dead brother's wife, vii. 537. Raiſes his ſons to the rank of princes, and conteſt with them, 538 (T). Wars with Hermenegilde, 539. Imprifons him, *ib.* Puts him to death, and his wars with the Suevi, *ib.* Sends his ſon Reccared to defend his French dominions, dies, worn out with age, and whether converted or not, 540 (X). His character diſcuſſed, *ib.*
- Lepanto taken by the Turks, who enter Dalmatia, x. 283. Famous battle, in which the Chriſtians under don John of Austria defeat the Turkiſh fleet entirely, viii. 264. x. 371, 372. Doria's treachery, 373. Bravery of the Chriſtians, with the loſs of the Turks and confederates, *ib.*
- Leproſy, a dreadful diſeaſe in Carthage, and its odd effect, xiv. 449
- Lercari, pathetic addreſs of that ſenator to the riotous ring-leaders at Genoa, but their abettors interrupt him, x. 600. Bravely ſtands out, with the meaſures purſued by both parties for accompliſhing their ſeveral ends, *ib.*
- Lerma, imputations againſt him, viii. 283. Scheme for ſupporting the power of Spain under him in Italy, 287. Meaſures to ſecure his adminiſtration how ineffectual, 289. Diſgraced, he obtains a cardinal's hat, *ib.* Dies, 294.
- Lero, iſland, deſcribed, v. 393
- Leſbos given to Gataluxi of Genoa, x. 560 (F).
- Leſdiguieres ſucceſs in Savoy, ix. 314. Saves the duke of Savoy from being overwhelmed by Spain, 358. Detached from the Proteſtants by the offer of conſtable, 365. This arduous commiſſion entruſted to the famous Dageant, *ib.* His inconfiderable ſucceſſes, with Spain declaring for Genoa, x. 603. \*
- Leſji, their bloody inroad into Shirwan, and proteſted by Huſſein Shah, ii. 657. Freſh inroad into Shirwan, and horrid cruelties at Shamakiya, 658
- Leſly, ſucceſſes of the Swedes under him, joined by the Heſſians in Guelderland and Weſtphalia, with the ravages of the Auſtrian generals, xi. 243
- Leſnau, famous battle, xiii. 213
- L'Eſterre, in Hiſpaniola, deſcribed, xv. 359
- Letters of intimation in Germany, what, xi. 377
- Lettonia. (See Livonia.) xiii. 14
- Lettonians deſcribed, with their origin, xiii. 15
- Lettum, Count, takes Rhimberg, xi. 326
- Leva's ſcheme for raiſing money, ſucceſs of the war in Naples and the Milaneſe, x. 331
- Leucat beſieged by the Spaniards, but their trenches forced, viii. 299
- Levi, three learned rabbi's of that name, v. 547 (W).
- Ben Gerſhom, his character and wrings, v. 562 (L).
- Nathan, the pretended precursor of Zabathai Tzevi, with his condemnation and eſcape, v. 585
- tribe, ſettled in Shiras, v. 581
- the French general, retreats precipitately from the ſiege of Quebec, xiv. 725
- Leungon, a city of Pegu, iii. 239
- Leverry's death and bold behaviour at Geneva, xiv. 17
- Leutklick, account of it, xv. 445
- Lewnaſcept defeats a large body of the enemy, and after ſuſtaining fix aſſaults three days ſucceſſively, he arrives at Charles's camp at Paltowa, xii. 386. The Ruſſians under Czeremetof defeated by him, with his fine manœuvre in the heat of battle, 597. But is forced to retire under the cannon of Riga, *ib.* An advantage gained over the Swedes under him by czar Peter at Leino, yet he makes good his retreat and joins Charles's camp, 607. Ruſſians beaten entirely in Courland by him, xiii. 206. Defeats the Ruſſians under Scheremetow, at Gemaures in Courland, with the loſs of all their artillery, 207
- Lewis Debonnaire, a favourer of the Jews, v. 528. Pulls down all the ſynagogues, 550
- Lewis the Gentle, ſucceeds his father Charlemagne as emperor, viii. 689. Conduct at his entrance upon the adminiſtration, with an account and character of him, *ib.* (A). His extenſive dominions, 690. His three ſons, *ib.* The elder Lothaire declared his coadjutor, *ib.* Conſpiracy of his nephew Bernard, king of Italy, againſt him, defeated, with the puniſhment of him and his aſſociates, 691. Revolt of the Abodrites and Bretons, &c. *ib.* Perſuaded to marry Judith, daughter of duke Guelfe, *ib.* Perſuaded to acknowledge his mal-adminiſtration, and do public penance, 692. Suppreſſes the troubles in Germany and Aquitaine with ſome difficulty, 697. Death and iſſue, 698 (B).
- king of Germany, ſupplants his brother Charles, and aſſumes the title of France, viii. 703, which Charles, by an artful contrivance, recovers very eaſily, *ib.* He dies, and a partition of his dominions among his ſons, Carloman of Bavaria, Lewis of Germany, and Charles the Groſs, 708. Charles the Bald, his ſcheme againſt theſe brothers diſappointed, and himſelf totally defeated, *ib.*
- king of Aquitain, crowned emperor, ix. 518. Pope Stephen crowns him and his queen at Rheims, *ib.* The three elder ſons offended with the partition given their younger brother Charles, 520 (B). Rebellion raiſed againſt the emperor, and on what account, *ib.* Crowned king of Italy by the pope, with the ravages committed about Rome by his army, 522. Benevento divided by Lewis into two dukedoms, *ib.* Lewis now aſſociated with his father in the empire defeats the Saracens, who had invaded Italy, *ib.* A council appointed by him at Teſino, in which a new edict is made with regard to the clergy, and a double election of popes, *ib.* Preſent at the confeſecration of pope Nicholas, to whom he alighted, and walks with his horſe's bridle in his hand, 524. Marches againſt the Saracens, and is obliged to raiſe the ſiege of Bari with loſs, *ib.* The language uſed to the emperor's ambaiſſadors, on pope Adrian II'd's election, *ib.* He takes and deſtroys Bari, *ib.* Crowned king of Lorrain at Rome, *ib.* Takes Capua, and carries St. Germain's body into France, 525. His death in France, and burial at Milan, with his character, 526.
- choſen king of Germany on his father Arnulph's death, ix. 533. Again invited into Italy. and crowned at Pavia, alſo crowned emperor at Rome, *ib.* Obliges Berengarius to fly into Bavaria, *ib.* His reflection at the count of Tuſcany's table, with its effects, 534. Surprized at Verona by Berengarius, his eyes are put out, and he is forced to abdicate, 535. Publishes a manifeſto againſt the pope in his own defence, with treatiſes on eccleſiaſtical and temporal juriſdiction, 666 (D). Enters Italy, and holding a council at Trent, excommunicates the pope, and is crowned at Milan, the pope excommunicating him; receives the crown at Rome from the citizens, and depoſes the pope, 668. Creates a Franciſcan antipope, nameiy, Nicholas V. who with the emperor quits Rome, 669. Returns to Germany, and the antipope apprehended, *ib.* Propoſes to call a council to depoſe the pope, 671. Enters into alliance with France, 674. Subſiſſive conſeſſions make the pope riſe in his demands, *ib.* Killed by a fall from his horſe, 678.
- arriving in Italy, is crowned at Milan, notwithſtanding Robert's oppoſition, alſo at Rome by the deputies of the people, x. 458. How prevented from invading Naples, *ib.* Now acknowledged emperor, xi. 36. Reſtores his brother's children, makes the electoral dignity alternative, and annexes Brandenburg to his own family, *ib.* (E). Other acquiſitions made by marriage, *ib.* Strives to appeaſe pope John, who publiſhes a bull againſt him, with the ſubſtance of it, *ib.* After taking the opinion of all the learned, proteſts againſt this bull, and answers it, *ib.* The pope ſtill inſiſts on the emperor's reſigning, but the latter diſregards his menaces, and ſupports the Gibelines



lines in Italy, 37. Besieges Burgaw in Alsace, but Leopold obliges him to abandon the enterprize, *ib.* The emperor excommunicated, and the decree of the diet at Ratisbon thereupon, and justifies every part of his own conduct in thirty-six articles, *ib.* Employs Marfilus of Padua and John of Ghent to write against the pope, *ib.* (F). Holds tournaments, with the motives, and forming the confederacy of Rernich, on the Moselle, takes Metz, 38. Invited by the Ghiblins into Italy, sets out, and in an assembly at Trent excommunicates the pope as a heretic, 39. He with his consort crowned at Milan by the bishop of Arezzo, and his arrival puts the Guelphs and Ghiblins in great commotion, particularly in Rome, *ib.* Which city the prince of Morea, with the pope's legate, surprises, but is repulsed next day, *ib.* Reduces Pisa, where he renews the sentence against Robert king of Naples, *ib.* Notwithstanding the emperor is excommunicated anew, he marches toward Rome, into which he makes a very splendid entry with the empress and princes of his train, *ib.* (H). Crowned with the empress in St. Peter's church, 40. Disappoints the pope's intrigues, and is so provoked, that he is resolved to be revenged, *ib.* Degrades the pope, publishes a decree against absentee bishops, and why he condemns the former to death, *ib.* Creates a cordelier pope, under the name of Nicolas V. and again receives the crown from this pontiff's hands, *ib.* Open revolt of the Romans against him and the Pope, 41. Retires to Corneto, and next to Pisa, where he receives an embassy from the Algerines, with their proposals, and returns to Bavaria, *ib.* Several cities in Italy renounce the emperor's party, *ib.* Returning to Germany, defeats his adversaries one after another, 42. Takes the field against the bishop of Strasbourg, with whom a peace is concluded, and he makes advances towards a reconciliation with the pope, and how frustrated, 43. The pope thwarts his measures, and with the king of France excites the king of Bohemia to rebel against the emperor; he is totally routed, but not discouraged, 44. Lewis's advances towards the pope still rejected, but the estates defend the rights of the empire against the papal pretensions, *ib.* Wholesome regulations made by that emperor for the public tranquillity, and magnificent tournaments instituted at Munich, 45. Maintains his dignity and reputation to the last, his son having defeated the new king of the Romans in the Tyrol, 46. Hunting the bear falls from his horse, and dies, *ib.* (P). Character and person, marriages and issue, 47 (Q). Double eagle first used in his seal, *ib.*

Lewis the Stammerer, succeeds his father as emperor and king of France, viii. 710. Endeavours to secure tranquillity by largesses, and the pope adhering to the French interest, retires from Italy into France, where he crowns the king, *ib.* Remarkable canon about episcopal power, in a council holden by the pope at Troyes, with the reasons why he would not crown his consort Adelaide, *ib.* (D). Interview, and treaty of the king with Lewis of Germany 711. Death, character, and issue, *ib.* An interregnum follows, with the factions of the four lords left guardians of his sons, *ib.* Expedient offered in favour of Lewis the German, which he accepts, 712.

— and Carloman, the sons of Lewis the Stammerer, crowned kings of France, viii. 712. Interview with several of the princes, and cessions in their favour, *ib.* Their cordial affection, *ib.* Defeats the Normans, with their devastations, and Lewis's death, without issue, by poison, and character, 713.

— IV. or Stranger crowned king of France, ix. 11. Hugo, duke of France, assigned as the king's tutor, with their fallings out and reconciliation, *ib.* Dangerous civil war, and the confederates on both sides, *ib.* Ended by a peace, 12. Endeavours to deprive Richard, the young duke of Normandy, of his dominions, seizes his person, and how he escapes assassination, *ib.* Overreached by the Normans, his army beaten, and himself made prisoner, *ib.* Released by the Normans, and the terms, 13. Again confined by duke Hugo, and not restored till Lion was delivered him, and how enabled to form new alliances, *ib.* The kings of Germany and Burgundy assist Lewis against duke Hugo, who yet compels the king to a peace, 14. Which their two consorts make into a stable one, *ib.* The king's death, occasioned by a fall, and account of him *ib.* (D). With an absurd story related of him, and his issue, *ib.* sub note. Laudable custom introduced by him, what, and closely imitated, *ib.* sub fine note. Duke Hugo's noble conduct on this occasion in favour of Lothaire, 15, 16.

Lewis V. or Faineant, succeeds his father Lothaire, through Hugh Capet's assistance, ix. 18. His short reign a scene of trouble, *ib.* Poisoned by his queen, *ib.* His character, and other particulars, 19 (G). The crown claimed by his uncle Charles of Lorrain, 19. The causes of the declension and total exclusion of Charlemagne's line, *ib.* (H).

— VI. or Gros, associated by Philip, the reverse of his father, and its good effects, ix. 32. His mother-in-law Bertrade forces him to fly into England, and king Henry I's generosity to him there, *ib.* Poison given him by her, upon his return, but cured, *ib.* She is forced by the king to submit and throw herself upon his son's mercy, which succeeds, and the king is still attached to her, 33. Succeeds his father Philip in France, and meets with early disturbances, *ib.* The causes of, and his regard for justice procure him respect, 34. Finds a very formidable enemy in Henry I. of England, with the latter's answer to his challenge; the Normans beat, and peace concluded, *ib.* Fresh broils with his vassals, why so troublesome, with the methods how Lewis and Henry strengthen their interests, 35. Lewis's marriage with Alix of Savoy, and her wife conduct very serviceable, with a new war between Lewis and Henry, *ib.* Makes William son to Robert of Normandy, count of Flanders, 36. This young prince killed there, *ib.* Crowns his eldest son Philip, who dies, and the crown set on the head of Lewis the next son, 37. A supposed failing of the king's, and excellent advice given by him to his son, *ib.* Marriage of the young king, with his father's death and character, *ib.*

— VII. or le Jeune, succeeds his father Lewis VI. king of France, ix. 38. Disturbances at the entrance of his reign soon repressed, *ib.* Source of his difference with Rome, and the count of Champagne's revolt, *ib.* Penance for a cruel action, *ib.* At St. Bernard's instance takes the cross, as does great part of the nobility, 39. Vast army assembled in France, with that of the emperor which marches by land to Constantinople, with the king's progress, till his arrival at Jerusalem, *ib.* Resolves on the siege of Damascus, 40. The bad success in which determines him to raise the siege, and return home, *ib.* Repudiates queen Eleanor, and restores Guyenne, *ib.* She espouses Henry duke of Normandy, *ib.* The king makes a league with Stephen king of England, but Henry's abilities frustrate its effects, and marries Constantia of Castile, 41. War with Henry terminates in an equal peace, *ib.* Upon Constantia's death, Lewis marries Adelaide of Champagne, *ib.* New war between Lewis and Henry on Becket's account, ends in the peace of Montmirail, 42. Lewis draws over Henry's eldest son, and his brothers, with queen Eleanor, to his interest, yet Henry prevails, *ib.* Lewis and Henry now on better terms than ever, *ib.* Lewis makes a pilgrimage to St. Thomas's shrine at Canterbury, and his son Philip crowned, 43. Lewis's death, character, and issue, *ib.* (F).

Lewis VIII. or the Lion, succeeds his father Philip, king of France, ix. 57. Refuses to restore Henry III. his father's dominions in France, *ib.* from which he attempts to expel all the English, but is reduced to make a truce, and enters into the croisade against the Albigeois, *ib.* Takes Avignon, after considerable loss, with his death, 58.

— IX. or St. succeeds his father Lewis, king of France, under queen Blanch's tutelage, ix. 58. Crowned at Rheims by the bishop of Soissons, in a thin assembly of peers, *ib.* (H). Confederacy against the queen regent, and their true motives, 59. Draws all gradually to submit, *ib.* and bribes king Henry the III's minister, the earl of Kent, with the confederacy revived, when apparently dissipated, *ib.* but disconcerted, with the regent's firmness and address in ending the troubles, *ib.* Expelled to censure for the king's education, &c. but treats all stories with contempt, *ib.* Banishes the Jews, v. 561. Count de Bretagne continues mutinous, is grievously humbled, and the count of Champagne forced also to submit, ix. 60. Who with others, takes the cross, and the king forms a new guard, with new cabals, in hopes of support from Henry III. of England, *ib.* Defeated by Lewis, whereby settles his authority solidly, with further measures for this purpose, 61. Caution with regard to protecting the pope, *ib.* Resolves on an expedition into the East, but acts very circumspectly, *ib.* His great prudence in other respects, particularly as to Henry of England, with whom the truce is renewed, and the queen-mother declared regent, 62. Winters in Cyprus, and sails for Egypt; at his debarkation Damietta is abandoned, but advancing on is worsted, and taken prisoner, 64. Insolently used by the infidels, *ib.*

Concludes



Concludes a treaty with them, recovers his liberty, and evacuates Egypt, 64. Sails for Syria, where he restores matters, whilst his own concerns in France decline through an apostate monk, *ib.* The regent dies, upon the news of which he resolves to return, and arrives at Paris, 65. Interview between him and Henry, with what passed, *ib.* Labours very diligently to regulate the disorders caused in his absence, *ib.* Compromise between him and Henry, how relished by both nations, 66. His eldest son Lewis dying, he concludes a match for Philip with the princess of Arragon, *ib.* Accepts of being umpire between Henry of England and his barons, *ib.* Employed in settling his kingdom and family, &c. 67. with a view to a new crusade into Africa, *ib.* After taking Carthage, dies of the plague before Tunis, with his particular character and issue, *ib.* (I). Canonized, 653.

Lewis X. succeeds his father Philip in France, and meets with much dissatisfaction, ix. 80. Unsuccessful campaign in Flanders, 82. Dies, leaving his queen with child, with an account of him and his marriages, *ib.* (M).

— XI. succeeds his father Charles VII. king of France, ix. 163. Crowned, with his extraordinary proceedings at the beginning of his reign, contrary to the duke of Burgundy's advice, 164. Cancels, but in effect allows the Pragmatic Sanction, as a fundamental law, *ib.* Gives law to his neighbours, not from policy but good fortune, and his interview with the king of Castile at Bidassoa, and its effects, *ib.* General expedient is corruption among foreign ministers, redeems the towns on the Somme from the duke of Burgundy, and under a safe-conduct imprisons Philip of Savoy, 165. Attempts to seize the count de Charolois, and his father the duke of Burgundy, but miscarries, and how a confederacy for the public good is conducted, 166. Battle of Montl'heri ends in the defeat of both parties, 167. Makes a double treaty with the confederates, and his view, *ib.* Recovers by his arts almost every thing he had been obliged to yield, *ib.* Assiduous in executing one part of the treaty, *ib.* Attaches several to his service, together with Warwick the make-king, *ib.* Persuades the states at Tours to declare Normandy inseparable from the crown, 168. Strange part he acts owing to his want of probity, *ib.* Instances of his severity, and obliging the duke of Bretagne to make a new treaty on his terms, *ib.* At an interview in Peronne, throws himself into the hands of Burgundy, 169. Concludes a treaty with him, and why he orders all magpies and jays to be destroyed, 170. His reconciliation with his brother the duke of Guienne, *ib.* Institution of the order of St. Michael, with an account of it, *ib.* (C). Assists the duke of Calabria, and the effects, 171. Match with the duke of Burgundy's only daughter proposed for the duke of Guienne, *ib.* By advice of an assembly at Tours, declares war against the duke of Burgundy, 172. Who humbly, by letter ending remarkably, desires peace, and a truce granted, *ib.* Munificence to the English, and the duke of Burgundy, tho' offended at this, concludes a truce with Lewis, 175. The constable given up by the duke, is tried and suffers death, *ib.* Seizes Burgundy and Artois, &c. 176. Erects a silver grating about St. Martin's shrine at Tours, *ib.* (D). Suffers Maximilian of Austria to marry the young heiress of Burgundy before any other, *ib.* Cruelly executes the duke of Nemours, and reduces Befançon, *ib.* Truce with Maximilian, and managing all his negociations with equal dexterity and success, he concludes a new treaty with England, 177. Drawn battle of Guinegate, between the French and Flemings, with the cruelties afterwards, and the Flemings beaten at sea, *ib.* Truce renewed, the French militia of Franc-archers discarded, the king inherits Anjou, and has some strokes of an apoplexy, 178. On Philibert of Savoy's death, he declares himself the young duke's tutor, *ib.* Favourable situation of Lewis's affairs, but in a languishing condition immured at Pleffis, *ib.* Arts to dissimble this by dressing himself, hunting of rats, &c. *ib.* His very salutary advice to the dauphin, death, and conquests, 179. Character of him, and marriages, with his issue, *ib.* (E). Stately tomb destroyed by the Huguenots, who burnt the remains of his body, and scattered his ashes in the air, *ib.* sub not. The first who had the title of Most Christian king, and of Majesty in addresses, 179.

Lewis XII. or, the Father of his people, succeeds Charles VIII. king of France, ix. 191. His noble and humane behaviour gains him universal love; his great spirit and resolution, *ib.* A particular account of him, his family, and issue, *ib.* (A). Marriage with Joan of France dissolved by pope Alexander VI. whose son Borgia is hereupon preferred, 192. Marries Anne of Bretagne his predecessor's widow; affairs settled, he prepares for an expedition into Italy, *ib.* Queen dies, 202. Gives his second daughter to Charles of Austria, and his eldest to Francis count of Angoulesme, his presumptive heir, and marries Mary of England, *ib.* Motives of the peace between him and Henry of England, *ib.* Queen Mary arriving in France is received with all possible splendor, *ib.* Death and character, *ib.* (B). Saying about Angoulesme, issue, noble tomb and device, *ib.* sub fin. not. Memorable saying, 203. The cryers proclaim his demise, *ib.*

— XIII. succeeds his father Henry the Great, under the regency and tutelage of his mother, ix. 343. Holds a bed of justice, in which the tutelage and regency are confirmed, *ib.* Count of Soissons prevailed on to unite with the court, but on his own terms, *ib.* Council of regency, and cabinet council established, 345. Coronation of the young king, and change of the ministry, with an embassy from England and Spain, *ib.* Attempts to discover the authors of the late king's murder, and the discoverer, 346 (C). With the proceedings in parliament against her and others, who are dismissed, *ib.* sub not. Declares the double marriage with Spain, 347. The princes retire again from court, in order to procure new gratifications, 349. Confirms the edict of Nants, &c. takes the government upon himself, and an assembly of the states meets, in which nothing of importance is done, 351. Marches with a body of men to the frontiers, with a view to the double marriage of France and Spain, and civil war carried on without much blood, 352. Exchange of the two princesses in the island of Phezzants, *ib.* Some of the court and the protestants averse against a peace, 353. Measures by the queen-mother to reduce the princes by force, with the face of affairs after the king's success suddenly changed in their favour, 355. The queen-mother escapes from Blois, and is conducted to Angoulesme by Espernon, 361. The court amidst rejoicings for the princess Christina's marriage with the prince of Piedmont, alarmed at the queen's escape, *ib.* Interview of the queen-mother and the king, 362. New differences between the queen-mother and the king; the protestants, and many of the nobility, court her favour, 363. At this the king and his favourite greatly alarmed, matters are so ordered, that she is obliged to make peace, *ib.* Interview between the queen-mother and the king, 364. The latter marches into Bearn to settle the Catholic religion there, with fair promises to the Protestants, which he afterwards breaks entirely, *ib.* Takes several places from the Protestants, but obliged to raise the siege of Montauban, with the loss of the duke of Mayenne, 366. Returns dissatisfied after this long and bloody war, with a spirit of cabal prevailing universally among the great, and the war carried on with various success, 367. Debate in council, where those who were for continuing the war prevail, and the king irritated against the Huguenots, *ib.* Defeats M. Soubize in the Isle of Rhé, 367. Other places taken, with the loss before Montpellier, *ib.* The queen-mother enters the privy-council, with the condition, and strictures on the ministry, with the little regard paid by them to their master's true interest, 368. Disturbances and intrigues among the ministry, with the Protestants murmuring, and the duke of Rohan arrested, 369. The account of his cabinet council, *ib.* Conduct of the three young kings at that time, and their ministers, 370. War in Italy, with various success, and the peace of Moncon, between France and Spain, 371. Cause of the king's jealousy of his only brother, with the consequences, 372. Death of several marshals, 373. Assembly of the nobles, in which an edict passes against duels, *ib.* Falling ill, the duke of Orleans put at the head of the army on the English invasion, 375. Taking Privas, and the barbarous treatment of the garrison, 379. Takes all Savoy, Montmelian excepted, 381. Ill at Lyons, but quickly recovers, *ib.* The queen's palace becomes a desert, and stiled La Journée des Duppes, or all fool's day, with her creatures discarded, 382. Queen-mother, and duke of Orleans, break out into fresh complaints, and she is arrested at Compeigne, 383. The duke retires to Lorraine, and the queen-mother escapes into Flanders, with an extraordinary court of justice erected, with their proceedings, *ib.* True character of the queen-mother and her son Orleans, 385. Answer to the queen mother's solicitations for returning to court, 387. New intrigues occasion new disgraces at court, why M. d'Etrees runs away, *ib.* Subsidy treaty with Holland concluded, *ib.* Embarrassed state of foreign affairs, 388. War declared against Spain, the Spanish army under P.

6 S Thomas



Thomas of Savoy totally beaten by the French at Avain, *ib.* Enters Lorrain from Champagne, but retires soon after, 389. The grand league in Italy concluded, and Crequi investing Valence is not seconded by the duke of Savoy, with the success of the duke of Rohan, *ib.* War in Germany and Italy carried on with indifferent success, 390. Progress of the war in Germany, and things go very indifferently in Italy, with the dissolution of the Italian league, 391. The campaign in the Low-Countries, and Capelle recovered, 393. Things go but very indifferently in Italy, *ib.* Course of the war in Germany, 394. The queen is delivered of her eldest son, Lewis the Great, with the king's mistress de la Fayette forced into a convent, 395. The military and political transactions in Piedmont, 396. Progress of the war in Spain and the Low-Countries, with only Salces taken, *ib.* Campaign in Germany, preliminaries signed at Hamburgh, and a treaty between France and Sweden, 400. Birth of the duke of Anjou, *ib.* Campaign in Piedmont, but with no great advantage, *ib.* Campaign in the Low Countries, 401. Gives the cardinal's hat with his own hand to Mazarine, 402. Comes before Perpignan, with two factions in the camp, Royalists and Cardinalists, 406. Discharges prisoners from the Bastille, and recalls exiles, 409. His public declaration, and Mazarine introduced into the council, *ib.* Disposition of the king and court, 410. Declaration with regard to the form of the regency after his decease, *ib.* Death, with several particular incidents in his last illness, 411. Short and true character of him, *ib.* Death, *xi.* 545

Lewis XIV. or le Grand, succeeds his father Lewis XIII. king of France, *ix.* 411. The late king's declaration set aside, and the queen admitted sole regent by the parliament, *ib.* Entrusts the king to the duke of Beaufort, with her other intrigues, 412. Progress of the war in Germany favourable to the Imperialists, also their success in Italy, and defeat of the Spanish fleet off Carthage, *ib.* Success in Flanders, *ib.* Taking other places, 413. Intrigues at court, with its consequences in arresting the duke of Beaufort, and several other personages disgraced, *ib.* The queen discharges the load of government entirely on the cardinal, with his advice to her relating to his predecessor's friends, *ib.* Indifferent success in Italy, and Pamphilio, under the title of pope Innocent X. succeeds Urban VIII. and the consequences, 414. Causes of disputes and discontents, particularly with the parliament, which end in a civil war, 415. Treaty with the dukes of Savoy, 416. Operations in Flanders under the duke of Orleans, Gassion, and Rantzau, 417. Fresh perplexities with the parliament, and other public embarrassments, *ib.* Of which the parliament make advantage, *ib.* The king taken out of the women's hands, the cardinal made sur-intendant of his education, Villeroi his governor, and the archbishop of Paris his preceptor, 418. Account of the king's education, with disputes in the parliament of Paris, and disagreement of the plenipotentiaries at Munster, with the queen's return to the offer made her to dictate a peace, 419. The forces permitted to act, and with what view by Mazarine, *ib.* The campaign in Germany under Turenne, also in Italy for humbling the pope, *ib.* Progress of the war in Italy, 423. The king falls sick of the small-pox, with Charles prince of Wales, and his brother at the French court, *ib.* The queen apprehensive of ill temper in the parliament, 424. Progress of the war in Catalonia, 426. Campaign in Italy, with the forcing of the Spanish entrenchments upon the Oglio, and their retreat to Cremona, the siege of which city is raised by the French, *ib.* Rise of the parties Mazarines and Frondeurs, with the disturbances between the parliament and court, also the disorders consequent thereon in the state, but by the cardinal's advice matters compromised, with the consequences, 427. The queen and royal family escape to St. Germain-en-laye, with the consternation of the inhabitants of Paris, 428. Matters go but very indifferently in Italy, 429. Return of the court, and cardinal to Paris, with their reception, *ib.* The queen causes the princes to be arrested, with the great joy of the Parisians upon this, 430. Escape and retreat of several other persons of rank, *ib.* The insurrections in Normandy, &c. soon suppressed by the king's presence, and the queen's chagrin at her treatment in Bourdeaux and Paris, *ib.* Misfortunes in Italy and Catalonia, with the attack of the Spanish army on the frontier, and their successes under the archduke and Turenne, 431. Surrender of Rhétel to Prassin, and defeating of the Spaniards there, *ib.* The queen invites the cardinal to join the court, upon which the parliament proscribes him, and offer an high reward for taking him, 432.

Success of the Spaniards in Catalonia and the Low Countries, *ib.* King and queen twice saved from the rebels of Orleans by Turenne, and in the latter Conde obliged to retire, 434. Upon Conde and Orleans's retreat, the king enters Paris in triumph, with Charles II. 436. The Bastille delivered up, and a bed of justice holden, with the transactions therein by the parliament, *ib.* Transactions of the war in Catalonia, Italy, and Flanders, *ib.* Gravelines taken by Leopold, after sixty nine days open trenches, *ib.* Sparks of rebellion extinguished every where in France, *ib.* Progress of the war in Italy, and the French beaten in Catalonia, 438. The French make a fresh irruption, and beat a corps of Spanish cavalry, 439. Manner of the king's coming to parliament, in order to prevent an extraordinary assembly, *ib.* Campaign in Italy, 440. Coronation of the king at Rheims, *ib.* The campaign in Catalonia under Conti, and in the Low Countries, 441. Siege of Stenai, at which the king made his first campaign, *ib.* Its surrender, after thirty-three days open trenches, *ib.* Treaty between England and France, against Spain, 444. Seizes Burgundy and Artois, *ib.* Progress of the war in Catalonia, Italy, and Flanders, 445. Civil transactions in France, with a bull registered against the Jansenists, *ib.* Successful campaign in Italy and Portugal, 447. Triumphant entry into Dunkirk, 448. Death of Oliver very satisfactory to the king and cardinal, with Spain's proposals for peace accepted through the queen of France, and her reasons, but the cardinal influenced by different motives than those represented by the queen, *ib.* Marriage of the king with the infanta of Spain, and their majesties public entry, 449 (A). Takes the reins of government into his own hands, *ib.* and fixes the several departments of his ministers, &c. 450. Purchases Dunkirk from king Charles II. of England, 451. Erects works there, and his policy with regard to the Porte, *ib.* Assists the emperor against the Turks, and the Portuguese against Spain, *ib.* Proofs of his genius with regard to Lorrain, and the marine of France, 452 (A). Talents for casuistry on the death of Philip IV. of Spain, by Louvois's subtle manifesto, *ib.* Forms pretensions on the Netherlands in right of his queen; notwithstanding the renunciation at his marriage, invades Flanders; the queen appointed regent in his absence, *ib.* Employs himself in the arts of peace, 454. Seizes on all Lorrain, and his motive, *ib.* Negotiations with several courts, and the designs of the bishop of Munster, with whom Lewis concludes a treaty, likewise with the elector of Cologne, together with the advantages to his views, and stipulation from Sweden in his favour, 455, and those of his allies, *ib.* His army of 100,000 men, in four columns, begin their march for Holland, *ib.* Begins the campaign with 110,000 men under Turenne, 456, who attacks the Dutch by the Meuse and the Rhine together, *ib.* Rhinberg, and other towns, taken by the French, and the king passes a ford of the Rhine, with the loss of Longueville, and Conde wounded, *ib.* Rapidity of his conquests, and Orange's retreat to Rhenen in Utrecht, *ib.* Skenck, Nimeguen, &c. yield to Turenne, and Luxemburg's severity in Overysse, with Utrecht over-run by the king, 457. Negotiations, as well as arms, disturb all Europe, 458. Who unite against France and England, *ib.* Naval improvements in France, as signals at sea, borrowed from England, 459. Their fleet, join'd to the English, give battle to the Dutch thrice, and Spain declares for the latter against France, *ib.* The war removed to the Spanish Netherlands, with the occasion, 460. The French evacuate the three provinces faster than they conquered them, and Lewis forsaken by all his allies, singly maintains the war, *ib.* Campaign in Flanders and Catalonia, 462. Success of the French in Flanders, with their memorable besieging of Valenciennes, *ib.* Several towns in Flanders taken by the French, 463. The French evacuate Sicily, and arrive in France, 464. His despotism in the empire, who gains the magistrates of Strasbourg by intrigues, and his application to domestic affairs, 466. Marine formidable, and obliges the piratical states of Africa to submit, *ib.* Makes Genoa feel his resentment, *ib.* Origin of the war between France, the States-general, Spain, and Great Britain, *ib.* Declares war against the confederates, 468. The horrid ravaging of the palatinate, *ib.* This terrible persecution an incredible stain on his memory, with Voltaire's reflection on the event, *ib.* Account of the campaign on the Rhine, and in the Netherlands, *ib.* Impartiality of him in putting Luxemburg into marshal Humieres's place, *ib.* Defended from being accessory to the duke of Lorrain's death, 470 (B). Success in Italy, 471. Transactions on the Rhine and in



Catalonia, 472. Successes in Flanders, *ib.* The French successes in Catalonia, with Lewis's height of grandeur, and his glorious naval transactions, 474. Miserable state of France and descent of the English on their coast, also bombardment of Dieppe and Havre, *ib.* The decline of his glory by the death of his ministers, and Luxemburg, &c. 475. Enfeebled in every quarter, *ib.* French coast insulted by the English, 476. The real misery of France how palliated by him, who concludes a peace with Savoy, *ib.* Claims the Spanish crown, 478. Aware of the jealousy which would be raised by supporting his family pretension to the Spanish succession, *ib.* Gains over many grandees of Spain to his interest, 479. Notion propagated by the French faction, *ib.* and the decree of the cardinals with regard to the Spanish succession, *ib.* Division in his council about the king of Spain's will, 480 (C). How Lewis is determined, and the will accepted, with the king's speech to the duke of Anjou, who sets out for Spain, *ib.* Lewis's apology for this measure to his allies, by M. Torcy, and the king's replication to the memorial of the States, with reflections on this step, *ib.* King William's conduct in this affair, with Lewis refusing the exorbitant demands of Great Britain and Holland, 481. Makes preparations for a war, and enters into alliances, *ib.* Several allies drop off from him, with numberless other disasters, 482. Fomenta a revolt in Hungary, 485. His safety to what owing, 486. Masterly stroke of his generals possessing the camp at Park, 487. Is unsuccessful in Savoy, *ib.* Miserable situation every where, his proposals of peace rejected, and scheme for raising money by mint-bills in France ineffectual, 491. Military transactions successful in Germany, and at Almanza in Spain, *ib.* The French unsuccessful in Savoy, 492. Sues for peace, to which Holland listens in some measure, *ib.* But retarded by Marlborough and Eugene, with their terms, 493. The spirit of the French in approving their monarch's noble resolution, *ib.* Affairs successful on the Rhine, in Italy, Spain, &c. 494. Negotiations for a peace renewed, *ib.* Intrigues used by Lewis on Marlborough's integrity, with the treatment of the French ministers at Gertrudenberg, *ib.* Great attachment of the French to their monarch, *ib.* Change of the ministry in England highly advantageous to him, 495. Character and death of the dauphin, 500. Speaks in a different style to the Dutch from what he did before, 503, and Marlborough superseded in Flanders by Ormond, *ib.* Trivial accident between count Richeren's and Mr. Menager's servants retards the negotiations, with an account of the affair, 504. Lewis acquainted with this insult to his minister, demands satisfaction, *ib.* The conferences resumed, with Lewis's demands, and other matters finally settled, *ib.* Conclusion of the conferences and treaties signed, *ib.* Those with Portugal and Prussia, with two remarkable articles relating to the latter, 505. Treaty with Savoy and Holland, and the basis of that with Great Britain and the States, also the treaty with England, *ib.* Remarks on his conduct toward the clergy, also on that towards the Hugonots, with the changes wrought thereby in France, 510. His duplicity and declaration in favour of the elector of Hanover, xv. 605. Seizes on his subjects coin, which he issues at an advanced value, with the effects, 606. His death and issue, *ib.* Account of his person, and encouragement of learning, *ib.* Account of his mistresses, *ib.*

Lewis XV. king of France, xv. 607. Council appointed by his grandfather's will set aside, *ib.* Crowned, and declared of age, yet still under tutelage, 608. Persecutes the Protestants, and the style of one of his edicts, 611. Sends back the infanta of Spain, and resolves to marry Stanislaus's daughter, the motives, and her good character, *ib.* He continues the hardships on his people, notwithstanding the vast profits to the crown, with pathetic remonstrances from the parliaments, *ib.* The populace driven to mutiny, and the persecution on account of the bull Unigenitus, *ib.* Why he dismisses Bourbon, and takes the government into his own hands, *ib.* Preliminaries between that king and the emperor concluded, formed into a treaty, and the terms, 613. Disputes between him and his parliaments, with the former's arbitrary expressions, *ib.* The miseries of the people by further impositions, and an insurrection at Lyons, 614. Befriends the Spaniards against Great Britain, and sends the young pretender on an invasion, with the motives, *ib.* The French fleet goes back from Dungeness to Brest, and their transports disabled by a storm, *ib.* Declaration of war against the elector of Hanover and the queen of Hungary, 615. Sub-

fiance of that against France, *ib.* Campaign of this nation in Flanders, and success, 617. Interrupted by an irruption of the Austrians into Alsace, with the same conduct of the allies, *ib.* Falls sick, and success of his troops in taking Friburg, *ib.*

Lewis, king of Hungary, his character, xv. 395. Reduces the Saxons of Transylvania, *ib.* (G). The duke of Wallachia submits, *ib.* Rich donations of Elizabeth, widow of Charles late king, to Rome, *ib.* The king assists Casimir of Poland against the Lithuanians, *ib.* and against John of Bohemia, with a peace concluded, *ib.* Totally defeats the Tartars, and beheads their duke, *ib.* Quells a revolt of the Croats, *ib.* On a revolt of Zara from the Venetians, Lewis marches to their assistance, but without effect, 396. Marches with an army into Italy on the murder of his brother Andrew, *ib.* Some account of that affair, *ib.* (H). The queen Joanna's sorrow, and his executing several of the murderers, *ib.* He takes possession of Naples, and returns to Hungary, *ib.* But called again into Italy, makes himself master of the kingdom, 397. The affair determined by the pope, and the king's generosity, *ib.* He invades the Venetian territories, and besieges Treviso, but obliged to conclude a peace, *ib.* Makes alliance with the Genoese, assists the pope against Viconti, and reduces the Bulgarians, *ib.* Succeeds to the crown of Poland, reduces the Walachians, and assists Charles Duras in obtaining the crown of Naples, *ib.* Orders Joanna, who was defeated and taken, to be strangled, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.* His daughter Mary succeeds in Hungary, *ib.* and Hedwige in Poland, who marries Jagello, 398.

— II. king of Hungary, and Bathori appointed palatine, xv. 405. Neglected in his education, and the bad effects, the Turks take Sabacs and Belgrade, *ib.* They totally defeat the king at Mohatz, who is drowned, xi. 140 (A). xv. 406, 461. Their ravages afterwards, and declension of Hungary ever since, which falls to the house of Austria, 406 — prince of Baden, forces the entrenchments of the Turks, and the grand vizier killed, xi. 312. Besieges Grand Waradin, but in vain, *ib.*

— of Anjou enters Naples with a formidable army, but no important action happens, x. 470. Lands, and is received at Naples, 472. The investiture of Naples given him by the pope, 475. Success of his army, *ib.* Leaving Sicily to his father Martin, of Arragon, openly assists the pope, 479

— III. succeeds his father John Francis, marquis of Mantua, and quarrels with his brothers, with his character as a commander and politician, xiv. 113. His reception of the pope, emperor, &c. with his improvements in Mantua, death, and issue, *ib.*

— succeeds his father Amadeo VIII. duke of Savoy, and why he drowns William de Balomier, xiv. 128. Conquests in the Milanese, marriage and issue, *ib.*

— the Moor, brother to the duke of Milan, his character, xiii. 430. Makes a diversion into the Venetian territories, 432. How the league is broken by him, makes peace with the Venetians, and the allies accede, *ib.*

— St. de Maragnan, town described, xiv. 477

— fort, and town in Cayenne, described, xiv. 483

— and Notre Dame mounts, in St. Lawrence, described, xiv. 551

— St. fall of, a mission settled there, xiv. 610

— fort and bay, xv. 6. Discontents of the settlement there, 7. Cabals, how awed, *ib.* The French there how murdered, 12

— fort, where, xv. 44

— Post on that lake, xv. 59

Lexington, the queen's ambassador, intercedes for the Barcelonians at Madrid, viii. 370. Answer to his memorial on that head, and his letter to them, *ib.*

Leyte, an island among the Philippines, described, iv. 198

Li, or Ly, murders all the Chinese in Tonquin, and ascends the throne, iii. 457. His posterity enjoy it about 200 years, 458

— a mandarine convert to Christianity, iii. 568

— a traitor, besieges Key-fong, assumes the imperial title, and plunders the city of Peking, iii. 730. With his inhuman treatment of the emperor's body and family, 731. Burns and plunders the imperial palace, *ib.* Is no more heard of, *ib.*

Liampo, or Limpoa, the Portuguese settlement there, and expulsion from it, iv. 161

Libatto, or mock court of the king of Angola, described, vi. 496 (D). Its strange rocks, springs, &c. *ib.*



- Liberius sent from Africa to take possession of the coasts of Spain, vii. 535
- Liboya (roebuck) snake, immense size in Brasil, xiv. 476
- Librafatta taken by Malvezzo, xiii. 443
- Li-ching's success against the Mungls, ii. 437
- Li-ching-que seizes on the Korean throne, and his grand embassy to China rejected, iii. 755
- Licorus of Africa described, v. 685 (Z).
- Liege, cruel civil war kindled by a competition for that bishopric, xi. 69. People revolt a third time, 106. Inhabitants revolt against their bishop, who is cruelly slain by his favourite La Marck, 109. Contest about the successor to that bishopric, 316
- Lieu-pang, a private soldier, his wonderful rise, and success against the emperor, iii. 698. Dethrones his successor, 699. Found the new dynasty of Han, and declared emperor, ib.
- Li-feu, the effeminate king of Korea, invaded by the Japanese, iii. 756. Driven from place to place, and assisted by the Chinese emperor, ib.
- Li-fu's noble defence of Chang-sha-fu, ii. 374. Desperate exit, ib.
- the Mungl general's bravery and loyalty, his gallant defence of Kyew-kyang-fu, ii. 421. His glorious death, ib.
- Ligan-tfven, king of Hya, submits to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 281. Makes alliance with him against the kin, and dies, 285
- Lightwood, governor of the Bahamas, with Nassau ruined by the French and Spaniards, xv. 271
- Ligneville, general, remarkable billet to him from the duke of Lorrain, xi. 275
- Ligor, a sea-port in Siam, iii. 319
- Li-haw-wen appointed tutor to Towhantemur's son, but loses his labour with that indolent prince, ii. 420.
- Li-heng sent to invade Gan-nan, defeated and slain, ii. 386
- Li-hyen, king of Hya, surrenders to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 327
- Likew, famous bridge, described, ii. 286 (H).
- Li-ke-yong, a young general, defeats the Chinese rebels, and made prince of Tsin, iii. 715
- Linia, Roderiguez de, sent ambassador into Abyssinia, and his long stay there, vi. 257. Whence he returns with an ambassador from the empress, ib. His arrival at Lisbon, and success of his embassy, 258 (S).
- founded by Pizarro, and its site, xiv. 306. Threatened by the Indians, and the preparations for its defence, 312. Progress of the encounters, ib. The siege how raised, 313. Reduced by Gonzalo Pizarro, 336. Declares for the king against him, 342. Of which Aldana takes possession, ib. Deploable instances of earthquakes, there, 456. Account of that anno 1746, 457, 458. City described, and a corruption of Rimac, ib. Splendid churches, 458. Vice-roy's pomp and prerogatives, ib. Regular forms of government, ib. Supreme court, 459. Chamber of accounts, and treasury, ib. The corporation, ib. Court for effects of deceased persons, and board of trade, ib. Inquisition and university, ib. Subordinate colleges, ib. Its different inhabitants, ib. Nobility and gentry, also a descendant among them from the incas, 460. Coaches, chaises, and number of mules, ib. Vice-roy's salary, and the garrison, ib. Endemial distempers, ib. Dreadful convulsions and remedy, ib. Its vast commerce, ib. No monopolies allowed, 461. Their art in trade, ib.
- audience, an account of the Nunes there, xiv. 463
- Limbours, disputes about the succession to that duchy, how decided; but this arbitration disgusting both parties, the duke of Brabant, in consequence of a signal victory at Worringen, gets possession of it, xi. 12
- Li-meng's artifice to come at Alaafun, xi. 399. Disappears at the arrival of Haythan, 400. Disgraced and restored, 406
- Lindau, account of it and government, xv. 445
- Lingham, among the Banians, what, and how worshipped, iii. 205 notes.
- Lingan taken by the Mungls, with their behaviour to the empress, ii. 376
- Ling-ti, emperor of China, his fatal fondness for eunuchs, and whimsical humours, iii. 705 (I).
- Ling-vang, emperor of China, his excellent reign, iii. 694. Strange contest between two brothers, ib.
- Lin-kyang, a chief city of Kyang-si, iii. 532
- Lin-sin, emperor of China, iii. 687
- Lin-tau-tu taken by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 327
- Lantz, an assembly there ineffectual, xi. 190
- Lion hill, at the Cape of Good-Hope, described, vi. 398
- Peto, a Portuguese marksman, kills the Moorish general, vi. 267. Stratagem against the Abyssinian bravo, ib. (A).
- Lioni, gonfalonier of Florence, creates a new balia of Peter's friends, xiii. 419. All of the opposite party who fled from Florence are declared rebels, with the confinement and death of those who staid, ib.
- Lip, hang-lip-hill, described, vi. 400
- Li-pi, a great mandarine, insulted by the lamas, ii. 401
- Lipman, Rabbi Jom Tob, his virulent book against Christianity, v. 603 (R). 604 (V).
- Li-pu, the first of the six Chinese tribunals, iii. 577
- the third grand tribunal, its difference from the first, iii. 577 (T).
- Lippe taken by Bethlem Gabor, xi. 191
- Liqueios islands, between Japan and Formosa, with their commerce, iv. 42. Hereditary high-priest, 43. Landed upon by the Portuguese, and described, 161. Their former and present state, commerce and riches, 254 (C). Their genius, arts, and industry, 255. Islands beyond them, and probably as rich, &c. 256 (D). How far they might become profitable to trade, and for discovering a north-west passage, 258 (F).
- Liquor, strong, its traffick with the Canadians solemnly prohibited, and in favour of the Jesuits, xiv. 614
- Lisbon suburbs only taken by the English, who, after little success, embark and return, viii. 271
- account of it, viii. 383 (B). University, by whom founded, 399
- dangerous sedition there against the Jews, viii. 460. Measures for surprising it carried into execution with great spirit, viii. 501. The vice-queen seized, the Spanish government unhinged, and their natural prince restored, 502. The citadel also surrenders, and a new form of government settled, with the archbishop of Lisbon at their head, till the king's arrival, with an account of this revolution, 503 (B).
- account of the dreadful earthquake there, xv. 598. The number of lives lost, and particular account by one present, ib. Other parts of the kingdom suffer by it, 599. Relieved by Spain, and more especially by Great Britain, with his majesty's message to parliament thereon, 600, and their answer to it, ib.
- Li-tan revolts against Kublay, and besieged in Tsinan-fu, with his dreadful end, ii. 364
- Li-te, king of Hya, invaded by the Mongl Khan, ii. 327. Dies of grief, ib.
- Literati, their examination instituted, ii. 403. How performed, 404. Great encomiums on the founder of it, ib. (G). Suppressed by Towhantemur, 417. Reestablished by him, 418. Affronted by Towhantemur's stupid son, 420
- of China, their address to Hu-pi-lay, ii. 380. Sect whence sprung, and encouraged by the grandees, iii. 564. Suspected of atheism, and persecute the other sects, yet are no less superstitious than they, 565
- Lithuania, duke of, sends forces to assist the Hussites, but recalled, ix. 714
- description of it, xii. 426. Troubles there, and the occasion, 564. Divisions there, 566. Troubles there referred by the king to the senate, 568. Breaks out afresh, 569, and a treaty signed at Warsaw, between Sapieha and Oginski, ib. The troubles there again break out, with the occasion, ib. The chief motives of disturbance there, what, 570. Disturbances there, and a battle between the two principal noblemen, in which Sapieha is defeated, 578. An instance of the conqueror's cruelty, ib. Revolutions there, 581. Disturbances there, and the resolution of their diet, with their demands, 614. Its history, origin, disposition, and genius, 621. Etymology, ib. Geography, and commodities, vassalage, and servitude, 622. The profusion of the nobility, ib. Though united with Poland, is independent of it, ib. Its religion, customs, and manners similar to those of Russia, ib. Account of several towns there, 623. And the obscurity in its history, 624. Its first christian king, who, 626. Coat of arms by whom invented, 632. When a representative of its grand duke was discontinued, and under the direction of the king of Poland, 646
- Lithuanians, their cruel idolatry, xii. 477. Conclude a separate truce with Gustavus, 516. Confederacy of them, with their pretext, 548. Oppose the Saxons, and the occasion, but upon a remonstrance by deputies from the former, twelve regiments of Saxons are ordered to Grodno, 570. Repeated incursions and desolation in Prussia, and Dobrina, 639



- Li-ting seizes on the post of Wang-kyaw-wan, ii. 371  
 — one of the conductors of the Song to Tatu, ii. 378. Promoted by Hu-pi lay, ib. His success against Siliki, and against the rest of the army, 379  
 Li-ting-chi, his stratagem to relieve Syang-Yang, ii. 368. Defence of Yang-chew-fu, but taken and put to death by Achu, 378  
 Li-ting sent to reduce Korea, with his success, iii. 754  
 Li tsong, his successful war against the Eastern Tartars, and holds only the southern part of China, iii. 722  
 Li-tsun-hyu reduces King-chew, ii. 285  
 Littleton, governor of Jamaica, xv. 329  
 Li-vang, emperor of China, his cruel reign, and edict against speaking, iii. 691. Family massacred, with his banishment and death, ib.  
 — a tributary prince raised to the Chinese throne, and in fear of the king of Tsi, iii. 693  
 Livonia, Christianity first propagated there, ix. 606 (Q).  
 Livonia and Esthonia duchies described, with their inhabitants, boundaries, and extent, air, soil and produce, xiii. 14. The granary of the North, 15 (N). Rivers and lakes, ib. Fisheries, vast forests, felled roads, and highways, with some account of the country, and its inhabitants, ib. Diet, 16. The ancient history of these duchies very dark, and how they became Christian, 17. How subdued, and its frequent changing of masters; ceded to Russia; its present division and chief places, ib. Grand master suppresses his order, and is made duke of Courland, 107  
 Livonians, their great distress through a private quarrel, and what, xiii. 104. They send an embassy to the czar to desire peace, ib. Sue for peace by their ambassadors, but the negotiation is broken off by an accident, 205. A laying of the dethroned king of Casan and Astracan, on seeing the captives at Moscow, 206. Apply to the king of Denmark, but to little purpose, and endeavour to prevent the trade of Lubec with Russia to as little effect, ib. An instance of obstinate attachment to old customs in them, 125 (D). Restored by Peter to their privileges, 220  
 Liuva chosen king of the Visigoths, and dies soon after, vii. 536. Is succeeded by his associated brother, 537  
 — the son of Ricared, his succession, vii. 547, and death, 550  
 Li-ywen dethrones Kong-ti, and founds the 13th dynasty; he reduces all the revolters, and forces 100,000 bonzas to marry, iii. 711. Relinquishes the crown to his second son, ib.  
 Lizard-water, in Ethiopia, described, vi. 186  
 Llaracassa submits to inca Mayta Capac, xiv. 384  
 Llauta in Peru, what, xiv. 377  
 Lleque Yupanqui, third inca of Peru, succeeds his father Sinchi Roca, xiv. 380. Meaning of that name, ib. (C). Has recourse to arms, and enters the country of Cana, which submits, but opposed in Ayviri, ib. Defeats them and they submit, ib. Regulations among the people of Colla, what, 381. Returns to Cuzco, and checks his desire of conquest, ib. Why he resumes his warlike humour, ib. Enters the province of Chucuytu, and the people submit, ib. Civilizes the people of the Andes, 382. Visits other provinces, ib. Returns to Cuzco, ib. Sends his eldest son on a progress, ib. His last charge in an assembly, what, ib. His death and character, ib.  
 Loanda, a province of Angola, described, and its capital, vi. 493 (B). Castle, churches, &c. ib. Courts of judicature, and haven, 494 (C). Vast number of slaves, ib.  
 — capital, taken by the Dutch, with its port and island, vi. 494. Rarities, and villas, &c. 495. Traffic, ib.  
 Loango, or Looango kingdom described, vi. 536. Its chief provinces, ib. Towns, 537. Rapid current of its rivers, 538. Religion, 539 (C). See logwood. Its climate, produce, &c. 543. Strange beasts, 544. Natives, their religion, trades, customs, &c. ib. Their women mere slaves, 545 (H). Children not better, ib. White moors, 546. (i). Religion and superstition, with its strange worship, 547 (K). Idols, 548. Strange notions about the dead, ib. (L). About the Deity, ib. About princes and nobles, 549. Various mokissos, ib. Mournings and funerals, 550. Other odd ceremonies, ib. (U). Burial denied to strangers, 551. Their traffic, ib. Money and government, 552. Laws, 553. Kings, 555. How addressed, 556. His lands, by whom cultivated, and his hunting, ib. Funeral obsequies, 557. Their history not known to the Europeans, ib. The cause of it, 558. Kings worshipped, 552 (P). Their chief officers, ib. Vast number of wives, &c. whence, and infidelity how punished, 553 (Q). Manner of eating and drinking, 554. Audience-hall, ib. Palace, &c. described, 555. Band of music, ib.  
 Lobo, father, his residence in Abyssinia, and history of, vi. 161. Arrival at Rome, and his advice to the court suspected, 305  
 Lobos, Villa, discoveries made by him northward, iv. 252. Short accounts of what improvements might have been made, 253  
 Locusts, vast swarms in Ethiopia, vi. 187. How destroyed and eaten, 188 (E). New swarms in Sufneus's reign, 295  
 — eaten by the Kongose, vi. 438  
 — a food of the Guinean negroes, vii. 63  
 Lodesan, and its city Lodi, described, with its celebrated cheeses, xiv. 54  
 Lodi surprised by the league-army, xiii. 512  
 Logan, Mr. governor of Pennsylvania, xv. 126  
 Logstown surprised by the French, and the damage, xiv. 702. Also another fort, ib.  
 Logwood traffick in Loango, vi. 539. Of two sorts, 540  
 Lohorash, or Lohrasp, retires into the city of Balkh, i. 429. Other wide conjectures about him, ib.  
 Loignac, and others, entrusted with the stabbing Guise, ix. 289. The king's speech to him, and the nine guards, ib.  
 Loire, la, his voyage to the Illinois, and proceedings on a pretended conspiracy of the Natches, xv. 21. Improbability of this story, 22 (D). His brave defence against the Natches, but killed, 34  
 Lokantaya, city in Siam, where situated, iii. 317. The Siamese gathered to it by one of their ancient kings, who removes his court to Pipeli, 353  
 Lokhman, city and river in West Tartary, ii. 122  
 — Padi, Shah, restored to his dominions by Timur Bek, ii. 516  
 Lollards, sect, appear in Germany, with their tenets, ix. 668  
 Lombard cities withdraw their allegiance from the emperor, associate in defence of their liberty, and build Alexandria, x. 67. Confederacy draws near a close, xiii. 564  
 — their bravery in Sicily, and disgusted at Maniaces, i. 640. They ravage the coasts of Italy, and defeat the emperor's general, 641. From Italy invade Burgundy, viii. 632. But they and the Saxons defeated by Goutran's general, ib. War renewed between Sforza and Piccinino, the fortune of the latter prevailing, xiii. 402  
 Lombardy attacked with the whole force of the league, and the previous steps taken, xiii. 492. They pass the Po, and the cardinal Medici arrives from the pope in their camp, ib. They march towards the Oglio, with their danger from Lautrec, &c. 493, and their escape to what owing, ib. Many families there retiring to the Bolognese, 577  
 Lomellino, successes of the Genoese fleet under him, in the Black-Sea, and his narrow escape with few of his men, x. 572  
 Lommelin, Jeannetin, elected duke of Genoa, with his violent persecution of Matteo Senarego, x. 597. Origin of the revolution consequent thereon, ib.  
 London, treaty there in favour of the princes of France, ix. 353. Its articles and verification by the parliament, ib.  
 — a dispute between the French and Spanish ambassadors there about precedence, and the mob seconds the latter, ix. 450. King of Spain's answer to Lewis's remonstrance for satisfaction, and the humiliating concessions made by the pope to him upon a like affair in Rome, ib.  
 — a council there, confirms the papal authority, with its decrees made, ix. 577  
 Londonderry, lord, governor of Antigua, xv. 262  
 Longeri, the place of the royal tombs in Loango, vi. 538  
 Longobardic league, a meeting of them, and the occasion, xiii. 608. Renewed at Brescia, and 600 men at arms agreed to be raised, 592, 604. Its heads give it a new form, 609  
 Longobards conquered by Charles the great, with a general remark on them, &c. and on the condition of Italy upon Charlemagne's coronation, with the character of its principal states, xiii. 274  
 Longueville, duke of, commander of the Weymarian troops along the Rhine, xi. 250. After crossing which river, they find good quarters in Weteravia, &c. ib.  
 Long-vu, set upon the Chinese throne, is supported by Ching-chi long, iii. 733. Put to death by the Tartars, 734  
 Lonthor, one of the Banda islands, its produce of nutmegs, iv. 489  
 Lopez, Ruy's, arrival at the country of the Papuas, and his description of it, iv. 268



- Lopez, ambassador from Kongo to Spain, his miscarriage at sea, vi. 481 (C). Ill success at the court of Madrid, &c. and founds a seminary at Kongo, 482
- Odoard, sent ambassador to king Philip, vi. 482
- de Hara, don Diego, the king of Castile and Leon join their forces against him, vii. 700. But are obliged to raise the siege of Estella, ib. Restored to favour, and his character, ib.
- Lopzang-hum, his success against Shaffaktu, with his defeat and punishment, ii. 438
- Loque (See Lloque.) applies to the pacific arts, xiv. 381. Resumes his warlike preparations, marches into Colla, whose inhabitants submit, ib.
- Lorain, Charles, arrested in the Low Countries and sent prisoner into Spain, with the transactions in the former country, vii. 311. His journey to Rome, and the proceedings, there on the divorce, viii. 705. Dies on his return without lawful issue, and his dominions divided between Lewis of Germany and Charles of France, 706. The partition made, with the horrid devastations by Carloman, son of Charles, and the proceedings thereon, ib. The pope bends to Charles, and promises his assistance in obtaining the empire, as the empress does to Lewis of Germany, 707. Disturbances in Germany and France by the sons of the sovereigns, &c. with their different characters from the manner of treating these rebellious sons, ib. The Normans quelled by the duke of Bretagne, who is taken off by a conspiracy, ib.
- princes quarrel with the dutchefs of Valentinois, upon which the conferences of Chateau Cambresis are opened, ix. 247
- duke, the queen's mother's son-in-law made king's lieutenant-general, and its effects, ix. 269
- Lorrain, cardinal, his death and character, ix. 272
- duke of, compelled to a treaty, ix. 383. Concludes a new treaty in confirmation of the former, 384. A new war with it, in which the duke is forced to deliver up his capital, 387. Resigns his dominions to his brother the cardinal, and with his consort is made prisoner, ib. A new treaty, by which that country is given up to the duke, 402. Again dispossessed, 403. Takes Philipsburg, but baffled in endeavouring to pass the Rhine, 463
- cardinal, his declaration from Mary queen of Scotland, x. 404. Inveighs against pluralities and the see of Rome, to which cardinal Moron replies, ib.
- duke of, beaten out of Burgundy by la Force, xi. 241. Arrested at Brussels, and sent prisoner into Spain, with a remarkable billet sent by him to his general Ligneville, 275. His forces defeat those of the palatine, who concludes an accommodation, 284. Association formed at Nancy, and the count of Nassau demands restitution of the county of Saaverdin from Lorrain, 285. On a second attempt takes Philipsburg, 292. His marriage with the emperor's sister Eleanor, 293. Defeats Tekeli before Presburg, and prevents the Hungarians from joining the grand vizier, 300. Retires with his small army under the cannon of Vienna, ib. Takes Wissegrade and Vatz, after defeating the grand vizier, then takes Lower Buda by assault, 302. Attacks the Turks, and obliges them to fly to their camp with great loss, ib. Defeats the grand vizier's army near Gran, and storms Neuhausel, 303. Takes the fort at the bridge of Esbeck by assault, and afterwards defeats the Turks near Mohatz, 306. Then marches into Transylvania according to treaty with the vaivode, but is not punctually observed by the emperor, ib.
- Lorestan, where seated, ii. 659 (A). Reduced by Timur, Bek, ii. 516. Its robbers destroyed, 540
- its wali joins the Persians against Mir Mahmud, ii. 659. Abandons them in the height of the battle, 660. Betrayed by a perfidious brother, 663. Abandons prince Thamasp, 665
- Loretano appeases a tumult by sailors in Venice, and character, x. 248. Enters the Po and dies, 249
- Leonardo, the 75th duke of Venice, makes Pessari a procurator of St. Mark, also a peace with Bajazet, x. 285. Death and character, 315
- Pietro, the 84th duke of Venice, x. 352. His death, 355
- Loretto village, a colony of Christian Hurons, not far from Quebec, described, and different accounts of their character, xiv. 554. Settlement there, by whom instituted, xiv. 609. Christian Agniers removed to that settlement, 610
- Lorges, Count of, defeats four thousand horse, under the duke of Wirtemberg, who is taken prisoner, xi. 313. Twice repulsed in attempting to cross the Neckar, 314
- Lorgue, Nicholas, the 20th grand master of Malta, loses the city of Margath, and returns to Ptolemais, vii. 389. His death, ib.
- Loria, Rabbi Isaac. a celebrated cabbalist at Frankfort, v. 611 (F).
- the Arragonian admiral, his successes, who defeats the Neapolitan fleet, and takes prince Charles prisoner, x. 448. Recalled, ib. His successes against the French in the bay of Roses, &c. ib. Appears to have had the use of the compass, ib (K). Entirely defeats the Puglian fleet, and a truce concluded, 449. His successes at sea, 451. Deserts to king Charles, but is defeated by Blasco de Alagona in Calabria, 452
- Loring, captain, his success on lake Champlain, xiv. 716
- Lothaire goes to Rome, is crowned by the pope, and acts there as sovereign, viii. 693. Succeeds his father Lewis the Gentle as emperor and king of Italy, with his character, 698. Upon Lewis of Bavaria's offering him battle, a truce follows, and Lothaire, with Pepin of Aquitaine, is totally defeated by him, and Charles the Bald, after a bloody battle, 699. The fruits of which victory were lost, ib. His brothers Charles and Lewis swear perpetual amity to one another, and the consequences, 700. The three brothers make peace, and agree to a new distribution of country, ib. Each how greatly weakened, ib. Takes the habit of a monk, and dies, with an account of his three sons, and their dominions, 703
- succeeds his father Lewis IV. by means of duke Hago, ix. 15. Makes Hugh Capet, Hugo's eldest son, duke of the Franks, and his brother Henry duke of Burgund, 16; but failing in two designs upon Richard duke of Normandy, he makes war upon him, ib. A peace concluded with the Normans, and the young count of Flanders, 17. The king augments his own authority, ib. Otho II. gives Lorrain to Charles the king's brother, ib. The king upon this makes war in Lorrain with success, ib. A peace concluded by Otho with the king, which the French lords are displeased with, 18. Death of Lothaire, ib. Different characters of him, ib. (F).
- Lotharius crowned at Rome, and pope Innocent forced to quit this city, and the former enters Italy with an army, ix. 589. Account of his successes, and a dispute with the pope about the conquests, and the accommodation, ib. His death, who is succeeded by Henry of Bavaria, his son-in-law, ib.
- count of Supplemburg, made duke of Saxony, xv. 464
- II. duke of Saxe Supplemburg, chosen emperor in the room of Henry V. x. 665. Marches into Bohemia, and peace granted to Sobieslaus. He surmounts all opposition from his competitors, 666. Espouses the cause of Innocent II. against pope Honorius II. ib. (M). Re-establishes him in the papal chair, with the humble manner of his receiving the crown, and orders justice to be administered in the empire according to Justinian's digests, ib. Restores Innocent, who had been expelled, and the antipope Anacletus dies of grief, ib. Conquers the duke of Apulia's dominions, and forms them into a principality; on his return to Germany, he dies, with his character, 667
- Lothar succeeds his brother Humble, the 34th king of Denmark, but on account of his severe government is slain, xi. 664
- Lovangiri, a province of Loango, described, vi. 536
- Lovango Mongo, the second province of Loango, described, vi. 537. Also its capital and royal palace, ib. Large market-place, strange idol, and its bay, 538
- Loubiere arrives ambassador at Siam, and treaty with the king, iii. 381. Audience of leave, 384
- Loubois commands the expedition against the Natches, xv. 37. Builds a new fort among the Natches, 41. The old one demolished, ib.
- Loudon, earl, appointed commander in chief, &c. in North-America, xiv. 709. Retardment of his operations whence caused, 710. Wise measures in North America, but disappointed, 711. Vast army under him on Holbourn's arrival at Hallifax, 712. Why he returns to England, 713
- Loudon fort, where, xiv. 711. Taken by the Cherokres, with their barbarity to the garrison, xv. 97
- Louis, the severe, son of Otho the illustrious, elector palatine and emperor, xv. 471
- Louis II. elector, and palatine of the Rhine, xv. 468
- III. the bearded, xv. 471. Pretector of the council of Constance, ib.
- IV. the Pious, xv. 471



- Louis V. his brother Robert put to the ban, and poisoned by the emperor, xv. 472
- VI. the Easy, expels the Calvinists, and introduces Lutheranism, xv. 472
- I. duke of Bavaria, xv. 468
- III. afterwards emperor, xv. 468
- St. river in Canada, xiv. 559
- St. account of that settlement, xv. 358
- Louisa of Great Britain, married to the king of Denmark, xii. 205
- Louisburg taken by the English, xv. 617. Taken again by the English, 623. Prisoners taken, and ships burnt, ib.
- Louisiana, its history, xv. 3. Whence so called, and by whom, 13. The English possessors of it before the French discovery, 16. Fine country, ib. Indifference of French and Spaniards about it, why, and its state, 18. Resolution of the French for forming a colony there, 19. Wrong principles of the French colony there, 22. Trade, ib. New establishment there, 23. Arrival of the first grantees there, and prosperous beginnings, 24. A company of Swiss and many others go over from it to the English at Carolina, 31. Their motive to this, and an instance of their moderation, ib. Transactions between its savages and the French, ib. They massacre the latter, 32. Its religious state, ib. French commandants there oppress the natives, 33. Savages, their general conspiracy against the French, ib. Massacre to be done by the Natches, ib. Despondency of the French colony, 36. Account of its natives, 44. Conspiracy of the negroes there, and the occasion, 52. Suppressed by du Pratz, and the improbability, 53 (M). Grant of the Mississippi company surrendered to the French king, ib. Reason why, ib. Equivalent for it to the French, what, 57. Account of the French posts there, 58. Article in the Paris treaty ceding it to Great Britain, ib. Manners, language, and customs of its savages, 60
- Louisianians, education of their children, how, xv. 60. Their great docility and employments of the men and women, 61. Great wisdom and care of parents, ib. Also in their traditions, ib. Manner of speaking, ib. Religious tenets, and long fasts, 62. Reason to suspect du Pratz's accounts, ib. Their policy, ib. Feasts, religious and political, ib. Drama on that of kids, ib. Politeness, the reverse of that in Europe, ib. Women's amours, and art in abortion, ib. (P). Marriages, 63. Nuptial ceremonies, ib.
- Loutres, Indians, described, xiv. 563. sub not.
- Louvain, articles by the divines there, confirmed by the emperor, x. 88. Answered by Bucer and Luther, ib. (L).
- siege of, raised by the French, and in small parties return home, ix. 389.
- Louvestein, the prisoners there who had been released by the prince of Orange are now reinstated, xi. 556
- party, when revived, xi. 630
- Louviers, peace when, and between whom, ix. 49
- Louvigny defeats a party of the Iroquosi, xiv. 635. Consequence in favour of the French, and their hostilities continue, ib.
- Louvo, a city of Siam, described, iii. 319. Its pleasant situation, ib.
- Louvois' preparations for the campaign, by distributing magazines, ix. 455. His and Colbert's characters, by whom matters in France are brought to bear, 456. Is greatly affected at the retreat of the French out of Piedmont, and the king's answer on being told of it, 471. Death and great character, with Lewis's glory hence declining, ib.
- Lo-vang, king of Che-kyang, submits to the Tartar conqueror, iii. 733
- Lowanians, who, their dreadful ravages in Egypt, i. 661. Also in Upper Egypt, 663
- Low-countries, the troubles there encrease, viii. 256. Determine to throw off the Spanish yoke, 257. War carried on to little advantage, 298
- confederate states of, not obtaining assistance from the empire, put themselves under the protection of queen Elizabeth, xi. 176. (See Holland, Provinces United, and States General.)
- Lowendahl takes Bergen-op-zoom, xv. 619
- Lowri, a sea-port of Hindostan, iii. 13
- Lowther, governor of Barbadoes, his vindictive proceedings against the reverend Mr. Gordon, and an account of that affair, xv. 190. Tyranny, ib. Misgovernment of the island, and extortion, 191
- Lo-yang, or Ho-nan-su, besieged by the Mungls, with its noble defence and relief, ii. 339. Is taken at length by Tachar, 344. Reduced by the Mungls, 346
- Loyola, Ignatius, founder of the Jesuits, account of him, and their chief vows, x. 83 (H). Festival, when, 138 (Y).
- Loys of Champa described, iii. 420
- Luarzab invaded by Abbas Shah, ii. 614. Occasion of their quarrel, ib. Brave opposition, 615. Ensnared by his promises, imprisoned and murdered by him, ib.
- Lubec, his Danish majesty assisted with troops to reduce it, expels the garrison from it, x. 704. Why remonstrances made to it are ineffectual, and a war between Denmark and the Hans towns, xi. 124. Occasion of the senate of Lubec's suing for peace, which is granted, ib.
- congress appointed there, and the articles of accommodation, with proposals of the emperor's commissaries, xi. 218, which are rejected by the Danish ministers, but mitigated by means of Walstein, and what these terms are, ib. Which are detrimental to the dukes of Mecklenburg, and count palatine, ib. Fatal oversight of the emperor in not admitting the ambassadors of Sweden to that congress, and a new difference between Ferdinand and Christian, ib.
- a dispute on the death of their bishop made up, xi. 333
- city burnt down, xii. 26. Besieged, but Valdemar and Adolphus quit it, 29. Revolts, 30. Congress there for fulfilling Axelsson the protector's promise, breaks up without effect, and the restitution of the Lubeckers ships and property made by Christian, 117. A peace concluded with it, 129, 133. Ambitious designs of that regency for restoring Christian II. 150. Their vast schemes, 283. Success of the combined fleet against theirs, ib. The Swedish peasants, after the execution of Badenbroke and Lewenhaupt, assent to the election of that bishop, 423. Bishop and administrator of Holstein is elected king of Sweden, ib.
- account of that city, xv. 438 (A). Its religion and government, 439
- Lubeckers reject equitable proposals of peace, xii. 127. Yet lay up their fleet and disband their army, ib. Break their late treaty, 129. Still assist Sweden, ib. Make a descent on Mona, but repulsed with loss, as also at Langland, 131. Defeated in a sea-fight, with other successes of the Danes, 133. Seize on a fleet of Dutch merchantmen, which are retaken by the Danes, and restored, ib. Attempt to engross the whole trade of the Baltic, and their very whimsical scheme of universal empire in the North, 149. (A). Enter Holstein with an army, which is defeated by Rantzaw, as are all their forces, so that Lubec is greatly distressed, 150. Yet they become masters of a great part of Denmark, ib. Publish a manifesto, which turns them to ridicule, ib. Their plot against Gustavus Erickson discovered, 283
- Lubolo, a province of Angola described, and famous palm-trees in it, vi. 493
- Lucas, St. Cape, a place of intelligence for the Manilla ship, described, iv. 215
- Lucayo isles. See Guinaya and Bahamas.
- Lucena port, in Brasil, xiv. 478
- Lucerne valley described, xiv. 124. Account of its alliance, xv. 446
- Lu-chew saved from the Mungls, ii. 363
- Luchin succeeds his nephew Azzo in Milan, and his first transactions, with a conspiracy against him defeated, xiv. 74, and the cruel execution of the conspirators, young Galezzo and Barnabo being banished, with the effect on Luchin, and infidelity of his wife, with an account of her, 75. She poisons her husband, and his character, ib. She confesses her wicked life, her punishment, and the fate of his children, 76
- Lucia, St. that island described, vi. 129. xv. 213. Account of its intended settlement, xv. 191. Settled by the English, and why massacred by the savages, 214. Settled by the French, ib. Who are massacred also, ib. The French re-possess the island, ib. but surrender to the English, 215, who abandon it, ib. New possession taken of it by the governors of Barbadoes, and at last becomes neutral, ib. The English claim to St. Lucia and Tobago, with the French evacuating the former, and grant of it and St. Vincent to the duke of Montague, 216, who sends a squadron to settle there, with the great expence, ib. Miscarriage of this settlement, with the questionable conduct of the British ministry, ib. Opposed by the French, and governor Vring's regard for the honour of his nation by one of his memorials, 217. By the treaty of Paris delivered to France, ib.
- Lucius II. succeeds pope Celestine II. ix. 591. The seditious Romans assume the civil authority, and Lucius killed by the revolters, ib.
- Lucius III. succeeds



Lucius III. succeeds pope Alexander III. takes off the interdict from Scotland, ix. 604. Is obliged to quit Rome, and he determines the cause about the archbishopric of St. Andrews, *ib.* Holds a council at Verona, and has a difference with the emperor, whose son is crowned king of Italy at Milan, 605. Why expelled by the Romans, x. 680. Re-enters Rome, but obliged to quit it a second time, *ib.* Dies, ix. 605

Luçon, or Luçon, subdued by the Spaniards, iv. 178. Its bay described, *ib.* Whence called Luçon, 184. Its situation, extent, &c. 185. True longitude, *ib.*

Lucon, bishop of, recalled, by whose dexterity a peace is concluded, ix. 362. He procures the queen mother several other advantages, *ib.* Promoted to a cardinalship, 368

Lucca, state, described, xiii. 271. Also government, revenues, and city, *ib.* Surrendered to Marco Visconti, 313. Siege, how raised by Simon, general to John king of Bohemia, with this prince's further successes, and leaguings with pope John, 315. The system of power in Italy how changed thereby, *ib.* Is put up to sale by Scaliger, and purchased by the Florentines, 384. The garrison surrenders to the Pisans, and divisions thereupon, 321. Rise of the Florentine war against it, 381. Successful sallies of the besieged there, 384

Lucques, debate in Florence on the expediency of that war, with an ambassador sent from Guinigi, doge of Lucca, for a reconciliation, and the traitorous part that person acts, xiii. 382. Arguments for a peace urged by Uzano, yet war is resolved on; they complain aloud, and apply to their allies, 383. Prepare for war, *ib.* How they stand affected towards the Florentines, 384. Peace between the Florentines and them, the former being declared free, 396

Ludolphus's history of Abissinia, vi. 162. Cried down by the missionaries, *ib.* His apology, 163

Ludolphus son of the emperor Otho, married to Idda of Suiabia, x. 633. Revolts, with his pathetic submission and pardon, 634. Dies of grief, *ib.*

Lust Ali Khan sent against the Maskat Arabs, ii. 656. Deserted by the Portuguese, *ib.* Success against Mir Mahmud, extortions in Kerman, but recalled and imprisoned, 657

Lugue, Ferdinando, Pizarro's associate, an account of him, xiv. 280

Luiduit, duke of Hungary, revolts, and maintains an obstinate war with Lewis the emperor, which is ended by his death, viii. 692

Luitprand, account of his embassy to Constantinople, x. 391

Lulu made guardian to Abu'l Fadayel, i. 594 (P). Brave defence of Aleppo and gratitude to the Greeks, 595. Seizes upon Aleppo, 691, ii. 180. Assassinated, 181

— Alkaraji's treason against the princes of Aleppo, i. 605

— admiral of Egypt, his signal defeat of the Franks, ii. 5. Cruel treatment of the prisoners, 6

Lulua besieged and taken by caliph Mamun, i. 455

Lumey, head of the Gueux, miscarries in his attempt on Amsterdam, xi. 411

Luna, the famous Peter de, elected pope, viii. 168

Lunden, battle, between the Danish and Swedish monarchs, in which both sides claim the victory, xi. 195

— bishop of, thrown into prison, but escapes, gets to Rome, whither his archdeacon had gone before, xii. 43. Difference between that archbishop and the king decided by the pope against the prelate, 47

Luuel, a famous Jewish academy, described, v. 522 (K). The holy Jewish assembly there, 543

Luneburg, dukes, their negociation with the emperor at Goslar ineffectual, nor does the emperor succeed better with the Swifs, xi. 255

Luqueni, the first king of Congo, vi. 470. Assumes the royal title, but protested against, *ib.* (S). His tributaries, who, 471

Lu-shi-jong, a rapacious tool of Ahama, and scheme approved by Hu-pi lay, ii. 385. Convicted of extortion, 386. Executed, *ib.*

Lu-shi-quey betrays Kiang-chew to the Mungls, ii. 372. Conquests in Quangtong, 379

Lusitania invaded by the Saracens, i. 345

Lusson, his proceedings in the congress of Canadians at the fall of St. Mary, and afterwards, with its small success, xiv. 611

Lustic, John de, the 34th great master of Rhodes, vii. 411. War with Al Dahar, *ib.* Fortifies Rhodes, and defeats the Saracens before it, 412. Makes peace with them, and condemned by the pope, and noble answer to him, *ib.* Offered an unlimited power, and conditionally accepts of

it; renews the truce with the Turk, 413. Answer to the sultan's haughty summons, and death, *ib.*

Lu-syen, his excellent speech to the Song nobles, and made prime minister, ii. 380. Bravery in that young emperor's defence, *ib.* The dreadful end of both, 381

Luther no friend to the Jews, v. 603 (S). Publishes theses, &c. against indulgences, x. 69. Account of him and character, *ib.* (Z). Writes submissively to the pope, who takes no notice of these commotions in Germany, *ib.* Has a conference with Cajetan at Augsbergh, with the consequences, appealing from the cardinal to the pope, 70, and from him to a future council, *ib.* His authority increases under the elector of Saxony, *ib.* Writes very respectfully to the pope, adding that he would not retract unless convinced, *ib.* Consents to a public disputation with Eckius at Leipfick, accompanied by Carolostadius and Melancthon, *ib.* The universities of Cologne, Louvain, and Paris, decide for Eckius, *ib.* His doctrines spread greatly, *ib.* Publishes several tracts, and some of them condemned by the universities of Cologne and Louvain, to which Luther writes an answer, *ib.* Publishes a book against the church of Rome, exhorting the Germans to shake off its authority, 71. Burns the canon law, and pope's bull at Wittenberg, *ib.* Appearing in a diet at Worms, refuses to retract, unless convinced, and leaving Worms he is put to the ban, *ib.* Zealous in promoting the reformation in Germany, publishes several books, and a translation of the Bible, 72. Followers, some of them persecuted in France, and other places, 74 (E). Controversy between him and Zuinglius, 75. His doctrines prevail in France, *ib.* Theses against the Dominicans, but his writings burnt by Thetzel, at Frankfort on the Oder, xi. 132. And Thetzel's served so in return, *ibid.* Origin of his doctrine in the reformation through Germany, *ib.* The pope commits pronouncing sentence against him to cardinal Cajetan, and Luther appears at Augsberg, but retires in the night, and appeals from the legate to the pope, 133. Proceedings in the diet of Worms about him, when he and his books are publicly condemned, 137. Writings condemned by the university of Paris, and an apology for him by Melancthon, *ib.* (B). Writes a virulent reply to Henry VIII. *ib.* Doctrine, its progress, and he is strenuously supported in a diet at Spire by some of the princes, 139. His death, occasioned by his differences with Zuinglius, and an account of these, 157 (U).

Lutheranism. See Lutherans.

Lutherans, liberty of conscience granted them, in Germany, x. 78. Princes, enter into a league with the Zuinglians, 80. Efforts of the archduke Ferdinand and the pope's legate against them ineffectual, and the Catholic princes enter into a league against them, xi. 138. Protest against the decree of a diet at Spire, and thence called Protestants, with an account of those of the states that protested, 141 (D). Decree against them, 142. Their doctrine first introduced into Denmark, with the causes of that change, xii. 138. The nobility and clergy oppose it, raising up St. Brigget, a pretended prophetess, whose oracles concerning the king are believed, and by what means, *ib.* In Great Poland declare openly against Gustavus Adolphus, of Sweden, xii. 518

Lutizians, of Mecklenburg, their incursions into Saxony, and the emperor's ravages in return, x. 648

Lutzen, battle, retorted by the arrival of count Pappenheim, but he being mortally wounded, victory declares for the Swedes, xi. 230

— Gustavus killed there, xii. 333

Lu-ven-te repels the Mongls from Gan-tong, ii. 348. Made governor of Se-chwen, 364. Over-reached by Lyew-ching, 365. Dies of grief, 367

Lu-ven-wang's stratagem to relieve Syangyang, ii. 368. Refuses the succours sent to him, and goes over to the Mungls, 370. Ordered to embark for Gan-lo, *ib.* Brings over many others, &c. of the Song to them, 372

Luxemburgh obliges the prince of Orange to relinquish the siege of Charleroy, ix. 463. Retrieves affairs in Flanders, and his character, 469. Gains the famous battle of Fleuris against the allies, under Waldec, and the bravery of the Dutch infantry commanded by him, 470. Surprizes, and forces Waldec to retreat, though his army double the enemy, 471 (A). Takes Charleroy, after a glorious defence, 473. Fine campaign in Flanders, and his masterly march, which prevented the king of England possessing Courtray, 474, yet he takes Huy, *ib.* The French under him defeated in Alsace by the duke of Lorraine, xi. 292. Attempt on Amsterdam and the Hague baffled by a sudden thaw, 619, with the false policy of every power in Europe at this time,



time, *ib.* The confederates under prince Waldeck are defeated at Fleuris by him, 638. Who does justice to the behaviour of the enemy and their general, with measures taken for preventing any advantages from this victory, *ib.* Invests and takes Mons, with a medal struck at Paris on the occasion, 640. Death, 645  
 Luxemburg, origin of that house, x. 635 (K).  
 Luynes advanced by the queen thro' d'Ancre's means, ix. 351. Some account of him, with his rise and fall, *ib.* (O). Marries the duke of Montbazon's daughter, and becomes the object of general envy, with a ticket fixed on his two brothers apartments in the palace, 358. Artifices used by him to keep the queen-mother from court and in confinement, 359. Removes from about her the bishop of Lucon, afterwards the famous cardinal Richelieu, who is banished to Avignon, *ib.* Obliges the queen-mother to draw up an act of submission upon oath, *ib.* Suppresses the Paulette-tax, 360, and his design for the destruction of the Protestants, *ib.* His brother Cadenet made a marshal, with other preferments given him, 364. Steps contrary to the interest of France taken by his advice, *ib.* Made constable, with the promotion of his two brothers, and dies, 366  
 Lu-yu's revolt, and defeat, by Kyay-lye, ii. 414  
 Lu-zati, Rabbi Simon, his account of the present Jewish nation, v. 616  
 Lyang-kyang's rise in the north, iii. 710  
 Lyau dynasty, when, and by whom founded, iii. 716 (S).  
 Lyau-tong invaded by Jenghiz-Khan, ii. 285. Laid waste by him, 286. Subdued, 287. Different accounts of the expedition, 288  
 — or Quang-tong, a northern province subject to China, situated without the great wall, iii. 555. Vast number of fortresses, and its inhabitants, 556. Greatly oppressed, and the produce of the country, *ib.* Cities, and new capital, *ib.* High mountains, 557. Gulph, *ib.* Why supposed to be within the great wall, iii. 460 (A).  
 Lyau-tongers assist the rebel She-king-tang, and advantageous treaty with him, iii. 717. Ravage his successor's dominions with impunity, *ib.* Subdued by the Nyu-che Tartars, 721  
 Lybia depopulated in the Jewish war, v. 489  
 Lybussa, governess of Bohemia, marries a country labourer, xv. 451  
 Lydda, its Jewish academy, v. 486  
 Lyddal appointed governor of Hudson's-bay, xv. 155  
 Lyen-hi-kyen seized and wounded by the Song, and dies, ii. 375  
 Lyien-wha, an extraordinary flower in the province of Peheli, iii. 526 (N).  
 Ly-vang, emperor of China, his obscene reign, iii. 696  
 Lyew-cheng or Ching, governor of Lu-chew, is made governor of Quey-chew, ii. 364. Outwits the Song governors, 365. Artifice before Syang-yang, 366. Marches into Kyang-nan, 370. Dies of grief, 372  
 Ly-ew-chi-ywen betrays his prince to the Lyau-tongers, and founds the 16th dynasty, iii. 317. Suffers his country to be ravaged, *ib.*  
 Leyw-fu-tong revolts against Towhantemur, ii. 424. Defeated by Tashepa-tu, *ib.*  
 Lyew-han's success against the Mungls, ii. 437  
 Lyew-hu, empress of China, her horrid cruelties, iii. 699. Puts a sham heir upon that throne, and her death, 700  
 — a seller of old shoes, becomes a general, murders the emperor, and founds the 8th dynasty, iii. 708  
 Lyew-ju-i's sad catastrophe at Ven-chew, ii. 347  
 Lyew-kara-purva defeats the Song general, ii. 426  
 Lyew-ko, prince of Kitan, revolts to Jenghiz Khan, ii. 283. Proclaimed king, and assisted by him, defeats the kin, 284. Recovers Lyau-tong from the kin, and his fidelity to Jenghiz Khan, 286  
 Lyew-kiew islands discovered, and where sited, ii. 391 (O).  
 Lyew-pi's descent, founds the 6th Chinese dynasty, and his last orders to his principal minister, iii. 705 (K).  
 Lyew-ping-chong regulates the Chinese affairs, ii. 363. Made one of the Kublay's ministers, 365. Entertains the khan with obscure riddles, 368  
 Lyew-shen sent to reduce the Papesifuans, and beheaded for his ill counsel, ii. 397  
 Lyew-shi yong, his desperate death, ii. 376  
 Lyew-tay-ping put to death for adhering to Alipuko, ii. 362  
 Lyew-tsong's treason against the emperor Whey-ti, iii. 707  
 Lyew-tze-tsun burnt alive by the Mungls, ii. 381  
 Lynch, governor of Jamaica, xv. 281. His loyalty and exerting himself against the pirates, 284. Who still continue their practices, *ib.*

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Lyn-chung, king of Tsi, becomes hated by the people, with instances of his cruelty, iii. 694. (T).  
 Lyng-hay-wang dethroned by his uncle, iii. 710  
 Lyons council, its decree against the Jews, v. 561  
 — a general council there, and the emperor excommunicated and deposed, with their decrees, ix. 644. A council summoned there, xiii. 585. Council and proceedings there, 586  
 — emperor Baldwin repairing to it, the debates there, with the emperor's accusation, xiii. 585  
 — peace of, and its terms, xiv. 38. This far from reconciling the Savoyards and Genevois, *ib.*  
 — annexed to France, ix. 17  
 Lyra, Nicholas de, a learned Jewish convert, his character and works, v. 563 (O).  
 Lyttleton, William Henry, governor of South Carolina, his vigorous measures against the Cherokees, xv. 95. His treaty of peace with them, *ib.* (A). Its several articles, *ib.* sub (A).

M.

**M**AAD, or Moad, an enemy to the Jews, i. 2.  
 Maan Ebn Zaidar's loyalty to Almanfur, i. 391. His great character and death, 402  
 Maara al' Nooman, where situated, and described, i. 357  
 Maatzuyker, John, his great services in and for Batavia, iv. 455  
 Mabiya taken from the Zenjians, i. 493. Dismantled, and put to the sword, *ib.*  
 Mabug synod, when holden, and the bishops who assisted at it, i. 390  
 Macaw, or Macao, described, and its government, iii. 550. Heavy tribute, its town and harbour, 551. The Sunday different there, and why, *ib.* (Q). Its present condition, iv. 171, and the cause of its vast decay, *ib.* (V). Its trading company detrimental, 172  
 Ma-chartay, a hater of his brother's ill qualities, ii. 417. Promoted by Towhantemur, 418. Unjustly banished, 419  
 Macassar, king, his shameful peace with the Dutch, iv. 443 (H). Invaded afresh by them, 450. Abandoned by his allies, 451. Totally subdued, 472 (O). Its fort described, 492  
 — in Batavia, v. 478  
 Machi river in Abyssinia described, and confounded by Oretta with the Niger, vi. 205 (C).  
 Machian island taken by the Dutch, iv. 157  
 Madagascar, since St. Laurence, first discovered by the Portuguese, iv. 122. vi. 86. Extent, coasts, &c. *ib.* Mines of iron and gold, 87. Divided into twenty-eight provinces, *ib.* Principal rivers, 88. Inhabitants &c. described, 89. Ancient government, *ib.* Other coasts described, 97. People, towns, rivers, &c. *ib.* Produce, 99. Other variety of fruits, &c. 100. Animals, 104. Fowl, &c. inhabitants, customs, dress, 106. Polygamy, 109. Marriages, funerals, &c. *ib.* Superstitious customs, *ib.* Commerce, 111. Way of making war, *ib.* Religion, 113. Circumcision, 114. Priests, 115. Government, *ib.*  
 Madagoxa (Magadoxa) kingdom, where sited, vi. 334  
 — city, its great commerce and noble repulse of the Portuguese, vi. 334. River, why called the Madagoxan Nile, with its course and fructifying overflow, *ib.*  
 Madar, chief of the rebels against Al Hadi, i. 415  
 Madayen, the capital of Irak, taken and plundered by Saad, i. 187. The immense spoil carried off, 199  
 Madeira Islands, granted to prince Henry, iv. 112. When, and by whom discovered, vi. 146 (Q). Described, 147. The capital of the whole described, *ib.* Other cities belonging to them, with the virtues, vices, &c. of the inhabitants, 149. A further detail of the first discovery and colony, 151  
 Madelona, a courtesan, account of her, xiii. 640  
 Madian, or Midian, where situated, and ravaged by the Moabites, i. 68  
 Madlon, regiment, its degradation for their cowardice at Breitenfeldt, xi. 257 (B).  
 Madness, extraordinary, in Canada, described, xiv. 599  
 Madrasah, among the Ottomans, what, v. 162 (T).  
 Madras, or Fort St. George, the English factory, iii. 150. Described, bad situation, 180. Trade, *ib.* See George Fort, St.  
 — its defenceless condition, iv. 361. Bombarded by the French, 362. Surrendered to them, 363  
 Madrid made the residence of the court, viii. 254  
 — and several other places, taken by the allies, viii. 360, be:



- but lost through Charles's dilatoriness, and entered by Philip, *ib.*
- Madrid treaty with France, and its articles, ix. 216 (E).
- Commotions there at the insolence of parceling out their dominions, ix. 479
- a dreadful cataract of water there, xv. 565
- Madura revolts against his uncle, and founds the kingdom of Decan, iii. 132
- kingdom described, its metropolis, fortifications, &c. iii. 173. Famous pagod, and image cars, *ib.* and decay *ib.* The fishery on the coasts, 174. Pearl-fishery, soil, and produce, 175
- Maestricht besieged by prince Henry of Orange, xi. 526. Several bodies of forces attempting its relief, repulsed, and a brisk sally, in which several English are killed, *ib.* Pappenheim repulsed, the Spaniards looking on the while, 527 (A). Unsuccessful sally of the besieged, and Pappenheim retreats in good order after considerable loss, 527. It surrenders on honourable terms, 528
- Magadoxa, See Madagoxa.
- Magdeburg made the metropolis of all Vandalia, x. 636 (L). Its siege, xi. 164. Administrator routed by Wallstein, xi. 213. Account of that duchy, xv. 488
- Magellan sails in quest of a new passage to the Moluccas, viii. 230. His discovery of the Moluccas, and causes of discontent at his son, iv. 154. Discovers the streights which bear his name, and opposed by the court of Lisbon, *ib.* Services accepted at the court of Madrid, 175. Voyages and stern resolution, 176. Arrival at the Phillippine islands, and slain there by the natives, 177 (C). His first landing at Cebu, refuses to pay custom to the king, 199. His discoveries south of the Ladrones, iv. 266. Not clearly set down, *ibid.* His discovery of the Mariamnes and execution among the theivish natives, 237. He and Falero in the service of Charles V. viii. 467. His squadron returns disappointed, xi. 462
- Streights fortified by Sarmiento, v. 66. Settlements destroyed by admiral Candish, 67. Difficulty of recrossing them, 86. Discovered, xi. 136. xiv. 475. Islands are little known, *ib.*
- land. See Patagonia.
- Magennis, captain, his brave defence and defeat of much superior numbers of French, though mortally wounded, xiv. 708
- Maggi, famous, his fate, x. 366 (B).
- Magicians, their advice, to the Tlascalans, xiv. 200. Their punishment on finding them mistaken, 201.
- Magilcatzin, of Tlascala, his speech in favour of Cortez, xiv. 197. Dies a convert to Christianity, 252
- Magnico river described, and gold found in it, vi. 362
- Magnus, John, legate in Sweden, x. 83
- king of Norway, on Hardiknute's death, invading Denmark, is chosen 73d king, xi. 696. He twice defeats Swen, *ib.* Overthrows the Vandals in a bloody battle, and why surnamed the Good, with his death and character, 697
- sends his wife back to Denmark for the information she gave Eric to escape, xi. 710. Defeats his competitor Harold, who escapes to Eric, *ib.* On his confession is pardoned, with endeavours used for an act of oblivion to be passed, and why opposed by Valdemar, xii. 17. Makes a second attempt on the king, and is imprisoned, *ib.*
- Magnus of Sweden deposed, and Albert second son of Mecklenburg chosen, but the king and Hacquin of Norway assist Magnus, who is defeated and taken, xii. 72
- son of Nicholas, king of Denmark, elected by the Ostrogoths to the Swedish throne; but the Swedes chuse another, who is slain in battle with the Ostrogoths xii. 230. He is deposed, and the crown given to Suercher, *ib.*
- brother of Waldemar of Sweden, his great qualities, xii. 234. Ascends the Swedish throne on the abdication of his brother Waldemar, 235. Marriage of that king with Hidwig of Holstein, and the Swedes disoblged by his raising foreigners to preferment, *ib.* An insurrection upon the king's answer, headed by the Flockengers, and several of the king's favourites massacred, 236. The king's policy, and beheading the Flockengers, all but Philip de Rundt, *ib.* His intermarriage with Denmark, and wife administration, with his death, issue, and character, *ib.* (F).
- Birger's son, is put to death by the Swedish diet, xii. 240
- Magnus Smeek, duke Eric's son, is elected to the crown of Sweden, xii. 240. Is married to Blanche of Namur, and on Kettlemunson's death, takes the administration, *ib.* His demand of the investiture of Denmark refused by the pope, and a peace concluded between Sweden and Denmark, with the terms, 241. His unsuccessful expedition against the Russians, *ib.* Heavy taxes laid by him, and other grievances, *ib.* The senate advising him to resign, he retires to Schonen, and a negotiation for establishing peace with Waldemar, *ib.* Surname of Smeek given him, 242 (B). The Swedes incensed at that king's conduct, *ib.* Recovers his dominions, and makes a close alliance with Denmark, *ib.* Death, with his character, 244
- prevailed on by king Eric to sign duke John's sentence, xii. 290. Invests Reval, but forced to rise from before it, xiii. 113
- of Livonia, goes over to the king of Poland, xiii. 117
- I. the Meek, duke of Brunswick, xv. 481
- II. taken prisoner by the bishop of Hildesheim, enters into family pacts with Saxe-Lawenburg, and is stabbed by a common soldier, xv. 481
- , duke of Mecklenburg, has disputes with the Rostockers, which are compromised, xv. 525. Endeavours a reconciliation between the king of Denmark and the Lubbeckers in vain, *ib.* His death and issue, *ib.*
- Mago, or Mogo, king of Arracan, lays siege to Pegu, iii. 269. Seizes on his immense treasures, *ib.* and orders him to be put to death, 270
- Magog and Gog, the two nations in West-Tartary, ii. 121
- Magrelians, who; they invade Egypt, i. 513. Second invasion and conquest, but defeated by the caliph's forces and driven out of Egypt by Munes, 515. Indignities to caliph Moktader, 524. Lose their fleet near Sicily, i. 554. A new one sent by Al Hassan, 555
- Maha Ommarat, the chief minister in Siam, iii. 347
- Mahamed Khoja, sultan, his foolish action, ii. 708
- Nur recovers the cities yielded to Obeyd Khan, ii. 710
- Nadir Khan receives the Turcomans under his protection, but dethroned for his harshness, ii. 710
- Gazi murdered by Din Mahamed, ii. 725
- Sharif, obtains Wazir from Isfandiar, ii. 738. Plots against his life, *ib.* Sent to slaughter the Vigurs and Naymans at Urjensh, 739. Abandons Karazm, and goes into Bukharia, 740. Sent to Aral, 741. Reigns two years after Isfandiar, and dies, *ib.*
- made king of Quiloa, vi. 353. Various accounts of his death, 354
- Mahamontri sent against the Macassars, iii. 379. Slain, *ib.*
- Mahan, the Arab general, defeated by the traitor Mansur, i. 185. Turns monk, *ib.*
- the Imperial general, his interview with Khaled, and generosity to him and his prisoners, i. 201. Engages the Moslem army, is defeated and killed, 202
- Mananasar besieged by Timur Bek, ii. 527. Plundered and destroyed, 528
- Maharattas, who, iii. 123. Invade the Mogul's provinces, *ib.* Defeated by Saadit Khan, they advance and plunder Dehli, and are put to flight by the vizier, *ib.* Their character and excursions against the Mahometans, 147. Invasion of Karhata, and success against the Moguls, 148. Plunder churches and pagods, and defeat the king of Mefsur, *ib.* Horrid cruelties at Madura, &c. 149. Their success to what owing, *ib.*
- Mahl, or the Great Mogul's seraglio, impenetrable, with the classes of women in it, iii. 45
- Mahmet Khan, his reign in Kipjak, ii. 449
- Soltan, the 25th khan of Bukharia, ii. 467
- Mahmud Ebn Faraj, a famous impostor, put to death, i. 469
- Gazni invaded by Ebn Simjur, and success against him, i. 598
- the son of Sabektekin, dethrones his brother Ishmael, i. 602. His victory over two rebels, 604. Reduces Khorasan, *ib.* Marries Ilekh Khan's daughter, and successful expedition into Indostan, 606. Success against caliph Ebn Ahmed, 607. Founds the Gaznian dynasty, 608. Punishes the murder of Montefar, *ib.* His conquests in India, 609. Invaded by Ilekh Khan, and drives him away, *ib.* Victory over Ilekh Khan, and the Kader Khan, *ib.* Returns to India, 610. His success there, *ib.* Success in Indostan, whose emperor makes peace with him, 613. Takes the king of Gaur prisoner, and his success in Gurjestan, 614. Fresh expedition into India, 617. Great conquests there, 618. His next expedition thither dangerous and detrimental, 619. Puts his son-in-law Mamun to



- to death, 621. Successful expedition into North-India, 624. Returns with immense spoil, *ib.* New expedition into Southern India, 630. Reduction of Sumenat, *ib.* Immense plunder brought thence, *ib.* Fresh expedition and conquests in Indolian, *ib.* Public works after his last Indian expedition, 632. Fresh conquests in Irak, *ib.* Harsh treatment of king Maj'doddowla, 633. Different relations of his conquest of Irak, *ib.* Strange dialogue with him, *ib.* Conquest of his kingdom, *ib.* Dies, in the 31st year of his reign, and his character, 634. Reflexion on his own ugly face, *ib.* Instance of his inflexible justice, 635. Partition of his dominions between his two sons, *ib.* His immense wealth and insatiable avarice, 636. A letter supposed his from India, mentioning his bloody havoc there, 639. Strange resentment against the great Avicen, 642, and against prince Mikayyel, *ib.*
- Mahmud, the son of Mohammed, succeeds him, i. 692. Divides the empire with his uncle, and governs absolute in Irak, 694. Hunting life, and monstrous equipage, *ib.* Sits on the same throne with his uncle, 698. Death, 699.
- the youngest son of Malek Shah, promoted to the crown by his mother, and invested by the khalif of Baghdad, i. 675. ii. 174. Resigns to his eldest brother, who leaves him in possession of Effahan, i. 669, 676. And dies of the small-pox, 677
- Soltan of Syria, divides the empire with his brother, ii. 182, and with his nephew, *ib.* His territories, and his reign and successors not mentioned by Arab authors, 185. His death, and motley character, 186
- reduces part of India, i. 624
- success against Al Mostanser, i. 657
- the son of Siorgatmish, made khan, ii. 521. Elogy, and presents to Timur Bek, 525 (S)
- Turk, his valiant behaviour before Kortene, ii. 567
- the son of Soltan Dabr, slain, ii. 591, 598
- the son of Abusaid, defeated at Astrabad, ii. 593. His short reign and life, 594
- the seventh shah of Hormuz, his reign, ii. 682
- Shahabo'ddin, the eleventh king of Hormuz, ii. 682
- Roknoddin, the twelfth shah of Hormuz, ii. 682
- Sari loses his senses by drinking, ii. 729
- Kuli, his noble defence against Khojan Kuli, but betrayed by Kuzuk Khan, ii. 734, and dies a prisoner in Russia, *ib.*
- the son of Aurengzeb, seizes on Agra, iii. 95. Sent against his uncle Sujah, 99. Falls out with Amir Jemla, 100. Goes over to Sujah, and returning, dies in confinement at Gualiyar, 101
- Mahobet Khan commands the sultan's forces against Khurm, and success against him, iii. 73
- Mahomet II. takes Constantinople, and the Roman empire in the East annihilated, xi. 100. Alarming to Christian princes, *ibid.*
- Mahommed the Left-handed, replaced on the throne of Granada, viii. 82
- Maido'ddawla, king of Irak, his dominions subdued by sultan Mahmud, and immense treasure carried off, i. 632. Sent prisoner to Khorasan, with other particulars of that king's reign, 633
- Maidud, lord of Mosul, ravages Syria, but defeated by the Crusaders, ii. 180. Assassinated by a beggar, *ib.*
- Maillebois joins the infant duke Philip, but forced to retreat, xiii. 664
- Maillet, consul at Cairo; his account of Abyssinia, vi. 158 (A). Mission thither opposed by the Jesuits; ill treatment of Morat, 164, and of the Alexandrian patriarch, *ib.*
- Maimon, the son of Muley Ishmael, undermines his brother Mohammed, vii. 190
- Maimonides, a learned Jew in Egypt, v. 540. His character and works, *ib.* notes. A list of his adversaries, and defenders, 548
- Maimuna Bint al Hareth married to Mahomet, i. 77. Is the last, and survives all his other eleven wives, and dies at Shorf, near Mecca, 116
- Main, a settlement in New England, and its difficulties, what, xiv. 508
- Mainfroy, natural brother to Conrad, seizes on the kingdoms of Naples and Sicily, x. 713. Defeats the pope's legate near Troja, and the holy father dies, Alexander IV. succeeding, whose troops are again defeated by Mainfroy, 714
- Maintenon, madam, state of France under the influence of her and her creature Chamillard, ix. 482. Account of her, xv. 606
- Maio island described, vi. 126. Vast commerce for salt, 127. Poverty of its inhabitants, towns, &c. *ib.* Fruits, fish, &c. 128
- Majone de Bari sole manager in Sicily, x. 416 (U). Intrigues, and openly aspiring to the crown, is murdered by Bonello, 417
- Majorca, king, dispossessed by Jayme of Arragon, viii. 158. Its history, from its conquest by James I. of Arragon, to its second conquest by Pedro IV. 173. In a much better condition formerly, *ib.* Has a fertile soil, with a pure and temperate air, *ib.* Had fortifications, and several great towns, *ib.* The war by which the island was conquered arose from a slight cause, 174. Its sovereign and subjects reduced in about four months, *ib.* The island has lost half its inhabitants, *ib.* The citadel demolished, a cathedral and palace, &c. being erected in its room, 175
- Maiphecat, or Maipherchin, revolts against the caliphs, i. 383. Where situated, 384
- Maire, Isaac le, his project of erecting a South-sea company, and ill success, iv. 417
- James, discovers the streights of that name, and taken prisoner by the Dutch, iv. 417. Discoveries discredited by the Dutch company, v. 6. Voyage into the South-sea, 81
- la, streights discovered, v. 7. return of a French mariner through them to Europe, xiv. 475. Islands there little known, *ib.*
- Maisonnewe imprisoned by the Bohemians, and his death, xi. 94
- resigns his government of Montreal, xiv. 608
- Maisotto bay described, vi. 411
- Majumban port and territory described, with its salt lake, vi. 539
- Majushun's strange vision, i. 358
- Maiz (Indian corn), account of it, xiv. 499. Beer how made from it green, and an experiment hinted therefrom for malting, 500
- Mak, the fisherman, frees the Tonquinese, and defeated by Tring, iii. 458
- Makao-castle, where seated, and its immense riches plundered, iii. 270 (S)
- Makassar kingdom, seized on by the Dutch, iii. 376. (See Macassar)
- Makassars, refuge in Siam, conspire against the king, iii. 376 (K). Plot defeated, *ib.* Strange intrepidity of a conspirator under various punishments, 377. All destroyed with their prince, 378, 380. Instances of their intrepidity, *ib.* (E). Revolt in Pulo Condore, iv. 352
- Malabar coasts described, and produce, iii. 161. Antient government and division, 162. Towns and no villages, *ib.* Inhabitants described, 167. Their tribes and government, *ib.* The king's great state, and the clergy, *ib.* The gentry are guides to strangers, and other inferior classes, 168. Cruel laws about marriages, 169. That of princesses, 170. Polygamy, how regulated, *ib.* Punishments and ordeal trial, *ib.* Law-suits and writing, 171. Arms and exercises, with their single combats, *ib.* Wars, commerce, &c. 172. Pyritic trade, religion, temples, &c. *ib.*
- Malacca kingdom, its antient state, iii. 322. Capital, where situated, and by whom founded, *ib.* Seized on by Albuquerque, *ib.* Attempted in vain by the Dutch, *ib.* Taken by the king of Johor, 323. Its fine harbour and fort besieged by the Portuguese, taken, plundered, and burnt, iv. 124 (Z). The Portuguese settlement there, 150 and (Y). Its close siege by the Indians, 151 and (A). Where situated, and seized on by the Dutch, iv. 498. Dutch settlement described, and how subdued by them, and inhabitants described, *ib.* Its vast importance and commerce, 499 (L)
- city described, iv. 498. How betrayed by the Portuguese governor, and lost for want of provisions, and the road too far distant from it, 499. Strength of the place described, *ib.*
- Malachi, St. a monk, restores the church of Ireland to Rome, ix. 588. Arrival at Rome, 590
- Malaga, siege and surrender, after great loss on both sides, viii. 208. Sea-fight off, between Sir George Rooke and the count de Thouloufe, 356
- Malaguetta coast in Guinea described, vii. 12
- Malak Segued, the ninetieth king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Maletesta defeated, x. 238. Defeats the pope's army under his nephew, 271. Difficulties about his representations to the Florentines, xiii. 525. Named by the young duke of Milan, the governor of his dominions, with his first care, xiv. 88. The common saying of the criminal judge, what, *ib.* That regent's



- regent's first acts, and the reason for hastening his niece's marriage with the duke, *ib.* Driven out of Milan by Facino Scaliger, *ib.*
- Malatia, seized upon by Bardus Sclerus, i. 589
- Malatiah, taken by Ali Bahaer, and a dreadful famine there, ii. 234
- Malayans, who and whence so called, iii. 323. Their language, *ib.* At Batavia, their commerce, &c. iv. 476
- Malazcarda, where situated, and besieged by the Greeks, i. 565
- Maldivia islands discovered, and made subject to Portugal, iv. 122. Their situation, &c. and the fort built by Gomez, 144. The vast trade of the Dutch with them, *ib.* (R). Pearl-fishery protected by the Portuguese, *ib.* Superior to most others, 145
- Maldras, chosen one of the four kings of the Suevi, vii. 542 (A)
- Malek Ebn Awf, commands at the battle of Honein, i. 86. Defeated by Mohammed, *ib.* Retires to Al-Tayef castle, 67, and harasses the Thakifites, 89. Introduced into Aazaz by treachery, 214. Takes and plunders it, and returns to Aleppo, 215
- Shah, declared Alp Arslan's successor, ii. 164. Reduces Miriam, or Nishin, in Georgia, 167. Succeeds his father, and defeats his rebellious uncles, 168. Causes Kaderd, one of them, to be poisoned, and sends Akfis to subdue Syria, 169. Who becomes tributary to him, *ib.*
- Al Rahim made omra of Baghdad. i. 651. Stripped of his power by Bafasiri, 654. Seized and deposed by Togrol Bek, *ib.*
- Shah, his conquests in Syria, &c. i. 665. Goes and pays homage to the caliph at Baghdad, 666. Invested by the caliph at Baghdad, and vast extent of his empire, 667. Conquests beyond the Jihun, and victory over Solyman, *ib.* Marriage, and his son Saujar born, *ib.* Alliance with Ibrahim, king of Gazna, *ib.* Gives his daughter to the caliph, 670. Goes in pilgrimage to Mecca, and public works there, *ib.* Threatening embassy to Al Hafan, the Botanist, how answered, 671. His second journey to Baghdad, 672. Deposes his Waxir, *ib.* Is assassinated, death concealed by his wife, 673. And his character, *ib.* Public works, and instances of his singular piety, *ib.* Extent of his empire, and partition among his friends, &c. 674. Charities in hunting, standing army, and he orders the Persian kalendar to be reformed, *ib.* His four surviving sons, 676
- II. an infant, succeeds his father Barkiarok, ii. 687. Whether ranked among the Seljuk sultans, 687. Deposed by his uncle Mohammed, 689
- III. succeeds Masud, i. 711, and ii. 190. But deposed, *ib.*
- Shah conquers Mawarlnahr, ii. 169. Marries Tarkan Khatun, *ib.* Makes alliance with sultan Massud, drives the rebel Takash out of Marwa, 170. Quarrel with his noble vizier, whence, 171. His death, 172. Greek accounts of him false, *ib.* His character, pilgrimages, &c. 173. Provinces given away to his friends, *ib.* (See also i. 665 and Amin Malek). Amendment of the Persian kalendar, called Tawarik al Jalali, or Jalalean kalendar, 173
- , the son of Barkiarok, an infant, left under the guardianship of Ayyaz, ii. 178. Deprived of the empire by his uncle, 179
- Shah II. his origin, short reign, and imprisonment, resumes the crown, and dies soon after, ii. 190
- Al Kamel, lord of Egypt, his success against the Rums, and he sends vast numbers of them in chains into Egypt, ii. 230
- Ebn Shabib, defeated by the Greeks in Phrygia, i. 366
- the son of Azetines, his retreat from Constantinople, and defeated by Amur, ii. 240. Puts him to death, and killed by his son Ali, and invades the Romans, 241. Gets his wife from M. Paleologus, *ib.*
- Al Nasr, lord of Aleppo, summoned by Hulaku, ii. 474. Takes refuge in the deserts, *ib.* Discovered by Ketbuga, 475. Put to death by Hulaku, *ib.*
- Kurt's ingratitude to Amir Juban, ii. 490. Puts his son Jalayr also to death, and hated for it at court, *ib.*
- Kayazoddin disregards Timur Bek's summons, ii. 511. Invaded by him, 512. His submission, and kind reception, *ib.* Made prince of Herat, 513
- Ebn Ans's death, and excellent character, and founder of the second orthodox sect, i. 421. Highly honoured by caliph Al Rashid, 422
- Malek Al seizes upon Al Kayro, and driven out of it, vi. 55. See Amin Malek
- Malleams, their mountainous dwelling, and singular character, iii. 182
- Mallica province, English settlement there, xv. 83
- Malinalco town, famous for witchcraft, xiv. 362
- Malipiero Pasqual, the sixty sixth duke of Venice, succeeds F. Foscar, x. 262. His character, and generosity to Nicolo Jenson Tedescho, the first printer in Venice, and his death, 263
- Malmoe destroys all the badges of Romish superstition, which example other cities follow, xii. 147. Blocked up, and the king of Sweden frustrated in relieving of it, besieges Helsingburg, but is repelled, 195
- Malo, St. bombarded by the combined fleet, with the explosion of a large fireship, xi. 643. The English burn the French ships there, xv. 622
- Malplaquet, battle of, with the retreat of the French to Valenciennes, ix. 494
- Malta, famous island, described, vii. 366. Barrenness, produce, improved by its knights, climate, 367. Castle of St. Angelo, and Citta Vittoriosa, 369. Port, sixty villages, and few natural rarities, 370 (C). Artificial ones, 371. Soil better cultivated, fruits, quadrupeds, &c. *ib.* Inhabitants, 372. Marriages and other customs, *ib.* Land and sea forces, 373. Commerce, *ib.* Coin and government, 374. Antient state of the island, 376. Proposed to the knights by the emperor, 444. Ceded to them, 448. The difficulties about it removed, 449. Entered and possessed by the order, *ib.* Attacked by the Turks, 461. A new fleet sent against it by Soliman, 478. Twice repelled by the knights, 480. Admit the inquisition to be introduced, 497. The number of its inhabitants, 505. Formed into regiments, 506
- city, described, vii. 367. Fortifications, 368. Public buildings, *ib.* Inns belonging to the knights, *ib.* Other public edifices, 369. Grand armoury, *ib.* Besieged by the Turks, 462. The siege raised, 463
- bishop of, sent to the pope, vii. 503
- knights, their strength and valour, vii. 367. Their nations or tongues, 368. Their charitable office, 369. Divided into three estates, 379. Then into eight tongues, or nations, 380. Remove to Acra, after the loss of Jerusalem, 385. Cut in pieces at the siege of Affer, and make a truce with the Turks, 389. Settle at Limisso, 390. Take the island of Rhodes, 393. Also the title of knights of Rhodes, *ib.* Ordered by the pope to quit Rhodes, 401. The pope's inflexibility towards them, *ib.* Their chapters, when complete, 402. Take possession of Malta, 449. Noble defence of their standard, 470. Make rich reprisals on the Turks, 496. Oppressed by the European powers, 497. Plot against the grand master, 498. Wholly influenced by the pope, 499. Unfortunate attempt on the island of St. Mauro, 504. The last general chapter holden by their order, *ib.* Bravery and success against the Turks, 507. Signal bravery in Candia, 509
- grand master, his stately gardens, vii. 368. Rank and Power, 374. Revenue, *ib.* Titles and state, 375 (F)
- threatened with a war by the Turks, vii. 508. Attacked by a famine, 509. Sends succours into Candia against the Turks, and labours under a famine, *ib.* Under a grievous pestilence, 516. And a great earthquake, 518. Invaded by the Turks, but repelled, and soundly beaten, viii. 258
- Malva, a province of Indostan, iii. 17
- Mam Katu, his submission and presents to Timur Bek, and put to death by him, ii. 515
- Mamaconans, vestals at Cuzco, ridiculed by four Spaniards, and the fatal consequences, xiv. 296
- Mamulukes, who, iv. 101. They become lords of Egypt, vi. 11
- , the Savoyard party in Geneva, why so called, xiv. 14
- Mamun Ebn Mohamed reigns in Karazm, ii. 721
- caliph, dethrones his brother Amin, and is a friend to the Jews, v. 525
- Mamre, a famous fair kept in the plain of, v. 492 (D)
- , famous oak, the foundation of the Meccan pilgrimages, vi. 28 (V)
- Ma-myen heads a revolted army of vagabonds, defeated, iii. 704
- Man, or Mar, what the Siamese mean by it, iii. 342 (F)
- isle of, its solemn resignation to the Roman church, ix. 623
- Mananhare, a river of Madagascar, v. 93



- Manapar in Madura, the factory and fishery there, iii. 570
- Manar, in Ceylon, taken by the Dutch, iv. 440
- Manatenga, a fertile province of Madagascar, the natives described, vi. 91
- river, vi. 91
- Manati, the hand-fish, described, v. 692. Caught by the Moors, 693
- Manbii, where situated, and plundered by the Moslems, i. 217. Taken, 220. Its antient names, and other particulars, ib.
- Manchew Tartars, who, ii. 243. Subdue the Mungls, and their government, 261. Division of them into standards, 262. Subdue the Mungls, ii. 437. Seize on the northern parts of China, iii. 722. Make alliance with the emperor Ning-tsong, ib. Invited to the assistance of China, and totally subdue it, 731. Plunder and burn Quang-tong, 735. Defeated in Quang-fi by Ching-chi, and drive him into Formosa, ib. Repulsed before Shau-king, 736. Have recourse to stratagems, ib.
- military in China, iii. 579. Their vast number, office, &c. ib.
- Manco Capac proclaimed inca by the Peruvians, xiv. 299
- , inca at Cuzco, causes of his discontent with the Spaniards, xiv. 308. A fresh present to the governor, but still disappointed, makes his escape from the Spaniards by a stratagem, ib. Different accounts of it, 309 (E). Spirited representation to his council against the Spaniards, 310. Its effect, and all unanimous for war, ib. Besides Cuzco, fires the city, and forces the citadel, ib. Its progress, &c. 311. Rejects Almagro's proposals, and the persuasions of his officers, with his exalted sentiments, 313. Abdicates, ib. His remarkable speech on the occasion, 313 (B). Proposes retiring to the Andes, 314 (B). Offers his service to Vela, and his accidental death, 334
- , first inca of Peru, his reign, xiv. 376. He probably invented a tale for introducing credibility, ib. Plants colonies, ib. And the several useful institutions he made, ib. Care of religion, ib. Erects a temple to the sun, and a cloister of select virgins, ib. Marks of distinction and titles to the regal dignity, 377. Appropriates certain marks to different tribes, ib. The Peruvians gratitude to him, ib. Substance of his last harangue to the people, ib. Admonitions in private to his children, ib. His death much regretted, and his great character, 378
- Mandarins of China, their several degrees, offices, &c. iii. 578. Great oppressors of the people, 581
- Mandeville, Sir John, his travels into the Levant, &c. iv. 109. Story of a man travelling round the world, ib. (D)
- Mandingo kingdom described, vii. 39. What nations are comprehended under that name, ib. Their wretched character, 40. Manners and customs, ib. Ways of treating new-born infants, 41
- Mando city, and its ruins, in Indostan, iii. 17
- Man-eaters (Atac-apas) savages, where, xv. 47
- Manes, rabbi, his singular attempt of the Jewish religion, v. 504
- Manez, a people in Sierra Leona described, vii. 23. ib. Their frequent wars, ib.
- Manegold de Tetocio, styled podesta of Genoa, and his punishing a riot, x. 543
- Manfred defeats the pope's army, ix. 637. Who refuses to ratify his general's treaty, ib. Peace proposed, and why rejected, 638. Croisade preached against him, who strengthens himself against the pope's intrigues, by an alliance with Arragon, 640. Also against the Greeks, who recovered Constantinople, ib. Prevailed on to take the regency of Sicily from Berthold di Honebruch, but he invites the pope to take the guardianship, with the terms, x. 437. The pope not regarding this, Manfred attacks and defeats his forces, ib. On the pope's death he reduces several places, ib. Pope Alexander IV. excommunicates him, and Octavian, the pope's general, consents to a peace with Manfred, and the conditions, 438. But the pope, rejecting the treaty, gives the investiture of the kingdom to Edmund, son of Henry III. of England, with Manfred's proceeding's in a parliament at Barletta, ib. After which he is invited to Naples, and reduces Terra di Lavoro, &c. ib. Manfred passing over to Palermo, is elected and crowned king, with his generosity, ib. Sends troops to Lombardy to assist the Gibellines, ib. The pope excommunicates him again, with his answer to an embassy from Germany, and Conradin's mother, 439. Manfred respected at home and abroad, with instances of this, ib. Gains a complete victory over the Florentine Guelphs, ib. On pope Alexander's death, pope Urban IV. his successor be-
- comes Manfred's bitter enemy, ib. Marriage of Manfred's eldest daughter with the king of Arragon's son, ib. The pope publishes a croisade against Manfred, and confers the kingdom of Sicily on Charles of Anjou, and fatal consequences attending this treaty, ib. Defeated and slain near Benevento by the French through treachery, and how his corps is served by the pope, with his character, 440
- Manfred and Conrad, sons of the emperor Frederic II. their history and characters, xiii. 276. With the death of Conrad through Manfred's means, and Conrad's intrigues in Italy, ib. Gains ground in Italy, effect of his resentment on the total defeat of his German squadron of horse, sent to the Florentine exiles, with their impetuosity, who are utterly defeated by the Germans, Siennese, &c. 278. Sayings on seeing the Florentine exiles before the battle of Benevento, who is defeated by Charles of Anjou, and slain, and the popular government restored in Florence, 280
- Manfredi's family seize Faenza, xiii. 591. Get the upper hand in Faenza, 593
- Mangasea circle in Yenesei province, described, xiii. 46. Its principal place of the same name, 47
- Mangharac river in Madagascar, vi. 92
- Mangu-Timur, succeeds Burgha in Kipjak, ii. 446. His conquests in Bulgaria, is defeated by the Persians, and dies, ibid.
- Mangulore, a sea-port in Kanara, and its Portuguese factory burnt by the Arabs, iii. 160
- Mungufar proposes Meng-ko's election, ii. 354. Discovers a plot against him, 355
- Manguislaw, a sea-port in Karazm, ii. 716
- Manguzir, a sea-port in Kanara, iii. 161
- Maniaces's successful expedition into Sicily, i. 640. Disgusts his brave Normans and Lombards, and is defeated by them, 641. Defeats 100,000 Moslems, 644. Falsely accused by the emperor, and sent prisoner to Constantinople, ib.
- Manichees expelled for their crimes, and settle in Mesopotamia, i. 400
- Manica, golden mine described, vi. 377. Extreme coldness of the region, ib.
- Manicouagau shoal, in St. Laurence river, described, xiv. 551
- Manji, what, and where situated, ii. 294
- Manilla islands, (see Philippines) iv. 178. City made the metropolis of them, ib. Attempted by the Chinese, 180. Its situation, extent, &c. 181. Inhabitants, soil, &c. ib. Whence called Manilla, 184. Subject to earthquakes, 186 (N). Gold mines, origin, and genius of the natives, 187. Hatred to the Spaniards, ib. Its commerce, with respect to the East Indies, commodities and manufactures, 209
- streights, why so tedious and dangerous, iv. 212 (N). Voyage of the state galleons to Acapulco, 213. The amount of their value at their return, 215. Annual ship how often taken by the English, 219
- galleon and her convoy, with the value and profits to the captain, &c. xiv. 441
- Manitou, object of worship what, xv. 18 (C)
- Manjubekin's ill success against Aleppo, i. 393. Sets himself up at Damascus, ib.
- Mankishlak, a city of Karazm, ii. 717
- Mankong (see Menkong) comes to the Mongls assistance, ii. 344
- Manouchi's history of the Great Mogul, romantic, iii. 52
- Manoufi, a river of Madagascar, vi. 94
- Manqui, the general name of the nations in California, xiv. 421
- Mansfeldt's progress and character, xi. 194 (Q). Defeated by Buquoy, 197. How he saves his little army by stratagem, when suddenly invested by the duke of Bavaria, 205. Without whose knowledge he decamps, and reaches the Lower Palatinate, ib. Over-runs Alsace, 207. Takes Lademburg by assault, cuts to pieces a detachment near Frankendal, and entirely routs archduke Leopold, 208. Ravages Darmstadt, but is forced by Tilly to retreat, ib. By stratagem defeats count Tilly, ib. Feared and flattered by most powers in Europe, 209. And though defeated in Thierache, he compels Spinola to raise the siege of Bergen-op-zoom, ib. After a defeat by Wallestein at Dalfau, marches into Hungary to join Gabor, xi. 214. xii. 267. Causes of Mansfeldt's chagrin here, his quitting the army, and his death at Zara, in Dalmatia, with an account of him and character, ib. (D). Some instances of his great command over his passions, ibid. Takes Wachten-donck, made governor, and his cruel edict in the Netherlands counteracted by a declaration of the United Provinces, 440. Disappointed in surprising the prince's camp, 467. Decamps from Gertruydenberg, and is again foiled



- by prince Maurice, 467. Beats Gonzales, and pursues his march to join the prince, 497. Successful incursions, 509. Manlaughter, its punishment according to the Alcoran, i. 178.
- Manfur, commandant in Damascus, his treasonable stratagem against Mahan, i. 185. Excommunicated for it, 186. Governor of Tostar imprisons the king of Pars, and seizes on his kingdom, ii. 529. Defeats him, and ravages Isfahan, and seizes on the city, ib. Burns the king's eyes out, ib. Defeated, 530. Slain by Shah Rukh, ib.
- made governor of Irak, i. 491.
- governor of Emefa, murdered by the Arabs, i. 491.
- Al Sammani's death and character, i. 574.
- Al or Modaffer, import of that title, i. 654.
- Khan, the enemy and murderer of Khozru Khan, ii. 641. Wounded by Soleyman Shah, 642. Made amends for it, ib.
- , Al, the third caliph of Kayrwan, his success against the rebels, v. 718. Death, 719.
- , Barar, revolts against the caliph Amer, but is defeated and taken prisoner, vi. 49.
- Manta, the worship in its metropolis paid to a large emerald, xiv. 415 (L). Why so many of these precious stones were found here by the Spaniards, ib. sub fin. Also their worship in the surrounding country, and their brutal usages what, ib. Gigantic bones found here, ib.
- Mantane paps in St. Laurence river discovered, xiv. 551.
- Mantua war, resolved upon by Olivares, and its effect on Spain, viii. 295. The famous Jewish academy there, v. 598. Fatal dissensions, ib. Congress, and by what means it breaks up, xi. 129. xiii. 476. Who is first marquis, xiv. 115. First duke, 116. Surprised and sealed by the Imperialists, 117. An envoy from the emperor there, and his business, ib.
- , (Dutchess dowager) retires to a religious house, and her gallant takes the habit of St. Dominic, xiv. 117.
- , history, site, and description, xiv. 111. Its chief towns and capital described, ib. This duchy the birth-place of Virgil, and its different masters, ib. Dispute about the succession, 116.
- Manuel, the Armenian, defeated in Egypt by the Moslems, i. 241. Recovers Alexandria from them, but loses it soon after, 251. His conquests in Sicily, and vain attempt on Masisa, i. 559.
- Manuel, the son of Morad, his treasonable attempt pardoned, v. 165. Gratitude to him, ib.
- , of Portugal, married to Maria, sister of his former wife, viii. 216.
- , the emperor, defeats the Turks in Thrace, and marches against Massud at Cogni, and treachery to the Crusaders, ii. 217. Assists Jagapasan against his brother-in-law, 218. His mock triumph at Constantinople troubled by an earthquake, and his vast presents to Khliziaslan repaid with black ingratitude, and his resentment to his ambassadors, 219. Marches against him, and refuses his repeated offers of peace, ib. Is defeated by him, and narrowly escapes, 220. Insulted by his own soldiers and the Turks, ib. Is glad to make peace with him, and distressed by the Turks, in his retreat, 221.
- The Greek emperor's embassy to the pope, ix. 714. The Greek emperor desires a general council to be holden at Constantinople, ib.
- Manufacture, woollen, introduced into Bologna and encouraged there, xiii. 577.
- Manujahar set upon the throne by his father's subjects, and submissive speech to him, i. 616. Refuses to concur with the rebels against him, ib.
- Maopango, strange rocks in Angola, described, vi. 496. Near them is the sepulchre of the ancient kings of Congo, ib. Portuguese fort, ib.
- Marabouts of Africa, account of the untoward genius of the Africans, v. 658. Three orders of them, with their infamous tenets and character, 662. Brutish lewdness, 663. Second and third fort described, ib. From whom probably sprung, ib.
- , among the Guinea negroes, vii. 68. Their craft and knaveries, ib.
- Maracaibo, its famous lake, xiv. 451. Town of that name described, ib.
- Maracini takes Stargard by assault from the Swedes, xi. 245. Taken prisoner by Pfucl, with other successes of the Swedes elsewhere, 250.
- Maradin, taken by Caliph al Motaded, i. 499.
- Maragha, where, and by whom built, but taken by the Mungls, ii. 319.
- Maragnano, captivity in Br. fil, described, xiv. 477.
- , island taken by the French, but ousted, xiv. 477.
- Maran, disputes concerning, x. 347. The Venetian senate's proclamation, &c. about it, ib. The emperor and Francis determine the affair of Maran by the sword, ib. Maran besieged and purchased by the Venetians, ib.
- Marava, principality in India, described, iii. 175.
- Maravan lake and city in Monoemugi, vi. 380 (B).
- Marbut, Marabout, or high-priest of Arabian, his dress, vi. 623. Power, 627.
- Marcel's sedition in Paris, but he with the ringleaders destroyed, ix. 102.
- Marcello succeeds Paulatio, second doge of Venice, with his character and death, x. 181.
- , (Nicholas) the 69th doge of Venice, his character, x. 267. Beaten by a Turkish man of war, and Solymann returns the senate's ships, x. 328 (E).
- Marcellus II. succeeds pope Julius III. intending a thorough reformation, but dies soon after, x. 94.
- March, (Major) his important services to New England, xiv. 529.
- , (Colonel) his attempt on Port Royal, xiv. 680. His apology and acquittal, and the miscarriage to what owing, 681.
- Marchans, M des, his voyage to Guinea, vi. 628. Embassy to the king of Ardrú, and kind reception, 629.
- Marciennes forces Douay, Scarpe, Quefacci, with Bouchain taken, ix. 504.
- Marco, (Paolo) his travels into the East, iv. 108.
- , a Portuguese traitor instigates the Abyssinian emperor against his countrymen, vi. 209. His death and pompous obsequies, 270.
- Marcoaldus, his cruelty, and raising contributions in Sicily, x. 423. After unsuccessful negotiations with the pope for the crown, he passes over from Puglia into Sicily, 424. Progress in Sicily, but at last entirely defeated, ib. Success prevented by death, 425.
- Mardawii, king of Deylam, his conquests and cruelties in Hamadan, i. 523. Ebn Ramaz's conquests in Hamadan, and treaty with Amado'ddawla, 530. Assassination of his Turks, 531.
- Mardenfeldt's successes, xii. 364.
- Mardin taken by Hulaku, ii. 475. By Timur Bek, 537. Its prince released, and restored by him, 540. Revolted and is blocked up, 559. Taken by Timur Bek, and given to prince Saleh, ii. 533.
- Mardykers, at Batavia, their trades, &c. iv. 476.
- Mareb, a river of Abyssinia, described, and course underground, vi. 204.
- Margaret, of Aullria, married to Juan prince of Asturias, who dies soon after, viii. 214.
- , (Queen) delivered of don Alonso, she dies (not without suspicion) viii. 285.
- , of France, married to Henry of Bearn with reluctance, ix. 266. Her life, private character, and death, 352 (E).
- , queen of Denmark and Semiramis of the North, how she acquires the crown of Sweden, xi. 62. Effects the union of the three northern kingdoms, ib. Appoints the son of Wratislaus of Pomerania, her successor, ib. Why she goes to war with the Teutonic order, and peace concluded at Helsingburg, 64. Olaus V. his mother, declared regent of Denmark, xii. 74. A treaty concluded with Sweden and Mecklenburgh, ib. Her policy, ib. On the extinction of the male line in Olaus V. she is declared queen of Denmark, xi. 77. Character and genius for politics, she unites Norway with Denmark, and becomes queen of the former; also appointing young Henry of Mecklenburgh, afterwards called Eric, her successor, ib. The crown of Sweden offered to her by the malecontents, and made hereditary, ib. Resolutions of several governors, and the declarations in favour of her, 78. The senate acknowledge her queen, ib. Several acknowledge the queen, 79. Makes peace with the duke of Slefwick and the princes of Holstein; the pirates being hereby suppressed, ib. Peace concluded by her with the Vandal cities, and the conditions in favour of Albert, with the queen's donations to the clergy, and coronation in Sweden, 80. Diet convoked, in which, among other proceedings, her successor is appointed with the queen's care in administering justice in Denmark, ib. Affairs of commerce, and other matters regulated, with the errors in her government, 81. Her views for an union of the three northern crowns, and speech to the assembly of their deputies at Calmar, ib. Gothland surrendered



- rendered to her, with the conditions, 82. Treaty between her and the Vandal cities, with her designs in gaining the nobility and clergy, of which latter the nobility and gentry are jealous, *ib.* Difference between her and the dowager of Sleswick, 84. The nobility implore assistance from the queen, *xii.* 244 (A). Her hard conditions accepted, and she is elected queen of Sweden, *ib.* Congress between her and John of Mecklenburgh, about Albert's release, and the terms, 245. Chosen regent of Sweden, under Eric, with her policy, 246. She assembles a diet at Calmar, where articles are signed for the perpetual union of the three kingdoms, *ib.* (B). Disgusts the Swedes by her arbitrary proceedings, with her advice to the young king, 246. Recovers the isle of Gothland, and dies, 247. On which several enemies are raised to the king, and how repressed, *xii.* 43. Her character, 246 (A).
- Margaret, Octavio's dutchess of Parma, is governess of the Low-Countries, *viii.* 259. Resigns her government, *ib.* and why, *xiii.* 629
- of Savoy, the benevolence of that dutchess to the reformed at Geneva, *xiv.* 130
- Margarita, settlement of that pearl island, *xv.* 351. Strict orders against approaching it, with the avarice of the Spaniards, and fate thereon, *ib.* Treachery and cruelty of the Spaniards against its natives, 352. New commission to the famous de Casas, his treatment from Ocampo, and the massacre of the Spaniards through his means, *ib.*
- Margarita island, account of it, *xv.* 364. Its castle of Monpadre demolished by the Dutch, *ib.*
- Margha, a river of West Tartary, *ii.* 122
- , city, where situated, *ii.* 476 (A). Its famous observatory, *ib.*
- Marhab, a Jewish giant, slain by Ali, *i.* 72
- Maria (Donna) a Portuguese virago, drives the Maharattas out of Goa, *iii.* 147
- , (Santa) one of the Azores, described, and where situated, *vi.* 151. Discovered by Columbus, *xiv.* 145
- , (Queen) her admirable conduct, by which Castile is preserved, *viii.* 26. Death, character, and behaviour in her last illness, 36
- Delivered of Ferdinand, *viii.* 40. Dies, not without suspicion of poison, 86
- , (Donna) married to Ferdinand, afterwards emperor, *viii.* 295
- , (Santa) island discovered by Columbus, *ib.*
- , (Donna) bay, account of it, *xv.* 358
- , (Theresa) succeeds her father Charles VI. as heiress of Austria, whose dominions several attack at once, *xv.* 628. Is supported by the Hungarians, *ib.* Concessions to them, and saved by Great-Britain, 629. Generosity of the English parliament to her, *ib.* Confederacy against her, 630. Affairs appear desperate, but mend, *ib.* Success of her troops, and Munich taken, *ib.* Peace with Prussia, and her cession of Silesia, 631. Alliance with France against Prussia, and the result, *ib.* Makes peace with the king of Prussia at Hubertsburg, by which her eldest son is chosen king of the Romans, 633
- Mariamne islands (See Ladrões,) *iv.* 225. The property of them to whom belonging, 264
- Mar-jan mount, in Ethiopia, described, and the sepulchral monument of the emperors, *vi.* 202
- Mariana's book burnt, *ix.* 347
- Mariel harbour possessed by the English, at taking the Havannah, *xv.* 343
- Mariendal, in Franconia, settlement of the Teutonic knights there, *xii.* 657. Rich convent described, *xiii.* 19
- Marienglas, or lapis specularis, *xiii.* 35
- Marienwerden, account of, *xii.* 650
- Marigalante discovered by Columbus, *xiv.* 144
- , island, account of, *xv.* 234. Taken several times by the English, 235
- Marignan, obstinacy of both parties in this action, *x.* 309. They desert at night in the same station, and renew the charge at break of day, *ib.* The Swiss retreat in good order, with an account of the French loss, 310. Remark on this engagement and the success to what owing, *ib.* (C).
- Marillac succeeds Vieuville in the finances of France, *ix.* 370. Execution at the Greve, 384
- Marj-Raht battle, *i.* 318
- Marina, (Donna) an Indian lady, given Cortez, her parentage and adventures, *xiv.* 182 (C). How she discovers a plot against the Spaniards, 206. Overhears some suspicious words from the Mexicans about the Spaniards, 246
- Marinas (Louis das) assists the Camboyans against the Siamese, *iii.* 416. His second success are either shipwrecked, 417, or murdered, 418
- Gomez sent governor of the Philippine islands, who puts them in a state of defence, *iv.* 179. Unfortunate attempt on the Moluccas, 180. Murdered by the Chinese mariners, *ib.*
- Mark, the patriarch of Alexandria, succeeded by James, *i.* 457. His character, *ib.*
- , islands, in the South-sea, described, *v.* 20
- , patriarch of Egypt, imprisoned for his honest zeal, *vi.* 56 *sub.* (F).
- , St. of (Cardinal) negotiations in Poland unsuccessful, *x.* 36
- Markats (See Merkits) alone stand by Temujin, *ii.* 267
- Markham (Mr. made governor of Pennsylvania, *xv.* 117. Recommends the Indians of New York to the assembly, *ib.* Expedient in this case approved, *ib.*
- Marlborough (Earl of) conceals the plan of operations with the Dutch, *ix.* 482. Campaign in Flanders under him, with his character as a general, *ib.* Boufflers opposed by Lewis to him, with Marlborough's rapid success, 483. Takes Bonnein sight of the French, *ix.* 484, and *xi.* 326. Famous march to the relief of the empire, with his successes at Schellenberg and Donawert, with the defeat of the French and Bavarians at Blenheim, 486, and *xi.* 329. Reflection on the consequences of that action, *ix.* 486. Retreat to Flanders, and apology to Villars differently represented, with the campaign in the Netherlands, 487. Succeeds in forcing Villars's lines, while he again surprises the other's camp, 498. Masterly feint of Marlborough, which obliges Villars to retreat, with his ingenuous acknowledgment in favour of the English general, *ib.* The progress of the allies under that earl, by taking several places in Spanish Guelderland, *xi.* 325. Forces the duke of Bavaria's lines near Messelin, who retires towards Louvain, with his own account, 331. And Marlborough's remonstrances to the Dutch for not suffering their troops to pursue, *ib.* Disputes between him and the prince of Baden, the result of which was the separation of the allies, *ib.* Beats Villeroy at Ramillies, with the places taken thereupon, 336. Sent to sound Charles of Sweden, *ib.* Friends turned out of the administration gives Lewis great hopes, 367. Reduces Bouchain, *ix.* 499. Different accounts of it and the last military enterprise of that great general, *xi.* 348. Visits Charles XII. at Leipzig, *xii.* 382. Superseded by Ormond, *ix.* 503
- Marlborough fort, in India, described, *iv.* 398
- Marmol's description of Africa defective, *v.* 653 *seq.* & *alibi.*
- Marmora, gulph of, the Spaniards build a fort there, *viii.* 287
- Marok (See Honey-bird) *vi.* 187
- Maronites, seize on Mount Libanus, *i.* 295. By their deputies submit to the Roman church, *x.* 19
- , in Syria, embrace the Roman faith, *ix.* 605
- Marquette, (Father and Joliet) their discovery of the Mississippi, *xiv.* 612. Farther discoveries on that river, *ib.*
- Marseilles, plague there, *xv.* 610. Numbers which died in a month, *ib.*
- Martavan, a province of Pegu, *iii.* 242
- , capital of the kingdom, described, and taken by the Siamese, *iii.* 242. Its king's vast offers to the Portuguese rejected, 253. Capitulates with the Barman king, *ib.* His immense treasure seized, and himself put to death, 254. Kingdom invaded by the Barmas, *iii.* 253. Capital besieged by Para Mandara, *ib.* Is taken and plundered, 254
- Martel, (Charles) declared duke of Austrasia, *viii.* 657. Also mayor, 659. His continual expeditions, with the cause of his success, *ib.* Assistance desired from Charles by Eudes, duke of Aquitaine, against the Moors, *ib.* Entirely defeats the Moors under Abderaman, between Tours and Poitier, *ib.* His success in other parts, with his several acts and death, 660. Account of his family and descendants, with his character, *ib.* (O).
- , son to Charles the Lame, crowned at Naples king of Hungary, *ix.* 651
- Martha, (St.) pillaging of it, *xi.* 519
- , (Santa) a province of Terra Firma, described, *xiv.* 450. Its capital, with the several attacks thereon, *ib.*
- Martha, Vineyard in New England, settlement made there by captain Gesnold, *xiv.* 501. Account of the natives and trade with them, *ib.*



- Martin, duke of Montalban, succeeds Juan I. of Arragon through the address of his consort, viii. 169. King settles his son's affairs in Sicily, and makes a tour to Avignon, ib. Caresses the states so as to draw very large supplies, ib. Wisely compromises the dispute with the representative of Foix, 170. Pedro, the king's only son dies, as does his mother Maria, ib. The king marries Blanca, of Navarre, ib. & x. 474. Queen dowager Sybilla and consort die, viii. 170. He gains a glorious victory in Sicily, reduces all of it, x. 473, but dies, which occasions an interregnum, viii. 170. The disputes about the succession, which begun in Martin's days, are revived now, 171
- IV. is chosen pope in room of Nicholas III. after a great contest in the conclave, and two cardinals put in irons, ix. 647. xiii. 285. He confers the senatorial dignity on Charles of Anjou, as his deputy, ix. 647. Grant of Indian discoveries to the king of Portugal, iv. 112. ix. 648
- V. chosen pope at Constance in the room of John XXIII. deposed, the latter being an enemy to the Maltese, vii. 409. ix. 712. At whose procession the emperor and elector of Brandenburg holds his horse's reins, xi. 78. His remonstrances to Benedict, and for reconciling the Bavarian princes are ineffectual; yet he reconciles the emperor to Frederic of Austria, with the conditions, ibid. Sends a legate to Benedict for soliciting his abdication, but refuses, ix. 713. Returns to Italy, and resides at Florence, 714. The pope excommunicates Brachius lord of Perugia, who does so, in his turn, ib. (Y). Makes his peace with the pope, and the queen of Naples's request granted, 714. Joyfully received at Rome, ib. His desire to Alphonfus of Arragon for deserting the antipope rejected, with that king's edict, and the pope's sentence thereon, 127. Joins with the duke of Milan against Florence, ib. Legate treats with the king of Arragon about deserting the antipope, who abdicates voluntarily, and his cardinals choosing Martin V. the schism thus ends, 717. Discontent at Florence, and the occasion, xiii. 376. Dies, x. 1
- , valley of St. its natural curiosities, xiv. 124
- , account of that island belonging to the Dutch and English, xv. 237
- Martinenga Hercules renounces his religion, and enters into Selim's service, x. 366. Noble defence of Delringo, and honourable capitulation, 367
- Martinico, unsuccessful expedition against it, xv. 198. Account of that island, ib. The English land, and why they draw off, 199. Proposal for attacking St. Pierre, opposed by the British commodore, ib. Account of its conquest, 204. Vast difficulties attending it, 205. Morne Tortenson taken by the English, ib. Also Morne Garnier and Fort Royal capitulates, 206. Unaccountable conduct of La Touche, the governor, ib. Surrender of Pigeon island, capitulation with the inhabitants, and on the part of the governor, with the final conquest of Martinico, ib. Officers who distinguished themselves; with the loss on both sides, ib. The other French Caribbees reduced without bloodshed, 207. Why these were restored and not the conquests on the continent, ib.
- , described, xv. 220. Its first settlement by the French, ib. Repulse the natives, who sue for peace, ib. The French make a regular settlement there, ib. Insurrection, ib. Some Dutch and Jews allowed a settlement, and after slaughtering the natives the French become masters of the island, 221. Invaded by the English, and a frenzy among the French how cured, ib. Dreadful earthquake, its flourishing state, and government, ib. Its air; St. Peter and other parts described, 222. Also Fort Royal, 223. Reflection on the conquest of the island by the English, ib. Stipulation regarding Martinico in the treaty of 1763, 224. Public notice in consequence of this for obtaining passports, ib. The French mistaken in imagining to revive their sugar trade, and why, ib.
- Martins of Canada described, xiv. 557
- taken by the English, xv. 627
- Martino, rabbi, writes his *Pugio Fidei* against the Jews, and whether a convert or no, v. 555 (T).
- Maru seized on by Din Mahamed, ii. 729. And made his residence, ib.
- Marubil (Ebn David) revolts against Malek Shah, but defeated and taken by him, ii. 168
- Marulus narrowly escapes a piece of Catalan treachery, v. 151
- Marushahjan besieged, and surrendered to Tuli Khan, ii. 312 (S). Seized by Masar, ib. Its brave defence and dreadful fate, ib.
- Maruyh, the murderer of Montaser, put to death, i. 608
- Mary's cape, St. in New Guinea, described, and the land subject to earthquakes, v. 20 (H).
- St. an island in Africa described, vi. 82. St. Mary's town described, xv. 110
- Mary, one of Mahammed's concubines, i. 116
- of England dies of grief for the loss of Calais, viii. 255. On which the dauphin assumes the arms of England, ix. 247
- , queen dowager of France, returns to Scotland, ix. 255. Dies on a scaffold, 384
- of Nevers married to Ladislaus, king of Poland, ix. 418. Address of Madame de Guebriant, as ambassador, who conducted the princess, ib.
- , on her father Lewis's death, declared king (not queen) of Hungary, x. 470. xv. 397. Why the nobles revolt and send for Charles of Naples, who is declared king, but murdered soon after, xv. 398
- , and her husband, Martin of Arragon, take possession of Sicily, x. 472
- (Princess) daughter to Charles of Burgundy, several addresses made her, xi. 110. A contest about the guardianship of their children, by which Flanders is involved in a civil war; an accommodation made, xi. 112
- , a celebrated one in Russia with three hands, xiii. 66 (Q).
- Maryland described, and from whom so called, xv. 106. Arrival and settlement of the first colonists, ib. Counties and their site, 107. Government, ib. Several alterations, ib. Its flourishing state, ib. New constitution of that colony, what, 108. Church of England ministers settled there, and their stipends what, ib. Revenue of its proprietary what, 109. Its chief commodities, ib. Air, inhabitants, and number of slaves annually imported, ib. Order and trade, 110. Its chief towns, ib. Parts allotted to two Indian chiefs, and the wise policy in this, ib.
- Marrying the sea, that ceremony, when begun in Venice, x. 198
- Marriage, laws of the Alcoran relating to it, i. 176. With degrees of consanguinity exclude it, 177. Obligatory in China, viii. 626 (F).
- Masab (Ebn Omair) sent to instruct the Medinans, i. 40
- (Ebn Zobeir) made governor of Basra, i. 313
- Masand's rebellion and fratricide, with his bloody reign in Hormuz, ii. 683. Driven out by Bahaouddin, ib.
- Masar al Molk seizes on Maru, ii. 312. Surrenders it to the Mungis, ib.
- Masarjowah, a famous Jewish physician and author, i. 326
- Masbotheans, a new sect among the modern Jews, v. 496
- Mascarati, or rebels of Savona, &c. that declared for the emperor, an unsuccessful attempt of the Genoese to reduce them, x. 548, who, intending to besiege Genoa, is entirely defeated before Parma, ib.
- , or Gibellines, though restored in Genoa, yet not so over Italy, the Gueiphs retaliating their injuries, x. 548
- Mascarenhas (Pedro) appointed viceroy in India, iv. 129. Imprisoned by Sanpaya, and sent home, ib.
- (Philip) made governor of Ponte Gallo, iv. 437. Overreached by the king of Candy, 439. Put under arrest, 440
- Mascoutins country described, and its etymology, xiv. 613
- Mashallah, a famous learned Jew in Baghdad, i. 458
- Masham (Mrs.) succeeds the dutchess of Marlborough in queen Anne's favour, and how she conducts herself, ix. 496. Intrigues of Harley with Mrs. Masham in this whole affair against Marlborough, and his private introduction to the queen by her means, ib.
- Mashhad, the tomb and camp of Hosein, with the mournful ceremony performed upon it, i. 323
- Nejes, ravaged by the Mirzas, but the holy place spared, ii. 560
- Masjad al Harum, the inclosure and territory about Mecca, i. 100
- Maskat, taken and plundered by Albuquerque, ii. 691. (see Muskat) iv. 139
- Masken battle, i. 330
- Maslaus, a private soldier in Poland, assuming the title of prince, conquered it, xii. 455
- Masquerade, an extraordinary kind, in Mexico, xiv. 217
- Matin, Uderza falls into his hands, x. 209. His treachery, and declining an action with Rossi, 210. Notwithstanding his stratagems he is reduced to great difficulties, and his army daily diminished, ib. Defeated, 211
- Mastropietro (Orion) the XLth doge of Venice, x. 199. Peace with



- with the Pisans, and while besieging Zara on a fourth revolt, the pope demands a fleet for Syria, *ib.* Resignation and character, *ib.*
- Mafud, his cold reception of Mahomet, *i.* 30. The son of Mahimud succeeds him in Per an Irak, *i.* 635. Surly answer to his father, *ib.* Black treason to his brother, 636. Quells an insurrection at Ispahan, 638. Marches against his brother Mohamed, *ib.*
- , the son of Mahmud, made governor of Ray, *i.* 632. Seizes on his brother Mohamed's crown and dominions, 638. Expedition into India, and invaded by the Seljuks, 639. Recovers some revolted provinces, *ib.* Raises forces against the Seljuks, 641. Defeated and driven out of Khorazan, 644. (See Mañud). Defeated afresh by them, *ib.* Cruelty to some Turkish troops, takes his imprisoned brother with him into India, and taken prisoner by his brother, 645. His extreme poverty, *ib.*
- , or Mañud, the sultan of Gazna, suffers the Seljuks to cross the Jihun, *i.* 640. *ii.* 153. Returns from India, *i.* 640. Successful expedition against them, and against Togrol Bek, 647. His hatred to them whence, *ii.* 154. Defeated by them, *ib.* Flies to India, *ib.* Deposed and murdered, 157 and *i.* 647, and his character, *i.* 648 (C).
- saluted sultan of the Seljuks, and his wars with the caliph of Baghdad, *ii.* 187. Defeated by him, and makes peace, *ib.* Besieges and enters Baghdad, which he makes his place of residence, 188. Sacrifices his wazir to the Atabek Karafankar, *ib.* His death and excellent character, 189
- the brother of Sayfan sultan conspires against him, *ii.* 214. Takes him prisoner and strangles him, 215. Becomes the IVth sultan of the Rum dynasty, *ib.* Seizes on the territory of Malatiah, 216. The end of his reign and life, 217. Divides his kingdom between his three sons, 218
- , the son of Arslan, has his share of his dominions, *ii.* 218, and 224. Encourages the pretended Alexis, *ib.*
- , the XIVth sultan of Rum, his short reign and death, with his history, imperfect, *ii.* 240
- , the son of Abusaid, defeats his two brothers, and reigns in Buckharia, *ii.* 594
- , the XXIIIrd shah of Hormuz, *ii.* 690. Seizes on the throne after Togrol's death, *i.* 701, and *ii.* 187. Resentment against him by the caliph al Mostarshed, *i.* 700, to Dobais Ebn Sadaka, 702. Demand to caliph al Rashid, 703. Weak compliance with Karafankar, and suppresses a plot in favour of Soliman, 705
- Ebn Malek-shah his death and character, *i.* 711. With him ends the Seljuk dynasty, *ib.*
- Mañulipatan, a port of Golconda, with the English and Dutch factories there, *iii.* 150
- Massa (Prince of) chosen chief of the rioters in Naples, who secretly corresponds with the viceroy, *x.* 521. Cruelly put to death by the Naples rioters on suspicion, and they give the chief command to Annesse, a gunsmith, 522
- Massachusetts's company, its rise under Mr. John White, and procuring a patent, *xiv.* 505. Names of the patentees, *ib.*
- bay company incorporated by patent, *xiv.* 505. Its first governors, clergy, and large supply sent them, *ib.* A schism among them what, *ib.*
- Massander island, in the river Coanza, *vi.* 490
- , an island of Angola described, *vi.* 490
- Massaniello's revolution at Naples, *viii.* 306. *x.* 519 & seq.
- , account of that poor fisherman, who heads the rioters in Naples, *x.* 520. The tumult begins in the market-place, and Massaniello, after ordering all the tax-offices to be fired, conducts the rioters to the viceroy's palace, *ib.* who saves his life by flying to a convent, where he abolishes all taxes on provisions, *ib.* Massaniello generously rejects a pension, and in his return to the market-place, the houses of all concerned in raising the tax are burnt, and he becomes master of the city, *ib.* Upon duke Matalone bringing him a false deed from the viceroy, he is made prisoner, and the people engaged against the nobility, *ib.* Absolute sway of Massaniello all ragged over his followers, with their numbers and his behaviour, *ib.* An unsuccessful attempt on his life through Matalone, and the consequences, *ib.* He compels the viceroy to a dishonourable treaty, still retains his authority, and the viceroy, after a visit from him, appoints him captain-general, 521. His rigid justice and executions on a scaffold erected in one of the streets, *ib.* Becomes delirious, and is assassinated, with the occasion of his madness, and the commotion continues, with the new cause for it, *ib.*
- Massapa gold mines, *vi.* 577
- Massasoit, his treaty with the English at New Plymouth, *xiv.* 510
- Massia destroyed by an earthquake, *i.* 691
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Massiyya taken by the Greeks, *i.* 560
- Massorites, their first rise, and the occasion of a dreadful schism among the Jews, *v.* 531 (F).
- Massulipatam, an English settlement in India, *iv.* 394
- Matacini takes Stargard by assault from the Swedes, *xi.* 243
- Matalone (D). imprisoned on suspicion of burning the Spanish admiral in the night off Naples, *x.* 519
- Matalotes, islands, where situated, *iv.* 267
- Mathematics, its tribunal palliates a gross mistake by a grosser flattery, *ii.* 396
- Mathew, (St.) monastery at Mosul, plundered by a Jaafar, *i.* 403. but restored, *ib.*
- sent into Abyssinia, but dies in his way, *vi.* 257
- Cantacuzen's son, his success against the Turks in Thrace, *v.* 160. Succeeds his father in part of the empire, but forced to resign it, 161
- the Great succeeds his uncle Otho in Milan, with an account of him, *xiv.* 65. Driven out but recalled, *ib.* Compromise between him and Torriano, with the arresting of the former by the emperor, wherein the matter is compromised, 66. Has the supreme command in Milan, under the emperor, who sets out for Rome, and whence called the Great, 67. Excommunicated as head of the Gibellines, with his victories and the bravery of his sons, for which Milan is put under an interdict, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.*
- Mathew (St.) an island on the African coast, *vi.* 118
- Matthews, exploits of the British fleet under him in the Mediterranean, *xiii.* 657. Declaration to the governor of Villa Franca, and remonstrance to Genoa, whose magazines he destroys, 660. Engagement with the French and Spanish fleets off Toulon, and the miscarriage, to what owing, *xv.* 586
- , governor of St. Christopher's, *xv.* 245
- , governor of Nevis, his salary settled, *xv.* 253
- , governor of Antigua, his mild government, *xv.* 258. Presents an additional royal instruction, 262, and its effect, *ib.*
- Mathias, archduke, invited by the confederates into the Low Countries, *viii.* 266. Made governor-general, and the prince of Orange his lieutenant, *xi.* 419. Accepts the government, but honourably discharged, 176. Elected king of Hungary with the reasons, *xi.* 180. Arrogates to himself the retreat of the Turks from Moravia, and obtains a subsidy, which he loses for neglecting the defence of his own kingdom, *x.* 39
- , son of Hunniades, elected king of Hungary, *xi.* 101. who is set at liberty by Podiebrad, and the condition, *ib.* Accepts the crown of Bohemia, and besieging Gradisch is obliged to retire into Hungary, 105. After Casimir's defeat by him near Bresslau, a treaty concluded, 110. Besieges Vienna, from whom the emperor purchases an accommodation, with an account of the terms, *ib.* Declaring war against the emperor, invades Austria, with his successes, by which the emperor's indolence is awakened, 112. Accepting an invitation into Bohemia, endeavours in his rout through Austria to make himself master of it, *xi.* 180. Accommodation between him and the emperor, *ib.* Takes possession of the archduchy at Vienna, and of Hungary at Presburg, *ib.* Assists the protestants, and an accommodation between him and the emperor, with the terms, 183. Proclaimed king of Bohemia, 184. Marries the archduchess Anne Katharine, *ib.* Arrives at Prague, and his rancor in prosecuting one Rufcius, who makes away with himself, 185
- , brother to Rodolphus II. elected and crowned emperor, *xi.* 185. Recommends union to the princes, and sets out for Prague, from which he sends an ambassador to the Ottoman Porte about the succession to Transylvania, *ib.* After the empress's coronation returns to Vienna, 186. Commissions his brother Maximilian to confer with the Protestants, but to no purpose, 188. Some members of the emperor's council thrown out at the windows, 193. Tries gentle methods with the Bohemians in vain, 194. Obligated to remove Klesel, *ib.* Progress of the emperor's general retarded by la Tour, 195. The emperor's general not daring to hazard a battle, intrenches himself, and an accommodation offered to the Bohemians at Pilsen, *ib.* Causes of chagrin, and his death, leaving only a natural son, 196 (R). *xv.* 475. Adopts Ferdinand II. *ib.*
- Mathias, son of Corvin, declared king of Hungary, *xv.* 403. Declares war against the emperor, obliging him to deliver up St. Stephen's crown, *ib.* Has war with the Bohemians; who submit; he recovers Jaza from the Turks, and crowned when six years old, *ib.* The vaivode of Transylvania submits, defeats the Moravians, and is wounded, with the different accounts here, 404. Agrees to a truce with the Turks, but disappointed in dethroning Podiebrad, and crowned



- crowned king of Bohemia, *ib.* Makes Casimir, whom the Hungarians chose king, to quit Hungary, a peace concluded, *ib.* Ravages of the Turks, and he makes war on the emperor, who concludes a peace, *ib.* He takes Vienna and all Lower Austria, he dies, with his character, *ib.*
- Mathilda, (countess) gives all her possessions to the holy see, in detriment of the empire, ix. 568. Her history, xiv. 104. Makes a gift of her estates to Pope Gregory VIII, 105. Her death, with an invitation to the emperor to come and possess her estates, ix. 582 (Q).
- Matignon, marshal, defeats a Spanish fleet before Blaie, with other successes of the royalists in the provinces, ix. 304.
- Matsuma island, in the streights between Japan and Jetzo, iv. 68. By whom governed, 73.
- Matfuri festival in Japan, what, iv. 54 (L).
- Martheo, St. fort in Florida, described, and unsuccessfully besieged by the English, xiv. 433. Now St. Juan, xv. 83. Confusion from thus changing names, *ib.* (Z).
- Mattins of Paris, what, ix. 268.
- Mattos, Emanuel de, an upstart Portuguese, his surprising rise in Arrakan, iii. 234. Seizes on the island of Sundiva, with his vast power and arrogance, 235.
- , James de, a Jesuit, arrives in Abyssinia, vi. 288. Banned, 301.
- Matueof, the Czar's ambassador at London, arrested in the streets for debt, with Peter's insinuating on satisfaction, and queen Anne's refusal, with an account of that whole matter, xiii. 219 (M). An act of parliament passed, making it no longer lawful to arrest an ambassador for debt, *ib.* But after the battle of Pultowa, the Queen sends an embassy to the Czar to excuse what had passed, and styles him emperor, *ib.*
- Maumingan, a province of Mungalia, ii. 246.
- Maupa Rajah, left governor of Pegu, iii. 266. Sent to conquer Siam, 267. Defeated and slain in battle by the king of it, *ib.*
- Mau-quey, the Song general defeated, ii. 426. And killed, 427.
- Maure, St. and his brother put to death by Timur Bek, ii. 563.
- African name of Mahomet, v. 668.
- Mauregato, Don, usurps the Spanish crown, with his quiet reign and death, vii. 596.
- Maurice island discovered, v. 7. A mistake rectified by captain Tasman, 16.
- one of the African islands, vi. 85.
- of Hesse Cassel, a dispute between him and Lewis of Darmstadt determined, xi. 211.
- , elector of Saxony, xv. 466. Makes a league with the king of France, and retains the troops employed at the siege of Magdeburg, with the occasion of the siege, x. 164. Secures other assistance, and declares himself, with the reasons for this measure, *ib.* Takes the field, his progress, and proposals of peace sent to him from the emperor by Ferdinand, *ib.* Amusing Ferdinand in an interview at Lintz, advances and takes Eremberg-castle, the emperor narrowly escaping, 165. Enters Inspruc, with his proceedings there, and the king of France takes several places on the frontiers, with all Lorrain, *ib.*
- son of William prince of Orange, is chosen stadtholder by Holland and Zealand, xi. 429. His successes, 437. On Parma's return from Paris, takes Zutphen and Deventer, &c. 438. Hulst and Nimeguen, 439. Steinwick, *ib.* Besieges Gertruydenberg, and his surprising lines of circumvallation, 440. These Mansveldt approaches, but the garrison capitulates, 441. Erects fort Bourtagne to break off the communication between Germany and Groningen, with Mansvelt's disappointment in surprising the prince's camp, and the abortive attempts of both, *ib.* Conspiracies against his life, *ib.* Besieges and takes Groningen on capitulation, 442. His attempts on Grol and Meurs unsuccessful, 444. Defeats count de Vareux near Thornhont, 447. This victory to what owing, *ib.* (A). His rapid conquests, *ib.* Remonstrance to the states, on receiving orders to give Mendoza battle, 455. How the states construe this, and oblige him to take the first opportunity, *ib.* After several sallies on Mendoza's entrenchments, he relinquishes Bommel, *ib.* Reply to the states deputies upon orders for quitting the field, *ib.* Reduction of the troops, and an account of naval affairs, 456. Success in taking several important places, 458. Marching to Ostend, fights the battle of Newport, 460. in which Albert is defeated, *ib.* Devotion after the battle of Newport, and great humanity, 461. Invests Newport, but obliged to quit it, 462. A party of the enemy defeated, and Rhemberg invested by him, who takes a fort in the Rhine, and soon after the town, 463. Invests Boileduc, but obliged to quit it, *ib.* Ordered by the states to relieve Ostend, and on the way attacks Mendoza's advanced guard, but the Spaniard declines a battle, 464. By the unanimous opinion of a council of war, invests Grave, which, Mendoza not being able to succour, capitulates, 465. Defeats a body of Spaniards attempting to straighten him before Boileduc, 467. Motions, with the disappointments of Spinola, 470. Checks Spinola's progress, but fails in an enterprize finely projected, 471. Forced to retreat, upon this Wachtendock is reduced by Buquoi, 472. Retires from before Grol, which Spinola relieves, 474. Situation of affairs on both sides, and naval affairs, *ib.* Maurice, and the other princes of Nassau, are rewarded by the states general, 483. His ambitious views, 487. Declares himself head of the contra-remonstrants, refuses to assist the states of Holland, seizes on Brill, Delft, and Scheidam, 489. Has great influence on Guelderland, 490. Maurice, with the contra-remonstrants, demands a national synod, *ib.* Ambitious views for sovereignty, 493. The clergy's reply to him at Utrecht, on his declaring his intention of calling a national synod, *ib.* Disbands the whole new-levied garrison of Utrecht, deposes the old magistrates, and nominates new ones, &c. *ib.* Manner of proceeding in many other places, 494. His art in preferring Barneveldt's sons, *ibid.* Imprisons Barneveldt, Grotius, and other leaders of the Arminians in Louvestein-castle, *ib.* Forces Spinola to raise the siege of Bergen op zoom, *ib.* Declines Spinola's offer of battle, 497. Plot against his life by Wilbrand Barneveldt discovered, with the execution of four of the conspirators, and Groeneveldt, William's brother, *ibid.* Disappointed in his enterprize on Antwerp, with his death and character, *ib.* and 505 (A).
- Maurice, disappointments of that count in South America, xi. 540. His further progress in Brasil, 542. Arrival and reception of that count in Holland, *ib.*
- , count of Saxony, unanimously chosen duke of Courland, xii. 618. A remarkable letter to his father, 619.
- , elector of Saxony, xv. 466.
- Maurocenus, a Venetian, why chosen chief of the Pisan republic, x. 551.
- Maurophori, their strange infatuation, i. 391.
- Maurozomus aspires to the empire, and makes alliance with Gayathoddin, ii. 227. Defeated by Lascaris, *ib.*
- , a Greek officer, saves the emperor from the Arabs, i. 472.
- Mausuf's brave defence of Aleppo, but beheaded by Saleb, i. 628.
- Mau-ven-long, Whay-tiong's faithful general, poisoned by Ywen, iii. 730.
- Mauzm, Aurengzeb's second son, sternly warned by him, iii. 101. Cabals during his illness, 108. Put upon a bold exploit, 113. Made governor of Decan, *ib.* Imprisonment, and succession, 119. (See Alem Shah).
- Mawaralnahr invaded by Kara Khan, ii. 137. Conquered by Malek Shah, 169, with a vast army of Turks, ii. 141.
- Mawdud, the son of Musud, revenges his father's death, i. 648. Becomes king of Mawaralnahr, 649. Is acknowledged as such, 650. Defeated by Alp Arslam, but overcomes the Indian Rajahs, *ib.* Expedition against the Seljuks prevented by his death, and his successor not agreed about, 652. Success against Jawali, 690.
- Emir of Mawfel, his success against the Franks, i. 691. Killed by a Batamist at Damascus, *ib.*
- Mawri-town, on the gold coast, vi. 668.
- Mawfel-al, kind reception of caliph Motaki there, by Abul Hafan, i. 541. Plundered by the Turcomans, 633. Taken by the Gakzan Turks, 649.
- delivered up to soltan Mohammed, iv. 688. Submits to Hulaku, ii. 472. Revolts after Saleh's flight, 475. In dread of the Mungls, but retaken by Samdague, 476.
- Maximilian I. emperor, cabals for his obtaining the regency of Spain, viii. 220. Marries the emperor's daughter Maria, and made regent, 247. He and his consort Maria set out for Flanders, 248. Informs the Pope of his intended journey to Rome, x. 53. Designs to march with an army into Italy, and why obliged to delay it, 58. His march into Italy opposed by the Venetians, who, during his absence at Ulm, defeat his troops, *ib.* Returns into Germany, with differences between the Pope and Lewis, 59. Arrives in Lombardy, but raises the siege of Padua, *ib.* Approves the Lateran council, 63. Enters Lombardy for recovering the Milanese, but obliged to return, with the diminishing of his army, 66. Signs the treaty with the Pope, &c. very secretly, x. 302. Imprudent conduct gives the Venetians time



time to defend Milan, i. 112. The emperor crosses the Adda, and lays siege to Milan, ib. Prevails against all the competitors to Mary, heiress of Burgundy, whom he espouses, and compels the French to restore Quesnoi and Bouchain, xi. 110. xv. 475. Upon the archduchess Mary being delivered of Philip, Maximilian renews hostilities against Lewis XI. of France, for the recovery of the dismembered part of Burgundy, yet makes but small progress, xi. 110. Truce between them, during which Lewis strengthens himself, ib. Maximilian beats the French at Quinegasse, after which a second truce is agreed on, ib. Appeases the troubles in the Low Countries, and his conquests there, 111. Success against the Leigois, ib. Chosen at Frankfort king of the Romans, and the king of Bohemia appeased, 113. Maximilian crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, ib. Why imprisoned by the inhabitants of Bruges, and after deliberations in an assembly of the states, set at liberty upon treaty, ib. Notwithstanding this, and a verbal promise, he renounces the articles of the peace, 114. An accommodation patched up in Flanders between Maximilian, and Charles of France, with the latter's views, 115. Ceremony of Maximilian's proxy in marrying Anne of Brittany, ib. (C). Succeeds his father, Fredric III. in the imperial throne, 116. Account of him, qualities, and education, 456. His remark on his preceptor Engelbert, and concern for learning, ib. Marches against the Turks, who precipitately retreat from Croatia, and marries Blanche Maria, sister of Galeazzo, duke of Milan, with the advantages accruing from this match to Lewis Sforza, Galeazzo's uncle, 117. He appoints his son Philip governor of the Low Countries, and makes an authentic constitution for the public peace, in a diet at Worms, ib. He fixes the residences of the imperial chamber, ib. Expedition into Italy, reception in Pisa, repulse from Leghorn, and return to Germany, 118. Engages in the war of Guelderland, with its origin and causes, 120. Why he turns his arms against the Swiss, ib. Supplies from Franconia and Suabia cut off by the inhabitants of Coire, and the Grisons, with a body of Austrians, totally defeated near Oberdorf, 121. Entire overthrow of count Furstenberg, who is slain, and thus war ended by a peace which the emperor offers, ib. Attaches new privileges to the title of archduke, 123. To counterbalance which, the electors renew the association of Gelnhausen, ib. Treaty concluded with Henry VIII. of England, who makes his present of 10000*l*. 124. Refused a passage into Italy by the Venetians, defeated by their general, and concludes a separate truce with them, 126. Conduct is approved by the diet at Augsburg, 127. Invests Padua, but retreats to Inspruck, and he confirms the privileges of the Florentines, with the valuable consideration for it, ib. Armies of that emperor and France take the field in conjunction, and make considerable progress, ib. Disputes between the emperor and Ferdinand of Arragon, terminated amicably by Lewis, 128. Yea Ferdinand concludes a treaty with the Pope, who declares war against Lewis XII. and the duke of Ferrara, ib. Forms a design of succeeding Julius in the papacy, with a letter of the emperor's on this subject, 129. (N). The kings of England and Arragon endeavour to detach that emperor from France, against which he engages in a league with them, 130. Maximilian Sforza receives the investiture of Mantua, and a congress opened at Rome to determine the conquests during the war, ib. That emperor's minister soliciting the Pope, to take his master as coadjutor, his request is rejected, with a letter from the emperor to his daughter Margaret on this head, 130. (O). Maximilian invests Milan, but quits it, and returns to Germany, 132. How he cajoles Henry of England with the promise of the imperial throne, chousing him of his money, ib. (P). Maximilian repairs to Pisa, and besieges Leghorn, but rises from it, marches to the Milanese, and returns to Germany, greatly to his disgrace, xiii. 370. The Venetians alone support the Pisans, 467. Venality of the emperor, 477. Obliged the French, commanded by Lautrec, to retire under the cannon of Milan, but returns ingloriously to Germany, 483. After settling some matters, desired the Pope to pronounce sentence on Luther, xi. 133. Proposes his grandson Charles as his successor, ib. Repairs to Inspruck, and dies in his way to Austria, with his character and education, 134. His profusion involves him in numberless difficulties, ib. (R). The chase his favourite amusement, his weakness, marriages, and issue, ib. (S). Mixed character, x. 314. xiii. 487.

Maximilian II. king of Bohemia, the emperor's son, elected king of the Romans, xi. 171. Succeeds his father Ferdinand in the empire, with some account of him, ib.

Acts against John Sigismund of Transylvania, but an accommodation, through Solyman, stops his progress, 172. Imprudent retreat from Zighet, 173. In a diet at Fulde, accommodates a difference between Triers and its bishop, ibid. Truce concluded between the emperor and Salim, ib. Remonstrances to Philip of Spain on Alva's cruelties in the Low Countries ineffectual, 174. Refuses Charles of France making levies against the reformed, ib. A treaty concluded by the emperor with John Sigismund of Transylvania, and, on his death, with Stephen Bathori, ib. Prepares for asserting his claim to Poland by the sword, 175. The emperor's brother routed, and taken prisoner by Sigismund of Sweden, his competitor for Poland, and the issue, 177. Made governor of Transylvania, in exchange for some duchies in Silesia given Bathori, 179. Maximilian now makes interest for his son Ernestus, but the emperor himself is proclaimed in the diet, xii. 494. Upon one gentleman's protesting against the proclamation, the Piasists chuse the princess Anne and Stephen Bathori, whom they proclaim, ib. Being a competitor for Poland, is defeated and taken, purchases his liberty by renouncing the crown, xiii. 128. Maximilian and Sigismund of Sweden both proclaimed kings of Poland, xii. 501. Maximilian's army is defeated, ib. (G). Again defeated and taken prisoner, ib. This victory fixes the crown on Sigismund's head, ib. His ingratitude to Sigismund, but his brother, the emperor, obliges him to fulfil every part of the treaty, 502. The emperor's death, and his amiable character, with his issue, xi. 175. (G). His death prevents his claim to Poland, xii. 494.

Maximilian of Bavaria enters Austria, with his motives, xi. 201.

—— I. elector of the Upper Palatinate, xv. 469.

—— Mary 2d. elector Palatine, xv. 470.

Mayenne (duke) his plot against the king discovered, ix. 284. Acts with great discretion, and his manifesto, 297. Proclaims cardinal Bourbon king, and appoints a privy-council in the room of the sixteen, &c. ib. Hangs four of the council of sixteen in his hall, ib. Assembles the states of Paris, by a well penned edict, 302. His speech there, and rejecting the proposition of the Spanish faction, with a paper brought from the king to the state, demanding a conference, and he quarrels with the duke of Feria, but afterward seems to acquiesce under the offers made by the Spaniards, and their arrival at Paris, 303. All the Spanish projects defeated in the assembly, who consent to the conferences, ib. The duke of Feria's proposals rejected, and an arret of parliament against transferring the crown to strangers, 304. Intrigues afresh with Spain, ib. And imprisons his half brother, the duke of Nemours, ib. In perplexity and hazard, quits Paris, leaving count Brisac governor, 307. Who contrives the entering of the king's troops, with himself, and the expulsion of the Spaniards, ib. His embassy with the duke of Bouillon, who proposes the marriage of the elector Palatine to the princess Elizabeth of England, 347. His death, ib. A great misfortune to France, ib.

Mayhew's settlement in Martha's Vineyard, Nantuket and Elizabeth islands, with his success in converting the natives, xiv. 511. Labours in converting the Indians, 513

Mayhey plant, its various uses, xiv. 434

Maynu's noble reproof to Yesun Temur, ii. 408

Mayssour kingdom described, with its chief cities, &c. iii. 181

Mayta Capac, fourth inca, succeeds his father Lloque Yupanqui, xiv. 382. Sets out on a progress, his views ib. Marches into Callao province, which submits, 383. Raises an artificial mount, ib. Reduces Hatunpacassa province, ib. Marches to Cacyaviri, which, after some resistance, submits, ib. Their solemn procession, and the Curacas apology to the inca, with a stricture upon it, ib. His condescension, and return to Cuzco, ib. Resumes his warlike schemes, sends an army to Chucuna, which submits, 384. Plants two colonies, builds a fort, and abolishes the practice of poisoning, ib. Applies to civil policy, but again enters on an expedition to Llaracassa, which submits, also Sancovan and Pacassa, ib. Passage over a river disputed by the people of Colla, in his way to Huyachu, and after several overtures, how he defeats the barbarians at last, 385. But they submit, ib. and he receives them favourably, ib. Consequences by other nations submitting, ib. Returns to Cuzco, ib. Prepares for a fresh expedition to the westward of his capital, 386. How he crosses the river Apurimac, ib. Builds a causeway over a marsh, ib. Success in reducing the enemy, ib. His progress in reducing nations;

upon



- upon passing Contifuyu causeway, and settling colonies in Arequeba valley, *ib.* His other regulations, *ib.* He returns to Cuzco, *ib.* His excellent institutions, and death, *ib.*
- Mazafferian princes put to death by Timur Bek, *ii.* 530 (U).
- Mazagan in Morocco, deserted, *vii.* 158
- Mazanderan taken by the Mungls, and its inhabitants cruelly butchered, *ii.* 304
- province reduced by Timur Bek, *ii.* 527
- Mazarine (Julio) procures a suspension of arms, *ix.* 381. Procures a convention for Casal, *ib.* A hat bestowed on him, 404. Introduced into the king of France's council, 409. At the head of the queen's council, possesses her confidence entirely, *ix.* 412. Sentiments with regard to the parliament, and effects of his obstinacy with regard to the duke of Lorraine, 416. The cardinal's embarrassment in the negotiations at Munster, saved through his abilities, 418. The Pope intimidated by a second armament to comply with that cardinal's terms, 419. Their influence on the duke of Modena, *ib.* Court intrigues there troublesome to him, with those also of the parliament, and the cardinal's apprehensions, 423. Complaisance, with disputes between him and the parliament, *ib.* The imputations against him, but groundless, 424. The queen for firm measures, and the minister for mild ones, *ib.* Influence of these domestic disputes on foreign affairs, *ib.* Parties in France, their rise, 427. Declared by the parliament a public disturber, and an enemy to the kingdom, 428. Management with the army in Germany for defeating Turenne's intrigues, 429. The cardinal's reception by the army, who afterwards take Conde, &c. *ib.* The cardinal begins to alter his measures, with the fatal consequences to the state and royal family, 430. The minister leaves Paris and the court to go to Pralin's army, 431. Cold reception at Paris, and new troubles begin, the minister being forced to retire to Havre de Grace, 432. Great distress of the queen upon this, and the parliament orders a process against him, 433. His regular correspondence with the queen and heads of all the parties, with the advice followed by her amidst these confusions, *ib.* Coming to Poitiers strongly escorted, and the same strange part acted by the parliament, against Mazarine and his adherents, 434. Orleans and Condé's double dealing detected by the cardinal, 435. Returns to Paris, and his great application for restoring regularity to the government, 437. Renews the Swiss alliance, 438. Discovery of a plot for assassinating the cardinal, 439. Rejects proposals of peace from Spain, 442. Forced to give Dunkirk up to Cromwell, 447. His extraordinary vanity balked by Turenne, *ib.* Interview between him and Haro in the isle of Pheasants, 448. Intrigues of that cardinal, *xi.* 552. Mazarine's death and character, *ix.* 449.
- Mazeppa, Charles XII.'s faithful companion, dies when intended to be delivered up to the Czar, *xii.* 390
- with his Cossacks, forces the Swedish garrison in Zamose, *xii.* 599
- Hetman of the Cossacks, some account of his origin and character, *xiii.* 179. His treachery to Charles XII. 212. Joins Charles at Pultowa only with two regiments, the rest returning home, 213. Excommunicated and hanged in effigie, with some of his accomplices broken upon the wheel, *ib.* Treats with the Zaporog Cossacks, and engages them in Charles's service, with the manner, and an incident at concluding this treaty, 215
- Mazowa, or Masua island, where situated, *vi.* 172 (D).
- Mazzo, a pirate, taken and beheaded on the poop of his ship, *x.* 334
- Me, the head of a sect in China, *iii.* 694 (U).
- Meaco, its famous temple described, *iv.* 9
- Meadow's proposals of peace rejected by Frederic III. and the latter's fierce demand from the English envoy, *xii.* 182
- Meander, country about it, overrun by the Turks, *ii.* 239
- Meats forbid by Mahomet, *i.* 173
- Meaux, the city evacuated by marquis l' Hospital is put into the king's hands, *ix.* 305. Its magistrates declaration and their deputies reception from the king, *ib.*
- Mecca, its situation and commerce, *i.* 15. Besieged and taken by Mahomet, 80. Made an asylum, 82
- temple, *i.* 98. (See Caaba territory.) How burnt in the siege, *i.* 314. Its famous well dried up by an earthquake, 473. Horribly plundered by the Karmatians, 522. The pilgrimage to it from Egypt, and the rout of the pilgrims, *vi.* 28. Obstructed by wars, with the true origin of that pilgrimage, *ib.* (U). Proverb about those pilgrims, *ib.* sub not. Vast commerce with the Egyptian caravans, 33
- Meccans in league against Mahomet, *i.* 23, 41, 43. De-
- feated at Bedr, 51. Oppose Mahomet's entrance into the city, but enter into a treaty with him, 67. In great consternation after Mahomet's death, 131
- Mechoacan kingdom, its extent, and embassy from Cortez to its monarch successful, *xiv.* 274. A return made with rich presents, *ib.* The monarch visits Cortez at Cayaocan; *ib.* Settlement made there, *ib.* Arrival of the Mexicans there, 361
- province described, *xiv.* 437. Its commodities, *ib.* Formerly a kingdom, but it submits to Cortez, *ib.* Its capital of the same name, or Valladolid, and other towns, *ib.* Produce and cattle, &c. *ib.*
- Mecklenburg (duke of) why he besieges Rostock, *xi.* 172. It submits, with the conditions, *ib.* The duke's proceedings in the town, and the difference between him and his brother accommodated by the emperor, *ib.* Preparations against Denmark, *xii.* 74. Quarrel between him and Hamburg terminated, also between Denmark and Muscovy, 164
- princess of, married to Antony of Brunswick, *xiii.* 265. Delivered of a son, 268
- history, *xv.* 507
- princes, defeat the banditti in Germany, *xv.* 518. Have a war with Bavaria, and peace concluded, *ib.* Created dukes, *ib.*
- dukes, mediate between Magnus king of Sweden and his son Eric, with the latter's fate from his mother, *xv.* 519. The father deposed, *ib.* Interview with Waldemar of Denmark, *ib.*
- , account of that line, and the disputes about the succession, which is adjudged by Brandenburg, *xv.* 539. Also between the branches of Strelitz and Schwerin, *ib.* The Swedes invade the duchy, and the disputes determined by a family compact, which the emperor ratifies, *ib.*
- , natural history and extent, *xv.* 546. Soil and produce, *ib.* Harbour, rivers, and towns, 547. Union between its nobles and commons, *xv.* 547. Diets, their business, *ib.* and lesser committee of the nobility and states, *ib.* Religion, exports, and government, 548. Revenues, *ib.* Payment of the troops, *ib.* Its three circles, *ib.* Great expence in executing the ban of the empire, with the reason for the same, 549. Its twenty bailiwicks, the heiliengdamn of Dobberan, *ib.*
- Mecklenburghers (Abodrites) their piracies, *xv.* 512. Conquered by Henry the Lion, *ib.*
- Media, *el.* or El Mehedia, the capital of the province described, with its strong fortifications, *vii.* 303. Land gate and its strong works, *ib.*
- Medici gain ground in Florence, and the reason, *xiii.* 377
- , the power of the house of, *xiii.* 426. Increases the pope's aversion, and makes him resolve to ruin it, *ib.* He sets up that of Pazzi against it, with the quarrel between the two families, and the occasion, 427. A conspiracy by the pope and the Pazzi, with the several steps to its accomplishment, *ib.* Design for favouring the house of Medici fails, 445
- , restoration of, to Florence, resolved on, by an expedition of the confederates, who invade Tuscany by the viceroy of Naples, *xiii.* 477. Several previous steps taken by the magistrates, *ib.*
- family restored, *xiii.* 478. The usurpation of the Florentine government by them, 479. New alterations take place, and different accounts by authors, *ib.*
- Alessandro de, invested with all his family power in Florence, *xiii.* 533
- (Alexander) the history of, *xiii.* 536. Also of Cosmo, &c. *ib.*
- (Cardinal de) sent legate in the expedition against the Turks, *x.* 82. Succeeds pope Adrian VI. and Wolsey's opposing a peace by the pontiff's means, *ix.* 212. His conduct, with its effect, on the Florentines, *xiii.* 470. A prisoner at Milan, with the pope's interesting himself for him, and insulting the French king, 475. His league with the Florentines revived, *ib.* Rescued, and the success of the holy league, 476. Views of that cardinal and those of his family, 479. Succeeds pope Julius II. under the name of Leo X. 480. His character and expensive coronation, *ib.* Policy and constant view for aggrandizing his own family, *ib.* His conduct among the Florentines, 497. Recovers his credit at Rome, 499. To which city he repairs, with his reception, and discovers to the pope an illegal correspondence, and a league formed thereon, *ib.* Chosen pope Clement VII. 501. His character, *ib.* He and Piermaria, why arrested, but soon released, 533
- Medici (John) the patriotic virtue of, *xiii.* 378. Death, immense wealth, and character, with an account of his son Cosmo,



- Cosmo, who joins against the Lucchese, and excites Fortebraccio to fall upon them, with his success and pretence for so doing, 382
- Medici, Cosimo de, an account of, his character, and defence by Uzano, xiii. 389. Rancour of his enemies, particularly Aibizi, 390. Arrested and confined, ib. Generosity of his keeper Malavolti, and by what means his sentence is mollified to banishment, as are many of his relations, &c. ib. Is recalled, with his reception and titles, 392. Great power in his party, with the means for rendering it permanent, 394. Unsuccessful negotiation at Venice, 395. Jealous of Capponi, 403. Disputes between Cosmo and Capponi in Florence, by the former espousing Sforza's cause there, 408. The arguments urged on each side, and the resolution of the magistrates what, ib. The operations of Sforza and the Venetians, ib. Death and character of Cosmo, with his immense riches and liberality in several instances, 415. Also his virtues, with his love of learning and patriotism, 416
- (Lorenzo) difference between him and Soderini, xiii. 424. His speech to an assembly shews him to be a great orator, and its conclusion, 429. Answer to it, and a guard voted for his person, ib. His great glory now, 431. The account of his settling his own family, death, and great character, 435. His fortune equal to his merit, and esteem for him among foreign princes; succeeded by his son Peter, *ibid.*
- (Peter) his character, and how betrayed by Diotisalvi, with a general clamour raised, and why he becomes unpopular, xiii. 418. Public shews and justs, in which Peter's eldest son, Lorenzo, bears away the prize, ib. Takes part with Galeazzo, and a conspiracy against him discovered, ib. The resolutions of his enemies against him, who takes arms, 419. They are baffled, ib. And the heads withdraw themselves, ib. Feeble state of his health, 420. Bitterly reproaches and threatens the chief Florentines of his party for their conduct, and his designs of reformation how frustrated, 421. With his weak character, 435. Design of changing the Florentine government, with a conspiracy against him defeated, 437. Abject submission and betraying his country, also Charles of France's agreement, 430. Himself ruined and forced to fly, ib. Resolution of the Florentines against him, 443. His confederates consult to restore him to Florence, and his attempt against it miscarries, 449. Its bloody consequences to his friends there, ib.
- (Lorenzo) his negotiation at Naples, with his high merit in concluding a league offensive and defensive, also its terms and ratification, xiii. 430. Challenged by the duke de Urbino, and the effect this has on Lorenzo's officers, 484. His bad management, with the insolence of the French in his army, ib. Mondolfo besieged, where he is dangerously wounded, and it surrenders, with tumults in his army, and shameful inactivity, *ibid.* Marriage in France, 487. Marks of friendship between him and king Francis, with negotiations for peace thereupon over all Europe, ib. Death and issue, ib.
- (Giulian) murdered in the church of St. Reparata, but Lorenzo, his brother, escapes, xiii. 428. Punishment and death of the conspirators, and of the Pazzi family, ib. On the miscarriage of this plot, Tuscany is invaded by the pope and the king of Naples, Lorenzo being chiefly aimed at, ib.
- (Giovanni) his death in a skirmish, xiii. 515
- Medina city embraces Islamism, i. 40. Full of Jews and Christians, 47. Besieged by the Koreish, and surrounded with a ditch, 60. Miracles wrought for its preservation, and the siege raised, 61. In confusion after Mahomet's death, 131. A grievous famine there, 240. The famous pilgrimage to it described, with other places of devotion, 129. Excellency of that city, 130
- , (Sidonia, Duke) his attachment for the king's indulgence to his son, viii. 351. in *fin. not.*
- , (Cæli, Duke) prime minister, convicted of treason, and imprisoned, viii. 363
- , (Duke of,) viceroy of Naples, with an account of him, x. 517. Obligated to impose new taxes, and other sums raised, ib. On Olivarez's disgrace recalled, with an account of his public works, 518. Imitates Carpio's example, with the other parts of his administration, 530. Returns to Spain, and being prime minister, is disgraced and imprisoned, with some account of his death, 531 (W).
- Medin, an Arabian coin, described, vi. 35 (A).
- Medra province described, vii. 110
- Medinan, women, one thousand ravished by the Syrians, i. 313
- Medinans embrace Mahomet's doctrine, i. 40. Oath to him and league with him, *ib.* Their reception of him, 45. Depose Caliph Yezid, 313. Reduced and cruelly plundered by Meslem, *ib.*
- Medun, or Tavagnedun, a city of Pegu, iii. 239
- Mehedia, a famous fortress in Barbary, seized upon by Dragat, vii. 329. Described, *ib.*
- Meheling, (Rabbi Isaac) a celebrated Jewish doctor, v. 606 (Z).
- Mehemed-Keray, the second Khan of Crim Tartary, ii. 45
- II. the eighth Khan, ii. 451
- III. the 14th Khan, ii. 451
- (Sheykh) defeated by Timur Bek, ii. 506
- , the son of Yahia, made governor of Ispahan, ii. 520
- (Mirek) revolts against Timur, but defeated and put to death by Mirza Omar, ii. 521
- , (Mirza) sent in quest of Tokatmish, ii. 525. Successful bravery against him, 526. Against the traitor Mansur, 530. Fights by his father's side against Tokatmish, 536. Defeats the rebel Sultan Mehemed, 540. Success in Hormuz, or Ormus, and narrow escape, 541. Made king of Hulaku, 559. Sent to besiege the castle of Kemak, 562. (X). Takes it by assault, *ib.* Marries Bayezid's eldest daughter, 565. His immature death, and pompous obsequies, 565. Funeral banquet, 570
- , (Sarek) the robber, destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 531
- (Amir) of Koniya's vast ransom of silver paid to Timur, ii. 564
- Meher Meja, the desolate widow of Shir Affegan, iii. 67. Sent for to court by Jehan Ghir, and kind reception, *ib.* Modest answer to the Sultan, and married to him, 68
- Mehru's quarrel against Taymuraz, ii. 614. Excites Abbas to war against him, *ib.* Stratagem to extricate him from the Georgians, and he ravages the country, 615
- Meiberg town and river in Benin, with the slaughter of its natives, vi. 576. The king's partial favour to the Dutch, *ibid.*
- Mejerda, a river of Tunis, described, vii. 296. Its channel changed, and mouth choaked up, 297
- Meir, (Don) a Jewish physician, tortured to death for high treason, v. 559
- , a learned Jew, of Rotenburg his writings and hard fate, v. 569 (G).
- , a learned Jewish professor at Padua, v. 598
- Meisarah, his ill-success on the mountains of Syria, i. 221. Relieved by Khaled, *ib.*
- Mekias proscribed by Mohammed, i. 83
- Mekon river in Kamboja, iii. 509. Its source and difficult passage up, *ib.* (Q). Its passage by Hagenaar, *ib.* By Von Wulthof, 410. Infested by Chinese pirates, 411. Destroyed by the English, *ib.*
- Mekfowrah, an high pulpit introduced by Caliph Moawivah, i. 239
- Melander joins Henry of Orange with 12000 Swedes, xi. 530. Turenne and Wrangel joining, defeat the Imperialists under him, who is slain near Augsberg, 269
- Melcha Christos sows a dissension between Susneus and his brother, vi. 296 (T).
- Melchite churches destroyed by the Moslems, but rebuilt by Caliph Moktadir, i. 518
- Melchites in Egypt, highly favoured by Caliph Harun, i. 437
- Melchizedek revolts against Susneus, but defeated and killed, vi. 286
- Melech betrays Mahomet in the day of battle, vii. 191. His dreadful punishment, and account of his execution, *ib.*
- Melf seized by the Normans, i. 641
- Meliapur spared by the king of Bishnagar, iii. 135. The Portuguese factory there, 150. Whence called St. Thomas, v. 146
- Melier, a renegade knight Templar, joins Saladin against the Christians, vii. 383
- Melih, the Armenian, invades the Moslem dominions, i. 514
- Melilla, in Africa, surprised by Ferdinand, viii. 214
- Melinda kingdom described vi. 339. Inhabitants, and their religion, &c. 341
- City described, vi. 340. High regard to their kings, 341. Kings, their power, revenues, &c. *ib.* Strict justice, *ib.* Punishment, 342. Admission of the Portuguese, *ib.*
- , (King) his reception of Vasco de Gama, vi. 344. Proposal of a treaty with him, *ib.*
- islands and petty kingdoms belonging to it, vi. 344. Their produce and vast herds of cattle, with their trading vessels, 345. Their lineal descent how preserved and discovered,



- covered, 350 (E). Since nominated by the Portuguese, *ib.*
- Melessenus, Nicephorus, his revolt and ravages in Asia Minor, ii. 204
- Mitilene taken by Copronymus, i. 383. Fortified by Almanfur, 390. By Ebn Wahab, 392
- , now Malatia, taken and abandoned by the Greeks, i. 519
- Melk, a Mecklenburg soldier, his extraordinary courage, xv. 532
- Mellato, the Venetian, his successes, x. 246. Sends part of his army into Brescia, 247. Crosses the mountains of Trent with his army, to come to Verona, 248. Their terrible distress on the road, *ib.* Defeats a party belonging to the bishop of Trent, 249. Attacked by the enemy, and the Venetian army saved by Pilofus's stratagem, with his preferment, *ib.*
- , Don de Mello, routing the count de Guiche, and opening a way to Paris, is stopped by Olivares, viii. 304
- Melun council, its edict against the Jews, v. 560 (F).
- Memingen, account of that city and privileges, xv. 442
- Memio, Tribuno, the 25th doge of Venice, his character, x. 192. Dies, or is deposed, *ib.*
- Menager, his character and instructions for peace at London, ix. 501. Who signs certain preliminaries, and why privately introduced to the queen at Windsor, with her majesty's speech to him at parting, *ib.*
- Menahem, (Rabbi) a famous Jewish preacher at Padua, v. 598. Rabbi Jehoshua, another of the same family at Rome, 599
- Menum, or Meynam, a principal river of Siam, with its origin, course, and mouth, iii. 312. Bar, and yearly inundation, 313. Others falling into it, *ib.*
- Menan Kong, a river in Laos, described, iii. 286. Strange change on joining with the Kamboja, and danger of its navigation, *ib.*
- Menas, (Minas, or Adam Segued) the 89th king of Abyssinia, murdered by his own soldiers, vi. 253. See Minas.
- Menasseh, Rabbi, chosen chief of the Synagogue, with his character and learned works, v. 612. His arrival in England, death and writings, *ib.* (L). And present state of the Jews over the world, 616. Imposed upon by a letter from America, 639
- Mendes, (Alphonso) sent patriarch into Abyssinia, ordains 20 converts at Gorgorra, vi. 293. Grand reception at court, and first audience of the emperor, *ib.* Whose oath of fidelity to the Roman see he receives, *ib.* Obtains a vast revenue from the emperor, 294. Erects a new and stately cathedral, 295. Loses ground with the Abyssinians, 296. Tries and condemns an old woman for witchcraft, and exasperates a lewd princess against him, 297. Holds a general visitation, 298. Blames the emperor for his lenity, and his strange behaviour on the occasion, 299. Ordered by the new emperor to retire to Fremona, 301. His letter to him, *ib.* Robbed by his escort in his way thither, and banished out of the empire, 302. Exposed to great hardships, *ib.* His character according to Le Grand, 303. Suspected at Rome and Madrid, 304. Tries new projects in India, and dies there, 305. Strange politics, *ib.* Conversation with the new Abuna, 306
- Mendihoca root, its plenty in Florida, xiv. 430.
- Mendog, son of Ringolt, succeeds his father in Lithuania and Samogitia, with his character, xii. 628. His successes against the Teutonic order in Prussia, 629. After reducing Smolensko and Volhinia, he makes war on Boleslaus the Chaste, king of Poland, and he next employs, with success, his arms against Daniel, duke of Russia, *ib.* He retracts the grant of his dominions to the Teutonic knights, and returns to the ancient idolatry. They clap up a treaty, and he falls on the duke of Mazovia, 630. The order, taking advantage of his absence, oblige him to return, *ib.* But ravages their country and defeats them, *ib.* Robs and despoils his Christian neighbours, and assassinated by his own children, *ib.*
- Mendosa, (Lewis de) sent into Abyssinia by Philip II. of Spain, vi. 279
- , Progress of that Spanish general, xi. 451. But of no great importance, through the vigilance of P. Maurice, *ib.* Insolence of him and his troops, 453. Invests Bommel, 454. Acquitted of the miscarriage at Bommel, 456. Released of him and other prisoners; also conditions, 463. Arrives viceroy of Mexico, and the distractions thereon, xiv. 278
- (Garcia de) sent to Chili, xiv. 323. His encounters, with various success; takes Capaulcan, and puts him to death, *ib.*
- , (Antonio) succeeds Gasca as viceroy from Spain, xiv. 349. Arrival at Lima, *ib.* A tumult suppressed by his vigilance, and other regulations by means of his brother, *ib.* Dies, *ib.*
- Menehoud, articles of that treaty signed and confirmed, ix. 350
- Menendez, (Pedro de Avilez) arrives in Florida with a Spanish squadron, with an account of it and his character, xv. 77. Four French ships escape from him near the mouth of the May, 78. Marches from St. Augustine, through vast difficulties, and takes fort Caroline, with the butchery there, *ib.* Hangs up on a tree all the French in Florida, and the remarkable inscription over them, 79. Why he changes the name of fort Caroline to St. Matheo, *ib.* Returns in triumph to St. Augustine, *ib.* Several disasters happen at the same time, *ib.* In the massacre of Ribaut and his people, countenanced by the French king, 80
- Menczal, a province of Biledulgerid, vii. 118
- Menezes, (Duart de) nominated viceroy into India, iv. 128
- , (Henry) his commission, iv. 129. Success at sea, is wounded before Calicut, and dies, *ib.*
- Meng, province in North Laos, with its produce, &c. and capital, iii. 292. Plenty of Musk-cats there, 293
- , empress of China, left there, by the conquering Tartars, sets Kau-tsung on the throne, iii. 121
- Mingheli, Keray, driven out of Kipjak by Ghedik Ahmed, ii. 450. Becomes first Khan of Crim Tartary, *ib.*
- Meng-tse, the famous Chinese Mencius, honoured by the Mogul Khan, ii. 404
- Meng-wang, his short reign in China, iii. 695
- Menicho, bishop of Spire, protects the Jews, v. 570
- Menilehech, the son of Solomon, and of the queen of Sheba, vi. 219. Succeeds her in Abyssinia, with some remarks on that legend, 220 (A). His reign and descendants, 252
- Menkal, (Emir Jenk) made Mahmud's prime wazir, i. 634. Speech to him on his misliking his figure, 635
- Men-ko, (Man ko, or Mangu) his success near the Caspian sea, and defeat, ii. 352. Chosen Khan by the Mongl states, 354. Proclaimed, *ib.* Inauguration and feasting, *ib.* Conspired against by Shiramun, 355. Behaviour to him and his adherents, *ib.* Severity to them, 356. Cruelty to some of them, and fondness for the Bonzas, *ib.* Three great armies and his wars, with his conquests and regulations in China, 357. Homage paid to him there, and he founds a new metropolis of his empire, *ib.* Expedition into Shen-si, and reconciliation to Hu-pi-lay, 358. Commands part of his army in Shen-si, *ib.* Untimely siege of Ho-chew, 359. Defeated and killed before it, *ib.*
- Men-kong, his bravery before Ju-ning-fu, ii. 344. Stratagem against its enchanted tower, 345. Repulsed by the besieged, *ib.* Successful stratagems against the Mungls, 347. Noble exploits against them, 348. Vigilance, and wholesome severity, 352. His death a great loss to the Song, 353
- Menslet Lake in Egypt, the too bold way of fishing on it, vi. 17. And vast commerce, 18
- Mentz, (Archbishop) deposition by the pope's legates, ix. 594. Council there, with its canons, 625. Resolution of the diet there, for the peace of the church, x. 17. In a general assembly there, Gregory's decrees annulled, and the emperor's confirmed, 657. Its declaration, *ib.* A diet there, with deputies from Henry II. of England, but nothing done for his son-in-law, 109
- , (Elector) declares war against the count Palatine, with the elector's successes, xi. 284. The allies invest his capital, which surrenders after a siege of seven weeks, 309. His power and how limited, xv. 411
- Menzikoff, a pastry-cook's boy, his rise, and high preferments by the Czar Peter, xiii. 206 (L). Sent into Poland by the Czar, 218. Highly preferred by the empress Catharine. His insolence even to the emperor, who disgraces and banishes him, advancing the prince Dolgorucki to the highest employments, *ib.* He dies in exile, and where, 46
- Mequinez and its palace described, vii. 157. The horrid slaughter there by Abdallah, and its citadel razed by him, 202. Cruelly plundered, 199
- Mercer, (Colonel) killed at the siege of Oswego, occasions its loss, xiv. 711
- Merci, (General) famous retreat before Enguien, with the latter's taking several places on the Rhine, ix. 414. Enguien and Turenne attack him, who retires into Wirtemberg, *ib.*



- Merci, the Bavarian general surprises Turenne, and defeats him near Mariendal, who retires towards Hesse, xi. 264. The campaign opening late on the Rhine, the Imperialists under him are defeated by de Bourg, 344
- Mercœur, (Duke of) a truce made with him, ix. 314. Only daughter married to the king's natural son César-Monfieur, with their settlement, 315
- Merdan (Khan Ali) deprived of his hereditary government by the Eunuchs, ii. 646
- Meresgahot baths, their intense heat, vii. 309. Calcining quality, ib.
- Merghi port put into the hands of the French, iii. 384. Abandoned by them, 395. The fortifications made to it by them, 398
- Mergui, a sea-port in Siam, and 76 Englishmen killed there, iii. 320
- Mergus (Khan) betrayed by Nawr, and cruelly murdered by the king of Kurga, ii. 268
- Merida revolts against Caliph Mohammed, but dismantled and garrisoned, i. 482
- Merkits invade Niron Kayat, ii. 268. Defeated by Temujin, and dreadful oath against Vang-khan, 270. Defeated again by Temujin, subdued and forgiven, 278, 289. Prodigious skill in climbing rocks, 567
- Merobriga, account of its present name, vii. 688 (Z).
- Meropie, a river in Madagascar, vi. 92
- Merovens, Chilperic's eldest son, espouses Brunehaut, and the consequences, viii. 633. Chilperic's behaviour to the prince and his consort, ib. Betrayed, taken, and murdered, 634
- Merovingian, first line of kings in Gaul, why so called, viii. 617. An end put to it, and by whom, 656, 664
- Meru taken by Togrol Bek, and made one of his seats, i. 643
- Merwan Ebn al Hakem, his impious treason against Othman, i. 255. Made governor of Medina, and becomes more intimate with Saad, 294. Bloody advice against Hosein rejected, 301. Sent with a silver collar to bring Abdalla prisoner, 311. He protects the banished Ommiyahs, 313. Offered the caliphate by them, 318. And proclaimed by them at Damascus, ib. Defeats the Kaisians under Dehak, and marries Yezid's widow, 319, 324. Wrests Egypt from Abdallah, and enters triumphant into Damascus, 319. Breaks his promise to Khaled, and declares his own son successor, but is poisoned by his wife, and dies, 324. Burial at Damascus, by Abdalmalek, ib.
- , (Ebn Mohammed) reduces Al Theheb, i. 369. Revolts against Yezid in Armenia, and makes peace with him, 373. Offers an indignity to his corpse, 374. Defeats Ibrahim's forces, and deposes him, ib. Is declared caliph by the two sons of Al Walid, 375. Proclaimed caliph, and why surnamed the Warlike Ais, ib. Several revolts against him, ib. His forces defeated by the house of Abbas, with great preparations against them, 377. Proclaimed an usurper, 378. Suppresses a revolt in Mesopotamia, and his favour to the Christians, ib. Severity to the Kalbites, ib. Defeated by Kahtaba and Hamid, 380. And by Abdallah, when he flies into Egypt, and is put to death by Abdallah, 381. His character, ib. Head embalmed and exposed, with his prodigious army and shameful flight, 383. His disgraceful appetite after sheep's kidneys, 386. His greasy wardrobe dug out in Syria, 454
- Mesica, a kind of palm in Kongo, and its gum, described, vi. 423
- Meskouten baths, their intense heat, vii. 309. Calcining quality, ib.
- Mesku, among the Ottomans, what, v. 162 (R).
- Meslem (Ebn Okba) sent to suppress the Medinans, i. 313. Takes and plunders the city, with his cruel treatment of the Medinans, and dies in his way to Mecca, ib.
- Mesopotamia subdued by the Moslems, i. 241. Rent with various revolts, 383. Revolts against the house of Abbas, ib. Ruined by locusts and famine, ib. A schism there among the christians, 390. Afflicted with a murrain among the cattle, 396. Visited with a great drought, and infested by the Arabs, 404. Afflicted with famine and pestilence, 405. Cruelly ravaged by the Greeks, 566. By the Seljuks, 660
- Mesr, Misr, Mizraim where situated, i. 234. Treacherously surrendered to the Moslems, ib. The articles of capitulation, 235
- castle stormed by Zobeir Ebn Al Awâm, i. 235. The city destroyed by Amru, ib.
- , famous mosque, when, and by whom built, i. 421. Surrounded by Salaha'uddin with a wall, vi. 62
- , and Memphis, with its territory, ruined by Saleh, i. 385. Seized on by the rebel Al Khalil, 509. Condemned to fire and sword by the tyrannic caliph Hakem, with the citizens petition for pardon, 625. Vast numbers of them massacred, ib. Put to fire and sword by the caliph Hakem, vi. 46 (L).
- Messa, where situated, with plenty of ambergris, vii. 160
- Messer refuses to submit to Timur Bek, ii. 534. Pardoned on account of his son, with his submission, ib.
- Messiahs, false, their success among the Jews, v. 550
- Messina taken by Abul Kasem, i. 571. By Maniaces, 640. Brave defence against the Moslems, 644, 646. Reduced by the Fatemite caliph, ib. Revolts from Spain, and the French encourage it, viii. 328. Who twice relieve the place, ib. But with ill-treatment of the inhabitants, ib. French fleet and forces abandon it, at which time they gave an high instance of dissimulation, 332
- Messina, (siege of) by Charles of Anjou, and raised by Peter of Arragon, xiii. 286
- Messinese neglected by the French in the subsequent peace, viii. 332
- Mesurado, kingdom in Sierra Leona, described, with their customs, religion, &c. vii. 21
- Mesry, by whose interest made governor of Canada, and his character, xiv. 602. Disputes between him and the Jesuits, with mutual complaints sent to Old France, ib.
- Metagara, a province of Biledulgerid, described, vii. 113
- Metak, a city of Siam, iii. 316
- Meteor, a strange fiery one, seen for three hours in Egypt, i. 519
- Metijah spacious plains described, vii. 238
- Metz never recovered its splendor since besieged by Charles V. ix. 238. A new parliament erected there, with its conveniences, 386. Erects itself into a republic, x. 701 (Y).
- Meuang-fang, a city of Siam, described, iii. 317
- Meules, (M. de) intendant of New France, xiv. 616
- Mexican painters, their great ingenuity exemplified from draughts of Cortez's camp, xiv. 183
- commissioners seized on, and Cortez's great reputation by it, xiv. 191. The mild course he takes with them, and its effects, ib.
- ambassadors endeavour to break off Cortez's negotiation with the Tlascalans, xiv. 203
- army occupy the valley of Otumba, in Cortez's way, xiv. 247. Magnificence of their standard, ib.
- empire, several discoveries made in its most remote provinces, xiv. 274
- kings, their history traditional and fabulous, xiv. 365
- priests, xiv. 367. Marriages, how performed, 368. Divorce, ib. Adultery punished, circumcision and baptism used, ib. Ridiculous communion, ib. Barbarous rites, and their religion an abominable compound, ib. Government, and inauguration of their kings, 369. Their court splendid, ib. Great number of women, and their revenues immense, ib. Rigour of the collectors, ib. Councils, and their prerogatives, with their moral virtues, 370. Soldiers favoured more than any other, and the vast number raised by some vassals, ib. In important wars, the emperor in person commands, and the rewards of merit, with a peculiar kind of them, ib. Strict union between the council of trade and the revenues, 371. Care in educating their children; study of their inclinations, and the principal branches of education what, ib. Three classes, and the instructions in them what, ib. The nobility left to their own inclination upon returning home, and trial before embracing the military life what, ib. Downfall of their empire to what owing, ib.
- Mexicans, snare laid by them against Cortez discovered, xiv. 208. Revolt, 238. Attack the Spanish quarters in their capital with great fury, ib. Why they retreat before night, 239. Next day they are defeated, ib. Two Mexicans attempt to throw themselves with Cortez from the top of a temple, 243. Still continue their hostile designs, ib. Elect a sovereign in the room of Motezuma, ib. Make Cortez conditional offers of peace, and his reply, ib. But come to nothing, 244. Endeavour to bring the Tlascalans over from Cortez's interest, 249. Entry of their ambassadors, ib. Their proposal rejected, ib. Defeated by Cortez at Guacachula, 252. Their ingenious stratagem against Cortez's brigantines, 266. But defeated, ib. Their surprise and resolution in a definitive effort on Cortez, 269. Completely defeated, 270. Driven from the great square Tlata-leuco, ib.
- , whence so called, and their site, xiv. 361. Receive laws, &c. from their priests, ib. Long migration and arrival



- rival at Mechoacan, *ib.* Their origin, and why called Chichimecas, or Otonnies, 360. Their eight several tribes, *ib.* 362. Their ensigns armorial, whence, *ib.* Chuse a king for composing all disturbances, foreign and domestic, *ib.* Flourishing state on the election of a foreigner for their king, *ib.* Laudable custom among them for infusing good maxims into their kings, 363. Marries Azaputzalco's daughter, and the tribute to him remitted, with his death, *ib.* Forced to submit to Azaputzalco king of the Tepeacans, and his unreasonable demands of tribute, 362. Remitted by marriage, 363. Their learning and kalendar, 365. Ingenious distribution of their age, 366. Absurd superstition, *ib.* Art among them similar to writing and painting, *ib.* Cruel and absurd religion, 367. How they acknowledge one God, *ib.* Their funerals, *ib.* Their idols, *ib.* Their persons and customs described, 435. Genius, temper, and manners, *ib.* Great change in them, and to what owing, *ib.* Character of those who have preserved their freedom, 436
- Mexico, New, a method for fixing its commerce, *iv.* 261. Confirmed by various proofs, 262. Conquered by Cortez, *x.* 136 (A).
- , (Empire) its great power in Cortez's time, *xiv.* 185. Its extent, *ib.* Government, and progress of its power, 186
- , (City) in Cortez's time described, *xiv.* 214. Its division, and great fair, *ib.* Dreadful devastation of the small-pox there, 252. Number of Cortez's army at its siege, 256. Attack on it renewed by Cortez, and in what manner, 269. A footing established there, *ib.* Progress of the siege, *ib.* Its conquest by Cortez, upon the capture of its emperor Guatimozin, 271. Some account of its siege, the benevolence of the women, and other particulars, *ib.* Search after Motezuma's treasures fruitless, 272. City repaired and parcelled out by Cortez, 275. Its ancient history, 360. City built, and its division, 362. Commotions how prevented, *ib.* Its kings, *ib.*
- , (New) described, with its site and division, but uncertain, *xiv.* 428. Excellency of its climate, *ib.* Rich soil and produce, cattle, fowl, and fish, *ib.* French ambition how checked here, *ib.* Its rivers and rivulets, *ib.* Account of it by Gemelli Careri, *ib.* Dampier's scheme for penetrating into it, but never attempted, 429. Its capital described, and an enumeration of its barbarous nations, *ib.* (O). Wisdom of sending poor families thither, 430
- , Proper, (New Spain) described, *xiv.* 433. Its extent and site, with its climate, *ib.* Greatest heats when, *ib.* Rainy season, and various produce, *ib.* Its drugs and grain, 434. Principal commodities, *ib.* Thirst of gold and silver induced the Spaniards to its conquest, *ib.* Gold, how and where found, *ib.* Mines, their depth and product, *ib.* Precious stones, *ib.* Different ranks of natives, 435
- , (Audience) described, *xiv.* 437. Its site and division, with its extent and fine soil, *ib.*
- , (Proper) province described, *xiv.* 439. Fruitful soil, *ib.* Capital described, *ib.* Revenue of its cathedral, *ib.* Wealth and magnificent public structures, *ib.* Its opulence by whom calculated, 440. Military power why so low, *ib.* Other towns, *ib.* How the trade is carried on between it and Europe, by the galleons and flota, 441
- Meydr Kuli Khan, one of the Seyd's assassins, *iii.* 122. Promoted by Mohammed Shah, 123
- Meyer, the Lubeck general, dispute about him, who is made prisoner, and his intrigues for Christian II. *xii.* 152
- Meyerfeld, the Swedish general, is defeated by Augustus and Menzikoff, *xii.* 381
- Mesquita, Lopez, his treachery to king Aerio the cause of a destructive war, *iv.* 156 (H).
- Miaco (See Meaco) the metropolis of Japan, why so called, and described, *iv.* 33 (C). Vast number of inhabitants and public buildings, 34. Great commerce, *ib.* Dairo's palace, 35
- Miamis, chief, an account of him and his subjects, *xiv.* 610
- Michael, the protector of the Jews, according to the Alcoran, *i.* 157
- , a revolted tax-gatherer, his horrid cruelties along the Meander, *ii.* 226
- , (St.) or San Miguel, the chief of the Azores, described, *vi.* 154
- , castle, battered by the Turks, *vii.* 486. Besieged by basha Hassun, *ib.* Bravely defended by young Valetta, 487. Repels the besiegers, 488. The castle undermined and attacked afresh, 489
- , (St.) order of, by whom instituted, *ix.* 170 (C).
- , (St.) bronze image of, in St. Peter's, with the inscription, *x.* 138
- Michael Theodorowitz, the czar, sends an embassy to the States-general, *xiii.* 152. See Theodorowitz. Also to queen Christina, and agreement between them, 159. The Poles violating the truce with the Russians, declares war against them, 152, but a vast army of Russians defeated before Smolensko, and a peace concluded, *ib.* The great respect shewn that czar by his neighbours, with his death, 153
- , the Greek emperor, why assassinated by Basilus, *i.* 487
- , Paphlagonias's alliance with the emir of Sicily, and fatal delay to assist him, *i.* 640 Sends an army and fleet thither, *ib.*
- , patriarch of Egypt, sent ambassador into Abyssinia, *i.* 679
- , Mikhayel, patriarch of Egypt, succeeds Gabriel, *i.* 708. Poisoned by the monks, *ib.*
- , the Greek emperor, assisted by 8000 Catalans, is displeased at their horrid ravages, and preserves Sardes from the Turks, *v.* 148. Is defeated by them, 151. Treats with Karbaga, cham of the Tartars, for succours, *ib.* (I)
- Michaeli (Dominico) 35th doge of Venice, with a fleet obliges the Saracens to raise the siege of Joppa, and his reception at Jerusalem, *x.* 195. Tyre besieged surrenders, 196. Glorious successes in his return home and death, *ib.*
- , (Vitalis) 33d doge of Venice, augments the republic's maritime power, a croisade preached up, and the Pisans defeated at sea, *x.* 194. Successes, through the Venetians in taking Ascalon, &c. with his defeating the Normans who invaded Dalmatia, and death, *ib.* Leaves a vast sum for a charitable foundation, and an account of it, *ib.* (A)
- , (Vitalis) 38th doge of Venice, his character, *x.* 196. Persuades the republic to join France and England against the emperor, Verona, Padua, and Ferrara joining together against Venice, 197. By reason of a contagious distemper he returns home, where the infection spreading, he is torn to pieces, and his family banished, *ib.* The edict of banishment revoked, and the council of ten erected 198.
- Michelbourn (Sir Edward) his expedition into India, *iv.* 292
- Michel, (Mr.) sent to Michillimakinac, but, with others, taken prisoner by the Iroquois, *xiv.* 645
- Michillimakinac convoy, its value and arrival at Montreal, *xiv.* 635. A French convoy from it defeated by the Iroquois, 649. Arrival of a convoy and some savage chiefs at Montreal, *ib.*
- , &c. ordered to be abandoned by the French, *xiv.* 657. Charlevoix's opinion of this measure, *ib.*
- , state of affairs there, *xiv.* 659
- Micocco kingdom, where situate, and its trade with the Portuguese, *vi.* 484. Forced generosity of its king to them, *ib.*
- Middleton's attempt for a North-west passage. See Dobbs
- , (Sir Henry's) voyages into India, *iv.* 291. Second voyage and treatment from the Turks at Moca, 295. Revenge on the Portuguese at Surat, *ib.* His death, 296
- , governor of Carolina, and remarkable speech to the assembly, *xv.* 91. War with the Indians, and how encouraged, *ib.*
- Mieczslaus I. surnamed the Eye of Christianity, succeeds his father Ziemomisslaus in the ducal sovereignty of Poland, *xii.* 448. Different accounts of his conversion to Christianity, and his religious foundations, 449
- , II. is chosen king of Poland in the room of his father Boleslaus Chrobry I. *xii.* 452. Jarislaus and Mieczslaus, dukes of Russia, invading Poland, are for a time suppressed by the spirited conduct of that king, *ib.* Inactivity, and after reducing Pomerania, he shuts himself up in his palace, and dies frantic, 453
- , III. or the Old, is raised to the ducal throne of Poland, in the room of his brother Boleslaus IV. *xii.* 465. He disappoints his people's sanguine expectations, and is deposed, 466. Mazovia and Cujavia recovered from him, 467. Quells a revolt in Poland, with the occasion, *ib.* He conquers Russia, *ib.* Deposed, attempts the recovery of the ducal throne of Poland, and by an accommodation with the duchess dowager, accomplishes it, 468. He is restored to the ducal throne of Poland, *ib.* Though he breaks his promises and a revolt ensues, he at length becomes superior to his enemies, and dies with a saying which sufficiently characterises him, *ib.* Different accounts of his successor, *ib.*
- Migdonia ravaged by the Othmans, *v.* 160
- Migration, the first from Denmark, how caused, *xi.* 680. Various conjectures about the time and place of settling, with the colony's name, 681



- Miguel de Santiago, a Mestizo Indian, his fine paintings, xiv. 455. Ostentation of their funerals, and Ulloa's remark thereon, *ib.*
- de Piura, St. built by Pizzaro, and where, xiv. 286 (E). Its present name and removal, *ib.* sub (E)
- Mikaddos, or the monarchs of Japan, their pompous titles, iv. 49. Regular series of them, 50
- Milan council, its decree against the Jews, v. 595. A new governor of it appointed, after disclaiming the treaty of Asti, viii. 287. His proceedings in Italy not decisive, 288
- (archbishop of) offers the crown of Italy to Hugh count of Arles, ix. 538
- , civil dissensions between two factions greatly disturb that city, ix. 557. Disputes between the clergy and inhabitants of that city, with a decree of the archbishop for allowing the clergy to marry, 560. The married clergy expelled by a decree of the pope, 562. Troubles there, in which Erlembaldus is killed, 565. Three archbishops possess Milan at once, *ib.* Inhabitants refusing obedience to the pope's demands, are excommunicated, 621. Disturbances between the factions there, 646
- (Duke of) dies, while meditating to assume the title of king of Italy, ix. 701
- , Duke of, his general entirely defeated by the pope's general at Anglaria, with cardinal Branda's attempt at Milan, x. 17 (N). And all the Milanese surrendered to the French, x. 310. In an attack by Pescara Trivulcio, is taken, the city surrenders, being sacked and plundered for ten days, 316. Upon this success of the Genoese rebels who assisted him, he obtains the government, 570. And they assist Jane II. of Naples against Arragon, *ib.*
- (Archbishop of) his arrival as governor of Genoa, x. 572
- (Duke of) intrigues of, for fixing the yoke of servitude on the Genoese, x. 571. Again irritating the Genoese, 572. His attempt to recover Genoa frustrated, 573
- , several competitors start up to that succession, xi. 97. Part of its territories seized, and Milan taken by Sforza, *ib.* Who endeavours to create a jealousy between the emperor and pope, but Eneas Sylvius dispels the latter's apprehension, *ib.*
- , tumults there, with the consequences in favour of Sforza, who is made master of it, xiii. 408. The senate put under the governor's controul, who is the duke of Modena; the military government of that city and citadel independent, and the magistrates of other places subordinate to the imperial governor, xiv. 56. Surrenders to the Imperialists, and the emperor gives the investiture to Sforza, 499. Meeting of all the league there, 501. Evacuated after the battle of Pavia by the French, 504
- (castle of) straitly besieged by the Imperialists, with the pope's rashness and preparations for relieving it, xiii. 510. Its relief how retarded, 511
- , a revolution there, through a strong confederacy against the Visconti, overpowered, xiii. 613. Meeting of the confederates at Placentia, and their resolution, *ib.* Attempt for recovering it, but in vain, 614
- (duchy) its history, xiv. 53. Description, chief lakes, islands, principal rivers, and canals, &c. with the division of the duchy, *ib.* Its importance and commodities, with Milan city described, its cathedral, &c. 56. Its antient history, 57. The heads of the nobles taken prisoners are cut off, 59 (D). The emperor arriving in that city reconciles all parties, and is crowned king of Lombardy, 68. Encouragement of literature in that city, its university, and famous professors, 82. Plan of education, *ib.*—The duke's œconomy in keeping exact accounts, yet unbounded generosity to such as served him well, with his misfortunes in his father's life-time, *ib.* Entirely alters his conduct, 83. Makes himself master of Pavia, *ib.* His successes, and is created by the emperor Ladislaus duke of Milan, *ib.* His wars with the Florentines, and the occasion, *ib.* Conspiracy in Florence by him defeated, with his bad success in Lombardy, and preventing the union of the Pisans and Florentines. *ib.* The confederacy against him joined by the Venetians, makes himself master of Perugia, and a truce concluded, 84. Becomes master of Pisa, and Bologna submits, *ib.* His vast policy, *ib.*
- , who created its first duke, xiv. 85. Factions there, 87. The death of the duchess dowager, with her character, 89. Intractableness of dissensions there, *ib.* A saying of the duke on Victor Amadeo's applying to him, 128
- Milanese, its investiture given by the emperor to archduke Charles, x. 172
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Milanese, claims of the emperor and Francis to it, with the violence of the former, and the Venetian senate's balancing between the rival powers, without giving umbrage to either, x. 335. Reconquered from Trivulci by Ludovic Sforza, xi. 118. Who is betrayed by the Swiss in his army, and confined in Loches till he dies, *ib.* And the entire conquest of it, xi. 136. The Milanese retreat, and part of their army beaten by Hawkwood, with a negotiation for peace at Genoa, xiii. 352. A brisk reply of a Florentine deputy, upon demanding who should be guarantee, and the terms of the peace, *ib.* Divisions among them, two places of which, Lodi and Piacenza, submit to the Venetians, with their motives, 405. Invaded, and Sforza's success, 410. Revolution there, 429. Falls by degrees to the French, 481. The superiority of the confederates in the Milanese, 502. The French are entirely driven out, with the loss of the famous Bayard, *ib.* The Milanese, with the castle, surrender, 514. Congress of the Italian states for a public league to defend it, 534. But meets with difficulties, *ib.* Interdicted, 573. Breach between them and the Comese, with the defeat of the latter by Otho's nephew Matthew, and their resentment thereupon, xiv. 65. All in one scene of carnage and confusion, 87. Claims of its several competitors, and the issue, 101
- Milet (father) how saved by an Indian matron, xiv. 624
- Miliana, a river of Tunis, vii. 297
- Milites and Servientes, account of them, with their difference of rank, ix. 619 (A)
- Militia of Sweden, xii. 216
- Milk-shrub in Guadaloupe, xv. 230
- Milton, his remark on czar Basilowitz II. xiii. 125 (C)
- Millepedes, a kind of large galley in Cochinchina, iii. 428
- Miller, Philip, president of the Dunkards, his character, xv. 151
- Milly (James) the 35th grand master of Rhodes, makes a powerful league against the Turks, vii. 413. Defeats the sultan at Cos, &c. 414. Causes the island to be invaded by the Venetians, *ib.* His death, 415
- Mims (Sir Christopher) takes Campeachy, and his bold saying, xiv. 439
- Minarets, or Turkish towers, by whom first erected, i. 344
- Minas, his succession to the crown of Abyssinia, cruel character, with his hatred to the missionaries, vi. 275. Rebelled against, *ib.* Ill success and miserable end, 276
- M. las, succeeds M. Gages in Italy, and leaves the Genoese to the mercy of the Austrians, xiii. 666
- Mindanao island first discovered, iv. 200. Its situation, form and extent, 202. Division, produce, &c. 203. Its cinnamon, why inferior to that of Ceylon, with the burning mountain and islands about it, *ib.* Various nations, and their customs, &c. described, 204. Barbarous mountaineers and Mahometans, 205 (F). Its government, and how far subject to Spain, *ib.* The city described, and Dampier's account of its favour to the English, 206 (G)
- Minden, account of that principality and its capital, xv. 488. French defeated there, 623. Whom prince Ferdinand pursues, 624
- Mingailus and Algimuntus succeed their father Erdzivil in Lithuania and Samogitia, with their successes against the Russians, xii. 626
- Mingan sent to besiege Yenkin, ii. 286 (I). Gallant treatment of Chang-yau, 325
- Ming-ti, emperor of China, his excellent reign, iii. 703. Embassy into India in quest of the holy one, 704
- of the seventh dynasty, his reign, iii. 707. Banished and slain, *ib.*
- of the eighth dynasty, his bloody and odious reign, iii. 708
- of the ninth dynasty, murders his two nephews, and seizes on the crown, iii. 709
- Ming-tsong, the Chinese name of Hoshila, ii. 411
- , the adopted son of Chan-tsong, his blessed reign, iii. 716 (T)
- of the Ywen dynasty, dies suddenly after his accession, iii. 724
- Ming-wang, emperor of Tang, exasperated at that of Kin, ii. 286 (K)
- Ming-yu-chen sets up for emperor in China, and founds the Hya dynasty, ii. 428. Dies, 432
- Minims, order confirmed, x. 38
- Minorca intimidated to a submission, viii. 175. Taken by general Stanhope, 362. Taken from the English by Richelieu, and Byng shot thereupon, xv. 621
- Minorcan



- Minorcan synagogues plundered and turned into churches, v. 511.—Jews, whether converted freely or by force, *ib.*
- Min-tsang dethroned and slain by She-king-tang, iii. 717
- Mir Ali Kojā opposes Timur Bek, ii. 545. But defeated, 546
- , (Abdollah) succeeds his brother Mir Weis in Candahar, and offers to submit to Hussein, ii. 654. Slain by his nephew, *ib.*
- , (Mahmud) Mir Weis's son, slays his uncle, and is proclaimed king of Candahar, ii. 655. Opposed by several provinces, *ib.* Dangerous expedition into Kerman, 656. Repulsed by Luft Ali Khan, 657. Increases his forces against Persia, and successful before Kerman, he marches straight for Isfahan, 659. Takes and plunders Julfa, 661. Baffled before Isfahan, 662. His offers to Shah Hussein rejected, 663
- , (Baba) sent in pursuit of prince Dara, iii. 98. Seizes on Tatta Bakar, 103
- Mira, a river in Algiers, vii. 213
- Miramamolin, of Barbary, assembles a vast army against the Christians, vii. 701, 702. The monarchs of Spain have recourse to a crusade for their defence, and take several places from the Moors, 702. They pass the Sierra Morena, to meet the Moors, thence called the royal passage, 703. The power of the Moors totally broken by the victory of Toloso, *ib.* Further account of, 704 (F). Consequences of this battle, *ib.* The monarch's return home, *ib.*
- Miranda, (Count) made viceroy of Naples, is chiefly employed in extirpating the banditti, who become very formidable, x. 510. Permitted by a brief from the pope to pursue the banditti into the ecclesiastical state, *ib.* Their leader Sciarra being betrayed, the viceroy extirpates the whole gang, with his other proceedings, and the donatives during his viceroyalty, 511. He is recalled, with his character, *ib.*
- Mirandola, (Picus de) censured on account of his fondness for the Cabala, v. 593. sub not. His book condemned, and account of him, x. 44 (G)
- the pope commands in the trenches in person, at that siege, which submits, x. 298. Taken by the allies, xiii. 654
- Miran-shah. See Mirza
- Miriam, (Nishin) the famous monastery taken by the Seljuks, i. 663
- , (Princess) her stratagem against the vizier Hali, and his flight, vii. 185. But is taken and beheaded, *ib.*
- Mir-Kazagan revolts against Kazan Khan, ii. 466. Sets up Dashmenja upon the throne, puts him to death, and is killed by his son-in-law, *ib.*
- , (Shahaboddin's) timely escape out of Hormuz, ii. 682. Assists his cousin against the Hirians, becomes the ninth king of Hormuz, and Shah of Keys, *ib.*
- , (Kothboddin) rebels against Noserat, defeats and routs him, but is slain by Malek Seyfo'ddin, ii. 682
- Miron VI. count of Barcelona, succeeds Wifred II. who proves inactive, viii. 125
- Mirtha besieged by Timur Bek, ii. 547. Taken by the help of a boy, *ib.* Horrid massacre, *ib.*
- Mir Weis's first appearance at the Persian capital, ii. 648. His nation and character, with vast presents to the courtiers, is accused, acquitted, and taken into favour, 650. His pilgrimage to Mecca, and he obtains leave to revolt, 651. Undermines Gourgān Khan, and returns to Candahar, *ib.* Assassinate Gourgān and his guards, 652. Defeats and drives away the Georgians, with his stern answer to Hussein's deputies, 653. Defeats his forces before Candahar, and proclaimed king by the Afghans, 654. Is prayed for through Candahar, and account of his coin, *ib.* Attacked by the Persians, and on the point of a defeat, he gains the victory, 660 (C)
- Mirza Abd'allah, succeeds his father Kazagan, ii. 499. Removes his seat to Samarkant, is defeated and slain by his officers, *ib.*
- , (Miran Shah) made governor of Khorassan, ii. 512. Dreadful slaughter of the rebels, 514. Defeats the revolted Kipjaks, 518. Ravages the country of the Turkmans, *ib.* Successful valour against the Kipjaks, 526. Amply rewarded by Timur, 530. Suppresses the plundering Curds, 532. Becomes lunatic and debauched, with Timur's severity to the authors of it, 551. His officers fined by him, 552. Bravery before Halep, 556. Against the Syrians, 557. Defeated and slain by Kara Yusuf, 583
- , (Escander) his early conquests in Mogulstan, ii. 551. Disobliges his elder brother, is accused of treachery, and carried prisoner to Samarkant, 552
- Mirza, (Abubekr) his valour and conduct in Georgia, ii. 552. Rewarded by Timur, *ib.* Valour before Halep, 556. Sent to besiege Hems, *ib.* Defeats Sultan Kamed, 561. Scales the walls of Kemak, 562. Sent governor of Irak, 566. Defeats the traitor Yusuf, rebuilds Baghdad, and restores it to its ancient state, *ib.* Imprisoned by his brother, 584. Escapes and puts him to flight, *ib.* & 587.
- Omar succeeds his mad father in Irak, ii. 584. Attacks and imprisons Abubekr, is defeated and driven out of Irak by him, and put to death by Shah Ruykh, *ib.* 587. The youngest son of Abusaid, his banishment and imprisonment, 595
- , (Abusaid) his reign, ii. 590. Attempt on Samarkant, but defeated by Abdo'llatif, seizes on Bokhara, and attains the throne, *ib.* He seizes on Khorassan, orders the sultana his mother to be put to death, loses the fortress of Niretu, and defeats the princes Ahmed and Jughī, 591. Is invaded by Jehan Shah, makes peace with him, returns to Herat, which he besieges, and defeats Allo'daulet and his confederates, *ib.* Recovers Niretu, defeats Sultan Hussain, and enters Astaratad, 592. Drives him out of the kingdom, and imprisons Mohammed Jughī for life, 593. In the war with Hassan, Beg is taken prisoner by him, and put to death, with the fate of his eleven sons, 594
- , the seventh son of Abusaid, defeated and put to death by Sultan Hussain, ii. 594
- , (Soltan) the ninth son of Abusaid, flies from Hassan Beg, and slain, ii. 595
- , (Babr) repulses Ulu Beg, and seizes on Herat, puts Yar Ali to death, imprisons his brother Alao'ddawlet, and defeats Shah Hussain, 596. But is defeated by his two brothers, and recovers Herat from Alao'ddawlet, 597. Secures him, defeats his ungenerous brother Mohammed, *ib.* And puts him to death, with his singular regard to Sheykh Bahaol, 598 (B). Makes a treaty with Abusaid, *ib.* Dies a sacrifice to Bacchus, *ib.*
- Mir Abu'l Mahan, one of the two last of Timur's descendants, ii. 599
- Ghil, defeated and slain by the Ulbecks, ii. 599
- Abbas, (see Abbas) ii. 644
- Abbas, the son of Solyman, why set aside from the succession, ii. 644
- Ibrahim's revolt and death, iii. 59
- Jehan, king of Sindi, driven out by Soltan Acber, iii. 61
- Khan, the son of Abdul Khan, sent in irons to Agra, iii. 74
- Mahammed Shah prevents the surrender of Golkonda, iii. 153. The strange story of his marriage with Khozib Shah, iii. 154
- Abdalla Hassan, his origin and rise, also his splendid living supplied by the vizir of Khozib Shah, iii. 155. And brought to the court, *ib.* Married to the Shah's daughter, *ib.* Succeeds his father-in-law, and suppresses the power of the Omras, &c. 156. Punishes his general and treasurer, and invaded by Aurengzeb, 158. Carried off prisoner, *ib.* His confinement and poor allowance, *ibid.*
- Mischievous Island, in the South Sea, described, and why so called, v. 34
- Miscou Island described, xiv. 551. A spring of fresh water not far from the offing, *ib.*
- Island, an account of a mission established there, xiv. 580
- Mishnah, the Jewish, when, and by whom compiled, v. 493. An account of that work, *ib.* & notes. The author's character, 494. Excessive pride, *ib.*
- Missionaries, (see also Jesuits) sent from France into India, iii. 369. Vain attempt to convert the Siamese, *ib.* Their hopes revived, and fresh missionaries sent for, 370. Their sad state in Abyssinia, vi. 278. A fresh supply of Jesuits sent from Rome, 282. Their faith, &c. why proscribed by the Abuna, and they translate their polemic books into Ethiopic, 289 (R). Their religion and worship disliked by the clergy and laity, who kill two of the fraternity, 295. They thereby lose two staunch friends to their church, 296. Their mutual differences become fatal, 304
- sent to convert the Mariannes islands, iv. 241. Their ill success, and the massacre of them by the natives, occasioned by their indiscreet zeal, *ib.* (M). Their strange neglect of improving that mission, 246 (Q). Unsuccessful attempt on the new Philippines, 253, sub (E)
- (French) encourage the Indians in their idleness, &c. xv. 32 (E)
- Mississippi, its branches, and the rivers falling into it, xiv. 432. Its discovery, 612 (A). Further discoveries on it, *ib.*



- By what name known, and by whom discovered, 616. Preparations in France for discovering its mouth, with an account of the fleet and adventurers, xv. 3
- (Malbouchia) why called Palifade, xv. 14. Claimed by the English prior to the French, ib. The latter's account of it in their gazettes, 15 (B). Late accounts of it by the French adventurers, ib. sub (B). Known to the English long before, under the name of Carolana, 16. Its great beauty, ib.
- (Western) company formed in France, under law, xv. 23. Heads of the patent, ib. Origin of that company, and prodigies told of it, with the effects, 24. Ship of burden sails up that river to New Orleans, ib.
- Mississippi company, account of it, xv. 29. Consolidated with the East-India company, and its capital, what, ib. This bubble breaks, and how Law escapes, ib. Separated from that of the East-Indies, 30. Vast number of ships built by them, but their schemes in Louisiana miscarry, ib.
- , dreadful hurricane there, xv. 31. Savages on the west of it, who, 47. Its limits, as ascertained to Great Britain by the Paris treaty, 53
- company, account of the scheme for it, xv. 608. Its rise and progress, 609
- Missouri river, people, and country, described, xiv. 563 (E).
- Savages, xv. 48. Destroy a French fort, and all the garrison, ib. Adventure of a Jacobine among them, and escape, 49. Their fantastick procession among the French Illinois, ib.
- river, and names of the nations inhabiting its banks, xv. 49
- Mileco provinces, their inhabitants reduced by Alvarado, x. 374
- Milevojus I. king of the Abodrites, apostatizes, xv. 510
- II. why exiled and murdered, with the confusion therein, xv. 510
- Mitchigamias savages, xv. 48
- Mitimies, a great army of them assembled, and their general's inflammatory harangue to them, xiv. 305
- Miyafarekin, its lord, Al Ashraf, opposes Hulaku, and his capital closely blockaded by him, ii. 474. Put to death by him, 475
- Mi yew's surprizing valour, fidelity, and death, ii. 375
- Mnatha, governor of Bohemia, xv. 451
- Moahedun, or Al Mohades dynasty, when and by whom founded, with the first exploits in Africa, i. 695.
- Moawiyah, caliph, purchases Mahomet's cloak for 40,000 drachmas, i. 92.
- , the Moslem admiral, takes the Island of Cyprus, i. 251, and those of Aradus and Ancyra, 252. Destroys the Colossus of Rhodes, 253. Takes up arms against Ali, and makes the bloody shirt of the murdered Othman his standard, 260. Answers Ali's offers with a blank letter, 261. Disputes the caliphate with him, 267. Receives a new title from Amru Ebn Alas, ib. Defeated by Ali at Seffein, 268. Saved by a stratagem of Amru, ib. Refers his dispute to him, and is declared caliph, 269. Undermines the faithful Kais in Egypt, 272. Invades Ali's territories, 273. Gains great advantages over Ali, ib. Is wounded, and rendered impotent, 274. Opposes Hasan's succession, 282. Obliges him to resign the caliphate to him, ib. And to declare his resignation publickly, ib. Makes his publick entry into Cufa, and is opposed by the Kharejites, 284. Grows more enraged against Hasan, and hires his wife to poison him, with his inducement for it, ib. His descent, 285. Former employments, 286. Promotes his old friends, and is opposed by his half brother, ib. Declares him, upon his submission, lawfully begotten, contrary to the Alcoran, 287. He proscribes and persecutes the followers of Ali, ib. Sends his brother against the banditti of Basra, 288. Treachery to Abdalrahman, cruelty to Hejer, and he sells his friendship to the highest bidder, 289. Conquests in Africa, ib. Frighted from removing Mahomet's pulpit, 291. Artifice to sow variance among his governors, 294. His fleet is repulsed before Constantinople, shipwrecked, and his embassy to that city, ib. He concludes a peace with the Greeks, 295. Attempts to make the caliphate hereditary, but opposed by most of his chiefs, ib. Obliges several provinces to swear to Yezid, 296. Strange fondness for him, ib. His last speech, and death, 297. Last advice to his son Yezid, with his reign, character, &c. 298. Fondness for poetry, ib. Generosity, 299. Singular patience and clemency, ib. Customs introduced by him, ib. Burial, 300.
- Ebn Amer's conquests in Africa, i. 289.
- Moawiyah, the son of Yezid, succeeds him in the caliphate, i. 315. Abdicates in six weeks after, with his speech on that occasion, 316. Dies not long after, 317.
- Ebn Hesham's success against the Christians, i. 363.
- , the son of Hesham, his success against the Christians, i. 366. Inroads into the Greek empire, 367.
- Moawiyah Ebn Abdalla, one of the caliph Mohdi's chief counsellors, i. 412.
- Mobarek defeated by Mirza Pir Mehmed, ii. 515, and put to death, 554.
- Mobather's singular valour rewarded by Timur, ii. 515.
- Mobile, fort there and bad situation, xv. 24.
- river, the savages on both sides, who, xv. 44.
- river and port ceded to Great Britain, xv. 58. Its importance, ib.
- Mobilian tongue, its extent, xv. 45.
- savages, where, xv. 44.
- Mocenigo Tomaso, the sixty-fourth duke of Venice, his domestic administration, x. 232 (A). Under him the Venetians take several places, ib. His death and character, ib.
- , his attempt on Chios fails, with his barbarity, x. 243.
- supercedes Canalis, and his disinterestedness, but banished, x. 265. Successes in Asia Minor, and defeats a Turkish fleet before Rhodes, 266. Attacks and destroys Satalia, but obliged to raise the siege of the citadel, ib. Takes Smyrna, with a general slaughter, and defeats the Turks, 267. Returns to Napoli, with the undaunted courage of a young Sicilian, ib. (E). Stores and presents sent by the Persian ambassador from Venice; and takes Sechin, Coria, &c. for the Caramanian brothers, ousted by Othoman, 267. Quells a revolt in Cyprus, and is made governor, 268. Turks besiege Scutari, but their fleet in the river Bojana is defeated by Mocenigo, and beaten by him from Scutari, who retire to Macedonia, ib. (F). Distress of the garrison for water, ib. (G). Reception at Venice, and chosen doge on Marcello's death, 268.
- Pietro, the seventieth duke of Venice, x. 268. His death and character, 269.
- Giovanni, the seventy-second duke of Venice, his character, x. 270. That doge's domestic transactions, 274. Death and character, 275.
- Lodovico, the eighty-fifth duke of Venice, x. 356. With a party in the republic, is for a peace with Selim, 362.
- Mocha, the rise of that sea-port, and English settlement there, iv. 377.
- , the French settlement there, and its late trade in France, iv. 621.
- Mock suns, &c. in Canada, and use made of them by the savages, xiv. 611.
- Mostafi, Al, succeeds his father in the caliphate, and invaded by the Karmatians, i. 506. Ill success against them, 507. Takes the field against them, ib. and defeats them, with his severity to them, and he also defeats and slays a vast body of Turks, 508. Subdues Syria and Egypt, ib. Severity to his Karmatian prisoners, ib. Invaded by the Karmatians and Greeks, 509. His death and character, 510.
- Modaffer, Al, or Al Mansur, the import of those titles, i. 654.
- stripped of his kingdom by Acber, slays himself, iii. 7.
- Modena, rabbi Samuel de, his learned works, v. 598.
- , rabbi Loe de, his works, ib.
- Modena, duke of, besieging Pavia in favour of France, is obliged to raise it, x. 525.
- and Ferrara, their history, xiv. 102.
- and its territories described, xiv. 102. Fine paintings in the new capital, particularly Corregio's night-piece, with the churches, college, and palace, &c. ib.
- Modenese, their success against Saltinguerra, whom they pardon, xiii. 566. Could obtain no satisfactory answer from Bologna about Frignano, 596.
- Modhaffer, wazir of Spain, his conquests on the christians, with his death, i. 607.
- Modon siege miscarries for want of the Maltese galleys, vii. 450.
- Moezz succeeds his father Badis, as Emir in Africa, i. 619. Introduces the doctrine of Ebn Ans there, ib. Defeats the rebel Hammad, 621. Makes a favourable peace, ib. See also vi. 43. Conquest of Egypt, and transports his riches thither, vi. 43. Reign and death, 44 (L). Edifices; funeral, and character, 45.
- Moezzo'ddaula assumes the office of Emir Omra, with his treachery



treachery to Caliph Mostakfi, i. 546. Tyranny over his successor, and hot contest with Nasero'ddaula, 547. Takes Mawfel from him, and abandons it again to him, 549. Takes and loses the city of Mawfel, 555. His rancour to the Ommiyan family, 558. Appoints a fast and festival for Hosein, in spite of the Sonnites, ib. His death and character, 561.

Moezo'ddawlah seizes on Aleppo, i. 608. Opposed by the Fatemite caliph, 648. Defeats his forces, 653. His death and character, 657.

Moezzoddin (Amir) revolts against Naserat, and put to death by him, ii. 683.

Mofrai, (Ebn Jarrah) defeated in Palestine, i. 583.

Mogayaho'ddin, (Abul Facah.) See Malek Snah II. i. 711. and ii. 190.

Mogheirah's great success in Mesopotamia, &c. i. 242. Builds the city of Basra, 243. His advice to Ali after his election rejected, and retires to Mecca, 259. His death, 290.

— (Abul) beheaded for his pious zeal, i. 292.

Mogul, great, empire of. See Hindustan, iii. 1.

—, the great, his court and palace described, iii. 44. Hall of audience, ib. His great assiduity in administering of justice, ib. Splendid baths, inner parts beyond that impenetrable, and classes of women, 46. Princes and princesses, ib. Their rich dress and governesses, 47. Women singers, slaves, &c. ib. Eunuchs and soldiery, 48. Army at Dehli, and guard, ib. Garrisons and other forces, ib. How commanded, with his horses and elephants, 49. Their sumptuous equipage and arsenal, ib. Artillery and vast revenue, 50. Expences, 51.

Mouls, a tribe of W. Tartars, ii. 119.

—, (proper) or Mungls, ii. 119. The same with the Turks, and their iron-forges near Mount Kin, 130.

—, in Hindustan, who, and whence, iii. 18. See Jagatays.

— enter Armenia, take Arzerum and other places, ii. 231. The history of their empire from Jenghiz Khan, 243. Invade Kin in North China, 283. Their success in it, ib. Horrid devastations, 285. Attempt on Honan frustrated, 287. Repulsed in Shensi, 288. Intrepid bravery against the Karzaman sultan, 296. Invade Karazm, 306. Besiege the capital, and thirty thousand cut in pieces at one fall, ib. (C). Singular ignorance, 365. Learning promoted among them, ib.

—, of Hindustan, described, iii. 18. Their dress, diet, liquors, &c. 20. Entertainments, 21. Marriages and other customs, 22. Burials, ib. Language and learning, ib. Belief and practice, 23. Numerous monks, ib. Great cheats, ib.

Mohabet Khan sent to oppose Soltan Khurm, iii. 73. Gallant conduct, ib. Sent in pursuit of him, 74. Defeats him, ib. Orders Darah and his son to be slain, 76. Recalled to court, 77. Expostulates with the Soltan, 78. Defeats and takes him prisoner, with his severity to the other prisoners, ib. Lets him escape from him, 79. Retires from, and sends Affof Khan to mediate a peace, 80. His treasure seized by order of the angry queen, and betrayed by his own son Mirza, ib. Submissive letter to the Soltan, and reconciled to him, 81. Put to a nonplus by a juggling monkey, 82. Reconciled to Aurengzeb, 113. Promoted to the government of Guzerat, ib.

Mohadhebo'ddawla driven out of Batiha, i. 608. Restored to it by Bahao'dowla, 609.

Mohajerin, or refugees, and Ansars, united by Mahommed, i. 47. Invested with the possessions of the Koreidhites, 62. Mohammed's chief companions, 118. Of the third class, ib. Warm dispute about the choice of a caliph, 132. Sent to reduce Hamadan, 249. Declare for Ali after Othman's death, 258.

Mohalleb, Al, assists Musab against Mokhtar, and made governor of Mawfel, &c. i. 328. Dispute with the Azarakites after Musab's death, 332. Made tax gatherer of Basra, ib. Success against the Azarakites, ib. His death, 337.

Mohammed, or Mahomet, his character variously represented, and descent, i. 1, 2. Far from obscure, ib. and 7. When, and where born, 8. Pretended prodigies at his birth, and his greatness foretold, 9. When an infant he loses his father, 11. Troubled with the epilepsy, ib. and 24. Brought up a merchant, 12. First journey into Syria, and instructed by the monk Sergius, ib. Entertained by Boheira, and his character, ib. And why misrepresented by christian writers, but unjustly vindicated by Mr. Sale, and his first campaign, 13. Great sagacity, he marries Khadijah, and his second journey into Syria, 14. Early impostures, ib. Continues merchandizing after his first wife's death, 15.

First plan of his new religion, ib. His prevailing motives for it, and for adapting it to the taste of the Arabs, ib. Causes of its vast progress, 17. Takes advantage of the reigning troubles, 18. Pretends a mission from God, 20. Acquaints his wife with his pretended visions, ib. Succeeds in his first attempts, 21. Proclaims his pretended mission, 22. His speech to his first disciples, ib. Stoutly opposed by the Koreish, 23. Preaches, and reforms the Arabs, 24. His followers persecuted, 25. His life attempted by the Koreish, 26. Retires to the hill Safa, 27. Loses his uncle and wife, 28. Prophecy against the Greeks and Persians, ib. Miracle of splitting the moon, and persecuted afresh by the Koreish, 29. Retreats to Tayef and Why, 30. Preaches with more success to the Khazraites, ib. His pretended night-journey to heaven, 31. Arrival at Jerusalem, ib. Carried up through seven several heavens, 32. Comes to the throne of God, and intercourse with him, 36. His return to Mecca, ib. How far he disclaimed all miracles, 37. His journey to heaven variously believed by the Moslems, ib. His success at Medina, 40. Interview and league with the inhabitants, ib. Rebuke to the devil, 41. Begins to propagate his doctrine by the sword, ib. Strongly opposed by the Koreish, 42. He retires to the cave of mount Thur, 43. Is there saved by a miraculous spider, ib. (D). Safe arrival at Medina, 44. Lays the foundation of a mosque, ib. His grand reception at Medina, 45. Builds a mosque, and an house there, ib. Consummates his marriage with Ayesha there, 47. Alters the Kibla, 48. Ordains the Ramadan fast, ibid. Prepares to attack the Koreish, 49. What year the first hostilities began, ibid. Gains the famous victory of Bedr, 50. Returns victorious to Safra, 51. Why that victory is styled miraculous, ibid. The spoils of it divided by Mahomet, 52. Causes new disputes, ib. A fifth part dedicated to God, and he returns to Medina, ib. Disperses the Banu of Solaim and Ghatfan, 54. Conquers the Jewish Banu Kainoka, 55. Enriches himself with their spoils, and marries Hafsa, the daughter of Omar, ib. Defeated, and in great danger at the battle of Ohod, 56. Makes a truce with the Koreish, 57. Inspires his Moslems with fresh courage, 58. Harraisses the Asadites, and sends missionaries to preach at Edhl and Al Kara, ib. Who are all murdered, with his expedition against the Jews of Al Nadir, 59. Forbids the use of wine, ib. Surprises a party of the Galfanites, and the second expedition of Bedr, 60. Success against the wild Arabs, ib. Against the Koreish, 61. He cuts off the Khoreidhites, ib. Cruelty and impiety towards the prisoners, 62. Takes Rihana, the most beautiful captive to himself, ib. Marries Zeinab, the wife of Zeid, ib. His magnificent wedding-banquet, and it gives great offence, 63. Success against the Arabs, ib. Expeditions against several Banus, ib. Seizes a Koreish caravan, and sends an agent to Constantinople, 64. Cruelty to eight Orainites, and mission to convert the Christian Arabs, ib. Signal victory over the Banu Al Moitalek, 65. Marries Joweira, and suspects his wife Ayesha's fidelity, 66. Clears her by a pretended revelation, ib. Enjoins the Tayamom or Purification, and his journey to the temple of Mecca, 67. Makes a treaty with the Meccans, ib. Oath of inauguration taken, and expedition against Omm Forka, 68. Idolized by the Moslems, and he invites foreign princes to embrace Islamism, 69. Pretends to be bewitched by a Jew, 70. Makes it a pretence for invading the Jews of Khaibar, with his success against them, 71. Policy upon his non-admission into Mecca, ib. Marries his Jewish captive Safiya, 72. Is poisoned by Zeinab, at Al Ramus, 73. Reduces other places, ib. And marries Abu Sofian's daughter by proxy, 74. Celebrates his nuptials with Safiya, ib. Reduces the Jews of Yetama, ib. Debauches a Coptic girl, 75. Guilty of perjury and impiety on her account, and performs the visitation of the Caaba at Mecca, 76. The whimsical manner of performing that ceremony, and surrounds the place seven times, ib. Celebrates his marriage with Maimuna, 77. Causes his first pulpit to be reared, ib. His ambassador at Bosra assassinated, and his severe revenge on the city of Muta, 78. Great loss at the battle of Muta, 79. Success against the Kodaites, ib. Preparations against the faithless Koreish, 80. Begins his march to Mecca, which he besieges and takes, 81. Makes his public entry into it, and destroys the idols of the Koreish, ib. Performs the wudu or ablution, and treatment of the Koreish, 82. Proscribes several Arabs both men and women, 83. Sets out from thence for Honein, after 15 days, 84. Expedition against the Hawafens and Thakifs, 86. Valour and stratagem at the battle of Honein, And



87. And Awtas, with his impious salvo about the female captives, *ib.* Lays siege to Tayef, 88. Forced to raise it, and plunders Jarana, 89. Divides the spoils among his converts, *ib.* Visits the Caaba in his return to Medina, 90. His son Ibrahim born, *ib.* Noble reception of foreign ministers, 92. War against the Greeks, *ib.* Treaty of peace with some of the princes, 94. Burns a Christian church in his return to Medina, 95. Sends two lieutenants into Yaman, and takes his final leave of Moadh, 97. Grief at his son's death, 97. Performs the last pilgrimage of valediction, 98. Odd ceremonies of his pilgrimage, and profession of the deity, 102. Throwing seven stones at the Devil, *ib.* Whence he sacrifices sixty-three camels in the 63d year of his age, 103. Reforms the kalendar, 104. Grand embassy to the Al Nakhaites, and falls sick, 105. Opposed by two other impostors, *ib.* Last sermon at the mosque, and last orders to his faithful Ansars, 106. Last curse on the Jews, *ib.* His death and last words, 108. Disputes about the true time of it, with fabulous accounts about it, *ib.* Funeral rites, 109. Disputes about his sepulchre, 110. Ceremony how performed, *ib.* Person described, *ib.* Pretended prophetic seal, 111. Disposition, genius, and qualities, *ib.* His offspring, 113. Wives, 114. Concubines, 116. Secretaries, and clerks, 117. Companions, 118. The 13 classes of them, *ib.* Officers and favourites, 119. Chambermaids, horses, mules, &c. and their names, &c. 120. Weapons, and their names, 121. Expeditions, *ib.* Privileges challenged by him, *ib.* And for his followers, 122. Great skill in physick, 127. Method of curing, *ib.* Visiting of his tomb, how performed, 128. His letter to Moseilama, 134.
- Mohammed, (Ebn Abu Becr) sent by Ali into Egypt, i. 272. Defeated and murdered by Amru, and cursed for his cruel treatment of him, 273.
- , the son of Malek Shah] rebels against his brother in Irak, ii. 175. Defeats him, and defeated in his turn, *ib.* Divides the empire with him, 176. Takes Musol, 178. Seizes on his nephew and his empire, and besieges Achmet a false prophet at Dizghodeh, 179. Discovers a treasonable design of Saad al Molk, and puts the false prophet to a cruel death, *ib.* His success in Indostan, and zeal against idolatry, 180. Inveteracy against Othman, whence, i. 255. Assassinate him, 256.
- (Ebn Abdallah) ravages the coast of Cilicia, i. 294. And the brother of Malek Shah II. set upon the throne in his room, ii. 190. Ingratitude to Khasbek, and forced to flee for it, 191. Returns and defeats his rival uncle, *ib.* His death and character, *ib.*
- (Mogayatho'ddin) sixth sultan of Kerman, ii. 196
- (Shah) the eleventh sultan of Kerman, ii. 196
- (Amir) defeats Kamytzes, and saves his life, ii. 212. Is defeated by Alexis, *ib.* Reduces Iberia and part of Mesopotamia, 216.
- (Ebn Ali) chief of the family of Abbas II. when, how, and by whom supported, ii. 376. His death and successor, *ibid.*
- (Ebn Ashaat) defeats the rebel Jamhu, ii. 389
- (Ebn Asad) made governor of Egypt, ii. 391. Removed, 392
- (Al Diybal) cruelly murdered by Al Mansur, ii. 391
- (Ebn Abdallah) proclaimed caliph at Medina, ii. 394. Defeated and beheaded by Al Mansur's general, 395
- (Ebn Shek-adi) sent to assist Azzoddin, and slain by Angurk, ii. 234
- sultan of Karazm, his alliance with Jenghiz Khan, ii. 291. Rupture with the khalifsh Nassir, 292. His army ruined by the frost, &c. *ib.* Breaks the alliance with the Mungls, 293. Extent of his dominions, 294. Marches against the Mungls, 295. Defeated by prince Juji, *ibid.* Fortifies his camp against the Mungls, 296. Flies to Samarcand, 267. And closely pursued by the Mungls, 303. Flies into Irak, 304. But is overtaken, *ib.* Dies of a pleurisy, and appoints Jalalo'ddin his successor, *ib.* A different account of his flight and death, 305
- , a descendant of Hulaku, proclaimed Khan, who defeats sultan Musa, ii. 492. Defeated and slain by Hassan Kujuk, *ib.*
- Shah Rukh's grandson, seizes on Irak and Pars after his death, ii. 588
- the son of Abusaid, kept prisoner by Hassan Beg, ii. 594. Defeats his brother Babr, 596. Forced to retire, with his treachery to Babr, and his punishment, *ib.*
- , the son of Tahmasp, refuses the crown, ii. 605
- (Gayathoddin) dies and leaves the kingdom to his son Mohammed Abul Kassem, ii. 181
- Mohammed (Abul Kassem) his reign and character, and prodigious wealth, whence, ii. 181
- (Ebn Hanifiyah) assisted by Al Mokhtar, at Mecca, i. 326. Resolves upon pacific measures, *ib.* Imprisoned by the jealous Abdalla, but rescued by Al Jodali, and retires to a mountain just by, 327
- (Ebn Merwan) defeats the Greeks and the Khazarians in Armenia, i. 335
- Abdalmalek's general, his good and bad success against the Greeks, i. 339. Reduces Armenia, 341
- turns monk and is surnamed Khodabandeh, ii. 605. Mounts the throne after his brother's death, 606. His motley character and victories over the Turks, *ib.* Revenges the general's shameful death on the Turks, 607. Ill fortune and death, *ib.*
- (Dirhem Kub) founds the kingdom of Hormuz, ii. 681. Stratagem to slay the tyrant and free the people, *ib.* Whence so named, *ib.* When he began his reign, *ib.* (F).
- (Ebn Soliman,) made governor of Egypt, i. 407
- (Ebn Yahya) one of the Barmecidæ, escapes Al Rashid's resentment, i. 426
- (Ebn Tabatiba) revolts against caliph Al Mamun, and slain, i. 449
- (Ebn Jaafar) proclaimed caliph in Mecca, i. 450
- Abu Nasr's death and character, i. 452
- (Ebn al Kasem) revolts against caliph Motasem, but defeated, i. 460
- (Ebn Aglab) makes himself emir of Sicily, i. 465. His death, 470
- (Ebn Abdalmalek) put to a cruel death, i. 468
- (Ebn Abd'alraman) succeeds his father in Sicily, i. 471. Gains a signal victory over the revolters, *ib.* Ravages the territory of Toledo, and defeats the Toledans with great loss, 472. Destroys the noble bridge over the Tagus, *ib.*
- (Ebn Thaher) repulses the insolent Turks from Bagdat, i. 483. Treats with Ahmed Ebn Mottawakkedel, then besieging that place, *ib.* Prevails on Mostain to resign the caliphate, 483
- (Abul Abbas) caliph of Kairwan, dies, i. 472
- (Khasfajah) chosen emperor in Sicily, i. 487. Murdered by his eunuchs, 490
- (Ebn Wafel) opposes Abdalraman and defeats him, i. 491. Defeated, and his palace plundered by Yakub Ebn Leit, *ib.*
- (Ebn Thaher) taken and imprisoned by Ebn al Leit, i. 491. Released by Mowaffek, *ib.*
- (Ebn Abdalraman) equips a numerous fleet in Spain, which is destroyed by a storm, i. 493. His death and last words, 495
- (Ebn Solyman) reduces Syria and Egypt, i. 508. Arrested for his extortions, 509
- (Al Shalmagani) his impious doctrines, trial and crucifixion, i. 531
- , an Andalusian poet, assassinated for his impious flattery, i. 567
- Amir Khan's advice to Aurengzeb, iii. 116
- (Shah Al Nasro'ddin) raised to the throne by the two Seids, one of whom he orders to be slain, iii. 122. Defeats, but spares the other, with his special kindness to him, *ib.* Alarmed at the approach of the Marattas, 123. And the invasion of Shah Nadir, 124. Dreadful defeat by him, 125. His camp plundered, *ib.* Goes to the camp of Nadir Shah, 126. Is severely lectured by him, *ib.* Vast numbers of his army slain, 127. Anxiety how to act, with his arms, treasure, &c. seized, *ib.* Receives him at Dehli castle, *ib.* Crowned and richly habited by him, 130. His loss computed by him at this visit, 131
- (Abd'alrahman, cadî of Sendiya,) his death, i. 578. His high character, *ib.*
- (Ebnfuri) prince of Gaur, invaded by Soltan Gazni, and poisons himself, i. 614 (S).
- , caliph of Spain, murdered by his servants, i. 627
- , the son of Hascen, his success, and conquests, vii. 174. Defeated by the Portuguese, and defeats them in his turn, *ib.* Treachery to the Arabs, 175. Takes the city of Aguer, 176. Cruelty to the governor's lady, *ib.* (C). Falls out with his treacherous brother, defeats, and is reconciled to him, 177. Artful speech to, and treatment of him, with his success against the king of Fez, 178. Interview with him, *ib.* (E). Treachery to him, *ib.* Cruelty to the Fezians, and he besieges that city, 180. Sends Oataz to Morocco, *ib.* and Hammed to the deserts of Zahara, *ib.* Cruelty to the king of Fez, &c. 181. Forced to secure the capital against Salh Rays, *ib.* Recovers Taphilet from his treacherous brother, and confines him for life, 183. Defeat



- feats and kills brave Buhanzon, 183. Enters Fez in triumph, and died by the Algerine basia, *ib.* Assassinated by a hired Turk, who is taken and slain, 184.
- Mohammed, (Hammed) the son of Hassen, his successful pilgrimage to Mecca, vii. 174. His successes and conquests, *ib.*
- IV. his haughty letter to the Rhodian grand master, vii. 413. Defeated by them at Cos, &c. and ravages their islands, 414. Forces the prisoners to apostatize, *ib.* Cruelty to the knights, 415. Turns his forces against Persia, 417. Preparations against the Rhodians, 418. Over-reached by their grand master, 419. Concludes a suspension of arms, *ib.* Resolves on the siege of Rhodes, 420. Repulsed thence with loss, *ib.* Lays siege to it, *ib.* Treachery against the grand master, 421.
- (Al Hamar) king of Granada, becomes St. Ferdinand's vassal, and delivers up the place, viii. 7. He invites the Moors over from Africa, 13.
- (the Left-handed) routed from Granada, by Mohammed the Little, and a war between Castile and Arragon, viii. 80. Mohammed the Left-handed replaced, and the other suffers death, *ib.*
- (Al Zagel) his submission, viii. 209. Through his means several places submit, 210. The king's present to him, *ib.*
- Mohammedans promoted by Timur, ii. 398. But few in Indostan, iii. 18. Settled in China, but not numerous, iii. 566. In the Philippine islands, iv. 204. Numerous in Ethiopia, and their great traffic, vi. 189.
- Mohareb, the son of Fehr, head of a tribe, i. 3.
- Mohay'oddin the astrologer, his stratagem to save his life, ii. 475.
- Moheb (Ali Khan) his stratagem against Rotas, iii. 59.
- Mohsen (Al) succeeds his father in Buzyah, and dethroned and slain, i. 653.
- Mohtadi (Al) proclaimed caliph, i. 487.
- Mohuzo'ddin induces Jani Beck to destroy Malek Ashraf, ii. 446.
- Moj3, or Mojja, a city of Pegu, iii. 239.
- Mojared Al Molk, Barkiarok's wazir, cut in pieces by the revolted, i. 684.
- Mojassemians, or Corporealists, among the Arabs who, i. 486.
- Mojir'oddin, succeeds as Lord of Damascus, i. 706. Obligated to surrender it to Nuro'ddin, by whom he is promoted, 714.
- Mokattam mount, in Egypt, described, and the tower built on it by Mamun, i. 455.
- Mokawkas, governor of Egypt, invited to Islamism, i. 70. Dies a Jacobite, *ib.* Betrays the fortresses of Mesr to Amru, 234. Articles obtained from him for his Copts, 235.
- Mokhtara taken from the Zenjians, i. 493.
- Moko (See Muko) 3000 buried alive there, for succouring of Korea, iii. 754.
- Moktader proclaimed caliph of Baghdad, i. 511. Dethroned on account of his youth, but defeats his rival, *ib.* Governed by his women and eunuchs, with his ill success against Al Mohdi, 512. Sends a powerful army into Egypt, 513. Drives Al Mohdi's forces out of it, *ib.* Makes peace with the emperor Zoe, 514. His grand reception of his ambassadors, *ib.* Sends a successful fleet into Egypt, 515. Refuses Abu Thaher's request, 519. Invaded by him, and double thanksgiving for his retreat, 520. Deposed by his general Munes, and restored to the throne, 521. Defeated by the Deylamites in Hamadan, 523. Defeated and killed near his capital, with other particulars concerning his death, *ib.* Strange end of his assassin, 524. His character, &c. 525.
- Moktadi (Al) proclaimed caliph, his first reform, and strips Kabihah of all her hidden treasures, i. 487. Exasperates the tumultuous Turks, 488. Cruelly murdered by them, *ib.*
- (Beamrillah) ascends the caliphate, i. 665.
- (Al) caliph, espouses the daughter of Malek Shah, and her splendid entry into Bagdat, i. 670. Abandoned by her in a pet, *ib.* Gives the investiture to young Mahmud, 675. His strange death, 677. Character, *ib.*
- Moktafi made caliph of Baghdad, i. 704. ii. 188. Strips the Seljuks of their authority in that kingdom, 189. Shakes off the Seljukian yoke, 190. i. 704.
- Moktar (Al) his contest with Ibrahim at Cufa, i. 320. Ill treated by Obeidallah, and resentful speech against him, *ib.* Abandons Abdallah's service, 322. Becomes one of the heads of the Shiites, and strives to undermine Solyman, *ib.* Imprisoned, *ib.* Released after his defeat, 324. Made general of the Shiite army, and puts to death the murderers of Hosein, 325. Artful letter to Abdallah, and sends a reinforcement to Medina, 326. Lucky stratagem against Obeidallah, 327. Cruel treatment of the Cufans and Ismaelians, *ib.* Defeated and killed by Al Mufab, with his character and progeny, 328.
- Molabeda's forces destroyed by Nowayn, ii. 471.
- Mola fortresses taken by the Moors, vii. 677. A new one built opposite to it, 678.
- Molai, the grand master of the Templars, and chief officers burned, with their declaration and firm behaviour, ix. 79. The order suppressed in England, *ib.* Their lands only appropriated to other orders in Spain, *ib.* Their wealth the true cause of their suppression, *ib.*
- Moldavians defeated by Bajazet, v. 367.
- Moleworth's account of the Danes and their present situation, xi. 654 (F). & 65 (B).
- governor of Jamaica, xv. 281. Solemnly proclaims James II. and sends over an address, *ib.* Again appointed 285.
- Molina's book condemned, x. 130 (R).
- Molucca islands, when first discovered, iv. 154. Oppressed by the Portuguese, *ib.* A succinct view of them, 156. Extent of the Archipelago, *ib.* Their products, &c. *ib.* Islands adjacent to them, 157. The natives described, 158. Converted by the Portuguese, 159. Disputed by the courts of Madrid and Lisbon, 175. Subdued by the Spaniards, 181. Reasons for and against keeping of them, 182. Recovered by Don Juan de Sylva, 416. Molucca islands why called the gold mines of the Dutch, 487. Vast decay since their conquest by them, 493. Way dript of their spicery, 494 (F).
- the dispute between Portugal and Castile about them wisely suspended, viii. 473.
- Molwitz, account of the battle there, xv. 629.
- Momahedo'ddawla's kind reception of Abul Abbas, i. 591. Murdered by one of his guards, 592.
- Mombaza taken and plundered by the Portuguese, iv. 130.
- island and kingdom, where sited, with the extent of its coast, vi. 345. Inhabitants, religion, &c. 347.
- city, citadel, &c. described, with its famous bay, &c. vi. 346. City, its brave defence against Almeida, 355. Its dreadful assault, 356. Plundered and burnt, 357. Cowardly flight, *ib.* Becomes vassal to the emperor of Moncemugi, *ib.* Its king's brave answer to Almeida, *ib.*
- Momitzilus defeated by sultan Amir, v. 158.
- Mona, account of, xi. 651 (A).
- isle described, xv. 360.
- Monaco (prince of) puts himself under the protection of France, ix. 401.
- Monakabos in India, who and whence, iii. 323. Drive away the king of Johor, 324.
- Monarchy in Sweden, the succession of its princes, and the difference among historians about its origin, xii. 217.
- Monaster city in Tunis described, and its wretched decay, vii. 304.
- Moncacht-ape, his travels in search of the origin of the north Americans, how disappointed, xiv. 563 (E).
- Moncada succeeds Lanoja as viceroy of Naples, the pope obtaining his liberty on very hard terms, x. 500. Killed in attacking the French fleet, *ib.*
- Monckton (colonel) takes Beaufejour (Cumberland) and other forts in Nova-Scotia, xiv. 704.
- (brigadier) wounded at Quebec, xiv. 721. Recovers, and takes the command there, 723.
- (general) his vigilant activity against the French, xiv. 723.
- Mondar (Al) king of Bahrein embraces Islamism, i. 70. Reduced under Abu Becr, 135.
- the Damascene ambassador plots against caliph Yezid, i. 312.
- Moncolfo besieged, where Lorenzo Medici is dangerously wounded, and it surrenders, xiii. 485. Tumults in his army thereon, and shameful inactivity, *ib.*
- Monegario (Domenico) sixth doge of Venice, succeeds Galla, x. 183. Why controlled by certain tribunes, with his base character and disposition, *ib.* (A).
- Mongalia, where situated, and its extent, ii. 243. Its description, and how divided, 244.
- Monguls, (See Mungls) where situated, ii. 243. Protected by the Chinese, and divided, 244.
- Eluths (See Eluths). ii. 249. Their general hunting described, 310. Conquests in Hya, 281. In Kin, 327. Renewed under Okray, and eight thousand slain by the Kin, 334. Ill success in Song, 347. Conquests in the west, 352. Distressed and baffled before Ho-chew, 359. Ill success against Chu, 432. Who puts an end to their dynasty



- dynasty in China, 434. Its continuation in Tartary by Ayyew Shilitato, 435. Fresh attempts on the Chinese provinces, 436. Dreadful ravages in them, *ib.* Total defeat and submission to the Manchews, 437. Their first dynasty in Great Buckharia, 463. The end of it, 467, in Little Buckharia, *ib.* and 469. The beginning of their dynasty in Iran, *ibid.* Splits itself into little ones, 491. Their divided state after Abufaid's death, 499. Sends presents and ambassadors to sultan Kalil, 585. Behead Khodadad, 586
- Monjoy, pope Clement's nephew, his arrival at Naples as viceroy, with the consequences, x. 471
- Monk, defeats Tromp, xi. 568
- Monks in Poland, wealthy and profligate, xii. 440
- Mon-mu, the XLIIId emperor of Japan, iv. 54
- Monocmugi, empire of, described, vi. 378. Opulence, extent, and power, 379. No cities or towns of note, with a considerable lake described by D'Anville, 380. Country why so little known to Europeans, 381. Vast ridges of mountains, and why so little frequented by strangers, *ib.*
- emperors, their power, &c. and their troops mostly of the cannibal Giagas, vi. 379. Cruel war with the Monomopatan Amazons, *ib.* Have no ports on any of the coasts, with various attempts on Congo, Angola, &c. fruitless, 380
- Monolycus engages the Romans without success, ii. 214
- Monomotapa empire described, vi. 368. Whence so called, its situation and limits, *ib.* (A). Fertile soil and climate, 369. Cattle, wild and tame, with the fondness of the natives for perfumes, 370. Wildness of their beasts of carriage how tamed, *ibid.* (B). Law-suits how determined, 371. Dress and government, *ib.* Capital described, 372. Christianity how introduced and encouraged, *ib.* Singular regard to their women, 373. Conversion by the Portuguese how prevented, 374. Gold mines, 375. Various markets for the metal, 378
- Emperors, their vast profusion of perfumes, vi. 370. Vast number of wives, &c. and retinue, *ib.* Superstitious rites when abroad, and vast number of tributary kingdoms, 371. Their singular policy on that account, and privileges granted to the nobles, 372. Splendid court, *ib.* Empress, her privilege, 373. Wives, how employed, 374. Accounts about them why so various, and bloody contentions about their succession, 376. How composed and settled by the brave Al Fondi, with the history of that prince, *ib.* (E).
- Monophysism what, and a mere dispute about words, vi. 25 (S).
- Monophysite patriarchs and bishops, a list of them, i. 389. Their heresy and author, vi. 25 (S).
- Monopoly destructive to trade, &c. iv. 343 (U).
- Monou empire, on the Ivory coast, described, vii. 28
- Monpa kingdom, in Inland Guinea, described, vi. 676
- Monro (Colonel) respect shewn him and his garrison of fort William Henry in the capitulation, xiv. 712
- Mons nation, who, iii. 254 (O) et passim. Probably the same with the Laos, 255 (U).
- , taken by the French, viii. 340
- , blocked up by Luxemburg, ix. 464
- , surrendered to the French, ix. 470 Taken by the allies, 494
- siege, and surrenders to the Visconti, xiv. 70
- Monferrato attempts to get into Abyssinia, and taken by the Turks, vi. 279
- Monfieur, and count Soissons fly from Paris, and a compromise made with the former, ix. 391
- , has leave to come to court, but not carested, ix. 409
- Montague (Lord) beheaded, with the circumstances of his death and character, ix. 129. His memory vindicated in an extraordinary manner, *ib.*
- (Admiral) arrival of an English fleet in the Baltic under him to watch Opdam, xii. 183. Suffers Opdam to enter Copenhagen harbour, and the siege raised, *ib.*
- Montaldo (Antony) duke of Genoa, x. 565
- (La) a village of Canada, described, xiv. 559
- Montallo, a Jewish physician, sent for by the French court, v. 564 (Q).
- Montaser (Al) nominated his father's successor, with his two banners, and government in Africa, i. 469. Causes his father to be assassinated, 474. His motives for it, *ib.* And saluted emperor by the assassins, with his unjust and false declaration, 479. Dream, and threatening omen, and he excludes his three brothers from the succession, *ib.* Retirement and death, with an instance of his generosity, and his character, 481
- (Abu Ibraim) escapes out of Ilek Khan's hands, defeats him, and recovers Bokhara, i. 605. Success against him, but betrayed by the Turkmans, 606. Success against Ilek, 607. Takes Bokhara, 608. Success against Ilek Khan, *ib.* Overthrown by him, *ib.* His flight, and death; is the last of the Sammanian dynasty, *ib.*
- , the son of Thaher, the Fatemite, his character, and long reign, i. 640
- Montcalm succeeds Dieskau in the command of the troops in New France, under Vaudreuil, xiv. 710. His breach of Oswego capitulation, and more than Indian barbarity, 711. Fails in three attacks on fort William Henry, but at last takes it, and the terms how shamefully broken, 712. Surprized at the English ascending the heights of Abraham, and judicious dispositions for an engagement, 720. Mortally wounded, and dies, 721. *ib.*
- Montelar, the French under that baron pursue the duke of Saxe-Eisenac, obliging him to surrender, xi. 292
- Montelongo surprizes Victoria, the emperor's head-quarters, who is repulsed, and flies to Cremona, xiii. 589
- Monte (Cape) in Sierra Leona described, vii. 19. Also the natives, and their government, *ib.* Their dress, 20. Language and religion, *ib.* Trade, 21
- (Video) in Buenos Ayres, xiv. 470
- (Peter de) the XLVIIIth great master of Malta, vii. 494. Turns his arms against the Algerines, 495. Repairs the fortifications, and finishes the new city, 496
- Christo described, xv. 360
- Montecuculi commands the Imperialists against Turenne, with the character of each, ix. 461. Opposes Turenne with success, and upon the latter's death, turns the scale in favour of the allies, xi. 623. Penetrates into Alsace, ix. 462. After the campaign against Turenne, retires, and his remarkable saying thereupon, 461 (B).
- Monterey's bold attempt on Charleroi; in favour of the Dutch, miscarries, viii. 327
- (Count) viceroy of Naples, the beginning of his administration very calamitous from an eruption of Vesuvius, and an account of it, x. 517. The Neapolitans greatly distressed by other matters, *ib.* The troops and money raised, he is recalled, *ib.*
- Montes Claros battle, viii. 323. The Spaniards defeated there through the skill of Schomberg, and the English also defeated by the same means at Villa Viciosa, viii. 515
- Monteser (Abu Ibrahim) defeats Ilek Khan over and over, ii. 138. Is taken and slain, *ib.*
- Montesha subdued by Bajazer, v. 167
- Montferrat (Marquis) made captain of Genoa, x. 569. Accommodation of Genoa with that marquis, *ib.*
- (marquis of) his views, who is at last prevailed on to join Otho, archbishop of Milan, xiv. 64. Practices of that marquis for becoming master of Milan, *ib.* And how Otho disappoints them, *ib.* The conduct of that marquis, 65. A diversion by the marquis in the Milanese, with the recovery of the places he had taken, 78. Another diversion in the Milanese, *ib.* The marquis substituted guardian of Genoa in Boucicault's place, 89
- Montfort (John Count de) does homage to king Edward for Bretagne, ix. 107. Proceedings in France, and sentence of the parliament against Edward, *ib.* Nantes betrayed, and Montfort taken prisoner, *ib.* Hennebon, where the countess of Montfort was, being besieged, is saved by a truce, *ib.*
- (Countess) succours sent her by Edward under Robert of Artois, into Bretagne, ix. 107. Her death in Bretagne, 108
- (Simon) a remarkable victory gained by him, with the loss only of one Miles, a few servientes, and 20,000 of the enemy, &c. ix. 610
- Montgomery (Colonel) made governor of New York, who obtains a new charter, and its substance, xiv. 543. Complaints against the governor, but die, with his character, 544. And the light in which governments in America were looked on then, *ib.* Effectually chastizes the perfidy of the Cherokees, 723. Expedition against the Cherokees, and burning their towns, with the men, xv. 97. Further progress, and returns to fort Prince George, *ib.*
- Montjean's attempt for seizing Doria of Genoa miscarries, x. 587 (C).
- Montjo's memorial to the court of London, complaining of the emperor, xiii. 650. The latter's counter-memorial after long delays, 651



- Montjuic-Fort, and the city of Barcelona taken, which last becomes Charles's seat of government, viii. 358
- Montmagny (M. de) succeeds Champlain governor of New France, and his conduct, what, xiv. 577. Builds fort Richelieu to curb the incursions of the Iroquois, 581. Obligated to truckle to the Iroquois, 583. His address, and proposal to the Algonquins and Hurons, with their answer, and his difficulties hereupon, 584. For reasons advanced by a Christian Huron, he consents to a negotiation, ib. Arrival of deputies from the contending nations at Trois Rivières, with their practice of eloquence, what, ib.
- Montmirail peace when, and between whom, ix. 42
- Montmorenci falls in St. Laurence river described, xiv. 552
- made constable, ix. 304
- (Duke de) beats the Rochellers fleet, and reduces Rhe and Oleron, ix. 371. Is beaten, and taken prisoner by Schomberg, 384. Tried, condemned, and executed at Thoulouse, ib. With his character, and whole confiscation given Conde, who had married his sister, 385
- Montpellier city a favourer of the Jews, v. 561 (H). Seized by the king of France, to whom Jayme of Arragon afterwards sells it, viii. 179
- Montpensier (Duke of) his death, who leaves an only daughter, ix. 334
- (Duchess of) and Orleans dies, ix. 375
- Mon-toku, the 55th emperor of Japan, iv. 55
- Montreal island and city in St. Laurence river described, before and since its conquest by the English, xiv. 558. Fair holden there by the French, 559. The effects of drunkenness among the natives in its streets, ib. New association in Old France for a settlement there, and their rational plan what, 581. Arrival of some of the associates, ib. State of its colony, 582. Affairs of it under Maisonneuve, 591. A hospital founded there by contribution from Old France, and the foundation of a city begun, 597. An institution, called the Daughters of the Congregation, at the same time, ib. A white flag arrives there from the Onnontague and Goyogouin Cantons, with its import, 599. Governor general agrees to their proposals, ib. New intelligence there about the motions of the Iroquois, 644. Miscarriage of the English against it, and why, 687. Capitulates, and the articles, 726
- Monts (M. de) his injudicious settlement by Champlain on the Isle de St. Croix, xiv. 569. Removes the settlement to Port Royale, 570
- Montserrat island discovered by Columbus, xiv. 145. Its situation and history, xv. 263. Name, and first settlement by the English, ib. Conquest by the French, but reverts to England, 264. Almost destroyed by an earthquake, ib. Number of its inhabitants, and descent on the island by the French, with their losses, ib. Favourable to colonel Park, ib. Dreadful earthquake, ib. Enemies to smuggling, and its natural history, 265
- Mo-nyen, governor of Yen-king, surrenders it to the Mungls, and cruelty to the Kin's wives, ii. 287. Put to death by him, ib.
- Mopsuestia, where situated, i. 403
- Mopsuestians defeated by Al Fadol, the general of Al Mansur, i. 403
- Mor, a learned Jewish rabbi, v. 513
- Mora, complaints to Philip against Parma by him, and his fate, xi. 437
- Morab Bukhik, Jehan's youngest son, his character, iii. 87. Sent viceroy into Guzerat, 88. Arms against his brother Dara, 90. Takes the city of Surat, ib. And joins his brother Aurengzeb, ib. Valour in passing the Eujin, 91. Furious defence against Rajah Ramsfeyn, 94. Over-reached by Aurengzeb, 96. And confined, 97. Sent prisoner to Gwaliya, 102. Beheaded, 106
- , the 8th son of Abufaid, his troublesome reign, and doubtful end, ii. 595
- (Beg) defeated by Sofi Ismael, ii. 602. Abandons Baghdad to him, ib.
- Pasha defeated by Abbas, ii. 611
- (Beg) the 13th, and last Shah of the White Sheep dynasty, divides dominions with Alwand, ii. 602. Ill success against Ismael, is pursued, and slain, ib.
- , the 2d son of Or khan, called Amurat by the Greeks, is sent into Europe, v. 162. Succeeds his father as third sultan, with his first conquests, 163 (Y). Gravely reproved by the Mufti, and he founds the order of Janizaries, ib. Disposes of his Asiatic dominions, and defeats the confederates against him, 164. Slain by a Christian, who lay among the dead, with his obsequies, and character, ib.
- His death and reign variously recorded by the Turks and Greeks, 165. See Amurat
- Morales (Ferdinand de) his arrival at Pegu, iii. 152. And gallant defence against the Barmas, but abandoned and slain, 253
- Morant port, in Jamaica, described, xv. 335
- Morat, his embassy to the French court questioned, vi. 164. Prevented by Maillet, ib. A further account of that expedition, 313
- Moravia, name whence, and situation, xv. 450. Government, ib.
- Mordecai Ben Eliezer, his grammatical works, v. 591 (H)
- , a learned Jew, hanged, v. 571 (M)
- , (rabbi Korkos) his treatise against the Cabbala, not suffered to be printed, v. 597
- (rabbi) of Prague his learned works, v. 605 (Z)
- (rabbi) sets up for the Messiah, ii. 610 (F) Discovery, and flight, ib.
- More's miscarriage on St. Augustine in Florida, xiv. 432
- Morea sold to the knights of Malta, vii. 405. The Spaniards make a descent there, and take a large booty, viii. 276. A wall and moat built by the Venetians in fifteen days cross the Isthmus, and a party of the Turks defeated, x. 263. War here not entered upon, till unavoidable, ib.
- Moregar mountain in West Tartary, ii. 122
- Morelcoes, archbishop of Granada stirs up a persecution against them, viii. 259. The king's officers and they remonstrate to no purpose, ib. Revolt in Granada, 261. With their excesses and cruelties after revolting, ib. A vigorous war with them, 262. Yet the king pays great regard to the suggestions of the marquis de Mondejar, for not exterminating them, ib. War carried on with various success on both sides, ib. But at length concluded, and with loss, 263. Expelled out of Valentia, 284, and other provinces in Spain, ib. Their numbers what, ib. The reasons for this measure, ib. (A). Answer of the barons to them, ib. sub not. The bad effects soon appear, 285. Their hardships, 286
- Moreton succeeds West, governor of Carolina, xv. 86. Differences with the Indians, ib. Outed, 87
- Morgan destroys Panama, xiv. 448. Account of its harbour, ib. History of that Buccaneer, xv. 281. Exploits, ib. Successful expeditions in the Spanish West Indies, ib. Vast strength, and after great difficulty takes Panama, 282. His conduct questionable, and the plunder found here, with that for his own share, ib. Settles in Jamaica, 283. His views to set up for himself, how quashed by treaties of commerce between England and Spain, ib.
- , deputy-governor of Jamaica, his vigilance against the pyrates, xv. 284. Sent home prisoner, ib.
- Morgian sect, what, and cursed by the prophet, i. 316
- Moriale (Friar) heads a body of banditti, x. 680
- Moria, an enemy to idols, put to death in Japan, iv. 53
- Morison (Colonel) deputy-governor of Virginia, his excellent administration, xv. 367
- Mornay's execution in Geneva, xii. 302
- Moro Moreno island described, v. 69
- (Christoforo) the 67th doge of Venice, succeeds Pascal Malipiero, x. 263. Death and character, 266
- castle, a breach made in it, and stormed, xv. 340. Its governor and the next in command killed, 341
- Morocco kingdom seized on by the king of Fez, vii. 136. The soil much neglected, 147. Various inhabitants, ib. Chief rivers, 148. Mountains, 149. Chief cities, 152. Government, why so tyrannical, 163 (A). Ill-treatment of Jews and Christians, 165. Poor navy whence, 166 (C). Land forces, how levied and paid, ib. (D). Wretched arsenal, and sea commerce, 167. Land commerce, ib. (E). Coins, 168. Learning, ib. Schools, and way of fighting, 169. Religion, and strange superstitions, ib. Exclude women from their mosques, 170. Other tenets, ib.
- kings, their tyrannic power, whence, vii. 164. Title of their emperors, and rapacious court, 165. Revenue, ib. Ill-treatment of the British ambassador, ib. At no charge for their shipping, and why in friendship with Algiers, 172. History of their Sharifs, 173. Their empire founded by Hascen and his three sons, 174
- , its metropolis described, vii. 152. Vast decay, ib. (G) (H). Castle and fortifications, with the origin of its golden balls, ib. (I). Royal apartments, and gardens, 153 (K). Park and other edifices, 154. Strange customs, 171. Language, ib. Laudable customs, ib. Aversion against gaming, &c. 172
- (King of) comes over with fresh forces to the aid of Alonto.



Alonso, viii. 17. Peace between it and Spain, viii. 267.  
 Treaty of the Dutch with that emperor, xi. 485  
 Moron, the traitor who lost that place seized and hung up by the heels at Venice, x. 307  
 — (Cardinal) sent legate to Augsburg, x. 94  
 Morosini (Domenico) the 37th doge of Venice, x. 196  
 Morino, 44th doge of Venice, x. 203. War with the Genoese for religion, and their defeat before Acon, with the doge's death and character, ib.  
 — (Michael) the 61st doge of Venice, his character and death, x. 227. His remonstrance against an open rupture with the emperor, 288. The Venetian senate determine to proceed in the war, and Morosini presses it, ib.  
 Morosou appointed governor to the Czarowitz, xiii. 152. Made prime minister, with his ambition, through whose means the czar marries one sister, and he himself the other, with his views, 153. Oppressions by him and his colleagues, 156. Pardoned, and he becomes a quite different man from what he had been, 159  
 Morfe, governor of Madras, his brave defence of it, iv. 361. Proposals for a surrender, 363. Accepted, ib. Protest against Dupleix's remonstrance, 364  
 Mortadi, (Al) raised to the Moslem throne, but deposed in twenty-four hours after, and strangled by his rival, i. 311  
 Mortadio'ddawla (Ebn Lulu) defeated by Saleh Ebn Mardas, and purchases his liberty at a great price, i. 617  
 Mortaza (Khan) his difficult attempt on the castle of Kangra, with his death, iii. 70  
 Mortel, a remarkable robber in Geneva, xiv. 11  
 Mortera, (Rabbi) a celebrated Jew at Amsterdam, with his character and works, v. 613  
 Morthad made chief of Mahomet's mission, i. 59. Who are all murdered at Ragji, ib.  
 Morris, (Mr.) governor of Pennsylvania, his first speech, and the assembly's answer, xv. 130. Lays the secretary of state's letter before them, ib. (D). Has no effect, but treated with contempt, ib. Messages and answers to and from the assembly of Pennsylvania, on a new letter from the secretary of state, 131. Measures for a militia, and acquaints the assembly with the arrival of French troops on the Ohio, ib. Their security and unanimous resolutions, with the strong expressions therein, 132. Representations to the Pennsylvania assembly on Braddock's arrival in America, ib. Message to them, and their farther expences, 133. Why he rejects their bill, ib. Informs them of the French invasion, ib. Sends the Pennsylvania assembly a sharp message, and their answer, ib. His further message on receiving one from Braddock, 134. Part of his speech to the assembly of Pennsylvania on Braddock's defeat, ib. His reasons for exempting the proprietary estate from taxes, 135. The assembly's answer, ib. Differences still continued, ib. Sends a message for establishing a militia, and other matters, 136. Fresh messages, and purport, ib. Requires the Pennsylvania assembly to prevent supplies of provisions to Louifburgh, ib. Fresh matters of contest, what, ib. His representations and reproaches on the Pennsylvania assembly, with the occasion, 137. His next message, and its import, 138. Messages and recriminations, ib. Their message to him also concerning the Indian trade, ib.  
 Mosa island, on the South-Sea, described, v. 12.  
 Mosabbib's speech against the Cufans treachery, i. 320  
 Mosambico kingdom described, vi. 358. When first discovered, with its vast commerce, fruitfulness, &c. ib. Scantiness of water, 359. Various products, ib. Commerce how carried on, and the inhabitants naturally barbarous, 360. Vast advantage to the Indian commerce, 361  
 — island described, with its extent, bay, &c. vi. 358  
 — city described, vi. 359. Fort, and its vast advantage to the Portuguese, ib. Fertility of the continent, ibid.  
 Mosaab, Mahomet's standard-bearer, mortally wounded, i. 57  
 Moscofo succeeds Soto in Florida, xv. 70. Progress towards the Spanish settlements, ib. After great distress resolves to return to Nilco, ib. Arrival on the continent of Mexico, 71  
 Moscow plundered by Timur Bek, ii. 537  
 — government, its division into eleven circles, and chief places, xiii. 9  
 — capital described, xiii. 10 (K). Division into four circles, with its slobodas, or vast suburbs, ib. Dreadful insurrection there, 145 & 156, in which they stop the czar at a procession to hear their complaints, ib. Ranfack and demolish Morosou's house, and those of his associates, 157. A vast fire there, and how it abates, 158. Means used for

appeasing the people, and the czar himself at a procession earnestly intercedes with them for Morosou, ib.  
 Mose (Rabbi Vecchio) a famous Jewish doctor, v. 593  
 — (of New England) described, xiv. 500. Of different colours, ib. (F)  
 Moseche, a province of Angola, described, vi. 495. Strange effects of their mines, and account of their churches, &c. ib.  
 Moseilama, one of Mahomet's rivals, i. 105. The latter's dying prophecy against him, and thirty more, 107. He and his followers defeated and killed, 134  
 — governor of Egypt, dies, i. 312  
 Mosemlecks, their account of the people to the north-west of them, xv. 161  
 Moses, an impostor in Syria, i. 366  
 — (Ben Asher) his contest about correcting the Hebrew text, v. 531 (F)  
 — (Sackcloth) whence so called, and he is chosen Jewish chief, v. 533  
 — (Ben Tibbon) a famous Jew, translates Euclid's Elements, v. 556 in fin. (U)  
 — (Leon) cheats his nation with a patched-up Zohar, v. 557  
 Moshrefo'ddawla made governor of Arabian Irak, i. 624. Defeats Soltano'ddawla's forces, and takes the title of King of Kings, 626. Peace with Soltano'ddawla, his brother, and the cause of his resentment against him, 629. His death, ib.  
 Moslem writers ape the Evangelists in the account of Mahomet's birth, i. 10. Strange opinions of the as Al Borak, 32. Believe Mahomet's corporeal ascension into heaven, 37  
 — empire, its vast extent, A.D. 792, i. 318. Divided into two factions, 423  
 — (Ebn Abdalmalek) his success against the Khazarians, i. 335. Obliges them to turn Mahometans, ib.  
 — (General) reduces Amasia, &c. i. 345  
 — (General) the brother of Al Walid, his success against the Greeks in Pisidia, i. 346. In Galatia, 350  
 — (Ebn) Wazir of of Baghdad, his cruel treatment and death, ii. 159  
 —, the cousin of Hosein, sent to treat with the Cufans, i. 301. His success, ib. Betrayed and beheaded, 303  
 — (Ebn Aufajah) slain at the battle of Kerbela, i. 306  
 Moslema's deceitful speech to the Alexandrian governor, i. 236  
 — (or Masalma:) marches against Constantinople, i. 352. Invests it, with his ill-success and distress, and forced to raise the siege, 353. Defeats the rebel Yezid, and his success against the other revoltors, 359. Made governor of Irak, &c. with his success against Ebn Haf, 360. And in Cappadocia, 363. Against the Huns in Armenia, ib. Success against the Khakan, 366. Against Catamana, and his death, 369  
 Moslems, their devotions at the Caaba, i. 103. Pilgrimages to Mecca, 104. Strict observers of Mahomet's last commands, 106. Privileges challenged by them, 121. Obligation to visit Mahomet's tomb, 128. Divided about the choice of a caliph, 132. Refuse to pay the alms-tribute, 133. Strange notion of fools and madmen, 439  
 —, in Sicily, defeated by Maniaces, i. 640. Recover some of his conquests, but defeated before Messina, 646. Take it, and by whom driven out of Sicily, ib. Not tolerated in Abyssinia, 671  
 — (or Mussulmen) Mahometans in the Philippine islands, numerous, iv. 204. Superstitious, and barbarous, ib. sub (F)  
 — (of Egypt) their zeal for the pilgrimage to Mecca, vi. 28 (U)  
 Mosques built by Mohammed's followers, i. 88. The first of them by Soltan Or Khan, v. 162 & notes  
 Mostadher succeeds his father khalif Al Mokrad, and inaugurated, i. 680. Invests Soltan Barkiarok, ib. Frighted at the prediction of a deluge, 681. Installs Mohammed Gayathoddin at Baghdad, 689. His death and character, 693  
 Mostagan, a city of Algiers, vii. 230. Its strong situation, ibid.  
 Mostaifi (Al) succeeds the deposed Mottaki in the caliphate, i. 545. Deposed, and put in irons, and dies, 546  
 Mostain (Al) succeeds Montaser in the caliphate, but rebelled against in several provinces, i. 481. Displeases his haughty Turks, 482. Forced to flee to Baghdad, and besieged in it by Motaaz, his brother, 483. Abdicates the caliphate, with his imprisonment and death variously reported, ib.  
 Mostalec tribe, whence descended, and defeated by Mahomet, i. 65



- Mohabek tribe falsely accused to Mahomet, but cleared by Ennech, i. 91
- Mohall (Al Bittah) raised to the Egyptian caliphate, i. 679. Acknowledged by the grandees, ib. Raised to the caliphate of Egypt, and clemency to his rival brother, with the punishment for his second revolt, vi. 49. Success against the Franks, and death, ib.
- (Al) his death, and successor, i. 685.
- Mohamfer (Billah) caliph of Egypt, forbid to be prayed for, i. 647. Sends Amulhtekin to seize on Aleppo, who conquers it and Syria, 648. Assists Basafiri at Baghdad, 653. Proclaimed caliph of Baghdad, 654. Prayed for at Baghdad, 656. Loses Aleppo, 657. Defeated by Mahmud, ib. Egypt afflicted in his reign with a dreadful famine, 660. His generosity to the people, and besieged by the rebels in his palace, 661. His death and character, 678. Pretended embassy to the Abyssinian emperor, 679 (N)
- (Billah) the fifth caliph of Egypt, his success in Syria, vi. 47. Causes himself to be proclaimed and prayed for at Baghdad, ib. Generosity to his afflicted subjects, 48. Troubled with new invasions, and revolts, ib. Embassy to the Abyssinian emperor, ib. (M). His death, 49
- Mostapha (Pasha) defeated by the Persians, ii. 607
- Mostafied (caliph) of Baghdad, defeats the Atabek Zenhi, i. 700. ib. 187. Makes peace with him, ib. Defeated and taken prisoner by Massud, and murdered by the Bataniis, ib. Excludes Massud from being prayed for, and quarrels with Atabek Zenghi, i. 701. Concludes a peace with him, ib. Assassinated by Massud's orders, with his monument, and the ill treatment of his body, 702
- (Billah) succeeds to the caliphate, and generous treatment of his rebelling brother, i. 693
- Mostafem (Caliph) disoblige Hulaku, ii. 471. Besieged by him in his capital, ib. Sends presents to him, is taken and put to death, 473. His vile character, ib.
- Mosul (Mawfel) where situated, i. 384. Overflowed by the Tigris, 396
- Motaded (Al) succeeds his father Mowaffek, and proclaimed caliph, with his peaceful beginning, and why a friend to the house of Ali, i. 498. Demands Khamarawiyah's daughter in marriage, with his success against the revolted Hamdan, 499. Scared a while by a pretended phantom, 500. Dissuaded from shewing favour to Ali's family, and infested afresh by the Karmatians, 501. Preparations against them, and defeated with great slaughter, ib. Suspends the war against them, and his dialogue with an insolent Karmatian, 502. Causes him to be slain, declares his successor, and dies, ib. His character, and friendship to the house of Ali, with his extreme severity, 503. Generosity, lenity, &c. 504. And he encourages learned men, 505
- Motamed (Al) proclaimed caliph by the murderers of Mohadi, i. 489. Noble enterprise against the Turkish soldiery, but over-run, and defeated by the Zenjians, 490. Ill-success against them, ib. 492. His forces defeated often, ib. Drives those rovers quite away, ib. Invaded by the Egyptian Emir, 494. Indolence and effeminacy, ib. Disturbed by the Karmatians, 496. Death and character, 497. Remarkable events during his caliphate, 498
- Motafem (Al) the brother of caliph Mamun, his success in the Imperial territories, i. 454. In Egypt, ib. Succeeds him in the caliphate, 456. Proclaimed caliph, 459. Success against the rebel Babec, ib. Revives the creation of the Alcoran, and persecutes the opposers of that notion, 460. Fresh successes against Babec, ib. Dreadful irruption into the Greek empire, 461. Revenge against the emperor Theophilus, ib. Against Amorium, 462. He discovers a conspiracy, and the cruel sentence passed on his nephew, ib. Against his general Afshin, 463. His death and character, ib. Extreme grief for the loss of his physician, 464
- Motawakkel (Al) destroys Hosein's tomb and mosque, with his punishment for it, i. 309
- Motazalite sect what, and wherein different from the Kadurian, i. 315. Abandon caliph Abdallah, and put themselves under his protection again, 320. They flee from him, and dispersed by Obeid'allah, 321. Inform Al Mohaleb of Musab's death, and a strange contest arises between him and them, 331
- , a sect which opposed caliph Ali, i. 260. They believe the Alcoran to have been created, 463. Persecution for maintaining the contrary by caliph Mamun, 456. By Motafem, 460. By his son Al Wathek, 465. A famous dispute between them and their opponents, 542
- Moteraffi, the Karmatian chief, defeated and slain by Saifo'd-dawla, i. 548
- Motetzuma sends a rich present to Cortez, but declines an interview, xiv. 184. His court in great consternation, 185. Sends another present, ib. Several prodigies at this time, ib. (D). Sends another present, ib. Parentage and character, 186. Detested by his people, and odd reason for not conquering some provinces, ib. Answer to Cortez for quitting Mexico, 187. Sends a magnificent embassy by his two nephews to Cortez, with presents, 192. Its purport, and the answer, 193. Ambassadors sent from him to Cortez, 202. Delays answering, and why, ib. Splendid embassy to Cortez, and their declaration, with two previous conditions, 203. Answer why deferred, ib. New embassy to Cortez, and its purport, 205. Cruel devotion on repeated disappointments, 208. Has recourse to the magicians, who set out against the Spaniards in vain, 209. His exclamation on their return, ib. Sends another splendid embassy, ib. Procession to receive Cortez into Mexico, and his person and dress described, 211. Presents interchanged, &c. ib. Visit and speech to Cortez, 212. Palace in Mexico described, 213. His power and grandeur, ib. Familiar accosting of Cortez, and what passed in the conversation, ib. Shews his temples to the Spaniards, ib. Cortez's zeal here for the cross, and the emperor's answer, 214. Pleasure-houses in Mexico, 215. Collection of birds and wild beasts, &c. 216. Human monsters, ib. Arsenal, ib. House of Sorrow, ib. The grandeur of his private economy, ib. His guards, women, &c. ib. Solemnity at audiences, the profusion, &c. of his table, 217. His revenues inexhaustible, ib. Civil and military government, also care for the education of children, 218. Extreme kindness to the Spaniards, ib. Intelligence from Vera Cruz changes the face of affairs, ib. Reconciled to his confinement in the Spanish quarters, 221. Is clapt in fetters, 222. Again reconciled to his situation, and he conceives a strict friendship for Cortez, 223. His noble behaviour all the time, ib. Prohibits human sacrifices, and goes to the great temple, ib. Why he alters his behaviour to the Spaniards, 226. Proposes acknowledging his vassalage to the king of Spain, and his art herein, 227. Soothing speech to his nobles on the occasion, ib. Effect on the audience, and a public instrument drawn up for this purpose, 228. Delivers presents to Cortez, and orders him to depart, with his speech at the same time, ib. Cortez's reply, ib. Extremely attached to Cortez, and sends presents to Narvaez, 232. Proposals to Cortez, for evacuating Mexico, 240. Accepted by Cortez, 241. Shews himself to the Mexicans, and the effect upon them, ib. Speech to them, ib. In their fury he is wounded by a stone, refuses assistance, and dies of grief, ib. His character, 242. Effect of this event on Cortez, and the Spaniards, ib. Sends the royal corpse into the city, and a message for peace with it, ib. Effects of seeing it upon the people, differently told, ib. Three sons slain in Cortez's retreat, 245
- (5th king of Mexico) introduces human sacrifices, xiv. 364. Disinterestedness of his brother, and heroic death, with the reduction of the Chalci, ib. Extraordinary regulations, ib. Death and character, ib.
- II. 9th king of Mexico, xiv. 365
- Mothanna (Al) succeeds Obeid in Irak, and kills the Persian general in single combat, after which he defeats the Persians, i. 183. He also defeats and kills general Rustam, ib.
- Moti (Al) raised to the caliphate, but treated as a mere cypher, i. 547. And by his Emir Omras, 561. Yet prayed for as caliph, 565. Sad complaint to his Emir Omra, 566. Reduced to extreme want, and ceases to be prayed for, and a schism begins in Egypt on his account, ib. (H). Seized with a palsy, 568. Abdicates the caliphate in favour of his son, with his death and character, ib.
- (emperor of China) his short success against the revolted princes, iii. 707
- (the son of Tay-tsu) takes up arms against his parricide brother, whom he defeats and kills, iii. 716
- Motir island described, and taken by the Dutch, iv. 157
- Mo-tsung (emperor of China) his short and troublesome reign, iii. 714
- (of the 20th dynasty) resigns the crown to his son, and dies, iii. 728
- Mottaki (Al) succeeds Al Radi in the caliphate, i. 539. Success against Mahcan, ib. Cowardly compliance with Baridi's demands, 540. Forced to abandon Baghdad, 541. Returns to it in triumph, 542. Invaded by the Greeks, and high presents to their emperor, 543. Forced out of Baghdad



- dad africa, 544. Deposed by Tuzun on his return, *ib.*  
 His character and successor, 545  
 Mottergate, in the cape of Good Hope, its fertile soil, vi. 401.  
 Mo-vang (emperor of China) drives the Tartars out of it, iii. 690. His character, *ib.* (Q)  
 Moucheron (Balthazar) sends in search of the North-passage, iv. 409  
 Movilin (Rabbi Jacob) a learned Jewish doctor, v. 601 (L).  
 Mouler, the capital of Baglana in Decan, iii. 138  
 Moulin Baude, in the river St. Laurence, described, xiv. 551  
 Moulins (Roger des) the 7th grand master of the Maltese order, slain in the war against the Saracens, vii. 384  
 —, famous ordinance for the re-establishment of justice, by whom penned, ix. 258. The reconciliation between both parties, *ib.*  
 Mountagu, Guérinde, (See Montague) the 13th grand master of Maltha, vii. 386. Admits the king of Hungary into the order, *ib.*  
 Mouzon taken by count Henry, of Nassau, general to Charles V. but is retaken by Francis, who burns Baupaume, and reduces other places, xi. 136  
 Mowaffek's great influence on his brother Al Motamed, i. 489. Defeated by the Zenjians, 490. Defeats the rebel Ebn Al Leit, 491. Totally defeats the Zenjians, and builds a new fortress against them, 493. Defeated by Khamaara Wiyah, 494. Imprisons his own son, 495. Dies, 496. His character, *ib.*—497  
 Mowaffekia built by the successful Mowaffek, which soon becomes considerable, i. 493  
 Mowajad, his share of the government under his father's caliphate, i. 469. Excluded from the succession by his elder brother, 479. Forced to renounce it, and sent into prison, 481. Released by Motazz, but suspected, and put to death by him, 484  
 Mowayyad, the Fatemite caliph of Spain, deposed by the Ommiyahn party, i. 611. Restored by the Cordubanes, and his caliphate disturbed by broils, *ib.* Is dethroned by Soliman, and no more heard of, *ib.* Roderic's different account of the rebellion, 612  
 —, the wazir of Barkiarok, deposed, i. 677. Induces Anfar to rebel against him, 684. Called Mowiad, ii. 175  
 — the son of Nodham made vizier to Barkiarok, i. 617. ii. 174. Deposed, and rebels against him, ii. 175. Assists his rebellious brother, *ib.* Sent ambassador to Baghdad, and defeats Barkiarok, *ib.* Defeated, and taken by him, but forgiven, and made his vizier, and soon after beheads him, 176  
 Mowayyaddowla's success against Kabus, i. 582  
 Mowiyado'ddin betrays Baghdad to Hulaku, ii. 473  
 Moyne (Father le) takes up his residence among the Onnontagueuse, but in danger on his return to Quebec, xiv. 592. And his view in overlooking the maltreatment he met with, *ib.* His character, *ib.* Conducted by the Agniers to Montreal, 597. After which, joining the other Iroquois, they commit open hostilities on the Algonquins, *ib.* Offers himself a fourth time, as missionary to the Onnontagueuse, 599. Conducts a negociation with the Onnontagueuse, &c. in their own solemn manner, 600  
 Mozambic, its site, division, &c. iv. 135. When first brought under the Portuguese, 136. Rich trade and government, *ib.*  
 — company established there, iv. 172  
 Mozaffer (Khan) his revolt in Guzurat, with his defeat, and death, iii. 60  
 Mozarabes, who, and whence so named, i. 352  
 Mozarabian, the doubtful import of that word, vii. 582 (O).  
 Moor, governor of Carolina, his character, xv. 87. Expedition against St. Augustine, 88. Success, and takes the town, but quits the siege of the castle precipitately, *ib.* Dissentions thereon, 89. Forms the colony of Georgia, *ib.* Success against the Spanish Apalachians, *ib.* Complaints of the colony against him disregarded, *ib.* Carolina bill passed there against conformity to the church of England, and the commissioners therein, with the consequences, 90. Address of the house of Lords thereon to the queen, in favour of the Carolinans, *ib.* Her majesty's answer, *ib.* On the board of trade's representation their character forfeited, *ib.* Irregular proceedings of their assembly, and their speaker's speech, 91. Remarkable preamble of an act, *ib.*  
 —, governor of Bermudas, his indefatigable character, xv. 275. Plague of rats in his time, *ib.*  
 — (Commodore) examination of his conduct, with regard to Guadalupe, xv. 203  
 Moors propagate their trade and religion together, iv. 101. White in Loango, whence their colour, and why at war with the black, and hated by those, vi. 546 (I). Chief place, priests, and king's council, 547  
 Moors of Barbary described, vii. 123. Their wretched slavery and patience, 124 (B).  
 —, in Morocco, vii. 147  
 —, distinguished from the Arabs of Africa, v. 668  
 —, of Algiers, described, vii. 205. Their extreme poverty, &c. 206. Fertility of their women, 207. Horsemanship, *ib.* Different from the Berebers, *ib.* Sad degeneracy, 219 (E).  
 —, invasion of Spain, vii. 578. Vast success there, 580. Invite Musa to their assistance, 581. Their plan for the conquest of Spain, *ib.* (N). When and how executed, 582. Their conquest of Portugal, *ib.* (O). Lay siege to Merida, 583 (P). Defeated by king Pelayo, 592. And a second time also, *ib.* Defeated several times by Alonso II. 598. Invade him sundry times without success, 599. Defeat king Bermudo II. 619. Ravage his kingdom, *ib.* (N). Lose the battle of Osma, 620. Power diminished through civil dissensions in Cordova, 641. Make an irruption into Toledo, but obliged to retire, 666. Attempt Toledo several times without success, 667. By a well executed enterprise take the fortrefs of Mola, through the indolence of Mula Alonso, the governor, 677  
 —, in Spain, the civil wars, and great revolutions among them, vii. 679. Beaten with great slaughter, with the loss of their two generals, 685. Invade Santarem in Portugal, but defeated and driven out by its monarch, and assisted by the king of Leon, 690. Over-run the kingdom of Toledo, but at length retire into their own territories, 698. Hence a peace concluded between Castile and Leon, *ib.* And a treaty of marriage between Eleanor, and the latter prince, *ib.* The former concludes a peace with the Miramamolin of Africa, *ib.* Power broken into several petty principalities, 709. The errors of Christians operating in their favour, 710. After a truce with Philip, are obliged to raise the siege of Lorca, viii. 36. A large detachment falling on the rear of the Christians are all cut off, 44  
 —, of Granada, invade Jaen, but are twice worsted, viii. 75. Continue their incursions, 88. Driven to great distress, 94. Make an irruption into Castile, 104. Their conversion in Spain, by the prelates of Toledo and Granada, with the different methods used by them, 215. The people in general converted, *ib.* But insincere from a subsequent insurrection, and forced to submit, *ib.*  
 — their remarkable defeat at Poitiers, by Charles Martel and Eudes, viii. 549. Their power broken, *ib.* Entering Navarre totally defeat the Christians, but cut off in their return from the irruption they made into France, 554  
 — fresh body of them arriving from Africa, ravage Benevento, x. 389  
 Moorish conquests, dangerous revolt there, and the people permitted to withdraw to Barbary, on a composition, viii. 216  
 Mishlaw, account of, xii. 624  
 Mubarek (Shah) the third Khan of Bukharia, ii. 465  
 Mud-bay in Cochin, iii. 166  
 Muslie's extravagance supplied by Oktug, ii. 349  
 Mugden, or Shin-Yang (which see) iii. 459  
 Muhadded, the Pehlavan, treacherously slain by Yakia, ii. 529  
 Muhuli, one of Temujin's four intrepids, ii. 272. Defeats with his companions, the revolted Tartars, *ib.* Is made one of his generals, and prime ministers, 279. And his generalissimo, &c. 289. Success in Pecheli, 283. Success and cruelties in Lyautong, 286. In Kin, 287. Defeats the revolted Chang-chi, 288. Success against the kings of Hya and Kin, 325. Recovers part of Shan-si, *ib.* Defeats the Kin army, 326. Success in Shan-si, &c. with his death and character, *ib.*  
 Mukhans ravage the Mogul's dominions, and cut in pieces by Ibrahim Khan, iii. 70  
 Mu-ko, or Moko, commands the Mungl army against Shen-si, ii. 358. Success with it, *ib.* Defeated before Ho-chew, and raises the siege, 360  
 Mulana Amadoddin pays homage to Timur Bek, ii. 527  
 — Kothbo'ddin's punishment by him for extortion, ii. 569  
 — Kuhestani, a famous poet and musician, why hanged by Timur Bek, ii. 551  
 Mu-lay kingdom, where sited, ii. 335 (I).  
 —, its king pays homage to Oktay, *ib.*  
 Muley Ishmael, of Morocco, uses stratagems to bring his son Sidan to court, and allures his wives to murder him, vii. 194. His



194. His cruel revenge on them, *ib.* (U). Alters the succession, with his death and character, *ib.* (V). Succeeded by — Hammed Deby, 195. See Deby.
- Muley Hali raised to the throne by the negroes, vii. 202
- Sidi, his party revived by them, vii. 203. Defeated by Abdallah, *ib.*
- Abu Camen succeeds Zechariah in Tunis, vii. 319.
- Mahmed succeeds Camen in Tunis, *ib.*
- Mohammed, the sharif of Morocco, vii. 186. See Abdel Melech.
- Hammed succeeds him, and his vast conquests, character, and death, vii. 186 (L).
- Elwaly quells the revolvers, vii. 187
- Hammed Cheyk murdered by the Arabs, vi. 188
- Ishmael removes his capital to Mequinez, vii. 188. (O). His cruel character, and barbarities to his Moors, 189 (P). To his wife and children, *ib.* Defeated by the Algerines, 191. Horrid sentence against the noble Melech, *ib.* (F). And against his son Mohammed, 192. Jealousy of his son Sidan, 193
- Mohammed, the favourite son of Ishmael, envied by the Soltana, vii. 189. Breach with his brother Maimon, 190 (R). Refuses the government of Taphilet, *ib.* Sent to that of Suz, *ib.* Undermined by the Sultana, *ib.* Revolts against his father, 191. Defeated by Sidan, *ib.* Besieged in Tarudant, 192. Seized and made prisoner, with his dreadful punishment, *ib.* And his death, and last words, 193 (T).
- Sharif, king of Taphilet, defeated and imprisoned, vii.
- Archy, his drunken reign and fate, vii. 188
- Abul Abdali, assisted by the Christians, gains possession of Granada from his uncle, viii. 208. Permitted to retire to Barbary, 213
- Mulhausen, diet there and the emperor's views what, with the proceedings about the Elector Palatine, xi. 217.
- its alliance with the Swiss Cantons, xv. 448
- Multan, what and by whom governed, ii. 294. Taken by the Mongls, 320. By Timur Bek, 544
- , a province of Indostan described, with its produce, and capital city, iii. 14
- Mullooyah river, in Morocco, described, vii. 148
- Munas, or Munes, the caliph's general defeated in Egypt, i. 514. Success against the rebel Hosein, and complete victory over the Megrebian, 515. Grows suspicious of Moktader, 521. Deposes and plunders him, *ib.* Retirement and revolt, 523. Victory and success, 524. Opposes Al Kaher's election, 526. Revolts against him, and put to death, 527
- Munay island, famous for its temples and idols, iii. 228
- Mung Timur, his ill success in Syria, and poisoned in his return, ii. 480
- Mungls, Monguls (which see) or Mungals, where seated, ii. 243. Protected by the Chinese, and how divided, 244. Names, customs, and language, and whence confounded with the Tartars, 253. Three principal branches of them, and whence nicknamed Kalmuts, *ib.* A general description of them, *ib.* Their manners, genius, and dress, 254. Arms, diet, and drink, 255. Traffic, marriages, burials, and other customs, 256. Ancient sepulchres, *ib.* Moveable and fixed habitations, 257. Columns, and other antiquities, 258. Old writings, and books of devotion found among them, *ib.* Learning, cycle of twelve years, *ib.* Religion, 259. Government, 261. Submit to the Manchews, *ib.* History, and rapid conquests since Jenghiz Khan, 264. They acknowledge Temujin, great khan, 279
- Munich (Marshal Count) to what part of Siberia banished, xiii. 46
- (Count) appointed field-marshal of Russia, xiii. 266
- , capital of Bavaria. account of, xv. 467
- Munik, his revolt and death in Spain, i. 366
- Munimen Fidei, a virulent antichristian-book, when, and by whom written, v. 604 (T).
- Munster (Thomas) put to death, xi. 139
- , an irruption of that bishop into Overysfel, and barbarity at Berkelo, xi. 601. Lays siege to Groningen, with the princess of Frielland's resolution, which saves that place, *ib.*
- , plenipotentiaries continue treating there, and at Osnabrug, ix. 421. Affairs there take a new turn, 423. The Imperialists forced to conclude that treaty, chiefly through Turenne's successes, *ib.* The nature and consequences of this peace with regard to France, and character of the French plenipotentiaries d' Avaux and Servien, 425. Advantages acquired to France by that and the treaty of Osnabrug, *ib.* Vast accessions of power and territory, with the influence created by this treaty, *ib.* Occasionally sacrificed by the French monarch, and the spirit of the treaty revived, 426
- Munster and Osnabrug, plenipotentiaries appointed for the negotiation there, xii. 258. Congress there, with the situation of the several powers concerned, 266. The ceremonial, with regard to titles, adjusted in the congress, *ib.* (B). The princes and towns permitted to send deputies, *ibid.* The preliminaries of the peace negotiating there, 171. Negotiations opened there, with the embarrassment of the states-general, and occasion, 546. Congresses there, and at Osnabrug, xii. 352. See Osnabrug.
- , a particular congress meets at Nuremberg, to direct the execution of the treaty, xii. 353
- Munter (George) throws himself on the king's clemency, with the consequences, xii. 153
- Mura-kami, the 62d emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Il. Go, reigns, but has no rank in the list, iv. 59
- Murcia absolutely conquered by the king of Arragon, viii. 10. Re-peopled by Christians from different parts, *ib.* After several places taken there, the rest make a vigorous resistance, viii. 209
- Muresk, chief of the Amogavares, defeated by Philip, v. 151
- Murmulan castle, seized by the revolted Peguers, is besieged by the king, but succoured by the Siamese, i. 268
- Murher, its punishment, according to the Alcoran, i. 178. And robbery punished with crucifixion by it, *ib.*
- Murthere's-bay, described, and whence so called, v. 17
- Murray (Brigadier) after some unsuccessful attempts lands at du Chambaud, and his important services there, xiv. 719. Also with the Highlanders in the battle of Quebec, 721. Made governor of Quebec, and his indefatigable efforts to secure it, 723. Resolves to fight the French, and though defeated at Sylleri, makes a gallant retreat to Quebec, 724. Takes Levi's baggage, artillery, &c. before Quebec, 725. His progress in securing the Canadians, *ibid.*
- Mus Takin revolts against Solan Masud, and squanders his treasure among his soldiers, and proclaims his deposed brother sultan, i. 645
- Musa, or Mussa, the Arab, joins Tarik in Spain, with his dreadful ravages there, i. 345. Is recalled by the caliph, *ib.* Returns to Tarik in Spain, 351. Recalled by Soliman, 352. Accused and fined for high crimes, 354
- (Ebn Caab) made governor of Egypt, but deposed, i. 391
- (Ebn Mosaab) persecutes the Jacobite christians, i. 405
- (Ebn Ali) made governor of Egypt, i. 404
- (Khan) of Irak, his descent and victory over Arpa Khan, ii. 492. Proclaimed khan at Baghdad, but defeated by Sultan Mohammed, and slain by Sneykh Haffin, ii. 492
- Amir's shameful defeat before Karshi, ii. 504. Defeated afresh, 505. Causes a revolt against Timur, 508. Forgiven and raised by him, revolts afresh, and is pardoned, *ib.*
- , prince of the Kerkes, punished for his oppression in Irak, ii. 543
- Bayezid's son taken prisoner, and how treated by Timur, ii. 563
- (Ebn Mafaab) sent governor of Egypt, but assassinated there, i. 411
- (Al Hadi) born to caliph Mohdi, i. 413. Succeeds him in the caliphate, 415. See Al Hadi.
- (Ebn Isa) made governor of Egypt, i. 418
- (Ebn Jaasar) put to death by Al Rashid, with his numerous issue, i. 423
- , the son of Mamun, declared Al Amin's successor, i. 159
- Musab, Abdallah's brother, defeated by Merwan's forces, i. 319. Sent against him with fresh forces, 326. Sent governor of Basra, 327. Defeats and kills Al Mokhtar, *ibid.* Reduces all Irak to Abdallah, 328. Distributes his vast spoils among the Meccan poor, 329. Violent reproaches against the Basrans, 330. Deserted by the Persians at the battle of Masken, with his bravery and death, *ib.*
- Musaphia (Rabbi Benjamin) a learned Jewish doctor at Amsterdam, v. 613 *sub. not.*
- Muscat, or Mascat, where situate, and taken and improved by the Portuguese, iv. 140. Forced out of it by the natives, *ib.* Its present government, extent, produce, &c. *ib.* Its religion, a reformed Mahometanism, 141
- Muscovite, exclusive privileges to the merchants in London, xiii. 109
- Muscovy (Duke of) invades Lithuania, and besieging Smolensko, is forced to quit it, xii. 484

Musellum,



Museliem, a new sort of Othman soldiery, v. 155  
 Music, extraordinary instance of its power, xi. 703  
 Musik sent to rebuild Karazm, ii. 521  
 — (Libn Boga) marches against Al Mohtadi, slays his vizier, and raises the Turks against him, i. 488. His ill-success against the Zenjians and Ebn Wafel, 491. His death encourages the Zenjians ravages, 492  
 Musketeers, when first seen at Naples, x. 483 (U).  
 Musk-rat, of Canada, described, xiv. 556  
 Musol taken and plundered by the Gazan Turks, ii. 157. Who invites Kiliç Arslan to their assistance, 210  
 Musquito Indians, account of them, xv. 302. Under the protection of England, and enemies to the Spaniards and their Indians, ib. Their services against the mountain negroes in Jamaica, 303. Their success against a Spanish settlement at Carpenter's river, 315  
 Mustapha commands the Turks at the siege of Maltha, vii. 478. Besieges the castle of St. Elmo, 479. Frequent repulses and loils, 483. Takes it by assault, 484. His inhumanity to the Christians retaliated by the grand master, 485. His dreadful project discovered by Lascaris, ibid. Besieges the castle of St. Michael, 486. Defeated at every attack, 487. Forced to raise the siege, 488. Returns to Maltha, and defeated by the Sicilian fleet, is forced to sail homeward, 492. Summons Nicosia to surrender, but defeated in an assault, who storms the city, but again repulsed, x. 359. Stormed a third time, and after the loils of the whole garrison taken, ib. Brutality of the Turks under him, and sad catastrophe of the inhabitants, ib. His barbarity to Bragadino, the officers and soldiers, 366  
 — Ild after his defeat by P. Eugene and expulsion from the Morea, and unable to defend Asoph, he concludes a peace, xii. 197  
 Mussaza succeeds her husband in the command of the Gasgas, v. 562. Supplanted by her martial daughter, ib.  
 Muta battle, i. 78. Variously reported by the Arabs and Moslems, 79. When fought, ib.  
 Muza stirs up the Moors to invade Spain, vii. 575. Promotes a second descent, 578. Invited over into Spain, 581. His great success in that kingdom, 582. Besieges Merida, 583. Reduces the inland provinces, ib. Obligated to quit Spain, and succeeded by his son Abdaklaziz, 584  
 Muzaffer Kashi submits to Timur Bek, ii. 519  
 Muzafferian princes put to death by Timur Bek, ii. 528 (U).  
 Myau-tse, a people, who, and where seated, ii. 395. Reduced by Timur, 397  
 Myen, at Pegu, invaded by Siantar, ii. 385. A revolt quelled by Timur, 397  
 Myro, king of the Suevi, makes alliance with Leovigilde, king of the Visigoths, and subdues the Rucons, vii. 545 (F). His ambassadors imprisoned by the king of the Franks, 546. His death, ib.  
 Myrr-weis, his insolent answer to the czar's ambassador, xiii. 254. Applies to the Porte for assistance, 255. See Mir-weis.  
 Mysia Pergamus reduced by Moslema, i. 351

N.

**N** A B E L, a city of Tunis, described, vii. 302. Its flourishing state, ib.  
 Nabolos, or Naplosa, reduced by the Moslems, i. 230  
 Nabunanga (Nobunanga) iv. 61  
 Nacer (Muley) his treachery to Mohamed, and defeated, vii. 179. Fatal jealousy of his brother, 183. Put to flight by the Sharif, ib. Taken by a corsair, ib.  
 Nachmanides, a learned rabbi of Sorz, v. 505 (O). Why persecuted by Sapor, ib. (P.) and (Q).  
 — (Moses) a famous cabalist, retires into Judea, and an account of his writings and character, v. 553 (M).  
 Nachmiah (Rabbi) a learned Jew, his works, v. 597  
 Nadaſti is found to be one of the Hungarian conspirators, who with Serini, Frangipani, and Tattenbach, are condemned and executed, xi. 287  
 Nadham (Al Mole) wazier to Alp Arslan, the writer of a history, and his strange success against the revolted Fadluyah, i. 659  
 — (Nezam Al Molk) Alp Arslan's excellent vizier, ii. 163. Reduces the rebel Fadhlovieh, 164. Artifice to quell the mutinous soldiers, 168. Settles an assignment on the revenues of Antioch, for the watermen who ferried Malek Shah's troops, 170. His disgrace whence, ib. Is assassinated, with his character, honours, liberality, and extraction, 171

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Nadhif, a strange physician of Adado'dawla, i. 534. sub not.  
 Nadjah, the Arab, in arms against caliph Yezid, i. 312  
 Nadir (Al) the Jews of that tribe, driven out of the province of Medina by Mohammed, i. 59  
 — (Shah) invited into Indostan, iii. 124. His conquests and success in that empire, ib. Defeats the Mogul's prodigious army, 125. Kind reception of the Nizam Muluk, 126. Grand reception of Mohammed Shah, and severe reprimand, ib. Seizes on their arms, ordnance, &c. with his march to Dehli, 127. Encourages the massacre of the Dehlians, 128. Puts a stop to it, 129. Marries his son to a grand-daughter of Aurengzeb, and vast presents to her, ib. Advice to Mohammed Shah, at his departure, 130. Threats to his Omras, and he begins his march homeward, 131. The treasure carried off by him, and the provinces given up to him, ib. and not.  
 Nadir Shah (see Kuli Khan) ii. 675  
 Nagrakut (Hima) mountains in India described, iii. 2  
 Nahardea the Jewish academy there abolished, v. 538  
 Nahawend taken by the Mongls, ii. 310  
 Na-ho-jun slain by the Mongls, ii. 339  
 Naja outwitted by Nicephorus, i. 557. Succeeds Abul Werd in Armenia, ib. Defeats Abul Werd, 559. Is taken and beheaded, 560  
 Najashi, king of Ethiopia, his kindness to Mahomet's exiled friends, i. 25. When their flight happened, 27. And to the Moslems after the battle of Bedr, 51. Treatment of the Koreish ambassadors, 53. Invited to embrace Islamism, 70. His death revealed to Mohammed, 96  
 — (of Abyssinia) his request to Gabriel their patriarch for more bishops in his empire, and why rejected, i. 707  
 Najd, a messenger sent thither from Mohammed's missionaries murdered, i. 59  
 Najem (Al) chief of the Karmatians, defeated and taken, with his severe death, i. 508  
 Nails (long) a mark of distinction in Tong-king, iii. 437. In China, 605 (M).  
 Naillac (Philibert de) the 32d grand master of Rhodes, vii. 405. Enters into the league, is defeated, and flees to Rhodes, ib. Purchases the Morea from Paleologus, sends to take possession of Corinth, but is refused entrance, 406. Makes a fresh agreement with the Moreans, ib. Builds the castle of St. Peter, and sails to Cyprus, 407. Mediates a peace between the Cypriots and Genoese, with his vain attempt on Tripoli, and other places of Syria, ib. Returns to Rhodes, 408. Makes an advantageous peace with the Turks, and his project for making a league between the Christian princes, ib. Embassy to France and England, with his death, 409  
 Najmo'ddin's desperate valour at Karazm, ii. 307  
 Najran Christians tributary to Mohammed, i. 98 (M).  
 Nakhaites send a grand embassy to Mohammed, i. 104  
 Nakhjuan abandoned to Abbas Shah, ii. 610  
 Nakhshivan taken by the Mongls, ii. 319  
 Namaquan, a tribe of Hottentots, described, vi. 385. Extensive commerce, ib.  
 Namo, a famous Bonza among the Mongls, ii. 353. Raised by Mengo, 356  
 Namur besieged and taken by Luxemburg, Vauban and Coehorn assisting on the opposite sides, ix. 472. Taken by king William, and his exclamation on the intrepidity of the English, 475. xi. 646  
 Nan-chang-fu taken by the rebels, ii. 427  
 Nanfan, deputy-governor of New York, by orders from England, refuses admittance to the Scottish ships from Darien, xiv. 541  
 Nang-shang-fu, the capital of Kyangsi, iii. 531  
 Nanguazak, a sea-port of Japan, with the Dutch trade there, iv. 23 (B). How carried on, 25 (C). Harbour, bay, and city described, 40. Public buildings, 41. Prison, ib. (M). Adjacent country, ib.  
 Nankeng, emperor of China, iii. 686  
 Nan-king, or Kyan-ning fu, taken by the Mongls, ii. 373  
 —, the capital of Kyang-nan described, iii. 528. Palace and other structures destroyed, ib. Vast number of vessels and inhabitants, 529. Pleasant territory and prospects, with its learned men, ib. Taken by the Tartars, 721  
 Nan-ngan, a chief city in Kyangsi, iii. 532  
 Nan-kyen's brave defence of Pin-jam, iii. 754  
 Nanmuhan made governor of Al-malig, ii. 374  
 Nantes, king's remonstrance there to the duke of Bouillon, and the parliament of Paris, with regard to that edict, ix. 315, sub not. Famous edict secures all the reformed could expect, with an account of it, and the reasons for it, 316 (C). Verified by parliament, 318



Nantes, by cardinal Ossat's means pope Clement VIII. is reconciled to Henry's passing that edict, x. 128. Confirmed, ix. 343

Naod called from his prison the rock Guexem, to the Abyssinian crown, vi. 253

Naem, a Jewish castle, taken by Mahommed, i. 71

Naples, expedition against it by the king of France, though Ferdinand dissuades him, viii. 213. The best part of it taken by the French, but expelled by Gonçales de Cordova, 214. The establishing the inquisition there causes a long sedition, 245. Through an accident saved from being over-run by the Turks, 249. An insurrection there, 352, 361. Truce between the king of Hungary and that queen, the latter being acquitted by the consistory of her husband's murder, ix. 678. Death of that queen, and the contest between the Pope and Neapolitans thereupon, on Alphonsus of Arragon seizing some places, x. 8. xiii. 394. Tribute remitted to Ferdinand for a white horse, x. 38. France and Spain make a partition treaty for it, which they conquer, and Frederic of Naples retires into France, where he is made duke of Anjou, 53. viii. 216. xiii. 459

— and Sicily, rebellion there, with the offer of the investiture to the duke of Guise, but deserted by the pope, x. 147. Failure of the attempt on it, 326. That whole kingdom submits, and the places stipulated by treaty, taken by the Venetians, 329. Blocked up by sea, ib. Campaign there, 330. History, 377

— university by whom erected, x. 430 (A).

— (Bishop of) for his ravages in Benevento, with the Saracens, is excommunicated, and the ravages still continue, x. 386. But the bishop is detached from the Saracens, whom he drives out of Naples, and how he makes himself master of Capua, with continual civil wars there, ib. With two formidable factions there, and other confusions, 461. King and queen crowned there, and their treaty with Conrad Wolf, while Sicily is still ravaged by the opposite parties, and a great famine, 463. King and queen are received into Messina, ib. The distress there by a plague, &c. while Urban excommunicates and deposes the queen, 469. Treaty of partition between France and Spain about it, and both invading, soon conquer it, 495. Difference between the French and Spaniards about the limits of their shares there; and the former begin hostilities, with the various success on each side, 496. Peace proposed by the archduke Philip, but the French in the mean time entirely defeated by the Spaniards, and the French general Nemours killed, ib. The French evacuate Naples, ib. The French by treaty renounce all pretensions to it, 500. Coasts ravaged by the pirate Barbarossa, ib. Turks continue the usual depredations, and the French threaten to invade Naples, but their endeavours frustrated, 518. Catalonia and Portugal throw off the Spanish yoke, by which means the subjects of Naples are oppressed, ib. A general insurrection in its provinces expels the Spaniards and nobility, 521. Provinces return to their allegiance, 524. Pope grants the investiture of it, but claims the administration, ibid. Kingdom harassed by the banditti, and among several methods used for extirpating them, compositions accepted, 527. The abettors of the French there punished, and the French basely abandon the Messinians, who are pardoned, but stripped of their privileges, 528. Great disorders there, particularly from the badness of the coin, from the banditti, &c. with the remedies used, 529. Kingdom struck with concern at the infirmities of their king, and a proposal for a partition of the Spanish monarchy, 531. Submits to the Imperialists under count Daun, 532. Tumult raised there by count Daun's imposing a duty upon fruit, which is laid aside, ib. Disjoined from Spain, and the emperor receives its investiture from the pope, 533. The emperor rewards the Neapolitans for their fidelity, with many privileges, ib. On Mainfroy's seizing that kingdom, pope Urban IV. offers it to Charles of Anjou, 717. Confusion there, of which Otho of Brunswick takes possession for Lewis of Anjou, xi. 62. New war there, on Alphonsus out- ing Regnier of Anjou, xiii. 402. The second declaration of that court to Matthews, 659. The king throws off a neutrality, and his declaration, 662

Napoli, the Turkish general, forced to retire from it, x. 338

Nara, famous temple in Japan, described, with its idols, iv. 10 (L).

Naraya (Chaw) slays his uncle, and seizes on the Siamese throne, iii. 367. How he makes the trial of his daughter's talents, and marries her to his adopted son, ib. Conspiracy against him by his Talapoys, 368. Pleasant punishment on an intolent Sankrat, ibid. Reception of the mis-

sionaries, 369. And of the French ambassadors, 370. Embassy to France, ib. War with Camboya, ib. Admits Nackson, 371. His forces defeated, and the ill success of his embassy, 372. Reception of that from France, ib. Artful answer concerning christianity, 373. Allows the profession of it, and builds some churches, ib. But persists in his old religion, ib. His three ambassadors depart for France, 375. Clemency towards the treacherous Macassars, 376. Success against them, 377. Severity against them, ib. Assisted by the English and French, 380. Treaty with the new French ambassadors, 381. Fatal partiality to Lord Faulkon, ib. Seeks the assistance of the French, 382. Sham display of grandeur to hide his poverty, 383. New embassy to France, 384. Exasperates the Siamese, ib. Conspiracy against him by Pitrachas, 386. His death, character, and issue, 393. The crown seized by Pitrachas, 394

Nardi, conspiracy by one of the, against Prato, and how he gains admittance, xiii. 422. Podesta saved from hanging, with the defeating of the conspiracy, and its authors punished, ib.

Narimundus succeeds his father Trabus, duke of Lithuania and Samogitia, xii. 632. The portions of his other brothers, and the Lithuanian coat of arms ascribed to him, ib. (B). His transactions, and the base treachery of his brother Downant, who is defeated, but escaping becomes duke of Polcz, 603

Narkoni Pira, a river of Mungl Tartary, ii. 244

Narva, the Russians defeated there, xii. 370

— city described, xiii. 19. Taken by assault, with the horrid barbarities of the Russians, 206. Which the czar stops, and kills two of the brutes with his own hand, and his saying thereupon to great numbers retired to the town house, ib.

Narvaez (Pamphilo de) appointed by Velaquez, to command an armament against Cortez, xiv. 230. His instructions, ib. His fleet from Cuba arrives on the coast of Mexico, ib. Intelligence received about the colony of Vera Cruz, and his deputy Guavara, why sent prisoner by the governor to Mexico, ib. Guavara's account of the emperor and Cortez, on his return to him, 231. Violent proceedings against Cortez, 232. Why he seizes and ships d'Ayllon the commissary from St. Domingo, ib. Causes a desertion among his men, ib. Great confidence of victory against Cortez, 234. Obligated by a storm to retire to Zempoala, and betrayed by secretary Duero, ib. Is surprized, and totally defeated, 235

— (Pamphilo) his unsuccessful expedition to Florida, xv. 64. Reception by the natives, and he plunders Apalache, and takes their cacique, 65. Forces, and plunders Aute village, ib. Perishes miserably, with almost all his men, ibid.

Narym circle, and its chief place of that name in Yenesei province, described, xiii. 47

Narraganset war in New England, xiv. 518. Causes of the Barbarians successes what, 519. Success of the English, ib.

Narrawne, the name of the deity in Indus, iii. 36

Narrea (Enarrea) kingdom, in Ethiopia, conquered and converted, with its rich trade, vi. 174. Gold mines, ibid. When, and by whom subdued, 279

Nasaro'ddawla revolts against Mohtanfer, caliph in Egypt. See Abu Ali.

Nasarath leads his eastern Turks into Mawara'nahr, i. 664

Nasero'ddawla, created Emir Omra, reduces the gold coin, i. 542. Strips the caliph of his wealth and power, ibid. Treachery to the caliph, 543. Seizes on part of Baghdad, 547. Contest against Moezoddawla, ib. Imprisoned for his cruelties, 563. Sends to his Hamdan for relief, 564. Dies of grief, ib.

Nasero'ddin, a famous Cadi, his death and character, i. 710

Nasibin taken by the Greeks, i. 567

Nasiroddawla becomes sovereign of Edessa, i. 640

Naso cape, in the isle of Panay, iv. 197

Nasonis, Indian people, xv. 10

Nasr Ebn Sayan, Merwan's general, defeated by Abu Moslem, i. 377. A second defeat, 379. Flight and death, ib.

— the philosopher, his character and death, i. 550

— (Ali Beg) intercedes for his extorting father, ii. 640. Is disgraced, and his all confiscated for his insolence, 641.

With his farther punishment, ib.

— (Abu) assassinated in Kerman, i. 606

— (Ebn Al Mansur) a debauched vizier in Spain, i. 607. Is put to death by Mohammed al Mohdi, ib.

— (Ebn Alnas) mounts the Bujiyan throne by treason, i. 658



- Nasr (Ebn Mahmud) succeeds to the lordship of Aleppo, i. 665. Assassinated by Turkish soldiers, with his noble character, and is succeeded by his brother, 666
- (Ebn Abbas) murders the Egyptian wazir, i. 710. Becomes the caliph's paramour, 713. Helps his father to assassinate him, ib. Is pursued and taken by the Franks, and his dreadful punishment, ib.
- , the murderer of the wazir Nojmo'ddin, vi. 51. Shamefully beloved by caliph al Dhafer, 52
- Nasratus, the brother of Malek, his success against the Romans, ii. 241
- Nassau fleet sails through the straits of Le Maire, iv. 423. Vain attempt upon Lima, with the civilities and barbarities there, 424 (Q).
- fort on the isle of Goree, taken by the French, vii. 79
- fort on the Gold coast, vi. 668
- , character of its princes, xi. 402
- (Lewis) his success in Friseland against d'Arenberg, who is slain, xi. 407. But defeated by the duke of Alva on the banks of the Ens, 408. Defeated and slain at Noock, with the loss of his brothers Henry and Christopher, 413
- the conduct of Justin, and the garrison of Breda, xi. 506
- account of William, xi. 403. His successful expedition, 518. The Hollanders edict thereupon, ib. Further operations in Juliers and Cleves, 519. His successes, who defeats the Spaniards near Callo, 525. Stratagem, by which the enemy decamp with precipitation, 530
- (Philip) recovers his paternal estates, xi. 483
- (Count John Maurice de) made governor general of Brazil and South America, for which he sets sail, xi. 536. State of their settlements and successes there, with his operations and progress in that country, 537
- death of Ernest Casimir, in whose family the Stadtholdership of Groningen and Friseland is made hereditary, xi. 524
- Nasir (Caliph) rejects sultan Mohammed's demands, ii. 292. Excites Jenghiz Khan against him, but highly blamed for that step, ib. The extent of his dominions, 294
- Nataa, a Jewish fortress, taken by Mohammed, i. 72. Its rich plunder, 73
- Natal (Terra do) whence so called, and how got by the Dutch, vi. 396
- Natches savages, account of them, xv. 11. Pretended conspiracy against the French, 21. Accept terms of peace from the latter, and what, ib. No missionary sent among them, to the omission of which Charlevoix attributes the subsequent misfortunes, 32. Their massacre of the French, 33. Pillage the French houses, &c. 34. Their courage, and an account of the war against them, 37. Their proposals to the French what, ib. Chastized by the French, 38. Put three French spies to death, ib. Call a council, and the satisfaction they receive from a woman prisoner introduced into it, 39. Attacked in their fort by the French and Chactaws, ib. The troublesomeness of the latter, ib. Their infernal barbarity in their fort what, 40. Capitulate, and outwit the French, ib. Difference in the accounts, 41. Base intention of the French, ib. And the reasons for their doing so little in this expedition, ib. Continue their incursions and massacres, 43. Savages, account of, 45. Extent of their country, and cruel rites, ib. Causes of thinning them, and their fundamental government female, ib. (I). Power of their grand chief or sun, 46. Cruel ceremony at his death, ib. Horrid obsequies of a woman chief, ib. sub (I). Prostitution of their women, ib. sub (I). Their power over the men what, ib. in fin. How exasperated by the French, 51. A new war set on foot against them, and rencounters generally terminating in their massacre, 52 (L). Pest there, 59. Amiable character of the natives, and misbehaviour of the French, ib. Make an alliance with the colony of Georgia, 101
- Natchitoches savages, where seated, xv. 19
- savages, where, xv. 48
- post, where, and its importance, xv. 59
- Nathan (Ben Jechiel) a learned rabbi at Rome, with his works, v. 547
- Natick, a large town built by Indian converts in Massachusetts, described, xiv. 513
- Natividad (La) built by Cortez in St. Andrew's-bay, xiv. 277
- Nativity-fort built in Hispaniola, v. 53
- Navarre (Viceroy of) makes war on Castile, and would hearken to no satisfaction, viii. 42. But is routed by Martin Fernandes, and the war terminated, ib.
- Navarre (King of) deceitful management to Pedro and Henry, by which the Black Prince passes through his country, viii. 58. Totally routs Henry, who escapes into France, ib. His natural cruelty among others shewn to a prisoner in the hands of an English lord, ib. Attempting the possession of Logrona, is disappointed after paying a considerable sum, 63. Juan of Castile makes an irruption into Navarre, ib. Battle between him and his son, in which the latter was defeated, and made prisoner, 89
- conquered by the French, but are soon driven out, viii. 232
- (or Sobrarva) its history, and obscurity in the ancient part, viii. 549. Several etymologies very uncertain, ib. Mariana's account of its origin, ib. How conquered, and account of, till the extinction of the royal family, ib. Belonged to Charlemagne, and some of his successors, 550
- its description, viii. 554 (B). Its climate, soil, produce, and six provinces, &c. ib. sub not. A marriage between Ordogno of Leon, and Sancha of Navarre, 555. Neither king survives this match long, 556
- people call in Sancho, king of Arragon, viii. 564
- the states call Thibaut, of Champagne, the late king's nephew, to the crown, viii. 574
- how, and when united to France, viii. 579. College at Paris, by whom built, 580. States, their bill of rights accepted, and the articles, 583 (A)
- annexed to Castile, viii. 614
- united to France in Henry IV. viii. 616. Remark on its present state, ib.
- (King of) of a sudden saves France by an equitable peace with the regent, ix. 102. Famous process against him for intending to have the king of France poisoned, 115
- Margaret of, her death and great character, ix. 235
- a perilous junction made by the princes of Bearn and Conde there, with a different retreat afterwards, ix. 263. King abjures protestantism, as does Conde, Conti, and Soissons, 267. Withdraws from court, and declares he was forced to abjure the protestant religion, with the famous edict of pacification concluded, 271. Representations from the king of France thereupon to him about his religion ineffectual, 281. This gives the Guises a handle for decrying both Henries, ib. Spoils the port of Brouage, 283. Gains a complete victory at Coutras over the duke de Joyeuse, who is killed, 285. But making no use of it, proves fatal to his confederates, ib. Declaration and reconciliation with the king of France, and the latter near being seized, is relieved by the former, who together take several places, 293. The king's remarkable compliment to du Harlay; they invest Paris, ib. His character by pope Sixtus V. x. 117
- Navarro (Pedro) left to command at Oran, viii. 222. His other conquests, with their defeat, and loss of the best part of his troops, ib. Routed before Tripoli, with great loss, ibid.
- Navatlacas, who, and where situated, xiv. 360. Their seven tribes and names, with the manner of their migrations, ib.
- Navaz (Khan) his fair reception of prince Dara, betrays all his measures to Aurengzeb, iii. 98. Slain at the battle of Azmir, 103
- Navigation, first discoveries to whom owing, viii. 440 (F). Other discoveries and unsuccessful attempts by the Dutch, xi. 445
- Navigators, certain, an account of their discoveries, v. 49
- Nau-naus, character and death, ii. 419
- Nawr's treachery to Mergus Khan, and how revenged by his widow, ii. 268
- Naxoat-fort attacked by the English without effect, xiv. 664
- Nayela, an idol formerly worshipped by the Koreish, i. 76
- Nayen joins in Haytu's revolt, ii. 388. Is defeated and slain, ib.
- Nayers, the Malabar gentry, are guides to all strangers, iii. 168. Their authority over the lower tribes, ib. (Y)
- Nayman Turks in West Tartary, where seated, ii. 125
- province described, ii. 244. Revolt against Vang Khan, 270. Defeated by Temujin, ib. And by his four intrepids, 272. Defeated again, and subdued by Temujin, 277
- a tribe of Uzbek Tartars, ii. 719
- Naymans destroyed by Isfandiar Khan, and their long quarrel with the Uzbeks and Turkmans, ii. 739
- Nazar's standard preserved at Mecca, with his character, i. 2
- Nazomoddin dethrones his brother in Hormuz, ii. 688. His dying orders to his sons not obeyed, ib.
- Nazura, the capital of the Muskat coasts, iv. 140



Neala Takin poisons Ebn Mamum, and is hanged for it, i. 621

Neapolitans ravage the Roman territories, x. 42. After the defeat of the Neapolitans, the pope concludes a peace, ib.

— besiege Palermo to no effect, and their ravages in the island, with their return to Naples, x. 458. Again invade Sicily, and after ravaging it their fleet fails to assist the Genoese, who also attempt it in vain, ib. Take Lipari with Mecazzo, 460. Obligated to evacuate the island of Sicily, 466. Oppressed by Orange, the Spanish viceroy, 501. Threaten to mutiny for a new duty on fruit, who are encouraged by Guilio Genuino, their elect, and by Massaniello, 520

— invade Tuscany, but shamefully baffled, xiii. 410. Attempt on the vale of Bagno, how disappointed, and driven out, together with the treachery of its lord, ib.

Necauz, a delightful town of Algiers, vii. 226

Neck Northern, in Virginia, the case of, xv. 371

Neclan, governor of Bohemia, his timorous character, xv. 451

Ned Roma, an antient city of Tremecen, described, vii. 141

Negapatan, a Dutch colony in Tanjaor, iii. 176. Why so called, but retaken and lost by the Portuguese, iv. 146. Its port and trade, ib. (T)

Negombo, a Ceylon port, taken by the Dutch, iv. 146

— desperate defence against the Portuguese, iv. 439

Negrais, a river of Pegu, with the passage from it to the capital, iii. 239. Its channel, ib. (G)

Negrepelisse stormed and sacked, with the request of ten of the inhabitants, who were left, ix. 368

Negril point, in Jamaica, account of, xv. 335

Negrilloes, in Manilla, who, and whence, iv. 187 (O)

— (Zambali) their mutual wars, extent, &c. iv. 189.

Why distinguished from the Sambali, 196 (Y)

Negro town, in Morocco, described, vii. 157

— Porto and Cape, in Tunis, described, vii. 297

Negropont. See Nigropont

Negroes island among the Philippines described, iv. 201.

Fierce and warlike inhabitants, and the Bisaias among them who, ib. Why so powerful in Morocco, vii. 164 & 167. Lay a fatal snare against Abdel Melek, 196

— four forts in Madagascar, vi. 89. Worship God and the devil, ib.

— of Guinea, their genius, customs, &c. vii. 53. Marriages, 54. Punishment of adultery, 55. Education of children, 56. Funeral obsequies, 57 (B). Languages, 58 (D). Arts and manufactures, 60. Buildings, 61. Agriculture, 62. Diet and subjection to famine, 63. Militia and soldiery, with their horsemen, 64. Religion, ib. Superstitious customs, 66. Trinkets, 67. Marabouts, 68

— recovered from the Natches, executed by the French, and others tortured by the Chactaws, xv. 42

— importation of them into America since the African charter passed, deemed piracy, xv. 285. Convention for the English supplying the Spaniards with them, ib.

— (Fond de) account of, xv. 358

Nein, or Neym; king of Keys, sells the isle of Jerun to Ayaz, ii. 683. Invades it with a hundred and twenty Terrades, and his fleet shattered, 685. Offers of peace to Gordon Shah rejected, takes him prisoner, with his treachery, but is shipwrecked, and lets him escape, 686

— (Jamaloddin) conspires against Kothboddin Shah, ii. 687. Flees, and is drowned, ib.

Neira, one of the Banda islands, its forts, iv. 489. Nutmeg parks, ib. (A)

Nekouba river, savages converted about its source, xiv. 599

Nelson (Suante) loud complaints against the administrator of Sweden, with the occasion, xii. 259

— fort, in Hudson's bay, taken by the French, xiv. 653. Miserable situation of the latter, ib. Called Bourbon, ib. Taken by the English, 660. Retaken by the French, and the articles of capitulation, 661. Importance of this conquest, ib.

Nemours (Gaston duke) takes Bologna, routs the Venetians, and recovers Brescia, with that general's character, ix. 199. The confederates beaten by him in the battle of Ravenna, but he himself indiscreetly lost, ib. Strange turn of the French affairs, ib.

Neoburgh, transactions in a diet there, xii. 41. General pardon passed there, 64

Nephtalites, or Eutalites, who, and whence so called, ii. 136

— in Persia, who, v. 513 (M)

Nequiron, a fainted deity of the Japanese, iv. 8

Nerac, conferences of the queen-mother of France there, and to the advantage of the protestants, with her progress and

conference with the marshals Bellegarde and Damville, ix. 272

Nerke, a Mongl kind of hunting, described, ii. 310

Nertshinsk circle, in Irkutsk province, and its frontier towns towards China, xii. 151. Its silver mines, and a mountain of beautiful green jasper, ib.

Nes (Van) his fleet under de Wit's direction a second time driven back from the English coast, xi. 605

Nesamilius, governor of Bohemia, xv. 451

Nesmond, French squadron under him, its destination in North America, xiv. 662. Plan for the conquest of all these belonging to England, 663. Fruitless expedition, and return to France, ib.

Nestorians, their absurd fiction of the Asiatic Prester John, ii. 269

— of Babylon, their embassy and re-union with Rome, x. 133 (R)

Nestorius, the Greek champion, takes Dames prisoner, engages Dehac, and they part by consent, i. 218

Netherlands (New). See New York

— the campaign there not fortunate, and why, viii. 329.

— The frontiers there amicably settled, 348. How they came into possession of the house of Austria, xi. 401. Their state on Philip II's accession, 403. The first cause of discontent there from the different characters of Charles and Philip, ib. Also on the score of religion, 403. Philip II. his intention of residing in Spain, with Granvelle's elevation, &c. another cause of discontent, ib. Remonstrance made to the duchess of Parma, the governante, and to the king, 404. The people break out into open rebellion, but matters quieted by the prince of Orange and count Egmond, 405. Negotiations there between Parma and the English only to amuse, 416. Transactions in the court of Madrid for and against dismembering them, 450. Miserable situation of the Spanish Netherlands, 521. Representations to the archduchess, but her views for redress frustrated by Olivares, ib. Their state, 640. See Low Countries

Neto (Gonzalo) the Portuguese, slays the usurper Shemin by a lucky shot, and his reward, iii. 260

Neva, some palaces, and fort Notteburg, or Schlusfelburg, in that river, xiii. 26

Nevers (Duke) his death and character, ix. 310. Becomes duke of Mantua under the protection of France, and this gives occasion to his falling on the house of Austria, 378 Treaty of Ratisbon in favour of him, 381

Neufchatel allied with the Swifs, xv. 448

Nevil, Admiral, his misconduct in Newfoundland, xiv. 492.

Takes a rich French ship, runs two a-ground, and takes two others, xv. 290. Destroys Petit Guaves, but dies of heart-break, ib.

Nevis (Mevis) St. by whom first settled, xv. 249. Progress of this colony, yet pelted by the Caribbeans, ib. Subject to hurricanes, with an instance that its effects may be avoided, 250. Its government regular, ib. Flourishing state, ib. Protected by Thornhill, ib. Protected by the English, 251. Hurricane and earthquake, 252. Arrival of Benbow there, ib. Reduced by the French, and their strength, ib. Infamous breach of the capitulation, and treatment of the negroes, with the latter's revenge, 253. Exculpate themselves to the queen from Park's murder, ib. Account of its government, ib. Its soil, water, animals, and insects, ib. Dog-wood, the nature of its juice, 254. Foods and garden-stuff here, ib. Number of inhabitants, and height of the mountains, ib. Negroes and their value, ib. Treatment of them, 255 (U). Annual fasts and thanksgiving, ib.

Newburg. See Brandenburg

— (Duke of) abjures Lutheranism, and a declaration made for quieting the protestants, xi. 189. Remonstrance, 210. Concession of the states-general to that duke, 520. Taken, and the victory owing to the Dutch, with their remarkable moderation, xii. 184. The loss on the side of the Swedes, with the views of Holland not to oppose Sweden, ib.

—, Palatine branch, account of, xv. 473

Newenar (Countess) bequeaths the counties of Meurs and Horn to Maurice, xi. 462 (B)

Newfoundland, by whom discovered, and its description, xiv.

490. The French claim to it what, ib. The first voyages by the English to it, ib. Misfortune of the first expedition baulks further discoveries for some years, ib. The several expeditions to it from England, 491

— described, xiv. 492. Its fine bays and harbours, ib. Climate, 493. Produce, and cod the chief article, ib. French established here, from whom it was re-conquered, ib. The British rights of fishing here secured by treaty, ib. (D).

Designs



- Several settlements there, 492. Claim of the French and Spaniards for fishing on its banks now absurd, and why, *ib.* An act of parliament for excluding strangers from its fisheries, *ib.* Its natives described, 493. Their customs and manners, *ib.* Great bank for cod-fishing described, 550. Difficulty of its navigation what, *ib.* Designs of a French squadron on it how disappointed, 646. State of affairs there, and comparison of the French and English genius for commerce, 664. Fisheries, misconduct of the French and English with regard to them, 688. Expedition of the English against it miscarries, 692
- Newhaven colony, account of its settlement, where and by whom, *xiv.* 508
- Newport, various accounts of that battle, *xi.* 460 (A)
- (Captain) his voyage and landing on Cape Henry, with their reception by the Indians, *xiv.* 488. Have leave to build James-town, *ib.* The captain returns, *ib.*
- frigate taken by the French at the mouth of St. John's river, *xiv.* 528
- Newruz, (Gazi) his rise, *ii.* 484. Reconciled to Gazan, and joins him in his conspiracy against Baydu, outwits, pursues, and slays him, 485. Made general of Gazan's forces, and given up by him to Kutluk Shah, 486. Is put to death by him, *ib.*
- Newstadt, a congress there, *xii.* 418
- Neyen's negotiation at the Hague, and character, *xi.* 476. At length treats with the States as a free people, 477. Overtures signed on both sides, and ministers appointed, *ib.* Several objections raised by the States to the progress of the negotiation, *ib.*
- Nezan (Nodham) Al Molk deposed by Malek Shah, with the answer to his threatening letter, *i.* 672. Accused by the sultana, and is assassinated, *ib.* With a letter to the sultan, death, and character, 673. See *ii.* 171. Great honours paid to him by Malek Shah, &c. *ib.*
- Nezar, successor to Al Mostanser, *i.* 679. Opposed, and set aside by the vazir, with his revolt and dreadful end, *ib.* Revolts against his brother Mostali in Egypt, *ib.* & *vi.* 49. Is forgiven, but revolts afresh, with his severe punishment, *ib.*
- Ngai-hi, emperor of China, *iii.* 707
- Ngan-lo-shan raised by Yiun-tsung, *iii.* 713. Rebels against him, plunders his palace, &c. with his revenge on the more loyal elephants, *ib.*
- Ngan-ti, emperor of China, his reign under his excellent mother, *iii.* 704, 707. Murdered by Lew-hu, *ib.*
- Ngan-vang's troublesome reign in China, *iii.* 695
- *II.* or Sous, dethroned by the king of Th, *iii.* 699
- Ngan-ywen-fu, in Korea, taken by the Japanese, *iii.* 757
- Ngingha, the eighth king of Angola, his short reign and death, with his horrid obsequies, *vi.* 505 (C)
- Ngola shakes off the Congolese yoke, *vi.* 502. Assisted by the Portuguese, *ib.* (A). Betrayed and murdered by his prime minister, who seizes upon the crown, and dies soon after, 503
- (or Angola) Chilvagni crowned king of Angola, with his character, conquests, and numerous issue, and how treated by the Portuguese, *vi.* 504 (B)
- *III.* crowned the seventh king of Angola, with his ravages and success, *vi.* 504. Madness and death, *ib.*
- (Bandi) the ninth king of Angola, his tyrannic reign, *vi.* 504. Ingratitude to the Portuguese, *ib.* Severely revenged, 506. His dreadful end, 507
- (Bandi) succeeds, and begins his reign with blood upon those of his whole family, *vi.* 507
- (Sedesio) chosen king of Angola, but slain for his apostasy, and his head sent in pickle to Lisbon, *vi.* 535
- Niagara fort, account of it, *xiv.* 708 (S)
- Niaygima island, on the coast of Japan, is landed upon by Ferdinand Pinto, the Portuguese, *iv.* 162
- Nicanto made king of Quiloa, *vi.* 355. War against Braham, defeated and deposed, with his miserable death, *ib.*
- Nicaragua, discoveries of Gonzales d'Avila there, *xiv.* 276 (C)
- , province, described, climate, and produce, *xiv.* 443. Its lake, with tillage and manufactures cultivated, and the bold spirit of the inhabitants, *ib.*
- Nice, in Asia Minor, taken by Soliman, and becomes the seat of his empire, *ii.* 204. Abandoned by him for the sake of Antioch, *ib.* Taken by Apelkassam, 206. By Alexis, *ib.* Retaken by the sons of Soliman, 207. Taken by the crusaders, 209
- , and its confines, ravaged by Timur Bek, *ii.* 563
- surrenders through famine, sword, &c. to the Ottomans, *v.* 155. Beautified and enriched, *ib.*
- , interview there between the emperor and king of France, *Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.*
- together with the pope, where a truce is concluded, *xi.* 150. But without seeing one another, and why, *ib.* (O)
- Nice, county and city, described, *xiv.* 125
- Niceans become tributary to Or Khan, with his generosity to them and their widows, *v.* 156
- Nicephorus, the emperor, his haughty message to the Arab caliph, *i.* 428. Forced to buy a dear peace from him, but breaks it, and is totally defeated, 429. Invaded afresh by him, 433. Becomes his tributary, and breaks the articles of peace, 434
- (Phocas) his success against the Moslems, *i.* 556
- Niceffo, in Congo, described, *vi.* 423
- Ni-cha-ma-ting's extortions cause a revolt, *ii.* 404
- Nicholas, patriarch of Constantinople, dies, *i.* 519. William Stephen, an eunuch, succeeds, *ib.*
- island, (St.) described, *vi.* 128
- , fort of that name in Rhodes, its brave defence against the Turks, *vii.* 420
- , a German boy, arrives at Genoa with 7000 people, young and old, on their way to Syria, *x.* 545 (A)
- , of Denmark, remarkable instance of brotherly affection what, *xi.* 701. Recalled, and his ransom paid to the earl of Flanders, 702
- called to the Danish throne after his brother Eric III. and 78th king, *xi.* 703; though Harold, Eric's son, probably reigned during the interregnum here between both princes, *ib.* (H). Difference in Nicholas's conduct, with the occasion of some of the Danish provinces being laid waste by the Vandals, *ib.* Betrayed by Elive, and defeated by Henry, prince of the Vandals, *ib.* Declares Harold his successor, 709. Slain in a tumult of the Sleswickers, and with him ends the reign of Swen's fifth son, *ib.* (A) & 710
- *II.* pope, protects the Jews, *v.* 592. A decree made by him, that the pope should be chosen only by the cardinals, with due respect to the emperor, *ix.* 561. Makes a treaty with the Normans, and gives the investiture of Capua, Apulia, &c. to the two Guiscards, *ib.*
- *III.* succeeds pope John, *XXI.* *ix.* 646. Decree about the secret office, with a disdainful saying of Charles of Anjou, *ib.* Sends his brother with an army to reduce Romaniola, and the condemnation and imprisonment of the famous Roger Bacon, a Franciscan, with an embassy from the Greek emperor about the supremacy, &c. 647. Reconciles Rodolphus and Charles, king of Sicily, with the terms, *ib.* Enters into a conspiracy of the Sicilians against Charles, but dies before the execution, *ib.*
- *IV.* (pope) elected in the room of Honorius IV. *ix.* 650. Embassy to him from the king of Lesser Tartary, *ib.* Compromise between him and the king of Portugal, *ib.* Legate appointed by him in Africa, *ib.* The sacred expedition retarded by Rodolphus's death, and an embassy to the pope, &c. from Armenia, 652. Death, *ib.*
- *V.* chosen anti-pope, *ix.* 128. In the room of Eugenius IV. and acknowledged by the empire, *x.* 20. Grants the demands of the Polish ambassadors, and passes a bull for provision of vacant benefices in Germany, *ib.* (O). His legate refusing the Hussites demands obliged to quit Bohemia, *ib.* Reproaches the Greeks for breach of the union, who commend the Bohemian Hussites, and desire their uniting with them, 22. Confession at Avignon with a rope about his neck, and death as a prisoner in the palace, *ix.* 670. Character, *x.* 23
- , cardinal of Prato, sent legate to Florence, with the regulations made through his persuasions, and new-modelling the government, but fails in his main and intended design, *xiii.* 296
- , son to Lionel of Este, the beheading him without the duke of Modena's orders, *xiv.* 197
- (Burewin) mortgages Rostock, *xv.* 516. Assisted by his kinsman Albert against the duke of Pomerania, *ib.*
- Nicholson, governor of Carolina, *xv.* 92
- , governor of Maryland, *xv.* 108. Names of his successors, 109
- , lieutenant-governor of Virginia, his character, and promotes the plan for a college, which is erected, *xiii.* 373. Since greatly improved, *ib.* His good government, and passing a cohabitation act, but to little effect, *ib.* And several other public acts, *ib.* Again governor, he removes from James-town to Williamsburg, *ib.* Lays out a new town, besides several other new buildings, with the repining thereat, 374. A French pirate surrenders, and the governor's generosity, with his excellent principle what, *ib.* Why a project in his time for introducing camels fails, and an embargo laid, 375
- Nicholls (Colonel) first governor of New York, to whom Orange-fort surrenders, *xiv.* 540. Concludes an useful treaty



- treaty between the five Indian nations, and the inhabitants, *ib.*
- Nicolaus (Myfticus) condemns Leo IV's marriage, *i.* 504
- Nicomedia fortified againft the Turks, *ii.* 206. Taken by Or Khan, *v.* 155
- Nicoftia, in Cyprus, its famous fieve, *x.* 357. Brutality of the Turks, and difmal cataltrophe of the inhabitants, 359
- Nicote de Brito (fee Brito), *iii.* 272
- Nicoya, a town of Costa Rica, and its trade with Panama, *xiv.* 444 (R)
- Nicubar ifles, in Siam, defcribed, with the inhabitants, *iii.* 321
- Nicueffa and Ojeda's voyages to America, *xiv.* 153. Expedition in queft of Veragua, and Olano's treachery, 156. The diftreff of both, and how relieved, *ib.* Succeeding Balboa, in Darien, is foon depofed, 157
- Nidftio, the 78th emperor of Japan, *iv.* 57
- *II.* the 93d emperor, *iv.* 59
- Nienburg, befieged by Tilly, is fuccoured by the king of Denmark, who divides his forces, *xi.* 215. Successes on both fides, without any confiderable advantage, *ib.* Surrenders, 216.
- Niger river, (fee Sanega) *v.* 696. A geographical miftake about it rectified, *vii.* 105. Kingdoms on the north of that river defcribed, 107. Accounts of it difcuffed, 111. Its fpring-head, courfe, &c. variously fixed, *ib.* Father Labat's new opinion confidered, 112. Its overflowing, *ib.* Its cataracts, iflands, &c. *ib.* Lakes, 113
- Nigropont taken by the Turks, and the general maffacre there, *x.* 265
- bafe furrender to the Genoefe, with various accounts of a fea-fight between them and Filani in the Bofphorus, *x.* 212
- Nightingales, large white ones in Ethiopia, *vi.* 187
- Nigus, account of a diforder caufed by that infect in Carthage, *xiv.* 449
- Nikita Romanow Knez, on the chancellor's murder, fent by the czar to appeafe the people of Mofcow, *xiii.* 157. Pleffeou and Trachaniftau put to death, *ib.*
- Nikra, or Khan, value of his new coin, *v.* 155 (H)
- Nile, its dreadful inundations, *i.* 675. Observation on its overflowing, &c. *vi.* 2
- in Abyffinia, *vi.* 203. Croffes the Dembean lake unmixed, with fome curious remarks on its pretended fpring-head, 204
- Nilometer, a new one erected in Egypt, *i.* 351. Thrown down by an earthquake, with a new one erected, and by whom, 473
- Nimeguen, a congreff appointed there, *xi.* 624. The plenipotentiaries meet there, and the negotiations retarded, *ix.* 464. Congreff there, with the conditions offered by Lewis, accepted by all but Lorrain, *ibid.* Negotiations there for a peace, with the cavillings of the Danifh minifters, and the claims of the feveral powers, *xii.* 196. The Dutch and the elector of Brandenburg fign a feparate peace with France and Sweden, as does alfo the king of Denmark, and the terms, 199. Signed by all except the emperor, *ix.* 465. With reflections on that event, *ib.* He alfo figns the peace, *ib.* Concluded after much ado, *xi.* 626 (A). The places reftored to Spain, and retained by France, what, *ib.* Treaty concluded there between the allies and the king of France, *xi.* 296
- Ninachetu raifed by Albuquerque, with his conftancy, and noble death, *iv.* 149 (Y).
- Nineveh, the Chriftians there butchered by the Curds, and make alliance with the Western Curds, *ii.* 476
- Jewifh chiefs, their privileges, *v.* 544
- Ning-po, or Lyang-po, a fine fea-port in Chekyang, *iii.* 541. Its canal, and trade with Japan, *ib.* (F).
- Ning-tlong, emperor of China, his reign, and invaded by the eaftern Tartars, *iii.* 722
- Ninguta, a city of eaff Tartary, *iii.* 461
- Nin-ken, the 25th emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 52
- Nintoku, the 17th emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 52
- Niord fucceeds Othin, king of Sweden, and his character, *xii.* 218. Outed by the fovereign of Mufcovy, but the people revolting call him back, *ib.*
- Niote, or Siote, empress of Japan *iv.* 62. Grants the Chinefe a free commerce, *ib.*
- Niphon, or Hiphon, the principal ifland of Japan, defcribed, *iv.* 32. Its chief provinces, 33. Cities, *ib.*
- Niphonbas, a famous bridge in Japan, *iv.* 35
- Niuhags, Indians, *xiv.* 566
- , where feated, and fome account of them, *xiv.* 606
- Niretu furprized and taken by ftatagem, *ii.* 590
- Nireupar, among the Siamefe, what, *iii.* 335. Who entitled to it, *ib.* and 342 (G).
- Nirka, or Niron, a tribe of Turks in Western Tartary, *ii.* 127
- Niron (Kayat) invaded by the Merhits, *ii.* 268. Revolts againft Vang Khan, *ib.* Defeated by Temujin, 271
- Nita, or Nefa, where fituated, *ii.* 308. Taken by the Mongls, *ibid.*
- Nifabr, Nifhabur, or Naifabur, the metropolis of Khorafan, taken by the Moflems, *i.* 252. Taken alfo by the Seljeks, *ii.* 154. Submits to the Mungls, 303. Its fieve, furrender, and horrid maffacre there, 313. Taken by Yakub Ebn Leit, 401. Retaken by Mowaffek, *ib.*
- Nifavi (Mehemed) his cowardly abandoning of Kaender, *ii.* 308
- Nifchnoi-Novogorod government, and divifion into four circles, *xiii.* 10. City of the fame name, and the inhabitants of this government defcribed, alfo their worfhip, 11
- Nifers ifland defcribed, *vii.* 393
- Nitard, a confeflor, made one of the regents in Spain, *viii.* 325
- Nitzachon, an impious Jewish book, by whom compiled, *v.* 603 (R). 604 (U). Various impreffions of it, and the Jews fearful of the Chriftians reading it, *ib.* *sub not.*
- Nizam (Al Molk) declines the vizirate, 123. Difappointment at court, *ib.* Forced into a confpiracy againft Mohammed Shah, and he invites Nadir Shah, into the Mogul dominions, 124. Is kindly received by him, and made chief Omra by the emperor, 126. Shah Nadir's juft character of him, 130. His reign in Decan, 133. His ufurped dominions there, 134
- Noah, or Nuh, Emir of Khorafan, &c. death and character, *i.* 552
- (Patriarch) whether the firft peopler of China, *iii.* 654. Arguments in favour of it, 655. Probably the fame with the Chinefe Fo-hi, *ib.* Why he feparated himfelf from his descendants, 656. Difficulties raifed againft it removed, 659. Advantages reaped from his records, 662. And inftructions, 663 (G). Proofs of his being the founder of the Chinefe monarchy, 667. From their religion, &c. *ib.* Their abftinence from wine, 668. From the ftructure of their fhips, 669. Their fingular regard for their canonical books, *ib.* Objections answered, *ib.* Their ancient books not totally deftroyed, 670. Confucius's prophecy of the Mefiah, 671. Further proofs of his being the Chinefe Fo-hi, *ib.* Drawn from the Chinefe and Hebrew chronology, with the beginning of his monarchy, 672
- Noailles totally defeats the viceroy of Catalonia, with other tranfactions there, *ix.* 474
- Noayr, abfolute chief of the defert Arabs, defeated by Mirza Abubekr, *ii.* 566
- Nobatah, a famous Moflem preacher, his death and character, *i.* 587. Another of that name, 588
- Nobility, two forts of them in Germany, *x.* 623. Privileges of them, with their divifion into departments, *ib.* Degrees of them in Denmark, with only one exclusive privilege, *xi.* 657
- or gentry of Poland, their privileges, *xii.* 434. Profufion, 437
- Nobunanga and his fon killed at Meaco, *iv.* 61 (T).
- Nodar (Al) beheaded by Mohammed, *i.* 52
- Nogays, in Kipjak, invaded by the Mungls, *ii.* 322
- No-ghean, one of the eight provinces of Tonquin, *iii.* 433
- Nogueyra, the Jefuit, his difmal account of the Romanifts in Ethiopia, *vi.* 309 (Z). Severe proclamation againft him, 310
- Nohawand, where fituated, *i.* 245
- Nohawandian war, an account of it, *i.* 244
- Nojmo'ddin, expelled from the Egyptian vizirate by Ebn Selar, *i.* 710. His fatal attempt againft him, *ib.*
- (Ebn Mefal) raifed to the vizirate of Egypt, *vi.* 51. Murthered by Nafr, 52
- Nokhailah, where fituated, and the Shiites camp there, *i.* 322
- Nombre de Dies, firft Spanifh fettlement in Darien, whence fo called, *xiv.* 156. But deftroyed by the Englifh, 446
- Noncape defcribed, and whence fo called, *vii.* 160
- Nonojofa (Admiral) why he foments diforders in Lima, *xiv.* 349. Regardless of a defign on his life, is murthered, with many others, 350
- Norbert (St.) his new order of Premonftratenfians confirmed by the pope, with an account of him, *ix.* 587 (B).
- Norby fent to Stockholm, with a fteer, and his ambitious views, *xii.* 143. Revolt, 145. Refufes to execute his promife to Frederic, and invades Schonon, 146. But is defeated by Rantzaw, as are feveral thoufand peasants on their march to raife the blockade of Landfcröon, *ib.* He capitulates,



- capitulates, and further proofs of his perfidy to Frederic, yet forced to surrender and evacuate Gothland, with some particulars concerning him, 147 (A).
- Nordlingen surrenders at discretion, and the victors reduce Suabia, and most part of Franconia, &c. xi. 238
- battle of, in which the Swedes are totally defeated, xii. 337. Confusion introduced into the Swedish affairs by that defeat, *ibid.*
- Norembegua what, and voyages made to it by two Englishmen, xiv. 484 (B).
- Norevi (Nicolas) his noble attempts in Denmark, xii. 55. Kills Gerhard, and the peasants cut his army in pieces, with Nicolas's progress in Jutland, and defeating Gerhard's sons, but he himself is killed, 56
- Normans, their bravery in Sicily, but disgusted by Maniaces i. 640. Their petition to retire, commit grievous ravages, and defeat Maniaces, 641
- 150,000 of them arrive at Constantinople, and take Ancyra, but defeated and slain by the Turks, ii. 210
- send a fleet against the Moors, but repulsed by Abd'allahman, and also a second time, i. 466. Ravage Spain afresh, 473. New swarm of them waste Burgundy, ix. 8. Invade the territories of the count of Tuscanella, who submit to the pope, 561. Quit their conquest in Campania, 564
- of Apulia, invade the territories of the church, n
- Leo goes into Germany to solicit the emperor's assistance, and returns to Italy with an army, ix. 559
- first arrival of a few in Salerno, who entirely defeat a great body of Saracens, x. 395. Method used by the prince to allure the Normans to come into Italy, *ib.* Adventures and arrival of a body of them, who gain several victories over the Greeks, but at last defeated entirely, 396. Their treatment by the inhabitants, and their doing themselves justice by arms, *ib.* Build Averfa, *ib.* And invite their countrymen to people it, among whom comes three sons of Tancred, &c. with an account of him, 397 (M). Ill treated by the Greek general, with their severe revenge, 368. Encroachments, *ib.* Return to Puglia, and several times defeat the Greeks, *ib.* Their successes, and distribution of their conquests in Puglia, *ib.*
- Norman counts of Averfa enlarge their territories, terminating the dominion of the Lombards in Capua, x. 402. Agreement between the Normans and pope, who gives them the investiture of their duchies, *ib.* Excommunications how dreaded now, *ib.* (N). Assist the pope against the count of Tusculum, 403. Conquer the confusions in Rome and Sicily, *ib.*
- Norogna (Antonio de) made governor of Goa, but slain by Idalcan, iv. 123
- Noroy, plotter against Geneva, discovered, who is shut up in perpetual imprisonment, xiv. 51
- Norte Rio del, in New Mexico, described, xiv. 428
- North, on the king of Sweden's death, a peace concluded there, xi. 271
- its affairs with regard to Denmark's invading Bremen, xi. 358
- war between the emperor and two crowns of, xii. 156
- peace concluded between the two crowns, with the terms, xii. 348
- east passage, several attempts for, from Kamtschatka, xiii. 53. The attempts for finding to China, 109 (S).
- west passage, various testimonies of it, iv. 258 sub (F). Four different schemes to find it, 260. Attempted by the Dutch and Spanish merchants, 409. A fresh attempt abortive, 416. Account of the several attempts made for its discovery by the English, xv. 159. Captain James's voyage and opinion against a passage, 160. His reasons, *ib.* (O). Answered, *ib.*
- Northampton, the pope's legate holds a council there, ix. 642
- Northlingen, account of that city, government, and religion, xv. 443
- Norway, its history (see Denmark) xi. 649. By whom annexed to Denmark, 671, 693
- shakes off the Danish yoke under Harold Yellow-hair, xi. 689 (A).
- (King of) breaks his engagements to Margaret, princess of Denmark, but by accident the marriage by Olaus of Sweden takes place, xii. 71
- subdued, and half of it given Swen of Denmark, as a portion with Olaus's mother-in-law, xii. 229. Advantages gained by the Swedes are soon lost, 291. Their cruel ravages, 292. Unfortunate expedition against it, 294
- Norway, long war between it and Denmark, with Harquin of Norway's devastations, a further detail of that war, xii. 42. Renewed by the Danes, and its operations, 44
- Norwegians recal Harold, brother of Olaus, and place him on their throne, xii. 236. Who makes war on Swen, and the latter defeated, *ib.* Harold undertakes an expedition into England, where he is killed, *ib.* His sons enter into a treaty and alliance with Swen, *ib.*
- Norris (Captain) sent to Newfoundland to oblige the French to the stipulations of Ryswick, xiv. 492. His successes, xi. 438. His arrival with a British squadron in favour of Sweden proves decisive, xii. 415. Sails from Copenhagen road towards the Swedish ports, xiii. 250. Sails with a squadron to the Tagus in defence of Portugal, 655.
- Cardinal, some anecdotes of, 543
- Noserat (Seyfoddin) the thirteenth Shah of Hormuz, is disturbed with civil wars, defeated, and recalled, also murdered by Massand, ii. 683
- Noto, or Neetum, in Sicily, seized by the Moslems, i. 432. Gets a handsome house built for himself, *ib.*
- Notte, deputy-governor of Virginia, xv. 375
- Notteburg besieged by Scheremetow, xiii. 202
- Novaia-Semlia, erroneously called Nova-Zembla, some account of it, xiii. 46
- Novantola abbey submits to the Bolognese, xiii. 552
- Novara (George de, a judaizer) his tenets, v. 605
- , unsuccessful attempt of the French on it, and their camp forced by the Swifs, with the fatal consequences to the Venetian republic, x. 303
- Noubador confirmed king of Cochin, iv. 122
- Novello, head of the Gibelins, obliged to raise the siege of Lucca, xiii. 278. The inhabitants of which, and the Florentine exiles, apply to Conradin, grandson to the emperor Frederic II. but defeated by Novello, and expels the Florentine Gibelins, with the effects of enthusiasm, 279. With his party takes post at Prato, and is excluded from Florence, while the popular constitution is restored, together with the Guelph exiles, and the consequences, 281. The Florentine general's success, 309
- Novi, a silk-dyer, made duke of Genoa, x. 581. And Gavi recovered, with a peace concluded, 688
- Novogorod government, its lakes, rivers, and the canal, whereof Teverfa and Mista, making a communication between the Caspian sea and Baltic, with the division of this government into circles, xiii. 6. The most remarkable places in that circle, *ib.*
- Novogrodians, applying to the Waregers for governors, have Ruric, Sineus, and Truwor, sent to govern them, with their places of residence, xiii. 88 (A).
- Nooman (Al Ebn) Makran's vast success in Khorasan, i. 244. Killed at the battle of Nohawand, 245
- , governor of Cufa, deposed by Yezid, i. 301. Strives in vain to quiet the Medinans, 312
- Noor, a Moorish general, invades Abyssinia, with his success and singular humility, vi. 274
- Noort (Captain Oliver Van) his voyage round the globe, v. 74. Prevented from entering the straits of Magellan, 75. Enters into the South-sea, with de Weert, 76. Brave action with the Manilla ship, *ibid.* Return towards Holland, and arrival there, 78. Remarks on his voyage, *ib.*
- Noyon, treaty between Francis, and archduke Charles, and another, at Brussels, with the views of the other powers, x. 313. Maximilian, and the Venetians, accede to the treaty, *ib.* And Verona delivered by Lautrec to the latter, *ib.*
- Nsima, or civet-cat, at Congo, vi. 434
- Nfossi, a strange frightful creature in Congo, vi. 433
- Nubakht, the Persian astrologer, dismissed by Al Mansur, and succeeded by his son, i. 403
- Nubakhti promotes Al Kaher to the caliphate, i. 526
- Nubandijan desert, where situated, i. 659. Yields a miraculous supply to Arslan's vazir, *ib.*
- Nubians, when first defeated by the Egyptians, i. 553. And when first subdued by the caliphs of Egypt, who are said to have been Christians, 666. Succession to the crown settled among them, 668
- , caravan and traffick into Egypt, vi. 39
- Nufusa, a mountain of Tunis, described, vii. 298
- Nuh (Ebn Mansur) invaded by Bagra Khan, and success against his two revoltors, i. 596. Gratitude to Sabekekin, 597. Death and character, 602
- (Ebn Mansur) prince of Khorasan, &c. defeated by Kara Khan, ii. 137
- Nunez's attempt to corrupt king Idris, vii. 138. Severely revenged, *ib.*
- Nur, where situated, and taken by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 296



Nur (Mahamed) the 12th Khan of Karazm, opposed by the house of Hajim, ii. 729. Taken prisoner at Maru by Abbas Shah, the last of the eldest house of Avanash, ib.  
 — (Jehan Ghir) his wife's great influence on him, iii. 78.  
 — 79—81. Confined for plotting, 83  
 — (Takin) oppresses the Balkhans under him, i. 644  
 Nuremberg city, fined for oppressing the Jews, v. 570  
 — diet remonstrates against the Romish oppressions, publish the hundred grievances, an edict, with a formidable alliance against France x. 73. Insists on a redress of grievances, 14. Rejects the legate's plan of reformation, *ibid.* The holy league of the catholics there, 85  
 — joined in the alliance with the protestants, and the assembly there divided in opinion about the popes, xi. 69  
 — Burgrave of, made elector of Brandenburg, xi. 74. Privilege granted the city, *ib.* and (R).  
 — resolutions of the princes met there, xi. 153. Remonstrance from the diet there to the emperor, with his reply, *ibid.*  
 — account of that city, the imperial ornaments kept there, xv. 441 (L). Their toys, *ib.* (M). Its government, *ib.* (N) and 442 (O). Religion, *ib.* Other places dependent on it, *ib.* Their particular interest what, *ib.*  
 Nuro'ddawla makes war and peace with his brother Kawam Thabet, i. 639  
 — (Al Afadi) his death and character, i. 668  
 Nuro'ddin (Mahmud) repulses the Franks, i. 708. Seizes on Senjar from Koithbo'ddin, his brother, and exchanges it with him for other places, 710. Defeats the Franks in Syria, *ib.* Defeated by Joselin, and treacherous revenge on him, and conquest in his territories, 711. Seizes on Damascus, 714. Defeats the rebel Dargan, vi. 55. Resentment against the faithless Shawe, and sends an army into Egypt, 56. With the success there, and new forces against him, *ib.* Sends thither also an army against the Franks, 57. Applied to by the caliph for assistance against the Franks, *ib.* Forbids the Fatemite caliph to be prayed for, 60. Grows jealous of Salahddin, but dies of a squinancy, 61  
 — (Mahmud) succeeds his father Zenki in Aleppo, i. 708. ii. 189  
 — (Abdararhman) great musti, comes ambassador from Baghdad to Timur Bek, and why not well received, ii. 531  
 — (Sheykh) saves Timur's life, ii. 536. Amply rewarded by him, 537. Immense presents, and tribute to him, 543. Success against the revolted princes, 544. Narrow escape before Batnir, 545. Scales the walls of Baghdad, 560. Exhorts the revolted Amirs to submit to Pir Mehemed, 578. Repulsed before Samarkant, 583. Falls out with Khodadad, and parts from him, and treacherously slain by Malek Shah, *ib.*  
 Nutmeg islands, called Bandas, iv. 489. Methods to prevent the growth of nutmegs out of them, and whether propagated by birds, 490 (B). Dutch plantations of them how ordered, *ib.*  
 Neville, picture of the French army, his partiality and ignorance detected, xi. 535 sub. fin. not.  
 Nuytz (Commodore Peter) his success in the East-Indies, iv. 425. Sent ambassador to Japan, 427. Shameful repulse at that court, and made governor of Formosa, *ib.* (A). Treachery to two Japanese vessels, 428 (B). Seized in his own palace by the Japanese, *ib.* (C). Forced to sign a shameful treaty with them, 429 (D). Ill consequence of it, *ib.* Imprisoned by the council of Batavia, *ib.* Delivered up to the emperor of Japan, 430. His mild sentence and punishment, *ib.* Lucky release, and arrival at Batavia, 431  
 Nyctalopia a disease in the eyes, iii. 649. The Chinese way of curing it, 650  
 Nyew-Lyen, sent to assist Atahku, ii. 538. His success against the Song, *ib.*  
 Nyew-ti (Hay) his great character and friendship to Taying, with his death, ii. 428  
 Nyu-che Tartars subdue the Lyautongers, iii. 721. Great success, *ib.* Defeated by Li-tsung, and an end put to their empire there, 722. Seize the north part of China, 754 (H).

O.

**O** A C C O province in Angola, described, vi. 492.  
 — the lord of it baptized, his large government, venomous insect, and strange effects of its sting, with the cure, 492 (A).  
 Oanguel made regent of Abyssinia, vi. 260 (T). Reception of Christopher de Gama, *ib.* Narrow escape from the

Moore, 262. Retreats to the Jewish mountains, 265. Forced submission to the patriarch Bermudez, *ib.* sub (Z). Conducted to the king her son, 268. Becomes an irreconcilable enemy to the Romish church, 274. sub (F).  
 Oarii, a province of Angola, described, the ancient residence of its kings, seized by the Portuguese, and strange fortrefs described, vi. 496. Salt and fresh springs, *ib.*  
 Oataz betrayed by Sharif Mohamed, vii. 175. Defeated by him, 176. Also by Hammed, *ib.* Taken prisoner, and interview with the Sharif, 178 (E). Strangled by Mohammed's order, 181  
 Oath, that of women, what, i. 40. Of fealty, or inauguration, taken before Mohammed, 68  
 Obaid, slain at the battle of Awtas, i. 87  
 Oban, a gold coin of Japan, iv. 26  
 Obeida (Abu) puts a party of the Koreish to flight, i. 49. Successful irruption, 64. He and his army almost famished, 80  
 Obeid'allah, the son of Ziyad, made lieutenant of Khorasan, i. 294. Success in Buccaria, *ib.* Made governor of Cufa by Yezid, 301. Mistaken for Hosein, and received with joy, but puts Moslem and Hani to death, 303. Sends forces to oppose Hosein, 304. Refuses to listen to his terms, *ib.* Indignity to his head, when brought to him, and to his son and daughter, 307. Becomes odious to the Cufans, *ib.* Favours Al Mondar's escape, contrary to Yezid's orders, 312. Courts the Basrans for the caliphate, is chosen, but abandoned by them, 317. Flees into Syria, *ib.* Drives the Motazalites out of Basra, 320. Sent to take and plunder Cufa, but is defeated, 327  
 — (Ebn Zobeir) made governor of Medina, i. 318  
 — (Abul Kafem) a famous astrologer, his account of that art, i. 584 sub (M).  
 —, first Fatemite caliph, v. 717. His conquests and death, 718 (X).  
 Obelerio, ninth doge of Venice, succeeds Giovanni, x. 184. Is suffered to devolve some of the burthen on his brother Beato, with contradictory accounts in this period, *ibid.* With his wife, Pepin's sister, torn to pieces, *ib.* Character, 185. Personated by an impostor, *ibid.* His punishment, *ib.*  
 Obeyd (Khan) his success in Khorasan, but defeated by Din Mahamed, with Naru and other cities delivered up to him, ii. 709. His death, 710  
 — (Khan) assists Omar Gazi in Karazm, ii. 726. Divides the prisoners among his generals, *ibid.* Totally defeated by Din Mahamed, *ib.* Over-reached by him, 729  
 Obi, a river of Western Tartary, ii. 119. Its course through the Eluth Mungls, 250. The considerable streams falling into it, xiii. 27, 28 and Notes.  
 Oballa taken and burnt by the Zenjians, ii. 489  
 Observatory of Pe-king, described, iii. 525. Improved by F. Verbieft, *ib.*  
 — of Teng-song (Tong-song) by whom contrived, iii. 544. 594  
 Obuljin, Jenghiz Khan's third wife, ii. 331  
 Obba's wager against Mohammed's prophecy lost and paid, i. 28  
 — (Ebn Caab) one of his amanuenses, i. 117  
 Ocaider, a Christian prince, taken prisoner by Mahomet, and becomes tributary to him, i. 94  
 Ocango, where situated, and scarcely known to geographers, vi. 380 (B).  
 Ochirtu-chechin (Khan) unites the Eluth tribes under him, ii. 442. Treacherously murdered by Kaldan, *ib.*  
 Ochus, Bernard, propagating that reformation by the Capuchin, and Charles Vth's character of him, x. 504  
 Ocotzk territory, on Kamtschatka coast, described, and the furthest north cape of Siberia, xiii. 52  
 — (Ostasio) the young duke, his distress on the uniting Parma to the holy see, xiii. 629. The cardinal's two brothers, account of, *ib.* As also their sister Victoria, *ibid.* His duchess Margaret governess of the Low Countries, *ib.*  
 Odhkos, a Turkish nation in Western Tartary, ii. 121  
 Odiaa, or Judia, the capital of Siam, besieged by the Burmas, iii. 257, 357. Its brave defence, 358. The siege raised, *ib.* Besieged and taken by Chaumigrem, 359. Its greatness falsely extolled, 383  
 Odin, or Othin, king of Sweden, an account of his reign and transactions, with a custom in his reign glorious to Sweden, xii. 218  
 Odiquan, a tribe of Hottentots described, 384—390  
 Odoli-hotun, famous ruins in Eastern Tartary, iii. 466



Oegwa, or Agua, a town on the Gold coast, described, vi.

663

Oesel province, in Russia, its division and contents, xiii. 18  
 — bishopric sold to the Danes, who exchange it for part of Holstein, xiii. 106

Oseira, an Arab lady, her bravery at the battle of Yermouk, i. 202

Ostrenburg, account of it, xv. 445

Officers rights, when the German princes do homage for their fiefs, xi. 383

Officers of the Swedish crown, the five great, a part of the constitution, xii. 215

— in Sweden, are maintained out of the crown lands, xii. 217. Provision made for those past services, ib.

Ofira, the capital city of the Lesser Ardrah, described, with great factories of the English and Dutch there, vi. 621

Ogilvy, the allies under that general take Eberenburg, xi. 319

Oginski, grand standard-bearer, obtains the supreme command of the Lithuanian confederacy, xii. 548. His and his party's demands, with Sapieha's manifesto against them, 566. By which many forsake Oginski, ib. Defeats Sapieha, but through a vigorous step taken by Augustus, the army of the latter is disbanded, and a treaty follows, 571. His faction throw themselves into Augustus's arms, 581. Defeated by Sapieha, as also by Charles XII. 582

Ogle, strength of his fleet, and arrival at Dominica, xv. 316. Engagement between four English, and four French ships, ib. Arrives at Jamaica, and a council of war held, ibid. Resolve to attack Carthagena by sea and land, ib. Animosity between him and Trelawny, with the character of each, 327

Oglethorpe's miscarriage on St. Augustine in Florida, and the causes, xiv. 433. Sails for Georgia, reception in Carolina, and plans the town of Savannah, xv. 100. Interview and treaty with the Creeks, 101. His character of them, ib. Arrives a second time in Georgia, 102. Transactions here, ib. Dealings with the Indians of Georgia, and travelling for intelligence about the natives, 103. Declaration of several Creek deputies, and that of Oglethorpe, 104. Declaration about the lands appropriated to the Creeks, ibid. Beats off the Spaniards, &c. from Georgia, and congratulations thereon, ib.

Ogurza, or Ogurja, a province of Karasm, described, ii. 714

Oguz (Khan) first khan of the Huns, ii. 133. His descendants how far spread, 693 and v. 1

Oguzians, whether a branch of the Turks, v. 1 (B)

Ohan, a Mungl province described, ii. 244

Ohio company, account of them, xiv. 700. How they alarm the natives, who are inflamed by the French, and separate traders, ib.

Ohod, the battle in which Mohammed was defeated, i. 56

Ojedo (Alonso de) with Americus, his voyage to America, xiv. 147. Uncertain where he first touched, and his account of the natives, ib. And Americus's second voyage to America, 149. And Nicuesa's voyages to America, 153. Arrival, with Pizarro at Carthagena, defeats the Indians, and his distress, ib. Assisted and revenged on them by Nicuesa, 154. Extreme distress, ib. Relieved by the Indians of Cuyba, 155. Generosity of Esquibel, of Jamaica, to him, ib. Death, ib. His discoveries on the American continent, xv. 352. Butcheries, and disregard of the Spaniards to the royal edict, 353. His fate, ib. Distress of the Spaniards, ib.

Oitz (Omi) lake in Japan, described, iv. 3

Okail, Ali's brother, goes over to Moawiyah, i. 274

Okba beheaded by Mahomet, i. 53

— his muleteer, a critic in the Alcoran, and a good poet, i. 119

— (Ebn Nafe) sent to conquer the Western Africa, i. 247

— (or Ocha) sent governor into Spain, and success there, i. 360

Oki Kronwi seizes on the crown of Siam, but expelled by the son of Api II. iii. 361

Oksenkar, or Aksankar, lord of Musol, takes Aleppo, i. 698. ii. 186. Assassinated in a temple, ib.

Oktay Kaan, his haughty answer to Alaoddin's embassy, ii. 230. Demands homage of Azzo'ddin, and his death, 232

— (Ogotay, or Ugaday) Jenghiz Khan's son, his valour against sultan Mohammed, ii. 296. Sent to besiege Otrar, ib. Commands alone at the siege of Karazm, and kind offers to Najmo'ddin rejected, 307. Valour at the battle of Indus, 317. Lays siege to Gazna, and takes it, 320. Success against the Kin, return to Tartary, 327. And de-  
 MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

clared his father's successor, 329. His character, 331. Difficulty to make him accept of the crown, 334. Great friendship to his brother Toley, ib. Settles the taxes, and the affairs of the empire, 335. And of his chief conquests, 336. Conquests in the province of Shen-si, ib. Offers peace to the Kin emperor, makes peace and alliance with the Song emperor, 342. Falls out with him, 346. Invades Korea, ib. Famous palace of Wan-gan, ib. sub (U). Sickness and death, 349. Issue and character, ib. Liberty and justice, 350

Ok-ya Praklang, his office in Siam, iii. 347

— (Pollatep) intendant of the revenue in Siam, iii. 347

— (Jombarat) judge criminal in Siam, iii. 347

— (Pakdi) or high treasurer in Siam, iii. 347

Ola (Al) defeats some revolted tribes, i. 134

Olaus I. or Uffon, succeeds his father Vermund, nineteenth king of Denmark, with his glorious reign and character, but no particulars related, xi. 671

— II. mounts the throne of Denmark after his father Ingell, thirtieth king, xi. 673 (G). His inglorious reign, and penitence at his death, ib.

— (or Olo) sister's son of Harold III. succeeds him as thirty eighth king of Denmark, xi. 677. Different accounts of this prince, ib. (L). Taken off by a conspiracy, 678

— III. elected fifty fifth king of Denmark, after his father Gotric, with different accounts of this prince, xi. 682

—, of Sweden, soon seizes the Danish crown, and at his death leaves it to his son Siward, who is slain in an insurrection in favour of Canute the Little, xi. 689

— Hungry or Famished, called from confinement with the earl of Flanders, to succeed his brother Canute the Pious, and seventy-seventh king in Denmark, xi. 701. Remarkable instance of brotherly affection in Nicolas substituting himself in his stead, ib. (A). The king's return for this, ib. Death by what occasioned, ib.

— V. of Norway, and son of Margaret, elected king of Denmark, xii. 73. Arrival at full age, and his impolitic investing Goerhard, of Holstein, in Sleswick, 74. Death and character, ib.

— intrigues of that archbishop in Norway, for the elector Palatine, xii. 152

— (Trætrelga) son of Ingel, king of Sweden, escapes the fire which destroyed the rest of the royal family, with his retirement and domestic transactions in Wermeland, xii. 226

—, or Tree-cutter, is raised to the Swedish throne on 'Afmund's being deposed, xii. 227. Marriage of his son Ingo with the daughter of Regner, king of Denmark, ib. Ansgarius's success in propagating christianity, which the king countenances, who is offered up a sacrifice to the heathen gods, and the occasion, with other transactions by him, ib. (B).

— (Scotconung) or the Tributary, raised to the Swedish throne in the room of Eric Stenchil Milde, xii. 228 (A). Three missionaries sent him by Ethelred, of England, with their success, ib. (B). A war between Sweden and Norway, by Swen of Denmark, his intrigues, ib. The Norwegians defeated by Olaus, of Sweden, 229. Unalienably annexes Gothland to Sweden, ib. A peace concluded by him with Oluf, the lawful heir of Norway, and the crown assigned to him, ib.

— (Truggeson) king of Norway, throws himself overboard, and perishes, xii. 229

Oldenburg, account of that house, xi. 654

— (Count) disputes between him and Denmark compromised, xii. 116. His wicked scheme for destroying the nobility of Schonen prevented by Gustavus, 151

Olga, Igor's wife, becomes a Christian, xiii. 88. Reckoned a Russian saint, ib.

Olgerdus and Keijustutus, on the imprisonment of their brother Janunutus, are raised to the Lithuanian throne, xii. 640. The moderation of each, and a partition made, ib. On a partition of the Lithuanian dominions between him and his brother Keijustutus, is made grand duke, 641. His ravages and cruelty in Prussia, Livonia, and the New Marche, ib. and 638. Defeats the Tartars, and takes the czar prisoner, with the insolent message of the latter, and his answer, ib. The consequences of this capture to Lithuania, and character, ib.

Olghars, a tribe of Turks in the Western Tartary, ii. 121. Their site, 122

Olibo (Hieronyma de) her abbey becomes subject to the order of Maltha, vii. 495

Olid (Christopher de) sent to settle a colony in Mechoacan, xiv. 274. Repulsed with loss by the Catimens, 275. Makes



- a settlement in Mechoacan, *ib.* Sent to find a passage from Honduras to the South-sea, 276. Revolts from Cortez, and assassinated by his soldiers, 277
- Oligiana, Visconti sends an army under him into Tuscany, who besieges Pistoia, and marches against Florence, but in vain, *xiii.* 328. With the siege of Scarpria also frustrated, the war continued, and Visconti baffled in his intrigues at Pisa, *ib.*
- , governor of Bologna, his successes, *xiv.* 77
- Olimar, a Vandal prince, his going over to Valdemar, *xii.* 16
- Olinda, the capital of Fernambuco, taking of it by the Dutch, *xi.* 519
- described, *xiv.* 478
- Olive, treaty of, concluded by Sweden with Poland, *xii.* 363. Denmark, Holland, and the Russians, *ib.*
- peace concluded on Charles Gustavus's death, and the conditions, with the origin of this war, as mentioned by some Polish writers, *xii.* 526 (B).
- Olivares's unexpected good fortune in Italy and elsewhere, renders him still more insolent, *viii.* 299. Persists in his resolution of having Casal, and orders Leganez accordingly, *ib.* Forms a design of depriving the Catalans of their privileges, 300. Measures which produce still greater calamities, and how, 301. Entreats the king's leave to retire, 304. Is disgraced, and a general clamour against him, *ib.* Draws up a strong apology, for which the king, who wanted to recal him, banishes him to Toro, *ib.* His death, 305. His schemes abortive with regard to Braganza and his own wife's conduct, 500. Procures secretary Lucena's ruin by forgery, with an account of the whole, 507
- (Count) appointed viceroy of Naples, his character, *x.* 511. With his very wise government, and embellishing Naples, *ib.* Recalled, *ib.*
- Olive (Peter John) condemned, with an account of him and his tenets, *ix.* 667 (E).
- (Mr. de) his tyrannic character and misconduct at Guadaloupe, *xv.* 225. Though governor is put under arrest at St. Christopher's by de Poincy, 226. Which he sells to the English, and new settles the island, with its fresh calamities, and the occasion, *ib.* Thrives through the prudence of Aubert, its governor, but dissension enters under Houel, who supercedes him, 227. Three destructive hurricanes, and their effects, *ib.* Conspiracy of the negroes through Houel's tyranny at last defeated, *ib.* His extortion, and Tracy sent over by the French king, who reduces the revolted slaves, and his injustice to the reformed, 228. The island purchased again by a new instituted company, *ib.* Another formed by the great Colbert, *ib.* A treaty of neutrality entered into between the French and English destructive to the latter, 229. Its articles, *ibid.* The great advantages to the French, *ib.* Descent of the English, and various accounts of it, *ib.* A rendezvous for privateers, *ib.* Vast quantities of sugar made here, and its other advantages, *ib.* Its importance apparent from its constitution since the cession in 1763, and what, 230. Its salubrious air and productions, with other curiosities, *ib.*
- Oliver (Van Noort) his first arrival at the Ladrões, *iv.* 240
- Oluf, of Norway, dispute between him and Canute of Denmark, and death in a battle fought against his own subjects, *xii.* 229
- Olympia disgraced and banished, with her character, *x.* 148. The Barberini restored to favour and confidence, *ib.* Again assumes the supreme direction in Rome, and the Barberini insinuate themselves into favour, 149
- Omado'ddin (Zenghi) see Amadoddin, founds the Attabec dynasty in Irak, *ii.* 186. Takes Aleppo and Hamah, *ib.* Defeats the caliph Al Mostafhed, 187. His design on Damascus frustrated, 188. Takes several other cities in Syria, but killed before the castle of Jabar, 189
- Omar, one of Mohammed's califs, *i.* 23. Becomes a convert to his religion, 25. Whence surnamed the Divider, *ib.* Settles the æra of the Hegira, 46. Success against the Hawanites, 74. Takes Abu Sofian, and other chiefs, prisoners, 80. Incloses the Caaba, 99. Obtains the second class, 118. Denies Mohammed to be dead, 131. Procures the caliphate to Abu Becr, 172. Succeeds Abu Becr in the caliphate, 148. His first speech to the people, and new title, 182. Sends an army against Persia, and gains several victories, *ib.* Is greatly incensed against Khaled's cruelty to the Damascenes, 186. Gives his commission to Abu Obeidah, *ib.* Makes new conquests in Irak, 187. Orders a bastinado on those who had drank wine in Syria, 189. Letter to Abu Obeidah, 190. His severe rebuke to him by a fresh one, and he gains many cities in Syria, 192. Sends 8000 men to reinforce his army there, 200. Confirms the capitulation of Jerusalem, and sets out with a numerous escorte to that holy city, 204. His mean provisions and carriage, with his administering justice on the road, 205. Signs the articles upon his arrival at the camp, and entry into Jerusalem, *ib.*—206. Adds some other favours to the city, *ib.* Vast success in Persia, 208. Returns to Medina, 210. Affecting humility, 218. His life wonderfully preserved, *ib.* Joy at the surrender of Antioch, and he permits the Moslems to marry Greek women, 220. A letter to the emperor Heraclius, 221. Forced to send for corn from Egypt, and to cut a canal for its greater dispatch, 240. Sends Aiyad to reduce Mesopotamia, 241. Stabbed in a mosque at Medinah, 245. Dies three days after, and buried near Mahomet, *ib.* With his character, and particulars of his death, 246. Why surnamed Al Taruc, or the Splitter, 247. Rejects every one that is proposed to be his successor, 248. Even his own son, *ib.*
- Omar (Ebn Hamak) becomes one of Othman's assassins, *i.* 255
- (Khan) put to death by Turkhan Khatun, *ii.* 305
- (Ebn) Obeid's success against the Greeks, *i.* 473
- II. friendship to the Jews, *v.* 516
- (Al Makfus) professes the Kadarian sect, *i.* 315. Why buried alive by the Ommiyans, 317. When they begun to decline, 381. The graves of the Ommiyan califs at Damascus shamefully insulted by Saleh Ebn Ali, *ib.* Receive some fresh defeats, 384. Hostilities against the house of Al Abbas, 386. One of that family made caliph in Spain, 390
- (Abbas) surprises and takes Soltaniya, *ii.* 516
- (Mirza Ekeykh) defeated by Toktamish, *ii.* 520. Pursues and defeats Ankatura, 522. And Kublik in his return homeward, 523. Marries the princess Sevinj, 524. Successful valour against the Kipjaks, 526. Success in Khuzeltan, 528. Made governor of Fars, 530. Slain before Kormatu, 532
- the son of Miran, promoted by Timur Bek, *ii.* 570
- (Sheykh) the son of Abufaid, his short reign and death, *ii.* 594
- (Ebn al) Hasan's revolt and defeat in Spain, *i.* 495
- Al Makfus's advice to his pupil Moawiyah II. *i.* 315
- (Ebn Abdallah) totally destroys the plundering Azarekites, *i.* 328
- (Ebn Abd'allaziz,) Soliman's son, appointed his successor, *i.* 353. Proclaimed after his death, 354—355. Abolishes the curse, *ib.* Persecutes the Christians, 356. Friendship to Ali's family, *ib.* Gentle answer to Shuzib's deputies, 357. Poisoned by a hired slave, with his partiality against the Christians, 358. Behaviour and last words, with his frugality, and character, 359
- , general of the Moslems in Sicily, totally defeated by the Christians, *i.* 644. Escapes by sea, *ib.*
- Omran, lord of Al Batiha, his infamous rise, *i.* 581. Robberies and death, *ib.*
- Omras, or the great Mogul's guards, their office, &c. *iii.* 44. What entitles them to that office, are guilty of oppression and avarice, 51
- Omund succeeds his father Olo, thirty-ninth king of Denmark, *xi.* 678. His war with Ringo, king of Sweden, and marries Ringo's daughter, and how brought about, *ib.* Policy in reducing Russia, a warlike virgin of Norway, with his death and character, *ib.*
- Omm (Borda) nurses Mohammed's son, *i.* 90
- (Forka) besieged in her castle, is taken and put to death by Mahomet, *i.* 68
- Salma, Mohammed's seventh wife, *i.* 115
- (Aiman) one of Mohammed's chamber-maids, *i.* 120
- Ommelands, or surrounding territory, ancient history of, *xi.* 400
- Ommeya, a prince of the Koreish, dies of grief, and his character, *i.* 54
- (Habiba) Ebn Sofian's daughter, married to Mohammed, and ninth wife, her death and tomb at Damascus, *i.* 74—115
- (Koithum) one of Mohammed's four daughters, married to Othman, but dies childless, *i.* 113
- Ommirabih, a river of Morocco, described, *vii.* 149
- Ommiyahan califs, from whom descended, *i.* 5
- tribe, oppose Ali's election, *i.* 253. Refuse to swear to him, 259
- family banished out of Medina, and a thousand of them besieged in Merwan's castle, *i.* 313



Ommiyans cursed by order of Moezzo'ddawla, i. 558. The form of the curse, *ib.* (E). End of their caliphate in Spain, 631

Ona monastery, by whom founded, vii. 638 (H).

Onag-Segued, or Etana-D-ngel, the eighty-seventh king of Abyssinia, receives an embassy from Portugal, vi. 253

Onchon seized in his camp by the Mahometans, is slain by his brother, *ib.* 441. Revenged by his son, 442

Onega, lake, account of, xiii. 6

Onhiot, a Mongul province, turned into a forest, ii. 245

Oniate (Count) arrives as viceroy of Naples, in the room of Arcos, with his character, x. 524. By his intrigues with Anneke and the other chiefs, he surprises and reduces Naples with very little bloodshed, *ib.* Publishes a general pardon, and applies to the re-establishment of the government, punishes the disaffected with great rigour, and extirpates the banditti, 525. Recovers Piombino and Portolongone, in Tuscany, from the French, and is recalled, with an account of his administration, *ib.* While employed against the banditti recalled, 526

Onk (Awank, or John) king of the Kerites, where situated, with his conquests and vast dominions, i. 714

— (Khan, or Tulikhan) supposed by travellers to be Prefter John, ii. 135

Onon, or Saghaban, a river of West Tartary, ii. 119

Onor, a town of Kanara, with its pagod and idol, iii. 160. Taken and lost by the Portuguese, iv. 142

Ontario fort, evacuated by the English as untenable, xiv. 710

Onneyyouth's deputation offer submission to the French, xiv. 659

Onnontague, noble intrepidity of a venerable one, xiv. 658

Onnontagueie, some of them come to Montreal to treat of peace with presents, and engage other tribes on their way home, with the intelligence these give about the Iroquois, xiv. 591. Startled at a message from New York, and speech thereon, 620. Treat with la Barre, *ib.* But despise the French, *ib.* Noble intrepidity of a venerable one, 658.

Conversion among them by father Chaumonot, xiv. 593. Instance of extraordinary female virtue here, *ib.* Some Hurons among them why enemies to the fathers, and the latter save the French colony, *ib.* Project of a French settlement among them, which the Agniers resolve to frustrate, *ib.* Distress of the French on their march thither, and how relieved, 594. Dupuy's parade in entering the country, and the good effects, *ib.* Deputies, their arrival at Quebec, and what errand, why incensed, whom Lauson pacifies, 595. Perfidy of these savages to the Hurons verified, 596. Conspiracy to cut off all the French, and the occasion, *ib.* Their wonderful escape, and by what means, with some strictures on the account, *ib.*

Ookimatz, the 107th emperor of Japan, iv. 60

Oomi, a river of Japan, described, also its lake, iv. 3

Opdam, sea-fight between him and Wrangel, the Swedish admiral; the latter retreating, Opdam saves Copenhagen, xi. 584. The Dutch fleet, under Opdam, enter the Sound for the relief of Copenhagen, with a famous battle fought between them and the English fleet, in which Opdam is accused of negligence, xii. 181 (C). Copenhagen siege turned into a blockade, and the elector of Brandenburg marches to Frederic's relief, *ib.* Several advantages gained over the Swedes, *ib.* Orders given him to fight the English under pain of death, xi. 597. The Dutch fleet defeated by the duke of York, between Yarmouth and Harwich, with Opdam's ship blown up, and an account of the loss on both sides, 598

Opium, though not forbidden by the Alcoran, yet deemed unlawful by the Turks, i. 172

Oppecanacanough, account of that Virginian chief, and massacre of the English, xv. 366. Taken, and brutally stabbed, with his magnanimous character, *ib.*

Oqué-Louffas savages, where, and why so called, xv. 48

Orainites, eight of them for treachery cruelly punished by Mohammed, i. 64

Oran betrayed by the Jews, v. 589

— (or Auran) taken by the Spaniards, vii. 201. The capital of the Western Algerine circuit, 228. Taken, and retaken by the Spaniards, *ib.* (H).

— taken by the Moors, viii. 361

— expedition by the Spaniards thither, xv. 570. Which with Fort Mazalquiver, they take, *ib.*

Orange fort, on the isle of Gorée, taken by the French, vii. 79

— (Cape de) the inhabitants from Amazon river to it described, xiv. 482. Chief trade, *ib.*

Orange (Prince of) his progress after Bourbon, xiii. 525. Siege of Cortona by that prince, who takes it, as also Arezzo, 526. Killed at Cavinana, 531.

— Takes Saas Van Ghent, ix. 414. Hulst, 417. The Stadtholdership, &c. made hereditary in that family, 460. Stratagem in taking of Naerden, 459. Defeated in the battle of Mount Cassel, but makes a matterly retreat from St. Omer, 463. Why he and other nobles, &c. retire into Germany, xi. 406. Marches with an army into Germany, 407. Defeats a party of Spaniards at Noiteim, 408. But his rear in crossing the Geate defeated by Alva, and disbanding his army, *ib.* North Holland and Mons reduced by them, 410. Successes, 411. Retires to Holland, *ib.* In high estimation, and at Breda chosen governor of Brabant, &c. who upon the duke of Archot inviting archduke Matthias to Flanders, concurs with him, 418. Rejects Philip's offers, 423. Renews the treaty with the duke of Anjou, and the opposition the latter meets with, 424. With his friends is proscribed by Philip, and Villiers employed by the prince to answer the proscription, 425. An attempt made on his life, 427. Remonstrance to the states-general, 428. His assassination at Delph, 429

— character of William I. his privileges as Stadtholder, and restrictions, xi. 389

— (Henry) twice repulsed from Spinola's lines, xi. 505. His speech against his ill-treatment answered by a manifesto from the provincial states of Holland, 554. Proposes an accommodation with Amsterdam, and the magistrates motives for agreeing to it, with the terms, 555. His death and character, 556 (A). A young prince born eight days after the death of his father, 556

— (Princess Dowager) by circular letters to the provinces notifies the birth of her grandson, and the result, with disputes about his tutelage, xi. 557. And in whose favour determined, *ib.* The prince's exclusion from the Stadtholdership, 573. The princess remonstrates to the Dutch against the act of exclusion, as does the elector of Brandenburg, but to little effect, *ib.* The people discontented thereupon, *ib.* Apology of the states of Holland to her, *ib.* Dissensions about the tutelage of that prince, and the states of Holland seize on the princess dowager's papers, 590. With king Charles's complaints on this action, *ib.* Disputes between Holland and Zealand about that prince's education, 592

— (William III.) made captain-general, and high-admiral of the states, ix. 430. Retakes Naerden and Bonn, &c. xi. 288. Is obliged to raise the siege of Maestricht, 292. Defeats a body of Spaniards, 545. Takes Dixmuyde and Huy, 316. Reduces Namur, 317

— an attempt by Richelieu to seize on that city through Walkemburgh the governor, xi. 522. How frustrated by Knuyth, and thence the aversion of the Orange family to the house of Bourbon ever after, *ib.* Takes Venlo, 524. How cardinal Richelieu effects a reconciliation, 534. Lays siege to Breda, and its state under Fourbin the governor, with his generosity to the garrison, and the cardinal forced to retire, *ib.* Disputes between him and the province of Holland, the states-general supporting the former, 553. Proceeds with a deputation from the states-general to several places in Holland, and his bad reception, 554. Confines the six deputies of Holland in Louestein castle, *ib.* The king of France seizes on that principality by marshal Pleffis Praslin, 588. Instructions on this head to the states ambassadors in France and England, *ib.* Attachment of the states of Zealand to that family, with a pension of 40,000 florins assigned the prince, *ib.* The act of exclusion against him abolished by the states of Holland, *ib.* Plot in favour of that prince discovered, 604

—, prince of, on de Wit's massacre, promoted to the whole administration of Holland and Zealand, xi. 618

— offer of the sovereignty of Guelderland declined by that prince, xi. 624. Occasion of ingratiating himself with the province of Utrecht, and their making the Stadtholdership hereditary in his heirs male, *ib.*

— espouses Mary, daughter to the duke of York, and his influence thereby, ix. 464. xi. 544. The views on both sides, xi. 626. Conferences after this upon a plan of pacification with France, Charles renouncing all connections with Lewis, *ib.* Almost frustrated through the cajollery of the French court towards king Charles, *ib.* Abandons the siege of Maestricht, 624. He refuses to enter into a separate peace for the Dutch republic with France, and his motives, 625. Causes of animosity between Lewis and that prince, with Lewis's revenge in seizing Orange, 630. The oppression



- oppression of the inhabitants of that principality, and redress solicited at Paris to no effect, *ib.* His intercepting the French ambassador's letters gives a new turn, 631. And he carries all before him, *ib.* His intrigues in England, 636. Refuses his consent to the abolition of the penal laws and test act in England, *ibid.* Intrigues in England, *ib.* Preparations for invading England, *ib.* Safe arrival in England, and joyful reception, 637. Greatly afflicted in the Revolution by Charles II. of Spain, viii. 338. Account of the confederacy projected by him to oppose Lewis, ix. 467. That prince, when king of England, prevails on the parliament to accede to the treaty, *ib.* Account of the reasons which drew Spain into this confederacy, *ib.*
- Oranienbaum-palace, xiii. 20
- Oratavia, the chiefest port of Teneriff, described, vi. 141
- Ordas, or Aymaks, among the Mungls, how distinguished, ii. 261
- Ordas, (Diego de) sent with a party to scour the streets of Mexico, extricates himself, and retreats with difficulty, xiv. 238
- Ordogno (Don) succeeds Ramiro in Spain, and quashes a revolt in Alava, vii. 601. Commits an unknown piece of injustice against a bishop, *ib.* His victories and conquests, 602. Resigns to his son, and dies, *ib.*
- Ordogno II. succeeds his brother Don Garcias, and defeats the Moors, vii. 608. His success against them, *ib.* Loses the battle of Junquira, and his character, 609 (H). His death, 610
- III. succeeds Ramiro in Spain, vii. 615. Suppresses an insurrection, invades the Moors, and reduces the count of Castile, 615. His death, 616
- IV. set up by the count of Castile, vii. 616
- Ordonnez draws up Almagro's men at Salinas, is wounded and defeated, xiv. 317
- Oreja, a coast, why so called by Columbus, xiv. 150. Account of the natives, and their customs, *ib.* (F).
- Orenburg government, and its chief places described, xiii. 32
- Orestes, the Alexandrian prefect, his bloody fray with bishop Cyrill, and narrow escape from his monks, v. 510. Revenge on him and them, 511
- Orford, a cape of the South-sea, described, v. 28
- Orient (Port le) the French settlement there described, iv. 631. Greatly improved by the present company, 632 (R).
- Orietan, a city of Arracan, iii. 228
- Oriflamme, or banner in France, when first borne, ix. 36
- Orkanj, or Urgensh, the capital of Karazm, and two places of that name, ii. 715 (A). Its ruinous state described, and trade, 716. Ancient grandeur, and present misery, *ibid.* Situation, *ib.* See Urgensh.
- Orkham, Urkham, or Hyrcan, and his family come over to Mohammed, i. 26
- Or-khan sent to reduce Bithynia, v. 154. Succeeds his father as second Othman Sultan, and attacked by Andronicus, *ib.* Message and presents to him, 155. Great successes in Semendura, changes his residence and his coin, and he new models his army, *ib.* Generosity to the Niceans, with his other conquests, and he brings some Seljuk princes under tribute, 156. Seizes on Bergama, and the traitor Hajil, with other towns submit to him, *ib.* Ill success against him at sea, 157. Sends aid to Cantacuzenus, 158. Marries Cantacuzenus's daughter, 159. His grand reception of her, *ib.* Pays him a pompous visit, and sends him considerable aid, *ib.* Recals it privately, 160. Assists him against Paleologus, *ib.* Unjust behaviour to him in Thrace, *ib.* Assists Matthew against Paleologus, 161. Attempts to pass into Europe, *ib.* Sends his second son thither. 162. Dies of grief, and his character, *ib.*
- Orkney (Earl) governor of Virginia, now a sine-cure, xv. 374
- Orkneys, by whom reduced, xi. 685
- Orkon, Orkhon, a river of West Tartary, ii. 119. Described, 247
- Orleans (Father) his account of the revolution in Siam, iii. 387
- some priests burnt alive for heresy there, ix. 24. Besieged, 256
- (Duke) declaring for Wincefflaus, returns from Germany without effecting any thing, ix. 125. Dispossesses his uncles of power, but is dispossessed by the duke of Burgundy, *ib.* Who secures the young duke of Bretagne, and his brothers much for the interest of France, *ib.* Sends a challenge to Henry IV. of England, with the answer, *ib.* Their mean and oppressive methods render them odious, and are forced to retire, 126. Hence great disorders arise, and the duke of Orleans and the duke of Burgundy fail in their attempts against the English; but after a solemn reconciliation, the former is assassinated by command of the latter, 127. His titles, and that of his dutchess, with their issue, *ib.* (F).
- Orleans commands in the Low-countries, ix. 413. Ransom paid in England by the duke of Burgundy, with their reconciliation, 153. Declared lieutenant-general of the kingdom by the parliament, 435. His retreat to Dauphiny, xiv. 135. The duke though successful displeases king Philip, viii. 362. Strange part acted by him, ix. 418. Intrigues quashed by Beaujeu's prudence, and makes term the best he could, 181. Retires into Bretagne to execute his former schemes, *ib.* His death, whom his brother succeeds in title, 347. Publishes a manifesto in Burgundy, penetrates into Languedoc, and is supported by Montmorency, with his character, 387. Gives notice of Goertz's schemes, xii. 410
- (Regent) dies, with the important alterations occasioned thereby in Spain, xv. 565
- (Mademoiselle) her proposal to the queen mother, ix. 434
- (Bastard) relieves Montargis besieged by Warwick, ix. 146
- (Maid of) how she relieves and raises the siege of that city, with some account of her, ix. 147. Performs great feats, and is amply rewarded by the king, who is crowned at Rheims, *ib.* Taken in a folly at Compeigne, and sold to the English, but the besiegers forced in their camp, *ib.* Burnt at Rouen in Henry the sixth's presence, *ib.*
- Orleans (Dutchess of) her successful negotiation with Charles II. ix. 454
- Lewis island in St. Laurence river described, xiv. 551
- , account of it, xiv. 717
- (New) capital of Louisiana founded, xv. 24
- (New) the colony of Louisiana transported from Biloxi to it, as the head-quarters, xv. 30. Damages done there by a hurricane, 31. Its inconveniency, 59
- Ormiyan fortrefs rebuilt, ii. 566
- Ormond, the allies passing the Scheld produces his orders not to act offensively, xi. 355. After investing Quesnoi, he acquaints the other generals with his orders to publish an armistice, and most of the foreigners in the English pay separate from Ormond, who also withdraws and takes possession of Dunkirk, *ib.* Quesnoi in the mean time surrendering, *ib.*
- and Jarnigan's arrival at Petersburg, with their views, but frustrated, xiii. 234
- Ormuz island (see Hormuz) taken by Abbas Shah, ii. 616
- city seized upon by the Portuguese, ii. 699. iv. 126. Attempted in vain by the Turks, 131. Its strength and importance, 136. Situation and trade, attempted by the Portuguese, 137. Its strong citadel, *ib.* Wealthy and luxurious inhabitants, 138. Vast sums raised by its governors, *ib.* Attacked by the English and Persians both by sea and land, 139. Immense sums gained by the plunder of it, *ib.* The ruins of it carried off by the Dutch, *ib.*
- Ornus, the Greek, defeated by the Othmans, v. 153. Surrenders the city of Prusa, 154 (B).
- (Haji) made Beglerbeg of Rum, with his conquests and ravages in Thrace, &c. v. 16 (B) and (C).
- Ornano, (Marshal) his honest remonstrance to king Henry IV. on the oppressions in Guienne, ix. 337. Well received by the king, though not by his courtiers, *ib.*
- Oro (Castello del, &c.) granted to Nicuesa, xiv. 153. What country is so called now, *ib.*
- Orobio, a concealed Jew, comes to Amsterdam, and makes public profession of Judaism, with his works, v. 614 (sub M).
- Orochon, people, where seated, iii. 464
- Oroonoko, account of islands there, and the inhabitants, xv. 364
- Orpan, a Mungl city, its ruins, ii. 244
- Orfini (Cardinal) restores peace in Rome, and two senators chosen annually to govern the city, ix. 647
- Orsova battle, xiii. 98
- Orthodox, cruelly persecuted in Africa, by Genferic, v. 707. By Huneric, when twenty-eight shewed surprising constancy, 709. Dreadful treatment from the Moors, 710. Recalled by Gutamund, 711. Restored by Belisarius, 717
- Ortiz (John) surprising adventure of that Spaniard, xv. 66
- (or Ortos) a province of Mongolia, where situated, ii. 246



Orry (M.) regulates the finances, also other public matters, and good effects throughout Spain, viii. 367

Osages, savages, xv. 48

Osakka, a city of Japan, described, iv. 38. Its port and watch, ib. (II).

Osama made commander of Mohammed's forces, i. 105. Comes to receive his dying blessing, 107. Quiets the army after his death, 109. Assists at the funeral rites, *ibid.* Invades Syria, 135

Osarno, account of its bloody siege by the Chileans, but repulsed, xiv. 324

Osborne's success against M. de la Clue's squadron in Carthage harbour, with the complaints of the French, xv. 587

Osma (Peter de) several propositions in his book condemned, x. 40

Osmin, the brave Amir, put to death by Timur Bek, ii. 538

—— (Pasha) defeated by Mirza-Hamzeh, ii. 607

Osnabrug, congress there and at Munster, xii. 352. The terms for Sweden, and those she might have claimed from her successes, *ib.* Particular articles in that treaty relating to Sweden and others, xi. 272. With regard to the Imperial chamber and Aulic council, *ib.* The king of Spain protests against the treaty, and the pope publishes a bull against it, with the ratifications of the treaty exchanged, 273. The execution regulated by another treaty concluded at Nuremberg, *ib.*

Ostian succeeds his father Adel in the Swedish throne, but is miserably destroyed in a revolt of his subjects, xii. 225

Ostend East-India company, its rise and progress, iv. 633. When, and by whom first established there, 634. Impowered to make reprisals, 635. Obtain the promise of a charter, 636. Opposed by the maritime powers, 637. And by the Dutch more strenuously, with their motives for it, *ib.* (D). And by Great-Britain, 638. The charter granted the company by the emperor, 639. The substance of it, *ib.* (G). Conduct of the Dutch on occasion of it, 641. Conduct of the French, *ib.* Imitated by Spain, 642. Memorial against it, *ib.* Their receding from it alarms the maritime powers, &c. 643. The conduct of the Dutch on that occasion, 644. The company obstructed by the treaty of Hanover, 645. The conduct of the courts of Vienna and Madrid on that occasion, 646. Agree to suspend the charter for seven years, 647. The preliminaries settled and signed at Paris, *ib.* A vain project to remove the commerce to some other Imperial port, 649. The company finds ways to go on with it, 650 (Q). By sham passports from Poland, &c. 651. Make Hamburg their staple, *ibid.* Opposed by the maritime powers, *ib.* A second ship sent thither, 653. A stop put to that practice by the Imperial authority, 654. The dissolution of the company, 655

—— siege of, continued, xi. 466. Slow progress, 467

Osterman appointed prime minister of Russia, xiii. 266

Ostiacks described, xiii. 37

Ostriches of Africa described, and their surprising fleetness, v. 686 (A). Stupidity, 687

Ostrog, what, xiii. 41 (O).

Ostrogs, or forts on the Jenesei, xiii. 48

Oswego, built by governor Burnet, its advantages in several respects what, xiv. 542

—— fort taken by the French, and their base breach of articles, xiv. 711. Consequences of this event, *ib.*

Ostiat (Cardinal de) his character, ix. 328. See Nantes.

Ostuna (Duke of) appointed viceroy of Naples, who becomes odious by his haughty behaviour, but at last gains the goodwill of the Neapolitans, x. 510. His character, 513. Infests the trade of the Venetians in the Adriatic, with complaints of the Neapolitans against him, and his ambitious designs, 514. Dies, viii. 294

Othalic, son of Jaromir, created duke of Bohemia, x. 645

Othman, or Ottoman empire, its rise and foundation, v. 135. History of, 136. His ancestors settle in Persia, 137. Remarks on the fabulous part of his history, *ib.*—145. And on the writers of it, *ib.* *passim.* His rise and election, 146. One of the seven Turkish princes, with his first conquests and stratagems in war, 147. He ravages Bithynia, *ibid.* With other Turkish princes, 148. Takes Belokome, 149 (U). Ravages Asia Minor, 152. Repulsed before Nicomedia; he retires, and defeats the two Greek governors, and recovers Kutahia, 153. His threatening edict, and he reduces several cities and castles, but is invaded by the Chaudar Tartars, *ibid.* Other conquests, and his death, 154

——, one of Mohammed's caliphs, i. 23

MON. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Othman (Ebn Matun) dies in the second Hejira, i. 54

—— (Ebn Affan) sent to treat with the Meccans, is imprisoned by them, i. 67. Embraces Islamism, 77. Made perpetual guardian of the Caaba, 82. Contributes largely towards the Greek war, 93. Is one of Mohammed's secretaries, 117. And illustrious friends, 119. Writes Abu Becr's last will, 147. Elected caliph after Omar's death, 248. Pursues his predecessor's conquests, with his success in Egypt, &c. 249. In Khorasan, 252. Iconia, *ib.* And in Nubia, 253. Becomes hateful to the Moslems, 254. His haughty speech exasperates the mutineers, who raise a sedition against him, *ib.* His offers rejected, *ib.* Betrayed by his secretary, 255. Cruelly murdered by Abu Becr, with his contemptuous burial, *ib.* Character, 256. Conquests, 257 *ad fin.*

—— Yezid's lieutenant, deposed and banished, i. 313

—— Ebn Walid's success in Mesopotamia, i. 334

—— Al Walid's general, penetrates into Cilicia, i. 344

—— the son of Al Walid, declared his successor, i. 371. Imprisoned by Zczid, 372. Murdered by Soliman, 374

—— Al Kara Ilug, the third shah of the white sheep dynasty, highly promoted by Timur Beg, and slain by Iskander, ii. 702

—— Ebn Kaka ravages the Christian dominions, i. 408. See Othman empire.

——, father of the Turks, ancestry uncertain, v. 136 and notes.

—— porte, why it rejects the name of Turk, v. 135

—— (Ebn Hanif) made governor of Basra, i. 260

Othmanjik, where, and by whom built, is garrisoned by Bajazet, v. 168 (S).

Othmans, or Ottomans, their original, v. 135. Why they reject the name of Turks, *ib.* Alteration made in their dress, weapons, pay, &c. 155. And their infantry defeated by Andronicus, 157

——, or Ozmans, who, and whence, v. 135. They settle in Persia, 137

Otho I. elected emperor in the room of his father Henry the Fowler, x. 629. Account of his hereditary dominions, *ib.* (E). Address of the archbishop of Mentz to him in the great church of Aix-la-chapelle, with the ceremony of his coronation, *ib.* Upright administration, his defeating the Hungarians at Dortmund, and checking the Sclavi, *ibid.* He sends an army against Boleslaus, who is at first defeated by Ætlic, but the whole Imperial army cut to pieces, *ibid.* After a long war Boleslaus submits to the emperor, *ibid.* The three sons of Arnold, duke of Bavaria, refuse homage to Otho, who gives that duchy to Bertolf, Arnold's brother, and, entering Bavaria, seizes Everard, the eldest, and banishes him; yet the two brothers obtain each a palatinate, 630. On the Lorrainers revolting, defeats them, takes Brisac, Metz, and Chevreumont, 631. Marches into France, but is recalled to Saxony to quell a new conspiracy of his brother Henry, *ib.* The conspirators beheaded, Henry imprisoned, and pardoned, *ib.* Regulates the policy of his dominions, and erects the see of Triers into a principality in favour of Rulbert, 632. Gives his brother Henry the duchy of Bavaria, on Bertholf's death, and marches into France to assist Lewis, and the count of Flanders, against Hugh the Great, *ib.* After taking Rheims, and ravaging the duchy of France, the allies besiege Rouen, but are obliged to abandon it with loss, and a truce agreed to by the emperor's mediation, *ib.* Why he makes war with the Danes, but it ends in an accommodation, 633. Mediates a peace between Lewis and Hugh, with the emperor's son Ludolphin married to Iddaof Suabia, *ib.* Takes Boleslaus, but grants him peace, and entering Italy, on Alix's importunity, marries her on the death of his first queen Ethica of England, obliging Beranger to submit, who yet recovers his friendship, *ib.* His son Ludolphus revolts, with his pathetic submission and pardon; marches against the Hungarians, whom he cuts in pieces, 634. Defeats the Sclavi, and on a second revolt pardons them, and receives embassies from the Arabs of Cordova, and queen of the Russians, *ib.* Sends an army into Italy, under Ludolphus, against Beranger, with success, and his son's death of grief, and the pope again implores the emperor's assistance against Beranger, *ib.* After his son Otho is elected and crowned king of Germany, he returns to Italy, is consecrated and crowned emperor at Rome, the Romans swearing allegiance to him, with his expedition into France, and restoring Lewis against Hugh the Great, *ibid.* (H). Largeesses in Rome, and letters patent expedited, by which he is acknowledged supreme head of the church, *ib.* Condemns Beranger and his wife to perpetual imprisonment, 7 G *ibid.*



ibid. Returns to Rome, calls a council, and deposes pope John, with the crimes laid to his charge, 635 (I). Erects Capua into a principality for Pandulph, ib. Holds a diet at Cologne, in which the division of Lorraine is confirmed, ib. On Leo's death, John XIII. is made pope by him, he punishes the Romans for their inconstancy, and revolt, 630. Establishing a well regulated police, he causes his son Otho to be crowned emperor, and receives an embassy from Phocas, emperor of Constantinople, sends an army into Calabria, which defeats the Greeks, ib. Marching into Italy raises the siege of Canosa, and marries Adelaide, ix. 542. Is crowned king by the archbishop at Milan, 543. Also emperor by the pope at Rome, ib. Solemn oath between them, with Otho's regulations as to the holy see, retaining jurisdiction over the lands granted it, ibid. His return to Pavia, and marching against Berengarius, 544. The pope, notwithstanding his oath, makes a secret treaty with Albert for expelling the Germans, ib. Solicits the Hungarians to invade Germany, and Otho marches with part of his army to Rome, where he assembles a council of bishops, ib. Accusations in it against pope John XII. who is deposed, and Leo VIII. chosen, ib. Who grants a bull in favour of Otho, and his successors; but the Romans, excited by John to revolt, are defeated by Otho, and pardoned, 545. After quelling a rebellion in Rome, returns to Germany, x. 390. After coming into Italy on a second commotion in Rome, and severely punishing the chiefs, he causes his young son Otho to be crowned by the pope, ibid. Sends an embassy by Luitprand to Constantinople, for an alliance, with Luitprand's account of the embassy and another embassy to him at Rome, from Nicephorus, the Greek emperor, with the latter's treachery, 391. Declaring war, besieges Bari in vain, ib. Marches his army to Rome, and restores Leo; but in a council Benedict voluntarily resigns, and is banished to Hamburgh, ix. 545. Adelbert flying to Corsica, Otho returns to Germany, when the Italians revolt, and recal Adelbert, who is repulsed by duke Burchard, Otho's general, ib. And Leo dying, the Romans send to Otho to consult about a successor; and having leave, they chuse John XIII. ib. The Romans rebel, and imprison the new pope, banishing him the city; but Otho returns with an army, and punishes first the rebels of Lombardy, for inviting Adelbert, 546. He next marches to Rome, and very severely punishes the authors of the revolt, ib. Renews the privileges of the Venetian republic, making Grada the metropolitan see, and goes with the pope to Ravenna, ib. And renews the grant of Pepin and Charlemagne to the holy see, &c. and sends for his son Otho from Germany, who is crowned emperor at Rome, ib. Otho sends also an embassy to the Greek emperor, demanding his daughter Theophania for his son, ib. Unbecoming treatment of the ambassador, ib. (D). Perfidy of the Greek emperor towards Otho, who sends an army into Calabria, against the Greeks, ib. They are defeated, and Nicephorus being slain by John Zimisces, the latter is declared emperor, with Otho's transactions in conferring honours, 547. The emperor John concludes an alliance with Otho, and sends Theophania into Italy, who is married, and crowned empress at Rome, ib. Otho returns to Germany, dies at Minlebon, with his character and marriage, x. 636 (M). Inscription on his tomb at Magdeburg, ib. (N).

Otho I. emperor, surnamed the Great, converts the Danes, and is succeeded by his son and grandson of that name, xv. 464. Great confusion in Italy, especially in Rome, ix. 547

— II. or Sanguinary, succeeds his father Otho as emperor, x. 636. Opposed by Henry of Bavaria, who is soon reduced, as is also Harold of Denmark, who promises an annual tribute, 637. After ravaging Bohemia, defeats Henry, and the duke of Carinthia, and makes an advantageous peace with the Bohemian king, ib. How engaged in a war with Lotharius, king of France, and confers Lorraine as a fief on Charles, Lotharius's brother, ib. Ravages Champagne, and the isle of France, with a peace on his own terms, and different accounts of this matter, ib. (P). Why he marches into Italy, hazards a battle, and is totally defeated, being afterwards taken by Corsairs, and how he escapes, ib. (Q). His punishing those who deserted him in the late action, with the origin of the epithet Sanguinary, and his other appellations, 638. Orders the Saxons and Thuringians to make head against the Slavonians, who retreats with great loss, ib. Concluding peace with the French, enters Italy with an army, and the proceedings in an assembly which he holds in a field at Ron-

callia, ix. 548. Manner of the emperor's marching to Rome, ib. (R). Renders himself odious to the Italians by his cruelty at an entertainment, ib. Defeats the Greeks and Saracens several times, who gain a complete victory over him, through the desertion of the Italian auxiliaries, the fruits of which the Greeks lose, and Otho assembles a new army, 549. Takes and plunders Benevento, goes to Verona, where his son Otho is declared emperor, and he himself dies at Rome, with a remarkable regulation of his in Italy, ibid. and x. 545 (S).

Otho III. or Infant, declared emperor, and Boniface, returning from Constantinople, occasions new disturbances in Rome, but dies, ix. 549. x. 638. Crescentius expels pope John XV. who complaining to the emperor is recalled, and the Germans, under Theophania, quiet disturbances in Rome, but great commotions arise in Milan, ix. 549. Crescentius persuades the Romans to revolt, but Otho marching into Italy reduces Milan, where he is crowned king of Lombardy, 550. Marching to Rome, crowned emperor, and Mary empress, ib. Pardons Crescentius, and in his way orders the count of Modena, on a false accusation by the empress, to be beheaded, with different accounts of this matter, ib. Through Crescentius's means the Romans revolt, and expel the pope, chusing Philagathus in his room, ib. On pope Gregory's entreaty returns into Italy, and reduces Rome, punishing the anti-pope, ibid. Puts Crescentius to death, and pope Gregory restored, and makes a decree about the election of emperor, 551. Doing penance at Rome, and on what account, after which he returns to Germany with his army, ib. Again enters Italy, defeats the Saracens, who had invaded Campania, and marches to Rome, where he punishes some of the seditions, and several decrees of the emperor excite a new revolt of the Romans, ib. They attack his palace, and very narrowly escaping, assembles an army to punish the Romans, but is poisoned by Crescentius's widow, with a different account of his death, ib. Opposed by Henry duke of Bavaria, who seizes the emperor; also by Crescentius in Rome, but the German princes rescue and proclaim him at Weissenstadt, x. 639. Subdues the Slavonians and Danes, ib. Wife regulations in his dominions, ib. War with Sueno of Denmark, and its success; he also makes a treaty with Eric of Sweden and Denmark, ib. Upon the Romans treatment of the popes, he sends his mother Theophania with an army into Italy, who restrains them; she dies on her return, and his war with the Slavi, and its success, 640. Regulating the police, and assembling a diet at Magdeburg for supplies to Italy, he enters Milan, and is crowned king of Lombardy; also crowned emperor at Rome by pope Gregory V. ib. Does a very signal piece of justice on his own empress at Modena, ib. (U). After his return to Germany, expels the Slavi from Bernburg, ib. Upon Crescentius's revolt, he besieges Rome, and puts him and pope John XVI. &c. to death, 641 (Y). Decree upon this concerning the emperor, and the pope's power, ib. On Gregory V. his death, he supplies his place with Sylvester II. ib. On his return to Germany, he erects Poland into a kingdom, and fief of the empire, ib. He opens Charlemagne's tomb at Aix-la-Chapelle, ib. (Z). Marching into Italy, he expels the Saracens, and reduces the Tiburtines, ibid. Marches again to Rome, and puts an end to the disorders there, and confers Capua on Ademarius, after expelling Landulph, x. 393. Defeats the Saracens, and recovers Capua, &c. from them, and dies without issue; his character, with the different princes set up by the Italians, 394.

Otho IV. on Philip of Suabia's death, is crowned emperor by the pope in Rome, x. 427. Declares his intention of maintaining the Imperial rights in Italy, and being invited invades Puglia, with his success, ib. The pope excommunicates him, ibid. — after the Romans killing a thousand Germans, recovers several Tuscan cities, ix. 617. — election renewed, x. 696. After Philip's assassin is slain, marries his daughter Beatrice, ix. 616. And gratifies the pope in all his demands, but suffers severely for refusing to perform them, ib. Nominates Rodolphus of Hapsburg, vicar and avoyer, after the pope's offer of the crown to him, if he came to Italy, ibid. Repairs to Rome, and crowned there, with the terms, x. 696. After a quarrel between the Romans and Imperialists, and receiving no satisfaction from the pope, winters in Lombardy, is excommunicated and dethroned in favour of Frederick, son of Henry VI. 697. Returns to Germany, and makes war upon the revolters, ib. Joins his uncle, the king of England, against Philip Augustus, of France, particularly on



- on account of a wager between them, *ib.* (T). He and his confederates defeated by the French near Bouvines, *ib.* and 698 (U). Expedition into Jutland, and his motives, xi. 691. The event of this war uncertain, and conferences between that emperor and Harold, *ib.* Takes Hamburg, but on king Valdemar's approach quits it, xii. 27. Negotiations of the patriarch of Aquileia for him, xiii. 564. Who himself arrives in Italy, and being crowned in Milan and Rome, falls out with the pope, but confirms the Bolognese privileges, *ib.* The Germans enslave Frederic in his room, *ib.*
- Otho, elector of Saxony, elected king of the Romans, is crowned by the archbishop of Cologne, x. 692. Abandoned by his uncle John, of England, 693. Forsaken by his best friends, 695. Escaping from Cologne, flies into England, *ib.*
- of Austria, abandons the emperor, and declares himself a vassal to the see of Rome, xi. 42. Invests Colmar, but being disappointed makes peace with the emperor, *ib.*
- king Christopher III's son, attempting to recover the Danish throne, is imprisoned, with the king of Sweden's designs on the rest of Denmark, xii. 55.
- archbishop of Milan, account of him, xiv. 55. Distress of him and his party, but make head again, 57. Defeated by Napi, *ib.* Befriended by the pope, but in vain, through Napi's address, *ib.* Dissimulation of Pope Gregory X. *ib.* (A). Why ordered by that pope to stop at Biello, with his invincible fortitude, and recovering his credit on Gregory's death, *ib.* Successes, but again defeated by Napi, 59. In great distress, from which he recovers through the interest of Locarna, *ib.* Defeats Napi, but in his turn is defeated again, retiring to Lago Maggiore, where he recovers, *ib.* Succes on board a fleet, *ib.* But obliged to retire before Cafloni, Napi's son, 60. Joined by the Comese and many others, *ib.* Surprises and defeats the Torriani party at Decio, Napi, &c. being taken prisoners, 61 (F). His moderation, and its effects, 62. Portrait in profile, *ib.* Reduces the remains of the Torriani faction, and rewards his friends, *ib.* Joined by the marquis of Montferrat on very high terms, 63. Opposed by Torriano, patriarch of Aquileia, but a peace concluded, and the terms, *ib.* Why he refuses to ratify them, and this the greatest stain upon him, *ib.* Effects of his barbarities, 64. Alliance with the emperor Rodolph, over-awes Montferrat, 65. Death and character, *ib.*
- III. of Parma, account of his barbarity, xiv. 93. Defeat in Modena, and death, *ib.*
- succeeds his father Hubert, and becomes marquis of Savoy, xiv. 125
- duke of Bavaria, chosen king of Hungary, spends his time vainly, and taken, is kept in chains till he renounces his claim, xv. 394
- the illustrious, xv. 468
- of Wittelsbach the Grand, xv. 468
- Henry the Magnanimous, elector Palatine, embraces Lutheranism, xv. 472. Leaving no issue, his cousin Frederic, of Simmeren, succeeds, *ib.*
- of Brunswic, x. 467 (R)
- the infant, first duke, recovers Brunswic from the emperor, who afterwards obtains a diploma for that and Lunenburgh, inheritable by both sexes, xv. 480. Contents of these duchies then, and he dies, *ib.*
- the Magnanimous, duke of Lunenburgh, xv. 482
- Othogar (Premislaus) king of Bohemia, chosen duke of Austria, defeats the Prussians, who consent to abandon Paganism, xv. 455. Defeats the Hungarians, disdainfully rejects the Imperial crown, and killed in a war with Rodolphus, of Hapsburg, 456
- Othoman takes Liffa, with his barbarity there, x. 270 (K)
- Otomies in America, who, xiv. 196. See Chichimecas
- Otra, or Farab, once the metropolis of Turkestan, with its situation, i. 550 & ii. 147. Stout defence, and the place where Timur died, *ib.* Besieged by the sons of Genghiz Khan, 293. Surrendered, *ib.*
- castle also surrendered to the Mungls, ii. 298. Razed, 299
- Otumba, victory obtained by Cortez over the Mexicans, xiv. 248
- Ottocarus (see Othogar) king of Bohemia, declares Rodolphus's election void, for which he is denounced a rebel, xi. 5. His arrogant insult to the emperor and diet, with the latter's decree, and the former's generosity, 6 (U)
- Ottoman. See Othman
- Ou, or Xu, a ridge of high mountains on the gulph of Liautong, iii. 557
- Ova, Don Antonio de, sent bishop into Congo, and his arrival at St. Thomas, vi. 481
- Ouachas, savages west of the Mississippi, xv. 47
- Ouachitas savages, where sited, xv. 48
- Ovando, duchy in Congo, vi. 431
- Oudenarde battle, in which the French are defeated, ix. 491. Vendome justified by king Lewis in this affair, 492. Marlborough and Eugene gain it, when Lifle, Ghent, &c. surrender, xi. 339
- Overylel, account of, xi. 398
- Ougli, a Dutch directory at Bengal, iv. 501
- Oviedo, Andrea de, sent with the new patriarch into Abyssinia, vi. 273. His reception from the Bahrnagath Isaac, and from the emperor, *ib.* (F). Excommunicatory letter to the Abyssinians, 274 sub not. Succeeds Baretto in the patriarchate, with his wretched condition and recal, 277. Dies in extreme misery, 278. His prophetic prediction, *ib.* (K)
- Oumas, savages where sited, xv. 45
- post where, xv. 59
- Ourcouhare, his declaration to Frontenac at Quebec, xiv. 644. — of the Goyoguin Canton, his assurances to Frontenac, and his death greatly lamented, 667
- Ourique battle, viii. 380
- Oultas usurps the Abyssinian throne, but dethroned by David, vi. 254
- Outagamis (Foxes) account of them, and friendly intentions towards the English, xiv. 692. Their intrepid defence against superior numbers, 693. Escape, but at last subdued and massacred, *ib.* War of the French with them, and how saved, 695. Fail in their promise, and dislodge the Illinois, 696
- Outaouia, riviere des, in Canada, xiv. 559. How dispersed, and where sited now, 594. French settlement proposed among them, on some of whom the Agniers fall, *ib.* Whose canoes Dupuys in revenge pillages, *ib.* Their trade with the French what, and where sited, 606. Some of their tenets and rites, *ib.* Negotiations between them and the Iroquois, xiv. 632. Quarrel with the Miamis, and massacring some of them, 683
- Owen, captain, his ingratitude to the Indians, iii. 321. Killed by them for it, *ib.*
- Dr. how prevented from going over to New England, xiv. 515
- Owgan, who, are defeated, and slaughtered by Timur Bek, ii. 515 (X)
- Oxenstern entrusted with the principal direction of the Swedish affairs in Germany, and the obstacles which he found to surmount, with his resolution to maintain the Swedish conquests, xi. 231. Disposition of the army, and their progress, except in Silesia, *ib.* Entrusted with the management of the common cause, though restricted, 232. To the mediation of Denmark, desires that of France and Holland to be joined, with the view for this, *ib.* Reinstates the children of the count Palatine, and takes other measures, 235. Upon a difference in Switzerland, orders four forest-towns, belonging to Austria, to be seized, 236 (P). Efforts to support the common cause, *ib.* Resolves to repair his misfortune by all the means in his power, 238. Made prime minister in Sweden, xii. 317. Entrusted with the chief direction in Sweden, 335. Conducts affairs with great prudence, and he plans the means for maintaining the Swedish conquests, with several successes of the allies, 336. His prudent conduct manages the diet at Heilbron to the best advantage, and they assist him with a council, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with France, which is never observed, 338. His ceding Prussia to Poland, and the motives, 339. The great difficulties he has still to encounter, *ib.* Concludes alliances, and his proposal about Pomerania, xv. 496
- Oxus, or Soghd (see Amu) commerce carried on by its means, iv. 92. Known to the Romans, &c. *ib.*
- Oya Passiloko revenges the king of Siam's murder, iii. 256. Noble defence of its capital, and pungent raillery to the Barman king, 257
- Oygur (Vigur) Turks in West Tartary, where sited, ii. 126. Divided into several branches, *ib.*
- Ozida, rabbi Samuel, a learned professor at Sapheta, v. 583. sub not. (P)
- Ozman Khan lays siege to Daak, iii. 69. Accidentally slain, *ib.*
- Ozmans, (see Othmans) v. 135
- Oznawers, pardoned by Timur Bek, retire to Zerit, ii. 553



## P.

**P**A, an imperial title in China, what, and abolished, iii. 693

Pacacamec, vast treasure brought from thence by the Spaniards, but more concealed, xiv. 296

Pacassa submits to Inca Mayta Capac, xiv. 384

Pacecco (Cardinal) succeeds Toledo as viceroy in Naples, with his character, x. 505

Pachacamec, a god among the Peruvians, xiv. 395

Pachacatec, ninth Inca, succeeds his father Virachoca, and import of his name, xiv. 399. Makes a progress, and no accusation made to him against any governor, &c. in the provinces, ib. Returns to Cuzco, and sets an expedition on foot, marching with his brother to Vilca, on the side of Chincafuya, ib. Subdues the country and other nations by his moderation, with a peculiarity in some of their customs, 400. Makes a second progress, and the public edifices built and adorned, also laws enacted, ib. After which he returns, ib. Domestic administration with his son and brother, as his colleagues, 402. Sends the two princes to Chinca, ib. Domestic administration in civil and religious matters much applauded, 404. Undertakes an expedition against Chima, by the young prince his son, and his summons answered with contempt, 405. Attacks the enemy with loss before he could dislodge them, and gets a reinforcement, ib. Dispute between his allies what, the prince reconciles them, and they fall on the Chimians, who are repulsed, ib. Several battles being fought with equal fortune, Chima is encouraged to persist, ib. But sends most abject submissions, the prince's proposals of peace, and he comes to the Imperial camp, ib. Begins to sink under years, honours his son greatly, and cultivates every virtue, 406. After several useful works dies, and ranked among the Indian gods, with some of his adages, ib. (H)

Pachca Ogoulas (Pensacolas) where sited, xv. 44

— Post, xx. 58

Pacheco, Gonzalo, chosen arbitrator by Chaumigrem, iii. 261

— Edward, left to command in Cochín, and his brave defence, iv. 120

— Don Lewis, ventures on an embassy to Japan, with the dreadful end of that expedition, iv. 165

— Grand master's attempt to seize on Segovia and the king's treasure disappointed, viii. 105. Scheme to prevent the succession, with his death, 107. His eldest son confirmed in all the father's estates, 108

— Duarte, respect of the king of Portugal for him, with his fate, viii. 460

Pache, Eric, by whose means beheaded, xii. 249

Pacheman defeated by the Mungls, ii. 352

Pacific Ocean, where, and whence so called, iv. 219

Pasta conventa, in Poland, articles of, xii. 427. Oath taken by the king to these, 428. As admitted by the Saxon minister, 558 (C)

Pactum Bononense treaty, x. 620

Padilla, account of, viii. 49 (S). Delivered of Alonso, whom the states of Castile own as lawful heir, 53

Padillo (Don) a lay-jesuit, his expedition on the new Philip-pines, iv. 273 & (E)

Padua, the Jews ghetto, or quarter there, v. 598. — Rabbi Joseph de, a learned professor, ib. — Decree in their senate, that the fine for murdering a priest was only a penny, ix. 648 (P). Besieged, with its surrender to the Venetians, and bringing Carrario to Venice, x. 230. Besieged by the Imperialists, and stormed, but totally routed, and obliged to raise the siege with loss, 294. Surrenders to the emperor without a siege, and the senate's project for its recovery succeeds, 295. Molini's spirited speech on the occasion, with a decree for giving Gritti ample powers, and they bind themselves by an oath of secrecy, ib. Recovered, and the Imperialists totally defeated, with the happy consequences, but they are frustrated in an attempt on Verona, 297. Viceroy of Naples lays siege to it, but forced to raise it, 304. Marching from thence take and plunder Vincenza, 305. University opened, 314. Fall of St. Antony, where, xiv. 615

Paduans restored to their liberty, x. 208. Fresh war with, under Carrario, and are often defeated, 218. Besiege Treviso, which the Venetians deliver up to Leopold, who raises the siege, 225

Pagon, or St. Ignatius's island, one of the Mariannes, iv. 230

Pahan, kingdom in India, described, also capital and produce, iii. 325. Subject to the king of Siam, ib.

Pahuac Mayta, brother to Inca Virachoca, his successful expedition, to whom after some skirmishes several nations submit, xiv. 397

Paintings, fine, first seen in Venice, x. 270 (I)

Pais (Pays) a Jesuit, writes the third history of Abyssinia, vi. 160. Builds a noble palace for the emperor, 197. Attempts to get into that empire, and taken by the Turks, 279. Arrival at Fremona, and invited to court, with the emperor's letter to him, 281 (M). Detained by the governor of Tigre, ib. Reception at court, and portrait of that noble emperor, 282 & (N). Letter to the pope, and king of Spain, ib. Builds a most stately church, 291. Dies, but replaced by four new Jesuits, 292

Pata, on the South-sea, burnt to the ground, v. 69

— sea-port described, xiv. 456. Taken by Anson, with the booty there, ib.

Paix port, account of, xv. 359

Paiz hanged by Busfra, at Tetuan, vii. 196

Palaces, few or none in Abyssinia, vi. 197. Imperial one described, 206

Palæmon raised to the sovereignty of Lithuania, and his character, xii. 624. Divides his dominions among his three grand-children, 625

Palankins, of Indostan, described, iii. 13

Palæos, who, and where sited, iv. 269. How discovered by their shipwreck, 270. Account of their isles, inhabitants, &c. ib. Language, dress, &c. 271. Kind reception at Guivam, 272. Sundry attempts to discover their archipelago, ib. Why set aside, and inhabitants described, 273 & (E)

Palatinate, quarrel between Buckingham and Richelieu disappoints its recovery, viii. 294. Made a scene of desolation by Lorges, ix. 473. — of the Rhine, its origin and progress, x. 631. Taken from Henry, who is put to the ban, and given to Lewis of Bavaria, 696. Conquer'd by Tilly, xi. 209. Conquests of the French there, 398.

— Upper, described, xv. 468

Palatine (elector) his power as vicar of the empire, xv. 432. Origin of his right as such, 433. Districts under, ib.

— (elector) his right over the emperor in what cases to be maintained, xi. 18 (N). Receives the investiture of the Lower Palatinate, 274. Made archtreasurer, and several others acknowledged princes of the empire, 276. Renews hostilities against the duke of Lorraine, but being defeated near Heidelberg, a peace is concluded by the mediation of the French, 285. Dying, his succession is disputed, 303. Right of that count, 370. Hostile entry into Holstein, and precipitate retreat, xii. 154. Alliance formed to succour that elector, but Christian of Denmark, finding nothing to be expected from ambassadors, resolves to restore him by arms, 166. A visit from that elector to Geneva, his reception, and a particular diversion for his entertainment, xiv. 50.

— electorate, its history and name, xv. 470. Territories and principal towns, ib. How these became populous and rich, ib. Ticklish situation, with the character of its inhabitants and religion, 471. Privileges of its elector, with the antiquity of the family, ib.

Palatines, &c. their power in Poland, xii. 431. Twelve appointed to govern it, 435.

Paleologus, Michael, escapes to the Turks, and his success against the Tartars, ii. 233. Invites Azzoddin to Constantinople, and amuses him with false hopes, 235. Repentment against him, ib. Removes from Nice to Constantinople, 238. Fatal opposition of the Greeks, and invaded by the Turks, ib. Distressed state of his subjects, ib. His grief, and excuse for it, 239

— war with Cantacuzenus, v. 157. Over-reached by Or Khan, 161. Sarcastic, on the loss of Kallipoli, 162 (L). Distressed state, 165. Dethroned and restored by his son, 166

— arrival in France for assistance, ix. 125

— solicits the pope's assistance, ix. 681. Arriving at Rome, solemnly professes the Roman faith, holds the pope's bridle to the Vatican, and his stirrup when alighting, 687. This emperor's negotiations for succours ineffectual, and Chalcondyle's inaccurate account, ib. & (N)

— despot of the Morea, before his death transfers his claims to their Catholic majesties, viii. 217

Palermitans make an offer of their allegiance to Peter of Aragon, which he accepts, x. 446

Palermo taken by Abu'l Abbas, i. 502. Brave defence against Abufaid, and surrender, 515

Paliagarens,



- Paliagarens, their power and dignity, iii. 177  
Paliakata, or Fort Gueldria, a Dutch factory, iii. 150. Another in Carnata, almost abandoned, 180  
Palisse, la, his great policy, though too late to be of service, ix. 200. Succeeds de Foix in the command of the French in the Romagna, xiii. 474. Negotiation for peace, with the French king's terms proposed, with the pope's infidelity in signing the articles offered, ib. Recalled, ib.  
Palm trees, their great variety in Congo, vi. 423. Fruit described, ib.  
Palma, island, one of the Canaries, described, vi. 135  
—— island of St. Juan de, where situate, iv. 267  
Palmer, Antony, governor of Pennsylvania, xv. 126  
Palus Mæotis, the czar's expedition to, xiii. 187  
—— Pugufianus reduced by John Comnenus, ii. 216  
Pallavicini, invading the Genoese territories, at the instigation of the emperor's party, exiled from the city, is repulsed, x. 547. Spirit of the Podesta in acting against the traitors to their country, ib.  
Pallu, titular bishop of Heliopolis, sent into Siam, iii. 368. Ambassador a second time, and his audience of the king of Siam, 370  
Pampanga, a province in the Philippines, where the archbishopric of Manilla begins, iv. 189  
Pamphilio, under the name of Innocent X. succeeds as pope, and the consequences, ix. 414  
Pan Naik's mountainous site and revolt, iii. 142  
—— Achilles causes the Chinese emperor, and Imperial family, to turn Christians, iii. 735 (X)  
Panama, a colony settled there by Espinosa, xiv. 165. Whence its flourishing state, 280  
—— and the royal treasure taken by the Centenos, but both recovered, with the fate of the leaders, &c. xiv. 348  
—— city described, xiv. 447 (S). Destroyed by Morgan, 448  
—— new, burnt by fire, xiv. 448  
Panamao, island in the East Indies, described, iv. 202  
Panarucan, site and ancient commerce, but ruined, iv. 151  
Panay, island and province described, with its capes, ports, rivers, &c. iv. 197. Inhabitants, ib.  
Pandalu, in India, whether a real kingdom or no, iii. 254 (O)  
Pandulph (see Pandulphus) of Capua, who had succeeded to Benevento, taken prisoner and sent to Constantinople, x. 391. Succeeds Gisulphus in Salerno, 392. At his death divides his territories among his sons, with the origin of surnames about this time, ib. (H)  
——, duke of Capua, taken prisoner, is condemned to death, but banished to Germany, ix. 554. Occasion of his release, x. 391. Restored by the emperor Conrad, takes Capua and Naples, 397. After losing Naples, falls on Cassino monastery, ib.  
Pangasinan, a province in the Philippines, iv. 189  
Pango, a marquisate in Congo, described, vi. 429  
Panloque, one of the New Philippines, described, iv. 273, sub (E)  
Pantaleon, Abba, a famous hermit in Abyssinia, vi. 230 (I)  
Panucans, brave resistance against Cortez, yet retreat, xiv. 275  
Panuco province described, and why thinned, xiv. 438. Capital founded by Cortez, and original name, ib.  
Pao Dantak, an antivenereal wood, described, vi. 359  
Papacy, its temporal power how highly advanced, xiii. 393  
Paper, silk, the finest made at Samarkant, ii. 302  
—— money introduced into China, ii. 347  
—— credit, its origin, xiii. 325 (E)  
Pa-pe-si-fu kingdom invaded by Timur, and reduced, ii. 397  
Papoas (Papuas) who, and whence so called, iv. 158 (K). Converted by Vinagrez, and described, ib.  
Papuhan empress seizes the seals in favour of her son, ii. 411. Banished by Tutemur, 412  
Pappenheim, his cruelties in Magdeburg, which he had reduced, xii. 326. Success in Lower Saxony, 331. Forced to retire, 332. Successes there to what owing, ib. Mortally wounded, 334  
Paracale, a province in Manilla, iv. 189  
Paradise of Mahomet described, i. 164. Taken mostly from the Jewish doctors, and Persian magi, 166. Women why excluded from it, 167  
—— bird in the South-sea described, v. 39 & (D)  
Paragua, island, one of the Philippines, described, and wandering blacks, the subjects to Spain, iv. 196  
Paraguay described, xiv. 466. Moderate climate, produce, and conversion by the Jesuits here, with their address and perseverance, ib. Great number of converts, admirable regulations, and regular ecclesiastical government, 467.  
Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.  
Effect on the minds and morals of the Indians, ib. Neat parochial churches, and palace of the priest, with different employment of the day by the father, 468. Commendable ambition of the Jesuits what, ib. Imputation on their characters, supreme council of the mission, and their office, particularly depriving strangers of all intelligence about the mission, ib. & (X). Establishment of a military power for their security, 469. The corps of horse and foot in every parish, with the whole amount, ib.  
Para-Hotun, its ruins, ii. 247  
—— Mandara, king of Barm, invades and conquers Pegu, iii. 252. His other conquests in Martavan, &c. 253 & (M). Fortifies his army, and conquests, with his inhumanity to the queen, and young king of Prom, 254 & (N). Bloody siege of Meleytay, and dear victory over the king of Ava, he advances towards his dominions, 255. Invades Siam, 256. Repulsed before Odiaa, 257. Hears the news of the Peguers revolt, he abandons the siege, and returns thither, 258. Defeats their new-made king, with his severity to the revolted Martavans, but murdered by Shemin Zatan, ib.  
Paraiba, captainry in Brasil, described, xiv. 478. Capital of the same name, and great value of this province, ib.  
Paramisera, traitor and usurper, founds the city of Malacca, iii. 322  
Paraoulti, chiefs in Florida, xiv. 431  
Pardo, rabbi Moses, apostatizes, v. 591 sub (K)  
Parents, disobedience to them capital in China, iii. 588  
Paria, captainry, described, xiv. 477  
Parias (Perreas) an abject tribe in Indostan, iii. 27  
Parin, a Mungl province, where, and how divided, ii. 245  
Paris, Jewish assembly there, v. 543  
—— taken, and the Spanish garrison retires, viii. 275. Made the seat of empire by Clovis, 620. Besieged by the Normans, 714. Seat of Capet's government, ix. 22. Put in a state of defence, and the duke of Burgundy refused admittance with an army into it, 132. Surprized, and the constable of France murdered by the populace, with the hangman's insolence, whom the duke of Burgundy causes to be hanged, 135. One of its gates delivered by the citizens to king Charles's troops, and the English garrison sent to Rouen, 151. Made an archbishopric, and other promotions, with the king's return to Paris, after visiting several provinces, 369  
—— council holden there by the legate for reforming the clergy, with a remarkable canon, ix. 618  
—— university proposes expedients for ending the schism, ix. 698. Accuses the pope, x. 45  
—— divines in a council propose a resignation for ending the schism, ix. 698. The French king's proceedings in this affair, ib.  
—— bishops there, on a negotiation at Rome proving ineffectual, assert the authority of national churches in faith and manners, x. 162. A general assembly declares against the pope's pretensions in four propositions, which he condemns, ib.  
—— treaty with Great Britain, its contents as to North America, xiv. 727. Between England, France and Spain, xv. 593. Some of its articles, 594, 626  
—— divines at Melun confirm articles of religion, which are answered by Bucer and Luther, x. 88  
—— parliament, its hard sentence against the count of Flanders, ix. 79. Annuls whatever was done from the last year of the late reign, 306. Resume their meetings, 432. Declare Mazarine a public disturber, and an enemy to the kingdom, ib. The concealed chiefs declare themselves, with the wild proceedings thereupon, ib. A necessity for making peace, and a treaty concluded; also the noble behaviour of the first president Mole, 433. Thus a temporary quiet procured, and the troubles of France to what owing, ib. Its arrest suppressed by another of the council of state, 352. Transferred to Pontoise, who demand the cardinal's dismissal and departure, to which the king assents, 435. By whom fixed, x. 79, sub not. Oppose the royal edict for the council of Trent; also the re-admission of the Jesuits, 129. Oppose pope Innocent X's innovations, 147. Suppress two penal briefs of the pope, 173. Oppose the regent's ruinous proceedings, and are banished, xv. 610  
Parisians, their conflagration, ix. 239. Their devotedness to Guise, 287. Brutal malice against the king, 290. Recall the duke of Mayenne from Alençon, to defend them, with his disposition for that purpose, and resolution, 293. But delivered by Clement, a Jacobine monk, stabbing the king at St. Cloud, ib.



Park, governor of Nevis, his bad character, xv. 253.

— governor of St. Christopher's, xv. 245. Differences between him and an assembly met there, ib.

— unpopular government in Antigua, and infamous character, xv. 258. Intemperate behaviour, and quarrel with the Codringtons, 259. Impeachment of his conduct sent to England, and his defence regarded, ib. Party formed against him to prosecute the impeachment, and is ordered home, 260. Witnesses examined against him on the queen's letter, and their evidence sent to England, ib. He overawes the assembly, and measures taken hereupon, he begins to act rationally, ib. The islanders rise, and put him to death, 245, 261. With the loss on both sides, ib.

Parma, duke, bastard son of pope Paul III. why murdered by his subjects, with his issue, and the occasion of the pope's death, ix. 236.

— and Piacenza described, xiii. 599. Violent outrage there on the execution of a lady for heresy, ix. 641. Duke makes his peace with advantage, viii. 299. Tho' hard pressed makes a masterly retreat in the face of the French king's army, with the latter's answer to a message from him, ix. 301. War with it, involves pope Urban VIII. in great difficulties, with a powerful alliance formed in its favour, x. 144. After various success and little vigour peace concluded, ib. Marsien and Maestricht taken by him, xi. 424. His designs on Flushing defeated, with some petty successes, 425. Straitly besieges Cambray, which Anjou relieves, 426. Besieging Tournay, he takes it, ib. Another advantage in Friesland over the confederates, ib. Takes Oudenarde, 427. Defeats the French under Biron, upon which Anjou returns to France, 428. Takes Dunkirk, &c. 429. Success in several places previous to his attempt on Antwerp, 430. Sluys yields to him, with the honours done Groenveldt, and his garrison, 434. Besieges Sluys, ib. Takes the field, and invests Bergen-op-zoom, but obliged by the English garrison to relinquish it, 436. Sent with an army to the frontiers of France, and Mansveldt left to conduct the war, 438. While investing fort Knotsemberg, is ordered to repair to France, and raises the siege, with his last campaign in the Netherlands, and character, ib. Siege proposed, but rejected, xiii. 491. Resumed, and part of it taken, with the soldiers plunder and its effect, ib. Shamefully abandoned, ib. Mutiny of the Germans, with the Pope's grief and indignation at so many disgraceful events, 492. Parmesan exiles from Piacenza take it, with the forces to defend or besiege it, 589. An ecclesiastic for murder boiled alive in a cauldron in the streets there, 600. Divisions and famine there, 602. Assassinations punished there, and peace concluded with the Cremonese, 604. Festivity there, and an act passed for making new citizens, with the money thus raised, 605. Commotions, with their losing Pontremoli, murders punished, 607. Heretics burnt, &c. 608. Podesta's salary settled, 601, & (A). Gibelines prevail, and a reconciliation over all Lombardy, with a formal visit from Reggio and Modena, also animosities breaking out afresh, ib. Agreement with Palavicini, who had encouraged them, ib. Diffusions renewed, but suspended, and a new set of magistrates take the government, ib. Forces and expeditions, 609. Flourishing condition, and dependence on the Visconti, 605, 612. New alliance formed, and new disturbances, 614. By the consequences of which the protector becomes absolute master of the government, and the estates and houses of the Guelphs destroyed, 615. Conspiracy against the protector discovered, with his attempt on Reggio, and that of the Bolognese on Modena frustrated, ib. The visit repaid by Este's troops, and Serano taken by the protector, with his quelling an insurrection in the latter, and moderation, 616. Protector's tyranny and conspiracy against him, who is defeated before Corvario, by the exiles, but assisted by his allies, ib. Conspiracy against the protector, who becomes unpopular, 617. His power decreases, and the exiles seize some places, which the protector and Placentines attempt in vain to recover, ib. Protector's confederacy with the Mantuans, and their successes against the Cremonese, ib. Magistracy why disgusted at the protector, and a conspiracy for ruining him discovered, with a new expedition against the Cremonese; his insolence thereupon, and differences between the Venetians and Parmesans, 618. Accommodation between the protector and abbot of St. John, with a conspiracy against its protector, and confusion thereon, ib. Who is driven out of Parma, and great disorders there, 619. At last ended by the Podesta, who had been very instrumental in the revolution, with more outrages by the mob, and a treaty for

restoring the protector, in which Senaza is the principal agent, 620. Joined by the chief exiles, ib. The protector entirely defeats the Parmesans, 621. With the loss, ib. At first obliged to retire from Parma, but an accommodation is made, and he is restored, with the terms, ib. Proceedings there disconcert Corregio's secret schemes, with fresh disorders, and the occasion, 622. Civil government weak, and frequent murders, ib. Public distractions, with the successes against the exiles, 623. Protector's arts, ib. A legate visits it, with the occasion, drives the Venetians out of Ferrara, and excommunicates the Templars, and why, 624. Invaded by the Spaniards, while the duke is in France, 631. The latter's reception of the pretender, 647. The emperor takes possession of that country, and his general's declaration, 648. The pope's strong protest, 649. Imposture about the dutchess's pregnancy, ib. At a bloody battle there the imperialists defeated, and count Merci killed, the king of Sardinia being then at Turin, xiv. 138. Government, assisted by the Bolognese, banish the Gibelines, and arrest their bishop, with a new regulation in the government, the Podesta being also chosen captain of the people, 609. Good effects of this election, and several acts passed, with the civil commotions continuing, ib. States headed by the marquis of Este, who plunders with great inhumanity, and defeated, 610. Battle there lost by the Spaniards, xiii. 660.

Parmesans, their conquests, xiii. 601. Assist the Bolognese, Opinion about the sanctity of a porter, and its effects, 603. War with the marquis of Montferrat, ib. Assist Cremona, are absolved, but not till after undergoing some mortifying formalities, ib. War with the marquis of Montferrat, who invades the Cremonese, and how the Parmesans return in triumph, 605. War between them and Modenese, with the occasion, ib. Satisfaction given the former, and peace ensues, ib. Success, and reception of the preaching friars, 606. Alarmed for their liberties, and their services in reducing the Modenese Gibelines, recover Pontremoli, which Malespina had surprized, ib. Reggio surrendered, and the unmerciful use made of this by them, 607. But the Reggians put themselves under the protection of the marquis of Este, ib. Zealous for the crusade, ib. Renew their ravages in Reggio, and take several places, with peace concluded, 611. Conspiracy defeated, and four or five different factions besides Guelphs and Gibelines, with a new peace concluded, and its terms, ib. Party rage runs as high as ever, and a conspiracy against the state, with the punishment of the conspirators, and troubles thereon, 612. Famine, lightnings, and Podestas allowed deputies, ib. Form a league with the marquis of Este, discontents heightened, with the occasion, and an accommodation, 613. Take Borgo di San Domino, with the exiles return, 624. How they lose their liberties, 626.

Pars (Persia) subdued by Timur Bek, ii. 519. Abandoned by its king at Timur's approach, 528. Seized by the traitor Mansur, 529. Its then distracted state, ib. Put wholly under new governors, 530.

Parlis (Perses) inhabitants of Indostan, who and whence, ii. 659 (X). iii. 23, 39. List under the rebel Mir Mahmud, ii. 659. When, and how settled in India, iii. 39. Customs, dress, and singular esteem for cocks, ib. Veneration for fire, marriage ceremony, 40. And shocking ones used towards the dead, ib. Affect a dreadful appearance and horrid stench, ib.

Participatio, Angelo, tenth doge of Venice, associates his eldest son Giovanni, and upon his deposition the younger Justiniano, x. 185. Plot against the doge discovered, ib.

— Orso, fourteenth doge of Venice, forces the Saracens to raise the siege of Grada, and his son Giovanni, for his courage, made coadjutor, x. 187. Defeats the Saracens before Tarentum, 188, & (A). Domestic transactions, death, and character, ib.

— Giovanni, fifteenth doge, his transactions, abdication, and character, x. 188.

— Pietro, twentieth doge, obtains the privilege of coining from the emperor, though others affirm this right in the state long before, x. 190.

Partition treaty, the first, viii. 346. Signed by France, England, and States-General, ix. 478. Reflections on it, ib. King Lewis's view not what some assert, 479 (B). Upon this the king of Spain makes a will in favour of the electoral prince of Bavaria, with the latter's death, ib.

— second signed by the French, English, and Dutch, viii. 348. ix. 480. Emperor's declaration and desire, viii. 348. Parvaneh (Berwana) made tutor to Khosraw III. and betrays the



- the Mogul to Bendokdar, ii. 237. Is cut in pieces by Abaka Khan, ib.
- Parveis (Parwees) sultan, sent in pursuit of his rebel brother, iii. 74. Success against him, 75. Dies much regretted by his father, 80.
- Parviz, Kholu, king of Persia, dethroned for his tyranny, i. 19. Tears Mahomet's letter, and cursed by him for it, slain, and succeeded by Shiruyeh, 69.
- Pasa-thong, Chaw, seizes the Siamese crown, iii. 362. Dethrones the king, marries the princess, and murders her brothers, 363. Grand funeral of his own daughter, ib. Homages and funeral pile, 364. Sets fire to it with his own hands, ib. Tortures and murders near three thousand nobles, 365. Last of all the late king's daughter and son, 366. Their singular courage, ib. His death, ib.
- Pascha (see Easter) isle in the South-sea, v. 32. Described, ib.
- Paschal II. elected pope after Urban II. and a letter from the Christians in the Holy Land, occasions a second Crusade, ix. 577. Sends two legates into France, who in a council at Poitiers, excommunicate king Philip, ib. Forbids Henry, of England, from meddling with investitures, ib. Sends a legate to Poland, and another to France, with the proceedings about the patriarch of Jerusalem, ib. His legate refuses the emperor absolution, 578. Prevalence of his party in Germany, ib. Holds a council at Guastalla, where lay-investitures are prohibited, ib. Offends the new emperor, with the true state of these investitures, ib. (P). Goes into France, and holds a council at Troyes, with a decree about investitures, 579. Returns into Italy, and accommodates the difference between him and the king of England, 580. Sends a legate to Jerusalem, who in a council there is chosen patriarch, and holds a council at Benevento, in which an anathema is pronounced against lay-investitures, ib. Threatens Alphonso of Arragon with excommunication for marrying his cousin, ib. Refusing to crown the emperor, is made prisoner, ib. Slaughter and ravages in and about Rome, with the pope's renewing the treaty at last, ib. Grants a bull for ratifying the right of investitures, and crowns the emperor, who returns into Germany, 581. Conduct condemned by the cardinals, who assemble of themselves at Rome, annul the treaty, and confirm former decrees against lay-investitures, ib. Holds a council at the Lateran, which also condemns the treaty by a decree; and the emperor excommunicated in the councils of Vienne, Jerusalem, &c. but the pope refuses his consent, 582. Holds a council in Benevento, and a synod at Caperano, and the pallium granted Rodolphus, archbishop of Canterbury, ib. Quits Rome, and holds a council at Benevento, ib. Ambassy from the king of England, with complaints against his legate, ib. Death, 583.
- Pasenda, fifth sect of Bramans in India, iii. 217.
- Pasapa made chief of the Lamas, by Kublay, ii. 363. Forms the new Mungl character, and honoured by Kublay Khan, 367. Death and honours bestowed upon him, 382.
- Patquinade called the comedy of Cracow in five acts, xii. 562.
- Passage, Northern, to India, whether known to the ancients, iv. 88.
- Passau, pacification, and how forwarded, xi. 165 (B).
- Passerino succeeds his brother Borexella, governor of Mantua, with his character, xiv. 112. Surprises Modena, and takes Mirandola; but his family extirpated by Lewis Gonzaga, and his death, ib.
- Patagonia, by whom discovered, xiv. 475.
- (Terra Magellanica) and inhabitants described, xiv. 475. Different manners, and the country described, vast droves of wild cattle and horses, ib.
- Patan, fortress, taken by Akber, iii. 59.
- king's situation and power, ii. 94 (G).
- Patana, sea-port of Siam, iii. 320.
- Patans, in Hindustan, who, whence, and where sited, iii. 18. Totally overthrown by the Great Mogul Akber, 57. Subdued by him, 59. Overthrown afresh, 60.
- Patarini, heretics, x. 432.
- Pate, island, under the kingdom of Melinda, taken by the Portuguese, vi. 344.
- Patkul presents a remonstrance from the Livonian nobility to Charles of Sweden, and that patriot (with six deputies) imprisoned, xiii. 198. Being condemned to a severe punishment, flies his country, xii. 369. Escapes to Vaud in Switzerland, next to king Augustus, between whom, Denmark and the czar, he forms a league against Sweden, xiii. 198. Besieges the Swedes in Riga, ib. Zeal, who had entered into the czar Peter's service, 201. Account of, with his unworthy fate from Charles of Sweden, xi. 334 (A). Seized, and delivered to the Swedes, xii. 381. Execution, and his courage failing him, when he comes to die, 382. & (A). Broke alive on the wheel, with an account of this barbarous act of injustice, xiii. 207.
- Patouchan, settlement there by Cortez, xiv. 277.
- Patriarchate of the Jews, v. 487, and notes. Most probable beginning, 488, and notes. Extinction, 495. Succeeded by primates, ib.
- Patriarchs of Alexandria, vi. 23. Why called Copts and Jacobites, ib. Number of bishoprics, 24. Oppressed by the Turks, 25. Why they reject the title of papa (pope) ib. sub (S). Ancient power, learning, &c. greatly diminished, 26. Hold circumcision of both sexes, ib. Remissness about baptism, ib. Not deposed, but for heresy, 27.
- of the Greeks, Latins, Jews, and how tolerated in Egypt, vi. 28.
- Pau, a fire, and stone-engine, described, ii. 340, & (C).
- Pavese, and city Pavia, described, xiv. 54.
- Pavia, battle, in which king Francis I. is beaten and taken, ix. 214. xiii. 504.
- burnt, ix. 155. Lombard bishops assembled there, depose pope Gregory VII. and the bishops at Worms acknowledging their error, absolved, 167. General council opened, but on account of a plague transferred to Sienna, 714. Taken by the confederates, x. 331. Manifestos justifying its capture, 611. Betrayed to the governor, who shuts himself up in the castle, while the duke of Milan, and his brother the count of Pavia, are in great distress, xiv. 89.
- Pavians, after a defeat, acknowledge the bishop of the emperor's nomination, ix. 160.
- Pavillion, yearly, sent from Egypt to Mecca, vi. 30.
- Pau-ki, in Honan, taken by the Mungls, ii. 337.
- Paul, count, sides with the Jews, and his treason punished, v. 522. See Paul General.
- General revolts against Wamba, vii. 564. Fortifies himself in Nismes, 566. Forced to implore his mercy, ib. Condemnation and pardon, 567.
- (St.) republic in Brasil, described, xiv. 481. Annual sum paid Portugal only for the advantage of trading, and its capital, ib.
- island of, St. described, xiv. 550.
- II. elected pope in the room of Pius II. with his character, x. 31. Violates his oath before and after his election, with cardinal Carvajal's declaration, ib. Desires to the German diet about the Silesian catholics little regarded, 33. Dismisses the clerks of the Breves, and imprisons Platina, with the reason, ib. Gratifying the cardinals with ornaments, causes a rich mitre to be made for himself, ib. Exhorts the Christian powers to an expedition against the Turks, and resolves to restrain giving abbeys in commendam, 32. Receives an ambassy from the emperor in favour of Podiebrad, as also from Ferdinand of Naples, ib. By whose assistance the pope reduces the counts of Anguillara, ib. Difference between him and Ferdinand, with the occasion, ib. Ferdinand appeased, with his great offers against the Turks; also those of the Venetians, and duke of Milan, come to nothing, ib. Absolves the Silesians from their allegiance to Podiebrad, whom he excommunicates, and deposes, with the occasion, 33. Confirms Patric Grahame in St. Andrews, and makes him primate of Scotland, ib. Desire for the abrogation of the pragmatic sanction, opposed by the parliament of Paris, ib. Sumptuous feasts and races in Rome, and his offer of the crown of Bohemia to Mathias of Hungary accepted, 34. Alarmed with the report of a plot against him in Rome, which proves false, and his treatment of Platina, &c. ib. Visits him, &c. in prison, with his insults, ib. Released, with his promises and usage, 35 (Y). His forces against Malatesta, as also Mathias, defeated, ib. Supports Mathias's claim to Bohemia, ib. Bull for a jubilee every twenty-fifth year, with the emperor's indolence in the diet of Ratibon remarked by one of the legates, ib. Death, character, and venality, ib. Manner of his death, xi. 107 (T).
- III. elected pope in room of Clement VII. with an account of him, x. 83, 334. Declares his purpose of calling a council at Mantua, but the Protestants insist on its being holden in Germany, 83. Gives the tythe to king Francis, and the emperor, &c. against Barbarossa, the pirate, 84. Publishes a bull against Henry of England, excommunicating and deposing him, ib. Bull for a general council at Mantua, ib. Another for reforming the corruptions



- ruptions in Rome, *ib.* Alliance with the emperor and Venetians against the Turks, 85. Has a conference with the emperor and the king of France, at Nice, *ib.* Sends a legate to the conference at Worms, 86. Why his legate quits Flanders, *ib.* Has an interview with the emperor, who rejects all his proposals, 87. Endeavours to reconcile the emperor and king Francis, also sends legates to Trent, *ib.* Offended with the emperor's concessions to the Protestants, and long letter thereupon, *ib.* By his legate at Worms, excites the emperor to declare war against the Protestants, *ib.* Gives the investiture of Parma and Placentia to his son, 88. Concludes a treaty with the emperor against the Protestants, 89. Sends a legate to congratulate Henry II. of France on his accession, *ib.* Murder of his son, and suspicion about it by the emperor's seizing Placentia, *ib.* Proposes an alliance with Henry of France, *ib.* Offended with the Interim, censures it, 90. Declaration, and receding from it in favour of his son Pietro Lodovico, 334. Sends three nuncios into Germany to reform abuses, 90. But prohibited by the emperor from acting, *ib.* Solicits the restoration of Placentia, and fainting on reading his grandson's letter, dies, his character and expensive funeral, *ib.* (O).
- Paul IV. elected pope in room of Marcellus II. with an account and character of him, x. 95 (R). Negotiates with the king of France, for the partition of Naples, and a treaty concluded, but kept extremely secret, *ib.* & ix. 242. Edict against the Jews, v. 595. Harasses his subjects, x. 96. Through the viceroy of Naples successes, is obliged to conclude a peace, *ib.* Orders an index expurgatorius, with the punishment on all who possess or read books prohibited, *ib.* (S). Why he professes enmity to the Spaniards, 505. Indulging very ambitious schemes against Spain, promises Naples to a son of France, *ib.* Begins his pontificate with great magnificence, 95. Severe edicts, and new privileges granted the Romans, with their gratitude, *ib.* Receives the submission of the English, and gives title of kingdom to Ireland, &c. and condemns the toleration given the Protestants in the diet at Augsburgh, *ib.* True reason of the pope's resentment against the emperor, *ib.* Makes a treaty with Henry II. for depriving the emperor of Naples, persecutes the Colonnas, &c. aggrandizing his nephews, *ib.* Persuades the king of France to break the truce with the emperor, absolving him from his oath, *ib.* Imprisons cardinal Moron for heresy, and recalls cardinal Pole from England, and why, *ib.* (T). Severe bull, &c. against simony, and inflexible in refusing to own Ferdinand emperor, 96. Punishes and banishes his nephews, 97 (U). Applies himself wholly to the inquisition, and renews all the censures ever decreed against heretics, *ib.* Orders bishops and monks to residence, with many of the latter imprisoned, sent to the galleys, or fled to Venice, *ib.* (W). Several new bishoprics erected by him in the Low-countries, which irritates the Protestants, *ib.* Greatly pleased with the peace between France and Spain, but not with queen Elizabeth's elevation, *ib.* Refuses to own her right to the throne, with his motives, 98. Death and character, being universally hated by the Romans, with their outrages against his memory, *ib.*
- V. succeeds pope Leo XI. with an account of him, and promoting his relations, x. 131. Endeavours to advance the ecclesiastical jurisdiction in several places, and quarrels thereon with the Venetians, whom he excommunicates, *ib.* Receives an embassy from the king of Congo, and sends some Capuchins thither, vi. 483. Grand interment of the ambassador, 484. Ambassies to him from Congo, Persia, and the Nestorian patriarch at Babylon, who with the Nestorians is re-united to Rome, x. 133. Alliance proposed to that pope by Henry IV. of France, is rejected, at whose assassination he expresses great sorrow, &c. *ib.* Difference with the Venetians accommodated by the mediation of France, the pope giving up the Jesuits, *ib.* (T). Grows quite remiss in public affairs, with his magnificent buildings, 134. The Spaniards threaten to invade Mantua, with his unconcernedness, and the French ambassador's sarcastic remark, *ib.* Opposes an alliance betwixt the prince of Wales, and a daughter of France, but the queen regent insincere, *ib.* Upon an accommodation with the queen regent and Conde, &c. through the parliament of Paris, he is offended, and accuses the latter of encroaching on the church, by condemning Suarez's book, *ib.* Lewis XIII's declaration unsatisfactory to the pope, *ib.* Who is disappointed in his endeavours for introducing the council of Trent into France, 135. Receives embassies from the bishop of Paphlagonia, and from Japan, also from France, yielding him obedience, *ib.* Publishes an universal jubilee against the Protestants, who are defeated by the emperor near Prague, *ib.* Death and character, with cabals in the conclave, 136.
- Paulatio, first duke of Venice, his character, x. 181. Wife administration, death, and commendation, *ib.*
- Paulette, tax in France, what, ix. 360.
- Paulo Marco, map and geography of Africa, v. 653.
- San, its ruins in Angola, vi. 494. Taken from, and recovered by the Portuguese, 510.
- Antony de, fifty-fourth grand master of Maltha, accused by the pope of sundry crimes, vii. 503. Great contests with the latter, 504. Death, 505.
- Paul's-bay, St. and the plantations on the north shore of St. Laurence river described, xiv. 551.
- Paulus, the Armenian commander, defeated by the Arabs, i. 391.
- Paullu-Topu, the Inca's brother, and Vilchoma, the high-priest, sent to dispose the Chilians for Almagro's reception, xiv. 308. Assembles a reinforcement of Indians in Chili, for Almagro, *ib.*
- Pauoirigoudieuhak Indians, where situate, xiv. 581.
- Pau-ting-su, a city in the province of Pecheli, iii. 526.
- Pau tse (Paosua) occasions the loss of China, iii. 692.
- Pay-chu, rise, and wholesome council to the emperor, ii. 406. Reforms the court, 407. Assassinated by Ty-she, *ibid.*
- Pays, the Jesuit. See Pais.
- Payva, Alphonso de, sent in quest of Prester John's country, iv. 112. Murdered by the way, 113.
- Paz, Vera, province described, and why so called, xiv. 442. Produce and capital, *ib.*
- la, city described, and gold found here, xiv. 465.
- Peace, treaties between France, Sweden, Denmark, and Brandenburg for establishing, xi. 297. Also between England, France, and Holland, xii. 183. Negotiations for it in Holland broken off, xi. 462. Rejoicings for it in Russia and Sweden, xiii. 253.
- Peacocks in Angola, peculiar to its kings, vi. 496.
- Pearl-mountain, on the Cape of Good Hope, described, vi. 402.
- Pearls, why despised by the Japanese, but since traded in with China, iv. 45. Fishery at Tutocorin, how carried on, 144.
- and their fisheries in California, xiv. 420.
- Peasants in Sweden, boldly remonstrate against the taxes, xii. 255. After the execution of Baddenbroke and Lewenhaupt, assent to the bishop of Lubeck's election to the crown, 424. Their situation in Poland, 435 and (A).
- Peaque, Santa, English Buccaneers repulsed from, xiv. 436.
- Pecheli wasted by the Mungls, ii. 285.
- or Lipafu, the first province of China described, iii. 519 (A). Climate, soil, and produce, with its chief cities described, 520.
- Pecolat, his persecution, &c. in Geneva, with his proverbial saying, xiv. 12 (A). Cruelty towards him, who cuts out part of his own tongue, 13.
- Pedro I. Christian king of Congo, augments the revenues of the church, vi. 476. Grand reception of a bishop from Portugal, 477.
- II. Gives a noble instance of wisdom, and his friendship to the Portuguese, vi. 484. Death and character, 485.
- (Don) of Portugal, an encourager of navigation, iv. 110.
- (Don) succeeds his father Alonso, king of Portugal, viii. 408. First care to negotiate an alliance with Castile, issue, and character, 409 (D). Puts Agnes's murderers to death, *ib.* Owns his marriage with her, and causes her body to be removed to Alcobaca, with great pomp, *ib.* Resolves on a thorough reformation in himself, and all others, *ib.* Conduct towards Pedro of Castile, 411. Death and character, *ib.* (F).
- of Coimbra, account and character of him, viii. 435 (D). How the queen binds him to her interest, *ib.* Declared regent, and the queen obliged to deliver up her children to him, *ib.* Governs with reputation, and some troubles easily quelled, *ib.* Sends the constable of Portugal with succours into Castile, 436. Alliance between the crowns, *ib.* Measures for the public good, and assuaging envy, 437. Cabals for removing him, *ib.* Gives excellent education to Alonso, *ib.* The Cortes consent to king Alonso's marrying the regent's daughter, and approve of his



his administration, *ib.* Cabals of his enemies against him, and gallant behaviour of a knight in his behalf, but forced to take up arms in his own defence, 438. Slain in battle, *ib.* King does justice to the regent's memory, and causes his body to be interred at Batalha, *ib.* Leonora's marriage to the emperor Ferdinand III. *ib.* Discoveries on the Canina coast cause jealousies in Castile, *ib.* Joanna married to Henry IV. of Castile, the queen delivered of Don John, and her death not without suspicion of poison, 439. Sincerity of the king's passion how shown, *ib.* Interview between the kings of Castile and Portugal, when Pedro, the regent's eldest son, is received into favour, with the king's successful war against the Moors in Barbary, *ib.* Changes his manner of life, with the dowager's death and character, 520.

Pedro the Infant, drives the secretary, minister, and Castelmellor, from court, *viii.* 521. Espouses the queen's quarrel, and the king forced to resign, 522. Signs the nullity of his marriage for want of consummation, *ib.* Proclaimed only regent, with his supposed motives, 524.

— II. regent of Portugal, on king Alonso's confinement, assumes the administration, with his character, *viii.* 525. Bursts into tears on a message from his brother, and the states establish the regency and administration in him, *ib.* Recalls many who were banished by the late ministry, and falls in love with his brother's queen, with an account of her, 526. She pushes her divorce before the chapter of Lisbon, with a dispensation procured; and Pedro, with the states consent, publicly marries her, *ib.* His brother Alonso's dulness hereupon, and peace made with Spain, by the judicious conduct of the English minister, *ib.* The French party in vain oppose it; could not be drawn by France into a war with Spain, 528. Conspiracy discovered, and some differences with the court of Spain, *ib.* The king prevailed on to marry a princess of Newburgh, with her character, and the queen's delivery of a son, who dies soon, notwithstanding the Jesuits prophecy, 533. Another odd notion about the Infanta, with new proposals of marriage, but dies, and endeavours to reinstate Castelmellor ineffectual, 534. Louisa, the king's natural daughter, caressed at court, and married to duke Cadaval's son, with the king's commissions for levies, and when complete tries his good offices at Vienna and Paris, *ib.* Permits an Auto da fe to be made, and threatens reprisals on the French, for their privateers, with their jealousy of the Portuguese court, 535. Death of the queen, with the king's affection for her, *ib.* The king embarrassed on the death of Charles II. of Spain, 536. And more so on the duke of Anjou's accession, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with Spain, and with what view, but obliged to declare a neutrality, *ib.* Portocarrero's angry answer hereupon, and the king concludes a treaty with the allies, 537. Its stipulations and separate articles, with the king's answer to the French minister, and orders in his own dominions, *ib.* Archduke Charles's arrival, and war declared, but no great success, 538. Orders levies to be made, 540. Dies, with his character, and issue, *ib.* (D).

— the Cruel, succeeds his father Alonso, king of Castile, and is governed by his mother and Juan de Albuquerque, *viii.* 48. Claps Leonora Guzman in prison, to whose death he consents; orders other murders and confiscations, *ib.* Enamoured of Maria de Padilla, who is prostituted through Albuquerque's baseness, with an account of this young gentlewoman, 49 (S). Besieges Alonso Coronel in Aguilar, and storming the castle, puts him and others to death, 50. Espouses Blanca, of Bourbon, but abruptly leaving her, next day imprisons her, *ib.* Orders the grand-master of Calatrava to be murdered, *ib.* Marries Joanna Fernandez de Castro, but leaves her soon, *ib.* His army repulsed from Toro, 51. Reduces Toledo, sends Blanca prisoner to Sigüenza, beheads and hangs several others, *ib.* Excommunicated by the pope's legate, *ib.* At last makes himself master of Toro, the queen mother and her adherents retiring to Alcazal, and obliged to surrender, are put to death, *ib.* One act of generosity, *ib.* Attempts made to assassinate his brothers, Frederic and Tello, also Don Henry, *ib.* War breaks out between him and Pedro, of Arragon, with the occasion, *ib.* (T). Obtains some advantages, 52. Causes his brother Frederic and cousin Juan, of Arragon, to be murdered, *ib.* Puts to death his aunt, Leonora, and Juan's widow, 53. Instances of his barbarity and avarice, *ib.* Particularly on a priest and rich Jew, *ib.* Makes peace with Arragon in order to fall on Barbarossa, of Granada, 54. Orders Blanca to be put to death, and her character, *ib.* (U). His forces defeated by the Moors

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

with great loss before Cadiz, *ib.* Obliged the states to acknowledge Alonso, by Padilla, and her three daughters next in succession, 55. Begins a war by surprise with Arragon, and gains considerable advantages, *ib.* His daughter Beatrix refused in marriage to the Infant of Portugal, is restored, with her immense fortune, 57. Received in Galicia by means of the archbishop of Compostella, whom for his riches he murders, *ib.* Sails to Bayonne for assistance from the prince of Wales, *ib.* In regard of his money assisted by Edward the Black Prince, and the lords of Guienne, 58. Body of that prince's troops, with himself at their head, resolve to restore him to the crown, *ib.* Seated again on the throne of Castile, indulges his natural cruelty, *ib.* Repulsed with the king of Granada, from the siege of Cordova, 59. Defeated and killed by his brother Henry, 60. Base character, and immense riches, with his issue, *ib.*

Pedro (see Peter) proclaimed king of Arragon, *viii.* 113. Character, and defeating the Moors in the plain of Alcazar, *ib.* In which battle St. George is said to have appeared, *ib.* Takes Huesca, with its description, *ib.* Further conquests from the Moors, *ib.* Applies to the arts of peace, and losing both his children, dies of grief, 114.

— II. succeeds his father Alonso in Arragon, *viii.* 132. Character, and the measures pursued at his entering on the administration, *ib.* Concludes a marriage with count Montpelier's heiress in the life-time of her former husband, and going to Rome, becomes tributary to the pope, against which the states protest, *ib.* Aims at procuring a divorce, and during the suit has a son by the queen, called Jayme, *ib.* Acknowledges the infant for his son, and has him suitably educated, 133. Makes a tour into the southern provinces of France, and the occasion, *ib.* Count Bezier has a conference with him about the cruelty of the pope's soldiers, 134. Intercedes earnestly with the legate on his behalf, with the legate's insolence, barbarity, and peridy in taking Carcason, *ib.* Mischiefs in Spain, through that court's ill conduct, *ib.* Pedro marches to assist the king of Castile, and is present at the battle of Tolosa, obtained over the Moors, 135. Joins the confederates in Provence, and killed before Muret, *ib.* Confusions in Arragon hereupon, is succeeded by his son Jayme, and a regency appointed, with his uncle Sancho at their head, *ib.*

— III. succeeds his father Jayme, king of Arragon, *viii.* 145. Puts an entire end to the troubles of Valencia and Catalonia, *ib.* Firmness and success in the administration, and gives his daughter Isabella to Denis, of Portugal, 146. How engaged to vindicate his queen's claim to Sicily, *ib.* Spirit, and success with which its reduction is executed, *ib.* The competitors have a combat at Bourdeaux, but ends in nothing, 147. Reduces the fortress, and sovereignty of Albarracin, which he gives his natural son Ferdinand, *ib.* Glorious victory at sea, and generosity, with the resentment it causes in the pope, 148. The French invade Arragon, but retreat, *ib.* The king's death, issue, and character, *ib.*

— IV. succeeds his father Alonso in Arragon, *viii.* 156. Compromises all differences with his mother-in-law Leonora, 157. The fleet of Arragon does great service against the Moors, but the admiral killed, *ib.* The pope presses the king to expel the Jews and Moors, but is in no hurry, *ib.* Determines to dispossess the king of Majorca, *ib.* Executes his scheme with vivacity and severity, 158. Shews no pity to that prince, even when he came and submitted, *ib.* Softens the pope and king of France in the business of Majorca, 159. Defeats the scheme of the Genoese and Pisans on Sardinia, *ib.* Forms a design of altering the succession in favour of his three daughters, *ib.* Upon which Don Jayme associates with the principal nobility, and declares himself their head, *ib.* Constrained to assemble the states, and make great concessions, but with dissimulation, 160. Indebted to his brother Jayme for his life in a riot, but poisons him at Barcelona, and marries Leonora, of Portugal, *ib.* In danger from the union of Valencia, *ib.* The confederates in Arragon entirely defeated, and thirteen executed, 161. A like fate attends the confederacy of Valencia, where he destroys the roll of concessions, *ib.* The dethroned Jayme, of Majorca, invading that island, is slain, 162. Hangs the legate by the heels, till he absolves some he had excommunicated, and queen Leonora delivered of Don Juan, *ib.* His fleet, with the Venetians, defeats the Genoese, *ib.* Resolves in person to end the war in Sardinia, 163. Founds an university at Huesca, and his expedition, but indifferently successful, *ib.* Forced into a war with Castile, makes peace with its monarch,



- who breaks it the first opportunity, 164. Cruelty and injustice of Pedro of Arragon to Bernard Cabrera, who is beheaded, *ib.* Assists Henry count de Trastemara to mount the throne of Castile, but refuses Pedro the kingdom of Murcia, 165. Difficulties in the conduct of his affairs at home and abroad, *ib.* His forces cut to pieces, or made prisoners in Sardinia, *ib.* Captain Walter Bennet goes a volunteer on board the king's fleet, *ib.* Concludes a peace with Henry of Castile, and restores Cabrera's grandson to his title and estates, *ib.* Is willing to sign a peace with Henry of Castile, and changes the face of affairs in Sardinia, by an act of temerity, 166. Cruelty and injustice to king Jayme, 176. From whom he takes Majorca, and its dependencies, 178. Marries Maria of Navarre, 584. Remainder of his reign, and demise, 166. His character, *ib.*
- Philip (Don) brother to the cardinal of Arragon, made viceroy of Naples, x. 528
- succeeds his father Sancho V. king of Navarre, viii. 565. Defeats the Moors, so that Huesca falls to him; he, his son, and daughter die, *ib.*
- Pegu (see Myen) kingdom, described, iii. 238. Mountains, *ib.* Rivers, 239. Cities upon them, and surprising tides, *ib.* Soil and produce, *ib.* Provinces, *ib.* Diseases and physicians, 245. Commerce, and flowered silver what, 246. Fair way of buying, and current coin, *ib.* Religion and worship of an ape's tooth, 247. Temples and images, *ib.* Festivals, 248. Talepoys or priests, *ib.* Arbitrary government, kings, their power, grandeur, and state, 249. Public audiences, *ib.* Forces and revenue, 250. Elephants of war, seraglio, and funeral obsequies, *ib.* History curious, but maimed, 251. Monarchy, when, and by whom founded, with a list of its kings, *ib.* Invaded, and conquered by the Barmas, 252. Much enlarged by their conquests, 262. Flourishing state, 265. Horrid famine, 268. Inexpressible miseries, 270. Becomes subject to Arracan kingdom, 271. And since annexed to that of Ava, *ib.*
- river, described, with its annual overflowing, iii. 238. (E).
- capital and ancient splendor, described, iii. 240. Royal palace, and large statues, also hunting palace, *ibid.* Both destroyed, together with its king by that of Tangu, 241. The new and old city on each side of the river, 262. Sub notes. Taken by the king of Arracan, 269
- Peguers, their original, character, dress, &c. iii. 243. Immodest dress of the women whence, and bells worn at the men's privities whence, *ib.* Diet, 244. Marriages only for a set time, *ib.* Behaviour of those wives, 245. Belief of one supreme Being, and various inferior gods, also of a succession of worlds, 247. Transmigration of souls, *ib.* Their feasts, and that of sky-rockets, 248. Their arms, 250. They revolt against the Barmas, and chuse a new king, 257. Defeated by their conqueror, 258. Their empire destroyed and revived, 282
- Peibus lake, account of xiii. 5
- Pe-king, metropolis of all China, described, iii. 520. Populousness, 521 (D). Plenty of all things how supplied, and its government, 522. Imperial palace, *ib.* Temples, and other sumptuous buildings, 524. Ceremony performed in the temple of the sun by the new emperors, *ib.* Grand observatory, 525. Meridian gnomon, described, 526. Destroyed by a dreadful earthquake, 744
- Pelagius (Pelayo) proclaimed king of Asturias, i. 351. Destroys the Moslems in Spain, 353. Takes Leon from the Arabs, 361. Constant success against these, 365. Restores the Spanish monarchy in the Asturias, vii. 590 (A). and (B). Invaded by a vast Moorish army, 591. Gains a signal victory over them, 592. And a second at the valley of Olalles, with the settlement and improvement of his dominions, *ib.* His extraction, death, and interment, *ib.*
- Pelea, de Mala, bay, whence so called, xiv. 170
- Pelham, prime-minister of Great Britain, why too backward in believing the ill intentions of the French in North America, xiv. 700
- Peli-pu-wang sent to reduce Quang-tong, and Quang-si, iii. 734. With his success in both, 735
- Pellart, captain Francis, wrecked on New Holland, v. 14. iv. 425 (S). Wealthy inhabitants there, *ib.* (S). Sails thence in a pinnace to Batavia, with the fate of his crew, v. 15. Reflections on his voyage, *ib.*
- Peltrie, Madam de la, her arrival with three Ursulins, &c. at Quebec, and reception, xiv. 578. Their indefatigable zeal for christianity, *ib.*
- Pelusa, Vitenus's general, his scheme by attacking Lechus the Black in his camp miscarries, xii. 635
- Pelym circle in Tobolsk province, xiii. 46
- Pemba, island and kingdom, described, vi. 345
- marquisate in Congo, vi. 430
- marquis seizes on the Congoeze crown, but no history of them extant, vi. 488
- Pembroke, earl, made prisoner, viii. 61. Obtains a grant of Barbadoes, xv. 174
- Pemmaquid, fort (William Henry) in New England, described, xiv. 525 and (D). Besieged by the French and Indians, is taken by capitulation, 528 & (E). Some difficulty in the execution of it what, *ib.* And the fort demolished, *ib.* Attempt of the French on it, how frustrated, 647
- Penegonda, where situate, and made the residence of the king of Bismagar, iii. 139 & (F).
- Penguins isle, described, xv. 363. Since the capital, 178
- Peniarando, count, viceroy of Naples, his peaceable government, x. 526. Sends succours to Spain against the Portuguese, and is engaged in quelling the banditti, *ib.* Cardinal of Arragon arrives as his successor, and the count's amiable character, *ib.*
- Penn, Sir William, account of, xv. 111. Also of his son William, *ib.* Allegations of his petition to king Charles II. *ib.* Boundaries of his charter for Pennsylvania, and its chief articles, 112. Concessions to adventurers for Pennsylvania, *ib.* System of government published, and character, 113. On what principles formed, *ib.* By whom assisted, *ibid.* On the impracticability of his first charter goes to England, with various surmises about him, and why, 114. Consents to receive a governor from the crown, 115. Restored to his right of naming a governor, 117. Returns to Pennsylvania, with his representation to the assembly, and proceedings thereon, *ib.* His notions of government fluctuating, ratifies a new charter of privileges, and goes for England, 118. Its contents, *ib.* Obtains a majority in the assembly, 119. Reception in Pennsylvania, 125. Character and distress, 121. Death, *ib.*
- Pennaforte, a monk, strives to convert the Jews, v. 555. But succeeds better with the Moors, *ib.* (S).
- Pennaney, port and factory, the Samorin's residence, iii. 164 & (S).
- Penicola bay, by whom first discovered, and different names, xv. 24. Fort there attacked by the French, and taken, 25. Is retaken by the Spaniards, *ib.* Falls again into the hands of the French, 27. Restored to the Spaniards upon the peace, 30
- Penshina river, xiii. 29
- Pennsylvania, its history, xv. 111. Boundaries of charter for it, *ib.* Chief articles, 112. Account of its government, 113. First settlement, and new constitution of government, *ib.* Its grievances, 114. Promising state, 115. Assembly's remonstrance to their governor, *ib.* Company erected there, *ib.* Governor's answer, 116. Former's bold protest, *ib.* Difference between its deputy-governor, and the assembly, 114. New plan of government, 117. Contents of its new charter of privileges, 118. Greatly different from the original charter, *ib.* Assembly's over-strained remonstrance against the proprietary, 119. Why they let the affair sleep, *ib.* Disputes how augmented, 120. Differences between the assembly and proprietary inflamed by the two parties, *ib.* The former insist on redress of grievances, and make a new remonstrance, *ib.* Impeach the governor's secretary, and remonstrate against himself, who is recalled, and cause of these dissensions what, 121. Continuance of differences between the assembly and proprietaries, with the occasion, 122. Vast prosperity of the colony, and number of people, with the case of its currency, 123. Act about it passed into a law, *ib.* Account of its commerce, specimen of its swift population, and wealth, 124. Association for supporting its territory-currency, and measures taken for its prosperity, *ib.* Produce, exports, 125. Entry, and clearance of vessels at Philadelphia, trade with the Indians, and imports from England, *ib.* Flourishing state owing to Penn's judgment, *ib.* Assembly refractory in furnishing soldiers for the crown, 126. Now complying, *ib.* Their expences towards the war what, *ib.* Altercations between the assembly and proprietaries, 127. The former vote a present to the Indians, 128. Altercations with their governor, and the occasion, *ib.* Behaviour of both sides, *ib.* Intelligence about the danger of the province, the governor's message on it, and their obstinacy, 129. Their danger, whence ascertained, *ib.* Fresh advices of danger, yet supplies are refused, *ib.* Are offered, and why rejected, *ib.* (C). Another supply voted, but refused for the same reason, 130. Attorney-general's opinion on the case, 131. Assembly



- Assembly raise 5000*l.* 132. Measures for a militia, 134. On Braddock's defeat vote supplies, *ib.* The English regulars withdrawn from its frontier, 136. Generous offer of private persons what, *ib.* Assembly vote a loan, after a full vindication of their conduct, 137 and (G). Vote 10,000*l.* for provisions, *ib.* Different petitions to them, *ib.* They grant 60,000*l.* which the governor rejects, *ibid.* Strong representation to them on a militia, 138. Accommodation between them and the governor proposed, with their vigorous resolution, and a militia bill likewise proposed, 139. Remonstrance from Philadelphia, and others against them, and their resolutions thereon, *ib.* Proprietaries give a present of 5000*l.* to the public, *ib.* Assembly and governor continue to clash, 141. The latter presses them to declare war, and different opinions thereon, his reasons for it, *ib.* Several other transactions between both, *ib.* Six members resign, and why, 142. Inconsistent behaviour of the assembly herein, *ib.* and (I). Several intimations by the governor to the assembly, and differences still continue, *ib.* A proprietary instruction produced by the governor, a money bill rejected, and a petition presented against the embargo on provisions, 143. Hardships on the province from hence, and captious behaviour of both parties, *ib.* New alarms, and differences between the assembly and governor, who is succeeded by captain Denny, 144. Province described, 148. Dispute between its proprietary and lord Baltimore, with the agreement thereon, *ibid.*
- Pennsylvanians, on Mr. Quincy's memorial, raise 15,000*l.* xv. 133. Alarmed with a French invasion, *ib.* Their remonstrance to the assembly on Braddock's defeat, 134. Part of their address thereon to the governor, granting 50,000*l.* and why ineffectual, 135. Complaints, and the occasion, 140, & (H). Strong remonstrance to the assembly, and how justified, *ib.* Conduct during the war, 146. Dispute about the disposal of public money, *ib.*
- Pepin d'Héristal absolutely assumes the sovereignty of the Franks, leaving Thierry only the title of king, viii. 656. His names and character, *ib.* Puts an end to the Merovingian race, but preserves Clovis's empire, *ib.* Brings public affairs into order, and respected by foreign powers, *ib.* Account of his issue, *ib.* Humbles the Allemans, Bavarians, &c. *ib.* Also the Frisons, *ib.* Revenge for assassinating his son Grimoalde, 657. Appoints his only son Theudoalde to succeed him, *ib.* Assumes the title, as well as power of king of the Franks, 663. Death, 657
- le Bref (see Carloman) from Mayor of the Palace, becomes king of the Franks, and first of their second race, Childeric the last of the Merovingian princes being set aside, viii. 664. Ascends the throne, with inauguration from the pope's legate, *ib.* Objections to it answered, *ib.* Reduces the Saxons, and Bretons, 665. Reception of pope Stephen III. with the honours done him by that pontiff, *ib.* Conducts him with an army into Italy, forces Astolphus, king of the Lombards, to a peace, which the latter breaks, *ib.* Grants Ravenna to the pope, and upon his return to the pope's assistance, compels Astolphus to a more dishonourable peace, 666. Further changes prevented by Astolphus's death, and Didier, the general, made king, *ib.* After Pepin's return home, he regulates public affairs, *ib.* Success of his war with the duke of Aquitaine, 667. Vigorous war in Aquitaine, with a view to absolute conquest, 669. Duke of Aquitaine slain, and his dominions re-annexed to France, *ib.* Pepin dies of a dropsy, with his character and maxims of policy, *ib.* Measures which he took to prevent the lowness of his stature from rendering him contemptible, with a remarkable instance, 670
- for a plot against his father Charlemagne, banished to a convent for life, viii. 681
- invades Hungary, ix. 516. Goes to Aix la Chapelle, but returning to Italy, sends a fleet twice to Corsica against the Saracens, from Africa, 517. Aquitaine taken from him and given Charles the youngest brother, 521. Besieges Venice, x. 185. After a bloody action, makes peace, and the Doge with his wife Pepin's filter torn to pieces, *ib.* His army defeats the Greeks and Venetians attacking Comaco, ix. 517. Defeat and death, *ib.* His natural son Bernard succeeds him in Italy, 518. The empire, except Bavaria, divided between Lotharius and Charles, 522. His character, x. 185
- Pequots, war between them and New Englanders, with the hostilities committed by the former, xiv. 508. And the retaliation, 509
- Parelllos, Raymond LXII. grand master of Malta, with the reception of Petrowitz Xeremetoff, vii. 519. His admiral defeated by the Turks, *ib.* Ill success against the Turkish corsairs, and noble resolution against them, raising a powerful fleet, 520. Embassy to the pope, *ib.* Oppressed by his inquisitor, 522. Success against the Algerines, but deceived by a Turkish spy, 523. Preparations against the Turks, *ib.* Assists the Venetians against them, *ib.* Their success, and he dies of extreme old age, *ib.*
- Perera, Thomas, assists the king of Pegu against Siam, with his rise and infolence there, iv. 147. Also his dreadful end, 148
- Perera sent ambassador into China, polite behaviour and reception, iv. 159. Also miserable end there, 160 (L).
- Perez, Gomez, and his Spaniards justly massacred by the Chinese, iii. 416
- secretary, arrested and imprisoned, but not removed, viii. 268. Tortured for Escovedo's murder, but escapes to Arragon, 2-2. Apprehended and put into the Inquisition, *ib.* This produces a revolt, is set at liberty, and withdraws into Bearn, *ib.* Becomes a beggar in exile, with some particulars of him, and princeps Eboli, 272 and (B).
- Pergamos ravaged by the Turks, v. 147
- Perja-Konkonna, princess, plots in favour of her brother, ii. 605. Supposed one of the murderers of Ishmael Shah, 606. Put to death by Mohammed, *ib.* & (C).
- Per-ku-puwha, unjust prosecution against Machartay, ii. 419
- Peroem, a city in Arracan, iii. 228
- Perpignan, its inhabitants very apprehensive of being besieged by the French, with king Juan's behaviour, viii. 196. Desire Ferdinand of Sicily, to come and put himself at their head, *ib.* Are gloriously defended by the old king, and two sieges raised, *ibid.* Insidious treaty with the French, who return and ravage Perpignan, 197. Besieged by the dauphin, but he retires with loss, 245. Taken, 304. Campaign there, ix. 405
- Persia invaded and plundered by the Moslems, i. 208
- ambassador from it arrives at Prague, the same who had been sent to Spain, xi. 179 (I). His demand, and the emperor's answer, 185
- troubles there, xiii. 254
- fire, extinguished at Mohammed's birth, i. 9
- empire almost ruined in his time, i. 18
- records how kept, i. 303
- cavalcade in memory of Hosein's death, i. 310
- Sophis or Shahs, their history, ii. 600
- Persians gain a signal battle against the Greeks, i. 28. When, and where fought, *ib.* Defeated by the Arabs near Dhukar, 54. Cause of their hatred against the Turks, 133. Defeated by Omar's troops, 182. Sixty thousand slain at the battle of Kadefia, 187. Receive new defeats from Saad, 208. Why they curse caliph Yezid, i. 315. Over-reach the English at the taking of Ormuz, iv. 139. Oppressed by the eunuchs under Shah Hufseyn, ii. 645. Defeated by Mirweis, 653. Lay siege to Candahar, *ib.* Defeated and cut to pieces by Mirweis, *ib.* Ravaged by the northern nations under his son, 654. Defeated by Ezad Allah, 656. Sent to oppose the rebel Mir Mahmud, 659. Engage him with good success, *ib.* But betrayed by an Arabian general, and totally defeated, 660 (C).
- Peru, several attempts towards its discovery, xiv. 280. Civil war between the Inca and his brother, with the use Pizarro makes of this, 286
- Pedro Gasca sent president thither, xiv. 339
- Perugia, territory and city, described, xiii. 272. Lost by the Florentines, 496. Evacuated, 525. Given up to the pope, xiv. 87
- Peruvians, origin of their war with the Spaniards, xiv. 310. Have recourse to arms, their improvement in war, and an instance of their courage, 319. But at last compelled to submit, after a brave defence, *ib.*
- ancient, account of them, xiv. 372. Their religion is polytheism, *ib.* Barbarous manners and government, *ibid.* Fable to account for their civilization by the Incas, 373. Origin accounted for by a story, 375 (B). Why so tractable, 378. Generals and captains, their power, 379. Expert in embalming, 399 (F. in fine). Spaniards praises of their institutions, 399
- Perrier, M. de, governor of Louisiana, xv. 32. Demands troops from court, and the company's answer, *ib.* Real, but new character of the savages, with Charlevoix's opinion on the head of beating them, *ib.* Farther particulars by Perrier, and Charlevoix's determination, 33. Precautions



- tions on notice of the massacre by the Natches, 35. General consternation of the colony, 36. Transactions with the Chactaws, and resolution to march against the Natches, *ibid.* His own account of the expedition sent to the ministry, *ib.* Sounds the Chactaws, and the messenger's friendly reception, 37. His preparations at New Orleans, *ib.* And Loubois's shameful inactivity, 38. Reception of some Illinois, and their regular behaviour, 42. Representation sent to court what, *ib.* Groundless alarm given him, 43. His negotiations with the savages at Mobile fort, *ib.* Makes an emperor for the western Chactaws, a fact asserted by Charlevoix, but not true, *ib.* & (H). Haughty treatment of a Chicacha chief, and what passed, 49. Reinforcement from France, with an expedition against the Natches, and number of his troops, *ib.* Disposition of their march, he discovers the Natches fort, and invests it, 50. Whilst in treaty arrests the grand Sun, and others, *ib.* Different accounts here, 51 (K). Several surrender, and others force their way through the French, *ib.* Sends the grand Sun, and the other prisoners into slavery, *ib.* The grand chief of the Tonicas intercedes with him for some Natches; and his answer, 51
- Perrot succeeds Maisonneuve, governor of Montreal, xiv. 608. Sent to visit the most northern Canadians for a congress, 610
- Pesä, the Kin general, defeated by the Mungls, ii. 342
- Pesaro, marquis, his firmness against the pope's proposal, and the emperor's complaints against the latter, xiii. 503. Discontent and conspiracy, 508. Intentions and insincerity, *ib.* Appointed to command for the emperor in Italy, 509. Betrays his confederates, with his death and character, *ibid.*
- Pessari, the Venetian admiral, takes Legina and Mitylene, &c. also Cephalonia and Junca, x. 285. Takes Scordona from the Turks, with negotiations for peace, and the different sentiments in the senate, 338
- Pestilence, the opinion of the Moslems about its cause, i. 678 & (M).
- terrible in Denmark, xii. 41
- and famine, besides other misfortunes, in Sweden, xii. 113
- terrible all over Russia, xiii. 113
- in Florence, xiii. 346, 361
- Petachia, rabbi, his travels and account of the eastern Jews, with his fables and miracles, and pretended chiefs, v. 544 (K). (L). Cheat on the governor of Nineveh, *ib.* (K).
- Petellian appointed the Venetian general, and his character, with that of Alviana, who served under him, x. 292 (D). First engagement unfortunate, and to what owing, *ib.* (E). His conduct in not seconding his lieutenant Alviana, applauded, 293
- Peter and Paul fall out of Damascus, i. 142. The latter taken prisoner and beheaded, and the former killed, *ib.*
- the hermit, head of the Crusade, defeated, ii. 208.
- Alphonso, a learned Jew, turns Christians, v. 550 (E).
- Abyssinian Abuna, raises a revolt against the emperor, but is slain, vi. 254
- Peter, friar, murdered, is reputed a saint, ix. 636
- of Arragon, made king of Sicily by the pope; his arrival there, and coronation at Palermo, x. 446. Invades Calabria; and how he resolves to save his honour, 447. Establishes his authority in Italy, whom the pope excommunicates and deposes; giving Arragon to Charles of Valois, *ib.* Appoints his son James to the crown of Sicily, 448
- of Sicily dying, his son Lewis succeeds, under the regency of his uncle, the duke of Randatium, x. 460
- of Dresden's suggestion to Sacobellus, a Hussite preacher, ix. 706
- St. the first stone of that church in Rome laid by Bramante, &c. x. 57
- patrimony described, and cause of its wretchedness what, xiii. 271
- the Florentine, a party under him cut to pieces by Castruccio, xiii. 308
- of Baume, succeeds John of Savoy as bishop of Geneva, with his pompous entry, and that of the duke and dukes of Savoy; and the latter's cold behaviour, xiv. 17
- succeeds his nephew Boniface, marquis of Savoy, who recovers what his predecessor lost, with other acquisitions, 126
- Czar, his troops defeated by Charles XIIth at Narva, xii. 578. Machinations of the kings of Poland and Denmark with that czar, and their characters, 374. Sends proposals of peace to Charles XII. with the answer and reply of each, 384. Enters Moldavia, where he is joined by prince Cantemir, 393. Great straits he is reduced to in Moldavia, through Brancovan's treachery, and surrounded at Jazy in Moldavia by the Turks, on the banks of the Pruth, xiii. 222. Out of which he is extricated by a peace at at Pruth, through his consort Catharine's means, xii. 393. 611. Defeats the Swedish fleet, 405. Makes a descent on the coast of Sweden, with his ravages there, 415. Ravages while a congress is holding, 417. Proposals for peace with him, and interruptions to it, *ibid.* Import of the propositions, and sieur Hopkins severely reprimanded, 418. Peace with, but disliked in Sweden, though the best could then be expected, *ib.* Interview between him and Augustus at Birzen, with perpetual inebriation for fifteen days, xii. 579. Plan of operations, and treaty concluded there, with the terms, *ib.* Reduces Narva, 594. Resolves to pour his vengeance on Charles XII. Relies on the disposition of the Polish republic, and assistance of certain neighbouring powers, 604. Labours to accelerate the measures of the Poles, and disposes his forces up and down, 605. Forms a scheme for Augustus's reascending the throne of Poland, with the latter's caution, 607. Renews the treaty with Augustus, which that at Alt-randstadt had broke off, *ib.* Takes Riga, with all Livonia and Finland; also a treaty between him and the kings of Denmark and Poland, with the stipulations, 611. Poles request to him, and his answer, *ibid.* Treaty between him and Denmark, *ibid.* Eludes his promise of evacuating Poland, 612. On his approach, a suspension of arms accepted, with the cruelty of the confederates at Posenania, 613. Agreement at length concluded, when the civil dissensions end, *ib.* More liberal of his succours to his abdicated ally, Augustus, xiii. 206. His friends counter-act Sophia, and her favourite Galitzin, and get the command of the army against the Crim imposed on the latter, xii. 180. Second expedition, and encountering the enemy, who withdraw, to defend Precep, the suburbs of which they set on fire, *ib.* Marriage, 181. Measures taken by him at Trinity convent, and by his sister Sophia in her own vindication, through his two aunts and the patriarch, &c. 182. Return to Moscow, with his reception from his brother, 183. His relations and friends preferred, *ibid.* Surnamed the Great, with his person, disposition, &c. described, *ib.* Efforts to break bad habits; his application to the military art, and civil government, *ib.* How he conquers his dread of water, and to what this infirmity was owing, *ib.* (X). Learns of himself the High and Low Dutch; is confirmed in the resolution of introducing the liberal arts, which views his father had; and his having a frigate and yacht built on the Wolga, which Stenko Razin destroyed, 184. Beginning of his design to form a marine, having vessels built, and embarking on the Frozen Ocean, *ib.* And to have a body of well-disciplined land forces, *ib.* Resolves to abolish the Strelitzes, which he communicates to Le Fort; and the manner in which he begins to form a company of fifty of his own domestics, 185. They increase to a regiment, called Preobrazinski-guards, and another called Semenowsky-guards, *ib.* Is desirous to see a mock-fight, which becomes a downright battle, and several are killed, *ib.* By degrees, reforms the independence of the bojars in the army, *ib.* Situation with respect to his neighbours, particularly China, 186. On the advantages gained by the Venetians and emperor Leopold against the Turks; and by the Poles, repelling the incursions of the Crim Tartars, sends an army under marshal Scheremetof, generals Gordon and Le Fort, &c. to the Palus Mæotis, 187. Being a volunteer himself, with their operations in besieging Asoph, *ib.* Again attacks it, *ib.* Fleet successful, and the garrison of Asoph surrenders, delivering up the traitor Jacob, 188. Improves the fortifications of Asoph, and digs a deep harbour, with his other maritime preparations against the Turks, and his measures for defraying the expences of the armament, *ib.* Views for all this; with his triumphal return to Moscow; the soldiers and generals taking precedence of their sovereign, and his view herein, *ib.* Resemblance of this triumph to the Roman, *ib.* Naval triumph and rewards to Galitzin and his men, while his land-forces ravage Swedish Lapland, 252. Overtures for a peace between him and Sweden made by Romanzoff, are rejected; yet the mediation of France afterwards accepted, and a peace concluded at Nyssadt, with two



two of the articles, ceding for ever all the conquered provinces, and his maintaining them in their privileges, *ibid.* (A). Remarkable legend of a medal struck on his triumphal entry into Moscow, *ib.* Sends some young noblemen into foreign parts for their improvement in navigation, and the military art, *ib.* Resolves to travel, in order to learn the art of government, and in the retinue of three ambassadors; with an account of them and their attendants, 189. Motives for this, and appointing a regency in his absence, *ib.* Distribution of his troops ere he sets out, *ib.* Is refused by count d'Alberg seeing Riga citadel; with his answer on this behaviour, 190. Splendid reception at Königsberg by the elector of Brandenburg, and the different modes of dress, *ib.* Drawing upon Le Fort at one of his carousals; asking his favourite's pardon, and his saying thereon, *ib.* Through several places, he arrives at Amsterdam, *ib.* Disguises himself like a Dutch skipper, and goes to the village of Sardam, where vessels were building, with his working there, and entering himself as a common carpenter, under the name of Peter Michaeloff, commonly called Mr. Peter (Peter bas) *ib.* and on the division in Poland, promises Augustus 30,000 men, *ib.* From his shop, issues out orders to his army in the Ukraine, and his troops obtain a victory over the Tartars near Asoph; with their taking Or, (Precop) *ib.* To make himself master of several arts, frequently goes to Amsterdam; and pays a private visit at Utrecht and the Hague to king William III. *ib.* Assists at the public entry, and audience of his ambassadors, with the reciprocal presents on this occasion, *ibid.* Receives the first visit of all the Ryswick plenipotentiaries, except the French, 191. Sends a ship of his own building to Archangel, and all sorts of artists to Moscow, with his own skill in several arts, especially geography; and making a draught of the communication between the Caspian and Black seas, *ibid.* His troops gain another victory over the Tartars and Turks; goes to England, where he perfects himself in English ship-building, by plan and rule, constructing one accordingly, and a prime sailer, *ib.* Directs his attention to watch-making, and engages several artists, with mathematicians, as Ferguson, &c. calculates eclipses, and he understood the laws of gravitation, 192. Goes into churches and meeting-houses in time of service, to the Tower, Parliament-house, &c. visits Oxford, and the archbishop of Canterbury; is shewn a mock sea-fight by the king, and his declaration thereon, *ib.* Has a present made him of the royal transport in which he goes back to Holland, with several sea-captains, lieutenants, and other artists, whom he sends in it to Archangel, while those engaged at Amsterdam go to Narva, *ib.* Artists also from Rome, Italy, &c. he proceeds to Vienna, where he has an interview with the emperor, who revives the ancient feast of landlord and landlady, (Wurtschaft) 193. While preparing to go to Venice, receives the news of a rebellion in his dominions, *ib.* Concurring causes of this disturbance, *ib.* Unexpected arrival at Moscow, after concerting measures with Augustus against Sweden, 194. Rewards the troops that had defeated the Strelitzes, whom he punishes most exemplarily, *ib.* (E). New models his army and fleet, he also reforms the state of his finances after several methods tried, likewise the church, abolishing the patriarchate, *ib.* Becomes absolute master of the clergy, though not head of the Russian church, as appears from the preamble of his regulations, *ib.* Convenes a synod, with the form of an oath of obedience administered, 196. Ordains that none be admitted to a monastic life till fifty, &c. but this since repealed, *ib.* These alterations productive of complaints, but soon silenced, renders the clergy more learned, founding three colleges in Moscow, *ib.* Mitigates the three Lents, granting a dispensation to his troops and workmen, he also reforms the Kalender, beginning the year in January 1700, and celebrates it with a jubilee, &c. *ib.* Alters the manner of writing, marriages, customs, 197. Abolishes Golut (slave) substituting Raab (subject), when speaking to the czar, &c. *ib.* Institutes the order of St. Andrew, and concludes an advantageous truce with the Turks, *ib.* After Mustapha II's defeat by Eugene at Zenta, being stript of the Morea by the Venetians, and unable to defend Asoph, concludes a peace at Carlowitz, 198. Now turns his views to the Baltic, *ib.* Besieges Narva, *ib.* Goes to Novogrod with his favourite Menzikof, then a lieutenant and afterwards field-marshal, 199. Charles XII. after some successes against detachments, attacks the Russian entrenchments with a force very much inferior, *ib.* And through a dissension between the commanders, de Croy and Dolgorucki totally

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

defeats them, these generals, &c. with 30,000 Russians surrendering, *ib.* Charles's loss and that of the Russians, *ib.* Unaccountable behaviour of Charles in letting the Russians go, with a letter of congratulation from the grand seignior; 200 (A). The advantages which Charles reaps from this signal victory, and the figure he makes as the first prince in Europe, *ib.* Remarkable form of prayer to St. Nicholas, composed by a Russian, on this occasion read publicly; *ib.* Firmness on receiving the news of this defeat, and his saying thereon, *ib.* Takes measures for repairing his losses, and makes an engagement for some troops with Denmark, which that monarch durst not observe, *ib.* Interview and agreement with Augustus at Birzen; but the majority of the Polish diet determining not to fight, Peter is obliged to depend entirely on his own forces, *ib.* Establishes several manufactures, 201. Continues his armament, and builds a fleet on the Peipus and Ladoga lakes; he undertakes the junction of the Baltic with the Caspian and Euxine seas, *ib.* Continues reforming the manners of his people; and his jocular answer at a wedding of one of his jesters, upon keeping it in the ancient manner, and his view herein, 203. Establishes a printing-house, and public schools; under one Ferguson, a Scotchman, *ib.* Also a large hospital, and several manufactures, with his excursion to Woronetz, and preparations there against the Turks, by contriving two eighty gun ships to float over bars and shoals, *ib.* Also preparations against the Swedes at Olonitz, between Ladoga and Onega lakes, with his taking rank of captain under Scheremetow, 204. He takes Nyenschautz, a fort near Ladoga lake, not far from the Neva, with the captain of the bombardiers made a knight of St. Andrew, *ib.* Founda his new capital of Petersburg at the mouth of the Neva, *ib.* (W). A small fort first erected in an island, and Cronstot over-against it soon after made impregnable, *ib.* A new town rises in five months, and the first building in it a low hut for the czar, *ib.* (X). A Dutch vessel trades there, whose captain receives some presents, *ib.* (Y). Takes all the neighbouring posts, and defeats a Swedish colonel's detachment, *ib.* (Z). Repairs to Olonitz for putting small vessels on the stocks, and returns in a frigate to Petersburg, *ib.* Sends 12,000 foot and 300,000 rubles to Augustus, with the building of Cronstot citadel, and setting out for Moscow to establish his regulations, &c. 205. Defeats the Swedes on Peipus lake, taking their small fleet, besieges Narva and Doerpt, *ib.* Besieges and takes Elbing, one of Charles's magazines, with the artillery found there, 220. Wiburg surrenders to him on terms, but these broken, *ib.* In vindication of his character, with regard to the czarowitz, he sends circular letters to the several courts of Europe, 247. Flies to the relief of Archangel against a Swedish fleet, puts it in a state of defence, hindering their landing, and returns to the seat of war, 202. Rewards the officers and soldiers in Notteburg, punishing such as run away from an assault, and the name of the place why changed to Schlusselfburg, 203. He and his victorious troops make a triumphal entry into Moscow, *ib.* Takes Mittau, the capital of Courland, and the citadel by capitulation, with a remarkable instance of the great reformation among the Russian troops, before they would guard the burying-place of the great dukes, 207. Providing for the security of Ingria, marches an army through Samogitia and Lithuania, and has a second interview with Augustus at Tikoczin, gives him men and money, after which he goes to Moscow, *ib.* Fortunately assembles the several parts of his army, and providing for his conquests in Ingria, &c. besieges Wiburg, the capital of Carelia, without success, 208. Provides for the security of his remote provinces, and does all in his power to stop the enemy's progress, after which he hastily returns to Petersburg, *ib.* Some talk of peace between the czar and Sweden, 210. Charles's answer to the French envoy Basseval, and Peter's reply, *ib.* Crossing the Dnieper attacks the Swedes under Lewenhaupt, and between it and Soeza gains the famous victory of Lefnau, the action being renewed for three days successively, 213. With an account of the enemy's loss, and the great convoy of provisions for Charles's army taken, *ib.* This the first pitched battle which the czar gained in person, *ib.* Prepares to meet Charles XII. after surveying the neighbouring parts, 215. Assembles all his troops well provided, and appears before the place with 60,000 men, crosses the Workla above the town, and reconnoitres the enemy's camp for an attack, *ib.* Some reflections on this critical situation of both monarchs, 216. Beats Charles there, *ib.* Endeavours by a friendly letter to recal Charles from Turkey, which did not reach him, 217 (C). The general officers



presented to him, and the health he drinks to them at dinner, what, 217. The subalterns and soldiers sent to Siberia, *ib.* Restores Augustus to the Polish crown, and concludes a treaty at Thorn against Sweden, with Denmark, Poland, and Prussia, with their different views, 218. Treats in person with the king of Prussia, besieges Riga, visits Petersburg, and repairs to Moscow, preparing a triumph with his own hand, which utters in the year, 219. Augments his forces and takes the field before the Turks, secures Asoph, 220. And makes a treaty with the Calmuc Tartars for a body of men, 221. Returns to his own dominions, concludes a negociation at Carelsbud with Mr. Kameke, sent from the king of Prussia, and is present at the marriage of his son the czarowitz at Torgaw, with the princess of Wolfenbuttle, 223. Goes to Elbing, &c. and comes to Petersburg, where he offers to accept the investiture of Livonia from the emperor, but refused, *ib.* Public marriage with Catherine, 224. Enters Pomerania, *ib.* Goes to Carelsbud, and from thence visits the king of Prussia at Berlin, *ib.* Complaint against the Poles, and Scheremetow's warm remonstrance, but to no effect, 225. Sets out for his dominions, and after interviews with the elector of Hanover, and king of Prussia, arrives at Riga, 226. Equipping a large fleet from Petersburg, makes a descent on Finland; and though his fleet miscarries, he takes Abo, with a considerable number of books, 227. Compliment to the Swedish admiral Ehrenschild at an entertainment in prince Menzikoff's palace, 229. Disapproves of a project for a bridge over the Neva, and forbids crossing the river but with sails, and other improvements made by him in Petersburg, 229. Institutes the order of St. Catharine, in honour of his consort, and reforms several abuses in the public administration with severity, and its good effects, 230. Rejects the mediation of the French, *ib.* Returning to Petersburg employs his whole attention to finish the fortifications and improvements, 231. Shuts up with his fleet the passages from Stockholm into Gothland, and lands 15,000 men at Javel, whilst a body of horse penetrates from Finland into the northern provinces of Sweden, *ib.* Abolishes immoderate weeping and vociferations at funerals, with the occasion, and arrives at Dantzick, *ib.* Sets out for Konigsburg, and gives audience to the Persian ambassador, with his demands on Dantzick mitigated by the king of Poland, *ib.* Goes to Stetin, and agrees with the king of Prussia about stopping the Swedes progress in Denmark, with the allies taking Wismar, *ib.* Misunderstanding between him and the court of Hanover, how occasioned, his arrival at Copenhagen, and conduct there with regard to the intended attack upon Schonen, and his departure for Lubec, 232. Goes to the Hague, 233. Memorial to the court of Great Britain for clearing himself from any share in the plot for the Pretender, answered in general terms, *ib.* Sets out for France, and his views, with his offers of an army to be sent to the empire, and why rejected by the French court, 232. Visits Paris, xv. 608. Concludes a treaty of friendship with Lewis XIV. and the proposal of a treaty of commerce made to him at Amsterdam from Britain why frustrated, xiii. 232. Suspension of arms between him and Sweden, with his return to Petersburg, and redressing great disorders in the administration during his absence, 234. Unsuccessful expedition to take possession of a river on the Caspian sea, *ib.* Extraordinary proceedings against his son the czarowitz Alexis, and the czar's declaration published, while his son is a bringing back from Naples, 235. Makes further enquiry into the motives of his son's conduct, and the father's declaration hereupon, 238. Address to the high court of justice, 244. Address also to the clergy assembled, 245. The clergy's extracts from the holy scriptures, constitution of the empire, and military laws on this case, *ib.* (C). Conference opened at Oeland for a peace between him and Sweden, failing with his fleet to Abo, and all frustrated by Charles's death at Frederickshall, 247. Laboured manifesto in his own justification, while meditating a descent on Sweden, 248 (A). The queen of Sweden's reply, 249. His desolating descent on Sweden by admiral Apraxin and general Lessly, 250. But renews the proposals of peace to Sweden, the conditions of which are rejected, *ib.* A long account of the retreat of his fleet published by himself, *ib.* Rupture between him and the king of Great Britain, with the steps taken by the former by arresting all English merchants, &c. *ib.* Great preparations for war, *ib.* Declines the mediation of Great Britain between him and Sweden, 251. Treaty of perpetual peace about the same time concluded with the Porte, and his further reformations in the state,

particularly an intended communication between the Wolga and Baltic, 252. Title of Great, &c. accepted by him from the senate, and acknowledged by all European powers, except Denmark, 253. Transfers the principal mart from Archangel to Petersburg, and orders the scriptures to be translated into the Russian language, also to be sold cheap; and the clergy to preach agreeably to those scriptures, *ib.* Makes a triumphal entry into Moscow, *ib.* On his son Peter's death, a declaration to be sworn to about his choosing a successor, and their approving of him, which all the people do accordingly, *ib.* Sends fresh succours under general Repnin to Augustus, and still continues to build his new city and navy, 206. Makes a triumphant entry into Moscow, and one excursion to Woronetz, to launch an eighty gun ship of his own draught, *ib.* Sets out for Courland to assist Augustus, 207. Difference between him and king of Poland, 247. The former's sharp letter, and Augustus's justification of his conduct, 248. Deserted by his allies, and his minister's menacing declaration to the congress at Oeland, *ib.* Remonstrance to Myrr-weis for satisfaction of some injuries, with that rebel's insolent answer, 254. Views for assembling his troops in the eastern provinces, *ib.* Upon a severe fit of the cholic he makes his will, therein naming his successor, &c. and sets out on an expedition against Persia, *ib.* His real intentions published in a manifesto, *ib.* Gains advantages over the Persians, and makes considerable conquests, 255. Care of his marine at Petersburg, 256. Taken ill, when he enjoins the nobility assembled in his chamber to acknowledge Catharine for their sovereign, who receives their oaths accordingly, with his death and issue, 258. A noble mausoleum of fine marble erected by Catharine, and his epitaph, *ib.* (B). A curious medal struck on the occasion, 259.

Peter Alexowitz II. his right recognized and confirmed by oath, with its form, xiii. 258 (B). Declared by the empress Catharine her successor, under a regency of her nomination, 264. Dies, 265.

—— III. emperor of Russia, an account of some of his many acts of magnanimity and clemency, &c. xiii. 267 (A). Short reign, resignation and death, xv. 633.

——, king of the Hungarians, favouring the Germans, deposed, xv. 382. Restored, *ib.* Who still favouring the Germans, his subjects rebel, *ib.* Is taken, his eyes put out and deposed, he dies, *ib.*

Peterborough takes Barcelona, and the consequences to king Charles, ix. 488. His remonstrance to the emperor, with the latter's answer, xi. 361.

——, governor of Jamaica, xv. 294. But did not come over, *ib.*

Peterhoff and other palaces in Russia, xiii. 18.

Petersburg, government, its site described, xiii. 19. Principal places and palaces, 20.

——, St. full description of that city, xiii. 20. Four dispensaries in it for the fleet and army, 25 (Q). Account of its exports, 77 (A). Home commodities, *ib.* Furs why dear there, the goods imported, with the value of exports and imports, *ib.* (F). Account of the merchants and traders, both natives and foreigners, 79. With their manner of trading, and a number of ships, *ib.* Privileges of the English and Dutch, with their trade, *ib.* That new city peopled and established by the czar, 227.

Petrarch's character of pope Clement VI. ix. 674. Solicitation to him by pope Innocent VI. 682 (L). Reproaches the emperor Charles IV. in a letter, xi. 52 (X). Death, with an account of him, ix. 690 (O).

Petri, Olaus, in a public disputation at Stockholm, remains master of the field, xii. 277.

Petrone's pretended victory over the Arabs improbable, i. 473.

Petrowna, princess Maria, born at Riga, xiii. 226.

Petrowitz, the czar's son, his birth, xiii. 185.

Pe-ya-u, Timur's widow, her cabals against Hay-shan, ii. 399. Frustrated by the prime minister, *ib.* Guards set over her, 400. Put to death by Hay-shan, 401.

Pe-yen's rise and character, ii. 366. Made general by Kublay, 370. Success against the Song, 371. Singular moderation, 372. Rejects the offers of peace, *ib.* Success against the Chinese, *ib.* Charity and moderation, 373. Marches towards the capital of Song, 374. Takes it, 375. Rejects the Song's offers of peace, and triumphant entry, 376. Sends the seal of the Song empire to Hu-pi-lay, *ib.* Behaviour to the Imperial family at Lingan, 377. Sends them and their vast treasure to Hu-pi-lay, *ib.* Recalled by him, *ib.* Reception and elegy from him, 378. Success against the revolted Tartars, 379. Gives them a fresh defeat,



fat, 391. Recalled and honoured by Kublay, 392. Advice to young Timur, 393. Death and character, 395

Pe-yen, a wicked minister of Towhan-temur, ii. 415. Seizes and slays Tankishi, and kills the empress, 416. Bloody advice to the emperor, and seized by his own nephew, 417. Condemned and banished, *ib.* Death, 418.

Peysh-kush, or a tax demanded by Shah Nadir from the Mogul, which amounts to twenty five millions sterling, iii. 127 (X). Raised with great severity, 129. Horrid cruelties, 130

Peyshur taken by Shah Nadir, iii. 124

Pey-tse (Pey-le) Chinese titles of honour what, ii. 261

Peyton, captain, made commander in India, iv. 360. Declines engaging the French, 361

——, Sir Robert, rescued by the populace of Amsterdam, from Skelton, and the officers imprisoned, xi. 634. Who are sent over to king James, that monarch pardoning and preferring them, *ib.*

Pfaffenmütz taken by count de Berg, xi. 498

Phalburgers, disturbances occasioned by that article in the Golden bull, xi. 53. People who have forfeited their freedom, 376

Pfeffer, Cornelius, his advice against the Jewish books opposed by Reuchlin, v. 602 (R)

Pfeifferus put to death, xi. 139

Pfullendorf, account of, xv. 444

Pharos island, in Egypt, described, i. 237

—— Lesser and Greater, in Egypt, also described, vi. 20

Phca, Rabbi Isaac, a famous doctor at Padua, his works, v. 598

Phcen, king of Abyssinia, reigns at the time of Christ's birth, with an account of his descendants, vi. 252

Pherutz-Shiboor, the famous Jewish academy, v. 531, (D). When abolished, 532

Philadelphia taken by John Ducas, ii. 209. Reduced by Filokales, 211. Besieged by the Othmans, and the siege raised by count Roger, v. 149

—— in Pennsylvania laid out, xv. 115.

—— Capital of Pennsylvania, described, xv. 149. Its academy, *ib.* Various sectaries, *ib.* (M). Account of the Moravians, and their zeal in converting, 150.

Philantropenus, Alexis, his success in the East, ii. 241. Betrayed by the Candiot to Libadarius, who puts his eyes out, 242.

Philibert, the Hunter, succeeds his father Amadeo IX. duke of Savoy, and dies without issue, xiv. 129.

—— the handsome, succeeds his father Philip Lackland, duke of Savoy, his character, marriage without issue, and death, xiv. 129.

Philip made king of Angola, under the Portuguese, a zealous convert, and his happy reign, vi. 510.

—— and don Juan Emanuel act as regents of Portugal, and in opposition to each other, viii. 36. Dies, 37.

—— Duke of Burgundy, unites Luxemburg to his dominions, and the consideration, xi. 105.

—— son to Philip the Hardy, contracted to the princess Joanna, of Navarre, sends a viceroy with an army into that country, with his wife conduct there, viii. 579. Also Robert, count of Artois, with another, *ib.* The rebels reduced, and peace settled, *ib.*

—— the Long, declared regent of Navarre, and crowned, gains a strong party, who espouse young Joanna's right, with the death of himself, and son, viii. 581.

Philip, emperor, after defeating Otho, sends the pope an embassy, and is absolved upon terms, ix. 615.

—— of Suabia, takes the regency during his nephew's minority, x. 692. Innocent declares himself his enemy, *ib.* Chosen king of the Romans, *ib.* Desolation in Germany, and from what, with his successful ravages in Alsace, and coronation at Mentz, as king of the Romans, *ib.* Ravages Alsace a second time, and why he brings over to his party Przemislaus, king of Bohemia, 693, & (N). Also Henry, count Palatine, with the consideration, 693. Ravages Thuringia, and reduces Bohemia into a province, 694. The pope espouses the cause of its king, *ib.* Crowned a second time by the archbishop of Cologne, with the advantages acquired by the pope from these troubles, 695. Proceedings to strengthen himself after the surrender of Cologne, his accommodation with the pope, and concessions made to him, *ib.* Murdered by Otho, count Palatine, of Wittelsbach, *ib.* & 696 (R). Character, *ib.*

—— duke of Cleves, why put to the ban by the emperor, xi. 114.

—— accession to the crown of France, under the guardianship of Baldwin, a very wise measure, ix. 28. Governs so

as to turn every occurrence to his own advantage, 29. Instances hereof, *ib.* Not much liked by his subjects, and the pope exasperated against him, *ib.* Successful in the war against William the Conqueror, 30. Peace concluded, and its effect upon Philip, *ib.* Enters into intrigues with Robert, eldest son of the Conqueror, who revolts against his father, their rencounter together, and peace concluded, *ib.* New war with Normandy; also a jest of the king's on the Conqueror, and his reply, *ib.* The Conqueror's death an advantage to Philip, and occasions disturbances among the former's sons, *ib.* Robert, the eldest, forced to a peace, *ib.* Divorces his wife, and demands Emma, of Calabria, in marriage, *ib.* Carries away the countess of Anjou, procures a divorce, and marries her, *ib.* Excommunicated by the pope, his mean behaviour under repeated excommunications, and at last obtains absolution, *ib.* Falls into contempt with his people, *ib.* Death, character, and issue, 32.

Philip II. (Augustus) succeeds his father Lewis, king of France, ix. 44. Great character, *ib.* Governs with extreme prudence, and will be obeyed, with several instances and cabals suppressed, *ib.* Annexes Vermandois to the crown-domain, in spite of the count of Flanders, 45. Seeming amity between him and Henry of England, but war is declared by the former, *ib.* Both reconciled by the pope, take the cross, and a new quarrel between them, in which Richard sides with Philip against his father, 46. Peace once more restored, with Henry's death, *ib.* Comparison between him and Richard of England, who prepare for the expedition to the Holy Land, with the transactions between them during their stay in Sicily, 47. Sails for Syria, leaving Richard behind, who takes Cyprus by the way, *ib.* On continual quarrels, resolves to return home, who from a jealousy of Richard; forms a body-guard, and marries Ingerburge of Denmark, 48. Enters into alliance with John against Richard, now a prisoner with the emperor Henry VI. with a saying of Philip's to John on Richard's release, 49. Invades Normandy; and Richard, passing with an army into France, routs that of Philip, *ib.* A truce, and then a decisive peace concluded at Louviers, *ib.* New war between them, but ends in a year's truce, under the mediation of the count of Flanders; and before a solid peace, Richard is slain, 50. Obligated to take Ingerburge, after he had sent her to a convent, and his mistress's death thereupon, *ib.* Enters into a war with king John, 51. Ended by a marriage of Lewis, Philip's eldest son, with Blanche of Castile, *ib.* John's murder of his nephew Arthur gives Philip opportunity of confiscating his fiefs in France, *ib.* Takes Higher and Lower Normandy, except Rouen; also Maine, Anjou, and Touraine, 52. Unsuccessful attempt of John, who obtains a truce, *ib.* Convinces at a crusade against the count of Thoulouse and Albigeois, *ib.* Who is disappointed of England, after the crusade against it, and John, 53. Finds himself attacked by the latter, and a powerful confederacy, *ib.* Important victory over the allies at Bouvines, 54. Grants John a truce, and the motives, *ib.* Banishes the Jews, v. 546, & (P). Recalls and burns eighty of them, *ib.* Death, great character, and issue, ix. 56, & (G).

—— III. or Hardy, succeeds his father, St. Lewis, king of France, ix. 68. Treaty with the Tunis, *ib.* Making a tour through Italy, is very joyfully received, and crowned afterwards at Paris, *ib.* Compels count de Foix to surrender at discretion, and after a year's confinement releases him, *ib.* Marries his second son Lewis to the heiress of Navarre, and he himself marries Mary of Brabant, 69. Receives the homage of Edward I. to whom Agencis is given by virtue of his father's treaty, and death of Lewis his eldest son, *ib.* His favourite la Brosse, the quondam barber, disgraced and condemned, with its bad effects on the king, 70. Disgust in general taken, *ib.* Declares his son Charles de Valois king of Arragon, &c. *ib.* Furnishes forces for his uncle Charles of Anjou, who dies of grief, *ib.* Invades Catalonia, takes Gironne, and his fleet destroyed by the Arragonese, *ib.* Origin of the quarrel between him and pope Boniface VIII. with the latter's character, and decision as umpire between Philip and Edward, 74. Defensive alliance between both understood as a league against the pope, with the revival of the differences between Philip and the pontiff, also the methods used in support of each, *ib.* The pope seized at Anagni, by the French partisans, who dies of grief; and this an opportune blow to the papal power in France, 75. Source of the war in Flanders, that country being through treachery annexed to France, with several revolts thereon, but quashed after some bloodshed;



shed; and the French defeated there with great slaughter, *ib.* Raises the whole force of France, but their operations frustrated through a stratagem of Edward, but at length penetrate into Flanders, 76. After a victory concludes a peace, *ib.* Absolved by pope Benedict XI. whom Clement V. succeeds by Philip's means, *ib.* He and his brother lead the pope's horse at his coronation, 77. Death, character, issue, and other particulars, 71, & (K).

Philip the Fair, succeeds his father as king of Navarre, viii. 580. Transactions in Navarre 'till Joanna's death, with her building the college of Navarre, at Paris, and her issue, *ibid.*

— le Bel, succeeds his father Philip, king of France, ix. 71. Restores Xaintonge to Edward I. of England, by whose means prince Charles the Lamé, is set at liberty, *ib.* Peace restored on all hands, but Philip quarrels with Edward, and will hear of no proposal for accommodation, 72. His treachery brings on a war with Edward, *ib.* Efforts of a French historian to turn the fraud upon Edward, 73. War declared by Edward, with its consequences, and issue, 'till a truce is concluded, *ib.* Penetrates into Flanders, and after a victory concludes a peace, 75. Banishes the Jews out of France, v. 562. Recalls and persecutes them, 563, & (P). Aspires to the empire, xi. 23. Arrests one hundred and forty knights Templars, at Paris, ix. 78. Several of which suffer death with great steadiness and piety, with the suppression of the order in the council of Vienne, *ib.* Differences between him and Edward II. amicably adjusted, 79. Regulates the parliament of Paris, *ib.* (L). Erects also that of Tholouse, &c. *ib.* sub not. Appoints assemblies of the states, with some account of these, *ib.* sub fine. True motive for his proceeding thus, and the use the subjects turn it to, *ib.* sub not. After marching a vast army into Flanders, a new treaty is concluded with its count, 80. Confederacies formed to prevent raising money, bring him to his grave, and a short character of him, *ib.*

— count of Poitiers, declared regent, in spite of count de Valois's intrigues, ix. 82. Different opinions about the succession, with a stipulation thereon, *ib.* The regent's successful war against the count of Flanders, and is declared king of France, 83.

— V. or Tall, declared king of France on the death of John I. ix. 83. Confirmed by a general assembly at Paris, with other measures for preventing disputes, and new troubles ready to break out, but stopped by the king's wisdom, *ib.* Peace with the Flemings, and dissuaded by the pope from an expedition to the Holy Land, *ib.* Great mortality in France by poisoning the waters, with the last great action of his reign, 84. Death and character, with a good regulation of the Chatelet, and his issue, 85 (N).

— de Valois, declared regent against Edward III's claim, ix. 88. The latter's prior to any other, with an account of the house of Valois, *ib.* (A). Causes the lord of Montigny to be hanged, and gets a large confiscation, 89. On the queen's delivery of a daughter, acknowledged and crowned king, *ib.* Assists Lewis, count of Flanders, against the Flemings, whom he beats at Cassel, and takes in all Flanders, 90. Seizes king Edward's revenues in France, and makes Beaumont le Roger, a pecrage for Robert de Artois, *ib.* Determines a dispute in favour of the clergy, and Edward obliged to make a satisfactory declaration of the homage demanded, *ib.* Seemingly zealous to undertake a crusade, 91. Invited by the pope into Italy, and declared general of the Holy See, makes a shameful retreat into France, xi. 34. Assembles his allies, and his whole force, to revenge this devastation; but the English pass into Flanders, and reach Cressy, after crossing the ford Blanquetague, and Philip totally defeated there, ix. 96. Marries Blanch, of Navarre, as his son does the countess of Bologne, *ib.* The king dies little regretted, with his character, *ib.*

— duke of Orleans, regent of France, his arbitrary proceedings as to the coin, xv. 607. Establishes a court, called *Chambre Ardente*, *ib.* Intimate friendship with George I. to whom he sends private notice of the pretender's proceedings, *ib.* Edict for relieving those imprisoned on account of the bull *Unigenitus*, and receiving it with modifications, 608. Yet persecutes the Protestants, *ib.* Edict against the duke of Maine, and count Toulouse, *ib.* Gets the whole species into his hands, and forms more strict connections with Great Britain, *ib.* Several taken into custody, and executed for favouring the Spanish interest, *ib.* Erects a royal bank by Law's persuasion, with its vast circulation, 609. And transfers the privileges of the East-

India company to that of the Mississippi, with its immense stocks thereon, *ib.* Makes Law comptroller of the finances, with the regent's ruinous proceedings for France by his edicts, *ib.* Obligated to repeal some of them, dismiss Mr. Law, and dissolve the Mississippi company, 610. Opposed by the parliament of Paris, whom he banishes, *ib.* Quarters a large body of men in and about Paris, *ib.* Dismisses Villeroy as governor to the king, *ib.* Makes cardinal du Bois first minister, and his infamous character, but both die, *ib.* And the duke of Bourbon first minister, *ib.*

Philip, archduke, his marriage with Joanna, infanta of Spain, and its advantages to the house of Austria, xi. 118. Both are invited into Spain, viii. 216. Acknowledged successors to Castile and Arragon, *ib.* Concludes a treaty with France, which king Ferdinand disavows, 217. Upon which follows a breach between him and France, that ends in a truce, *ib.* After a triumphant journey arrives at Brussels, 247. Free gift from Arragon to him, *ib.* He and his consort driven by storm into England; and, after his arrival at Corunna, dispossesses his father-in-law of the regency, viii. 219. What passed at an interview between them, *ib.* Makes a treaty, by which Ferdinand retires to Arragon, *ib.* Another interview, in which Ferdinand gives his son much good advice, *ib.* The states swear fealty to his consort, himself, and Carlos, but the new government becomes odious, *ib.* Dying, he leaves the tuition of his son Charles to king Lewis, of France, viii. 294, ix. 194. x. 57. This event throws Castile into confusion, xi. 126.

— II. of Spain, his letter to the emperor of Ethiopia, vi. 279. Marries Mary of England, viii. 249. His history, 253. Truce with France his first act, *ib.* The pope engages the French to break it, upon which he renews the war, *ib.* Beats the French at St. Quintin, and the place taken by storm, *ib.* Naples and Sicily resigned to him by his father, and pope Julius III. gives him the investiture, x. 505. Acknowledged successor to his father in the Netherlands, where he establishes the Inquisition, with its consequences, xi. 163. Returns to Spain, acknowledges Don Juan for his brother, and is present at an act of faith, viii. 254. Marries Elizabeth of France, and Carlos acknowledged successor, *ib.* Builds the splendid edifice of the Escorial, 255. Fleet destined for reducing Penon de Velez, which Garcias de Toledo takes possession of, 256. Interview between his queen, her mother, and brother, of France, 257. His queen dies after a miscarriage, 262. Marries his niece Ann of Austria, 263. Who is delivered of Ferdinand, 264. Declines assisting the king of Morocco and Fez, remonstrating in vain to Sebastian of Portugal, 266. His queen delivered of Philip, and this year how fatal to the royal family, *ibid.* Goes to Portugal, and is acknowledged, 268. But very uneasy at Lisbon, and finds it impossible to be beloved, 269. Getting Don Philip acknowledged his successor, and appointing archduke Albert regent, returns to Spain, *ib.* Don Philip acknowledged by the states of Castile, *ib.* King's distress for want of money, xi. 415. Receives ambassadors from Japan, viii. 270. With his project against queen Elizabeth, *ib.* Resolves to employ his whole naval force against her, with the expence and number of his invincible Armada, *ib.* Dismal catastrophe, and ruin of his marine, 271. The shattered remains arrive at St. Andero, *ib.* Civil war in France a great object of his attention, *ib.* Intrigues in France for procuring that crown to Isabella, 273. Don Philip acknowledged at Pampluna, and he obtains a free gift from the states, 274. Insists on Isabella's right to Bretagne, and manages with great address in Arragon, *ib.* Persists in his schemes, to his great detriment, 275. Consents to a peace with France, 276. Reduces Portugal, viii. 489. Takes possession of Portugal, and endeavours in vain to reconcile the people's affections, 491. Disgusts more than he obliges, *ib.* Errors in his administration of Portugal produce discontents, 494. Management there, *ib.* (A). Remarkable reply to one of his ministers, xi. 404. Proposals rejected by the states-general, who grant powers to the archduke and prince of Orange, to levy troops, 420. Fruitless negotiations between him and the states-general, 439. Dies, viii. 279. xi. 451. Public and personal character, viii. 281. xi. 402.

— III. succeeds his father in Spain, with his character, viii. 281. Also in Portugal, 495. His government only heightens discontent, and impoverishes the nation, *ib.* Fundamental articles of convention with the Portuguese broken, *ib.* Alterations made in their trade not less detrimental, 496. The crown revenue diverted to the use of Castile, and Portugal thereby beggared, *ib.* The clergy meet with their share of ill treatment, 497. Universal de-

testation



testation of the Spanish government, *ib.* His queen delivered of Anna; and he compliments king James on his accession to England, with a peace concluded, 282. Don Philip born, *ib.* Imputations against his minister, *ib.* Don Philip acknowledged heir of Spain by the states, who regulate the coinage, 283. Reciprocal marriages of France and Spain, 286. Makes a tour to Portugal, and his public entry into Lisbon, where his son is acknowledged, 290. Yet the nation unsatisfied, and why, *ib.* Great embarrassment of the Spanish ministry, who act with vigour and success, 291. Death, with its circumstances and issue, 292. xi. 496

Philip IV. succeeds his father in Spain, viii. 292. Entirely governed by Olivares, *ib.* The late ministry dismissed, and Calderone, though acquitted, suffers, *ib.* New, but fatal scheme of politics, *ib.* Resolution to renew the war with the Dutch, and bridle Italy, *ib.* Amazing infatuation in him and Olivares, 303. His minister's schemes miscarry every where in Portugal, *ib.* Several losses suffered by the Spaniards, he knows not whom to trust; and public affairs at home and abroad grow worse, 305. Queen's death much regretted, *ib.* After which he trusts Haro de Guzman, *ib.* Melancholy aspect of affairs in Italy, 306. Success of the war in other places, *ib.* Peace signed between Spain and the Dutch, 307. Success of the war in other parts, *ib.* The king resolves to marry Ann, the Emperor's daughter, and his own niece, with a conspiracy for marrying her to the prince of Brazil discovered, *ib.* Consequences of the peace of Munster, on Spain, and the war with France continued, 308. Arrival of the new queen, *ib.* Weakness of Spain and its causes, 309. Queen delivered of Maria, 310. Progress of the war in different parts, *ib.* Declining state of affairs in Spain disposes the court to peace, 312. Their situation in Italy and the Low Countries, *ib.* Makes some changes in his governors and general officers, *ib.* Affairs go but indifferently for Spain in Italy and the Low Countries, 315. Queen delivered of Philip, 316. Affairs grow worse in Italy for Spain, and still worse in the Low Countries, where the English, acting as auxiliaries to the French, take Dunkirk, &c. *ib.* Campaign in Catalonia, and the domestic affairs of the court, 317. Birth of Ferdinand, *ib.* Spain sends a minister incog. to France, and conferences held in the isle of Pheasants, 318. Which produce the peace of the Pyrennees, *ib.* Marriage of the Infanta with Lewis of France confirmed, and the peace sworn to, *ib.* Affairs of Spain perplexed with regard to England, 319. The Spanish ministry affected with the death of Mazarine, and moderate success in the war against Portugal, *ib.* The ministers not satisfied with any thing under the conquest of Portugal, *ib.* Minister from Spain to England, his intrigues and disputes there, also the issue, 321. Death of the only surviving prince, and birth of Carlos, with the campaign in Portugal favourable, but not satisfactory to the Spanish ministry, *ib.* Consents to the emperor Leopold's marriage with his youngest daughter, and for want of success, the ministry send for Carracena from the Netherlands, 322. His answer on Schomberg's successful irruption into Andalusia, 324. Death and character, *ib.* Settlement of the succession and regency, *ibid.*

— V. succeeds Charles II. king of Spain, viii. 350. The plan of this part whence taken, and how authenticated, with measures to facilitate his accession, *ib.* First act of sovereignty, with the contrivances of the friends to the house of Austria, and several removed, 351. Public entry into Madrid, reception there, and unanimously by the provinces, *ib.* In an assembly of the states, gives a specimen of his wisdom and goodness, *ib.* (A). Alliance with Portugal and Savoy, and marries Louisa of Savoy, 353. Decline of his affairs from the confederates taking Heusden, xi. 436. Cloudy aspect of affairs at home and abroad, viii. 352. The plate fleet arrives, and the king refuses admission to the fleet of the allies into Cadiz, makes a tour to Italy, and why disagreeable to many lords, *ib.* Pacifies Naples, and secures the Sicilians, 353. Proceeds to Milan, joins Vendosme, and is present at the battle of Luzara, which and other places are taken, *ib.* His queen's resolution on the appearance of the allies fleet before Cadiz, and after the affair of Vigo, with the king's return, *ib.* Measures for opposing the allies, yet meets with several heartburnings, 354. His strict economy increases the malecontents, 355. Declaration, *ib.* Operations of the campaign not considerable, 356. Heaps excessive honours on marshal Tesse, but contributes little to his success, *ib.* Various methods taken for defending his person and dominions, *ib.*

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Piot, through the Amirante, discovered, *ib.* Arragon and Valencia reduced under him, who strips them of their privileges, 361. His queen delivered of Lewis, who is acknowledged heir, *ib.* Successful by his general the duke of Berwick, as also in Portugal, ix. 486. Safe arrival of the galleons, and other advantages, viii. 362. When forsaken by his grand-father, he puts himself on the affections of his people, and the good effect, *ib.* Discountenances the French, putting himself on the fidelity of the Spanish nation, *ib.* Saying of his queen to the people, 364, sub not. Takes earl Stanhope, at Brihuega, 365. And beats count Staremberg, at Villa Viciosa, *ib.* Gives Vendosme 50,000 pieces of eight, which he distributes among his men, 366. Negotiations for peace, upon which king Charles quits Catalonia, *ib.* Disgraces d'Aguilar, and his answer, *ib.* His renunciation of the crown of France made a rule of succession by the Cortes, with other alterations, 367. His queen delivered of Don Philip, *ib.* Declaration to satisfy queen Anne, and his own subjects, 368 (D). Arrival at Naples, and afterwards proceeding to Lombardy, x. 531. Takes possession of Sardinia, and blocks up Messina, 532. Treaty between him and the duke of Savoy, viii. 369. Becomes master of Spain, and the Indies, *ib.* Different sentiments of the Spaniards about this peace, *ib.* Marries the princess of Parma, and brought about by Alberoni, xv. 555. Particular situation of Spain and France on Lewis XIVth's death, and Alberoni's restoring the Spanish marine, *ib.* Majorca evacuated, and Cagliari in Sardinia taken by the Spaniards, 556. Frivolous manifesto from the Spanish ministry at this time, and the quadruple alliance formed, *ib.* Its main points what, with preparations in Britain for supporting it, *ib.* Memorial from Spain about this armament, and his British majesty's answer, *ib.* Part of Byng's instructions and strength of the Spanish fleet how effected by Alberoni, *ib.* Its destination, and another alliance between Savoy and the emperor, under the mediation of Britain and France, 557. Abdicates, and with what view, 565. The instruments of renunciation, with a circular letter thereon, and one to the prince, *ib.* Who mounts the throne, but soon dies, and his father resumes the government, 566. Who shews he had profited by his retirement, *ib.* The young queen of France sent back, and mademoiselle Beaujolois also, *ib.* Death and character, 586

Philip, brother of Torriano, succeeds him as Pretor of Milan, xiv. 56.

— of Savoy, his remarkable adventure at Geneva, xiv. 8. Chosen bishop, 9. Renews his claim of sovereignty over Geneva, with the occasion, and the arbitration given against him, 10. Succeeds his brother Peter, marquis of Savoy, 126.

— (Lackland) fifth brother of Amadeo IX. succeeds Charles II. duke of Savoy, but dies soon after, xiv. 129.

—, duke of Milan, his designs on Genoa, character, and offer of friendship to Florence, with a treaty concluded, xiii. 376. Makes himself master of Genoa by Carmagnola, *ib.* His conduct towards reducing Florence, and he affronts their ambassador, 378. Acquisitions in Romagna, and generosity to the Malatesta family, *ib.* Diffimulation, 386. And Piccinino's craft, who invades the Romagna, 397. Resolved to be revenged on the Florentines, with the solicitations of the exiles at his court seconded by Piccinino, *ib.* His determination, *ib.* Distress, for whom the prince of Ferrara mediates a peace with Sforza, and how his answer, though unpromising, has good effect on Philip's affairs, 402. On the Venetians pushing their conquests to the gates of Milan, that duke applies to the king of Naples, 404. Regulates his court and army under Carmagnola, xiv. 92. Resolves to recover the states and cities belonging to his father, and all concerned in his mother's and brother's death punished, with his success against Genoa, *ib.* Reduces Placentia, 93. Takes most of the forts in the Bergamasco, reception of pope Martin V. at Milan, and compromise between him and Malatesta, through the pontiff's means, *ib.* Barbarous and ungrateful usage of his wife, with her tragical death, and that of young Orombelli, with the whole circumstances, 94. Her character, *ib.* Takes a young Milanese he had ravished, with his becoming master of Genoa, *ib.* Views on Florence, and undetermined situation to what owing, *ib.* His distrust and love of pleasure, is deserted by Carmagnola, and the occasion, 95. Who enters into the Venetian service, and the turn of Philip's fortunes hereupon, *ib.* Manner of seizing Gabrinio and his sons, who are executed, with his minister at Venice for peace disappointed, and his proposals of a treaty with Sforza, *ib.*



- ib. Attempt to poison Carmagnola baffled, and the offer of the people of Milan to him rejected, ib. War with the confederacy renewed, and his life in perpetual suspense, 96. Opposition to Alphonso of Arragon, in his claim on Naples, and generosity towards him when taken prisoner, ib. Makes a party in Venice against Carmagnola, who is beheaded, 97. After much solicitations from his minions, he marries the duke of Savoy's sister, with his treatment of the Appenine inhabitants, &c. and his motive revenge, ib. Other wars, and his natural daughter how married to Sforza, 98. Concludes a peace, ib. & (A). Suspence about the succession, 'till his affection for his daughter prevails, ib. The peace disturbed by his suspicious temper, ib. Further contests between him and Sforza, 'till the former was obliged to apply to the latter, ib. Death and character, 99. Irresolution about the succession, 100.
- Philip, count of Pavia, recommended to the Milanese by Scaliger, his condition in Pavia, and he marries Scaliger's widow, with general approbation, xiv. 90.
- new embarkation of Spaniards for Italy, in favour of that Don, with the vigilance of the British fleet in disappointing his schemes, xiii. 658. Reduces Savoy, and enters Chamberry in triumph, ib. Joined by the French army, 662. Great success, Schulenberg, and the king of Sardinia, retreating, 664. Takes possession of Parma and Placentia, ib. Put in possession of these, and a difficulty on the same compromised between him and his brother Don Carlos, 668.
- history of that Indian king, and his character, xiv. 515. War with New England, 516. Connexions with the French, ib. Dissimulation in confirming his treaty, &c. with New Plymouth, ib. Secretary Sansaman, becoming a Christian missionary in that king's country, is murdered, ib. Trial and condemnation of two Indians for it, ib. Difficulty of the history here, and why, ib. Advantages on the side of the Indians and English, with regard to their respective situations, 517. Some pirates executed, and the king begins hostilities against the English, ib. Success of the confederated colonies, ib. Philip avails himself of the Indian way of fighting by ambushes and surprizes, ib. Different skirmishes on both sides, ib. Defeat of the English, 518. More than barbarous expedient of revenge against the English, but turns against himself, 519. The fortune of war now on the English side, ib. Bravery of the queen of Pocasset, one of his allies, and her fate, 520. The king still continues irreconcilable, but is surprised in a swamp, and shot dead, ib. The English still obliged to allow the eastern Indians an annual quantity of corn, and quit-rent, ib. Sum of this war with the losses, ib. The disadvantages of the English what, ib. The war, though extinguished in the western parts of New England, continues in the eastern, and the issue of this in the colonists favour, ib.
- Philip succeeds his father Halstan in Sweden, with his amiable character, but no account of his reign, xii. 230.
- I. the ingenious, elector Palatine, xv. 471. War with Albert IV. of Bavaria, and after concluding a peace dies, ib.
- William of Newburgh, succeeds Charles II. as elector Palatine, is wholly devoted to the emperor, and his country ravaged by the French, xv. 473.
- Philippe, John, why beheaded in Geneva, xiv. 29.
- Philippi (Felibee) taken by Morad, v. 163 (D).
- Philippine islands, discovered by Magellan, whence called the archipelago of St. Lazaro, iv. 178 (D). When first conquered, ib. Formerly possessed by the emperors of China and Japan, 179, & (E). Fortified by the Spanish governor, ib. Decay owing to the charge of the Moluccas, and whether best kept or abandoned, 182. Importance of those islands to Spain, 183. Inhabitants, genius, customs, &c. 187. Computed to be eleven hundred in number, 184, & (K). The two different sorts of blacks in them whence, 196 (Y). Islands adjacent, ib. Product and inhabitants, 198. Reduction by the Portuguese, &c. foretold by one of their priestesses, 199. Their various religions and superstitions, 204 (F). Extent and gain of the viceroy's government, 207. Severe trial upon his quitting it, ib. & (H). How punished for mal-administration, 208, & (I). Sad instance of being put to death by the people, ib. Peace restored by his wife successor, ib. Trading free and advantageous at first, 209. Limitation of it detrimental to New Spain, 210. Remonstrance for and against it, ib. The cargo of the annual ship how far enlarged, 211. What it consists of, and its great profit, also how manned, 212. Why not made so profitable as might be, 219. How to remedy that evil, 220. Their convenient situation for universal commerce, 221. And for an uninterrupted intercourse with
- New Spain, ib. The advantage of allowing the Indians free commerce, 222. Reasons urged for and against the above scheme, 223. New ones in support of it, ib.
- Philippines, New, their large archipelago, iv. 265. Attempt upon one of them frustrated, 273 & (E). The whole archipelago discovered and described, 274. The inhabitants, ib. Government, and they appear to be a mixture of various nations, 277 & (G). Great importance to Spain, 278. May be made to produce spices, 280.
- Phipps, colonel, his expedition from New England to Nova Scotia, xiv. 495. When Port Royale capitulates, ib. St. John's reduced also, but all given up to France at the peace of Ryswick, ib.
- , captain William, how he makes an extraordinary fortune in fishing up the treasure of a Spanish galleon, xiv. 521.
- , Sir William, history of him, xiv. 522. Made sheriff of New England by patent, ib. Declines the government of it, 523. Invades Acadia, and takes Port Royale from the French by capitulation, 524. Why he disowns the capitulation, and proceeds thereupon, ib. Arrives in New England, and resolves to march against the Indians in person, 525. Builds forts, ib. & (D). His success in reducing Acadia, 636. French account of it, and an instance of their vanity, 637. His summons to the governor of Quebec, and the answer, with that commander's great surprise and character, 638. His dismay on the French firing, and his flag carried away and hung up as a trophy, 639, & (D). Lands some troops, and after several bush-fighting skirmishes of the Indians, obliged with his ships to draw off with loss, &c. ib. Inconsistencies of the French account in some particulars, though true in the main, 640, & (E). Defeated, with the loss of the cannon, &c. landed, *ibid.* Why he raises the siege of Quebec, 640. Medal struck in France on this defeat, 641. His weak character, 652. His mismanagement there, and the effects, 653. The New Englanders rise upon him, and force him to retire to Fort Pemmaquid, with his threatening against the savages, and the effects, ib. Charge against him, 527. Is recalled, and dies at London, ib. 655.
- Phis, its inhabitants brave defence against the rebel Severus II. i. 383.
- Phocas, his shocking treachery to the emperor Otho's ambassadors, sent to fetch his daughter Theophania, x. 636. But married to young Otho, whom Zemisces, his successor, sent over, ib.
- Phœnicians, whether they sailed round Africa, v. 653.
- Phœnicopterus, or Flamings-bird, described, vi. 404.
- Physicians ill used by Soleyman Shah, ii. 636. Throw the blame on the astrologers, ib.
- Piacenza (see Placentia) its history, xiii. 599.
- Pialashá, the Grand Signior's ambassador, robbed and stripped by two Usbeck princes, ii. 731.
- Piaſtes, princes in Poland, from whom so called, xii. 448 (A).
- Piaſtus, a wheelwright, on the catastrophe of Popiel II. (see Popiel) raised to the ducal dignity of Poland, xii. 447. Different accounts of a miraculous story concerning him, ib. His great benevolence, mild administration, death, and all subsequent princes called Piaſtes from him, 448 (A).
- Piava taken, after which the confederates prepare for investing Genoa, x. 604.
- Picigli, Nicholas, arrival of the Greek army in Italy under him, who with Greek reinforcements, and other confederates in Italy, entirely defeats the Saracens at Garigliano, x. 389.
- Picinino defeats the Florentines before Lucca, x. 240. Design on Volterra frustrated, ib. Success against the Florentines, ib. Quells a revolt on the coast of Genoa, with his cruelty, 242. Further success, ib. But stopped by a wound, and Visconti's affairs thereby decline, ib. Signal services done to Visconti, 245. Besieges Cassel-major, the garrison capitulating, 246. Measures for distressing Mellato, with the former's successes, and taking places, 247. Battle between both armies, but a retreat founded by consent, *ibid.* Takes Rhoad, &c. 248. Takes new Orges, and besieges Brescia, 249. At this siege cannons with very large bullets used, also a most gallant resistance by the garrison under Barbaro, and the siege raised, 250. After some little successes, retires into winter quarters, ib. Defeated, and Brescia relieved, 253. Parallel between him and Sforza, ib. Enters Tuscany, and takes Politiana, 254. Gives battle to the Florentine and papal forces, but defeated, and his intimate Faventino taken, 255.
- , Nicolas, his successes against the Genoese rebels, and defeating



- defeating the Florentines before Lucca, x. 572. Military genius, xiii. 376. Enters into Philip's service, 378. Relieves Lucca, a superior army of the Florentines not daring to face him, their general Urbino flying, 387. His success after defeating them, and taking Pontremoli, the barrier of the Appenines, towards Genoa, cuts off all communication between Florence and Pisa, 388. Success in Tuscany, but baulked in his conquest of Arezzo, ib. (B). Is ordered to return to Milan, and succeeded by Alberigo, ib. Defeats the Florentine and Venetian auxiliaries to the pope, the Milanese general succouring the duke of Bologna, 393. Surprises Verona, but Sforza retakes it, 397. Passes the Po in his way towards the Romagna, 398. Baulked in one pass of the Appenines, marches through another without resistance, his progress and besieging Monte Pulciano, but obliged to remove further from Florence, ib. Success and taking castle S. Nicholas, ib. His injudicious proceedings and recal, 399. Request to Philip of Milan induces him to a treaty with Sforza, 402. Contest between him and Sforza, till the death of the former through grief, xiv. 99. His son Francis who commanded in Romagna, on his father's going to Milan, defeated and taken, which breaks the father's heart, xiii. 403. Character, ib.
- Picinino, Jacob, how he renews the war, but defeated, and the pope's general taken, xiii. 412
- Picolomini commands the Imperialists and Bavarians, with his vigorous measures, xii. 351
- Pidgeons, why held sacred by the Moslems, i. 44 & 100
- Piedmont, the French invade it, xiii. 667. Description of it and its inhabitants, xiv. 122. Other cities and strong places described, 123. Its first prince who, 125. Marriage of its prince, and a son born, 137. Marries a second wife, and his father resigns his crown to him, who becomes king of Sardinia, ib. How tampering to remount the throne, is arrested by his son and dies, with his character, ibid.
- Piedmontese march their army to Savona, and the preparations of the Genoese against this storm, x. 610. Great disorders in their camp, 611. The Pavians have frequent skirmishes with them, who are generally worsted, and duke Gabriel of Savoy sent to take the command, ib. Battle between both armies, 612. Success on the side of Lombardy, 615. Rapid progress there, 616
- Pie-nes, a small island in Japan, with the horrid superstition there, iv. 39
- Pieskaret, the brave, among others, falls a martyr to the Iroquois rage, xiv. 586. Algonquin women, their courage on this occasion, ib.
- Pietraperlia, prince, appointed viceroy of Naples, who refuses the vain pomp of a bridge, allotting the money to charity, x. 510. Obtains a donative for supporting Philip's pretensions to Portugal, and recalled, with his character, ibid.
- Pignatarius, a Genoese fleet under him attacks Trapani, and burns all the vessels in the harbour, &c. x. 550
- Pignatelli, cardinal, chosen pope against the French faction, ix. 471
- Pignerolle yielded to France in exchange of a territory in Mantua, ix. 383. The French attack and take it, xiv. 131
- Piles's gallant defence of St. John de Angeli, ix. 263
- Pilgrimage to Mecca, when and by whom instituted, i. 104. How performed, 171
- Pilkan (Bilakan) taken by the Mungls, ii. 319
- Pillau, account of, xii. 650
- Pilosus's stratagem for saving the Venetian army, and preferment, x. 249. Death, 251
- Pilsen, account of that place, xi. 195. Its siege by Mansfeldt, who offers the valiant inhabitants terms, which they accept, ib.
- Pinada, Alonso de, his arrival with a squadron, and possessing lands near Panuco river, xiv. 195
- Pinfold, governor of Barbadoes, his glorious administration, and the islanders ardor in an expedition against Martinico, xv. 198
- Ping-chong directs the building of a new Mungl metropolis, ii. 357
- Ping-pu, the fourth supreme tribunal in China, ii. 578
- Ping-wang, emperor of China, invaded by the Tartars and his vassals, iii. 692
- Ping-Syew Kyi, his extraction and rise, iii. 755 (I). Successful invasion of Korea, 756 (K). His general outwitted by the Chinese, ib. Forced to surrender Ping-wang, and made king of Japan by the treaty of peace, but affronted by the Korean ambassador, 757. Fabulous account of his investiture, with his resentment and brave answer, he renews the war with more success, ib. His death ends the war, 758. (See a truer account of this hero under Taycho)
- Pin-jam betrayed to the Chinese, and three thousand buried alive in Korea, iii. 754. Seized on by Hupilay, ib.
- Pins, Odom de, 22d grand master of Malta, dies in his way to Rome, vii. 391
- , Gerrard de, defeats Orkan at sea, vii. 396 (A). Undetermined by the pope from the great mastership, ib.
- , Roger, chosen twenty-eighth grand master, and amuses himself with new projects, vii. 401. His death and charity, ib.
- Pintados islands, where and whence so called, iv. 178 (D). Described, also its painted inhabitants and natives, 199 (A)
- Isla de los, where and by whom discovered, iv. 268
- Pinto, Ferdinand Mendez, finds entrance into an island of Japan, iv. 161. Dialogue with one of the lords, 162. Reception and return, ib. (N)
- , Doctor, master of the duke of Braganza's household, his prudent declaration, viii. 500
- Pin-yang, the capital of Korea, taken by the Japanese, iii. 756. But retaken by the Chinese, ib.
- Piombino, seized by Mendoza, is given to Cosmo de Medicis, with the disturbances thereupon, x. 590
- Pipi, a strange Ethiopian bird, vi. 187
- Pir Mahomed, Masud's vazir, sacrificed to Karafanker's hatred, i. 705
- Mehemed Mirza, why spared by Timur Bek, ii. 514. Made governor of some of his conquered provinces, 527. Ordered to invade Indostan, with his success and conquests, 541. Success also against the revolted Mobarek, 543. Valour against the Indians, 546. Kind reception of Mirza Rustem, and imprisoned by Said Berlas, 552. Brought in chains to Timur, and condemned to the bastinado, 554. Sent to besiege Hama, 556. Made governor of Shiraz, 566. Declared Timur's successor at his death, 574. The beginning of his reign distracted, 577. Opposed by the sultans Hussayn and Kalil, also by the revolted Mungls, 581. Letters to Kalil and to the rest of the amirs, with their illusory answers, ib. Marches against Kalil, but defeated by him, and resigns his title to him, 582
- Alitaza rebels against Pir Mehemed, and defeats him, ii. 582. Punished by Shah Rukh, ib.
- Omar, defeated and imprisoned by Iskander, 583. Mistaken by the Arabs for Abubekr, 584
- Piraguas, large Mexican canoes, xiv. 266
- Piri, a province of Loango, described, vi. 537
- Piruz Bakht, his brave defence of Kars, ii. 517
- Pisa, a general council called there, which the pope excommunicates, but not properly supported by the king of France or emperor, and the pope's holy league proclaimed at Rome, ix. 198. Proposed there, xiii. 469. Schismatic cardinals appoint it, and why, x. 61. Its opening, and why the Florentines oppose their further proceedings, xiii. 470. General one there deposes both popes as schismatics, &c. choosing Alexander V. ix. 703. Opened, and the members composing it, xiii. 370. But on account of a riot transferred to Milan, with its interruption there, xiii. 471. None attends there from the emperor, xi. 129.
- , resolute defence against the Florentines, x. 56. Territory and city described, xiii. 270. Surrender to the Florentines, 369. Revolution by falling on the Milanese troops, 359. More closely besieged, and precautions for causing plenty in the Florentine camp, 367. Operations of the siege by cutting off the communication to Pisa by water, and the consequence, ib. Disingenuity of the French governor there towards the Florentines, and selling the place to the natives, 446. Base conduct of the French king to Ferdinand of Spain, with regard to it, 465. Citizens pressed hard by the Florentines, propose an accommodation, which is accepted, 466. The Florentines however continue their operations, ib. War continues, with the success of the Florentines in it, and a negotiation set on foot, but to no purpose; yet the Siennese agree to a truce with them, 462
- Pisani defeats the Genoese fleet, x. 213. Takes Catharra, 221. The war briskly carried on by land, and Sicco taken by him, ib. Retreating from Trahu, he takes Albania, ib. Famine in his fleet, and a second repulse from Trahu, 222. Beats part of the Genoese fleet, with the loss of their admiral, ib. Defeated at Pola, who with others is mulcted and imprisoned, ib. Death and character, 225
- Pisans take Naples, and of all the booty desire only Justinian's Pandects, x. 411 (R). Their great armament and high bravadoes, whose fleet is totally routed with the loss of 16,000



- 16,000 men, 551. The proverb arisen in Tuscany upon this, and an alliance against them, who chose Ugolino, a Guelph, for their supreme magistrate, and the consequence, *ib.* Purchase a truce from Genoa, 553. Break their league with the Florentines, but are defeated, *xii.* 276. Refuse the emperor admittance into their city, 309. To whose firmness Florence owed her liberty, and the singular state of Italy then, *ib.* On the Florentines being dreaded over Italy, set on foot a general confederacy, into which several enter, 320. Treat, but in the mean time surrender themselves and city to the duke of Burgundy, 368. And why forced to resume their negotiation for a surrender, with the terms, 369. Suspicions quieted by a speech of Caponi, and the Pisan territory soon reduced to the Florentine obedience, *ib.* Revolt, 439. Why they put themselves under the protection of Venice, 446. Pitied by the French under Beaumont, who besieged their city, but quit it, 457. Take Librafatta, &c. being assisted by the Genoese, Siennese, and Lucchese, the Florentines being reduced very low thro' their connexions with the French, *ib.* Their obstinacy against the Florentines, but their prospect now why unfavourable, 464. Their stratagem what and how rendered abortive, 466. From their distress a negotiation is set on foot, and an advantageous treaty for them concluded, by which Pisa is restored to the Florentines, *ib.*
- Piscadores islands, in the South sea, described, *v.* 102
- Pishga, a province of Karazm, *ii.* 714
- Pismires of Africa destructive, *v.* 690
- Pistoia capitulates and taken, as is Acciani, which is dismantled and razed, *xiii.* 297
- Pistoians treat with Castruccio, and revolutions in Lucca, *xiii.* 304
- Pisukay, (see Yefukay) *ii.* 266
- Pitahaya, a shrub of California described, *xiv.* 420
- Pitot of Canada described, *xiv.* 557
- Pitrarcha exasperates the Siamese against the French, and the missionaries, *iii.* 385. And against Pra-pye and Constance, 386. Invites the princes and princesses to court, *ib.* Assassinate Pra-pye in the sick king's presence, *ibid.* Resolves the ruin of the French, and arrests Constance in the palace, *ib.* Tortures him into confession, 387, 388. Put him to death, with his cruelty to Faulkon and his lady, 389. Stratagem against them and Farges, 390. Severe orders to him, *ib.* Attacks him in the fort of Bankok, 392. Severe usage of the bishop, and causes the king's two brothers to be butchered, *ib.* Seizes on the crown after that monarch's death, 394. Birth, rise, and character, *ib.* Coronation and public acts, *ib.* Causes the French officers to be released, 395. Treachery to lady Faulkon, and the French, 396. He obliges them all to evacuate Siam, 397. Imposed upon by a pretender, 404. His severe punishment of him, and the rest of his reign unknown; he is succeeded by his son, 405
- Pitjanoulouk, a city of Siam, described, *iii.* 316 (A)
- Pi-tu made king of Lyautong, *ii.* 327
- Pitzaro, rabbi Abraham, his character and works, *v.* 613
- Pitt, Mr. a sketch of the merit of his administration in the war department, *xiv.* 717
- Pitti, Florentine gonfalonier, his proceedings, and succeeding to all Cosmo's power, *xiii.* 415. His insolence, and building two sumptuous palaces by the help of thieves, &c. *ib.* His fall, also cabals of the exiles, 419
- Pius II. elected pope in the room of Calixtus III. with an account of him and his writings, *x.* 24 (Q). Maxims different from those of his predecessors, *xiii.* 414. Measures for opposing the Turks, and giving title of king of Bohemia to Podiebrad, *x.* 25. Crowns Ferdinand king of Apulia, and the acknowledgment for it, *ib.* (R). Sets out for Mantua, and on his way receives embassies from the emperor and others, *ib.* Opens a convention at Mantua, where with great promises it is agreed to carry on the war vigorously against the Turks, 26. Condemns all appeals to future general councils, *ib.* After an elegant speech he dissolves the convention, and creates cardinals at Sienna, among which is his nephew, a student, *ib.* Proceedings against the duke of Austria, and Heimbürg, syndic of Nuremberg, 27. Disputes with the kings of Castile and Poland, *ib.* Embassy from the East accepting the union of Florence, and he receives the city Monobafia from ambassadors, *ib.* Quells a commotion in Rome, and assists Ferdinand of Naples against John duke of Anjou, *ib.* Ambassadors to him from Iberia, Armenia, &c. found to be impostors, *ib.* Other proceedings of the pope, who excommunicates the duke of Austria, Malatesta, and the archbishop of Menz,
- ib.* A new elector chosen, and confirmed by him, 28. Which occasions a war between the two competitors, and its issue, *ib.* (T). Sends a legate into France to congratulate the new king, &c. *ib.* Letter to Mahomet, and the just censure passed on it, *ib.* (U). A misunderstanding between Lewis XI. of France and him, with the occasion, 28. Embassy from the king of Bohemia to the pope, with the result, 29. Anathemas denounced against Malatesta and others, *ib.* His deliberations about the Turkish expedition, which end only in fine promises from France and Burgundy, *ib.* Refuses the king of Bohemia's desire about the catholics of Silesia, and his answer to an embassy from Bosnia, *ib.* Convoques an assembly at Mantua, to form a league against the Turks, but how frustrated, *xi.* 101. Still promotes the Turkish expedition, promising to sail into Asia himself, *x.* 29. Bull on the necessity of this expedition, and his health greatly broken, 30. The expedition little countenanced by others, *ib.* Arrives at Ancona proposing to embark, but dismisses great part of the crusaders, with their miserable plight, *ib.* (W). Joined by the doge of Venice with a fleet, but dies, his character, and some of his proverbial sentences, *ib.* & 31 (X). The crusaders disperse, *ib.* & *xiii.* 417
- Pius III. elected pope in room of Alexander VI. grants a safe conduct to Borgia, who returns to Rome, *x.* 55. But obliged to retire to the Vatican, *ib.* Death and character, *ibid.*
- IV. after great contests chosen pope in room of Paul IV. with an account of him, *x.* 98. Pardons the riotous Romans, and confirms Ferdinand's election to the empire, *ib.* Severity against the nephews, &c. of his predecessor, with his promoting Charles Borromeo, his own nephew, *ibid.* Excites the duke of Savoy to make war on the protestants in the valleys, *ib.* To prevent calling a national council in France, renews that of Trent, *ib.* Notwithstanding the objections of the emperor, and king of France, publishes a bull for it, 99. Nuncios sent to all Christian princes, but indifferently received, *ib.* Offends the king of Spain, *ib.* Sends legates to Trent, and publishes a bull for prelates to come thither, 100. Proposes the translation of the council of Trent to Bologna, but rejected by Ferdinand, who demands redress of grievances, 103 (Z). Makes nineteen of the fathers cardinals, and confirms their decrees, *ib.* Apprehensive of an irruption of the Germans into Italy, 104. Deposes and suspends several French prelates on suspicion of heresy, *ib.* Cites the queen of Navarre to Rome for heresy, 106. Apprehensions about Charles of France, and decision of precedency in favour of the French against the Spaniards, 107. Revokes the privileges of the Greek refugees in Naples and Sicily, *ib.* Plot against him discovered, and the authors executed, *ib.* Refuses Maximilian the marriage of priests, *ib.* After the news of the defeat of the Turks by the Maltese dies, and his character, *ib.*
- V. succeeds pope Pius IV. with an account of him, *x.* 107 (C). His character, and he holds a council at Trent, at which Venetian commissioners attend, 352. Edict against the Jews, *v.* 596. His relations ordered to retire from Rome, only his nephew made a cardinal, *x.* 107. Publishes several decrees for reformation, with his gratitude to pope Pius IV's nephews, 108. Appoints cardinal Comendon his legate at Augsberg, with his instructions, *ib.* Sends a nuncio to Scotland, upon David Rizzio's murder, and grants the queen a subsidy, *ib.* Gives his benediction to small medals worn round the neck in the Low Countries, *ib.* (D). Sends a consecrated cap and sword to the duke of Alva in Brussels, for his services against heretics, also troops to France against the Hugonots, *ib.* Has disputes with the king of Spain and the Venetians, *ib.* Excites a rebellion against queen Elizabeth, which is quickly quelled, 109. Places twelve standards of the Hugonots on St. Peter's gate, and orders the Jews to quit the ecclesiastical state, except Rome and Ancona, *ib.* Confers the title of Great duke of Tuscany on Cosmo de Medicis, and his successors, *ib.* The pope's excommunication and deposition of queen Elizabeth, despised by her and the catholic princes, *ib.* Proposes a league against the Turks intending to seize Cyprus, *ibid.* Alliance against the Turks between him and others, with their contingents, and the command given to don John, *ib.* Orders the day of Lepanto victory to be annually commemorated, 110. Amidst preparations against the infidels, he dies, and his character, *ib.*
- Pizarro sent to obstruct Anson's passage, *v.* 133. The ill fate of his expedition, 134. Distress and ruin, *xv.* 585. Answer to Atahualpa's ambally, *xiv.* 289. Marches on and



and receives another embassy and presents, with a magnificent retinue, 270. His first Indian messenger contradicts the accounts of the Peruvian ambassadors, ib. Embassy from the unfortunate Huascar, and answer, ib. With Almagro and de Lueque, join in the discovery and conquest of Peru, 280. Account of him and his exploits, ib. Sets sail, ib. Arrival at Port Pinas, his distress afterwards in proceeding, and seasonable relief, 281. Progress in his discoveries, ib. Finds some treasure, ib. Desperate state, 282. Holds his course south-west, and arrives on the coast of Tumbez, ib. Arrival at Puna, ib. Runs down to seven degrees south latitude, ib. His return to Panama, 283. Sails for Spain, and made Adelentado, &c. of Peru, ib. (C). Arrival at Panama, ib. With his three brigs resumes the expedition to Peru, ib. Distresses in marching to Tumbez, ib. His patience and resolution, ib. Reaches Coaqui province, ib. The ignorance of his men in trying emeralds, 284. He remits gold and emeralds to Panama, ib. In his way to Tumbez picks up a reinforcement of Spaniards, under Balalcazar and Fernandez, ib. Account of his progress brought to the court of Quito, ib. Proceeds to Tumbez and Puna isle, both which he reduces, 285. Sends the treasure he found in the latter to Panama, ib. (D). His attempt on Tumbez, the treatment of his messengers, and destroying the inhabitants, 286. How he receives intimation of the riches of Peru, ib. Makes a remittance to Panama, and unsuccessful expedition in quest of the cazique of Tumbez, and builds St. Miguel de Piura, ib. Makes advantage of the civil war between the Inca of Peru and his brother, 286. Sets out for Caxamalca, receives useful informations on the road, 288. Favourably received in his progress to Peru, ib. Receives an ambassador from Atahualpa, ib. Quits the great road, and arrives at Motex in Peru, ib. Marches to Caxamalca, ib. Obtains information about Atahualpa by torture, ib. Sends an Indian with a message to Atahualpa, 289. Possesses a fortress on a steep eminence without opposition, ib. Receives an embassy from Atahualpa with presents, ib. Third embassy from Atahualpa by his brother, and three requests made, with his presents displayed, and the ambassador's address, 290. Favourable construction by Garcilasso, ib. Arrives at Caxamalca, and contradictory relation of writers here, 291. Sends an embassy to the Inca's camp, reception and public audience, ib. Wide difference among writers about the particulars, 292. But may be reconciled, ib. The Inca intends a visit, and the splendid reception whets his avarice, 293. Suspicion of treachery, and putting himself on his guard, ib. Sends pacific overtures to the Inca by a friar, ib. Uncommon questions put to the latter, and the Inca's answer to Pizarro's message by him, ib. Falls suddenly on the Indians with great slaughter, and takes the Inca prisoner, 294. Sends a party towards Cuzco, &c. to levy the Inca's ransom, 295. With their reception on the road, ib. Joined at Caxamalca by Almagro with a reinforcement, 296. Divides the vast treasures among his followers, 297. The miserable effects, and their disappointment in general, ib. Remonstrance to him from Atahualpa in vain, ib. The Spaniards suspicions, and Pizarro's doubling the guards, 298. Baseness in breaking his engagements with the Inca, ib. Falls in the opinion of the latter, and an instance of his ignorance, ib. Draws up a formal process of several ridiculous articles against him, his defence, and treacherously puts him to death, 299. Consequences against the Spaniards, ib. Proclaims Tapurpa Inca, ib. Sets out from Caxamalca for Cuzco, ib. Defeats the Peruvians near Xauna, with the rich booty, ib. Finds a colony, but afterwards removed to Los Reges, now Lima, ib. Several expeditions made by parties sent by him into the provinces of Peru, 300. Peace concluded with Kojfas, and the articles, 301. Meets Alvarado at Pacamec, with his complaisance and generous presents to him, 304. Sets out from Caxamalca for Cuzco, and his views, with his arrival and public entry, ib. Treasures found here, ib. Invites the Cuzcans to return to their dwellings, ib. Visited at Cuzco by the Inca, and peace concluded, with the motives, 305. Defeats the Guamaraconas under Quizquiz at Apurima, 306. And a second time, Quizquiz retiring in order to Quito, ib. Defeats Quizquiz twice, ib. Founds Lima, and its site, ib. Removes the colony Los Reges thither, ib. Jealousy of Almagro and the different accounts, 307. Their compromise, ib. Builds Truxillo, and where situated, ib. Made marquis of Atabilos by the emperor, ib. Gives causes of discontent to the Inca at Cuzco, 308. Why he grants the government of Cuzco to his brother Ferdinando, 309. Fer-

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

dinando obtains the government of Cuzco from his brother, to fulfil his engagements with the Spanish court, ib. Receives fresh presents from the Inca, but still disappoints him, ib. Marquis marches to Cuzco, and the intelligence he receives on the road, with the measures he takes, 315. Return to Lima, and getting an accommodation on foot by Espinosa, who dies in the interim, ib.

Pizarro, Marquis, disclaims seizing Almagro's commissioners, and dissembles, xiv. 316. On the release of his brother Ferdinando he throws off all disguise, ib. More instances of his deceit, ib. (C). Dispatches a herald to Almagro for the surrender of Cuzco, ib. Defeats Almagro at Salinas, 317. Cruelty at Cuzco against the Spaniards, ib. Condemns and executes Almagro, 318. Faction, the consequences of their cruel proceedings, 319. Ferdinando sails for Spain, with his views, and the splendor of his appearance there, ib. Is long imprisoned, and his life how saved by Alvarado's death, ib. After much bloodshed reduces Los Charcas, 325

—, Marquis, his conduct apologized for by de Vega, and inconsistency herein, xiv. 326. Assassinated by the friends of Almagro, 327. His character and gallant resistance, with a parallel drawn between him and old Almagro, ib. Sends his justification to court, and the other measures he takes, with his views of independency, 335. The viceroy's troops revolt and join him, ib. Commands the ocean, and his ravages, ib. Pursues Vela, who retreats from Quito, 337. At last desists, and returns to Quito, ib. Outwits Vela by a stratagem, ib. Defeats Vela, who is slain, and the whole authority devolves on him, 338. His prudent proceedings and familiarity with Vela's brother, ib. Entirely reduces the royalists, ib. Refusing to assume the royal dignity and his motives, 339. Becomes very affable, and now he commands the North and South seas, ib. Sends a commissioner to Old Spain, and his representation, ib.

— Diego, and his Spanish detachment sent to Cuzco, all cut off by the Indians, also others sent to Lima, &c. xiv. 312

— Francisco, his precautions for the defence of Lima against the Indians, xiv. 312. Their approach, the repulse of some Spanish horse, and his distress how relieved, 313. Raising of the siege by what occasioned, ib. Sends Alvarado with a considerable force to Cuzco, 314

— Ferdinando, besieged in Cuzco by the Inca, xiv. 310. How saved, 311

— Juan, killed in storming the citadel of Cuzco, xiv. 311

— Gonzalez, his conspiracy frustrated by Castro, and mild punishment, xiv. 331. Account of his expedition to Caneta, 325. His distresses, ib. Difficulty of returning to Quito, ib. Takes arms against Vela, and his artifice, 333. Sets out from Cuzco for Lima, and his open declarations on the Inca's death, 334. The fleet declare for him, and the judges messenger to him seized and severely treated, 335. On the judges refusing submission he batters and reduces Lima, which he enters in triumph, 336. Orders every thing to his own will, ib. Emperor's letter to him and that of Gasca, 340. Some passages of the latter, ib. Warm debates in his council thereon, 341. Answer to the president's letter, ib. Is deserted, ib. Raises an army, and his declaration thereon, 342. Commences a process against the president and others, who are condemned to death, ib. The desertion from him continues, ib. Marches to Araqueba, ib. Makes a triumphal entry into Cuzco, 344. His insatuated conduct there, ib. Marches to the valley of Sacfahuanrah to meet the enemy, 345. His soldiers desert him, 345. Desires a sight of Gasca's commission, arts used to gain his soldiers, who continue to desert, ib. Surrenders, and his answer to Centeno's condolence, 346. Is taken into custody, ib. Tried and condemned, with the inscription on a pillar, ib. Speech at the place of execution, and his head struck off, ib.

— Hernando, sent to Spain, with an account of his brother's success, &c. xiv. 298 (C). His promise to Almagro and the price, ib. Sets out for Pacamec, and meets prince Quitlischaka with vast loads of plate for the Inca's ransom, 295. Returns, and his success, ib.

Placentan, invaded, is assisted by the Parmesans, xiii. 614

Placentia, (see Piacenza) its history, xiii. 599. How restored to Alexander of Parma, 631. Battle fatal to the French and Spaniards, with de Gage's retreat to the camp near it, 665.

Placentia, in Newfoundland, bickerings there between the English and French, xiv. 492

Placentines driven from Fiorenzola, &c. by Scotti, who takes Placentia, and drives out the party against him, xiii. 317

Plague in Spain, viii. 73. In several other places, ix. 684.



A great one in the northern parts of Italy; and cardinal Boromeo's humanity, also that of the bishop of Verona, x. 111. A grievous one in and about Rome, by which Olympia dies, and prince Pamphilio allowed her heir, 150. In Venice, 228. In Naples, and the number of dead in July about fifteen thousand daily, 525. Almost lays desolate the whole kingdom, and how the calamity is increased, 526. In London, with the effects for the security of the Dutch, xi. 600. In Leyden, 577. In Denmark, xii. 60. And famine in Denmark, with king John's humanity on this occasion, 121. In Sweden, and its devastations in Stockholm, xiii. 221. Horrid scene of wickedness in propagating it discovered in Geneva, and what, with the execution of the miscreants concerned, xiv. 30. In Geneva, 37. At Marseilles, and number of dead in a month, xv. 610

Plata river discovered by Dios de Solis, but slain, xiv. 166 (C). See Charcas

—, (Chuquifuya) city described, xiv. 464

— la, why called Buenos Ayres, xiv. 476 (Z)

— Rio de la, Portuguese forts on it, xiv. 479

— Porto de la, described, xv. 360

Platina, why imprisoned by the pope, ix. 31. Treatment from him, 35

Platoons, firing first practised in Leipzig battle by the Scottish regiment, with its effects, xii. 329

Plawen, bravery of that grand malter, xii. 479

Playahonda, famous port in the Philippines, iv. 189

Pleskow besieged by Bathori, with the resolute operations on both sides, xii. 497. The Poles enter it, ib.

—, town, its siege by Bathori raised on the news of the peace with Russia, after very great loss and equal glory on both sides, xiii. 123. Tumult there, with the occasion, —, province and its principal places, xiii. 7

Plockpenning, (plough-tax) in Denmark, its origin, xii. 33. The inhabitants of Schonen revolt on occasion of it, but overthrown, ib.

Plymouth council, who, and the grant to them, xiv. 501

—, New, its settlement, and grant of land to it by the natives, xiv. 502. Its progress, 503. Account of dissensions among them, through Weston, and a conspiracy by the natives against him, how discovered, ib. The colony flourishes, and settling episcopacy among them, frustrated, 514. Buy out the patentees, and erect themselves into a republic, ib. New modelling of its government, ibid. Seasonable supply brought them from England, what, ib.

— town, its state then, and the plantations there, xiv. 514. Disturbed by a mutiny under Morton; and the charges brought against them, what, ib. All made prisoners by captain Standish, ib.

Pocock sails to the Havannah, through the Old Streights of Bahama; his skill and diligence therein, xv. 338. Found by Sir James Douglas he blocks up the mouth of the Havannah harbour, ib. Attack of his ships on Moro castle, 340

Podesta of Genoa, upon accusations against the Genoese commanders in the Archipelago, obliges all masters to give security for their behaviour, x. 549. Again chosen at Genoa, and assistance sent to the Christians besieging Damietta, 545

Podiebrad assumes the administration of Bohemia, in room of Mainard, x. 21. Made king of Bohemia by the pope, 25. Proclaimed king of Bohemia, by means of Rockizane, xi. 101. Defeats Matthias, who had been proclaimed king, 106. Religious restraints on the catholics of Silesia and Bohemia, bring on a revolt and an excommunication from the pope, 104. Continues in peaceable possession of the whole kingdom of Bohemia, 94

—, George, makes himself sole governor of Bohemia, xv. 459. Greatly confided in by king Ladislaus, who dies, and the governor saluted king, ib. Renews his obedience to Rome, but imprisons the nuncio, and why, 460. Offers to fight his competitor Matthias, and dies, ib.

Pogniarding, the only capital punishment in Java, iv. 459

Pointis appears before Jamaica; his success against Carthage, xv. 290. Pursued by Nevil, in vain, ib.

Poison, subtle, its qualities, as practised in Peru, xiv. 384

Poissi, famous conference there, with little or no effect, ix. 256. Only the king of Navarre leaves the reformed, ib.

Poitiers, memorable defeat of the Moors there, viii. 549. Edict, as explained by the articles at Nerac, confirmed, ix. 278

Po-kyang-fu lake, in Kyang-fi, described, iii. 531

Pol, St. defeated and taken by Leva, x. 532

Pola besieged and stormed by the doge of Venice: with the conditions of pardon to the inhabitants, x. 196

Poland ravaged by Batu Khan, ii. 445. Peace concluded between it and Hungary, x. 38. By whom made a kingdom and chief of the empire, 641. Conquests of its king in Bohemia, 643. Dismembered from the empire, with the occasion, 647. Rebellion there, which is invaded by the duke of Bohemia, who submits to the emperor, 643. History, etymology, and classic name, xii. 425. Geographical description and commodities, ib. Division and palatinates, episcopal see and capital, ib. Political government, 427. Obscurity of its ancient history, 426. General diet, 429. Petty diet, or landtag, ib. Privy-council deputed from the general diet, ib. (A). Raising and maintaining an army there, 434. Ducal government, on Viscimir's death, abolished, 439. Palatines appointed, ib. Sovereignty declared to that competitor who has the swiftest horse, 445. Civil wars there, and the second class of princes, 447. Regal dignity, to whom first granted, 459. War between it and Prussia, with the knights of the latter defeated, 478. At last obtain a peace, but hostilities recommence, 479. A civil war commences, and the Russians invited into it, 463. Who its first king, 471. Intrigues at several courts on Sigismund Augustus's death about a successor, 489. Contests there, and in Lithuania, with the legate's address, 490. Ambassadors from Vienna way-laid and arrested, with an agreement between the parties, and the several candidates, who, 491. New decrees of that diet, 513. Confusions in Poland, Lithuania, and Prussia, with the occasion, and the competitors, ib. Sigismund, prince of Sweden, and Maximilian, of Austria, both proclaimed, ib. War ensues between it and Sweden; most of Livonia yielding to the latter, 517. Various operations of count Mansfeldt, sent thither by Gustavus Adolphus, with a truce concluded between the Swedes and Poles, 513. Truce for six years, and the motives, 517. Disputes about the election of a successor to that crown, 523. Alliance with the Tartars, 525. Fresh scenes of discord and confusion ensue, ib. Candidates for the crown, and disturbances in the diet, 529. Quelled by a speech of Opalinski, palatine of Kalish, who sets out for the residence of Michael Coribut Wiesznowski, ib. War with the Turks and Cossacks, through the czar of Muscovy, and his reasons; 530. New scene of corruption opens in the diet of election, and the several candidates; among which the vaivode of Transylvania offers himself, 532 (H). Alliance concluded by it with the emperor against the Turks, 538. Confusion, even to blows and bloodshed, in the lesser diets, 544. Instructions and engagements how become useless, ibid. Meeting of the general diet, with warm debates about a marshal; and the Lithuanian deputies consent that Little Poland should have the nomination of a speaker, 546. After several questions put, the marshal makes a speech, and the primate answers it; with its remarkable conclusion, ibid. Revolt of their army, 547. Act of the diet, among other things, for excluding all natives, 548. Treaty with Sweden, 600. Its contents all to the advantage of that kingdom, and the odium of it unjustly thrown on Stanislaus, and why, ib. Rancorous revilings on each side, and the armies put in motion, ib. Account of the several candidates for the crown, and their pretensions, 552 (A). The kingdom now divided into two great parties, 553. Glaring corruption of the electors, 554. And the equal strength of the two parties, and their intrigues, ib. Its different provinces under different sovereigns, 555 (B). Council, after violent debates in a grand one, lenity and moderation resolved on, 559. Its distracted state, 578. Diet assembles; with their demands made to the king, and his answers, 582. Murmurs every where against him, 579. Deplorable state, 605. Assembly breaks up tumultuously, 582. Change of affairs since the battle of Pultowa, 607. Nobility of Great Poland enter into a confederacy for preserving their liberties, 587. A neutral party starts up in that republic, with the moderate declaration of the palatine of Potoski, their head, 596. He, however, becomes the partisan of Stanislaus, and tool of Charles, ib. The Saxons being dispersed, their diet sits, with the act of confederacy signed by the deputies, 598. High complaints there against the Russians, and the czar eludes his promise of evacuating the country, 612. The republic jealous of the king, with the occasion, 619. And frequent diets assemble, but to no effect, ib.

—, king, makes peace with the Turks, xiii. 173. On the



- the point of having three kings at a time, 210. Intestine commotions there, and the czar chosen mediator, who, after a suspension of arms agreed to, accommodates the differences, 233. Sequel of its history, xv. 633
- Polani, Pietro, thirty-sixth doge of Venice, x. 196. Revolt and defeat of the Paduans, with a peace concluded, *ib.* His death, *ib.*
- Pole-cat of Canada described, xv. 557
- Polenza, how annexed to the dominion of Florence, and the Siennese disgusted thereat, xiii. 347
- Poles refuse pope Clement VIII's mediation in the dispute with Bathori; also, an alliance against the Turks, x. 127. Invade the Prussians, with an account of the latter, 644. Peace, after fourteen years war, made between them and the Teutonic knights of Prussia, 657. Their attempt on Sweden frustrated, xii. 321. Unable to face the Swedes, they harass them in their march, 359. Character, policy, and religion, xiii. 427. Their first conversion by St. Adelbert; but they tolerate other denominations, and Socinianism alone suppressed, xii. 440. Disregard the arts of war, xiii. 439. Complain to the pope about the duke of Bohemia, and the issue, 454. Disappointed of redress, they unanimously agree to recal the innocent Casimir, *ib.* Refuse to crown Sigismund, and offer the crown to Hedwiga, the daughter of the late Lewis 496. Their ravages to the gates of Smolensko, *ib.* Unaccountable fluctuation at this juncture, 566. Oblige Augustus to declare against his son, and annul the act of election, with the part Russia takes in this affair, xii. 617. Invade Russia, and force Basilus to submit, xiii. 101. Why obliged to rise from the siege of Smolensko; and thanksgivings ordered by the pope for their victory, 103. Invade Russia, with their success, 110. Project for seizing the czar's treasure at Bielezar, abortive, 120. Take Riga, *ib.* Besiege Smolensko, *ib.* Ravaging the borders of Russia, are very near taking the czar, and how deceived, 121. Grow jealous of the Swedes progress in Livonia, 122. Peace concluded between the Russians and them at Zapolicia, with the conditions, *ib.* Take Smolensko, after the principal inhabitants had blown themselves up in a church, with their loss during the siege, 145. Possess Moscow, with the dreadful insurrection there by the Russians, *ib.* The Poles setting fire to the city, fall on the inhabitants with great slaughter, and plunder the treasury, 146. Lose all footing in Russia, *ib.* Terribly harassed by the Cossacks, who had been ill treated, 160. Complain of the Russians for not restoring Kiow, and the latter propose an equivalent, 172. Become masters almost of the whole Ukraine, *ib.* Their ungrateful return to the Russians, on demanding succours, 173. Terms of agreement in a new treaty between them, *ib.* Demand satisfaction for damages done them by the Russians; with Dolgorouki's demands from the Polish diet, and their answers, 251. That Russian ambassador's short reply, with several favourable alterations for Sweden, *ib.* A peculiarly absurd custom in their diet, xii. 430. Venality and general corruption, with the usual form of passing laws, *ib.* Affairs of which the diet take cognizance, and the original intention thereof perverted, *ib.* Diet for the election of a king, and the booth or szopa erected on this occasion, 443. After chusing a marechal, what business is first entered upon; *ib.* Next an audience given to plenipotentiaries, *ib.* Ambassadors from their senate obtain an audience of Charles XII. and conferences appointed at Kinschin; but Charles alters his mind, enters Poland, and takes Warsaw, 373. Their senate, 430. Instance of the value put by the senators on their dignity; *ib.* Privileges of their bishops and archbishop of Gnesna, *ib.* Secular members of their senate, *ib.* Power of their Palatines, Castellans, and Starostas, 431. Privileges of their nobility or gentry, *ib.* Situation of their peasants, with regard to their masters, 434 (A). Their estates, what, *ib.* Oppression of the superior officers, to what owing, 435. Nobility, their profusion, *ib.* Who first introduced discipline among their troops, 448. Conspiracy of the women in Kiowia against their husbands, by taking their slaves to their beds, 458. Margaret, wife of count Zemboisin, alone withstands the corruption, and on the news of this revolution, the Poles in general desert, and return home, with the consequences of all this, *ib.* Renew the war with the Turks, and detachments of the latter repulsed, 537. After four days storming each other's entrenchments, and the Turks foiled, make overtures of peace, *ib.* Which are concluded, with the terms, *ib.* Their officers highly resent the emperor's conduct towards Sobieski, 540. Their army led back to their own country, 542. Attacked by the Tartars, who are forced to retire; with divisions between the Poles, Lithuanians, and Saxons, 569. The Saxons and Poles drawn out in order of battle against each other, but Augustus quits the field, *ib.* Senate's resolution for deferring the diet, 578. A question debated in their diet about the late peace with the Porte; and John Sobieski's embassy to Moscow, with the czar's answer, xiii. 174
- Poli-cha commands the Mongl army in Shen-si, ii. 358
- Polignac, abbé, his artful conduct in Poland, and proposal of the prince of Conti to the electors, xii. 550. Opposed by the Imperial minister, and among other great personages by the bishop of Cujavia, *ib.* Incurs the displeasure of the queen dowager, who flies into a rage, and abuse against him, with the occasion, *ib.* Conclusion of his speech against Augustus, 555. Consternation of the French faction, and their demands on him, at whose remonstrance Conti embarks and arrives in the road of Dantzick, 559. The many difficulties both met with here, *ib.*
- Pollutions in marriage, &c. how restrained by the Alcoran, i. 177
- Poll-tax in Sweden, abolished and compensated by a subsidy from France in the confederacy against the king of Prussia, xii. 216
- Polockz, account of, xii. 624
- Polotemur, the Mongl general, abandons his post, ii. 421. Takes up arms against Chahan-temur, 428. Defeated by Koko-temur, 429. Suppresses the emperors two vile ministers, 430. Made prime minister himself, but fiercely opposed by the presumptive heir, 431. Outwitted by the empress Ki, and murdered by the emperor's orders, *ib.*
- Polo-whan ordered to invade Ky-ang-nan, ii. 370
- Polygamy, unlimited, is allowed by Mohammed, i. 117 & 176. Permitted in Ethiopia, vi. 193
- Pomerania, war between its two princes, and their claims how supported, xi. 29
- restitution of the Lower to Brandenburg, xi. 274
- , Farther, difference between Sweden and Brandenburg about it, xi. 274
- , Swedish, manifestos published by the Danish and Polish kings, before they invade it; with the false motives of each, xii. 396. The two allied kings commence hostilities, with their fruitless besieging of Stralsund, *ib.* As also Wismar, while the Russians keep Stetin blocked up, 397
- , Swedish, scheme against it miscarries, and to what owing, xii. 611
- , Farther, account of it, xv. 488
- Pomis, David de, a learned Jewish chronologer, with his works; v. 597. A mistake of Bartolucci about him, noted, *ib.* (Z)
- Pompey's pillar in Egypt described, vi. 21
- Poncet sent as a physician into Abyssinia, vi. 158 (A). His history of it, and character, blackened by the Jesuits, but vindicated, 161. Commission to the emperor, and reception, 162. Account of the emperor Basilides, 311. And of his embassy to him, 312. Reception and audience, *ib.* Character, &c. of that monarch, *ib.* Why cried down by the Jesuits, 313. Audience of leave, and return, 314
- Pond, Mahomet's, where the righteous drink, i. 164
- Pondicherry neighbourhood plundered by the Marattas, who are repulsed, iii. 149
- abandoned by the French, iii. 400
- besieged by the English, iv. 367. Forced to raise it, 368. Taken from the French by the Dutch, 463. Surrendered to them again, 464
- purchased by the French East India company from the king of Vizapour, iv. 588. Possession taken of it by a fleet and army of the Dutch, 589. Restored, and put in a state of defence, 590. Enlarged, the fort and town, &c. described, 591 (X). Its extent and people, 592. Commerce, 593 (A). Governor and garrison, how maintained, 594. The history of that settlement resumed, 625. Great favour granted to the governor of it, *ib.* The occasion of it canvassed, 626. Besieged by the English, and the quay raised, 628 (M). Surrenders to the Dutch, x. 474. xi. 645
- Pong-hu islands and port, near the coast of China, described, iii. 534
- Pont d'Espéries, the allies disappointed by the dauphin, in their design on it, xi. 316
- Ponte de Gallo, a fortress in Ceylon, described, iv. 485 (T)
- city, iv. 485 sub not.
- governor outwitted by the king of Ceylon, iv. 439. Arrested by his own men, 440. (See Mascarenhas) Dutch settlement there, and four orders of its Chittays, 505



- Ponte Perino** de, forty-third grand master of Malta, and ambassador to the emperor, vii. 453. Takes the fortrefs of Goletta, and the bravery of the knights, 454. With his death, *ibid.*
- Pontemas** (Pontiamo) a sea port of Kamboja, destroyed by the Siamese, iii. 406.
- Ponticherry** (see Pondicherry) a French colony in Karnata, iii. 179
- Ponti-fat**, or Sommona Kodom, why so styled, iii. 306
- Pontverre**, captain of the knights of the spoon, killed in Geneva, and the consequences, xiv. 20
- Pontus**, a part of it conquered by the Saracens, i. 345
- Poole**, cardinal, sent legate into France, and why recalled, x. 84. Sent legate to Mary of England, who is stopped at Augsborg, while a marriage between Philip and Mary is concluded, 94. In vain endeavours to reconcile the emperor and France, with his reception at London, by Philip and Mary, *ib.* Who send ambassadors to Rome, declaring the obedience of the English to the pope, *ib.*
- Popayan** province described, xiv. 452. Greatly exposed to the ravages of the Indians, *ib.* Its productions and capital described, *ib.*
- Pope** constrained to grant the administration of the archbishopric of Saragossa to a bastard six years old, viii. 198. Conducted to Italy by Boson, with an army returns to Rome, ix. 528. Assembly of the Italian bishops there, for electing a king, but nothing is concluded upon, 529. Several chosen successively, 535. History of their transactions, 561, 563. Differences between him and Lewis XII. of France, x. 294. Declares war against the latter, 298. Renounces Maximilian's alliance, and his other concessions, 310. Temporizing, and the duke of Ferrara's refusal to desert his ally, 311. At liberty, he alters his maxims, 328. Election of several successive ones, ix. 539. By the emperor's assistance recovers Campania, and restores prince Robert to Capua, x. 411. Acts as regent in Sicily, but opposed by Marcoaldus, 423. Claims the kingdom of Sicily, as a fief devolved to the apostolic see, 437. Death, after governing Naples as sovereign, and his statutes made there, 499. Seized at Anagni, xi. 19. But being released, after suffering great indignities, dies at Rome, Benedict X. succeeding, who does not survive long, *ib.* Troubles in Germany from two at the same time, x. 652.
- and antipope, their proceedings reciprocally, xi. 38. Remonstrance to the German princes disregarded, and Lewis, the emperor, sends an embassy, *ib.* All his advances towards a reconciliation with the pope, treated by the latter with disdain, 39. Tampers with the king of Bohemia, the emperor's lieutenant in Italy, with the work cut out for him at home by the emperor's intrigues, *ib.* Two chosen together, 51. Has a conference with the king of France at Marseilles, 145 (G). Disputes renewed between him and the emperor, 341. Proceedings on both sides, *ib.*
- Popedom**, schism in it, xiii. 340.
- Popfingen**, account of it, xv. 443.
- Popiel I.** succeeds his father Lechus IV. in the sovereignty of Poland, and his excellent character, xii. 446.
- II. a minor, succeeds his father Popiel I. as sovereign of Poland, xii. 446. The wise regency of his uncles, whom he banishes when he comes of age, with his wife's artful insinuations, and speech against them, *ib.* He pretends sickness, sends for his uncles, and poisons them, *ib.* The bodies are left exposed, and how rats produced from them devour the brutal prince, and his whole family, *ib.* & (A).
- Popo** kingdom described, with the exploits of the king Aforri, vi. 588. His death, and the expulsion of his subjects, 589. Natives very fraudulent, *ib.* Its chief commerce, 591.
- , Great, described, 589. Capital and royal palace, *ib.* Koto described, and the wars with Whidah, *ib.*
- Popocatepec** Volcano in Tlascala, described, xiv. 205 (A). Sulphur found here, of which Cortez makes powder, and reward of its discoverer what, *ib.* sub not.
- Poppi**, difference between the pope and him compromised, xiii. 396. He joins Picinino, 398.
- , count, his speech at a parley with Capponi, a literal translation by Machiavel of that by Caractacus, before the emperor Claudius, 400 & (A).
- Porcari**, the emperor's procurator, makes off with a sum he had received, and the emperor's distresses thereupon, who is refused admittance into Milan, xii. 72.
- Pora**, a famous mountain and idol in Arracan, iii. 123.
- Porcelain** of China, strange accounts about its manufacture, and the true one given, iii. 620. The old sort is the more preferable, *ib.* But liable to be counterfeited, *ib.*
- Porchi**, one of Temujin's four intrepids, ii. 272. Success against the revolted, *ib.* Made one of his prime ministers, 279
- Porcupine**, of Canada, described, xiv. 558
- Porje** makes alliance with Temujin, ii. 268
- Porkah**, a principality of Malabar, iii. 166
- Porokona**, one of Temujin's four intrepids, ii. 272
- Poroskavia**. See Hebus. After Hebus' death, becomes sole sovereign of Lithuania, and her character as a bigot, who dies at Rome, xii. 627
- Porpoises**, of St. Laurence river, described, xiv. 560
- Portendic**, a French settlement on the Senegal, vii. 85
- Porthausen**, a diet there concludes a truce with the emperor Otto, ix. 615
- Portland**, duke, governor of Jamaica, xv. 303. Dubourgay, his lieutenant governor, and character of the duke's administration, *ib.* A handsome settlement made, *ib.* Part of his speech relating to Dubourgay, who is sent back with a handsome present, *ib.* Promises to reconcile differences, and visited by the king of the Musketos, *ib.* Passes a negative on an act for rendering the laws perpetual, 304. Settles the value of the silver coin, *ib.* & (C). Advice about uncultivated lands without effect, *ib.* The highways mended, and his speech for it, *ib.* Comfortable provisions for clergymen, 305. But the evil complained of not removed, and the reasons, *ib.* Dies, and sincerely lamented, *ib.* Address of condolence to her grace, *ib.*
- Portmore**, minister, and commander in chief in Portugal, from England, viii. 543
- Port Royal**, monastery, why suppressed, x. 173. As a nest of heresy, and the pope condemns the New Testament published there by father Quesnel, *ib.*
- , in Nova Scotia, capitulates to colonel Nicolson, and the terms, xiv. 495. This conquest called Annapolis Ro *ib.* Importance of this place not answering expectation, and its cession with all Nova Scotia to Britain, by the peace of Utrecht, 496. The Indians excited by the French to several acts of hostility, *ib.* Which they continue, *ib.*
- , in Acadia, repossessed by the French, xiv. 644. Fruitless attempt of the English on it, and the different accounts, 679. Taken by a grand armament from Boston, and the terms of capitulation, 689. Different accounts of the latter, and disputes about it between the French and English, *ibid.*
- river and harbour, in South Carolina, xv. 99
- , in Jamaica, dreadful earthquake there, xv. 286. Damage done, *ib.* Pestilence ensuing, 287. Rebuilt, 293. Burnt, 295. The inhabitants removed to Kingston, 296. Account of, 334
- Porte**, Ottoman, demands from the emperor, xi. 186
- Portery**, secretary to the bishop of Geneva, convicted and executed there, xiv. 24
- Porto novo**, in Karnata, its traffic, iii. 173
- Santo, in Madeira, when, and by whom discovered, iv. 110. Granted to prince Henry of Portugal, 112
- Santo, island described, with its produce, commerce, &c. vi. 152
- Farino, in Tunis, described, vii. 297
- Portocarrero** resigns his post of prime minister in Spain, viii. 355. Dies, 363
- governor of Dourlens, makes himself master of Amiens, ix. 313
- Porto-Cavallo**, harbour to Guatemala city, xiv. 443
- , on the Caraccas, unsuccessfully attacked by Knowles, xiv. 451
- Bello, why so called, xiv. 150. Columbus arrives there, *ibid.*
- , and Panama, whence their flourishing state, xiv. 280. Account of its strength, xv. 310
- Seguro, captainry and capital in Brazil, described, xiv. 479
- Rico island described, xv. 360. Number of inhabitants at its discovery, and their notion of the Spaniards immortality, 361. Spaniard drowned as an experiment, upon which they put one hundred and thirty to death, *ib.* The natives exterminated for it, and the effects, *ib.*
- Porto town**, described, with Drake's destroying the shipping, xv. 361. Taken by the earl of Cumberland, *ib.* Taken by



- by the Dutch, but not the castle, 362. Contraband trade carried on here, and description of the place, 363. Its produce, breed of wild dogs, and trade, *ib.* Other places in this island, *ib.*
- Portugal, constitution by whom settled, and laws, viii. 382
- (A) Supports John of Gaunt's title to Castile, 61
- king, assumes the title of Castile, and coins money, viii. 60. Invades Galicia, but returns home by sea, *ib.* (D). Revolution there, how brought about, 302. Grand source accounted for, *ib.* (E). The two tools in it, *ib.* sub not. New government settled in less than a month, *ib.* The affairs of Spain decline every where, *ib.*
- its history, climate, and soil, viii. 371. True account of establishing its sovereignty, *ib.* Lusitania how far corresponding with modern Portugal, and etymology, 372. Difference between the ancient and modern country, *ib.* Was not formerly a county and kingdom, *ib.* Different accounts about founding this sovereignty, 373. Remarks on its trade, 403 (A). Unfortunate death of its prince, with his character, and birth of his posthumous son Sebastian, 477. Reduced by Philip II. of Spain, 489. Revolution in favour of the duke of Braganza, (John IV.) 501. Alliance offensive and defensive with it, ix. 402. Declares for the allies, and the stipulations in their treaty with that kingdom, 484
- ambassador saved from the mob by the prince of Orange, xi. 547. Arrival of an ambassador from it, with his representation, and quitting Holland precipitately on the extravagant demands of the states, 558. War with it, 572. Disputes with it about the Brasils, and the Dutch merchantmen in the Tagus seized, *ib.* Upon the Dutch states granting it an armistice, commissioners meet, but settle nothing, 575
- , Norris sent with a squadron for its relief from an invasion of the Spaniards, xv. 572. Invaded by the Spaniards, 591. With an insolent memorial presented by the French and Spanish ministers, *ib.* Modest, but resolute answer, with other memorials, and the same firmness in the king of Portugal, *ib.* War declared, and the situation of Portugal at the time, with their chief reliance on the English, *ib.* Progress of the Spaniards, 592. Count la Lippe sent by his Britannic Majesty to command the Portuguese, *ib.* That general's plan executed by Bourgoyne, the valour of a serjeant and six men, with colonel Lee's success, 593. Portugal thus saved by the English, *ib.* Dispute of the French ambassador de Livri, with the first secretary, on a punctilio, 595
- Portuguese driven out of the island of Ormuz, ii. 616. Treachery to the Peguers, and Arrakanians, iii. 233. Settled at Chatigan, they embark, and go over to the Great Mogul, who despises them for their treachery, 237. They make peace with the king of Pegu, 251. Two thousand slain by the Barman king their ally 254. Highly honoured by Chau-migrem, 261. Abandon the king of Pegu, 269. Their proceedings in Pegu after its conquest, and settlement in Sirian, they seize on the Peguan fort in it, 272. Assist the king of Siam against that of Chiamay, 354. Amply rewarded for it, 355. Assist the Barman against the Siamese king, 357. Embassy to and from Goa, 360. Embassy to China well received, 739. Vain efforts to recover the Japan commerce, iv. 21, & (Y). Supplant the Dutch in Cochinchina, iii. 424, & (B). Causes of their expulsion out of Japan, iv. 21. (Y). Attacked by Jehan Shah, iii. 84. Driven out of the fortrefs of Ougli, *ib.* Undermine the Italians in the Indian trade, iv. 105. Requite them in kind, *ib.* & (H). Their discovery of the Cape of Good Hope, 107. When, and under whom their discoveries began, 110. Their discoveries in Africa, &c. 112. Second fleet sent into India, 116. Ill success with the factory, and people destroyed at Calicut, 117. The third fleet sent thither, but more welcome and successful, 118. Vast extent of their dominions in India described, 132, & (F). The vast power of their viceroy, and other governors there, 133. Their great navies, and allowing liberty of conscience, in spite of the Goa inquisition, and their decline through king John III. 134. Besieged in Goa and Chaul, with the relaxation of discipline, *ib.* Oppression of the natives, and invasions by the Dutch, 135. Their government there how divided, *ib.* Conquest of Mozambique, *ib.* Of Ormuz, 138. Turned out of it by the Persians, 139. Their next settlement at Muscat, 140. Ill treatment of the natives, *ib.* Settlement at Din, 141. Their discovery, and fort at the Maldives, 144. Settlement in the island of Ceylon, but driven out by the Dutch, 145. Assist the Peguans against the king of Siam, 147.
- Their great power and insolence ruin them there, *ib.* And their massacre, 148. Their vast trade with Siam almost destroyed, with their low state now in India, *ib.* & (X). Powerful settlement at Malacca, *ib.* & (Y). Driven out of it by the Dutch, 149. First commerce with Sumatra, and frequent attempts on it frustrated, 150. Wars with Bantam and Java, *ib.* Factory in Borneo destroyed, 152, in fin. not. Intercourse with the Celebes, and great interest with the natives, 153. Whence supplanted by the Spaniards, 154. And fatal treachery to Sultan Aerio, 156, & (H). Fatal cruelty to the poor natives, they lose the Spice-islands, 157. Commerce with New Guinea, *ib.* Open a trade with China, 159. Fatal behaviour of their captains, 160. Obtain a settlement at Macaw, *ib.* Expulsion from Limpoa by the Chinese, 161. Not suffered admittance into Japan, *ib.* Arrival of others thither, 163. Why banished out of that empire, *ib.* Their pride and insolence blind them as to their danger, *ib.* Fatal attempts from Macaw to retrieve their commerce, and the miserable issue of their negotiations, 165. Some fresh, but unsuccessful attempts made by king John IV. *ib.* When their Indian possessions became subject to Spain, 166. Their present degeneracy whence, 168. Laziness and effeminacy, *ib.* Their commerce whence decayed, 171. They double the Cape of Good Hope, 175, & (B). Their first entrance into Abyssinia, vi. 157. Their accounts of it why so various, 158. Invited into Abyssinia, 160. Wild search after the kingdom of Prester John, and bring it into Abyssinia, 171. Their successes under Don Christopher de Gama, 260. Defeated by the Moors, 263, & (X). Retreat to the Jewish mountains, 265. There joined by the young emperor, *ib.* Forbid to assist him with their arms, *ib.* (Z). Fresh success against the Moors, 266. Fall out with the young emperor, 268. Fortify themselves against him, 269. Dispersed by him through the empire, and recalled afresh against the Gallas, with their noble defence, 271. Accompany him in his provincial progress, *ib.* Join with Abyssinian revoltors, 276. Ill success, *ib.* On the Red Sea, 277. Strange reception from the king of Daniale, 321. Difficulty to get away, 322. Horrid plunder, and burning of Zeila, 327
- Portuguese war with the Dutch at Ceylon, iv. 436. Concluded, 437. Strange behaviour to the king's brother, 438. Defeated by admiral Carron, and before Negambo, 439. Out-witted by the king of Ceylon, *ib.* Defeated by the Dutch, 440. Driven from the coasts of Malabar, 447
- bloody expedition against Zeila, vi. 327. Successful treachery to the king of it, 328. Horrid cruelties at Brava, 335. Strange and arbitrary behaviour to the African princes, 351. Horrid piracies on their tributary princes, 354. Their admission into Sofata strenuously opposed, 366. Their fort besieged, and rescued by Zacote, 367. Murder the good old king, *ib.* Set up his murderer to succeed, and swept away by a mortality, 368. Inforced to continue their conquests and commerce in that empire, 375 & (D). And the accounts of these transactions why so various, *ib.* Vincent Leblanc's account of that kingdom, anno 1604, *ib.*
- ill success on the Cape of Good Hope, and revenge on the Hottentots, vi. 395. Attempt on the kingdom of Congo, and dreadfully slaughtered for it, vi. 478 and (A). Outwitted by the king Alvarez, 481. War with the king Antonio, and seize on his gold mines, 487. Gain a miraculous victory over him, 488 & (G). Their conquests and settlements in Angola, 489. Tributary provinces, 497. Government, *ib.* Great promoters of the traffic of slaves, *ib.* Scandalous oppression of the natives, and their governors great tyrants, 501. Other immoral practices, *ib.* Defeat the revolted Angolans, 505. Suspected, and hated by the king, and flee into Congo, 506. Fresh supplies from Portugal, *ib.* Put his kingdom to fire and sword, *ib.* Wars with queen Zingha, 509. Set up a king against her, 510. Make themselves masters of Angola, 535. Defeat Sharif Mohammed, who defeats them again, vii. 175
- Portuguese monarchy, when, and by whom founded, viii. 374, 380. Invade Castile, and beat a much superior army, 67. Make an irruption into Castile, but are beat at sea, 73
- barbarous action of one of their governors, viii. 312. And their allies take several places, 357
- form a scheme for restoring the constitution, and by whom, viii. 499. Probabilities for succeeding, and consultations for giving the crown to the duke of Braganza, with the obstacles to be surmounted, *ib.* Animated to recover their liberty, 500. Driven out of Ceylon, 511
- shake off the Spanish yoke, xi. 251 (Z).



- Portze, Peter, his bravery with regard to king Magnus Ladislaus of Sweden, and the latter's generosity, with the occasion, xii. 235
- Porra, a superficial sea-weed near the coast of California, iv. 214
- Pospolite, or Polish gentry, occasion, and manner of assembling them, with their formidable appearance, and their privileges, xii. 434. Chiefly cavalry, 437
- , or body of Polish electors, assemble in the field, xii. 556. The election postponed by the castellan of Culm protesting, and next day the primate nominates the candidates, but Augustus last of all, ib. The election deferred by the primate, and the occasion, ib.
- Possévin, the pope by that legate mediates a peace between the Russians and Poles, with the czar's real design in the negociation, xiii. 121.
- Potol, cape, in the island of Panay, iv. 197
- Potosi mines where, xiv. 319. Described, 464. How fortuitously discovered, ib. Its four chief mines, and immense wealth, 465 & (U.) Gold also in this country, ib. Town described, 464. Trade, 465
- Poulchis, or Pulchis, a low tribe in Malabar, with their wretched condition, iii. 168. Their religion, and why reckoned infamous, 169
- Poul, Ay, one of the Banda islands, iv. 489. Its nutmeg parks, ib. (A).
- Rhon (Poleron) that Banda island disputed between the English and Dutch, iv. 489
- Pourous, the first man, how created, iii. 185. His four sons fall out, and people the earth, ib.
- Powder made by Cortez without saltpetre, xiv. 253
- Powowing among the Indians what, and abolished, xiv. 513
- Powst, a slow-killing draught among the Moguls, iii. 105 and (I).
- Pox, small, its inoculation long since used in China, iii. 650. Dreadful to the Tartars, where, and by whom invented, ib. Method of proceeding, and its success, 651. Opium, why administered in it, 652. Their notion of that distemper, ib. How inoculated in China, 650. And in Tartary, with success, ib. How distinguished by the Japanese, iv. 55 (M). Its dire ravages in Mexico, xiv. 252
- Poyen-Temur, the Mogul general, defeated, and slain by Suta and Chang-yu-Chun, ii. 433
- Prabat, a city of Siam, described, and the pilgrimage to it, iii. 319
- Prague, its bishop chosen king of Bohemia, x. 689. Why the diet there sends an embassy to the emperor and pope, xi. 94. Diet convoked there, 183. Submits to the duke of Bavaria's clemency, and several sent to prison, 204. Surprised by Koningsmark, 269. By the emperor Charles VII. xv. 630. The French besieged there, 631. And their wonderful retreat through Belleisle's conduct, ib.
- Praguerie, sedition in France what, ix. 152
- Pranjinoko succeeds Chau-migrem in Pegu, and undermined by his uncle the king of Ava, with the horrid slaughter of his own nobles, iii. 266. Invades the kingdom of Ava, ib. Defeats and kills his uncle, razes the capital of Ava, and invades the kingdom of Siam, 267. With his ill success there, ib. His son defeated and killed, ib. His tyranny causes a rebellion, 268. The revolt of his second son, and invaded by the Siamese; also the capital besieged by them, and the kingdom labours under a most grievous famine, ib. Seven thousand Siamese butchered, and divided, by his order, among his perishing subjects; his revolted son submits, is poisoned by his prime minister, and conspired against by his brother, 269. His vast hidden treasures, and besieged in his capital by Mogo, he surrenders, and is pounded to death, ib. With his character, age, and great state, 270. Manner of giving audience, and generosity to Balbi, 271. His children barbarously slain by the king of Tangu, and the kingdom becomes subject to Arracan, ib. Annexed to that of Ava, and is so still, 272
- Pra-pye (Mom-pi) adopted heir of Siam, iii. 384 & (C). Refuses to attend on the young princes, 386. Is murdered in the king's presence by Pitarcha, ib. & 388 & (C).
- Praslin beats Turenne and Archduke Leopold, viii. 309. His surrender of Rhetel to him, and defeat of the Spaniards there, ix. 431
- Pra-swane, one of the Siamese saints, overcome by Sommona Kodom, iii. 342. Ariaferia, another Siamese giant of a saint, 343
- Pratensis, Felix, first corrector of the printed Hebrew bibles, v. 596 & (Y).
- Prato's bravery and stratagem, by which duke Antony of Savoy raises the siege of Pena, x. 616. The cruelty of the inhabitants to their prisoners, ib. Rewards given to the gar-
- rison, Prato, and Gastaldi, ib. (A). Justifies his not going to Lombardy, in obedience to the Genoese senate, ib. Its storm by the Spaniards, and scenes of cruelty, xiii. 473
- Pratz, Mr. le Page du, his account of the war with the Natches different from that of Charlevoix, xv. 38. Service in discovering a conspiracy of Louisiana negroes, 52. Seizes the conspirators, who are executed, with the improbability of the account, 53 & (M). Observations on the savages, 57 and (O). Memoir on the population of North America, xiv. 563 (E).
- Praya, a costly castle built there by sultan Akber, iii. 60
- Prayers, various, enjoined by the Alcoran, i. 168
- Predestination, absolute, asserted in the Alcoran, i. 167. By what sects of Moslems holden or denied, 315
- Pregadi (Venetian senate) its origin, x. 199
- Preliminaries of peace notified in Holland, and to the Imperial minister in London, who is forbid the court, ix. 501
- Premislaus, a private soldier, delivers the Poles from the tyranny of the vaivodes, and is raised to the supreme power in Poland, xii. 444. The stratagem used by him, and his defeating the Hungarians, ib. Various accounts of this victory, ib. (F). He afterwards cultivates the arts of peace, and dies without issue, ib.
- II. succeeds his relation Henry of Breslau, as duke of Poland, xii. 471. After a splendid coronation, and assuming the title of king, he is murdered, with the different accounts about this event, and uncertainty about the successor, ib. Called from the plough to govern Bohemia, quells a tumult among the women, and his order on his death-bed still observed, xv. 454. Seizes the government of Bohemia, and retires into Moravia, 455. Declared king of Bohemia, ibid. Obtains the privilege of being absent from the diet, &c. and causes his son to be crowned, ib.
- Premonstratensians order, ix. 587
- Presburg, in a diet there, Bohemian deputies lodging in tents begin conferences; with the emperor's address and their reply, insisting on security for their going to the council of Basil, xi. 85. In a debate there about introducing German troops a medium struck, 186. And a saying of one of the members on this occasion, ib. (M). Diet called there, when the emperor obliges them to comply with all his demands, 287
- Presendes, sent to Tunis for intelligence, is betrayed and beheaded, viii. 239
- Preslun, Stato degli, district, and places described, xiii. 271
- Prestor John, his country where situated, with the extent of that empire, i. 665 and 714
- , of Asia, (see Vang-khan,) ii. 269. Why given to Abyssinia, vi. 169. Where properly situated, with the common name of its kings, ii. 269. & vi. 170
- Pretender, a plot discovered in England for him, xiii. 233
- , landing in Lochaber, xv. 617
- Pretiem, a monk, raised to the throne of Siam, iii. 256. His extraction and installation, 357. Invaded by the Barman king, ib. Besieged in his capital, ib. Repulses them at several onsets, 359. And forces them to raise the siege, ib.
- Pribislaus I. king of the Abodrites, and his line down to the present dukes of Mecklenburgh, xv. 512
- II. on the Abodrite throne, resigns to Henry the Lion part of his dominions, and becomes only prince of Mecklenburgh, xv. 512. How a favourite with that duke, and he dies, 513. Disputes about his succession, Henry having been put to the ban, ib.
- Pricase in Russia what, xiii. 63
- Prideaux, dean, his opinion of Mahomet's journey to heaven, i. 31. Also of his flight, or the hegira, 46
- , brigadier, accidentally killed at fort Niagara, xiv. 716
- Priest, bold and honest saying of one to the pope, viii. 275
- Primate, Polish, retires to Dantzick, xii. 377. Public entry, who is regent during an interregnum, and first cares, what, 544. Nominates the candidates, 556. Why he defers the election, ib. Prevailed on by Polignac to proclaim Conti, as the bishop of Cujavia does Augustus, 557. The unformality of both parties, ib. Three assemblies summoned by him, who justifies his own conduct, and Augustus's answer by circular letters, 562. He and some nobles still oppose Augustus, 564. Why averse to an accommodation, but becomes more pliant, and his demands, 565. Waits on the king at Warsaw, 567. Artful conduct of that temporizing prelate, 581. His circular letters, and seconded by the king, and the answer from many Palatinates, ib. As prorex he summons a great council of the senators by circular letters, and his lamentation in these, 585. Declares against Augustus, 586. By his pressing Charles XII. to invade Saxony, the primate claims merit, and he directly accuses Augustus,



- Augustus, 588. Refuses to anoint, or even assist at Stanislaus's coronation, 595. Trimming conduct, who grants the universalia for the diet of coronation, 596. On his death both Augustus and Stanislaus claim the disposal of the archbishopric, 598
- Primate writes to Augustus at Dresden to withdraw the Saxons, xii. 612
- Princes island, by whom discovered, iv. 112
- island, on the coast of Africa, vi. 124. A monstrous tree peculiar to it, 125
- Pringe, captain, his expedition to Virginia, and return without attempting a settlement, xiv. 487. Described, 606. Inferior to that of Europe, 607
- Printing, art, when found out in China, iii. 716
- that art when first known in Europe, and its different inventors, xi. 91 (K).
- Prior, grand, rencontre between him and Altoviti, in which both are killed, ix. 284
- Matthew, his negotiations for peace, and his character, ix. 500
- Prisoners of war, how to be treated according to the Alcoran, i. 179
- Prisons in China, how excellently regulated and kept, iii. 590
- Priuli, Lorenzo, eighty-second doge of Venice, with an account of him, x. 350. Death and character, 351
- , Jeronimo, eighty-third doge of Venice, succeeds his brother Lorenzo, x. 351. Death, 356
- Probar Missur, the chief deity of the Camboians, iii. 413
- Procopius entirely defeats the Germans, taking their artillery and baggage, x. 1.
- , Shaven, leader of the Hussites, his character, xi. 82. Chief of the Bohemian deputation at Presburg, his demands, and the emperor's answer looked on as evasive, *ibid.* The negotiation laid aside, and hostilities re-commence, *ib.*
- the Little, Albert of Austria retires before him, who pillages, and then enters Hungary, with his namesake, xi. 83. But the two chieftains parting on a dispute, the Hussites, under Procopius the Little, are defeated, *ibid.* After a fruitless negotiation between the council of Basil, and the Hussites, returns to Bohemia, and why he ravages the New Marche of Brandenburg, 86. The Shaven's troops totally routed before Pilsen; himself mortally wounded, and his namesake killed, and by several inhuman acts almost the whole sect exterminated, *ib.*
- Profanus, a learned Jewish astronomer at Montpellier, v. 596 (Q).
- Prok, a kind of fauce among the Avans, ii. 280
- Prolerus, the new patriarch of Alexandria, assassinated, vi. 25 sub not.
- Prom, a city in India, besieged by Para Mandara, and betrayed to him, iii. 254
- kingdom, subdued by the Barmas, iii. 263 and (Y)
- Revolts under their viceroy, 268. Poison him for submitting, and laid waste by civil wars, 269
- Prophet's light, how distinguished by the Mahometans, i. 4.
- Prophets, who, according to the Mahometans, i. 158. The authors of the Old and New Testament allowed such by them, 159
- Prostitute women tolerated in Indostan, and used to recreate the Great Mogul, iii. 22. How far allowed in China, 625
- Profuk sent by sultan Barkiarok into Bithynia, but defeated by the French, ii. 206. And frustrated in his attempt against Nice, *ib.*
- Protestant princes of the empire, their league against the emperor Charles V. ix. 236. Decoyed to Orleans under false assurances, *ib.* Their army assembles in Alsace, and the French king forms three armies to oppose them, 284
- princes and cities, several of them submit to the emperor, the pope recalling his troops, x. 90
- religion, its free exercise granted in Austria by the emperor, which he revokes, x. 108
- army marches towards Ratisbon, xi. 158. Alliance, called the Union, formed in Germany, and this opposed by another for the Roman religion, with the confederates of each, and both occasioned by the succession to Juliers and Cleves, 181
- clergy, caressed by duke Charles of Sweden, xii. 309
- princes alarmed from the affair of Thorn, by which some bad consequences were prevented, but the Lutherans had not the justice done which they might have expected, xii. 616
- , the three principal ministers of Geneva cited before the magistrates, and why expelled, xiv. 28. The persecution of the other Protestant clergy, 29
- proceedings of an assembly of the Swedish states in their favour, xii. 309
- Protestants, resolution in an assembly at Nantes, ix. 251. Character of their acting head du Barri, and resolve to seize the court at Blois, but discovered, *ib.* Their massacre resolved on, and its whole management committed to Guise, 266. Account of the cause of it, and the king's declaration, 267. General confederacy formed by them, 269. Make a stir all over France, *ib.* Who attempt to carry off the duke of Alençon, but premature, with the consternation caused thereupon, *ib.* By the queen regent of France's permission hold an assembly at Milhaud, with the result, 272. Grant only a hard truce to the queen regent, 274. Solicitation from the Protestant powers for them roughly answered by the king of France, 284. The causes of the first civil war against them, and their vindication against the French historians, 364. Causes of the second war with them, 370
- Protestant, whence that name, x. 80. Present their confession at Augsburgh, with a refutation, and decree of the emperor against them, and their protest, 81. Refuse to appear at the diet of Ratisbon, and why, 82. Their articles composed at Schweinfurt, and liberty of conscience again granted them at Nuremberg, with their order in the Turkish supplies, *ib.* Conclude an alliance with Henry of England, 83. False report of their desire of an union with Rome, 85. Accommodation at Frankfort with them, and the pope offended for granting it, dissuades the emperor from the ratification, 86. The legate wants the contested articles to be referred to the pope and a council, 86. Refuse the authority of Trent, and the former edicts for peace are renewed, 88 & (N). Safe-conduct granted them, and arrival in Trent, 92. Present their confession of faith in a congregation at the legate's lodgings, but their demands disregarded, 93 & (Q). Their offers to dispute, and other desires disregarded, 93. Universal jubilee published against them and defeated near Prague, 136. Present a memorial of complaints to the emperor, xi. 187. And they receive an evasive answer to this and other petitions, *ib.* They insist on the redress of their grievances, and their memorials answered by the Catholics, 188. Decree made there against them, 141. Solicit the kings of France and England for succour, with the result of this application, 142 (E). Proposals for an accommodation, with the demands on both sides, *ib.* Which is at length concluded, *ib.* An accommodation made with them, 144. The pope displeased with it, and the emperor Ferdinand's reply, *ib.* Re-assembling at Smalcalde, renew the association, also the persons present at this assembly, 145 (K). The kings of France and England send ambassadors thither, and the justification of the former for burning some Lutherans unsatisfactory, *ib.* The result of an assembly at Franckfort, by means of a truce, favourable to them, 150. Christian of Denmark and John of Brandenburg enter into their league, *ib.* The emperor's bitter reproaches against them, and concluding a treaty with the pope, 157. By it peace concluded between England and France, with the emperor's motives published in a manifesto, which is answered by the Protestants, *ibid.* In a diet convoked at Worms, refuse to refer themselves to the council of Trent, and why, 159. The emperor's proceedings give great suspicion to them, *ib.* They prolong their confederacy, and prepare for war, *ib.* Ruined through the dissensions of their leaders, *ib.* Duke of Wirtemberg, and several cities, withdraw from their confederacy, and submit to the emperor, 159. Openly declare against the Formula ad Interim, 163. Expedients offered to satisfy them, *ib.* Assembling at Naumberg, they refuse to submit to the council of Trent, but resolve to adhere to the Augsburgh confession, 170
- Protestants of Austria, have liberty of conscience granted by the emperor, with the motives, xi. 54. The Germans send succours to the Hugonots, and from what motives, *ibid.* Their regard to the emperor why cooled, 186
- of Bohemia and Austria, indulgences granted to them, with the emperor's motives, xi. 180. Their grievances, 183. Assembly of them at Nuremberg ineffectual about Juliers, 191. Complaints against archduke Ferdinand rejected with contempt, *ib.* Some burnt at Metz and Brussels, 138 (D).
- of Silesia, favour the Bohemians, and only wait for a pretext to declare themselves, xi. 195. Upon their demands being rejected at Vienna, those of Upper Austria, Moravia, Silesia, and Lusatia, join the Bohemians, 196. Their remonstrances on the election of a king of the Romans, with the consequences in assembling at Cologne and Hamburgh, 244. Their complaints referred to a general diet, 266. Choose the elector of Saxony as their chief, 275.



- Project for extirpating them, and the suspicions for it, xi. 405
- Protestants of High Germany, declare for Gustavus, with the progress of the Swedes, xii. 329. Warm debates in an assembly of them at Franckfort, but fruitless, 337
- Provence erected into a kingdom in favour of Boson, and what, viii. 712
- Providence, island, on the South Sea, described, v. 26
- town, where, and by whom built, xiv. 507
- , New, becomes a nest of pirates, and an address of the lords to the queen on that head disregarded, xv. 272. But another to king George I. regarded, and measures taken accordingly, ib.
- Provinces. United, (see Holland, Netherlands, Dutch, and States General).
- , origin of their commerce, and opulence of their East-India company, xi. 389. Religion, with the effects of toleration, 390, & (A). Their state having no head, and their dread of Orange, 429. Two factions under Maurice and Barneveldt divide them, with the arguments used by both, while Zealand alone stands out against the truce, 483. Conferences renewed, ib. Now enabled to act offensively, and support Henry IV. of France, against the league and Philip of Spain, 437. Their state, 438. In consequence of a treaty between England and France, conclude one with Henry of France, 446. Naval transactions, and state of commerce, with a resolution against Calais privateers, and a rich capture, 452. Discord in the Seven, 457. Religious divisions again renewed, 485. Tumults thereupon, particularly in Utrecht, where Maurice is insulted, and forced to retire, 486. The disorders quelled, without bloodshed, by the spirited conduct of the states-general, ib. Religious disputes now become political, and how the factions are renewed at Utrecht, 487. Their treaty with France, 504. Project for the re-union of the Seventeen, how frustrated, 530. Dissensions among them, 577. In their cities, about the election of magistrates how heightened, 558. Spanish regulations in the Ten, and Mansveldt promoted to the government, 440. Confusion there, 459. Articles of peace between them and Spain, for which the king of France by letter accuses them of ingratitude, 550. Yet ratifications exchanged, ib.
- Provisors, in the diet at Nuremberg, among other proceedings a statute exacted against them, their obtaining the reversion of benefices from Rome, xi. 35
- Proxy, form of one by an electoral prince to his ambassadors, xi. 377
- Prud'homme torrents where, and importance, xv. 60
- Prusa, with all Bayezid's treasures, taken by Timur Bek, and the city burnt, ii. 563
- besieged by the Othmans, v. 153. Taken by Or Khan, and made his new residence, 154, & (B). Becomes a celebrated academy under the Othmans, 156
- Prussia, how it revolts from the Teutonic knights, xi. 171
- , Charles XII's demand of Stetin refused by that king, xii. 403. Declares against Sweden, 407. To save Stetin, that king declares he would charge himself with the sequestration of Pomerania, and that affair privately negotiated with Menzikoff, 403. Progress of the Swedish arms there, 515. Treaty between him and Sweden, for ceding Stetin to the former, xiii. 248. Alliance between him and the emperor, 262
- The king offers his mediation in Poland, and his proposal, with the counter-project of Augustus, xii. 596. History, derivation of their name, and origin of the people, 647 (A). Its geographical description, ib. Produce and number of its inhabitants, 648. Ecclesiastical government, view of its commerce before the war, college of commerce and navigation with the exports, ib. Royal, court of regency, 649. Account of it, ib. Its independance on Poland and diets, ib. Dioceses, ib. Account of several towns, 650, 651
- , history under the Teutonic knights, and how the grand master Albert obtained it, xv. 488. Why erected into a kingdom, and its capital, ib. Account of it and its first inhabitants, 492. Wars of the Teutonic and Livonian knights in reducing them, ib. Also with Poland, and the division thereupon made of Prussia, 493. The grand master Albert receives the country as a personal fief, with the war of the natives thereupon, and what, ib. Ravaged by the plague and the loss, with the young prince's interceding for the people, and ruining the king's ministers, 505. King seizes Silesia, 628. Makes himself master of Prague, and most part of Bohemia, with his losing them, 632. Beats the Austrians twice in Silesia, takes all Saxony, and peace with the empress queen, with the terms, 633. Takes Saxony again, making its army prisoners, ib. Beats the Austrians twice, but is beaten in turn by Brown with loss, and retreat into Saxony, ib. Gains the battles of Rosbach and Lissa, with the recovery of Silesia, ib. Defeated by the Russians, and surprized by Daun at Hochkirch, ib.
- Prussia, its monarch, on the czar and king of Poland battering Stetin in breach, declares the sequestration of Pomerania, and they desist, xi. 359. His unjust sequestrating of Holstein by a treaty with Denmark, ib.
- , revenue and manner of recruiting the army, xiii. 649.
- Prussians, account of them, x. 644
- ancient, their customs, xii. 653 (A). Their religion, 654
- Pruth, peace of, by whose means concluded, xii. 393. Sultan's approbation of the treaty made, but through Charles and his party twice broke, and as often renewed in a few months, xiii. 223
- Pu-chu-que's treason and insults to the Kin emperor, ii. 343. Surprizes and destroys a Mungl camp, ib. Slain for his insolence, 344
- Pud, (pood) a Russian weight, what, xiii. 36 (M).
- Pueblo Quemado, account of, xiv. 281
- Puelles, Pedro de, his detachment and others for Vela join Pizarro, xiv. 335
- Puerto Rico, a colony settled there, xiv. 152. Signal service of dogs here, ib. (See Porto Rico).
- Bello, (See Porto Bello) its site, discovery, and why so called, xiv. 447. Description of the town, ib. Whether the air here checks generation, ib. Great rains here with thunder and lightning, ib. Often taken by the English, with an account of its harbour and forts, ib. Fair there on the arrival of the galleons how conducted, ib.
- Puglia, its conquest by the emperor, and the investiture of it given by him and the pope jointly to Rainulphus, x. 391
- Puglians, being bribed by the Greeks, massacre the Normans, x. 400
- Pu-hu-chu, his advice against the rapacious Sang-ko, ii. 390. Advice to Hu-pilay at the appearance of a comet, 393
- Pulad pursues and slays Turkhan Erlat, ii. 510
- , fortrefs taken by Timur Bek, and the cruel end of its garrison, ii. 538
- Pulo Panjang, an island on the Camboian coasts, iii. 406
- Kondore, island described, iii. 407, 431. English factory upon it, 408, 431. Its extent, 407. Produce, village, and port, 438. Inhabitants, ib.
- , factory how destroyed, iv. 351. The tragical account of it by Mr. Cunningham, 352. The council of Bencoolen's account of it, 353. The English permitted to resettle there, 356
- Sefir do Terra, an island in the kingdom of Champa and do Mar, iii. 419
- Pulpit, Mahomet's described, and how used by his successors, i. 77. Attempted in vain to be removed by some caliphs, 291
- Pultowa, its site on the Workla, to which Charles XII. of Sweden lays siege, xiii. 215
- , famous for its siege and defeat of Charles there by the czar Peter, xii. 607. xiii. 13. Good and bad consequences of that battle, 217. General revolution in Poland, Sweden, and Silesia, on advice of that battle, 218. Affairs of the North after that battle, xi. 346
- Puna, an island on the South-sea, plundered and destroyed by admiral Candish, v. 69
- isle, where situated and its description, xiv. 285 (D). Animosity between its inhabitants and those of Tumbes, ib. Projects of the Punese against the Spaniards frustrated, ibid.
- Pundebitz, a Jewish academy, shut up, v. 514. Restored by Hormisdas, ib. Restored also under Almanzor, 525. Ruined by the arrogance of the Jewish chief, 530. When finally abolished, 532
- Punitz battle between the Swedes and Saxons, xii. 594.
- Puntal, fort and town of Havannah battered; they capitulate, xv. 341. Articles thereof, ib.
- Pupuwah, a wicked minister of Towhantemur, ii. 428. Cruelties and injustice, 430. Delivered up to Polotemur, 431
- Puran, the Brahman book, its design and contents, iii. 183
- Purchas, some accounts of the fictions in his voyages, xiv. 480. Adopts those of Kniver, ib.
- Purifications, various enjoined by Mahomet, i. 168
- Putra-kujin married to Temujin, and taken prisoner by the Merkits,



- Merkits, ii. 268. Restored and brought to bed on her way homeward, *ib.* With her character, *ib.*
- Purry, Mr. his settlement of Swifs in Carolina, xv. 94.
- Grant of lands to his settlement, *ib.* Abuse in his settlement redressed by proclamation, *ib.*
- Purrysburg, in Carolina, its settlement, xv. 94
- Pusan sent against Apelkassum by the sultan of Persia, ii. 206
- Putafili, empress of Tutemur, poisons the dowager Papusha, ii. 413. Prefers her son Ilinshipin to the throne, *ib.* Her banishment and death, 418
- Putu-y-ula-hotun, a city of Kirin-ula, iii. 461
- Putje, a copper coin of Japan, described, iv. 54
- Putu makes a league with Temujin against Vang-khan, ii. 274
- Pulaurens, monsieur's favourite, made a duke and peer, but imprisoned and poisoned, ix. 390
- Pwang-keng, emperor of China, his excellent reign, iii. 686
- Pyen-king betrayed, and tyranny exercised by Tfu-li, ii. 342. Mortality and famine, and the inhabitants saved from the sword, *ib.*
- Pyen-ku, his brave defence and death, ii. 371
- Pyracies in America, a commission and proclamation for suppressing them, xv. 285
- Pirates, their origin and settlement at Rakkan, iii. 112. Their ravages and bold villanies, *ib.* Chuse a frier for their king, *ib.* Live in the Great Mogul's service, 113. Sacrificed on a rock in Malabar, 163. Insolence to the king of Cochin, 165. Driven from the seas by Tepulo, and infest the coasts of Istria and Dalmatia, x. 351, 352
- Spanish, taken and hanged at Jamaica, xv. 301
- Pyratical war between the king of Denmark and the Hans towns, xi. 131. The latter sue for peace, and a treaty concluded, upon which John dying Christian III. succeeds, *ibid.*
- Pyrenness, the probable cause and time of their being set on fire, iii. 674.
- peace, viii. 318. Their several inhabitants, 550. Treaty where concluded, and its articles, ix. 549. With the affair of Conde also accommodated, *ib.* By what means all this was accommodated, *ib.* Peace between France and Spain, without the pope's knowledge, x. 152. In the isle of Faisans, with some of its articles, xi. 278
- Q.
- Quadras, captain, his project of going by land through Congo into Abyssinia, viii. 468. Baffled through envious Portuguese in Congo, *ib.*
- Quadrupeds, winged, in Africa, v. 688
- Quahunahunac, city and valley where, xiv. 361
- Qualpopoca, the Mexican general, defeated by the governor of Vera Cruz, but the latter dies of his wounds, xiv. 219. Brought prisoner to the emperor, 222. He and other officers condemned by Cortez to be burnt, *ib.*
- Quambacundona, Taycho's nephew, his disgrace and death, iv. 65
- Quanana, a province of Biledulgerid, vii. 118
- Quan-buku, a Japanese dignity, iv. 61
- Quan-ping-fu, a first rate city of Pe-cheli, iii. 527
- Quang-fi, a province of China described, with its manufactures and chief cities, iii. 552. One of the last which was subdued by the Tartars, 735
- Quang-sin, a chief city in Kyan-fi, iii. 531
- Quang-tong, or Canton, a rich province in China described, iii. 548. Vast number of families, with their manufactures and hatching of eggs, 549. Variety of fruits, *ib.* (M). Government and great traffic, *ib.*
- , capital of the province described, 549 (N). Populousness and canals, with the state of the viceroy, 550 (O). Taken and plundered by the Tartars, 735
- Quang-tsung, his short reign in China, iii. 722
- Quang-vu-ti, his mean education and noble reign, iii. 703. Subdues the kingdom of Chau-tsuen, 753
- Quang-wang, his short reign in China, iii. 693
- Quaquans, a people of the Ivory Coast, their timidity, vii. 10. Their arts, &c. *ib.* Vast quantity of ivory and gold, *ib.*
- Quartienne, in Poland, what and by whom settled, xii. 498
- Qua-wa, king, his affront to Kublay, ii. 391. Slain by the king of Ko-lang, 392. Kingdom where sited, and threatened with an invasion, ii. 391
- Quebec. (See Phipps).
- expedition, the considerable loss therein to New England. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- land, and the ravages committed by the enemy, xiv. 524. Expedition of the English against it why laid aside, 531. Capital of Canada described, 552. Its buildings and fortifications *ib.* Churches, fine episcopal palace, cathedral, and fort, *ib.* Fine church and house of the Recollects, *ib.* Ursuline nunnery, and Montcalm's tomb, 553. Sumptuous college and hospital, with the intendant's palace, *ib.* The hospital general the bishop's residence, *ib.* Strength of the place and number of its inhabitants, *ib.* Civil officers, &c. assemblies, genius, disposition, and manner of living, 554. Difference between them and the English planters, *ib.*
- Quebec colony taken out of the Hugonots hands, and new-modelled by Richelieu, with the regulations for it, xiv. 574. The concessions made by the king to the partners of the colony, and their several articles, *ib.* Further encouragement by another ordonnance, 575. On duke de Ventadour's resigning his viceroyalty, the colony is called New France, *ib.* Improvements made there, 578. Its distress what, 590. A seminary established there, 597. Made a bishopric, 608. Re-inforcements from France arrive there, 643. Bishop taken by the English, and the French lose a million of livres, 682. Expedition of the English against it unfortunate, 691. New-fortified, 692. Expedition of the English under Wolfe against it, 717. Battle and the disposition of both sides, 720. Its surrender and articles of capitulation, 722. Gained by the English, *ib.* Relieved by commodore Swanton, 724. Success of two of his ships against the enemy, *ib.* The siege by Levi raised, 725
- Quechoas march for the defence of Cuzco, xiv. 395
- Quedah, a poor kingdom, iii. 321. King, his old way of treating merchants, *ib.*
- Quedlemburgh, several decrees made in the council there, ix. 572
- Que-gang-yong revolts against Oktay, ii. 341
- Queli makes a league with Temujin against Van-khan, ii. 274
- Querasque peace settles the state of Italy, viii. 296
- Querimba subdued by the Portuguese, iv. 136
- Quer-que-len, a province of Biledulgerid, described, vii. 119
- Quesne, Mr de, his character, and destroying the combined fleets of Spain and Holland, ix. 462. Sea-fight off the mole of Palermo, with the loss of the confederates, xi. 626
- , fort du, account of it, xiv. 708. Taken by brigadier Forbes, 714
- , (Pittsburg) taken from the French by general Forbes, xv. 623
- Quesnel, an account of this author, x. 173 (F). His book on the New Testament condemned by the pope in the bull Unigenitus, xv. 607
- Quesnoi, Turenne's retreat from it, the most masterly action of all his life, ix. 443. Surrenders, xi. 355
- Quey, an extraordinary flower in China, described, iii. 553
- Quey-chew taken by the Mungls, ii. 348. Retaken by Men-kong, *ib.*
- , a mountainous province in China, iii. 554. Gold mines, canals, and chief cities, *ib.*
- Quey-lin-fu taken by the Mungls, ii. 359
- , the capital of Quang-fi described, iii. 553
- Queytor river, where, and how otherwise called, iii. 255 (S).
- Quey-yang-fu, the metropolis of Queychew described, with the mountains and wild people which surround it, iii. 555 (Y).
- Quey-yew, or Kayuk, the son of Oktay, his expedition to the Caspian sea, ii. 346. Sent back into Tartary, 348. Chosen Khan by his mother's interest, and succeeds in the west, 352. Death and issue, 353. Character and conquests, *ib.* (K).
- Queyzi assists Kothboddin against Issuf, and conspires against him, but discovered, he flies, ii. 607
- Quezalcoal, among the Mexicans, who, xiv. 212
- Quiabissan, town and harbour in Mexico, by whom discovered, xiv. 187. Measures of Cortez for removing to it, 190. Arrival there, with a visit from the cazique, *ib.*
- Quiaquil taken by the Dutch, and their barbarity to their prisoners, v. 90
- Quibem kingdom made tributary to the king of Siam, iii. 354
- Quietists suppressed in their founder, with some accounts of their tenets, x. 163
- Quiforo, a kingdom of inland Guinea, described, vi. 676
- Quiavaca chosen emperor of Mexico by the people, xiv. 243
- 7 O Quilmanci



Quilmanci river described, vi. 339. Mouth and forts, ib.  
 Quiloa, or Xiloa, island and kingdom where sitcd, vi. 348  
 (C). The natives described, and its fertile soil, 349. Be-  
 comes tributary to Portugal, 353. Its fortrefs why demo-  
 lished, and removed to Zocotora, 355  
 ——— kings stript of their dominions, traffic, &c. by the  
 Portuguese, vi. 348 (D). Capital, bay, &c. and their traffic,  
 349. Their founder and successors, ib. Abandoned by  
 the king, 352. Reduced by the Portuguese admiral, ib.  
 Oppressed by their tyranny, 353 (G). Breaks out into a  
 fresh revolt, 354. Freed from the Portuguese tyranny,  
 355  
 Quiloans abandoned by their dastardly king, vi. 352. Car-  
 ried into slavery by Almeyd, 353. Raise a new revolt,  
 354  
 Quilotta mines very rich, xiv. 320  
 Quintero, port, xiv. 473  
 Quintin, St. battle, viii. 253. ix. 244. Town taken by  
 assault, ib.  
 Quiribiri, isle, great quantities of gold in it, xiv. 150  
 Quirogoa, Joseph de, sends in search of Carolina island, iv.  
 268  
 Quiros, Fernandez de, voyage into the Pacific ocean, v. 3.  
 Memorial to the king of Spain, ib. Description of the  
 southern continent, ib. Why the continent is neglected by  
 the Spaniards, 40  
 Quiterwan, in Siam, besieged by the Chiamays, iii. 354.  
 Relieved by the Siamese, ib.  
 Quitlavaca, why called Venezuela, and its description, xiv.  
 210  
 Quito, its king informed of Pizarro's progress, and how pre-  
 vented from opposing him, xiv. 284. Expedition by Bela-  
 liazar thither, 301. Audience in Peru described, 452  
 ——— province, its site, xiv. 453. Climate, and provision made  
 here by nature against the sun's heat, ib. Gradation of  
 temperature, ib. Fine country round the capital, and this  
 city described, ib. Its squares, ib. Its governments, ib.  
 Courts there, cathedral, and grand procession of the host,  
 454. Dancing by the Indians, and reflection on this cere-  
 mony, ib. Number of inhabitants, and their classes, 455.  
 Its consequence to Spain what, 456  
 Quixillos, (Giagan priests) are monsters of impiety, &c. vi.  
 565  
 Quizquiz, a Peruvian general, his harangue against the Spa-  
 niards to an army of Mitimies, xiv. 305. Effect on them  
 and on the Guamaraconas, ib. Defeated by Pizarro at  
 Apurima, but not discouraged, retires in good order, 306  
 Quoja, kingdom, on the coast of Guinea, vii. 28. Its civil  
 government, 34. Dandaghs, their power, &c. 35. Re-  
 ception of ambassadors, ib. Their wars and conquest of  
 the Folgians, 36  
 Quo-mio, the ninety-seventh emperor of Japan, iv. 59

R.

**R**AB, or Rau, a learned rabbi, assists the compiler of the  
 Talmud, v. 498  
 Rabat in Morocco described, vii. 157. Harbour, fortifica-  
 tions, and government, &c. 158  
 Rabiya, one of Mahomed's first converts, dies, i. 291  
 Rabi, Almanfur's freed man artfully conceals his death, i.  
 407. Exact's the oath to be taken to his son, ib.  
 Rabutin, count, the Imperial minister, his vigilance to thwart  
 any negociation with Sir Charles Wager, the English ad-  
 miral, xiii. 263  
 Raaban taken by the Moslems, i. 220. And by the Greeks,  
 554  
 Raak, or Arak, a distilled liquor used in Indostan, iii. 21  
 Rabbits of Canada described, xiv. 558  
 Rachol, where situated, iii. 135 (A). Taken by Khrifna  
 Rajah, ib.  
 Rada, assassin of marquis Pizarro, his promotion and inso-  
 lence thereupon, xiv. 327. Death, &c. occasions dissen-  
 sions, 329  
 Radars, (Persian guards) whence so called, ii. 647 (N)  
 Radelcar, (Radelgarius) succeeds his father Radelchis in Be-  
 nevento, x. 382. Dies, 383  
 Radelchis, treasurer to Sicardo V. succeeds him in Benevento,  
 x. 381. He is opposed by Siconolphus II. who, assisted by  
 the Neapolitans, defeats Radelchis, but repulsed from Be-  
 nevento, and the Saracens invited over are repulsed by Si-  
 conolphus, ib. And with Radelchis troops they lay Capua  
 in ashes, 382  
 ———, son of Adelgise, chosen by the Beneventans in room

of Gaideris, x. 386. How restored to Benevento, 382.  
 His character, and the seizure of his person by Atenulphus,  
 count of Capua, with the occasion, ib.  
 Radi, Billah al, raised to the caliphate, i. 528. Proclaimed  
 at Baghdat, and his ill success in Tabrestan, 530. Against  
 the Greeks, ib. Distractions of his caliphate, 531. Creates  
 a new minister over his vizir, but stript of his power and  
 wealth by him, 532. Success against Al Earidi, 533. Sha-  
 rit's poem on Al Fay's deposition, 593. Al Sharit's death  
 and character, 619  
 ———, (al Redah) his famous tomb visited, i. 659  
 Radulph, count of Vermandois, excommunicated, and France  
 interdicted, ix. 591  
 Radzivil family, their origin, xii. 638 (A)  
 Rafe' Ebn al Leith revolts at Samarkand, i. 433. Success  
 in Khorasan, and joins Al Mamun in his revolt, 434  
 Rasiyah's three months reign in Great Mogul, iii. 121  
 ——— Dowlet, his brother's still shorter reign, iii. 121  
 Ragotski, vaivode of Transylvania, takes Cassovia, with his  
 manifesto and the emperor's answer, xi. 262. He retires  
 before the Imperial general Goëutz, ib. Yet rejects the  
 emperor's terms of peace, ib. After some successes attacks  
 the Turks, but is mortally wounded, and his son surren-  
 ders the disputed countries to the emperor, 279. Submits  
 to the emperor and is pardoned, 286. Has the chief com-  
 mand of the malecontents, with a new association signed,  
 341. Retires to England, 352. Upon peace with the  
 emperor separates from Tortenion, xii. 352. Army cut off,  
 who is himself defeated by the Turks, and perishes, 525  
 (C)  
 Raguild, queen of Sweden, almost deified, xii. 230  
 Ragusa taken by the Moslems, i. 469  
 Ragwald, Knaphœfde, on the death of Ingo IV. is raised to  
 the crown of Sweden, with his gigantic stature and ferocity,  
 xii. 230. He is slain by a conspiracy, ib.  
 Rahaba taken by Abu Thaher, i. 521  
 Raja, Soliman's vizir, receives the emperor's last will, and  
 declares his cousin Omar Ebn Abd'alaziz, i. 354  
 ——— Ebn Ayub suppresses the rebel Kaifians at Damascus, i.  
 465. Singa, king of Gandy, his alliance with the Dutch,  
 iv. 437. Gains his brother Uva's dominions, ib. (See  
 under Ceylon)  
 ——— meaning of that dignity, i. 574 (I)  
 Rajahpur, a sea-port of Vizapour, iii. 140  
 Rajahputs, (Rashputs) soldiers of the Rajahs, iii. 26. Com-  
 manded only by them, 51  
 ——— Api, (black prince) of Siam, his valour and success  
 against the Barmus, iii. 267. Kills the Barma prince in  
 single combat, ib. (See 359)  
 ——— defeats the Pequers, and becomes the twentieth king of  
 Siam, iii. 360. Ill success against Pranjinoko, ib. With  
 his many conquests, death, and successor, ib.  
 Rajahs of Indostan, their dignity, office, &c. iii. 25. Their  
 thirty-four tribes, with their decline, ib. Present state, 26.  
 Descent, ib. Have the command of the emperor's forces,  
 49. Become insolent in the Mogul's court, and an instance  
 of it, 86  
 Rain in Lima, want of it accounted for, xiv. 456  
 Raind Fleish, a peasant, causes a massacre among the Jews, v.  
 570  
 Rainerio of Perugia, his treachery to the Lucquese, and Lucca  
 besieged, xiii. 383  
 Rainulphus, prince of Puglia, defeats Roger of Sicily, the  
 latter retiring to Salerno, x. 412  
 Rakan, its king, harbours Portuguese robbers and pyrates, iii.  
 112  
 Rakiash, Mahomet's third daughter, her character, i. 53. Her  
 marriage and divorce, with her death, 113  
 Raleigh, Sir Walter, takes the town of St. Thomas, and how  
 this proved fatal to him at last, xiv. 452. Obtains a pa-  
 tent for colonizing in North America, and its chief object  
 what, 484. Arrival of two ships sent by him under Amida  
 and Barlow, at Roanoke isle near Albemarle river, and suc-  
 cess, ib. Second expedition under Grenville, 485. Cor-  
 poration adventurers so called, arrive under Mr. White at  
 Roanoke after much difficulty, 486. Disaster of Mr. How,  
 and they get intelligence of what befel Grenville's little  
 colony, ib. Surprise the Scrotons in their chief town,  
 ib. Forced after some time to evacuate the island and re-  
 tire to Croaton, ib. The settlement how entirely ruined,  
 ibid.  
 Ralph Sadler. (See Sadler)  
 Ram, or Ras, gives the government of part of the peninsula of  
 India to three Mahometan slaves, who revolt and drive him  
 out, iii. 134. Their several lots, ib.



- Rama, or Ramla, a considerable fortress of the caliphs, i. 227. Surrendered to Saadodawla, and plundered, 594  
 — Rajeh, intligated by a Portuguese to besiege Meliapur, iii. 135. Orders him to be put to death, with his benignity to the town, but defeated and slain by the three Decan Kings, 136  
 Ramadan fast, appointed by Mahomet, and how observed, i. 48 (H). Strictly kept by the Moslems, 170  
 Ramanowya, a sect of Bramans in India, iii. 217  
 Ramezay's miscarriage against New York, xiv. 687  
 Ramée, Francis de la, pretending to be the son of Charles IX. of France, is hanged, ix. 311  
 Ramillies battle, to what owing, ix. 488. Defeat of the French there, ib. Consequences to the allies, 489  
 Ramirez chosen king of Navarre, with his character, viii. 566. Difficulties from two competitors on his accession, ib. How extricated, and his successes, with his death, 567  
 Ramiro, don, succeeds Alonso II. in Spain, but is invaded by the Normans, vii. 600. Signal victory over the Moors, ib. Settles the government and dies, 601  
 — (see Arragon) espouses Gilberga, daughter of count Vigorra, viii. 110. Succeeds his brother Goncales, who was assassinated, ib. Makes an irruption with the Moors into the territories of his brother don Garcia of Navarre, 111. But his forces cut to pieces, and Ramiro narrowly escapes, to whom he grants a peace, 112. He falls upon the Moors, ib. The army of Arragon entirely defeated, and the king slain by the prince of Castile, ib. His issue, ib.  
 — II. succeeds Pedro his brother in Arragon, viii. 118. Espouses Ines or Agnes of Aquitaine, ibid. King of Spain, 611. His crown challenged by two Alonsos, and both suppressed by his conduct, ib. (I). Two successful excursions on the Moors, 612. Subdues Eben Ahaya, prince of Arragon, ib. (K). Gains two glorious victories over the Moors, 613. Imprisons two potent lords in Gordon and Luna castles, ib. His motives both in peace and war, 614. Sets the lords at liberty, and gives his daughter to one of them; he also invades and defeats the Moors, ib. Dies, ib. The distaste between the nations of Arragon and Navarre almost produces a rupture, viii. 119. Queen of Arragon delivered of Petronilla, ib. Causes some of his seditious nobles to be put to death, ib. Two circumstances of this affair related, ib. Loses the affections of his people so as to resign to Raymond, count of Barcelona, and retires to a convent, ib. Character, ib.  
 — III. an infant, succeeds his father, vii. 618 (M). Becomes odious to his subjects, ib. Success against the Moors, and death, ib.  
 Ramla rebuilt and beautified by Soliman, i. 353  
 —, in Palestine, submits to Al Moezz, i. 564  
 — Al, depopulated by an earthquake and famine, i. 660  
 Rammana Koyel island described, iii. 175. Its famous ridge of rocks called Adam's-bridge, ib.  
 Ramnagur taken and plundered by Sevaji, iii. 146. The inhabitants are savages called Kuleys, ib.  
 Rampa, a sort of Peruvian litter, xiv. 295  
 Ramu, a city in Arracan, iii. 228  
 Rana, Rajah, invaded by Jehan Ghir, iii. 68. Abandons his country, ib. Submits to the conqueror, 69. Kind reception of Mohabet, and reconciles him to Jehan Ghir, 81  
 — widow of Jesson Seyn, her bold answer to Aurengzeb, iii. 115. Harassed by his generals, 116  
 Randan, duke, his humanity in Hanover, xv. 621  
 Rantipur castle taken by Rustan Khan, iii. 59 (I)  
 Rantzau, the army under him defeated, with the taking of that general, &c. by count Merci, xi. 258  
 — defeats the Lubeckers in Fionia, xii. 152. Progress in Sweden and defeating the Swedes twice, 162. The Danes under him defeated in Schonen, 392. Charles XIIth's exclamation on the news of this victory, 393. Defeats Norby and several thousand peasants on their march to raise the blockade of Landskroon, 146. Death, 163  
 Ranuccio I. succeeds his father Alexander, duke of Parma, with his marriage and character, xiii. 631. Builds a noble theatre, with an account of his issue and death, ib.  
 — II. succeeds his father Edward I. duke of Parma, with the miserable situation of his revenues, &c. and character, xiii. 639. Obtains with difficulty a respite of his debt from the pope, ib. Respited further for eight years, but never paid, and Castro continues annexed to the apostolical chamber, with that duke's character and conduct, ib. Several incidents of his life, with his generosity to his purveyor general, for embezzlements, and speech to his servants, ib. Policy in establishing the fair of Placentia, and flourishing state of his dominions, 642. With all his magnificence he had his saving hours, ib. Troubled with an apostume from eating Parmesan cheese, with Lewis XIVth's answer to his ambassador on the duke's miraculous recovery, ib. Death, marriages, and issue, with an account of his two brothers, 643  
 Rapallo, its recovery by the duke of Orleans, through the courage of the Genoese, x. 579. On Lewis Sforza's quitting the French side, is retaken, with other advantages gained by the Genoese, ib.  
 Raptan Tse-vang, or Zigan Arapten II. khan of the Eluths, ii. 443 & (C). Desertion from his uncle Kaldian whence, with his insalment, and character, ib. Conquells in Tibet, and stripped of Buccaria by the Chinese, ib. Applies in vain to the czar, with the recovery of Turfan and Khamil, 444  
 Rashid, Al, succeeds his father in the caliphate of Baghdad, i. 702. Forced to retire, 703. Deposed by Massud, and murdered at Ispahan, 704, and ii. 187  
 Rashid (Rashio'ddin) made grand vazier in Irak, ii. 487. Put to death by Ali Shah's treachery, 488. Dedicates his learned works to Aljaytu Khan, 487  
 Rashik's revolt in Antioch, but defeated by Curaba, v. 560  
 Rasle, father, his intrigues with the Abenaguais against the English, xiv. 694. Attempt to seize him fails, and the effect of this on the savages, but is shot dead by the English, with their other ravages, ib.  
 Rasoloin, taken by the Greeks, i. 544  
 Rasputs side with Mohabet Khan, ii. 77. Abandon Jehan Shah, 78. Attacked by Aurengzeb, 115. Harrafs him in their mountains, with their temples and idols destroyed, 116  
 Rastad, prince Eugene permitted to open a negociation there with Villars, where they sign a treaty, ix. 500  
 Rat, Geoffry le, the twelfth grand master of Malta, and contest with the Templars, and his death, vii. 385. Made king of Cyprus, and he obtains immunities from the pope, ib. Opposed by the Templars, and his death, 386  
 — death, grand funeral, and character, xiv. 675  
 Rath, two learned Jews of that surname, v. 549 (B)  
 Ratisbon, proceedings of the diet there, xi. 177. A diet summoned there, and for what end, with an harangue by the emperor's secretary Ducker, 187. Diet convoked there, with the emperor, and those in his train, 220 (E). Proceedings in that assembly, 221. Opposition to the emperor in this diet, ib. Taken by the king of Hungary, with the brave defence, and honourable capitulation of the Swedish commandant, Larz Kagge, 237. Deliberations in the diet there, 252. Their proceedings, 274. Menaced by the Bavarians, with the debates in the diet, 329. Remonstrance from the allies to the diet, and their resolution, 339. Objections why raised by the circle of Burgundy, ib. Session of the states there, by whom regulated, 276. Remonstrances of several deputies to the diet there, and their resolution, 338. Which is baffled by Villars, with debates in the diet, ib.  
 —, account of that city, its government and religion, xv. 440  
 Ratispor, the capital of the province of Malva, and the castle where traitors are executed, iii. 17  
 Rats, story of them in Poland, xii. 446 & (A)  
 Rattan island settled, xv. 326  
 Rattle-snake of New England described, xiv. 500  
 — of Canada described, xiv. 561. A plant an antidote for its bite, described, ib.  
 Rau, a title equivalent to emperor, iii. 135  
 Raven, a sea one in Congo, described, vi. 436  
 Ravenna, archbishop, obliged to own his error in asserting his independency on the pope, ix. 524. Proceeding in the council there, and the Italian nobles again favour Berengarius, 530. Ceded to the holy see by Rodolphus, 649  
 Ravensburgh, account of it, and government, xv. 445  
 Ravet, a striking insect in Guadaloupe, xv. 231  
 Ravillac slabs Henry IV. of France, ix. 241. Put to a severe death, 343. Full account of him, and this execrable act, ib. (A). Bold answer to the parliament, and the manner of his execution at the Greve, 344, sub not. His quarters dragged through the streets, and the punishment of his parents and relations, ib. sub not. Declares to the last he had no accomplices, ib. His dying words not credited, ibid. (B). The reflections of a writer of Henry's life; also an account of another writer, ib. A curious circumstance in Winwood's Memoirs, and doctor Birch, sub fin. not.  
 Raul seizes on Burgundy Transjurane, and what, ix. 531  
 Rawak revolts against the caliph in Egypt, but defeated, vi. 45



- Rawandians, an impious sect whence, and they revolt against Al Mansur, i. 390. Strange procession round his palace, assault upon it, but defeated, ib. Six thousand of them butchered, ib. Ravage the Moslem empire, 392. Tumults in Syria, ib.
- Rawduljin's brave defence of Batnir, ii. 544.
- Rawifaldi's stately monument at Sithepolalpur, iii. 26
- Ray, Ragesh, or Ragau, where sited, taken by the Mungls, and the inhabitants put to the sword, ii. 309. Taken by Shah Rukh, 508. Also taken by Mardawij, i. 521. Subdued by sultan Mahmud, its noble library, and treasury carried off by him, ii. 632. Taken also by the Gazan Turks, 633. And by Togrol Beck, 649
- Raya ruined by the discords of the Shiites and Sonnites, its territory also ravaged by the Tartars, i. 250
- Raymond, prince of Antioch, slain in Syria by Nuroddin, i. 710
- I. of Barcelona, assumes the title of prince of Arragon, viii. 120. A rupture between him and the king of Navarre, ib. Satisfies the knights Templars, with regard to the late Alonso's will, ib. A truce concluded with Navarre, and Ramiro II. dies, whose daughter, a child, becomes queen, ib. Raymond reduces Tortosa, and gains other advantages over the Moors, ib. Marries Petronilla, pursuant to the late king's will, ib. Takes several places from the Moors, and concludes a solid peace with the king of Navarre, 121. Enters into a close alliance with Sancho of Castile, ib. Has an interview with Henry II. of England, at the castle of Blaye, and concludes an alliance, ib. Dies in his way to Turin, ib. The queen Petronilla takes the tutelage of her eldest son, and government of Arragon, 122. An impostor pretends to be Don Alonso, who died after the battle of Fraga, ib. Publicly put to death, ib. The queen resigns in favour of her eldest son Don Alonso, ib.
- II. succeeds his father Berelo, count of Barcelona, viii. 126. Holds the first assembly of the States, and gains a signal victory over the Moors, ib. He dies, and leaves his territories to Berenger, ib.
- III. succeeds his father Berenger, count of Barcelona, is a wife and pacific prince, viii. 127
- IV. succeeds his father of the same name, count of Barcelona, viii. 128
- V. count of Barcelona, succeeds his father Raymond IV. viii. 128. Who marrying the daughter of Ramiro the monk, unites Catalonia with Arragon, ib.
- , count of Tholouse, excommunicated, ix. 617. Submission to the Roman church, and other Albigenes also accepted, with the conditions, 622
- Razi Kiya, prince of Dilem, advanced by Timur Bek, ii. 569
- , famous Arab physician, his death and character, i. 526
- Razin Stenko, chief of the Cossacks, ravages Persia, and outwits Soleyman's general, ii. 637. Sinks his fleet, one ship after another, ib. Rebellion against the czar, and the occasion, xiii. 162. His depredations upon and near the Wolga, with his barbarity in a small town of Persia, 163. He submits to the governor of Astracan, with an account of his person, and a remarkable instance of his cruel disposition towards a Persian princess, whom he throws into the Wolga, ib. Returns home soon after with his associates, and his insolence on a message from the governor of Astracan, ib. Whose fleet he becomes master of by treachery, 164. His army greatly increased by that and other means, he sends an impudent embassy to the court of Persia, with the sophist's ordering all the ambassadors heads to be chopped off, except one, who, upon his return, is cut to pieces by Stenko's orders, ib. He seduces many of the czar's troops, and takes Camiskinska by treachery, he also becomes master of Czaritza, 165. The czar's preparations for quelling this rebel, who likewise takes Czarnojahr and Astracan, with his cruelty to the governor Proforofski, and his family, ib. His plundering the treasury, and massacring the merchants, ib. He takes and pillages Tzamatoff, and Simbierke, in which last place his further progress is stopped, and himself dangerously wounded, with the power, and great increase of the rebels, who are defeated by Dolgorucki, 166. His rebellion entirely quelled, after the destruction of about an hundred thousand killed or hanged, i. Himself is betrayed by his godfather Jacoloff, carried to Moscow, and executed, 167 & (L). His brother Trolka brought to the scaffold, but pardoned, ib.
- Reccintha, king of the Visigoths, disgusts his subjects, vii. 560. This followed by a rebellion and invasion, 561. He triumphs over both, ib. & (T & V.) His happy reign, 562. And glorious end, 563
- Rechabites propagate their tenets in Abyssinia, vi. 221. How probably brought thither, ib.
- , Benjamin's account of them confuted, v. 539
- Recreation island discovered and described, v. 35. Also the natives, &c. ib.
- Reccared, king of the second branch of the Visigoths, and war with the Franks, vii. 547. Conversion from Arianism to what owing, ib. & (A). Conspired against by the Arians, 548 & (C). A plot against him defeated, 549. Orders all the Arian writings to be burnt, ib. & (F). Reasons for his marrying the princess Clodocinde, 550. Excellent government, and victory against the Gaicons, with his death, ib.
- II. his short reign, vii. 554
- Red-staff, post where, xv. 59. Reason of the name, and its large timber, ib.
- Red-river, posts on it, xv. 59
- Redin de Navar, Martin, LVith grand master of Malta, confirmed by the pope's brief, and his precautions against the Turks, vii. 511. Goes to Rome, and dies there, 512
- Redwan, the son of Taioddawlat, takes possession of Aleppo, i. 680, & ii. 176
- , a famous physician, his works, death, and character, i. 661. Undermined by his brother, 680. Besieges him in Damascus, but repulsed by the citizens, 681. His death, 691
- , vazir of Egypt, supplants the noble Bohran in that post, and enmity to him, i. 704. Also against the Christians, and surnamed Malek by the caliph, 705. Excludes Christians from high offices, ib. Driven out of Egypt, is defeated and deposed, 706. His escape, and new revolt, but is slain by his blacks, 709
- , Barham's rival, forces himself into the Wazirat, vi. 50. Horrid cruelty to the Christians of Meffr, ibid. Deposed, and confined to the palace, ib. Breaks loose, and returns to Meffr, but murdered by his blacks, 51
- Refaa's character of caliph Omar to Heraclius, i. 217
- Rafi Ebn Omeirah's bravery against the Greeks, i. 141. Takes Heraclius's daughter prisoner, 185. Restores her to him without ransom, ib.
- , Ebn Abdallah, appointed to take possession of Balbec, i. 196
- Reformation in Germany to what owing, x. 68. Also one by the pope's order, and its heads, 24 & (K). Account of its rise, &c. in Germany, xi. 116. By Luther, 132. & seq. Progress in the North, and other parts, 138. Owes a good part of its success to the dissension of its enemies, 140. Progress, xiii. 528. Rise at Geneva, xiv. 18. Progress, 20. With disputes about religion, in which the magistrates interpose, 22. Service which the persecution in France was of to it, 25
- Reformed (see Protestants) the first peace made with them, ix. 257. Disturbances among them, with the great men at their head, 348. No marks of gratitude, or justice shewn them, 458. With the partiality of the French writers, ibid.
- religion, consequences of establishing it in Denmark, xii. 154
- doctrine, by whom introduced into Sweden, xii. 275
- get possession of the church of Reve, at Geneva, and in what manner, xiv. 24. Party in Geneva daily gains ground, 25. Daily increase, but not remarkable there for their meekness, 22. Barbarous excesses, 26. Detestable massacre of them projected there is discovered, 30
- Regents, five heads of the Swedish colleges appointed to that office, xii. 335. Their first acts what, ib.
- Regicides, proclamation for citing them to a trial, but disobeyed, xii. 44.
- Register ship what, xiv. 441 (P).
- Registers, disputes about property in Sweden provided against by them, xii. 216
- Regnald, king of Gothland, succeeds Unguin in Sweden, xii. 223. He invades Denmark, and falls in battle, his army retiring, ib.
- Regner mounts the Danish throne after the death of Siward and Ringo, with different orthography of his name, xi. 683 & (A). Marches into Norway against Froe, king of Sweden, ib. Speech to his friends, and their submission to Ringo, ib. Marries Lathgartha, quells several revolts of his rebellious subjects, and repudiating Lathgartha, marries another, by whom he has seven sons, 684. Subdues Saxony, and defeats the emperor Lothar, ib. Three sons of Regner



- ner beat in combat a famous Swedish swordsman, and some Swedish princes, after which the Swedes are easily defeated, *ib.*
- Regner, on the death of Thora his beloved wife, reduces Britain, and even the Orkneys, *xi.* 685. His marriage and issue by Suanloge, *ib.* Defeats Dio, king of Mysia, *ibid.* With a war against the Russians, and retreat to Courland turning again into Russia, he breaks into their camp, and beats them, *ibid.* Defeats and takes Daxo prisoner, generously grants him his life, and suppresses commotions in Norway, 686. Invades Scotland, and defeats the king, though not without considerable loss, *ib.* Subdues England and Ireland, *ib.* A rebellion breaks out in Denmark, *ib.* Defeats Harold king of Jutland who introduced christianity into Denmark, and restores idolatry, *ib.* Defeated by Hella, king of England or Ireland, *ib.* (A). And thrown into prison among venomous creatures, where he dies, with his character, also uncertainty of accounts here, 687
- , son of Uffo, succeeds his uncle Huning in Sweden, *xii.* 219. His step-mother keeps the reins of government in her hands, but by the instigation of Suanvita Hading, of Denmark, his daughter, he puts her to death, and marries the Danish princess, 220. She twice defeats her brother Frotho in her husband's absence, and in the last battle he is slain, *ibid.* Death of the king, and his queen soon after, *ib.*
- Regulation of sixty days, law so called, is enacted in a diet at Nuremberg, *xi.* 58
- Reggio taken by the Kairwan caliph, *i.* 515
- , in Modena, described, *xiv.* 102
- Reibeeck, Van, makes the first settlement on the Cape of Good Hope, *iv.* 495
- Rekander, khan, defeated by Hemayun, *iii.* 56
- Rekin, or Requin, a strange devouring fish, *v.* 691. Whence his impediment to prey, *ib.* & (G). How caught by the Africans, 692
- of Congo, described, *vi.* 439
- Religion, national, of the Poles and Catholics, and their first conversion by St. Adelbert, but they tolerate other denominations, *xii.* 440. All but the Lutheran forbidden in Sweden, yet this law is relaxed in favour of the Protestants in general, 368
- , disputes about it in Holland revived, *xi.* 485 and 510
- Remata, a river in Sicily, the bloody battle there, *i.* 640
- Remisius, bishop, a great enemy to the Jews, *v.* 529 & (Z).
- Remisian returns to his nephew's service, invades France, but is taken and hanged, *viii.* 668
- Remismund chosen one of the kings of the Suevi, *vii.* 542. Surprises the city of Lugo, with his cruelty to the inhabitants, and strenuously opposed by the Roman general, *ib.* Chosen sole monarch, he marries Theodoric's daughter, embraces Arianism, and ravages Galicia, 543
- Remonstrants, the populace rise against them in Amsterdam, *xi.* 487. Refuse to attend the synod of Dort, but publishing the chief points of their doctrine, they are condemned, 494
- Renard, Bernard, first trial of bomb-ketches, invented by him, made at Algiers, *ix.* 466
- Renards (foxes) river of, and the fine country near it, *xiv.* 613. Savages where seated, *xv.* 47
- Renatus, joining Sforza, turns the scales against the Venetians, *x.* 261. Brother of Lewis of Anjou, declared successor to queen Jean of Naples, 482. His wife Elizabeth's reception at Naples, as queen, her husband being a prisoner to the duke of Burgundy, and why the pope sends succours to the Anjou faction, 483. Renatus being ransomed, arrives at Naples, with some musketeers, the first seen there, *ibid.* & (U). Offers battle to Alphonfus, who speedily marches from Abruzzo to Naples, and thence retires to Capua, *ib.* He recovers Castello Nuovo, and in vain solicits the assistance of Caldora, duke of Bari, who at last joining him, he offers battle to Alphonfus, but betrayed by Caldora, *ib.* Whom Alphonfus strips of his territories, and makes a truce with a body of the pope's troops, 484
- Renaud's defeating the combined fleet under Torrington, off Beachy-head, *ix.* 470. Their descent at Tinmouth, *ib.*
- Renaudot's account of the miraculous conversion of Wafa Ebn Reja, *i.* 583
- Rendsburg-fortress, brave conduct of its governor in refusing Charles Gustavus admittance, and the no less noble reply of his father, *xii.* 179
- René, duke of Lorraine, does homage to the emperor Maximilian, with the form of his oath, *xi.* 117 (F).
- René of France, dutchefs of Modena, becomes of the reformed religion, *xiv.* 108
- natural brother to Philip of Savoy, his conduct, *xiv.* 9. Tyranny, and his being forced by the duke of Savoy to leave his dominions, himself retiring to Chamberry, 10
- of Anjou, how he comes with troops into Italy; and joins those of Milan, with their success, *xiii.* 411. Returns home, leaving only some of them, *ib.*
- Renegadoes, how treated in Morocco, *vii.* 147. The worst of men, 148 & (C).
- Renschild defeats Schullemburg at Punitz, with Charles XIIth's jealousy of him, *xii.* 378. His cruelty, and this victory opens a path to Saxony, *ib.* Swedes under him obtain a complete victory near Frauenstadt, and to what owing, *xiii.* 208. No quarter granted, and horrid cruelty after the action, *ib.* & (V).
- Ren-sey, or Rey-sen, the sixty third emperor of Japan, *iv.* 56
- II. the seventieth emperor, his reign, *iv.* 57
- Reparata, St. the cathedral of Florence, dedicated by the pope, with its magnificence, and the holy father's view in this, *xiii.* 396
- Requesnes, Don Lewis de, takes down Alva's insulting statue at Antwerp, *xi.* 413. Proclamation unanimously rejected by the Hollanders, who publish a counter-proclamation, 414. Death, 416
- Reshido'ddin, the Arab poet, his extravagant encomium on Atfiz, *i.* 714
- Resurrection, its churches repaired by the patriarch Thomas, *i.* 458
- general, asserted in the Alcoran, *i.* 159. Various notions about it, 160
- church at Jerusalem, demolished by the Syrian caliph, *i.* 626
- Retaliation law, according to the Alcoran, *i.* 179
- Retz, cardinal, head of the Frondeurs, arrested, and the fate of those who excited the troubles, *ix.* 436. Still unquiet, and his quarrel espoused by the pope, with Mazarine's observation on this head to the nuncio, 438. Promotion to the see of Paris, and escape from custody to Rome, 440. His remarks on Pope Alexander VII's genius, *x.* 151. Dies, *ix.* 368
- Reval, its general government, chief places, and capital of the same name, described, *xiii.* 19
- and Esthonia put themselves under the protection of the Swedes, *xiii.* 107. Who become masters of its citadel, 112. The soldiers in Reval recover it, 113. Taken by the czar, the garrison and citizens escaping by means of their ships, 220
- Reuchling opposes the burning of the Jewish books, *v.* 603 & (R). Prosecuted, and acquitted, *ib.*
- Revel, Hugh, the nineteenth grand master of Malthe, *vii.* 388. Reforms abuses, makes a truce with the Turks, and goes to solicit the European powers, 389. Assists at the council of Lions, *ib.*
- Revenge, an English ship, taken at the Azores, *viii.* 273
- Revolters, 2000 piled alive on one another with lime and bricks in terrorem, *ii.* 514
- Revolution in Portugal, account of it, *viii.* 502 (B).
- in Salerno and Capua, *x.* 393
- in Guelderland and Groningen, greatly serviceable to the common cause, with jealousies among the provinces, *xi.* 421.
- Reutlingen, account of that city, government, and religion, *xv.* 443
- Rexeries, a remarkable fish in Buenos Ayres, *xiv.* 470
- Rey del (Villa de bon Sucesso, &c.) capital of Sagerippe; *xiv.* 478
- (del) Captainry in Brasil, described, *xiv.* 479. Abundance of gold here, *ib.*
- Reyes, islands de los, where situate, *iv.* 267
- des los, colony removed to Lima, *xiv.* 306
- Rezkallah, a fortune-teller, how baffled by a woman, *i.* 692
- Rhamatilondi builds the city of Siam, *iii.* 353
- Rhé, a doubtful sea-fight off that isle, between the English and Dutch; which lasted three days, *xi.* 565
- Rheims, archbishopric, dispute between Artaud and Hugh about it, with the issue, *x.* 632. Proceedings of the national synod at Ingelheim in favour of Artaud; and against Hugh, *ib.*
- Rhim, Rajah, betrayed and slain, *iii.* 76
- Rhimberg invested and taken by the prince of Orange, *xi.* 463, 529. Importance of this place, and the Flemish governor Diesdorf cashiered, 530. Saved by a stratagem of the deputy-governor, 537



- Rhine, campaign there, ix. 537  
 — motions of the Imperial and French armies, with the little success of the former to what owing, xi. 293. Different movements of both, 316. Contentions about the chief command there, 643  
 Rhinsfeldt taken, xi. 246  
 Rhingrave defeats a body of Imperialists and Lorrainers, near Watweiler, and the success consequent thereon, xi. 237. Routs Merzi, 245  
 — successful in Alsace, xii. 337. Death and character, 238  
 Rhinoceros, of Africa, described, v. 684. Herbelot's singular account of them, 685. Other sorts of them, ib. (Z). Described in Job, &c. ib.  
 — of Ethiopia, described, vi. 184. Confounded with the Abada, ib. (D).  
 — of the Cape of Good Hope, described, vi. 403  
 — in Benguela, vi. 491  
 — strange bird of Africa, so called, with one horn, v. 688  
 Rhintal, account of, 448  
 Rhode-island, colony, its rise to what owing, xiv. 510. Its present flourishing state, ib. Twenty-four pirates executed there, 533. Its constitution, 536. Their prudence when king Charles II. called in their charter, 537  
 Rhodes, island of, seized on by the Turks, v. 148. Damaged by an earthquake, A. D. 1304, ib. Taken by the knights of Malta, vii. 393. Gives name to that order, the island described, and seven others also, ib. Its fortifications repaired, and brave defence against Sultan Othman, with its commerce revived, and flourishing condition, 394 & 397. Invaded by the Venetians, 414. Besieged by the Turks, 420. Assault against it renewed, but repulsed, and the siege raised, 422. City greatly damaged by three earthquakes, 423. A league formed against it, 426. Prepares against a siege, 431. Fortified by Gabriel Martinengo, 432. A dreadful plot discovered and punished, 433. Cannonaded by Soliman, 434. In want of powder, 435. Mined and countermined, 436. Defeats the assailants, ib. Attacked in four places, 437. Dreadful condition of the city, 439. Forced to capitulate, 441. And entered by Soliman, 442. Taken from the Turks by the Hospitalers, ix. 661. Falls into the Turks hands, 210. And the knights retire to Crete, x. 73  
 Rhodians become powerful under the knights, vii. 408. Greatly oppressed by pope John, 409. Their great Priory destroyed by Al Dahar, and they make peace with him, 410. Forbid to loiter at the Roman court, 411. Their rights invaded by the pope, 425. Forced to abandon the island, 442. The order removed to Viterbo, 444. Thence to the isle of Malta, 449  
 Rhofny, baron, (See Sully) his prudent administration of the finances, ix. 317. Cautions the king against marshal Biron, 323. Success with the reformed ministers, 319. Sent to the protestant assembly at Chatelleraud, where things are conducted to his satisfaction, 320. Made duke of Sully, 331  
 Rhubarb in great plenty in Mongolia, ii. 251. Quantity exported from Russia, how regulated, xiii. 77 (E).  
 — in China, iii. 616  
 Rialexa, a sea port of Nicaragua, described, xiii. 443  
 Ribagorça, count, succeeds Gonfalso as vice-roy of Naples, with his wife government, x. 498. Who obliges the Venetians to deliver up the cities they held in Naples, ib.  
 Ribaut, Mr. adventures of his Hugonot colony in Florida, xv. 71. Gives French names to rivers, and builds fort Charles on St. Croix, ib. Returns to France, and leaves Albert to command, ib. Arrives with several ships from France at fort Caroline, 77. Acquaints Laudonniere with the accusations against him in France, but convinced of his innocence, makes him an extraordinary offer, ib. and (X). Receives several presents from the Indians, and the arrival of the Spaniards at the same time, ib. His obstinacy and misconduct in resolving to attack the Spaniards, 78. His ships dispersed by a hurricane, ib.  
 Ribaut, Young, his obstinacy and misconduct, xv. 78. His fleet wrecked, with the dismal catastrophe that befel him and his people from Menendez, and the difference of accounts, 79. Spanish account, 80. Reflections on the inconsistencies here, ib.  
 Ribeyro, Salvador, seizes on the fort of Sirian, iii. 272. Defeats the Arrakan forces, ib. Defeated by the Arrakan king, 275  
 Ricafoli, fort, in Malta, erected and maintained by the grand master Cottoner, vii. 515  
 Riccard condemned and imprisoned at Mentz, with an account of the chief propositions in his book, x. 40 (D).  
 Ricci, father, highly favoured at the Chinese court, iii. 568. Preaches christianity in China, ib.  
 — a Jew, his treatise of celestial agriculture, and highly cried up by Erasmus, v. 594 & (P).  
 Rich succeeds Warner, governor of St. Christopher's, xv. 241. Flourishing state of that colony, ib.  
 Richard, a boy, crucified by the Paris Jews, and becomes a miraculous martyr, v. 546 (P).  
 — I. of England, notwithstanding great murmurs, sails for the Holy Land, ix. 632. Confined in irons by the duke of Austria, who delivers him up to the emperor, x. 687. Articles of accusation against him before the diet of Haguenau, and his defence, 688. The emperor promises to release him, but from sordid motives infills on an exorbitant ransom, &c. ib. Submitting to the hard terms, his mother brings most of the money, with hostages; but the emperor from the same sordid views, renounces the agreement, ib. Detained prisoner by the emperor, and that king's mother writing several sharp letters to the pope, he threatens to excommunicate the emperor, and king of France, ix. 608. Ransomed by his mother Eleanor, ibid. Makes all haste into the Low countries and remits the remainder of the ransom, x. 689. Refuses concluding a treaty with France, 690. Restitution of his ransom offered, but never effected, ix. 609 (R). The advantages to the pope and church from this event, ib.  
 —, duke of Cornwall, elected emperor by one party, through the archbishop of Cologne, with the consideration, x. 715. With his empress Sanctia crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, ib. Some account of her, ib. (I). Why abandoned by his friends, ib. and (K). He retires to England, leaving the care of the empire to three vicars, ib. Performs many other acts of sovereignty before his return, 716 & (L).  
 — II. of England, cruel persecution of the Jews, v. 546 & (R).  
 — II. Succeeds his father Jordanus in Capua, from which he is expelled, x. 406. Restored to Capua, and by whose means, ib. With Roger, count of Sicily, made pope's legate, 407  
 Richards, governor, his sensible measures in Acadia, but why unsupported by England, xiv. 695  
 Richardet, quarrel between him and Boulet in Geneva, the former breaking his syndical staff on the latter's head, xiv. 18. Killed by a fall, 29  
 Richew-su, one of the chief cities of Kyang-nan, iii. 528, 529. Vast commerce by land and water, with its gold mines, ib.  
 Richelieu's, cardinal, project for a French East India company frustrated, iv. 575. Revived by the great Colbert, 576. Penetrates through Piedmont, and surprises Mantua, viii. 296. Respect paid to him at home and abroad, 297. Methods for reviving the scheme of universal influence, ib. Admitted into the council, but under limitations, whose dexterous management in the marriage of Henrietta with Charles of England, places him at the head of the administration, ix. 370. Made a cardinal duke, 383. x. 133. Adopts Luynes's plan for suppressing the Protestants, and pursuing Vieuville's measures, makes himself master of the Valteline, ix. 370. His situation in a very corrupt court, 371. Power established, and guards assigned him, 372. The office of admiral and constable suppressed, the affairs of the marine are committed to him, who causes the favourite Barradas to be disgraced, and his fortune proverbial ever since, 373. Runs great hazard in venturing to change the manner of his political system, with regard to the Protestants and house of Austria, ib. The matter fully cleared up, ib. Treaty with Spain and Holland, 375. Enters Montauban, and returns in triumph to Paris, where he desires leave to resign, 380. Difference between the queen-mother, and her son Orleans, about Nevers's daughter, and both reproach the cardinal, ib. Who desiring to withdraw, is made principal minister, and lieutenant-general, with the title of generalissimo by patent; when again passing the Alps, he takes Pignerol unexpectedly, ib. Nearly ruined by cabals of both queens, &c. 381. Whom the king saves through his favourite St. Simon, and made more independent than ever, 382. Gains the princes of Germany and Italy against the house of Austria, and Pignerol by a secret treaty granted to France, in exchange for a territory in Mantua, 383. Account of his policy in bringing the Swedes into the empire, and their success through a subsidy-treaty with France, 385. The alliance preserved by Feuquieres in the congress of Hailbron, with its advantage to France, ib. Remonstrance from Spain to that



- that cardinal, and his answer, 386. The pope obliged to gratify that cardinal, 387. The defeat of the Swedes at Norlingen, under Weymar and Horne, causes a great change in that cardinal's conduct, 388. He renews the treaty with Sweden, &c. and procures Philipsburg for Lewis XIII. of France, ib. Heidelberg recovered by marshal de la Force, and terms offered by the cardinal for the queen-mother's return rejected, ib. While he treats with the duke of Orleans, the latter steals away from Brussels, and returns to court, his marriage having been declared null, ib. Gains over the prince of Orange, 391. New treaty with the states-general, and a plan of partition, which gives them some jealousy, 389. Shuts himself up in his palace, with Bullion's advice to him, and levies a considerable army, the command of which he gives to monsieur and count de Soissons, 391. Who form a design of assassinating the cardinal, but monsieur's conscience would not permit him, ib. Baffles all his enemies projects, and punishes fathers Caussin and Monoa, &c. Institutes the French academy, with the true design, 393. His nephew defeats a Spanish fleet before Genoa, and this the dawning of the French marine, 394. Inexorable to the queen-mother by Bellicvie's writing from England, and his insolence to the reigning queen, 395. Gives fresh instances of his ascendancy over his master, with regard to the queen-mother, 397. Brings Effiat into his master's favour, ib. And madame Hautefort removed also upon his account, 398. The pope also feels the weight of his resentment, and the treatment of his nuncio Scotti, ib. Desires a hat for Mazarine, 400. Singular instances of his prosperity this year, 403. Engages the king to go into Roussillon against the Spaniards, 405. Never quits the king's quarters on the road, and how nearly fatal this was like to have proved to the cardinal, ib. With his own hand gives the Cardinal's hat to Mazarine, ib. Having been left ill at Narbonne, sends for the king, 407. The defeat of marshal Grammont at Honnecourt, by the Spaniards, obliges the king to a reconciliation with his minister, ib. Letter of one line to the king, 408. Is carried in a huge litter on men's shoulders, and affects to imitate Alexander in his first and last act, ib. Retires to Avignon, and why the pope does not interest himself, x. 136. Maintains the alliance with Sweden, and his views, with those of the king of Denmark, xi. 231. Danger of Geneva from his proposal to the duke of Savoy, which the latter rejects, xiv. 46. Exorbitant demands, ix. 408. Last illness and death, 409. xi. 258
- Richelieu islands in St. Laurence river, xiv. 558
- Richer, doctor, of the Sorbonne, obliged to make submission for his treatise against the pope, ix. 347. Submits his writings to the apostolic see, x. 141. Upon this a red hat sent to Richelieu, archbishop of Lyons, ib.
- Richmond, constable of France, his great success, ix. 145. Who governs king and kingdom with great violence, and the consequences, ibid. Seated on the English throne as Henry VII. 181
- Riebeck, Van, lands on the Cape of Good Hope, and gets possession of it by a treaty with the natives, vi. 396
- castle described, and twenty-four rivers, 402
- Rienzo, Nicolas, sent by the pope, is made tribune of Rome, ix. 686
- Riga, see Livonia, its general government and division, xiii. 17. Its capital of the same name, and other places, 18. Besieged by Gustavus, it capitulates, xii. 320. Its siege carried on by the Russians, and it surrenders, obtaining the honours of war, xiii. 220
- Rihan, Abu'l, a famous mathematician and astronomer, i. 643
- Rihana, one of Mahomet's concubines, i. 116
- Rimba, a province of Angola, described, vi. 491
- Rimini seized by Malatesta, xiii. 498. Restored to the pope, ibid.
- Rimuntus' answer to a question about a truce, xiii. 498. xii. 634. Piety and modesty, with his nominating Vitenus great duke of Lithuania, ib.
- Rinaldo, the cardinal, succeeds his nephew Francis II. duke of Modena, his new plan of conduct and marriage, xiv. 109
- of Modena, purchases Mirandola, and has a principality in Hungary for Comacchio, with his death and issue, xiv. 109
- Ringo, the civil wars ensuing through him in Denmark, xi. 683. Death in battle, ib.
- Ringolt, son of Giedruslus, is chosen to the Lithuanian throne in room of his father, xii. 628. On refusing the tribute to the great duke of Russia, his country is invaded, but Ringolt defeats the enemy, and his character, ib.
- Riniero, Zeno, fourteenth doge of Venice, x. 203. His death and character, 204
- Rio de las Vacas, or Cow-river, v. 698
- Longo, (Long-river) described, vi. 411
- del St. Santo, in Africa, v. 698
- de la Plata, dispute about a new Portuguese colony there, with an account of the whole affair, viii. 530 (B).
- de la Ilacha, province described, also its capital, xiv. 450. Often taken by the Buccaneers, ib.
- grande, captaincy in Brasil, and settlement of Figueres, described, xiv. 478
- de Janciro, captaincy and capital described, xiv. 479. Diamond mines, &c. in this province, ib.
- Ripen, account of, xi. 652
- Riperda, duke, his arrival at Mequinez, vii. 200. Made batha, and promotes the siege of Ceuta, ib. With his strenuous behaviour at it, and fine speech to the Moors, but forced to fly in his shirt, 201
- Ritshu, the eighteenth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52
- Rivault, captain, privileged to sail to Madagascar, and success there, vi. 90
- Rive, in Geneva, public disputations there, xiv. 26
- Riviere, a knight of Malta, his noble answer to the Turkish ambassador, vii. 479. Put to death, ib.
- , la Petite, xv. 359
- Rivieres colony, its prosperity, xiv. 580. Taken by lord Rolio, 245
- Rixa, Poland put under the regency of that queen dowager for her son Casimir, and his character, xii. 453. Her arbitrary disposition, and banishment thereupon, ib.
- Al Reda or Radi, the import of that Arabic word, i. 659 (B)
- Robert, though greatly beloved, has much trouble and confusion about his marriage, ix. 23. Accedes to the throne of France after his father Capet's death, ib. Excommunicated, and obliged to part with his queen; he marries Constance of Arles, ib. Is umpire between a lord and the duke of Normandy, 24. By Henry of Burgundy's death, he obtains this rich duchy through the duke of Normandy's assistance, ib. Some sketches of the king's character, ib. Associates his eldest son Hugh, and has him crowned, ib. Insurrection headed by the young Hugh soon quelled by him, ib. Interview between Henry, king of Germany, and king Robert how managed, 25. Declines the imperial crown, and the kingdom of Italy, ib. Death of young king Hugh, ib. The king associates his next son Henry, and the disturbances in his family compromised, ib. Death and character of king Robert, ib. See Henry.
- de Artois, sentence of banishment and confiscation pronounced against him by the parliament of Paris, ix. 91. Retires to England, and kindly received by king Edward III. ib.
- , duke of Calabria, declared in the college of cardinals heir to his father Charles II. king of Naples and Sicily, x. 455. And crowned at Avignon, ib. The pope's favours towards him, and his gratitude on his return, and the first year he cultivates the arts of peace, ib. By his intrigues and those of his brother John in Rome, he opposes the emperor Henry VII. in his march to that capital, ib. Sends a reinforcement to his brother John, which is entirely routed by the Imperialists, ib. Invades Sicily, who concludes a truce with Frederic, 456. Hostilities again begun, but suspended by a second truce, 457. The Gibellines besiege Genoa, and Robert fails to its relief, the inhabitants resigning the sovereignty to him and the pope for a time, ib. A Sicilian fleet sent to the besiegers assistance, but recalled without effecting any thing, ib. The sovereignty of Genoa prolonged to him, with his preparations at Naples for invading Sicily, and other transactions, ib. On an invitation arrives at Genoa, and with the pope is made governor for ten years, 556. Who repulses the Gibellines, investing the city; and on his departure to Avignon, they again invest the city for a year, and command the sea, ib. They take Noli, with all manner of licentiousness reigning in Genoa, ib. A bull published to a croisade against the Gibellines, and a successful sally of the besieged makes them abandon the suburbs, ib. Death of his only son, with his exclamation thereupon, 459. Again invades Sicily, but in vain, and the king of Hungary's third son, Andrew, betrothed to the late duke of Calabria's daughter, Jean, ib. Disappointed



- in his solicitations to his sister Eleonora, the mother of Peter, for resigning, invades Sicily, but to little effect, *ib.* Disturbances in his own kingdom, and the Neapolitans take Lipari and Melazzo, *ib.* The chief of the Sicilian barons surprise Messina for him, who dies before he could succour his friends, with his great character, 470. His treatise on Moral Virtues in Tuscan rhyme, with his exclamation on the king of France being offended at his son's learning, *ib.* (O).
- Robert, king of Naples, enters the harbour of Genoa with forty five galleys, and the term of his government prolonged, x. 557
- , of Naples, the Florentine general, besieges Pistoia, but turns the siege into a blockade, xiii. 297
- , of Rimini, the pope's general, defeats the duke of Calabria, xiii. 431. His death, and magnificent burial by the pope, whose designs against his infant son the Florentines baffle, *ib.*
- I. elector palatine, xv. 471
- II. & III. also, emperor, xv. 471
- Roberval appointed viceroy of Canada, and his progress, xiv. 568
- Robinson, Sir Thomas, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 196
- Robbers in France, numbers of them march into Spain, ix. 68
- Robbery encouraged at and about Ispahan, ii. 647
- Roca, Inca, some of his celebrated sayings from Spanish writers, xiv. 392
- sixth Inca, succeeds his father, Capac Yupanqui, xiv. 390. Makes a progress with salutary regulations, and penetrates to the Cordillera, *ib.* Brings the Chomcas and others, about forty thousand families, to submission, *ib.* Returns to Cuzco, and employs his son in the conquest of Antisuya, and the reason of it, what, *ib.* Also over Canactucaya mountain, with the extent of the empire by this last conquest, and the Inca's improvements there, *ib.* Undertakes an expedition in person to Charcas, *ib.* Answer of the young men of Chuncari to his summons; but the old men differ from them in opinion, and the reasons, 391. They wait together on the Inca, and are graciously received, *ib.* Their exclamation hereon, *ib.* He returns to Cuzco; his death, and great character, *ib.* His most remarkable laws, and other useful institutions for learning, 392
- Roche, Mr. la, appointed lieutenant general of Canada, and injudicious settlement on the isle of Sable, xiv. 568
- Rochelle, siege of, opened by Sore the pirate, and M. la Noue, by which the Protestants are more at their ease, ix. 263. Blocked up by sea and land, with the gallant defence of the besieged, 268. Synod of the reformed there, in which Sulli did the king great service, 333. Miscarriage of the English armament before it, 375. Sir William Beecher's speech, and the Rochellers answer, *ib.* The causes of this miscarriage, and Buckingham's retiring from the isle of Rhe with loss and dishonour, 376. State of Rochelle when besieged by the king and Richelieu, 377. The port blocked up by a solid wall, or cross-dyke, constructed by Metzeau and Tiriot, from a plan of the cardinal's, *ib.* Arrival of the English fleet under the earl of Denbigh, which does little or nothing, *ib.* Surrenders through famine, and the king makes his entry into it; Richelieu boasting, that he had taken it in spite of three kings, 378
- peace with the Protestants, to which the king of England is guarantee, ix. 371. Pope Urban VIIIth's epigram on its reduction, x. 140
- Rochester, earl, arrives as ambassador from Britain to Sobieski of Poland, and the occasion, xii. 538
- Rochfort, expedition of the English against it miscarries, xv. 621
- Rockets, sky, of a monstrous size in Pegu, iii. 247
- Roderic defeated by the Saracens, i. 349. His regalia found, but not his body, *ib.* Brave opposition made against the Moors, vii. 578. Reasons why this history is so obscure, 579 & (L). A bloody battle ensues, *ib.* Is totally defeated by the Moors, which puts an end to the Visigothish monarchy, 580 & (M). Various reports about his death, 581
- archbishop of Toledo, procures a croisade against the infidels, vii. 709. But fails against them, with the loss of 10,000 men, *ib.*
- Roderigo, surnamed the Cid, administers the same oath thrice to don Alonso, vii. 652. Death, 660. Succinct account of him, *ib.* (I).
- Roderiques, Michael, his bold answer to Jehan Shah; and assists his father against him, iii. 84. Surrenders Ougli to him, *ib.*
- Rodolph, duke of Burgundy, elected king of France, ix. 7. Acknowledged only as a conqueror, 8, *sub fine not.* The lords of Lorrain revolt from him to the king of Germany, *ib.* Procures the retreat of the Normans with a sum of money, 9
- king, acts with great spirit, and endeavours to humble the lords, ix. 9
- of Burgundy hastens into Italy, but is forced to retire to Verona; and abandoning his own army before Pavia, comes into the town, ix. 537. Crowned king of Italy at Pavia, by Lambert, archbishop of Milan; and he defeats Berengarius near Placenza, *ib.* Attempt to recover Italy frustrated by the death of Burchard, duke of Suabia; and how that happened, 538. Death and character, 10, & (C). Succeeded in his hereditary estates by his half-brother Hugues le Noire, *sub fine not.* Interregnum after Rodolph's death, *ib.* Lewis, son of Charles the Simple, invited to return from England, and wear the crown, 11
- duke of Suabia, chosen emperor, x. 656.—On Conradin's death, chosen emperor; with an account of him, ix. 645. His election confirmed, xiii. 284. He also confirms the articles sworn to at Lufanne, ix. 646. Confirms some Italian cities in their privileges, for an equivalent, 649. But others asserting their independency refuse money, *ib.*
- Count of Hapsburg, on Richard of England's death, raised to the empire, x. 718. Inscription on the crown sent him by the pope, 656 & (T). Some account of him previous to his election, xi. 3. Several instances of valour and success, *ib.* His protection solicited by Strasburgh and Zurich, with an instance of his piety, 4 & (O). Obligation put on the archbishop of Mentz, who, in a diet at Francfort, engages a majority in favour of the count, *ib.* Beginning of this assembly, how very tumultuous, and declared emperor; with an account of his rank and power, *ib.* & (P). Repairs to Franckfort, and is crowned at Aix-la-Chapelle, and a crucifix used instead of a sceptre, *ib.* (R). Suppresses public robberies in the highways *ib.* Particularly a Hungarian count, who is hospitably entertained by him; and his fate, 5 & (S). Claims the inheritance of Conradin, and wrests it from the possessors, *ib.* His election confirmed by the pope, with the terms and motives to this complaisance, *ib.* Subdues several princes of the empire who had refused to acknowledge him, 6. He makes peace with Henry of Bavaria, also with Ottocarus, who does homage for Bohemia and Moravia, with the terms, *ib.* & (X). Circumstance inducing Ottocarus, through his wife's instigation, to renounce his engagement, but defeated and slain, *ib.* Personal bravery, *ib.* (Y). His eldest son made duke of Austria, and another son count of Suabia, *ib.* Adheres to the treaty in favour of his son, young Wincelaus, and entirely defeats Henry of Bavaria, granting him very hard terms of peace, 7. Mutual agreement between the emperor and pope; the former promising to go to the Holy Land, takes the cross, but why excommunicated, *ib.* Occasion of the dispute between him and Charles of Anjou; and he performs his articles with the pope; and the consideration, *ib.* (A). Reason of the pope's disgust at Charles of Anjou, 8. The emperor's son Albert invested in the dutchy of Austria, and his second son, Rodolphus, in Suabia, *ib.* Notwithstanding that emperor's care, a spirit of discord reigns throughout Germany, *ib.* Reason for declining to go to Rome, but sends his chancellor, 9. Sells the imperial jurisdiction over some of the Italian cities, *ib.* & (D). Orders the German language to be used in all law proceedings, and in the first constitution of the empire, *ib.* Daughter married to the king of Bohemia, with the conditions, 10. Why he marches against Otho, count palatine of Burgundy, *ib.* An embassy arrives in his camp before Besançon, from the king of France; with the emperor's answer, *ib.* (E). Peace with the count, and he extirpates formidable bodies of banditti, appointing extraordinary judges in the remote provinces, with the effects, 11. Why the princes of the diet refuse to elect his son Albert, king of the Romans; with the death of his son Rodolphus, *ib.* & (F). He himself dies at Germersheim, with his issue and character; also, instances of his pleasantry, affability, and moderation in dress, *ib.* & (G). Difference about his genealogy, xv. 474. His marriages and issue, *ib.*
- Rodolphus II. son of Maximilian II. emperor, elected successor to Hungary and Bohemia, xi. 175. xv. 465. Chosen king of Bohemia, and of the Romans, xi. 175. Of Austria and emperor, xv. 475. Succeeds his father Maximilian II. in the empire, with an account of him, xi. 175. Lays the Protestants of Austria under some restrictions in the exercise of religion, 176. Success in Hungary, and defeats the Turks at Haivan, 177. Publishes a new decree about



- Juliers and Cleves; with an embassy from the emperor, and the princes claimants to Henry of France, who declares in favour of the last, 182. Mandate, citing the claimants of Juliers and Cleves to appear before him; with his design of seizing the fiefs for his own use, *ib.* Shuts himself up in his palace, and dies very rich; with his portrait and character, 184. The latter differently represented, *ib.* & (K)
- Rodolphus III. king of Transjurane Burgundy, implores the emperor's protection, and cedes his dominions to him, x. 645. With the consequences by him and the bishop of Strasburgh, *ib.*
- Roe, Sir Thomas, sent ambassador to the great Mogul, iv. 297
- and Helgo, succeed their father Haidan in Demark, xi. 667. Great character of Roe the 11th king, who dies in a war with Sweden, *ib.*
- Roe-buck of Canada described, xiv. 557
- Roger, count of Sicily, succeeds his nephew William in Puglia, x. 409. The pope opposes his claim, and why excommunicated, ix. 588. x. 409. Reconciliation between him and the pope, *ib.* Enters Italy with an army, but defeated by Rainulph, ix. 589
- of Puglia, reconciled to his brother Boemund by the pope's means, and the terms, x. 407. Asserting his right by arms, the pope at last grants the investiture, with his success against Brindisi, which had revolted, 409. Assumes the title of king, and his coronation, with the investiture of several territories by the antipope Anaclet, 410 (Q). Takes Amalfi, and returns to Salerno, *ib.* A dangerous rebellion against him in Puglia, and entirely defeated by the malecontents, returns to Sicily, *ib.* After Rainulphus's death at Troja, his successes, 412
- Rogers, captain Woodes, his reception from the Spanish governor at Guam, iv. 244 & sub (O)
- governor of New Providence, xv. 272. His wife measures, and surrender of the pirates to him, with the flourishing state of the colony, *ib.* His representations favourably received in England, 273. Substance of them, *ib.* He defeats two Spanish expeditions, *ib.*
- Roggewin's voyage to the South Sea, v. 30 & (A). Arrival at the isle of Juan Fernandez, *ib.* & (B). Arrives at Easter island, with a description of the natives, 31. Brutish entrance into the bay, 32. The island described, *ib.* Loses the African galley, 33. Entangled among a parcel of islands, and reception from the natives, 35. Arrival at Recreation island, *ib.* Sails thence to New Guinea, with the coasts and islands in his way described, *ib.* Bloody encounter with the natives of New Britain, 37. Leaves that coast, with the country called Stormy land, and kind reception from the Arimoans, 38. Plunders the island of Mofa, *ib.* Arrives at the Thousand island, and its inhabitants described, 39 & (D). His proposals why not published, *ib.*
- Roha, Al, (Edeffa) submits to Nasiro'ddawla, lord of Diyar Becr, i. 630
- (Orfa) the ancient Edeffa, and its miraculous fountain, ii. 532 & (M). Taken by Timur Bek, 559
- Rohan, duke, his treaty with Spain, ix. 379. Forces and strong places, *ib.* Seizes St. John d'Angeli, 348. Concludes a general treaty, by which the edict of Nantes is confirmed, and Conde's disgust, 368. Arrested, *ibid.* Makes a treaty in behalf of the protestants; only their cautionary towns taken from them, 379. Then he retires to Venice, having been gratified by the king with a large sum, *ib.* At Venice, appointed ambassador extraordinary to the Grisons, and lieutenant-general in the Valteline, 386. Loses the Valteline through the cardinal's fault, 391
- Geneva the retreat of that great duke, with his death, and a magnificent tomb erected for him, xiv. 46. ix. 394. His heirs espouses chevalier Chabot; upon which her mother trumps up a son; but the daughter preferred, on the issue of a long suit, ix. 418
- Roi, Mr. de, artifice of that Spanish ambassador towards Sigismund, xii. 516
- Rokno'ddin, the grandson of Shah Rukh. (See Alaoddawlet)
- the son of Arslan, his patrimony, ii. 224. Drives his brother out of the kingdom, 225. Becomes the seventh sultan of the Rum dynasty, 226. Retaliates Alexis's treachery, strips his brothers of their patrimony, and seizes on Arzerum, and its lord, *ib.* Dies, and an error about the time rectified, *ib.*
- , the brother of Azzoddin, sent ambassador to Oktay Khan, and assists at the grand election of his successor, Kayuk Khan, ii. 232. Appointed sultan of Rum, and escapes his brother's treachery; is defeated, and confined by him, 233. Released, and restored to his Rum dominions, *ib.* Divides the empire with his brother, 234 (see also ii. 471). Other particulars of his reign, 236
- Rokno'ddin, prince of Irak, receives the flying sultan, ii. 303
- Narrowly escapes the Mungls, 304
- , head of the assassins in Irak, reduced by Hulagu Khan, ii. 470. Put to death, with his whole family, 471
- Rokoz, or general desertion, how ordered in Poland, and its dreadful consequences; and the commander in chief is for life, xii. 438 & (A). Little regard paid to the orders for assembling, *ib.*
- Rchoz, or confederacy, an assembly of them, from which the king's commissioners are forced to retire privately, and the occasion, xii. 565. The terms proposed by the rohoz, in twenty-one articles, *ib.* (D). Found too rigid to be accepted, and the rage consequently thereupon, *ib.* Frustration of their schemes, to what owing, 566. Dissolved on a general reconciliation, with the conditions, *ib.*
- Rokud-sio, the 79th emperor of Japan, iv. 57
- Rolfo Rhrage, the incestuous son of Helgo, succeeds him as 13th king of Denmark; with his great character, and death, xi. 668
- Rollo, thro' his Normans being more formidable than ever, compels king Charles the Simple to grant him Neustria; with the title of duke, ix. 4. Odd manner of doing homage by a life-guard-man, and what happened, 5. Rollo and his people baptized, with the wise establishment of his country, now called Normandy, and great alterations in the neighbouring countries, to whom the line of Charlemagne is reduced, *ib.*
- lord, takes Trois Rivières, xiv. 725
- Romain, Cape St. in Madagascar, vi. 87
- Romaniola reduced to the obedience of the Holy See, ix. 649
- Romanow, Michael Fœderowitz, is raised to the Imperial throne of Russia, by the successes of Lippanow, xii. 510. Takes Smolensko, and the Polish garrison put to the sword, *ib.* Is proposed by one of the Russian electors, and why approved, xiii. 146. His mother's remonstrance against it, *ib.*
- Romans, their empire greatly weakened in Mohammed's time, i. 18. Strangely divided in the time of the Rum dynasty, ii. 227. Oppose the counts of Tuscany, and expel pope Benedict, substituting Sylvester IIId. ix. 557. But Benedict resigning for money to John, archpresbyter of Rome, resumes his dignity: so that three popes, of scandalous lives, now reside at Rome, with a compromise, by Gratian, under the name of Gregory VIth. *ib.* Expel Clement, who is excommunicated by the German bishops, 572. Endeavouring to revive the antient republic and senate, are deprived by pope Innocent of any share in the election of popes, 591. Suing for peace, an accommodation is concluded; and they oblige the pope to retire to St. Angelo, 592
- , the seditions, kill a cardinal, ix. 594. Reconciled to the pope, and the terms, 600. Solicit the pope's return to the city, and he sends missionaries into Georgia, Babylon, and Africa, 628. They revolt against the senator Brancaleo, who is imprisoned, 637. Openly condemn the pope's proceedings, x. 42. Erect pope Sixtus Vth's statue in the capitol, 119
- , quality of that king, x. 620. Election, xi. 368
- Romanus, the cowardly governor of Bosfra, his interview with Serjabil, i. 137. With Khaled, 138. For his treachery and apostacy, he narrowly escapes from the Bosfrans, 139
- Diogenes, Greek emperor, his unhappy expedition into Syria, i. 662. Haughty answer to Alp Arslan; is defeated, and taken prisoner by him, and buys his liberty with a vast sum, *ib.*
- Rome, schism in the church, vii. 668. Sacked by the Imperialists, and the pope blocked up in St. Angelo, viii. 236. Till relieved by the French under Lautrec, *ib.* Approve pope Sergius's election; but ordain, that popes should not be consecrated, before a confirmation by the emperor, ix. 522. The pope made prisoner, 218. Steals out of St. Angelo, *ib.* The Tusculan faction there declare the bishop of Velitri, pope Benedict Xth; but the cardinals and bishops elect the bishop of Florence, under the name of Nicholas IIId. and excommunicate Benedict, 561. Great confusion there, on the pope's death; and the counts of Tuscany support the emperor's right, in opposition to the cardinals, who chuse Anselm, bishop of Lucca, pope Alexander IIId. *ibid.* The transactions in a council there, 565. Decrees of a council there, who excommunicate Henry III. emperor, 570. A council there again excommunicate Henry III. emperor, the antipope Clement, &c. 571. The cardinals and bishops, in Clement's interest, hold a council there, 577.



- Excommunicate the emperor, and an oath appointed to be taken by the clergy, 578. This new usurpation alarms several nations, *ib.* A numerous council there excommunicate Roger, king of Sicily, with their other proceedings: they also condemn Arnold's new heresy, with an account of it, 590. The city laid under an interdict, and why taken off, 594. The pope retires to Viterbo, and excommunicates William of Sicily *ib.* New sedition there, 629. Hostilities between the pope's army and the Romans, *ib.* Disturbances there, 678. Great resort of pilgrims to, and the plague rages there, 700. Great divisions there, xi. 34. Revolt there quelled, 42. A convention holden there for an expedition against the Turks, and the agreement made, but without effect, 44. Embassy at Rome from the sultan of Egypt, *ib.* Taken, with Bourbon's death, and pillaged by the Imperialists under Orange, x. 326. Disturbances there about the pope, 393. Jubilee, with its advantage to Parma, 612. Its religion forbid in Stockholm, xii. 309. Utterly abrogated in Geneva, xiv. 26.
- Rooke, Sir George, his attempt on Barcelona miscarries, viii. 356. Success at Vigo, ix. 483.
- island, on the South Sea, described, v. 30.
- Roquette, battle there, ix. 438.
- Roric (Roderic) succeeds his father Hother in the Swedish throne, xii. 220 & (D). He revenges his father's death, conquers several northern nations, and gives up his conquests, &c. *ib.*
- Slingibond, 15th king of Denmark, succeeds his father Hother, xi. 669. He reduces the rebellious tributaries to his crown, with his death and character, *ib.*
- Rosa Santa shoals, where sit, iv. 266.
- Rosalie fort, built by the French among the Natches, xv. 22.
- Rosbach, victory of the king of Prussia there against the French, xv. 621.
- Roschild, bishop, raises an army against Eric, but the prelate made prisoner, xii. 3. Disputes about that see, when Absalon Valdemar's friend is chosen, 10. A peace there with Denmark shameful to Sweden, 298. Treaty not ratified, 299. Peace concluded there with Denmark, and the terms, 361.
- Rosemary-islands, on the South Sea, described, v. 22.
- Rosne, Sieur, Calais taken by his means, with an account of the affair, and his treatment from the king, ix. 311 & (B). Takes Ardres, but is killed by a cannon-shot, 312.
- Rostam, son of Fakhro'ddawla, succeeds him, and is governed by his mother Seyda, i. 602.
- Mirza, 10th Shah of the White Sheep Dynasty, releases the sons of Shieykhi Hayder, slays Baysanker, and is slain in Georgia, ii. 704.
- Rostock, how it becomes the property of the duke of Mecklenburg, xi. 30. Besieged by king Eric VIIIth. The besieged make a brisk sally, and destroy his works; after which they invade Denmark, xii. 46. The city reduced to great straits by king Eric VIII. is taken by the duke of Mecklenburg, and heavily mulcted, *ib.* Described, xv. 549. Its college, *ib.* Magistracy, privileges, and disputes about its sovereign, 550. Description of its district, *ibid.* Three Lutheran convents for ladies, 551. Their names and history, *ib.*
- Ros, Dr. a warm remonstrance by him from the university of Paris, ix. 694.
- Ross, who, and where sit, they reduce Constantinople, i. 487. And turn Christians, *ib.*
- Pietro, courage of that Venetian general, x. 209. Builds a fort at Bevolento, for harrassing the garrison in Padua, 210.
- Rota, by whom instituted, ix. 611 (F). Magister in Poland, his office what, xii. 429.
- Rotas, or Roughtaz, an impregnable fortress in Indostan, iii. 17. Famous castle surprized and taken by Akber, 59.
- Rotenberg, account of it, and its government, xv. 443.
- Rotweil, an imperial council established there, with its jurisdiction, x. 668 & (Q). Account of it, the Imperial chamber there, and its jurisdiction, xv. 443. Alliance with the Swiss, and its religion, 444, 448.
- Rotterdam island discovered and described, v. 18. With the beauty and commodiousness of it, *ib.* & (F).
- Rotto Freddo battle, after which Placentia surrenders to the Austrians, xiii. 666.
- Rouen stormed, and the battle of Dreux, in which the prince of Conde and the constable are taken; also marshal St. Andre killed, ix. 256. Submit to the king, 358. Assembly of notables there, *ib.* Gives Luynes opportunity of securing his government of Normandy, *ib.*
- Rovigo falls into the enemy's hands upon Alviana's retreat, x. 304.
- Rous, captain, sails up the bay of Fundi, and invited ashore by the Indians, xiv. 704.
- Rouillon invaded, ix. 401.
- Route, De, sent ambassador into Abyssinia; why assassinated, and by whom, vi. 164.
- Roux, John le, his edict against the Jews, v. 560.
- Royshan, Ray Begun, Shah Jehan's second daughter, her character, iii. 88.
- Rubel, with other coins in Russia, what, xiii. 78 (H) 79.
- Rubruquius's voyage into Great Tartary, iv. 108.
- Rucno'ddawla crowned emir in Shiraz, i. 550. Settles his son on the Persian throne, *ib.* His treaty with Al Mansur, 567. Noble resentment against his treacherous son, 570. Parts his kingdom between his sons, 571 & 573. His death and character, *ib.*
- Ruccellay, abbé de, engages Espernon to attempt the queen's deliverance, ix. 360.
- Rudbar succeeds Hafan in the Batanist dynasty, i. 698.
- Rufinus's censure of St. Jerom's friendship to the Jews, v. 508 (Z).
- Ruffi, expelled from Lucca, are taken into the alliance between Florence and Venice: Peter Russo, made general of the combined army, is successful, the other states of Lombardy joining, xiii. 318.
- Ruffo admitted into Padua, where he dies of a wound, as his brother Marsilio does of grief, xiii. 319.
- Rugen, an account of this island, xii. 10 (C). Submits to Valdemar, with the conditions, 12. An attempt on it how lost by Griffenfeldt, 189. Retaken by a scheme of Konigsmark, the Swedish general, 198. The Danes defeated, *ib.* Retaken by the Danes, with Stralsund, Gripswald, &c. reduced, *ib.* A descent on it, but Charles XIIth forced to retreat, 408. Taken by the Danes, xiii. 227.
- Rukh, Mirza Shah, born, ii. 511. Slays the traitor Mansur, 530. Rewards and encomiums on the young prince for it, *ib.* His son Oluk Bey born, 533. Goes to his government of Samarkant, 535. Made king of Khorassan, Sistan, &c. and goes to reside at Bagh-Zaghan, 540. Bravery before Halep, 555. Against the Syrians, 557. Conquers Kandahar, after Timur's death, 582. Rebuilds the Indian castle opposite to Termed, and becomes master of Irak, 583. Grand reception at Samarkant, and revenge on the Caliph's friends, 585. Plunders his father's tomb, *ib.* Takes the reins of the empire, 586. Extent of his dominions, *ib.* Marches against Kara Yusef; defeats him and his son, 587. Rebuilds the fortress of Herat and Maru; with his death, character, and progeny, 588 & (E). The empire divided after his death, *ib.*
- Rukhiya Shah surrenders to the revolted Kalil, ii. 583.
- son of Abusaid, his fate after his father's death, ii. 594.
- Rum, third dynasty of the Seljuks, whence so called, with its site, extent, &c. ii. 197. The Seljukian sultans of that dynasty, 200. A second and more correct table of them, 201. An interregnum of nine years after Soleyman's death, 205. Becomes tributary to the Moguls, 240 & 242. Put an end to by Gazan Khan, 241.
- among the Othmans, denotes the Roman dominions, v. 163 & (C).
- Rumestan, why so called, and invaded by Sophi Ishmael, ii. 602 (E).
- Rumpf, Sieur, disturbances at the Swedish court, through that Dutch resident, with the demand of a debt due to the republic by the late king, xii. 419.
- Running footmen, by whom first used among the Moslems, i. 561.
- Rup Mathi, a heroine, defeated and taken, but poisons herself, iii. 59.
- Rupert (Robert) count palatine, chosen emperor, in room of Wincelaus, but is refused entrance into Aix-la-chapelle to be crowned, xi. 66. King of France's mediation between him and Wincelaus ineffectual, 67. How the king of Hungary and Bohemia nobles interesting themselves, proves abortive, *ib.* That new emperor remedies disorders, and reclaims the dominions and rights which had been alienated, 67. Having gone into Italy, he is worsted by John Galeazzo, and obliged to return without doing any thing of importance against him or Ladislaus of Naples, *ib.* Employs himself, among other things, especially in aggrandizing his own electorate, 68. Why he makes war on the marquis of Baden, with a peace concluded; yet the marquis joins



- joins in a confederacy against the emperor, *ib.* Declares for pope Gregory XIIIth; sends ambassadors to the council at Pisa, and writes to several princes in his favour, 69. Disturbances raised by the elector of Mentz to the emperor, who takes the field, but dies, 70 & (M). His appellation of Short, and character, leaving several trustees for the distribution of his hereditary dominions, *ib.* (N). Account of his sons and daughters, *ib.* (O)
- Rupert, prince palatine, why he, with his father, is put to the ban, xi. 125. The emperor takes the field against both, with the terrible ravages committed; and Philip, the father, retires to Heidelberg, *ib.* Rupert dying, the decision of the difference referred to a diet, with the emperor's accommodation in the affair, 126. Depredations before war was declared between England and Holland, 595. The English fleet under him joins that of France, commanded by d'Estreés, 619. Sunk in a pinnace, and the English haul off to their own coast, *ib.*
- Rupée, and other Mogul coins, their value, iii. 65 (C)
- Ruric line, in whom ending, xiii. 131
- Rufafa, by whom beautified, i. 370. Ravaged by the Karmatians, 506
- Russel saves Barcelona, ix. 474
- , governor of Barbadoes, xv. 188. The hardships of the Barbadians, and his death, *ib.*
- Russia ravaged by Batu Khan, ii. 445
- , the Greater and Lesser, ravaged by Timur Bek, ii. 537. Its commerce with China very antient, iv. 90
- , ambassador from it, sues for the emperor's protection against their princes, xi. 186. Revolution there, with the consequences, xii. 314. Its history, site, and extent, xiii. 3. The latter also by Busching and Voltaire, *ib.* (A). Several limits, *ib.* (B). General division, 4. Reasons for the appellation of White and Black, *ib.* (C). Sixteen governments, and site, *ib.* Boundaries in Europe, four rivers, and principal lakes; as Peibus, Ladoga, and Onega, described, 5, 29. Asiatic described, with its general division, 27. Climate and soil, with the rising and setting of the sun at the solstices, 54 & (A). Intense cold and heat in some parts, with the effects of the former, 55 & (B). Produce of corn, fruits, and trees, *ib.* Vegetable lamb, and its quadrupeds, 56. Snakes and bees, *ib.* Fowls and fish, 57. Sturgeon, and several other fish, 58. Eels, carp, &c. *ib.* & (D). Mines of silver, copper, and iron, with the works of the latter; precious stones and minerals, &c. *ib.* Mineral waters and manna, 59. Its population, *ib.* & (F). More inhabited once than at present, and by those who had some knowledge of the fine arts, 60 & (G). The policy of the Russian officers in carrying off prisoners, and planting them in their estates, *ib.* The inhabitants from Ingria and Livonia settled towards Woronesk, *ib.* (H). Most of the great families now in Russia, perhaps, of foreign extraction, *ib.* & (I) 61 (K). Punishment of knute, strapado, &c. 62, sub not. Antient administration of justice, by four chetfirds, 63. Lodged in certain lords of the greatest families and pricasses, under the direction of these governors of provinces, with their bribery, and other means of enriching themselves, *ib.* The present administration is by the senate, synod, and war-office, 64. Admiralty-college. the college for foreign affairs, the college of justice, feudal chancery, college of the treasury, and state-office, 65. The revision college, colleges for trade, &c. &c. *ib.*
- Russia-leather, or Yucht, xiii. 77 & (B). Quantity of bar-iron annually exported, (C). Caravans to China, and land-trade also to other parts by land, 78 & (G). Naval commerce, and the seat of it transferred from Archangel to Petersburg, *ib.* Sovereigns and transactions from the earliest accounts, with the origin of its inhabitants, 86 & (A). Obscurity of this to what owing, *ib.* & (B). Etymology uncertain, 87. Was divided into many principalities, 88. Ravaged and conquered by the Tartars, 92. Abject slavery to which the Russians were reduced afterwards, and the several reigns for an hundred years under this subjection; they are attacked by the Livonians and Poles, with their conquests, *ib.* Truce between it and Sweden prolonged, 97. Invaded by the Crim-Tartars, who, defeating them, plunder and burn Moscow, with the dreadful destruction caused thereby, 107. The castle holding out to the last, the Tartars retire, after sending the czar a naked sabre with a message, and the generals and troops who declined facing the enemy punished, *ib.* Hostilities of the Swedes, 148. Truce between it and Poland, 160. State with regard to her neighbours, 179. Treaty at Stockholm between it and Sweden, to which the emperor accedes, and a secret article in favour of the duke of Holstein, 261. Pretended conspiracy there, 263. Short view of its general political interests, with respect to foreign nations, 268—Sequel of its history, xv. 633
- Russians, their embassy rejected in China, iii. 737. A new one to the emperor Kang-hi, 742. Weights and measures, xiii. 80 & (I). Army retreating to the river Marle, is disbanded, and rewards distributed, Galitzin resuming the direction of affairs with greater authority than ever, 180. Half-galleys on the Ladoga-lake oblige the Swedish fleet to retire to Kexholm, 202
- invade Armenia, i. 544
- , or Urus, seize on the kingdom of Kipjak, ii. 450
- annoy Sweden, and over-run Carelia, xii. 259. Truce concluded by Sweden with them, which they little regard, 300. Their progress, 305. War renewed by Sweden, 320. After various successs are defeated, and obliged to raise the siege of Riga, 359. Prodigious number of them enter Poland, 378. But they with the Saracens are defeated and dispersed; they evacuate Poland, *ib.* Ravages in Ahland and Finland, with a defeat given the Swedish fleet, 406. Breaking with Poland, enter Lithuania, with their successful ravages, 524. Defeated, with their further cruelties in Polocz, who surrender on Batori's reducing the place to ashes, 496. The Polish soldiers hardly restrained from sacrificing the whole Mascovite garrison, *ib.* The Poles and Swedes uniting fall on them, *ib.* Besiege Smolensko, but are driven from their lines, and forced to submit, with the terms, 519. Motions of three formidable bodies of them, 597. Retreat as Charles XII. advances, 606. Three general classes of them; with an account of the dignity of count Baron, &c. introduced by Peter I. xiii. 61. Government, 62. Code, and manner of determining disputes by oath, with its effect afterwards on him who swears, *ibid.* & (L). Short process in criminal matters, and their punishments, *ib.* & (M). Religion, and their mode of communion, 65 & (N). Also that of confession, *ib.* (O). Their bible, and the explication of it, which they follow, 66 and (P). Respect paid to pictures of saints, and falls, 67. Carnival and private devotions, *ib.* Publick worship, priests excommunicated, &c. by the patriarch for preaching, *ib.* & (R). Some holidays appointed by the civil power, and sectaries among them, 68. Their chief peculiarities what, *ib.* & (S). & (T). Religion of the conquered provinces is Lutheranism, and both Protestants and Papists tolerated, *ib.* Great numbers of the Russians are Mahometans and more Pagans, with their hierarchy and clergy, 69 & (N). The patriarch's exorbitant power, *ib.* 80 (W). Peter I. broke the formidable power of the clergy, and added considerably to his own revenues, with the dress of the present ecclesiastics, *ib.* Attempts to unite the Russian with the Roman church fruitless, 70. Number of episcopal sees only twenty-eight, with an account of their convents, monks, and nuns, *ib.* & (X). They very strictly follow St. Basil's rule, *ib.* Anchorets formerly many, now much fewer, 71. The names of abbots, &c. also their baptism, *ib.* That of adults, particularly vzagahonds, called Chaldeans, *ib.* & (Y). Ceremony of marriages before Peter the first's time, 72. The sovereigns declined matching with foreigners, and the manner of their marrying their own subjects, *ib.* Ceremonies used at the Russian funerals, 73, and the form of the passport given the dead in their coffin, 74 & (Z). Holy water, and the procession of hallowing rivers at Moscow, *ib.* Manners and customs of the Russians, with the fondness of drink among the common people, and dress, 75. Their domestic life, and baths, *ib.* The scurvy common among them, *ib.* An account of their houses, 76. Language, with its dialects and learning, *ib.* Arts and manufactures, with the trade of Russia, 77. Home commodities, *ib.* Offensive regulars and irregulars; also, defensive of the same denomination, what, 84. Artillery of Russia, with the number of their army and navy, anno 1746, what, 85. The Russian fleet, how divided into squadrons, and commanded; with the annual pay of generals, officers, and private men, *ib.* & (P). Colonists from the Slavians, 87. The Aborigines called Tchudi, or Fins, &c. *ib.* (D). Invading Poland and are defeated, 90. Invading Livonia with a vast army, are defeated by a small number, under Plettenberg, with considerable loss, 95 and (K). With whom Basilowitz concludes a fifty years truce; again attacks the Poles, but makes another truce with them, *ib.* Totally defeated by the Poles and Lithuanians, near Offowa, 98
- Russians and Poles, their various successs, xiii. 99. Defeat the Tartars, with considerable loss, but are defeated in their turn, and invaded by them, 101. Hostilities between them



them and the Poles, 102. Conquests in Livonia, 106. The Swedes continue to harass them, and take Pernau, &c. in Livonia, 114. Invade Livonia, but rise from the siege of Reval, and how occasioned, 115. Burn Jamogrod, take Swanogrod, and besiege Narva, with a truce concluded for a year, and all the conquests of the Swedes in Ingria given up, 128. Send an embassy to the pope, with peace concluded between them and the Swedes at Teuffin, 130. Some conquests by them, but repulsed before Riga, and forced to decamp; when a truce, and then a peace, is concluded between them and Sweden, 161. Hostilities between them and the Swedes, with the incursions of the former, 162 (K). Custom among them of making up the deficiency, when any nobleman is found guilty of embezzling the crown effects, *ibid.* Recover their possessions in the Ukraine, and take the rebel Dowzensko, 173. They defeat the Turks, who retreat from Czeherin with considerable loss, *ib.* Their first embassy to France, by Galitzin's advice, which miscarries, through the ill conduct of the ambassador's domestics, 179. Advancing within cannon-shot of Precop, have sudden orders to return; and how Galitzin is imposed on herein, 180. Their demands, and those of the Khan, by which the negotiation for accommodating matters breaks up, and the Russians retreat, the campaign ending thus, *ib.* Conquests in Ingria and Livonia, with a victory over Schlippenbach, near the river Embac, 202. They take Marienburg; and among the prisoners there, is Catharine, afterwards empress, *ib.* For the first time defeat the Swedes under Meyerfeldt, in a pitched battle, near Kalish, 209. Take Bathurin, the capital of the Cossacks, which is reduced to ashes, 215. Inconsiderable loss of them at Pultawa, 217. Pennamunde citadel taken by them, with Kexholm, isle of Oesel, Pernau, 220. Still pursuing in Finland. fight the battle of Pulkona, in which the Swedes are defeated, 227. Attacking Nyflot in Savolaxia, take it, 228. Fleet, in which the czar himself has a command, obtains a complete victory over the Swedes, with the loss of the latter, and the taking of Oeland thereupon, *ibid.*

Rustem-bank destroyed by Timur, ii. 515

— Mirza sent against the infidels of Ketuer, ii. 542. And perfidious Siapushes, *ib.* Defeats Amir Kalander, and succeeds Pir Mehemed in his government, 552. Sent for to court by Timur, 566. Sent governor of Ispahan, *ib.*

— Khan, the Persian general, put to death by Saffi I. ii. 621

Rusteyndar mountaineers submit to Timur Bek, ii. 516

Ruyssenevelt, a monk, commotions in Brussels through him how settled, xi. 425

Ruyter, promoted to command a squadron, fights the English under Ascough, xi. 562. Associated with de Wit, *ib.* Conduct with regard to the French ships approved, 582. Captures, *ib.* A victory gained at Funen over the Swedes, by a body of men under him, 585. Sent against the Algerines, disperses a squadron of eight pirates, with the loss of two, 592. The dey's challenge to him, *ib.* Retakes several places from the English in Africa, 595. Safe arrival from Africa, 598. Who is preferred to the chief command of the fleet, 599. A sea-fight between the Dutch under him, and the English commanded by Albemarle, continued for four days, 602. Another sea-fight between him and Albemarle, in which the former is defeated, 603. With the loss on both sides, *ib.* Animosity between him and Tromp, 604. And Rupert's fleet damaged by a storm, when the former takes shelter in St. John's road, 605. Sent to sea with a fleet, who attack the combined fleet in Solebay, 614. Convoys a fleet of merchantmen safe into the Texel, 615. Enters the Medway, with his successes, 607. His intention of attempting the Thames, how frustrated, *ib.* After insulting several places on the English coast, and entering the Thames a second time, he makes a triumphant entry into Dort, 608. Sea-fights between him and prince Rupert, joined by a French squadron under d'Estrees, off the coast of Holland, 620. D'Estrees short character of him, *ib.* & (A). Several attempts of his miscarry, xii. 184. But he sails for Fionia, where the Swedes are entirely defeated, and the Swedish generals escape to Zealand, *ib.* Conduct in repulsing a third attack of the Swedes on Copenhagen, *ib.* Engaging the French fleet twice, and at last killed, viii. 328. Through a wound in his heel, with his character, xi. 625. His and Du Quesne's character, with two sea engagements, in which the former fell, and in a third attack the combined fleet destroyed by the latter, ix. 462. See du Quesne.

Ruyz, Bartholomew, his discoveries, xiv. 281

Ryswick, a congress opened there, with the preliminaries, xi. 648. Conferences held at a palace near it, to treat of peace, which is signed by the English, Spanish, and Dutch plenipotentiaries, also by those of the emperor and France, xi. 320. Memorial in favour of the Protestants disregarded, *ib.* Peace signed between England and France, to which the other confederates accede, and the terms between France and the emperor, ix. 477. Those for England and Spain, also for the Dutch, *ib.* Spain how forced to it, viii. 345. Reflections on the issue of this war, with the detestation of the ministers who signed this peace at Paris, *ibid.* Some opposition made to the execution of the treaty there by the Protestants and elector Palatine, xi. 322. Peace concluded, and its effects in North America, xiv. 667

S.

S A, Don Garcias de, made viceroy of Goa, iv. 131.

Saba, account of that Dutch island, xv. 236

Sabek, lord of Aleppo, driven out of it by Sharfo'ddawla, i. 667

Sabektekin, prince, his timely assistance to the Khorasans, i. 597. Defeats the allies of Kara Khan, ii. 137. Drives away Ilekk Khan, *ib.* His extraction, 139. Found the Gaznian monarchy for his son Mahmud, *ib.*

— the Turk, opposes Azzo'ddawla, and persuades Al Moti to abdicate, i. 568. Made Emir Omra to Al-Taj, *ib.* Besieges Azzo'ddawla in Wafet, and dies, *ib.*

— a Turkish slave, made governor of Gaznah, i. 571. His exploits, *ib.* Death and character, 589

Sabian, a reproachful name given to Mohammed, i. 41

Sabians, why tolerated by the Mahometans, i. 241

Sable cape, in Nova Scotia, value of its coast what, xiv. 498.

Impenetrable fogs, *ib.*

— island, in Nova Scotia, the advantage to Britain of refusing it the French, xiv. 498

Sabu, kingdom of the Gold Coast, described, vi. 667. Its capital, 668

Sabuda, Pulo, island on the South-sea described, v. 25. The natives method of striking the fish, 26

Sabur Ebn Ahu Thaker, his imprisonment and death, i. 564

Sacheverel's sermon against the whigs, and the handle which Harley makes of it with the queen, and his trial, ix. 496

Sachihu makes alliance against Temujin, ii. 271

Saco, death of that lord of Arezzo, xiii. 331. Ravages of his descendants, and their taking Liciano, with the steadfastness of the Bolognese, to whose assistance Hawkwood is ordered by the Florentines, 348

Sacramentarians (Anabaptists) banished on pain of death, xi. 141. Who, *ib.* (C).

Sacrifices, periodical human ones, at Motex, in Peru, xiv. 288

Sacshuanuah valley, the armies of Pizarro and Gasca meet in it, xiv. 345

Saccai, a city of Japan, described, iv. 39. Castle, towers, &c. *ib.*

Sadet, governor of Kalaa Sefid, put to death, ii. 529

Sadgur, son of Menilehech, his reign and descendants in Abyssinia, vi. 252

Sadi's account of a Moslem's strange prayer for Hejai, i. 348

Sadler, Ralph, a Swiss watchmaker, in favour with Sophi Shah, ii. 626

Sadolet, cardinal, an enemy to the Jews, v. 594

Sado'llah, Khan, poisoned by prince Dara, iii. 89

Saedo'ddawlet, a Jew, made prince vazir in Iran, but assassinated, ii. 483

Safa, an hill near Mecca, Mahomet's first asylum, i. 26

Saffi (Sefi) Sheykh's generous request to Timur Bek, and gratefully acknowledged by the freed captives, ii. 600

— Mirza, raised to the throne, and deposed, ii. 664

— II. (see Soliman Shah) ii. 635

—, the son of Abbas, his faithfulness to him, ii. 611. Repaid with a cruel death, 612

—, Shah, succeeds his father Abbas, ii. 620. His inauguration, and bloody disposition, *ib.* Destroys his brothers, nephews, &c. 621. Drives the Turks from before Baghdad, and bloody execution at the camp, *ib.* With other cruelties, 623. and notes. To the haram ladies, 625. And his severity, with the punishment of two smokers, 626. Victories, and mad conduct before Erivan, 627. Also to his wives, 628. His death supposed to be by poison, and cruel order about blinding, 629



- Safian, the fourth khan of Karasm, brings the Turcman tribes under tribute, ii. 724
- Safio'ddawla Al Catami has the city and castle of Aleppo delivered to him, i. 627
- Safiya, a Jewish captive, married to Mahomet, i. 72. His eleventh wife, 116
- Safrians, or Kharejites, take up arms against Abdal Malek, i. 336. Proclaim Shebib their emperor, and success against the caliph's forces, ib. Defeated by Sofian, 337. Kindly received by king Ashid, 338. Destroyed for their insolence to him, ib.
- Saffah-castle taken by caliph Harun, i. 437
- Safwan's adventure with Ayesha, i. 66. Suspected of adultery with her, ib. And others proscribed by Mohammed, but pardoned, 84
- Saffah, Al, first caliph of the house of Abbas, i. 382. Various preferments and executions, ib. Success against the revolted, 384. Death and character, 385. With his surprising munificence, and why surnamed Al Saffah, ib.
- Saga, the fifty-second emperor of Japan, iv. 55
- II. the eighty-seventh emperor, iv. 58
- Sagadahock river, settlement begun there, xiv. 501. Discouragement of planters here what, ib.
- Sagamet, Indian food, what, xv. 10 (X).
- Saganak besieged by the Monguls, and punished with a dreadful slaughter, ii. 299
- Saghalian Ula, a river of East Tartary, iii. 463. Its mouth and island, ib.
- Hoten city described, iii. 468
- Saghin Khan (see Bara) ii. 445
- Sagu, commonly called sago, and its tree described, iv. 203 (D). How made and used, ib. sub not.
- Saguenay river, its source whence, xiv. 598. In that of St. Laurence, described, 599
- Saggi, number and privileges at Naples, x. 443 & (G).
- Sahavedra island, where situated, iv. 267
- , (Alvaro de) his discoveries south of the line, ib.
- Sahel Ebn Hanif made governor of Syria, i. 260. Driven away by Moawiyah, ib.
- Sahow, Rajah, ravages the Mogul provinces, and gives his daughter to the pirate Angria, iii. 123 & (D).
- Sahio, Keray, khan of Crim Tartary, ii. 451
- Said, prince of Najram, his treaty with Mahomet, i. 98. One of his chief companions, 118. Resigns his standard to Amru, with singular zeal, 137
- , Ebn Zeid's bravery at the siege of Baalbec, i
- Ebn Amir distinguished with the command of the new recruits, and defeats a large detachment of Greeks, i. 200
- , prince of Hamadan, outwits sultan Mahomet's vizir, ii. 181
- , Ebn Yezid made governor of Egypt, i. 312
- Ebn Hebatallah, a famous Baghdad physician, his character and works, i. 677 & (K).
- , king, defeated and slain by the Moslems, i. 311.
- Ebn Hesham surrenders Tadmor to Merwan, i. 376
- Ebn Jaafar defeated by the Zenjians, i. 490, 513
- Al Hamani, the Karmatian chief, his cruel punishment of his father's murderer, i. 513
- Ebn Batric's promotion to the Alexandrian see, i. 528
- , Emir of Khorasan, his death and pious character, i. 543
- Saida, Sidon, or Ossaïda, surrendered to the Moslems, i. 228. Its present decayed state, ib.
- Saifo'ddin takes up arms in favour of young Malek Shah II. but defeated and slain by Mohamed III. i. 689
- Saifo'ddawla's signal services to Al Mottaki, i. 542. Second reception of him at Mawfel, 544. Conquests in Syria, and he defeats the Greeks, 546. Driven out of Damascus, 548. Retires to Aleppo, with his success against the Greeks, ib. Treaty with Moezzoddawla, and he defeats the Karmatians, but defeated by the Greeks, 549. Success against them, but defeated with loss, 550. Surprised, and defeated by them, 552. Defeated with loss by Zimisces, 554. New ravages, and signal defeat, ib. Surprised, and defeated by Nicephorus, 557. His troops defeat Rashik, reduces Khalat, and takes the rebel Naja, 560. His death and character, 562
- Sailors, commotions among them in Zealand, and especially in Holland, and how quelled, xi. 562. Revolution by them in Genoa, xii. 558
- Sajians revolt against Al Kaher II. i. 528
- MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.
- Sain, the caliph of Kairwan's general, his conquests in Italy, i. 522
- Saklabi lands at Palermo, and makes a treaty with the Castilians, &c. i. 551. Also in Calabria, 552. Returns to Africa, ib.
- Saknah, lord of Amalik, assists Jenghiz Khan, ii. 296
- Sal, Ilha del, or salt-island, described, vi. 128
- Sala, account of that river, and the Salians, xi. 398 & (B). Three sorts of punishment among them, ib.
- Salahaddin first sent into Egypt, vi. 57. His extraction and character, 58. Is raised to the vazirate, 59. Artful conduct towards Nuroddin, and sends for his family thither, ib. Builds some public schools at Cairo, and suspected to have poisoned the caliph, 60. Seizes on his palace, vast treasures, &c. ib. Comes to be suspected by Nuroddin, 61. Successes in Syria, and return into Egypt, 62 & (H). Defeated by the Franks, ib. New title and honours from the caliph of Baghdat, with his last expedition in Syria, 63. Vast conquests there, ibid. His death and successor, with his exhausted treasury, 64
- Salam's fabulous journey, and account of Gog and Magog, ii. 121
- Salamanca university founded by the king of Leon, vii. 710. Council for ending the custom of marrying among the clergy, viii. 42
- Salami, a famous Arabian poet, i. 608
- Salamiyah horridly plundered, and the inhabitants butchered by the Karmatians, i. 506
- Salan Khan defeats Ozman, and his Patans, iii. 69
- Salatru founds the kingdom of Adel, and whence a mortal enemy to the Christians, vi. 327
- Sale, Mr. unjustly vindicates Mahomet's character, i. 13. And from his being assisted by Sergius, 14. With his motives for founding his new religion, 15. Palliates his permission of polygamy, 16. Partiality in other respects, 29. And about his journey to heaven, 31. Parallel of Moses and Mahomet, 42. Misrepresents the Najranites, 98 & (M). Absurd charge against the primitive Christians, 100
- , Sieur la, account of him, xiv. 614. His arrival with Tonti at Quebec, ib. Progress in their discoveries from Cataracouy, 615. The former's distress at fort Crevecoeur, ib. After building fort Crevecoeur, plans another, and where, ib. Revolt in the former, and his imprudence, ib. New garrisons Crevecoeur, and builds fort St. Lewis, 616. After several traverses enters the Mississippi, and takes possession of the Akanfas country, &c. and his adventures, ib. Returns to France, ib. His preparations for entering the mouth of the Mississippi, xv. 3. Quarrels with Beaujeu, the commodore, ibid. Discovers Florida, but misses the mouth of the Mississippi, 4. Disasters of that voyage, ib. Why attacked by the savages, ib. His obstinacy, ib. Builds a store-house, and his frequent removals, 5. Conspiracy discovered, and his imprudent severity, ib. His war with the American savages, and success what, 6. Sets out from fort St. Lewis, and after some cross adventures returns, ib. Reflections on this expedition, 7. Loss of his frigate, and most of the crew how, ib. Undertakes a journey to the Illinois, ib. His adventures, and account of the country, ib. How assassinated, as also several of his company, 8. His character, ib. French avail themselves of his discoveries, and what, ib. His effects seized, and divided between the murderers, ib. His murderers kill one another, 9. Reflection on his expedition, 13
- Saleh Ebn Mari revolts against Abdal Malek, i. 335. Proclaims Shebib Emir, 336. Defeats the caliph's forces, ib. Defeated by Sofian, 163
- Ebn Ali, his severity to the Damascenes, and to the bodies of caliphs interred there, i. 381. Made governor of Egypt, 382. Removed from his government, 391
- Al Malek over-reached by his general Shamsoddin, and retires with speed out of Mausol, ii. 476. He re-enters, and it is besieged by the Mungls, ib.
- Ebn Abdallah put to death for Zendiicism, i. 411
- , the son of Wafif, heads the tumultuous Turks against al Motazz, i. 485. Mutual curses between him and that caliph's mother, 487
- , Al Motadi's vizir, murdered by Musa, i. 488
- Ebn Mardas seizes on Aleppo, with other conquests, i. 628 & (W). Slain by the Egyptian caliph's general, 634
- Ebn Mardas made prince of Aleppo, i. 611. His rise, and founding of that dynasty, 615. Victory over Mortaddio'ddawla, 617



- Salem Ebn Ziyad made governor of Khorasan, with his conquests and exactions, i. 310 & 311. Chosen protector of that province, 319. Invades Cappadocia, but repulsed with loss, 389
- kingdom, on the Senegal, its commerce with Goree, vii. 80
- Salerno taken by the Moslems, who are cut in pieces by the inhabitants, i. 491
- schools, account of them, x. 406 (P).
- , prince of Anjou, and son of Charles, visits Florence, with his reception, and recommending Amerigo, the navigator's ancestor, for their general, xiii. 289
- Salas, Francis de, canonized at the request of the French, x. 155
- Salgari, or chiefs of the Atabeks in Persia, with the duration of the dynasty, i. 709
- Salgarian family found a new Atabek dynasty, ii. 189
- Salgor, the twenty-fifth shah of Ormuz, is invaded by caliph Sofi, with his conquests and death, ii. 690
- Salha-Rays defeats Buhanzon, and forced to crown him king of Fez, vii. 182
- Salikh reduces the revolted Armenians, i. 384
- Salinas battle fought between Pizarro and Almagro, in which the latter is defeated, xiv. 317
- Salinguerra taken prisoner and sent to Venice, xiii. 582
- Salique. See Law
- Salisbury besieging Orleans is killed, with the gallant defence of that place, ix. 146. The increase of its garrison how, *ibid.*
- Salma left by Abu Obeidah before Emesa, i. 192
- Salman, the Persian, becomes a zealous Moslem, i. 44
- Salmas taken by the Mungls, ii. 319
- Salmon, or Solomon, resigns the Nubian crown to his nephew, and turns monk, but is seized and conducted into Egypt, with his noble reception from the caliph, and death, i. 668
- Salomea, empress, an account of her, and why horse-whipped by the prime minister Iwan Schygonia, xiii. 100. Said to be delivered of a son in the convent to which she had been banished, and her declaring this with her hands on the altar, 101
- Salona, the Jews expelled out of it, v. 591
- Salonica submits to Venice, and war with Visconti of Milan, x. 232
- Salsedo battle against the Moors, viii. 45
- Salset, an island on the coasts of Vizapour, and its only city cut out of the rock, iii. 140
- Salt, the common of Abyssinia, and its various value, vi. 200. A physical fort made a token of friendship and breeding, *ib.* & (A).
- water river, at the Cape of Good Hops, vi. 399
- , of Angola, in great request, vi. 490
- Saltzburg, archbishop, obliged to resign, with the occasion, x. 134
- Salvador, St. the capital of Congo, whence so called, vi. 430. Described, 431
- , what place so called by Columbus, xiv. 143
- , first Portuguese settlement in Brasil, xiv. 476
- , capital of Bahia, described, xiv. 479
- , capital of Angra in Brasil, xiv. 479
- Salusses is besieged in Averfa, and capitulates, x. 330
- Saluzzo, the ruin of the French under him in Naples, xiii. 522
- Sallee port described, vii. 157
- Sama, village and fort on the Gold coast, vi. 651. Dutch fort described, and product of the country, *ib.*
- Samalek taken and destroyed by the Arabs, i. 409
- Samanda surrendered by the Mungls, ii. 307
- Samir island, among the Philippines, iv. 197. Its parts, coasts, &c. 198
- Samarkand opens its gates to the Moslems, i. 295. Taken by Katiba, 343. Described, ii. 302. Besieged by the Mungls, with its noble defence, *ib.* Taken and plundered, 303. Further described, 455. Made Timur's residence, 508. Besieged by Adel Shah, but relieved by Jehan Ghir, 510
- , where situate, by whom, and when founded, i. 424. Whence so called, *ibid.* And described, with its bulwarks, and other public buildings, academy, and learned men, 425. Present possessors, *ibid.* Large commerce, and fertile district, with its true site, *ib.* Dirhams coined there described, 426. How far the emporium of the ancient commerce, iv. 92 & 93
- province described, ii. 455. And its cities, *ib.*
- Samarra, since Sarra Manray, made the residence of the caliph Motasem, i. 462. Where situate, and its palace why called the Hill of Sacks, 463
- Sambali, a sort of blacks, different from the Negrillos, iv. 196
- Samboangan, a province in Mindanao, iv. 202
- Samdagu's success before Mausel, ii. 476
- Sameloddin, his bold answer to Togalak Khan, and turns him Mahometan, ii. 468
- Samorin, king of Malabar, iii. 162 & (C). Divides his dominions among his sons, *ib.* The country, and its produce, 164. Some strange customs attending that dignity, *ib.* His reception of the Portuguese, iv. 115. Requested by Cabral, 117. Defeated by Don Valquez, 118. Success against the king of Cochim, 119. Resentment against Albuquerque, 120. Invites the Mameluks against the Portuguese, 121. And success against them, 122
- Samosata taken by the Greeks, i. 554
- Samoyedes, their persons, manners, &c. described, xiii. 8 & 37
- Sampayo, Lopez, seizes on the viceroyship of Goa, but fined by the king, iv. 129. Confirmed in his government, with his vast successes and character, 130 & (D).
- Samrah abhorred for his tyrannic government, i. 293. Deposed, and his curse against the caliph, *ib.*
- Samfamah, the name of Al Rashid's famous sword, with its strange qualities, and original, i. 428
- Samfamo'ddawla is confirmed Emir Omra, i. 585. Inaugurated by caliph Al-Tay, 586. Defeats Bad Al Cordi, *ib.* Complete overthrow of the Karmatians, 588. Closely imprisoned by his brother, *ib.* Deprived of his sight, 590. Put in possession of Persia, *ib.* & 593. Defeated and slain by Abul Kasem, 603
- Samfi, in New England, what, xiv. 500
- Samfun reduced by Bajazet, v. 167
- Samuel, Rabbi, assists the compiler of the Talmud, v. 493
- , a famous Jewish oracle, v. 549
- , a pretended descendant of king David, v. 532 and (G).
- , Levi, chosen chief of the Jews, and persecuted for his bold zeal, v. 533
- , Cophsis, a learned rabbi, his works, v. 534
- Sammanians, or Sammanites dynasty, its beginning, i. 491. An end put to it by Baktuzun, 604, 608
- San raised to the throne of Kin, ii. 284. Makes peace with the Moguls, 285. Removes his residence to Pyen-Lyang, and occasions a revolt of his troops, 286
- Sanaga, Senegal, (which sec) river, and traffick, vii. 83
- San-cha, a river in Shing-yang, iii. 460
- Sanchez, Don, succeeds Ordogno in Spain, but expelled by the count of Castile, vii. 616. Restored by the king of Navarre, *ib.* & (L). Descent of the Normans, and embassy to Al Hatan, king of Cordova, 617. Subdues his rebellious subjects, pardons the traitor, and is poisoned by him, *ib.*
- , king of Navarre, upon the conquest of Castile, suspected of a design on Leon, and variously accounted for, vii. 639. Last wise acts, and manner of his death, 640
- , of Leon, younger brother to Alonso IX. his extraordinary project with regard to the Moors, vii. 710 (I).
- , the Great, king of Navarre, his marriage with Alviraz, count Garcia's grand-daughter, vii. 634
- , Don, his insurrection against his father count Garcia, but reduced and pardoned, vii. 634
- Sancho, Don, king of Castile, at war with those of Arragon and Navarre, vii. 648. Uncertain how it ended, *ib.* Also with his brother Alonso VI. The latter defeated *ib.* Beats him one day, but Alonso totally defeated, and made prisoner the next, 649. Obliges his brother Alonso to abdicate, *ib.* His character *ib.* (D). He enters Galicia, with his victorious army, 650. Forms a design to deprive his sisters of Toro and Zamira, 651. Slain during the blockade of the latter, *ib.* & (F).
- , king of Castile, his generous and prudent behaviour to his brother of Leon, upon discarding his officers, vii. 684. Interview between them, *ib.* Prevents the king of Navarre from recovering the province of Riaja, from his brother, *ib.* Composes all differences with the kings of Arragon and Navarre, by treaty, *ib.* Dies soon, and succeeded by his son Alonso III. 685. Alonso's second son makes the king of Morocco retire to Algeriza, viii. 14. He returns home, claims the crown against the children of his elder brother, *ib.* His right of succession declared by the states, *ib.* Remarkable resentment, 15. Prevents the conclusion of a peace with Granada, 16. He and the other infants abandon their old father, 17. Sancho declared regent by the states, but left by his brothers, *ib.* Proceedings with regard



- to his brothers, *ib.* The eldest son of Castile excommunicated for rebellion against his father, ix. 648. Remarkable declaration upon a defeat of his party, viii. 18. Confusion among the Christians in Spain, *ib.* Sancho solemnly disinherited, and others appointed to the succession, *ib.* By a deputation from the nobility softens the king, who pardons him before he dies, *ib.* Succeeds his father Alonso, notwithstanding his will, 19. His brother Juan submits, and is very kindly received, *ib.* Upon his ambiguous answer to an embassy of Aben Joseph, of Morocco, the Moors ravage the frontiers, *ib.* Sancho breaks his whole naval power, *ib.* His declaration in an assembly of the states, *ib.* Disturbances in the new reign suppressed, *ib.* Embassy to France, and with what view, *ib.* Obliges Aben Joseph, of Morocco, to raise the siege of Xerez, *ib.* For two millions of marvadies suffers the Moors to return to Africa, 20. The queen delivered of Ferdinand, who is declared his heir by the states, *ib.* Embassy to France, between which and Sancho, Edward I. of England, offers his mediation, *ib.* Sancho receives great disturbance from the jealousies of Juan de Lara, 22. The infant Juan is released, *ib.* Benedict Zachary, a Genoese admiral, disperses the Moorish fleet, *ib.* And the king reduces Turefa, *ib.* Makes his will, appointing the queen tutorefs of Ferdinand, his successor, 23.
- Sancho, of Arragon, marries Donna Blanca, of Navarre, vii. 682
- , of Navarre, marries Donna Sancha, the emperor's daughter, vii. 682
- , Ramirez, of Arragon, succeeds his father Ramiro, viii. 111. His character and expedition against the Moors, 112. Called to the throne of Navarre, and acquires part of that kingdom, *ib.* His exploits and victories over the Moors, *ib.* In besieging Huesca, he is mortally wounded, 113. His issue, *ib.*
- , succeeds his father as king of the Majorcas, viii. 176. And governs his dominions peaceably, and his character, *ib.* Jayme, of Arragon, disposed to seize his territories, but is dissuaded, *ib.*
- Sancho, Don, of Portugal, defeated by Ferdinand of Leon, but defeats the Moors, viii. 386. These destroy a small Portuguese squadron, *ib.*
- , of Portugal, succeeds his father Alonso, viii. 387. His consort Dulcia and their issue, *ib.* & (D). Takes a different turn now, *ib.* Gains over some English adventurers to attack and take Silves, 388. Several attempts between them and the Moors, with various fortune, and Dulcia dies, *ib.* His steady government amidst long calamities, and the good effects, *ib.* He reduces Elvas, and dies rich, with his character, 389. His body found uncorrupt four hundred years after, *ib.*
- , II. or with the hood, succeeds his father Alonso II. of Portugal, viii. 391. Settles the quarrel with the clergy, and his aunts, 392. Visits his territories, and does acts of mercy and justice, with a strange turn in the people, who dethrone him, *ib.* The pretended and real causes for this step, *ib.* Success against the Moors, and the regency conferred by the pope on his brother Alonso, 393. Attempts to recover his dominions by the help of St. Ferdinand of Castile, 394. But disappointed, he retires to Toledo, and dies, with his character, and that of his brother Alonso, *ib.* (G). Remarkable transaction of one of the king's governors, 395
- I. becomes king of Navarre on his brother's resignation, viii. 553. Marches to assist the Gascons, and in his absence the Moors invest Pampeluna, *ib.* Sancho's method for returning over the ice, beats the infidels, and pushes his conquests, 554. Fortifies Pampeluna, retires to Layra, and gives the command of the army to his son Garcia, *ib.* Possesses Upper Navarre, with an account of this kingdom, *ib.* (B).
- II. Abarca succeeds his father Garcia II. king of Navarre, viii. 556. Defeats the Moors, invading count Garcia Fernandez of Castile, *ib.* The devastation by the Moor Almanzor in Castile, and after giving battle, drives him out of Navarre, *ib.* Upon which the Christian princes unite, and Sancho dies, 557
- the Great, son of Garcia III. king of Navarre, his education and character, viii. 559. Marries Munia Elvira of Castile, and after settling his dominions, expels the Moors, *ib.* Conquests over them by help of the Christian natives, and over others who envied him, *ib.* Reforms the monks through his dominions, *ib.* Accession to Castile, 560. Restores Palentia, and the differences with the king of Leon accommodated, *ib.* Salutory regulations, and distribution of his dominions among his four sons, who assume the title of kings, *ib.* Dies, *ib.*
- Sancho IV. succeeds his father Garcia IV. king of Navarre, viii. 563. Makes alliance with his uncle Ramiro of Arragon, against Castile; the latter dies, and divides his dominions, *ib.* Upon Ramiro's death, Sancho of Navarre renews the treaty with Sancho of Arragon, with the consequences, *ib.* Sancho of Navarre opposes the wild pretences of pope Gregory VII. and his brother Raymond causes Sancho to be assassinated, 564
- V. king of Arragon, succeeds Sancho IV. in Navarre, viii. 565. Conduct with regard to Alonso, king of Castile and Leon, with his wife domestic government, *ib.* Gives Sobrarva and Ribagorça to his son Pedro, but is killed at the siege of Hueica, *ib.*
- VII. or the Wise, succeeds his father king of Navarre, viii. 567. Obliges Raymond king of Arragon to a peace, recovers many places, and hinders the coalition of the Moorish princes, *ib.* How his commander Pedro becomes sovereign of Albarracin, *ib.* His subserviency to Sancho, *ib.* This an expedient shewing the king's wisdom, *ib.* Further instances of his policy, 568. Defeats a confederacy of Arragon and Castile against him, *ib.* The latter princes submit to the arbitration of Henry of England, 569. The use he makes of this calm, *ib.* They refuse Henry's decision, but adjust their disputes among themselves, *ib.* How he saves Pedro d'Azagro from their resentment, *ib.* Sancho's daughter Berengara married to Richard I. of England, whose seneschal in Gascony he assists, and dies, *ibid.*
- VIII. the Strong or the Hidden, succeeds his father Sancho VII. king of Navarre, and his character, viii. 569. Accepts the king of Morocco's offer, with his voyage to Africa, and the consequences, 570. The kings of Castile and Arragon attack Sancho's dominions in his absence, and their conquests there, *ib.* Returns home, the lord of Biscay concluding a treaty for him with Castile, *ib.* Sancho's prudent endeavours to recover his kingdom, and a peace concluded with Arragon, to whose king Sancho lends money and troops, which are very instrumental in obtaining a victory over the Moors, 572. Advantages of this victory to him, *ib.* Resumes his designs for the benefit of his subjects, and security of his dominions, *ib.* He adopts James, king of Arragon, his heir, with a full account of that matter, 573. His death, and he the last of the male line of Garcia Iniquez, *ib.*
- Sancian island described, in which is Francis Xaverius's tomb and chapel, iii. 552 (R).
- Sancovan submits to Inca Mayta Capac, xiv. 384
- Sanction, pragmatic, in France, what, and by whom established, ix. 152. By whom made a fundamental law in France, 164. Published, but soon after abrogated; x. 13, 28. Guaranteed, and that through Great Britain, xv. 628
- Sand, a rain of it in Egypt, i. 500
- red, a mountain on the Cape of Good Hope, vi. 403
- Sandal, or Hollywood, a cure for the venereal disease, vi. 465 & (O)
- Sandomir, Palatine, arrested with his daughter the Czarina, but released on paying a vast sum, and afterwards sent prisoners to Jaroslaw, xiii. 140
- Sandoval, Philip III's favourite, made duke of Lerma, and minister, viii. 281. With a reinforcement to the allied provinces from Tezeuco, defeats the Mexicans, xiv. 257. Sent to assist the frontier provinces, and defeats the Mexicans twice, 260. Repulses them from a post upon an eminence with great slaughter, and returns to Tezeuco, *ibid.* Defeated by the Mexicans at Tacuba, 268. Builds the town of Espiritu Santo, 274. Defeating the Catimens they submit, 275
- San-dso, the sixty-seventh emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- -go II. the seventy-first emperor, iv. 57
- Sandwich, earl, under his master's mediation, finishes a peace between Spain and Portugal, viii. 527. Answer to the French partisans, with the states gratitude to the English, *ib.* His ship blown up, xi. 614
- Sangaar streights, between Japan and Jetzo, iv. 68
- Sangania, a province of Indostan, a nest of bloody pirates, iii. 7. Their way of fighting and cruelty to their prisoners, *ib.* & (B)
- Sangarius river, shifts its course once and again, ii. 241 (E)
- Sanguin, on the Gold Coast, described, vii. 12



- Sanhedrim**, Jewish, whether subsisting after the destruction of Jerusalem, v. 485
- Sanjar** reconciled to his brother Barkiarok, and promoted by him, joins his brother Mohammed against him, and both defeated by him, i. 684. Falsely said to have been assassinated, 688. Divides the empire with his nephew, 694. Friendly interview with him, 698. Puts the rebel Artiz to death, 706. Success against the rebel Artiz, 709. Defeated and taken by the Turks, with their treatment of him, 712. His release, death, and great character, 715
- , the sixth sultan of the Seljuks, divides the empire with his nephew Mahmud, ii. 182. Reduces the revolted Ahmed, ib. Spares the revolted Artiz, ib. And the Samarkanders, but shamefully defeated by the Karakatayans, 183. Frequent clemency to the rebel Artiz, ib. Defeats Husseyn the Gaur, and sends him home, 184. Taken, and kept prisoner four years by the Turkmans, escapes at length, but dies of grief, *ibid.* His conquests, character, &c. *ibid.*
- , defeated and taken prisoner by Abusaid Mirza, also put to death, ii. 591
- , Mirza, made governor of Maru, ii. 598
- Sanjassi**, a strict sect of Indian Bramans, iii. 218
- Sanitius**, patriarch of Alexandria, makes a great number of converts, with his aqueduct and other works there, i. 487
- San-kepa** defeated in his attempt on Tonquan, ii. 287
- Sang-ko**, an oppressing minister of Hupilay, detected and ruined, ii. 390. His vast treasures seized, *ib.*
- Sankrats**, among the Talapoys, their dignity, &c. iii. 336
- Sankun** (Ilako) Vang Khan, his son's defeat and flight, ii. 271. Unjust jealousy of Temujin, 272 (N). Defeated and wounded by him, 273. Rejects Temujin's offers, 274. Haughty answer to him, 275. His flight and death, 276
- Sanfarol** isle, one of the New Philippines, described, iv. 272 & (E)
- Sanseverino** recovers all the towns between the Po and Brescian, x. 274. Killed in his march to Trente, and his army routed, with his character, 276. Stratagem of Bargo to recover them from their panic, proves fatal, *ib.*
- Santistevan**, count, viceroy of Naples, treads in the very steps of his predecessor, x. 530. Completes the coinage, and raises the value of the new coin, with several other regulations, and recalled, *ib.*
- Santo**, its wonderful tree described, vi. 136, and notes
- Sanvitores**, Diego de, first missionary to the Mariamnes islands, with his ill success and death, iv. 241. (M)
- Sanutius** made patriarch of Alexandria, and shameful simony, i. 637
- Sapheta**, its Jewish academy, v. 582. Learned men there, 583 & (P). A fatal rupture among them, 584. Some arrant cheats discovered, *ib.*
- Sapieha**, attacks Oginski's trenches, but is repulsed, and after a second attack with equal loss, an accommodation proposed and accepted through Polignac's address, xii. 548
- , young, defeats Oginski, upon which the king publishes a mandate, xii. 568. An accommodation between him and Oginski, *ib.* Catastrophe of that young prince, 619 (A)
- Sapiehas**, treaty entered into by them with Charles XII. xii. 581
- Saracens** empire, cause of its rise, iv. 99. How that people spread all over the East, 101. Propagate their religion, 102. Also into Africa, and the Red Sea, *ib.* Defeated several times by the emperor Lewis, but could not be driven out of Italy, x. 383
- , another invasion of Corsica and Sardinia by them, ix. 519. Invest the coasts of Italy, 522. IncurSIONS in Italy, 527. Successful irruption into Italy, *ib.* Plunder and burn the monastery of St. Benedict, 530. Invade the northern parts of Italy, 532
- , from Africa, surprise and plunder Geneva, ix. 539. The descent upon Tuscany, but defeated, 553
- , when they first infested Italy, x. 380 (C). Their incursions and successful ravages in Capua, Naples, and Benevento, who retire to Bari, 383. With other Italian princes invade the pope's dukedom, 385. Who is obliged to purchase a peace from the infidels, with the terms, *ibid.* Strengthen themselves in Italy, and their ravages, *ib.* Still continue their ravages in Benevento, but are all cut off by the Greeks, 386. Besiege Bari, but obliged by the Cathaphan to retire, 395
- Saracins**, a gold coin stamped at Ormuz, iv. 171
- Saragossa** taken by the Saracens, i. 351. Battle, xi. 245. King Philip's defeat there by Staremberg, viii. 364. The administration of its bishopric how granted to a bastard six years old, 198
- Sarah**, or Zaara, desert, described, vii. 87. Also its inhabitants, animals in use, and weapons, 88. Tents where made, women their employ, dress, &c. 89. Complexion, stature, &c. *ib.* Adowars, or villages, 90. Granaries and diet, *ib.* Healthiness, *ib.* Superstitions, funerals, 91. And gross ignorance, *ib.* Contempt of fire arms, 92. Policy, trade, and caravans, *ib.* Take their directions by the flight of birds, *ib.* & (D)
- , or Sahara, a famous desert, vii. 98. Its extent and modern division, 99. Strange inhabitants and language, with its produce and quadrupeds, also a strange one described, *ib.* Its wonderful sand-bank, 100. Monuments, &c. *ib.* Various provinces, *ib.*
- Saray**, the prison of the Persian princes, ii. 664
- Sarbedal** princes revolt against Timur Bek, and their country ruined, ii. 522 & (G)
- Sardinia**, the Genoese and Pisans conquer that island, with the different accounts of their annals respectively, x. 535
- , king of, driven out of the Parmesan, xiii. 653. Discontent of that king, 655. That king possessing the Spaniards camp at Rimini, and recovering Savoy; but he loses it again, 659. The views of France in offering Geneva to that king frustrated, and the little relief given him by the emperor, 659. The English support him, *ib.* That king's manifesto, 660. His demands through the British court, 661. Defeated at Villa-Franca, and the taking of Chateau-dauphiny, &c. from him, 662. Attempt on the entrenchments of the French and Spaniards disappointed, and his retreat to Marasso, *ib.* Uneasiness whence, 663. That king's matterly disposition to dislodge the enemy, 665
- island described, xiv. 125
- , sequel of its history, and acquisition of territory to its king, xv. 634
- Sardis** taken by John Ducas, ii. 209. Its vast strength, and the Turks cut in pieces there, v. 149
- Sargans**, account of that country, xv. 448
- Sargel**, or Sarcelles, a city of Algiers described, vii. 230 & (I)
- Saris**, captain, obtains some great favours from the Japanese emperor, iv. 22, sub (Y)
- Sarknan** makes alliance with Andronicus against the Othmans, ii. 156. Defeats them, 157
- Sarmanes** (Shammanes) in India, their learning, sects, and worship, iii. 307. Extirpated by the Brammans, *ib.*
- Sarmatia**, the classic name of Poland, xii. 425
- Sarts**, whether the native inhabitants of Karazm, ii. 718.
- Saruj** (Sarug) the antient Batnae, and plundered by the Greeks, i. 551. Where situate, *ib.* And taken by the Franks, 690
- Sarray** burned by Timur Bek, and where situate, ii. 539 & (U)
- Sas** Van Ghent surrenders to prince Henry of Orange, xi. 545
- Sassacus**, Sachem, of the Pequots, deserted by his people, and cut off, xiv. 508
- Sassafras** in great plenty in Florida, xiv. 430
- Satibika** made governess of Tauris, and married to a descendant of Hulaku, ii. 493
- Satun**, a wicked minister of Towhan Temur, ii. 415. His death fatal to his family, 416
- Saya**, Sawa, lake dried up at Mahomet's birth, i. 9. Idol destroyed by his command, 85
- Savages**, their address in a negotiation with the French, xiv. 674
- Savannah** town and river described, xv. 100. Generously assisted by the Carolinians, *ib.* Transactions there with the Creeks, 101
- Savannois** Indians, who, xiv. 563. Wars, and the manner of conducting them, 564. Notions and customs, 565. Degree taken by a hunter among them, *ib.* Character, *ibid.*
- Savelli's** defeat by Ceri in a sally from Crema, x. 307
- Savi**, its original council, and first business, x. 211
- Sault**, St. Louis, a village in Canada described, xiv. 559
- Saunders**, with Holmes and Durell, make dispositions for attacking the Lower Town of Quebec, xiv. 722
- Savona** and Albenga revolt from Genoa at the emperor's instigation, x. 547. Genoese make a general assault on it without success, *ib.* Submits to Genoa, 548



Savonarola, a Dominican friar, his prophecies, ix. 188 (F). Exhortations to call a council for reforming the church, and his excommunication, x. 50. Account of him, and is for the power of the people, who considered him as a prophet, xiii. 441. The government of Florence by his means new-modelled, ib. A Franciscan raised up against him, with the effects by an ordeal accepted on both sides, but the champions fail, 442. Tortured, with his death, and that of two of his fraternity, ib. ix. 188. sub not. x. 51

Savoy, duke, makes a separate peace with the French, viii. 344. Openly declares for the allies, 355. Progress of his arms, and how prevented, after the battle of St. Quintin, ix. 245. His conduct, 287. Comes to the French court, with his views, 320. Reception, address, and assiduity, with a treaty for restoring Saluces, or an equivalent from the duke, and his return home, ib. Has promises of support from Spain, ib. Left to make the best peace with Spain that he could, 345. Dies, 381. Young duke's death, whom his brother Charles Emanuel succeeds, and the dukes made regent, 394. Dukes, her interview with her brother at Grenoble, 396. Duke joins the allies, and made captain general in Italy, whom Catinat opposes, with the characters of both, 485. Firmness to the confederacy very remarkable, 488. Repulsed by the duke of Berwick, near Montmelian, and the latter prevails, 499, with rigorous orders for reprisals on some Genoese prisoners revoked, x. 609. War waged by him on the side of Lombardy, 614. Declines the crown of Bohemia, xi. 198. Accedes to the grand alliance, who is defeated near Saluces, 311. Enters France, and raises contributions in Dauphiny, 313. Defeated by Catinat at Marsaglia, 315. Inactive on account of a private negotiation, 216. Secretly concludes a separate peace at Loretto with the French, 217. And besieging Valentia, he obliges the allies to accept of the neutrality, ib. Concludes an alliance with the emperor, 326, who cedes him Valencia and Alexandria, 336. Accedes to the treaty of Utrecht, under the queen of England's mediation, 360

— duke of, his cruelty to some Genevois, xiv. 14. His proposals to Geneva rejected, and his demands by a herald, who pronounces the Genevois rebels, 15. Another proclamation in favour of them, with his message to the Fribourgers disregarded, and this expedition why called the Herring one, 16 & (B). Treaty concluded, with the terms, ibid. That duke's demands rejected by Geneva, with the ascendancy of the Savoyard party, on a message from Fribourg and Soleure, 18. His ambition, with a bold stand made by secretary Vandelli, ib. Renews his attempt on Geneva, but defeated, 32. Takes Saluces, ib. Attempt on Geneva discouraged by the pope, and baffled through the king of France's assistance, ib. On the assassination of Henry III. of France, the duke retakes Bonne, and his infamous breach of capitulation, 34. Confidence of success in scaling Geneva, whose troops are repulsed every where, 39. Exploits of a Genevois gunner, taylor, and woman, with the enemies loss, retreat, and the duke's saying on the ill success, ib. Execution of the prisoners, and their heads stuck on the walls, 40. Reproached every where, and his apology, ib. Makes alliance with the Bernois, 43

—, history of that house, and the country described, xiv. 121. Also its inhabitants, ib. Origin of that house, 125. Erected into a duchy by the emperor Sigismund, 127. Spaniards driven out by the assistance of the French, 133. Recovered, 135

Savoyards, ascendancy of that party in Geneva, and the duke's management, xiv. 17. Who prevails again, ibid. Party (Mamelukes) upon the discovery of a conspiracy are outlawed, 19

Saux, the son of Morad, his rebellion and punishment, v. 165 & (X).

Sawda, Mahomet's second wife, i. 114

Sawod, meaning of, xiii. 43 (P).

Saxe, progress of the French under him in Dutch Flanders, xv. 618. Success, ib.

— Lawenburg, arrested and sent prisoner to Vienna, xi. 236. Subdues Silesia, but afterwards defeated by Torstenson, and mortally wounded, though Torstenson is obliged to relinquish his enterprise on Brieg, 256. Attempting to throw succours into Schweidnitz, is defeated, and dies of his wounds, xii. 345

— Weimar, his successes in Osnabrug, ix. 394. xi. 214. Marches into Bavaria, and takes Ratibon, &c. 224. Escapes, and the execution of sixteen of the conspirators in

Walstein's plot, 236. Treaty concluded by that duke with France, and he surprises the castle of Hohenbaar, taking also Saverne in Lorraine, 242. Routs Merc, disputing his passage of the Soame, 245. After taking three of the forrest towns, and investing Rhinsfeldt, defeats the Imperialists, and takes their generals Savelli and Wert, 246. Answer on the head of Brisac to the French minister Guebriant, ib. Dies, and the consequences, ix. 390. xi. 247, & (Y). Particulars of his will, ib. His army how disposed, xii. 342. Separates, 344. After several advantages totally defeated by the Bavarians, 347

Saxo-Grammaticus, his character, xii. 22. & (A).

Saxon ambassador's arrival at Trent, ix. 92

Saxons revolt, with an account of them and their country, viii. 672. Charlemagne reduces them to submission, 673. Revolting, submit, and offer him to become Christians, 675. Fresh rebellion suppressed with remarkable severity, 678. The resentment of this raises a general revolt, which brings on a bloody war, ib. Upon a new revolt, great slaughter on both sides, 681. Again submit to Charlemagne, but a third part of them obliged to quit the country, 682. After an eighth revolt submit, and are entirely supplanted by Charlemagne, 684. Their general renders Oxenstiern's project in Bohemia ineffectual, xi. 235. Different views and dissensions thereupon among the confederates, ib. Enter Pomerania, 358

—, by whom reduced, xi. 671, 681, 684, 688

— troops, fresh disturbances occasioned by them in Poland, xii. 564. The medium struck out for silencing clamours, ib. Become odious, and repeated addresses to dismiss them; a camp is marked out at Marienburg, and their artillery sent to Polish Prussia, 572. Are defeated at Paltsk, 586. A new confederacy set on foot for driving them out of Poland, with divers rencounters, 613. The ravages committed by the confederates, ib.

Saxony, commotions there, x. 644. Embassy from the pope and emperor to that elector, with his answer, and that of the assembly at Smalcalde, xi. 145. That elector stripped of his dominions by his cousins count Maurice and brother, 159. Defeated and taken prisoner in a battle fought in the wood Schwainhart, ib. & (X). Acts against the elector Palatine, with his motives and successes, 203. Confederacy formed for the defence of Lower-Saxony, 210. Confederacy renounced, 216. Elector makes a treaty with Gustavus, joins him with his forces at Wirtemberg, and they agree to fight Tilly encamped at Leipzig, with the disposition of both armies, 225. Tilly changes his disposition, and the concern he is in, 226, & (I). Conquers Lusatia, and takes Prague, 227. Shameful excesses of the elector's army to what owing, ib. All remonstrances made to that elector in behalf of the common cause ineffectual, 232. Wholly attentive to a separate peace, but the rest of the confederates indifferent, 239. Concludes a treaty with the emperor, 240. Which other states and cities sign, ib. Takes Magdeburg, and surprises Tangermunde, 243. Retakes Zuickaw, but does not keep his word, 254. A truce concluded by that elector with Koningmarck, 265. Quitting the siege of Temeswaer, attacks the Turks, who defeats him, 319. Commotions in Lower Saxony, ib. On the death of John Sobieski, the elector renouncing Lutheranism, is chosen king of Poland, and he forces his competitor, the prince of Conti, to retire, xii. 619

—, duke of, his right, xi. 371. Wavers in his attachment to Gustavus, through the intrigues of Arnheim, the king's inveterate enemy, and other counsellors, xii. 331. Intends to compel the Swedes to quit Germany, and gains over the elector of Brandenburg, 339. That party increases in Poland through the dint of money, 555. War declared by some districts against the elector, 558. He faints away at performing the coronation, 561. Three proposals made by his adherents to frustrate Conti, the last of which he embraces, and detaches a strong reinforcement to oppose him, 562. His successes, 563

—, history of that electorate, xv. 46. Name, situation, and extent, ib. Air, produce, mines, and nature of the inhabitants, with their religion and language, ib. Its capital and other towns, ib. Uncertain when the elector enjoyed the vicariate, 433, and that by concession, ib. Division among the younger sons of that house, 462. Privileges of the elector, ib. Antient inhabitants of the country, ib. They chose twelve chieftains yearly, and one of these their chief judge, 463. Their kings chosen only in time of war, and the first, ib. War made on the antient inhabitants till they became Christians, ib. By whom this was effected, ib.



- Sayfan, the third sultan of the Rum dynasty, mentioned only by Greek authors, and often called Khliziaftlan by them, ii. 211. Defeated by Gouras, and makes peace with the Romans, 212. Renews his incursions against them, 213. Engages them near Filomilion, 214. Narrowly escapes being taken, and concludes a peace with Alexis, *ibid.* Is forwarned of his brother's treachery, yet rashly ventures on his ruin, 215. Besieged by him in Tyganion, *ib.* Betrayed by the citizens, and, deprived of his sight, is strangled, *ib.*
- , the nephew of Karaman Mantakhia, his revolt, and seizes on Ephesus, v. 151
- , lake in the country of the Eluth Mungls, ii. 250 & (+).
- Sayfo'ddin, prince of Hella, defeated and slain by Mohammed Shah, ii. 179
- the son of Zenghi, seizes on Mosul, ii. 189. Treachery and success against Jocelin in Syria, *ib.*
- , prince, leads the vanguard against Hufayn, ii. 503
- Sayle, (colonel William) governor of Carolina, xv. 85
- Sayn, made vizir by the regent Juban, undermines him with the khan, ii. 489
- Saypan, or St. Joseph's island, one of the Mariamnes described, iv. 230
- Sayri Tapac, an Inca prince, accepts a pension from Caneta, the viceroy of Peru, xiv. 357. His exclamation on presenting the instrument for that purpose, *ibid.* Death, *ibid.*
- Saad Ebn Zararah comes over to Mahomet, i. 40
- , Ebn Moadh's severity to the Koreidnites, and dies presently after of his wounds, i. 61
- Ebn al R. ba submits to Mohammed, i. 41
- Ebn Wakka's great success in Persia, i. 187. Plunders the royal capital, treasury, arsenal, &c. of an immense value, 208, 243
- Ebn Zendies, i. 291
- , the grandson of Othman, turned out of his government, but restored, i. 294, 295. Takes Sarmarcand and Tarmud, *ib.*
- Saada, Yezid's wife, her singular complaisance to him, i. 361
- Yaminoddawla made governor of Aleppo, i. 627
- Saadet Keray, the fourth khan of Crim Tartary, ii. 450
- Saadi Effendi's account of the Othman family and settlements, v. 137, and notes.
- Saadia, a learned Jew, opposes the transmigration doctrine, but is opposed by the Jewish chief, v. 530 & (C). His writings, *ib.*
- Saadid Khan defeats the Maharattas, and joins in Nizam's conspiracy, iii. 123. Amuses the emperor's generals, 124. Joined by Kandoran and other officers, also taken prisoner with them, 125. Sent to seize the Omra's effects at Dehli, 127. Dies of grief or poison, 128. His estate confiscated by the Shah, 129
- Saado'ddawla puts Abu Faras to death, i. 563. Driven out of Aleppo, 564. His return and reception by Bacjur, 576. Refuses his usual tribute to the Greek emperor, and obliges him to a peace, 588. Success against Bacjur and Al Ramla, and his treachery justly punished, 594. His death, *ib.* Accused of poisoning Argun Khan, and massacred, v. 553
- Saavedra, Alvara de, his discoveries beyond the Line, iv. 267. Large continent, inhabitants, &c. 268. Described, *ibid.*
- Sbigneus, bastard son of Uladislaus I. civil wars in Poland headed by him, who is defeated, taken prisoner, and released, xii. 460. Civil wars in Poland, through his ambition, who is twice defeated by the king, 461. Through whose lenity he revolts a third time, but suffers at last, with contradictory accounts of his death, *ib.* & (E).
- Scali, one of the Florentine demagogues, arrested, put to death, &c. and the confusion how remedied, xiii. 345
- Scaliger's advancing against Florence, and hostilities still continue, xiii. 318. With an alliance between Florence and Venice, 319. On the invasion of the Veronese, concludes a peace at Venice, *ib.* Conduct and courage, who is forced to decamp, *ibid.*
- Facino, surprised and taken prisoner, but soon delivered, xiv. 88. Death without issue or relations, and his recommending count Philip of Pavia to the Milanese, 90. Mercenaries, their defection, and how brought back, 91
- Scanderbeg, revolting from Amurath, seizes on Albania, xi. 94. Defeat there by the Turks, and flight into Italy, x. 33. Death of that celebrated hero, xi. 105, (S).
- Scandinavians settled in Russia, with their conquests, and called Waregers, to whom the Russes, or Russians, owe their origin, xiii. 87 & (B). Which last name the Novogrod Slavonians seem to have borrowed from the Fins, 87
- Scescia, a blind learned rabbi, his works and character, v. 501
- Scestri Krow, on the Grain-coast, described, vii. 13
- Scetta, a province of Angola, described, vi. 491
- Scaffhausen, account of it, and alliance with the Swiss Cantons, xv. 447
- Schaffiroff, on the czar Peter's return to Moscow, that vice-chancellor why condemned to die, xiii. 256. But afterwards banished, and all his effects confiscated, *ib.*
- Schaal, a Jesuit, in high favour in China, i. 737. Assists at the emperor's death, and intercedes with the new one in favour of the Christians, 739. Prevents the Dutch from trading in China, iv. 441
- Schenk, Spaniards surprise that fort, after which the French and Dutch joining, they invest it, xi. 535. Retaken by assault commanded by William of Nassau, 536
- Schenectady, in New York, taken and burnt by the French, xiv. 540. This invasion by whom probably favoured, with Lesly's and Milbourn's putting themselves at the head of affairs, but hold out against the new governor Fletcher, *ibid.*
- Scheremetow, the Russian general, gains several advantages near Dœrpt, and a victory over general Schlippenbach, xiii. 201. Encounters between them on the Peipus and Ladoga lakes, with a Swedish frigate taken, and the constant alarms from hence in Livonia and Elthonia, *ib.* Takes Notteburg by storm, yet the garrison of an hundred men, under colonel Schlippenbach, making a stand, obtain an honourable capitulation on the breach, with the condition, 202. Sent into Livonia, by the czar, 218.
- Schetz, stratagem of that governor of Boissleduc, in making the first fallies sword in hand, xi. 516
- Schism in the church, ix. 41
- Schomberg and Inchiquin, with many others, go for Portugal, viii. 515. With the auxiliary troops embarks from Lisbon, 527. Recalled, and Galway sent in his place to command the English in Portugal, 538. Made a marshal, with his character, ix. 371. Obtains the signal victory of Villa Viciosa, which fixes Braganza on the throne, 451. Obtains considerable advantages in Catalonia, 462
- Schonen, its loss to Denmark, xi. 677. Revolt there, xii. 18. A new revolt there, but soon quelled, 21. Disturbances there, 54
- Schouten's voyage into the Pacific ocean, v. 6. Islands discovered by him, 7. Obligated to continue his course, 9. Arrival at the Green islands, and New Guinea, 11. Encounter with the natives, and a description of the coasts and islands, *ib.* The advantages of his discoveries and journal, especially to England, and the South-sea company, 13
- island, on the South-sea, v. 12. Described, 21
- Schulemberg marches from Saxony to Upper Poland, to assist the Russians, xiii. 208. Fine retreat, xii. 376. xi. 594. Defeated by an inconsiderable body of Swedes near Warsaw, 597. From Saxony entirely defeated, 601
- Schultens' editions, and character of Al Hariri's works, i. 696 & (S).
- Schuyler, colonel Peter, his expedition from New York against Quebec, xiv. 540. Defeats a superior army of French, and returns home, *ib.*
- , governor of New York, prevails on the Iroquois to break with the French, and the occasion, xiv. 678. Procures a general assembly of them, and the points to be insisted on, what, *ib.* but breaks up without effect through French influence, *ib.* Intrigues with the Iroquois against the French, 684, 685. His honest declaration, and reply of the French to it, *ib.*
- Schweinfort, its governor, xv. 445
- Scialdres, in Denmark, what, and their employment, xi. 672
- Sclavi revolt from the Greeks over to Abdal Malek, and how bribed to it, i. 339. Make an irruption into Thrace, and driven from Constantinople by the slaves, 500
- of Lusatia, make a successful irruption into Saxony, and defeat the Imperial general, with other public disasters, x. 651
- Sclerus, Bardas, defeats Bardas Phocas, and abandoned by Abdallah, i. 577. Defeated afresh by Phocas, 579. Imprisoned by Adadoddawla, and instigates him against the emperor's ministers, *ibid.* Release, and success against Basilus, 589. Reconciled to him, 591



- Schlippenbach, operations of that Swedish general in Livonia, xii. 376.
- Scifaraad, the seventy-fourth king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Sciprut (Sprott) Rabbi Isaac, an inveterate enemy to the Christians, v. 559 (E).
- Scherbro, a river of Sierra Leona, described, vii. 18.
- Scolberg chosen archbishop of Lunden, through the king's interest, with his letter to the pope against the king, and the king's barber substituted in his room, and confirmed by the pope, though afterwards revoked, xii. 140
- Scorpions, a monstrous kind at Baghdad, i. 699, and ii. 186. Several of them in Congo, vi. 437.
- Scotia Nova (Acadia) its extent, and the French claim why ridiculous, xiv. 493. Its frequent change of masters, and coming into the French hands, 494. Described, 497. Its inhabitants chiefly of French extraction, and their partiality to their country, ib. How to be remedied, ib. With the complaints against governors Philips and Armstrong on that head, ib. Its twelve districts, and deputies from each, with their office, 498 (D). Its limits undetermined, and difference among geographers, ib. and (D). Difference among writers about the quality of the country, ib. sub not. Its produce ib. in fin.
- Scotland, its king excommunicated, ix. 604. The excommunication taken off, ib. Exempted from Saladine's tythe, 607. Bull in its favour renewed, 608
- , conquests there by what Danish king, xi. 667, 684.
- , rebellion there on the young pretender's landing, xv. 618
- , church of, declared independent of the archbishop of York, x. 37
- Scots, their treaty with France about the succession respectively, ix. 87
- gens d'armes first established, ix. 11. Body of them under Buchan beat the English at Bannock, and Duke of Clarendon slain, 141. King of, slain at Houden, 201
- college founded at Rome, x. 129
- regiment first fire by platoons in Leipzig battle, xii. 329
- Scotti, Parmesan Podesta, his successes, who plunders with great inhumanity, and defeats Este, xiii. 610. His conquests in the Pavian, 614. Retreat from Placentia to Parma, ib. Assisted in Placentia by the podesta of Parma, drives out his opponents, 623.
- Scriptures given by God in great numbers, according to the Mohammedans, i. 158
- Scyfates, account of, ix. 590 & (D)
- Sea, Southern and Northern, whether any communication between them, iv. 259. Various schemes for discovering it, 260
- wolf of Canada described, xiv. 559
- cow of Canada described, xiv. 560
- Searl, Mr. succeeds lord Willoughby, governor of Barbadoes, with the acts he passed, xv. 179
- Sebasté promised to Manuel, and destroyed by Khiliziaflan, ii. 218
- Sebastian, king of Monomotapa, converted, vi. 374. Cruel to his converter, ib. Remorse and revenge, ib.
- , king of Portugal, dissuaded from sailing into India, iv. 134
- of Portugal assists the Congoeze, vi. 480. Outwitted by their king Alvarez, 481
- very young, succeeds his grand-father Juan III. and his grand-mother regent, viii. 478. Who repels the Moors, but devolves the title on cardinal Henry, with his character, and that of Sebastian, and the errors in his education, 479. Cabals at court detrimental to the crown and people, ib. Declines entering into the league against the Turks, and a marriage with a princess of France, ib. Makes a fruitless excursion into Africa, 480. Declares for Muley Hamet king of Fez, against his uncle Moloch, and undertakes the expedition into Africa, against all remonstrances, ib. The extraordinary methods for raising men and money, and Moloch endeavours to prevail with Sebastian to desist, and why, ib. Yet he still persists, 481. Number of his forces and fleet, he embarks and arrives at Arzila, ib. Calls a council of war, and resolves to fight the Moors, with the disposition of both armies, 482. The Portuguese totally destroyed, with king Sebastian, 483. The body given to Philip II. by Zuhga, 484. Further account of this king's death, ib. (D) His character, ib. & (E). Him cardinal Henry succeeds, with the intrigues of Philip of Spain, 267. An attempt to set up an impostor for him, who is defeated and punished with his abettors, 276. Several pretenders assuming his name taken and punished, 493. An impostor appears at Venice, personating him, and giving an extraordinary account of himself, ib. Methods for detecting him, with other particulars, 494
- , cape St. on Sofala coast, vi. 303
- , in Uraba-bay, built by the Spaniards, xiv. 154. Account of the natives here, ib.
- Sebou (Cebu) a river of Morocco, and dangerous way of going over it, vii. 148
- Sebureans, sceptical Jewish sect, v. 513
- Se-chwen, a large province in China, and a small kingdom within it, iii. 547. Its chief cities, ib. The province reduced by the Mungls, ii. 347.
- Seckendorf, colonel, executed by Torstenson, for a traitorous correspondence, xi. 256. xii. 345.
- Seco, the Jesuit, appointed Mendez's successor, with his arrival at Fremona, and death, vi. 292
- Sedan principality surrendered for an equivalent, ix. 408.
- Sedee Yakub, general of the Mogul, invades Bombay, iv. 322. Besieges the English fort, ib. But recalled by the Mogul, 324, notes
- Sedgewick, governor of Jamaica, supercedes Doyly, but dies, xv. 280
- , major, sent by Cromwell, reduces Nova Scotia, which is confirmed to England by treaty, xiv. 494
- Sedido'ddawla seizes on the fortress of Shaizar, and his descendants killed in it by an earthquake, i. 667. Death and character, 668
- Seducers, a sort of them in Italy, with the fate of a priest at their head, ix. 699 (X).
- Seffein, famous battle, i. 268
- Segelmeffa, a province of Biledulgerid described, vii. 118.
- Segued, emperor of Abyssinia, his reception of the Portuguese embassy, vi. 257. See Adian.
- , Malak, or Melchi, succeeds to the Abyssinian crown, vi. 277. Success and conquests, 279. Answer to Philip II. of Spain, ib. & (L). Invaded by Turks and Gallas, and he names his bastard son successor, with his speech in favour of his brother's son, ib. His death, 280.
- Segueyra, Don Gonzalo, sent on a fruitless embassy to Japan, iv. 165
- Seguier, chancellor, sent into Normandy to suppress the insurrection, called Pieds Nuds, or the Bare Legs, with his severity, ix. 399. His remarkable saying upon taking the seals from him, 430
- Segura built by Alvarado at Tatutepec, xiv. 274
- Sejad Khan wounded before Daak, iii. 69
- Sejaj sets up for a prophetess, she marries Moseilama, and leaves him in two days, i. 135
- Seida, caliph Kayem's daughter, courted by Togrol Bek, i. 657. Reception and nuptials, who becomes a widow, and returns to Baghdad, 658.
- Seidelius, a judaizing Christian, his tenets, v. 604
- Seignelay, Mr. Colbert's son, and secretary of the marine, dies, ix. 610
- Seiva, the fifty-sixth emperor of Japan, iv. 56
- Seivia, a sect of Bramans in India, iii. 217
- Sekander, or Skander, costly sepulchres built by Akber, iii. 59, & (G).
- , king of Visapour, kept in custody by Bullul Khan, iii. 141. Carried off prisoner by Aurengzeb, and nobly maintained by him, 142, and notes.
- Selamet, Keray, the twelfth khan of Krim, ii. 451
- Selengensk circle, and places of most note in Irkutsk province, with its capital of the same name, and forts, described, xiii. 50.
- Seleucia taken by the Moslems, i. 508.
- Selim, Keray, the twentieth khan of Krim, ii. 451. Success against the Russians, &c. 452
- , sultan, defeats Sophi Ithmael, and his conquests, ii. 602
- , the son of Akber, rebels against him, and his conquests, iii. 62, & (R). Insolent behaviour to his father, ib. Treachery to the brave Abdol Fazl, ib. Submission to his father, 63. Reconciled to him, and succeeds him, 64. Takes the name of Jehan Ghir, 65. See Jehan.
- , or Entemi, (which see) vii. 242
- II. his preparations against Rhodes, and death, vii. 429. Designs on Cyprus, x. 332. How determined to this, and the Venetian senate tries the effect of gold on the Turkish administration, and equips a fleet, 333. Uses a stratagem, and a conspiracy discovered in Cyprus, with the methods taken by the Venetians for frustrating him, ib. Arrival of his ambassador at Venice, and remonstrance at his audience, ib. The senate's answer, 334



- Sellinga, a river of West Tartary, ii. 119. Described, 247
- Seljuk, his extraction variously reported, i. 645. Education, rise, and embracing of Islamism, ib. Origin and education, ii. 150. Obligated to leave Turkestan, with his first excursions on the infidel Turks, 151. His four sons, 152. His two grandsons Togrol-beg, and Jaffar-beg, their first rise, and permitted to go beyond the river Jihun, 153. Their dominions in Khorazm lost, 184. Defeated by the Gori, 185. The end of their dynasty in Irak, 194. Their history, why so curtailed by the Greeks, &c. 195. The second branch of them called Kerman, ib. Third dynasty called Rum, 197. The end of their empire, ii. 242.
- Seljuks, their original contemptible, i. 639. Invade sultan Masud, ib. From whom descended, ii. 135. Their new dynasty, when, and by whom founded, 139. Their several dynasties, 149. The writers of them defective, 150. Found their monarchy in Persia, 153. Affronted by sultan Masud, 154. Defeat him, ib. Their empire and æra when founded ib. Different account given of it by the Greek writers, 155. Their first monarch, 156. Divided between Barkiarok and Mohammed, 176. Irruptions into Mesopotamia, &c. 660. Extent of their empire, 667. Dynasty, its end, 711. and ii. 189.
- , coin, abolished by Or-khan, v. 155
- , driven out of Khorassan, but recover it again, i. 647: Grow powerful in Persia, 651
- Selvo, Dominico, the thirty-first doge of Venice, defeats the Normans before Durazzo, but defeated in his turn, and deposed without inquiry, x. 194
- Selivyn, governor of Jamaica, xv. 293
- Sella, Christos Ras, embraces Sufneus's interest, vi. 285. Outwits and defeats the counterfeit Jacob, 286. Who lies hid in a cave, with his success against other revoltors, ib. Becomes a zealous convert of the Romish church, 287. And a friend to the Jesuits, ib. Bloody slaughter of the revolted monks, 291. Quells a new conspiracy, 292. Becomes suspected to the emperor, ib. Bold declaration on his swearing fealty to Rome, 294. Recalled and defeated by the revoltors, 299. Banished by the new emperor Basilides, and sent in chains into the kingdom of Samen, 301. Pathetic letter to the European princes, 309 (Z).
- Sellizur, or Shayzur, a city and castle in Karasm, with its fruitful soil, ii. 717
- Semendura over-run by the Othmans, v. 155
- Sementel, settlement in New England, surprised by the French, xiv. 634
- Sena, a city of Monomotapa, vi. 373
- Senan Ebn Korrah, a Sabeen confident of Al Kaher, and his physician turns Moslem, i. 529. His merry examination of two Baghdad physicians, ib.
- Senate, Swedish, account of it, and power, xii. 214. Their former and present number, 215
- , Polish, account of, xii. 433. Members of, ib. Instance of the value they put on their dignity, ib.
- of Venice, its origin, x. 199
- Senators, Swedish, several who absented their country, and for what end, xii. 310
- Senecy, madame de, removed from about the queen consort of France, by the king's pleasure, ix. 397
- Senef, allied infantry ruined at that battle, viii. 328. Bloody conflict near it, in which neither could pretend to a victory, ix. 461. Consequences of the action there unfavourable to the allies, xi. 623.
- Senegal, or Senaga, famous river described, with the various European settlements upon it, vii. 83. Vast extent inland, and very great rapidity whence, 84. Its bar, and the advantage of it, ib. Pleasant banks, breadth, and depth, 85 & (B).
- island, and its fort of St. Lewis, vii. 84. Privileges of the French company, and forts belonging to it, ib. The residence of the governor, ib. The gum trade here carried on, 86. Gum, whence so called, and its tree, described, ib. & (C). Where, and by what tribes gathered, 87. These tribes described, and all a pack of licentious hypocrites, ib. & (F).
- , in Africa, taken by the English, xv. 623
- Se-nei, the twenty-third emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 52
- Sengha's treachery to his brother Onchon, ii. 441. Slain for it by his son, 442
- Sengle, Claude de la, the forty-seventh grand master of Maltha, offered the town of Africa by the emperor, vii. 472. Sends deputies to examine it, and resolves to stay at Maltha, 10. Vast preparations against a siege, 473. Gallies shattered by a hurricane, ib. New troubles caused in the order by Strozzi's brother, 474. Dies of grief, ib.
- Senjar al Amo'ddin revolts in Mausel, ii. 476. Leads the people to meet the Mungls, ib. Massacred by them, ib.
- Seniofred succeeds his father Miron, count of Barcelona, viii. 125
- Senk-va, the twenty-ninth emperor of Japan, iv. 52
- Seogun Sey, its dignity in Japan, what, iv. 58, & (R).
- Seo-kwo, the 102d emperor of Japan, iv. 60.
- Seo-toku, the forty-eighth empress of Japan, iv. 55.
- Separatists from the church of Rome, account of them, their several denominations and tenets, ix. 611 (T). With their character by Rainerius, ib. sub fin. not.
- Sepe Shekow advises Dara against confiding in Jou Khan, iii. 104. Led prisoner with him to Dehli, and confined in Galiyar, 105. Put to death by Aurengzeb, 106
- Sephoris city, where sited, and the Jewish legends about it, v. 493 (F) and 506 (T).
- Septuagint version, why cried down by the Jews, and others made in its stead, v. 497. Miracles trumped up in its defence, ib. Philo's defence of it, ib. (Z).
- Sequeira, Diego de, sent viceroy into India, and his success against the Mahometans, iv. 128
- Serazana (Sarazana) taken by the Florentines, xiii. 434
- Seraskier of Bender, acquaints Charles XII. with the Porte's unmoveable resolution, and his answer to it, xii. 399.
- Serbedales, who, and murdered by Hussayn at Samarkant, ii. 503, & (L).
- Serea, Christos, occasions a new revolt in favour of Basilides, vi. 297. Proclaims him emperor, ib. Defeated, and cudgeled to death, 298
- Seregippe, captainry in Brasil, described, xiv. 478
- Serenus, a Jew, sets up for the Messiah, but defeated by Ambisa, v. 528
- Sergius sent ambassador to the caliph Moawiyah, i. 289. Affronts the Greek ambassador Andrew, sent home castrated for it, ib.
- Serjabil's interview with Romanus before Bosra, i. 137. Hot dispute with Derar, composed by the caliph, 202. Undertakes a single combat with a Christian champion, 223. His life saved by Toleiha, a pretended Greek prophet, and obtains his absolution from the caliph, 224. Dies of the plague in Syria, 232.
- Ebn-wars sent to besiege Mecca, but defeated and killed by Abbas II. i. 326
- Serini taken and carried prisoner to Vienna, xi. 286
- Seriperes, an abject tribe of Indostan, iii. 28
- Serir al Theheb, where situated, and subdued to caliph Hesham, i. 369
- Serpents, large and dangerous in Africa, v. 688
- , monstrous in Congo, and their various way of poisoning, vi. 437
- Servetus is condemned through an accusation of Calvin, and burnt alive, xiv. 30. Consequence with regard to Calvin, and his vague defence, ib.
- Servia, the Kral, lays siege to Pherus, v. 158. Invades Cantacuzen's dominions, and ravaged by the Othmans, 159. Invaded by sultan Morad, 164
- Servientes who, and difference from Milites, ix. 610 (A).
- Serra, Sierra, a cape belonging to Tunis, vii. 295.
- Serrano's discovery of the Moluccas, iv. 154.
- , a Jesuit, his fatal attempt at the New Philippines, iv. 273. Account of the New Philippines, 277
- Sessa, governor of Gofa, put in irons, vii. 464. Tried and acquitted, ib.
- Sestos, Little, on the Grain-coast, vii. 12
- Seth, Adam's son, compiles a system of astronomy, iii. 662
- Settal-maluc, Settall-maluca, causes her brother caliph Hakem to be murdered, and assumes the government, i. 624. Slays his murderer with her own hands, ib. Raises his son to the caliphate, and reigns in his stead, 626. Her death, 629.
- Sette, a province of Loango, famous for its logwood, vi. 540. Natives free of their wives; and fire-arms, whence brought to them, ib.
- Seva, by others Sava-ji, made rajah by Aurengzeb, iii. 113. Ravages and escape, 114. Attempt on Visapour, 141. Successful ravages, 142. His birth, pedigree, &c. 143. Outwits and murders Abdol Khan, with his attempt on Panala and Visapur, ib. Pursues and over-reaches Siddi Jor, with his other conquests, and a peace with the queen regent, 144. Treacherous stratagem against the Shatta Khan, and narrow escape, ib. Plunders the city of Surar, and made rajah by Aurengzeb, 145. Narrow escape out of



of his hands, *ib.* Loses his son in his flight, and seizes on Ramnagar, 146. Extent of his dominions, *ib.* Inroads on the Moguls and Surat, with his death, person, and character, 114, 147. Powerful descendants, *ib.* An inhuman custom observed among them, *ib.*

Seva Sambaji driven out of Goa by a heroine, *iii.* 147

Severus, bishop of Amida, dies, *i.* 396

—, metropolitan of Abyssinia, his brother sent on an embassy to the Egyptian vazir, *i.* 670. Imprisoned by the king for building of mosques there, 671. Attempt to reform his church, 672

— gratitude to the Jews, *v.* 498, & (B)

Seville made Muta's residence, *i.* 345.

—, act of faith at, *viii.* 255. Treaty between Spain and Britain, with several of its articles, *xiii.* 647. Severe censures on these stipulations in England, and the answer, *ib.* A motion in the house of British peers, with a negative upon it, and the emperor exclaiming against the treaty, though the Dutch accede, *ib.* The catholic minister's declaration at Paris about it, 649. Treaty there, and its terms, *xv.* 569. Article in favour of Don Carlos's settlement in Italy, 570. And the Dutch accede to it, with its disagreeableness to the emperor, and why, *ib.* Remonstrances from Britain on the non-execution of that treaty, and a schedule obtained from Spain, *ib.* And why no redress had, with reprisals made by the English, and Spaniards opening a trade from Spain to the Philippines, 571.

Sevina Bay, a great beauty, married to Timur's son, *ii.* 509

Seyd, Bereke, foretells Timur's future grandeur, *ii.* 506. Assails at his instalment, 508.

Seyda, mother of Majid'ddawla, her wife regency in Persian Irak, *i.* 632. Supports him on the throne during her life, and her death the cause of his ruin, 633

Seyds, the two khans, cause some revolutions in Mogul, *iii.* 120. One put to death, and the other spared by the shah, with apology to, and treatment from him, 122

Seyfoddin, Amir, the tenth shah of Hormuz, with his conquests and cruelty, *ii.* 682

— II. the twenty-seventh shah of Hormuz, invaded by the Portuguese, *ii.* 691. Subdued by them, *ib.*

Sey-muu, or Seymu, the thirteenth emperor of Japan, his reign, *iv.* 51

Seyssel, Charles, bishop of Geneva, his death, *xiv.* 11

Seedy Doude, (David's tomb) in Tunis described, also its Mosaic work, *vii.* 310 & (R).

Sforza and others conclude a peace, *x.* 23

— Lewis, recovers the Milanese, but delivered a prisoner to the French, *x.* 52. Declared sovereign of Genoa, 578

— Francis's successes procure him the Milanese, *x.* 21. Received as Duke of Milan, 234. The Genoese submit to him, 576. With his character and moderate government, *ib.* On his nephew's death proclaimed duke of Milan, 48. Drowned, whose bastard son recovers Naples from the Spaniards, 480

—, Visconti's general, enters Lucca, *x.* 239. Seizes Guenesio and his family there, whom he sends to Milan, *ib.* Gained over from Visconti to the Venetians by a pension, 250. Marches into the Veronese, and happily joins Mellato, with the distress of Brescia, 252. Raises the siege of Verona, reduces Longica, and a parallel between him and Piccinino, 253. Recovers Verona, and Brescia relieved, 254. Marries Bianca, Visconti's daughter, 256, & (C). *xiii.* 402. Defeats Sanseverino, Italus, and Vermio entrenched, *x.* 255. Consequences of this victory to him, *ib.* Successes, with the surrender of Pescara, *ib.* Goes to Venice, with his reception, and he marches against Piccinino, 256. Battle, about the event of which historians differ, *ib.* & (A). Goes over to his father-in-law Philip, 257. Appointed captain-general by the Milanese, takes Placentia by storm, and plunders it, 258. Defeats the Venetian fleet and land forces, 259. Quits the Milanese service, and makes alliance with the Venetians, *ib.* His successes in the Milanese, *ib.* Treaty between Milan and Venice, with the terms, which exasperate Sforza, 260. Generosity to the Venetian prisoners, *ib.* Both republics make war on him, who blocks up Milan, and saluted prince by the Milanese, *ib.* Carries all before him in Lombardy, and peace with him brought about by a hermit, 262. Declares openly in behalf of the Florentines, and his other intrigues, 281. Excites the grand signior against Venice, *ib.* Capitulates in the citadel of Milan, 310. His great service after the Florentines defeat in the Bolognese, though suppressed by their historians, *xiii.* 364, & (A.) Enabled them to recover their affairs, and meditate

the conquest of Pisa, with the radical enmity between the Pisans and them, 365, & (B). This conquest first suggested to the Florentines by the Genoese, and antipope Benedict, with the steps they took towards it, *ib.* Bravery, as also that of Tartalin, to save the Florentine garrison in Pisa, with the former's success rewarded, 369. In the pope's service made a count, why he quits it for that of Ladislaus, and defeats the Florentine general Ursini, 371. Generosity to Ursini, whom Ladislaus arrests after quitting the siege of Todi, to cure which Sforza marches, 373. Raises the siege of Lucca, takes and demolishes Bugiano, and besieges Pescia, 385. Outwits the Florentines, who reject the equitable offer of the Lucchese, 386. Terms of the pope's treaty with him; the latter setting the former at variance with Fortebraccio, defeats and besieges him in Ascoli, is defeated again, and taken prisoner; he dies of his wounds, 393. His progress, and peace granted to the duke of Milan by the pope, with the terms, *ib.* The pope orders him to join the Florentine general, who remains inactive, 395. He totally defeats Piccinino, and besieges Lucca, to whose assistance Philip of Milan sends a great body of troops, *ib.* Refuses to continue the siege of Lucca, and why, with Philip's promises to him, *ib.* Brought to consent passing the Po, 396. Relieves Verona against Piccinino, and defeats him, 397. Fears about Ancona, how quieted, 398. Hostilities begun by the pope in Ancona, who prevails, 402. Solicits assistance from the Florentines and Venetians, *ib.* Peace concluded with him by the mediation of the Florentines, 403. Character, *ib.* Against him the duke of Milan sides with Gismond, Sforza's son-in-law, &c. 404. After a long suspense he takes part with the duke his father-in-law, 405. Who dies, *ib.* His perplexities on hearing this news, *ib.* And his resolution to depend on himself, with the great divisions in Milan not unfavourable to his views, his receiving offers from the Milanese on the same terms as the late duke had concluded, *ib.* Progress, and accepting the offer of the city of Pavia, with his motives and apology to the Milanese why accepted, 406. He soon quiets Charles of Orleans's pretensions to the Milanese, and retakes Piacenza, *ib.* Great magnanimity, *ib.* The mutual recrimination of ingratitude between the Milanese and him, 407. After subduing all the Milanese he formally besieges Milan, *ib.* Venetians declare for a peace with the Milanese, and Sforza's conduct thereupon, *ib.* Temporizing management, *ib.* A peace concluded between him and the Venetians, to which others accede, and a triple alliance formed thereon, 412. And Alphonso accedes also, *ib.* Failing in his promise to Cosmo Medici about Lucca, 413. Proposal for a joint congratulation of the princes of Italy to the pope, how traversed, with a difference between Peter and Sforza, 436. Conduct, 437. Invested duke, 438. Sneer on Peter Medici, 439, & (A). Conduct, with regard to the Florentines, 440. Extraordinary character, by Guicciardini, 446. Made general of the confederacy, 447. The allies attack the Florentines, *ib.* Exquisite dissimulation, yet outwitted by the Florentines, 448. Favouring the Florentines to his own ends, 449. Breaks with the Venetians, and favours the Florentines, 450. Distress, who applies, among others, to the Turks and Florentines in vain, 454. Proceedings what, *ib.* He and his brother, with hired troops, take Como, 456. Besieging Novara, takes it, *ib.* How betrayed, and given up by his Swiss soldiers, 457. His brother Lewis also betrayed and sent prisoner to Venice, who, with others, is delivered up to the French, and they send them to France, *ib.* Strongly befriended by the pope, submits to the emperor, and a peace concluded between him and the Venetians, with the terms, 528. Occasion of his marriage at last with Philip of Milan's daughter, *xiv.* 98. Treatment from the Venetians, and thence determining in favour of his father-in-law, 99. Offer of his services to the inhabitants of Milan, and their answer, 100. Marriage celebrated at Cremona, 98. Hemmed in on every side, quits Milan with his family, and goes to Germany, *x.* 282. Returns from Germany, and recovers the Milanese, 283. Defeated and taken at the siege of Novara. Dies, *ib.* Character, 265 (D). Consequences of his death, 335.

Sha'b cruelly tortured by her son-in-law, with her constancy and death, *i.* 527.

Shadi Mulk married to Kalil Shah, with her arbitrary behaviour, *v.* 584. Dreadful punishment, 585. Refuses to restore the Ormuzian crown to Kothboddin, but obliged to submit, *ii.* 688. Defeated afresh, 689. Treachery to Mahmud Omar, *ib.* Death, *ib.*



- Shaddad made governor of Damascus, i. 187.  
 Shafy sect, opposite to that of Hanifah, causes the loss of Ray, ii. 309. And of Kom, ib.  
 Shaffi Khan opposes the prince Khurm, iii. 73. Valiant conduct against him, 74  
 Shah and Padishah, the various import of these dignities, i. 579 & (K).  
 Shahan Shah, the eighth king of Hormuz, invaded by the Hirians, ii. 682. Slain in battle, ib.  
 Shahaboddin defeated by Timur Bek, ii. 543  
 — Issuf rebels against his brother Gordun, whom he murders, and seizes on the Hormuzian throne, ii. 686.  
 — Atabek of Damascus, makes alliance with Zenghi, i. 705. Assassinated and succeeded by his brother Jamaloddin, ib.  
 Shahan-Shah, the import of that dignity, i. 579  
 Sha-hew-kew, the fourth gate of the Chinese wall, ii. 244  
 Shahrear Resh usurps the Hormuzian throne, iii. 682  
 Shahrukhiya, or Fenakunt, a city of Turkestan, ii. 148  
 Shahs, the Persian dynasty, by whom founded, ii. 600  
 Shaid, Attabek al, his successes against the Franks, i. 700  
 Shaizar obtains a year's truce from Abu Obeidah, i. 193. Cowardly surrender to him, 197  
 Shaka, Xaha, the corrupter of the old Lanian religion, iii. 296. His doctrines, ib. Government of the world, 297. Its temple, tower and statue, 304. His different names in other countries, 306  
 —, a Siamese deity (see Xaka & Shekya) iii. 341. In Japan, iv. 7.  
 Shaki defeated and killed by the Karmatians, i. 506  
 Sham Gazan, where, and by whom built, ii. 486  
 Shamakiya Arez Beg's dreadful fate there, ii. 607. Taken by Abbas Shah, 610  
 Shamba refuses to submit to Kothboddin, but forced by him to it, ii. 688. Defeated afresh, 689. Horrid massacre at Bahrayn, and slain by Mir Ajeb, 690.  
 Shamdara plundered by the Moguls, iii. 111.  
 Shamsoddin, vizir to Azzoddin, opposes his brother Roknoddin, but put to death by the great Khan, ii. 232. Alarms all Syria against Al Shaleh, 476. Made governor of Mausel, and put to death by the Mongls, ib.  
 — Mohammed made great vizir to Abaka, ii. 478. Disgraced, 480. Suspected of poisoning him, and promoted by his successor Ahmet, 481. Put to death by Argun Khan, with his character, 482  
 Shammai Rabbi, a learned cabalist in Arragon, v. 575, & (Z).  
 Shammakiya Khan slain by the invading Lesji, ii. 647. City besieged by them, and betrayed to them, 658  
 Shang-ti, emperor of China, his peaceful reign, iii. 704.  
 —, Ild, an infant, his short reign, iii. 704.  
 Shang-tu taken by Pu-wha Temur, ii. 412. Burnt, with its imperial palace, by Chu, 426  
 Shan-si wasted by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 285  
 —, a province of China, described, iii. 545. High mountains and cities, ib.  
 Shan-tong, a province of China, described, with its three plagues and populousness, iii. 544. Choice prints, &c. chief cities, gulph, and islands, 544. Glass manufacture, ib.  
 Shantu, a river of Tartary and China, ii. 244. The ruined cities along it, 245  
 — city, by whom built, ii. 245  
 Shanyen, the highest mountain in East Tartary, iii. 466  
 Shar, the import of that title equal to Cæsar, i. 615  
 — of Gurjeistan taken prisoner by Gafni, with his revolt and punishment, also death, i. 619  
 Sharfoddawla-hours al Saghani, a famous astronomer and his observatory, i. 585 sub (M).  
 — made emir omra by Al Taj, with his conquests and success, i. 588. Cruelty to his brother, 589. Death and character, 590.  
 — Ebn Moslem seizes on the city and castle of Aleppo, 667. Unfortunate attempt upon Antioch, and dies of his wounds, 669  
 Sharfoddawlat attacks Antioch, but defeated in his attempt on it, ii. 170  
 Shari Sarayjik, its ruins, ii. 446 (I).  
 Sharifoddin Ali writes the life of Timur Bek, or Tamerlane, ii. 498. His character, ib.  
 Sharifs of Mecca beg for Timur Bek's protection, ii. 543  
 Sharot, a Mongul province, where situated, ii. 245  
 Sharwakka, the fifth sect of Bramans in India, iii. 217  
 Sha-Seven, militia refuse to fight under prince Thamasp, ii. 665 & (Q).  
 Shaish, Al, or Tashkunt, a city of Turkestan, ii. 148. Taken by Katiba, i. 343  
 Shash, Al, a city and river, where sited, i. 573  
 Shaster, the Braman book, its contents and design, iii. 183. Puran explanative of it, ib. Overlooked by the Romish missionaries, 184. An abstract of it. The creation of the earth, with the first man and woman, 185. Their four sons and wives, 186. People the world, ib. Fall out, and introduce idolatry, ib. The world destroyed, and how restored by three new persons, with their office and time on earth, 187. The book Shaster, or moral law, given by god Bremaw, ib. How distributed among the various tribes, 188  
 Shastaktu, one of the khans of the Kalkas, with the extent of his dominions, ii. 438. Is defeated and killed by Tayki, ib. His son's complaints neglected by the lama, and applies to the emperor Kang-hi, ib.  
 Shau-king's brave defence against the Tartars, iii. 736. Taken by them, ib.  
 Shau-kang's birth and retreat, but recovers the Chinese throne, iii. 681. Success against the rebels, and his reign, ib.  
 Shau-ti dethroned by his prime minister, iii. 708  
 Sha-vu-kew besieged by the Mungls and taken, ii. 341  
 Shower (Shawert) his complaint to Zarick scornfully rejected, vi. 53. Raises an army against him, and sends him prisoner to Cairo, and made Vazir, 54. Kind treatment of him ill requited, ib. And punished, ib. Is restored to the Vizirate, ib. Deprived of it by Al Malek, ib. Makes alliance with the Franks, 56. Treachery and total defeat, ib. Return to Egypt, and new alliance with the Franks, 57. Treachery against Asado'ddin discovered, and beheaded, 58.  
 Shaybek, khan, drives Badi out of Khorassan, ii. 602  
 Shayzar castle taken from the Romans by Sedido'ddawlat, ii. 170  
 Sheba, its queen supposed to be an Abyssinian, vi. 168. Her visit to king Solomon, and hath a son by him, 219. Whether queen of Abyssinia or Meroe, 222 & (B). Her reign and descendants, 251  
 Shebib revolts against Abdal Malek, i. 335. Joins Saleh at Daras, 336. Defeats Al Kareth at Modbaj, ib. Defeated and drowned, with fables about his mother, 337  
 Sheep, dreadful appearance of a monstrous, i. 588  
 Shehriar, the youngest son of Jehan Ghir, commands his forces against the rebel Khurm, with his success against him, iii. 73. Seized on by Mahobet Khan, 78. Prevailed on to mount the throne, 83. Abandoned by his omras, imprisoned and deprived of his sight, 84. Strangled by Jehan Shah, ib.  
 She-ku, stones, why so called, and removed to Peking, ii. 403 (B).  
 She-kya, author of the Siamese religion. (See Shaka.) iii. 341  
 Sheldon's injustice to Perrin, iv. 347, & sub (A).  
 Shelyemen, Shiramon, declared Oktay's successor, ii. 349 & 350. Undermined by his mother-in-law, 352. Set aside by the Mongul states, 354. Plots against Mengko's life, 355. (See under Shiramon.)  
 Shellif river in Algiers, vii. 213  
 Shells, curious, despised by the Japanese, iv. 45  
 Shem Tob, rabbi, his character and writings, with several of that name, v. 560 sub not.  
 Shemin-doo, king of Pegu, assumes the title of Banna, iii. 251 & (E). The betrayer of Prom to Pava Mandara, 258. Recovers strength after Para's death, 259. Defeats the usurper Shemin, besieges and slays him, 260. Remounts the throne, ib. Defeated by Chau Migrem, ib. Brought in chains to him, and inhuman treatment from him, 261. Shameful execution, but honourable obsequies, 252.  
 — Governor of Zatan revolts against the Barmas, iii. 258. Assassinate their king, and seizes on the kingdom of Pegu, ib. His tyranny and defeat, 260. Besieged in his capital, and slain in a sally, ib.  
 Shem-kun slain by Timur Bek, ii. 502  
 She-mo-kyen undermines the brave Yelu, ii. 337.  
 Shen-ko, prince of Lyau-tong, taken into favour by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 327  
 Shen-si invaded by the Mungls, ii. 347  
 — a province of China described, and how divided, iii. 546. Golden sand, and infested with locusts, ib.  
 Shepherds, their irruption into Spain, &c. who and whence, v. 557 & (A).



- She-pi commands the Mungl navy against Qua-wa, ii. 392.  
 Outwitted by the king of it, ib. Disgraced and punished by Kublay, ib.
- Sherira, a famous rabbi, his character and writings, v. 531 & (E).
- Sherzib, khan, his brave defence of Peyshur, but taken and put to death by Nadir Shah, iii. 124
- She-tyen-che, his vast army against Syang-vang, ii. 367. Valour and success, 369. Death and noble advice to Kublay, 374
- Shettam Pettou, the capital of Karnata, ruined by the Moguls, iii. 177
- Shew-fu, emperor of Kin, makes peace with Hya, ii. 326. Invaded by the Mungls, 327. Offers of peace rejected by Oktay, 340. Deceived by vain hopes, Gan-yong becomes treacherous to him, 341. In new distress from the Song, 342. His army destroyed by the Mungls, and capital besieged by Suputay, he retires to Quey-tefu, 343. Betrayed and insulted by two of his generals, ib. Pusillanimity, ib. Pu-cha-quen's brave action, ib. Insensibility and vanity, 344. His court besieged, and his brave defence, 345. Resigns the crown to Cheng-lin, ib. Burns himself to death, 346
- Shebani, first khan of the Usbecks in Russia, but uncertain where settled, with his sons, successors, and cities, ii. 706
- Shiay, one of the two Mahometan sects in Persia, ii. 651
- Shidasku, king of Tangut, defeated by Jenghis Khan, ii. 328. Murdered, together with his family, by his order, 329, & 330 (B).
- Shilimi, shah of Arracan, outwitted by the Portuguese, iii. 272. Defeated and driven out of his kingdom, ib. & (E). Forced to redeem his son from Brito, 274
- Shimsha, rabbi, (See Simon Luzati) v. 597
- Shin (Chew) confirmed king of Korea, iii. 754. Embassy to the Chinese emperor, 755
- Shin-tsin-vang, emperor of China, his slothful reign, iii. 696
- Shin-tsong diverted from a Tartaric war, iii. 720
- , of the twenty-first dynasty, his excellent reign, iii. 728
- Shin-yang, a province of Tartary, its government, extent, &c. iii. 459. Capital, the residence of the Manchew general, 460. The imperial sepulchres near it, ib. Its soil and produce, ib.
- Shir, Khan, seizes on the government of Panjab, attacks and defeats sultan Humayun, iii. 54. His other conquests, 55
- Afghan slain by Sheykh Ghiathoddin, iii. 66 & notes.
- Shiramun (She-lye-men) discovered and punished, ii. 355. His mother and relations put to death, 356.
- Shiraz city and kingdom submit to Togrol Bek, i. 654. To Timur Bek, ii. 519
- Shirin, one of Mahomet's concubines, i. 116
- Shirley, William, appointed governor of New England in Mr. Belcher's room, xiv. 535
- , general, his operations against Niagara, and his character, xiv. 708. Marches first to Oswego, and the disadvantages he had to encounter, what, ib. Expedition deferred, and he returns, 709. Some account of the reasons why it proved ineffectual, ib.
- Shiruyeh, or Siroes, deprives his father Parviz of his crown and life, i. 19. His death, 75
- Shirwan reduced by Timur Bek, ii. 517. Invaded by Tokatmish and by Timur Bek, 535. Subdued by Abbas Shah, 610
- Shi-tsong, Shin-tsong, or Van-lye, forbids the commerce in horses with the Mungls, great success against them, ii. 437
- Shi-tsong, emperor of China, a great promoter of agriculture, iii. 718
- XIth of the Ming dynasty, his success against the Tartars, &c. iii. 727. Ill conduct and death, ib.
- XIII. defeats the Tartars, iii. 728. A grievous famine under him, and pretended favour to the Japanese, ib. Invaded by the Tartars, his defeat and death, 729
- Shi-tsu-vu-ti founds the seventh Chinese dynasty, with his conquests, ill conduct, and death, iii. 706. Found the Tartaric dynasty in China, and fatal expedition against Japan, with an universal kalendar, the great canal to Peking, and his death, 723
- Shi-wang-ti, emperor of China, his successful reign, and cruel revenge against the king of Tsi, iii. 697 & (Z). Builds the famous Chinese wall, and destroys the ancient records, ib. Reforms the government, and dies, 698.
- Shiz, Zerdusht's birth-place, taken by Al Mogheirah, i. 242. Why stiled Pyreum, 243
- Shijtes, a sect of Moslems, opposed to that of Kharejites, with their chief tenets, i. 277. The various sects among them, ib. Extravagant notions about Ali, 278. Some others of as strange tenets, 516
- Shoripam-shay (Sheminjoo) chosen king of the revolted Peguers, iii. 257. Defeated with terrible slaughter, 258
- Shombo (Chombo) chosen king of Melinda, but deposed, vi. 350
- Shomer, or Shamer, sent by Yezid to engage Hosein, i. 305. Success and cruel behaviour to him, 306. Put to death by Al Mokhtar, 326
- Shonkar, a strange Mongolian bird described, ii. 249
- Sho-fe-kyen, an infamous minister of Towhan Temur, curbed by Polo Temur, ii. 428, and 430. Delivered up to him, 431
- Sho-tay rebels against his father, and put to death, iii. 693
- Shotepala succeeds his father in the Ywen empire, with his partiality to his wicked minister, ii. 405. Listens to better counsel, and visits his ancestors tombs, 406. Censured for his zeal to Fo, 407. Assassinated by Tye-she, ib.
- Shovel, Sir Cloudesly, miscarries in his attempt on Dunkirk, xi. 645
- Shudderi, of Indostan, their tribes, customs, &c. iii. 26
- Shukel defeated and slain by Timur Bek, ii. 539
- Shun-chi (see under Sunchi) takes into his own hands the reins of the Chinese empire, and gains the hearts of the people, iii. 736. Encourages learning and the Christians, with his ill reception of the Czarish and Dutch ambassadors, 737. Dies of grief, 739. Last words to F. Schaal, ibid.
- Shun-te-fu, a first rate city in Pecheli, iii. 527
- Shun-ti, the Chinese name of Towhan Temur, ii. 414. See Towhan.
- , emperor of China, his great victories over the Tartars, and defeats the rebel army of vagabonds, iii. 704.
- the last of the eighth dynasty murdered, iii. 708.
- last emperor of the Tartar dynasty, driven out of China by Chu, iii. 724
- Shuster taken by Sofi Ismael, ii. 602
- Shun-tsong, his short reign in China, iii. 714
- Shute, colonel Samuel, made governor of New England, xiv. 532. Part of his speech to the assembly, ib. His complaint against the New Englanders in seven articles, 533. Five of them admitted, and an explanatory charter for ascertaining the other two, ib.
- Shuzib's revolt against caliph Omar, i. 357
- Shwi-chew, a chief city in Kyan-fi, iii. 532
- Siam, or Sornau empire, its distracted state, and given to a natural brother of the murdered king, iii. 256. Invaded by the king of Barma, 257. Subdued by him, 262. Kingdom described, 311. Mistakes about its true situation, ib. Mountains surrounding it, with its gulph, ports, and rivers, 313. Produce, amber, mines, &c. 314. Loadstones, seasons, and floods, 315. Monsoons, and computation of time, ib. and notes. Various grain, pulse, flowers, ib. Living creatures, with the division of upper and lower, and provinces of each, 316. Inland cities, ib. On the coasts, 319. Islands, 320. King poisoned by his faithless queen, who is slain with her paramour, 256. Royal palace described, 317. Hall of audience, and other apartments, 318. Pleasure-barges, ib. Gradual ascent, and pyramids, 328
- , or Scythra, the metropolis of Siam, described, and its palace, iii. 317. Situation, ib. Often besieged, 318. Siam conquered by Chaumigrem, 359. Revolts under Rajah Api, and flourishes under him, ib. Loses several of his conquests, and embassy to Goa, 360. Returned by the Portuguese, ib. Obscurity about the true succession, and confusion under an usurper, 362. Poverty of the kingdom and court, 382. Of the grandees, &c. and severe punishment inflicted on them by the king, 383. Barrenness of the country, 404. Secrecy of their court, with the small revenue and commerce of their kings, ib.
- Siamese, their extraction, number, and conditions, iii. 325. Privileges, posts, and titles of honour, 326. Character of the men, ib. Of the women, with the shape and dress of the men, 327. Also of the women, ib. Houses, and plain furniture, 328. Royal palace, ib. Diet and other provisions, 329. Diseases, lazy life, and diversions, ib. Hunting of elephants, carriages by land and water, 330. Balons, or pleasure-boats, ib. Marriages, and education of children, 331. Posture of respect, ib. Astronomy, 332. Notion of the world, music, &c. 333. Manufactures, commerce, weights, &c. ib. Funeral obsequies, ib. Religion, notions of the soul and future state, 334. Divinity books, and moral precepts, 335. Worship of idols, and



- and they hold all religions good, 336. Their priests, or talapoys (see Talapoys) *ib.* Their temples and temples, festivals, offerings, and other superstitions, 341. From whom derived, *ib.* Various dignities in the army, and other titles, 343. Without salary, and oath of fidelity how taken, 344. Written laws, judges, and various kinds of governors, *ib.* Law-suits, how carried on, and ordeals when and how used, 345. Capital punishments, 346. Princes how executed, and smaller punishments, *ib.* Officers of state the only nobles, with their badges, and other marks of distinction, titles, and authority, 347. Attendance on court, 348. Reception and treatment of ambassadors, *ib.* Kings, their names why concealed, and high titles, 349. Queen and other women, succession, guards, and female attendants, *ib.* Processions by land and water, 350. Distrustful state, *ib.* Rigour to their brethren, *ib.* Forces, elephants, and want of martial discipline, 351. Fear of shedding blood, *ib.* Are without fortresses, with their small naval strength and revenues, 352. Engross the whole trade of the kingdom, *ib.* Ancient state fabulous and maimed, with the number of their kings, 353. Dominions invaded by the king of Chiammay, *ib.* These defeated by the Siamese monarch, 354. And invaded by him in turn, *ib.* & (E). His success and return to his capital, *ib.* Poisoned by his adulterous wife, and causes his son to be proclaimed and installed, 355. His excellent character, *ib.* Pompous funeral, *ib.* The treacherous queen made regent, with her cruelties to the nobles, 356. Poisons the young king, and marries her paramour; but both are murdered the following year, and Pretium elected king, 357. Repulses the invading Barmas, 358.
- Siammon, what is meant by that country, *iii.* 254 & (O).
- Siantar, prince, revolts and invades Myen-si, *ii.* 385
- Siapushes, in India, invaded by Timur Bek, and destroyed, *ii.* 542
- Siara, captainry in Brasil, described, *xiv.* 478. Also the town, and fort St. Luke, *ib.*
- Siavend taken by Abdol Khan, *iii.* 68
- Siberia, included under the name of Tartary, &c. *xiii.* 27 (S). Rivers Wolga, Yaik, Yem, and Iihun, described, *ib.* or the northern and eastern parts of Great Tartary described, with its extent, name, and ancient inhabitants, *xiii.* 33 & (C). Climate piercing cold, *ib.* (X). & (I). Account of the Aurora-borealis here, *ib.* (H). Intense heat in summer, with its soil and produce, 34. Wild fowl, and wild beasts, *ib.* Minerals, precious stones, and magnets, 35. Salt lakes and springs, natural curiosities, 36. Mountains and inhabitants, 37. The first inhabitants who, *ib.* Cedar, and its cones, 56 (C). Russian inhabitants, 41. General mistake as to state prisoners sent thither, *ib.* Trade of Siberia, and the country how subjected to the Russian government, 42, 128. Its present government, and division into three provinces, *ib.*
- Sibucan, a kind of Brasil wood in Manila, *iv.* 189
- Sibuyan island, near the Philippines, described, *iv.* 197
- Sicardo V. succeeds his father Sico in Benevento, and his character, *x.* 380. Makes war on the Neapolitans, and concludes a peace with them, *ib.* The articles of this treaty, with some of the conditions, *ib.* (D). The Saracens from Sicily landing at Brindisi, rout Sicardo by stratagem, but he coming with a reinforcement, they retire, and he reduces Amalfi, 381. His cruel and tyrannical disposition; he is murdered by his nobles, *ib.*
- Sicilians revolt against their emir Hagan, with their severe punishment, *i.* 550. Drive the Africans out of the island, 639. Massacre the French, and are put under an interdict, *ix.* 648. Defeat Charles's eldest son, and detain him prisoner, with the death of his father, *ib.* Refuse their assent to the treaty between James of Arragon, and Charles; and, upon James's renunciation, chuse his brother Frederic their king, 451. Answer to the pope's carte blanche, *x.* 452
- Sicily invaded by the Arabs, *i.* 453. By Mahomet Ebn Aglab, 465. Defeated with great loss, 466, and mulcted for a revolt, 521
- invaded by Maniaces, *i.* 640. Reduced to great straits, 646. With the method for preventing them by the pope, *x.* 426. Some places there surrender to the duke of Calabria; but his brother the prince of Tarento, is defeated and taken prisoner by Frederic at Falconara, 455. Again invaded, and ravages committed there; there the Neapolitan fleet fails to assist the Genoese, who also attempt it unsuccessfully, 458. Another invasion, but ineffectual, 459. On the death of its regent two parties formed, 462. Hostilities between the Hungarians and loyalists; the affairs of the latter declining, and a truce between both parties, *ib.* Italian party in that island submit to the king of Naples, but Messina refuses, with the success of their galleys against those of Naples, 464. The emperor conquers it, *xiii.* 559. Pays no regard to the capitulation granted Tancred's widow, *ib.* Affairs, and an account of the massacre of the French, called the Sicilian vespers, through John de Procida, *xiii.* 286
- Sico made prince of Benevento, *ix.* 519
- IV. succeeds Grimoald II. in Benevento, and renews the treaty with Lewis the Good, *x.* 379. He invests Naples, after declaring war, but duke Stephen submits upon a breach being made, which the Neapolitans repairing, defend themselves very obstinately, but Sico agrees to a peace, by which the Neapolitans become tributary, 380. Death, and inscription on his tomb still extant, *ib.* In his reign the Saracens first infect Sicily, and the coasts of Italy, *ib.* (C).
- Siconulphus invites the Saracens from Spain, but in detestation of their barbarities has recourse to the Franks; from whom having no assistance, the Saracens lay waste the territories of both sides, *x.* 382.
- Sidan, Sharif, supposed to have poisoned his father, with his wars against the Arabs, *vii.* 187. Commits horrid butcheries, and rebels against his father, 193. Murdered by the king's order, 194
- Sidney, Sir Philip, killed in attacking a convoy to Zutphen, *xi.* 433
- Sidon, now Sayda, surrenders to the crusaders, *ii.* 180
- Sidzio, the eighty-sixth emperor of Japan, *iv.* 58
- Siddi, the grand, defeated by the pirate Angria, *iii.* 149. Gives him his daughter, 150
- Sienna surrendered after a long siege, and Montluc refuses to sign the capitulation, and the issue, *ix.* 241
- its surrender to the Imperialists, and a truce with Philip of Spain, *x.* 350
- council, its proceedings, *ix.* 714. Is dissolved, and another appointed to meet at Basil, *ib.*
- , district and city described, *xiii.* 271
- , Maremma di, district described, *xiii.* 271. Total flight of the army before it, 514
- Siennese, a strong place near Arezzo, seized by them, *xiii.* 349. War there, and how the duke of Urbino retreats from Sienna, 497. War carried on there, *ib.*
- Sierra Leona, cape, when, and by whom discovered, *iv.* 112
- Sioux Indians, westward of Lake Superior, account of them, *xiv.* 598. Their cruel treatment of the Hurons, who took shelter among them, *ib.* Good character from the missionaries, *ib.* Account of them, and their neighbours, 606. Moving speech of one of their deputies, the ceremony thereon, and little effect, 655. A copper mine discovered by le Soeur among them, its produce, *xv.* 18. Mine described, *ib.*
- savages, where situate, *xv.* 47. Further account of them, 49
- Sigan fu, or Kin-tau, taken by the Mungls, *ii.* 336
- Sigar, thirty-fifth king of Denmark, succeeds his father Siwald, *xi.* 675. Commits the government to his brother Alfo, *ib.* Fate in a battle with Haco, the fourth of the Hibernian princes, 676
- Sigebert defeats the Huns, also Chilperic and his son Theobert, *viii.* 630. Sigebert's character, and marriage with Brunehaut, *ib.* Assassinated, 633
- II. first king of Austrasia, account of his reign, *viii.* 651. Reputed a saint after his death, *ib.*
- Sigefroy, first margrave of Brandenburg, and the different families since, down to that of Hohenzollern, *xv.* 489. With an account of these, *ib.*
- Sigibrette renders Christian II. odious to the Danes by raising the supplies, *xii.* 139. Her abolition of the Mendicant students, raises a violent clamour, *ib.* Her influence over Christian II. 141
- Sigismund, king of Hungary, forms a league against Bajazet, *v.* 168
- , brother to the emperor Winceslaus, his valour and capacity, who ascends the throne of Hungary, *xi.* 62. Assisted against Bajazet by count de Nevers, and the constable d'Eu, with a body of troops, and the Turks beat him at Nicopolis, *ix.* 124. Demur between him and Charles of Burgundy, *xi.* 108. Forfeits the good will of the Bohemians, by tyrannizing over their consciences, 88. And resolving upon this to quit the kingdom, he is seized with a distemper from poison, *ib.* The empress's intrigues with the barons about the succession, and a regulation made accordingly, *ib.* The emperor carried to Znaim, in Moravia,



via, and after arresting the empress, settles the succession on his son-in law Albert of Austria, and dies, *ibid.* Account of his person and character, with his rebuke on occasion of disputing the rank of a learned lawyer he had knighted, *ib.* (C).

Sigismund, John, king of Hungary, and war with the Turks renewed, xv. 407

— brother to Wenceslaus, after Jodocus's death, succeeds him as emperor (see Sigismund of Hungary and Bohemia) xi. 71. Retrospective account of this prince, and his education in Hungary, *ib.* He enters Italy in favour of Visconti, but repulsed from Tolletino's camp, x. 244, 287. He marches against the Venetians in Dalmatia, but concludes a peace, advances into Lombardy, and confers with pope John's legates, xi. 75. His proceedings towards convoking a council traversed by the two antipopes, *ib.* Enters Lombardy, ix. 705. Arrival at Constance, 706. Reconciled to the duke of Austria, 709. Has a conference at Perpignan, with Benedict XIII. who refuses to abdicate, and so loses his adherents, 710

— makes a tour to Paris, with its views and issue, ix. 124, 135

—, vast army obliged to raise the siege of Prague, being five times defeated by the Hussites, with loss of baggage and artillery, ix. 714. Crowned at Milan, x. 2. Crowned at Rome, arrives at Basil, 5. Receives at Basil an embassy from the Turks, 7. Complaining of the council, leaves Basil, 8. Crowned at Prague, but violates the private treaty there with the Hussites, 10. Marches with a powerful army into Hungary, where he is received with open arms, xi. 72. His queen Mary is set at liberty by Hionard on conditions, after whose return to her husband at Offen, he is crowned, and revenges his mother-in-law's death on Hionard and his accomplices, *ib.* He loses his queen, and resolves to punish those concerned in inviting Charles Durazzo to the throne, *ib.* They are all apprehended, and sent in fetters to the king at Offen, who, on account of their disrespect to him, puts them immediately to death, 73. Through his indolence and misadministration confined, *ib.* Prevails on his keeper to set him at liberty, with the conditions, *ib.* He retires to Bohemia, returns with an army, and resumes his authority, comporting himself with clemency and affability ever after, 74. Being called to the empire, he sets out, and resolves to remedy the confusions in Germany, *ib.* Alienates the electorate of Brandenburg to Frederic, burgrave of Nuremberg, with the valuable consideration for it, and grants Nuremberg the privilege of keeping the Imperial regalia, *ib.* & (R). Effects an accommodation between William count de Berg, and Theodoric de Meurs, with the occasion and condition, *ib.* His exhortation to Wenceslaus for reforming his conduct ineffectual, *ib.* After his coronation repairs with his empress, &c. to Constance, 75. Grants John Huss a safe-conduct to Constance, *ib.* After assisting as a deacon at midnight mass in Constance, by the pope, and giving an account of his negotiations with the anti-popes, leaves the fathers to a free deliberation, *ib.* Repairs to France, and then to England, yet his proposal for a truce why rejected, 77 & (X). He makes a treaty with Henry VII. and the terms, 77. Erects Savoy into a duchy, *ib.* Various expedients by which that emperor raises money, and the pope's remuneration for his pains, 78. Acknowledged king of Bohemia, who confers the regency on his brother's widow, *ib.* Zisca, general of the Hussites, his courage and conduct in several skirmishes, who by a stratagem defeats the emperor's troops, 79. Puts the frontiers of Hungary into a posture of defence against the Turks, who turn their arms against the Greeks, and he sends succours to the regent, who by that means obtains a truce from the Hussites, but a general revolt ensues, 80. Entering Bohemia, in an attack on Prague, is repulsed with great slaughter by Zisca, and obliged to retreat into Moravia, *ib.* And his whole army cut to pieces in relieving Wisrahde citadel, *ib.* Proposals of accommodation with the Bohemians rejected, *ib.* Several times worsted by Zisca, is obliged to fly to Hungary, 89. At Buda pronounces a final sentence in favour of Eric of Denmark, and determines a dispute between the duke of Savoy, and prince of Orange, xii. 91. The successes of the Thaborites and orphans. Coribut being shut up in a monastery, that emperor sends deputies to Procopius for peace, xi. 82. A truce agreed to, and a diet convoked at Presburg, *ib.* Procopius's demands there, and the emperor's answer looked on as evasive, the negotiation is frustrated, and hostilities recommence, 83. On account of

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

continual alarms from the Turks, has an interview with the king of Poland and duke of Lithuania at Lunika, with the issue, 84. Resolves to erect Lithuania into a kingdom, which is opposed by the king and the Poles, but the grand duke dies at Trocko, *ib.* He creates John Francisco Gonzaga, marquis of Mantua, and quits Italy in enmity to the duke of Milan, and in friendship with the Venetians, 86. On the duke of Milan's invitation for repairing to Italy, is crowned there, *ib.* Why incensed against Philip, duke of Milan, but dissembles his resentment, *ib.* Compromises the difference between the pope and fathers at Basil, *ib.* Makes an accommodation with the Bohemian lords about church lands, and is crowned at Prague, with the residue of the Thaborites reduced, and Gratz, after a long siege, submits on honourable terms, 87. After the empress's coronation as queen of Bohemia, Sigismund regulates the police of the kingdom, and enlists the remains of the Hussites to be employed in Hungary against the Turks, whom they utterly defeat, *ib.* His marriages, and Elizabeth the only issue, 89 (D).

Sigismund, husband of Mary, marches with an army into Hungary, and declared king, xv. 398. Reduces the rebels, and marches against the Walachians, who submit, but again revolting are assisted by some Turks from Thrace, *ib.* Marches with a vast army against Bajazet, *ib.* His impious boast, and information why given Bajazet by John Galeas, *ib.* & (I). The king entirely defeated, and the Hungarians revolt against him in favour of Ladislaus, 399. Sigismund imprisoned, *ib.*

—, of Hungary, defeats the Venetians, and succeeds his brother in Bohemia, xv. 399. Defeated in five engagements by the Hussites, quits that kingdom, *ib.* The Turks ravages in Hungary repressed, he is crowned at Milan and Rome, 400. The Hussites submitting, he is crowned king of Bohemia, *ib.* Dies after appointing Albert of Austria, his successor to that and Hungary, *ib.*

— king of Bohemia, gives no hopes of toleration to the Hussites, who take several places, xv. 458. Repulsed by them from Prague, with their successful campaigns under Zisca, and on his death under Procopius, 459. Who is defeated and killed, with the barbarity of the Bohemian lords against his followers, *ib.* Allows the use of the cup, and other private articles, is solemnly received into Prague, and dies, *ib.*

—, prince of Sweden, and Maximilian of Austria, both proclaimed kings of Poland, xii. 501. Generosity with regard to the latter's release, 502. Maximilian's ingratitude; but his brother the emperor obliges him to fulfil every part of the treaty, *ib.*

Sigismund, prince, elected king of Poland, and the conditions, xii. 302. In room of his brother Alexander, 484. Reforms several abuses, *ib.* Difficulties about his election, and the king persuaded to sign some articles proposed by the senate, 303. Great disputes arise on the prince's arrival in Poland, with the young king's public declaration, *ib.* Poles dissatisfied at his intimation of visiting his native country, and the Swedes request against it, *ib.* And both are recalled to their dominions, *ib.* Accommodation between him and the empress Elizabeth, *ib.* His marriage, 305 (A). Obtains leave from the Polish diet to return to Sweden, and on his arrival causes new disturbances, and the occasion, 307. Remonstrance of the states to him, and the king's promises upon certain conditions, 308. He returns to Poland, with the origin of the commotions preceding Sigismund's deposition, and duke Charles's accession, 309. Exhortation by letter to the inhabitants of Uplandia, *ib.* That king devolves the administration of Sweden on the senate, 310. Success, and crowds flock to the king's standard at Calmar, while the duke uses persuasions with the king, 311. His remonstrances have no effect, and after several skirmishes, the duke defeats the king, yet he concludes a treaty with his majesty, *ib.* Returns to Poland, where he publishes reports to the duke's prejudice, with the measures taken by the latter at Stockholm, 312. Affairs are unsuccessful every where, 313. A scheme formed by him for seizing on Gustavus frustrated, 319. His vain attempts on Gustavus's camp, 321.

— I. successes against the Russians, and others, xii. 484. Defeats the Russians a second time, with his further successes against the marquis of Brandenburg, grand master of the Teutonic order, and favourable conditions given him, *ib.* Declines giving any positive assurances to Demetrius, but leaves his nobles to do as they pleased, xiii. 134. His death and character, with his Latin epitaph, xii. 486 (A).



- Sigismund Augustus II. succeeds his father Sigismund I. in the throne of Poland, xii. 487. His wife administration obliterates all bad impressions from his marrying an obscure widow, *ib.* His wars with the Muscovites, who are auxiliaries to the Livonian knights, and the accommodation of the latter with Sigismund, *ib.* Death and character, 488. In him the Jagello male line is extinct, 489. Account of his two sisters, and their marriage, *ib.* (A).
- III. or de Vasa, is established king of Poland, without a competitor, and his policy with regard to venality, and the diet's answer, xii. 503. Their other ordinances, *ib.* War with the Tartars, who are defeated by the Cossacks under Zamoski, *ib.* Succeeds to the crown of Sweden on the death of his father John, and comes to Sweden, 504. But is strongly tied up from making any changes in religion in that kingdom, *ib.* Returns to Sweden with the Polish troops, 505. An accident alienates the Swedes from him, *ib.* Enters Russia in person, with his success, 509. All his endeavours are fruitless, and his conduct vindicated, with the disturbances in the neighbouring countries, in which he takes part, 511. A war with the Turks occasioned thereby, *ib.* Some advantages on his side, 515. Sigismund and the senate made the dupes of the house of Austria, hostilities recommence, 516. Sigismund's death and character, 517.
- , brother to Vitoldus, made duke of Lithuania, by Jagello, and treacherously slain by the czar, xii. 646.
- Signa, Sigar's daughter, her fate, xi. 676.
- Signak, or Saganac, a city of Turkestan, taken and put to the sword by Tushii, ii. 147.
- Signor, Grand, (see Sultan) becomes guarantee of a treaty between the czar and khan of Tartary, xiii. 174.
- Sigtrug succeeds Frotho, king of Sweden, xii. 218.
- Sigonius' history of Bologna, where ending, xiii. 597.
- Si-hu, the pleasant lake in Che kyang, described, iii. 540.
- Siira Kava, the seventy-second emperor of Japan, iv. 57.
- Silesia, its states join the Bohemian malecontents, xi. 197. Pardoned, 205. Loan negotiated in England by prince Eugene, 335.
- Siliki, the son of Menko, his success against Hu-pi-lay, ii. 379. Defeated and slain by Li-ting, *ib.*
- Silk manufacture in China described, iii. 618. Worms, how reared and managed, 619 & (L).
- Silo, Don, succeeds in the Spanish monarchy, with his peaceable reign and death, vii. 596 & (F).
- Silva, Philip II. of Spain's favourite, his death and character, viii. 264.
- Silvanedi, a city of Pegu, iii. 239.
- Silveira, Gonzalo de, sent with Oviedo into Abyssinia, vi. 273. Baptizeth the emperor and empress of Monomotapa, 374. Murdered for a magician, *ib.*
- Silver, whether its export be detrimental to Europe, iv. 81. 216. Arguments pro and con, *ib.* More exported from the West Indies than will answer that, 82. Less exports now than formerly, 84. Become cheaper by the East-India trade, 85.
- Silves, in Portugal, taken by some English adventurers, viii. 388.
- Sillebar, an English settlement, described, iv. 398.
- Sima, the Sajian general, revolts against Al Kaher, with his success, i. 28.
- Si-me, empress of Japan, her reign, iv. 54.
- Simeon, the Ethiopian Abuna, committed to the instruction of the Jesuits, vi. 286.
- Rabbi, compiler of the famous Jalkut, v. 602 (Q). Convent taken by Saado'ddawla, and the monks put to the sword by him, i. 589.
- Simon, prince of Georgia, quarrels with his brother David, and sent prisoner to Jengha, ii. 605 & (G). Restored and made khan by Mohammed Shah, 607.
- Stylites, whence so called, v. 509 & (C). And obtains a decree against the Jews, *ib.* A Christian child canonized, causes a persecution against the Jews, 592 & (M).
- , or Simeon, the second pretended Jewish patriarch, and an odd legend about him, v. 486 sub (N).
- II. succeeds Gamaliel in that dignity, v. 487, sub not.
- , Luzati, or rabbi Shimsha, a learned Jew, his works, v. 597.
- , count of Claramonte, his reception by Lewis of Naples, and death, x. 465.
- island, in Georgia, described, xv. 105.
- Simoni, a noble Christian slave, saves the city of Tunis, vii. 324. Gallant reception from Charles V. *ib.*
- Sin, a kingdom of Guinea, described, with the English factory and fort there, vii. 80.
- Sinai, among the Brammans, who, iii. 211.
- Sinan, a Magian, revolts against caliph Jussuf, but defeated i. 389.
- Basna, enters the port of Maltha, vii. 462. Lays siege to the capital, *ib.* Deceived by a stratagem, 463. Raises the siege, he besieges and plunders Gofa, 464. Sails for Tripoli, and detains the French ambassador, 465.
- , grand vizir, his progress in Hungary stopped by a powerful confederacy, by which the body of Turks and Tartars there are totally ruined, xi. 177.
- Sincapura island offered to, but refused by captain Hamilton, iii. 324.
- Sin-chew, defended by Peyen-pu-wha, is taken by Yew-lyang, ii. 427.
- Sinchi Roca II. inca of Peru, succeeds his father Manco Capac, xiv. 378. Marriage, and dividing his empire into four quarters, and those again into lesser districts, *ib.* The decurions province, *ib.* His regulations, 379. Reason of his name, *ib.* Declares his intention of enlarging the empire by an expedition in person, and the motive what, *ib.* His success, and he dies, 380.
- Sin-ching taken by the Mongls, ii. 371.
- Sinchiroca sent towards Copayapac, who sends summons to the natives, and these begin hostilities, but on a reinforcement arriving, they submit, xiv. 407. Advances, and gains footing in Chili valley, *ib.* Battle continued six days successively, and both sides draw off, without yielding an inch, 408. The inca's power fairly foiled for the first time, *ib.*
- Sinclair, major, his catastrophe, xii. 422.
- , general, some strictures on his character, who with Lestock makes a weak attempt on Port l'Orient in Old France, xiv. 697. Unsuccessful, xv. 618.
- Sind, Sindi, or Indus (see Indus) iii. 2, 12. A province of Indostan, 13.
- , a tower, the land-mark of the mouth of the Indus, iii. 14.
- Sindi kingdom reduced by sultan Akber, iii. 61.
- Sindia kingdom reduced under caliph Al Walid, i. 344.
- Si'ngan-fu, the capital of Shen-si, its famous walls, and a Christian monument found there, iii. 547 & (L). Its stupendous highway, *ib.*
- Sing-ki, taken and honoured by the rebels, dies of his wounds, ii. 424.
- Singor, a sea-port of Siam, iii. 320.
- Sinin, the 112th emperor of Japan, iv. 62.
- Sinku-cogu, fifteenth empress of Japan, her reign, iv. 51. Why honoured as a goddess, *ib.*
- Sink-vo, ninety-eighth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 59.
- Sin-mu, first emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 50 & (F).
- Sino, on the Grain-coast, described, vii. 12.
- Sio-mu, the forty-fifth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 55.
- Sion, cardinal, obliged to fly from the resentment of the Swifs, x. 310.
- Sioux Indians described, xiv. 565.
- language, its original property, what, xiv. 566. See Sieux.
- Sir, or Daria, a river of Karazm, ii. 712.
- Siraf, where sited, and taken by the Moslems, i. 244.
- , a great trading city in Pars, i. 600.
- Sirbullind, khan, is alone admitted to Nadir Shah, iii. 127. Appointed to raise the tribute, 129. Commits horrid cruelties in doing it, 130.
- Sirjan taken by Timur Bek, ii. 539.
- Sirian, a city of Pegu, iii. 239. Its port, with its ancient and present state, 241. Dangerous navigation, *ib.*
- , port in Pegu, given to the Portuguese, iii. 272.
- Siseboc persecutes the Jews in Spain, v. 520 & (D).
- Sisebut, king of the Visigoths, his success against his revolted subjects, and great preparations against the Imperialists, vii. 552. Obliges them to a peace on his own terms, 553 & (L). Recovers many fortresses from them, 554. Great success in Barbary, *ib.* Deposes the bishop of Barcelona, and his death, *ib.*
- Sifegaledrii, Russians under him take Narva, and Dorpt, also over-run Livonia, xiii. 105.
- Sisenaud, king of the Visigoths, gets Suintila's deposition confirmed, vii. 557 & (P). Other transactions during his reign, *ib.* And death, 558.
- Sisium taken and razed by Azid, i. 341.
- Sistan taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 514. Country subdued, 515.
- Sissimur subdued to Jehan Ghir, iii. 68.
- Sitama Racha Pra seizes on the Siamese throne, but slain, and is succeeded by his nephew, iii. 366.



Siulki (Suelki) mountain in Mongolia, ii. 247  
 Siun-va, the fifty-third emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 55  
 Siu-siun, the thirty-third emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 53  
 Siu-toku, the seventy-fifth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 57  
 Siu-zaku, the sixty-first emperor of Japan, defeats the rebel Maffakado, iv. 56.  
 —, the sixty-ninth emperor, his reign, iv. 57  
 Siwald chosen thirty-fourth king of Denmark, after his father Unguin, xi. 675. His transactions and death variously related, with his issue and heroic spirit, ib. & (I).  
 — II. chosen thirty-sixth king of Denmark, after his father Sigar, xi. 676. Slain in a bloody battle with Haco, an Hibernian prince, as is the latter also, ib.  
 — III. succeeds Brode, forty-fourth king of Denmark, xi. 680. Obliges the revolted provinces to submit, and defeats the king of Gothland, carrying off his daughter, wife to the king of Sweden, ib. Bloody war ensuing, occasions a severe famine in Denmark, ib. Death in battle, 683  
 Siward succeeds his brother Asmund in the three crowns of Sweden, Gothland, Denmark, &c. he conquers Norway, and kills their king in battle, xii. 225. His cruelties cause a revolt of the Norwegians, whom the Danes join under Regner, ib. Siward is vanquished and slain in the field, and Siward, son of Regner, made king of Norway, ibid.  
 — fortieth king of Denmark, succeeds Omund, xi. 678. How he defeats and kills the king of Sweden in battle, 679. Different accounts of it, ib. & (M). He is slain in battle by his rebellious subjects, ib. Deposed, and his infant son Regner raised to the Danish throne, ib.  
 — snake-eye, fifty-eighth king of Denmark, succeeds his brother Ivar, with his character and death, leaving an only son, an infant, who succeeds, xi. 687  
 — and Ringo, cousins to Hemming, have Denmark divided between them, xi. 683. Siward deposed, and his infant son Regner raised to the throne, ib.  
 — raised to the Swedish crown in the room of his father Halden, xii. 221  
 —, of Sweden, marries his daughter to Frotho, xii. 221. Several bloody battles fought, and after being defeated is killed, 222  
 Sixtus IV. character of that pope, who succeeded Paul II. with his advancing his two sons, xiii. 421. The lustre and power of the popedom at this time, 422. An account of him, x. 36. Several legates splendidly appointed, and destination, ib. Makes two young nephews cardinals, with the excesses and prodigality of one, ib. & (Z). Bad effects of the pope's free disposition, ib. Exerts his endeavours to forward the expedition against the Turks, but frustrated by the emperor, xi. 107. Proceedings in Germany and England, x. 37. Dissuades Matthias from a peace with Mahomet, and confirms the order of Minims, &c. 38. Creates his nephew prince of Imola and Forli, ib. Reception of the king of Denmark and Frederic of Naples in Rome; celebrates a jubilee at Rome and Bologna, ib. Differences between that pope and the king of Naples terminated, 37. Quits Rome on account of a plague, with a bull for the immaculate conception, which several orders contradict, 38. Plot of that pope for assassinating the two Medicis at Florence frustrated, though one is killed, 39. Declares war against the Florentines, who are assisted by the king of France, and the duke of Milan, &c. ib. Embassy from France to this pope, in their favour, and the edict against him, who soothes the king, but is not satisfied, 40. The pope's endeavours for releasing the archbishop of Cologne fruitless, and a bull revoking the power of absolution from all but the apostolic see, ib. Entreaties of Christian princes for the Florentines refused by that pope, but a truce is accepted by them, and they conclude an alliance with Ferdinand of Naples, ib. Concludes an accommodation with the Florentines, the chastisement of their ambassadors, 41. The pope's legate unsuccessful in reconciling the king of France and the emperor's son, ib. The pope's letter for the assistance of the Christian princes has little effect. The king of Scotland stops from invading England, though the English attack Scotland, ib. Through revenge involves Italy in a new war, 42. That pope's ambition, and his son Peter's abilities, whom he employs as his first minister, xiii. 424. All this gives great alarms, and is poisoned, 425. Dies, with an epigram upon him, character, and great disturbances in Rome, x. 43 & (F). Confusion on his death, xiii.

Sixtus V. after much caballing, chosen pope in room of Gregory XIII. with an account of him and his mean birth, x. 115. When made a cardinal he artfully disguises his natural temper, ib. Behaviour at and after his election, ib. Rigid administration of justice, and promoting his relations, 116. Compels the poor to work or quit Rome, and the nobles to pay their debts, ib. Extirpates the banditti, and obliges mayors to send him a list of all vagrants, &c. and confessors to inform him of their penitents crimes, 117. Employs spies at home and abroad, and difference between France and him compromised, ib. Approves the league, and excommunicates the king of Navarre, and prince of Conde, &c. ib. The king appeals to a council, with the pope's character of him and queen Elizabeth, ib. Encourages the latter to protect the Hollanders, ib. Grateful to his former benefactors, with an instance of this to a shoemaker, 118 & (I). Grant to the Jews, v. 596. Makes a promotion of eight cardinals, men of merit, only using the Jesuits as spies, x. 118. Adorns Rome with magnificent structures, and by Fontana erects an antient obelisk, ib. Restores the apostolic authority in Switzerland, &c. 119. Holds a general chapter of Franciscans at Rome, refusing the requests of all the members but one poor lay brother, ib. Erects fifteen congregations of cardinals, with an account of them, ib. & (K). Sends the elector of Cologne a rich hat and sword, 120 & (L). Excommunicates queen Elizabeth, which she retorts on him, 120. Encourages Philip of Spain to invade England, the investiture of which he had given to that prince, ib. Consolatory letter to Philip on the loss of the armada, which he answers, ib. Abolishes the privileges of ambassadors, &c. for protesting malefactors, and receives an embassy from Persia for assistance against the Turks, but unsuccessful, ib. Refuses to assist the duke of Savoy against Geneva, canonizes several, and concludes peace between Poland and Austria, ib. Completes the Vatican library, and tho' seemingly approving Guise's murder, expresses great resentment at that of the cardinal, 121. Praises Henry of France's murderer Clement, ib. Refuses a croisade against the king of Navarre, and his instructions to his ambassador, ib. Publishes an Italian version of the Bible, to the offence of Catholics, and his answer to their remonstrances, 122 & (M). Prevents the king of Spain from calling a council, ib. Aggrandizes his own relations, and refuses to declare for the league, ib. Reformation wrought in Rome, with his answer to the governor, 123 & (N). Makes a sumptuary law, and after threatening to invade Naples, dies, with his character, and immense treasures, ib.  
 Si-was, or Sebaſte, taken and dismantled by the Moguls, ii. 231, and by Timur Bek, 554  
 Skander Abad, a city of Indostan, ii. 12  
 Skelton, the English minister's memorial to the states-general for seizing the disaffected subjects of Great Britain, and the conduct of the Dutch, xi. 633. Recalled, who is succeeded at the Hague by the marquis d'Abbeville, 635  
 Skioldo, when a boy, elected, in room of his father Lothar, fourth king of Denmark, xi. 664. His excellent qualities, ib. & (C). Extraordinary instances of his strength and courage at hunting and boxing, with his success against the Saxons, and lenity, 665. A constant saying of his. He defeats and kills Ringo, who rebelled, and dies, ib.  
 Skirgello, viceroy of Lithuania, his fierce character, xii. 477. Vitowda, a cousin to Uladislaus IV. sent as a check upon him, but he withdraws among the Teutonic knights, with whom he embarks against Lithuania, ib. And with his brother Swidrigello foment divisions against Vitoldus, xii. 643  
 Skirmunt, or Skiermun and Ginvil, succeed their father Mingailus in Lithuania and Polocz, with their character, xii. 626  
 — II. succeeds Poroskavia in Polocz and Lithuania, with his successes against the Russians and Tartars, xii. 627  
 Slacht, universality of that disease in Denmark, xi. 656  
 Slatius, an Arminian minister's declaration on the rack, with the execution of him and several others, xi. 499. The rigour of which proceedings are generally condemned, ib.  
 Slave-coast described, vi. 587. Genius of the natives, ib. & (D). Religion and wars with Popo, 588  
 Slaves or Sclavi of Pomerania, with their confederates defeated near Lunden in Scania, x. 628. Repulsed from Bohemia and Brandenburg, 631. Revolt, 645  
 Sleswick, the emperor Sigismund's sentence relating to it, xii. 91  
 —, or South Jutland, account of it, xi. 652



- Sleswick, death of that duke, leaving behind him his son Valdemar, whose uncle defeats the king before Gortorp, with other fresh troubles, xii. 50. Dispute about it between the king and the dukes of Holstein accommodated, 162
- Slinger's bay on the South sea described, v. 27
- Slippor, Red, his character, and how forced into a peace with the French, xv. 57
- Sloboda, in Russia, explained, xiii. 20 (P).
- Sluys taken by prince Maurice, xi. 469
- Smalcalde, an alliance entered into there by the duke of Saxony, &c. for the mutual defence of the Protestants, and they protest against Ferdinand's election, x. 80. xi. 142
- , the protestants re-assembling there, renew their association, also the persons then present, xi. 147. Ambassadors sent thither from the kings of France and England, with the former's justification for burning some Lutherans unsatisfactory, ib. Henry of England's proposals there joyfully embraced, 147
- Smarta, the fourth sect of Brahmans in India, iii. 217
- Smielgiski's spirited zeal, xii. 595. Through Menzikoff's pride deserts the party of Augustus, others following his example, with the particular occasion, 605
- Smith, captain, his voyage to North Virginia, and map made of it, and how called New England, xiv. 502
- Smolensk government, or White Russia Proper, with its most remarkable places, and capital described, xiii. 11
- Smyrna seized on by Tzakas the Turk, ii. 208. Retaken by Alexis, 209. Taken and ruined by Timur Bek, with the massacre there, 564. (See also vii. 406.)
- Snakes worshipped by the negroes, vi. 600. Their notion of their friendly nature, and virgins consecrated to them, ib. Rich offerings made to them, ib.
- Snelgrave's account of the kingdom of Dahomay, vi. 614 & (E). Description of the king's camp, 615. Reception there, ib. Audience of the king, 616. Remarks on their horrid customs, &c. ib.
- Snio, Siwald's son, is joined with him in the sovereignty of Denmark, xi. 680. Obliges the revolted provinces to submit, and defeats the king of Gothland, carrying off his daughter, wife to the king of Sweden, 681. A bloody war ensuing, occasions a cruel famine in Denmark, ib. Character and death, ib. A large chasm of two hundred and ninety-eight years between him and Gormon, ib. & (B).
- Soba, prince of Chios or Khio, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 564
- Sobieski, John, the Polish diet entrusts the crown army to him, and his glorious victory over the Turks near Cochin, to what owing, xiii. 170. The enemy break through their obligations, but defeated by him through the treachery of the varvodes of Walachia and Moldavia, xii. 531. Sudden arrival at court, to what owing, 532 (I). Draws the character of a prince, but conceals his name, ib. & (K). After great contests a speech by the palatine of Russia determines the choice for Sobieski, 533. Elected king of Poland, and his promotion chiefly from his merit, with an account of him, 534 & (I). Generosity to the queen dowager, and other acts of public spirit, 534. Makes a convention with the czar, and marches against the Turks and Cossacks, with their progress before he comes up, 535. Successes after entering the Ukraine; he is deserted by the Lithuanians and some Poles, with the occasion, ib. Crowned, 537. Is prevailed on by his queen to make alliance with the emperor, and the motives, 538. A treaty accordingly concluded between Leopold and the senate, with the terms, 539. Preparations for war with the Turks, and the correspondence between him and Tekeli, though asserted by the Polish writers, is not confirmed by the best historians or circumstances, ib. The Turks closely invest Vienna, ib. His arrival to its relief, xi. 300. Joins the Imperialists under the duke of Lorraine, and order of battle among the allies from Calenberg mountains, ib. Defeats the Turks, forcing their camp, who fly precipitately, and raises the siege of Vienna, xii. 540. His piety after this victory, and haughty treatment from the emperor, with the meeting of the two princes, and the different accounts of what passed, ib. Present to his son prince James from the emperor, and apology, ib. Repulsed by the Turks at Barean, but the duke of Lorraine prevents their pursuit, xi. 301. Finding Leopold averse to an accommodation with the Hungarian malecontents, he suddenly withdraws and returns home with his troops, xii. 540 (M). xi. 302 (A). Renewal of the treaty between the emperor and him, to which Venice is invited, with the stipulations,
- xii. 542. Draws the Czar into this league, ib. Various causes of complaint against the emperor, ib. He enters Moldavia with an army, the terror of which reduces the whole country, 543. After vast and fruitless difficulties he makes a memorable retreat into Poland, ib. Troubles from his own family, and the occasion; also from the Sapieha family, notwithstanding manifold obligations, ib. Divisions in the state from various causes give him disquiet, with personal clamours and reflections, 544. Reasons for his parsimony, with his death and character, 545. This event almost embroils Europe again, ix. 476. The queen-mother's conduct, notwithstanding remonstrances to the contrary, xii. 546. Proposal for seizing on his treasures frustrated by one of the deputies to the general diet protesting 547
- Sobieski, prince James's measures frustrate his hopes, and at Cerkzo he narrowly escapes with his life, xii. 551
- Sobieflaus defeats Barbarossa, or Frederic I. who in his turn beats him, but becoming unpopular, Conrad, marquis de Znain, chosen sovereign of Bohemia, x. 682
- , king of Bohemia, xv. 454. History, and obscurity in the ancient part, ib. Several etymologies uncertain, and Mariana's account of its origin, ib.
- Sobrarva (See Navarre) viii. 548
- Sobremont, a Jewish physician, his imprisonment for twenty-two years, and martyrdom, v. 579 (H).
- Socinianism suppressed by the Polish government, with an account of that sect, and its propagation in Poland, xii. 440 & (A).
- Socinians, how more absurd than the Mahometans, i. 39
- Socinius, emperor of Abyssinia (see Susneus) vi. 254, & 283
- Soconusco province described, xiv. 439
- Soderini, gonfalonier of Florence, his attempt for restoring the old constitution ineffectual, xiii. 418. Noble disinterestedness in favour of Medici's two sons, 420. Sides with the French, 472. Insulted on the success against Volterra, and his steadiness, 421. Why assassinated, 467
- Sodrez, Vincent, his treachery to the king of Cochin, iv. 119. Drowned by his own obstinacy, ib. & (R).
- Sofa, Alphonso de, viceroy of Goa, iv. 131
- Sofala kingdom described, vi. 361. Its boundaries and commerce with the Caffres, also rivers, 362 & (A).
- capital, where situate, vi. 362. Capes, soil, produce, food, &c. 363. Mountains, and valleys, with the natives described, and Arabic language, ib. Rich mines of gold, and whether the Ophir of Solomon, 364 & (C). Warlike weapons and marriages, 365. Funerals and government, ib. & (D). Unhealthy climate whence, 367
- king, once subject to Monomotapa, but wrenched from it by the Portuguese, vi. 365. Their admittance disapproved by his son-in-law, 366. The king murdered for his friendship to them, 367
- Sofana's kind reception from Mahomet, and becomes his convert, i. 92
- Sofi, family in Persia, its original, ii. 600. Meaning of that word, 601
- Sofian Abu (see Yezid) his attempt upon Medina defeated, i. 54. Leads the caravans by a new way, and is defeated by the Moslems, 56. Defeats them in his turn at Ohod, 57. Makes a truce with Mohammed, ib. Sarcasm against his incontinency, 74. Taken prisoner, and he embraces Islamism, 80. Shews his dislike to it on the first occasion, 87, 286. Traditional disputes between him and Mohammed, 286
- Ebn Khaled assassinated by Mohammed's order, i. 58. Beaten by an Arab virago for neglect of duty, 202 (Y).
- Ebn, the Sicilian emir, murdered by an Arab, i. 487
- Ebn Alrad defeats and kills the revolted Shebib, i. 337
- Sogd (Sogdiana) reduced by Katiba, i. 343
- Sogno, a province of Congo, its churches, &c. vi. 428 & (M). & (N). Poor soil and inhabitants, yet merry, ib.
- governor, converted and baptised, vi. 473
- Sohail Ebn Amru opposes Mohammed's entrance into Mecca, i. 67
- Ebn Sabah, his valour and conduct before Balbec, i. 195
- Sohar, Soar, or Zoar, submits to Albuquerque, ii. 691
- Soissons, the French forced to conclude that treaty, and its terms, viii. 246
- , congress there, and the views of the queen of Spain for her family's establishment, xv. 569
- congress abortive, xiii. 547
- count, prevailed on to unite with the court, but on his own



- own terms, ix. 343. War of the malecontents at Sedan under him, 402. Death, ib. Upon this peace concluded, 403.
- Sokokis fall on the Algonquins, and murder several at Syl-leri, upon which the Agniers renew the treaty, and their advice to Montagny, xiv. 585.
- Sokol, fort, the taking of it by the Poles, and great loss of the Russians there, xiii. 118.
- Solas, don Antonio de, sent first governor to the Mariamne islands, iv. 241.
- Soldiers, Swedish, their pilfering, to what owing, xii. 217. The farmers in Sweden find them, ib. Those past service received into an hospital, ib.
- Soleure, account of it, and alliance with the Bernois, xv. 447 & (X).
- Solikamskoi, some account of it, xii. 32 & (F).
- Solis, Dios de, discovers the river La Plata, but slain by the inhabitants, xiv. 166 (C).
- Antonio de, his character as a writer, xiv. 173. His credulity as to prodigies, 185 (D).
- Soliman chosen chief of the sectaries of Ali. Sends circular letters in favour of young Ali, i. 320. Vast preparations and army, ib. Confines Mokhtar close prisoner. Marches into Syria, with his camp and stratagem at Nokhailah, 322. Fatal rashness, 323. Totally defeated by Obeid Allah, ib.
- Ebn Abd'almalek succeeds to the caliphate, with preparations against Constantinople, i. 351. Erects a nilometer in Egypt, and ill success against Constantinople, 352. Loss of his son Ayub, with his bad success and loss before Constantinople, 354. Death and character, ib. His coin stamped of better metal, 355.
- the son of caliph Hesham, his success against the Greek emperor, i. 366. Against the Khakan, &c. with the parade of the impostor Tiberius, 367.
- , caliph, his admiral's vast fleet against Constantinople, i. 352. Partly burnt and in distress, ib.
- Ebn Hesham revolts against Yezid, and defeated by Merwan, i. 374. Cruelty to the two sons of Al Walid, ib. Revolts against Merwan, and sets up for himself, but is defeated by him, and flees to Hems, 376. Defeated there, and flies to Tadmor, ib.
- Ebn Kothair, his presents and homage to Mohammed Ebn Ali, and noble speech to him, ib.
- prince of Toledo, his defeat and flight, i. 419. Renews his attempts on the western caliphate, 424. Defeated and slain by Hakem, ib.
- Andalusian caliph Al Mowayyad takes Corduba by assault, and seizes on the throne, with Roderic's different account of his revolt and reign, i. 611. Afflicted by the Christians, 612. Ravages about Corduba, &c. 613. Entry into the city, and plunders it, ib. Resumes the caliphate of Corduba, 617 & (T). Slain by Ali Ebn Hamed, with the occasion and manner of it, 620.
- emir of Saragossa, his kind reception of caliph Hesham, i. 631.
- head of the Othmans, settles in Perù, v. 137. Forced to abandon it, and drowned, ib. Time when, 138, & not. His history by Cantemir exploded, ib. And his sons, ib.
- the son of Sarhan, sent to fight under sultan Amir, v. 158. His strange sickness and death, ib. & (V).
- shah, lord of Antioch, defeated and slain, ii. 170.
- , the son of Ilgazi, rebels against him, but defeated and disgraced by him, ii. 185.
- son of Mohammed, dethrones his nephew, ii. 191. Forced to flee towards the Caspian sea, and defeated by Mohammed, ib. Succeeds him after his death, but deposed soon after, 192.
- , the son of Kotolmish, the founder of the Rum dynasty, ii. 202. His conquests in Asia Minor, and when first made, ib. The first year of his reign fixed, 203. Assists the revolted Botaniates against the Romans, ib. Conquests in Asia Minor, 204. Makes peace with Alexis, but abandons Nice for Antioch, ib. Defeated and killed by sultan Taio'ddawlet, with different accounts about the time and manner of his death, 205. Rectified, ib.
- Sofi, invades Timur's dominions, ii. 521. Defeated, ib.
- shah, defeats the Kelatians, ii. 543.
- sultan, invades and ravages Persia, ii. 604. Frighted back by bad weather, ib.
- seventh shah of Persia, called to the throne, with the ceremony of his installation, and he sickens soon after, ii. 635. With the superstitions used for his recovery, 636. Second inauguration, and he recalls the famous Kouli
- Khan, ib. His reception at court, and mortifies the Armenian priests, ib. Excuse for his aversion against war, and invaded by the Usbecks, also by the Cossacks, 637. Loses all his ships, with his grand procession at Isfahan described, 638. And is afflicted with the gout, ib. Promotes his eunuchs, ib. With his death, character, and prodigious strength, drunkenness and cruelty to his grand vizir, 639. And other officers, 640. Burns his sister alive, 641. Brutish cruelty to the brave Khozrou Khan, ib. Sorrow for it, ib. Drunken resentment against Mansur Khan, 642. Sober amends for it, and other instances of his cruelty compared with his pretended clemency, 643. Barbarities in cold blood, ib. Justice and faith, 644. Children and successor, with his fondness for his son Huseyn, ib.
- Soliman Shekowi saves Sujah from total ruin, and comes too late for the relief of Agra, iii. 91. Flies thither after Dara's defeat, 94. Brought in chains to Aurengzeb, 105. Sent prisoner to Gwalior, and put to death, 106.
- Shah, III. king of Hormuz, his reign, ii. 681.
- khan, escapes Soliman Shah's fury, ii. 642.
- , the son of Or Khan, sent to assist Cantacuzenus, v. 159. Recalled by his father, plunders Bulgaria, defeats the inhabitants and the Servians, 160. Seizes sundry places in Thrace, and rebuilds Callipolis, &c. ib. Success against the Scythian Galates, 161. Crosses over into Europe, ib. Takes the castle of Hyasobonia and Callipolis, with other provinces, ib. & (K). Dies by a fall from his horse, ib. & (O).
- (or Soleyman) king of Quilon, his reign, but beheaded by his subjects, vi. 349.
- III. raised to the crown, with his vast conquests and character, ib.
- Bonji's successful reign, vi. 350.
- III. murdered by his subjects, vi. 350.
- declares war against Rhodes, vii. 429. Embassy, &c. to Rhodes, 430. A mutiny in his army, and he goes to command the siege in person, 433. Speech to his cowardly army, 434. Yet forgives them, ib. Cannonades the place, ib. Repulsed in all his assaults, 436. A great slaughter of his men, 438. Renews the assaults, ib. Offers of a capitulation rejected, 440. Renews the attacks, ib. Grants a capitulation, 441. Enters the place, and his generous treatment of the grand master, 442. Armament against Malta, 460. He swears the destruction of the Maltese order, 478. Sends a fresh fleet against them, ib. New resolution against Malta, 492. His arsenal burnt, 493.
- Kuh, or the mountain of Soliman described, iii. 2.
- Ebn Kutulmish, his success in Syria, whether authentic, i. 665.
- the Magnificent, afraid of the emperor's good fortune, drops his design on Vienna, viii. 238. On Selim's death succeeding to the Othoman empire, renews the treaty of commerce with the Venetian republic, x. 315. Prevailed on to invade Italy, his embassy to the Venetian senate, and their answer, with the Venetian commerce in Syria taxed, and other impolitic measures, also the favourable answer to the senate's remonstrance, 336. March into Albania, 337. His embassy to Venice on their satisfying for two Turkish galleys taken, 346. Consents to a separate peace with the Venetians, 347. The emperor sends an ambassador to Venice to obstruct it, ib. Espouses the cause of the infant king of Hungary against Ferdinand, 348. Besieges Vienna, but is repulsed with considerable loss, xi. 141. Invades the empire, and Charles V. takes the field at the head of a numerous army, but why both retreat with precipitation, 144 & (F).
- Solomon, rabbi, of Montpellier, an opposer of Maimonides, v. 548.
- Ben Levi, a learned Jew convert, made bishop of Burges, v. 574.
- , son of Andrew, restored to the throne of Hungary by the help of the emperor, xv. 383. Reconciliation with Bela's sons, defeats the Moravians and Chuni, also the Bulgarians, and takes Alba Regalis, with the occasion, 384. Is expelled by Geyza, who agrees to divide the kingdom with Solomon, but the former dies, ib. Resigns all claim to the crown, and yet imprisoned, ib. Is set at liberty and drops all ambition, ib.
- Ben Jechajah, his great merit and advancement in Portugal, v. 550 & (D).
- the son of Japhes, his exposition on the Thalmud, and other printed works, v. 591 & (F).
- Jewish convert in Poland, v. 607 (A).



- Solomon Malcho**, a famous Jew pastor, condemned to the flames, v. 593 (O).
- **Luria**, his high character and pompous titles, v. 605 (W).
- Solomonic race** dethroned by the Zageans, vi. 251. But restored, 252. Annals, why so maimed and neglected, 254.
- Solor island**, its situation, and tedious siege, iv. 158
- **stone**, its virtues, iv. 170
- Soltice**, a remarkable one recorded in the Chinese annals, and shewn to be coeval with that of Joshua, iii. 672
- Soltan Shah**, or **Malek Shah**, the second king of Kerman, ii. 196
- Soltania**, when and by whom built, ii. 487
- Soltaniya** surprised and taken by **Timur Bek**, ii. 516. By **Kara Yusef**, 587
- Soltanoddawla** succeeds his father **Irak**, i. 617. Puts his wazir to death, 619. Success against his rebellious brother **Abul Fawares**, but invaded by **Sultan Yammoddawla**, 622. Makes peace with the revolted, ib. Wars with **Asem Ebn Bakao'ddawla**, and concludes a peace with him, 624. Confirmed sovereign of **Ahwas** and **Fars**, ib. Is defeated by **Moshreso'ddawla**, 626. His death, 628. Other particulars of his reign, 629. Authors differ about his successor, and the names of his brothers, ib.
- Sombriero mountain** in **Benguela** described, vi. 412
- Sommona Kodom**, the lawgiver and deity of the Siamese, with his origin, &c. iii. 308. The same with **Budda**, 306—308. His birth, names, and parentage, 341. Death, history, and miraculous power, 342. Disciples, he kills a man and disappears, ib. Is supposed fictitious, and a second expected by the Siamese, 343
- Soncino**, a Hebrew book printed there, v. 596
- Song dynasty**, their dominions in Southern China, ii. 286, & notes. War with the **Kin**, 325
- , a famous mountain, seized by the **Mungls**, ii. 287 & (Z). Make alliance with the **Mungls** against the **Kin**, 342. Assist them at the siege of **Ju-ning-fu**, 344. Their unfair conduct provokes the **Mungls**, 346. Invaded by them, ib. Dreadful defeat, 347. Stout opposition against **Mengko**, 358. Becomes tributary to the **Mungls**, 361. Insincerity to **Kublai**, 364. Great losses from the **Mungls**, 370. Betrayed by his chief minister, 361 & 370
- **dynasty** extinct, ii. 382. The rest of the family sent prisoners to **Tatu**, 377, 384. Thence into **Tartary**, 385
- , **empress regent**, in despair at her many losses, sends the seals of the empire to **Peyen**, ii. 376. Sent by him with her son to **Tatu**, and the palace rifled of its immense treasure, 377. Their reception from **Hu-pi-lay**, 378
- **lords**, their vain efforts to rescue their emperor, ii. 370. Dreadful end in the isle of **Yay-shan**, 380. And at sea, 381. Ill success against **Chu**, 426. Decay of power, 427
- **history**, when and by whom compiled, iv. 418
- Songari-ula**, a famous river of East **Tartary**, iii. 466
- Song-Chau** revolts and defeats the emperor **Hew-ti**, iii. 706
- Song-koy**, a considerable river in **Tonking**, iii. 433 & (A).
- Song-tu-hay** puts the brave **Mi-yew** to death, iv. 375. An impostor sets up for the empire, but defeated, 384
- Sonhiot**, a province of **Mongalia**, where situated, ii. 245
- So-ni**, one of the Chinese regents, dies, iii. 739
- Son-quan**, a tribe of **Hottentots**, described, vi. 386
- Son-te**, in **Korea**, taken by the Japanese, iii. 756
- Sonna**, a book of Mahometan traditions, i. 37. Contains the sum of the Mahometan religion, 39
- Sonnetomo** succeeds **Joritomo** in **Japan**, and builds the first man of war, iv. 58
- Sonnites**, the believers of the **Sonna**, or Mahometan traditions, i. 37. Their hatred to, and sharp contentions with the **Shjites**, 250
- Sophia**, **Eric's** sister, her marriage with the duke of **Bavaria**, xii. 84
- ambitious designs of that princess in **Russia**, xiii. 175. Still possessed of the chief authority, 178. Unseasonable liberality to the **Bojars** in reward of their services the two last campaigns, to which the czars were persuaded with difficulty by her, 181. She and **Galitzin** conspire against **Peter's** life by means of **Thekelavitau**, ib. But the plot how discovered by two **Strelitzes**, **Peter** just escaping to **Trinity** convent, with his reproaching **Sophia**, and her denying the whole, 182 & (S). End of her administration, who is ordered to retire to a convent, 183.
- Sophronius**, patriarch of **Jerusalem**, his conference, with the Moslem general, i. 204. And with the caliph, 207
- , patriarch of **Alexandria**, his character, and sends bishops into the **Pentopolis** of **Africa**, i. 464. His treatise in defence of image-worship, and death, 477
- Sora**, the Jewish academy, why inferior to that of **Nahardea**, v. 502, sub not. Rises by the other's fall, 503. Most famous doctors, ib. Restored under **Almanzor**, 525. Dreadful disputes among its **Gaons**, 526 (Q). Ruined by the arrogance of the Jewish chief, 530
- Sorbolla's** scheme of carrying a fleet over land to **Brescia** executed, x. 251 & (A).
- Sorbonne**, their resolution with regard to bad princes, and the king's severe reprimand, ix. 285. Their proceedings against the pope's supremacy, though slightly censured at **Pontoise**, defended by the parliament of **Paris**, x. 154.
- Sorbonists**, a terrible hull against them, who are supported by the parliament of **Paris**, x. 154.
- Sordello**, viscount of **Goito**, governor of **Mantua**, but his party driven out, and two **podestas** chosen, xiv. 112.
- Sorel**, **Agnes**, the dauphin's aversion to her, and an account of her, ix. 158 (A).
- Sorfocon**, or **Bagatao** in **Manilla**, the dock for royal ships, iv. 188
- Soto**, **Ferdinando**, his successful excursion and discoveries in **Peru**, xiv. 285. Crosses a very rapid river, with a small party in his way to **Cuzco**, and the **Peruvians** betake themselves to flight, 300. Obtains a surprising victory at **Bilcacongá** pass, ib. Reinforced by **Almagro**, ib. Expedition to **Florida**, his character and formidable armament, xv. 65. Disembarks at **Spiritu Santo**, and possesses a village, ib. Sends **Gallegos** to reconnoitre, 66. Takes the cacique of **Caliquien** prisoner, and marches to **Palache**, ib. Sends **Maldonado** to reconnoitre, ib. Marches eastward through several countries, ib. Receives several civilities from a female cacique, 67. Makes her prisoner, but she escapes, ib. His further progress and reception at **Chiaha**, ib. Very kind reception by the cacique of **Cofa**, 69. Also by others in his progress, and his ungrateful returns, ib. How wounded, and in danger of being cut off, ib. His great slaughter of **Indians** hereupon, ib. Arrives at **Chicoca**, intimacy with its cacique, and his army attacked by the **Indians**, ib. Who in a second attack are repulsed, ib. His further progress and crossing the **Rio Grande**, with other painful traversings, ib. Penetrates into **Casqui** and **Pacaha**, ib. Cruel treatment of some **Tullans**, and the effect towards their submission, ib. Further progress and arrival at **Autiamque**, with the diminution of his troops, and finding great plenty here, 70. Marches on, and is deified by the **Indians**, ib. Contracts a fever and dies, naming **Moscoso** his successor, ib.
- Sotoktas**, a fabulous apostle of **Japan**, and his strange birth, iv. 53 & (K). Death, ib.
- So t'cong** restores peace to the Chinese empire, and his palaces rifled by the rebel **Ngan-to-shan**, iii. 713
- Soubize**, **Mr.** entering **Rochelle** and forcing a passage out, ix. 370. Defeats the **Hessians**, xv. 622
- Souel**, father, killed among the **Yasous**, and why, according to **Charlevoix**, xv. 34
- Souja** commands **Coxinga's** fleet against the **Dutch**, iv. 445 & (I). Imprisonment and desperate death, 449
- Soura**, Portuguese minister, his great conduct and spirit at the court of **France**, with **Mazarine's** character of him, viii. 514
- Souranza**, **Giovanni**, fifty-first doge of **Venice**, with the rise of a commercial board there, x. 208. Death, 211
- South-sea**, great part of its coast discovered by the **Spaniards**, xiv. 275
- South pole** and countries described, v. 40
- continent also described, v. 41. Reasons for establishing settlements there, 42. Philosophical conjectures about its inhabitants, 46
- Southampton**, town, a settlement in **Long island** in **New England**, xiv. 510
- Souz**, one of the provinces of **Biledulgerid**, described, vii. 117
- Souza**, don **Gaspar de**, his resolute reproof to the emperor **Claudius**, vi. 270
- don **Ferdinand de**, sent ambassador into **Abyssinia**, vi. 273
- **Roderigo de**, his reception at **Sogno**, and success there, vi. 473. Also at **Congo**, and he baptises the king and queen, 474
- , or **Sufa**, a city of **Tunis** described, vii. 304. Its port, traffic, &c. ib.
- Sozopolis** taken by stratagem of **John Comnenus**, ii. 215
- Soyruktamish**, the twenty-fourth khan of **Bukharia**, ii. 466



Spain invaded by the Saracens, i. 345. Totally reduced by them, 349. Its trade with India by land, how far practicable, iv. 92. A view of its state in the beginning of the eleventh century, with regard to Christians and Moors, vii. 649. History of the monarchs of the house of Austria, viii. 281. A second invasion from it upon England frustrated, 278. (See Armada.) Amuses the English court with a marriage, 286. Double marriage between it and France solemnized, 287. Success against the Dutch in the East-Indies, 288. Peace with Savoy. His catholic majesty renounces all claim to the succession of Austria, ib. Attacked on all sides by the English, French, and Dutch, but with little success, 294. Just miss the Plate fleet, which gets into Cadiz, ib. Affairs in the Netherlands grow worse, and why, 297. Though desirous of peace, refuses passports for a treaty, 299. Becomes despicable, with instances thereof, 336. Its ministers act as if determined to drive the Portuguese into utter despair, 498. Concludes a treaty with Great-Britain, imposes thirty per cent. duty on French goods, and all commerce prohibited, ix. 329. But removed by negotiation, ib.

—, the queen regent of, consents to the king's keeping his conquests in the Netherlands, and with what view, by Castel Rodrigo, ix. 453.

—, queen of, assists the Dutch, ix. 459. Accepts a neutrality for Italy, 476

—'s views for peace from Pointis's success in America, ix. 476. Military transactions in Spain between Staremburg and Berwick, with the empress's declaration in Barcelona, and its effects, 509. Truce between it and France, x. 56. Why that king's representation to the diet is neglected, xi. 283. The English and Dutch regulate the succession to it by a partition treaty, in which France acquiesces, 322. A will made by that king in favour of the duke of Anjou, who upon that monarch's death is sent into Spain, 323. Untoward aspect of affairs there, 338. Remark on the revolution there in Philip's favour, 346. Preparations by that court for a war, 419. Distressed state, 447. For want of money, 450. And that king promises Spinola at Madrid the necessary supplies, 473. Deliberations in that council about a peace, with the reasons, and objects to a peace in Holland, 475

—, views of that king, xiii. 470. Sentiments of that court different from the pacific intentions of Albert of Austria, xi. 496

—, ambition of that queen, and an alliance formed on her plan between France, Spain, and Sardinia, with the progress of these allies in Italy, xiii. 650. Its artful conduct, but forced to conform to the preliminaries, 656. Claims the Austrian possessions in Italy, and their naval armament, ib. The immense wealth brought from America, but other nations reap the benefit, xiv. 474. Bad policy what, ib. Distress, and excellent commercial regulations how frustrated, ib. How its comparative wealth diminishes, ib. (Y).

—, Remonstrances from that court against Byng, and the British ministry, xiv. 560. Their answer, ib. And war declared thereon, 561. Invaded by the French under Berwick, and their success, 563. Also by the English under Cobham, who takes Vigo; also Pont-a-Vedra taken by Wade, 564. With the success of the British fleet at Ribadeo, ib. Proposals for peace at the Hague rejected, ib. Obligated to accede to the quadruple alliance, and two treaties signed, with the fifth article of the latter, 565. Subsidies from it to the emperor, 567. Assisted by Russia, and an asylum for Jacobites, ib. On suspicions Riparda is dismissed, and forcibly taken from colonel Stanhope's house; its ambassador quits London, and Spain's practices notified to parliament by the king of Great Britain, with three squadrons fitted out thereon, 567. Depredations on the English, and preparing to invade Georgia, 573. Account of the rise of the war between it and Great Britain, with the proceedings in parliament, ib. Mr. Keene's strong representation, ib. By vigorous measures in England forced to preliminaries, which end in a convention, and its articles, 574. Separate articles, ib. Disagreeableness to the English, and a claim from Spain on the South-sea company, with the Spanish ministers protest, 575. War against it resolved on, and the necessary preliminaries to a negotiation, 576. Orders for reprisals against the Spaniards, ib. Who publish a manifesto, and the reasons for their not regarding the convention, ib. Combined fleet of Cadiz and Ferrol fail to America, 578

—, New, (see Mexico Proper.)

Spaniards sent to assist the Camboyans, iii. 416. Their

success and fatal end, 417. Supplant the Portuguese in India, iv. 154. Challenge the Moluccas from them, ib. But exchange them for a sum of money, with their conquests in India, 155. Conquests also, and settlements in the East-Indies, 174. Why they cannot find some of their first discovered islands from Asia to America, with an account of these first discoveries, 200. Passage through the straits of Magellan, why rejected, 201 & (B). Extent, &c. of their empire in Asia, 202. Long deliberation about the Ladrones islands, 241. Present state on Guam, 245. Their ill policy and oppression of their subjects, ib. & (P). Their fatal mistake on that head, 248. Their plan with respect to those islands, 249. Eagerness for new northern discoveries, and why set aside, 252 & (A). The neglect of it detrimental to them, 261. Their present ministry intent upon it, 264. More negligent of southern discoveries, 265. Spice-islands in their possession, 269 & (B). Take Calais, Ardres, and Hullst, 272. They surprise Amiens, which retards the peace, but surrenders to Henry IV. and the negotiation resumed, ib. Carry on the war with various success in other parts, 300. Attempt by intrigue what they could not do by force, 306. The war carried on every where, ib. First battle with won by Albuquerque (count d'Alegrette) viii. 508. Expedient used by them ineffectual, ib. Beat the Venetians, and the king of Scots, ix. 201. Invading Picardy, beat the French at St. Quintin, with great loss, 221. Remarks on the conduct of both sides, ib. St. Quintin taken by assault, ib. Raise the sieges of Flex and Mirabel, &c. 409. Success in Catalonia, and the Low-Countries, 434. With a large sum prevail on Charles IV. of Lorraine to invade France, and a like sum determines his retreat, 435. The pope made prisoner by the Imperialists, xi. 274. Successes, 415. The infanta and king prohibit all intercourse between their subjects and the United Provinces, 453. Declaration ratifying the archduke's proposals objected to by the States General, 478. A second ratification also objected to, ib. The last ratification allowed by the provincial states as a basis for a truce or peace, 479. And attempt on Zealand, ix. 415. Successes in Guelderland, 437. Disappointment in attempting Sluys and Haffelt, 497. Their formidable preparations against the States General, 503. Recover St. Salvador, 508. Measures taken by them, while the prince of Orange takes post on the Rhine, &c. 512. Defeated by the French at d'Avein in Luxemburg, 534. Recalled from the Upper Rhine by an irruption of the prince of Orange into Brabant, and their rear defeated, xii. 332. Their irresolution, xiii. 477. Progress in the conquest of Mexico, xiv. 190. The motive of their conquests in America what, 193. Disgust the Indians, 276, sub not. Divisions among them after receiving the inca's ransom, and neglecting their promise, 296. Expeditions, with various success, and their divisions in Valdivia's absence, 320. Inaccuracy in the names of provinces, 407 (I).

Spaniards, of New Mexico, alarmed at La Sale's expedition, and measures thereon, xv. 12. Pregnant proof of their jealousy, ib. Their measures against the French on the Mississippi, 17. Severity to the French prisoners at the Havannah, and reprisals, 28. Preparations to retake Pensacola why laid aside, 29. Their merchants forced to retire out of the Netherlands, iv. 408. Kindly received in Holland, ib.

Spanish monarchy, by whom founded, with the state of the kingdom at his first arrival, vii. 527. The condition of it after the dissolution of the Gothish kingdom, 541. Its history from Ferdinand and Isabella, to the emperor Charles V. viii. 199

— town in Jamaica, described, xv. 334

— fleet defeated by Navaro, and dispersed in a storm, x.

325

— army, mutiny in it, and how appeased, xi. 413. Soldiers, a second mutiny among them, and how quelled, 414. Another mutiny, with their ravages encouraged by the confederates, 442. Troops, their ravages and riot in the empire, with the emperor's edicts upon this, 453. Fleet, destruction of one near Gibraltar, by Heemskirk and Yerrhoe, 479 sub fin. not.

— writers, their partiality about the affairs in Peru, xiv. 330 (A).

— settlements in America, general reflections on the state of them, xiv. 418. Their vast extent, and various climate, ib. Different soil, ib. Sweet fields, vast riches, and fine rivers, ib. View of the inhabitants, and why her colonies become less serviceable to Old Spain, 419

Spanish



- Spanish depredations, continual petitions to parliament against, and the minister's arts, xv. 309
- Spaitla, triumphal arch there described, vii. 310
- Specks, James, his great services to the Dutch East India company, iv. 426
- Speelman, admiral, his success against the king of Macassar, iv. 450
- Spice islands belonging to the Spaniards, iv. 269
- Spice islands seized on by the Portuguese, iv. 150. The natives ill-treated by them, 154. Which occasions their losing of them, 157. & (I).
- Spices brought from India into the Greek empire, iv. 98
- Spiffame, his execution at Geneva, and accusation what, xiv. 31
- Spilbergen, George, his voyage round the world, iv. 417. Kind reception at Ceylon, 436 (Z). A plot formed against him by the Spaniards, v. 79. Meets and defeats their squadron, 80. Arrival at the island of Capul, 81. And Batavia, with a new commission, ib.
- Spiligneuz, duke of Bohemia, xv. 452
- II. duke of Bohemia, expels the Germans, not excepting his mother, xv. 453
- Spinola, the Maltese admiral, his noble defence and defeat, vii. 519
- reduces Breda, on an order of half a line from the king, viii. 294. Foiled in reducing Casal, 296. By a finesse takes Aix-la-chapelle, xi. 189. His progress, with that of count Maurice; a peace concluded at Santhen, between the princes possessors, with the conditions, and Spinola opposes the execution of the treaty, 190. Enters the Lower Palatinate, 201. Successful irruption into the Palatinate, 203. Truce concluded between him and Vere, 205. Appointed to command the besiegers of Ostend, and his success in advancing, 468. Obligated to retreat from Ostend, with loss, 469. Returning to Ostend, takes it after three years siege, the place being a heap of rubbish, ib. His representations at Madrid, with the honours paid him, 470. Conquests in Overysfel, 471. Takes the field, and enters the provinces with two armies; his successes, and his troops mutiny, 473. Takes the field, 496. Takes Wesel, 485. Invests Bergen-op-Zoom, into which colonel Henderson throws a body of men, 497. Generosity to the garrison of Breda, and resignation, 507. Archduchess's public entry into it, and Spinola's numerous civilities to the inhabitants, ib. At the head of the admiralty in Dunkirk, equips a squadron against the English and Dutch, with the successes on both sides, 510. Recalled to Spain, 512
- Spinosa, a famous Jew at Amsterdam, and author of a new atheism, v. 613 sub (M). Prosecuted by the Jews, with his works, disciples, and doctrine, 614, ib. not.
- Spinula, Opicio, declared perpetual governor of Geneva, x. 555. Who is entirely defeated by the opposite faction of Guelphs, and twelve governors chosen with the abbot, and a reconciliation effected, ib.
- Spira, rabbi, Nathan de, a famous cabbalist at Frankfort, v. 610 (F).
- Spire, edict there, revoking that for liberty of conscience, x. 80. A diet holden there by Ferdinand, and the nuncio's declarations about a council at Trent, 87. Decrees subsidies for the emperor, ib. Some of the princes thank the pope for his assistance to Savoy, ib. A diet meets there, with their unanimous resolution against the Turks, xi. 153
- , account of that city, xv. 439 & (B). Religion, and government, ib.
- Spirebach battle, won by Tallard, ix. 484
- Spoils of war, how disposed according to the alcoran, i. 89, 180
- , taken by Timur in Syria, &c. i. 558
- Spondanus, the continuator of Baronius, his character, x. 129 (Q).
- Sporken defeated by the French, xv. 626
- Spotwood, lieutenant-governor of Virginia, his character, and excellent administration, xv. 375. Goes on discoveries beyond the Apalachian mountains, and executes four French pirates found in disguise, ib. A plan for attacking the Spanish settlements to the West abortive, ib.
- Spoons, history of that fraternity, who make war on the Genevois, xiv. 19
- Spozzi's design for seizing Doria frustrated, x. 500
- Sprat, doctor, his curious account of the Canaries, the people, &c. vi. 135
- Springs, hot, in Guadaloupe, xv. 230
- Squirrels of Canada, three kinds described, xiv. 558
- Stade taken by the Danes, xii. 397. Besieged, with the brave but unsuccessful effort of the Swedish commandant of fort Swing, and fort Gastorp surrenders, 191. After an unsuccessful attempt of the Swedish admiral for relieving Stade, it is taken by the allies, ib.
- Stadia and Strabilon seized by the Turks, ii. 239
- Stadingi heretics, their rise, ix. 629 & (K).
- Stadtholder, dignity of that magistrate in Holland, xi. 539
- the young, in a long speech encourages the states-general to prosecute the war, xi. 619. His first attempt on Naerden unsuccessful, ib.
- Stadtholdership made hereditary in prince Henry's family, xi. 522
- Stainville saves the French army, xv. 627
- Stalhanch forced to retire from Silesia to the Marche of Brandenburg, xii. 345
- Stanhope, earl, takes Minorca, viii. 362. He and five thousand English taken prisoners at Brihuega, ix. 495 & (A). Fourth and fifth articles of that earl's instructions to the court of Spain, xiii. 647
- Stanislus Leczinski marches from Saxony into Poland, xii. 382. On deposing Augustus, is elected king of Poland, but the Podlachians protest and retire, 591. The primate and his party are terrified into submission, ib. Chosen by means of a single colonel, at the head of a Swedish detachment, xiii. 206. The pope opposes him, xii. 377. Crowned at Warsaw, 378. Council holden at Leopold, with the result against him, 604. Situation, 606. Who, with the Swedes under Krassaw, retires to Stettin in Pomerania, 607. Makes overtures for an abdication, and Charles's cold answer, 609
- , not able to prevail on Charles XII. of Sweden, to consent to his abdication, resolves on an interview, but arrested on the road in the Turkish dominions, and sent to Bender, with that king's message to him on the occasion, xii. 402. And provision made for him by Charles, 613. Though chosen king of Poland, forced to quit the kingdom before the Russians, 620. Abdicates, xiii. 219. Flies to Pomerania, 220. Retires from Warsaw to Dantzick, xv. 612. Whence he escapes in the habit of a peasant, after suffering great miseries, ib. Now possessed of Lorrain, xii. 620
- Stapleton, governor of St. Christophers, xv. 242
- , governor of Nevis, his loyalty to king Charles II. and his brother, xv. 250.
- Star, order, in France, by whom instituted, ix. 99
- Staremborg landed at Barcelona by the English fleet, viii. 362. Defeats totally king Philip's army near Saragossa, 364. Philip's bad situation after this action, ib. & (C). Defeated at Villa Viciosa, 365. Famous march, by which he joins the duke of Savoy at Canelli, xi. 326
- Stargard circle described, and the long disputes about it, xv. 551. Account of the town, 552
- Stars, six, seen to fall from heaven, i. 396
- State, arresting that council in Holland, xi. 235. Their proposal for mutual toleration opposed, 492
- State inquisition, its origin in Venice, x. 214
- Staten island, in New York, described, xiv. 539
- States, or Staten-island, discovered, v. 7
- States-general make head against the Spaniards, xi. 416. Solicit the assistance of queen Elizabeth, ib. Object to the perpetual edict, 417. Are reconciled to Anjou, 420. Renounce allegiance to Philip II. by an edict, called his abdication, 425. Their present naval strength, 445 (A). Negotiations for peace, and why rejected by them, 448. Send ambassadors to England, with the queen's frank declaration to them, 449. On Cecil's death, a treaty is concluded between England and them, with the articles, 450. Preparations by them for continuing the war, 453. Mutiny among their troops, 458. Their vigorous resolution for an attempt on Dunkirk, 459. Send an embassy to king James I. and the result, 467. Resolve on the siege of Sluys, and Maurice proceeds, 468. First demand granted by the archduke, and the article of commerce after warm debates deferred, 480. Scheme of it transmitted to Madrid, ib. Publish Richardot's original instructions left behind, with a comment, 482. The foreign ministers, particularly president Jeannin, press them to a truce, ib. Publish decrees for toleration in the disputed points, and suspensions taken off, 487. But opposed by several cities and towns, and this excellent design how opposed, ib. A diversion by them against the emperor's designs, 499. Treaty between Brandenburg and Newburgh, rendered fruitless by them, 503. Assist the French king in oppressing his Protestant subjects, with the remonstrances on that head to them, 508. A tumult at Amsterdam



- sterdam, on occasion of this treaty, *ib.* Offensive alliance concluded between them and France, 533. Its views how frustrated, *ib.* Proceedings in a grand assembly of them, 557. Send an embassy to Denmark, 576. Granting an armistice to Portugal, commissioners meet, but settle nothing, 585. Disputes with the bishop of Munster, and their spirited remonstrances to the emperor without effect, 596. Lay siege to Wilderskaus, *ib.* Adopt a neutrality, 627. Defensive treaty between Sweden and them, with remonstrances of the latter to king Charles ineffectual, 629. Pretences for their assembling an army near Nimeguen, and putting their marine in a posture of defence, 636. Refuse king James to send back the six British regiments, 636. Provincial, unable to oppose Maurice, connive at his measures, xi. 493
- States of Holland refuse a defensive alliance with France, with the revival of faction hereupon, xi. 627
- of Silesia join the Bohemian malecontents, xi. 193
- general of Sweden, account of them, xii. 213. Give the crown to Charles and his heirs male, with their other resolutions, 367. Proceedings in an assembly of them against the accused lords, and in favour of duke Charles, 305. Their spirited resolutions soon put in execution, 309. Levy forces, and put duke Charles at their head, 311. Their remonstrance to the king, 312. Resolve to renounce their allegiance, *ib.* Assembly convoked, and for what purpose, with Oxenstiern's speech, concluding with the king's demands, and the resolutions thereupon, 367. Another assembly of them meets, with the chancellor's speech, and its purport, *ib.* The substance of the letters for convoking them, 404 & (B). Points deliberated in their diet, *ib.* With their debates and issue, *ib.* A form of government proposed by them, and its substance, which is signed and ratified by the queen, 413. Assembly, where, among other deliberations, the queen proposes her husband to be raised to the sovereign authority, with warm debates in the dyet, *ib.* Accession to the treaty of Hanover, and their motives, 420
- Statues, gigantic, reared by Chaumigrem, iii. 240, 265
- Staupitz, general of the Augustines, preaches against indulgences, x. 68. Openly attacks the Dominicans, and chuses Luther for his colleague, xi. 132
- Stede, lieutenant-governor of Barbadoes, xv. 185
- Steffa, a city of Algiers, described, and its ruins, vii. 226
- Stegelberg-castle, now Copenhagen, built, xii. 13
- Steel, Mr. Van, his valuable discoveries among the Hottentots, iv. 497
- Steenkirk battle, in which king William is beaten by Luxemburg, yet makes a good retreat, ix. 472. Reception of the young prince of the blood upon this action, and the new modes invented in honour of it, *ib.* Loss on both sides, with Luxemburg's acknowledgment to what the victory was owing, *ib.*
- Steenwyk, Henry Van, a Dutch mason, his rise and power in Bantam, iv. 461, & sub (Y). Treacherous advice to the king, 462
- Steinbock defeats the Tartars and Poles, in his turn, xii. 359. Sets out with a body of men for Schonen, 392. A memorable victory gained by him over the Danes and Saxons in Pomerania, 398. Exorbitant contributions in Mecklenburg, with a cessation of arms between him and Augustus, why disagreeable to the czar, xiii. 225. Obtains leave to march into Tonningen, 226. Burns Altona, and his motives for it; but this barbarity exclaimed against, and his reply, xii. 403. Is driven to extreme necessity, surrenders at discretion in Tonningen, with Frederic of Denmark's humane treatment of him, *ib.* & (A) xi. 358, 359. xiii. 227
- Stell, Simon Vander, his regulations at the Cape of Good Hope, vi. 396. And militia of horse and foot, 398. With his fine seat there, 399
- Stella's enterprise against Lucca, x. 239. And supported by the Florentines, *ib.* Resumes the siege of Lucca, and Visconti sends Picinino to relieve it, *ib.*
- Stellenboch colony, by whom settled, vi. 400. Division described, 401
- Stenai, siege, at which Lewis XIV. made his first campaign, with its surrender after thirty-three days open trenches, ix. 441
- Stenchil, grandson of Olaus Scotkonung, chosen king of Sweden in room of Asmund Slemme, xii. 229. His accommodation with Hacquin Rufus, king of the Goths, and Stenchil succeeding him, *ib.* Stenchil's character, *ib.* He perishes in a battle, *ib.*
- Stenko. See Razin.
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Steno, Micheli, sixty-third doge of Venice, x. 228. Death and character, 232
- Stenon, on the death of his father Sture, chosen administrator of Sweden, xii. 133
- Stephen, order of St. by whom instituted, vii. 476
- , sent with a fleet against Sicily, i. 640. Suffers the Moslems to escape, and his treachery to Maniaces, causes the loss of his Sicilian conquests, 644
- pope, designs to confer the Imperial dignity on his brother Godfrey, but dies at Florence, ix. 560
- duke of Hungary, the title of king and apostle given him by the pope, x. 643
- , first king of the Hungarians by ordinary title, his piety, xv. 381. His subjects rebel on account of the new religion, but defeated, and he builds churches, *ib.* Defeats Giula, his uncle, whom he takes prisoner, with his wife and children, *ib.* Defeats the Bulgarians, who invaded Hungary, 382. His two wives, and death, *ib.*
- III. king of Hungary, and the administration by the bishops and nobles, xv. 386. Cruel temper, expedition into Dalmatia, and invasion of Poland, *ib.* Declares war against Bohemia; a conference prevented by treachery, and a peace concluded, *ib.* Invades Russia, under pretence of restoring their exiled duke, and declares war against the emperor of Constantinople, but defeated, and peace made, *ib.* His cruelties, adopting Bela, and death, *ib.* Makes alliance with the emperor of Constantinople against the Venetians, 388. Consequences of his alliance with the emperor of Constantinople, *ib.* Ravages Dalmatia, and Ladislaus usurps the throne; also his uncle Stephen, whom the lawful king defeats, and dies, *ib.*
- IV. defeats Othogar of Bohemia, with the different accounts of this war, xv. 392 & (F). Makes Bulgaria tributary, and dies, *ib.*
- , of Bavaria's children, competition between Lewis of Bavaria, and Frederic of Austria, about their tutorage, xi. 31. But the Austrians being routed, an accommodation is effected, with the terms, *ib.*
- , duke of Bavaria, xv. 469
- Stetin, the enemy forced to raise that siege, xii. 362. It surrenders at last, 365. Sequestered by Menzikoff in the king of Prussia's hands, 227
- Sticho, a blacksmith, his brave retreat, x. 442 (E).
- Stifts-ampts, and Stiftsamptman in Denmark, account of these, xi. 660
- Stile, old, altered by the states of Castile, viii. 66
- Stirum, count, defeated by the combined army of the French and Bavarians near Donawert, xi. 517. Defeated, and taken prisoner by Berg, *ib.*
- Stobinow (Stragenow) entirely subjects Siberia to Russia, without a single life lost, xiii. 128
- Stockholm, barbarity of the German garrison there, xii. 79. Misery through their insolence, 245. Its loss, 126. Encouragement given to pyrates there, 245. Account of that capital, 207. Government, *ib.*
- Stone, black, a dreadful rain of them, i. 403. Another of large stones in Egypt, 477
- Storks now swarm in Egypt, vi. 4 & (C). Why deemed a sacred bird, *ib.*
- Storm, dreadful in Virginia, xv. 374, 375
- Stormar province, account of, xi. 653
- Stoughton succeeds Phipps as governor of New England, xiv. 527. The troubles he had to encounter, and how occasioned, *ib.* And provocation given the Abenakis, what, 655
- Stralsund founded, xii. 26. Makes a separate peace with Eric X. 94. The enemy effect a lodgment there, and Charles XII. retires in a small boat, 408. Taken soon after, *ib.* Surrender to czar Peter, Charles narrowly escaping, xiii. 230
- Strasburgh, proceedings of the apostolical inquisition against heretics there, and their tenets what, ix. 620. Order of its magistrates prohibiting mass, x. 80. Its bishop, by the pope's permission, does homage to the emperor, with the motive, xi. 44. Why put to the ban, and peace effected, 63. Excuses itself from signing the treaty with the emperor, 240
- , account of that city, xv. 438. Its religion, *ib.*
- Strelitz-town, account of, xv. 552
- Strelitzes, their horrid sedition, and sentencing their officers to suffer the battogen, xiii. 176 & (N). Shocking barbarities encouraged under-hand by Sophia, who gave them a list of forty lords worthy of death, 177. In the midst of the nuptial entertainments of czar John, make another insurrection about religion, *ib.* Exasperated, but soon make



- make a most abject submission, and are pardoned, 178. And Sophia possessed of the chief authority, *ib.* Assemble to place Sophia on the throne, whom the regency and general Gordon endeavour to pacify, but in vain, 194. They are defeated by Gordon, and surrender, *ibid.* That corps are broke, and their name abolished for ever, *ib.* Their rebellion at Astracan quelled, 207
- Strickland's credentials to the states-general, from the English parliament rejected, xi. 551
- Strigonia, its bishop negotiates an accommodation with the Hungarian malecontents, xi. 295. Their demands, and the emperor's answer, *ib.*
- Strolnat seizes on the dominions of Mendog his grandfather, duke of Lithuania, whom he had slain, xii. 630. Then assassinating his brother Forcivil, he is put to death by Wolfalk, the son of Mendog, 631
- Strozzi, a knight of Malta, his bravery against the Turks, and his reception at Malta, vii. 455. Denied entrance into Malta, by the grand-master, and noble present to the church of Philermo, 469. Is invited by his friends, and lands at Malta, where he builds several forts, *ib.* Raises the grand-master's jealousy, lands near Zoara, and is surprised by the Turks, 470. Why he was not chosen grand-master, 471. Amuses the viceroy of Sicily, and resigns his command, 473. Slain by a peasant, *ib.* His squadron, part of it taken, and why severely treated by the Spaniards, ix. 279
- Stuckelburg, general, his detachment of 8000 men defeated near Pultowa, xii. 387
- Sture, Steen, scheme for frustrating the union of Colmar, xii. 120. Intrigues to reduce Gothland and Finland under the obedience of Sweden, 123. Promoted to his former rank, 126. Raises disturbances in Norway, with the assassination of their leader Canute Adolphus, *ib.* Two Norwegian assassins stab the grand marshal of Denmark, *ib.* (A). The king touched with remorse on his death-bed at the murder of the latter, *ib.* Threatenings of the pope's legate against him, 128. Chosen administrator of Sweden, 258, 261. How firmly established, 258. Account of his administration, 259. Different accounts of him, *ib.* & (B). The politic administration of Sweden continues long, 260. Accused by the Swedish senate, *ib.* Justifies his conduct, but is deposed, and an open rupture follows, *ib.* Renounces his allegiance, 261. Incurs the pope's displeasure, with dreadful ravages by the Swedes and Danes, 262. Excommunicated, 263. After considerable successes dies, 262. Debates in the diet about a successor, *ib.* The youngest of two competitors chosen administrator, 263. Killed, 264
- , Suante, on Steen Sture's death, is made administrator, xii. 128, 262, 263. A decree of the deputies from Denmark and Norway against him, and other Swedes, ratified by the Aulic council, 129. Obtains a suspension of arms, *ib.* Laid under a severe interdiction, *ib.* Joins the Lubbeckers, and declares war, 131. Attacks Denmark by land, *ib.* (A). But the Swedes defeated, and the administrator concludes a treaty with the czar, 132. Dies, and debates about a successor, 263
- Sturgeon of Canada described, xiv. 560
- Stargard, seat of justice for Farther Pomerania, xv. 408
- Suabia cities join their brethren of Bohemia, xi. 182. Imperial cities of that bench, xv. 446
- Suakem, its basha tampered with by the patriarch Mendez, and betrays him to the emperor of Abyssina, vi. 304
- Sulek mountain described, and the Ghebres there destroyed, ii. 548
- Suantepolk, an invitation from him to Boleslaus into Russia, xii. 450. Perfidious ingratitude, *ib.*
- Suarez, the Portuguese, his services to the Barman king, iii. 257. Before Odiaa, *ib.* Escapes the resentment of the Peguers, 258 & (K). Stoned to death for his lust, insolence, and cruelty, 259. Success before the castle of Tapurau, 357. Wounded at an assault, 358. Forced to raise the siege, *ib.*
- , Lopez, sent governor of the East-Indies, iv. 128. Ill success, and recall, *ib.* Arrival at Canton, 159. Bloody expedition against the king of Zeila, vi. 327
- , Lorenzo, his treachery to the Moorish prince Abenhut, viii. 3, sub not.
- Suatapulus, king of Bohemia, xv. 454
- Subekin betrays Damascus to Dekah, i. 680. Put to death by him, *ib.*
- Subercafè, M. succeeds de Brouillan, governor of Acadia, and his activity, xiv. 680. Defeats an expedition of the English, *ib.* Expedition to Newfoundland, and successful ravages, 682
- Suchimilians, account of, xiv. 360
- Sudary, the sacred, sent as a present from the caliph to the emperor, and received with great pomp at Constantinople, i. 543
- Sudini, their religion, government, and manners, xii. 653 & (C). Their union with the Prussians, *ib.*
- Suechawr defeated by the rebels in Pegu, and degraded, ii. 397
- Sueno, in the dispute with Canute, compelled to do homage for Denmark, x. 670. The concessions to his competitor, *ibid.*
- Suenfon, Broeder, his bold expostulation with Canutson, who seizes and executes him, xii. 249
- Suercher ascends the Swedish throne in room of Magnus of Denmark, xii. 230. His great character, but his parental tenderness proves fatal to him and his son, who are murdered, with the occasion, *ib.* & (A).
- , son of Charles Suercherfon, is raised to the Swedish throne; his compromise with Eric, son of Canute, and alliance with Denmark, xii. 232. Suercher's character, and cruelty at last, for which the Swedes recall Eric from Norway; also a contest between them about the crown, *ib.* Artful management, 310. With his defeat and slaughter, xi. 232
- Suevi, in Spain, the restoration of their old monarchy, vii. 541. Fall into several factions, *ib.* & (A). Chuse Remisimund for their king, 543. A chasm of eighty years in their history, *ib.* Their kingdom subdued by the Visigoths, 546. An account of their country and nation, *ib.*
- Sueur, Mr. with the Chactaws makes a brisk attack on the Natches, and the success, xv. 38. Transactions with a large body of Chactaws among the Natches, 39
- Suez, its sea-port described, vi. 23. Times of sailing in and out of it, 24
- Suf-Gemar, a river of Algiers, vii. 213
- Sufis, a kind of enthusiasts among the Moslems, i. 601
- Suger, St. abbot of St. Denis, his character, ix. 38
- Suibdager, king of Norway, unites Denmark and Sweden to his usurped crown, being sixth king, replacing Guthrom, the son of Gram, seventh king of Denmark, xi. 665. Slain in a sea-fight, *ib.* Succeeds Gram in the Swedish and Danish thrones, and after a short reign, is slain by Hading, the son of Gram, xii. 219.
- a tutor, his regimen of bears hearts to his pupil, xii. 226
- Suida, or Suputa Behadr, assists Temujin against Vang Khan, ii. 276. Defeats the Markats, 291. Sent in pursuit of sultan Mohammed, 303. Takes several strong places in his way, *ib.* Overtakes him near the Caspian sea, 304. Cruelty to the Mazanderanites, *ib.* Progress through other cities, 305. Sent to invade Khorassan, 307. Marches into Kazvin, and puts the inhabitants to the sword, 310. Enters Shirwan, and passage through Darbend, 321. He enters Kipjak, *ib.* Is sent to besiege the capital of Honan, 338. Treachery at the siege of Kay-fong-fu, 340. And pursues it contrary to orders, *ib.* Forced to retire, 341. Ordered to resume the siege, 342. Besieges the capital of Kin, *ib.* Makes a terrible havock in it, 343. Order for destroying all of the royal blood, *ib.* Success against the Song, and recalled into Tartary, 346. Ravages about the Caspian sea, *ib.* His death, 352
- Sujah, sultan Shah Jehan his second son's character, iii. 87. Sent viceroy into Bengal, 88. Arms against his brother Dara, 89. Defeated by him, 91. Is pursued, and he engages Aurengzeb, 98. Defeated by an oversight, 99. Retires into Bengal, and sadly distressed by Jemla, flies to the king of Rakan, 107. Desperate attempt against him, and forced to flee to the mountains, *ib.* Probably slain by the pursuing Rakans, and his family destroyed by the Rakan king, *ib.*
- Suing-pyan's grief and despair for the loss of the Song, ii. 377
- Suintila, king of the Visigoths, his excellent laws, and invaded by the Gascons, with his triumphs over them, vii. 555. Drives the Greeks out of Spain, *ib.* Becomes a tyrant, 556. And is deposed, *ib.*
- Sujons, a people of Sweden, their tumults, xii. 26. And a view of the affairs of that kingdom, *ib.*
- Sui-sei, second emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 50
- Su-ka-ma, the second Chinese regent, disgraced by Kang-hi, iii. 739
- Sukonda, a famous village on the Gold Coast, with the English and Dutch forts, vi. 650. Brutish usage of the English by the Dutch, *ib.* A new and stronger fort built by the former, 651
- Suktu-Buka sent into Farnakant, ii. 296



Sulaka, Simon, confirmed patriarch by the pope on the east side of the Euphrates, x. 94  
 Sultan, or Soltan, the meaning of that word, i. 549 (B). When first used in that sense, ib. & 558. Takes and burns Titoul, but is defeated near Zenta, by prince Eugene; with the loss of the grand vizier, and 30,000 men, &c. xi. 321. Takes the field, and his character, with the formidable preparations against Poland, which stands alone, xii. 512. He is foiled by Cholkiewitz at the Neister; and that general dying, he is succeeded by Stanislaus Lubomirski, with the bravery of the Cossacks, ib. After several repulses and great slaughter, the Turks retreat, ib. Upon a conference proposed by that Turk, a truce is concluded with Poland, and the terms, ib. Becomes guarantee of a treaty between the czar and khan of Tartary, xiii. 174. Declares war against the czar, and his ambassadors imprisoned, 225. Causes a solemn embassy from Augustus, and the republic of Poland to be seized, yet an accommodation takes place, and in favour of Charles XII. 226. His letter to the czar Peter, 234  
 Sully (see Rhosny) offers made him by the king humbly refused, and that minister's services to the protestants, ix. 334. Who assists in the assembly at Gergeau, where every thing passes quietly, ib. How he befriends the Genevois, xiv. 37  
 Sumatra island described, iv. 150. Attempted by the Portuguese and Dutch, with its produce, ib. & (Z).  
 Sumbi, a province of Angola, described, and the inhabitants very lazy, though stout, vi. 491  
 Sumenat reduced by sultan Mahmud, i. 630  
 Sun strangely darkened without any eclipse in Arabia, i. 410. And in Persia during ten days, ii. 658  
 —, moon, and planets, how worshipped by the Chinese, iii. 566  
 — fable of, in civilizing the Peruvians, xiv. 373, by whom probably invented, 376  
 — grand, chief of the Natches, receives the French heads, xv. 34  
 — prodigy of three suns in Denmark, xii. 42  
 Sunai made prisoner by Zenki, i. 699  
 Sun-chi declared emperor of China, iii. 731. Founds the dynasty of T'ing, now reigning, 732. Swift conquest of that empire, ib. (R). Reduces Korea, ib. Takes the reins of government into his own hands, 736  
 Sunda, territory, described, its chief port, and the English factory, iii. 140. Three kinds of tigers, 141  
 Sundi, a duchy in Congo, described; also its capital, and barbarous inhabitants, vi. 429  
 Sundiva island seized by the Portuguese pirates, iii. 112, 228, 234  
 Sunni, a Mahometan sect in Persia, ii. 651  
 Sunjak (Sowenjak) made general in Irak, ii. 478  
 Superga, religious foundation near Turin, described, and inscription over the gate of its church, xiv. 123  
 Su-pu-han sent to demand a passage through Shen-fi, and put to death by the governor, ii. 337  
 Surat, a rich port in Indostan, with its trade, factories, &c. iii. 10. Haven and bar, 11. The Dutch settlement and direction there, iv. 501. The English settlement there, 382. Custom paid at it, 384 & not. Hardships put on the Europeans, ib. & (G).  
 Surgut circle, in Tobolsk province, described, xiii. 46  
 Surinam, chief settlement in Dutch Guiana, described, xiv. 483. Evacuated by the English to the Dutch, and how detrimental to the former, xv. 283  
 Surmalu taken by Timur Bek, ii. 517  
 Surnames, origin, whence, x. 392 (H).  
 Surunga, a city of Japan, described, iv. 39. Mint, and castle, now a prison, ib.  
 Sus, a river in Morocco, vii. 149  
 Sufneus, Socinios, or Segued, the ninety-second king of Abyssinia, vi. 254  
 Suffaquan, a tribe of Hottentots, described, vi. 384  
 Suta-Chu's general, his success in Kyang-nan, ii. 433. Against the Mungls, ib.  
 Su-ting, his vast army, and success in Shantung, ii. 326  
 Su-tu complains of the king of Gan-nan, but defeated, and slain there, ii. 386  
 Suwan taken by the Munguls, ii. 310  
 Suz kingdom described, its gold, and other mines, with fine indigo; also its river, vii. 160  
 Suza, the usual defiles there blocked up, but Francis passes the Alps, x. 308. His treaty with the Swiss broken off, and Colonia surprised by him in Salusses, ib.

Swanton, commodore. See Quebec.  
 Sweden declares for Lewis XIV. of France against Brandenburg, ix. 461. League formed with it, xi. 232. Cause of the war between Sweden and Denmark, 258. Peace between Sweden and Denmark, 261. Successful irruption of that king into Germany, 524. A treaty concluded between him and the Dutch republic, ib. By whom subdued, 681. By whom made a province of Denmark, 690. Commotions there, with the share the king of Denmark takes, and how compromised, xii. 40. The war renewed by the Danes with it, 45. Rebellion there, 49. Its king joins the Danish rebels, with the conditions, part of Denmark being sold to him, 54. Its king's designs on the rest, 55. His irruption into Schonon, 74. Crown offered Margaret by the malecontents, and made hereditary, 78. Resolutions of several governors, and declarations in her favour: also the senate acknowledge her queen, ib. Account of its affairs, with the contests between Canutson and Engelbert compromised, 99. A view of its troublesome state, 101. Revolts, 125. War with it renewed, and a suspension of arms only concluded, 130. Hostilities commence again, but overtures of peace are accepted by the king, ib. A treaty concluded with it, but broken, 132. Peace with it, 133. Revolution there, 142. Embassy from it to Ferdinand II. of Denmark, and their demands, with a perpetual peace signed between the two crowns, 159. The artful insinuations of the Danish ambassador at Stockholm, ib. A peace concluded with it, 161. Jealousies renewed between it and Denmark, 165. Cause of Denmark's renewing the war with it, 173. Separate treaty between it and Denmark, 185. Also an alliance by marriage, 199  
 —, its history, etymology, and geography, xii. 206 & (A). A division into seven grand provinces, 207. Constitution and character, 208. Woods and mines of silver, copper, and iron there, ibid. Manufactures and trade, 209. Act of navigation, and its ancient government monarchical, 210. A civil war there and Eric's success, 241. The queen administers poison to her son Eric, with his last words, ib. & (A). A civil war breaks out, and the massacres every where, 257. Renewal of a war with Denmark, 261. Treaty of alliance between it and Denmark, 270. Some alterations made in its constitution, 273 & (A). Rupture begins between it and Denmark, 314. War declared by it against Denmark, ib. A peace concluded between it and Denmark, 316. Its disputes with Russia, ib. A truce concluded by it with Poland, 320. State of it, 328. Its war with Denmark, and the occasion, 347 & (A). Its spirit against its numerous opponents, 347. Peace is established, 350. Unjust measures for declaring against Poland, 354. Its state makes peace absolutely necessary on any terms, 358. A treaty concluded by it with Brandenburg, and a peace with Denmark to the advantage of Sweden, 361. Causes of domestic discontent there, 369. State of it on Charles XIIth's accession, 370. The queen and the other regents are obliged to resign in favour of Charles XII. ib. Its state during Charles XIIth's absence, 392. Treaty with Great-Britain, also peace between the elector of Hanover and Sweden, 415. Some alterations are made in the form of its government, 416. A peace with the czar, 417. This treaty disliked in Sweden, ib. Sweden's king applies himself to domestic policy, 418. Difficulties about the treaties of Vienna and Hanover, ib. The states accession to the treaty of Hanover published, and their motives, ib. On the death of the duke of Holstein and empress of Russia, a war ensues, in which the Swedes are unfortunate, 419. Prolongs the truce with Poland, and restores Prussia, 519. How the prince misses the crown of Russia, xiii. 148. Several advantages gained by the Swedes in Russia, and peace at length concluded, 149. Negotiations there very vigorously carried on for not acceding to the Hanover treaty, 262. Sequel of its history, xv. 633. Character of its king and queen, ib.  
 Swedes declared rebels to the king of Denmark, xi. 124. Invade the Marches of Brandenburg, 290. Arrest the Dutch envoy, and disputes with Sweden how occasioned, 577. Treaty concluded at Elbing, ibid. A rebellion among them, xii. 102. Account of their affairs, ib. Continue the siege of Wisby-citadel, 109. Under the protector Axelsson defeated by Christian III. propose terms of accommodation, 114. Some advantages gained by the Danes, 118. Their progress in favour of Christian, 152. Copenhagen and Lahdicroop reduced by them



them for Christian III. *ib.* Sea-fight between them and the Danes, in which the latter, though inferior, come off with inconsiderable loss, 161. For a little time the Swedes are masters at sea, with a bloody engagement between them and the confederate fleets, *ib.* & (A). The mutual ravages by land, and Wardeburg taken by the Swedes, who are defeated in a bloody battle on both sides, *ib.* All offers of accommodation from the neighbouring powers rejected by the kings, and the Danish fleet suffers in a storm, whilst the Swedes are defeated by land, 162, & (A). Reduction of Langland and Laaland by them, 183. Defeated, and different accounts of this action, 187. Take thirty vessels laden with provisions at Gottenburg, with the position of both armies near Helmsfadt, 194. At Charles XIIth's death, they recover their liberties, 212. Rebel against Helgon, 220. Peace between them and the Danes, but soon broken, 234. Hostilities begun between them and the Danes, with the different accounts of their successes, 242. Deputation from them to accommodate matters with king John, and obliged to accept one of three conditions, 249. Reduce Abo, 262. Great successes of their troops in Livonia, *ib.* Advantages gained by them in Norway, soon lost, and a congress appointed, but hostilities continue, 263. Their cruel ravages in Norway, *ib.* Are masters at sea, and an engagement between the Swedish and Danish fleets, 292. Defeated by the Danes, 293. Success by land, with an unfortunate expedition against Norway, 294. The Polish and Dantzick squadrons beaten by them, 321. Success of them and their allies in their winter campaign, 330. Successes in another campaign, 334. A peace is concluded by them with Bavaria, 342. At Nyburg forced to lay down their arms, 362. Forced to retreat and evacuate their conquests, 364. They are every where defeated, as is also their fleet by the Dutch and Danes, *ib.* Evacuate Pomerania, but are shipwrecked, 366. Wage war in Livonia, 496. Surprise Dunnamunde, 524. Gustavus Adolphus besieges Riga, which is at length taken, *ib.* He reduces Mittau, and conquers to the gates of Dantzick, *ib.* A truce between the two nations, and a scheme of accommodation rejected by Sigismund, *ib.* The war renewed, *ib.* Several battles fought between them and the Saxons, in which the latter are generally worsted, 592. Their operations, and those of Charles XII. with their successes, 600. The Poles refuse to assist them, who penetrating to the gates of Moscow, are defeated, xiii. 129. League between them and the Poles; the former gaining great advantages over the Russians, 120. Not mentioned in the Zapolicia treaty, and their shameful demand from the Poles, with their attempting in vain to reduce Notteburg, 122. A league between Denmark, Brandenburg, Holland, Lunenburg, and Munster against them, who send an embassy to the Czar, 171. Splendid reception at Moscow, *ib.* Some skirmishes, in which they are not always victorious, the Russians learning the art of war from them, 201. Threatening Petersburg, are forced to retreat by the good conduct of Tolboguine, a Russian colonel, 207. Repulsed upon a second descent, as is a body of troops under the Swedish general Meidel, *ib.* Entire defeat of the Danes by them, 225. Arm against the Russians in Finland, but are defeated by general Laszy at Wilmanstra, with several other advantages, 265. The first European settlers in New Jersey, xiv. 546. Sell their possessions to the Dutch, *ib.* East-India company, its rise, iv. 656. When and by what means erected, 658. Substance of their charter, *ib.* Notice given of it to the States General, 660. Two ships built for that commerce, 661, and one of them in its return taken by the Dutch, 662. Continue their traffic into China, 663, and with the same privileges as other Europeans, 664, & (G). The vast advantages of the India-trade, 665. Not to be monopolized by any nation, 667. Four thousand prisoners from Stralsund and Gripswald shipwrecked off Borkholm, xii. 199. Fleet lost in a storm, and the poor remains surrender to the Danes, when brave admiral Bagge is taken, 291. Peasants boldly remonstrate against the taxes, 255. Several executions performed by their diet at Stockholm, and their other proceedings, 313. Advantages gained by their fleet, 257. Part of it burnt by that of Riga, 214. Advantages gained by their allies, 240. Allies successful every where except in Bohemia and Silesia, *ib.* Allies join Bannic at Erfurt, who agree to attack the enemy encamped at Saffoldt, 244. Progress of their generals, 248. Three factions in the diet, and what, 365. Progress of their army in Prussia,

515. Their fleet, after some little successes on each side, is worsted by that of Dantzick before the city, 516. On which Gustavus raises the siege, with the inconsistent accounts of this event, *ib.* & (A). The fortune of the combatants fully equal, 517. Swen Split-beard mounts the Danish throne after his father Harold VI. xi. 692. Though educated a Christian, he persecutes Christianity, with his motives, *ib.* Thrice defeated, and at last taken prisoner by the Vandals, the inhabitants of Wollin, who exact a very considerable ransom, with his gratitude to the Danish ladies for raising the last moiety, *ib.* He is kindly treated by the king of Scotland, 693. His heart softens for persecuting the faith, and is restored through the mediation of the Scottish monarch, with his pathetic speech in a diet, *ib.* The Christian religion is restored in Denmark through the king and one Poppo, and he counteracts Olaus, king of Norway's scheme, with the latter's fleet defeated, *ib.* To avoid being taken, Olaus leaps into the sea and is drowned, with the annexing of Norway to Denmark, and Swen invades England, *ib.* & (A). A peace concluded between its monarch Ethelred and Swen, with the latter's proclamation in England, *ib.* (B). His death, character, and issue, 694. — Estrith III. why called to the Danish throne on Magnus's death, xi. 688, 697. On the death of Harold II. of England, equips a fleet for that country, but why the Danes return home, 689. — IV. and Canute V. elected after Eric V. to a partition of the Danish throne with Valdemar, till he comes of age, xii. 3. War breaks out between them, and Canute defeated, *ib.* Swen and Canute reconciled, march jointly against the Vandals, and Swen's squadron defeated, but the civil discord again revives between them, 4. The dispute between him and Canute referred to the diet of the empire, but Swen refuses complying with the emperor's verdict, 6. Invades Sweden, and the inhabitants submit, *ib.* In imminent danger from a tumult of the Danish peasants, *ib.* His cruel resentment against the unhappy natives, and ingratitude to his deliverer Tocho, 7. Abdicates and flies into Saxony, by the assistance of whose duke he endeavours to recover the throne, 8. Makes attempts with a squadron, and is acknowledged in Funen, *ib.* Baffled in his attempt on Valdemar's life, but has Canute assassinated, 9. On another civil war breaking out, is defeated near Grant-head, and slain in the pursuit, 10. His character, *ib.* & (B). Swenbecci, the Silesian general, his successful incursions into Austria, xi. 195. Swen-ti, or Si-ven, his mild reign in China, iii. 701. Disturbed by dreadful earthquakes, 702. — II. the fourth of the eleventh dynasty, his excellent reign, iii. 710. Swen-tsong invaded by the Mungls, but defeats them and dies, ii. 436. —, his excellent reign, but cheated with hopes of immortality, and is eaten up alive by worms, iii. 715. —, the fifth of the twenty-first dynasty, his reign, and his palace burnt, iii. 726. Swen-wang, emperor of China, recalls the banished philosophers, iii. 691. Swetoslaw, sovereign of Novogorod, defeated by the Greeks, and treacherously slain by the Peucingian prince, Malditto, who made a drinking-vessel of his skull, xiii. 88. His inheritance divided among his three sons, two of which being slain, the third, Wolodomir, succeeds, 89. Swidrigello, brother of Jagello, is raised to the duchy of Lithuania, with his bad qualities, xii. 645. Origin of the war between him and Jagello, *ib.* Swinthorus succeeds his father Vitenus, duke of Lithuania, xii. 631. Swilki's remonstrance against the new czar, and his forming a conspiracy against Demetrius, who pardons him, xii. 508. Sets new intrigues on foot, with his success by a general revolt and massacre of the Poles, 509. Elected emperor of Russia, *ib.* Swifs, first treaty between them and France, ix. 155. Invade Burgundy, and La Tremouille's negotiation with them disavowed by the king, 201. The perpetual alliance of the cantons with France, 206. Cantons frustrate an unexpected invasion from Alsace, 245. Solemn embassy from the cantons and league of the Grisons, with their demands 327. The protestants quit the king of France's service, 352. Surprise Francis II. and a battle begun at Marignan, x. 308. Their seasonable arrival in Milan, and the murdering



muring of those of the same nation in the emperor's service, with their colonel's answer to him, 310. Total dispersion of his army, *ib.* Cantons of Underwald, Switz, and Ury, form a conspiracy for recovering their liberty, and actually shake off the Austrian yoke, xi. 21. Their moderation towards Albert's governor, when in their power, and the other cantons soon engage in the confederacy, with the ridiculous tyranny of the Austrian governors, *ib.* Four thousand how cut off to a man, and he, why beheaded, 93 & (L). Receiving another check before Zurich, they raise the siege, *ib.* After defeating Blamont, marshal of Burgundy, take Hericourt in Franche-comte, 109. And they defeat Charles in three battles, *ib.*

Swiss cantons, to the number of thirteen, now completed. xi. 121

— renew their alliance with the French king at Lucerne, with a reserve in favour of their allies, and they surprise and cut off the Imperialists in the canton of Schaffhausen, and at Tungen, xi. 120. Why styled defenders of the holy see by the pope, 130. Their mercenary disposition, who resolve to invade the Milanese, and to drive the French out, who retire before them, xiii. 472. Swiss retreat from Italy, *ib.* Their irruption into Italy under the pope's banners, Pelisse retiring precipitately before them, 475. Beaten by the French, 481

— and Vaudois, their industry and zeal in Carolina, xv. 94

— cantons, whether equally allied, xv. 447 & (Z). & (A). Sword, Motawakkel's famous one, i. 475

— fish, his battle with the whale, &c. described, xiv. 550 Sylva, a Jewish physician, his imprisonment and martyrdom at Lima, v. 579 (H).

—, Don Juan de, his success against the Dutch in India, and recovers the Molucca islands, iv. 416

Sylvius Eneas's embassy to the pope and states of Bohemia, with success, x. 21

Symmachus, his new version of the Old Testament, v. 497 & (Y).

Syracuse seized on by the Moslems, i. 492. Taken by Maniaces, 640. By Ebn Thaman, 646

Syria conquered by the Moslems through the defeat of the Greeks, i. 198—202. Casarea and other cities subdued one after another, 227. Followed by a grievous mortality, 232. Becomes subject to the Seljuks, ii. 169. Invaded by the Franks, 177. Also by the Greeks, i. 329. Afflicted with a pestilence, *ib.* Its cities dismantled by the caliph, 386. Invaded by Hulaku, ii. 474. Subdued and recovered, 475. Invaded by Timur Bek, with the occasion of it, 481. Also by one hundred thousand Christians, 488. Seized upon by Ahmed Ebn Tolun, 492. Reduced by Caliph Al Mosta-fi, 508. Also by Al Moezz, 564. Ravaged by the Greeks, 565. Subdued by Malek Shah, i. 665. Sadly divided at the time of the crusade, 686. Damaged by a great earthquake, 706 & (T). Occasion of a dispute there, between the Genoese and Venetians, by which the Christians are ruined, ix. 637 & (L). Syrians deputy receives the Roman faith in the name of his nation, x. 19. Their horrid cruelties at Medina, i. 313. Sent home after Yezid's death, 314

Szopa in Poland, what, xii. 431

## T.

**T**ABA, or Toba, the seventy-fourth emperor of Japan, iv. 57

— II. or the eighty-second emperor, iv. 58

Tabago, its situation, xv. 265. By whom discovered and planted, with other particulars, *ib.* 269

Tabajik's attempt on Saghil defeated, ii. 315

Tabasco river, from whom called Rio de Grijalva, and its cazique comes on board Grijalva's ships, xiv. 171

— capital assaulted and taken by Cortez, and the Indians defeated, xiv. 179

— province described, xiv. 438

Tabeites, the followers of Mohammed, i. 119

Taberistan subdued to caliph Soliman, i. 351. Barabas revolts there, with his defeat and death, 462

Tablas island, among the Philippines, described, iv. 197

Table, Solomon's. taken in Spain, and sent to Al Walid, i. 345. Table hill at the Cape of Good Hope described, vi. 396. Situation and height, 398

Tabrestan seized and held by two of the house of Ali, i. 482. A new revolt by one of the same family, 484

MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

Tabub Khan, Safi I. his high chancellor's bloody execution, ii. 622

Tabuc town, expedition against it, i. 92. Miraculous supply of water, *ib.* Where situate, 94. Peace concluded with the neighbouring princes, *ib.*

Tacaza, a famous river in Ethiopia, vi. 204

Tachar takes the city of Lo-yang, ii. 344. Besieges the emperor Shew in Ju-ning-fu, *ib.* Forces it to surrender, 345

Tachard, the Jesuit, imposed on by lord Faulkon, iii. 344. Censured for his imprudent zeal, *ib.* Sent back ambassador to France, 384. Sollicits in vain for fresh troops, 401. Re-embarks with the Siamese for that kingdom, *ib.*

Tadmor, or Palmyra, besieged by Merwan, surrenders and is forgiven, i. 376. The ancient mart of the Syrian commerce, iv. 94. Its situation and ancient splendor, with its rise and decay, 95 & (K). Present commerce with Aleppo, 96

Tadoussac port described, xiv. 551. Account of the mission formed there, 580

Tadwadi, a sect of Brachmans in India, iii. 217

Taddeo Pepoli chosen governor of Bologna, and the occasion, xiii. 597

Taensas savages, where, xv. 44

Tag, or Dag, a ridge of mountains in West Tartary, ii. 118

Taga, a river of Morocco described, vii. 148

Tagala language in the Spanish East Indies, what, iv. 202 & (C).

Tagantakin, lord of Damascus, dies, i. 699

Taghazghaz, a Turkish tribe in West Tartary, ii. 120

Tagost described, vii. 161

Tagrit, where situated, i. 541. Affords provision to the caliph's forces, *ib.*

Tagtakin seizes on the kingdom of Damascus, i. 686. Offers his services to sultan Mohammed, 691

Tagulada, a spice island belonging to the Spaniards, iv. 269 sub (B).

Taguri, who and where situated, iii. 467. And their manners, *ib.*

Taharten, prince of Arzenjan, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 518

— governor of Arzenjan, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 534. Obtains the principality of it, 535. Highly honoured by Timur Bek, 553. Sent by Bayezid with proposals of peace, 561. Made governor of Kemak, 562

Tahay's success against the Song, but obstructed by Meng-kong, ii. 348

Taher revolts against his father, but defeated by him and drowned, ii. 566

Tahmasi, shah, his embassy and presents to khan Buzzuga, ii. 724. Over-reached by Din Mahamed, 728

Tahmasp I. shah, his reign, his good and ill success against sultan Soliman, and poisoned by one of his wives, ii. 604. Other particulars of his wars. from Olearius, *ib.* & (E). Subdues Georgia, with an account of his sons and successors, 605

Taj, the royal diadem of Persia, ii. 601 (K).

Taje-Mahl instigates her husband against the Christians, iii. 85. Her death saves many of them, *ib.* Magnificent tomb, *ib.*

Taillo, or Tallio, a silver coin used in Japan, iv. 26

Taima in Egypt, taken by Al Mamun, i. 454

Tajoddawla, his vain attempt on Aleppo, i. 666. Makes himself master of Damascus, 667. Successful attempt on Antioch and Syria, 669

— makes himself master of Aleppo and Syria, i. 676. ii. 170. Goes over to Barkiarok, and is slain, 175

—, Tataishi, made lord of Aleppo, i. 680. Defeated and slain, and embassy to Mostadher rejected, *ib.*

Tajoddawlat, prince of Halep, slain by Lulu, ii. 180

Tai-ovan (see Formosa) iv. 443

Taji, a brave Turkish nation, and noble defence of Samarkant, ii. 302

—, Khan, defeated by Timur Bek, ii. 545

Takajo-nomia, a famous temple in Japan, iv. 51.

Takakura, the eightieth emperor of Japan, iv. 57

Takaufi, a famous Japanese cubo born, iv. 59

Takash revolts against Malek Shah, and is confined in irons, i. 669. Joins in a conspiracy against Togrol, but defeated by him, ii. 194. Dignity to his dead body, *ib.*

—, Shah, revolts against his nephew Barkiarok, i. 677

Takin, Khan, defeated and killed, ii. 318

Takiuddin made viceroy of Egypt, vi. 63.

7 Z

Taklimenoth,



- Taklmenoth, or Tekla Haymanoth, the ninety-sixth king of Abyssinia, vi. 254
- Takor Egzye sent ambassador to Rome, and takes the rout of Enarrca, vi. 287. Arrested by Alico, a Moorish king, 288. And forced to go back to Abyssinia, ib.
- Takrit taken and destroyed by Timur Bek, ii. 532. Its robbers put to death, ib.
- Talas, a river of the Mogul Eluths, ii. 250
- Talay Ebn Zaric made vazir of Egypt, i. 713. Becomes odious for his extortions, 714
- stirred up against the caliph's murderer, vi. 52 & (D). Raised to the vizirate, and discovers the dead caliph's body, 53.
- Talbot, earl of Shrewsbury, over-runs great part of Guienne, who is slain in the battle of Castillon, which proves the loss of Guienne, ix. 159
- Talkhan taken by the Monguls, ii. 311
- Talon, intendant of Canada, his memorial to Monsieur Colbert, xiv. 603. Difference between him and Courcelles, with their characters, 607. Returns to France, ib. Returns to Canada, and obtains the re-establishment of the Recollects and a recruit of colonists, but damaged by shipwreck, 608. Irregularities of the remainder there cause a war with the Indians, ib. How prevented, 609. Project for a congress of the northern Canadians at the falls of St. Mary, 610
- bold speech of that advocate general at a bed of justice before the king, ix. 417.
- Talopoyneffes, or nuns, iii. 337. Live in the same convents with the males, 340
- Talopoy, in Pegu, a wild mendicant breed of Monks, iii. 248. Various orders of them, ib. Raise a revolt in Jangoma, 269
- , in Laos, their wild religion and doctrines, iii. 295. Crafty evasions in defence of them, 299. Shameful tenets and knaveries, 300. Different orders, convents, &c. 301. Confessions, holy water, &c. 302. Craftiness, ib. Indulged by the Sanjam monarchs, and pretence to magic, 303. Are sometimes served by noblemen, their festivals and revenue whence, ib.
- , of Siam, their various degrees and titles, iii. 336
- , of the woods or deserts, and how initiated, iii. 336. Their dress, beads, &c. 337. Their gross and dangerous notions of sin, &c. and ill morals, &c. 338. Rules and maxims hard to keep, ib. Their privileges, origin, and functions, 339. Preaching, watching, and fastings, ib. Superiors and inferiors, ib. Convents, elections, revenue, and their children, 340. Their religion from whom derived, 341. Conspiracy against Naraya Chaw, 368. Put to death, ib.
- Talud, king of Quiloa, his reign, vi. 350
- Tallang-jang island in Siam described, iii. 321
- Tallard, the French under him take Landau, after defeating the prince of Hesse, whom he had suddenly attacked at Spirebach, xi. 327. Forced march to join the elector of Bavaria, 329. Taken prisoner at Blenheim, ix. 486. Released on his parole, with a false suggestion about him, 501
- Tallow-tree in China described, iii. 612
- Tam, the second king of Pegu, with his successors, iii. 251
- Tamarica captainry in Brasil described, xiv. 478. Capital, and sugar the principal commodity of the province, ib.
- Tamasp, Shah, his kind reception of Hemayun, iii. 55
- Tambos, houses of refreshment on the great road of Peru, xiv. 288
- Tambuk, a Siamese metal, how made, iii. 314
- Tamenes Indians, why so called, xiv. 194
- Tamimi, Al, a famous astronomer, his character, &c. i. 584 (M).
- Tamimites pardoned by Mohammed, i. 91
- Tamuras Khan revolts against Abbas Shah, ii. 611. Defeated by him, 614
- Tanasserim, a great river of Siam described, iii. 313. Its course, ib.
- city, situate upon it, and famous for its Nipa wine, iii. 320
- Ta-nay-kya-lay, king of Qua-wa, his death, ii. 392
- Tanais (Tana or Catana) city, described, xiii. 14 & (M).
- Tancred, the Norman, account of him, 397 xi. & (M).
- of Sicily, concludes an alliance with Richard of England, and reduces Puglia, x. 420. Most of its cities submit to Henry, but is obliged to raise the siege of Naples, with various success on both sides, and Tancred's death, 421
- Tandebal, rajah of Indostan, subdued by sultan Mahmud, i. 630
- Tangier described, vii. 159. Taken by the Portuguese, and demolished by the English, to whom it was yielded, ib.
- Tangram, kingdom, subdued by Chau-migrem, iii. 263
- Tangu kingdom described, iii. 239. Its history, 240. Situation, 273 (D). Revolts against the Barmas, 268. Its king's treachery to that of Pegu, 269. Seizes on his immense treasures, 270. Horrid ingratitude and cruelty to him, ib. Ill success against the Portuguese, 273
- king of the Tartars pays homage to the Chinese emperor, iii. 702
- kingdom, where situated, ii. 267. Subdued by Jenghiz Khan, 328.
- Tanjaor, a small kingdom described, also its capital, fortresses, &c. iii. 176. iv. 562
- Tanisir plundered and put to the sword, iii. 127
- Tankishi, his conspiracy against Towhan-Temur, but seized and slain by Pe-yen, ii. 416
- Tannore, (or Tanor) a port in Malabar, iii. 164
- Taormina, the ancient Tauromenium, taken by Emir Al Moezz, i. 558. Retaken by Manuel, 559
- Tapac Amru rejects proposals from the viceroy of Peru, xiv. 358. Pursued by the Spaniards, he surrenders, is falsely impeached and condemned to die, ib. Reply to his sentence, ib. Appeal and exclamation, 359. Exclamation on the scaffold, and decollation there, the Inca male line ending in him, ib.
- Taparipa, son of Atahualapa, proclaimed Inca by Pizarro, xiv. 299. Death, and the Spaniards disappointed thereon, ib.
- Taphilet kingdom described, vii. 161. Its produce and stout camels, &c. ib. & (R). Government, 162. City and manufactures, and its inhabitants addicted to witchcraft, ib. & (S).
- Taphilet river described, and road through Mount Atlas, vii. 162
- Tapirasson in Brasil, what, xiv. 476
- Tapurau taken by the Barmas, iii. 257
- Taraz, a city of Turkestan, ii. 147
- Tard-venus, or late comers, devastations by that set of robbers, ix. 104. And the constable James de Bourbon totally defeated by them, though in two separate bodies, ib.
- Targa, (Hayr) desert, described, vii. 102
- Targan fort, in Asia Minor, by whom built, x. 153 (R).
- Targay's conspiracy, flight, and death, ii. 416
- Tarick made general of the Moors, invades Spain, but is bravely opposed by king Roderic, vii. 576. Falls out with his competitor Muza, and both leave Spain, 584
- Ebn Zarka, his success in Spain, i. 345. Passes the streights of Hercules and ravages Boetica and Lusitania, ib. Gives name to Gibel Tarif, or Gibraltar, and vast progress in the reduction of Spain, 346. Recalled by Soliman, 352. Immense spoil and riches, 354. Accuses Muza of high crimes, ib.
- Tarkan (Terkan) a high dignity, and its strange privileges, ii. 275 (L).
- Tarkhan, a province of Karasm, ii. 714
- Tarkoniates, his success against the Turks, and he restores Andronicus's affairs, ii. 242.
- Tarku taken and ruined by the Mungls, ii. 321
- Tarmashir, the thirteenth Khan of Bukharia, ii. 465
- Taro, gallant count, his successes against the enemies of Portugal, xii. 486
- Tarsus taken by the Greeks, and peopled by a colony of Christians, i. 560
- taken by John Comnenus, ii. 216
- Tartar princes submit to Timur, ii. 398
- Tartars, 200,000, cut off by Dogan khan, ii. 140. Are not all of Turkish extraction, 141. Though they speak the same language, ib. Mungl, who, (see Mungl) or Monguls. Manchew, (see Manchew) whence their name, 252
- , Western, invade the Rum dominions, but defeat Rok-noddin, ii. 233. Conquests in Cappadocia, 235. Their empire from Jenghiz khan, 243. Reduced by Temujin, 270. Dreadful oath against Vang khan, ib. With the Poles, defeat the electoral army of Brandenburg, in ducal Prussia, xii. 359. Defeated by the Palatine of Cracow, who is worsted in a second invasion of those barbarians, 469. Their ravages in Poland, Silesia, Moravia, and Hungary, ib. Irruption into Podolia, who defeat the Palatine Buccarius, 479. Another irruption of them, 490. Make an irruption into Poland, being seconded by the Turks, 504. Peace concluded with the latter, ib. Irruption into Poland, 549. Another as far as Leopold, but part



- part of their prisoners recovered, 572. Several tribes, and their different denominations, xiii. 39, 40, 41. Invade Podolia, while Basilus does Lithuania, but with small success, 99. They invade Muscovy, and defeat Basilus's troops, with considerable loss, ib.
- Tartars, Casan, join those of Crim Tartary, xiii. 99. Who invade Russia, take Moscow, and subject the czar to a tribute, ib. They leave Moscow, carrying off immense booty, and eighty thousand prisoners, but are defeated in attempting Rezan, 100. Send ambassadors to Moscow about a peace, ib.
- Tartary, Great, its boundaries, ii. 118. How divided, ib.
- , Western, described, ii. 118. Its chief mountains, rivers, &c. ib. Nations and governments, according to Arab writers, 119. Mostly fabulous, 122
- Eastern, described, with its extent and division, iii. 459
- Russian, its west and south part, xiii. 30 & (C). Several inhabitants, ib.
- , khan of, &c. takes the field, with his successes about Asoph, the Ukraine, &c. but a body of them repulsed from Bialowcerkiow, xiii. 221
- Tartas, Isaac Castro de, a Jew, his admirable constancy in the flames, v. 564 (Q).
- Tarudant, where situate, with its great commerce, vii. 161
- Ta she-patu defeats the pirate Lyew-fu-tong, ii. 424
- Tashkunt taken by Kalil, ii. 583
- Tasman, his voyage from Batavia to New Guinea, with his discoveries and remarks, v. 16 & seq.
- Tassalon, duke of Bavaria, retires into his own dominions, and renounces his homage to Pepin, viii. 667. The duke of Aquitaine is entirely defeated, upon which the duke of Bavaria demands, and obtains peace, 668. Comes into France to do Charlemagne homage, 677. Pardoned; but refusing his intrigues, is seized and deprived, 679. Solemnly resigns his rights to Bavaria, 682
- Tata, whence descended, and different from the Tartars, ii. 277 & not.
- Tatar, or Tartar-Usbecks (see Usbecks), ii. 719
- Tatars, the Turkish tribe, where sited, ii. 125
- , of Rum, revolt against Pir Mehemed, but dispersed for want of a head, ii. 582
- , Kara, who, and whence; are transplanted by Timur Bek to Jetah, ii. 565. Revolt, and disperse again, 582
- Tatash rebels against his nephew in Irak, ii. 175. Defeated and slain, ib.
- Tata-tong-ko brings the Igur characters among the Mongls, ii. 367
- Taticius sent to recover Nice from the Turks, and defeats them at Alykas, ii. 206
- Tatu, the Mongul capital in China, abandoned by Towan Temur, but entered by the emperor Kong-vu, ii. 434
- Tatupu, its cacique hanged by Cortez, xiv. 276
- Tatutepec, a colony called Segura, built there, xiv. 274
- Tatta, a city of Indostan, iii. 12. Its citadel, and learned men, 13
- Bakar, where seated, iii. 97. Taken by Mir Baba, 103. Surrendered to Aurengzib, 105
- Tattenbach's servant discovers his master's plot to the emperor, xi. 286. Upon which the count is arrested, and his papers seized, ib.
- Tau, sect, their books all burnt, ii. 384. And by whom collected, iii. 720
- , king of Korea, his tribute to China rejected, iii. 755
- Tavay, a frontier town of Pegu, iii. 242
- Tauris, or Tabris, by whom built, i. 420. Taken and plundered by the Kipjaks, ii. 516. By Timur Bek, 517. By Abbas the Great, 610. Destroyed by an earthquake, 658. Surrendered to the Mongls, ii. 318. Taken by Selim I. 602
- Taulashta, a traitor, promoted by Yefun Temur, ii. 408. Spared by him, and his favour to the occidental merchants, 410. Brave defence of Shang-tu, and put to death by Tutemur, 412
- Tau-tong, passage forced by the Mongls, ii. 337
- Tau-tse, an extravagant sect among the Chinese, and by whom introduced, iii. 558 & (E). Their juggling and knavish tricks, ib. sub not.
- Tawaba taken and burnt by Mamun, i. 454. Enlarged by his son, 456
- Taws, strong fortresses, taken by Timur Bek, ii. 538
- Tawzi, the son of Taglakin, dies, i. 700
- Taximaroa, a town on the frontier of Mechvacan, xiv. 273
- Taxus, head of the Abenaguais, his bravery in New-England, xiv. 653
- Tayamom, a purification by rubbing, enjoined by Mahomet, i. 67
- Tay-bou-to-ni, a sect of cheating conjurers in Tonquin, iii. 442. Their way of curing their patients, ib.
- Tay chang, his short reign in China, iii. 729
- Tay-chew-fu taken by the Monguls, ii. 378
- Taycho, or Fide Josi, his rise, iv. 61. Assumes a new title and power, ib.
- Tay-chot revolts from Temujin, ii. 267. Defeated, 268
- Taye, a deer in California, described, xiv. 420
- Tayedoddawla, import of that high title given to the Sicilian emirs, i. 624
- Tayef, the place of Mahomet's retreat, where situated, i. 30. Besieged by him, and described, 88. Whence so called, ib. The siege raised, ib. Sues in vain for a favourite idol, 95. Forced to surrender at discretion, ib.
- Tayjuts revolt from Temujin, on Pisukay's death, ii. 267. Make alliance against Vang-khan, 270. Cut in pieces by Temujin, 271
- Tay-kang, the third emperor of the first Chinese dynasty, iii. 680. And deposed by J, or Ys, ib. His reign in China, 685
- Tayki, or Tayghi, head of a Mongl tribe, ii. 261
- Kalka princes, their government, ii. 438
- Tay-kya, or Tay-kiau, his ignoble reign in China, and proclaimed by his prime minister, iii. 684. Gratitude to him, and his death, 689
- Tay-ming, dynasty, when, and by whom founded, ii. 433
- Tay-ming-fu, a first rate city in Pe-cheli, iii. 527
- Taymuraz, king of Kaket, invaded by Abbas Shah, ii. 614. Submits to him, 615. Restored to his kingdom, ib. Invaded again, and turned out by Abbas, ib.
- Tay-myau, or hall of ancestors, finished by Kublay, ii. 366
- Tay-ping taken by Chu, ii. 424, 425
- his generous behaviour to Toto, ii. 420. Refuses to cabal with the prince, 427. Retires from court, 428. Banished and slain, 430
- Tay-pu-wha betrayed to the pirate Fang-chew-que, and his noble death, ii. 422
- Tay-tay, the residence of a Spanish governor, iv. 196
- Tay-ting, the Chinese name of Yefun-timur, ii. 488. (See Yefun-timur.)
- , emperor of the Ywen dynasty, his reign, and attended with dreadful calamities, iii. 724
- Tay-tong-fu, its out-posts forced by Jenghiz-khan, ii. 282
- one among the cities not taken by Jenghiz-khan, ii. 285
- Tay-tsong, one of the greatest Chinese emperors, his excellent reign, and he receives a Christian embassy, iii. 712 & (P). Excessive grief for the loss of his empress, and prime minister; he himself dies, ib. & (Q).
- , the eighth of the thirteenth dynasty, invaded by 200,000 Tartars, and re-settled by his worthy Kolau, iii. 714
- Tay-tsu, his efforts to restore peace in China, ii. 424
- founds the eighteenth dynasty in China, iii. 718
- , founder of the nineteenth dynasty, his excellent character and reign, and his excellent empress, iii. 718, & (W). Stratagem to save the citizens of Nanking, 719
- Tay-tu, Tatu, or the great court built by Kublay, and the kambalu of M. Paolo, ii. 366 & (G).
- Tay vu, emperor of China, frightened by a strange omen, iii. 685. Explained to his advantage by I-pu, ib.
- Tay-vu-ti, emperor of northern China, his success against Venti, with the destruction of the Bonzas, and their temples, iii. 708
- Tay-wan-fu, the capital of Formosa, described, iii. 538
- Tay-yan khan defeated by Temujin, ii. 271. Treachery to Vang khan, but contradicted by others, 276. Makes alliance against Temujin afresh, 277. Defeated and slain through his obstinacy, 278
- Tay-ywen-fu, the capital of Shan-si, described, iii. 546. Its noble prospect, ib. Taken by Muhuli, ii. 325
- Tazcaro Habitacum set up against the emperor Minas, vi. 276. Put to death by him, ib.
- Tchaouachas savages, west of the Mississippi, xv. 47
- Tchitimachas savages, xv. 47
- Tea of China, adulterated, iii. 613. Its good qualities, ib. Various sorts of it, 614. Bohea, or Vu-i, its virtues, ib. Whether the same with the green, and a late improvement of the plant, ib. & (D). Its medicinal qualities, 615 & (E). How cultivated, cured, &c. with its flowers, leaves, &c. described, 616
- Techifen, his reign and conquests in Barbary, vii. 128
- Tecnahtitlan city, where seated, xiv. 362
- Tecoantepec, its cacique assisted by Alvarado, xiv. 274



- Tednett taken by Sharif Mohammed, vii. 175  
 Teflis (Taflis) taken and burnt by the Moslems, i. 470  
 Teflis, the ninety-seventh king of Abyssinia, dethroned by his prime minister, vi. 254  
 Teganifforens' free speech to Vaudreuil, shewing the disgust of the savages, and why, xiv. 677  
 Tegnapatam, a port of Malabar, and Dutch factory there, iii. 166  
 Tégorari, a province of Biledulgerid, vii. 118  
 Te-in, lord of the Honkirats, his singular alliance with Temujin, ii. 272  
 Tekeli, Emeric, account of him, who publishes a manifesto, declaring his intention of defending the rights of Hungary, xi. 295. He takes several places, and defeats the Imperialists under count Leslie, near Zathmar, ib.  
 —, the famous, becomes head of the Hungarian malecontents, xii. 538. Attacked by the Imperial general, retreats under the cannon of Altsol, but he takes Bultroc, and agrees on a truce, xi. 296. Surprizes Zathmar, with other successes, 299. Declared king of Upper Hungary by the Porte, ib. On the Grand Vizir's arrival with an immense army in Hungary, publishes a manifesto in the sultan's favour, ib. Effects of this, with the ravages of the infidels, ib. Made prisoner by the Turks, and put in irons, 304  
 — count, declared vaivode of Transylvania by the Grand Signior, defeats a body of Imperialists under Heisler, xi. 310. Defeats a body of Germans under the prince of Hanover, who is killed, 311. Reward from the Turks for his services, 322. Countess surrenders Moncatch, and is conducted to Vienna, 307  
 Tekis, a river of the Eluth Monguls, ii. 250  
 Tekla Haimanout introduces the monastic life into Abyssinia, vi. 228 & (H). His festival still observed among them, 231, & (K).  
 — Guergis, raises a revolt against Susneus, taken and hanged with his sister, vi. 295  
 —, Emanuel, stripped of his government for protecting the jesuits, vi. 303  
 —, Salas, defeated by the Gallas, vi. 304  
 Tela, city, where situated, i. 384  
 Tel Basher, where situated, and taken by the Franks, i. 690  
 Tel-batrik, fortress, taken by Saifo'ddowla, i. 552  
 Tel-besme, monastery, when, and by whom built, i. 389  
 Tele, a city of Monomotapa, and the Jesuits college there, vi. 373  
 Telenga, or Tillingana, a province of Decan described, iii. 138  
 Telha saves Mahomet's life at the battle of Ohod, i. 57. Proposed against Ali for the caliphate, ib. Entreats him to accept of it, 258. Takes the oaths to him, ib. But retires to Mecca, 259. Cabals with Ayesha against him, 260. Wounded at the battle of Khoraziba; confesses his crime, and dies, 266  
 Tell, William, story of him, xi. 21 & (P).  
 Tellez compiles an history of Abyssinia, and why partial to his brotherhood, vi. 161. Unjust censures on the emperor Susneus, 300  
 Tellicheri, a river of Malabar, iii. 163. Its port, and English factory there, ib. & (K).  
 —, described, with its traffic and coin, iv. 386  
 Temba, a province of Angola, described, vi. 492  
 Tembanba, or Temban-dumba, the hellish legislatrix of the Giagas, with her cursed character, vi. 560, 562. Early marks of it, and she rebels against her mother, ib. Instances of her cruelty and unnatural brutishness, 563. Her immodesty, 564 & (F). And irreligion, 565. Spreads fire and sword every where, and her camp described, ib. How provided, and way of fighting, 566 & (G). Marries one of her soldiers, but is poisoned by him, 568. Her pompous funeral, and vast number of victims, 569  
 Temericourt, his bravery against the Turks, vii. 515. Sent prisoner to the Porte, and beheaded, ib.  
 Temian province, in Africa, described, vii. 110  
 Templars, the rise of that order, and its institution with a military turn, vii. 685 (U). But since degenerated, ib. Account of its revenue and epithet, ib. not. in fin.  
 —, why founded at Jerusalem, ix. 584. By whom suppressed in Vienne council, 658 (B)  
 —, knights, prosecuted throughout Europe, viii. 31. Honourably acquitted in the council of Salamanca, ib. Persecuted, 151. Favoured by Jayme II. of Arragon, 153. Their prosecution begun in France, with their origin and character, ix. 78. Several of them suffer with great steadiness and piety, ib. Suppressed in England, 79. And in Spain, ib.  
 Templars, the pope refuses to abolish them, with some account of them, and their depraved morals, xi. 25 (X).  
 Temple, Sir William, forms the triple alliance at Aix-la-Chapelle, xi. 609. Its object what, ix. 453. Sent by king Charles II. to the States-General, xi. 610. Makes a mutual league with that republic, but wavering, ix. 464  
 —, the Great, in Mexico, described, xv. 215  
 —, Indian, described, xv. 14  
 Temujin, his history to his election, ii. 264. Why so called, where born, and by whom educated, 266 & (T). Abandoned by the greatest part of his vassals, but defeats them when he was but thirteen, 267. His bravery and good fortune, 268. Taken prisoner by Tayjut, but escapes, ib. And retires to Karakorum, ib. Well received by Vang khan; his success against the other khans, and marriage with his daughter, 270. Success against the Tartars, &c. ib. iv. 271  
 Ten, that council in Venice, when erected, x. 197  
 Tenan, one of the eight provinces of Tongking, iii. 433  
 Tencheda, a god in Japan, his frequent amours with young virgins, iv. 10  
 Tenedos, and other islands seized upon by the Turks, v. 143  
 — revolt under Mutatio, their governor, with his speech, x. 227. The senate of Venice resolves to reduce that island, and a flag of truce from the fort, with the articles, ib.  
 Teneriff, one of the Canaries, described, vi. 137—143. Blake burns the Spanish galleons there, viii. 316  
 Ten-mu, the fortieth emperor of Japan, forbids coining of silver, iv. 54  
 Tenes, where situated; plundered and taken by Barbarossa, vii. 230, 246 & (G).  
 Tenhoa, one of the eight provinces of Tonking, iii. 433  
 Tenk-gut subdued by Timur Bek, ii. 517  
 Ten-tij, the thirty-ninth emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 54  
 Tercera island, one of the Azores, described, vi. 155  
 Terki taken by the Mungls, ii. 321  
 Termed, in Great Bukharia, described, ii. 307. Taken, and put to the sword by the Mungl khan, ib.  
 Ternate island fortified by Brito, iv. 154. Its description, 156  
 Terra Firma, (New, or Golden Castile) its general extent and name, what, xiv. 445  
 Tesse, a body of the allies cut to pieces by him, who forced the eminence commanding Toulon, xi. 336  
 Tessin, count, chosen marechal of the Swedish diet, and three factions there, what, xii. 422  
 Testament of the twelve patriarchs, when written, with its version and character, v. 489, sub (S).  
 Te tsong, emperor of China, his deep mourning for his koulau, and successful reign, iii. 714  
 Tetuan, in Barbary, described, vii. 159  
 — river, its mouth filled up, viii. 257  
 Teufera, the chief city of Biledulgerid, vii. 116  
 Teutonic. See KNIGHTS TEUTONIC.  
 Texeyra, Nuno Fernandez, chosen arbitrator by Chau-migrem, iii. 261  
 Texi, Bertrand de, the fourteenth grand master of Malta, vii. 387. Goes to the Imperial court, with his death, ib.  
 Tezazic, sixth king of Mexico, his weak character, xiv. 364. And bad behaviour in an expedition, is poisoned, 365  
 Thamal, the khalif's admiral, his victory over the Magrebians, i. 515  
 Themama, the Arab, taken prisoner by Mahomet, and sent as one of his captains against the Koreish, i. 63  
 Theodobert, on his father Thierri's death, proclaim'd, notwithstanding his uncle's intrigues, viii. 624  
 —, beaten in two battles, taken prisoner, shaved by order of Brunchaut, and murdered with his children, viii. 640  
 Theodomir, king of the Suevi, his miraculous cure, vii. 541. Abjures Arianism, and settles the hierarchy of his kingdom, 545  
 Theodore, Uranus, and his colleagues, insulted by the Turks, &c. ii. 224, 391  
 — the seventy-seventh king of Abyssinia, vi. 253  
 —, the Vandal, protects the Jews, v. 512  
 —, of Oldenburg, his remarkable answer to the Danish senate, demanding one of his sons for their king, xii. 108  
 Theodorowitz, Michael (sec Romanow) elected czar, with his character, xiii. 137  
 Theodosius's edicts for and against the Jews, v. 507 & (Y) 542  
 Theophilus, the Maronite historian, when flourishing, i. 404  
 —, of Edessa, his prediction about his own death, and that of the caliph Mohdi, with his Syriac version of the Iliad and Odyssey, i. 413



- Theophilus, prince of Cibra, defeated and taken prisoner, i. 419  
 —, emperor, his ill success against caliph Motasem, i. 463, 477  
 Theresa, on her father's demise, takes the title of queen, viii. 376, 378  
 —, of Portugal, deposed and imprisoned by her son and her subjects, &c. vii. 671  
 Therese, St. the French settlement on that river, xv. 156  
 Theudis governs Spain during Amalaric's minority, vii. 531. Chosen king after that prince's death, 533. Fruitless expedition into Africa, and assassinated after his return, ib.  
 Thibaut I. succeeds his uncle Sancho VIII. king of Navarre, viii. 574, 575  
 — II. succeeds his father Thibaut I. king of Navarre, under the tuition of James of Arragon, viii. 575, 577  
 — Lorenzo, forty-sixth doge of Venice, x. 204, 205  
 — Jacomo, forty-third doge of Venice, succeeds Pietro Ziani, x. 201  
 Thieri of Metz, defeats a Danish fleet and army, vii. 621. Reduces Thuringia, 622  
 — succeeds his brother Childeric in Austrasia, viii. 654, 657  
 — IV. of Chelles, declared king of Austrasia, Neustria, and Burgundy, and Charles Martel is his mayor, viii. 659  
 Thioux savages, account of, xv. 45  
 Thobiomi, rabbi, his character and writings, v. 512  
 Thomas, his valiant defence of Damascus, and his standard taken by the Turks, i. 146  
 — I. succeeds his father Hubert III. marquis of Savoy, and recovers many of his paternal estates, xiv. 125  
 — II. succeeds his brother Amadeo IV. marquis of Savoy, xiv. 126  
 — prince of Carignan, surprises Turin, with a quarrel between the two uncles and Leganez, which retards the siege of the citadel, xiv. 133  
 — predecessor of prince Eugene, some account of him, xiv. 133  
 — Mr. governor of Pennsylvania, xv. 126  
 — governor of Antigua, xv. 263  
 — St. town, described, and fatal to Raleigh, who took it, xiv. 230  
 — St. in Golconda, made a bishopric, but destroyed by the Moors, with other traditions about it, iv. 387 & (K).  
 — Christians, their peculiar tenets, iv. 387 K.  
 — an unhealthy island on the African coast, vi. 120. Vast number of sugar mills destroyed, 121. Fertility in all grain but wheat, ib. Its capital of Pavaosan described, also its castle, 122. Inhabitants, trade, fort, &c. 123. Religion and government, ib.  
 — St. in Hispaniola, besieged by a powerful cacique, who is arrested by the Spaniards, xv. 619, who defeat his brother, and their subsequent treatment of the natives, ib. with the latter's defeat, ib. Dissensions among the Spaniards, ib. The war ended, 620  
 — island, St. by whom discovered, iv. 112  
 — the Apostle, his church and city, iv. 146. Pretended sepulchre, 147  
 — a small gold coin, struck at Goa and Diu, but debased, iv. 171  
 — in Kongo, erected into a bishopric, vi. 476. Ill conduct of the prebends, 477  
 — St. account of that island, xv. 237, 363  
 Thomez, savages, account of them, xv. 44  
 Thormiel Khan defeats the rebels in Guzerat, and rewarded, iii. 60  
 Thorn's project of a north-west passage to China, abortive, iv. 286  
 Thorn, account of the dispute with its magistrates, and the occasion, xii. 615. The accusation of the jesuits, and a commission from the king and diet, to examine evidences, 616. The prejudices and iniquity of the judges against the Lutherans, with the punishment inflicted on the magistrates, &c. ib. Account of that city, 652  
 — surrenders at discretion, to Charles XII. xii. 374  
 Thornhill protects Nevis, and conquers St. Bartholomew, xv. 250. Attacks St. Martin's, 251, and makes a gallant retreat from the French, ib.  
 Thou, Mr. de, his demand at the Hague for justice on Ruyter's insult to the French ships, xi. 580. The president da Ghent's reply, and seizing of the French ships and merchandize, ib. Death and character, ix. 358, 407  
 Thoulouse, count, engagement between him and Rook, with the partial representation of it by Lewis XIV. ix. 486  
 Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.  
 Thousand islands in the South-Sea described, and their traffic with the Moluccas, v. 38 & (D).  
 Thrace ravaged by the Turks, and defeated by Mathew, v. 160  
 Thrasamund, fourth king of the Vandals in Africa, v. 711. His measures for establishing Arianism, ib. & (H), and binds his successors, by oath, to follow them, and dies, 712  
 Thrasymene, the famous lake, where, xiii. 272  
 Thresher-fish (Fletttau) described, xiv. 550  
 Thunno, the treasurer of Sweden revolts, and after several battles is defeated, xii. 224  
 Thunder dreaded by the Mungls, and law to prevent its consequences, ii. 332  
 Thuringia reduced under Hermanfroi, by treachery, viii. 621  
 — landgrave, the betrothing of Valdemar's daughter to him, xii. 19  
 — its division in a diet at Erford, xi. 10  
 Thurot, Mr. defeated and killed, xv. 624  
 Tiau-tong, its ruins in Siam, iii. 316  
 Tibao, Gonzales, an upstart Portuguese, his surprising rise, iii. 234. Treachery to the king of Arracan, 235. Ravages his country, 236. Punished by impaling his nephew, and totally defeated by the king, ib. Stripped of his conquests and fortune, ib.  
 Tibar, its mines of gold, vii. 160  
 Tiberias, now Tabariyah, subdued by the Moslems, i. 230. By Al Moezz, 564  
 — Jewish academy at, v. 486; when and by whom founded, 488  
 Tibet subdued by Kang-hi, iii. 742  
 Tiburtines revolt, but are subdued, ix. 591  
 Tichoven island, in the South-Sea, described, v. 36  
 Ticoantipe Cician Pipe, his embassy to Cortez, xiv. 278  
 Ticonderoga, attempt of Abercrombie upon it unprosperous and fatal, xiv. 713  
 — defeat of the English there, xv. 623  
 Ticuaria island and port described, and taken by the Portuguese, iv. 123  
 Ti-fa, his reign in China, iii. 682  
 Tiffenbach, commander of the Moravians, takes Nicolasburg, xi. 202  
 Tigre, kingdom, in Abyssinia, described, vi. 172. Extent, towns, &c. ib. How divided and governed, 173  
 Tigris, its waters turned yellow, and then red, i. 477  
 — bridges over it destroyed by the people of Baghdad, i. 482  
 Ti-kau, his reign in China, iii. 682  
 Ti-ki, the second emperor of the first Chinese dynasty, iii. 680  
 Ti-kin, his despicable reign in China, iii. 682  
 Ti-kyong, his reign in China, iii. 682  
 Tilly, in his turn, defeats Badendourlach, xi. 208. Obligated, after a general assault, to raise the siege of Nienburg, 213; yet he takes Calemberg, and the consequences, ib. Why conferences ineffectual, ib. Taking Gottingen, 214, who defeats the king of Denmark, with further particulars of the action, ib. (B). Rapid conquests in Holstein, and his prescribing conditions to the duke and to the king of Denmark, but rejected, 215. The Danes fly before Tilly, ib. Has the command of the army given him on the duke of Bavaria's refusing certain conditions, 221. Storms Magdeburg, with the pillage taken, and cruelties committed by the Austrians, 223. Disputes the passage of the Lech, but retires, and is mortally wounded, with an account and character of him, 228 (L). Victory obtained by him over the bishop of Halberstadt at Statlo, xi. 500. Embden saved from Tilly by Maurice, but Lipstadt surrenders to him, ib. Advances to the Dutch frontiers, with his various operations, 512. Marches into Saxony, xii. 326. Attacks Gustavus's intrenchments, but is repulsed, and retreats to Magdeburg, 327. His character of Gustavus, ib. Enters Saxony, with his horrid ravages there, 328. Invests, and soon takes Leipzig and Passenberg-castle, ib. Defeated with considerable loss, 329. Consequences of this victory, ib. Disputes the passage of the Lech with Gustavus, 330  
 Ti-mang, his inactive reign in China, iii. 682  
 Timi Rajah drives the three tyrants out of Bisnagar, and vile stratagem to re-people it, iii. 136  
 Timu-puwha promoted by Tutemur, ii. 411  
 Tinghianos, in Manila, who and whence, iv. 187  
 Ting-wang, emperor of China, his peaceable reign, iii. 694  
 Tinian, or Buena Vista, one of the Mariamne islands, described, iv. 227. Plenty of cattle, fruit, &c. 228. Sundry defects, 229 (E).



- Tionnontatez**, the true Hurons, their regular police and hereditary chieftainship, xiv. 566
- Timor island**, Great, described, iv. 158. Its site, commerce, &c. ib. & 170. Its brave defence for twenty years against the Portuguese, 171 (V).
- island, in the South-Sea, described, and Fort Concordia in it, v. 24. The island divided into five kingdoms, 25
- Timur Malek**, his noble defence of Khojend, ii. 300. Stratagem against the Mungls, 301. Narrow escape, ib.
- , the grandson of Kublay, his success against the revolted Tartars, ii. 388. Defeats Kin-kya-nu, and gains the affections of the Nayen, &c. ib. Declines to succeed Pe-yen in Tartary, 393. Proclaimed emperor by Pe-yen, 395. Piety to his ancestors, and renews the war with the king of Qua-wa, ib. Liberality and regulations, 396. Embassy to Japan, blamed, ib. Ill-timed expedition against the Papefians, 397. Rears a palace to Confucius, and builds magazines in Tartary, ib. His death and character, ib.
- **Shah**, the twenty-first khan of Bukharia, ii. 466. Deposition and death, ib.
- **Khan**, slain by Abdollah's officer, x. 499.
- **Mengli** joins with the revolted Hay-tu, ii. 391. Defeated by Pe-yen, ib.
- **Bek**, his first promotion under Togluk Timur-Khan; and he assists Kefer Yessuri against his uncle Berlas, ii. 500. Promoted afresh by Togluk Khan, and bloody encounter with Tekel, is taken prisoner by Ali Bey, with his escape and victory over Abufaid, 501. Success in Great Bukharia, and against the Getes; he defeats and takes Kaja Khan, with other victories over him, 502. Defeated by them, 503. Breaks with the fordid Hussayn, ib. Surprises the town and castle of Karhi, 504. Defeats Hussayn's militia, ib. and also his other forces; and he makes peace with him, 505. Narrow escape from the Getes, and just suspicion of Hussayn, 506. Lays siege to Balk, takes and destroys it, 507. Feigned kindness to Hussayn, ib. Installed emperor by the princes, 508. War against the Getes, and invasion of Karasm; makes peace with the Sofi of it, 509. Pursuit and defeat of the revolted, 510. Dream about his son verified, ibid. Conquests in Iran, 512. Visits the tomb of Abu-Meruzi, ib. & (P). Excessive grief for the loss of his grand-daughter; he is roused by his sister's remonstrance, 513. Success against the revolted Getes, and cruelty to them, 514. Conquests and dreadful executions in Jetah, &c. 515. Fresh invasion and reduction of Iran, 516. Of Lorestan, ib. Of Georgia, 517. Shirwan, ib. Armenia, 518. Kurdestan, 519. Pars, ib. Settles his conquests, 520. Victory over the Kipjaks, 521. Successes in Jetah, 523. Returns to Samarkant, with his politic regulations, 524. New expedition against Kipjak, ib. Goes in search of Toktamish, 525. Engages him, 526. Gains the victory, ib. Returns to Samarkant, and assists at the marriages in great state, with his new expedition into Iran, 527. Cruel massacres at Mahanasar, 528. Expedition into Irak, ib. Conquests in Pars, 529. Success against Mansur, 530. Stratagem to over-reach Ahmed Jalyr, and march to Bagdat, 531. Signal victory over the Sultan Ahmed, and march towards Roha, 532. Devotions and presents to Jona's and George's tombs, and he plunders several provinces, ib. Conquests in Kurdistan, 534. Splendid feast and ravages in Georgia; he drives Toktamish out of Shirwan, and invades it, ib. Prepares to engage him, 536. Defeats and pursues him quite to the Wolga, and gratifies his best generals, 537. Ravages and cruel executions in Great and Lesser Russia, ib. Returns to Georgia, 538. Conquests in it, ib. In Kipjak, Kefer, &c. ib. Feasts his court in Iran, 539. Feastings and amnesty on his return, 540. New palace, ib. Conquests in Hormuz, and his new palace described, 541. Difficult expedition against Ketuer, 542. Receives ambassadors from Jetah, &c. 543. Crosses the Indus, ib. Success against Shahhaboddin, and other Indian princes, 544. Crosses the Great Desert, ib. Expedition and cruelties in India, ib. His army frightened at the Indian elephants, 545. A great victory over the Indians, 546. Massacres in Dehli, 547. Horrid butcheries of the brave Ghebres, ib. & 548. Difficult attempt on Komsha, 552. Conquests and ravages in Georgia, 553. His letter of complaints to Bayezid, or Bajazet, 554. Marches against him, ib. His conquests in the Ottoman empire, 556. Narrowly escapes Faruji's treachery, overthrows and puts him to flight, 558. Conquests and siege of Bagdad, 560. Takes and destroys it, ib. Irresolution about Bajazet's peaceable offers, 562. Meets and engages him near Ankora, 563. Defeats and takes him prisoner, ib. Sends him back his wife Destina, ib. & (A). Bestows the kingdom of Armenia upon him, and embassy to the Greek emperor returned, 564. Takes Smyrna and other places, with his concern at Bayezid's death, ib. and that of his grandson Mehemed, 565. Hard conditions to the Georgian king, 566. Takes the fortress of Kortene, 567. Horrid ravages in Georgia, grants them a peace and departs, 568. A noble speech to his amirs, 569. Goes in pursuit of Iskander Sheykhi, 570. Defeats him, 571. New built palace described, ib. (K). Jubilee and diversions, 572. Pompous marriage of the princes, ib. Resolves on the conquest of China, 573. Sets out for that empire, ib. Scared by a bad omen at Otrar, 574. His last will and death, ib. Character, ib. Public works, &c. 575. Bright parts, ib. Fifty-three descendants, 576. Distracted empire after his death, 577. Funeral obsequies performed by the empresses and amirs, ib. Succeeded by the revolted Sultan Kalil, 578
- Timur Sultan**, why lashed by Akattay Khan, ii. 731, but recompensed next day, ib.
- **Tash**, father of Juban, his rebellion in Rum, but forgiven by Abufaid, ii. 488
- Tios** taken by the Turks, ii. 239
- Ti-ping** proclaimed emperor of Song, ii. 380. Retires into an island for safety, ib. Surprised and defeated by the Mungls, 381. His dreadful end, ib.
- his land forces unsuccessful, is forced to sea by the Tartars, and drowned, with the prime minister; also the sad destruction of his fleet, iii. 723. End of that dynasty, ib.
- Tipra**, kingdom, in the Further India, its limits, iii. 227. Subject to Arracan; its commerce, coin, &c. and way of travelling, 225
- Ti-pu-kyang**, his long and quiet reign, iii. 682
- Tirecurdus** murders the king of Quiloa, vi. 354
- Tirins**, in Persia, who and where seated, and join in Myrweis's, revolt, ii. 653 (H).
- Tirow-chirapali** taken by the Maharattas, iii. 149
- Ti-syang**, the fifth emperor of the first Chinese dynasty, betrayed by the traitor Is, iii. 681. Murdered by his son Kyau, ib.
- Ti-sye**, or Is, reigns in China, iii. 682
- Titu Antochi** sent ambassador to Pizarro by his brother Atahualpa, with his requests, presents, and polite address, xiv. 290. Answer to this embassy, and different sentiments of the Spaniards about its intention, ib.
- Titus**, emperor, assumes the half shekel to himself, v. 485 (L). Ordinance in favour of the Jews, ib. & (M). Favour to Rabbi Jochanan, 487, sub not.
- Ti-u-azi**, the Turkman tribe, where settled, ii. 694—719
- Tiumen circle**, in Tobolsk province, with its capital of the same name, and other places described, xiii. 44
- Ti-whay**, his flourishing reign, and degeneracy, iii. 682
- Tiz**, in Kerman, taken and destroyed by the Mungls, ii. 320
- Tlascala**, Cortez's march to it, xiv. 195. Province described, 196. From a monarchy formed into a republic, ib. Confederated with the Ottomies, ib. Great confusion there after Xicotencal's defeat, 200. Senate in a body wait on Cortez, 204. Their address to him, and the answer, ib. Cortez's public entry into it, ib. Province and city described, 205. Martial courage, and reason of the name, with its produce, ib. Inconveniences, ib. Vessels built there, and transported to Mexico, 258. Why so called, and where seated, 361
- **los Angeles**, province, and its capital, xiv. 438
- Tlascalans**, embassy sent to them by Cortez for a passage through their country, xiv. ib. Divisions in their senate about it, ibid. Resolve to oppose Cortez, 197. Consult their magicians, and their advice, 200. Attack Cortez in the night, but are defeated, 201. The people clamorous for peace, ib. Sue to Cortez for peace, with his answer, 202. Supply Cortez plentifully with provision, gratis, ib. Tampered with by the Mexicans, 249
- **republic**, their brave defence of liberty, xiv. 364
- Talscatelcans**, who and where seated, xiv. 361
- Tlatelulco**, a district of Mexico city, and the great fair kept there described, xiv. 214. Settlement from Mexico there, 262
- Tlateucans**, who and where situated, xiv. 361
- Toba**, the 74th emperor of Japan, iv. 57
- Tobacco** and coffee a great treat among the Turks, i. 172. Smoking forbidden by the Persians, and punished, ii. 611
- Tobolsk**, province, subdivided into nine circles, and what, xiii. 43
- **city**, the capital of Siberia described, xiii. 44; also other places in this province, ib.



- Tobulba, a city of Tunis, described, vii. 306  
 Tobbot, a Turkish tribe in West-Tartary, ii. 120  
 Toddi, a sort of wine drank in Indostan, iii. 21  
 Togalak-timur, the second Khan of Little Bukharia, ii. 467  
 Encounter with Samaloddin, and turns Mahometan with his whole kingdom, 468  
 Togan Khan disoblige his brother Ilek Khan, i. 613. Succeeds him in the Turkestan, 616. Repulses the vast armies of invading Turks, 622  
 Togay Timur defeated by Mohammed Sultan, ii. 492. Put to death by Sultan Avis, 493  
 — Bahadr, a stout champion under Din Mahamed, ii. 727  
 Togda, a province of Biledulgerid described, vii. 118  
 Togluk Timur, Khan of the Getes, invades Iran as his right, ii. 500. Promotes Timur Bek, ib. Conquers Bukharia and the Jagatay empire, 501  
 Togray, a famous writer and poet, ii. 190  
 Togrol, a creature of sultan Abd'alrahid, raised, iii. 652. Black treason against him, and due punishment for it, ib.  
 — Defeated by the Gorj, ii. 185. Succeeds his brother Mahmud, and war with his brother Massud, and death, 186, 187  
 — II. the son of Arslan, defeats Badanjar, ii. 193. Conspired against by his lords, ib. Is seized, and his dominions divided by them, ib. Recovers them, and punishes the traitors, ib. Murdered by Kutluk, 194. Proves the last Seljuk sultan of Irak, and his character, ib.  
 — Beg, his extraction and first name, ii. 152. Comes into Persia, 153. Commands the Seljuk army after his brother's death, and success against Massud, 154. Founds the empire, makes Meru his royal seat, and drives Massud out of Khorasan, 155. First sultan of the Iran dynasty, 156. Conquests in the Persian Irak, ib. Conquests in Karasm, 157. Takes Isfahan, and reduces Adherbijan, &c. ib. Invited to assist the caliph of Baghdad, 158. Seizes upon Malek Rahim, and puts an end to the Buyan dynasty, which passes to that of the Seljuks, and gives the caliph his sister in marriage, 159. Forces the caliph to give him his daughter, and dies in his capital of a flux, 162  
 — Bek, the first Seljukian sultan, his first stay in Marwaralnahr, i. 633. His other names and titles, 643. The year of his inauguration, 646. Various successes against Massud, 647. Conquests in Jorjan and Tabreistan, and invested by the caliph of Baghdad, 648. Retires to Adherbijan, 649. His conquests, and invited to Baghdad by the caliph, 653. Arrival there, 654. Public entry, ib. Takes Mawfel from Basafiri, 655. Crowned king by the caliph, ib. Marches against his revolted brother, ib. Defeats and puts him to death, 656. Restores the deposed caliph out of hatred to the Fatemites, ib. Defeats Basafiri, ib. Returns to Bagdat, with vast presents to and from the caliph; refused his daughter in marriage, 657. Forces him to give her to him by retrenching his revenue, ib. His nuptials celebrated at Al Ray, 658. Carried off by a bloody flux; and his character, ib.  
 — Shah, the seventh sultan of Kerman, ii. 196  
 Togrul, his dominions and great descent in Karakitay, ii. 268. Narrowly escapes Nawr's treachery, 269—271  
 Tokad reduced by Bajazet, v. 167  
 Tokh-tagu, his reign and death in Kipjak, ii. 446  
 Tokomak, the Persian general, his glorious victory over the Turks, ii. 607  
 Tokorari, a noted village on the Gold-coast, vi. 649  
 Toktamish, his attempt on Kipjak, but defeated by Urus Khan, ii. 447. Succoured by Timur Bek, ib. Made khan of the kingdom by him, 448. Defeated by Timur Malek Aglen, ib. And re-established by Timur Bek; but totally defeated by Timur Amir, and his death, 449. (See also 511). Cruel expedition against Tauris, 516. Revolt and defeat, 518. Invades Timur's dominions, 520. Defeated with great slaughter, 521. Fruitless attempt on Sabran, 522. Also fruitless embassy and presents to Timur Bek, 524. Lies in ambush against his coming, 525. The armies engage, and he commands in person, 526. Defeated and pursued by Timur, ib. Shamefully driven out of Shirwan, 536. Attacked by Timur Bek, ib. Defeated and put to flight, and retires into the thick forest of Bular, 537  
 Toledo, council, its decrees against the Jews, v. 520  
 — city, surprized and taken by the Saracens, i. 351. Revolts, and is reduced again, 433. Grievously ravaged by them, 472. Its famous bridge destroyed by them; ib. Forced to submit to the Saracens, 473. Quelled afresh by the caliph, 490. Almost destroyed on account of a fresh revolt, 520. Its bishop persecutes the Jews, v. 554 (Q.) Massacred there, 558  
 Toledo, its first council establishes the the orthodox faith, vii. 549  
 — narrow escape of queen Urraca and the archbishop of Compostella there, from being burnt in the cathedral, vii. 668. Several times attempted by the Moors, without success, ib. The inhabitants recal Don Alonso Raymond, ib.  
 — archbishop, Don Bernard, reduces Alcala de Henarez by siege, vii. 668  
 — brother in law to Juan Emanuel, dismissed from the chancery, viii. 38, 39  
 — or archbishop Ximenes, declared regent, and the dean of Louvain subservient to him, viii. 226. Full powers granted that regent to regulate some necessary parts of government, and performed with great dexterity, 227. His other disinterested acts for the public, ib. Disgraced, poisoned and dies, with some particulars of his private life and public character, 228 (G). His university of Alcala founded and endowed, ib. sub not. Cardinal Granville's character of it, ib. sub not. His learning and expence in promoting it, 229, sub not.  
 — a Dominican friar made its archbishop, whom the inquisition uses cruelly, viii. 252. The pope makes enquiry into the inquisition's seizing on that archbishop, but prevented by his death, 258. Dies rich, without a will, and archduke Albert succeeds, 275  
 — appointed viceroy of Naples, who reforms several abuses, x. 502. His prudent government, and salutary regulations in the city of Naples, defends the kingdom against the Turks; after their retreat, fortifies the coasts, 503. Severe edict against heretical books, and great tumults on account of the inquisition, 504. By his rigour becomes odious, sends an army against the Siennese, and dies at Florence, with an account of his issue, 505  
 —, Frederic de, takes Waerden, with his horrible barbarity, xi. 47  
 — defeating of that Spanish admiral, xi. 519  
 — Don Francisco, viceroy of Peru, his message to Tapac Amru, an Inca prince, rejected, xiv. 358. Resolves to compel him, and the reasons differently told, ib. Cruelty, ib. Why inflexible to save the Inca prince, ib. Recal and punishment 359  
 Toleiah revolts against Abu Becr, but defeated by Khaled, i. 135  
 Toleiha Ebn Khowailed, a pretended prophet, saves Serjabil's life, and absolved from his imposture by the caliph, i. 223  
 Toley appointed regent by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 329 (See Tuli). His character, 331. New kind of homage to his brother Oktay, 334. Success in Shen-si, 336. Renders fruitless an attempt from Ton-quan, ib. Enters Honan, success, and horrid slaughter, ib. Defeats the Kin generals, 339. Destroys the whole Kin army, ib. Baffled before Lo-yang, ib. His death and character, with his affection for Oktay, 341. Family, 342. Honours paid to his memory, 355. A list of his successors, 434  
 To-li, lord of the Karaites, his ill success against the Tartars, and flies into China, ii. 276  
 Tololoque, a game in Mexico, what, xiv. 222  
 Tolonaques, their caziques pay their respects to Cortez, with their kind offers, xiv. 192  
 Toloso, gloriuous victory, vii. 703  
 Tolsty, the Russian envoy, affronted at Constantinople, and imprisoned, with war declared against the czar, and the vizir advancing with a numerous army to the Danube, xiii. 221  
 Tolyekona, Oktay's empress, her conduct during his sickness, ii. 348. Declares herself regent, 350. Gets her son proclaimed khan, 352  
 Tolletino, the Florentine general, defeats Visconti's army, under Ubaldino, who is taken, x. 244. Sigismund enters Italy in favour of Visconti, but is repulsed from Tolletino's camp, ib.  
 Toman, in Persia, its value, ii. 646 (L).  
 Tombechec post, where xv. 58  
 Tombs, seven curious ones discovered at Telshaif, in Syria, i. 498  
 Tombut, kingdom, conquered by Muley Hammed, vii. 186



- Tombutans** expert arithmeticians, vii. 108
- Tombuto**, kingdom, described, vii. 107. Its rivers, despotic government, and the Jews expelled out of it, 108.
- Coin**, ib. Dreadful fires there, and commerce, ib. Caravans going from Tripoli, ib.
- its king, an encourager of learning, vii. 108
- Tomo Chichi**, &c. arrival with Oglethorpe in England, xv. 101. Speech to the king, ib. To the queen, 102. His requests reduced by the trustees into three acts, ib. Return to America, ib.
- Tomsk**, circle and town of the name, &c. in Yenesei province, described, xiii. 47, & S.
- Tong-che**, a Chinese general, his impious rapines in Shen-si, and dreadful end, iii. 705
- Tong-hoa-fang**, a singular bird in Sechwen, described, iii. 548
- Tong-wen-ping** left to command at Lin-gan, i. 377
- Tonicas**, savages, where, xv. 45. Honours to their chief, by the king of France, what, ib. Their language different from others, and never pronounce, ib.
- grand chief, admits several Natches into his village, xv. 52. Is with his followers massacred by them, the loss of the Natches, and difference in the narratives, ib.
- Tonkat**, where situate, and taken by the Mungls, ii. 300
- Tonon**, a splendid jubilee, where a plot is discovered against Geneva, but not credited by the magistrates, xiv. 38
- Tonquan**, a narrow pass in Shen-si, taken by the Mongls, ii. 287
- Ton-quin**, or **Tong-king**, kingdom described, also its gulph and islands, iii. 432. Towns, climate, rivers, &c. ib. Provinces, 433. Observations on the singularity of its coasts and tides, 434. Soil and product, 435. Roads strictly guarded against Christians and strangers, 449
- Tonquinese**, their bad accommodation to strangers, iii. 432. Frequent use of the betel, 436. Diet, liquors, &c. (C). Character, manners, &c. and itch of gaming, 437. Oppression, ib. Long hair why worn, with their bonzas' sarcasm upon it, 438. Language, writing, &c. and sciences, ib. Learned men, how graduated, 439 (D). Physic and surgery imperfect, diseases and manner of curing, ib. (E). Mechanics poor and discouraged, with their idle way of living; commerce, and the abuses of it, 440. Coins, fairs, religion, and sects, 441. Worship, ib. Mean temples, and poor priests, 442. Funerals, and honours to the dead, 443. Public festivals, 444. Licentiousness allowed in them, ib. Those kept for the dead described, 445. Private feasts, weddings, sports, &c. ib. Punishment for adultery, and conversion to Christianity, 446. Utter proscription of it, ib. Government overturned by the chovas or generals, with their high power and magnificent court, ib. Monarchs or bovas stript of their secular power, ib. Confined to their palace, 447. Governors and officers under them, ib. Seraglio, 448. Poor soldiery and navy, also their shipping described, ib. Laws and punishments, 449. Courts, &c. corrupted, 450. Eunuchs, why made the chief ministers, 451. Hated for their oppressions and heavy taxes, ib. Oaths, how taken to the chova, ib. Chova, how inaugurated, 452. Vast largesses made on that occasion, ib. Their funeral obsequies, 453. The place of interment kept secret, ib. An instance of that grand solemnity, ib. & not. Origin of the Tonquinese, 455. Various names, ib. When conquered by the Chinese, and their first monarchy, 456. Second conquest, but restored by a shepherd, ib. Other conquests by the Chinese, and drive them out, 457. Enslaved by the usurper Ho, and call the Chinese to their assistance, are restored again by the general Li, and become tributary to China, ib. Oppressed by the Chinese ambassadors, whilst their own are despised in China, ib. Power of the chova, to what owing, 458. War entailed against Cochinchina, 459
- Tonti** mediates a peace between the Illinois and Iroquois, with its effect on the latter, xiv. 615. Retreats from Crevecoeur, before the Iroquois, 616 (B).
- Topasses**, at Batavia, their trades, &c. iv. 478 (N). Their intrepid defence against the Dutch, 503
- Torchipan** basely accused and banished, ii. 422
- Torgauti** Eluths, their country described, ii. 252
- Tories**, how they wrought themselves into power by an altercation between queen Anne and the duchess of Marlborough, with the latter's haughtiness, ix. 496
- Torkel Cnutson's** character, and abridging the laws, with one prohibiting the sale of prisoners, and the reason, xii. 231. Imprisoned, and unjustly beheaded, through the enmity of the princes, 232
- Torment Cape**, in St. Laurence river described, xiv. 551
- Tormentoso Cabo**, or **Tempestuous Cape**, by whom found, and named, since, the Cape of Good-Hope, iv. 113
- Torpedo**, fish, its strange quality, vi. 186
- Torquato** sent in Abyssinia, but forced to go back, vi. 305
- Torlenson's** victory over the Imperialists at Tabor, with the consequences, ix. 415. Penetrates into Bohemia, xi. 254. Undertakes the siege of Leipzig, but is interrupted by the Imperialists, who are totally defeated in the plain of Breitenfeldt, 257. Returns to the siege of Leipzig, which he reduces, 258. Successful invasion of Holstein and Jutland, 259. Pursues the Imperial army under Gallas, in Lower Saxony, from place to place, 262. Advancing to Prague, the emperor and Leopold retire to Vienna, 263. Defeats the Imperialists at Janckaw, with the loss of their general, and besieging Bruin, ib. Ravages Austria, Moravia, and Bohemia, 267. Sent to command the Swedish army, xii. 344. Advances to Arnsee, occupying a post which could not be forced, 345. His successes in Silesia, after joining Stalhanch, ib. Drives the Imperialists out of Silesia, ruining their army there, 346. Over-runs Moravia, but suddenly laying siege to Breslau is obliged to raise it, ib. Obtains a second victory at Leipzig, ib; upon which that city surrenders, ib. Is forced to quit Freyberg, ib. His being obliged to quit Freyberg a second time, forces his way into Moravia in sight of Gallas's imperial army, and his further success, ib. The secrecy of his proceeding to Holstein, 347. At first he carries all before him, ib. Defeats Gallas's rear, and prevents the junction of the Danes and Germans, 348. He pursues Gallas, with his other successes, ib. Views on the emperor's hereditary dominions, ib. He gains a victory at Janckowitz, over the Imperialists, under Hatfield, who is killed, ib. His successes in Moravia, and junction with prince Ragotzi, 349. Marches into Bohemia and resigns, ib.
- Torun Shah** delivers up Ormuz to the Portuguese, iv. 126
- Torre**, Guy de la, forms a conspiracy against the emperor Henry VII's life, but is baffled, and escapes; and the emperor's chancellor convicted of plotting with Torre, is condemned to be burnt alive, xi. 26 (R).
- account of him, and his conspiracy against Genoa, which the duke of Savoy espouses, x. 609. Sedition related by Mailly, 616 (B). Peace concluded by means of Gosmont, the French envoy, 616
- retakes Pensacola from the French, xv. 26. Mutiny, how quelled, ib. Measures for taking the isle of Dauphin, and defeat of a party of his marauders, ib. Extraordinary summons to a French ship, ib. After several attempts his Spaniards retire, 27. Fortifies Pensacola, but falls again into the hands of the French, ib.
- Torriano**, Napi, account of him, who loses his popularity, xiv. 56. His cruelty, rise, and death, ib.
- Tortoises** of America described, v. 95
- Tortosa** taken by storm by the French, who shed much blood, xv. 359
- To-shan**, the Kin general, slain by the Mungls, ii. 339
- Tostar** taken by Timur Bek, ii. 529
- Toto**, in Mongolia, its ruins, ii. 246
- a friend of Hay Shan's, acquaints him with Timur's death and the court, with his march towards Tactu, ii. 400
- Pe-yen's nephew, offers the emperor to seize him, ii. 417. Manner of his doing it, ib. Promoted by the emperor, 418. One of the compilers of the Song history, ib. Raised to the Nang dignity, 419. Obtains the title of Targhan, 421. Partiality to his cowardly brother, 422. Takes and ruins Tfu-chew, ib. Undermined by Ama, 423. Banished and slain, 424
- Totomur** defeated by Pe-yen, ii. 379
- Tolotemur**, a wicked tool of Towhan-temur, slain, ii. 431
- Toulon**, sea-fight off that place, xiii. 661. The attempt on it, how frustrated through the emperor, xiv. 135
- Tour**, count de la, his harangue to the populace, xi. 193. Prepares for war, takes Crumlaw by assault, but his summons to Budewitz refused, 194. His successful invasion of Moravia, with what passes between him and cardinal Ditrichstein, 196. Marches into Austria, and quarters his troops in the suburbs of Vienna, 197. Attacks Buquoy in his entrenchments, but retreats with loss, 200. His expedient followed by the elector palatine, 203
- Tourville's** formidable fleet, ix. 470. His squadron beaten by the combined fleets of England and Holland under Ruffel and Rooke, in the Channel, and off la Hogue, 472
- Tow-



- Tow-han-temur declared emperor, and recalled from his exile, ii. 414. Dread of Yentemur, marries his daughter, and is proclaimed, 415. Fatal indolence as to affairs of state, with a grievous mortality, and other calamities under his reign, ib. Manifesto against Tutemur, and his wife, 418. Vain attempt on the old canal of Kin-kew, and orders the compiling of the Chinese annals, ib. Rejects the good counsel of some mandarines, 419. Arbitrary proceedings against others, and encourages the project of the Whang ho, 420. Abandoned by his Tartars and Mungls, ib. Ill success against the rebels, 421. Other calamities in the empire, 422. Fond of all kinds of forcery, 423. Of effeminate pleasures, &c. with his sumptuous barge, and piece of clock-work, ib. Deaf to all remonstrances, 424. Resentment against Ama, 425. Ill success against Chu, ib. Insensible of his danger, 426 (M). His court in want and distraction, 427. Governed by two vile eunuchs, 428. Defeated by the Koreans, ib. Forced to give up his base eunuchs, 431. Ill success against the new emperor Chu, 433. Abandons Tatu, and retires towards Tartary, ibid. His death, length of his reign, and list of his predecessors, 434.
- To-whan, Kublay's son, invades Gan-nan, but repulsed with great loss, ii. 386. Vast successes in the next year, and outwitted by the king, with great loss and disgrace, Townshend, colonel, killed at Ticonderoga, xiv. 715.
- brigadier, succeeding to the command of the English at Quebec, his prudent dispositions, xiv. 721. Makes dispositions for besieging the upper town of Quebec, 722.
- Toxis, king of the Hungarians, invades Germany, but bought off, xv. 381. On a second invasion, they are all cut off, ib.
- Tra los Montes province in Portugal, account of it, viii. 374 (D).
- Trabus chosen duke of Lithuania, in room of his father Ger-montus, xii. 632. After equal success between him and the Russians, a treaty is concluded, and he builds towns and palaces, ib.
- Tracy, marquis de, made viceroy of all French America, xiv. 603. On his arrival drives back the Iroquois, who had begun inroads, ib. Also a strong squadron arrives, ib. He builds three forts, and what, ib. Grants Garakonthie's demands, loading him with presents, 603. Expedition ordered against the natives, with what happened in an interview between him and the Agnier deputies on mentioning M. de Chafy's death, 604. Expedition against the On-neyouths and Agniers, and his ill conduct, what, ibid. His excuses, ib. The fatigue and loss of his men in returning home, 605. Some acts of power before he goes to Old France, ib.
- Trade and navigation, account of, in Sweden, xii. 209.
- Tradonico, Piero, thirteenth doge of Venice, concludes an alliance with the emperor Michael against the Saracens, x. 187. Murdered, ib. Character, and a tribunal appointed, which restores peace, ib.
- Trahu besieged by the doge of Venice, and demolished, x. 197.
- Trakhium seized on by the Turks, ii. 239.
- Traja besieged by the emperor Henry, surrenders, ix. 554.
- Trajan persecutes the Jews of the East and West, v. 492 (E).
- Traitor's-island in the South-sea, described, v. 9.
- Tral's noble defence of Kortene, ii. 567. Cruel fate, ib.
- Tralles rebuilt by Andronicus, ii. 239. Stormed and destroyed by the Turks, ib.
- Trani, Moses, a famous professor at Sapheta, v. 583 sub (P).
- Trankebar, (Tranquebar) a Danish colony in Tanjour, with its trade and produce, iii. 176. Acquired by the Danish company, iv. 554. Its state anno 1560, 556. Means used to support that colony, 557. Besieged by the rajah of Tanjour, ib. Relieved by the English, 559. Christianity planted there by Frederic IV. 560. Its present state and inhabitants, 565 (Z). Harbour, ships, &c. 566 (A).
- Transmigration of souls introduced into China, iii. 563.
- Transylvania, progress of the war there, xi. 179. Threatened by the Turks, 186. Its entire reduction, 331.
- Trapani, in Sicily, taken by the Moslems, i. 646.
- Trapor, a Portuguese city in Vizapur, iii. 139.
- Trebizond, whence called the country of the Black Sheep, ii. 696.
- Trelawny, governor of Jamaica, puts that island in a state of defence, xv. 308. Offers the negroes pardon, which they embrace on conditions, ib. Reprisals ordered against the Spaniards, and commodore Brown's timidity, ib. (See Vernon.)
- Tremecen, (Telenfine) kingdom, described, vii. 139 (A). Ancient provinces, tribes, and their character, ib. Towns
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- and castles, 140 (C). Commenced with Europe, 141. Chief towns, ib. Capital described, ib. Public buildings, 142. Palace, and splendid court, 143. Revenue, ib. Ancient splendor and wealth, 144. Reduced by the Almoravides and Almohedes, but recovered by Ghamrazen, and besieged by the Fezians, ib. But totally defeated by him, ib. and its king basely murdered, becomes tributary to Tunis and to Spain, 145. Also to the Algerines, ib. Besieged afresh by them and taken, ib. Surrendered to Sharif the Mahometan, 180. Its present state under the Algerines, 229.
- Tremecenians revolt against their king, and subject themselves to Barbarossa, vii. 246. Plundered and tyrannized over by him, 247.
- Trent, a bull published for a council there, viii. 226. x. 87. Opened there, 88. And a debate thereupon, but over-ruled, 100.
- proceedings there, x. 89. Small number of members, and those interested, ib. (M). Decree for the Old and New Testament, together with traditions, ibid. Decree about original sin, ibid. About justification and reformation, also about the seven sacraments, ibid. The council transferred to Bologna, with some fathers dissenting, who are approved of by the emperor, ib. Some of the Protestant princes and cities submit to that council, ib. (N). Arrival of Saxon ambassadors, and their demands, 92. Several German bishops repair to it, with a letter and protest from the king of France read in the council, also a decree about the eucharist, &c. answered, ib. On prince Maurice's declaring war against the emperor, several leave that council, who refusing to read the Protestant confession, they print and disperse it, 93. Many Italian prelates and the Protestants leave Trent on prince Maurice taking Augs-burgh, &c. The council suspended for two years, notwithstanding a protest, ibid. Decree there for an Index Ex-purgatorius, with other proceedings and disputes about residence, 101. Arrival of the French ambassadors, who exclaim against the papal usurpations, ib. The pope dissatisfied with the proceedings of the fathers, and the Imperial ambassadors present the grievances of the Germanic body, ib. Four articles with regard to communion, with the office of questors abolished, 102 (Y). The article of the cup in the eucharist remitted to the pope, and a question started, with decrees about the mass, ib. Other proceedings of the council, ib. Great disputes concerning the divine right of episcopacy, with the arrival of cardinal Lorrain and the French prelates, 103. Their declarations about the corruptions of the clergy, ib. Bulls of the pope, and a letter from the emperor, and his declaration for freedom of the prelates, and what they were offended at, ib. Proposes the translation of the council to Bologna, but rejected by Ferdinand, who demands the redress of his complaints, and a reformation in several articles proposed by the French ambassadors, ib. (Z). Disputes concerning ordination and marriage still continue, 104. Disputes there about precedence between the Spanish and French ambassa-dors, ib. The French abate in their zeal against the cor-ruptions of Rome, ib. A decree about ordination in four heads, ib. Other articles about reformation, ib. Decrees of this session justly ridiculed by the Protestants, 105. The legates hasten the conclusion of the council, with proceed-ings on the reformation of princes, ib. Decree there about marriage, &c. and on news of the pope's illness several points hurried over, 106. The council dissolved, and the number of the members, in which is a great majority of Italians, ibid. The pope makes nineteen of the fathers there cardinals, and confirms all the decrees of the council, ib. Objections to the council in several parts, with the em-peror's desire to the pope for communion under both kinds, and marriage of the clergy, ib. (B).
- council closed, viii. 256. Decrees published, xi. 404. Enforced through Philip II. of Spain's domini-ons, viii. 257. Received therein, ib. Not admitted by the parliament of Paris in matters of discipline, ix. 257.
- Treviliano, Marco Antonio, 80th doge of Venice, his short reign, death, and character, x. 349.
- Triballians, who, defeated by Morad, v. 164.
- Tribotti, Rabbi Nathaniel, his famous treatise on women's bathing, v. 599.
- Tribunals, six supreme ones of China described, iii. 575. Al-so four military ones, 578. Likewise provincial ones, 579.
- Tribunes appointed of the lowest class in Genoa, with their making Novi, a silk-dyer, duke, x. 581. But they change measures in favour of the emperor, ib.
- Tribuno, Pietro, 17th doge, defeats the Huns after great slaughter,



- slaughter, and drives them out of Italy, x. 189. Death and character, *ib.*
- Triers see, by whom erected into a principality, x. 632. Imprisoning that archbishop the cause of a war between France and the house of Austria, xi. 210. The allies besiege it, and defeat the French army, after which Triers surrenders, 291
- Trieste taken by the Venetians, x. 264
- Trimumpara, king of Cocain, makes alliance with the Portuguese against the Samorin, iv. 117. Defeated by him, 119. Abandoned by Vincent, who retires into the island of Viapan, *ib.* Restored by Albuquerque, *ib.* Noble defence against the Samorin, and gratitude to Pacheco, 120. Resigns the crown to his nephew, 121
- Tring seizes on the supreme power in Tonquin, iii. 458. His friend Hoa outwitted by him, *ib.*
- Trinidad, la, isle discovered by Columbus, xiv. 146. Settlement of the pearl island, xv. 351. Strict orders against approaching it, *ib.* Cruelty of the Spaniards there, *ib.* Described, 364
- Trinity, institution of that order under Simon Montfort, ix. 617 (Z).
- point in St. Laurence river, described, xiv. 551
- Trinquimala, a fortress in Ceylon, described, iv. 485 (T).
- Tripoli, in Africa, taken by the Moslems, i. 240. Taken by the king of Tunis, vii. 318. Revolts, 319. The Maltese governor, his grievous incursions into the neighbouring towns, which are forced to buy a peace from him, 450. Attempted in vain by Hayraddin, 454. Fortified afresh, 455. Its dangerous state through the emperor's negligence, 456. Valetta sent governor thither, 458. Plundered, x. 561
- in Syria, betrayed to the Moslems, and where situate, i. 224. Its present state, 225. Surrenders to the Crusaders, 686. ii. 180. After a seven years siege, retaken through stratagem, by the Turks, 690. Taken and destroyed by the sultan of Egypt, who concludes a truce with the other Christians, ix. 650
- Trishirapalli, a famous city in the kingdom of Madura, its fortress, court, &c. iii. 174. Royal palace, *ib.*
- Trivulce, marshal, commands the French army, and his success without pushing to extremity, ix. 198. Driven out of Milan, where Sforza and his brother are joyfully received, xiii. 456
- Trivulcio's remark on Marignan battle, and the success to what owing, x. 310. Succeeds Alviano, but obliged to raise the siege of Brescia with loss, 311. Signs scandalous articles of capitulation, re-establishes the ancient form of the Genoese republic, and a statue erected to his memory, 587. Montjean's attempt for seizing Doria disappointed, *ib.* (C).
- Troidenus succeeds his brother Narimundus in Lithuania and Samogitia, with his character, xii. 633. His successes in Prussia and Maffovia, *ib.* His ravages in Cujavia, and assassination by his brother Downant, who is defeated and slain by Rimuntus, the duke's son, with reflections on this event, *ibid.*
- Troitz, (see Trinity Monastery) a famous convent, with a vast number of peasants belonging to it, &c. xiii. 10
- Trolle, Gustavus, raised to the see of Upsal, and intrigues, xii. 263. Repentment against the administrator, and open revolt, *ibid.* Christian III's reinforcement to relieve that archbishop in Stecka defeated, with the different accounts of this affair, *ib.* (A). The archbishop degraded and shut up in a monastery, *ib.* (B). 264. (C). Intrigues in Sweden, 282
- young, his intrigues in Sweden for Christian II. xii. 136
- Tromp, Van, appointed to the command of the Dutch fleet, xi. 598. His rise, and defeating a Spanish squadron off Graveline, 541. Also a formidable armament under the Spanish admiral d'Oquendo ruined by him, *ib.* Graveline taken through him for the French, 545. Instructions given to him, and his fighting the battle of the Downs with admiral Blake, 560. Different accounts who was the aggressor, *ib.* His fleet shattered and dispersed 561. Superseded, 604; but is honoured by the French king, and part of Tromp's defence, *ibid.* Restored, who in an engagement with Blake, between Dover and Folkestone, beats the English, 563. Success in convoying a fleet of merchantmen, 565. Sea-fight off the coast of Flanders, in which the Dutch squadron under him is defeated by Monk, *ib.* He and Ruyter joining, go in quest of the enemy, whom they engage between Scheveling and the Meuse, 570. Is killed, and his last words, *ib.*
- Trono, Nicolao, the 68th doge of Venice, succeeds Christoforo Moro, x. 266. Death and character, 267
- Trott, governor of the Bahamas, who puts Nassau in a state of defence, xv. 271
- Trouin, French admiral, his naval exploits, and fortunate expedition to Rio de Janeiro, ix. 500. Ransom paid for the town, and the damage done the Portuguese, *ib.*
- Troyes, a remarkable canon, viii. 710. Council there, ix. 587. Templars confirmed there, &c. 594
- Truce of God established in a council, and its meaning, ix. 582 (R).
- for twelve years concluded with the United Provinces, and substance of the articles, xi. 483. Negotiations for it resumed at the Hague, 530. Conferences between Spain and Holland about it, how broken off through the French, 531
- Trukon, a kingdom, where seated, and subdued by the Bar-mas, iii. 263 (Z).
- Trusches, archbishop of Cologne, embraces Luther's doctrine, and publicly marries, but is excommunicated and expelled his dominions, xi. 176
- Truxillo, where situated, xiv. 282 (B). By whom founded, and its site, 306
- a sea-port of Honduras, xiv. 442
- a city in Lima, described, xiv. 463. Their trade, *ib.*
- Tsang ngu-vang murdered by the traitor Syau-tau-ching, iii. 708
- Tsau, that royal family extinct, iii. 695
- Tsau-sau, the usurper, his success against the Yellow Caps, but stripped and banished by his son, iii. 705
- Tsau yew-ven, his noble defence against the Mungls, ii. 347. Defeat and death, *ib.*
- Tse-ma-quang and other historians honoured with tablets, ii. 403 (E). His book in great repute, 409
- Tsi, Tsiu, and Tsiu, kings, their revolt against the Chinese emperor, iii. 692. Its king promotes Li-vang to the Chinese throne, 693. Success against the Tartars, and aspires to the empire, *ib.* Defeated by Chau-syang, 696
- Tsiau-ai, the 14th emperor of Japan, his reign, iv. 51
- Tsicubasima, an island started out of the sea, and the temple built upon it, iv. 51
- Tsin, kingdom, divided between four princes, iii. 695
- its king, promotes the war between the rival princes, iii. 696
- Tsin-aj, emperor of Japan, subdues Korea, iii. 753
- Tsinajos, or Tsinajofiko, the secular emperor of Japan, shuts up the commerce with the Christians, iv. 68
- Tsi-nan, the capital of Sham-tong, described, iii. 545
- Tsing-chung-tumba, his pride fatal to the Kalkas, iii. 438
- Tsiot-syn, the only Korean province under Japan, iii. 758
- Tsito, the empress of Japan, her reign, iv. 54
- Tsitikar government, in East-Tartary, iii. 466
- Tsi-vang invaded by the Lyau-tongers, and betrayed by his general, iii. 717
- Tsong-ming island, on the coasts of Kyang-nan, described, iii. 530. Its city and towns, *ib.*
- Tsong-te, king of Tartary, highly beloved by the Chinese, iii. 730. Declared their emperor, dies, and is succeeded by his son, 731
- Tsonnonthouans, differences between them and Pouteouatamis, with the issue, xiv. 610
- Tsonnos fruit, xv. 5
- Tsu-chew-whcy, his revolt against Towhantemur, founds a new dynasty, and vast success against the emperor's forces, ii. 421. Defeated by Tong-po-syau with great loss, 422. Success in Shen-si, and against Ganking, plunders Shan-tong, 426. Supplanted by his general Chew-yew Lyang, 427. Slain by him, 428
- Tsu-i-yu falsely accused by Ahama, and beheaded, ii. 383
- Tsu-keng, emperor of China, iii. 687
- Tsu-li, his base advice and treachery to Shew-fu, ii. 342. Betrays the royal family and treasures to the Mungl general, and himself stripped of all, 343
- Tsu-sin, emperor of China, iii. 686
- Tsu-ting, emperor of China, iii. 686
- Tsu-tsi Mikaddo, the 83d emperor of Japan, iv. 58
- II. the 104th emperor, his troublesome reign, iv. 60
- Tsu-ye, emperor of China, iii. 685
- Tswen-chew, his two stately towers, iii. 533
- Tubar, the famous battle, i. 380
- Tuburbo, a city of Tunis (See Urbs) vii. 308 (O).
- Tucker, governor of Bermudas, xv. 275. Wonderful escape of five men in a boat, *ib.* (Z).
- Tucman, or (Tucuman) kingdom, its distance from Charcas, what, xiv. 393



- Tucuman province described, xiv. 466 (W). The cities possessed here by the Spaniards, *ib.* sub not. Their design in maintaining settlements here, *ib.*
- Tudela, Benjamin de, a romancing Jewish traveller, v. 537 (V). His character and writings, *ib.*
- Tuiston, Sir William, governor of Barbadoes, why shot by his successor Hawley, xv. 176
- Tu-han-pi-tu-ye, son-in-law to the king of Qua-wa, outwits the Mungl general, ii. 392
- Tuk, a city in Karazm, ii. 717
- Tukel, Khanum, demanded in marriage by Timur Bek, ii. 341. Her splendid reception, *ib.*
- Tuker, Amir, sent in pursuit of sultan Mohammed, ii. 303. Slain for his hostilities, *ib.*
- Tu-kew, his noble defence of Gantong, now Shew-chew, ii. 343
- Tuktabey, khan of the Merkitas, makes alliance with Vang-Khan, ii. 270. Defeated by Temujin, 271. Shameful flight, 278; and he renews hostilities against him, but defeated; he retires and is slain, 280
- Tu-kyen's revolt, and ravages in Yun-nan, ii. 413. Total defeat of him and his sons, 414
- Pu-wha, his fatal defection from Towhantemur, ii. 421. Appears in arms before Ta-tu, 430, 431. Promoted by the emperor, *ib.*
- Tula, or Tala river, in West Tartary, described, ii. 119 (E).
- a favourite of Hay-shan, ii. 402. Put to death, *ib.*
- Tulaticans, who, and where seated, with their character, xiv. 362
- Tulga, king of the Visigoths, deposed, vii. 559
- Tuli, or Toley, the son of Jenghiz Khan, his valour against the Karaimians, ii. 295. Sent into Bukharia, 296. Sent in pursuit of Jalalo'ddin, with his success in that expedition, 312. Cruelty against Nishabur, 313. Takes and spares Herat, *ib.* Appointed regent by his dying father, 329. (See the rest under Toley.)
- Tuli-tze-ko taken by the Mungls, ii. 352
- Tumba, or Munda, eldest daughter to the first king of Angola, her policy as to her father's murder, vi. 503. Suspected by her sister on the throne, and is herself murdered, *ib.* Resigns the crown to her son, *ib.*
- Tumbez, account of its riches, xiv. 282
- Tumen, Kotluk, the last Bokharian khan of Jenghiz Khan's race, ii. 467
- Nicudari revolts against Timur-Bek, and is slain by Mirza Miran, ii. 515
- Tumen-ula, a river of East-Tartary, iii. 462
- a boundary of Korea, iii. 749
- Tumet, a Mongul province, where situated, ii. 249
- Tu-mwen, khan of the Irkenakom Turks, revolts against the Juijen emperor, ii. 134. Founds the Turkish empire in Tartary, and reduces other Tartarian nations, 135. But it declined till the time of Jenghiz Khan, *ib.*
- Tumpalla, curaca of Puna, his speech to his subjects, xiv. 413. Its effects, a mild answer returned, and the inca invited to the island, when a great number of his forces are massacred, *ib.* Huayna Capac, on a massacre of his troops in Puna, easily subjects the inhabitants, *ib.* Punishes the conspirators, erects a fortress at Tumpez, and attempts a magnificent bridge over the Guayquille, but never finished, *ib.* Returns to Cuzco, and receives news of a revolt and massacre in Chuchupuyas, 414. He marches thither, and his message to the rebels rejected, *ib.* They retire to inaccessible mountains, and a lady prevailed on to intercede with the inca, her speech, *ib.* His favourable answer, *ib.* They become faithful subjects ever after, 415
- Tumpez, character of its inhabitants, xiv. 412
- Tuna, a delicious fruit in Florida, xiv. 431
- Tungusians divided into four tribes, xiii. 38. Resemblance between them in their manners, customs, and figures, *ib.* Several other tribes, *ib.*
- Tunis, or Tunes, kingdom, described, vii. 295. How divided, *ib.* Its two circuits, 296. Principal rivers, *ib.* Islands and capes, 297. Gulphs, 298. Mountains, *ib.* Cities, 299. Religion, 302. Villages oppressed by the Arabs, 307. Hot baths and waters, 309. Their intense and purifying quality, with the Arabian superstition about them, *ib.* Salt lakes, 310; and monuments, with Roman antiquities, *ib.* Agriculture, 311. Government, 312. The Beys engross the sole power, 313; and their court described, *ib.* Danger from the Arabs, 314; and from the Algerine deys, their forces chiefly renegadoes, *ib.* Revenue, *ib.* Shipping, 315 (A). Duties paid by Christians, *ib.* Their consuls much respected, 316. Arabic language very corrupt, *ib.* History of their monarchs, 317
- Tunis gulph, where situated, vii. 298
- capital city of the kingdom, and described, vii. 299. Unhealthy air, how corrected, *ib.* Palace and other stately buildings, 300. Politeness of its inhabitants, 301. Rich dress, *ib.* Good order, *ib.* Religion, 302. Why subject to earthquakes, 311. Entered by Abu Ferez, and taken by Hassan, but retaken by the king, 318. Besieged by Barbarossa, 319. Taken by the emperor Charles V. 320. Cruel butchery by his Germans, *ib.*
- and Gouletta taken by the Turks, viii. 265
- king, seized by the Sicilians, ix. 630.
- prince, makes concessions to the Dutch, as do the Algerines, xi. 591
- Tunkat, or Tonkat, a city of Turkistan, and its noble situation, ii. 148
- Tupac Yupanqui, eleventh inca, succeeds his father Yupanqui, and the meaning of his surname Tupac, xiv. 403. He makes a progress, and plans an expedition on the side of Cassamarca, *ib.* He invades Chuchupuya emperor of Cassamarca, and subdues in his way the Huacrachucans, *ib.* Quarters his troops against the rainy season, and his employment there while among his new subjects, 409. Proceeds to reduce the people called Cassa Marquilla, who submit, *ib.* He marches against the Chuchupuyans, who reject his offers, *ib.* Drives them from their strong holds, and forms a camp on a high hill, with his humanity to the prisoners, *ib.* Marches against the Passamarcas, why so called, and subdues these with other nations, *ib.* He returns home, and marches against Huancapampa province, of which he gains possession, though he had much to do in taming the people, *ib.* He advances to three other large provinces, but after great perseverance in their opposition, they submit, 410. He returns home, and applies himself to the pacific arts, *ib.* His noble public works, *ib.* He labours to finish Cuzco citadel, *ib.* Proposes the reduction of Huanuca province, which quietly submits, *ib.* Next enterprise is against Cannari province, *ib.* They submit, and the country adorned with fine public edifices by the incas, *ib.* Prepares to reduce the nations extending to Quito, 410. Has many blood battles, but could not establish a footing there, *ib.* He dies, *ib.* For the two last years he employed himself in the civil government, 411 (K). Some of his sayings, one of which favours of the Spanish pedantry, *ib.* sub not.
- Tur, the father of the Turks, ii. 115
- Abdin, where situated, i. 401
- Turan, the name of Great Bukharia, ii. 453, 702. (See Turkistan)
- shah, the third sultan of Kerman, ii. 196
- II. the son of Togrol II. the tenth sultan of Kerman, ii. 196
- shah, his history of Hormuz, ii. 681. Ascends the throne, 689. Appeases the disturbances in Bahrayn, with his long reign, and his death, 690
- al Malek defeats the revolted Fatemites, vi. 61
- Turenne enters into the service of Spain, but he and Leopold beaten by Prasin, viii. 309. The extraordinary behaviour of that viscount at the siege of Boisseduc, xi. 517. He marries the heiress of Bouillon, by the king's interest, ix. 301. Successes for the king by Turenne and Themmes, &c. with the affairs of the league and king at a crisis, *ib.* Surprised by general Merci at Mariendahl, ix. 415. Humility which this produced in Turenne ever after, *ib.* Shews great prudence in Germany, and gains very high reputation, 422. Defeats the Imperialists at Zusmarhausen, and general Melander killed, 424. The victorious army plunder and raise contributions as far as the Inn, as the Swedes plunder Prague, 425. Wife and successful measures with a very small army, 435. Pushes Conde into Luxemburg; and Bar-le duc reduced by him, 436. Takes Rhetel and other places, with his dexterity, through the little time he spent among the Spaniards, in knowing their manner of acting, 439. Forces the Spanish lines before Arras, 441. Opens a way into the Spanish Netherlands, by taking several places, 442. Through la Ferte's inattention to his lines, forced to raise the siege of Valenciennes, *ib.* Noble retreat before Conde, 443. The effects of his intrepidity in an unfortified camp at Quesnoy, one of the most masterly strokes of his life, *ib.* Takes Capelle, and the enemy's magazines, *ib.* Takes St. Venant, and obliges the Spaniards



niards to raise the siege of Ardres; with Mardyke taken and given Oliver, 445. After many difficulties, besieges Dunkirk, while an English fleet blocks up the port, *ib.* Lines end in a staccado to the lowest water-mark; six thousand English, under Morgan, join him, 446. Account of the approaches, *ib.* Other places submit, but his conquests retarded through the king's illness, 448. Takes Graveline, with his further conquests, *ib.* Commands under the king, takes several towns, and at last Lille, notwithstanding Louvois dissuaded the king from attempting it, and the succours sent to it defeated by Crequi, 453. Prevents the army of Brandenburg, and the empire under Montecuculi, from passing the Rhine, 458; who also, with a small force, and by his great capacity, baffles every stratagem of that army in Westphalia, *ib.* obliging the elector to retire into Hildesheim, and then into his hereditary dominions, *ib.* Passes the Maine, 459. Glorious campaign on the Rhine, with a small army, 460. His barbarities in the Palatinate diminish the lustre of his great actions, *ib.* His cool determined resolution in the actions at Sintzheim and Mulhausen, *ib.* Prosecutes his advantage, gains the battle of Colmar or Turkheim, and forces the enemy to repass the Rhine, 461. He is reinforced by d'Enguien, *xi.* 264. Re-establishes the elector of Triers in his dominions, 265. Abandons Bavaria after ravaging it, 267. Thwarts Wrangel in his designs on Bavaria, and why, 268. Defeats the allies near Sintzheim, forcing them to retire to Frankfort, 289. Defeats the allies on the river Ill, who retire under the cannon of Strasburgh, *ib.* Surprises the quarters of the Imperialists at Remiremont, and defeats six thousand horse near Mulhausen, 290. Assurances given the Dutch by him from the cardinal, *xi.* 291. Passes the Rhine, and soon afterwards he retreats into Alsace, with Lorges's defeat, *ix.* 462. After several feints, marches, and countermarches, killed by a cannon-ball, *ib.* *xi.* 291

Turfan, a province of Bukharia, described, *ii.* 460

Turin blocked up by the Imperial troops, till relieved by Henry the Dauphin, *xi.* 150

— its siege by the French, *xiv.* 134. Eugene's fine march for its relief, *ix.* 489

— capital of Piedmont described, *xiv.* 123. The king of Sardinia's palace, and other fine structures, *ib.* The inconveniences of this city, and a description of its neighbourhood, *ib.*

Turinsk circle, in Tobolsk province, and the town of the same name described, *xiii.* 44

Turk, a name of reproach, and why odious to the Othmans, *vi.* 135

Turkaks, in West-Tartary, where seated, *ii.* 126

Turkestan (Turan), from whom so named, *ii.* 115. End of that empire, 141. Its extent described, 144. When it probably lost that name in the east, 145. Remains in the west, with its present site and state, cities, palaces, &c. *ib.*

— what, and its extent at Pisaka's death, *ii.* 267

Turkey, sequel of its history, *xv.* 634

Turkhan Khatun, queen of Karasm, her good and bad qualities, *ii.* 305. Hatred to Jalalo'ddin whence, and he abandons Karasm to the Mungls, 306. Besieged in the castle of Ilal, 309. Sent prisoner to Jenghiz Khan, with her hard fate, *ib.* Led about in triumph by the khan, 322. Her government during Sanjar's confinement, and death, *i.* 715

— a conspirator, slain by Timur Bek, *ii.* 510

Turkish genealogies suspicious and uncertain, *ii.* 116. How framed, 117

— nations and tribes, according to the Arabs, *ii.* 120. Mostly fabulous, 122. According to Turkish and Tartarian authors, 123

Turkmans, their strange detention of sultan Sanjar, and ravage his empire, *ii.* 184

— of Karasm, their origin, &c. *ii.* 718. Shape, dress, religion, &c. *ib.*

— oriental, whence not easily known, *ii.* 718. Advance as far as Khafgar, *i.* 664

— their origin, tribes, settlements, &c. and whence so called, *ii.* 693. Oriental, their migrations, take sultan Sanjar prisoner, with their settlements in Armenia, 694; and in Karasm, and their tribes, where settled, *ib.* Their character, way of living, &c. and to whom subject, 695. Oppressed by sultan Abulghazi, *ib.*

— Occidental, their various settlements and fortune, *ii.* 695. Character, strength, &c. 696. Two dynasties, *ib.* (E).

Turkoff, his provinces subdued to sultan Akber, *iii.* 60

Turkopoli, who, and whence, are defeated by the Othmans, *v.* 150 (D). Retire from Kallipoli, 153

Turks, their origin, *ii.* 114. (See also *v.* 135) Whence descended, *v.* 135. Who are the real ones, 136. Original country and pedigree uncertain, *ib.* Their origin, according to the Persians, *ii.* 115. According to the Chinese, 117. Where placed by the ancient writers, and why divided by them into eastern and western, 129. Their situation, according to the Greeks and Chinese, who call them Tuque, 130, who distinguish them into northern and southern, *ib.* Route taken by the Roman ambassador into their country, 131. That of the Turks to the Persians and Romans, *ib.* War against the former, 132. Their conquests and civil wars, *ib.* Drive out the Juien Tartars, and set up their empire, which in process of time are divided into eastern and western Turks, 134. The eastern destroyed by the Kitan, and all these accounts liable to difficulties and objections, 135. Second expedition against Persia, 137. The dominions of the Kalifans, *ib.* Invited by the rebel Abuali, take Samarkand and Bokhara, *ib.* Two Turkish monarchs existing at one time in Tartary, 139, in fine (A); but split at length and broken, 140. Comes to an end in Tartary, *ib.*

— ancient, their customs, &c. described, *ii.* 142. Why hated by the Persians, *ib.* Led a wandering life, 143. Descended from the Scythians, *ib.* but of what tribe is impossible to ascertain, *ib.* Extend themselves over Tartary, 145. Their chief cities in Turkestan, 146. Invade the Roman empire, 165. Defeated by Romanus, *ib.* When they broke first into the Roman empire, with their early progress there, 203. A new irruption by them from Anatolia, 212. Put to flight by Kamytzes, *ib.* Rally and defeat him, but are pursued and defeated by Alexis, 213. By John Comnenus, 216. By the crusaders, 217. Bole indignities to the slain Christians, 221. Slaughtered by the emperor Frederic, 222, who takes Iconium, 223. Defeated by the Tartars, 233. Become tributary to them, 234. Invade Asia Minor, 236; also the Grecian empire, 237. Seize on the mountainous parts, and make incursions on the Romans, 238. Five hundred thousand invade Abbas the Great, but defeated three times successively, 610. Whence they daily grow more formidable, *i.* 591. Obstruct the commerce of the Genoese, *iv.* 104. Severely chastised for their plunders, &c. by Timur Bek, *ii.* 518. Advance in vast armies into Turkestan, but driven away by Togan Khan, *i.* 622

— in the caliphate, grown powerful and numerous, *i.* 482. Raise a revolt in favour of Bager, *ib.* Depose the caliph, and set up Al Motazz, 483. Carested by Al Motazz, 484. Murder their general, 485. Revolt against Al Mohtad, 488. Barbarously murder him, *ib.*

— in Barbary described, *vii.* 123—125. Tyranny over the Moors, *ib.* Their pride and idleness, 126. Strange superstition, 127 (D). Seventy galleys and twenty thousand men lost in a storm, *viii.* 242. Their success in the Mediterranean, *ib.* Attempt for recovering Oran and Mazalquivir, by Hassan of Algiers, *ib.* Relieved by the Christian fleet, 257. Alarms from them, *ib.* France and Spain assist the emperor against them, 323. A campaign against them in Hungary unsuccessful, *x.* 87. Threaten war against Italy, 66. Land in Italy, and take Otranto, 41; which fills all Europe with consternation, 111. Enter Italy, 266. On Mahomet's death, Ferdinand retakes Otranto from them, and they evacuate Italy, 41. Being invited, enter into Italy, and ravage the country, 51. Take Cyprus, but their fleet entirely defeated in the gulph of Lepanto by the Christians, 110. Besiege Napoli, but forced to abandon it and the Morea, 264. Abandon the sieges of Lepanto and Coccina, in Lemnos, with an extraordinary instance of courage in a lady, 269 (H). Besiege Croia, and are defeated by a handful of Venetians, with the loss of their camp; but return to the charge, and beat the Venetians, 269. A second irruption of the Turks into Italy, *ibid.* Take Croia, but after an obstinate defence obliged to rise from Scutari, 270. Peace between them and the Venetians, *ib.* Their devastations in Germany, *ibid.* Enter Dalmatia, and the Venetian doge's pathetic speech in the senate, 340. Effects of this remonstrance, 341. Quit Dalmatia with precipitation, *ibid.* Plunder the coasts of Naples, *viii.* 258. Prepare to invade Naples, with the arrival of their fleet on the coast, and retiring upon terms, *ix.* 505. The



- The pope proposes a crusade against them, and the electors engage in an association to raise troops for that purpose, but complain of the Aulic council, xi. 124. Confederacy of some Christian princes against them, who are totally defeated at Lepanto by don John of Austria, 174. On Amurath's breaking the truce, are defeated near Sisse, and at Belgrade, 177. Their defeat at Hatvan, *ibid.* Worsted before Graan by count Mansfeldt, and the consequence, *ib.* Routed by Maximilian, with considerable loss, and the Germans put to flight in their turn, 178. Make a shameful retreat from Waradin, *ib.* Peace with them, 179. Make great progress in Transylvania, the emperor's representations on this head, 188. Hostilities renewed between them and the emperor, with the occasion, 191. A treaty of peace concluded by them with Germany, *ib.* Threaten the emperor with an invasion, and demand Ragotski's head, 279. During the deliberations of the diet at Ratibon take Newhaufel, 281. They advance towards Friuli, but a body of them repulsed, *ib.* Evacuate Novigrade and Wissegrade, retreating before the duke of Lorraine, 304. Take Nissa and Vidin, as also Belgrade by storm, 311. Make irruptions into Poland, are worsted, and obliged to make peace, xii. 519. Reduce Kaminiec, and the king of Poland is obliged to purchase a shameful peace, and the terms, 527. The origin of this war from treachery, *ibid.* (A). Take Zbarras, the garrison revolting against their governor, fling him over the walls, and this treachery the Turkish bashaw punishes, 536. Defeated by Sobieski with a handful of men before Leopold, and negotiations for a peace rejected, *ib.* The war is renewed, and detachments of the Turks repulsed, and after four days storming each other's entrenchments, and the Turks foiled, make overtures of peace, *ib.* Which is concluded, and the terms, *ib.* Seek to quarrel with Poland, and a peace made between them, xiii. 168. With the stipulations, and considerable loss of the Poles in this short war, *ib.* Take up arms against Poland, and the czar sends a minister to Constantinople on the occasion, *ib.* Renew the war against Poland, with the sultan's more haughty letter on the answer of the czar, 168. Take Human by assault, killing near 100,000 men, which massacre the Russian general Romadonowski revenges by defeating the Tartars with great slaughter, yet he retires, 172. Retire from the Ukraine, and the czar loses the fruits of two campaigns, *ibid.* Re-enter the Ukraine, besiege Czeherin, which they take by assault, massacring 30,000 men, a vast army of Russians retreating, for which their general Romadonowski is disgraced, yet the Turks retire, 174. Alarmed at Peter's works on the Woronetz, and building a harbour on the Palus Mæotis, with an embassy, and Peter's answer, 204. A new treaty concluded between them and the Russians, with its articles, some of which are in favour of Charles XII. 224. Who is not satisfied, *ibid.* Break the peace, and make an irruption into Poland, where they gain some little advantages, but defeated by general Baur, 225. Alarmed at the czar's preparations, but his real intentions published in a manifesto, 254. Prepare for war, founding the emperor of Germany's inclinations in that case, by whose answer, and the mediation of M. de Bonac, the French ambassador, they are pacified, 255, and their preparations they turn against Persia itself, 256.
- Turnagain mountain, on the Cape of Good-Hope, described, vi. 402
- Turson Beg offers his dominions to Or Khan, but stabbed by his own brother Hajil, v. 156
- Turretin, professor, receives a large collection from the Dutch for fortifying Geneva, xiv. 47
- Tus, where situated, i. 434. Becomes famous for khalif Harun's sepulchre, 435, & 598. Divided into four cities, *ib.* Taken by the Seljuks, 643, & ii. 154. Taken by Amir Akbuga, ii. 522
- Tuscanella, father, his sermon against the pope, x. 42
- Tuscan confederacy renewed for continuing the war, negotiations with the emperor Charles IV. and the pope, who outwits the allies, xiii. 329. The emperor agrees to march against Visconti, the castle of Vertina surrenders, and Saco's estates ravaged, with his defeat by the Florentines, and some other inconsiderable successes on each side, *ib.* Terms of peace between the confederates and Visconti, *ib.*
- Tuscany, its description and extent, xiii. 269. Produce, hot springs, &c. principal rivers, &c. with the great duke's power and revenue, *ib.* Regency, *ib.* Twelve ancient cities, the modern names what, 272. Its state, and a peace concluded with the Siennese, 283. Duke's death, xiii. 656
- Grand duke, chosen emperor, xv. 632
- Mod. Hist. Vol. XVI.
- Tusculum destroyed by the Romans, and its name of Frescati whence, ix. 607
- Tush, or Mashhad, taken and destroyed by the Mungls, ii. 313
- Tushazar, Kamu, defeats the Tumats, with his success against Kuchluk, ii. 290 & notes.
- Tushetu, one of the three khans of the Kalkas, and where sited, ii. 438
- Tushi, Jenghiz Khan's son, his bravery at the battle of Karaku, ii. 295. (see Juji). Success in Kipjak, 321. Death, 328. His descendants in Kipjak, 444
- Tu-shi-ni opposes the removal of the Kin court, ii. 285
- Tussos, where sited, vi. 616. Cruel punishment for their horrid insult on the king of Dahomay, *ib.*
- Tustar, the ancient Susa or Sushan, stands out against the Moslems, i. 244
- Tutak, the Persian, ravages the Roman empire, ii. 203
- Tutemur's interest supported by Yen-temur, ii. 411. Proclaimed at Tatu, *ib.* Cruel treatment to his opposers, 412. Concurs with his brother's installation, and supposed to have poisoned him, 413. Reigns alone, *ib.* Performs the sacrifices himself, *ib.* Declares his brother's son his successor, and dies, 414. His tablet taken down by Towhan-temur, 418
- Tutocorin, its pearl fishery described, iv. 144. Wholly belongs to the Naiker prince, and how carried on, 145. Altered since by the Dutch, *ib.* (S).
- Tu-tsung, his lewd reign in China, but stript of his dominions by the western Tartars, iii. 722
- Tutuha made one of Timur's generals, ii. 395. Dies in his way to Tartary, 396
- Tutukurin, in Madura, its fishery and factory, iii. 174
- Tuzun's hostile entrance into Baghdad, i. 543. Made Emir Omra, *ib.* Faithlessness to the caliph, 544. Treacherous answer to his letter, and deposes him, *ib.* Made governor of Baghdad, 545. Dies, 546
- Twang-tsung pursued by sea and land by the Tartars, and dies, iii. 722
- Twer province in Russia, and its chief places, xiii. 7
- Twinchuz, a province of Mongolia, where seated, ii. 245
- Tyana besieged by the Saracens, and surrendered, i. 344
- Tyau-li made governess of Lyautong, ii. 325. Generous Petition to Jenghiz Khan, 327
- Tyber, great inundation of that river at Rome, x. 128. Charity of the pope and cardinals on the occasion, *ib.*
- Tycarte, a kingdom of Biledulgerid, described, vii. 119
- Tydor, island and capital, plundered by the Portuguese, iv. 155. Gladly welcome the Spanish fleet, and the Spaniards yield it up for a sum of money, *ib.*
- Tye-Muko, Jenghiz Khan's fourth brother, made regent of the empire, ii. 290
- Tye-mu-tyel, an extortioning tax-gatherer, ii. 404. Made prime-minister, with his violence and cruelties, 405. Disgraced, and dies of grief, 407
- Tyen, the Chinese name for God and heaven, iii. 565. Explanations of that word by the emperor Kanghi, *ib.* (I). (K). Disputes among Christians about it, prove fatal to them, 569 (O).
- Tyen-shun, the Chinese name of Asukipa, ii. 411. (See Asukipa).
- the son of Tyen-ming, subdues the Mungls, ii. 437
- Tyen-tson, king of Tartary, his death, iii. 730
- Tyger-hills, on the Cape of Good-Hope, described, vi. 398
- Tynne, major, and others, successive governors of Carolina, xv. 92
- Tyre taken by the Moslems, i. 225. The inhabitants turn Mahometans to save their lives, &c. 226. Run into decay ever since, *ib.* Brave defence against the Franks, but taken after a five months siege, *ib.* & 698
- Tyrol, the dukes of Austria and Bavaria take the field against each other for that country, but agree to a prolongation of the truce, xi. 57
- Tzakas, the Turk, equips a fleet at Smyrna, seizes on the island of Chios, and defeats the Roman admiral Delassenus, ii. 207. Takes the title of king at Smyrna, and surrenders Mitylene to John Ducas. Defeated by John Ducas and the sultan, and slain by the latter, 208
- Tzarphati, Joseph, a learned Jewish convert, and his Irenic letter to his nation, v. 594 (S).
- Tzafon, the brother of Gilimer, called from Sardinia, with their sorrowful meeting, v. 715. Defeated and slain by Belisarius, *ib.*
- Tze-phalon, Rabbi Jacob, a learned Jewish professor at Ferrara, v. 597



## U.

- U** Berlingen, account of it, its religion and government, xv. 444
- Ubbo**, the ballard son of Regner, revolting is conquered and slain, xi. 685
- Uchu Muchin**, a Mongul province, where situated, ii. 245
- Uda**, the fifty-ninth emperor of Japan, iv. 56. River described, xiii. 29
- Udalric**, duke of Bohemia, his treachery and cruelty, who revolts, as does Moravia also from Poland, xii. 453. Assumes the government of Bohemia, is invaded by the Poles, and reconciled to his brother, xv. 453. His son Bretislaus carries off Jutha, daughter to the emperor Otho, *ibid.*
- Udimral**, LXXII. king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Udina** taken by the Swifs and Germans, x. 307
- Udmaasfan**, LXXV. king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Uffo** succeeds his father Asmund, king of Sweden, xii. 219. War betwixt him and Hading of Denmark, *ib.* How Hading of Denmark, cuts his way through the Swedish camp, and Uffo sets a price on his head, but Hading assassinates him, *ib.*
- Uffon**, son of Veremund, his extraordinary history, who defeats the prince of Saxony and another in combat, xi. 670
- Ugans**, or Augwans, where situated, and plundered by Mirza Pir Mehemed, ii. 541. and by Timur Bek, 543
- Ugolino**, why he and his family are starved to death by the Pisans, x. 552
- Ugurlu Khan**, lord high steward to Sali I. put to death, ii. 623
- Ujingava**, a river of Japan, described, iv. 3
- U-ki**, Ngan-vang's successful general, envied at court, goes over to the enemy, iii. 695. Privately murdered, 696
- Ukraine** (Okraine) and its inhabitants, with the meaning of the word, xiii. 12 (L). The Tartars and Dorosenskossacks possess themselves of great part of it, 168. Turks enter it, which they soon reduce to a mere desert, 172. The king of Poland marches against them, *ib.*
- Uladislaus** of Hungary defeats the Turks, and makes a truce with Amurath, but breaking it, is defeated and slain, with cardinal Julian, x. 19
- **I.** or Hermannus, raised to the ducal throne of Poland, in the room of his brother Boleslaus II. the regal dignity being given by the pope and emperor to the duke of Bohemia, xii. 459. The conquered provinces revolt, but the duke after a defeat reduces Pomerania at last, *ib.* Breach again happens between the father and children, with the occasion, but they are reconciled, *ib.* He reduces Prussia and Pomerania, after which he dies, and his character, with a partition of the kingdom made between the brothers, *ib.*
- **II.** or the Driveller, is chosen to the ducal throne of Poland, in room of Boleslaus III. xii. 462. The four brothers confirmed in the possessions left them by the late king, but forced to acknowledge his supremacy, 463. The fate of a noble Dane, that duke's favourite, and the occasion, with different accounts of his death, *ib.* (A). The contests between the princes and that duke, who is obliged to fly, and at last deposed, *ibid.* Silesia is given to him, and the emperor Conrad's unsuccessful attempts for him, 464. His brother Henry's crusade against the Saracens, *ib.* The emperor Frederick Barbarossa invades Poland, through Uladislaus' solicitations. His army ruined by the brothers, and a treaty concluded, *ib.* His death, and Silesia given to his son Boleslaus, at the desire of the emperor, *ibid.* (H).
- **III.** or Lofticus, enjoys the crown of Poland, after Premislaus II. xii. 471. Uncertain whether he, or Premislaus, son of the late monarch, succeeded; the former is assassinated, and the latter deposed, *ib.* On the death of Winceslaus of Bohemia, is restored to the Polish throne, 472. War with the marquis of Brandenburg and the Teutonic knights, and on what occasion, *ib.* He thrice defeats the knights, *ib.* The king's generosity, valour, and moderation, 473. His coronation, and that of his queen, with the pope's consent, *ib.* Advice to his son, his death, and character, *ib.*
- **IV.** or Jagello, on marrying queen Hedwiga, is raised to the Polish throne, xii. 476 (\*). By this marriage, Lithuania, Samogitia, and Russia Nigra, are united to the crown, *ib.* Reduces the Higher Poland, and he proceeds to convert the Lithuanians, with their cruel idolatry, 476. The effectual methods taken by him to remove their errors, and he makes his brother Skirgello viceroy, 477. War with the Tartars and the great Tamerlane, and he escapes from the Tartars without an entire defeat, *ib.*
- Uladislaus V. or VI.** a minor, is raised to the Polish throne, in room of his father Uladislaus IV. xii. 479. War with Amurath, emperor of the Turks, on account of Hungary, *ib.* Raised to the throne of Hungary, 480. Breaks the treaty with the Turks, through the pontifical legate's persuasion, but is defeated and slain near Varna, *ib.* He before had obtained a complete victory over the Infidels, and defeated Carambeius, *ib.*
- **VII.** unanimously elected king of Poland, in room of his father Sigismund III. xii. 519
- of Poland, king of Bohemia, repels Matthias' ravages, xv. 460. Marries Matthias's widow, takes possession of Hungary, but divorces her, and opposes Bajazet II. *ibid.* Composes religious disputes, gets his son crowned, and dies, *ib.*
- also declared king of Hungary, xv. 401. Compromise between him and Ladislaus's abettors, *ib.* Invasion of Amurath, who is defeated, *ib.* Also his troops several times, and a crusade preached against the Turks, who are defeated by Corvin, and their loss, *ib.* (K). Also again defeated, and their general taken, *ib.* A peace concluded, which the king violates, *ib.* The Christians entirely defeated, and the king killed, *ib.* The Turks defeated by Corvin, *ib.*
- son of Sigismund, placed on the Russian throne, in room of Swisla, now a prisoner, xii. 509. xiii. 145. Deposed, with the motives, *ib.* Election to Russia set aside, 146. Enters Russia with a numerous army, penetrating to the very gates of Moscow, but concludes a truce for fourteen years, 150
- **I.** king of Bohemia, xv. 451
- **II.** of Bohemia, chosen king of Hungary, and the conditions, xv. 405. Opposed by young Corvin, who is defeated, *ib.* War declared against him by Maximilian and Albert, but a compromise made, and he drives off the Turks from Belgrade, *ib.* His death and marriage, with the Turks threatening an invasion, and the ravages of the mob assembled against them, who are quelled, *ib.* Makes peace with Maximilian, Sigismund, and Uladislaus, he dies, *ib.*
- Left vicar of the empire, and crowned by Barbarossa; he resigns to his son, xv. 454
- taken from prison, is declared king of Bohemia, xv. 455
- Ulatay's** efforts in favour of Afukipa, defeated, ii. 412
- Ulefeldt**, Grand Marshal, why disgraced in Denmark, who takes shelter with queen Christina, xii. 173. Some account of him and his plot against Frederic III. 186
- Ulm**, account of that city, its religion, government, and privileges, xv. 442 (P).
- Ulric** of Wirtemberg, on the Imperialists being defeated, is restored to his dominions, xi. 145. Reconciled to Ferdinand, with the terms, and he recovers Montbelliard, also the French king's generosity, 146 (H).
- Ulrica Eleonora**, younger sister of Charles XII. elected queen of Sweden, with her declaration renouncing all arbitrary power, and her speech to the states, xii. 212
- Ulug**, a ridge of mountains in West Tartary, ii. 113
- **Yurt**, once the residence of the Jenghizeans, but ruined, ii. 248
- **Burlugh** taken and put to the sword by Timur Bek, ii. 564
- **Beg's** small share of Timur's empire, defeats Alaoddawlet, and enters in triumph into Herat, ii. 589. Taken prisoner by his rebellious son, but tried and put to death by Abbas, with his excellent character, *ib.*
- Ulug**, the son of Abusaid, his paternal dominions, ii. 594
- Ulun**, the mother of Temujin, her signal bravery, ii. 267
- Uluzzali's** gracious reception by Selim, whose squadron alone escaped, with unsuccessful attempts for strengthening the confederacy, x. 375
- Ulloa**, don Antonio, good character of his voyages, and the English translation, xiv. 449. His character, 452. His accounting for want of rain in Lima, 456
- Umbrellas**, a mark of grandeur among the Avan monarchs, iii. 280 (B).
- Unguin** has Sweden bequeathed to him by Halden, xii. 222. He annexes Gothland, and his death in a battle with Reginald of Gothland, 223



Uguin, (Haguin) 33d king of Denmark, succeeds Haklone

II. with the different accounts of him, and his death, xi. 675

Ungutti Turks, in West Tartary, where seated, ii. 126

Unigenitus bull, what, xv. 608

Unima-uts Moguls, four tribes of them, ii. 128

Upetula, a wicked minister, accused to Yefun Temur, ii. 409. Spared by him, 410. Seizes the royal seals, but seized again by Yentemur, 411

Upsal, account of that city, xii. 208

— archbishop, openly rebels, and his reasons in a manifesto, and the king is surprised and wounded, xii. 253. Subordination of that archbishop, 254. Confined, 255. Disturbances raised by that archbishop and Nils Sture, 257. Death of that archbishop, and his party defeated by the administrator, ib.

— Resentment of the archbishop, &c. against Sture, xii. 260

— archbishop, becomes a protestant, with the differing accounts about it, xii. 278 (A).

— archbishop, openly declares against Charles Canutson, xii. 114. Defeats him near Stregnez, and being closely invested by the prelate in Stockholm, he escapes to Dantzic, ib.

— several cruelly massacred there, xii. 289

Uraba settlement, its state, xiv. 156

Urat, a province in Mongolia, ii. 246

Urban II. or Otho, bishop of Ostia, chosen pope, publishes a letter to all the faithful, and creates the archbishop of Toledo primate of Spain, ix. 574. He holds a general council at Rome, and the decrees in it against Henry, the antipope, and their adherents, ib. Among other transactions, he persuades Mathilda to marry Guelpo, son to the duke of Bavaria, ib. Appoints a council at Thoulouse by his legates, and he himself holds one at Melphis, with the decrees made in these, ib. Sends for St. Bruno to Rome, 573. Holds a council at Benevento, where the former excommunications are renewed, ib. Returns to Rome, and appoints councils at Constance and in France, with their proceedings, 575. Goes to Lombardy, and why he holds a council in a field, and the proceedings with regard to the empress, ib. Ambassies received by them from the emperor of Constantinople and king of France, with their decrees, ib. Holds another council at Clermont, where he proposes a crusade against the Saracens, and the recovery of the Holy-Land, with a decree passed hereupon, and other proceedings, ib. Holding a council at Tours, where Philip of France is absolved, returns to Rome, 576. He informs the Greek emperor of the holy expedition, and holds a council at Bari, with other proceedings, and a large privilege granted the counts of Sicily as apostolic legates, ib. With the contests about this charter, ib. (O). This council composed of Greek and Latin bishops, with the dispute about the procession of the spirit, in which Anselm of Canterbury gained great honour, ib. Sends a legate to the Christian army, who, by the desertion of Alexis, were reduced to great straits, 577. Holds a council at Rome, recovers St. Angelo by the Crusaders, and dies, ib.

— III. succeeds Lucius III. ix. 605. and is engaged in disputes with the emperor about Mathilda's succession, and vacant benefices, *ibid.* (P). Grants a bull for creating a king of Ireland, and dies, ib.

— or patriarch of Jerusalem, chosen pope, with an account of him, ix. 640. Makes several cardinals, and offers the crown of Sicily to a prince of France, *ibid.* The crown of Sicily given by him to Charles of Anjou, on certain conditions, ib. The competitors for the empire desired to submit to the pope's decision, and an embassy from the emperor of Constantinople to the pontiff, who sends a legate to England, but is prevented by the barons from entering, 641. Dies, ib.

— V. elected pope, with his salutary regulations, ix. 684. Visited by the king of France in favour of Bernabo Visconti, whom the pope excommunicates and deposes, ib. His troops defeated with great loss in Modena, and the kings of France, Denmark, and Cyprus, receive the cross from the pope, 685. The pope's legate concludes a peace between the emperor and king of Hungary; also a peace between the pope and Bernabo, ib. A legate sent to Constantinople, *ibid.* Solemn assembly, but no general enterprise concluded, with a bull for restoring ecclesiastical discipline, ib. Receives letters from the emperor of Constantinople, who promises an union of the Greek and Latin church, 686. Proposes to return to Rome, embarks at Marseilles, and is joyfully received in Italy, where he forms alliances against the Visconti, ib. Embassy from the

Greek emperor, and congratulatory letter from Petrarch. *ib.* Confirms the order of Jesuits, with an account of the first institutor, *ib.* (M). Difference between the pope and Peter king of Castile accommodated, on terms not very honourable to the holy see, 687. Other papal proceedings, *ib.* Sends missionaries to Cathay and Tartary, &c. 688. He grants peace to Bernabo, *ib.* Difference between the pope and king of England, the parliament supporting the latter, so that the former desists, *ib.* Returns to Avignon, and dies, *ib.*

Urban elected pope through compulsion of the mob, ix. 692. The cardinals retiring to Anagni, elect Clement VII. antipope, *ib.* Miserable schism hereby occasioned, *ibid.* The two popes anathematize each other, with the bad consequences, 693. Urban threatens to excommunicate the king of Arragon, *ib.* (R). The antipope received at Naples, but retires to Avignon, *ib.* Urban's proceedings against the queen of Naples, and crowning Charles of Durazzo, king of Sicily, *ibid.* (S). Charles, by a successful battle, possesses the kingdom, *ib.* Disturbances at Paris on account of the antipope's exactions, and Dr. Ross's warm remonstrance from the university, with Urban's quelling an insurrection at Rome, 694. The antipope crowns the duke of Anjou king of Sicily, and Urban mal-treated at Naples by king Charles, *ib.* The bishop of Norwich disgraceful return with his crusaders, *ib.* Urban publishes a crusade at Naples, against the duke of Anjou, *ib.* The indignity shewn that pope, and a rupture between him and king Charles, *ib.* The difference fomented by cardinal Reali, and the rest convicted of a plot against Urban, 695. Besieged in Nocera, but escapes to Genoa, *ib.* (T). Puts the degraded cardinals to death, *ib.*

— leaves Rome, and goes to Naples, where he is imprisoned, but soon released by Charles, with the pardon of the pope's nephew, and a crusade against Lewis of Anjou, x. 470. Proposes to dethrone queen Jean, and give the crown of Naples to Charles duke of Durazzo, and to oppose the king of Arragon's claim to Sicily, x. 468. Marches with troops to recover Naples, returns to Rome, and appoints a jubilee every thirty-three years, but dies, Boniface IX. succeeding, ix. 696

Urban VII. elected pope in room of Sixtus V. but dies before his coronation, with an account and character of him, x. 123

— VIII. succeeds pope Gregory XV. with an account and character of him, x. 138 (X). A great oppressor of the knights of Malta, and loud complaints made against him to the European powers, vii. 503. Alters their manner of election, 504. Canonization of his predecessor's saints, with eight new ones, x. 138. Dignifies and enriches his relations, 139. Exhorts the prince of Wales and his father to embrace the Romish religion, the Spanish match broken off, and another made with a daughter of France, *ib.* Articles of accommodation proposed by that pope about the Valteline, rejected by France, *ib.* Ecclesiastical proceedings, *ib.* His nephew sent legate to France for peace, but unsuccessful, who proceeds to Spain, but there cardinal Richelieu had agreed to a peace at Monson, *ib.* The pope makes twelve cardinals, and takes possession of the duchy of Urbino, and the consideration, 140. Sollicitous to convert king Charles I. and his desire of information for a re-union, *ib.* (Z). Composes an epigram on the king of France's reduction of Rochelle, and publishes an universal jubilee, *ib.* Suppresses the Jesuitesses, and his endeavours for peace in Italy ineffectual, but concluded by Mazarine, with the conditions, 141. His endeavours to prevent the king of France from an alliance with Gustavus, upon whose defeating the Imperialists at Lipsick, the house of Austria complains against the pope, *ib.* Refuses a crusade against Gustavus, but gives a subsidy, besides promises, and unites Urbino to the ecclesiastical state, 142. Resentment of Spain against the pope subsides on the death of Gustavus at Lutzen, with a rupture betwixt him and the Venetians, *ib.* Refusing an alliance with France, Crequi enters into a negotiation at Venice, *ib.* The pope's encroachment on the Gallican church not opposed by the court or clergy, *ib.* The elector of Triers imprisoned by the Spaniards, and the pope offers his mediation on the war thus raised between France and Spain, *ib.* Which proving ineffectual, he adheres to a neutrality, *ib.* Complaint to the court of France on annulling the duke of Orleans's marriage, with the answer, and his jealousy of Richelieu's power, and calling Mazarine, 143. Noailles recalled from Rome, and d'Estrees sent in his room, with his complaints, *ib.* (A). Difference between the pope and the duke of Parma, which comes to an open rupture, and the consequences to the latter, *ib.*

Difference



- Difference between that pope and France accommodated, *ib.* War with Parma involves him in great difficulties, and a powerful alliance formed in behalf of the former, 144. After various success, and little vigour, a peace is concluded with the duke of Parma, *ib.* Death and character, with the pasquinade on his stripping the Pantheon of its brass roof, 145.
- Urbini's conduct in retiring from Milan approved at Venice, but the pope outrageous, x. 324. Conduct blamed, and ordered to march to the relief of Rome, but too late, 326. Lays aside the senate of Venice's orders, through Vitturi's advice, who is recalled and imprisoned, 327. He still refuses attempting to set the pope at liberty, and retires to Sienna, *ib.* A pestilence and famine among his troops, *ib.* Inactivity gives cause for suspicion at Venice, but justifies himself, 328. Victory over the enemy, 332.
- Urbino, duke of, makes war on the pope, x. 67. Unable to support the war, consents to a peace, a condition of which is, his resigning the duchy to the pope, 68.
- duchy attacked by the pope, xiii. 483. Who takes and confers it on his nephew Lorenzo, with the beginning and progress of the war in Urbino, *ib.* Mismanagement of the pope's generals, 484. The French and Germans desert to the duke, with the surprising state of the two armies, 485. His distress, and a plot against him discovered and punished, *ib.* He invades Tuscany, but returns to defend Urbino, driving the legate out, *ib.* Ancona invaded by that duke with bad success, and he returns to Tuscany, 486. His uncomfortable situation through the murmurs of his soldiers, *ib.* Forced to make peace, and the terms, *ib.* But refusing to ratify the treaty, is deserted by most of his troops, and at last obliged to it, 487. With a body of disbanded soldiers recovers his duchy, except a few garrisoned places, 496. Put in possession of his duchy, 498. His overcaution and inactivity, 512. He advances within three miles of Milan, and takes possession of the suburbs, *ib.* Retreating to San Martino, and afterwards to Marignano, 513. Guicciardini's representations upon it, *ib.* (A). Urbino's answer, *ib.* Motives, with the fatal effects of his retreat on the league, *ib.* Backwardness, with the shameful retreat of the confederates, 518.
- Urbs, or Tuburbo, a city of Tunis, described, vii. 308 (O).
- Urcand, or Uscand, where sited, i. 614.
- Urgensh (Orkanj) the capital of Karazm, ii. 715. Taken by Ilbars Khan, 723. Besieged by Amunatk, *ib.* Plundered and burnt by the Russians, 735.
- Uriel, Martin, penetrates into Jedso, with an account of its inhabitants, iv. 70 (D).
- Urmankats, Turks, in West Tartary, where sited, ii. 127. Their way of life, *ib.*
- Urfel revolts against the Roman emperor, ii. 203. Sold to him by Tutak, *ib.*
- Urseolo, Pietro, 23d doge of Venice, his character and domestic transactions, x. 191. The Saracens in Italy defeated by him, resignation and pilgrimage, *ib.* (C).
- Il. 26th doge, his wife administration and successes, x. 192. Title given him, death, and character, *ib.*
- Otho, the 27th doge of Venice, his character and war with the Atrians, whom he obliges to sue for peace, x. 193. War with the prince of Croatia, and the doge's success, who is deposed by a conspiracy, and his character, *ib.*
- Ursini, John Bapt. de, the 37th grand master of Rhodes, vii. 416. Defeats the Turks at sea, and receives an embassy from Persia, 417. Death, *ib.*
- Ursins, princess, some particulars about her, viii. 364. *sub not.*
- Urujerd plundered by Timur Bek, ii. 516.
- Urus Khan seizes on the crown of Kipjak, with his success against Toktamish, ii. 447. Against Timur, 448. Death, *ibid.*
- Urraca, queen, invests king Alonso in Astorga, but suffers him to retire, vii. 666. Marches to Burgos, which opens its gates to her, and the garrison surrenders, *ib.* Her marriage annulled by a council at Palencia, *ib.* Discontents against her rise so high, that the nobles seize on Don Pedro de Lara, 669. Carried prisoner to Mancilla, *ib.* The cause of her death variously reported, 670.
- Urreta's history of Abyssinia, a large heap of forgeries, vi. 160 (D). An abstract of it, 315. Fable of his Dominican monks, &c. 316. Of the imperial library and treasury, 318. Stately churches, &c. *ib.* Spite against the Portuguese, 319. Impious conclusion of his work, 315 (E) 320. Fabulous account of the Imperial library and treasury, 247. *sub (O).* Sequel of his romantic account, 319. Spite against the Jesuits, and other missionaries, *ib.*
- U san-ghey, his intrepid loyalty, and unfortunately invites the Tartars into China, iii. 731. Dearly repents of it, *ib.* Revolts against Kang-hi, 740. Bold answer to that monarch, and strong alliances against him, with his defeat and death, *ib.* His remains insulted by the Tartars, 741.
- Uskunluk-tugra, or Kichick-tag, a mountain in Mongolia, ii. 250.
- Ustazades martyred by the Jews, v. 505.
- Usuri, a famous river in East Tartary, iii. 462.
- Utarku taken and put in irons, ii. 538.
- U-tay, mount and temple, ii. 396.
- Utikut, the Indian lord, raised by Albuquerque, is put to death, for a conspiracy iv. 124.
- Utrecht, its ancient history, xi. 394. Peculiarities distinguishing its bishops, 395.
- difficulties to the negotiations there, and the French king's answer to the emperor's demands, xi. 354. Substance of that treaty between Spain and Great-Britain, viii. 368. Treaty of Portugal with Spain there, 549. Congress again opens, and the negotiations conducted by very able ministers, particularly Abbe Polignac, xi. 358. Union projected by the prince of Orange, and signed, which is the basis of the United Provinces, with its chief articles, 422. It is universally approved, with the representation of the infant republic in the first coin after this alliance, 423 (A).
- Uva, prince of Ceylon, seized by the Portuguese, and sent to Goa to be converted, and is imprisoned for life, iv. 438.
- Uzbek Khan, his reign in Kipjak, ii. 446. Introduces Mahometanism, *ib.* Assists Abusaid in the taking of Samarkand, and bribed by him to return home, 590.
- Uzbeks subdued by Saad, i. 295.
- Tartars described, and their warlike temper, ii. 458. Their origin, 705. Their khans, 706, and two dynasties where settled, and whence called Uzbeks, 708. Quarrel with the Vigurs and Turkmans, 739. Defeated by them, *ib.* Massacred, 741. Beg peace of the Persians, 746 (X).
- of Great Bukharia, make dreadful inroads into Persia, but defeated by Kuli Khan, ii. 656. Their khans and history, 708.
- Tartars, or Tatars, their origin, situation, and tribe, ii. 719. Whence their name, with their way of living, *ib.* Weapons, cattle, and money, 720. Government, *ib.* Ravages in Persia, 746.
- Uzkant, where situated, and surrendered to the Mungls, ii. 299 (Z).
- Uzun Hassan, or Hassan Beg, the 6th shah of the White Sheep dynasty, his success against Abusaid and Hassan Ali, ii. 702. Defeated by Mohammed II. His death, and that of his son, 703.
- Uzza, Al, an Arab idol, destroyed by Mahomet, i. 84.

V.

- V AAL sent from Goa to suppress the Portuguese pyracies, vi. 354.
- Vaca, Cabeco de, his account of Narvaez's expedition to Florida, xv. 65.
- Vache island described, xv. 358.
- Vachero, account of his plot against the nobility of Genoa, x. 606. Its discovery, and punishment of the conspirators, 607. The duke of Savoy endeavours to save the lives of that criminal and his accomplices, but Vachero is put to an ignominious death, 608 (A).
- Vachet sent into Siam from France, iii. 372.
- Vaivodes, twelve, on the extinction of Cracus's family in Poland, are chosen, who abuse their power, xii. 444.
- Valdes besieges Leyden, but after a memorable defence, and the favour of a south-west wind, is obliged to raise the siege, xi. 414.
- Valdemar, the infant son of Canute, chosen king of Denmark, and Eric the Lamb appointed regent, or colleague, xi. 712. Being of age, declares for Sweden, xii. 4. Among others, espouses Canute's cause, 7. Marries the king of Sweden's daughter, with the favourable terms from Canute, *ib.* Swen's interview with him, and his treachery, *ib.* His moderation, and a partition made of the kingdom, between the three competitors, *ib.* On the death of Canute V. and Swen IV. becomes sole monarch of Denmark, 9. Begins his reign with an amnesty, *ib.* Snare laid for him, which he escapes, and the Norwegians offer him their crown, 12. Conspiracy against him discovered, 13. Princess of Pomerania why disgusted with him, and his acts of piety, 15. A design against him and his army discovered, upon which the Vandals retreat, *ib.* He besieges and takes Stetin, *ib.* (A).



- (A). Conference between him and Henry Leo, *ib.* A conspiracy to destroy the king discovered, 17. His progress, but not Henry's, 18. Made duke of Holstein by the emperor, and he falls sick, with his death and character, 20.
- Valdemar, young king Canute's brother, defeats Adolphus of Holstein, and his other successes, *xii.* 24. Marriage after several conquests with Ingelburga of Brunswick, 25. A conference between him and Adolphus, with the agreement thereupon, which the latter attempting to break is seized, *ibid.*
- II. succeeds his brother Canute VI. king of Denmark, and his character, *xii.* 25. Some salutary laws passed, he enters into a treaty with Adolphus of Holstein, and laws enacted in Schonen, *ib.* Assists Suercher of Sweden with a body of troops against Eric, 26 (A). Who defeats these auxiliaries, and again Suercher's army, this prince being also slain, *ib.* Enlarges Hamburg, builds a bridge over the Elbe, *ib.* Death of his queen after Canute's birth, and marriage of his sister with king Eric of Sweden, *ib.* Goes in person against the Pomeranians, with his embassy to the emperor Frederic II. and the progress of the Danes in Pomerania, 27. Disputes between that king and bishop Valdemar of Sleswic renewed, *ib.* Invades Lower Saxony with success, and recovers Hamburg, *ib.* His son Valdemar declared his successor, and crowned, also Eric born by his third queen Berengaria, *ib.* His expedition into Livonia, where he defeats the Muscovites and their allies, with the marvellous circumstances of this battle, 28 (A). Treacherous carrying of that king into captivity by Henry Palatine, earl of Schwerin, *ib.* with the different accounts of the occasion for such a proceeding; also the conditions of his release solemnly sworn to, and what; the lords of the conquered districts in the mean time recover their rights, 29. Is absolved from his engagements, raises an army, but is defeated by the confederates, with the loss of an eye, 30. Ravages in Dithmarsh and northern Holstein, *ib.* The king's son killed accidentally, *ib.* Alliance with Albert of Saxony, *ib.* (B). Fortunate war in Livonia carried on by him, *ib.* And a new body of laws compiled, with other domestic occurrences, death and character, 31.
- Abel's son released by the archbishop of Cologne, with Sleswic given him, *xii.* 37.
- of Sleswick, elected king of Denmark after the abdication of Christopher II. *xii.* 51 (A). His first popular acts, and disturbances in the kingdom, *ib.* (B). Resigns the Danish crown for an annuity, 53. Many of the Danish nobility declare for him, *ib.* Peace concluded, *ib.* Resumes thoughts of the throne, also Valdemar, Christopher's son, is encouraged, with the miserable state of the country through famine and pestilence, 55.
- III. (Atterdal) the son of Christopher II. is elected to the Danish throne, *xii.* 56. Treaty with Gerhard's three sons and Valdemar of Sleswic, with the redemption of the crown lands settled, *ib.* Confirms the people's privileges, &c. with a grant by the clergy to the king, *ib.* War with the earl of Wagria, and the king's defeat, 57. Congress for establishing a treaty, *ib.* Views for recovering Schonen, and preliminaries to a treaty, 58. Birth of a young prince to him, and the consequences, *ib.* Reduces the Friselanders, with other transactions, 59. A view of the king's politics, his concluding a treaty with Valdemar of Sleswick, *ib.* His superstition, and selling Esthonia to the Teutonic knights, *ib.* Makes a pilgrimage, *ib.* Princess born to him, and that king's transactions after his return about the crown-lands, 60. How he gains the affections and confidence of his people, *ib.* And an interview with Magnus of Sweden about Schonen ineffectual, *ib.* Supports his brother-in-law of Brandenburg against the abettors of the impostor, and an accommodation effected with the duke of Mecklenburg, 61. Congress holden by the emperor, who acknowledges Romulus legitimate heir of Brandenburg, *ib.* A treaty with the king of Poland, and a revolt of the king's subjects, 62. The differences between him and Magnus of Sweden adjusted, *ib.* He assists the duke of Mecklenburg against the duke of Stetin, and hostilely enters the country of the princes of Sclavia and Werle, 63. Differences with the princes of Holstein adjusted, *ib.* Makes a pilgrimage to Avignon, 64 (A). He quells some sparks of sedition in Friseland, and a general pardon, &c. passed in a diet at Neuburg, *ib.* An interview between the kings of Denmark and Sweden ineffectual, *ib.* and his domestic administration, *ib.* His farther operations, and his squadron taken at Wismar, to avoid being burnt, 66. An accommodation concluded between that king, the duke of Mecklenburg, and the princes of Holstein, 67. Interview of Magnus with him at Copenhagen, and the consequences, *ib.*
- (A). On Magnus's voluntary offer of Schonen, that king invades the province, and Magnus revokes his promise, *ib.* The king purges himself by oath of an accusation of murder, *ib.* Again enters Schonen, and Magnus reconciles himself to the king, with the conditions, and a peace follows, 69. A joke of the king's on occasion of one Calff, *ib.* Unanimous determinations in a diet, and other proceedings of that king, and the Swedes murmur, *ib.* Success in Oeland and Gothland, with his plundering of Wisby, 69. Signal services to the emperor, and the truce with the Huns, &c. converted into a solid peace, 71. Basely deserts Magnus, and the conditions of a peace with the usurper, 72. Courage fails, and he flies the kingdom, 73. The emperor espouses his cause, and the pope refuses to intermeddle, *ib.* That king's remarkable answer to the pope, which is related of Valdemar I. *ib.* (A). This does not surprise his holiness on account of Valdemar's character, with his return, and the consequences, 74. His death and character, *ib.* (B).
- Valdemar, count, the king of Denmark's natural son, is arrested in Russia, *xii.* 170.
- Valdenebra-castle stormed, *viii.* 36.
- Valdivia sent to Chili, and he penetrates to the fruitful valley of Masiocho, where he builds St. Jago de la Nueva Estramadura, *xiv.* 320. Defeats the Chilians, is reinforced by Pastena, and suppresses a plot for murdering him, *ib.* The Indians of Chili vale submit, and his other transactions, *ib.* Reduces the warlike provinces never before subdued, and drives the Chilians out of the vales of Copiapo and Coquimbo, 321. Founds la Concepcion, Imperial, and Villa Rica, &c. *ib.* Defeated, and his men destroyed, how taken, and put to death, 322. Different accounts of the manner of it, *ib.*
- Valediction pilgrimage, how performed, *i.* 98.
- Valencians, their devotion to St. Vincent fatal to them, *i.* 392.
- Valenciennes, its siege, *viii.* 313.
- Valentia, victory there against the Moors, *viii.* 140.
- province, reduced, *viii.* 141.
- a confederacy of the commons there, encouraged by the emperor, *viii.* 230.
- Valentinian's edict against the Jews, *v.* 507 (X).
- Valetta, John de, sent governor of Tripoli, and his great character, &c. *vii.* 458. Succeeds Strozzi, in Sicily, 473. Chosen 48th Grand Master, and joins in the expedition against Tripoli, 475. Ill success of it, *ib.* Invited to the council of Trent, and his ambassador's speech there, 476. Answer to it, and assists Spain, 477. His fleet takes a rich galleon, *ib.* Fresh complaints made to Soliman, *ib.* Summons the whole order to Maltha, 478. Prepares against the Ottoman fleet, *ib.* Intrepid defence of fort St. Elmo, and receives fresh supplies, 480. Stern orders to the garison of St. Elmo, 482. Amused by the viceroy of Sicily, 483. Revenge on the Turkish general, 485. Takes new measures against him, *ib.* Discovers a dangerous project of the Turks, *ib.* Wounded in the castle of St. Michael, 489. Receives the succours from Sicily, 490. Honours paid him on the retreat of the Turks, 492. Causes the new city to be built, 493. His death hastened by the pope's ill-treatment, *ib.* His grand funeral, 494.
- Valetta junior, his noble defence of St. Michael's castle, *vii.* 487. Killed by the Turks in its defence, *ib.*
- Valette, cardinal de la, his death, and the pope refuses him the usual honours, *ix.* 396.
- Valois, count, king Lewis's uncle, causes the prime minister Marigni to be put to death, *ix.* 81. Several other officers in the finances fall, *ib.* Marigni regretted as a victim to the count's cruelty, *ib.* The great count dies, and his penitence on account of Marigni, 86.
- the French monarchs of that house, *ix.* 88, & (A).
- Valenzuela, a page, raised to a grandee of Spain by the queen-mother, with his character, *viii.* 330.
- Valparaiso town described, *xiv.* 473.
- Valteline invaded and reduced by the French, *x.* 139. Restored, *viii.* 295.
- Valladolid, a council called there, *viii.* 36.
- (Comoagua) capital of Honduras, described, *xiv.* 442.
- Vallois, account of that people, and their communities, *xv.* 448. Alliance with the Swiss cantons, *ib.*
- Vailouvers in India, a sort of priests, *iii.* 216.
- Vambra river, in Congo, described, *vi.* 426.
- Van, and Vastan, its reduction and sad catastrophe, *ii.* 518.
- Vanda succeeds her deposed brother Lechus II. in the government



- ment of Poland, with her character, xii. 443. She overcomes the troops of Rithogar, a Teutonic prince, without striking a blow, and how, *ib.* Rithogar stabs himself, and her catastrophe, 444.
- Vandal cities, a treaty of peace concluded with them at Stralsund, xii. 73
- cities confirmed in their privileges of trading to Denmark, xii. 157
- country, crouds of Goths and Danes settle there, xii. 225.
- Vandals, their kind treatment of the Jews, v. 512. Irruption into Italy under Genserich, xiii. 273
- invade Africa, v. 705. Their several kings there, *ib.*
- Expelled thence by the emperor Justinian, 713
- defeated by Swen, who grants power to his subjects for making reprisals on their privateers, xii. 5. Invade Denmark, and slightly defeated by Swen, 7. Their invasion, and defeat off Rugen, 10. Ambassador ordered to quit Denmark, 11. Defeated by Henry of Saxony, and their king slain, with the unnatural conduct of his son, *ib.* for which Valdemar gently rebukes him, *ib.* Several times defeated, they sue for peace, *ib.* Revolt, and purchase peace at a high price, 13. Their country destroyed, *ib.* Are induced to drive the Saxons out of their country, 14. Another expedition against them, and Absalon's success, 16. Their restlessness, *ib.* Fresh war breaks out with them, and an alliance between Valdemar and Saxony against them, 17. Totally subdued, and their country made a fief of Denmark, 22
- , account of those who invaded Denmark and Italy xv. 507. Greatly esteemed for their courage, *ib.* Why settled in Britain, with the succession of their princes, *ibid.* Irruption with the Goths into the empire, are defeated, 508. Also into Gaul, whence they are driven into Spain, and go over to Africa, *ib.*
- Vanderhoot, governor of Stetin, his bravery, xii. 365. Yet Stetin at last surrenders to the Brandenburgers, and the Swedes beaten at sea, *ib.*
- Vane, Sir Henry, governor of Massachuset, and his character, xiv. 507; but Winthrop why chosen in his room, *ib.*
- Vang, a title of honour, what, ii. 261
- , or Ungi Khan, restores Temujin's wife, ii. 268. His pedigree, *ib.* Various fortune, 269. The Prester John of Asia, and bragging letter to the French king, *ib.* Vast dominions and power, with his kind reception of Temujin, 270. Treachery to Temujin, 272. Four times defeated by him, 273. Instigated by Sanghin, 274. Prepares to make war against him, 275. Marches against him, *ibid.* Defeated by him, with his flight and death, 276
- Vang-chang, dethroned in Korea, iii. 755
- Vang-kyen, his noble defence of Hochew, ii. 359. Makes a horrid slaughter of the Mungis, *ib.*
- Vang-mang poisons the emperor in his meat, iii. 703. Deposes his son, and seizes on the crown, with his bloody war and dreadful end, *ib.*
- Vanijs, or Wajnyjas, in Indostan, their tribes, customs, &c. vi. 26
- Vanqui kingdom, in Inland Guinea, vi. 676
- Varad, or Varal, a province of Indostan, iii. 16
- Varnish-tree, in China, described, iii. 612
- Varnish of Japan made in China, and that of Canton why the worst, iii. 620 (O). Various sorts of it, 621
- Vartias, a strict sect of Brachmans, with their habits, diet, &c. iii. 219
- Vasco de Gama admitted into Melinda, and his narrow escape at Mofambico, vi. 342, and at Mombazo, 343. Reception from, and treaty with, the Melindan king, and sails for India, 344. Returns to Melinda, and takes with him an ambassador from the king for that of Portugal, 351. Discovers the isle of Mofambico, 358
- Vasconcellos, Lewis Mendez, the 53d grand master of Malta, and dies, vii. 503
- Vasquez, Luke, his expedition to Florida, xv. 64. Effects of his appearance and kindness on the natives, *ib.* His treachery, and the consequences, *ib.*
- Vassal, Mr. Samuel, his noble stand for liberty, xiv. 505
- Vataces's success against the Turks, ii. 221
- Vatemanahon, a province of Madagascar, described, vi. 92
- Vauban fortifies the conquered places in Flanders, ix. 453. Citadel of Lille, a master-piece constructed by that engineer, *ibid.*
- Vaudemont, prince, storms Tokai, putting most of the male-contents to the sword, xi. 321
- Vaudois massacred, ix. 230
- some account of that people, and a peace concluded, with a remarkable circumstance of their children, about which the duke of Savoy is undeceived: the war renewed, but the duke is forced to grant them the free exercise of their religion, xiv. 130. Industry in Carolina, xv. 94
- Vaudreuil, M. his success against a party of the Onneyouths, xiv. 612. Made governor of Montreal, 677. Succeeds Callieres, governor of New France, and his character, *ib.* His first care what, *ib.* Sends a party to make an irruption into New England, and the ridiculous accounts by the French, 677. Instructions from France about a neutrality, what, 679. Lucky incident for the French in this case, *ib.* Terms for a cartel with Dudley of New England, and his inattention, what, 682. His difficulties with regard to the savages, *ib.* Brings about a reconciliation, 683. Conduct on a disturbance between the Outaouai and Miamis, 684. Receives the Onnontague and Agniers into favour, 688. Why he rendezvouses the well-affected savages at Montreal, and his successful measures there, to whom owing, 691. His evasion with regard to the Abenakis, 694. Account of the force of Canada, 695. Appointed governor of New France, 710. His ridiculous falsehoods among the Canadians in general, 725. Made governor of Louisiana, xv. 57. Makes peace with the Chactaws, *ib.* Death and character, xiv. 696
- Vaughan, Sir George, has a grant of part of Newfoundland, and sends captain Wynne governor before him, xiv. 491
- Dr. settles a colony at Cambriol in Newfoundland, and appoints Whitburn governor, xiv. 491
- lord, supercedes Lynch, governor of Jamaica, who is sent for home, xv. 283. Leaves his government with no great credit, *ib.*
- Vaux made governor of Bombay, iv. 325
- Vaz, Tristan, discovers Perto Santo, iv. 112
- Vazirs, in Egypt, become too powerful for the khalifs, vi. 55 (F)
- Vedam, (Wedam) the Bible of the Bramins, how divided, iii. 183. Its authority, *ib.* Not read in their pagods, and by whom allowed to be read, *ib.* Hard to be procured by Europeans, 184
- Vega, St. Jago de la. See Spanish-town
- Conception de la, city described, xv. 360
- la, his partiality, xiv. 329
- Garcilasso de la, his account of the ancient Peruvians, and the incas, xiv. 372. His relation of a tradition in his family about the incas and Peruvians, 373. Remark on the Spaniards introducing scissars, &c. into Peru, 377
- remarks on Casas's polity for the Indies, and reflections on these, xiv. 331 (B)
- his account of Soto's expeditions in Florida, cleared from Charlevoix's accusation, xv. 71 (R)
- Vela, Blasco Nunez, sent viceroy to Peru, and arrival at Panama, xiv. 332. Enforces the new laws there and in Peru, *ib.* Discontent of the Spaniards at his rigorous proceedings, 333. Supercedes de Castro, and arrives at Lima, *ib.* Imprisons him, *ib.* Threatening writing found on his table at Kimac, and the incendiary pardoned; takes bail for Castro, quarrels with the judges, *ib.* and Pizarro arms, *ib.* Makes preparations against Pizarro, 334. Confines Castro on board, 335. His troops join Pizarro, *ib.* Unfavourable situation, *ib.* Resolves to sail for Truxillo, the discontents thereon, and, with his brother, is seized by the judges, *ib.* The fleet desert him, 336. Escaping, raises an army, and sends his son-in-law to Spain, *ib.* Retires to Quito on Pizarro's approach, and by his violent proceedings raises a mutinous spirit, 337. Is still pursued and retreats from Quito, *ib.*
- Velaquez, intelligence of his armament from Cuba, throws Cortez into great perplexity, xiv. 229. Appointed lieutenant of Cuba, and the conquests on the continent, *ibid.* Quite outrageous against Cortez, *ib.* Assembles a fleet and army, *ib.* Instructions to his commander Pamphilo de Narvaez, 230. Difficulties in the out-setting, *ib.*
- Velasco sent by Albert to Demare, is defeated by Maurice, xi. 468
- Veled, the son of Abusaid, his private life and treacherous death, ii. 595
- Veletri battle in favour of general Brown, yet the Austrians retreat, xiii. 662
- Velez, pennon of, taken by Buhanzon, vii. 182
- , marquis, sent to extinguish the Catalan revolt, inflames it by severity, viii. 301
- , marquis de los, viceroy of Naples, x. 528
- Veli, Amir, submits to Timur Bek, and revolts, ii. 513. He submits again, but revolts, 514. Besieged in the citadel of Durun, with his flight, valour, and narrow escape, 515.



515. Flies from the mountains of Rosleyndar, and brave defence of Tauris, 516. Taken and put to death, 517  
 Velowr plundered by the Barbarians, iii. 148  
 — a city in Karnata, ib. 177  
 Veliagea routed by the Christians with considerable loss, xiv. 323  
 Venables, colonel, account of him, xv. 111  
 Ven-chew, its dreadful catastrophe, ii. 347  
 Vendosme, the French fleet under him taken in the Channel by that of Cromwell, ix. 456. Defeats the Spanish fleet before Barcelona, 442. Takes Barcelona, 476. Sent to oppose Eugene, 482. Placed at the head of the army in the Netherlands, 481. His reply to a reflection cast on him, with other consequences of reducing Lisle, 491. Glorious successes in Spain, with his character, and he takes general Stanhope prisoner, with 5000 English at Brihuega, 495 (A). He defeats Staremburg, at Villa Viciosa, ib. By his means Philip becomes master of all Spain, except Catalonia, ib. Repulses Staremburg at Prato del Rey, and the latter defeats him in the siege of Ardena, 499. After a doubtful action with the Imperialists, takes Luzara and Guastalla, xi. 324. His rapid conquests in the duke of Savoy's country, 328. Memorable note to Philip on the battle of Villa Viciosa, 345. Death and burial in the Escorial, viii. 366. Character, ix. 505  
 Vendramino, Andrea, 71st doge of Venice, x. 269. His death, 270  
 Venetians, their profitable trade with Alexandria, &c. iv. 105. Obstruct that of the Portuguese, ib. (H). Make peace with the Turks, viii. 265. Condemn the sentence of the council of Basil, with regard to Aquileia, but Alphonso of Arragon courts them, x. 9. Declare against the duke of Ferrara, and take most of his dominions, 42. Refusing to accede to a peace, pope Sixtus IV. joins against them, and their territories ravaged, ib. They are reduced to great distress, ib. Conclude a separate peace with the Milanese, and the pope highly offended, 43. Take several places in Romagna, as also Faenza, 55. Offer to restore their conquests in Romagna, and the pope's reply, 56. Upon the entire defeat of their troops at Ghiaradada, and the pope's entering Romagna, the resolutions taken by them, 58. They earnestly solicit the allies to a reconciliation, ib. Would not harken to peace with the emperor, without Verona, and their alliance with France, 64. Request for assistance against the Turks invading Candia, in part granted by the pope, 152. Become principals in the war, with some divisions in the church, which are happily terminated, 182. Destroy the French fleet and troops, 185. After a bloody action, Pepin concludes a peace, ibid. Quarrel with the bishop of Aquileia, 186, who is taken prisoner, with the conditions of his release, ib. Fleet destroyed through the treachery of the Greeks, 187. They reduce the pyratelical Narentines, ib. Two violent factions of the nobles, beat the Sicilian fleet, a favourable alliance made with their king, and the gulph cleared of pirates, 196. Fleet with the Pisans take Acon, 199. Defeated by the Genoese at sea, 202. Defeated again by the Genoese, ib. After several battles, with various success, their quarrel ends thro' want of ability; two dangerous conspiracies in Venice discovered, and Zara revolts, 203. Drive the infidels out of the Levant seas, 209. For repressing the power of Escalla, and their chief Mastin, Venice makes a league with the Italian states, ib. Entirely defeated on the coast of the Morea by Doria, 213. Methods used by them for balancing Visconti's power, and proposals of accommodation rejected by them, ib. Truce with Visconti, ib. War with Lewis of Hungary continued, who retires into that kingdom, 214. Takes several places, and peace concluded, ib. War with the Paduans under Carrara, who attempts to poison the doge and senate, 216. The Paduans often defeated, and Vasco the Venetian general dismissed, but with dignity on his part, ib. A body of Venetians defeated, 218. Their fleet take several towns, and Zeno made admiral, 225. Their matrons generosity to the miserable Genoese prisoners, 226. With the mal-treatment to those of Venice, ib. War with Sigismund the emperor, and after various success peace concluded, 232. Besiege and take Castel Major, 237. A second time defeated in the Cremonese, 240. Engagement on the Po between Visconti's generals and them, with the defeat of the latter, 241. War in Lombardy, and a battle, in which both sides retreat with equal loss, 242. Attempt on Cremona frustrated, through Carmagnola's delay, ib. Success in Lombardy, 243. Defeated, Castel Major recovered, and Brixelles re-

duced, ib. Peace concluded, ib. League between them, the Florentines, Sforza, and d'Este, 251. Sea-fight, in which they are victorious, 252. Peace with Philip Visconti, 256 (B) (D). Its articles, 256. Fleet employed against the pirates, 258. Conclude a treaty with Alphonso of Arragon, 260. Sforza's generosity to the Venetian prisoners, ib. Their successes in taking places, ib. and Renato of Anjou joining Sforza, turns the scales, ib. Fleet sent against the Turks, and Othman besieges Constantinople, 261. Forced to abandon their attempt on Corinth, and retire to Napoli, 264 (C). War in the Morea not entered on till unavoidable, with a fleet and army sent to besige Argers, ib. War with the Triestines, Trieste besieged, and the war ended by the pope's mediation, 265. Their loss near Modon, and Mitylene besieged by them, but repulsed from it, ib. Sparta besieged, but the Venetians quit it, with their loss and defeat before Patras, ibid. War with the pope for their defence of the Florentines, 271. Their success on both sides the Po, 272. Figarcia taken, and a great mortality in the Venetian fleet and army, ib. Army on the Po defeat Sigismund d'Este, 275. They and the French army assembled, with the successes of the former, 282. Upon Bajazer's insolent terms of peace, prosecute the war with vigour, and repulse the Turks in the Morea, 284. A sea-fight between the Turks and Venetians, the latter retiring; a convoy sent through the Turkish fleet to Modon, occasions the taking that and all the other places in the Morea, except Napoli, ib. Embassy from Lewis to them, and the rise of the quarrel between them and pope Julius II. 286. They clear themselves to the satisfaction of the emperor and king of France, ib. Embassy of the emperor to Venice, on the affair between them and the pope, ib. Confederacy between the emperor and France, with an embassy from the latter, ibid. Proposals made by Venice to the pope, but frustrated, and a powerful confederacy against the republic, 287. War with the emperor, and diet at Constance, with a resolution taken there that the emperor should go into Italy, ib. Demand of a passage through the Venetian territories, and the senate's answer, ib. The emperor marches into Italy, as far as Vicenza, but doing nothing, retires to Trent, ibid. Thence he goes to the diet at Ulm, ib. Successful by sea and land, but the French under Trivulcio waver, ib. Refuse the Grand Seignior's assistance, 294 (G). Rapid successes of the allies, and places seized by their neighbours, 294. Loud complaints of the people against the senate, and their answer, 295; also the recovery of some places, ib. Their successes in Carniola and Istria, with particular privileges bestowed by the senate on the inhabitants of Belloni, 301 (F). Successes of the Venetians, and surrender of Cremona to them, ib. Death of the queen of Cyprus, and her kingdom annexed to the republic, ib. (G). Hostages demanded by the emperor from Venice, with the different accounts, ib. Lewis's offers of peace rejected, with Brasica taken by them, and other successes, ib. Enter into a treaty with Lewis II. of France, 302. Worstled in the Veronese, while Trivulcio reduces the Milanese, and Brescia surrenders to them, 303. Upon the bad reception of their embassy to the pope, resolve to push the war, 304. Compromise through the pope between Maximilian and them, 306. Defeated before Moron, and Vitturi taken prisoner, 307. Divisions between the French and them, 313. Verona besieged by the latter, and Lautrec decamps, ib. The occasion of the French general's remissness, ibid. Take Lodi, and invest Milan, but Urbini retires, 323 (D). Besieging and taking Cremona, 324. The pope's forces recalled, and a body of German Landsquenets join Bourbon in the Placentine, with the precautions for defending the pope's territories and Tuscany, ib. Vigorous measures for opposing Charles and releasing pope Clement VII. 327. Treaty with the pope and that of Cambray, with their senate's resolution to keep up their army, 332. Matters finally concluded between the emperor and the republic, the former being entertained at the expence of the latter, and their representation to the pope's message on religion, ib. They fit out a strong fleet, 333. French resident at the Porte, his intrigues against them, 334. Sforza's death, and the consequence, ib. Francis's favourable proposal to them, with their general reply, and Cornaro's reproaching the senate, 337. Mutual hostilities between them and the Turks at sea, ib. Their subjects imprisoned by Solyman's officers, 338. Gallant defence of two of their galleys against Pinalis's fleet, 360. They lay waste Cephalonia and other islands, 364. Peace between them and Selim,



374. They exclaim against Philip, *ib.* Who accepts of their apology for concluding a peace, 375. Agree to an accommodation with Charles, who, after being crowned by the pope, returns to Germany, 501. Expelled from Crete by Henry, count of Malea, who defeats their fleet, and takes the doge prisoner, 544. Declare war against the duke of Milan and the Genoese; the admiral of the latter entirely defeated and taken prisoner, 572. Repulsed from Chios, and a peace concluded, *ib.* Origin of their espousing the Adriatic sea, 677 (C). Being entirely defeated at Ghiaradadda, abandon the continent, xi. 127. They send a *carte-blanche* to the emperor, but the pope and king of Arragon traversing the measures of the French and Germans, the republic is saved, *ib.* Gain over the pope, whose mediation between the emperor and them proves ineffectual, 128. On Lewis XII. of France repassing the Alps, with part of his army, surprise Padua, &c. *ib.* Espouse the cause of Charles duke of Mantua, 219. Defeated by the Germans, 220. Conclude a new league with the Florentines, and the former how defeated on the Po by Piccinino's personal valour, xiii. 389. Attempting to raise the siege of Caravaggio, dreadfully defeated, 406. By the exiles solicitations, declare against Florence, and invade their territories, with the assistance of the duke of Ferrara, Alphonso, and Galeazzo, 420. Their alarming power, and a league formed against them, 434. Defeated near Trent; but peace made, and Osimo restored to the pope, *ib.* Come into the confederacy proposed by Sforza, 436. Still support the Pisans, 450. Attack the Florentines, and the latter's success in the Pisan, who yet are distressed in other parts, but turn the tables in the Casantin upon the Venetians, who set a fresh negociation on foot, 451. Their war in the Casantin, 453. Employed against the Turks, 456. They at Malignano retreat to Milan, 481. Proposal to the pope, who is amused by Lanoya, the viceroy of Naples, and he chuses the way of negociation, 505. A convention concluded, and the terms, *ib.* Join the pope in invading Naples, xiii. 581.

Venezuela village, in America, whence so called, and described, xiv. 147 (E).

— province, different accounts of its extent, xiv. 451. Its description, also its capital, and the reason of its name, *ibid.*

Venice, a decree of its senate in favour of the Jews, v. 593. Honours done their doge by the pope, and the grand reception of the emperor Frederic, and empress, in that city, vii. 689 (E). General council of the holy league there, with an account of the fleet and army to be raised, viii. 259. Its government and present state, x. 174. Origin, *ib.* The time, occasion, and manner of building the city, *ib.* Opinions about it, 175. Strong and pleasant situation on the Rialto and Adriatic, with its inconveniences, and number of inhabitants, *ib.* Territories, commerce, and constitution, *ib.* Reasons for the stability of its government, 176. Model and form described, *ib.* Doge's power under particular restrictions, and the great council, 177. The senate, seignory, or council of Ten, *ib.* Power and office of the state-inquisition, *ib.* Savi council, *ib.* The college of the doge, seignory, and savi, with faults in the constitution outweighing its excellencies, 178. Ecclesiastics excluded from public councils and employments, *ib.* Encomiums on its first establishment, *ib.* Change of government from consular to tribunitian, 179. Tribunes elected, and their power, *ib.* First wars with the Lombards, &c. and first mention of a fleet, which defeats the pyrates, Tergestines, &c. *ib.* Venice acquires esteem and consequence thereby, and enters into an alliance with Narses against the Goths, *ib.* Account of the revolution which abolished the tribunes, 180. A general assembly elects a doge with supreme authority, *ib.* Distress through discords, particularly those of Caloprini, and their relief by the emperor Otho's death, 192. Great fire there, 194. Sedition there, and how quelled, 204. Overflown and shaken by an earthquake, 206. First rise of its commercial board, 208. Series of unavoidable calamities there, 211. A revolt there pacified by releasing Pisani, who is restored, 222. The doge's speech to him, and zeal of the people for him, with works built round Venice by his advice, *ib.* (A). That city blocked up by the Genoese, treaty of peace broken off, and a decree for supplying the republic, 223. Siege of the city raised, and Pisani repulsed, with a party of Venetians defeated, *ib.* Overflowing of the sea does great damage, and a war with some pyrates happily finished, 257. War with Visconti, against whom the Venetians join Sforza, *ib.* Treaty with Mahomet, 262. A defeat of the Floren-

tines produces a peace, with a plague and fire in that city, 271. Disputes of that republic with the duke of Ferrara, *ib.* Violent debates in the senate on this head, with war declared against him, 272. Peace between the Italian princes and them, 274. Vast expence of this war to the republic, *ib.* Peace with Sigismund, 276. Sumptuary laws and a regulation concerning dice, *ib.* Embassy from Tremecen in Africa, and firelocks introduced into that city, *ib.* Embassy there from Charles VIII. of France, about the conquest of Naples, 277. The Venetians stand neuter till on Suarez's arrival at Leghorn with a Spanish armament, a treaty is concluded with the emperor, Spain, the pope, and Milan, *ib.* Partial reflections of the historians on this league, 278 (A). The stipulations in this confederacy, *ib.* Senate's answer to Charles's demand, with his proceedings in Italy, and the confederates design to hem him in at Asti, *ib.* A battle ensues near the Taro, with doubtful success, and both sides claim the victory, 279. Novara besieged by their confederates, and the success of the Venetian fleet, with a peace between Charles and Sforza; also the latter's treachery, *ib.* The Venetian admiral's successes in Calabria, and embassy from the Pisans and from the pope, *ibid.* Treaty for protecting the Pisans, who desert the Florentines, and Faenza received into the republic's protection, who consents to send the emperor an embassy, 280. An alliance between Matthias of Hungary and that republic, 281. Treaty between France and that republic, *ib.* Milan submits to that republic, through the treachery of Bernardino, governor of the citadel, and Cremona also, 282. The latter, through Battaglioni's treachery, sold to them, *ib.* War with the Turks, and a battle between their fleet, under Bajazet, and that of Venice, in which the latter retreat, 282. Negligence of the Venetian admiral, *ib.* Treaty with Ladislaus of Hungary, 285. A congress there for peace, and the proceedings, 288. Truce concluded without the French, in which the Venetians mistake their aim, 289. The pope's proposal rejected by the senate, 291. The French ambassador ordered to quit Venice, and the Venetian ambassadors recalled from France and Milan, with Trivulcio's speech to the latter, 292 (C). The Venetians prepare for war, and enter into alliances, with the duke of Savoy's acceding to the league, *ib.* Proceedings for war by the opposite powers, and those of the pope, *ib.* Senate's proposals to the pope and emperor, which the latter rejects, and the former recovers the place he claimed, 293. A treaty between pope Julius and that republic, 297. The pope's equivocations with the allies, and his two grand projects, *ib.* Congress frustrated, *ib.* Edicts of that republic, shewing their distress, 298 (C). Attempt on Genoa unsuccessful, and the siege of Verona raised by Gaston de Foix, 298. The French take Bologna, with the successes of count Palice in Friuli, but the Venetian general Baillon soon robs him of his conquests, with the different accounts of this, *ib.* (D). Treaty between the pope, Ferdinand of Arragon, and the Venetians, with its intent, *ib.* Temporizing conduct of Maximilian, who desires to be a party in the league, 299. Unsuccessful attempts of the Imperialists and French on Maglia and Treviglio, *ib.* With a new magistrate chosen in Venice, *ib.* (E). Maximilian's demands rejected by that republic, with the pope's separate treaty with him, *ib.* Pope's intention of reconciling the emperor and that republic fails, 307. Death of Lewis XII. and Francis renews the treaty with the Venetians, also Henry of England's assurances, *ib.* Poll-tax in Venice for the war, with Francis's vast preparations, *ib.* Treaty between the emperor, Ferdinand of Arragon, the Swiss, and Sforza, *ib.* The pope joins their alliance, *ib.* That republic's pacific measures, and opening the university of Padua, 314. Their embassy to Selim, and its success, also a treaty with Spain, *ib.* Senate's answer to an embassy from Francis I. *ib.* Solyman succeeding to the Ottoman empire, renews the treaty of commerce with that republic, *ib.* Their fleet successful against the Barbary pyrates, 315. The republic's temporizing between Francis and Charles, with an embassy from the king of Hungary to request their assistance against Solyman, to which they agree, *ib.* Powerful factions in the senate, and their embarrassment, 318. Their final resolution, and a treaty with the emperor and other powers, *ib.* They avoid mentioning Solyman in this alliance, *ib.* (A). The duke of Urbino appointed the republic's general, *ib.* Embassy from that republic to the pope, and their reception, 320. That senate's perplexity, and a secret treaty concluded by the pope between Francis and them, 321. The senate temporizing, and not assisting Francis at the battle of Pavia, *ib.* (C). The Venetians tamper



- tamper with the emperor, and a league between the pope, Venetians, Sforza, and Peicara, against the emperor, 321. Peicara discovers the whole transaction to the emperor, who seizes on the duchy of Milan, *ib.* Perplexity in the politics of the Venetians and pope, *ib.* The senate's answer to the emperor's ambassador, 322. Proposals to the emperor for a peace, but the negotiations broken off, 326. Truce between the emperor and Francis notified to the senate, and their answer, 336. The senate guards against the Ottoman preparations, with their method for raising money, and the emperor's preparations, 337. Other difficulties which the senate have to combat, 339. Peace with Solyman, and the surrender of Napoli and Malvesia to the Turks, and the senate's pacific measures, 345. The senate determine upon a neutrality as to Hungary, and Solyman's embassy to Venice upon their satisfying for two Turkish galleys taken, 346. The emperor and Francis labour to engage that republic in a war, *ib.* Controversy between the Porte and the republic about some districts determined in favour of the latter, 348. Representation of plenipotentiaries from the pope and French king to the senate, and the doge's answer, 351. Agreement between the pope and Philip, with a peace between France and Spain, *ib.* The arsenal there burnt, and a great scarcity, 352. Selim ascending the Turkish throne, renews the treaty with that republic, *ib.* Negotiations for peace between the senate and Selim, 376; which proving ineffectual, the former determines to prosecute the war, with the dilatoriness of the Spaniards, *ib.* The Turkish fleet, under Uluzzali, decline fighting, *ib.* Turkish ambassador's speech there against Philip of Spain, \*373. How ambassadors have audience in Venice, \*376 (A). The senate's answer to this soothing speech, *ib.* Philip's assurances of friendship to the republic, *ib.* Opening of a congress there, with the debates, when the Venetians refer matters to the duke of Ferrara's decision, as do the Florentines, with its tenor, xiii. 453, which equally disgusts all parties, 454.
- Veniero, Antonio, 62d doge of Venice, his character, x. 227. First act of government exerted against his son, *ibid.* Domestic transactions, with his death and character, 228 (A).
- Francisco, the 81st doge of Venice, x. 349. Death of pope Julius, Paul IV. succeeding, with the surrender of Sienna to the Imperialists, and a truce with Philip of Spain, *ib.* Death and character of the doge, 350.
- blamed for the resolution of laying up the Christian fleet, x. 372. True cause of his conduct, and how blameable, *ibid.*
- Ventadour, duke de, viceroy of Canada, his views, and sending five Jesuits, with their arrival there, xiv. 574. Their zeal, and the divided state of the colony then, *ib.*
- Ven-ti, emperor of China, some of his wise declarations, iii. 586 (E). Reforms the court and state, 700. Promotes agriculture, and his character, *ib.* (D). Great successes in the North, treachery to his general, and murdered, 708.
- Venti, the brother of Chin-paiien, his excellent reign, iii. 710.
- Ventimiglia revolts, and is besieged in vain; however, it submits to the consuls of Genoa, who are now restored, x. 544.
- Ventimiglians revolt from Genoa, but submit, and are pardoned, x. 545.
- Ven-tsong overpowered by his eunuchs, dies of grief, iii. 714.
- the Chinese name of Tutemur (see Tutemur), ii. 413. His reign in China, and sends for the lamas from Tartary, iii. 724.
- Ven-tyen-Syang, his noble speech to Pe-yen, detained by that general, and sent to Hu pi-lay, ii. 377. Escapes from the Mungls, and made general of the new Song emperor, 378. Ill success against the Mungls, 379. More successful in Quan-tong, 380. Courted by Hu-pi-lay in vain, 385. His noble behaviour, and death, *ib.*
- Venus, a remarkable change observed in that planet after the flood, iii. 662.
- Ven-wang, or Vu-vang, an intrepid minister to the emperor Chew, iii. 638. Imprisoned by him, *ib.* His noble character, and is invited to the empire, *ib.* Founds a new dynasty, with his excellent reign, *ib.* (N). Gratitude to Chew-keng, and his death, 639.
- Vera, Don Lope de, turns Jew, and is burnt alive, v. 579 sub (H).
- Veragua province, capital and towns described, xiv. 444.
- Verazani's voyages to North America, under Francis I. but his success unknown, xiv. 567.
- Verbiest, father, a zealous missionary in China, his proposal to the emperor, iii. 565. His improvements of the observatory at Peking, 525, and on the Chinese artillery, 580. Has the oversight of the Chinese calendar, and intercedes for the Christians, 739. Attends the emperor into Tartary, 741.
- Verd, cape, when and by whom discovered, iv. 112.
- islands described, and whence so called, vi. 125. Situation and number of them, 126.
- Verdalles, Hugues de Lobenz, the 50th grand master of Malta, and contest with the knights, and death, vii. 500, 501.
- Verdun, difference between it and its bishop decided, x. 704 (A).
- Vere, Sir Francis, saves Ostend by a stratagem, xi. 463. A fresh garrison put in, and Sir Francis joins prince Maurice, *ibid.*
- Vergas, proverbial expression on that head, of the bloody council in the Netherlands, with their proceedings, xi. 406.
- Verger the nuncio, visits all the German princes, and has a conference with Luther to no purpose, xi. 147. Luther's assurance to the nuncio, who renounces the Romish church, *ib.* (I). On the nuncio's advice, a formulary for reforming the church is composed, *ib.* Embraces Luther's doctrine, and by what means, 163 (Z).
- Veri's noble behaviour at Florence, xiii. 356 (C).
- Verin's obstinate defence, but followed by a great disappointment, ix. 277.
- Verley, the Fribourgers demand satisfaction from Geneva, for the death of that canon, one of their community, with the compromise, xiv. 23. Several acquitted for his murder, *ib.*
- Vermund, the son of Viglet, succeeds Guithach as 18th king of Denmark, and his pacific character, xi. 670. His death, 671.
- Vernon's successful irruption into Savoy across Geneva lake, xiv. 28.
- Verneuil surrendered by stratagem of the constable, Stuart, earl of Buchan, ix. 143.
- Vernon takes Puerto Bello, xiv. 447. Disgraceful attempt on Carthage, 448.
- account of that admiral, xv. 309. Commands a squadron to the West-Indies, and arrival there, *ibid.* Sends Waterhouse to Lagaira, where he miscarries, *ib.* Supply of soldiers from Jamaica, and has a discretionary power, 310. His orders for attacking Porto-Bello, clear, *ib.* Takes Iron-castle, 311. Articles of capitulation for Gloria-castle and Jeronimo, *ib.* His wife conduct, *ibid.* Boscawen a volunteer in his squadron, and gets the South-sea company's factors released from Panama, *ib.* His great popularity, and Newcastle's letter to him for discretionary powers, 312. Returns to Jamaica, and bitter complaint for want of support, *ib.* Resolutions of the British council hereupon, *ib.* Bombards Carthage, 313. Takes and demolishes fort Lorenzo at the mouth of the Chagre, *ibid.* Returns to Jamaica, *ib.* Success of his cruizers off Cuba, and is joined by the Americans, 315. Returns to Jamaica, and secures it against an apprehended descent, *ib.* Grand fleet sails from England, and part of a letter to the admiral from Cathcart, also from Wager, 316. Dissension between him and Wentworth, with the occasion, 317. His instructions to Ogle for demolishing the forts about Boca Chica, *ib.* The operations accordingly successful, 318. Wentworth's fatal indolence, and want of abilities in the engineers, *ib.* Fascine battery taken, *ib.* His invectives against Wentworth and engineers, on account of their grand battery, and a general attack resolved on, *ib.* Boca Chica castle and St. Joseph taken, with the loss of the English, 319, also Castillo Grande, *ib.* Overights committed by Wentworth, *ib.* Unaccountable languor of the troops, *ibid.* Fort St. Lazare attacked without raising a battery, and retreat with great loss to the English, 320. Various opinions about the failure of the attempt, *ib.* Dreadful havoc among the troops by diseases, and the siege abandoned, *ib.* Unfavourable conjectures about the admiral's conduct, *ib.* After demolishing all the forts taken, the fleet returns to Jamaica, 321. The loss of the English officers, and damage done the Spaniards, *ib.* Reflection on the admiral's conduct, and Newcastle's answer on his desire of being recalled, after taking Boca Chica, *ib.* Great numbers swept off by distempers, and the admiral's care, *ib.* Sends Lestock home with a squadron, *ib.* Expedition



- against St. Jago de Cuba proposed and agreed on in a council of war, 322. Opposed by Trelawny, and his opinion what, *ib.* The reasons influencing it, *ib.* The fleet fails, and gets into Walthenham (Cumberland) harbour, *ibid.* Council of war held, and their resolutions, 323. The forces land on Cuba, and the country reconnoitred; Wentworth declines the attack, with the resolution of a council of war thereon, *ib.* Animosities between the commanders and the troops, with the opinions in a council of war against the resolution taken, *ib.* The admiral reconnoitres the harbour, and satisfied about the impossibility of entering it, shews a letter from Wager about a reinforcement, &c. Expedition is laid aside, *ib.* The transports arrive at Jamaica, while the admiral cruises off Hispaniola, *ib.* Reflection on the miscarriage of this expedition, *ib.* Loss of the English, and a reinforcement sent to Jamaica, with a letter from the duke of Newcastle, recommending unanimity, 325. Council of war held, and two schemes of operation proposed, *ib.* Altercations hereupon, and an expedition undertaken against Panama, 326, which miscarries, and by what means, *ib.* Returns home with Wentworth, 327
- Verona taken by the Venetians, x. 230. Reception of an embassy from it at Venice, and the doge's answer on their entreating protection, 231. A tumult at Sabenica, and among the Forlians, *ib.* Restored to the Venetians, ix. 206. Commotions there appeased, 214
- Vervins, the peace between France and Spain, with an account of it, viii. 278. Negotiation between Henry and Philip appointed there, x. 127. The pope's mediation, and peace concluded there, *ib.* Peace between Spain and France, notwithstanding the remonstrances of the states and queen Elizabeth, xi. 448
- Vespers, Sicilian, in which a general massacre of the French happens in Sicily, ix. 70
- Vesuvius eruption, x. 517
- Vessels, isle, its harbour and fort, xv. 24
- Veterani, the Imperialists under him defeated by the sultan, xi. 317
- Viapau, island, its sanctuary and strength, iv. 119. Brave defence of its king, *ib.*
- Vicar of the empire in Italy appointed, xi. 9. Of the German empire, xv. 419, 431. Those of different houses, 432
- Grand, his notice to all the parishes of Geneva, xiv. 24
- Vicariate of the count of Savoy revoked by the emperor, xiv. 6
- Vicenza, council, why appointed there, x. 85
- recovered by the Venetians, x. 268
- John of, an eminent preacher, his vast influence in Bologna, xiii. 578, with his laudable use of it for reformation of manners, &c. and he gives sentence for the city against their bishop, *ib.*
- Viceroy, in South America, his authority, what, xiv. 445. How inconvenient to the people, *ib.* His appointment and perquisites, *ib.*
- Viceroy in China, their power, office, &c. iv. 578. Great oppressors of the subjects, 581
- Vico, the key of Pisa, besieged by the Florentines, xiii. 366. Still holds out, 367. Surrenders, 368
- Victor III. or Desiderius, after refusing, is forced to accept of the pontificate, ix. 573. Laying aside the pontifical habit, he returns to Cassino, but prevailed upon to resume it, goes to Rome, and is consecrated, *ib.* Sends an army into Africa against the Saracens, which is very successful, and holds a council at Benevento, *ib.* Dies, 599. The antipope dying, his party chuse a successor, 601
- Amadeus I. succeeds his father Charles Emanuel, duke of Savoy, who wisely agrees to the treaty of Quevasque, and the places given to the French, xiv. 132. He assumes the title of king of Cyprus, and the Venetians disgusted; he joins the French under Crequi, and contributes greatly to their victory of Tornavento over the Spaniards; and after defeating Don Martin de Arragon, dies, with his character, *ib.*
- Victor Amadeus II. succeeds his father Charles Emanuel II. duke of Savoy, who changes his mind about an Infanta of Portugal, and marries Anna Maria of Orleans by Henrietta of England, xiv. 134. He persecutes the Vaudois, and enters into the grand alliance, by a secret article of which they are restored to their rights, *ib.* Success of the French against him, upon which he enters into secret connexions with France, and an advantageous treaty concluded, *ib.* New contract for driving the Imperialists out of Italy, and though declared generalissimo of France and Spain, on prince Eugene's penetrating into Italy, he secretly negotiates with the allies, *ibid.* Why he arrests the ambassadors of France and Spain, *ibid.* Lewis's laconick letter to him, and the occasion, with the duke's unparalleled firmness, *ibid.* Situation at the conferences of Gertruydenburg, and treaty of Utrecht, 136. All parties agree to aggrandize him, and the kingdom of Sicily ceded to him by Spain, &c. also his quarrel with the clergy there, *ib.* How he resigns the title of Sicily for that of Sardinia, *ib.* Forms a new code for his dominions, 137. How he tampers to remount the throne, but is arrested, &c. by his son, and dies, with his character, *ib.*
- Victoria, the chief fortress in Amboyna, with its strength and garrison, iv. 488
- Vido, duke of Spoleto, claims the kingdom of Italy, ix. 531. Who entirely defeats Berengarius at Bressa, the latter retreating into Germany, *ib.*
- or Guido, crowned emperor at Rome, by pope Stephen, ix. 531. Abdicates the archbishopric of Milan, which the emperor confers on one Godfrey, a deacon, who is rejected by the citizens, and Atto consecrated without the emperor's authority, 563; but obliged to abdicate, and Godfrey excommunicated, and the emperor cited before the pope, for opposing his decrees, &c. *ib.* but has no effect, the pope dying soon after, *ib.*
- Vienna, in Austria, a council holden there against the Jews, v. 569
- capital of Upper Austria, xv. 473. Two treaties concluded there, 566. Designs of introducing the pretender, 567. Second treaty with the emperor, and terms, 570
- Vienne, in Dauphiny, a decree of the council there against the Jews, v. 561 and notes. Suppresses the Templars, ix. 78
- Vigar Spache, Swedish law abridged by him, xii. 226
- Viglet, son of Roric Slingibond I. succeeds as 16th king of Denmark, with his long pacific reign, xi. 670
- Vignacourt, Alof de, the 52d grand master of Malthe, vii. 501. Ravages the isle of Lango, and a sedition raised against him, 502. Forced to submit to the pope's encroachments, *ib.* Reception of Francisco Ottoman, 503. His death, *ib.*
- Adrian, the 61st grand master of Malthe, vii. 518. Magnificent reception of his nephew, *ib.* His death, 519
- Vigur Turks, in West Tartary, ii. 126. Their learning, 127
- Vigurs, or Oygurs, a tribe of the Karasman Usbecks, ii. 719
- their country described, ii. 460
- desert, ii. 460. Destroyed by Isfandiar Khan, and long quarrel with the Usbecks and Turkmans, ii. 739
- Vi-hia, a bloody and debauched empress of China, iii. 683 (I).
- Vilan, isle of St. where situated, iv. 267
- Vilca Pompa mountains, where, xiv. 357
- Vilchoma, the high priest, sent with the Inca's brother to dispose Chili for receiving Almagro, xiv. 308
- Vilhena, Manuel de, the 64th grand master of Malthe, completes the fortifications of it, and summons the whole order to war against the Turks, vii. 524. Defeats their designs, and his answer to the Turkish admiral's letter, 525. A truce concluded with the Porte, and the articles of it, *ib.* Opposed by the captain Basha, he receives the pope's presents, and thanks him for his zeal, 526
- Villa Nova, Thomas de, canonized in favour of the Spaniards, x. 155
- Viciosa battle, viii. 515. xi. 345
- Rica, colony founded there by Cortez, xiv. 189 (F). When founded, 192. Blunders of authors corrected, *ibid.* Founded by Valdivia, and where situated, 321. Victory and barbarity of the Chilians there, against the Spaniards, with reflections thereon, 324
- Villaret, William de, the 23d grand master of Malthe, vii. 391. Obtains large grants from the pope, &c. and projects the conquest of Rhodes, *ib.* His death, *ib.*
- Foulk de, the 24th grand master of Malthe, his voyage to France, conference with the king and the pope, vii. 392. Project for reducing of Rhodes approved, and gets a croisade to be proclaimed; sails back with a fleet to Cyprus, and denied the investiture of Rhodes, he lands on that island, *ib.* and besieges the capital, repels the Saracens, and he takes both city and island, 393; and introduces luxury among the knights, and deposed, 395. Summoned before the pope, is restored, with his abbas and death, *ibid.*



- Villars, the successes in Germany under him, who defeats the prince of Baden at Friedlingen, ix. 483. Successes on the Rhine under him and the duke of Bavaria, *ib.* Fine campaign on the Moselle, 487. Further operations after Marlborough's return to the Netherlands, with his character as a general, 488. Prodigious army in Flanders under him, who marches with Boufflers to cover Mons, 493. Glorious campaign in Flanders, 498. By a feint forces the lines of Denain, and makes a terrible slaughter, 504. Takes Keiserlautern, Wolfstein, and Landau, 509. Forces Eugene's lines and Vaubonne's camp near Friburg, also this last city taken, *ib.* How Lewis XIV. is the main support of the Germanic liberties, in three treaties, *ib.* and the particular conditions signed by Eugene and him, with his peace proclaimed at Paris, 510. Reflections on the favourable terms Lewis obtained, and the little advantage procured by the war, *ib.* Attacks the prince of Baden on his march, who gets to Stauffen, xi. 325. Notwithstanding his repulse from the prince of Baden's lines at Stollhoffen, joins the elector of Bavaria by the Black-forest at Duttling, 326. Strong reinforcement sent by him to the elector of Bavaria, 332. Successes from the river Motar to Spirebach, 335. Loses the battle of Malplaquet, 343. Takes Marchienne and Douay, he possesses Queverain and Quefroi, with the Imperial magazines and artillery; so that in every attempt Eugene is foiled by him, 351. Takes Bouchaine, and all the allies conquests gained in three campaigns, *ib.* Why recalled from Italy, by the king of Sardinia's means, and death, at Turin, xiv. 139.
- Villebon, M. de, commander of Acadia, how he escapes in a canoe from two English pirates, but his ship, &c. taken, xiv. 637. Project for driving the English out of Canada encouraged by the French court, *ibid.* Repossesses Port Royal in Acadia, 644. Taken prisoner by the English, who sail for Beaubassin, with the transactions there, 663.
- Villebride, Peter de, the 17th grand master of Malta, taken prisoner by the Turcomans, and his death, vii. 388.
- Villepagnon brings news of the Turks armament against Malta, vii. 461. His advice rejected by D'Omedes, *ib.* Also by the grand master, and sent to defend the capital, 463. Discovers the grand master's treachery, 468. Sent prisoner to Genoa, *ib.*
- Villena sent to Arragon, where he negotiates instead of the king's business, a protection for himself, viii. 93.
- Villeneuve, Helion de, grand master of Malta, holds two chapters of the order, vii. 396. Reforms some disorders, 397. Answer to the pope's letter, publick works, and death, 398.
- Villeroy, Mr. sent to settle the time and place for conferences on a general peace, ix. 304. Retires before Marlborough, with the consequences, 484. The French totally defeated under him, 487. Consequences to the allies, and reduces Dixmuyde and Deynse, xi. 317. Death and character, ix. 358.
- Villiers, John de, the 21st grand master of Malta, loses the city of Tripoli, vii. 389. Applies to the pope for help. Resumes the duties of the order, sends galleys on the cruise, *ib.* and makes new regulations, 391. His death, *ib.*
- Philip de L'Isle Adam, the 42d and last grand master of Rhodes, betrayed by Amarald, vii. 430. His arrival at Rhodes, and artful answer to Solyman's embassy, *ib.* Brave answer to his threatening letter, 431. Preparations against the siege of his capital, 432. Cartel from Solyman, 433. Refuses to treat about a surrender, 440. Surrender and reception from Solyman, and pious answer to his generous offers, 442. Embarks for Candia, *ib.* Resentment against the Genoese, *ib.* Sails for Italy, and obtains a bull from the pope, 443. Reception at Messina, *ib.* Noble speech at the acquittal of the knights, and a plague invades his camp, 444. Sails to Civita Vecchia, and the order settled at Viterbo, *ib.* Treats with the emperor Charles V. about the island of Malta, 445. Voyage to England, 447. Embarks and sails for Malta, and takes possession of it, 449. Their grand procession, 450. Grief for the miscarriage of Mondon, 451, and about the choice of a Maltese bilhop, *ib.* His fleet joins that of the emperor against the Turks, with their success against Coron, 452. Second successful expedition against them, *ib.* Rectifies sundry abuses at home, tumult from two duellers, with his death and character, 453.
- Viragrez, his kind reception among the Papoas, iv. 158. Converts many of them, 159.
- Vincent I. succeeds his father William, duke of Mantua; his character, and instituting the order of the Precious blood, xiv. 115. His death and issue, *ib.*
- II. succeeds his brother Ferdinand, duke of Mantua, and dies without issue, the male line in the eldest branch failing in him, xiv. 116.
- Vincent, St. captaincy, and capital in Brasil described, xiv. 479. Also its gold mines, *ib.*
- St. a neutral island described, vi. 129. xv. 217. By the treaty of Paris ceded to Great Britain, 218. Its soil and inhabitants, with an attempt of the English to settle it, which miscarries, *ib.*
- Vineam Domini Sabbaoth, bull so called, want, x. 160. Three preliminaries settled by the king's commissaries, and the bull accepted by the Sorbonne and parliament, though the dispute is not terminated, *ib.*
- Vingurla, a sea-port in Vizapur, plundered by the rajah, ii. 140.
- Vintain, an English settlement near the Gambia described, vii. 72.
- Violante, her intrigues at the court of Arragon, vii. 16 (H).
- Violante, king James's sister, married to king Charles the 11d's son, Robert duke of Calabria, x. 452.
- daughter to Galeazzo, married with Lionel, duke of Clarence, her dowry, and splendid nuptials, xiv. 79.
- the king of Jerusalem's daughter, promised in marriage to the emperor, xiii. 572. Who marries her, *ib.*
- Virachoca, son of inca Yahuarhuacac, his behaviour at his father's quitting Cuzco on news of a revolt in the provinces, xiv. 394. Pathetic speech to the inca, *ib.* Effect on his curacas and soldiers, who join the prince, *ib.* Marches in great haste to Cuzco, and joyfully received, is enabled to seek the enemy, 395. Unexpected good fortune for defence of Cuzco, what, *ib.* Marches towards Apurimac river, and the wise arrangement of his troops, *ib.* His proposals to the Charcas, why rejected, *ib.* Defeats them with great slaughter, with their principal officer Honchuocullo, and many others taken, *ib.* His humanity after the battle, *ib.* Sends three express's with the news, pursues the enemy, and treats the stragglers kindly, with the happy effects by the provinces of Charcas submitting, 396. Public entry into Cuzco, joyful reception by all ranks, and his piety, *ib.* How received by his father, *ib.* and raised to the throne as 8th inca in his stead, *ib.* Erects a temple on the spot where he had the vision, representing all its circumstances, *ib.* Also makes a picture reflecting on his father, 397, yet establishes peace, rewards his soldiers and the faithful Quenoas, *ib.* Visits the provinces, and his wise regulations, *ib.* Determines on remote conquests to be made under the command of his brother Pahuac, and his success, *ib.* The extent of his dominions, what, *ib.* Undertakes an expedition in person to the north, leaving his brother regent, *ib.* The people submit, and he builds a fine canal of vast extent through the Rucanes country, 398. Also a more magnificent aqueduct through Contisuyu provinces, *ib.* He makes another progress, and its views, *ib.* Arrives at Toracopa, and receives an embassy from the kingdom of Tucuman, and their speech, *ib.* Presents of the Tucuman ambassadors to him, *ib.* Their gracious reception, and their first intimation of Chili to the inca, *ibid.* Receives advice of Huncuuallo's flight, *ib.* Measures failing to stop the fugitives from Charcas, he sends his brother among them to know their grievances, 399. The good effects hereof, and he dies, *ibid.* Is reputed author of a remarkable prophecy, and what, *ib.* Looked on as an oracle, and a memorable observation by him about educating children, *ib.* La Vega's account of his reign, and of his body, which he saw, as also those of the other incas, *ib.* (F).
- Virahoca, the great god of the Peruvians, xiv. 305.
- Virats, a Turkish tribe, where seated, ii. 125.
- Virgil's birth-place, where, xiv. 3.
- Virgin, her famous chapel how transported from Palestine, ix. 652.
- Virgin islands, where, and by whom discovered, xiv. 145. Account of them, xv. 237, 363.
- monastery in Venice burnt, with the loss, x. 219.
- Virginia companies of London and Bristol procure a patent for settling colonies there, xiv. 487. New patent obtained, and lord Delawar made governor, 488. Flourishing state, and by whose means, xv. 365. Negroes first imported by a Dutch ship, *ib.* Account of a conspiracy by its natives, *ib.* Discovered, the murders and damage they committed, and the retaliation, *ib.* Another conspiracy, and the occasion, 366. The company dissolved by Charles I. and the government in their stead, what, *ib.* Why complained of, *ib.* How reduced to the power of the parliament, 367. Conspiracy of the republicans there discovered, *ib.* Measures for preventing the like neglected, 368. Navigation act enforced with rigour, and the bad effects, also their



- their neglect of orders from England, and the damage thereby done by the Dutch, *ib.* Complaints of the colony, what, but meet with no redress from England, *ib.* Also those of the Indians, *ib.* Combination for destroying tobacco-plants, and several tried and executed, 371. Dreadful storm there, and infectious distemper, 374. Another storm, 375. Arrangement as a fine-cure and salary, with the appointment of a deputy, *ib.* Complaints without redress, *ib.* Account of its ancient inhabitants from a domestic of Sir Walter Raleigh, 376 & seq. Kind reception of the English, with the natives dress, manners, and weapons, *ib.* Women, their shape and dress, 377. Their use of characters, and surprising art in excavating wood for a canoe, *ib.* Dexterity of men and women in fishing, and various methods, *ib.* Manner of cookery on wooden gridirons and clay-pots, *ib.* Their moderate repasts and ordinary food, what, *ib.* Their festivities and ceremonies at these, with the manner of anniversary jubilees by virgins, 378. Resemblance between them and the Floridians, with their dwellings, temples, and idols, *ib.* Embowelling and anatomising their dead, and art of covering them with skins, *ib.* Priests habitation and employment, with other points of religion, *ib.* Constitution and population of the colony, with the reason for scarcity of towns, *ib.* Its tobacco, and other trade, with the number of its inhabitants, *ib.*
- Virginians, their bravery in an action with the French and Indians, *xiv.* 706
- Visajanagar, (See Bishnagar,) *iii.* 135
- Viscimir succeeds his uncle Lechus duke of Poland, *xii.* 442. Fabulous account of battles between him and the monarch of Denmark, *ib.*
- Visconti restored in Milan through Grunstein, a German officer, *xiv.* 69. Their danger from the confederates, but they recover, *ib.* Their distresses, but set at liberty by the emperor through Castruccio's means, 71. Infamy of the emperor in this affair, *ib.* Family account of them, *ib.*
- Otho, put in possession of the archbishopric of Milan, *ix.* 646. Purchases a peace with the holy see, 678. A letter supposed to be his, dropt in the consistory, 679 (I). Makes himself master of Bologna, with a league formed against him upon threatening Florence, *xi.* 50; but is reconciled to the pope, and the terms, *ib.*
- troops in Italy gain a victory over the confederates, their chief officers being taken prisoners, *ix.* 680
- Galeazzo, his marriage with a daughter of Este, and magnificent entertainment at Parma. *xiii.* 612
- surprises Bergamo, *xiii.* 612. Reconciled with Scotti of Placentia, 614. Entrenchments at Bitonto forced by Montemar, 652
- Barnabo, succeeds Galeazzo II. in Milan, with his history and character, *xiv.* 80. Confederacy against him, and peace concluded, *ib.* Though he quits Bologna, he purchases Reggio, *ib.* His buildings and bridges, with the marriage of his daughters into great families, *ib.* Besieges Bologna, but defeated by Malatesta, *xi.* 55. Renews the war against the pope, but is fain to sue for peace, 58. Ambition from his success, and repulse from Mantua wantonly besieged, and a peace concluded, *x.* 228. Creates Malatesta, generalissimo, 237. Prevailed on to assist Lucca, 239. Makes himself master of Milan, and other towns in Lombardy for Lewis, and besieging Genoa, is obliged to relinquish it, *xi.* 33
- John, to prevent a civil war has the government of Genoa conferred on him, with his present of a curious machine, *x.* 560. Is deposed, sent to castle Tritici, and poisoned, with his character, *xiv.* 82
- John, some account of that archbishop of Milan, *xiv.* 72. Negotiation between him and the legate, about Bologna, 77. Accommodation concluded with the pope, *ib.* His management with regard to the pope, and the consequences, *ib.* New confederacy against him from his successes baffled, with his death, and one particular more of his character, *ib.* His successors, and the distribution of his territories, by lot, among his three nephews, 78
- Marc, account of him, and his character, *xiv.* 72. Successes as general of the Germans, and indignation at Azzo, *ib.* Views upon Milan, and strangled by his nephew's body guards, and John, king of Bohemia, enters Italy, 73
- Matthew II. his infamous character, and death by poison, with the mother's cursing the two brothers all her lifetime, *xiv.* 78
- Visconti, Hektor, received into Milan, but the commandant of the castle holds out, *xiv.* 90. Morally wounded at the siege of Monza, dies, and his character, 91
- Viseo, Henry, duke of, to whom we owe the first discoveries in navigation, some account of him, *viii.* 440 (E)
- Young, for a conspiracy against king Juan of Portugal, slain by him, *viii.* 448
- his secretary, treachery of that bishop, and reception at Rome, *viii.* 475
- Visigoths in Spain, the foundation of their kingdom, *vii.* 527. Zealous Arians, *ib.* Defeated by the Franks, 530. Defeat them again, and conquer their provinces, 531. The end of their monarchy, 538. The cause of it discussed, 541. Their history from king Riccard to the subversion of their monarchy by the Moors, 486. Their religion during their continuance in Spain, *ib.* (R). The several branches of their government, 487. Extent of the prerogative of their elective kings, 488. Laws and administration of justice, *ib.* Populousness, wealth, and splendor, *ib.* (I). Plan of the sequel of their history, and recovery of their dominions, 489. The revival of the Christian powers in Asturia and Oviedo, 490
- Vitnow, Vitnum, or Witnum, the second Indian god, *iii.* 196. His origin, office, wives, &c. 197. Ten transmissions, *ib.* Sects belonging to him, 218
- Vitruvius, 24th doge of Venice, when ill, vows a monastic life, which he unwillingly performs, *x.* 192
- Vitard preaches Christianity among the first in Sweden, *xii.* 227. Martyred, *ib.*
- Viteleschi arrested, and his death, with a reflection on this incident, as related by Machiavel, *xiii.* 397
- Vitelli, the Florentine general, his conduct, *xiii.* 453. Was in the Pisan under him, who rises from the siege of Pisa, for which he is tortured and beheaded at Florence, 455
- Vitenus, or Ucienus, on the death of Wostalk, the last of the Ducal family, is chosen duke of Lithuania, *xii.* 631. His unsuccessful expedition into Russia and Prussia, with his death and character, *ib.*
- , at Rimuntus's nomination, who retires into a monastery, is chosen duke of Lithuania, *xii.* 634. His character, and Rimuntus's answer to a question put to him about a successor, *ib.* His irruption into Poland, and defeat by Lechus the Black, *ib.* Successful depredations assisted by the Teutonic knights, with his invasion of Prussia, and ravages there, 635 (D). Successful invasion of Cujavia, *ib.* The mutual incursions of the Teutonic knights, and Vitenus; the latter defeats Casimir, duke of Prussia, who is slain, and after several successful ravages, he is assassinated by Gediminus, 636
- Vitoldus, son of Kejstutius, his escape into Prussia, *xii.* 643. Made great duke of Lithuania by Jagello, in preference of Skirgello, *ib.* Character and successes, *ib.* His project of independency discovered by Jagello, and frustrated, his death and character, 645
- Vitowda comes to an accommodation with Uladislav IV. who gives him the government of Lithuania, *xii.* 477
- Vitzilocus chosen second king of Mexico, in room of his father, *xiv.* 363
- Vitzlipuzli, a Mexican god, *xiv.* 361—367. Command to fix their abode, and where, 361. Adoration of prisoners before immolation, 367
- Vivero, don Alonso, at a consultation of the friends of the grand master Alvaro, thrown from the top of a tower, and his brains dashed out, *viii.* 90
- Vizagapatam, an English settlement in India, *iv.* 394
- Viziapur, when taken by the Great Mogul, *iii.* 117 (E).
- kingdom described, *iii.* 139. Its coasts divided between the Indians and Portuguese, *ib.* Also its cities and monarchs, 141. Disturbances raised in that kingdom, *ib.*
- city, kingdom, and young monarch subdued by Aurengzib, *iii.* 142. The power of the lords curtailed, *ibid.*
- Vizier, Grand, defeated near St. Godard by Montecuculi, *xi.* 282 (G). The Turks upon this conclude a peace, and the Hungarians murmur, but at last ratify the treaty, 283. Sends propositions of peace, but those made by the emperor rejected, 305. Besieges Peterwaradin with ninety thousand men, but obliged to quit it, 315. Marches against the Czar Peter, with a vast army, *xii.* 393. Proposals made by him to Charles XII. for his return home, with the king's answer, and the vizier uses all means to make Charles XII. weary of his situation, 394. Why deposed, *xiii.* 225
- Vogesus, governor of Bohemia, *xv.* 451



Vohit-fang-hombe, a province of Madagascar, described, vi. 93  
 Vohitsbang, a province of Madagascar, described, vi. 91.  
 Natives, their religion, and inroads, 92  
 Voidilus, Jagello's favourite, his intrigues, who was raised from a baker to be his prime minister, xii. 642  
 Vo-kyu's reign in China, iii. 686  
 Volante, Juan, swims with his colours from the Mexicans, xiv. 259  
 Volcano near Kamtskatka, xiii. 36  
 — in Guadeloupe, xv. 230  
 Volhinia, palatine, his fulsome flattery in a speech, who is made general of the army by Augustus, xii. 559. He proceeds with his army towards Cracow, the possession of which he gains by bribing the governor, ib.  
 Volterra described, xiii. 272. Tumult there, and the occasion, 424  
 Volterrans, how they revolt from Florence through one Justus, who is made their lord, xiii. 380. Commissioners sent from Florence to treat with them, and their success, 381. Justus murdered, and the Florentines re-possess themselves of Volterra, with the misery of that people, ib.  
 Vou-ti, emperor of China, his reign, iii. 708  
 Voyages made by the Spaniards for discovering America, xiv. 143  
 Vu-chang-fu, the capital of Hu-quang, described, iii. 542. Its opulence, ib. Noble defence against the Mungls, ii. 358. Besieged by Kublay, 360  
 Vu-hew, emperor of China, governed by his cruel mother, Vu-shi, iii. 713  
 Vulcan's island discovered in the South-sea, v. 11  
 Vu-shi, a bloody empress of China, her cruelties; persecutes the Christians, but forced to recal the lawful heir, poisons the eldest son, and crowns her third son, iii. 712. Put to death, 713  
 Vushtanga, Wali of Georgia, his just revenge against Husseyn Shah, ii. 658  
 Vu-ti, emperor of China, his mild reign, and fondness for impostors, iii. 701 (E). Great conquests, and death, ib.  
 — II. and thirteenth of the seventh dynasty, his success against Fu-kyen, iii. 707. Murdered by his wife, ib.  
 — III. the second of the ninth dynasty, iii. 709  
 — excellent law against placemen, and fatal promotion of Syau-y-wen, iii. 709  
 Vuting, emperor of China, his excellent reign, iii. 686  
 Vu-tsung, the Chinese name of Hay-shan Khan, ii. 399. (See the rest under Hay-shan). His mild reign in China, iii. 724  
 — of the twenty-first dynasty, his unhappy reign, iii. 727  
 — emperor of China, revives some excellent laws, and suppresses the Christians, iii. 715  
 Vu-ye, emperor of China, iii. 687

W.

**W**ABASH river, its extent, xv. 47. Their different tribes, what, ib.  
 Wa-che, Jenghiz Khan's brother, governs during his absence, and reception of the princess Tyau-li, ii. 325  
 Wa-chin undermines the brave Yelu, ii. 337  
 Wadi'l Kora, a Jewish town, reduced by Mohammed, i. 74  
 Wager, on the king of Denmark's earnest solicitations, an English fleet under him appears in the Baltic, xiii. 262. Posts himself so as to prevent the Russian ships from going out, with the empress's resolution after all to give the English admiral provisions and necessaries, 263. Conveys Don Carlos to Italy, 650  
 Wageren province, account of, xi. 654  
 Waghenaer sent ambassador to Japan, iv. 442 (G).  
 Wahshudan seizes on Adherbijan, i. 553. Horrid cruelty to his nephews and their mother, 555  
 Waidians, a sect of Karejites, whence so called, i. 272  
 Waigatz Island and Straits, xiii. 46  
 Waite, Sir Nicholas, his bad government in India, iv. 326  
 Wake, difference of Geneva with Savoy made up by that English ambassador to the duke, xiv. 44  
 Walchenberg, his imprudent claim to the whole Guinea-coast irritates the English, xi. 595  
 Wala siege raised by the Mungls, ii. 315  
 Waldemar of Denmark, (see Valdemar) embassy from him, with his remarkable letter on the pope's answer to him, ix. 689. Sends an army against the Viconti, with the emperor's bull against them in favour of the pope; concludes  
 MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

peace between Trinacria and Naples, and labours to extirpate heresy, ib.  
 Waldemar II. of Denmark, with his eldest son, made prisoner by the count of Schwerin, rejects the terms of his enemy, x. 671. Disturbances in Denmark, and the prisoners released on paying a ransom, ib. Stript of his conquests, xv. 514. Oath he is obliged to swear before his release, ib. After a bloody struggle defeated, 515  
 — son of Birger Jerl, and nephew of Eric the Stammerer, by the intrigues of Ivar Bia, is elected sovereign of Sweden, xii. 233. His father Jerl is dissatisfied, but upon the diet's refusing himself, the young king is crowned, and marries Sophia, king Eric's daughter, ib. Jealousies between the king and his brothers, 234. Benvit, the younger brother, surrenders Finland to end disputes, ib. The two other brothers Magnus and Eric retire to Denmark, ib. They return, and defeating a detachment from the king's army, take him prisoner, and a particular treaty concluded, ib. The Danish auxiliaries sent back commit horrid ravages, and the occasion, 235. Magnus makes reprisals, but retreats before the enemy, ib. In conjunction with Eric of Denmark, renews the war against his brothers, but defeated, and Eric slain, ib. (E). A treaty struck up, and Waldemar abdicating the crown retires to Denmark, ib.  
 — the imposture of the pretended margrave of Brandenburg revived, with the disturbances occasioned thereby, xi. 49. Accommodation between the princes concerned and the terms, ib. The emperor, who had protected this pretender, renounces him publicly in the diet at Sprengberg, 50  
 Waldenses, proceedings against, ix. 691  
 — described, and the origin of their name, xiv. 124  
 Wali of Lorestan, (see Lorestan) ii. 656, & alibi passim.  
 Walid II. Al, or Ebn Yezid, proclaimed khalif, a debauched prince, i. 371. Binds the army to his person, and the caliphate to his two sons, ib. Severity to the patriarch of Damascus, but assaulted by his army, 372. Assassinated, and his character, ib. Great commotions after his death, 374. His two sons murdered by Ibrahim, ib.  
 Walpot, Henry, first grand master of the Teutonic knights, and a series down to Albert of Brandenburg the last, xii. 657  
 Walrond, Humphrey, president of the Barbadoes council, his wife administration, xv. 181  
 — deputy-governor of Barbadoes, prosecuted, xv. 184  
 Walter, count of Brenna, claiming Tarento by Albinia, Tancred's daughter, the pope grants it him, x. 424. Conquers great part of Puglia, ib. The chancellor makes peace with Marcoaldus for checking the count's progress, with the convention thereon, and why it never took effect, ib. He is excommunicated by the pope, and the count defeats Diepoldus, 425. Being attacked by surprise is taken prisoner, and soon after dies of his wounds, 426  
 Walstein is dismissed, and the greatest part of his army disbanded, xi. 221. xii. 325. In room of Tilly is recalled, and declared generalissimo by the emperor, and with an absolute power, xi. 227. Storms Prague, and reduces all Bohemia, joining Maximilian of Bavaria, whom that general thwarts in the operations of the campaign, 229. Joins Pappenheim in Misnia, 230. Retires into Bohemia, whom the Swedes follow, 231. Defeats Duval in Silesia, and takes Frankfort on the Oder, &c. 233. How this officer traverses the designs of his master, with regard to the Spanish troops under Feria, ib. With his ambitious designs, 235. Accusations laid against him, ib. (Q). His declaration to his principal officers at Pilsen, fifty two of whom take an oath to follow his fortune, and defend his life, 236. This combination discovered by one of the subscribers, and he is put to the ban, ib. He retires to Egra, where, upon the discovery of his intention to join the Swedes, he and his friends are most barbarously assassinated by Gordon, Lesley, and Butler, with his character, ib. viii. 297. xii. 337 (A).  
 Wallestein's chimerical ambition and design on Stralsund, which Gustavus relieves with a body of Scots, xii. 322. Dismissed, and count Tilly commands the Imperialists, 325. He has the command of the Imperialists, and brings forty thousand men with him out of the hereditary dominions, 330. Breaks up and marches towards Misnia, 333. Progress stopt by duke Bernard, 336  
 Walloons refuse to accede to the treaty of Utrecht, and the duke of Parma forms an alliance with them, xi. 423. Spanish forces again admitted by them, 427  
 Wamba chosen king of the Visigoths, his solemn declining of the crown, viii. 563. Forced to accept of it, ib. Sends count Paul, general against the rebels, 564. Conquers  
 8 F Navarre,



- Navarre and Catalonia, and forces the Pyrenees, 565. Invests Narbonne, *ib.* Takes it by storm, *ib.* Clemency to the rebel Paul, 567. Enters Toledo in triumph, *ib.* Summons two councils, 568 (A). Settles the boundary of his dioceses, *ib.* (B). Defeats the Saracens at sea, *ib.* Dethroned by the rebel Erviga, 569 (C). Banishes the Jews out of Languedoc, v. 522
- Wampum-belt, what, xiv. 584 (A)
- Wanaprastha, a strict sect of Brammans in India, iii. 218
- Wandalia left unpeopled through migration, xv. 508. Its eastern parts seized by the Wendi, *ib.*
- history of, xv. 507
- Wang, an high dignity among the Mungls, ii. 414
- Wan-gan, the famous palace built by Okray, ii. 346 (V).
- Wan-chan, a strenuous opposer of Yen-tiemur, ii. 411. Put to death by him, 412
- Wang Lyang-ching, general of Ali-puko, ii. 362. Defeated and slain, *ib.*
- Wangen, account of, xv. 444
- Wang-ho, a river of Tartary and China, ii. 244. A project for lengthening its course, 420. Causes a great revolt, 421
- Wan-gu made inspector of history in China, ii. 363
- Wang-shi-hyen promoted by the Mungls, ii. 347
- Wang-sun, the great astronomer, dies, ii. 384
- Wansleb, Michael, sent into Abyssinia, vi. 250 (P); but cannot get entrance into it, and turns monk, *ib.*
- Wan-yen, governor of Yen-king, his last message to the Kin emperor, and poisons him, ii. 237
- Wappo, on the Grain coast, vii. 13
- War of Al Sawik, or of the Meal, i. 54
- of the ditch, i. 60
- against Infidels, enjoined by Mahomet, i. 179
- the first day, why called wicked by the Arabs, i. 180
- a third civil one excited, which ends with the extinction of the Spanish sovereignty over the Seven Provinces, and wherein Don John gives umbrage to the States, xi. 427
- between the emperor and northern crowns, xi. 596
- Waradin, Great, surrenders to the prince of Baden, xi. 313
- Waraka Ebn Nawfal, Khadijah's uncle, embraces Mahomet's interest, i. 21
- Wardanfi, in Bukharia Proper, described, ii. 455
- Waregers, who, xiii. 87 (B). Whether they were not possibly Franks from Scandinavia, 87
- Warner, first governor of the English part of St. Christopher's, xv. 239. Flourishing state at his death, 241
- Warsaw, among other successes, reduced, xii. 525. The Swedes and Brandenburgishers take that city, which they pillage, *ib.* Seditious writings fixed up there, 566. Its citadel surrenders, without a blow, to Charles XII. 583. An interview between him and the primate, together with the treasurer, and its result, *ib.* State of affairs there, with loud complaints against the Swedes, and the primate's defence, 589. A grand council there, and the points proposed therein by the court-party, 602; and after warm debates, with some bloodshed, decrees are concluded, *ib.*
- Wartz, and his Swedish garrison in Cracow, forced to capitulate, xii. 526
- Warrels, a grievous set of pirates in Indostan, iii. 9. Their coasts dangerous, *ib.*
- Warren, his masterly manœuvre, by which Anson defeats the French fleet, xiv. 698
- Wafet, by whom built, and why so called, i. 341. A mint set up there, 343. Dirhems coined there described, 377. Seized on by Al Baridi, and driven out, 533. The town pillaged by Timur Bek, ii. 560
- Wafif, one of the caliph's assassins, promoted by Al Montaser, i. 479—481. Cut in pieces by his Turks, 485. Defeats the plundering Karmatians, 510
- Washington, major, his brave defence on the Ohio against the French, and capitulation, yet harrassed by the Indians, xiv. 703
- Wasmakin seizes on Esfahan, i. 530. Succeeds his brother in Tabrestan, 531. Dies by a fall, 562
- Wafilkon, how he revenges his father Jaropolk, xiii. 92
- Water island, in the South-sea, described, v. 8
- Wathek sent to assassinate Omar, and he confesses his crime, and turns Moslem, i. 218
- Khalif, persecutes the Jews, v. 526
- Wa-to-chi, a learned bonza among the Mungls, ii. 353. Promoted by Meng-ko, 356
- Watson, admiral, his arrival in India, destroys Angria the pirate, and fails for Bengal, iv. 372. His success, *ib.* against the Nabob, 373; against the French, 374; and his death, 375
- Wauli-hamish, her regency in Karakorom, ii. 353. Condemned, and put to death by Meng-ko, 356
- Wax-tree, in China, described, iii. 612
- Way-hi Ebn Cowhi, a learned astronomer, his observations, i. 585 *sub not.*
- Wazir, a city in Karazm, ii. 717. Taken by Ibars Khan, 722
- Wazis, in Egypt, become independent of the Khalifs, i. 605
- Weichia, in New England, what, and described, xiv. 499
- Webb, general, his gallant beating of a superior body of French, with six thousand English foot, xii. 421
- governor of the Bahamas, xv. 271
- Wedenburgh, a Dutch fort on the Gold coast, besieged by the negroes, but relieved, vi. 653
- Weil, account of it, and its religion, xv. 444
- Weist-Nouwa, a sect of Brachmans in India, iii. 216
- Weissenburg, defeat of count Palatine there, xi. 204
- account of it, xv. 455
- Weleki, in Russia, what, xiii. 8 (H).
- Welikoluk province, and its provincial town, xiii. 7
- Welling, count, arrested by the secret committee of Sweden, with the charge against him, xii. 421. A request from his daughter with regard to his life; is granted; but he dies of a fever, and his estate confiscated, *ib.*
- Wenceslaus I. governor of Bohemia, xv. 451
- II. duke of Bohemia, encourages Christianity, and fights a duel with one of his subjects, who rebelled, xv. 452. Brings an arm of St. Vitus from Germany, and is murdered by his brother, *ib.*
- IV. king of Bohemia, takes his son prisoner, who had rebelled, xv. 455. Repels an invasion of the Scythians, *ib.*
- V. king of Bohemia, xv. 456. Is crowned king of Poland, which he governs by a viceroy, and his son chosen king of Hungary, *ib.*
- VI. king of Bohemia, his neglect of government, and assassination, xv. 456. The last of the male descendants of duke Premislaus, *ib.*
- VII. king of Bohemia, his dissolute character, xv. 457. Is imprisoned, but escapes, and marries the woman who saved him, 458
- the emperor, why deposed, and succeeded by Robert of Bavaria, xiii. 362. Imprisoned a second time, he escapes and resumes the government, xv. 458. Takes no care about religion, Huss preaching boldly, and is deposed, with his joy thereon, *ib.* Though the emperor Sigismund gives Huss and Jerom a safe-guard to Constance-council, they are burnt, *ib.* The disturbances hereupon by their disciples rouse Wenceslaus, but dies, *ib.*
- duke of Saxony, xv. 465
- Wend, Al, the famous mountain in Persia, i. 249
- Wenden, people, their desperate resolution, xii. 496. xiii. 116
- circle, in Mecklenburgh, xv. 549
- Wentworth succeeds Cathcart, and his character, xv. 316
- Werdan sent to the relief of Damascus, defeated by the Moslems, i. 141. Offers terms of accommodation, but defeated by them, 144. His stratagem against Khaled, and beheaded by Derar, *ib.*
- one of Ali's assassins, his punishment, i. 275
- Wercoturie, circle, in Tobolsk province, and its chief places, xiii. 43
- Werst, Russian, what, xiii. 6 (F).
- Wert, John de, the Imperialists under him take Hermenstein, xi. 245. Some successes of his over a party, of Weymar's troops, 245
- Wertz, several victories gained by the Zealand fleet under him, xi. 412
- Weselowski, Russian resident at London, his proceedings there, and ordered to depart, xiii. 250
- West, colonel, governor of Carolina, xv. 86. His wisdom in remedying disorders, *ib.* Kyrle succeeds, but dying soon, West again appointed, *ib.*
- Westphalia, project of a league there, why it miscarries, xi. 260. The articles of that peace agreed to at length, and why, with the substance of the treaty between the emperor and France, 269
- Wetzlar, account of that city, its government and religion, xv. 440 (F).
- Weygatz passage, whether known to the ancients, iv. 89 (A). Proved to be practicable, *ib.* (B) (C).
- Wey-man made king of Korea, with his origin and rise, iii. 752 (G).



- Weymouth, captain, his voyage to Hudson's river, at first successful, but forced to quit the coast, and why, xiv. 437
- Weys, the 26th shah of Hormuz, ii. 690
- Whachit, a province of Mongolia, where sit'd, ii. 245
- Whan-chew taken by Jenghiz Khan, ii. 284
- Whan-ti, emperor of China, his fatal fondness for the eunuchs, iii. 705
- When-tiau raises a rebellion in China, iii. 715. Is proclaimed emperor, but defeated by the Imperial army, ib.
- Whang-ho river, its source, when and by whom discovered, ii. 582
- Whan-wang, emperor of China, his uneasy reign, iii. 692
- Wha-yang put to fire and sword by the Mungls, ii. 337
- Whay-gan-tu five years besieged by the rebels, but betrayed, ii. 425
- Whay-ti, emperor of China, murdered by Lyew-tsong, iii. 707
- Whay-tsong, the last emperor of the 21st dynasty and Chinese race, iii. 729. Betrayed by his general, and abandoned by his subjects, 730. His sad catastrophe, ib.
- Whay-yang-vang, emperor of China, deposed for his vices, iii. 703
- Wheatley, captain, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 175
- When-lew dethroned by Syang-ywen, iii. 709
- When-tu-hay, a zealous general of Alipuko, ii. 362. Defeated and killed, ib.
- Whetstone, admiral, his success against French privateers, xv. 296. Also destroys a ship of war, ib.
- Wheyhu, what is meant by it, ii. 389 (M).
- Whey-ke Turks, their extent, ii. 135
- Whey-ti, emperor of China, his unhappy reign, iii. 699
- II. emperor of the 7th dynasty, ruined by his ambitious empress, iii. 706. Poisoned, ib.
- Whey-tsong, emperor of China, his wars against the Lyautongers, iii. 720. Impious fondness for the sect of Tau, dethroned and banished by the Tartar monarch, 721
- Whey-wang, emperor of China, drives the Tartars out of it, iii. 693
- Whidah, king, his wars against the Dahomayans, vi. 612. Invaded by the king of Dahomay, ib. The stupid superstition of his troops, and an attempt by Testecole to restore him frustrated, ib. Forced to flee into a desert island, ib. Defeated by an army of women, and Testecole's cruel end, 614. Folly and ingratitude, ib. (D).
- Whidah, Juda, or Fida, kingdom, described, vi. 592. Rivers and dangerous harbours, ibid. The country and natives described, 593. Twenty-six provinces ibid. (C). Great markets in each of them, ibid. Vast trade carried on by the men and women, with the genius of the natives, 594. Singular modesty and civility, ibid. Commerce and industry, with their resemblance to the Chinese, 595. Servile state of their women, and of the king's concubines, ib. Their fecundity and dress, 596. Ornaments, extreme ignorance, and dexterity in reckoning, ib. Their pilfering, 597. Excessive polygamy, ibid. Divorce, and excessive power of the husbands, ib. Extreme fondness for gaming, 598. Malignity of the air, diseases, and their cures, 599. Mourning and funerals, with their religion, ib. Right notion of the deity, ibid. Idols and snake-worship, 600. Origin of it, with the massacre of some English for killing one of them, 601. Virgins how consecrated to that worship, ib. Extravagant regard for that animal, 602, and for its priests, ibid. and priestesses, 603. Their ordination and accomplishments, ib. Conjectures about their origin, 604. Their government, laws, &c. ib. Punishments for adultery, and the extent of the king's power, 605. Murder, how punished, ib. Succession to the crown, how settled, 606. The revenues of it, 608. Other services due to it, and military forces, 609. Respects paid to the king, &c. ib. Princes, ib. Eldest son, how brought up, and the climate described, 610. Product, ib. Sowing twice a year, and its animals, 611. Game, and revolutions, ib.
- Whigs all outed but Marlborough, ix. 497. The assurances given by the queen to the States-General upon this change, ib. Gualtier sent by the English ministry into France, with an account of this Abbé, and a memorial sent to Holland for a general pacification, with the queen's terms, ibid. Assurances by Gualtier from Lewis, that he would use all his influence for peace, ib.
- Whitburn, captain, his two voyages to Newfoundland, xiv. 491. His voyage, with a commission from the admiralty for examining abuses among the fishermen in Newfoundland, ibid.
- White-bird of Canada, described, xiv. 561
- Whoredom, the punishment ordained for it by the alcoran, i. 176
- Wiburg government, containing the Russian acquisitions in Carrelia, and its divisions, with the chief places, xiii. 26
- account of the city, xi. 652. Surrenders to the Czar on terms, which are broken, xiii. 220
- Wickliffe ordered to be imprisoned, is protected by several Nobles and Londoners, with the chief doctrines of which he is accused, ix. 692 (P). His followers in Germany persecuted and burnt, 693. Overtures for condemning his doctrine, 709. Doctrines condemned by the archbishop of Canterbury, and his body ordered to be dug up, 698, 709. Doctrine how introduced into Bohemia, xi. 62 (E). Doctrines, account of them, 75 (T).
- Wickliffites in England, their contempt for both popes, ix. 698
- Wielkiluki, an account of it, xiii. 119 (Z).
- Wiesnowiski elected king of Poland, in the room of John Casimir, xii. 530. He refuses the crown with tears, but is forced to acquiesce, and the primate refuses also to crown him, but is at last obliged to it, and the king's marriage with Eleonora of Austria, and its inconveniences, ibid. Treaty of friendship between the Russians and Poles renewed by Michael, xiii. 167. Sides with Augustus, is defeated by the Swedes, xii. 592. Death of that king, a good natured simple man, 531, for whose crown there are several competitors, and three parties, xiii. 170
- Wifrid, fourth count of Barcelona, cut to pieces by the populace at Narbonne, viii. 125
- fifth count of Barcelona, succeeds his father of the same name, viii. 125. Is the first who had any sovereign authority, rules with great reputation, and dies, ib.
- Wilna, description of that capital, xii. 623. Its desolation by fires, and its university, ibid. Fabulous account of its foundation, 638
- Wilton, its settlement in Carolina, xv. 14
- Willekins, admiral, his taking St. Salvador, in All-Saints-bay, and vast quantities of rich merchandise, xi. 502
- William III. count of Barcelona, succeeds his father Bernard, and slain in a tumult, viii. 124
- duke of Normandy, how he does homage to Rodolph, with an account of him, and title of duke of Aquitaine, ix. 8 (A). Conquest of England, and the share Baldwin of Flanders had in it, 29
- duke of Guienne, accepts the crown of Italy, and sets out with an army, and before passing the Alps resigns his pretensions, ix. 555
- duke of Apulia, leaves his dukedom to Roger count of Sicily, and the disputes with the pope thereupon, ix. 587
- of Sicily, besieges the pope in Benevento, who consents to a peace, but hard terms on his part, ix. 595
- III. a minor, succeeds his father Tancred in Sicily, x. 421
- Frederic, elector of Brandenburg, solicits an alliance with Sweden, and his motives, xi. 255
- count of Holland, is chosen by several princes, king of the Romans, x. 710. The empire accepted from the pope by him, xiii. 588. Crown'd at Aix la Chapelle, after which he defeats Conrad, assumes the Imperial ensigns, and is confirmed by the pope, x. 712. Hazardous accidents which this unfortunate emperor escapes, is engaged in a war with Margaret countess of Hainault, with the methods used by him to conciliate the affections of the German nobles, 713. Patronizes the league of the Hans Towns, ib. Thro' an unhappy accident slain by the Frieslanders, 714
- King, his island in the South-sea, v. 26
- Cape, where, and why so called, v. 29
- II. succeeds Henry of Orange, and is appointed to all his father's employments, ix. 549
- king, after the battle of the Boyne arrives at the Hague, and presides at the grand congress, xi. 639. Harangues at the Hague, recommending vigour and unanimity, ib. The contingents and operations settled, ib. Mis-carries in raising the siege of Namur, 640. His behaviour as monarch of Great-Britain and the Dutch stadtholder indiscriminately, 641. Instance of an infraction of treaty by that king, in arresting Boufflers against the capitulation of Namur, xiii. 220. Tenderness towards the Spanish interests in America, xv. 16. Holds a congress of the confederates at the Hague, ix. 470. Passes over to Holland to adjust the operations of the campaign, and England becomes the principal in the quarrel, 482. He dies, and his measures adopted by queen Anne, ib.



William IV. the Constant, duke of Bavaria, xv. 469

—— V. called the Young, xv. 469

—— Longsword, son of Henry the Lion, born at Winchester, and an hostage for king Richard, xv. 480

—— duke of Lüneburg, governs jointly with his elder brother Henry, who bring about a peace for the Dithmarshians, xv. 484. The government resigned to him by his brother, his acquisition of territory, and publishing the sum of the protestant doctrines; he dies, with his issue and character, *ibid.*

—— succeeds his brother Francis III. duke of Mantua, the government continuing under his uncle the cardinal, with an account of a family dispute between him and his brother Lewis Gonzaga, duke of Nevers, xiv. 115. His marriage and issue, *ib.*

—— fort, where sited, xiv. 712

—— fort, at Bengal, iv. 395. (See also Calcutta).

Williams islands discovered and described, v. 19

—— minister of Salem, his wrong-headed opinions, what, xiv. 507. Persecuted with his followers, and Providence built by them, with his character otherwise, *ib.*

Willoughby, lord, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 177. First act of an assembly, what, and he orders king Charles II. to be proclaimed, *ib.* Is confirmed governor by king Charles, *ib.* Opposed by the Barbadians, 181, yet the proposed tax, to the king, passed, *ib.* He sends colonel Farmer prisoner to England, *ib.* His death, and character of his administration, 182. Is succeeded by his brother, *ib.*

—— William, succeeds his brother as governor of Barbadoes, xv. 182. Death and character, *ib.*

Wimphen, account of its religion and government, xv. 445

Winceslaus, king of Bohemia, is elected to the Polish throne, in room of Uladisslaus III. xii. 471. Revolt against him, with the occasion; and the restoration of Uladisslaus Loctiscus, on Winceslaus's death, 472

—— war between him and the duke of Juliers, with the defeat of the former, and a reconciliation effected, xi. 58. Succeeds his father Charles IV. as emperor and king of Bohemia, 61. Why he resides at Aix la Chapelle, *ib.* His misconduct here and in Bohemia, also the ravages of the banditti, with his depraved taste, cruelty, and baseness, *ib.* How he disposes of all the rights of the empire, *ib.* Indifference about all this, with his debauchery and barbarity in Bohemia, *ib.* Besides his other excesses, contracts an intimacy with the common executioner, whom he beheads, and in what manner, 63 (F). Cruelty said to be the effects of poison; he is confined by the nobles of Bohemia, and escapes from a bath; his brother Sigismund being appointed regent, 63. He is apprehended, sent to Vienna, and kept prisoner by Albert of Austria, but escaping by means of Grundler an old fisherman, resumes his authority, with his gratitude to Grundler, *ib.* 64 (G). Interview between him and Charles of France at Rheims, with their agreement, *ib.* Marries Sophia, daughter of Stephen of Bavaria, and his extravagance still increases so as to mind nothing but his own emolument, 65. He sells the seignories and royalties of several cities and territories in Italy, *ib.* Death, 79, 166 (K).

Winchester, a national council holden there, ix. 587

Wind-hill, at the Cape of Good-Hope, described, vi. 399

Wine and strong liquors forbidden by Mahomet, i. 59. That precept eluded by the Moslems, 171. The first punishment inflicted on the transgressors, 189,—222

Winiba, or Simpa, the English fort there, vi. 672

Winsheim, account of its religion and government, xv. 445

Winslow, governor of New Plymouth, defeats the Narragansets, with the loss on both sides, xiv. 518

Winthrop chosen governor of Massachusetts, and large supplies brought over by him to New-England, xiv. 505. Their two settlements made there, what, 506

—— deputy governor of Massachusetts, why impeached, xiv. 511. Clears himself at the bar, and his noble speech on returning the bench, 512. Its good effect, *ib.*

Wirtemberg, duke, is surprised, and taken prisoner on the Rhine, ix. 472

Wirtschaft, or feast of landlord and landlady, account of its manner, xiii. 193

Wisby surrendered by Axelson to the Danish king, the regent's artful declaration, and taking an oath of allegiance to him, the better to deceive the king, xii. 122

Wises, or Sowdras, a tribe in Indostan, iii. 27. Very numerous, *ib.*

Wisht-nu, the pretended god of India, iii. 222. (See Vistnow).

Wisnar surrenders to the confederates against Sweden, xii.

409. Account of it, and the other cessions from Mecklenburg to Sweden, xv. 537, 552

Wisulujine, daughter of Wan-khan, married to Temujin, ii. 270

Wit, Mr. de, made pensionary, with his character, xi. 566.

Who proposes a negotiation for a peace with England, and a mistake of the Dutch historians on this head, 569. Coalition between France and that pensionary, with an account of erecting the Ten Provinces into a republic, a project planned by him, 592 (A). His intrigues with France, and a wild scheme of his takes the desired effect, 594. Accompanies the other deputies on board, and his reply to his friends remonstrance, 599. Universal clamour against him, *ibid.* Spirit invincible, and resources inexhaustible, 605. Repairs the frontier fortifications, and regulates the command of the army, 609. Proposal to Lewis of France, about opposing the king of England's pretensions to the sovereignty of the ocean little regarded, 610. Breaks through the crowd in the streets, and saves his life, though covered with wounds, ix. 457. His character, with his barbarous massacre, and that of his brother, in a popular tumult at the Hague, xi. 617. Natural and affecting account of this horrid transaction, 618 (A).

—— admiral de, imprisoned for misconduct in the Brasils, and a violent altercation about confining his six captains, who are forcibly released by the magistrates, of Amsterdam, xi. 554. Supercedes Tromp and Ruyter, 562. His account of the English courage in a sea-fight, and the loss, 603 & (A). Behaviour under the torture, ix. 457 (A). Both brothers cruelly torn to pieces in the streets, with the countenance supposed to have been given to the murder by Orange, *ib.* sub not.

Witch-burning spirit, in New England, breaks out, xiv. 526. It rages, and several executed, *ib.* How it abates, *ib.* and this bloody persecution totally ceases, *ib.* Reflection how all this was occasioned, 527

Witeric's conspiracy against Riccard frustrated, vii. 548 (D). Revolt and murder of Liuva, 550. Contest with the Franks, 551. His dreadful end, *ib.* (See also 578 (L)).

Witiges surrenders himself and Ravenna to Belisarius, viii. 625

Witiza's association with his father confirmed by a council, vii. 573. Gains the hearts of his subjects, *ib.* Rejects the pope's supremacy, 574. Becomes dissolute and hateful, also jealous and cruel, *ib.* Mad actions attributed to him, 575 (G). Attempts to drive him out of Barbary, *ib.* Ceuta besieged by the Saracens, 576. Their king's shameful neglect of it, *ib.* Causes a general corruption; and total defection, *ib.* Invaded by the Moors, 577

Witz, that addition in Russia explained, xiii. 102 (O).

Wittekind, king of the Saxons, his war with Charlemagne, xv. 463. Some of his successors, 464

Wittemberg's successes in Silesia, Bohemia, and Moravia, xi. 267. Takes Thabor, 269. With his garrison made prisoners contrary to capitulation, xii. 525

—— capital of Saxony, described, xv. 461

Wittert, the Dutch admiral, slain, iv. 416

Wives in Hindu burn themselves after the death of their husbands, iii. 37

Wittikind, the writer of the emperor Otho's annals, x. 636 (O).

Wogulitzilans, who, xiii. 37

Woisalk becomes duke of Lithuania, after taking off Stroinat, with his character, and irruptions into Poland, xii. 631. He falls into an ambuscade in Prussia, is slain, and his army defeated, *ib.*

Wolfe, colonel James, an account of him, xiv. 717. Humane manifesto at landing upon the isle of Orleans, *ibid.* Vast difficulties in the expedition to Quebec, *ib.* Little progress, and miscarriages, 718. Unfortunate attempt and repulse, with an account by himself, 719. Moves his camp from Montmorenci to Point Levi, *ib.* Plan for landing below the heights of Abraham, and its prodigious difficulties, 720. He gains those heights, *ib.* Beats the French, is killed, and his last words, 721 (T). Montcalm the French general, also killed, xv. 624. Noble character, xiv. 721

Wolferstone, first governor of Barbadoes, xv. 174. Is succeeded by Wheadley, 175

Wolga river, in West Tartary, ii. 122. Account of it, and the rivers which fall into it, xiii. 4

Wolodimir succeeds his two brothers in their dominions of Kiow, and country of the Drewliani, besides his own part Novogorod, and has the Greek emperor's sister in marriage on condition of embracing Christianity, xiii. 89. The Greek



Greek religion hereupon introduced, and the consequences, ib. Divides his dominions among his twelve sons by six wives, and eight hundred concubines, ib. Death, and the fatal effects between his sons, with his character, and vast dominions, ib. His sons destroy one another; two of them reckoned saints still in Russia, ib. (I).

Wolodimir II. sole monarch of Russia, and transfers his power to his son Wsewold, xiii. 91

Wologda circle and city in Archangel government, xiii. 7

Wolsey, how gained over to the emperor against Francis I. x. 311. Intrigues, xiii. 507

Wolves, (Zenas) their tribe, whence derived, ii. 135  
— of Canada described, xiv. 557

Women excluded out of Mahomet's paradise, i. 167. How they came upon earth, according to the Indian lanjans, iii. 296

Won-kang, king of Tsi, revolts against the Chinese, iii. 692. Assists Li-vang in coming to the throne, 693. Over-reached by the emperor, ib.

World, new, what notion the ancients had about it, xiv. 142

Worms, in a diet there, the emperor and his party absolved, with the affair of investiture determined, ix. 586  
— treaty, with its articles in favour of the king of Sardinia, but ineffectual, xiii. 661. Counteracted by another between France and Spain, ib.  
— account of that city, xv. 439. Its religion and government, ib.

Woronesh government and districts, with its principal places, xiii. 14. Inhabitants of this government described, ib.

Worsey, governor of Barbadoes, xv. 191. Answer to the governor of Martinico's letter about St. Lucia, 193. Enormous revenue, why settled on him, ib. Enquiry into the state of the island, with the charge against Cox, and the governor's sentence, ib. The little service of this to the governor, ib.

Worship, a set form established by Absalon in the Danish churches, xii. 22

Wo-ting, his reign in China, and the funeral honours paid to his minister, iii. 685

Wot-lin, or Oofin, the 16th emperor of Japan, iv. 51

Wood-rats of Canada described, and an extraordinary property of the female, what, xiv. 558

Wrangel retreats to Misnia, before the Imperialists, xi. 267. Advances into Upper-Hesse, and is followed by the Imperialists, but is joined by Turenne, ib. After a long march retires into Brunswick, 268. Takes Cronenburg fortress, with the several stratagems used by the Swedish general, xii. 180 (B). Critical situation by general Gallas overrunning Pomerania, 341. Naval engagements, in the last of which he and the Dutch beat the Danish fleet, 347. Account of his and the enemy's forces, 349. His great ability and success, ib. His junction with Turenne upon the enemy's retreat, 350. Separates and marches to Franconia, with his successes, ib. Marches also to Bohemia, and obliges the enemy to decamp thrice, 351. Marches to Misnia and Thuringia, with the occasion, and his prudent conduct, ib. Joins Turenne, and marching nearer Bavaria which had broke the truce, they beat a body of its cavalry, and oblige the enemy to retire beyond the Iser, ib. While he intends to penetrate into the Higher Palatinate, a peace is concluded, ib. Astonishing bravery in taking Frederick's-Udda, 360. Takes Cronenburg, 362. Repulses the Austrians and Brandenburgers from Funen, ibid. Defeats the Poles before Broderitz, and a reinforcement joins them under Arnheim, but defeated at Quidzin, and before Steim, the latter owing to Arnheim's perfidy, 517

Wratisslaus I. duke of Bohemia, xv. 452. His wife's hatred against the Christians, ib.  
— II. duke of Bohemia, makes peace with the Poles, xv. 453. Created king by the emperor Henry, 454

Wren, commodore, his success against the French in the West-Indies, xv. 185. Takes a seasonable prize, ib.

Wright, commodore, sent home prisoner from Barbadoes, xv. 186

Wurtzburg, (see Wirtzburg) preliminaries for a peace settled in the diet there, and an embassy to the pope upon it, with the issue in a Lateran council, ix. 586. Uproar in a council against the legate, 649. The decrees of the diet there in favour of the emperor, x. 674 (B).

Wyat, governor of Virginia, his supply of planters, xv. 365

Wynne, captain, his progress in Newfoundland, and a reinforcement by captain Powell, xiv. 491. His account by letter to Sir George Calvert on the fertility of the country, MOD. HIST. VOL. XVI.

ib. and Sir George hereupon removing with his family, 492. Accession to this colony from Ireland, ib.

X.

XACA, Xacca, or Shaka, a Siamese deity, iii. 341. A chief one among the Japanese, and the fabulous history of it, iv. 7 (H). Brass statue melted into coin, 53

Xacozango town, where situated, xiv. 196

Xaintes (All-saints) French islands, account of, xv. 234

Xalisco province and town described, xiv. 436

Xatigam (Shatigam) near one of the mouths of the Ganges, iii. 17

Xavier, his arrival at Agra, and he preaches his new formed gospel, iii. 64. Condemned by the Society de Propaganda Fide, ib. First arrival in Japan, iv. 163  
— island of St. or Agrigan, one of the Mariannes, iv. 230. The famous market there, vi. 594

Xauna, or Xauxa, the Peruvians defeated there by Pizarro, in which Almagro was greatly instrumental, and a colony founded, but removed to Lima, xiv. 299

Xerigorda retaken from the Crusadors, ii. 209

Xerus, Manuel, his bravery against the Turks, ii. 221

Xicoko (Xikokoff) one of the three chief islands of Japan, iv. 42 (N).

Xicotencal, his speech in the senate of Tlascala, xiv. 197: Answer to Cortez's message, 199. Ordered to suspend hostilities against Cortez, which he refuses, 201. His stratagem against Cortez frustrated, and his spies put to the torture confess, and are sent back maimed, ib. Is superseded, and his army disbanded, 202. Sent ambassador from Tlascala to Cortez, ib. His speech and answer to it, ib. His treachery in private, and declaration, 249. Is seized and degraded by the senate, and the ceremony, what, 250. Again restored through Cortez's means, but forfeits his life, ib. 264

Xiloa, an island and kingdom (See Quiloa) vi. 348

Xilo-cinnamomum, what, iv. 98

Ximena, widow to the Cid, defends Valencia gloriously against the Moors, vii. 661 (I). Next year Alonso's succours preserve it, ib.

Ximenes, cardinal, (See Toledo) opposes the re-admission of the Jews, v. 579. Character and works, viii. 6 (D). Made archbishop of Toledo, 214. Cardinal pacifies the malecontents, 221. Has leave to conquer Oran, ib. Commands in person, and takes it, 222

Ximo, one of the three chief islands of Japan, described, iv. 39. Cities, 40

Xola island, in the East-Indies, iv. 202. Described, and king's fruit, why so called, 204. The people Mahometans, 205 (F). Kingly government, ib.

Y.

Y A'BAR castle besieged in vain by the Syrians, vi. 57. Bought by Nuro'ddin, ib.

Yadigar Khan's birth secures his Usbecks loyalty, and an account of his successors, ii. 706. Proclaimed khan by his son Burga, 701

Yadighiar Mirza acknowledged Timur's successor, ii. 598. Subdues Khorassan, but surprised and slain by Hussayn, 599  
— Abu'lghazi's general, his bravery, ii. 745

Yahcam's success against Al Baridi, i. 533. Made emir omra by the new khalif Mortaki, i. 539. Slain by a young Curd, and his hidden treasure seized by the khalif, 540. His name, why variously written, ib. (A).

Yahuarhuacac, seventh inca, succeeds his father Roca, and his character at the beginning of his reign, xiv. 392. Undertakes an expedition by his brother towards Arequiba, who is successful, ib. How his character suffers, and he disinherits his son, who is banished to feed the cattle of the Sun, 393. At first refuses to admit his son Virachoca to his presence, ib. On the reply of the prince, the inca resolves to see him, ib. The prince's strange message delivered as by a vision, ib. The inca, contrary to his council's advice, obstinately disregards his son's notice, ib. His great dismay on intelligence of a revolt in his provinces, 394. Retires to Collafuya, and the confusion ensuing, ib. His son Virachoca's conduct on the occasion, and pathetic address to his father, ib. Is allotted a palace to reside in, with some badges of royalty left him, and his death, 396



- Yahya** assaults Abdal Malek's palace, but is taken and banished, i. 329. Sent emir into Spain, and his moderation there, 362
- **Ebn Zeid** defeated and killed in Georgia, i. 371
- brother of Abu'l Abbas, made governor of Mosul, i. 382
- al Hadi's vizier, his salutary advice to him, and narrow escape, i. 416
- the worthy patriarch of Alexandria, his character and death, i. 417
- **Ebn Khaled** made prime vizier to Al Rashed, i. 418
- a Syrian physician, his expositions of ancient physic books, i. 419
- **Ebn Adballah** rebels against Al Rashed, submits, and is put in irons, i. 420
- raises a revolt against Caliph Al Mostain, i. 482. Defeated and slain, ib.
- the Zenjian chief's defeat, and dreadful end, i. 490
- **Ebn Isa**, a Christian physician, turns Motazalite, with his apology, and other works, i. 678 (L).
- a prince of Yazd, submits to Timur Bek, ii. 519. Made governor of Shiraz, 520. Treachery to Muhaddeb, 529
- heads the Karmatians into Syria, his success against the khalif, but defeated and slain, i. 520
- **Ebn Ali** made khalif of Spain, and slain by Ishmael, i. 627
- Yakin**, or **Takin**, his bloody engagement with Al Mohdi's troops, i. 513
- Yakub Ebn Leit** seizes on Kerman and Pars, i. 438. On Nisabur, 491. Other conquests, but defeated by the khalif, and his flight, ib. Renews the war and dies, 492
- **Ebn Calas**, his death and character, i. 592 (O), with his elogy, 593
- Yakub-Beg**, the 8th shah of the White Sheep dynasty, de-thrones and slays his brother, ii. 703. His immature death, with his character, ib.
- Yaik Sufi**, his treason against Timur Bek, and punishment, ii. 533
- Yakup**, or **Jacob**, raises a revolt in Mesopotamia, and defeated, i. 378
- **Ebn Dawdh**, one of Mohdi's counsellors, punished for disobedience and perjury, i. 412
- Yali** plunders Yaman before he leaves it, i. 260. Joins Ayesha and her two complotters at Mecca, 261
- Ya-lu**, a river of Korea, iii. 749
- Yamama**, temple, destroyed by Joreir, i. 97
- Yamanian** pillars of the Caaba thrown down, i. 696
- Yammacraw** Indians amity with the colony of Georgia, xv. 101
- Yang**, head of a new Chinese sect, iii. 694 (V).
- Yang-chew-fu** taken by the Mungls, ii. 378
- Yanghi Shahr**, a province of Karazm, ii. 714
- **Arik**, another province of Karazm, ii. 714
- Yang-kya**, emperor of China, iii. 686
- Yang-lo-pu** taken by the Ywen, or Mungls, ii. 371
- Yang-ping**, bloody fight there, ii. 347
- Yang-ti** murders his father and brother, and seizes on the Chinese throne, iii. 311. Is assassinated, ib.
- Yang-tse-kang**, the boundary of the Northern and Southern empires of China, iii. 711
- Yar Ali** seizes on Herat, but defeated and slain by soltan Babr, ii. 596
- Yardly**, Sir George, appointed governor of Virginia, in room of Mr. Argol recalled, xiv. 490. His cultivating tobacco, and new-modelling the government, ib. His great supply of colonists to Virginia, xv. 365
- Yarkian**, the capital of Little Bukharia, described, is populous and rich, ii. 459
- Yasa**, or **Yassa**, the military laws of Jenghiz Khan, ii. 237 (M).
- Yasous**, massacre of the French by them, xv. 34
- savages, where seated, xv. 47
- post, where, and destroyed by the Chicachas, xv. 59
- Yasun-timur**, the 16th khan in Bukharia, ii. 465
- Yassa**, or Jenghiz Khan's laws still revered, ii. 331---333
- Yates**, Sir Thomas, his arrival in Virginia as deputy-governor, with his planting and fortifying Henrico county, xiv. 489. Good effect of captain Rolf's marrying an Indian princess on the colony's affairs, ib.
- Yathreb**, why Medina is so called, i. 324
- Yathred**, Jews, turn to Mohammedanism, and heir origin, i. 30
- Yau**, the 8th Chinese monarch, contemporary with Joshua, iii. 672. His reign later than is commonly pretended; the solstice which happened in his days shewn to be the same with that recorded in the tenth chapter of Joshua, 674. Further remarks on his reign, 677
- Yau-shu**, the wife counsellor of Kublay, with his great services in China, ii. 355. Prudent advice to him, 358. Accuses Ahama of extortion, and made prime minister to the khan, 365. Promotes learning among the Mungls, ibid.
- Yaya**, Ali, a famous engineer at the siege of Syang-tang, ii. 369. Rewarded and honoured at court, 370. Sent to besiege Yan-lo-pu, 371. New conquests and successes, 374. Cruelties at Quey-lin fu, 379
- Yay-shan**, isle and mountain described, and the emperor Twon song's place of interment, ii. 380
- Yazdejerd**, the last king of Irak, mounts the throne, but his generals defeated and slain, i. 183. Is defeated by the Arabs, and retires to the banks of Jihun, 187. His capital plundered and ruined, 208. Retires to Fargana, ibid. Stript of all his dominions, 245. Retires to Sigistan, 250. His last defeat and death, 252
- Ya'amer** adjudges the Caaba to Kofa, i. 4
- Ye-li-tzan** taken and sacked by the Mungls, ii. 352
- Yelu-chu-tzey** (See Chin-tzey)
- Yelu chu-tsay**, a Kitan prince, introduced to Jenghiz Khan, and promoted by him, ii. 287. Vast rise of the customs of Song, 348. Noble advice to the empress, ib. Opposes in vain her regency, 350. Dies of grief, and his noble character, 351. Love of learning, writings, &c. ib. Introduces the Chinese character in Mongolia, 367. The compiler of the Mungl kalendar, 382
- Yelu-ko-hay** sent to invade the Kin provinces, ii. 283 (H).
- Yenesei** province, and its division into six circles, xiii. 46
- circle, and Yeniseisk, the capital of the province, with other small towns and forts, xiii. 48
- Yenghikant**, once the metropolis of Turkestan, ii. 146. Site, ib.
- Yen-king**, capital of Kin, invested by the Mungls, ii. 285. The court removed from it, ib. Taken by the Mungls, 287. Palace thirty days a-burning, ib.
- Yen-temur** made governor of Ta-tu, ii. 410. Zeal for Hoshila and Tutemur, 411. Supposed the murderer of the former, 415. Behaviour to his son Towan temur, character and death, ib.
- Yen-tye Kutse** set aside in favour of Towan-temur, ii. 414. Banished into Korea, and slain in the way, 418
- Yeomans**, Sir John, governor of Carolina, xv. 86. Disorders, how remedied, ib.
- Yermouk**, decisive battle, i. 198, and when fought, 202
- Yesar Ebn Yarad** put to death for Zendicism, i. 411
- Yesukay** taken prisoner by the Kitayan Khan, and his death, ii. 266
- Yesun-temur** succeeds Shotepala in Ywen, and promotes Tye-she, with others of his assassins, ii. 408. Orders them to be put to death, ib. Founds lectures on government, ib. Complies with the memorial of his lords, and the new division of the empire, 410. Calamities attending the end of his reign, death, issue, ib.
- Yesyen-Temur** sent against the rebel Lyew-futong, and assists Li-fu against the fugitives and rebels, ii. 421. His shameful flight, and acquitted by his brother Toto, 422
- Yesso**, (See Jedso) iv. 68
- Yetama** Jews made tributary to Mohammed, i. 74
- Yeu-chew** taken by the Mungls, ii. 287
- Ye-wang**, emperor of China, iii. 690
- Yew-kyu** puts Vu-ti's ambassador to death, but assassinated by his subjects, iii. 753
- Yew-Lyang** takes the city of Gan-king, ii. 426, and that of Sin-chew, 427
- Yew-wang**, emperor of China, his fatal fondness for a concubine, iii. 692. Occasions the loss of his life and empire, ibid.
- Yezid Ebn Sofian** sent to invade Syria, i. 136. Defeats the Greeks, ib. Sent to besiege Constantinople, 290. Declared Moawiyah's successor, ib. Penetrates into Armenia, &c. 293. His bad character, and Irak, with other provinces, swear allegiance to him, 296. Embassies sent to congratulate him, ib. Return to Damascus on his father's death, 298. Proclaimed khalif, and his orders to Al Walid against Hosein, and other Recufants, 300. Removes Al Nooman from his government of Cufa, 301. Mild behaviour to Hosein's family, when brought prisoners to him, 307. His debauches render him odious to the Arabs, 311. Overreached by Abdallah, 312. Offends the Damascene ambassadors, ib. Deposed in form at Medina, 313. Mild orders against the Medinans, ib. Death, person, character, and



- and offspring, 314. Impiety and avarice, *ib.* Where buried by his son, 315
- Yezid Ebn Mohalleb made governor of Khorassan, his vast conquests and victories, i. 351
- Ebn Solian sent to invest Jerusalem, i. 203, and ordered to reduce Palestine, 210. Entrusted with the care of Palestine, and advances towards Cæsarea, *ib.* Makes himself master of Tyre, 225. Dies of the plague in Syria, 232
- Soliman's admiral, his bad success against Constantinople, i. 353
- Abd'aimalek proclaimed khaliff, i. 359. Displaces all the friends of his predecessor, *ib.* Hardly known to the Greeks, and ill success in Spain, 360. Death and character, 361. Strange affection for a mistress, *ib.*
- son of Al Walid II. proclaimed khalif, and title to the Persian crown, with sundry revolts raised against him, and his army defeated in Hemo, i. 373. Dies of the plague, *ib.* His character, *ib.*
- Merwan's general, totally routed by Kahtaba, i. 38
- Ebn Condad raises a revolt against Abul Kayem and his success, i. 545
- Yiumarivi, the Imperial general, his ambition and cruelty after Atahualpa's capture, xiv. 294 (A).
- Ylo port, in la Plata, xiv. 466. Plundered by the buccaneers, *ibid.*
- Ynucanoes, a nation of Quito, xiv. 306
- Yohanna, prince, his ready submission to Mohammed, i. 94
- Yoland, or Violente, queen of Castile, retires with Beatrix and the infants to the court of Arragon, viii. 27
- Yong-ching proclaimed emperor in China, and severity to his brothers, iii. 743 (G), especially to the convert princes, *ib.* Pompous funeral of his favourite brother, 744. Charity to the sufferers by the earthquake, 745. Banishment of the Jesuits, *ib.* Severe edicts against missionaries of all sorts, *ib.* Speech to three of the principal Jesuits, 746. Severity to their proselytes, 747
- Yong-ki, emperor of China, iii. 685
- Yong-tsi, prince of Kin, (China) contrives Jenghiz Khan's death, ii. 282. His country invaded by him, 283, and murdered by his general Hujaku, 284
- York, a bloody massacre of Jews there, v. 546 (R).
- New, described, xiv. 538. Its first discoverer, Hudson, sells it to the Dutch, *ib.* The settlements there, what, 539. Its extent and islands, *ib.* Its four principal towns, *ib.* Its soil and climate, *ib.* Account of its governors, 541. Several Palatine and German Protestants arrive there; but a vote of the British parliament passes against this measure, *ib.* Where settled, *ib.* Sends plenipotentiaries to Albany for treating with the five Indian nations, &c. also a treaty concluded, 542. Their preparations against the Indians under French influence, 544. Its legislature and government, 545. Trade, *ib.* Fertile soil, and commerce of its capital, 546. Tampering of the English there, with the Agniers, 609. Conquest resolved on by the French, 629
- Youkinna, governor of Aleppo, defeats a party of Moslems, i. 211. Severe revenge on the citizens of Aleppo, and his gallant defence of the castle, 212. Surprised and taken, he turns Moslem, 214. Brought to Heraclius, and is restored to favour, 216. Made general of all his forces, turns all his force and art against him, 218. Takes Tripoli by treachery, 224. Taken prisoner in his attempt on Tyre, 225. Released by Basil, a Greek officer, *ib.*
- Young-lo's treason and ingratitude to the emperor Kyen-venti, iii. 725
- Young-lye proclaimed emperor, revives the Chinese courage, iii. 735. Betrayed to Shun-chi, and strangled, 738
- Ypanqui, tenth inca, succeeds his father Pachacatec, and great expectations of him, makes a progress, xiv. 406. Dangerous expedition towards the Andes along the river Plata, the nations of which, after several skirmishes, submit, *ib.* Reduces the Chunchu nations, and proceeds to Mufa (Moxos) province, whose inhabitants make a perpetual alliance, 407. Returning to Cuzco raises a fresh army, and advances to Chirhuana, east of Charcas, *ib.* Sends spies, whose intelligence about the cruel natives, animates him the more, *ib.* but entrusts the army to certain princes of the blood, who march through unpassable ways, but return without accomplishing their enterprise, *ib.* Sets out on the reduction of Chili, and arrives at Atacoma, with the precautions used; he sends a body to Copayapac under Sinchiroca, *ib.*
- Ypren, Van, the Dutch commander, takes fort d'Elmina, vi. 639
- Ypres taken by the prince of Conde, ix. 426
- and St. Venant taken by the Spaniards, ix. 429
- Ytata, a province of Biledulgerid, described, vii. 118
- Yucatan and Florida. Cordova's expedition to them from the Havannah, xiv. 169. Whence derived, 170 (D). Why, and by whom called New Spain, 171
- province described, xiv. 439
- Yuchi, falsely accused, leaves the court, ii. 419
- Yucht, in Russia, what, xiii. 77, & (B).
- Yue-lim-a-tse, his faithfulness and death, ii. 352
- Yulduz, where situated, and why called, ii. 523 (C).
- Yuncanoes, their information to Pizarro at Lima, xiv. 312
- Yung-pang, his singular fidelity, iii. 721
- Yung-ping-fu, a first-rate city in Pecheli, iii. 527
- Yunus seizes on Urjensh, defeats Akattay Khan, ii. 727. Bloody stratagem to conceal his murder of him, and becomes the ninth khan of Karazm; but is pursued and killed by his sons, 728
- Yun-nan, a province of China, described, with its gold mines, other produce, and chief cities, iii. 553
- Junan, or Ju-nung-fu, the capital of Yun-nan described, with its trade and manufactures, iii. 554
- Khan Yusef defeated by Mirza Abubekr, with his flight from and return to Irak, ii. 566, 583. Wars against the Getes, *ib.* Conquers Irak, and drives Kara Ozman out of Diarbekr, 587. Successes in Georgia, &c. *ib.* Invaded by Shah Rukh, dies before they engage, and his corpse abused and abandoned, 700. Account of his sons and successors, *ib.*
- Yupanqui, inca, obstinately persists in conquering Chili, and how far he enlarges his empire here, but the entire conquest is a problem, xiv. 408. Builds beautiful public edifices and dies, after advising his sons at his bed-side, *ib.* His character, and building Cuzco fortrefs, *ib.*
- Yu-que refuses the services of the Myau-tse, ii. 422. Fortifies himself in Gan-king, with his brave defence of it, 426. Desperate end, *ib.*
- Yven-chu, a chief city of Kyang-si, iii. 532
- Yuraki described, xiii. 37
- Yusef, the brother of Sophian, marches against Mohammed, i. 60
- Ebn Omar made governor of Irak, and defeats Zeid, i. 366. Deposed by Yezid, *ib.*
- the governor of Spain defeated and slain, i. 392
- the brave governor of Berzem forced to surrender to Alp Arslan, and slabs him for his cruel treatment, ii. 167
- Kara, accompanies Ahmed into Egypt, and conquers part of Irak, &c. for him, ii. 495. Defeats, and puts him to death, 496 (See also 566).
- Ebn Ibrahim contests the khalifat with Al Mohdi, but defeated and crucified, i. 407
- Ben Mohammed occasions a revolt in Armenia, and slain, i. 470
- Ebn Ibrahim defeated by the Karmatians, i. 510
- Ebn Saj's shameful defeat by the Karmatians, taken and put to the sword, i. 520
- Ebn Wajih's vain attempt on Bosra, i. 551
- Al Sanhaji left emir of Kairwan, i. 567
- emir of Sicily, seized with a dead palsy, i. 604
- Ebn Sabektekkin, his treason against the sultan Mohammed, and just punishment, i. 638
- the Molathemiyan general, defeats Alphonso near Zalah, i. 669
- the son of Artak, sent to tamper with the caliph Most-adher, and his threats and hostile acts against him stop, i. 680
- the old king of Sofalu, admits the Portuguese into it, but opposed by his son-in-law, vi. 363—366. His wife answer to him, and opposed by his merchants, *ib.* Their pathetic speech, and he orders their fort to be demolished, 367. Assaulted and murdered by the Portuguese, *ib.*
- the son of Techisien, his conquests in Barbary, vii. 128. Reduces the Arabs, 129. Is defeated at sea, *ib.* In Spain, and dies, 130
- king of the Almohedes, his success in Spain, vii. 133. Slain there, *ib.*
- king of Fez, besieges Tremecen, vii. 144. Murdered by his own men, *ib.*
- Yusi-Temur declares for Timur, ii. 395. Promoted by him, *ibid.*
- Yu-ta founds the first Chinese dynasty, iii. 679. His excellent character, *ib.* Prohibition against rice and wine, treatise of agriculture, and his death, *ib.*
- Ywen, the Mungl dynasty so called, ii. 368. Its beginning, 382.



382. Its end, duration, &c. 434. List of its khans, and the new Northern Ywen founded, *ib.*
- Ywen, Whay-tsong's general, betrays him, but discovered and strangled, *iii.* 730
- Ywenti defeats the king of Honan, and is assaulted by his koulau, *iii.* 710. Burns his noble library, and his death, *ib.*
- Ywe-checar made one of Timur's generals, and succeeds against Hay-tu, *ii.* 395
- Ywen-ti, emperor of China, his great love of learning, and base treatment to the Tartars, *iii.* 702
- Ywen-wang, emperor of China, his wife reign, *iii.* 695
- Z.
- Z**ABATHAI Tzevi, a false messiah, his birth and extraction, *v.* 585 (T). His precursor shews him to the Jews, and condemned to death, *ib.* (U). Bribes the Turkish kadi, erects his throne, and imposes on the Jews, his title, is apprehended and bastinadoed, 586. The blindness of his followers, banished to the Dardanelles, embassy to the Jews, opposed in prison, and brought before the Grand Signior, and turns Mahometan, *ib.* Beheaded, is pretended to be still alive, his second coming declared by a new impostor, and some surprising tricks performed by him, 587. The imposture discovered, banished by the kadi, and the end of that vile cheat, *ib.*
- Zabatra, Zabtara, or Sozopetra, demolished by the emperor Theophilus, causes of the destruction of Amorium, *i.* 461, and where situated, 462
- Zablestan reduced by Timur Bek, *ii.* 515
- Zacatecas, capital, described, and produce of the province, *xiv.* 436
- Zechariah confirmed patriarch of Alexandria, *i.* 636. His persecutions and place of burial, *ib.* (A).
- Zacosta, Raymond de, the 36th grand master of Rhodes, makes a truce with the Turks, *vii.* 415, and reprisals on their invasions, *ib.* Clears his conduct before the pope, 416. His death, *ib.*
- Zacote artfully imposes on the king of Sofala, *vi.* 366. His extraction, and strenuous defence of the Portuguese fort, *ib.* (E).
- Zadenghil, the 91st king of Abissinia, conspired against and slain, *vi.* 254
- prince, recommended to the Abyssinian kingdom, and sent into close confinement by the contrary faction, *vi.* 280. But raised to the throne by his vizir, with his character and death, 283
- Salasse rebels against him, is abandoned by his forces, who were interdicted by the Abuna, *vi.* 282. Attacks the rebels too soon, but defeated and killed, 283. His treachery to the noble Sufneus, 284. Surprized and defeated, escapes to Jaacob, arrogance, and just punishment, 285
- Zafe Ibrahims, in Madagascar, their use of European commodities, and inhuman customs, *vi.* 96
- Zafica-simambous, &c. a people of Madagascar described, *vi.* 93. Their rivers, towns, &c. 94
- Zagathay, Jenghiz Khan's son, (See Jagathay) *ii.* 452
- province, *ii.* 452
- Zagaza, Ab, sent ambassador into Portugal, *vi.* 257. Ill reception at Lisbon, 258 (S).
- Zagean family usurps the Abyssinian throne, four prove good princes, *vi.* 252
- Zaghena taken by soltan Morad, *v.* 163
- Zahra, Al, famous battle there, *i.* 662, and when fought, *ib.*
- Zalul river, in Tlascala, its inundations, *xiv.* 205
- Zaine island, in Tunis, described, *vii.* 297, with the Genoese fort and pearl-fishery there, *ib.*
- Zaino'lbeddin, prince of Shiraz, submits to Timur Bek, *ii.* 519. Is imprisoned, *ib.*
- Zair (Zara) river, its spring and course unknown, *vi.* 425. Dangerous navigation and islands at its mouth, 426. Overflows, 427
- Zairac, a Turk, made emir omra, *i.* 546,
- Zaire, a famous river of Congo, described, *v.* 697.—*vi.* 425
- Zakruna heads the Karmatians into the khalif's dominions, with his success *i.* 509.
- Zaley Ebn Zarai, vazir of Egypt, assassinated, and succeeded by his son Zaric, *vi.* 53
- Zama's success in Spain, *i.* 360. Defeated and killed there, 361
- Zamet's jocular answer to a notary who desired to know his titles, *ix.* 318, sub not.
- Zamin, or Zam, a town in Great Bukharia, *ii.* 455
- Zamora, a city of Algiers, described, *viii.* 226
- Zamoski prints manifestoes, declaring Sigismund's election legal, and these answered, *xii.* 501. Retakes the Swedish conquests, 506
- Zanaga, a province of Sara, described, *vii.* 100
- Zanguebar coasts described, *vi.* 337
- Zanguebar kingdom, and islands belonging to it, *vi.* 338. Inland parts unknown, *ib.* The natives described, *ib.*
- Zanzibar, kingdom described, *vi.* 345. Is made tributary to the Portuguese, *ib.*
- Zapatta, cardinal, viceroy of Naples, with his character, *x.* 515. A scarcity of corn in the city, to what owing, *ib.* His unhappy government, and stopping the currency of the coin zannette, he is insulted by the mob, punishes the seditious, and quells the tumults, but is recalled, *ib.*
- Zapoli, John, king of Hungary, *xv.* 406. Has the investiture from Soliman, who enters Hungary, and besieges Vienna, *ib.* The Turks march to his assistance, but nothing done, *ib.* A peace concluded with Ferdinand, and the conditions, 407. Dies, *ib.*
- Zar-a-Jacob, the 82d emperor of Abissinia, his embassy to the council of Florence, *vi.* 253
- Zara revolts to the king of Hungary, upon whose defeat that and other places submit to Venice, *x.* 208. It surrenders upon easy terms, *ib.*
- seventh revolt, which, after the defeat of the Hungarians, is taken, and only the promoters banished, *x.* 211
- Zarah Jaunez, and Amhara Georgis, the two discoverers of the sham Jaacob, who behead him, and obtain their pardon by it, *vi.* 286
- Abba Christos put to death in Abyssinia, *vi.* 309, sub (Z).
- Zareh fortrefs taken by Timur Bek, with the cruelty used to the captives, *ii.* 514
- Zarik, or Adel, his contemptuous message to Shower, *vi.* 53. His insolence punished by him, but taken prisoner and stript, 54. Kind reception, and his ingratitude to Shower, *ibid.*
- Zarniwa taken by the Kairwan Khalif, *i.* 521
- Zarnuk, where situated, and taken by Jenghiz Khan, *ii.* 296 (O).
- Zarpana, or St. Anne, an island of the Ladrões, discovered, *iv.* 227
- Zatalhdians, where seated, *i.* 461
- Zath Zeid publicly whipt by Haytam, he flies to Damascus, and complains to the khalif, *i.* 365
- Zaveh taken by the Mungls, and plundered, *ii.* 303
- Zauraa, crooked, why Baghdad is so called, *i.* 394
- Zaw Khan made governor of Bengal, *iii.* 76
- Zayd, king of Quiloa, succeeded by his vazir, *vii.* 105
- Zaara, or Sarah Desert, *vii.* 87. (See Sarah)
- Zabban driven out of Damascus, *i.* 571
- Zacchut, Abraham, a learned Jew, banished out of Spain, *v.* 579, sub (C). His character, works, and death, 613
- Zealand, its antient history, *xi.* 394. The populace there demand a stadtholder, with the tumults thereupon, 564
- account of that island, *xi.* 650. Towns and fortresses, 651. Ravages there, *xii.* 57
- New, by whom discovered and described, *v.* 17
- Zealanders entirely defeat the duke of Medina Coeli's squadron, *xi.* 410. Take Middleburg and Walcheren, 413. Another sea victory obtained by them, 414. Renew their clamours for a stadtholder, 569
- Zeb, a province of Biledulgerid, *vii.* 119
- Zebee, a famous river in Ethiopia, described, *vi.* 204
- Zebil, strait pass, seized on by Mirweis, *ii.* 652
- Zebu island subdued by the Spaniards, *iv.* 178
- Zecora, or wild mule, described, *vi.* 185
- Zegur, Egzi, a friend to the papists, slain by the revolted Gallas, *vi.* 296
- Zeid Ebn Haretha, Mohammed's servant, embraces his religion, *i.* 21. Takes the Koreish caravan, 56. Parts with his wife Zenobia to Mohammed, 62, who adopts him for his son, *ib.* Success against Al Honeid, 64. Ravages Madian, 68. Sent standard-bearer against the Arabs, 78. Slain at the battle of Muta, *ib.*
- Ebn Thabet brings a letter from the khalif for invading the hilly parts of Syria, *i.* 221. His death and character, 288
- Ebn Ali revolts against khalif Hesham, but defeated and killed by Yusef Ebn Omar, *i.* 368
- Ebn Refaa, his learned character and works, *i.* 585, sub not.



- Zeigler, rabbi, deceives the Dutch Jews with the hopes of a Messiah, v. 611
- Zeila, port on the Red-Sea, described, vi. 325. Great commerce, *ib.* Want of water, 326. Plundered and burnt by the Portuguese, 327. The occasion of it, *ib.*
- Zeinab, a Jewess, poisons Mohammed in a shoulder of mutton, and her answer to him for so doing, i. 73
- Mohammed's daughter, dies of a fall, i. 113
- Mohammed's sixth wife, dies before him, i. 115. Eighth wife turned over to him by Zeid, *ib.*
- Hosein's sister, her vast grief for him, i. 305. Brave speech to Amer, 306, and sharp reproaches to Obeid'allah, 307
- Zell, a dispute on the death of that duke accommodated, xi. 333. Account of, xv. 445
- Zem, brother of the Grand Signior, a prisoner at Rome, with his behaviour to the pope, x. 44. Account of his death, and how, 49 (M).
- Zempoala, ambassadors from its cazique to Cortez, for an alliance, xiv. 188. His arrival there, and interview with the cazique, 190. Narvaez surprised and defeated there by Cortez, 235
- Zemzem, well, revealed to Abd' al Mofaleh, and described, i. 6. Filled with murdered pilgrims by the Karmatians, 522
- well, near the Caaba at Mecca, described, and its virtues, i. 101
- Zena Noyan, his success against Kuchluk, ii. 291. Amply rewarded by Jenghiz Khan, *ib.*
- Zendecism, a kind of Sadduceism among the Arabs, i. 17
- a kind of heresy among the Moslems, and what, i. 372. Persecuted by khalif Mohdi, and the impious tenets of that sect, 415
- Zenderoud river, its rise, and it divides Ispahan into two parts, i. 443
- Zeneguas, a cursed tribe in Morocco, and their rich silver mines, vii. 151
- Zenetæ, in Tremecen, their several tribes described, vii. 135
- Zenger, John Peter, a Printer of New-York, his imprisonment, and the occasion a supposed libel, xiv. 545. With his trial, and the spirited behaviour of his lawyer, Mr. Hamilton of Philadelphia, *ib.* Acquittal of the prisoner through that gentleman's learned pleadings, and a mortifying circumstance to governor Crosby following thereupon, *ib.*
- Zenjians, who, and where seated, and their irruption into the Moslem dominions, with their vast success, i. 488. Conquests, and horrid ravages, 490. Total defeat and expulsion, 493
- Zenki made yazir of Mawfel, i. 696. See Amado'ddin.
- or Zenghi, founder of the Atalek dynasty, i. 698
- Zenas' fable, or that of the wolves, how explained of the Turks, ii. 135
- Zeno, Riniero, the forty-fifth doge of Venice, x. 203
- admiral, his success against the Turks, who defeat the Venetians, x. 211. His death and character, 232
- Zenobia, queen, brought up in the Jewish religion, and a great favourer of their nation, v. 503
- Zenzagued, the 71st king of Abyssinia, vi. 253
- Zerebrinow, a prodigious army of Turks and Tartars invading his dominions, are totally defeated by him, xiii. 111
- Zerit, castle, where situated, is taken and razed by Timur Bek, ii. 553
- Zerini, governor of Zighet, his fate, xi. 173
- Zentil, king of the Turks, protects Abd'allahman, but is totally defeated by Hajai, i. 340
- Zeutra, a Jewish chief, hanged by Cavades, v. 514
- Zeyed Arrax, the last prince of the Almohedes, murdered by the traitor Gamarazan, vii. 136
- Zeynel Khan promotes Sefi's advancement to the crown of Persia, ii. 620. Advises him to destroy several malecontent lords, 621. Is slain by him, with his character, and an instance of his ready obedience, 622
- Bek, ambassador from Persia to Jehan Ghir, iii. 68
- Zhou-chew, a chief city of Kyang-si, iii. 531
- Zhiu-tsung, his obscure reign in China, iii. 713
- Ziani, Sebastiano, the thirty-ninth doge, involved in a war with the emperor Barbarossa, x. 198. Resigns, with his character, and leaving a vast sum for a charitable foundation, *ib.* (A).
- Pietro, the forty-second doge of Venice, allows the Venetians in Greece to chuse a prætor, who subdue the
- Greek islands, x. 200. Defeats and hangs the Genoese pirate Vitrano, recovers Corfu, and demolishes Mocor and Corona, two nests for robbers, *ib.* The Genoese fleet defeated, and war with the Paduans how terminated, *ib.* Resignation and character, *ib.*
- Ziaol Mulk, the great dome burnt, and its famous bridge described, ii. 517
- Zibeb, cape, in Tunis, described, vii. 297
- Ziemomislus is raised to the ducal dignity of Poland, in room of his father Lechus V. with his excellent character and death, xii. 448
- Ziemovitus, whom his father Piasus had associated in his life-time, succeeds to the ducal dignity of Poland, xii. 448. He was the first who introduced discipline among the Polish troops, and is victorious, with his great character and death, *ib.*
- Zighet besieged and taken by the Turks, with the fate of its brave governor Zerini, xi. 173
- Zimbab, a city of Monomotapa, and the meaning of that name, vi. 373
- Zimbis, a shell coin in Congo, where taken, and described, v. 428 (L). Current also in Benguela, 491—494. The most valuable described, 495. Current in Congo, and the king sole owner, vi. 453
- Zimbo, one of the sheykhs of the Giagas, leads them first to Congo and other kingdoms, vi. 560. Horrid butcheries and conquests, and defeated by the Portuguese, *ib.* Total overthrow, 561. Horrid slaughter of his Giagas, his march round the Cape of Good-Hope, and he forces his camp at Kilombo, with his death, 562
- Zimet-pata's revolt, and desperate end, iii. 58
- Zimisces's conquests in Syria, i. 572. Poisoned before Tripoli, and dies, *ib.*
- Zingha, or Xingha, princess of Angola, sent ambassador to the Portuguese viceroy, vi. 508. Makes an alliance with him, and embraces Christianity, *ib.* Crowned queen of Angola, 509. Horrid jealousy of her brother's son, gets him from the Giagas, and murders him, *ib.* Declares war against the Portuguese, and makes alliance with the Giagas, *ib.* Abandoned by the king of Congo, and rejects the Portuguese offers, who set up a king against her, 510. Fury and apostacy, is stript of her dominions by them, *ib.* Apostatizes and goes over to the Giagas, and falls into all their inhuman ways, 511 (D). Puts all the Portuguese conquests to fire and sword, with unheard of cruelties to her prisoners, 512. Attempts the recovery of her own dominions, *ib.* Noble answer to the Portuguese deputies, 514. Apology for her apostacy, and resentment of her sister's execution, *ib.* Refuses to be reconciled to the church, and artful answer to a monk sent to her by the viceroy, 515. Contempt of the viceroy's threats, treaty with and embassy from him, *ib.* Corresponds with her by letters, *ib.* (E). Her conduct cried up as miraculous, 516 (F); but proves mere artifice, *ib.* (F). Speech to her army, she owns her apostacy and reconversion to Christianity, 518. Perplexity about the success of it, and ransom demanded for her other sister, *ib.* Reasons for not complying with it, and Flois sent ambassador to her, and fiercely menaced by her, *ib.* Kinder reception of father Antony, and zeal for Christianity, 519. Sister's ransom, with her grand release and kind reception at court, *ib.* Is reconciled to the Portuguese, and her zeal for the church; she builds a mean one, and consecrates it to the Virgin Mary, 520. Her edict against idolatry, &c. *ib.* Severity against the breakers of it, and another against polygamy; she encourages matrimony, and marries, *ib.* (I). The great progress of the gospel, and a large comet followed by a plague, 522. Earthquakes and famine, *ib.* Rejects the Portuguese offers, falls sick, and nobly answers the articles, 523 (L). Concludes a peace with them, expedient to save her honour, and revenge on the perjured Giagas, *ib.* Her relapse into her former impiety, but is recalled by a layman's stratagem, 524. Relents and abolishes the Giagas impiety, *ib.* Embassy to the pope, and kind reception of father Cavazzi, 525 (M). Falls sick, and removes to Embacca, is alarmed by the Portuguese armament, *ib.* but undeceived by father Antony, and builds a new city, church, and palace, 526 (N). Falls sick again, and recovers at the receipt of the pope's letter, 527. Solemn reading of it in the church, *ib.* (O). Her last and great penitence, 528. Exemplary death, 529 (Q). Magnificent funeral, *ib.* Her general Mona, his extraction, 531. Defeated by Don Juan, 534; and slain by Don Francis, *ibid.*



- Zinhagi, in Algiers, driven out by the Marabouts, vii.  
241
- Zinzendorf, on his specific demands being disregarded, withdraws from the congress, xi. 355. Notwithstanding his remonstrances, the Dutch, under the queen of England's mediation, accede to the treaty of Utrecht, and their answer to him, 359.
- Zira, Rabbi, a learned Jewish professor, v. 503 (K).
- Zirickzee, its surrender, xi. 415. Mutiny of the garrison there, 416.
- Zisca's followers encreasing, he totally defeats Albert of Austria, with his other successes, xi. 80. Declares himself an enemy to Coribut, whom, after first expelling Albert of Austria, he defeats and obliges to abdicate, 81. Dies of the plague, and his followers stretch his skin on a drum to animate them, ib.
- Ziyad, his conduct and success in Persia, and made governor by Ali, i. 273, 286; and refuses to acknowledge Moawiyah, ib. Swears fealty to, and is unbastardized by him, 287. Sent governor of Basra, 288. Suppresses all the reigning violences in it, and hath three other provinces added to his government, ib. Dieth of the plague, with the pretended cause of it, 291. His character, &c. 292. Severe government in Irak, ib.
- Zizim, an Ottoman prince, flies to Rhodes for protection, with his grand reception there, vii. 423. Is persuaded to go into France, 424. Complains greatly against the grand master, ib. Is sold by the French king to the pope, and confined in the castle of St. Angelo, 425. Poisoned there, ibid.
- Zmielniski's maltreatment by a Polish governor, and his being chosen chief of the Cossacks, xii. 521. Character, and uniting the Tartars and Cossacks against Poland, ib. Defeats the Polish general Potolski, near Korsen, with his further successes, ib. A third victory obtained by him, but a fortunate dispute between the Tartars and Cossacks about the spoil saves Poland, 522. Ambition, and a renewal of the war, with a different account of the motives, 523.
- Znebahr Khan, his success against the revolters in Guzerat, and made viceroy in Bengal, iii. 60.
- Zoara, a monk of St. Matthew, his treachery to his convert, i. 403.
- Zobeir, a rival to Ali in the caliphate, i. 258. Swears fealty to him, 259. Cabals with Ayesha against him, 260. Retires to Mecca. Ali's reproach and declaration against him, 266. Put to flight at the battle of Khoraiha, and beheaded by Amru, ib.
- Zocodrus province, where situated, xiv. 195.
- Zocotora island described, vi. 78. Its excellent aloes, 79 (C). Soil, produce, &c. ib. Inhabitants, ib. Government, 80. Four towns and inhabitants described, 81.
- Zoe, the empress, sends an embassy to Caliph Moktader, and concludes a peace with him, i. 514.
- Zolkiewski, a Polish general in Moldavia, his memorable victory against the Turks, and his glorious retreat, with the occasion, 511. Through a panic at the Neistser, after eight days' march of this little troop, they desert, and he is overpowered, slain, and beheaded, 512.
- Zondodan, Mark Antony, grand master of Maltha, his success against the Barbary corsairs, receives a new brief from the pope, vii. 524. His death and character, ib.
- Zoroaster, Jenghiz Khan's enquiries about him at Balk, ii. 321.
- Zowaan, or Zagwan, a mountain in Tunis, its beautiful prospect, vii. 298. City at the foot of it, and its fine scarlet-dye, &c. ib.
- Zuenziga desert described, vii. 101.
- Zug, its alliance with the Swiss cantons, xv. 446.
- Zuinglius preaches with success in Switzerland against the Romish errors, x. 70. Account of his differences with Luther, xi. 157 (U).
- Zunda, daughter of Ngola, crowned queen of Angola, murders her sister's eldest son, vi. 503. But is murdered by her, ib.
- Zurich revolts, against which town the dukes of Austria form a league, as it does the same, and the difference compromised, xi. 51. But breaks out afresh, and on a complaint to the emperor, he only obtains a suspension of arms, ib. — account of that canton, and its alliance, xv. 446. The reformed religion preached here by Zuinglius, and holds the first rank, ib.
- Zuski, with his two brothers, heads a conspiracy against Demetrius, xiii. 137. They are tried and condemned; but Zuski, when on the scaffold to be executed, is pardoned, and banished with his brothers, 138. Is recalled and restored to favour, the people's discontents increase, with the occasion of them, ib. He again conspires against Demetrius, 139. Artful pointing out every incident to exasperate the Russians, and his loud exclaiming against Demetrius, ib. After the murder of Demetrius, chosen czar, by Worotinski's means, 141. His first cares what, and his sending an embassy to the Poles, who agree to his demands, 142 (A). He makes an alliance with Charles IX. of Sweden, and his measures for securing tranquility at home, ib. After being twice repulsed, releases the palatine of Sandomir, and his daughter, 144. Accepts the late offers of succours from the Swedes, with the consideration, ib. Dethroned, ib. — a counterfeit, the son of a linen-draper, appears in Poland, xiii. 153. His first preferment by the archbishop of Wologda, goes to Moscow, cheats his fellow-officer Spilki, burns his wife, and flies to Poland, ib. Insinuates himself into the favour of the general of the Cossacks, goes to Constantinople, turns Turk; next to Rome, and becomes a catholic, gets letters of recommendation from Ragotzky to Christina of Sweden, goes to Brussels, and at Leipsic turns Lutheran, 154. Is secured at Neustadt in Holstein, with a conversation there between him and Spilki, who was sent to bring his person to Moscow, ib. His own account of himself, with the substance of his letter to the Russian patriarch, which he afterwards denies as a forgery, and he varies in his depositions, 155. Endeavours to kill himself, ib. Falls into a deep melancholy, and is put to the torture at Moscow, with his obstinate persisting and execution, ib. His man Kostka is pardoned, but sentenced to lose three fingers, and banished to Siberia, 156.
- Zutkin is stormed by the Poles, and taken in their way, xii. 542.
- Zwowaahs, or Azuagues, of Algiers, who and where seated, vii. 205.